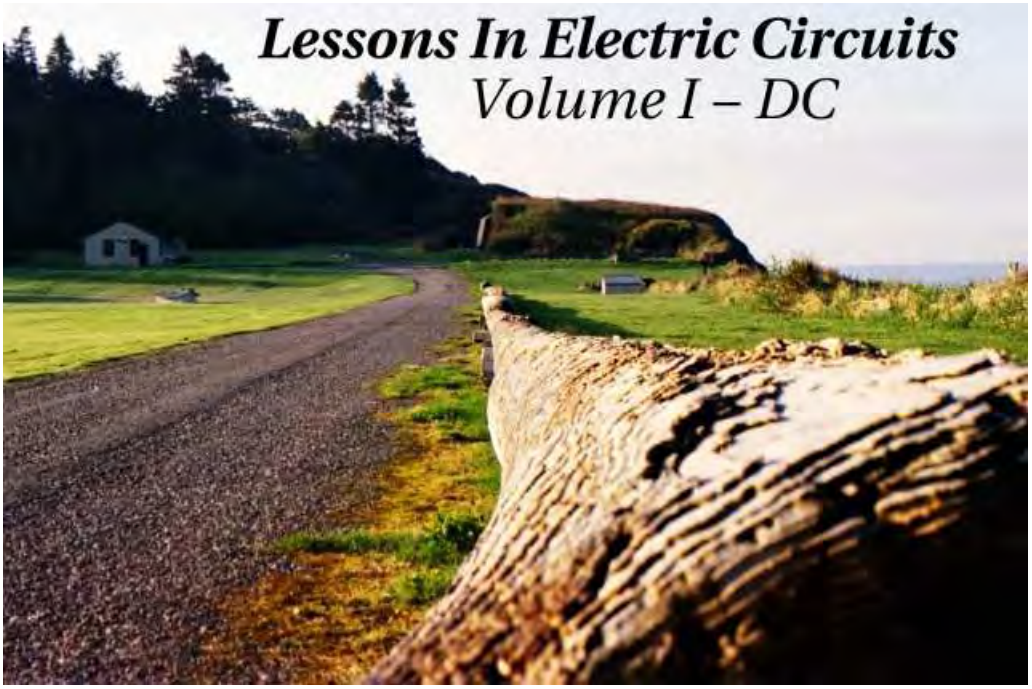


Fifth Edition, last update October 18, 2006

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume I – DC

By Tony R. Kuphaldt

Fifth Edition, last update October 18, 2006

PRINTING HISTORY

- First Edition: Printed in June of 2000. Plain-ASCII illustrations for universal computer readability.
- Second Edition: Printed in September of 2000. Illustrations reworked in standard graphic (eps and jpeg) format. Source files translated to *Texinfo* format for easy online and printed publication.
- Third Edition: Equations and tables reworked as graphic images rather than plain-ASCII text.
- Fourth Edition: Printed in August 2001. Source files translated to *SubML* format. SubML is a simple markup language designed to easily convert to other markups like LaTeX, HTML, or DocBook using nothing but search-and-replace substitutions.
- Fifth Edition: Printed in August 2002. New sections added, and error corrections made, since the fourth edition.

Contents

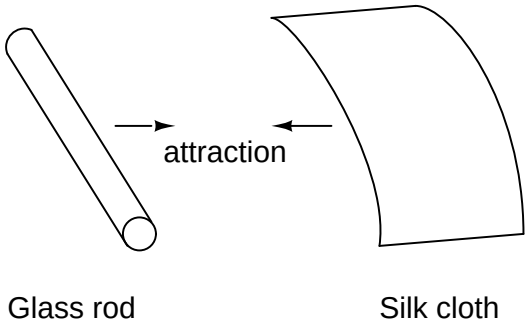
Chapter 1

BASIC CONCEPTS OF ELECTRICITY

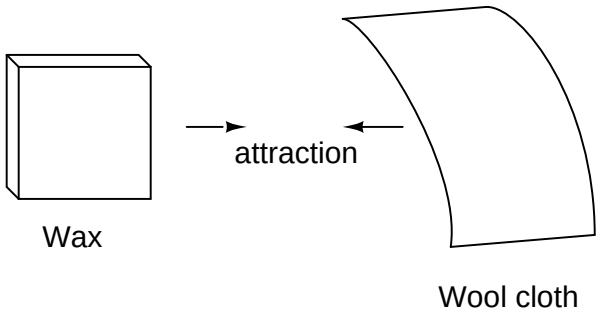
Contents

1.1 Static electricity

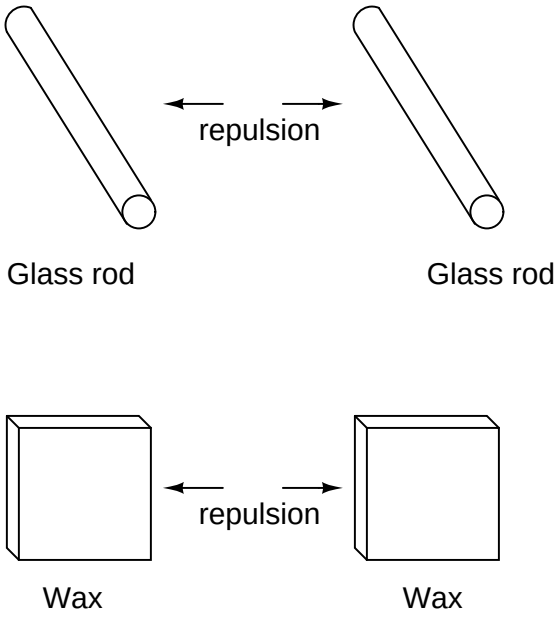
It was discovered centuries ago that certain types of materials would mysteriously attract one another after being rubbed together. For example: after rubbing a piece of silk against a piece of glass, the silk and glass would tend to stick together. Indeed, there was an attractive force that could be demonstrated even when the two materials were separated:



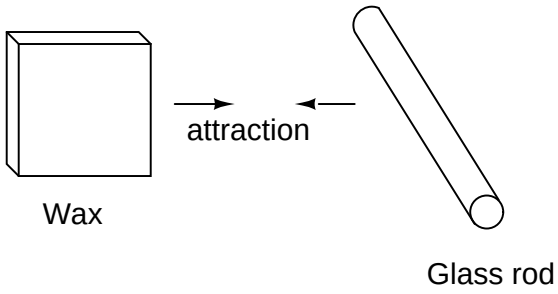
Glass and silk aren't the only materials known to behave like this. Anyone who has ever brushed up against a latex balloon only to find that it tries to stick to them has experienced this same phenomenon. Paraffin wax and wool cloth are another pair of materials early experimenters recognized as manifesting attractive forces after being rubbed together:



This phenomenon became even more interesting when it was discovered that identical materials, after having been rubbed with their respective cloths, always repelled each other:

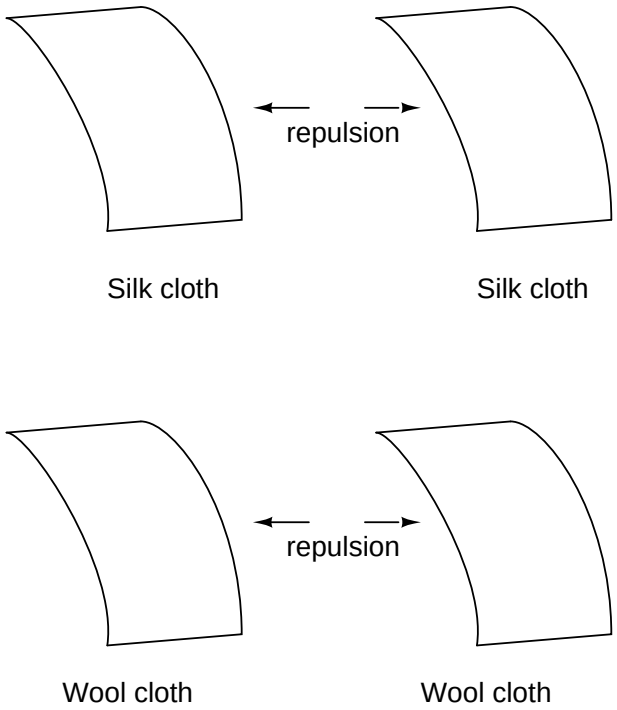


It was also noted that when a piece of glass rubbed with silk was exposed to a piece of wax rubbed with wool, the two materials would attract one another:



Furthermore, it was found that any material demonstrating properties of attraction or repulsion after being rubbed could be classed into one of two distinct categories: attracted to glass and repelled by wax, or repelled by glass and attracted to wax. It was either one or the other: there were no materials found that would be attracted to or repelled by both glass and wax, or that reacted to one without reacting to the other.

More attention was directed toward the pieces of cloth used to do the rubbing. It was discovered that after rubbing two pieces of glass with two pieces of silk cloth, not only did the glass pieces repel each other, but so did the cloths. The same phenomenon held for the pieces of wool used to rub the wax:



Now, this was really strange to witness. After all, none of these objects were visibly altered by the rubbing, yet they definitely behaved differently than before they were rubbed. Whatever change took place to make these materials attract or repel one another was invisible.

Some experimenters speculated that invisible ”fluids” were being transferred from one object to another during the process of rubbing, and that these ”fluids” were able to effect a physical force over a distance. Charles Dufay was one the early experimenters who demonstrated that there were definitely two different types of changes wrought by rubbing certain pairs of objects together. The fact that there was more than one type of change manifested in these materials was evident by the fact that there were two types of forces produced: *attraction* and *repulsion*. The hypothetical fluid transfer became known as a *charge*.

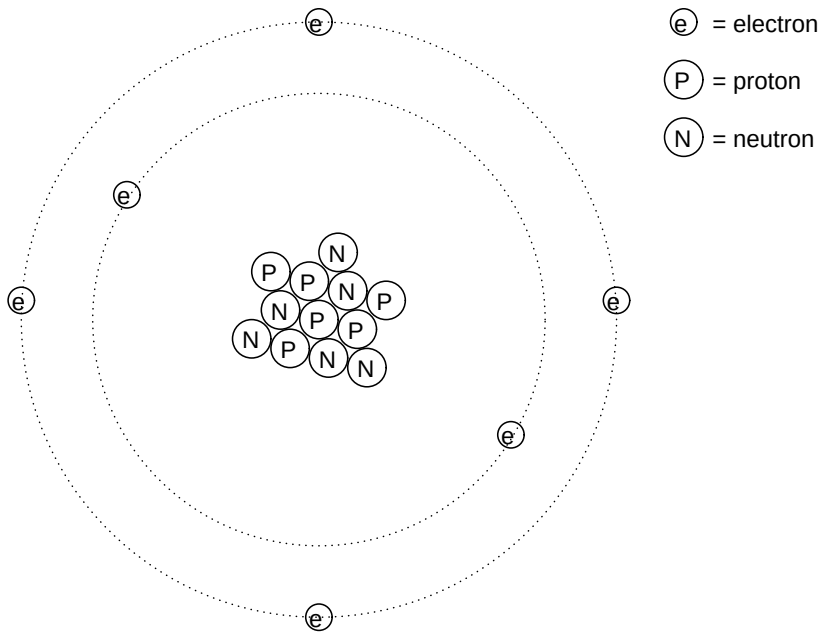
One pioneering researcher, Benjamin Franklin, came to the conclusion that there was only one fluid exchanged between rubbed objects, and that the two different ”charges” were nothing more than either an excess or a deficiency of that one fluid. After experimenting with wax and wool, Franklin suggested that the coarse wool removed some of this invisible fluid from the smooth wax, causing an excess of fluid on the wool and a deficiency of fluid on the wax. The resulting disparity in fluid content between the wool and wax would then cause an attractive force, as the fluid tried to regain its former balance between the two materials.

Postulating the existence of a single ”fluid” that was either gained or lost through rubbing accounted best for the observed behavior: that all these materials fell neatly into one of two categories when rubbed, and most importantly, that the two active materials rubbed against each other *always fell into opposing categories* as evidenced by their invariable attraction to one another. In other words, there was never a time where two materials rubbed against each other *both* became either positive or negative.

Following Franklin's speculation of the wool rubbing something off of the wax, the type of charge that was associated with rubbed wax became known as "negative" (because it was supposed to have a deficiency of fluid) while the type of charge associated with the rubbing wool became known as "positive" (because it was supposed to have an excess of fluid). Little did he know that his innocent conjecture would cause much confusion for students of electricity in the future!

Precise measurements of electrical charge were carried out by the French physicist Charles Coulomb in the 1780's using a device called a *torsional balance* measuring the force generated between two electrically charged objects. The results of Coulomb's work led to the development of a unit of electrical charge named in his honor, the *coulomb*. If two "point" objects (hypothetical objects having no appreciable surface area) were equally charged to a measure of 1 coulomb, and placed 1 meter (approximately 1 yard) apart, they would generate a force of about 9 billion newtons (approximately 2 billion pounds), either attracting or repelling depending on the types of charges involved.

It was discovered much later that this "fluid" was actually composed of extremely small bits of matter called *electrons*, so named in honor of the ancient Greek word for amber: another material exhibiting charged properties when rubbed with cloth. Experimentation has since revealed that all objects are composed of extremely small "building-blocks" known as *atoms*, and that these atoms are in turn composed of smaller components known as *particles*. The three fundamental particles comprising most atoms are called *protons*, *neutrons* and *electrons*. Whilst the majority of atoms have a combination of protons, neutrons, and electrons, not all atoms have neutrons; an example is the protium isotope ($_1H^1$) of hydrogen (Hydrogen-1) which is the lightest and most common form of hydrogen which only has one proton and one electron. Atoms are far too small to be seen, but if we could look at one, it might appear something like this:



Even though each atom in a piece of material tends to hold together as a unit, there's actually a lot of empty space between the electrons and the cluster of protons and neutrons residing in the middle.

This crude model is that of the element carbon, with six protons, six neutrons, and six electrons. In any atom, the protons and neutrons are very tightly bound together, which is an important quality. The tightly-bound clump of protons and neutrons in the center of the atom is called the *nucleus*, and the number of protons in an atom's nucleus determines its elemental identity: change the number of protons in an atom's nucleus, and you change the type of atom that it is. In fact, if you could remove three protons from the nucleus of an atom of lead, you will have achieved the old alchemists' dream of producing an atom of gold! The tight binding of protons in the nucleus is responsible for the stable identity of chemical elements, and the failure of alchemists to achieve their dream.

Neutrons are much less influential on the chemical character and identity of an atom than protons, although they are just as hard to add to or remove from the nucleus, being so tightly bound. If neutrons are added or gained, the atom will still retain the same chemical identity, but its mass will change slightly and it may acquire strange *nuclear* properties such as radioactivity.

However, electrons have significantly more freedom to move around in an atom than either protons or neutrons. In fact, they can be knocked out of their respective positions (even leaving the atom entirely!) by far less energy than what it takes to dislodge particles in the nucleus. If this happens, the atom still retains its chemical identity, but an important imbalance occurs. Electrons and protons are unique in the fact that they are attracted to one another over a distance. It is this attraction over distance which causes the attraction between rubbed objects, where electrons are moved away from their original atoms to reside around atoms of another object.

Electrons tend to repel other electrons over a distance, as do protons with other protons. The only reason protons bind together in the nucleus of an atom is because of a much stronger force called the *strong nuclear force* which has effect only under very short distances. Because of this attraction/repulsion behavior between individual particles, electrons and protons are said to have opposite electric charges. That is, each electron has a negative charge, and each proton a positive charge. In equal numbers within an atom, they counteract each other's presence so that the net charge within the atom is zero. This is why the picture of a carbon atom had six electrons: to balance out the electric charge of the six protons in the nucleus. If electrons leave or extra electrons arrive, the atom's net electric charge will be imbalanced, leaving the atom "charged" as a whole, causing it to interact with charged particles and other charged atoms nearby. Neutrons are neither attracted to or repelled by electrons, protons, or even other neutrons, and are consequently categorized as having no charge at all.

The process of electrons arriving or leaving is exactly what happens when certain combinations of materials are rubbed together: electrons from the atoms of one material are forced by the rubbing to leave their respective atoms and transfer over to the atoms of the other material. In other words, electrons comprise the "fluid" hypothesized by Benjamin Franklin. The operational definition of a coulomb as the unit of electrical charge (in terms of force generated between point charges) was found to be equal to an excess or deficiency of about 6,250,000,000,000,000,000 electrons. Or, stated in reverse terms, one electron has a charge of about 0.00000000000000000016 coulombs. Being that one electron is the smallest known carrier of electric charge, this last figure of charge for the electron is defined as the *elementary*

charge.

The result of an imbalance of this "fluid" (electrons) between objects is called *static electricity*. It is called "static" because the displaced electrons tend to remain stationary after being moved from one insulating material to another. In the case of wax and wool, it was determined through further experimentation that electrons in the wool actually transferred to the atoms in the wax, which is exactly opposite of Franklin's conjecture! In honor of Franklin's designation of the wax's charge being "negative" and the wool's charge being "positive," electrons are said to have a "negative" charging influence. Thus, an object whose atoms have received a surplus of electrons is said to be *negatively* charged, while an object whose atoms are lacking electrons is said to be *positively* charged, as confusing as these designations may seem. By the time the true nature of electric "fluid" was discovered, Franklin's nomenclature of electric charge was too well established to be easily changed, and so it remains to this day.

Michael Faraday proved (1832) that static electricity was the same as that produced by a battery or a generator. Static electricity is, for the most part, a nusiance. Black powder and smokeless powder have graphite added to prevent ignition due to static electricity. It causes damage to sensitive semiconductor circuitry. While is is possible to produce motors powered by high voltage and low current characteristic of static electricity, this is not economic. The few practical applications of static electricity include xerographic printing, the electrostatic air filter, and the high voltage Van de Graaff generator.

- **REVIEW:**
- All materials are made up of tiny "building blocks" known as *atoms*.
- All naturally occurring atoms contain particles called *electrons*, *protons*, and *neutrons*, with the exception of the protium isotope ($_1H^1$) of hydrogen.
- Electrons have a negative (-) electric charge.
- Protons have a positive (+) electric charge.
- Neutrons have no electric charge.
- Electrons can be dislodged from atoms much easier than protons or neutrons.
- The number of protons in an atom's nucleus determines its identity as a unique element.

1.2 Conductors, insulators, and electron flow

The electrons of different types of atoms have different degrees of freedom to move around. With some types of materials, such as metals, the outermost electrons in the atoms are so loosely bound that they chaotically move in the space between the atoms of that material by nothing more than the influence of room-temperature heat energy. Because these virtually unbound electrons are free to leave their respective atoms and float around in the space between adjacent atoms, they are often called *free electrons*.

In other types of materials such as glass, the atoms' electrons have very little freedom to move around. While external forces such as physical rubbing can force some of these electrons

to leave their respective atoms and transfer to the atoms of another material, they do not move between atoms within that material very easily.

This relative mobility of electrons within a material is known as electric *conductivity*. Conductivity is determined by the types of atoms in a material (the number of protons in each atom's nucleus, determining its chemical identity) and how the atoms are linked together with one another. Materials with high electron mobility (many free electrons) are called *conductors*, while materials with low electron mobility (few or no free electrons) are called *insulators*.

Here are a few common examples of conductors and insulators:

- **Conductors:**
- silver
- copper
- gold
- aluminum
- iron
- steel
- brass
- bronze
- mercury
- graphite
- dirty water
- concrete

- **Insulators:**
- glass
- rubber
- oil
- asphalt
- fiberglass
- porcelain
- ceramic

- quartz
- (dry) cotton
- (dry) paper
- (dry) wood
- plastic
- air
- diamond
- pure water

It must be understood that not all conductive materials have the same level of conductivity, and not all insulators are equally resistant to electron motion. Electrical conductivity is analogous to the transparency of certain materials to light: materials that easily ”conduct” light are called ”transparent,” while those that don't are called ”opaque.” However, not all transparent materials are equally conductive to light. Window glass is better than most plastics, and certainly better than ”clear” fiberglass. So it is with electrical conductors, some being better than others.

For instance, silver is the best conductor in the ”conductors” list, offering easier passage for electrons than any other material cited. Dirty water and concrete are also listed as conductors, but these materials are substantially less conductive than any metal.

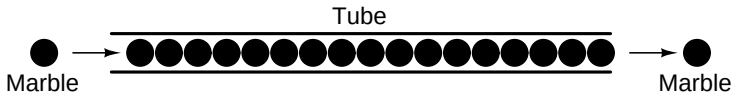
Physical dimension also impacts conductivity. For instance, if we take two strips of the same conductive material – one thin and the other thick – the thick strip will prove to be a better conductor than the thin for the same length. If we take another pair of strips – this time both with the same thickness but one shorter than the other – the shorter one will offer easier passage to electrons than the long one. This is analogous to water flow in a pipe: a fat pipe offers easier passage than a skinny pipe, and a short pipe is easier for water to move through than a long pipe, all other dimensions being equal.

It should also be understood that some materials experience changes in their electrical properties under different conditions. Glass, for instance, is a very good insulator at room temperature, but becomes a conductor when heated to a very high temperature. Gases such as air, normally insulating materials, also become conductive if heated to very high temperatures. Most metals become poorer conductors when heated, and better conductors when cooled. Many conductive materials become perfectly conductive (this is called *superconductivity*) at extremely low temperatures.

While the normal motion of ”free” electrons in a conductor is random, with no particular direction or speed, electrons can be influenced to move in a coordinated fashion through a conductive material. This uniform motion of electrons is what we call *electricity*, or *electric current*. To be more precise, it could be called *dynamic* electricity in contrast to *static* electricity, which is an unmoving accumulation of electric charge. Just like water flowing through the emptiness of a pipe, electrons are able to move within the empty space within and between the atoms of a conductor. The conductor may appear to be solid to our eyes, but any material

composed of atoms is mostly empty space! The liquid-flow analogy is so fitting that the motion of electrons through a conductor is often referred to as a "flow."

A noteworthy observation may be made here. As each electron moves uniformly through a conductor, it pushes on the one ahead of it, such that all the electrons move together as a group. The starting and stopping of electron flow through the length of a conductive path is virtually instantaneous from one end of a conductor to the other, even though the motion of each electron may be very slow. An approximate analogy is that of a tube filled end-to-end with marbles:

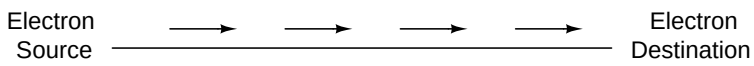


The tube is full of marbles, just as a conductor is full of free electrons ready to be moved by an outside influence. If a single marble is suddenly inserted into this full tube on the left-hand side, another marble will immediately try to exit the tube on the right. Even though each marble only traveled a short distance, the transfer of motion through the tube is virtually instantaneous from the left end to the right end, no matter how long the tube is. With electricity, the overall effect from one end of a conductor to the other happens at the speed of light: a swift 186,000 miles per second!!! Each individual electron, though, travels through the conductor at a *much* slower pace.

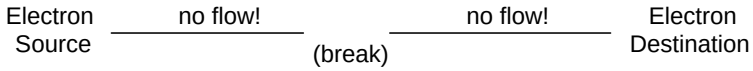
If we want electrons to flow in a certain direction to a certain place, we must provide the proper path for them to move, just as a plumber must install piping to get water to flow where he or she wants it to flow. To facilitate this, *wires* are made of highly conductive metals such as copper or aluminum in a wide variety of sizes.

Remember that electrons can flow only when they have the opportunity to move in the space between the atoms of a material. This means that there can be electric current *only* where there exists a continuous path of conductive material providing a conduit for electrons to travel through. In the marble analogy, marbles can flow into the left-hand side of the tube (and, consequently, through the tube) if and only if the tube is open on the right-hand side for marbles to flow out. If the tube is blocked on the right-hand side, the marbles will just "pile up" inside the tube, and marble "flow" will not occur. The same holds true for electric current: the continuous flow of electrons requires there be an unbroken path to permit that flow. Let's look at a diagram to illustrate how this works:

A thin, solid line (as shown above) is the conventional symbol for a continuous piece of wire. Since the wire is made of a conductive material, such as copper, its constituent atoms have many free electrons which can easily move through the wire. However, there will never be a continuous or uniform flow of electrons within this wire unless they have a place to come from and a place to go. Let's add an hypothetical electron "Source" and "Destination:"

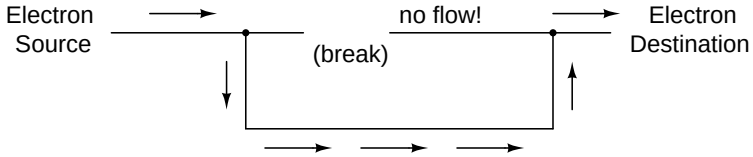


Now, with the Electron Source pushing new electrons into the wire on the left-hand side, electron flow through the wire can occur (as indicated by the arrows pointing from left to right). However, the flow will be interrupted if the conductive path formed by the wire is broken:



Since air is an insulating material, and an air gap separates the two pieces of wire, the once-continuous path has now been broken, and electrons cannot flow from Source to Destination. This is like cutting a water pipe in two and capping off the broken ends of the pipe: water can't flow if there's no exit out of the pipe. In electrical terms, we had a condition of electrical *continuity* when the wire was in one piece, and now that continuity is broken with the wire cut and separated.

If we were to take another piece of wire leading to the Destination and simply make physical contact with the wire leading to the Source, we would once again have a continuous path for electrons to flow. The two dots in the diagram indicate physical (metal-to-metal) contact between the wire pieces:



Now, we have continuity from the Source, to the newly-made connection, down, to the right, and up to the Destination. This is analogous to putting a "tee" fitting in one of the capped-off pipes and directing water through a new segment of pipe to its destination. Please take note that the broken segment of wire on the right hand side has no electrons flowing through it, because it is no longer part of a complete path from Source to Destination.

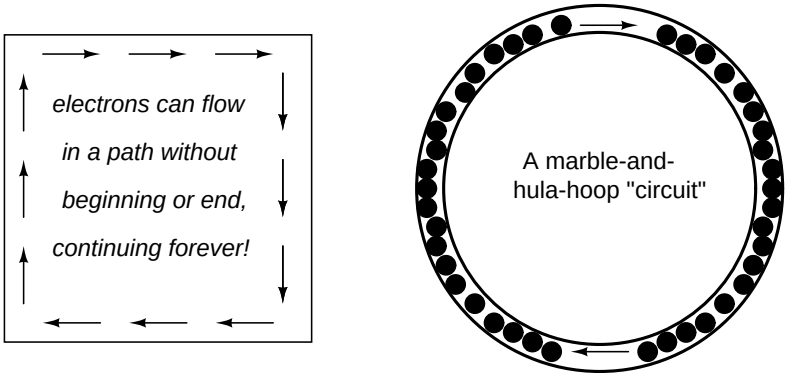
It is interesting to note that no "wear" occurs within wires due to this electric current, unlike water-carrying pipes which are eventually corroded and worn by prolonged flows. Electrons do encounter some degree of friction as they move, however, and this friction can generate heat in a conductor. This is a topic we'll explore in much greater detail later.

- **REVIEW:**
- In *conductive* materials, the outer electrons in each atom can easily come or go, and are called *free electrons*.
- In *insulating* materials, the outer electrons are not so free to move.
- All metals are electrically conductive.
- *Dynamic electricity*, or *electric current*, is the uniform motion of electrons through a conductor.
- *Static electricity* is an unmoving (if on an insulator), accumulated charge formed by either an excess or deficiency of electrons in an object. It is typically formed by charge separation by contact and separation of dissimilar materials.
- For electrons to flow continuously (indefinitely) through a conductor, there must be a complete, unbroken path for them to move both into and out of that conductor.

1.3 Electric circuits

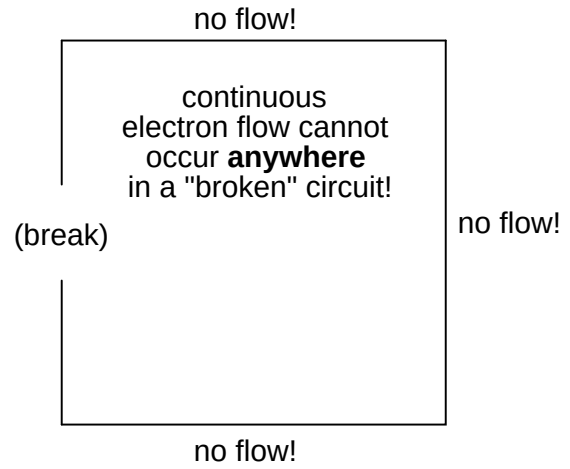
You might have been wondering how electrons can continuously flow in a uniform direction through wires without the benefit of these hypothetical electron Sources and Destinations. In order for the Source-and-Destination scheme to work, both would have to have an infinite capacity for electrons in order to sustain a continuous flow! Using the marble-and-tube analogy, the marble source and marble destination buckets would have to be infinitely large to contain enough marble capacity for a "flow" of marbles to be sustained.

The answer to this paradox is found in the concept of a *circuit*: a never-ending looped pathway for electrons. If we take a wire, or many wires joined end-to-end, and loop it around so that it forms a continuous pathway, we have the means to support a uniform flow of electrons without having to resort to infinite Sources and Destinations:

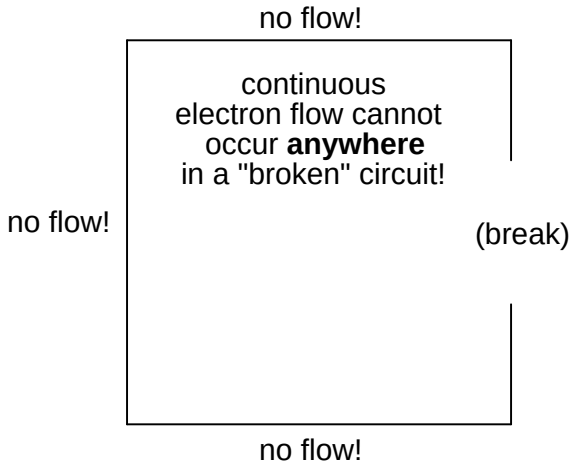


Each electron advancing clockwise in this circuit pushes on the one in front of it, which pushes on the one in front of it, and so on, and so on, just like a hula-hoop filled with marbles. Now, we have the capability of supporting a continuous flow of electrons indefinitely without the need for infinite electron supplies and dumps. All we need to maintain this flow is a continuous means of motivation for those electrons, which we'll address in the next section of this chapter.

It must be realized that continuity is just as important in a circuit as it is in a straight piece of wire. Just as in the example with the straight piece of wire between the electron Source and Destination, any break in this circuit will prevent electrons from flowing through it:



An important principle to realize here is that *it doesn't matter where the break occurs*. Any discontinuity in the circuit will prevent electron flow throughout the entire circuit. Unless there is a continuous, unbroken loop of conductive material for electrons to flow through, a sustained flow simply cannot be maintained.

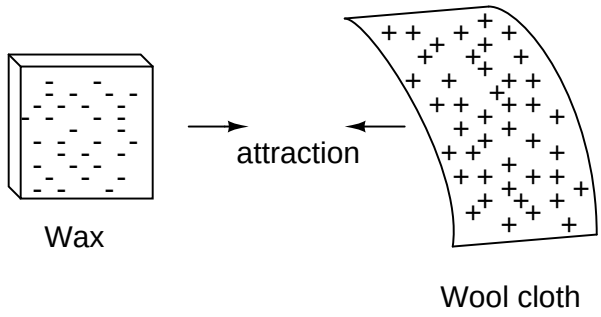


- **REVIEW:**
- A *circuit* is an unbroken loop of conductive material that allows electrons to flow through continuously without beginning or end.
- If a circuit is "broken," that means its conductive elements no longer form a complete path, and continuous electron flow cannot occur in it.
- The location of a break in a circuit is irrelevant to its inability to sustain continuous electron flow. *Any* break, *anywhere* in a circuit prevents electron flow throughout the circuit.

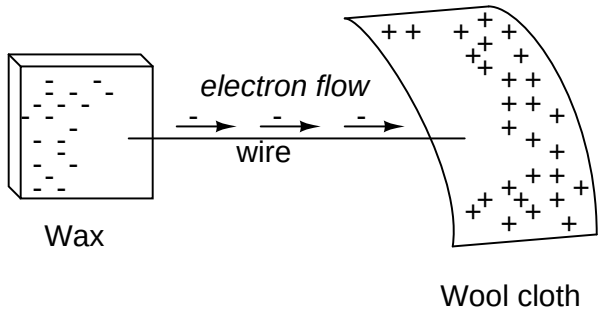
1.4 Voltage and current

As was previously mentioned, we need more than just a continuous path (circuit) before a continuous flow of electrons will occur: we also need some means to push these electrons around the circuit. Just like marbles in a tube or water in a pipe, it takes some kind of influencing force to initiate flow. With electrons, this force is the same force at work in static electricity: the force produced by an imbalance of electric charge.

If we take the examples of wax and wool which have been rubbed together, we find that the surplus of electrons in the wax (negative charge) and the deficit of electrons in the wool (positive charge) creates an imbalance of charge between them. This imbalance manifests itself as an attractive force between the two objects:

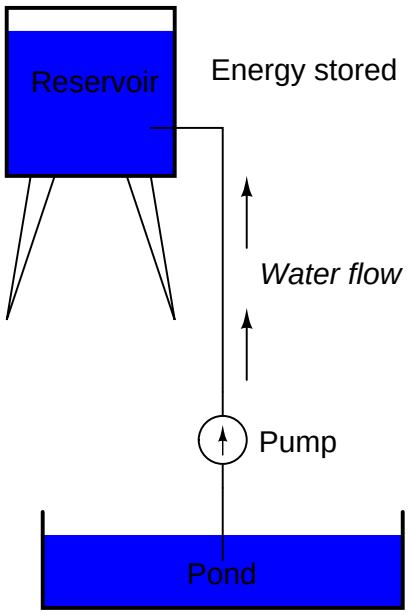


If a conductive wire is placed between the charged wax and wool, electrons will flow through it, as some of the excess electrons in the wax rush through the wire to get back to the wool, filling the deficiency of electrons there:

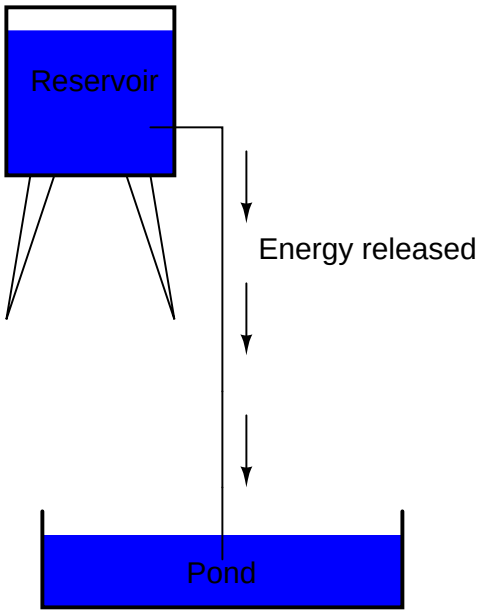


The imbalance of electrons between the atoms in the wax and the atoms in the wool creates a force between the two materials. With no path for electrons to flow from the wax to the wool, all this force can do is attract the two objects together. Now that a conductor bridges the insulating gap, however, the force will provoke electrons to flow in a uniform direction through the wire, if only momentarily, until the charge in that area neutralizes and the force between the wax and wool diminishes.

The electric charge formed between these two materials by rubbing them together serves to store a certain amount of energy. This energy is not unlike the energy stored in a high reservoir of water that has been pumped from a lower-level pond:

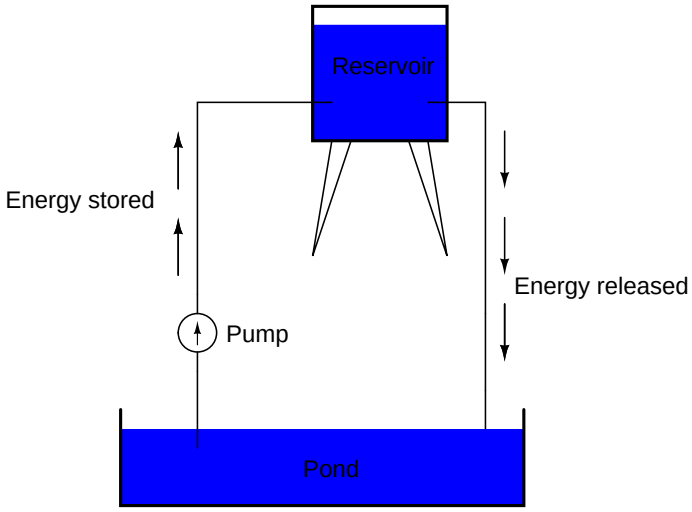


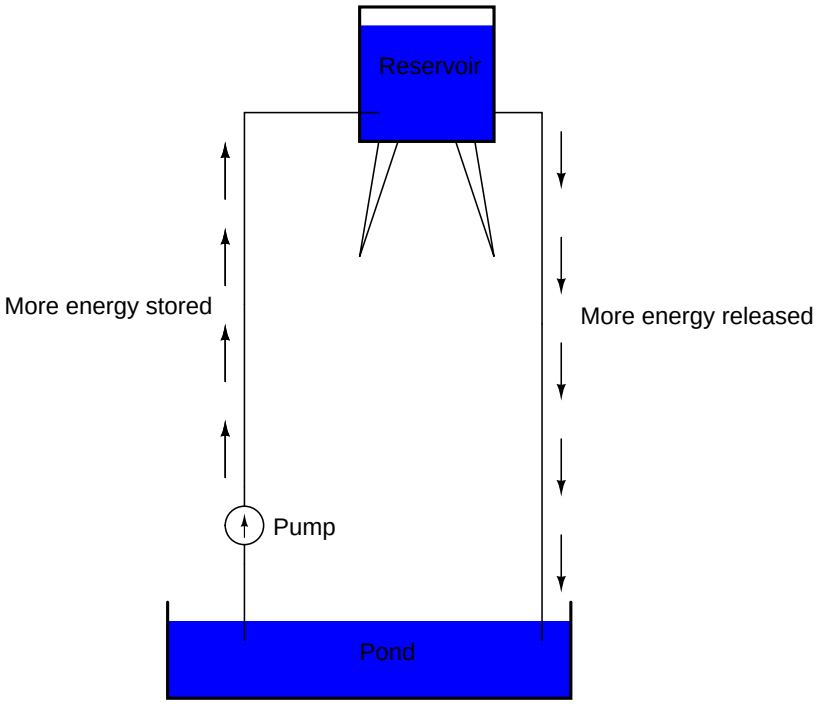
The influence of gravity on the water in the reservoir creates a force that attempts to move the water down to the lower level again. If a suitable pipe is run from the reservoir back to the pond, water will flow under the influence of gravity down from the reservoir, through the pipe:



It takes energy to pump that water from the low-level pond to the high-level reservoir, and the movement of water through the piping back down to its original level constitutes a releasing of energy stored from previous pumping.

If the water is pumped to an even higher level, it will take even more energy to do so, thus more energy will be stored, and more energy released if the water is allowed to flow through a pipe back down again:





Electrons are not much different. If we rub wax and wool together, we ”pump” electrons

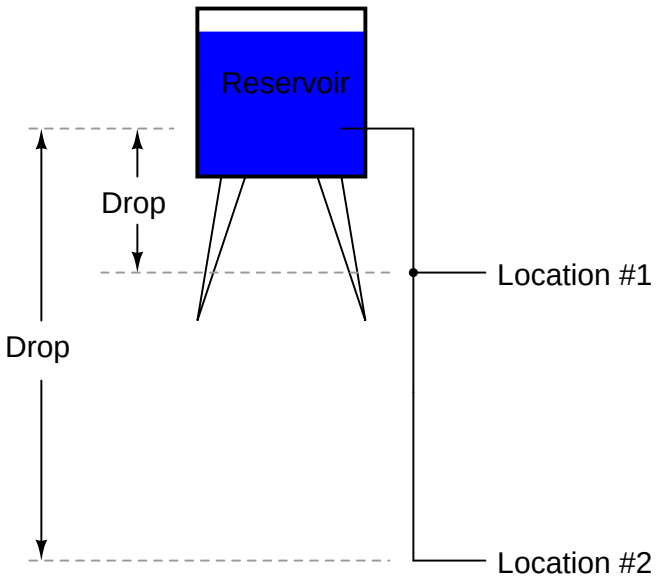
away from their normal "levels," creating a condition where a force exists between the wax and wool, as the electrons seek to re-establish their former positions (and balance within their respective atoms). The force attracting electrons back to their original positions around the positive nuclei of their atoms is analogous to the force gravity exerts on water in the reservoir, trying to draw it down to its former level.

Just as the pumping of water to a higher level results in energy being stored, "pumping" electrons to create an electric charge imbalance results in a certain amount of energy being stored in that imbalance. And, just as providing a way for water to flow back down from the heights of the reservoir results in a release of that stored energy, providing a way for electrons to flow back to their original "levels" results in a release of stored energy.

When the electrons are poised in that static condition (just like water sitting still, high in a reservoir), the energy stored there is called *potential energy*, because it has the possibility (potential) of release that has not been fully realized yet. When you scuff your rubber-soled shoes against a fabric carpet on a dry day, you create an imbalance of electric charge between yourself and the carpet. The action of scuffing your feet stores energy in the form of an imbalance of electrons forced from their original locations. This charge (static electricity) is stationary, and you won't realize that energy is being stored at all. However, once you place your hand against a metal doorknob (with lots of electron mobility to neutralize your electric charge), that stored energy will be released in the form of a sudden flow of electrons through your hand, and you will perceive it as an electric shock!

This potential energy, stored in the form of an electric charge imbalance and capable of provoking electrons to flow through a conductor, can be expressed as a term called *voltage*, which technically is a measure of potential energy per unit charge of electrons, or something a physicist would call *specific potential energy*. Defined in the context of static electricity, voltage is the measure of work required to move a unit charge from one location to another, against the force which tries to keep electric charges balanced. In the context of electrical power sources, voltage is the amount of potential energy available (work to be done) per unit charge, to move electrons through a conductor.

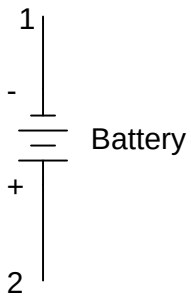
Because voltage is an expression of potential energy, representing the possibility or potential for energy release as the electrons move from one "level" to another, it is always referenced between two points. Consider the water reservoir analogy:



Because of the difference in the height of the drop, there's potential for much more energy to be released from the reservoir through the piping to location 2 than to location 1. The principle can be intuitively understood in dropping a rock: which results in a more violent impact, a rock dropped from a height of one foot, or the same rock dropped from a height of one mile? Obviously, the drop of greater height results in greater energy released (a more violent impact). We cannot assess the amount of stored energy in a water reservoir simply by measuring the volume of water any more than we can predict the severity of a falling rock's impact simply from knowing the weight of the rock: in both cases we must also consider how *far* these masses will drop from their initial height. The amount of energy released by allowing a mass to drop is relative to the distance *between* its starting and ending points. Likewise, the potential energy available for moving electrons from one point to another is relative to those two points. Therefore, voltage is always expressed as a quantity *between* two points. Interestingly enough, the analogy of a mass potentially "dropping" from one height to another is such an apt model that voltage between two points is sometimes called a *voltage drop*.

Voltage can be generated by means other than rubbing certain types of materials against each other. Chemical reactions, radiant energy, and the influence of magnetism on conductors are a few ways in which voltage may be produced. Respective examples of these three sources of voltage are batteries, solar cells, and generators (such as the "alternator" unit under the hood of your automobile). For now, we won't go into detail as to how each of these voltage sources works – more important is that we understand how voltage sources can be applied to create electron flow in a circuit.

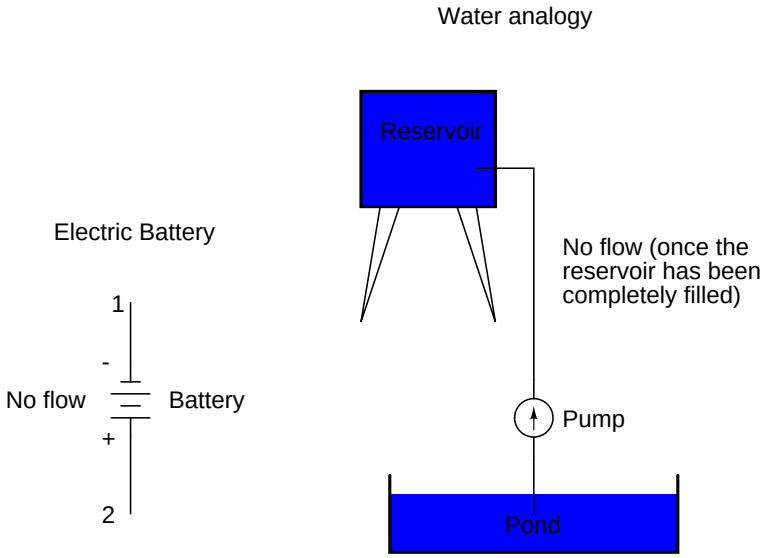
Let's take the symbol for a chemical battery and build a circuit step by step:



Any source of voltage, including batteries, have two points for electrical contact. In this case, we have point 1 and point 2 in the above diagram. The horizontal lines of varying length indicate that this is a battery, and they further indicate the direction which this battery's voltage will try to push electrons through a circuit. The fact that the horizontal lines in the battery symbol appear separated (and thus unable to serve as a path for electrons to move) is no cause for concern: in real life, those horizontal lines represent metallic plates immersed in a liquid or semi-solid material that not only conducts electrons, but also generates the voltage to push them along by interacting with the plates.

Notice the little "+" and "-" signs to the immediate left of the battery symbol. The negative (-) end of the battery is always the end with the shortest dash, and the positive (+) end of the battery is always the end with the longest dash. Since we have decided to call electrons "negatively" charged (thanks, Ben!), the negative end of a battery is that end which tries to push electrons out of it. Likewise, the positive end is that end which tries to attract electrons.

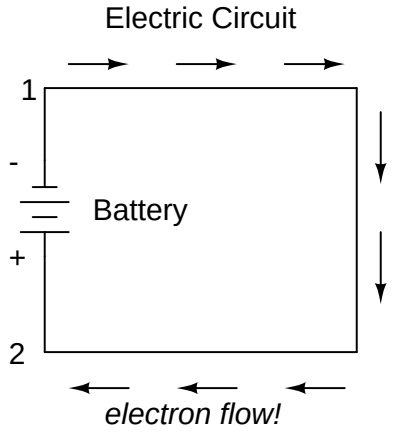
With the "+" and "-" ends of the battery not connected to anything, there will be no flow of electrons through the battery, because there is no continuous path for the electrons to move.

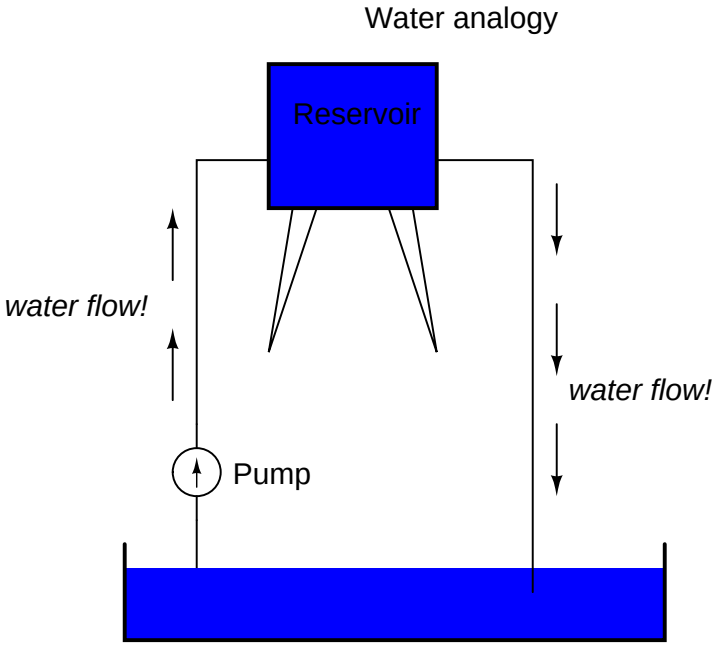


The same principle holds true for the water reservoir and pump analogy: without a return

pipe back to the pond, stored energy in the reservoir cannot be released in the form of water flow. Once the reservoir is completely filled up, no flow can occur, no matter how much pressure the pump may generate. There needs to be a complete path (circuit) for water to flow from the pond, to the reservoir, and back to the pond in order for continuous flow to occur.

We can provide such a path for the battery by connecting a piece of wire from one end of the battery to the other. Forming a circuit with a loop of wire, we will initiate a continuous flow of electrons in a clockwise direction:



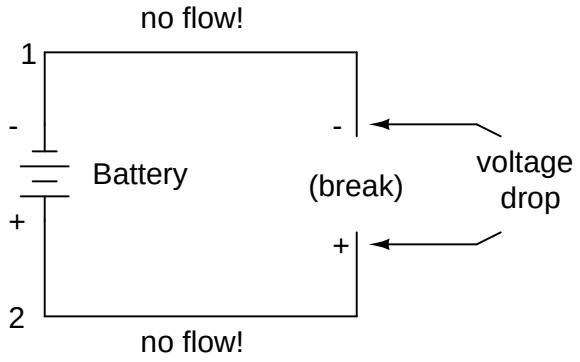


So long as the battery continues to produce voltage and the continuity of the electrical path

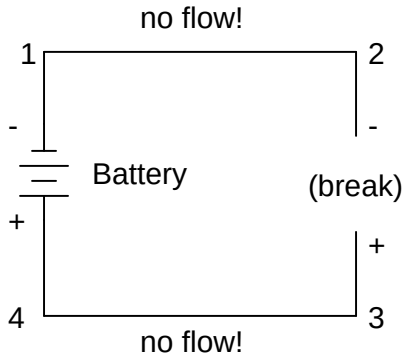
isn't broken, electrons will continue to flow in the circuit. Following the metaphor of water moving through a pipe, this continuous, uniform flow of electrons through the circuit is called a *current*. So long as the voltage source keeps "pushing" in the same direction, the electron flow will continue to move in the same direction in the circuit. This single-direction flow of electrons is called a *Direct Current*, or DC. In the second volume of this book series, electric circuits are explored where the direction of current switches back and forth: *Alternating Current*, or AC. But for now, we'll just concern ourselves with DC circuits.

Because electric current is composed of individual electrons flowing in unison through a conductor by moving along and pushing on the electrons ahead, just like marbles through a tube or water through a pipe, the amount of flow throughout a single circuit will be the same at any point. If we were to monitor a cross-section of the wire in a single circuit, counting the electrons flowing by, we would notice the exact same quantity per unit of time as in any other part of the circuit, regardless of conductor length or conductor diameter.

If we break the circuit's continuity *at any point*, the electric current will cease in the entire loop, and the full voltage produced by the battery will be manifested across the break, between the wire ends that used to be connected:

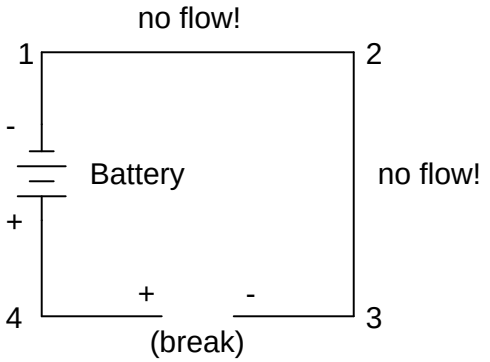


Notice the "+" and "-" signs drawn at the ends of the break in the circuit, and how they correspond to the "+" and "-" signs next to the battery's terminals. These markers indicate the direction that the voltage attempts to push electron flow, that potential direction commonly referred to as *polarity*. Remember that voltage is always relative between two points. Because of this fact, the polarity of a voltage drop is also relative between two points: whether a point in a circuit gets labeled with a "+" or a "-" depends on the other point to which it is referenced. Take a look at the following circuit, where each corner of the loop is marked with a number for reference:



With the circuit's continuity broken between points 2 and 3, the polarity of the voltage dropped between points 2 and 3 is "-" for point 2 and "+" for point 3. The battery's polarity (1 "-" and 4 "+") is trying to push electrons through the loop clockwise from 1 to 2 to 3 to 4 and back to 1 again.

Now let's see what happens if we connect points 2 and 3 back together again, but place a break in the circuit between points 3 and 4:



With the break between 3 and 4, the polarity of the voltage drop between those two points is "+" for 4 and "-" for 3. Take special note of the fact that point 3's "sign" is opposite of that in the first example, where the break was between points 2 and 3 (where point 3 was labeled "+"). It is impossible for us to say that point 3 in this circuit will always be either "+" or "-", because polarity, like voltage itself, is not specific to a single point, but is always relative between two points!

- **REVIEW:**
- Electrons can be motivated to flow through a conductor by the same force manifested in static electricity.
- *Voltage* is the measure of specific potential energy (potential energy per unit charge) between two locations. In layman's terms, it is the measure of "push" available to motivate electrons.
- Voltage, as an expression of potential energy, is always relative between two locations, or points. Sometimes it is called a voltage "drop."

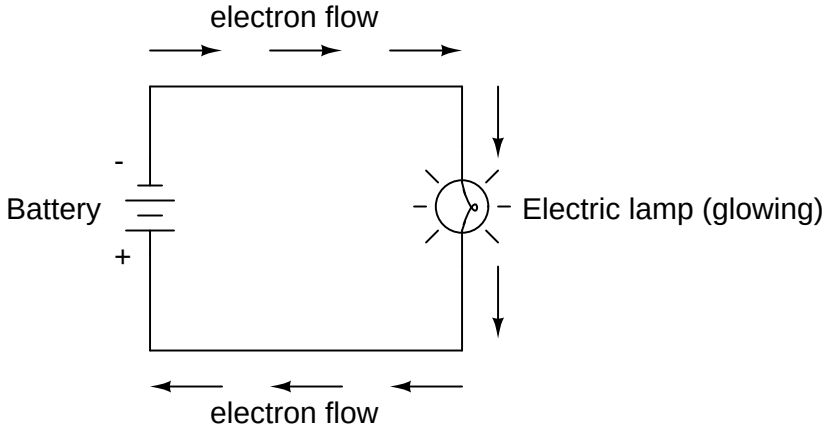
- When a voltage source is connected to a circuit, the voltage will cause a uniform flow of electrons through that circuit called a *current*.
- In a single (one loop) circuit, the amount of current at any point is the same as the amount of current at any other point.
- If a circuit containing a voltage source is broken, the full voltage of that source will appear across the points of the break.
- The +/- orientation a voltage drop is called the *polarity*. It is also relative between two points.

1.5 Resistance

The circuit in the previous section is not a very practical one. In fact, it can be quite dangerous to build (directly connecting the poles of a voltage source together with a single piece of wire). The reason it is dangerous is because the magnitude of electric current may be very large in such a *short circuit*, and the release of energy very dramatic (usually in the form of heat). Usually, electric circuits are constructed in such a way as to make practical use of that released energy, in as safe a manner as possible.

One practical and popular use of electric current is for the operation of electric lighting. The simplest form of electric lamp is a tiny metal "filament" inside of a clear glass bulb, which glows white-hot ("incandesces") with heat energy when sufficient electric current passes through it. Like the battery, it has two conductive connection points, one for electrons to enter and the other for electrons to exit.

Connected to a source of voltage, an electric lamp circuit looks something like this:

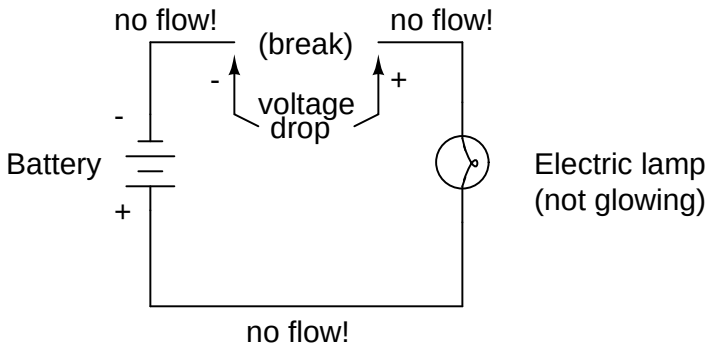


As the electrons work their way through the thin metal filament of the lamp, they encounter more opposition to motion than they typically would in a thick piece of wire. This opposition to electric current depends on the type of material, its cross-sectional area, and its temperature. It is technically known as *resistance*. (It can be said that conductors have low resistance and insulators have very high resistance.) This resistance serves to limit the amount of current through the circuit with a given amount of voltage supplied by the battery, as compared with

the ”short circuit” where we had nothing but a wire joining one end of the voltage source (battery) to the other.

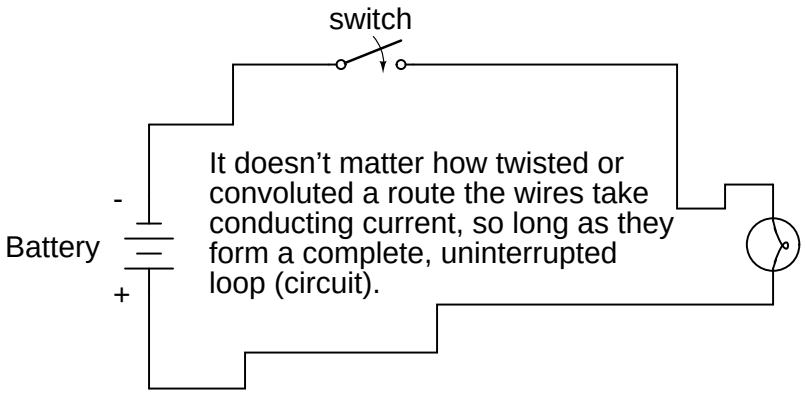
When electrons move against the opposition of resistance, ”friction” is generated. Just like mechanical friction, the friction produced by electrons flowing against a resistance manifests itself in the form of heat. The concentrated resistance of a lamp’s filament results in a relatively large amount of heat energy dissipated at that filament. This heat energy is enough to cause the filament to glow white-hot, producing light, whereas the wires connecting the lamp to the battery (which have much lower resistance) hardly even get warm while conducting the same amount of current.

As in the case of the short circuit, if the continuity of the circuit is broken at any point, electron flow stops throughout the entire circuit. With a lamp in place, this means that it will stop glowing:



As before, with no flow of electrons, the entire potential (voltage) of the battery is available across the break, waiting for the opportunity of a connection to bridge across that break and permit electron flow again. This condition is known as an *open circuit*, where a break in the continuity of the circuit prevents current throughout. All it takes is a single break in continuity to ”open” a circuit. Once any breaks have been connected once again and the continuity of the circuit re-established, it is known as a *closed circuit*.

What we see here is the basis for switching lamps on and off by remote switches. Because any break in a circuit’s continuity results in current stopping throughout the entire circuit, we can use a device designed to intentionally break that continuity (called a *switch*), mounted at any convenient location that we can run wires to, to control the flow of electrons in the circuit:



This is how a switch mounted on the wall of a house can control a lamp that is mounted down a long hallway, or even in another room, far away from the switch. The switch itself is constructed of a pair of conductive contacts (usually made of some kind of metal) forced together by a mechanical lever actuator or pushbutton. When the contacts touch each other, electrons are able to flow from one to the other and the circuit's continuity is established; when the contacts are separated, electron flow from one to the other is prevented by the insulation of the air between, and the circuit's continuity is broken.

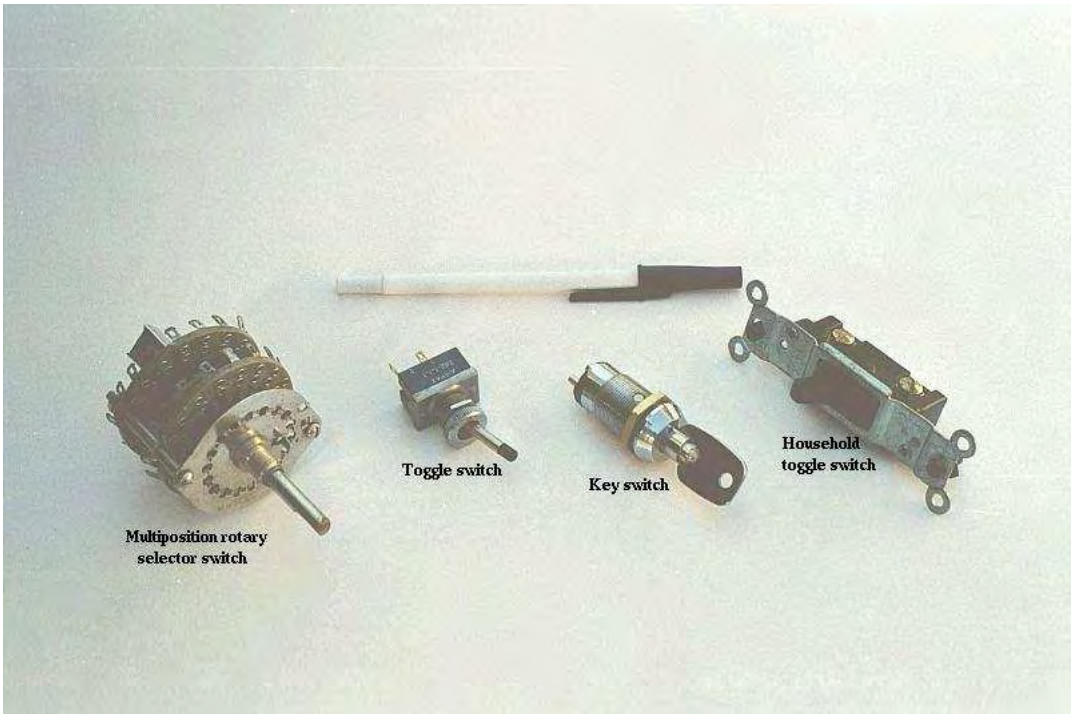
Perhaps the best kind of switch to show for illustration of the basic principle is the "knife" switch:

A knife switch is nothing more than a conductive lever, free to pivot on a hinge, coming into physical contact with one or more stationary contact points which are also conductive. The switch shown in the above illustration is constructed on a porcelain base (an excellent insulating material), using copper (an excellent conductor) for the "blade" and contact points. The handle is plastic to insulate the operator's hand from the conductive blade of the switch when opening or closing it.

Here is another type of knife switch, with two stationary contacts instead of one:

The particular knife switch shown here has one ”blade” but two stationary contacts, meaning that it can make or break more than one circuit. For now this is not terribly important to be aware of, just the basic concept of what a switch is and how it works.

Knife switches are great for illustrating the basic principle of how a switch works, but they present distinct safety problems when used in high-power electric circuits. The exposed conductors in a knife switch make accidental contact with the circuit a distinct possibility, and any sparking that may occur between the moving blade and the stationary contact is free to ignite any nearby flammable materials. Most modern switch designs have their moving conductors and contact points sealed inside an insulating case in order to mitigate these hazards. A photograph of a few modern switch types show how the switching mechanisms are much more concealed than with the knife design:



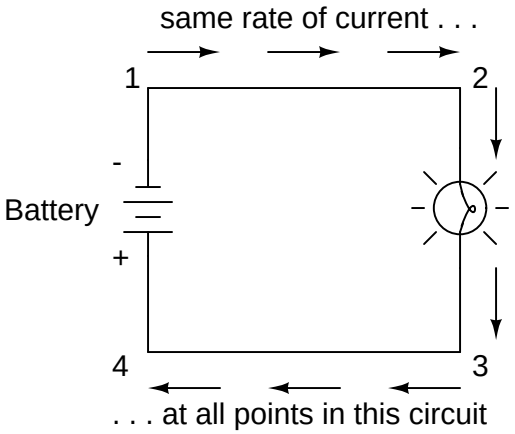
In keeping with the ”open” and ”closed” terminology of circuits, a switch that is making contact from one connection terminal to the other (example: a knife switch with the blade fully touching the stationary contact point) provides continuity for electrons to flow through, and is called a *closed* switch. Conversely, a switch that is breaking continuity (example: a knife switch with the blade *not* touching the stationary contact point) won't allow electrons to pass through and is called an *open* switch. This terminology is often confusing to the new student of electronics, because the words ”open” and ”closed” are commonly understood in the context of a door, where ”open” is equated with free passage and ”closed” with blockage. With electrical switches, these terms have opposite meaning: ”open” means no flow while ”closed” means free passage of electrons.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Resistance* is the measure of opposition to electric current.
- A *short circuit* is an electric circuit offering little or no resistance to the flow of electrons. Short circuits are dangerous with high voltage power sources because the high currents encountered can cause large amounts of heat energy to be released.
- An *open circuit* is one where the continuity has been broken by an interruption in the path for electrons to flow.
- A *closed circuit* is one that is complete, with good continuity throughout.
- A device designed to open or close a circuit under controlled conditions is called a *switch*.

- The terms *"open"* and *"closed"* refer to switches as well as entire circuits. An open switch is one without continuity: electrons cannot flow through it. A closed switch is one that provides a direct (low resistance) path for electrons to flow through.

1.6 Voltage and current in a practical circuit

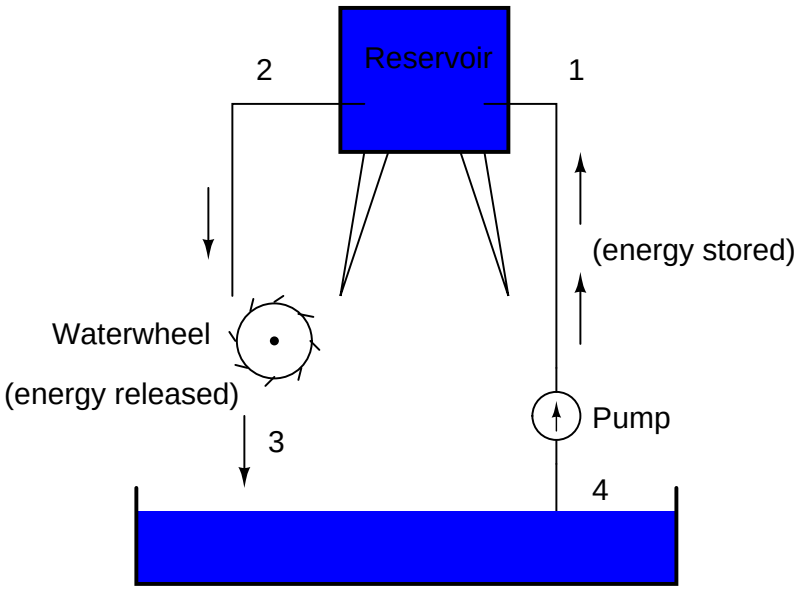
Because it takes energy to force electrons to flow against the opposition of a resistance, there will be voltage manifested (or "dropped") between any points in a circuit with resistance between them. It is important to note that although the amount of current (the quantity of electrons moving past a given point every second) is uniform in a simple circuit, the amount of voltage (potential energy per unit charge) between different sets of points in a single circuit may vary considerably:



Take this circuit as an example. If we label four points in this circuit with the numbers 1, 2, 3, and 4, we will find that the amount of current conducted through the wire between points 1 and 2 is exactly the same as the amount of current conducted through the lamp (between points 2 and 3). This same quantity of current passes through the wire between points 3 and 4, and through the battery (between points 1 and 4).

However, we will find the voltage appearing between any two of these points to be directly proportional to the resistance within the conductive path between those two points, given that the amount of current along any part of the circuit's path is the same (which, for this simple circuit, it is). In a normal lamp circuit, the resistance of a lamp will be much greater than the resistance of the connecting wires, so we should expect to see a substantial amount of voltage between points 2 and 3, with very little between points 1 and 2, or between 3 and 4. The voltage between points 1 and 4, of course, will be the full amount of "force" offered by the battery, which will be only slightly greater than the voltage across the lamp (between points 2 and 3).

This, again, is analogous to the water reservoir system:



Between points 2 and 3, where the falling water is releasing energy at the water-wheel, there is a difference of pressure between the two points, reflecting the opposition to the flow of water through the water-wheel. From point 1 to point 2, or from point 3 to point 4, where water is flowing freely through reservoirs with little opposition, there is little or no difference of pressure (no potential energy). However, the rate of water flow in this continuous system is the same everywhere (assuming the water levels in both pond and reservoir are unchanging): through the pump, through the water-wheel, and through all the pipes. So it is with simple electric circuits: the rate of electron flow is the same at every point in the circuit, although voltages may differ between different sets of points.

1.7 Conventional versus electron flow

"The nice thing about standards is that there are so many of them to choose from."
Andrew S. Tanenbaum, computer science professor

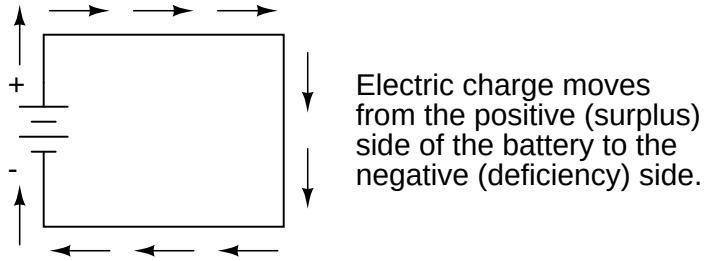
When Benjamin Franklin made his conjecture regarding the direction of charge flow (from the smooth wax to the rough wool), he set a precedent for electrical notation that exists to this day, despite the fact that we know electrons are the constituent units of charge, and that they are displaced from the wool to the wax – not from the wax to the wool – when those two substances are rubbed together. This is why electrons are said to have a *negative* charge: because Franklin assumed electric charge moved in the opposite direction that it actually does, and so objects he called "negative" (representing a deficiency of charge) actually have a surplus of electrons.

By the time the true direction of electron flow was discovered, the nomenclature of "positive" and "negative" had already been so well established in the scientific community that no effort was made to change it, although calling electrons "positive" would make more sense in

referring to "excess" charge. You see, the terms "positive" and "negative" are human inventions, and as such have no absolute meaning beyond our own conventions of language and scientific description. Franklin could have just as easily referred to a surplus of charge as "black" and a deficiency as "white," in which case scientists would speak of electrons having a "white" charge (assuming the same incorrect conjecture of charge position between wax and wool).

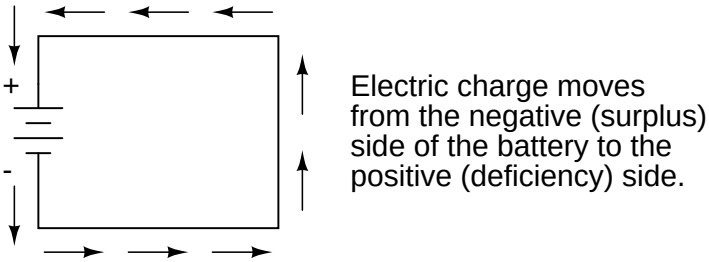
However, because we tend to associate the word "positive" with "surplus" and "negative" with "deficiency," the standard label for electron charge does seem backward. Because of this, many engineers decided to retain the old concept of electricity with "positive" referring to a surplus of charge, and label charge flow (current) accordingly. This became known as *conventional flow* notation:

Conventional flow notation



Others chose to designate charge flow according to the actual motion of electrons in a circuit. This form of symbology became known as *electron flow* notation:

Electron flow notation



In conventional flow notation, we show the motion of charge according to the (technically incorrect) labels of + and -. This way the labels make sense, but the direction of charge flow is incorrect. In electron flow notation, we follow the actual motion of electrons in the circuit, but the + and - labels seem backward. Does it matter, really, how we designate charge flow in a circuit? Not really, so long as we're consistent in the use of our symbols. You may follow an imagined direction of current (conventional flow) or the actual (electron flow) with equal success insofar as circuit analysis is concerned. Concepts of voltage, current, resistance, continuity, and even mathematical treatments such as Ohm's Law (chapter 2) and Kirchhoff's Laws (chapter 6) remain just as valid with either style of notation.

You will find conventional flow notation followed by most electrical engineers, and illustrated in most engineering textbooks. Electron flow is most often seen in introductory text-

books (this one included) and in the writings of professional scientists, especially solid-state physicists who are concerned with the actual motion of electrons in substances. These preferences are cultural, in the sense that certain groups of people have found it advantageous to envision electric current motion in certain ways. Being that most analyses of electric circuits do not depend on a technically accurate depiction of charge flow, the choice between conventional flow notation and electron flow notation is arbitrary . . . almost.

Many electrical devices tolerate real currents of either direction with no difference in operation. Incandescent lamps (the type utilizing a thin metal filament that glows white-hot with sufficient current), for example, produce light with equal efficiency regardless of current direction. They even function well on alternating current (AC), where the direction changes rapidly over time. Conductors and switches operate irrespective of current direction, as well. The technical term for this irrelevance of charge flow is *nonpolarization*. We could say then, that incandescent lamps, switches, and wires are *nonpolarized* components. Conversely, any device that functions differently on currents of different direction would be called a *polarized* device.

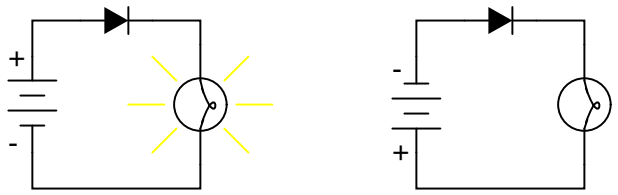
There are many such polarized devices used in electric circuits. Most of them are made of so-called *semiconductor* substances, and as such aren't examined in detail until the third volume of this book series. Like switches, lamps, and batteries, each of these devices is represented in a schematic diagram by a unique symbol. As one might guess, polarized device symbols typically contain an arrow within them, somewhere, to designate a preferred or exclusive direction of current. This is where the competing notations of conventional and electron flow really matter. Because engineers from long ago have settled on conventional flow as their "culture's" standard notation, and because engineers are the same people who invent electrical devices and the symbols representing them, the arrows used in these devices' symbols *all point in the direction of conventional flow, not electron flow*. That is to say, all of these devices' symbols have arrow marks that point *against* the actual flow of electrons through them.

Perhaps the best example of a polarized device is the *diode*. A diode is a one-way "valve" for electric current, analogous to a *check valve* for those familiar with plumbing and hydraulic systems. Ideally, a diode provides unimpeded flow for current in one direction (little or no resistance), but prevents flow in the other direction (infinite resistance). Its schematic symbol looks like this:

Diode

Placed within a battery/lamp circuit, its operation is as such:

Diode operation

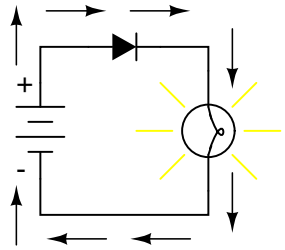


Current permitted Current prohibited

When the diode is facing in the proper direction to permit current, the lamp glows. Otherwise, the diode blocks all electron flow just like a break in the circuit, and the lamp will not glow.

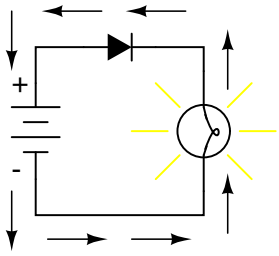
If we label the circuit current using conventional flow notation, the arrow symbol of the diode makes perfect sense: the triangular arrowhead points in the direction of charge flow, from positive to negative:

Current shown using conventional flow notation



On the other hand, if we use electron flow notation to show the *true* direction of electron travel around the circuit, the diode's arrow symbology seems backward:

Current shown using electron flow notation



For this reason alone, many people choose to make conventional flow their notation of choice when drawing the direction of charge motion in a circuit. If for no other reason, the symbols associated with semiconductor components like diodes make more sense this way. However, others choose to show the true direction of electron travel so as to avoid having to tell them-

selves, ”just remember the electrons are *actually* moving the other way” whenever the true direction of electron motion becomes an issue.

In this series of textbooks, I have committed to using electron flow notation. Ironically, this was not my first choice. I found it much easier when I was first learning electronics to use conventional flow notation, primarily because of the directions of semiconductor device symbol arrows. Later, when I began my first formal training in electronics, my instructor insisted on using electron flow notation in his lectures. In fact, he asked that we take our textbooks (which were illustrated using conventional flow notation) and use our pens to change the directions of all the current arrows so as to point the ”correct” way! His preference was not arbitrary, though. In his 20-year career as a U.S. Navy electronics technician, he worked on a lot of vacuum-tube equipment. Before the advent of semiconductor components like transistors, devices known as *vacuum tubes* or *electron tubes* were used to amplify small electrical signals. These devices work on the phenomenon of electrons hurtling through a vacuum, their rate of flow controlled by voltages applied between metal plates and grids placed within their path, and are best understood when visualized using electron flow notation.

When I graduated from that training program, I went back to my old habit of conventional flow notation, primarily for the sake of minimizing confusion with component symbols, since vacuum tubes are all but obsolete except in special applications. Collecting notes for the writing of this book, I had full intention of illustrating it using conventional flow.

Years later, when I became a teacher of electronics, the curriculum for the program I was going to teach had already been established around the notation of electron flow. Oddly enough, this was due in part to the legacy of my first electronics instructor (the 20-year Navy veteran), but that’s another story entirely! Not wanting to confuse students by teaching ”differently” from the other instructors, I had to overcome my habit and get used to visualizing electron flow instead of conventional. Because I wanted my book to be a useful resource for my students, I begrudgingly changed plans and illustrated it with all the arrows pointing the ”correct” way. Oh well, sometimes you just can’t win!

On a positive note (no pun intended), I have subsequently discovered that some students prefer electron flow notation when first learning about the behavior of semiconductive substances. Also, the habit of visualizing electrons flowing *against* the arrows of polarized device symbols isn’t that difficult to learn, and in the end I’ve found that I can follow the operation of a circuit equally well using either mode of notation. Still, I sometimes wonder if it would all be much easier if we went back to the source of the confusion – Ben Franklin’s errant conjecture – and fixed the problem there, calling electrons ”positive” and protons ”negative.”

1.8 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Bill Heath (September 2002): Pointed out error in illustration of carbon atom – the nucleus was shown with seven protons instead of six.

Ben Crowell, Ph.D. (January 13, 2001): suggestions on improving the technical accuracy of *voltage* and *charge* definitions.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 2

OHM's LAW

Contents

"One microampere flowing in one ohm causes a one microvolt potential drop."
Georg Simon Ohm

2.1 How voltage, current, and resistance relate

An electric circuit is formed when a conductive path is created to allow free electrons to continuously move. This continuous movement of free electrons through the conductors of a circuit is called a *current*, and it is often referred to in terms of "flow," just like the flow of a liquid through a hollow pipe.

The force motivating electrons to "flow" in a circuit is called *voltage*. Voltage is a specific measure of potential energy that is always relative between two points. When we speak of a certain amount of voltage being present in a circuit, we are referring to the measurement of how much *potential* energy exists to move electrons from one particular point in that circuit to another particular point. Without reference to *two* particular points, the term "voltage" has no meaning.

Free electrons tend to move through conductors with some degree of friction, or opposition to motion. This opposition to motion is more properly called *resistance*. The amount of current in a circuit depends on the amount of voltage available to motivate the electrons, and also the amount of resistance in the circuit to oppose electron flow. Just like voltage, resistance is a quantity relative between two points. For this reason, the quantities of voltage and resistance are often stated as being "between" or "across" two points in a circuit.

To be able to make meaningful statements about these quantities in circuits, we need to be able to describe their quantities in the same way that we might quantify mass, temperature, volume, length, or any other kind of physical quantity. For mass we might use the units of "kilogram" or "gram." For temperature we might use degrees Fahrenheit or degrees Celsius. Here are the standard units of measurement for electrical current, voltage, and resistance:

Quantity	Symbol	Unit of Measurement	Unit Abbreviation
Current	I	Ampere ("Amp")	A
Voltage	E *or* V	Volt	V
Resistance	R	Ohm	Ω

The "symbol" given for each quantity is the standard alphabetical letter used to represent that quantity in an algebraic equation. Standardized letters like these are common in the disciplines of physics and engineering, and are internationally recognized. The "unit abbreviation" for each quantity represents the alphabetical symbol used as a shorthand notation for its particular unit of measurement. And, yes, that strange-looking "horseshoe" symbol is the capital Greek letter Ω, just a character in a *foreign* alphabet (apologies to any Greek readers here).

Each unit of measurement is named after a famous experimenter in electricity: The *amp* after the Frenchman Andre M. Ampere, the *volt* after the Italian Alessandro Volta, and the *ohm* after the German Georg Simon Ohm.

The mathematical symbol for each quantity is meaningful as well. The "R" for resistance and the "V" for voltage are both self-explanatory, whereas "I" for current seems a bit weird. The "I" is thought to have been meant to represent "Intensity" (of electron flow), and the other symbol for voltage, "E," stands for "Electromotive force." From what research I've been able to do, there seems to be some dispute over the meaning of "I." The symbols "E" and "V" are interchangeable for the most part, although some texts reserve "E" to represent voltage across a source (such as a battery or generator) and "V" to represent voltage across anything else.

All of these symbols are expressed using capital letters, except in cases where a quantity (especially voltage or current) is described in terms of a brief period of time (called an "instantaneous" value). For example, the voltage of a battery, which is stable over a long period of time, will be symbolized with a capital letter "E," while the voltage peak of a lightning strike at the very instant it hits a power line would most likely be symbolized with a lower-case letter "e" (or lower-case "v") to designate that value as being at a single moment in time. This same lower-case convention holds true for current as well, the lower-case letter "i" representing current at some instant in time. Most direct-current (DC) measurements, however, being stable over time, will be symbolized with capital letters.

One foundational unit of electrical measurement, often taught in the beginnings of electronics courses but used infrequently afterwards, is the unit of the *coulomb*, which is a measure of electric charge proportional to the number of electrons in an imbalanced state. One coulomb of charge is equal to 6,250,000,000,000,000,000 electrons. The symbol for electric charge quantity is the capital letter "Q," with the unit of coulombs abbreviated by the capital letter "C." It so happens that the unit for electron flow, the amp, is equal to 1 coulomb of electrons passing by a given point in a circuit in 1 second of time. Cast in these terms, current is the *rate of electric charge motion* through a conductor.

As stated before, voltage is the measure of *potential energy per unit charge* available to motivate electrons from one point to another. Before we can precisely define what a "volt" is, we must understand how to measure this quantity we call "potential energy." The general metric unit for energy of any kind is the *joule*, equal to the amount of work performed by a force of 1 newton exerted through a motion of 1 meter (in the same direction). In British units, this is slightly less than 3/4 pound of force exerted over a distance of 1 foot. Put in common terms, it takes about 1 joule of energy to lift a 3/4 pound weight 1 foot off the ground, or to drag something a distance of 1 foot using a parallel pulling force of 3/4 pound. Defined in these scientific terms, 1 volt is equal to 1 joule of electric potential energy per (divided by) 1 coulomb of charge. Thus, a 9 volt battery releases 9 joules of energy for every coulomb of electrons moved through a circuit.

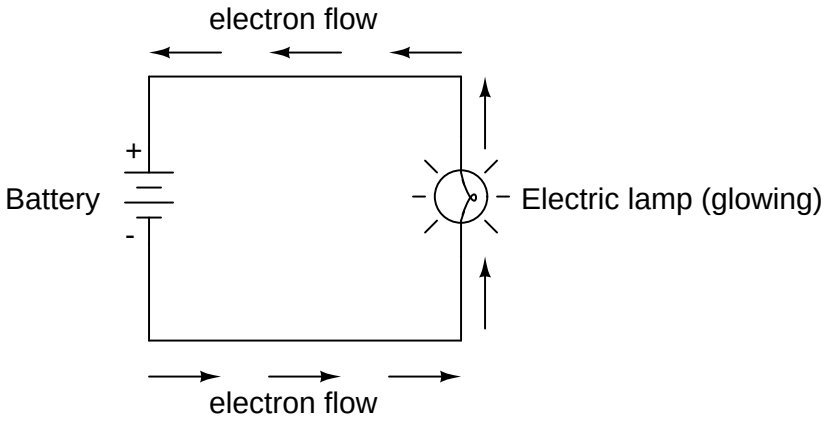
These units and symbols for electrical quantities will become very important to know as we begin to explore the relationships between them in circuits. The first, and perhaps most important, relationship between current, voltage, and resistance is called Ohm's Law, discovered by Georg Simon Ohm and published in his 1827 paper, *The Galvanic Circuit Investigated Mathematically*. Ohm's principal discovery was that the amount of electric current through a metal conductor in a circuit is directly proportional to the voltage impressed across it, for any given temperature. Ohm expressed his discovery in the form of a simple equation, describing how voltage, current, and resistance interrelate:

$$E = I R$$

In this algebraic expression, voltage (E) is equal to current (I) multiplied by resistance (R). Using algebra techniques, we can manipulate this equation into two variations, solving for I and for R, respectively:

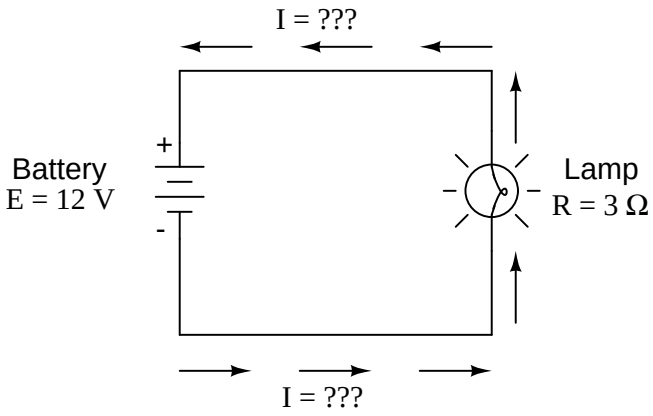
$$I = \frac{E}{R} \qquad R = \frac{E}{I}$$

Let's see how these equations might work to help us analyze simple circuits:



In the above circuit, there is only one source of voltage (the battery, on the left) and only one source of resistance to current (the lamp, on the right). This makes it very easy to apply Ohm's Law. If we know the values of any two of the three quantities (voltage, current, and resistance) in this circuit, we can use Ohm's Law to determine the third.

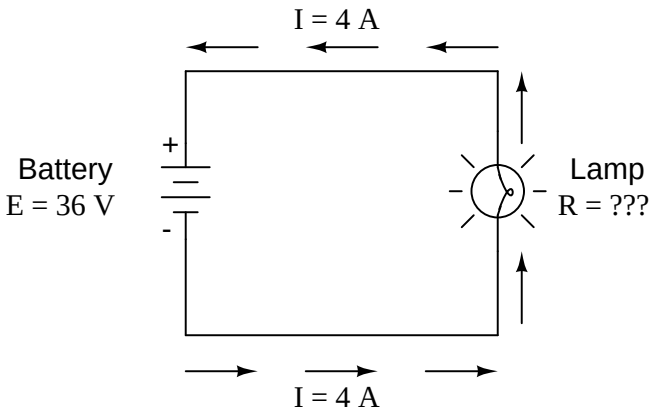
In this first example, we will calculate the amount of current (I) in a circuit, given values of voltage (E) and resistance (R):



What is the amount of current (I) in this circuit?

$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{12\ V}{3\ \Omega} = 4\ A$$

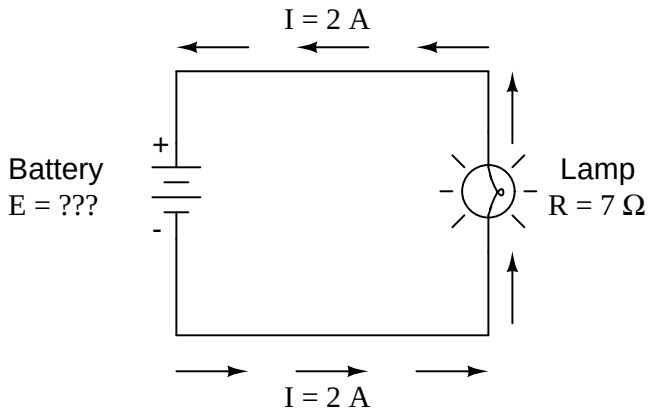
In this second example, we will calculate the amount of resistance (R) in a circuit, given values of voltage (E) and current (I):



What is the amount of resistance (R) offered by the lamp?

$$R = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{36\ V}{4\ A} = 9\ \Omega$$

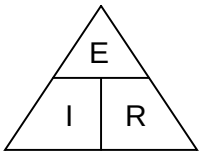
In the last example, we will calculate the amount of voltage supplied by a battery, given values of current (I) and resistance (R):



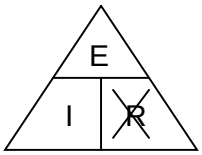
What is the amount of voltage provided by the battery?

$$E = IR = (2\ A)(7\ \Omega) = 14\ V$$

Ohm's Law is a very simple and useful tool for analyzing electric circuits. It is used so often in the study of electricity and electronics that it needs to be committed to memory by the serious student. For those who are not yet comfortable with algebra, there's a trick to remembering how to solve for any one quantity, given the other two. First, arrange the letters E, I, and R in a triangle like this:

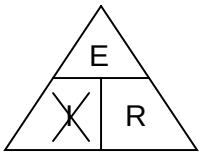


If you know E and I, and wish to determine R, just eliminate R from the picture and see what's left:



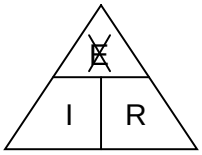
$$R = \frac{E}{I}$$

If you know E and R, and wish to determine I, eliminate I and see what's left:



$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

Lastly, if you know I and R, and wish to determine E, eliminate E and see what's left:



$$E = I\,R$$

Eventually, you'll have to be familiar with algebra to seriously study electricity and electronics, but this tip can make your first calculations a little easier to remember. If you are comfortable with algebra, all you need to do is commit E=IR to memory and derive the other two formulae from that when you need them!

- **REVIEW:**
- Voltage measured in *volts*, symbolized by the letters "E" or "V".
- Current measured in *amps*, symbolized by the letter "I".
- Resistance measured in *ohms*, symbolized by the letter "R".
- Ohm's Law: E = IR ; I = E/R ; R = E/I

2.2 An analogy for Ohm's Law

Ohm's Law also makes intuitive sense if you apply it to the water-and-pipe analogy. If we have a water pump that exerts pressure (voltage) to push water around a "circuit" (current) through

a restriction (resistance), we can model how the three variables interrelate. If the resistance to water flow stays the same and the pump pressure increases, the flow rate must also increase.

Pressure	= increase	**Voltage**	= increase
Flow rate	= increase	**Current**	= increase
Resistance	= same	**Resistance**	= same

$$\overset{\uparrow}{E} = \overset{\uparrow}{I}\ R$$

If the pressure stays the same and the resistance increases (making it more difficult for the water to flow), then the flow rate must decrease:

Pressure	= same	**Voltage**	= same
Flow rate	= decrease	**Current**	= decrease
Resistance	= increase	**Resistance**	= increase

$$E = I\ \overset{\uparrow}{R}$$

If the flow rate were to stay the same while the resistance to flow decreased, the required pressure from the pump would necessarily decrease:

Pressure	= decrease	**Voltage**	= decrease
Flow rate	= same	**Current**	= same
Resistance	= decrease	**Resistance**	= decrease

$$\overset{\downarrow}{E} = I\ \overset{\downarrow}{R}$$

As odd as it may seem, the actual mathematical relationship between pressure, flow, and resistance is actually more complex for fluids like water than it is for electrons. If you pursue further studies in physics, you will discover this for yourself. Thankfully for the electronics student, the mathematics of Ohm's Law is very straightforward and simple.

- **REVIEW:**

- With resistance steady, current follows voltage (an increase in voltage means an increase in current, and vice versa).

- With voltage steady, changes in current and resistance are opposite (an increase in current means a decrease in resistance, and vice versa).

- With current steady, voltage follows resistance (an increase in resistance means an increase in voltage).

2.3 Power in electric circuits

In addition to voltage and current, there is another measure of free electron activity in a circuit: *power*. First, we need to understand just what power is before we analyze it in any circuits.

Power is a measure of how much work can be performed in a given amount of time. *Work* is generally defined in terms of the lifting of a weight against the pull of gravity. The heavier the weight and/or the higher it is lifted, the more work has been done. *Power* is a measure of how rapidly a standard amount of work is done.

For American automobiles, engine power is rated in a unit called "horsepower," invented initially as a way for steam engine manufacturers to quantify the working ability of their machines in terms of the most common power source of their day: horses. One horsepower is defined in British units as 550 ft-lbs of work per second of time. The power of a car's engine won't indicate how tall of a hill it can climb or how much weight it can tow, but it will indicate how *fast* it can climb a specific hill or tow a specific weight.

The power of a mechanical engine is a function of both the engine's speed and its torque provided at the output shaft. Speed of an engine's output shaft is measured in revolutions per minute, or RPM. Torque is the amount of twisting force produced by the engine, and it is usually measured in pound-feet, or lb-ft (not to be confused with foot-pounds or ft-lbs, which is the unit for work). Neither speed nor torque alone is a measure of an engine's power.

A 100 horsepower diesel tractor engine will turn relatively slowly, but provide great amounts of torque. A 100 horsepower motorcycle engine will turn very fast, but provide relatively little torque. Both will produce 100 horsepower, but at different speeds and different torques. The equation for shaft horsepower is simple:

$$\text{Horsepower} = \frac{2 \pi S T}{33{,}000}$$

Where,

S = shaft speed in r.p.m.

T = shaft torque in lb-ft.

Notice how there are only two variable terms on the right-hand side of the equation, S and T. All the other terms on that side are constant: 2, pi, and 33,000 are all constants (they do not change in value). The horsepower varies only with changes in speed and torque, nothing else. We can re-write the equation to show this relationship:

$$\text{Horsepower} \propto S\,T$$

$\propto$ This symbol means "proportional to"

Because the unit of the "horsepower" doesn't coincide exactly with speed in revolutions per minute multiplied by torque in pound-feet, we can't say that horsepower *equals* ST. However, they are *proportional* to one another. As the mathematical product of ST changes, the value for horsepower will change by the same proportion.

In electric circuits, power is a function of both voltage and current. Not surprisingly, this relationship bears striking resemblance to the "proportional" horsepower formula above:

$$P = I\,E$$

In this case, however, power (P) is exactly equal to current (I) multiplied by voltage (E), rather than merely being proportional to IE. When using this formula, the unit of measurement for power is the *watt*, abbreviated with the letter "W."

It must be understood that neither voltage nor current by themselves constitute power. Rather, power is the combination of both voltage *and* current in a circuit. Remember that voltage is the specific work (or potential energy) per unit charge, while current is the rate at which electric charges move through a conductor. Voltage (specific work) is analogous to the work done in lifting a weight against the pull of gravity. Current (rate) is analogous to the speed at which that weight is lifted. Together as a product (multiplication), voltage (work) and current (rate) constitute power.

Just as in the case of the diesel tractor engine and the motorcycle engine, a circuit with high voltage and low current may be dissipating the same amount of power as a circuit with low voltage and high current. Neither the amount of voltage alone nor the amount of current alone indicates the amount of power in an electric circuit.

In an open circuit, where voltage is present between the terminals of the source and there is zero current, there is *zero* power dissipated, no matter how great that voltage may be. Since P=IE and I=0 and anything multiplied by zero is zero, the power dissipated in any open circuit must be zero. Likewise, if we were to have a short circuit constructed of a loop of superconducting wire (absolutely zero resistance), we could have a condition of current in the loop with zero voltage, and likewise no power would be dissipated. Since P=IE and E=0 and anything multiplied by zero is zero, the power dissipated in a superconducting loop must be zero. (We'll be exploring the topic of superconductivity in a later chapter).

Whether we measure power in the unit of "horsepower" or the unit of "watt," we're still talking about the same thing: how much work can be done in a given amount of time. The two units are not numerically equal, but they express the same kind of thing. In fact, European automobile manufacturers typically advertise their engine power in terms of kilowatts (kW), or thousands of watts, instead of horsepower! These two units of power are related to each other by a simple conversion formula:

$$1 \text{ Horsepower} = 745.7 \text{ Watts}$$

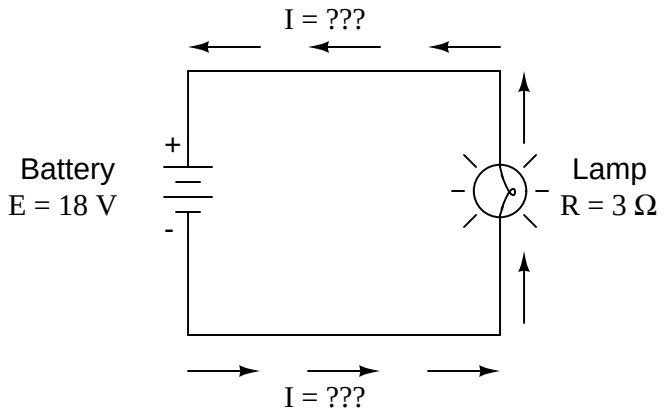
So, our 100 horsepower diesel and motorcycle engines could also be rated as "74570 watt" engines, or more properly, as "74.57 kilowatt" engines. In European engineering specifications,

this rating would be the norm rather than the exception.

- **REVIEW:**
- Power is the measure of how much work can be done in a given amount of time.
- Mechanical power is commonly measured (in America) in "horsepower."
- Electrical power is almost always measured in "watts," and it can be calculated by the formula P = IE.
- Electrical power is a product of both voltage *and* current, not either one separately.
- Horsepower and watts are merely two different units for describing the same kind of physical measurement, with 1 horsepower equaling 745.7 watts.

2.4 Calculating electric power

We've seen the formula for determining the power in an electric circuit: by multiplying the voltage in "volts" by the current in "amps" we arrive at an answer in "watts." Let's apply this to a circuit example:



In the above circuit, we know we have a battery voltage of 18 volts and a lamp resistance of 3 Ω. Using Ohm's Law to determine current, we get:

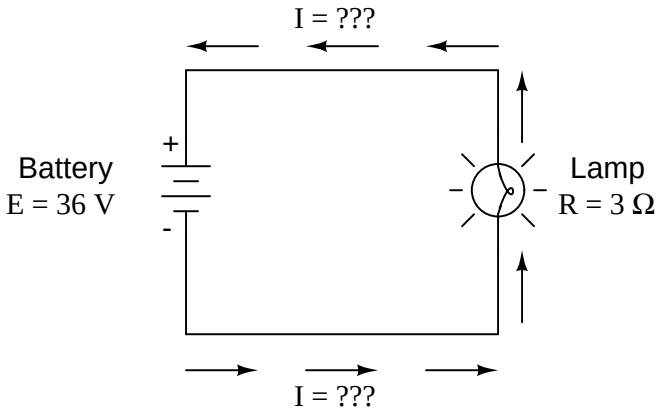
$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{18\ V}{3\ \Omega} = 6\ A$$

Now that we know the current, we can take that value and multiply it by the voltage to determine power:

$$P = I\,E = (6\ A)(18\ V) = 108\ W$$

Answer: the lamp is dissipating (releasing) 108 watts of power, most likely in the form of both light and heat.

Let's try taking that same circuit and increasing the battery voltage to see what happens. Intuition should tell us that the circuit current will increase as the voltage increases and the lamp resistance stays the same. Likewise, the power will increase as well:



Now, the battery voltage is 36 volts instead of 18 volts. The lamp is still providing 3 Ω of electrical resistance to the flow of electrons. The current is now:

$$I = \frac{E}{R} = \frac{36\ V}{3\ \Omega} = 12\ A$$

This stands to reason: if I = E/R, and we double E while R stays the same, the current should double. Indeed, it has: we now have 12 amps of current instead of 6. Now, what about power?

$$P = I\,E = (12\ A)(36\ V) = 432\ W$$

Notice that the power has increased just as we might have suspected, but it increased quite a bit more than the current. Why is this? Because power is a function of voltage multiplied by current, and *both* voltage and current doubled from their previous values, the power will increase by a factor of 2 x 2, or 4. You can check this by dividing 432 watts by 108 watts and seeing that the ratio between them is indeed 4.

Using algebra again to manipulate the formulae, we can take our original power formula and modify it for applications where we don't know both voltage and current:

If we only know voltage (E) and resistance (R):

$$\textit{If,} \quad I = \frac{E}{R} \quad \textit{and} \quad P = I\,E$$

$$\textit{Then,} \quad P = \frac{E}{R}\,E \quad \textit{or} \quad \mathbf{P = \frac{E^2}{R}}$$

If we only know current (I) and resistance (R):

If, $E = I R$ *and* $P = I E$

Then, $P = I(I R)$ *or* $\mathbf{P = I^2 R}$

An historical note: it was James Prescott Joule, not Georg Simon Ohm, who first discovered the mathematical relationship between power dissipation and current through a resistance. This discovery, published in 1841, followed the form of the last equation ($P = I^2R$), and is properly known as Joule's Law. However, these power equations are so commonly associated with the Ohm's Law equations relating voltage, current, and resistance (E=IR ; I=E/R ; and R=E/I) that they are frequently credited to Ohm.

Power equations

$$P = IE \qquad P = \frac{E^2}{R} \qquad P = I^2R$$

- **REVIEW:**
- Power measured in *watts*, symbolized by the letter "W".
- Joule's Law: $P = I^2R$; $P = IE$; $P = E^2/R$

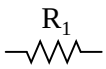
2.5 Resistors

Because the relationship between voltage, current, and resistance in any circuit is so regular, we can reliably control any variable in a circuit simply by controlling the other two. Perhaps the easiest variable in any circuit to control is its resistance. This can be done by changing the material, size, and shape of its conductive components (remember how the thin metal filament of a lamp created more electrical resistance than a thick wire?).

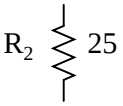
Special components called *resistors* are made for the express purpose of creating a precise quantity of resistance for insertion into a circuit. They are typically constructed of metal wire or carbon, and engineered to maintain a stable resistance value over a wide range of environmental conditions. Unlike lamps, they do not produce light, but they do produce heat as electric power is dissipated by them in a working circuit. Typically, though, the purpose of a resistor is not to produce usable heat, but simply to provide a precise quantity of electrical resistance.

The most common schematic symbol for a resistor is a zig-zag line:

Resistor values in ohms are usually shown as an adjacent number, and if several resistors are present in a circuit, they will be labeled with a unique identifier number such as R_1, R_2, R_3, etc. As you can see, resistor symbols can be shown either horizontally or vertically:

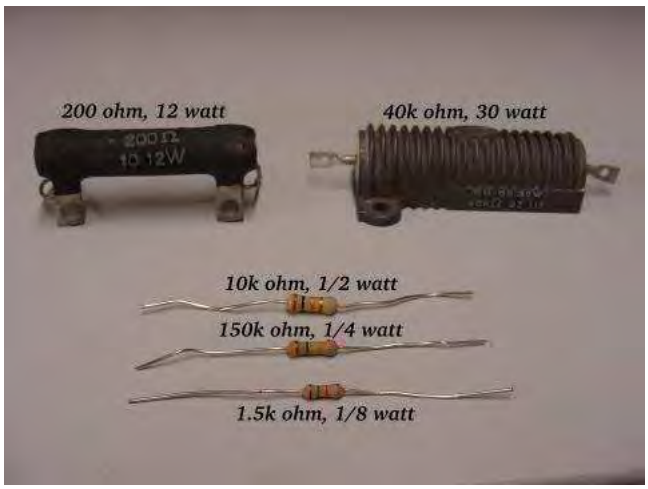


This is resistor "R_1" with a resistance value of 150 ohms.

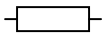


This is resistor "R_2" with a resistance value of 25 ohms.

Real resistors look nothing like the zig-zag symbol. Instead, they look like small tubes or cylinders with two wires protruding for connection to a circuit. Here is a sampling of different kinds and sizes of resistors:

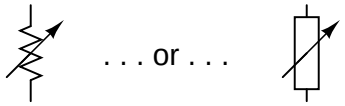


In keeping more with their physical appearance, an alternative schematic symbol for a resistor looks like a small, rectangular box:



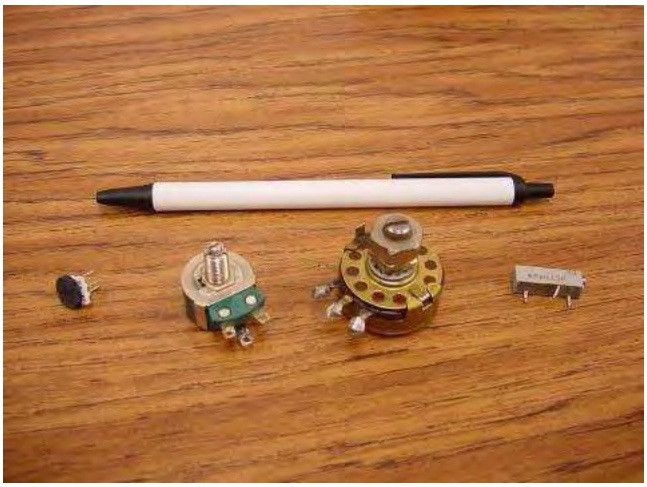
Resistors can also be shown to have varying rather than fixed resistances. This might be for the purpose of describing an actual physical device designed for the purpose of providing an adjustable resistance, or it could be to show some component that just happens to have an unstable resistance:

variable resistance



In fact, any time you see a component symbol drawn with a diagonal arrow through it, that component has a variable rather than a fixed value. This symbol ”modifier” (the diagonal arrow) is standard electronic symbol convention.

Variable resistors must have some physical means of adjustment, either a rotating shaft or lever that can be moved to vary the amount of electrical resistance. Here is a photograph showing some devices called *potentiometers*, which can be used as variable resistors:



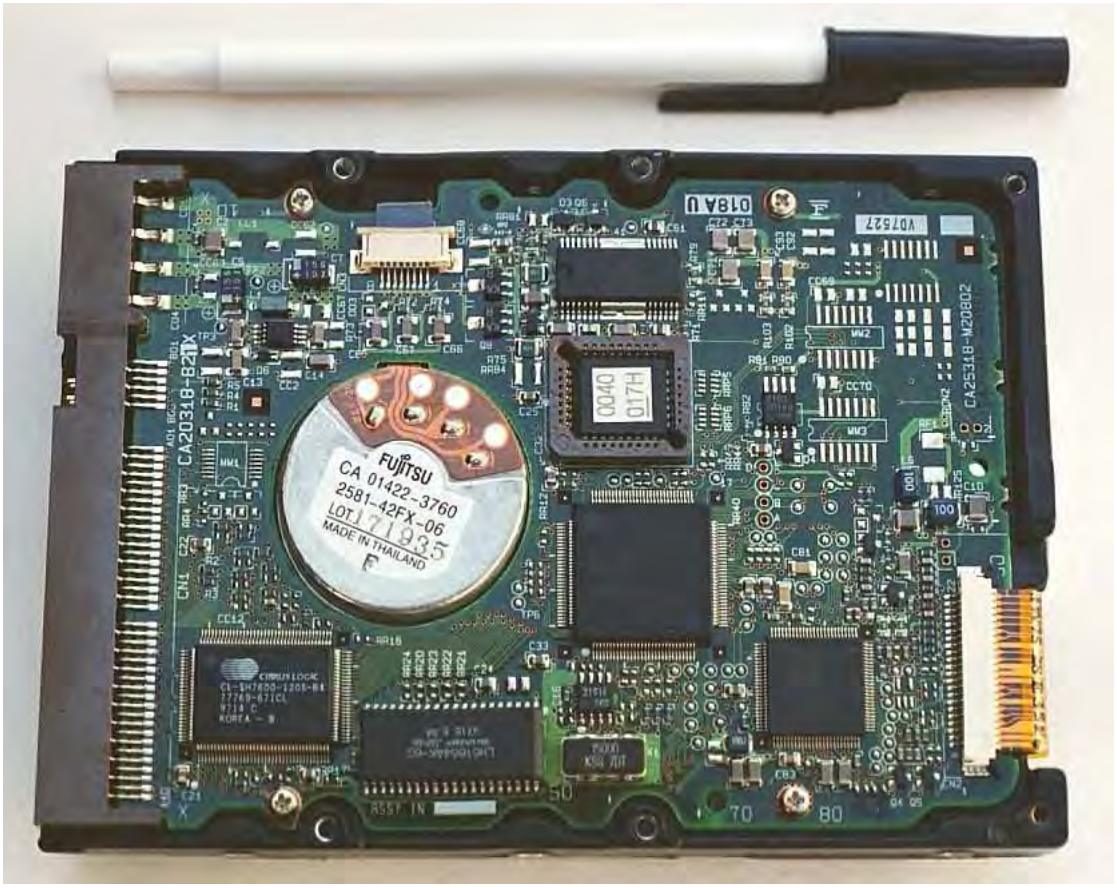
Because resistors dissipate heat energy as the electric currents through them overcome the "friction" of their resistance, resistors are also rated in terms of how much heat energy they can dissipate without overheating and sustaining damage. Naturally, this power rating is specified in the physical unit of "watts." Most resistors found in small electronic devices such as portable radios are rated at 1/4 (0.25) watt or less. The power rating of any resistor is roughly proportional to its physical size. Note in the first resistor photograph how the power ratings relate with size: the bigger the resistor, the higher its power dissipation rating. Also note how resistances (in ohms) have nothing to do with size!

Although it may seem pointless now to have a device doing nothing but resisting electric current, resistors are extremely useful devices in circuits. Because they are simple and so commonly used throughout the world of electricity and electronics, we'll spend a considerable amount of time analyzing circuits composed of nothing but resistors and batteries.

For a practical illustration of resistors' usefulness, examine the photograph below. It is a picture of a *printed circuit board*, or *PCB*: an assembly made of sandwiched layers of insulating phenolic fiber-board and conductive copper strips, into which components may be inserted and secured by a low-temperature welding process called "soldering." The various components on this circuit board are identified by printed labels. Resistors are denoted by any label beginning with the letter "R".

This particular circuit board is a computer accessory called a ”modem,” which allows digital information transfer over telephone lines. There are at least a dozen resistors (all rated at 1/4 watt power dissipation) that can be seen on this modem’s board. Every one of the black rectangles (called ”integrated circuits” or ”chips”) contain their own array of resistors for their internal functions, as well.

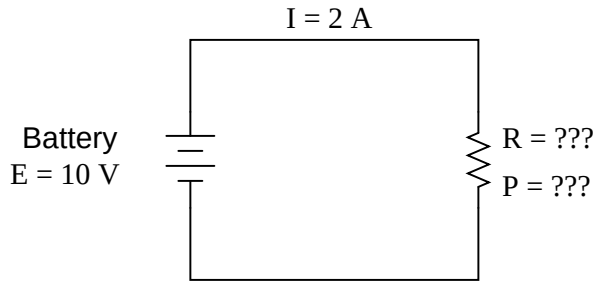
Another circuit board example shows resistors packaged in even smaller units, called ”surface mount devices.” This particular circuit board is the underside of a personal computer hard disk drive, and once again the resistors soldered onto it are designated with labels beginning with the letter ”R”:



There are over one hundred surface-mount resistors on this circuit board, and this count of course does not include the number of resistors internal to the black "chips." These two photographs should convince anyone that resistors – devices that "merely" oppose the flow of electrons – are very important components in the realm of electronics!

In schematic diagrams, resistor symbols are sometimes used to illustrate any general type of device in a circuit doing something useful with electrical energy. Any non-specific electrical device is generally called a *load*, so if you see a schematic diagram showing a resistor symbol labeled "load," especially in a tutorial circuit diagram explaining some concept unrelated to the actual use of electrical power, that symbol may just be a kind of shorthand representation of something else more practical than a resistor.

To summarize what we've learned in this lesson, let's analyze the following circuit, determining all that we can from the information given:



All we've been given here to start with is the battery voltage (10 volts) and the circuit current (2 amps). We don't know the resistor's resistance in ohms or the power dissipated by it in watts. Surveying our array of Ohm's Law equations, we find two equations that give us answers from known quantities of voltage and current:

$$R = \frac{E}{I} \qquad \textit{and} \qquad P = IE$$

Inserting the known quantities of voltage (E) and current (I) into these two equations, we can determine circuit resistance (R) and power dissipation (P):

$$R = \frac{10\ \text{V}}{2\ \text{A}} = 5\ \Omega$$

$$P = (2\ \text{A})(10\ \text{V}) = 20\ \text{W}$$

For the circuit conditions of 10 volts and 2 amps, the resistor's resistance must be 5 Ω. If we were designing a circuit to operate at these values, we would have to specify a resistor with a minimum power rating of 20 watts, or else it would overheat and fail.

- **REVIEW:**
- Devices called *resistors* are built to provide precise amounts of resistance in electric circuits. Resistors are rated both in terms of their resistance (ohms) and their ability to dissipate heat energy (watts).
- Resistor resistance ratings cannot be determined from the physical size of the resistor(s) in question, although approximate power ratings can. The larger the resistor is, the more power it can safely dissipate without suffering damage.
- Any device that performs some useful task with electric power is generally known as a *load*. Sometimes resistor symbols are used in schematic diagrams to designate a non-specific load, rather than an actual resistor.

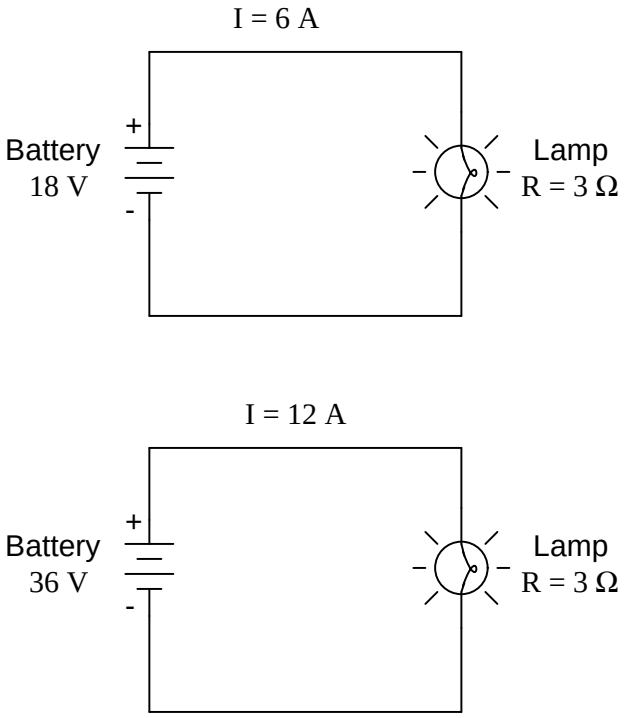
2.6 Nonlinear conduction

"Advances are made by answering questions. Discoveries are made by questioning answers."

Bernhard Haisch, Astrophysicist

Ohm's Law is a simple and powerful mathematical tool for helping us analyze electric circuits, but it has limitations, and we must understand these limitations in order to properly apply it to real circuits. For most conductors, resistance is a rather stable property, largely unaffected by voltage or current. For this reason we can regard the resistance of many circuit components as a constant, with voltage and current being directly related to each other.

For instance, our previous circuit example with the 3 Ω lamp, we calculated current through the circuit by dividing voltage by resistance (I=E/R). With an 18 volt battery, our circuit current was 6 amps. Doubling the battery voltage to 36 volts resulted in a doubled current of 12 amps. All of this makes sense, of course, so long as the lamp continues to provide exactly the same amount of friction (resistance) to the flow of electrons through it: 3 Ω.

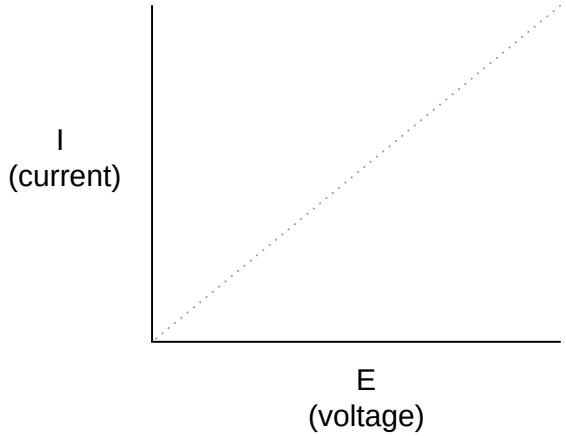


However, reality is not always this simple. One of the phenomena explored in a later chapter is that of conductor resistance *changing* with temperature. In an incandescent lamp (the kind employing the principle of electric current heating a thin filament of wire to the point that it glows white-hot), the resistance of the filament wire will increase dramatically as it warms from room temperature to operating temperature. If we were to increase the supply voltage in a real lamp circuit, the resulting increase in current would cause the filament to increase temperature, which would in turn increase its resistance, thus preventing further increases in current without further increases in battery voltage. Consequently, voltage and current do not follow the simple equation "I=E/R" (with R assumed to be equal to 3 Ω) because an incandescent lamp's filament resistance does not remain stable for different currents.

The phenomenon of resistance changing with variations in temperature is one shared by almost all metals, of which most wires are made. For most applications, these changes in

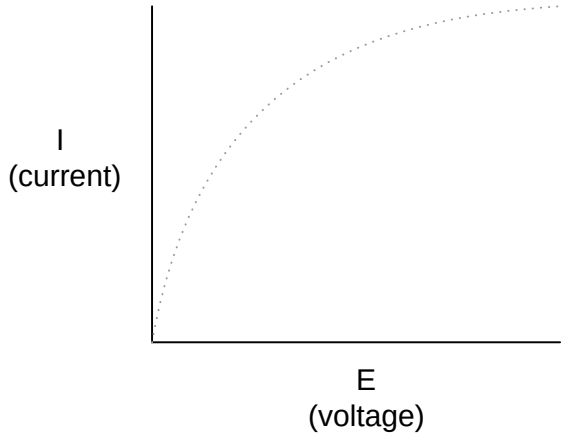
resistance are small enough to be ignored. In the application of metal lamp filaments, the change happens to be quite large.

This is just one example of "nonlinearity" in electric circuits. It is by no means the only example. A "linear" function in mathematics is one that tracks a straight line when plotted on a graph. The simplified version of the lamp circuit with a constant filament resistance of 3 Ω generates a plot like this:



The straight-line plot of current over voltage indicates that resistance is a stable, unchanging value for a wide range of circuit voltages and currents. In an "ideal" situation, this is the case. Resistors, which are manufactured to provide a definite, stable value of resistance, behave very much like the plot of values seen above. A mathematician would call their behavior "linear."

A more realistic analysis of a lamp circuit, however, over several different values of battery voltage would generate a plot of this shape:

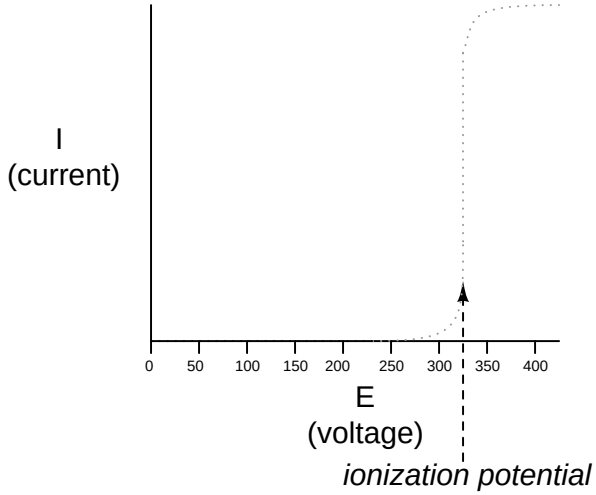


The plot is no longer a straight line. It rises sharply on the left, as voltage increases from zero to a low level. As it progresses to the right we see the line flattening out, the circuit requiring greater and greater increases in voltage to achieve equal increases in current.

If we try to apply Ohm's Law to find the resistance of this lamp circuit with the voltage

and current values plotted above, we arrive at several different values. We could say that the resistance here is *nonlinear*, increasing with increasing current and voltage. The nonlinearity is caused by the effects of high temperature on the metal wire of the lamp filament.

Another example of nonlinear current conduction is through gases such as air. At standard temperatures and pressures, air is an effective insulator. However, if the voltage between two conductors separated by an air gap is increased greatly enough, the air molecules between the gap will become "ionized," having their electrons stripped off by the force of the high voltage between the wires. Once ionized, air (and other gases) become good conductors of electricity, allowing electron flow where none could exist prior to ionization. If we were to plot current over voltage on a graph as we did with the lamp circuit, the effect of ionization would be clearly seen as nonlinear:



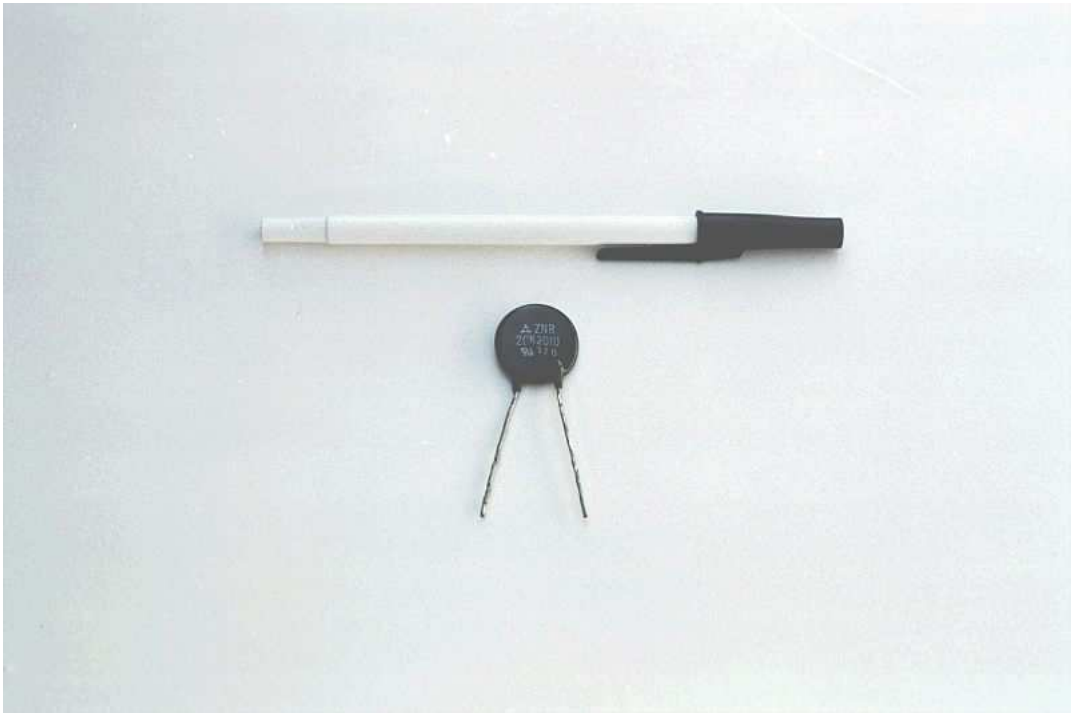
The graph shown is approximate for a small air gap (less than one inch). A larger air gap would yield a higher ionization potential, but the shape of the I/E curve would be very similar: practically no current until the ionization potential was reached, then substantial conduction after that.

Incidentally, this is the reason lightning bolts exist as momentary surges rather than continuous flows of electrons. The voltage built up between the earth and clouds (or between different sets of clouds) must increase to the point where it overcomes the ionization potential of the air gap before the air ionizes enough to support a substantial flow of electrons. Once it does, the current will continue to conduct through the ionized air until the static charge between the two points depletes. Once the charge depletes enough so that the voltage falls below another threshold point, the air de-ionizes and returns to its normal state of extremely high resistance.

Many solid insulating materials exhibit similar resistance properties: extremely high resistance to electron flow below some critical threshold voltage, then a much lower resistance at voltages beyond that threshold. Once a solid insulating material has been compromised by high-voltage *breakdown*, as it is called, it often does not return to its former insulating state, unlike most gases. It may insulate once again at low voltages, but its breakdown threshold voltage will have been decreased to some lower level, which may allow breakdown to occur

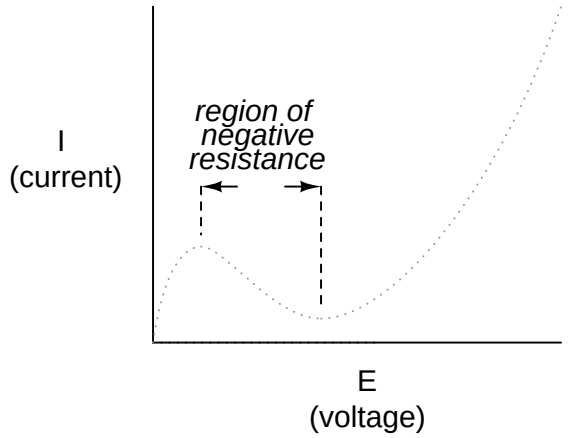
more easily in the future. This is a common mode of failure in high-voltage wiring: insulation damage due to breakdown. Such failures may be detected through the use of special resistance meters employing high voltage (1000 volts or more).

There are circuit components specifically engineered to provide nonlinear resistance curves, one of them being the *varistor*. Commonly manufactured from compounds such as zinc oxide or silicon carbide, these devices maintain high resistance across their terminals until a certain ”firing” or ”breakdown” voltage (equivalent to the ”ionization potential” of an air gap) is reached, at which point their resistance decreases dramatically. Unlike the breakdown of an insulator, varistor breakdown is repeatable: that is, it is designed to withstand repeated breakdowns without failure. A picture of a varistor is shown here:



There are also special gas-filled tubes designed to do much the same thing, exploiting the very same principle at work in the ionization of air by a lightning bolt.

Other electrical components exhibit even stranger current/voltage curves than this. Some devices actually experience a *decrease* in current as the applied voltage *increases*. Because the slope of the current/voltage for this phenomenon is negative (angling down instead of up as it progresses from left to right), it is known as *negative resistance*.



Most notably, high-vacuum electron tubes known as *tetrodes* and semiconductor diodes known as *Esaki* or *tunnel* diodes exhibit negative resistance for certain ranges of applied voltage.

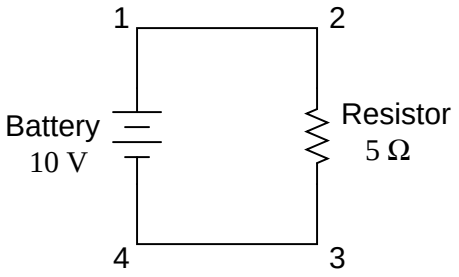
Ohm's Law is not very useful for analyzing the behavior of components like these where resistance varies with voltage and current. Some have even suggested that "Ohm's Law" should be demoted from the status of a "Law" because it is not universal. It might be more accurate to call the equation (R=E/I) a *definition of resistance*, befitting of a certain class of materials under a narrow range of conditions.

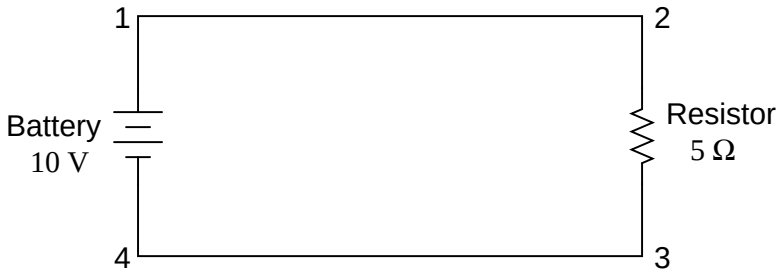
For the benefit of the student, however, we will assume that resistances specified in example circuits *are* stable over a wide range of conditions unless otherwise specified. I just wanted to expose you to a little bit of the complexity of the real world, lest I give you the false impression that the whole of electrical phenomena could be summarized in a few simple equations.

- **REVIEW:**
- The resistance of most conductive materials is stable over a wide range of conditions, but this is not true of all materials.
- Any function that can be plotted on a graph as a straight line is called a *linear* function. For circuits with stable resistances, the plot of current over voltage is linear (I=E/R).
- In circuits where resistance varies with changes in either voltage or current, the plot of current over voltage will be *nonlinear* (not a straight line).
- A *varistor* is a component that changes resistance with the amount of voltage impressed across it. With little voltage across it, its resistance is high. Then, at a certain "breakdown" or "firing" voltage, its resistance decreases dramatically.
- *Negative resistance* is where the current through a component actually decreases as the applied voltage across it is increased. Some electron tubes and semiconductor diodes (most notably, the *tetrode* tube and the *Esaki*, or *tunnel* diode, respectively) exhibit negative resistance over a certain range of voltages.

2.7 Circuit wiring

So far, we've been analyzing single-battery, single-resistor circuits with no regard for the connecting wires between the components, so long as a complete circuit is formed. Does the wire length or circuit "shape" matter to our calculations? Let's look at a couple of circuit configurations and find out:



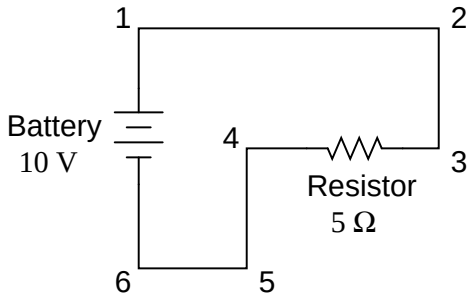


When we draw wires connecting points in a circuit, we usually assume those wires have negligible resistance. As such, they contribute no appreciable effect to the overall resistance of the circuit, and so the only resistance we have to contend with is the resistance in the components. In the above circuits, the only resistance comes from the 5 Ω resistors, so that is all we will consider in our calculations. In real life, metal wires actually *do* have resistance (and so do power sources!), but those resistances are generally so much smaller than the resistance present in the other circuit components that they can be safely ignored. Exceptions to this rule exist in power system wiring, where even very small amounts of conductor resistance can create significant voltage drops given normal (high) levels of current.

If connecting wire resistance is very little or none, we can regard the connected points in a circuit as being *electrically common*. That is, points 1 and 2 in the above circuits may be physically joined close together or far apart, and it doesn't matter for any voltage or resistance measurements relative to those points. The same goes for points 3 and 4. It is as if the ends of the resistor were attached directly across the terminals of the battery, so far as our Ohm's Law calculations and voltage measurements are concerned. This is useful to know, because it means you can re-draw a circuit diagram or re-wire a circuit, shortening or lengthening the wires as desired without appreciably impacting the circuit's function. All that matters is that the components attach to each other in the same sequence.

It also means that voltage measurements between sets of "electrically common" points will

be the same. That is, the voltage between points 1 and 4 (directly across the battery) will be the same as the voltage between points 2 and 3 (directly across the resistor). Take a close look at the following circuit, and try to determine which points are common to each other:



Here, we only have 2 components excluding the wires: the battery and the resistor. Though the connecting wires take a convoluted path in forming a complete circuit, there are several electrically common points in the electrons' path. Points 1, 2, and 3 are all common to each other, because they're directly connected together by wire. The same goes for points 4, 5, and 6.

The voltage between points 1 and 6 is 10 volts, coming straight from the battery. However, since points 5 and 4 are common to 6, and points 2 and 3 common to 1, that same 10 volts also exists between these other pairs of points:

```
Between points 1 and 4 = 10 volts
Between points 2 and 4 = 10 volts
Between points 3 and 4 = 10 volts (directly across the resistor)
Between points 1 and 5 = 10 volts
Between points 2 and 5 = 10 volts
Between points 3 and 5 = 10 volts
Between points 1 and 6 = 10 volts (directly across the battery)
Between points 2 and 6 = 10 volts
Between points 3 and 6 = 10 volts
```

Since electrically common points are connected together by (zero resistance) wire, there is no significant voltage drop between them regardless of the amount of current conducted from one to the next through that connecting wire. Thus, if we were to read voltages between common points, we should show (practically) zero:

```
Between points 1 and 2 = 0 volts    Points 1, 2, and 3 are
Between points 2 and 3 = 0 volts     electrically common
Between points 1 and 3 = 0 volts
Between points 4 and 5 = 0 volts    Points 4, 5, and 6 are
Between points 5 and 6 = 0 volts     electrically common
Between points 4 and 6 = 0 volts
```

This makes sense mathematically, too. With a 10 volt battery and a 5 Ω resistor, the circuit current will be 2 amps. With wire resistance being zero, the voltage drop across any continuous stretch of wire can be determined through Ohm's Law as such:

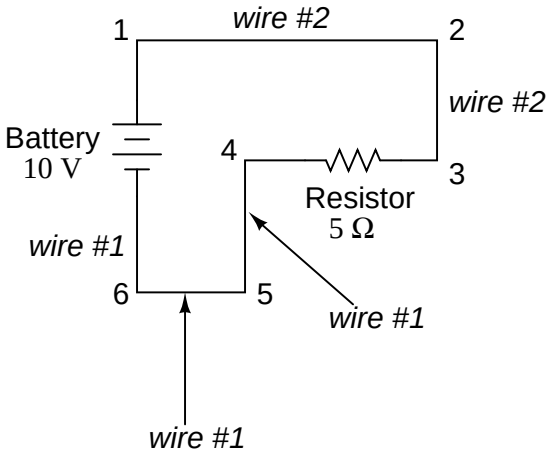
E = I R

E = (2 A)(0 Ω)

E = 0 V

It should be obvious that the calculated voltage drop across any uninterrupted length of wire in a circuit where wire is assumed to have zero resistance will always be zero, no matter what the magnitude of current, since zero multiplied by anything equals zero.

Because common points in a circuit will exhibit the same relative voltage and resistance measurements, wires connecting common points are often labeled with the same designation. This is not to say that the *terminal* connection points are labeled the same, just the connecting wires. Take this circuit as an example:



Points 1, 2, and 3 are all common to each other, so the wire connecting point 1 to 2 is labeled the same (wire 2) as the wire connecting point 2 to 3 (wire 2). In a real circuit, the wire stretching from point 1 to 2 may not even be the same color or size as the wire connecting point 2 to 3, but they should bear the exact same label. The same goes for the wires connecting points 6, 5, and 4.

Knowing that electrically common points have zero voltage drop between them is a valuable troubleshooting principle. If I measure for voltage between points in a circuit that are supposed to be common to each other, I should read zero. If, however, I read substantial voltage between those two points, then I know with certainty that they cannot be directly connected together. If those points are *supposed* to be electrically common but they register otherwise, then I know that there is an ”open failure” between those points.

One final note: for most practical purposes, wire conductors can be assumed to possess zero resistance from end to end. In reality, however, there will always be some small amount of resistance encountered along the length of a wire, unless its a superconducting wire. Knowing this, we need to bear in mind that the principles learned here about electrically common points are all valid to a large degree, but not to an *absolute* degree. That is, the rule that electrically common points are guaranteed to have zero voltage between them is more accurately stated as such: electrically common points will have *very little* voltage dropped between them. That small, virtually unavoidable trace of resistance found in any piece of connecting wire is bound

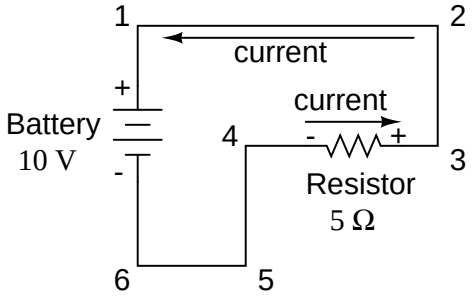
to create a small voltage across the length of it as current is conducted through. So long as you understand that these rules are based upon *ideal* conditions, you won't be perplexed when you come across some condition appearing to be an exception to the rule.

- **REVIEW:**
- Connecting wires in a circuit are assumed to have zero resistance unless otherwise stated.
- Wires in a circuit can be shortened or lengthened without impacting the circuit's function – all that matters is that the components are attached to one another in the same sequence.
- Points directly connected together in a circuit by zero resistance (wire) are considered to be *electrically common*.
- Electrically common points, with zero resistance between them, will have zero voltage dropped between them, regardless of the magnitude of current (ideally).
- The voltage or resistance readings referenced between sets of electrically common points will be the same.
- These rules apply to *ideal* conditions, where connecting wires are assumed to possess absolutely zero resistance. In real life this will probably not be the case, but wire resistances should be low enough so that the general principles stated here still hold.

2.8 Polarity of voltage drops

We can trace the direction that electrons will flow in the same circuit by starting at the negative (-) terminal and following through to the positive (+) terminal of the battery, the only source of voltage in the circuit. From this we can see that the electrons are moving counter-clockwise, from point 6 to 5 to 4 to 3 to 2 to 1 and back to 6 again.

As the current encounters the 5 Ω resistance, voltage is dropped across the resistor's ends. The polarity of this voltage drop is negative (-) at point 4 with respect to positive (+) at point 3. We can mark the polarity of the resistor's voltage drop with these negative and positive symbols, in accordance with the direction of current (whichever end of the resistor the current is *entering* is negative with respect to the end of the resistor it is *exiting*:



We could make our table of voltages a little more complete by marking the polarity of the voltage for each pair of points in this circuit:

```
Between points 1 (+) and 4 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 2 (+) and 4 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 3 (+) and 4 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 1 (+) and 5 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 2 (+) and 5 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 3 (+) and 5 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 1 (+) and 6 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 2 (+) and 6 (-) = 10 volts
Between points 3 (+) and 6 (-) = 10 volts
```

While it might seem a little silly to document polarity of voltage drop in this circuit, it is an important concept to master. It will be critically important in the analysis of more complex circuits involving multiple resistors and/or batteries.

It should be understood that polarity has nothing to do with Ohm's Law: there will never be negative voltages, currents, or resistance entered into any Ohm's Law equations! There are other mathematical principles of electricity that do take polarity into account through the use of signs (+ or -), but not Ohm's Law.

- **REVIEW:**
- The polarity of the voltage drop across any resistive component is determined by the direction of electron flow though it: *negative* entering, and *positive* exiting.

2.9 Computer simulation of electric circuits

Computers can be powerful tools if used properly, especially in the realms of science and engineering. Software exists for the simulation of electric circuits by computer, and these programs can be very useful in helping circuit designers test ideas before actually building real circuits, saving much time and money.

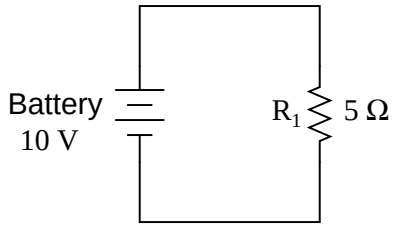
These same programs can be fantastic aids to the beginning student of electronics, allowing the exploration of ideas quickly and easily with no assembly of real circuits required. Of course, there is no substitute for actually building and testing real circuits, but computer simulations certainly assist in the learning process by allowing the student to experiment with changes and see the effects they have on circuits. Throughout this book, I'll be incorporating computer printouts from circuit simulation frequently in order to illustrate important concepts. By observing the results of a computer simulation, a student can gain an intuitive grasp of circuit behavior without the intimidation of abstract mathematical analysis.

To simulate circuits on computer, I make use of a particular program called SPICE, which works by describing a circuit to the computer by means of a listing of text. In essence, this listing is a kind of computer program in itself, and must adhere to the syntactical rules of the SPICE language. The computer is then used to process, or "run," the SPICE program, which interprets the text listing describing the circuit and outputs the results of its detailed mathematical analysis, also in text form. Many details of using SPICE are described in volume

5 ("Reference") of this book series for those wanting more information. Here, I'll just introduce the basic concepts and then apply SPICE to the analysis of these simple circuits we've been reading about.

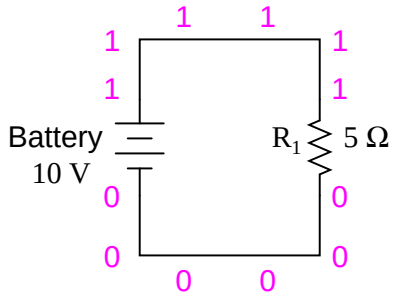
First, we need to have SPICE installed on our computer. As a free program, it is commonly available on the internet for download, and in formats appropriate for many different operating systems. In this book, I use one of the earlier versions of SPICE: version 2G6, for its simplicity of use.

Next, we need a circuit for SPICE to analyze. Let's try one of the circuits illustrated earlier in the chapter. Here is its schematic diagram:



This simple circuit consists of a battery and a resistor connected directly together. We know the voltage of the battery (10 volts) and the resistance of the resistor (5 Ω), but nothing else about the circuit. If we describe this circuit to SPICE, it should be able to tell us (at the very least), how much current we have in the circuit by using Ohm's Law (I=E/R).

SPICE cannot directly understand a schematic diagram or any other form of graphical description. SPICE is a text-based computer program, and demands that a circuit be described in terms of its constituent components and connection points. Each unique connection point in a circuit is described for SPICE by a "node" number. Points that are electrically common to each other in the circuit to be simulated are designated as such by sharing the same number. It might be helpful to think of these numbers as "wire" numbers rather than "node" numbers, following the definition given in the previous section. This is how the computer knows what's connected to what: by the sharing of common wire, or node, numbers. In our example circuit, we only have two "nodes," the top wire and the bottom wire. SPICE demands there be a node 0 somewhere in the circuit, so we'll label our wires 0 and 1:

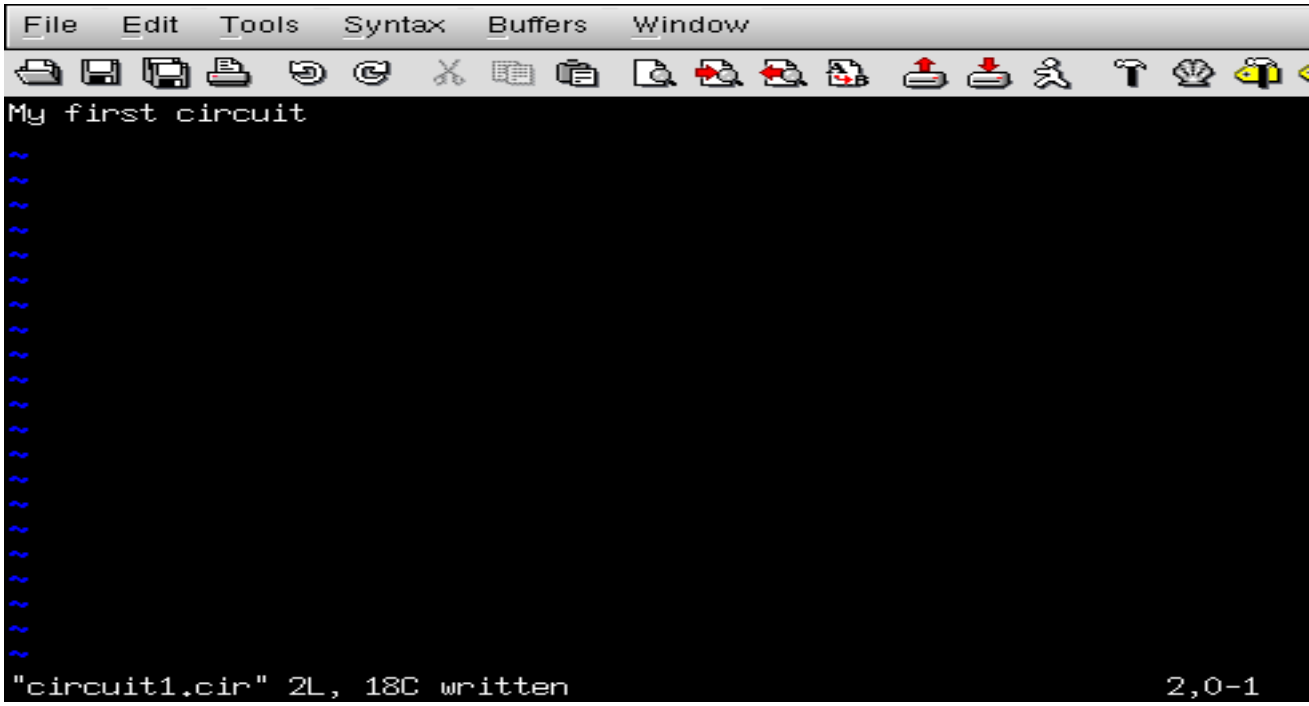


In the above illustration, I've shown multiple "1" and "0" labels around each respective wire to emphasize the concept of common points sharing common node numbers, but still this is a graphic image, not a text description. SPICE needs to have the component values and node numbers given to it in text form before any analysis may proceed.

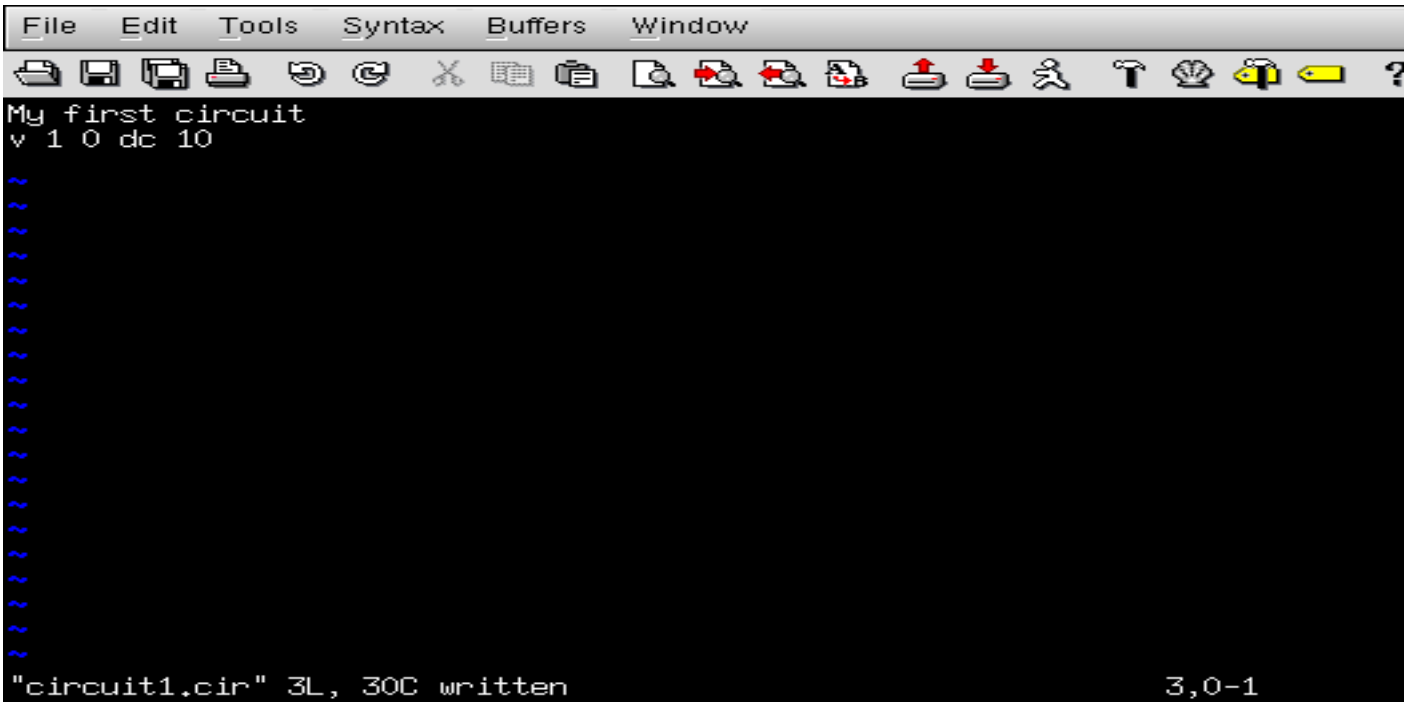
Creating a text file in a computer involves the use of a program called a *text editor*. Similar to a word processor, a text editor allows you to type text and record what you've typed in the form of a file stored on the computer's hard disk. Text editors lack the formatting ability of word processors (no *italic*, **bold**, or underlined characters), and this is a good thing, since programs such as SPICE wouldn't know what to do with this extra information. If we want to create a plain-text file, with absolutely nothing recorded except the keyboard characters we select, a text editor is the tool to use.

If using a Microsoft operating system such as DOS or Windows, a couple of text editors are readily available with the system. In DOS, there is the old *Edit* text editing program, which may be invoked by typing `edit` at the command prompt. In Windows (3.x/95/98/NT/Me/2k/XP), the *Notepad* text editor is your stock choice. Many other text editing programs are available, and some are even free. I happen to use a free text editor called *Vim*, and run it under both Windows 95 and Linux operating systems. It matters little which editor you use, so don't worry if the screenshots in this section don't look like yours; the important information here is *what you type*, not *which editor* you happen to use.

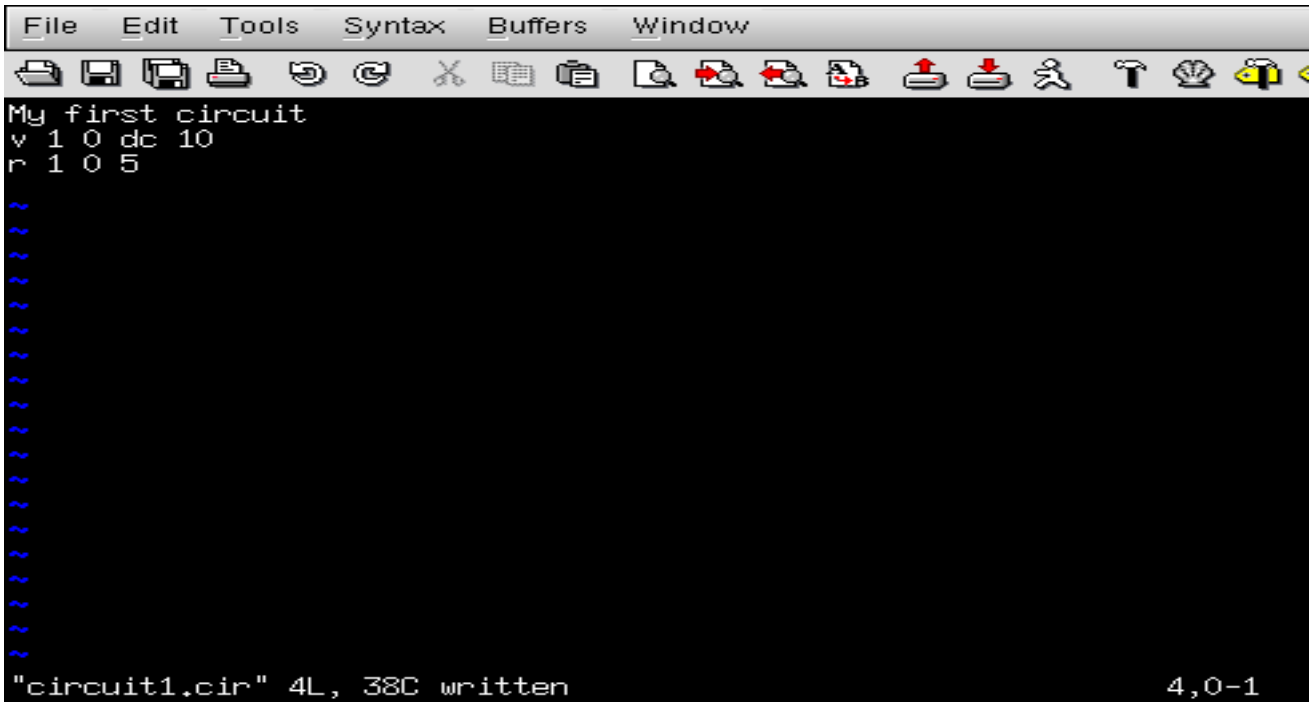
To describe this simple, two-component circuit to SPICE, I will begin by invoking my text editor program and typing in a "title" line for the circuit:



We can describe the battery to the computer by typing in a line of text starting with the letter "v" (for "Voltage source"), identifying which wire each terminal of the battery connects to (the node numbers), and the battery's voltage, like this:

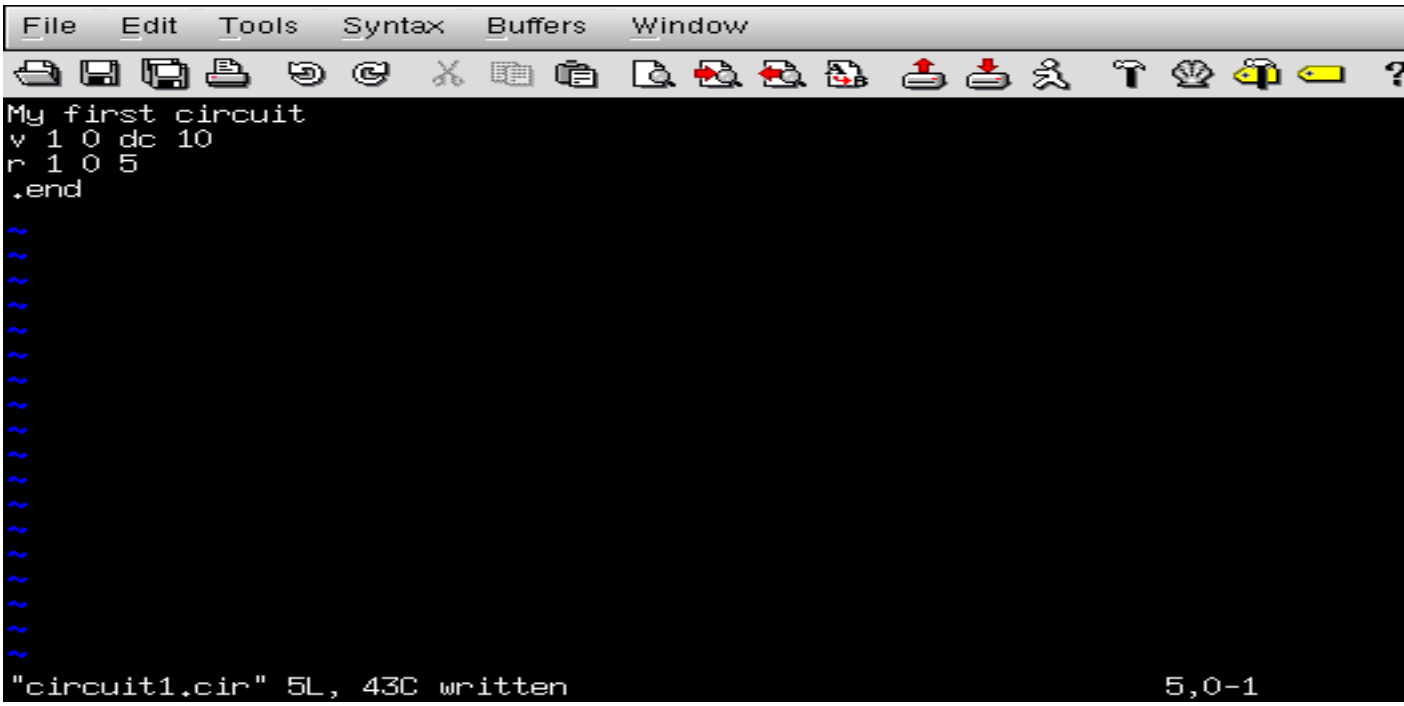


This line of text tells SPICE that we have a voltage source connected between nodes 1 and 0, direct current (DC), 10 volts. That's all the computer needs to know regarding the battery. Now we turn to the resistor: SPICE requires that resistors be described with a letter "r," the numbers of the two nodes (connection points), and the resistance in ohms. Since this is a computer simulation, there is no need to specify a power rating for the resistor. That's one nice thing about "virtual" components: they can't be harmed by excessive voltages or currents!



Now, SPICE will know there is a resistor connected between nodes 1 and 0 with a value of 5 Ω. This very brief line of text tells the computer we have a resistor ("r") connected between the same two nodes as the battery (1 and 0), with a resistance value of 5 Ω.

If we add an `.end` statement to this collection of SPICE commands to indicate the end of the circuit description, we will have all the information SPICE needs, collected in one file and ready for processing. This circuit description, comprised of lines of text in a computer file, is technically known as a *netlist*, or *deck*:



Once we have finished typing all the necessary SPICE commands, we need to "save" them to a file on the computer's hard disk so that SPICE has something to reference to when invoked. Since this is my first SPICE netlist, I'll save it under the filename "`circuit1.cir`" (the actual name being arbitrary). You may elect to name your first SPICE netlist something completely different, just as long as you don't violate any filename rules for your operating system, such as using no more than 8+3 characters (eight characters in the name, and three characters in the extension: `12345678.123`) in DOS.

To invoke SPICE (tell it to process the contents of the `circuit1.cir` netlist file), we have to exit from the text editor and access a command prompt (the "DOS prompt" for Microsoft users) where we can enter text commands for the computer's operating system to obey. This "primitive" way of invoking a program may seem archaic to computer users accustomed to a "point-and-click" graphical environment, but it is a very powerful and flexible way of doing things. Remember, what you're doing here by using SPICE is a simple form of computer programming, and the more comfortable you become in giving the computer text-form commands to follow – as opposed to simply clicking on icon images using a mouse – the more mastery you will have over your computer.

Once at a command prompt, type in this command, followed by an [Enter] keystroke (this example uses the filename `circuit1.cir`; if you have chosen a different filename for your netlist file, substitute it):

```
spice < circuit1.cir
```

Here is how this looks on my computer (running the Linux operating system), just before I press the [Enter] key:

As soon as you press the [Enter] key to issue this command, text from SPICE's output should scroll by on the computer screen. Here is a screenshot showing what SPICE outputs on my computer (I've lengthened the "terminal" window to show you the full text. With a normal-size terminal, the text easily exceeds one page length):

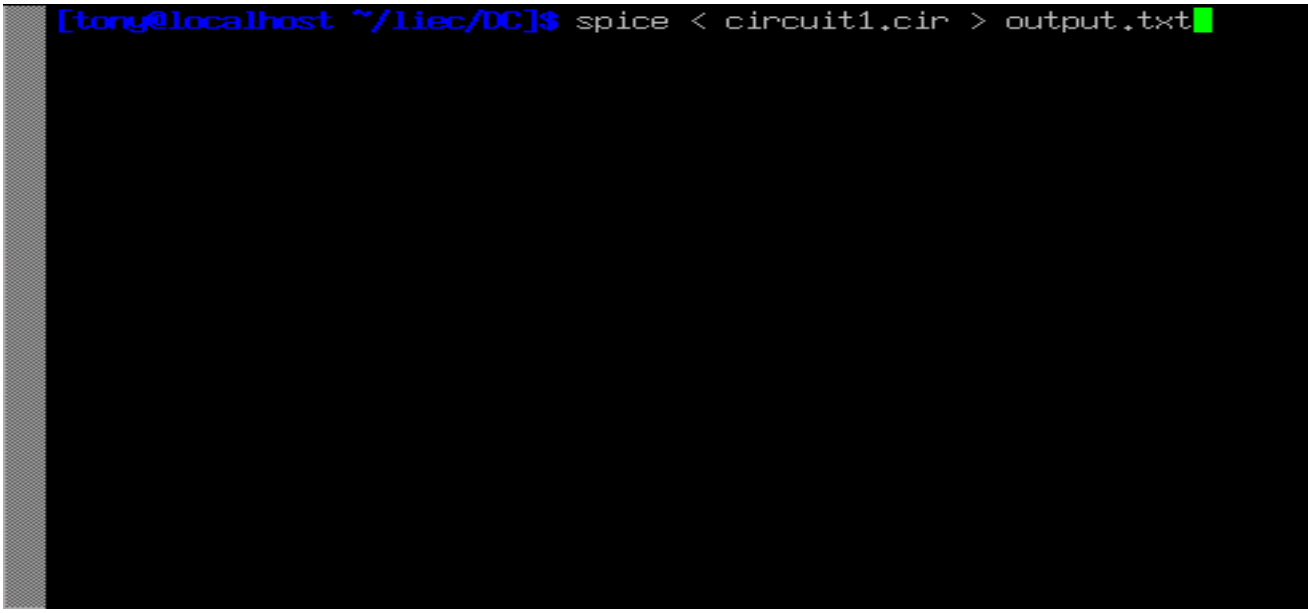
```
 v 1 0 dc 10
 r 1 0 5
 .end
1*****************06/30/02 ************************  spice 2g.6    3/15/83
*******************13:06:45*****************

0my first circuit

0****                    small signal bias solution
rature =   27.000 deg c

0*****************************************************************************
******************************************

  node   voltage

 (  1)   10.0000



     voltage source currents

     name        current

     v         -2.000E+00

     total power dissipation   2.00E+01  watts
0
          job concluded
0          total job time            0.00
1*******06/30/02 ********  spice 2g.6    3/15/83 ********13:06:45*****

0

0****     input listing                      temperature =   27.000 deg c

0*****************************************************************************


0*error*:  .end card missing
[tony@localhost ~/liec/DC]$
```

SPICE begins with a reiteration of the netlist, complete with title line and `.end` statement. About halfway through the simulation it displays the voltage at all nodes with reference to node 0. In this example, we only have one node other than node 0, so it displays the voltage there: 10.0000 volts. Then it displays the current through each voltage source. Since we only have one voltage source in the entire circuit, it only displays the current through that one. In this case, the source current is 2 amps. Due to a quirk in the way SPICE analyzes current, the

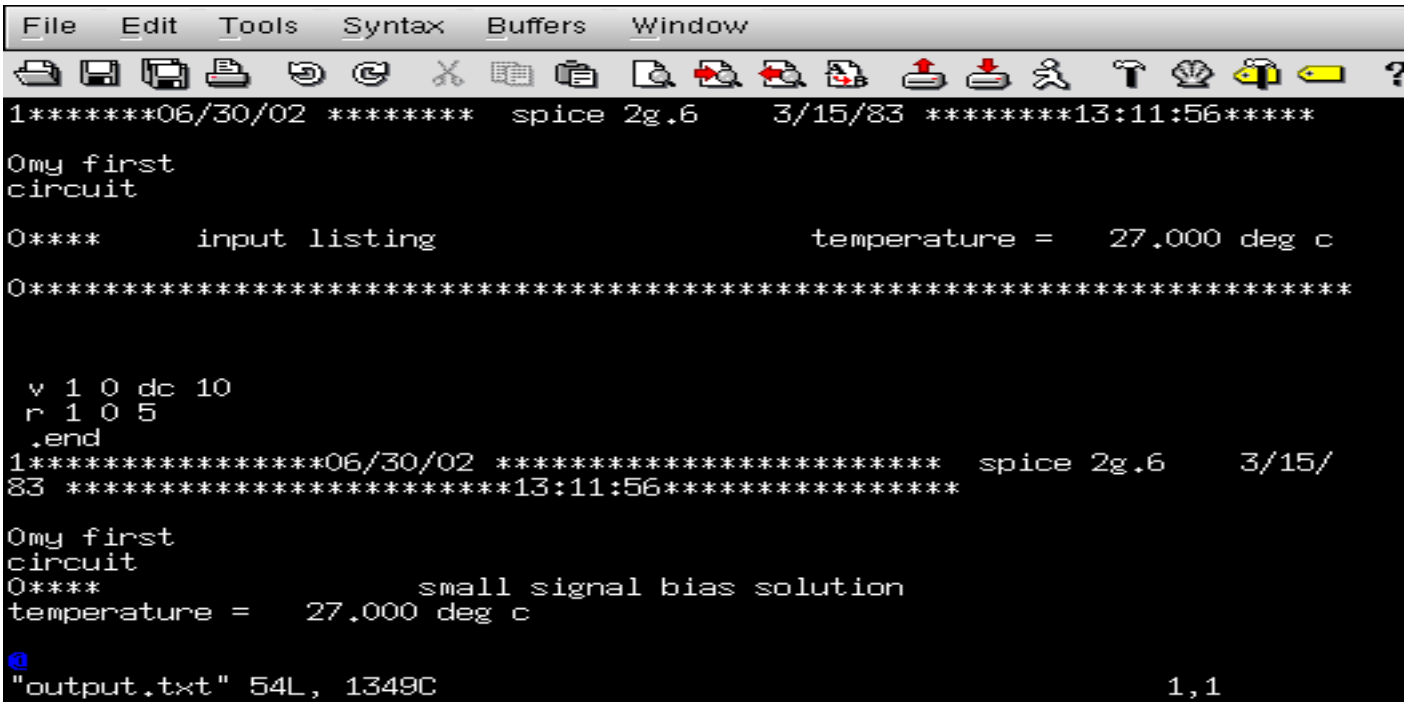
value of 2 amps is output as a negative (-) 2 amps.

The last line of text in the computer's analysis report is "total power dissipation," which in this case is given as "2.00E+01" watts: 2.00 x 10^1, or 20 watts. SPICE outputs most figures in scientific notation rather than normal (fixed-point) notation. While this may seem to be more confusing at first, it is actually less confusing when very large or very small numbers are involved. The details of scientific notation will be covered in the next chapter of this book.

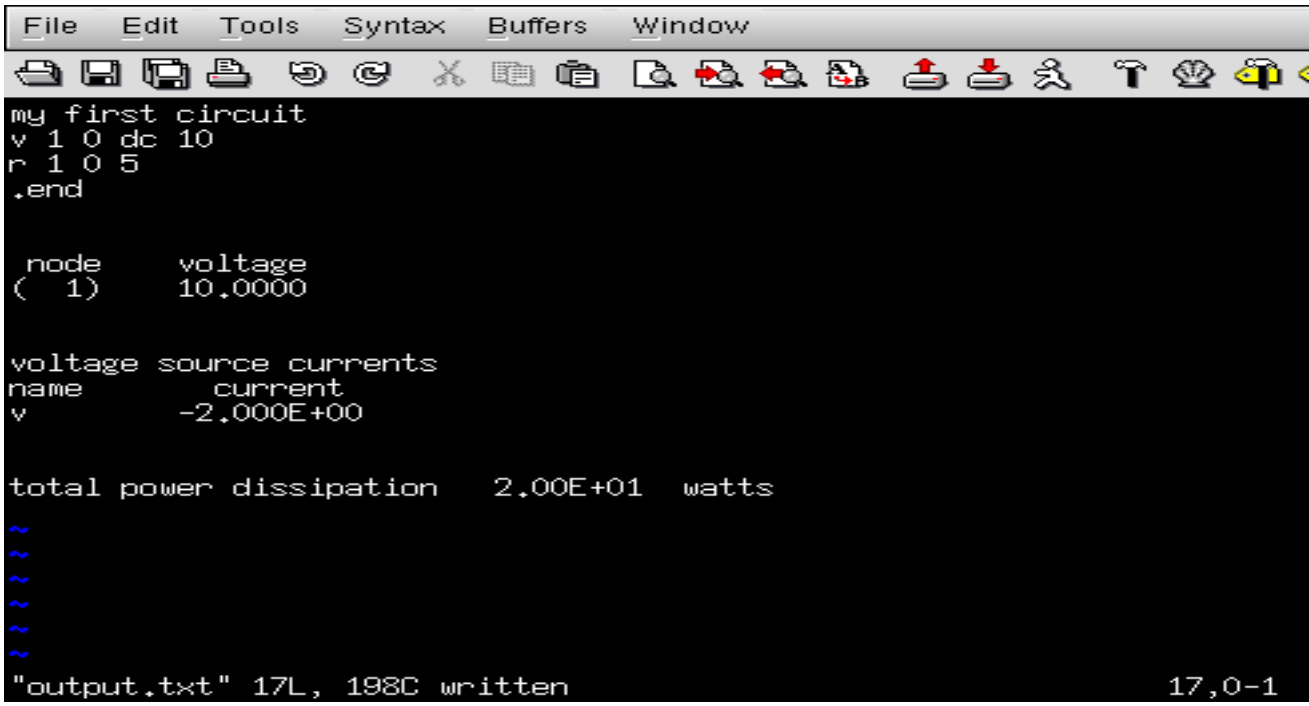
One of the benefits of using a "primitive" text-based program such as SPICE is that the text files dealt with are extremely small compared to other file formats, especially graphical formats used in other circuit simulation software. Also, the fact that SPICE's output is plain text means you can direct SPICE's output to another text file where it may be further manipulated. To do this, we re-issue a command to the computer's operating system to invoke SPICE, this time redirecting the output to a file I'll call "`output.txt`":



SPICE will run "silently" this time, without the stream of text output to the computer screen as before. A new file, `output1.txt`, will be created, which you may open and change using a text editor or word processor. For this illustration, I'll use the same text editor (*Vim*) to open this file:



Now, I may freely edit this file, deleting any extraneous text (such as the "banners" showing date and time), leaving only the text that I feel to be pertinent to my circuit's analysis:



Once suitably edited and re-saved under the same filename (`output.txt` in this example), the text may be pasted into any kind of document, "plain text" being a universal file format for almost all computer systems. I can even include it directly in the text of this book – rather than as a "screenshot" graphic image – like this:

```
my first circuit
v 1 0 dc 10
r 1 0 5
.end

node   voltage
(  1)   10.0000

voltage source currents
name       current
v        -2.000E+00

total power dissipation   2.00E+01  watts
```

Incidentally, this is the preferred format for text output from SPICE simulations in this book series: as real text, not as graphic screenshot images.

To alter a component value in the simulation, we need to open up the netlist file (`circuit1.cir`) and make the required modifications in the text description of the circuit, then save those changes to the same filename, and re-invoke SPICE at the command prompt. This process of

editing and processing a text file is one familiar to every computer programmer. One of the reasons I like to teach SPICE is that it prepares the learner to think and work like a computer programmer, which is good because computer programming is a significant area of advanced electronics work.

Earlier we explored the consequences of changing one of the three variables in an electric circuit (voltage, current, or resistance) using Ohm's Law to mathematically predict what would happen. Now let's try the same thing using SPICE to do the math for us.

If we were to triple the voltage in our last example circuit from 10 to 30 volts and keep the circuit resistance unchanged, we would expect the current to triple as well. Let's try this, renaming our netlist file so as to not over-write the first file. This way, we will have *both* versions of the circuit simulation stored on the hard drive of our computer for future use. The following text listing is the output of SPICE for this modified netlist, formatted as plain text rather than as a graphic image of my computer screen:

```
second example circuit
v 1 0 dc 30
r 1 0 5
.end

node    voltage
(  1)   30.0000

voltage source currents
name       current
v        -6.000E+00
total power dissipation   1.80E+02  watts
```

Just as we expected, the current tripled with the voltage increase. Current used to be 2 amps, but now it has increased to 6 amps (-6.000 x 10^0). Note also how the total power dissipation in the circuit has increased. It was 20 watts before, but now is 180 watts (1.8 x 10^2). Recalling that power is related to the square of the voltage (Joule's Law: $P=E^2/R$), this makes sense. If we triple the circuit voltage, the power should increase by a factor of nine ($3^2 = 9$). Nine times 20 is indeed 180, so SPICE's output does indeed correlate with what we know about power in electric circuits.

If we want to see how this simple circuit would respond over a wide range of battery voltages, we can invoke some of the more advanced options within SPICE. Here, I'll use the ".dc" analysis option to vary the battery voltage from 0 to 100 volts in 5 volt increments, printing out the circuit voltage and current at every step. The lines in the SPICE netlist beginning with a star symbol ("*") are *comments*. That is, they don't tell the computer to do anything relating to circuit analysis, but merely serve as notes for any human being reading the netlist text.

```
third example circuit
v 1 0
r 1 0 5
*the ".dc" statement tells spice to sweep the "v" supply
*voltage from 0 to 100 volts in 5 volt steps.
```

```
.dc v 0 100 5
.print dc v(1) i(v)
.end
```

The `.print` command in this SPICE netlist instructs SPICE to print columns of numbers corresponding to each step in the analysis:

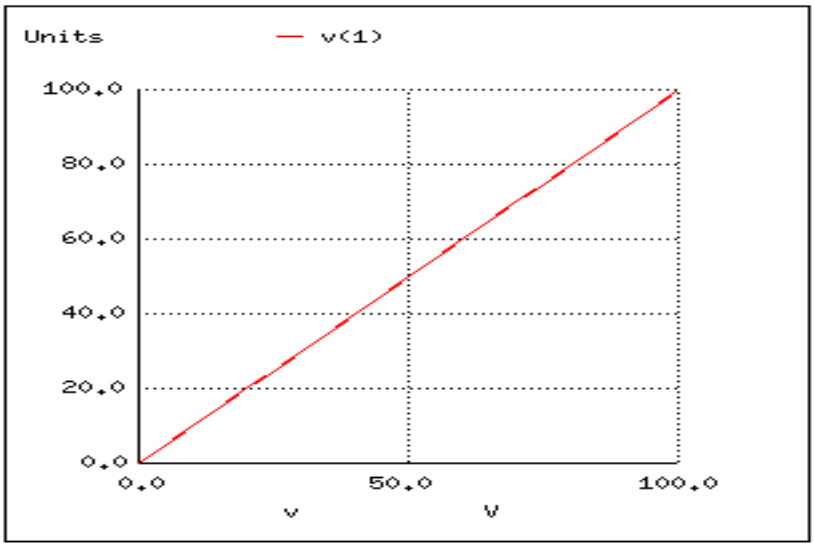
```
v             i(v)
0.000E+00     0.000E+00
5.000E+00    -1.000E+00
1.000E+01    -2.000E+00
1.500E+01    -3.000E+00
2.000E+01    -4.000E+00
2.500E+01    -5.000E+00
3.000E+01    -6.000E+00
3.500E+01    -7.000E+00
4.000E+01    -8.000E+00
4.500E+01    -9.000E+00
5.000E+01    -1.000E+01
5.500E+01    -1.100E+01
6.000E+01    -1.200E+01
6.500E+01    -1.300E+01
7.000E+01    -1.400E+01
7.500E+01    -1.500E+01
8.000E+01    -1.600E+01
8.500E+01    -1.700E+01
9.000E+01    -1.800E+01
9.500E+01    -1.900E+01
1.000E+02    -2.000E+01
```

If I re-edit the netlist file, changing the `.print` command into a `.plot` command, SPICE will output a crude graph made up of text characters:

```
Legend:  + = v#branch
--------------------------------------------------------------------------
sweep      v#branch-2.00e+01             -1.00e+01                  0.00e+00
--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
0.000e+00  0.000e+00 .                         .                         +
5.000e+00 -1.000e+00 .                         .                       +  .
1.000e+01 -2.000e+00 .                         .                     +    .
1.500e+01 -3.000e+00 .                         .                   +      .
2.000e+01 -4.000e+00 .                         .                 +        .
2.500e+01 -5.000e+00 .                         .               +          .
3.000e+01 -6.000e+00 .                         .             +            .
3.500e+01 -7.000e+00 .                         .           +              .
4.000e+01 -8.000e+00 .                         .         +                .
4.500e+01 -9.000e+00 .                         .       +                  .
5.000e+01 -1.000e+01 .                         +                          .
5.500e+01 -1.100e+01 .                       +   .                        .
6.000e+01 -1.200e+01 .                     +     .                        .
6.500e+01 -1.300e+01 .                   +       .                        .
7.000e+01 -1.400e+01 .                 +         .                        .
7.500e+01 -1.500e+01 .               +           .                        .
8.000e+01 -1.600e+01 .             +             .                        .
8.500e+01 -1.700e+01 .           +               .                        .
9.000e+01 -1.800e+01 .         +                 .                        .
9.500e+01 -1.900e+01 .       +                   .                        .
1.000e+02 -2.000e+01 +                           .                        .
--------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
sweep      v#branch-2.00e+01             -1.00e+01                  0.00e+00
```

In both output formats, the left-hand column of numbers represents the battery voltage at each interval, as it increases from 0 volts to 100 volts, 5 volts at a time. The numbers in the right-hand column indicate the circuit current for each of those voltages. Look closely at those numbers and you'll see the proportional relationship between each pair: Ohm's Law (I=E/R) holds true in each and every case, each current value being 1/5 the respective voltage value, because the circuit resistance is exactly 5 Ω. Again, the negative numbers for current in this SPICE analysis is more of a quirk than anything else. Just pay attention to the absolute value of each number unless otherwise specified.

There are even some computer programs able to interpret and convert the non-graphical data output by SPICE into a graphical plot. One of these programs is called *Nutmeg*, and its output looks something like this:



Note how Nutmeg plots the resistor voltage `v(1)` (voltage between node 1 and the implied reference point of node 0) as a line with a positive slope (from lower-left to upper-right).

Whether or not you ever become proficient at using SPICE is not relevant to its application in this book. All that matters is that you develop an understanding for what the numbers mean in a SPICE-generated report. In the examples to come, I'll do my best to annotate the numerical results of SPICE to eliminate any confusion, and unlock the power of this amazing tool to help you understand the behavior of electric circuits.

2.10 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Larry Cramblett (September 20, 2004): identified serious typographical error in "Nonlinear conduction" section.

James Boorn (January 18, 2001): identified sentence structure error and offered correction. Also, identified discrepancy in netlist syntax requirements between SPICE version 2g6 and version 3f5.

Ben Crowell, Ph.D. (January 13, 2001): suggestions on improving the technical accuracy of *voltage* and *charge* definitions.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 3

ELECTRICAL SAFETY

Contents

3.1 The importance of electrical safety

With this lesson, I hope to avoid a common mistake found in electronics textbooks of either ignoring or not covering with sufficient detail the subject of electrical safety. I assume that whoever reads this book has at least a passing interest in actually working with electricity, and as such the topic of safety is of paramount importance. Those authors, editors, and publishers who fail to incorporate this subject into their introductory texts are depriving the reader of life-saving information.

As an instructor of industrial electronics, I spend a full week with my students reviewing the theoretical and practical aspects of electrical safety. The same textbooks I found lacking in technical clarity I also found lacking in coverage of electrical safety, hence the creation of

this chapter. Its placement after the first two chapters is intentional: in order for the concepts of electrical safety to make the most sense, some foundational knowledge of electricity is necessary.

Another benefit of including a detailed lesson on electrical safety is the practical context it sets for basic concepts of voltage, current, resistance, and circuit design. The more relevant a technical topic can be made, the more likely a student will be to pay attention and comprehend. And what could be more relevant than application to your own personal safety? Also, with electrical power being such an everyday presence in modern life, almost anyone can relate to the illustrations given in such a lesson. Have you ever wondered why birds don't get shocked while resting on power lines? Read on and find out!

3.2 Physiological effects of electricity

Most of us have experienced some form of electric "shock," where electricity causes our body to experience pain or trauma. If we are fortunate, the extent of that experience is limited to tingles or jolts of pain from static electricity buildup discharging through our bodies. When we are working around electric circuits capable of delivering high power to loads, electric shock becomes a much more serious issue, and pain is the least significant result of shock.

As electric current is conducted through a material, any opposition to that flow of electrons (resistance) results in a dissipation of energy, usually in the form of heat. This is the most basic and easy-to-understand effect of electricity on living tissue: current makes it heat up. If the amount of heat generated is sufficient, the tissue may be burnt. The effect is physiologically the same as damage caused by an open flame or other high-temperature source of heat, except that electricity has the ability to burn tissue well beneath the skin of a victim, even burning internal organs.

Another effect of electric current on the body, perhaps the most significant in terms of hazard, regards the nervous system. By "nervous system" I mean the network of special cells in the body called "nerve cells" or "neurons" which process and conduct the multitude of signals responsible for regulation of many body functions. The brain, spinal cord, and sensory/motor organs in the body function together to allow it to sense, move, respond, think, and remember.

Nerve cells communicate to each other by acting as "transducers:" creating electrical signals (very small voltages and currents) in response to the input of certain chemical compounds called *neurotransmitters*, and releasing neurotransmitters when stimulated by electrical signals. If electric current of sufficient magnitude is conducted through a living creature (human or otherwise), its effect will be to override the tiny electrical impulses normally generated by the neurons, overloading the nervous system and preventing both reflex and volitional signals from being able to actuate muscles. Muscles triggered by an external (shock) current will involuntarily contract, and there's nothing the victim can do about it.

This problem is especially dangerous if the victim contacts an energized conductor with his or her hands. The forearm muscles responsible for bending fingers tend to be better developed than those muscles responsible for extending fingers, and so if both sets of muscles try to contract because of an electric current conducted through the person's arm, the "bending" muscles will win, clenching the fingers into a fist. If the conductor delivering current to the victim faces the palm of his or her hand, this clenching action will force the hand to grasp the wire firmly, thus worsening the situation by securing excellent contact with the wire. The victim will be

completely unable to let go of the wire.

Medically, this condition of involuntary muscle contraction is called *tetanus*. Electricians familiar with this effect of electric shock often refer to an immobilized victim of electric shock as being "froze on the circuit." Shock-induced tetanus can only be interrupted by stopping the current through the victim.

Even when the current is stopped, the victim may not regain voluntary control over their muscles for a while, as the neurotransmitter chemistry has been thrown into disarray. This principle has been applied in "stun gun" devices such as Tasers, which on the principle of momentarily shocking a victim with a high-voltage pulse delivered between two electrodes. A well-placed shock has the effect of temporarily (a few minutes) immobilizing the victim.

Electric current is able to affect more than just skeletal muscles in a shock victim, however. The diaphragm muscle controlling the lungs, and the heart – which is a muscle in itself – can also be "frozen" in a state of tetanus by electric current. Even currents too low to induce tetanus are often able to scramble nerve cell signals enough that the heart cannot beat properly, sending the heart into a condition known as *fibrillation*. A fibrillating heart flutters rather than beats, and is ineffective at pumping blood to vital organs in the body. In any case, death from asphyxiation and/or cardiac arrest will surely result from a strong enough electric current through the body. Ironically, medical personnel use a strong jolt of electric current applied across the chest of a victim to "jump start" a fibrillating heart into a normal beating pattern.

That last detail leads us into another hazard of electric shock, this one peculiar to public power systems. Though our initial study of electric circuits will focus almost exclusively on DC (Direct Current, or electricity that moves in a continuous direction in a circuit), modern power systems utilize alternating current, or AC. The technical reasons for this preference of AC over DC in power systems are irrelevant to this discussion, but the special hazards of each kind of electrical power are very important to the topic of safety.

> How AC affects the body depends largely on frequency. Low-frequency (50- to 60-Hz) AC is used in US (60 Hz) and European (50 Hz) households; it can be more dangerous than high-frequency AC and is 3 to 5 times more dangerous than DC of the same voltage and amperage. Low-frequency AC produces extended muscle contraction (tetany), which may freeze the hand to the current's source, prolonging exposure. DC is most likely to cause a single convulsive contraction, which often forces the victim away from the current's source. [1]

AC's alternating nature has a greater tendency to throw the heart's pacemaker neurons into a condition of fibrillation, whereas DC tends to just make the heart stand still. Once the shock current is halted, a "frozen" heart has a better chance of regaining a normal beat pattern than a fibrillating heart. This is why "defibrillating" equipment used by emergency medics works: the jolt of current supplied by the defibrillator unit is DC, which halts fibrillation and gives the heart a chance to recover.

In either case, electric currents high enough to cause involuntary muscle action are dangerous and are to be avoided at all costs. In the next section, we'll take a look at how such currents typically enter and exit the body, and examine precautions against such occurrences.

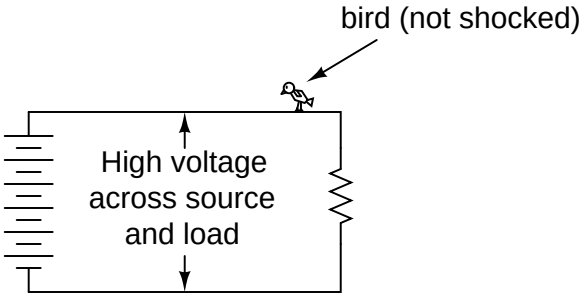
- **REVIEW:**

- Electric current is capable of producing deep and severe burns in the body due to power dissipation across the body's electrical resistance.
- *Tetanus* is the condition where muscles involuntarily contract due to the passage of external electric current through the body. When involuntary contraction of muscles controlling the fingers causes a victim to be unable to let go of an energized conductor, the victim is said to be "froze on the circuit."
- Diaphragm (lung) and heart muscles are similarly affected by electric current. Even currents too small to induce tetanus can be strong enough to interfere with the heart's pacemaker neurons, causing the heart to flutter instead of strongly beat.
- Direct current (DC) is more likely to cause muscle tetanus than alternating current (AC), making DC more likely to "freeze" a victim in a shock scenario. However, AC is more likely to cause a victim's heart to fibrillate, which is a more dangerous condition for the victim after the shocking current has been halted.

3.3 Shock current path

As we've already learned, electricity requires a complete path (circuit) to continuously flow. This is why the shock received from static electricity is only a momentary jolt: the flow of electrons is necessarily brief when static charges are equalized between two objects. Shocks of self-limited duration like this are rarely hazardous.

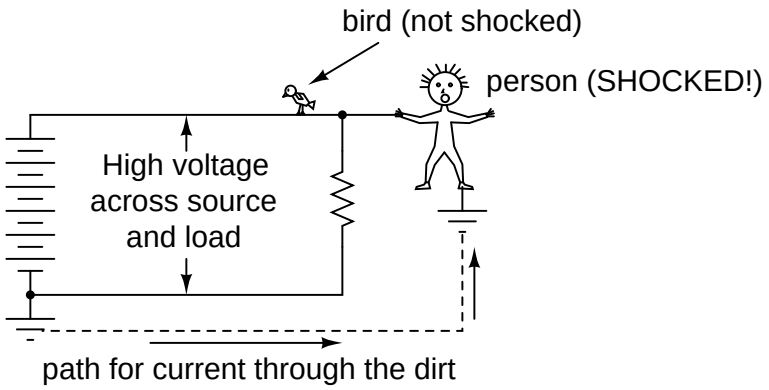
Without two contact points on the body for current to enter and exit, respectively, there is no hazard of shock. This is why birds can safely rest on high-voltage power lines without getting shocked: they make contact with the circuit at only one point.



In order for electrons to flow through a conductor, there must be a voltage present to motivate them. Voltage, as you should recall, is *always relative between two points*. There is no such thing as voltage "on" or "at" a single point in the circuit, and so the bird contacting a single point in the above circuit has no voltage applied across its body to establish a current through it. Yes, even though they rest on *two* feet, both feet are touching the same wire, making them *electrically common*. Electrically speaking, both of the bird's feet touch the same point, hence there is no voltage between them to motivate current through the bird's body.

This might lend one to believe that its impossible to be shocked by electricity by only touching a single wire. Like the birds, if we're sure to touch only one wire at a time, we'll be safe, right? Unfortunately, this is not correct. Unlike birds, people are usually standing on the

ground when they contact a ”live” wire. Many times, one side of a power system will be intentionally connected to earth ground, and so the person touching a single wire is actually making contact between two points in the circuit (the wire and earth ground):



The ground symbol is that set of three horizontal bars of decreasing width located at the lower-left of the circuit shown, and also at the foot of the person being shocked. In real life the power system ground consists of some kind of metallic conductor buried deep in the ground for making maximum contact with the earth. That conductor is electrically connected to an appropriate connection point on the circuit with thick wire. The victim's ground connection is through their feet, which are touching the earth.

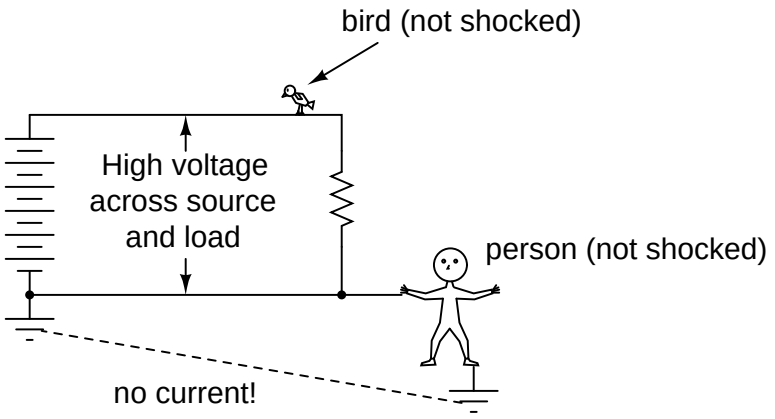
A few questions usually arise at this point in the mind of the student:

- If the presence of a ground point in the circuit provides an easy point of contact for someone to get shocked, why have it in the circuit at all? Wouldn't a ground-less circuit be safer?

- The person getting shocked probably isn't bare-footed. If rubber and fabric are insulating materials, then why aren't their shoes protecting them by preventing a circuit from forming?

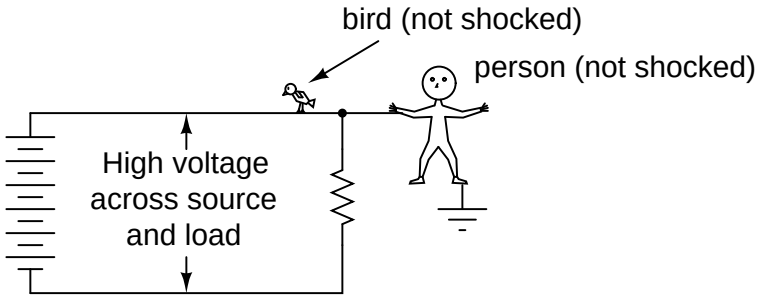
- How good of a conductor can *dirt* be? If you can get shocked by current through the earth, why not use the earth as a conductor in our power circuits?

In answer to the first question, the presence of an intentional ”grounding” point in an electric circuit is intended to ensure that one side of it *is* safe to come in contact with. Note that if our victim in the above diagram were to touch the bottom side of the resistor, nothing would happen even though their feet would still be contacting ground:

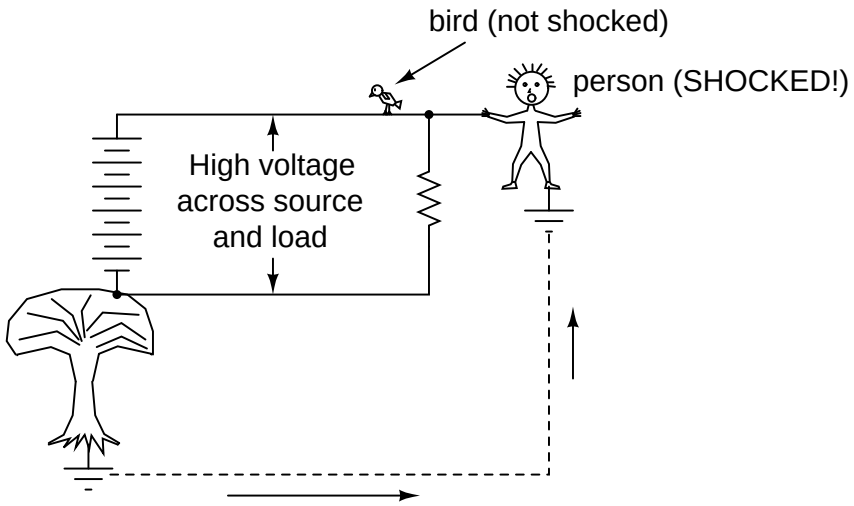


Because the bottom side of the circuit is firmly connected to ground through the grounding point on the lower-left of the circuit, the lower conductor of the circuit is made *electrically common* with earth ground. Since there can be no voltage between electrically common points, there will be no voltage applied across the person contacting the lower wire, and they will not receive a shock. For the same reason, the wire connecting the circuit to the grounding rod/plates is usually left bare (no insulation), so that any metal object it brushes up against will similarly be electrically common with the earth.

Circuit grounding ensures that at least one point in the circuit will be safe to touch. But what about leaving a circuit completely ungrounded? Wouldn't that make any person touching just a single wire as safe as the bird sitting on just one? Ideally, yes. Practically, no. Observe what happens with no ground at all:

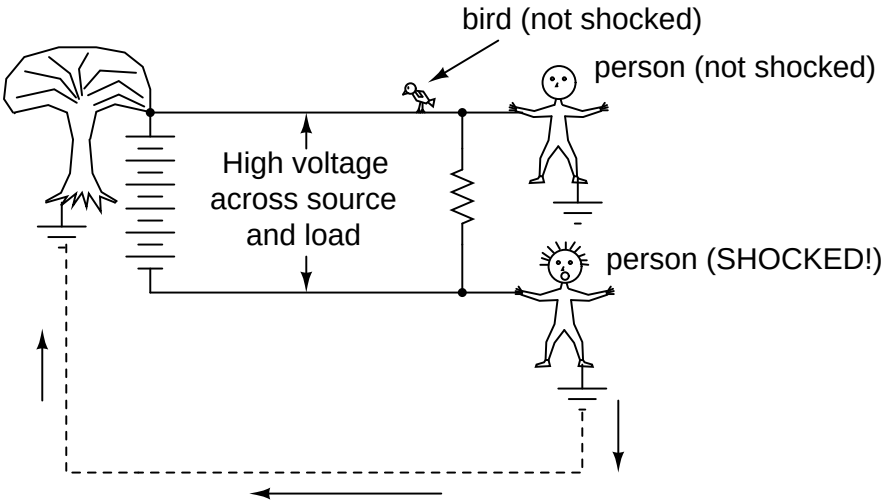


Despite the fact that the person's feet are still contacting ground, any single point in the circuit should be safe to touch. Since there is no complete path (circuit) formed through the person's body from the bottom side of the voltage source to the top, there is no way for a current to be established through the person. However, this could all change with an accidental ground, such as a tree branch touching a power line and providing connection to earth ground:



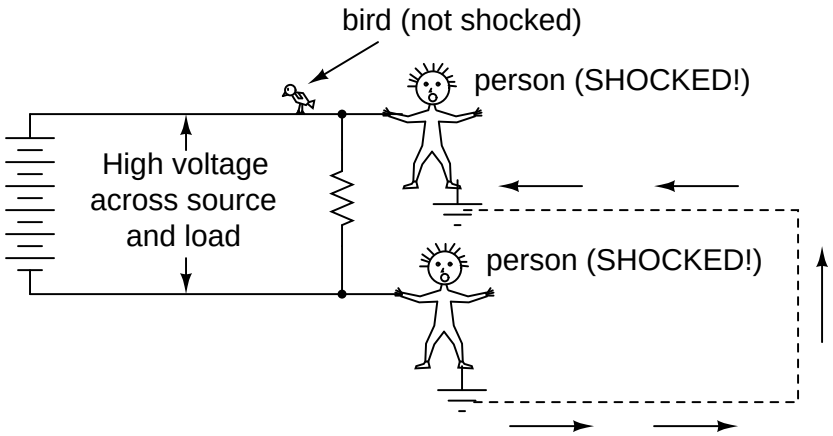
accidental ground path through tree (touching wire) completes the circuit for shock current through the victim.

Such an accidental connection between a power system conductor and the earth (ground) is called a *ground fault*. Ground faults may be caused by many things, including dirt buildup on power line insulators (creating a dirty-water path for current from the conductor to the pole, and to the ground, when it rains), ground water infiltration in buried power line conductors, and birds landing on power lines, bridging the line to the pole with their wings. Given the many causes of ground faults, they tend to be unpredicatable. In the case of trees, no one can guarantee *which wire* their branches might touch. If a tree were to brush up against the top wire in the circuit, it would make the top wire safe to touch and the bottom one dangerous – just the opposite of the previous scenario where the tree contacts the bottom wire:



accidental ground path through tree (touching wire) completes the circuit for shock current through the victim.

With a tree branch contacting the top wire, that wire becomes the grounded conductor in the circuit, electrically common with earth ground. Therefore, there is no voltage between that wire and ground, but full (high) voltage between the bottom wire and ground. As mentioned previously, tree branches are only one potential source of ground faults in a power system. Consider an ungrounded power system with no trees in contact, but this time with *two* people touching single wires:



With each person standing on the ground, contacting different points in the circuit, a path for shock current is made through one person, through the earth, and through the other person. Even though each person thinks they're safe in only touching a single point in the circuit, their combined actions create a deadly scenario. In effect, one person acts as the ground fault which makes it unsafe for the other person. This is exactly why ungrounded power systems are

dangerous: the voltage between any point in the circuit and ground (earth) is unpredictable, because a ground fault could appear at any point in the circuit at any time. The only character guaranteed to be safe in these scenarios is the bird, who has no connection to earth ground at all! By firmly connecting a designated point in the circuit to earth ground ("grounding" the circuit), at least safety can be assured at that one point. This is more assurance of safety than having no ground connection at all.

In answer to the second question, rubber-soled shoes *do* indeed provide some electrical insulation to help protect someone from conducting shock current through their feet. However, most common shoe designs are not intended to be electrically "safe," their soles being too thin and not of the right substance. Also, any moisture, dirt, or conductive salts from body sweat on the surface of or permeated through the soles of shoes will compromise what little insulating value the shoe had to begin with. There are shoes specifically made for dangerous electrical work, as well as thick rubber mats made to stand on while working on live circuits, but these special pieces of gear must be in absolutely clean, dry condition in order to be effective. Suffice it to say, normal footwear is not enough to guarantee protection against electric shock from a power system.

Research conducted on contact resistance between parts of the human body and points of contact (such as the ground) shows a wide range of figures (see end of chapter for information on the source of this data):

- Hand or foot contact, insulated with rubber: 20 MΩ typical.
- Foot contact through leather shoe sole (dry): 100 kΩ to 500 kΩ
- Foot contact through leather shoe sole (wet): 5 kΩ to 20 kΩ

As you can see, not only is rubber a far better insulating material than leather, but the presence of water in a porous substance such as leather *greatly* reduces electrical resistance.

In answer to the third question, dirt is not a very good conductor (at least not when its dry!). It is too poor of a conductor to support continuous current for powering a load. However, as we will see in the next section, it takes very little current to injure or kill a human being, so even the poor conductivity of dirt is enough to provide a path for deadly current when there is sufficient voltage available, as there usually is in power systems.

Some ground surfaces are better insulators than others. Asphalt, for instance, being oil-based, has a much greater resistance than most forms of dirt or rock. Concrete, on the other hand, tends to have fairly low resistance due to its intrinsic water and electrolyte (conductive chemical) content.

- **REVIEW:**
- Electric shock can only occur when contact is made between two points of a circuit; when voltage is applied across a victim's body.
- Power circuits usually have a designated point that is "grounded:" firmly connected to metal rods or plates buried in the dirt to ensure that one side of the circuit is always at ground potential (zero voltage between that point and earth ground).
- A *ground fault* is an accidental connection between a circuit conductor and the earth (ground).

- Special, insulated shoes and mats are made to protect persons from shock via ground conduction, but even these pieces of gear must be in clean, dry condition to be effective. Normal footwear is not good enough to provide protection from shock by insulating its wearer from the earth.
- Though dirt is a poor conductor, it can conduct enough current to injure or kill a human being.

3.4 Ohm's Law (again!)

A common phrase heard in reference to electrical safety goes something like this: *"It's not voltage that kills, its current!"* While there is an element of truth to this, there's more to understand about shock hazard than this simple adage. If voltage presented no danger, no one would ever print and display signs saying: **DANGER – HIGH VOLTAGE!**

The principle that "current kills" is essentially correct. It is electric current that burns tissue, freezes muscles, and fibrillates hearts. However, electric current doesn't just occur on its own: there must be voltage available to motivate electrons to flow through a victim. A person's body also presents resistance to current, which must be taken into account.

Taking Ohm's Law for voltage, current, and resistance, and expressing it in terms of current for a given voltage and resistance, we have this equation:

Ohm's Law

$$I = \frac{E}{R} \qquad \text{Current} = \frac{\text{Voltage}}{\text{Resistance}}$$

The amount of current through a body is equal to the amount of voltage applied between two points on that body, divided by the electrical resistance offered by the body between those two points. Obviously, the more voltage available to cause electrons to flow, the easier they will flow through any given amount of resistance. Hence, the danger of high voltage: high voltage means potential for large amounts of current through your body, which will injure or kill you. Conversely, the more resistance a body offers to current, the slower electrons will flow for any given amount of voltage. Just how much voltage is dangerous depends on how much total resistance is in the circuit to oppose the flow of electrons.

Body resistance is not a fixed quantity. It varies from person to person and from time to time. There's even a body fat measurement technique based on a measurement of electrical resistance between a person's toes and fingers. Differing percentages of body fat give provide different resistances: just one variable affecting electrical resistance in the human body. In order for the technique to work accurately, the person must regulate their fluid intake for several hours prior to the test, indicating that body hydration another factor impacting the body's electrical resistance.

Body resistance also varies depending on how contact is made with the skin: is it from hand-to-hand, hand-to-foot, foot-to-foot, hand-to-elbow, etc.? Sweat, being rich in salts and minerals, is an excellent conductor of electricity for being a liquid. So is blood, with its similarly high content of conductive chemicals. Thus, contact with a wire made by a sweaty hand or open wound will offer much less resistance to current than contact made by clean, dry skin.

Measuring electrical resistance with a sensitive meter, I measure approximately 1 million ohms of resistance (1 MΩ) between my two hands, holding on to the meter's metal probes between my fingers. The meter indicates less resistance when I squeeze the probes tightly and more resistance when I hold them loosely. Sitting here at my computer, typing these words, my hands are clean and dry. If I were working in some hot, dirty, industrial environment, the resistance between my hands would likely be much less, presenting less opposition to deadly current, and a greater threat of electrical shock.

But how much current is harmful? The answer to that question also depends on several factors. Individual body chemistry has a significant impact on how electric current affects an individual. Some people are highly sensitive to current, experiencing involuntary muscle contraction with shocks from static electricity. Others can draw large sparks from discharging static electricity and hardly feel it, much less experience a muscle spasm. Despite these differences, approximate guidelines have been developed through tests which indicate very little current being necessary to manifest harmful effects (again, see end of chapter for information on the source of this data). All current figures given in milliamps (a milliamp is equal to 1/1000 of an amp):

BODILY EFFECT	DIRECT CURRENT (DC)	60 Hz AC	10 kHz AC
Slight sensation felt at hand(s)	Men = 1.0 mA	0.4 mA	7 mA
	Women = 0.6 mA	0.3 mA	5 mA
Threshold of perception	Men = 5.2 mA	1.1 mA	12 mA
	Women = 3.5 mA	0.7 mA	8 mA
Painful, but voluntary muscle control maintained	Men = 62 mA	9 mA	55 mA
	Women = 41 mA	6 mA	37 mA
Painful, unable to let go of wires	Men = 76 mA	16 mA	75 mA
	Women = 51 mA	10.5 mA	50 mA
Severe pain, difficulty breathing	Men = 90 mA	23 mA	94 mA
	Women = 60 mA	15 mA	63 mA
Possible heart fibrillation after 3 seconds	Men = 500 mA	100 mA	
	Women = 500 mA	100 mA	

"Hz" stands for the unit of *Hertz*, the measure of how rapidly alternating current alternates, a measure otherwise known as *frequency*. So, the column of figures labeled "60 Hz AC" refers to current that alternates at a frequency of 60 cycles (1 cycle = period of time where electrons flow one direction, then the other direction) per second. The last column, labeled "10 kHz AC,"

refers to alternating current that completes ten thousand (10,000) back-and-forth cycles each and every second.

Keep in mind that these figures are only approximate, as individuals with different body chemistry may react differently. It has been suggested that an across-the-chest current of only 17 milliamps AC is enough to induce fibrillation in a human subject under certain conditions. Most of our data regarding induced fibrillation comes from animal testing. Obviously, it is not practical to perform tests of induced ventricular fibrillation on human subjects, so the available data is sketchy. Oh, and in case you're wondering, I have no idea why women tend to be more susceptible to electric currents than men!

Suppose I were to place my two hands across the terminals of an AC voltage source at 60 Hz (60 cycles, or alternations back-and-forth, per second). How much voltage would be necessary in this clean, dry state of skin condition to produce a current of 20 milliamps (enough to cause me to become unable to let go of the voltage source)? We can use Ohm's Law (E=IR) to determine this:

E = IR

E = (20 mA)(1 MΩ)

E = 20,000 volts, or 20 kV

Bear in mind that this is a "best case" scenario (clean, dry skin) from the standpoint of electrical safety, and that this figure for voltage represents the amount necessary to induce tetanus. Far less would be required to cause a painful shock! Also keep in mind that the physiological effects of any particular amount of current can vary significantly from person to person, and that these calculations are *rough estimates only*.

With water sprinkled on my fingers to simulate sweat, I was able to measure a hand-to-hand resistance of only 17,000 ohms (17 kΩ). Bear in mind this is only with one finger of each hand contacting a thin metal wire. Recalculating the voltage required to cause a current of 20 milliamps, we obtain this figure:

E = IR

E = (20 mA)(17 kΩ)

E = 340 volts

In this realistic condition, it would only take 340 volts of potential from one of my hands to the other to cause 20 milliamps of current. However, it is still possible to receive a deadly shock from less voltage than this. Provided a much lower body resistance figure augmented by contact with a ring (a band of gold wrapped around the circumference of one's finger makes an *excellent* contact point for electrical shock) or full contact with a large metal object such as a pipe or metal handle of a tool, the body resistance figure could drop as low as 1,000 ohms (1 kΩ), allowing an even lower voltage to present a potential hazard:

E = IR

E = (20 mA)(1 kΩ)

E = 20 volts

Notice that in this condition, 20 volts is enough to produce a current of 20 milliamps through a person: enough to induce tetanus. Remember, it has been suggested a current of only 17 milliamps may induce ventricular (heart) fibrillation. With a hand-to-hand resistance of 1000 Ω, it would only take 17 volts to create this dangerous condition:

E = IR

E = (17 mA)(1 kΩ)

E = 17 volts

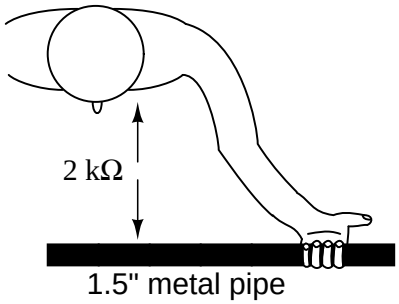
Seventeen volts is not very much as far as electrical systems are concerned. Granted, this is a "worst-case" scenario with 60 Hz AC voltage and excellent bodily conductivity, but it does stand to show how little voltage may present a serious threat under certain conditions.

The conditions necessary to produce 1,000 Ω of body resistance don't have to be as extreme as what was presented, either (sweaty skin with contact made on a gold ring). Body resistance may decrease with the application of voltage (especially if tetanus causes the victim to maintain a tighter grip on a conductor) so that with constant voltage a shock may increase in severity after initial contact. What begins as a mild shock – just enough to "freeze" a victim so they can't let go – may escalate into something severe enough to kill them as their body resistance decreases and current correspondingly increases.

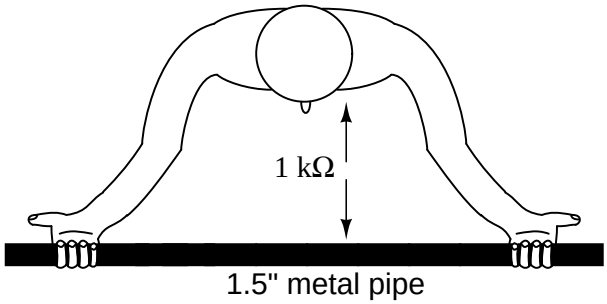
Research has provided an approximate set of figures for electrical resistance of human contact points under different conditions (see end of chapter for information on the source of this data):

- Wire touched by finger: 40,000 Ω to 1,000,000 Ω dry, 4,000 Ω to 15,000 Ω wet.
- Wire held by hand: 15,000 Ω to 50,000 Ω dry, 3,000 Ω to 5,000 Ω wet.
- Metal pliers held by hand: 5,000 Ω to 10,000 Ω dry, 1,000 Ω to 3,000 Ω wet.
- Contact with palm of hand: 3,000 Ω to 8,000 Ω dry, 1,000 Ω to 2,000 Ω wet.
- 1.5 inch metal pipe grasped by one hand: 1,000 Ω to 3,000 Ω dry, 500 Ω to 1,500 Ω wet.
- 1.5 inch metal pipe grasped by two hands: 500 Ω to 1,500 kΩ dry, 250 Ω to 750 Ω wet.
- Hand immersed in conductive liquid: 200 Ω to 500 Ω.
- Foot immersed in conductive liquid: 100 Ω to 300 Ω.

Note the resistance values of the two conditions involving a 1.5 inch metal pipe. The resistance measured with two hands grasping the pipe is exactly one-half the resistance of one hand grasping the pipe.



With two hands, the bodily contact area is twice as great as with one hand. This is an important lesson to learn: electrical resistance between any contacting objects diminishes with increased contact area, all other factors being equal. With two hands holding the pipe, electrons have two, *parallel* routes through which to flow from the pipe to the body (or vice-versa).



Two 2 kΩ contact points in "parallel" with each other gives 1 kΩ total pipe-to-body resistance.

As we will see in a later chapter, *parallel* circuit pathways always result in less overall resistance than any single pathway considered alone.

In industry, 30 volts is generally considered to be a conservative threshold value for dangerous voltage. The cautious person should regard any voltage above 30 volts as threatening, not relying on normal body resistance for protection against shock. That being said, it is still an excellent idea to keep one's hands clean and dry, and remove all metal jewelry when working around electricity. Even around lower voltages, metal jewelry can present a hazard by conducting enough current to burn the skin if brought into contact between two points in a circuit. Metal rings, especially, have been the cause of more than a few burnt fingers by bridging between points in a low-voltage, high-current circuit.

Also, voltages lower than 30 can be dangerous if they are enough to induce an unpleasant sensation, which may cause you to jerk and accidently come into contact across a higher voltage or some other hazard. I recall once working on a automobile on a hot summer day. I was wearing shorts, my bare leg contacting the chrome bumper of the vehicle as I tightened battery connections. When I touched my metal wrench to the positive (ungrounded) side of the 12 volt battery, I could feel a tingling sensation at the point where my leg was touching the bumper. The combination of firm contact with metal and my sweaty skin made it possible to feel a shock with only 12 volts of electrical potential.

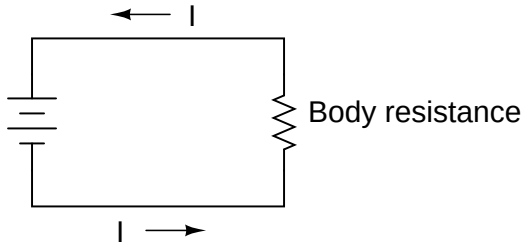
Thankfully, nothing bad happened, but had the engine been running and the shock felt at my hand instead of my leg, I might have reflexively jerked my arm into the path of the rotating fan, or dropped the metal wrench across the battery terminals (producing *large* amounts of current through the wrench with lots of accompanying sparks). This illustrates another important lesson regarding electrical safety; that electric current itself may be an indirect cause of injury by causing you to jump or spasm parts of your body into harm's way.

The path current takes through the human body makes a difference as to how harmful it is. Current will affect whatever muscles are in its path, and since the heart and lung (diaphragm) muscles are probably the most critical to one's survival, shock paths traversing the chest are the most dangerous. This makes the hand-to-hand shock current path a very likely mode of injury and fatality.

To guard against such an occurrence, it is advisable to only use one hand to work on live circuits of hazardous voltage, keeping the other hand tucked into a pocket so as to not accidently touch anything. Of course, it is *always* safer to work on a circuit when it is unpowered, but this is not always practical or possible. For one-handed work, the right hand is generally preferred over the left for two reasons: most people are right-handed (thus granting additional coordination when working), and the heart is usually situated to the left of center in the chest cavity.

For those who are left-handed, this advice may not be the best. If such a person is sufficiently uncoordinated with their right hand, they may be placing themselves in greater danger by using the hand they're least comfortable with, even if shock current through that hand might present more of a hazard to their heart. The relative hazard between shock through one hand or the other is probably less than the hazard of working with less than optimal coordination, so the choice of which hand to work with is best left to the individual.

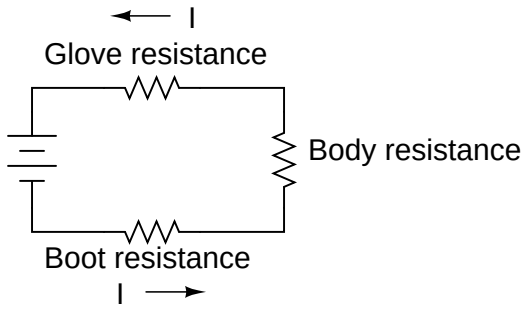
The best protection against shock from a live circuit is resistance, and resistance can be added to the body through the use of insulated tools, gloves, boots, and other gear. Current in a circuit is a function of available voltage divided by the *total* resistance in the path of the flow. As we will investigate in greater detail later in this book, resistances have an additive effect when they're stacked up so that there's only one path for electrons to flow:



Person in direct contact with voltage source:
current limited only by body resistance.

$$I = \frac{E}{R_{body}}$$

Now we'll see an equivalent circuit for a person wearing insulated gloves and boots:



Person wearing insulating gloves and boots:
current now limited by *total* circuit resistance.

$$I = \frac{E}{R_{glove} + R_{body} + R_{boot}}$$

Because electric current must pass through the boot *and* the body *and* the glove to complete its circuit back to the battery, the combined total (*sum*) of these resistances opposes the flow of electrons to a greater degree than any of the resistances considered individually.

Safety is one of the reasons electrical wires are usually covered with plastic or rubber insulation: to vastly increase the amount of resistance between the conductor and whoever or whatever might contact it. Unfortunately, it would be prohibitively expensive to enclose power line conductors in sufficient insulation to provide safety in case of accidental contact, so safety is maintained by keeping those lines far enough out of reach so that no one can accidently touch them.

- **REVIEW:**

- Harm to the body is a function of the amount of shock current. Higher voltage allows for the production of higher, more dangerous currents. Resistance opposes current, making high resistance a good protective measure against shock.

- Any voltage above 30 is generally considered to be capable of delivering dangerous shock currents.

- Metal jewelry is definitely bad to wear when working around electric circuits. Rings, watchbands, necklaces, bracelets, and other such adornments provide excellent electrical contact with your body, and can conduct current themselves enough to produce skin burns, even with low voltages.

- Low voltages can still be dangerous even if they're too low to directly cause shock injury. They may be enough to startle the victim, causing them to jerk back and contact something more dangerous in the near vicinity.

- When necessary to work on a "live" circuit, it is best to perform the work with one hand so as to prevent a deadly hand-to-hand (through the chest) shock current path.

3.5 Safe practices

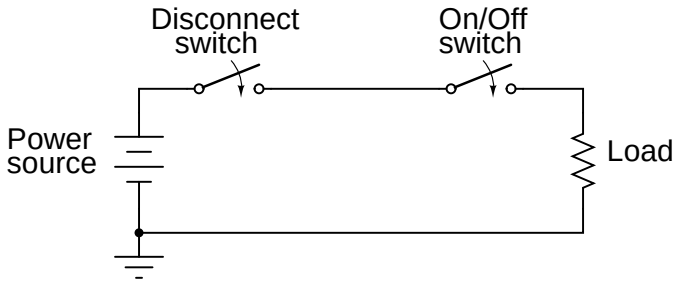
If at all possible, shut off the power to a circuit before performing any work on it. You must secure all sources of harmful energy before a system may be considered safe to work on. In industry, securing a circuit, device, or system in this condition is commonly known as placing it in a *Zero Energy State*. The focus of this lesson is, of course, electrical safety. However, many of these principles apply to non-electrical systems as well.

Securing something in a Zero Energy State means ridding it of any sort of potential or stored energy, including but not limited to:

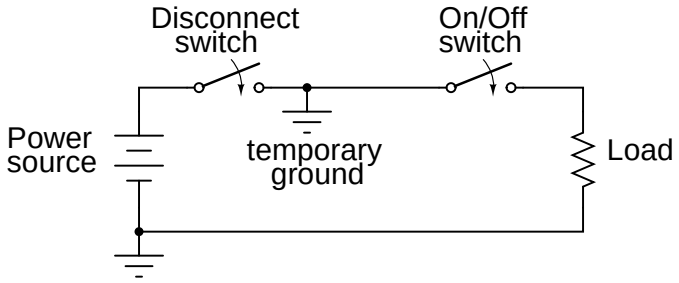
- Dangerous voltage
- Spring pressure
- Hydraulic (liquid) pressure
- Pneumatic (air) pressure
- Suspended weight
- Chemical energy (flammable or otherwise reactive substances)
- Nuclear energy (radioactive or fissile substances)

Voltage by its very nature is a manifestation of potential energy. In the first chapter I even used elevated liquid as an analogy for the potential energy of voltage, having the capacity (potential) to produce current (flow), but not necessarily realizing that potential until a suitable path for flow has been established, and resistance to flow is overcome. A pair of wires with high voltage between them do not look or sound dangerous even though they harbor enough potential energy between them to push deadly amounts of current through your body. Even though that voltage isn't presently doing anything, it has the potential to, and that potential must be neutralized before it is safe to physically contact those wires.

All properly designed circuits have "disconnect" switch mechanisms for securing voltage from a circuit. Sometimes these "disconnects" serve a dual purpose of automatically opening under excessive current conditions, in which case we call them "circuit breakers." Other times, the disconnecting switches are strictly manually-operated devices with no automatic function. In either case, they are there for your protection and must be used properly. Please note that the disconnect device should be separate from the regular switch used to turn the device on and off. It is a safety switch, to be used only for securing the system in a Zero Energy State:

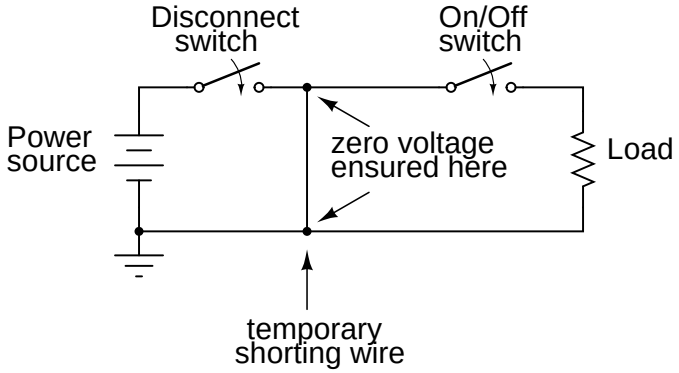


With the disconnect switch in the ”open” position as shown (no continuity), the circuit is broken and no current will exist. There will be zero voltage across the load, and the full voltage of the source will be dropped across the open contacts of the disconnect switch. Note how there is no need for a disconnect switch in the lower conductor of the circuit. Because that side of the circuit is firmly connected to the earth (ground), it is electrically common with the earth and is best left that way. For maximum safety of personnel working on the load of this circuit, a temporary ground connection could be established on the top side of the load, to ensure that no voltage could ever be dropped across the load:



With the temporary ground connection in place, both sides of the load wiring are connected to ground, securing a Zero Energy State at the load.

Since a ground connection made on both sides of the load is electrically equivalent to short-circuiting across the load with a wire, that is another way of accomplishing the same goal of maximum safety:



Either way, both sides of the load will be electrically common to the earth, allowing for no voltage (potential energy) between either side of the load and the ground people stand on. This technique of temporarily grounding conductors in a de-energized power system is very common in maintenance work performed on high voltage power distribution systems.

A further benefit of this precaution is protection against the possibility of the disconnect switch being closed (turned ”on” so that circuit continuity is established) while people are still contacting the load. The temporary wire connected across the load would create a short-circuit when the disconnect switch was closed, immediately tripping any overcurrent protection devices (circuit breakers or fuses) in the circuit, which would shut the power off again. Damage may very well be sustained by the disconnect switch if this were to happen, but the workers at

the load are kept safe.

It would be good to mention at this point that overcurrent devices are not intended to provide protection against electric shock. Rather, they exist solely to protect conductors from overheating due to excessive currents. The temporary shorting wires just described would indeed cause any overcurrent devices in the circuit to ”trip” if the disconnect switch were to be closed, but realize that electric shock protection is not the intended function of those devices. Their primary function would merely be leveraged for the purpose of worker protection with the shorting wire in place.

Since it is obviously important to be able to secure any disconnecting devices in the open (off) position and make sure they stay that way while work is being done on the circuit, there is need for a structured safety system to be put into place. Such a system is commonly used in industry and it is called *Lock-out / Tag-out*.

A lock-out/tag-out procedure works like this: all individuals working on a secured circuit have their own personal padlock or combination lock which they set on the control lever of a disconnect device prior to working on the system. Additionally, they must fill out and sign a tag which they hang from their lock describing the nature and duration of the work they intend to perform on the system. If there are multiple sources of energy to be ”locked out” (multiple disconnects, both electrical and mechanical energy sources to be secured, etc.), the worker must use as many of his or her locks as necessary to secure power from the system before work begins. This way, the system is maintained in a Zero Energy State until every last lock is removed from all the disconnect and shutoff devices, and that means every last worker gives consent by removing their own personal locks. If the decision is made to re-energize the system and one person’s lock(s) still remain in place after everyone present removes theirs, the tag(s) will show who that person is and what it is they’re doing.

Even with a good lock-out/tag-out safety program in place, there is still need for diligence and common-sense precaution. This is especially true in industrial settings where a multitude of people may be working on a device or system at once. Some of those people might not know about proper lock-out/tag-out procedure, or might know about it but are too complacent to follow it. Don’t assume that everyone has followed the safety rules!

After an electrical system has been locked out and tagged with your own personal lock, you must then double-check to see if the voltage really has been secured in a zero state. One way to check is to see if the machine (or whatever it is that’s being worked on) will start up if the *Start* switch or button is actuated. If it starts, then you know you haven’t successfully secured the electrical power from it.

Additionally, you should *always* check for the presence of dangerous voltage with a measuring device before actually touching any conductors in the circuit. To be safest, you should follow this procedure of checking, using, and then checking your meter:

- Check to see that your meter indicates properly on a known source of voltage.
- Use your meter to test the locked-out circuit for any dangerous voltage.
- Check your meter once more on a known source of voltage to see that it still indicates as it should.

While this may seem excessive or even paranoid, it is a proven technique for preventing electrical shock. I once had a meter fail to indicate voltage when it should have while checking

a circuit to see if it was ”dead.” Had I not used other means to check for the presence of voltage, I might not be alive today to write this. There's always the chance that your voltage meter will be defective just when you need it to check for a dangerous condition. Following these steps will help ensure that you're never misled into a deadly situation by a broken meter.

Finally, the electrical worker will arrive at a point in the safety check procedure where it is deemed safe to actually touch the conductor(s). Bear in mind that after all of the precautionary steps have taken, it is still possible (although very unlikely) that a dangerous voltage may be present. One final precautionary measure to take at this point is to make momentary contact with the conductor(s) *with the back of the hand* before grasping it or a metal tool in contact with it. Why? If, for some reason there is still voltage present between that conductor and earth ground, finger motion from the shock reaction (clenching into a fist) will *break* contact with the conductor. Please note that this is absolutely the *last* step that any electrical worker should ever take before beginning work on a power system, and should *never* be used as an alternative method of checking for dangerous voltage. If you ever have reason to doubt the trustworthiness of your meter, use another meter to obtain a ”second opinion.”

- **REVIEW:**
- *Zero Energy State*: When a circuit, device, or system has been secured so that no potential energy exists to harm someone working on it.
- Disconnect switch devices must be present in a properly designed electrical system to allow for convenient readiness of a Zero Energy State.
- Temporary grounding or shorting wires may be connected to a load being serviced for extra protection to personnel working on that load.
- *Lock-out / Tag-out* works like this: when working on a system in a Zero Energy State, the worker places a personal padlock or combination lock on every energy disconnect device relevant to his or her task on that system. Also, a tag is hung on every one of those locks describing the nature and duration of the work to be done, and who is doing it.
- Always verify that a circuit has been secured in a Zero Energy State with test equipment after ”locking it out.” Be sure to test your meter before and after checking the circuit to verify that it is working properly.
- When the time comes to actually make contact with the conductor(s) of a supposedly dead power system, do so first with the back of one hand, so that if a shock should occur, the muscle reaction will pull the fingers away from the conductor.

3.6 Emergency response

Despite lock-out/tag-out procedures and multiple repetitions of electrical safety rules in industry, accidents still do occur. The vast majority of the time, these accidents are the result of not following proper safety procedures. But however they may occur, they still do happen, and anyone working around electrical systems should be aware of what needs to be done for a victim of electrical shock.

If you see someone lying unconscious or "froze on the circuit," the very first thing to do is shut off the power by opening the appropriate disconnect switch or circuit breaker. If someone touches another person being shocked, there may be enough voltage dropped across the body of the victim to shock the would-be rescuer, thereby "freezing" two people instead of one. Don't be a hero. Electrons don't respect heroism. Make sure the situation is safe for you to step into, or else you *will* be the next victim, and nobody will benefit from your efforts.

One problem with this rule is that the source of power may not be known, or easily found in time to save the victim of shock. If a shock victim's breathing and heartbeat are paralyzed by electric current, their survival time is very limited. If the shock current is of sufficient magnitude, their flesh and internal organs may be quickly roasted by the power the current dissipates as it runs through their body.

If the power disconnect switch cannot be located quickly enough, it may be possible to dislodge the victim from the circuit they're frozen on to by prying them or hitting them away with a dry wooden board or piece of nonmetallic conduit, common items to be found in industrial construction scenes. Another item that could be used to safely drag a "frozen" victim away from contact with power is an extension cord. By looping a cord around their torso and using it as a rope to pull them away from the circuit, their grip on the conductor(s) may be broken. Bear in mind that the victim will be holding on to the conductor with all their strength, so pulling them away probably won't be easy!

Once the victim has been safely disconnected from the source of electric power, the immediate medical concerns for the victim should be respiration and circulation (breathing and pulse). If the rescuer is trained in CPR, they should follow the appropriate steps of checking for breathing and pulse, then applying CPR as necessary to keep the victim's body from deoxygenating. The cardinal rule of CPR is to *keep going* until you have been relieved by qualified personnel.

If the victim is conscious, it is best to have them lie still until qualified emergency response personnel arrive on the scene. There is the possibility of the victim going into a state of physiological shock – a condition of insufficient blood circulation different from electrical shock – and so they should be kept as warm and comfortable as possible. An electrical shock insufficient to cause immediate interruption of the heartbeat may be strong enough to cause heart irregularities or a heart attack up to several hours later, so the victim should pay close attention to their own condition after the incident, ideally under supervision.

- **REVIEW:**

- A person being shocked needs to be disconnected from the source of electrical power. Locate the disconnecting switch/breaker and turn it off. Alternatively, if the disconnecting device cannot be located, the victim can be pried or pulled from the circuit by an insulated object such as a dry wood board, piece of nonmetallic conduit, or rubber electrical cord.

- Victims need immediate medical response: check for breathing and pulse, then apply CPR as necessary to maintain oxygenation.

- If a victim is still conscious after having been shocked, they need to be closely monitored and cared for until trained emergency response personnel arrive. There is danger of physiological shock, so keep the victim warm and comfortable.

- Shock victims may suffer heart trouble up to several hours after being shocked. The danger of electric shock does not end after the immediate medical attention.

3.7 Common sources of hazard

Of course there is danger of electrical shock when directly performing manual work on an electrical power system. However, electric shock hazards exist in many other places, thanks to the widespread use of electric power in our lives.

As we saw earlier, skin and body resistance has a lot to do with the relative hazard of electric circuits. The higher the body's resistance, the less likely harmful current will result from any given amount of voltage. Conversely, the lower the body's resistance, the more likely for injury to occur from the application of a voltage.

The easiest way to decrease skin resistance is to get it wet. Therefore, touching electrical devices with wet hands, wet feet, or especially in a sweaty condition (salt water is a much better conductor of electricity than fresh water) is dangerous. In the household, the bathroom is one of the more likely places where wet people may contact electrical appliances, and so shock hazard is a definite threat there. Good bathroom design will locate power receptacles away from bathtubs, showers, and sinks to discourage the use of appliances nearby. Telephones that plug into a wall socket are also sources of hazardous voltage (the open circuit voltage is 48 volts DC, and the ringing signal is 150 volts AC – remember that any voltage over 30 is considered potentially dangerous!). Appliances such as telephones and radios should never, ever be used while sitting in a bathtub. Even battery-powered devices should be avoided. Some battery-operated devices employ voltage-increasing circuitry capable of generating lethal potentials.

Swimming pools are another source of trouble, since people often operate radios and other powered appliances nearby. The National Electrical Code requires that special shock-detecting receptacles called Ground-Fault Current Interrupting (GFI or GFCI) be installed in wet and outdoor areas to help prevent shock incidents. More on these devices in a later section of this chapter. These special devices have no doubt saved many lives, but they can be no substitute for common sense and diligent precaution. As with firearms, the best "safety" is an informed and conscientious operator.

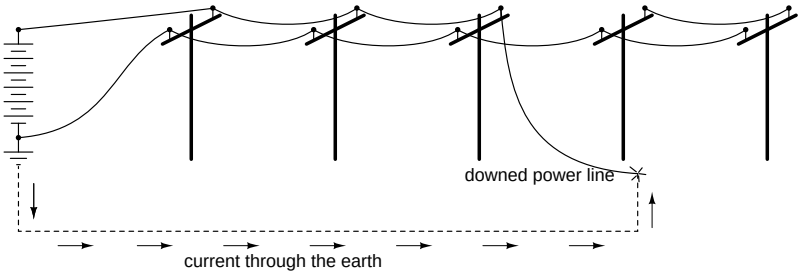
Extension cords, so commonly used at home and in industry, are also sources of potential hazard. All cords should be regularly inspected for abrasion or cracking of insulation, and repaired immediately. One sure method of removing a damaged cord from service is to unplug it from the receptacle, then cut off that plug (the "male" plug) with a pair of side-cutting pliers to ensure that no one can use it until it is fixed. This is important on jobsites, where many people share the same equipment, and not all people there may be aware of the hazards.

Any power tool showing evidence of electrical problems should be immediately serviced as well. I've heard several horror stories of people who continue to work with hand tools that periodically shock them. Remember, *electricity can kill*, and the death it brings can be gruesome. Like extension cords, a bad power tool can be removed from service by unplugging it and cutting off the plug at the end of the cord.

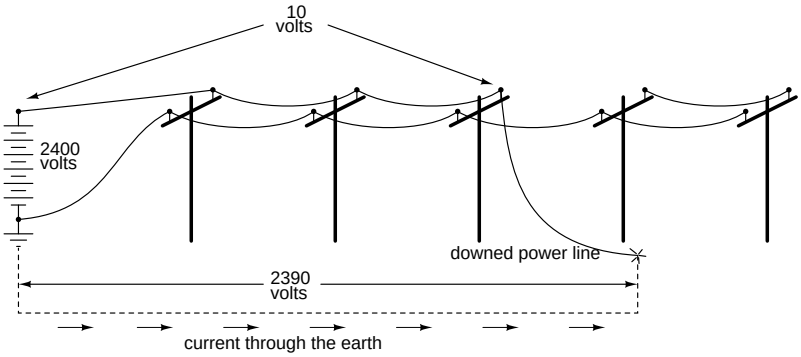
Downed power lines are an obvious source of electric shock hazard and should be avoided at all costs. The voltages present between power lines or between a power line and earth ground are typically very high (2400 volts being one of the lowest voltages used in residential distribution systems). If a power line is broken and the metal conductor falls to the ground,

the immediate result will usually be a tremendous amount of arcing (sparks produced), often enough to dislodge chunks of concrete or asphalt from the road surface, and reports rivaling that of a rifle or shotgun. To come into direct contact with a downed power line is almost sure to cause death, but other hazards exist which are not so obvious.

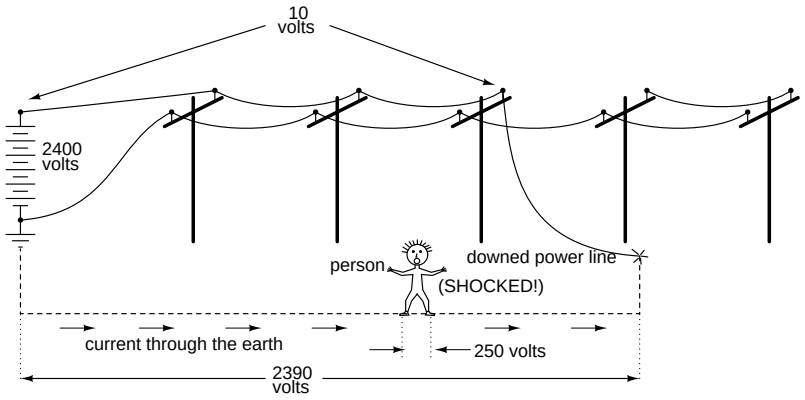
When a line touches the ground, current travels between that downed conductor and the nearest grounding point in the system, thus establishing a circuit:



The earth, being a conductor (if only a poor one), will conduct current between the downed line and the nearest system ground point, which will be some kind of conductor buried in the ground for good contact. Being that the earth is a much poorer conductor of electricity than the metal cables strung along the power poles, there will be substantial voltage dropped between the point of cable contact with the ground and the grounding conductor, and little voltage dropped along the length of the cabling (the following figures are *very* approximate):



If the distance between the two ground contact points (the downed cable and the system ground) is small, there will be substantial voltage dropped along short distances between the two points. Therefore, a person standing on the ground between those two points will be in danger of receiving an electric shock by intercepting a voltage between their two feet!



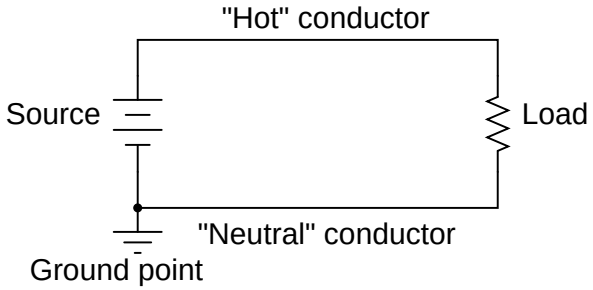
Again, these voltage figures are very approximate, but they serve to illustrate a potential hazard: that a person can become a victim of electric shock from a downed power line without even coming into contact with that line!

One practical precaution a person could take if they see a power line falling towards the ground is to only contact the ground at one point, either by running away (when you run, only one foot contacts the ground at any given time), or if there's nowhere to run, by standing on one foot. Obviously, if there's somewhere safer to run, running is the best option. By eliminating two points of contact with the ground, there will be no chance of applying deadly voltage across the body through both legs.

- **REVIEW:**
- Wet conditions increase risk of electric shock by lowering skin resistance.
- Immediately replace worn or damaged extension cords and power tools. You can prevent innocent use of a bad cord or tool by cutting the male plug off the cord (while its unplugged from the receptacle, of course).
- Power lines are very dangerous and should be avoided at all costs. If you see a line about to hit the ground, stand on one foot or run (only one foot contacting the ground) to prevent shock from voltage dropped across the ground between the line and the system ground point.

3.8 Safe circuit design

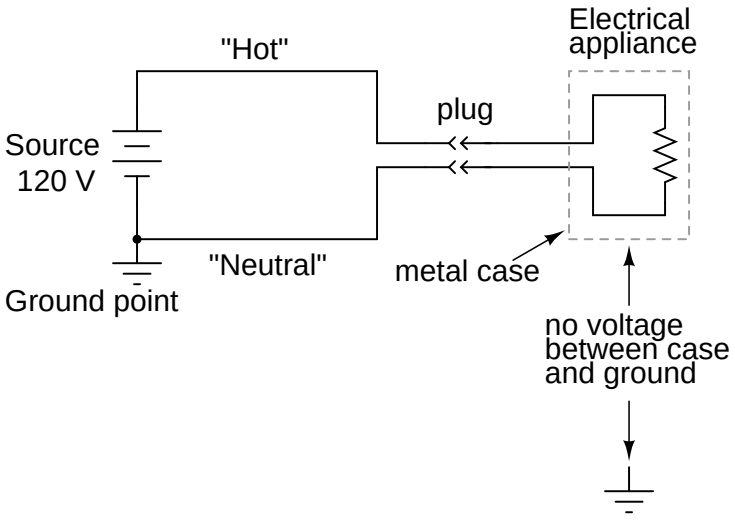
As we saw earlier, a power system with no secure connection to earth ground is unpredictable from a safety perspective: there's no way to guarantee how much or how little voltage will exist between any point in the circuit and earth ground. By grounding one side of the power system's voltage source, at least one point in the circuit can be assured to be electrically common with the earth and therefore present no shock hazard. In a simple two-wire electrical power system, the conductor connected to ground is called the *neutral*, and the other conductor is called the *hot*, also known as the *live* or the *active*:



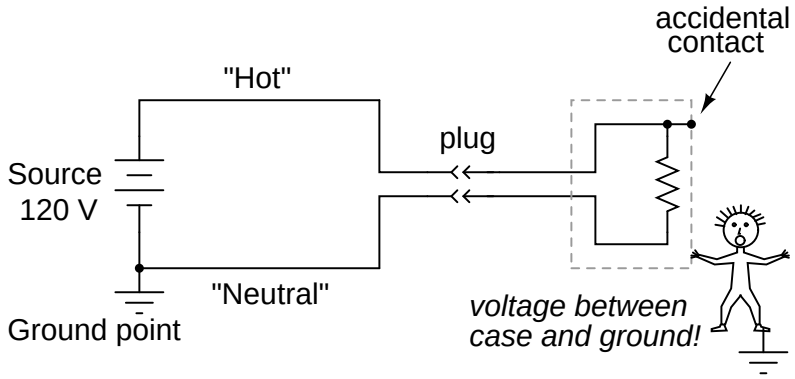
As far as the voltage source and load are concerned, grounding makes no difference at all. It exists purely for the sake of personnel safety, by guaranteeing that at least one point in the circuit will be safe to touch (zero voltage to ground). The ”Hot” side of the circuit, named for its potential for shock hazard, will be dangerous to touch unless voltage is secured by proper disconnection from the source (ideally, using a systematic lock-out/tag-out procedure).

This imbalance of hazard between the two conductors in a simple power circuit is important to understand. The following series of illustrations are based on common household wiring systems (using DC voltage sources rather than AC for simplicity).

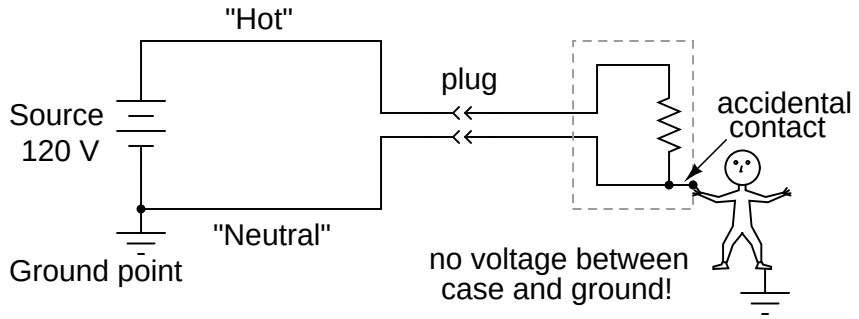
If we take a look at a simple, household electrical appliance such as a toaster with a conductive metal case, we can see that there should be no shock hazard when it is operating properly. The wires conducting power to the toaster's heating element are insulated from touching the metal case (and each other) by rubber or plastic.



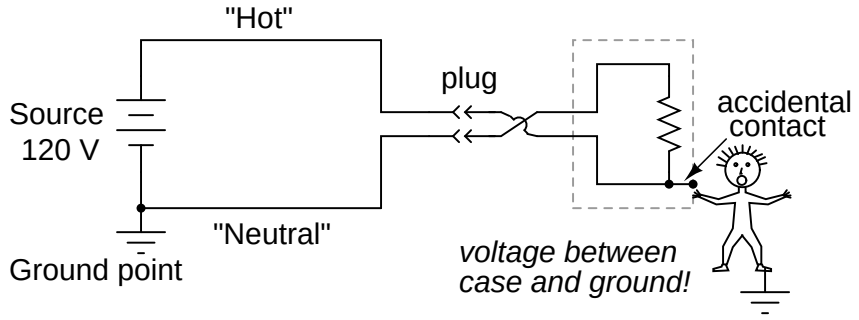
However, if one of the wires inside the toaster were to accidently come in contact with the metal case, the case will be made electrically common to the wire, and touching the case will be just as hazardous as touching the wire bare. Whether or not this presents a shock hazard depends on *which* wire accidentally touches:



If the ”hot” wire contacts the case, it places the user of the toaster in danger. On the other hand, if the neutral wire contacts the case, there is no danger of shock:



To help ensure that the former failure is less likely than the latter, engineers try to design appliances in such a way as to minimize hot conductor contact with the case. Ideally, of course, you don’t want either wire accidently coming in contact with the conductive case of the appliance, but there are usually ways to design the layout of the parts to make accidental contact less likely for one wire than for the other. However, this preventative measure is effective only if power plug polarity can be guaranteed. If the plug can be reversed, then the conductor more likely to contact the case might very well be the ”hot” one:

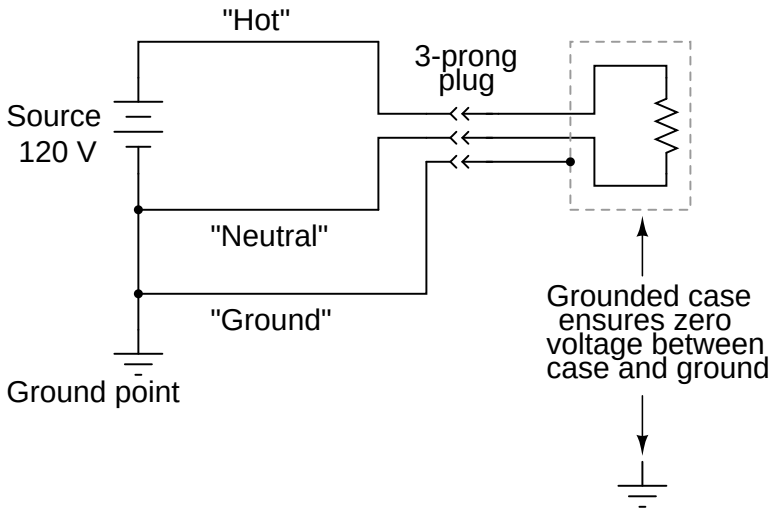


Appliances designed this way usually come with ”polarized” plugs, one prong of the plug being slightly narrower than the other. Power receptacles are also designed like this, one slot being narrower than the other. Consequently, the plug cannot be inserted ”backwards,” and

conductor identity inside the appliance can be guaranteed. Remember that this has no effect whatsoever on the basic function of the appliance: its strictly for the sake of user safety.

Some engineers address the safety issue simply by making the outside case of the appliance nonconductive. Such appliances are called *double-insulated*, since the insulating case serves as a second layer of insulation above and beyond that of the conductors themselves. If a wire inside the appliance accidently comes in contact with the case, there is no danger presented to the user of the appliance.

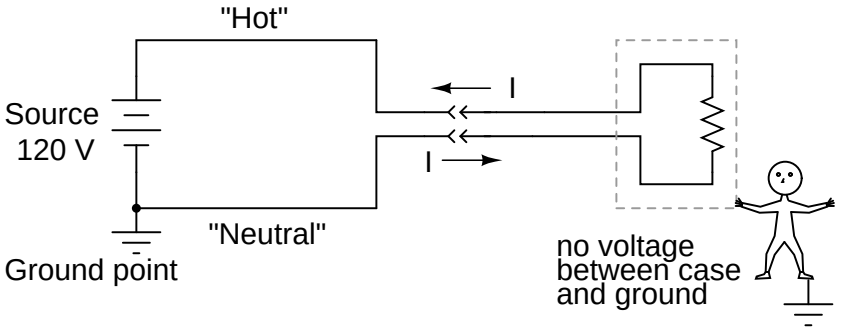
Other engineers tackle the problem of safety by maintaining a conductive case, but using a third conductor to firmly connect that case to ground:



The third prong on the power cord provides a direct electrical connection from the appliance case to earth ground, making the two points electrically common with each other. If they're electrically common, then there cannot be any voltage dropped between them. At least, that's how it is supposed to work. If the hot conductor accidently touches the metal appliance case, it will create a direct short-circuit back to the voltage source through the ground wire, tripping any overcurrent protection devices. The user of the appliance will remain safe.

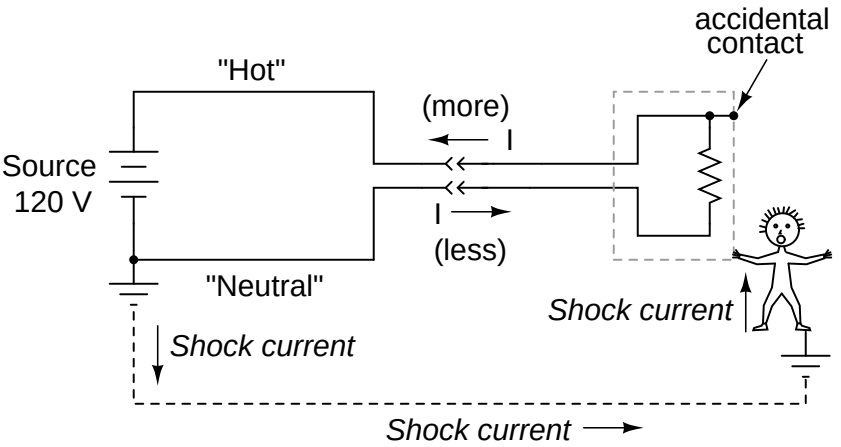
This is why its so important never to cut the third prong off a power plug when trying to fit it into a two-prong receptacle. If this is done, there will be no grounding of the appliance case to keep the user(s) safe. The appliance will still function properly, but if there is an internal fault bringing the hot wire in contact with the case, the results can be deadly. If a two-prong receptacle *must* be used, a two- to three-prong receptacle adapter can be installed with a grounding wire attached to the receptacle's grounded cover screw. This will maintain the safety of the grounded appliance while plugged in to this type of receptacle.

Electrically safe engineering doesn't necessarily end at the load, however. A final safeguard against electrical shock can be arranged on the power supply side of the circuit rather than the appliance itself. This safeguard is called *ground-fault detection*, and it works like this:

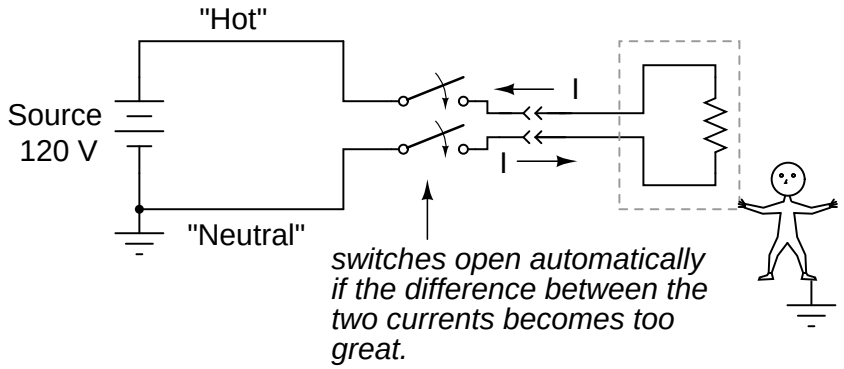


In a properly functioning appliance (shown above), the current measured through the hot conductor should be exactly equal to the current through the neutral conductor, because there's only one path for electrons to flow in the circuit. With no fault inside the appliance, there is no connection between circuit conductors and the person touching the case, and therefore no shock.

If, however, the hot wire accidently contacts the metal case, there will be current through the person touching the case. The presence of a shock current will be manifested as a *difference* of current between the two power conductors at the receptacle:



This difference in current between the "hot" and "neutral" conductors will only exist if there is current through the ground connection, meaning that there is a fault in the system. Therefore, such a current difference can be used as a way to *detect* a fault condition. If a device is set up to measure this difference of current between the two power conductors, a detection of current imbalance can be used to trigger the opening of a disconnect switch, thus cutting power off and preventing serious shock:



Such devices are called *Ground Fault Current Interruptors*, or GFCIs for short. Outside North America, the GFCI is variously known as a safety switch, a residual current device (RCD), an RCBO or RCD/MCB if combined with a miniature circuit breaker, or earth leakage circuit breaker (ELCB). They are compact enough to be built into a power receptacle. These receptacles are easily identified by their distinctive ”Test” and ”Reset” buttons. The big advantage with using this approach to ensure safety is that it works regardless of the appliance's design. Of course, using a double-insulated or grounded appliance in addition to a GFCI receptacle would be better yet, but its comforting to know that something can be done to improve safety above and beyond the design and condition of the appliance.

The *arc fault circuit interrupter (AFCI)*, a circuit breaker designed to prevent fires, is designed to open on intermittent resistive short circuits. For example, a normal 15 A breaker is designed to open circuit quickly if loaded well beyond the 15 A rating, more slowly a little beyond the rating. While this protects against direct shorts and several seconds of overload, respectively, it does not protect against arcs– similar to arc-welding. An arc is a highly variable load, repetitively peaking at over 70 A, open circuiting with alternating current zero-crossings. Though, the average current is not enough to trip a standard breaker, it is enough to start a fire. This arc could be created by a metalic short circuit which burns the metal open, leaving a resistive sputtering plasma of ionized gases.

The AFCI contains electronic circuitry to sense this intermittent resistive short circuit. It protects against both hot to neutral and hot to ground arcs. The AFCI does not protect against personal shock hazards like a GFCI does. Thus, GFCIs still need to be installed in kitchen, bath, and outdoors circuits. Since the AFCI often trips upon starting large motors, and more generally on brushed motors, its installation is limited to bedroom circuits by the U.S. National Electrical code. Use of the AFCI should reduce the number of electrical fires. However, nuisance-trips when running appliances with motors on AFCI circuits is a problem.

- **REVIEW:**
- Power systems often have one side of the voltage supply connected to earth ground to ensure safety at that point.
- The ”grounded” conductor in a power system is called the *neutral* conductor, while the ungrounded conductor is called the *hot*.
- Grounding in power systems exists for the sake of personnel safety, not the operation of the load(s).

- Electrical safety of an appliance or other load can be improved by good engineering: polarized plugs, double insulation, and three-prong ”grounding” plugs are all ways that safety can be maximized on the load side.
- *Ground Fault Current Interruptors* (GFCIs) work by sensing a difference in current between the two conductors supplying power to the load. There should be no difference in current at all. Any difference means that current must be entering or exiting the load by some means other than the two main conductors, which is not good. A significant current difference will automatically open a disconnecting switch mechanism, cutting power off completely.

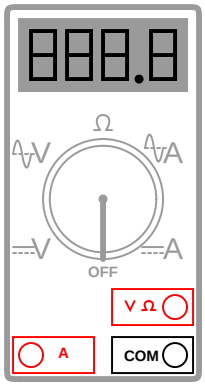
3.9 Safe meter usage

Using an electrical meter safely and efficiently is perhaps the most valuable skill an electronics technician can master, both for the sake of their own personal safety and for proficiency at their trade. It can be daunting at first to use a meter, knowing that you are connecting it to live circuits which may harbor life-threatening levels of voltage and current. This concern is not unfounded, and it is always best to proceed cautiously when using meters. Carelessness more than any other factor is what causes experienced technicians to have electrical accidents.

The most common piece of electrical test equipment is a meter called the *multimeter*. Multimeters are so named because they have the ability to measure a multiple of variables: voltage, current, resistance, and often many others, some of which cannot be explained here due to their complexity. In the hands of a trained technician, the multimeter is both an efficient work tool and a safety device. In the hands of someone ignorant and/or careless, however, the multimeter may become a source of danger when connected to a ”live” circuit.

There are many different brands of multimeters, with multiple models made by each manufacturer sporting different sets of features. The multimeter shown here in the following illustrations is a ”generic” design, not specific to any manufacturer, but general enough to teach the basic principles of use:

Multimeter

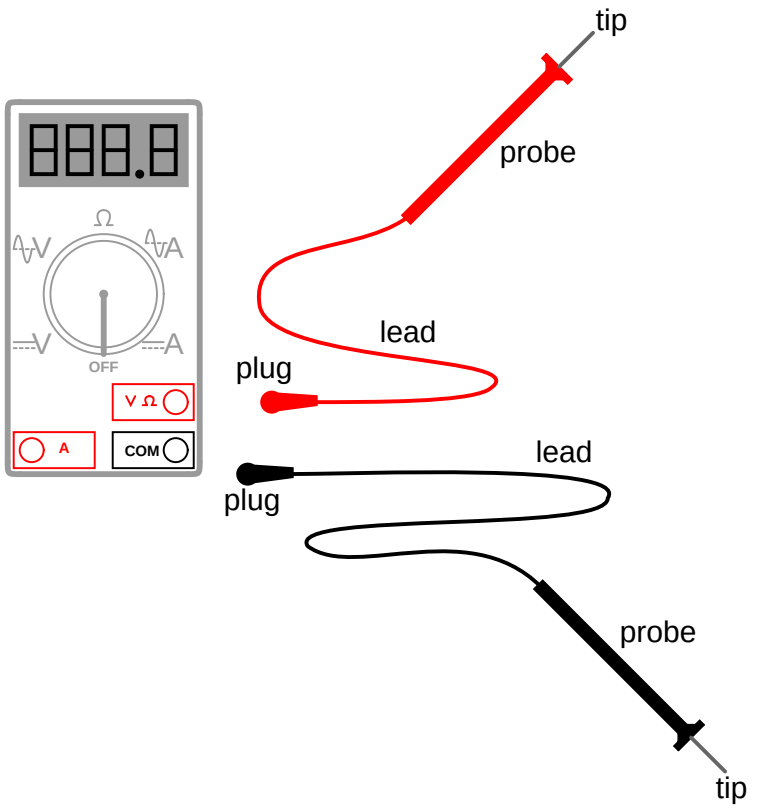


You will notice that the display of this meter is of the ”digital” type: showing numerical values using four digits in a manner similar to a digital clock. The rotary selector switch

(now set in the *Off* position) has five different measurement positions it can be set in: two "V" settings, two "A" settings, and one setting in the middle with a funny-looking "horseshoe" symbol on it representing "resistance." The "horseshoe" symbol is the Greek letter "Omega" (Ω), which is the common symbol for the electrical unit of ohms.

Of the two "V" settings and two "A" settings, you will notice that each pair is divided into unique markers with either a pair of horizontal lines (one solid, one dashed), or a dashed line with a squiggly curve over it. The parallel lines represent "DC" while the squiggly curve represents "AC." The "V" of course stands for "voltage" while the "A" stands for "amperage" (current). The meter uses different techniques, internally, to measure DC than it uses to measure AC, and so it requires the user to select which type of voltage (V) or current (A) is to be measured. Although we haven't discussed alternating current (AC) in any technical detail, this distinction in meter settings is an important one to bear in mind.

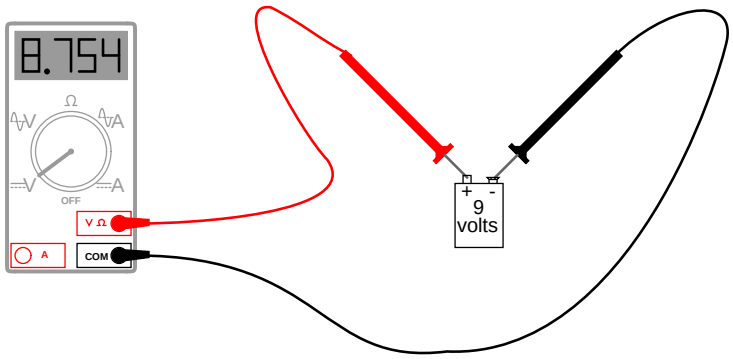
There are three different sockets on the multimeter face into which we can plug our *test leads*. Test leads are nothing more than specially-prepared wires used to connect the meter to the circuit under test. The wires are coated in a color-coded (either black or red) flexible insulation to prevent the user's hands from contacting the bare conductors, and the tips of the probes are sharp, stiff pieces of wire:



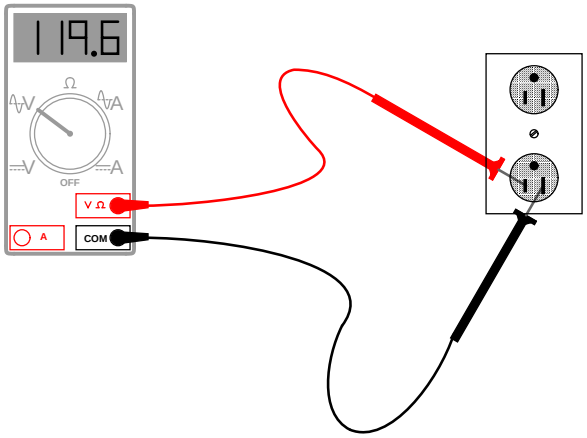
The black test lead *always* plugs into the black socket on the multimeter: the one marked "COM" for "common." The red test lead plugs into either the red socket marked for voltage and resistance, or the red socket marked for current, depending on which quantity you intend to

measure with the multimeter.

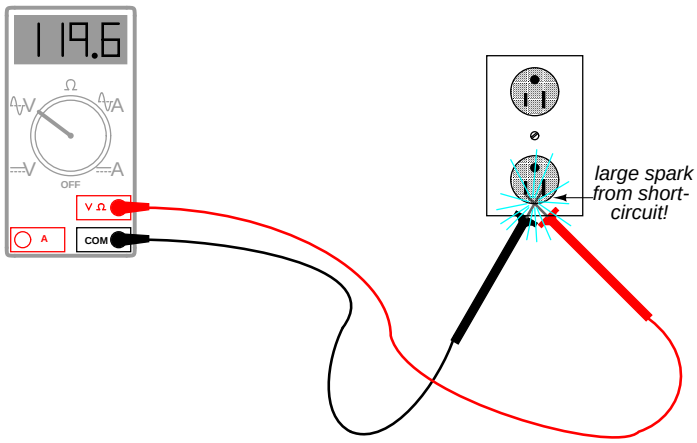
To see how this works, let's look at a couple of examples showing the meter in use. First, we'll set up the meter to measure DC voltage from a battery:



Note that the two test leads are plugged into the appropriate sockets on the meter for voltage, and the selector switch has been set for DC "V". Now, we'll take a look at an example of using the multimeter to measure AC voltage from a household electrical power receptacle (wall socket):



The only difference in the setup of the meter is the placement of the selector switch: it is now turned to AC "V". Since we're still measuring voltage, the test leads will remain plugged in the same sockets. In both of these examples, it is *imperative* that you not let the probe tips come in contact with one another while they are both in contact with their respective points on the circuit. If this happens, a short-circuit will be formed, creating a spark and perhaps even a ball of flame if the voltage source is capable of supplying enough current! The following image illustrates the potential for hazard:



This is just one of the ways that a meter can become a source of hazard if used improperly.

Voltage measurement is perhaps the most common function a multimeter is used for. It is certainly the primary measurement taken for safety purposes (part of the lock-out/tag-out procedure), and it should be well understood by the operator of the meter. Being that voltage is always relative between two points, the meter *must* be firmly connected to two points in a circuit before it will provide a reliable measurement. That usually means both probes must be grasped by the user's hands and held against the proper contact points of a voltage source or circuit while measuring.

Because a hand-to-hand shock current path is the most dangerous, holding the meter probes on two points in a high-voltage circuit in this manner is always a *potential* hazard. If the protective insulation on the probes is worn or cracked, it is possible for the user's fingers to come into contact with the probe conductors during the time of test, causing a bad shock to occur. If it is possible to use only one hand to grasp the probes, that is a safer option. Sometimes it is possible to "latch" one probe tip onto the circuit test point so that it can be let go of and the other probe set in place, using only one hand. Special probe tip accessories such as spring clips can be attached to help facilitate this.

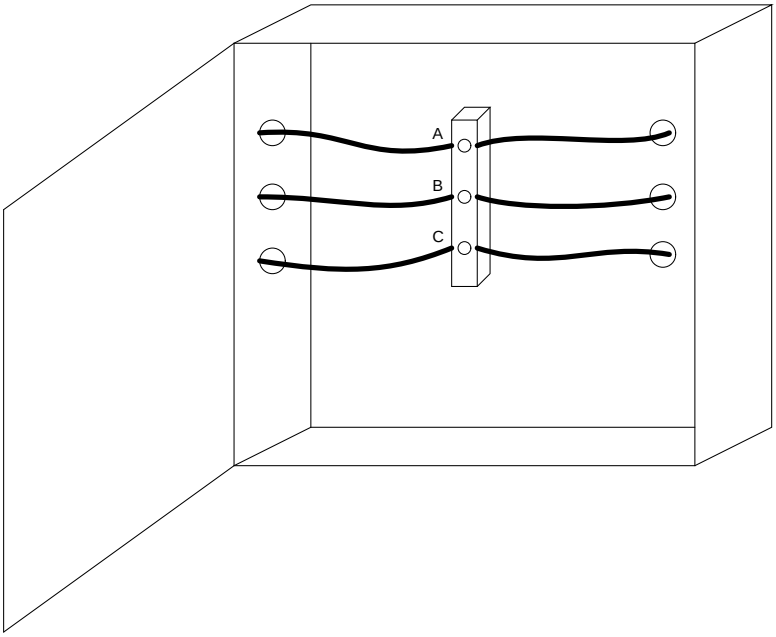
Remember that meter test leads are part of the whole equipment package, and that they should be treated with the same care and respect that the meter itself is. If you need a special accessory for your test leads, such as a spring clip or other special probe tip, consult the product catalog of the meter manufacturer or other test equipment manufacturer. *Do not* try to be creative and make your own test probes, as you may end up placing yourself in danger the next time you use them on a live circuit.

Also, it must be remembered that digital multimeters usually do a good job of discriminating between AC and DC measurements, as they are set for one or the other when checking for voltage or current. As we have seen earlier, both AC and DC voltages and currents can be deadly, so when using a multimeter as a safety check device you should always check for the presence of both AC and DC, even if you're not expecting to find both! Also, when checking for the presence of hazardous voltage, you should be sure to check *all* pairs of points in question.

For example, suppose that you opened up an electrical wiring cabinet to find three large conductors supplying AC power to a load. The circuit breaker feeding these wires (supposedly) has been shut off, locked, and tagged. You double-checked the absence of power by pressing the

Start button for the load. Nothing happened, so now you move on to the third phase of your safety check: the meter test for voltage.

First, you check your meter on a known source of voltage to see that its working properly. Any nearby power receptacle should provide a convenient source of AC voltage for a test. You do so and find that the meter indicates as it should. Next, you need to check for voltage among these three wires in the cabinet. But voltage is measured between *two* points, so where do you check?

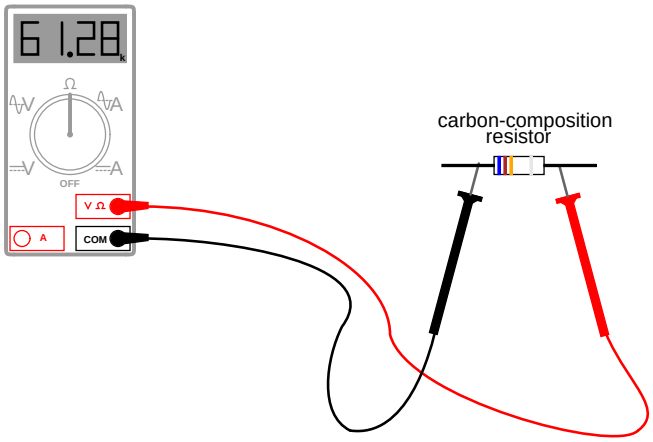


The answer is to check between all combinations of those three points. As you can see, the points are labeled ”A”, ”B”, and ”C” in the illustration, so you would need to take your multimeter (set in the voltmeter mode) and check between points A & B, B & C, and A & C. If you find voltage between any of those pairs, the circuit is not in a Zero Energy State. But wait! Remember that a multimeter will not register DC voltage when its in the AC voltage mode and vice versa, so you need to check those three pairs of points in *each mode* for a total of six voltage checks in order to be complete!

However, even with all that checking, we still haven't covered all possibilities yet. Remember that hazardous voltage can appear between a single wire and ground (in this case, the metal frame of the cabinet would be a good ground reference point) in a power system. So, to be perfectly safe, we not only have to check between A & B, B & C, and A & C (in both AC and DC modes), but we also have to check between A & ground, B & ground, and C & ground (in both AC and DC modes)! This makes for a grand total of twelve voltage checks for this seemingly simple scenario of only three wires. Then, of course, after we've completed all these checks, we need to take our multimeter and re-test it against a known source of voltage such as a power receptacle to ensure that its still in good working order.

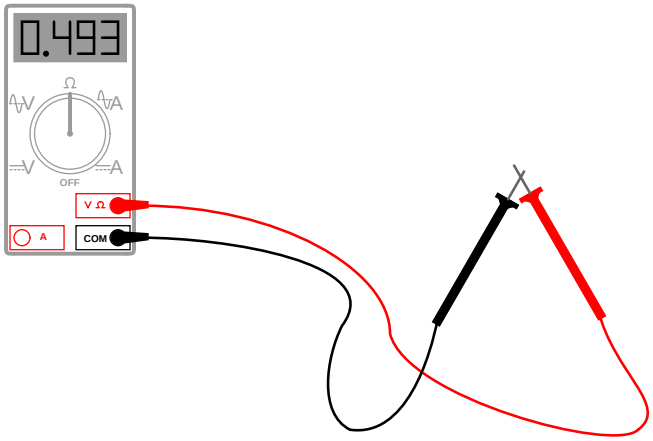
Using a multimeter to check for resistance is a much simpler task. The test leads will be kept plugged in the same sockets as for the voltage checks, but the selector switch will need to

be turned until it points to the ”horseshoe” resistance symbol. Touching the probes across the device whose resistance is to be measured, the meter should properly display the resistance in ohms:



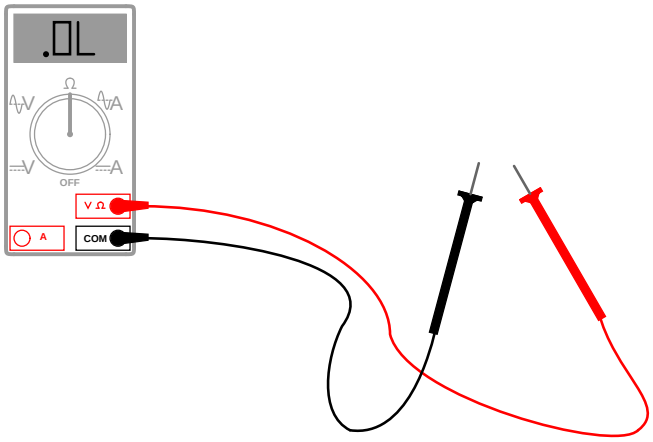
One very important thing to remember about measuring resistance is that it must only be done on *de-energized* components! When the meter is in ”resistance” mode, it uses a small internal battery to generate a tiny current through the component to be measured. By sensing how difficult it is to move this current through the component, the resistance of that component can be determined and displayed. If there is any additional source of voltage in the meter-lead-component-lead-meter loop to either aid or oppose the resistance-measuring current produced by the meter, faulty readings will result. In a worse-case situation, the meter may even be damaged by the external voltage.

The ”resistance” mode of a multimeter is very useful in determining wire continuity as well as making precise measurements of resistance. When there is a good, solid connection between the probe tips (simulated by touching them together), the meter shows almost zero Ω. If the test leads had no resistance in them, it would read exactly zero:

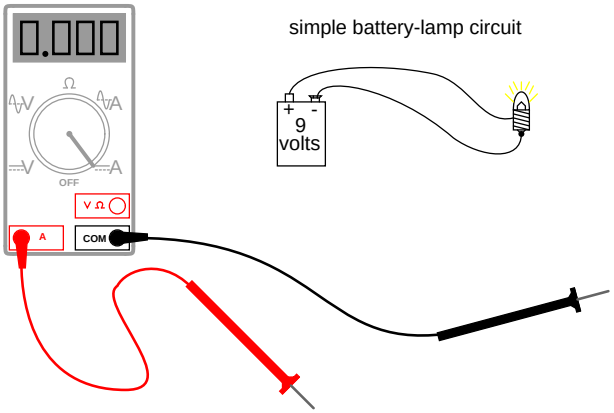


If the leads are not in contact with each other, or touching opposite ends of a broken wire,

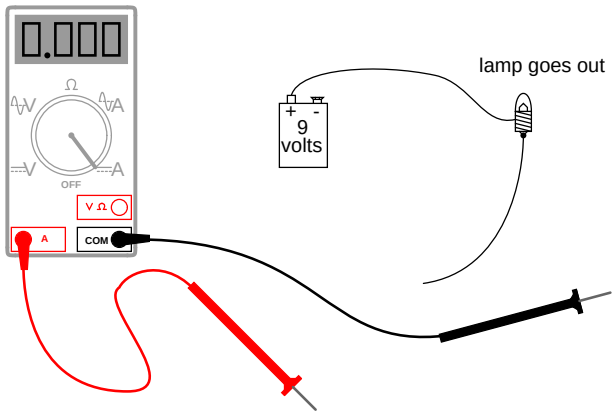
the meter will indicate infinite resistance (usually by displaying dashed lines or the abbreviation ”O.L.” which stands for ”open loop”):



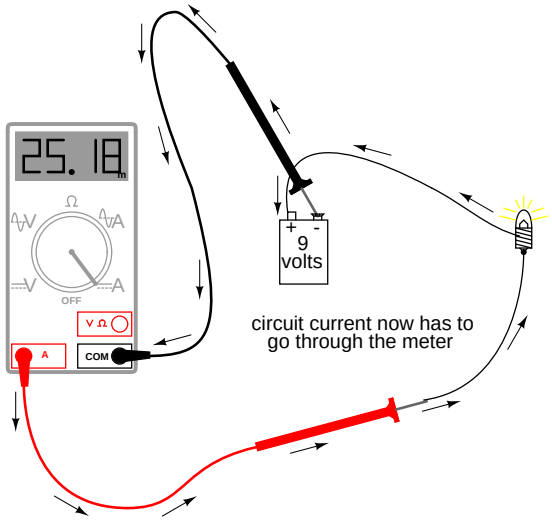
By far the most hazardous and complex application of the multimeter is in the measurement of current. The reason for this is quite simple: in order for the meter to measure current, the current to be measured must be forced to go *through* the meter. This means that the meter must be made part of the current path of the circuit rather than just be connected off to the side somewhere as is the case when measuring voltage. In order to make the meter part of the current path of the circuit, the original circuit must be ”broken” and the meter connected across the two points of the open break. To set the meter up for this, the selector switch must point to either AC or DC ”A” and the red test lead must be plugged in the red socket marked ”A”. The following illustration shows a meter all ready to measure current and a circuit to be tested:



Now, the circuit is broken in preparation for the meter to be connected:



The next step is to insert the meter in-line with the circuit by connecting the two probe tips to the broken ends of the circuit, the black probe to the negative (-) terminal of the 9-volt battery and the red probe to the loose wire end leading to the lamp:

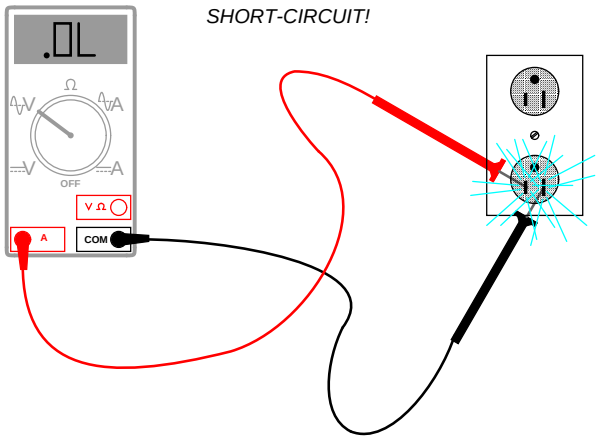


This example shows a very safe circuit to work with. 9 volts hardly constitutes a shock hazard, and so there is little to fear in breaking this circuit open (bare handed, no less!) and connecting the meter in-line with the flow of electrons. However, with higher power circuits, this could be a hazardous endeavor indeed. Even if the circuit voltage was low, the normal current could be high enough that an injurious spark would result the moment the last meter probe connection was established.

Another potential hazard of using a multimeter in its current-measuring (”ammeter”) mode is failure to properly put it back into a voltage-measuring configuration before measuring voltage with it. The reasons for this are specific to ammeter design and operation. When measuring circuit current by placing the meter directly in the path of current, it is best to have the meter offer little or no resistance against the flow of electrons. Otherwise, any additional

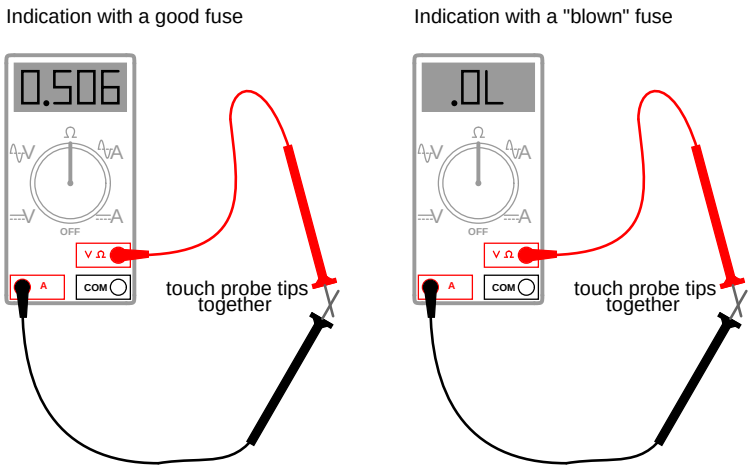
resistance offered by the meter would impede the electron flow and alter the circuits operation. Thus, the multimeter is designed to have practically zero ohms of resistance between the test probe tips when the red probe has been plugged into the red "A" (current-measuring) socket. In the voltage-measuring mode (red lead plugged into the red "V" socket), there are many mega-ohms of resistance between the test probe tips, because voltmeters are designed to have close to infinite resistance (so that they *don't* draw any appreciable current from the circuit under test).

When switching a multimeter from current- to voltage-measuring mode, its easy to spin the selector switch from the "A" to the "V" position and forget to correspondingly switch the position of the red test lead plug from "A" to "V". The result – if the meter is then connected across a source of substantial voltage – will be a short-circuit through the meter!



To help prevent this, most multimeters have a warning feature by which they beep if ever there's a lead plugged in the "A" socket and the selector switch is set to "V". As convenient as features like these are, though, they are still no substitute for clear thinking and caution when using a multimeter.

All good-quality multimeters contain fuses inside that are engineered to "blow" in the event of excessive current through them, such as in the case illustrated in the last image. Like all overcurrent protection devices, these fuses are primarily designed to *protect the equipment* (in this case, the meter itself) from excessive damage, and only secondarily to protect the user from harm. A multimeter can be used to check its own current fuse by setting the selector switch to the resistance position and creating a connection between the two red sockets like this:



A good fuse will indicate very little resistance while a blown fuse will always show ”O.L.” (or whatever indication that model of multimeter uses to indicate no continuity). The actual number of ohms displayed for a good fuse is of little consequence, so long as its an arbitrarily low figure.

So now that we’ve seen how to use a multimeter to measure voltage, resistance, and current, what more is there to know? Plenty! The value and capabilities of this versatile test instrument will become more evident as you gain skill and familiarity using it. There is no substitute for regular practice with complex instruments such as these, so feel free to experiment on safe, battery-powered circuits.

- **REVIEW:**
- A meter capable of checking for voltage, current, and resistance is called a *multimeter*,
- As voltage is always relative between two points, a voltage-measuring meter (”voltmeter”) must be connected to two points in a circuit in order to obtain a good reading. Be careful not to touch the bare probe tips together while measuring voltage, as this will create a short-circuit!
- Remember to always check for both AC and DC voltage when using a multimeter to check for the presence of hazardous voltage on a circuit. Make sure you check for voltage between all pair-combinations of conductors, including between the individual conductors and ground!
- When in the voltage-measuring (”voltmeter”) mode, multimeters have very high resistance between their leads.
- Never try to read resistance or continuity with a multimeter on a circuit that is energized. At best, the resistance readings you obtain from the meter will be inaccurate, and at worst the meter may be damaged and you may be injured.
- Current measuring meters (”ammeters”) are always connected in a circuit so the electrons have to flow *through* the meter.

- When in the current-measuring (”ammeter”) mode, multimeters have practically no resistance between their leads. This is intended to allow electrons to flow through the meter with the least possible difficulty. If this were not the case, the meter would add extra resistance in the circuit, thereby affecting the current.

3.10 Electric shock data

The table of electric currents and their various bodily effects was obtained from online (Internet) sources: the safety page of Massachusetts Institute of Technology (website: `(http://web.mit.edu/safety)`), and a safety handbook published by Cooper Bussmann, Inc (website: `(http://www.bussmann.com)`). In the Bussmann handbook, the table is appropriately entitled *Deleterious Effects of Electric Shock*, and credited to a Mr. Charles F. Dalziel. Further research revealed Dalziel to be both a scientific pioneer and an authority on the effects of electricity on the human body.

The table found in the Bussmann handbook differs slightly from the one available from MIT: for the DC threshold of perception (men), the MIT table gives 5.2 mA while the Bussmann table gives a slightly greater figure of 6.2 mA. Also, for the ”unable to let go” 60 Hz AC threshold (men), the MIT table gives 20 mA while the Bussmann table gives a lesser figure of 16 mA. As I have yet to obtain a primary copy of Dalziel's research, the figures cited here are conservative: I have listed the lowest values in my table where any data sources differ.

These differences, of course, are academic. The point here is that relatively small magnitudes of electric current through the body can be harmful if not lethal.

Data regarding the electrical resistance of body contact points was taken from a safety page (document 16.1) from the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory (website `(http://www-ais.llnl.gov)`), citing Ralph H. Lee as the data source. Lee's work was listed here in a document entitled ”Human Electrical Sheet,” composed while he was an IEEE Fellow at E.I. duPont de Nemours & Co., and also in an article entitled ”Electrical Safety in Industrial Plants” found in the June 1971 issue of *IEEE Spectrum* magazine.

For the morbidly curious, Charles Dalziel's experimentation conducted at the University of California (Berkeley) began with a state grant to investigate the bodily effects of sub-lethal electric current. His testing method was as follows: healthy male and female volunteer subjects were asked to hold a copper wire in one hand and place their other hand on a round, brass plate. A voltage was then applied between the wire and the plate, causing electrons to flow through the subject's arms and chest. The current was stopped, then resumed at a higher level. The goal here was to see how much current the subject could tolerate and still keep their hand pressed against the brass plate. When this threshold was reached, laboratory assistants forcefully held the subject's hand in contact with the plate and the current was again increased. The subject was asked to release the wire they were holding, to see at what current level involuntary muscle contraction (tetanus) prevented them from doing so. For each subject the experiment was conducted using DC and also AC at various frequencies. Over two dozen human volunteers were tested, and later studies on heart fibrillation were conducted using animal subjects.

3.11 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Bibliography

[1] Robert S. Porter, MD, editor, "The Merck Manuals Online Medical Library", "Electrical Injuries," at http://www.merck.com/mmpe/sec21/ch316/ch316b.html

Chapter 4

SCIENTIFIC NOTATION AND METRIC PREFIXES

Contents

4.1 Scientific notation

In many disciplines of science and engineering, very large and very small numerical quantities must be managed. Some of these quantities are mind-boggling in their size, either extremely small or extremely large. Take for example the mass of a proton, one of the constituent particles of an atom's nucleus:

Proton mass = 0.000000000000000000000000167 grams

Or, consider the number of electrons passing by a point in a circuit every second with a steady electric current of 1 amp:

1 amp = 6,250,000,000,000,000,000 electrons per second

A lot of zeros, isn't it? Obviously, it can get quite confusing to have to handle so many zero digits in numbers such as this, even with the help of calculators and computers.

Take note of those two numbers and of the relative sparsity of non-zero digits in them. For the mass of the proton, all we have is a "167" preceded by 23 zeros before the decimal point. For the number of electrons per second in 1 amp, we have "625" followed by 16 zeros. We call the span of non-zero digits (from first to last), plus any zero digits *not* merely used for placeholding, the "significant digits" of any number.

The significant digits in a real-world measurement are typically reflective of the accuracy of that measurement. For example, if we were to say that a car weighs 3,000 pounds, we probably don't mean that the car in question weighs *exactly* 3,000 pounds, but that we've rounded its weight to a value more convenient to say and remember. That rounded figure of 3,000 has only one significant digit: the "3" in front – the zeros merely serve as placeholders. However, if we were to say that the car weighed 3,005 pounds, the fact that the weight is not rounded to the nearest thousand pounds tells us that the two zeros in the middle aren't just placeholders, but that all four digits of the number "3,005" are significant to its representative accuracy. Thus, the number "3,005" is said to have *four* significant figures.

In like manner, numbers with many zero digits are not necessarily representative of a real-world quantity all the way to the decimal point. When this is known to be the case, such a number can be written in a kind of mathematical "shorthand" to make it easier to deal with. This "shorthand" is called *scientific notation*.

With scientific notation, a number is written by representing its significant digits as a quantity between 1 and 10 (or -1 and -10, for negative numbers), and the "placeholder" zeros are accounted for by a power-of-ten multiplier. For example:

1 amp = 6,250,000,000,000,000,000 electrons per second

. . . *can be expressed as* . . .

1 amp = 6.25 x 10^{18} electrons per second

10 to the 18th power (10^{18}) means 10 multiplied by itself 18 times, or a "1" followed by 18 zeros. Multiplied by 6.25, it looks like "625" followed by 16 zeros (take 6.25 and skip the decimal point 18 places to the right). The advantages of scientific notation are obvious: the number isn't as unwieldy when written on paper, and the significant digits are plain to identify.

But what about very small numbers, like the mass of the proton in grams? We can still use scientific notation, except with a negative power-of-ten instead of a positive one, to shift the decimal point to the left instead of to the right:

Proton mass = 0.000000000000000000000000167 grams

. . . can be expressed as . . .

Proton mass = 1.67 x 10^{-24} grams

10 to the -24th power (10^{-24}) means the inverse (1/x) of 10 multiplied by itself 24 times, or a "1" preceded by a decimal point and 23 zeros. Multiplied by 1.67, it looks like "167" preceded by a decimal point and 23 zeros. Just as in the case with the very large number, it is a lot

easier for a human being to deal with this "shorthand" notation. As with the prior case, the significant digits in this quantity are clearly expressed.

Because the significant digits are represented "on their own," away from the power-of-ten multiplier, it is easy to show a level of precision even when the number looks round. Taking our 3,000 pound car example, we could express the rounded number of 3,000 in scientific notation as such:

car weight = 3 x 10^3 pounds

If the car actually weighed 3,005 pounds (accurate to the nearest pound) and we wanted to be able to express that full accuracy of measurement, the scientific notation figure could be written like this:

car weight = 3.005 x 10^3 pounds

However, what if the car actually did weigh 3,000 pounds, exactly (to the nearest pound)? If we were to write its weight in "normal" form (3,000 lbs), it wouldn't necessarily be clear that this number was indeed accurate to the nearest pound and not just rounded to the nearest thousand pounds, or to the nearest hundred pounds, or to the nearest ten pounds. Scientific notation, on the other hand, allows us to show that all four digits are significant with no misunderstanding:

car weight = 3.000 x 10^3 pounds

Since there would be no point in adding extra zeros to the right of the decimal point (place-holding zeros being unnecessary with scientific notation), we know those zeros *must* be significant to the precision of the figure.

4.2 Arithmetic with scientific notation

The benefits of scientific notation do not end with ease of writing and expression of accuracy. Such notation also lends itself well to mathematical problems of multiplication and division. Let's say we wanted to know how many electrons would flow past a point in a circuit carrying 1 amp of electric current in 25 seconds. If we know the number of electrons per second in the circuit (which we do), then all we need to do is multiply that quantity by the number of seconds (25) to arrive at an answer of total electrons:

(6,250,000,000,000,000,000 electrons per second) x (25 seconds) =
156,250,000,000,000,000,000 electrons passing by in 25 seconds

Using scientific notation, we can write the problem like this:

(6.25 x 10^{18} electrons per second) x (25 seconds)

If we take the "6.25" and multiply it by 25, we get 156.25. So, the answer could be written as:

156.25 x 10^{18} electrons

However, if we want to hold to standard convention for scientific notation, we must represent the significant digits as a number between 1 and 10. In this case, we'd say "1.5625" multiplied by some power-of-ten. To obtain 1.5625 from 156.25, we have to skip the decimal point two places to the left. To compensate for this without changing the value of the number, we have to raise our power by two notches (10 to the 20th power instead of 10 to the 18th):

1.5625 x 10^{20} electrons

What if we wanted to see how many electrons would pass by in 3,600 seconds (1 hour)? To make our job easier, we could put the time in scientific notation as well:

(6.25 x 10^{18} electrons per second) x (3.6 x 10^{3} seconds)

To multiply, we must take the two significant sets of digits (6.25 and 3.6) and multiply them together; and we need to take the two powers-of-ten and multiply them together. Taking 6.25 times 3.6, we get 22.5. Taking 10^{18} times 10^{3}, we get 10^{21} (exponents with common base numbers add). So, the answer is:

22.5 x 10^{21} electrons

. . . or more properly . . .

2.25 x 10^{22} electrons

To illustrate how division works with scientific notation, we could figure that last problem "backwards" to find out how long it would take for that many electrons to pass by at a current of 1 amp:

(2.25 x 10^{22} electrons) / (6.25 x 10^{18} electrons per second)

Just as in multiplication, we can handle the significant digits and powers-of-ten in separate steps (remember that you subtract the exponents of divided powers-of-ten):

(2.25 / 6.25) x (10^{22} / 10^{18})

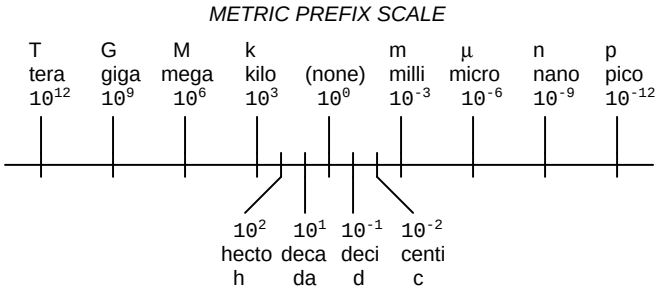
And the answer is: 0.36 x 10^{4}, or 3.6 x 10^{3}, seconds. You can see that we arrived at the same quantity of time (3600 seconds). Now, you may be wondering what the point of all this is when we have electronic calculators that can handle the math automatically. Well, back in the days of scientists and engineers using "slide rule" analog computers, these techniques were indispensable. The "hard" arithmetic (dealing with the significant digit figures) would be performed with the slide rule while the powers-of-ten could be figured without any help at all, being nothing more than simple addition and subtraction.

- **REVIEW:**

- Significant digits are representative of the real-world accuracy of a number.
- Scientific notation is a ”shorthand” method to represent very large and very small numbers in easily-handled form.
- When multiplying two numbers in scientific notation, you can multiply the two significant digit figures and arrive at a power-of-ten by adding exponents.
- When dividing two numbers in scientific notation, you can divide the two significant digit figures and arrive at a power-of-ten by subtracting exponents.

4.3 Metric notation

The metric system, besides being a collection of measurement units for all sorts of physical quantities, is structured around the concept of scientific notation. The primary difference is that the powers-of-ten are represented with alphabetical prefixes instead of by literal powers-of-ten. The following number line shows some of the more common prefixes and their respective powers-of-ten:



Looking at this scale, we can see that 2.5 Gigabytes would mean 2.5 x 10^{9} bytes, or 2.5 billion bytes. Likewise, 3.21 picoamps would mean 3.21 x 10^{-12} amps, or 3.21 1/trillionths of an amp.

Other metric prefixes exist to symbolize powers of ten for extremely small and extremely large multipliers. On the extremely small end of the spectrum, *femto* (f) = 10^{-15}, *atto* (a) = 10^{-18}, *zepto* (z) = 10^{-21}, and *yocto* (y) = 10^{-24}. On the extremely large end of the spectrum, *Peta* (P) = 10^{15}, *Exa* (E) = 10^{18}, *Zetta* (Z) = 10^{21}, and *Yotta* (Y) = 10^{24}.

Because the major prefixes in the metric system refer to powers of 10 that are multiples of 3 (from ”kilo” on up, and from ”milli” on down), metric notation differs from regular scientific notation in that the significant digits can be anywhere between 1 and 1000, depending on which prefix is chosen. For example, if a laboratory sample weighs 0.000267 grams, scientific notation and metric notation would express it differently:

2.67 x 10^{-4} grams (scientific notation)

267 μgrams (metric notation)

The same figure may also be expressed as 0.267 milligrams (0.267 mg), although it is usually more common to see the significant digits represented as a figure greater than 1.

In recent years a new style of metric notation for electric quantities has emerged which seeks to avoid the use of the decimal point. Since decimal points (".") are easily misread and/or "lost" due to poor print quality, quantities such as 4.7 k may be mistaken for 47 k. The new notation replaces the decimal point with the metric prefix character, so that "4.7 k" is printed instead as "4k7". Our last figure from the prior example, "0.267 m", would be expressed in the new notation as "0m267".

- **REVIEW:**
- The metric system of notation uses alphabetical prefixes to represent certain powers-of-ten instead of the lengthier scientific notation.

4.4 Metric prefix conversions

To express a quantity in a different metric prefix that what it was originally given, all we need to do is skip the decimal point to the right or to the left as needed. Notice that the metric prefix "number line" in the previous section was laid out from larger to smaller, left to right. This layout was purposely chosen to make it easier to remember which direction you need to skip the decimal point for any given conversion.

Example problem: express 0.000023 amps in terms of microamps.

0.000023 amps (has no prefix, just plain unit of amps)

From UNITS to micro on the number line is 6 places (powers of ten) to the right, so we need to skip the decimal point 6 places to the right:

0.000023 amps = 23. , or 23 microamps (μA)

Example problem: express 304,212 volts in terms of kilovolts.

304,212 volts (has no prefix, just plain unit of volts)

From the *(none)* place to *kilo* place on the number line is 3 places (powers of ten) to the left, so we need to skip the decimal point 3 places to the left:

304,212. = 304.212 kilovolts (kV)

Example problem: express 50.3 Mega-ohms in terms of milli-ohms.

50.3 M ohms (mega = 10^6)

From mega to milli is 9 places (powers of ten) to the right (from 10 to the 6th power to 10 to the -3rd power), so we need to skip the decimal point 9 places to the right:

50.3 M ohms = 50,300,000,000 milli-ohms (mΩ)

- **REVIEW:**
- Follow the metric prefix number line to know which direction you skip the decimal point for conversion purposes.
- A number with no decimal point shown has an implicit decimal point to the immediate right of the furthest right digit (i.e. for the number 436 the decimal point is to the right of the 6, as such: 436.)

4.5 Hand calculator use

To enter numbers in scientific notation into a hand calculator, there is usually a button marked "E" or "EE" used to enter the correct power of ten. For example, to enter the mass of a proton in grams (1.67 x 10^{-24} grams) into a hand calculator, I would enter the following keystrokes:

```
[1]  [.]  [6]  [7]  [EE]  [2]  [4]  [+/-]
```

The [+/-] keystroke changes the sign of the power (24) into a -24. Some calculators allow the use of the subtraction key [-] to do this, but I prefer the "change sign" [+/-] key because its more consistent with the use of that key in other contexts.

If I wanted to enter a negative number in scientific notation into a hand calculator, I would have to be careful how I used the [+/-] key, lest I change the sign of the power and not the significant digit value. Pay attention to this example:

Number to be entered: -3.221 x 10^{-15}:

```
[3]  [.]  [2]  [2]  [1]  [+/-]  [EE]  [1]  [5]  [+/-]
```

The first [+/-] keystroke changes the entry from 3.221 to -3.221; the second [+/-] keystroke changes the power from 15 to -15.

Displaying metric and scientific notation on a hand calculator is a different matter. It involves changing the display option from the normal "fixed" decimal point mode to the "scientific" or "engineering" mode. Your calculator manual will tell you how to set each display mode.

These display modes tell the calculator how to represent any number on the numerical readout. The actual value of the number is not affected in any way by the choice of display modes – only how the number appears to the calculator user. Likewise, the procedure for entering numbers into the calculator does not change with different display modes either. Powers of ten are usually represented by a pair of digits in the upper-right hand corner of the display, and are visible only in the "scientific" and "engineering" modes.

The difference between "scientific" and "engineering" display modes is the difference between scientific and metric notation. In "scientific" mode, the power-of-ten display is set so that the main number on the display is always a value between 1 and 10 (or -1 and -10 for negative numbers). In "engineering" mode, the powers-of-ten are set to display in multiples of 3, to represent the major metric prefixes. All the user has to do is memorize a few prefix/power combinations, and his or her calculator will be "speaking" metric!

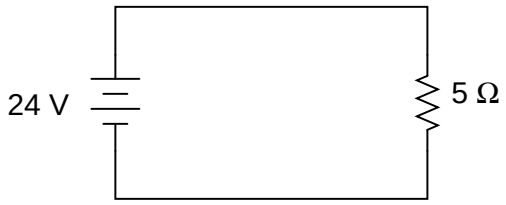
```
POWER       METRIC PREFIX
-----       -------------
12 ......... Tera  (T)
9 .......... Giga  (G)
6 .......... Mega  (M)
3 .......... Kilo  (k)
0 .......... UNITS (plain)
-3 ......... milli (m)
-6 ......... micro (u)
-9 ......... nano  (n)
-12 ........ pico  (p)
```

- **REVIEW:**
- Use the [EE] key to enter powers of ten.
- Use ”scientific” or ”engineering” to display powers of ten, in scientific or metric notation, respectively.

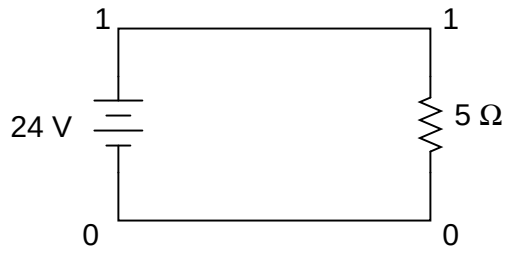
4.6 Scientific notation in SPICE

The SPICE circuit simulation computer program uses scientific notation to display its output information, and can interpret both scientific notation and metric prefixes in the circuit description files. If you are going to be able to successfully interpret the SPICE analyses throughout this book, you must be able to understand the notation used to express variables of voltage, current, etc. in the program.

Let’s start with a very simple circuit composed of one voltage source (a battery) and one resistor:



To simulate this circuit using SPICE, we first have to designate node numbers for all the distinct points in the circuit, then list the components along with their respective node numbers so the computer knows which component is connected to which, and how. For a circuit of this simplicity, the use of SPICE seems like overkill, but it serves the purpose of demonstrating practical use of scientific notation:



Typing out a circuit description file, or *netlist*, for this circuit, we get this:

```
simple circuit
v1 1 0 dc 24
r1 1 0 5
.end
```

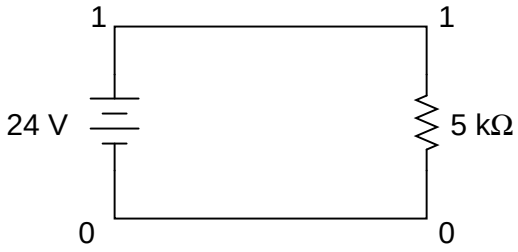
The line "`v1 1 0 dc 24`" describes the battery, positioned between nodes 1 and 0, with a DC voltage of 24 volts. The line "`r1 1 0 5`" describes the 5 Ω resistor placed between nodes 1 and 0.

Using a computer to run a SPICE analysis on this circuit description file, we get the following results:

```
node   voltage
(  1)   24.0000

voltage source currents
name       current
v1       -4.800E+00
total power dissipation   1.15E+02  watts
```

SPICE tells us that the voltage "at" node number 1 (actually, this means the voltage between nodes 1 and 0, node 0 being the default reference point for all voltage measurements) is equal to 24 volts. The current through battery "v1" is displayed as -4.800E+00 amps. This is SPICE's method of denoting scientific notation. What its really saying is "-4.800 x 10^0 amps," or simply -4.800 amps. The negative value for current here is due to a quirk in SPICE and does not indicate anything significant about the circuit itself. The "total power dissipation" is given to us as 1.15E+02 watts, which means "1.15 x 10^2 watts," or 115 watts.

Let's modify our example circuit so that it has a 5 kΩ (5 kilo-ohm, or 5,000 ohm) resistor instead of a 5 Ω resistor and see what happens.



Once again is our circuit description file, or "netlist:"

```
simple circuit
v1 1 0 dc 24
r1 1 0 5k
.end
```

The letter "k" following the number 5 on the resistor's line tells SPICE that it is a figure of 5 kΩ, not 5 Ω. Let's see what result we get when we run this through the computer:

```
node   voltage
(  1)   24.0000

voltage source currents
name       current
v1        -4.800E-03
total power dissipation   1.15E-01  watts
```

The battery voltage, of course, hasn't changed since the first simulation: its still at 24 volts. The circuit current, on the other hand, is much less this time because we've made the resistor a larger value, making it more difficult for electrons to flow. SPICE tells us that the current this time is equal to -4.800E-03 amps, or -4.800 x 10^{-3} amps. This is equivalent to taking the number -4.8 and skipping the decimal point three places to the left.

Of course, if we recognize that 10^{-3} is the same as the metric prefix "milli," we could write the figure as -4.8 milliamps, or -4.8 mA.

Looking at the "total power dissipation" given to us by SPICE on this second simulation, we see that it is 1.15E-01 watts, or 1.15 x 10^{-1} watts. The power of -1 corresponds to the metric prefix "deci," but generally we limit our use of metric prefixes in electronics to those associated with powers of ten that are multiples of three (ten to the power of . . . -12, -9, -6, -3, 3, 6, 9, 12, etc.). So, if we want to follow this convention, we must express this power dissipation figure as 0.115 watts or 115 milliwatts (115 mW) rather than 1.15 deciwatts (1.15 dW).

Perhaps the easiest way to convert a figure from scientific notation to common metric prefixes is with a scientific calculator set to the "engineering" or "metric" display mode. Just set the calculator for that display mode, type any scientific notation figure into it using the proper keystrokes (see your owner's manual), press the "equals" or "enter" key, and it should display the same figure in engineering/metric notation.

Again, I'll be using SPICE as a method of demonstrating circuit concepts throughout this book. Consequently, it is in your best interest to understand scientific notation so you can easily comprehend its output data format.

4.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 5

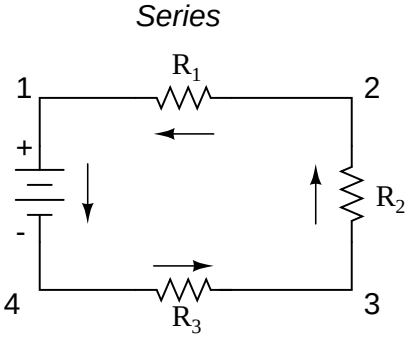
SERIES AND PARALLEL CIRCUITS

Contents

5.1 What are ”series” and ”parallel” circuits?

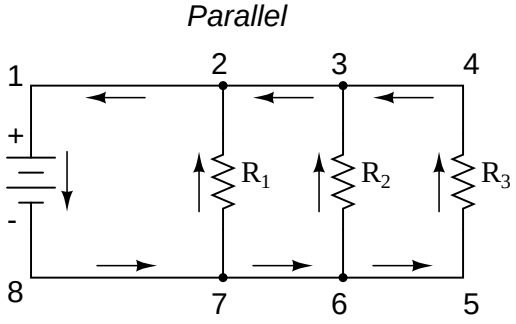
Circuits consisting of just one battery and one load resistance are very simple to analyze, but they are not often found in practical applications. Usually, we find circuits where more than two components are connected together.

There are two basic ways in which to connect more than two circuit components: *series* and *parallel*. First, an example of a series circuit:



Here, we have three resistors (labeled R_1, R_2, and R_3), connected in a long chain from one terminal of the battery to the other. (It should be noted that the subscript labeling – those little numbers to the lower-right of the letter "R" – are unrelated to the resistor values in ohms. They serve only to identify one resistor from another.) The defining characteristic of a series circuit is that there is only one path for electrons to flow. In this circuit the electrons flow in a counter-clockwise direction, from point 4 to point 3 to point 2 to point 1 and back around to 4.

Now, let's look at the other type of circuit, a parallel configuration:

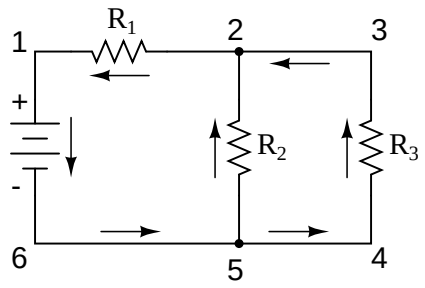


Again, we have three resistors, but this time they form more than one continuous path for electrons to flow. There's one path from 8 to 7 to 2 to 1 and back to 8 again. There's another from 8 to 7 to 6 to 3 to 2 to 1 and back to 8 again. And then there's a third path from 8 to 7 to 6 to 5 to 4 to 3 to 2 to 1 and back to 8 again. Each individual path (through R_1, R_2, and R_3) is called a *branch*.

The defining characteristic of a parallel circuit is that all components are connected between the same set of electrically common points. Looking at the schematic diagram, we see that points 1, 2, 3, and 4 are all electrically common. So are points 8, 7, 6, and 5. Note that all resistors as well as the battery are connected between these two sets of points.

And, of course, the complexity doesn't stop at simple series and parallel either! We can have circuits that are a combination of series and parallel, too:

Series-parallel

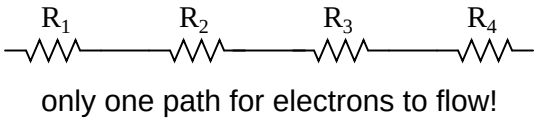


In this circuit, we have two loops for electrons to flow through: one from 6 to 5 to 2 to 1 and back to 6 again, and another from 6 to 5 to 4 to 3 to 2 to 1 and back to 6 again. Notice how both current paths go through R_1 (from point 2 to point 1). In this configuration, we'd say that R_2 and R_3 are in parallel with each other, while R_1 is in series with the parallel combination of R_2 and R_3.

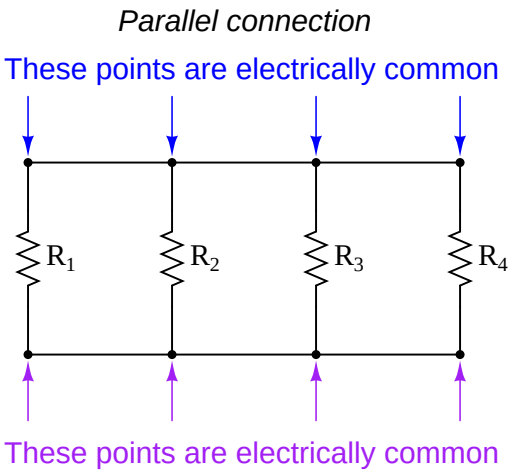
This is just a preview of things to come. Don't worry! We'll explore all these circuit configurations in detail, one at a time!

The basic idea of a "series" connection is that components are connected end-to-end in a line to form a single path for electrons to flow:

Series connection



The basic idea of a "parallel" connection, on the other hand, is that all components are connected across each other's leads. In a purely parallel circuit, there are never more than two sets of electrically common points, no matter how many components are connected. There are many paths for electrons to flow, but only one voltage across all components:

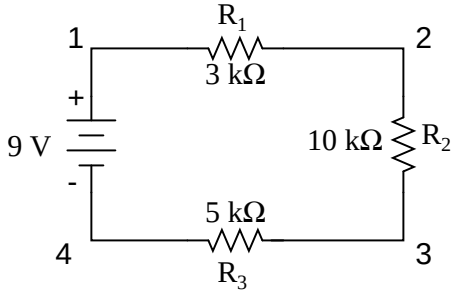


Series and parallel resistor configurations have very different electrical properties. We'll explore the properties of each configuration in the sections to come.

- **REVIEW:**
- In a series circuit, all components are connected end-to-end, forming a single path for electrons to flow.
- In a parallel circuit, all components are connected across each other, forming exactly two sets of electrically common points.
- A "branch" in a parallel circuit is a path for electric current formed by one of the load components (such as a resistor).

5.2 Simple series circuits

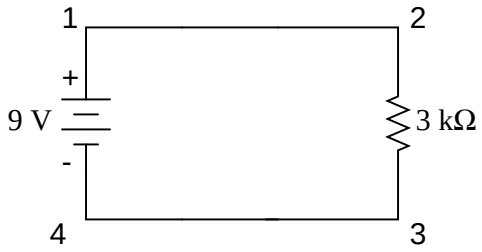
Let's start with a series circuit consisting of three resistors and a single battery:



The first principle to understand about series circuits is that the amount of current is the same through any component in the circuit. This is because there is only one path for electrons to flow in a series circuit, and because free electrons flow through conductors like marbles in a tube, the rate of flow (marble speed) at any point in the circuit (tube) at any specific point in time must be equal.

From the way that the 9 volt battery is arranged, we can tell that the electrons in this circuit will flow in a counter-clockwise direction, from point 4 to 3 to 2 to 1 and back to 4. However, we have one source of voltage and three resistances. How do we use Ohm's Law here?

An important caveat to Ohm's Law is that all quantities (voltage, current, resistance, and power) must relate to each other in terms of the same two points in a circuit. For instance, with a single-battery, single-resistor circuit, we could easily calculate any quantity because they all applied to the same two points in the circuit:

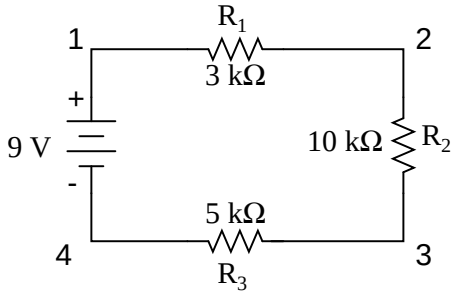


$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

$$I = \frac{9 \text{ volts}}{3 \text{ k}\Omega} = 3 \text{ mA}$$

Since points 1 and 2 are connected together with wire of negligible resistance, as are points 3 and 4, we can say that point 1 is electrically common to point 2, and that point 3 is electrically common to point 4. Since we know we have 9 volts of electromotive force between points 1 and 4 (directly across the battery), and since point 2 is common to point 1 and point 3 common to point 4, we must also have 9 volts between points 2 and 3 (directly across the resistor). Therefore, we can apply Ohm's Law (I = E/R) to the current through the resistor, because we know the voltage (E) across the resistor and the resistance (R) of that resistor. All terms (E, I, R) apply to the same two points in the circuit, to that same resistor, so we can use the Ohm's Law formula with no reservation.

However, in circuits containing more than one resistor, we must be careful in how we apply Ohm's Law. In the three-resistor example circuit below, we know that we have 9 volts between points 1 and 4, which is the amount of electromotive force trying to push electrons through the series combination of R_1, R_2, and R_3. However, we cannot take the value of 9 volts and divide it by 3k, 10k or 5k Ω to try to find a current value, because we don't know how much voltage is across any one of those resistors, individually.



The figure of 9 volts is a *total* quantity for the whole circuit, whereas the figures of 3k, 10k, and 5k Ω are *individual* quantities for individual resistors. If we were to plug a figure for total voltage into an Ohm's Law equation with a figure for individual resistance, the result would not relate accurately to any quantity in the real circuit.

For R_1, Ohm's Law will relate the amount of voltage across R_1 with the current through R_1, given R_1's resistance, 3kΩ:

$$I_{R1} = \frac{E_{R1}}{3\ k\Omega} \qquad E_{R1} = I_{R1}(3\ k\Omega)$$

But, since we don't know the voltage across R_1 (only the total voltage supplied by the battery across the three-resistor series combination) and we don't know the current through R_1, we can't do any calculations with either formula. The same goes for R_2 and R_3: we can apply the Ohm's Law equations if and only if all terms are representative of their respective quantities between the same two points in the circuit.

So what can we do? We know the voltage of the source (9 volts) applied across the series combination of R_1, R_2, and R_3, and we know the resistances of each resistor, but since those quantities aren't in the same context, we can't use Ohm's Law to determine the circuit current. If only we knew what the *total* resistance was for the circuit: then we could calculate *total* current with our figure for *total* voltage (I=E/R).

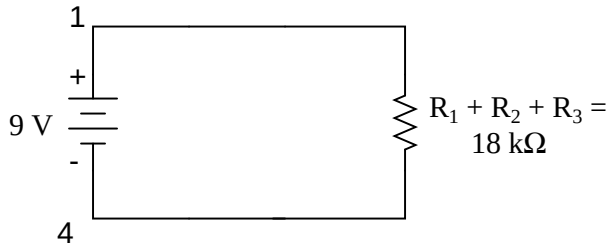
This brings us to the second principle of series circuits: the total resistance of any series circuit is equal to the sum of the individual resistances. This should make intuitive sense: the more resistors in series that the electrons must flow through, the more difficult it will be for those electrons to flow. In the example problem, we had a 3 kΩ, 10 kΩ, and 5 kΩ resistor in series, giving us a total resistance of 18 kΩ:

$$R_{total} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3$$

$$R_{total} = 3\ k\Omega + 10\ k\Omega + 5\ k\Omega$$

$$R_{total} = 18\ k\Omega$$

In essence, we've calculated the equivalent resistance of R_1, R_2, and R_3 combined. Knowing this, we could re-draw the circuit with a single equivalent resistor representing the series combination of R_1, R_2, and R_3:

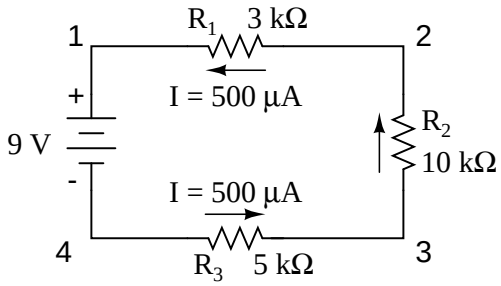


Now we have all the necessary information to calculate circuit current, because we have the voltage between points 1 and 4 (9 volts) and the resistance between points 1 and 4 (18 kΩ):

$$I_{total} = \frac{E_{total}}{R_{total}}$$

$$I_{total} = \frac{9 \text{ volts}}{18 \text{ k}\Omega} = 500 \ \mu\text{A}$$

Knowing that current is equal through all components of a series circuit (and we just determined the current through the battery), we can go back to our original circuit schematic and note the current through each component:



Now that we know the amount of current through each resistor, we can use Ohm's Law to determine the voltage drop across each one (applying Ohm's Law in its proper context):

$E_{R1} = I_{R1} R_1$ $E_{R2} = I_{R2} R_2$ $E_{R3} = I_{R3} R_3$

$E_{R1} = (500 \ \mu\text{A})(3 \text{ k}\Omega) = 1.5 \text{ V}$

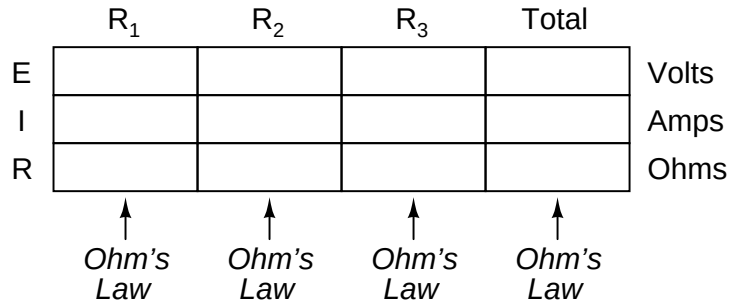
$E_{R2} = (500 \ \mu\text{A})(10 \text{ k}\Omega) = 5 \text{ V}$

$E_{R3} = (500 \ \mu\text{A})(5 \text{ k}\Omega) = 2.5 \text{ V}$

Notice the voltage drops across each resistor, and how the sum of the voltage drops (1.5 + 5 + 2.5) is equal to the battery (supply) voltage: 9 volts. This is the third principle of series circuits: that the supply voltage is equal to the sum of the individual voltage drops.

However, the method we just used to analyze this simple series circuit can be streamlined for better understanding. By using a table to list all voltages, currents, and resistances in the

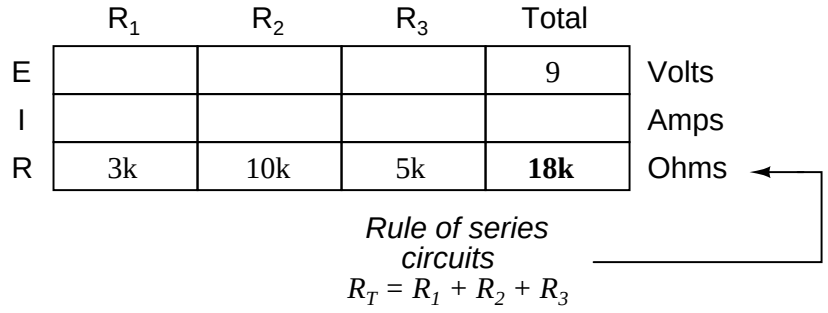
circuit, it becomes very easy to see which of those quantities can be properly related in any Ohm's Law equation:



The rule with such a table is to apply Ohm's Law only to the values within each vertical column. For instance, E_{R1} only with I_{R1} and R_1; E_{R2} only with I_{R2} and R_2; etc. You begin your analysis by filling in those elements of the table that are given to you from the beginning:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E				**9**	Volts
I					Amps
R	**3k**	**10k**	**5k**		Ohms

As you can see from the arrangement of the data, we can't apply the 9 volts of E_T (total voltage) to any of the resistances (R_1, R_2, or R_3) in any Ohm's Law formula because they're in different columns. The 9 volts of battery voltage is *not* applied directly across R_1, R_2, or R_3. However, we can use our "rules" of series circuits to fill in blank spots on a horizontal row. In this case, we can use the series rule of resistances to determine a total resistance from the *sum* of individual resistances:



Now, with a value for total resistance inserted into the rightmost ("Total") column, we can apply Ohm's Law of I=E/R to total voltage and total resistance to arrive at a total current of 500 μA:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E				9	Volts
I				**500**µ	Amps
R	3k	10k	5k	18k	Ohms

Ohm's Law

Then, knowing that the current is shared equally by all components of a series circuit (another "rule" of series circuits), we can fill in the currents for each resistor from the current figure just calculated:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E				9	Volts
I	**500**µ	**500**µ	**500**µ	**500**µ	Amps
R	3k	10k	5k	18k	Ohms

Rule of series circuits

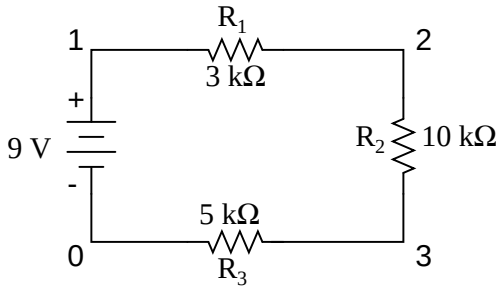
$I_T = I_1 = I_2 = I_3$

Finally, we can use Ohm's Law to determine the voltage drop across each resistor, one column at a time:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	**1.5**	**5**	**2.5**	9	Volts
I	500µ	500µ	500µ	500µ	Amps
R	3k	10k	5k	18k	Ohms

Ohm's Law *Ohm's Law* *Ohm's Law*

Just for fun, we can use a computer to analyze this very same circuit automatically. It will be a good way to verify our calculations and also become more familiar with computer analysis. First, we have to describe the circuit to the computer in a format recognizable by the software. The SPICE program we'll be using requires that all electrically unique points in a circuit be numbered, and component placement is understood by which of those numbered points, or "nodes," they share. For clarity, I numbered the four corners of our example circuit 1 through 4. SPICE, however, demands that there be a node zero somewhere in the circuit, so I'll re-draw the circuit, changing the numbering scheme slightly:



All I've done here is re-numbered the lower-left corner of the circuit 0 instead of 4. Now, I can enter several lines of text into a computer file describing the circuit in terms SPICE will understand, complete with a couple of extra lines of code directing the program to display voltage and current data for our viewing pleasure. This computer file is known as the *netlist* in SPICE terminology:

```
series circuit
v1 1 0
r1 1 2 3k
r2 2 3 10k
r3 3 0 5k
.dc v1 9 9 1
.print dc v(1,2) v(2,3) v(3,0)
.end
```

Now, all I have to do is run the SPICE program to process the netlist and output the results:

```
v1             v(1,2)       v(2,3)       v(3)         i(v1)
9.000E+00      1.500E+00    5.000E+00    2.500E+00   -5.000E-04
```

This printout is telling us the battery voltage is 9 volts, and the voltage drops across R_1, R_2, and R_3 are 1.5 volts, 5 volts, and 2.5 volts, respectively. Voltage drops across any component in SPICE are referenced by the node numbers the component lies between, so v(1,2) is referencing the voltage between nodes 1 and 2 in the circuit, which are the points between which R_1 is located. The order of node numbers is important: when SPICE outputs a figure for v(1,2), it regards the polarity the same way as if we were holding a voltmeter with the red test lead on node 1 and the black test lead on node 2.

We also have a display showing current (albeit with a negative value) at 0.5 milliamps, or 500 microamps. So our mathematical analysis has been vindicated by the computer. This figure appears as a negative number in the SPICE analysis, due to a quirk in the way SPICE handles current calculations.

In summary, a series circuit is defined as having only one path for electrons to flow. From this definition, three rules of series circuits follow: all components share the same current; resistances add to equal a larger, total resistance; and voltage drops add to equal a larger, total voltage. All of these rules find root in the definition of a series circuit. If you understand that definition fully, then the rules are nothing more than footnotes to the definition.

- **REVIEW:**

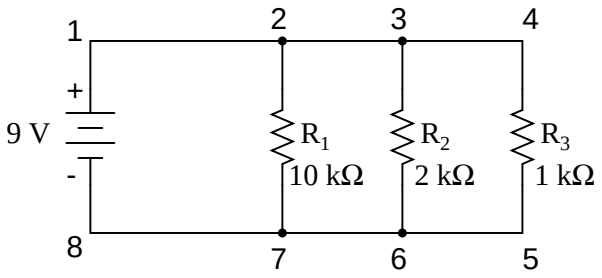
- Components in a series circuit share the same current: $I_{Total} = I_1 = I_2 = \ldots I_n$

- Total resistance in a series circuit is equal to the sum of the individual resistances: $R_{Total} = R_1 + R_2 + \ldots R_n$

- Total voltage in a series circuit is equal to the sum of the individual voltage drops: $E_{Total} = E_1 + E_2 + \ldots E_n$

5.3 Simple parallel circuits

Let's start with a parallel circuit consisting of three resistors and a single battery:



The first principle to understand about parallel circuits is that the voltage is equal across all components in the circuit. This is because there are only two sets of electrically common points in a parallel circuit, and voltage measured between sets of common points must always be the same at any given time. Therefore, in the above circuit, the voltage across R_1 is equal to the voltage across R_2 which is equal to the voltage across R_3 which is equal to the voltage across the battery. This equality of voltages can be represented in another table for our starting values:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	9	9	9	9	Volts
I					Amps
R	10k	2k	1k		Ohms

Just as in the case of series circuits, the same caveat for Ohm's Law applies: values for voltage, current, and resistance must be in the same context in order for the calculations to work correctly. However, in the above example circuit, we can immediately apply Ohm's Law to each resistor to find its current because we know the voltage across each resistor (9 volts) and the resistance of each resistor:

$$I_{R1} = \frac{E_{R1}}{R_1} \qquad I_{R2} = \frac{E_{R2}}{R_2} \qquad I_{R3} = \frac{E_{R3}}{R_3}$$

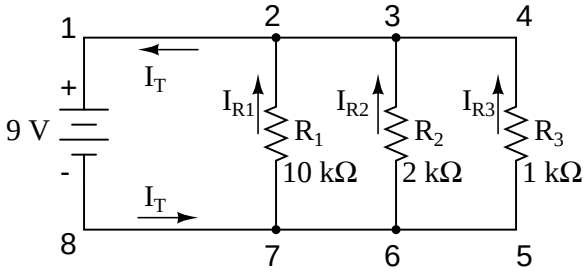
$$I_{R1} = \frac{9\ V}{10\ k\Omega} = 0.9\ mA$$

$$I_{R2} = \frac{9\ V}{2\ k\Omega} = 4.5\ mA$$

$$I_{R3} = \frac{9\ V}{1\ k\Omega} = 9\ mA$$

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	9	9	9	9	Volts
I	**0.9m**	**4.5m**	**9m**		Amps
R	10k	2k	1k		Ohms
	Ohm's Law	*Ohm's Law*	*Ohm's Law*		

At this point we still don't know what the total current or total resistance for this parallel circuit is, so we can't apply Ohm's Law to the rightmost ("Total") column. However, if we think carefully about what is happening it should become apparent that the total current must equal the sum of all individual resistor ("branch") currents:



As the total current exits the negative (-) battery terminal at point 8 and travels through the circuit, some of the flow splits off at point 7 to go up through R_1, some more splits off at point 6 to go up through R_2, and the remainder goes up through R_3. Like a river branching into several smaller streams, the combined flow rates of all streams must equal the flow rate of the whole river. The same thing is encountered where the currents through R_1, R_2, and R_3 join to flow back to the positive terminal of the battery (+) toward point 1: the flow of electrons from point 2 to point 1 must equal the sum of the (branch) currents through R_1, R_2, and R_3.

This is the second principle of parallel circuits: the total circuit current is equal to the sum of the individual branch currents. Using this principle, we can fill in the I_T spot on our table with the sum of I_{R1}, I_{R2}, and I_{R3}:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	9	9	9	9	Volts
I	0.9m	4.5m	9m	**14.4m**	Amps
R	10k	2k	1k		Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits

$I_{total} = I_1 + I_2 + I_3$

Finally, applying Ohm's Law to the rightmost ("Total") column, we can calculate the total circuit resistance:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	9	9	9	9	Volts
I	0.9m	4.5m	9m	14.4m	Amps
R	10k	2k	1k	**625**	Ohms

$$R_{total} = \frac{E_{total}}{I_{total}} = \frac{9\ V}{14.4\ mA} = 625\ \Omega$$

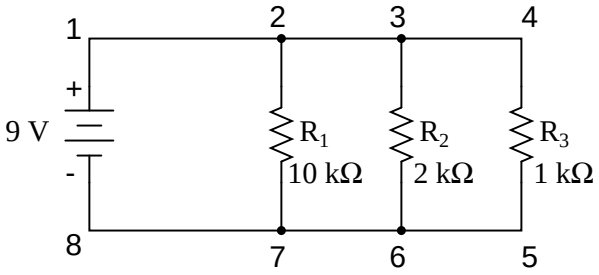
Ohm's Law

Please note something very important here. The total circuit resistance is only 625 Ω: *less* than any one of the individual resistors. In the series circuit, where the total resistance was the sum of the individual resistances, the total was bound to be *greater* than any one of the resistors individually. Here in the parallel circuit, however, the opposite is true: we say that the individual resistances *diminish* rather than *add* to make the total. This principle completes our triad of "rules" for parallel circuits, just as series circuits were found to have three rules for voltage, current, and resistance. Mathematically, the relationship between total resistance and individual resistances in a parallel circuit looks like this:

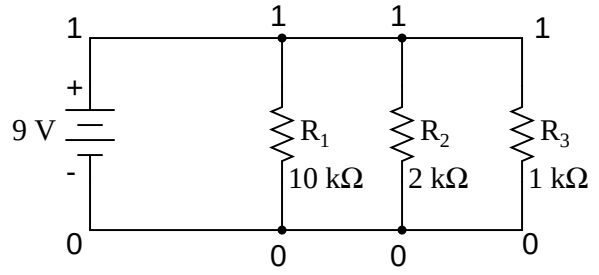
$$R_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}}$$

The same basic form of equation works for *any* number of resistors connected together in parallel, just add as many 1/R terms on the denominator of the fraction as needed to accommodate all parallel resistors in the circuit.

Just as with the series circuit, we can use computer analysis to double-check our calculations. First, of course, we have to describe our example circuit to the computer in terms it can understand. I'll start by re-drawing the circuit:

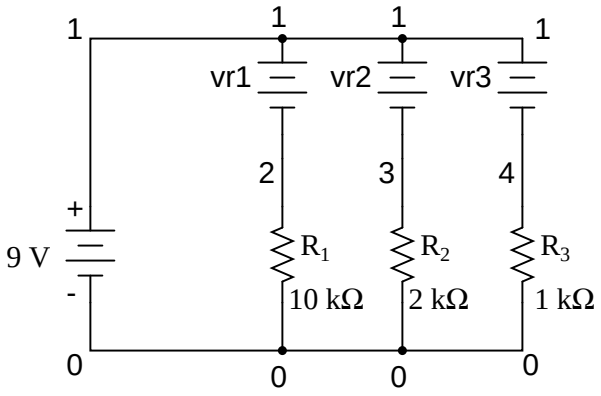


Once again we find that the original numbering scheme used to identify points in the circuit will have to be altered for the benefit of SPICE. In SPICE, all electrically common points must share identical node numbers. This is how SPICE knows what's connected to what, and how. In a simple parallel circuit, all points are electrically common in one of two sets of points. For our example circuit, the wire connecting the tops of all the components will have one node number and the wire connecting the bottoms of the components will have the other. Staying true to the convention of including zero as a node number, I choose the numbers 0 and 1:



An example like this makes the rationale of node numbers in SPICE fairly clear to understand. By having all components share common sets of numbers, the computer "knows" they're all connected in parallel with each other.

In order to display branch currents in SPICE, we need to insert zero-voltage sources in line (in series) with each resistor, and then reference our current measurements to those sources. For whatever reason, the creators of the SPICE program made it so that current could only be calculated *through* a voltage source. This is a somewhat annoying demand of the SPICE simulation program. With each of these "dummy" voltage sources added, some new node numbers must be created to connect them to their respective branch resistors:



The dummy voltage sources are all set at 0 volts so as to have no impact on the operation of the circuit. The circuit description file, or *netlist*, looks like this:

```
Parallel circuit
v1 1 0
r1 2 0 10k
r2 3 0 2k
r3 4 0 1k
vr1 1 2 dc 0
vr2 1 3 dc 0
vr3 1 4 dc 0
.dc v1 9 9 1
.print dc v(2,0) v(3,0) v(4,0)
.print dc i(vr1) i(vr2) i(vr3)
.end
```

Running the computer analysis, we get these results (I've annotated the printout with descriptive labels):

```
v1             v(2)         v(3)         v(4)
9.000E+00      9.000E+00    9.000E+00    9.000E+00
battery        R1 voltage   R2 voltage   R3 voltage
voltage

v1             i(vr1)       i(vr2)       i(vr3)
9.000E+00      9.000E-04    4.500E-03    9.000E-03
battery        R1 current   R2 current   R3 current
voltage
```

These values do indeed match those calculated through Ohm's Law earlier: 0.9 mA for I_{R1},

4.5 mA for I_{R2}, and 9 mA for I_{R3}. Being connected in parallel, of course, all resistors have the same voltage dropped across them (9 volts, same as the battery).

In summary, a parallel circuit is defined as one where all components are connected between the same set of electrically common points. Another way of saying this is that all components are connected across each other's terminals. From this definition, three rules of parallel circuits follow: all components share the same voltage; resistances diminish to equal a smaller, total resistance; and branch currents add to equal a larger, total current. Just as in the case of series circuits, all of these rules find root in the definition of a parallel circuit. If you understand that definition fully, then the rules are nothing more than footnotes to the definition.

- **REVIEW:**
- Components in a parallel circuit share the same voltage: $E_{Total} = E_1 = E_2 = \ldots E_n$
- Total resistance in a parallel circuit is *less* than any of the individual resistances: $R_{Total} = 1 / (1/R_1 + 1/R_2 + \ldots 1/R_n)$
- Total current in a parallel circuit is equal to the sum of the individual branch currents: $I_{Total} = I_1 + I_2 + \ldots I_n$.

5.4 Conductance

When students first see the parallel resistance equation, the natural question to ask is, "Where did *that* thing come from?" It is truly an odd piece of arithmetic, and its origin deserves a good explanation.

Resistance, by definition, is the measure of *friction* a component presents to the flow of electrons through it. Resistance is symbolized by the capital letter "R" and is measured in the unit of "ohm." However, we can also think of this electrical property in terms of its inverse: how *easy* it is for electrons to flow through a component, rather than how *difficult*. If *resistance* is the word we use to symbolize the measure of how difficult it is for electrons to flow, then a good word to express how easy it is for electrons to flow would be *conductance*.

Mathematically, conductance is the reciprocal, or inverse, of resistance:

$$\text{Conductance} = \frac{1}{\text{Resistance}}$$

The greater the resistance, the less the conductance, and vice versa. This should make intuitive sense, resistance and conductance being opposite ways to denote the same essential electrical property. If two components' resistances are compared and it is found that component "A" has one-half the resistance of component "B," then we could alternatively express this relationship by saying that component "A" is *twice* as conductive as component "B." If component "A" has but one-third the resistance of component "B," then we could say it is *three times* more conductive than component "B," and so on.

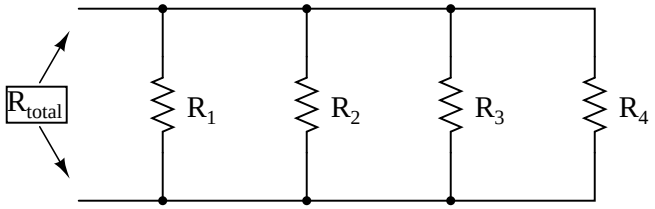
Carrying this idea further, a symbol and unit were created to represent conductance. The symbol is the capital letter "G" and the unit is the *mho*, which is "ohm" spelled backwards (and you didn't think electronics engineers had any sense of humor!). Despite its appropriateness, the unit of the mho was replaced in later years by the unit of *siemens* (abbreviated by the

capital letter "S"). This decision to change unit names is reminiscent of the change from the temperature unit of degrees *Centigrade* to degrees *Celsius*, or the change from the unit of frequency *c.p.s.* (cycles per second) to *Hertz*. If you're looking for a pattern here, Siemens, Celsius, and Hertz are all surnames of famous scientists, the names of which, sadly, tell us less about the nature of the units than the units' original designations.

As a footnote, the unit of siemens is never expressed without the last letter "s." In other words, there is no such thing as a unit of "siemen" as there is in the case of the "ohm" or the "mho." The reason for this is the proper spelling of the respective scientists' surnames. The unit for electrical resistance was named after someone named "Ohm," whereas the unit for electrical conductance was named after someone named "Siemens," therefore it would be improper to "singularize" the latter unit as its final "s" does not denote plurality.

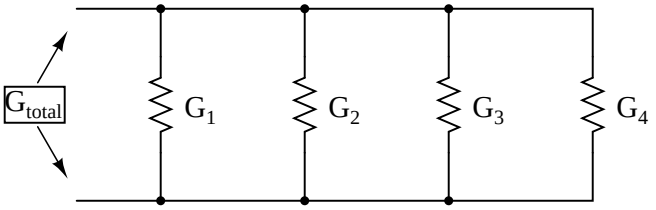
Back to our parallel circuit example, we should be able to see that multiple paths (branches) for current reduces total resistance for the whole circuit, as electrons are able to flow easier through the whole network of multiple branches than through any one of those branch resistances alone. In terms of *resistance*, additional branches result in a lesser total (current meets with less opposition). In terms of *conductance*, however, additional branches results in a greater total (electrons flow with greater conductance):

Total parallel resistance is *less* than any one of the individual branch resistances because parallel resistors resist less together than they would separately:



R_{total} is less than R_1, R_2, R_3, or R_4 individually

Total parallel conductance is *greater* than any of the individual branch conductances because parallel resistors conduct better together than they would separately:



G_{total} is greater than G_1, G_2, G_3, or G_4 individually

To be more precise, the total conductance in a parallel circuit is equal to the sum of the individual conductances:

$$G_{total} = G_1 + G_2 + G_3 + G_4$$

If we know that conductance is nothing more than the mathematical reciprocal (1/x) of resistance, we can translate each term of the above formula into resistance by substituting the reciprocal of each respective conductance:

$$\frac{1}{R_{total}} = \frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \frac{1}{R_4}$$

Solving the above equation for total resistance (instead of the reciprocal of total resistance), we can invert (reciprocate) both sides of the equation:

$$R_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3} + \frac{1}{R_4}}$$

So, we arrive at our cryptic resistance formula at last! Conductance (G) is seldom used as a practical measurement, and so the above formula is a common one to see in the analysis of parallel circuits.

- **REVIEW:**
- Conductance is the opposite of resistance: the measure of how *easy* is it for electrons to flow through something.
- Conductance is symbolized with the letter "G" and is measured in units of *mhos* or *Siemens*.
- Mathematically, conductance equals the reciprocal of resistance: G = 1/R

5.5 Power calculations

When calculating the power dissipation of resistive components, use any one of the three power equations to derive the answer from values of voltage, current, and/or resistance pertaining to each component:

Power equations

$$P = IE \qquad P = \frac{E^2}{R} \qquad P = I^2R$$

This is easily managed by adding another row to our familiar table of voltages, currents, and resistances:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E					Volts
I					Amps
R					Ohms
P					Watts

Power for any particular table column can be found by the appropriate Ohm's Law equation (*appropriate* based on what figures are present for E, I, and R in that column).

An interesting rule for total power versus individual power is that it is additive for *any* configuration of circuit: series, parallel, series/parallel, or otherwise. Power is a measure of rate of work, and since power dissipated *must* equal the total power applied by the source(s) (as per the Law of Conservation of Energy in physics), circuit configuration has no effect on the mathematics.

- **REVIEW:**

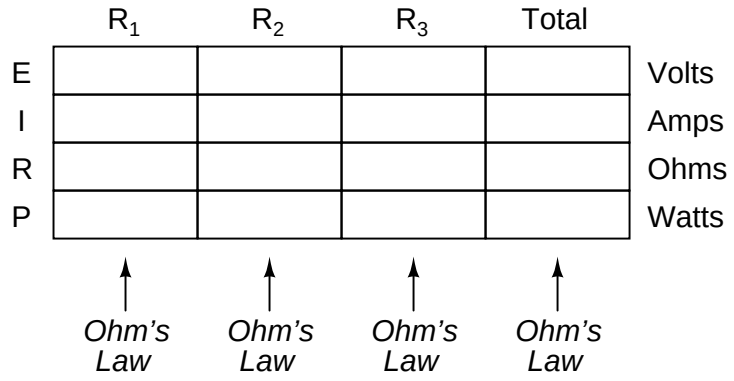
- Power is additive in *any* configuration of resistive circuit: $P_{Total} = P_1 + P_2 + \ldots P_n$

5.6 Correct use of Ohm's Law

One of the most common mistakes made by beginning electronics students in their application of Ohm's Laws is mixing the contexts of voltage, current, and resistance. In other words, a student might mistakenly use a value for I through one resistor and the value for E across a set of interconnected resistors, thinking that they'll arrive at the resistance of that one resistor. Not so! Remember this important rule: The variables used in Ohm's Law equations must be *common* to the same two points in the circuit under consideration. I cannot overemphasize this rule. This is especially important in series-parallel combination circuits where nearby components may have different values for both voltage drop *and* current.

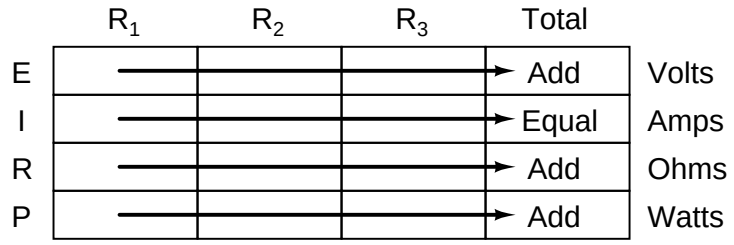
When using Ohm's Law to calculate a variable pertaining to a single component, be sure the voltage you're referencing is solely across that single component and the current you're referencing is solely through that single component and the resistance you're referencing is solely for that single component. Likewise, when calculating a variable pertaining to a set of components in a circuit, be sure that the voltage, current, and resistance values are specific to that complete set of components only! A good way to remember this is to pay close attention to the *two points* terminating the component or set of components being analyzed, making sure that the voltage in question is across those two points, that the current in question is the electron flow from one of those points all the way to the other point, that the resistance in question is the equivalent of a single resistor between those two points, and that the power in question is the total power dissipated by all components between those two points.

The "table" method presented for both series and parallel circuits in this chapter is a good way to keep the context of Ohm's Law correct for any kind of circuit configuration. In a table like the one shown below, you are only allowed to apply an Ohm's Law equation for the values of a single *vertical* column at a time:



Deriving values *horizontally* across columns is allowable as per the principles of series and parallel circuits:

For series circuits:



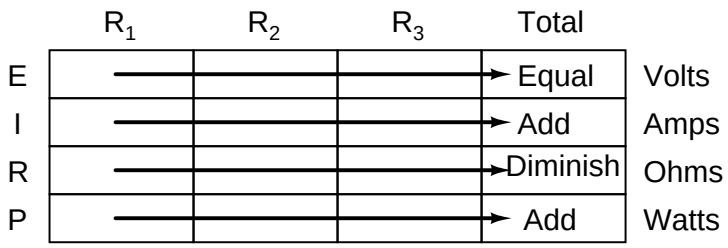
$$E_{total} = E_1 + E_2 + E_3$$

$$I_{total} = I_1 = I_2 = I_3$$

$$R_{total} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3$$

$$P_{total} = P_1 + P_2 + P_3$$

For parallel circuits:



$$E_{total} = E_1 = E_2 = E_3$$

$$I_{total} = I_1 + I_2 + I_3$$

$$R_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}}$$

$$P_{total} = P_1 + P_2 + P_3$$

Not only does the ”table” method simplify the management of all relevant quantities, it also facilitates cross-checking of answers by making it easy to solve for the original unknown variables through other methods, or by working backwards to solve for the initially given values from your solutions. For example, if you have just solved for all unknown voltages, currents, and resistances in a circuit, you can check your work by adding a row at the bottom for power calculations on each resistor, seeing whether or not all the individual power values add up to the total power. If not, then you must have made a mistake somewhere! While this technique of ”cross-checking” your work is nothing new, using the table to arrange all the data for the cross-check(s) results in a minimum of confusion.

- **REVIEW:**
- Apply Ohm’s Law to vertical columns in the table.
- Apply rules of series/parallel to horizontal rows in the table.
- Check your calculations by working ”backwards” to try to arrive at originally given values (from your first calculated answers), or by solving for a quantity using more than one method (from different given values).

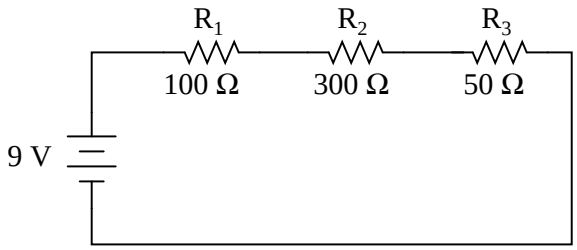
5.7 Component failure analysis

The job of a technician frequently entails ”troubleshooting” (locating and correcting a problem) in malfunctioning circuits. Good troubleshooting is a demanding and rewarding effort, requiring a thorough understanding of the basic concepts, the ability to formulate hypotheses (proposed explanations of an effect), the ability to judge the value of different hypotheses based

on their probability (how likely one particular cause may be over another), and a sense of creativity in applying a solution to rectify the problem. While it is possible to distill these skills into a scientific methodology, most practiced troubleshooters would agree that troubleshooting involves a touch of art, and that it can take years of experience to fully develop this art.

An essential skill to have is a ready and intuitive understanding of how component faults affect circuits in different configurations. We will explore some of the effects of component faults in both series and parallel circuits here, then to a greater degree at the end of the "Series-Parallel Combination Circuits" chapter.

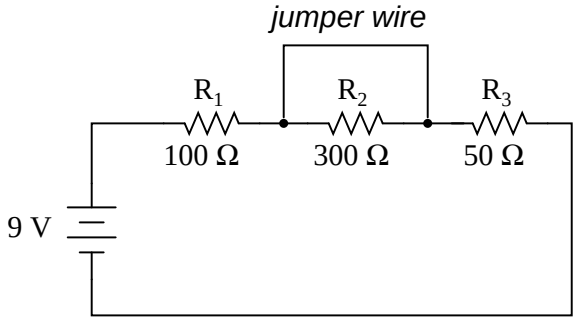
Let's start with a simple series circuit:



With all components in this circuit functioning at their proper values, we can mathematically determine all currents and voltage drops:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	2	6	1	9	Volts
I	20m	20m	20m	20m	Amps
R	100	300	50	450	Ohms

Now let us suppose that R_2 fails shorted. *Shorted* means that the resistor now acts like a straight piece of wire, with little or no resistance. The circuit will behave as though a "jumper" wire were connected across R_2 (in case you were wondering, "jumper wire" is a common term for a temporary wire connection in a circuit). What causes the shorted condition of R_2 is no matter to us in this example; we only care about its effect upon the circuit:



With R_2 shorted, either by a jumper wire or by an internal resistor failure, the total circuit resistance will *decrease*. Since the voltage output by the battery is a constant (at least in our ideal simulation here), a decrease in total circuit resistance means that total circuit current

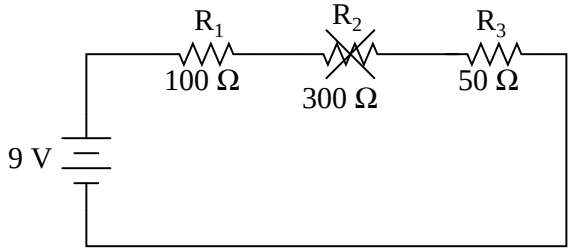
must increase:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	6	0	3	9	Volts
I	60m	60m	60m	60m	Amps
R	100	0	50	150	Ohms

Shorted resistor

As the circuit current increases from 20 milliamps to 60 milliamps, the voltage drops across R_1 and R_3 (which haven't changed resistances) increase as well, so that the two resistors are dropping the whole 9 volts. R_2, being bypassed by the very low resistance of the jumper wire, is effectively eliminated from the circuit, the resistance from one lead to the other having been reduced to zero. Thus, the voltage drop across R_2, even with the increased total current, is zero volts.

On the other hand, if R_2 were to fail "open" – resistance increasing to nearly infinite levels – it would also create wide-reaching effects in the rest of the circuit:

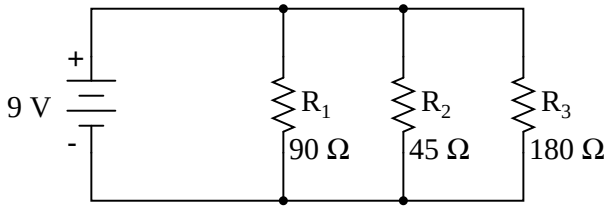


	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	0	9	0	9	Volts
I	0	0	0	0	Amps
R	100	∞	50	∞	Ohms

Open resistor

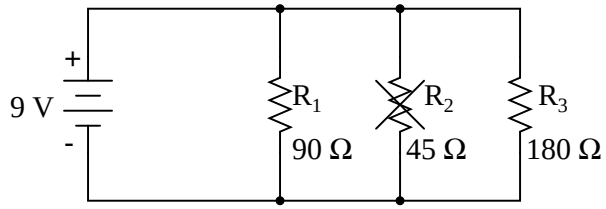
With R_2 at infinite resistance and total resistance being the sum of all individual resistances in a series circuit, the total current decreases to zero. With zero circuit current, there is no electron flow to produce voltage drops across R_1 or R_3. R_2, on the other hand, will manifest the full supply voltage across its terminals.

We can apply the same before/after analysis technique to parallel circuits as well. First, we determine what a "healthy" parallel circuit should behave like.



	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	9	9	9	9	Volts
I	100m	200m	50m	350m	Amps
R	90	45	180	25.714	Ohms

Supposing that R_2 opens in this parallel circuit, here's what the effects will be:

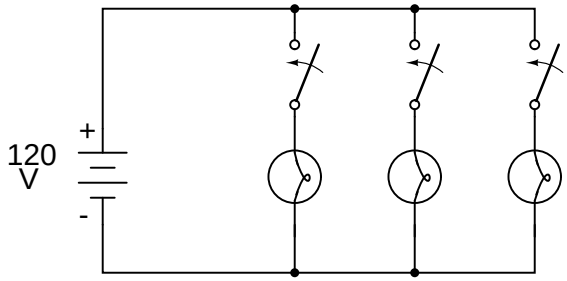


	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	9	9	9	9	Volts
I	100m	0	50m	150m	Amps
R	90	∞	180	60	Ohms

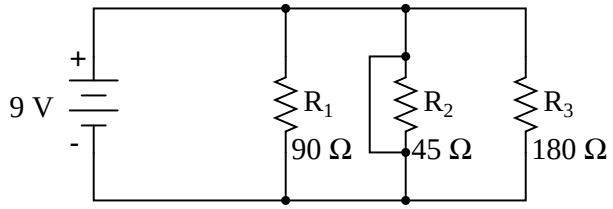
Open resistor

Notice that in this parallel circuit, an open branch only affects the current through that branch and the circuit's total current. Total voltage – being shared equally across all components in a parallel circuit, will be the same for all resistors. Due to the fact that the voltage source's tendency is to hold voltage *constant*, its voltage will not change, and being in parallel with all the resistors, it will hold all the resistors' voltages the same as they were before: 9 volts. Being that voltage is the only common parameter in a parallel circuit, and the other resistors haven't changed resistance value, their respective branch currents remain unchanged.

This is what happens in a household lamp circuit: all lamps get their operating voltage from power wiring arranged in a parallel fashion. Turning one lamp on and off (one branch in that parallel circuit closing and opening) doesn't affect the operation of other lamps in the room, only the current in that one lamp (branch circuit) and the total current powering all the lamps in the room:



In an ideal case (with perfect voltage sources and zero-resistance connecting wire), shorted resistors in a simple parallel circuit will also have no effect on what's happening in other branches of the circuit. In real life, the effect is not quite the same, and we'll see why in the following example:



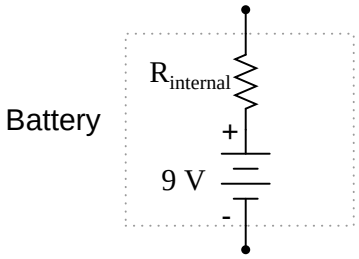
R_2 "shorted" with a jumper wire

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	9	9	9	9	Volts
I	100m	∞	50m	∞	Amps
R	90	0	180	0	Ohms

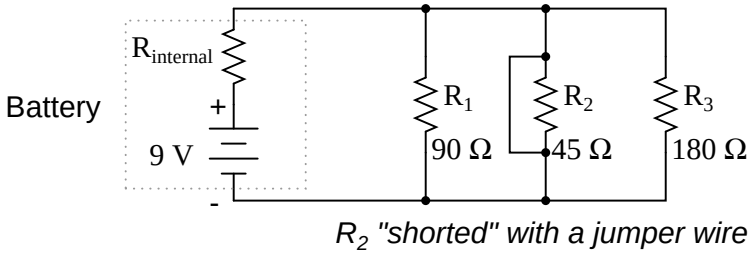
Shorted resistor

A shorted resistor (resistance of 0 Ω) would theoretically draw infinite current from any finite source of voltage (I=E/0). In this case, the zero resistance of R_2 decreases the circuit total resistance to zero Ω as well, increasing total current to a value of infinity. As long as the voltage source holds steady at 9 volts, however, the other branch currents (I_{R1} and I_{R3}) will remain unchanged.

The critical assumption in this "perfect" scheme, however, is that the voltage supply will hold steady at its rated voltage while supplying an infinite amount of current to a short-circuit load. This is simply not realistic. Even if the short has a small amount of resistance (as opposed to absolutely zero resistance), no *real* voltage source could arbitrarily supply a huge overload current and maintain steady voltage at the same time. This is primarily due to the internal resistance intrinsic to all electrical power sources, stemming from the inescapable physical properties of the materials they're constructed of:



These internal resistances, small as they may be, turn our simple parallel circuit into a series-parallel combination circuit. Usually, the internal resistances of voltage sources are low enough that they can be safely ignored, but when high currents resulting from shorted components are encountered, their effects become very noticeable. In this case, a shorted R_2 would result in almost all the voltage being dropped across the internal resistance of the battery, with almost no voltage left over for resistors R_1, R_2, and R_3:



	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	low	low	low	low	Volts
I	low	high	low	high	Amps
R	90	0	180	0	Ohms

Shorted resistor

Supply voltage decrease due to voltage drop across internal resistance

Suffice it to say, intentional direct short-circuits across the terminals of any voltage source is a bad idea. Even if the resulting high current (heat, flashes, sparks) causes no harm to people nearby, the voltage source will likely sustain damage, unless it has been specifically designed to handle short-circuits, which most voltage sources are not.

Eventually in this book I will lead you through the analysis of circuits *without the use of any numbers*, that is, analyzing the effects of component failure in a circuit without knowing exactly how many volts the battery produces, how many ohms of resistance is in each resistor, etc. This section serves as an introductory step to that kind of analysis.

Whereas the normal application of Ohm's Law and the rules of series and parallel circuits is performed with numerical quantities (*"quantitative"*), this new kind of analysis without precise

numerical figures is something I like to call *qualitative* analysis. In other words, we will be analyzing the *qualities* of the effects in a circuit rather than the precise *quantities*. The result, for you, will be a much deeper intuitive understanding of electric circuit operation.

- **REVIEW:**

- To determine what would happen in a circuit if a component fails, re-draw that circuit with the equivalent resistance of the failed component in place and re-calculate all values.

- The ability to intuitively determine what will happen to a circuit with any given component fault is a *crucial* skill for any electronics troubleshooter to develop. The best way to learn is to experiment with circuit calculations and real-life circuits, paying close attention to what changes with a fault, what remains the same, and *why*!

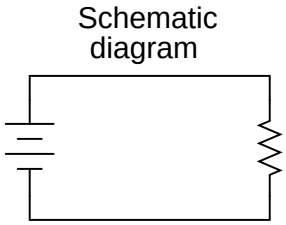
- A *shorted* component is one whose resistance has dramatically decreased.

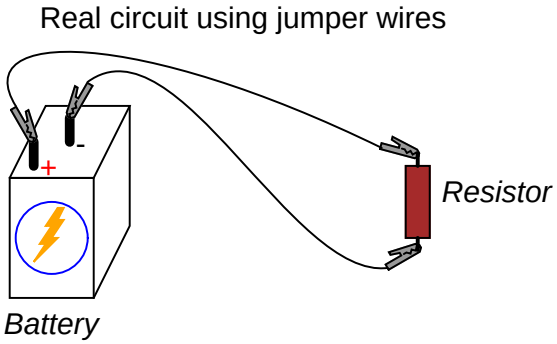
- An *open* component is one whose resistance has dramatically increased. For the record, resistors tend to fail open more often than fail shorted, and they almost never fail unless physically or electrically overstressed (physically abused or overheated).

5.8 Building simple resistor circuits

In the course of learning about electricity, you will want to construct your own circuits using resistors and batteries. Some options are available in this matter of circuit assembly, some easier than others. In this section, I will explore a couple of fabrication techniques that will not only help you build the circuits shown in this chapter, but also more advanced circuits.

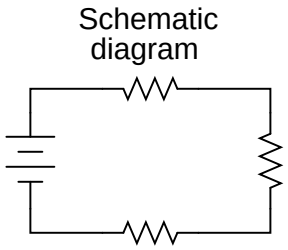
If all we wish to construct is a simple single-battery, single-resistor circuit, we may easily use *alligator clip* jumper wires like this:

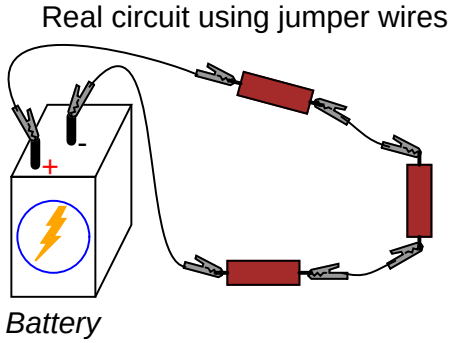




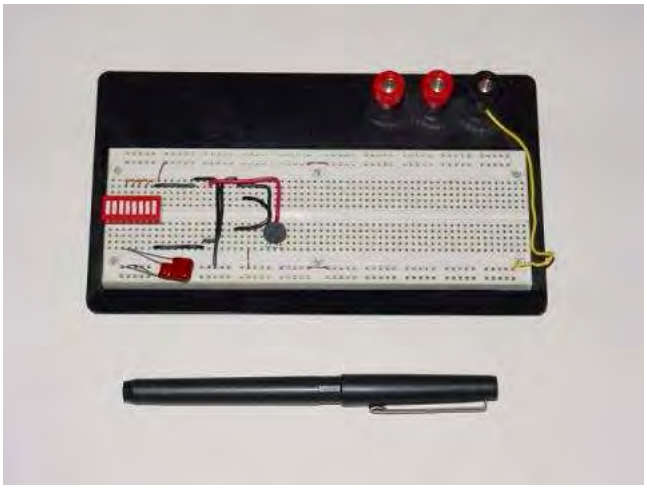
Jumper wires with ”alligator” style spring clips at each end provide a safe and convenient method of electrically joining components together.

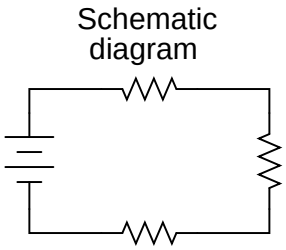
If we wanted to build a simple series circuit with one battery and three resistors, the same ”point-to-point” construction technique using jumper wires could be applied:

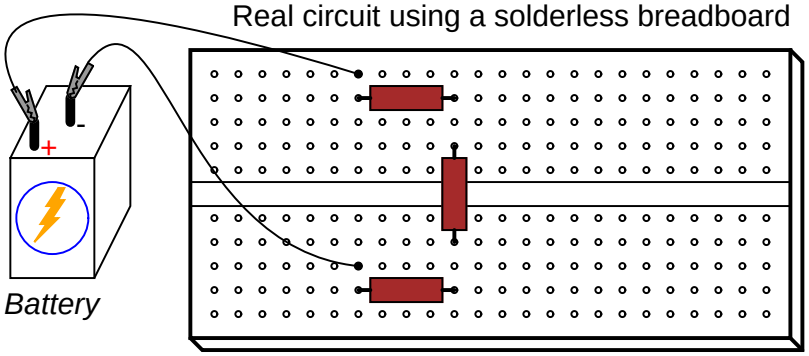




This technique, however, proves impractical for circuits much more complex than this, due to the awkwardness of the jumper wires and the physical fragility of their connections. A more common method of temporary construction for the hobbyist is the *solderless breadboard*, a device made of plastic with hundreds of spring-loaded connection sockets joining the inserted ends of components and/or 22-gauge solid wire pieces. A photograph of a real breadboard is shown here, followed by an illustration showing a simple series circuit constructed on one:

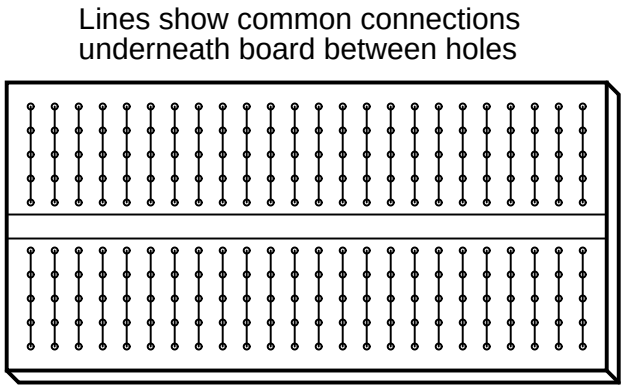




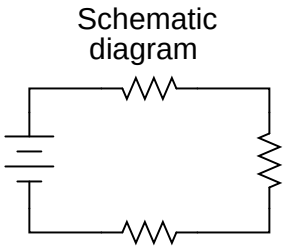


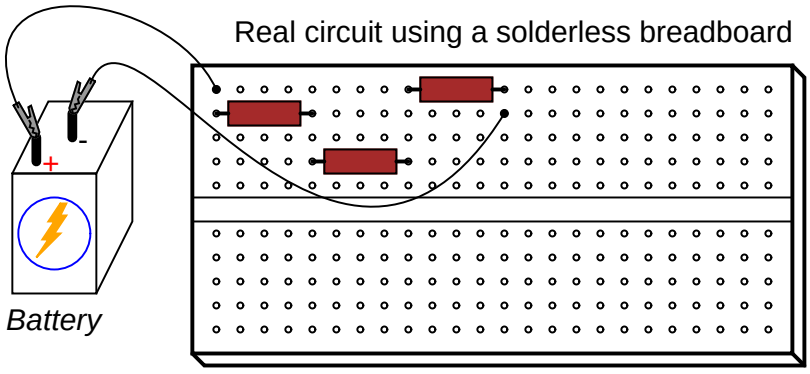
Underneath each hole in the breadboard face is a metal spring clip, designed to grasp any inserted wire or component lead. These metal spring clips are joined underneath the bread-

board face, making connections between inserted leads. The connection pattern joins every five holes along a vertical column (as shown with the long axis of the breadboard situated horizontally):

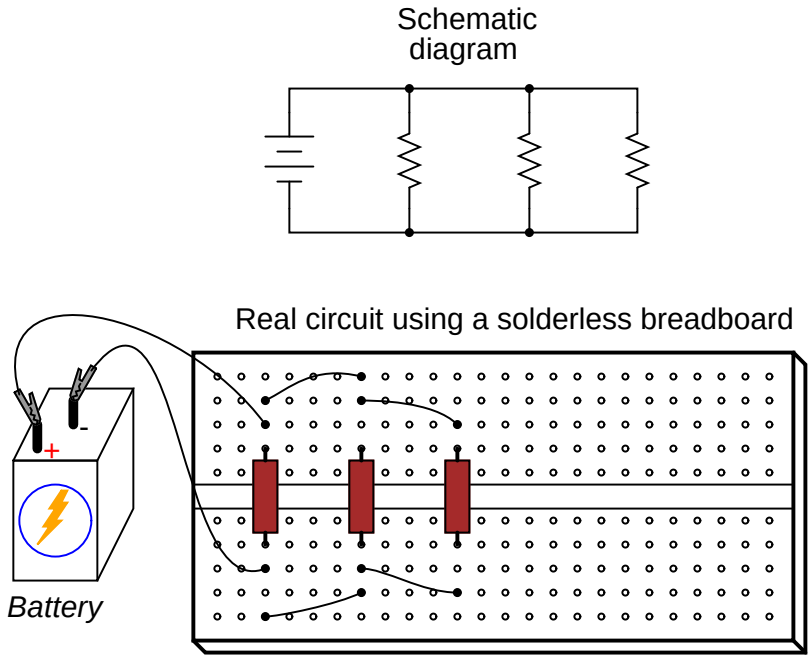


Thus, when a wire or component lead is inserted into a hole on the breadboard, there are four more holes in that column providing potential connection points to other wires and/or component leads. The result is an extremely flexible platform for constructing temporary circuits. For example, the three-resistor circuit just shown could also be built on a breadboard like this:





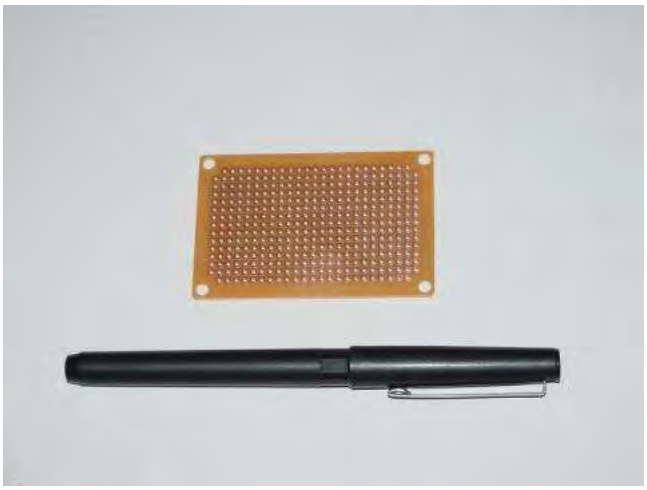
A parallel circuit is also easy to construct on a solderless breadboard:



Breadboards have their limitations, though. First and foremost, they are intended for *temporary* construction only. If you pick up a breadboard, turn it upside-down, and shake it, any components plugged into it are sure to loosen, and may fall out of their respective holes. Also, breadboards are limited to fairly low-current (less than 1 amp) circuits. Those spring clips have a small contact area, and thus cannot support high currents without excessive heating.

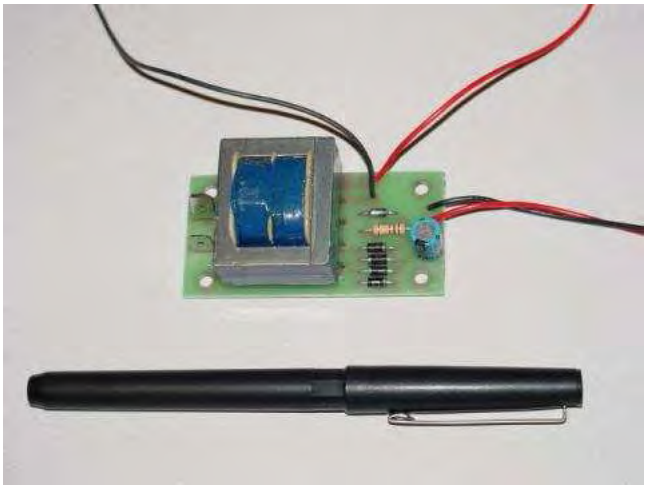
For greater permanence, one might wish to choose soldering or wire-wrapping. These techniques involve fastening the components and wires to some structure providing a secure mechanical location (such as a phenolic or fiberglass board with holes drilled in it, much like a breadboard without the intrinsic spring-clip connections), and then attaching wires to the secured component leads. Soldering is a form of low-temperature welding, using a tin/lead or tin/silver alloy that melts to and electrically bonds copper objects. Wire ends soldered to component leads or to small, copper ring ”pads” bonded on the surface of the circuit board serve to connect the components together. In wire wrapping, a small-gauge wire is tightly wrapped around component leads rather than soldered to leads or copper pads, the tension of the wrapped wire providing a sound mechanical and electrical junction to connect components together.

An example of a *printed circuit board*, or *PCB*, intended for hobbyist use is shown in this photograph:

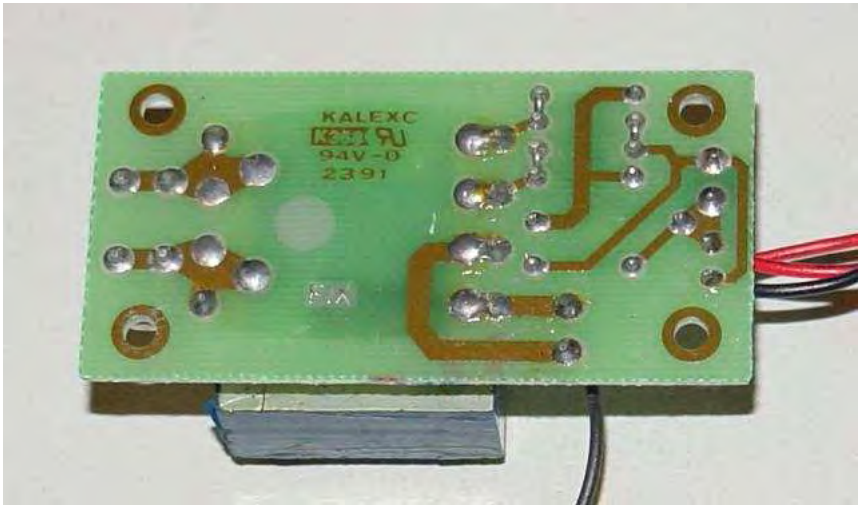


This board appears copper-side-up: the side where all the soldering is done. Each hole is ringed with a small layer of copper metal for bonding to the solder. All holes are independent of each other on this particular board, unlike the holes on a solderless breadboard which are connected together in groups of five. Printed circuit boards with the same 5-hole connection pattern as breadboards can be purchased and used for hobby circuit construction, though.

Production printed circuit boards have *traces* of copper laid down on the phenolic or fiberglass substrate material to form pre-engineered connection pathways which function as wires in a circuit. An example of such a board is shown here, this unit actually a "power supply" circuit designed to take 120 volt alternating current (AC) power from a household wall socket and transform it into low-voltage direct current (DC). A resistor appears on this board, the fifth component counting up from the bottom, located in the middle-right area of the board.

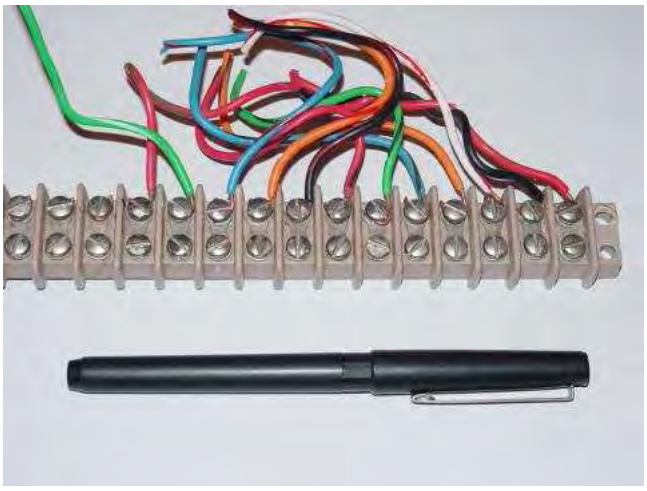


A view of this board's underside reveals the copper "traces" connecting components together, as well as the silver-colored deposits of solder bonding the component leads to those traces:



A soldered or wire-wrapped circuit is considered permanent: that is, it is unlikely to fall apart accidently. However, these construction techniques are sometimes considered *too* permanent. If anyone wishes to replace a component or change the circuit in any substantial way, they must invest a fair amount of time undoing the connections. Also, both soldering and wire-wrapping require specialized tools which may not be immediately available.

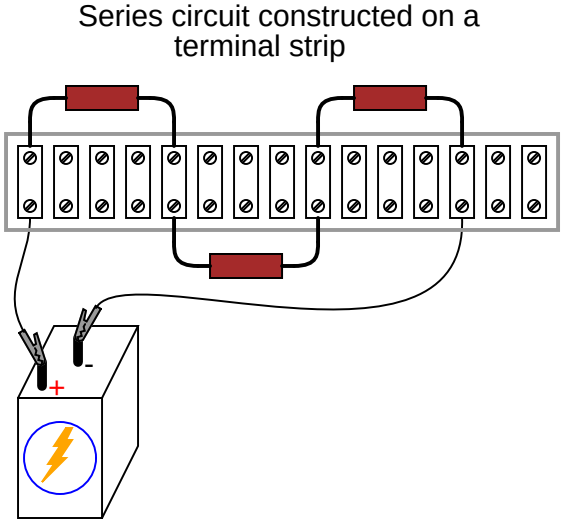
An alternative construction technique used throughout the industrial world is that of the *terminal strip*. Terminal strips, alternatively called *barrier strips* or *terminal blocks*, are comprised of a length of nonconducting material with several small bars of metal embedded within. Each metal bar has at least one machine screw or other fastener under which a wire or component lead may be secured. Multiple wires fastened by one screw are made electrically common to each other, as are wires fastened to multiple screws on the same bar. The following photograph shows one style of terminal strip, with a few wires attached.



Another, smaller terminal strip is shown in this next photograph. This type, sometimes referred to as a ”European” style, has recessed screws to help prevent accidental shorting

between terminals by a screwdriver or other metal object:

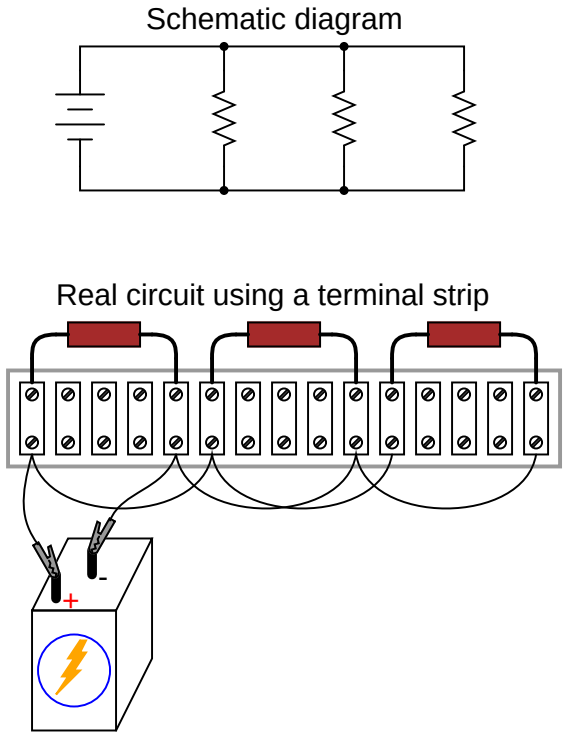
In the following illustration, a single-battery, three-resistor circuit is shown constructed on a terminal strip:



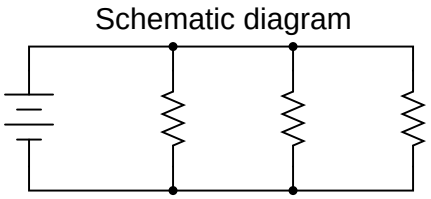
If the terminal strip uses machine screws to hold the component and wire ends, nothing but a screwdriver is needed to secure new connections or break old connections. Some terminal strips use spring-loaded clips – similar to a breadboard's except for increased ruggedness – engaged and disengaged using a screwdriver as a push tool (no twisting involved). The electrical connections established by a terminal strip are quite robust, and are considered suitable for both permanent and temporary construction.

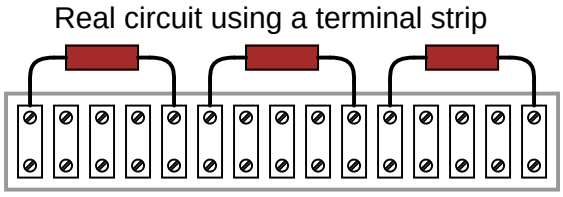
One of the essential skills for anyone interested in electricity and electronics is to be able to "translate" a schematic diagram to a real circuit layout where the components may not be oriented the same way. Schematic diagrams are usually drawn for maximum readability (excepting those few noteworthy examples sketched to create maximum confusion!), but practical

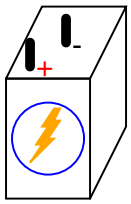
circuit construction often demands a different component orientation. Building simple circuits on terminal strips is one way to develop the spatial-reasoning skill of ”stretching” wires to make the same connection paths. Consider the case of a single-battery, three-resistor parallel circuit constructed on a terminal strip:



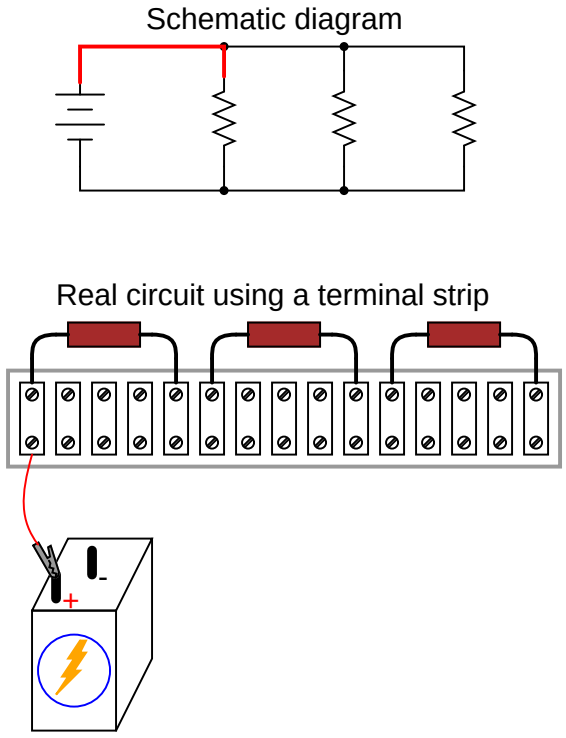
Progressing from a nice, neat, schematic diagram to the real circuit – especially when the resistors to be connected are physically arranged in a *linear* fashion on the terminal strip – is not obvious to many, so I'll outline the process step-by-step. First, start with the clean schematic diagram and all components secured to the terminal strip, with no connecting wires:



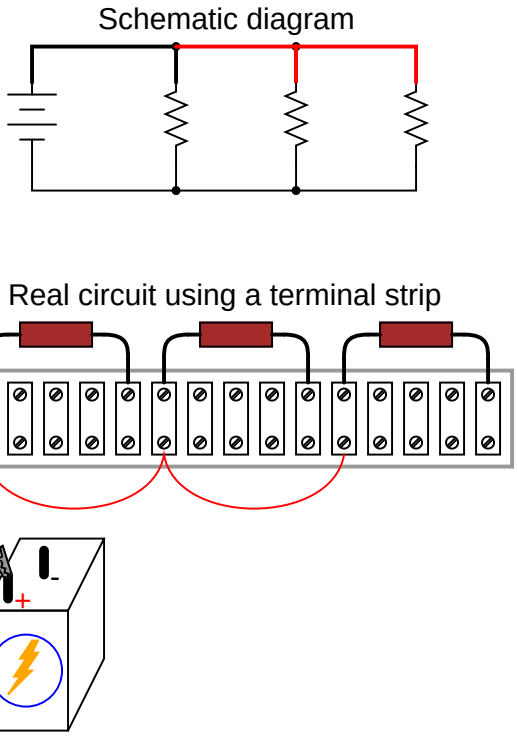




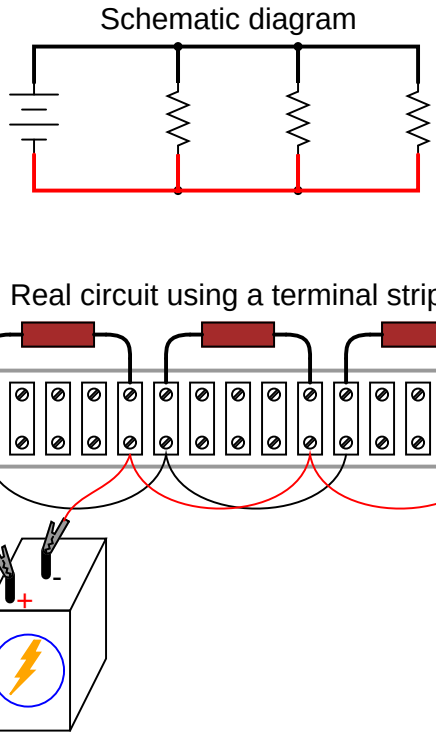
Next, trace the wire connection from one side of the battery to the first component in the schematic, securing a connecting wire between the same two points on the real circuit. I find it helpful to over-draw the schematic's wire with another line to indicate what connections I've made in real life:



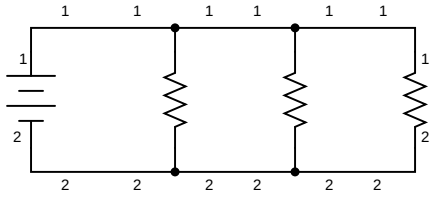
Continue this process, wire by wire, until all connections in the schematic diagram have been accounted for. It might be helpful to regard common wires in a SPICE-like fashion: make all connections to a common wire in the circuit as one step, making sure each and every component with a connection to that wire actually has a connection to that wire before proceeding to the next. For the next step, I'll show how the top sides of the remaining two resistors are connected together, being common with the wire secured in the previous step:



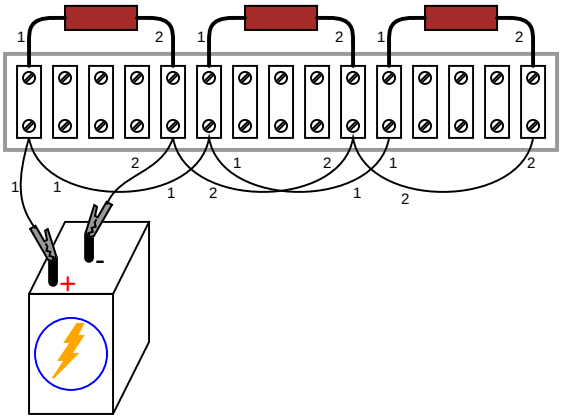
With the top sides of all resistors (as shown in the schematic) connected together, and to the battery's positive (+) terminal, all we have to do now is connect the bottom sides together and to the other side of the battery:



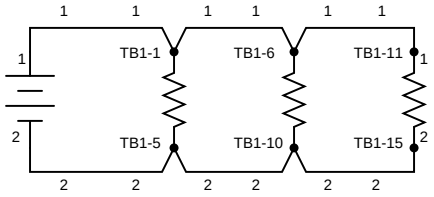
Typically in industry, all wires are labeled with number tags, and electrically common wires bear the same tag number, just as they do in a SPICE simulation. In this case, we could label the wires 1 and 2:



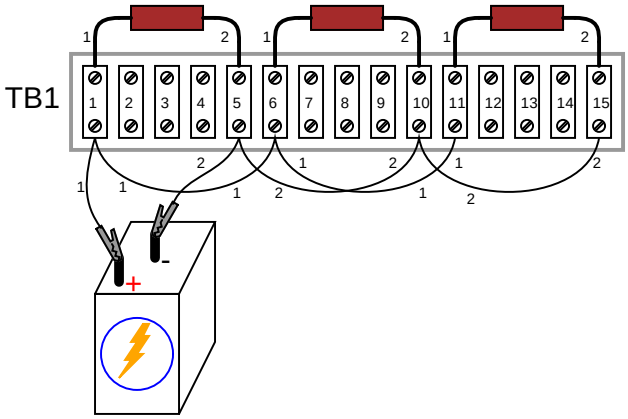
Common wire numbers representing electrically common points



Another industrial convention is to modify the schematic diagram slightly so as to indicate actual wire connection points on the terminal strip. This demands a labeling system for the strip itself: a "TB" number (terminal block number) for the strip, followed by another number representing each metal bar on the strip.



Terminal strip bars labeled and connection points referenced in diagram



This way, the schematic may be used as a ”map” to locate points in a real circuit, regardless of how tangled and complex the connecting wiring may appear to the eyes. This may seem excessive for the simple, three-resistor circuit shown here, but such detail is absolutely necessary for construction and maintenance of large circuits, especially when those circuits may span a great physical distance, using more than one terminal strip located in more than one panel or box.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *solderless breadboard* is a device used to quickly assemble temporary circuits by plugging wires and components into electrically common spring-clips arranged underneath rows of holes in a plastic board.
- *Soldering* is a low-temperature welding process utilizing a lead/tin or tin/silver alloy to bond wires and component leads together, usually with the components secured to a fiberglass board.
- *Wire-wrapping* is an alternative to soldering, involving small-gauge wire tightly wrapped around component leads rather than a welded joint to connect components together.
- A *terminal strip*, also known as a *barrier strip* or *terminal block* is another device used to mount components and wires to build circuits. Screw terminals or heavy spring clips attached to metal bars provide connection points for the wire ends and component leads, these metal bars mounted separately to a piece of nonconducting material such as plastic, bakelite, or ceramic.

5.9 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Ron LaPlante (October 1998): helped create ”table” method of series and parallel circuit analysis.

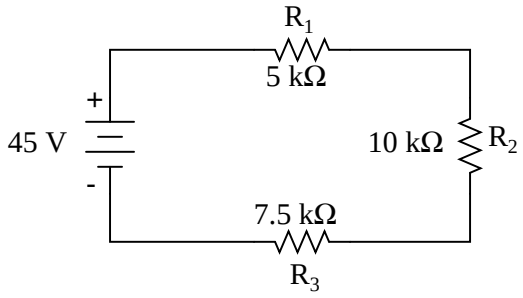
Chapter 6

DIVIDER CIRCUITS AND KIRCHHOFF'S LAWS

Contents

6.1 Voltage divider circuits

Let's analyze a simple series circuit, determining the voltage drops across individual resistors:



	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E				45	Volts
I					Amps
R	5k	10k	7.5k		Ohms

From the given values of individual resistances, we can determine a total circuit resistance, knowing that resistances add in series:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E				45	Volts
I					Amps
R	5k	10k	7.5k	**22.5k**	Ohms

From here, we can use Ohm's Law (I=E/R) to determine the total current, which we know will be the same as each resistor current, currents being equal in all parts of a series circuit:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E				45	Volts
I	**2m**	**2m**	**2m**	**2m**	Amps
R	5k	10k	7.5k	22.5k	Ohms

Now, knowing that the circuit current is 2 mA, we can use Ohm's Law (E=IR) to calculate voltage across each resistor:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	**10**	**20**	**15**	45	Volts
I	2m	2m	2m	2m	Amps
R	5k	10k	7.5k	22.5k	Ohms

It should be apparent that the voltage drop across each resistor is proportional to its resistance, given that the current is the same through all resistors. Notice how the voltage across R_2 is double that of the voltage across R_1, just as the resistance of R_2 is double that of R_1.

If we were to change the total voltage, we would find this proportionality of voltage drops remains constant:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	40	80	60	180	Volts
I	8m	8m	8m	8m	Amps
R	5k	10k	7.5k	22.5k	Ohms

The voltage across R_2 is still exactly twice that of R_1's drop, despite the fact that the source voltage has changed. The proportionality of voltage drops (ratio of one to another) is strictly a

function of resistance values.

With a little more observation, it becomes apparent that the voltage drop across each resistor is also a fixed proportion of the supply voltage. The voltage across R_1, for example, was 10 volts when the battery supply was 45 volts. When the battery voltage was increased to 180 volts (4 times as much), the voltage drop across R_1 also increased by a factor of 4 (from 10 to 40 volts). The *ratio* between R_1's voltage drop and total voltage, however, did not change:

$$\frac{E_{R1}}{E_{total}} = \frac{10\ V}{45\ V} = \frac{40\ V}{180\ V} = 0.22222$$

Likewise, none of the other voltage drop ratios changed with the increased supply voltage either:

$$\frac{E_{R2}}{E_{total}} = \frac{20\ V}{45\ V} = \frac{80\ V}{180\ V} = 0.44444$$

$$\frac{E_{R3}}{E_{total}} = \frac{15\ V}{45\ V} = \frac{60\ V}{180\ V} = 0.33333$$

For this reason a series circuit is often called a *voltage divider* for its ability to proportion – or divide – the total voltage into fractional portions of constant ratio. With a little bit of algebra, we can derive a formula for determining series resistor voltage drop given nothing more than total voltage, individual resistance, and total resistance:

Voltage drop across *any* resistor $E_n = I_n R_n$

Current in a series circuit $I_{total} = \frac{E_{total}}{R_{total}}$

. . . *Substituting* $\frac{E_{total}}{R_{total}}$ *for* I_n *in the first equation* . . .

Voltage drop across any *series* resistor $E_n = \frac{E_{total}}{R_{total}} R_n$

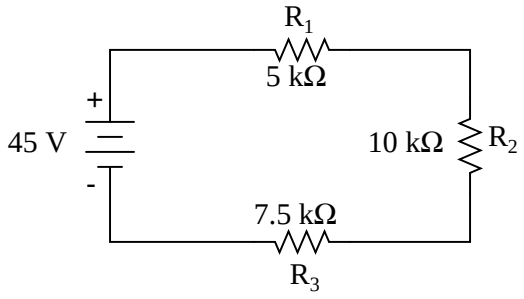
. . . or . . .

$$\mathbf{E_n = E_{total} \frac{R_n}{R_{total}}}$$

The ratio of individual resistance to total resistance is the same as the ratio of individual voltage drop to total supply voltage in a voltage divider circuit. This is known as the *voltage divider formula*, and it is a short-cut method for determining voltage drop in a series circuit

without going through the current calculation(s) of Ohm's Law.

Using this formula, we can re-analyze the example circuit's voltage drops in fewer steps:

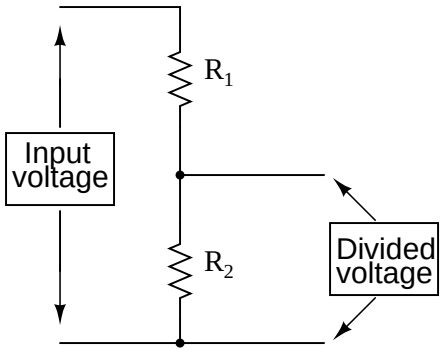


$$E_{R1} = 45\ V\ \frac{5\ k\Omega}{22.5\ k\Omega} = 10\ V$$

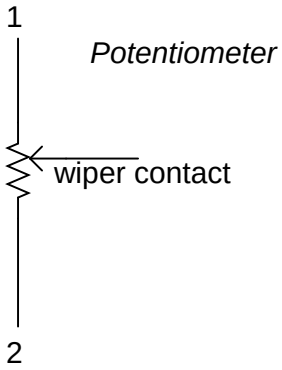
$$E_{R2} = 45\ V\ \frac{10\ k\Omega}{22.5\ k\Omega} = 20\ V$$

$$E_{R3} = 45\ V\ \frac{7.5\ k\Omega}{22.5\ k\Omega} = 15\ V$$

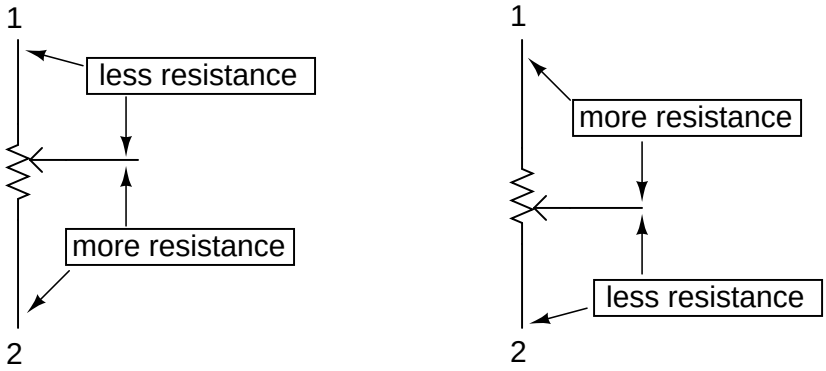
Voltage dividers find wide application in electric meter circuits, where specific combinations of series resistors are used to "divide" a voltage into precise proportions as part of a voltage measurement device.



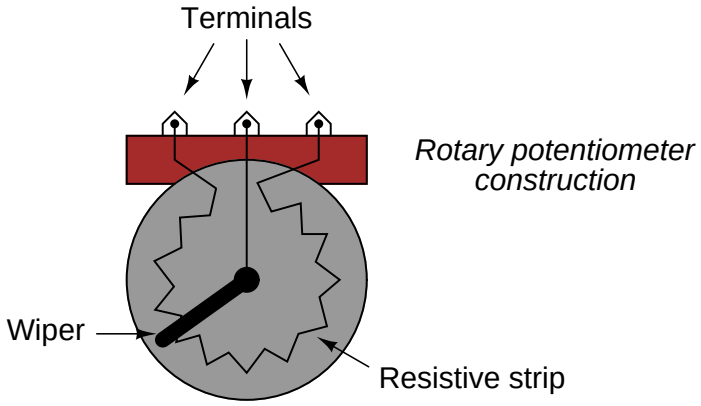
One device frequently used as a voltage-dividing component is the *potentiometer*, which is a resistor with a movable element positioned by a manual knob or lever. The movable element, typically called a *wiper*, makes contact with a resistive strip of material (commonly called the *slidewire* if made of resistive metal wire) at any point selected by the manual control:



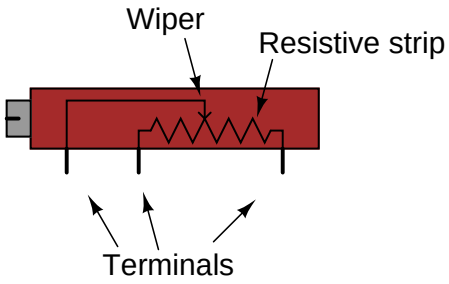
The wiper contact is the left-facing arrow symbol drawn in the middle of the vertical resistor element. As it is moved up, it contacts the resistive strip closer to terminal 1 and further away from terminal 2, lowering resistance to terminal 1 and raising resistance to terminal 2. As it is moved down, the opposite effect results. The resistance as measured between terminals 1 and 2 is constant for any wiper position.



Shown here are internal illustrations of two potentiometer types, rotary and linear:

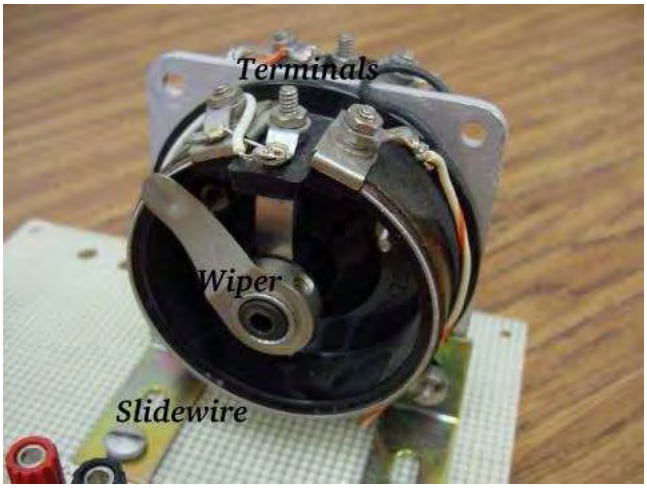


Linear potentiometer construction



Some linear potentiometers are actuated by straight-line motion of a lever or slide button. Others, like the one depicted in the previous illustration, are actuated by a turn-screw for fine adjustment ability. The latter units are sometimes referred to as *trimpots*, because they work well for applications requiring a variable resistance to be "trimmed" to some precise value. It should be noted that not all linear potentiometers have the same terminal assignments as shown in this illustration. With some, the wiper terminal is in the middle, between the two end terminals.

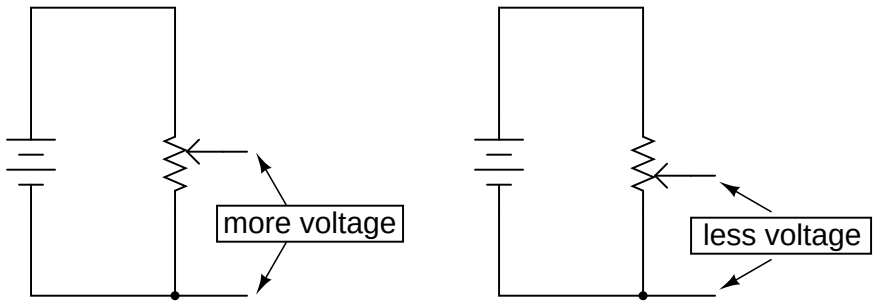
The following photograph shows a real, rotary potentiometer with exposed wiper and slidewire for easy viewing. The shaft which moves the wiper has been turned almost fully clockwise so that the wiper is nearly touching the left terminal end of the slidewire:



Here is the same potentiometer with the wiper shaft moved almost to the full-counterclockwise position, so that the wiper is near the other extreme end of travel:

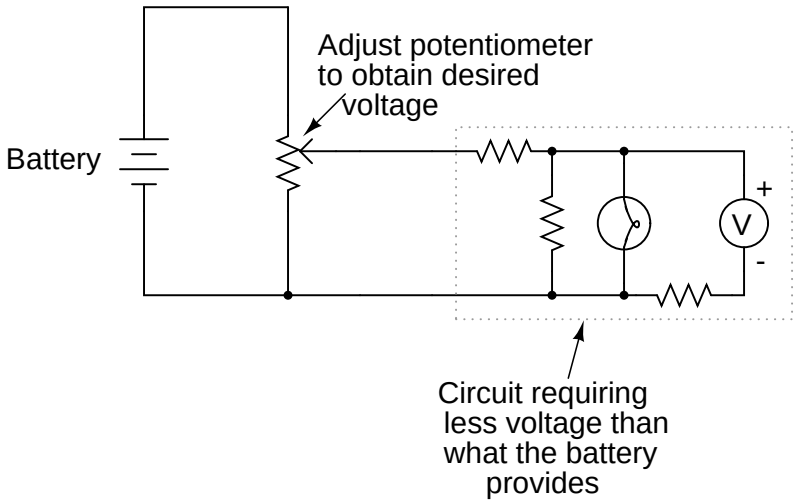
If a constant voltage is applied between the outer terminals (across the length of the slidewire), the wiper position will tap off a fraction of the applied voltage, measurable between the wiper contact and either of the other two terminals. The fractional value depends entirely on the physical position of the wiper:

Using a potentiometer as a variable voltage divider



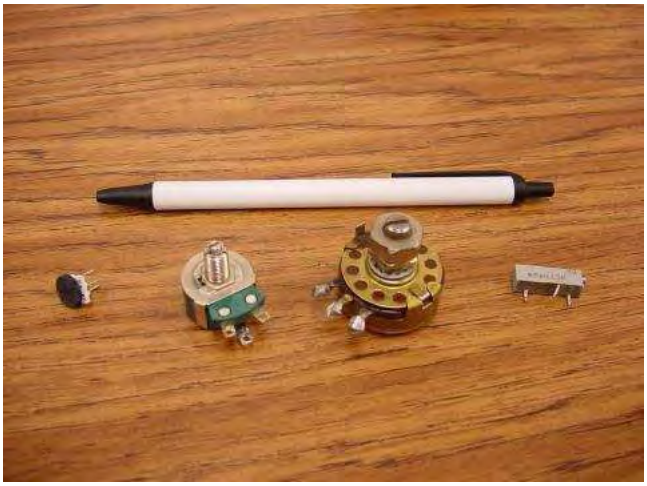
Just like the fixed voltage divider, the potentiometer's voltage *division ratio* is strictly a function of resistance and not of the magnitude of applied voltage. In other words, if the potentiometer knob or lever is moved to the 50 percent (exact center) position, the voltage dropped between wiper and either outside terminal would be exactly 1/2 of the applied voltage, no matter what that voltage happens to be, or what the end-to-end resistance of the potentiometer is. In other words, a potentiometer functions as a variable voltage divider where the voltage division ratio is set by wiper position.

This application of the potentiometer is a very useful means of obtaining a variable voltage from a fixed-voltage source such as a battery. If a circuit you're building requires a certain amount of voltage that is less than the value of an available battery's voltage, you may connect the outer terminals of a potentiometer across that battery and "dial up" whatever voltage you need between the potentiometer wiper and one of the outer terminals for use in your circuit:



When used in this manner, the name *potentiometer* makes perfect sense: they *meter* (control) the *potential* (voltage) applied across them by creating a variable voltage-divider ratio. This use of the three-terminal potentiometer as a variable voltage divider is very popular in circuit design.

Shown here are several small potentiometers of the kind commonly used in consumer electronic equipment and by hobbyists and students in constructing circuits:



The smaller units on the very left and very right are designed to plug into a solderless breadboard or be soldered into a printed circuit board. The middle units are designed to be mounted on a flat panel with wires soldered to each of the three terminals.

Here are three more potentiometers, more specialized than the set just shown:

The large "Helipot" unit is a laboratory potentiometer designed for quick and easy connection to a circuit. The unit in the lower-left corner of the photograph is the same type of potentiometer, just without a case or 10-turn counting dial. Both of these potentiometers are precision units, using multi-turn helical-track resistance strips and wiper mechanisms for making small adjustments. The unit on the lower-right is a panel-mount potentiometer, designed for rough service in industrial applications.

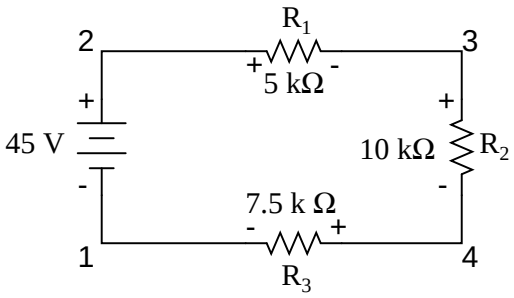
- **REVIEW:**

- Series circuits proportion, or *divide*, the total supply voltage among individual voltage drops, the proportions being strictly dependent upon resistances: $E_{Rn} = E_{Total} (R_n / R_{Total})$

- A potentiometer is a variable-resistance component with three connection points, frequently used as an adjustable voltage divider.

6.2 Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (KVL)

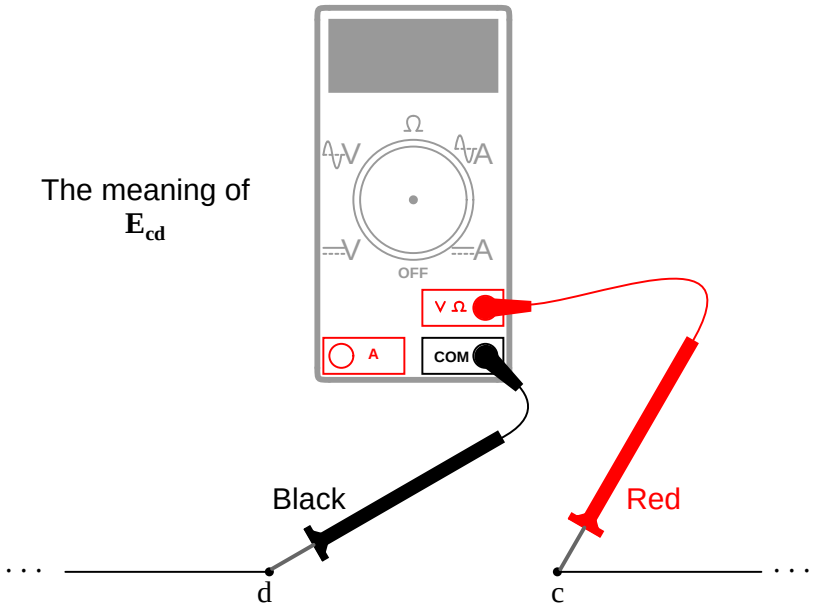
Let's take another look at our example series circuit, this time numbering the points in the circuit for voltage reference:



If we were to connect a voltmeter between points 2 and 1, red test lead to point 2 and black test lead to point 1, the meter would register +45 volts. Typically the "+" sign is not shown, but rather implied, for positive readings in digital meter displays. However, for this lesson the polarity of the voltage reading is very important and so I will show positive numbers explicitly:

$E_{2\text{-}1} = +45$ V

When a voltage is specified with a double subscript (the characters "2-1" in the notation "E_{2-1}"), it means the voltage at the first point (2) as measured in reference to the second point (1). A voltage specified as "E_{cg}" would mean the voltage as indicated by a digital meter with the red test lead on point "c" and the black test lead on point "g": the voltage at "c" in reference to "g".

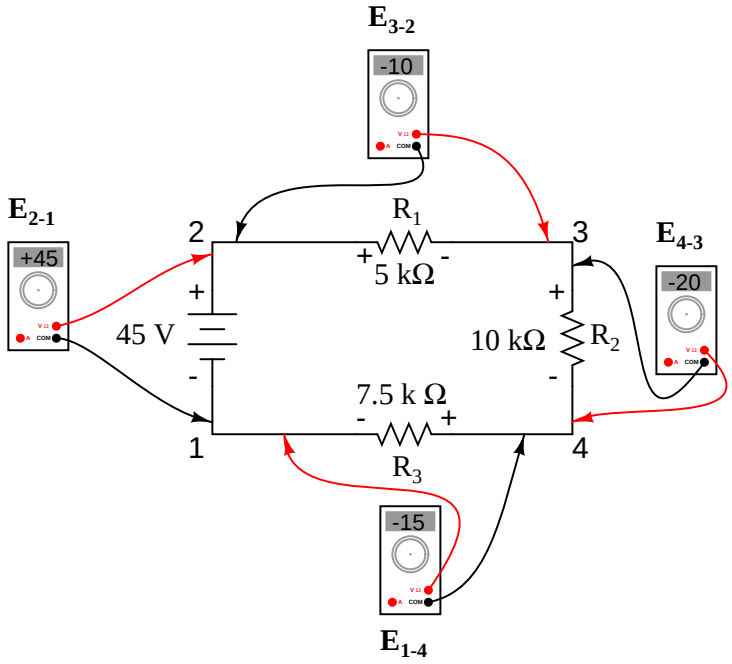


If we were to take that same voltmeter and measure the voltage drop across each resistor, stepping around the circuit in a clockwise direction with the red test lead of our meter on the point ahead and the black test lead on the point behind, we would obtain the following readings:

E_{3-2} = -10 V

E_{4-3} = -20 V

E_{1-4} = -15 V



We should already be familiar with the general principle for series circuits stating that individual voltage drops add up to the total applied voltage, but measuring voltage drops in this manner and paying attention to the polarity (mathematical sign) of the readings reveals another facet of this principle: that the voltages measured as such all add up to zero:

E_{2-1} = +45 V *voltage from point* **2** *to point* **1**
E_{3-2} = -10 V *voltage from point* **3** *to point* **2**
E_{4-3} = -20 V *voltage from point* **4** *to point* **3**
+ E_{1-4} = -15 V *voltage from point* **1** *to point* **4**
0 V

This principle is known as *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law* (discovered in 1847 by Gustav R. Kirchhoff, a German physicist), and it can be stated as such:

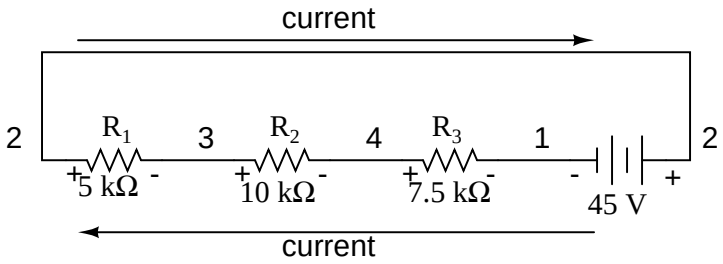
"The algebraic sum of all voltages in a loop must equal zero"

By *algebraic*, I mean accounting for signs (polarities) as well as magnitudes. By *loop*, I mean any path traced from one point in a circuit around to other points in that circuit, and finally back to the initial point. In the above example the loop was formed by following points

in this order: 1-2-3-4-1. It doesn't matter which point we start at or which direction we proceed in tracing the loop; the voltage sum will still equal zero. To demonstrate, we can tally up the voltages in loop 3-2-1-4-3 of the same circuit:

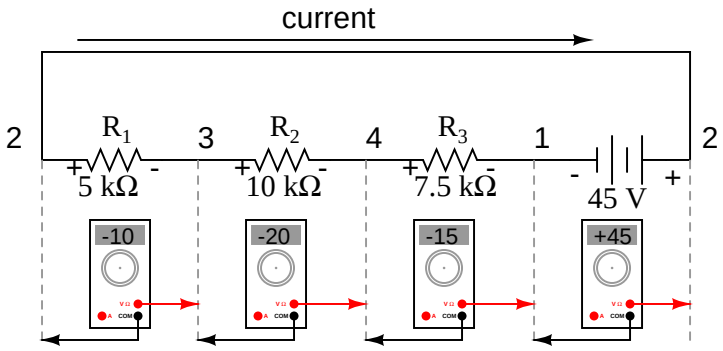
$E_{2\text{-}3} = +10$ V *voltage from point* **2** *to point* **3**
$E_{1\text{-}2} = -45$ V *voltage from point* **1** *to point* **2**
$E_{4\text{-}1} = +15$ V *voltage from point* **4** *to point* **1**
$+ E_{3\text{-}4} = +20$ V *voltage from point* **3** *to point* **4**
0 V

This may make more sense if we re-draw our example series circuit so that all components are represented in a straight line:



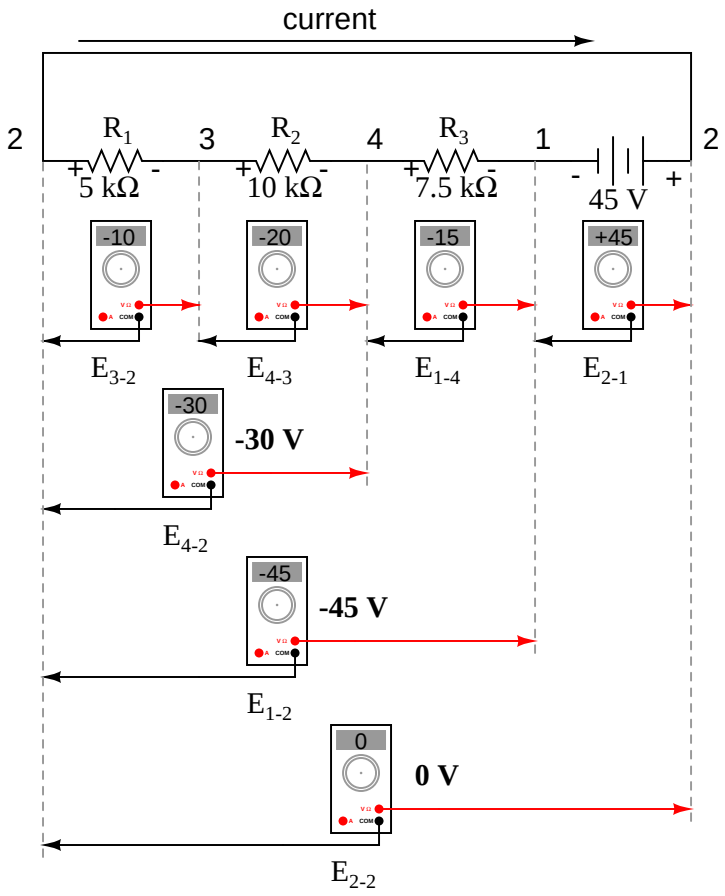
It's still the same series circuit, just with the components arranged in a different form. Notice the polarities of the resistor voltage drops with respect to the battery: the battery's voltage is negative on the left and positive on the right, whereas all the resistor voltage drops are oriented the other way: positive on the left and negative on the right. This is because the resistors are *resisting* the flow of electrons being pushed by the battery. In other words, the "push" exerted by the resistors *against* the flow of electrons *must* be in a direction opposite the source of electromotive force.

Here we see what a digital voltmeter would indicate across each component in this circuit, black lead on the left and red lead on the right, as laid out in horizontal fashion:



If we were to take that same voltmeter and read voltage across combinations of components,

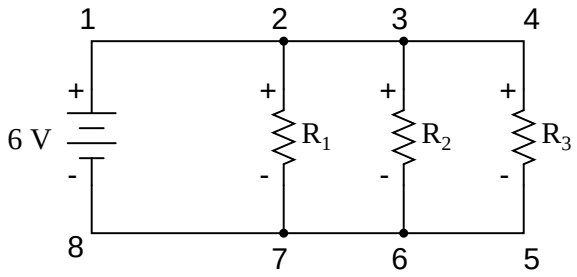
starting with only R_1 on the left and progressing across the whole string of components, we will see how the voltages add algebraically (to zero):



The fact that series voltages add up should be no mystery, but we notice that the *polarity* of these voltages makes a lot of difference in how the figures add. While reading voltage across R_1, R_1−−R_2, and R_1−−R_2−−R_3 (I'm using a "double-dash" symbol "−−" to represent the *series* connection between resistors R_1, R_2, and R_3), we see how the voltages measure successively larger (albeit negative) magnitudes, because the polarities of the individual voltage drops are in the same orientation (positive left, negative right). The sum of the voltage drops across R_1, R_2, and R_3 equals 45 volts, which is the same as the battery's output, except that the battery's polarity is opposite that of the resistor voltage drops (negative left, positive right), so we end up with 0 volts measured across the whole string of components.

That we should end up with exactly 0 volts across the whole string should be no mystery, either. Looking at the circuit, we can see that the far left of the string (left side of R_1: point number 2) is directly connected to the far right of the string (right side of battery: point number 2), as necessary to complete the circuit. Since these two points are directly connected, they are *electrically common* to each other. And, as such, the voltage between those two electrically common points *must* be zero.

Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (sometimes denoted as *KVL* for short) will work for *any* circuit configuration at all, not just simple series. Note how it works for this parallel circuit:



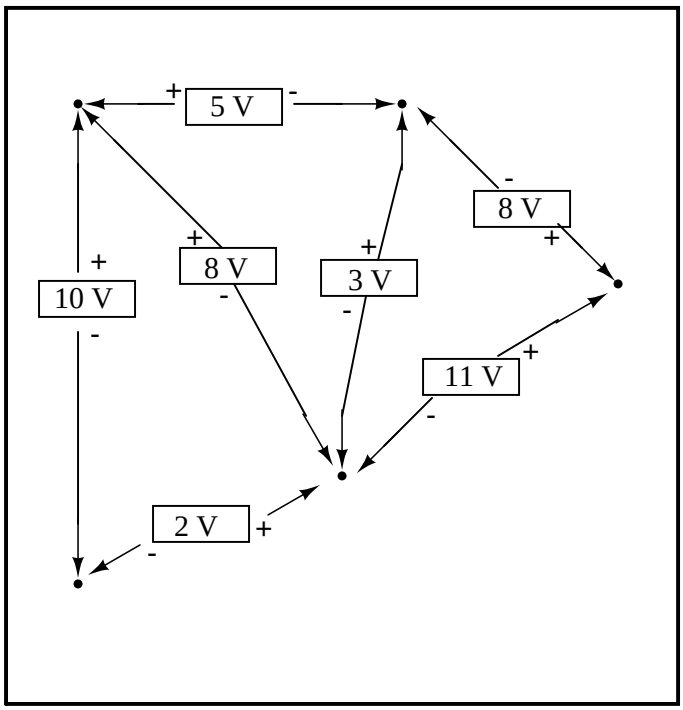
Being a parallel circuit, the voltage across every resistor is the same as the supply voltage: 6 volts. Tallying up voltages around loop 2-3-4-5-6-7-2, we get:

$E_{3\text{-}2} = 0$ V *voltage from point* **3** *to point* **2**
$E_{4\text{-}3} = 0$ V *voltage from point* **4** *to point* **3**
$E_{5\text{-}4} = -6$ V *voltage from point* **5** *to point* **4**
$E_{6\text{-}5} = 0$ V *voltage from point* **6** *to point* **5**
$E_{7\text{-}6} = 0$ V *voltage from point* **7** *to point* **6**
$+ E_{2\text{-}7} = +6$ V *voltage from point* **2** *to point* **7**

$E_{2\text{-}2} = 0$ V

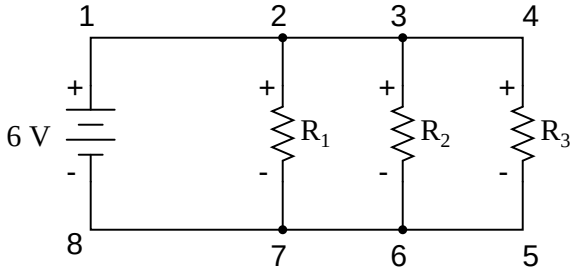
Note how I label the final (sum) voltage as E_{2-2}. Since we began our loop-stepping sequence at point 2 and ended at point 2, the algebraic sum of those voltages will be the same as the voltage measured between the same point (E_{2-2}), which of course must be zero.

The fact that this circuit is parallel instead of series has nothing to do with the validity of Kirchhoff's Voltage Law. For that matter, the circuit could be a "black box" – its component configuration completely hidden from our view, with only a set of exposed terminals for us to measure voltage between – and KVL would still hold true:



Try any order of steps from any terminal in the above diagram, stepping around back to the original terminal, and you'll find that the algebraic sum of the voltages *always* equals zero.

Furthermore, the "loop" we trace for KVL doesn't even have to be a real current path in the closed-circuit sense of the word. All we have to do to comply with KVL is to begin and end at the same point in the circuit, tallying voltage drops and polarities as we go between the next and the last point. Consider this absurd example, tracing "loop" 2-3-6-3-2 in the same parallel resistor circuit:



$E_{3\text{-}2} = 0$ V *voltage from point* **3** *to point* **2**

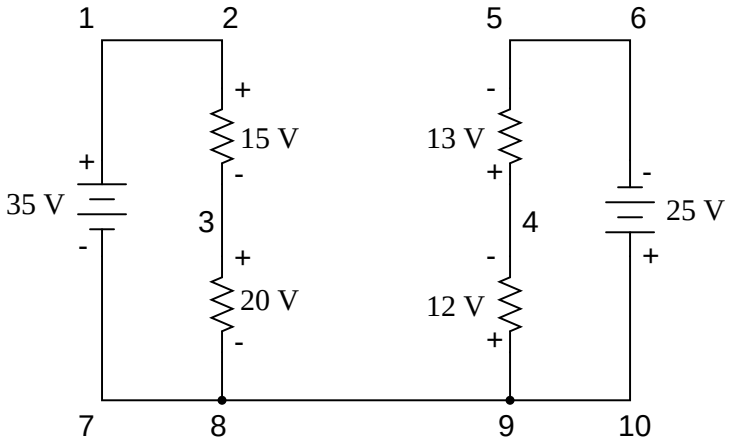
$E_{6\text{-}3} = -6$ V *voltage from point* **6** *to point* **3**

$E_{3\text{-}6} = +6$ V *voltage from point* **3** *to point* **6**

$+ \; E_{2\text{-}3} = 0$ V *voltage from point* **2** *to point* **3**

$E_{2\text{-}2} = 0$ V

KVL can be used to determine an unknown voltage in a complex circuit, where all other voltages around a particular "loop" are known. Take the following complex circuit (actually two series circuits joined by a single wire at the bottom) as an example:



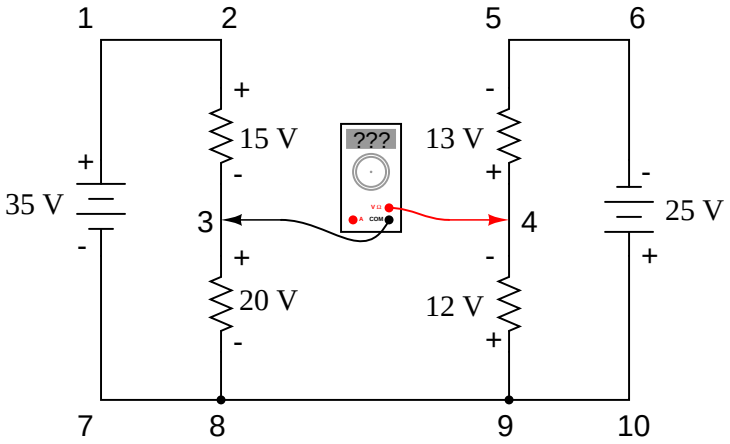
To make the problem simpler, I've omitted resistance values and simply given voltage drops across each resistor. The two series circuits share a common wire between them (wire 7-8-9-10), making voltage measurements *between* the two circuits possible. If we wanted to determine the voltage between points 4 and 3, we could set up a KVL equation with the voltage between those points as the unknown:

$$E_{4\text{-}3} + E_{9\text{-}4} + E_{8\text{-}9} + E_{3\text{-}8} = 0$$

$$E_{4\text{-}3} + 12 + 0 + 20 = 0$$

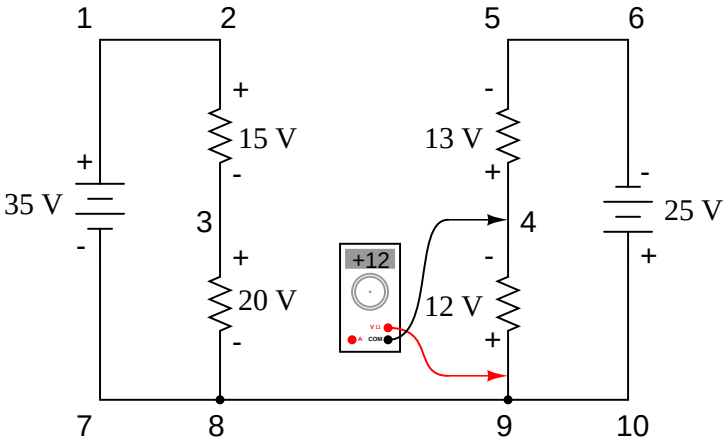
$$E_{4\text{-}3} + 32 = 0$$

$$E_{4\text{-}3} = -32 \text{ V}$$



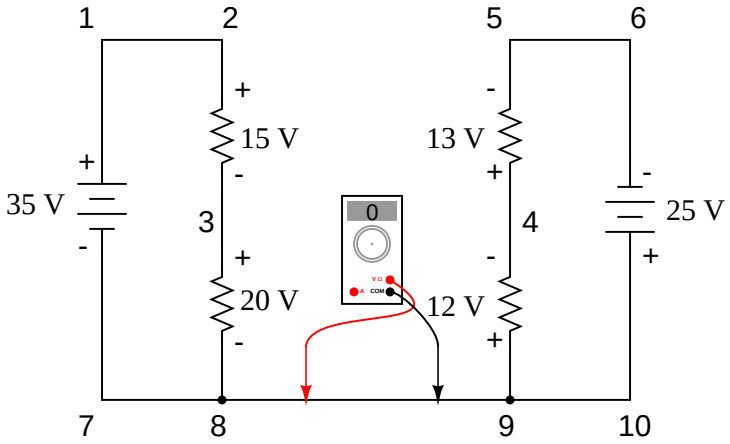
Measuring voltage from point 4 to point 3 (unknown amount)

$E_{4\text{-}3}$



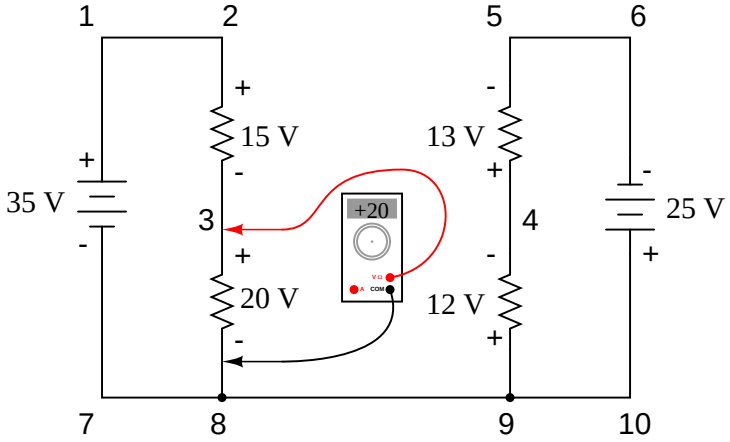
Measuring voltage from point 9 to point 4 (+12 volts)

$E_{4\text{-}3} + 12$



Measuring voltage from point 8 to point 9 (0 volts)

$$E_{4\text{-}3} + 12 + 0$$



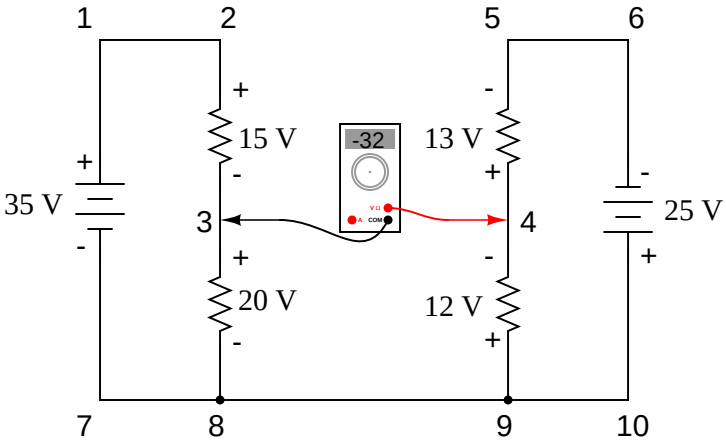
Measuring voltage from point 3 to point 8 (+20 volts)

$$E_{4\text{-}3} + 12 + 0 + 20 = 0$$

Stepping around the loop 3-4-9-8-3, we write the voltage drop figures as a digital voltmeter would register them, measuring with the red test lead on the point ahead and black test lead on the point behind as we progress around the loop. Therefore, the voltage from point 9 to point 4 is a positive (+) 12 volts because the "red lead" is on point 9 and the "black lead" is on point 4. The voltage from point 3 to point 8 is a positive (+) 20 volts because the "red lead" is on point 3 and the "black lead" is on point 8. The voltage from point 8 to point 9 is zero, of course, because those two points are electrically common.

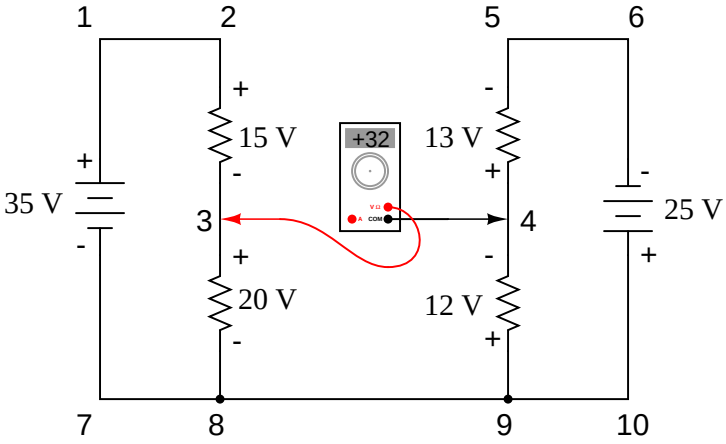
Our final answer for the voltage from point 4 to point 3 is a negative (-) 32 volts, telling us that point 3 is actually positive with respect to point 4, precisely what a digital voltmeter

would indicate with the red lead on point 4 and the black lead on point 3:



$E_{4\text{-}3}$ = -32

In other words, the initial placement of our "meter leads" in this KVL problem was "backwards." Had we generated our KVL equation starting with E_{3-4} instead of E_{4-3}, stepping around the same loop with the opposite meter lead orientation, the final answer would have been E_{3-4} = +32 volts:



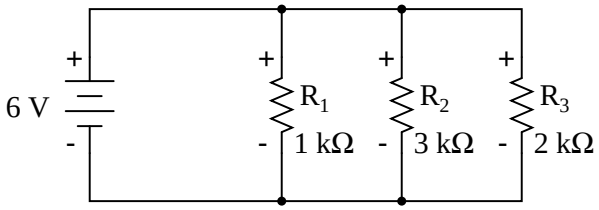
$E_{3\text{-}4}$ = +32

It is important to realize that neither approach is "wrong." In both cases, we arrive at the correct assessment of voltage between the two points, 3 and 4: point 3 is positive with respect to point 4, and the voltage between them is 32 volts.

- **REVIEW:**
- Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (KVL): *"The algebraic sum of all voltages in a loop must equal zero"*

6.3 Current divider circuits

Let's analyze a simple parallel circuit, determining the branch currents through individual resistors:



Knowing that voltages across all components in a parallel circuit are the same, we can fill in our voltage/current/resistance table with 6 volts across the top row:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	6	6	6	6	Volts
I					Amps
R	1k	3k	2k		Ohms

Using Ohm's Law (I=E/R) we can calculate each branch current:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	6	6	6	6	Volts
I	**6m**	**2m**	**3m**		Amps
R	1k	3k	2k		Ohms

Knowing that branch currents add up in parallel circuits to equal the total current, we can arrive at total current by summing 6 mA, 2 mA, and 3 mA:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	6	6	6	6	Volts
I	6m	2m	3m	**11m**	Amps
R	1k	3k	2k		Ohms

The final step, of course, is to figure total resistance. This can be done with Ohm's Law (R=E/I) in the "total" column, or with the parallel resistance formula from individual resistances. Either way, we'll get the same answer:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	6	6	6	6	Volts
I	6m	2m	3m	11m	Amps
R	1k	3k	2k	**545.45**	Ohms

Once again, it should be apparent that the current through each resistor is related to its resistance, given that the voltage across all resistors is the same. Rather than being directly proportional, the relationship here is one of inverse proportion. For example, the current through R_1 is twice as much as the current through R_3, which has twice the resistance of R_1.

If we were to change the supply voltage of this circuit, we find that (surprise!) these proportional ratios do not change:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	24	24	24	24	Volts
I	24m	8m	12m	44m	Amps
R	1k	3k	2k	545.45	Ohms

The current through R_1 is still exactly twice that of R_3, despite the fact that the source voltage has changed. The proportionality between different branch currents is strictly a function of resistance.

Also reminiscent of voltage dividers is the fact that branch currents are fixed proportions of the total current. Despite the fourfold increase in supply voltage, the ratio between any branch current and the total current remains unchanged:

$$\frac{I_{R1}}{I_{total}} = \frac{6\text{ mA}}{11\text{ mA}} = \frac{24\text{ mA}}{44\text{ mA}} = 0.54545$$

$$\frac{I_{R2}}{I_{total}} = \frac{2\text{ mA}}{11\text{ mA}} = \frac{8\text{ mA}}{44\text{ mA}} = 0.18182$$

$$\frac{I_{R3}}{I_{total}} = \frac{3\text{ mA}}{11\text{ mA}} = \frac{12\text{ mA}}{44\text{ mA}} = 0.27273$$

For this reason a parallel circuit is often called a *current divider* for its ability to proportion – or divide – the total current into fractional parts. With a little bit of algebra, we can derive a formula for determining parallel resistor current given nothing more than total current, individual resistance, and total resistance:

Current through *any* resistor $$I_n = \frac{E_n}{R_n}$$

Voltage in a parallel circuit $$E_{total} = E_n = I_{total} R_{total}$$

. . . Substituting $I_{total} R_{total}$ *for* E_n *in the first equation . . .*

Current through any *parallel* resistor $$I_n = \frac{I_{total} R_{total}}{R_n}$$

. . . or . . .

$$\boxed{\mathbf{I_n = I_{total} \frac{R_{total}}{R_n}}}$$

The ratio of total resistance to individual resistance is the same ratio as individual (branch) current to total current. This is known as the *current divider formula*, and it is a short-cut method for determining branch currents in a parallel circuit when the total current is known.

Using the original parallel circuit as an example, we can re-calculate the branch currents using this formula, if we start by knowing the total current and total resistance:

$$I_{R1} = 11 \text{ mA} \frac{545.45 \ \Omega}{1 \text{ k}\Omega} = 6 \text{ mA}$$

$$I_{R2} = 11 \text{ mA} \frac{545.45 \ \Omega}{3 \text{ k}\Omega} = 2 \text{ mA}$$

$$I_{R3} = 11 \text{ mA} \frac{545.45 \ \Omega}{2 \text{ k}\Omega} = 3 \text{ mA}$$

If you take the time to compare the two divider formulae, you'll see that they are remarkably similar. Notice, however, that the ratio in the voltage divider formula is R_n (individual resistance) divided by R_{Total}, and how the ratio in the current divider formula is R_{Total} divided by R_n:

Voltage divider formula

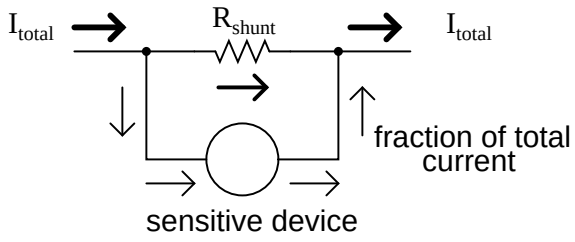
$$\mathbf{E}_n = \mathbf{E}_{\mathbf{total}} \frac{\mathbf{R}_n}{\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{total}}}$$

Current divider formula

$$\mathbf{I}_n = \mathbf{I}_{\mathbf{total}} \frac{\mathbf{R}_{\mathbf{total}}}{\mathbf{R}_n}$$

It is quite easy to confuse these two equations, getting the resistance ratios backwards. One way to help remember the proper form is to keep in mind that both ratios in the voltage and current divider equations must equal less than one. After all these are *divider* equations, not *multiplier* equations! If the fraction is upside-down, it will provide a ratio greater than one, which is incorrect. Knowing that total resistance in a series (voltage divider) circuit is always greater than any of the individual resistances, we know that the fraction for that formula must be R_n over R_{Total}. Conversely, knowing that total resistance in a parallel (current divider) circuit is always less then any of the individual resistances, we know that the fraction for that formula must be R_{Total} over R_n.

Current divider circuits also find application in electric meter circuits, where a fraction of a measured current is desired to be routed through a sensitive detection device. Using the current divider formula, the proper shunt resistor can be sized to proportion just the right amount of current for the device in any given instance:

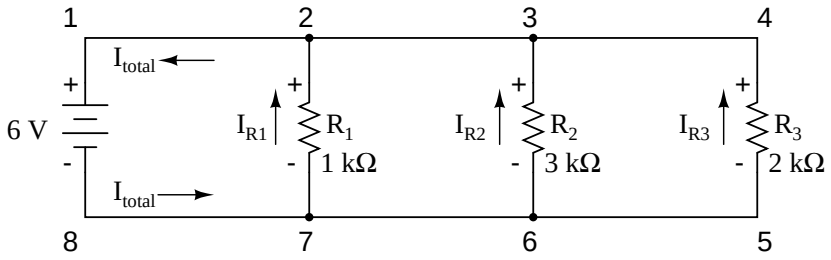


- **REVIEW:**

- Parallel circuits proportion, or "divide," the total circuit current among individual branch currents, the proportions being strictly dependent upon resistances: $I_n = I_{Total} (R_{Total} / R_n)$

6.4 Kirchhoff's Current Law (KCL)

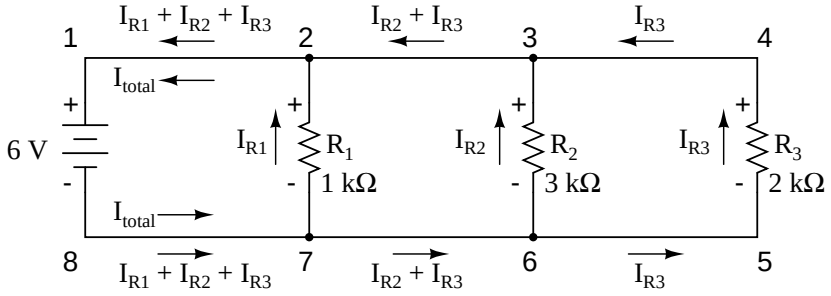
Let's take a closer look at that last parallel example circuit:



Solving for all values of voltage and current in this circuit:

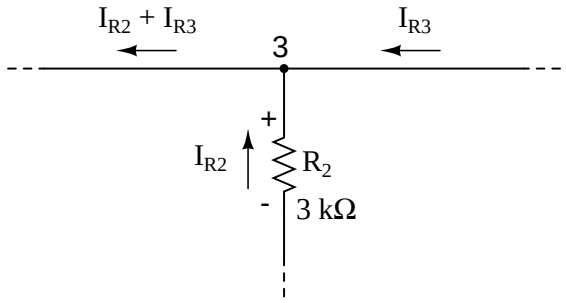
	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	6	6	6	6	Volts
I	6m	2m	3m	11m	Amps
R	1k	3k	2k	**545.45**	Ohms

At this point, we know the value of each branch current and of the total current in the circuit. We know that the total current in a parallel circuit must equal the sum of the branch currents, but there's more going on in this circuit than just that. Taking a look at the currents at each wire junction point (node) in the circuit, we should be able to see something else:



At each node on the negative "rail" (wire 8-7-6-5) we have current splitting off the main flow to each successive branch resistor. At each node on the positive "rail" (wire 1-2-3-4) we have current merging together to form the main flow from each successive branch resistor. This fact should be fairly obvious if you think of the water pipe circuit analogy with every branch node acting as a "tee" fitting, the water flow splitting or merging with the main piping as it travels from the output of the water pump toward the return reservoir or sump.

If we were to take a closer look at one particular "tee" node, such as node 3, we see that the current entering the node is equal in magnitude to the current exiting the node:



From the right and from the bottom, we have two currents entering the wire connection labeled as node 3. To the left, we have a single current exiting the node equal in magnitude to the sum of the two currents entering. To refer to the plumbing analogy: so long as there are no leaks in the piping, what flow enters the fitting must also exit the fitting. This holds true for any node ("fitting"), no matter how many flows are entering or exiting. Mathematically, we can express this general relationship as such:

$$I_{exiting} = I_{entering}$$

Mr. Kirchhoff decided to express it in a slightly different form (though mathematically equivalent), calling it *Kirchhoff's Current Law* (KCL):

$$I_{entering} + (-I_{exiting}) = 0$$

Summarized in a phrase, Kirchhoff's Current Law reads as such:

"The algebraic sum of all currents entering and exiting a node must equal zero"

That is, if we assign a mathematical sign (polarity) to each current, denoting whether they enter (+) or exit (-) a node, we can add them together to arrive at a total of zero, guaranteed.

Taking our example node (number 3), we can determine the magnitude of the current exiting from the left by setting up a KCL equation with that current as the unknown value:

$$I_2 + I_3 + I = 0$$

$$2 \text{ mA} + 3 \text{ mA} + I = 0$$

. . . solving for *I* . . .

$$I = -2 \text{ mA} - 3 \text{ mA}$$

$$\mathbf{I = -5 \text{ mA}}$$

The negative (-) sign on the value of 5 milliamps tells us that the current is *exiting* the node, as opposed to the 2 milliamp and 3 milliamp currents, which must were both positive (and therefore *entering* the node). Whether negative or positive denotes current entering or exiting is entirely arbitrary, so long as they are opposite signs for opposite directions and we stay consistent in our notation, KCL will work.

Together, Kirchhoff's Voltage and Current Laws are a formidable pair of tools useful in analyzing electric circuits. Their usefulness will become all the more apparent in a later chapter

("Network Analysis"), but suffice it to say that these Laws deserve to be memorized by the electronics student every bit as much as Ohm's Law.

- **REVIEW:**
- Kirchhoff's Current Law (KCL): *"The algebraic sum of all currents entering and exiting a node must equal zero"*

6.5 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Ron LaPlante (October 1998): helped create "table" method of series and parallel circuit analysis.

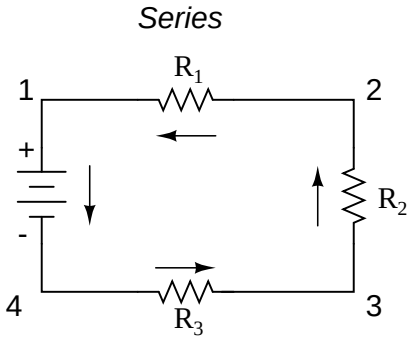
Chapter 7

SERIES-PARALLEL COMBINATION CIRCUITS

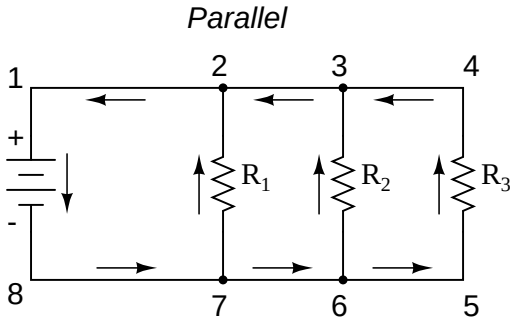
Contents

7.1 What is a series-parallel circuit?

With simple series circuits, all components are connected end-to-end to form only one path for electrons to flow through the circuit:



With simple parallel circuits, all components are connected between the same two sets of electrically common points, creating multiple paths for electrons to flow from one end of the battery to the other:



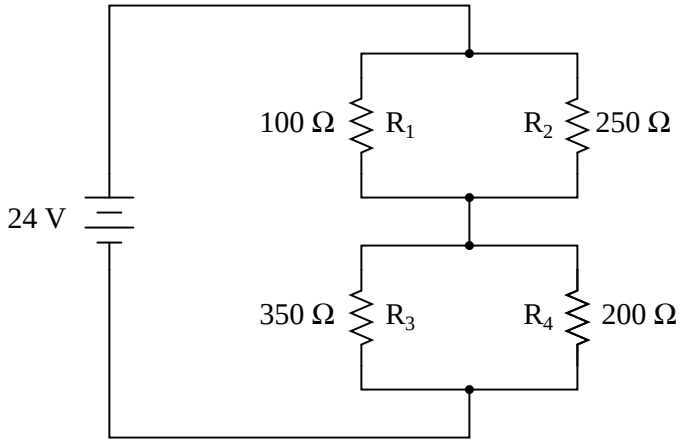
With each of these two basic circuit configurations, we have specific sets of rules describing voltage, current, and resistance relationships.

- **Series Circuits:**
- Voltage drops add to equal total voltage.
- All components share the same (equal) current.
- Resistances add to equal total resistance.

- **Parallel Circuits:**
- All components share the same (equal) voltage.
- Branch currents add to equal total current.
- Resistances diminish to equal total resistance.

However, if circuit components are series-connected in some parts and parallel in others, we won't be able to apply a *single* set of rules to every part of that circuit. Instead, we will have to identify which parts of that circuit are series and which parts are parallel, then selectively apply series and parallel rules as necessary to determine what is happening. Take the following circuit, for instance:

A series-parallel combination circuit



	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	Total	
E					24	Volts
I						Amps
R	100	250	350	200		Ohms

This circuit is neither simple series nor simple parallel. Rather, it contains elements of both. The current exits the bottom of the battery, splits up to travel through R_3 and R_4, rejoins, then splits up again to travel through R_1 and R_2, then rejoins again to return to the top of the battery. There exists more than one path for current to travel (not series), yet there are more than two sets of electrically common points in the circuit (not parallel).

Because the circuit is a combination of both series and parallel, we cannot apply the rules for voltage, current, and resistance "across the table" to begin analysis like we could when the circuits were one way or the other. For instance, if the above circuit were simple series, we could just add up R_1 through R_4 to arrive at a total resistance, solve for total current, and then solve for all voltage drops. Likewise, if the above circuit were simple parallel, we could just solve for branch currents, add up branch currents to figure the total current, and then calculate total resistance from total voltage and total current. However, this circuit's solution will be more complex.

The table will still help us manage the different values for series-parallel combination circuits, but we'll have to be careful how and where we apply the different rules for series and parallel. Ohm's Law, of course, still works just the same for determining values within a vertical column in the table.

If we are able to identify which parts of the circuit are series and which parts are parallel, we can analyze it in stages, approaching each part one at a time, using the appropriate rules to determine the relationships of voltage, current, and resistance. The rest of this chapter will be devoted to showing you techniques for doing this.

- **REVIEW:**

- The rules of series and parallel circuits must be applied selectively to circuits containing both types of interconnections.

7.2 Analysis technique

The goal of series-parallel resistor circuit analysis is to be able to determine all voltage drops, currents, and power dissipations in a circuit. The general strategy to accomplish this goal is as follows:

- Step 1: Assess which resistors in a circuit are connected together in simple series or simple parallel.

- Step 2: Re-draw the circuit, replacing each of those series or parallel resistor combinations identified in step 1 with a single, equivalent-value resistor. If using a table to manage variables, make a new table column for each resistance equivalent.

- Step 3: Repeat steps 1 and 2 until the entire circuit is reduced to one equivalent resistor.

- Step 4: Calculate total current from total voltage and total resistance (I=E/R).

- Step 5: Taking total voltage and total current values, go back to last step in the circuit reduction process and insert those values where applicable.

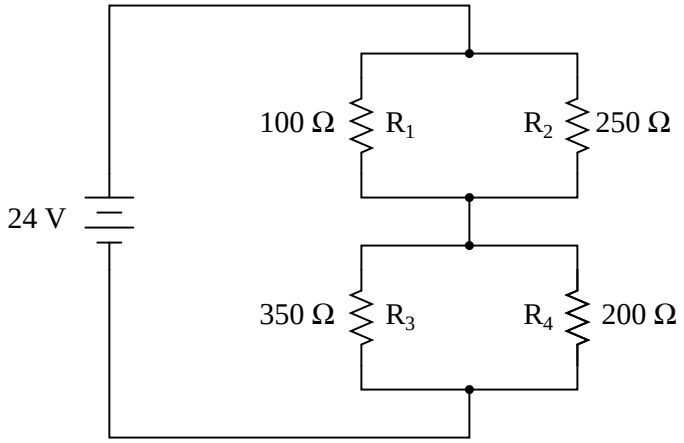
- Step 6: From known resistances and total voltage / total current values from step 5, use Ohm's Law to calculate unknown values (voltage or current) (E=IR or I=E/R).

- Step 7: Repeat steps 5 and 6 until all values for voltage and current are known in the original circuit configuration. Essentially, you will proceed step-by-step from the simplified version of the circuit back into its original, complex form, plugging in values of voltage and current where appropriate until all values of voltage and current are known.

- Step 8: Calculate power dissipations from known voltage, current, and/or resistance values.

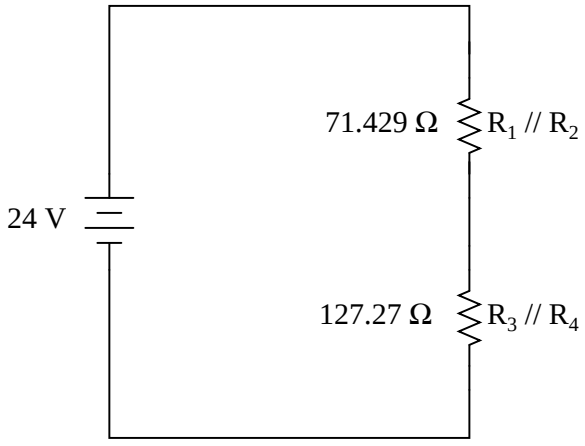
This may sound like an intimidating process, but its much easier understood through example than through description.

A series-parallel combination circuit



	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	Total	
E					24	Volts
I						Amps
R	100	250	350	200		Ohms

In the example circuit above, R_1 and R_2 are connected in a simple parallel arrangement, as are R_3 and R_4. Having been identified, these sections need to be converted into equivalent single resistors, and the circuit re-drawn:



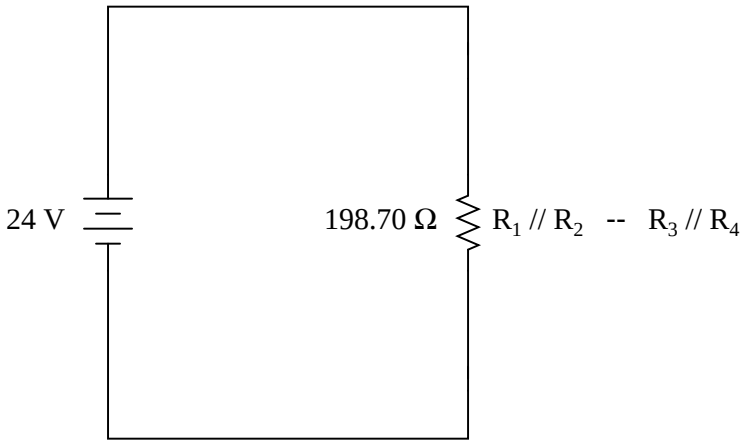
The double slash (//) symbols represent "parallel" to show that the equivalent resistor values were calculated using the 1/(1/R) formula. The 71.429 Ω resistor at the top of the circuit is the equivalent of R_1 and R_2 in parallel with each other. The 127.27 Ω resistor at the bottom is the

equivalent of R_3 and R_4 in parallel with each other.

Our table can be expanded to include these resistor equivalents in their own columns:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E							24	Volts
I								Amps
R	100	250	350	200	**71.429**	**127.27**		Ohms

It should be apparent now that the circuit has been reduced to a simple series configuration with only two (equivalent) resistances. The final step in reduction is to add these two resistances to come up with a total circuit resistance. When we add those two equivalent resistances, we get a resistance of 198.70 Ω. Now, we can re-draw the circuit as a single equivalent resistance and add the total resistance figure to the rightmost column of our table. Note that the "Total" column has been relabeled (R_1//R_2−−R_3//R_4) to indicate how it relates electrically to the other columns of figures. The "−−" symbol is used here to represent "series," just as the "//" symbol is used to represent "parallel."

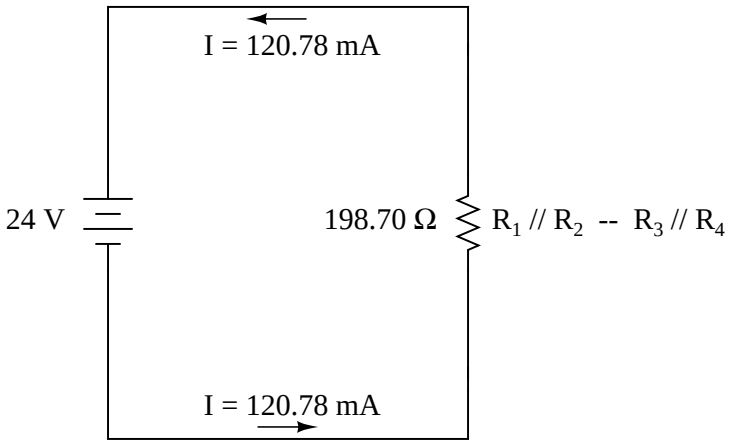


	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	R_1 // R_2 -- R_3 // R_4 Total	
E							24	Volts
I								Amps
R	100	250	350	200	71.429	127.27	**198.70**	Ohms

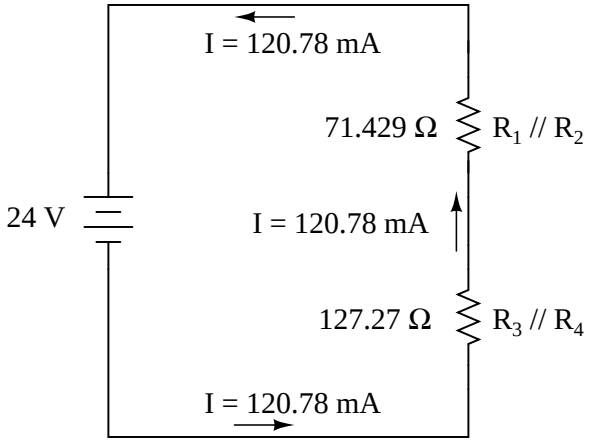
Now, total circuit current can be determined by applying Ohm's Law (I=E/R) to the "Total" column in the table:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	R_1 // R_2 -- R_3 // R_4 Total	
E							24	Volts
I							**120.78m**	Amps
R	100	250	350	200	71.429	127.27	198.70	Ohms

Back to our equivalent circuit drawing, our total current value of 120.78 milliamps is shown as the only current here:



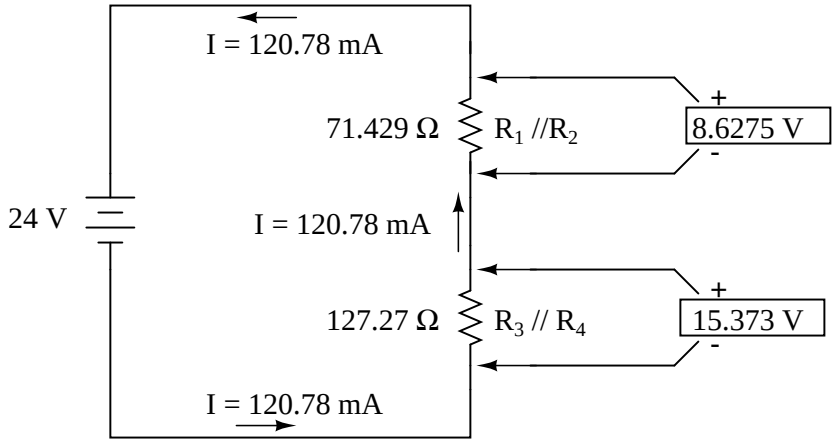
Now we start to work backwards in our progression of circuit re-drawings to the original configuration. The next step is to go to the circuit where R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 are in series:



Since R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 are in series with each other, the current through those two sets of equivalent resistances must be the same. Furthermore, the current through them must be the same as the total current, so we can fill in our table with the appropriate current values, simply copying the current figure from the Total column to the R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 columns:

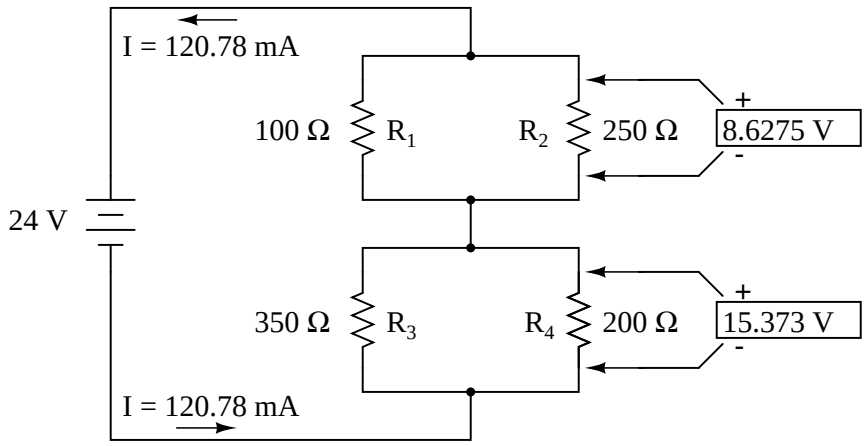
	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	R_1 // R_2 -- R_3 // R_4 Total	
E							24	Volts
I					**120.78m**	**120.78m**	120.78m	Amps
R	100	250	350	200	71.429	127.27	198.70	Ohms

Now, knowing the current through the equivalent resistors R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4, we can apply Ohm's Law (E=IR) to the two right vertical columns to find voltage drops across them:



	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	R_1 // R_2 -- R_3 // R_4 Total	
E					**8.6275**	**15.373**	24	Volts
I					120.78m	120.78m	120.78m	Amps
R	100	250	350	200	71.429	127.27	198.70	Ohms

Because we know R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 are parallel resistor equivalents, and we know that voltage drops in parallel circuits are the same, we can transfer the respective voltage drops to the appropriate columns on the table for those individual resistors. In other words, we take another step backwards in our drawing sequence to the original configuration, and complete the table accordingly:

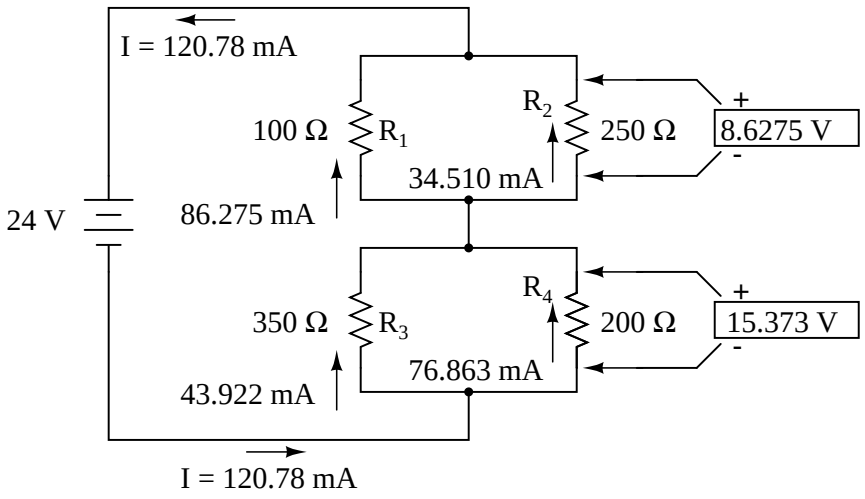


	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	$R_1 // R_2$	$R_3 // R_4$	$\overline{R_1 // R_2 \; R_3 // R_4}$ Total	
E	**8.6275**	**8.6275**	**15.373**	**15.373**	8.6275	15.373	24	Volts
I					120.78m	120.78m	120.78m	Amps
R	100	250	350	200	71.429	127.27	198.70	Ohms

Finally, the original section of the table (columns R_1 through R_4) is complete with enough values to finish. Applying Ohm's Law to the remaining vertical columns (I=E/R), we can determine the currents through R_1, R_2, R_3, and R_4 individually:

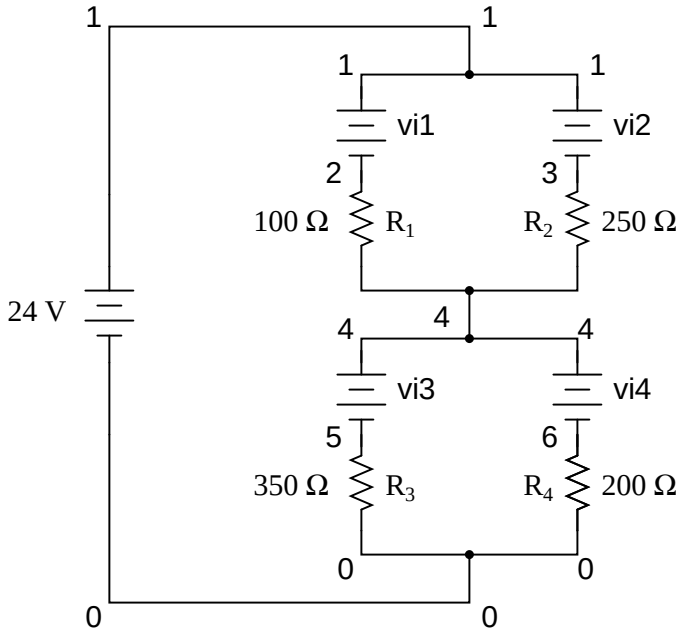
	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	$R_1 // R_2$	$R_3 // R_4$	$\overline{R_1 // R_2 \; R_3 // R_4}$ Total	
E	8.6275	8.6275	15.373	15.373	8.6275	15.373	24	Volts
I	**86.275m**	**34.510m**	**43.922m**	**76.863m**	120.78m	120.78m	120.78m	Amps
R	100	250	350	200	71.429	127.27	198.70	Ohms

Having found all voltage and current values for this circuit, we can show those values in the schematic diagram as such:



As a final check of our work, we can see if the calculated current values add up as they should to the total. Since R_1 and R_2 are in parallel, their combined currents should add up to the total of 120.78 mA. Likewise, since R_3 and R_4 are in parallel, their combined currents should also add up to the total of 120.78 mA. You can check for yourself to verify that these figures do add up as expected.

A computer simulation can also be used to verify the accuracy of these figures. The following SPICE analysis will show all resistor voltages and currents (note the current-sensing vi1, vi2, . . . "dummy" voltage sources in series with each resistor in the netlist, necessary for the SPICE computer program to track current through each path). These voltage sources will be set to have values of zero volts each so they will not affect the circuit in any way.



NOTE: voltage sources vi1, vi2, vi3, and vi4 are "dummy" sources set at zero volts each.

```
series-parallel circuit
v1 1 0
vi1 1 2 dc 0
vi2 1 3 dc 0
r1 2 4 100
r2 3 4 250
vi3 4 5 dc 0
vi4 4 6 dc 0
r3 5 0 350
r4 6 0 200
.dc v1 24 24 1
.print dc v(2,4) v(3,4) v(5,0) v(6,0)
.print dc i(vi1) i(vi2) i(vi3) i(vi4)
.end
```

I've annotated SPICE's output figures to make them more readable, denoting which voltage and current figures belong to which resistors.

```
v1             v(2,4)       v(3,4)       v(5)         v(6)
2.400E+01      8.627E+00    8.627E+00    1.537E+01    1.537E+01
Battery        R1 voltage   R2 voltage   R3 voltage   R4 voltage
```

```
voltage

v1              i(vi1)      i(vi2)      i(vi3)      i(vi4)
2.400E+01       8.627E-02   3.451E-02   4.392E-02   7.686E-02
Battery         R1 current  R2 current  R3 current  R4 current
voltage
```

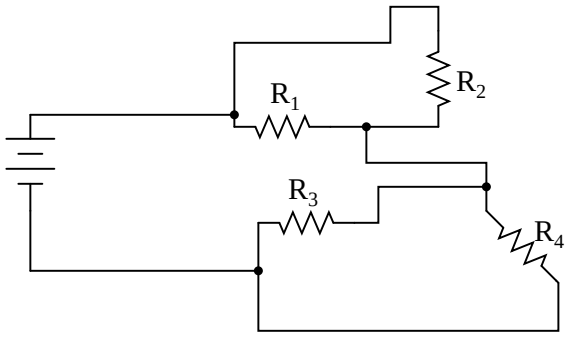
As you can see, all the figures do agree with the our calculated values.

- **REVIEW:**
- To analyze a series-parallel combination circuit, follow these steps:
- Reduce the original circuit to a single equivalent resistor, re-drawing the circuit in each step of reduction as simple series and simple parallel parts are reduced to single, equivalent resistors.
- Solve for total resistance.
- Solve for total current (I=E/R).
- Determine equivalent resistor voltage drops and branch currents one stage at a time, working backwards to the original circuit configuration again.

7.3 Re-drawing complex schematics

Typically, complex circuits are not arranged in nice, neat, clean schematic diagrams for us to follow. They are often drawn in such a way that makes it difficult to follow which components are in series and which are in parallel with each other. The purpose of this section is to show you a method useful for re-drawing circuit schematics in a neat and orderly fashion. Like the stage-reduction strategy for solving series-parallel combination circuits, it is a method easier demonstrated than described.

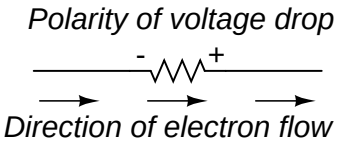
Let's start with the following (convoluted) circuit diagram. Perhaps this diagram was originally drawn this way by a technician or engineer. Perhaps it was sketched as someone traced the wires and connections of a real circuit. In any case, here it is in all its ugliness:

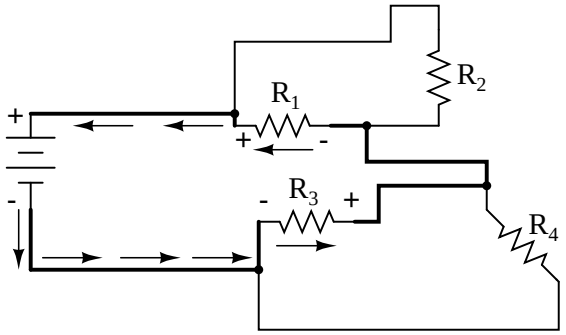


With electric circuits and circuit diagrams, the length and routing of wire connecting components in a circuit matters little. (Actually, in some AC circuits it becomes critical, and very long wire lengths can contribute unwanted resistance to both AC and DC circuits, but in most cases wire length is irrelevant.) What this means for us is that we can lengthen, shrink, and/or bend connecting wires without affecting the operation of our circuit.

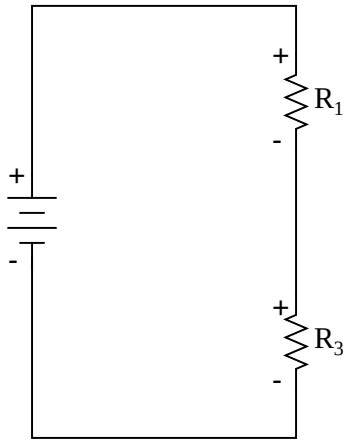
The strategy I have found easiest to apply is to start by tracing the current from one terminal of the battery around to the other terminal, following the loop of components closest to the battery and ignoring all other wires and components for the time being. While tracing the path of the loop, mark each resistor with the appropriate polarity for voltage drop.

In this case, I'll begin my tracing of this circuit at the negative terminal of the battery and finish at the positive terminal, in the same general direction as the electrons would flow. When tracing this direction, I will mark each resistor with the polarity of negative on the entering side and positive on the exiting side, for that is how the actual polarity will be as electrons (negative in charge) enter and exit a resistor:

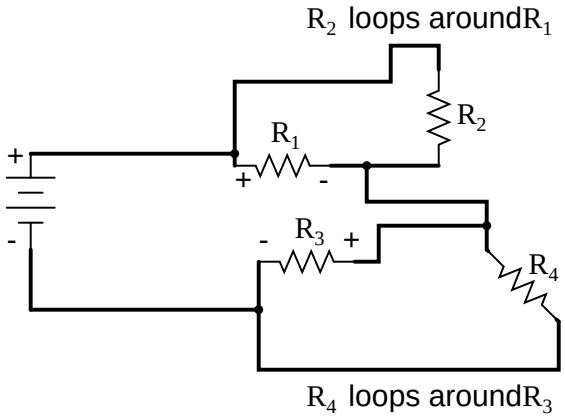




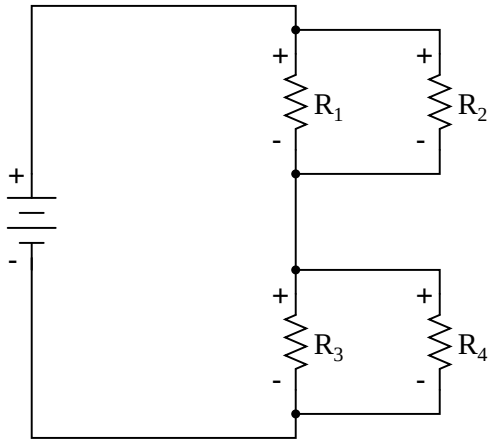
Any components encountered along this short loop are drawn vertically in order:



Now, proceed to trace any loops of components connected around components that were just traced. In this case, there's a loop around R_1 formed by R_2, and another loop around R_3 formed by R_4:

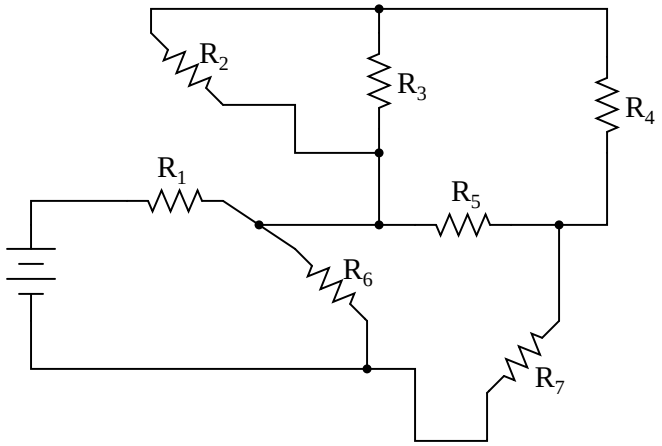


Tracing those loops, I draw R_2 and R_4 in parallel with R_1 and R_3 (respectively) on the vertical diagram. Noting the polarity of voltage drops across R_3 and R_1, I mark R_4 and R_2 likewise:

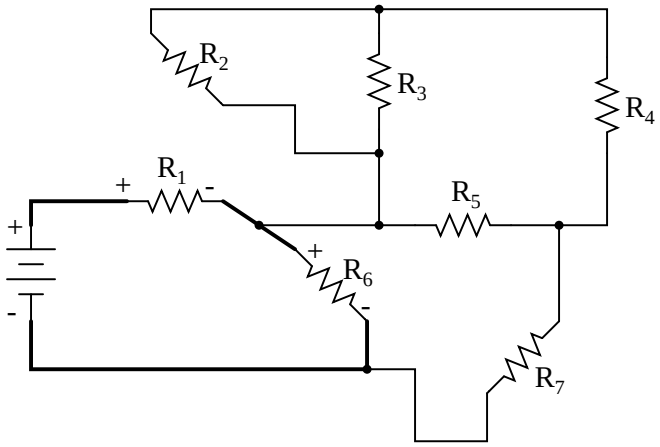


Now we have a circuit that is very easily understood and analyzed. In this case, it is identical to the four-resistor series-parallel configuration we examined earlier in the chapter.

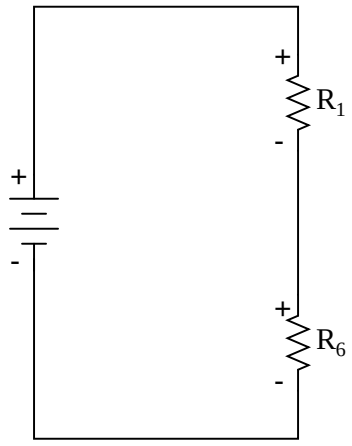
Let's look at another example, even uglier than the one before:



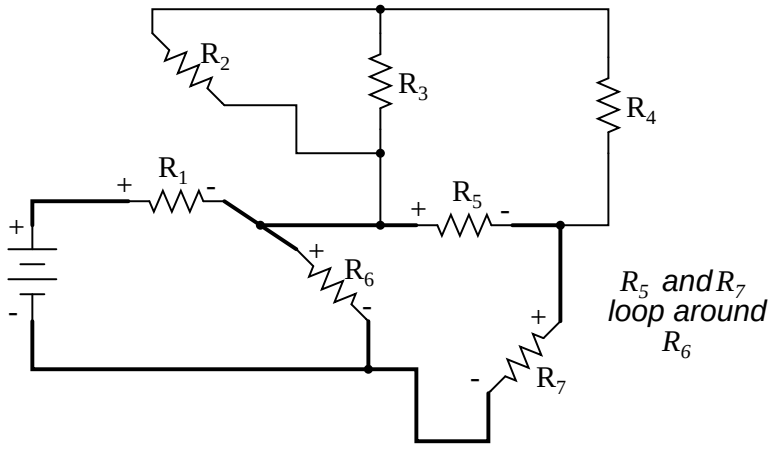
The first loop I'll trace is from the negative (-) side of the battery, through R_6, through R_1, and back to the positive (+) end of the battery:



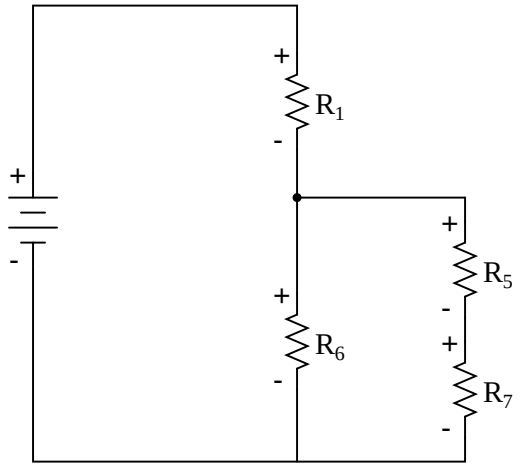
Re-drawing vertically and keeping track of voltage drop polarities along the way, our equivalent circuit starts out looking like this:



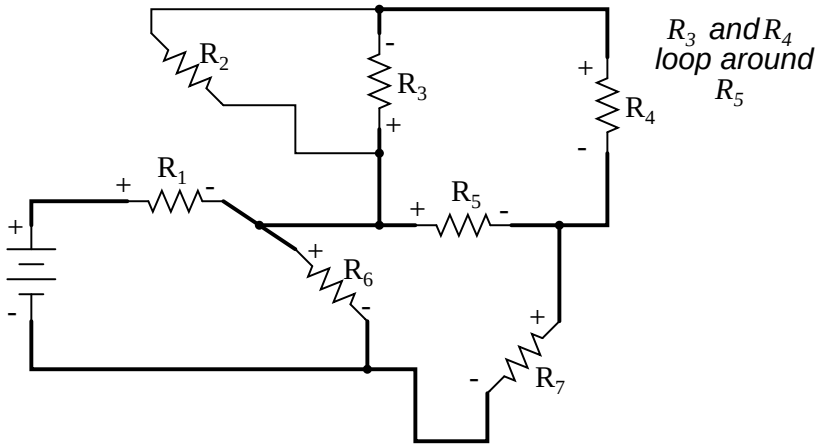
Next, we can proceed to follow the next loop around one of the traced resistors (R_6), in this case, the loop formed by R_5 and R_7. As before, we start at the negative end of R_6 and proceed to the positive end of R_6, marking voltage drop polarities across R_7 and R_5 as we go:



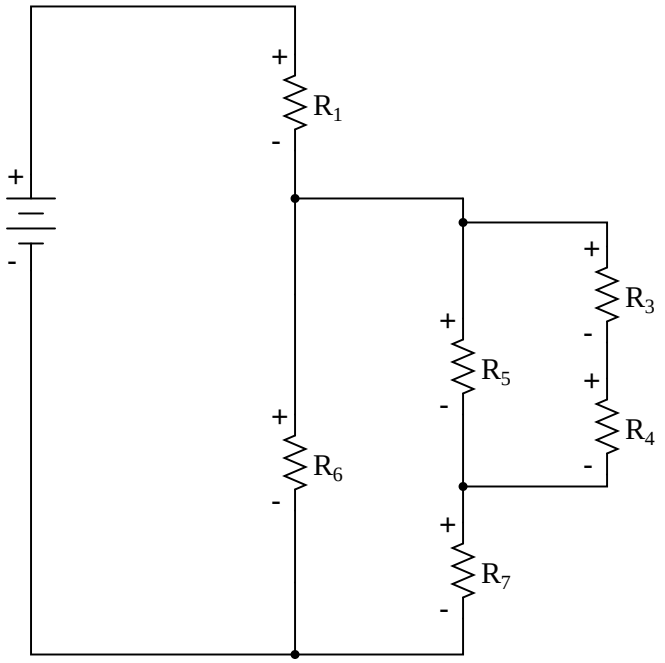
Now we add the $R_5 - - R_7$ loop to the vertical drawing. Notice how the voltage drop polarities across R_7 and R_5 correspond with that of R_6, and how this is the same as what we found tracing R_7 and R_5 in the original circuit:



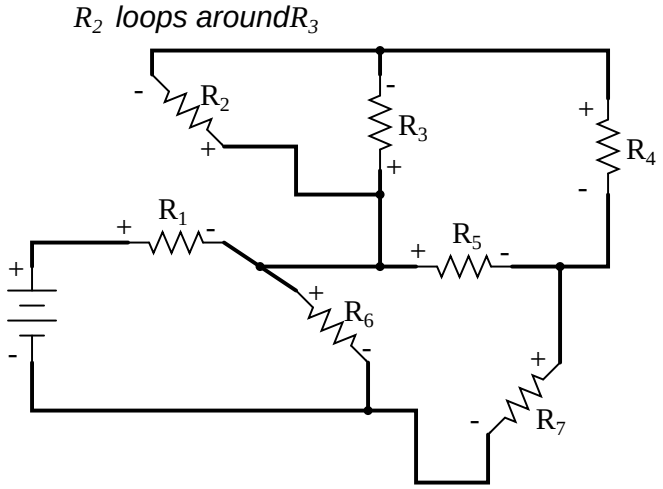
We repeat the process again, identifying and tracing another loop around an already-traced resistor. In this case, the $R_3 - - R_4$ loop around R_5 looks like a good loop to trace next:



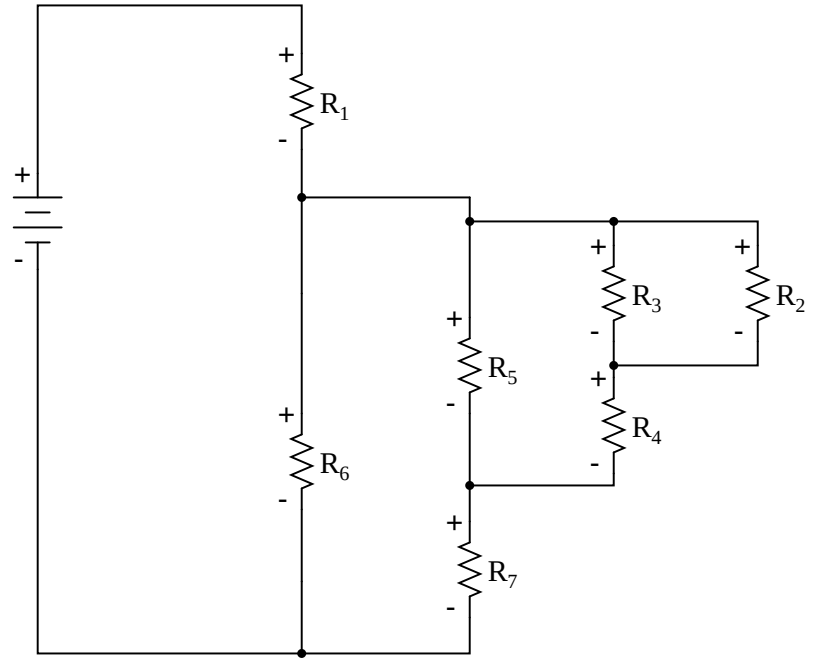
Adding the $R_3 - - R_4$ loop to the vertical drawing, marking the correct polarities as well:



With only one remaining resistor left to trace, then next step is obvious: trace the loop formed by R_2 around R_3:



Adding R_2 to the vertical drawing, and we're finished! The result is a diagram that's very easy to understand compared to the original:



This simplified layout greatly eases the task of determining where to start and how to proceed in reducing the circuit down to a single equivalent (total) resistance. Notice how the circuit has been re-drawn, all we have to do is start from the right-hand side and work our way left, reducing simple-series and simple-parallel resistor combinations one group at a time until we're done.

In this particular case, we would start with the simple parallel combination of R_2 and R_3,

reducing it to a single resistance. Then, we would take that equivalent resistance ($R_2//R_3$) and the one in series with it (R_4), reducing them to another equivalent resistance ($R_2//R_3--R_4$). Next, we would proceed to calculate the parallel equivalent of that resistance ($R_2//R_3--R_4$) with R_5, then in series with R_7, then in parallel with R_6, then in series with R_1 to give us a grand total resistance for the circuit as a whole.

From there we could calculate total current from total voltage and total resistance (I=E/R), then "expand" the circuit back into its original form one stage at a time, distributing the appropriate values of voltage and current to the resistances as we go.

- **REVIEW:**
- Wires in diagrams and in real circuits can be lengthened, shortened, and/or moved without affecting circuit operation.
- To simplify a convoluted circuit schematic, follow these steps:
- Trace current from one side of the battery to the other, following any single path ("loop") to the battery. Sometimes it works better to start with the loop containing the most components, but regardless of the path taken the result will be accurate. Mark polarity of voltage drops across each resistor as you trace the loop. Draw those components you encounter along this loop in a vertical schematic.
- Mark traced components in the original diagram and trace remaining loops of components in the circuit. Use polarity marks across traced components as guides for what connects where. Document new components in loops on the vertical re-draw schematic as well.
- Repeat last step as often as needed until all components in original diagram have been traced.

7.4 Component failure analysis

"I consider that I understand an equation when I can predict the properties of its solutions, without actually solving it."

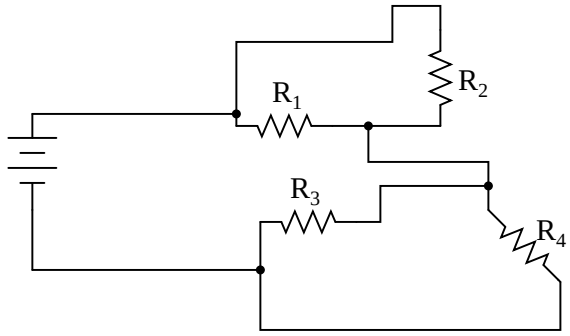
P.A.M Dirac, physicist

There is a lot of truth to that quote from Dirac. With a little modification, I can extend his wisdom to electric circuits by saying, "I consider that I understand a circuit when I can predict the approximate effects of various changes made to it without actually performing any calculations."

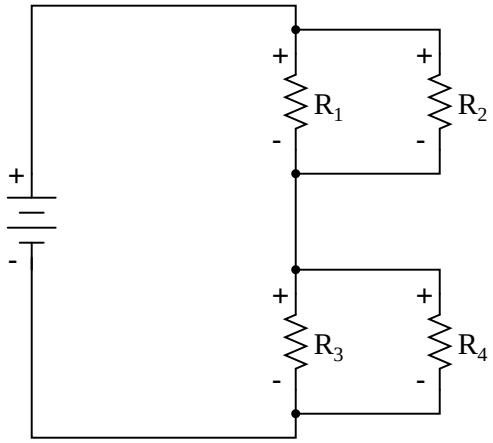
At the end of the series and parallel circuits chapter, we briefly considered how circuits could be analyzed in a *qualitative* rather than *quantitative* manner. Building this skill is an important step towards becoming a proficient troubleshooter of electric circuits. Once you have a thorough understanding of how any particular failure will affect a circuit (i.e. you don't have to perform any arithmetic to predict the results), it will be much easier to work the other way around: pinpointing the source of trouble by assessing how a circuit is behaving.

Also shown at the end of the series and parallel circuits chapter was how the table method works just as well for aiding failure analysis as it does for the analysis of healthy circuits. We may take this technique one step further and adapt it for total qualitative analysis. By *"qualitative"* I mean working with symbols representing "increase," "decrease," and "same" instead of precise numerical figures. We can still use the principles of series and parallel circuits, and the concepts of Ohm's Law, we'll just use symbolic *qualities* instead of numerical *quantities*. By doing this, we can gain more of an intuitive "feel" for how circuits work rather than leaning on abstract equations, attaining Dirac's definition of "understanding."

Enough talk. Let's try this technique on a real circuit example and see how it works:



This is the first "convoluted" circuit we straightened out for analysis in the last section. Since you already know how this particular circuit reduces to series and parallel sections, I'll skip the process and go straight to the final form:



R_3 and R_4 are in parallel with each other; so are R_1 and R_2. The parallel equivalents of $R_3//R_4$ and $R_1//R_2$ are in series with each other. Expressed in symbolic form, the total resistance for this circuit is as follows:

$R_{Total} = (R_1//R_2) - - (R_3//R_4)$

First, we need to formulate a table with all the necessary rows and columns for this circuit:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E								Volts
I								Amps
R								Ohms

Next, we need a failure scenario. Let's suppose that resistor R_2 were to fail shorted. We will assume that all other components maintain their original values. Because we'll be analyzing this circuit qualitatively rather than quantitatively, we won't be inserting any real numbers into the table. For any quantity unchanged after the component failure, we'll use the word "same" to represent "no change from before." For any quantity that has changed as a result of the failure, we'll use a down arrow for "decrease" and an up arrow for "increase." As usual, we start by filling in the spaces of the table for individual resistances and total voltage, our "given" values:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E							same	Volts
I								Amps
R	same	↓	same	same				Ohms

The only "given" value different from the normal state of the circuit is R_2, which we said was failed shorted (abnormally low resistance). All other initial values are the same as they were before, as represented by the "same" entries. All we have to do now is work through the familiar Ohm's Law and series-parallel principles to determine what will happen to all the other circuit values.

First, we need to determine what happens to the resistances of parallel subsections R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4. If neither R_3 nor R_4 have changed in resistance value, then neither will their parallel combination. However, since the resistance of R_2 has decreased while R_1 has stayed the same, their parallel combination must decrease in resistance as well:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E							same	Volts
I								Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same		Ohms

Now, we need to figure out what happens to the total resistance. This part is easy: when we're dealing with only one component change in the circuit, the change in total resistance will be in the same direction as the change of the failed component. This is not to say that the *magnitude* of change between individual component and total circuit will be the same, merely the *direction* of change. In other words, if any single resistor decreases in value, then the total circuit resistance must also decrease, and vice versa. In this case, since R_2 is the only failed component, and its resistance has decreased, the total resistance *must* decrease:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E							same	Volts
I								Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

Now we can apply Ohm's Law (qualitatively) to the Total column in the table. Given the fact

that total voltage has remained the same and total resistance has decreased, we can conclude that total current must increase (I=E/R).

In case you're not familiar with the qualitative assessment of an equation, it works like this. First, we write the equation as solved for the unknown quantity. In this case, we're trying to solve for current, given voltage and resistance:

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

Now that our equation is in the proper form, we assess what change (if any) will be experienced by "I," given the change(s) to "E" and "R":

$$I = \frac{E}{R} \quad \begin{matrix}(\text{same}) \\ \downarrow\end{matrix}$$

If the denominator of a fraction decreases in value while the numerator stays the same, then the overall value of the fraction must increase:

$$\uparrow \; I = \frac{E}{R} \quad \begin{matrix}(\text{same}) \\ \downarrow\end{matrix}$$

Therefore, Ohm's Law (I=E/R) tells us that the current (I) will increase. We'll mark this conclusion in our table with an "up" arrow:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E							same	Volts
I							↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

With all resistance places filled in the table and all quantities determined in the Total column, we can proceed to determine the other voltages and currents. Knowing that the total resistance in this table was the result of R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 in *series*, we know that the value of total current will be the same as that in R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 (because series components share the same current). Therefore, if total current increased, then current through R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 must also have increased with the failure of R_2:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E							same	Volts
I					↑	↑	↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

Fundamentally, what we're doing here with a qualitative usage of Ohm's Law and the rules of series and parallel circuits is no different from what we've done before with numerical figures. In fact, its a lot easier because you don't have to worry about making an arithmetic or calculator keystroke error in a calculation. Instead, you're just focusing on the *principles* behind the equations. From our table above, we can see that Ohm's Law should be applicable to the R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 columns. For R_3//R_4, we figure what happens to the voltage, given an increase in current and no change in resistance. Intuitively, we can see that this must result in an increase in voltage across the parallel combination of R_3//R_4:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E						↑	same	Volts
I					↑	↑	↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

But how do we apply the same Ohm's Law formula (E=IR) to the R_1//R_2 column, where we have resistance decreasing *and* current increasing? It's easy to determine if only one variable is changing, as it was with R_3//R_4, but with two variables moving around and no definite numbers to work with, Ohm's Law isn't going to be much help. However, there is another rule we can apply *horizontally* to determine what happens to the voltage across R_1//R_2: the rule for voltage in series circuits. If the voltages across R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4 add up to equal the total (battery) voltage and we know that the R_3//R_4 voltage has increased while total voltage has stayed the same, then the voltage across R_1//R_2 *must* have decreased with the change of R_2's resistance value:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E					↓	↑	same	Volts
I					↑	↑	↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

Now we're ready to proceed to some new columns in the table. Knowing that R_3 and R_4 comprise the parallel subsection R_3//R_4, and knowing that voltage is shared equally between parallel components, the increase in voltage seen across the parallel combination R_3//R_4 must also be seen across R_3 and R_4 individually:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E			↑	↑	↓	↑	same	Volts
I					↑	↑	↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

The same goes for R_1 and R_2. The voltage decrease seen across the parallel combination of R_1 and R_2 will be seen across R_1 and R_2 individually:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E	↓	↓	↑	↑	↓	↑	same	Volts
I					↑	↑	↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

Applying Ohm's Law vertically to those columns with unchanged ("same") resistance values, we can tell what the current will do through those components. Increased voltage across an unchanged resistance leads to increased current. Conversely, decreased voltage across an unchanged resistance leads to decreased current:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E	↓	↓	↑	↑	↓	↑	same	Volts
I	↓		↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

Once again we find ourselves in a position where Ohm's Law can't help us: for R_2, both

voltage and resistance have decreased, but without knowing *how much* each one has changed, we can't use the I=E/R formula to qualitatively determine the resulting change in current. However, we can still apply the rules of series and parallel circuits *horizontally*. We know that the current through the R_1//R_2 parallel combination has increased, and we also know that the current through R_1 has decreased. One of the rules of parallel circuits is that total current is equal to the sum of the individual branch currents. In this case, the current through R_1//R_2 is equal to the current through R_1 added to the current through R_2. If current through R_1//R_2 has increased while current through R_1 has decreased, current through R_2 *must* have increased:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	R_4	R_1 // R_2	R_3 // R_4	Total	
E	↓	↓	↑	↑	↓	↑	same	Volts
I	↓	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	↑	Amps
R	same	↓	same	same	↓	same	↓	Ohms

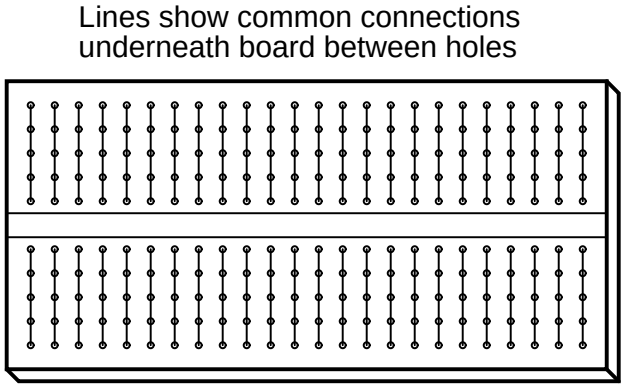
And with that, our table of qualitative values stands completed. This particular exercise may look laborious due to all the detailed commentary, but the actual process can be performed very quickly with some practice. An important thing to realize here is that the general procedure is little different from quantitative analysis: start with the known values, then proceed to determining total resistance, then total current, then transfer figures of voltage and current as allowed by the rules of series and parallel circuits to the appropriate columns.

A few general rules can be memorized to assist and/or to check your progress when proceeding with such an analysis:

- For any *single* component failure (open or shorted), the total resistance will always change in the same direction (either increase or decrease) as the resistance change of the failed component.
- When a component fails shorted, its resistance always decreases. Also, the current through it will increase, and the voltage across it *may* drop. I say "may" because in some cases it will remain the same (case in point: a simple parallel circuit with an ideal power source).
- When a component fails open, its resistance always increases. The current through that component will decrease to zero, because it is an incomplete electrical path (no continuity). This *may* result in an increase of voltage across it. The same exception stated above applies here as well: in a simple parallel circuit with an ideal voltage source, the voltage across an open-failed component will remain unchanged.

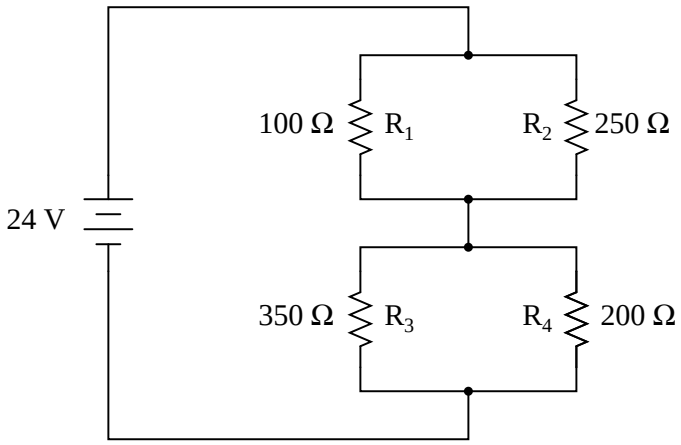
7.5 Building series-parallel resistor circuits

Once again, when building battery/resistor circuits, the student or hobbyist is faced with several different modes of construction. Perhaps the most popular is the *solderless breadboard*: a platform for constructing temporary circuits by plugging components and wires into a grid of interconnected points. A breadboard appears to be nothing but a plastic frame with hundreds of small holes in it. Underneath each hole, though, is a spring clip which connects to other spring clips beneath other holes. The connection pattern between holes is simple and uniform:

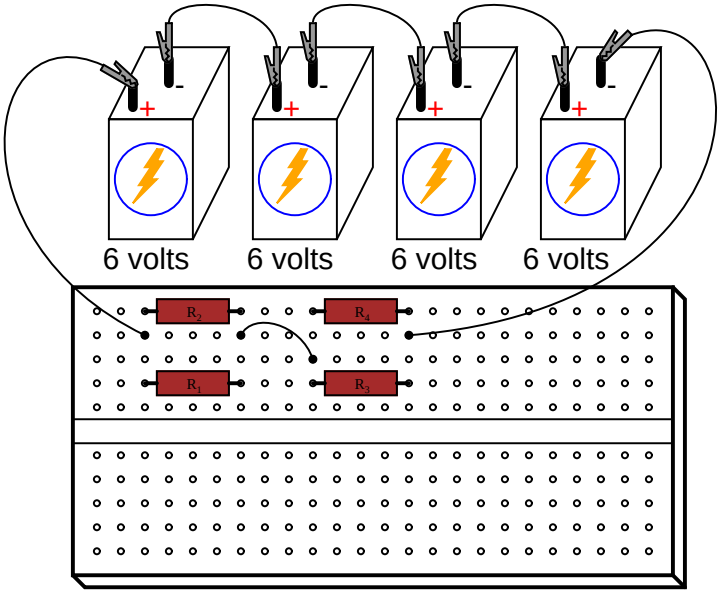


Suppose we wanted to construct the following series-parallel combination circuit on a breadboard:

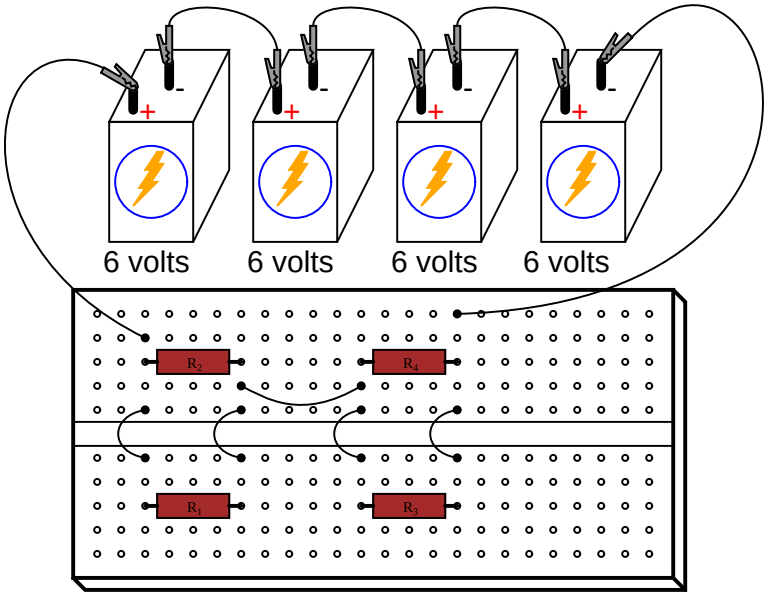
A series-parallel combination circuit



The recommended way to do so on a breadboard would be to arrange the resistors in approximately the same pattern as seen in the schematic, for ease of relation to the schematic. If 24 volts is required and we only have 6-volt batteries available, four may be connected in series to achieve the same effect:

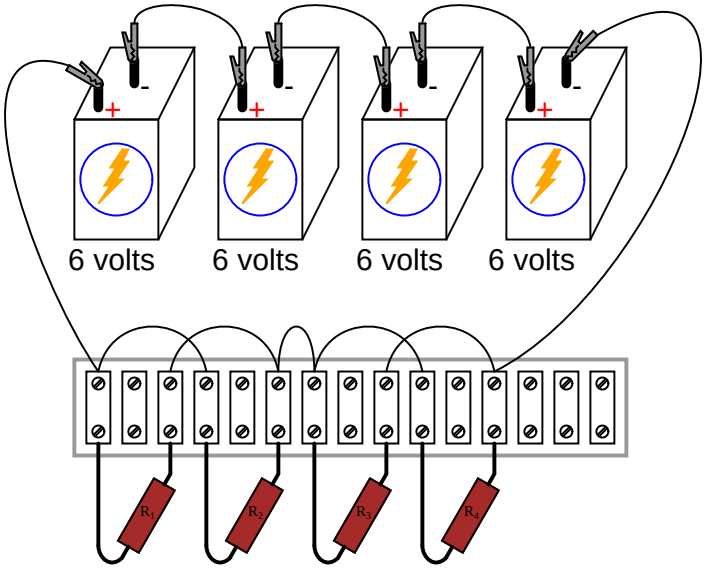


This is by no means the only way to connect these four resistors together to form the circuit shown in the schematic. Consider this alternative layout:

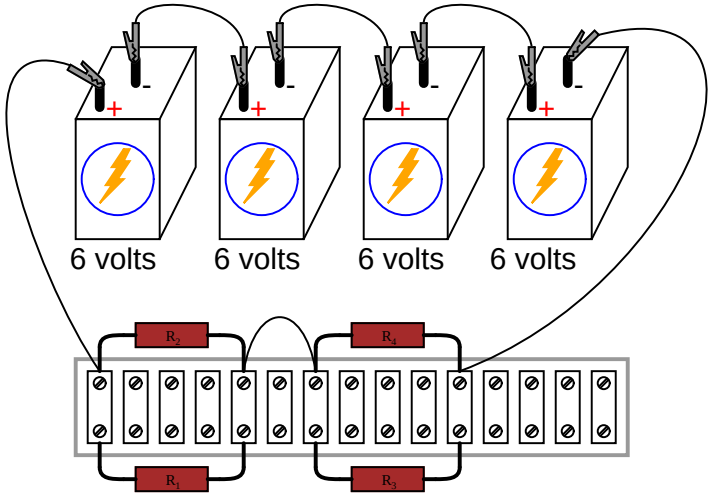


If greater permanence is desired without resorting to soldering or wire-wrapping, one could choose to construct this circuit on a *terminal strip* (also called a *barrier strip*, or *terminal block*). In this method, components and wires are secured by mechanical tension underneath screws or heavy clips attached to small metal bars. The metal bars, in turn, are mounted on a nonconducting body to keep them electrically isolated from each other.

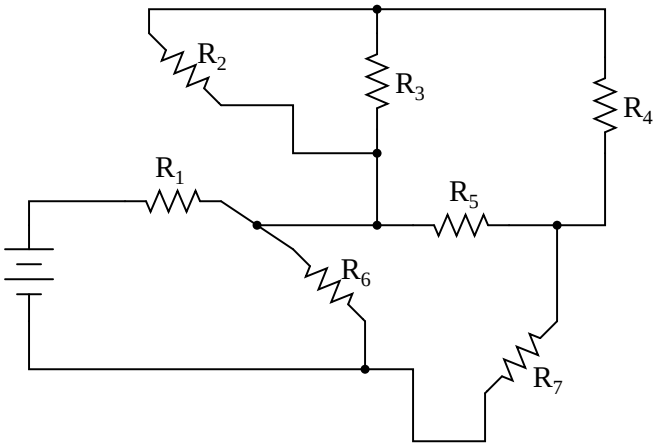
Building a circuit with components secured to a terminal strip isn't as easy as plugging components into a breadboard, principally because the components cannot be physically arranged to resemble the schematic layout. Instead, the builder must understand how to "bend" the schematic's representation into the real-world layout of the strip. Consider one example of how the same four-resistor circuit could be built on a terminal strip:



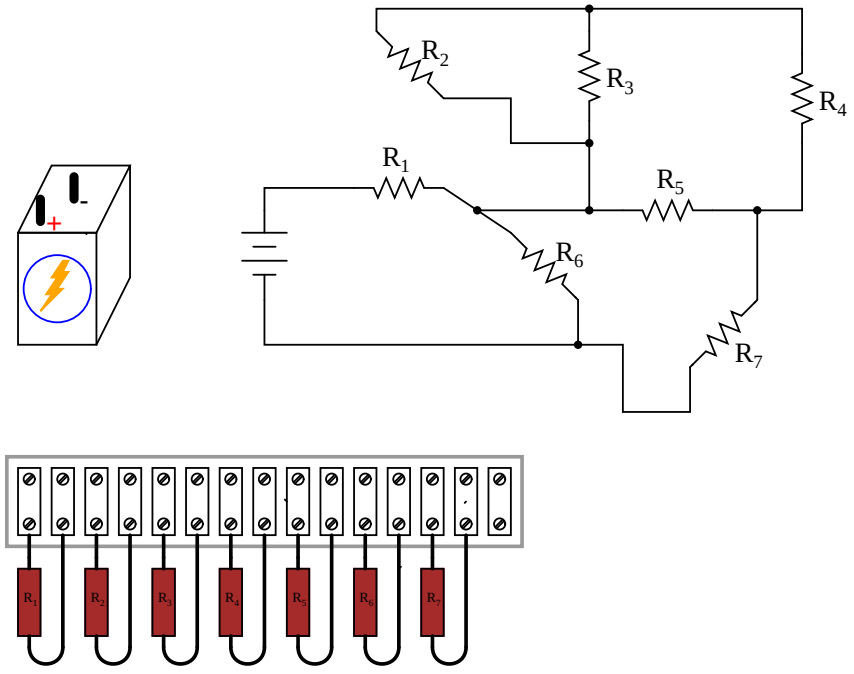
Another terminal strip layout, simpler to understand and relate to the schematic, involves anchoring parallel resistors (R_1//R_2 and R_3//R_4) to the same two terminal points on the strip like this:



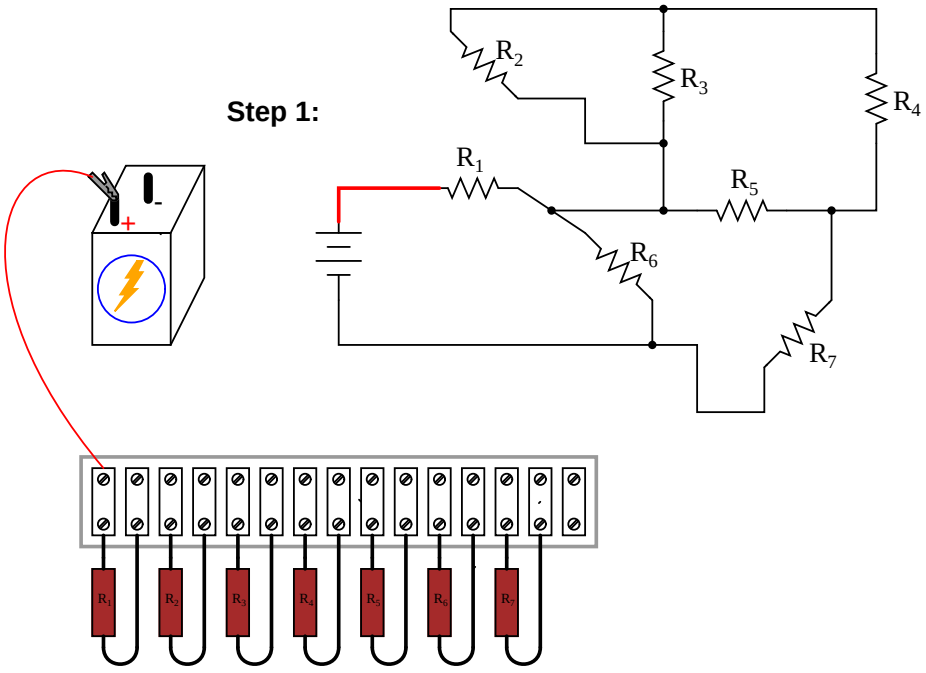
Building more complex circuits on a terminal strip involves the same spatial-reasoning skills, but of course requires greater care and planning. Take for instance this complex circuit, represented in schematic form:

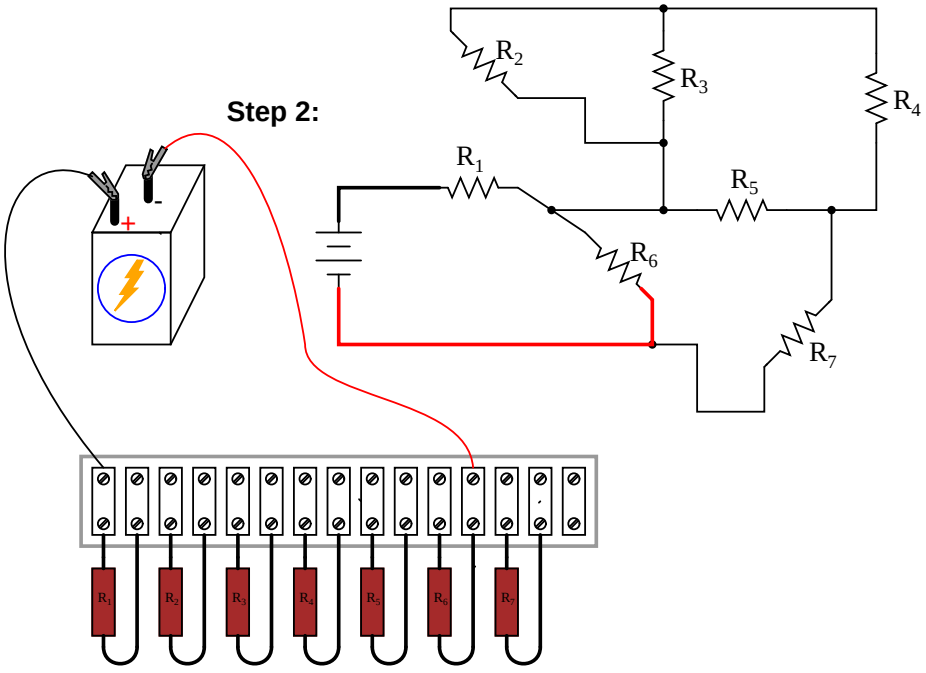


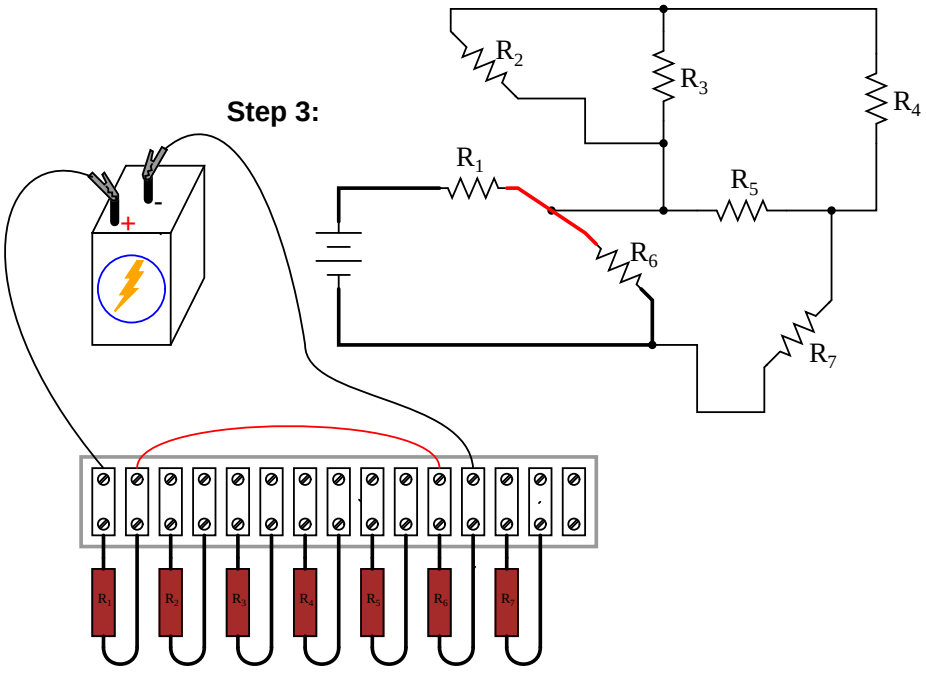
The terminal strip used in the prior example barely has enough terminals to mount all seven resistors required for this circuit! It will be a challenge to determine all the necessary wire connections between resistors, but with patience it can be done. First, begin by installing and labeling all resistors on the strip. The original schematic diagram will be shown next to the terminal strip circuit for reference:

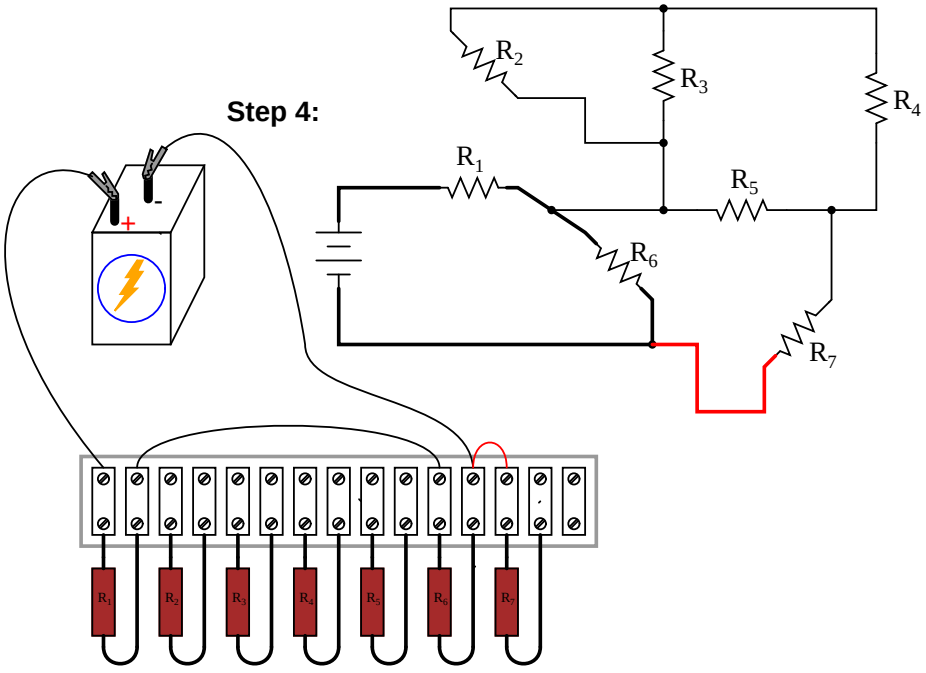


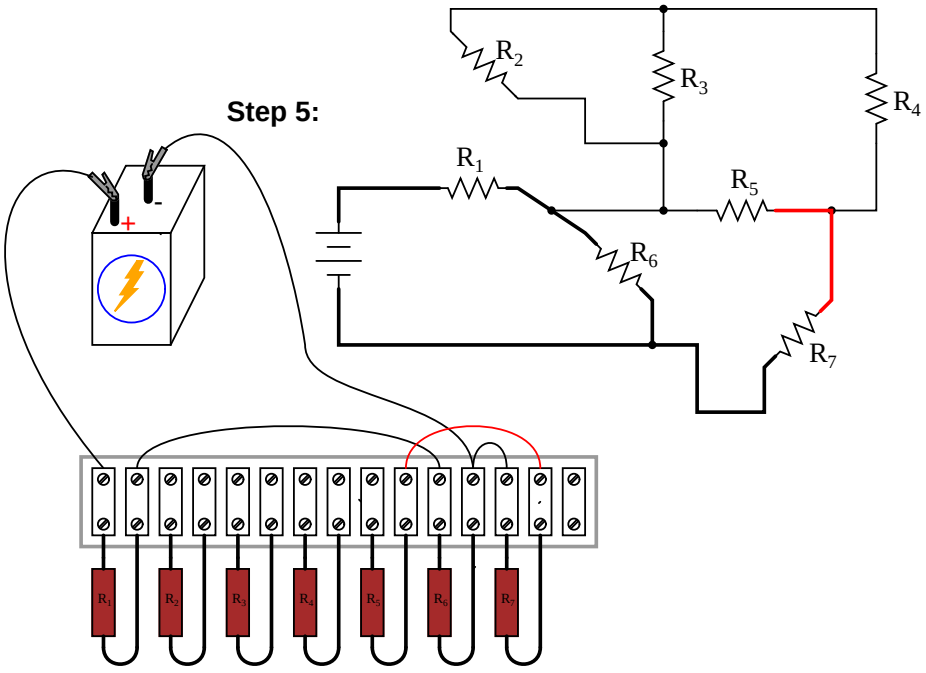
Next, begin connecting components together wire by wire as shown in the schematic. Overdraw connecting lines in the schematic to indicate completion in the real circuit. Watch this sequence of illustrations as each individual wire is identified in the schematic, then added to the real circuit:

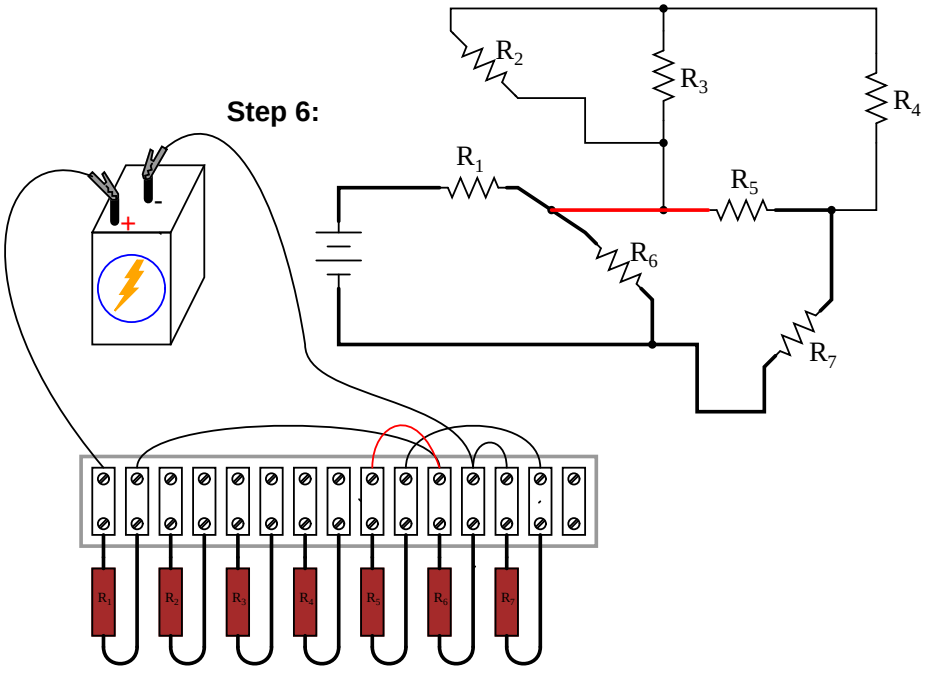

Step 1:
R2
R3
R4
R1
R5
R6
R7

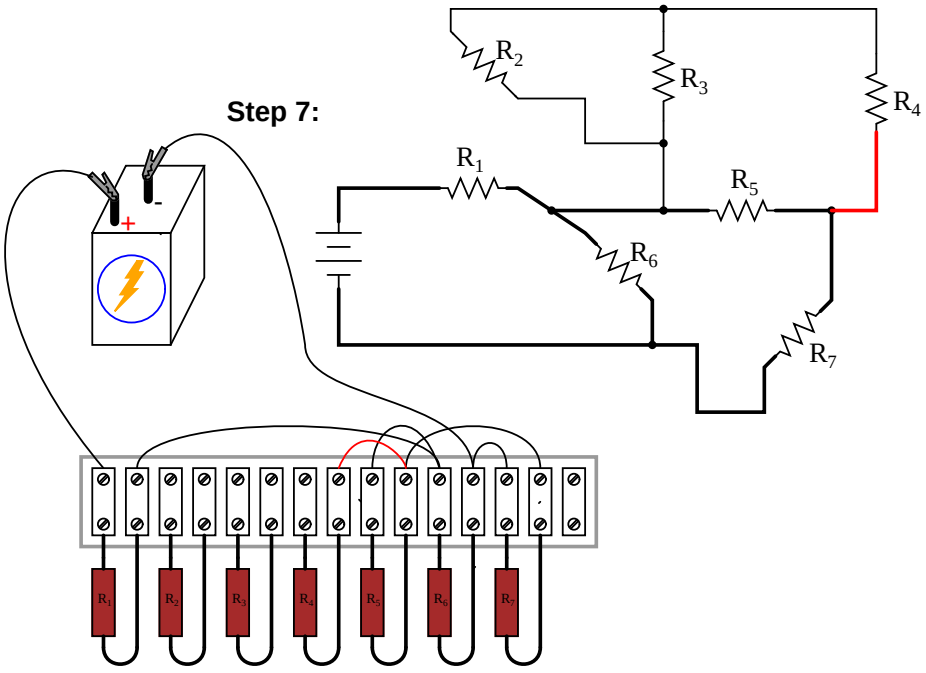

Step 2:
R2
R3
R4
R1
R5
R6
R7

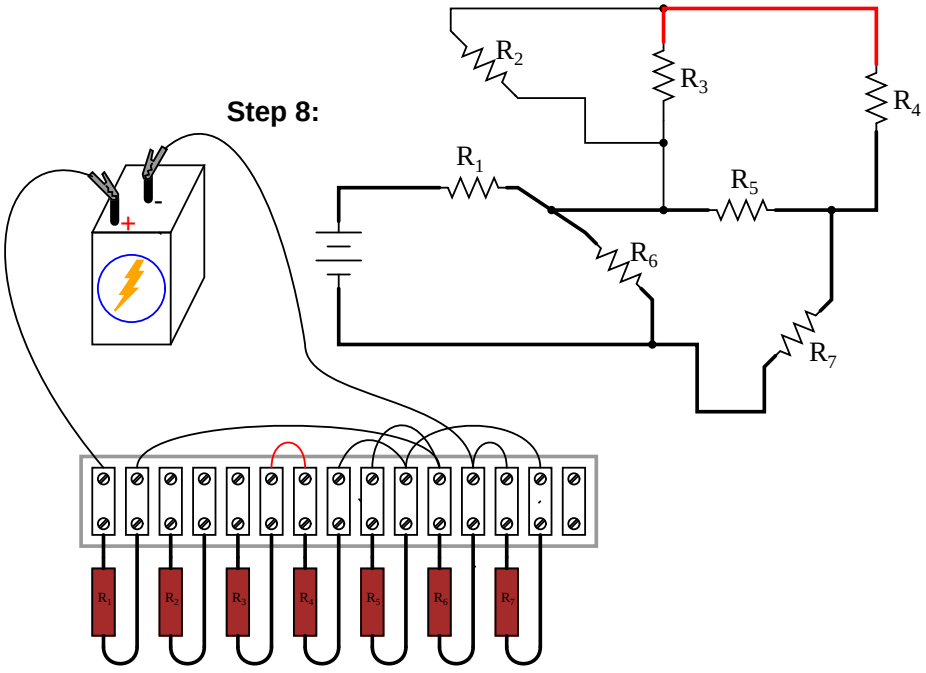

Step 3:
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7


Step 4:
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7

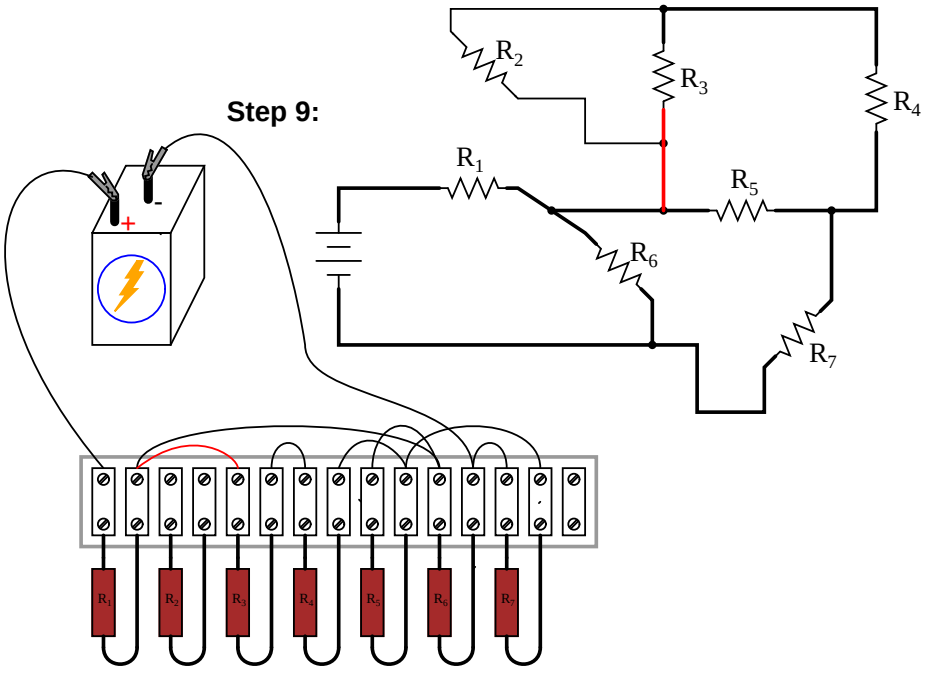

Step 5:
R2
R3
R4
R1
R5
R6
R7


Step 6:
R2
R3
R4
R1
R5
R6
R7

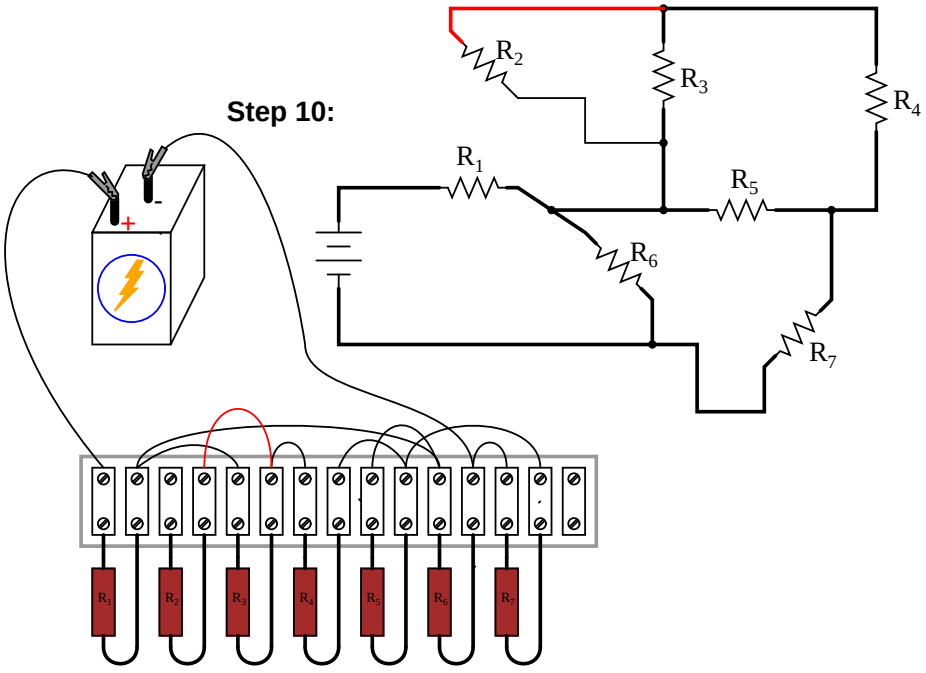

Step 7:
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7

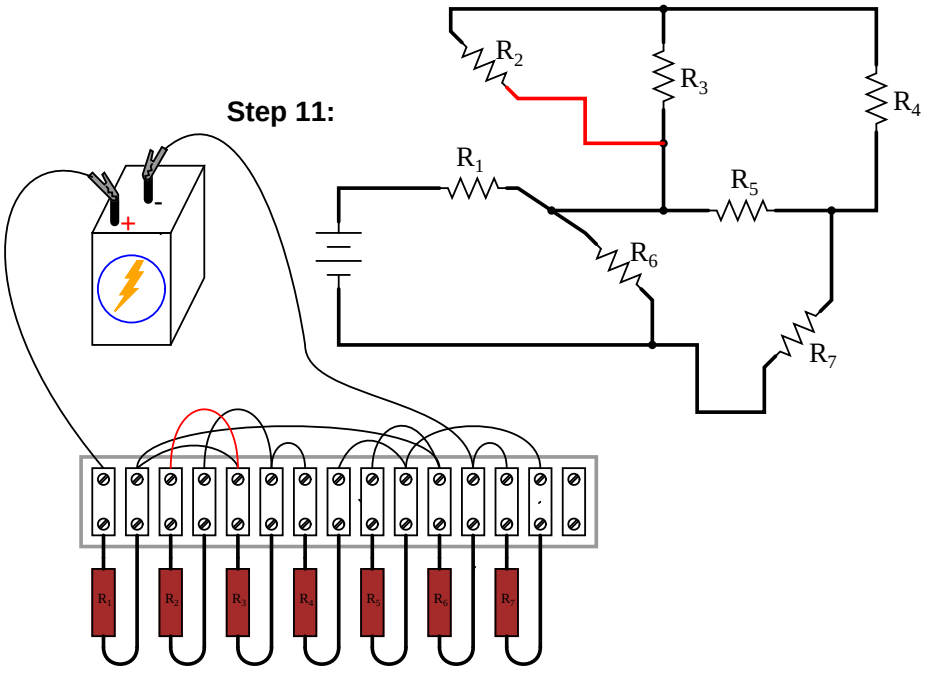

Step 8:
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7

Step 9:



Step 10:

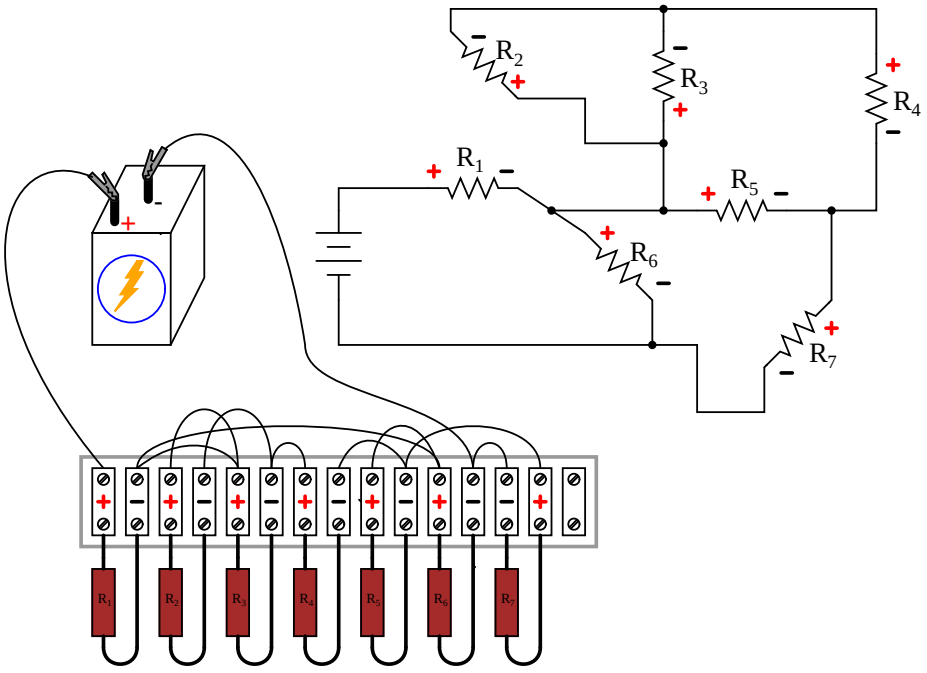




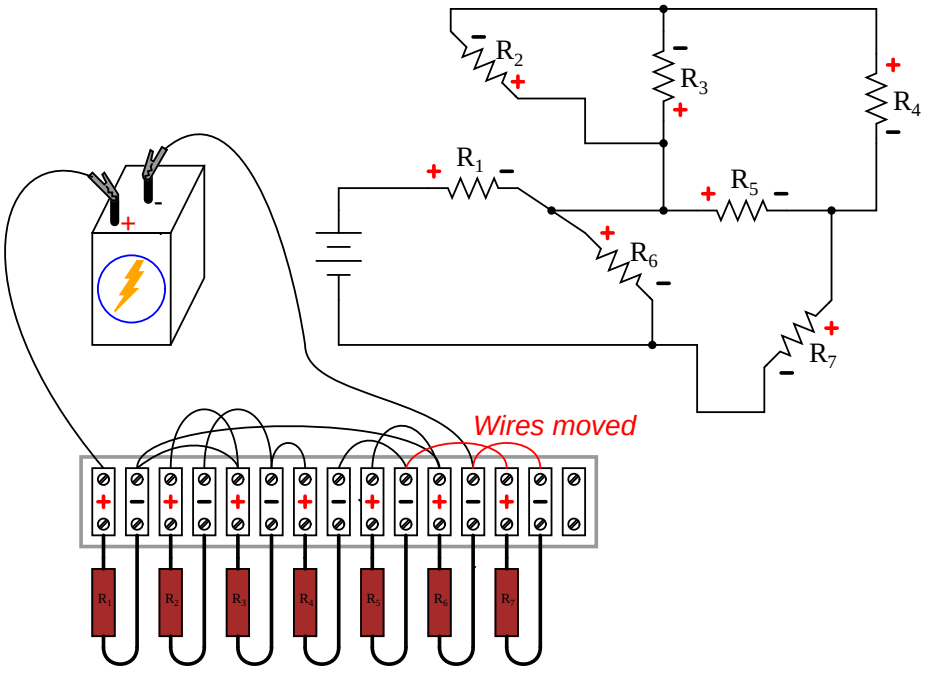
Although there are minor variations possible with this terminal strip circuit, the choice of connections shown in this example sequence is both electrically accurate (electrically identical to the schematic diagram) and carries the additional benefit of not burdening any one screw terminal on the strip with more than two wire ends, a good practice in any terminal strip circuit.

An example of a "variant" wire connection might be the very last wire added (step 11), which I placed between the left terminal of R_2 and the left terminal of R_3. This last wire completed the parallel connection between R_2 and R_3 in the circuit. However, I could have placed this wire instead between the left terminal of R_2 and the right terminal of R_1, since the right terminal of R_1 is already connected to the left terminal of R_3 (having been placed there in step 9) and so is electrically common with that one point. Doing this, though, would have resulted in *three* wires secured to the right terminal of R_1 instead of two, which is a *faux pax* in terminal strip etiquette. Would the circuit have worked this way? Certainly! It's just that more than two wires secured at a single terminal makes for a "messy" connection: one that is aesthetically unpleasing and may place undue stress on the screw terminal.

Another variation would be to reverse the terminal connections for resistor R_7. As shown in the last diagram, the voltage polarity across R_7 is negative on the left and positive on the right (- , +), whereas all the other resistor polarities are positive on the left and negative on the right (+ , -):



While this poses no electrical problem, it might cause confusion for anyone measuring resistor voltage drops with a voltmeter, especially an analog voltmeter which will "peg" downscale when subjected to a voltage of the wrong polarity. For the sake of consistency, it might be wise to arrange all wire connections so that all resistor voltage drop polarities are the same, like this:



Though electrons do not care about such consistency in component layout, people do. This illustrates an important aspect of any engineering endeavor: the human factor. Whenever a design may be modified for easier comprehension and/or easier maintenance – with no sacrifice of functional performance – it should be done so.

- **REVIEW:**
- Circuits built on terminal strips can be difficult to lay out, but when built they are robust enough to be considered permanent, yet easy to modify.
- It is bad practice to secure more than two wire ends and/or component leads under a single terminal screw or clip on a terminal strip. Try to arrange connecting wires so as to avoid this condition.
- Whenever possible, build your circuits with clarity and ease of understanding in mind. Even though component and wiring layout is usually of little consequence in DC circuit function, it matters significantly for the sake of the person who has to modify or troubleshoot it later.

7.6 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Tony Armstrong (January 23, 2003): Suggested reversing polarity on resistor R_7 in last terminal strip circuit.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Ron LaPlante (October 1998): helped create ”table” method of series and parallel circuit analysis.

Chapter 8

DC METERING CIRCUITS

Contents

8.1 What is a meter?

A *meter* is any device built to accurately detect and display an electrical quantity in a form readable by a human being. Usually this ”readable form” is visual: motion of a pointer on a scale, a series of lights arranged to form a ”bargraph,” or some sort of display composed of numerical figures. In the analysis and testing of circuits, there are meters designed to accurately measure the basic quantities of voltage, current, and resistance. There are many other types of meters as well, but this chapter primarily covers the design and operation of the basic three.

Most modern meters are ”digital” in design, meaning that their readable display is in the form of numerical digits. Older designs of meters are mechanical in nature, using some kind of pointer device to show quantity of measurement. In either case, the principles applied in

adapting a display unit to the measurement of (relatively) large quantities of voltage, current, or resistance are the same.

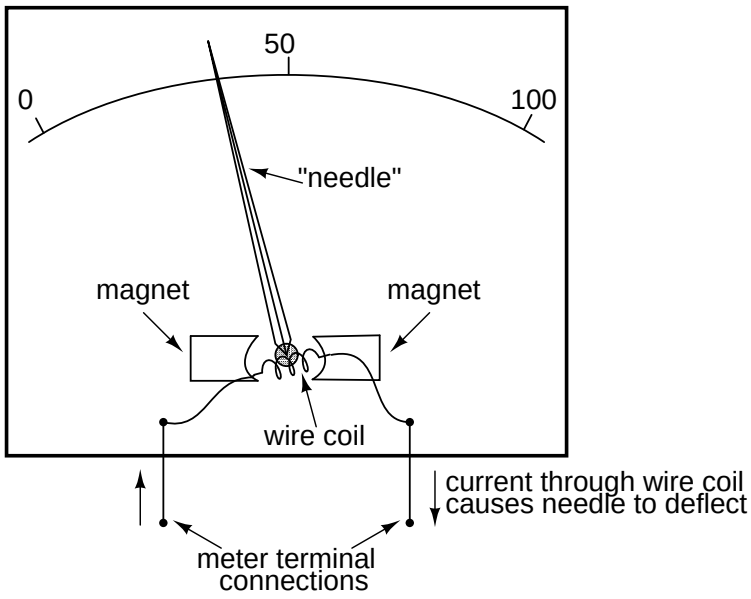
The display mechanism of a meter is often referred to as a *movement*, borrowing from its mechanical nature to *move* a pointer along a scale so that a measured value may be read. Though modern digital meters have no moving parts, the term "movement" may be applied to the same basic device performing the display function.

The design of digital "movements" is beyond the scope of this chapter, but mechanical meter movement designs are very understandable. Most mechanical movements are based on the principle of electromagnetism: that electric current through a conductor produces a magnetic field perpendicular to the axis of electron flow. The greater the electric current, the stronger the magnetic field produced. If the magnetic field formed by the conductor is allowed to interact with another magnetic field, a physical force will be generated between the two sources of fields. If one of these sources is free to move with respect to the other, it will do so as current is conducted through the wire, the motion (usually against the resistance of a spring) being proportional to strength of current.

The first meter movements built were known as *galvanometers*, and were usually designed with maximum sensitivity in mind. A very simple galvanometer may be made from a magnetized needle (such as the needle from a magnetic compass) suspended from a string, and positioned within a coil of wire. Current through the wire coil will produce a magnetic field which will deflect the needle from pointing in the direction of earth's magnetic field. An antique string galvanometer is shown in the following photograph:

Such instruments were useful in their time, but have little place in the modern world except as proof-of-concept and elementary experimental devices. They are highly susceptible to motion of any kind, and to any disturbances in the natural magnetic field of the earth. Now, the term "galvanometer" usually refers to any design of electromagnetic meter movement built for exceptional sensitivity, and not necessarily a crude device such as that shown in the photograph. Practical electromagnetic meter movements can be made now where a pivoting wire coil is suspended in a strong magnetic field, shielded from the majority of outside influences. Such an instrument design is generally known as a *permanent-magnet, moving coil*, or *PMMC* movement:

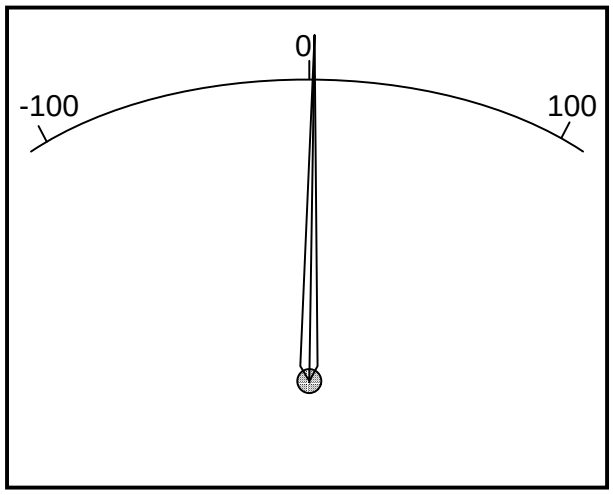
Permanent magnet, moving coil (PMMC) meter movement



In the picture above, the meter movement ”needle” is shown pointing somewhere around 35 percent of full-scale, zero being full to the left of the arc and full-scale being completely to the right of the arc. An increase in measured current will drive the needle to point further to the right and a decrease will cause the needle to drop back down toward its resting point on the left. The arc on the meter display is labeled with numbers to indicate the value of the quantity being measured, whatever that quantity is. In other words, if it takes 50 microamps of current to drive the needle fully to the right (making this a ”50 μA full-scale movement”), the scale would have 0 μA written at the very left end and 50 μA at the very right, 25 μA being marked in the middle of the scale. In all likelihood, the scale would be divided into much smaller graduating marks, probably every 5 or 1 μA, to allow whoever is viewing the movement to infer a more precise reading from the needle’s position.

The meter movement will have a pair of metal connection terminals on the back for current to enter and exit. Most meter movements are polarity-sensitive, one direction of current driving the needle to the right and the other driving it to the left. Some meter movements have a needle that is spring-centered in the middle of the scale sweep instead of to the left, thus enabling measurements of either polarity:

A "zero-center" meter movement

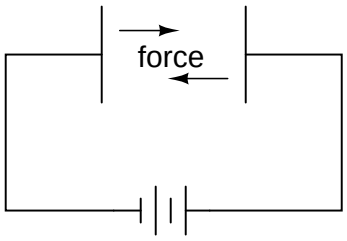


Common polarity-sensitive movements include the D'Arsonval and Weston designs, both PMMC-type instruments. Current in one direction through the wire will produce a clockwise torque on the needle mechanism, while current the other direction will produce a counter-clockwise torque.

Some meter movements are polarity-*in*sensitive, relying on the attraction of an unmagnetized, movable iron vane toward a stationary, current-carrying wire to deflect the needle. Such meters are ideally suited for the measurement of alternating current (AC). A polarity-sensitive movement would just vibrate back and forth uselessly if connected to a source of AC.

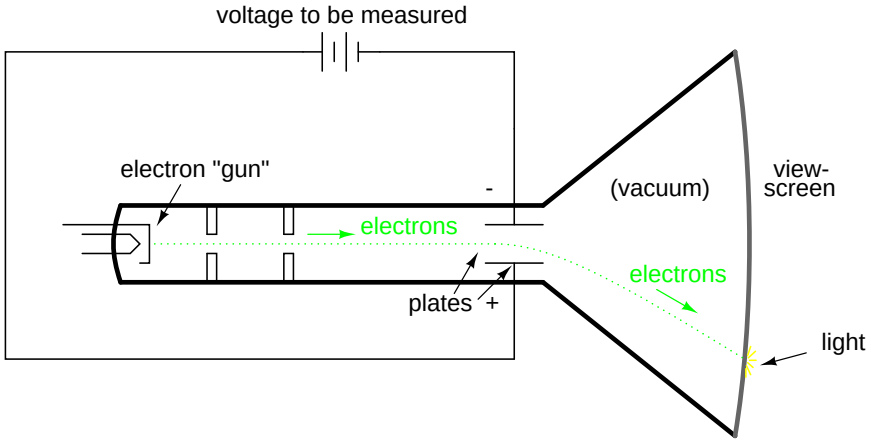
While most mechanical meter movements are based on electromagnetism (electron flow through a conductor creating a perpendicular magnetic field), a few are based on electrostatics: that is, the attractive or repulsive force generated by electric charges across space. This is the same phenomenon exhibited by certain materials (such as wax and wool) when rubbed together. If a voltage is applied between two conductive surfaces across an air gap, there will be a physical force attracting the two surfaces together capable of moving some kind of indicating mechanism. That physical force is directly proportional to the voltage applied between the plates, and inversely proportional to the square of the distance between the plates. The force is also irrespective of polarity, making this a polarity-insensitive type of meter movement:

Electrostatic meter movement



Unfortunately, the force generated by the electrostatic attraction is *very* small for common voltages. In fact, it is so small that such meter movement designs are impractical for use in general test instruments. Typically, electrostatic meter movements are used for measuring very high voltages (many thousands of volts). One great advantage of the electrostatic meter movement, however, is the fact that it has extremely high resistance, whereas electromagnetic movements (which depend on the flow of electrons through wire to generate a magnetic field) are much lower in resistance. As we will see in greater detail to come, greater resistance (resulting in less current drawn from the circuit under test) makes for a better voltmeter.

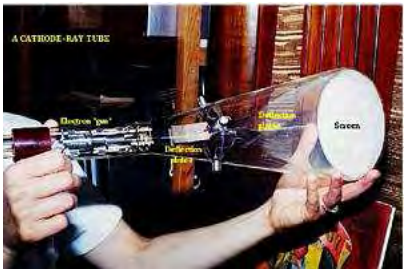
A much more common application of electrostatic voltage measurement is seen in an device known as a *Cathode Ray Tube*, or *CRT*. These are special glass tubes, very similar to television viewscreen tubes. In the cathode ray tube, a beam of electrons traveling in a vacuum are deflected from their course by voltage between pairs of metal plates on either side of the beam. Because electrons are negatively charged, they tend to be repelled by the negative plate and attracted to the positive plate. A reversal of voltage polarity across the two plates will result in a deflection of the electron beam in the opposite direction, making this type of meter "movement" polarity-sensitive:



The electrons, having much less mass than metal plates, are moved by this electrostatic force very quickly and readily. Their deflected path can be traced as the electrons impinge on the glass end of the tube where they strike a coating of phosphorus chemical, emitting a glow of light seen outside of the tube. The greater the voltage between the deflection plates, the

further the electron beam will be "bent" from its straight path, and the further the glowing spot will be seen from center on the end of the tube.

A photograph of a CRT is shown here:



In a real CRT, as shown in the above photograph, there are two pairs of deflection plates rather than just one. In order to be able to sweep the electron beam around the whole area of the screen rather than just in a straight line, the beam must be deflected in more than one dimension.

Although these tubes are able to accurately register small voltages, they are bulky and require electrical power to operate (unlike electromagnetic meter movements, which are more compact and actuated by the power of the measured signal current going through them). They are also much more fragile than other types of electrical metering devices. Usually, cathode ray tubes are used in conjunction with precise external circuits to form a larger piece of test equipment known as an *oscilloscope*, which has the ability to display a graph of voltage over time, a tremendously useful tool for certain types of circuits where voltage and/or current levels are dynamically changing.

Whatever the type of meter or size of meter movement, there will be a rated value of voltage or current necessary to give full-scale indication. In electromagnetic movements, this will be the "full-scale deflection current" necessary to rotate the needle so that it points to the exact end of the indicating scale. In electrostatic movements, the full-scale rating will be expressed as the value of voltage resulting in the maximum deflection of the needle actuated by the plates, or the value of voltage in a cathode-ray tube which deflects the electron beam to the edge of the indicating screen. In digital "movements," it is the amount of voltage resulting in a "full-count" indication on the numerical display: when the digits cannot display a larger quantity.

The task of the meter designer is to take a given meter movement and design the necessary external circuitry for full-scale indication at some specified amount of voltage or current. Most meter movements (electrostatic movements excepted) are quite sensitive, giving full-scale indication at only a small fraction of a volt or an amp. This is impractical for most tasks of voltage and current measurement. What the technician often requires is a meter capable of measuring high voltages and currents.

By making the sensitive meter movement part of a voltage or current divider circuit, the movement's useful measurement range may be extended to measure far greater levels than what could be indicated by the movement alone. Precision resistors are used to create the divider circuits necessary to divide voltage or current appropriately. One of the lessons you will learn in this chapter is how to design these divider circuits.

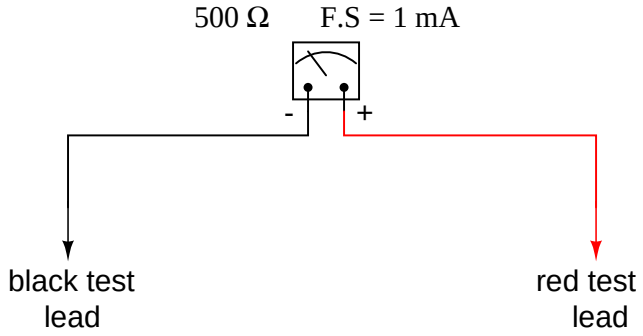
- **REVIEW:**

- A "*movement*" is the display mechanism of a meter.
- Electromagnetic movements work on the principle of a magnetic field being generated by electric current through a wire. Examples of electromagnetic meter movements include the D'Arsonval, Weston, and iron-vane designs.
- Electrostatic movements work on the principle of physical force generated by an electric field between two plates.
- *Cathode Ray Tubes* (CRT's) use an electrostatic field to bend the path of an electron beam, providing indication of the beam's position by light created when the beam strikes the end of the glass tube.

8.2 Voltmeter design

As was stated earlier, most meter movements are sensitive devices. Some D'Arsonval movements have full-scale deflection current ratings as little as 50 μA, with an (internal) wire resistance of less than 1000 Ω. This makes for a voltmeter with a full-scale rating of only 50 millivolts (50 μA X 1000 Ω)! In order to build voltmeters with practical (higher voltage) scales from such sensitive movements, we need to find some way to reduce the measured quantity of voltage down to a level the movement can handle.

Let's start our example problems with a D'Arsonval meter movement having a full-scale deflection rating of 1 mA and a coil resistance of 500 Ω:



Using Ohm's Law (E=IR), we can determine how much voltage will drive this meter movement directly to full scale:

E = I R

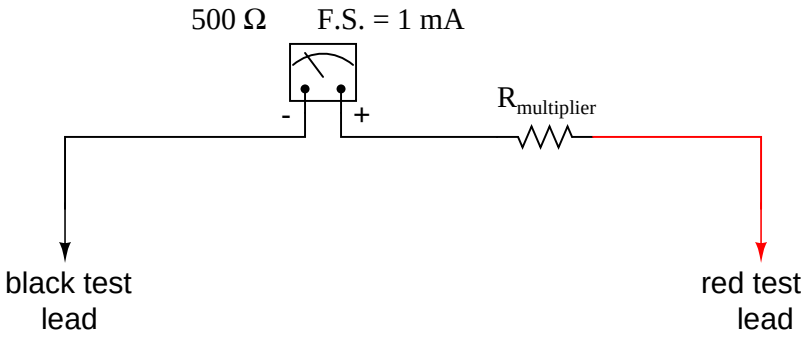
E = (1 mA)(500 Ω)

E = 0.5 volts

If all we wanted was a meter that could measure 1/2 of a volt, the bare meter movement we have here would suffice. But to measure greater levels of voltage, something more is needed. To get an effective voltmeter meter range in excess of 1/2 volt, we'll need to design a circuit

allowing only a precise proportion of measured voltage to drop across the meter movement. This will extend the meter movement's range to higher voltages. Correspondingly, we will need to re-label the scale on the meter face to indicate its new measurement range with this proportioning circuit connected.

But how do we create the necessary proportioning circuit? Well, if our intention is to allow this meter movement to measure a greater *voltage* than it does now, what we need is a *voltage divider* circuit to proportion the total measured voltage into a lesser fraction across the meter movement's connection points. Knowing that voltage divider circuits are built from *series* resistances, we'll connect a resistor in series with the meter movement (using the movement's own internal resistance as the second resistance in the divider):



The series resistor is called a "multiplier" resistor because it *multiplies* the working range of the meter movement as it proportionately divides the measured voltage across it. Determining the required multiplier resistance value is an easy task if you're familiar with series circuit analysis.

For example, let's determine the necessary multiplier value to make this 1 mA, 500 Ω movement read exactly full-scale at an applied voltage of 10 volts. To do this, we first need to set up an E/I/R table for the two series components:

	Movement	$R_{multiplier}$	Total	
E				Volts
I				Amps
R				Ohms

Knowing that the movement will be at full-scale with 1 mA of current going through it, and that we want this to happen at an applied (total series circuit) voltage of 10 volts, we can fill in the table as such:

	Movement	$R_{multiplier}$	Total	
E			10	Volts
I	1m	1m	1m	Amps
R	500			Ohms

There are a couple of ways to determine the resistance value of the multiplier. One way

is to determine total circuit resistance using Ohm's Law in the "total" column (R=E/I), then subtract the 500 Ω of the movement to arrive at the value for the multiplier:

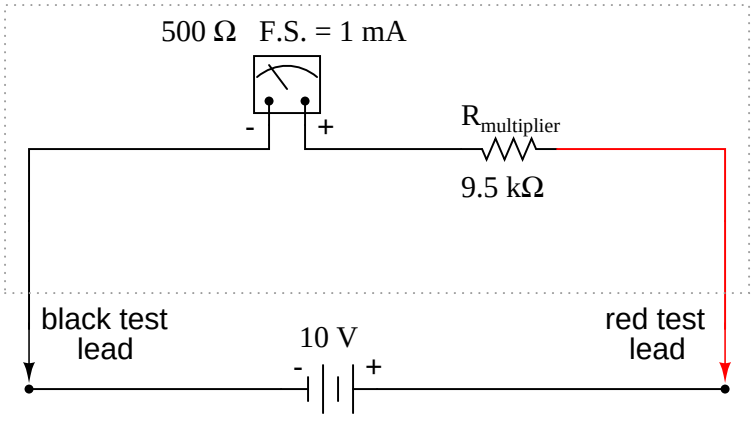
	Movement	$R_{multiplier}$	Total	
E			10	Volts
I	1m	1m	1m	Amps
R	500	**9.5k**	**10k**	Ohms

Another way to figure the same value of resistance would be to determine voltage drop across the movement at full-scale deflection (E=IR), then subtract that voltage drop from the total to arrive at the voltage across the multiplier resistor. Finally, Ohm's Law could be used again to determine resistance (R=E/I) for the multiplier:

	Movement	$R_{multiplier}$	Total	
E	**0.5**	**9.5**	10	Volts
I	1m	1m	1m	Amps
R	500	9.5k	10k	Ohms

Either way provides the same answer (9.5 kΩ), and one method could be used as verification for the other, to check accuracy of work.

Meter movement ranged for 10 volts full-scale



10 volts gives full-scale deflection of needle

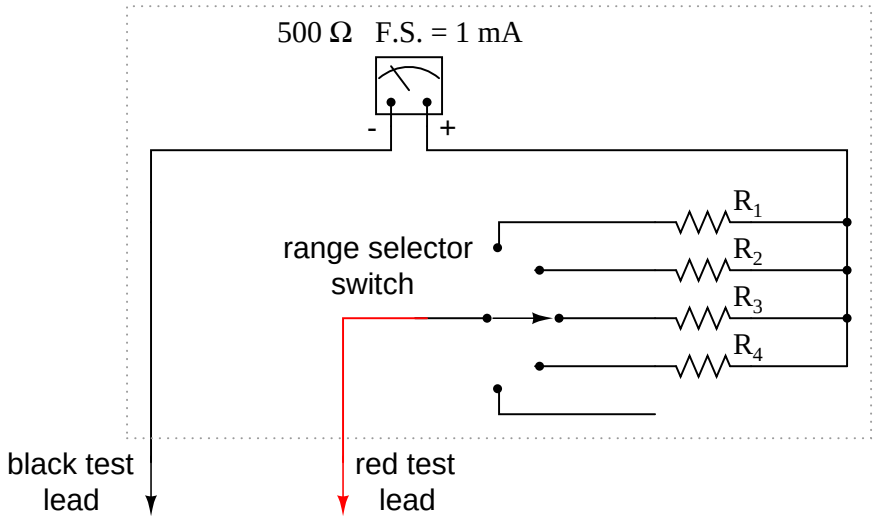
With exactly 10 volts applied between the meter test leads (from some battery or precision power supply), there will be exactly 1 mA of current through the meter movement, as restricted by the "multiplier" resistor and the movement's own internal resistance. Exactly 1/2 volt will be dropped across the resistance of the movement's wire coil, and the needle will be pointing precisely at full-scale. Having re-labeled the scale to read from 0 to 10 V (instead of 0 to 1 mA), anyone viewing the scale will interpret its indication as ten volts. Please take note that the

meter user does not have to be aware at all that the movement itself is actually measuring just a fraction of that ten volts from the external source. All that matters to the user is that the circuit as a whole functions to accurately display the total, applied voltage.

This is how practical electrical meters are designed and used: a sensitive meter movement is built to operate with as little voltage and current as possible for maximum sensitivity, then it is "fooled" by some sort of divider circuit built of precision resistors so that it indicates full-scale when a much larger voltage or current is impressed on the circuit as a whole. We have examined the design of a simple voltmeter here. Ammeters follow the same general rule, except that parallel-connected "shunt" resistors are used to create a *current divider* circuit as opposed to the series-connected *voltage divider* "multiplier" resistors used for voltmeter designs.

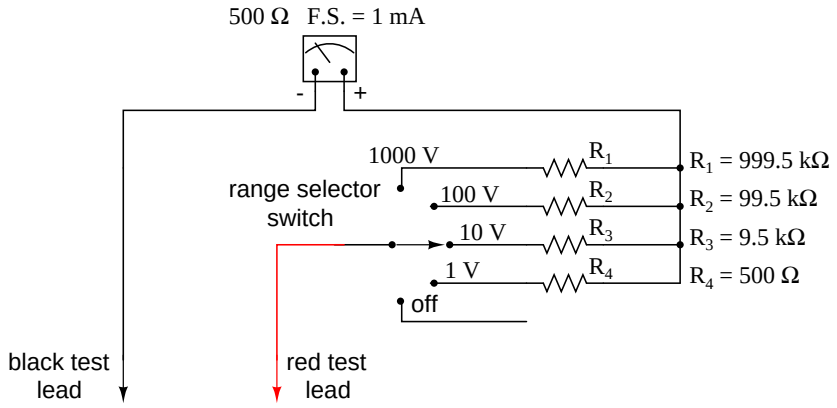
Generally, it is useful to have multiple ranges established for an electromechanical meter such as this, allowing it to read a broad range of voltages with a single movement mechanism. This is accomplished through the use of a multi-pole switch and several multiplier resistors, each one sized for a particular voltage range:

A multi-range voltmeter

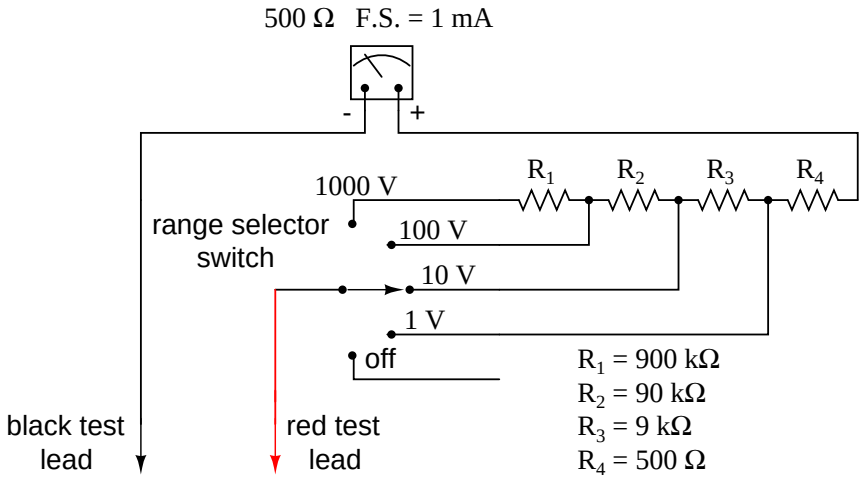


The five-position switch makes contact with only one resistor at a time. In the bottom (full clockwise) position, it makes contact with no resistor at all, providing an "off" setting. Each resistor is sized to provide a particular full-scale range for the voltmeter, all based on the particular rating of the meter movement (1 mA, 500 Ω). The end result is a voltmeter with four different full-scale ranges of measurement. Of course, in order to make this work sensibly, the meter movement's scale must be equipped with labels appropriate for each range.

With such a meter design, each resistor value is determined by the same technique, using a known total voltage, movement full-scale deflection rating, and movement resistance. For a voltmeter with ranges of 1 volt, 10 volts, 100 volts, and 1000 volts, the multiplier resistances would be as follows:



Note the multiplier resistor values used for these ranges, and how odd they are. It is highly unlikely that a 999.5 kΩ precision resistor will ever be found in a parts bin, so voltmeter designers often opt for a variation of the above design which uses more common resistor values:



With each successively higher voltage range, more multiplier resistors are pressed into service by the selector switch, making their series resistances add for the necessary total. For example, with the range selector switch set to the 1000 volt position, we need a total multiplier resistance value of 999.5 kΩ. With this meter design, that's exactly what we'll get:

$$R_{Total} = R_4 + R_3 + R_2 + R_1$$

$$R_{Total} = 900\ k\Omega + 90\ k\Omega + 9\ k\Omega + 500\ \Omega$$

$$R_{Total} = 999.5\ k\Omega$$

The advantage, of course, is that the individual multiplier resistor values are more common (900k, 90k, 9k) than some of the odd values in the first design (999.5k, 99.5k, 9.5k). From the perspective of the meter user, however, there will be no discernible difference in function.

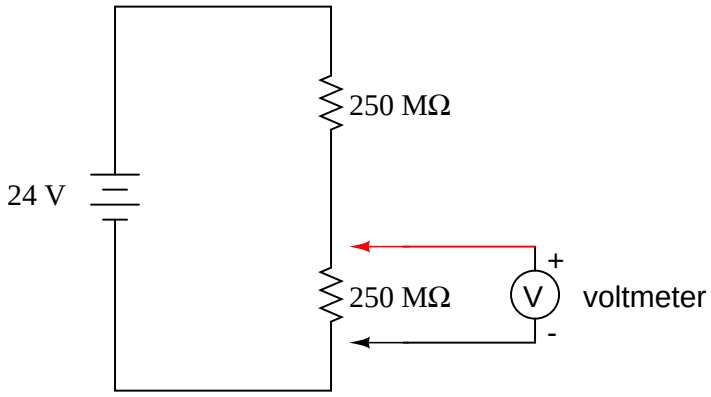
- **REVIEW:**

- Extended voltmeter ranges are created for sensitive meter movements by adding series "multiplier" resistors to the movement circuit, providing a precise voltage division ratio.

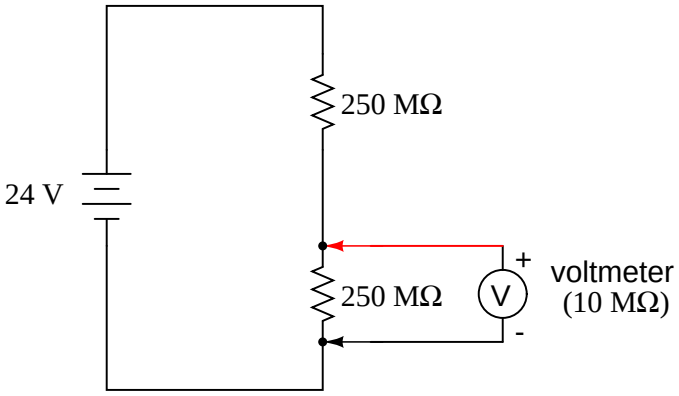
8.3 Voltmeter impact on measured circuit

Every meter impacts the circuit it is measuring to some extent, just as any tire-pressure gauge changes the measured tire pressure slightly as some air is let out to operate the gauge. While some impact is inevitable, it can be minimized through good meter design.

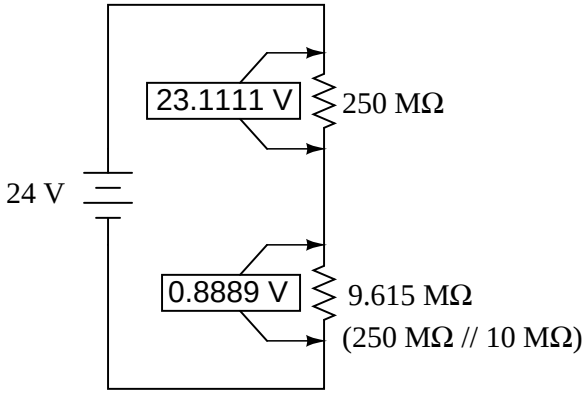
Since voltmeters are always connected in parallel with the component or components under test, any current through the voltmeter will contribute to the overall current in the tested circuit, potentially affecting the voltage being measured. A perfect voltmeter has infinite resistance, so that it draws no current from the circuit under test. However, perfect voltmeters only exist in the pages of textbooks, not in real life! Take the following voltage divider circuit as an extreme example of how a realistic voltmeter might impact the circuit its measuring:



With no voltmeter connected to the circuit, there should be exactly 12 volts across each 250 MΩ resistor in the series circuit, the two equal-value resistors dividing the total voltage (24 volts) exactly in half. However, if the voltmeter in question has a lead-to-lead resistance of 10 MΩ (a common amount for a modern digital voltmeter), its resistance will create a parallel subcircuit with the lower resistor of the divider when connected:



This effectively reduces the lower resistance from 250 MΩ to 9.615 MΩ (250 MΩ and 10 MΩ in parallel), drastically altering voltage drops in the circuit. The lower resistor will now have far less voltage across it than before, and the upper resistor far more.



A voltage divider with resistance values of 250 MΩ and 9.615 MΩ will divide 24 volts into portions of 23.1111 volts and 0.8889 volts, respectively. Since the voltmeter is part of that 9.615 MΩ resistance, that is what it will indicate: 0.8889 volts.

Now, the voltmeter can only indicate the voltage its connected across. It has no way of "knowing" there was a potential of 12 volts dropped across the lower 250 MΩ resistor *before* it was connected across it. The very act of connecting the voltmeter to the circuit makes it part of the circuit, and the voltmeter's own resistance alters the resistance ratio of the voltage divider circuit, consequently affecting the voltage being measured.

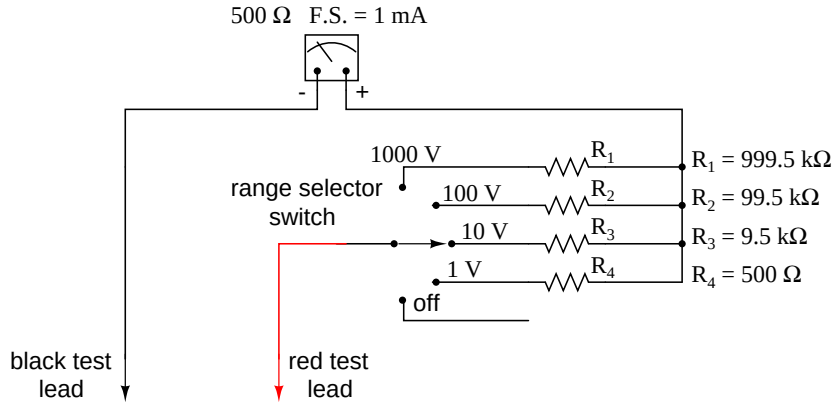
Imagine using a tire pressure gauge that took so great a volume of air to operate that it would deflate any tire it was connected to. The amount of air consumed by the pressure gauge in the act of measurement is analogous to the current taken by the voltmeter movement to move the needle. The less air a pressure gauge requires to operate, the less it will deflate the tire under test. The less current drawn by a voltmeter to actuate the needle, the less it will burden the circuit under test.

This effect is called *loading*, and it is present to some degree in every instance of voltmeter usage. The scenario shown here is worst-case, with a voltmeter resistance substantially lower

than the resistances of the divider resistors. But there always will be some degree of loading, causing the meter to indicate less than the true voltage with no meter connected. Obviously, the higher the voltmeter resistance, the less loading of the circuit under test, and that is why an ideal voltmeter has infinite internal resistance.

Voltmeters with electromechanical movements are typically given ratings in "ohms per volt" of range to designate the amount of circuit impact created by the current draw of the movement. Because such meters rely on different values of multiplier resistors to give different measurement ranges, their lead-to-lead resistances will change depending on what range they're set to. Digital voltmeters, on the other hand, often exhibit a constant resistance across their test leads regardless of range setting (but not always!), and as such are usually rated simply in ohms of input resistance, rather than "ohms per volt" sensitivity.

What "ohms per volt" means is how many ohms of lead-to-lead resistance for every volt of *range setting* on the selector switch. Let's take our example voltmeter from the last section as an example:



On the 1000 volt scale, the total resistance is 1 MΩ (999.5 kΩ + 500Ω), giving 1,000,000 Ω per 1000 volts of range, or 1000 ohms per volt (1 kΩ/V). This ohms-per-volt "sensitivity" rating remains constant for any range of this meter:

100 volt range $\dfrac{100\ \text{k}\Omega}{100\ \text{V}} = 1000\ \Omega/\text{V}$ sensitivity

10 volt range $\dfrac{10\ \text{k}\Omega}{10\ \text{V}} = 1000\ \Omega/\text{V}$ sensitivity

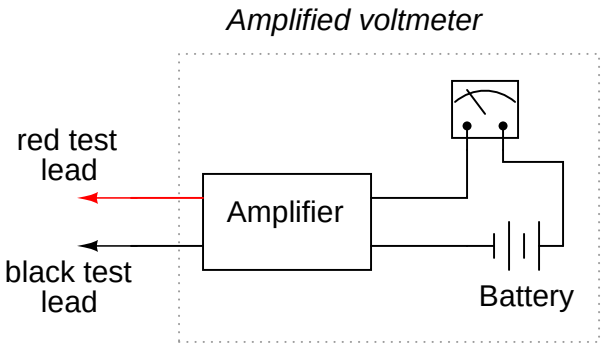
1 volt range $\dfrac{1\ \text{k}\Omega}{1\ \text{V}} = 1000\ \Omega/\text{V}$ sensitivity

The astute observer will notice that the ohms-per-volt rating of any meter is determined by a single factor: the full-scale current of the movement, in this case 1 mA. "Ohms per volt" is the mathematical reciprocal of "volts per ohm," which is defined by Ohm's Law as current (I=E/R). Consequently, the full-scale *current* of the movement dictates the Ω/volt sensitivity of the meter,

regardless of what ranges the designer equips it with through multiplier resistors. In this case, the meter movement's full-scale current rating of 1 mA gives it a voltmeter sensitivity of 1000 Ω/V regardless of how we range it with multiplier resistors.

To minimize the loading of a voltmeter on any circuit, the designer must seek to minimize the current draw of its movement. This can be accomplished by re-designing the movement itself for maximum sensitivity (less current required for full-scale deflection), but the tradeoff here is typically ruggedness: a more sensitive movement tends to be more fragile.

Another approach is to electronically boost the current sent to the movement, so that very little current needs to be drawn from the circuit under test. This special electronic circuit is known as an *amplifier*, and the voltmeter thus constructed is an *amplified voltmeter*.



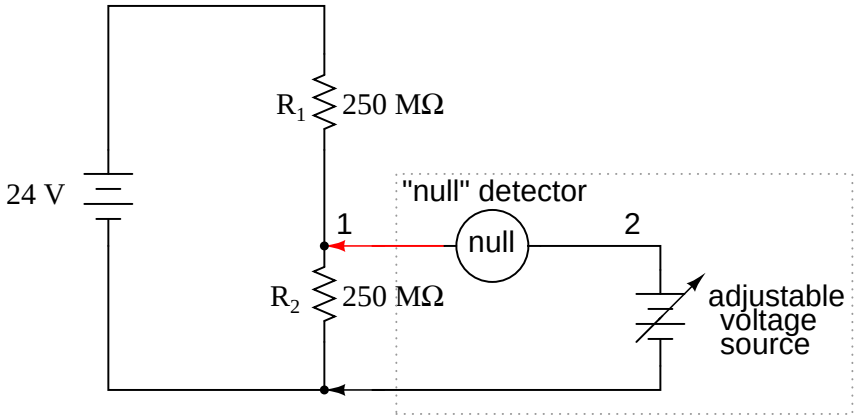
The internal workings of an amplifier are too complex to be discussed at this point, but suffice it to say that the circuit allows the measured voltage to *control* how much battery current is sent to the meter movement. Thus, the movement's current needs are supplied by a battery internal to the voltmeter and not by the circuit under test. The amplifier still loads the circuit under test to some degree, but generally hundreds or thousands of times less than the meter movement would by itself.

Before the advent of semiconductors known as "field-effect transistors," vacuum tubes were used as amplifying devices to perform this boosting. Such *vacuum-tube voltmeters*, or *(VTVM's)* were once very popular instruments for electronic test and measurement. Here is a photograph of a very old VTVM, with the vacuum tube exposed!

Now, solid-state transistor amplifier circuits accomplish the same task in digital meter designs. While this approach (of using an amplifier to boost the measured signal current) works well, it vastly complicates the design of the meter, making it nearly impossible for the beginning electronics student to comprehend its internal workings.

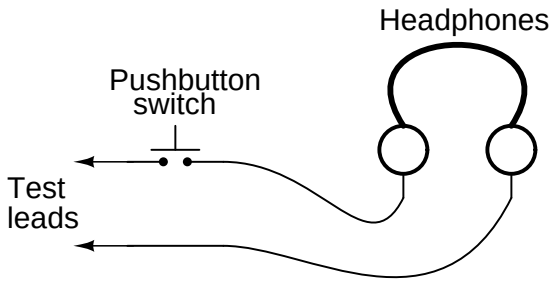
A final, and ingenious, solution to the problem of voltmeter loading is that of the *potentiometric* or *null-balance* instrument. It requires no advanced (electronic) circuitry or sensitive devices like transistors or vacuum tubes, but it does require greater technician involvement and skill. In a potentiometric instrument, a precision adjustable voltage source is compared against the measured voltage, and a sensitive device called a *null detector* is used to indicate when the two voltages are equal. In some circuit designs, a precision *potentiometer* is used to provide the adjustable voltage, hence the label *potentiometric*. When the voltages are equal, there will be zero current drawn from the circuit under test, and thus the measured voltage should be unaffected. It is easy to show how this works with our last example, the high-resistance voltage divider circuit:

Potentiometric voltage measurement

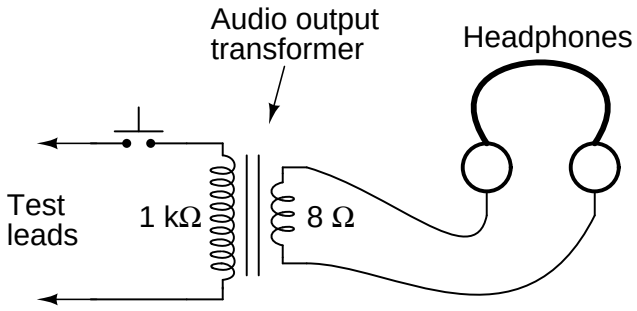


The ”null detector” is a sensitive device capable of indicating the presence of very small voltages. If an electromechanical meter movement is used as the null detector, it will have a spring-centered needle that can deflect in either direction so as to be useful for indicating a voltage of either polarity. As the purpose of a null detector is to accurately indicate a condition of *zero* voltage, rather than to indicate any specific (nonzero) quantity as a normal voltmeter would, the scale of the instrument used is irrelevant. Null detectors are typically designed to be as sensitive as possible in order to more precisely indicate a ”null” or ”balance” (zero voltage) condition.

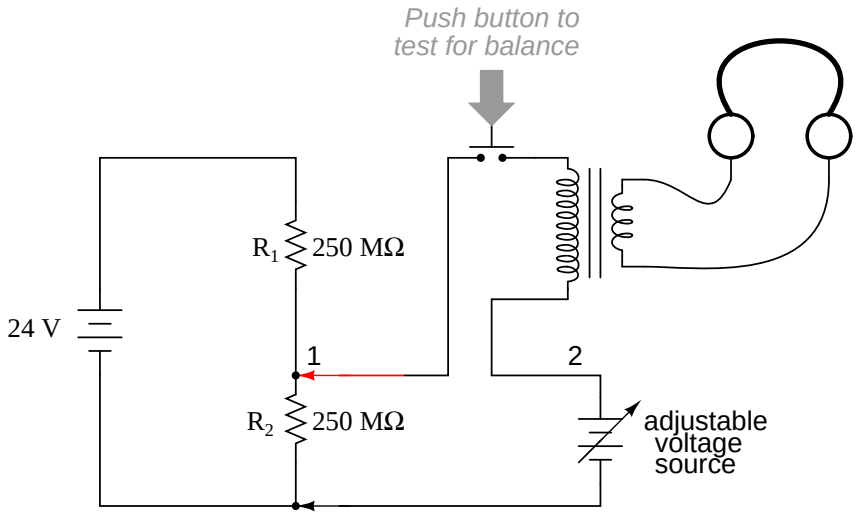
An extremely simple type of null detector is a set of audio headphones, the speakers within acting as a kind of meter movement. When a DC voltage is initially applied to a speaker, the resulting current through it will move the speaker cone and produce an audible ”click.” Another ”click” sound will be heard when the DC source is disconnected. Building on this principle, a sensitive null detector may be made from nothing more than headphones and a momentary contact switch:



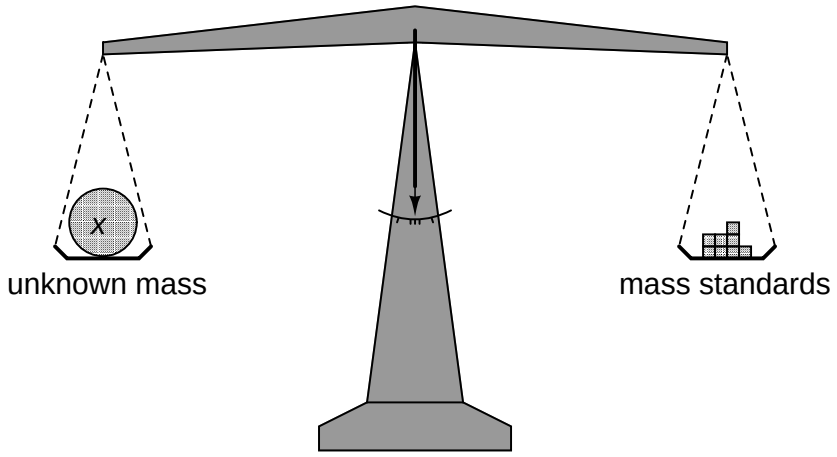
If a set of "8 ohm" headphones are used for this purpose, its sensitivity may be greatly increased by connecting it to a device called a *transformer*. The transformer exploits principles of electromagnetism to "transform" the voltage and current levels of electrical energy pulses. In this case, the type of transformer used is a *step-down* transformer, and it converts low-current pulses (created by closing and opening the pushbutton switch while connected to a small voltage source) into higher-current pulses to more efficiently drive the speaker cones inside the headphones. An "audio output" transformer with an impedance ratio of 1000:8 is ideal for this purpose. The transformer also increases detector sensitivity by accumulating the energy of a low-current signal in a magnetic field for sudden release into the headphone speakers when the switch is opened. Thus, it will produce louder "clicks" for detecting smaller signals:



Connected to the potentiometric circuit as a null detector, the switch/transformer/headphone arrangement is used as such:

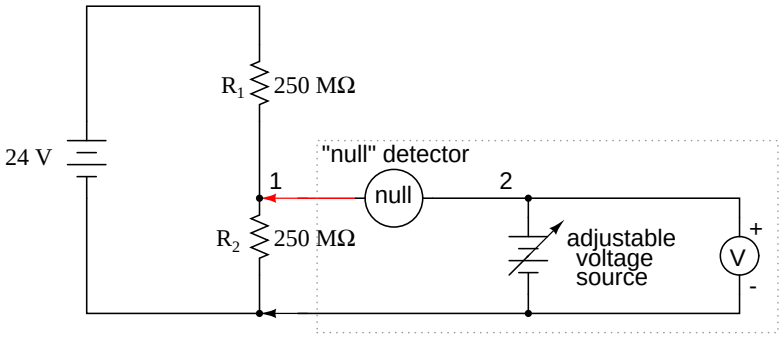


The purpose of any null detector is to act like a laboratory balance scale, indicating when the two voltages are equal (absence of voltage between points 1 and 2) and nothing more. The laboratory scale balance beam doesn't actually weigh anything; rather, it simply indicates *equality* between the unknown mass and the pile of standard (calibrated) masses.



Likewise, the null detector simply indicates when the voltage between points 1 and 2 are equal, which (according to Kirchhoff's Voltage Law) will be when the adjustable voltage source (the battery symbol with a diagonal arrow going through it) is precisely equal in voltage to the drop across R_2.

To operate this instrument, the technician would manually adjust the output of the precision voltage source until the null detector indicated exactly zero (if using audio headphones as the null detector, the technician would repeatedly press and release the pushbutton switch, listening for silence to indicate that the circuit was "balanced"), and then note the source voltage as indicated by a voltmeter connected across the precision voltage source, that indication being representative of the voltage across the lower 250 MΩ resistor:



Adjust voltage source until null detector registers zero.
Then, read voltmeter indication for voltage across R_2.

The voltmeter used to directly measure the precision source need not have an extremely high Ω/V sensitivity, because the source will supply all the current it needs to operate. So long as there is zero voltage across the null detector, there will be zero current between points 1 and 2, equating to no loading of the divider circuit under test.

It is worthy to reiterate the fact that this method, properly executed, places *almost zero load* upon the measured circuit. Ideally, it places absolutely no load on the tested circuit, but to achieve this ideal goal the null detector would have to have *absolutely zero voltage across it*, which would require an infinitely sensitive null meter and a perfect balance of voltage from the adjustable voltage source. However, despite its practical inability to achieve absolute zero loading, a potentiometric circuit is still an excellent technique for measuring voltage in high-resistance circuits. And unlike the electronic amplifier solution, which solves the problem with advanced technology, the potentiometric method achieves a hypothetically perfect solution by exploiting a fundamental law of electricity (KVL).

- **REVIEW:**
- An ideal voltmeter has infinite resistance.
- Too low of an internal resistance in a voltmeter will adversely affect the circuit being measured.
- Vacuum tube voltmeters (VTVM's), transistor voltmeters, and potentiometric circuits are all means of minimizing the load placed on a measured circuit. Of these methods, the potentiometric ("null-balance") technique is the only one capable of placing *zero* load on the circuit.
- A *null detector* is a device built for maximum sensitivity to small voltages or currents. It is used in potentiometric voltmeter circuits to indicate the *absence* of voltage between two points, thus indicating a condition of balance between an adjustable voltage source and the voltage being measured.

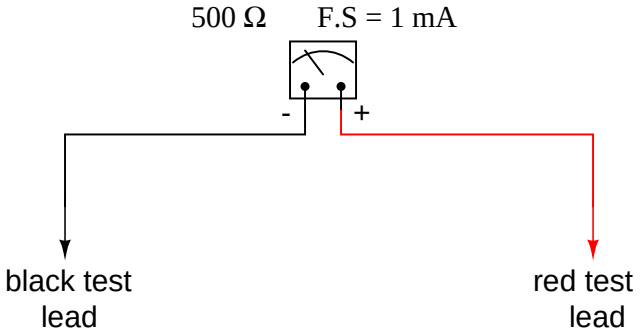
8.4 Ammeter design

A meter designed to measure electrical current is popularly called an "ammeter" because the unit of measurement is "amps."

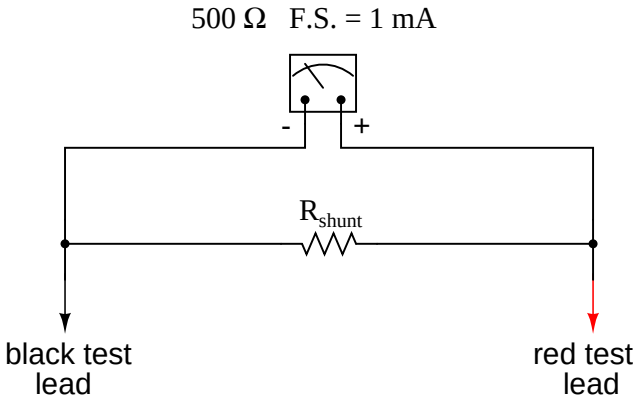
In ammeter designs, external resistors added to extend the usable range of the movement are connected in *parallel* with the movement rather than in series as is the case for voltmeters. This is because we want to divide the measured current, not the measured voltage, going to the movement, and because current divider circuits are always formed by parallel resistances.

Taking the same meter movement as the voltmeter example, we can see that it would make a very limited instrument by itself, full-scale deflection occurring at only 1 mA:

As is the case with extending a meter movement's voltage-measuring ability, we would have to correspondingly re-label the movement's scale so that it read differently for an extended current range. For example, if we wanted to design an ammeter to have a full-scale range of 5 amps using the same meter movement as before (having an intrinsic full-scale range of only 1 mA), we would have to re-label the movement's scale to read 0 A on the far left and 5 A on the far right, rather than 0 mA to 1 mA as before. Whatever extended range provided by the parallel-connected resistors, we would have to represent graphically on the meter movement face.



Using 5 amps as an extended range for our sample movement, let's determine the amount of parallel resistance necessary to "shunt," or bypass, the majority of current so that only 1 mA will go through the movement with a total current of 5 A:



	Movement	R_{shunt}	Total	
E				Volts
I	1m		5	Amps
R	500			Ohms

From our given values of movement current, movement resistance, and total circuit (measured) current, we can determine the voltage across the meter movement (Ohm's Law applied to the center column, E=IR):

	Movement	R_{shunt}	Total	
E	**0.5**			Volts
I	1m		5	Amps
R	500			Ohms

Knowing that the circuit formed by the movement and the shunt is of a parallel configuration, we know that the voltage across the movement, shunt, and test leads (total) must be the same:

	Movement	R_{shunt}	Total	
E	0.5	**0.5**	**0.5**	Volts
I	1m		5	Amps
R	500			Ohms

We also know that the current through the shunt must be the difference between the total current (5 amps) and the current through the movement (1 mA), because branch currents add in a parallel configuration:

	Movement	R_{shunt}	Total	
E	0.5	0.5	0.5	Volts
I	1m	**4.999**	5	Amps
R	500			Ohms

Then, using Ohm's Law (R=E/I) in the right column, we can determine the necessary shunt resistance:

	Movement	R_{shunt}	Total	
E	0.5	0.5	0.5	Volts
I	1m	4.999	5	Amps
R	500	**100.02m**		Ohms

Of course, we could have calculated the same value of just over 100 milli-ohms (100 mΩ) for the shunt by calculating total resistance (R=E/I; 0.5 volts/5 amps = 100 mΩ exactly), then

working the parallel resistance formula backwards, but the arithmetic would have been more challenging:

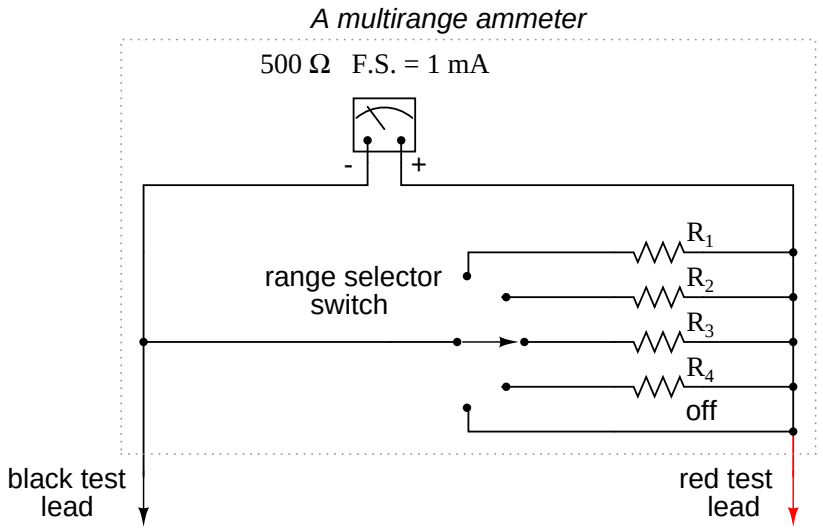
$$R_{shunt} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{100m} - \frac{1}{500}}$$

$$R_{shunt} = 100.02\ m\Omega$$

In real life, the shunt resistor of an ammeter will usually be encased within the protective metal housing of the meter unit, hidden from sight. Note the construction of the ammeter in the following photograph:

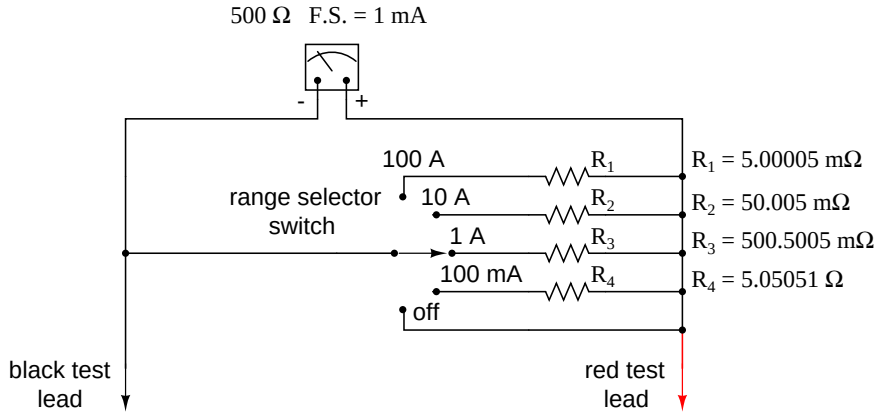
This particular ammeter is an automotive unit manufactured by Stewart-Warner. Although the D'Arsonval meter movement itself probably has a full scale rating in the range of milliamps, the meter as a whole has a range of +/- 60 amps. The shunt resistor providing this high current range is enclosed within the metal housing of the meter. Note also with this particular meter that the needle centers at zero amps and can indicate either a "positive" current or a "negative" current. Connected to the battery charging circuit of an automobile, this meter is able to indicate a charging condition (electrons flowing from generator to battery) or a discharging condition (electrons flowing from battery to the rest of the car's loads).

As is the case with multiple-range voltmeters, ammeters can be given more than one usable range by incorporating several shunt resistors switched with a multi-pole switch:



Notice that the range resistors are connected through the switch so as to be in parallel with the meter movement, rather than in series as it was in the voltmeter design. The five-position switch makes contact with only one resistor at a time, of course. Each resistor is sized accordingly for a different full-scale range, based on the particular rating of the meter movement (1 mA, 500 Ω).

With such a meter design, each resistor value is determined by the same technique, using a known total current, movement full-scale deflection rating, and movement resistance. For an ammeter with ranges of 100 mA, 1 A, 10 A, and 100 A, the shunt resistances would be as such:



Notice that these shunt resistor values are very low! 5.00005 mΩ is 5.00005 milli-ohms, or 0.00500005 ohms! To achieve these low resistances, ammeter shunt resistors often have to be custom-made from relatively large-diameter wire or solid pieces of metal.

One thing to be aware of when sizing ammeter shunt resistors is the factor of power dissipation. Unlike the voltmeter, an ammeter's range resistors have to carry large amounts of current. If those shunt resistors are not sized accordingly, they may overheat and suffer damage, or at the very least lose accuracy due to overheating. For the example meter above, the

power dissipations at full-scale indication are (the double-squiggly lines represent "approximately equal to" in mathematics):

$$P_{R1} = \frac{E^2}{R_1} = \frac{(0.5\ V)^2}{5.00005\ m\Omega} \approx 50\ W$$

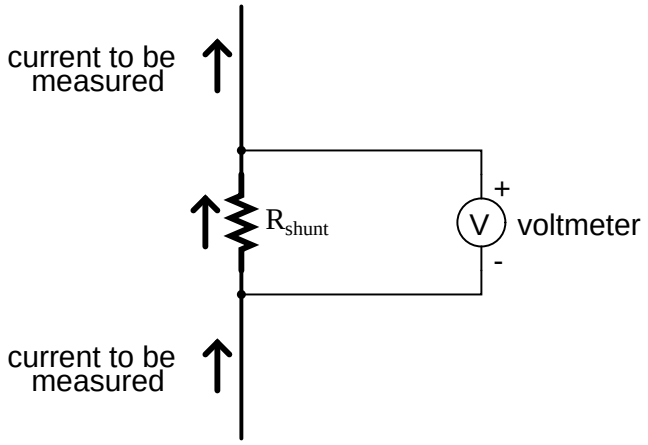
$$P_{R2} = \frac{E^2}{R_2} = \frac{(0.5\ V)^2}{50.005\ m\Omega} \approx 5\ W$$

$$P_{R3} = \frac{E^2}{R_3} = \frac{(0.5\ V)^2}{500.5\ m\Omega} \approx 0.5\ W$$

$$P_{R4} = \frac{E^2}{R_4} = \frac{(0.5\ V)^2}{5.05\ \Omega} \approx 49.5\ mW$$

An 1/8 watt resistor would work just fine for R_4, a 1/2 watt resistor would suffice for R_3 and a 5 watt for R_2 (although resistors tend to maintain their long-term accuracy better if not operated near their rated power dissipation, so you might want to over-rate resistors R_2 and R_3), but precision 50 watt resistors are rare and expensive components indeed. A custom resistor made from metal stock or thick wire may have to be constructed for R_1 to meet both the requirements of low resistance and high power rating.

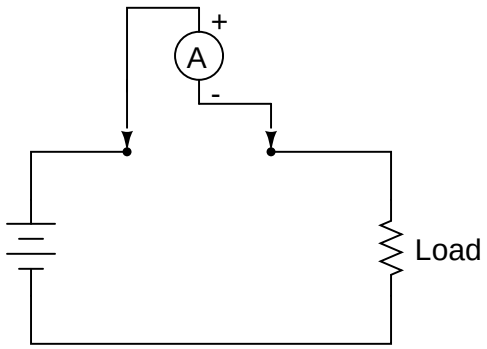
Sometimes, shunt resistors are used in conjunction with voltmeters of high input resistance to measure current. In these cases, the current through the voltmeter movement is small enough to be considered negligible, and the shunt resistance can be sized according to how many volts or millivolts of drop will be produced per amp of current:



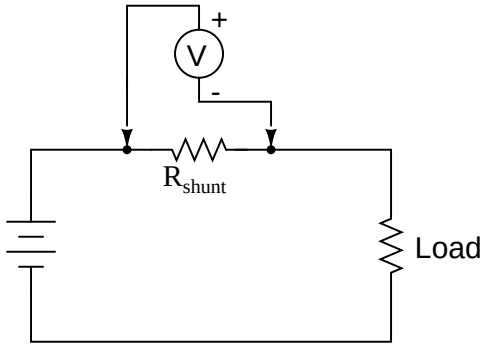
If, for example, the shunt resistor in the above circuit were sized at precisely 1 Ω, there would be 1 volt dropped across it for every amp of current through it. The voltmeter indication could then be taken as a direct indication of current through the shunt. For measuring very small currents, higher values of shunt resistance could be used to generate more voltage drop

per given unit of current, thus extending the usable range of the (volt)meter down into lower amounts of current. The use of voltmeters in conjunction with low-value shunt resistances for the measurement of current is something commonly seen in industrial applications.

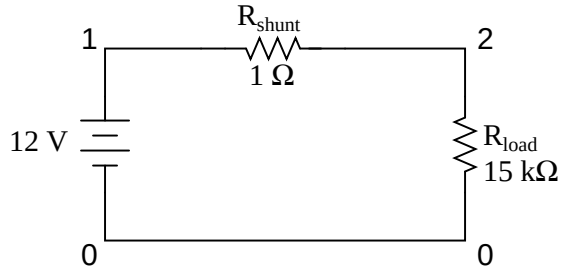
The use of a shunt resistor along with a voltmeter to measure current can be a useful trick for simplifying the task of frequent current measurements in a circuit. Normally, to measure current through a circuit with an ammeter, the circuit would have to be broken (interrupted) and the ammeter inserted between the separated wire ends, like this:



If we have a circuit where current needs to be measured often, or we would just like to make the process of current measurement more convenient, a shunt resistor could be placed between those points and left there permanently, current readings taken with a voltmeter as needed without interrupting continuity in the circuit:



Of course, care must be taken in sizing the shunt resistor low enough so that it doesn't adversely affect the circuit's normal operation, but this is generally not difficult to do. This technique might also be useful in computer circuit analysis, where we might want to have the computer display current through a circuit in terms of a voltage (with SPICE, this would allow us to avoid the idiosyncrasy of reading negative current values):




```
shunt resistor example circuit
v1 1 0
rshunt 1 2 1
rload 2 0 15k
.dc v1 12 12 1
.print dc v(1,2)
.end

v1             v(1,2)
1.200E+01      7.999E-04
```

We would interpret the voltage reading across the shunt resistor (between circuit nodes 1 and 2 in the SPICE simulation) directly as amps, with 7.999E-04 being 0.7999 mA, or 799.9 μA. Ideally, 12 volts applied directly across 15 kΩ would give us exactly 0.8 mA, but the resistance of the shunt lessens that current just a tiny bit (as it would in real life). However, such a tiny error is generally well within acceptable limits of accuracy for either a simulation or a real circuit, and so shunt resistors can be used in all but the most demanding applications for accurate current measurement.

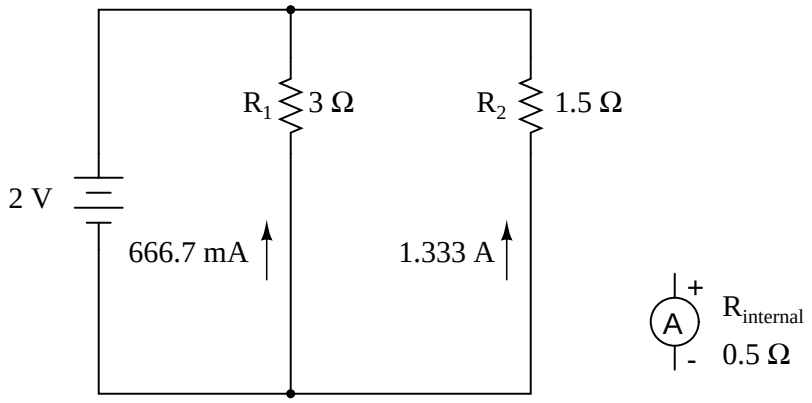
- **REVIEW:**
- Ammeter ranges are created by adding parallel "shunt" resistors to the movement circuit, providing a precise current division.
- Shunt resistors may have high power dissipations, so be careful when choosing parts for such meters!
- Shunt resistors can be used in conjunction with high-resistance voltmeters as well as low-resistance ammeter movements, producing accurate voltage drops for given amounts of current. Shunt resistors should be selected for as low a resistance value as possible to minimize their impact upon the circuit under test.

8.5 Ammeter impact on measured circuit

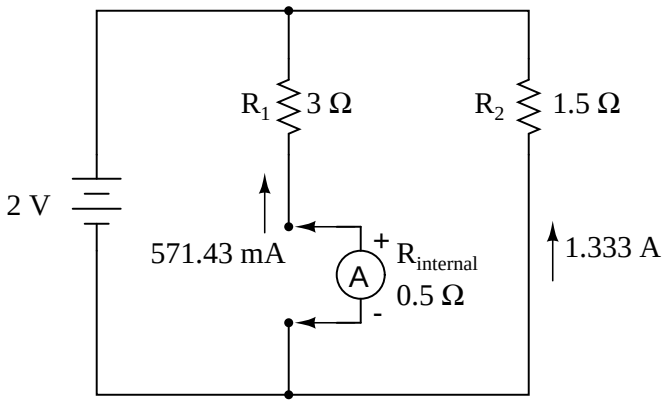
Just like voltmeters, ammeters tend to influence the amount of current in the circuits they're connected to. However, unlike the ideal voltmeter, the ideal ammeter has zero internal resistance, so as to drop as little voltage as possible as electrons flow through it. Note that this ideal

resistance value is exactly opposite as that of a voltmeter. With voltmeters, we want as little current to be drawn as possible from the circuit under test. With ammeters, we want as little voltage to be dropped as possible while conducting current.

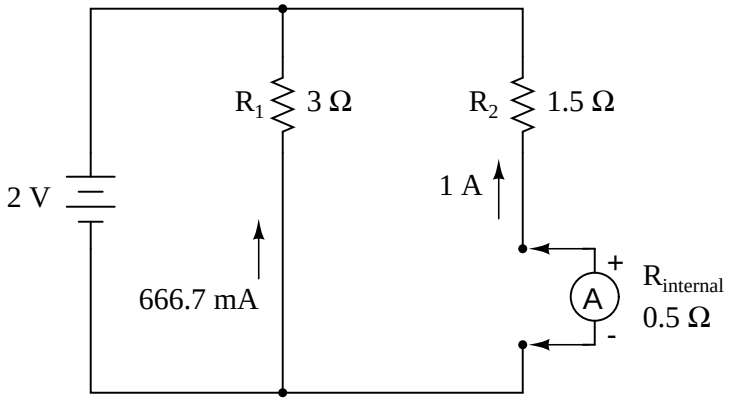
Here is an extreme example of an ammeter's effect upon a circuit:



With the ammeter disconnected from this circuit, the current through the 3 Ω resistor would be 666.7 mA, and the current through the 1.5 Ω resistor would be 1.33 amps. If the ammeter had an internal resistance of 1/2 Ω, and it were inserted into one of the branches of this circuit, though, its resistance would seriously affect the measured branch current:



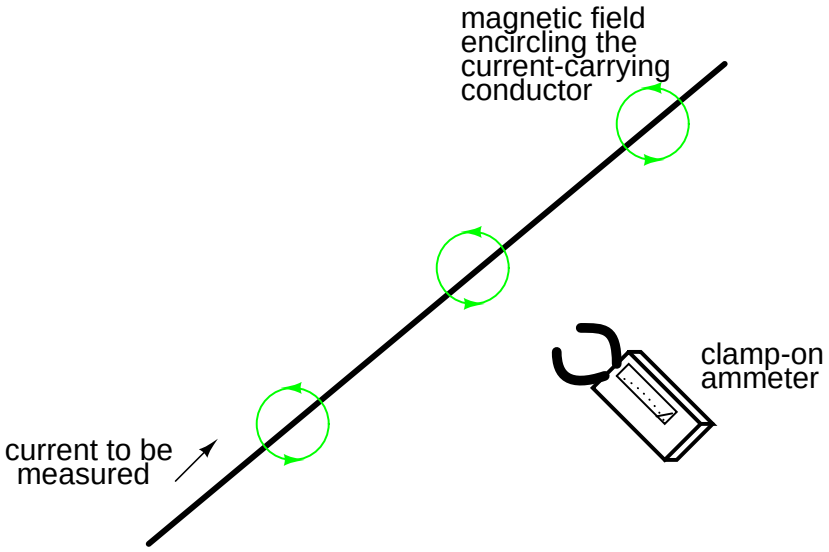
Having effectively increased the left branch resistance from 3 Ω to 3.5 Ω, the ammeter will read 571.43 mA instead of 666.7 mA. Placing the same ammeter in the right branch would affect the current to an even greater extent:



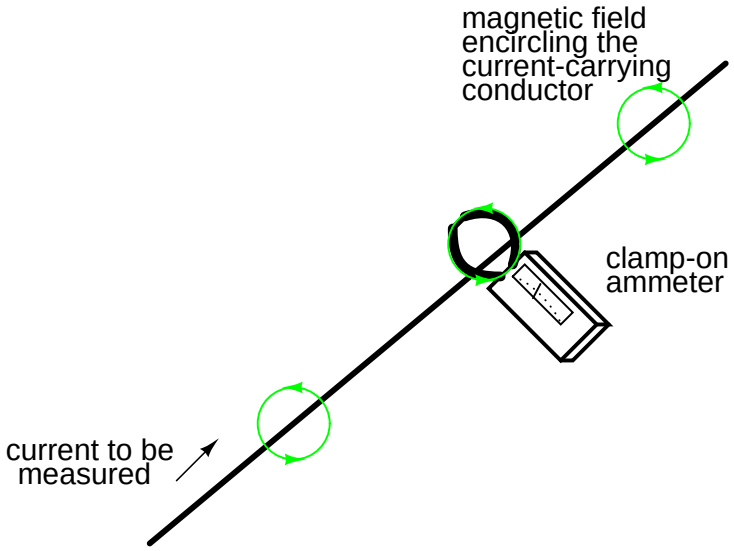
Now the right branch current is 1 amp instead of 1.333 amps, due to the increase in resistance created by the addition of the ammeter into the current path.

When using standard ammeters that connect in series with the circuit being measured, it might not be practical or possible to redesign the meter for a lower input (lead-to-lead) resistance. However, if we were selecting a value of shunt resistor to place in the circuit for a current measurement based on voltage drop, and we had our choice of a wide range of resistances, it would be best to choose the lowest practical resistance for the application. Any more resistance than necessary and the shunt may impact the circuit adversely by adding excessive resistance in the current path.

One ingenious way to reduce the impact that a current-measuring device has on a circuit is to use the circuit wire as part of the ammeter movement itself. All current-carrying wires produce a magnetic field, the strength of which is in direct proportion to the strength of the current. By building an instrument that measures the strength of that magnetic field, a no-contact ammeter can be produced. Such a meter is able to measure the current through a conductor without even having to make physical contact with the circuit, much less break continuity or insert additional resistance.



Ammeters of this design are made, and are called "*clamp-on*" meters because they have "jaws" which can be opened and then secured around a circuit wire. Clamp-on ammeters make for quick and safe current measurements, especially on high-power industrial circuits. Because the circuit under test has had no additional resistance inserted into it by a clamp-on meter, there is no error induced in taking a current measurement.



The actual movement mechanism of a clamp-on ammeter is much the same as for an iron-vane instrument, except that there is no internal wire coil to generate the magnetic field. More modern designs of clamp-on ammeters utilize a small magnetic field detector device called a *Hall-effect sensor* to accurately determine field strength. Some clamp-on meters contain electronic amplifier circuitry to generate a small voltage proportional to the current in the

wire between the jaws, that small voltage connected to a voltmeter for convenient readout by a technician. Thus, a clamp-on unit can be an accessory device to a voltmeter, for current measurement.

A less accurate type of magnetic-field-sensing ammeter than the clamp-on style is shown in the following photograph:

The operating principle for this ammeter is identical to the clamp-on style of meter: the circular magnetic field surrounding a current-carrying conductor deflects the meter's needle, producing an indication on the scale. Note how there are two current scales on this particular meter: +/- 75 amps and +/- 400 amps. These two measurement scales correspond to the two sets of notches on the back of the meter. Depending on which set of notches the current-carrying conductor is laid in, a given strength of magnetic field will have a different amount of effect on the needle. In effect, the two different positions of the conductor relative to the movement act as two different range resistors in a direct-connection style of ammeter.

- **REVIEW:**
- An ideal ammeter has zero resistance.
- A "clamp-on" ammeter measures current through a wire by measuring the strength of the magnetic field around it rather than by becoming part of the circuit, making it an ideal ammeter.
- Clamp-on meters make for quick and safe current measurements, because there is no conductive contact between the meter and the circuit.

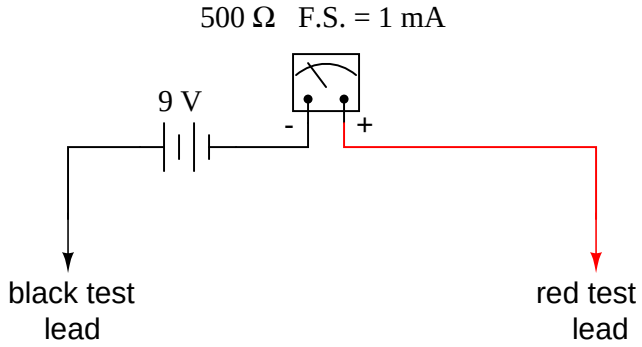
8.6 Ohmmeter design

Though mechanical ohmmeter (resistance meter) designs are rarely used today, having largely been superseded by digital instruments, their operation is nonetheless intriguing and worthy of study.

The purpose of an ohmmeter, of course, is to measure the resistance placed between its leads. This resistance reading is indicated through a mechanical meter movement which operates on electric current. The ohmmeter must then have an internal source of voltage to create the necessary current to operate the movement, and also have appropriate ranging resistors to allow just the right amount of current through the movement at any given resistance.

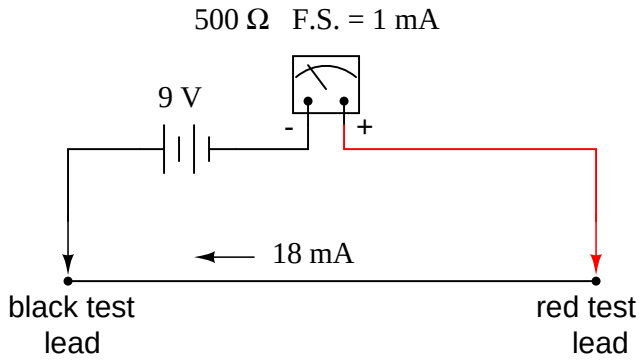
Starting with a simple movement and battery circuit, let's see how it would function as an ohmmeter:

A simple ohmmeter



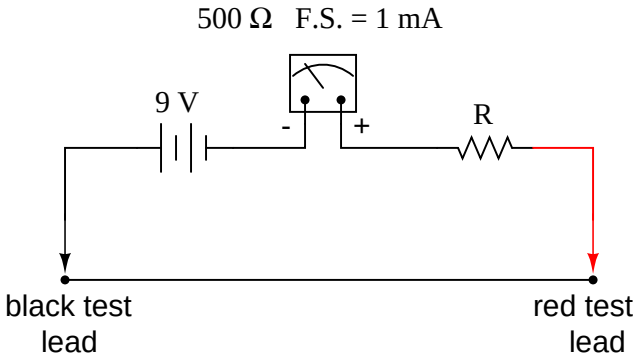
When there is infinite resistance (no continuity between test leads), there is zero current through the meter movement, and the needle points toward the far left of the scale. In this regard, the ohmmeter indication is "backwards" because maximum indication (infinity) is on the left of the scale, while voltage and current meters have zero at the left of their scales.

If the test leads of this ohmmeter are directly shorted together (measuring zero Ω), the meter movement will have a maximum amount of current through it, limited only by the battery voltage and the movement's internal resistance:



With 9 volts of battery potential and only 500 Ω of movement resistance, our circuit current will be 18 mA, which is far beyond the full-scale rating of the movement. Such an excess of current will likely damage the meter.

Not only that, but having such a condition limits the usefulness of the device. If full left-of-scale on the meter face represents an infinite amount of resistance, then full right-of-scale should represent zero. Currently, our design "pegs" the meter movement hard to the right when zero resistance is attached between the leads. We need a way to make it so that the movement just registers full-scale when the test leads are shorted together. This is accomplished by adding a series resistance to the meter's circuit:



To determine the proper value for R, we calculate the total circuit resistance needed to limit current to 1 mA (full-scale deflection on the movement) with 9 volts of potential from the battery, then subtract the movement's internal resistance from that figure:

$$R_{total} = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{9\ V}{1\ mA}$$

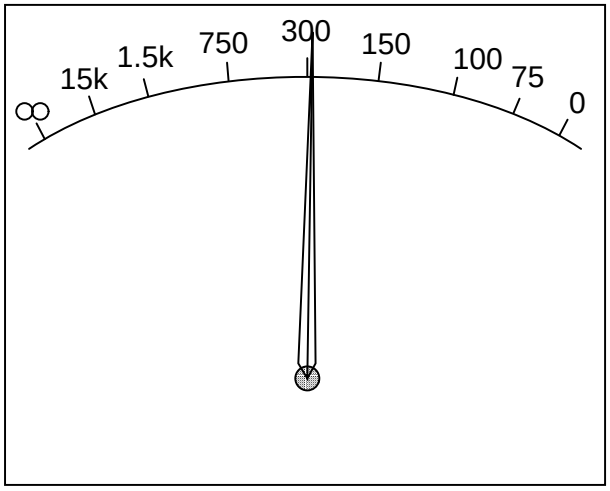
$$R_{total} = 9\ k\Omega$$

$$R = R_{total} - 500\ \Omega = 8.5\ k\Omega$$

Now that the right value for R has been calculated, we're still left with a problem of meter range. On the left side of the scale we have "infinity" and on the right side we have zero. Besides being "backwards" from the scales of voltmeters and ammeters, this scale is strange because it goes from nothing to everything, rather than from nothing to a finite value (such as 10 volts, 1 amp, etc.). One might pause to wonder, "what does middle-of-scale represent? What figure lies exactly between zero and infinity?" Infinity is more than just a *very big* amount: it is an incalculable quantity, larger than any definite number ever could be. If half-scale indication on any other type of meter represents 1/2 of the full-scale range value, then what is half of infinity on an ohmmeter scale?

The answer to this paradox is a *logarithmic scale*. Simply put, the scale of an ohmmeter does not smoothly progress from zero to infinity as the needle sweeps from right to left. Rather, the scale starts out "expanded" at the right-hand side, with the successive resistance values growing closer and closer to each other toward the left side of the scale:

An ohmmeter's logarithmic scale



Infinity cannot be approached in a linear (even) fashion, because the scale would *never* get there! With a logarithmic scale, the amount of resistance spanned for any given distance on the scale increases as the scale progresses toward infinity, making infinity an attainable goal.

We still have a question of range for our ohmmeter, though. What value of resistance between the test leads will cause exactly 1/2 scale deflection of the needle? If we know that the movement has a full-scale rating of 1 mA, then 0.5 mA (500 μA) must be the value needed for half-scale deflection. Following our design with the 9 volt battery as a source we get:

$$R_{total} = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{9\ V}{500\ \mu A}$$

$$R_{total} = 18\ k\Omega$$

With an internal movement resistance of 500 Ω and a series range resistor of 8.5 kΩ, this leaves 9 kΩ for an external (lead-to-lead) test resistance at 1/2 scale. In other words, the test resistance giving 1/2 scale deflection in an ohmmeter is equal in value to the (internal) series total resistance of the meter circuit.

Using Ohm's Law a few more times, we can determine the test resistance value for 1/4 and 3/4 scale deflection as well:

1/4 scale deflection (0.25 mA of meter current):

$$R_{total} = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{9\ V}{250\ \mu A}$$

$$R_{total} = 36\ k\Omega$$

$$R_{test} = R_{total} - R_{internal}$$

$$R_{test} = 36\ k\Omega - 9\ k\Omega$$

$$R_{test} = 27\ k\Omega$$

3/4 scale deflection (0.75 mA of meter current):

$$R_{total} = \frac{E}{I} = \frac{9\ V}{750\ \mu A}$$

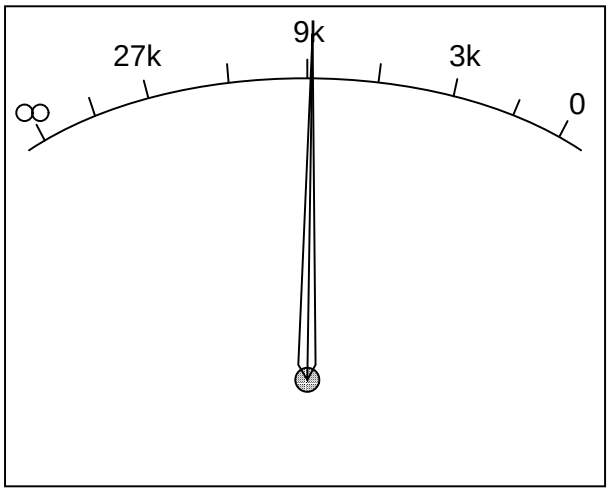
$$R_{total} = 12\ k\Omega$$

$$R_{test} = R_{total} - R_{internal}$$

$$R_{test} = 12\ k\Omega - 9\ k\Omega$$

$$R_{test} = 3\ k\Omega$$

So, the scale for this ohmmeter looks something like this:



One major problem with this design is its reliance upon a stable battery voltage for accurate

resistance reading. If the battery voltage decreases (as all chemical batteries do with age and use), the ohmmeter scale will lose accuracy. With the series range resistor at a constant value of 8.5 kΩ and the battery voltage decreasing, the meter will no longer deflect full-scale to the right when the test leads are shorted together (0 Ω). Likewise, a test resistance of 9 kΩ will fail to deflect the needle to exactly 1/2 scale with a lesser battery voltage.

There are design techniques used to compensate for varying battery voltage, but they do not completely take care of the problem and are to be considered approximations at best. For this reason, and for the fact of the logarithmic scale, this type of ohmmeter is never considered to be a precision instrument.

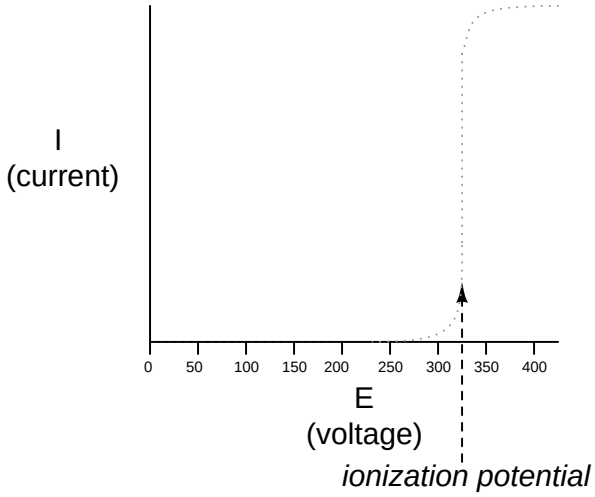
One final caveat needs to be mentioned with regard to ohmmeters: they only function correctly when measuring resistance that is not being powered by a voltage or current source. In other words, you cannot measure resistance with an ohmmeter on a "live" circuit! The reason for this is simple: the ohmmeter's accurate indication depends on the only source of voltage being its internal battery. The presence of any voltage across the component to be measured will interfere with the ohmmeter's operation. If the voltage is large enough, it may even damage the ohmmeter.

- **REVIEW:**
- Ohmmeters contain internal sources of voltage to supply power in taking resistance measurements.
- An analog ohmmeter scale is "backwards" from that of a voltmeter or ammeter, the movement needle reading zero resistance at full-scale and infinite resistance at rest.
- Analog ohmmeters also have logarithmic scales, "expanded" at the low end of the scale and "compressed" at the high end to be able to span from zero to infinite resistance.
- Analog ohmmeters are not precision instruments.
- Ohmmeters should *never* be connected to an energized circuit (that is, a circuit with its own source of voltage). Any voltage applied to the test leads of an ohmmeter will invalidate its reading.

8.7 High voltage ohmmeters

Most ohmmeters of the design shown in the previous section utilize a battery of relatively low voltage, usually nine volts or less. This is perfectly adequate for measuring resistances under several mega-ohms (MΩ), but when extremely high resistances need to be measured, a 9 volt battery is insufficient for generating enough current to actuate an electromechanical meter movement.

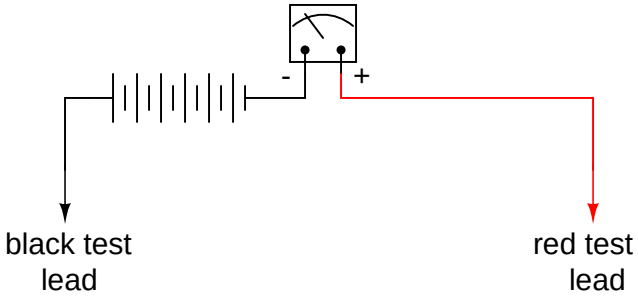
Also, as discussed in an earlier chapter, resistance is not always a stable (linear) quantity. This is especially true of non-metals. Recall the graph of current over voltage for a small air gap (less than an inch):



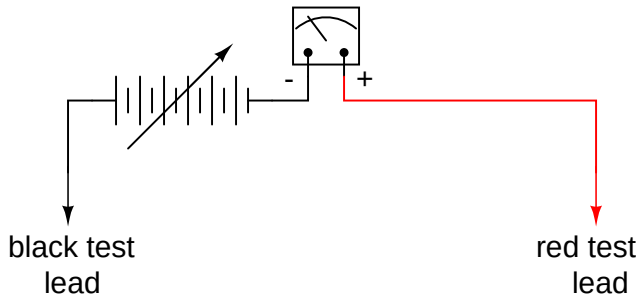
While this is an extreme example of nonlinear conduction, other substances exhibit similar insulating/conducting properties when exposed to high voltages. Obviously, an ohmmeter using a low-voltage battery as a source of power cannot measure resistance at the ionization potential of a gas, or at the breakdown voltage of an insulator. If such resistance values need to be measured, nothing but a high-voltage ohmmeter will suffice.

The most direct method of high-voltage resistance measurement involves simply substituting a higher voltage battery in the same basic design of ohmmeter investigated earlier:

Simple high-voltage ohmmeter



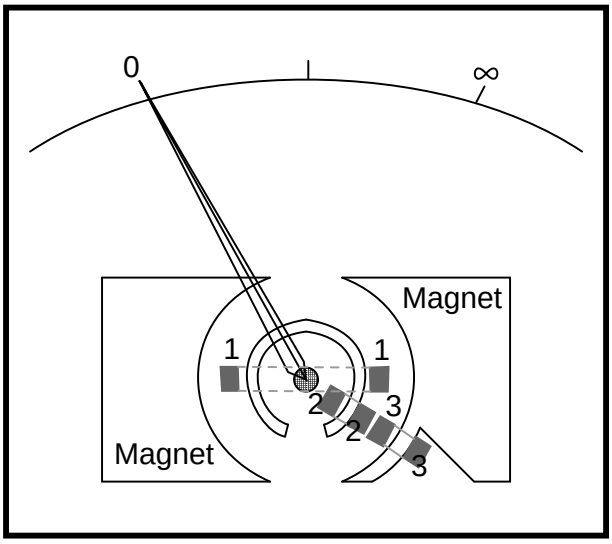
Knowing, however, that the resistance of some materials tends to change with applied voltage, it would be advantageous to be able to adjust the voltage of this ohmmeter to obtain resistance measurements under different conditions:



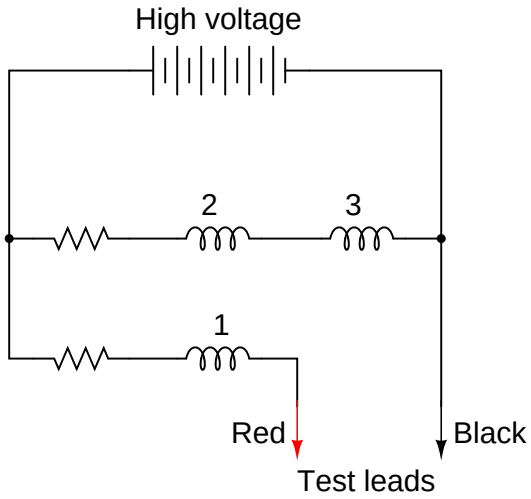
Unfortunately, this would create a calibration problem for the meter. If the meter movement deflects full-scale with a certain amount of current through it, the full-scale range of the meter in ohms would change as the source voltage changed. Imagine connecting a stable resistance across the test leads of this ohmmeter while varying the source voltage: as the voltage is increased, there will be more current through the meter movement, hence a greater amount of deflection. What we really need is a meter movement that will produce a consistent, stable deflection for any stable resistance value measured, regardless of the applied voltage.

Accomplishing this design goal requires a special meter movement, one that is peculiar to *megohmmeters*, or *meggers*, as these instruments are known.

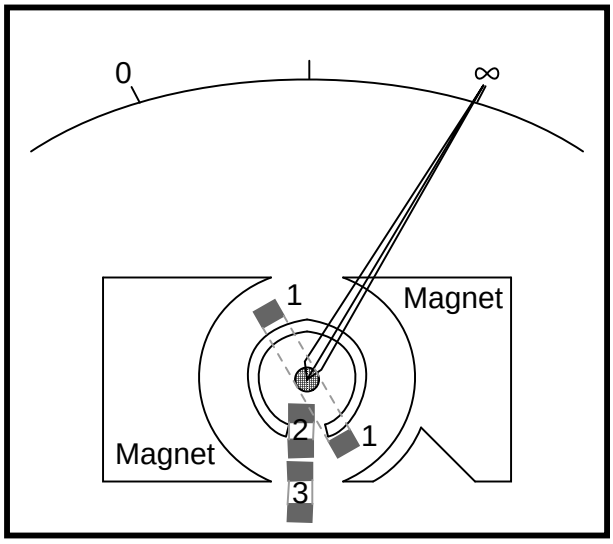
"Megger" movement



The numbered, rectangular blocks in the above illustration are cross-sectional representations of wire coils. These three coils all move with the needle mechanism. There is no spring mechanism to return the needle to a set position. When the movement is unpowered, the needle will randomly ”float.” The coils are electrically connected like this:



With infinite resistance between the test leads (open circuit), there will be no current through coil 1, only through coils 2 and 3. When energized, these coils try to center themselves in the gap between the two magnet poles, driving the needle fully to the right of the scale where it points to "infinity."



Current through coils 2 and 3; no current through coil 1

Any current through coil 1 (through a measured resistance connected between the test leads) tends to drive the needle to the left of scale, back to zero. The internal resistor values of the meter movement are calibrated so that when the test leads are shorted together, the needle deflects exactly to the 0 Ω position.

Because any variations in battery voltage will affect the torque generated by *both* sets of

coils (coils 2 and 3, which drive the needle to the right, and coil 1, which drives the needle to the left), those variations will have no effect of the calibration of the movement. In other words, the accuracy of this ohmmeter movement is unaffected by battery voltage: a given amount of measured resistance will produce a certain needle deflection, no matter how much or little battery voltage is present.

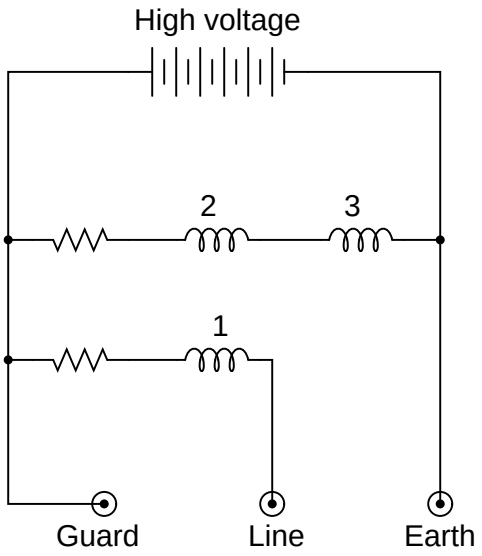
The only effect that a variation in voltage will have on meter indication is the degree to which the measured resistance changes with applied voltage. So, if we were to use a megger to measure the resistance of a gas-discharge lamp, it would read very high resistance (needle to the far right of the scale) for low voltages and low resistance (needle moves to the left of the scale) for high voltages. This is precisely what we expect from a good high-voltage ohmmeter: to provide accurate indication of subject resistance under different circumstances.

For maximum safety, most meggers are equipped with hand-crank generators for producing the high DC voltage (up to 1000 volts). If the operator of the meter receives a shock from the high voltage, the condition will be self-correcting, as he or she will naturally stop cranking the generator! Sometimes a "slip clutch" is used to stabilize generator speed under different cranking conditions, so as to provide a fairly stable voltage whether it is cranked fast or slow. Multiple voltage output levels from the generator are available by the setting of a selector switch.

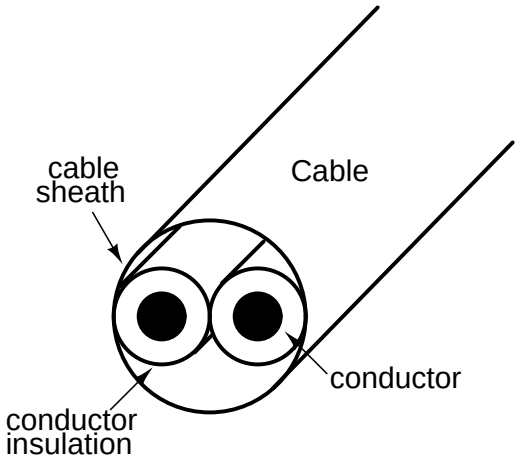
A simple hand-crank megger is shown in this photograph:

Some meggers are battery-powered to provide greater precision in output voltage. For safety reasons these meggers are activated by a momentary-contact pushbutton switch, so the switch cannot be left in the "on" position and pose a significant shock hazard to the meter operator.

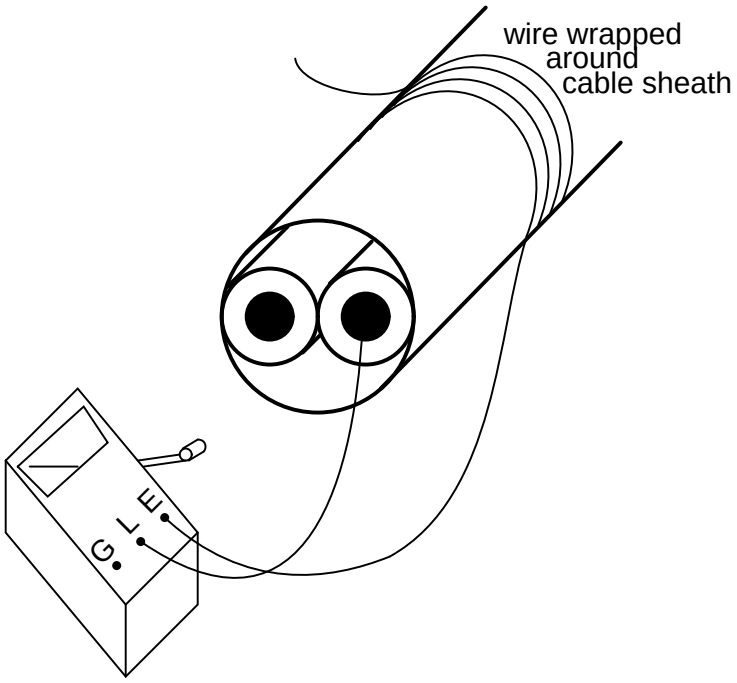
Real meggers are equipped with three connection terminals, labeled *Line*, *Earth*, and *Guard*. The schematic is quite similar to the simplified version shown earlier:



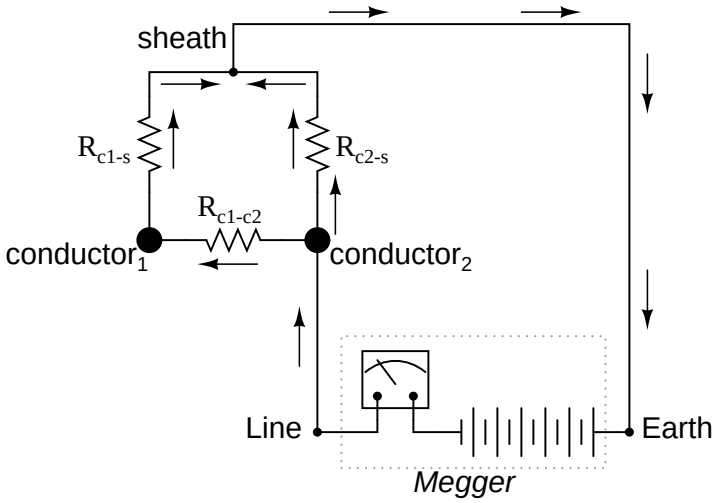
Resistance is measured between the Line and Earth terminals, where current will travel through coil 1. The "Guard" terminal is provided for special testing situations where one resistance must be isolated from another. Take for instance this scenario where the insulation resistance is to be tested in a two-wire cable:



To measure insulation resistance from a conductor to the outside of the cable, we need to connect the "Line" lead of the megger to one of the conductors and connect the "Earth" lead of the megger to a wire wrapped around the sheath of the cable:

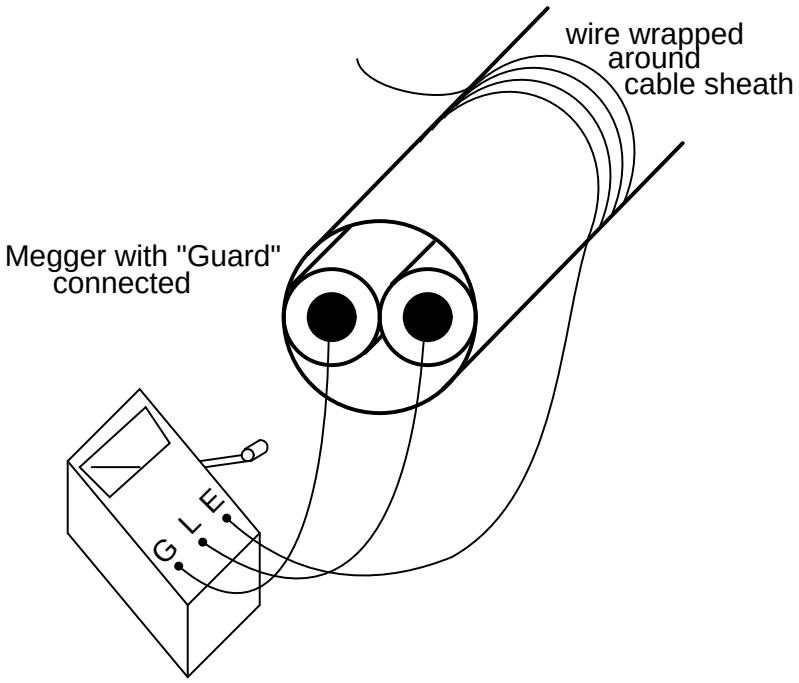


In this configuration the megger should read the resistance between one conductor and the outside sheath. Or will it? If we draw a schematic diagram showing all insulation resistances as resistor symbols, what we have looks like this:

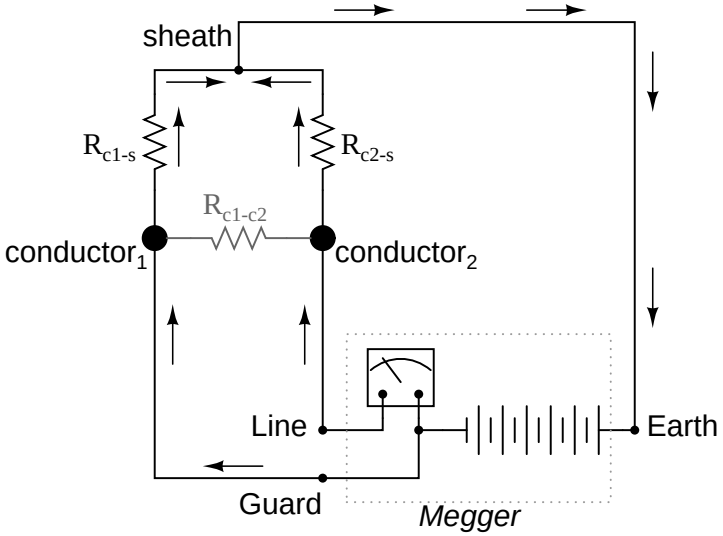


Rather than just measure the resistance of the second conductor to the sheath (R_{c2-s}), what we'll actually measure is that resistance in parallel with the series combination of conductor-to-conductor resistance (R_{c1-c2}) and the first conductor to the sheath (R_{c1-s}). If we don't care about this fact, we can proceed with the test as configured. If we desire to measure *only*

the resistance between the second conductor and the sheath (R_{c2-s}), then we need to use the megger's "Guard" terminal:



Now the circuit schematic looks like this:



Connecting the "Guard" terminal to the first conductor places the two conductors at almost equal potential. With little or no voltage between them, the insulation resistance is nearly infinite, and thus there will be no current *between* the two conductors. Consequently, the

megger's resistance indication will be based exclusively on the current through the second conductor's insulation, through the cable sheath, and to the wire wrapped around, not the current leaking through the first conductor's insulation.

Meggers are field instruments: that is, they are designed to be portable and operated by a technician on the job site with as much ease as a regular ohmmeter. They are very useful for checking high-resistance "short" failures between wires caused by wet or degraded insulation. Because they utilize such high voltages, they are not as affected by stray voltages (voltages less than 1 volt produced by electrochemical reactions between conductors, or "induced" by neighboring magnetic fields) as ordinary ohmmeters.

For a more thorough test of wire insulation, another high-voltage ohmmeter commonly called a *hi-pot* tester is used. These specialized instruments produce voltages in excess of 1 kV, and may be used for testing the insulating effectiveness of oil, ceramic insulators, and even the integrity of other high-voltage instruments. Because they are capable of producing such high voltages, they must be operated with the utmost care, and only by trained personnel.

It should be noted that hi-pot testers and even meggers (in certain conditions) are capable of *damaging* wire insulation if incorrectly used. Once an insulating material has been subjected to *breakdown* by the application of an excessive voltage, its ability to electrically insulate will be compromised. Again, these instruments are to be used only by trained personnel.

8.8 Multimeters

Seeing as how a common meter movement can be made to function as a voltmeter, ammeter, or ohmmeter simply by connecting it to different external resistor networks, it should make sense that a multi-purpose meter ("multimeter") could be designed in one unit with the appropriate switch(es) and resistors.

For general purpose electronics work, the multimeter reigns supreme as the instrument of choice. No other device is able to do so much with so little an investment in parts and elegant simplicity of operation. As with most things in the world of electronics, the advent of solid-state components like transistors has revolutionized the way things are done, and multimeter design is no exception to this rule. However, in keeping with this chapter's emphasis on analog ("old-fashioned") meter technology, I'll show you a few pre-transistor meters.

The unit shown above is typical of a handheld analog multimeter, with ranges for voltage, current, and resistance measurement. Note the many scales on the face of the meter movement for the different ranges and functions selectable by the rotary switch. The wires for connecting this instrument to a circuit (the "test leads") are plugged into the two copper jacks (socket holes) at the bottom-center of the meter face marked "- TEST +", black and red.

This multimeter (Barnett brand) takes a slightly different design approach than the previous unit. Note how the rotary selector switch has fewer positions than the previous meter, but also how there are many more jacks into which the test leads may be plugged into. Each one of those jacks is labeled with a number indicating the respective full-scale range of the meter.

Lastly, here is a picture of a digital multimeter. Note that the familiar meter movement has been replaced by a blank, gray-colored display screen. When powered, numerical digits appear in that screen area, depicting the amount of voltage, current, or resistance being measured. This particular brand and model of digital meter has a rotary selector switch and four jacks into which test leads can be plugged. Two leads – one red and one black – are shown plugged into the meter.

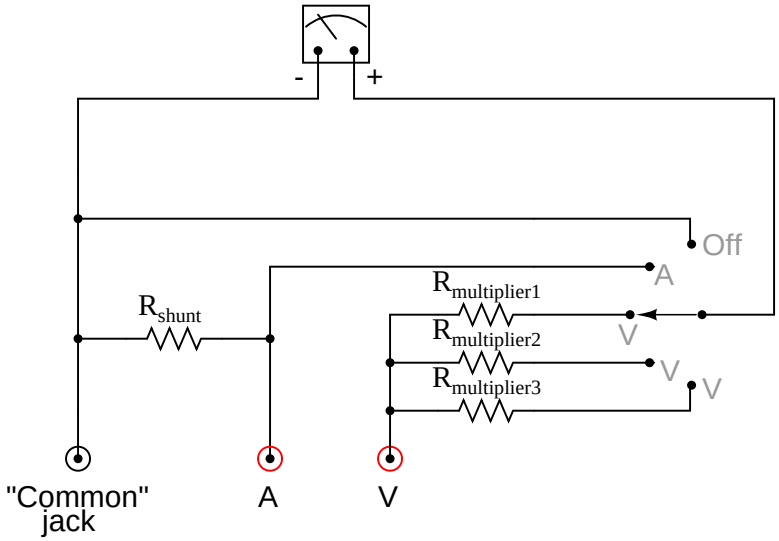
A close examination of this meter will reveal one ”common” jack for the black test lead and three others for the red test lead. The jack into which the red lead is shown inserted is labeled for voltage and resistance measurement, while the other two jacks are labeled for current (A, mA, and μA) measurement. This is a wise design feature of the multimeter, requiring the user to move a test lead plug from one jack to another in order to switch from the voltage measurement to the current measurement function. It would be hazardous to have the meter set in current measurement mode while connected across a significant source of voltage because of the low input resistance, and making it necessary to move a test lead plug rather than just flip the selector switch to a different position helps ensure that the meter doesn't get set to measure current unintentionally.

Note that the selector switch still has different positions for voltage and current measurement, so in order for the user to switch between these two modes of measurement they must switch the position of the red test lead *and* move the selector switch to a different position.

Also note that neither the selector switch nor the jacks are labeled with measurement ranges. In other words, there are no ”100 volt” or ”10 volt” or ”1 volt” ranges (or any equivalent range steps) on this meter. Rather, this meter is ”autoranging,” meaning that it automatically picks the appropriate range for the quantity being measured. Autoranging is a feature only found on digital meters, but not all digital meters.

No two models of multimeters are designed to operate exactly the same, even if they're manufactured by the same company. In order to fully understand the operation of any multimeter, the owner's manual must be consulted.

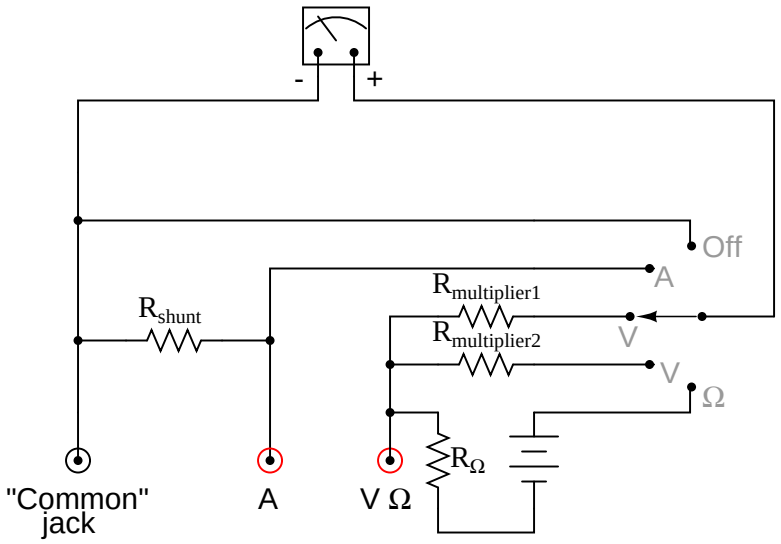
Here is a schematic for a simple analog volt/ammeter:



In the switch's three lower (most counter-clockwise) positions, the meter movement is connected to the **Common** and **V** jacks through one of three different series range resistors ($R_{multiplier1}$ through $R_{multiplier3}$), and so acts as a voltmeter. In the fourth position, the meter movement is connected in parallel with the shunt resistor, and so acts as an ammeter for any current entering the **common** jack and exiting the **A** jack. In the last (furthest clockwise) position, the meter movement is disconnected from either red jack, but short-circuited through

the switch. This short-circuiting creates a dampening effect on the needle, guarding against mechanical shock damage when the meter is handled and moved.

If an ohmmeter function is desired in this multimeter design, it may be substituted for one of the three voltage ranges as such:



With all three fundamental functions available, this multimeter may also be known as a *volt-ohm-milliammeter*.

Obtaining a reading from an analog multimeter when there is a multitude of ranges and only one meter movement may seem daunting to the new technician. On an analog multimeter, the meter movement is marked with several scales, each one useful for at least one range setting. Here is a close-up photograph of the scale from the Barnett multimeter shown earlier in this section:

Note that there are three types of scales on this meter face: a green scale for resistance at the top, a set of black scales for DC voltage and current in the middle, and a set of blue scales for AC voltage and current at the bottom. Both the DC and AC scales have three sub-scales, one ranging 0 to 2.5, one ranging 0 to 5, and one ranging 0 to 10. The meter operator must choose whichever scale best matches the range switch and plug settings in order to properly interpret the meter's indication.

This particular multimeter has several basic voltage measurement ranges: 2.5 volts, 10 volts, 50 volts, 250 volts, 500 volts, and 1000 volts. With the use of the voltage range extender unit at the top of the multimeter, voltages up to 5000 volts can be measured. Suppose the meter operator chose to switch the meter into the "volt" function and plug the red test lead into the 10 volt jack. To interpret the needle's position, he or she would have to read the scale ending with the number "10". If they moved the red test plug into the 250 volt jack, however, they would read the meter indication on the scale ending with "2.5", multiplying the direct indication by a factor of 100 in order to find what the measured voltage was.

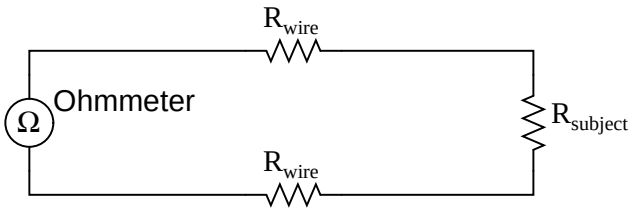
If current is measured with this meter, another jack is chosen for the red plug to be inserted into and the range is selected via a rotary switch. This close-up photograph shows the switch set to the 2.5 mA position:

Note how all current ranges are power-of-ten multiples of the three scale ranges shown on the meter face: 2.5, 5, and 10. In some range settings, such as the 2.5 mA for example, the meter indication may be read directly on the 0 to 2.5 scale. For other range settings (250 μA, 50 mA, 100 mA, and 500 mA), the meter indication must be read off the appropriate scale and then multiplied by either 10 or 100 to obtain the real figure. The highest current range available on this meter is obtained with the rotary switch in the 2.5/10 amp position. The distinction between 2.5 amps and 10 amps is made by the red test plug position: a special "10 amp" jack next to the regular current-measuring jack provides an alternative plug setting to select the higher range.

Resistance in ohms, of course, is read by a logarithmic scale at the top of the meter face. It is "backward," just like all battery-operated analog ohmmeters, with zero at the right-hand side of the face and infinity at the left-hand side. There is only one jack provided on this particular multimeter for "ohms," so different resistance-measuring ranges must be selected by the rotary switch. Notice on the switch how five different "multiplier" settings are provided for measuring resistance: Rx1, Rx10, Rx100, Rx1000, and Rx10000. Just as you might suspect, the meter indication is given by multiplying whatever needle position is shown on the meter face by the power-of-ten multiplying factor set by the rotary switch.

8.9 Kelvin (4-wire) resistance measurement

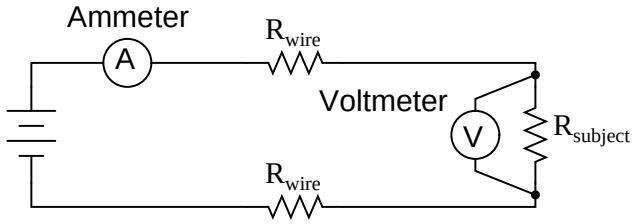
Suppose we wished to measure the resistance of some component located a significant distance away from our ohmmeter. Such a scenario would be problematic, because an ohmmeter measures *all* resistance in the circuit loop, which includes the resistance of the wires (R_{wire}) connecting the ohmmeter to the component being measured ($R_{subject}$):



Ohmmeter indicates $R_{wire} + R_{subject} + R_{wire}$

Usually, wire resistance is very small (only a few ohms per hundreds of feet, depending primarily on the gauge (size) of the wire), but if the connecting wires are very long, and/or the component to be measured has a very low resistance anyway, the measurement error introduced by wire resistance will be substantial.

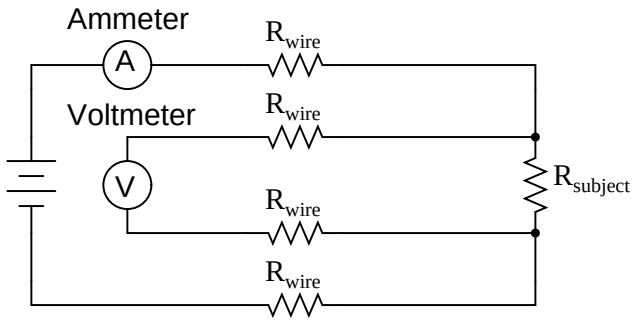
An ingenious method of measuring the subject resistance in a situation like this involves the use of both an ammeter and a voltmeter. We know from Ohm's Law that resistance is equal to voltage divided by current (R = E/I). Thus, we should be able to determine the resistance of the subject component if we measure the current going through it and the voltage dropped across it:



$$R_{subject} = \frac{\text{Voltmeter indication}}{\text{Ammeter indication}}$$

Current is the same at all points in the circuit, because it is a series loop. Because we're only measuring voltage dropped across the subject resistance (and not the wires' resistances), though, the calculated resistance is indicative of the subject component's resistance ($R_{subject}$) alone.

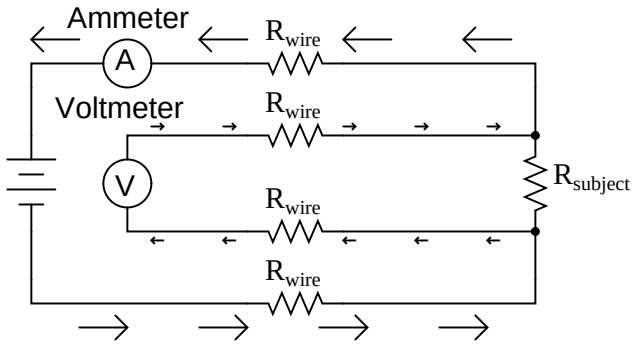
Our goal, though, was to measure this subject resistance *from a distance*, so our voltmeter must be located somewhere near the ammeter, connected across the subject resistance by another pair of wires containing resistance:



$$R_{subject} = \frac{\text{Voltmeter indication}}{\text{Ammeter indication}}$$

At first it appears that we have lost any advantage of measuring resistance this way, because the voltmeter now has to measure voltage through a long pair of (resistive) wires, introducing stray resistance back into the measuring circuit again. However, upon closer inspection it is seen that nothing is lost at all, because the voltmeter's wires carry miniscule current.

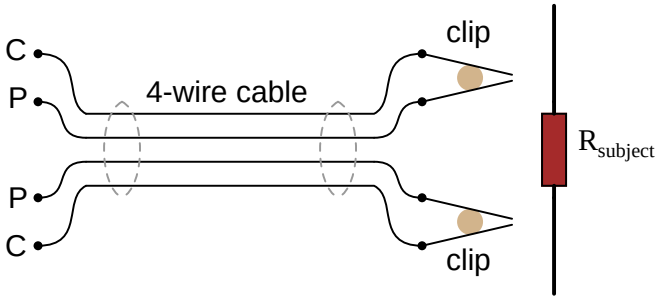
Thus, those long lengths of wire connecting the voltmeter across the subject resistance will drop insignificant amounts of voltage, resulting in a voltmeter indication that is very nearly the same as if it were connected directly across the subject resistance:



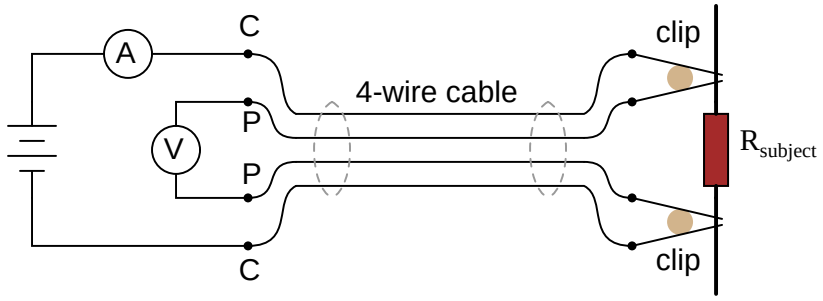
Any voltage dropped across the main current-carrying wires will not be measured by the voltmeter, and so do not factor into the resistance calculation at all. Measurement accuracy may be improved even further if the voltmeter's current is kept to a minimum, either by using a high-quality (low full-scale current) movement and/or a potentiometric (null-balance) system.

This method of measurement which avoids errors caused by wire resistance is called the *Kelvin*, or *4-wire* method. Special connecting clips called *Kelvin clips* are made to facilitate this kind of connection across a subject resistance:

Kelvin clips

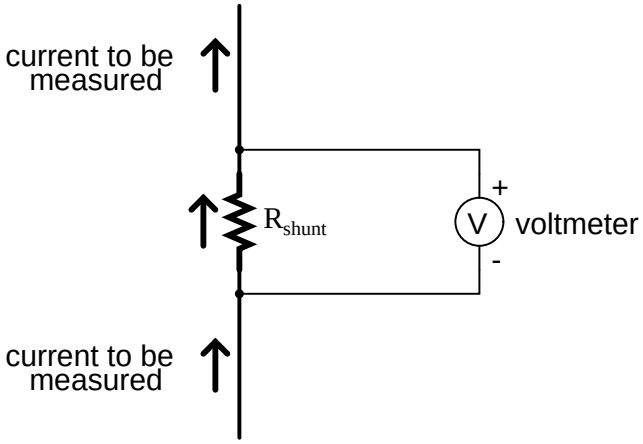


In regular, "alligator" style clips, both halves of the jaw are electrically common to each other, usually joined at the hinge point. In Kelvin clips, the jaw halves are insulated from each other at the hinge point, only contacting at the tips where they clasp the wire or terminal of the subject being measured. Thus, current through the "C" ("current") jaw halves does not go through the "P" ("potential," or *voltage*) jaw halves, and will not create any error-inducing voltage drop along their length:

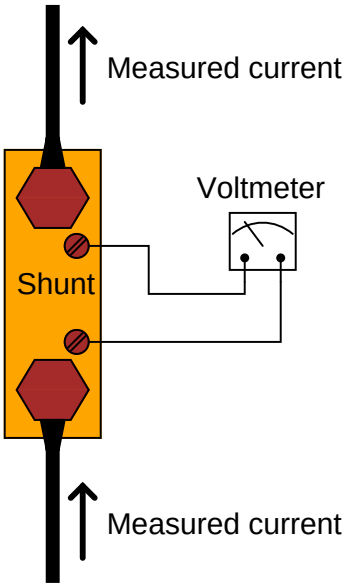


$$R_{subject} = \frac{\text{Voltmeter indication}}{\text{Ammeter indication}}$$

The same principle of using different contact points for current conduction and voltage measurement is used in precision shunt resistors for measuring large amounts of current. As discussed previously, shunt resistors function as current measurement devices by dropping a precise amount of voltage for every amp of current through them, the voltage drop being measured by a voltmeter. In this sense, a precision shunt resistor "converts" a current value into a proportional voltage value. Thus, current may be accurately measured by measuring voltage dropped across the shunt:

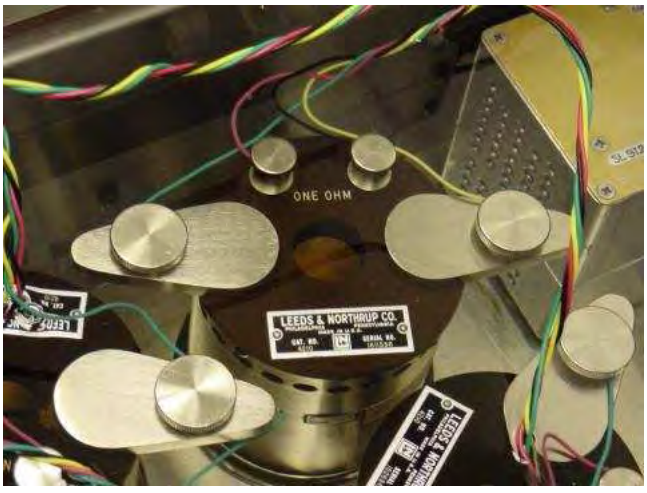


Current measurement using a shunt resistor and voltmeter is particularly well-suited for applications involving particularly large magnitudes of current. In such applications, the shunt resistor's resistance will likely be in the order of milliohms or microohms, so that only a modest amount of voltage will be dropped at full current. Resistance this low is comparable to wire connection resistance, which means voltage measured across such a shunt must be done so in such a way as to avoid detecting voltage dropped across the current-carrying wire connections, lest huge measurement errors be induced. In order that the voltmeter measure only the voltage dropped by the shunt resistance itself, without any stray voltages originating from wire or connection resistance, shunts are usually equipped with *four* connection terminals:



In metrological (*metrology = "the science of measurement"*) applications, where accuracy is of paramount importance, highly precise "standard" resistors are also equipped with four terminals: two for carrying the measured current, and two for conveying the resistor's voltage drop to the voltmeter. This way, the voltmeter only measures voltage dropped across the precision resistance itself, without any stray voltages dropped across current-carrying wires or wire-to-terminal connection resistances.

The following photograph shows a precision standard resistor of 1 Ω value immersed in a temperature-controlled oil bath with a few other standard resistors. Note the two large, outer terminals for current, and the two small connection terminals for voltage:



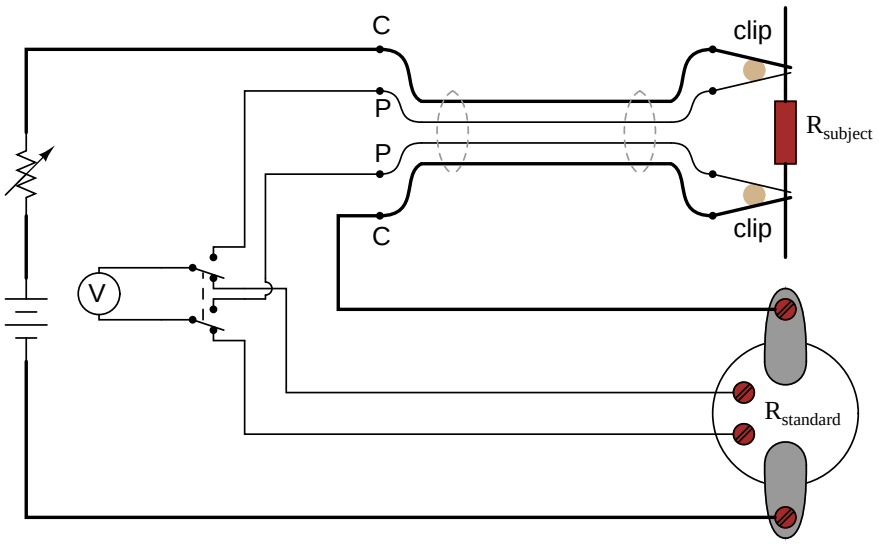
Here is another, older (pre-World War II) standard resistor of German manufacture. This unit has a resistance of 0.001 Ω, and again the four terminal connection points can be seen

as black knobs (metal pads underneath each knob for direct metal-to-metal connection with the wires), two large knobs for securing the current-carrying wires, and two smaller knobs for securing the voltmeter ("potential") wires:

Appreciation is extended to the Fluke Corporation in Everett, Washington for allowing me to photograph these expensive and somewhat rare standard resistors in their primary standards laboratory.

It should be noted that resistance measurement using *both* an ammeter and a voltmeter is subject to compound error. Because the accuracy of both instruments factors in to the final result, the overall measurement accuracy may be worse than either instrument considered alone. For instance, if the ammeter is accurate to +/- 1% and the voltmeter is also accurate to +/- 1%, any measurement dependent on the indications of both instruments may be inaccurate by as much as +/- 2%.

Greater accuracy may be obtained by replacing the ammeter with a standard resistor, used as a current-measuring shunt. There will still be compound error between the standard resistor and the voltmeter used to measure voltage drop, but this will be less than with a voltmeter + ammeter arrangement because typical standard resistor accuracy far exceeds typical ammeter accuracy. Using Kelvin clips to make connection with the subject resistance, the circuit looks something like this:

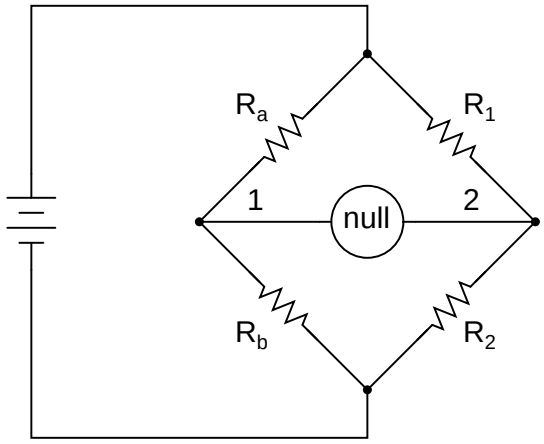


All current-carrying wires in the above circuit are shown in "bold," to easily distinguish them from wires connecting the voltmeter across both resistances ($R_{subject}$ and $R_{standard}$). Ideally, a potentiometric voltmeter is used to ensure as little current through the "potential" wires as possible.

8.10 Bridge circuits

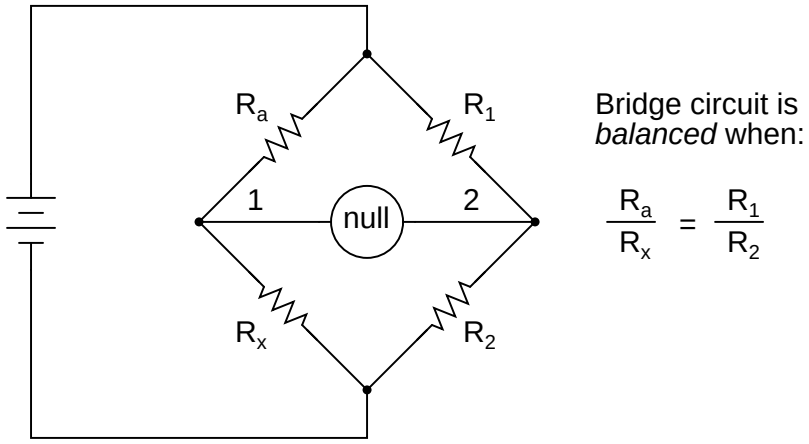
No text on electrical metering could be called complete without a section on bridge circuits. These ingenious circuits make use of a null-balance meter to compare two voltages, just like the laboratory balance scale compares two weights and indicates when they're equal. Unlike the "potentiometer" circuit used to simply measure an unknown voltage, bridge circuits can be used to measure all kinds of electrical values, not the least of which being resistance.

The standard bridge circuit, often called a *Wheatstone bridge*, looks something like this:



When the voltage between point 1 and the negative side of the battery is equal to the voltage between point 2 and the negative side of the battery, the null detector will indicate zero and the bridge is said to be "balanced." The bridge's state of balance is solely dependent on the ratios of R_a/R_b and R_1/R_2, and is quite independent of the supply voltage (battery). To measure resistance with a Wheatstone bridge, an unknown resistance is connected in the place of R_a or R_b, while the other three resistors are precision devices of known value. Either of the other three resistors can be replaced or adjusted until the bridge is balanced, and when balance has been reached the unknown resistor value can be determined from the ratios of the known resistances.

A requirement for this to be a measurement system is to have a set of variable resistors available whose resistances are precisely known, to serve as reference standards. For example, if we connect a bridge circuit to measure an unknown resistance R_x, we will have to know the *exact* values of the other three resistors at balance to determine the value of R_x:



Each of the four resistances in a bridge circuit are referred to as *arms*. The resistor in series with the unknown resistance R_x (this would be R_a in the above schematic) is commonly called the *rheostat* of the bridge, while the other two resistors are called the *ratio* arms of the bridge.

Accurate and stable resistance standards, thankfully, are not that difficult to construct. In fact, they were some of the first electrical "standard" devices made for scientific purposes. Here is a photograph of an antique resistance standard unit:

This resistance standard shown here is variable in discrete steps: the amount of resistance between the connection terminals could be varied with the number and pattern of removable copper plugs inserted into sockets.

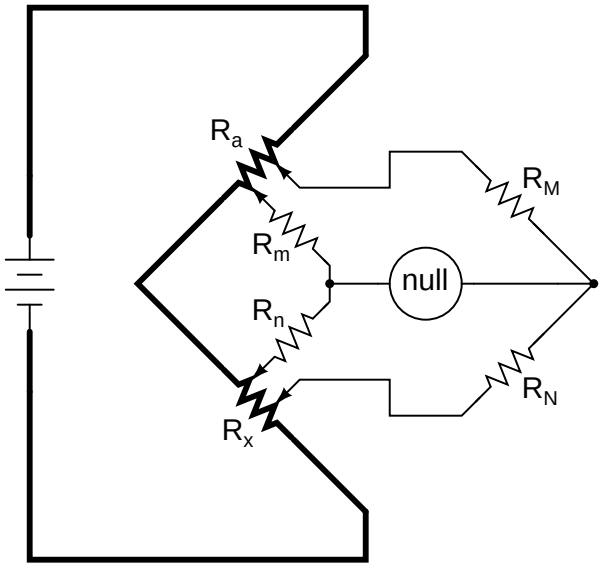
Wheatstone bridges are considered a superior means of resistance measurement to the series battery-movement-resistor meter circuit discussed in the last section. Unlike that circuit, with all its nonlinearities (logarithmic scale) and associated inaccuracies, the bridge circuit is linear (the mathematics describing its operation are based on simple ratios and proportions) and quite accurate.

Given standard resistances of sufficient precision and a null detector device of sufficient sensitivity, resistance measurement accuracies of at least +/- 0.05% are attainable with a Wheatstone bridge. It is the preferred method of resistance measurement in calibration laboratories due to its high accuracy.

There are many variations of the basic Wheatstone bridge circuit. Most DC bridges are used to measure resistance, while bridges powered by alternating current (AC) may be used to measure different electrical quantities like inductance, capacitance, and frequency.

An interesting variation of the Wheatstone bridge is the *Kelvin Double bridge*, used for measuring very low resistances (typically less than 1/10 of an ohm). Its schematic diagram is as such:

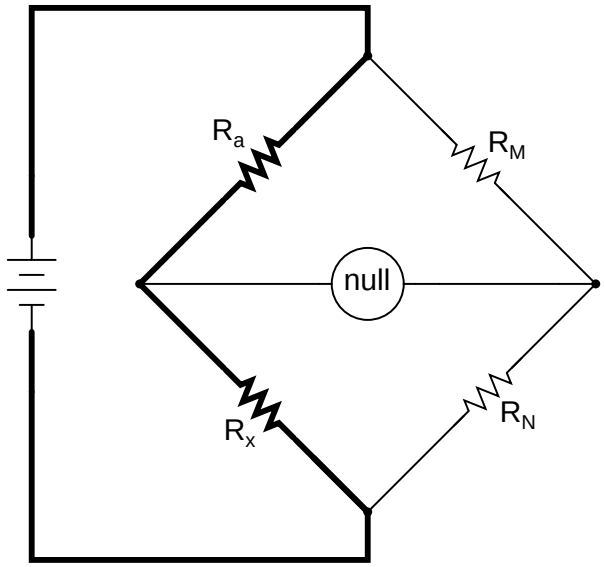
Kelvin Double bridge



R_a and R_x are low-value resistances

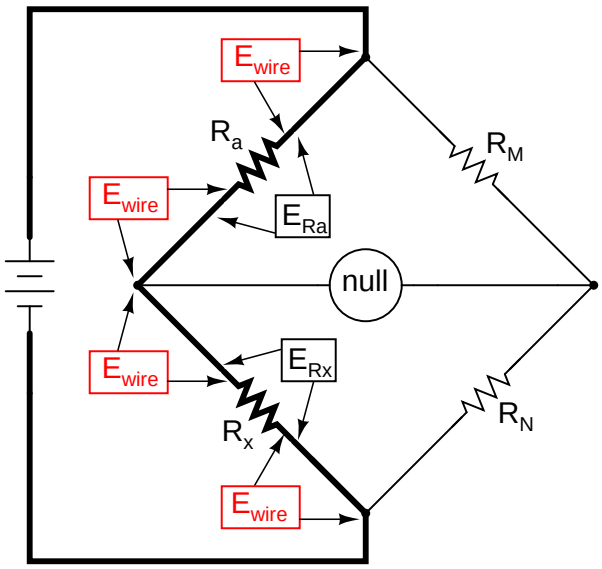
The low-value resistors are represented by thick-line symbols, and the wires connecting them to the voltage source (carrying high current) are likewise drawn thickly in the schematic. This oddly-configured bridge is perhaps best understood by beginning with a standard Wheatstone bridge set up for measuring low resistance, and evolving it step-by-step into its final form in an effort to overcome certain problems encountered in the standard Wheatstone configuration.

If we were to use a standard Wheatstone bridge to measure low resistance, it would look something like this:



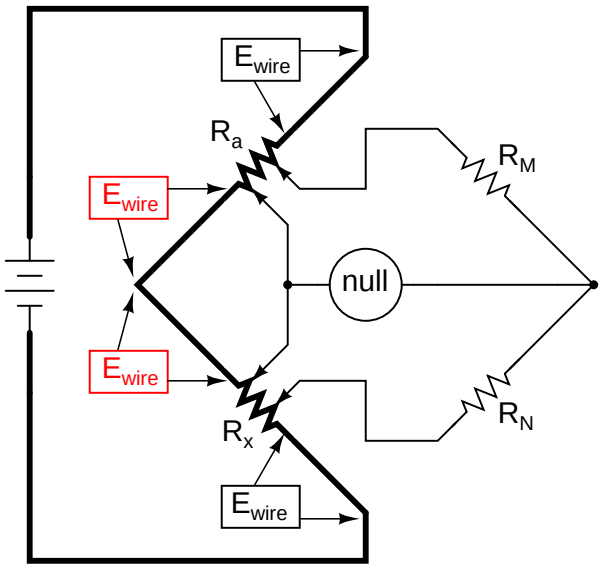
When the null detector indicates zero voltage, we know that the bridge is balanced and that the ratios R_a/R_x and R_M/R_N are mathematically equal to each other. Knowing the values of R_a, R_M, and R_N therefore provides us with the necessary data to solve for R_x . . . almost.

We have a problem, in that the connections and connecting wires between R_a and R_x possess resistance as well, and this stray resistance may be substantial compared to the low resistances of R_a and R_x. These stray resistances will drop substantial voltage, given the high current through them, and thus will affect the null detector's indication and thus the balance of the bridge:



Stray E_{wire} voltages will corrupt the accuracy of R_x's measurement

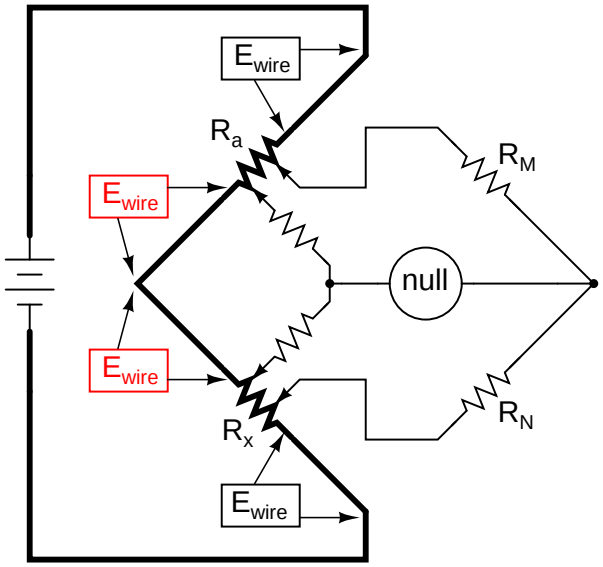
Since we don't want to measure these stray wire and connection resistances, but only measure R_x, we must find some way to connect the null detector so that it won't be influenced by voltage dropped across them. If we connect the null detector and R_M/R_N ratio arms directly across the ends of R_a and R_x, this gets us closer to a practical solution:



Now, only the two E_{wire} voltages are part of the null detector loop

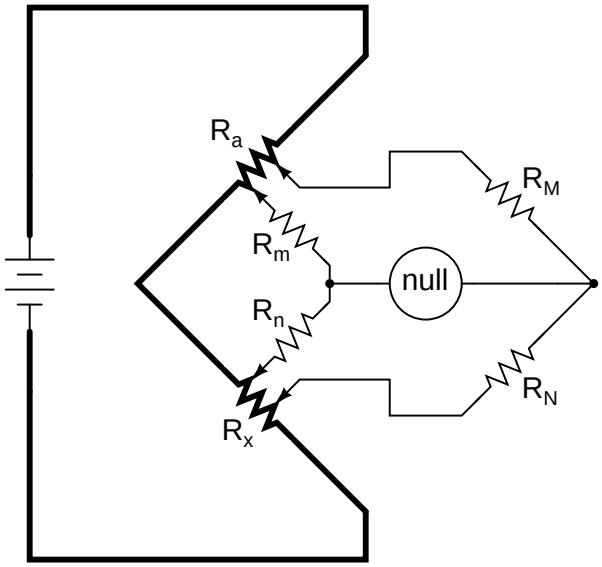
Now the top two E_{wire} voltage drops are of no effect to the null detector, and do not influence the accuracy of R_x's resistance measurement. However, the two remaining E_{wire} voltage drops will cause problems, as the wire connecting the lower end of R_a with the top end of R_x is now shunting across those two voltage drops, and will conduct substantial current, introducing stray voltage drops along its own length as well.

Knowing that the left side of the null detector must connect to the two near ends of R_a and R_x in order to avoid introducing those E_{wire} voltage drops into the null detector's loop, and that any direct wire connecting those ends of R_a and R_x will itself carry substantial current and create more stray voltage drops, the only way out of this predicament is to make the connecting path between the lower end of R_a and the upper end of R_x substantially resistive:



We can manage the stray voltage drops between R_a and R_x by sizing the two new resistors so that their ratio from upper to lower is the same ratio as the two ratio arms on the other side of the null detector. This is why these resistors were labeled R_m and R_n in the original Kelvin Double bridge schematic: to signify their proportionality with R_M and R_N:

Kelvin Double bridge



R_a and R_x are low-value resistances

With ratio R_m/R_n set equal to ratio R_M/R_N, rheostat arm resistor R_a is adjusted until the null detector indicates balance, and then we can say that R_a/R_x is equal to R_M/R_N, or simply find R_x by the following equation:

$$R_x = R_a \frac{R_N}{R_M}$$

The actual balance equation of the Kelvin Double bridge is as follows (R_{wire} is the resistance of the thick, connecting wire between the low-resistance standard R_a and the test resistance R_x):

$$\frac{R_x}{R_a} = \frac{R_N}{R_M} + \frac{R_{wire}}{R_a}\left(\frac{R_m}{R_m + R_n + R_{wire}}\right)\left(\frac{R_N}{R_M} - \frac{R_n}{R_m}\right)$$

So long as the ratio between R_M and R_N is equal to the ratio between R_m and R_n, the balance equation is no more complex than that of a regular Wheatstone bridge, with R_x/R_a equal to R_N/R_M, because the last term in the equation will be zero, canceling the effects of all resistances except R_x, R_a, R_M, and R_N.

In many Kelvin Double bridge circuits, R_M=R_m and R_N=R_n. However, the lower the resistances of R_m and R_n, the more sensitive the null detector will be, because there is less resistance in series with it. Increased detector sensitivity is good, because it allows smaller imbalances to be detected, and thus a finer degree of bridge balance to be attained. Therefore, some high-precision Kelvin Double bridges use R_m and R_n values as low as 1/100 of their ratio arm counterparts (R_M and R_N, respectively). Unfortunately, though, the lower the values of R_m and R_n, the more current they will carry, which will increase the effect of any junction resistances present where R_m and R_n connect to the ends of R_a and R_x. As you can see, high

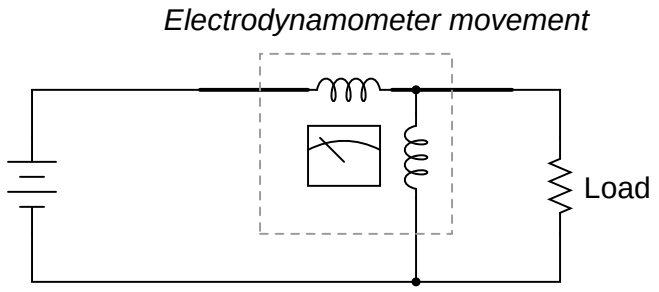
instrument accuracy demands that *all* error-producing factors be taken into account, and often the best that can be achieved is a compromise minimizing two or more different kinds of errors.

- **REVIEW:**
- Bridge circuits rely on sensitive null-voltage meters to compare two voltages for equality.
- A *Wheatstone bridge* can be used to measure resistance by comparing the unknown resistor against precision resistors of known value, much like a laboratory scale measures an unknown weight by comparing it against known standard weights.
- A *Kelvin Double bridge* is a variant of the Wheatstone bridge used for measuring very low resistances. Its additional complexity over the basic Wheatstone design is necessary for avoiding errors otherwise incurred by stray resistances along the current path between the low-resistance standard and the resistance being measured.

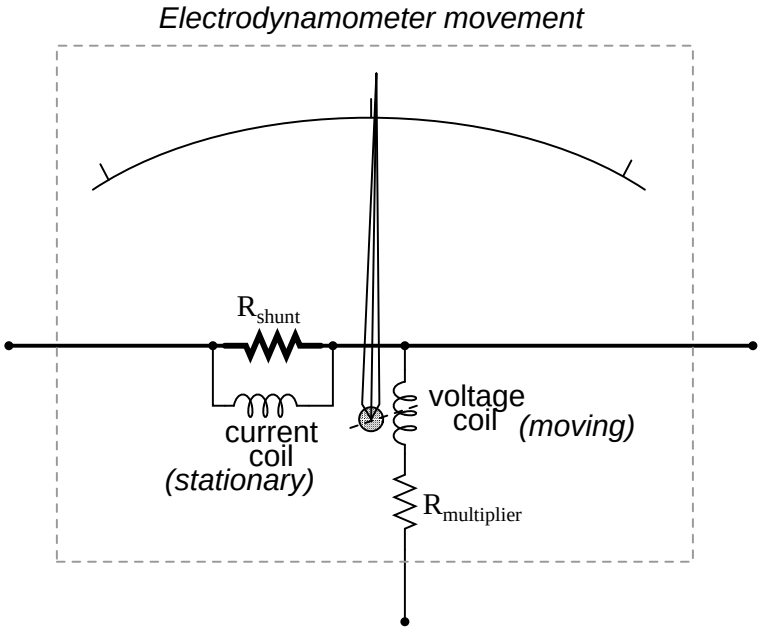
8.11 Wattmeter design

Power in an electric circuit is the product (multiplication) of voltage *and* current, so any meter designed to measure power must account for *both* of these variables.

A special meter movement designed especially for power measurement is called the *dynamometer* movement, and is similar to a D'Arsonval or Weston movement in that a lightweight coil of wire is attached to the pointer mechanism. However, unlike the D'Arsonval or Weston movement, another (stationary) coil is used instead of a permanent magnet to provide the magnetic field for the moving coil to react against. The moving coil is generally energized by the voltage in the circuit, while the stationary coil is generally energized by the current in the circuit. A dynamometer movement connected in a circuit looks something like this:



The top (horizontal) coil of wire measures load current while the bottom (vertical) coil measures load voltage. Just like the lightweight moving coils of voltmeter movements, the (moving) voltage coil of a dynamometer is typically connected in series with a range resistor so that full load voltage is not applied to it. Likewise, the (stationary) current coil of a dynamometer may have precision shunt resistors to divide the load current around it. With custom-built dynamometer movements, shunt resistors are less likely to be needed because the stationary coil can be constructed with as heavy of wire as needed without impacting meter response, unlike the moving coil which must be constructed of lightweight wire for minimum inertia.



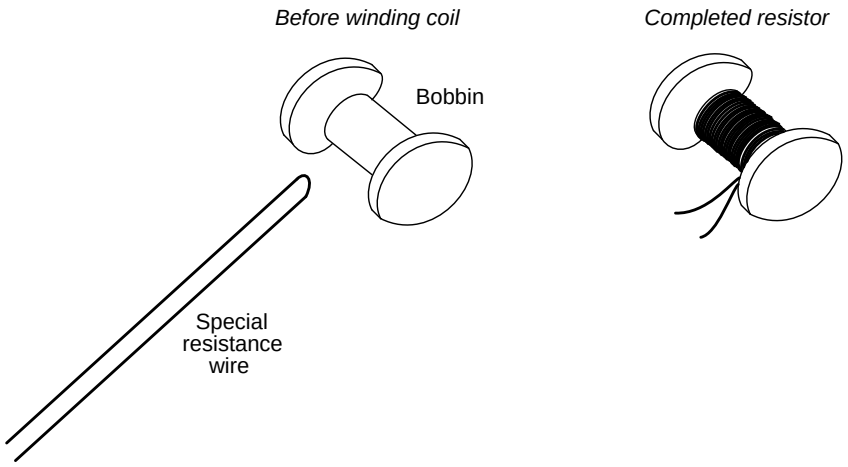
- **REVIEW:**

- Wattmeters are often designed around dynamometer meter movements, which employ both voltage and current coils to move a needle.

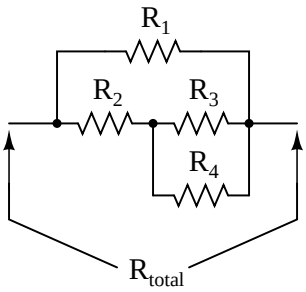
8.12 Creating custom calibration resistances

Often in the course of designing and building electrical meter circuits, it is necessary to have precise resistances to obtain the desired range(s). More often than not, the resistance values required cannot be found in any manufactured resistor unit and therefore must be built by you.

One solution to this dilemma is to make your own resistor out of a length of special high-resistance wire. Usually, a small ”bobbin” is used as a form for the resulting wire coil, and the coil is wound in such a way as to eliminate any electromagnetic effects: the desired wire length is folded in half, and the looped wire wound around the bobbin so that current through the wire winds clockwise around the bobbin for half the wire’s length, then counter-clockwise for the other half. This is known as a *bifilar winding*. Any magnetic fields generated by the current are thus canceled, and external magnetic fields cannot induce any voltage in the resistance wire coil:



As you might imagine, this can be a labor-intensive process, especially if more than one resistor must be built! Another, easier solution to the dilemma of a custom resistance is to connect multiple fixed-value resistors together in series-parallel fashion to obtain the desired value of resistance. This solution, although potentially time-intensive in choosing the best resistor values for making the first resistance, can be duplicated much faster for creating multiple custom resistances of the same value:



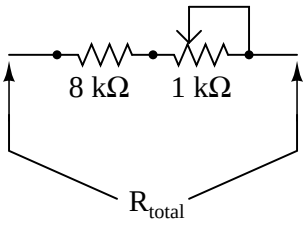
A disadvantage of either technique, though, is the fact that both result in a *fixed* resistance value. In a perfect world where meter movements never lose magnetic strength of their permanent magnets, where temperature and time have no effect on component resistances, and where wire connections maintain zero resistance forever, fixed-value resistors work quite well for establishing the ranges of precision instruments. However, in the real world, it is advantageous to have the ability to *calibrate*, or adjust, the instrument in the future.

It makes sense, then, to use potentiometers (connected as rheostats, usually) as variable resistances for range resistors. The potentiometer may be mounted inside the instrument case so that only a service technician has access to change its value, and the shaft may be locked in place with thread-fastening compound (ordinary nail polish works well for this!) so that it will not move if subjected to vibration.

However, most potentiometers provide too large a resistance span over their mechanically-short movement range to allow for precise adjustment. Suppose you desired a resistance of 8.335 kΩ +/- 1 Ω, and wanted to use a 10 kΩ potentiometer (rheostat) to obtain it. A precision of 1 Ω out of a span of 10 kΩ is 1 part in 10,000, or 1/100 of a percent! Even with a 10-turn

potentiometer, it will be very difficult to adjust it to any value this finely. Such a feat would be nearly impossible using a standard 3/4 turn potentiometer. So how can we get the resistance value we need and still have room for adjustment?

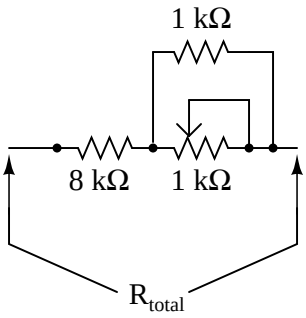
The solution to this problem is to use a potentiometer as part of a larger resistance network which will create a limited adjustment range. Observe the following example:



8 kΩ to 9 kΩ
adjustable range

Here, the 1 kΩ potentiometer, connected as a rheostat, provides by itself a 1 kΩ span (a range of 0 Ω to 1 kΩ). Connected in series with an 8 kΩ resistor, this offsets the total resistance by 8,000 Ω, giving an adjustable range of 8 kΩ to 9 kΩ. Now, a precision of +/- 1 Ω represents 1 part in 1000, or 1/10 of a percent of potentiometer shaft motion. This is ten times better, in terms of adjustment sensitivity, than what we had using a 10 kΩ potentiometer.

If we desire to make our adjustment capability even more precise – so we can set the resistance at 8.335 kΩ with even greater precision – we may reduce the span of the potentiometer by connecting a fixed-value resistor in parallel with it:



8 kΩ to 8.5 kΩ
adjustable range

Now, the calibration span of the resistor network is only 500 Ω, from 8 kΩ to 8.5 kΩ. This makes a precision of +/- 1 Ω equal to 1 part in 500, or 0.2 percent. The adjustment is now half as sensitive as it was before the addition of the parallel resistor, facilitating much easier calibration to the target value. The adjustment will not be linear, unfortunately (halfway on the potentiometer's shaft position will *not* result in 8.25 kΩ total resistance, but rather 8.333 kΩ). Still, it is an improvement in terms of sensitivity, and it is a practical solution to our problem of building an adjustable resistance for a precision instrument!

8.13 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 9

ELECTRICAL INSTRUMENTATION SIGNALS

Contents

9.1 Analog and digital signals

Instrumentation is a field of study and work centering on measurement and control of physical processes. These physical processes include pressure, temperature, flow rate, and chemical consistency. An instrument is a device that measures and/or acts to control any kind of physical process. Due to the fact that electrical quantities of voltage and current are easy to measure, manipulate, and transmit over long distances, they are widely used to represent such physical variables and transmit the information to remote locations.

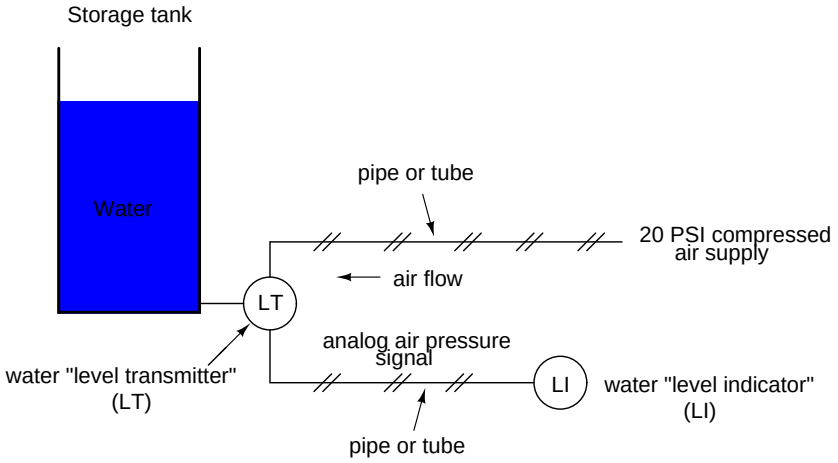
A *signal* is any kind of physical quantity that conveys information. Audible speech is certainly a kind of signal, as it conveys the thoughts (information) of one person to another through the physical medium of sound. Hand gestures are signals, too, conveying information by means of light. This text is another kind of signal, interpreted by your English-trained mind as information about electric circuits. In this chapter, the word *signal* will be used primarily in reference to an electrical quantity of voltage or current that is used to *represent* or *signify* some other physical quantity.

An *analog* signal is a kind of signal that is continuously variable, as opposed to having a limited number of steps along its range (called *digital*). A well-known example of analog vs. digital is that of clocks: analog being the type with pointers that slowly rotate around a circular scale, and digital being the type with decimal number displays or a "second-hand" that jerks rather than smoothly rotates. The analog clock has no physical limit to how finely it can display the time, as its "hands" move in a smooth, pauseless fashion. The digital clock, on the other hand, cannot convey any unit of time smaller than what its display will allow for. The type of clock with a "second-hand" that jerks in 1-second intervals is a digital device with a minimum *resolution* of one second.

Both analog and digital signals find application in modern electronics, and the distinctions between these two basic forms of information is something to be covered in much greater detail later in this book. For now, I will limit the scope of this discussion to analog signals, since the systems using them tend to be of simpler design.

With many physical quantities, especially electrical, analog variability is easy to come by. If such a physical quantity is used as a signal medium, it will be able to represent variations of information with almost unlimited resolution.

In the early days of industrial instrumentation, compressed air was used as a signaling medium to convey information from measuring instruments to indicating and controlling devices located remotely. The amount of air pressure corresponded to the magnitude of whatever variable was being measured. Clean, dry air at approximately 20 pounds per square inch (PSI) was supplied from an air compressor through tubing to the measuring instrument and was then regulated by that instrument according to the quantity being measured to produce a corresponding output signal. For example, a pneumatic (air signal) level "transmitter" device set up to measure height of water (the "process variable") in a storage tank would output a low air pressure when the tank was empty, a medium pressure when the tank was partially full, and a high pressure when the tank was completely full.

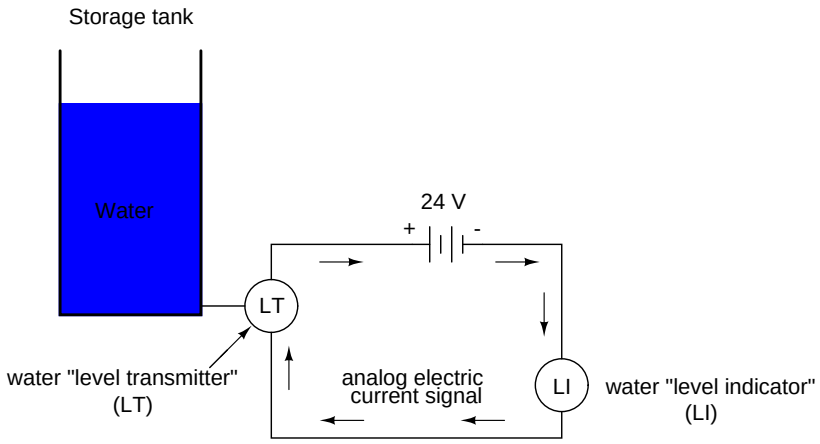


The "water level indicator" (LI) is nothing more than a pressure gauge measuring the air pressure in the pneumatic signal line. This air pressure, being a *signal*, is in turn a representation of the water level in the tank. Any variation of level in the tank can be represented by an appropriate variation in the pressure of the pneumatic signal. Aside from certain practical

limits imposed by the mechanics of air pressure devices, this pneumatic signal is infinitely variable, able to represent any degree of change in the water's level, and is therefore *analog* in the truest sense of the word.

Crude as it may appear, this kind of pneumatic signaling system formed the backbone of many industrial measurement and control systems around the world, and still sees use today due to its simplicity, safety, and reliability. Air pressure signals are easily transmitted through inexpensive tubes, easily measured (with mechanical pressure gauges), and are easily manipulated by mechanical devices using bellows, diaphragms, valves, and other pneumatic devices. Air pressure signals are not only useful for *measuring* physical processes, but for *controlling* them as well. With a large enough piston or diaphragm, a small air pressure signal can be used to generate a large mechanical force, which can be used to move a valve or other controlling device. Complete automatic control systems have been made using air pressure as the signal medium. They are simple, reliable, and relatively easy to understand. However, the practical limits for air pressure signal accuracy can be too limiting in some cases, especially when the compressed air is not clean and dry, and when the possibility for tubing leaks exist.

With the advent of solid-state electronic amplifiers and other technological advances, electrical quantities of voltage and current became practical for use as analog instrument signaling media. Instead of using pneumatic pressure signals to relay information about the fullness of a water storage tank, electrical signals could relay that same information over thin wires (instead of tubing) and not require the support of such expensive equipment as air compressors to operate:



Analog electronic signals are still the primary kinds of signals used in the instrumentation world today (January of 2001), but it is giving way to digital modes of communication in many applications (more on that subject later). Despite changes in technology, it is always good to have a thorough understanding of fundamental principles, so the following information will never really become obsolete.

One important concept applied in many analog instrumentation signal systems is that of "live zero," a standard way of scaling a signal so that an indication of 0 percent can be discriminated from the status of a "dead" system. Take the pneumatic signal system as an example: if the signal pressure range for transmitter and indicator was designed to be 0 to 12 PSI, with 0 PSI representing 0 percent of process measurement and 12 PSI representing 100 percent, a

received signal of 0 percent could be a legitimate reading of 0 percent measurement *or* it could mean that the system was malfunctioning (air compressor stopped, tubing broken, transmitter malfunctioning, etc.). With the 0 percent point represented by 0 PSI, there would be no easy way to distinguish one from the other.

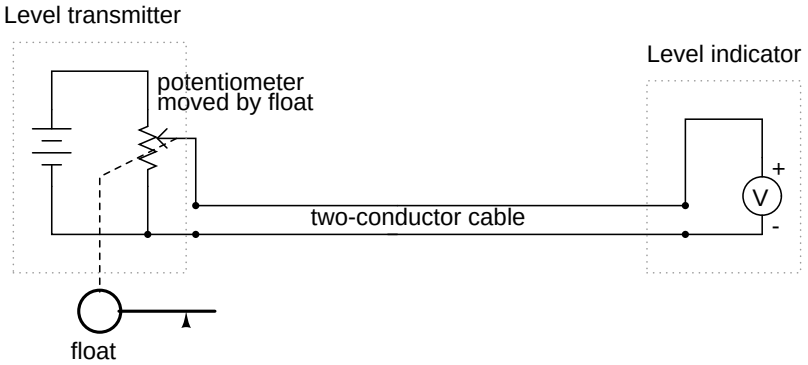
If, however, we were to scale the instruments (transmitter and indicator) to use a scale of 3 to 15 PSI, with 3 PSI representing 0 percent and 15 PSI representing 100 percent, any kind of a malfunction resulting in zero air pressure at the indicator would generate a reading of -25 percent (0 PSI), which is clearly a faulty value. The person looking at the indicator would then be able to immediately tell that something was wrong.

Not all signal standards have been set up with live zero baselines, but the more robust signals standards (3-15 PSI, 4-20 mA) have, and for good reason.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *signal* is any kind of detectable quantity used to communicate information.
- An *analog* signal is a signal that can be continuously, or infinitely, varied to represent any small amount of change.
- *Pneumatic*, or air pressure, signals used to be used predominately in industrial instrumentation signal systems. This has been largely superseded by analog electrical signals such as voltage and current.
- A *live zero* refers to an analog signal scale using a non-zero quantity to represent 0 percent of real-world measurement, so that any system malfunction resulting in a natural ”rest” state of zero signal pressure, voltage, or current can be immediately recognized.

9.2 Voltage signal systems

The use of variable voltage for instrumentation signals seems a rather obvious option to explore. Let’s see how a voltage signal instrument might be used to measure and relay information about water tank level:

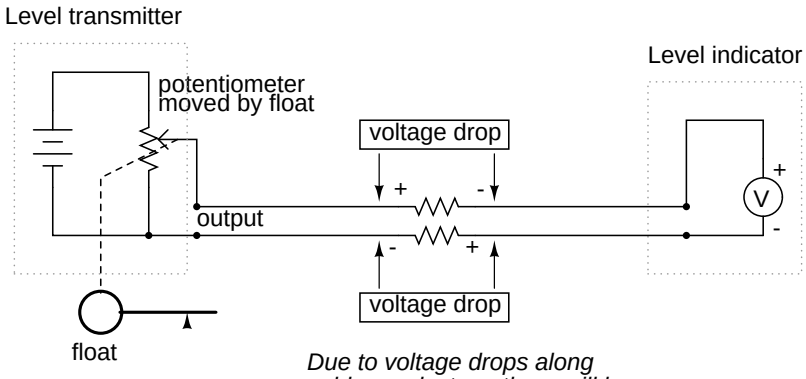


The ”transmitter” in this diagram contains its own precision regulated source of voltage, and the potentiometer setting is varied by the motion of a float inside the water tank following

the water level. The ”indicator” is nothing more than a voltmeter with a scale calibrated to read in some unit height of water (inches, feet, meters) instead of volts.

As the water tank level changes, the float will move. As the float moves, the potentiometer wiper will correspondingly be moved, dividing a different proportion of the battery voltage to go across the two-conductor cable and on to the level indicator. As a result, the voltage received by the indicator will be representative of the level of water in the storage tank.

This elementary transmitter/indicator system is reliable and easy to understand, but it has its limitations. Perhaps greatest is the fact that the system accuracy can be influenced by excessive cable resistance. Remember that real voltmeters draw small amounts of current, even though it is ideal for a voltmeter not to draw any current at all. This being the case, especially for the kind of heavy, rugged analog meter movement likely used for an industrial-quality system, there will be a small amount of current through the 2-conductor cable wires. The cable, having a small amount of resistance along its length, will consequently drop a small amount of voltage, leaving less voltage across the indicator's leads than what is across the leads of the transmitter. This loss of voltage, however small, constitutes an error in measurement:



Due to voltage drops along cable conductors, there will be slightly less voltage across the indicator (meter) than there is at the output of the transmitter.

Resistor symbols have been added to the wires of the cable to show what is happening in a real system. Bear in mind that these resistances can be minimized with heavy-gauge wire (at additional expense) and/or their effects mitigated through the use of a high-resistance (null-balance?) voltmeter for an indicator (at additional complexity).

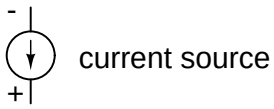
Despite this inherent disadvantage, voltage signals are still used in many applications because of their extreme design simplicity. One common signal standard is 0-10 volts, meaning that a signal of 0 volts represents 0 percent of measurement, 10 volts represents 100 percent of measurement, 5 volts represents 50 percent of measurement, and so on. Instruments designed to output and/or accept this standard signal range are available for purchase from major manufacturers. A more common voltage range is 1-5 volts, which makes use of the ”live zero” concept for circuit fault indication.

- **REVIEW:**
- DC voltage can be used as an analog signal to relay information from one location to another.

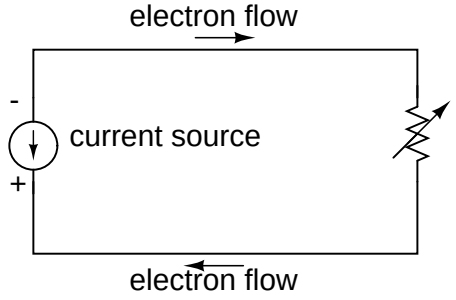
- A major disadvantage of voltage signaling is the possibility that the voltage at the indicator (voltmeter) will be less than the voltage at the signal source, due to line resistance and indicator current draw. This drop in voltage along the conductor length constitutes a measurement error from transmitter to indicator.

9.3 Current signal systems

It is possible through the use of electronic amplifiers to design a circuit outputting a constant amount of current rather than a constant amount of voltage. This collection of components is collectively known as a *current source*, and its symbol looks like this:

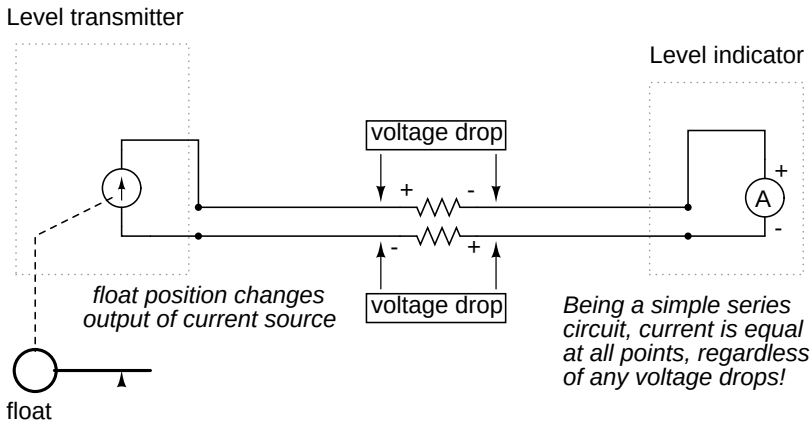


A current source generates as much or as little voltage as needed across its leads to produce a constant amount of current through it. This is just the opposite of a voltage source (an ideal battery), which will output as much or as little current as demanded by the external circuit in maintaining its output voltage constant. Following the "conventional flow" symbology typical of electronic devices, the arrow points *against* the direction of electron motion. Apologies for this confusing notation: another legacy of Benjamin Franklin's false assumption of electron flow!



Current in this circuit remains constant, regardless of circuit resistance. Only voltage will change!

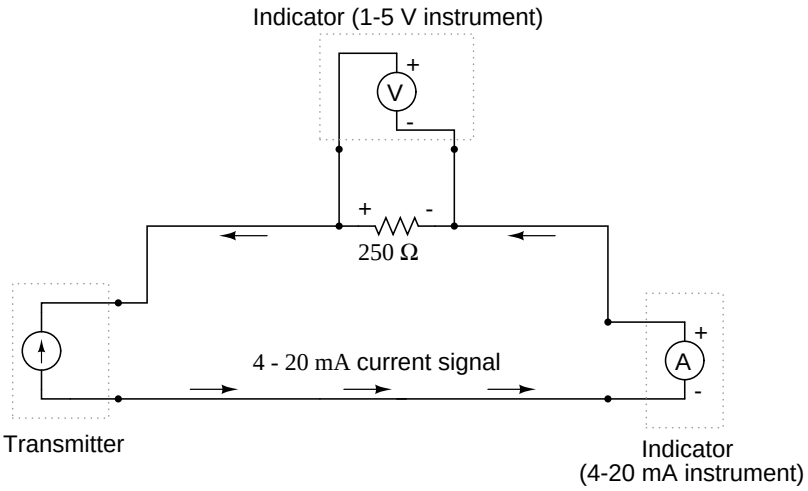
Current sources can be built as variable devices, just like voltage sources, and they can be designed to produce very precise amounts of current. If a transmitter device were to be constructed with a variable current source instead of a variable voltage source, we could design an instrumentation signal system based on current instead of voltage:



The internal workings of the transmitter's current source need not be a concern at this point, only the fact that its output varies in response to changes in the float position, just like the potentiometer setup in the voltage signal system varied voltage output according to float position.

Notice now how the indicator is an ammeter rather than a voltmeter (the scale calibrated in inches, feet, or meters of water in the tank, as always). Because the circuit is a series configuration (accounting for the cable resistances), current will be *precisely equal* through all components. With or without cable resistance, the current at the indicator is exactly the same as the current at the transmitter, and therefore there is no error incurred as there might be with a voltage signal system. This assurance of zero signal degradation is a decided advantage of current signal systems over voltage signal systems.

The most common current signal standard in modern use is the *4 to 20 milliamp* (4-20 mA) loop, with 4 milliamps representing 0 percent of measurement, 20 milliamps representing 100 percent, 12 milliamps representing 50 percent, and so on. A convenient feature of the 4-20 mA standard is its ease of signal conversion to 1-5 volt indicating instruments. A simple 250 ohm precision resistor connected in series with the circuit will produce 1 volt of drop at 4 milliamps, 5 volts of drop at 20 milliamps, etc:



Percent of measurement	4-20 mA signal	1-5 V signal
0	4.0 mA	1.0 V
10	5.6 mA	1.4 V
20	7.2 mA	1.8 V
25	8.0 mA	2.0 V
30	8.8 mA	2.2 V
40	10.4 mA	2.6 V
50	12.0 mA	3.0 V
60	13.6 mA	3.4 V
70	15.2 mA	3.8 V
75	16.0 mA	4.0 V
80	16.8 mA	4.2 V
90	18.4 mA	4.6 V
100	20.0 mA	5.0 V

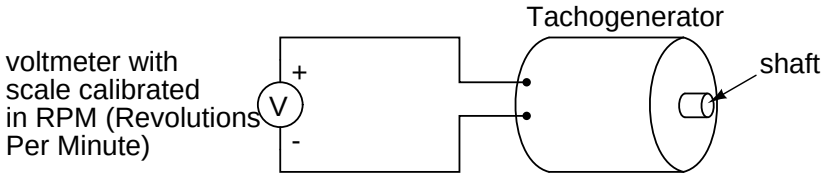
- -

The current loop scale of 4-20 milliamps has not always been *the* standard for current instruments: for a while there was also a 10-50 milliamp standard, but that standard has since been obsoleted. One reason for the eventual supremacy of the 4-20 milliamp loop was safety: with lower circuit voltages and lower current levels than in 10-50 mA system designs, there was less chance for personal shock injury and/or the generation of sparks capable of igniting flammable atmospheres in certain industrial environments.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *current source* is a device (usually constructed of several electronic components) that outputs a constant amount of current through a circuit, much like a voltage source (ideal battery) outputting a constant amount of voltage to a circuit.
- A current ”loop” instrumentation circuit relies on the series circuit principle of current being equal through all components to insure no signal error due to wiring resistance.
- The most common analog current signal standard in modern use is the ”4 to 20 milliamp current loop.”

9.4 Tachogenerators

An electromechanical generator is a device capable of producing electrical power from mechanical energy, usually the turning of a shaft. When not connected to a load resistance, generators will generate voltage roughly proportional to shaft speed. With precise construction and design, generators can be built to produce very precise voltages for certain ranges of shaft speeds, thus making them well-suited as measurement devices for shaft speed in mechanical equipment. A generator specially designed and constructed for this use is called a *tachometer* or *tachogenerator*. Often, the word ”tach” (pronounced ”tack”) is used rather than the whole word.



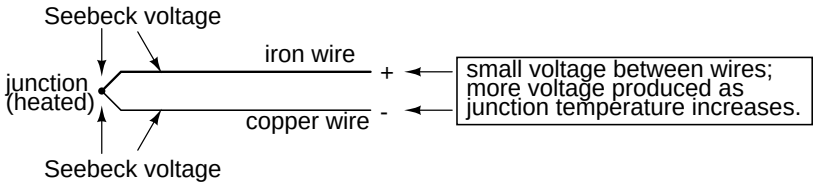
By measuring the voltage produced by a tachogenerator, you can easily determine the rotational speed of whatever its mechanically attached to. One of the more common voltage signal ranges used with tachogenerators is 0 to 10 volts. Obviously, since a tachogenerator cannot produce voltage when its not turning, the zero cannot be ”live” in this signal standard. Tachogenerators can be purchased with different ”full-scale” (10 volt) speeds for different applications. Although a voltage divider could theoretically be used with a tachogenerator to extend the measurable speed range in the 0-10 volt scale, it is not advisable to significantly overspeed a precision instrument like this, or its life will be shortened.

Tachogenerators can also indicate the direction of rotation by the polarity of the output voltage. When a permanent-magnet style DC generator's rotational direction is reversed, the polarity of its output voltage will switch. In measurement and control systems where directional indication is needed, tachogenerators provide an easy way to determine that.

Tachogenerators are frequently used to measure the speeds of electric motors, engines, and the equipment they power: conveyor belts, machine tools, mixers, fans, etc.

9.5 Thermocouples

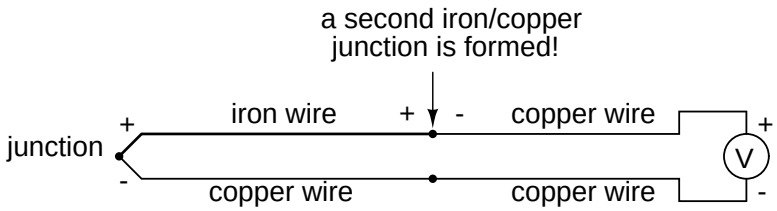
An interesting phenomenon applied in the field of instrumentation is the Seebeck effect, which is the production of a small voltage across the length of a wire due to a difference in temperature along that wire. This effect is most easily observed and applied with a junction of two dissimilar metals in contact, each metal producing a different Seebeck voltage along its length, which translates to a voltage between the two (unjoined) wire ends. Most any pair of dissimilar metals will produce a measurable voltage when their junction is heated, some combinations of metals producing more voltage per degree of temperature than others:



The Seebeck effect is fairly linear; that is, the voltage produced by a heated junction of two wires is directly proportional to the temperature. This means that the temperature of the metal wire junction can be determined by measuring the voltage produced. Thus, the Seebeck effect provides for us an electric method of temperature measurement.

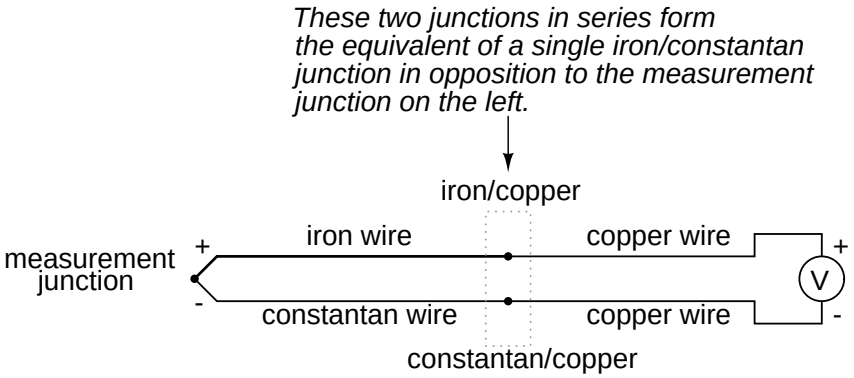
When a pair of dissimilar metals are joined together for the purpose of measuring temperature, the device formed is called a *thermocouple*. Thermocouples made for instrumentation use metals of high purity for an accurate temperature/voltage relationship (as linear and as predictable as possible).

Seebeck voltages are quite small, in the tens of millivolts for most temperature ranges. This makes them somewhat difficult to measure accurately. Also, the fact that *any* junction between dissimilar metals will produce temperature-dependent voltage creates a problem when we try to connect the thermocouple to a voltmeter, completing a circuit:

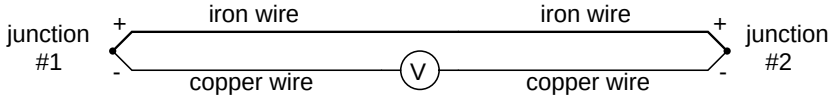


The second iron/copper junction formed by the connection between the thermocouple and the meter on the top wire will produce a temperature-dependent voltage opposed in polarity to the voltage produced at the measurement junction. This means that the voltage between

the voltmeter's copper leads will be a function of the *difference* in temperature between the two junctions, and not the temperature at the measurement junction alone. Even for thermocouple types where copper is not one of the dissimilar metals, the combination of the two metals joining the copper leads of the measuring instrument forms a junction equivalent to the measurement junction:



This second junction is called the *reference* or *cold* junction, to distinguish it from the junction at the measuring end, and there is no way to avoid having one in a thermocouple circuit. In some applications, a differential temperature measurement between two points is required, and this inherent property of thermocouples can be exploited to make a very simple measurement system.



However, in most applications the intent is to measure temperature at a single point only, and in these cases the second junction becomes a liability to function.

Compensation for the voltage generated by the reference junction is typically performed by a special circuit designed to measure temperature there and produce a corresponding voltage to counter the reference junction's effects. At this point you may wonder, "If we have to resort to some other form of temperature measurement just to overcome an idiosyncrasy with thermocouples, then why bother using thermocouples to measure temperature at all? Why not just use this other form of temperature measurement, whatever it may be, to do the job?" The answer is this: because the other forms of temperature measurement used for reference junction compensation are not as robust or versatile as a thermocouple junction, but do the job of measuring room temperature at the reference junction site quite well. For example, the thermocouple measurement junction may be inserted into the 1800 degree (F) flue of a foundry holding furnace, while the reference junction sits a hundred feet away in a metal cabinet at ambient temperature, having its temperature measured by a device that could never survive the heat or corrosive atmosphere of the furnace.

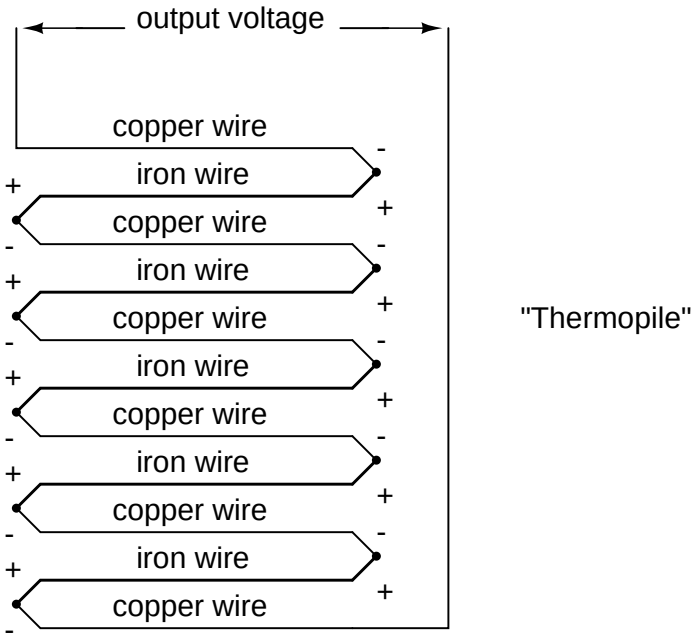
The voltage produced by thermocouple junctions is strictly dependent upon temperature. Any current in a thermocouple circuit is a function of circuit resistance in opposition to this voltage (I=E/R). In other words, the relationship between temperature and Seebeck voltage is fixed, while the relationship between temperature and current is variable, depending on the

total resistance of the circuit. With heavy enough thermocouple conductors, currents upwards of hundreds of amps can be generated from a single pair of thermocouple junctions! (I've actually seen this in a laboratory experiment, using heavy bars of copper and copper/nickel alloy to form the junctions and the circuit conductors.)

For measurement purposes, the voltmeter used in a thermocouple circuit is designed to have a very high resistance so as to avoid any error-inducing voltage drops along the thermocouple wire. The problem of voltage drop along the conductor length is even more severe here than with the DC voltage signals discussed earlier, because here we only have a few millivolts of voltage produced by the junction. We simply cannot afford to have even a single millivolt of drop along the conductor lengths without incurring serious temperature measurement errors.

Ideally, then, current in a thermocouple circuit is zero. Early thermocouple indicating instruments made use of null-balance potentiometric voltage measurement circuitry to measure the junction voltage. The early Leeds & Northrup "Speedomax" line of temperature indicator/recorders were a good example of this technology. More modern instruments use semiconductor amplifier circuits to allow the thermocouple's voltage signal to drive an indication device with little or no current drawn in the circuit.

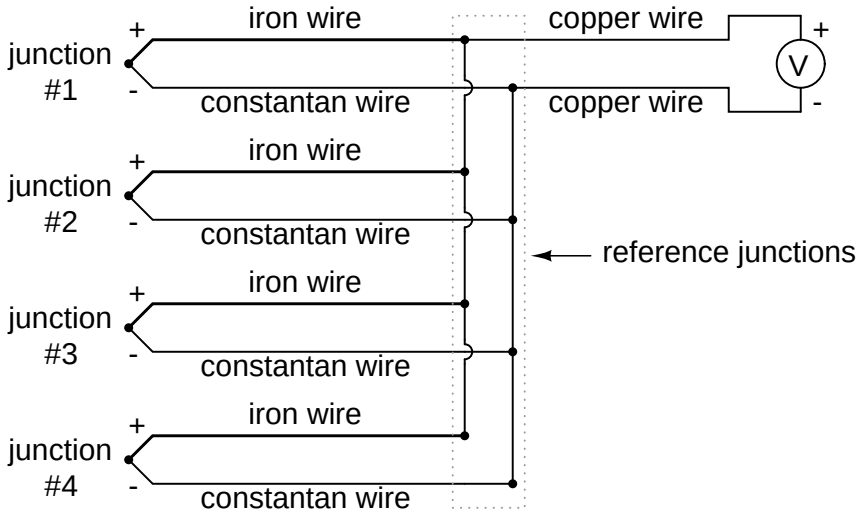
Thermocouples, however, can be built from heavy-gauge wire for low resistance, and connected in such a way so as to generate very high currents for purposes other than temperature measurement. One such purpose is electric power generation. By connecting many thermocouples in series, alternating hot/cold temperatures with each junction, a device called a *thermopile* can be constructed to produce substantial amounts of voltage and current:



With the left and right sets of junctions at the same temperature, the voltage at each junction will be equal and the opposing polarities would cancel to a final voltage of zero. However, if the left set of junctions were heated and the right set cooled, the voltage at each left junc-

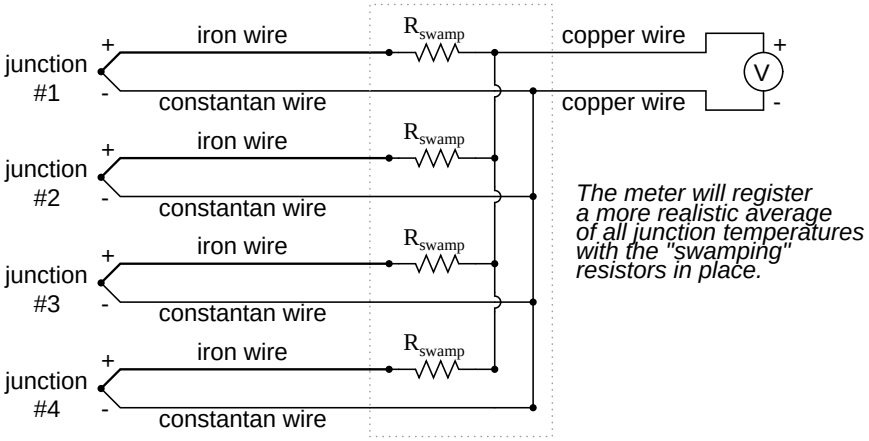
tion would be greater than each right junction, resulting in a total output voltage equal to the sum of all junction pair differentials. In a thermopile, this is exactly how things are set up. A source of heat (combustion, strong radioactive substance, solar heat, etc.) is applied to one set of junctions, while the other set is bonded to a heat sink of some sort (air- or water-cooled). Interestingly enough, as electrons flow through an external load circuit connected to the thermopile, heat energy is transferred from the hot junctions to the cold junctions, demonstrating another thermo-electric phenomenon: the so-called *Peltier Effect* (electric current transferring heat energy).

Another application for thermocouples is in the measurement of *average* temperature between several locations. The easiest way to do this is to connect several thermocouples in parallel with each other. The millivolt signal produced by each thermocouple will average out at the parallel junction point. The voltage differences between the junctions drop along the resistances of the thermocouple wires:



Unfortunately, though, the accurate averaging of these Seebeck voltage potentials relies on each thermocouple's wire resistances being equal. If the thermocouples are located at different places and their wires join in parallel at a single location, equal wire length will be unlikely. The thermocouple having the greatest wire length from point of measurement to parallel connection point will tend to have the greatest resistance, and will therefore have the least effect on the average voltage produced.

To help compensate for this, additional resistance can be added to each of the parallel thermocouple circuit branches to make their respective resistances more equal. Without custom-sizing resistors for each branch (to make resistances precisely equal between all the thermocouples), it is acceptable to simply install resistors with equal values, significantly higher than the thermocouple wires' resistances so that those wire resistances will have a much smaller impact on the total branch resistance. These resistors are called *swamping* resistors, because their relatively high values overshadow or "swamp" the resistances of the thermocouple wires themselves:

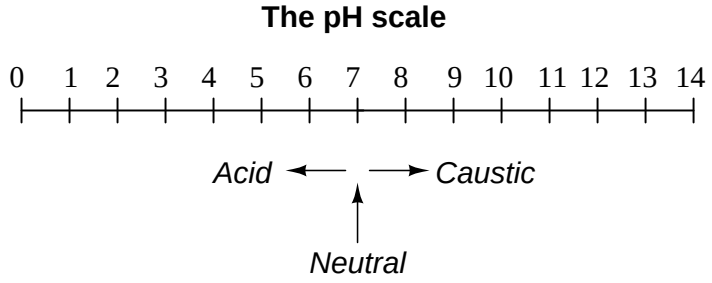


Because thermocouple junctions produce such low voltages, it is imperative that wire connections be very clean and tight for accurate and reliable operation. Also, the location of the reference junction (the place where the dissimilar-metal thermocouple wires join to standard copper) must be kept close to the measuring instrument, to ensure that the instrument can accurately compensate for reference junction temperature. Despite these seemingly restrictive requirements, thermocouples remain one of the most robust and popular methods of industrial temperature measurement in modern use.

- **REVIEW:**
- The *Seebeck Effect* is the production of a voltage between two dissimilar, joined metals that is proportional to the temperature of that junction.
- In any thermocouple circuit, there are two equivalent junctions formed between dissimilar metals. The junction placed at the site of intended measurement is called the *measurement* junction, while the other (single or equivalent) junction is called the *reference* junction.
- Two thermocouple junctions can be connected in opposition to each other to generate a voltage signal proportional to differential temperature between the two junctions. A collection of junctions so connected for the purpose of generating electricity is called a *thermopile*.
- When electrons flow through the junctions of a thermopile, heat energy is transferred from one set of junctions to the other. This is known as the *Peltier Effect*.
- Multiple thermocouple junctions can be connected in parallel with each other to generate a voltage signal representing the average temperature between the junctions. ”Swamping” resistors may be connected in series with each thermocouple to help maintain equality between the junctions, so the resultant voltage will be more representative of a true average temperature.
- It is imperative that current in a thermocouple circuit be kept as low as possible for good measurement accuracy. Also, all related wire connections should be clean and tight. Mere millivolts of drop at any place in the circuit will cause substantial measurement errors.

9.6 pH measurement

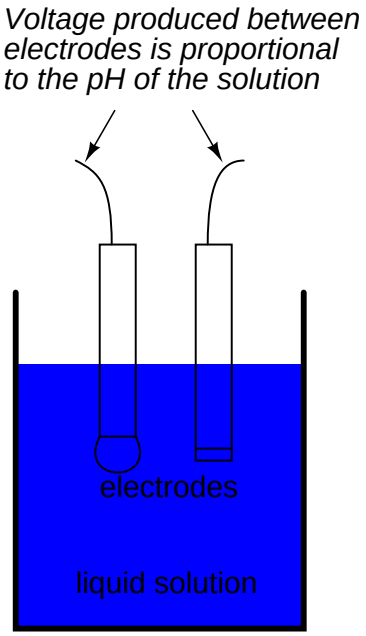
A very important measurement in many liquid chemical processes (industrial, pharmaceutical, manufacturing, food production, etc.) is that of pH: the measurement of hydrogen ion concentration in a liquid solution. A solution with a low pH value is called an ”acid,” while one with a high pH is called a ”caustic.” The common pH scale extends from 0 (strong acid) to 14 (strong caustic), with 7 in the middle representing pure water (neutral):



pH is defined as follows: the lower-case letter ”p” in pH stands for the negative common (base ten) logarithm, while the upper-case letter ”H” stands for the element hydrogen. Thus, pH is a logarithmic measurement of the number of moles of hydrogen ions (H^+) per liter of solution. Incidentally, the ”p” prefix is also used with other types of chemical measurements where a logarithmic scale is desired, pCO2 (Carbon Dioxide) and pO2 (Oxygen) being two such examples.

The logarithmic pH scale works like this: a solution with 10^{-12} moles of H^+ ions per liter has a pH of 12; a solution with 10^{-3} moles of H^+ ions per liter has a pH of 3. While very uncommon, there is such a thing as an acid with a pH measurement below 0 and a caustic with a pH above 14. Such solutions, understandably, are quite concentrated and *extremely* reactive.

While pH can be measured by color changes in certain chemical powders (the ”litmus strip” being a familiar example from high school chemistry classes), continuous process monitoring and control of pH requires a more sophisticated approach. The most common approach is the use of a specially-prepared electrode designed to allow hydrogen ions in the solution to migrate through a selective barrier, producing a measurable potential (voltage) difference proportional to the solution’s pH:

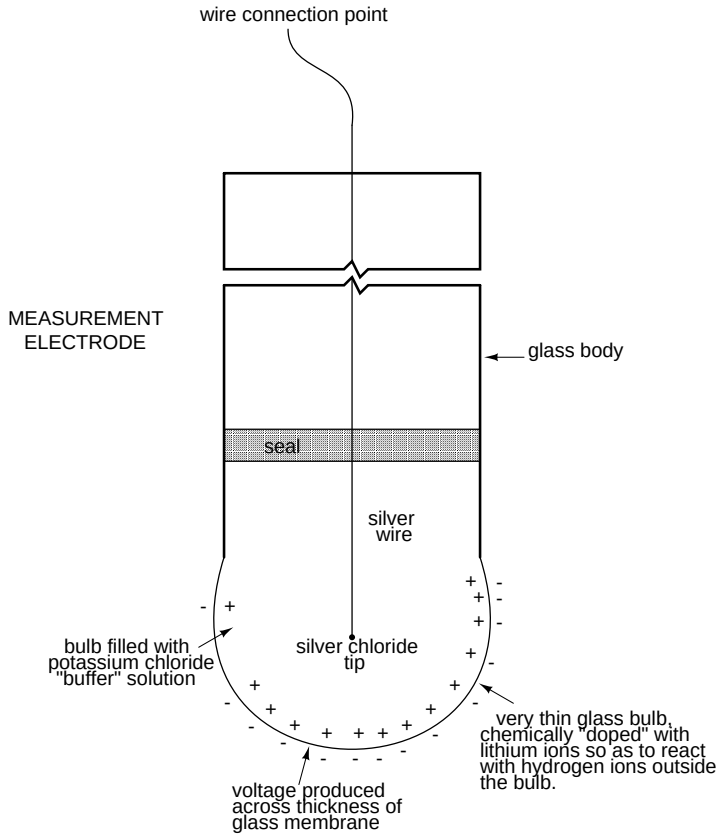


The design and operational theory of pH electrodes is a very complex subject, explored only briefly here. What is important to understand is that these two electrodes generate a voltage directly proportional to the pH of the solution. At a pH of 7 (neutral), the electrodes will produce 0 volts between them. At a low pH (acid) a voltage will be developed of one polarity, and at a high pH (caustic) a voltage will be developed of the opposite polarity.

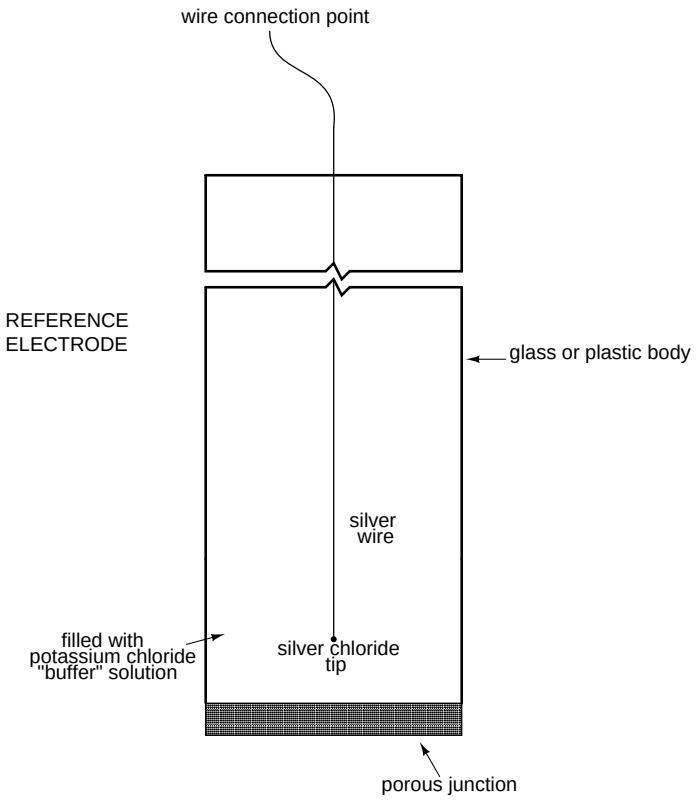
An unfortunate design constraint of pH electrodes is that one of them (called the *measurement* electrode) must be constructed of special glass to create the ion-selective barrier needed to screen out hydrogen ions from all the other ions floating around in the solution. This glass is chemically doped with lithium ions, which is what makes it react electrochemically to hydrogen ions. Of course, glass is not exactly what you would call a "conductor;" rather, it is an extremely good insulator. This presents a major problem if our intent is to measure voltage between the two electrodes. The circuit path from one electrode contact, through the glass barrier, through the solution, to the other electrode, and back through the other electrode's contact, is one of *extremely* high resistance.

The other electrode (called the *reference* electrode) is made from a chemical solution of neutral (7) pH buffer solution (usually potassium chloride) allowed to exchange ions with the process solution through a porous separator, forming a relatively low resistance connection to the test liquid. At first, one might be inclined to ask: why not just dip a metal wire into the solution to get an electrical connection to the liquid? The reason this will not work is because metals tend to be highly reactive in ionic solutions and can produce a significant voltage across the interface of metal-to-liquid contact. The use of a wet chemical interface with the measured solution is necessary to avoid creating such a voltage, which of course would be falsely interpreted by any measuring device as being indicative of pH.

Here is an illustration of the measurement electrode's construction. Note the thin, lithium-doped glass membrane across which the pH voltage is generated:

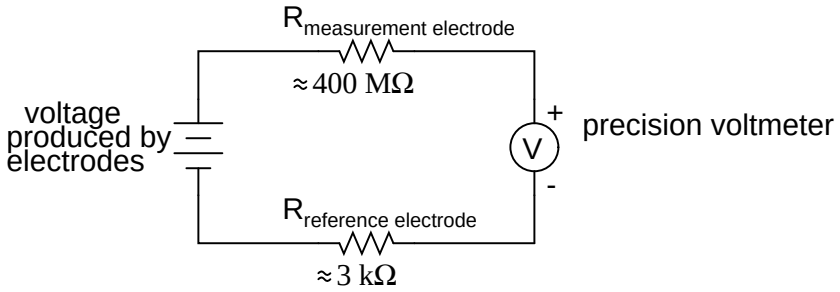


Here is an illustration of the reference electrode's construction. The porous junction shown at the bottom of the electrode is where the potassium chloride buffer and process liquid interface with each other:



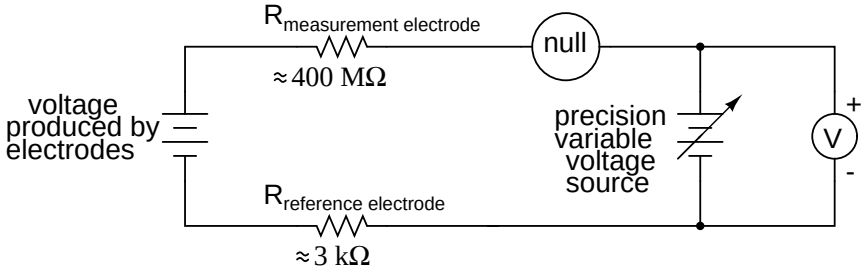
The measurement electrode's purpose is to generate the voltage used to measure the solution's pH. This voltage appears across the thickness of the glass, placing the silver wire on one side of the voltage and the liquid solution on the other. The reference electrode's purpose is to provide the stable, zero-voltage connection to the liquid solution so that a complete circuit can be made to measure the glass electrode's voltage. While the reference electrode's connection to the test liquid may only be a few kilo-ohms, the glass electrode's resistance may range from ten to nine hundred mega-ohms, depending on electrode design! Being that any current in this circuit must travel through *both* electrodes' resistances (and the resistance presented by the test liquid itself), these resistances are in series with each other and therefore add to make an even greater total.

An ordinary analog or even digital voltmeter has much too low of an internal resistance to measure voltage in such a high-resistance circuit. The equivalent circuit diagram of a typical pH probe circuit illustrates the problem:



Even a very small circuit current traveling through the high resistances of each component in the circuit (especially the measurement electrode's glass membrane), will produce relatively substantial voltage drops across those resistances, seriously reducing the voltage seen by the meter. Making matters worse is the fact that the voltage differential generated by the measurement electrode is very small, in the millivolt range (ideally 59.16 millivolts per pH unit at room temperature). The meter used for this task must be very sensitive and have an extremely high input resistance.

The most common solution to this measurement problem is to use an amplified meter with an extremely high internal resistance to measure the electrode voltage, so as to draw as little current through the circuit as possible. With modern semiconductor components, a voltmeter with an input resistance of up to 10^{17} Ω can be built with little difficulty. Another approach, seldom seen in contemporary use, is to use a potentiometric "null-balance" voltage measurement setup to measure this voltage without drawing *any* current from the circuit under test. If a technician desired to check the voltage output between a pair of pH electrodes, this would probably be the most practical means of doing so using only standard benchtop metering equipment:



As usual, the precision voltage supply would be adjusted by the technician until the null detector registered zero, then the voltmeter connected in parallel with the supply would be viewed to obtain a voltage reading. With the detector "nulled" (registering exactly zero), there should be zero current in the pH electrode circuit, and therefore no voltage dropped across the resistances of either electrode, giving the real electrode voltage at the voltmeter terminals.

Wiring requirements for pH electrodes tend to be even more severe than thermocouple wiring, demanding very clean connections and short distances of wire (10 yards or less, even with gold-plated contacts and shielded cable) for accurate and reliable measurement. As with thermocouples, however, the disadvantages of electrode pH measurement are offset by the advantages: good accuracy and relative technical simplicity.

Few instrumentation technologies inspire the awe and mystique commanded by pH mea-

surement, because it is so widely misunderstood and difficult to troubleshoot. Without elaborating on the exact chemistry of pH measurement, a few words of wisdom can be given here about pH measurement systems:

- All pH electrodes have a finite life, and that lifespan depends greatly on the type and severity of service. In some applications, a pH electrode life of one month may be considered long, and in other applications the same electrode(s) may be expected to last for over a year.
- Because the glass (measurement) electrode is responsible for generating the pH-proportional voltage, it is the one to be considered suspect if the measurement system fails to generate sufficient voltage change for a given change in pH (approximately 59 millivolts per pH unit), or fails to respond quickly enough to a fast change in test liquid pH.
- If a pH measurement system "drifts," creating offset errors, the problem likely lies with the reference electrode, which is supposed to provide a zero-voltage connection with the measured solution.
- Because pH measurement is a logarithmic representation of ion concentration, there is an incredible range of process conditions represented in the seemingly simple 0-14 pH scale. Also, due to the nonlinear nature of the logarithmic scale, a change of 1 pH at the top end (say, from 12 to 13 pH) does not represent the same quantity of chemical activity change as a change of 1 pH at the bottom end (say, from 2 to 3 pH). Control system engineers and technicians must be aware of this dynamic if there is to be any hope of *controlling* process pH at a stable value.
- The following conditions are hazardous to measurement (glass) electrodes: high temperatures, extreme pH levels (either acidic or alkaline), high ionic concentration in the liquid, abrasion, hydrofluoric acid in the liquid (HF acid dissolves glass!), and any kind of material coating on the surface of the glass.
- Temperature changes in the measured liquid affect both the response of the measurement electrode to a given pH level (ideally at 59 mV per pH unit), and the actual pH of the liquid. Temperature measurement devices can be inserted into the liquid, and the signals from those devices used to compensate for the effect of temperature on pH measurement, but this will only compensate for the measurement electrode's mV/pH response, not the actual pH change of the process liquid!

Advances are still being made in the field of pH measurement, some of which hold great promise for overcoming traditional limitations of pH electrodes. One such technology uses a device called a *field-effect transistor* to electrostatically measure the voltage produced by an ion-permeable membrane rather than measure the voltage with an actual voltmeter circuit. While this technology harbors limitations of its own, it is at least a pioneering concept, and may prove more practical at a later date.

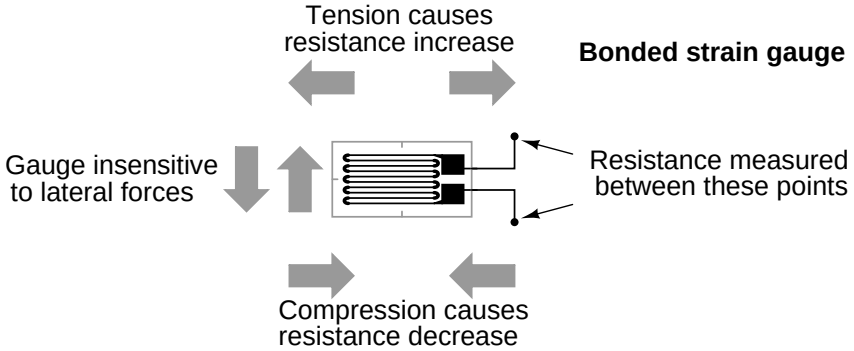
- **REVIEW:**
- pH is a representation of hydrogen ion activity in a liquid. It is the negative logarithm of the amount of hydrogen ions (in moles) per liter of liquid. Thus: 10^{-11} moles of hydrogen ions in 1 liter of liquid = 11 pH. $10^{-5.3}$ moles of hydrogen ions in 1 liter of liquid = 5.3 pH.

- The basic pH scale extends from 0 (strong acid) to 7 (neutral, pure water) to 14 (strong caustic). Chemical solutions with pH levels below zero and above 14 are possible, but rare.
- pH can be measured by measuring the voltage produced between two special electrodes immersed in the liquid solution.
- One electrode, made of a special glass, is called the *measurement* electrode. It's job it to generate a small voltage proportional to pH (ideally 59.16 mV per pH unit).
- The other electrode (called the *reference* electrode) uses a porous junction between the measured liquid and a stable, neutral pH buffer solution (usually potassium chloride) to create a zero-voltage electrical connection to the liquid. This provides a point of continuity for a complete circuit so that the voltage produced across the thickness of the glass in the measurement electrode can be measured by an external voltmeter.
- The extremely high resistance of the measurement electrode's glass membrane mandates the use of a voltmeter with extremely high internal resistance, or a null-balance voltmeter, to measure the voltage.

9.7 Strain gauges

If a strip of conductive metal is stretched, it will become skinnier and longer, both changes resulting in an increase of electrical resistance end-to-end. Conversely, if a strip of conductive metal is placed under compressive force (without buckling), it will broaden and shorten. If these stresses are kept within the elastic limit of the metal strip (so that the strip does not permanently deform), the strip can be used as a measuring element for physical force, the amount of applied force inferred from measuring its resistance.

Such a device is called a *strain gauge*. Strain gauges are frequently used in mechanical engineering research and development to measure the stresses generated by machinery. Aircraft component testing is one area of application, tiny strain-gauge strips glued to structural members, linkages, and any other critical component of an airframe to measure stress. Most strain gauges are smaller than a postage stamp, and they look something like this:



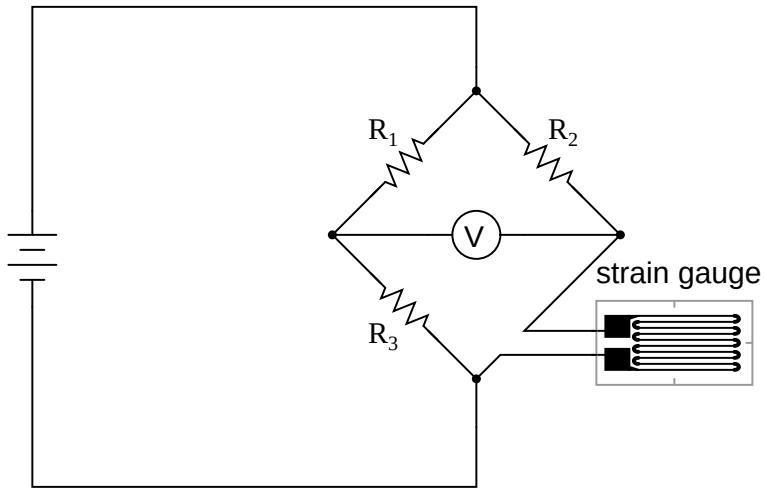
A strain gauge's conductors are very thin: if made of round wire, about 1/1000 inch in diameter. Alternatively, strain gauge conductors may be thin strips of metallic film deposited

on a nonconducting substrate material called the *carrier*. The latter form of strain gauge is represented in the previous illustration. The name "bonded gauge" is given to strain gauges that are glued to a larger structure under stress (called the *test specimen*). The task of bonding strain gauges to test specimens may appear to be very simple, but it is not. "Gauging" is a craft in its own right, absolutely essential for obtaining accurate, stable strain measurements. It is also possible to use an unmounted gauge wire stretched between two mechanical points to measure tension, but this technique has its limitations.

Typical strain gauge resistances range from 30 Ω to 3 kΩ (unstressed). This resistance may change only a fraction of a percent for the full force range of the gauge, given the limitations imposed by the elastic limits of the gauge material and of the test specimen. Forces great enough to induce greater resistance changes would permanently deform the test specimen and/or the gauge conductors themselves, thus ruining the gauge as a measurement device. Thus, in order to use the strain gauge as a practical instrument, we must measure extremely small changes in resistance with high accuracy.

Such demanding precision calls for a bridge measurement circuit. Unlike the Wheatstone bridge shown in the last chapter using a null-balance detector and a human operator to maintain a state of balance, a strain gauge bridge circuit indicates measured strain by the degree of *imbalance*, and uses a precision voltmeter in the center of the bridge to provide an accurate measurement of that imbalance:

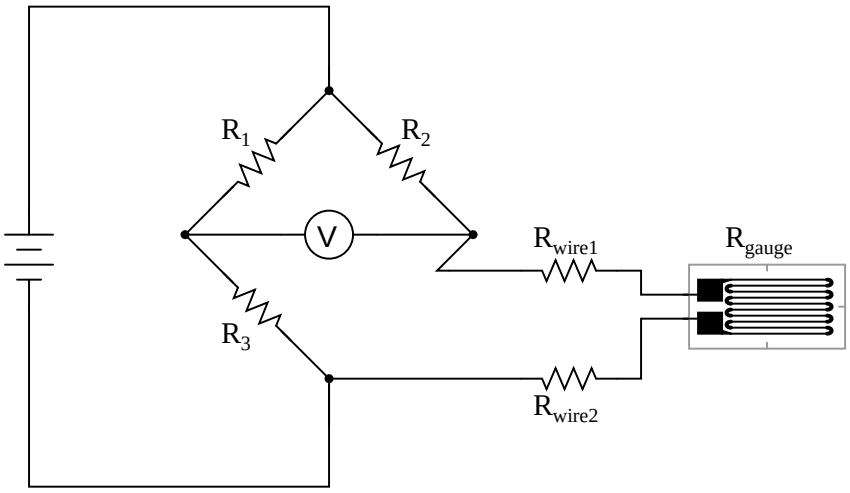
Quarter-bridge strain gauge circuit



Typically, the rheostat arm of the bridge (R_2 in the diagram) is set at a value equal to the strain gauge resistance with no force applied. The two ratio arms of the bridge (R_1 and R_3) are set equal to each other. Thus, with no force applied to the strain gauge, the bridge will be symmetrically balanced and the voltmeter will indicate zero volts, representing zero force on the strain gauge. As the strain gauge is either compressed or tensed, its resistance will decrease or increase, respectively, thus unbalancing the bridge and producing an indication at the voltmeter. This arrangement, with a single element of the bridge changing resistance in response to the measured variable (mechanical force), is known as a *quarter-bridge* circuit.

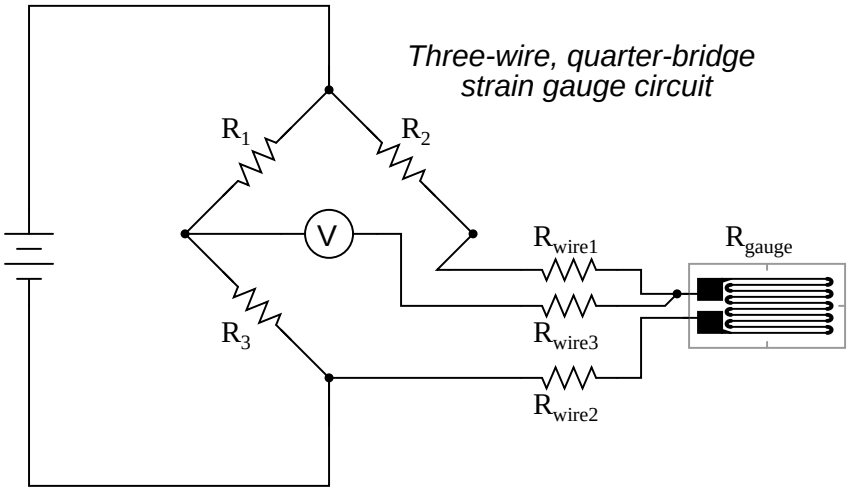
As the distance between the strain gauge and the three other resistances in the bridge

circuit may be substantial, wire resistance has a significant impact on the operation of the circuit. To illustrate the effects of wire resistance, I'll show the same schematic diagram, but add two resistor symbols in series with the strain gauge to represent the wires:



The strain gauge's resistance (R_{gauge}) is not the only resistance being measured: the wire resistances R_{wire1} and R_{wire2}, being in series with R_{gauge}, also contribute to the resistance of the lower half of the rheostat arm of the bridge, and consequently contribute to the voltmeter's indication. This, of course, will be falsely interpreted by the meter as physical strain on the gauge.

While this effect cannot be completely eliminated in this configuration, it can be minimized with the addition of a third wire, connecting the right side of the voltmeter directly to the upper wire of the strain gauge:

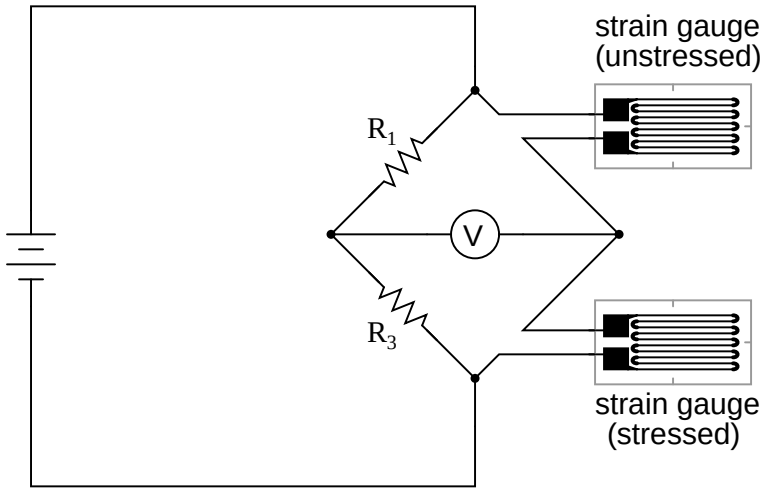


Because the third wire carries practically no current (due to the voltmeter's extremely high internal resistance), its resistance will not drop any substantial amount of voltage. Notice how

the resistance of the top wire (R_{wire1}) has been "bypassed" now that the voltmeter connects directly to the top terminal of the strain gauge, leaving only the lower wire's resistance (R_{wire2}) to contribute any stray resistance in series with the gauge. Not a perfect solution, of course, but twice as good as the last circuit!

There is a way, however, to reduce wire resistance error far beyond the method just described, and also help mitigate another kind of measurement error due to temperature. An unfortunate characteristic of strain gauges is that of resistance change with changes in temperature. This is a property common to all conductors, some more than others. Thus, our quarter-bridge circuit as shown (either with two or with three wires connecting the gauge to the bridge) works as a thermometer just as well as it does a strain indicator. If all we want to do is measure strain, this is not good. We can transcend this problem, however, by using a "dummy" strain gauge in place of R_2, so that *both* elements of the rheostat arm will change resistance in the same proportion when temperature changes, thus canceling the effects of temperature change:

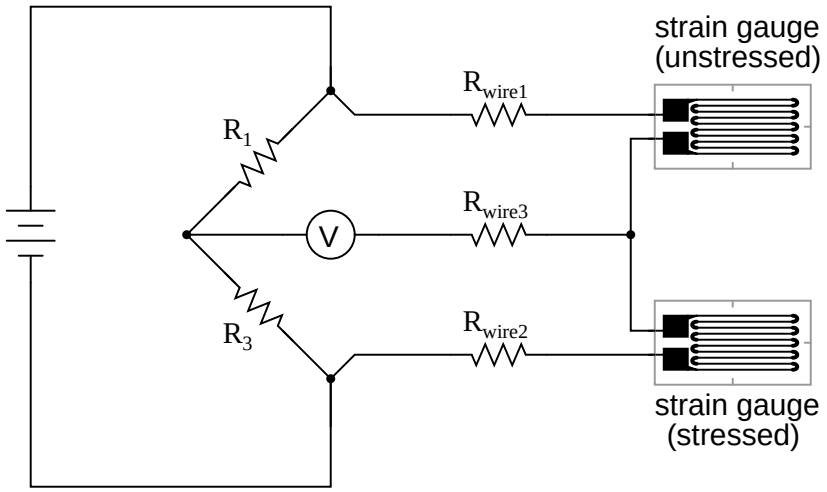
Quarter-bridge strain gauge circuit with temperature compensation



Resistors R_1 and R_3 are of equal resistance value, and the strain gauges are identical to one another. With no applied force, the bridge should be in a perfectly balanced condition and the voltmeter should register 0 volts. Both gauges are bonded to the same test specimen, but only one is placed in a position and orientation so as to be exposed to physical strain (the *active* gauge). The other gauge is isolated from all mechanical stress, and acts merely as a temperature compensation device (the *"dummy"* gauge). If the temperature changes, both gauge resistances will change by the same percentage, and the bridge's state of balance will remain unaffected. Only a differential resistance (difference of resistance between the two strain gauges) produced by physical force on the test specimen can alter the balance of the bridge.

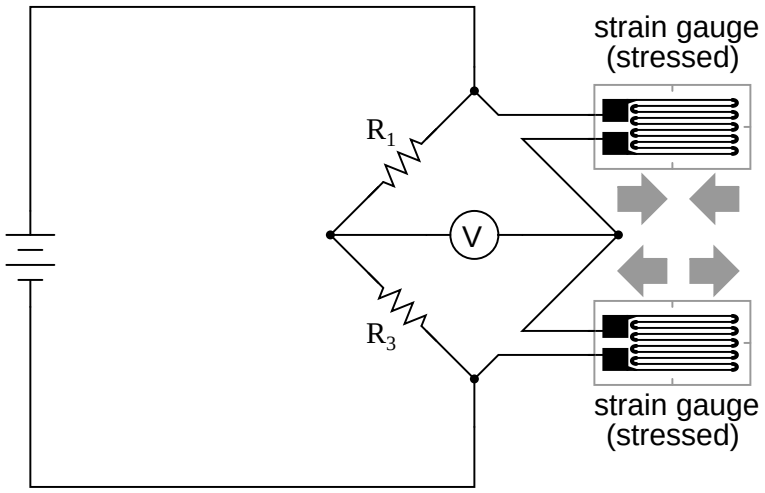
Wire resistance doesn't impact the accuracy of the circuit as much as before, because the wires connecting both strain gauges to the bridge are approximately equal length. Therefore, the upper and lower sections of the bridge's rheostat arm contain approximately the same

amount of stray resistance, and their effects tend to cancel:



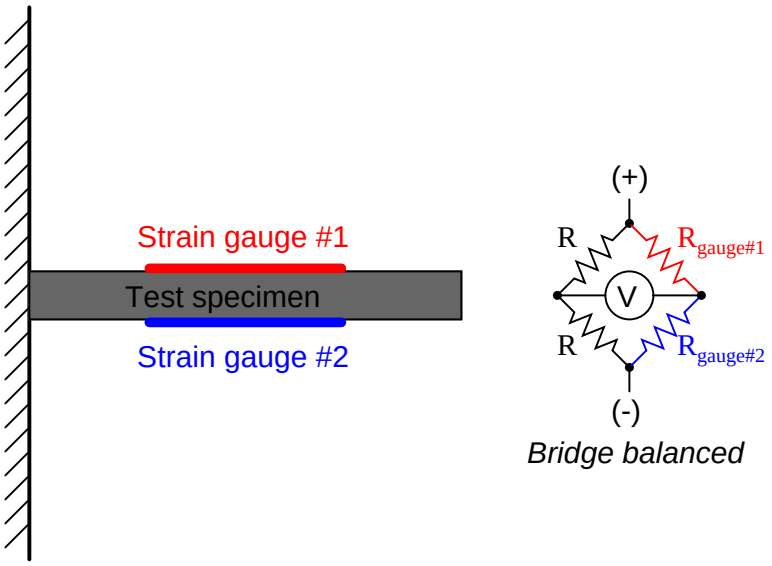
Even though there are now two strain gauges in the bridge circuit, only one is responsive to mechanical strain, and thus we would still refer to this arrangement as a *quarter-bridge*. However, if we were to take the upper strain gauge and position it so that it is exposed to the opposite force as the lower gauge (i.e. when the upper gauge is compressed, the lower gauge will be stretched, and vice versa), we will have *both* gauges responding to strain, and the bridge will be more responsive to applied force. This utilization is known as a *half-bridge*. Since both strain gauges will either increase or decrease resistance by the same proportion in response to changes in temperature, the effects of temperature change remain canceled and the circuit will suffer minimal temperature-induced measurement error:

Half-bridge strain gauge circuit

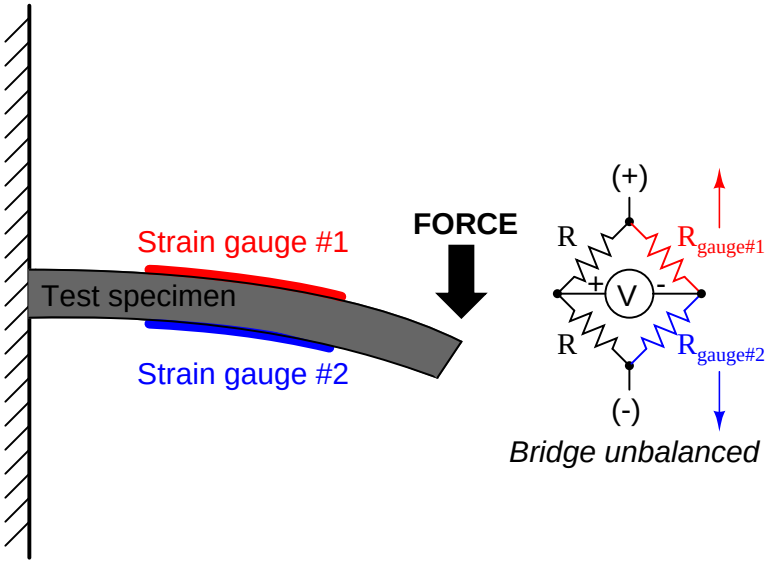


An example of how a pair of strain gauges may be bonded to a test specimen so as to yield

this effect is illustrated here:

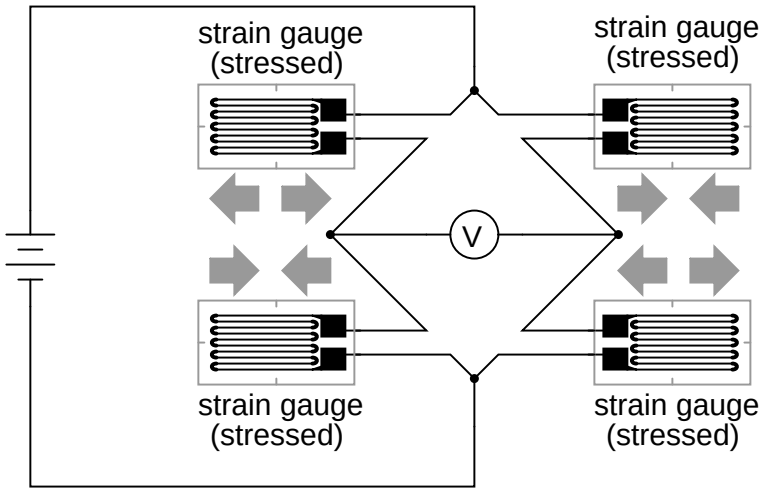


With no force applied to the test specimen, both strain gauges have equal resistance and the bridge circuit is balanced. However, when a downward force is applied to the free end of the specimen, it will bend downward, stretching gauge #1 and compressing gauge #2 at the same time:



In applications where such complementary pairs of strain gauges can be bonded to the test specimen, it may be advantageous to make all four elements of the bridge "active" for even greater sensitivity. This is called a *full-bridge* circuit:

Full-bridge strain gauge circuit



Both half-bridge and full-bridge configurations grant greater sensitivity over the quarter-bridge circuit, but often it is not possible to bond complementary pairs of strain gauges to the test specimen. Thus, the quarter-bridge circuit is frequently used in strain measurement systems.

When possible, the full-bridge configuration is the best to use. This is true not only because it is more sensitive than the others, but because it is *linear* while the others are not. Quarter-bridge and half-bridge circuits provide an output (imbalance) signal that is only *approximately* proportional to applied strain gauge force. Linearity, or proportionality, of these bridge circuits is best when the amount of resistance change due to applied force is very small compared to the nominal resistance of the gauge(s). With a full-bridge, however, the output voltage is directly proportional to applied force, with no approximation (provided that the change in resistance caused by the applied force is equal for all four strain gauges!).

Unlike the Wheatstone and Kelvin bridges, which provide measurement at a condition of perfect balance and therefore function irrespective of source voltage, the amount of source (or "excitation") voltage matters in an unbalanced bridge like this. Therefore, strain gauge bridges are rated in millivolts of imbalance produced *per* volt of excitation, *per* unit measure of force. A typical example for a strain gauge of the type used for measuring force in industrial environments is 15 mV/V at 1000 pounds. That is, at exactly 1000 pounds applied force (either compressive or tensile), the bridge will be unbalanced by 15 millivolts for every volt of excitation voltage. Again, such a figure is precise if the bridge circuit is full-active (four active strain gauges, one in each arm of the bridge), but only approximate for half-bridge and quarter-bridge arrangements.

Strain gauges may be purchased as complete units, with both strain gauge elements and bridge resistors in one housing, sealed and encapsulated for protection from the elements, and equipped with mechanical fastening points for attachment to a machine or structure. Such a package is typically called a *load cell*.

Like many of the other topics addressed in this chapter, strain gauge systems can become quite complex, and a full dissertation on strain gauges would be beyond the scope of this book.

- **REVIEW:**
- A strain gauge is a thin strip of metal designed to measure mechanical load by changing resistance when stressed (stretched or compressed within its elastic limit).
- Strain gauge resistance changes are typically measured in a bridge circuit, to allow for precise measurement of the small resistance changes, and to provide compensation for resistance variations due to temperature.

9.8 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 10

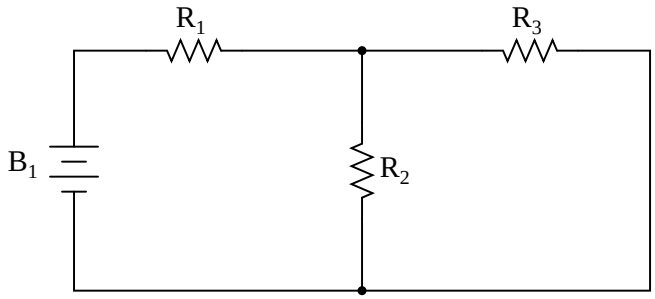
DC NETWORK ANALYSIS

Contents

10.1 What is network analysis?

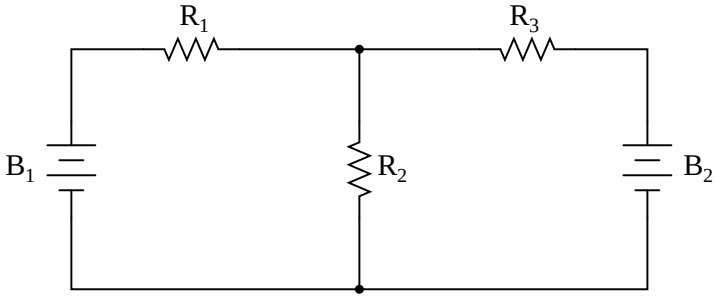
Generally speaking, *network analysis* is any structured technique used to mathematically analyze a circuit (a "network" of interconnected components). Quite often the technician or engineer will encounter circuits containing multiple sources of power or component configurations which defy simplification by series/parallel analysis techniques. In those cases, he or she will be forced to use other means. This chapter presents a few techniques useful in analyzing such complex circuits.

To illustrate how even a simple circuit can defy analysis by breakdown into series and parallel portions, take start with this series-parallel circuit:



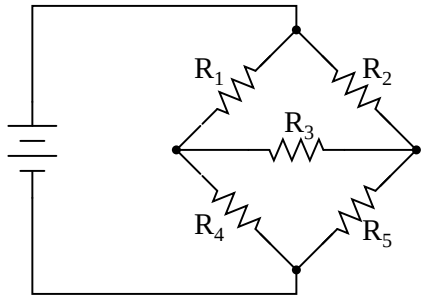
To analyze the above circuit, one would first find the equivalent of R_2 and R_3 in parallel, then add R_1 in series to arrive at a total resistance. Then, taking the voltage of battery B_1 with that total circuit resistance, the total current could be calculated through the use of Ohm's Law (I=E/R), then that current figure used to calculate voltage drops in the circuit. All in all, a fairly simple procedure.

However, the addition of just one more battery could change all of that:



Resistors R_2 and R_3 are no longer in parallel with each other, because B_2 has been inserted into R_3's branch of the circuit. Upon closer inspection, it appears there are *no* two resistors in this circuit directly in series or parallel with each other. This is the crux of our problem: in series-parallel analysis, we started off by identifying sets of resistors that *were* directly in series or parallel with each other, reducing them to single equivalent resistances. If there are no resistors in a simple series or parallel configuration with each other, then what can we do?

It should be clear that this seemingly simple circuit, with only three resistors, is impossible to reduce as a combination of simple series and simple parallel sections: it is something different altogether. However, this is not the only type of circuit defying series/parallel analysis:



Here we have a bridge circuit, and for the sake of example we will suppose that it is *not* balanced (ratio R_1/R_4 not equal to ratio R_2/R_5). If it were balanced, there would be zero current through R_3, and it could be approached as a series/parallel combination circuit ($R_1 - - R_4$ // $R_2 - - R_5$). However, any current through R_3 makes a series/parallel analysis impossible. R_1 is not in series with R_4 because there's another path for electrons to flow through R_3. Neither is R_2 in series with R_5 for the same reason. Likewise, R_1 is not in parallel with R_2 because R_3 is separating their bottom leads. Neither is R_4 in parallel with R_5. Aaarrggghhhh!

Although it might not be apparent at this point, the heart of the problem is the existence of multiple unknown quantities. At least in a series/parallel combination circuit, there was a way to find total resistance and total voltage, leaving total current as a single unknown value to calculate (and then that current was used to satisfy previously unknown variables in the reduction process until the entire circuit could be analyzed). With these problems, more than one parameter (variable) is unknown at the most basic level of circuit simplification.

With the two-battery circuit, there is no way to arrive at a value for "total resistance," because there are *two* sources of power to provide voltage and current (we would need *two* "total" resistances in order to proceed with any Ohm's Law calculations). With the unbalanced bridge circuit, there is such a thing as total resistance across the one battery (paving the way for a calculation of total current), but that total current immediately splits up into unknown proportions at each end of the bridge, so no further Ohm's Law calculations for voltage (E=IR) can be carried out.

So what can we do when we're faced with multiple unknowns in a circuit? The answer is initially found in a mathematical process known as *simultaneous equations* or *systems of equations*, whereby multiple unknown variables are solved by relating them to each other in multiple equations. In a scenario with only one unknown (such as every Ohm's Law equation we've dealt with thus far), there only needs to be a single equation to solve for the single unknown:

$\mathbf{E} = \mathrm{I}\,\mathrm{R}$ (**E** is unknown; I and R are known)

. . . or . . .

$\mathbf{I} = \dfrac{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{R}}$ (**I** is unknown; E and R are known)

. . . or . . .

$\mathbf{R} = \dfrac{\mathrm{E}}{\mathrm{I}}$ (**R** is unknown; E and I are known)

However, when we're solving for multiple unknown values, we need to have the same number of equations as we have unknowns in order to reach a solution. There are several methods of solving simultaneous equations, all rather intimidating and all too complex for explanation in this chapter. However, many scientific and programmable calculators are able to solve for simultaneous unknowns, so it is recommended to use such a calculator when first learning how to analyze these circuits.

This is not as scary as it may seem at first. Trust me!

Later on we'll see that some clever people have found tricks to avoid having to use simultaneous equations on these types of circuits. We call these tricks *network theorems*, and we will explore a few later in this chapter.

- **REVIEW:**

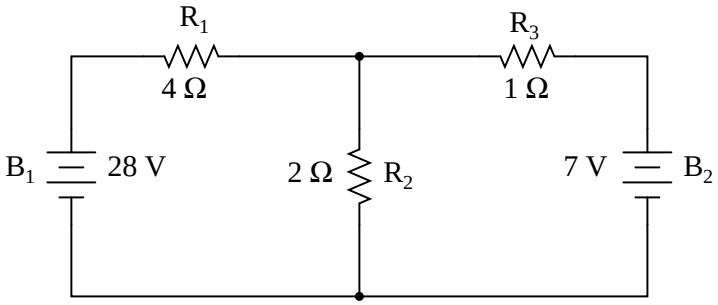
- Some circuit configurations ("networks") cannot be solved by reduction according to series/parallel circuit rules, due to multiple unknown values.

- Mathematical techniques to solve for multiple unknowns (called "simultaneous equations" or "systems") can be applied to basic Laws of circuits to solve networks.

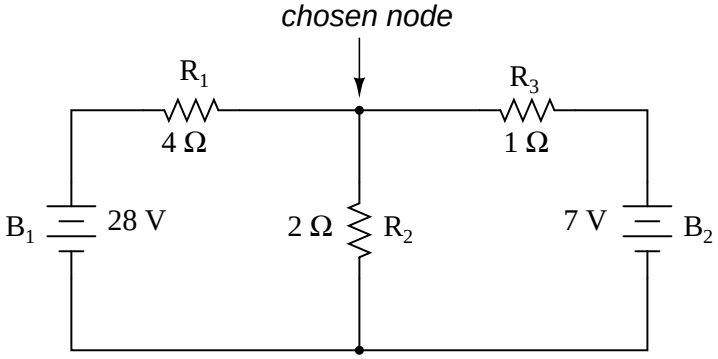
10.2 Branch current method

The first and most straightforward network analysis technique is called the *Branch Current Method*. In this method, we assume directions of currents in a network, then write equations describing their relationships to each other through Kirchhoff's and Ohm's Laws. Once we have one equation for every unknown current, we can solve the simultaneous equations and determine all currents, and therefore all voltage drops in the network.

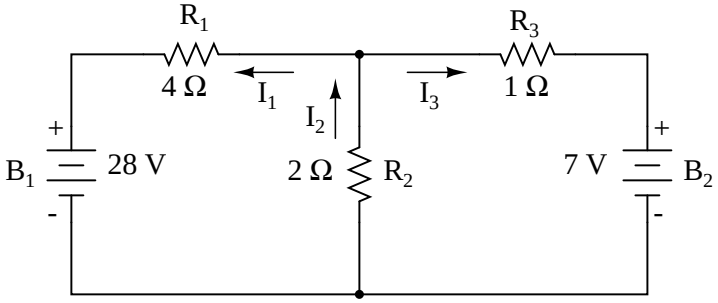
Let's use this circuit to illustrate the method:



The first step is to choose a node (junction of wires) in the circuit to use as a point of reference for our unknown currents. I'll choose the node joining the right of R_1, the top of R_2, and the left of R_3.



At this node, guess which directions the three wires' currents take, labeling the three currents as I_1, I_2, and I_3, respectively. Bear in mind that these directions of current are speculative at this point. Fortunately, if it turns out that any of our guesses were wrong, we will know when we mathematically solve for the currents (any "wrong" current directions will show up as negative numbers in our solution).

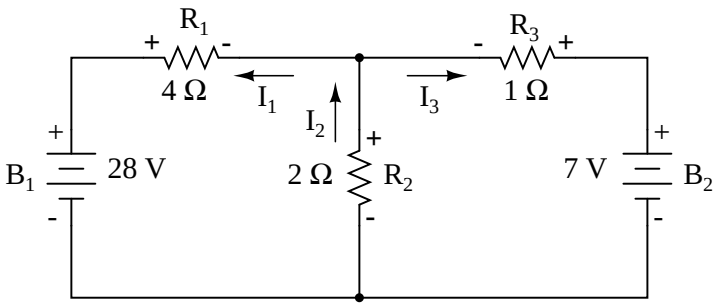


Kirchhoff's Current Law (KCL) tells us that the algebraic sum of currents entering and exiting a node must equal zero, so we can relate these three currents (I_1, I_2, and I_3) to each other in a single equation. For the sake of convention, I'll denote any current *entering* the node as positive in sign, and any current *exiting* the node as negative in sign:

Kirchhoff's Current Law (KCL) applied to currents at node

$$- I_1 + I_2 - I_3 = 0$$

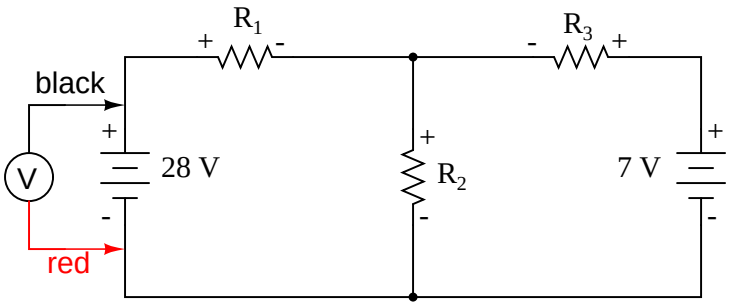
The next step is to label all voltage drop polarities across resistors according to the assumed directions of the currents. Remember that the "upstream" end of a resistor will always be negative, and the "downstream" end of a resistor positive with respect to each other, since electrons are negatively charged:



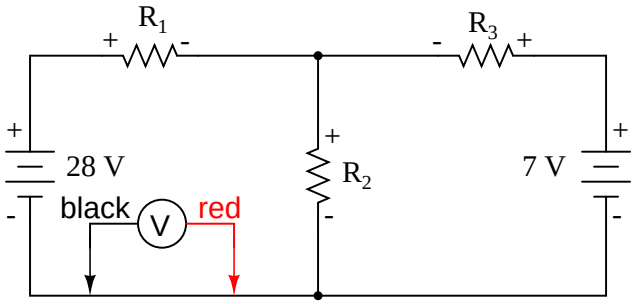
The battery polarities, of course, remain as they were according to their symbology (short end negative, long end positive). It is OK if the polarity of a resistor's voltage drop doesn't match with the polarity of the nearest battery, so long as the resistor voltage polarity is correctly based on the assumed direction of current through it. In some cases we may discover that current will be forced *backwards* through a battery, causing this very effect. The important thing to remember here is to base all your resistor polarities and subsequent calculations on the directions of current(s) initially assumed. As stated earlier, if your assumption happens to be incorrect, it will be apparent once the equations have been solved (by means of a negative solution). The magnitude of the solution, however, will still be correct.

Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (KVL) tells us that the algebraic sum of all voltages in a loop must equal zero, so we can create more equations with current terms (I_1, I_2, and I_3) for our simultaneous equations. To obtain a KVL equation, we must tally voltage drops in a loop of the circuit, as though we were measuring with a real voltmeter. I'll choose to trace the left loop of this circuit first, starting from the upper-left corner and moving counter-clockwise (the choice of starting points and directions is arbitrary). The result will look like this:

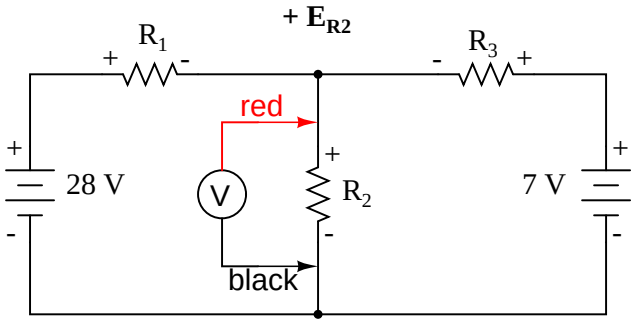
Voltmeter indicates: **-28 V**



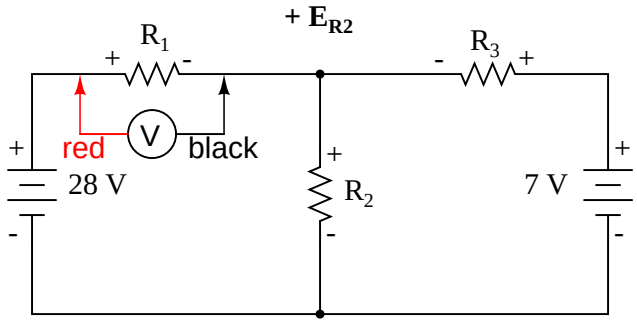
Voltmeter indicates: **0 V**



Voltmeter indicates: **a positive voltage**



Voltmeter indicates: **a positive voltage**



Having completed our trace of the left loop, we add these voltage indications together for a sum of zero:

Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (KVL)
applied to voltage drops in left loop

$$- 28 + 0 + E_{R2} + E_{R1} = 0$$

Of course, we don't yet know what the voltage is across R_1 or R_2, so we can't insert those values into the equation as numerical figures at this point. However, we *do* know that all three voltages must algebraically add to zero, so the equation is true. We can go a step further and express the unknown voltages as the product of the corresponding unknown currents (I_1 and I_2) and their respective resistors, following Ohm's Law (E=IR), as well as eliminate the 0 term:

$$- 28 + E_{R2} + E_{R1} = 0$$

Ohm's Law: $E = IR$

. . . Substituting IR for E in the KVL equation . . .

$$- 28 + I_2R_2 + I_1R_1 = 0$$

Since we know what the values of all the resistors are in ohms, we can just substitute those figures into the equation to simplify things a bit:

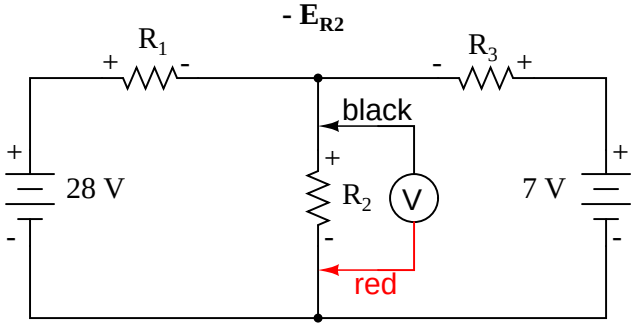
$$- 28 + 2I_2 + 4I_1 = 0$$

You might be wondering why we went through all the trouble of manipulating this equation from its initial form ($-28 + E_{R2} + E_{R1}$). After all, the last two terms are still unknown, so what advantage is there to expressing them in terms of unknown voltages or as unknown currents (multiplied by resistances)? The purpose in doing this is to get the KVL equation expressed using the *same unknown variables* as the KCL equation, for this is a necessary requirement for any simultaneous equation solution method. To solve for three unknown currents (I_1, I_2, and I_3), we must have three equations relating these three *currents* (not *voltages*!) together.

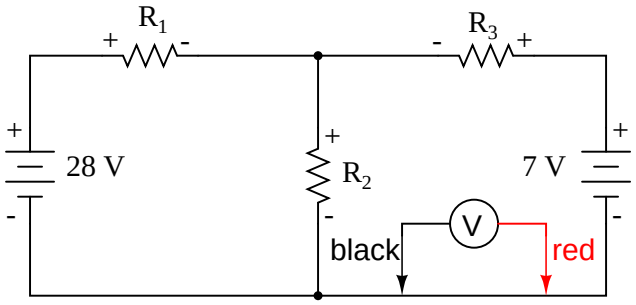
Applying the same steps to the right loop of the circuit (starting at the chosen node and moving counter-clockwise), we get another KVL equation:

Voltmeter indicates: **a negative voltage**

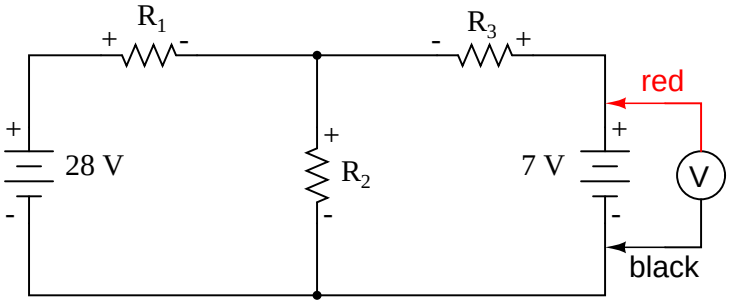
$\mathbf{- E_{R2}}$



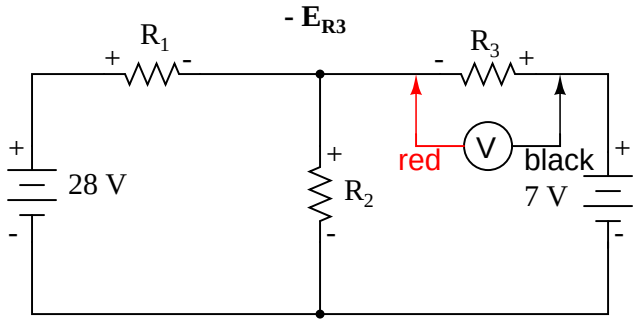
Voltmeter indicates: **0 V**



Voltmeter indicates: **+ 7 V**



Voltmeter indicates: **a negative voltage**



Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (KVL)
applied to voltage drops in right loop

$$- E_{R2} + 0 + 7 - E_{R3} = 0$$

Knowing now that the voltage across each resistor can be and *should be* expressed as the product of the corresponding current and the (known) resistance of each resistor, we can re-write the equation as such:

$$- 2I_2 + 7 - 1I_3 = 0$$

Now we have a mathematical system of three equations (one KCL equation and two KVL equations) and three unknowns:

$- I_1 + I_2 - I_3 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Current Law*

$- 28 + 2I_2 + 4I_1 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law*

$- 2I_2 + 7 - 1I_3 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law*

For some methods of solution (especially any method involving a calculator), it is helpful to express each unknown term in each equation, with any constant value to the right of the equal sign, and with any "unity" terms expressed with an explicit coefficient of 1. Re-writing the equations again, we have:

$- 1I_1 + 1I_2 - 1I_3 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Current Law*

$4I_1 + 2I_2 + 0I_3 = 28$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law*

$0I_1 - 2I_2 - 1I_3 = -7$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law*

All three variables represented in all three equations

Using whatever solution techniques are available to us, we should arrive at a solution for

the three unknown current values:

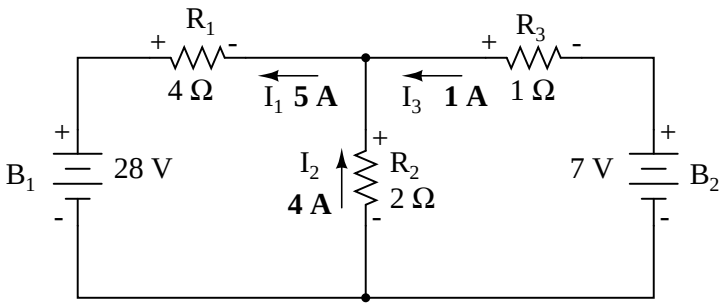
Solutions:

$I_1 = 5$ A

$I_2 = 4$ A

$I_3 = -1$ A

So, I_1 is 5 amps, I_2 is 4 amps, and I_3 is a negative 1 amp. But what does "negative" current mean? In this case, it means that our *assumed* direction for I_3 was opposite of its *real* direction. Going back to our original circuit, we can re-draw the current arrow for I_3 (and re-draw the polarity of R_3's voltage drop to match):



Notice how current is being pushed backwards through battery 2 (electrons flowing "up") due to the higher voltage of battery 1 (whose current is pointed "down" as it normally would)! Despite the fact that battery B_2's polarity is trying to push electrons down in that branch of the circuit, electrons are being forced backwards through it due to the superior voltage of battery B_1. Does this mean that the stronger battery will always "win" and the weaker battery always get current forced through it backwards? No! It actually depends on both the batteries' relative voltages *and* the resistor values in the circuit. The only sure way to determine what's going on is to take the time to mathematically analyze the network.

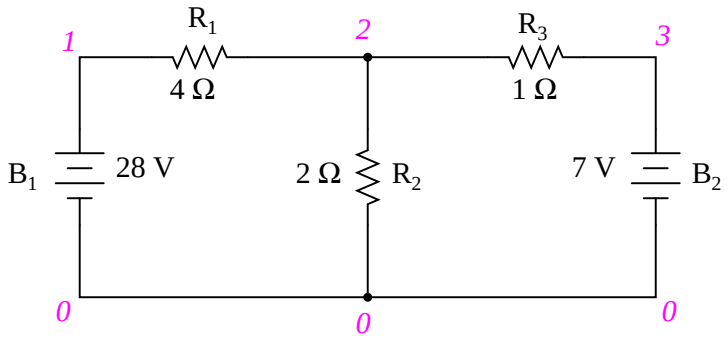
Now that we know the magnitude of all currents in this circuit, we can calculate voltage drops across all resistors with Ohm's Law (E=IR):

$$E_{R1} = I_1 R_1 = (5 \text{ A})(4\ \Omega) = 20 \text{ V}$$

$$E_{R2} = I_2 R_2 = (4 \text{ A})(2\ \Omega) = 8 \text{ V}$$

$$E_{R3} = I_3 R_3 = (1 \text{ A})(1\ \Omega) = 1 \text{ V}$$

Let us now analyze this network using SPICE to verify our voltage figures.[2] We could analyze current as well with SPICE, but since that requires the insertion of extra components into the circuit, and because we know that if the voltages are all the same and all the resistances are the same, the currents *must* all be the same, I'll opt for the less complex analysis. Here's a re-drawing of our circuit, complete with node numbers for SPICE to reference:




```
network analysis example
v1 1 0
v2 3 0 dc 7
r1 1 2 4
r2 2 0 2
r3 2 3 1
.dc v1 28 28 1
.print dc v(1,2) v(2,0) v(2,3)
.end

v1             v(1,2)       v(2)         v(2,3)
2.800E+01      2.000E+01    8.000E+00    1.000E+00
```

Sure enough, the voltage figures all turn out to be the same: 20 volts across R_1 (nodes 1 and 2), 8 volts across R_2 (nodes 2 and 0), and 1 volt across R_3 (nodes 2 and 3). Take note of the signs of all these voltage figures: they're all positive values! SPICE bases its polarities on the order in which nodes are listed, the first node being positive and the second node negative. For example, a figure of positive (+) 20 volts between nodes 1 and 2 means that node 1 is positive with respect to node 2. If the figure had come out negative in the SPICE analysis, we would have known that our actual polarity was "backwards" (node 1 negative with respect to node 2). Checking the node orders in the SPICE listing, we can see that the polarities all match what we determined through the Branch Current method of analysis.

- **REVIEW:**
- Steps to follow for the "Branch Current" method of analysis:
- (1) Choose a node and assume directions of currents.
- (2) Write a KCL equation relating currents at the node.
- (3) Label resistor voltage drop polarities based on assumed currents.
- (4) Write KVL equations for each loop of the circuit, substituting the product IR for E in each resistor term of the equations.

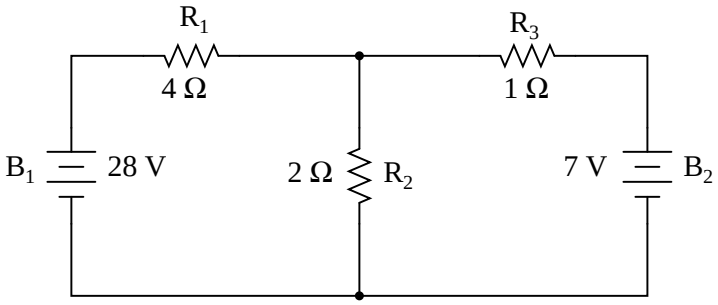
- (5) Solve for unknown branch currents (simultaneous equations).
- (6) If any solution is negative, then the assumed direction of current for that solution is wrong!
- (7) Solve for voltage drops across all resistors (E=IR).

10.3 Mesh current method

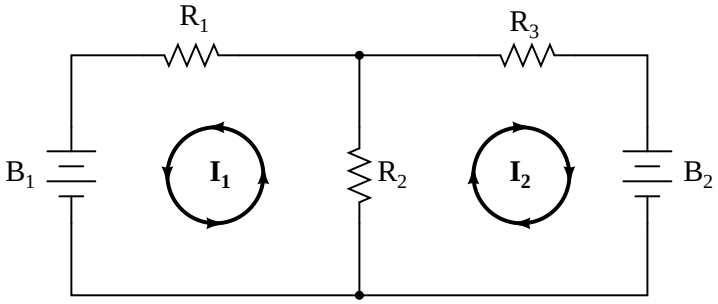
The *Mesh Current Method*, also known as the *Loop Current Method*, is quite similar to the Branch Current method in that it uses simultaneous equations, Kirchhoff's Voltage Law, and Ohm's Law to determine unknown currents in a network. It differs from the Branch Current method in that it does *not* use Kirchhoff's Current Law, and it is usually able to solve a circuit with less unknown variables and less simultaneous equations, which is especially nice if you're forced to solve without a calculator.

10.3.1 Mesh Current, conventional method

Let's see how this method works on the same example problem:

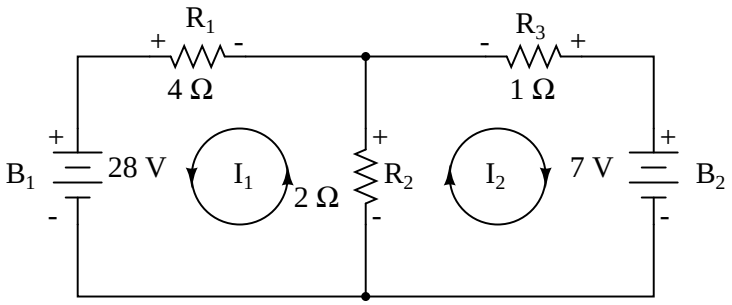


The first step in the Mesh Current method is to identify "loops" within the circuit encompassing all components. In our example circuit, the loop formed by B_1, R_1, and R_2 will be the first while the loop formed by B_2, R_2, and R_3 will be the second. The strangest part of the Mesh Current method is envisioning circulating currents in each of the loops. In fact, this method gets its name from the idea of these currents meshing together between loops like sets of spinning gears:



The choice of each current's direction is entirely arbitrary, just as in the Branch Current method, but the resulting equations are easier to solve if the currents are going the same direction through intersecting components (note how currents I_1 and I_2 are both going "up" through resistor R_2, where they "mesh," or intersect). If the assumed direction of a mesh current is wrong, the answer for that current will have a negative value.

The next step is to label all voltage drop polarities across resistors according to the assumed directions of the mesh currents. Remember that the "upstream" end of a resistor will always be negative, and the "downstream" end of a resistor positive with respect to each other, since electrons are negatively charged. The battery polarities, of course, are dictated by their symbol orientations in the diagram, and may or may not "agree" with the resistor polarities (assumed current directions):



Using Kirchhoff's Voltage Law, we can now step around each of these loops, generating equations representative of the component voltage drops and polarities. As with the Branch Current method, we will denote a resistor's voltage drop as the product of the resistance (in ohms) and its respective mesh current (that quantity being unknown at this point). Where two currents mesh together, we will write that term in the equation with resistor current being the *sum* of the two meshing currents.

Tracing the left loop of the circuit, starting from the upper-left corner and moving counter-clockwise (the choice of starting points and directions is ultimately irrelevant), counting polarity as if we had a voltmeter in hand, red lead on the point ahead and black lead on the point behind, we get this equation:

$$- 28 + 2(I_1 + I_2) + 4I_1 = 0$$

Notice that the middle term of the equation uses the sum of mesh currents I_1 and I_2 as the current through resistor R_2. This is because mesh currents I_1 and I_2 are going the same direction through R_2, and thus complement each other. Distributing the coefficient of 2 to the I_1 and I_2 terms, and then combining I_1 terms in the equation, we can simplify as such:

$- 28 + 2(I_1 + I_2) + 4I_1 = 0$ *Original form of equation*

. . . distributing to terms within parentheses . . .

$- 28 + 2I_1 + 2I_2 + 4I_1 = 0$

. . . combining like terms . . .

$\mathbf{- 28 + 6I_1 + 2I_2 = 0}$ *Simplified form of equation*

At this time we have one equation with two unknowns. To be able to solve for two unknown mesh currents, we must have two equations. If we trace the other loop of the circuit, we can obtain another KVL equation and have enough data to solve for the two currents. Creature of habit that I am, I'll start at the upper-left hand corner of the right loop and trace counter-clockwise:

$- 2(I_1 + I_2) + 7 - 1I_2 = 0$

Simplifying the equation as before, we end up with:

$- 2I_1 - 3I_2 + 7 = 0$

Now, with two equations, we can use one of several methods to mathematically solve for the unknown currents I_1 and I_2:

$- 28 + 6I_1 + 2I_2 = 0$

$- 2I_1 - 3I_2 + 7 = 0$

. . . rearranging equations for easier solution . . .

$6I_1 + 2I_2 = 28$

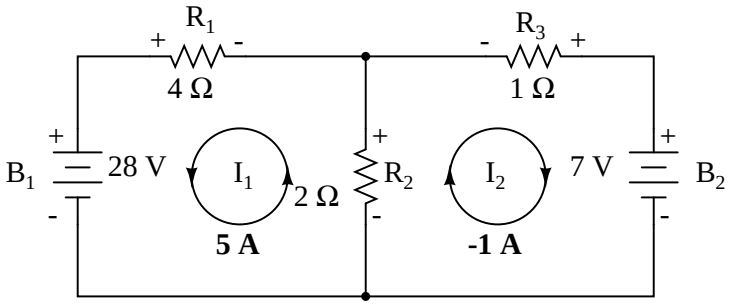
$-2I_1 - 3I_2 = -7$

Solutions:

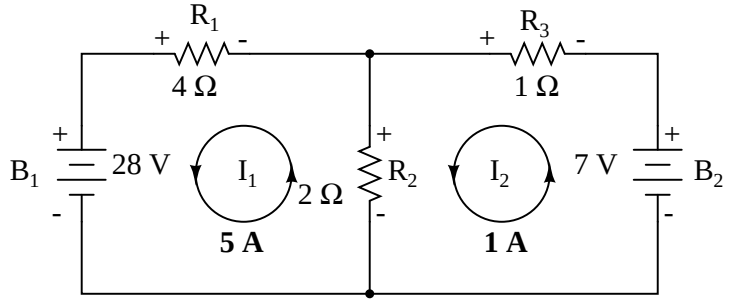
$I_1 = 5$ A

$I_2 = -1$ A

Knowing that these solutions are values for *mesh* currents, not *branch* currents, we must go back to our diagram to see how they fit together to give currents through all components:

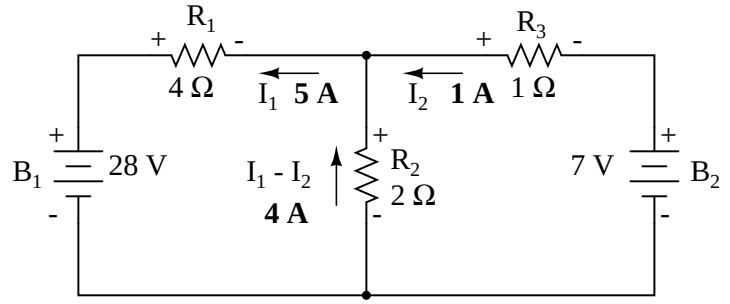


The solution of -1 amp for I_2 means that our initially assumed direction of current was incorrect. In actuality, I_2 is flowing in a counter-clockwise direction at a value of (positive) 1 amp:



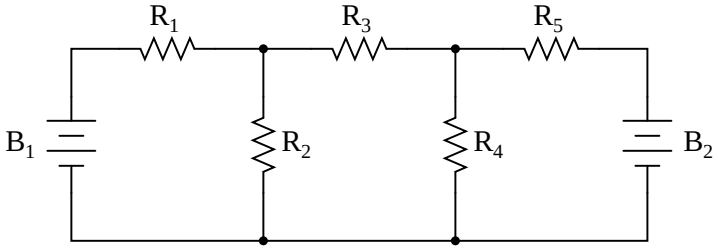
This change of current direction from what was first assumed will alter the polarity of the voltage drops across R_2 and R_3 due to current I_2. From here, we can say that the current through R_1 is 5 amps, with the voltage drop across R_1 being the product of current and resistance (E=IR), 20 volts (positive on the left and negative on the right). Also, we can safely say that the current through R_3 is 1 amp, with a voltage drop of 1 volt (E=IR), positive on the left and negative on the right. But what is happening at R_2?

Mesh current I_1 is going "up" through R_2, while mesh current I_2 is going "down" through R_2. To determine the actual current through R_2, we must see how mesh currents I_1 and I_2 interact (in this case they're in opposition), and algebraically add them to arrive at a final value. Since I_1 is going "up" at 5 amps, and I_2 is going "down" at 1 amp, the *real* current through R_2 must be a value of 4 amps, going "up:"

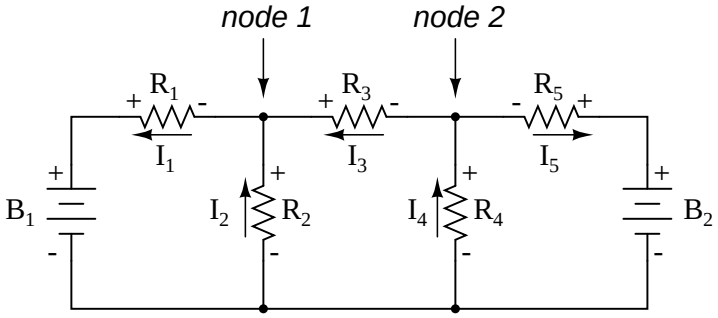


A current of 4 amps through R_2's resistance of 2 Ω gives us a voltage drop of 8 volts (E=IR), positive on the top and negative on the bottom.

The primary advantage of Mesh Current analysis is that it generally allows for the solution of a large network with fewer unknown values and fewer simultaneous equations. Our example problem took three equations to solve the Branch Current method and only two equations using the Mesh Current method. This advantage is much greater as networks increase in complexity:



To solve this network using Branch Currents, we'd have to establish five variables to account for each and every unique current in the circuit (I_1 through I_5). This would require five equations for solution, in the form of two KCL equations and three KVL equations (two equations for KCL at the nodes, and three equations for KVL in each loop):



$- I_1 + I_2 + I_3 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Current Law at node 1*

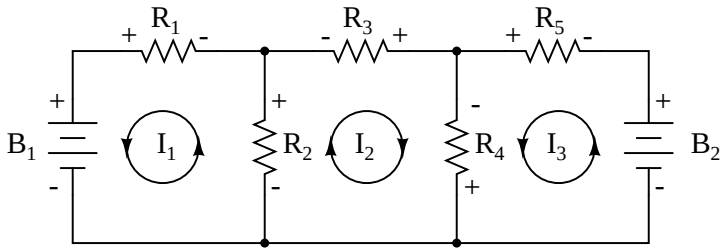
$- I_3 + I_4 - I_5 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Current Law at node 2*

$- E_{B1} + I_2R_2 + I_1R_1 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law in left loop*

$- I_2R_2 + I_4R_4 + I_3R_3 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law in middle loop*

$- I_4R_4 + E_{B2} - I_5R_5 = 0$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law in right loop*

I suppose if you have nothing better to do with your time than to solve for five unknown variables with five equations, you might not mind using the Branch Current method of analysis for this circuit. For those of us who *have* better things to do with our time, the Mesh Current method is a whole lot easier, requiring only three unknowns and three equations to solve:



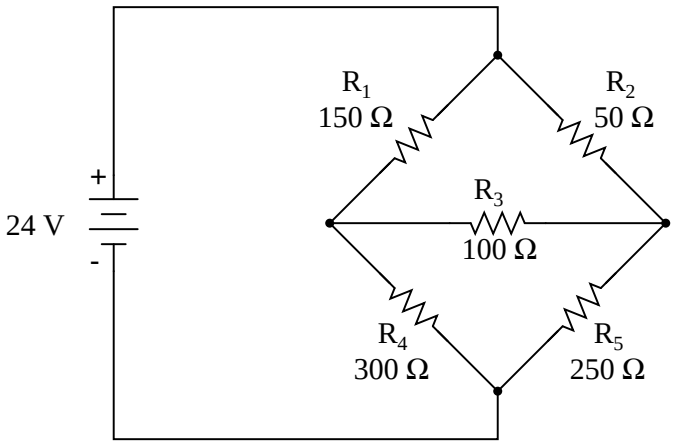
$$- E_{B1} + R_2(I_1 + I_2) + I_1R_1 = 0$$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law in left loop*

$$- R_2(I_2 + I_1) - R_4(I_2 + I_3) - I_2R_3 = 0$$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law in middle loop*

$$R_4(I_3 + I_2) + E_{B2} + I_3R_5 = 0$$ *Kirchhoff's Voltage Law in right loop*

Less equations to work with is a decided advantage, especially when performing simultaneous equation solution by hand (without a calculator).

Another type of circuit that lends itself well to Mesh Current is the unbalanced Wheatstone Bridge. Take this circuit, for example:

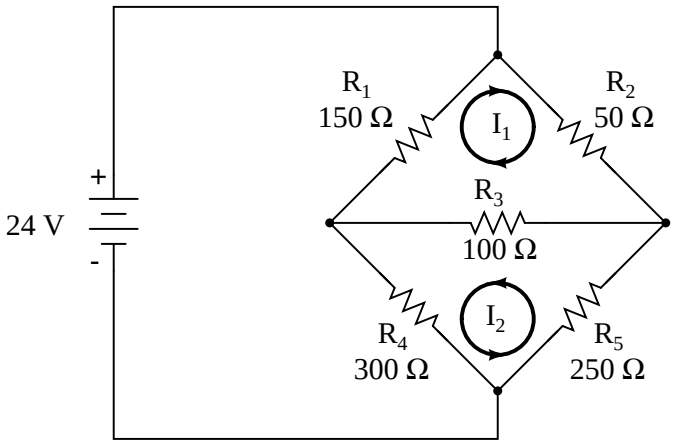


Since the ratios of R_1/R_4 and R_2/R_5 are unequal, we know that there will be voltage across resistor R_3, and some amount of current through it. As discussed at the beginning of this chapter, this type of circuit is irreducible by normal series-parallel analysis, and may only be analyzed by some other method.

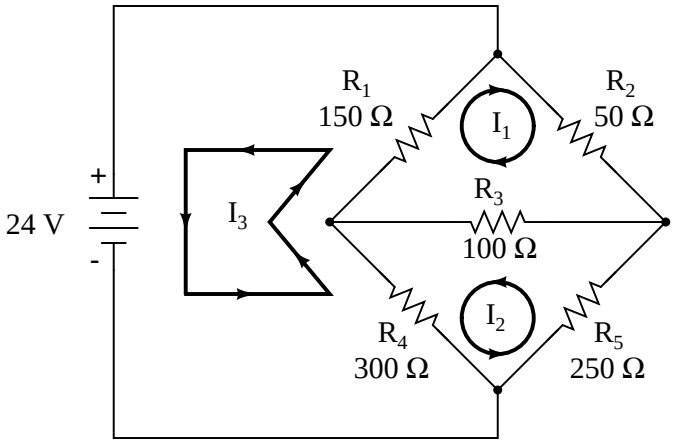
We could apply the Branch Current method to this circuit, but it would require *six* currents (I_1 through I_6), leading to a very large set of simultaneous equations to solve. Using the Mesh Current method, though, we may solve for all currents and voltages with much fewer variables.

The first step in the Mesh Current method is to draw just enough mesh currents to account for all components in the circuit. Looking at our bridge circuit, it should be obvious where to

place two of these currents:

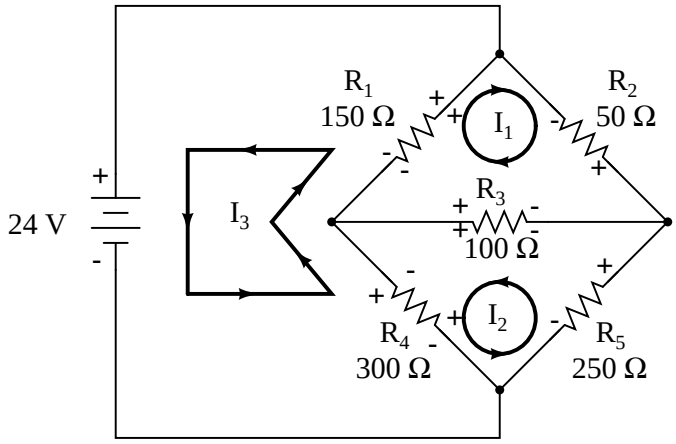


The directions of these mesh currents, of course, is arbitrary. However, two mesh currents is not enough in this circuit, because neither I_1 nor I_2 goes through the battery. So, we must add a third mesh current, I_3:



Here, I have chosen I_3 to loop from the bottom side of the battery, through R_4, through R_1, and back to the top side of the battery. This is not the only path I could have chosen for I_3, but it seems the simplest.

Now, we must label the resistor voltage drop polarities, following each of the assumed currents' directions:



Notice something very important here: at resistor R_4, the polarities for the respective mesh currents do not agree. This is because those mesh currents (I_2 and I_3) are going through R_4 in different directions. This does not preclude the use of the Mesh Current method of analysis, but it does complicate it a bit. Though later, we will show how to avoid the R_4 current clash. (See Example below)

Generating a KVL equation for the top loop of the bridge, starting from the top node and tracing in a clockwise direction:

$50I_1 + 100(I_1 + I_2) + 150(I_1 + I_3) = 0$ *Original form of equation*

. . . distributing to terms within parentheses . . .

$50I_1 + 100I_1 + 100I_2 + 150I_1 + 150I_3 = 0$

. . . combining like terms . . .

$\mathbf{300I_1 + 100I_2 + 150I_3 = 0}$ *Simplified form of equation*

In this equation, we represent the common directions of currents by their *sums* through common resistors. For example, resistor R_3, with a value of 100 Ω, has its voltage drop represented in the above KVL equation by the expression $100(I_1 + I_2)$, since both currents I_1 and I_2 go through R_3 from right to left. The same may be said for resistor R_1, with its voltage drop expression shown as $150(I_1 + I_3)$, since both I_1 and I_3 go from bottom to top through that resistor, and thus work *together* to generate its voltage drop.

Generating a KVL equation for the bottom loop of the bridge will not be so easy, since we have two currents going against each other through resistor R_4. Here is how I do it (starting at the right-hand node, and tracing counter-clockwise):

$100(I_1 + I_2) + 300(I_2 - I_3) + 250I_2 = 0$ *Original form of equation*

. . . distributing to terms within parentheses . . .

$100I_1 + 100I_2 + 300I_2 - 300I_3 + 250I_2 = 0$

. . . combining like terms . . .

$\mathbf{100I_1 + 650I_2 - 300I_3 = 0}$ *Simplified form of equation*

Note how the second term in the equation's original form has resistor R_4's value of 300 Ω multiplied by the *difference* between I_2 and I_3 ($I_2 - I_3$). This is how we represent the combined effect of two mesh currents going in opposite directions through the same component. Choosing the appropriate mathematical signs is very important here: $300(I_2 - I_3)$ does not mean the same thing as $300(I_3 - I_2)$. I chose to write $300(I_2 - I_3)$ because I was thinking first of I_2's effect (creating a positive voltage drop, measuring with an imaginary voltmeter across R_4, red lead on the bottom and black lead on the top), and secondarily of I_3's effect (creating a negative voltage drop, red lead on the bottom and black lead on the top). If I had thought in terms of I_3's effect first and I_2's effect secondarily, holding my imaginary voltmeter leads in the same positions (red on bottom and black on top), the expression would have been $-300(I_3 - I_2)$. Note that this expression *is* mathematically equivalent to the first one: $+300(I_2 - I_3)$.

Well, that takes care of two equations, but I still need a third equation to complete my simultaneous equation set of three variables, three equations. This third equation must also include the battery's voltage, which up to this point does not appear in either two of the previous KVL equations. To generate this equation, I will trace a loop again with my imaginary voltmeter starting from the battery's bottom (negative) terminal, stepping clockwise (again, the direction in which I step is arbitrary, and does not need to be the same as the direction of the mesh current in that loop):

$24 - 150(I_3 + I_1) - 300(I_3 - I_2) = 0$ *Original form of equation*

. . . distributing to terms within parentheses . . .

$24 - 150I_3 - 150I_1 - 300I_3 + 300I_2 = 0$

. . . combining like terms . . .

$\mathbf{-150I_1 + 300I_2 - 450I_3 = -24}$ *Simplified form of equation*

Solving for I_1, I_2, and I_3 using whatever simultaneous equation method we prefer:

$$300I_1 + 100I_2 + 150I_3 = 0$$
$$100I_1 + 650I_2 - 300I_3 = 0$$
$$-150I_1 + 300I_2 - 450I_3 = -24$$

Solutions:

$I_1 = -93.793$ mA

$I_2 = 77.241$ mA

$I_3 = 136.092$ mA

Example:

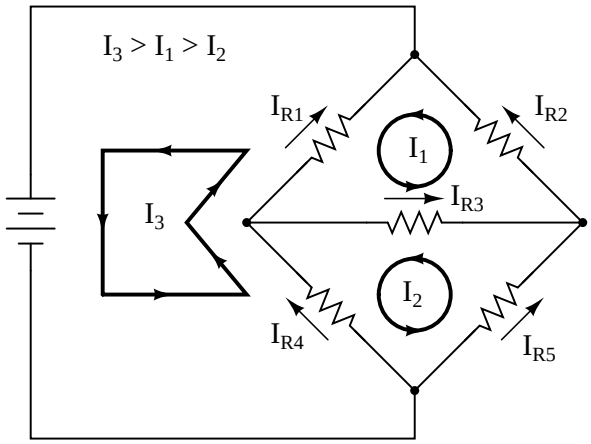
Use Octave to find the solution for I_1, I_2, and I_3 from the above simplified form of equations. [4]

Solution:

In Octave, an open source Matlab® clone, enter the coefficients into the A matrix between square brackets with column elements comma separated, and rows semicolon separated.[4] Enter the voltages into the column vector: b. The unknown currents: I_1, I_2, and I_3 are calculated by the command: x=A\b. These are contained within the x column vector.

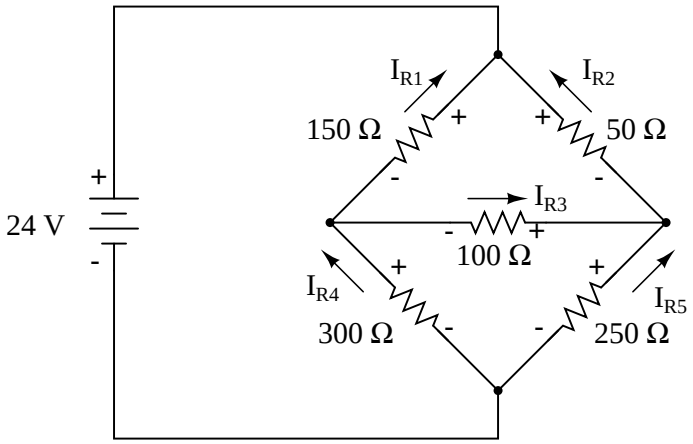
```
octave:1>A = [300,100,150;100,650,-300;-150,300,-450]
A =
  300  100  150
  100  650  -300
  -150 300  -450

octave:2> b = [0;0;-24]
b =
  0
  0
  -24

octave:3> x = A\b
x =
  -0.093793
   0.077241
   0.136092
```

The negative value arrived at for I_1 tells us that the assumed direction for that mesh current was incorrect. Thus, the actual current values through each resistor is as such:



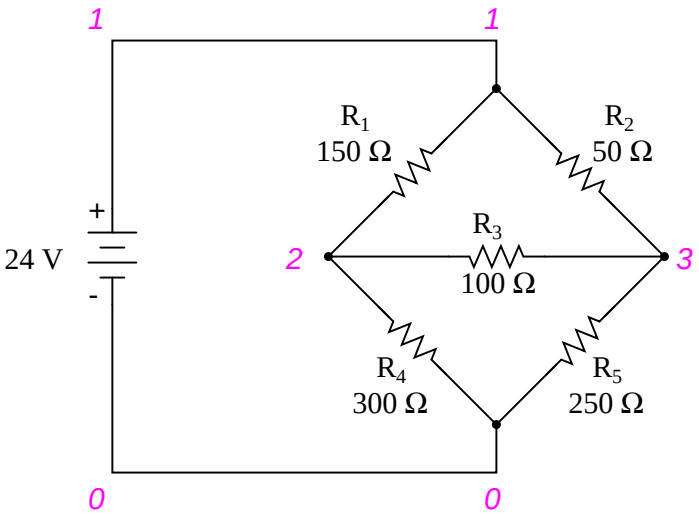
$I_{R1} = I_3 - I_1 = 136.092 \text{ mA} - 93.793 \text{ mA} = 42.299 \text{ mA}$
$I_{R2} = I_1 = 93.793 \text{ mA}$
$I_{R3} = I_1 - I_2 = 93.793 \text{ mA} - 77.241 \text{ mA} = 16.552 \text{ mA}$
$I_{R4} = I_3 - I_2 = 136.092 \text{ mA} - 77.241 \text{ mA} = 58.851 \text{ mA}$
$I_{R5} = I_2 = 77.241 \text{ mA}$

Calculating voltage drops across each resistor:



$E_{R1} = I_{R1}R_1 = (42.299 \text{ mA})(150\ \Omega) = 6.3448 \text{ V}$
$E_{R2} = I_{R2}R_2 = (93.793 \text{ mA})(50\ \Omega) = 4.6897 \text{ V}$
$E_{R3} = I_{R3}R_3 = (16.552 \text{ mA})(100\ \Omega) = 1.6552 \text{ V}$
$E_{R4} = I_{R4}R_4 = (58.851 \text{ mA})(300\ \Omega) = 17.6552 \text{ V}$
$E_{R5} = I_{R5}R_5 = (77.241 \text{ mA})(250\ \Omega) = 19.3103 \text{ V}$

A SPICE simulation confirms the accuracy of our voltage calculations:[2]




```
unbalanced wheatstone bridge
v1 1 0
r1 1 2 150
r2 1 3 50
r3 2 3 100
r4 2 0 300
r5 3 0 250
.dc v1 24 24 1
.print dc v(1,2) v(1,3) v(3,2) v(2,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

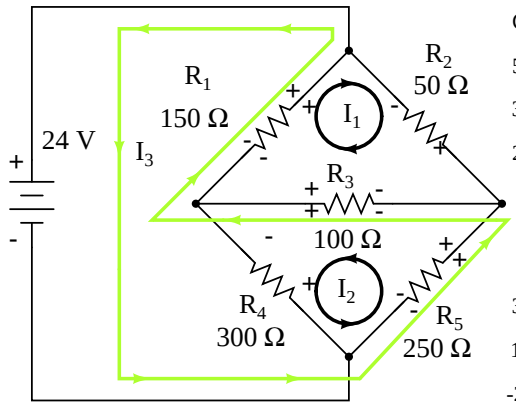
```
v1             v(1,2)       v(1,3)       v(3,2)       v(2)         v(3)
2.400E+01      6.345E+00    4.690E+00    1.655E+00    1.766E+01    1.931E+01
```

Example:

(a) Find a new path for current I_3 that does not produce a conflicting polarity on any resistor compared to I_1 or I_2. R_4 was the offending component. (b) Find values for I_1, I_2, and I_3. (c) Find the five resistor currents and compare to the previous values.

Solution: [3]

(a) Route I_3 through R_5, R_3 and R_1 as shown:



Original form of equations

$50I_1 + 100(I_1 + I_2 + I_3) + 150(I_1 + I_3) = 0$

$300I_2 + 250(I_2 + I_3) + 100(I_1 + I_2 + I_3) = 0$

$24 - 250(I_2 + I_3) - 100(I_1 + I_2 + I_3) - 150(I_1 + I_3) = 0$

Simplified form of equations

$300I_1 + 100I_2 + 250I_3 = 0$

$100I_1 + 650I_2 + 350I_3 = 0$

$-250I_1 - 350I_2 - 500I_3 = -24$

Note that the conflicting polarity on R_4 has been removed. Moreover, none of the other resistors have conflicting polarities.

(b) Octave, an open source (free) matlab clone, yields a mesh current vector at "x":[4]

```
octave:1> A = [300,100,250;100,650,350;-250,-350,-500]
A =
  300  100  250
  100  650  350
  -250  -350  -500
octave:2> b = [0;0;-24]
b =
  0
  0
-24
octave:3> x = A\b
x =
  -0.093793
  -0.058851
   0.136092
```

Not all currents I_1, I_2, and I_3 are the same (I_2) as the previous bridge because of different loop paths However, the resistor currents compare to the previous values:

$I_{R1} = I_1 + I_3 = -93.793$ ma $+ 136.092$ ma $= 42.299$ ma

$I_{R2} = I_1 = -93.793$ ma

$I_{R3} = I_1 + I_2 + I_3 = -93.793$ ma -58.851 ma $+ 136.092$ ma $= -16.552$ ma

$I_{R4} = I_2 = -58.851$ ma

$I_{R5} = I_2 + I_3 = -58.851$ ma $+ 136.092$ ma $= 77.241$ ma

Since the resistor currents are the same as the previous values, the resistor voltages will be identical and need not be calculated again.

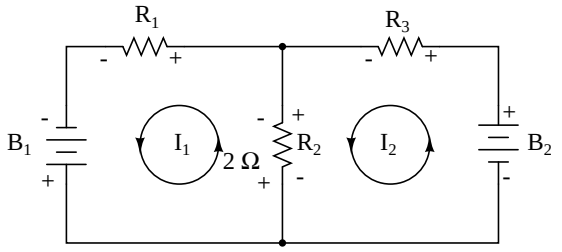
- **REVIEW:**
- Steps to follow for the "Mesh Current" method of analysis:

- (1) Draw mesh currents in loops of circuit, enough to account for all components.
- (2) Label resistor voltage drop polarities based on assumed directions of mesh currents.
- (3) Write KVL equations for each loop of the circuit, substituting the product IR for E in each resistor term of the equation. Where two mesh currents intersect through a component, express the current as the algebraic sum of those two mesh currents (i.e. I_1 + I_2) if the currents go in the same direction through that component. If not, express the current as the difference (i.e. I_1 - I_2).
- (4) Solve for unknown mesh currents (simultaneous equations).
- (5) If any solution is negative, then the assumed current direction is wrong!
- (6) Algebraically add mesh currents to find current in components sharing multiple mesh currents.
- (7) Solve for voltage drops across all resistors (E=IR).

10.3.2 Mesh current by inspection

We take a second look at the "mesh current method" with all the currents runing counterclockwise (ccw). The motivation is to simplify the writing of mesh equations by ignoring the resistor voltage drop polarity. Though, we must pay attention to the polarity of voltage sources with respect to assumed current direction. The sign of the resistor voltage drops will follow a fixed pattern.

If we write a set of conventional mesh current equations for the circuit below, where we do pay attention to the signs of the voltage drop across the resistors, we may rearrange the coefficients into a fixed pattern:



Mesh equations

$(I_1 - I_2)R_2 + I_1R_1 - B_1 = 0$

$I_2R_3 - (I_1 - I_2)R_2 - B_2 = 0$

Simplified

$(R_1 + R_2)I_1 - R_2I_2 = B_1$

$-R_2I_1 + (R_2 + R_3)I_2 = B_2$

Once rearranged, we may write equations by inspection. The signs of the coefficients follow a fixed pattern in the pair above, or the set of three in the rules below.

- **Mesh current rules:**
- This method assumes electron flow (not conventional current flow) voltage sources. Replace any current source in parallel with a resistor with an equivalent voltage source in series with an equivalent resistance.
- Ignoring current direction or voltage polarity on resistors, draw counterclockwise current loops traversing all components. Avoid nested loops.

- Write voltage-law equations in terms of unknown currents currents: I_1, I_2, and I_3. Equaton 1 coefficient 1, equation 2, coefficient 2, and equation 3 coefficient 3 are the positive sums of resistors around the respective loops.

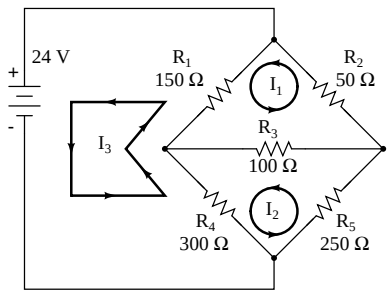
- All other coefficients are negative, representative of the resistance common to a pair of loops. Equation 1 coefficent 2 is the resistor common to loops 1 and 2, coefficient 3 the resistor common to loops 1 an 3. Repeat for other equations and coefficients.

  +(sum of R's loop 1)I_1 - (common R loop 1-2)I_2 - (common R loop 1-3)I_3 = E_1
  -(common R loop 1-2)I_1 + (sum of R's loop 2)I_2 - (common R loop 2-3)I_3 = E_2
  -(common R loop 1-3)I_1 - (common R loop 2-3)I_2 + (sum of R's loop 3)I_3 = E_3

- The right hand side of the equations is equal to any electron current flow voltage source. A voltage rise with respect to the counterclockwise assumed current is positive, and 0 for no voltage source.

- Solve equations for mesh currents:I_1, I_2, and I_3 . Solve for currents through individual resistors with KCL. Solve for voltages with Ohms Law and KVL.

While the above rules are specific for a three mesh circuit, the rules may be extended to smaller or larger meshes. The figure below illustrates the application of the rules. The three currents are all drawn in the same direction, counterclockwise. One KVL equation is written for each of the three loops. Note that there is no polarity drawn on the resistors. We do not need it to determine the signs of the coefficients. Though we do need to pay attention to the polarity of the voltage source with respect to current direction. The I_3counterclockwise current traverses the 24V source from (+) to (-). This is a voltage rise for electron current flow. Therefore, the third equation right hand side is +24V.



$$+(R_1+R_2+R_3)\mathbf{I_1} \quad -(R_3)\mathbf{I_2} \quad -(R_1)\mathbf{I_3} = 0$$
$$-R_3)\mathbf{I_1} + (R_3+R_4+R_5)\mathbf{I_2} \quad -(R_4)\mathbf{I_3} = 0$$
$$-(R_1)\mathbf{I_1} \quad -(R_4)\mathbf{I_2} + (R_1+R_4)\mathbf{I_3} = 24$$

$$+(150+50+100)\mathbf{I_1} \quad -(100)\mathbf{I_2} \quad -(150)\mathbf{I_3} = 0$$
$$-(100)\mathbf{I_1} + (100+300+250)\mathbf{I_2} \quad -(300)\mathbf{I_3} = 0$$
$$-(150)\mathbf{I_1} \quad -(300)\mathbf{I_2} + (150+300)\mathbf{I_3} = 24$$

$$+(300)\mathbf{I_1} \quad -(100)\mathbf{I_2} \quad -(150)\mathbf{I_3} = 0$$
$$-(100)\mathbf{I_1} + (650)\mathbf{I_2} \quad -(300)\mathbf{I_3} = 0$$
$$-(150)\mathbf{I_1} \quad -(300)\mathbf{I_2} \quad +(450)\mathbf{I_3} = 24$$

In Octave, enter the coefficients into the A matrix with column elements comma separated, and rows semicolon separated. Enter the voltages into the column vector b. Solve for the unknown currents: I_1, I_2, and I_3 with the command: x=A\b. These currents are contained within the x column vector. The positive values indicate that the three mesh currents all flow in the assumed counterclockwise direction.

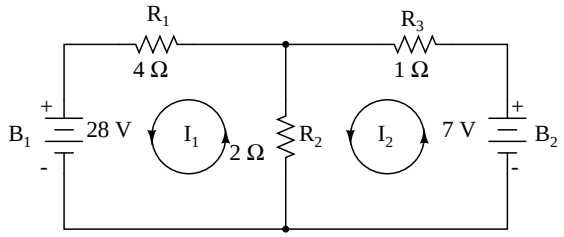
```
octave:2> A=[300,-100,-150;-100,650,-300;-150,-300,450]
A =
```

```
  300  -100  -150
  -100  650  -300
  -150  -300  450
octave:3> b=[0;0;24]
b =
   0
   0
  24
octave:4> x=A\b
x =
  0.093793
  0.077241
  0.136092
```

The mesh currents match the previous solution by a different mesh current method.. The calculation of resistor voltages and currents will be identical to the previous solution. No need to repeat here.

Note that electrical engineering texts are based on conventional current flow. The loop-current, mesh-current method in those text will run the assumed mesh currents **clockwise**.[1] The conventional current flows out the (+) terminal of the battery through the circuit, returning to the (-) terminal. A conventional current voltage rise corresponds to tracing the assumed current from (-) to (+) through any voltage sources.

One more example of a previous circuit follows. The resistance around loop 1 is 6 Ω, around loop 2: 3 Ω. The resistance common to both loops is 2 Ω. Note the coefficients of I_1 and I_2 in the pair of equations. Tracing the assumed counterclockwise loop 1 current through B_1 from (+) to (-) corresponds to an electron current flow voltage rise. Thus, the sign of the 28 V is positive. The loop 2 counter clockwise assumed current traces (-) to (+) through B_2, a voltage drop. Thus, the sign of B_2 is negative, -7 in the 2nd mesh equation. Once again, there are no polarity markings on the resistors. Nor do they figure into the equations.



$$\left.\begin{aligned} 6I_1 - 2I_2 &= 28 \\ -2I_1 + 3I_2 &= -7 \end{aligned}\right\} \text{ Mesh equations}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 6I_1 - 2I_2 &= 28 \\ -6I_1 + 9I_2 &= -21 \\ 7I_2 &= 7 \\ I_2 &= 1 \end{aligned} \qquad \begin{aligned} 6I_1 - 2I_2 &= 28 \\ 6I_1 - 2(1) &= 28 \\ 6I_1 &= 30 \\ I_1 &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

The currents I_1 = 5 A, and I_2 = 1 A are both positive. They both flow in the direction of the counterclockwise loops. This compares with previous results.

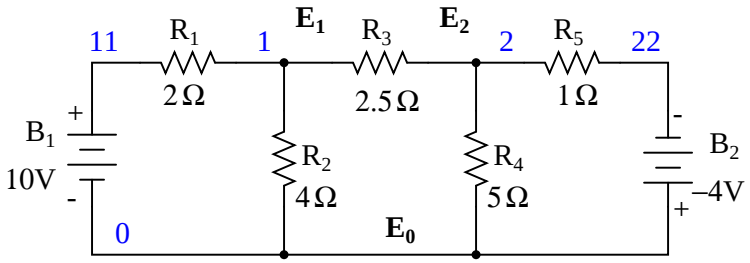
- **Summary:**
- The modified mesh-current method avoids having to determine the signs of the equation coefficients by drawing all mesh currents counterclockwise for electron current flow.
- However, we do need to determine the sign of any voltage sources in the loop. The voltage source is positive if the assumed ccw current flows with the battery (source). The sign is negative if the assumed ccw current flows against the battery.

- See rules above for details.

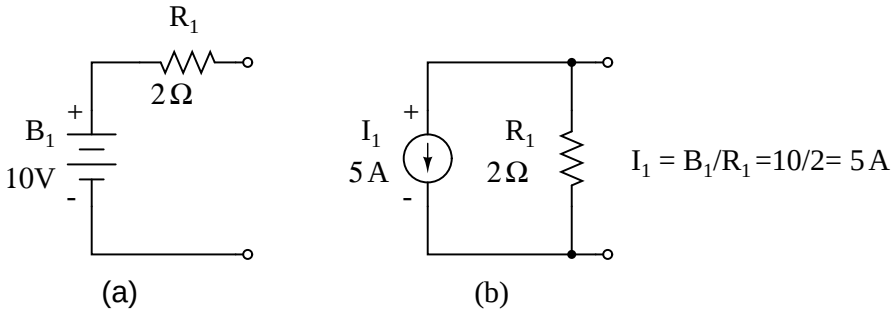
10.4 Node voltage method

The node voltage method of analysis solves for unknown voltages at circuit nodes in terms of a system of KCL equations. This analysis looks strange because it involves replacing voltage sources with equivalent current sources. Also, resistor values in ohms are replaced by equivalent conductances in siemens, G = 1/R. The siemens (S) is the unit of conductance, having replaced the mho unit. In any event S = Ω^{-1}. And S = mho (obsolete).

We start with a circuit having conventional voltage sources. A common node E_0 is chosen as a reference point. The node voltages E_1 and E_2 are calculated with respect to this point.

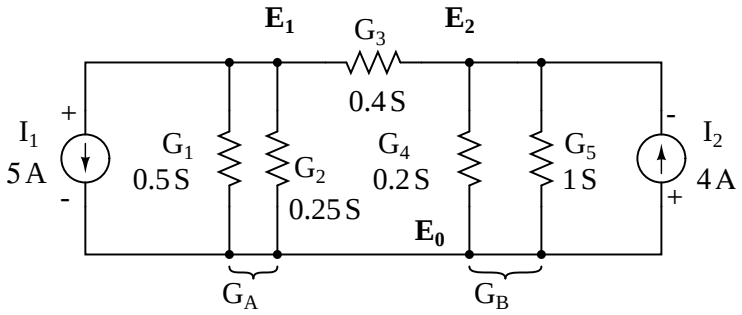


A voltage source in series with a resistance must be replaced by an equivalent current source in parallel with the resistance. We will write KCL equations for each node. The right hand side of the equation is the value of the current source feeding the node.



Replacing voltage sources and associated series resistors with equivalent current sources and parallel resistors yields the modified circuit. Substitute resistor conductances in siemens for resistance in ohms.

```
I1 = E1/R1 = 10/2 = 5 A
I2 = E2/R5 = 4/1  = 4 A
G1 = 1/R1 = 1/2 Ω   = 0.5 S
G2 = 1/R2 = 1/4 Ω   = 0.25 S
G3 = 1/R3 = 1/2.5 Ω = 0.4 S
G4 = 1/R4 = 1/5 Ω   = 0.2 S
G5 = 1/R5 = 1/1 Ω   = 1.0 S
```



The Parallel conductances (resistors) may be combined by addition of the conductances. Though, we will not redraw the circuit. The circuit is ready for application of the node voltage method.

$G_A = G_1 + G_2 = 0.5\ S + 0.25\ S = 0.75\ S$
$G_B = G_4 + G_5 = 0.2\ S + 1\ S = 1.2\ S$

Deriving a general node voltage method, we write a pair of KCL equations in terms of unknown node voltages V_1 and V_2 this one time. We do this to illustrate a pattern for writing equations by inspection.

$G_A E_1 + G_3(E_1 - E_2) = I_1 \quad (1)$
$G_B E_2 - G_3(E_1 - E_2) = I_2 \quad (2)$
$(G_A + G_3)E_1 - G_3 E_2 = I_1 \quad (1)$
$-G_3 E_1 + (G_B + G_3)E_2 = I_2 \quad (2)$

The coefficients of the last pair of equations above have been rearranged to show a pattern. The sum of conductances connected to the first node is the positive coefficient of the first voltage in equation (1). The sum of conductances connected to the second node is the positive coefficient of the second voltage in equation (2). The other coefficients are negative, representing conductances between nodes. For both equations, the right hand side is equal to the respective current source connected to the node. This pattern allows us to quickly write the equations by inspection. This leads to a set of rules for the node voltage method of analysis.

- **Node voltage rules:**
- Convert voltage sources in series with a resistor to an equivalent current source with the resistor in parallel.
- Change resistor values to conductances.
- Select a reference node(E_0)
- Assign unknown voltages (E_1)(E_2) ... (E_N)to remaining nodes.
- Write a KCL equation for each node 1,2, ... N. The positive coefficient of the first voltage in the first equation is the sum of conductances connected to the node. The coefficient for the second voltage in the second equation is the sum of conductances connected to that node. Repeat for coefficient of third voltage, third equation, and other equations. These coefficients fall on a diagonal.

- All other coefficients for all equations are negative, representing conductances between nodes. The first equation, second coefficient is the conductance from node 1 to node 2, the third coefficient is the conductance from node 1 to node 3. Fill in negative coefficients for other equations.

- The right hand side of the equations is the current source connected to the respective nodes.

- Solve system of equations for unknown node voltages.

Example: Set up the equations and solve for the node voltages using the numerical values in the above figure.

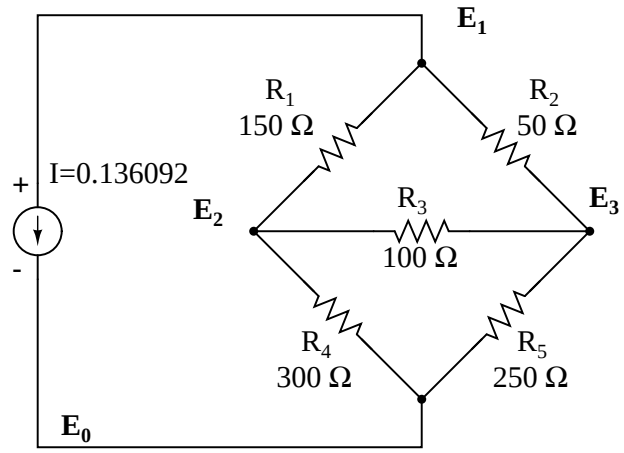
Solution:

$$
\begin{aligned}
(0.5+0.25+0.4)E_1 -(0.4)E_2 &= 5 \\
-(0.4)E_1 +(0.4+0.2+1.0)E_2 &= -4 \\
(1.15)E_1 -(0.4)E_2 &= 5 \\
-(0.4)E_1 +(1.6)E_2 &= -4 \\
E_1 &= 3.8095 \\
E_2 &= -1.5476
\end{aligned}
$$

The solution of two equations can be performed with a calculator, or with octave (not shown).[4] The solution is verified with SPICE based on the original schematic diagram with voltage sources. [2] Though, the circuit with the current sources could have been simulated.

```
V1 11 0 DC 10
V2 22 0 DC -4
r1 11 1 2
r2 1 0 4
r3 1 2 2.5
r4 2 0 5
r5 2 22 1
.DC V1 10 10 1 V2 -4 -4 1
.print DC V(1) V(2)
.end
     v(1)            v(2)
 3.809524e+00    -1.547619e+00
```

One more example. This one has three nodes. We do not list the conductances on the schematic diagram. However, $G_1 = 1/R_1$, etc.



There are three nodes to write equations for by inspection. Note that the coefficients are positive for equation (1) E_1, equation (2) E_2, and equation (3) E_3. These are the sums of all conductances connected to the nodes. All other coefficients are negative, representing a conductance between nodes. The right hand side of the equations is the associated current source, 0.136092 A for the only current source at node 1. The other equations are zero on the right hand side for lack of current sources. We are too lazy to calculate the conductances for the resistors on the diagram. Thus, the subscripted G's are the coefficients.

$$\begin{aligned}
(G_1 + G_2)E_1 \quad & -G_1E_2 \quad & -G_2E_3 \quad &= 0.136092 \\
-G_1E_1 \quad +(G_1 + G_3 + G_4)E_2 \quad & & -G_3E_3 \quad &= 0 \\
-G_2E_1 \quad & -G_3E_2 \quad +(G_2 + G_3 + G_5)E_3 \quad &= 0
\end{aligned}$$

We are so lazy that we enter reciprocal resistances and sums of reciprocal resistances into the octave "A" matrix, letting octave compute the matrix of conductances after "A=".[4] The initial entry line was so long that it was split into three rows. This is different than previous examples. The entered "A" matrix is delineated by starting and ending square brackets. Column elements are space separated. Rows are "new line" separated. Commas and semicolons are not need as separators. Though, the current vector at "b" is semicolon separated to yield a column vector of currents.

```
octave:12> A = [1/150+1/50 -1/150 -1/50
> -1/150 1/150+1/100+1/300 -1/100
> -1/50 -1/100 1/50+1/100+1/250]
A =
   0.0266667  -0.0066667  -0.0200000
  -0.0066667   0.0200000  -0.0100000
  -0.0200000  -0.0100000   0.0340000
octave:13> b = [0.136092;0;0]
b =
   0.13609
   0.00000
   0.00000
octave:14> x=A\b
x =
```

```
24.000
17.655
19.310
```

Note that the "A" matrix diagonal coefficients are positive, That all other coefficients are negative.

The solution as a voltage vector is at "x". E_1 = 24.000 V, E_2 = 17.655 V, E_3 = 19.310 V. These three voltages compare to the previous mesh current and SPICE solutions to the unbalanced bridge problem. This is no coincidence, for the 0.13609 A current source was purposely chosen to yield the 24 V used as a voltage source in that problem.

- Summary
- Given a network of conductances and current sources, the node voltage method of circuit analysis solves for unknown node voltages from KCL equations.
- See rules above for details in writing the equations by inspection.
- The unit of conductance G is the siemens S. Conductance is the reciprocal of resistance: G = 1/R

10.5 Introduction to network theorems

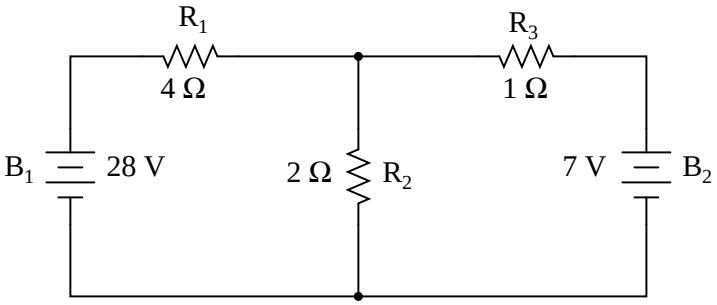
Anyone who's studied geometry should be familiar with the concept of a *theorem*: a relatively simple rule used to solve a problem, derived from a more intensive analysis using fundamental rules of mathematics. At least hypothetically, any problem in math can be solved just by using the simple rules of arithmetic (in fact, this is how modern digital computers carry out the most complex mathematical calculations: by repeating many cycles of additions and subtractions!), but human beings aren't as consistent or as fast as a digital computer. We need "shortcut" methods in order to avoid procedural errors.

In electric network analysis, the fundamental rules are Ohm's Law and Kirchhoff's Laws. While these humble laws may be applied to analyze just about any circuit configuration (even if we have to resort to complex algebra to handle multiple unknowns), there are some "shortcut" methods of analysis to make the math easier for the average human.

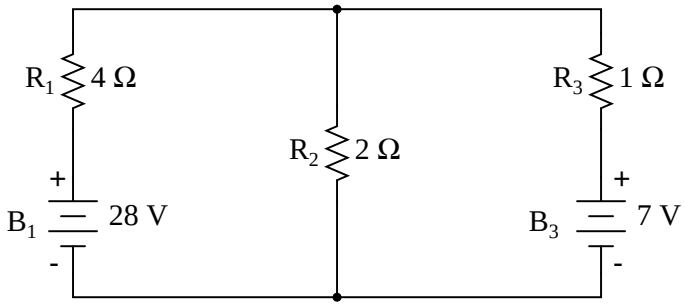
As with any theorem of geometry or algebra, these network theorems are derived from fundamental rules. In this chapter, I'm not going to delve into the formal proofs of any of these theorems. If you doubt their validity, you can always empirically test them by setting up example circuits and calculating values using the "old" (simultaneous equation) methods versus the "new" theorems, to see if the answers coincide. They always should!

10.6 Millman's Theorem

In Millman's Theorem, the circuit is re-drawn as a parallel network of branches, each branch containing a resistor or series battery/resistor combination. Millman's Theorem is applicable only to those circuits which can be re-drawn accordingly. Here again is our example circuit used for the last two analysis methods:



And here is that same circuit, re-drawn for the sake of applying Millman's Theorem:



By considering the supply voltage within each branch and the resistance within each branch, Millman's Theorem will tell us the voltage across all branches. Please note that I've labeled the battery in the rightmost branch as "B_3" to clearly denote it as being in the third branch, even though there is no "B_2" in the circuit!

Millman's Theorem is nothing more than a long equation, applied to any circuit drawn as a set of parallel-connected branches, each branch with its own voltage source and series resistance:

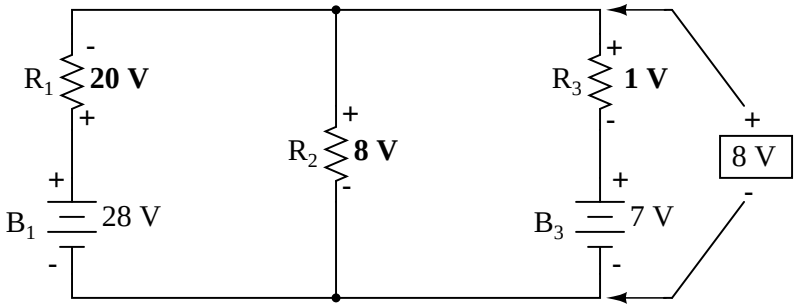
Millman's Theorem Equation

$$\frac{\frac{E_{B1}}{R_1} + \frac{E_{B2}}{R_2} + \frac{E_{B3}}{R_3}}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}} = \text{Voltage across all branches}$$

Substituting actual voltage and resistance figures from our example circuit for the variable terms of this equation, we get the following expression:

$$\frac{\frac{28\ \text{V}}{4\ \Omega} + \frac{0\ \text{V}}{2\ \Omega} + \frac{7\ \text{V}}{1\ \Omega}}{\frac{1}{4\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{2\ \Omega} + \frac{1}{1\ \Omega}} = 8\ \text{V}$$

The final answer of 8 volts is the voltage seen across all parallel branches, like this:



The polarity of all voltages in Millman's Theorem are referenced to the same point. In the example circuit above, I used the bottom wire of the parallel circuit as my reference point, and so the voltages within each branch (28 for the R_1 branch, 0 for the R_2 branch, and 7 for the R_3 branch) were inserted into the equation as positive numbers. Likewise, when the answer came out to 8 volts (positive), this meant that the top wire of the circuit was positive with respect to the bottom wire (the original point of reference). If both batteries had been connected backwards (negative ends up and positive ends down), the voltage for branch 1 would have been entered into the equation as a -28 volts, the voltage for branch 3 as -7 volts, and the resulting answer of -8 volts would have told us that the top wire was negative with respect to the bottom wire (our initial point of reference).

To solve for resistor voltage drops, the Millman voltage (across the parallel network) must be compared against the voltage source within each branch, using the principle of voltages adding in series to determine the magnitude and polarity of voltage across each resistor:

$E_{R1} = 8\text{ V} - 28\text{ V} = -20\text{ V}$ (negative on top)

$E_{R2} = 8\text{ V} - 0\text{ V} = 8\text{ V}$ (positive on top)

$E_{R3} = 8\text{ V} - 7\text{ V} = 1\text{ V}$ (positive on top)

To solve for branch currents, each resistor voltage drop can be divided by its respective resistance (I=E/R):

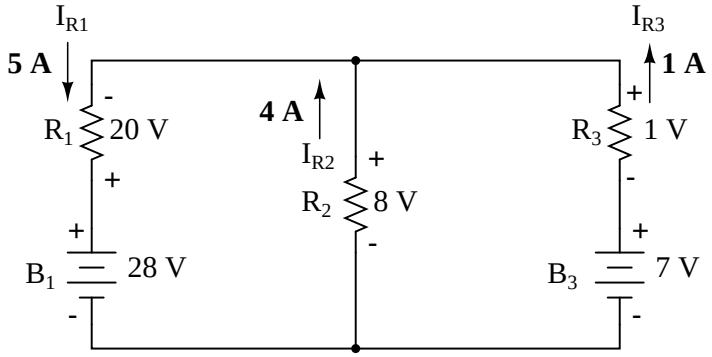
$$I_{R1} = \frac{20\text{ V}}{4\ \Omega} = 5\text{ A}$$

$$I_{R2} = \frac{8\text{ V}}{2\ \Omega} = 4\text{ A}$$

$$I_{R3} = \frac{1\text{ V}}{1\ \Omega} = 1\text{ A}$$

The direction of current through each resistor is determined by the polarity across each resistor, *not* by the polarity across each battery, as current can be forced backwards through a battery, as is the case with B_3 in the example circuit. This is important to keep in mind, since Millman's Theorem doesn't provide as direct an indication of "wrong" current direction as does

the Branch Current or Mesh Current methods. You must pay close attention to the polarities of resistor voltage drops as given by Kirchhoff's Voltage Law, determining direction of currents from that.



Millman's Theorem is very convenient for determining the voltage across a set of parallel branches, where there are enough voltage sources present to preclude solution via regular series-parallel reduction method. It also is easy in the sense that it doesn't require the use of simultaneous equations. However, it is limited in that it only applied to circuits which can be re-drawn to fit this form. It cannot be used, for example, to solve an unbalanced bridge circuit. And, even in cases where Millman's Theorem can be applied, the solution of individual resistor voltage drops can be a bit daunting to some, the Millman's Theorem equation only providing a single figure for branch voltage.

As you will see, each network analysis method has its own advantages and disadvantages. Each method is a tool, and there is no tool that is perfect for all jobs. The skilled technician, however, carries these methods in his or her mind like a mechanic carries a set of tools in his or her tool box. The more tools you have equipped yourself with, the better prepared you will be for any eventuality.

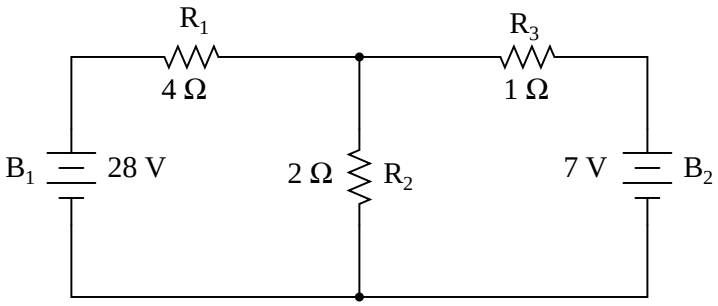
- **REVIEW:**
- Millman's Theorem treats circuits as a parallel set of series-component branches.
- All voltages entered and solved for in Millman's Theorem are polarity-referenced at the same point in the circuit (typically the bottom wire of the parallel network).

10.7 Superposition Theorem

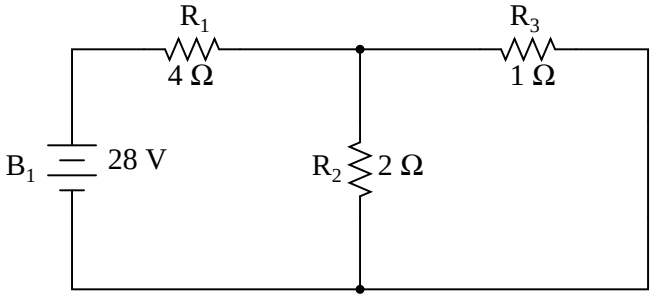
Superposition theorem is one of those strokes of genius that takes a complex subject and simplifies it in a way that makes perfect sense. A theorem like Millman's certainly works well, but it is not quite obvious *why* it works so well. Superposition, on the other hand, is obvious.

The strategy used in the Superposition Theorem is to eliminate all but one source of power within a network at a time, using series/parallel analysis to determine voltage drops (and/or currents) within the modified network for each power source separately. Then, once voltage drops and/or currents have been determined for each power source working separately, the values are all "superimposed" on top of each other (added algebraically) to find the actual

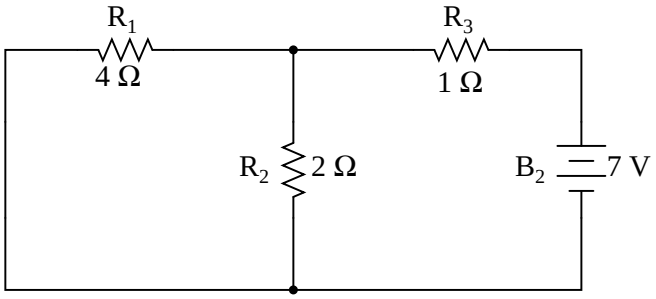
voltage drops/currents with all sources active. Let's look at our example circuit again and apply Superposition Theorem to it:



Since we have two sources of power in this circuit, we will have to calculate two sets of values for voltage drops and/or currents, one for the circuit with only the 28 volt battery in effect. . .



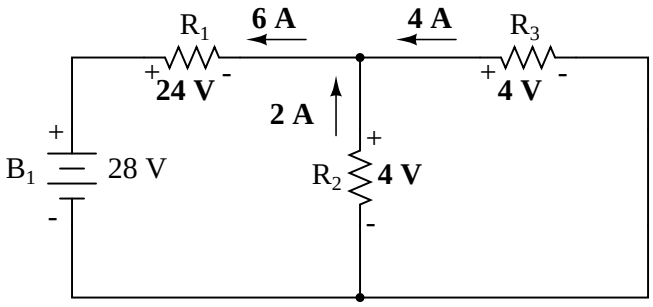
. . . and one for the circuit with only the 7 volt battery in effect:



When re-drawing the circuit for series/parallel analysis with one source, all other voltage sources are replaced by wires (shorts), and all current sources with open circuits (breaks). Since we only have voltage sources (batteries) in our example circuit, we will replace every inactive source during analysis with a wire.

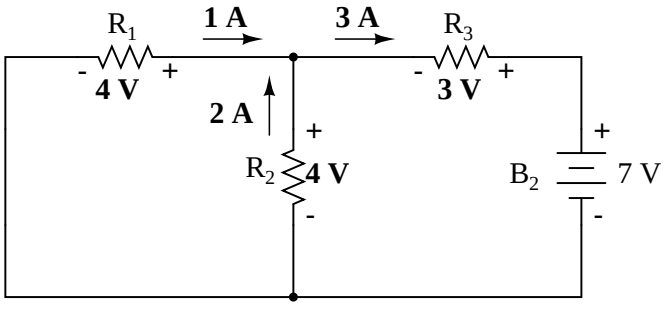
Analyzing the circuit with only the 28 volt battery, we obtain the following values for voltage and current:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	$R_2//R_3$	$R_1 + R_2//R_3$ Total	
E	24	4	4	4	28	Volts
I	6	2	4	6	6	Amps
R	4	2	1	0.667	4.667	Ohms



Analyzing the circuit with only the 7 volt battery, we obtain another set of values for voltage and current:

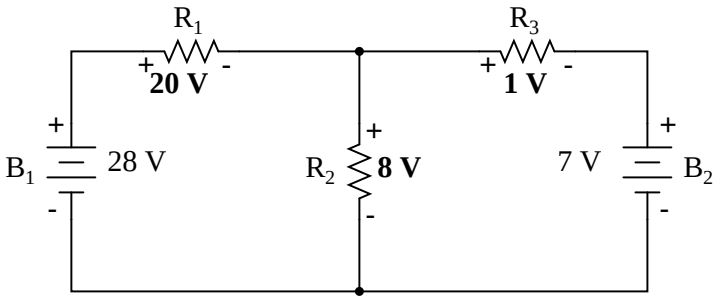
	R_1	R_2	R_3	$R_1//R_2$	$R_3 + R_1//R_2$ Total	
E	4	4	3	4	7	Volts
I	1	2	3	3	3	Amps
R	4	2	1	1.333	2.333	Ohms



When superimposing these values of voltage and current, we have to be very careful to consider polarity (voltage drop) and direction (electron flow), as the values have to be added *algebraically*.

With 28 V battery	*With 7 V battery*	*With both batteries*
24 V + - E_{R1}	4 V - + E_{R1}	**20 V** E_{R1} + - *24 V - 4 V = 20 V*
E_{R2} + 4 V -	E_{R2} + 4 V -	E_{R2} + **8 V** - *4 V + 4 V = 8 V*
4 V + - E_{R3}	3 V - + E_{R3}	**1 V** E_{R3} + - *4 V - 3 V = 1 V*

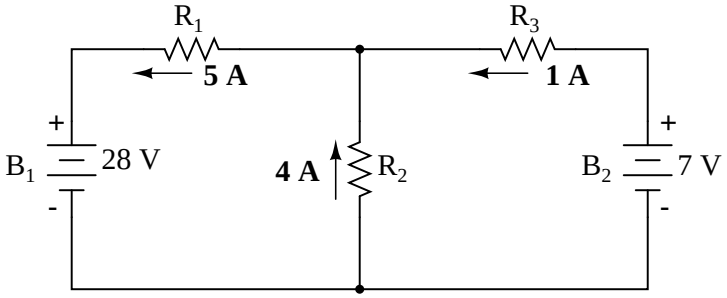
Applying these superimposed voltage figures to the circuit, the end result looks something like this:



Currents add up algebraically as well, and can either be superimposed as done with the resistor voltage drops, or simply calculated from the final voltage drops and respective resistances (I=E/R). Either way, the answers will be the same. Here I will show the superposition method applied to current:

With 28 V battery	*With 7 V battery*	*With both batteries*
6 A ← I_{R1}	1 A → I_{R1}	**5 A** ← I_{R1} *6 A - 1 A = 5 A*
I_{R2} 2 A ↑	I_{R2} 2 A ↑	I_{R2} **4 A** ↑ *2 A + 2 A = 4 A*
4 A ← I_{R3}	3 A → I_{R3}	**1 A** ← I_{R3} *4 A - 3 A = 1 A*

Once again applying these superimposed figures to our circuit:



Quite simple and elegant, don't you think? It must be noted, though, that the Superposition Theorem works only for circuits that are reducible to series/parallel combinations for each of the power sources at a time (thus, this theorem is useless for analyzing an unbalanced bridge circuit), and it only works where the underlying equations are linear (no mathematical powers or roots). The requisite of linearity means that Superposition Theorem is only applicable for determining voltage and current, *not power!!!* Power dissipations, being nonlinear functions, do not algebraically add to an accurate total when only one source is considered at a time. The need for linearity also means this Theorem cannot be applied in circuits where the resistance of a component changes with voltage or current. Hence, networks containing components like lamps (incandescent or gas-discharge) or varistors could not be analyzed.

Another prerequisite for Superposition Theorem is that all components must be "bilateral," meaning that they behave the same with electrons flowing either direction through them. Resistors have no polarity-specific behavior, and so the circuits we've been studying so far all meet this criterion.

The Superposition Theorem finds use in the study of alternating current (AC) circuits, and

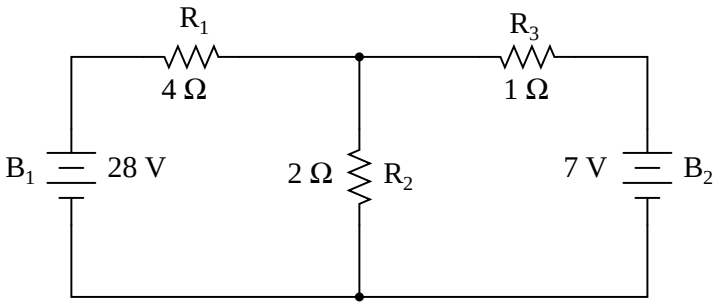
semiconductor (amplifier) circuits, where sometimes AC is often mixed (superimposed) with DC. Because AC voltage and current equations (Ohm's Law) are linear just like DC, we can use Superposition to analyze the circuit with just the DC power source, then just the AC power source, combining the results to tell what will happen with both AC and DC sources in effect. For now, though, Superposition will suffice as a break from having to do simultaneous equations to analyze a circuit.

- **REVIEW:**
- The Superposition Theorem states that a circuit can be analyzed with only one source of power at a time, the corresponding component voltages and currents algebraically added to find out what they'll do with all power sources in effect.
- To negate all but one power source for analysis, replace any source of voltage (batteries) with a wire; replace any current source with an open (break).

10.8 Thevenin's Theorem

Thevenin's Theorem states that it is possible to simplify any linear circuit, no matter how complex, to an equivalent circuit with just a single voltage source and series resistance connected to a load. The qualification of "linear" is identical to that found in the Superposition Theorem, where all the underlying equations must be linear (no exponents or roots). If we're dealing with passive components (such as resistors, and later, inductors and capacitors), this is true. However, there are some components (especially certain gas-discharge and semiconductor components) which are nonlinear: that is, their opposition to current *changes* with voltage and/or current. As such, we would call circuits containing these types of components, *nonlinear circuits*.

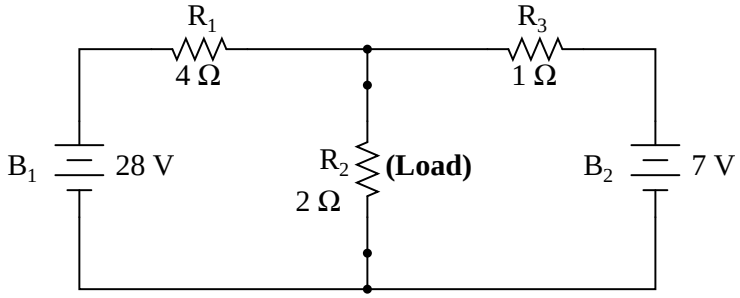
Thevenin's Theorem is especially useful in analyzing power systems and other circuits where one particular resistor in the circuit (called the "load" resistor) is subject to change, and re-calculation of the circuit is necessary with each trial value of load resistance, to determine voltage across it and current through it. Let's take another look at our example circuit:



Let's suppose that we decide to designate R_2 as the "load" resistor in this circuit. We already have four methods of analysis at our disposal (Branch Current, Mesh Current, Millman's Theorem, and Superposition Theorem) to use in determining voltage across R_2 and current through R_2, but each of these methods are time-consuming. Imagine repeating any of these methods over and over again to find what would happen if the load resistance changed (changing

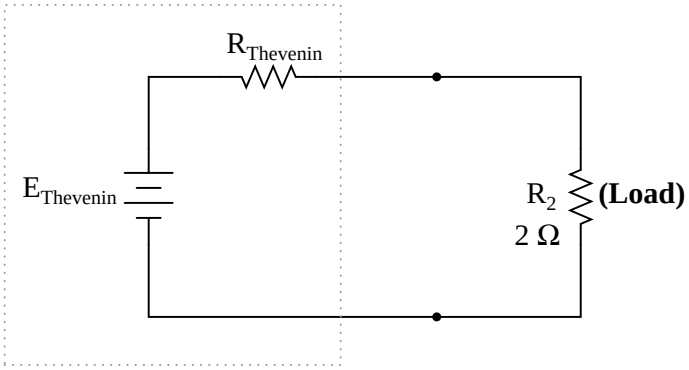
load resistance is *very* common in power systems, as multiple loads get switched on and off as needed. the total resistance of their parallel connections changing depending on how many are connected at a time). This could potentially involve a *lot* of work!

Thevenin's Theorem makes this easy by temporarily removing the load resistance from the original circuit and reducing what's left to an equivalent circuit composed of a single voltage source and series resistance. The load resistance can then be re-connected to this "Thevenin equivalent circuit" and calculations carried out as if the whole network were nothing but a simple series circuit:



. . . after Thevenin conversion . . .

Thevenin Equivalent Circuit

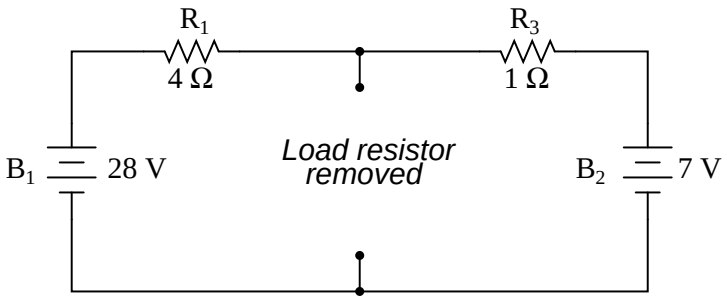


The "Thevenin Equivalent Circuit" is the electrical equivalent of B_1, R_1, R_3, and B_2 as seen from the two points where our load resistor (R_2) connects.

The Thevenin equivalent circuit, if correctly derived, will behave exactly the same as the original circuit formed by B_1, R_1, R_3, and B_2. In other words, the load resistor (R_2) voltage and current should be exactly the same for the same value of load resistance in the two circuits. The load resistor R_2 cannot "tell the difference" between the original network of B_1, R_1, R_3, and B_2, and the Thevenin equivalent circuit of $E_{Thevenin}$, and $R_{Thevenin}$, provided that the values for $E_{Thevenin}$ and $R_{Thevenin}$ have been calculated correctly.

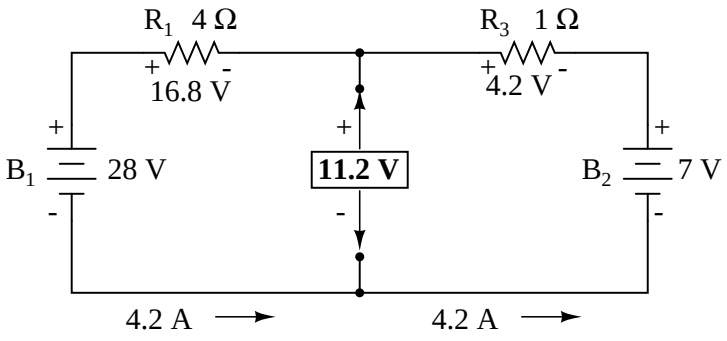
The advantage in performing the "Thevenin conversion" to the simpler circuit, of course, is that it makes load voltage and load current so much easier to solve than in the original network. Calculating the equivalent Thevenin source voltage and series resistance is actually quite easy. First, the chosen load resistor is removed from the original circuit, replaced with a

break (open circuit):



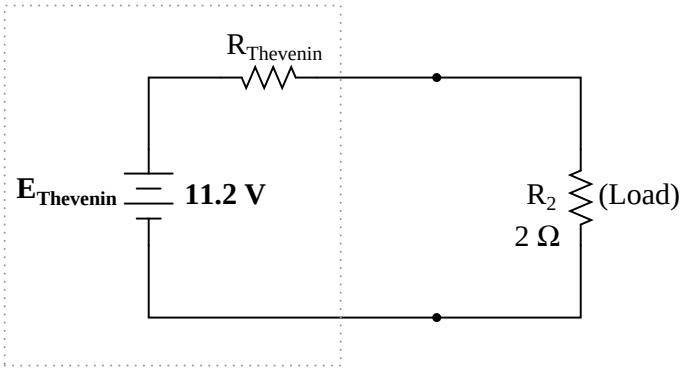
Next, the voltage between the two points where the load resistor used to be attached is determined. Use whatever analysis methods are at your disposal to do this. In this case, the original circuit with the load resistor removed is nothing more than a simple series circuit with opposing batteries, and so we can determine the voltage across the open load terminals by applying the rules of series circuits, Ohm's Law, and Kirchhoff's Voltage Law:

	R_1	R_3	Total	
E	16.8	4.2	21	Volts
I	4.2	4.2	4.2	Amps
R	4	1	5	Ohms

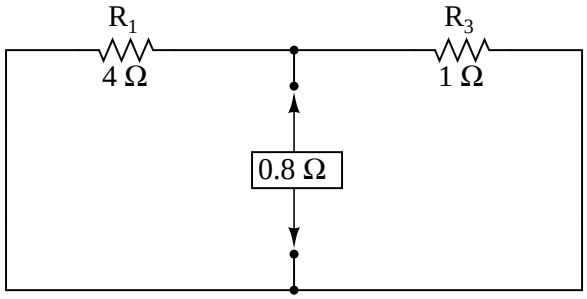


The voltage between the two load connection points can be figured from the one of the battery's voltage and one of the resistor's voltage drops, and comes out to 11.2 volts. This is our "Thevenin voltage" ($E_{Thevenin}$) in the equivalent circuit:

Thevenin Equivalent Circuit

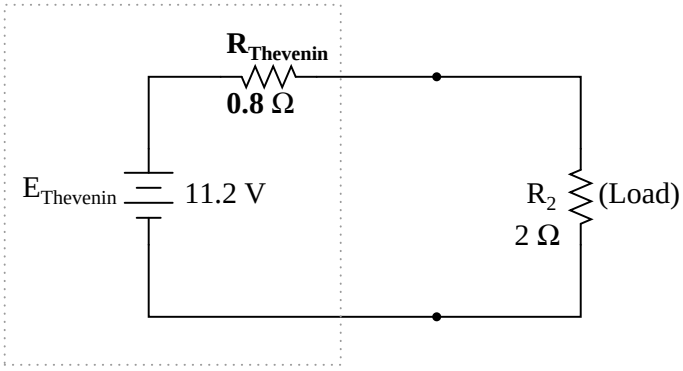


To find the Thevenin series resistance for our equivalent circuit, we need to take the original circuit (with the load resistor still removed), remove the power sources (in the same style as we did with the Superposition Theorem: voltage sources replaced with wires and current sources replaced with breaks), and figure the resistance from one load terminal to the other:



With the removal of the two batteries, the total resistance measured at this location is equal to R_1 and R_3 in parallel: 0.8 Ω. This is our "Thevenin resistance" ($R_{Thevenin}$) for the equivalent circuit:

Thevenin Equivalent Circuit



With the load resistor (2 Ω) attached between the connection points, we can determine voltage across it and current through it as though the whole network were nothing more than a simple series circuit:

	$R_{Thevenin}$	R_{Load}	Total	
E	3.2	8	11.2	Volts
I	4	4	4	Amps
R	0.8	2	2.8	Ohms

Notice that the voltage and current figures for R_2 (8 volts, 4 amps) are identical to those found using other methods of analysis. Also notice that the voltage and current figures for the Thevenin series resistance and the Thevenin source (*total*) do not apply to any component in the original, complex circuit. Thevenin's Theorem is only useful for determining what happens to a *single* resistor in a network: the load.

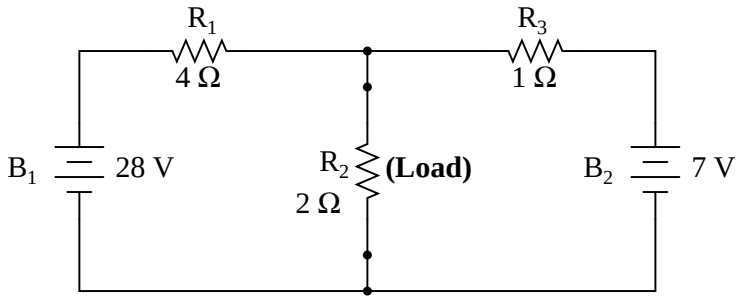
The advantage, of course, is that you can quickly determine what would happen to that single resistor if it were of a value other than 2 Ω without having to go through a lot of analysis again. Just plug in that other value for the load resistor into the Thevenin equivalent circuit and a little bit of series circuit calculation will give you the result.

- **REVIEW:**
- Thevenin's Theorem is a way to reduce a network to an equivalent circuit composed of a single voltage source, series resistance, and series load.
- Steps to follow for Thevenin's Theorem:
- (1) Find the Thevenin source voltage by removing the load resistor from the original circuit and calculating voltage across the open connection points where the load resistor used to be.
- (2) Find the Thevenin resistance by removing all power sources in the original circuit (voltage sources shorted and current sources open) and calculating total resistance between the open connection points.
- (3) Draw the Thevenin equivalent circuit, with the Thevenin voltage source in series with the Thevenin resistance. The load resistor re-attaches between the two open points of the equivalent circuit.
- (4) Analyze voltage and current for the load resistor following the rules for series circuits.

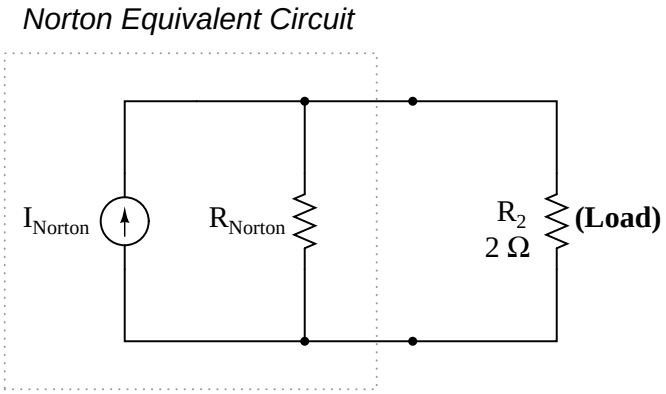
10.9 Norton's Theorem

Norton's Theorem states that it is possible to simplify any linear circuit, no matter how complex, to an equivalent circuit with just a single current source and parallel resistance connected to a load. Just as with Thevenin's Theorem, the qualification of "linear" is identical to that found in the Superposition Theorem: all underlying equations must be linear (no exponents or roots).

Contrasting our original example circuit against the Norton equivalent: it looks something like this:



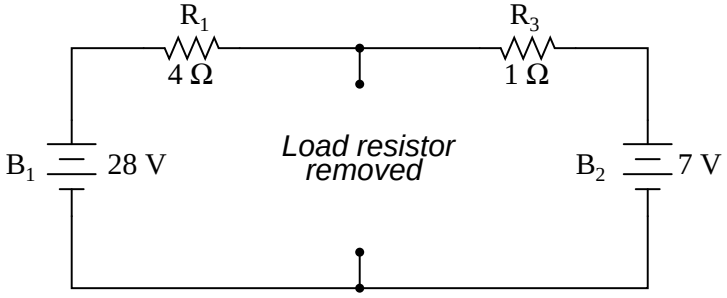
. . . after Norton conversion . . .



Remember that a *current source* is a component whose job is to provide a constant amount of current, outputting as much or as little voltage necessary to maintain that constant current.

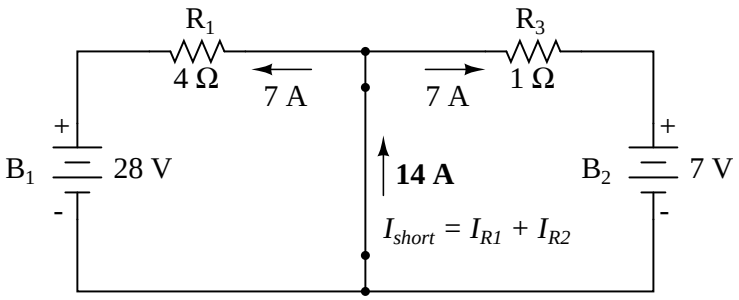
As with Thevenin's Theorem, everything in the original circuit except the load resistance has been reduced to an equivalent circuit that is simpler to analyze. Also similar to Thevenin's Theorem are the steps used in Norton's Theorem to calculate the Norton source current (I_{Norton}) and Norton resistance (R_{Norton}).

As before, the first step is to identify the load resistance and remove it from the original circuit:

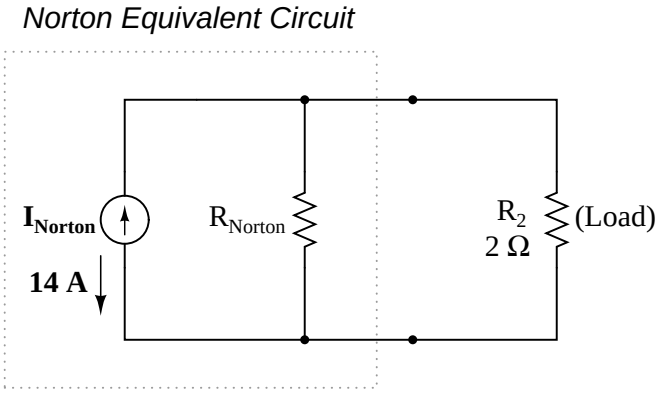


Then, to find the Norton current (for the current source in the Norton equivalent circuit),

place a direct wire (short) connection between the load points and determine the resultant current. Note that this step is exactly opposite the respective step in Thevenin's Theorem, where we replaced the load resistor with a break (open circuit):

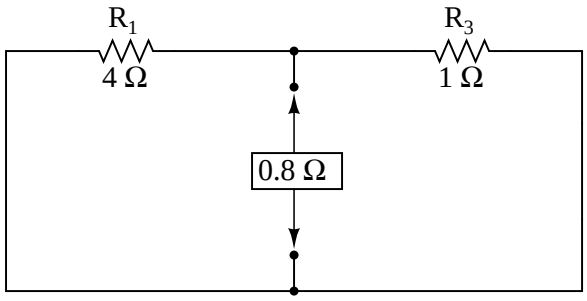


With zero voltage dropped between the load resistor connection points, the current through R_1 is strictly a function of B_1's voltage and R_1's resistance: 7 amps (I=E/R). Likewise, the current through R_3 is now strictly a function of B_2's voltage and R_3's resistance: 7 amps (I=E/R). The total current through the short between the load connection points is the sum of these two currents: 7 amps + 7 amps = 14 amps. This figure of 14 amps becomes the Norton source current (I_{Norton}) in our equivalent circuit:



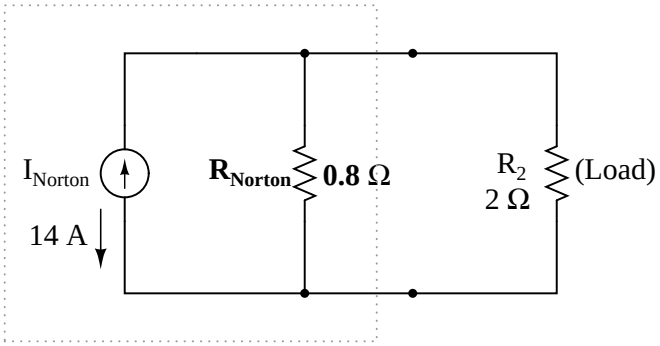
Remember, the arrow notation for a current source points in the direction *opposite* that of electron flow. Again, apologies for the confusion. For better or for worse, this is standard electronic symbol notation. Blame Mr. Franklin again!

To calculate the Norton resistance (R_{Norton}), we do the exact same thing as we did for calculating Thevenin resistance ($R_{Thevenin}$): take the original circuit (with the load resistor still removed), remove the power sources (in the same style as we did with the Superposition Theorem: voltage sources replaced with wires and current sources replaced with breaks), and figure total resistance from one load connection point to the other:



Now our Norton equivalent circuit looks like this:

Norton Equivalent Circuit



If we re-connect our original load resistance of 2 Ω, we can analyze the Norton circuit as a simple parallel arrangement:

	R_{Norton}	R_{Load}	Total	
E	8	8	8	Volts
I	10	4	14	Amps
R	0.8	2	571.43m	Ohms

As with the Thevenin equivalent circuit, the only useful information from this analysis is the voltage and current values for R_2; the rest of the information is irrelevant to the original circuit. However, the same advantages seen with Thevenin's Theorem apply to Norton's as well: if we wish to analyze load resistor voltage and current over several different values of load resistance, we can use the Norton equivalent circuit again and again, applying nothing more complex than simple parallel circuit analysis to determine what's happening with each trial load.

- **REVIEW:**
- Norton's Theorem is a way to reduce a network to an equivalent circuit composed of a single current source, parallel resistance, and parallel load.
- Steps to follow for Norton's Theorem:

- (1) Find the Norton source current by removing the load resistor from the original circuit and calculating current through a short (wire) jumping across the open connection points where the load resistor used to be.

- (2) Find the Norton resistance by removing all power sources in the original circuit (voltage sources shorted and current sources open) and calculating total resistance between the open connection points.

- (3) Draw the Norton equivalent circuit, with the Norton current source in parallel with the Norton resistance. The load resistor re-attaches between the two open points of the equivalent circuit.

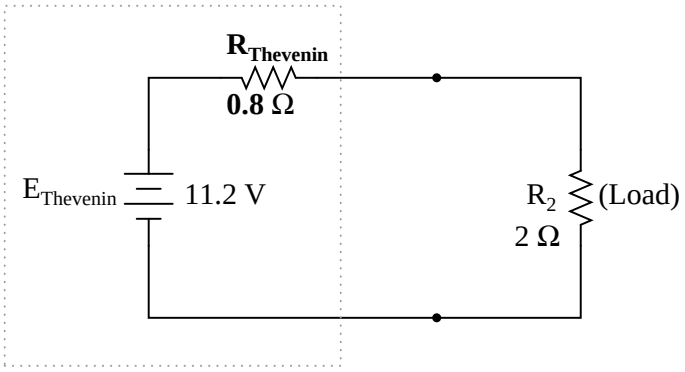
- (4) Analyze voltage and current for the load resistor following the rules for parallel circuits.

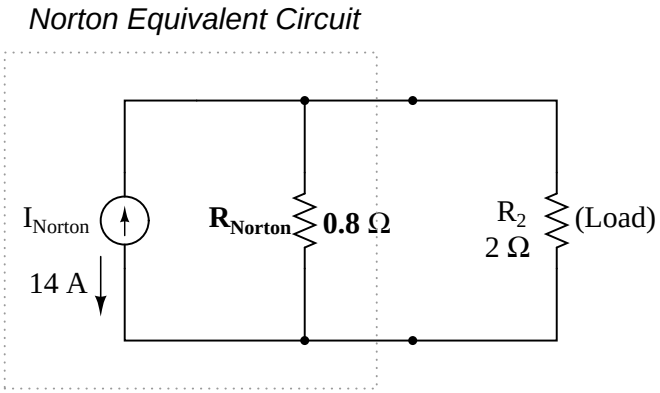
10.10 Thevenin-Norton equivalencies

Since Thevenin's and Norton's Theorems are two equally valid methods of reducing a complex network down to something simpler to analyze, there must be some way to convert a Thevenin equivalent circuit to a Norton equivalent circuit, and vice versa (just what you were dying to know, right?). Well, the procedure is very simple.

You may have noticed that the procedure for calculating Thevenin resistance is identical to the procedure for calculating Norton resistance: remove all power sources and determine resistance between the open load connection points. As such, Thevenin and Norton resistances for the same original network must be equal. Using the example circuits from the last two sections, we can see that the two resistances are indeed equal:

Thevenin Equivalent Circuit





$$R_{Thevenin} = R_{Norton}$$

Considering the fact that both Thevenin and Norton equivalent circuits are intended to behave the same as the original network in suppling voltage and current to the load resistor (as seen from the perspective of the load connection points), these two equivalent circuits, having been derived from the same original network should behave identically.

This means that both Thevenin and Norton equivalent circuits should produce the same voltage across the load terminals with no load resistor attached. With the Thevenin equivalent, the open-circuited voltage would be equal to the Thevenin source voltage (no circuit current present to drop voltage across the series resistor), which is 11.2 volts in this case. With the Norton equivalent circuit, all 14 amps from the Norton current source would have to flow through the 0.8 Ω Norton resistance, producing the exact same voltage, 11.2 volts (E=IR). Thus, we can say that the Thevenin voltage is equal to the Norton current times the Norton resistance:

$$E_{Thevenin} = I_{Norton}R_{Norton}$$

So, if we wanted to convert a Norton equivalent circuit to a Thevenin equivalent circuit, we could use the same resistance and calculate the Thevenin voltage with Ohm's Law.

Conversely, both Thevenin and Norton equivalent circuits should generate the same amount of current through a short circuit across the load terminals. With the Norton equivalent, the short-circuit current would be exactly equal to the Norton source current, which is 14 amps in this case. With the Thevenin equivalent, all 11.2 volts would be applied across the 0.8 Ω Thevenin resistance, producing the exact same current through the short, 14 amps (I=E/R). Thus, we can say that the Norton current is equal to the Thevenin voltage divided by the Thevenin resistance:

$$I_{Norton} = \frac{E_{Thevenin}}{R_{Thevenin}}$$

This equivalence between Thevenin and Norton circuits can be a useful tool in itself, as we shall see in the next section.

- **REVIEW:**
- Thevenin and Norton resistances are equal.

- Thevenin voltage is equal to Norton current times Norton resistance.

- Norton current is equal to Thevenin voltage divided by Thevenin resistance.

10.11 Millman's Theorem revisited

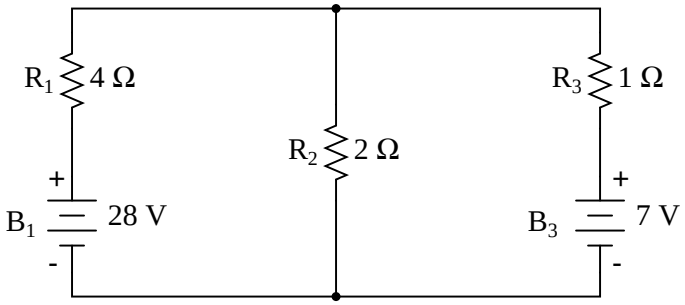
You may have wondered where we got that strange equation for the determination of "Millman Voltage" across parallel branches of a circuit where each branch contains a series resistance and voltage source:

Millman's Theorem Equation

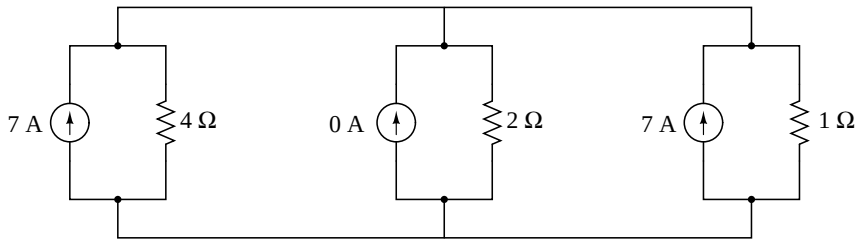
$$\frac{\frac{E_{B1}}{R_1} + \frac{E_{B2}}{R_2} + \frac{E_{B3}}{R_3}}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}} = \text{Voltage across all branches}$$

Parts of this equation seem familiar to equations we've seen before. For instance, the denominator of the large fraction looks conspicuously like the denominator of our parallel resistance equation. And, of course, the E/R terms in the numerator of the large fraction should give figures for current, Ohm's Law being what it is (I=E/R).

Now that we've covered Thevenin and Norton source equivalencies, we have the tools necessary to understand Millman's equation. What Millman's equation is actually doing is treating each branch (with its series voltage source and resistance) as a Thevenin equivalent circuit and then converting each one into equivalent Norton circuits.



Thus, in the circuit above, battery B_1 and resistor R_1 are seen as a Thevenin source to be converted into a Norton source of 7 amps (28 volts / 4 Ω) in parallel with a 4 Ω resistor. The rightmost branch will be converted into a 7 amp current source (7 volts / 1 Ω) and 1 Ω resistor in parallel. The center branch, containing no voltage source at all, will be converted into a Norton source of 0 amps in parallel with a 2 Ω resistor:



Since current sources directly add their respective currents in parallel, the total circuit current will be 7 + 0 + 7, or 14 amps. This addition of Norton source currents is what's being represented in the numerator of the Millman equation:

Millman's Theorem Equation

$$I_{total} = \frac{E_{B1}}{R_1} + \frac{E_{B2}}{R_2} + \frac{E_{B3}}{R_3} \quad \longrightarrow \quad \frac{\mathbf{E_{B1}}}{\mathbf{R_1}} + \frac{\mathbf{E_{B2}}}{\mathbf{R_2}} + \frac{\mathbf{E_{B3}}}{\mathbf{R_3}}$$

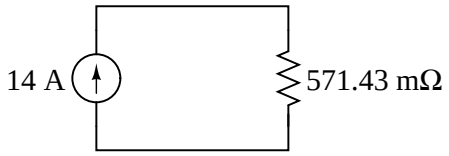
$$\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}$$

All the Norton resistances are in parallel with each other as well in the equivalent circuit, so they diminish to create a total resistance. This diminishing of source resistances is what's being represented in the denominator of the Millman's equation:

Millman's Theorem Equation

$$R_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}} \quad \longrightarrow \quad \frac{\frac{E_{B1}}{R_1} + \frac{E_{B2}}{R_2} + \frac{E_{B3}}{R_3}}{\frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{R_1}} + \frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{R_2}} + \frac{\mathbf{1}}{\mathbf{R_3}}}$$

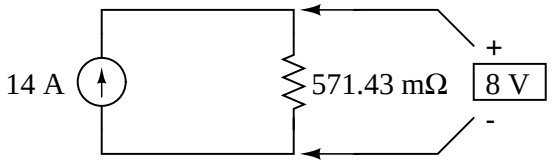
In this case, the resistance total will be equal to 571.43 milliohms (571.43 mΩ). We can re-draw our equivalent circuit now as one with a single Norton current source and Norton resistance:



Ohm's Law can tell us the voltage across these two components now (E=IR):

E_{total} = (14 A)(571.43 mΩ)

E_{total} = 8 V



Let's summarize what we know about the circuit thus far. We know that the total current in this circuit is given by the sum of all the branch voltages divided by their respective currents. We also know that the total resistance is found by taking the reciprocal of all the branch resistance reciprocals. Furthermore, we should be well aware of the fact that total voltage across all the branches can be found by multiplying total current by total resistance (E=IR). All we need to do is put together the two equations we had earlier for total circuit current and total resistance, multiplying them to find total voltage:

Ohm's Law: $I \times R = E$

(total current) x (total resistance) = (total voltage)

$$\frac{E_{B1}}{R_1} + \frac{E_{B2}}{R_2} + \frac{E_{B3}}{R_3} \quad \times \quad \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}} = \text{(total voltage)}$$

. . . or . . .

$$\frac{\mathbf{\frac{E_{B1}}{R_1} + \frac{E_{B2}}{R_2} + \frac{E_{B3}}{R_3}}}{\mathbf{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \frac{1}{R_3}}} = \textbf{(total voltage)}$$

The Millman's equation is nothing more than a Thevenin-to-Norton conversion matched together with the parallel resistance formula to find total voltage across all the branches of the circuit. So, hopefully some of the mystery is gone now!

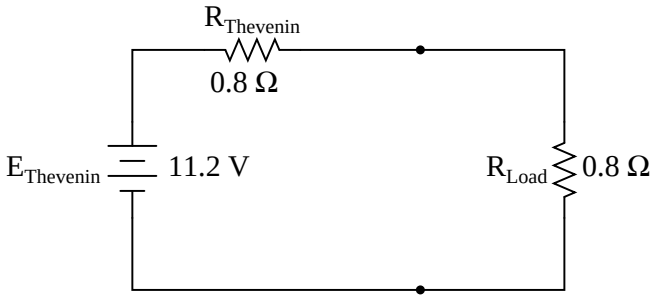
10.12 Maximum Power Transfer Theorem

The Maximum Power Transfer Theorem is not so much a means of analysis as it is an aid to system design. Simply stated, the maximum amount of power will be dissipated by a load resistance when that load resistance is equal to the Thevenin/Norton resistance of the network supplying the power. If the load resistance is lower or higher than the Thevenin/Norton resistance of the source network, its dissipated power will be less than maximum.

This is essentially what is aimed for in stereo system design, where speaker "impedance"

is matched to amplifier "impedance" for maximum sound power output. Impedance, the overall opposition to AC and DC current, is very similar to resistance, and must be equal between source and load for the greatest amount of power to be transferred to the load. A load impedance that is too high will result in low power output. A load impedance that is too low will not only result in low power output, but possibly overheating of the amplifier due to the power dissipated in its internal (Thevenin or Norton) impedance.

Taking our Thevenin equivalent example circuit, the Maximum Power Transfer Theorem tells us that the load resistance resulting in greatest power dissipation is equal in value to the Thevenin resistance (in this case, 0.8 Ω):



With this value of load resistance, the dissipated power will be 39.2 watts:

	$R_{Thevenin}$	R_{Load}	Total	
E	5.6	5.6	11.2	Volts
I	7	7	7	Amps
R	0.8	0.8	1.6	Ohms
P	39.2	**39.2**	78.4	Watts

If we were to try a lower value for the load resistance (0.5 Ω instead of 0.8 Ω, for example), our power dissipated by the load resistance would decrease:

	$R_{Thevenin}$	R_{Load}	Total	
E	6.892	4.308	11.2	Volts
I	8.615	8.615	8.615	Amps
R	0.8	0.5	1.3	Ohms
P	59.38	**37.11**	96.49	Watts

Power dissipation increased for both the Thevenin resistance and the total circuit, but it decreased for the load resistor. Likewise, if we increase the load resistance (1.1 Ω instead of 0.8 Ω, for example), power dissipation will also be less than it was at 0.8 Ω exactly:

	$R_{Thevenin}$	R_{Load}	Total	
E	4.716	6.484	11.2	Volts
I	5.895	5.895	5.895	Amps
R	0.8	1.1	1.9	Ohms
P	27.80	**38.22**	66.02	Watts

If you were designing a circuit for maximum power dissipation at the load resistance, this theorem would be very useful. Having reduced a network down to a Thevenin voltage and resistance (or Norton current and resistance), you simply set the load resistance equal to that Thevenin or Norton equivalent (or vice versa) to ensure maximum power dissipation at the load. Practical applications of this might include stereo amplifier design (seeking to maximize power delivered to speakers) or electric vehicle design (seeking to maximize power delivered to drive motor).

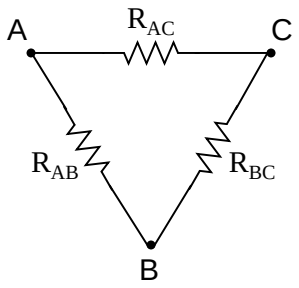
- **REVIEW:**

- The *Maximum Power Transfer Theorem* states that the maximum amount of power will be dissipated by a load resistance if it is equal to the Thevenin or Norton resistance of the network supplying power.

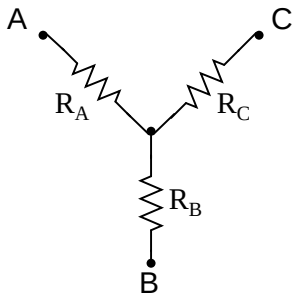
10.13 △-Y and Y-△ conversions

In many circuit applications, we encounter components connected together in one of two ways to form a three-terminal network: the "Delta," or △ (also known as the "Pi," or π) configuration, and the "Y" (also known as the "T") configuration.

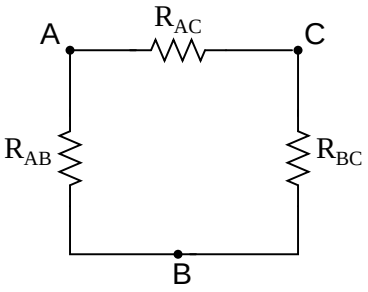
Delta (Δ) network



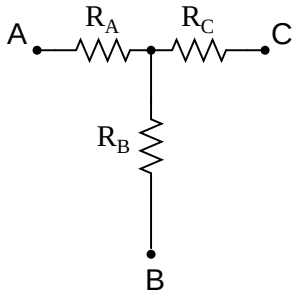
Wye (Y) network



Pi (π) network



Tee (T) network



It is possible to calculate the proper values of resistors necessary to form one kind of network (Δ or Y) that behaves identically to the other kind, as analyzed from the terminal connections alone. That is, if we had two separate resistor networks, one Δ and one Y, each with its resistors hidden from view, with nothing but the three terminals (A, B, and C) exposed for testing, the resistors could be sized for the two networks so that there would be no way to electrically determine one network apart from the other. In other words, equivalent Δ and Y networks behave identically.

There are several equations used to convert one network to the other:

To convert a Delta (Δ) to a Wye (Y)

$$R_A = \frac{R_{AB} R_{AC}}{R_{AB} + R_{AC} + R_{BC}}$$

$$R_B = \frac{R_{AB} R_{BC}}{R_{AB} + R_{AC} + R_{BC}}$$

$$R_C = \frac{R_{AC} R_{BC}}{R_{AB} + R_{AC} + R_{BC}}$$

To convert a Wye (Y) to a Delta (Δ)

$$R_{AB} = \frac{R_A R_B + R_A R_C + R_B R_C}{R_C}$$

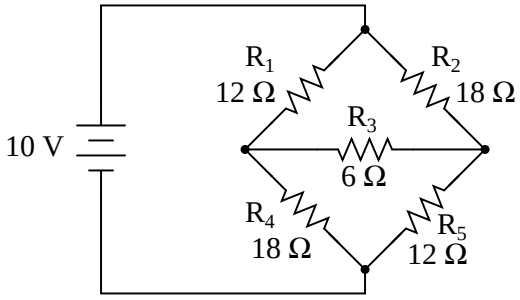
$$R_{BC} = \frac{R_A R_B + R_A R_C + R_B R_C}{R_A}$$

$$R_{AC} = \frac{R_A R_B + R_A R_C + R_B R_C}{R_B}$$

Δ and Y networks are seen frequently in 3-phase AC power systems (a topic covered in volume II of this book series), but even then they're usually balanced networks (all resistors

equal in value) and conversion from one to the other need not involve such complex calculations. When would the average technician ever need to use these equations?

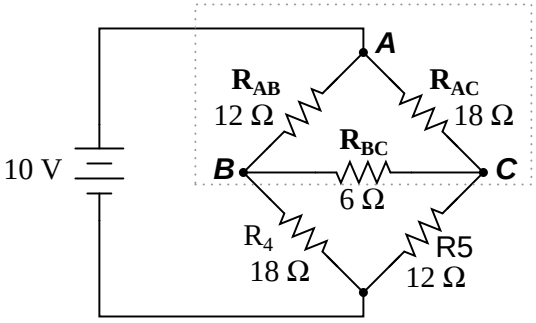
A prime application for Δ-Y conversion is in the solution of unbalanced bridge circuits, such as the one below:



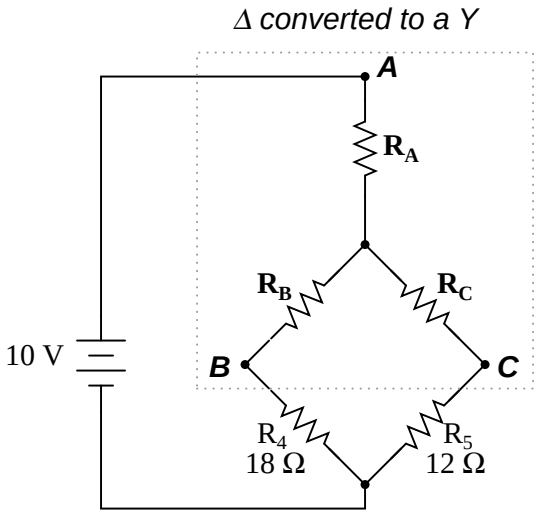
Solution of this circuit with Branch Current or Mesh Current analysis is fairly involved, and neither the Millman nor Superposition Theorems are of any help, since there's only one source of power. We could use Thevenin's or Norton's Theorem, treating R_3 as our load, but what fun would that be?

If we were to treat resistors R_1, R_2, and R_3 as being connected in a Δ configuration (R_{ab}, R_{ac}, and R_{bc}, respectively) and generate an equivalent Y network to replace them, we could turn this bridge circuit into a (simpler) series/parallel combination circuit:

Selecting Delta (Δ) network to convert:



After the Δ-Y conversion . . .

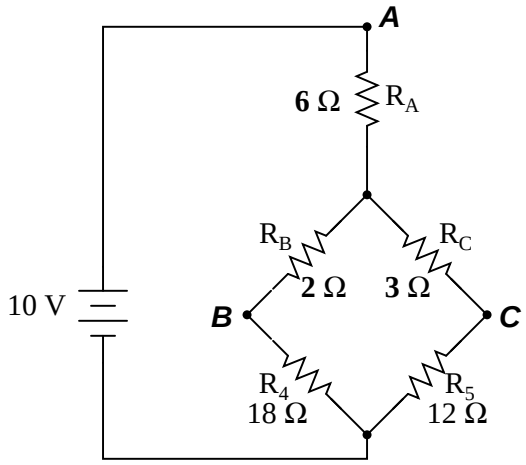


If we perform our calculations correctly, the voltages between points A, B, and C will be the same in the converted circuit as in the original circuit, and we can transfer those values back to the original bridge configuration.

$$R_A = \frac{(12\ \Omega)(18\ \Omega)}{(12\ \Omega) + (18\ \Omega) + (6\ \Omega)} = \frac{216}{36} = \mathbf{6\ \Omega}$$

$$R_B = \frac{(12\ \Omega)(6\ \Omega)}{(12\ \Omega) + (18\ \Omega) + (6\ \Omega)} = \frac{72}{36} = \mathbf{2\ \Omega}$$

$$R_C = \frac{(18\ \Omega)(6\ \Omega)}{(12\ \Omega) + (18\ \Omega) + (6\ \Omega)} = \frac{108}{36} = \mathbf{3\ \Omega}$$

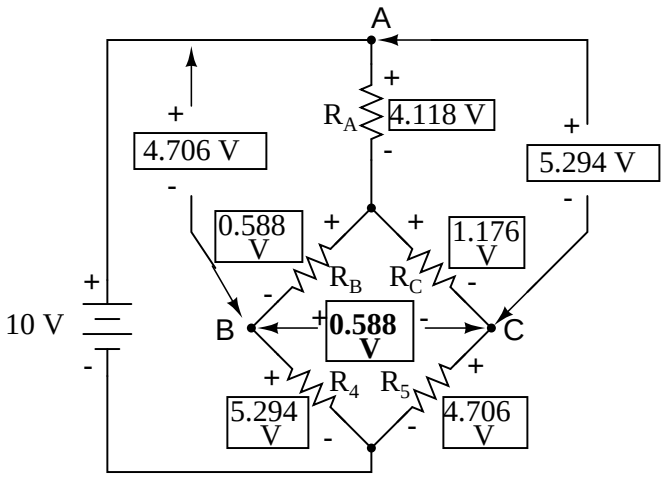


Resistors R_4 and R_5, of course, remain the same at 18 Ω and 12 Ω, respectively. Analyzing the circuit now as a series/parallel combination, we arrive at the following figures:

	R_A	R_B	R_C	R_4	R_5	
E	4.118	588.24m	1.176	5.294	4.706	Volts
I	686.27m	294.12m	392.16m	294.12m	392.16m	Amps
R	6	2	3	18	12	Ohms

	$R_B + R_4$	$R_C + R_5$	$R_B + R_4$ // $R_C + R_5$	Total	
E	5.882	5.882	5.882	10	Volts
I	294.12m	392.16m	686.27m	686.27m	Amps
R	20	15	8.571	14.571	Ohms

We must use the voltage drops figures from the table above to determine the voltages between points A, B, and C, seeing how the add up (or subtract, as is the case with voltage between points B and C):

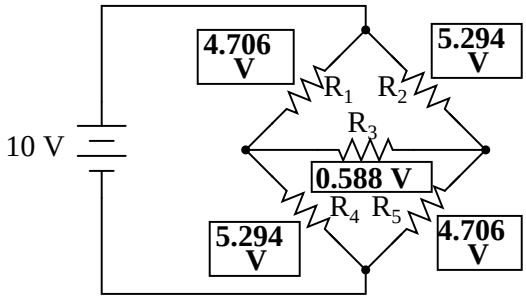


$E_{A\text{-}B} = 4.706$ V

$E_{A\text{-}C} = 5.294$ V

$E_{B\text{-}C} = 588.24$ mV

Now that we know these voltages, we can transfer them to the same points A, B, and C in the original bridge circuit:



Voltage drops across R_4 and R_5, of course, are exactly the same as they were in the converted circuit.

At this point, we could take these voltages and determine resistor currents through the repeated use of Ohm's Law (I=E/R):

$$I_{R1} = \frac{4.706 \text{ V}}{12\ \Omega} = 392.16 \text{ mA}$$

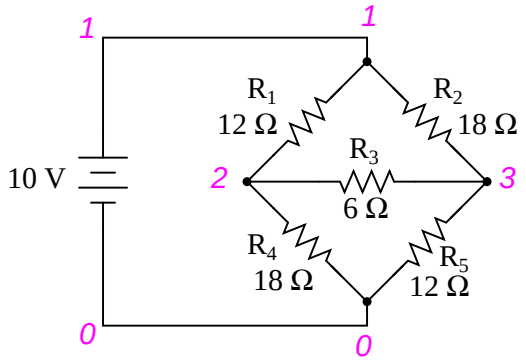
$$I_{R2} = \frac{5.294 \text{ V}}{18\ \Omega} = 294.12 \text{ mA}$$

$$I_{R3} = \frac{588.24 \text{ mV}}{6\ \Omega} = 98.04 \text{ mA}$$

$$I_{R4} = \frac{5.294 \text{ V}}{18\ \Omega} = 294.12 \text{ mA}$$

$$I_{R5} = \frac{4.706 \text{ V}}{12\ \Omega} = 392.16 \text{ mA}$$

A quick simulation with SPICE will serve to verify our work:[2]




```
unbalanced bridge circuit
v1 1 0
```

```
r1 1 2 12
r2 1 3 18
r3 2 3 6
r4 2 0 18
r5 3 0 12
.dc v1 10 10 1
.print dc v(1,2) v(1,3) v(2,3) v(2,0) v(3,0)
.end

v1            v(1,2)      v(1,3)      v(2,3)      v(2)        v(3)
1.000E+01     4.706E+00   5.294E+00   5.882E-01   5.294E+00   4.706E+00
```

The voltage figures, as read from left to right, represent voltage drops across the five respective resistors, R_1 through R_5. I could have shown currents as well, but since that would have required insertion of "dummy" voltage sources in the SPICE netlist, and since we're primarily interested in validating the Δ-Y conversion equations and not Ohm's Law, this will suffice.

- **REVIEW:**
- "Delta" (Δ) networks are also known as "Pi" (π) networks.
- "Y" networks are also known as "T" networks.
- Δ and Y networks can be converted to their equivalent counterparts with the proper resistance equations. By "equivalent," I mean that the two networks will be electrically identical as measured from the three terminals (A, B, and C).
- A bridge circuit can be simplified to a series/parallel circuit by converting half of it from a Δ to a Y network. After voltage drops between the original three connection points (A, B, and C) have been solved for, those voltages can be transferred back to the original bridge circuit, across those same equivalent points.

10.14 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Dejan Budimir (January 2003): Suggested clarifications for explaining the Mesh Current method of circuit analysis.

Bill Heath (December 2002): Pointed out several typographical errors.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Davy Van Nieuwenborgh (April 2004): Pointed out error in Mesh current section, supplied editorial material, end of section.

Bibliography

[1] A.E. Fitzergerald, David E. Higginbotham, Arvin Grabel, *Basic Electrical Engineering*, (McGraw-Hill, 1975).

[2] Tony Kuphaldt,*Using the Spice Circuit Simulation Program*, in"Lessons in Electricity, Reference", Volume 5, Chapter 7, at http://www.ibiblio.org/obp/electricCircuits/Ref/

[3] Davy Van Nieuwenborgh, *private communications*, Theoretical Computer Science laboratory, Department of Computer Science, Vrije Universiteit Brussel (4/7/2004).

[4] *Octave*, Matrix calculator open source program for Linux or MS Windows, at http://www.gnu.org/software/octave/

Chapter 11

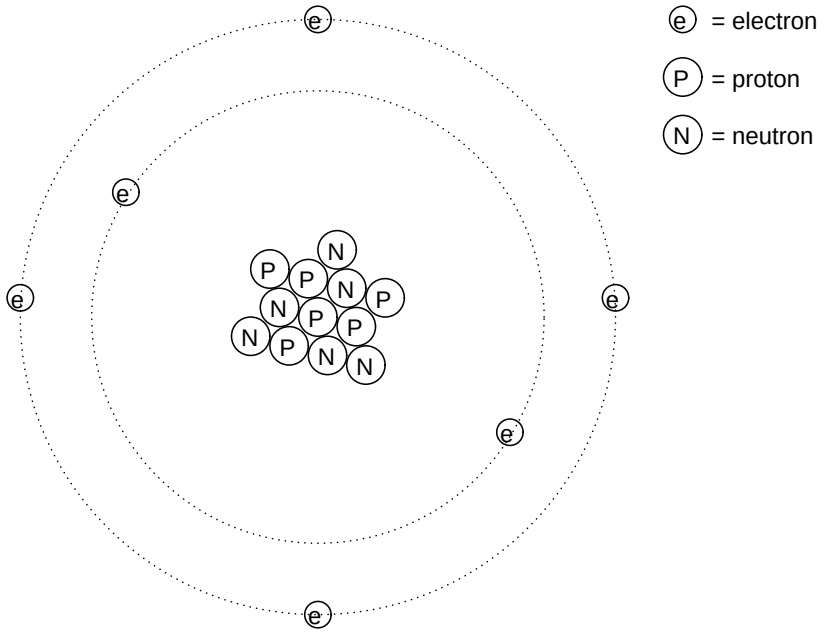
BATTERIES AND POWER SYSTEMS

Contents

11.1 Electron activity in chemical reactions

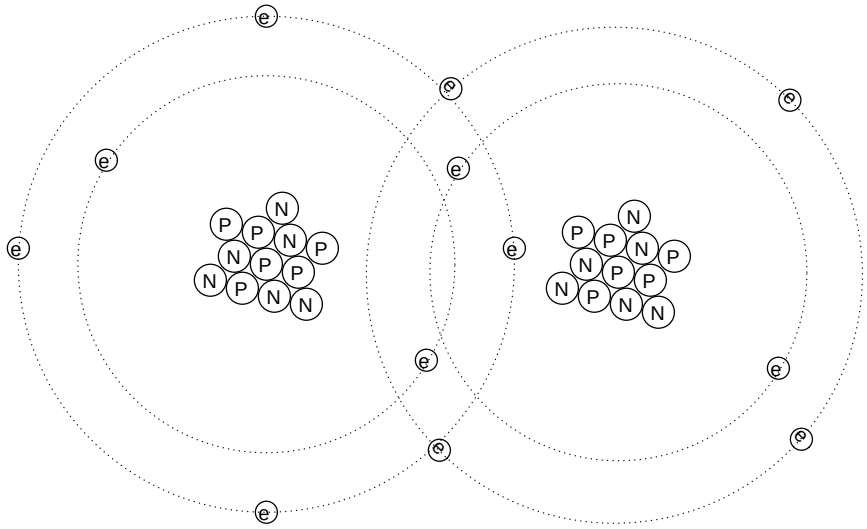
So far in our discussions on electricity and electric circuits, we have not discussed in any detail how batteries function. Rather, we have simply assumed that they produce constant voltage through some sort of mysterious process. Here, we will explore that process to some degree and cover some of the practical considerations involved with real batteries and their use in power systems.

In the first chapter of this book, the concept of an *atom* was discussed, as being the basic building-block of all material objects. Atoms, in turn, however, are composed of even smaller pieces of matter called *particles*. Electrons, protons, and neutrons are the basic types of particles found in atoms. Each of these particle types plays a distinct role in the behavior of an atom. While electrical activity involves the motion of electrons, the chemical identity of an atom (which largely determines how conductive the material will be) is determined by the number of protons in the nucleus (center).



The protons in an atom's nucleus are extremely difficult to dislodge, and so the chemical identity of any atom is very stable. One of the goals of the ancient alchemists (to turn lead into gold) was foiled by this sub-atomic stability. All efforts to alter this property of an atom by means of heat. light, or friction were met with failure. The electrons of an atom, however, are much more easily dislodged. As we have already seen, friction is one way in which electrons can be transferred from one atom to another (glass and silk, wax and wool), and so is heat (generating voltage by heating a junction of dissimilar metals, as in the case of thermocouples).

Electrons can do much more than just move around and between atoms: they can also serve to link different atoms together. This linking of atoms by electrons is called a *chemical bond*. A crude (and simplified) representation of such a bond between two atoms might look like this:



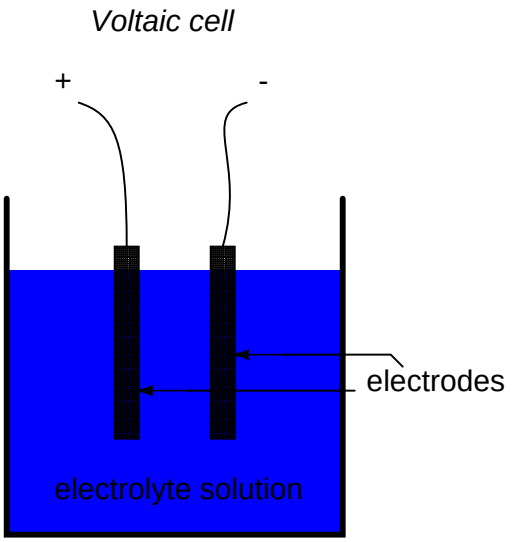
There are several types of chemical bonds, the one shown above being representative of a *covalent* bond, where electrons are shared between atoms. Because chemical bonds are based on links formed by electrons, these bonds are only as strong as the immobility of the electrons forming them. That is to say, chemical bonds can be created or broken by the same forces that force electrons to move: heat, light, friction, etc.

When atoms are joined by chemical bonds, they form materials with unique properties known as *molecules*. The dual-atom picture shown above is an example of a simple molecule formed by two atoms of the same type. Most molecules are unions of different types of atoms. Even molecules formed by atoms of the same type can have radically different physical properties. Take the element carbon, for instance: in one form, *graphite*, carbon atoms link together to form flat "plates" which slide against one another very easily, giving graphite its natural lubricating properties. In another form, *diamond*, the same carbon atoms link together in a different configuration, this time in the shapes of interlocking pyramids, forming a material of exceeding hardness. In yet another form, *Fullerene,* dozens of carbon atoms form each molecule, which looks something like a soccer ball. Fullerene molecules are very fragile and lightweight. The airy soot formed by excessively rich combustion of acetylene gas (as in the initial ignition of an oxy-acetylene welding/cutting torch) is composed of many tiny Fullerene molecules.

When alchemists succeeded in changing the properties of a substance by heat, light, friction, or mixture with other substances, they were really observing changes in the types of molecules formed by atoms breaking and forming bonds with other atoms. Chemistry is the modern counterpart to alchemy, and concerns itself primarily with the properties of these chemical bonds and the reactions associated with them.

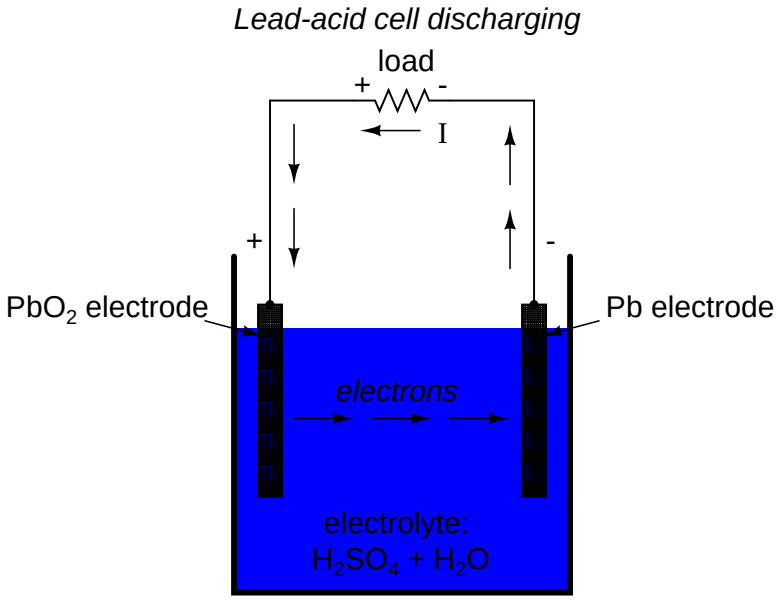
A type of chemical bond of particular interest to our study of batteries is the so-called *ionic* bond, and it differs from the *covalent* bond in that one atom of the molecule possesses an excess of electrons while another atom lacks electrons, the bonds between them being a result of the electrostatic attraction between the two unlike charges. Consequently, ionic bonds, when broken or formed, result in electrons moving from one place to another. This motion of electrons in

ionic bonding can be harnessed to generate an electric current. A device constructed to do just this is called a *voltaic cell*, or *cell* for short, usually consisting of two metal electrodes immersed in a chemical mixture (called an *electrolyte*) designed to facilitate a chemical reaction:



The two electrodes are made of different materials, both of which chemically react with the electrolyte in some form of ionic bonding.

In the common "lead-acid" cell (the kind commonly used in automobiles), the negative electrode is made of lead (Pb) and the positive is made of lead peroxide ($Pb0_2$), both metallic substances. The electrolyte solution is a dilute sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4 + H_2O). If the electrodes of the cell are connected to an external circuit, such that electrons have a place to flow from one to the other, negatively charged oxygen ions (O) from the positive electrode (PbO_2) will ionically bond with positively charged hydrogen ions (H) to form molecules of water (H_2O). This creates a deficiency of electrons in the lead peroxide (PbO_2) electrode, giving it a positive electrical charge. The sulfate ions (SO_4) left over from the disassociation of the hydrogen ions (H) from the sulfuric acid (H_2SO_4) will join with the lead (Pb) in each electrode to form lead sulfate ($PbSO_4$):



At (+) electrode: $PbO_2 + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow PbSO_4 + H_2O + O$

At (-) electrode: $Pb + H_2SO_4 \longrightarrow PbSO_4 + 2H$

This process of the cell providing electrical energy to supply a load is called *discharging*, since it is depleting its internal chemical reserves. Theoretically, after all of the sulfuric acid has been exhausted, the result will be two electrodes of lead sulfate ($PbSO_4$) and an electrolyte solution of pure water (H_2O), leaving no more capacity for additional ionic bonding. In this state, the cell is said to be *fully discharged*. In a lead-acid cell, the state of charge can be determined by an analysis of acid strength. This is easily accomplished with a device called a *hydrometer*, which measures the specific gravity (density) of the electrolyte. Sulfuric acid is denser than water, so the greater the charge of a cell, the greater the acid concentration, and thus a denser electrolyte solution.

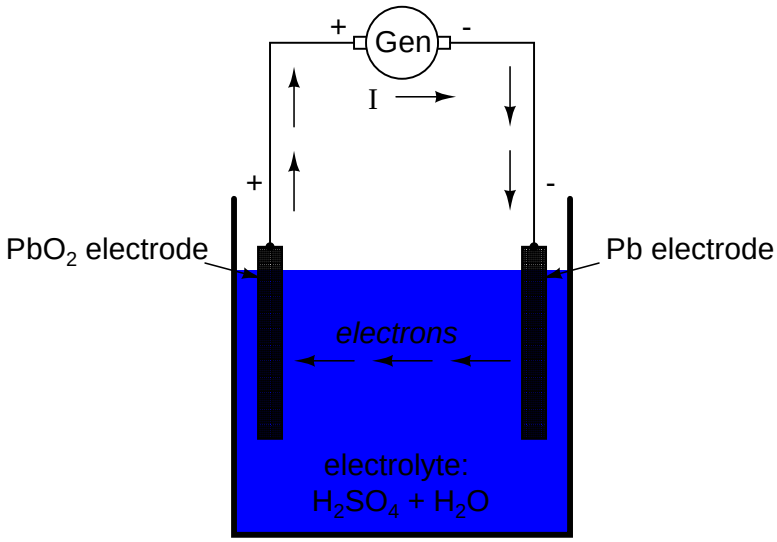
There is no single chemical reaction representative of all voltaic cells, so any detailed discussion of chemistry is bound to have limited application. The important thing to understand is that electrons are motivated to and/or from the cell's electrodes via ionic reactions between the electrode molecules and the electrolyte molecules. The reaction is enabled when there is an external path for electric current, and ceases when that path is broken.

Being that the motivation for electrons to move through a cell is chemical in nature, the amount of voltage (electromotive force) generated by any cell will be specific to the particular chemical reaction for that cell type. For instance, the lead-acid cell just described has a nominal voltage of 2.2 volts per cell, based on a fully "charged" cell (acid concentration strong) in good physical condition. There are other types of cells with different specific voltage outputs. The *Edison cell*, for example, with a positive electrode made of nickel oxide, a negative electrode made of iron, and an electrolyte solution of potassium hydroxide (a caustic, not acid, substance) generates a nominal voltage of only 1.2 volts, due to the specific differences in chemical reaction with those electrode and electrolyte substances.

The chemical reactions of some types of cells can be reversed by forcing electric current backwards through the cell (*in* the negative electrode and *out* the positive electrode). This process is called *charging*. Any such (rechargeable) cell is called a *secondary cell*. A cell whose chemistry cannot be reversed by a reverse current is called a *primary cell*.

When a lead-acid cell is charged by an external current source, the chemical reactions experienced during discharge are reversed:

Lead-acid cell charging



At (+) electrode: $PbSO_4 + H_2O + O \longrightarrow PbO_2 + H_2SO_4$

At (-) electrode: $PbSO_4 + 2H \longrightarrow Pb + H_2SO_4$

- **REVIEW:**
- Atoms bound together by electrons are called *molecules*.
- *Ionic bonds* are molecular unions formed when an electron-deficient atom (a positive ion) joins with an electron-excessive atom (a negative ion).
- Chemical reactions involving ionic bonds result in the transfer of electrons between atoms. This transfer can be harnessed to form an electric current.
- A *cell* is a device constructed to harness such chemical reactions to generate electric current.
- A cell is said to be *discharged* when its internal chemical reserves have been depleted through use.
- A *secondary* cell's chemistry can be reversed (recharged) by forcing current backwards through it.

- A *primary* cell cannot be practically recharged.
- Lead-acid cell charge can be assessed with an instrument called a *hydrometer*, which measures the density of the electrolyte liquid. The denser the electrolyte, the stronger the acid concentration, and the greater charge state of the cell.

11.2 Battery construction

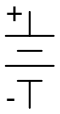
The word *battery* simply means a group of similar components. In military vocabulary, a "battery" refers to a cluster of guns. In electricity, a "battery" is a set of voltaic cells designed to provide greater voltage and/or current than is possible with one cell alone.

The symbol for a cell is very simple, consisting of one long line and one short line, parallel to each other, with connecting wires:

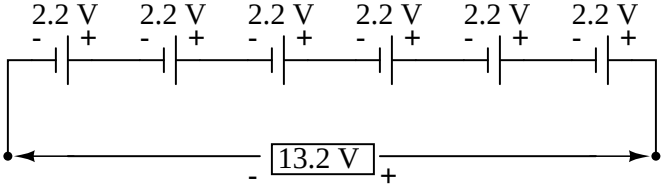
Cell

The symbol for a battery is nothing more than a couple of cell symbols stacked in series:

Battery



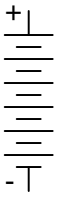
As was stated before, the voltage produced by any particular kind of cell is determined strictly by the chemistry of that cell type. The size of the cell is irrelevant to its voltage. To obtain greater voltage than the output of a single cell, multiple cells must be connected in series. The total voltage of a battery is the sum of all cell voltages. A typical automotive lead-acid battery has six cells, for a nominal voltage output of 6 x 2.2 or 13.2 volts:



The cells in an automotive battery are contained within the same hard rubber housing, connected together with thick, lead bars instead of wires. The electrodes and electrolyte solutions for each cell are contained in separate, partitioned sections of the battery case. In large batteries, the electrodes commonly take the shape of thin metal grids or plates, and are often referred to as *plates* instead of electrodes.

For the sake of convenience, battery symbols are usually limited to four lines, alternating long/short, although the real battery it represents may have many more cells than that. On

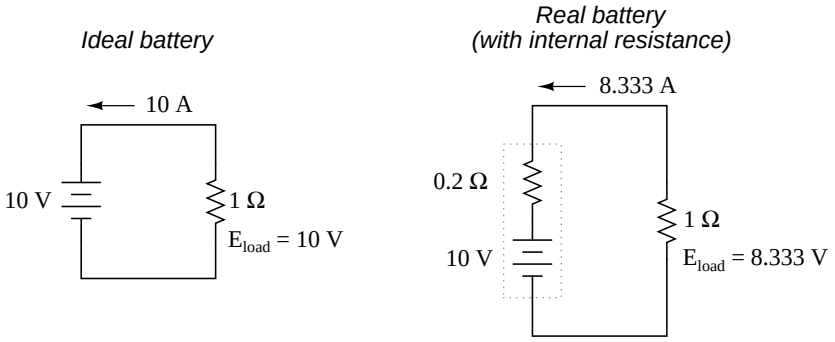
occasion, however, you might come across a symbol for a battery with unusually high voltage, intentionally drawn with extra lines. The lines, of course, are representative of the individual cell plates:



symbol for a battery with an unusually high voltage

If the physical size of a cell has no impact on its voltage, then what does it affect? The answer is resistance, which in turn affects the maximum amount of current that a cell can provide. Every voltaic cell contains some amount of internal resistance due to the electrodes and the electrolyte. The larger a cell is constructed, the greater the electrode contact area with the electrolyte, and thus the less internal resistance it will have.

Although we generally consider a cell or battery in a circuit to be a perfect source of voltage (absolutely constant), the current through it dictated solely by the *external* resistance of the circuit to which it is attached, this is not entirely true in real life. Since every cell or battery contains some internal resistance, that resistance must affect the current in any given circuit:



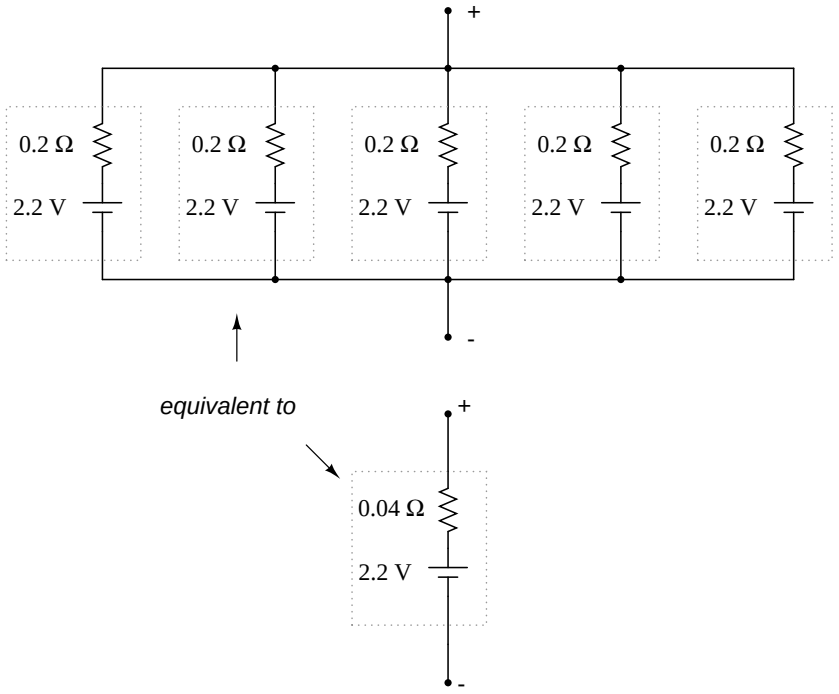
The real battery shown above within the dotted lines has an internal resistance of 0.2 Ω, which affects its ability to supply current to the load resistance of 1 Ω. The ideal battery on the left has no internal resistance, and so our Ohm's Law calculations for current (I=E/R) give us a perfect value of 10 amps for current with the 1 ohm load and 10 volt supply. The real battery, with its built-in resistance further impeding the flow of electrons, can only supply 8.333 amps to the same resistance load.

The ideal battery, in a short circuit with 0 Ω resistance, would be able to supply an infinite amount of current. The real battery, on the other hand, can only supply 50 amps (10 volts / 0.2 Ω) to a short circuit of 0 Ω resistance, due to its internal resistance. The chemical reaction inside the cell may still be providing exactly 10 volts, but voltage is dropped across that internal resistance as electrons flow through the battery, which reduces the amount of voltage available at the battery terminals to the load.

Since we live in an imperfect world, with imperfect batteries, we need to understand the implications of factors such as internal resistance. Typically, batteries are placed in applications where their internal resistance is negligible compared to that of the circuit load (where

their short-circuit current far exceeds their usual load current), and so the performance is very close to that of an ideal voltage source.

If we need to construct a battery with lower resistance than what one cell can provide (for greater current capacity), we will have to connect the cells together in parallel:



Essentially, what we have done here is determine the Thevenin equivalent of the five cells in parallel (an equivalent network of one voltage source and one series resistance). The equivalent network has the same source voltage but a fraction of the resistance of any individual cell in the original network. The overall effect of connecting cells in parallel is to decrease the equivalent internal resistance, just as resistors in parallel diminish in total resistance. The equivalent internal resistance of this battery of 5 cells is 1/5 that of each individual cell. The overall voltage stays the same: 2.2 volts. If this battery of cells were powering a circuit, the current through each cell would be 1/5 of the total circuit current, due to the equal split of current through equal-resistance parallel branches.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *battery* is a cluster of cells connected together for greater voltage and/or current capacity.
- Cells connected together in series (polarities aiding) results in greater total voltage.
- Physical cell size impacts cell resistance, which in turn impacts the ability for the cell to supply current to a circuit. Generally, the larger the cell, the less its internal resistance.

- Cells connected together in parallel results in less total resistance, and potentially greater total current.

11.3 Battery ratings

Because batteries create electron flow in a circuit by exchanging electrons in ionic chemical reactions, and there is a limited number of molecules in any charged battery available to react, there must be a limited amount of total electrons that any battery can motivate through a circuit before its energy reserves are exhausted. Battery capacity could be measured in terms of total number of electrons, but this would be a huge number. We could use the unit of the *coulomb* (equal to 6.25 x 10^{18} electrons, or 6,250,000,000,000,000,000 electrons) to make the quantities more practical to work with, but instead a new unit, the *amp-hour*, was made for this purpose. Since 1 amp is actually a flow rate of 1 coulomb of electrons per second, and there are 3600 seconds in an hour, we can state a direct proportion between coulombs and amp-hours: 1 amp-hour = 3600 coulombs. Why make up a new unit when an old would have done just fine? To make your lives as students and technicians more difficult, of course!

A battery with a capacity of 1 amp-hour should be able to continuously supply a current of 1 amp to a load for exactly 1 hour, or 2 amps for 1/2 hour, or 1/3 amp for 3 hours, etc., before becoming completely discharged. In an ideal battery, this relationship between continuous current and discharge time is stable and absolute, but real batteries don't behave exactly as this simple linear formula would indicate. Therefore, when amp-hour capacity is given for a battery, it is specified at either a given current, given time, or assumed to be rated for a time period of 8 hours (if no limiting factor is given).

For example, an average automotive battery might have a capacity of about 70 amp-hours, specified at a current of 3.5 amps. This means that the amount of time this battery could continuously supply a current of 3.5 amps to a load would be 20 hours (70 amp-hours / 3.5 amps). But let's suppose that a lower-resistance load were connected to that battery, drawing 70 amps continuously. Our amp-hour equation tells us that the battery should hold out for exactly 1 hour (70 amp-hours / 70 amps), but this might not be true in real life. With higher currents, the battery will dissipate more heat across its internal resistance, which has the effect of altering the chemical reactions taking place within. Chances are, the battery would fully discharge some time *before* the calculated time of 1 hour under this greater load.

Conversely, if a very light load (1 mA) were to be connected to the battery, our equation would tell us that the battery should provide power for 70,000 hours, or just under 8 years (70 amp-hours / 1 milliamp), but the odds are that much of the chemical energy in a real battery would have been drained due to other factors (evaporation of electrolyte, deterioration of electrodes, leakage current within battery) long before 8 years had elapsed. Therefore, we must take the amp-hour relationship as being an ideal approximation of battery life, the amp-hour rating trusted only near the specified current or timespan given by the manufacturer. Some manufacturers will provide amp-hour derating factors specifying reductions in total capacity at different levels of current and/or temperature.

For secondary cells, the amp-hour rating provides a rule for necessary charging time at any given level of charge current. For example, the 70 amp-hour automotive battery in the previous example should take 10 hours to charge from a fully-discharged state at a constant charging current of 7 amps (70 amp-hours / 7 amps).

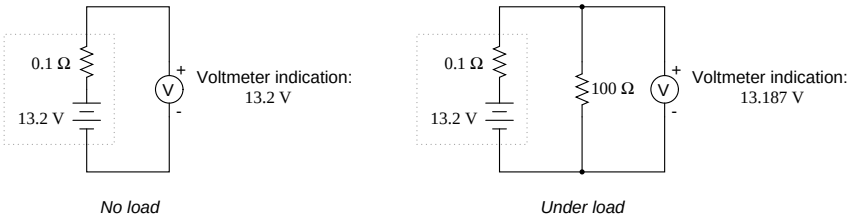
Approximate amp-hour capacities of some common batteries are given here:

- Typical automotive battery: 70 amp-hours @ 3.5 A *(secondary cell)*
- D-size carbon-zinc battery: 4.5 amp-hours @ 100 mA *(primary cell)*
- 9 volt carbon-zinc battery: 400 milliamp-hours @ 8 mA *(primary cell)*

As a battery discharges, not only does it diminish its internal store of energy, but its internal resistance also increases (as the electrolyte becomes less and less conductive), and its open-circuit cell voltage decreases (as the chemicals become more and more dilute). The most deceptive change that a discharging battery exhibits is increased resistance. The best check for a battery's condition is a voltage measurement *under load*, while the battery is supplying a substantial current through a circuit. Otherwise, a simple voltmeter check across the terminals may falsely indicate a healthy battery (adequate voltage) even though the internal resistance has increased considerably. What constitutes a "substantial current" is determined by the battery's design parameters. A voltmeter check revealing too low of a voltage, of course, would positively indicate a discharged battery:

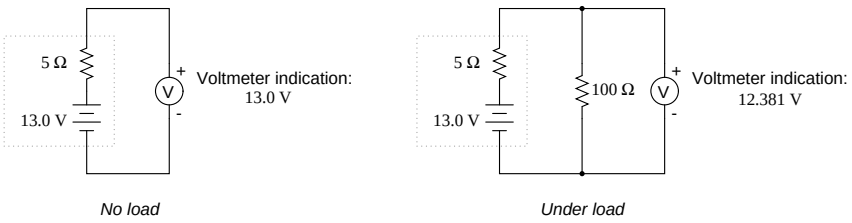
Fully charged battery:

Scenario for a fully charged battery



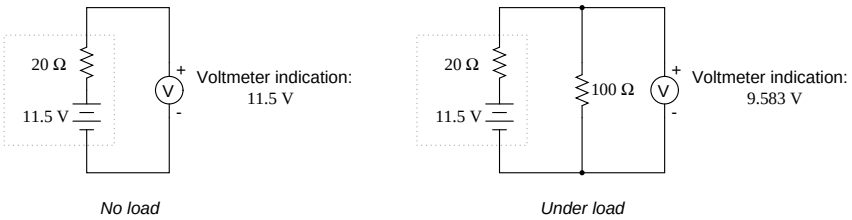
Now, if the battery discharges a bit . . .

Scenario for a slightly discharged battery

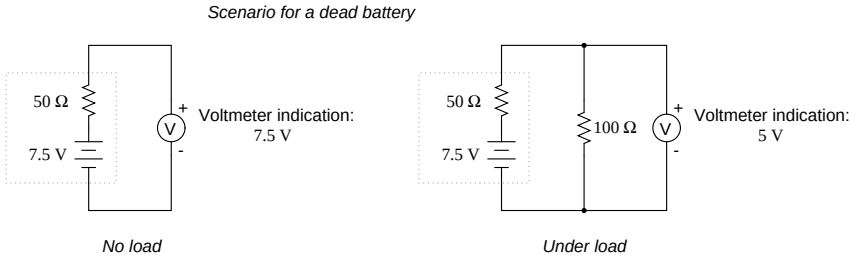


. . . and discharges a bit further . . .

Scenario for a moderately discharged battery



. . . and a bit further until its dead.



Notice how much better the battery's true condition is revealed when its voltage is checked under load as opposed to without a load. Does this mean that its pointless to check a battery with just a voltmeter (no load)? Well, no. If a simple voltmeter check reveals only 7.5 volts for a 13.2 volt battery, then you know without a doubt that its dead. However, if the voltmeter were to indicate 12.5 volts, it may be near full charge or somewhat depleted – you couldn't tell without a load check. Bear in mind also that the resistance used to place a battery under load must be rated for the amount of power expected to be dissipated. For checking large batteries such as an automobile (12 volt nominal) lead-acid battery, this may mean a resistor with a power rating of several hundred watts.

- **REVIEW:**
- The *amp-hour* is a unit of battery energy capacity, equal to the amount of continuous current multiplied by the discharge time, that a battery can supply before exhausting its internal store of chemical energy.

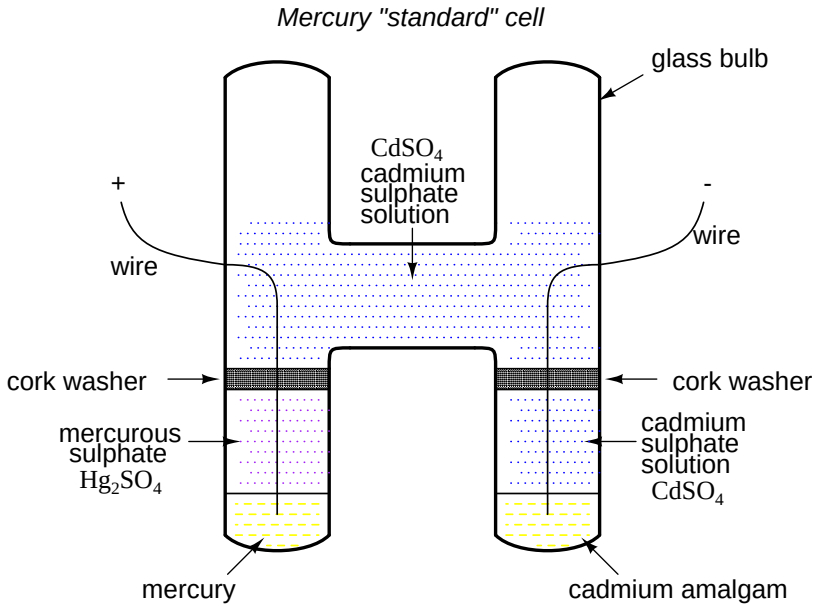
$$\text{Continuous current (in Amps)} = \frac{\text{Amp-hour rating}}{\text{Charge/discharge time (in hours)}}$$

$$\text{Charge/discharge time (in hours)} = \frac{\text{Amp-hour rating}}{\text{Continuous current (in Amps)}}$$

- An amp-hour battery rating is only an approximation of the battery's charge capacity, and should be trusted only at the current level or time specified by the manufacturer. Such a rating cannot be extrapolated for very high currents or very long times with any accuracy.
- Discharged batteries lose voltage and increase in resistance. The best check for a dead battery is a voltage test under load.

11.4 Special-purpose batteries

Back in the early days of electrical measurement technology, a special type of battery known as a *mercury standard cell* was popularly used as a voltage calibration standard. The output of a mercury cell was 1.0183 to 1.0194 volts DC (depending on the specific design of cell), and was extremely stable over time. Advertised drift was around 0.004 percent of rated voltage per year. Mercury standard cells were sometimes known as *Weston cells* or *cadmium cells*.



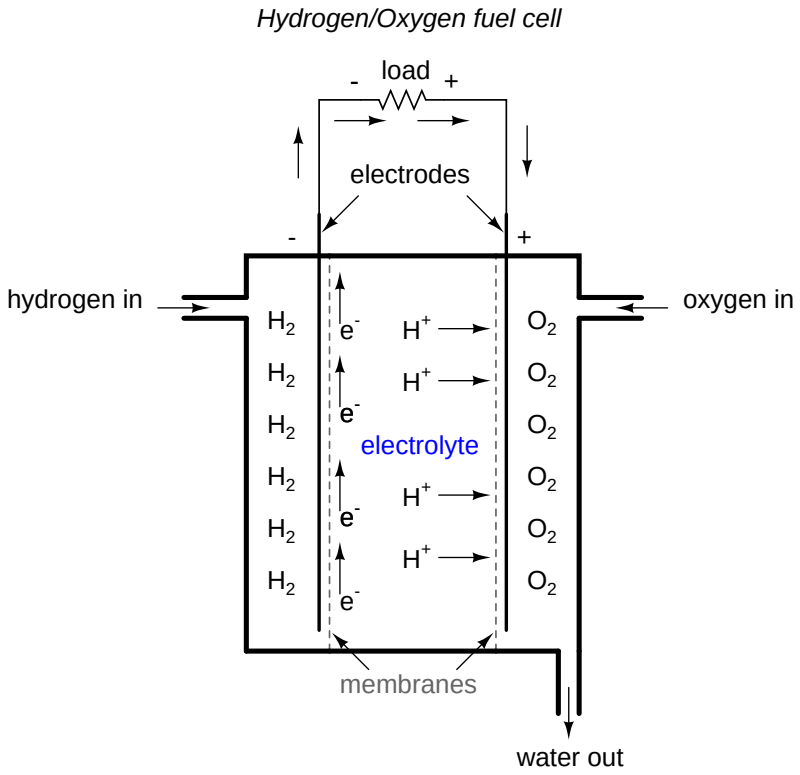
Unfortunately, mercury cells were rather intolerant of any current drain and could not even be measured with an analog voltmeter without compromising accuracy. Manufacturers typically called for no more than 0.1 mA of current through the cell, and even that figure was considered a *momentary*, or *surge* maximum! Consequently, standard cells could only be measured with a potentiometric (null-balance) device where current drain is almost zero. Short-circuiting a mercury cell was prohibited, and once short-circuited, the cell could never be relied upon again as a standard device.

Mercury standard cells were also susceptible to slight changes in voltage if physically or thermally disturbed. Two different types of mercury standard cells were developed for different calibration purposes: *saturated* and *unsaturated*. Saturated standard cells provided the greatest voltage stability over time, at the expense of thermal instability. In other words, their voltage drifted very little with the passage of time (just a few microvolts over the span of a decade!), but tended to vary with changes in temperature (tens of microvolts per degree Celsius). These cells functioned best in temperature-controlled laboratory environments where long-term stability is paramount. Unsaturated cells provided thermal stability at the expense of stability over time, the voltage remaining virtually constant with changes in temperature but decreasing steadily by about 100 μV every year. These cells functioned best as "field" calibration devices where ambient temperature is not precisely controlled. Nominal voltage for a saturated cell was 1.0186 volts, and 1.019 volts for an unsaturated cell.

Modern semiconductor voltage (zener diode regulator) references have superseded standard cell batteries as laboratory and field voltage standards.

A fascinating device closely related to primary-cell batteries is the *fuel cell*, so-called because it harnesses the chemical reaction of combustion to generate an electric current. The process of chemical oxidation (oxygen ionically bonding with other elements) is capable of producing an electron flow between two electrodes just as well as any combination of metals and electrolytes. A fuel cell can be thought of as a battery with an externally supplied chemical

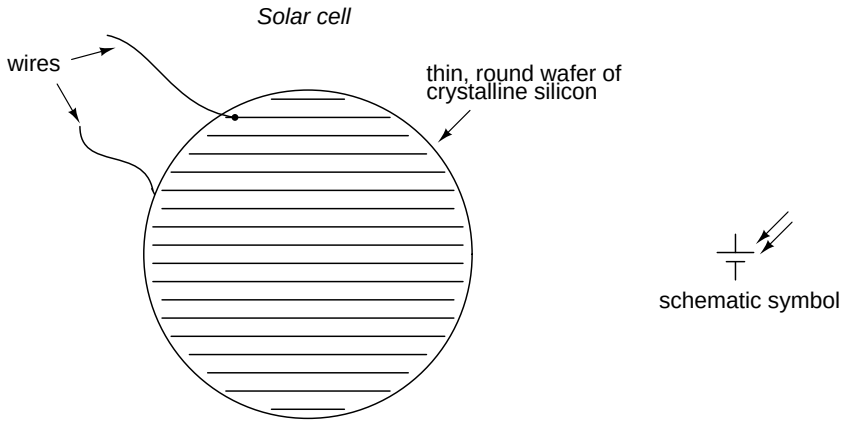
energy source.



To date, the most successful fuel cells constructed are those which run on hydrogen and oxygen, although much research has been done on cells using hydrocarbon fuels. While "burning" hydrogen, a fuel cell's only waste byproducts are water and a small amount of heat. When operating on carbon-containing fuels, carbon dioxide is also released as a byproduct. Because the operating temperature of modern fuel cells is far below that of normal combustion, no oxides of nitrogen (NO_x) are formed, making it far less polluting, all other factors being equal.

The efficiency of energy conversion in a fuel cell from chemical to electrical far exceeds the theoretical Carnot efficiency limit of any internal-combustion engine, which is an exciting prospect for power generation and hybrid electric automobiles.

Another type of "battery" is the *solar cell*, a by-product of the semiconductor revolution in electronics. The *photoelectric effect*, whereby electrons are dislodged from atoms under the influence of light, has been known in physics for many decades, but it has only been with recent advances in semiconductor technology that a device existed capable of harnessing this effect to any practical degree. Conversion efficiencies for silicon solar cells are still quite low, but their benefits as power sources are legion: no moving parts, no noise, no waste products or pollution (aside from the manufacture of solar cells, which is still a fairly "dirty" industry), and indefinite life.



Specific cost of solar cell technology (dollars per kilowatt) is still very high, with little prospect of significant decrease barring some kind of revolutionary advance in technology. Unlike electronic components made from semiconductor material, which can be made smaller and smaller with less scrap as a result of better quality control, a single solar cell still takes the same amount of ultra-pure silicon to make as it did thirty years ago. Superior quality control fails to yield the same production gain seen in the manufacture of chips and transistors (where isolated specks of impurity can ruin many microscopic circuits on one wafer of silicon). The same number of impure inclusions does little to impact the overall efficiency of a 3-inch solar cell.

Yet another type of special-purpose ”battery” is the *chemical detection cell*. Simply put, these cells chemically react with specific substances in the air to create a voltage directly proportional to the concentration of that substance. A common application for a chemical detection cell is in the detection and measurement of oxygen concentration. Many portable oxygen analyzers have been designed around these small cells. Cell chemistry must be designed to match the specific substance(s) to be detected, and the cells do tend to ”wear out,” as their electrode materials deplete or become contaminated with use.

- **REVIEW:**

- *mercury standard cells* are special types of batteries which were once used as voltage calibration standards before the advent of precision semiconductor reference devices.

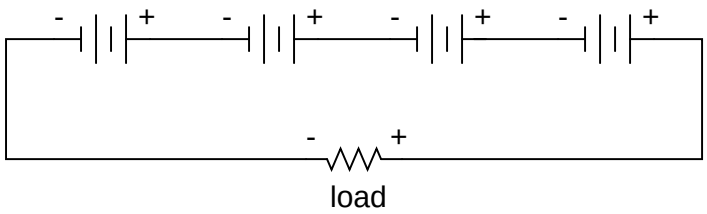
- A *fuel cell* is a kind of battery that uses a combustible fuel and oxidizer as reactants to generate electricity. They are promising sources of electrical power in the future, ”burning” fuels with very low emissions.

- A *solar cell* uses ambient light energy to motivate electrons from one electrode to the other, producing voltage (and current, providing an external circuit).

- A *chemical detection cell* is a special type of voltaic cell which produces voltage proportional to the concentration of an applied substance (usually a specific gas in ambient air).

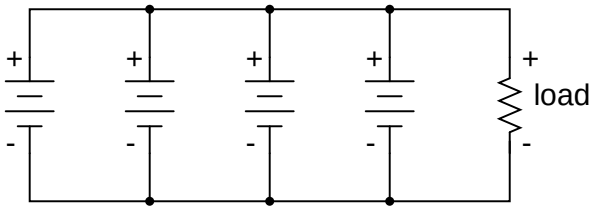
11.5 Practical considerations

When connecting batteries together to form larger "banks" (a *battery* of batteries?), the constituent batteries must be matched to each other so as to not cause problems. First we will consider connecting batteries in series for greater voltage:



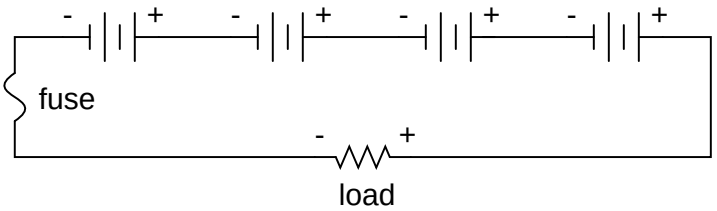
We know that the current is equal at all points in a series circuit, so whatever amount of current there is in any one of the series-connected batteries must be the same for all the others as well. *For this reason, each battery must have the same amp-hour rating, or else some of the batteries will become depleted sooner than others, compromising the capacity of the whole bank*. Please note that the total amp-hour capacity of this series battery bank is not affected by the number of batteries.

Next, we will consider connecting batteries in parallel for greater current capacity (lower internal resistance), or greater amp-hour capacity:



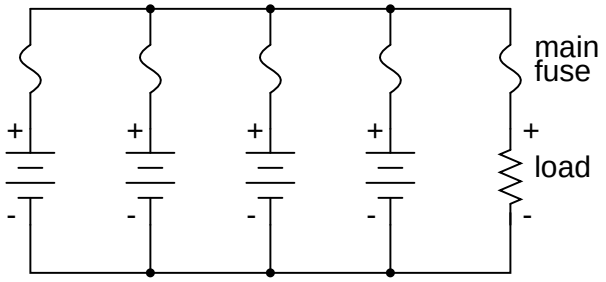
We know that the voltage is equal across all branches of a parallel circuit, so we must be sure that these batteries are of equal voltage. If not, we will have relatively large currents circulating from one battery through another, the higher-voltage batteries overpowering the lower-voltage batteries. This is not good.

On this same theme, we must be sure that any overcurrent protection (circuit breakers or fuses) are installed in such a way as to be effective. For our series battery bank, one fuse will suffice to protect the wiring from excessive current, since any break in a series circuit stops current through all parts of the circuit:



With a parallel battery bank, one fuse is adequate for protecting the wiring against load overcurrent (between the parallel-connected batteries and the load), but we have other con-

cerns to protect against as well. Batteries have been known to internally short-circuit, due to electrode separator failure, causing a problem not unlike that where batteries of unequal voltage are connected in parallel: the good batteries will overpower the failed (lower voltage) battery, causing relatively large currents within the batteries' connecting wires. To guard against this eventuality, we should protect each and every battery against overcurrent with individual battery fuses, in addition to the load fuse:



When dealing with secondary-cell batteries, particular attention must be paid to the method and timing of charging. Different types and construction of batteries have different charging needs, and the manufacturer's recommendations are probably the best guide to follow when designing or maintaining a system. Two distinct concerns of battery charging are *cycling* and *overcharging*. Cycling refers to the process of charging a battery to a "full" condition and then discharging it to a lower state. All batteries have a finite (limited) cycle life, and the allowable "depth" of cycle (how far it should be discharged at any time) varies from design to design. Overcharging is the condition where current continues to be forced backwards through a secondary cell beyond the point where the cell has reached full charge. With lead-acid cells in particular, overcharging leads to electrolysis of the water ("boiling" the water out of the battery) and shortened life.

Any battery containing water in the electrolyte is subject to the production of hydrogen gas due to electrolysis. This is especially true for overcharged lead-acid cells, but not exclusive to that type. Hydrogen is an extremely flammable gas (especially in the presence of free oxygen created by the same electrolysis process), odorless and colorless. Such batteries pose an explosion threat even under normal operating conditions, and must be treated with respect. The author has been a firsthand witness to a lead-acid battery explosion, where a spark created by the removal of a battery charger (small DC power supply) from an automotive battery ignited hydrogen gas within the battery case, blowing the top off the battery and splashing sulfuric acid everywhere. This occurred in a high school automotive shop, no less. If it were not for all the students nearby wearing safety glasses and buttoned-collar overalls, significant injury could have occurred.

When connecting and disconnecting charging equipment to a battery, always make the last connection (or first disconnection) at a location away from the battery itself (such as at a point on one of the battery cables, at least a foot away from the battery), so that any resultant spark has little or no chance of igniting hydrogen gas.

In large, permanently installed battery banks, batteries are equipped with vent caps above each cell, and hydrogen gas is vented outside of the battery room through hoods immediately over the batteries. Hydrogen gas is very light and rises quickly. The greatest danger is when it is allowed to accumulate in an area, awaiting ignition.

More modern lead-acid battery designs are sealed, using a catalyst to re-combine the electrolyzed hydrogen and oxygen back into water, inside the battery case itself. Adequate ventilation might still be a good idea, just in case a battery were to develop a leak in the case.

- **REVIEW:**
- Connecting batteries in series increases voltage, but does not increase overall amp-hour capacity.
- All batteries in a series bank *must* have the same amp-hour rating.
- Connecting batteries in parallel increases total current capacity by decreasing total resistance, and it also increases overall amp-hour capacity.
- All batteries in a parallel bank *must* have the same voltage rating.
- Batteries can be damaged by excessive *cycling* and *overcharging*.
- Water-based electrolyte batteries are capable of generating explosive hydrogen gas, which must not be allowed to accumulate in an area.

11.6 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 12

PHYSICS OF CONDUCTORS AND INSULATORS

Contents

12.1 Introduction

By now you should be well aware of the correlation between electrical conductivity and certain types of materials. Those materials allowing for easy passage of free electrons are called *conductors*, while those materials impeding the passage of free electrons are called *insulators*.

Unfortunately, the scientific theories explaining why certain materials conduct and others don't are quite complex, rooted in quantum mechanical explanations in how electrons are arranged around the nuclei of atoms. Contrary to the well-known "planetary" model of electrons whirling around an atom's nucleus as well-defined chunks of matter in circular or elliptical orbits, electrons in "orbit" don't really act like pieces of matter at all. Rather, they exhibit the characteristics of both particle and wave, their behavior constrained by placement within distinct zones around the nucleus referred to as "shells" and "subshells." Electrons can occupy

these zones only in a limited range of energies depending on the particular zone and how occupied that zone is with other electrons. If electrons really did act like tiny planets held in orbit around the nucleus by electrostatic attraction, their actions described by the same laws describing the motions of real planets, there could be no real distinction between conductors and insulators, and chemical bonds between atoms would not exist in the way they do now. It is the discrete, "quantitized" nature of electron energy and placement described by quantum physics that gives these phenomena their regularity.

When an electron is free to assume higher energy states around an atom's nucleus (due to its placement in a particular "shell"), it may be free to break away from the atom and comprise part of an electric current through the substance. If the quantum limitations imposed on an electron deny it this freedom, however, the electron is considered to be "bound" and cannot break away (at least not easily) to constitute a current. The former scenario is typical of conducting materials, while the latter is typical of insulating materials.

Some textbooks will tell you that an element's conductivity or nonconductivity is exclusively determined by the number of electrons residing in the atoms' outer "shell" (called the *valence* shell), but this is an oversimplification, as any examination of conductivity versus valence electrons in a table of elements will confirm. The true complexity of the situation is further revealed when the conductivity of molecules (collections of atoms bound to one another by electron activity) is considered.

A good example of this is the element carbon, which comprises materials of vastly differing conductivity: graphite and diamond. Graphite is a fair conductor of electricity, while diamond is practically an insulator (stranger yet, it is technically classified as a *semiconductor*, which in its pure form acts as an insulator, but can conduct under high temperatures and/or the influence of impurities). Both graphite and diamond are composed of the exact same types of atoms: carbon, with 6 protons, 6 neutrons and 6 electrons each. The fundamental difference between graphite and diamond being that graphite molecules are flat groupings of carbon atoms while diamond molecules are tetrahedral (pyramid-shaped) groupings of carbon atoms.

If atoms of carbon are joined to other types of atoms to form compounds, electrical conductivity becomes altered once again. Silicon carbide, a compound of the elements silicon and carbon, exhibits nonlinear behavior: its electrical resistance decreases with increases in applied voltage! Hydrocarbon compounds (such as the molecules found in oils) tend to be very good insulators. As you can see, a simple count of valence electrons in an atom is a poor indicator of a substance's electrical conductivity.

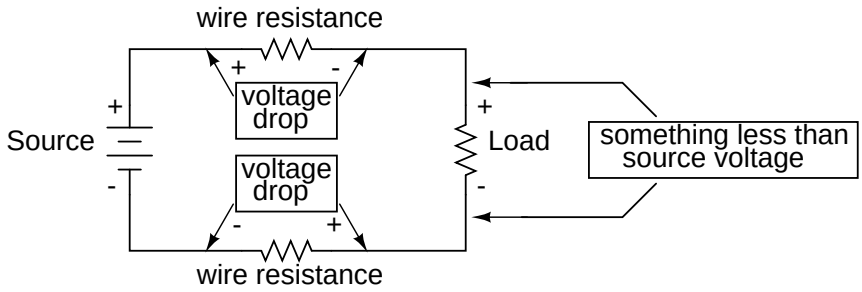
All metallic elements are good conductors of electricity, due to the way the atoms bond with each other. The electrons of the atoms comprising a mass of metal are so uninhibited in their allowable energy states that they float freely between the different nuclei in the substance, readily motivated by any electric field. The electrons are so mobile, in fact, that they are sometimes described by scientists as an *electron gas*, or even an *electron sea* in which the atomic nuclei rest. This electron mobility accounts for some of the other common properties of metals: good heat conductivity, malleability and ductility (easily formed into different shapes), and a lustrous finish when pure.

Thankfully, the physics behind all this is mostly irrelevant to our purposes here. Suffice it to say that some materials are good conductors, some are poor conductors, and some are in between. For now it is good enough to simply understand that these distinctions are determined by the configuration of the electrons around the constituent atoms of the material.

An important step in getting electricity to do our bidding is to be able to construct paths

for electrons to flow with controlled amounts of resistance. It is also vitally important that we be able to prevent electrons from flowing where we don't want them to, by using insulating materials. However, not all conductors are the same, and neither are all insulators. We need to understand some of the characteristics of common conductors and insulators, and be able to apply these characteristics to specific applications.

Almost all conductors possess a certain, measurable resistance (special types of materials called *superconductors* possess absolutely no electrical resistance, but these are not ordinary materials, and they must be held in special conditions in order to be super conductive). Typically, we assume the resistance of the conductors in a circuit to be zero, and we expect that current passes through them without producing any appreciable voltage drop. In reality, however, there will almost always be a voltage drop along the (normal) conductive pathways of an electric circuit, whether we want a voltage drop to be there or not:



In order to calculate what these voltage drops will be in any particular circuit, we must be able to ascertain the resistance of ordinary wire, knowing the wire size and diameter. Some of the following sections of this chapter will address the details of doing this.

- **REVIEW:**
- Electrical conductivity of a material is determined by the configuration of electrons in that materials atoms and molecules (groups of bonded atoms).
- All normal conductors possess resistance to some degree.
- Electrons flowing through a conductor with (any) resistance will produce some amount of voltage drop across the length of that conductor.

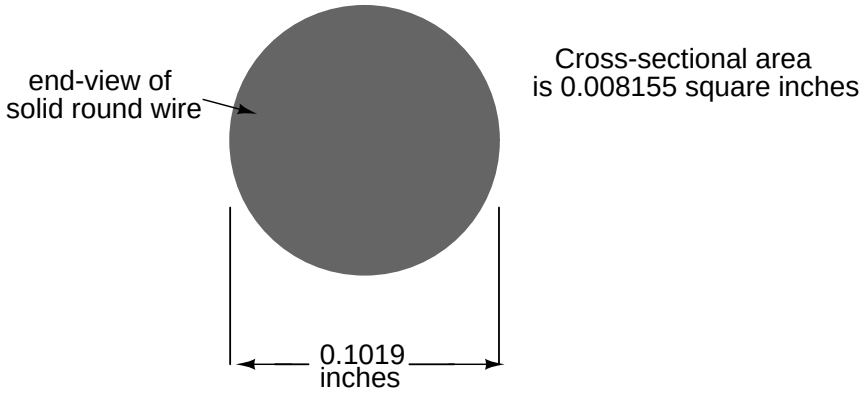
12.2 Conductor size

It should be common-sense knowledge that liquids flow through large-diameter pipes easier than they do through small-diameter pipes (if you would like a practical illustration, try drinking a liquid through straws of different diameters). The same general principle holds for the flow of electrons through conductors: the broader the cross-sectional area (thickness) of the conductor, the more room for electrons to flow, and consequently, the easier it is for flow to occur (less resistance).

Electrical wire is usually round in cross-section (although there are some unique exceptions to this rule), and comes in two basic varieties: solid and stranded. Solid copper wire is just as it

sounds: a single, solid strand of copper the whole length of the wire. Stranded wire is composed of smaller strands of solid copper wire twisted together to form a single, larger conductor. The greatest benefit of stranded wire is its mechanical flexibility, being able to withstand repeated bending and twisting much better than solid copper (which tends to fatigue and break after time).

Wire size can be measured in several ways. We could speak of a wire's diameter, but since its really the cross-sectional *area* that matters most regarding the flow of electrons, we are better off designating wire size in terms of area.



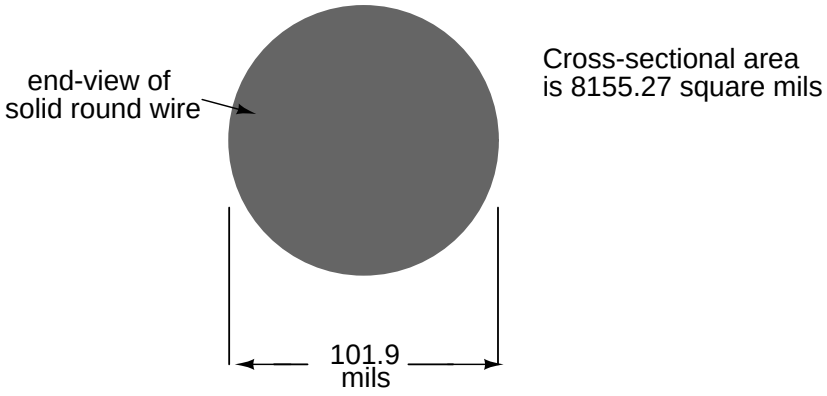
The wire cross-section picture shown above is, of course, not drawn to scale. The diameter is shown as being 0.1019 inches. Calculating the area of the cross-section with the formula Area = πr^2, we get an area of 0.008155 square inches:

$$A = \pi r^2$$

$$A = (3.1416)\left(\frac{0.1019 \text{ inches}}{2}\right)^2$$

$$A = 0.008155 \text{ square inches}$$

These are fairly small numbers to work with, so wire sizes are often expressed in measures of thousandths-of-an-inch, or *mils*. For the illustrated example, we would say that the diameter of the wire was 101.9 mils (0.1019 inch times 1000). We could also, if we wanted, express the area of the wire in the unit of square mils, calculating that value with the same circle-area formula, Area = πr^2:



$$A = \pi r^2$$

$$A = (3.1416)\left(\frac{101.9\,\text{mils}}{2}\right)^2$$

$$A = 8155.27 \text{ square mils}$$

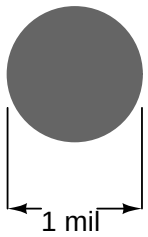
However, electricians and others frequently concerned with wire size use another unit of area measurement tailored specifically for wire's circular cross-section. This special unit is called the *circular mil* (sometimes abbreviated *cmil*). The sole purpose for having this special unit of measurement is to eliminate the need to invoke the factor π (3.1415927 . . .) in the formula for calculating area, plus the need to figure wire *radius* when you've been given *diameter*. The formula for calculating the circular-mil area of a circular wire is very simple:

Circular Wire Area Formula

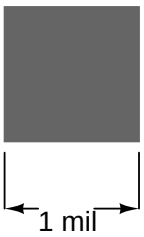
$$A = d^2$$

Because this is a unit of *area* measurement, the mathematical power of 2 is still in effect (doubling the width of a circle will *always* quadruple its area, no matter what units are used, or if the width of that circle is expressed in terms of radius or diameter). To illustrate the difference between measurements in square mils and measurements in circular mils, I will compare a circle with a square, showing the area of each shape in both unit measures:

Area = 0.7854 square mils
Area = 1 circular mil

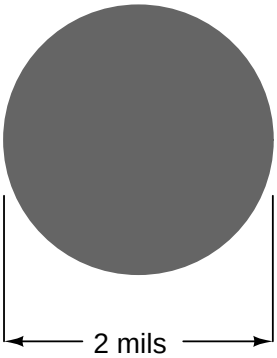


Area = 1 square mil
Area = 1.273 circular mils

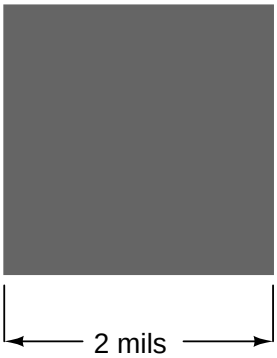


And for another size of wire:

Area = 3.1416 square mils
Area = 4 circular mils



Area = 4 square mils
Area = 5.0930 circular mils



Obviously, the circle of a given diameter has less cross-sectional area than a square of width and height equal to the circle's diameter: both units of area measurement reflect that. However, it should be clear that the unit of "square mil" is really tailored for the convenient determination of a square's area, while "circular mil" is tailored for the convenient determination of a circle's area: the respective formula for each is simpler to work with. It must be understood that both units are valid for measuring the area of a shape, no matter what shape that may be. The conversion between circular mils and square mils is a simple ratio: there are π (3.1415927 . . .) square mils to every 4 circular mils.

Another measure of cross-sectional wire area is the *gauge*. The gauge scale is based on whole numbers rather than fractional or decimal inches. The larger the gauge number, the skinnier the wire; the smaller the gauge number, the fatter the wire. For those acquainted with shotguns, this inversely-proportional measurement scale should sound familiar.

The table at the end of this section equates gauge with inch diameter, circular mils, and square inches for solid wire. The larger sizes of wire reach an end of the common gauge scale (which naturally tops out at a value of 1), and are represented by a series of zeros. "3/0" is another way to represent "000," and is pronounced "triple-ought." Again, those acquainted with shotguns should recognize the terminology, strange as it may sound. To make matters even more confusing, there is more than one gauge "standard" in use around the world. For electrical conductor sizing, the *American Wire Gauge* (AWG), also known as the *Brown and Sharpe* (B&S) gauge, is the measurement system of choice. In Canada and Great Britain, the *British Standard Wire Gauge* (SWG) is the legal measurement system for electrical conductors. Other wire gauge systems exist in the world for classifying wire diameter, such as the *Stubs* steel wire gauge and the *Steel Music Wire Gauge* (MWG), but these measurement systems apply to non-electrical wire use.

The American Wire Gauge (AWG) measurement system, despite its oddities, was designed with a purpose: for every three steps in the gauge scale, wire area (and weight per unit length) approximately doubles. This is a handy rule to remember when making rough wire size estimations!

For *very* large wire sizes (fatter than 4/0), the wire gauge system is typically abandoned for cross-sectional area measurement in thousands of circular mils (MCM), borrowing the old

Roman numeral "M" to denote a multiple of "thousand" in front of "CM" for "circular mils." The following table of wire sizes does not show any sizes bigger than 4/0 gauge, because *solid* copper wire becomes impractical to handle at those sizes. Stranded wire construction is favored, instead.

WIRE TABLE FOR SOLID, ROUND COPPER CONDUCTORS

Size AWG	Diameter inches	Cross-sectional area cir. mils	sq. inches	Weight lb/1000 ft
4/0	0.4600	211,600	0.1662	640.5
3/0	0.4096	167,800	0.1318	507.9
2/0	0.3648	133,100	0.1045	402.8
1/0	0.3249	105,500	0.08289	319.5
1	0.2893	83,690	0.06573	253.5
2	0.2576	66,370	0.05213	200.9
3	0.2294	52,630	0.04134	159.3
4	0.2043	41,740	0.03278	126.4
5	0.1819	33,100	0.02600	100.2
6	0.1620	26,250	0.02062	79.46
7	0.1443	20,820	0.01635	63.02
8	0.1285	16,510	0.01297	49.97
9	0.1144	13,090	0.01028	39.63
10	0.1019	10,380	0.008155	31.43
11	0.09074	8,234	0.006467	24.92
12	0.08081	6,530	0.005129	19.77
13	0.07196	5,178	0.004067	15.68
14	0.06408	4,107	0.003225	12.43
15	0.05707	3,257	0.002558	9.858
16	0.05082	2,583	0.002028	7.818
17	0.04526	2,048	0.001609	6.200
18	0.04030	1,624	0.001276	4.917
19	0.03589	1,288	0.001012	3.899
20	0.03196	1,022	0.0008023	3.092
21	0.02846	810.1	0.0006363	2.452
22	0.02535	642.5	0.0005046	1.945
23	0.02257	509.5	0.0004001	1.542
24	0.02010	404.0	0.0003173	1.233
25	0.01790	320.4	0.0002517	0.9699
26	0.01594	254.1	0.0001996	0.7692
27	0.01420	201.5	0.0001583	0.6100
28	0.01264	159.8	0.0001255	0.4837
29	0.01126	126.7	0.00009954	0.3836
30	0.01003	100.5	0.00007894	0.3042
31	0.008928	79.70	0.00006260	0.2413
32	0.007950	63.21	0.00004964	0.1913

```
33  ------- 0.007080 ------- 50.13 ----- 0.00003937 ---- 0.1517
34  ------- 0.006305 ------- 39.75 ----- 0.00003122 ---- 0.1203
35  ------- 0.005615 ------- 31.52 ----- 0.00002476 --- 0.09542
36  ------- 0.005000 ------- 25.00 ----- 0.00001963 --- 0.07567
37  ------- 0.004453 ------- 19.83 ----- 0.00001557 --- 0.06001
38  ------- 0.003965 ------- 15.72 ----- 0.00001235 --- 0.04759
39  ------- 0.003531 ------- 12.47 ---- 0.000009793 --- 0.03774
40  ------- 0.003145 ------- 9.888 ---- 0.000007766 --- 0.02993
41  ------- 0.002800 ------- 7.842 ---- 0.000006159 --- 0.02374
42  ------- 0.002494 ------- 6.219 ---- 0.000004884 --- 0.01882
43  ------- 0.002221 ------- 4.932 ---- 0.000003873 --- 0.01493
44  ------- 0.001978 ------- 3.911 ---- 0.000003072 --- 0.01184
```

For some high-current applications, conductor sizes beyond the practical size limit of round wire are required. In these instances, thick bars of solid metal called *busbars* are used as conductors. Busbars are usually made of copper or aluminum, and are most often uninsulated. They are physically supported away from whatever framework or structure is holding them by insulator standoff mounts. Although a square or rectangular cross-section is very common for busbar shape, other shapes are used as well. Cross-sectional area for busbars is typically rated in terms of circular mils (even for square and rectangular bars!), most likely for the convenience of being able to directly equate busbar size with round wire.

- **REVIEW:**
- Electrons flow through large-diameter wires easier than small-diameter wires, due to the greater cross-sectional area they have in which to move.
- Rather than measure small wire sizes in inches, the unit of ”mil” (1/1000 of an inch) is often employed.
- The cross-sectional area of a wire can be expressed in terms of square units (square inches or square mils), circular mils, or ”gauge” scale.
- Calculating square-unit wire area for a circular wire involves the circle area formula:
- $A = \pi r^2$ *(Square units)*
- Calculating circular-mil wire area for a circular wire is much simpler, due to the fact that the unit of ”circular mil” was sized just for this purpose: to eliminate the ”pi” and the d/2 (radius) factors in the formula.
- $A = d^2$ *(Circular units)*
- There are π (3.1416) square mils for every 4 circular mils.
- The *gauge* system of wire sizing is based on whole numbers, larger numbers representing smaller-area wires and vice versa. Wires thicker than 1 gauge are represented by zeros: 0, 00, 000, and 0000 (spoken ”single-ought,” ”double-ought,” ”triple-ought,” and ”quadruple-ought.”

- Very large wire sizes are rated in thousands of circular mils (MCM's), typical for busbars and wire sizes beyond 4/0.
- *Busbars* are solid bars of copper or aluminum used in high-current circuit construction. Connections made to busbars are usually welded or bolted, and the busbars are often bare (uninsulated), supported away from metal frames through the use of insulating standoffs.

12.3 Conductor ampacity

The smaller the wire, the greater the resistance for any given length, all other factors being equal. A wire with greater resistance will dissipate a greater amount of heat energy for any given amount of current, the power being equal to $P=I^2R$.

Dissipated power in a resistance manifests itself in the form of heat, and excessive heat can be damaging to a wire (not to mention objects near the wire!), especially considering the fact that most wires are insulated with a plastic or rubber coating, which can melt and burn. Thin wires will, therefore, tolerate less current than thick wires, all other factors being equal. A conductor's current-carrying limit is known as its *ampacity*.

Primarily for reasons of safety, certain standards for electrical wiring have been established within the United States, and are specified in the National Electrical Code (NEC). Typical NEC wire ampacity tables will show allowable maximum currents for different sizes and applications of wire. Though the melting point of copper theoretically imposes a limit on wire ampacity, the materials commonly employed for insulating conductors melt at temperatures far below the melting point of copper, and so practical ampacity ratings are based on the thermal limits *of the insulation*. Voltage dropped as a result of excessive wire resistance is also a factor in sizing conductors for their use in circuits, but this consideration is better assessed through more complex means (which we will cover in this chapter). A table derived from an NEC listing is shown for example:

```
COPPER CONDUCTOR AMPACITIES, IN FREE AIR AT 30 DEGREES C
=========================================================
INSULATION   RUW, T        THW, THWN       FEP, FEPB
TYPE:          TW             RUH          THHN, XHHW
=========================================================
Size    Current Rating   Current Rating   Current Rating
AWG     @ 60 degrees C   @ 75 degrees C   @ 90 degrees C
=========================================================
20 -------- *9 ---------------------------- *12.5
18 -------- *13 ---------------------------- 18
16 -------- *18 ---------------------------- 24
14 --------- 25 ------------- 30 ------------- 35
12 --------- 30 ------------- 35 ------------- 40
10 --------- 40 ------------- 50 ------------- 55
8 ---------- 60 ------------- 70 ------------- 80
6 ---------- 80 ------------- 95 ------------ 105
4 --------- 105 ------------ 125 ------------ 140
```

```
2 --------- 140 ------------ 170 ------------ 190
1 --------- 165 ------------ 195 ------------ 220
1/0 ------- 195 ------------ 230 ------------ 260
2/0 ------- 225 ------------ 265 ------------ 300
3/0 ------- 260 ------------ 310 ------------ 350
4/0 ------- 300 ------------ 360 ------------ 405

* = estimated values; normally, these small wire sizes
are not manufactured with these insulation types
```

Notice the substantial ampacity differences between same-size wires with different types of insulation. This is due, again, to the thermal limits (60^o, 75^o, 90^o) of each type of insulation material.

These ampacity ratings are given for copper conductors in ”free air” (maximum typical air circulation), as opposed to wires placed in conduit or wire trays. As you will notice, the table fails to specify ampacities for small wire sizes. This is because the NEC concerns itself primarily with power wiring (large currents, big wires) rather than with wires common to low-current electronic work.

There is meaning in the letter sequences used to identify conductor types, and these letters usually refer to properties of the conductor’s insulating layer(s). Some of these letters symbolize individual properties of the wire while others are simply abbreviations. For example, the letter ”T” by itself means ”thermoplastic” as an insulation material, as in ”TW” or ”THHN.” However, the three-letter combination ”MTW” is an abbreviation for *Machine Tool Wire*, a type of wire whose insulation is made to be flexible for use in machines experiencing significant motion or vibration.

```
INSULATION MATERIAL
===================
C = Cotton
FEP = Fluorinated Ethylene Propylene
MI = Mineral (magnesium oxide)
PFA = Perfluoroalkoxy
R = Rubber (sometimes Neoprene)
S = Silicone "rubber"
SA = Silicone-asbestos
T = Thermoplastic
TA = Thermoplastic-asbestos
TFE = Polytetrafluoroethylene ("Teflon")
X = Cross-linked synthetic polymer
Z = Modified ethylene tetrafluoroethylene

HEAT RATING
===========
H = 75 degrees Celsius
HH = 90 degrees Celsius
```

```
OUTER COVERING ("JACKET")
=========================
N = Nylon

SPECIAL SERVICE CONDITIONS
==========================
U = Underground
W = Wet
-2 = 90 degrees Celsius and wet
```

Therefore, a "THWN" conductor has **T**hermoplastic insulation, is **H**eat resistant to 75^o Celsius, is rated for **W**et conditions, and comes with a **N**ylon outer jacketing.

Letter codes like these are only used for general-purpose wires such as those used in households and businesses. For high-power applications and/or severe service conditions, the complexity of conductor technology defies classification according to a few letter codes. Overhead power line conductors are typically bare metal, suspended from towers by glass, porcelain, or ceramic mounts known as insulators. Even so, the actual construction of the wire to withstand physical forces both static (dead weight) and dynamic (wind) loading can be complex, with multiple layers and different types of metals wound together to form a single conductor. Large, underground power conductors are sometimes insulated by paper, then enclosed in a steel pipe filled with pressurized nitrogen or oil to prevent water intrusion. Such conductors require support equipment to maintain fluid pressure throughout the pipe.

Other insulating materials find use in small-scale applications. For instance, the small-diameter wire used to make electromagnets (coils producing a magnetic field from the flow of electrons) are often insulated with a thin layer of enamel. The enamel is an excellent insulating material and is very thin, allowing many "turns" of wire to be wound in a small space.

- **REVIEW:**
- Wire resistance creates heat in operating circuits. This heat is a potential fire ignition hazard.
- Skinny wires have a lower allowable current ("ampacity") than fat wires, due to their greater resistance per unit length, and consequently greater heat generation per unit current.
- The National Electrical Code (NEC) specifies ampacities for power wiring based on allowable insulation temperature and wire application.

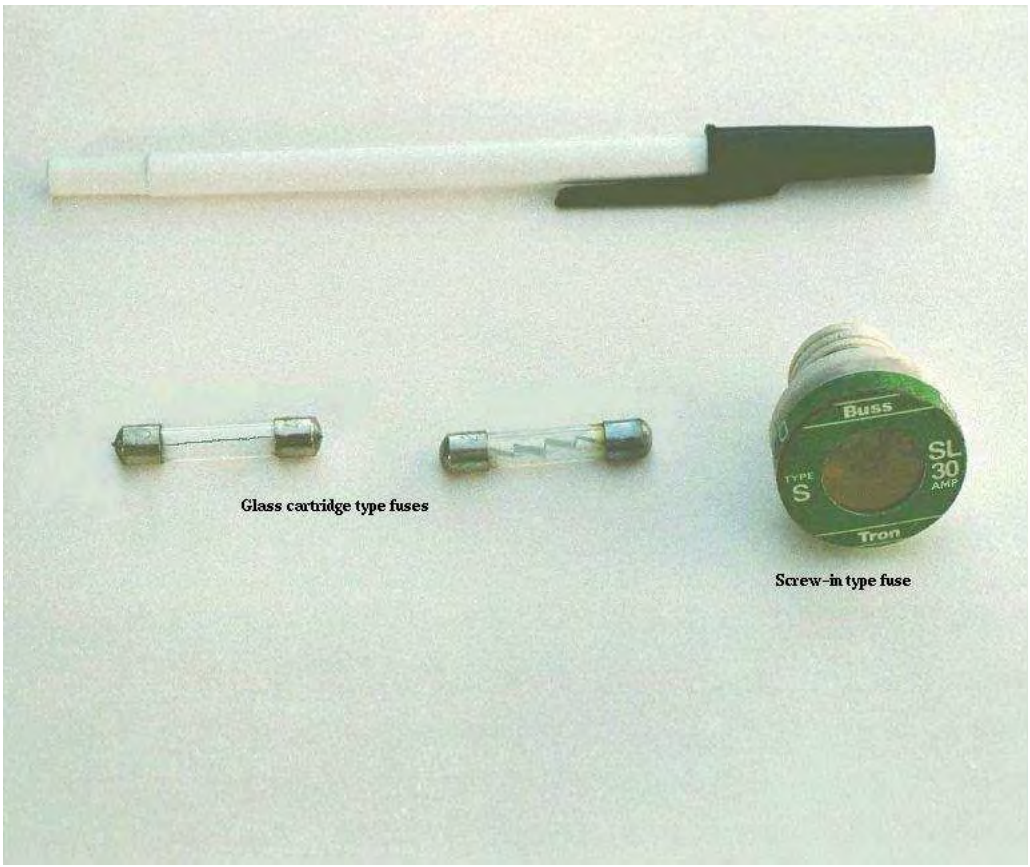
12.4 Fuses

Normally, the ampacity rating of a conductor is a circuit design limit never to be intentionally exceeded, but there is an application where ampacity exceedence is expected: in the case of *fuses*.

A fuse is nothing more than a short length of wire designed to melt and separate in the event of excessive current. Fuses are always connected in series with the component(s) to be

protected from overcurrent, so that when the fuse *blows* (opens) it will open the entire circuit and stop current through the component(s). A fuse connected in one branch of a parallel circuit, of course, would not affect current through any of the other branches.

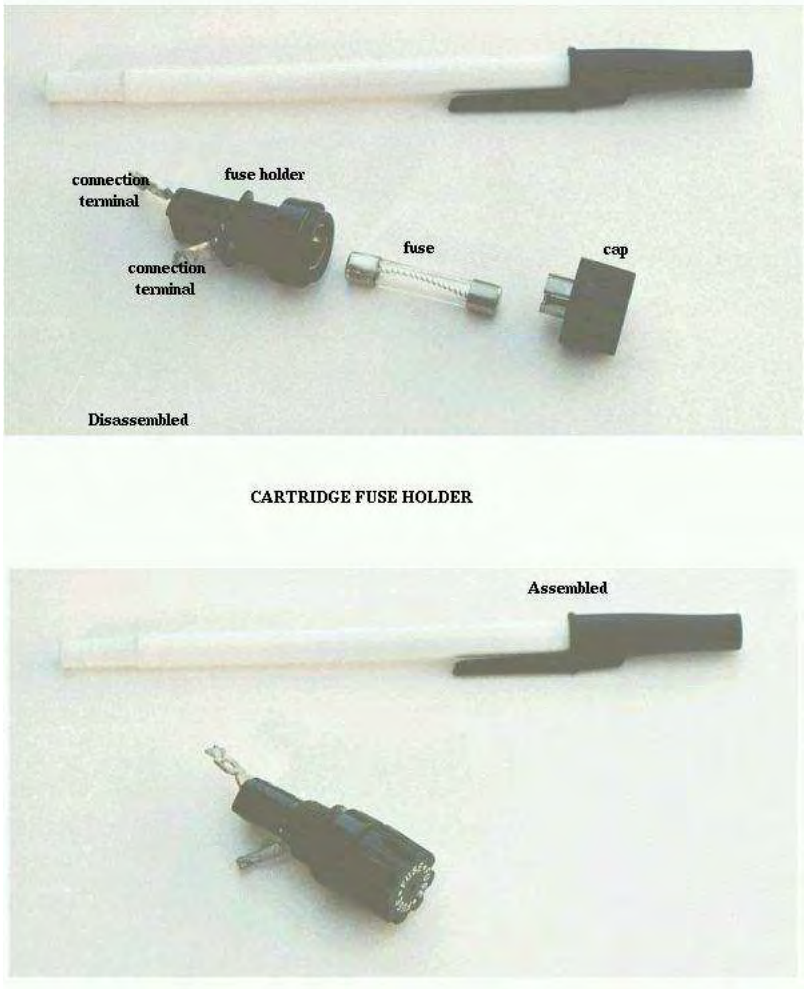
Normally, the thin piece of fuse wire is contained within a safety sheath to minimize hazards of arc blast if the wire burns open with violent force, as can happen in the case of severe overcurrents. In the case of small automotive fuses, the sheath is transparent so that the fusible element can be visually inspected. Residential wiring used to commonly employ screw-in fuses with glass bodies and a thin, narrow metal foil strip in the middle. A photograph showing both types of fuses is shown here:



Cartridge type fuses are popular in automotive applications, and in industrial applications when constructed with sheath materials other than glass. Because fuses are designed to "fail" open when their current rating is exceeded, they are typically designed to be replaced easily in a circuit. This means they will be inserted into some type of holder rather than being directly soldered or bolted to the circuit conductors. The following is a photograph showing a couple of glass cartridge fuses in a multi-fuse holder:

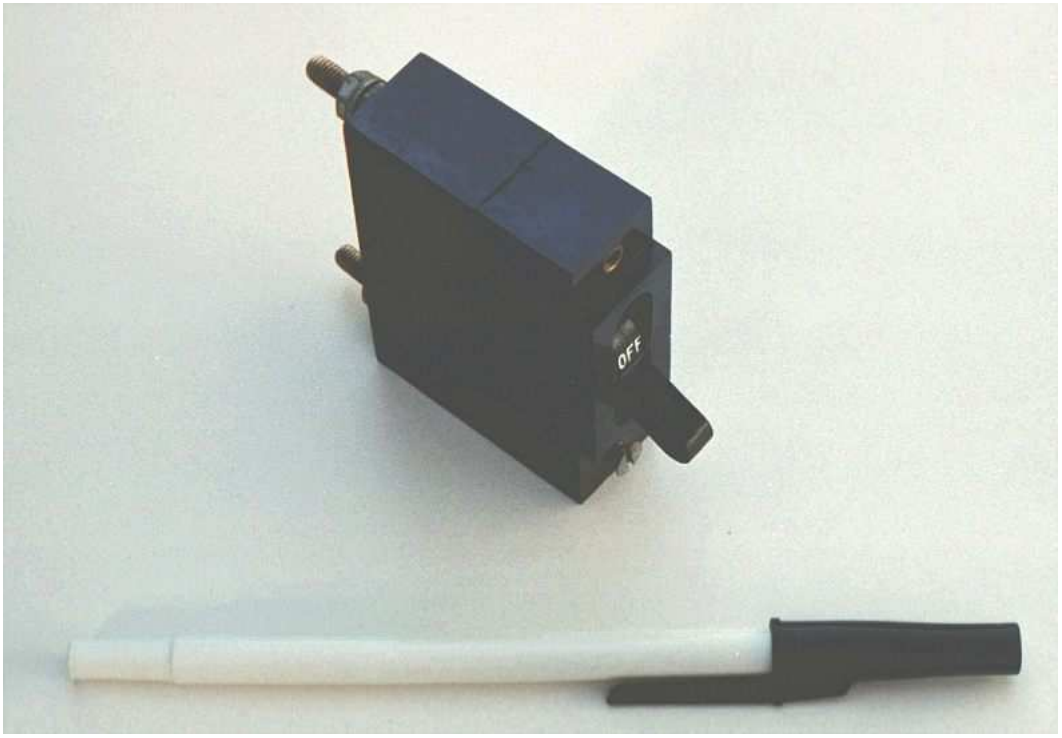
The fuses are held by spring metal clips, the clips themselves being permanently connected to the circuit conductors. The base material of the fuse holder (or *fuse block* as they are sometimes called) is chosen to be a good insulator.

Another type of fuse holder for cartridge-type fuses is commonly used for installation in equipment control panels, where it is desirable to conceal all electrical contact points from human contact. Unlike the fuse block just shown, where all the metal clips are openly exposed, this type of fuse holder completely encloses the fuse in an insulating housing:



The most common device in use for overcurrent protection in high-current circuits today is the *circuit breaker*. Circuit breakers are specially designed switches that automatically open to stop current in the event of an overcurrent condition. Small circuit breakers, such as those used in residential, commercial and light industrial service are thermally operated. They contain a *bimetallic strip* (a thin strip of two metals bonded back-to-back) carrying circuit current, which bends when heated. When enough force is generated by the bimetallic strip (due to overcurrent heating of the strip), the trip mechanism is actuated and the breaker will open. Larger circuit breakers are automatically actuated by the strength of the magnetic field produced by current-carrying conductors within the breaker, or can be triggered to trip by external devices monitoring the circuit current (those devices being called *protective relays*).

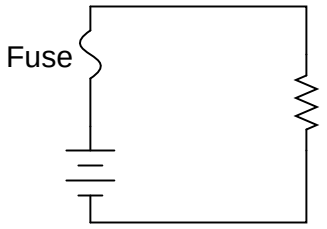
Because circuit breakers don't fail when subjected to overcurrent conditions – rather, they merely open and can be re-closed by moving a lever – they are more likely to be found connected to a circuit in a more permanent manner than fuses. A photograph of a small circuit breaker is shown here:



From outside appearances, it looks like nothing more than a switch. Indeed, it could be used as such. However, its true function is to operate as an overcurrent protection device.

It should be noted that some automobiles use inexpensive devices known as *fusible links* for overcurrent protection in the battery charging circuit, due to the expense of a properly-rated fuse and holder. A fusible link is a primitive fuse, being nothing more than a short piece of rubber-insulated wire designed to melt open in the event of overcurrent, with no hard sheathing of any kind. Such crude and potentially dangerous devices are never used in industry or even residential power use, mainly due to the greater voltage and current levels encountered. As far as this author is concerned, their application even in automotive circuits is questionable.

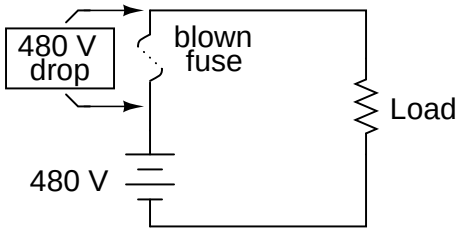
The electrical schematic drawing symbol for a fuse is an S-shaped curve:



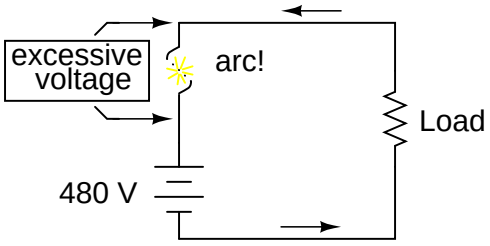
Fuses are primarily rated, as one might expect, in the unit for current: amps. Although their operation depends on the self-generation of heat under conditions of excessive current by means of the fuse's own electrical resistance, they are engineered to contribute a negligible amount of extra resistance to the circuits they protect. This is largely accomplished by making

the fuse wire as short as is practically possible. Just as a normal wire's ampacity is not related to its length (10-gauge solid copper wire will handle 40 amps of current in free air, regardless of how long or short of a piece it is), a fuse wire of certain material and gauge will blow at a certain current no matter how long it is. Since length is not a factor in current rating, the shorter it can be made, the less resistance it will have end-to-end.

However, the fuse designer also has to consider what happens after a fuse blows: the melted ends of the once-continuous wire will be separated by an air gap, with full supply voltage between the ends. If the fuse isn't made long enough on a high-voltage circuit, a spark may be able to jump from one of the melted wire ends to the other, completing the circuit again:



When the fuse "blows," full supply voltage will be dropped across it and there will be no current in the circuit.



If the voltage across the blown fuse is high enough, a spark may jump the gap, allowing some current in the circuit. THIS WOULD NOT BE GOOD!!!

Consequently, fuses are rated in terms of their voltage capacity as well as the current level at which they will blow.

Some large industrial fuses have replaceable wire elements, to reduce the expense. The body of the fuse is an opaque, reusable cartridge, shielding the fuse wire from exposure and shielding surrounding objects from the fuse wire.

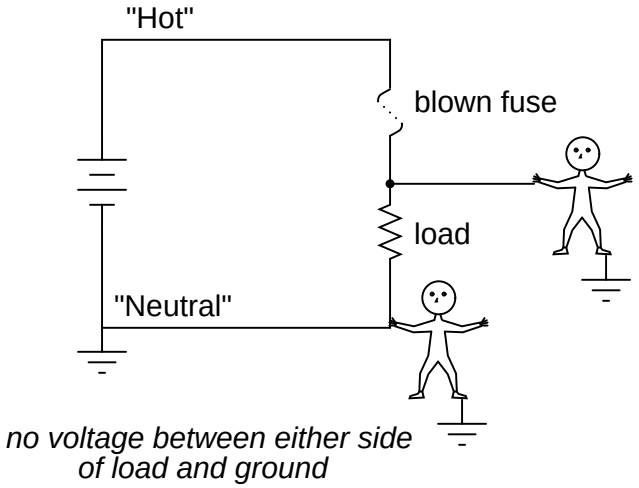
There's more to the current rating of a fuse than a single number. If a current of 35 amps is sent through a 30 amp fuse, it may blow suddenly or delay before blowing, depending on other aspects of its design. Some fuses are intended to blow very fast, while others are designed for more modest "opening" times, or even for a delayed action depending on the application. The

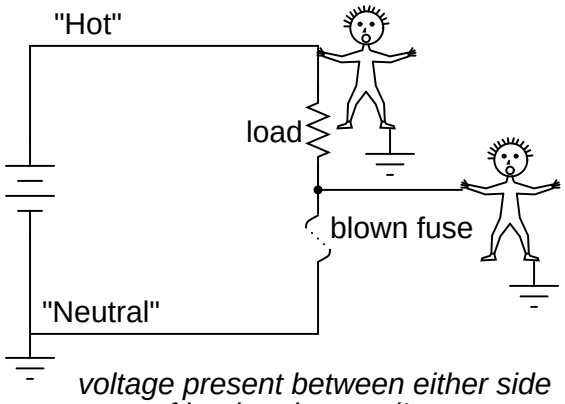
latter fuses are sometimes called *slow-blow* fuses due to their intentional time-delay characteristics.

A classic example of a slow-blow fuse application is in electric motor protection, where *inrush* currents of up to ten times normal operating current are commonly experienced every time the motor is started from a dead stop. If fast-blowing fuses were to be used in an application like this, the motor could never get started because the normal inrush current levels would blow the fuse(s) immediately! The design of a slow-blow fuse is such that the fuse element has more mass (but no more ampacity) than an equivalent fast-blow fuse, meaning that it will heat up slower (but to the same ultimate temperature) for any given amount of current.

On the other end of the fuse action spectrum, there are so-called *semiconductor fuses* designed to open very quickly in the event of an overcurrent condition. Semiconductor devices such as transistors tend to be especially intolerant of overcurrent conditions, and as such require fast-acting protection against overcurrents in high-power applications.

Fuses are always supposed to be placed on the ”hot” side of the load in systems that are grounded. The intent of this is for the load to be completely de-energized in all respects after the fuse opens. To see the difference between fusing the ”hot” side versus the ”neutral” side of a load, compare these two circuits:





In either case, the fuse successfully interrupted current to the load, but the lower circuit fails to interrupt potentially dangerous voltage from either side of the load to ground, where a person might be standing. The first circuit design is much safer.

As it was said before, fuses are not the only type of overcurrent protection device in use. Switch-like devices called circuit breakers are often (and more commonly) used to open circuits with excessive current, their popularity due to the fact that they don't destroy themselves in the process of breaking the circuit as fuses do. In any case, though, placement of the overcurrent protection device in a circuit will follow the same general guidelines listed above: namely, to "fuse" the side of the power supply *not* connected to ground.

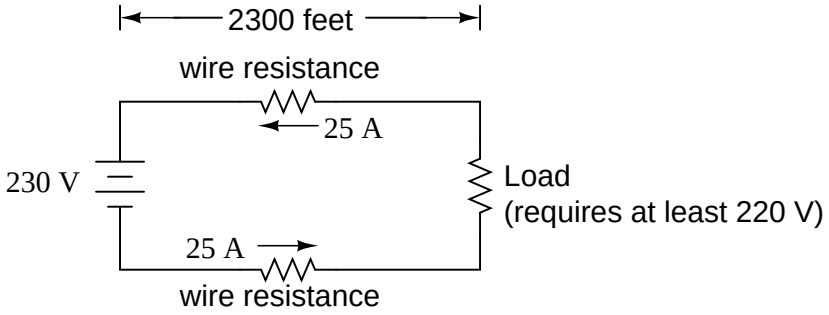
Although overcurrent protection placement in a circuit may determine the relative shock hazard of that circuit under various conditions, it must be understood that such devices were never intended to guard against electric shock. Neither fuses nor circuit breakers were designed to open in the event of a person getting shocked; rather, they are intended to open only under conditions of potential conductor overheating. Overcurrent devices primarily protect the conductors of a circuit from overtemperature damage (and the fire hazards associated with overly hot conductors), and secondarily protect specific pieces of equipment such as loads and generators (some fast-acting fuses are designed to protect electronic devices particularly susceptible to current surges). Since the current levels necessary for electric shock or electrocution are much lower than the normal current levels of common power loads, a condition of overcurrent is not indicative of shock occurring. There are other devices designed to detect certain shock conditions (ground-fault detectors being the most popular), but these devices strictly serve that one purpose and are uninvolved with protection of the conductors against overheating.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *fuse* is a small, thin conductor designed to melt and separate into two pieces for the purpose of breaking a circuit in the event of excessive current.
- A *circuit breaker* is a specially designed switch that automatically opens to interrupt circuit current in the event of an overcurrent condition. They can be "tripped" (opened) thermally, by magnetic fields, or by external devices called "protective relays," depending on the design of breaker, its size, and the application.

- Fuses are primarily rated in terms of maximum current, but are also rated in terms of how much voltage drop they will safely withstand after interrupting a circuit.
- Fuses can be designed to blow fast, slow, or anywhere in between for the same maximum level of current.
- The best place to install a fuse in a grounded power system is on the ungrounded conductor path to the load. That way, when the fuse blows there will only be the grounded (safe) conductor still connected to the load, making it safer for people to be around.

12.5 Specific resistance

Conductor ampacity rating is a crude assessment of resistance based on the potential for current to create a fire hazard. However, we may come across situations where the voltage drop created by wire resistance in a circuit poses concerns other than fire avoidance. For instance, we may be designing a circuit where voltage across a component is critical, and must not fall below a certain limit. If this is the case, the voltage drops resulting from wire resistance may cause an engineering problem while being well within safe (fire) limits of ampacity:



If the load in the above circuit will not tolerate less than 220 volts, given a source voltage of 230 volts, then we'd better be sure that the wiring doesn't drop more than 10 volts along the way. Counting both the supply and return conductors of this circuit, this leaves a maximum tolerable drop of 5 volts along the length of each wire. Using Ohm's Law (R=E/I), we can determine the maximum allowable resistance for each piece of wire:

$$R = \frac{E}{I}$$

$$R = \frac{5\ V}{25\ A}$$

$$R = 0.2\ \Omega$$

We know that the wire length is 2300 feet for each piece of wire, but how do we determine the amount of resistance for a specific size and length of wire? To do that, we need another formula:

$$R = \rho \frac{l}{A}$$

This formula relates the resistance of a conductor with its specific resistance (the Greek letter "rho" (ρ), which looks similar to a lower-case letter "p"), its length ("l"), and its cross-sectional area ("A"). Notice that with the length variable on the top of the fraction, the resistance value increases as the length increases (analogy: it is more difficult to force liquid through a long pipe than a short one), and decreases as cross-sectional area increases (analogy: liquid flows easier through a fat pipe than through a skinny one). Specific resistance is a constant for the type of conductor material being calculated.

The specific resistances of several conductive materials can be found in the following table. We find copper near the bottom of the table, second only to silver in having low specific resistance (good conductivity):

SPECIFIC RESISTANCE AT 20 DEGREES CELSIUS

Material	Element/Alloy	(ohm-cmil/ft)	(microohm-cm)
Nichrome	Alloy	675	112.2
Nichrome V	Alloy	650	108.1
Manganin	Alloy	290	48.21
Constantan	Alloy	272.97	45.38
Steel*	Alloy	100	16.62
Platinum	Element	63.16	10.5
Iron	Element	57.81	9.61
Nickel	Element	41.69	6.93
Zinc	Element	35.49	5.90
Molybdenum	Element	32.12	5.34
Tungsten	Element	31.76	5.28
Aluminum	Element	15.94	2.650
Gold	Element	13.32	2.214
Copper	Element	10.09	1.678
Silver	Element	9.546	1.587

* = Steel alloy at 99.5 percent iron, 0.5 percent carbon

Notice that the figures for specific resistance in the above table are given in the very strange unit of "ohms-cmil/ft" (Ω-cmil/ft), This unit indicates what units we are expected to use in the resistance formula (R=ρl/A). In this case, these figures for specific resistance are intended to be used when length is measured in feet and cross-sectional area is measured in circular mils.

The metric unit for specific resistance is the ohm-meter (Ω-m), or ohm-centimeter (Ω-cm), with 1.66243 x 10^{-9} Ω-meters per Ω-cmil/ft (1.66243 x 10^{-7} Ω-cm per Ω-cmil/ft). In the Ω-cm column of the table, the figures are actually scaled as $\mu\Omega$-cm due to their very small magnitudes. For example, iron is listed as 9.61 $\mu\Omega$-cm, which could be represented as 9.61 x 10^{-6} Ω-cm.

When using the unit of Ω-meter for specific resistance in the R=ρl/A formula, the length needs to be in meters and the area in square meters. When using the unit of Ω-centimeter

(Ω-cm) in the same formula, the length needs to be in centimeters and the area in square centimeters.

All these units for specific resistance are valid for any material (Ω-cmil/ft, Ω-m, or Ω-cm). One might prefer to use Ω-cmil/ft, however, when dealing with round wire where the cross-sectional area is already known in circular mils. Conversely, when dealing with odd-shaped busbar or custom busbar cut out of metal stock, where only the linear dimensions of length, width, and height are known, the specific resistance units of Ω-meter or Ω-cm may be more appropriate.

Going back to our example circuit, we were looking for wire that had 0.2 Ω or less of resistance over a length of 2300 feet. Assuming that we're going to use copper wire (the most common type of electrical wire manufactured), we can set up our formula as such:

$$R = \rho \frac{l}{A}$$

. . . solving for unknown area A*. . .*

$$A = \rho \frac{l}{R}$$

$$A = (10.09\ \Omega\text{-cmil/ft}) \left(\frac{2300\ \text{feet}}{0.2\ \Omega} \right)$$

$$A = 116{,}035\ \text{cmils}$$

Algebraically solving for A, we get a value of 116,035 circular mils. Referencing our solid wire size table, we find that "double-ought" (2/0) wire with 133,100 cmils is adequate, whereas the next lower size, "single-ought" (1/0), at 105,500 cmils is too small. Bear in mind that our circuit current is a modest 25 amps. According to our ampacity table for copper wire in free air, 14 gauge wire would have sufficed (as far as *not* starting a fire is concerned). However, from the standpoint of voltage drop, 14 gauge wire would have been very unacceptable.

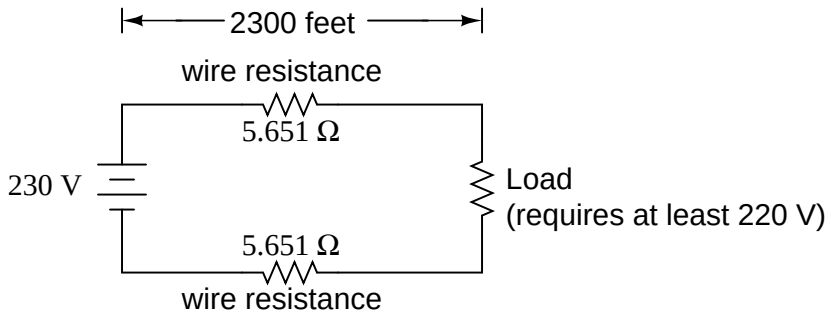
Just for fun, let's see what 14 gauge wire would have done to our power circuit's performance. Looking at our wire size table, we find that 14 gauge wire has a cross-sectional area of 4,107 circular mils. If we're still using copper as a wire material (a good choice, unless we're *really* rich and can afford 4600 feet of 14 gauge silver wire!), then our specific resistance will still be 10.09 Ω-cmil/ft:

$$R = \rho \frac{l}{A}$$

$$R = (10.09\ \Omega\text{-cmil/ft}) \left(\frac{2300\ \text{feet}}{4107\ \text{cmil}} \right)$$

$$R = 5.651\ \Omega$$

Remember that this is 5.651 Ω per 2300 feet of 14-gauge copper wire, and that we have two runs of 2300 feet in the entire circuit, so *each* wire piece in the circuit has 5.651 Ω of resistance:



Our total circuit wire resistance is 2 times 5.651, or 11.301 Ω. Unfortunately, this is *far* too much resistance to allow 25 amps of current with a source voltage of 230 volts. Even if our load resistance was 0 Ω, our wiring resistance of 11.301 Ω would restrict the circuit current to a mere 20.352 amps! As you can see, a "small" amount of wire resistance can make a big difference in circuit performance, especially in power circuits where the currents are much higher than typically encountered in electronic circuits.

Let's do an example resistance problem for a piece of custom-cut busbar. Suppose we have a piece of solid aluminum bar, 4 centimeters wide by 3 centimeters tall by 125 centimeters long, and we wish to figure the end-to-end resistance along the long dimension (125 cm). First, we would need to determine the cross-sectional area of the bar:

Area = Width x Height

$A = (4\text{ cm})(3\text{ cm})$

$A = 12$ square cm

We also need to know the specific resistance of aluminum, in the unit proper for this application (Ω-cm). From our table of specific resistances, we see that this is 2.65 x 10^{-6} Ω-cm. Setting up our R=ρl/A formula, we have:

$$R = \rho \frac{l}{A}$$

$$R = (2.65 \times 10^{-6}\ \Omega\text{-cm}) \left(\frac{125\text{ cm}}{12\text{ cm}^2}\right)$$

$R = 27.604\ \mu\Omega$

As you can see, the sheer thickness of a busbar makes for *very* low resistances compared to that of standard wire sizes, even when using a material with a greater specific resistance.

The procedure for determining busbar resistance is not fundamentally different than for determining round wire resistance. We just need to make sure that cross-sectional area is calculated properly and that all the units correspond to each other as they should.

- **REVIEW:**
- Conductor resistance increases with increased length and decreases with increased cross-sectional area, all other factors being equal.

- *Specific Resistance* ("ρ") is a property of any conductive material, a figure used to determine the end-to-end resistance of a conductor given length and area in this formula: R = ρl/A
- Specific resistance for materials are given in units of Ω-cmil/ft or Ω-meters (metric). Conversion factor between these two units is 1.66243 x 10^{-9} Ω-meters per Ω-cmil/ft, or 1.66243 x 10^{-7} Ω-cm per Ω-cmil/ft.
- If wiring voltage drop in a circuit is critical, exact resistance calculations for the wires must be made before wire size is chosen.

12.6 Temperature coefficient of resistance

You might have noticed on the table for specific resistances that all figures were specified at a temperature of 20^o Celsius. If you suspected that this meant specific resistance of a material may change with temperature, you were right!

Resistance values for conductors at any temperature other than the standard temperature (usually specified at 20 Celsius) on the specific resistance table must be determined through yet another formula:

$$R = R_{ref} [1 + \alpha(T - T_{ref})]$$

Where,

R = Conductor resistance at temperature "T"

R_{ref} = Conductor resistance at reference temperature T_{ref}, usually 20^o C, but sometimes 0^o C.

α = Temperature coefficient of resistance for the conductor material.

T = Conductor temperature in degrees Celcius.

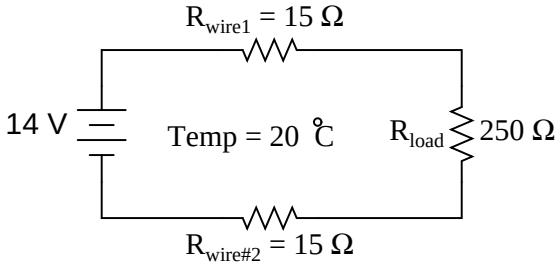
T_{ref} = Reference temperature that α is specified at for the conductor material.

The "alpha" (α) constant is known as the *temperature coefficient of resistance*, and symbolizes the resistance change factor per degree of temperature change. Just as all materials have a certain specific resistance (at 20^o C), they also *change* resistance according to temperature by certain amounts. For pure metals, this coefficient is a positive number, meaning that resistance *increases* with increasing temperature. For the elements carbon, silicon, and germanium, this coefficient is a negative number, meaning that resistance *decreases* with increasing temperature. For some metal alloys, the temperature coefficient of resistance is very close to zero, meaning that the resistance hardly changes at all with variations in temperature (a good property if you want to build a precision resistor out of metal wire!). The following table gives the temperature coefficients of resistance for several common metals, both pure and alloy:

TEMPERATURE COEFFICIENTS OF RESISTANCE, AT 20 DEGREES C

```
Material     Element/Alloy    "alpha" per degree Celsius
============================================================
Nickel -------- Element --------------- 0.005866
Iron ---------- Element --------------- 0.005671
Molybdenum ---- Element --------------- 0.004579
Tungsten ------ Element --------------- 0.004403
Aluminum ------ Element --------------- 0.004308
Copper -------- Element --------------- 0.004041
Silver -------- Element --------------- 0.003819
Platinum ------ Element --------------- 0.003729
Gold ---------- Element --------------- 0.003715
Zinc ---------- Element --------------- 0.003847
Steel* --------- Alloy ---------------- 0.003
Nichrome ------- Alloy ---------------- 0.00017
Nichrome V ----- Alloy ---------------- 0.00013
Manganin ------- Alloy ------------ +/- 0.000015
Constantan ----- Alloy --------------- -0.000074


* = Steel alloy at 99.5 percent iron, 0.5 percent carbon
```

Let's take a look at an example circuit to see how temperature can affect wire resistance, and consequently circuit performance:



This circuit has a total wire resistance (wire 1 + wire 2) of 30 Ω at standard temperature. Setting up a table of voltage, current, and resistance values we get:

	$Wire_1$	$Wire_2$	Load	Total	
E	0.75	0.75	12.5	14	Volts
I	50 m	50 m	50 m	50 m	Amps
R	15	15	250	280	Ohms

At 20^o Celsius, we get 12.5 volts across the load and a total of 1.5 volts (0.75 + 0.75) dropped across the wire resistance. If the temperature were to rise to 35^o Celsius, we could easily determine the change of resistance for each piece of wire. Assuming the use of copper wire (α = 0.004041) we get:

$R = R_{ref} [1 + \alpha(T - T_{ref})]$

$R = (15\ \Omega)[1 + 0.004041(35^{o} - 20^{o})]$

$R = 15.909\ \Omega$

Recalculating our circuit values, we see what changes this increase in temperature will bring:

	$Wire_1$	$Wire_2$	Load	Total	
E	0.79	0.79	12.42	14	Volts
I	49.677m	49.677m	49.677m	49.677m	Amps
R	15.909	15.909	250	281.82	Ohms

As you can see, voltage across the load went down (from 12.5 volts to 12.42 volts) and voltage drop across the wires went up (from 0.75 volts to 0.79 volts) as a result of the temperature increasing. Though the changes may seem small, they can be significant for power lines stretching miles between power plants and substations, substations and loads. In fact, power utility companies often have to take line resistance changes resulting from seasonal temperature variations into account when calculating allowable system loading.

- **REVIEW:**

- Most conductive materials change specific resistance with changes in temperature. This is why figures of specific resistance are always specified at a standard temperature (usually 20^{o} or 25^{o} Celsius).

- The resistance-change factor per degree Celsius of temperature change is called the *temperature coefficient of resistance*. This factor is represented by the Greek lower-case letter "alpha" (α).

- A positive coefficient for a material means that its resistance increases with an increase in temperature. Pure metals typically have positive temperature coefficients of resistance. Coefficients approaching zero can be obtained by alloying certain metals.

- A negative coefficient for a material means that its resistance decreases with an increase in temperature. Semiconductor materials (carbon, silicon, germanium) typically have negative temperature coefficients of resistance.

- The formula used to determine the resistance of a conductor at some temperature other than what is specified in a resistance table is as follows:

$$R = R_{ref} [1 + \alpha(T - T_{ref})]$$

Where,

R = Conductor resistance at temperature "T"

R_{ref} = Conductor resistance at reference temperature T_{ref}, usually 20^o C, but sometimes 0^o C.

α = Temperature coefficient of resistance for the conductor material.

T = Conductor temperature in degrees Celcius.

T_{ref} = Reference temperature that α is specified at for the conductor material.

12.7 Superconductivity

Conductors lose all of their electrical resistance when cooled to super-low temperatures (near absolute zero, about -273^o Celsius). It must be understood that superconductivity is not merely an extrapolation of most conductors' tendency to gradually lose resistance with decreasing temperature; rather, it is a sudden, quantum leap in resistivity from finite to nothing. *A superconducting material has absolutely zero electrical resistance, not just some small amount*.

Superconductivity was first discovered by H. Kamerlingh Onnes at the University of Leiden, Netherlands in 1911. Just three years earlier, in 1908, Onnes had developed a method of liquefying helium gas, which provided a medium with which to supercool experimental objects to just a few degrees above absolute zero. Deciding to investigate changes in electrical resistance of mercury when cooled to this low of a temperature, he discovered that its resistance dropped to *nothing* just below the boiling point of helium.

There is some debate over exactly how and why superconducting materials superconduct. One theory holds that electrons group together and travel in pairs (called *Cooper pairs*) within a superconductor rather than travel independently, and that has something to do with their frictionless flow. Interestingly enough, another phenomenon of super-cold temperatures, *superfluidity*, happens with certain liquids (especially liquid helium), resulting in frictionless flow of molecules.

Superconductivity promises extraordinary capabilities for electric circuits. If conductor resistance could be eliminated entirely, there would be no power losses or inefficiencies in electric power systems due to stray resistances. Electric motors could be made almost perfectly (100%) efficient. Components such as capacitors and inductors, whose ideal characteristics are normally spoiled by inherent wire resistances, could be made ideal in a practical sense. Already, some practical superconducting conductors, motors, and capacitors have been developed, but their use at this present time is limited due to the practical problems intrinsic to maintaining super-cold temperatures.

The threshold temperature for a superconductor to switch from normal conduction to superconductivity is called the *transition temperature*. Transition temperatures for "classic" superconductors are in the cryogenic range (near absolute zero), but much progress has been made

in developing "high-temperature" superconductors which superconduct at warmer temperatures. One type is a ceramic mixture of yttrium, barium, copper, and oxygen which transitions at a relatively balmy -160^o Celsius. Ideally, a superconductor should be able to operate within the range of ambient temperatures, or at least within the range of inexpensive refrigeration equipment.

The critical temperatures for a few common substances are shown here in this table. Temperatures are given in kelvins, which has the same incremental span as degrees Celsius (an increase or decrease of 1 kelvin is the same amount of temperature change as 1^o Celsius), only offset so that 0 K is absolute zero. This way, we don't have to deal with a lot of negative figures.

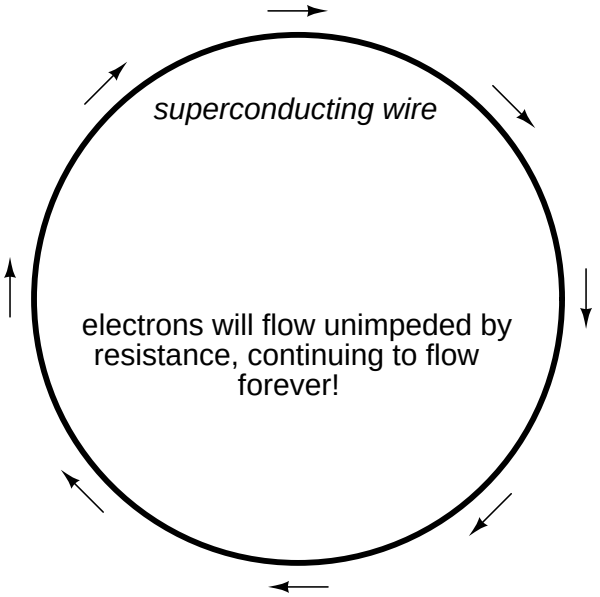
Material	Element/Alloy	Critical temp.(K)
Aluminum	Element	1.20
Cadmium	Element	0.56
Lead	Element	7.2
Mercury	Element	4.16
Niobium	Element	8.70
Thorium	Element	1.37
Tin	Element	3.72
Titanium	Element	0.39
Uranium	Element	1.0
Zinc	Element	0.91
Niobium/Tin	Alloy	18.1
Cupric sulphide	Compound	1.6

Superconducting materials also interact in interesting ways with magnetic fields. While in the superconducting state, a superconducting material will tend to exclude all magnetic fields, a phenomenon known as the *Meissner effect*. However, if the magnetic field strength intensifies beyond a critical level, the superconducting material will be rendered non-superconductive. In other words, superconducting materials will lose their superconductivity (no matter how cold you make them) if exposed to too strong of a magnetic field. In fact, the presence of *any* magnetic field tends to lower the critical temperature of any superconducting material: the more magnetic field present, the colder you have to make the material before it will superconduct.

This is another practical limitation to superconductors in circuit design, since electric current through any conductor produces a magnetic field. Even though a superconducting wire would have zero resistance to oppose current, there will still be a *limit* of how much current could practically go through that wire due to its critical magnetic field limit.

There are already a few industrial applications of superconductors, especially since the recent (1987) advent of the yttrium-barium-copper-oxygen ceramic, which only requires liquid nitrogen to cool, as opposed to liquid helium. It is even possible to order superconductivity kits from educational suppliers which can be operated in high school labs (liquid nitrogen not included). Typically, these kits exhibit superconductivity by the Meissner effect, suspending a tiny magnet in mid-air over a superconducting disk cooled by a bath of liquid nitrogen.

The zero resistance offered by superconducting circuits leads to unique consequences. In a superconducting short-circuit, it is possible to maintain large currents indefinitely with zero applied voltage!



Rings of superconducting material have been experimentally proven to sustain continuous current for years with no applied voltage. So far as anyone knows, there is no theoretical time limit to how long an unaided current could be sustained in a superconducting circuit. If you're thinking this appears to be a form of *perpetual motion*, you're correct! Contrary to popular belief, there is no law of physics prohibiting perpetual motion; rather, the prohibition stands against any machine or system generating more energy than it consumes (what would be referred to as an *over-unity* device). At best, all a perpetual motion machine (like the superconducting ring) would be good for is to *store* energy, not *generate* it freely!

Superconductors also offer some strange possibilities having nothing to do with Ohm's Law. One such possibility is the construction of a device called a Josephson Junction, which acts as a relay of sorts, controlling one current with another current (with no moving parts, of course). The small size and fast switching time of Josephson Junctions may lead to new computer circuit designs: an alternative to using semiconductor transistors.

- **REVIEW:**
- Superconductors are materials which have absolutely zero electrical resistance.
- All presently known superconductive materials need to be cooled far below ambient temperature to superconduct. The maximum temperature at which they do so is called the *transition temperature*.

12.8 Insulator breakdown voltage

The atoms in insulating materials have very tightly-bound electrons, resisting free electron flow very well. However, insulators cannot resist indefinite amounts of voltage. With enough voltage applied, *any* insulating material will eventually succumb to the electrical "pressure"

and electron flow will occur. However, unlike the situation with conductors where current is in a linear proportion to applied voltage (given a fixed resistance), current through an insulator is quite nonlinear: for voltages below a certain threshold level, virtually no electrons will flow, but if the voltage exceeds that threshold, there will be a rush of current.

Once current is forced through an insulating material, *breakdown* of that material's molecular structure has occurred. After breakdown, the material may or may not behave as an insulator any more, the molecular structure having been altered by the breach. There is usually a localized "puncture" of the insulating medium where the electrons flowed during breakdown.

Thickness of an insulating material plays a role in determining its breakdown voltage, otherwise known as *dielectric strength*. Specific dielectric strength is sometimes listed in terms of volts per mil (1/1000 of an inch), or kilovolts per inch (the two units are equivalent), but in practice it has been found that the relationship between breakdown voltage and thickness is not exactly linear. An insulator three times as thick has a dielectric strength slightly less than 3 times as much. However, for rough estimation use, volt-per-thickness ratings are fine.

Material*	Dielectric strength (kV/inch)
Vacuum	20
Air	20 to 75
Porcelain	40 to 200
Paraffin Wax	200 to 300
Transformer Oil	400
Bakelite	300 to 550
Rubber	450 to 700
Shellac	900
Paper	1250
Teflon	1500
Glass	2000 to 3000
Mica	5000

* = Materials listed are specially prepared for electrical use.

- **REVIEW:**
- With a high enough applied voltage, electrons can be freed from the atoms of insulating materials, resulting in current through that material.
- The minimum voltage required to "violate" an insulator by forcing current through it is called the *breakdown voltage*, or *dielectric strength*.
- The thicker a piece of insulating material, the higher the breakdown voltage, all other factors being equal.
- Specific dielectric strength is typically rated in one of two equivalent units: volts per mil, or kilovolts per inch.

12.9 Data

Tables of specific resistance and temperature coefficient of resistance for elemental materials (not alloys) were derived from figures found in the 78^{th} edition of the *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*.

Table of superconductor critical temperatures derived from figures found in the 21^{st} volume of *Collier's Encyclopedia*, 1968.

12.10 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Aaron Forster (February 18, 2003): Typographical error correction.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 13

CAPACITORS

Contents

13.1 Electric fields and capacitance

Whenever an electric voltage exists between two separated conductors, an electric field is present within the space between those conductors. In basic electronics, we study the interactions of voltage, current, and resistance as they pertain to circuits, which are conductive paths through which electrons may travel. When we talk about fields, however, we're dealing with interactions that can be spread across empty space.

Admittedly, the concept of a "field" is somewhat abstract. At least with electric current it isn't too difficult to envision tiny particles called electrons moving their way between the nuclei of atoms within a conductor, but a "field" doesn't even have mass, and need not exist within matter at all.

Despite its abstract nature, almost every one of us has direct experience with fields, at least in the form of magnets. Have you ever played with a pair of magnets, noticing how they attract or repel each other depending on their relative orientation? There is an undeniable force between a pair of magnets, and this force is without "substance." It has no mass, no color, no odor, and if not for the physical force exerted on the magnets themselves, it would be utterly insensible to our bodies. Physicists describe the interaction of magnets in terms of *magnetic fields* in the space between them. If iron filings are placed near a magnet, they orient themselves along the lines of the field, visually indicating its presence.

The subject of this chapter is *electric* fields (and devices called *capacitors* that exploit them), not *magnetic* fields, but there are many similarities. Most likely you have experienced electric fields as well. Chapter 1 of this book began with an explanation of static electricity, and how materials such as wax and wool – when rubbed against each other – produced a physical attraction. Again, physicists would describe this interaction in terms of *electric fields* generated by the two objects as a result of their electron imbalances. Suffice it to say that whenever a voltage exists between two points, there will be an electric field manifested in the space between those points.

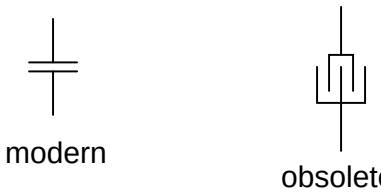
Fields have two measures: a field *force* and a field *flux*. The field *force* is the amount of "push" that a field exerts over a certain distance. The field *flux* is the total quantity, or effect, of the field through space. Field force and flux are roughly analogous to voltage ("push") and current (flow) through a conductor, respectively, although field flux can exist in totally empty space (without the motion of particles such as electrons) whereas current can only take place where there are free electrons to move. Field flux can be opposed in space, just as the flow of electrons can be opposed by resistance. The amount of field flux that will develop in space is proportional to the amount of field force applied, divided by the amount of opposition to flux. Just as the type of conducting material dictates that conductor's specific resistance to electric current, the type of insulating material separating two conductors dictates the specific opposition to field flux.

Normally, electrons cannot enter a conductor unless there is a path for an equal amount of electrons to exit (remember the marble-in-tube analogy?). This is why conductors must be connected together in a circular path (a circuit) for continuous current to occur. Oddly enough, however, extra electrons can be "squeezed" into a conductor without a path to exit if an electric field is allowed to develop in space relative to another conductor. The number of extra free electrons added to the conductor (or free electrons taken away) is directly proportional to the amount of field flux between the two conductors.

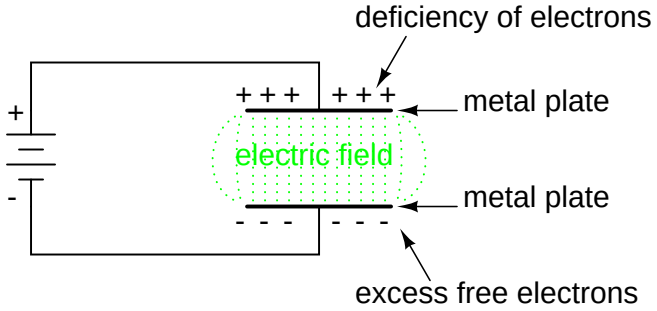
Capacitors are components designed to take advantage of this phenomenon by placing two conductive plates (usually metal) in close proximity with each other. There are many different styles of capacitor construction, each one suited for particular ratings and purposes. For very small capacitors, two circular plates sandwiching an insulating material will suffice. For larger capacitor values, the "plates" may be strips of metal foil, sandwiched around a flexible insulating medium and rolled up for compactness. The highest capacitance values are obtained by using a microscopic-thickness layer of insulating oxide separating two conductive surfaces. In any case, though, the general idea is the same: two conductors, separated by an insulator.

The schematic symbol for a capacitor is quite simple, being little more than two short, parallel lines (representing the plates) separated by a gap. Wires attach to the respective plates for connection to other components. An older, obsolete schematic symbol for capacitors showed interleaved plates, which is actually a more accurate way of representing the real construction of most capacitors:

Capacitor symbols



When a voltage is applied across the two plates of a capacitor, a concentrated field flux is created between them, allowing a significant difference of free electrons (a charge) to develop between the two plates:



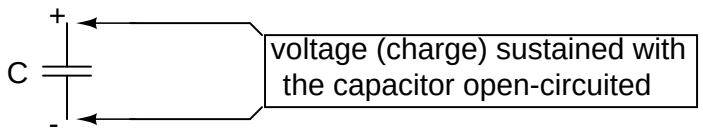
As the electric field is established by the applied voltage, extra free electrons are forced to collect on the negative conductor, while free electrons are ”robbed” from the positive conductor. This differential charge equates to a storage of energy in the capacitor, representing the potential charge of the electrons between the two plates. The greater the difference of electrons on opposing plates of a capacitor, the greater the field flux, and the greater ”charge” of energy the capacitor will store.

Because capacitors store the potential energy of accumulated electrons in the form of an electric field, they behave quite differently than resistors (which simply dissipate energy in the form of heat) in a circuit. Energy storage in a capacitor is a function of the voltage between the plates, as well as other factors which we will discuss later in this chapter. A capacitor’s ability to store energy as a function of voltage (potential difference between the two leads) results in a tendency to try to maintain voltage at a constant level. In other words, capacitors tend to resist *changes* in voltage drop. When voltage across a capacitor is increased or decreased, the capacitor ”resists” the *change* by drawing current from or supplying current to the source of the voltage change, in opposition to the *change*.

To store more energy in a capacitor, the voltage across it must be increased. This means that more electrons must be added to the (-) plate and more taken away from the (+) plate, necessitating a current in that direction. Conversely, to release energy from a capacitor, the voltage across it must be decreased. This means some of the excess electrons on the (-) plate must be returned to the (+) plate, necessitating a current in the other direction.

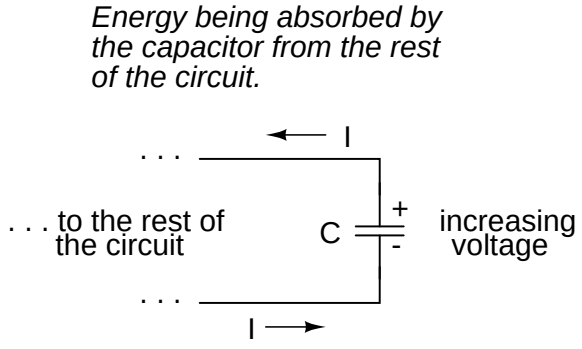
Just as Isaac Newton’s first Law of Motion (”an object in motion tends to stay in motion; an object at rest tends to stay at rest”) describes the tendency of a mass to oppose changes in velocity, we can state a capacitor’s tendency to oppose changes in voltage as such: ”A charged

capacitor tends to stay charged; a discharged capacitor tends to stay discharged." Hypothetically, a capacitor left untouched will indefinitely maintain whatever state of voltage charge that its been left it. Only an outside source (or drain) of current can alter the voltage charge stored by a perfect capacitor:



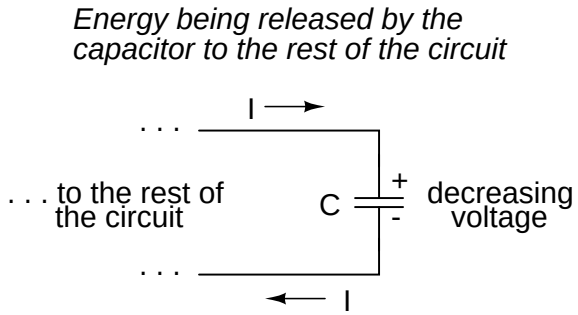
Practically speaking, however, capacitors will eventually lose their stored voltage charges due to internal leakage paths for electrons to flow from one plate to the other. Depending on the specific type of capacitor, the time it takes for a stored voltage charge to self-dissipate can be a *long* time (several years with the capacitor sitting on a shelf!).

When the voltage across a capacitor is increased, it draws current from the rest of the circuit, acting as a power load. In this condition the capacitor is said to be *charging*, because there is an increasing amount of energy being stored in its electric field. Note the direction of electron current with regard to the voltage polarity:



The capacitor acts as a LOAD

Conversely, when the voltage across a capacitor is decreased, the capacitor supplies current to the rest of the circuit, acting as a power source. In this condition the capacitor is said to be *discharging*. Its store of energy – held in the electric field – is decreasing now as energy is released to the rest of the circuit. Note the direction of electron current with regard to the voltage polarity:



The capacitor acts as a SOURCE

If a source of voltage is suddenly applied to an uncharged capacitor (a sudden increase of voltage), the capacitor will draw current from that source, absorbing energy from it, until the capacitor's voltage equals that of the source. Once the capacitor voltage reached this final (charged) state, its current decays to zero. Conversely, if a load resistance is connected to a charged capacitor, the capacitor will supply current to the load, until it has released all its stored energy and its voltage decays to zero. Once the capacitor voltage reaches this final (discharged) state, its current decays to zero. In their ability to be charged and discharged, capacitors can be thought of as acting somewhat like secondary-cell batteries.

The choice of insulating material between the plates, as was mentioned before, has a great impact upon how much field flux (and therefore how much charge) will develop with any given amount of voltage applied across the plates. Because of the role of this insulating material in affecting field flux, it has a special name: *dielectric*. Not all dielectric materials are equal: the extent to which materials inhibit or encourage the formation of electric field flux is called the *permittivity* of the dielectric.

The measure of a capacitor's ability to store energy for a given amount of voltage drop is called *capacitance*. Not surprisingly, capacitance is also a measure of the intensity of opposition to changes in voltage (exactly how much current it will produce for a given rate of change in voltage). Capacitance is symbolically denoted with a capital "C," and is measured in the unit of the Farad, abbreviated as "F."

Convention, for some odd reason, has favored the metric prefix "micro" in the measurement of large capacitances, and so many capacitors are rated in terms of confusingly large microFarad values: for example, one large capacitor I have seen was rated 330,000 microFarads!! Why not state it as 330 milliFarads? I don't know.

An obsolete name for a capacitor is *condenser* or *condensor*. These terms are not used in any new books or schematic diagrams (to my knowledge), but they might be encountered in older electronics literature. Perhaps the most well-known usage for the term "condenser" is in automotive engineering, where a small capacitor called by that name was used to mitigate excessive sparking across the switch contacts (called "points") in electromechanical ignition systems.

- **REVIEW:**

- Capacitors react against changes in voltage by supplying or drawing current in the direction necessary to oppose the change.

- When a capacitor is faced with an increasing voltage, it acts as a *load*: drawing current as it absorbs energy (current going in the negative side and out the positive side, like a resistor).
- When a capacitor is faced with a decreasing voltage, it acts as a *source*: supplying current as it releases stored energy (current going out the negative side and in the positive side, like a battery).
- The ability of a capacitor to store energy in the form of an electric field (and consequently to oppose changes in voltage) is called *capacitance*. It is measured in the unit of the *Farad* (F).
- Capacitors used to be commonly known by another term: *condenser* (alternatively spelled "condensor").

13.2 Capacitors and calculus

Capacitors do not have a stable "resistance" as conductors do. However, there is a definite mathematical relationship between voltage and current for a capacitor, as follows:

"Ohm's Law" for a capacitor

$$i = C \frac{dv}{dt}$$

Where,

i = Instantaneous current through the capacitor

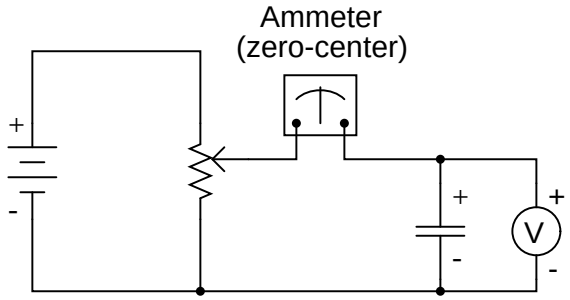
C = Capacitance in Farads

$\frac{dv}{dt}$ = Instantaneous rate of voltage change (volts per second)

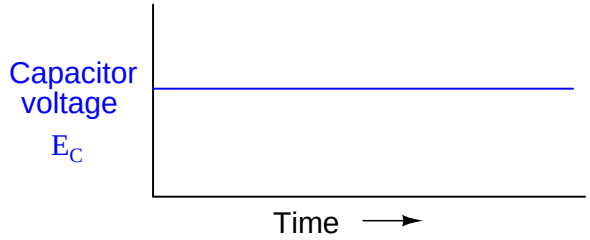
The lower-case letter "i" symbolizes *instantaneous* current, which means the amount of current at a specific point in time. This stands in contrast to constant current or average current (capital letter "I") over an unspecified period of time. The expression "dv/dt" is one borrowed from calculus, meaning the instantaneous rate of voltage change over time, or the rate of change of voltage (volts per second increase or decrease) at a specific point in time, the same specific point in time that the instantaneous current is referenced at. For whatever reason, the letter v is usually used to represent instantaneous voltage rather than the letter e. However, it would not be incorrect to express the instantaneous voltage rate-of-change as "de/dt" instead.

In this equation we see something novel to our experience thusfar with electric circuits: the variable of *time*. When relating the quantities of voltage, current, and resistance to a resistor, it doesn't matter if we're dealing with measurements taken over an unspecified period of time (E=IR; V=IR), or at a specific moment in time (e=ir; v=ir). The same basic formula holds true, because time is irrelevant to voltage, current, and resistance in a component like a resistor.

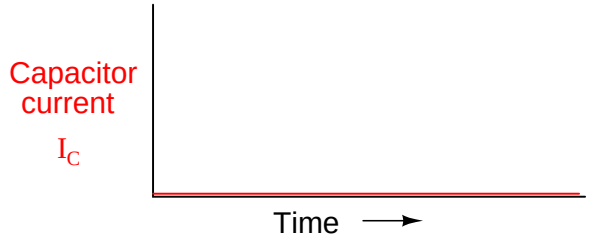
In a capacitor, however, time is an essential variable, because current is related to how *rapidly* voltage changes over time. To fully understand this, a few illustrations may be necessary. Suppose we were to connect a capacitor to a variable-voltage source, constructed with a potentiometer and a battery:



If the potentiometer mechanism remains in a single position (wiper is stationary), the voltmeter connected across the capacitor will register a constant (unchanging) voltage, and the ammeter will register 0 amps. In this scenario, the instantaneous rate of voltage change (dv/dt) is equal to zero, because the voltage is unchanging. The equation tells us that with 0 volts per second change for a dv/dt, there must be zero instantaneous current (i). From a physical perspective, with no change in voltage, there is no need for any electron motion to add or subtract charge from the capacitor's plates, and thus there will be no current.

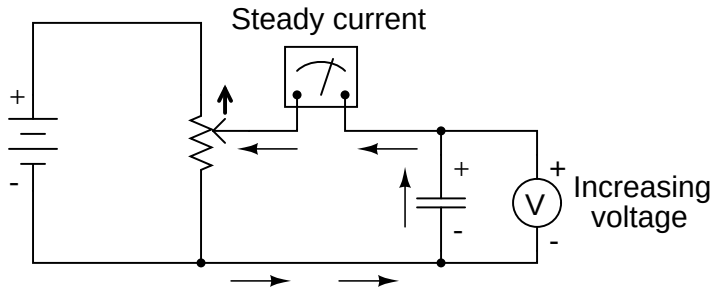


Potentiometer wiper not moving

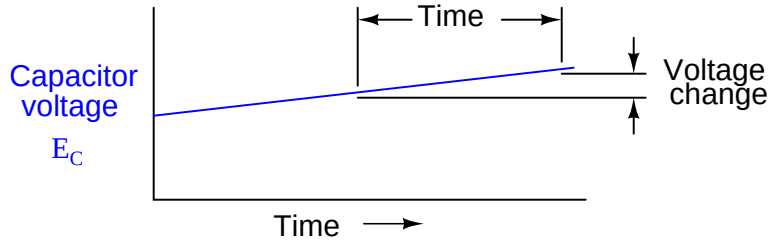


Now, if the potentiometer wiper is moved slowly and steadily in the "up" direction, a greater voltage will gradually be imposed across the capacitor. Thus, the voltmeter indication will be increasing at a slow rate:

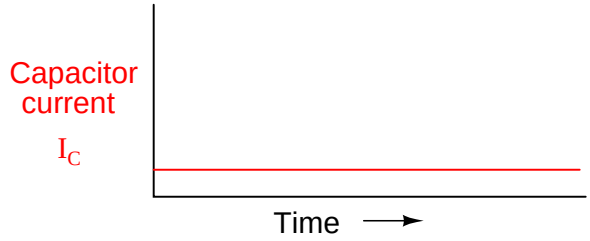
Potentiometer wiper moving slowly in the "up" direction



If we assume that the potentiometer wiper is being moved such that the *rate* of voltage increase across the capacitor is steady (for example, voltage increasing at a constant rate of 2 volts per second), the dv/dt term of the formula will be a fixed value. According to the equation, this fixed value of dv/dt, multiplied by the capacitor's capacitance in Farads (also fixed), results in a fixed current of some magnitude. From a physical perspective, an increasing voltage across the capacitor demands that there be an increasing charge differential between the plates. Thus, for a slow, steady voltage increase rate, there must be a slow, steady rate of charge building in the capacitor, which equates to a slow, steady flow rate of electrons, or current. In this scenario, the capacitor is acting as a *load*, with electrons entering the negative plate and exiting the positive, accumulating energy in the electric field.

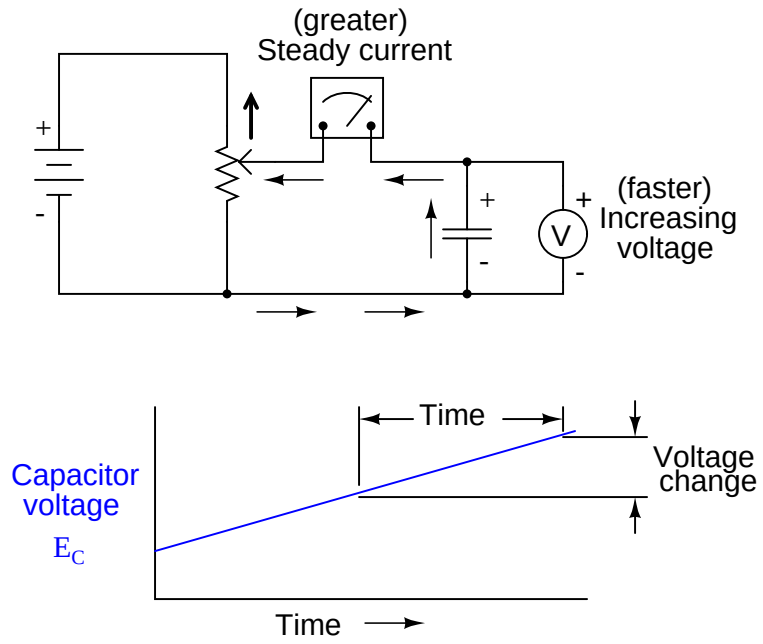


Potentiometer wiper moving slowly "up"

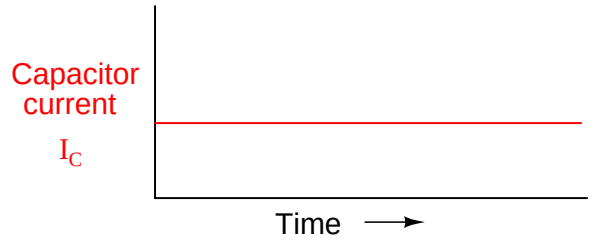


If the potentiometer is moved in the same direction, but at a faster rate, the rate of voltage change (dv/dt) will be greater and so will be the capacitor's current:

Potentiometer wiper moving quickly in the "up" direction



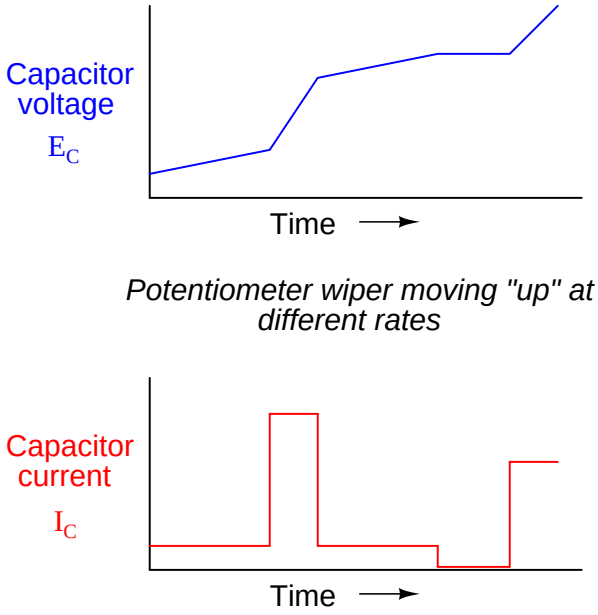
Potentiometer wiper moving quickly "up"



When mathematics students first study calculus, they begin by exploring the concept of *rates of change* for various mathematical functions. The *derivative*, which is the first and most elementary calculus principle, is an expression of one variable's rate of change in terms of another. Calculus students have to learn this principle while studying abstract equations. You get to learn this principle while studying something you can relate to: electric circuits!

To put this relationship between voltage and current in a capacitor in calculus terms, the current through a capacitor is the *derivative* of the voltage across the capacitor with respect to time. Or, stated in simpler terms, a capacitor's current is directly proportional to how quickly the voltage across it is changing. In this circuit where capacitor voltage is set by the position of a rotary knob on a potentiometer, we can say that the capacitor's current is directly proportional to how quickly we turn the knob.

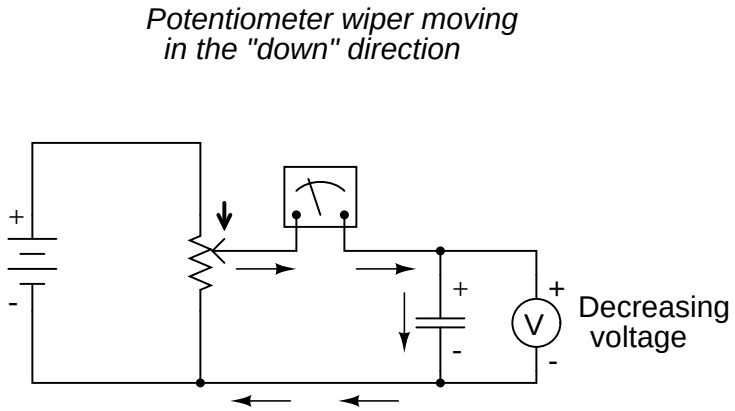
If we were to move the potentiometer's wiper in the same direction as before ("up"), but at varying rates, we would obtain graphs that looked like this:



Potentiometer wiper moving "up" at different rates

Note how that at any given point in time, the capacitor's current is proportional to the rate-of-change, or *slope* of the capacitor's voltage plot. When the voltage plot line is rising quickly (steep slope), the current will likewise be great. Where the voltage plot has a mild slope, the current is small. At one place in the voltage plot where it levels off (zero slope, representing a period of time when the potentiometer wasn't moving), the current falls to zero.

If we were to move the potentiometer wiper in the "down" direction, the capacitor voltage would *decrease* rather than increase. Again, the capacitor will react to this change of voltage by producing a current, but this time the current will be in the opposite direction. A decreasing capacitor voltage requires that the charge differential between the capacitor's plates be reduced, and the only way that can happen is if the electrons reverse their direction of flow, the capacitor discharging rather than charging. In this condition, with electrons exiting the negative plate and entering the positive, the capacitor will act as a *source*, like a battery, releasing its stored energy to the rest of the circuit.



Again, the amount of current through the capacitor is directly proportional to the rate of voltage change across it. The only difference between the effects of a *decreasing* voltage and an *increasing* voltage is the *direction* of electron flow. For the same rate of voltage change over time, either increasing or decreasing, the current magnitude (amps) will be the same. Mathematically, a decreasing voltage rate-of-change is expressed as a *negative* dv/dt quantity. Following the formula i = C(dv/dt), this will result in a current figure (i) that is likewise negative in sign, indicating a direction of flow corresponding to discharge of the capacitor.

13.3 Factors affecting capacitance

There are three basic factors of capacitor construction determining the amount of capacitance created. These factors all dictate capacitance by affecting how much electric field flux (relative difference of electrons between plates) will develop for a given amount of electric field force (voltage between the two plates):

PLATE AREA: All other factors being equal, greater plate area gives greater capacitance; less plate area gives less capacitance.

Explanation: Larger plate area results in more field flux (charge collected on the plates) for a given field force (voltage across the plates).

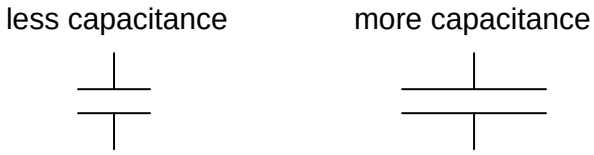
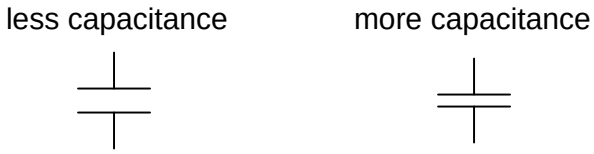


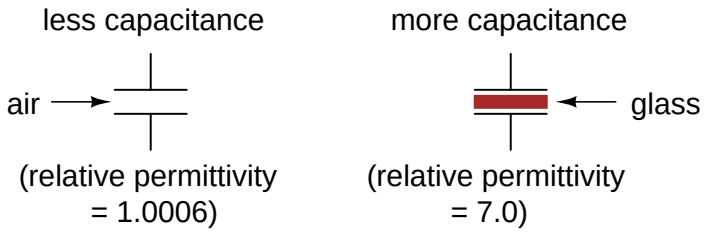
PLATE SPACING: All other factors being equal, further plate spacing gives less capacitance; closer plate spacing gives greater capacitance.

Explanation: Closer spacing results in a greater field force (voltage across the capacitor divided by the distance between the plates), which results in a greater field flux (charge collected on the plates) for any given voltage applied across the plates.



DIELECTRIC MATERIAL: All other factors being equal, greater permittivity of the dielectric gives greater capacitance; less permittivity of the dielectric gives less capacitance.

Explanation: Although its complicated to explain, some materials offer less opposition to field flux for a given amount of field force. Materials with a greater permittivity allow for more field flux (offer less opposition), and thus a greater collected charge, for any given amount of field force (applied voltage).



"Relative" permittivity means the permittivity of a material, relative to that of a pure vacuum. The greater the number, the greater the permittivity of the material. Glass, for instance, with a relative permittivity of 7, has seven times the permittivity of a pure vacuum, and consequently will allow for the establishment of an electric field flux seven times stronger than that of a vacuum, all other factors being equal.

The following is a table listing the relative permittivities (also known as the "dielectric constant") of various common substances:

Material	Relative permittivity (dielectric constant)
Vacuum	1.0000
Air	1.0006
PTFE, FEP ("Teflon")	2.0
Polypropylene	2.20 to 2.28
ABS resin	2.4 to 3.2
Polystyrene	2.45 to 4.0
Waxed paper	2.5
Transformer oil	2.5 to 4
Hard Rubber	2.5 to 4.80
Wood (Oak)	3.3
Silicones	3.4 to 4.3
Bakelite	3.5 to 6.0
Quartz, fused	3.8
Wood (Maple)	4.4
Glass	4.9 to 7.5

```
Castor oil ---------------------- 5.0
Wood (Birch) -------------------- 5.2
Mica, muscovite ----------------- 5.0 to 8.7
Glass-bonded mica --------------- 6.3 to 9.3
Porcelain, Steatite ------------ 6.5
Alumina ------------------------ 8.0 to 10.0
Distilled water ----------------- 80.0
Barium-strontium-titanite ------ 7500
```

An approximation of capacitance for any pair of separated conductors can be found with this formula:

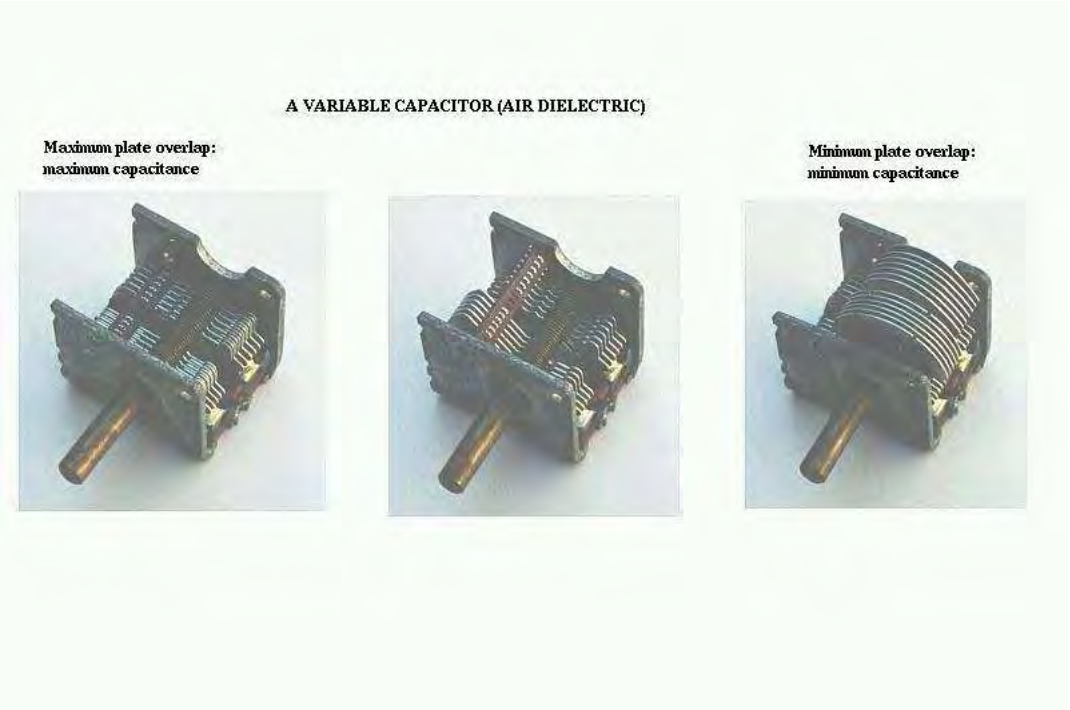
$$C = \frac{\varepsilon A}{d}$$

Where,

- C = Capacitance in Farads
- ε = Permittivity of dielectric (absolute, not relative)
- A = Area of plate overlap in square meters
- d = Distance between plates in meters

A capacitor can be made variable rather than fixed in value by varying any of the physical factors determining capacitance. One relatively easy factor to vary in capacitor construction is that of plate area, or more properly, the amount of plate overlap.

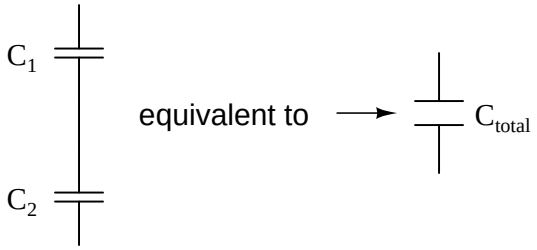
The following photograph shows an example of a variable capacitor using a set of interleaved metal plates and an air gap as the dielectric material:



As the shaft is rotated, the degree to which the sets of plates overlap each other will vary, changing the effective area of the plates between which a concentrated electric field can be established. This particular capacitor has a capacitance in the picofarad range, and finds use in radio circuitry.

13.4 Series and parallel capacitors

When capacitors are connected in series, the total capacitance is less than any one of the series capacitors' individual capacitances. If two or more capacitors are connected in series, the overall effect is that of a single (equivalent) capacitor having the sum total of the plate spacings of the individual capacitors. As we've just seen, an increase in plate spacing, with all other factors unchanged, results in decreased capacitance.



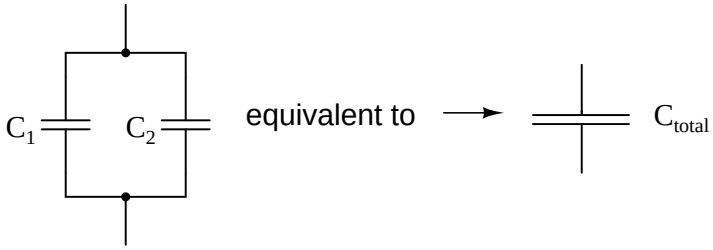
Thus, the total capacitance is less than any one of the individual capacitors' capacitances. The formula for calculating the series total capacitance is the same form as for calculating

parallel resistances:

Series Capacitances

$$C_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \ldots \frac{1}{C_n}}$$

When capacitors are connected in parallel, the total capacitance is the sum of the individual capacitors' capacitances. If two or more capacitors are connected in parallel, the overall effect is that of a single equivalent capacitor having the sum total of the plate areas of the individual capacitors. As we've just seen, an increase in plate area, with all other factors unchanged, results in increased capacitance.



Thus, the total capacitance is more than any one of the individual capacitors' capacitances. The formula for calculating the parallel total capacitance is the same form as for calculating series resistances:

Parallel Capacitances

$$C_{total} = C_1 + C_2 + \ldots C_n$$

As you will no doubt notice, this is exactly opposite of the phenomenon exhibited by resistors. With resistors, series connections result in additive values while parallel connections result in diminished values. With capacitors, its the reverse: parallel connections result in additive values while series connections result in diminished values.

- **REVIEW:**
- Capacitances diminish in series.
- Capacitances add in parallel.

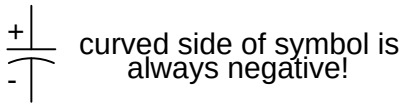
13.5 Practical considerations

Capacitors, like all electrical components, have limitations which must be respected for the sake of reliability and proper circuit operation.

Working voltage: Since capacitors are nothing more than two conductors separated by an insulator (the dielectric), you must pay attention to the maximum voltage allowed across it. If too much voltage is applied, the "breakdown" rating of the dielectric material may be exceeded, resulting in the capacitor internally short-circuiting.

Polarity: Some capacitors are manufactured so they can only tolerate applied voltage in one polarity but not the other. This is due to their construction: the dielectric is a microscopically thin layer of insulation deposited on one of the plates by a DC voltage during manufacture. These are called *electrolytic* capacitors, and their polarity is clearly marked.

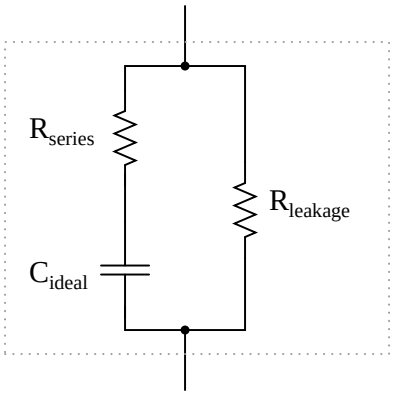
Electrolytic ("polarized") capacitor



Reversing voltage polarity to an electrolytic capacitor may result in the destruction of that super-thin dielectric layer, thus ruining the device. However, the thinness of that dielectric permits extremely high values of capacitance in a relatively small package size. For the same reason, electrolytic capacitors tend to be low in voltage rating as compared with other types of capacitor construction.

Equivalent circuit: Since the plates in a capacitor have some resistance, and since no dielectric is a perfect insulator, there is no such thing as a ”perfect” capacitor. In real life, a capacitor has both a series resistance and a parallel (leakage) resistance interacting with its purely capacitive characteristics:

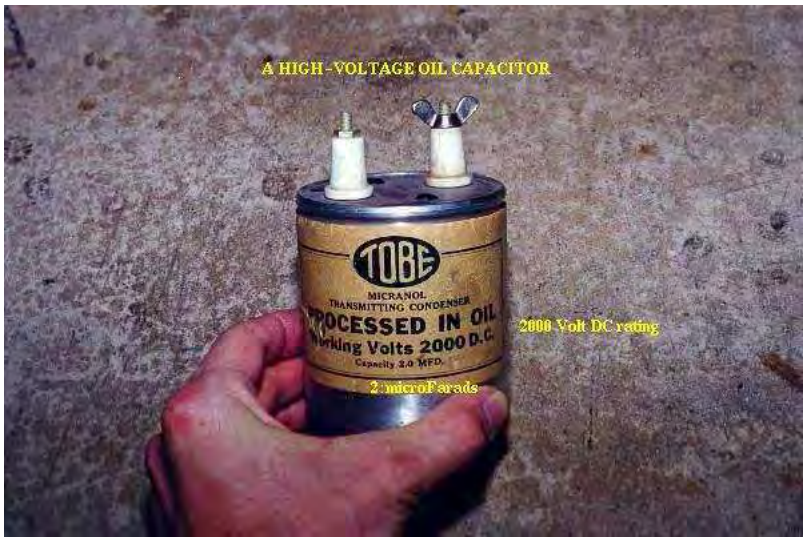
Capacitor equivalent circuit



Fortunately, it is relatively easy to manufacture capacitors with very small series resistances and very high leakage resistances!

Physical Size: For most applications in electronics, minimum size is the goal for component engineering. The smaller components can be made, the more circuitry can be built into a smaller package, and usually weight is saved as well. With capacitors, there are two major limiting factors to the minimum size of a unit: working voltage and capacitance. And these two factors tend to be in opposition to each other. For any given choice in dielectric materials, the only way to increase the voltage rating of a capacitor is to increase the thickness of the dielectric. However, as we have seen, this has the effect of decreasing capacitance. Capacitance can be brought back up by increasing plate area. but this makes for a larger unit. This is why

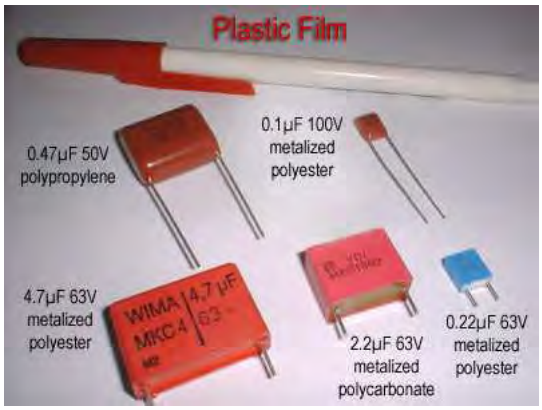
you cannot judge a capacitor's rating in Farads simply by size. A capacitor of any given size may be relatively high in capacitance and low in working voltage, vice versa, or some compromise between the two extremes. Take the following two photographs for example:



This is a fairly large capacitor in physical size, but it has quite a low capacitance value: only 2 μF. However, its working voltage is quite high: 2000 volts! If this capacitor were re-engineered to have a thinner layer of dielectric between its plates, at least a hundredfold increase in capacitance might be achievable, but at a cost of significantly lowering its working voltage. Compare the above photograph with the one below. The capacitor shown in the lower picture is an electrolytic unit, similar in size to the one above, but with *very* different values of capacitance and working voltage:

The thinner dielectric layer gives it a much greater capacitance (20,000 μF) and a drastically reduced working voltage (35 volts continuous, 45 volts intermittent).

Here are some samples of different capacitor types, all smaller than the units shown previously:



The electrolytic and tantalum capacitors are *polarized* (polarity sensitive), and are always labeled as such. The electrolytic units have their negative (-) leads distinguished by arrow symbols on their cases. Some polarized capacitors have their polarity designated by marking the positive terminal. The large, 20,000 μF electrolytic unit shown in the upright position has its positive (+) terminal labeled with a ”plus” mark. Ceramic, mylar, plastic film, and air

capacitors do not have polarity markings, because those types are *nonpolarized* (they are not polarity sensitive).

Capacitors are very common components in electronic circuits. Take a close look at the following photograph – every component marked with a "C" designation on the printed circuit board is a capacitor:

Some of the capacitors shown on this circuit board are standard electrolytic: C_{30} (top of board, center) and C_{36} (left side, 1/3 from the top). Some others are a special kind of electrolytic capacitor called *tantalum*, because this is the type of metal used to make the plates. Tantalum capacitors have relatively high capacitance for their physical size. The following capacitors on the circuit board shown above are tantalum: C_{14} (just to the lower-left of C_{30}), C_{19} (directly below R_{10}, which is below C_{30}), C_{24} (lower-left corner of board), and C_{22} (lower-right).

Examples of even smaller capacitors can be seen in this photograph:

The capacitors on this circuit board are ”surface mount devices” as are all the resistors, for reasons of saving space. Following component labeling convention, the capacitors can be identified by labels beginning with the letter ”C”.

13.6 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Warren Young (August 2002): Photographs of different capacitor types.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 14

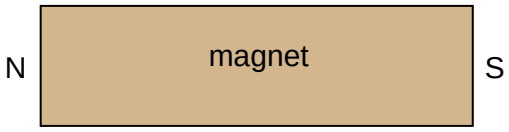
MAGNETISM AND ELECTROMAGNETISM

Contents

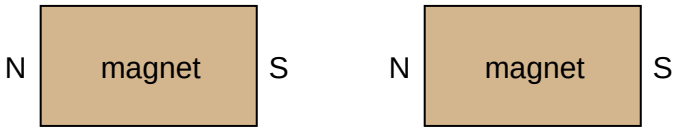
14.1 Permanent magnets

Centuries ago, it was discovered that certain types of mineral rock possessed unusual properties of attraction to the metal iron. One particular mineral, called *lodestone*, or *magnetite*, is found mentioned in very old historical records (about 2500 years ago in Europe, and much earlier in the Far East) as a subject of curiosity. Later, it was employed in the aid of navigation, as it was found that a piece of this unusual rock would tend to orient itself in a north-south direction if left free to rotate (suspended on a string or on a float in water). A scientific study undertaken in 1269 by Peter Peregrinus revealed that steel could be similarly ”charged” with this unusual property after being rubbed against one of the ”poles” of a piece of lodestone.

Unlike electric charges (such as those observed when amber is rubbed against cloth), magnetic objects possessed two poles of opposite effect, denoted ”north” and ”south” after their self-orientation to the earth. As Peregrinus found, it was impossible to isolate one of these poles by itself by cutting a piece of lodestone in half: each resulting piece possessed its own pair of poles:

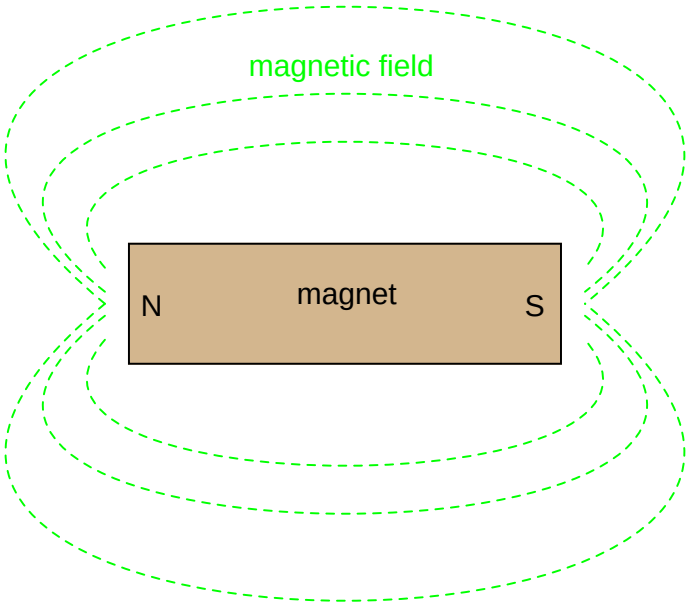


. . . after breaking in half . . .



Like electric charges, there were only two types of poles to be found: north and south (by analogy, positive and negative). Just as with electric charges, same poles repel one another, while opposite poles attract. This force, like that caused by static electricity, extended itself invisibly over space, and could even pass through objects such as paper and wood with little effect upon strength.

The philosopher-scientist Rene Descartes noted that this invisible ”field” could be mapped by placing a magnet underneath a flat piece of cloth or wood and sprinkling iron filings on top. The filings will align themselves with the magnetic field, ”mapping” its shape. The result shows how the field continues unbroken from one pole of a magnet to the other:

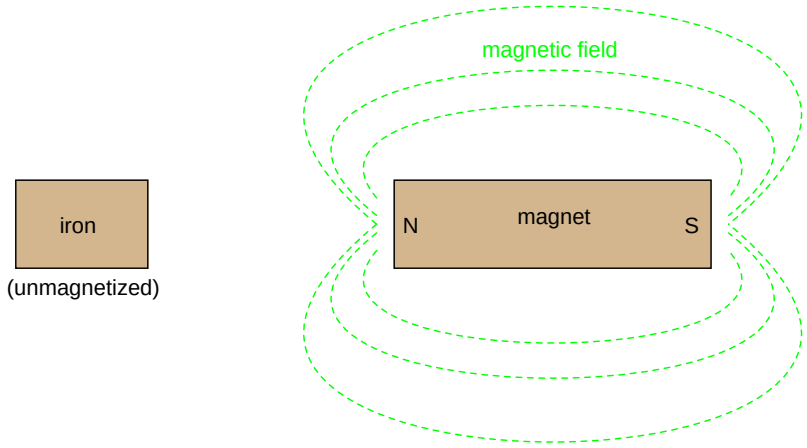


As with any kind of field (electric, magnetic, gravitational), the total quantity, or effect, of the field is referred to as a *flux*, while the ”push” causing the flux to form in space is called a *force*. Michael Faraday coined the term ”tube” to refer to a string of magnetic flux in space (the

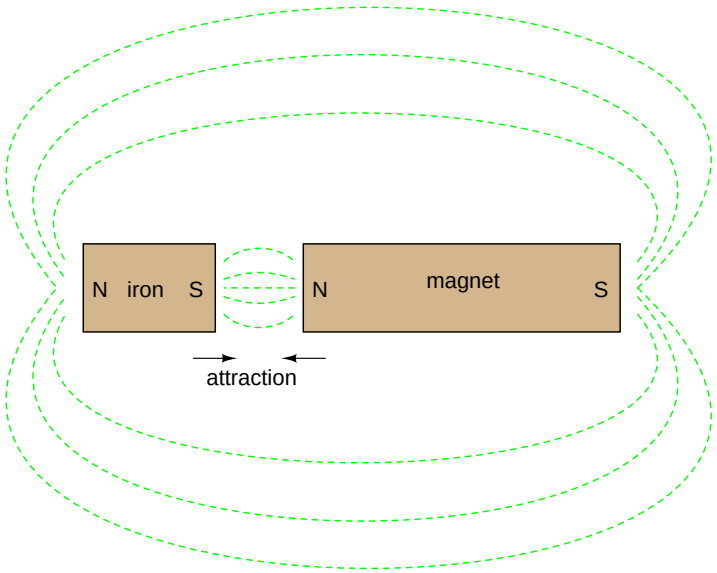
term ”line” is more commonly used now). Indeed, the measurement of magnetic field flux is often defined in terms of the number of flux lines, although it is doubtful that such fields exist in individual, discrete lines of constant value.

Modern theories of magnetism maintain that a magnetic field is produced by an electric charge in motion, and thus it is theorized that the magnetic field of a so-called ”permanent” magnets such as lodestone is the result of electrons within the atoms of iron spinning uniformly in the same direction. Whether or not the electrons in a material’s atoms are subject to this kind of uniform spinning is dictated by the atomic structure of the material (not unlike how electrical conductivity is dictated by the electron binding in a material’s atoms). Thus, only certain types of substances react with magnetic fields, and even fewer have the ability to permanently sustain a magnetic field.

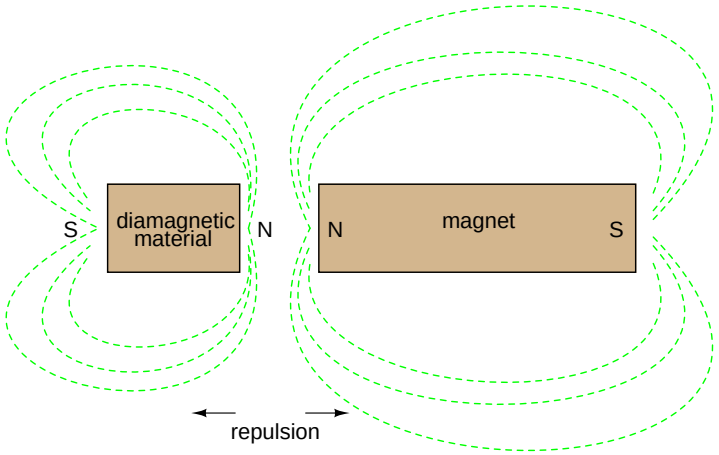
Iron is one of those types of substances that readily magnetizes. If a piece of iron is brought near a permanent magnet, the electrons within the atoms in the iron orient their spins to match the magnetic field force produced by the permanent magnet, and the iron becomes ”magnetized.” The iron will magnetize in such a way as to incorporate the magnetic flux lines into its shape, which attracts it toward the permanent magnet, no matter which pole of the permanent magnet is offered to the iron:



The previously unmagnetized iron becomes magnetized as it is brought closer to the permanent magnet. No matter what pole of the permanent magnet is extended toward the iron, the iron will magnetize in such a way as to be attracted toward the magnet:



Referencing the natural magnetic properties of iron (Latin = "ferrum"), a *ferromagnetic* material is one that readily magnetizes (its constituent atoms easily orient their electron spins to conform to an external magnetic field force). All materials are magnetic to some degree, and those that are not considered ferromagnetic (easily magnetized) are classified as either *paramagnetic* (slightly magnetic) or *diamagnetic* (tend to exclude magnetic fields). Of the two, diamagnetic materials are the strangest. In the presence of an external magnetic field, they actually become slightly magnetized in the opposite direction, so as to repel the external field!



If a ferromagnetic material tends to retain its magnetization after an external field is removed, it is said to have good *retentivity*. This, of course, is a necessary quality for a permanent magnet.

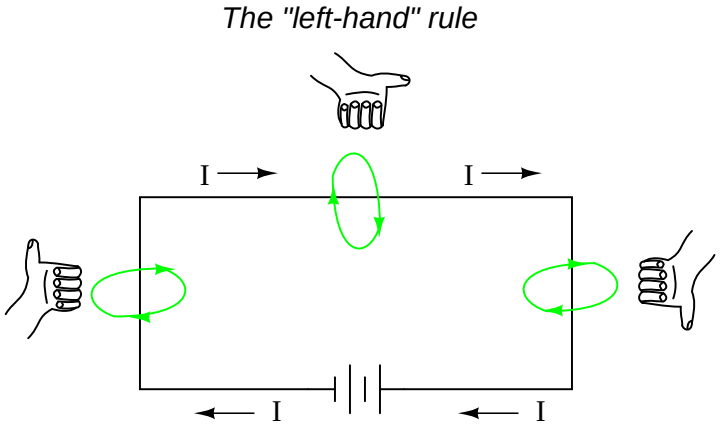
- **REVIEW:**

- *Lodestone* (also called *Magnetite*) is a naturally-occurring ”permanent” magnet mineral. By ”permanent,” it is meant that the material maintains a magnetic field with no external help. The characteristic of any magnetic material to do so is called *retentivity*.
- *Ferromagnetic* materials are easily magnetized.
- *Paramagnetic* materials are magnetized with more difficulty.
- *Diamagnetic* materials actually tend to repel external magnetic fields by magnetizing in the opposite direction.

14.2 Electromagnetism

The discovery of the relationship between magnetism and electricity was, like so many other scientific discoveries, stumbled upon almost by accident. The Danish physicist Hans Christian Oersted was lecturing one day in 1820 on the *possibility* of electricity and magnetism being related to one another, and in the process demonstrated it conclusively by experiment in front of his whole class! By passing an electric current through a metal wire suspended above a magnetic compass, Oersted was able to produce a definite motion of the compass needle in response to the current. What began as conjecture at the start of the class session was confirmed as fact at the end. Needless to say, Oersted had to revise his lecture notes for future classes! His serendipitous discovery paved the way for a whole new branch of science: electromagnetics.

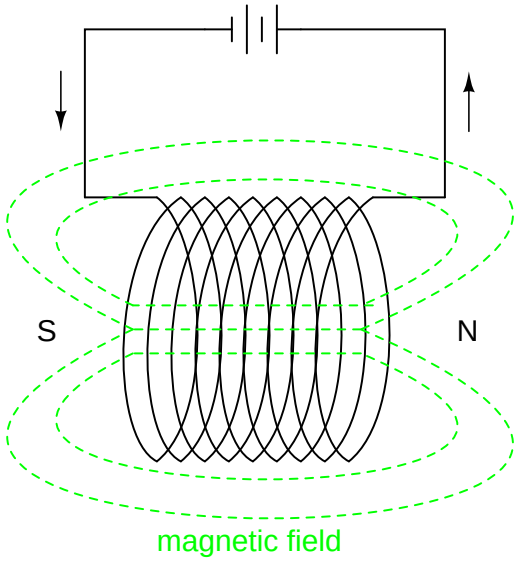
Detailed experiments showed that the magnetic field produced by an electric current is always oriented perpendicular to the direction of flow. A simple method of showing this relationship is called the *left-hand rule*. Simply stated, the left-hand rule says that the magnetic flux lines produced by a current-carrying wire will be oriented the same direction as the curled fingers of a person’s left hand (in the ”hitchhiking” position), with the thumb pointing in the direction of electron flow:



The magnetic field encircles this straight piece of current-carrying wire, the magnetic flux lines having no definite ”north” or ”south’ poles.

While the magnetic field surrounding a current-carrying wire is indeed interesting, it is quite weak for common amounts of current, able to deflect a compass needle and not much

more. To create a stronger magnetic field force (and consequently, more field flux) with the same amount of electric current, we can wrap the wire into a coil shape, where the circling magnetic fields around the wire will join to create a larger field with a definite magnetic (north and south) polarity:

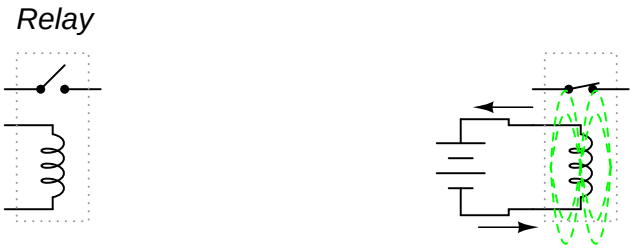


The amount of magnetic field force generated by a coiled wire is proportional to the current through the wire multiplied by the number of "turns" or "wraps" of wire in the coil. This field force is called *magnetomotive force* (mmf), and is very much analogous to electromotive force (E) in an electric circuit.

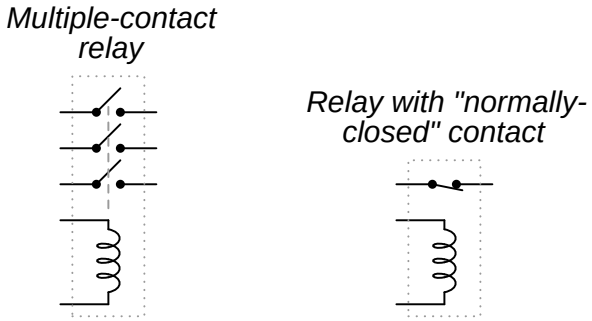
An *electromagnet* is a piece of wire intended to generate a magnetic field with the passage of electric current through it. Though all current-carrying conductors produce magnetic fields, an electromagnet is usually constructed in such a way as to maximize the strength of the magnetic field it produces for a special purpose. Electromagnets find frequent application in research, industry, medical, and consumer products.

As an electrically-controllable magnet, electromagnets find application in a wide variety of "electromechanical" devices: machines that effect mechanical force or motion through electrical power. Perhaps the most obvious example of such a machine is the *electric motor*.

Another example is the *relay*, an electrically-controlled switch. If a switch contact mechanism is built so that it can be actuated (opened and closed) by the application of a magnetic field, and an electromagnet coil is placed in the near vicinity to produce that requisite field, it will be possible to open and close the switch by the application of a current through the coil. In effect, this gives us a device that enables elelctricity to control electricity:



Relays can be constructed to actuate multiple switch contacts, or operate them in ”reverse” (energizing the coil will *open* the switch contact, and unpowering the coil will allow it to spring closed again).



- **REVIEW:**
- When electrons flow through a conductor, a magnetic field will be produced around that conductor.
- The left-hand rule states that the magnetic flux lines produced by a current-carrying wire will be oriented the same direction as the curled fingers of a person’s left hand (in the ”hitchhiking” position), with the thumb pointing in the direction of electron flow.
- The magnetic field force produced by a current-carrying wire can be greatly increased by shaping the wire into a coil instead of a straight line. If wound in a coil shape, the magnetic field will be oriented along the axis of the coil’s length.
- The magnetic field force produced by an electromagnet (called the *magnetomotive force*, or mmf), is proportional to the product (multiplication) of the current through the electromagnet and the number of complete coil ”turns” formed by the wire.

14.3 Magnetic units of measurement

If the burden of two systems of measurement for common quantities (English vs. metric) throws your mind into confusion, this is not the place for you! Due to an early lack of standard-

ization in the science of magnetism, we have been plagued with no less than three complete systems of measurement for magnetic quantities.

First, we need to become acquainted with the various quantities associated with magnetism. There are quite a few more quantities to be dealt with in magnetic systems than for electrical systems. With electricity, the basic quantities are Voltage (E), Current (I), Resistance (R), and Power (P). The first three are related to one another by Ohm's Law (E=IR ; I=E/R ; R=E/I), while Power is related to voltage, current, and resistance by Joule's Law (P=IE ; $P=I^2R$; $P=E^2/R$).

With magnetism, we have the following quantities to deal with:

Magnetomotive Force – The quantity of magnetic field force, or "push." Analogous to electric voltage (electromotive force).

Field Flux – The quantity of total field effect, or "substance" of the field. Analogous to electric current.

Field Intensity – The amount of field force (mmf) distributed over the length of the electromagnet. Sometimes referred to as *Magnetizing Force*.

Flux Density – The amount of magnetic field flux concentrated in a given area.

Reluctance – The opposition to magnetic field flux through a given volume of space or material. Analogous to electrical resistance.

Permeability – The specific measure of a material's acceptance of magnetic flux, analogous to the specific resistance of a conductive material (ρ), except inverse (greater permeability means easier passage of magnetic flux, whereas greater specific resistance means more difficult passage of electric current).

But wait . . . the fun is just beginning! Not only do we have more quantities to keep track of with magnetism than with electricity, but we have several different systems of unit measurement for each of these quantities. As with common quantities of length, weight, volume, and temperature, we have both English and metric systems. However, there is actually more than one metric system of units, and multiple metric systems are used in magnetic field measurements! One is called the *cgs*, which stands for **C**entimeter-**G**ram-**S**econd, denoting the root measures upon which the whole system is based. The other was originally known as the *mks* system, which stood for **M**eter-**K**ilogram-**S**econd, which was later revised into another system, called *rmks*, standing for **R**ationalized **M**eter-**K**ilogram-**S**econd. This ended up being adopted as an international standard and renamed *SI* (**S**ysteme **I**nternational).

Quantity	Symbol	Unit of Measurement and abbreviation		
		CGS	SI	English
Field Force	mmf	Gilbert (Gb)	Amp-turn	Amp-turn
Field Flux	Φ	Maxwell (Mx)	Weber (Wb)	Line
Field Intensity	H	Oersted (Oe)	Amp-turns per meter	Amp-turns per inch
Flux Density	B	Gauss (G)	Tesla (T)	Lines per square inch
Reluctance	$\Re$	Gilberts per Maxwell	Amp-turns per Weber	Amp-turns per line
Permeability	μ	Gauss per Oersted	Tesla-meters per Amp-turn	Lines per inch-Amp-turn

And yes, the μ symbol is really the same as the metric prefix "micro." I find this especially confusing, using the exact same alphabetical character to symbolize both a specific quantity and a general metric prefix!

As you might have guessed already, the relationship between field force, field flux, and reluctance is much the same as that between the electrical quantities of electromotive force (E), current (I), and resistance (R). This provides something akin to an Ohm's Law for magnetic circuits:

A comparison of "Ohm's Law" for electric and magnetic circuits:

$E = IR$	$mmf = \Phi\Re$
Electrical	Magnetic

And, given that permeability is inversely analogous to specific resistance, the equation for finding the reluctance of a magnetic material is very similar to that for finding the resistance of a conductor:

A comparison of electrical and magnetic opposition:

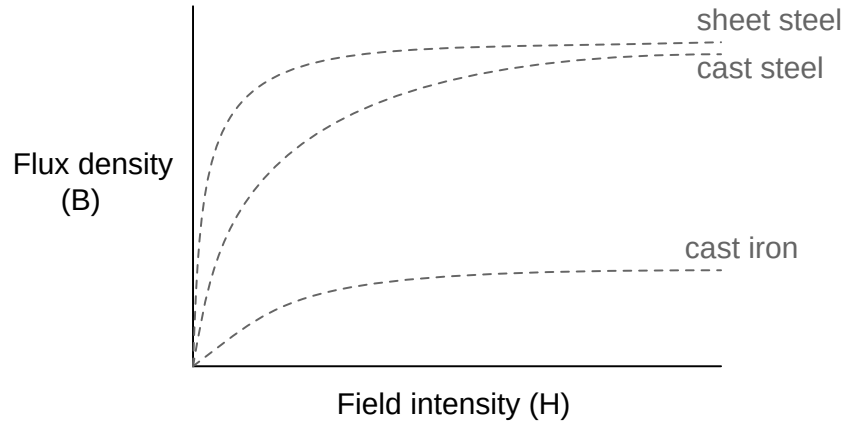
$R = \rho \frac{l}{A}$	$\Re = \frac{l}{\mu A}$
Electrical	Magnetic

In either case, a longer piece of material provides a greater opposition, all other factors being equal. Also, a larger cross-sectional area makes for less opposition, all other factors being equal.

The major caveat here is that the reluctance of a material to magnetic flux actually *changes* with the concentration of flux going through it. This makes the "Ohm's Law" for magnetic circuits nonlinear and far more difficult to work with than the electrical version of Ohm's Law. It would be analogous to having a resistor that changed resistance as the current through it varied (a circuit composed of *var*istors instead of *res*istors).

14.4 Permeability and saturation

The nonlinearity of material permeability may be graphed for better understanding. We'll place the quantity of field intensity (H), equal to field force (mmf) divided by the length of the material, on the horizontal axis of the graph. On the vertical axis, we'll place the quantity of flux density (B), equal to total flux divided by the cross-sectional area of the material. We will use the quantities of field intensity (H) and flux density (B) instead of field force (mmf) and total flux (Φ) so that the shape of our graph remains independent of the physical dimensions of our test material. What we're trying to do here is show a mathematical relationship between field force and flux for *any* chunk of a particular substance, in the same spirit as describing a material's *specific resistance* in ohm-cmil/ft instead of its actual *resistance* in ohms.

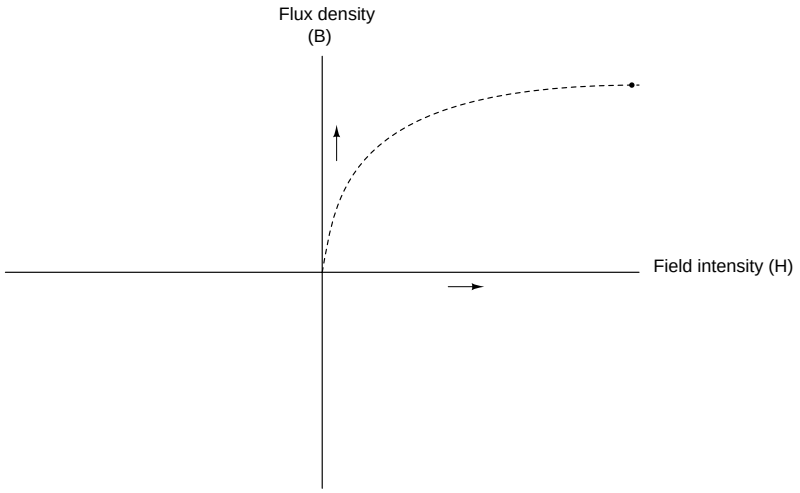


This is called the *normal magnetization curve*, or *B-H curve*, for any particular material. Notice how the flux density for any of the above materials (cast iron, cast steel, and sheet steel) levels off with increasing amounts of field intensity. This effect is known as *saturation*. When there is little applied magnetic force (low H), only a few atoms are in alignment, and the rest are easily aligned with additional force. However, as more flux gets crammed into the same cross-sectional area of a ferromagnetic material, fewer atoms are available within that material to align their electrons with additional force, and so it takes more and more force (H) to get less and less "help" from the material in creating more flux density (B). To put this in economic terms, we're seeing a case of diminishing returns (B) on our investment (H). Saturation is a phenomenon limited to iron-core electromagnets. Air-core electromagnets don't saturate, but on the other hand they don't produce nearly as much magnetic flux as a ferromagnetic core for the same number of wire turns and current.

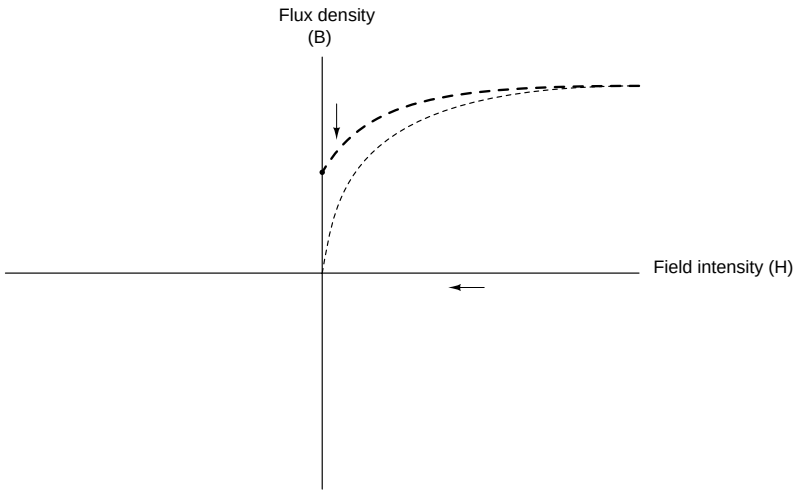
Another quirk to confound our analysis of magnetic flux versus force is the phenomenon of magnetic *hysteresis*. As a general term, hysteresis means a lag between input and output

in a system upon a change in direction. Anyone who's ever driven an old automobile with "loose" steering knows what hysteresis is: to change from turning left to turning right (or vice versa), you have to rotate the steering wheel an additional amount to overcome the built-in "lag" in the mechanical linkage system between the steering wheel and the front wheels of the car. In a magnetic system, hysteresis is seen in a ferromagnetic material that tends to stay magnetized after an applied field force has been removed (see "retentivity" in the first section of this chapter), if the force is reversed in polarity.

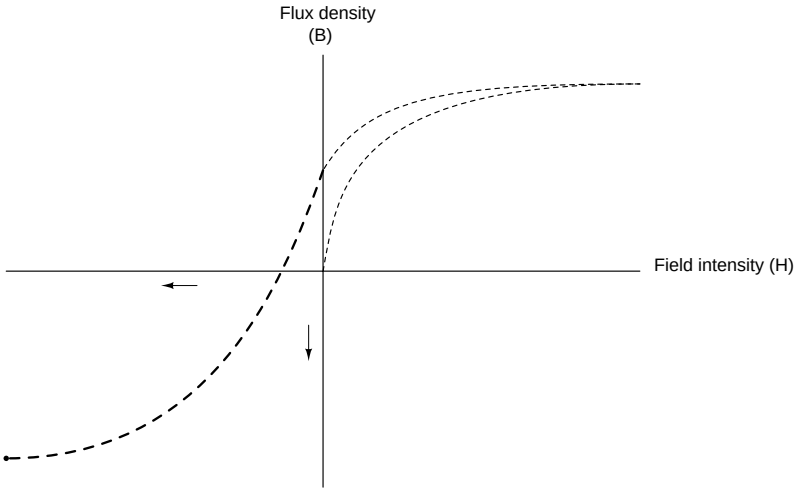
Let's use the same graph again, only extending the axes to indicate both positive and negative quantities. First we'll apply an increasing field force (current through the coils of our electromagnet). We should see the flux density increase (go up and to the right) according to the normal magnetization curve:



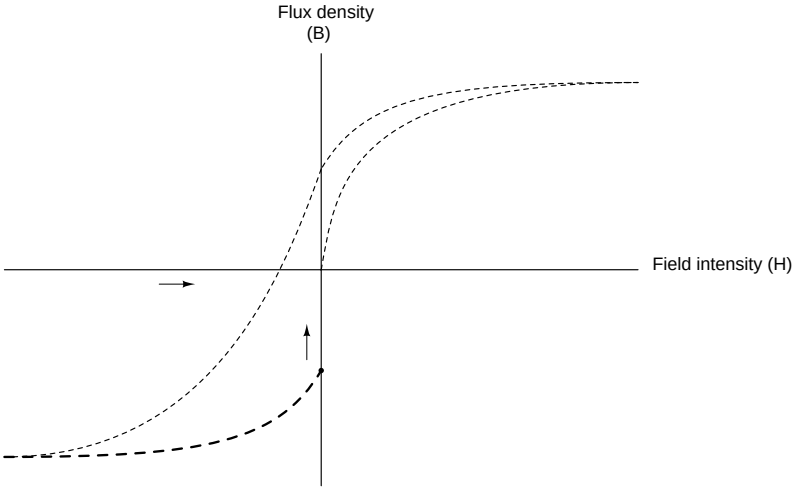
Next, we'll stop the current going through the coil of the electromagnet and see what happens to the flux, leaving the first curve still on the graph:



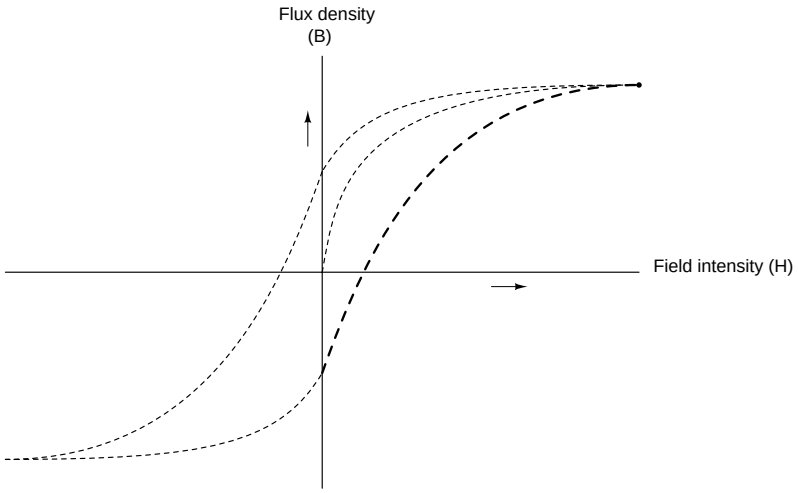
Due to the retentivity of the material, we still have a magnetic flux with no applied force (no current through the coil). Our electromagnet core is acting as a permanent magnet at this point. Now we will slowly apply the same amount of magnetic field force in the *opposite* direction to our sample:



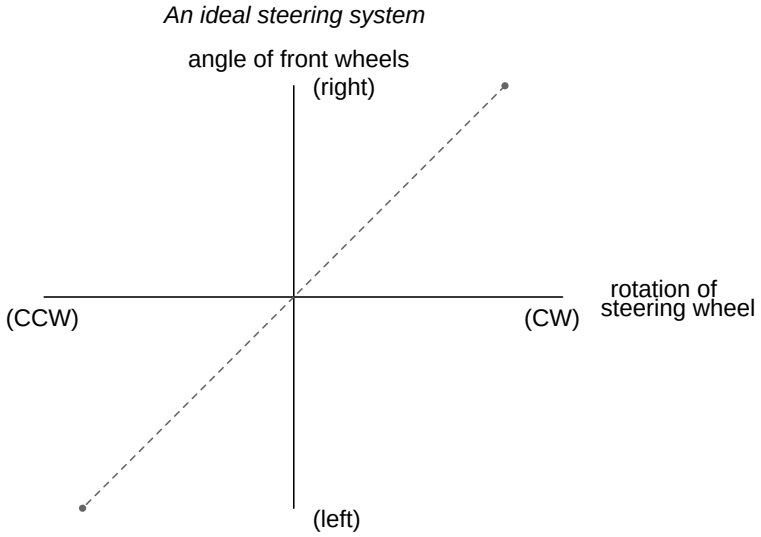
The flux density has now reached a point equivalent to what it was with a full positive value of field intensity (H), except in the negative, or opposite, direction. Let's stop the current going through the coil again and see how much flux remains:

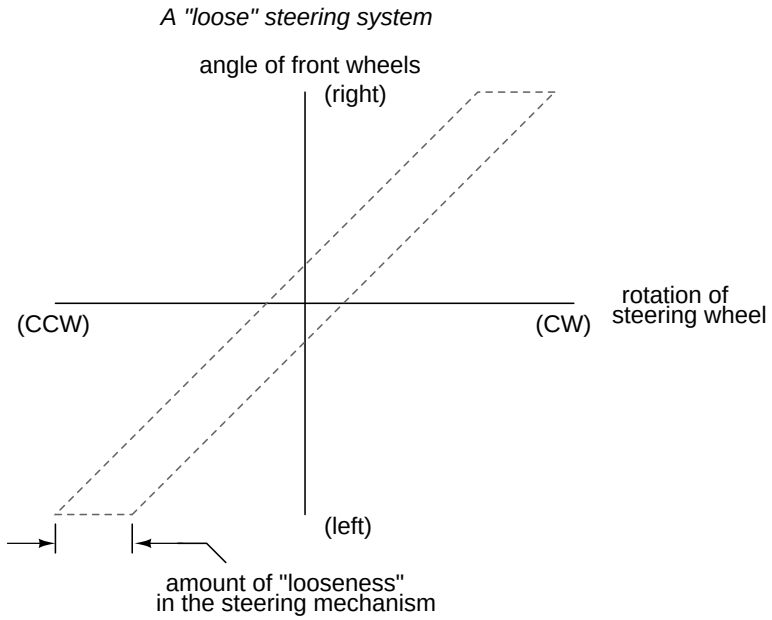


Once again, due to the natural retentivity of the material, it will hold a magnetic flux with no power applied to the coil, except this time its in a direction opposite to that of the last time we stopped current through the coil. If we re-apply power in a positive direction again, we should see the flux density reach its prior peak in the upper-right corner of the graph again:



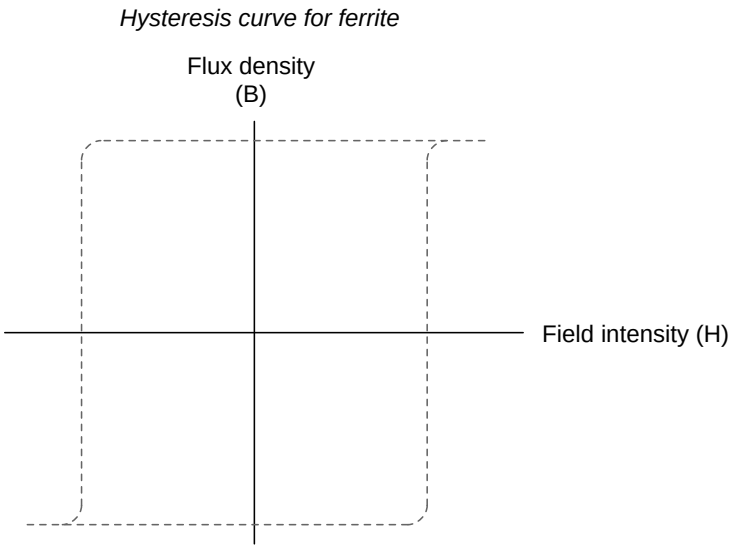
The "S"-shaped curve traced by these steps form what is called the *hysteresis curve* of a ferromagnetic material for a given set of field intensity extremes (-H and +H). If this doesn't quite make sense, consider a hysteresis graph for the automobile steering scenario described earlier, one graph depicting a "tight" steering system and one depicting a "loose" system:





Just as in the case of automobile steering systems, hysteresis can be a problem. If you're designing a system to produce precise amounts of magnetic field flux for given amounts of current, hysteresis may hinder this design goal (due to the fact that the amount of flux density would depend on the current *and* how strongly it was magnetized before!). Similarly, a loose steering system is unacceptable in a race car, where precise, repeatable steering response is a necessity. Also, having to overcome prior magnetization in an electromagnet can be a waste of energy if the current used to energize the coil is alternating back and forth (AC). The area within the hysteresis curve gives a rough estimate of the amount of this wasted energy.

Other times, magnetic hysteresis is a desirable thing. Such is the case when magnetic materials are used as a means of storing information (computer disks, audio and video tapes). In these applications, it is desirable to be able to magnetize a speck of iron oxide (ferrite) and rely on that material's retentivity to "remember" its last magnetized state. Another productive application for magnetic hysteresis is in filtering high-frequency electromagnetic "noise" (rapidly alternating surges of voltage) from signal wiring by running those wires through the middle of a ferrite ring. The energy consumed in overcoming the hysteresis of ferrite attenuates the strength of the "noise" signal. Interestingly enough, the hysteresis curve of ferrite is quite extreme:



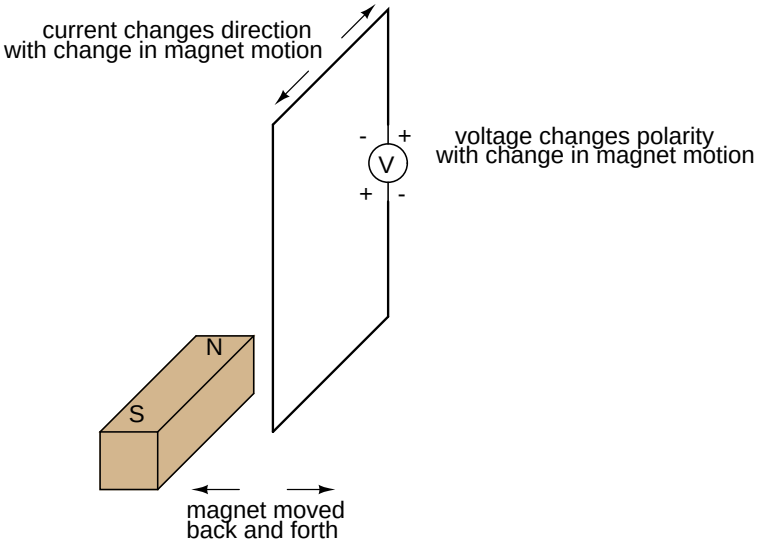
- **REVIEW:**
- The permeability of a material changes with the amount of magnetic flux forced through it.
- The specific relationship of force to flux (field intensity H to flux density B) is graphed in a form called the *normal magnetization curve*.
- It is possible to apply so much magnetic field force to a ferromagnetic material that no more flux can be crammed into it. This condition is known as magnetic *saturation*.
- When the *retentivity* of a ferromagnetic substance interferes with its re-magnetization in the opposite direction, a condition known as *hysteresis* occurs.

14.5 Electromagnetic induction

While Oersted's surprising discovery of electromagnetism paved the way for more practical *applications* of electricity, it was Michael Faraday who gave us the key to the practical *generation* of electricity: electromagnetic induction. Faraday discovered that a voltage would be generated across a length of wire if that wire was exposed to a perpendicular magnetic field flux of changing intensity.

An easy way to create a magnetic field of changing intensity is to move a permanent magnet next to a wire or coil of wire. Remember: the magnetic field must increase or decrease in intensity *perpendicular* to the wire (so that the lines of flux "cut across" the conductor), or else no voltage will be induced:

Electromagnetic induction



Faraday was able to mathematically relate the rate of change of the magnetic field flux with induced voltage (note the use of a lower-case letter "e" for voltage. This refers to *instantaneous* voltage, or voltage at a specific point in time, rather than a steady, stable voltage.):

$$e = N \frac{d\Phi}{dt}$$

Where,

e = (Instantaneous) induced voltage in volts
N = Number of turns in wire coil (straight wire = 1)
Φ = Magnetic flux in Webers
t = Time in seconds

The "d" terms are standard calculus notation, representing rate-of-change of flux over time. "N" stands for the number of turns, or wraps, in the wire coil (assuming that the wire is formed in the shape of a coil for maximum electromagnetic efficiency).

This phenomenon is put into obvious practical use in the construction of electrical generators, which use mechanical power to move a magnetic field past coils of wire to generate voltage. However, this is by no means the only practical use for this principle.

If we recall that the magnetic field produced by a current-carrying wire was always perpendicular to that wire, and that the flux intensity of that magnetic field varied with the amount of current through it, we can see that a wire is capable of inducing a voltage *along its own length* simply due to a change in current through it. This effect is called *self-induction:* a changing magnetic field produced by changes in current through a wire inducing voltage along the length of that same wire. If the magnetic field flux is enhanced by bending the wire into the shape of a coil, and/or wrapping that coil around a material of high permeability, this effect of

self-induced voltage will be more intense. A device constructed to take advantage of this effect is called an *inductor*, and will be discussed in greater detail in the next chapter.

- **REVIEW:**

- A magnetic field of changing intensity perpendicular to a wire will induce a voltage along the length of that wire. The amount of voltage induced depends on the rate of change of the magnetic field flux and the number of turns of wire (if coiled) exposed to the change in flux.

- Faraday's equation for induced voltage: $e = N(d\Phi/dt)$

- A current-carrying wire will experience an induced voltage along its length if the current changes (thus changing the magnetic field flux perpendicular to the wire, thus inducing voltage according to Faraday's formula). A device built specifically to take advantage of this effect is called an *inductor*.

14.6 Mutual inductance

If two coils of wire are brought into close proximity with each other so the magnetic field from one links with the other, a voltage will be generated in the second coil as a result. This is called *mutual inductance:* when voltage impressed upon one coil induces a voltage in another.

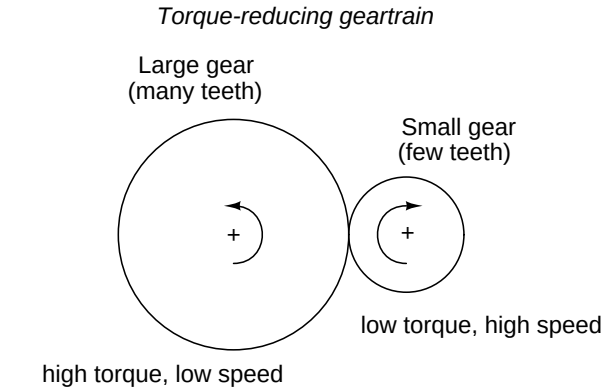
A device specifically designed to produce the effect of mutual inductance between two or more coils is called a *transformer*.

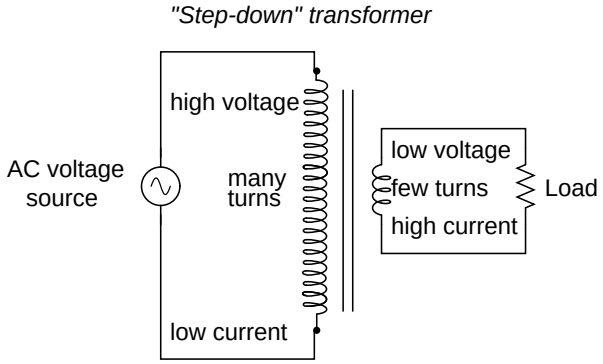
The device shown in the above photograph is a kind of transformer, with two concentric wire coils. It is actually intended as a precision standard unit for mutual inductance, but for the purposes of illustrating what the essence of a transformer is, it will suffice. The two wire coils can be distinguished from each other by color: the bulk of the tube's length is wrapped in green-insulated wire (the first coil) while the second coil (wire with bronze-colored insulation) stands in the middle of the tube's length. The wire ends run down to connection terminals at the bottom of the unit. Most transformer units are not built with their wire coils exposed like this.

Because magnetically-induced voltage only happens when the magnetic field flux is *changing* in strength relative to the wire, mutual inductance between two coils can only happen with alternating (changing – AC) voltage, and not with direct (steady – DC) voltage. The only applications for mutual inductance in a DC system is where some means is available to switch power on and off to the coil (thus creating a *pulsing* DC voltage), the induced voltage peaking at every pulse.

A very useful property of transformers is the ability to transform voltage and current levels according to a simple ratio, determined by the ratio of input and output coil turns. If the energized coil of a transformer is energized by an AC voltage, the amount of AC voltage induced in the unpowered coil will be equal to the input voltage multiplied by the ratio of output to input wire turns in the coils. Conversely, the current through the windings of the output coil compared to the input coil will follow the opposite ratio: if the voltage is increased from input

coil to output coil, the current will be decreased by the same proportion. This action of the transformer is analogous to that of mechanical gear, belt sheave, or chain sprocket ratios:





A transformer designed to output more voltage than it takes in across the input coil is called a ”step-up” transformer, while one designed to do the opposite is called a ”step-down,” in reference to the transformation of voltage that takes place. The current through each respective coil, of course, follows the exact opposite proportion.

- **REVIEW:**

- Mutual inductance is where the magnetic field generated by a coil of wire induces voltage in an adjacent coil of wire.

- A *transformer* is a device constructed of two or more coils in close proximity to each other, with the express purpose of creating a condition of mutual inductance between the coils.

- Transformers only work with *changing* voltages, not steady voltages. Thus, they may be classified as an AC device and not a DC device.

14.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 15

INDUCTORS

Contents

15.1 Magnetic fields and inductance

Whenever electrons flow through a conductor, a magnetic field will develop around that conductor. This effect is called *electromagnetism*. Magnetic fields effect the alignment of electrons in an atom, and can cause physical force to develop between atoms across space just as with electric fields developing force between electrically charged particles. Like electric fields, magnetic fields can occupy completely empty space, and affect matter at a distance.

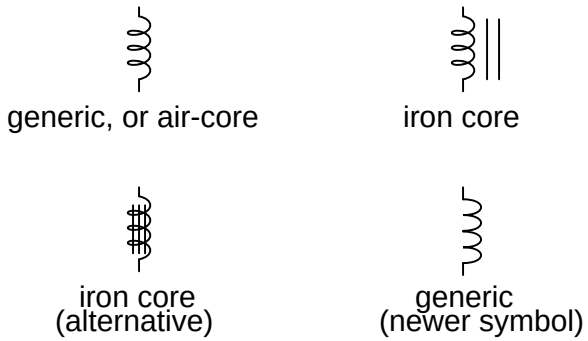
Fields have two measures: a field *force* and a field *flux*. The field *force* is the amount of "push" that a field exerts over a certain distance. The field *flux* is the total quantity, or effect, of the field through space. Field force and flux are roughly analogous to voltage ("push") and current (flow) through a conductor, respectively, although field flux can exist in totally empty space (without the motion of particles such as electrons) whereas current can only take place where there are free electrons to move. Field flux can be opposed in space, just as the flow of electrons can be opposed by resistance. The amount of field flux that will develop in space is proportional to the amount of field force applied, divided by the amount of opposition to flux. Just as the type of conducting material dictates that conductor's specific resistance to electric current, the type of material occupying the space through which a magnetic field force is impressed dictates the specific opposition to magnetic field flux.

Whereas an electric field flux between two conductors allows for an accumulation of free electron charge within those conductors, a magnetic field flux allows for a certain ”inertia” to accumulate in the flow of electrons through the conductor producing the field.

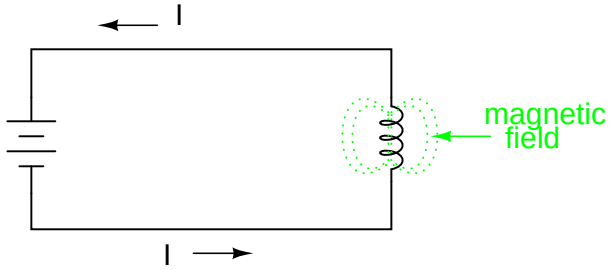
Inductors are components designed to take advantage of this phenomenon by shaping the length of conductive wire in the form of a coil. This shape creates a stronger magnetic field than what would be produced by a straight wire. Some inductors are formed with wire wound in a self-supporting coil. Others wrap the wire around a solid core material of some type. Sometimes the core of an inductor will be straight, and other times it will be joined in a loop (square, rectangular, or circular) to fully contain the magnetic flux. These design options all have an effect on the performance and characteristics of inductors.

The schematic symbol for an inductor, like the capacitor, is quite simple, being little more than a coil symbol representing the coiled wire. Although a simple coil shape is the generic symbol for any inductor, inductors with cores are sometimes distinguished by the addition of parallel lines to the axis of the coil. A newer version of the inductor symbol dispenses with the coil shape in favor of several ”humps” in a row:

Inductor symbols



As the electric current produces a concentrated magnetic field around the coil, this field flux equates to a storage of energy representing the kinetic motion of the electrons through the coil. The more current in the coil, the stronger the magnetic field will be, and the more energy the inductor will store.

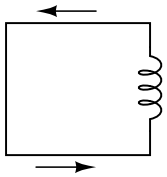


Because inductors store the kinetic energy of moving electrons in the form of a magnetic field, they behave quite differently than resistors (which simply dissipate energy in the form of heat) in a circuit. Energy storage in an inductor is a function of the amount of current through it. An inductor’s ability to store energy as a function of current results in a tendency to try

to maintain current at a constant level. In other words, inductors tend to resist *changes* in current. When current through an inductor is increased or decreased, the inductor "resists" the *change* by producing a voltage between its leads in opposing polarity to the *change*.

To store more energy in an inductor, the current through it must be increased. This means that its magnetic field must increase in strength, and that change in field strength produces the corresponding voltage according to the principle of electromagnetic self-induction. Conversely, to release energy from an inductor, the current through it must be decreased. This means that the inductor's magnetic field must decrease in strength, and that change in field strength self-induces a voltage drop of just the opposite polarity.

Just as Isaac Newton's first Law of Motion ("an object in motion tends to stay in motion; an object at rest tends to stay at rest") describes the tendency of a mass to oppose changes in velocity, we can state an inductor's tendency to oppose changes in current as such: "Electrons moving through an inductor tend to stay in motion; electrons at rest in an inductor tend to stay at rest." Hypothetically, an inductor left short-circuited will maintain a constant rate of current through it with no external assistance:

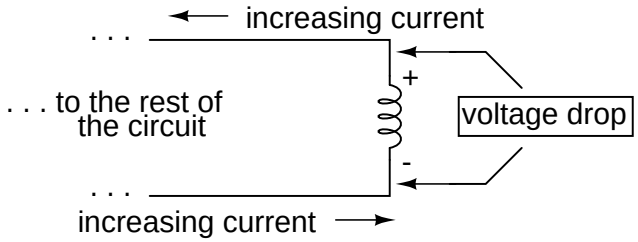


current sustained with
the inductor short-circuited

Practically speaking, however, the ability for an inductor to self-sustain current is realized only with superconductive wire, as the wire resistance in any normal inductor is enough to cause current to decay very quickly with no external source of power.

When the current through an inductor is increased, it drops a voltage opposing the direction of electron flow, acting as a power load. In this condition the inductor is said to be *charging*, because there is an increasing amount of energy being stored in its magnetic field. Note the polarity of the voltage with regard to the direction of current:

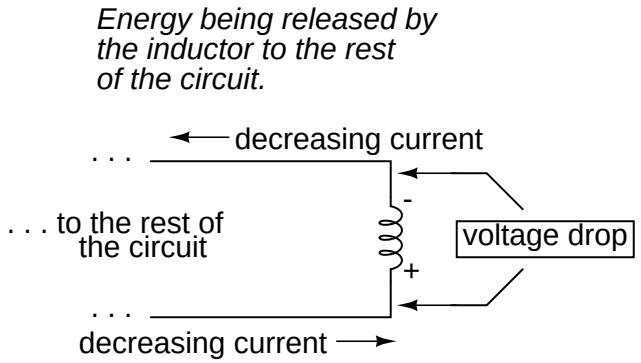
Energy being absorbed by the inductor from the rest of the circuit.



The inductor acts as a LOAD

Conversely, when the current through the inductor is decreased, it drops a voltage aiding

the direction of electron flow, acting as a power source. In this condition the inductor is said to be *discharging*, because its store of energy is decreasing as it releases energy from its magnetic field to the rest of the circuit. Note the polarity of the voltage with regard to the direction of current.



The inductor acts as a SOURCE

If a source of electric power is suddenly applied to an unmagnetized inductor, the inductor will initially resist the flow of electrons by dropping the full voltage of the source. As current begins to increase, a stronger and stronger magnetic field will be created, absorbing energy from the source. Eventually the current reaches a maximum level, and stops increasing. At this point, the inductor stops absorbing energy from the source, and is dropping minimum voltage across its leads, while the current remains at a maximum level. As an inductor stores more energy, its current level increases, while its voltage drop decreases. Note that this is precisely the opposite of capacitor behavior, where the storage of energy results in an increased voltage across the component! Whereas capacitors store their energy charge by maintaining a static voltage, inductors maintain their energy ”charge” by maintaining a steady current through the coil.

The type of material the wire is coiled around greatly impacts the strength of the magnetic field flux (and therefore the amount of stored energy) generated for any given amount of current through the coil. Coil cores made of ferromagnetic materials (such as soft iron) will encourage stronger field fluxes to develop with a given field force than nonmagnetic substances such as aluminum or air.

The measure of an inductor’s ability to store energy for a given amount of current flow is called *inductance*. Not surprisingly, inductance is also a measure of the intensity of opposition to changes in current (exactly how much self-induced voltage will be produced for a given rate of change of current). Inductance is symbolically denoted with a capital ”L,” and is measured in the unit of the Henry, abbreviated as ”H.”

An obsolete name for an inductor is *choke*, so called for its common usage to block (”choke”) high-frequency AC signals in radio circuits. Another name for an inductor, still used in modern times, is *reactor*, especially when used in large power applications. Both of these names will make more sense after you’ve studied alternating current (AC) circuit theory, and especially a principle known as *inductive reactance*.

- **REVIEW:**

- Inductors react against changes in current by dropping voltage in the polarity necessary to oppose the change.
- When an inductor is faced with an increasing current, it acts as a load: dropping voltage as it absorbs energy (negative on the current entry side and positive on the current exit side, like a resistor).
- When an inductor is faced with a decreasing current, it acts as a source: creating voltage as it releases stored energy (positive on the current entry side and negative on the current exit side, like a battery).
- The ability of an inductor to store energy in the form of a magnetic field (and consequently to oppose changes in current) is called *inductance*. It is measured in the unit of the *Henry* (H).
- Inductors used to be commonly known by another term: *choke*. In large power applications, they are sometimes referred to as *reactors*.

15.2 Inductors and calculus

Inductors do not have a stable ”resistance” as conductors do. However, there is a definite mathematical relationship between voltage and current for an inductor, as follows:

"Ohm's Law" for an inductor

$$v = L\frac{di}{dt}$$

Where,

v = Instantaneous voltage across the inductor

L = Inductance in Henrys

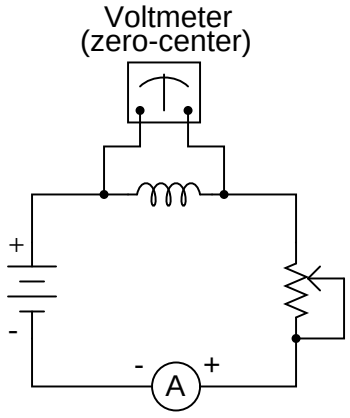
$\frac{di}{dt}$ = Instantaneous rate of current change (amps per second)

You should recognize the form of this equation from the capacitor chapter. It relates one variable (in this case, inductor voltage drop) to a *rate of change* of another variable (in this case, inductor current). Both voltage (v) and rate of current change (di/dt) are *instantaneous*: that is, in relation to a specific point in time, thus the lower-case letters ”v” and ”i”. As with the capacitor formula, it is convention to express instantaneous voltage as v rather than e, but using the latter designation would not be wrong. Current rate-of-change (di/dt) is expressed in units of amps per second, a positive number representing an increase and a negative number representing a decrease.

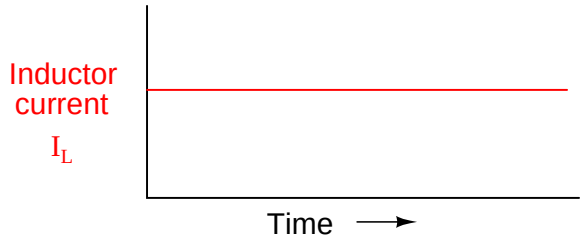
Like a capacitor, an inductor's behavior is rooted in the variable of time. Aside from any resistance intrinsic to an inductor's wire coil (which we will assume is zero for the sake of

this section), the voltage dropped across the terminals of an inductor is purely related to how quickly its current changes over time.

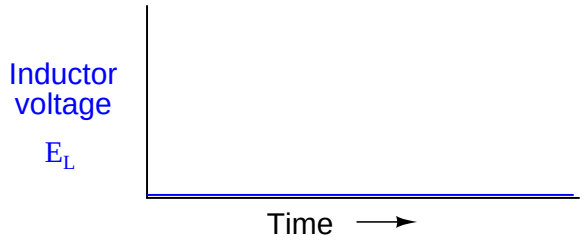
Suppose we were to connect a perfect inductor (one having zero ohms of wire resistance) to a circuit where we could vary the amount of current through it with a potentiometer connected as a variable resistor:



If the potentiometer mechanism remains in a single position (wiper is stationary), the series-connected ammeter will register a constant (unchanging) current, and the voltmeter connected across the inductor will register 0 volts. In this scenario, the instantaneous rate of current change (di/dt) is equal to zero, because the current is stable. The equation tells us that with 0 amps per second change for a di/dt, there must be zero instantaneous voltage (v) across the inductor. From a physical perspective, with no current change, there will be a steady magnetic field generated by the inductor. With no change in magnetic flux ($d\Phi/dt = 0$ Webers per second), there will be no voltage dropped across the length of the coil due to induction.

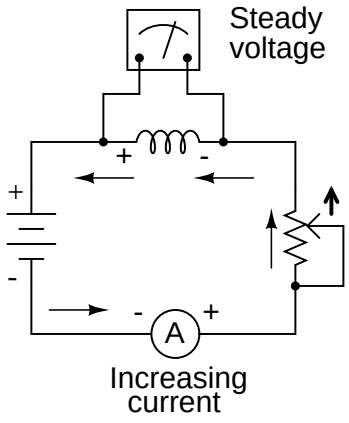


Potentiometer wiper not moving



If we move the potentiometer wiper slowly in the ”up” direction, its resistance from end to end will slowly decrease. This has the effect of increasing current in the circuit, so the ammeter indication should be increasing at a slow rate:

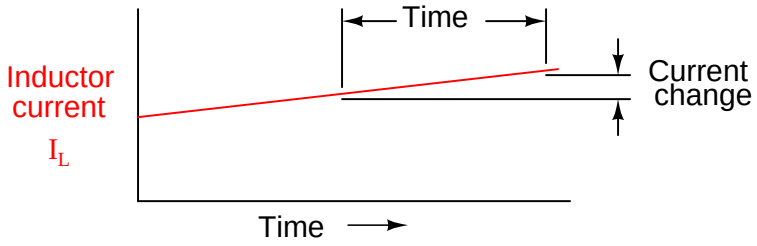
Potentiometer wiper moving slowly in the "up" direction



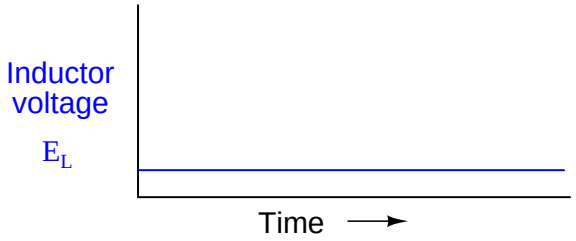
Assuming that the potentiometer wiper is being moved such that the *rate* of current increase through the inductor is steady, the di/dt term of the formula will be a fixed value. This fixed value, multiplied by the inductor’s inductance in Henrys (also fixed), results in a fixed voltage of some magnitude. From a physical perspective, the gradual increase in current results in a magnetic field that is likewise increasing. This gradual increase in magnetic flux causes a voltage to be induced in the coil as expressed by Michael Faraday’s induction equa-

tion e = N(dΦ/dt). This self-induced voltage across the coil, as a result of a gradual change in current magnitude through the coil, happens to be of a polarity that attempts to oppose the change in current. In other words, the induced voltage polarity resulting from an *increase* in current will be oriented in such a way as to push *against* the direction of current, to try to keep the current at its former magnitude. This phenomenon exhibits a more general principle of physics known as *Lenz's Law*, which states that an induced effect will always be opposed to the cause producing it.

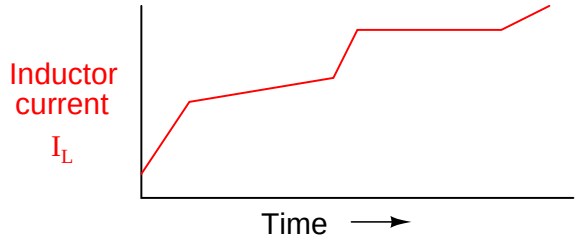
In this scenario, the inductor will be acting as a *load*, with the negative side of the induced voltage on the end where electrons are entering, and the positive side of the induced voltage on the end where electrons are exiting.



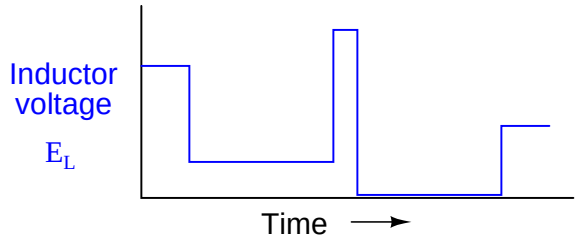
Potentiometer wiper moving slowly "up"



Changing the rate of current increase through the inductor by moving the potentiometer wiper "up" at different speeds results in different amounts of voltage being dropped across the inductor, all with the same polarity (opposing the increase in current):



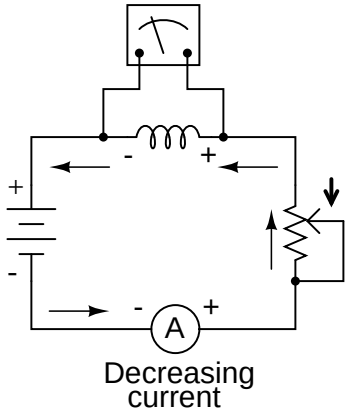
Potentiometer wiper moving "up" at different rates



Here again we see the *derivative* function of calculus exhibited in the behavior of an inductor. In calculus terms, we would say that the induced voltage across the inductor is the derivative of the current through the inductor: that is, proportional to the current's rate-of-change with respect to time.

Reversing the direction of wiper motion on the potentiometer (going "down" rather than "up") will result in its end-to-end resistance increasing. This will result in circuit current decreasing (a *negative* figure for di/dt). The inductor, always opposing any change in current, will produce a voltage drop opposed to the direction of change:

Potentiometer wiper moving in the "down" direction

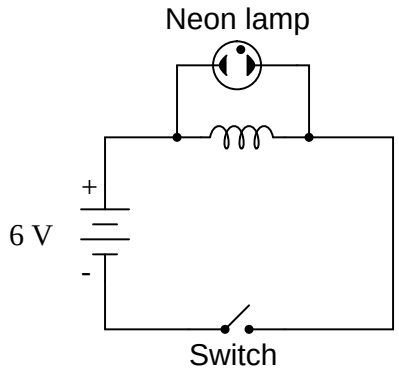


How much voltage the inductor will produce depends, of course, on how rapidly the current

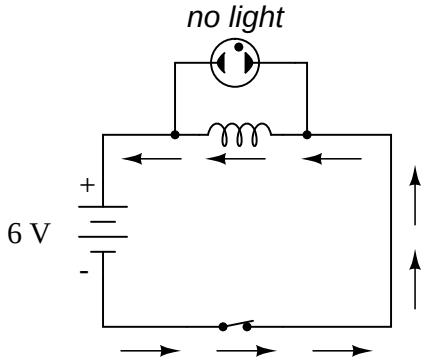
through it is decreased. As described by Lenz's Law, the induced voltage will be opposed to the change in current. With a *decreasing* current, the voltage polarity will be oriented so as to try to keep the current at its former magnitude. In this scenario, the inductor will be acting as a *source*, with the negative side of the induced voltage on the end where electrons are exiting, and the positive side of the induced voltage on the end where electrons are entering. The more rapidly current is decreased, the more voltage will be produced by the inductor, in its release of stored energy to try to keep current constant.

Again, the amount of voltage across a perfect inductor is directly proportional to the rate of current change through it. The only difference between the effects of a *decreasing* current and an *increasing* current is the *polarity* of the induced voltage. For the same rate of current change over time, either increasing or decreasing, the voltage magnitude (volts) will be the same. For example, a di/dt of -2 amps per second will produce the same amount of induced voltage drop across an inductor as a di/dt of +2 amps per second, just in the opposite polarity.

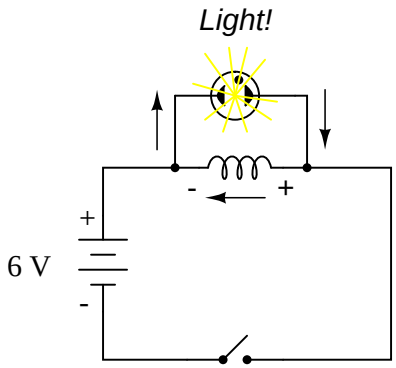
If current through an inductor is forced to change very rapidly, very high voltages will be produced. Consider the following circuit:



In this circuit, a lamp is connected across the terminals of an inductor. A switch is used to control current in the circuit, and power is supplied by a 6 volt battery. When the switch is closed, the inductor will briefly oppose the change in current from zero to some magnitude, but will drop only a small amount of voltage. It takes about 70 volts to ionize the neon gas inside a neon bulb like this, so the bulb cannot be lit on the 6 volts produced by the battery, or the low voltage momentarily dropped by the inductor when the switch is closed:



When the switch is opened, however, it suddenly introduces an extremely high resistance into the circuit (the resistance of the air gap between the contacts). This sudden introduction of high resistance into the circuit causes the circuit current to decrease almost instantly. Mathematically, the di/dt term will be a very large negative number. Such a rapid change of current (from some magnitude to zero in very little time) will induce a very high voltage across the inductor, oriented with negative on the left and positive on the right, in an effort to oppose this decrease in current. The voltage produced is usually more than enough to light the neon lamp, if only for a brief moment until the current decays to zero:



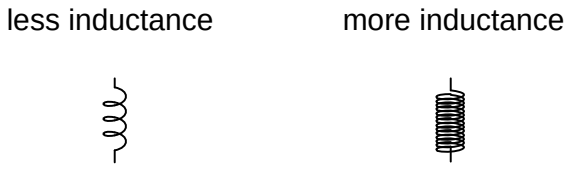
For maximum effect, the inductor should be sized as large as possible (at least 1 Henry of inductance).

15.3 Factors affecting inductance

There are four basic factors of inductor construction determining the amount of inductance created. These factors all dictate inductance by affecting how much magnetic field flux will develop for a given amount of magnetic field force (current through the inductor's wire coil):

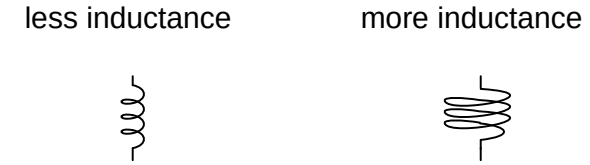
NUMBER OF WIRE WRAPS, OR "TURNS" IN THE COIL: All other factors being equal, a greater number of turns of wire in the coil results in greater inductance; fewer turns of wire in the coil results in less inductance.

Explanation: More turns of wire means that the coil will generate a greater amount of magnetic field force (measured in amp-turns!), for a given amount of coil current.



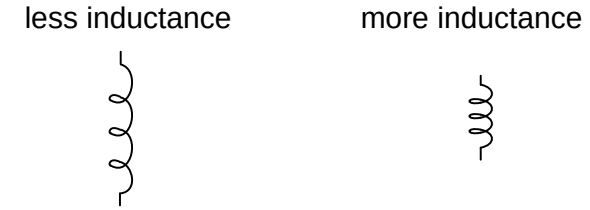
COIL AREA: All other factors being equal, greater coil area (as measured looking lengthwise through the coil, at the cross-section of the core) results in greater inductance; less coil area results in less inductance.

Explanation: Greater coil area presents less opposition to the formation of magnetic field flux, for a given amount of field force (amp-turns).



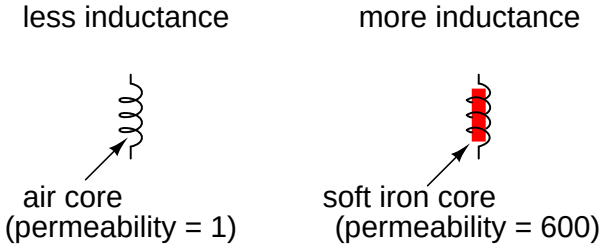
COIL LENGTH: All other factors being equal, the longer the coil's length, the less inductance; the shorter the coil's length, the greater the inductance.

Explanation: A longer path for the magnetic field flux to take results in more opposition to the formation of that flux for any given amount of field force (amp-turns).



CORE MATERIAL: All other factors being equal, the greater the magnetic permeability of the core which the coil is wrapped around, the greater the inductance; the less the permeability of the core, the less the inductance.

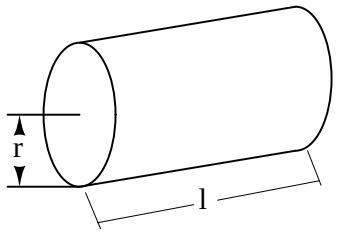
Explanation: A core material with greater magnetic permeability results in greater magnetic field flux for any given amount of field force (amp-turns).



An approximation of inductance for any coil of wire can be found with this formula:

$$L = \frac{N^2 \mu A}{l}$$

$$\mu = \mu_r \mu_0$$



Where,

L = Inductance of coil in Henrys

N = Number of turns in wire coil (straight wire = 1)

μ = Permeability of core material (absolute, not relative)

μ_r = Relative permeability, dimensionless (μ_0=1 for air)

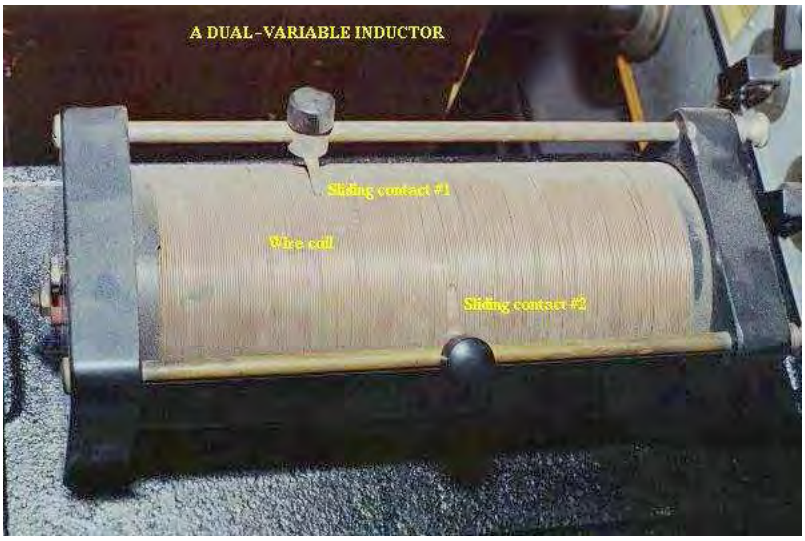
μ_0 = 1.26 x 10^{-6} T-m/At permeability of free space

A = Area of coil in square meters = πr^2

l = Average length of coil in meters

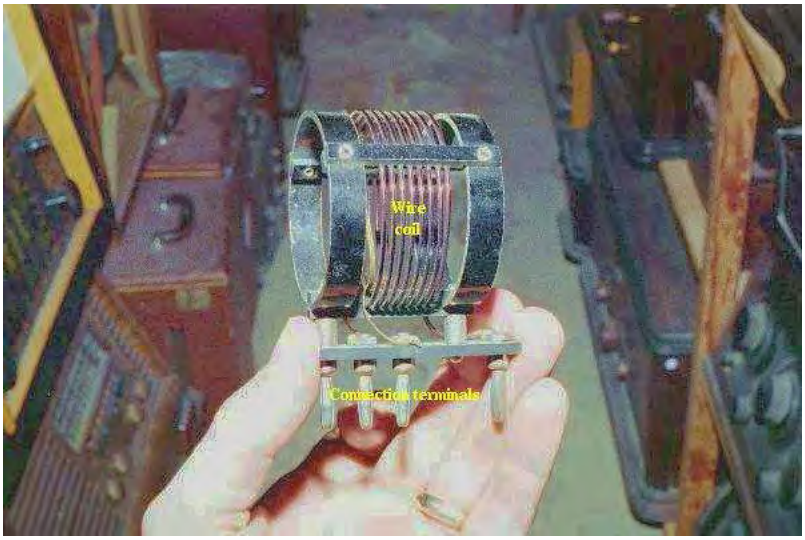
It must be understood that this formula yields *approximate* figures only. One reason for this is the fact that permeability changes as the field intensity varies (remember the nonlinear "B/H" curves for different materials). Obviously, if permeability (μ) in the equation is unstable, then the inductance (L) will also be unstable to some degree as the current through the coil changes in magnitude. If the hysteresis of the core material is significant, this will also have strange effects on the inductance of the coil. Inductor designers try to minimize these effects by designing the core in such a way that its flux density never approaches saturation levels, and so the inductor operates in a more linear portion of the B/H curve.

If an inductor is designed so that any one of these factors may be varied at will, its inductance will correspondingly vary. Variable inductors are usually made by providing a way to vary the number of wire turns in use at any given time, or by varying the core material (a sliding core that can be moved in and out of the coil). An example of the former design is shown in this photograph:

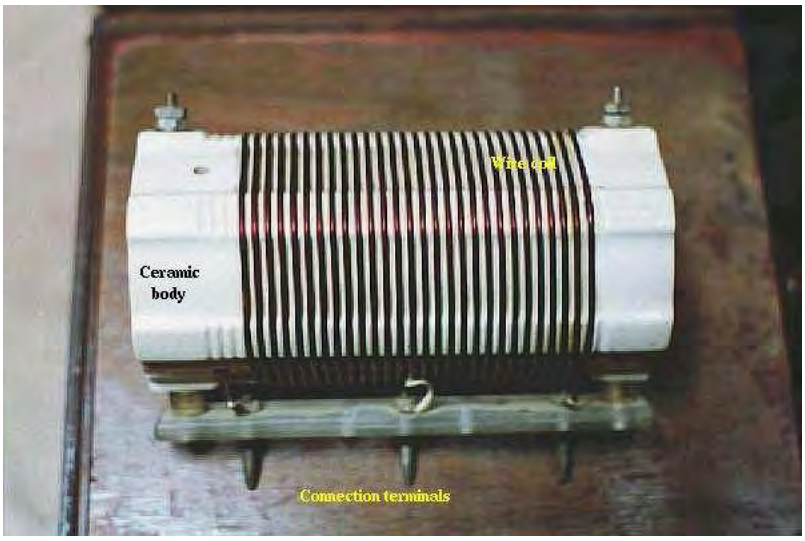


This unit uses sliding copper contacts to tap into the coil at different points along its length. The unit shown happens to be an air-core inductor used in early radio work.

A fixed-value inductor is shown in the next photograph, another antique air-core unit built for radios. The connection terminals can be seen at the bottom, as well as the few turns of relatively thick wire:



Here is another inductor (of greater inductance value), also intended for radio applications. Its wire coil is wound around a white ceramic tube for greater rigidity:



Inductors can also be made very small for printed circuit board applications. Closely examine the following photograph and see if you can identify two inductors near each other:

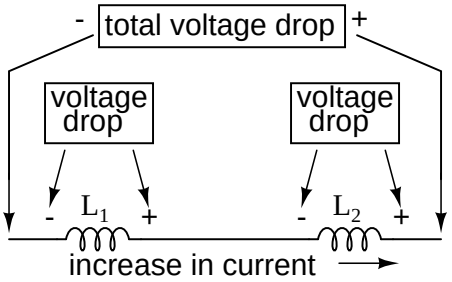
The two inductors on this circuit board are labeled L_1 and L_2, and they are located to the right-center of the board. Two nearby components are R_3 (a resistor) and C_{16} (a capacitor). These inductors are called "toroidal" because their wire coils are wound around donut-shaped ("torus") cores.

Like resistors and capacitors, inductors can be packaged as "surface mount devices" as well. The following photograph shows just how small an inductor can be when packaged as such:

A pair of inductors can be seen on this circuit board, to the right and center, appearing as small black chips with the number "100" printed on both. The upper inductor's label can be seen printed on the green circuit board as L_5. Of course these inductors are very small in inductance value, but it demonstrates just how tiny they can be manufactured to meet certain circuit design needs.

15.4 Series and parallel inductors

When inductors are connected in series, the total inductance is the sum of the individual inductors' inductances. To understand why this is so, consider the following: the definitive measure of inductance is the amount of voltage dropped across an inductor for a given rate of current change through it. If inductors are connected together in series (thus sharing the same current, and seeing the same rate of change in current), then the total voltage dropped as the result of a change in current will be additive with each inductor, creating a greater total voltage than either of the individual inductors alone. Greater voltage for the same rate of change in current means greater inductance.

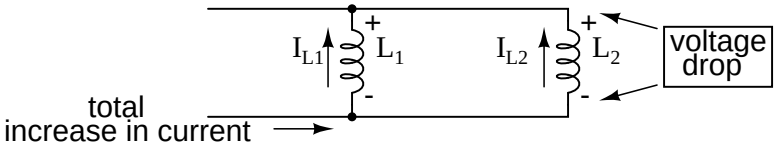


Thus, the total inductance for series inductors is more than any one of the individual inductors' inductances. The formula for calculating the series total inductance is the same form as for calculating series resistances:

Series Inductances

$$L_{total} = L_1 + L_2 + \ldots L_n$$

When inductors are connected in parallel, the total inductance is less than any one of the parallel inductors' inductances. Again, remember that the definitive measure of inductance is the amount of voltage dropped across an inductor for a given rate of current change through it. Since the current through each parallel inductor will be a fraction of the total current, and the voltage across each parallel inductor will be equal, a change in total current will result in less voltage dropped across the parallel array than for any one of the inductors considered separately. In other words, there will be less voltage dropped across parallel inductors for a given rate of change in current than for any of those inductors considered separately, because total current divides among parallel branches. Less voltage for the same rate of change in current means less inductance.



Thus, the total inductance is less than any one of the individual inductors' inductances. The formula for calculating the parallel total inductance is the same form as for calculating parallel resistances:

Parallel Inductances

$$L_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{L_1} + \frac{1}{L_2} + \ldots \frac{1}{L_n}}$$

- **REVIEW:**
- Inductances add in series.
- Inductances diminish in parallel.

15.5 Practical considerations

Inductors, like all electrical components, have limitations which must be respected for the sake of reliability and proper circuit operation.

Rated current: Since inductors are constructed of coiled wire, and any wire will be limited in its current-carrying capacity by its resistance and ability to dissipate heat, you must pay attention to the maximum current allowed through an inductor.

Equivalent circuit: Since inductor wire has some resistance, and circuit design constraints typically demand the inductor be built to the smallest possible dimensions, there is no such thing as a ”perfect” inductor. Inductor coil wire usually presents a substantial amount of series resistance, and the close spacing of wire from one coil turn to another (separated by insulation) may present measurable amounts of stray capacitance to interact with its purely inductive characteristics. Unlike capacitors, which are relatively easy to manufacture with negligible stray effects, inductors are difficult to find in ”pure” form. In certain applications, these undesirable characteristics may present significant engineering problems.

Inductor size: Inductors tend to be much larger, physically, than capacitors are for storing equivalent amounts of energy. This is especially true considering the recent advances in electrolytic capacitor technology, allowing incredibly large capacitance values to be packed into a small package. If a circuit designer needs to store a large amount of energy in a small volume and has the freedom to choose either capacitors or inductors for the task, he or she will most likely choose a capacitor. A notable exception to this rule is in applications requiring *huge* amounts of either capacitance or inductance to store electrical energy: inductors made of superconducting wire (zero resistance) are more practical to build and safely operate than capacitors of equivalent value, and are probably smaller too.

Interference: Inductors may affect nearby components on a circuit board with their magnetic fields, which can extend significant distances beyond the inductor. This is especially true if there are other inductors nearby on the circuit board. If the magnetic fields of two or more inductors are able to ”link” with each others’ turns of wire, there will be mutual inductance present in the circuit as well as self-inductance, which could very well cause unwanted effects. This is another reason why circuit designers tend to choose capacitors over inductors to perform similar tasks: capacitors inherently contain their respective electric fields neatly within the component package and therefore do not typically generate any ”mutual” effects with other components.

15.6 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 16

RC AND L/R TIME CONSTANTS

Contents

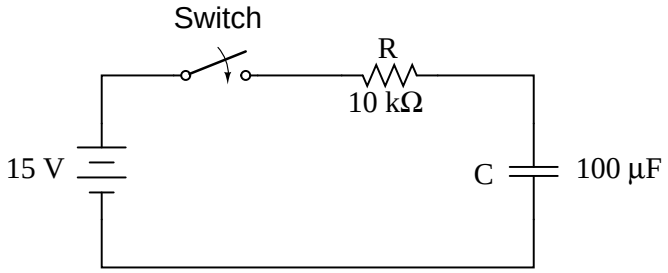
16.1 Electrical transients

This chapter explores the response of capacitors and inductors to sudden changes in DC voltage (called a *transient* voltage), when wired in series with a resistor. Unlike resistors, which respond instantaneously to applied voltage, capacitors and inductors react over time as they absorb and release energy.

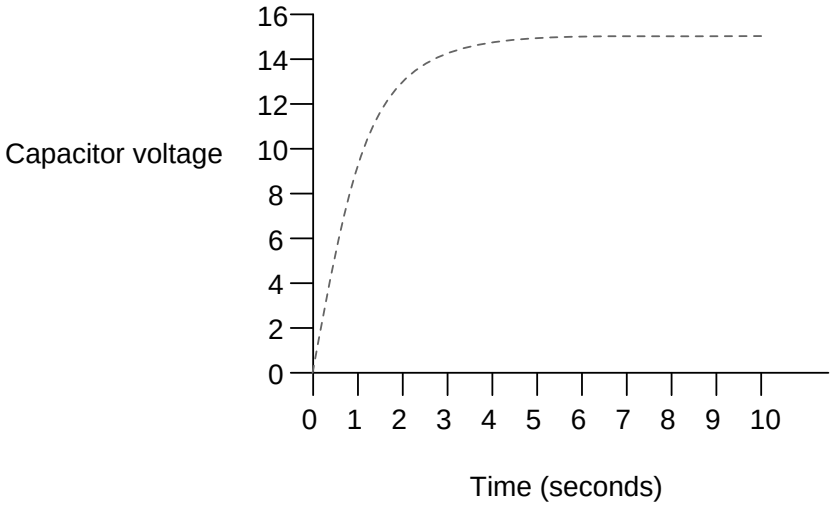
16.2 Capacitor transient response

Because capacitors store energy in the form of an electric field, they tend to act like small secondary-cell batteries, being able to store and release electrical energy. A fully discharged capacitor maintains zero volts across its terminals, and a charged capacitor maintains a steady quantity of voltage across its terminals, just like a battery. When capacitors are placed in a circuit with other sources of voltage, they will absorb energy from those sources, just as a secondary-cell battery will become charged as a result of being connected to a generator. A fully

discharged capacitor, having a terminal voltage of zero, will initially act as a short-circuit when attached to a source of voltage, drawing maximum current as it begins to build a charge. Over time, the capacitor's terminal voltage rises to meet the applied voltage from the source, and the current through the capacitor decreases correspondingly. Once the capacitor has reached the full voltage of the source, it will stop drawing current from it, and behave essentially as an open-circuit.



When the switch is first closed, the voltage across the capacitor (which we were told was fully discharged) is zero volts; thus, it first behaves as though it were a short-circuit. Over time, the capacitor voltage will rise to equal battery voltage, ending in a condition where the capacitor behaves as an open-circuit. Current through the circuit is determined by the difference in voltage between the battery and the capacitor, divided by the resistance of 10 kΩ. As the capacitor voltage approaches the battery voltage, the current approaches zero. Once the capacitor voltage has reached 15 volts, the current will be exactly zero. Let's see how this works using real values:



Time (seconds)	Battery voltage	Capacitor voltage	Current
0	15 V	0 V	1500 uA

0.5	15 V	5.902 V	909.8 uA
1	15 V	9.482 V	551.8 uA
2	15 V	12.970 V	203.0 uA
3	15 V	14.253 V	74.68 uA
4	15 V	14.725 V	27.47 uA
5	15 V	14.899 V	10.11 uA
6	15 V	14.963 V	3.718 uA
10	15 V	14.999 V	0.068 uA

The capacitor voltage's approach to 15 volts and the current's approach to zero over time is what a mathematician would call *asymptotic:* that is, they both approach their final values, getting closer and closer over time, but never exactly reaches their destinations. For all practical purposes, though, we can say that the capacitor voltage will eventually reach 15 volts and that the current will eventually equal zero.

Using the SPICE circuit analysis program, we can chart this asymptotic buildup of capacitor voltage and decay of capacitor current in a more graphical form (capacitor current is plotted in terms of voltage drop across the resistor, using the resistor as a shunt to measure current):

```
capacitor charging
v1 1 0 dc 15
r1 1 2 10k
c1 2 0 100u ic=0
.tran .5 10 uic
.plot tran v(2,0) v(1,2)
.end

legend:
*: v(2)   Capacitor voltage
+: v(1,2) Capacitor current
time             v(2)
(*+)-----------  0.000E+00     5.000E+00     1.000E+01     1.500E+01
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
0.000E+00  5.976E-05 *             .             .             +
5.000E-01  5.881E+00 .             . *         + .             .
1.000E+00  9.474E+00 .             .+            *.            .
1.500E+00  1.166E+01 .        +    .             .    *        .
2.000E+00  1.297E+01 .     +       .             .       *     .
```

```
2.500E+00  1.377E+01 .  +          .              .           *   .
3.000E+00  1.426E+01 . +           .              .            *  .
3.500E+00  1.455E+01 .+            .              .             *.
4.000E+00  1.473E+01 .+            .              .             *.
4.500E+00  1.484E+01 +             .              .              *
5.000E+00  1.490E+01 +             .              .              *
5.500E+00  1.494E+01 +             .              .              *
6.000E+00  1.496E+01 +             .              .              *
6.500E+00  1.498E+01 +             .              .              *
7.000E+00  1.499E+01 +             .              .              *
7.500E+00  1.499E+01 +             .              .              *
8.000E+00  1.500E+01 +             .              .              *
8.500E+00  1.500E+01 +             .              .              *
9.000E+00  1.500E+01 +             .              .              *
9.500E+00  1.500E+01 +             .              .              *
1.000E+01  1.500E+01 +             .              .              *
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

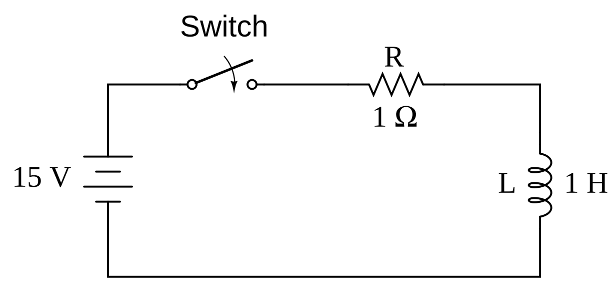
As you can see, I have used the `.plot` command in the netlist instead of the more familiar `.print` command. This generates a pseudo-graphic plot of figures on the computer screen using text characters. SPICE plots graphs in such a way that time is on the vertical axis (going down) and amplitude (voltage/current) is plotted on the horizontal (right=more; left=less). Notice how the voltage increases (to the right of the plot) very quickly at first, then tapering off as time goes on. Current also changes very quickly at first then levels off as time goes on, but it is approaching minimum (left of scale) while voltage approaches maximum.

- **REVIEW:**
- Capacitors act somewhat like secondary-cell batteries when faced with a sudden change in applied voltage: they initially react by producing a high current which tapers off over time.
- A fully discharged capacitor initially acts as a short circuit (current with no voltage drop) when faced with the sudden application of voltage. After charging fully to that level of voltage, it acts as an open circuit (voltage drop with no current).
- In a resistor-capacitor charging circuit, capacitor voltage goes from nothing to full source voltage while current goes from maximum to zero, both variables changing most rapidly at first, approaching their final values slower and slower as time goes on.

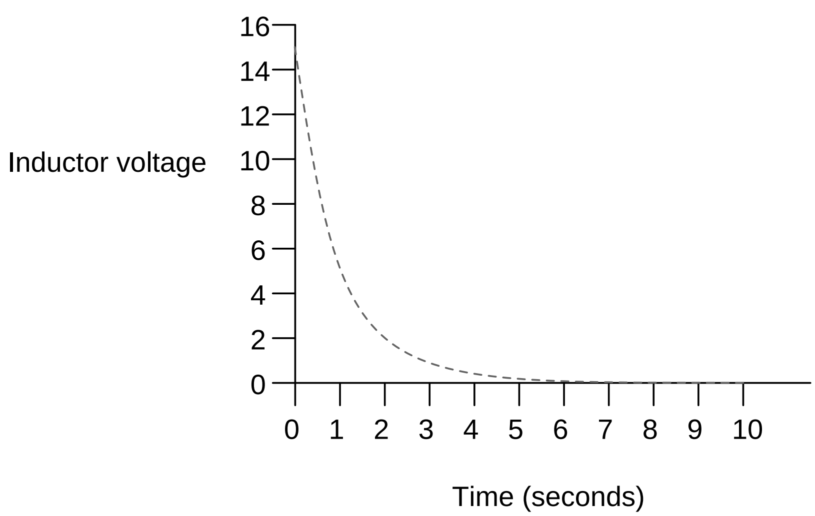
16.3 Inductor transient response

Inductors have the exact opposite characteristics of capacitors. Whereas capacitors store energy in an *electric* field (produced by the voltage between two plates), inductors store energy in a *magnetic* field (produced by the current through wire). Thus, while the stored energy in a capacitor tries to maintain a constant voltage across its terminals, the stored energy in an

inductor tries to maintain a constant current through its windings. Because of this, inductors oppose changes in current, and act precisely the opposite of capacitors, which oppose changes in voltage. A fully discharged inductor (no magnetic field), having zero current through it, will initially act as an open-circuit when attached to a source of voltage (as it tries to maintain zero current), dropping maximum voltage across its leads. Over time, the inductor's current rises to the maximum value allowed by the circuit, and the terminal voltage decreases correspondingly. Once the inductor's terminal voltage has decreased to a minimum (zero for a "perfect" inductor), the current will stay at a maximum level, and it will behave essentially as a short-circuit.



When the switch is first closed, the voltage across the inductor will immediately jump to battery voltage (acting as though it were an open-circuit) and decay down to zero over time (eventually acting as though it were a short-circuit). Voltage across the inductor is determined by calculating how much voltage is being dropped across R, given the current through the inductor, and subtracting that voltage value from the battery to see what's left. When the switch is first closed, the current is zero, then it increases over time until it is equal to the battery voltage divided by the series resistance of 1 Ω. This behavior is precisely opposite that of the series resistor-capacitor circuit, where current started at a maximum and capacitor voltage at zero. Let's see how this works using real values:



- -

Time (seconds)	Battery voltage	Inductor voltage	Current
0	15 V	15 V	0
0.5	15 V	9.098 V	5.902 A
1	15 V	5.518 V	9.482 A
2	15 V	2.030 V	12.97 A
3	15 V	0.747 V	14.25 A
4	15 V	0.275 V	14.73 A
5	15 V	0.101 V	14.90 A
6	15 V	37.181 mV	14.96 A
10	15 V	0.681 mV	14.99 A

Just as with the RC circuit, the inductor voltage's approach to 0 volts and the current's approach to 15 amps over time is *asymptotic*. For all practical purposes, though, we can say that the inductor voltage will eventually reach 0 volts and that the current will eventually equal the maximum of 15 amps.

Again, we can use the SPICE circuit analysis program to chart this asymptotic decay of inductor voltage and buildup of inductor current in a more graphical form (inductor current is plotted in terms of voltage drop across the resistor, using the resistor as a shunt to measure current):

```
inductor charging
v1 1 0 dc 15
r1 1 2 1
l1 2 0 1 ic=0
.tran .5 10 uic
.plot tran v(2,0) v(1,2)
.end

legend:
*: v(2)   Inductor voltage
+: v(1,2) Inductor current
time             v(2)
(*+)------------ 0.000E+00     5.000E+00     1.000E+01     1.500E+01
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
0.000E+00  1.500E+01 +             .             .             *
```

```
5.000E-01  9.119E+00 .              . +          * .               .
1.000E+00  5.526E+00 .              .*            +.               .
1.500E+00  3.343E+00 .         *    .               .    +         .
2.000E+00  2.026E+00 .      *       .               .        +     .
2.500E+00  1.226E+00 .  *           .               .            +  .
3.000E+00  7.429E-01 . *            .               .             + .
3.500E+00  4.495E-01 .*             .               .              +.
4.000E+00  2.724E-01 .*             .               .              +.
4.500E+00  1.648E-01 *              .               .               +
5.000E+00  9.987E-02 *              .               .               +
5.500E+00  6.042E-02 *              .               .               +
6.000E+00  3.662E-02 *              .               .               +
6.500E+00  2.215E-02 *              .               .               +
7.000E+00  1.343E-02 *              .               .               +
7.500E+00  8.123E-03 *              .               .               +
8.000E+00  4.922E-03 *              .               .               +
8.500E+00  2.978E-03 *              .               .               +
9.000E+00  1.805E-03 *              .               .               +
9.500E+00  1.092E-03 *              .               .               +
1.000E+01  6.591E-04 *              .               .               +
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

Notice how the voltage decreases (to the left of the plot) very quickly at first, then tapering off as time goes on. Current also changes very quickly at first then levels off as time goes on, but it is approaching maximum (right of scale) while voltage approaches minimum.

- **REVIEW:**
- A fully ”discharged” inductor (no current through it) initially acts as an open circuit (voltage drop with no current) when faced with the sudden application of voltage. After ”charging” fully to the final level of current, it acts as a short circuit (current with no voltage drop).
- In a resistor-inductor ”charging” circuit, inductor current goes from nothing to full value while voltage goes from maximum to zero, both variables changing most rapidly at first, approaching their final values slower and slower as time goes on.

16.4 Voltage and current calculations

There’s a sure way to calculate any of the values in a reactive DC circuit over time. The first step is to identify the starting and final values for whatever quantity the capacitor or inductor opposes change in; that is, whatever quantity the reactive component is trying to hold constant. For capacitors, this quantity is *voltage*; for inductors, this quantity is *current*. When the switch in a circuit is closed (or opened), the reactive component will attempt to maintain that quantity at the same level as it was before the switch transition, so that value is to be used for the ”starting” value. The final value for this quantity is whatever that quantity will

be after an infinite amount of time. This can be determined by analyzing a capacitive circuit as though the capacitor was an open-circuit, and an inductive circuit as though the inductor was a short-circuit, because that is what these components behave as when they've reached "full charge," after an infinite amount of time.

The next step is to calculate the *time constant* of the circuit: the amount of time it takes for voltage or current values to change approximately 63 percent from their starting values to their final values in a transient situation. In a series RC circuit, the time constant is equal to the total resistance in ohms multiplied by the total capacitance in farads. For a series L/R circuit, it is the total inductance in henrys divided by the total resistance in ohms. In either case, the time constant is expressed in units of *seconds* and symbolized by the Greek letter "tau" (τ):

For resistor-capacitor circuits:

$$\tau = RC$$

For resistor-inductor circuits:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R}$$

The rise and fall of circuit values such as voltage and current in response to a transient is, as was mentioned before, asymptotic. Being so, the values begin to rapidly change soon after the transient and settle down over time. If plotted on a graph, the approach to the final values of voltage and current form exponential curves.

As was stated before, one time constant is the amount of time it takes for any of these values to change about 63 percent from their starting values to their (ultimate) final values. For every time constant, these values move (approximately) 63 percent closer to their eventual goal. The mathematical formula for determining the precise percentage is quite simple:

$$\text{Percentage of change} = \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/\tau}}\right) \times 100\%$$

The letter *e* stands for Euler's constant, which is approximately 2.7182818. It is derived from calculus techniques, after mathematically analyzing the asymptotic approach of the circuit values. After one time constant's worth of time, the percentage of change from starting value to final value is:

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{1}}\right) \times 100\% = 63.212\%$$

After two time constant's worth of time, the percentage of change from starting value to final value is:

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{2}}\right) \times 100\% = 86.466\%$$

After ten time constant's worth of time, the percentage is:

$$\left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{10}}\right) \text{ x } 100\% = 99.995\%$$

The more time that passes since the transient application of voltage from the battery, the larger the value of the denominator in the fraction, which makes for a smaller value for the whole fraction, which makes for a grand total (1 minus the fraction) approaching 1, or 100 percent.

We can make a more universal formula out of this one for the determination of voltage and current values in transient circuits, by multiplying this quantity by the difference between the final and starting circuit values:

Universal Time Constant Formula

$$\text{Change} = (\text{Final-Start})\left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/\tau}}\right)$$

Where,

Final = Value of calculated variable after infinite time (its *ultimate* value)

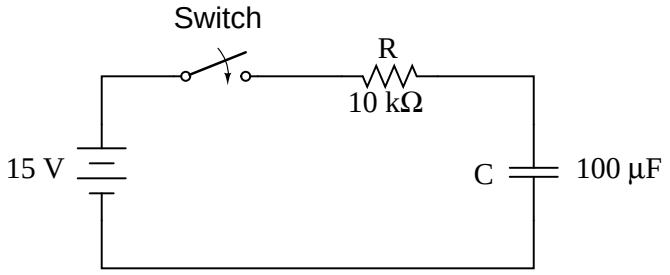
Start = Initial value of calculated variable

e = Euler's number (≈2.7182818)

t = Time in seconds

τ = Time constant for circuit in seconds

Let's analyze the voltage rise on the series resistor-capacitor circuit shown at the beginning of the chapter.



Note that we're choosing to analyze voltage because that is the quantity capacitors tend to hold constant. Although the formula works quite well for current, the starting and final values for current are actually derived from the capacitor's voltage, so calculating voltage is a more direct method. The resistance is 10 kΩ, and the capacitance is 100 μF (microfarads). Since the time constant (τ) for an RC circuit is the product of resistance and capacitance, we obtain a value of 1 second:

$\tau = RC$

$\tau = (10\ k\Omega)(100\ \mu F)$

$\tau = 1$ second

If the capacitor starts in a totally discharged state (0 volts), then we can use that value of voltage for a "starting" value. The final value, of course, will be the battery voltage (15 volts). Our universal formula for capacitor voltage in this circuit looks like this:

$$\text{Change} = (\text{Final-Start}) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/\tau}} \right)$$

$$\text{Change} = (15\ V - 0\ V) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/1}} \right)$$

So, after 7.25 seconds of applying voltage through the closed switch, our capacitor voltage will have increased by:

$$\text{Change} = (15\ V - 0\ V) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{7.25/1}} \right)$$

$$\text{Change} = (15\ V - 0\ V)(0.99929)$$

$$\text{Change} = 14.989\ V$$

Since we started at a capacitor voltage of 0 volts, this increase of 14.989 volts means that we have 14.989 volts after 7.25 seconds.

The same formula will work for determining current in that circuit, too. Since we know that a discharged capacitor initially acts like a short-circuit, the starting current will be the maximum amount possible: 15 volts (from the battery) divided by 10 kΩ (the only opposition to current in the circuit at the beginning):

$$\text{Starting current} = \frac{15\ V}{10\ k\Omega}$$

$$\text{Starting current} = 1.5\ mA$$

We also know that the final current will be zero, since the capacitor will eventually behave as an open-circuit, meaning that eventually no electrons will flow in the circuit. Now that we know both the starting and final current values, we can use our universal formula to determine the current after 7.25 seconds of switch closure in the same RC circuit:

$$\text{Change} = (0 \text{ mA} - 1.5 \text{ mA}) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{7.25/1}}\right)$$

$$\text{Change} = (0 \text{ mA} - 1.5 \text{ mA})(0.99929)$$

$$\text{Change} = -1.4989 \text{ mA}$$

Note that the figure obtained for change is negative, not positive! This tells us that current has *decreased* rather than increased with the passage of time. Since we started at a current of 1.5 mA, this decrease (-1.4989 mA) means that we have 0.001065 mA (1.065 μA) after 7.25 seconds.

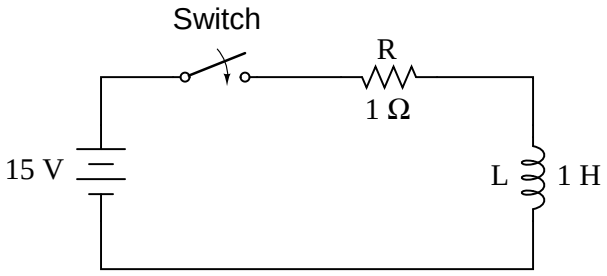
We could have also determined the circuit current at time=7.25 seconds by subtracting the capacitor's voltage (14.989 volts) from the battery's voltage (15 volts) to obtain the voltage drop across the 10 kΩ resistor, then figuring current through the resistor (and the whole series circuit) with Ohm's Law (I=E/R). Either way, we should obtain the same answer:

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

$$I = \frac{15 \text{ V} - 14.989 \text{ V}}{10 \text{ k}\Omega}$$

$$I = 1.065 \text{ }\mu\text{A}$$

The universal time constant formula also works well for analyzing inductive circuits. Let's apply it to our example L/R circuit in the beginning of the chapter:



With an inductance of 1 henry and a series resistance of 1 Ω, our time constant is equal to 1 second:

$$\tau = \frac{L}{R}$$

$$\tau = \frac{1 \text{ H}}{1 \text{ }\Omega}$$

$$\tau = 1 \text{ second}$$

Because this is an inductive circuit, and we know that inductors oppose change in current, we'll set up our time constant formula for starting and final values of current. If we start with the switch in the open position, the current will be equal to zero, so zero is our starting current value. After the switch has been left closed for a long time, the current will settle out to its final value, equal to the source voltage divided by the total circuit resistance (I=E/R), or 15 amps in the case of this circuit.

If we desired to determine the value of current at 3.5 seconds, we would apply the universal time constant formula as such:

$$\text{Change} = (15\text{ A} - 0\text{ A})\left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{3.5/1}}\right)$$

$$\text{Change} = (15\text{ A} - 0\text{ A})(0.9698)$$

$$\text{Change} = 14.547\text{ A}$$

Given the fact that our starting current was zero, this leaves us at a circuit current of 14.547 amps at 3.5 seconds' time.

Determining voltage in an inductive circuit is best accomplished by first figuring circuit current and then calculating voltage drops across resistances to find what's left to drop across the inductor. With only one resistor in our example circuit (having a value of 1 Ω), this is rather easy:

$$E_R = (14.547\text{ A})(1\ \Omega)$$

$$E_R = 14.547\text{ V}$$

Subtracted from our battery voltage of 15 volts, this leaves 0.453 volts across the inductor at time=3.5 seconds.

$$E_L = E_{battery} - E_R$$

$$E_L = 15\text{ V} - 14.547\text{ V}$$

$$E_L = 0.453\text{ V}$$

- **REVIEW:**

- Universal Time Constant Formula:

Universal Time Constant Formula

$$\text{Change} = (\text{Final-Start})\left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/\tau}}\right)$$

Where,

Final = Value of calculated variable after infinite time (its *ultimate* value)

Start = Initial value of calculated variable

e = Euler's number (≈2.7182818)

t = Time in seconds

τ = Time constant for circuit in seconds

- To analyze an RC or L/R circuit, follow these steps:
- (1): Determine the time constant for the circuit (RC or L/R).
- (2): Identify the quantity to be calculated (whatever quantity whose change is directly opposed by the reactive component. For capacitors this is voltage; for inductors this is current).
- (3): Determine the starting and final values for that quantity.
- (4): Plug all these values (Final, Start, time, time constant) into the universal time constant formula and solve for *change* in quantity.
- (5): If the starting value was zero, then the actual value at the specified time is equal to the calculated change given by the universal formula. If not, add the change to the starting value to find out where you're at.

16.5 Why L/R and not LR?

It is often perplexing to new students of electronics why the time-constant calculation for an inductive circuit is different from that of a capacitive circuit. For a resistor-capacitor circuit, the time constant (in seconds) is calculated from the product (multiplication) of resistance in ohms and capacitance in farads: τ=RC. However, for a resistor-inductor circuit, the time constant is calculated from the quotient (division) of inductance in henrys over the resistance in ohms: τ=L/R.

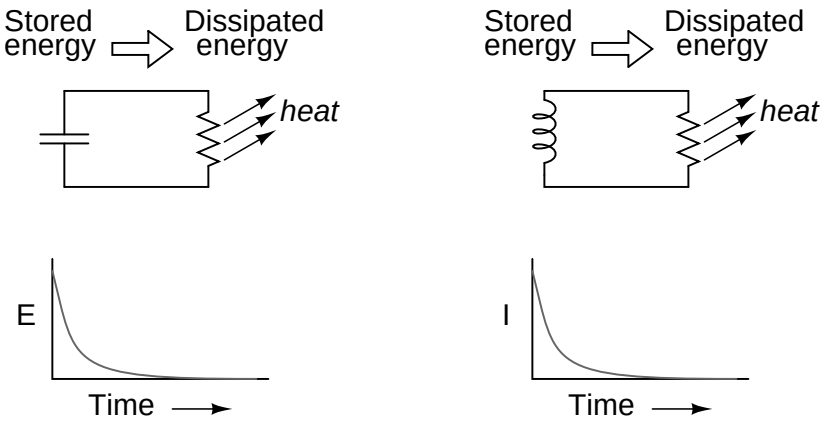
This difference in calculation has a profound impact on the *qualitative* analysis of transient circuit response. Resistor-capacitor circuits respond quicker with low resistance and slower with high resistance; resistor-inductor circuits are just the opposite, responding quicker with high resistance and slower with low resistance. While capacitive circuits seem to present no intuitive trouble for the new student, inductive circuits tend to make less sense.

Key to the understanding of transient circuits is a firm grasp on the concept of energy transfer and the electrical nature of it. Both capacitors and inductors have the ability to store

quantities of energy, the capacitor storing energy in the medium of an electric field and the inductor storing energy in the medium of a magnetic field. A capacitor's electrostatic energy storage manifests itself in the tendency to maintain a constant voltage across the terminals. An inductor's electromagnetic energy storage manifests itself in the tendency to maintain a constant current through it.

Let's consider what happens to each of these reactive components in a condition of *discharge*: that is, when energy is being released from the capacitor or inductor to be dissipated in the form of heat by a resistor:

Capacitor and inductor discharge

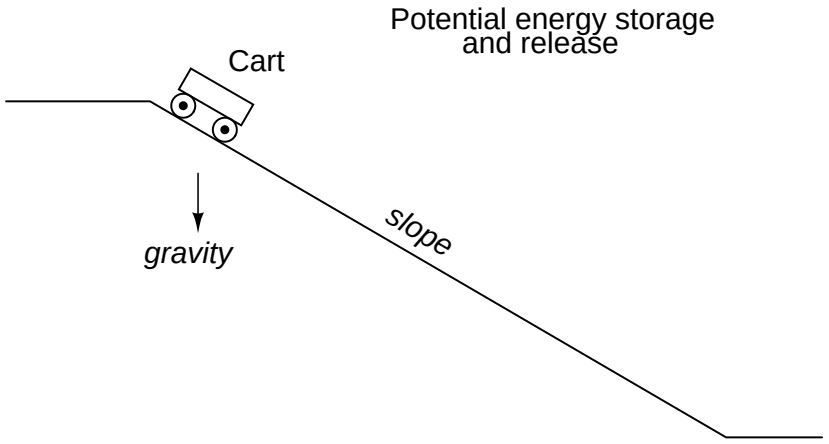


In either case, heat dissipated by the resistor constitutes energy *leaving* the circuit, and as a consequence the reactive component loses its store of energy over time, resulting in a measurable decrease of either voltage (capacitor) or current (inductor) expressed on the graph. The more power dissipated by the resistor, the faster this discharging action will occur, because power is by definition the rate of energy transfer over time.

Therefore, a transient circuit's time constant will be dependent upon the resistance of the circuit. Of course, it is also dependent upon the size (storage capacity) of the reactive component, but since the relationship of resistance to time constant is the issue of this section, we'll focus on the effects of resistance alone. A circuit's time constant will be less (faster discharging rate) if the resistance value is such that it maximizes power dissipation (rate of energy transfer into heat). For a capacitive circuit where stored energy manifests itself in the form of a voltage, this means the resistor must have a low resistance value so as to maximize current for any given amount of voltage (given voltage times high current equals high power). For an inductive circuit where stored energy manifests itself in the form of a current, this means the resistor must have a high resistance value so as to maximize voltage drop for any given amount of current (given current times high voltage equals high power).

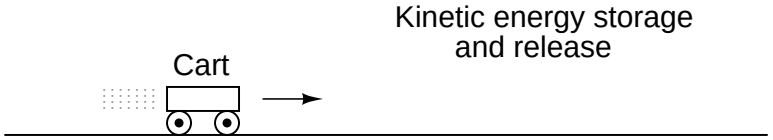
This may be analogously understood by considering capacitive and inductive energy storage in mechanical terms. Capacitors, storing energy electrostatically, are reservoirs of *potential energy*. Inductors, storing energy electromagnetically (electro*dynamically*), are reservoirs of *kinetic energy*. In mechanical terms, potential energy can be illustrated by a suspended mass,

while kinetic energy can be illustrated by a moving mass. Consider the following illustration as an analogy of a capacitor:



The cart, sitting at the top of a slope, possesses potential energy due to the influence of gravity and its elevated position on the hill. If we consider the cart's braking system to be analogous to the resistance of the system and the cart itself to be the capacitor, what resistance value would facilitate rapid release of that potential energy? Minimum resistance (no brakes) would diminish the cart's altitude quickest, of course! Without any braking action, the cart will freely roll downhill, thus expending that potential energy as it loses height. With maximum braking action (brakes firmly set), the cart will refuse to roll (or it will roll very slowly) and it will hold its potential energy for a long period of time. Likewise, a capacitive circuit will discharge rapidly if its resistance is low and discharge slowly if its resistance is high.

Now let's consider a mechanical analogy for an inductor, showing its stored energy in kinetic form:

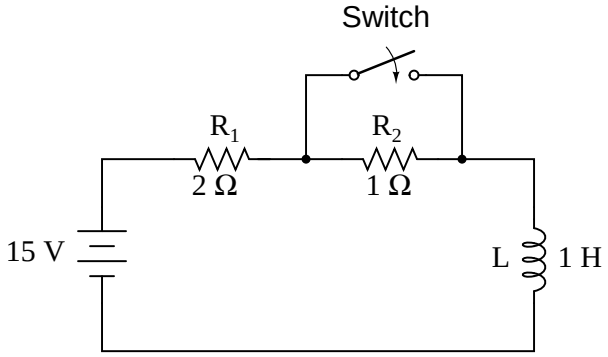


This time the cart is on level ground, already moving. Its energy is kinetic (motion), not potential (height). Once again if we consider the cart's braking system to be analogous to circuit resistance and the cart itself to be the inductor, what resistance value would facilitate rapid release of that kinetic energy? Maximum resistance (maximum braking action) would slow it down quickest, of course! With maximum braking action, the cart will quickly grind to a halt, thus expending its kinetic energy as it slows down. Without any braking action, the cart will be free to roll on indefinitely (barring any other sources of friction like aerodynamic drag and rolling resistance), and it will hold its kinetic energy for a long period of time. Likewise, an inductive circuit will discharge rapidly if its resistance is high and discharge slowly if its resistance is low.

Hopefully this explanation sheds more light on the subject of time constants and resistance, and why the relationship between the two is opposite for capacitive and inductive circuits.

16.6 Complex voltage and current calculations

There are circumstances when you may need to analyze a DC reactive circuit when the starting values of voltage and current are not respective of a fully "discharged" state. In other words, the capacitor might start at a partially-charged condition instead of starting at zero volts, and an inductor might start with some amount of current already through it, instead of zero as we have been assuming so far. Take this circuit as an example, starting with the switch open and finishing with the switch in the closed position:



Since this is an inductive circuit, we'll start our analysis by determining the start and end values for *current*. This step is vitally important when analyzing inductive circuits, as the starting and ending *voltage* can only be known after the current has been determined! With the switch open (starting condition), there is a total (series) resistance of 3 Ω, which limits the final current in the circuit to 5 amps:

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

$$I = \frac{15\ V}{3\ \Omega}$$

$$I = 5\ A$$

So, before the switch is even closed, we have a current through the inductor of 5 amps, rather than starting from 0 amps as in the previous inductor example. With the switch closed (the final condition), the 1 Ω resistor is shorted across (bypassed), which changes the circuit's total resistance to 2 Ω. With the switch closed, the final value for current through the inductor would then be:

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

$$I = \frac{15\ V}{2\ \Omega}$$

$$I = 7.5\ A$$

So, the inductor in this circuit has a starting current of 5 amps and an ending current of 7.5 amps. Since the "timing" will take place during the time that the switch is closed and R_2 is shorted past, we need to calculate our time constant from L_1 and R_1: 1 Henry divided by 2 Ω, or τ = 1/2 second. With these values, we can calculate what will happen to the current over time. The voltage across the inductor will be calculated by multiplying the current by 2 (to arrive at the voltage across the 2 Ω resistor), then subtracting that from 15 volts to see what's left. If you realize that the voltage across the inductor starts at 5 volts (when the switch is first closed) and decays to 0 volts over time, you can also use these figures for starting/ending values in the general formula and derive the same results:

$$\text{Change} = (7.5\text{ A} - 5\text{ A}) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/0.5}}\right) \quad \textit{Calculating current}$$

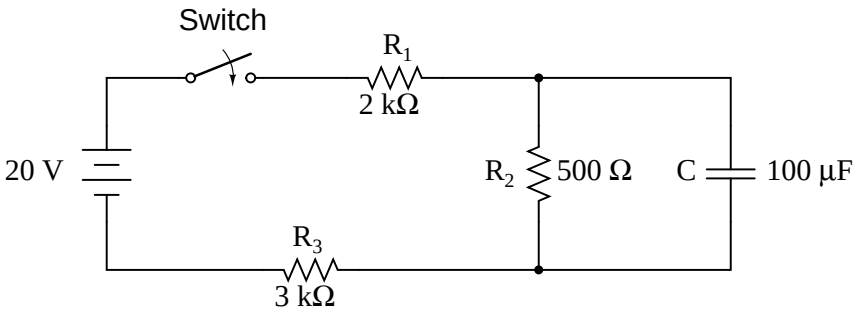
. . . or . . .

$$\text{Change} = (0\text{ V} - 5\text{ V}) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/0.5}}\right) \quad \textit{Calculating voltage}$$

Time (seconds)	Battery voltage	Inductor voltage	Current
0	15 V	5 V	5 A
0.1	15 V	4.094 V	5.453 A
0.25	15 V	3.033 V	5.984 A
0.5	15 V	1.839 V	6.580 A
1	15 V	0.677 V	7.162 A
2	15 V	0.092 V	7.454 A
3	15 V	0.012 V	7.494 A

16.7 Complex circuits

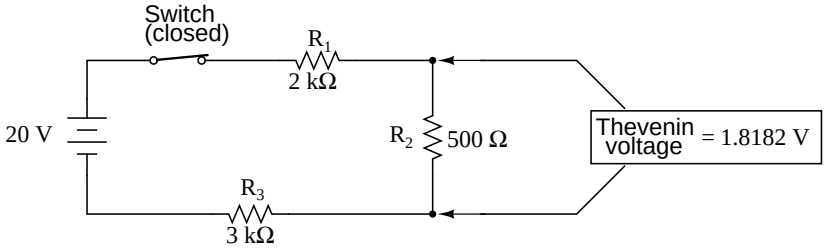
What do we do if we come across a circuit more complex than the simple series configurations we've seen so far? Take this circuit as an example:



The simple time constant formula (τ=RC) is based on a simple series resistance connected to the capacitor. For that matter, the time constant formula for an inductive circuit (τ=L/R) is also based on the assumption of a simple series resistance. So, what can we do in a situation like this, where resistors are connected in a series-parallel fashion with the capacitor (or inductor)?

The answer comes from our studies in network analysis. Thevenin's Theorem tells us that we can reduce *any* linear circuit to an equivalent of one voltage source, one series resistance, and a load component through a couple of simple steps. To apply Thevenin's Theorem to our scenario here, we'll regard the reactive component (in the above example circuit, the capacitor) as the load and remove it temporarily from the circuit to find the Thevenin voltage and Thevenin resistance. Then, once we've determined the Thevenin equivalent circuit values, we'll re-connect the capacitor and solve for values of voltage or current over time as we've been doing so far.

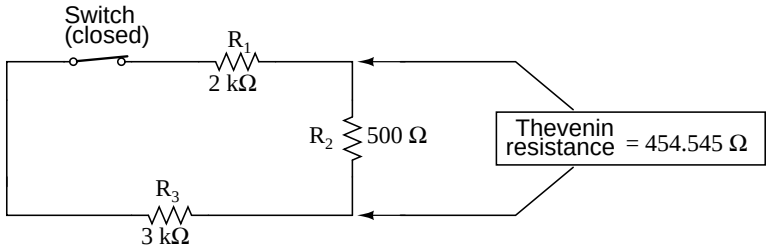
After identifying the capacitor as the "load," we remove it from the circuit and solve for voltage across the load terminals (assuming, of course, that the switch is closed):



	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	7.273	1.818	10.909	20	Volts
I	3.636m	3.636m	3.636m	3.636m	Amps
R	2k	500	3k	5.5k	Ohms

This step of the analysis tells us that the voltage across the load terminals (same as that across resistor R_2) will be 1.8182 volts with no load connected. With a little reflection, it should be clear that this will be our final voltage across the capacitor, seeing as how a fully-charged capacitor acts like an open circuit, drawing zero current. We will use this voltage value for our Thevenin equivalent circuit source voltage.

Now, to solve for our Thevenin resistance, we need to eliminate all power sources in the original circuit and calculate resistance as seen from the load terminals:

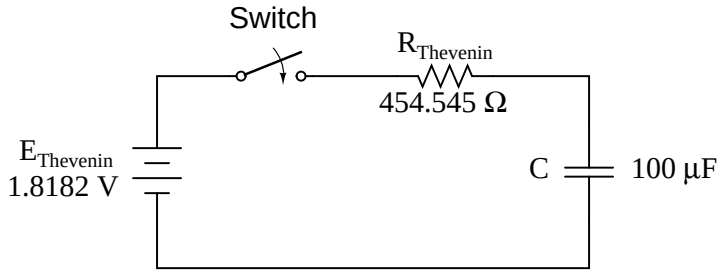


$R_{Thevenin} = R_2 \,//\, (R_1 \text{ -- } R_3)$

$R_{Thevenin} = 500\ \Omega \,//\, (2\ k\Omega + 3\ k\Omega)$

$R_{Thevenin} = 454.545\ \Omega$

Re-drawing our circuit as a Thevenin equivalent, we get this:



Our time constant for this circuit will be equal to the Thevenin resistance times the capacitance (τ=RC). With the above values, we calculate:

$\tau = RC$

$\tau = (454.545\ \Omega)(100\ \mu F)$

$\tau = 45.4545$ milliseconds

Now, we can solve for voltage across the capacitor directly with our universal time constant formula. Let's calculate for a value of 60 milliseconds. Because this is a capacitive formula, we'll set our calculations up for voltage:

$$\text{Change} = (\text{Final} - \text{Start}) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/\tau}}\right)$$

$$\text{Change} = (1.8182\ \text{V} - 0\ \text{V}) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{60\text{m}/45.4545\text{m}}}\right)$$

$$\text{Change} = (1.8182\ \text{V})(0.73286)$$

$$\text{Change} = 1.3325\ \text{V}$$

Again, because our starting value for capacitor voltage was assumed to be zero, the actual voltage across the capacitor at 60 milliseconds is equal to the amount of voltage change from zero, or 1.3325 volts.

We could go a step further and demonstrate the equivalence of the Thevenin RC circuit and the original circuit through computer analysis. I will use the SPICE analysis program to demonstrate this:

```
Comparison RC analysis
* first, the netlist for the original circuit:
v1 1 0 dc 20
r1 1 2 2k
r2 2 3 500
r3 3 0 3k
c1 2 3 100u ic=0
* then, the netlist for the thevenin equivalent:
v2 4 0 dc 1.818182
r4 4 5 454.545
c2 5 0 100u ic=0
* now, we analyze for a transient, sampling every .005 seconds
* over a time period of .37 seconds total, printing a list of
* values for voltage across the capacitor in the original
* circuit (between modes 2 and 3) and across the capacitor in
* the thevenin equivalent circuit (between nodes 5 and 0)
.tran .005 0.37 uic
.print tran v(2,3) v(5,0)
.end

time          v(2,3)      v(5)
0.000E+00     4.803E-06   4.803E-06
5.000E-03     1.890E-01   1.890E-01
1.000E-02     3.580E-01   3.580E-01
1.500E-02     5.082E-01   5.082E-01
2.000E-02     6.442E-01   6.442E-01
2.500E-02     7.689E-01   7.689E-01
3.000E-02     8.772E-01   8.772E-01
```

```
3.500E-02     9.747E-01   9.747E-01
4.000E-02     1.064E+00   1.064E+00
4.500E-02     1.142E+00   1.142E+00
5.000E-02     1.212E+00   1.212E+00
5.500E-02     1.276E+00   1.276E+00
6.000E-02     1.333E+00   1.333E+00
6.500E-02     1.383E+00   1.383E+00
7.000E-02     1.429E+00   1.429E+00
7.500E-02     1.470E+00   1.470E+00
8.000E-02     1.505E+00   1.505E+00
8.500E-02     1.538E+00   1.538E+00
9.000E-02     1.568E+00   1.568E+00
9.500E-02     1.594E+00   1.594E+00
1.000E-01     1.617E+00   1.617E+00
1.050E-01     1.638E+00   1.638E+00
1.100E-01     1.657E+00   1.657E+00
1.150E-01     1.674E+00   1.674E+00
1.200E-01     1.689E+00   1.689E+00
1.250E-01     1.702E+00   1.702E+00
1.300E-01     1.714E+00   1.714E+00
1.350E-01     1.725E+00   1.725E+00
1.400E-01     1.735E+00   1.735E+00
1.450E-01     1.744E+00   1.744E+00
1.500E-01     1.752E+00   1.752E+00
1.550E-01     1.758E+00   1.758E+00
1.600E-01     1.765E+00   1.765E+00
1.650E-01     1.770E+00   1.770E+00
1.700E-01     1.775E+00   1.775E+00
1.750E-01     1.780E+00   1.780E+00
1.800E-01     1.784E+00   1.784E+00
1.850E-01     1.787E+00   1.787E+00
1.900E-01     1.791E+00   1.791E+00
1.950E-01     1.793E+00   1.793E+00
2.000E-01     1.796E+00   1.796E+00
2.050E-01     1.798E+00   1.798E+00
2.100E-01     1.800E+00   1.800E+00
2.150E-01     1.802E+00   1.802E+00
2.200E-01     1.804E+00   1.804E+00
2.250E-01     1.805E+00   1.805E+00
2.300E-01     1.807E+00   1.807E+00
2.350E-01     1.808E+00   1.808E+00
2.400E-01     1.809E+00   1.809E+00
2.450E-01     1.810E+00   1.810E+00
2.500E-01     1.811E+00   1.811E+00
2.550E-01     1.812E+00   1.812E+00
2.600E-01     1.812E+00   1.812E+00
```

```
2.650E-01     1.813E+00   1.813E+00
2.700E-01     1.813E+00   1.813E+00
2.750E-01     1.814E+00   1.814E+00
2.800E-01     1.814E+00   1.814E+00
2.850E-01     1.815E+00   1.815E+00
2.900E-01     1.815E+00   1.815E+00
2.950E-01     1.815E+00   1.815E+00
3.000E-01     1.816E+00   1.816E+00
3.050E-01     1.816E+00   1.816E+00
3.100E-01     1.816E+00   1.816E+00
3.150E-01     1.816E+00   1.816E+00
3.200E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.250E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.300E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.350E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.400E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.450E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.500E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.550E-01     1.817E+00   1.817E+00
3.600E-01     1.818E+00   1.818E+00
3.650E-01     1.818E+00   1.818E+00
3.700E-01     1.818E+00   1.818E+00
```

At every step along the way of the analysis, the capacitors in the two circuits (original circuit versus Thevenin equivalent circuit) are at equal voltage, thus demonstrating the equivalence of the two circuits.

- **REVIEW:**

- To analyze an RC or L/R circuit more complex than simple series, convert the circuit into a Thevenin equivalent by treating the reactive component (capacitor or inductor) as the ”load” and reducing everything else to an equivalent circuit of one voltage source and one series resistor. Then, analyze what happens over time with the universal time constant formula.

16.8 Solving for unknown time

Sometimes it is necessary to determine the length of time that a reactive circuit will take to reach a predetermined value. This is especially true in cases where we’re designing an RC or L/R circuit to perform a precise timing function. To calculate this, we need to modify our ”Universal time constant formula.” The original formula looks like this:

$$\text{Change} = (\text{Final-Start}) \left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/\tau}} \right) = (\text{Final-Start}) \left(1 - e^{-t/\tau} \right)$$

However, we want to solve for time, not the amount of change. To do this, we algebraically manipulate the formula so that time is all by itself on one side of the equal sign, with all the rest on the other side:

$$\text{Change} = (\text{Final-Start})\left(1 - e^{-t/\tau}\right)$$

$$\left(1 - \frac{\text{Change}}{\text{Final-Start}}\right) = e^{-t/\tau}$$

$$\ln\left(1 - \frac{\text{Change}}{\text{Final-Start}}\right) = \ln\left(e^{-t/\tau}\right)$$

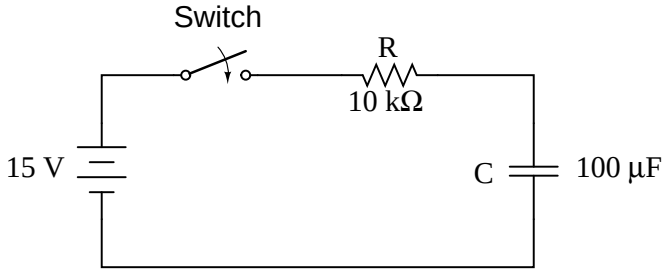
$$t = -\tau\left(\ln\left(1 - \frac{\text{Change}}{\text{Final - Start}}\right)\right)$$

The *ln* designation just to the right of the time constant term is the *natural logarithm* function: the exact reverse of taking the power of *e*. In fact, the two functions (powers of e and natural logarithms) can be related as such:

If $e^x = a$, then $\ln a = x$.

If $e^x = a$, then the natural logarithm of a will give you x: the power that *e* must be was raised to in order to produce *a*.

Let's see how this all works on a real example circuit. Taking the same resistor-capacitor circuit from the beginning of the chapter, we can work "backwards" from previously determined values of voltage to find how long it took to get there.



The time constant is still the same amount: 1 second (10 kΩ times 100 μF), and the starting/final values remain unchanged as well (E_C = 0 volts starting and 15 volts final). According to our chart at the beginning of the chapter, the capacitor would be charged to 12.970 volts at the end of 2 seconds. Let's plug 12.970 volts in as the "Change" for our new formula and see if we arrive at an answer of 2 seconds:

$$t = -(1 \text{ second})\left(\ln\left(1 - \frac{12.970 \text{ V}}{15 \text{ V} - 0 \text{ V}}\right)\right)$$

$$t = -(1 \text{ second})(\ln 0.13534))$$

$$t = (1 \text{ second})(2)$$

$$t = 2 \text{ seconds}$$

Indeed, we end up with a value of 2 seconds for the time it takes to go from 0 to 12.970 volts across the capacitor. This variation of the universal time constant formula will work for all capacitive and inductive circuits, both "charging" and "discharging," provided the proper values of time constant, Start, Final, and Change are properly determined beforehand. Remember, the most important step in solving these problems is the initial set-up. After that, its just a lot of button-pushing on your calculator!

- **REVIEW:**
- To determine the time it takes for an RC or L/R circuit to reach a certain value of voltage or current, you'll have to modify the universal time constant formula to solve for *time* instead of *change*.
- $$t = -\tau \left(\ln\left(1 - \frac{\text{Change}}{\text{Final - Start}}\right)\right)$$
- The mathematical function for reversing an exponent of "e" is the natural logarithm (ln), provided on any scientific calculator.

16.9 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Appendix A-1

ABOUT THIS BOOK

A-1.1 Purpose

They say that necessity is the mother of invention. At least in the case of this book, that adage is true. As an industrial electronics instructor, I was forced to use a sub-standard textbook during my first year of teaching. My students were daily frustrated with the many typographical errors and obscure explanations in this book, having spent much time at home struggling to comprehend the material within. Worse yet were the many incorrect answers in the back of the book to selected problems. Adding insult to injury was the $100+ price.

Contacting the publisher proved to be an exercise in futility. Even though the particular text I was using had been in print and in popular use for a couple of years, they claimed my complaint was the first they'd ever heard. My request to review the draft for the next edition of their book was met with disinterest on their part, and I resolved to find an alternative text.

Finding a suitable alternative was more difficult than I had imagined. Sure, there were plenty of texts in print, but the really good books seemed a bit too heavy on the math and the less intimidating books omitted a lot of information I felt was important. Some of the best books were out of print, and those that were still being printed were quite expensive.

It was out of frustration that I compiled *Lessons in Electric Circuits* from notes and ideas I had been collecting for years. My primary goal was to put readable, high-quality information into the hands of my students, but a secondary goal was to make the book as affordable as possible. Over the years, I had experienced the benefit of receiving free instruction and encouragement in my pursuit of learning electronics from many people, including several teachers of mine in elementary and high school. Their selfless assistance played a key role in my own studies, paving the way for a rewarding career and fascinating hobby. If only I could extend the gift of their help by giving to other people what they gave to me . . .

So, I decided to make the book freely available. More than that, I decided to make it "open," following the same development model used in the making of free software (most notably the various UNIX utilities released by the Free Software Foundation, and the Linux operating

system, whose fame is growing even as I write). The goal was to copyright the text – so as to protect my authorship – but expressly allow anyone to distribute and/or modify the text to suit their own needs with a minimum of legal encumbrance. This willful and formal revoking of standard distribution limitations under copyright is whimsically termed *copyleft*. Anyone can "copyleft" their creative work simply by appending a notice to that effect on their work, but several Licenses already exist, covering the fine legal points in great detail.

The first such License I applied to my work was the GPL – General Public License – of the Free Software Foundation (GNU). The GPL, however, is intended to copyleft works of computer software, and although its introductory language is broad enough to cover works of text, its wording is not as clear as it could be for that application. When other, less specific copyleft Licenses began appearing within the free software community, I chose one of them (the Design Science License, or DSL) as the official notice for my project.

In "copylefting" this text, I guaranteed that no instructor would be limited by a text insufficient for their needs, as I had been with error-ridden textbooks from major publishers. I'm sure this book in its initial form will not satisfy everyone, but anyone has the freedom to change it, leveraging my efforts to suit variant and individual requirements. For the beginning student of electronics, learn what you can from this book, editing it as you feel necessary if you come across a useful piece of information. Then, if you pass it on to someone else, you will be giving them something better than what you received. For the instructor or electronics professional, feel free to use this as a reference manual, adding or editing to your heart's content. The only "catch" is this: if you plan to distribute your modified version of this text, you must give credit where credit is due (to me, the original author, and anyone else whose modifications are contained in your version), and you must ensure that whoever you give the text to is aware of their freedom to similarly share and edit the text. The next chapter covers this process in more detail.

It must be mentioned that although I strive to maintain technical accuracy in all of this book's content, the subject matter is broad and harbors many potential dangers. Electricity maims and kills without provocation, and deserves the utmost respect. I strongly encourage experimentation on the part of the reader, but only with circuits powered by small batteries where there is no risk of electric shock, fire, explosion, etc. High-power electric circuits should be left to the care of trained professionals! The Design Science License clearly states that neither I nor any contributors to this book bear any liability for what is done with its contents.

A-1.2 The use of SPICE

One of the best ways to learn how things work is to follow the inductive approach: to observe specific instances of things working and derive general conclusions from those observations. In science education, labwork is the traditionally accepted venue for this type of learning, although in many cases labs are designed by educators to reinforce principles previously learned through lecture or textbook reading, rather than to allow the student to learn on their own through a truly exploratory process.

Having taught myself most of the electronics that I know, I appreciate the sense of frustration students may have in teaching themselves from books. Although electronic components are typically inexpensive, not everyone has the means or opportunity to set up a laboratory in their own homes, and when things go wrong there's no one to ask for help. Most textbooks

seem to approach the task of education from a deductive perspective: tell the student how things are supposed to work, then apply those principles to specific instances that the student may or may not be able to explore by themselves. The inductive approach, as useful as it is, is hard to find in the pages of a book.

However, textbooks don't have to be this way. I discovered this when I started to learn a computer program called SPICE. It is a text-based piece of software intended to model circuits and provide analyses of voltage, current, frequency, etc. Although nothing is quite as good as building real circuits to gain knowledge in electronics, computer simulation is an excellent alternative. In learning how to use this powerful tool, I made a discovery: SPICE could be used within a textbook to present circuit simulations to allow students to "observe" the phenomena for themselves. This way, the readers could learn the concepts inductively (by interpreting SPICE's output) as well as deductively (by interpreting my explanations). Furthermore, in seeing SPICE used over and over again, they should be able to understand how to use it themselves, providing a perfectly safe means of experimentation on their own computers with circuit simulations of their own design.

Another advantage to including computer analyses in a textbook is the empirical verification it adds to the concepts presented. Without demonstrations, the reader is left to take the author's statements on faith, trusting that what has been written is indeed accurate. The problem with faith, of course, is that it is only as good as the authority in which it is placed and the accuracy of interpretation through which it is understood. Authors, like all human beings, are liable to err and/or communicate poorly. With demonstrations, however, the reader can immediately see for themselves that what the author describes is indeed true. Demonstrations also serve to clarify the meaning of the text with concrete examples.

SPICE is introduced in the book early on, and hopefully in a gentle enough way that it doesn't create confusion. For those wishing to learn more, a chapter in the Reference volume (volume V) contains an overview of SPICE with many example circuits. There may be more flashy (graphic) circuit simulation programs in existence, but SPICE is free, a virtue complementing the charitable philosophy of this book very nicely.

A-1.3 Acknowledgements

First, I wish to thank my wife, whose patience during those many and long evenings (and weekends!) of typing has been extraordinary.

I also wish to thank those whose open-source software development efforts have made this endeavor all the more affordable and pleasurable. The following is a list of various free computer software used to make this book, and the respective programmers:

- *GNU/Linux* Operating System – Linus Torvalds, Richard Stallman, and a host of others too numerous to mention.
- *Vim* text editor – Bram Moolenaar and others.
- *Xcircuit* drafting program – Tim Edwards.
- *SPICE* circuit simulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- *Nutmeg* post-processor program for SPICE – Wayne Christopher.

- TEX text processing system – Donald Knuth and others.
- *Texinfo* document formatting system – Free Software Foundation.
- LATEX document formatting system – Leslie Lamport and others.
- *Gimp* image manipulation program – too many contributors to mention.

Appreciation is also extended to Robert L. Boylestad, whose first edition of *Introductory Circuit Analysis* taught me more about electric circuits than any other book. Other important texts in my electronics studies include the 1939 edition of *The "Radio" Handbook*, Bernard Grob's second edition of *Introduction to Electronics I*, and Forrest Mims' original *Engineer's Notebook*.

Thanks to the staff of the Bellingham Antique Radio Museum, who were generous enough to let me terrorize their establishment with my camera and flash unit. Similar thanks to the Fluke Corporation in Everett, Washington, who not only let me photograph several pieces of equipment in their primary standards laboratory, but proved their excellent hosting skills to a large group of students and technical professionals one evening in November of 2001.

I wish to specifically thank Jeffrey Elkner and all those at Yorktown High School for being willing to host my book as part of their Open Book Project, and to make the first effort in contributing to its form and content. Thanks also to David Sweet (website: `(http://www.andamooka.org)`) and Ben Crowell (website: `(http://www.lightandmatter.com)`) for providing encouragement, constructive criticism, and a wider audience for the online version of this book.

Thanks to Michael Stutz for drafting his Design Science License, and to Richard Stallman for pioneering the concept of copyleft.

Last but certainly not least, many thanks to my parents and those teachers of mine who saw in me a desire to learn about electricity, and who kindled that flame into a passion for discovery and intellectual adventure. I honor you by helping others as you have helped me.

Tony Kuphaldt, January 2002

"A candle loses nothing of its light when lighting another"
Kahlil Gibran

Appendix A-2

CONTRIBUTOR LIST

A-2.1 How to contribute to this book

As a copylefted work, this book is open to revision and expansion by any interested parties. The only ”catch” is that credit must be given where credit is due. This *is* a copyrighted work: it is *not* in the public domain!

If you wish to cite portions of this book in a work of your own, you must follow the same guidelines as for any other copyrighted work. Here is a sample from the Design Science License:

```
The Work is copyright the Author.  All rights to the Work are reserved
by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License
describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you
to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as
dictated by "fair use") quote from it, just as you would any
copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or
execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk,
because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY -- see Section 7 ("NO
WARRANTY") below.
```

If you wish to modify this book in any way, you must document the nature of those modifications in the ”Credits” section along with your name, and ideally, information concerning how you may be contacted. Again, the Design Science License:

```
Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work,
```

```
producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work
under the terms described in the section for distribution above,
provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this
License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or
title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of
the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences
between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is
attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from
the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate
notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature
and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.
```

Given the complexities and security issues surrounding the maintenance of files comprising this book, it is recommended that you submit any revisions or expansions to the original author (Tony R. Kuphaldt). You are, of course, welcome to modify this book directly by editing your own personal copy, but we would all stand to benefit from your contributions if your ideas were incorporated into the online ”master copy” where all the world can see it.

A-2.2 Credits

All entries arranged in alphabetical order of surname. Major contributions are listed by individual name with some detail on the nature of the contribution(s), date, contact info, etc. Minor contributions (typo corrections, etc.) are listed by name only for reasons of brevity. Please understand that when I classify a contribution as ”minor,” it is in no way inferior to the effort or value of a ”major” contribution, just smaller in the sense of less text changed. Any and all contributions are gratefully accepted. I am indebted to all those who have given freely of their own knowledge, time, and resources to make this a better book!

A-2.2.1 Benjamin Crowell, Ph.D.

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** January 2001
- **Nature of contribution:** Suggestions on improving technical accuracy of electric field and charge explanations in the first two chapters.
- **Contact at:** crowell01@lightandmatter.com

A-2.2.2 Dennis Crunkilton

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** January 2006 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Mini table of contents, all chapters except appedicies; html, latex, ps, pdf; See Devel/tutorial.html; 01/2006.
- DC network analysis ch, Mesh current section, Mesh current by inspection, new material.i DC network analysis ch, Node voltage method, new section.
- Ch3, Added AFCI paragraphs after GFCI, 10/09/2007.
- **Contact at:** `liecibiblio(at)gmail(dot)com`

A-2.2.3 Tony R. Kuphaldt

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** 1996 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author.
- **Contact at:** `liec0@lycos.com`

A-2.2.4 Ron LaPlante

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** October 1998
- **Nature of contribution:** Helped create the ”table” concept for use in analysis of series and parallel circuits.

A-2.2.5 Davy Van Nieuwenborgh

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** October 2006
- **Nature of contribution:**DC network analysis ch, Mesh current section, supplied solution to mesh problem, pointed out error in text.
- **Contact at:**`Theoretical Computer Science laboratory, Department of Computer Science, Vrije Universiteit Brussel.`

A-2.2.6 Jason Starck

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** June 2000
- **Nature of contribution:** HTML formatting, some error corrections.
- **Contact at:** `jstarck@yhslug.tux.org`

A-2.2.7 Warren Young

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** August 2002
- **Nature of contribution:** Provided capacitor photographs for chapter 13.

A-2.2.8 Your name here

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** Month and year of contribution
- **Nature of contribution:** Insert text here, describing how you contributed to the book.
- **Contact at:** `my_email@provider.net`

A-2.2.9 Typo corrections and other ”minor” contributions

- *The students of Bellingham Technical College's Instrumentation program*.
- **anonymous** (July 2007) Ch 1, remove :registers. Ch 5, s/figures something/figures is something/. Ch 6 s/The current/The current. (September 2007) Ch 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15. Numerous typos, clarifications.
- **Tony Armstrong** (January 2003) Suggested diagram correction in ”Series and Parallel Combination Circuits” chapter.
- **James Boorn** (January 2001) Clarification on SPICE simulation.
- **Dejan Budimir** (January 2003) Clarification of Mesh Current method explanation.
- **Sridhar Chitta**, Assoc. Professor, Dept. of Instrumentation and Control Engg., Vignan Institute of Technology and Science, Deshmukhi Village, Pochampally Mandal, Nalgonda Distt, Andhra Pradesh, India (December 2005) Chapter 13: CAPACITORS, Clarification: s/note the direction of current/note the direction of electron current/, 2-places
- **Colin Creitz** (May 2007) Chapters: several, s/it's/its.
- **Larry Cramblett** (September 2004) Typographical error correction in ”Nonlinear conduction” section.
- **Brad Drum** (May 2006) Error correction in ”Superconductivity” section, Chapter 12: PHYSICS OF CONDUCTORS AND INSULATORS. Degrees are not used as a modifier with kelvin(s), 3 changes.
- **Jeff DeFreitas** (March 2006)Improve appearance: replace “/” and ”/” Chapters: A1, A2. Type errors Chapter 3: /am injurious spark/an injurious spark/, /in the even/inthe event/
- **Sean Donner** (December 2004) Typographical error correction in ”Voltage and current” section, Chapter 1: BASIC CONCEPTS OF ELECTRICITY,(by a the/ by the) (current of current/ of current).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Fuses” section, Chapter 12: THE PHYSICS OF CONDUCTORS AND INSULATORS (Neither fuses nor circuit breakers were not designed to open / Neither fuses nor circuit breakers were designed to open).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Factors Affecting Capacitance” section, Chapter 13: CAPACITORS, (greater plate area gives greater capacitance; less plate area gives less capacitance / greater plate area gives greater capacitance; less plate area gives less capacitance); ”Factors Affecting Capacitance” section, (thin layer if insulation/thin layer of insulation).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Practical Considerations” section, Chapter 15: INDUCTORS, (there is not such thing / there is no such thing).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Voltage and current calculations” section, Chapter 16: RC AND L/R TIME CONSTANTS (voltage in current / voltage and current).

- **Manuel Duarte** (August 2006): Ch: DC Metering Circuits ammeter images: 00163.eps, 00164.eps; Ch: RC and L/R Time Constants, simplified ln() equation images 10263.eps, 10264.eps, 10266.eps, 10276.eps.

- **Aaron Forster** (February 2003) Typographical error correction in ”Physics of Conductors and Insulators” chapter.

- **Bill Heath** (September-December 2002) Correction on illustration of atomic structure, and corrections of several typographical errors.

- **Stefan Kluehspies** (June 2003): Corrected spelling error in Andrew Tannenbaum's name.

- **David M. St. Pierre** (November 2007): Corrected spelling error in Andrew Tanenbaum's name (from the title page of his book).

- **Geoffrey Lessel**,Thompsons Station, TN (June 2005): Corrected typo error in Ch 1 ”If this charge (static electricity) is stationary, and you won't realize–remove If; Ch 2 ”Ohm's Law also make intuitive sense if you apply if to the water-and-pipe analogy.” s/if/it; Chapter 2 ”Ohm's Law is not very useful for analyzing the behavior of components like these where resistance is varies with voltage and current.” remove ”is”; Ch 3 ”which halts fibrillation and and gives the heart a chance to recover.” double ”and”; Ch 3 ”To be safest, you should follow this procedure is checking, using, and then checking your meter.... s/is/of.

- **LouTheBlueGuru**, allaboutcircuits.com, July 2005 Typographical errors, in Ch 6 ”the current through R1 is half:” s/half/twice; ”current through R1 is still exactly twice that of R2” s/R3/R2

- **Norm Meyrowitz** , nkm, allaboutcircuits.com, July 2005 Typographical errors, in Ch 2.3 ”where we don't know both voltage and resistance:” s/resistance/current

- **Don Stalkowski** (June 2002) Technical help with PostScript-to-PDF file format conversion.

- **Joseph Teichman** (June 2002) Suggestion and technical help regarding use of PNG images instead of JPEG.
- **Derek Terveer** (June 2006) Typographical errors, several in Ch 1,2,3.
- **Geoffrey Lessel** (June 2005) Typographical error, s/It discovered/It was discovered/ in Ch 1.
- **Austin@allaboutcircuits.com** (July 2007) Ch 2, units of mass, pound vs kilogram, near "units of pound" s/pound/kilogram/.
- **CATV@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2007) Telephone ring voltage error, Ch 3.
- **line@allaboutcircuits.com** (June 2005) Typographical error correction in Volumes 1,2,3,5, various chapters ,(:s/visa-versa/vice versa/).
- **rob843@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2007) Telephone ring voltage error, Ch 3.
- **bigtwenty@allaboutcircuits.com** (July 2007) Ch 4 near "different metric prefix", s/right to left/left to right/.
- **jut@allaboutcircuits.com** (September 2007) Ch 13 near s/if were we to/if we were to/, s/a capacitors/a capacitor.
- **rxtxau@allaboutcircuits.com** (October 2007) Ch 3, suggested, GFCI terminology, non-US usage.
- **Stacy Mckenna Seip** (November 2007) Ch 3 s/on hand/one hand, Ch 4 s/weight/weigh, Ch 8 s/weight/weigh, s/left their/left there, Ch 9 s/cannot spare/cannot afford/, Ch1 Clarification, static electricity.
- **Cory Benjamin** (November 2007) Ch 3 s/on hand/one hand.
- **Larry Weber** (Feb 2008) Ch 3 s/on hand/one hand.
- **trunks14@allaboutrcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Ch 15 s/of of/of .
- **Greg Herrington** (Feb 2008) Ch 1, Clarification: no neutron in hydrogen atom.
- **mark44** (Feb 2008) Ch 1, s/naturaly/naturally/
- **Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (February 2008) Ch 1, s/smokelsee/smokeless , s/ecconomic/economic/ .
- **Timothy Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Changed default roman font to newcent.
- **Imranullah Syed** (Feb 2008) Suggested centering of uncaptioned schematics.
- **davidr@insyst_ltd.com** (april 2008) Ch 5, s/results/result 2plcs.

Appendix A-3

DESIGN SCIENCE LICENSE

A-3.1 0. Preamble

Copyright law gives certain exclusive rights to the author of a work, including the rights to copy, modify and distribute the work (the ”reproductive,” ”adaptative,” and ”distribution” rights).

The idea of ”copyleft” is to willfully revoke the exclusivity of those rights under certain terms and conditions, so that anyone can copy and distribute the work or properly attributed derivative works, while all copies remain under the same terms and conditions as the original.

The intent of this license is to be a general ”copyleft” that can be applied to any kind of work that has protection under copyright. This license states those certain conditions under which a work published under its terms may be copied, distributed, and modified.

Whereas ”design science” is a strategy for the development of artifacts as a way to reform the environment (not people) and subsequently improve the universal standard of living, this Design Science License was written and deployed as a strategy for promoting the progress of science and art through reform of the environment.

A-3.2 1. Definitions

”License” shall mean this Design Science License. The License applies to any work which contains a notice placed by the work’s copyright holder stating that it is published under the terms of this Design Science License.

”Work” shall mean such an aforementioned work. The License also applies to the output of the Work, only if said output constitutes a ”derivative work” of the licensed Work as defined by copyright law.

”Object Form” shall mean an executable or performable form of the Work, being an embodiment of the Work in some tangible medium.

”Source Data” shall mean the origin of the Object Form, being the entire, machine-readable, preferred form of the Work for copying and for human modification (usually the language, encoding or format in which composed or recorded by the Author); plus any accompanying files, scripts or other data necessary for installation, configuration or compilation of the Work.

(Examples of ”Source Data” include, but are not limited to, the following: if the Work is an image file composed and edited in ’PNG’ format, then the original PNG source file is the Source Data; if the Work is an MPEG 1.0 layer 3 digital audio recording made from a ’WAV’ format audio file recording of an analog source, then the original WAV file is the Source Data; if the Work was composed as an unformatted plaintext file, then that file is the the Source Data; if the Work was composed in LaTeX, the LaTeX file(s) and any image files and/or custom macros necessary for compilation constitute the Source Data.)

”Author” shall mean the copyright holder(s) of the Work.

The individual licensees are referred to as ”you.”

A-3.3 2. Rights and copyright

The Work is copyright the Author. All rights to the Work are reserved by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as dictated by ”fair use”) quote from it, just as you would any copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk, because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY – see Section 7 (”NO WARRANTY”) below.

A-3.4 3. Copying and distribution

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present verbatim copies of the entire Source Data of the Work, in any medium, provided that full copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty, where applicable, is conspicuously published on all copies, and a copy of this License is distributed along with the Work.

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present copies of the Object Form of the Work, in any medium, under the terms for distribution of Source Data above and also provided that one of the following additional conditions are met:

(a) The Source Data is included in the same distribution, distributed under the terms of this License; or

(b) A written offer is included with the distribution, valid for at least three years or for as long as the distribution is in print (whichever is longer), with a publicly-accessible address (such as a URL on the Internet) where, for a charge not greater than transportation and media costs, anyone may receive a copy of the Source Data of the Work distributed according to the section above; or

(c) A third party's written offer for obtaining the Source Data at no cost, as described in paragraph (b) above, is included with the distribution. This option is valid only if you are a non-commercial party, and only if you received the Object Form of the Work along with such an offer.

You may copy and distribute the Work either gratis or for a fee, and if desired, you may offer warranty protection for the Work.

The aggregation of the Work with other works which are not based on the Work – such as but not limited to inclusion in a publication, broadcast, compilation, or other media – does not bring the other works in the scope of the License; nor does such aggregation void the terms of the License for the Work.

A-3.5 4. Modification

Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work, producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work under the terms described in the section for distribution above, provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.

A-3.6 5. No restrictions

You may not impose any further restrictions on the Work or any of its derivative works beyond those restrictions described in this License.

A-3.7 6. Acceptance

Copying, distributing or modifying the Work (including but not limited to sampling from the Work in a new work) indicates acceptance of these terms. If you do not follow the terms of this License, any rights granted to you by the License are null and void. The copying, distribution or modification of the Work outside of the terms described in this License is expressly prohibited by law.

If for any reason, conditions are imposed on you that forbid you to fulfill the conditions of this License, you may not copy, distribute or modify the Work at all.

If any part of this License is found to be in conflict with the law, that part shall be interpreted in its broadest meaning consistent with the law, and no other parts of the License shall be affected.

A-3.8 7. No warranty

THE WORK IS PROVIDED ”AS IS,” AND COMES WITH ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

A-3.9 8. Disclaimer of liability

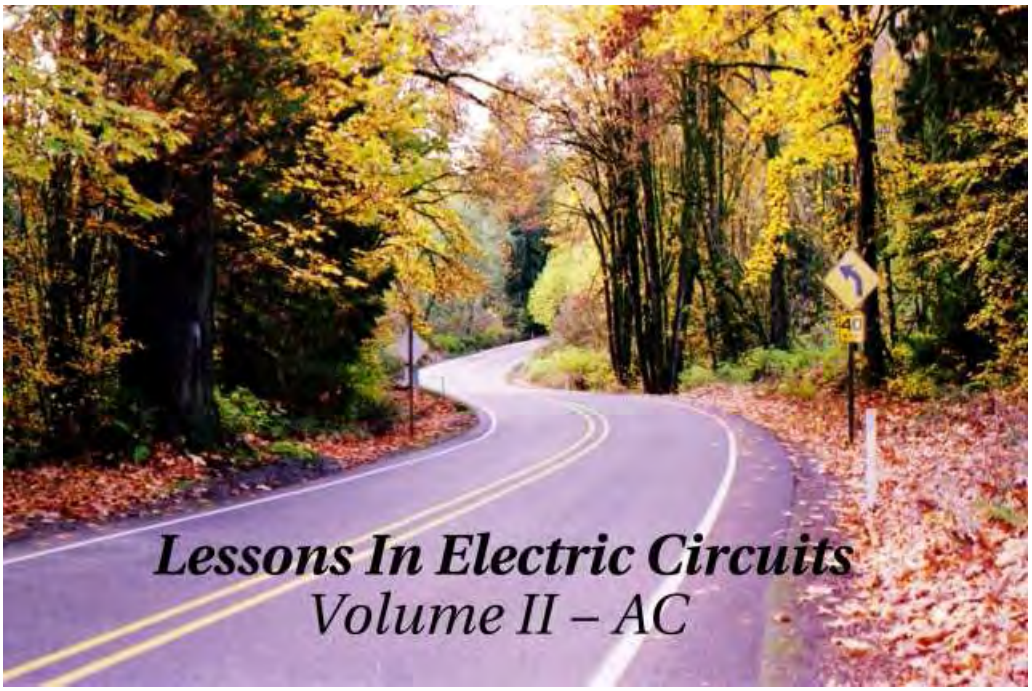
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS WORK, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

```
[$Id:  dsl.txt,v 1.25 2000/03/14 13:14:14 m Exp m $]
```

Index

.



Sixth Edition, last update July 25, 2007

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume II – AC

By Tony R. Kuphaldt

Sixth Edition, last update July 25, 2007

Available in its entirety as part of the Open Book Project collection at:

www.ibiblio.org/obp/electricCircuits

PRINTING HISTORY

- First Edition: Printed in June of 2000. Plain-ASCII illustrations for universal computer readability.
- Second Edition: Printed in September of 2000. Illustrations reworked in standard graphic (eps and jpeg) format. Source files translated to *Texinfo* format for easy online and printed publication.
- Third Edition: Equations and tables reworked as graphic images rather than plain-ASCII text.
- Fourth Edition: Printed in November 2001. Source files translated to *SubML* format. SubML is a simple markup language designed to easily convert to other markups like LaTeX, HTML, or DocBook using nothing but search-and-replace substitutions.
- Fifth Edition: Printed in November 2002. New sections added, and error corrections made, since the fourth edition.
- Sixth Edition: Printed in June 2006. Added CH 13, sections added, and error corrections made, figure numbering and captions added, since the fifth edition.

Contents

Chapter 1

BASIC AC THEORY

Contents

1.1 What is alternating current (AC)?

Most students of electricity begin their study with what is known as *direct current* (DC), which is electricity flowing in a constant direction, and/or possessing a voltage with constant polarity. DC is the kind of electricity made by a battery (with definite positive and negative terminals), or the kind of charge generated by rubbing certain types of materials against each other.

As useful and as easy to understand as DC is, it is not the only "kind" of electricity in use. Certain sources of electricity (most notably, rotary electro-mechanical generators) naturally produce voltages alternating in polarity, reversing positive and negative over time. Either as a voltage switching polarity or as a current switching direction back and forth, this "kind" of electricity is known as Alternating Current (AC): Figure 1.1

Whereas the familiar battery symbol is used as a generic symbol for any DC voltage source, the circle with the wavy line inside is the generic symbol for any AC voltage source.

One might wonder why anyone would bother with such a thing as AC. It is true that in some cases AC holds no practical advantage over DC. In applications where electricity is used to dissipate energy in the form of heat, the polarity or direction of current is irrelevant, so long as there is enough voltage and current to the load to produce the desired heat (power dissipation). However, with AC it is possible to build electric generators, motors and power

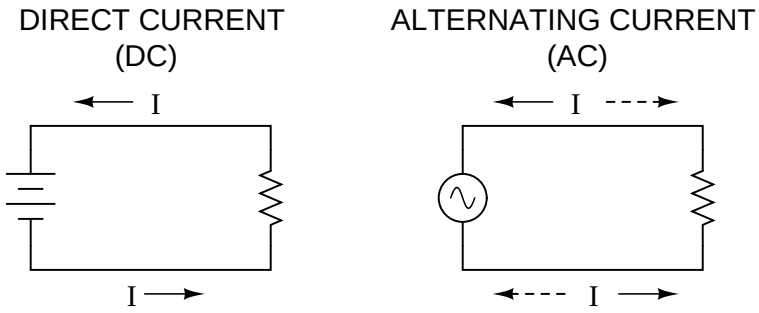


Figure 1.1: *Direct vs alternating current*

distribution systems that are far more efficient than DC, and so we find AC used predominately across the world in high power applications. To explain the details of why this is so, a bit of background knowledge about AC is necessary.

If a machine is constructed to rotate a magnetic field around a set of stationary wire coils with the turning of a shaft, AC voltage will be produced across the wire coils as that shaft is rotated, in accordance with Faraday's Law of electromagnetic induction. This is the basic operating principle of an AC generator, also known as an *alternator*: Figure 1.2

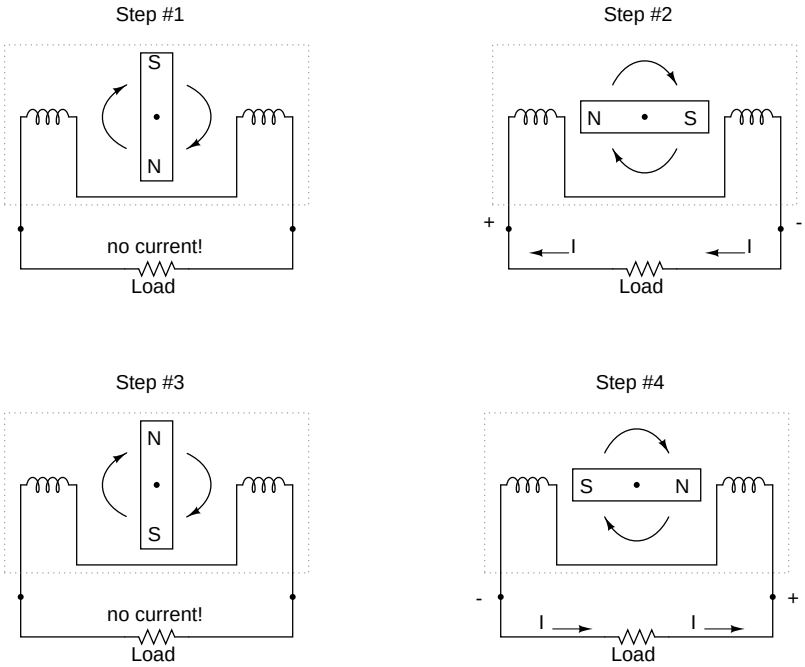


Figure 1.2: *Alternator operation*

Notice how the polarity of the voltage across the wire coils reverses as the opposite poles of the rotating magnet pass by. Connected to a load, this reversing voltage polarity will create a reversing current direction in the circuit. The faster the alternator's shaft is turned, the faster the magnet will spin, resulting in an alternating voltage and current that switches directions more often in a given amount of time.

While DC generators work on the same general principle of electromagnetic induction, their construction is not as simple as their AC counterparts. With a DC generator, the coil of wire is mounted in the shaft where the magnet is on the AC alternator, and electrical connections are made to this spinning coil via stationary carbon "brushes" contacting copper strips on the rotating shaft. All this is necessary to switch the coil's changing output polarity to the external circuit so the external circuit sees a constant polarity: Figure 1.3

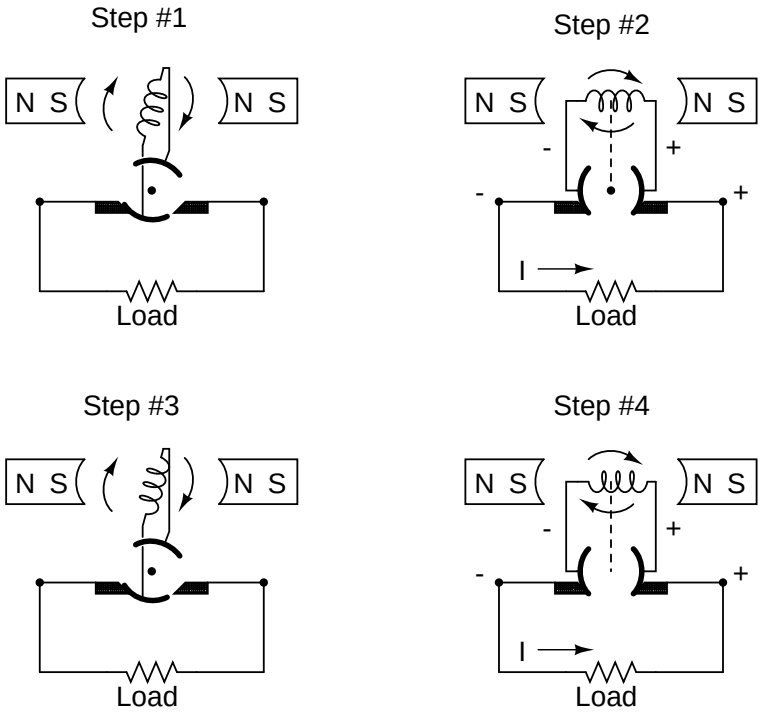


Figure 1.3: *DC generator operation*

The generator shown above will produce two pulses of voltage per revolution of the shaft, both pulses in the same direction (polarity). In order for a DC generator to produce *constant* voltage, rather than brief pulses of voltage once every 1/2 revolution, there are multiple sets of coils making intermittent contact with the brushes. The diagram shown above is a bit more simplified than what you would see in real life.

The problems involved with making and breaking electrical contact with a moving coil should be obvious (sparking and heat), especially if the shaft of the generator is revolving at high speed. If the atmosphere surrounding the machine contains flammable or explosive

vapors, the practical problems of spark-producing brush contacts are even greater. An AC generator (alternator) does not require brushes and commutators to work, and so is immune to these problems experienced by DC generators.

The benefits of AC over DC with regard to generator design is also reflected in electric motors. While DC motors require the use of brushes to make electrical contact with moving coils of wire, AC motors do not. In fact, AC and DC motor designs are very similar to their generator counterparts (identical for the sake of this tutorial), the AC motor being dependent upon the reversing magnetic field produced by alternating current through its stationary coils of wire to rotate the rotating magnet around on its shaft, and the DC motor being dependent on the brush contacts making and breaking connections to reverse current through the rotating coil every 1/2 rotation (180 degrees).

So we know that AC generators and AC motors tend to be simpler than DC generators and DC motors. This relative simplicity translates into greater reliability and lower cost of manufacture. But what else is AC good for? Surely there must be more to it than design details of generators and motors! Indeed there is. There is an effect of electromagnetism known as *mutual induction*, whereby two or more coils of wire placed so that the changing magnetic field created by one induces a voltage in the other. If we have two mutually inductive coils and we energize one coil with AC, we will create an AC voltage in the other coil. When used as such, this device is known as a *transformer*: Figure 1.4

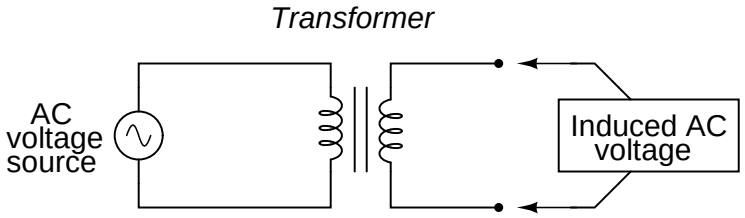


Figure 1.4: *Transformer "transforms" AC voltage and current.*

The fundamental significance of a transformer is its ability to step voltage up or down from the powered coil to the unpowered coil. The AC voltage induced in the unpowered ("secondary") coil is equal to the AC voltage across the powered ("primary") coil multiplied by the ratio of secondary coil turns to primary coil turns. If the secondary coil is powering a load, the current through the secondary coil is just the opposite: primary coil current multiplied by the ratio of primary to secondary turns. This relationship has a very close mechanical analogy, using torque and speed to represent voltage and current, respectively: Figure 1.5

If the winding ratio is reversed so that the primary coil has less turns than the secondary coil, the transformer "steps up" the voltage from the source level to a higher level at the load: Figure 1.6

The transformer's ability to step AC voltage up or down with ease gives AC an advantage unmatched by DC in the realm of power distribution in figure 1.7. When transmitting electrical power over long distances, it is far more efficient to do so with stepped-up voltages and stepped-down currents (smaller-diameter wire with less resistive power losses), then step the voltage back down and the current back up for industry, business, or consumer use.

Transformer technology has made long-range electric power distribution practical. Without

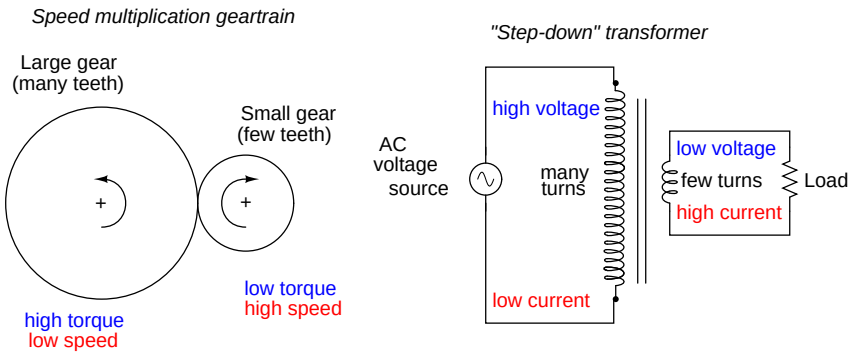


Figure 1.5: *Speed multiplication gear train steps torque down and speed up. Step-down transformer steps voltage down and current up.*

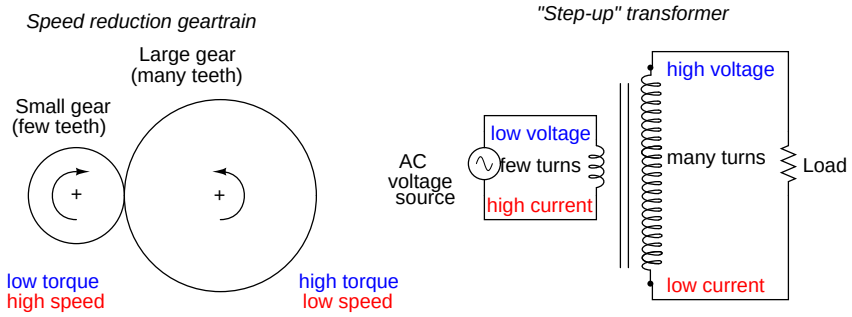


Figure 1.6: *Speed reduction gear train steps torque up and speed down. Step-up transformer steps voltage up and current down.*

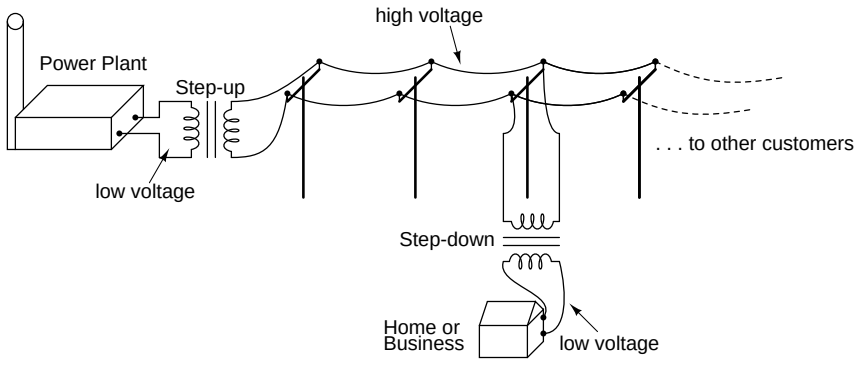


Figure 1.7: *Transformers enable efficient long distance high voltage transmission of electric energy.*

the ability to efficiently step voltage up and down, it would be cost-prohibitive to construct power systems for anything but close-range (within a few miles at most) use.

As useful as transformers are, they only work with AC, not DC. Because the phenomenon of mutual inductance relies on *changing* magnetic fields, and direct current (DC) can only produce steady magnetic fields, transformers simply will not work with direct current. Of course, direct current may be interrupted (pulsed) through the primary winding of a transformer to create a changing magnetic field (as is done in automotive ignition systems to produce high-voltage spark plug power from a low-voltage DC battery), but pulsed DC is not that different from AC. Perhaps more than any other reason, this is why AC finds such widespread application in power systems.

- **REVIEW:**
- DC stands for "Direct Current," meaning voltage or current that maintains constant polarity or direction, respectively, over time.
- AC stands for "Alternating Current," meaning voltage or current that changes polarity or direction, respectively, over time.
- AC electromechanical generators, known as *alternators*, are of simpler construction than DC electromechanical generators.
- AC and DC motor design follows respective generator design principles very closely.
- A *transformer* is a pair of mutually-inductive coils used to convey AC power from one coil to the other. Often, the number of turns in each coil is set to create a voltage increase or decrease from the powered (primary) coil to the unpowered (secondary) coil.
- Secondary voltage = Primary voltage (secondary turns / primary turns)
- Secondary current = Primary current (primary turns / secondary turns)

1.2 AC waveforms

When an alternator produces AC voltage, the voltage switches polarity over time, but does so in a very particular manner. When graphed over time, the "wave" traced by this voltage of alternating polarity from an alternator takes on a distinct shape, known as a *sine wave*: Figure 1.8

In the voltage plot from an electromechanical alternator, the change from one polarity to the other is a smooth one, the voltage level changing most rapidly at the zero ("crossover") point and most slowly at its peak. If we were to graph the trigonometric function of "sine" over a horizontal range of 0 to 360 degrees, we would find the exact same pattern as in Table 1.1.

The reason why an electromechanical alternator outputs sine-wave AC is due to the physics of its operation. The voltage produced by the stationary coils by the motion of the rotating magnet is proportional to the rate at which the magnetic flux is changing perpendicular to the coils (Faraday's Law of Electromagnetic Induction). That rate is greatest when the magnet poles are closest to the coils, and least when the magnet poles are furthest away from the coils.

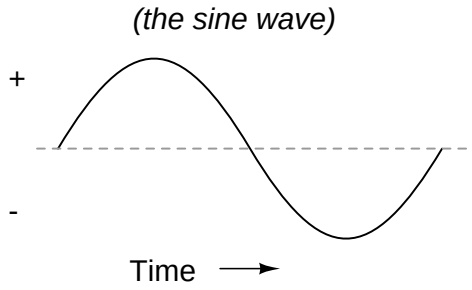


Figure 1.8: *Graph of AC voltage over time (the sine wave).*

Table 1.1: *Trigonometric "sine" function.*

Angle (^{o})	**sin(angle)**	**wave**	**Angle (^{o})**	**sin(angle)**	**wave**
0	0.0000	zero	180	0.0000	zero
15	0.2588	+	195	-0.2588	-
30	0.5000	+	210	-0.5000	-
45	0.7071	+	225	-0.7071	-
60	0.8660	+	240	-0.8660	-
75	0.9659	+	255	-0.9659	-
90	1.0000	+peak	270	-1.0000	-peak
105	0.9659	+	285	-0.9659	-
120	0.8660	+	300	-0.8660	-
135	0.7071	+	315	-0.7071	-
150	0.5000	+	330	-0.5000	-
165	0.2588	+	345	-0.2588	-
180	0.0000	zero	360	0.0000	zero

Mathematically, the rate of magnetic flux change due to a rotating magnet follows that of a sine function, so the voltage produced by the coils follows that same function.

If we were to follow the changing voltage produced by a coil in an alternator from any point on the sine wave graph to that point when the wave shape begins to repeat itself, we would have marked exactly one *cycle* of that wave. This is most easily shown by spanning the distance between identical peaks, but may be measured between any corresponding points on the graph. The degree marks on the horizontal axis of the graph represent the domain of the trigonometric sine function, and also the angular position of our simple two-pole alternator shaft as it rotates: Figure 1.9

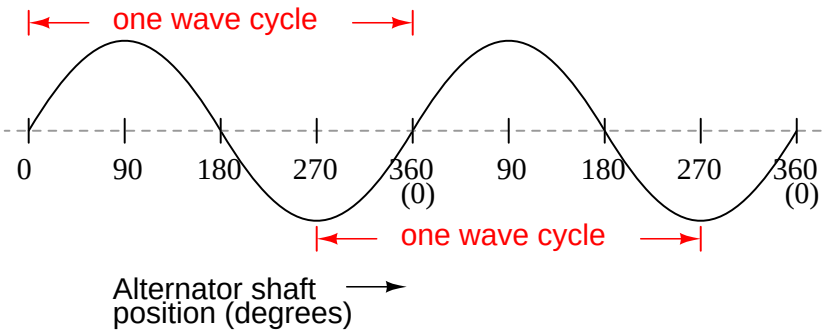


Figure 1.9: *Alternator voltage as function of shaft position (time).*

Since the horizontal axis of this graph can mark the passage of time as well as shaft position in degrees, the dimension marked for one cycle is often measured in a unit of time, most often seconds or fractions of a second. When expressed as a measurement, this is often called the *period* of a wave. The period of a wave in degrees is *always* 360, but the amount of time one period occupies depends on the rate voltage oscillates back and forth.

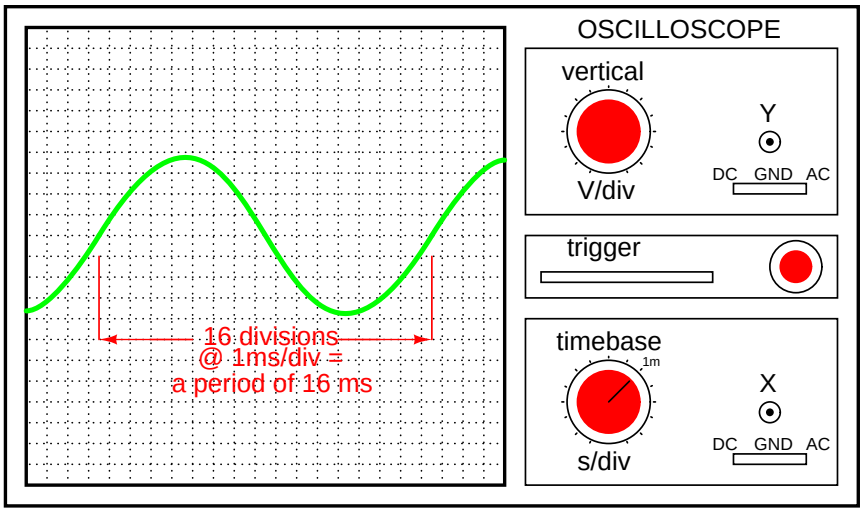
A more popular measure for describing the alternating rate of an AC voltage or current wave than *period* is the rate of that back-and-forth oscillation. This is called *frequency*. The modern unit for frequency is the Hertz (abbreviated Hz), which represents the number of wave cycles completed during one second of time. In the United States of America, the standard power-line frequency is 60 Hz, meaning that the AC voltage oscillates at a rate of 60 complete back-and-forth cycles every second. In Europe, where the power system frequency is 50 Hz, the AC voltage only completes 50 cycles every second. A radio station transmitter broadcasting at a frequency of 100 MHz generates an AC voltage oscillating at a rate of 100 *million* cycles every second.

Prior to the canonization of the Hertz unit, frequency was simply expressed as "cycles per second." Older meters and electronic equipment often bore frequency units of "CPS" (Cycles Per Second) instead of Hz. Many people believe the change from self-explanatory units like CPS to Hertz constitutes a step backward in clarity. A similar change occurred when the unit of "Celsius" replaced that of "Centigrade" for metric temperature measurement. The name Centigrade was based on a 100-count ("Centi-") scale ("-grade") representing the melting and boiling points of H_2O, respectively. The name Celsius, on the other hand, gives no hint as to the unit's origin or meaning.

Period and frequency are mathematical reciprocals of one another. That is to say, if a wave has a period of 10 seconds, its frequency will be 0.1 Hz, or 1/10 of a cycle per second:

$$\text{Frequency in Hertz} = \frac{1}{\text{Period in seconds}}$$

An instrument called an *oscilloscope*, Figure 1.10, is used to display a changing voltage over time on a graphical screen. You may be familiar with the appearance of an *ECG* or *EKG* (electrocardiograph) machine, used by physicians to graph the oscillations of a patient's heart over time. The ECG is a special-purpose oscilloscope expressly designed for medical use. General-purpose oscilloscopes have the ability to display voltage from virtually any voltage source, plotted as a graph with time as the independent variable. The relationship between period and frequency is very useful to know when displaying an AC voltage or current waveform on an oscilloscope screen. By measuring the period of the wave on the horizontal axis of the oscilloscope screen and reciprocating that time value (in seconds), you can determine the frequency in Hertz.



$$\text{Frequency} = \frac{1}{\text{period}} = \frac{1}{16\text{ ms}} = 62.5\text{ Hz}$$

Figure 1.10: *Time period of sinewave is shown on oscilloscope.*

Voltage and current are by no means the only physical variables subject to variation over time. Much more common to our everyday experience is *sound*, which is nothing more than the alternating compression and decompression (pressure waves) of air molecules, interpreted by our ears as a physical sensation. Because alternating current is a wave phenomenon, it shares many of the properties of other wave phenomena, like sound. For this reason, sound (especially structured music) provides an excellent analogy for relating AC concepts.

In musical terms, frequency is equivalent to *pitch*. Low-pitch notes such as those produced by a tuba or bassoon consist of air molecule vibrations that are relatively slow (low frequency).

High-pitch notes such as those produced by a flute or whistle consist of the same type of vibrations in the air, only vibrating at a much faster rate (higher frequency). Figure 1.11 is a table showing the actual frequencies for a range of common musical notes.

Note	Musical designation	Frequency (in hertz)
A	A_1	220.00
A sharp (or B flat)	$A^{\#}$ or B^{b}	233.08
B	B_1	246.94
C (middle)	C	261.63
C sharp (or D flat)	$C^{\#}$ or D^{b}	277.18
D	D	293.66
D sharp (or E flat)	$D^{\#}$ or E^{b}	311.13
E	E	329.63
F	F	349.23
F sharp (or G flat)	$F^{\#}$ or G^{b}	369.99
G	G	392.00
G sharp (or A flat)	$G^{\#}$ or A^{b}	415.30
A	A	440.00
A sharp (or B flat)	$A^{\#}$ or B^{b}	466.16
B	B	493.88
C	C^{1}	523.25

Figure 1.11: *The frequency in Hertz (Hz) is shown for various musical notes.*

Astute observers will notice that all notes on the table bearing the same letter designation are related by a frequency ratio of 2:1. For example, the first frequency shown (designated with the letter "A") is 220 Hz. The next highest "A" note has a frequency of 440 Hz – exactly twice as many sound wave cycles per second. The same 2:1 ratio holds true for the first A sharp (233.08 Hz) and the next A sharp (466.16 Hz), and for all note pairs found in the table.

Audibly, two notes whose frequencies are exactly double each other sound remarkably similar. This similarity in sound is musically recognized, the shortest span on a musical scale separating such note pairs being called an *octave*. Following this rule, the next highest "A" note (one octave above 440 Hz) will be 880 Hz, the next lowest "A" (one octave below 220 Hz) will be 110 Hz. A view of a piano keyboard helps to put this scale into perspective: Figure 1.12

As you can see, one octave is equal to *seven* white keys' worth of distance on a piano keyboard. The familiar musical mnemonic (doe-ray-mee-fah-so-lah-tee) – yes, the same pattern immortalized in the whimsical Rodgers and Hammerstein song sung in The Sound of Music – covers one octave from C to C.

While electromechanical alternators and many other physical phenomena naturally produce sine waves, this is not the only kind of alternating wave in existence. Other "waveforms" of AC are commonly produced within electronic circuitry. Here are but a few sample waveforms and their common designations in figure 1.13

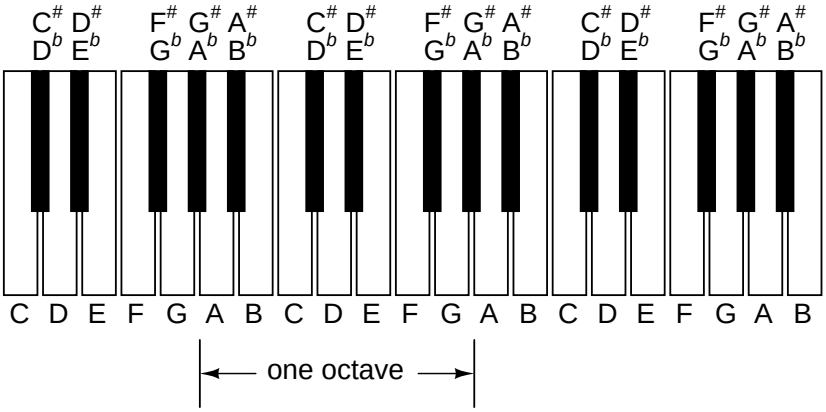


Figure 1.12: *An octave is shown on a musical keyboard.*

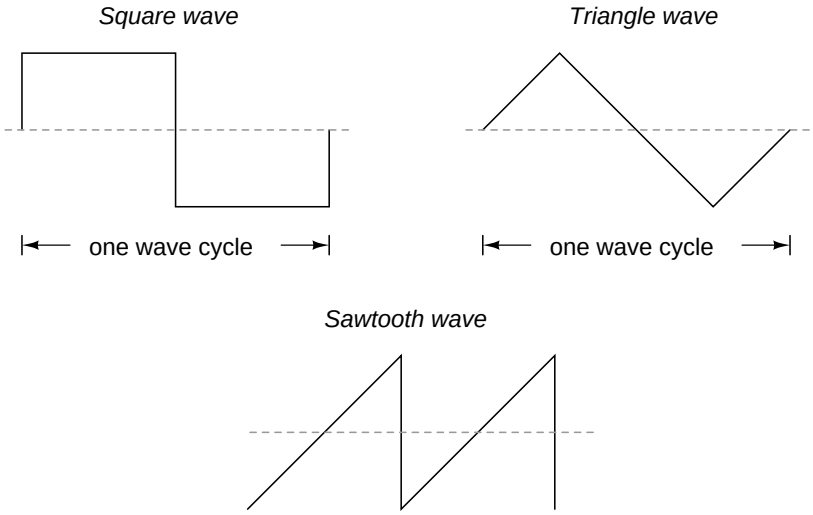


Figure 1.13: *Some common waveshapes (waveforms).*

These waveforms are by no means the only kinds of waveforms in existence. They're simply a few that are common enough to have been given distinct names. Even in circuits that are supposed to manifest "pure" sine, square, triangle, or sawtooth voltage/current waveforms, the real-life result is often a distorted version of the intended waveshape. Some waveforms are so complex that they defy classification as a particular "type" (including waveforms associated with many kinds of musical instruments). Generally speaking, any waveshape bearing close resemblance to a perfect sine wave is termed *sinusoidal*, anything different being labeled as *non-sinusoidal*. Being that the waveform of an AC voltage or current is crucial to its impact in a circuit, we need to be aware of the fact that AC waves come in a variety of shapes.

- **REVIEW:**
- AC produced by an electromechanical alternator follows the graphical shape of a sine wave.
- One *cycle* of a wave is one complete evolution of its shape until the point that it is ready to repeat itself.
- The *period* of a wave is the amount of time it takes to complete one cycle.
- *Frequency* is the number of complete cycles that a wave completes in a given amount of time. Usually measured in Hertz (Hz), 1 Hz being equal to one complete wave cycle per second.
- Frequency = 1/(period in seconds)

1.3 Measurements of AC magnitude

So far we know that AC voltage alternates in polarity and AC current alternates in direction. We also know that AC can alternate in a variety of different ways, and by tracing the alternation over time we can plot it as a "waveform." We can measure the rate of alternation by measuring the time it takes for a wave to evolve before it repeats itself (the "period"), and express this as cycles per unit time, or "frequency." In music, frequency is the same as *pitch*, which is the essential property distinguishing one note from another.

However, we encounter a measurement problem if we try to express how large or small an AC quantity is. With DC, where quantities of voltage and current are generally stable, we have little trouble expressing how much voltage or current we have in any part of a circuit. But how do you grant a single measurement of magnitude to something that is constantly changing?

One way to express the intensity, or magnitude (also called the *amplitude*), of an AC quantity is to measure its peak height on a waveform graph. This is known as the *peak* or *crest* value of an AC waveform: Figure 1.14

Another way is to measure the total height between opposite peaks. This is known as the *peak-to-peak* (P-P) value of an AC waveform: Figure 1.15

Unfortunately, either one of these expressions of waveform amplitude can be misleading when comparing two different types of waves. For example, a square wave peaking at 10 volts is obviously a greater amount of voltage for a greater amount of time than a triangle wave

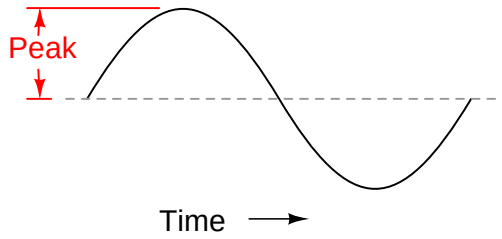


Figure 1.14: *Peak voltage of a waveform.*

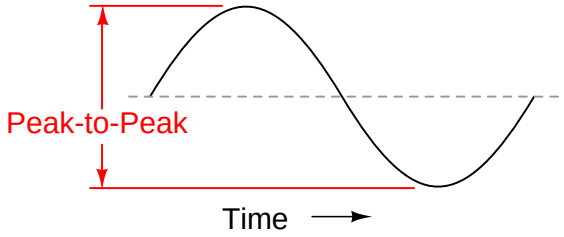


Figure 1.15: *Peak-to-peak voltage of a waveform.*

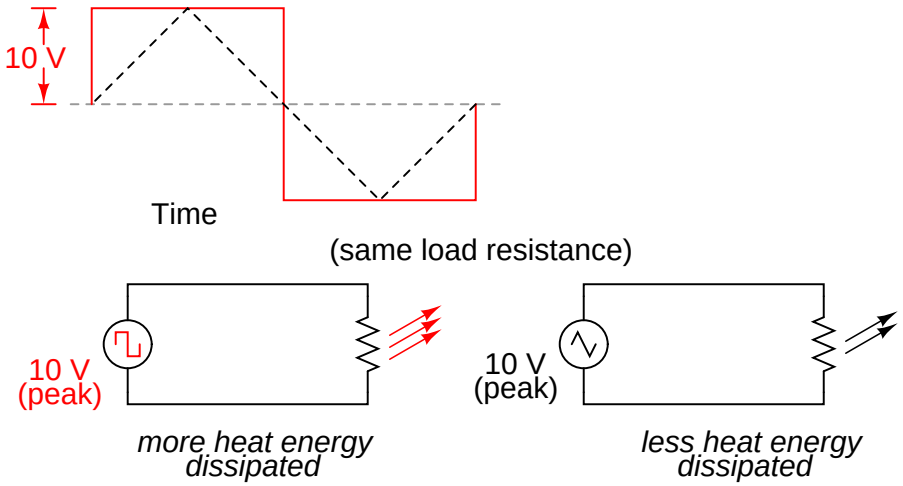


Figure 1.16: *A square wave produces a greater heating effect than the same peak voltage triangle wave.*

peaking at 10 volts. The effects of these two AC voltages powering a load would be quite different: Figure 1.16

One way of expressing the amplitude of different waveshapes in a more equivalent fashion is to mathematically average the values of all the points on a waveform's graph to a single, aggregate number. This amplitude measure is known simply as the *average* value of the waveform. If we average all the points on the waveform algebraically (that is, to consider their *sign*, either positive or negative), the average value for most waveforms is technically zero, because all the positive points cancel out all the negative points over a full cycle: Figure 1.17

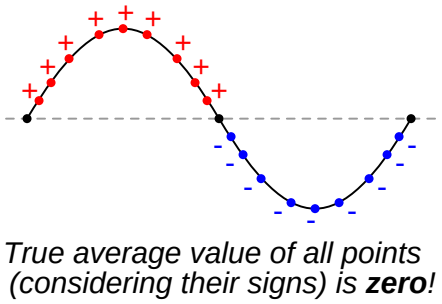


Figure 1.17: *The average value of a sinewave is zero.*

This, of course, will be true for any waveform having equal-area portions above and below the "zero" line of a plot. However, as a *practical* measure of a waveform's aggregate value, "average" is usually defined as the mathematical mean of all the points' *absolute values* over a cycle. In other words, we calculate the practical average value of the waveform by considering all points on the wave as positive quantities, as if the waveform looked like this: Figure 1.18

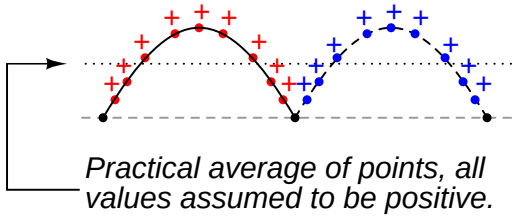


Figure 1.18: *Waveform seen by AC "average responding" meter.*

Polarity-insensitive mechanical meter movements (meters designed to respond equally to the positive and negative half-cycles of an alternating voltage or current) register in proportion to the waveform's (practical) average value, because the inertia of the pointer against the tension of the spring naturally averages the force produced by the varying voltage/current values over time. Conversely, polarity-sensitive meter movements vibrate uselessly if exposed to AC voltage or current, their needles oscillating rapidly about the zero mark, indicating the true (algebraic) average value of zero for a symmetrical waveform. When the "average" value of a waveform is referenced in this text, it will be assumed that the "practical" definition of average

is intended unless otherwise specified.

Another method of deriving an aggregate value for waveform amplitude is based on the waveform's ability to do useful work when applied to a load resistance. Unfortunately, an AC measurement based on work performed by a waveform is not the same as that waveform's "average" value, because the *power* dissipated by a given load (work performed per unit time) is not directly proportional to the magnitude of either the voltage or current impressed upon it. Rather, power is proportional to the *square* of the voltage or current applied to a resistance ($P = E^2/R$, and $P = I^2R$). Although the mathematics of such an amplitude measurement might not be straightforward, the utility of it is.

Consider a bandsaw and a jigsaw, two pieces of modern woodworking equipment. Both types of saws cut with a thin, toothed, motor-powered metal blade to cut wood. But while the bandsaw uses a continuous motion of the blade to cut, the jigsaw uses a back-and-forth motion. The comparison of alternating current (AC) to direct current (DC) may be likened to the comparison of these two saw types: Figure 1.19

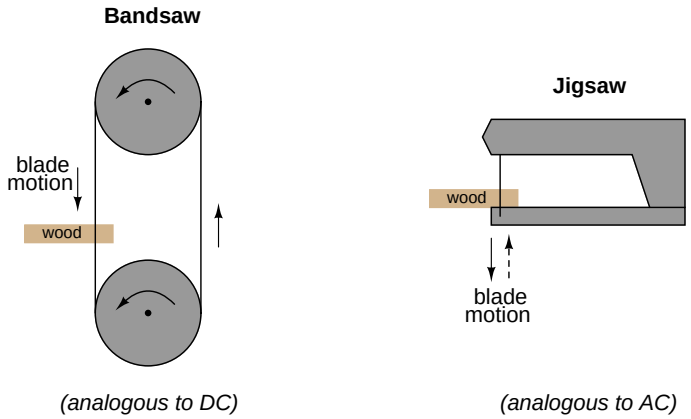


Figure 1.19: *Bandsaw-jigsaw analogy of DC vs AC.*

The problem of trying to describe the changing quantities of AC voltage or current in a single, aggregate measurement is also present in this saw analogy: how might we express the speed of a jigsaw blade? A bandsaw blade moves with a constant speed, similar to the way DC voltage pushes or DC current moves with a constant magnitude. A jigsaw blade, on the other hand, moves back and forth, its blade speed constantly changing. What is more, the back-and-forth motion of any two jigsaws may not be of the same type, depending on the mechanical design of the saws. One jigsaw might move its blade with a sine-wave motion, while another with a triangle-wave motion. To rate a jigsaw based on its *peak* blade speed would be quite misleading when comparing one jigsaw to another (or a jigsaw with a bandsaw!). Despite the fact that these different saws move their blades in different manners, they are equal in one respect: they all cut wood, and a quantitative comparison of this common function can serve as a common basis for which to rate blade speed.

Picture a jigsaw and bandsaw side-by-side, equipped with identical blades (same tooth pitch, angle, etc.), equally capable of cutting the same thickness of the same type of wood at the same rate. We might say that the two saws were equivalent or equal in their cutting capacity.

Might this comparison be used to assign a "bandsaw equivalent" blade speed to the jigsaw's back-and-forth blade motion; to relate the wood-cutting effectiveness of one to the other? This is the general idea used to assign a "DC equivalent" measurement to any AC voltage or current: whatever magnitude of DC voltage or current would produce the same amount of heat energy dissipation through an equal resistance:Figure 1.20

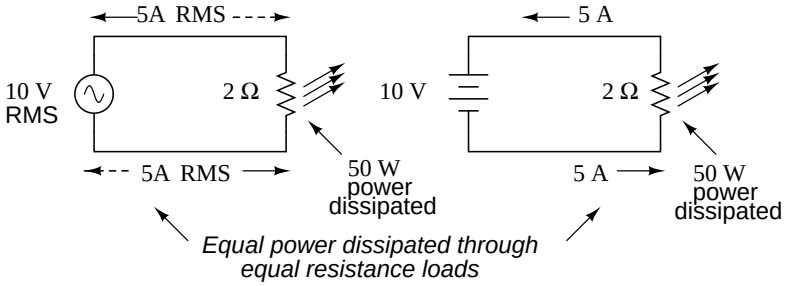


Figure 1.20: *An RMS voltage produces the same heating effect as a the same DC voltage*

In the two circuits above, we have the same amount of load resistance (2 Ω) dissipating the same amount of power in the form of heat (50 watts), one powered by AC and the other by DC. Because the AC voltage source pictured above is equivalent (in terms of power delivered to a load) to a 10 volt DC battery, we would call this a "10 volt" AC source. More specifically, we would denote its voltage value as being 10 volts *RMS*. The qualifier "RMS" stands for *Root Mean Square*, the algorithm used to obtain the DC equivalent value from points on a graph (essentially, the procedure consists of squaring all the positive and negative points on a waveform graph, averaging those squared values, then taking the square root of that average to obtain the final answer). Sometimes the alternative terms *equivalent* or *DC equivalent* are used instead of "RMS," but the quantity and principle are both the same.

RMS amplitude measurement is the best way to relate AC quantities to DC quantities, or other AC quantities of differing waveform shapes, when dealing with measurements of electric power. For other considerations, peak or peak-to-peak measurements may be the best to employ. For instance, when determining the proper size of wire (ampacity) to conduct electric power from a source to a load, RMS current measurement is the best to use, because the principal concern with current is overheating of the wire, which is a function of power dissipation caused by current through the resistance of the wire. However, when rating insulators for service in high-voltage AC applications, peak voltage measurements are the most appropriate, because the principal concern here is insulator "flashover" caused by brief spikes of voltage, irrespective of time.

Peak and peak-to-peak measurements are best performed with an oscilloscope, which can capture the crests of the waveform with a high degree of accuracy due to the fast action of the cathode-ray-tube in response to changes in voltage. For RMS measurements, analog meter movements (D'Arsonval, Weston, iron vane, electrodynamometer) will work so long as they have been calibrated in RMS figures. Because the mechanical inertia and dampening effects of an electromechanical meter movement makes the deflection of the needle naturally proportional to the *average* value of the AC, not the true RMS value, analog meters must be specifically calibrated (or mis-calibrated, depending on how you look at it) to indicate voltage

or current in RMS units. The accuracy of this calibration depends on an assumed waveshape, usually a sine wave.

Electronic meters specifically designed for RMS measurement are best for the task. Some instrument manufacturers have designed ingenious methods for determining the RMS value of any waveform. One such manufacturer produces "True-RMS" meters with a tiny resistive heating element powered by a voltage proportional to that being measured. The heating effect of that resistance element is measured thermally to give a true RMS value with no mathematical calculations whatsoever, just the laws of physics in action in fulfillment of the definition of RMS. The accuracy of this type of RMS measurement is independent of waveshape.

For "pure" waveforms, simple conversion coefficients exist for equating Peak, Peak-to-Peak, Average (practical, not algebraic), and RMS measurements to one another: Figure 1.21

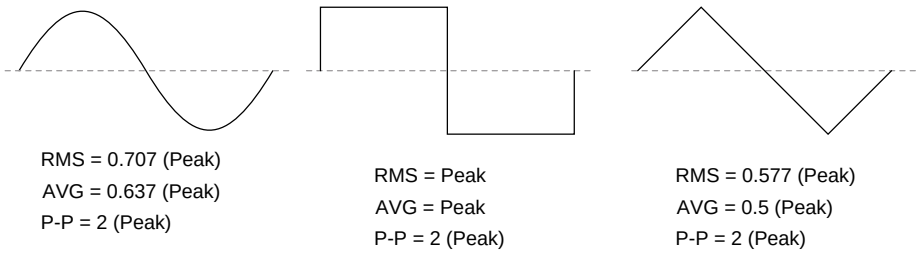


Figure 1.21: *Conversion factors for common waveforms.*

In addition to RMS, average, peak (crest), and peak-to-peak measures of an AC waveform, there are ratios expressing the proportionality between some of these fundamental measurements. The *crest factor* of an AC waveform, for instance, is the ratio of its peak (crest) value divided by its RMS value. The *form factor* of an AC waveform is the ratio of its RMS value divided by its average value. Square-shaped waveforms always have crest and form factors equal to 1, since the peak is the same as the RMS and average values. Sinusoidal waveforms have an RMS value of 0.707 (the reciprocal of the square root of 2) and a form factor of 1.11 (0.707/0.636). Triangle- and sawtooth-shaped waveforms have RMS values of 0.577 (the reciprocal of square root of 3) and form factors of 1.15 (0.577/0.5).

Bear in mind that the conversion constants shown here for peak, RMS, and average amplitudes of sine waves, square waves, and triangle waves hold true only for *pure* forms of these waveshapes. The RMS and average values of distorted waveshapes are not related by the same ratios: Figure 1.22

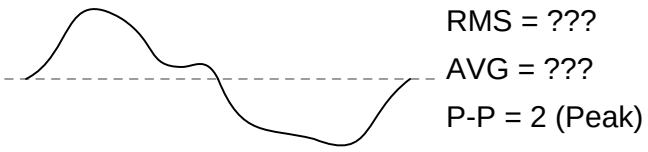


Figure 1.22: *Arbitrary waveforms have no simple conversions.*

This is a very important concept to understand when using an analog meter movement

to measure AC voltage or current. An analog movement, calibrated to indicate sine-wave RMS amplitude, will only be accurate when measuring pure sine waves. If the waveform of the voltage or current being measured is anything but a pure sine wave, the indication given by the meter will not be the true RMS value of the waveform, because the degree of needle deflection in an analog meter movement is proportional to the *average* value of the waveform, not the RMS. RMS meter calibration is obtained by "skewing" the span of the meter so that it displays a small multiple of the average value, which will be equal to be the RMS value for a particular waveshape and *a particular waveshape only*.

Since the sine-wave shape is most common in electrical measurements, it is the waveshape assumed for analog meter calibration, and the small multiple used in the calibration of the meter is 1.1107 (the form factor: 0.707/0.636: the ratio of RMS divided by average for a sinusoidal waveform). Any waveshape other than a pure sine wave will have a different ratio of RMS and average values, and thus a meter calibrated for sine-wave voltage or current will not indicate true RMS when reading a non-sinusoidal wave. Bear in mind that this limitation applies only to simple, analog AC meters not employing "True-RMS" technology.

- **REVIEW:**
- The *amplitude* of an AC waveform is its height as depicted on a graph over time. An amplitude measurement can take the form of peak, peak-to-peak, average, or RMS quantity.
- *Peak* amplitude is the height of an AC waveform as measured from the zero mark to the highest positive or lowest negative point on a graph. Also known as the *crest* amplitude of a wave.
- *Peak-to-peak* amplitude is the total height of an AC waveform as measured from maximum positive to maximum negative peaks on a graph. Often abbreviated as "P-P".
- *Average* amplitude is the mathematical "mean" of all a waveform's points over the period of one cycle. Technically, the average amplitude of any waveform with equal-area portions above and below the "zero" line on a graph is zero. However, as a practical measure of amplitude, a waveform's average value is often calculated as the mathematical mean of all the points' *absolute values* (taking all the negative values and considering them as positive). For a sine wave, the average value so calculated is approximately 0.637 of its peak value.
- "RMS" stands for *Root Mean Square*, and is a way of expressing an AC quantity of voltage or current in terms functionally equivalent to DC. For example, 10 volts AC RMS is the amount of voltage that would produce the same amount of heat dissipation across a resistor of given value as a 10 volt DC power supply. Also known as the "equivalent" or "DC equivalent" value of an AC voltage or current. For a sine wave, the RMS value is approximately 0.707 of its peak value.
- The *crest factor* of an AC waveform is the ratio of its peak (crest) to its RMS value.
- The *form factor* of an AC waveform is the ratio of its RMS value to its average value.
- Analog, electromechanical meter movements respond proportionally to the *average* value of an AC voltage or current. When RMS indication is desired, the meter's calibration

must be "skewed" accordingly. This means that the accuracy of an electromechanical meter's RMS indication is dependent on the purity of the waveform: whether it is the exact same waveshape as the waveform used in calibrating.

1.4 Simple AC circuit calculations

Over the course of the next few chapters, you will learn that AC circuit measurements and calculations can get very complicated due to the complex nature of alternating current in circuits with inductance and capacitance. However, with simple circuits (figure 1.23) involving nothing more than an AC power source and resistance, the same laws and rules of DC apply simply and directly.

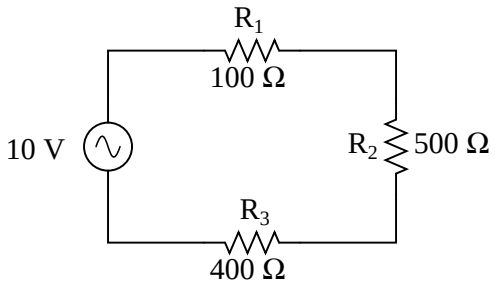


Figure 1.23: *AC circuit calculations for resistive circuits are the same as for DC.*

$R_{total} = R_1 + R_2 + R_3$

$R_{total} = 1\ k\Omega$

$$I_{total} = \frac{E_{total}}{R_{total}} \qquad I_{total} = \frac{10\ V}{1\ k\Omega} \qquad I_{total} = 10\ mA$$

$$E_{R1} = I_{total}R_1 \qquad E_{R2} = I_{total}R_2 \qquad E_{R3} = I_{total}R_3$$

$$E_{R1} = 1\ V \qquad E_{R2} = 5\ V \qquad E_{R3} = 4\ V$$

Series resistances still add, parallel resistances still diminish, and the Laws of Kirchhoff and Ohm still hold true. Actually, as we will discover later on, these rules and laws *always* hold true, its just that we have to express the quantities of voltage, current, and opposition to current in more advanced mathematical forms. With purely resistive circuits, however, these complexities of AC are of no practical consequence, and so we can treat the numbers as though we were dealing with simple DC quantities.

Because all these mathematical relationships still hold true, we can make use of our familiar "table" method of organizing circuit values just as with DC:

	R_1	R_2	R_3	Total	
E	1	5	4	10	Volts
I	10m	10m	10m	10m	Amps
R	100	500	400	1k	Ohms

One major caveat needs to be given here: all measurements of AC voltage and current must be expressed in the same terms (peak, peak-to-peak, average, or RMS). If the source voltage is given in peak AC volts, then all currents and voltages subsequently calculated are cast in terms of peak units. If the source voltage is given in AC RMS volts, then all calculated currents and voltages are cast in AC RMS units as well. This holds true for *any* calculation based on Ohm's Laws, Kirchhoff's Laws, etc. Unless otherwise stated, all values of voltage and current in AC circuits are generally assumed to be RMS rather than peak, average, or peak-to-peak. In some areas of electronics, peak measurements are assumed, but in most applications (especially industrial electronics) the assumption is RMS.

- **REVIEW:**
- All the old rules and laws of DC (Kirchhoff's Voltage and Current Laws, Ohm's Law) still hold true for AC. However, with more complex circuits, we may need to represent the AC quantities in more complex form. More on this later, I promise!
- The "table" method of organizing circuit values is still a valid analysis tool for AC circuits.

1.5 AC phase

Things start to get complicated when we need to relate two or more AC voltages or currents that are out of step with each other. By "out of step," I mean that the two waveforms are not synchronized: that their peaks and zero points do not match up at the same points in time. The graph in figure 1.24 illustrates an example of this.

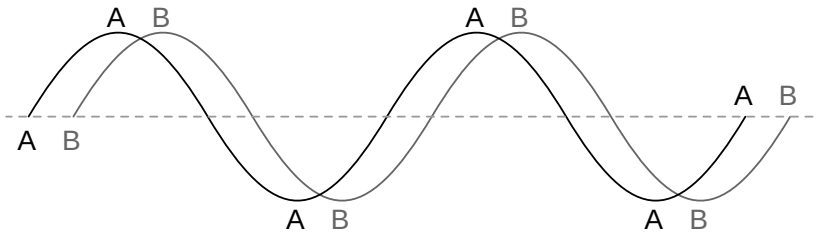


Figure 1.24: *Out of phase waveforms*

The two waves shown above (A versus B) are of the same amplitude and frequency, but they are out of step with each other. In technical terms, this is called a *phase shift*. Earlier

we saw how we could plot a "sine wave" by calculating the trigonometric sine function for angles ranging from 0 to 360 degrees, a full circle. The starting point of a sine wave was zero amplitude at zero degrees, progressing to full positive amplitude at 90 degrees, zero at 180 degrees, full negative at 270 degrees, and back to the starting point of zero at 360 degrees. We can use this angle scale along the horizontal axis of our waveform plot to express just how far out of step one wave is with another: Figure 1.25

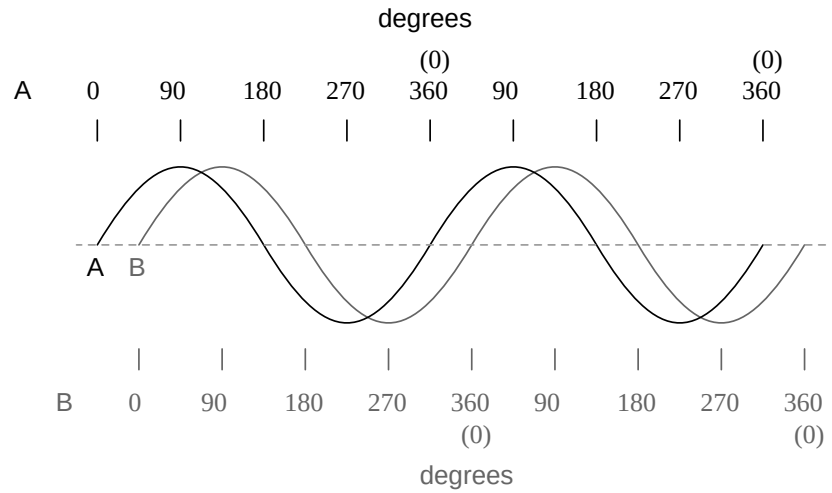


Figure 1.25: *Wave A leads wave B by 45°*

The shift between these two waveforms is about 45 degrees, the "A" wave being ahead of the "B" wave. A sampling of different phase shifts is given in the following graphs to better illustrate this concept: Figure 1.26

Because the waveforms in the above examples are at the same frequency, they will be out of step by the same angular amount at every point in time. For this reason, we can express phase shift for two or more waveforms of the same frequency as a constant quantity for the entire wave, and not just an expression of shift between any two particular points along the waves. That is, it is safe to say something like, "voltage 'A' is 45 degrees out of phase with voltage 'B'." Whichever waveform is ahead in its evolution is said to be *leading* and the one behind is said to be *lagging*.

Phase shift, like voltage, is always a measurement relative between two things. There's really no such thing as a waveform with an *absolute* phase measurement because there's no known universal reference for phase. Typically in the analysis of AC circuits, the voltage waveform of the power supply is used as a reference for phase, that voltage stated as "xxx volts at 0 degrees." Any other AC voltage or current in that circuit will have its phase shift expressed in terms relative to that source voltage.

This is what makes AC circuit calculations more complicated than DC. When applying Ohm's Law and Kirchhoff's Laws, quantities of AC voltage and current must reflect phase shift as well as amplitude. Mathematical operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division must operate on these quantities of phase shift as well as amplitude. Fortunately,

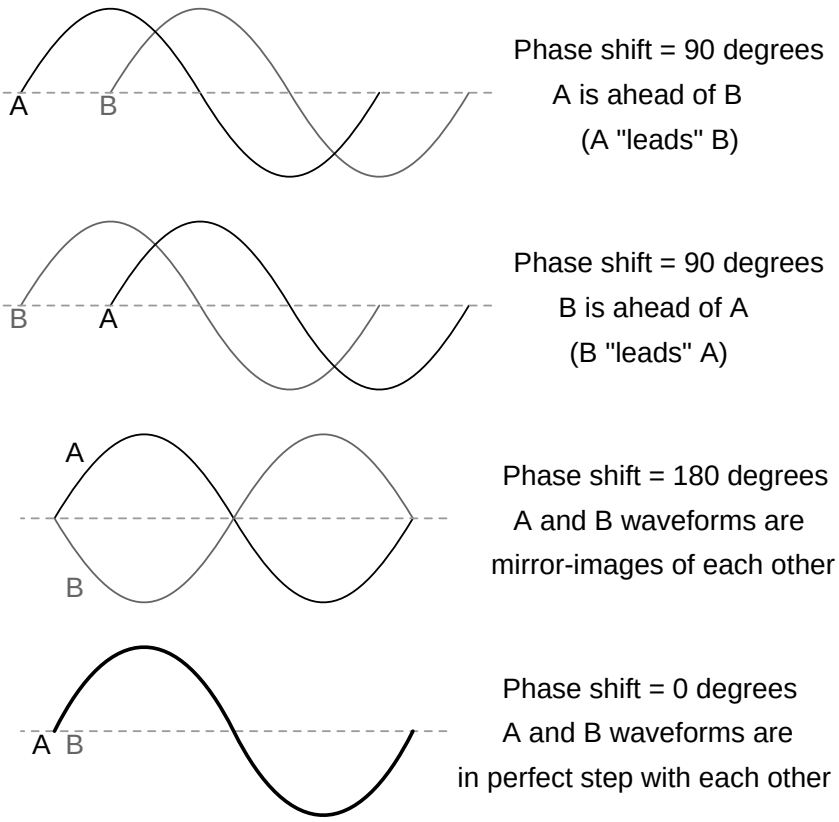
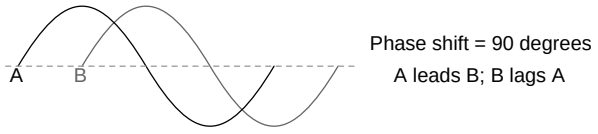


Figure 1.26: *Examples of phase shifts.*

there is a mathematical system of quantities called *complex numbers* ideally suited for this task of representing amplitude and phase.

Because the subject of complex numbers is so essential to the understanding of AC circuits, the next chapter will be devoted to that subject alone.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Phase shift* is where two or more waveforms are out of step with each other.
- The amount of phase shift between two waves can be expressed in terms of degrees, as defined by the degree units on the horizontal axis of the waveform graph used in plotting the trigonometric sine function.
- A *leading* waveform is defined as one waveform that is ahead of another in its evolution. A *lagging* waveform is one that is behind another. Example:



-
- Calculations for AC circuit analysis must take into consideration both amplitude and phase shift of voltage and current waveforms to be completely accurate. This requires the use of a mathematical system called *complex numbers*.

1.6 Principles of radio

One of the more fascinating applications of electricity is in the generation of invisible ripples of energy called *radio waves*. The limited scope of this lesson on alternating current does not permit full exploration of the concept, some of the basic principles will be covered.

With Oersted's accidental discovery of electromagnetism, it was realized that electricity and magnetism were related to each other. When an electric current was passed through a conductor, a magnetic field was generated perpendicular to the axis of flow. Likewise, if a conductor was exposed to a change in magnetic flux perpendicular to the conductor, a voltage was produced along the length of that conductor. So far, scientists knew that electricity and magnetism always seemed to affect each other at right angles. However, a major discovery lay hidden just beneath this seemingly simple concept of related perpendicularity, and its unveiling was one of the pivotal moments in modern science.

This breakthrough in physics is hard to overstate. The man responsible for this conceptual revolution was the Scottish physicist James Clerk Maxwell (1831-1879), who "unified" the study of electricity and magnetism in four relatively tidy equations. In essence, what he discovered was that electric and magnetic *fields* were intrinsically related to one another, with or without the presence of a conductive path for electrons to flow. Stated more formally, Maxwell's discovery was this:

A changing electric field produces a perpendicular magnetic field, and
A changing magnetic field produces a perpendicular electric field.

All of this can take place in open space, the alternating electric and magnetic fields supporting each other as they travel through space at the speed of light. This dynamic structure of electric and magnetic fields propagating through space is better known as an *electromagnetic wave*.

There are many kinds of natural radiative energy composed of electromagnetic waves. Even light is electromagnetic in nature. So are X-rays and "gamma" ray radiation. The only difference between these kinds of electromagnetic radiation is the frequency of their oscillation (alternation of the electric and magnetic fields back and forth in polarity). By using a source of AC voltage and a special device called an *antenna*, we can create electromagnetic waves (of a much lower frequency than that of light) with ease.

An antenna is nothing more than a device built to produce a dispersing electric or magnetic field. Two fundamental types of antennae are the *dipole* and the *loop*: Figure 1.27

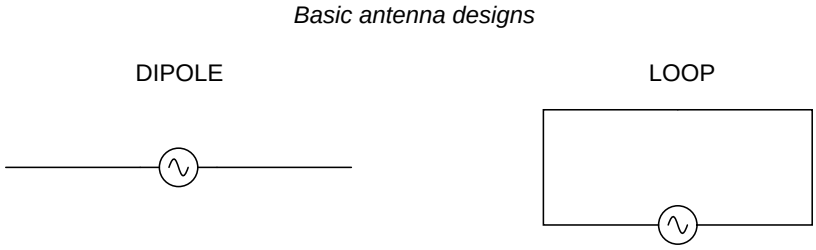


Figure 1.27: *Dipole and loop antennae*

While the dipole looks like nothing more than an open circuit, and the loop a short circuit, these pieces of wire are effective radiators of electromagnetic fields when connected to AC sources of the proper frequency. The two open wires of the dipole act as a sort of capacitor (two conductors separated by a dielectric), with the electric field open to dispersal instead of being concentrated between two closely-spaced plates. The closed wire path of the loop antenna acts like an inductor with a large air core, again providing ample opportunity for the field to disperse away from the antenna instead of being concentrated and contained as in a normal inductor.

As the powered dipole radiates its changing electric field into space, a changing magnetic field is produced at right angles, thus sustaining the electric field further into space, and so on as the wave propagates at the speed of light. As the powered loop antenna radiates its changing magnetic field into space, a changing electric field is produced at right angles, with the same end-result of a continuous electromagnetic wave sent away from the antenna. Either antenna achieves the same basic task: the controlled production of an electromagnetic field.

When attached to a source of high-frequency AC power, an antenna acts as a *transmitting* device, converting AC voltage and current into electromagnetic wave energy. Antennas also have the ability to intercept electromagnetic waves and convert their energy into AC voltage and current. In this mode, an antenna acts as a *receiving* device: Figure 1.28

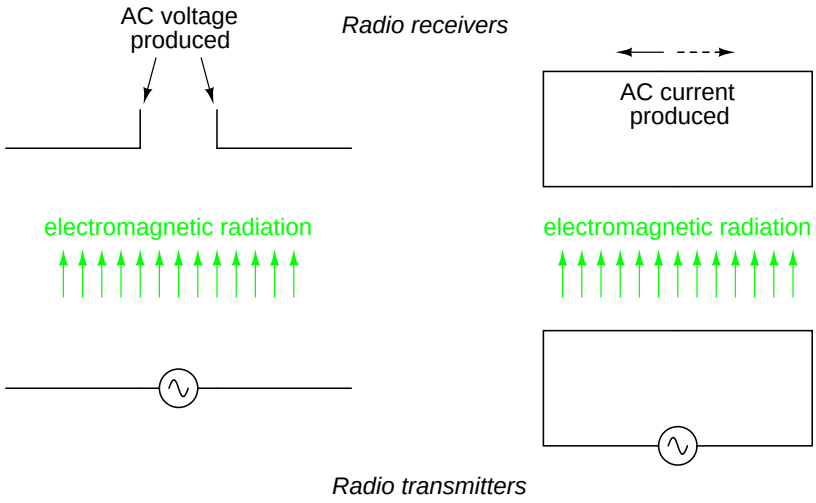


Figure 1.28: *Basic radio transmitter and receiver*

While there is *much* more that may be said about antenna technology, this brief introduction is enough to give you the general idea of what's going on (and perhaps enough information to provoke a few experiments).

- **REVIEW:**
- James Maxwell discovered that changing electric fields produce perpendicular magnetic fields, and vice versa, even in empty space.
- A twin set of electric and magnetic fields, oscillating at right angles to each other and traveling at the speed of light, constitutes an *electromagnetic wave*.
- An *antenna* is a device made of wire, designed to radiate a changing electric field or changing magnetic field when powered by a high-frequency AC source, or intercept an electromagnetic field and convert it to an AC voltage or current.
- The *dipole* antenna consists of two pieces of wire (not touching), primarily generating an electric field when energized, and secondarily producing a magnetic field in space.
- The *loop* antenna consists of a loop of wire, primarily generating a magnetic field when energized, and secondarily producing an electric field in space.

1.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Harvey Lew (February 7, 2004): Corrected typographical error: "circuit" should have been "circle".

Duane Damiano (February 25, 2003): Pointed out magnetic polarity error in DC generator illustration.

Mark D. Zarella (April 28, 2002): Suggestion for improving explanation of "average" waveform amplitude.

John Symonds (March 28, 2002): Suggestion for improving explanation of the unit "Hertz."

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 2

COMPLEX NUMBERS

Contents

2.1 Introduction

If I needed to describe the distance between two cities, I could provide an answer consisting of a single number in miles, kilometers, or some other unit of linear measurement. However, if I were to describe how to travel from one city to another, I would have to provide more information than just the distance between those two cities; I would also have to provide information about the *direction* to travel, as well.

The kind of information that expresses a single dimension, such as linear distance, is called a *scalar* quantity in mathematics. Scalar numbers are the kind of numbers you've used in most all of your mathematical applications so far. The voltage produced by a battery, for example, is a scalar quantity. So is the resistance of a piece of wire (ohms), or the current through it (amps).

However, when we begin to analyze alternating current circuits, we find that quantities of voltage, current, and even resistance (called *impedance* in AC) are not the familiar one-dimensional quantities we're used to measuring in DC circuits. Rather, these quantities, because they're dynamic (alternating in direction and amplitude), possess other dimensions that

must be taken into account. Frequency and phase shift are two of these dimensions that come into play. Even with relatively simple AC circuits, where we're only dealing with a single frequency, we still have the dimension of phase shift to contend with in addition to the amplitude.

In order to successfully analyze AC circuits, we need to work with mathematical objects and techniques capable of representing these multi-dimensional quantities. Here is where we need to abandon scalar numbers for something better suited: *complex numbers*. Just like the example of giving directions from one city to another, AC quantities in a single-frequency circuit have both amplitude (analogy: distance) and phase shift (analogy: direction). A complex number is a single mathematical quantity able to express these two dimensions of amplitude and phase shift at once.

Complex numbers are easier to grasp when they're represented graphically. If I draw a line with a certain length (magnitude) and angle (direction), I have a graphic representation of a complex number which is commonly known in physics as a *vector*: (Figure 2.1)

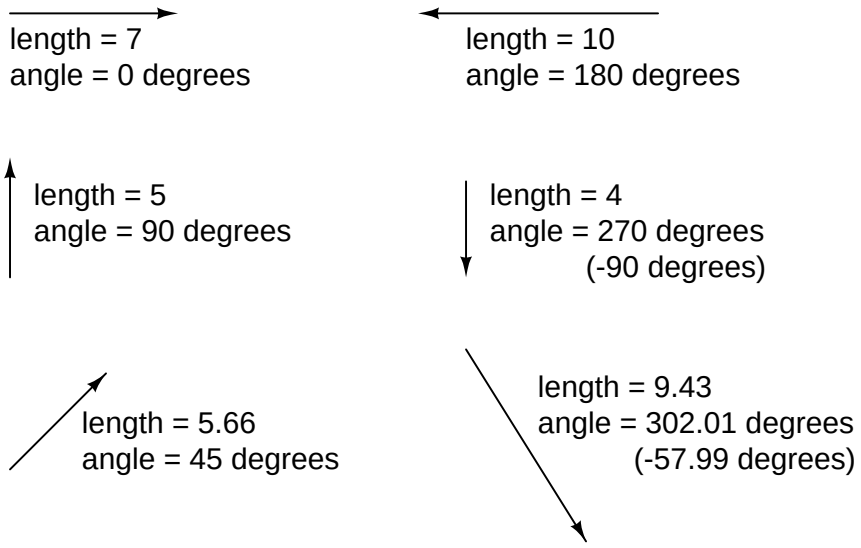


Figure 2.1: *A vector has both magnitude and direction.*

Like distances and directions on a map, there must be some common frame of reference for angle figures to have any meaning. In this case, directly right is considered to be 0^o, and angles are counted in a positive direction going counter-clockwise: (Figure 2.2)

The idea of representing a number in graphical form is nothing new. We all learned this in grade school with the "number line:" (Figure 2.3)

We even learned how addition and subtraction works by seeing how lengths (magnitudes) stacked up to give a final answer: (Figure 2.4)

Later, we learned that there were ways to designate the values *between* the whole numbers marked on the line. These were fractional or decimal quantities: (Figure 2.5)

Later yet we learned that the number line could extend to the left of zero as well: (Figure 2.6)

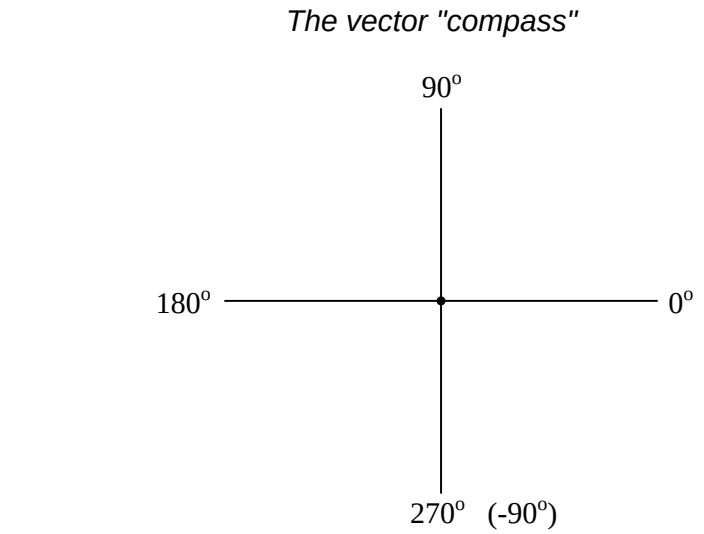


Figure 2.2: *The vector compass*

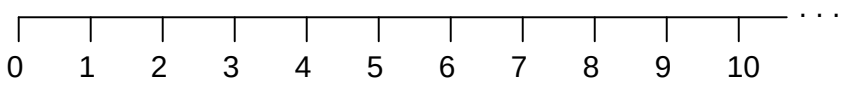


Figure 2.3: *Number line.*

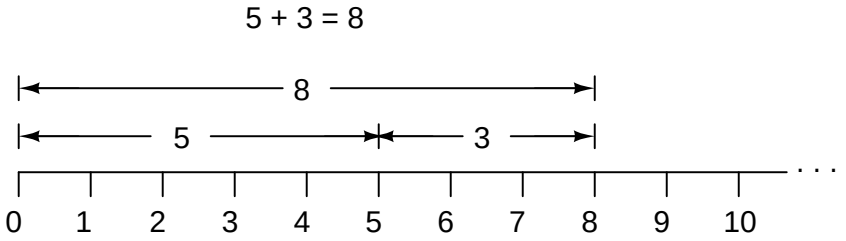


Figure 2.4: *Addition on a "number line".*

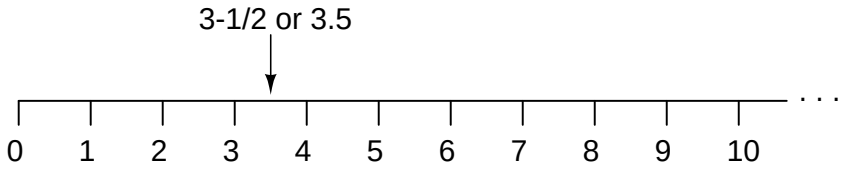


Figure 2.5: *Locating a fraction on the "number line"*

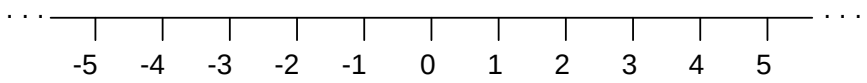


Figure 2.6: *"Number line" shows both positive and negative numbers.*

These fields of numbers (whole, integer, rational, irrational, real, etc.) learned in grade school share a common trait: they're all *one-dimensional*. The straightness of the number line illustrates this graphically. You can move up or down the number line, but all "motion" along that line is restricted to a single axis (horizontal). One-dimensional, scalar numbers are perfectly adequate for counting beads, representing weight, or measuring DC battery voltage, but they fall short of being able to represent something more complex like the distance *and* direction between two cities, or the amplitude *and* phase of an AC waveform. To represent these kinds of quantities, we need multidimensional representations. In other words, we need a number line that can point in different directions, and that's exactly what a vector is.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *scalar* number is the type of mathematical object that people are used to using in everyday life: a one-dimensional quantity like temperature, length, weight, etc.
- A *complex number* is a mathematical quantity representing two dimensions of magnitude and direction.
- A *vector* is a graphical representation of a complex number. It looks like an arrow, with a starting point, a tip, a definite length, and a definite direction. Sometimes the word *phasor* is used in electrical applications where the angle of the vector represents phase shift between waveforms.

2.2 Vectors and AC waveforms

OK, so how exactly can we represent AC quantities of voltage or current in the form of a vector? The length of the vector represents the magnitude (or amplitude) of the waveform, like this: (Figure 2.7)

The greater the amplitude of the waveform, the greater the length of its corresponding vector. The angle of the vector, however, represents the phase shift in degrees between the waveform in question and another waveform acting as a "reference" in time. Usually, when the phase of a waveform in a circuit is expressed, it is referenced to the power supply voltage waveform (arbitrarily stated to be "at" 0^{o}). Remember that phase is always a *relative* measurement between two waveforms rather than an absolute property. (Figure 2.8) (Figure 2.9)

The greater the phase shift in degrees between two waveforms, the greater the angle difference between the corresponding vectors. Being a relative measurement, like voltage, phase shift (vector angle) only has meaning in reference to some standard waveform. Generally this "reference" waveform is the main AC power supply voltage in the circuit. If there is more than

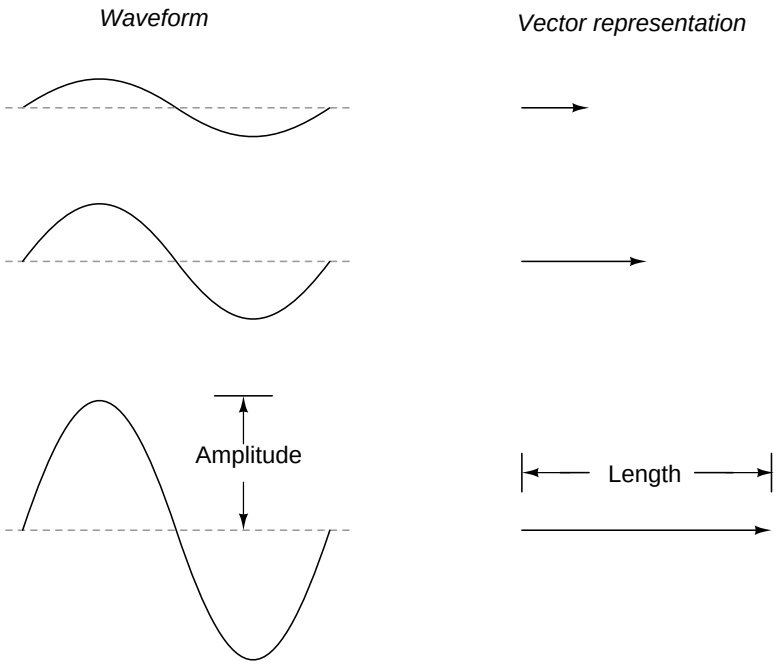


Figure 2.7: *Vector length represents AC voltage magnitude.*

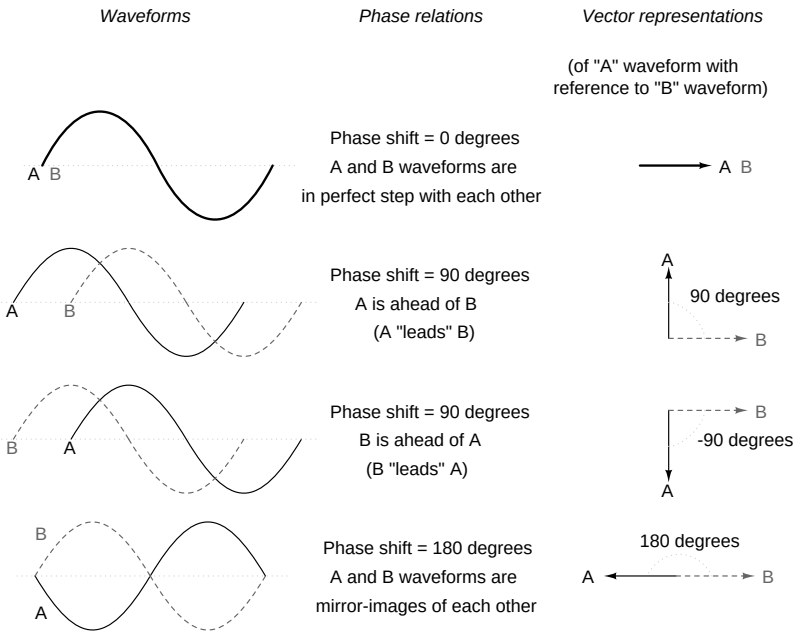


Figure 2.8: *Vector angle is the phase with respect to another waveform.*

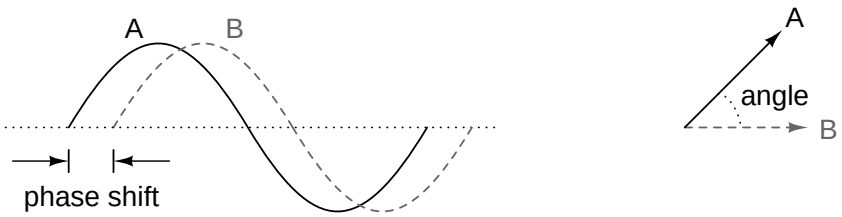


Figure 2.9: *Phase shift between waves and vector phase angle*

one AC voltage source, then one of those sources is arbitrarily chosen to be the phase reference for all other measurements in the circuit.

This concept of a reference point is not unlike that of the "ground" point in a circuit for the benefit of voltage reference. With a clearly defined point in the circuit declared to be "ground," it becomes possible to talk about voltage "on" or "at" single points in a circuit, being understood that those voltages (always relative between *two* points) are referenced to "ground." Correspondingly, with a clearly defined point of reference for phase it becomes possible to speak of voltages and currents in an AC circuit having definite phase angles. For example, if the current in an AC circuit is described as "24.3 milliamps at -64 degrees," it means that the current waveform has an amplitude of 24.3 mA, and it lags 64^o behind the reference waveform, usually assumed to be the main source voltage waveform.

- **REVIEW:**
- When used to describe an AC quantity, the length of a vector represents the amplitude of the wave while the angle of a vector represents the phase angle of the wave relative to some other (reference) waveform.

2.3 Simple vector addition

Remember that vectors are mathematical objects just like numbers on a number line: they can be added, subtracted, multiplied, and divided. Addition is perhaps the easiest vector operation to visualize, so we'll begin with that. If vectors with common angles are added, their magnitudes (lengths) add up just like regular scalar quantities: (Figure 2.10)

Figure 2.10: *Vector magnitudes add like scalars for a common angle.*

Similarly, if AC voltage sources with the same phase angle are connected together in series, their voltages add just as you might expect with DC batteries: (Figure 2.11)

Please note the (+) and (-) polarity marks next to the leads of the two AC sources. Even though we know AC doesn't have "polarity" in the same sense that DC does, these marks are

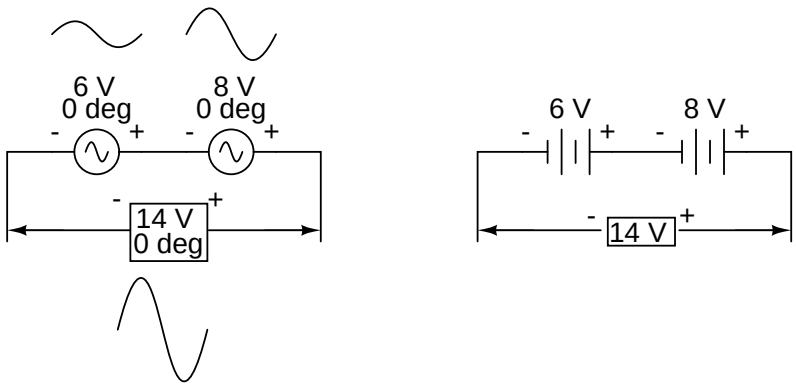


Figure 2.11: *"In phase" AC voltages add like DC battery voltages.*

essential to knowing how to reference the given phase angles of the voltages. This will become more apparent in the next example.

If vectors directly opposing each other (180^o out of phase) are added together, their magnitudes (lengths) subtract just like positive and negative scalar quantities subtract when added: (Figure 2.12)

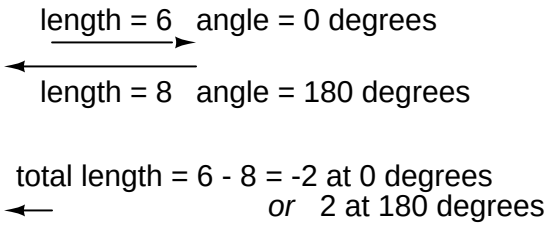


Figure 2.12: *Directly opposing vector magnitudes subtract.*

Similarly, if opposing AC voltage sources are connected in series, their voltages subtract as you might expect with DC batteries connected in an opposing fashion: (Figure 2.13)

Determining whether or not these voltage sources are opposing each other requires an examination of their polarity markings *and* their phase angles. Notice how the polarity markings in the above diagram seem to indicate additive voltages (from left to right, we see - and + on the 6 volt source, - and + on the 8 volt source). Even though these polarity markings would normally indicate an *additive* effect in a DC circuit (the two voltages working together to produce a greater total voltage), in this AC circuit they're actually pushing in opposite directions because one of those voltages has a phase angle of 0^o and the other a phase angle of 180^o. The result, of course, is a total voltage of 2 volts.

We could have just as well shown the opposing voltages subtracting in series like this: (Figure 2.14)

Note how the polarities appear to be opposed to each other now, due to the reversal of wire connections on the 8 volt source. Since both sources are described as having equal phase

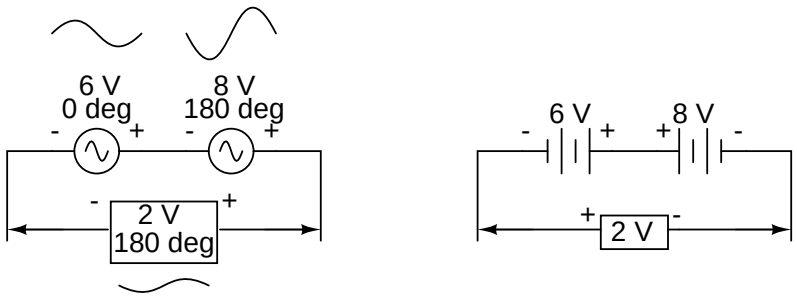


Figure 2.13: *Opposing AC voltages subtract like opposing battery voltages.*

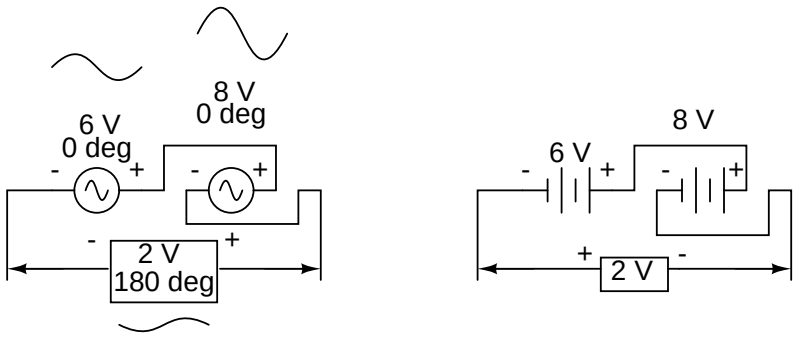


Figure 2.14: *Opposing voltages in spite of equal phase angles.*

angles (0^o), they truly are opposed to one another, and the overall effect is the same as the former scenario with "additive" polarities and differing phase angles: a total voltage of only 2 volts. (Figure 2.15)

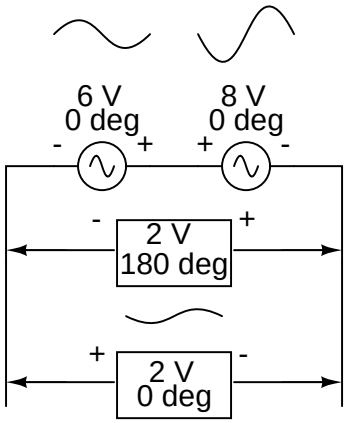


Figure 2.15: *Just as there are two ways to express the phase of the sources, there are two ways to express the resultant their sum.*

The resultant voltage can be expressed in two different ways: 2 volts at 180^o with the (-) symbol on the left and the (+) symbol on the right, or 2 volts at 0^o with the (+) symbol on the left and the (-) symbol on the right. A reversal of wires from an AC voltage source is the same as phase-shifting that source by 180^o. (Figure 2.16)

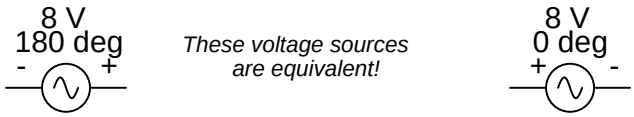


Figure 2.16: *Example of equivalent voltage sources.*

2.4 Complex vector addition

If vectors with uncommon angles are added, their magnitudes (lengths) add up quite differently than that of scalar magnitudes: (Figure 2.17)

If two AC voltages – 90^o out of phase – are added together by being connected in series, their voltage magnitudes do not directly add or subtract as with scalar voltages in DC. Instead, these voltage quantities are complex quantities, and just like the above vectors, which add up in a trigonometric fashion, a 6 volt source at 0^o added to an 8 volt source at 90^o results in 10 volts at a phase angle of 53.13^o: (Figure 2.18)

Compared to DC circuit analysis, this is very strange indeed. Note that its possible to obtain voltmeter indications of 6 and 8 volts, respectively, across the two AC voltage sources, yet only

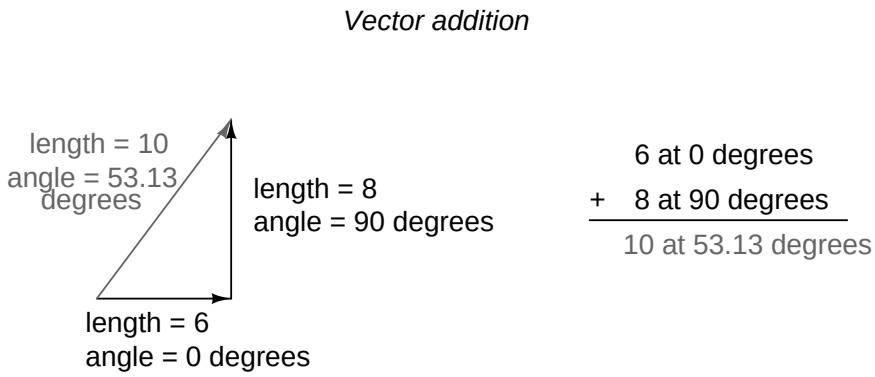


Figure 2.17: *Vector magnitudes do not directly add for unequal angles.*

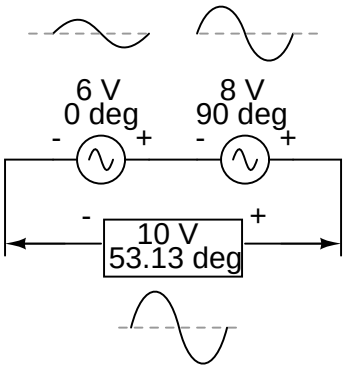


Figure 2.18: *The 6V and 8V sources add to 10V with the help of trigonometry.*

read 10 volts for a total voltage!

There is no suitable DC analogy for what we're seeing here with two AC voltages slightly out of phase. DC voltages can only directly aid or directly oppose, with nothing in between. With AC, two voltages can be aiding or opposing one another *to any degree* between fully-aiding and fully-opposing, inclusive. Without the use of vector (complex number) notation to describe AC quantities, it would be *very* difficult to perform mathematical calculations for AC circuit analysis.

In the next section, we'll learn how to represent vector quantities in symbolic rather than graphical form. Vector and triangle diagrams suffice to illustrate the general concept, but more precise methods of symbolism must be used if any serious calculations are to be performed on these quantities.

- **REVIEW:**
- DC voltages can only either directly aid or directly oppose each other when connected in series. AC voltages may aid or oppose *to any degree* depending on the phase shift between them.

2.5 Polar and rectangular notation

In order to work with these complex numbers without drawing vectors, we first need some kind of standard mathematical notation. There are two basic forms of complex number notation: *polar* and *rectangular*.

Polar form is where a complex number is denoted by the *length* (otherwise known as the *magnitude*, *absolute value*, or *modulus*) and the *angle* of its vector (usually denoted by an angle symbol that looks like this: $\angle$). To use the map analogy, polar notation for the vector from New York City to San Diego would be something like "2400 miles, southwest." Here are two examples of vectors and their polar notations: (Figure 2.19)

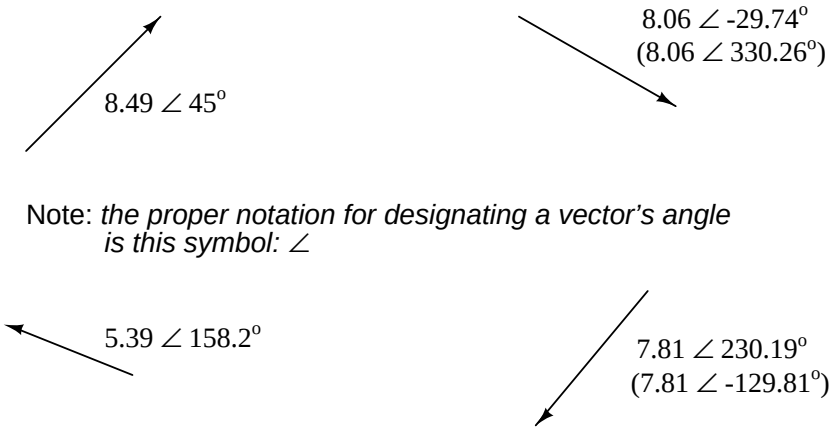


Figure 2.19: *Vectors with polar notations.*

Standard orientation for vector angles in AC circuit calculations defines 0^o as being to the right (horizontal), making 90^o straight up, 180^o to the left, and 270^o straight down. Please note that vectors angled "down" can have angles represented in polar form as positive numbers in excess of 180, or negative numbers less than 180. For example, a vector angled $\angle\ 270^o$ (straight down) can also be said to have an angle of -90^o. (Figure 2.20) The above vector on the right ($7.81 \angle 230.19^o$) can also be denoted as $7.81 \angle -129.81^o$.

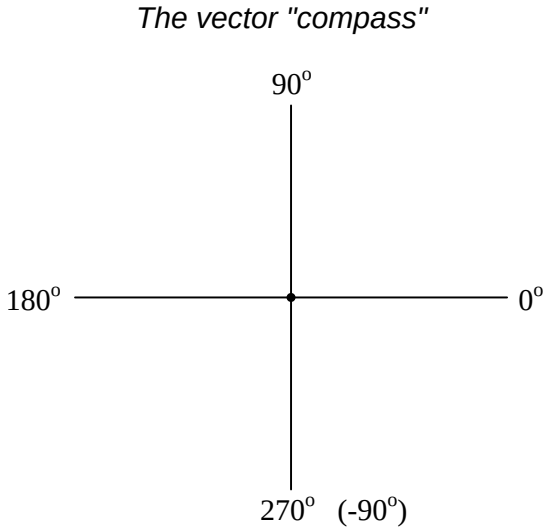


Figure 2.20: *The vector compass*

Rectangular form, on the other hand, is where a complex number is denoted by its respective horizontal and vertical components. In essence, the angled vector is taken to be the hypotenuse of a right triangle, described by the lengths of the adjacent and opposite sides. Rather than describing a vector's length and direction by denoting magnitude and angle, it is described in terms of "how far left/right" and "how far up/down."

These two dimensional figures (horizontal and vertical) are symbolized by two numerical figures. In order to distinguish the horizontal and vertical dimensions from each other, the vertical is prefixed with a lower-case "i" (in pure mathematics) or "j" (in electronics). These lower-case letters do not represent a physical variable (such as instantaneous current, also symbolized by a lower-case letter "i"), but rather are mathematical *operators* used to distinguish the vector's vertical component from its horizontal component. As a complete complex number, the horizontal and vertical quantities are written as a sum: (Figure 2.21)

The horizontal component is referred to as the *real* component, since that dimension is compatible with normal, scalar ("real") numbers. The vertical component is referred to as the *imaginary* component, since that dimension lies in a different direction, totally alien to the scale of the real numbers. (Figure 2.22)

The "real" axis of the graph corresponds to the familiar number line we saw earlier: the one with both positive and negative values on it. The "imaginary" axis of the graph corresponds to another number line situated at 90^o to the "real" one. Vectors being two-dimensional things,

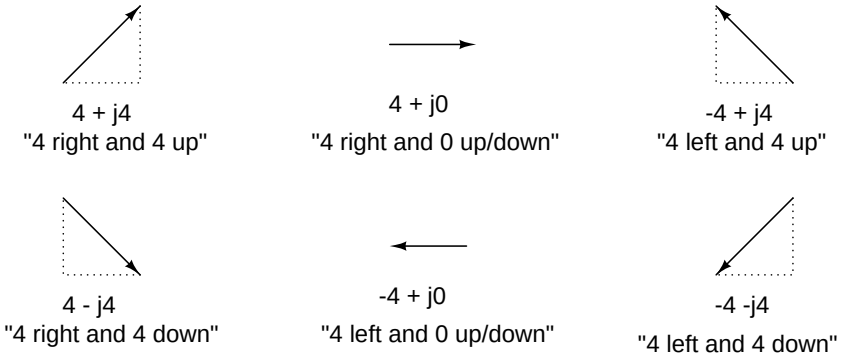


Figure 2.21: *In "rectangular" form the vector's length and direction are denoted in terms of its horizontal and vertical span, the first number representing the the horizontal ("real") and the second number (with the "j" prefix) representing the vertical ("imaginary") dimensions.*

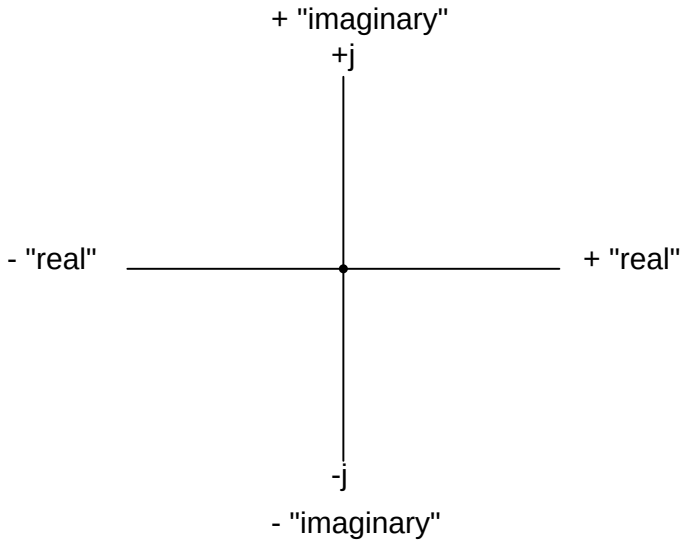


Figure 2.22: *Vector compass showing real and imaginary axes*

we must have a two-dimensional "map" upon which to express them, thus the two number lines perpendicular to each other: (Figure 2.23)

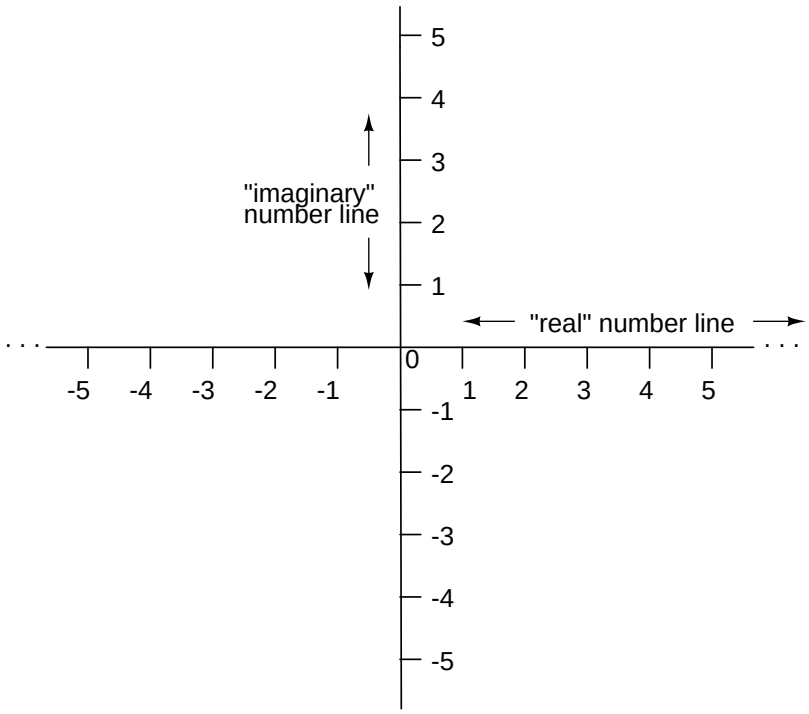


Figure 2.23: *Vector compass with real and imaginary ("j") number lines.*

Either method of notation is valid for complex numbers. The primary reason for having two methods of notation is for ease of longhand calculation, rectangular form lending itself to addition and subtraction, and polar form lending itself to multiplication and division.

Conversion between the two notational forms involves simple trigonometry. To convert from polar to rectangular, find the real component by multiplying the polar magnitude by the cosine of the angle, and the imaginary component by multiplying the polar magnitude by the sine of the angle. This may be understood more readily by drawing the quantities as sides of a right triangle, the hypotenuse of the triangle representing the vector itself (its length and angle with respect to the horizontal constituting the polar form), the horizontal and vertical sides representing the "real" and "imaginary" rectangular components, respectively: (Figure 2.24)

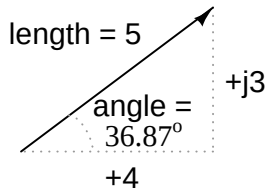


Figure 2.24: *Magnitude vector in terms of real (4) and imaginary (j3) components.*

$5 \angle 36.87^o$ **(polar form)**

$(5)(\cos 36.87^o) = 4$ (real component)

$(5)(\sin 36.87^o) = 3$ (imaginary component)

$4 + j3$ **(rectangular form)**

To convert from rectangular to polar, find the polar magnitude through the use of the Pythagorean Theorem (the polar magnitude is the hypotenuse of a right triangle, and the real and imaginary components are the adjacent and opposite sides, respectively), and the angle by taking the arctangent of the imaginary component divided by the real component:

$4 + j3$ **(rectangular form)**

$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ (pythagorean theorem)

polar magnitude = $\sqrt{4^2 + 3^2}$

polar magnitude = 5

polar angle = $\arctan \frac{3}{4}$

polar angle = 36.87^o

$5 \angle 36.87^o$ **(polar form)**

- **REVIEW:**
- *Polar* notation denotes a complex number in terms of its vector's length and angular direction from the starting point. Example: fly 45 miles $\angle$ 203^o (West by Southwest).

- *Rectangular* notation denotes a complex number in terms of its horizontal and vertical dimensions. Example: drive 41 miles West, then turn and drive 18 miles South.

- In rectangular notation, the first quantity is the "real" component (horizontal dimension of vector) and the second quantity is the "imaginary" component (vertical dimension of vector). The imaginary component is preceded by a lower-case "j," sometimes called the *j operator*.

- Both polar and rectangular forms of notation for a complex number can be related graphically in the form of a right triangle, with the hypotenuse representing the vector itself (polar form: hypotenuse length = magnitude; angle with respect to horizontal side = angle), the horizontal side representing the rectangular "real" component, and the vertical side representing the rectangular "imaginary" component.

2.6 Complex number arithmetic

Since complex numbers are legitimate mathematical entities, just like scalar numbers, they can be added, subtracted, multiplied, divided, squared, inverted, and such, just like any other kind of number. Some scientific calculators are programmed to directly perform these operations on two or more complex numbers, but these operations can also be done "by hand." This section will show you how the basic operations are performed. It is *highly* recommended that you equip yourself with a scientific calculator capable of performing arithmetic functions easily on complex numbers. It will make your study of AC circuit much more pleasant than if you're forced to do all calculations the longer way.

Addition and subtraction with complex numbers in rectangular form is easy. For addition, simply add up the real components of the complex numbers to determine the real component of the sum, and add up the imaginary components of the complex numbers to determine the imaginary component of the sum:

2 + j5	175 - j34	-36 + j10
+ 4 - j3	+ 80 - j15	+ 20 + j82
6 + j2	**255 - j49**	**-16 + j92**

When subtracting complex numbers in rectangular form, simply subtract the real component of the second complex number from the real component of the first to arrive at the real component of the difference, and subtract the imaginary component of the second complex number from the imaginary component of the first to arrive the imaginary component of the difference:

2 + j5	175 - j34	-36 + j10
- (4 - j3)	- (80 - j15)	- (20 + j82)
-2 + j8	**95 - j19**	**-56 - j72**

For longhand multiplication and division, polar is the favored notation to work with. When multiplying complex numbers in polar form, simply *multiply* the polar magnitudes of the complex numbers to determine the polar magnitude of the product, and *add* the angles of the complex numbers to determine the angle of the product:

$$(35 \angle 65^o)(10 \angle -12^o) = \mathbf{350 \angle 53^o}$$

$$(124 \angle 250^o)(11 \angle 100^o) = \mathbf{1364 \angle -10^o} \text{ or } \mathbf{1364 \angle 350^o}$$

$$(3 \angle 30^o)(5 \angle -30^o) = \mathbf{15 \angle 0^o}$$

Division of polar-form complex numbers is also easy: simply divide the polar magnitude of the first complex number by the polar magnitude of the second complex number to arrive at the polar magnitude of the quotient, and subtract the angle of the second complex number from the angle of the first complex number to arrive at the angle of the quotient:

$$\frac{35 \angle 65^o}{10 \angle -12^o} = \mathbf{3.5 \angle 77^o}$$

$$\frac{124 \angle 250^o}{11 \angle 100^o} = \mathbf{11.273 \angle 150^o}$$

$$\frac{3 \angle 30^o}{5 \angle -30^o} = \mathbf{0.6 \angle 60^o}$$

To obtain the reciprocal, or "invert" (1/x), a complex number, simply divide the number (in polar form) into a scalar value of 1, which is nothing more than a complex number with no imaginary component (angle = 0):

$$\frac{1}{35 \angle 65^o} = \frac{1 \angle 0^o}{35 \angle 65^o} = \mathbf{0.02857 \angle -65^o}$$

$$\frac{1}{10 \angle -12^o} = \frac{1 \angle 0^o}{10 \angle -12^o} = \mathbf{0.1 \angle 12^o}$$

$$\frac{1}{0.0032 \angle 10^o} = \frac{1 \angle 0^o}{0.0032 \angle 10^o} = \mathbf{312.5 \angle -10^o}$$

These are the basic operations you will need to know in order to manipulate complex numbers in the analysis of AC circuits. Operations with complex numbers are by no means limited just to addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and inversion, however. Virtually any arithmetic operation that can be done with scalar numbers can be done with complex numbers, including powers, roots, solving simultaneous equations with complex coefficients, and even trigonometric functions (although this involves a whole new perspective in trigonometry called *hyperbolic functions* which is well beyond the scope of this discussion). Be sure that you're familiar with the basic arithmetic operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and inversion, and you'll have little trouble with AC circuit analysis.

- **REVIEW:**

- To add complex numbers in rectangular form, add the real components and add the imaginary components. Subtraction is similar.

- To multiply complex numbers in polar form, multiply the magnitudes and add the angles. To divide, divide the magnitudes and subtract one angle from the other.

2.7 More on AC ”polarity”

Complex numbers are useful for AC circuit analysis because they provide a convenient method of symbolically denoting phase shift between AC quantities like voltage and current. However, for most people the equivalence between abstract vectors and real circuit quantities is not an easy one to grasp. Earlier in this chapter we saw how AC voltage sources are given voltage figures in complex form (magnitude *and* phase angle), as well as polarity markings. Being that alternating current has no set “polarity” as direct current does, these polarity markings and their relationship to phase angle tends to be confusing. This section is written in the attempt to clarify some of these issues.

Voltage is an inherently *relative* quantity. When we measure a voltage, we have a choice in how we connect a voltmeter or other voltage-measuring instrument to the source of voltage, as there are two points between which the voltage exists, and two test leads on the instrument with which to make connection. In DC circuits, we denote the polarity of voltage sources and voltage drops explicitly, using “+” and “-” symbols, and use color-coded meter test leads (red and black). If a digital voltmeter indicates a negative DC voltage, we know that its test leads are connected “backward” to the voltage (red lead connected to the “-” and black lead to the “+”).

Batteries have their polarity designated by way of intrinsic symbology: the short-line side of a battery is always the negative (-) side and the long-line side always the positive (+): (Figure 2.25)

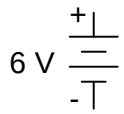


Figure 2.25: *Conventional battery polarity.*

Although it would be mathematically correct to represent a battery’s voltage as a negative figure with reversed polarity markings, it would be decidedly unconventional: (Figure 2.26)

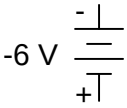


Figure 2.26: *Decidedly unconventional polarity marking.*

Interpreting such notation might be easier if the "+" and "-" polarity markings were viewed as reference points for voltmeter test leads, the "+" meaning "red" and the "-" meaning "black." A voltmeter connected to the above battery with red lead to the bottom terminal and black lead to the top terminal would indeed indicate a negative voltage (-6 volts). Actually, this form of notation and interpretation is not as unusual as you might think: its commonly encountered in problems of DC network analysis where "+" and "-" polarity marks are initially drawn according to educated guess, and later interpreted as correct or "backward" according to the mathematical sign of the figure calculated.

In AC circuits, though, we don't deal with "negative" quantities of voltage. Instead, we describe to what degree one voltage aids or opposes another by *phase*: the time-shift between two waveforms. We never describe an AC voltage as being negative in sign, because the facility of polar notation allows for vectors pointing in an opposite direction. If one AC voltage directly opposes another AC voltage, we simply say that one is 180^{o} out of phase with the other.

Still, voltage is relative between two points, and we have a choice in how we might connect a voltage-measuring instrument between those two points. The mathematical sign of a DC voltmeter's reading has meaning only in the context of its test lead connections: which terminal the red lead is touching, and which terminal the black lead is touching. Likewise, the phase angle of an AC voltage has meaning only in the context of knowing which of the two points is considered the "reference" point. Because of this fact, "+" and "-" polarity marks are often placed by the terminals of an AC voltage in schematic diagrams to give the stated phase angle a frame of reference.

Let's review these principles with some graphical aids. First, the principle of relating test lead connections to the mathematical sign of a DC voltmeter indication: (Figure 2.27)

The mathematical sign of a digital DC voltmeter's display has meaning only in the context of its test lead connections. Consider the use of a DC voltmeter in determining whether or not two DC voltage sources are aiding or opposing each other, assuming that both sources are unlabeled as to their polarities. Using the voltmeter to measure across the first source: (Figure 2.28)

This first measurement of +24 across the left-hand voltage source tells us that the black lead of the meter really is touching the negative side of voltage source #1, and the red lead of the meter really is touching the positive. Thus, we know source #1 is a battery facing in this orientation: (Figure 2.29)

Measuring the other unknown voltage source: (Figure 2.30)

This second voltmeter reading, however, is a *negative* (-) 17 volts, which tells us that the black test lead is actually touching the positive side of voltage source #2, while the red test lead is actually touching the negative. Thus, we know that source #2 is a battery facing in the *opposite* direction: (Figure 2.31)

It should be obvious to any experienced student of DC electricity that these two batteries are opposing one another. By definition, opposing voltages *subtract* from one another, so we subtract 17 volts from 24 volts to obtain the total voltage across the two: 7 volts.

We could, however, draw the two sources as nondescript boxes, labeled with the exact voltage figures obtained by the voltmeter, the polarity marks indicating voltmeter test lead placement: (Figure 2.32)

According to this diagram, the polarity marks (which indicate meter test lead placement) indicate the sources *aiding* each other. By definition, aiding voltage sources *add* with one another to form the total voltage, so we add 24 volts to -17 volts to obtain 7 volts: still the correct

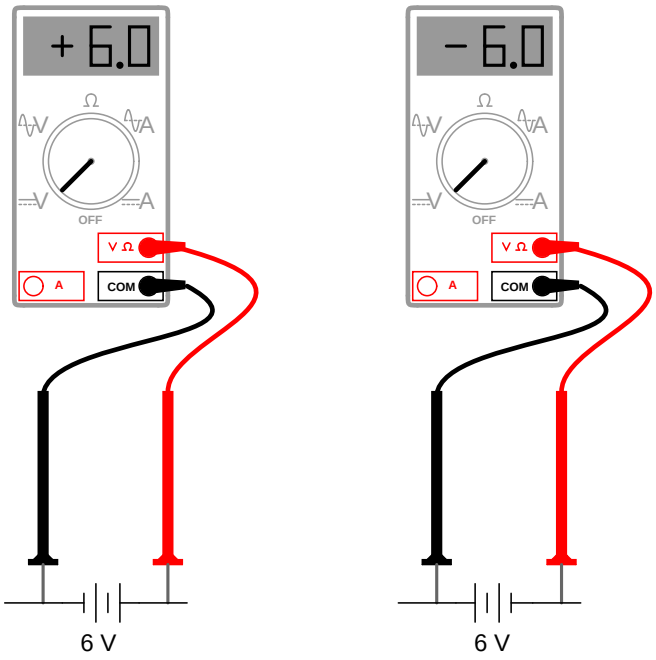


Figure 2.27: *Test lead colors provide a frame of reference for interpreting the sign (+ or -) of the meter's indication.*

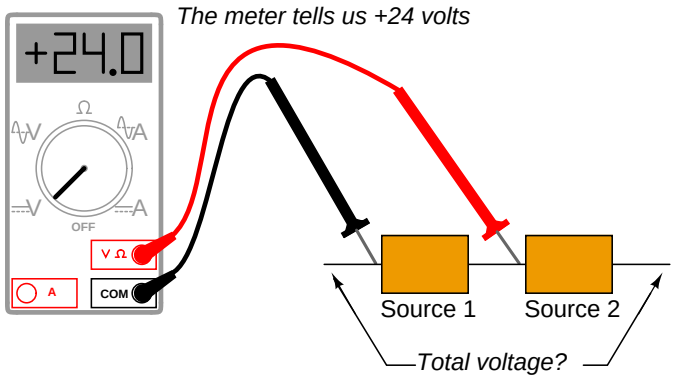


Figure 2.28: *(+) Reading indicates black is (-), red is (+).*

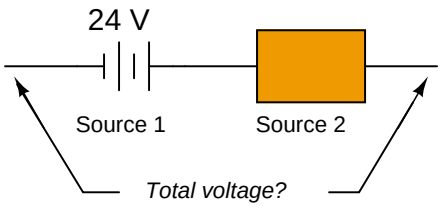


Figure 2.29: *24V source is polarized (-) to (+).*

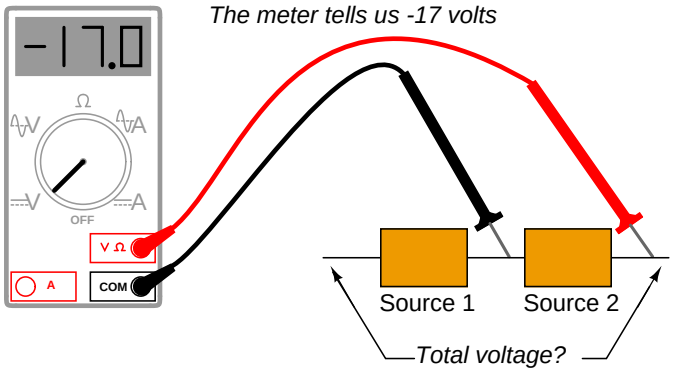


Figure 2.30: *(-) Reading indicates black is (+), red is (-).*

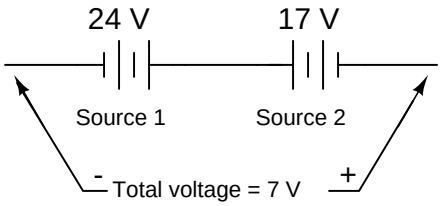


Figure 2.31: *17V source is polarized (+) to (-)*

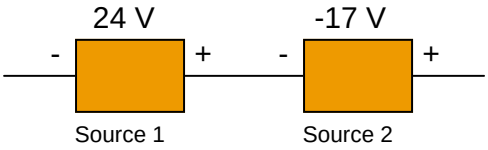


Figure 2.32: *Voltmeter readings as read from meters.*

answer. If we let the polarity markings guide our decision to either add or subtract voltage figures – whether those polarity markings represent the *true* polarity or just the meter test lead orientation – and include the mathematical signs of those voltage figures in our calculations, the result will always be correct. Again, the polarity markings serve as *frames of reference* to place the voltage figures' mathematical signs in proper context.

The same is true for AC voltages, except that *phase angle* substitutes for mathematical *sign*. In order to relate multiple AC voltages at different phase angles to each other, we need polarity markings to provide frames of reference for those voltages' phase angles. (Figure 2.33)

Take for example the following circuit:

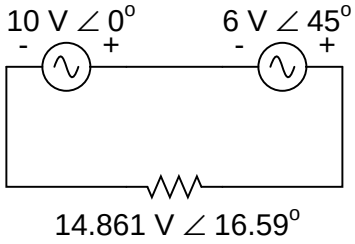


Figure 2.33: *Phase angle substitutes for ± sign.*

The polarity markings show these two voltage sources aiding each other, so to determine the total voltage across the resistor we must *add* the voltage figures of 10 V $\angle$ 0^o and 6 V $\angle$ 45^o together to obtain 14.861 V $\angle$ 16.59^o. However, it would be perfectly acceptable to represent the 6 volt source as 6 V $\angle$ 225^o, with a reversed set of polarity markings, and still arrive at the same total voltage: (Figure 2.34)

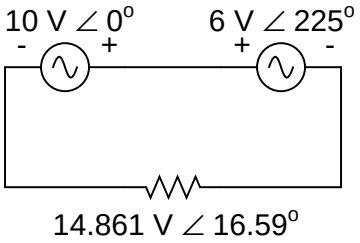


Figure 2.34: *Reversing the voltmeter leads on the 6V source changes the phase angle by* 180^o.

6 V $\angle$ 45^o with negative on the left and positive on the right is exactly the same as 6 V $\angle$ 225^o with positive on the left and negative on the right: the reversal of polarity markings perfectly complements the addition of 180^o to the phase angle designation: (Figure 2.35)

Unlike DC voltage sources, whose symbols intrinsically define polarity by means of short and long lines, AC voltage symbols have no intrinsic polarity marking. Therefore, any polarity marks must be included as additional symbols on the diagram, and there is no one "correct" way in which to place them. They must, however, correlate with the given phase angle to represent the true phase relationship of that voltage with other voltages in the circuit.

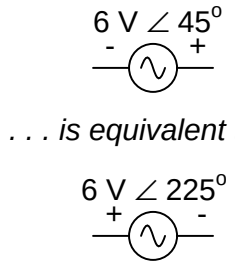


Figure 2.35: *Reversing polarity adds 180° to phase angle*

- **REVIEW:**
- Polarity markings are sometimes given to AC voltages in circuit schematics in order to provide a frame of reference for their phase angles.

2.8 Some examples with AC circuits

Let's connect three AC voltage sources in series and use complex numbers to determine additive voltages. All the rules and laws learned in the study of DC circuits apply to AC circuits as well (Ohm's Law, Kirchhoff's Laws, network analysis methods), with the exception of power calculations (Joule's Law). The only qualification is that all variables *must* be expressed in complex form, taking into account phase as well as magnitude, and all voltages and currents must be of the same frequency (in order that their phase relationships remain constant). (Figure 2.36)

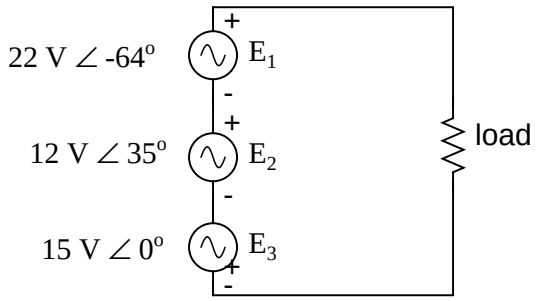


Figure 2.36: *KVL allows addition of complex voltages.*

The polarity marks for all three voltage sources are oriented in such a way that their stated voltages should add to make the total voltage across the load resistor. Notice that although magnitude and phase angle is given for each AC voltage source, no frequency value is specified. If this is the case, it is assumed that all frequencies are equal, thus meeting our qualifications for applying DC rules to an AC circuit (all figures given in complex form, all of the same frequency). The setup of our equation to find total voltage appears as such:

$E_{total} = E_1 + E_2 + E_3$

$E_{total} = (22\ V \angle -64^o) + (12\ V \angle 35^o) + (15\ V \angle 0^o)$

Graphically, the vectors add up as shown in Figure 2.37.

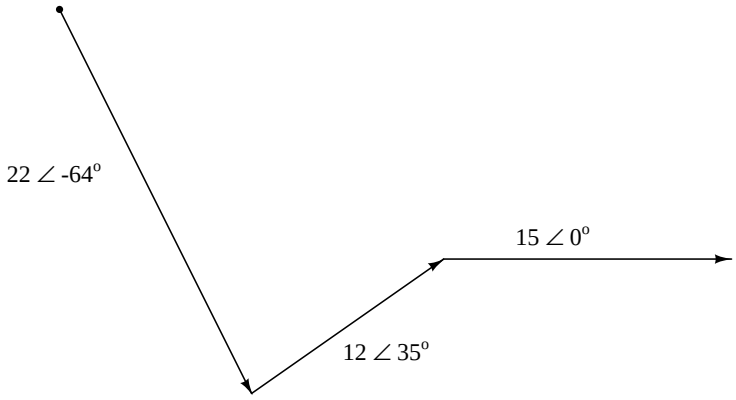


Figure 2.37: *Graphic addition of vector voltages.*

The sum of these vectors will be a resultant vector originating at the starting point for the 22 volt vector (dot at upper-left of diagram) and terminating at the ending point for the 15 volt vector (arrow tip at the middle-right of the diagram): (Figure 2.38)

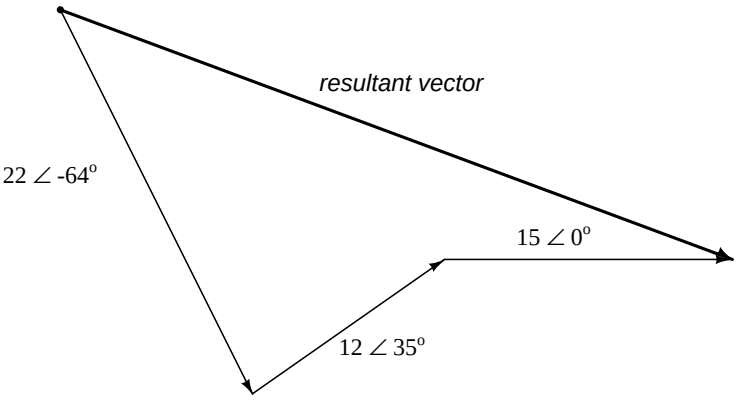


Figure 2.38: *Resultant is equivalent to the vector sum of the three original voltages.*

In order to determine what the resultant vector's magnitude and angle are without resorting to graphic images, we can convert each one of these polar-form complex numbers into rectangular form and add. Remember, we're *adding* these figures together because the polarity marks for the three voltage sources are oriented in an additive manner:

15 V $\angle$ 0^o = 15 + j0 V

12 V $\angle$ 35^o = 9.8298 + j6.8829 V

22 V $\angle$ -64^o = 9.6442 - j19.7735 V

$$\begin{array}{rll} & 15 & + j0 \quad V \\ & 9.8298 & + j6.8829 \text{ V} \\ + & 9.6442 & - j19.7735 \text{ V} \\ \hline & \textbf{34.4740} & \textbf{- j12.8906 V} \end{array}$$

In polar form, this equates to 36.8052 volts $\angle$ -20.5018^o. What this means in real terms is that the voltage measured across these three voltage sources will be 36.8052 volts, lagging the 15 volt (0^o phase reference) by 20.5018^o. A voltmeter connected across these points in a real circuit would only indicate the polar magnitude of the voltage (36.8052 volts), not the angle. An oscilloscope could be used to display two voltage waveforms and thus provide a phase shift measurement, but not a voltmeter. The same principle holds true for AC ammeters: they indicate the polar magnitude of the current, not the phase angle.

This is extremely important in relating calculated figures of voltage and current to real circuits. Although rectangular notation is convenient for addition and subtraction, and was indeed the final step in our sample problem here, it is not very applicable to practical measurements. Rectangular figures must be converted to polar figures (specifically polar *magnitude*) before they can be related to actual circuit measurements.

We can use SPICE to verify the accuracy of our results. In this test circuit, the 10 kΩ resistor value is quite arbitrary. It's there so that SPICE does not declare an open-circuit error and abort analysis. Also, the choice of frequencies for the simulation (60 Hz) is quite arbitrary, because resistors respond uniformly for all frequencies of AC voltage and current. There are other components (notably capacitors and inductors) which do not respond uniformly to different frequencies, but that is another subject! (Figure 2.39)

```
ac voltage addition
v1 1 0 ac 15 0 sin
v2 2 1 ac 12 35 sin
v3 3 2 ac 22 -64 sin
r1 3 0 10k
.ac lin 1 60 60            I'm using a frequency of 60 Hz
.print ac v(3,0) vp(3,0)   as a default value
.end

freq          v(3)        vp(3)
6.000E+01     3.681E+01  -2.050E+01
```

Sure enough, we get a total voltage of 36.81 volts $\angle$ -20.5^o (with reference to the 15 volt source, whose phase angle was arbitrarily stated at zero degrees so as to be the "reference"

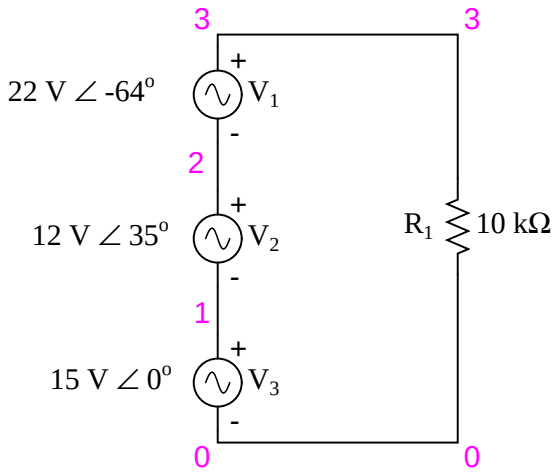


Figure 2.39: *Spice circuit schematic.*

waveform).

At first glance, this is counter-intuitive. How is it possible to obtain a total voltage of just over 36 volts with 15 volt, 12 volt, and 22 volt supplies connected in series? With DC, this would be impossible, as voltage figures will either directly add or subtract, depending on polarity. But with AC, our "polarity" (phase shift) can vary anywhere in between full-aiding and full-opposing, and this allows for such paradoxical summing.

What if we took the same circuit and reversed one of the supply's connections? Its contribution to the total voltage would then be the opposite of what it was before: (Figure 2.40)

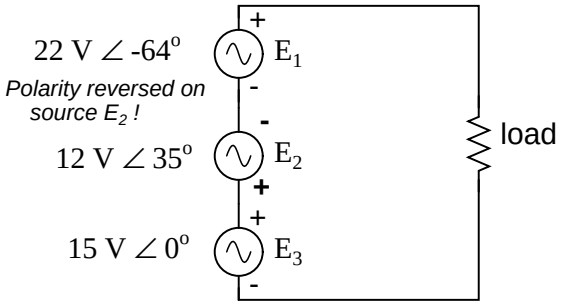


Figure 2.40: *Polarity of E_2 (12V) is reversed.*

Note how the 12 volt supply's phase angle is still referred to as 35^o, even though the leads have been reversed. Remember that the phase angle of any voltage drop is stated in reference to its noted polarity. Even though the angle is still written as 35^o, the vector will be drawn 180^o opposite of what it was before: (Figure 2.41)

The resultant (sum) vector should begin at the upper-left point (origin of the 22 volt vector)

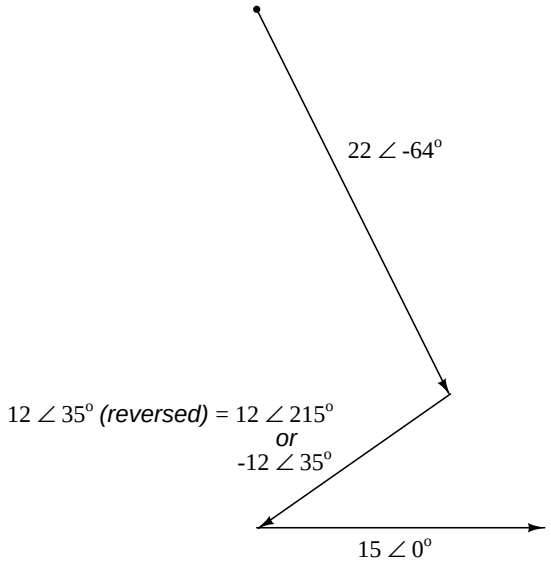


Figure 2.41: *Direction of E_2 is reversed.*

and terminate at the right arrow tip of the 15 volt vector: (Figure 2.42)

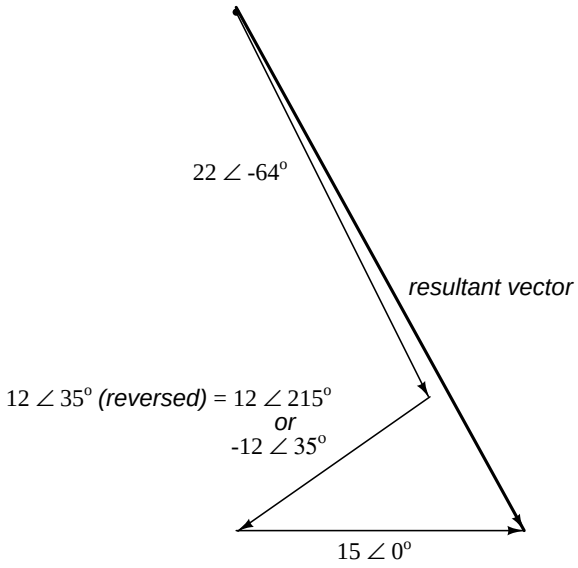


Figure 2.42: *Resultant is vector sum of voltage sources.*

The connection reversal on the 12 volt supply can be represented in two different ways in

polar form: by an addition of 180^o to its vector angle (making it 12 volts $\angle$ 215^o), or a reversal of sign on the magnitude (making it -12 volts $\angle$ 35^o). Either way, conversion to rectangular form yields the same result:

$$12 \text{ V} \angle 35^o \textit{ (reversed)} = 12 \text{ V} \angle 215^o = \textbf{-9.8298 - j6.8829 V}$$

or

$$-12 \text{ V} \angle 35^o = \textbf{-9.8298 - j6.8829 V}$$

The resulting addition of voltages in rectangular form, then:

$$\begin{array}{r} 15 \quad + \text{j}0 \quad \text{V} \\ -9.8298 - \text{j}6.8829 \text{ V} \\ + \ 9.6442 \quad - \text{j}19.7735 \text{ V} \\ \hline \textbf{14.8143 - j26.6564 V} \end{array}$$

In polar form, this equates to 30.4964 V $\angle$ -60.9368^o. Once again, we will use SPICE to verify the results of our calculations:

```
ac voltage addition
v1 1 0 ac 15 0 sin
v2 1 2 ac 12 35 sin    Note the reversal of node numbers 2 and 1
v3 3 2 ac 22 -64 sin   to simulate the swapping of connections
r1 3 0 10k
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(3,0) vp(3,0)
.end


freq          v(3)        vp(3)
6.000E+01     3.050E+01  -6.094E+01
```

- **REVIEW:**

- All the laws and rules of DC circuits apply to AC circuits, with the exception of power calculations (Joule's Law), so long as all values are expressed and manipulated in complex form, and all voltages and currents are at the same frequency.

- When reversing the direction of a vector (equivalent to reversing the polarity of an AC voltage source in relation to other voltage sources), it can be expressed in either of two different ways: adding 180^o to the angle, or reversing the sign of the magnitude.

- Meter measurements in an AC circuit correspond to the *polar magnitudes* of calculated values. Rectangular expressions of complex quantities in an AC circuit have no direct, empirical equivalent, although they are convenient for performing addition and subtraction, as Kirchhoff's Voltage and Current Laws require.

2.9 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 3

REACTANCE AND IMPEDANCE – INDUCTIVE

Contents

3.1 AC resistor circuits

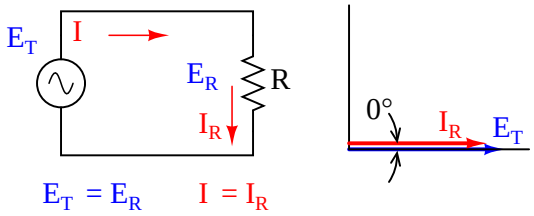


Figure 3.1: *Pure resistive AC circuit: resistor voltage and current are in phase.*

If we were to plot the current and voltage for a very simple AC circuit consisting of a source and a resistor (Figure 3.1), it would look something like this: (Figure 3.2)

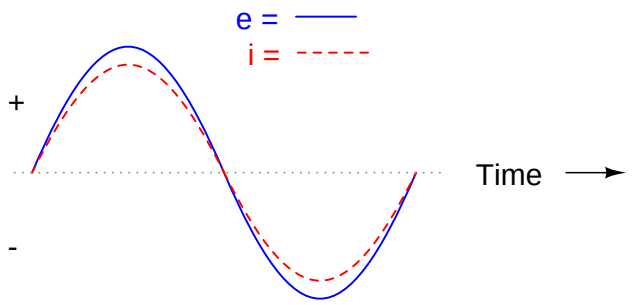


Figure 3.2: *Voltage and current "in phase" for resistive circuit.*

Because the resistor simply and directly resists the flow of electrons at all periods of time, the waveform for the voltage drop across the resistor is exactly in phase with the waveform for the current through it. We can look at any point in time along the horizontal axis of the plot and compare those values of current and voltage with each other (any "snapshot" look at the values of a wave are referred to as *instantaneous values*, meaning the values at that *instant* in time). When the instantaneous value for current is zero, the instantaneous voltage across the resistor is also zero. Likewise, at the moment in time where the current through the resistor is at its positive peak, the voltage across the resistor is also at its positive peak, and so on. At any given point in time along the waves, Ohm's Law holds true for the instantaneous values of voltage and current.

We can also calculate the power dissipated by this resistor, and plot those values on the same graph: (Figure 3.3)

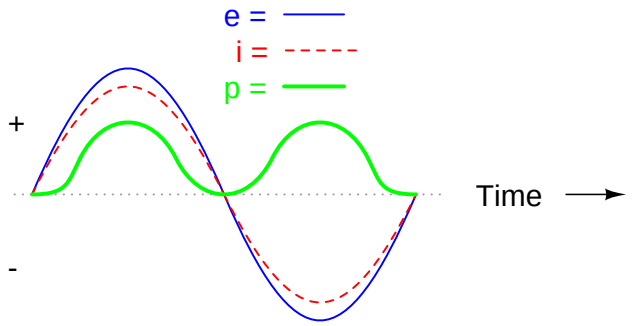


Figure 3.3: *Instantaneous AC power in a pure resistive circuit is always positive.*

Note that the power is never a negative value. When the current is positive (above the line), the voltage is also positive, resulting in a power (p=ie) of a positive value. Conversely, when the current is negative (below the line), the voltage is also negative, which results in a positive value for power (a negative number multiplied by a negative number equals a positive number). This consistent "polarity" of power tells us that the resistor is always dissipating power, taking it from the source and releasing it in the form of heat energy. Whether the

current is positive or negative, a resistor still dissipates energy.

3.2 AC inductor circuits

Inductors do not behave the same as resistors. Whereas resistors simply oppose the flow of electrons through them (by dropping a voltage directly proportional to the current), inductors oppose *changes* in current through them, by dropping a voltage directly proportional to the *rate of change* of current. In accordance with *Lenz's Law*, this induced voltage is always of such a polarity as to try to maintain current at its present value. That is, if current is increasing in magnitude, the induced voltage will "push against" the electron flow; if current is decreasing, the polarity will reverse and "push with" the electron flow to oppose the decrease. This opposition to current change is called *reactance*, rather than resistance.

Expressed mathematically, the relationship between the voltage dropped across the inductor and rate of current change through the inductor is as such:

$$e = L\frac{di}{dt}$$

The expression di/dt is one from calculus, meaning the rate of change of instantaneous current (i) over time, in amps per second. The inductance (L) is in Henrys, and the instantaneous voltage (e), of course, is in volts. Sometimes you will find the rate of instantaneous voltage expressed as "v" instead of "e" (v = L di/dt), but it means the exact same thing. To show what happens with alternating current, let's analyze a simple inductor circuit: (Figure 3.4)

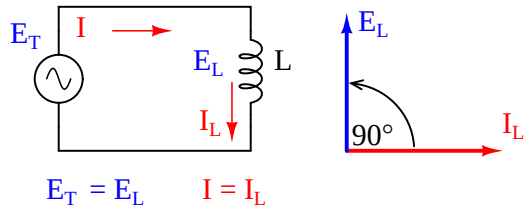


Figure 3.4: *Pure inductive circuit: Inductor current lags inductor voltage by 90^o.*

If we were to plot the current and voltage for this very simple circuit, it would look something like this: (Figure 3.5)

Remember, the voltage dropped across an inductor is a reaction against the *change* in current through it. Therefore, the instantaneous voltage is zero whenever the instantaneous current is at a peak (zero change, or level slope, on the current sine wave), and the instantaneous voltage is at a peak wherever the instantaneous current is at maximum change (the points of steepest slope on the current wave, where it crosses the zero line). This results in a voltage wave that is 90^o out of phase with the current wave. Looking at the graph, the voltage wave seems to have a "head start" on the current wave; the voltage "leads" the current, and the current "lags" behind the voltage. (Figure 3.6)

Things get even more interesting when we plot the power for this circuit: (Figure 3.7)

Because instantaneous power is the product of the instantaneous voltage and the instantaneous current (p=ie), the power equals zero whenever the instantaneous current *or* voltage is

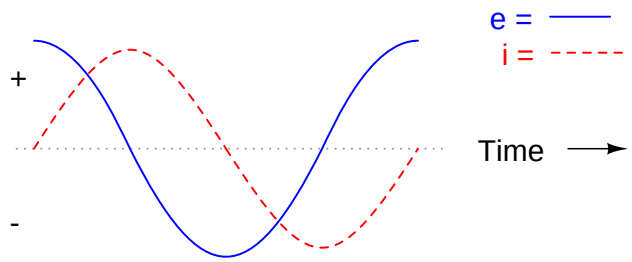


Figure 3.5: *Pure inductive circuit, waveforms.*

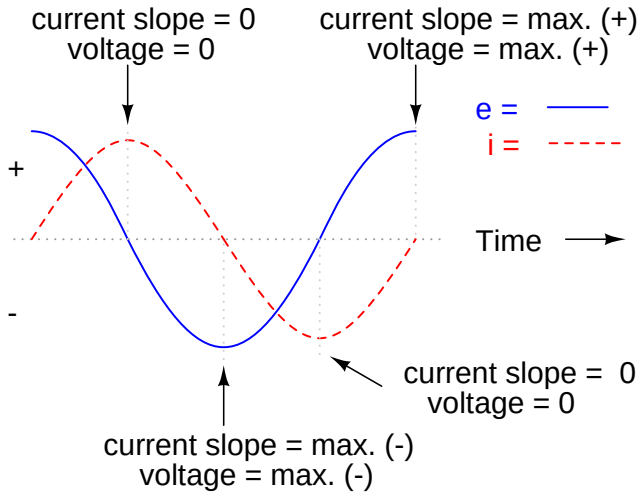


Figure 3.6: *Current lags voltage by 90^o in a pure inductive circuit.*

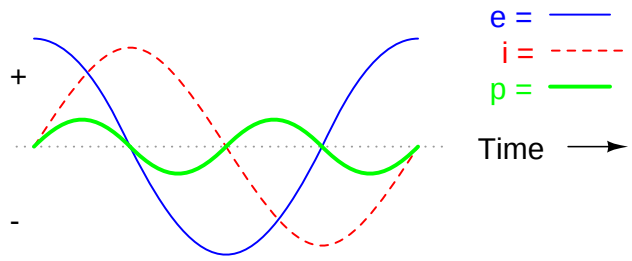


Figure 3.7: *In a pure inductive circuit, instantaneous power may be positive or negative*

zero. Whenever the instantaneous current and voltage are both positive (above the line), the power is positive. As with the resistor example, the power is also positive when the instantaneous current and voltage are both negative (below the line). However, because the current and voltage waves are 90^o out of phase, there are times when one is positive while the other is negative, resulting in equally frequent occurrences of *negative instantaneous power*.

But what does *negative* power mean? It means that the inductor is releasing power back to the circuit, while a positive power means that it is absorbing power from the circuit. Since the positive and negative power cycles are equal in magnitude and duration over time, the inductor releases just as much power back to the circuit as it absorbs over the span of a complete cycle. What this means in a practical sense is that the reactance of an inductor dissipates a net energy of zero, quite unlike the resistance of a resistor, which dissipates energy in the form of heat. Mind you, this is for perfect inductors only, which have no wire resistance.

An inductor's opposition to change in current translates to an opposition to alternating current in general, which is by definition always changing in instantaneous magnitude and direction. This opposition to alternating current is similar to resistance, but different in that it always results in a phase shift between current and voltage, and it dissipates zero power. Because of the differences, it has a different name: *reactance*. Reactance to AC is expressed in ohms, just like resistance is, except that its mathematical symbol is X instead of R. To be specific, reactance associate with an inductor is usually symbolized by the capital letter X with a letter L as a subscript, like this: X_L.

Since inductors drop voltage in proportion to the rate of current change, they will drop more voltage for faster-changing currents, and less voltage for slower-changing currents. What this means is that reactance in ohms for any inductor is directly proportional to the frequency of the alternating current. The exact formula for determining reactance is as follows:

$$X_L = 2\pi fL$$

If we expose a 10 mH inductor to frequencies of 60, 120, and 2500 Hz, it will manifest the reactances in Table Figure 3.1.

Table 3.1: *Reactance of a 10 mH inductor:*

Frequency (Hertz)	**Reactance (Ohms)**
60	3.7699
120	7.5398
2500	157.0796

In the reactance equation, the term "2πf" (everything on the right-hand side except the L) has a special meaning unto itself. It is the number of radians per second that the alternating current is "rotating" at, if you imagine one cycle of AC to represent a full circle's rotation. A *radian* is a unit of angular measurement: there are 2π radians in one full circle, just as there are 360^o in a full circle. If the alternator producing the AC is a double-pole unit, it will produce one cycle for every full turn of shaft rotation, which is every 2π radians, or 360^o. If this constant of 2π is multiplied by frequency in Hertz (cycles per second), the result will be a figure in radians per second, known as the *angular velocity* of the AC system.

Angular velocity may be represented by the expression 2πf, or it may be represented by its own symbol, the lower-case Greek letter Omega, which appears similar to our Roman lower-case "w": ω. Thus, the reactance formula $X_L = 2\pi fL$ could also be written as $X_L = \omega L$.

It must be understood that this "angular velocity" is an expression of how rapidly the AC waveforms are cycling, a full cycle being equal to 2π radians. It is not necessarily representative of the actual shaft speed of the alternator producing the AC. If the alternator has more than two poles, the angular velocity will be a multiple of the shaft speed. For this reason, ω is sometimes expressed in units of *electrical* radians per second rather than (plain) radians per second, so as to distinguish it from mechanical motion.

Any way we express the angular velocity of the system, it is apparent that it is directly proportional to reactance in an inductor. As the frequency (or alternator shaft speed) is increased in an AC system, an inductor will offer greater opposition to the passage of current, and vice versa. Alternating current in a simple inductive circuit is equal to the voltage (in volts) divided by the inductive reactance (in ohms), just as either alternating or direct current in a simple resistive circuit is equal to the voltage (in volts) divided by the resistance (in ohms). An example circuit is shown here: (Figure 3.8)

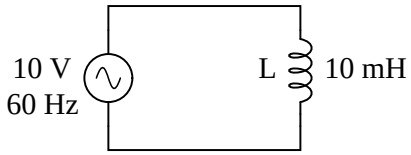


Figure 3.8: *Inductive reactance*

(inductive reactance of 10 mH inductor at 60 Hz)

$X_L = 3.7699\ \Omega$

$$I = \frac{E}{X}$$

$$I = \frac{10\ V}{3.7699\ \Omega}$$

$I = 2.6526$ A

However, we need to keep in mind that voltage and current are not in phase here. As was shown earlier, the voltage has a phase shift of $+90^o$ with respect to the current. (Figure 3.9) If we represent these phase angles of voltage and current mathematically in the form of complex numbers, we find that an inductor's opposition to current has a phase angle, too:

$$\text{Opposition} = \frac{\text{Voltage}}{\text{Current}}$$

$$\text{Opposition} = \frac{10 \text{ V} \angle 90^o}{2.6526 \text{ A} \angle 0^o}$$

$$\text{Opposition} = 3.7699 \ \Omega \angle 90^o$$

or

$$0 + j3.7699 \ \Omega$$

For an inductor:

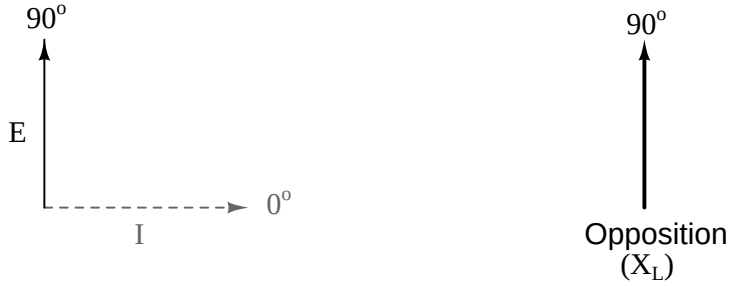


Figure 3.9: *Current lags voltage by 90^o in an inductor.*

Mathematically, we say that the phase angle of an inductor's opposition to current is 90^o, meaning that an inductor's opposition to current is a positive imaginary quantity. This phase angle of reactive opposition to current becomes critically important in circuit analysis, especially for complex AC circuits where reactance and resistance interact. It will prove beneficial to represent *any* component's opposition to current in terms of complex numbers rather than scalar quantities of resistance and reactance.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Inductive reactance* is the opposition that an inductor offers to alternating current due to its phase-shifted storage and release of energy in its magnetic field. Reactance is symbolized by the capital letter "X" and is measured in ohms just like resistance (R).
- Inductive reactance can be calculated using this formula: $X_L = 2\pi fL$
- The *angular velocity* of an AC circuit is another way of expressing its frequency, in units of electrical radians per second instead of cycles per second. It is symbolized by the lowercase Greek letter "omega," or ω.

- Inductive reactance *increases* with increasing frequency. In other words, the higher the frequency, the more it opposes the AC flow of electrons.

3.3 Series resistor-inductor circuits

In the previous section, we explored what would happen in simple resistor-only and inductor-only AC circuits. Now we will mix the two components together in series form and investigate the effects.

Take this circuit as an example to work with: (Figure 3.10)

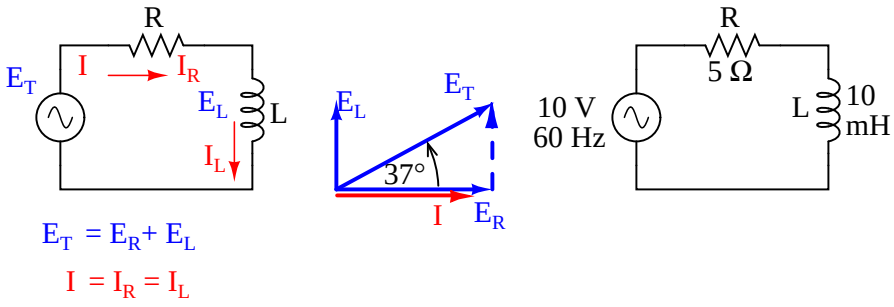


Figure 3.10: *Series resistor inductor circuit: Current lags applied voltage by 0° to 90°.*

The resistor will offer 5 Ω of resistance to AC current regardless of frequency, while the inductor will offer 3.7699 Ω of reactance to AC current at 60 Hz. Because the resistor's resistance is a real number (5 Ω ∠ 0°, or 5 + j0 Ω), and the inductor's reactance is an imaginary number (3.7699 Ω ∠ 90°, or 0 + j3.7699 Ω), the combined effect of the two components will be an opposition to current equal to the complex sum of the two numbers. This combined opposition will be a vector combination of resistance and reactance. In order to express this opposition succinctly, we need a more comprehensive term for opposition to current than either resistance or reactance alone. This term is called *impedance*, its symbol is Z, and it is also expressed in the unit of ohms, just like resistance and reactance. In the above example, the total circuit impedance is:

Z_{total} = (5 Ω resistance) + (3.7699 Ω inductive reactance)

$Z_{total} = 5\ \Omega\ (R) \quad + \quad 3.7699\ \Omega\ (X_L)$

$Z_{total} = (5\ \Omega \angle 0^o) + (3.7699\ \Omega \angle 90^0)$

or

$(5 + j0\ \Omega) + (0 + j3.7699\ \Omega)$

$Z_{total} = 5 + j3.7699\ \Omega \quad$ *or* $\quad 6.262\ \Omega \angle 37.016^o$

Impedance is related to voltage and current just as you might expect, in a manner similar to resistance in Ohm's Law:

Ohm's Law for AC circuits:

$$\mathbf{E = IZ} \qquad \mathbf{I = \frac{E}{Z}} \qquad \mathbf{Z = \frac{E}{I}}$$

All quantities expressed in complex, not scalar, form

In fact, this is a far more comprehensive form of Ohm's Law than what was taught in DC electronics (E=IR), just as impedance is a far more comprehensive expression of opposition to the flow of electrons than resistance is. *Any* resistance and any reactance, separately or in combination (series/parallel), can be and should be represented as a single impedance in an AC circuit.

To calculate current in the above circuit, we first need to give a phase angle reference for the voltage source, which is generally assumed to be zero. (The phase angles of resistive and inductive impedance are *always* 0^o and $+90^o$, respectively, regardless of the given phase angles for voltage or current).

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

$$I = \frac{10 \text{ V} \angle 0^o}{6.262\ \Omega \angle 37.016^o}$$

$$I = 1.597 \text{ A} \angle -37.016^o$$

As with the purely inductive circuit, the current wave lags behind the voltage wave (of the source), although this time the lag is not as great: only 37.016^o as opposed to a full 90^o as was the case in the purely inductive circuit. (Figure 3.11)

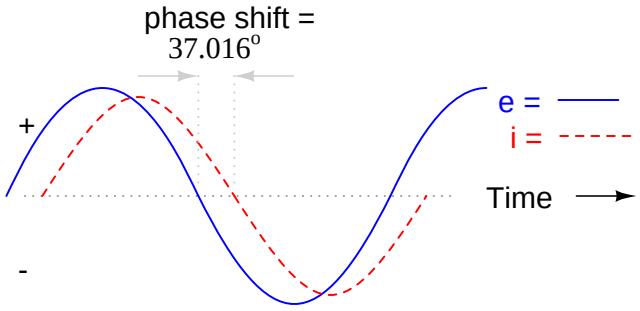


Figure 3.11: *Current lags voltage in a series L-R circuit.*

For the resistor and the inductor, the phase relationships between voltage and current haven't changed. Voltage across the resistor is in phase (0^o shift) with the current through

it; and the voltage across the inductor is +90^o out of phase with the current going through it. We can verify this mathematically:

$$E = IZ$$

$$E_R = I_R Z_R$$

$$E_R = (1.597 \text{ A} \angle -37.016^o)(5\ \Omega \angle 0^o)$$

$$E_R = 7.9847 \text{ V} \angle -37.016^o$$

Notice that the phase angle of E_R is equal to the phase angle of the current.

The voltage across the resistor has the exact same phase angle as the current through it, telling us that E and I are in phase (for the resistor only).

$$E = IZ$$

$$E_L = I_L Z_L$$

$$E_L = (1.597 \text{ A} \angle -37.016^o)(3.7699\ \Omega \angle 90^o)$$

$$E_L = 6.0203 \text{ V} \angle 52.984^o$$

Notice that the phase angle of E_L is exactly 90^o more than the phase angle of the current.

The voltage across the inductor has a phase angle of 52.984^o, while the current through the inductor has a phase angle of -37.016^o, a difference of exactly 90^o between the two. This tells us that E and I are still 90^o out of phase (for the inductor only).

We can also mathematically prove that these complex values add together to make the total voltage, just as Kirchhoff's Voltage Law would predict:

$$E_{total} = E_R + E_L$$

$$E_{total} = (7.9847 \text{ V} \angle -37.016^o) + (6.0203 \text{ V} \angle 52.984^o)$$

$$E_{total} = 10 \text{ V} \angle 0^o$$

Let's check the validity of our calculations with SPICE: (Figure 3.12)

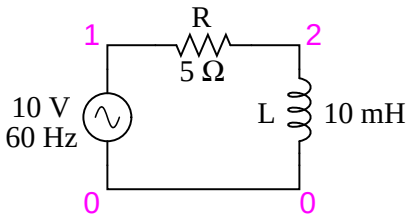


Figure 3.12: *Spice circuit: R-L.*

```
ac r-l circuit
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
r1 1 2 5
l1 2 0 10m
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,2) v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac vp(1,2) vp(2,0) ip(v1)
.end

freq          v(1,2)      v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     7.985E+00   6.020E+00   1.597E+00
freq          vp(1,2)     vp(2)       ip(v1)
6.000E+01    -3.702E+01   5.298E+01   1.430E+02
```

Interpreted SPICE results

$E_R = 7.985 \text{ V} \angle -37.02^o$

$E_L = 6.020 \text{ V} \angle 52.98^o$

$I = 1.597 \text{ A} \angle 143.0^o$

Note that just as with DC circuits, SPICE outputs current figures as though they were negative (180^o out of phase) with the supply voltage. Instead of a phase angle of -37.016^o, we get a current phase angle of 143^o (-37^o + 180^o). This is merely an idiosyncrasy of SPICE and does not represent anything significant in the circuit simulation itself. Note how both the resistor and inductor voltage phase readings match our calculations (-37.02^o and 52.98^o, respectively), just as we expected them to.

With all these figures to keep track of for even such a simple circuit as this, it would be beneficial for us to use the "table" method. Applying a table to this simple series resistor-inductor circuit would proceed as such. First, draw up a table for E/I/Z figures and insert all component values in these terms (in other words, don't insert actual resistance or inductance values in Ohms and Henrys, respectively, into the table; rather, convert them into complex figures of impedance and write those in):

	R	L	Total	
E			**10 + j0** **10** $\angle$ 0^o	Volts
I				Amps
Z	**5 + j0** **5** $\angle$ 0^o	**0 + j3.7699** **3.7699** $\angle$ 90^o		Ohms

Although it isn't necessary, I find it helpful to write *both* the rectangular and polar forms of each quantity in the table. If you are using a calculator that has the ability to perform complex arithmetic without the need for conversion between rectangular and polar forms, then this extra documentation is completely unnecessary. However, if you are forced to perform complex arithmetic "longhand" (addition and subtraction in rectangular form, and multiplication and division in polar form), writing each quantity in both forms will be useful indeed.

Now that our "given" figures are inserted into their respective locations in the table, we can proceed just as with DC: determine the total impedance from the individual impedances. Since this is a series circuit, we know that opposition to electron flow (resistance *or* impedance) adds to form the total opposition:

	R	L	Total	
E			10 + j0 10 $\angle$ 0^o	Volts
I				Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 $\angle$ 0^o	0 + j3.7699 3.7699 $\angle$ 90^o	**5 + j3.7699** **6.262** $\angle$ 37.016^o	Ohms

Rule of series circuits

$Z_{total} = Z_R + Z_L$

Now that we know total voltage and total impedance, we can apply Ohm's Law (I=E/Z) to determine total current:

	R	L	Total	
E			$10 + j0$ $10 \angle 0^o$	Volts
I			**1.2751 - j0.9614** **1.597** $\angle$ -37.016^o	Amps
Z	$5 + j0$ $5 \angle 0^o$	$0 + j3.7699$ $3.7699 \angle 90^o$	$5 + j3.7699$ $6.262 \angle 37.016^o$	Ohms

Ohm's Law

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

Just as with DC, the total current in a series AC circuit is shared equally by all components. This is still true because in a series circuit there is only a single path for electrons to flow, therefore the rate of their flow must uniform throughout. Consequently, we can transfer the figures for current into the columns for the resistor and inductor alike:

	R	L	Total	
E			$10 + j0$ $10 \angle 0^o$	Volts
I	**1.2751 - j0.9614** **1.597** $\angle$ -37.016^o	**1.2751 - j0.9614** **1.597** $\angle$ -37.016^o	1.2751 - j0.9614 1.597 $\angle$ -37.016^o	Amps
Z	$5 + j0$ $5 \angle 0^o$	$0 + j3.7699$ $3.7699 \angle 90^o$	$5 + j3.7699$ $6.262 \angle 37.016^o$	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:

$$I_{total} = I_R = I_L$$

Now all that's left to figure is the voltage drop across the resistor and inductor, respectively. This is done through the use of Ohm's Law (E=IZ), applied vertically in each column of the table:

	R	L	Total	
E	**6.3756 - j4.8071** **7.9847** $\angle$ -37.016^o	**3.6244 + j4.8071** **6.0203** $\angle$ 52.984^o	10 + j0 10 $\angle$ 0^o	Volts
I	1.2751 - j0.9614 1.597 $\angle$ -37.016^o	1.2751 - j0.9614 1.597 $\angle$ -37.016^o	1.2751 - j0.9614 1.597 $\angle$ -37.016^o	Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 $\angle$ 0^o	0 + j3.7699 3.7699 $\angle$ 90^o	5 + j3.7699 6.262 $\angle$ 37.016^o	Ohms
	Ohm's Law E = IZ	*Ohm's Law* E = IZ		

And with that, our table is complete. The exact same rules we applied in the analysis of DC circuits apply to AC circuits as well, with the caveat that all quantities must be represented and calculated in complex rather than scalar form. So long as phase shift is properly represented in our calculations, there is no fundamental difference in how we approach basic AC circuit analysis versus DC.

Now is a good time to review the relationship between these calculated figures and readings given by actual instrument measurements of voltage and current. The figures here that directly relate to real-life measurements are those in *polar notation*, not rectangular! In other words, if you were to connect a voltmeter across the resistor in this circuit, it would indicate **7.9847** volts, not 6.3756 (real rectangular) or 4.8071 (imaginary rectangular) volts. To describe this in graphical terms, measurement instruments simply tell you how long the vector is for that particular quantity (voltage or current).

Rectangular notation, while convenient for arithmetical addition and subtraction, is a more abstract form of notation than polar in relation to real-world measurements. As I stated before, I will indicate both polar and rectangular forms of each quantity in my AC circuit tables simply for convenience of mathematical calculation. This is not absolutely necessary, but may be helpful for those following along without the benefit of an advanced calculator. If we were to restrict ourselves to the use of only one form of notation, the best choice would be polar, because it is the only one that can be directly correlated to real measurements.

Impedance (Z) of a series R-L circuit may be calculated, given the resistance (R) and the inductive reactance (X_L). Since E=IR, E=IX_L, and E=IZ, resistance, reactance, and impedance are proportional to voltage, respectively. Thus, the voltage phasor diagram can be replaced by a similar impedance diagram. (Figure 3.13)

Example:

Given: A 40 Ω resistor in series with a 79.58 millihenry inductor. Find the impedance at 60 hertz.

$$X_L = 2\pi fL$$
$$X_L = 2\pi \cdot 60 \cdot 79.58 \times 10^{-3}$$
$$X_L = 30\ \Omega$$
$$Z = R + jX_L$$
$$Z = 40 + j30$$

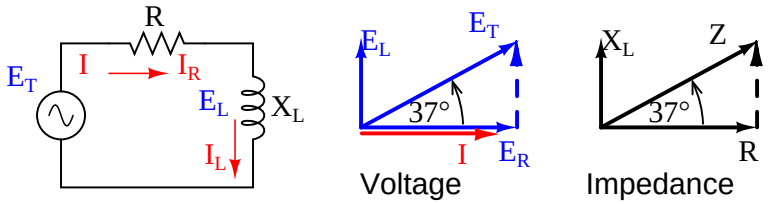


Figure 3.13: *Series: R-L circuit Impedance phasor diagram.*

$$|Z| = \sqrt{40^2 + 30^2} = 50\ \Omega$$
$$\angle Z = \arctan(30/40) = 36.87^o$$
$$Z = 40 + j30 = 50\angle 36.87^o$$

- **REVIEW:**
- *Impedance* is the total measure of opposition to electric current and is the complex (vector) sum of ("real") resistance and ("imaginary") reactance. It is symbolized by the letter "Z" and measured in ohms, just like resistance (R) and reactance (X).
- Impedances (Z) are managed just like resistances (R) in series circuit analysis: series impedances add to form the total impedance. Just be sure to perform all calculations in complex (not scalar) form! $Z_{Total} = Z_1 + Z_2 + \ldots Z_n$
- A purely resistive impedance will always have a phase angle of exactly 0^o ($Z_R = R\ \Omega\ \angle\ 0^o$).
- A purely inductive impedance will always have a phase angle of exactly $+90^o$ ($Z_L = X_L\ \Omega\ \angle\ 90^o$).
- Ohm's Law for AC circuits: E = IZ ; I = E/Z ; Z = E/I
- When resistors and inductors are mixed together in circuits, the total impedance will have a phase angle somewhere between 0^o and $+90^o$. The circuit current will have a phase angle somewhere between 0^o and -90^o.
- Series AC circuits exhibit the same fundamental properties as series DC circuits: current is uniform throughout the circuit, voltage drops add to form the total voltage, and impedances add to form the total impedance.

3.4 Parallel resistor-inductor circuits

Let's take the same components for our series example circuit and connect them in parallel: (Figure 3.14)

Because the power source has the same frequency as the series example circuit, and the resistor and inductor both have the same values of resistance and inductance, respectively,

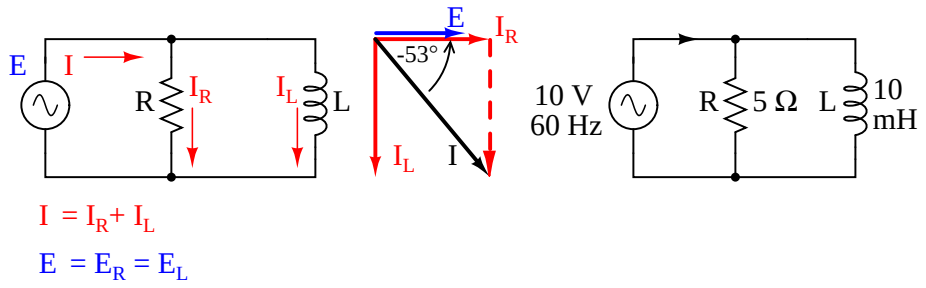


Figure 3.14: *Parallel R-L circuit.*

they must also have the same values of impedance. So, we can begin our analysis table with the same "given" values:

	R	L	Total	
E			**10 + j0** **10** $\angle$ 0°	Volts
I				Amps
Z	**5 + j0** **5** $\angle$ 0°	**0 + j3.7699** **3.7699** $\angle$ 90°		Ohms

The only difference in our analysis technique this time is that we will apply the rules of parallel circuits instead of the rules for series circuits. The approach is fundamentally the same as for DC. We know that voltage is shared uniformly by all components in a parallel circuit, so we can transfer the figure of total voltage (10 volts $\angle$ 0°) to all components columns:

	R	L	Total	
E	10 + j0 10 $\angle$ 0°	10 + j0 10 $\angle$ 0°	10 + j0 10 $\angle$ 0°	Volts
I				Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 $\angle$ 0°	0 + j3.7699 3.7699 $\angle$ 90°		Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits:
$E_{total} = E_R = E_L$

Now we can apply Ohm's Law (I=E/Z) vertically to two columns of the table, calculating current through the resistor and current through the inductor:

	R	L	Total	
E	10 + j0 $10 \angle 0^o$	10 + j0 $10 \angle 0^o$	10 + j0 $10 \angle 0^o$	Volts
I	**2 + j0** **2** $\angle 0^o$	**0 - j2.6526** **2.6526** $\angle -90^o$		Amps
Z	5 + j0 $5 \angle 0^o$	0 + j3.7699 $3.7699 \angle 90^o$		Ohms

Ohm's Law $I = \frac{E}{Z}$ *Ohm's Law* $I = \frac{E}{Z}$

Just as with DC circuits, branch currents in a parallel AC circuit add to form the total current (Kirchhoff's Current Law still holds true for AC as it did for DC):

	R	L	Total	
E	10 + j0 $10 \angle 0^o$	10 + j0 $10 \angle 0^o$	10 + j0 $10 \angle 0^o$	Volts
I	2 + j0 $2 \angle 0^o$	0 - j2.6526 $2.6526 \angle -90^o$	**2 - j2.6526** **3.3221** $\angle -52.984^o$	Amps
Z	5 + j0 $5 \angle 0^o$	0 + j3.7699 $3.7699 \angle 90^o$		Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits: $I_{total} = I_R + I_L$

Finally, total impedance can be calculated by using Ohm's Law (Z=E/I) vertically in the "Total" column. Incidentally, parallel impedance can also be calculated by using a reciprocal formula identical to that used in calculating parallel resistances.

$$Z_{parallel} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{Z_1} + \frac{1}{Z_2} + \ldots \frac{1}{Z_n}}$$

The only problem with using this formula is that it typically involves a lot of calculator keystrokes to carry out. And if you're determined to run through a formula like this "longhand," be prepared for a very large amount of work! But, just as with DC circuits, we often have multiple options in calculating the quantities in our analysis tables, and this example is no different. No matter which way you calculate total impedance (Ohm's Law or the reciprocal formula), you will arrive at the same figure:

	R	L	Total	
E	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	2 + j0 2 ∠ 0°	0 - j2.6526 2.6526 ∠ -90°	2 - j2.6526 3.322 ∠ -52.984°	Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 + j3.7699 3.7699 ∠ 90°	**1.8122 + j2.4035** **3.0102** ∠ 52.984°	Ohms

Ohm's Law $Z = \frac{E}{I}$ *or* *Rule of parallel circuits:* $Z_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{Z_R} + \frac{1}{Z_L}}$

- **REVIEW:**
- Impedances (Z) are managed just like resistances (R) in parallel circuit analysis: parallel impedances diminish to form the total impedance, using the reciprocal formula. Just be sure to perform all calculations in complex (not scalar) form! Z_{Total} = 1/(1/Z_1 + 1/Z_2 + . . . 1/Z_n)
- Ohm's Law for AC circuits: E = IZ ; I = E/Z ; Z = E/I
- When resistors and inductors are mixed together in parallel circuits (just as in series circuits), the total impedance will have a phase angle somewhere between 0^o and +90^o. The circuit current will have a phase angle somewhere between 0^o and -90^o.
- Parallel AC circuits exhibit the same fundamental properties as parallel DC circuits: voltage is uniform throughout the circuit, branch currents add to form the total current, and impedances diminish (through the reciprocal formula) to form the total impedance.

3.5 Inductor quirks

In an ideal case, an inductor acts as a purely reactive device. That is, its opposition to AC current is strictly based on inductive reaction to changes in current, and not electron friction as is the case with resistive components. However, inductors are not quite so pure in their reactive behavior. To begin with, they're made of wire, and we know that all wire possesses some measurable amount of resistance (unless its superconducting wire). This built-in resistance acts as though it were connected in series with the perfect inductance of the coil, like this: (Figure 3.15)

Consequently, the impedance of any real inductor will always be a complex combination of resistance and inductive reactance.

Compounding this problem is something called the *skin effect*, which is AC's tendency to flow through the outer areas of a conductor's cross-section rather than through the middle.

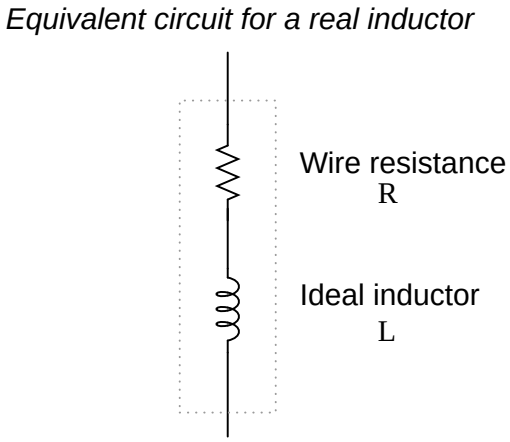


Figure 3.15: *Inductor Equivalent circuit of a real inductor.*

When electrons flow in a single direction (DC), they use the entire cross-sectional area of the conductor to move. Electrons switching directions of flow, on the other hand, tend to avoid travel through the very middle of a conductor, limiting the effective cross-sectional area available. The skin effect becomes more pronounced as frequency increases.

Also, the alternating magnetic field of an inductor energized with AC may radiate off into space as part of an electromagnetic wave, especially if the AC is of high frequency. This radiated energy does not return to the inductor, and so it manifests itself as resistance (power dissipation) in the circuit.

Added to the resistive losses of wire and radiation, there are other effects at work in iron-core inductors which manifest themselves as additional resistance between the leads. When an inductor is energized with AC, the alternating magnetic fields produced tend to induce circulating currents within the iron core known as *eddy currents*. These electric currents in the iron core have to overcome the electrical resistance offered by the iron, which is not as good a conductor as copper. Eddy current losses are primarily counteracted by dividing the iron core up into many thin sheets (laminations), each one separated from the other by a thin layer of electrically insulating varnish. With the cross-section of the core divided up into many electrically isolated sections, current cannot circulate within that cross-sectional area and there will be no (or very little) resistive losses from that effect.

As you might have expected, eddy current losses in metallic inductor cores manifest themselves in the form of heat. The effect is more pronounced at higher frequencies, and can be so extreme that it is sometimes exploited in manufacturing processes to heat metal objects! In fact, this process of "inductive heating" is often used in high-purity metal foundry operations, where metallic elements and alloys must be heated in a vacuum environment to avoid contamination by air, and thus where standard combustion heating technology would be useless. It is a "non-contact" technology, the heated substance not having to touch the coil(s) producing the magnetic field.

In high-frequency service, eddy currents can even develop within the cross-section of the wire itself, contributing to additional resistive effects. To counteract this tendency, special

wire made of very fine, individually insulated strands called *Litz wire* (short for *Litzendraht*) can be used. The insulation separating strands from each other prevent eddy currents from circulating through the whole wire's cross-sectional area.

Additionally, any magnetic hysteresis that needs to be overcome with every reversal of the inductor's magnetic field constitutes an expenditure of energy that manifests itself as resistance in the circuit. Some core materials (such as ferrite) are particularly notorious for their hysteretic effect. Counteracting this effect is best done by means of proper core material selection and limits on the peak magnetic field intensity generated with each cycle.

Altogether, the stray resistive properties of a real inductor (wire resistance, radiation losses, eddy currents, and hysteresis losses) are expressed under the single term of "effective resistance:" (Figure 3.16)

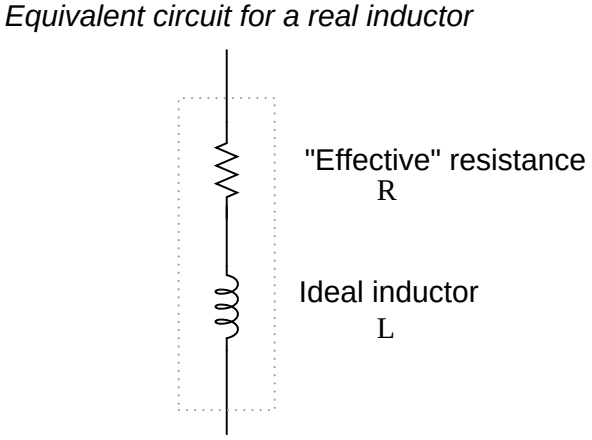


Figure 3.16: *Equivalent circuit of a real inductor with skin-effect, radiation, eddy current, and hysteresis losses.*

It is worthy to note that the skin effect and radiation losses apply just as well to straight lengths of wire in an AC circuit as they do a coiled wire. Usually their combined effect is too small to notice, but at radio frequencies they can be quite large. A radio transmitter antenna, for example, is designed with the express purpose of dissipating the greatest amount of energy in the form of electromagnetic radiation.

Effective resistance in an inductor can be a serious consideration for the AC circuit designer. To help quantify the relative amount of effective resistance in an inductor, another value exists called the *Q factor*, or "quality factor" which is calculated as follows:

$$Q = \frac{X_L}{R}$$

The symbol "Q" has nothing to do with electric charge (coulombs), which tends to be confusing. For some reason, the Powers That Be decided to use the same letter of the alphabet to denote a totally different quantity.

The higher the value for "Q," the "purer" the inductor is. Because its so easy to add additional resistance if needed, a high-Q inductor is better than a low-Q inductor for design

purposes. An ideal inductor would have a Q of infinity, with zero effective resistance.

Because inductive reactance (X) varies with frequency, so will Q. However, since the resistive effects of inductors (wire skin effect, radiation losses, eddy current, and hysteresis) also vary with frequency, Q does not vary proportionally with reactance. In order for a Q value to have precise meaning, it must be specified at a particular test frequency.

Stray resistance isn't the only inductor quirk we need to be aware of. Due to the fact that the multiple turns of wire comprising inductors are separated from each other by an insulating gap (air, varnish, or some other kind of electrical insulation), we have the potential for capacitance to develop between turns. AC capacitance will be explored in the next chapter, but it suffices to say at this point that it behaves very differently from AC inductance, and therefore further "taints" the reactive purity of real inductors.

3.6 More on the "skin effect"

As previously mentioned, the skin effect is where alternating current tends to avoid travel through the center of a solid conductor, limiting itself to conduction near the surface. This effectively limits the cross-sectional conductor area available to carry alternating electron flow, increasing the resistance of that conductor above what it would normally be for direct current: (Figure 3.17)

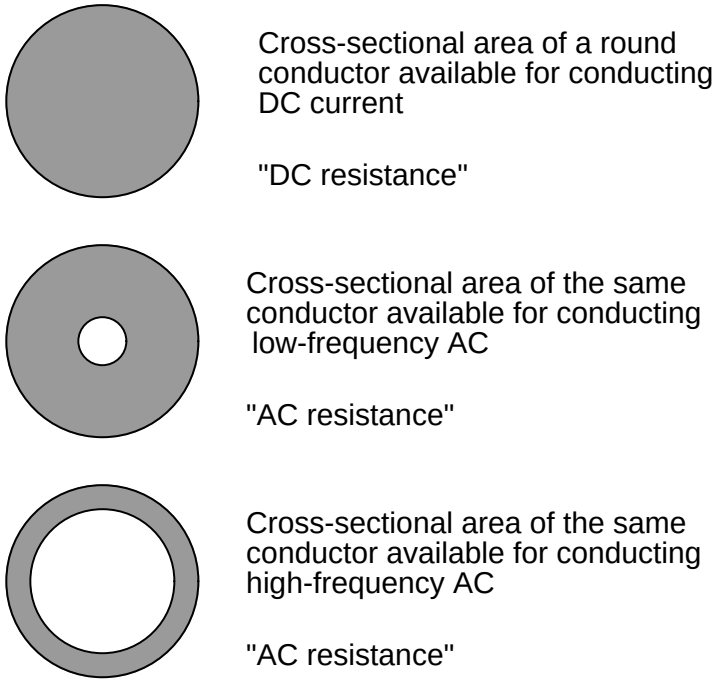


Figure 3.17: *Skin effect: skin depth decreases with increasing frequency.*

The electrical resistance of the conductor with all its cross-sectional area in use is known as the "DC resistance," the "AC resistance" of the same conductor referring to a higher figure resulting from the skin effect. As you can see, at high frequencies the AC current avoids travel through most of the conductor's cross-sectional area. For the purpose of conducting current, the wire might as well be hollow!

In some radio applications (antennas, most notably) this effect is exploited. Since radio-frequency ("RF") AC currents wouldn't travel through the middle of a conductor anyway, why not just use hollow metal rods instead of solid metal wires and save both weight and cost? (Figure 3.18) Most antenna structures and RF power conductors are made of hollow metal tubes for this reason.

In the following photograph you can see some large inductors used in a 50 kW radio transmitting circuit. The inductors are hollow copper tubes coated with silver, for excellent conductivity at the "skin" of the tube:

Figure 3.18: *High power inductors formed from hollow tubes.*

The degree to which frequency affects the effective resistance of a solid wire conductor is impacted by the gauge of that wire. As a rule, large-gauge wires exhibit a more pronounced

skin effect (change in resistance from DC) than small-gauge wires at any given frequency. The equation for approximating skin effect at high frequencies (greater than 1 MHz) is as follows:

$$R_{AC} = (R_{DC})(k)\sqrt{f}$$

Where,

R_{AC} = AC resistance at given frequency "f"

R_{DC} = Resistance at zero frequency (DC)

k = Wire gage factor (see table below)

f = Frequency of AC in MHz (MegaHertz)

Table 3.2 gives approximate values of "k" factor for various round wire sizes.

Table 3.2: *"k" factor for various AWG wire sizes.*

gage size	k factor	gage size	k factor
4/0	124.5	8	34.8
2/0	99.0	10	27.6
1/0	88.0	14	17.6
2	69.8	18	10.9
4	55.5	22	6.86
6	47.9	-	-

For example, a length of number 10-gauge wire with a DC end-to-end resistance of 25 Ω would have an AC (effective) resistance of 2.182 kΩ at a frequency of 10 MHz:

$$R_{AC} = (R_{DC})(k)\sqrt{f}$$

$$R_{AC} = (25\ \Omega)(27.6)\ \sqrt{10}$$

$$R_{AC} = 2.182\ k\Omega$$

Please remember that this figure is *not* impedance, and it does *not* consider any reactive effects, inductive or capacitive. This is simply an estimated figure of pure resistance for the conductor (that opposition to the AC flow of electrons which *does* dissipate power in the form of heat), corrected for the skin effect. Reactance, and the combined effects of reactance and resistance (impedance), are entirely different matters.

3.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jim Palmer (June 2001): Identified and offered correction for typographical error in complex number calculation.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 4

REACTANCE AND IMPEDANCE – CAPACITIVE

Contents

4.1 AC resistor circuits

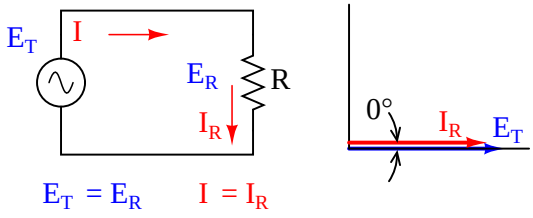


Figure 4.1: *Pure resistive AC circuit: voltage and current are in phase.*

If we were to plot the current and voltage for a very simple AC circuit consisting of a source and a resistor, (Figure 4.1) it would look something like this: (Figure 4.2)

Because the resistor allows an amount of current directly proportional to the voltage across it at all periods of time, the waveform for the current is exactly in phase with the waveform for

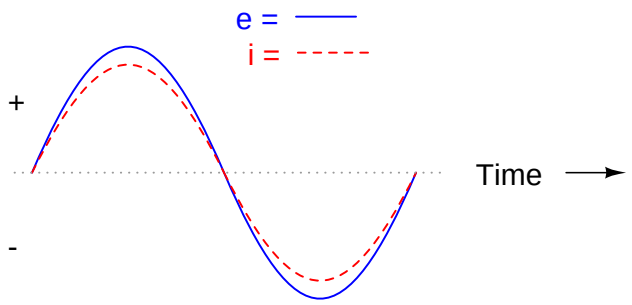


Figure 4.2: *Voltage and current "in phase" for resistive circuit.*

the voltage. We can look at any point in time along the horizontal axis of the plot and compare those values of current and voltage with each other (any "snapshot" look at the values of a wave are referred to as *instantaneous values*, meaning the values at that *instant* in time). When the instantaneous value for voltage is zero, the instantaneous current through the resistor is also zero. Likewise, at the moment in time where the voltage across the resistor is at its positive peak, the current through the resistor is also at its positive peak, and so on. At any given point in time along the waves, Ohm's Law holds true for the instantaneous values of voltage and current.

We can also calculate the power dissipated by this resistor, and plot those values on the same graph: (Figure 4.3)

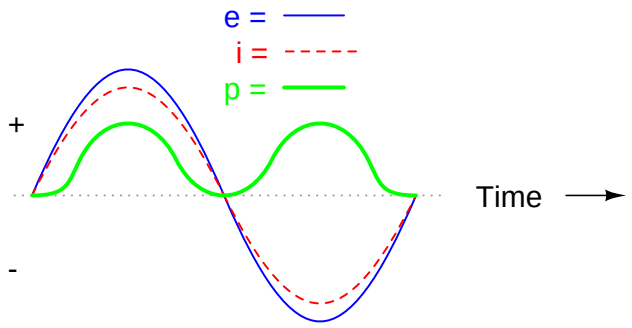


Figure 4.3: *Instantaneous AC power in a resistive circuit is always positive.*

Note that the power is never a negative value. When the current is positive (above the line), the voltage is also positive, resulting in a power (p=ie) of a positive value. Conversely, when the current is negative (below the line), the voltage is also negative, which results in a positive value for power (a negative number multiplied by a negative number equals a positive number). This consistent "polarity" of power tells us that the resistor is always dissipating power, taking it from the source and releasing it in the form of heat energy. Whether the current is positive or negative, a resistor still dissipates energy.

4.2 AC capacitor circuits

Capacitors do not behave the same as resistors. Whereas resistors allow a flow of electrons through them directly proportional to the voltage drop, capacitors oppose *changes* in voltage by drawing or supplying current as they charge or discharge to the new voltage level. The flow of electrons "through" a capacitor is directly proportional to the *rate of change* of voltage across the capacitor. This opposition to voltage change is another form of *reactance*, but one that is precisely opposite to the kind exhibited by inductors.

Expressed mathematically, the relationship between the current "through" the capacitor and rate of voltage change across the capacitor is as such:

$$i = C \frac{de}{dt}$$

The expression de/dt is one from calculus, meaning the rate of change of instantaneous voltage (e) over time, in volts per second. The capacitance (C) is in Farads, and the instantaneous current (i), of course, is in amps. Sometimes you will find the rate of instantaneous voltage change over time expressed as dv/dt instead of de/dt: using the lower-case letter "v" instead or "e" to represent voltage, but it means the exact same thing. To show what happens with alternating current, let's analyze a simple capacitor circuit: (Figure 4.4)

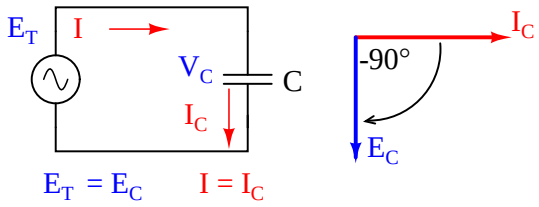


Figure 4.4: *Pure capacitive circuit: capacitor voltage lags capacitor current by 90°*

If we were to plot the current and voltage for this very simple circuit, it would look something like this: (Figure 4.5)

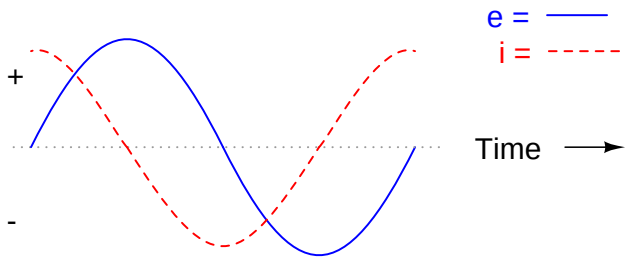


Figure 4.5: *Pure capacitive circuit waveforms.*

Remember, the current through a capacitor is a reaction against the *change* in voltage across it. Therefore, the instantaneous current is zero whenever the instantaneous voltage is

at a peak (zero change, or level slope, on the voltage sine wave), and the instantaneous current is at a peak wherever the instantaneous voltage is at maximum change (the points of steepest slope on the voltage wave, where it crosses the zero line). This results in a voltage wave that is -90^o out of phase with the current wave. Looking at the graph, the current wave seems to have a "head start" on the voltage wave; the current "leads" the voltage, and the voltage "lags" behind the current. (Figure 4.6)

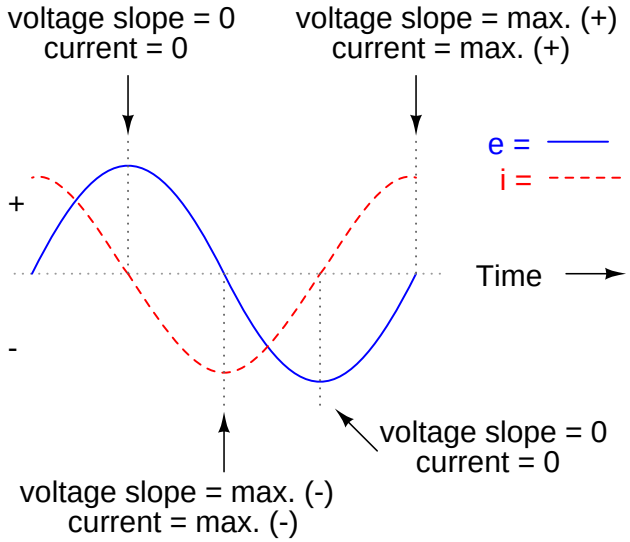


Figure 4.6: *Voltage lags current by 90^o in a pure capacitive circuit.*

As you might have guessed, the same unusual power wave that we saw with the simple inductor circuit is present in the simple capacitor circuit, too: (Figure 4.7)

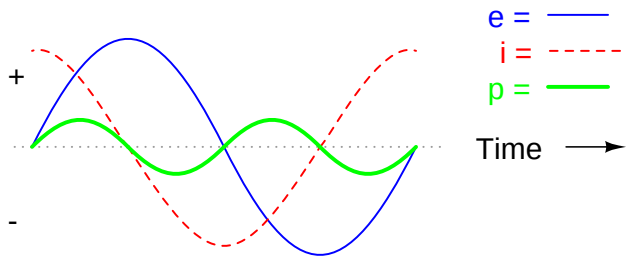


Figure 4.7: *In a pure capacitive circuit, the instantaneous power may be positive or negative.*

As with the simple inductor circuit, the 90 degree phase shift between voltage and current results in a power wave that alternates equally between positive and negative. This means that a capacitor does not dissipate power as it reacts against changes in voltage; it merely absorbs and releases power, alternately.

A capacitor's opposition to change in voltage translates to an opposition to alternating voltage in general, which is by definition always changing in instantaneous magnitude and direction. For any given magnitude of AC voltage at a given frequency, a capacitor of given size will "conduct" a certain magnitude of AC current. Just as the current through a resistor is a function of the voltage across the resistor and the resistance offered by the resistor, the AC current through a capacitor is a function of the AC voltage across it, and the *reactance* offered by the capacitor. As with inductors, the reactance of a capacitor is expressed in ohms and symbolized by the letter X (or X_C to be more specific).

Since capacitors "conduct" current in proportion to the rate of voltage change, they will pass more current for faster-changing voltages (as they charge and discharge to the same voltage peaks in less time), and less current for slower-changing voltages. What this means is that reactance in ohms for any capacitor is *inversely* proportional to the frequency of the alternating current. (Table 4.1)

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

Table 4.1: *Reactance of a 100 uF capacitor:*

Frequency (Hertz)	**Reactance (Ohms)**
60	26.5258
120	13.2629
2500	0.6366

Please note that the relationship of capacitive reactance to frequency is exactly opposite from that of inductive reactance. Capacitive reactance (in ohms) decreases with increasing AC frequency. Conversely, inductive reactance (in ohms) increases with increasing AC frequency. Inductors oppose faster changing currents by producing greater voltage drops; capacitors oppose faster changing voltage drops by allowing greater currents.

As with inductors, the reactance equation's $2\pi f$ term may be replaced by the lower-case Greek letter Omega (ω), which is referred to as the *angular velocity* of the AC circuit. Thus, the equation $X_C = 1/(2\pi fC)$ could also be written as $X_C = 1/(\omega C)$, with ω cast in units of *radians per second*.

Alternating current in a simple capacitive circuit is equal to the voltage (in volts) divided by the capacitive reactance (in ohms), just as either alternating or direct current in a simple resistive circuit is equal to the voltage (in volts) divided by the resistance (in ohms). The following circuit illustrates this mathematical relationship by example: (Figure 4.8)

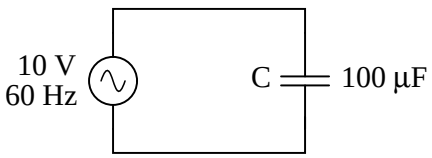


Figure 4.8: *Capacitive reactance.*

$X_C = 26.5258\ \Omega$

$$I = \frac{E}{X}$$

$$I = \frac{10\ V}{26.5258\ \Omega}$$

$I = 0.3770\ A$

However, we need to keep in mind that voltage and current are not in phase here. As was shown earlier, the current has a phase shift of $+90^o$ with respect to the voltage. If we represent these phase angles of voltage and current mathematically, we can calculate the phase angle of the capacitor's reactive opposition to current.

$$\text{Opposition} = \frac{\text{Voltage}}{\text{Current}}$$

$$\text{Opposition} = \frac{10\ V \angle 0^o}{0.3770\ A \angle 90^o}$$

$$\text{Opposition} = 26.5258\ \Omega \angle -90^o$$

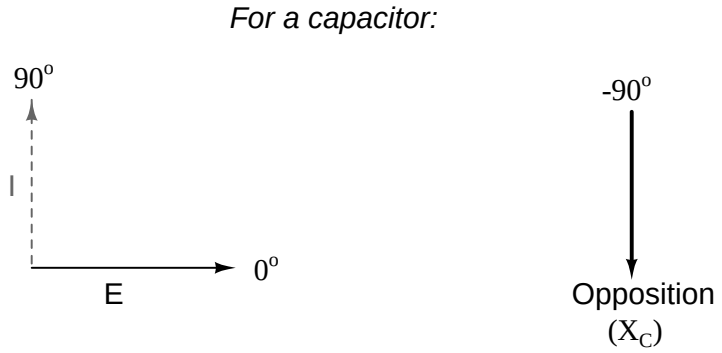


Figure 4.9: *Voltage lags current by 90^o in an inductor.*

Mathematically, we say that the phase angle of a capacitor's opposition to current is -90^o, meaning that a capacitor's opposition to current is a negative imaginary quantity. (Figure 4.9) This phase angle of reactive opposition to current becomes critically important in circuit analysis, especially for complex AC circuits where reactance and resistance interact. It will prove beneficial to represent *any* component's opposition to current in terms of complex numbers, and not just scalar quantities of resistance and reactance.

- **REVIEW:**

- *Capacitive reactance* is the opposition that a capacitor offers to alternating current due to its phase-shifted storage and release of energy in its electric field. Reactance is symbolized by the capital letter "X" and is measured in ohms just like resistance (R).

- Capacitive reactance can be calculated using this formula: $X_C = 1/(2\pi fC)$

- Capacitive reactance *decreases* with increasing frequency. In other words, the higher the frequency, the less it opposes (the more it "conducts") the AC flow of electrons.

4.3 Series resistor-capacitor circuits

In the last section, we learned what would happen in simple resistor-only and capacitor-only AC circuits. Now we will combine the two components together in series form and investigate the effects. (Figure 4.10)

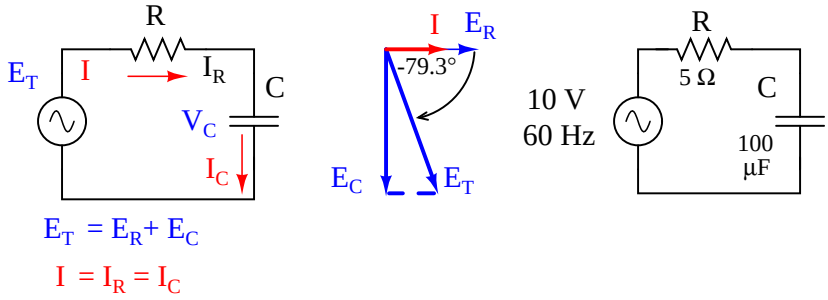


Figure 4.10: *Series capacitor inductor circuit: voltage lags current by 0^o to 90^o.*

The resistor will offer 5 Ω of resistance to AC current regardless of frequency, while the capacitor will offer 26.5258 Ω of reactance to AC current at 60 Hz. Because the resistor's resistance is a real number (5 Ω ∠ 0^o, or 5 + j0 Ω), and the capacitor's reactance is an imaginary number (26.5258 Ω ∠ -90^o, or 0 - j26.5258 Ω), the combined effect of the two components will be an opposition to current equal to the complex sum of the two numbers. The term for this complex opposition to current is *impedance*, its symbol is Z, and it is also expressed in the unit of ohms, just like resistance and reactance. In the above example, the total circuit impedance is:

Z_{total} = (5 Ω resistance) + (26.5258 Ω capacitive reactance)

$Z_{total} = 5\ \Omega\ (R) + 26.5258\ \Omega\ (X_C)$

$Z_{total} = (5\ \Omega \angle 0^o) + (26.5258\ \Omega \angle -90^o)$

or

$(5 + j0\ \Omega) + (0 - j26.5258\ \Omega)$

$Z_{total} = 5 - j26.5258\ \Omega$ *or* $26.993\ \Omega \angle -79.325^o$

Impedance is related to voltage and current just as you might expect, in a manner similar to resistance in Ohm's Law:

Ohm's Law for AC circuits:

$$\mathbf{E = IZ} \qquad \mathbf{I = \frac{E}{Z}} \qquad \mathbf{Z = \frac{E}{I}}$$

All quantities expressed in complex, not scalar, form

In fact, this is a far more comprehensive form of Ohm's Law than what was taught in DC electronics (E=IR), just as impedance is a far more comprehensive expression of opposition to the flow of electrons than simple resistance is. Any resistance and any reactance, separately or in combination (series/parallel), can be and should be represented as a single impedance.

To calculate current in the above circuit, we first need to give a phase angle reference for the voltage source, which is generally assumed to be zero. (The phase angles of resistive and capacitive impedance are *always* 0^o and -90^o, respectively, regardless of the given phase angles for voltage or current).

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

$$I = \frac{10\ V \angle 0^o}{26.933\ \Omega \angle -79.325^o}$$

$I = 370.5\ mA \angle 79.325^o$

As with the purely capacitive circuit, the current wave is leading the voltage wave (of the source), although this time the difference is 79.325^o instead of a full 90^o. (Figure 4.11)

As we learned in the AC inductance chapter, the "table" method of organizing circuit quantities is a very useful tool for AC analysis just as it is for DC analysis. Let's place out known figures for this series circuit into a table and continue the analysis using this tool:

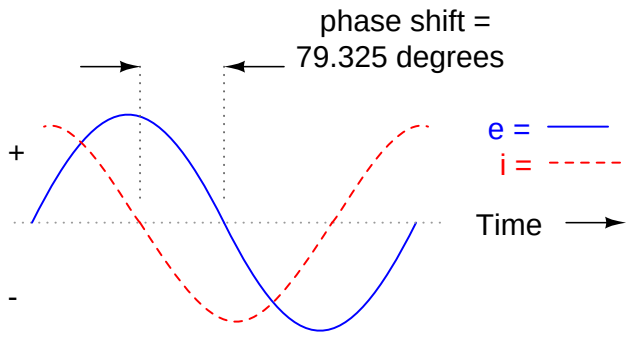


Figure 4.11: *Voltage lags current (current leads voltage)in a series R-C circuit.*

	R	C	Total	
E			10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I			68.623m + j364.06m 370.5m ∠ 79.325°	Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°	5 - j26.5258 26.993 ∠ -79.325°	Ohms

Current in a series circuit is shared equally by all components, so the figures placed in the "Total" column for current can be distributed to all other columns as well:

	R	C	Total	
E			10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	**68.623m + j364.06m** **370.5m** ∠ 79.325°	**68.623m + j364.06m** **370.5m** ∠ 79.325°	68.623m + j364.06m 370.5m ∠ 79.325°	Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°	5 - j26.5258 26.993 ∠ -79.325°	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:
$I_{total} = I_R = I_C$

Continuing with our analysis, we can apply Ohm's Law (E=IR) vertically to determine voltage across the resistor and capacitor:

	R	C	Total	
E	**343.11m + j1.8203** **1.8523** ∠ 79.325°	**9.6569 - j1.8203** **9.8269** ∠ -10.675°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	68.623m + j364.06m 370.5m ∠ 79.325°	68.623m + j364.06m 370.5m ∠ 79.325°	68.623m + j364.06m 370.5m ∠ 79.325°	Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°	5 - j26.5258 26.993 ∠ -79.325°	Ohms
	Ohm's Law E = IZ	*Ohm's Law* E = IZ		

Notice how the voltage across the resistor has the exact same phase angle as the current through it, telling us that E and I are in phase (for the resistor only). The voltage across the capacitor has a phase angle of -10.675^o, exactly 90^o *less* than the phase angle of the circuit current. This tells us that the capacitor's voltage and current are still 90^o out of phase with each other.

Let's check our calculations with SPICE: (Figure 4.12)

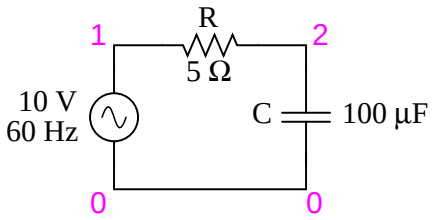


Figure 4.12: *Spice circuit: R-C.*

```
ac r-c circuit
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
r1 1 2 5
c1 2 0 100u
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,2) v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac vp(1,2) vp(2,0) ip(v1)
.end
```

```
freq          v(1,2)      v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.852E+00   9.827E+00   3.705E-01
freq          vp(1,2)     vp(2)       ip(v1)
6.000E+01     7.933E+01  -1.067E+01  -1.007E+02
```

Interpreted SPICE results

$E_R = 1.852 \text{ V} \angle 79.33^o$

$E_C = 9.827 \text{ V} \angle -10.67^o$

$I = 370.5 \text{ mA} \angle -100.7^o$

Once again, SPICE confusingly prints the current phase angle at a value equal to the real phase angle plus 180^o (or minus 180^o). However, its a simple matter to correct this figure and check to see if our work is correct. In this case, the -100.7^o output by SPICE for current phase angle equates to a positive 79.3^o, which does correspond to our previously calculated figure of 79.325^o.

Again, it must be emphasized that the calculated figures corresponding to real-life voltage and current measurements are those in *polar* form, not rectangular form! For example, if we were to actually build this series resistor-capacitor circuit and measure voltage across the resistor, our voltmeter would indicate **1.8523** volts, not 343.11 millivolts (real rectangular) or 1.8203 volts (imaginary rectangular). Real instruments connected to real circuits provide indications corresponding to the vector length (magnitude) of the calculated figures. While the rectangular form of complex number notation is useful for performing addition and subtraction, it is a more abstract form of notation than polar, which alone has direct correspondence to true measurements.

Impedance (Z) of a series R-C circuit may be calculated, given the resistance (R) and the capacitive reactance (X_C). Since E=IR, E=IX_C, and E=IZ, resistance, reactance, and impedance are proportional to voltage, respectively. Thus, the voltage phasor diagram can be replaced by a similar impedance diagram. (Figure 4.13)

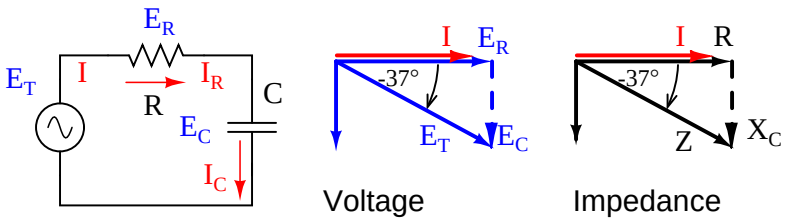


Figure 4.13: *Series: R-C circuit Impedance phasor diagram.*

Example:

Given: A 40 Ω resistor in series with a 88.42 microfarad capacitor. Find the impedance at 60 hertz.

$X_C = 1/2\pi fC)$
$X_C = 1/(2\pi \cdot 60 \cdot 88.42 \times 10^{-6}$
$X_C = 30\ \Omega$
$Z = R - jX_C$
$Z = 40 - j30$
$|Z| = \sqrt{40^2 + (-30)^2} = 50\ \Omega$
$\angle Z = \arctan(-30/40) = -36.87^o$
$Z = 40 - j30 = 50 \angle 36.87^o$

- **REVIEW:**
- *Impedance* is the total measure of opposition to electric current and is the complex (vector) sum of ("real") resistance and ("imaginary") reactance.
- Impedances (Z) are managed just like resistances (R) in series circuit analysis: series impedances add to form the total impedance. Just be sure to perform all calculations in complex (not scalar) form! $Z_{Total} = Z_1 + Z_2 + \ldots Z_n$
- Please note that impedances always add in series, regardless of what type of components comprise the impedances. That is, resistive impedance, inductive impedance, and capacitive impedance are to be treated the same way mathematically.
- A purely resistive impedance will always have a phase angle of exactly 0^o ($Z_R = R\ \Omega \angle 0^o$).
- A purely capacitive impedance will always have a phase angle of exactly -90^o ($Z_C = X_C\ \Omega \angle$ -90^o).
- Ohm's Law for AC circuits: E = IZ ; I = E/Z ; Z = E/I
- When resistors and capacitors are mixed together in circuits, the total impedance will have a phase angle somewhere between 0^o and -90^o.
- Series AC circuits exhibit the same fundamental properties as series DC circuits: current is uniform throughout the circuit, voltage drops add to form the total voltage, and impedances add to form the total impedance.

4.4 Parallel resistor-capacitor circuits

Using the same value components in our series example circuit, we will connect them in parallel and see what happens: (Figure 4.14)

Because the power source has the same frequency as the series example circuit, and the resistor and capacitor both have the same values of resistance and capacitance, respectively, they must also have the same values of impedance. So, we can begin our analysis table with the same "given" values:

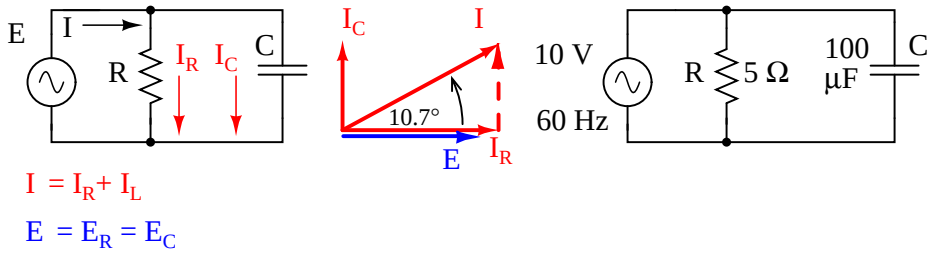


Figure 4.14: *Parallel R-C circuit.*

	R	C	Total	
E			10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I				Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°		Ohms

This being a parallel circuit now, we know that voltage is shared equally by all components, so we can place the figure for total voltage (10 volts ∠ 0^o) in all the columns:

	R	C	Total	
E	**10 + j0** **10** ∠ 0°	**10 + j0** **10** ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I				Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°		Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits:

$E_{total} = E_R = E_C$

Now we can apply Ohm's Law (I=E/Z) vertically to two columns in the table, calculating current through the resistor and current through the capacitor:

	R	C	Total	
E	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	**2 + j0** **2** ∠ 0°	**0 + j376.99m** **376.99m** ∠ 90°		Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°		Ohms

Ohm's Law $I = \frac{E}{Z}$ *Ohm's Law* $I = \frac{E}{Z}$

Just as with DC circuits, branch currents in a parallel AC circuit add up to form the total current (Kirchhoff's Current Law again):

	R	C	Total	
E	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	2 + j0 2 ∠ 0°	0 + j376.99m 376.99m ∠ 90°	**2 + j376.99m** **2.0352** ∠ 10.675°	Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°		Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits: $I_{total} = I_R + I_C$

Finally, total impedance can be calculated by using Ohm's Law (Z=E/I) vertically in the "Total" column. As we saw in the AC inductance chapter, parallel impedance can also be calculated by using a reciprocal formula identical to that used in calculating parallel resistances. It is noteworthy to mention that this parallel impedance rule holds true regardless of the kind of impedances placed in parallel. In other words, it doesn't matter if we're calculating a circuit composed of parallel resistors, parallel inductors, parallel capacitors, or some combination thereof: in the form of impedances (Z), all the terms are common and can be applied uniformly to the same formula. Once again, the parallel impedance formula looks like this:

$$Z_{parallel} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{Z_1} + \frac{1}{Z_2} + \ldots \frac{1}{Z_n}}$$

The only drawback to using this equation is the significant amount of work required to work it out, especially without the assistance of a calculator capable of manipulating complex quantities. Regardless of how we calculate total impedance for our parallel circuit (either Ohm's Law or the reciprocal formula), we will arrive at the same figure:

	R	C	Total	
E	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	10 + j0 10 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	2 + j0 2 ∠ 0°	0 + j376.99m 376.99m ∠ 90°	2 + j376.99m 2.0352 ∠ 10.675°	Amps
Z	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	0 - j26.5258 26.5258 ∠ -90°	**4.8284 - j910.14m** **4.9135** ∠ -10.675°	Ohms

Ohm's Law $Z = \frac{E}{I}$ *or* *Rule of parallel circuits:* $Z_{total} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{Z_R} + \frac{1}{Z_C}}$

- **REVIEW:**
- Impedances (Z) are managed just like resistances (R) in parallel circuit analysis: parallel impedances diminish to form the total impedance, using the reciprocal formula. Just be sure to perform all calculations in complex (not scalar) form! $Z_{Total} = 1/(1/Z_1 + 1/Z_2 + \ldots 1/Z_n)$
- Ohm's Law for AC circuits: E = IZ ; I = E/Z ; Z = E/I
- When resistors and capacitors are mixed together in parallel circuits (just as in series circuits), the total impedance will have a phase angle somewhere between 0^o and -90^o. The circuit current will have a phase angle somewhere between 0^o and $+90^o$.
- Parallel AC circuits exhibit the same fundamental properties as parallel DC circuits: voltage is uniform throughout the circuit, branch currents add to form the total current, and impedances diminish (through the reciprocal formula) to form the total impedance.

4.5 Capacitor quirks

As with inductors, the ideal capacitor is a purely reactive device, containing absolutely zero resistive (power dissipative) effects. In the real world, of course, nothing is so perfect. However, capacitors have the virtue of generally being *purer* reactive components than inductors. It is a lot easier to design and construct a capacitor with low internal series resistance than it is to do the same with an inductor. The practical result of this is that real capacitors typically have impedance phase angles more closely approaching 90^o (actually, -90^o) than inductors. Consequently, they will tend to dissipate less power than an equivalent inductor.

Capacitors also tend to be smaller and lighter weight than their equivalent inductor counterparts, and since their electric fields are almost totally contained between their plates (unlike inductors, whose magnetic fields naturally tend to extend beyond the dimensions of the core),

they are less prone to transmitting or receiving electromagnetic "noise" to/from other components. For these reasons, circuit designers tend to favor capacitors over inductors wherever a design permits either alternative.

Capacitors with significant resistive effects are said to be *lossy*, in reference to their tendency to dissipate ("lose") power like a resistor. The source of capacitor loss is usually the dielectric material rather than any wire resistance, as wire length in a capacitor is very minimal.

Dielectric materials tend to react to changing electric fields by producing heat. This heating effect represents a loss in power, and is equivalent to resistance in the circuit. The effect is more pronounced at higher frequencies and in fact can be so extreme that it is sometimes exploited in manufacturing processes to heat insulating materials like plastic! The plastic object to be heated is placed between two metal plates, connected to a source of high-frequency AC voltage. Temperature is controlled by varying the voltage or frequency of the source, and the plates never have to contact the object being heated.

This effect is undesirable for capacitors where we expect the component to behave as a purely *reactive* circuit element. One of the ways to mitigate the effect of dielectric "loss" is to choose a dielectric material less susceptible to the effect. Not all dielectric materials are equally "lossy." A relative scale of dielectric loss from least to greatest is given in Table 4.2.

Table 4.2: *Dielectric loss*

Material	**Loss**
Vacuum	Low
Air	-
Polystyrene	-
Mica	-
Glass	-
Low-K ceramic	-
Plastic film (Mylar)	-
Paper	-
High-K ceramic	-
Aluminum oxide	-
Tantalum pentoxide	high

Dielectric resistivity manifests itself both as a series and a parallel resistance with the pure capacitance: (Figure 4.15)

Fortunately, these stray resistances are usually of modest impact (low series resistance and high parallel resistance), much less significant than the stray resistances present in an average inductor.

Electrolytic capacitors, known for their relatively high capacitance and low working voltage, are also known for their notorious lossiness, due to both the characteristics of the microscopically thin dielectric film and the electrolyte paste. Unless specially made for AC service, electrolytic capacitors should never be used with AC unless it is mixed (biased) with a constant DC voltage preventing the capacitor from ever being subjected to reverse voltage. Even then, their resistive characteristics may be too severe a shortcoming for the application anyway.

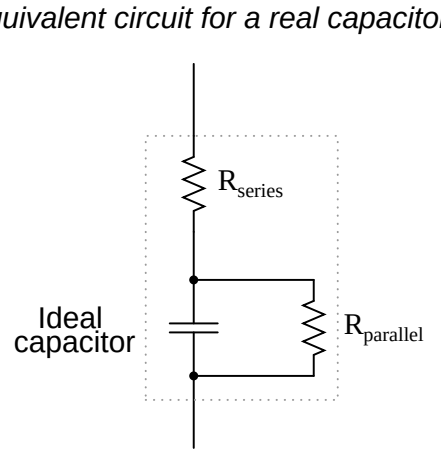


Figure 4.15: *Real capacitor has both series and parallel resistance.*

4.6 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 5

REACTANCE AND IMPEDANCE – R, L, AND C

Contents

5.1 Review of R, X, and Z

Before we begin to explore the effects of resistors, inductors, and capacitors connected together in the same AC circuits, let's briefly review some basic terms and facts.

Resistance is essentially *friction* against the motion of electrons. It is present in all conductors to some extent (except *super*conductors!), most notably in resistors. When alternating current goes through a resistance, a voltage drop is produced that is in-phase with the current. Resistance is mathematically symbolized by the letter "R" and is measured in the unit of ohms (Ω).

Reactance is essentially *inertia* against the motion of electrons. It is present anywhere electric or magnetic fields are developed in proportion to applied voltage or current, respectively; but most notably in capacitors and inductors. When alternating current goes through a pure reactance, a voltage drop is produced that is 90^o out of phase with the current. Reactance is mathematically symbolized by the letter "X" and is measured in the unit of ohms (Ω).

Impedance is a comprehensive expression of any and all forms of opposition to electron flow, including both resistance and reactance. It is present in all circuits, and in all components. When alternating current goes through an impedance, a voltage drop is produced that is somewhere between 0^o and 90^o out of phase with the current. Impedance is mathematically symbolized by the letter "Z" and is measured in the unit of ohms (Ω), in complex form.

Perfect resistors (Figure 5.1) possess resistance, but not reactance. Perfect inductors and perfect capacitors (Figure 5.1) possess reactance but no resistance. All components possess impedance, and because of this universal quality, it makes sense to translate all component values (resistance, inductance, capacitance) into common terms of impedance as the first step in analyzing an AC circuit.

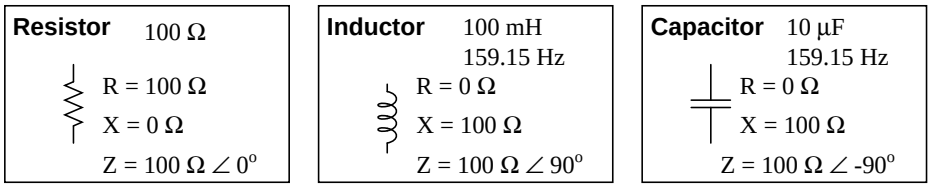


Figure 5.1: *Perfect resistor, inductor, and capacitor.*

The impedance phase angle for any component is the phase shift between voltage across that component and current through that component. For a perfect resistor, the voltage drop and current are *always* in phase with each other, and so the impedance angle of a resistor is said to be 0^o. For an perfect inductor, voltage drop always leads current by 90^o, and so an inductor's impedance phase angle is said to be $+90^o$. For a perfect capacitor, voltage drop always lags current by 90^o, and so a capacitor's impedance phase angle is said to be -90^o.

Impedances in AC behave analogously to resistances in DC circuits: they add in series, and they diminish in parallel. A revised version of Ohm's Law, based on impedance rather than resistance, looks like this:

Ohm's Law for AC circuits:

$$\mathbf{E = IZ} \qquad \mathbf{I = \frac{E}{Z}} \qquad \mathbf{Z = \frac{E}{I}}$$

All quantities expressed in complex, not scalar, form

Kirchhoff's Laws and all network analysis methods and theorems are true for AC circuits as well, so long as quantities are represented in complex rather than scalar form. While this qualified equivalence may be arithmetically challenging, it is conceptually simple and elegant. The only real difference between DC and AC circuit calculations is in regard to *power*. Because reactance doesn't dissipate power as resistance does, the concept of power in AC circuits is radically different from that of DC circuits. More on this subject in a later chapter!

5.2 Series R, L, and C

Let's take the following example circuit and analyze it: (Figure 5.2)

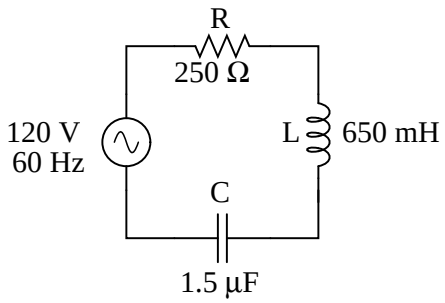


Figure 5.2: *Example series R, L, and C circuit.*

The first step is to determine the reactances (in ohms) for the inductor and the capacitor.

$X_L = 2\pi fL$

$X_L = (2)(\pi)(60\text{ Hz})(650\text{ mH})$

$X_L = 245.04\ \Omega$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{(2)(\pi)(60\text{ Hz})(1.5\ \mu\text{F})}$$

$X_C = 1.7684\ \text{k}\Omega$

The next step is to express all resistances and reactances in a mathematically common form: impedance. (Figure 5.3) Remember that an inductive reactance translates into a positive imaginary impedance (or an impedance at $+90^o$), while a capacitive reactance translates into a negative imaginary impedance (impedance at -90^o). Resistance, of course, is still regarded as a purely "real" impedance (polar angle of 0^o):

$Z_R = 250 + j0\ \Omega$ *or* $250\ \Omega \angle 0^o$

$Z_L = 0 + j245.04\ \Omega$ *or* $245.04\ \Omega \angle 90^o$

$Z_C = 0 - j1.7684\text{k}\ \Omega$ *or* $1.7684\ \text{k}\Omega \angle -90^o$

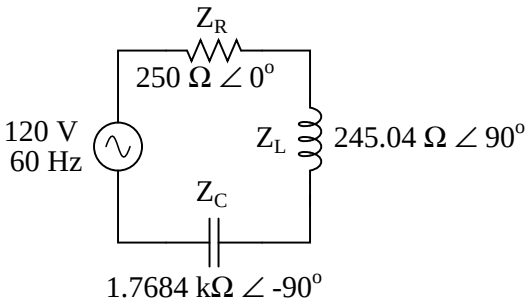


Figure 5.3: *Example series R, L, and C circuit with component values replaced by impedances.*

Now, with all quantities of opposition to electric current expressed in a common, complex number format (as impedances, and not as resistances or reactances), they can be handled in the same way as plain resistances in a DC circuit. This is an ideal time to draw up an analysis table for this circuit and insert all the "given" figures (total voltage, and the impedances of the resistor, inductor, and capacitor).

	R	L	C	Total	
E				**120 + j0** **120** ∠ 0°	Volts
I					Amps
Z	**250 + j0** **250** ∠ 0°	**0 + j245.04** **245.04** ∠ 90°	**0 - j1.7684k** **1.7684k** ∠ -90°		Ohms

Unless otherwise specified, the source voltage will be our reference for phase shift, and so will be written at an angle of 0^o. Remember that there is no such thing as an "absolute" angle of phase shift for a voltage or current, since its always a quantity relative to another waveform. Phase angles for impedance, however (like those of the resistor, inductor, and capacitor), are known absolutely, because the phase relationships between voltage and current at each component are absolutely defined.

Notice that I'm assuming a perfectly reactive inductor and capacitor, with impedance phase angles of exactly +90 and -90^o, respectively. Although real components won't be perfect in this regard, they should be fairly close. For simplicity, I'll assume perfectly reactive inductors and capacitors from now on in my example calculations except where noted otherwise.

Since the above example circuit is a series circuit, we know that the total circuit impedance is equal to the sum of the individuals, so:

$$Z_{total} = Z_R + Z_L + Z_C$$

$$Z_{total} = (250 + j0\ \Omega) + (0 + j245.04\ \Omega) + (0 - j1.7684k\ \Omega)$$

$$Z_{total} = 250 - j1.5233k\ \Omega \quad or \quad 1.5437\ k\Omega \angle -80.680^o$$

Inserting this figure for total impedance into our table:

	R	L	C	Total	
E				120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I					Amps
Z	250 + j0 250 ∠ 0°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	**250 - j1.5233k** **1.5437k** ∠ -80.680°	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:
$Z_{total} = Z_R + Z_L + Z_C$

We can now apply Ohm's Law (I=E/R) vertically in the "Total" column to find total current for this series circuit:

	R	L	C	Total	
E				120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I				**12.589m + 76.708m** **77.734m** ∠ 80.680°	Amps
Z	250 + j0 250 ∠ 0°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	250 - j1.5233k 1.5437k ∠ -80.680°	Ohms

Ohm's Law
$I = \frac{E}{Z}$

Being a series circuit, current must be equal through all components. Thus, we can take the figure obtained for total current and distribute it to each of the other columns:

	R	L	C	Total	
E				120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	**12.589m + 76.708m** **77.734m** ∠ 80.680°	**12.589m + 76.708m** **77.734m** ∠ 80.680°	**12.589m + 76.708m** **77.734m** ∠ 80.680°	12.589m + 76.708m 77.734m ∠ 80.680°	Amps
Z	250 + j0 250 ∠ 0°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	250 - j1.5233k 1.5437k ∠ -80.680°	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:
$I_{total} = I_R = I_L = I_C$

Now we're prepared to apply Ohm's Law (E=IZ) to each of the individual component columns in the table, to determine voltage drops:

	R	L	C	Total	
E	**3.1472 + j19.177** **19.434** $\angle$ 80.680^o	**-18.797 + j3.0848** **19.048** $\angle$ 170.68^o	**135.65 - j22.262** **137.46** $\angle$ -9.3199^o	120 + j0 120 $\angle$ 0^o	Volts
I	12.589m + 76.708m 77.734m $\angle$ 80.680^o	12.589m + 76.708m 77.734m $\angle$ 80.680^o	12.589m + 76.708m 77.734m $\angle$ 80.680^o	12.589m + 76.708m 77.734m $\angle$ 80.680^o	Amps
Z	250 + j0 250 $\angle$ 0^o	0 + j245.04 245.04 $\angle$ 90^o	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k $\angle$ -90^o	250 - j1.5233k 1.5437k $\angle$ -80.680^o	Ohms
	Ohm's Law E = IZ	*Ohm's Law* E = IZ	*Ohm's Law* E = IZ		

Notice something strange here: although our supply voltage is only 120 volts, the voltage across the capacitor is 137.46 volts! How can this be? The answer lies in the interaction between the inductive and capacitive reactances. Expressed as impedances, we can see that the inductor opposes current in a manner precisely opposite that of the capacitor. Expressed in rectangular form, the inductor's impedance has a positive imaginary term and the capacitor has a negative imaginary term. When these two contrary impedances are added (in series), they tend to cancel each other out! Although they're still *added together* to produce a sum, that sum is actually *less* than either of the individual (capacitive or inductive) impedances alone. It is analogous to adding together a positive and a negative (scalar) number: the sum is a quantity less than either one's individual absolute value.

If the total impedance in a series circuit with both inductive and capacitive elements is less than the impedance of either element separately, then the total current in that circuit must be *greater* than what it would be with only the inductive or only the capacitive elements there. With this abnormally high current through each of the components, voltages greater than the source voltage may be obtained across some of the individual components! Further consequences of inductors' and capacitors' opposite reactances in the same circuit will be explored in the next chapter.

Once you've mastered the technique of reducing all component values to impedances (Z), analyzing any AC circuit is only about as difficult as analyzing any DC circuit, except that the quantities dealt with are vector instead of scalar. With the exception of equations dealing with power (P), equations in AC circuits are the same as those in DC circuits, using impedances (Z) instead of resistances (R). Ohm's Law (E=IZ) still holds true, and so do Kirchhoff's Voltage and Current Laws.

To demonstrate Kirchhoff's Voltage Law in an AC circuit, we can look at the answers we derived for component voltage drops in the last circuit. KVL tells us that the algebraic sum of the voltage drops across the resistor, inductor, and capacitor should equal the applied voltage from the source. Even though this may not look like it is true at first sight, a bit of complex number addition proves otherwise:

$E_R + E_L + E_C$ *should equal* E_{total}

$$\begin{array}{rrl} & 3.1472 + j19.177 \text{ V} & E_R \\ & -18.797 + j3.0848 \text{ V} & E_L \\ + & 135.65 - j22.262 \text{ V} & E_C \\ \hline & 120 + j0 \text{ V} & E_{total} \end{array}$$

Aside from a bit of rounding error, the sum of these voltage drops does equal 120 volts. Performed on a calculator (preserving all digits), the answer you will receive should be *exactly* 120 + j0 volts.

We can also use SPICE to verify our figures for this circuit: (Figure 5.4)

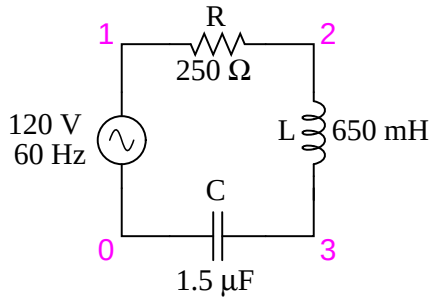


Figure 5.4: *Example series R, L, and C SPICE circuit.*

```
ac r-l-c circuit
v1 1 0 ac 120 sin
r1 1 2 250
l1 2 3 650m
c1 3 0 1.5u
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,2) v(2,3) v(3,0) i(v1)
.print ac vp(1,2) vp(2,3) vp(3,0) ip(v1)
.end
```

```
freq          v(1,2)      v(2,3)      v(3)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.943E+01   1.905E+01   1.375E+02   7.773E-02
freq          vp(1,2)     vp(2,3)     vp(3)       ip(v1)
6.000E+01     8.068E+01   1.707E+02  -9.320E+00  -9.932E+01
```

Interpreted SPICE results

$E_R = 19.43\ V \angle 80.68^o$

$E_L = 19.05\ V \angle 170.7^o$

$E_C = 137.5\ V \angle -9.320^o$

$I = 77.73\ mA \angle -99.32^o$ (*actual phase angle* = 80.68^o)

The SPICE simulation shows our hand-calculated results to be accurate.

As you can see, there is little difference between AC circuit analysis and DC circuit analysis, except that all quantities of voltage, current, and resistance (actually, *impedance*) must be handled in complex rather than scalar form so as to account for phase angle. This is good, since it means all you've learned about DC electric circuits applies to what you're learning here. The only exception to this consistency is the calculation of power, which is so unique that it deserves a chapter devoted to that subject alone.

- **REVIEW:**
- Impedances of any kind add in series: $Z_{Total} = Z_1 + Z_2 + \ldots Z_n$
- Although impedances add in series, the total impedance for a circuit containing both inductance and capacitance may be less than one or more of the individual impedances, because series inductive and capacitive impedances tend to cancel each other out. This may lead to voltage drops across components exceeding the supply voltage!
- All rules and laws of DC circuits apply to AC circuits, so long as values are expressed in complex form rather than scalar. The only exception to this principle is the calculation of *power*, which is very different for AC.

5.3 Parallel R, L, and C

We can take the same components from the series circuit and rearrange them into a parallel configuration for an easy example circuit: (Figure 5.5)

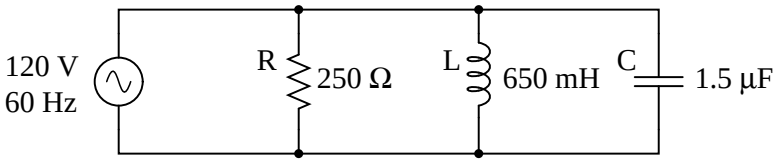


Figure 5.5: *Example R, L, and C parallel circuit.*

The fact that these components are connected in parallel instead of series now has absolutely no effect on their individual impedances. So long as the power supply is the same

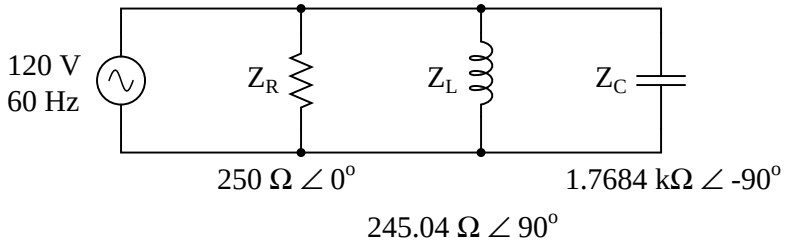


Figure 5.6: *Example R, L, and C parallel circuit with impedances replacing component values.*

frequency as before, the inductive and capacitive reactances will not have changed at all: (Figure 5.6)

With all component values expressed as impedances (Z), we can set up an analysis table and proceed as in the last example problem, except this time following the rules of parallel circuits instead of series:

	R	L	C	Total	
E				**120 + j0** **120** ∠ 0°	Volts
I					Amps
Z	**250 + j0** **250** ∠ 0°	**0 + j245.04** **245.04** ∠ 90°	**0 - j1.7684k** **1.7684k** ∠ -90°		Ohms

Knowing that voltage is shared equally by all components in a parallel circuit, we can transfer the figure for total voltage to all component columns in the table:

	R	L	C	Total	
E	**120 + j0** **120** ∠ 0°	**120 + j0** **120** ∠ 0°	**120 + j0** **120** ∠ 0°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I					Amps
Z	250 + j0 250 ∠ 0°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°		Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits:
$E_{total} = E_R = E_L = E_C$

Now, we can apply Ohm's Law (I=E/Z) vertically in each column to determine current through each component:

	R	L	C	Total	
E	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	**480m + j0** **480** ∠ 0°	**0 - j489.71m** **489.71m** ∠ -90°	**0 + j67.858m** **67.858m** ∠ 90°		Amps
Z	250 + j0 250 ∠ 0°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°		Ohms
	Ohm's Law $I = \frac{E}{Z}$	*Ohm's Law* $I = \frac{E}{Z}$	*Ohm's Law* $I = \frac{E}{Z}$		

There are two strategies for calculating total current and total impedance. First, we could calculate total impedance from all the individual impedances in parallel ($Z_{Total} = 1/(1/Z_R + 1/Z_L + 1/Z_C)$), and then calculate total current by dividing source voltage by total impedance (I=E/Z). However, working through the parallel impedance equation with complex numbers is no easy task, with all the reciprocations (1/Z). This is especially true if you're unfortunate enough not to have a calculator that handles complex numbers and are forced to do it all by hand (reciprocate the individual impedances in polar form, then convert them all to rectangular form for addition, then convert back to polar form for the final inversion, then invert). The second way to calculate total current and total impedance is to add up all the branch currents to arrive at total current (total current in a parallel circuit – AC or DC – is equal to the sum of the branch currents), then use Ohm's Law to determine total impedance from total voltage and total current (Z=E/I).

	R	L	C	Total	
E	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	480m + j0 480 ∠ 0°	0 - j489.71m 489.71m ∠ -90°	0 + j67.858m 67.858m ∠ 90°	**480m - j421.85m** **639.03m** ∠ -41.311°	Amps
Z	250 + j0 250 ∠ 0°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	**141.05 + j123.96** **187.79** ∠ 41.311°	Ohms

Either method, performed properly, will provide the correct answers. Let's try analyzing this circuit with SPICE and see what happens: (Figure 5.7)

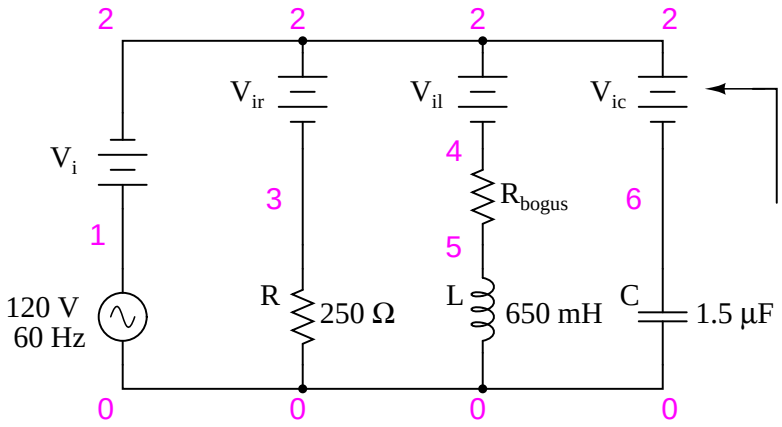


Figure 5.7: *Example parallel R, L, and C SPICE circuit. Battery symbols are "dummy" voltage sources for SPICE to use as current measurement points. All are set to 0 volts.*

```
ac r-l-c circuit
v1 1 0 ac 120 sin
vi 1 2 ac 0
vir 2 3 ac 0
vil 2 4 ac 0
rbogus 4 5 1e-12
vic 2 6 ac 0
r1 3 0 250
l1 5 0 650m
c1 6 0 1.5u
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac i(vi) i(vir) i(vil) i(vic)
.print ac ip(vi) ip(vir) ip(vil) ip(vic)
.end
```

```
freq          i(vi)       i(vir)      i(vil)      i(vic)
6.000E+01     6.390E-01   4.800E-01   4.897E-01   6.786E-02
freq          ip(vi)      ip(vir)     ip(vil)     ip(vic)
6.000E+01    -4.131E+01   0.000E+00  -9.000E+01   9.000E+01
```

Interpreted SPICE results

I_{total} = 639.0 mA $\angle$ -41.31^o

I_R = 480 mA $\angle$ 0^o

I_L = 489.7 mA $\angle$ -90^o

I_C = 67.86 mA $\angle$ 90^o

It took a little bit of trickery to get SPICE working as we would like on this circuit (installing "dummy" voltage sources in each branch to obtain current figures and installing the "dummy" resistor in the inductor branch to prevent a direct inductor-to-voltage source loop, which SPICE cannot tolerate), but we did get the proper readings. Even more than that, by installing the dummy voltage sources (current meters) in the proper directions, we were able to avoid that idiosyncrasy of SPICE of printing current figures 180^o out of phase. This way, our current phase readings came out to exactly match our hand calculations.

5.4 Series-parallel R, L, and C

Now that we've seen how series and parallel AC circuit analysis is not fundamentally different than DC circuit analysis, it should come as no surprise that series-parallel analysis would be the same as well, just using complex numbers instead of scalar to represent voltage, current, and impedance.

Take this series-parallel circuit for example: (Figure 5.8)

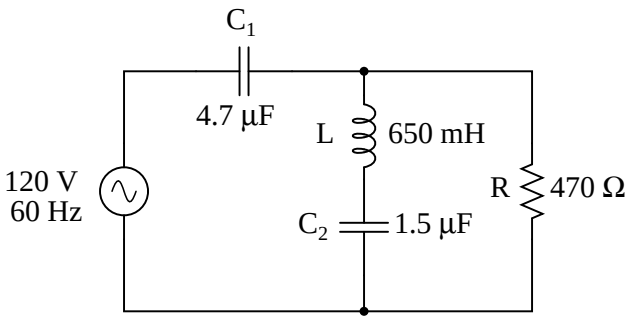


Figure 5.8: *Example series-parallel R, L, and C circuit.*

The first order of business, as usual, is to determine values of impedance (Z) for all components based on the frequency of the AC power source. To do this, we need to first determine values of reactance (X) for all inductors and capacitors, then convert reactance (X) and resistance (R) figures into proper impedance (Z) form:

Reactances and Resistances:

$X_{C1} = \dfrac{1}{2\pi f C_1}$ $X_{C1} = \dfrac{1}{(2)(\pi)(60\text{ Hz})(4.7\ \mu\text{F})}$ $X_{C1} = 564.38\ \Omega$	$X_L = 2\pi fL$ $X_L = (2)(\pi)(60\text{ Hz})(650\text{ mH})$ $X_L = 245.04\ \Omega$
$X_{C2} = \dfrac{1}{2\pi f C_2}$ $X_{C2} = \dfrac{1}{(2)(\pi)(60\text{ Hz})(1.5\ \mu\text{F})}$ $X_{C2} = 1.7684\ \text{k}\Omega$	$R = 470\ \Omega$

$Z_{C1} = 0 - j564.38\ \Omega \quad or \quad 564.38\ \Omega \angle -90^o$

$Z_L = 0 + j245.04\ \Omega \quad or \quad 245.04\ \Omega \angle 90^o$

$Z_{C2} = 0 - j1.7684\text{k}\ \Omega \quad or \quad 1.7684\ \text{k}\Omega \angle -90^o$

$Z_R = 470 + j0\ \Omega \quad or \quad 470\ \Omega \angle 0^o$

Now we can set up the initial values in our table:

	C_1	L	C_2	R	Total	
E					120 + j0 $120 \angle 0^o$	Volts
I						Amps
Z	0 - j564.38 $564.38 \angle -90^o$	0 + j245.04 $245.04 \angle 90^o$	0 - j1.7684k $1.7684\text{k} \angle -90^o$	470 + j0 $470 \angle 0^o$		Ohms

Being a series-parallel *combination* circuit, we must reduce it to a total impedance in more than one step. The first step is to combine L and C_2 as a series combination of impedances, by adding their impedances together. Then, that impedance will be combined in parallel with the impedance of the resistor, to arrive at another combination of impedances. Finally, that quantity will be added to the impedance of C_1 to arrive at the total impedance.

In order that our table may follow all these steps, it will be necessary to add additional columns to it so that each step may be represented. Adding more columns horizontally to the table shown above would be impractical for formatting reasons, so I will place a new row of columns underneath, each column designated by its respective component combination:

	$L -- C_2$	$R // (L -- C_2)$	*Total* $C_1 -- [R // (L -- C_2)]$	
E				Volts
I				Amps
Z				Ohms

Calculating these new (combination) impedances will require complex addition for series combinations, and the "reciprocal" formula for complex impedances in parallel. This time, there is no avoidance of the reciprocal formula: the required figures can be arrived at no other way!

	$L -- C_2$	$R // (L -- C_2)$	*Total* $C_1 -- [R // (L -- C_2)]$	
E			$120 + j0$ $120 \angle 0^o$	Volts
I				Amps
Z	**$0 - j1.5233k$** **$1.5233k \angle -90^o$**	**$429.15 - j132.41$** **$449.11 \angle -17.147^o$**	**$429.15 - j696.79$** **$818.34 \angle -58.371^o$**	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:
$Z_{L--C2} = Z_L + Z_{C2}$

Rule of parallel circuits:

$$Z_{R//(L--C2)} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{Z_R} + \frac{1}{Z_{L--C2}}}$$

Rule of series circuits:
$Z_{total} = Z_{C1} + Z_{R//(L--C2)}$

Seeing as how our second table contains a column for "Total," we can safely discard that column from the first table. This gives us one table with four columns and another table with three columns.

Now that we know the total impedance (818.34 Ω $\angle$ -58.371^o) and the total voltage (120 volts $\angle$ 0^o), we can apply Ohm's Law (I=E/Z) vertically in the "Total" column to arrive at a figure for total current:

	$L -- C_2$	$R // (L -- C_2)$	*Total* $C_1 -- [R // (L -- C_2)]$	
E			120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I			**76.899m + j124.86m** **146.64m** ∠ 58.371°	Amps
Z	0 - j1.5233k 1.5233k ∠ -90°	429.15 - j132.41 449.11 ∠ -17.147°	429.15 - j696.79 818.34 ∠ -58.371°	Ohms

Ohm's Law

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

At this point we ask ourselves the question: are there any components or component combinations which share either the total voltage or the total current? In this case, both C_1 and the parallel combination $R//(L--C_2)$ share the same (total) current, since the total impedance is composed of the two sets of impedances in series. Thus, we can transfer the figure for total current into both columns:

	C_1	L	C_2	R	
E					Volts
I	**76.899m + j124.86m** **146.64m** ∠ 58.371°				Amps
Z	0 - j564.38 564.38 ∠ -90°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	470 + j0 470 ∠ 0°	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:

$I_{total} = I_{C1} = I_{R//(L--C2)}$

	$L -- C_2$	$R // (L -- C_2)$	*Total* $C_1 -- [R // (L -- C_2)]$	
E			120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I		**76.899m + j124.86m** **146.64m** ∠ 58.371°	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°	Amps
Z	0 - j1.5233k 1.5233k ∠ -90°	429.15 - j132.41 449.11 ∠ -17.147°	429.15 - j696.79 818.34 ∠ -58.371°	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:

$I_{total} = I_{C1} = I_{R//(L--C2)}$

Now, we can calculate voltage drops across C_1 and the series-parallel combination of $R//(L--C_2)$ using Ohm's Law (E=IZ) vertically in those table columns:

	C_1	L	C_2	R	
E	**70.467 - j43.400** **82.760** $\angle$ -31.629°				Volts
I	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m $\angle$ 58.371°				Amps
Z	0 - j564.38 564.38 $\angle$ -90°	0 + j245.04 245.04 $\angle$ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k $\angle$ -90°	470 + j0 470 $\angle$ 0°	Ohms

Ohm's Law
E = IZ

	$L -- C_2$	$R // (L -- C_2)$	*Total* $C_1 -- [R // (L -- C_2)]$	
E		**49.533 + j43.400** **65.857** $\angle$ 41.225°	120 + j0 120 $\angle$ 0°	Volts
I		76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m $\angle$ 58.371°	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m $\angle$ 58.371°	Amps
Z	0 - j1.5233k 1.5233k $\angle$ -90°	429.15 - j132.41 449.11 $\angle$ -17.147°	429.15 - j696.79 818.34 $\angle$ -58.371°	Ohms

Ohm's Law
E = IZ

A quick double-check of our work at this point would be to see whether or not the voltage drops across C_1 and the series-parallel combination of R//(L−−C_2) indeed add up to the total. According to Kirchhoff's Voltage Law, they should!

E_{total} *should be equal to* $E_{C1} + E_{R//(L--C2)}$

$$\begin{array}{r} 70.467 - j43.400 \text{ V} \\ + \ 49.533 + j43.400 \text{ V} \\ \hline 120 + j0 \text{ V} \end{array} \longleftarrow \textit{Indeed, it is!}$$

That last step was merely a precaution. In a problem with as many steps as this one has, there is much opportunity for error. Occasional cross-checks like that one can save a person a lot of work and unnecessary frustration by identifying problems prior to the final step of the problem.

After having solved for voltage drops across C_1 and the combination R//(L−−C_2), we again ask ourselves the question: what other components share the same voltage or current? In this case, the resistor (R) and the combination of the inductor and the second capacitor (L−−C_2) share the same voltage, because those sets of impedances are in parallel with each other. Therefore, we can transfer the voltage figure just solved for into the columns for R and L−−C_2:

	C_1	L	C_2	R	
E	70.467 - j43.400 82.760 ∠ -31.629°			**49.533 + j43.400** **65.857** ∠ 41.225°	Volts
I	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°				Amps
Z	0 - j564.38 564.38 ∠ -90°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	470 + j0 470 ∠ 0°	Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits:

$E_{R//(L--C2)} = E_R = E_{L--C2}$

	L -- C_2	R // (L -- C_2)	*Total* C_1 -- [R // (L -- C_2)]	
E	**49.533 + j43.400** **65.857** ∠ 41.225°	49.533 + j43.400 65.857 ∠ 41.225°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I		76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°	Amps
Z	0 - j1.5233k 1.5233k ∠ -90°	429.15 - j132.41 449.11 ∠ -17.147°	429.15 - j696.79 818.34 ∠ -58.371°	Ohms

Rule of parallel circuits:

$E_{R//(L--C2)} = E_R = E_{L--C2}$

Now we're all set for calculating current through the resistor and through the series combination $L--C_2$. All we need to do is apply Ohm's Law (I=E/Z) vertically in both of those columns:

	C_1	L	C_2	R	
E	70.467 - j43.400 82.760 ∠ -31.629°			49.533 + j43.400 65.857 ∠ 41.225°	Volts
I	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°			**105.39m + j92.341m** **140.12m** ∠ 41.225°	Amps
Z	0 - j564.38 564.38 ∠ -90°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	470 + j0 470 ∠ 0°	Ohms

Ohm's Law

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

	$L -- C_2$	$R // (L -- C_2)$	*Total* $C_1 -- [R // (L -- C_2)]$	
E	49.533 + j43.400 65.857 ∠ 41.225°	49.533 + j43.400 65.857 ∠ 41.225°	120 + j0 120 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	**-28.490m + j32.516m** **43.232m** ∠ 131.22°	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°	Amps
Z	0 - j1.5233k 1.5233k ∠ -90°	429.15 - j132.41 449.11 ∠ -17.147°	429.15 - j696.79 818.34 ∠ -58.371°	Ohms

Ohm's Law

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

Another quick double-check of our work at this point would be to see if the current figures for $L--C_2$ and R add up to the total current. According to Kirchhoff's Current Law, they should:

$I_{R//(L--C2)}$ *should be equal to* $I_R + I_{(L--C2)}$

$$\begin{array}{r} 105.39m + j92.341m \\ + \quad -28.490m + j32.516m \\ \hline 76.899m + j124.86m \end{array} \longleftarrow \textit{Indeed, it is!}$$

Since the L and C_2 are connected in series, and since we know the current through their series combination impedance, we can distribute that current figure to the L and C_2 columns following the rule of series circuits whereby series components share the same current:

	C_1	L	C_2	R	
E	70.467 - j43.400 82.760 ∠ -31.629°			49.533 + j43.400 65.857 ∠ 41.225°	Volts
I	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°	**-28.490m + j32.516m** **43.232m** ∠ 131.22°	**-28.490m + j32.516m** **43.232m** ∠ 131.22°	105.39m + j92.341m 140.12m ∠ 41.225°	Amps
Z	0 - j564.38 564.38 ∠ -90°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	470 + j0 470 ∠ 0°	Ohms

Rule of series circuits:
$I_{L--C2} = I_L = I_{C2}$

With one last step (actually, two calculations), we can complete our analysis table for this circuit. With impedance and current figures in place for L and C_2, all we have to do is apply Ohm's Law (E=IZ) vertically in those two columns to calculate voltage drops.

	C_1	L	C_2	R	
E	70.467 - j43.400 82.760 ∠ -31.629°	**-7.968 - j6.981** **10.594** ∠ 221.22°	**57.501 + j50.382** **76.451** ∠ 41.225	49.533 + j43.400 65.857 ∠ 41.225°	Volts
I	76.899m + j124.86m 146.64m ∠ 58.371°	-28.490m + j32.516m 43.232m ∠ 131.22°	-28.490m + j32.516m 43.232m ∠ 131.22°	105.39m + j92.341m 140.12m ∠ 41.225°	Amps
Z	0 - j564.38 564.38 ∠ -90°	0 + j245.04 245.04 ∠ 90°	0 - j1.7684k 1.7684k ∠ -90°	470 + j0 470 ∠ 0°	Ohms
		Ohm's Law E = IZ	*Ohm's Law* E = IZ		

Now, let's turn to SPICE for a computer verification of our work:

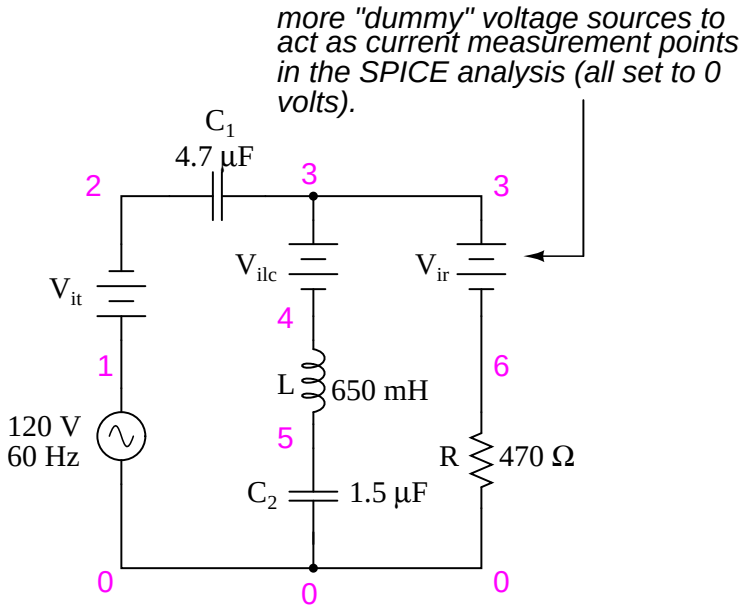


Figure 5.9: *Example series-parallel R, L, C SPICE circuit.*

Each line of the SPICE output listing gives the voltage, voltage phase angle, current, and current phase angle for C_1, L, C_2, and R, in that order. As you can see, these figures do concur with our hand-calculated figures in the circuit analysis table.

As daunting a task as series-parallel AC circuit analysis may appear, it must be emphasized that there is nothing really new going on here besides the use of complex numbers. Ohm's Law (in its new form of E=IZ) still holds true, as do the voltage and current Laws of Kirchhoff. While there is more potential for human error in carrying out the necessary complex number calculations, the basic principles and techniques of series-parallel circuit reduction are exactly the same.

```
ac series-parallel r-l-c circuit
v1 1 0 ac 120 sin
vit 1 2 ac 0
vilc 3 4 ac 0
vir 3 6 ac 0
c1 2 3 4.7u
l 4 5 650m
c2 5 0 1.5u
r 6 0 470
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,3) vp(2,3) i(vit) ip(vit)
.print ac v(4,5) vp(4,5) i(vilc) ip(vilc)
.print ac v(5,0) vp(5,0) i(vilc) ip(vilc)
.print ac v(6,0) vp(6,0) i(vir) ip(vir)
.end


freq          v(2,3)      vp(2,3)     i(vit)      ip(vit)     C1
6.000E+01     8.276E+01  -3.163E+01   1.466E-01   5.837E+01


freq          v(4,5)      vp(4,5)     i(vilc)     ip(vilc)    L
6.000E+01     1.059E+01  -1.388E+02   4.323E-02   1.312E+02


freq          v(5)        vp(5)       i(vilc)     ip(vilc)    C2
6.000E+01     7.645E+01   4.122E+01   4.323E-02   1.312E+02


freq          v(6)        vp(6)       i(vir)      ip(vir)     R
6.000E+01     6.586E+01   4.122E+01   1.401E-01   4.122E+01
```

- **REVIEW:**
- Analysis of series-parallel AC circuits is much the same as series-parallel DC circuits. The only substantive difference is that all figures and calculations are in complex (not scalar) form.
- It is important to remember that before series-parallel reduction (simplification) can begin, you must determine the impedance (Z) of every resistor, inductor, and capacitor. That way, all component values will be expressed in common terms (Z) instead of an incompatible mix of resistance (R), inductance (L), and capacitance (C).

5.5 Susceptance and Admittance

In the study of DC circuits, the student of electricity comes across a term meaning the opposite of resistance: *conductance*. It is a useful term when exploring the mathematical formula for parallel resistances: $R_{parallel} = 1 / (1/R_1 + 1/R_2 + . . . 1/R_n)$. Unlike resistance, which diminishes as more parallel components are included in the circuit, conductance simply adds. Mathematically, conductance is the reciprocal of resistance, and each 1/R term in the "parallel resistance formula" is actually a conductance.

Whereas the term "resistance" denotes the amount of opposition to flowing electrons in a circuit, "conductance" represents the ease of which electrons may flow. Resistance is the measure of how much a circuit *resists* current, while conductance is the measure of how much a circuit *conducts* current. Conductance used to be measured in the unit of *mhos*, or "ohms" spelled backward. Now, the proper unit of measurement is *Siemens*. When symbolized in a mathematical formula, the proper letter to use for conductance is "G".

Reactive components such as inductors and capacitors oppose the flow of electrons with respect to time, rather than with a constant, unchanging friction as resistors do. We call this time-based opposition, *reactance*, and like resistance we also measure it in the unit of *ohms*.

As conductance is the complement of resistance, there is also a complementary expression of reactance, called *susceptance*. Mathematically, it is equal to 1/X, the reciprocal of reactance. Like conductance, it used to be measured in the unit of mhos, but now is measured in Siemens. Its mathematical symbol is "B", unfortunately the same symbol used to represent magnetic flux density.

The terms "reactance" and "susceptance" have a certain linguistic logic to them, just like resistance and conductance. While reactance is the measure of how much a circuit *reacts* against change in current over time, susceptance is the measure of how much a circuit is *susceptible* to conducting a changing current.

If one were tasked with determining the total effect of several parallel-connected, pure reactances, one could convert each reactance (X) to a susceptance (B), then add susceptances rather than diminish reactances: $X_{parallel} = 1/(1/X_1 + 1/X_2 + . . . 1/X_n)$. Like conductances (G), susceptances (B) add in parallel and diminish in series. Also like conductance, susceptance is a scalar quantity.

When resistive and reactive components are interconnected, their combined effects can no longer be analyzed with scalar quantities of resistance (R) and reactance (X). Likewise, figures of conductance (G) and susceptance (B) are most useful in circuits where the two types of opposition are not mixed, i.e. either a purely resistive (conductive) circuit, or a purely reactive (susceptive) circuit. In order to express and quantify the effects of mixed resistive and reactive components, we had to have a new term: *impedance*, measured in ohms and symbolized by the letter "Z".

To be consistent, we need a complementary measure representing the reciprocal of impedance. The name for this measure is *admittance*. Admittance is measured in (guess what?) the unit of Siemens, and its symbol is "Y". Like impedance, admittance is a complex quantity rather than scalar. Again, we see a certain logic to the naming of this new term: while impedance is a measure of how much alternating current is *impeded* in a circuit, admittance is a measure of how much current is *admitted*.

Given a scientific calculator capable of handling complex number arithmetic in both polar and rectangular forms, you may never have to work with figures of susceptance (B) or admit-

tance (Y). Be aware, though, of their existence and their meanings.

5.6 Summary

With the notable exception of calculations for power (P), all AC circuit calculations are based on the same general principles as calculations for DC circuits. The only significant difference is that fact that AC calculations use complex quantities while DC calculations use scalar quantities. Ohm's Law, Kirchhoff's Laws, and even the network theorems learned in DC still hold true for AC when voltage, current, and impedance are all expressed with complex numbers. The same troubleshooting strategies applied toward DC circuits also hold for AC, although AC can certainly be more difficult to work with due to phase angles which aren't registered by a handheld multimeter.

Power is another subject altogether, and will be covered in its own chapter in this book. Because power in a reactive circuit is both absorbed and released – not just dissipated as it is with resistors – its mathematical handling requires a more direct application of trigonometry to solve.

When faced with analyzing an AC circuit, the first step in analysis is to convert all resistor, inductor, and capacitor component values into impedances (Z), based on the frequency of the power source. After that, proceed with the same steps and strategies learned for analyzing DC circuits, using the "new" form of Ohm's Law: E=IZ ; I=E/Z ; and Z=E/I

Remember that only the calculated figures expressed in *polar* form apply directly to empirical measurements of voltage and current. Rectangular notation is merely a useful tool for us to add and subtract complex quantities together. Polar notation, where the magnitude (length of vector) directly relates to the magnitude of the voltage or current measured, and the angle directly relates to the phase shift in degrees, is the most practical way to express complex quantities for circuit analysis.

5.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 6

RESONANCE

Contents

6.1 An electric pendulum

Capacitors store energy in the form of an electric field, and electrically manifest that stored energy as a potential: *static voltage*. Inductors store energy in the form of a magnetic field, and electrically manifest that stored energy as a kinetic motion of electrons: *current*. Capacitors and inductors are flip-sides of the same reactive coin, storing and releasing energy in complementary modes. When these two types of reactive components are directly connected together, their complementary tendencies to store energy will produce an unusual result.

If either the capacitor or inductor starts out in a charged state, the two components will exchange energy between them, back and forth, creating their own AC voltage and current cycles. If we assume that both components are subjected to a sudden application of voltage (say, from a momentarily connected battery), the capacitor will very quickly charge and the inductor will oppose change in current, leaving the capacitor in the charged state and the inductor in the discharged state: (Figure 6.1)

The capacitor will begin to discharge, its voltage decreasing. Meanwhile, the inductor will begin to build up a "charge" in the form of a magnetic field as current increases in the circuit: (Figure 6.2)

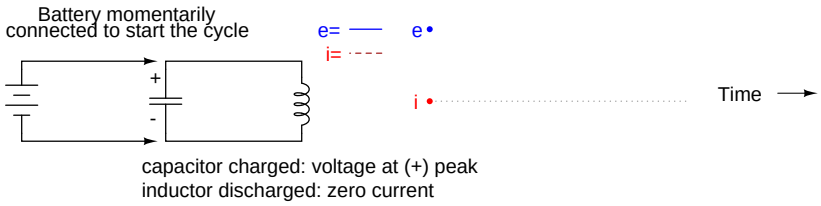


Figure 6.1: *Capacitor charged: voltage at (+) peak, inductor discharged: zero current.*

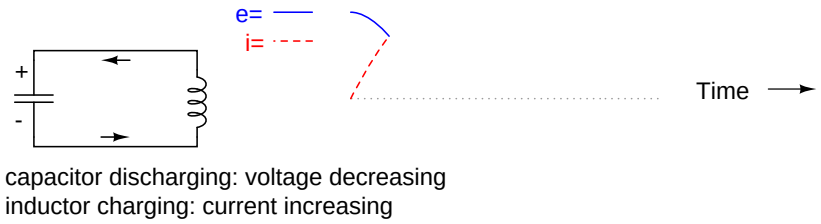


Figure 6.2: *Capacitor discharging: voltage decreasing, Inductor charging: current increasing.*

The inductor, still charging, will keep electrons flowing in the circuit until the capacitor has been completely discharged, leaving zero voltage across it: (Figure 6.3)

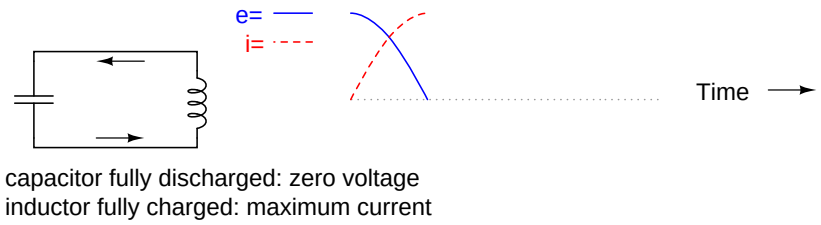


Figure 6.3: *Capacitor fully discharged: zero voltage, inductor fully charged: maximum current.*

The inductor will maintain current flow even with no voltage applied. In fact, it will generate a voltage (like a battery) in order to keep current in the same direction. The capacitor, being the recipient of this current, will begin to accumulate a charge in the opposite polarity as before: (Figure 6.4)

When the inductor is finally depleted of its energy reserve and the electrons come to a halt, the capacitor will have reached full (voltage) charge in the opposite polarity as when it started: (Figure 6.5)

Now we're at a condition very similar to where we started: the capacitor at full charge and zero current in the circuit. The capacitor, as before, will begin to discharge through the inductor, causing an increase in current (in the opposite direction as before) and a decrease in voltage as it depletes its own energy reserve: (Figure 6.6)

Eventually the capacitor will discharge to zero volts, leaving the inductor fully charged with

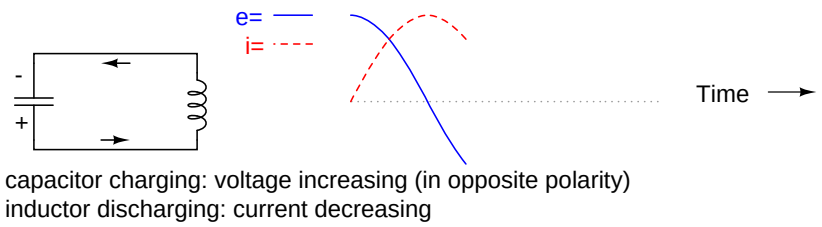


Figure 6.4: *Capacitor charging: voltage increasing (in opposite polarity), inductor discharging: current decreasing.*

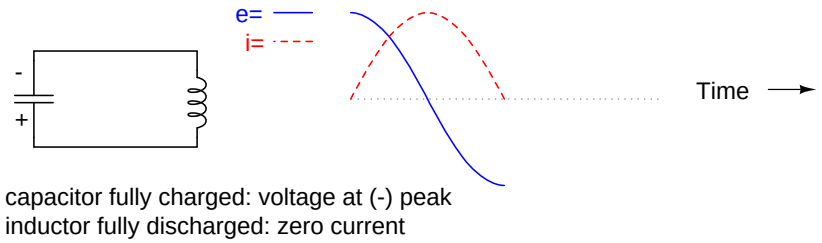


Figure 6.5: *Capacitor fully charged: voltage at (-) peak, inductor fully discharged: zero current.*

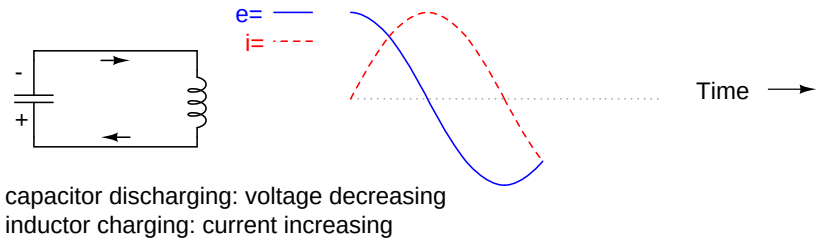


Figure 6.6: *Capacitor discharging: voltage decreasing, inductor charging: current increasing.*

full current through it: (Figure 6.7)

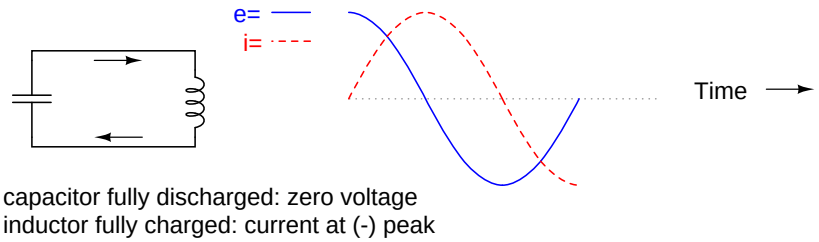


Figure 6.7: *Capacitor fully discharged: zero voltage, inductor fully charged: current at (-) peak.*

The inductor, desiring to maintain current in the same direction, will act like a source again, generating a voltage like a battery to continue the flow. In doing so, the capacitor will begin to charge up and the current will decrease in magnitude: (Figure 6.8)

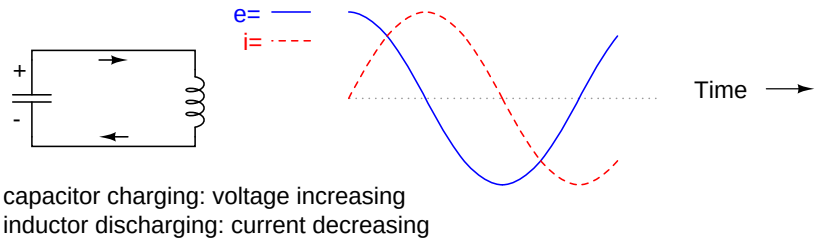


Figure 6.8: *Capacitor charging: voltage increasing, inductor discharging: current decreasing.*

Eventually the capacitor will become fully charged again as the inductor expends all of its energy reserves trying to maintain current. The voltage will once again be at its positive peak and the current at zero. This completes one full cycle of the energy exchange between the capacitor and inductor: (Figure 6.9)

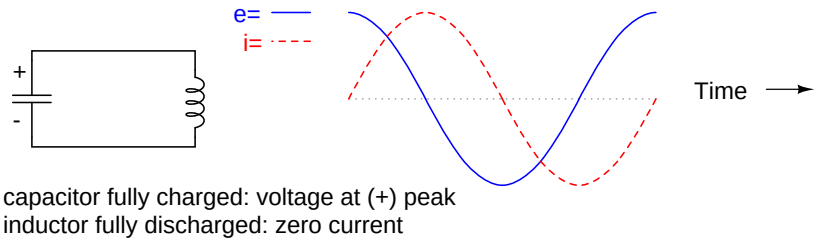


Figure 6.9: *Capacitor fully charged: voltage at (+) peak, inductor fully discharged: zero current.*

This oscillation will continue with steadily decreasing amplitude due to power losses from stray resistances in the circuit, until the process stops altogether. Overall, this behavior is akin to that of a pendulum: as the pendulum mass swings back and forth, there is a transformation

of energy taking place from kinetic (motion) to potential (height), in a similar fashion to the way energy is transferred in the capacitor/inductor circuit back and forth in the alternating forms of current (kinetic motion of electrons) and voltage (potential electric energy).

At the peak height of each swing of a pendulum, the mass briefly stops and switches directions. It is at this point that potential energy (height) is at a maximum and kinetic energy (motion) is at zero. As the mass swings back the other way, it passes quickly through a point where the string is pointed straight down. At this point, potential energy (height) is at zero and kinetic energy (motion) is at maximum. Like the circuit, a pendulum's back-and-forth oscillation will continue with a steadily dampened amplitude, the result of air friction (resistance) dissipating energy. Also like the circuit, the pendulum's position and velocity measurements trace two sine waves (90 degrees out of phase) over time: (Figure 6.10)

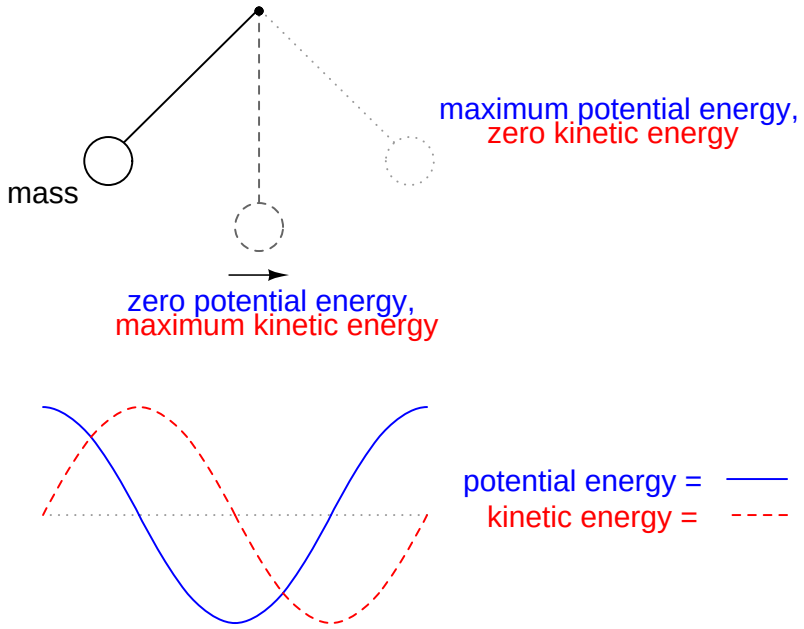


Figure 6.10: *Pendelum transfers energy between kinetic and potential energy as it swings low to high.*

In physics, this kind of natural sine-wave oscillation for a mechanical system is called *Simple Harmonic Motion* (often abbreviated as "SHM"). The same underlying principles govern both the oscillation of a capacitor/inductor circuit and the action of a pendulum, hence the similarity in effect. It is an interesting property of any pendulum that its periodic time is governed by the length of the string holding the mass, and not the weight of the mass itself. That is why a pendulum will keep swinging at the same frequency as the oscillations decrease in amplitude. The oscillation rate is independent of the *amount* of energy stored in it.

The same is true for the capacitor/inductor circuit. The rate of oscillation is strictly dependent on the sizes of the capacitor and inductor, not on the amount of voltage (or current) at each respective peak in the waves. The ability for such a circuit to store energy in the form of

oscillating voltage and current has earned it the name *tank circuit*. Its property of maintaining a single, natural frequency regardless of how much or little energy is actually being stored in it gives it special significance in electric circuit design.

However, this tendency to oscillate, or *resonate*, at a particular frequency is not limited to circuits exclusively designed for that purpose. In fact, nearly any AC circuit with a combination of capacitance and inductance (commonly called an "LC circuit") will tend to manifest unusual effects when the AC power source frequency approaches that natural frequency. This is true regardless of the circuit's intended purpose.

If the power supply frequency for a circuit exactly matches the natural frequency of the circuit's LC combination, the circuit is said to be in a state of *resonance*. The unusual effects will reach maximum in this condition of resonance. For this reason, we need to be able to predict what the resonant frequency will be for various combinations of L and C, and be aware of what the effects of resonance are.

- **REVIEW:**
- A capacitor and inductor directly connected together form something called a *tank circuit*, which oscillates (or *resonates*) at one particular frequency. At that frequency, energy is alternately shuffled between the capacitor and the inductor in the form of alternating voltage and current 90 degrees out of phase with each other.
- When the power supply frequency for an AC circuit exactly matches that circuit's natural oscillation frequency as set by the L and C components, a condition of *resonance* will have been reached.

6.2 Simple parallel (tank circuit) resonance

A condition of resonance will be experienced in a tank circuit (Figure 6.11) when the reactances of the capacitor and inductor are equal to each other. Because inductive reactance increases with increasing frequency and capacitive reactance decreases with increasing frequency, there will only be one frequency where these two reactances will be equal.

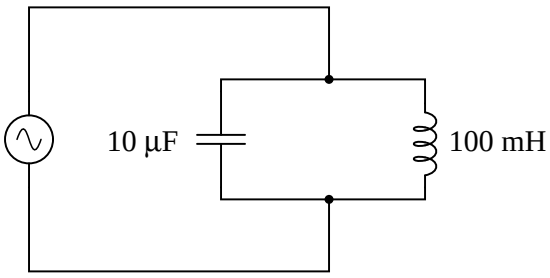


Figure 6.11: *Simple parallel resonant circuit (tank circuit).*

In the above circuit, we have a 10 μF capacitor and a 100 mH inductor. Since we know the equations for determining the reactance of each at a given frequency, and we're looking for that

point where the two reactances are equal to each other, we can set the two reactance formulae equal to each other and solve for frequency algebraically:

$$X_L = 2\pi fL \qquad X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

. . . setting the two equal to each other, representing a condition of equal reactance (resonance) . . .

$$2\pi fL = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

Multiplying both sides by f eliminates the f term in the denominator of the fraction . . .

$$2\pi f^2 L = \frac{1}{2\pi C}$$

Dividing both sides by $2\pi L$ leaves f^2 by itself on the left-hand side of the equation . . .

$$f^2 = \frac{1}{2\pi 2\pi LC}$$

Taking the square root of both sides of the equation leaves f by itself on the left side . . .

$$f = \frac{\sqrt{1}}{\sqrt{2\pi 2\pi LC}}$$

. . . simplifying . . .

$$\boxed{f = \frac{1}{2\pi \sqrt{LC}}}$$

So there we have it: a formula to tell us the resonant frequency of a tank circuit, given the values of inductance (L) in Henrys and capacitance (C) in Farads. Plugging in the values of L and C in our example circuit, we arrive at a resonant frequency of 159.155 Hz.

What happens at resonance is quite interesting. With capacitive and inductive reactances equal to each other, the total impedance increases to infinity, meaning that the tank circuit draws no current from the AC power source! We can calculate the individual impedances of the 10 μF capacitor and the 100 mH inductor and work through the parallel impedance formula to demonstrate this mathematically:

$$X_L = 2\pi fL$$

$$X_L = (2)(\pi)(159.155 \text{ Hz})(100 \text{ mH})$$

$$X_L = 100\ \Omega$$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{(2)(\pi)(159.155 \text{ Hz})(10\ \mu F)}$$

$$X_C = 100\ \Omega$$

As you might have guessed, I chose these component values to give resonance impedances that were easy to work with (100 Ω even). Now, we use the parallel impedance formula to see what happens to total Z:

$$Z_{parallel} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{Z_L} + \frac{1}{Z_C}}$$

$$Z_{parallel} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{100\ \Omega \angle 90^o} + \frac{1}{100\ \Omega \angle -90^o}}$$

$$Z_{parallel} = \frac{1}{0.01 \angle -90^o + 0.01 \angle 90^o}$$

$$Z_{parallel} = \frac{1}{0} \quad \textit{Undefined!}$$

We can't divide any number by zero and arrive at a meaningful result, but we can say that the result approaches a value of *infinity* as the two parallel impedances get closer to each other. What this means in practical terms is that, the total impedance of a tank circuit is infinite (behaving as an *open circuit*) at resonance. We can plot the consequences of this over a wide power supply frequency range with a short SPICE simulation: (Figure 6.12)

The 1 pico-ohm (1 pΩ) resistor is placed in this SPICE analysis to overcome a limitation of SPICE: namely, that it cannot analyze a circuit containing a direct inductor-voltage source loop. (Figure 6.12) A very low resistance value was chosen so as to have minimal effect on circuit behavior.

This SPICE simulation plots circuit current over a frequency range of 100 to 200 Hz in twenty even steps (100 and 200 Hz inclusive). Current magnitude on the graph increases from

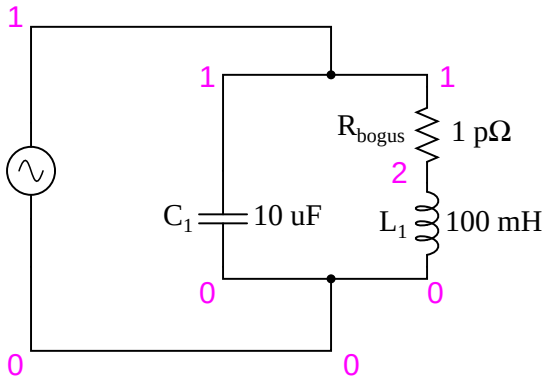


Figure 6.12: *Resonant circuit sutitable for SPICE simulation.*

```
freq       i(v1)       3.162E-04   1.000E-03   3.162E-03  1.0E-02
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
1.000E+02  9.632E-03 .       .           .           .           *
1.053E+02  8.506E-03 .       .           .           .         *  .
1.105E+02  7.455E-03 .       .           .           .       *    .
1.158E+02  6.470E-03 .       .           .           .     *      .
1.211E+02  5.542E-03 .       .           .           .   *        .
1.263E+02  4.663E-03 .       .           .           . *          .
1.316E+02  3.828E-03 .       .           .           .*           .
1.368E+02  3.033E-03 .       .           .          *.            .
1.421E+02  2.271E-03 .       .           .        *   .           .
1.474E+02  1.540E-03 .       .           .     *      .           .
1.526E+02  8.373E-04 .       .         * .           .           .
1.579E+02  1.590E-04 . *     .           .           .           .
1.632E+02  4.969E-04 .       .    *      .           .           .
1.684E+02  1.132E-03 .       .           . *         .           .
1.737E+02  1.749E-03 .       .           .     *     .           .
1.789E+02  2.350E-03 .       .           .        *  .           .
1.842E+02  2.934E-03 .       .           .          *.           .
1.895E+02  3.505E-03 .       .           .           .*          .
1.947E+02  4.063E-03 .       .           .           .   *       .
2.000E+02  4.609E-03 .       .           .           .     *     .
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

```
tank circuit frequency sweep
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
c1 1 0 10u
* rbogus is necessary to eliminate a direct loop
* between v1 and l1, which SPICE can't handle
rbogus 1 2 1e-12
l1 2 0 100m
.ac lin 20 100 200
.plot ac i(v1)
.end
```

left to right, while frequency increases from top to bottom. The current in this circuit takes a sharp dip around the analysis point of 157.9 Hz, which is the closest analysis point to our predicted resonance frequency of 159.155 Hz. It is at this point that total current from the power source falls to zero.

The plot above is produced from the above spice circuit file (*.cir), the command (.plot) in the last line producing the text plot on any printer or terminal. A better looking plot is produced by the "nutmeg" graphical post-processor, part of the spice package. The above spice (*.cir) does not require the plot (.plot) command, though it does no harm. The following commands produce the plot below: (Figure 6.13)

```
spice -b -r resonant.raw resonant.cir
( -b batch mode, -r raw file, input is resonant.cir)
nutmeg resonant.raw
```

From the nutmeg prompt:

```
>setplot ac1    (setplot {enter} for list of plots)
>display        (for list of signals)
>plot mag(v1#branch)
(magnitude of complex current vector v1#branch)
```

Incidentally, the graph output produced by this SPICE computer analysis is more generally known as a *Bode plot*. Such graphs plot amplitude or phase shift on one axis and frequency on the other. The steepness of a Bode plot curve characterizes a circuit's "frequency response," or how sensitive it is to changes in frequency.

- **REVIEW:**
- Resonance occurs when capacitive and inductive reactances are equal to each other.
- For a tank circuit with no resistance (R), resonant frequency can be calculated with the following formula:
- $$f_{resonant} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$
- The total impedance of a parallel LC circuit approaches infinity as the power supply frequency approaches resonance.

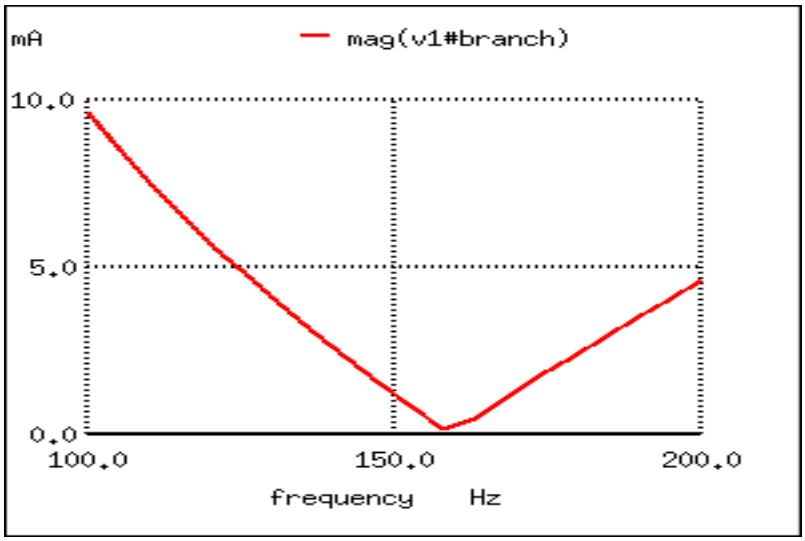


Figure 6.13: *Nutmeg produces plot of current I(v1) for parallel resonant circuit.*

- A *Bode plot* is a graph plotting waveform amplitude or phase on one axis and frequency on the other.

6.3 Simple series resonance

A similar effect happens in series inductive/capacitive circuits. (Figure 6.14) When a state of resonance is reached (capacitive and inductive reactances equal), the two impedances cancel each other out and the total impedance drops to zero!

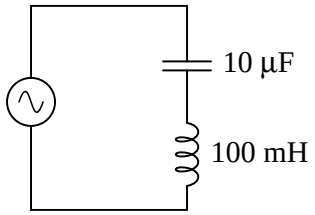


Figure 6.14: *Simple series resonant circuit.*

At 159.155 Hz:

$Z_L = 0 + j100\ \Omega$ $Z_C = 0 - j100\ \Omega$

$Z_{series} = Z_L + Z_C$

$Z_{series} = (0 + j100\ \Omega) + (0 - j100\ \Omega)$

$Z_{series} = 0\ \Omega$

With the total series impedance equal to 0 Ω at the resonant frequency of 159.155 Hz, the result is a *short circuit* across the AC power source at resonance. In the circuit drawn above, this would not be good. I'll add a small resistor (Figure 6.15) in series along with the capacitor and the inductor to keep the maximum circuit current somewhat limited, and perform another SPICE analysis over the same range of frequencies: (Figure 6.16)

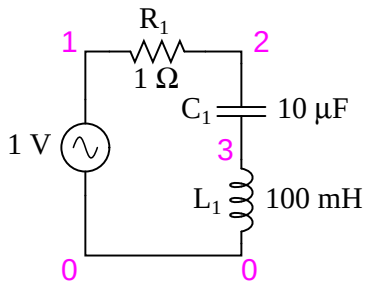


Figure 6.15: *Series resonant circuit suitable for SPICE.*

```
series lc circuit
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 1
c1 2 3 10u
l1 3 0 100m
.ac lin 20 100 200
.plot ac i(v1)
.end
```

As before, circuit current amplitude increases from bottom to top, while frequency increases from left to right. (Figure 6.16) The peak is still seen to be at the plotted frequency point of 157.9 Hz, the closest analyzed point to our predicted resonance point of 159.155 Hz. This would suggest that our resonant frequency formula holds as true for simple series LC circuits as it does for simple parallel LC circuits, which is the case:

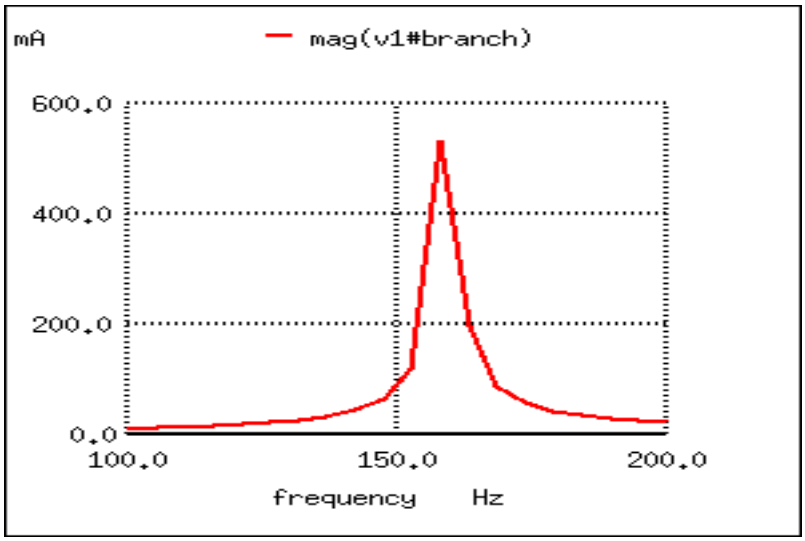


Figure 6.16: *Series resonant circuit plot of current I(v1).*

$$f_{resonant} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$

A word of caution is in order with series LC resonant circuits: because of the high currents which may be present in a series LC circuit at resonance, it is possible to produce dangerously high voltage drops across the capacitor and the inductor, as each component possesses significant impedance. We can edit the SPICE netlist in the above example to include a plot of voltage across the capacitor and inductor to demonstrate what happens: (Figure 6.17)

```
series lc circuit
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 1
c1 2 3 10u
l1 3 0 100m
.ac lin 20 100 200
.plot ac i(v1) v(2,3) v(3)
.end
```

According to SPICE, voltage across the capacitor and inductor reach a peak somewhere around 70 volts! This is quite impressive for a power supply that only generates 1 volt. Needless to say, caution is in order when experimenting with circuits such as this. This SPICE voltage is lower than the expected value due to the small (20) number of steps in the AC analysis statement (.ac lin 20 100 200). What is the expected value?

Given: f_r = 159.155 Hz, L = 100mH, R = 1

$X_L = 2\pi fL = 2\pi(159.155)(100mH) = j100\Omega$

$X_C = 1/(2\pi fC) = 1/(2\pi(159.155)(10\mu F)) = -j100\Omega$

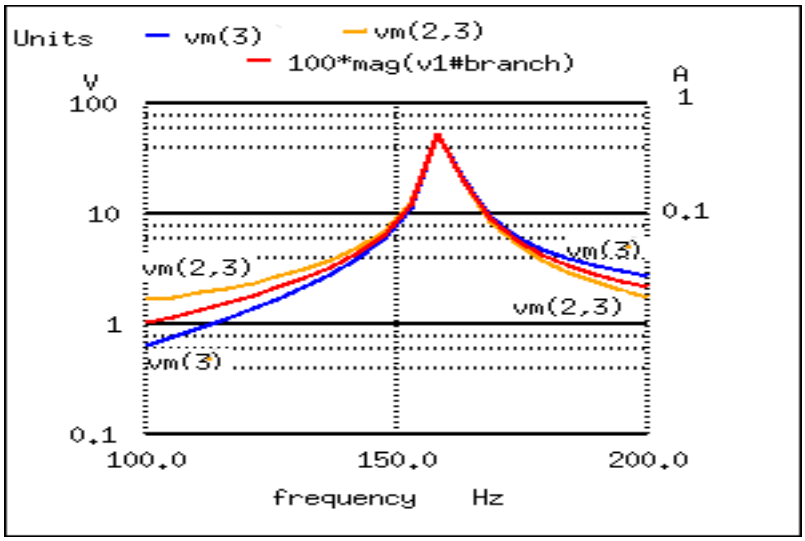


Figure 6.17: *Plot of Vc=V(2,3) 70 V peak, V_L=v(3) 70 V peak, I=I(V1#branch) 0.532 A peak*

$Z = 1 + j100 - j100 = 1\ \Omega$
$I = V/Z = (1\ V)/(1\ \Omega) = 1\ A$
$V_L = IZ = (1\ A)(j100) = j100\ V$
$V_C = IZ = (1\ A)(-j100) = -j100\ V$
$V_R = IR = (1\ A)(1) = 1\ V$
$V_{total} = V_L + V_C + V_R$
$V_{total} = j100 - j100 + 1 = 1\ V$

The expected values for capacitor and inductor voltage are 100 V. This voltage will stress these components to that level and they must be rated accordingly. However, these voltages are out of phase and cancel yielding a total voltage across all three components of only 1 V, the applied voltage. The ratio of the capacitor (or inductor) voltage to the applied voltage is the "Q" factor.

$Q = V_L/V_R = V_C/V_R$

- **REVIEW:**
- The total impedance of a series LC circuit approaches zero as the power supply frequency approaches resonance.
- The same formula for determining resonant frequency in a simple tank circuit applies to simple series circuits as well.
- Extremely high voltages can be formed across the individual components of series LC circuits at resonance, due to high current flows and substantial individual component impedances.

6.4 Applications of resonance

So far, the phenomenon of resonance appears to be a useless curiosity, or at most a nuisance to be avoided (especially if series resonance makes for a short-circuit across our AC voltage source!). However, this is not the case. Resonance is a very valuable property of reactive AC circuits, employed in a variety of applications.

One use for resonance is to establish a condition of stable frequency in circuits designed to produce AC signals. Usually, a parallel (tank) circuit is used for this purpose, with the capacitor and inductor directly connected together, exchanging energy between each other. Just as a pendulum can be used to stabilize the frequency of a clock mechanism's oscillations, so can a tank circuit be used to stabilize the electrical frequency of an AC *oscillator* circuit. As was noted before, the frequency set by the tank circuit is solely dependent upon the values of L and C, and not on the magnitudes of voltage or current present in the oscillations: (Figure 6.18)

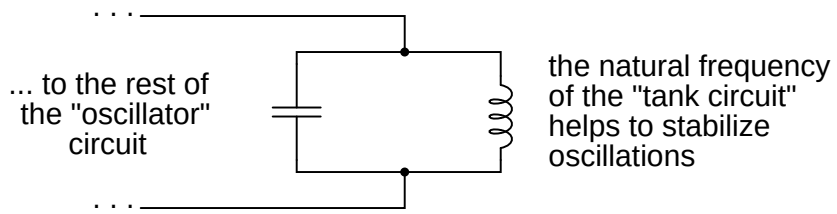


Figure 6.18: *Resonant circuit serves as stable frequency source.*

Another use for resonance is in applications where the effects of greatly increased or decreased impedance at a particular frequency is desired. A resonant circuit can be used to "block" (present high impedance toward) a frequency or range of frequencies, thus acting as a sort of frequency "filter" to strain certain frequencies out of a mix of others. In fact, these particular circuits are called *filters*, and their design constitutes a discipline of study all by itself: (Figure 6.19)

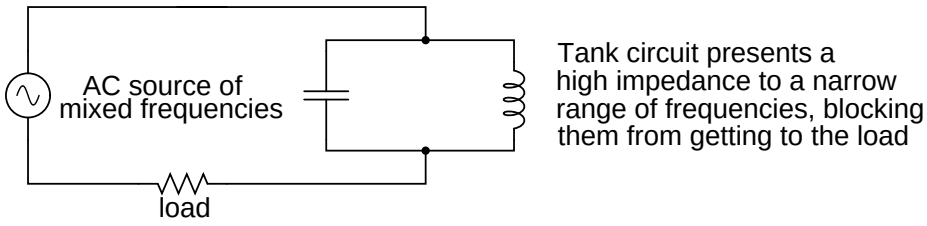


Figure 6.19: *Resonant circuit serves as filter.*

In essence, this is how analog radio receiver tuner circuits work to filter, or select, one station frequency out of the mix of different radio station frequency signals intercepted by the antenna.

- **REVIEW:**

- Resonance can be employed to maintain AC circuit oscillations at a constant frequency, just as a pendulum can be used to maintain constant oscillation speed in a timekeeping mechanism.

- Resonance can be exploited for its impedance properties: either dramatically increasing or decreasing impedance for certain frequencies. Circuits designed to screen certain frequencies out of a mix of different frequencies are called *filters*.

6.5 Resonance in series-parallel circuits

In simple reactive circuits with little or no resistance, the effects of radically altered impedance will manifest at the resonance frequency predicted by the equation given earlier. In a parallel (tank) LC circuit, this means infinite impedance at resonance. In a series LC circuit, it means zero impedance at resonance:

$$f_{resonant} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$

However, as soon as significant levels of resistance are introduced into most LC circuits, this simple calculation for resonance becomes invalid. We'll take a look at several LC circuits with added resistance, using the same values for capacitance and inductance as before: 10 μF and 100 mH, respectively. According to our simple equation, the resonant frequency should be 159.155 Hz. Watch, though, where current reaches maximum or minimum in the following SPICE analyses:

Parallel LC with resistance in series with L

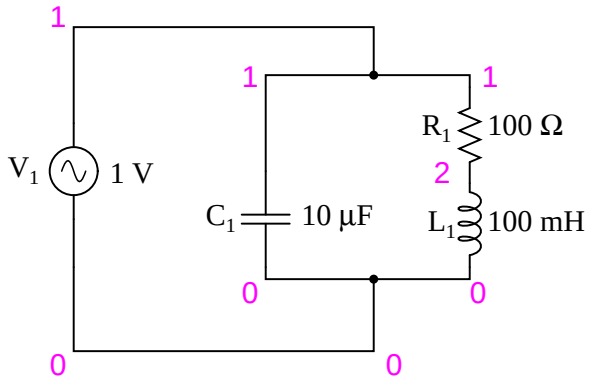


Figure 6.20: *Parallel LC circuit with resistance in series with L.*

Here, an extra resistor (R_{bogus}) (Figure 6.22)is necessary to prevent SPICE from encountering trouble in analysis. SPICE can't handle an inductor connected directly in parallel with any voltage source or any other inductor, so the addition of a series resistor is necessary to "break

```
resonant circuit
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
c1 1 0 10u
r1 1 2 100
l1 2 0 100m
.ac lin 20 100 200
.plot ac i(v1)
.end
```

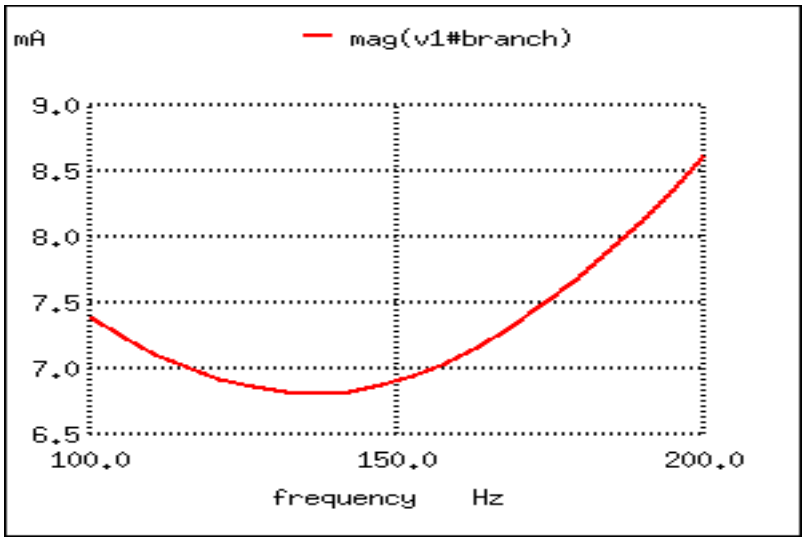


Figure 6.21: *Resistance in series with L produces minimum current at 136.8 Hz instead of calculated 159.2 Hz*

```
Minimum current at 136.8 Hz instead of 159.2 Hz!
```

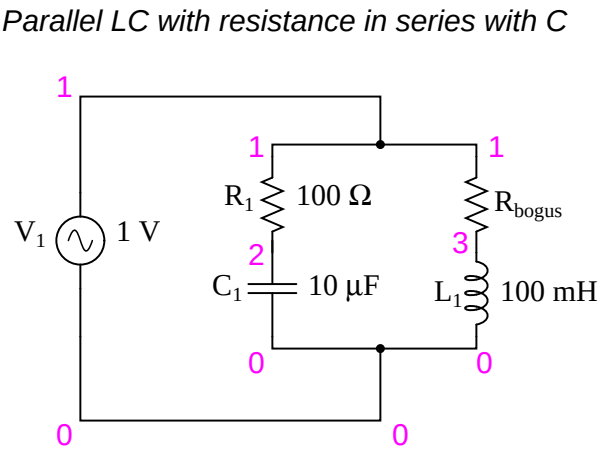


Figure 6.22: *Parallel LC with resistance in serieis with C.*

up" the voltage source/inductor loop that would otherwise be formed. This resistor is chosen to be a *very* low value for minimum impact on the circuit's behavior.

```
resonant circuit
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 100
c1 2 0 10u
rbogus 1 3 1e-12
l1 3 0 100m
.ac lin 20 100 400
.plot ac i(v1)
.end

Minimum current at roughly 180 Hz instead of 159.2 Hz!
```

Switching our attention to series LC circuits, (Figure 6.24) we experiment with placing significant resistances in parallel with either L or C. In the following series circuit examples, a 1 Ω resistor (R_1) is placed in series with the inductor and capacitor to limit total current at resonance. The "extra" resistance inserted to influence resonant frequency effects is the 100 Ω resistor, R_2. The results are shown in (Figure 6.25).

And finally, a series LC circuit with the significant resistance in parallel with the capacitor. (Figure 6.26) The shifted resonance is shown in (Figure 6.27)

The tendency for added resistance to skew the point at which impedance reaches a maximum or minimum in an LC circuit is called *antiresonance*. The astute observer will notice a pattern between the four SPICE examples given above, in terms of how resistance affects the resonant peak of a circuit:

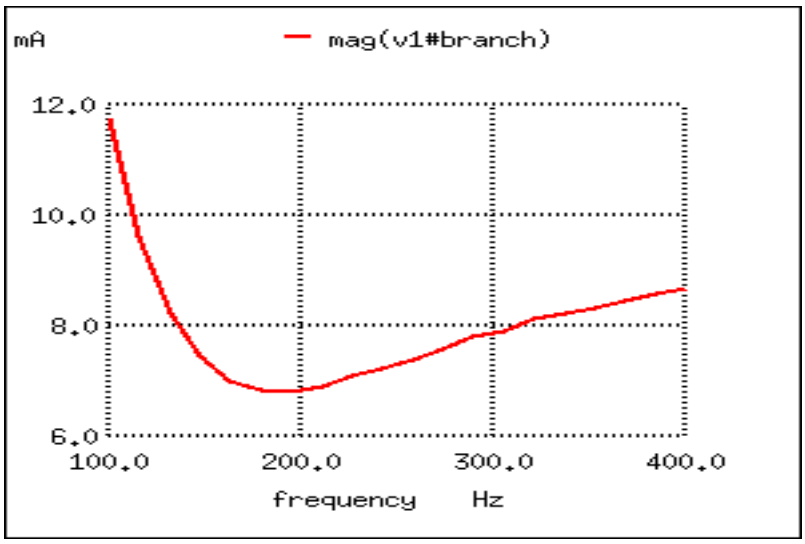


Figure 6.23: *Resistance in series with C shifts minimum current from calculated 159.2 Hz to roughly 180 Hz.*

Series LC with resistance in parallel with L

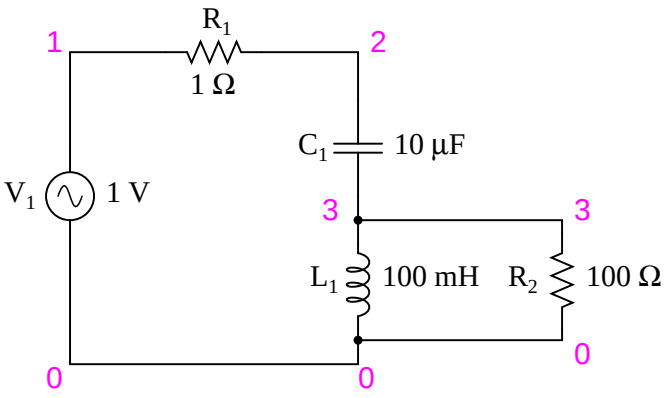


Figure 6.24: *Series LC resonant circuit with resistance in parallel with L.*

```
resonant circuit
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 1
c1 2 3 10u
l1 3 0 100m
r2 3 0 100
.ac lin 20 100 400
.plot ac i(v1)
.end
```

```
Maximum current at roughly 178.9 Hz instead of 159.2 Hz!
```

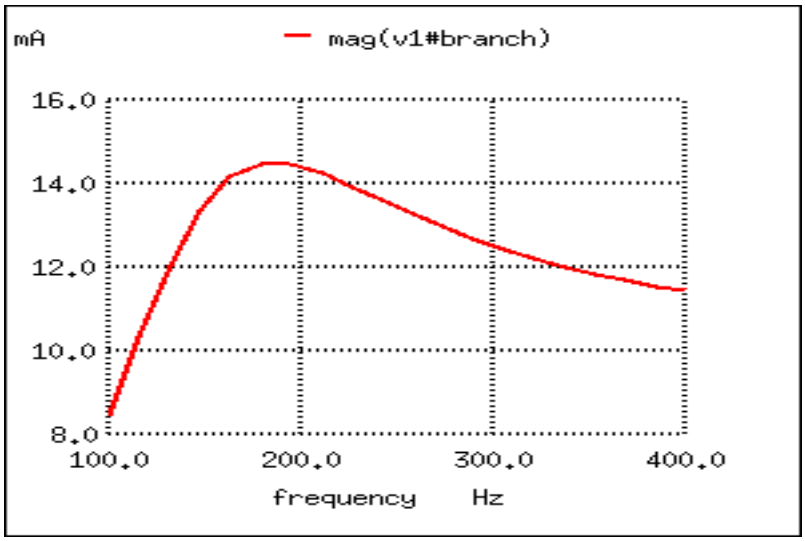


Figure 6.25: *Series resonant circuit with resistance in parallel with L shifts maximum current from 159.2 Hz to roughly 180 Hz.*

```
resonant circuit
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 1
c1 2 3 10u
r2 2 3 100
l1 3 0 100m
.ac lin 20 100 200
.plot ac i(v1)
.end
```

```
Maximum current at 136.8 Hz instead of 159.2 Hz!
```

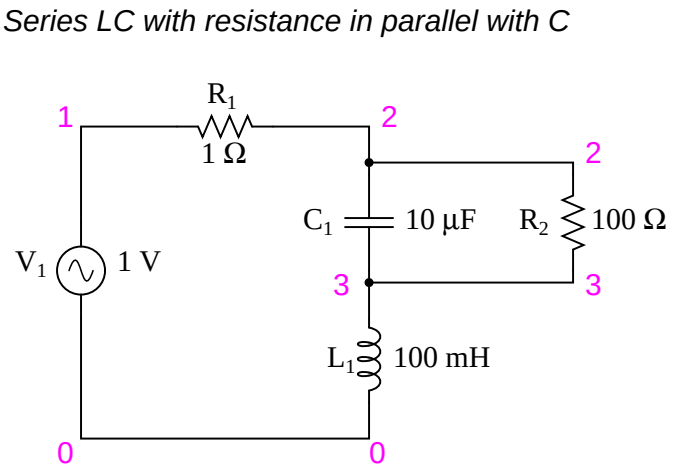


Figure 6.26: *Series LC resonant circuit with rsistance in parallel with C.*

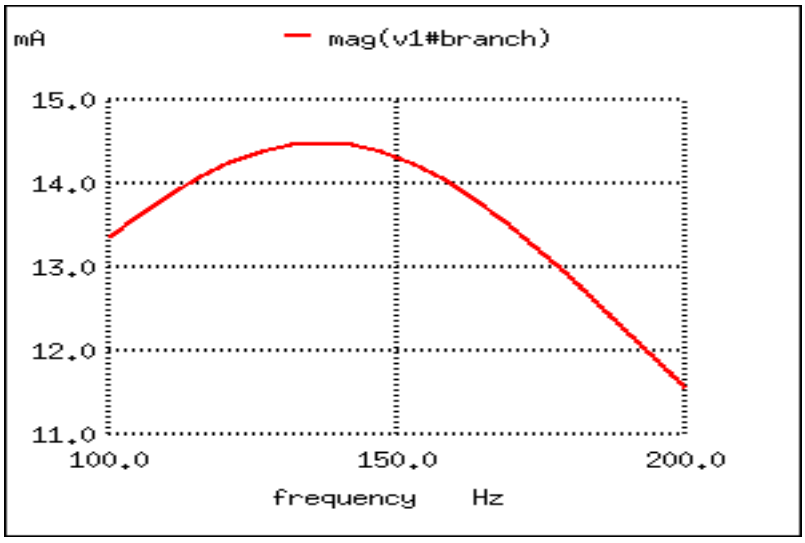


Figure 6.27: *Resistance in parallel with C in series resonant circuit shifts curreent maximum from calculated 159.2 Hz to about 136.8 Hz.*

- **Parallel ("tank") LC circuit:**
- R in series with L: resonant frequency shifted *down*
- R in series with C: resonant frequency shifted *up*

- **Series LC circuit:**
- R in parallel with L: resonant frequency shifted *up*
- R in parallel with C: resonant frequency shifted *down*

Again, this illustrates the complementary nature of capacitors and inductors: how resistance in series with one creates an antiresonance effect equivalent to resistance in parallel with the other. If you look even closer to the four SPICE examples given, you'll see that the frequencies are shifted by the *same amount*, and that the shape of the complementary graphs are mirror-images of each other!

Antiresonance is an effect that resonant circuit designers must be aware of. The equations for determining antiresonance "shift" are complex, and will not be covered in this brief lesson. It should suffice the beginning student of electronics to understand that the effect exists, and what its general tendencies are.

Added resistance in an LC circuit is no academic matter. While it is possible to manufacture capacitors with negligible unwanted resistances, inductors are typically plagued with substantial amounts of resistance due to the long lengths of wire used in their construction. What is more, the resistance of wire tends to increase as frequency goes up, due to a strange phenomenon known as the *skin effect* where AC current tends to be excluded from travel through the very center of a wire, thereby reducing the wire's effective cross-sectional area. Thus, inductors not only have resistance, but *changing, frequency-dependent* resistance at that.

As if the resistance of an inductor's wire weren't enough to cause problems, we also have to contend with the "core losses" of iron-core inductors, which manifest themselves as added resistance in the circuit. Since iron is a conductor of electricity as well as a conductor of magnetic flux, changing flux produced by alternating current through the coil will tend to induce electric currents in the core itself (*eddy currents*). This effect can be thought of as though the iron core of the transformer were a sort of secondary transformer coil powering a resistive load: the less-than-perfect conductivity of the iron metal. This effects can be minimized with laminated cores, good core design and high-grade materials, but never completely eliminated.

One notable exception to the rule of circuit resistance causing a resonant frequency shift is the case of series resistor-inductor-capacitor ("RLC") circuits. So long as *all* components are connected in series with each other, the resonant frequency of the circuit will be unaffected by the resistance. (Figure 6.28) The resulting plot is shown in (Figure 6.29).

Maximum current at 159.2 Hz once again!

Note that the peak of the current graph (Figure 6.29) has not changed from the earlier series LC circuit (the one with the 1 Ω token resistance in it), even though the resistance is now 100 times greater. The only thing that has changed is the "sharpness" of the curve. Obviously, this circuit does not resonate as strongly as one with less series resistance (it is said to be "less selective"), but at least it has the same natural frequency!

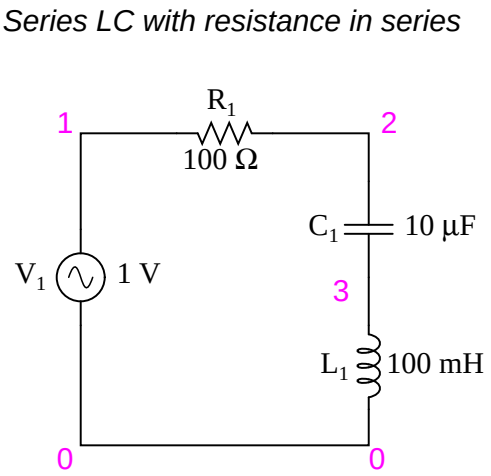


Figure 6.28: *Series LC with resistance in series.*

```
series rlc circuit
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 100
c1 2 3 10u
l1 3 0 100m
.ac lin 20 100 200
.plot ac i(v1)
.end
```

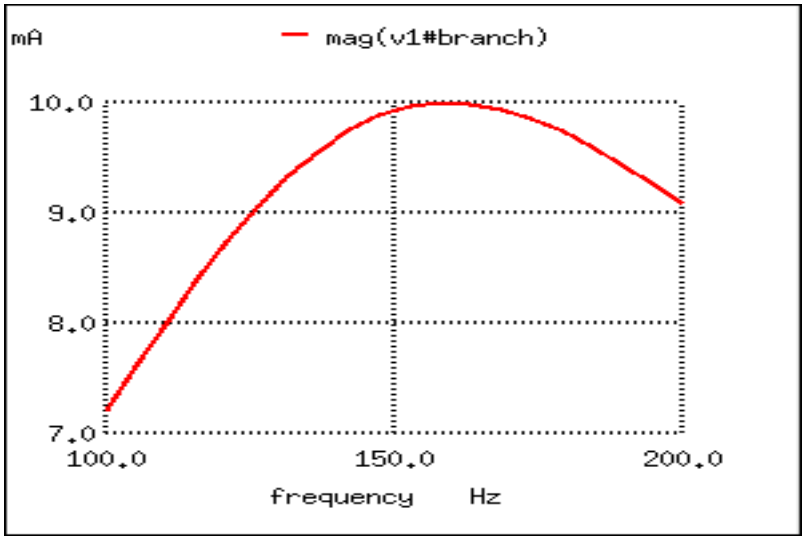


Figure 6.29: *Resistance in series resonant circuit leaves current maximum at calculated 159.2 Hz, broadening the curve.*

It is noteworthy that antiresonance has the effect of dampening the oscillations of free-running LC circuits such as tank circuits. In the beginning of this chapter we saw how a capacitor and inductor connected directly together would act something like a pendulum, exchanging voltage and current peaks just like a pendulum exchanges kinetic and potential energy. In a perfect tank circuit (no resistance), this oscillation would continue forever, just as a frictionless pendulum would continue to swing at its resonant frequency forever. But frictionless machines are difficult to find in the real world, and so are lossless tank circuits. Energy lost through resistance (or inductor core losses or radiated electromagnetic waves or . . .) in a tank circuit will cause the oscillations to decay in amplitude until they are no more. If enough energy losses are present in a tank circuit, it will fail to resonate at all.

Antiresonance's dampening effect is more than just a curiosity: it can be used quite effectively to eliminate *unwanted* oscillations in circuits containing stray inductances and/or capacitances, as almost all circuits do. Take note of the following L/R time delay circuit: (Figure 6.30)

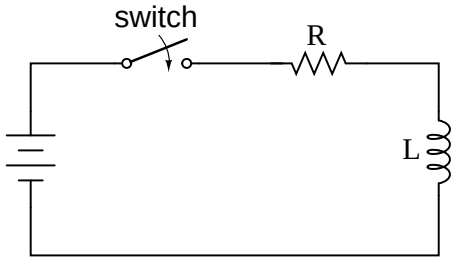


Figure 6.30: *L/R time delay circuit*

The idea of this circuit is simple: to "charge" the inductor when the switch is closed. The rate of inductor charging will be set by the ratio L/R, which is the time constant of the circuit in seconds. However, if you were to build such a circuit, you might find unexpected oscillations (AC) of voltage across the inductor when the switch is closed. (Figure 6.31) Why is this? There's no capacitor in the circuit, so how can we have resonant oscillation with just an inductor, resistor, and battery?

All inductors contain a certain amount of stray capacitance due to turn-to-turn and turn-to-core insulation gaps. Also, the placement of circuit conductors may create stray capacitance. While clean circuit layout is important in eliminating much of this stray capacitance, there will always be some that you cannot eliminate. If this causes resonant problems (unwanted AC oscillations), added resistance may be a way to combat it. If resistor R is large enough, it will cause a condition of antiresonance, dissipating enough energy to prohibit the inductance and stray capacitance from sustaining oscillations for very long.

Interestingly enough, the principle of employing resistance to eliminate unwanted resonance is one frequently used in the design of mechanical systems, where any moving object with mass is a potential resonator. A very common application of this is the use of shock absorbers in automobiles. Without shock absorbers, cars would bounce wildly at their resonant frequency after hitting any bump in the road. The shock absorber's job is to introduce a strong antiresonant effect by dissipating energy hydraulically (in the same way that a resistor dissi-

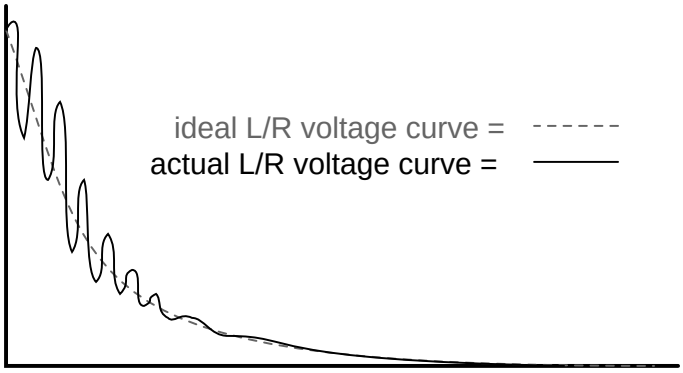


Figure 6.31: *Inductor ringing due to resonance with stray capacitance.*

pates energy electrically).

- **REVIEW:**
- Added resistance to an LC circuit can cause a condition known as *antiresonance*, where the peak impedance effects happen at frequencies other than that which gives equal capacitive and inductive reactances.
- Resistance inherent in real-world inductors can contribute greatly to conditions of antiresonance. One source of such resistance is the *skin effect*, caused by the exclusion of AC current from the center of conductors. Another source is that of *core losses* in iron-core inductors.
- In a simple series LC circuit containing resistance (an "RLC" circuit), resistance does *not* produce antiresonance. Resonance still occurs when capacitive and inductive reactances are equal.

6.6 Q and bandwidth of a resonant circuit

The *Q, quality factor,* of a resonant circuit is a measure of the "goodness" or quality of a resonant circuit. A higher value for this figure of merit correspondes to a more narrow bandwith, which is desirable in many applications. More formally, Q is the ration of power stored to power dissipated in the circuit reactance and resistance, respectively:

$$Q = P_{stored}/P_{dissipated} = I^2X/I^2R$$
$$Q = X/R$$

where: X = Capacitive or Inductive reactance at resonance
R = Series resistance.

This formula is applicable to series resonant circuits, and also parallel resonant ciruits if the resistance is in series with the inductor. This is the case in practical applications, as we

are mostly concerned with the resistance of the inductor limiting the Q. Note: Some text may show X and R interchanged in the "Q" formula for a parallel resonant circuit. This is correct for a large value of R in parallel with C and L. Our formula is correct for a small R in series with L.

A practical application of "Q" is that voltage across L or C in a series resonant circuit is Q times total applied voltage. In a parallel resonant circuit, current through L or C is Q times the total applied current.

6.6.1 Series resonant circuits

A series resonant circuit looks like a resistance at the resonant frequency. (Figure 6.32) Since the definition of resonance is X_L=X_C, the reactive components cancel, leaving only the resistance to contribute to the impedance. The impedance is also at a minimum at resonance. (Figure 6.33) Below the resonant frequency, the series resonant circuit looks capacitive since the impedance of the capacitor increases to a value greater than the decreasing inducitve reactance, leaving a net capacitive value. Above resonance, the inductive rectance increases, capacitive reactance decreases, leaving a net inductive component.

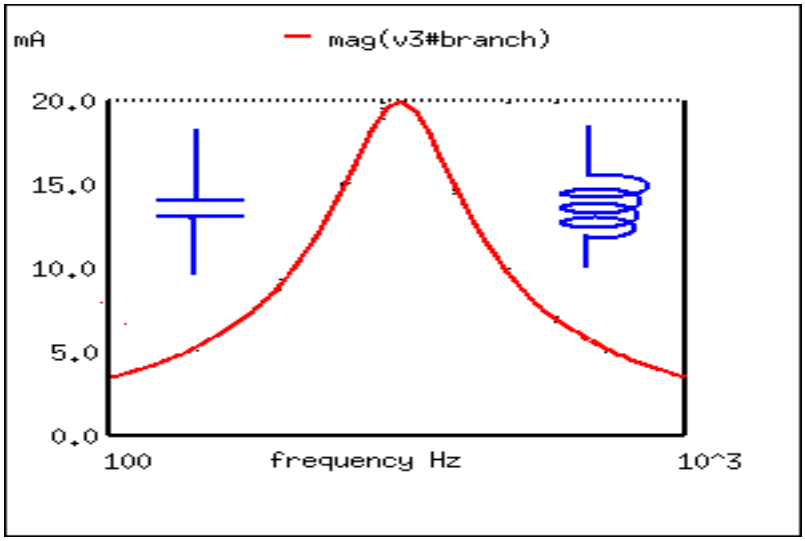


Figure 6.32: *At resonance the series resonant circuit appears purely resistive. Below resonance it looks capacitive. Above resonance it appears inductive.*

Current is maximum at resonance, impedance at a minumum. Current is set by the value of the resistance. Above or below resonance, impedance increases.

The resonant current peak may be changed by varying the series resistor, which changes the Q. (Figure 6.34) This also affects the broadness of the curve. A low resistance, high Q circuit has a narrow bandwidth, as compared to a high resistance, low Q circuit. Bandwidth in terms of Q and resonant frequency:

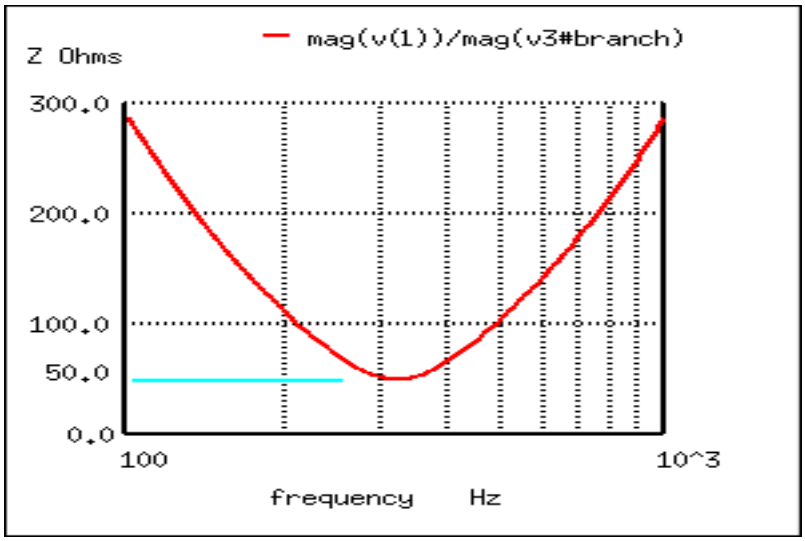


Figure 6.33: *Impedance is at a minumum at resonance in a series resonant circuit.*

$BW = f_c/Q$
Where f_c = resonant frquency
Q = quality factor

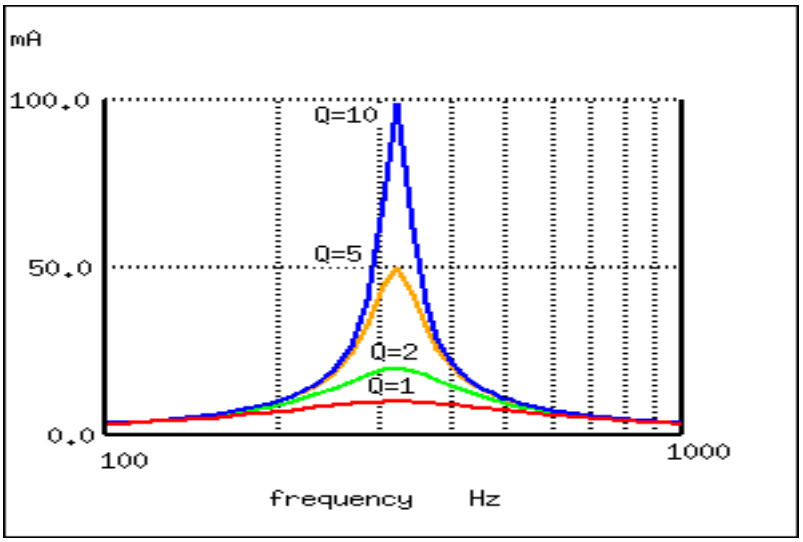


Figure 6.34: *A high Q resonant circuit has a narrow bandwidth as compared to a low Q*

Bandwidth is measured between the 0.707 current amplitude points. The 0.707 current points correspond to the half power points since P = I^2R, $(0.707)^2$ = (0.5). (Figure 6.35)

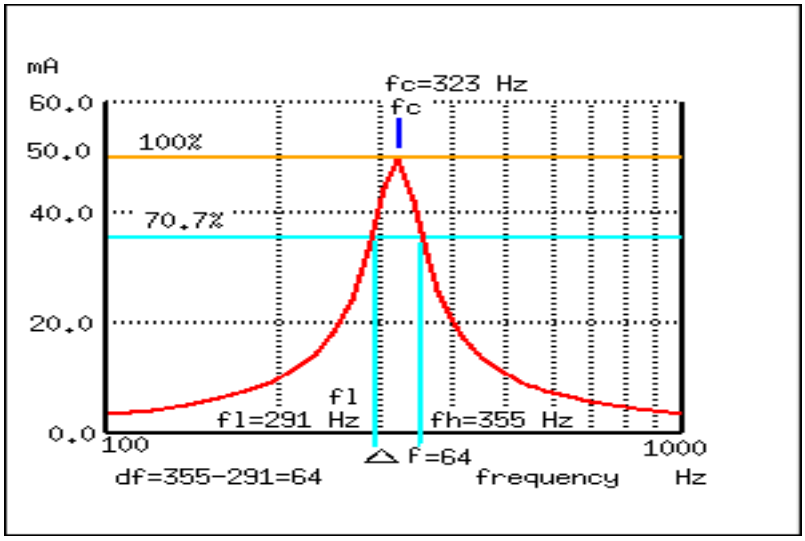


Figure 6.35: *Bandwidth, Δf is measured between the 70.7% amplitude points of series resonant circuit.*

$$BW = \Delta f = f_h - f_l = f_c/Q$$
Where f_h = high band edge, f_l = low band edge

$$f_l = f_c - \Delta f/2$$
$$f_h = f_c + \Delta f/2$$
Where f_c = center frequency (resonant frequency)

In Figure 6.35, the 100% current point is 50 mA. The 70.7% level is 0707(50 mA)=35.4 mA. The upper and lower band edges read from the curve are 291 Hz for f_l and 355 Hz for f_h. The bandwidth is 64 Hz, and the half power points are $\pm$ 32 Hz of the center resonant frequency:

$$BW = \Delta f = f_h - f_l = 355-291 = 64$$
$$f_l = f_c - \Delta f/2 = 323-32 = 291$$
$$f_h = f_c + \Delta f/2 = 323+32 = 355$$

Since BW = f_c/Q:

$$Q = f_c/BW = (323\ Hz)/(64\ Hz) = 5$$

6.6.2 Parallel resonant circuits

A parallel resonant circuit is resistive at the resonant frequency. (Figure 6.36) At resonance X_L=X_C, the reactive components cancel. The impedance is maximum at resonance. (Fig-

ure 6.37) Below the resonant frequency, the series resonant circuit looks inductive since the impedance of the inductor is lower, drawing the larger proportion of current. Above resonance, the capacitive rectance decreases, drawing the larger current, thus, taking on a capacitive characteristic.

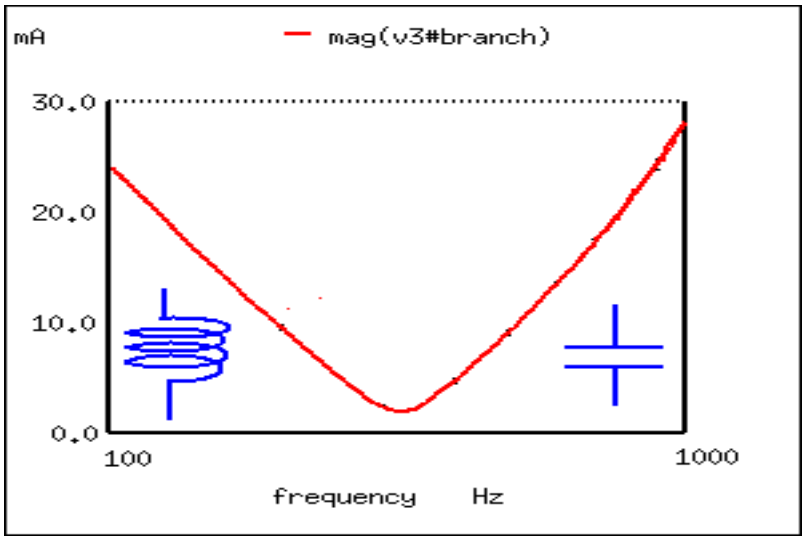


Figure 6.36: *A parallel resonant circuit is resistive at resonance, inductive below resonance, capacitive above resonance.*

Impedance is maximum at resonance in a parallel resonant circuit, but decreases above or below resonance. Voltage is at a peak at resonance since voltage is proportional to impedance (E=IZ). (Figure 6.37)

A low Q due to a high resistance in series with the inductor prodces a low peak on a broad response curve for a parallel resonant circuit. (Figure 6.38) conversely, a high Q is due to a low resistance in series with the inductor. This produces a higher peak in the narrower response curve. The high Q is achieved by winding the inductor with larger diameter (smaller gague), lower resistance wire.

The bandwidth of the parallel resonant response curve is measured between the half power points. This corresponds to the 70.7% voltage points since power is proportional to E^2. $((0.707)^2=0.50)$ Since voltage is proportional to impedance, we may use the impedance curve. (Figure 6.39)

In Figure 6.39, the 100% impedance point is 500 Ω. The 70.7% level is 0707(500)=354 Ω. The upper and lower band edges read from the curve are 281 Hz for f_l and 343 Hz for f_h. The bandwidth is 62 Hz, and the half power points are ± 31 Hz of the center resonant frequency:

$$BW = \Delta f = f_h - f_l = 343-281 = 62$$
$$f_l = f_c - \Delta f/2 = 312-31 = 281$$
$$f_h = f_c + \Delta f/2 = 312+31 = 343$$

$$Q = f_c/BW = (312\ Hz)/(62\ Hz) = 5$$

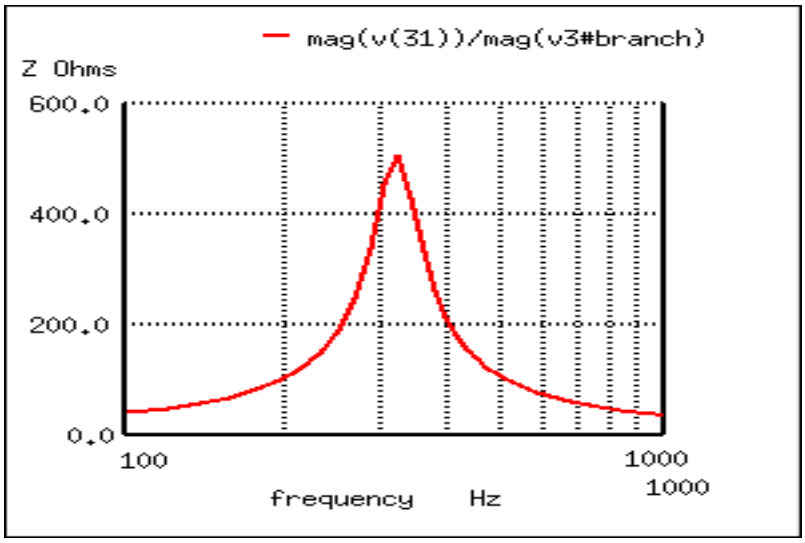


Figure 6.37: *Parallel resonant circuit: Impedance peaks at resonance.*

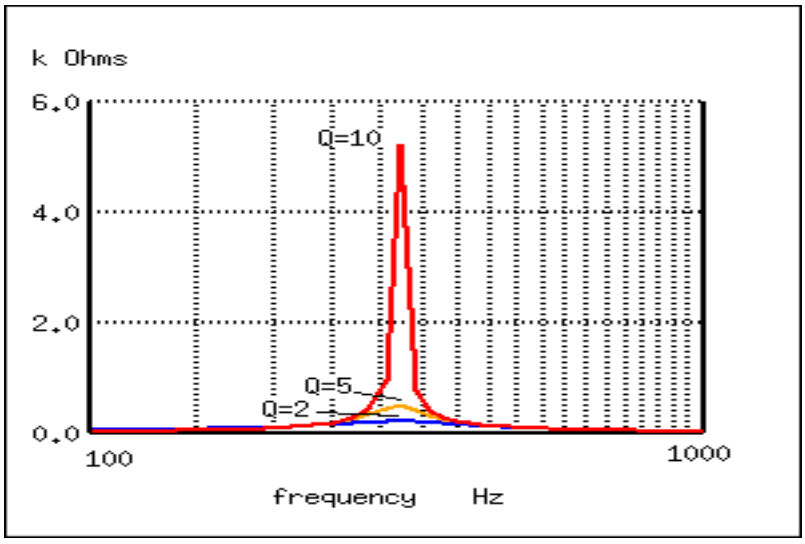


Figure 6.38: *Parallel resonant response varies with Q.*

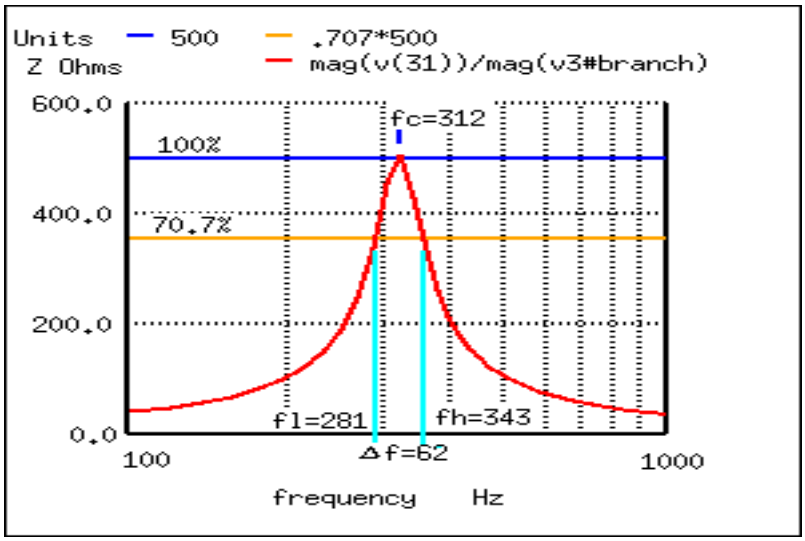


Figure 6.39: *Bandwidth, Δf is measured between the 70.7% impedance points of a parallel resonant circuit.*

6.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 7

MIXED-FREQUENCY AC SIGNALS

Contents

7.1 Introduction

In our study of AC circuits thus far, we've explored circuits powered by a single-frequency sine voltage waveform. In many applications of electronics, though, single-frequency signals are the exception rather than the rule. Quite often we may encounter circuits where multiple frequencies of voltage coexist simultaneously. Also, circuit waveforms may be something other than sine-wave shaped, in which case we call them *non-sinusoidal waveforms*.

Additionally, we may encounter situations where DC is mixed with AC: where a waveform is superimposed on a steady (DC) signal. The result of such a mix is a signal varying in intensity, but never changing polarity, or changing polarity asymmetrically (spending more time positive than negative, for example). Since DC does not alternate as AC does, its "frequency" is said to be zero, and any signal containing DC along with a signal of varying intensity (AC) may be rightly called a mixed-frequency signal as well. In any of these cases where there is a mix of frequencies in the same circuit, analysis is more complex than what we've seen up to this point.

Sometimes mixed-frequency voltage and current signals are created accidentally. This may be the result of unintended connections between circuits – called *coupling* – made possible by

stray capacitance and/or inductance between the conductors of those circuits. A classic example of coupling phenomenon is seen frequently in industry where DC signal wiring is placed in close proximity to AC power wiring. The nearby presence of high AC voltages and currents may cause "foreign" voltages to be impressed upon the length of the signal wiring. Stray capacitance formed by the electrical insulation separating power conductors from signal conductors may cause voltage (with respect to earth ground) from the power conductors to be impressed upon the signal conductors, while stray inductance formed by parallel runs of wire in conduit may cause current from the power conductors to electromagnetically induce voltage along the signal conductors. The result is a mix of DC and AC at the signal load. The following schematic shows how an AC "noise" source may "couple" to a DC circuit through mutual inductance (M_{stray}) and capacitance (C_{stray}) along the length of the conductors. (Figure 7.1)

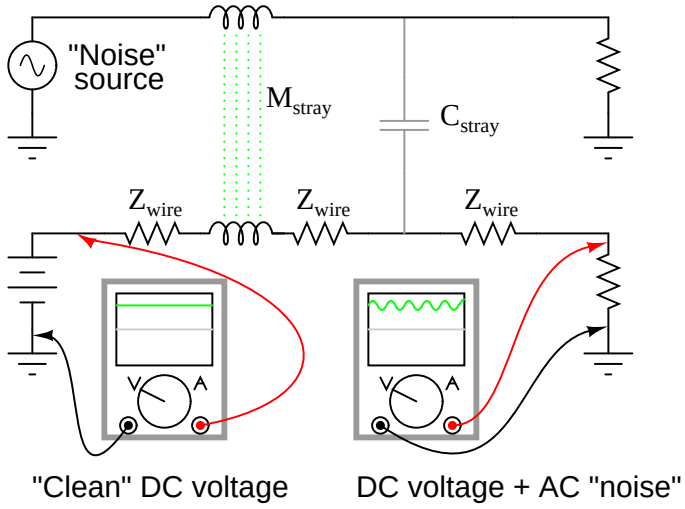


Figure 7.1: *Stray inductance and capacitance couple stray AC into desired DC signal.*

When stray AC voltages from a "noise" source mix with DC signals conducted along signal wiring, the results are usually undesirable. For this reason, power wiring and low-level signal wiring should *always* be routed through separated, dedicated metal conduit, and signals should be conducted via 2-conductor "twisted pair" cable rather than through a single wire and ground connection: (Figure 7.2)

The grounded cable shield – a wire braid or metal foil wrapped around the two insulated conductors – isolates both conductors from electrostatic (capacitive) coupling by blocking any external electric fields, while the parallal proximity of the two conductors effectively cancels any electromagnetic (mutually inductive) coupling because any induced noise voltage will be approximately equal in magnitude and opposite in phase along both conductors, canceling each other at the receiving end for a net (differential) noise voltage of almost zero. Polarity marks placed near each inductive portion of signal conductor length shows how the induced voltages are phased in such a way as to cancel one another.

Coupling may also occur between two sets of conductors carrying AC signals, in which case both signals may become "mixed" with each other: (Figure 7.3)

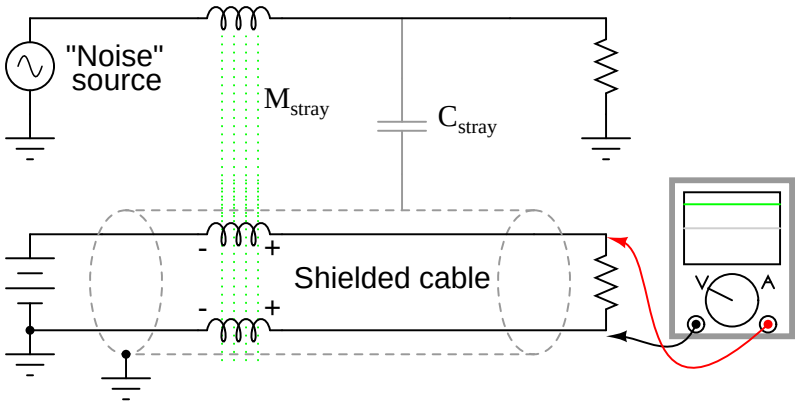


Figure 7.2: *Shielded twisted pair minimized noise.*

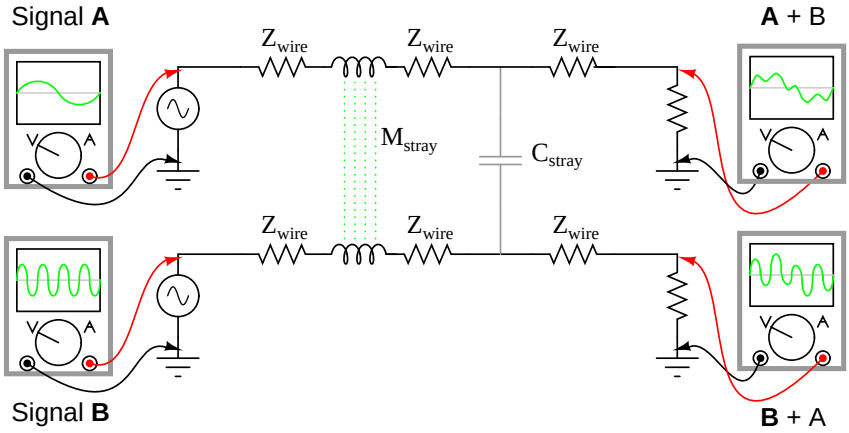


Figure 7.3: *Coupling of AC signals between parallel conductors.*

Coupling is but one example of how signals of different frequencies may become mixed. Whether it be AC mixed with DC, or two AC signals mixing with each other, signal coupling via stray inductance and capacitance is usually accidental and undesired. In other cases, mixed-frequency signals are the result of intentional design or they may be an intrinsic quality of a signal. It is generally quite easy to create mixed-frequency signal sources. Perhaps the easiest way is to simply connect voltage sources in series: (Figure 7.4)

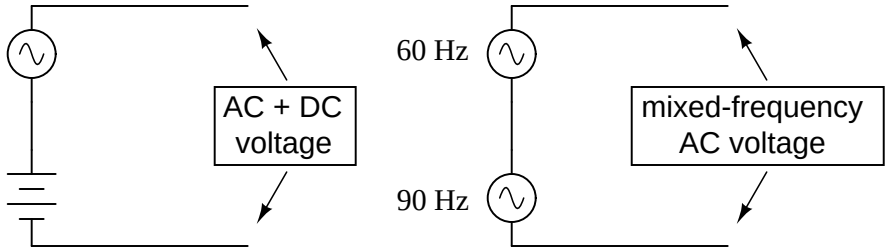


Figure 7.4: *Series connection of voltage sources mixes signals.*

Some computer communications networks operate on the principle of superimposing high-frequency voltage signals along 60 Hz power-line conductors, so as to convey computer data along existing lengths of power cabling. This technique has been used for years in electric power distribution networks to communicate load data along high-voltage power lines. Certainly these are examples of mixed-frequency AC voltages, under conditions that are deliberately established.

In some cases, mixed-frequency signals may be produced by a single voltage source. Such is the case with microphones, which convert audio-frequency air pressure waves into corresponding voltage waveforms. The particular mix of frequencies in the voltage signal output by the microphone is dependent on the sound being reproduced. If the sound waves consist of a single, pure note or tone, the voltage waveform will likewise be a sine wave at a single frequency. If the sound wave is a chord or other harmony of several notes, the resulting voltage waveform produced by the microphone will consist of those frequencies mixed together. Very few natural sounds consist of single, pure sine wave vibrations but rather are a mix of different frequency vibrations at different amplitudes.

Musical *chords* are produced by blending one frequency with other frequencies of particular fractional multiples of the first. However, investigating a little further, we find that even a single piano note (produced by a plucked string) consists of one predominant frequency mixed with several other frequencies, each frequency a whole-number multiple of the first (called *harmonics*, while the first frequency is called the *fundamental*). An illustration of these terms is shown in Table 7.1 with a fundamental frequency of 1000 Hz (an arbitrary figure chosen for this example).

Sometimes the term “overtone” is used to describe the a harmonic frequency produced by a musical instrument. The “first” overtone is the first harmonic frequency *greater than* the fundamental. If we had an instrument producing the entire range of harmonic frequencies shown in the table above, the first overtone would be 2000 Hz (the 2nd harmonic), while the second overtone would be 3000 Hz (the 3rd harmonic), etc. However, this application of the term “overtone” is specific to particular instruments.

Table 7.1: *For a "base" frequency of 1000 Hz:*

Frequency (Hz)	**Term**
1000	1st harmonic, or fundamental
2000	2nd harmonic
3000	3rd harmonic
4000	4th harmonic
5000	5th harmonic
6000	6th harmonic
7000	7th harmonic

It so happens that certain instruments are incapable of producing certain types of harmonic frequencies. For example, an instrument made from a tube that is open on one end and closed on the other (such as a bottle, which produces sound when air is blown across the opening) is incapable of producing even-numbered harmonics. Such an instrument set up to produce a fundamental frequency of 1000 Hz would also produce frequencies of 3000 Hz, 5000 Hz, 7000 Hz, etc, but would *not* produce 2000 Hz, 4000 Hz, 6000 Hz, or any other even-multiple frequencies of the fundamental. As such, we would say that the first overtone (the first frequency greater than the fundamental) in such an instrument would be 3000 Hz (the 3rd harmonic), while the second overtone would be 5000 Hz (the 5th harmonic), and so on.

A pure sine wave (single frequency), being entirely devoid of any harmonics, sounds very "flat" and "featureless" to the human ear. Most musical instruments are incapable of producing sounds this simple. What gives each instrument its distinctive tone is the same phenomenon that gives each person a distinctive voice: the unique blending of harmonic waveforms with each fundamental note, described by the physics of motion for each unique object producing the sound.

Brass instruments do not possess the same "harmonic content" as woodwind instruments, and neither produce the same harmonic content as stringed instruments. A distinctive blend of frequencies is what gives a musical instrument its characteristic tone. As anyone who has played guitar can tell you, steel strings have a different sound than nylon strings. Also, the tone produced by a guitar string changes depending on where along its length it is plucked. These differences in tone, as well, are a result of different harmonic content produced by differences in the mechanical vibrations of an instrument's parts. All these instruments produce harmonic frequencies (whole-number multiples of the fundamental frequency) when a single note is played, but the relative amplitudes of those harmonic frequencies are different for different instruments. In musical terms, the measure of a tone's harmonic content is called *timbre* or *color*.

Musical tones become even more complex when the resonating element of an instrument is a two-dimensional surface rather than a one-dimensional string. Instruments based on the vibration of a string (guitar, piano, banjo, lute, dulcimer, etc.) or of a column of air in a tube (trumpet, flute, clarinet, tuba, pipe organ, etc.) tend to produce sounds composed of a single frequency (the "fundamental") and a mix of harmonics. Instruments based on the vibration of a flat plate (steel drums, and some types of bells), however, produce a much broader range of frequencies, not limited to whole-number multiples of the fundamental. The result is a distinctive tone that some people find acoustically offensive.

As you can see, music provides a rich field of study for mixed frequencies and their effects. Later sections of this chapter will refer to musical instruments as sources of waveforms for analysis in more detail.

- **REVIEW:**

- A *sinusoidal* waveform is one shaped exactly like a sine wave.

- A *non-sinusoidal* waveform can be anything from a distorted sine-wave shape to something completely different like a square wave.

- Mixed-frequency waveforms can be accidently created, purposely created, or simply exist out of necessity. Most musical tones, for instance, are not composed of a single frequency sine-wave, but are rich blends of different frequencies.

- When multiple sine waveforms are mixed together (as is often the case in music), the lowest frequency sine-wave is called the *fundamental*, and the other sine-waves whose frequencies are whole-number multiples of the fundamental wave are called *harmonics*.

- An *overtone* is a harmonic produced by a particular device. The "first" overtone is the first frequency greater than the fundamental, while the "second" overtone is the next greater frequency produced. Successive overtones may or may not correspond to incremental harmonics, depending on the device producing the mixed frequencies. Some devices and systems do not permit the establishment of certain harmonics, and so their overtones would only include some (not all) harmonic frequencies.

7.2 Square wave signals

It has been found that *any* repeating, non-sinusoidal waveform can be equated to a combination of DC voltage, sine waves, and/or cosine waves (sine waves with a 90 degree phase shift) at various amplitudes and frequencies. This is true no matter how strange or convoluted the waveform in question may be. So long as it repeats itself regularly over time, it is reducible to this series of sinusoidal waves. In particular, it has been found that square waves are mathematically equivalent to the sum of a sine wave at that same frequency, plus an infinite series of odd-multiple frequency sine waves at diminishing amplitude:

1 V (peak) repeating square wave at 50 Hz is equivalent to:

$$\left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)(\text{1 V peak sine wave at 50 Hz})$$

$$+ \left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)(\text{1/3 V peak sine wave at 150 Hz})$$

$$+ \left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)(\text{1/5 V peak sine wave at 250 Hz})$$

$$+ \left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)(\text{1/7 V peak sine wave at 350 Hz})$$

$$+ \left(\frac{4}{\pi}\right)(\text{1/9 V peak sine wave at 450 Hz})$$

$$+ \ \textit{. . . ad infinitum . . .}$$

This truth about waveforms at first may seem too strange to believe. However, if a square wave is actually an infinite series of sine wave harmonics added together, it stands to reason that we should be able to prove this by adding together several sine wave harmonics to produce a close approximation of a square wave. This reasoning is not only sound, but easily demonstrated with SPICE.

The circuit we'll be simulating is nothing more than several sine wave AC voltage sources of the proper amplitudes and frequencies connected together in series. We'll use SPICE to plot the voltage waveforms across successive additions of voltage sources, like this: (Figure 7.5)

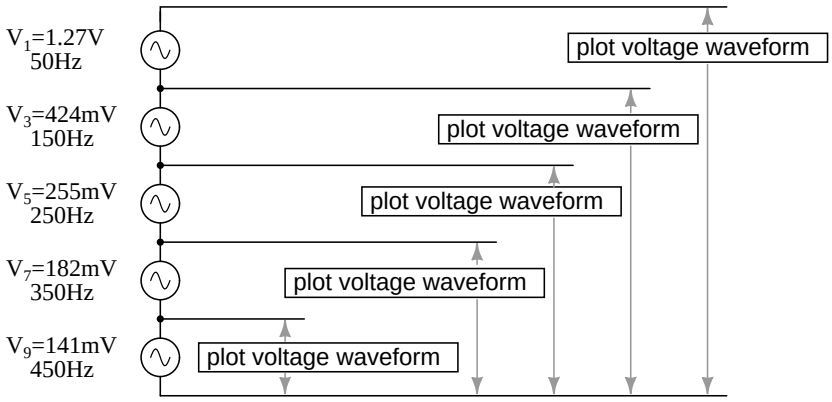


Figure 7.5: *A square wave is approximated by the sum of harmonics.*

In this particular SPICE simulation, I've summed the 1st, 3rd, 5th, 7th, and 9th harmonic

voltage sources in series for a total of five AC voltage sources. The fundamental frequency is 50 Hz and each harmonic is, of course, an integer multiple of that frequency. The amplitude (voltage) figures are not random numbers; rather, they have been arrived at through the equations shown in the frequency series (the fraction $4/\pi$ multiplied by 1, 1/3, 1/5, 1/7, etc. for each of the increasing odd harmonics).

```
building a squarewave
v1 1 0 sin (0 1.27324 50 0 0)       1st harmonic (50 Hz)
v3 2 1 sin (0 424.413m 150 0 0)     3rd harmonic
v5 3 2 sin (0 254.648m 250 0 0)     5th harmonic
v7 4 3 sin (0 181.891m 350 0 0)     7th harmonic
v9 5 4 sin (0 141.471m 450 0 0)     9th harmonic
r1 5 0 10k
.tran 1m 20m
.plot tran v(1,0)    Plot 1st harmonic
.plot tran v(2,0)    Plot 1st + 3rd harmonics
.plot tran v(3,0)    Plot 1st + 3rd + 5th harmonics
.plot tran v(4,0)    Plot 1st + 3rd + 5th + 7th harmonics
.plot tran v(5,0)    Plot 1st + . . . + 9th harmonics
.end
```

I'll narrate the analysis step by step from here, explaining what it is we're looking at. In this first plot, we see the fundamental-frequency sine-wave of 50 Hz by itself. It is nothing but a pure sine shape, with no additional harmonic content. This is the kind of waveform produced by an ideal AC power source: (Figure 7.6)

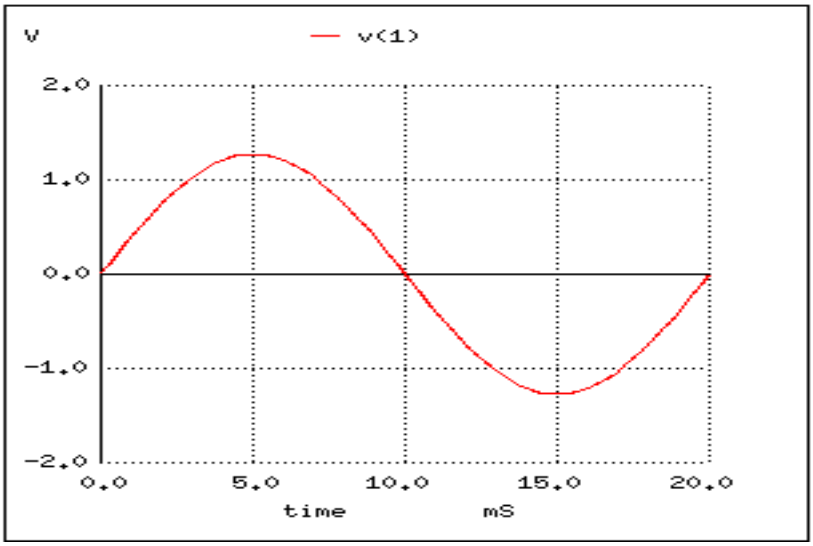


Figure 7.6: *Pure 50 Hz sinewave.*

Next, we see what happens when this clean and simple waveform is combined with the

third harmonic (three times 50 Hz, or 150 Hz). Suddenly, it doesn't look like a clean sine wave any more: (Figure 7.7)

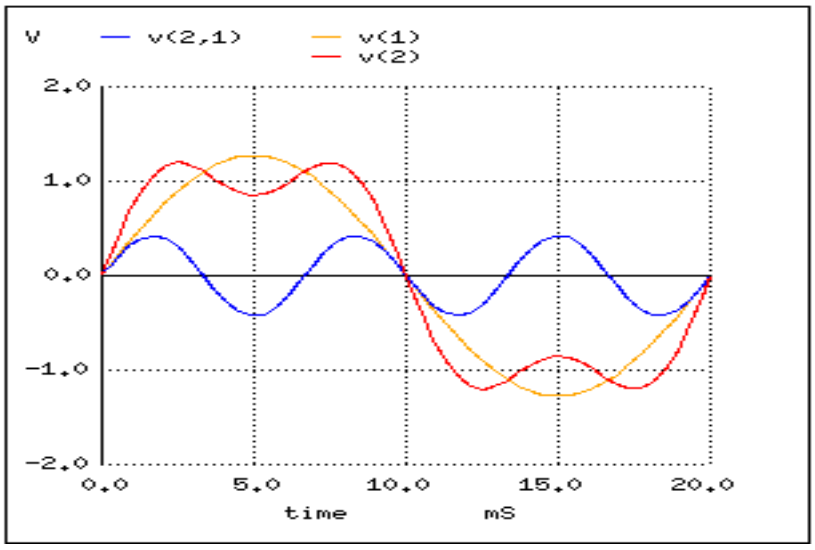


Figure 7.7: *Sum of 1st (50 Hz) and 3rd (150 Hz) harmonics approximates a 50 Hz square wave.*

The rise and fall times between positive and negative cycles are much steeper now, and the crests of the wave are closer to becoming flat like a squarewave. Watch what happens as we add the next odd harmonic frequency: (Figure 7.8)

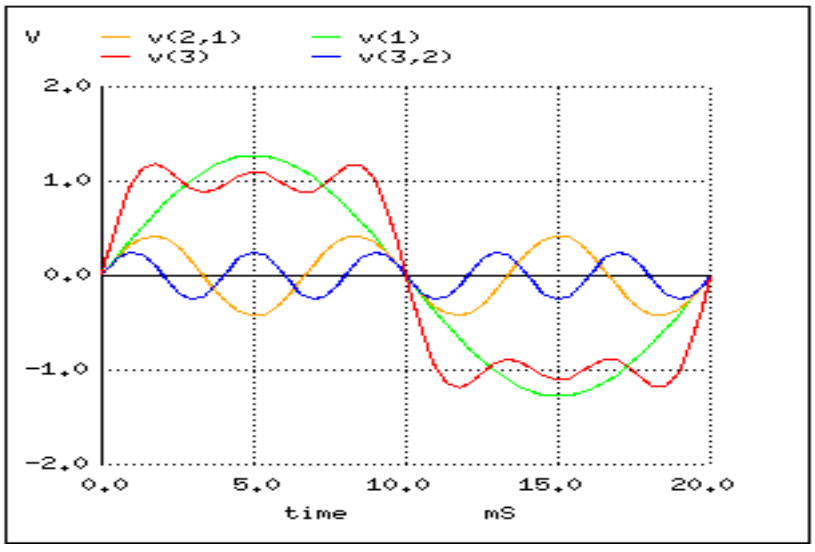


Figure 7.8: *Sum of 1st, 3rd and 5th harmonics approximates square wave.*

The most noticeable change here is how the crests of the wave have flattened even more. There are more several dips and crests at each end of the wave, but those dips and crests are smaller in amplitude than they were before. Watch again as we add the next odd harmonic waveform to the mix: (Figure 7.9)

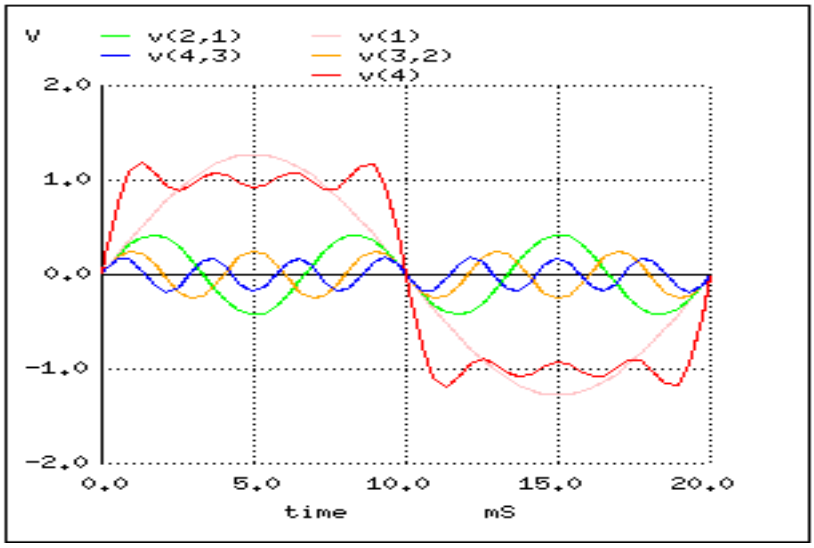


Figure 7.9: *Sum of 1st, 3rd, 5th, and 7th harmonics approximates square wave.*

Here we can see the wave becoming flatter at each peak. Finally, adding the 9th harmonic, the fifth sine wave voltage source in our circuit, we obtain this result: (Figure 7.10)

The end result of adding the first five odd harmonic waveforms together (all at the proper amplitudes, of course) is a close approximation of a square wave. The point in doing this is to illustrate how we can build a square wave up from multiple sine waves at different frequencies, to prove that a pure square wave is actually equivalent to a *series* of sine waves. When a square wave AC voltage is applied to a circuit with reactive components (capacitors and inductors), those components react as if they were being exposed to several sine wave voltages of different frequencies, which in fact they are.

The fact that repeating, non-sinusoidal waves are equivalent to a definite series of additive DC voltage, sine waves, and/or cosine waves is a consequence of how waves work: a fundamental property of all wave-related phenomena, electrical or otherwise. The mathematical process of reducing a non-sinusoidal wave into these constituent frequencies is called *Fourier analysis*, the details of which are well beyond the scope of this text. However, computer algorithms have been created to perform this analysis at high speeds on real waveforms, and its application in AC power quality and signal analysis is widespread.

SPICE has the ability to sample a waveform and reduce it into its constituent sine wave harmonics by way of a *Fourier Transform* algorithm, outputting the frequency analysis as a table of numbers. Let's try this on a square wave, which we already know is composed of odd-harmonic sine waves:

The *pulse* option in the netlist line describing voltage source `v1` instructs SPICE to simulate

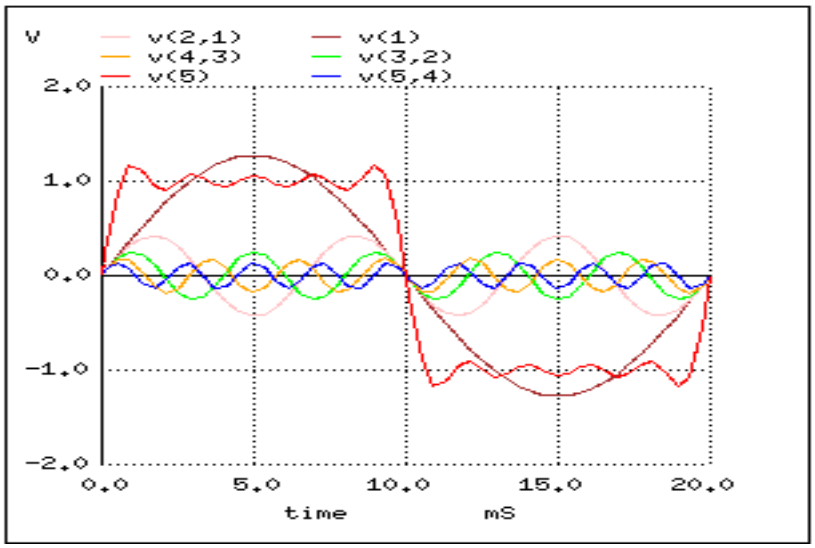


Figure 7.10: *Sum of 1st, 3rd, 5th, 7th and 9th harmonics approximates square wave.*

```
squarewave analysis netlist
v1 1 0 pulse (-1 1 0 .1m .1m 10m 20m)
r1 1 0 10k
.tran 1m 40m
.plot tran v(1,0)
.four 50 v(1,0)
.end
```

a square-shaped "pulse" waveform, in this case one that is symmetrical (equal time for each half-cycle) and has a peak amplitude of 1 volt. First we'll plot the square wave to be analyzed: (Figure 7.11)

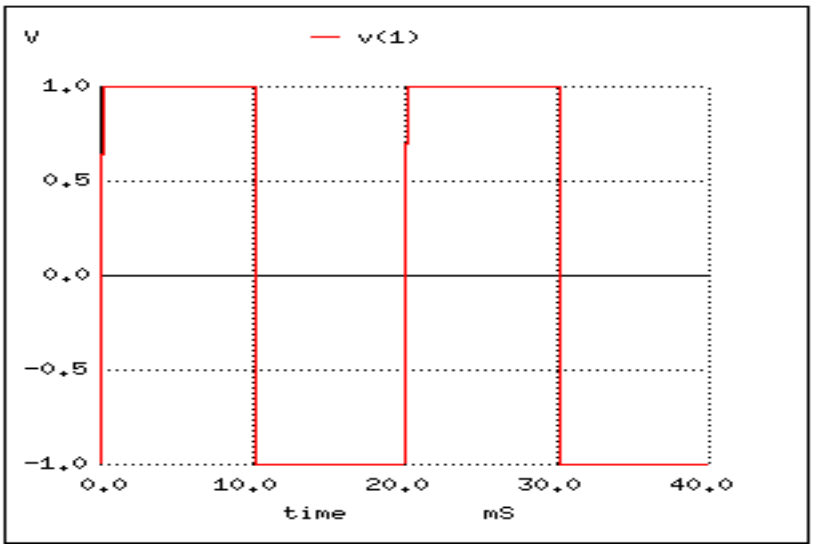


Figure 7.11: *Squarewave for SPICE Fourier analysis*

Next, we'll print the Fourier analysis generated by SPICE for this square wave:

```
fourier components of transient response v(1)
dc component =  -2.439E-02
harmonic  frequency   fourier     normalized   phase   normalized
no          (hz)     component    component    (deg)   phase (deg)
1         5.000E+01   1.274E+00     1.000000    -2.195       0.000
2         1.000E+02   4.892E-02     0.038415   -94.390     -92.195
3         1.500E+02   4.253E-01     0.333987    -6.585      -4.390
4         2.000E+02   4.936E-02     0.038757   -98.780     -96.585
5         2.500E+02   2.562E-01     0.201179   -10.976      -8.780
6         3.000E+02   5.010E-02     0.039337  -103.171    -100.976
7         3.500E+02   1.841E-01     0.144549   -15.366     -13.171
8         4.000E+02   5.116E-02     0.040175  -107.561    -105.366
9         4.500E+02   1.443E-01     0.113316   -19.756     -17.561
total harmonic distortion =     43.805747  percent
```

Here, (Figure 7.12) SPICE has broken the waveform down into a spectrum of sinusoidal frequencies up to the ninth harmonic, plus a small DC voltage labelled `DC component`. I had to inform SPICE of the fundamental frequency (for a square wave with a 20 millisecond period, this frequency is 50 Hz), so it knew how to classify the harmonics. Note how small the figures are for all the even harmonics (2nd, 4th, 6th, 8th), and how the amplitudes of the odd harmonics diminish (1st is largest, 9th is smallest).

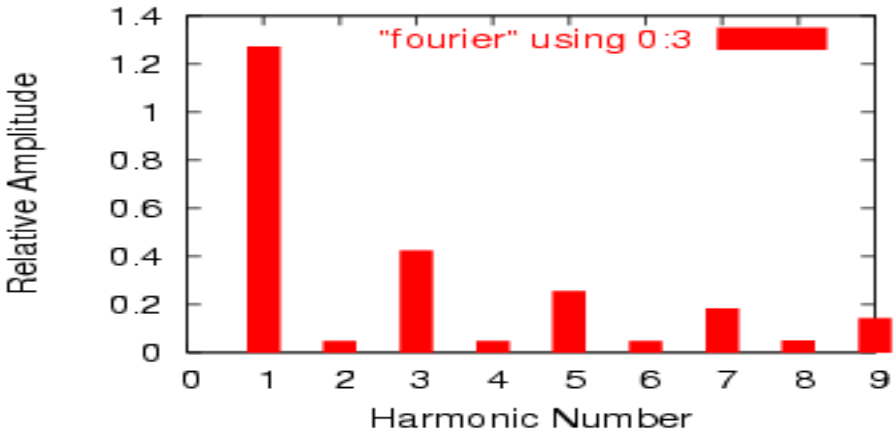


Figure 7.12: *Plot of Fourier analysis esults.*

This same technique of "Fourier Transformation" is often used in computerized power instrumentation, sampling the AC waveform(s) and determining the harmonic content thereof. A common computer algorithm (sequence of program steps to perform a task) for this is the *Fast Fourier Transform* or *FFT* function. You need not be concerned with exactly how these computer routines work, but be aware of their existence and application.

This same mathematical technique used in SPICE to analyze the harmonic content of waves can be applied to the technical analysis of music: breaking up any particular sound into its constituent sine-wave frequencies. In fact, you may have already seen a device designed to do just that without realizing what it was! A *graphic equalizer* is a piece of high-fidelity stereo equipment that controls (and sometimes displays) the nature of music's harmonic content. Equipped with several knobs or slide levers, the equalizer is able to selectively attenuate (reduce) the amplitude of certain frequencies present in music, to "customize" the sound for the listener's benefit. Typically, there will be a "bar graph" display next to each control lever, displaying the amplitude of each particular frequency. (Figure 7.13)

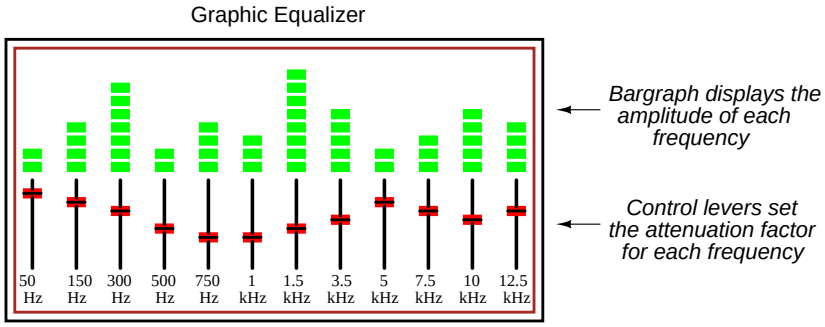


Figure 7.13: *Hi-Fi audio graphic equalizer.*

A device built strictly to display – not control – the amplitudes of each frequency range for a mixed-frequency signal is typically called a *spectrum analyzer*. The design of spectrum analyzers may be as simple as a set of "filter" circuits (see the next chapter for details) designed to separate the different frequencies from each other, or as complex as a special-purpose digital computer running an FFT algorithm to mathematically split the signal into its harmonic components. Spectrum analyzers are often designed to analyze extremely high-frequency signals, such as those produced by radio transmitters and computer network hardware. In that form, they often have an appearance like that of an oscilloscope: (Figure 7.14)

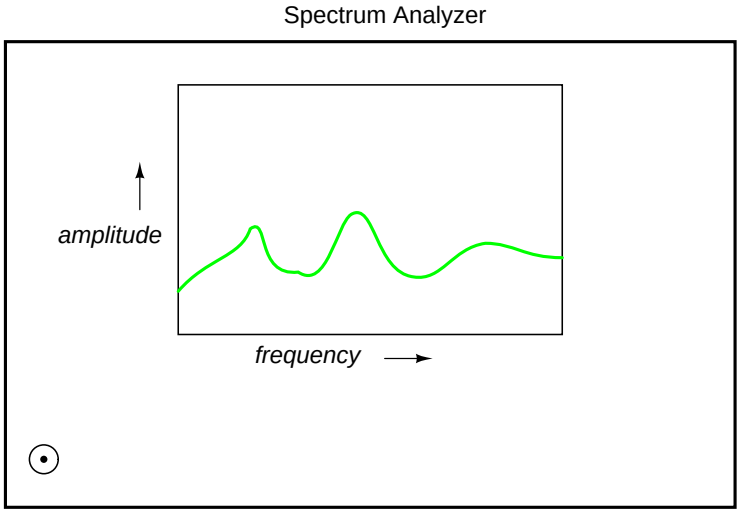


Figure 7.14: *Spectrum analyzer shows amplitude as a function of frequency.*

Like an oscilloscope, the spectrum analyzer uses a CRT (or a computer display mimicking a CRT) to display a plot of the signal. Unlike an oscilloscope, this plot is amplitude over *frequency* rather than amplitude over *time*. In essence, a frequency analyzer gives the operator a Bode plot of the signal: something an engineer might call a *frequency-domain* rather than a *time-domain* analysis.

The term "domain" is mathematical: a sophisticated word to describe the horizontal axis of a graph. Thus, an oscilloscope's plot of amplitude (vertical) over time (horizontal) is a "time-domain" analysis, whereas a spectrum analyzer's plot of amplitude (vertical) over frequency (horizontal) is a "frequency-domain" analysis. When we use SPICE to plot signal amplitude (either voltage or current amplitude) over a range of frequencies, we are performing *frequency-domain* analysis.

Please take note of how the Fourier analysis from the last SPICE simulation isn't "perfect." Ideally, the amplitudes of all the even harmonics should be absolutely zero, and so should the DC component. Again, this is not so much a quirk of SPICE as it is a property of waveforms in general. A waveform of infinite duration (infinite number of cycles) can be analyzed with absolute precision, but the less cycles available to the computer for analysis, the less precise the analysis. It is only when we have an equation describing a waveform in its entirety that

Fourier analysis can reduce it to a definite series of sinusoidal waveforms. The fewer times that a wave cycles, the less certain its frequency is. Taking this concept to its logical extreme, a short pulse – a waveform that doesn't even complete a cycle – actually *has no frequency*, but rather acts as an infinite range of frequencies. This principle is common to *all* wave-based phenomena, not just AC voltages and currents.

Suffice it to say that the number of cycles and the certainty of a waveform's frequency component(s) are directly related. We could improve the precision of our analysis here by letting the wave oscillate on and on for many cycles, and the result would be a spectrum analysis more consistent with the ideal. In the following analysis, I've omitted the waveform plot for brevity's sake – its just a really long square wave:

```
squarewave
v1 1 0 pulse (-1 1 0 .1m .1m 10m 20m)
r1 1 0 10k
.option limpts=1001
.tran 1m 1
.plot tran v(1,0)
.four 50 v(1,0)
.end


fourier components of transient response v(1)
dc component =   9.999E-03
harmonic  frequency    fourier    normalized   phase   normalized
no           (hz)     component   component    (deg)   phase (deg)
1         5.000E+01   1.273E+00     1.000000    -1.800       0.000
2         1.000E+02   1.999E-02     0.015704    86.382      88.182
3         1.500E+02   4.238E-01     0.332897    -5.400      -3.600
4         2.000E+02   1.997E-02     0.015688    82.764      84.564
5         2.500E+02   2.536E-01     0.199215    -9.000      -7.200
6         3.000E+02   1.994E-02     0.015663    79.146      80.946
7         3.500E+02   1.804E-01     0.141737   -12.600     -10.800
8         4.000E+02   1.989E-02     0.015627    75.529      77.329
9         4.500E+02   1.396E-01     0.109662   -16.199     -14.399
```

Notice how this analysis (Figure 7.15) shows less of a DC component voltage and lower amplitudes for each of the even harmonic frequency sine waves, all because we let the computer sample more cycles of the wave. Again, the imprecision of the first analysis is not so much a flaw in SPICE as it is a fundamental property of waves and of signal analysis.

- **REVIEW:**
- Square waves are equivalent to a sine wave at the same (fundamental) frequency added to an infinite series of odd-multiple sine-wave harmonics at decreasing amplitudes.
- Computer algorithms exist which are able to sample waveshapes and determine their constituent sinusoidal components. The *Fourier Transform* algorithm (particularly the

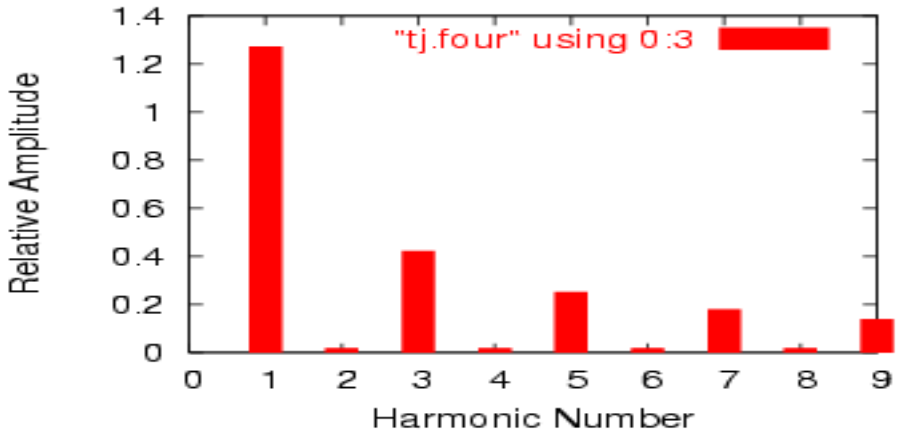


Figure 7.15: *Improved fourier analysis.*

Fast Fourier Transform, or *FFT*) is commonly used in computer circuit simulation programs such as SPICE and in electronic metering equipment for determining power quality.

7.3 Other waveshapes

As strange as it may seem, *any* repeating, non-sinusoidal waveform is actually equivalent to a series of sinusoidal waveforms of different amplitudes and frequencies added together. Square waves are a very common and well-understood case, but not the only one.

Electronic power control devices such as transistors and silicon-controlled rectifiers (*SCRs*) often produce voltage and current waveforms that are essentially chopped-up versions of the otherwise "clean" (pure) sine-wave AC from the power supply. These devices have the ability to suddenly *change* their resistance with the application of a control signal voltage or current, thus "turning on" or "turning off" almost instantaneously, producing current waveforms bearing little resemblance to the source voltage waveform powering the circuit. These current waveforms then produce changes in the voltage waveform to other circuit components, due to voltage drops created by the non-sinusoidal current through circuit impedances.

Circuit components that distort the normal sine-wave shape of AC voltage or current are called *nonlinear*. Nonlinear components such as SCRs find popular use in power electronics due to their ability to regulate large amounts of electrical power without dissipating much heat. While this is an advantage from the perspective of energy efficiency, the waveshape distortions they introduce can cause problems.

These non-sinusoidal waveforms, regardless of their actual shape, are equivalent to a series of sinusoidal waveforms of higher (harmonic) frequencies. If not taken into consideration by the circuit designer, these harmonic waveforms created by electronic switching components may cause erratic circuit behavior. It is becoming increasingly common in the electric power industry to observe overheating of transformers and motors due to distortions in the sine-

wave shape of the AC power line voltage stemming from "switching" loads such as computers and high-efficiency lights. This is no theoretical exercise: it is very real and potentially very troublesome.

In this section, I will investigate a few of the more common waveshapes and show their harmonic components by way of Fourier analysis using SPICE.

One very common way harmonics are generated in an AC power system is when AC is converted, or "rectified" into DC. This is generally done with components called *diodes*, which only allow the passage of current in one direction. The simplest type of AC/DC rectification is *half-wave*, where a single diode blocks half of the AC current (over time) from passing through the load. (Figure 7.16) Oddly enough, the conventional diode schematic symbol is drawn such that electrons flow *against* the direction of the symbol's arrowhead:

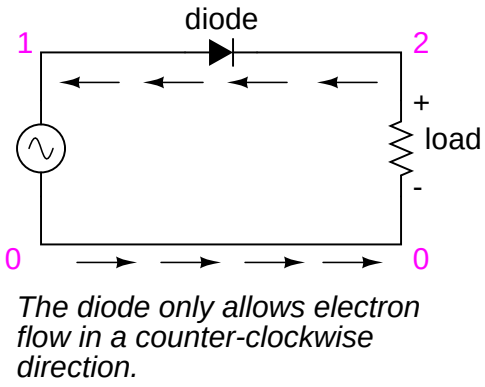


Figure 7.16: *Half-wave rectifier.*

```
halfwave rectifier
v1 1 0 sin(0 15 60 0 0)
rload 2 0 10k
d1 1 2 mod1
.model mod1 d
.tran .5m 17m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(2,0)
.four 60 v(1,0) v(2,0)
.end
halfwave rectifier
```

First, we'll see how SPICE analyzes the source waveform, a pure sine wave voltage: (Figure 7.18)

Notice the extremely small harmonic and DC components of this sinusoidal waveform in the table above, though, too small to show on the harmonic plot above. Ideally, there would be nothing but the fundamental frequency showing (being a perfect sine wave), but our Fourier analysis figures aren't perfect because SPICE doesn't have the luxury of sampling a waveform of infinite duration. Next, we'll compare this with the Fourier analysis of the half-wave

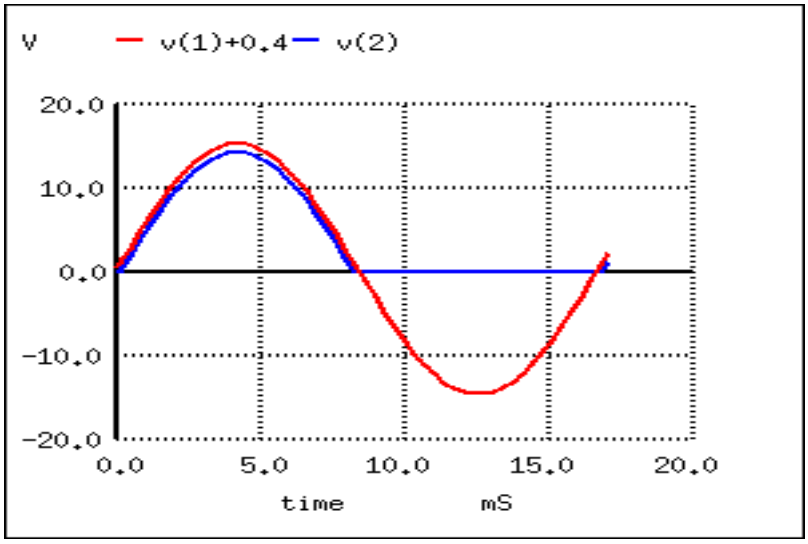


Figure 7.17: *Half-wave rectifier waveforms. V(1)+0.4 shifts the sinewave input V(1) up for clarity. This is not part of the simulation.*

```
fourier components of transient response v(1)
dc component =   8.016E-04
harmonic   frequency  fourier    normalized   phase   normalized
no         (hz)       component  component    (deg)   phase (deg)
1        6.000E+01   1.482E+01    1.000000    -0.005       0.000
2        1.200E+02   2.492E-03    0.000168  -104.347    -104.342
3        1.800E+02   6.465E-04    0.000044   -86.663     -86.658
4        2.400E+02   1.132E-03    0.000076   -61.324     -61.319
5        3.000E+02   1.185E-03    0.000080   -70.091     -70.086
6        3.600E+02   1.092E-03    0.000074   -63.607     -63.602
7        4.200E+02   1.220E-03    0.000082   -56.288     -56.283
8        4.800E+02   1.354E-03    0.000091   -54.669     -54.664
9        5.400E+02   1.467E-03    0.000099   -52.660     -52.655
```

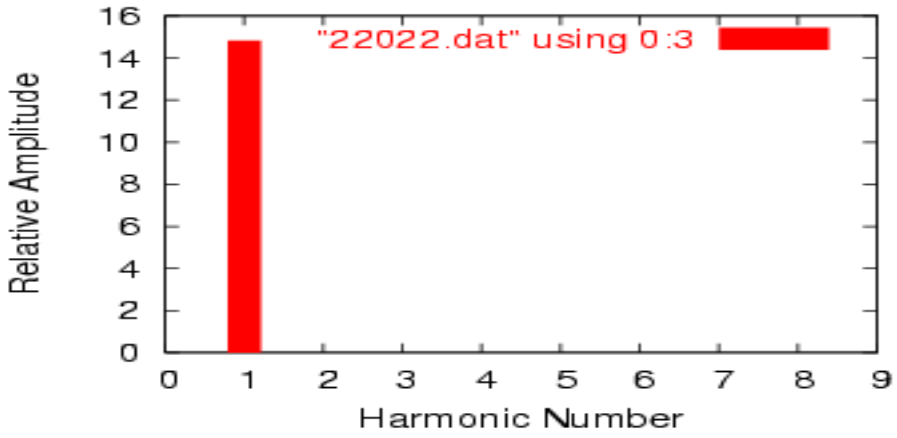


Figure 7.18: *Fourier analysis of the sine wave input.*

"rectified" voltage across the load resistor: (Figure 7.19)

```
fourier components of transient response v(2)
dc component =   4.456E+00
harmonic  frequency   fourier    normalized   phase    normalized
no          (hz)      component   component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1        6.000E+01   7.000E+00     1.000000    -0.195       0.000
2        1.200E+02   3.016E+00     0.430849   -89.765     -89.570
3        1.800E+02   1.206E-01     0.017223  -168.005    -167.810
4        2.400E+02   5.149E-01     0.073556   -87.295     -87.100
5        3.000E+02   6.382E-02     0.009117  -152.790    -152.595
6        3.600E+02   1.727E-01     0.024676   -79.362     -79.167
7        4.200E+02   4.492E-02     0.006417  -132.420    -132.224
8        4.800E+02   7.493E-02     0.010703   -61.479     -61.284
9        5.400E+02   4.051E-02     0.005787  -115.085    -114.889
```

Notice the relatively large even-multiple harmonics in this analysis. By cutting out half of our AC wave, we've introduced the equivalent of several higher-frequency sinusoidal (actually, cosine) waveforms into our circuit from the original, pure sine-wave. Also take note of the large DC component: 4.456 volts. Because our AC voltage waveform has been "rectified" (only allowed to push in one direction across the load rather than back-and-forth), it behaves a lot more like DC.

Another method of AC/DC conversion is called *full-wave* (Figure 7.20), which as you may have guessed utilizes the full cycle of AC power from the source, reversing the polarity of half the AC cycle to get electrons to flow through the load the same direction all the time. I won't bore you with details of exactly how this is done, but we can examine the waveform (Figure 7.21) and its harmonic analysis through SPICE: (Figure 7.22)

What a difference! According to SPICE's Fourier transform, we have a 2nd harmonic component to this waveform that's over 85 times the amplitude of the original AC source frequency!

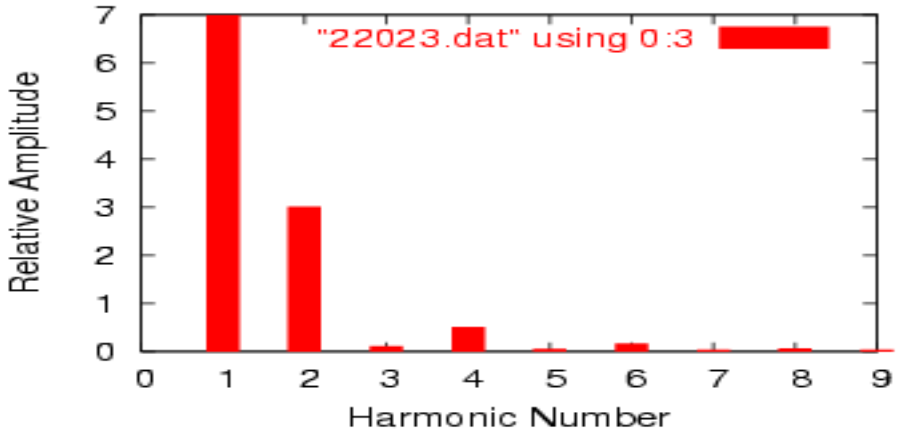


Figure 7.19: *Fourier analysis half-wave output.*

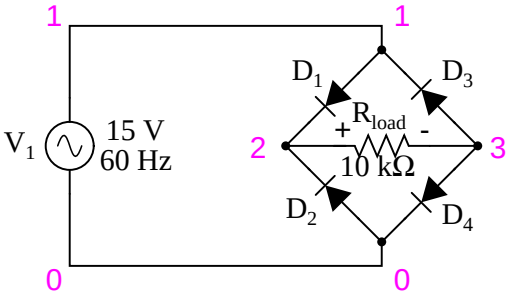


Figure 7.20: *Full-wave rectifier circuit.*

```
fullwave bridge rectifier
v1 1 0 sin(0 15 60 0 0)
rload 2 3 10k
d1 1 2 mod1
d2 0 2 mod1
d3 3 1 mod1
d4 3 0 mod1
.model mod1 d
.tran .5m 17m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(2,3)
.four 60 v(2,3)
.end
```

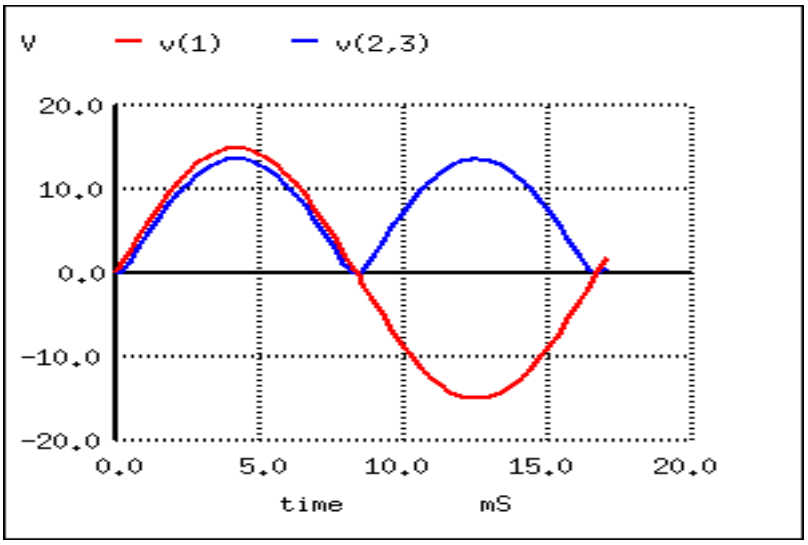


Figure 7.21: *Waveforms for full-wave rectifier*

```
fourier components of transient response v(2,3)
dc component =   8.273E+00
harmonic   frequency  fourier    normalized   phase   normalized
no         (hz)       component  component    (deg)   phase (deg)
1        6.000E+01   7.000E-02     1.000000   -93.519       0.000
2        1.200E+02   5.997E+00    85.669415   -90.230       3.289
3        1.800E+02   7.241E-02     1.034465   -93.787      -0.267
4        2.400E+02   1.013E+00    14.465161   -92.492       1.027
5        3.000E+02   7.364E-02     1.052023   -95.026      -1.507
6        3.600E+02   3.337E-01     4.767350  -100.271      -6.752
7        4.200E+02   7.496E-02     1.070827   -94.023      -0.504
8        4.800E+02   1.404E-01     2.006043  -118.839     -25.319
9        5.400E+02   7.457E-02     1.065240   -90.907       2.612
```

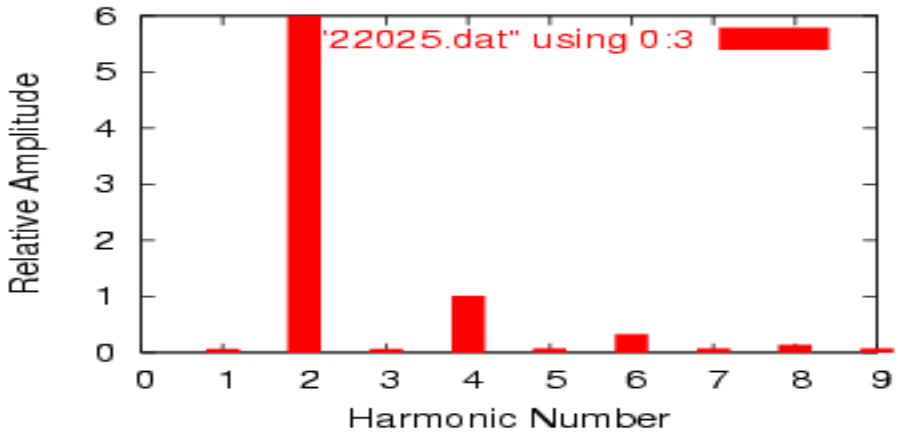


Figure 7.22: *Fourier analysis of full-wave rectifier output.*

The DC component of this wave shows up as being 8.273 volts (almost twice what is was for the half-wave rectifier circuit) while the second harmonic is almost 6 volts in amplitude. Notice all the other harmonics further on down the table. The odd harmonics are actually stronger at some of the higher frequencies than they are at the lower frequencies, which is interesting.

As you can see, what may begin as a neat, simple AC sine-wave may end up as a complex mess of harmonics after passing through just a few electronic components. While the complex mathematics behind all this Fourier transformation is not necessary for the beginning student of electric circuits to understand, it is of the utmost importance to realize the principles at work and to grasp the practical effects that harmonic signals may have on circuits. The practical effects of harmonic frequencies in circuits will be explored in the last section of this chapter, but before we do that we'll take a closer look at waveforms and their respective harmonics.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Any* waveform at all, so long as it is repetitive, can be reduced to a series of sinusoidal waveforms added together. Different waveshapes consist of different blends of sine-wave harmonics.
- Rectification of AC to DC is a very common source of harmonics within industrial power systems.

7.4 More on spectrum analysis

Computerized Fourier analysis, particularly in the form of the *FFT* algorithm, is a powerful tool for furthering our understanding of waveforms and their related spectral components. This same mathematical routine programmed into the SPICE simulator as the `.fourier` option is also programmed into a variety of electronic test instruments to perform real-time Fourier analysis on measured signals. This section is devoted to the use of such tools and the analysis of several different waveforms.

First we have a simple sine wave at a frequency of 523.25 Hz. This particular frequency value is a "C" pitch on a piano keyboard, one octave above "middle C". Actually, the signal measured for this demonstration was created by an electronic keyboard set to produce the tone of a panflute, the closest instrument "voice" I could find resembling a perfect sine wave. The plot below was taken from an oscilloscope display, showing signal amplitude (voltage) over time: (Figure 7.23)

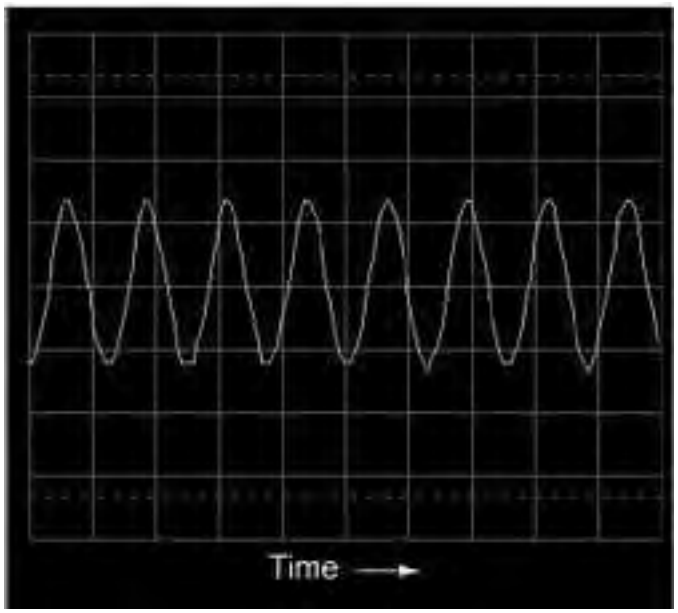


Figure 7.23: *Oscilloscope display: voltage vs time.*

Viewed with an oscilloscope, a sine wave looks like a wavy curve traced horizontally on the screen. The horizontal axis of this oscilloscope display is marked with the word "Time" and an arrow pointing in the direction of time's progression. The curve itself, of course, represents the cyclic increase and decrease of voltage over time.

Close observation reveals imperfections in the sine-wave shape. This, unfortunately, is a result of the specific equipment used to analyze the waveform. Characteristics like these due to quirks of the test equipment are technically known as *artifacts*: phenomena existing solely because of a peculiarity in the equipment used to perform the experiment.

If we view this same AC voltage on a spectrum analyzer, the result is quite different: (Figure 7.24)

As you can see, the horizontal axis of the display is marked with the word "Frequency," denoting the domain of this measurement. The single peak on the curve represents the predominance of a single frequency within the range of frequencies covered by the width of the display. If the scale of this analyzer instrument were marked with numbers, you would see that this peak occurs at 523.25 Hz. The height of the peak represents the signal amplitude (voltage).

If we mix three different sine-wave tones together on the electronic keyboard (C-E-G, a C-

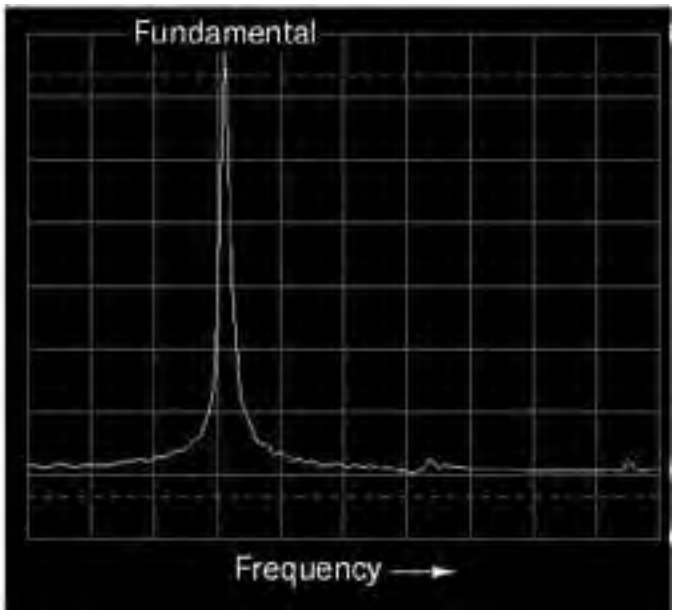


Figure 7.24: *Spectrum analyzer display: voltage vs frequency.*

major chord) and measure the result, both the oscilloscope display and the spectrum analyzer display reflect this increased complexity: (Figure 7.25)

The oscilloscope display (time-domain) shows a waveform with many more peaks and valleys than before, a direct result of the mixing of these three frequencies. As you will notice, some of these peaks are higher than the peaks of the original single-pitch waveform, while others are lower. This is a result of the three different waveforms alternately reinforcing and canceling each other as their respective phase shifts change in time.

The spectrum display (frequency-domain) is much easier to interpret: each pitch is represented by its own peak on the curve. (Figure 7.26) The difference in height between these three peaks is another artifact of the test equipment: a consequence of limitations within the equipment used to generate and analyze these waveforms, and not a necessary characteristic of the musical chord itself.

As was stated before, the device used to generate these waveforms is an electronic keyboard: a musical instrument designed to mimic the tones of many different instruments. The panflute "voice" was chosen for the first demonstrations because it most closely resembled a pure sine wave (a single frequency on the spectrum analyzer display). Other musical instrument "voices" are not as simple as this one, though. In fact, the unique tone produced by *any* instrument is a function of its waveshape (or spectrum of frequencies). For example, let's view the signal for a trumpet tone: (Figure 7.27)

The fundamental frequency of this tone is the same as in the first panflute example: 523.25 Hz, one octave above "middle C." The waveform itself is far from a pure and simple sine-wave form. Knowing that any repeating, non-sinusoidal waveform is equivalent to a series of sinusoidal waveforms at different amplitudes and frequencies, we should expect to see multiple

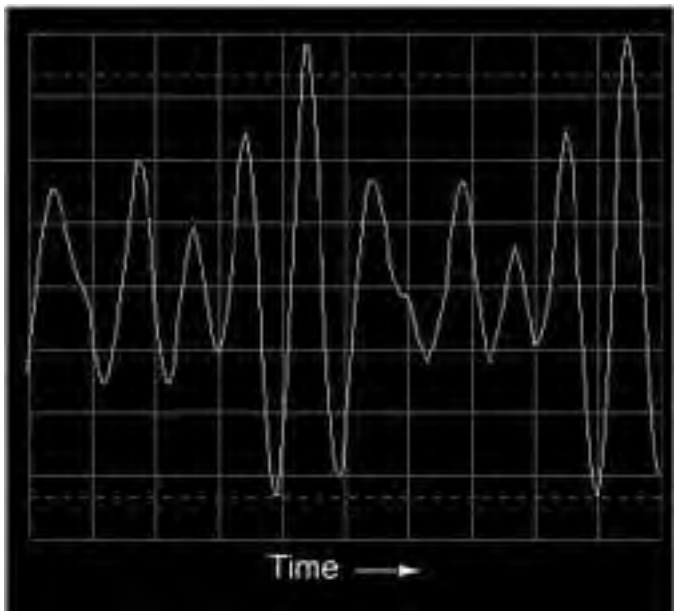


Figure 7.25: *Oscilloscape display: three tones.*

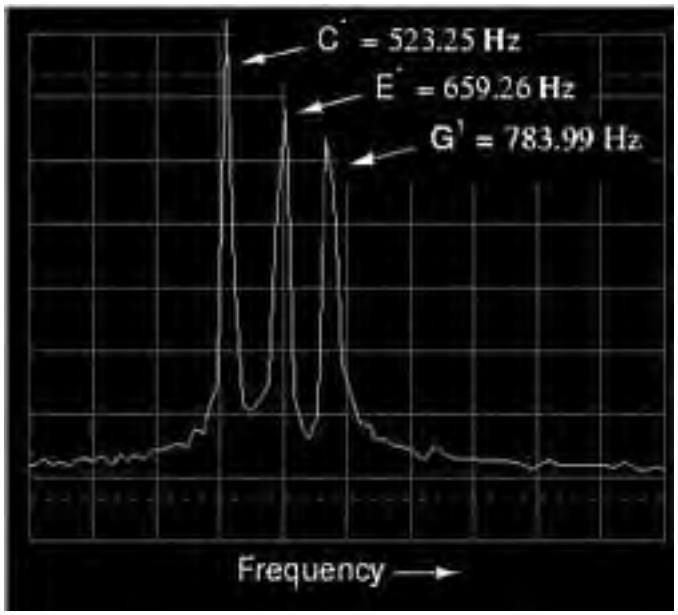


Figure 7.26: *Spectrum analyzer display: three tones.*

Figure 7.27: *Oscilloscope display: waveshape of a trumpet tone.*

peaks on the spectrum analyzer display: (Figure 7.28)

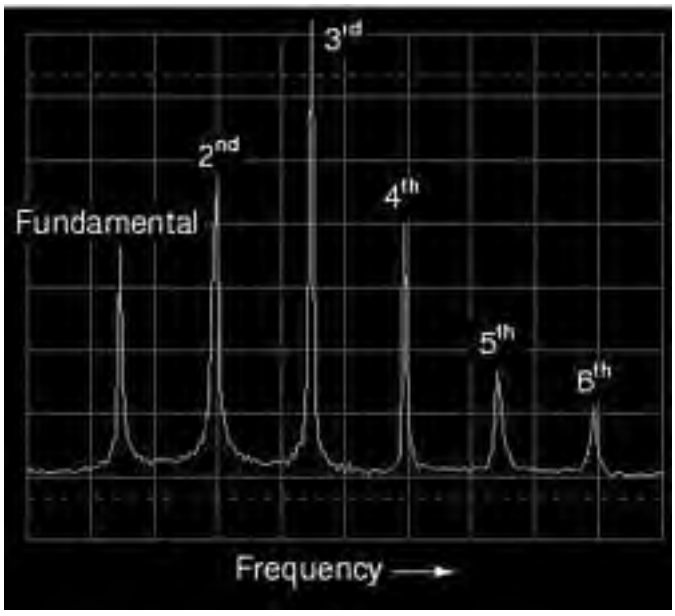


Figure 7.28: *Spectrum of a trumpet tone.*

Indeed we do! The fundamental frequency component of 523.25 Hz is represented by the left-most peak, with each successive harmonic represented as its own peak along the width of the analyzer screen. The second harmonic is twice the frequency of the fundamental (1046.5 Hz), the third harmonic three times the fundamental (1569.75 Hz), and so on. This display only shows the first six harmonics, but there are many more comprising this complex tone.

Trying a different instrument voice (the accordion) on the keyboard, we obtain a similarly complex oscilloscope (time-domain) plot (Figure 7.29) and spectrum analyzer (frequency-domain) display: (Figure 7.30)

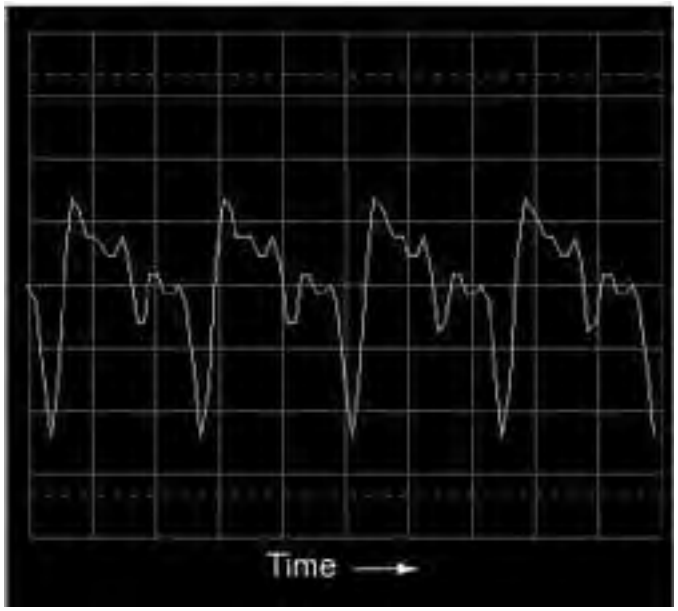


Figure 7.29: *Oscilloscope display: waveshape of accordion tone.*

Note the differences in relative harmonic amplitudes (peak heights) on the spectrum displays for trumpet and accordion. Both instrument tones contain harmonics all the way from 1st (fundamental) to 6th (and beyond!), but the proportions aren't the same. Each instrument has a unique harmonic "signature" to its tone. Bear in mind that all this complexity is in reference to *a single note* played with these two instrument "voices." Multiple notes played on an accordion, for example, would create a much more complex mixture of frequencies than what is seen here.

The analytical power of the oscilloscope and spectrum analyzer permit us to derive general rules about waveforms and their harmonic spectra from real waveform examples. We already know that any deviation from a pure sine-wave results in the equivalent of a mixture of multiple sine-wave waveforms at different amplitudes and frequencies. However, close observation allows us to be more specific than this. Note, for example, the time- (Figure 7.31) and frequency-domain (Figure 7.32) plots for a waveform approximating a square wave:

According to the spectrum analysis, this waveform contains *no* even harmonics, only odd. Although this display doesn't show frequencies past the sixth harmonic, the pattern of odd-only

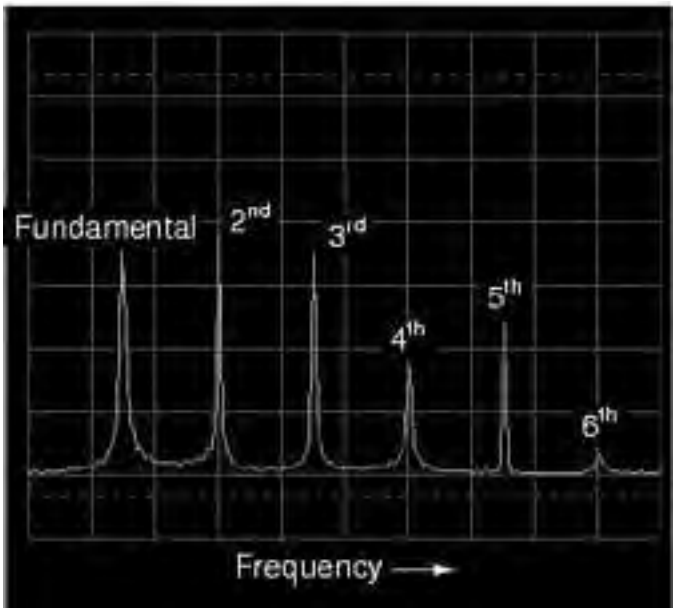


Figure 7.30: *Spectrum of accordion tone.*

Figure 7.31: *Oscilloscope time-domain display of a square wave*

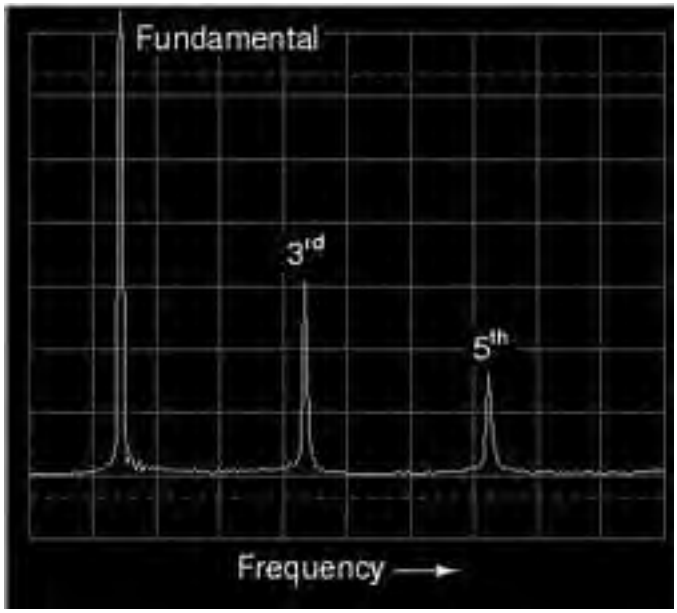


Figure 7.32: *Spectrum (frequency-domain) of a square wave.*

harmonics in descending amplitude continues indefinitely. This should come as no surprise, as we've already seen with SPICE that a square wave is comprised of an infinitude of odd harmonics. The trumpet and accordion tones, however, contained *both* even and odd harmonics. This difference in harmonic content is noteworthy. Let's continue our investigation with an analysis of a triangle wave: (Figure 7.33)

In this waveform there are practically no even harmonics: (Figure 7.34) the only significant frequency peaks on the spectrum analyzer display belong to odd-numbered multiples of the fundamental frequency. Tiny peaks can be seen for the second, fourth, and sixth harmonics, but this is due to imperfections in this particular triangle waveshape (once again, artifacts of the test equipment used in this analysis). A perfect triangle waveshape produces no even harmonics, just like a perfect square wave. It should be obvious from inspection that the harmonic spectrum of the triangle wave is not identical to the spectrum of the square wave: the respective harmonic peaks are of different heights. However, the two different waveforms are common in their lack of even harmonics.

Let's examine another waveform, this one very similar to the triangle wave, except that its rise-time is not the same as its fall-time. Known as a *sawtooth wave*, its oscilloscope plot reveals it to be aptly named: (Figure 7.35)

When the spectrum analysis of this waveform is plotted, we see a result that is quite different from that of the regular triangle wave, for this analysis shows the strong presence of even-numbered harmonics (second and fourth): (Figure 7.36)

The distinction between a waveform having even harmonics versus no even harmonics resides in the difference between a triangle waveshape and a sawtooth waveshape. That difference is *symmetry* above and below the horizontal centerline of the wave. A waveform that is

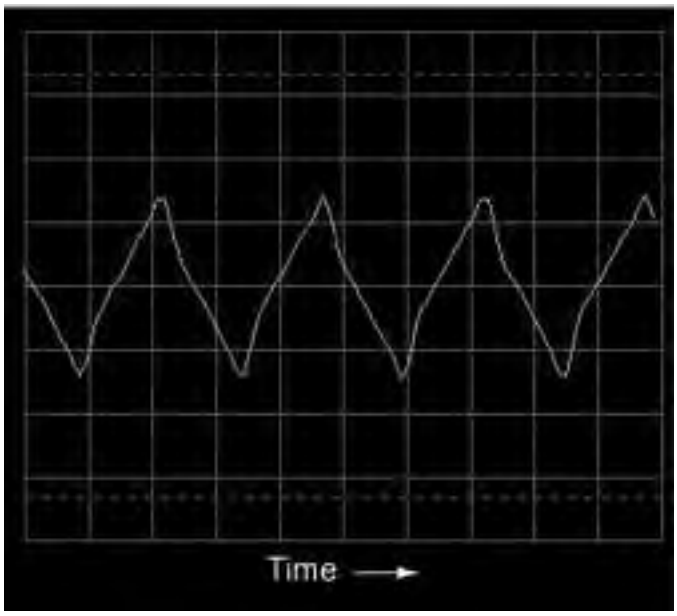


Figure 7.33: *Oscilloscope time-domain display of a triangle wave.*

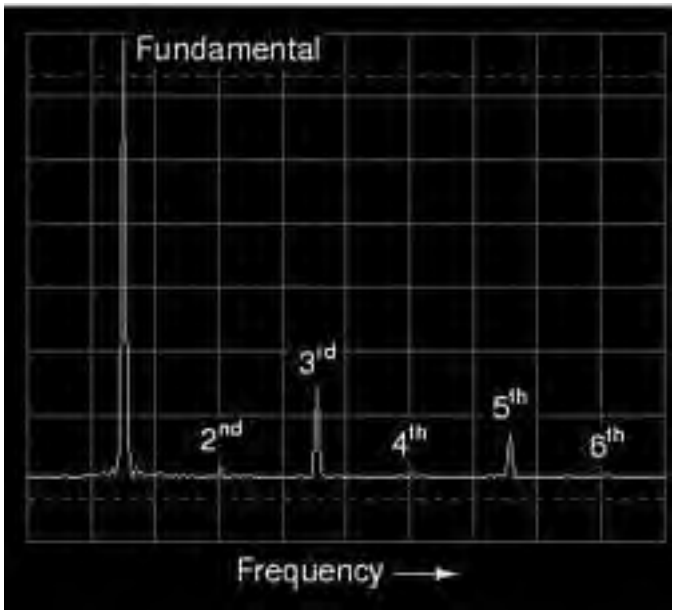


Figure 7.34: *Spectrum of a triangle wave.*

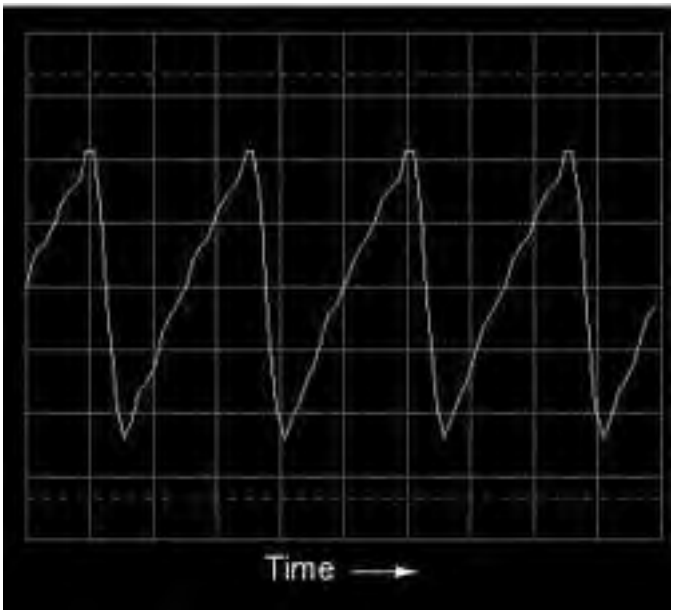


Figure 7.35: *Time-domain display of a sawtooth wave.*

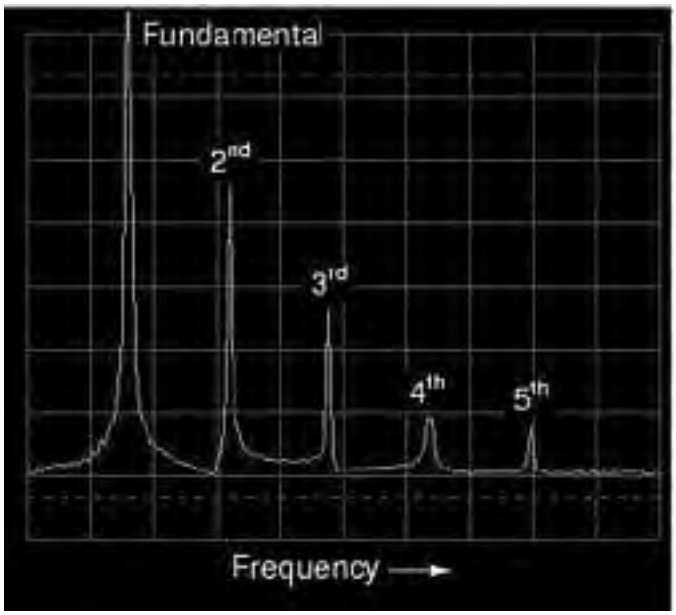


Figure 7.36: *Frequency-domain display of a sawtooth wave.*

symmetrical above and below its centerline (the shape on both sides mirror each other precisely) will contain *no* even-numbered harmonics. (Figure 7.37)

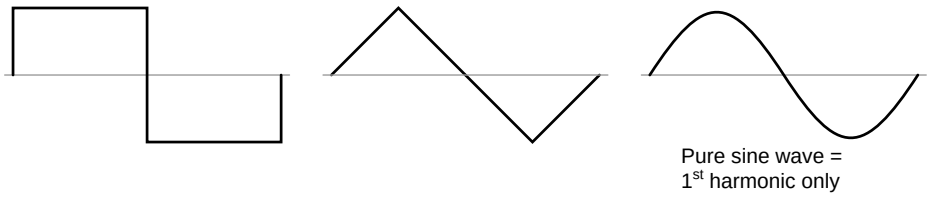


Figure 7.37: *Waveforms symmetric about their x-axis center line contain only odd harmonics.*

Square waves, triangle waves, and pure sine waves all exhibit this symmetry, and all are devoid of even harmonics. Waveforms like the trumpet tone, the accordion tone, and the sawtooth wave are unsymmetrical around their centerlines and therefore *do* contain even harmonics. (Figure 7.38)

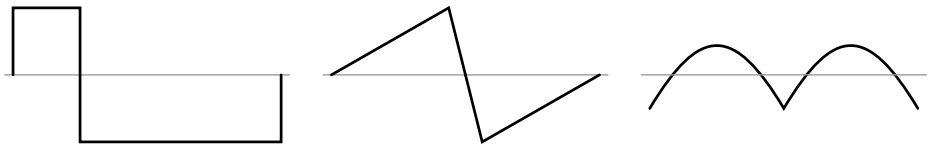


Figure 7.38: *Asymmetric waveforms contain even harmonics.*

This principle of centerline symmetry should not be confused with symmetry around the *zero* line. In the examples shown, the horizontal centerline of the waveform happens to be zero volts on the time-domain graph, but this has nothing to do with harmonic content. This rule of harmonic content (even harmonics only with unsymmetrical waveforms) applies whether or not the waveform is shifted above or below zero volts with a "DC component." For further clarification, I will show the same sets of waveforms, shifted with DC voltage, and note that their harmonic contents are unchanged. (Figure 7.39)

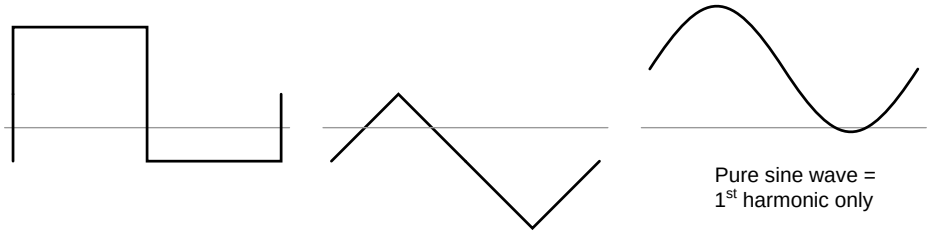


Figure 7.39: *These waveforms are composed exclusively of odd harmonics.*

Again, the amount of DC voltage present in a waveform has nothing to do with that waveform's harmonic frequency content. (Figure 7.40)

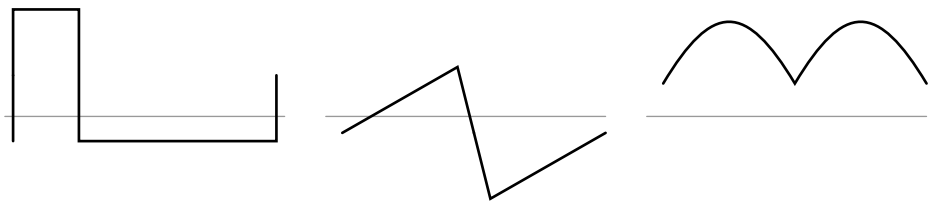


Figure 7.40: *These waveforms contain even harmonics.*

Why is this harmonic rule-of-thumb an important rule to know? It can help us comprehend the relationship between harmonics in AC circuits and specific circuit components. Since most sources of sine-wave distortion in AC power circuits tend to be symmetrical, even-numbered harmonics are rarely seen in those applications. This is good to know if you're a power system designer and are planning ahead for harmonic reduction: you only have to concern yourself with mitigating the odd harmonic frequencies, even harmonics being practically nonexistent. Also, if you happen to measure even harmonics in an AC circuit with a spectrum analyzer or frequency meter, you know that something in that circuit must be *unsymmetrically* distorting the sine-wave voltage or current, and that clue may be helpful in locating the source of a problem (look for components or conditions more likely to distort one half-cycle of the AC waveform more than the other).

Now that we have this rule to guide our interpretation of nonsinusoidal waveforms, it makes more sense that a waveform like that produced by a rectifier circuit should contain such strong even harmonics, there being no symmetry at all above and below center.

- **REVIEW:**
- Waveforms that are symmetrical above and below their horizontal centerlines contain no even-numbered harmonics.
- The amount of DC "bias" voltage present (a waveform's "DC component") has no impact on that wave's harmonic frequency content.

7.5 Circuit effects

The principle of non-sinusoidal, repeating waveforms being equivalent to a series of sine waves at different frequencies is a fundamental property of waves in general and it has great practical import in the study of AC circuits. It means that any time we have a waveform that isn't perfectly sine-wave-shaped, the circuit in question will react as though its having an array of different frequency voltages imposed on it at once.

When an AC circuit is subjected to a source voltage consisting of a mixture of frequencies, the components in that circuit respond to each constituent frequency in a different way. Any reactive component such as a capacitor or an inductor will simultaneously present a unique amount of impedance to each and every frequency present in a circuit. Thankfully, the analysis of such circuits is made relatively easy by applying the *Superposition Theorem*, regarding the multiple-frequency source as a set of single-frequency voltage sources connected in series, and

analyzing the circuit for one source at a time, summing the results at the end to determine the aggregate total:

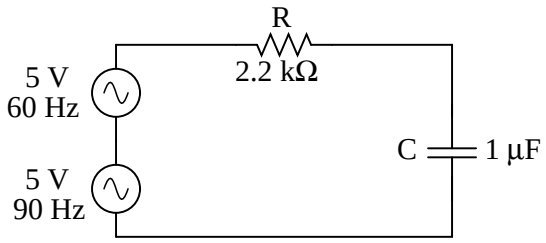


Figure 7.41: *Circuit driven by a combination of frequencies: 60 Hz and 90 Hz.*

Analyzing circuit for 60 Hz source alone:

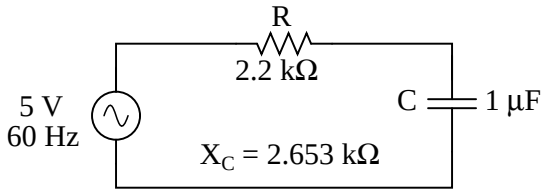


Figure 7.42: *Circuit for solving 60 Hz.*

	R	C	Total	
E	2.0377 + j2.4569 3.1919 ∠ 50.328°	2.9623 - j2.4569 3.8486 ∠ -39.6716°	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	926.22μ + j1.1168m 1.4509m ∠ 50.328°	926.22μ + j1.1168m 1.4509m ∠ 50.328°	926.22μ + j1.1168m 1.4509m ∠ 50.328°	Amps
Z	2.2k + j0 2.2k ∠ 0°	0 - j2.653k 2.653k ∠ -90°	2.2k - j2.653k 3.446k ∠ -50.328°	Ohms

Analyzing the circuit for 90 Hz source alone:

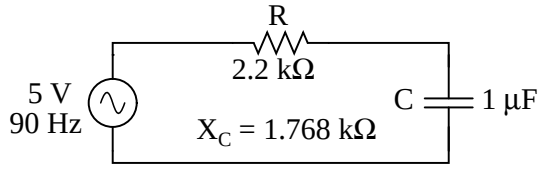


Figure 7.43: *Circuit of solving 90 Hz.*

	R	C	Total	
E	3.0375 + j2.4415 3.8971 ∠ 38.793°	1.9625 - j2.4415 3.1325 ∠ -51.207°	5 + j0 5 ∠ 0°	Volts
I	1.3807m + j1.1098m 1.7714m ∠ 38.793°	1.3807m + j1.1098m 1.7714m ∠ 38.793°	1.3807m + j1.1098m 1.7714m ∠ 38.793°	Amps
Z	2.2k + j0 2.2k ∠ 0°	0 - j1.768k 1.768k ∠ -90°	2.2k - j1.768k 2.823k ∠ -38.793°	Ohms

Superimposing the voltage drops across R and C, we get:

E_R = [3.1919 V ∠ 50.328° (60 Hz)] + [3.8971 V ∠ 38.793° (90 Hz)]

E_C = [3.8486 V ∠ -39.6716° (60 Hz)] + [3.1325 V ∠ -51.207° (90 Hz)]

Because the two voltages across each component are at different frequencies, we cannot consolidate them into a single voltage figure as we could if we were adding together two voltages of different amplitude and/or phase angle at the same frequency. Complex number notation give us the ability to represent waveform amplitude (polar magnitude) and phase angle (polar angle), but not frequency.

What we can tell from this application of the superposition theorem is that there will be a greater 60 Hz voltage dropped across the capacitor than a 90 Hz voltage. Just the opposite is true for the resistor's voltage drop. This is worthy to note, especially in light of the fact that the two source voltages are equal. It is this kind of unequal circuit response to signals of differing frequency that will be our specific focus in the next chapter.

We can also apply the superposition theorem to the analysis of a circuit powered by a non-sinusoidal voltage, such as a square wave. If we know the Fourier series (multiple sine/cosine wave equivalent) of that wave, we can regard it as originating from a series-connected string of multiple sinusoidal voltage sources at the appropriate amplitudes, frequencies, and phase shifts. Needless to say, this can be a laborious task for some waveforms (an accurate square-wave Fourier Series is considered to be expressed out to the ninth harmonic, or five sine waves in all!), but it is possible. I mention this not to scare you, but to inform you of the potential complexity lurking behind seemingly simple waveforms. A real-life circuit will respond just the same to being powered by a square wave as being powered by an *infinite* series of sine waves of odd-multiple frequencies and diminishing amplitudes. This has been known to translate into unexpected circuit resonances, transformer and inductor core overheating due to eddy currents, electromagnetic noise over broad ranges of the frequency spectrum, and the like. Technicians and engineers need to be made aware of the potential effects of non-sinusoidal waveforms in reactive circuits.

Harmonics are known to manifest their effects in the form of electromagnetic radiation as well. Studies have been performed on the potential hazards of using portable computers aboard passenger aircraft, citing the fact that computers' high frequency square-wave "clock" voltage signals are capable of generating radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft's electronic navigation equipment. It's bad enough that typical microprocessor clock signal frequencies are within the range of aircraft radio frequency bands, but worse yet is the fact that the harmonic multiples of those fundamental frequencies span an even larger range, due to the fact that clock signal voltages are square-wave in shape and not sine-wave.

Electromagnetic "emissions" of this nature can be a problem in industrial applications, too, with harmonics abounding in very large quantities due to (nonlinear) electronic control of motor and electric furnace power. The fundamental power line frequency may only be 60 Hz, but those harmonic frequency multiples theoretically extend into infinitely high frequency ranges. Low frequency power line voltage and current doesn't radiate into space very well as electromagnetic energy, but high frequencies do.

Also, capacitive and inductive "coupling" caused by close-proximity conductors is usually more severe at high frequencies. Signal wiring nearby power wiring will tend to "pick up" harmonic interference from the power wiring to a far greater extent than pure sine-wave interference. This problem can manifest itself in industry when old motor controls are replaced with new, solid-state electronic motor controls providing greater energy efficiency. Suddenly there may be weird electrical noise being impressed upon signal wiring that never used to be there, because the old controls never generated harmonics, and those high-frequency harmonic voltages and currents tend to inductively and capacitively "couple" better to nearby conductors than any 60 Hz signals from the old controls used to.

- **REVIEW:**
- Any regular (repeating), non-sinusoidal waveform is equivalent to a particular series of sine/cosine waves of different frequencies, phases, and amplitudes, plus a DC offset voltage if necessary. The mathematical process for determining the sinusoidal waveform equivalent for any waveform is called *Fourier analysis*.
- Multiple-frequency voltage sources can be simulated for analysis by connecting several single-frequency voltage sources in series. Analysis of voltages and currents is accomplished by using the superposition theorem. NOTE: superimposed voltages and currents of different frequencies *cannot* be added together in complex number form, since complex numbers only account for amplitude and phase shift, not frequency!
- Harmonics can cause problems by impressing unwanted ("noise") voltage signals upon nearby circuits. These unwanted signals may come by way of capacitive coupling, inductive coupling, electromagnetic radiation, or a combination thereof.

7.6 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 8

FILTERS

Contents

8.1 What is a filter?

It is sometimes desirable to have circuits capable of selectively filtering one frequency or range of frequencies out of a mix of different frequencies in a circuit. A circuit designed to perform this frequency selection is called a *filter circuit*, or simply a *filter*. A common need for filter circuits is in high-performance stereo systems, where certain ranges of audio frequencies need to be amplified or suppressed for best sound quality and power efficiency. You may be familiar with *equalizers*, which allow the amplitudes of several frequency ranges to be adjusted to suit the listener's taste and acoustic properties of the listening area. You may also be familiar with *crossover networks*, which block certain ranges of frequencies from reaching speakers. A tweeter (high-frequency speaker) is inefficient at reproducing low-frequency signals such as drum beats, so a crossover circuit is connected between the tweeter and the stereo's output terminals to block low-frequency signals, only passing high-frequency signals to the speaker's connection terminals. This gives better audio system efficiency and thus better performance. Both equalizers and crossover networks are examples of filters, designed to accomplish filtering of certain frequencies.

Another practical application of filter circuits is in the "conditioning" of non-sinusoidal voltage waveforms in power circuits. Some electronic devices are sensitive to the presence of harmonics in the power supply voltage, and so require power conditioning for proper operation. If a distorted sine-wave voltage behaves like a series of harmonic waveforms added to the fundamental frequency, then it should be possible to construct a filter circuit that only allows the fundamental waveform frequency to pass through, blocking all (higher-frequency) harmonics.

We will be studying the design of several elementary filter circuits in this lesson. To reduce the load of math on the reader, I will make extensive use of SPICE as an analysis tool, displaying Bode plots (amplitude versus frequency) for the various kinds of filters. Bear in mind, though, that these circuits can be analyzed over several points of frequency by repeated series-parallel analysis, much like the previous example with two sources (60 and 90 Hz), if the student is willing to invest a lot of time working and re-working circuit calculations for each frequency.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *filter* is an AC circuit that separates some frequencies from others within mixed-frequency signals.
- Audio *equalizers* and *crossover networks* are two well-known applications of filter circuits.
- A *Bode plot* is a graph plotting waveform amplitude or phase on one axis and frequency on the other.

8.2 Low-pass filters

By definition, a low-pass filter is a circuit offering easy passage to low-frequency signals and difficult passage to high-frequency signals. There are two basic kinds of circuits capable of accomplishing this objective, and many variations of each one: The inductive low-pass filter in Figure 8.1 and the capacitive low-pass filter in Figure 8.3

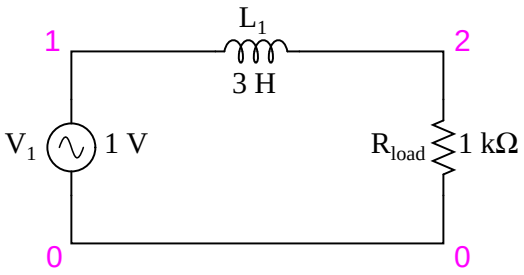


Figure 8.1: *Inductive low-pass filter*

The inductor's impedance increases with increasing frequency. This high impedance in series tends to block high-frequency signals from getting to the load. This can be demonstrated with a SPICE analysis: (Figure 8.2)

```
inductive lowpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
l1 1 2 3
rload 2 0 1k
.ac lin 20 1 200
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

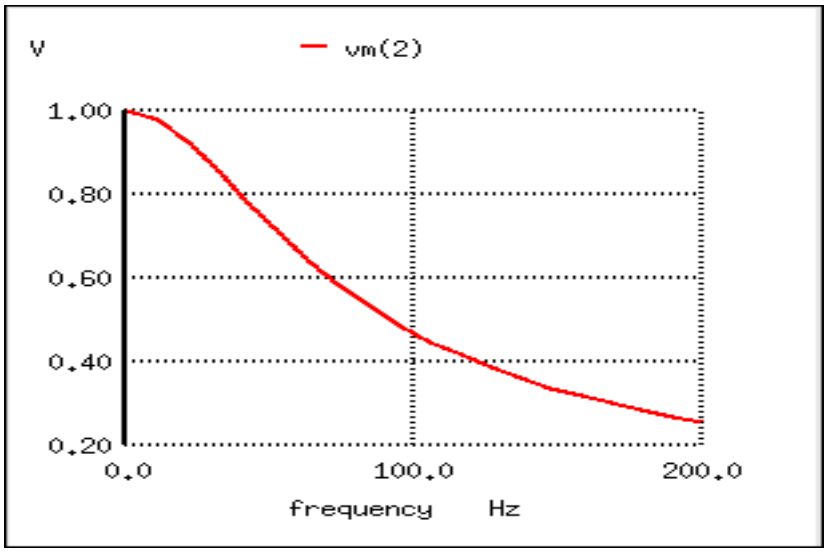


Figure 8.2: *The response of an inductive low-pass filter falls off with increasing frequency.*

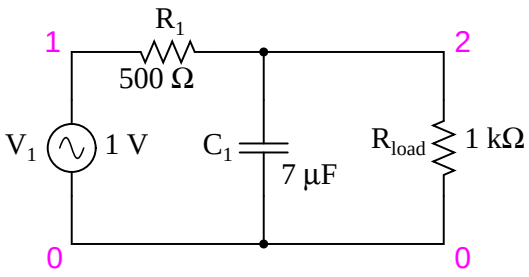


Figure 8.3: *Capacitive low-pass filter.*

The capacitor's impedance decreases with increasing frequency. This low impedance in parallel with the load resistance tends to short out high-frequency signals, dropping most of the voltage across series resistor R_1. (Figure 8.4)

```
capacitive lowpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 500
c1 2 0 7u
rload 2 0 1k
.ac lin 20 30 150
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

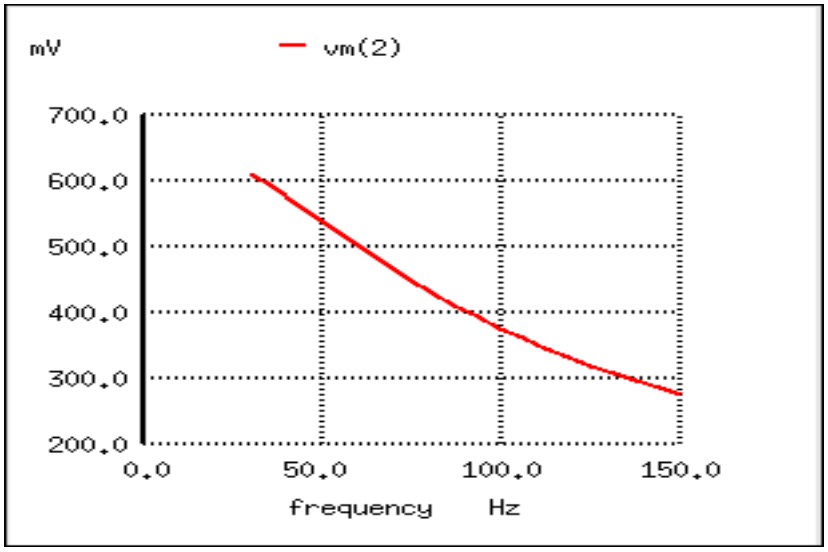


Figure 8.4: *The response of a capacitive low-pass filter falls off with increasing frequency.*

The inductive low-pass filter is the pinnacle of simplicity, with only one component comprising the filter. The capacitive version of this filter is not that much more complex, with only a resistor and capacitor needed for operation. However, despite their increased complexity, capacitive filter designs are generally preferred over inductive because capacitors tend to be "purer" reactive components than inductors and therefore are more predictable in their behavior. By "pure" I mean that capacitors exhibit little resistive effects than inductors, making them almost 100% reactive. Inductors, on the other hand, typically exhibit significant dissipative (resistor-like) effects, both in the long lengths of wire used to make them, and in the magnetic losses of the core material. Capacitors also tend to participate less in "coupling" effects with other components (generate and/or receive interference from other components via mutual electric or magnetic fields) than inductors, and are less expensive.

However, the inductive low-pass filter is often preferred in AC-DC power supplies to filter out the AC "ripple" waveform created when AC is converted (rectified) into DC, passing only

the pure DC component. The primary reason for this is the requirement of low filter resistance for the output of such a power supply. A capacitive low-pass filter requires an extra resistance in series with the source, whereas the inductive low-pass filter does not. In the design of a high-current circuit like a DC power supply where additional series resistance is undesirable, the inductive low-pass filter is the better design choice. On the other hand, if low weight and compact size are higher priorities than low internal supply resistance in a power supply design, the capacitive low-pass filter might make more sense.

All low-pass filters are rated at a certain *cutoff frequency*. That is, the frequency above which the output voltage falls below 70.7% of the input voltage. This cutoff percentage of 70.7 is not really arbitrary, all though it may seem so at first glance. In a simple capacitive/resistive low-pass filter, it is the frequency at which capacitive reactance in ohms equals resistance in ohms. In a simple capacitive low-pass filter (one resistor, one capacitor), the cutoff frequency is given as:

$$f_{cutoff} = \frac{1}{2\pi RC}$$

Inserting the values of R and C from the last SPICE simulation into this formula, we arrive at a cutoff frequency of 45.473 Hz. However, when we look at the plot generated by the SPICE simulation, we see the load voltage well below 70.7% of the source voltage (1 volt) even at a frequency as low as 30 Hz, below the calculated cutoff point. What's wrong? The problem here is that the load resistance of 1 kΩ affects the frequency response of the filter, skewing it down from what the formula told us it would be. Without that load resistance in place, SPICE produces a Bode plot whose numbers make more sense: (Figure 8.5)

```
capacitive lowpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 500
c1 2 0 7u
* note: no load resistor!
.ac lin 20 40 50
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

$$f_{cutoff} = 1/(2\pi RC) = 1/(2\pi(500\ \Omega)(7\ \mu F)) = 45.473\ Hz$$

When dealing with filter circuits, it is always important to note that the response of the filter depends on the filter's component values *and* the impedance of the load. If a cutoff frequency equation fails to give consideration to load impedance, it assumes no load and will fail to give accurate results for a real-life filter conducting power to a load.

One frequent application of the capacitive low-pass filter principle is in the design of circuits having components or sections sensitive to electrical "noise." As mentioned at the beginning of the last chapter, sometimes AC signals can "couple" from one circuit to another via capacitance (C_{stray}) and/or mutual inductance (M_{stray}) between the two sets of conductors. A prime example of this is unwanted AC signals ("noise") becoming impressed on DC power lines supplying sensitive circuits: (Figure 8.6)

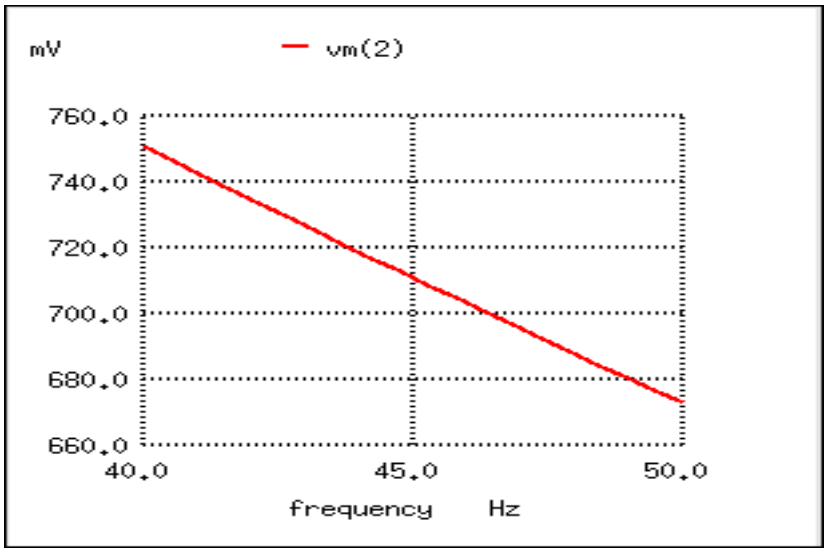


Figure 8.5: *For the capacitive low-pass filter with R = 500 Ω and C = 7 μF, the Output should be 70.7% at 45.473 Hz.*

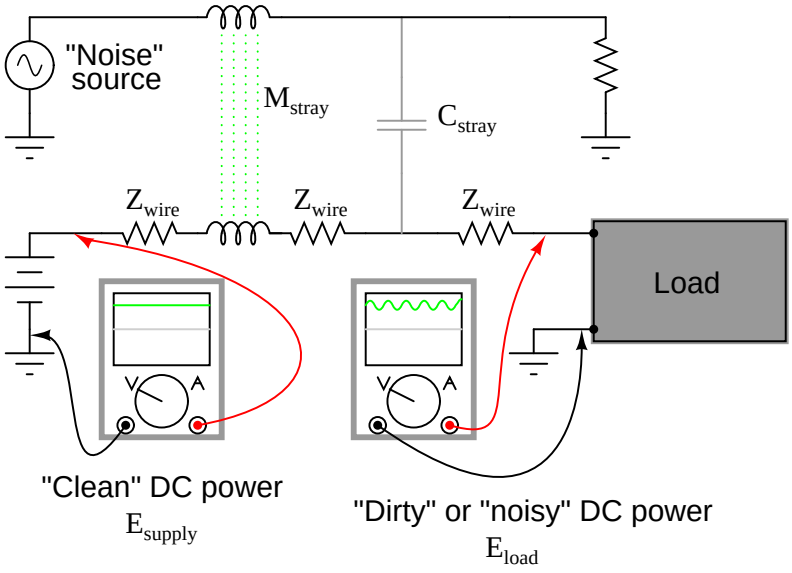


Figure 8.6: *Noise is coupled by stray capacitance and mutual inductance into "clean" DC power.*

The oscilloscope-meter on the left shows the "clean" power from the DC voltage source. After coupling with the AC noise source via stray mutual inductance and stray capacitance, though, the voltage as measured at the load terminals is now a mix of AC and DC, the AC being unwanted. Normally, one would expect E_{load} to be precisely identical to E_{source}, because the uninterrupted conductors connecting them should make the two sets of points electrically common. However, power conductor impedance allows the two voltages to differ, which means the noise magnitude can vary at different points in the DC system.

If we wish to prevent such "noise" from reaching the DC load, all we need to do is connect a low-pass filter near the load to block any coupled signals. In its simplest form, this is nothing more than a capacitor connected directly across the power terminals of the load, the capacitor behaving as a very low impedance to any AC noise, and shorting it out. Such a capacitor is called a *decoupling capacitor*: (Figure 8.7)

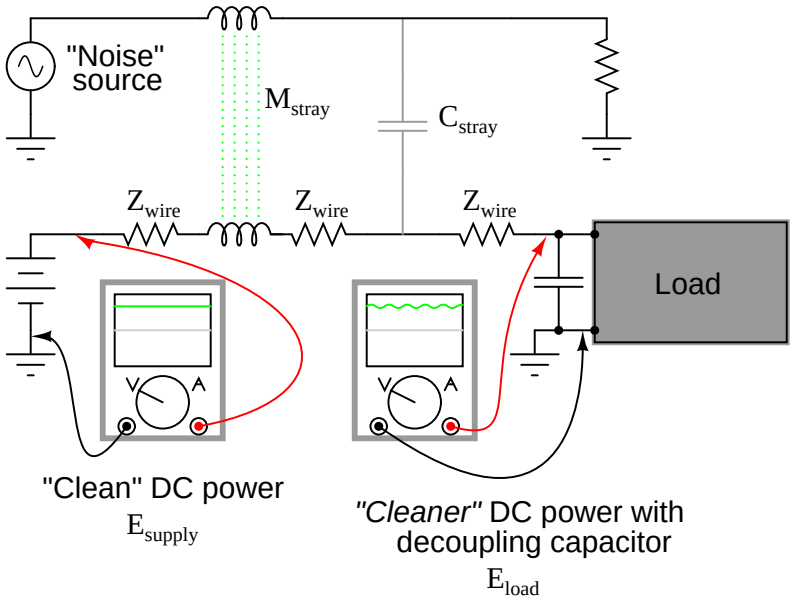


Figure 8.7: *Decoupling capacitor, applied to load, filters noise from DC power supply.*

A cursory glance at a crowded printed-circuit board (PCB) will typically reveal decoupling capacitors scattered throughout, usually located as close as possible to the sensitive DC loads. Capacitor size is usually 0.1 μF or more, a minimum amount of capacitance needed to produce a low enough impedance to short out any noise. Greater capacitance will do a better job at filtering noise, but size and economics limit decoupling capacitors to meager values.

- **REVIEW:**
- A low-pass filter allows for easy passage of low-frequency signals from source to load, and difficult passage of high-frequency signals.
- Inductive low-pass filters insert an inductor in series with the load; capacitive low-pass filters insert a resistor in series and a capacitor in parallel with the load. The former

filter design tries to "block" the unwanted frequency signal while the latter tries to short it out.

- The *cutoff frequency* for a low-pass filter is that frequency at which the output (load) voltage equals 70.7% of the input (source) voltage. Above the cutoff frequency, the output voltage is lower than 70.7% of the input, and vice versa.

8.3 High-pass filters

A high-pass filter's task is just the opposite of a low-pass filter: to offer easy passage of a high-frequency signal and difficult passage to a low-frequency signal. As one might expect, the inductive (Figure 8.10) and capacitive (Figure 8.8) versions of the high-pass filter are just the opposite of their respective low-pass filter designs:

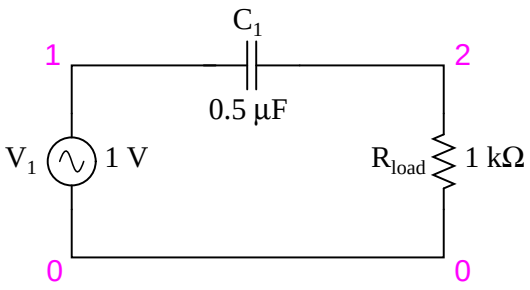


Figure 8.8: *Capacitive high-pass filter.*

The capacitor's impedance (Figure 8.8) increases with decreasing frequency. (Figure 8.9) This high impedance in series tends to block low-frequency signals from getting to load.

```
capacitive highpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
c1 1 2 0.5u
rload 2 0 1k
.ac lin 20 1 200
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

The inductor's impedance (Figure 8.10) decreases with decreasing frequency. (Figure 8.11) This low impedance in parallel tends to short out low-frequency signals from getting to the load resistor. As a consequence, most of the voltage gets dropped across series resistor R_1.

This time, the capacitive design is the simplest, requiring only one component above and beyond the load. And, again, the reactive purity of capacitors over inductors tends to favor their use in filter design, especially with high-pass filters where high frequencies commonly cause inductors to behave strangely due to the skin effect and electromagnetic core losses.

As with low-pass filters, high-pass filters have a rated *cutoff frequency*, above which the output voltage increases above 70.7% of the input voltage. Just as in the case of the capacitive

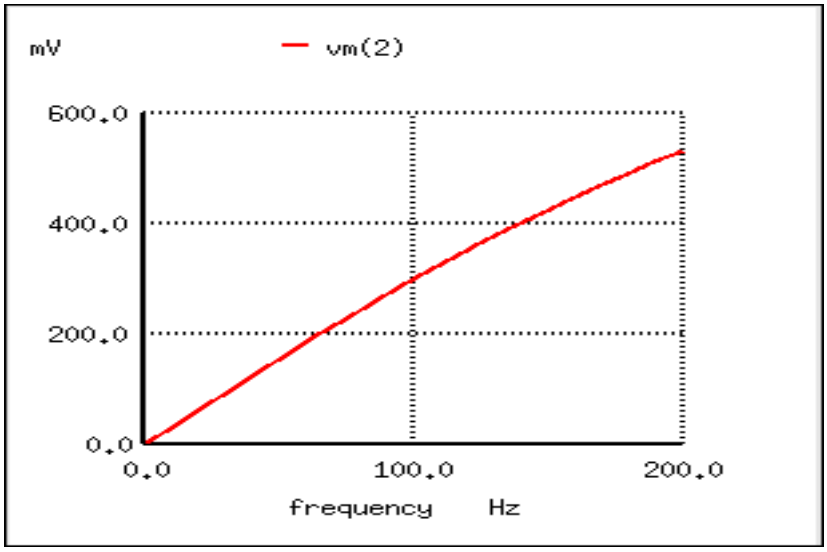


Figure 8.9: *The response of the capacitive high-pass filter increases with frequency.*

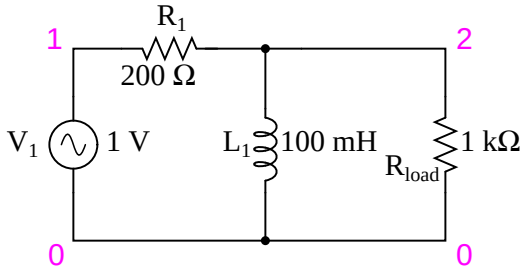


Figure 8.10: *Inductive high-pass filter.*

```
inductive highpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 200
l1 2 0 100m
rload 2 0 1k
.ac lin 20 1 200
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

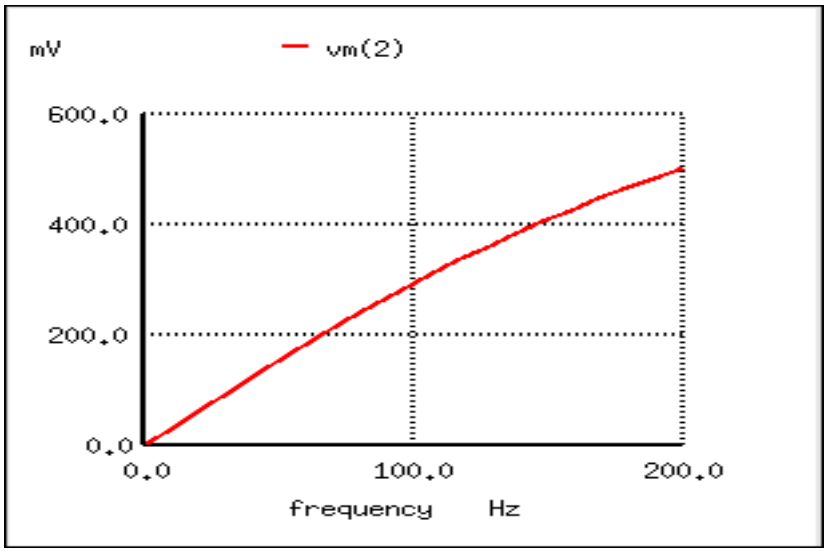


Figure 8.11: *The response of the inductive high-pass filter increases with frequency.*

low-pass filter circuit, the capacitive high-pass filter's cutoff frequency can be found with the same formula:

$$f_{cutoff} = \frac{1}{2\pi RC}$$

In the example circuit, there is no resistance other than the load resistor, so that is the value for R in the formula.

Using a stereo system as a practical example, a capacitor connected in series with the tweeter (treble) speaker will serve as a high-pass filter, imposing a high impedance to low-frequency bass signals, thereby preventing that power from being wasted on a speaker inefficient for reproducing such sounds. In like fashion, an inductor connected in series with the woofer (bass) speaker will serve as a low-pass filter for the low frequencies that particular speaker is designed to reproduce. In this simple example circuit, the midrange speaker is subjected to the full spectrum of frequencies from the stereo's output. More elaborate filter networks are sometimes used, but this should give you the general idea. Also bear in mind that I'm only showing you one channel (either left or right) on this stereo system. A real stereo would have six speakers: 2 woofers, 2 midranges, and 2 tweeters.

For better performance yet, we might like to have some kind of filter circuit capable of passing frequencies that are between low (bass) and high (treble) to the midrange speaker so that none of the low- or high-frequency signal power is wasted on a speaker incapable of efficiently reproducing those sounds. What we would be looking for is called a *band-pass* filter, which is the topic of the next section.

- **REVIEW:**
- A high-pass filter allows for easy passage of high-frequency signals from source to load,

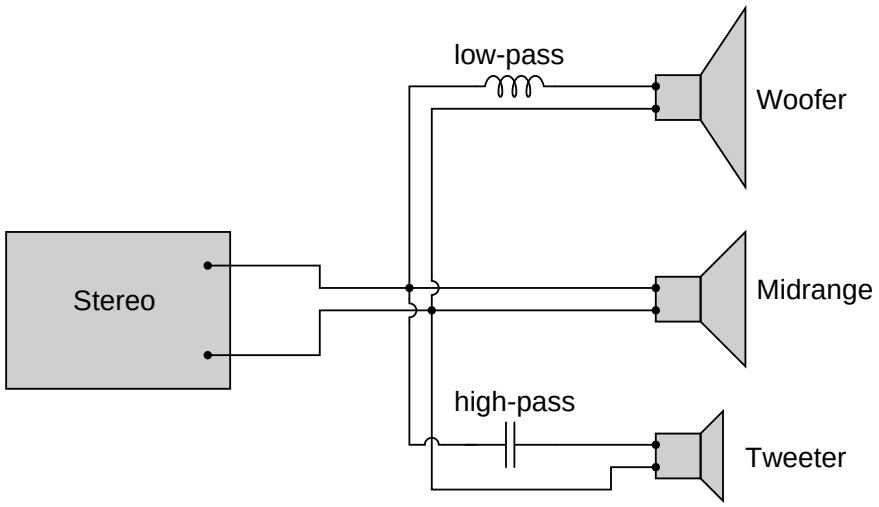


Figure 8.12: *High-pass filter routes high frequencies to tweeter, while low-pass filter routes lows to woofer.*

and difficult passage of low-frequency signals.

- Capacitive high-pass filters insert a capacitor in series with the load; inductive high-pass filters insert a resistor in series and an inductor in parallel with the load. The former filter design tries to "block" the unwanted frequency signal while the latter tries to short it out.
- The *cutoff frequency* for a high-pass filter is that frequency at which the output (load) voltage equals 70.7% of the input (source) voltage. Above the cutoff frequency, the output voltage is greater than 70.7% of the input, and vice versa.

8.4 Band-pass filters

There are applications where a particular band, or spread, or frequencies need to be filtered from a wider range of mixed signals. Filter circuits can be designed to accomplish this task by combining the properties of low-pass and high-pass into a single filter. The result is called a *band-pass* filter. Creating a bandpass filter from a low-pass and high-pass filter can be illustrated using block diagrams: (Figure 8.14)

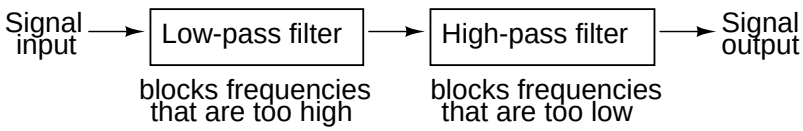


Figure 8.13: *System level block diagram of a band-pass filter.*

What emerges from the series combination of these two filter circuits is a circuit that will only allow passage of those frequencies that are neither too high nor too low. Using real components, here is what a typical schematic might look like Figure 8.14. The response of the band-pass filter is shown in (Figure 8.15)

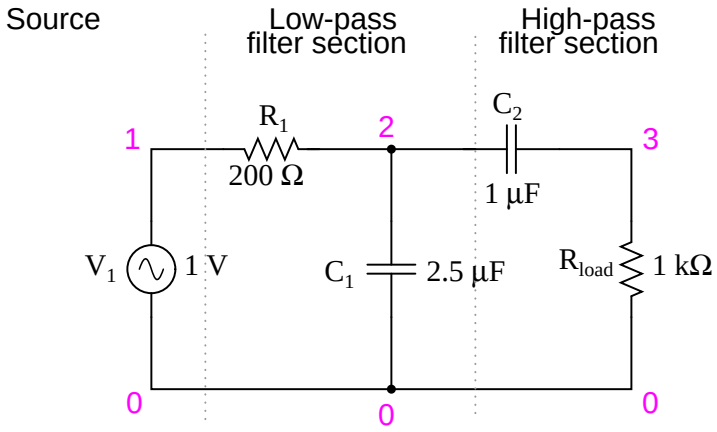


Figure 8.14: *Capacitive band-pass filter.*

```
capacitive bandpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 200
c1 2 0 2.5u
c2 2 3 1u
rload 3 0 1k
.ac lin 20 100 500
.plot ac v(3)
.end
```

Band-pass filters can also be constructed using inductors, but as mentioned before, the reactive "purity" of capacitors gives them a design advantage. If we were to design a bandpass filter using inductors, it might look something like Figure 8.16.

The fact that the high-pass section comes "first" in this design instead of the low-pass section makes no difference in its overall operation. It will still filter out all frequencies too high or too low.

While the general idea of combining low-pass and high-pass filters together to make a band-pass filter is sound, it is not without certain limitations. Because this type of band-pass filter works by relying on either section to *block* unwanted frequencies, it can be difficult to design such a filter to allow unhindered passage within the desired frequency range. Both the low-pass and high-pass sections will always be blocking signals to some extent, and their combined effort makes for an attenuated (reduced amplitude) signal at best, even at the peak of the "pass-band" frequency range. Notice the curve peak on the previous SPICE analysis: the load voltage of this filter never rises above 0.59 volts, although the source voltage is a full volt.

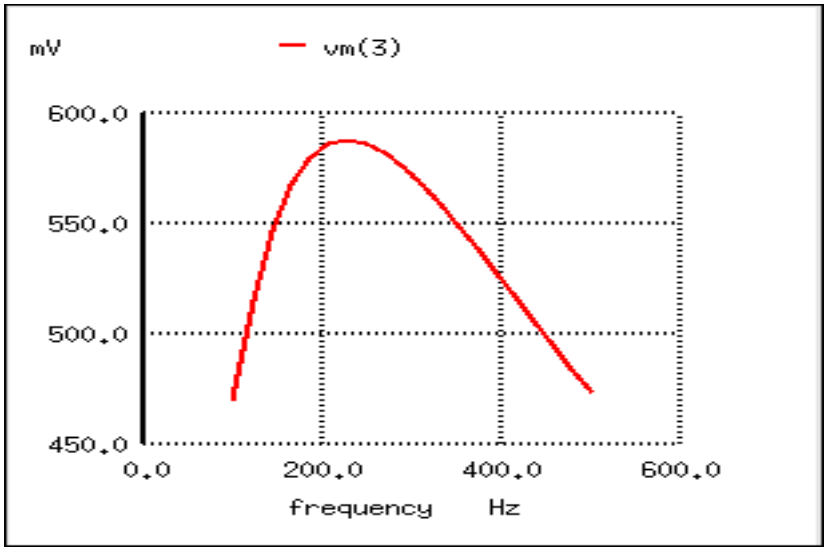


Figure 8.15: *The response of a capacitive bandpass filter peaks within a narrow frequency range.*

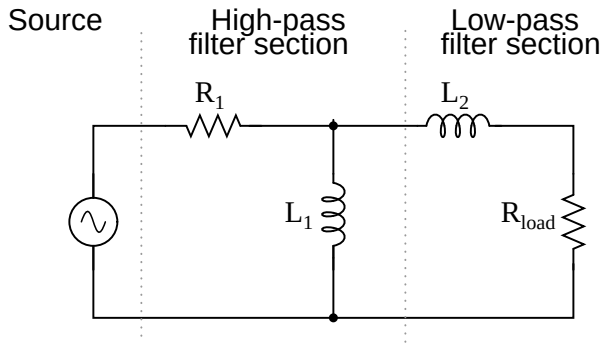


Figure 8.16: *Inductive band-pass filter.*

This signal attenuation becomes more pronounced if the filter is designed to be more selective (steeper curve, narrower band of passable frequencies).

There are other methods to achieve band-pass operation without sacrificing signal strength within the pass-band. We will discuss those methods a little later in this chapter.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *band-pass* filter works to screen out frequencies that are too low or too high, giving easy passage only to frequencies within a certain range.
- Band-pass filters can be made by stacking a low-pass filter on the end of a high-pass filter, or vice versa.
- "Attenuate" means to reduce or diminish in amplitude. When you turn down the volume control on your stereo, you are "attenuating" the signal being sent to the speakers.

8.5 Band-stop filters

Also called *band-elimination*, *band-reject*, or *notch* filters, this kind of filter passes all frequencies above and below a particular range set by the component values. Not surprisingly, it can be made out of a low-pass and a high-pass filter, just like the band-pass design, except that this time we connect the two filter sections in parallel with each other instead of in series. (Figure 8.17)

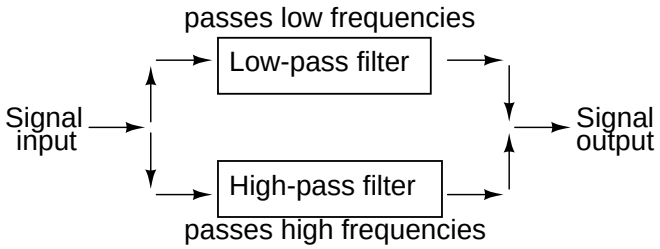


Figure 8.17: *System level block diagram of a band-stop filter.*

Constructed using two capacitive filter sections, it looks something like (Figure 8.18).

The low-pass filter section is comprised of R_1, R_2, and C_1 in a "T" configuration. The high-pass filter section is comprised of C_2, C_3, and R_3 in a "T" configuration as well. Together, this arrangement is commonly known as a "Twin-T" filter, giving sharp response when the component values are chosen in the following ratios:

Component value ratios for the "Twin-T" band-stop filter

$$R_1 = R_2 = 2(R_3)$$

$$C_2 = C_3 = (0.5)C_1$$

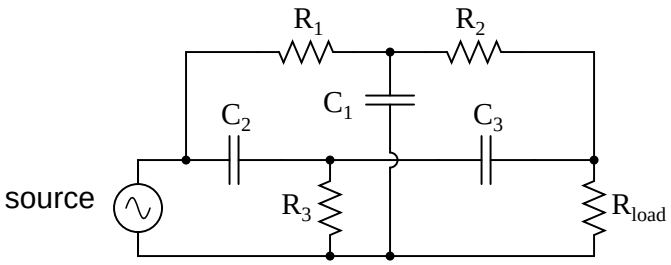


Figure 8.18: *"Twin-T" band-stop filter.*

Given these component ratios, the frequency of maximum rejection (the "notch frequency") can be calculated as follows:

$$f_{notch} = \frac{1}{4\pi R_3 C_3}$$

The impressive band-stopping ability of this filter is illustrated by the following SPICE analysis: (Figure 8.19)

```
twin-t bandstop filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 200
c1 2 0 2u
r2 2 3 200
c2 1 4 1u
r3 4 0 100
c3 4 3 1u
rload 3 0 1k
.ac lin 20 200 1.5k
.plot ac v(3)
.end
```

- **REVIEW:**
- A *band-stop* filter works to screen out frequencies that are within a certain range, giving easy passage only to frequencies outside of that range. Also known as *band-elimination*, *band-reject*, or *notch* filters.
- Band-stop filters can be made by placing a low-pass filter in parallel with a high-pass filter. Commonly, both the low-pass and high-pass filter sections are of the "T" configuration, giving the name "Twin-T" to the band-stop combination.
- The frequency of maximum attenuation is called the *notch* frequency.

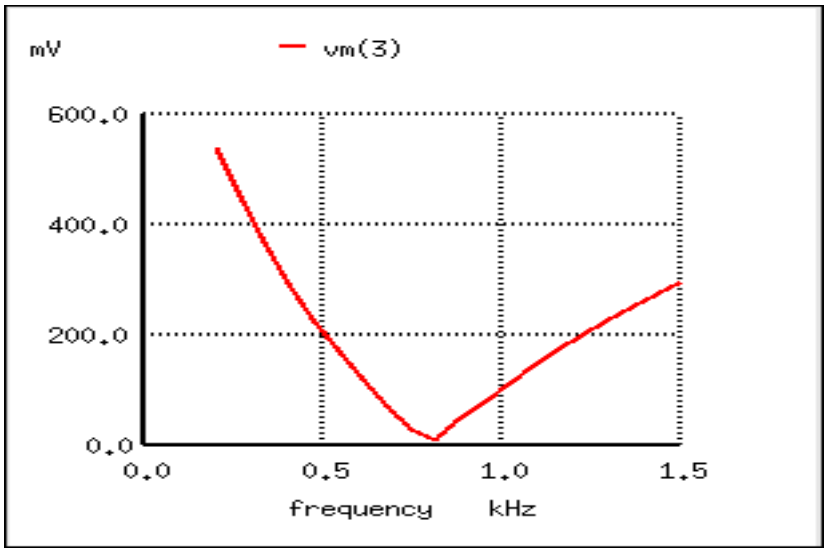


Figure 8.19: *Response of "twin-T" band-stop filter.*

8.6 Resonant filters

So far, the filter designs we've concentrated on have employed *either* capacitors *or* inductors, but never both at the same time. We should know by now that combinations of L and C will tend to resonate, and this property can be exploited in designing band-pass and band-stop filter circuits.

Series LC circuits give minimum impedance at resonance, while parallel LC ("tank") circuits give maximum impedance at their resonant frequency. Knowing this, we have two basic strategies for designing either band-pass or band-stop filters.

For band-pass filters, the two basic resonant strategies are this: series LC to pass a signal (Figure 8.20), or parallel LC (Figure 8.22) to short a signal. The two schemes will be contrasted and simulated here:

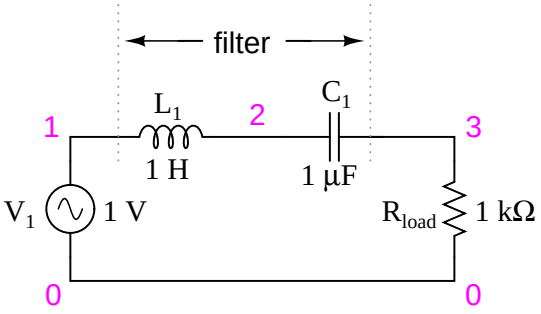


Figure 8.20: *Series resonant LC band-pass filter.*

Series LC components pass signal at resonance, and block signals of any other frequencies from getting to the load. (Figure 8.21)

```
series resonant bandpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
l1 1 2 1
c1 2 3 1u
rload 3 0 1k
.ac lin 20 50 250
.plot ac v(3)
.end
```

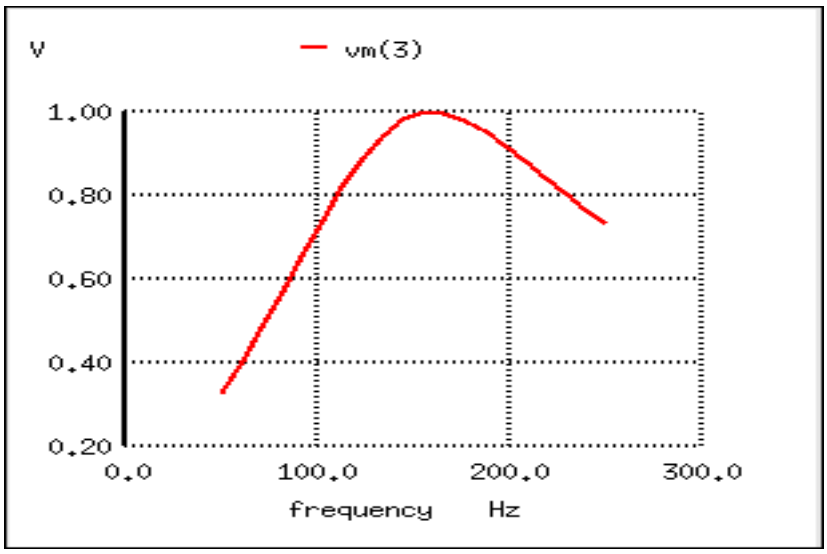


Figure 8.21: *Series resonant band-pass filter: voltage peaks at resonant frequency of 159.15 Hz.*

A couple of points to note: see how there is virtually no signal attenuation within the "pass band" (the range of frequencies near the load voltage peak), unlike the band-pass filters made from capacitors or inductors alone. Also, since this filter works on the principle of series LC resonance, the resonant frequency of which is unaffected by circuit resistance, the value of the load resistor will not skew the peak frequency. However, different values for the load resistor *will* change the "steepness" of the Bode plot (the "selectivity" of the filter).

The other basic style of resonant band-pass filters employs a tank circuit (parallel LC combination) to short out signals too high or too low in frequency from getting to the load: (Figure 8.22)

The tank circuit will have a lot of impedance at resonance, allowing the signal to get to the load with minimal attenuation. Under or over resonant frequency, however, the tank circuit will have a low impedance, shorting out the signal and dropping most of it across series resistor R_1. (Figure 8.23)

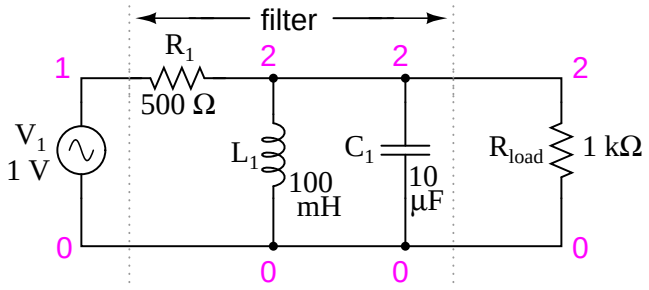


Figure 8.22: *Parallel resonant band-pass filter.*

```
parallel resonant bandpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 500
l1 2 0 100m
c1 2 0 10u
rload 2 0 1k
.ac lin 20 50 250
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

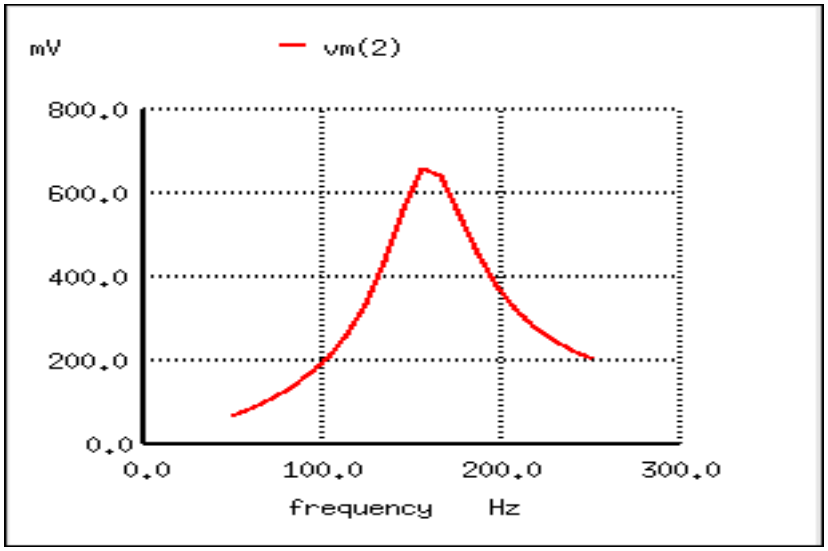


Figure 8.23: *Parallel resonant filter: voltage peaks a resonant frequency of 159.15 Hz.*

Just like the low-pass and high-pass filter designs relying on a series resistance and a parallel "shorting" component to attenuate unwanted frequencies, this resonant circuit can never provide full input (source) voltage to the load. That series resistance will always be dropping some amount of voltage so long as there is a load resistance connected to the output of the filter.

It should be noted that this form of band-pass filter circuit is very popular in analog radio tuning circuitry, for selecting a particular radio frequency from the multitudes of frequencies available from the antenna. In most analog radio tuner circuits, the rotating dial for station selection moves a variable capacitor in a tank circuit.

Figure 8.24: *Variable capacitor tunes radio receiver tank circuit to select one out of many broadcast stations.*

The variable capacitor and air-core inductor shown in Figure 8.24 photograph of a simple radio comprise the main elements in the tank circuit filter used to discriminate one radio station's signal from another.

Just as we can use series and parallel LC resonant circuits to pass only those frequencies within a certain range, we can also use them to block frequencies within a certain range, creating a band-stop filter. Again, we have two major strategies to follow in doing this, to use either series or parallel resonance. First, we'll look at the series variety: (Figure 8.25)

When the series LC combination reaches resonance, its very low impedance shorts out the signal, dropping it across resistor R_1 and preventing its passage on to the load. (Figure 8.26)

Next, we will examine the parallel resonant band-stop filter: (Figure 8.27)

The parallel LC components present a high impedance at resonant frequency, thereby blocking the signal from the load at that frequency. Conversely, it passes signals to the load at any other frequencies. (Figure 8.28)

Once again, notice how the absence of a series resistor makes for minimum attenuation for all the desired (passed) signals. The amplitude at the notch frequency, on the other hand, is

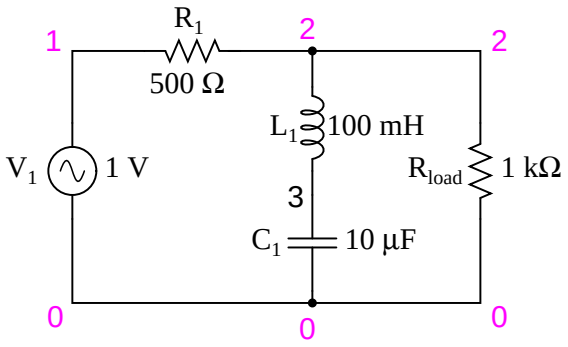


Figure 8.25: *Series resonant band-stop filter.*

```
series resonant bandstop filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
r1 1 2 500
l1 2 3 100m
c1 3 0 10u
rload 2 0 1k
.ac lin 20 70 230
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

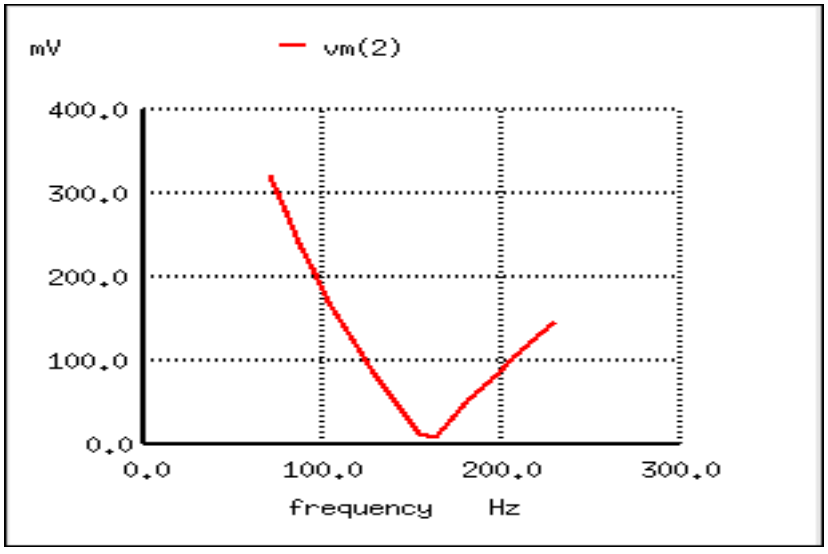


Figure 8.26: *Series resonant band-stop filter: Notch frequency = LC resonant frequency (159.15 Hz).*

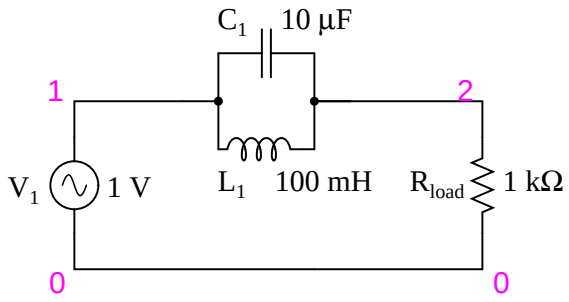


Figure 8.27: *Parallel resonant band-stop filter.*

```
parallel resonant bandstop filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
l1 1 2 100m
c1 1 2 10u
rload 2 0 1k
.ac lin 20 100 200
.plot ac v(2)
.end
```

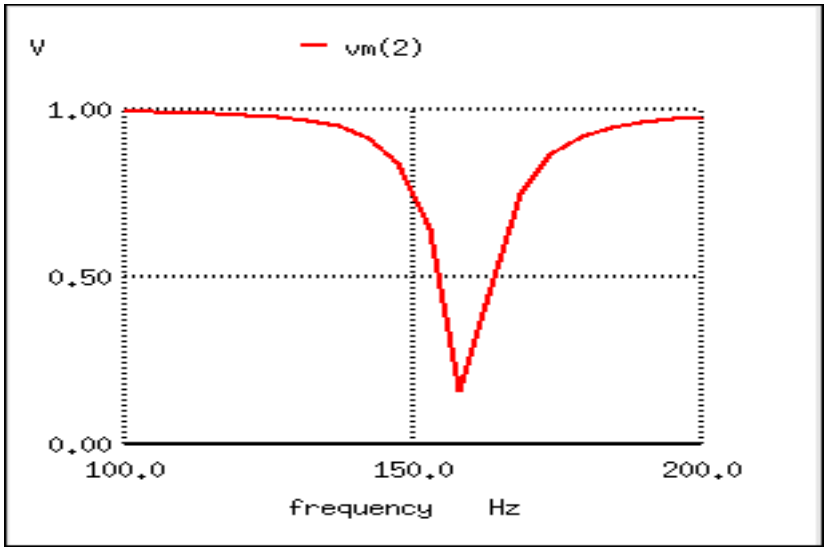


Figure 8.28: *Parallel resonant band-stop filter: Notch frequency = LC resonant frequency (159.15 Hz).*

very low. In other words, this is a very "selective" filter.

In all these resonant filter designs, the selectivity depends greatly upon the "purity" of the inductance and capacitance used. If there is any stray resistance (especially likely in the inductor), this will diminish the filter's ability to finely discriminate frequencies, as well as introduce antiresonant effects that will skew the peak/notch frequency.

A word of caution to those designing low-pass and high-pass filters is in order at this point. After assessing the standard RC and LR low-pass and high-pass filter designs, it might occur to a student that a better, more effective design of low-pass or high-pass filter might be realized by combining capacitive and inductive elements together like Figure 8.29.

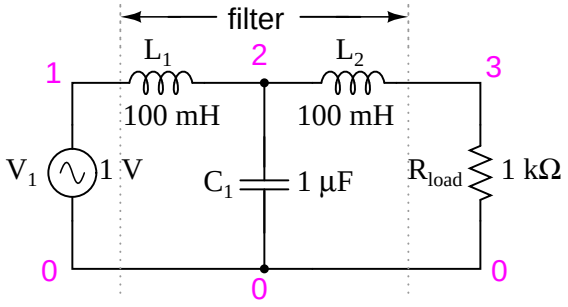


Figure 8.29: *Capacitive Inductive low-pass filter.*

The inductors should block any high frequencies, while the capacitor should short out any high frequencies as well, both working together to allow only low frequency signals to reach the load.

At first, this seems to be a good strategy, and eliminates the need for a series resistance. However, the more insightful student will recognize that any combination of capacitors and inductors together in a circuit is likely to cause resonant effects to happen at a certain frequency. Resonance, as we have seen before, can cause strange things to happen. Let's plot a SPICE analysis and see what happens over a wide frequency range: (Figure 8.30)

```
lc lowpass filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
l1 1 2 100m
c1 2 0 1u
l2 2 3 100m
rload 3 0 1k
.ac lin 20 100 1k
.plot ac v(3)
.end
```

What was supposed to be a low-pass filter turns out to be a band-pass filter with a peak somewhere around 526 Hz! The capacitance and inductance in this filter circuit are attaining resonance at that point, creating a large voltage drop around C_1, which is seen at the load, regardless of L_2's attenuating influence. The output voltage to the load at this point actually

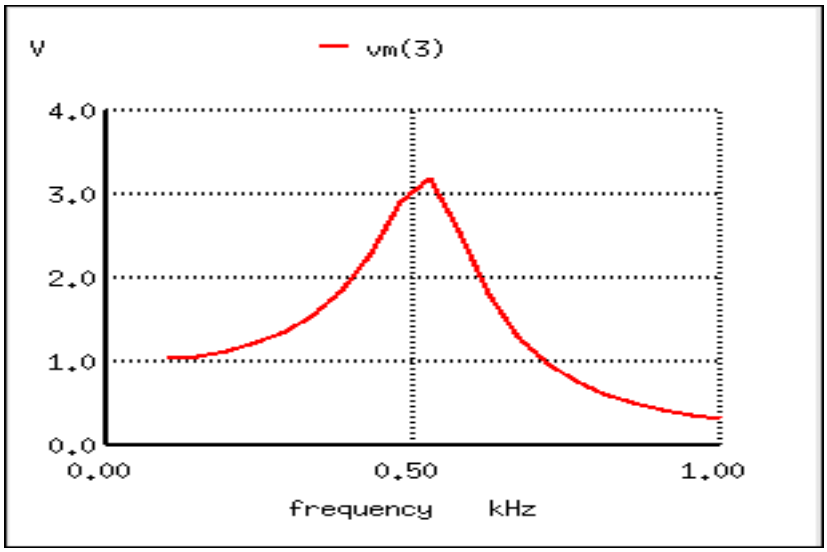


Figure 8.30: *Unexpected response of L-C low-pass filter.*

exceeds the input (source) voltage! A little more reflection reveals that if L_1 and C_2 are at resonance, they will impose a very heavy (very low impedance) load on the AC source, which might not be good either. We'll run the same analysis again, only this time plotting C_1's voltage, vm(2) in Figure 8.31, and the source current, I(v1), along with load voltage, vm(3):

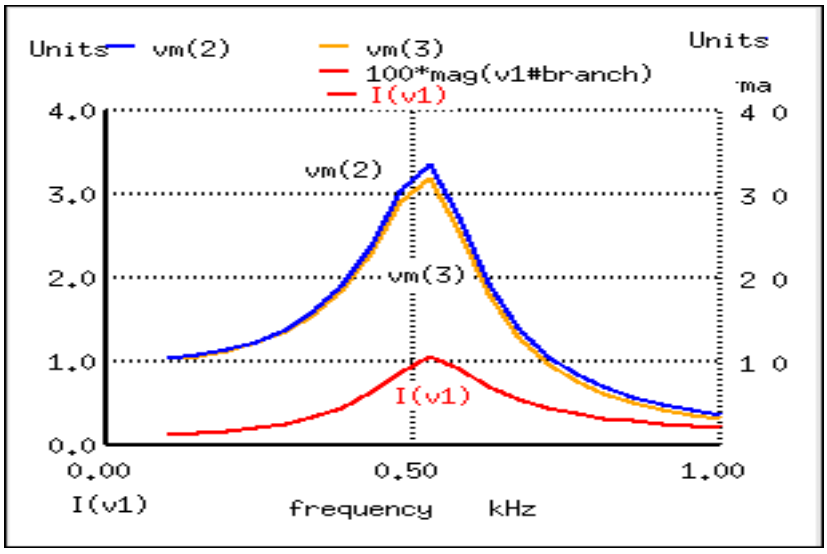


Figure 8.31: *Current inceases at the unwanted resonance of the L-C low-pass filter.*

Sure enough, we see the voltage across C_1 and the source current spiking to a high point at the same frequency where the load voltage is maximum. If we were expecting this filter to provide a simple low-pass function, we might be disappointed by the results.

The problem is that an L-C filter has a input impedance and an output impedance which must be matched. The voltage source impedance must match the input impedance of the filter, and the filter output impedance must be matched by "rload" for a flat response. The input and output impedance is given by the square root of (L/C).

$$Z = (L/C)^{1/2}$$

Taking the component values from (Figure 8.29), we can find the impedance of the filter, and the required , R_g and R_{load} to match it.

$$\text{For } L = 100 \text{ mH}, \quad C = 1\mu F$$
$$Z = (L/C)^{1/2} = ((100 \text{ mH})/(1\ \mu F))^{1/2} = 316\ \Omega$$

In Figure 8.32 we have added R_g = 316 Ω to the generator, and changed the load R_{load} from 1000 Ω to 316 Ω. Note that if we needed to drive a 1000 Ω load, the L/C ratio could have been adjusted to match that resistance.

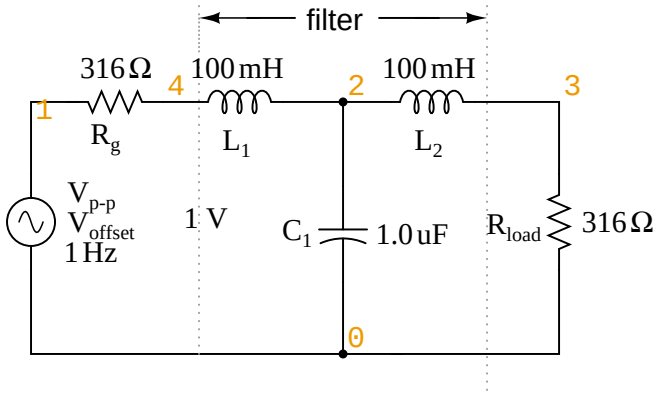


Figure 8.32: *Circuit of source and load matched L-C low-pass filter.*

```
LC matched lowpass filter
V1 1 0 ac 1 SIN
Rg 1 4 316
L1 4 2 100m
C1 2 0 1.0u
L2 2 3 100m
Rload 3 0 316
.ac lin 20 100 1k
.plot ac v(3)
.end
```

Figure 8.33 shows the "flat" response of the L-C low pass filter when the source and load impedance match the filter input and output impedances.

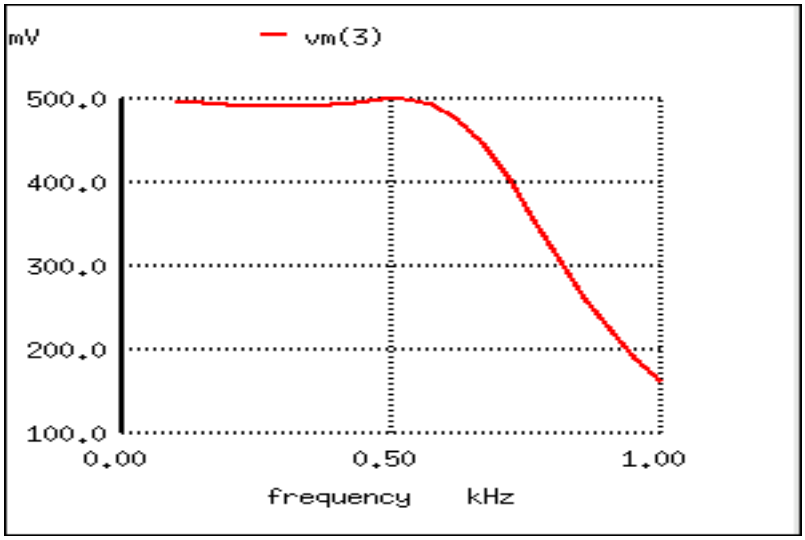


Figure 8.33: *The response of impedance matched L-C low-pass filter is nearly flat up to the cut-off frequency.*

The point to make in comparing the response of the unmatched filter (Figure 8.30) to the matched filter (Figure 8.33) is that variable load on the filter produces a considerable change in voltage. This property is directly applicable to L-C filtered power supplies– the *regulation* is poor. The power supply voltage changes with a change in load. This is undesirable.

This poor load regulation can be mitigated by a *swinging choke*. This is a *choke*, inductor, designed to *saturate* when a large DC current passes through it. By saturate, we mean that the DC current creates a "too" high level of flux in the magnetic core, so that the AC component of current cannot vary the flux. Since induction is proportional to $d\Phi/dt$, the inductance is decreased by the heavy DC current. The decrease in inductance decreases reactance X_L. Decreasing reactance, reduces the voltage drop across the inductor; thus, increasing the voltage at the filter output. This improves the voltage regulation with respect to variable loads.

Despite the unintended resonance, low-pass filters made up of capacitors and inductors are frequently used as final stages in AC/DC power supplies to filter the unwanted AC "ripple" voltage out of the DC converted from AC. Why is this, if this particular filter design possesses a potentially troublesome resonant point?

The answer lies in the selection of filter component sizes and the frequencies encountered from an AC/DC converter (rectifier). What we're trying to do in an AC/DC power supply filter is separate DC voltage from a small amount of relatively high-frequency AC voltage. The filter inductors and capacitors are generally quite large (several Henrys for the inductors and thousands of μF for the capacitors is typical), making the filter's resonant frequency very, very low. DC of course, has a "frequency" of zero, so there's no way it can make an LC circuit resonate. The ripple voltage, on the other hand, is a non-sinusoidal AC voltage consisting

of a fundamental frequency at least twice the frequency of the converted AC voltage, with harmonics many times that in addition. For plug-in-the-wall power supplies running on 60 Hz AC power (60 Hz United States; 50 Hz in Europe), the lowest frequency the filter will ever see is 120 Hz (100 Hz in Europe), which is well above its resonant point. Therefore, the potentially troublesome resonant point in a such a filter is completely avoided.

The following SPICE analysis calculates the voltage output (AC and DC) for such a filter, with series DC and AC (120 Hz) voltage sources providing a rough approximation of the mixed-frequency output of an AC/DC converter.

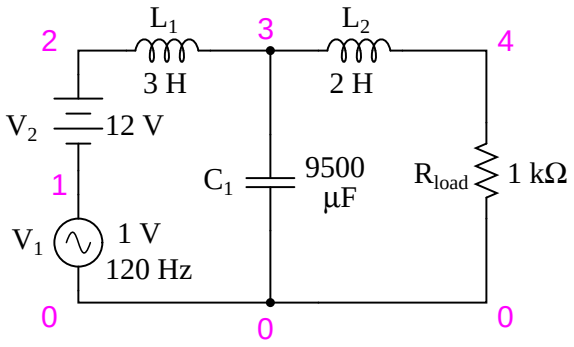


Figure 8.34: *AC/DC power suppply filter provides "ripple free" DC power.*

```
ac/dc power supply filter
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
v2 2 1 dc
l1 2 3 3
c1 3 0 9500u
l2 3 4 2
rload 4 0 1k
.dc v2 12 12 1
.ac lin 1 120 120
.print dc v(4)
.print ac v(4)
.end

v2              v(4)
1.200E+01       1.200E+01   DC voltage at load = 12 volts

freq            v(4)
1.200E+02       3.412E-05   AC voltage at load = 34.12 microvolts
```

With a full 12 volts DC at the load and only 34.12 μV of AC left from the 1 volt AC source imposed across the load, this circuit design proves itself to be a very effective power supply filter.

The lesson learned here about resonant effects also applies to the design of high-pass filters using both capacitors and inductors. So long as the desired and undesired frequencies are well to either side of the resonant point, the filter will work OK. But if any signal of significant magnitude close to the resonant frequency is applied to the input of the filter, strange things will happen!

- **REVIEW:**
- Resonant combinations of capacitance and inductance can be employed to create very effective band-pass and band-stop filters without the need for added resistance in a circuit that would diminish the passage of desired frequencies.
- $$f_{resonant} = \frac{1}{2\pi \sqrt{LC}}$$

8.7 Summary

As lengthy as this chapter has been up to this point, it only begins to scratch the surface of filter design. A quick perusal of any advanced filter design textbook is sufficient to prove my point. The mathematics involved with component selection and frequency response prediction is daunting to say the least – well beyond the scope of the beginning electronics student. It has been my intent here to present the basic principles of filter design with as little math as possible, leaning on the power of the SPICE circuit analysis program to explore filter performance. The benefit of such computer simulation software cannot be understated, for the beginning student or for the working engineer.

Circuit simulation software empowers the student to explore circuit designs far beyond the reach of their math skills. With the ability to generate Bode plots and precise figures, an intuitive understanding of circuit concepts can be attained, which is something often lost when a student is burdened with the task of solving lengthy equations by hand. If you are not familiar with the use of SPICE or other circuit simulation programs, take the time to become so! It will be of great benefit to your study. To see SPICE analyses presented in this book is an aid to understanding circuits, but to actually set up and analyze your own circuit simulations is a much more engaging and worthwhile endeavor as a student.

8.8 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 9

TRANSFORMERS

Contents

9.1 Mutual inductance and basic operation

Suppose we were to wrap a coil of insulated wire around a loop of ferromagnetic material and energize this coil with an AC voltage source: (Figure 9.1 (a))

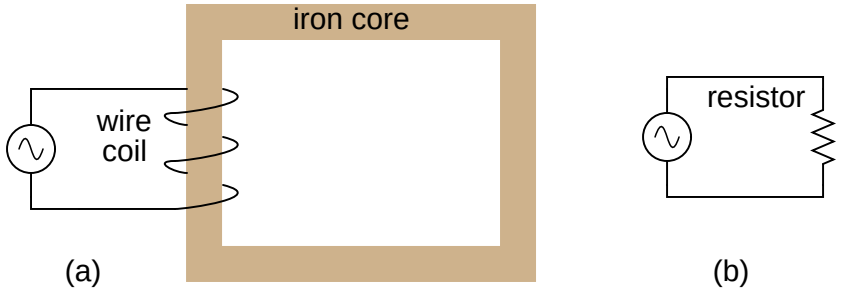


Figure 9.1: *Insulated winding on ferromagnetic loop has inductive reactance, limiting AC current.*

As an inductor, we would expect this iron-core coil to oppose the applied voltage with its inductive reactance, limiting current through the coil as predicted by the equations $X_L = 2\pi fL$ and I=E/X (or I=E/Z). For the purposes of this example, though, we need to take a more detailed look at the interactions of voltage, current, and magnetic flux in the device.

Kirchhoff's voltage law describes how the algebraic sum of all voltages in a loop must equal zero. In this example, we could apply this fundamental law of electricity to describe the respective voltages of the source and of the inductor coil. Here, as in any one-source, one-load circuit, the voltage dropped across the load must equal the voltage supplied by the source, assuming zero voltage dropped along the resistance of any connecting wires. In other words, the load (inductor coil) must produce an opposing voltage equal in magnitude to the source, in order that it may balance against the source voltage and produce an algebraic loop voltage sum of zero. From where does this opposing voltage arise? If the load were a resistor (Figure 9.1 (b)), the voltage drop originates from electrical energy loss, the "friction" of electrons flowing through the resistance. With a perfect inductor (no resistance in the coil wire), the opposing voltage comes from another mechanism: the *reaction* to a changing magnetic flux in the iron core. When AC current changes, flux Φ changes. Changing flux induces a counter EMF.

Michael Faraday discovered the mathematical relationship between magnetic flux (Φ) and induced voltage with this equation:

$$e = N \frac{d\Phi}{dt}$$

Where,

- e = (Instantaneous) induced voltage in volts
- N = Number of turns in wire coil (straight wire = 1)
- Φ = Magnetic flux in Webers
- t = Time in seconds

The instantaneous voltage (voltage dropped at any instant in time) across a wire coil is equal to the number of turns of that coil around the core (N) multiplied by the instantaneous rate-of-change in magnetic flux ($d\Phi/dt$) linking with the coil. Graphed, (Figure 9.2) this shows itself as a set of sine waves (assuming a sinusoidal voltage source), the flux wave 90^o lagging behind the voltage wave:

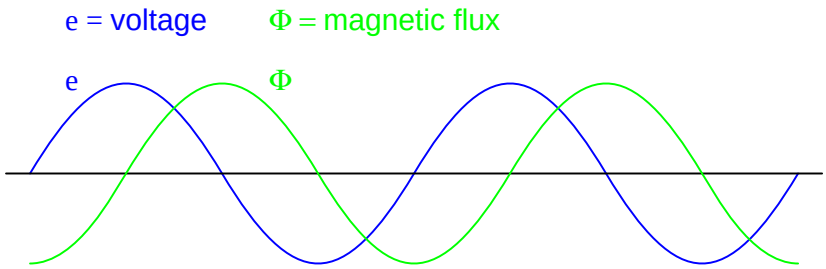


Figure 9.2: *Magnetic flux lags applied voltage by 90^o because flux is proportional to a rate of change, $d\Phi/dt$.*

Magnetic flux through a ferromagnetic material is analogous to current through a conductor: it must be motivated by some force in order to occur. In electric circuits, this motivating force is voltage (a.k.a. electromotive force, or EMF). In magnetic "circuits," this motivating force is *magnetomotive force*, or *mmf*. Magnetomotive force (mmf) and magnetic flux (Φ) are related to each other by a property of magnetic materials known as *reluctance* (the latter quantity symbolized by a strange-looking letter "R"):

A comparison of "Ohm's Law" for electric and magnetic circuits:

$E = IR$	$mmf = \Phi\Re$
Electrical	Magnetic

In our example, the mmf required to produce this changing magnetic flux (Φ) must be supplied by a changing current through the coil. Magnetomotive force generated by an electromagnet coil is equal to the amount of current through that coil (in amps) multiplied by the number of turns of that coil around the core (the SI unit for mmf is the *amp-turn*). Because the mathematical relationship between magnetic flux and mmf is directly proportional, and because the mathematical relationship between mmf and current is also directly proportional (no rates-of-change present in either equation), the current through the coil will be in-phase with the flux wave as in (Figure 9.3)

This is why alternating current through an inductor lags the applied voltage waveform by 90^o: because that is what is required to produce a changing magnetic flux whose rate-of-change produces an opposing voltage in-phase with the applied voltage. Due to its function in providing magnetizing force (mmf) for the core, this current is sometimes referred to as the *magnetizing current*.

It should be mentioned that the current through an iron-core inductor is not perfectly sinusoidal (sine-wave shaped), due to the nonlinear B/H magnetization curve of iron. In fact, if the

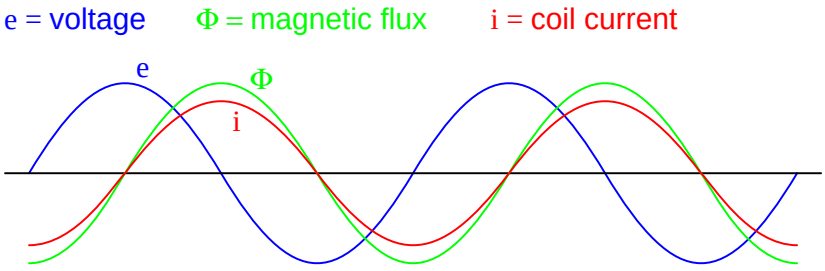


Figure 9.3: *Magnetic flux, like current, lags applied voltage by 90^o.*

inductor is cheaply built, using as little iron as possible, the magnetic flux density might reach high levels (approaching saturation), resulting in a magnetizing current waveform that looks something like Figure 9.4

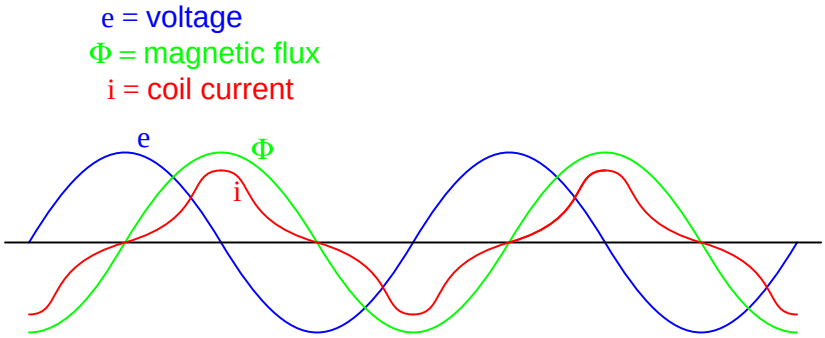


Figure 9.4: *As flux density approaches saturation, the magnetizing current waveform becomes distorted.*

When a ferromagnetic material approaches magnetic flux saturation, disproportionately greater levels of magnetic field force (mmf) are required to deliver equal increases in magnetic field flux (Φ). Because mmf is proportional to current through the magnetizing coil (mmf = NI, where "N" is the number of turns of wire in the coil and "I" is the current through it), the large increases of mmf required to supply the needed increases in flux results in large increases in coil current. Thus, coil current increases dramatically at the peaks in order to maintain a flux waveform that isn't distorted, accounting for the bell-shaped half-cycles of the current waveform in the above plot.

The situation is further complicated by energy losses within the iron core. The effects of hysteresis and eddy currents conspire to further distort and complicate the current waveform, making it even less sinusoidal and altering its phase to be lagging slightly less than 90^o behind the applied voltage waveform. This coil current resulting from the sum total of all magnetic effects in the core ($d\Phi/dt$ magnetization plus hysteresis losses, eddy current losses, etc.) is called the *exciting current*. The distortion of an iron-core inductor's exciting current may be minimized if it is designed for and operated at very low flux densities. Generally speaking, this

requires a core with large cross-sectional area, which tends to make the inductor bulky and expensive. For the sake of simplicity, though, we'll assume that our example core is far from saturation and free from all losses, resulting in a perfectly sinusoidal exciting current.

As we've seen already in the inductors chapter, having a current waveform 90^{o} out of phase with the voltage waveform creates a condition where power is alternately absorbed and returned to the circuit by the inductor. If the inductor is perfect (no wire resistance, no magnetic core losses, etc.), it will dissipate zero power.

Let us now consider the same inductor device, except this time with a second coil (Figure 9.5) wrapped around the same iron core. The first coil will be labeled the *primary* coil, while the second will be labeled the *secondary*:

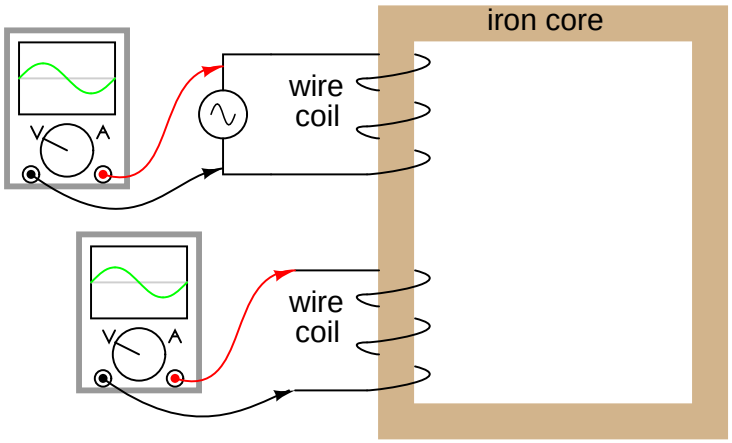


Figure 9.5: *Ferromagnetic core with primary coil (AC driven) and secondary coil.*

If this secondary coil experiences the same magnetic flux change as the primary (which it should, assuming perfect containment of the magnetic flux through the common core), and has the same number of turns around the core, a voltage of equal magnitude and phase to the applied voltage will be induced along its length. In the following graph, (Figure 9.6) the induced voltage waveform is drawn slightly smaller than the source voltage waveform simply to distinguish one from the other:

This effect is called *mutual inductance*: the induction of a voltage in one coil in response to a change in current in the other coil. Like normal (self-) inductance, it is measured in the unit of Henrys, but unlike normal inductance it is symbolized by the capital letter "M" rather than the letter "L":

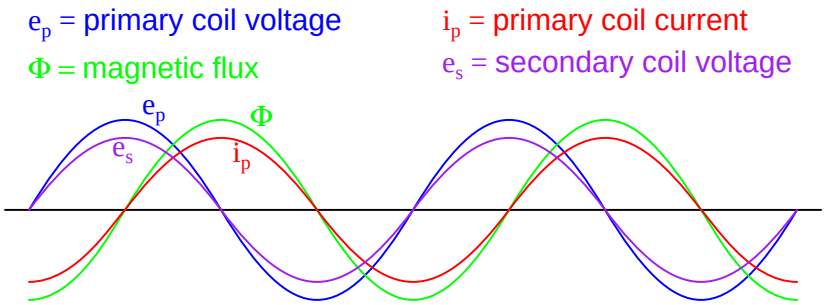


Figure 9.6: *Open circuited secondary sees the same flux Φ as the primary. Therefore induced secondary voltage e_s is the same magnitude and phase as the primary voltage e_p.*

Inductance

$$e = L \frac{di}{dt}$$

Mutual inductance

$$e_2 = M \frac{di_1}{dt}$$

Where,

e_2 = voltage induced in secondary coil

i_1 = current in primary coil

No current will exist in the secondary coil, since it is open-circuited. However, if we connect a load resistor to it, an alternating current will go through the coil, in-phase with the induced voltage (because the voltage across a resistor and the current through it are *always* in-phase with each other). (Figure 9.7)

At first, one might expect this secondary coil current to cause additional magnetic flux in the core. In fact, it does not. If more flux were induced in the core, it would cause more voltage to be induced voltage in the primary coil (remember that $e = d\Phi/dt$). This cannot happen, because the primary coil's induced voltage must remain at the same magnitude and phase in order to balance with the applied voltage, in accordance with Kirchhoff's voltage law. Consequently, the magnetic flux in the core cannot be affected by secondary coil current. However, what *does* change is the amount of mmf in the magnetic circuit.

Magnetomotive force is produced any time electrons move through a wire. Usually, this mmf is accompanied by magnetic flux, in accordance with the mmf=ΦR "magnetic Ohm's Law" equation. In this case, though, additional flux is not permitted, so the only way the secondary coil's mmf may exist is if a counteracting mmf is generated by the primary coil, of equal magnitude and opposite phase. Indeed, this is what happens, an alternating current forming in the primary coil – 180^o out of phase with the secondary coil's current – to generate this counteracting mmf and prevent additional core flux. Polarity marks and current direction arrows have been added to the illustration to clarify phase relations: (Figure 9.8)

If you find this process a bit confusing, do not worry. Transformer dynamics is a complex

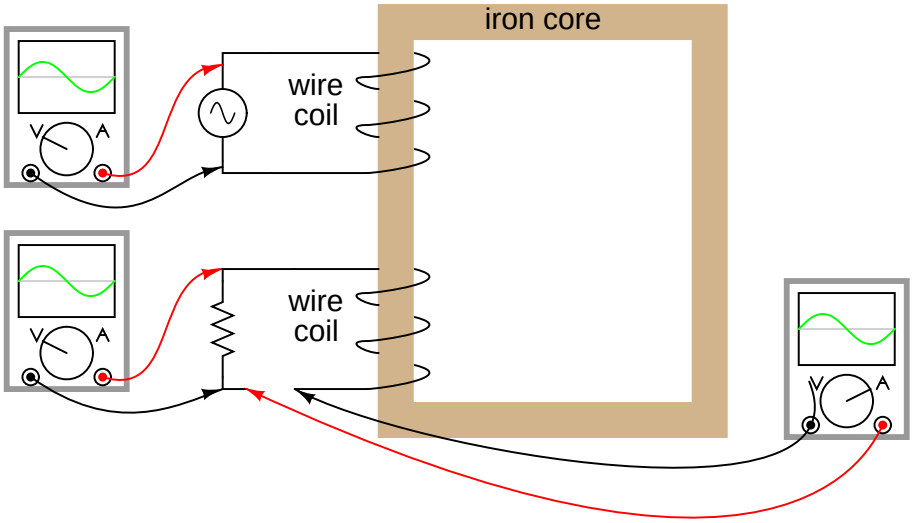


Figure 9.7: *Resistive load on secondary has voltage and current in-phase.*

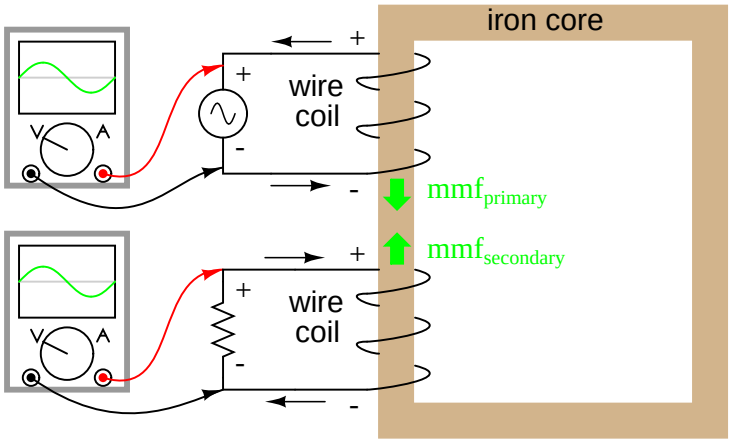


Figure 9.8: *Flux remains constant with application of a load. However, a counteracting mmf is produced by the loaded secondary.*

subject. What is important to understand is this: when an AC voltage is applied to the primary coil, it creates a magnetic flux in the core, which induces AC voltage in the secondary coil in-phase with the source voltage. Any current drawn through the secondary coil to power a load induces a corresponding current in the primary coil, drawing current from the source.

Notice how the primary coil is behaving as a load with respect to the AC voltage source, and how the secondary coil is behaving as a source with respect to the resistor. Rather than energy merely being alternately absorbed and returned the primary coil circuit, energy is now being *coupled* to the secondary coil where it is delivered to a dissipative (energy-consuming) load. As far as the source "knows," its directly powering the resistor. Of course, there is also an additional primary coil current lagging the applied voltage by 90^o, just enough to magnetize the core to create the necessary voltage for balancing against the source (the *exciting current*).

We call this type of device a *transformer*, because it transforms electrical energy into magnetic energy, then back into electrical energy again. Because its operation depends on electromagnetic induction between two stationary coils and a magnetic flux of changing magnitude and "polarity," transformers are necessarily AC devices. Its schematic symbol looks like two inductors (coils) sharing the same magnetic core: (Figure 9.9)

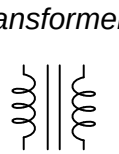


Figure 9.9: *Schematic symbol for transformer consists of two inductor symbols, separated by lines indicating a ferromagnetic core.*

The two inductor coils are easily distinguished in the above symbol. The pair of vertical lines represent an iron core common to both inductors. While many transformers have ferromagnetic core materials, there are some that do not, their constituent inductors being magnetically linked together through the air.

The following photograph shows a power transformer of the type used in gas-discharge lighting. Here, the two inductor coils can be clearly seen, wound around an iron core. While most transformer designs enclose the coils and core in a metal frame for protection, this particular transformer is open for viewing and so serves its illustrative purpose well: (Figure 9.10)

Both coils of wire can be seen here with copper-colored varnish insulation. The top coil is larger than the bottom coil, having a greater number of "turns" around the core. In transformers, the inductor coils are often referred to as *windings*, in reference to the manufacturing process where wire is *wound* around the core material. As modeled in our initial example, the powered inductor of a transformer is called the *primary* winding, while the unpowered coil is called the *secondary* winding.

In the next photograph, Figure 9.11, a transformer is shown cut in half, exposing the cross-section of the iron core as well as both windings. Like the transformer shown previously, this unit also utilizes primary and secondary windings of differing turn counts. The wire gauge can also be seen to differ between primary and secondary windings. The reason for this disparity in wire gauge will be made clear in the next section of this chapter. Additionally, the iron core can be seen in this photograph to be made of many thin sheets (laminations) rather than a

Figure 9.10: *Example of a gas-discharge lighting transformer.*

solid piece. The reason for this will also be explained in a later section of this chapter.

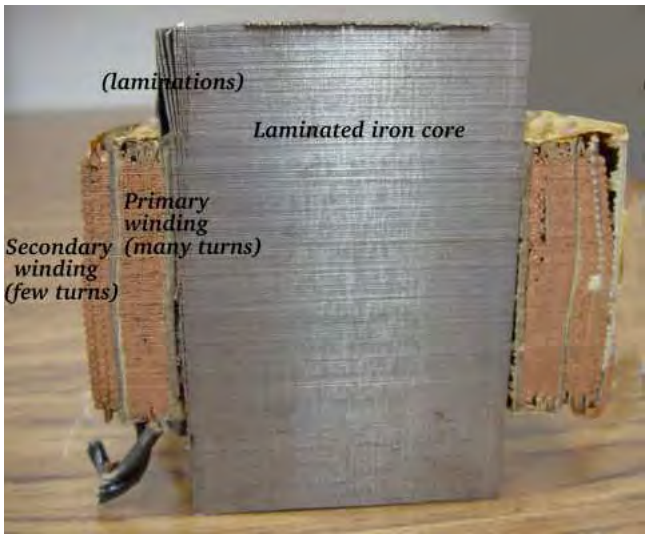


Figure 9.11: *Transformer cross-section cut shows core and windings.*

It is easy to demonstrate simple transformer action using SPICE, setting up the primary and secondary windings of the simulated transformer as a pair of "mutual" inductors. (Fig-

ure 9.12) The coefficient of magnetic field coupling is given at the end of the "k" line in the SPICE circuit description, this example being set very nearly at perfection (1.000). This coefficient describes how closely "linked" the two inductors are, magnetically. The better these two inductors are magnetically coupled, the more efficient the energy transfer between them should be.

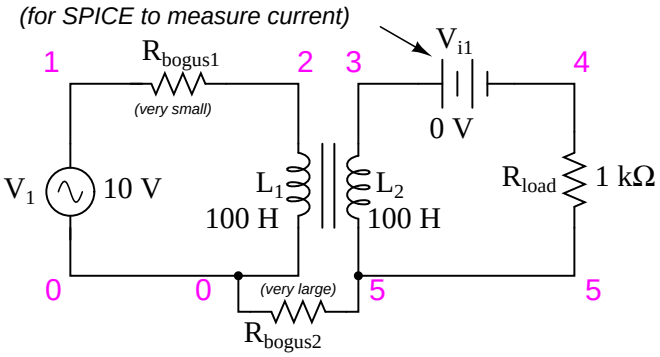


Figure 9.12: *Spice circuit for coupled inductors.*

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
l1 2 0 100
l2 3 5 100
** This line tells SPICE that the two inductors
** l1 and l2 are magnetically ''linked'' together
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 1k
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end
```

Note: the R_{bogus} resistors are required to satisfy certain quirks of SPICE. The first breaks the otherwise continuous loop between the voltage source and L_1 which would not be permitted by SPICE. The second provides a path to ground (node 0) from the secondary circuit, necessary because SPICE cannot function with any ungrounded circuits.

Note that with equal inductances for both windings (100 Henrys each), the AC voltages and currents are nearly equal for the two. The difference between primary and secondary currents is the magnetizing current spoken of earlier: the 90^o lagging current necessary to magnetize the core. As is seen here, it is usually very small compared to primary current induced by the load, and so the primary and secondary currents are almost equal. What you are seeing here

```
freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   9.975E-03   Primary winding

freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.962E+00   9.962E-03   Secondary winding
```

is quite typical of transformer efficiency. Anything less than 95% efficiency is considered poor for modern power transformer designs, and this transfer of power occurs with no moving parts or other components subject to wear.

If we decrease the load resistance so as to draw more current with the same amount of voltage, we see that the current through the primary winding increases in response. Even though the AC power source is not directly connected to the load resistance (rather, it is electromagnetically "coupled"), the amount of current drawn from the source will be almost the same as the amount of current that would be drawn if the load were directly connected to the source. Take a close look at the next two SPICE simulations, showing what happens with different values of load resistors:

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
l1 2 0 100
l2 3 5 100
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
** Note load resistance value of 200 ohms
rload 4 5 200
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end


freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   4.679E-02

freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.348E+00   4.674E-02
```

Notice how the primary current closely follows the secondary current. In our first simulation, both currents were approximately 10 mA, but now they are both around 47 mA. In this second simulation, the two currents are closer to equality, because the magnetizing current remains the same as before while the load current has increased. Note also how the secondary voltage has decreased some with the heavier (greater current) load. Let's try another simulation with an even lower value of load resistance (15 Ω):

Our load current is now 0.13 amps, or 130 mA, which is substantially higher than the last time. The primary current is very close to being the same, but notice how the secondary

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
l1 2 0 100
l2 3 5 100
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 15
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end
```

```
freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   1.301E-01

freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     1.950E+00   1.300E-01
```

voltage has fallen well below the primary voltage (1.95 volts versus 10 volts at the primary). The reason for this is an imperfection in our transformer design: because the primary and secondary inductances aren't *perfectly* linked (a k factor of 0.999 instead of 1.000) there is "stray" or "*leakage*" inductance. In other words, some of the magnetic field isn't linking with the secondary coil, and thus cannot couple energy to it: (Figure 9.13)

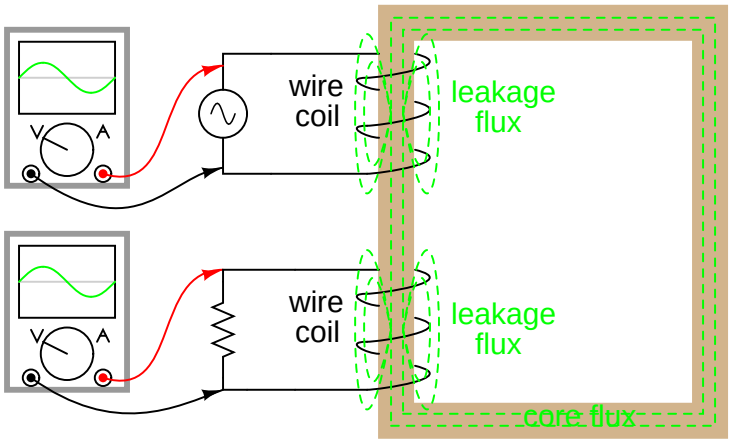


Figure 9.13: *Leakage inductance is due to magnetic flux not cutting both windings.*

Consequently, this "leakage" flux merely stores and returns energy to the source circuit via self-inductance, effectively acting as a series impedance in both primary and secondary circuits. Voltage gets dropped across this series impedance, resulting in a reduced load voltage:

voltage across the load "sags" as load current increases. (Figure 9.14)

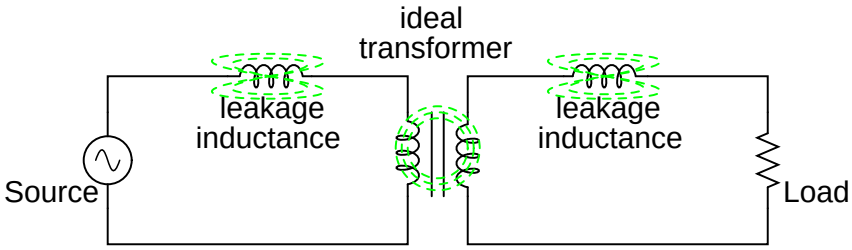


Figure 9.14: *Equivalent circuit models leakage inductance as series inductors independent of the "ideal transformer".*

If we change the transformer design to have better magnetic coupling between the primary and secondary coils, the figures for voltage between primary and secondary windings will be much closer to equality again:

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
l1 2 0 100
l2 3 5 100
** Coupling factor = 0.99999 instead of 0.999
k l1 l2 0.99999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 15
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end

freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   6.658E-01
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.987E+00   6.658E-01
```

Here we see that our secondary voltage is back to being equal with the primary, and the secondary current is equal to the primary current as well. Unfortunately, building a real transformer with coupling this complete is very difficult. A compromise solution is to design both primary and secondary coils with less inductance, the strategy being that less inductance overall leads to less "leakage" inductance to cause trouble, for any given degree of magnetic coupling inefficiency. This results in a load voltage that is closer to ideal with the same (high current heavy) load and the same coupling factor:

Simply by using primary and secondary coils of less inductance, the load voltage for this heavy load (high current) has been brought back up to nearly ideal levels (9.977 volts). At this

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
** inductance = 1 henry instead of 100 henrys
l1 2 0 1
l2 3 5 1
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 15
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end
```

```
freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   6.664E-01
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.977E+00   6.652E-01
```

point, one might ask, "If less inductance is all that's needed to achieve near-ideal performance under heavy load, then why worry about coupling efficiency at all? If its impossible to build a transformer with perfect coupling, but easy to design coils with low inductance, then why not just build all transformers with low-inductance coils and have excellent efficiency even with poor magnetic coupling?"

The answer to this question is found in another simulation: the same low-inductance transformer, but this time with a lighter load (less current) of 1 kΩ instead of 15 Ω:

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
l1 2 0 1
l2 3 5 1
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 1k
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end
```

With lower winding inductances, the primary and secondary voltages are closer to being equal, but the primary and secondary currents are not. In this particular case, the primary current is 28.35 mA while the secondary current is only 9.990 mA: almost three times as much current in the primary as the secondary. Why is this? With less inductance in the primary winding, there is less inductive reactance, and consequently a much larger magnetizing cur-

```
freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   2.835E-02
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.990E+00   9.990E-03
```

rent. A substantial amount of the current through the primary winding merely works to magnetize the core rather than *transfer* useful energy to the secondary winding and load.

An ideal transformer with identical primary and secondary windings would manifest equal voltage and current in both sets of windings for any load condition. In a perfect world, transformers would transfer electrical power from primary to secondary as smoothly as though the load were directly connected to the primary power source, with no transformer there at all. However, you can see this ideal goal can only be met if there is *perfect* coupling of magnetic flux between primary and secondary windings. Being that this is impossible to achieve, transformers must be designed to operate within certain expected ranges of voltages and loads in order to perform as close to ideal as possible. For now, the most important thing to keep in mind is a transformer's basic operating principle: the transfer of power from the primary to the secondary circuit via electromagnetic coupling.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Mutual inductance* is where the magnetic flux of two or more inductors are "linked" so that voltage is induced in one coil proportional to the rate-of-change of current in another.
- A *transformer* is a device made of two or more inductors, one of which is powered by AC, inducing an AC voltage across the second inductor. If the second inductor is connected to a load, power will be electromagnetically coupled from the first inductor's power source to that load.
- The powered inductor in a transformer is called the *primary winding*. The unpowered inductor in a transformer is called the *secondary winding*.
- Magnetic flux in the core (Φ) lags 90^o behind the source voltage waveform. The current drawn by the primary coil from the source to produce this flux is called the *magnetizing current*, and it also lags the supply voltage by 90^o.
- Total primary current in an unloaded transformer is called the *exciting current*, and is comprised of magnetizing current plus any additional current necessary to overcome core losses. It is never perfectly sinusoidal in a real transformer, but may be made more so if the transformer is designed and operated so that magnetic flux density is kept to a minimum.
- Core flux induces a voltage in any coil wrapped around the core. The induces voltage(s) are ideally in- phase with the primary winding source voltage and share the same waveshape.
- Any current drawn through the secondary winding by a load will be "reflected" to the primary winding and drawn from the voltage source, as if the source were directly powering a similar load.

9.2 Step-up and step-down transformers

So far, we've observed simulations of transformers where the primary and secondary windings were of identical inductance, giving approximately equal voltage and current levels in both circuits. Equality of voltage and current between the primary and secondary sides of a transformer, however, is not the norm for all transformers. If the inductances of the two windings are not equal, something interesting happens:

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
l1 2 0 10000
l2 3 5 100
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 1k
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end

freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   9.975E-05    Primary winding
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.962E-01   9.962E-04    Secondary winding
```

Notice how the secondary voltage is approximately ten times less than the primary voltage (0.9962 volts compared to 10 volts), while the secondary current is approximately ten times greater (0.9962 mA compared to 0.09975 mA). What we have here is a device that steps voltage *down* by a factor of ten and current *up* by a factor of ten: (Figure 9.15)

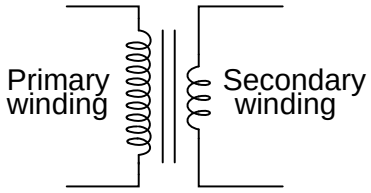


Figure 9.15: *Turns ratio of 10:1 yields 10:1 primary:secondary voltage ratio and 1:10 primary:secondary current ratio.*

This is a very useful device, indeed. With it, we can easily multiply or divide voltage and current in AC circuits. Indeed, the transformer has made long-distance transmission of electric power a practical reality, as AC voltage can be "stepped up" and current "stepped down" for reduced wire resistance power losses along power lines connecting generating stations with

loads. At either end (both the generator and at the loads), voltage levels are reduced by transformers for safer operation and less expensive equipment. A transformer that increases voltage from primary to secondary (more secondary winding turns than primary winding turns) is called a *step-up* transformer. Conversely, a transformer designed to do just the opposite is called a *step-down* transformer.

Let's re-examine a photograph shown in the previous section: (Figure 9.16)

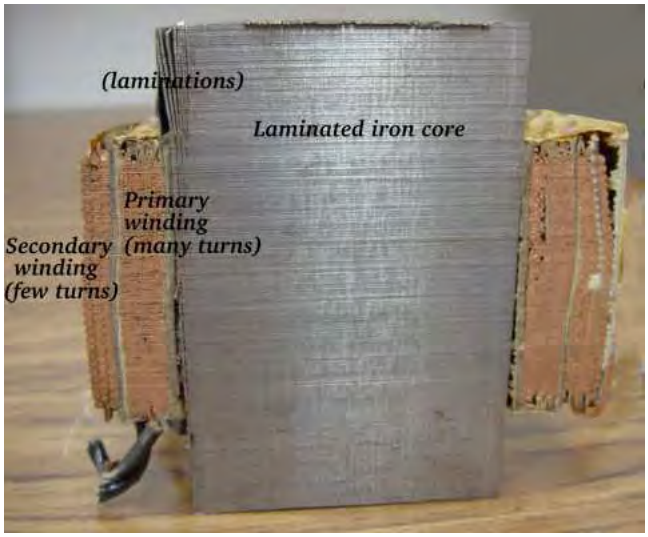


Figure 9.16: *Transformer cross-section showing primary and secondary windings is a few inches tall (approximately 10 cm).*

This is a step-down transformer, as evidenced by the high turn count of the primary winding and the low turn count of the secondary. As a step-down unit, this transformer converts high-voltage, low-current power into low-voltage, high-current power. The larger-gauge wire used in the secondary winding is necessary due to the increase in current. The primary winding, which doesn't have to conduct as much current, may be made of smaller-gauge wire.

In case you were wondering, it *is* possible to operate either of these transformer types backwards (powering the secondary winding with an AC source and letting the primary winding power a load) to perform the opposite function: a step-up can function as a step-down and visa-versa. However, as we saw in the first section of this chapter, efficient operation of a transformer requires that the individual winding inductances be engineered for specific operating ranges of voltage and current, so if a transformer is to be used "backwards" like this it must be employed within the original design parameters of voltage and current for each winding, lest it prove to be inefficient (or lest it be *damaged* by excessive voltage or current!).

Transformers are often constructed in such a way that it is not obvious which wires lead to the primary winding and which lead to the secondary. One convention used in the electric power industry to help alleviate confusion is the use of "H" designations for the higher-voltage winding (the primary winding in a step-down unit; the secondary winding in a step-up) and "X" designations for the lower-voltage winding. Therefore, a simple power transformer will have

wires labeled "H_1", "H_2", "X_1", and "X_2". There is usually significance to the numbering of the wires (H_1 versus H_2, etc.), which we'll explore a little later in this chapter.

The fact that voltage and current get "stepped" in opposite directions (one up, the other down) makes perfect sense when you recall that power is equal to voltage times current, and realize that transformers cannot *produce* power, only convert it. Any device that could output more power than it took in would violate the *Law of Energy Conservation* in physics, namely that energy cannot be created or destroyed, only converted. As with the first transformer example we looked at, power transfer efficiency is very good from the primary to the secondary sides of the device.

The practical significance of this is made more apparent when an alternative is considered: before the advent of efficient transformers, voltage/current level conversion could only be achieved through the use of motor/generator sets. A drawing of a motor/generator set reveals the basic principle involved: (Figure 9.17)

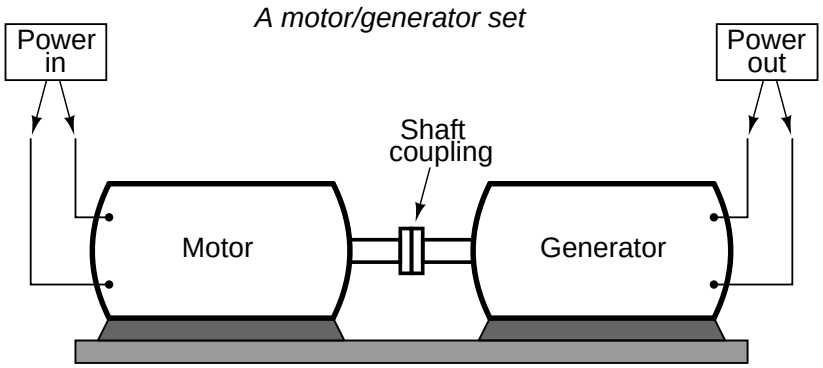


Figure 9.17: *Motor generator illustrates the basic principle of the transformer.*

In such a machine, a motor is mechanically coupled to a generator, the generator designed to produce the desired levels of voltage and current at the rotating speed of the motor. While both motors and generators are fairly efficient devices, the use of both in this fashion compounds their inefficiencies so that the overall efficiency is in the range of 90% or less. Furthermore, because motor/generator sets obviously require moving parts, mechanical wear and balance are factors influencing both service life and performance. Transformers, on the other hand, are able to convert levels of AC voltage and current at very high efficiencies with no moving parts, making possible the widespread distribution and use of electric power we take for granted.

In all fairness it should be noted that motor/generator sets have not necessarily been obsoleted by transformers for *all* applications. While transformers are clearly superior over motor/generator sets for AC voltage and current level conversion, they cannot convert one frequency of AC power to another, or (by themselves) convert DC to AC or visa-versa. Motor/generator sets can do all these things with relative simplicity, albeit with the limitations of efficiency and mechanical factors already described. Motor/generator sets also have the unique property of kinetic energy storage: that is, if the motor's power supply is momentarily interrupted for any reason, its angular momentum (the inertia of that rotating mass) will maintain rotation of the generator for a short duration, thus isolating any loads powered by the genera-

tor from "glitches" in the main power system.

Looking closely at the numbers in the SPICE analysis, we should see a correspondence between the transformer's ratio and the two inductances. Notice how the primary inductor (l1) has 100 times more inductance than the secondary inductor (10000 H versus 100 H), and that the measured voltage step-down ratio was 10 to 1. The winding with more inductance will have higher voltage and less current than the other. Since the two inductors are wound around the same core material in the transformer (for the most efficient magnetic coupling between the two), the parameters affecting inductance for the two coils are equal except for the number of turns in each coil. If we take another look at our inductance formula, we see that inductance is proportional to the *square* of the number of coil turns:

$$L = \frac{N^2 \mu A}{l}$$

Where,

L = Inductance of coil in Henrys
N = Number of turns in wire coil (straight wire = 1)
μ = Permeability of core material (absolute, not relative)
A = Area of coil in square meters
l = Average length of coil in meters

So, it should be apparent that our two inductors in the last SPICE transformer example circuit – with inductance ratios of 100:1 – should have coil turn ratios of 10:1, because 10 squared equals 100. This works out to be the same ratio we found between primary and secondary voltages and currents (10:1), so we can say as a rule that the voltage and current transformation ratio is equal to the ratio of winding turns between primary and secondary.

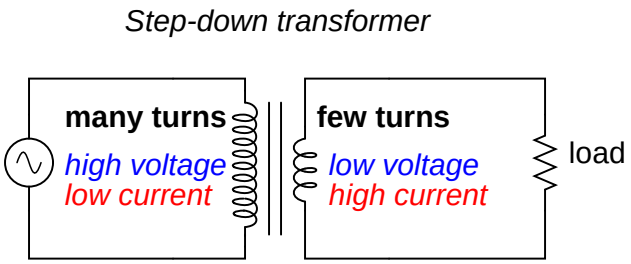


Figure 9.18: *Step-down transformer: (many turns :few turns).*

The step-up/step-down effect of coil turn ratios in a transformer (Figure 9.18) is analogous to gear tooth ratios in mechanical gear systems, transforming values of speed and torque in much the same way: (Figure 9.19)

Step-up and step-down transformers for power distribution purposes can be gigantic in proportion to the power transformers previously shown, some units standing as tall as a home. The following photograph shows a substation transformer standing about twelve feet tall: (Figure 9.20)

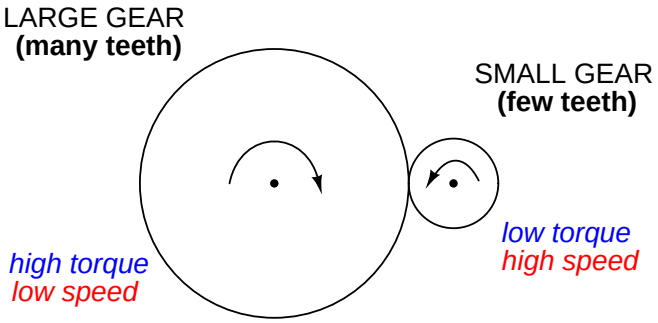


Figure 9.19: *Torque reducing gear train steps torque down, while stepping speed up.*

Figure 9.20: *Substation transformer.*

- **REVIEW:**
- Transformers "step up" or "step down" voltage according to the ratios of primary to secondary wire turns.

$$\text{Voltage transformation ratio} = \frac{N_{secondary}}{N_{primary}}$$

$$\text{Current transformation ratio} = \frac{N_{primary}}{N_{secondary}}$$

Where,

N = number of turns in winding

- A transformer designed to increase voltage from primary to secondary is called a *step-up* transformer. A transformer designed to reduce voltage from primary to secondary is called a *step-down* transformer.
- The transformation ratio of a transformer will be equal to the square root of its primary to secondary inductance (L) ratio.

$$\text{Voltage transformation ratio} = \sqrt{\frac{L_{secondary}}{L_{primary}}}$$

9.3 Electrical isolation

Aside from the ability to easily convert between different levels of voltage and current in AC and DC circuits, transformers also provide an extremely useful feature called *isolation*, which is the ability to couple one circuit to another without the use of direct wire connections. We can demonstrate an application of this effect with another SPICE simulation: this time showing "ground" connections for the two circuits, imposing a high DC voltage between one circuit and ground through the use of an additional voltage source:(Figure 9.21)

```
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
v2 5 0 dc 250
l1 2 0 10000
l2 3 5 100
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 1k
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end
```

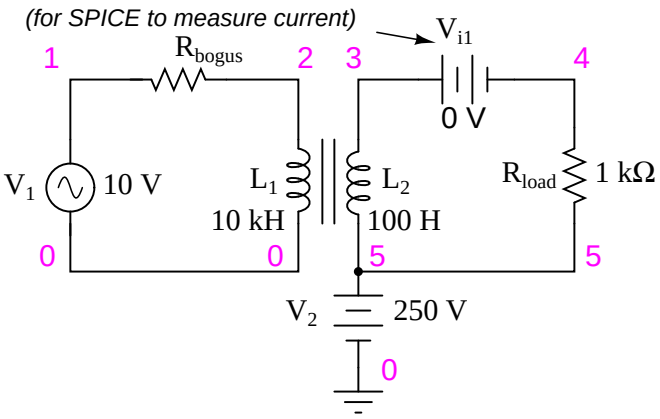


Figure 9.21: *Transformer isolates 10 V_{ac} at V_1 from 250 V_{DC} at V_2.*

```
DC voltages referenced to ground (node 0):
(1)    0.0000    (2)    0.0000    (3)  250.0000
(4)  250.0000    (5)  250.0000
AC voltages:
freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   9.975E-05    Primary winding
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.962E-01   9.962E-04    Secondary winding
```

SPICE shows the 250 volts DC being impressed upon the secondary circuit elements with respect to ground, (Figure 9.21) but as you can see there is no effect on the primary circuit (zero DC voltage) at nodes 1 and 2, and the transformation of AC power from primary to secondary circuits remains the same as before. The impressed voltage in this example is often called a *common-mode* voltage because it is seen at more than one point in the circuit with reference to the common point of ground. The transformer isolates the common-mode voltage so that it is not impressed upon the primary circuit at all, but rather isolated to the secondary side. For the record, it does not matter that the common-mode voltage is DC, either. It could be AC, even at a different frequency, and the transformer would isolate it from the primary circuit all the same.

There are applications where electrical isolation is needed between two AC circuit without any transformation of voltage or current levels. In these instances, transformers called *isolation transformers* having 1:1 transformation ratios are used. A benchtop isolation transformer is shown in Figure 9.22.

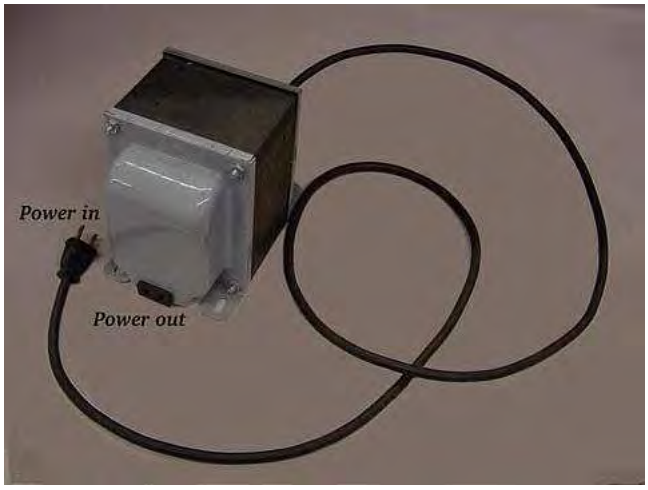


Figure 9.22: *Isolation transformer isolates power out from the power line.*

- **REVIEW:**
- By being able to transfer power from one circuit to another without the use of interconnecting conductors between the two circuits, transformers provide the useful feature of *electrical isolation*.
- Transformers designed to provide electrical isolation without stepping voltage and current either up or down are called *isolation transformers*.

9.4 Phasing

Since transformers are essentially AC devices, we need to be aware of the phase relationships between the primary and secondary circuits. Using our SPICE example from before, we can

plot the waveshapes (Figure 9.23) for the primary and secondary circuits and see the phase relations for ourselves:

```
spice transient analysis file for use with nutmeg:
transformer
v1 1 0 sin(0 15 60 0 0)
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
v2 5 0 dc 250
l1 2 0 10000
l2 3 5 100
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 1k
.tran 0.5m 17m
.end
nutmeg commands:
setplot tran1
plot v(2) v(3,5)
```

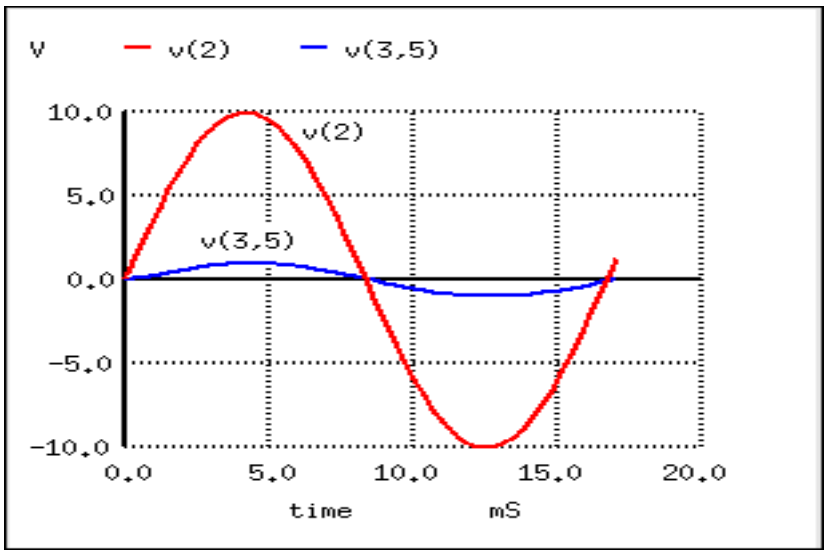


Figure 9.23: *Secondary voltage V(3,5) is in-phase with primary voltage V(2), and stepped down by factor of ten.*

In going from primary, V(2), to secondary, V(3,5), the voltage was stepped down by a factor of ten, (Figure 9.23) , and the current was stepped up by a factor of 10. (Figure 9.24) Both

current (Figure 9.24) and voltage (Figure 9.23) waveforms are in-phase in going from primary to secondary.

```
nutmeg commands:
setplot tran1
plot I(L1#branch) I(L2#branch)
```

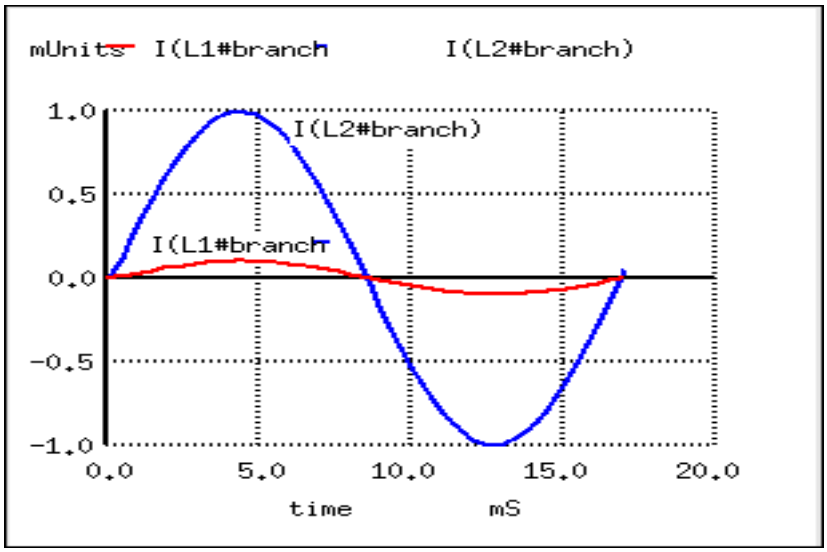


Figure 9.24: *Primary and secondary currents are in-phase. Secondary current is stepped up by a factor of ten.*

It would appear that both voltage and current for the two transformer windings are in-phase with each other, at least for our resistive load. This is simple enough, but it would be nice to know *which way* we should connect a transformer in order to ensure the proper phase relationships be kept. After all, a transformer is nothing more than a set of magnetically-linked inductors, and inductors don't usually come with polarity markings of any kind. If we were to look at an unmarked transformer, we would have no way of knowing which way to hook it up to a circuit to get in-phase (or 180^o out-of-phase) voltage and current: (Figure 9.25)

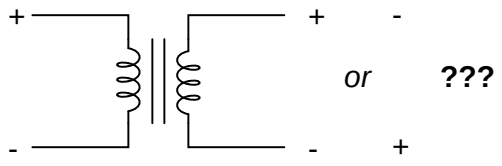


Figure 9.25: *As a practical matter, the polarity of a transformer can be ambiguous.*

Since this is a practical concern, transformer manufacturers have come up with a sort of polarity marking standard to denote phase relationships. It is called the *dot convention*, and is nothing more than a dot placed next to each corresponding leg of a transformer winding: (Figure 9.26)

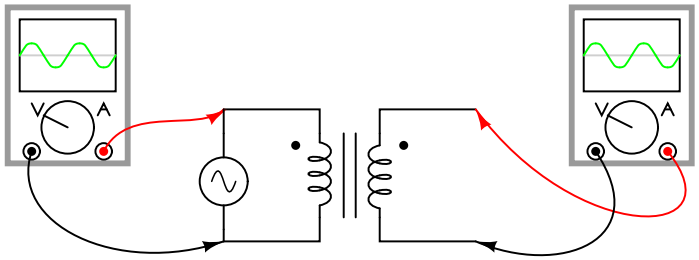


Figure 9.26: *A pair of dots indicates like polarity.*

Typically, the transformer will come with some kind of schematic diagram labeling the wire leads for primary and secondary windings. On the diagram will be a pair of dots similar to what is seen above. Sometimes dots will be omitted, but when "H" and "X" labels are used to label transformer winding wires, the subscript numbers are supposed to represent winding polarity. The "1" wires (H_1 and X_1) represent where the polarity-marking dots would normally be placed.

The similar placement of these dots next to the top ends of the primary and secondary windings tells us that whatever instantaneous voltage polarity seen across the primary winding will be the same as that across the secondary winding. In other words, the phase shift from primary to secondary will be zero degrees.

On the other hand, if the dots on each winding of the transformer do *not* match up, the phase shift will be 180^o between primary and secondary, like this: (Figure 9.27)

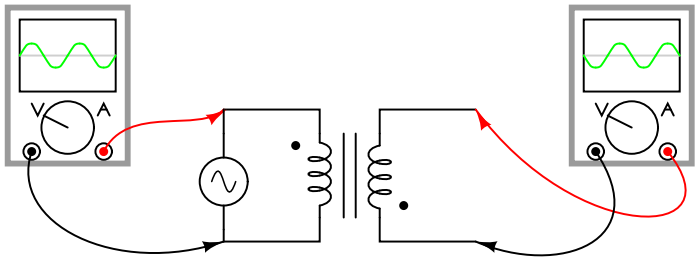


Figure 9.27: *Out of phase: primary red to dot, secondary black to dot.*

Of course, the dot convention only tells you which end of each winding is which, relative to the other winding(s). If you want to reverse the phase relationship yourself, all you have to do is swap the winding connections like this: (Figure 9.28)

- **REVIEW:**

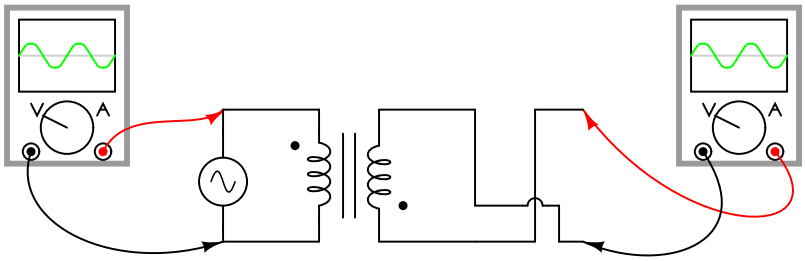


Figure 9.28: *In phase: primary red to dot, secondary red to dot.*

- The phase relationships for voltage and current between primary and secondary circuits of a transformer are direct: ideally, zero phase shift.
- The *dot convention* is a type of polarity marking for transformer windings showing which end of the winding is which, relative to the other windings.

9.5 Winding configurations

Transformers are very versatile devices. The basic concept of energy transfer between mutual inductors is useful enough between a single primary and single secondary coil, but transformers don't have to be made with just two sets of windings. Consider this transformer circuit: (Figure 9.29)

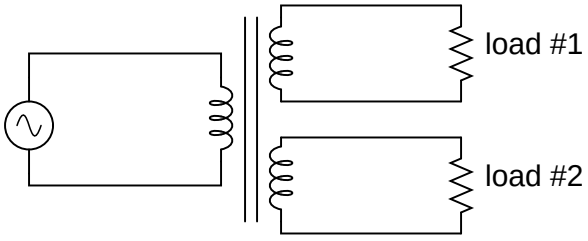


Figure 9.29: *Transformer with multiple secondaries, provides multiple output voltages.*

Here, three inductor coils share a common magnetic core, magnetically "coupling" or "linking" them together. The relationship of winding turn ratios and voltage ratios seen with a single pair of mutual inductors still holds true here for multiple pairs of coils. It is entirely possible to assemble a transformer such as the one above (one primary winding, two secondary windings) in which one secondary winding is a step-down and the other is a step-up. In fact, this design of transformer was quite common in vacuum tube power supply circuits, which were required to supply low voltage for the tubes' filaments (typically 6 or 12 volts) and high voltage for the tubes' plates (several hundred volts) from a nominal primary voltage of 110 volts AC. Not only are voltages and currents of completely different magnitudes possible with such a transformer, but all circuits are electrically isolated from one another.

Figure 9.30: *Photograph of multiple-winding transformer with six windings, a primary and five secondaries.*

The transformer in Figure 9.30 is intended to provide both high and low voltages necessary in an electronic system using vacuum tubes. Low voltage is required to power the filaments of vacuum tubes, while high voltage is required to create the potential difference between the plate and cathode elements of each tube. One transformer with multiple windings suffices elegantly to provide all the necessary voltage levels from a single 115 V source. The wires for this transformer (15 of them!) are not shown in the photograph, being hidden from view.

If electrical isolation between secondary circuits is not of great importance, a similar effect can be obtained by "tapping" a single secondary winding at multiple points along its length, like Figure 9.31.

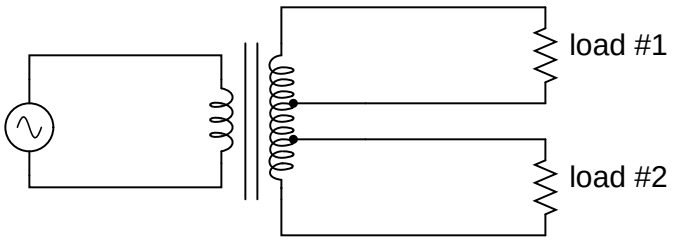


Figure 9.31: *A single tapped secondary provides multiple voltages.*

A tap is nothing more than a wire connection made at some point on a winding between the very ends. Not surprisingly, the winding turn/voltage magnitude relationship of a normal transformer holds true for all tapped segments of windings. This fact can be exploited to produce a transformer capable of multiple ratios: (Figure 9.32)

Carrying the concept of winding taps further, we end up with a "variable transformer,"

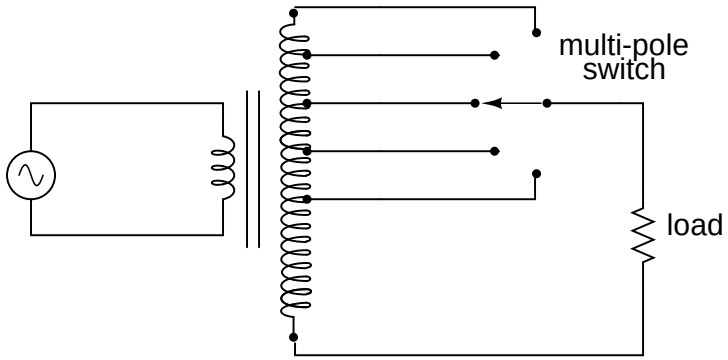


Figure 9.32: *A tapped secondary using a switch to select one of many possible voltages.*

where a sliding contact is moved along the length of an exposed secondary winding, able to connect with it at any point along its length. The effect is equivalent to having a winding tap at every turn of the winding, and a switch with poles at every tap position: (Figure 9.33)

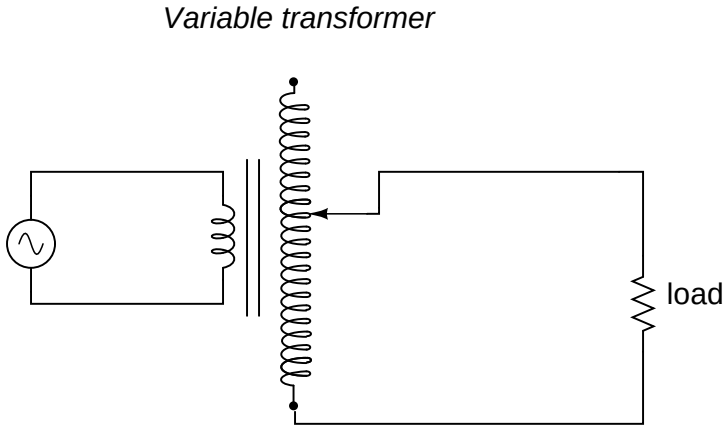


Figure 9.33: *A sliding contact on the secondary continuously varies the secondary voltage.*

One consumer application of the variable transformer is in speed controls for model train sets, especially the train sets of the 1950's and 1960's. These transformers were essentially step-down units, the highest voltage obtainable from the secondary winding being substantially less than the primary voltage of 110 to 120 volts AC. The variable-sweep contact provided a simple means of voltage control with little wasted power, much more efficient than control using a variable resistor!

Moving-slide contacts are too impractical to be used in large industrial power transformer designs, but multi-pole switches and winding taps are common for voltage adjustment. Adjustments need to be made periodically in power systems to accommodate changes in loads over months or years in time, and these switching circuits provide a convenient means. Typically,

such “tap switches” are not engineered to handle full-load current, but must be actuated only when the transformer has been de-energized (no power).

Seeing as how we can tap any transformer winding to obtain the equivalent of several windings (albeit with loss of electrical isolation between them), it makes sense that it should be possible to forego electrical isolation altogether and build a transformer from a single winding. Indeed this is possible, and the resulting device is called an *autotransformer*: (Figure 9.34)

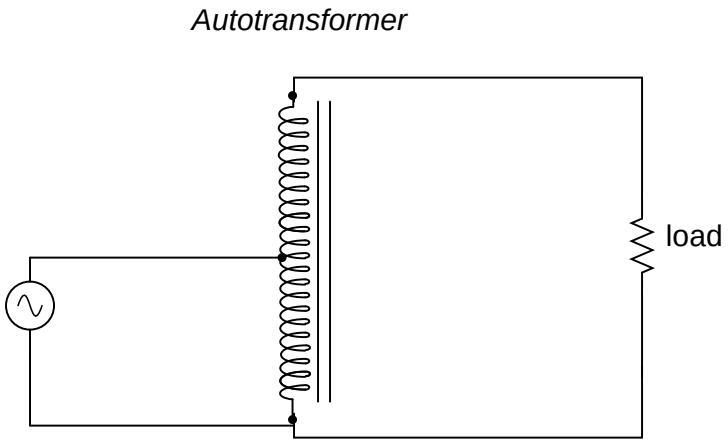


Figure 9.34: *This autotransformer steps voltage up with a single tapped winding, saving copper, sacrificing isolation.*

The autotransformer depicted above performs a voltage step-up function. A step-down autotransformer would look something like Figure 9.35.

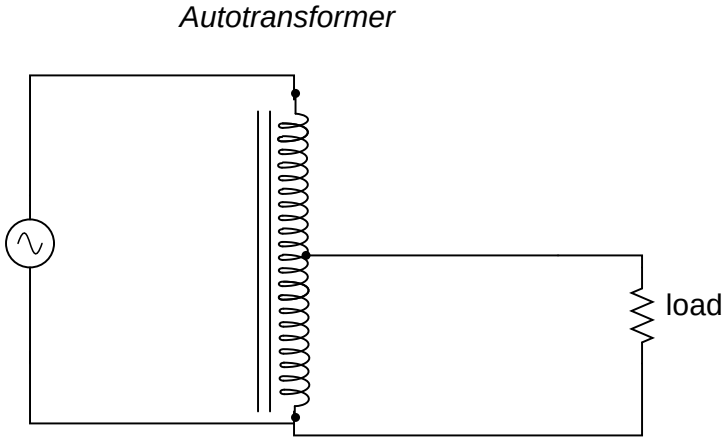


Figure 9.35: *This auto transformer steps voltage down with a single copper-saving tapped winding.*

Autotransformers find popular use in applications requiring a slight boost or reduction in voltage to a load. The alternative with a normal (isolated) transformer would be to either have just the right primary/secondary winding ratio made for the job or use a step-down configuration with the secondary winding connected in series-aiding ("boosting") or series-opposing ("bucking") fashion. Primary, secondary, and load voltages are given to illustrate how this would work.

First, the "boosting" configuration. In Figure 9.36 the secondary coil's polarity is oriented so that its voltage directly adds to the primary voltage.

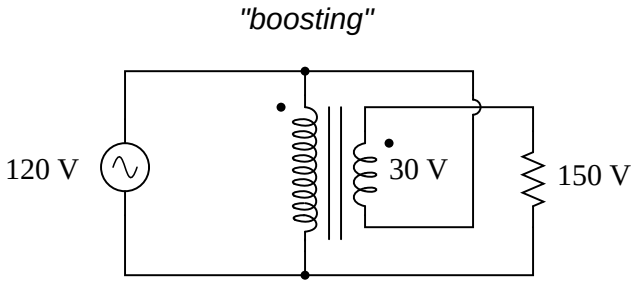


Figure 9.36: *Ordinary transformer wired as an autotransformer to boost the line voltage.*

Next, the "bucking" configuration. In Figure 9.37 the secondary coil's polarity is oriented so that its voltage directly subtracts from the primary voltage:

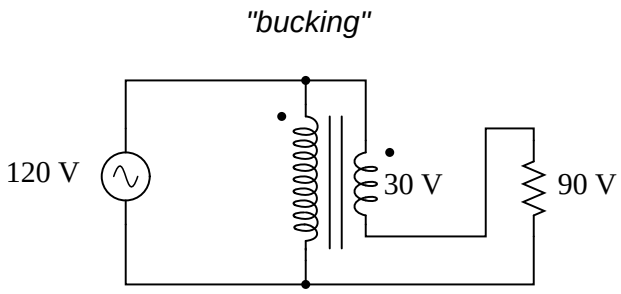


Figure 9.37: *Ordinary transformer wired as an autotransformer to buck the line voltage down.*

The prime advantage of an autotransformer is that the same boosting or bucking function is obtained with only a single winding, making it cheaper and lighter to manufacture than a regular (isolating) transformer having both primary and secondary windings.

Like regular transformers, autotransformer windings can be tapped to provide variations in ratio. Additionally, they can be made continuously variable with a sliding contact to tap the winding at any point along its length. The latter configuration is popular enough to have earned itself its own name: the *Variac*. (Figure 9.38)

Small variacs for benchtop use are popular pieces of equipment for the electronics experimenter, being able to step household AC voltage down (or sometimes up as well) with a wide, fine range of control by a simple twist of a knob.

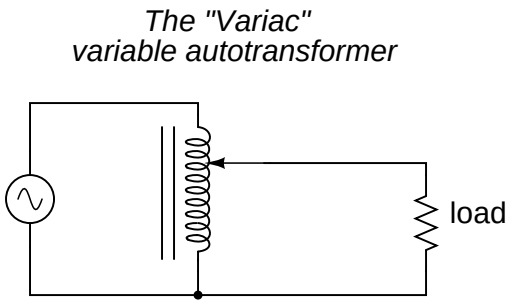


Figure 9.38: *A variac is an autotransformer with a sliding tap.*

- **REVIEW:**
- Transformers can be equipped with more than just a single primary and single secondary winding pair. This allows for multiple step-up and/or step-down ratios in the same device.
- Transformer windings can also be "tapped:" that is, intersected at many points to segment a single winding into sections.
- Variable transformers can be made by providing a movable arm that sweeps across the length of a winding, making contact with the winding at any point along its length. The winding, of course, has to be bare (no insulation) in the area where the arm sweeps.
- An autotransformer is a single, tapped inductor coil used to step up or step down voltage like a transformer, except without providing electrical isolation.
- A *Variac* is a variable autotransformer.

9.6 Voltage regulation

As we saw in a few SPICE analyses earlier in this chapter, the output voltage of a transformer varies some with varying load resistances, even with a constant voltage input. The degree of variance is affected by the primary and secondary winding inductances, among other factors, not the least of which includes winding resistance and the degree of mutual inductance (magnetic coupling) between the primary and secondary windings. For power transformer applications, where the transformer is seen by the load (ideally) as a constant source of voltage, it is good to have the secondary voltage vary as little as possible for wide variances in load current.

The measure of how well a power transformer maintains constant secondary voltage over a range of load currents is called the transformer's *voltage regulation*. It can be calculated from the following formula:

$$\text{Regulation percentage} = \frac{E_{\text{no-load}} - E_{\text{full-load}}}{E_{\text{full-load}}} (100\%)$$

"Full-load" means the point at which the transformer is operating at maximum permissible secondary current. This operating point will be determined primarily by the winding wire size (ampacity) and the method of transformer cooling. Taking our first SPICE transformer simulation as an example, let's compare the output voltage with a 1 kΩ load versus a 200 Ω load (assuming that the 200 Ω load will be our "full load" condition). Recall if you will that our constant primary voltage was 10.00 volts AC:

```
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.962E+00   9.962E-03    Output with 1k ohm load
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.348E+00   4.674E-02    Output with 200 ohm load
```

Notice how the output voltage decreases as the load gets heavier (more current). Now let's take that same transformer circuit and place a load resistance of extremely high magnitude across the secondary winding to simulate a "no-load" condition: (See "transformer" spice list")

```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 10 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-12
rbogus2 5 0 9e12
l1 2 0 100
l2 3 5 100
k l1 l2 0.999
vi1 3 4 ac 0
rload 4 5 9e12
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(2,0) i(v1)
.print ac v(3,5) i(vi1)
.end
```

```
freq          v(2)        i(v1)
6.000E+01     1.000E+01   2.653E-04
freq          v(3,5)      i(vi1)
6.000E+01     9.990E+00   1.110E-12   Output with (almost) no load
```

So, we see that our output (secondary) voltage spans a range of 9.990 volts at (virtually) no load and 9.348 volts at the point we decided to call "full load." Calculating voltage regulation with these figures, we get:

$$\text{Regulation percentage} = \frac{9.990 \text{ V} - 9.348 \text{ V}}{9.348 \text{ V}} \ (100\%)$$

$$\text{Regulation percentage} = 6.8678 \ \%$$

Incidentally, this would be considered rather poor (or "loose") regulation for a power transformer. Powering a simple resistive load like this, a good power transformer should exhibit

a regulation percentage of less than 3%. Inductive loads tend to create a condition of worse voltage regulation, so this analysis with purely resistive loads was a "best-case" condition.

There are some applications, however, where poor regulation is actually desired. One such case is in discharge lighting, where a step-up transformer is required to initially generate a high voltage (necessary to "ignite" the lamps), then the voltage is expected to drop off once the lamp begins to draw current. This is because discharge lamps' voltage requirements tend to be much lower after a current has been established through the arc path. In this case, a step-up transformer with poor voltage regulation suffices nicely for the task of conditioning power to the lamp.

Another application is in current control for AC arc welders, which are nothing more than step-down transformers supplying low-voltage, high-current power for the welding process. A high voltage is desired to assist in "striking" the arc (getting it started), but like the discharge lamp, an arc doesn't require as much voltage to sustain itself once the air has been heated to the point of ionization. Thus, a decrease of secondary voltage under high load current would be a good thing. Some arc welder designs provide arc current adjustment by means of a movable iron core in the transformer, cranked in or out of the winding assembly by the operator. Moving the iron slug away from the windings reduces the strength of magnetic coupling between the windings, which diminishes no-load secondary voltage *and* makes for poorer voltage regulation.

No exposition on transformer regulation could be called complete without mention of an unusual device called a *ferroresonant transformer*. "Ferroresonance" is a phenomenon associated with the behavior of iron cores while operating near a point of magnetic saturation (where the core is so strongly magnetized that further increases in winding current results in little or no increase in magnetic flux).

While being somewhat difficult to describe without going deep into electromagnetic theory, the ferroresonant transformer is a power transformer engineered to operate in a condition of persistent core saturation. That is, its iron core is "stuffed full" of magnetic lines of flux for a large portion of the AC cycle so that variations in supply voltage (primary winding current) have little effect on the core's magnetic flux density, which means the secondary winding outputs a nearly constant voltage despite significant variations in supply (primary winding) voltage. Normally, core saturation in a transformer results in distortion of the sinewave shape, and the ferroresonant transformer is no exception. To combat this side effect, ferroresonant transformers have an auxiliary secondary winding paralleled with one or more capacitors, forming a resonant circuit tuned to the power supply frequency. This "tank circuit" serves as a filter to reject harmonics created by the core saturation, and provides the added benefit of storing energy in the form of AC oscillations, which is available for sustaining output winding voltage for brief periods of input voltage loss (milliseconds' worth of time, but certainly better than nothing). (Figure 9.39)

In addition to blocking harmonics created by the saturated core, this resonant circuit also "filters out" harmonic frequencies generated by nonlinear (switching) loads in the secondary winding circuit and any harmonics present in the source voltage, providing "clean" power to the load.

Ferroresonant transformers offer several features useful in AC power conditioning: constant output voltage given substantial variations in input voltage, harmonic filtering between the power source and the load, and the ability to "ride through" brief losses in power by keeping a reserve of energy in its resonant tank circuit. These transformers are also highly tolerant

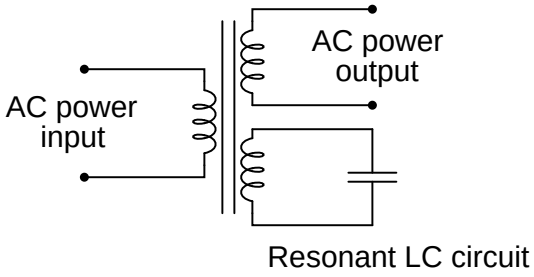


Figure 9.39: *Ferroresonant transformer provides voltage regulation of the output.*

of excessive loading and transient (momentary) voltage surges. They are so tolerant, in fact, that some may be briefly paralleled with unsynchronized AC power sources, allowing a load to be switched from one source of power to another in a "make-before-break" fashion with no interruption of power on the secondary side!

Unfortunately, these devices have equally noteworthy disadvantages: they waste a lot of energy (due to hysteresis losses in the saturated core), generating *significant* heat in the process, and are intolerant of frequency variations, which means they don't work very well when powered by small engine-driven generators having poor speed regulation. Voltages produced in the resonant winding/capacitor circuit tend to be very high, necessitating expensive capacitors and presenting the service technician with very dangerous working voltages. Some applications, though, may prioritize the ferroresonant transformer's advantages over its disadvantages. Semiconductor circuits exist to "condition" AC power as an alternative to ferroresonant devices, but none can compete with this transformer in terms of sheer simplicity.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Voltage regulation* is the measure of how well a power transformer can maintain constant secondary voltage given a constant primary voltage and wide variance in load current. The lower the percentage (closer to zero), the more stable the secondary voltage and the better the regulation it will provide.
- A *ferroresonant* transformer is a special transformer designed to regulate voltage at a stable level despite wide variation in input voltage.

9.7 Special transformers and applications

9.7.1 Impedance matching

Because transformers can step voltage and current to different levels, and because power is transferred equivalently between primary and secondary windings, they can be used to "convert" the impedance of a load to a different level. That last phrase deserves some explanation, so let's investigate what it means.

The purpose of a load (usually) is to do something productive with the power it dissipates. In the case of a resistive heating element, the practical purpose for the power dissipated is to

heat something up. Loads are engineered to safely dissipate a certain maximum amount of power, but two loads of equal power rating are not necessarily identical. Consider these two 1000 watt resistive heating elements: (Figure 9.40)

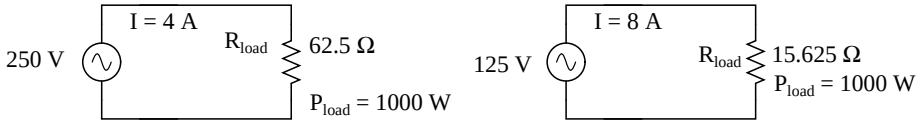


Figure 9.40: *Heating elements dissipate 1000 watts, at different voltage and current ratings.*

Both heaters dissipate exactly 1000 watts of power, but they do so at different voltage and current levels (either 250 volts and 4 amps, or 125 volts and 8 amps). Using Ohm's Law to determine the necessary resistance of these heating elements (R=E/I), we arrive at figures of 62.5 Ω and 15.625 Ω, respectively. If these are AC loads, we might refer to their opposition to current in terms of impedance rather than plain resistance, although in this case that's all they're composed of (no reactance). The 250 volt heater would be said to be a higher impedance load than the 125 volt heater.

If we desired to operate the 250 volt heater element directly on a 125 volt power system, we would end up being disappointed. With 62.5 Ω of impedance (resistance), the current would only be 2 amps (I=E/R; 125/62.5), and the power dissipation would only be 250 watts (P=IE; 125 x 2), or one-quarter of its rated power. The impedance of the heater and the voltage of our source would be mismatched, and we couldn't obtain the full rated power dissipation from the heater.

All hope is not lost, though. With a step-up transformer, we could operate the 250 volt heater element on the 125 volt power system like Figure 9.41.

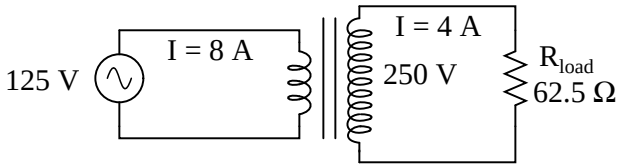


Figure 9.41: *Step-up transformer operates 1000 watt 250 V heater from 125 V power source*

The ratio of the transformer's windings provides the voltage step-up *and* current step-down we need for the otherwise mismatched load to operate properly on this system. Take a close look at the primary circuit figures: 125 volts at 8 amps. As far as the power supply "knows," its powering a 15.625 Ω (R=E/I) load at 125 volts, not a 62.5 Ω load! The voltage and current figures for the primary winding are indicative of 15.625 Ω load impedance, not the actual 62.5 Ω of the load itself. In other words, not only has our step-up transformer transformed voltage and current, but it has transformed *impedance* as well.

The transformation ratio of impedance is the square of the voltage/current transformation ratio, the same as the winding inductance ratio:

$$\text{Voltage transformation ratio} = \frac{N_{secondary}}{N_{primary}}$$

$$\text{Current transformation ratio} = \frac{N_{primary}}{N_{secondary}}$$

$$\text{Impedance transformation ratio} = \left(\frac{N_{secondary}}{N_{primary}}\right)^2$$

$$\text{Inductance ratio} = \left(\frac{N_{secondary}}{N_{primary}}\right)^2$$

Where,

N = number of turns in winding

This concurs with our example of the 2:1 step-up transformer and the impedance ratio of 62.5 Ω to 15.625 Ω (a 4:1 ratio, which is 2:1 squared). Impedance transformation is a highly useful ability of transformers, for it allows a load to dissipate its full rated power even if the power system is not at the proper voltage to directly do so.

Recall from our study of network analysis the *Maximum Power Transfer Theorem*, which states that the maximum amount of power will be dissipated by a load resistance when that load resistance is equal to the Thevenin/Norton resistance of the network supplying the power. Substitute the word "impedance" for "resistance" in that definition and you have the AC version of that Theorem. If we're trying to obtain theoretical maximum power dissipation from a load, we must be able to properly match the load impedance and source (Thevenin/Norton) impedance together. This is generally more of a concern in specialized electric circuits such as radio transmitter/antenna and audio amplifier/speaker systems. Let's take an audio amplifier system and see how it works: (Figure 9.42)

With an internal impedance of 500 Ω, the amplifier can only deliver full power to a load (speaker) also having 500 Ω of impedance. Such a load would drop higher voltage and draw less current than an 8 Ω speaker dissipating the same amount of power. If an 8 Ω speaker were connected directly to the 500 Ω amplifier as shown, the *impedance mismatch* would result in very poor (low peak power) performance. Additionally, the amplifier would tend to dissipate more than its fair share of power in the form of heat trying to drive the low impedance speaker.

To make this system work better, we can use a transformer to match these mismatched impedances. Since we're going from a high impedance (high voltage, low current) supply to a low impedance (low voltage, high current) load, we'll need to use a step-down transformer: (Figure 9.43)

To obtain an impedance transformation ratio of 500:8, we would need a winding ratio equal to the square root of 500:8 (the square root of 62.5:1, or 7.906:1). With such a transformer in place, the speaker will load the amplifier to just the right degree, drawing power at the correct voltage and current levels to satisfy the Maximum Power Transfer Theorem and make for the

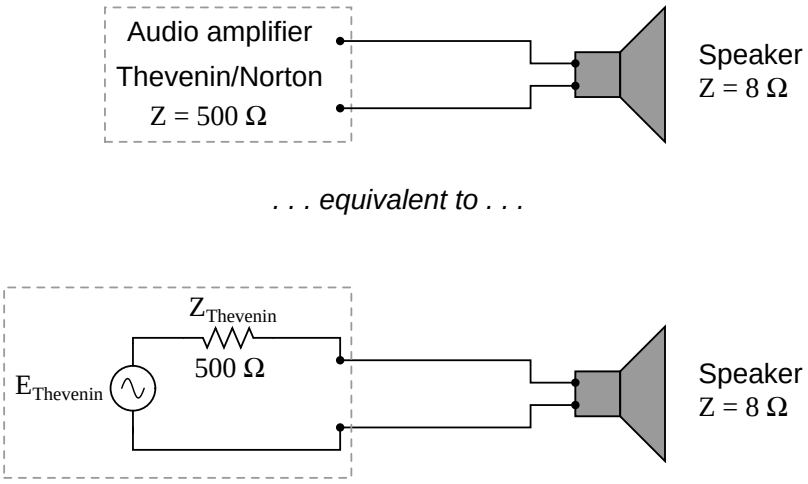


Figure 9.42: *Amplifier with impedance of 500 Ω drives 8 Ω at much less than maximum power.*

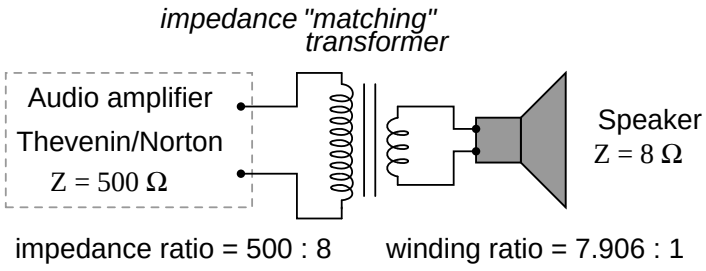


Figure 9.43: *Impedance matching transformer matches 500 Ω amplifier to 8 Ω speaker for maximum efficiency.*

most efficient power delivery to the load. The use of a transformer in this capacity is called *impedance matching*.

Anyone who has ridden a multi-speed bicycle can intuitively understand the principle of impedance matching. A human's legs will produce maximum power when spinning the bicycle crank at a particular speed (about 60 to 90 revolution per minute). Above or below that rotational speed, human leg muscles are less efficient at generating power. The purpose of the bicycle's "gears" is to impedance-match the rider's legs to the riding conditions so that they always spin the crank at the optimum speed.

If the rider attempts to start moving while the bicycle is shifted into its "top" gear, he or she will find it very difficult to get moving. Is it because the rider is weak? No, its because the high step-up ratio of the bicycle's chain and sprockets in that top gear presents a mismatch between the conditions (lots of inertia to overcome) and their legs (needing to spin at 60-90 RPM for maximum power output). On the other hand, selecting a gear that is too low will enable the rider to get moving immediately, but limit the top speed they will be able to attain. Again, is the lack of speed an indication of weakness in the bicyclist's legs? No, its because the lower speed ratio of the selected gear creates another type of mismatch between the conditions (low load) and the rider's legs (losing power if spinning faster than 90 RPM). It is much the same with electric power sources and loads: there must be an impedance match for maximum system efficiency. In AC circuits, transformers perform the same matching function as the sprockets and chain ("gears") on a bicycle to match otherwise mismatched sources and loads.

Impedance matching transformers are not fundamentally different from any other type of transformer in construction or appearance. A small impedance-matching transformer (about two centimeters in width) for audio-frequency applications is shown in the following photograph: (Figure 9.44)

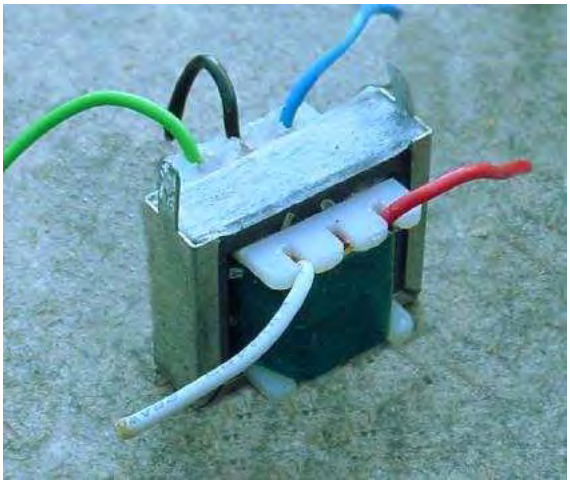


Figure 9.44: *Audio frequency impedance matching transformer.*

Another impedance-matching transformer can be seen on this printed circuit board, in the upper right corner, to the immediate left of resistors R_2 and R_1. It is labeled "T1": (Figure 9.45)

Figure 9.45: *Printed circuit board mounted audio impedance matching transformer, top right.*

9.7.2 Potential transformers

Transformers can also be used in electrical instrumentation systems. Due to transformers' ability to step up or step down voltage and current, and the electrical isolation they provide, they can serve as a way of connecting electrical instrumentation to high-voltage, high current power systems. Suppose we wanted to accurately measure the voltage of a 13.8 kV power system (a very common power distribution voltage in American industry): (Figure 9.46)

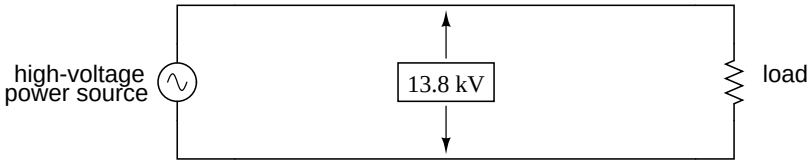


Figure 9.46: *Direct measurement of high voltage by a voltmeter is a potential safety hazard.*

Designing, installing, and maintaining a voltmeter capable of directly measuring 13,800 volts AC would be no easy task. The safety hazard alone of bringing 13.8 kV conductors into an instrument panel would be severe, not to mention the design of the voltmeter itself. However, by using a precision step-down transformer, we can reduce the 13.8 kV down to a safe level of voltage at a constant ratio, and isolate it from the instrument connections, adding an additional level of safety to the metering system: (Figure 9.47)

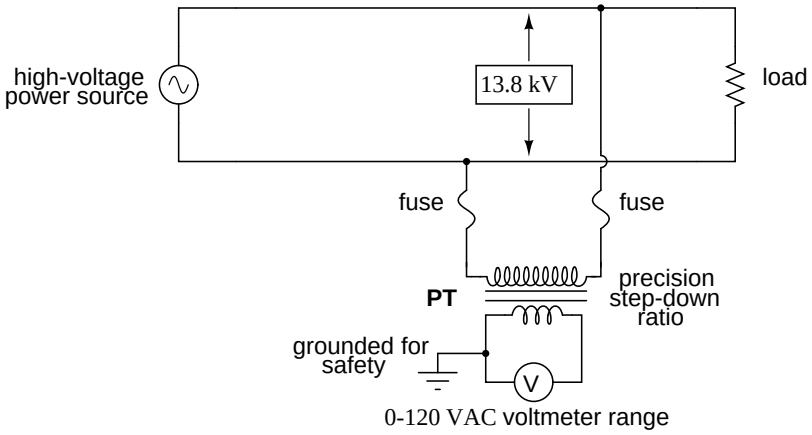


Figure 9.47: *Instrumentation application:"Potential transformer" precisely scales dangerous high voltage to a safe value applicable to a conventional voltmeter.*

Now the voltmeter reads a precise fraction, or ratio, of the actual system voltage, its scale set to read as though it were measuring the voltage directly. The transformer keeps the instrument voltage at a safe level and electrically isolates it from the power system, so there is no direct connection between the power lines and the instrument or instrument wiring. When used in this capacity, the transformer is called a *Potential Transformer*, or simply *PT*.

Potential transformers are designed to provide as accurate a voltage step-down ratio as possible. To aid in precise voltage regulation, loading is kept to a minimum: the voltmeter is made to have high input impedance so as to draw as little current from the PT as possible. As you can see, a fuse has been connected in series with the PTs primary winding, for safety and ease of disconnecting the PT from the circuit.

A standard secondary voltage for a PT is 120 volts AC, for full-rated power line voltage. The standard voltmeter range to accompany a PT is 150 volts, full-scale. PTs with custom winding ratios can be manufactured to suit any application. This lends itself well to industry standardization of the actual voltmeter instruments themselves, since the PT will be sized to step the system voltage down to this standard instrument level.

9.7.3 Current transformers

Following the same line of thinking, we can use a transformer to step down current through a power line so that we are able to safely and easily measure high system currents with inexpensive ammeters. Of course, such a transformer would be connected in series with the power line, like (Figure 9.48).

Note that while the PT is a step-down device, the *Current Transformer* (or *CT*) is a step-up device (with respect to voltage), which is what is needed to step *down* the power line current. Quite often, CTs are built as donut-shaped devices through which the power line conductor is run, the power line itself acting as a single-turn primary winding: (Figure 9.49)

Some CTs are made to hinge open, allowing insertion around a power conductor without

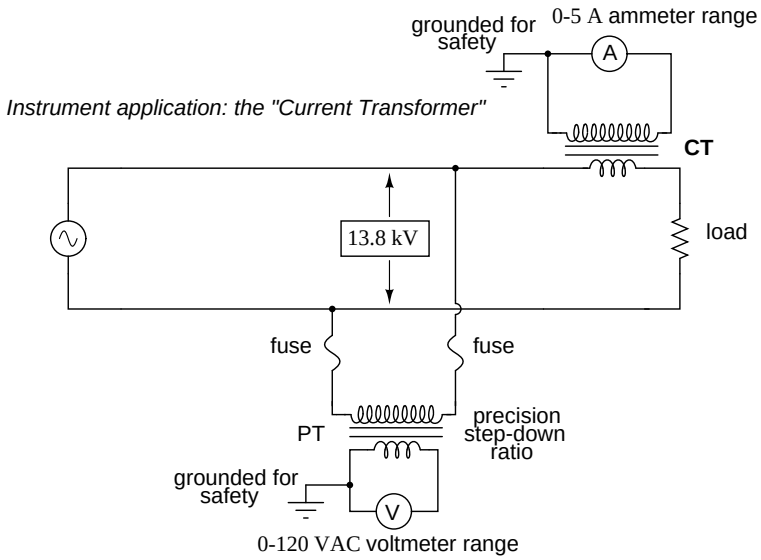


Figure 9.48: *Instrumentation application: "Currrent transformer" steps high current down to a value applicable to a conventional ammeter.*

Figure 9.49: *Current conductor to be measured is threaded through the opening. Scaled down current is available on wire leads.*

disturbing the conductor at all. The industry standard secondary current for a CT is a range of 0 to 5 amps AC. Like PTs, CTs can be made with custom winding ratios to fit almost any application. Because their "full load" secondary current is 5 amps, CT ratios are usually described in terms of full-load primary amps to 5 amps, like this:

600 : 5 ratio *(for measuring up to 600 A line current)*

100 : 5 ratio *(for measuring up to 100 A line current)*

1k : 5 ratio *(for measuring up to 1000 A line current)*

The "donut" CT shown in the photograph has a ratio of 50:5. That is, when the conductor through the center of the torus is carrying 50 amps of current (AC), there will be 5 amps of current induced in the CT's winding.

Because CTs are designed to be powering ammeters, which are low-impedance loads, and they are wound as voltage step-up transformers, they should never, *ever* be operated with an open-circuited secondary winding. Failure to heed this warning will result in the CT producing extremely high secondary voltages, dangerous to equipment and personnel alike. To facilitate maintenance of ammeter instrumentation, short-circuiting switches are often installed in parallel with the CT's secondary winding, to be closed whenever the ammeter is removed for service: (Figure 9.50)

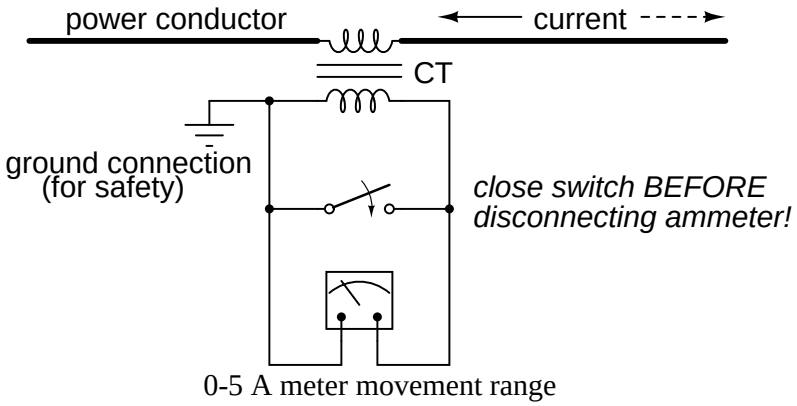


Figure 9.50: *Short-circuit switch allows ammeter to be removed from an active current transformer circuit.*

Though it may seem strange to *intentionally* short-circuit a power system component, it is perfectly proper and quite necessary when working with current transformers.

9.7.4 Air core transformers

Another kind of special transformer, seen often in radio-frequency circuits, is the *air core* transformer. (Figure 9.51) True to its name, an air core transformer has its windings wrapped around a nonmagnetic form, usually a hollow tube of some material. The degree of coupling (mutual inductance) between windings in such a transformer is many times less than that

of an equivalent iron-core transformer, but the undesirable characteristics of a ferromagnetic core (eddy current losses, hysteresis, saturation, etc.) are completely eliminated. It is in high-frequency applications that these effects of iron cores are most problematic.

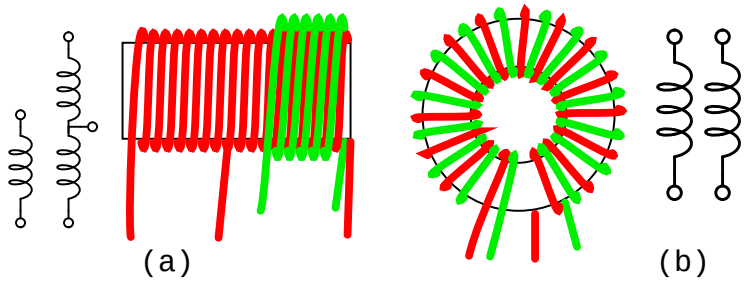


Figure 9.51: *Air core transformers may be wound on cylindrical (a) or toroidal (b) forms. Center tapped primary with secondary (a). Bifilar winding on toroidal form (b).*

The inside tapped solenoid winding, (Figure (a) 9.51), without the over winding, could match unequal impedances when DC isolation is not required. When isolation is required the over winding is added over one end of the main winding. Air core transformers are used at radio frequencies when iron core losses are too high. Frequently air core transformers are paralleled with a capacitor to tune it to resonance. The over winding is connected between a radio antenna and ground for one such application. The secondary is tuned to resonance with a variable capacitor. The output may be taken from the tap point for amplification or detection. Small millimeter size air core transformers are used in radio receivers. The largest radio transmitters may use meter sized coils. Unshielded air core solenoid transformers are mounted at right angles to each other to prevent stray coupling.

Stray coupling is minimized when the transformer is wound on a toroid form. (Figure (b) 9.51) Toroidal air core transformers also show a higher degree of coupling, particularly for *bifilar* windings. Bifilar windings are wound from a slightly twisted pair of wires. This implies a 1:1 turns ratio. Three or four wires may be grouped for 1:2 and other integral ratios. Windings do not have to be bifilar. This allows arbitrary turns ratios. However, the degree of coupling suffers. Toroidal air core transformers are rare except for VHF (Very High Frequency) work. Core materials other than air such as powdered iron or ferrite are preferred for lower radio frequencies.

9.7.5 Tesla Coil

One notable example of an air-core transformer is the *Tesla Coil*, named after the Serbian electrical genius Nikola Tesla, who was also the inventor of the rotating magnetic field AC motor, polyphase AC power systems, and many elements of radio technology. The Tesla Coil is a resonant, high-frequency step-up transformer used to produce extremely high voltages. One of Tesla's dreams was to employ his coil technology to distribute electric power without the need for wires, simply broadcasting it in the form of radio waves which could be received and conducted to loads by means of antennas. The basic schematic for a Tesla Coil is shown in Figure 9.52.

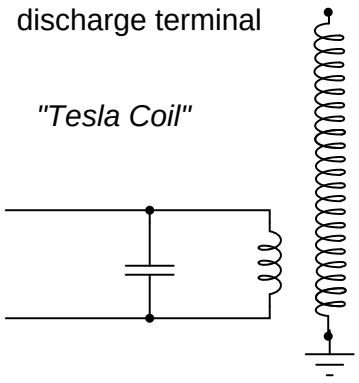


Figure 9.52: *Tesla Coil: A few heavy primary turns, many secondary turns.*

The capacitor, in conjunction with the transformer's primary winding, forms a tank circuit. The secondary winding is wound in close proximity to the primary, usually around the same nonmagnetic form. Several options exist for "exciting" the primary circuit, the simplest being a high-voltage, low-frequency AC source and spark gap: (Figure 9.53)

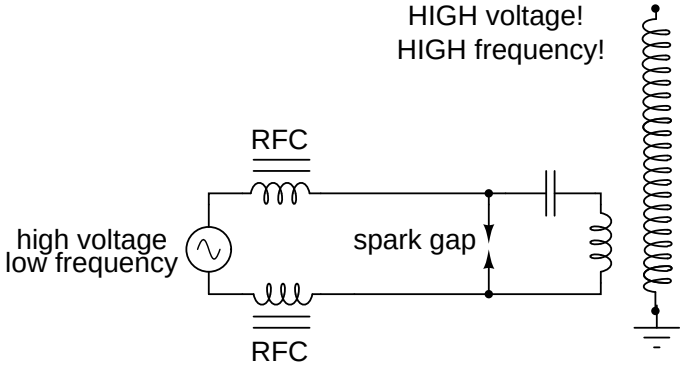


Figure 9.53: *System level diagram of Tesla coil with spark gap drive.*

The purpose of the high-voltage, low-frequency AC power source is to "charge" the primary tank circuit. When the spark gap fires, its low impedance acts to complete the capacitor/primary coil tank circuit, allowing it to oscillate at its resonant frequency. The "RFC" inductors are "Radio Frequency Chokes," which act as high impedances to prevent the AC source from interfering with the oscillating tank circuit.

The secondary side of the Tesla coil transformer is also a tank circuit, relying on the parasitic (stray) capacitance existing between the discharge terminal and earth ground to complement the secondary winding's inductance. For optimum operation, this secondary tank circuit is tuned to the same resonant frequency as the primary circuit, with energy exchanged not only between capacitors and inductors during resonant oscillation, but also back-and-forth between

primary and secondary windings. The visual results are spectacular: (Figure 9.54)

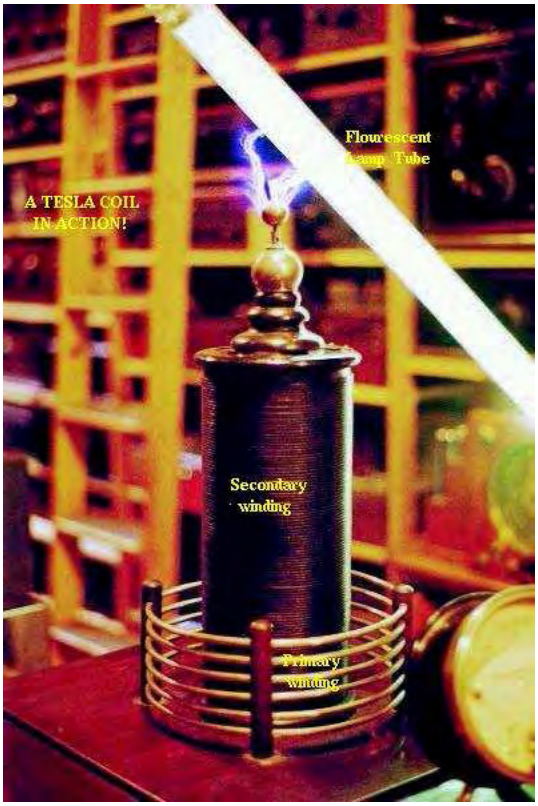


Figure 9.54: *High voltage high frequency discharge from Tesla coil.*

Tesla Coils find application primarily as novelty devices, showing up in high school science fairs, basement workshops, and the occasional low budget science-fiction movie.

It should be noted that Tesla coils can be extremely dangerous devices. Burns caused by radio-frequency ("RF") current, like all electrical burns, can be very deep, unlike skin burns caused by contact with hot objects or flames. Although the high-frequency discharge of a Tesla coil has the curious property of being beyond the "shock perception" frequency of the human nervous system, this does not mean Tesla coils cannot hurt or even kill you! I strongly advise seeking the assistance of an experienced Tesla coil experimenter if you would embark on building one yourself.

9.7.6 Saturable reactors

So far, we've explored the transformer as a device for converting different levels of voltage, current, and even impedance from one circuit to another. Now we'll take a look at it as a completely different kind of device: one that allows a small electrical signal to exert *control* over a much larger quantity of electrical power. In this mode, a transformer acts as an *amplifier*.

The device I'm referring to is called a *saturable-core reactor*, or simply *saturable reactor*. Actually, it is not really a transformer at all, but rather a special kind of inductor whose inductance can be varied by the application of a DC current through a second winding wound around the same iron core. Like the ferroresonant transformer, the saturable reactor relies on the principle of magnetic saturation. When a material such as iron is completely saturated (that is, all its magnetic domains are lined up with the applied magnetizing force), additional increases in current through the magnetizing winding will not result in further increases of magnetic flux.

Now, inductance is the measure of how well an inductor opposes changes in current by developing a voltage in an opposing direction. The ability of an inductor to generate this opposing voltage is directly connected with the change in magnetic flux inside the inductor resulting from the change in current, and the number of winding turns in the inductor. If an inductor has a saturated core, no further magnetic flux will result from further increases in current, and so there will be no voltage induced in opposition to the change in current. In other words, an inductor loses its inductance (ability to oppose changes in current) when its core becomes magnetically saturated.

If an inductor's inductance changes, then its reactance (and impedance) to AC current changes as well. In a circuit with a constant voltage source, this will result in a change in current: (Figure 9.55)

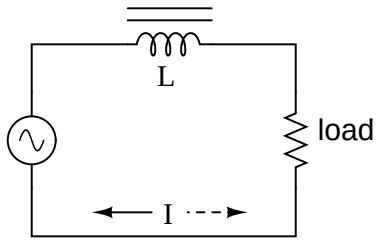


Figure 9.55: *If L changes in inductance, Z_L will correspondingly change, thus changing the circuit current.*

A saturable reactor capitalizes on this effect by forcing the core into a state of saturation with a strong magnetic field generated by current through another winding. The reactor's "power" winding is the one carrying the AC load current, and the "control" winding is one carrying a DC current strong enough to drive the core into saturation: (Figure 9.56)

The strange-looking transformer symbol shown in the above schematic represents a saturable-core reactor, the upper winding being the DC control winding and the lower being the "power" winding through which the controlled AC current goes. Increased DC control current produces more magnetic flux in the reactor core, driving it closer to a condition of saturation, thus decreasing the power winding's inductance, decreasing its impedance, and increasing current to the load. Thus, the DC control current is able to exert *control* over the AC current delivered to the load.

The circuit shown would work, but it would not work very well. The first problem is the natural transformer action of the saturable reactor: AC current through the power winding will induce a voltage in the control winding, which may cause trouble for the DC power source.

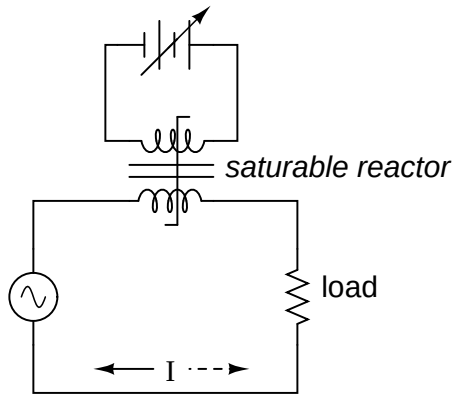


Figure 9.56: *DC, via the control winding, saturates the core. Thus, modulating the power winding inductance, impedance, and current.*

Also, saturable reactors tend to regulate AC power only in one direction: in one half of the AC cycle, the mmf's from both windings add; in the other half, they subtract. Thus, the core will have more flux in it during one half of the AC cycle than the other, and will saturate first in that cycle half, passing load current more easily in one direction than the other. Fortunately, both problems can be overcome with a little ingenuity: (Figure 9.57)

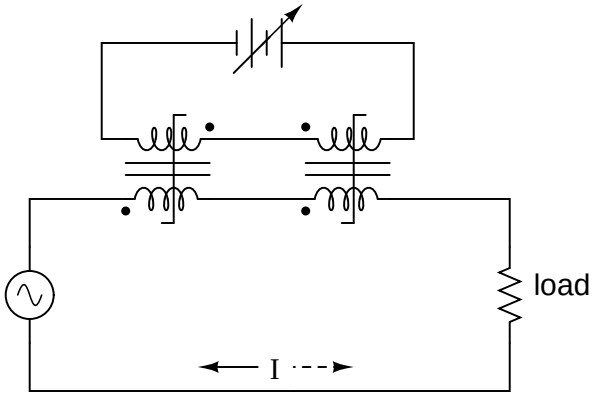


Figure 9.57: *Out of phase DC control windings allow symmetrical of control AC.*

Notice the placement of the phasing dots on the two reactors: the power windings are "in phase" while the control windings are "out of phase." If both reactors are identical, any voltage induced in the control windings by load current through the power windings will cancel out to zero at the battery terminals, thus eliminating the first problem mentioned. Furthermore, since the DC control current through both reactors produces magnetic fluxes in different directions through the reactor cores, one reactor will saturate more in one cycle of the AC

power while the other reactor will saturate more in the other, thus equalizing the control action through each half-cycle so that the AC power is "throttled" symmetrically. This phasing of control windings can be accomplished with two separate reactors as shown, or in a single reactor design with intelligent layout of the windings and core.

Saturable reactor technology has even been miniaturized to the circuit-board level in compact packages more generally known as *magnetic amplifiers*. I personally find this to be fascinating: the effect of amplification (one electrical signal controlling another), normally requiring the use of physically fragile vacuum tubes or electrically "fragile" semiconductor devices, can be realized in a device both physically and electrically rugged. Magnetic amplifiers do have disadvantages over their more fragile counterparts, namely size, weight, nonlinearity, and bandwidth (frequency response), but their utter simplicity still commands a certain degree of appreciation, if not practical application.

Saturable-core reactors are less commonly known as "saturable-core inductors" or *transductors*.

9.7.7 Scott-T transformer

Nikola Tesla's original polyphase power system was based on simple to build 2-phase components. However, as transmission distances increased, the more transmission line efficient 3-phase system became more prominent. Both 2-ϕ and 3-ϕ components coexisted for a number of years. The Scott-T transformer connection allowed 2-ϕ and 3-ϕ components like motors and alternators to be interconnected. Yamamoto and Yamaguchi:

> In 1896, General Electric built a 35.5 km (22 mi) three-phase transmission line operated at 11 kV to transmit power to Buffalo, New York, from the Niagara Falls Project. The two-phase generated power was changed to three-phase by the use of Scott-T transformations. [1]

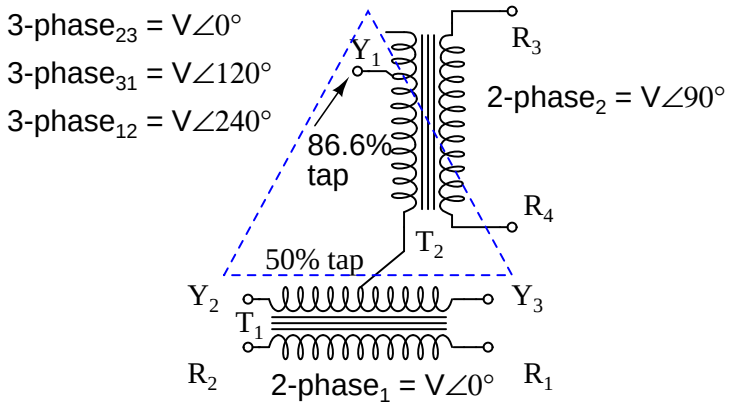
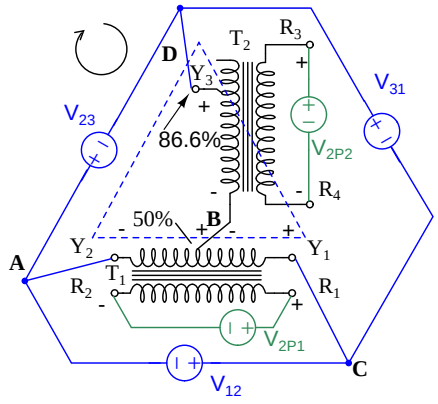


Figure 9.58: *Scott-T transformer converts 2-ϕ to 3-ϕ, or vice versa.*

The Scott-T transformer set, Figure 9.58, consists of a center tapped transformer T1 and an 86.6% tapped transformer T2 on the 3-ϕ side of the circuit. The primaries of both transformers are connected to the 2-ϕ voltages. One end of the T2 86.6% secondary winding is a 3-ϕ output, the other end is connected to the T1 secondary center tap. Both ends of the T1 secondary are the other two 3-ϕ connections.

Application of 2-ϕ Niagara generator power produced a 3-ϕ output for the more efficient 3-ϕ transmission line. More common these days is the application of 3-ϕ power to produce a 2-ϕ output for driving an old 2-ϕ motor.

In Figure 9.59, we use vectors in both polar and complex notation to prove that the Scott-T converts a pair of 2-ϕ voltages to 3-ϕ. First, one of the 3-ϕ voltages is identical to a 2-ϕ voltage due to the 1:1 transformer T1 ratio, V_{P12}= V_{2P1}. The T1 center tapped secondary produces opposite polarities of $0.5V_{2P1}$ on the secondary ends. This $\angle 0^o$ is vectorially subtracted from T2 secondary voltage due to the KVL equations V_{31}, V_{23}. The T2 secondary voltage is $0.866V_{2P2}$ due to the 86.6% tap. Keep in mind that this 2nd phase of the 2-ϕ is $\angle 90^o$. This $0.866V_{2P2}$ is added at V_{31}, subtracted at V_{23} in the KVL equations.



Given two 90° phased voltages:
V_{2P1} =Vsin(θ+0°)=V∠0°=V(1+j0)
V_{2P2} =Vsin(θ+90°)=Vcos(θ)=V∠90°=V(0+j1)
Derive the three phase voltages V_{12}, V_{23}, V_{31} :
V_{12}=V_{2P1} =Vsin(θ+0°)=V∠0°=V(1+j0)

(1) KVL: $-V_{12} + V_{AC} = 0$
(2) KVL: $-V_{31} - V_{CB} + V_{BD} = 0$
(3) KVL: $-V_{23} = -V_{DB} - V_{BA} = 0$

(1) KVL: $V_{12} = V_{AC}$
(2) KVL: $V_{31} = -V_{CB} + V_{BD}$
(3) KVL: $V_{23} = -V_{DB} - V_{BA}$

$V_{DB} = 0.866V_{2P2} = 0.866V\angle 90° = 0.866V(0+j1)$

$V_{CB} = V_{BA} = 0.5V_{2P1} = 0.5V\angle 0° = 0.5V(1+j0)$

$V_{12} = V_{2P1} = V\angle 0°$
$V_{31} = (-0.5)V\angle 0° + 0.866V\angle 90° = V(-0.5(1+j0)+0.866(0+j1)) = V(-0.5+j0.866) = V\angle 120°$
$V_{23} = (-0.5)V\angle 0° - 0.866V\angle 90° = V(-0.5(1+j0)-0.866(0+j1)) = V(-0.5+-j0.866) = V\angle -120° = V\angle 240°$

Figure 9.59: *Scott-T transformer 2-ϕ to 3-ϕ conversion equations.*

We show "DC" polarities all over this AC only circuit, to keep track of the Kirchhoff voltage loop polarities. Subtracting $\angle 0^o$ is equivalent to adding $\angle 180^o$. The bottom line is when we add 86.6% of $\angle 90^o$ to 50% of $\angle 180^o$ we get $\angle 120^o$. Subtracting 86.6% of $\angle 90^o$ from 50% of $\angle 180^o$ yields $\angle$-120^o or $\angle 240^o$.

In Figure 9.60 we graphically show the 2-ϕ vectors at (a). At (b) the vectors are scaled by transformers T1 and T2 to 0.5 and 0.866 respectively. At (c) $1\angle 120^o$ = -0.5$\angle 0^o$ + 0.866$\angle 90^o$, and $1\angle 240^o$ = -0.5$\angle 0^o$ - 0.866$\angle 90^o$. The three output phases are $1\angle 120^o$ and $1\angle 240^o$ from (c), along with input $1\angle 0^o$ (a).

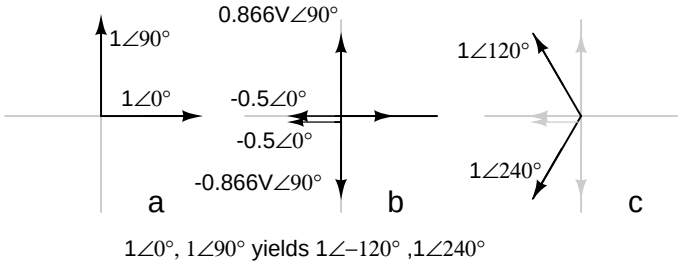


Figure 9.60: *Graphical explanation of equations in Figure 9.59.*

9.7.8 Linear Variable Differential Transformer

A *linear variable differential transformer* (LVDT) has an AC driven primary wound between two secondaries on a cylindrical air core form. (Figure 9.61) A movable ferromagnetic slug converts displacement to a variable voltage by changing the coupling between the driven primary and secondary windings. The LVDT is a displacement or distance measuring transducer. Units are available for measuring displacement over a distance of a fraction of a millimeter to a half a meter. LVDT's are rugged and dirt resistant compared to linear optical encoders.

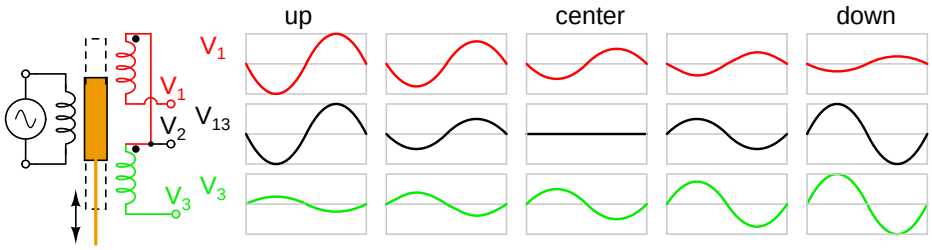


Figure 9.61: *LVDT: linear variable differential transformer.*

The excitation voltage is in the range of 0.5 to 10 VAC at a frequency of 1 to 200 Khz. A ferrite core is suitable at these frequencies. It is extended outside the body by an non-magnetic rod. As the core is moved toward the top winding, the voltage across this coil increases due to increased coupling, while the voltage on the bottom coil decreases. If the core is moved toward the bottom winding, the voltage on this coil increases as the voltage decreases across the top coil. Theoretically, a centered slug yields equal voltages across both coils. In practice leakage inductance prevents the null from dropping all the way to 0 V.

With a centered slug, the series-opposing wired secondaries cancel yielding $V_{13} = 0$. Moving the slug up increases V_{13}. Note that it is in-phase with with V_1, the top winding, and 180^o out of phase with V_3, bottom winding.

Moving the slug down from the center position increases V_{13}. However, it is 180^o out of phase with with V_1, the top winding, and in-phase with V_3, bottom winding. Moving the slug from top to bottom shows a minimum at the center point, with a 180^o phase reversal in passing the center.

- **REVIEW:**
- Transformers can be used to transform impedance as well as voltage and current. When this is done to improve power transfer to a load, it is called *impedance matching*.
- A *Potential Transformer* (PT) is a special instrument transformer designed to provide a precise voltage step-down ratio for voltmeters measuring high power system voltages.
- A *Current Transformer* (CT) is another special instrument transformer designed to step down the current through a power line to a safe level for an ammeter to measure.
- An *air-core* transformer is one lacking a ferromagnetic core.
- A *Tesla Coil* is a resonant, air-core, step-up transformer designed to produce very high AC voltages at high frequency.
- A *saturable reactor* is a special type of inductor, the inductance of which can be controlled by the DC current through a second winding around the same core. With enough DC current, the magnetic core can be saturated, decreasing the inductance of the power winding in a controlled fashion.
- A *Scott-T transformer* converts 3-ϕ power to 2-ϕ power and vice versa.
- A *linear variable differential transformer*, also known as an LVDT, is a distance measuring device. It has a movable ferromagnetic core to vary the coupling between the excited primary and a pair of secondaries.

9.8 Practical considerations

9.8.1 Power capacity

As has already been observed, transformers must be well designed in order to achieve acceptable power coupling, tight voltage regulation, and low exciting current distortion. Also, transformers must be designed to carry the expected values of primary and secondary winding current without any trouble. This means the winding conductors must be made of the proper gauge wire to avoid any heating problems. An ideal transformer would have perfect coupling (no leakage inductance), perfect voltage regulation, perfectly sinusoidal exciting current, no hysteresis or eddy current losses, and wire thick enough to handle any amount of current. Unfortunately, the ideal transformer would have to be infinitely large and heavy to meet these design goals. Thus, in the business of *practical* transformer design, compromises must be made.

Additionally, winding conductor insulation is a concern where high voltages are encountered, as they often are in step-up and step-down power distribution transformers. Not only do the windings have to be well insulated from the iron core, but each winding has to be sufficiently insulated from the other in order to maintain electrical isolation between windings.

Respecting these limitations, transformers are rated for certain levels of primary and secondary winding voltage and current, though the current rating is usually derived from a volt-amp (VA) rating assigned to the transformer. For example, take a step-down transformer with

a primary voltage rating of 120 volts, a secondary voltage rating of 48 volts, and a VA rating of 1 kVA (1000 VA). The maximum winding currents can be determined as such:

$$\frac{1000 \text{ VA}}{120 \text{ V}} = 8.333 \text{ A} \quad \textit{(maximum primary winding current)}$$

$$\frac{1000 \text{ VA}}{48 \text{ V}} = 20.833 \text{ A} \quad \textit{(maximum secondary winding current)}$$

Sometimes windings will bear current ratings in amps, but this is typically seen on small transformers. Large transformers are almost always rated in terms of winding voltage and VA or kVA.

9.8.2 Energy losses

When transformers transfer power, they do so with a minimum of loss. As it was stated earlier, modern power transformer designs typically exceed 95% efficiency. It is good to know where some of this lost power goes, however, and what causes it to be lost.

There is, of course, power lost due to resistance of the wire windings. Unless superconducting wires are used, there will always be power dissipated in the form of heat through the resistance of current-carrying conductors. Because transformers require such long lengths of wire, this loss can be a significant factor. Increasing the gauge of the winding wire is one way to minimize this loss, but only with substantial increases in cost, size, and weight.

Resistive losses aside, the bulk of transformer power loss is due to magnetic effects in the core. Perhaps the most significant of these "core losses" is *eddy-current loss*, which is resistive power dissipation due to the passage of induced currents through the iron of the core. Because iron is a conductor of electricity as well as being an excellent "conductor" of magnetic flux, there will be currents induced in the iron just as there are currents induced in the secondary windings from the alternating magnetic field. These induced currents – as described by the perpendicularity clause of Faraday's Law – tend to circulate through the cross-section of the core perpendicularly to the primary winding turns. Their circular motion gives them their unusual name: like eddies in a stream of water that circulate rather than move in straight lines.

Iron is a fair conductor of electricity, but not as good as the copper or aluminum from which wire windings are typically made. Consequently, these "eddy currents" must overcome significant electrical resistance as they circulate through the core. In overcoming the resistance offered by the iron, they dissipate power in the form of heat. Hence, we have a source of inefficiency in the transformer that is difficult to eliminate.

This phenomenon is so pronounced that it is often exploited as a means of heating ferrous (iron-containing) materials. The photograph of (Figure 9.62) shows an "induction heating" unit raising the temperature of a large pipe section. Loops of wire covered by high-temperature insulation encircle the pipe's circumference, inducing eddy currents within the pipe wall by electromagnetic induction. In order to maximize the eddy current effect, high-frequency alternating current is used rather than power line frequency (60 Hz). The box units at the right of the picture produce the high-frequency AC and control the amount of current in the wires to stabilize the pipe temperature at a pre-determined "set-point."

Figure 9.62: *Induction heating: Primary insulated winding induces current into lossy iron pipe (secondary).*

The main strategy in mitigating these wasteful eddy currents in transformer cores is to form the iron core in sheets, each sheet covered with an insulating varnish so that the core is divided up into thin slices. The result is very little width in the core for eddy currents to circulate in: (Figure 9.63)

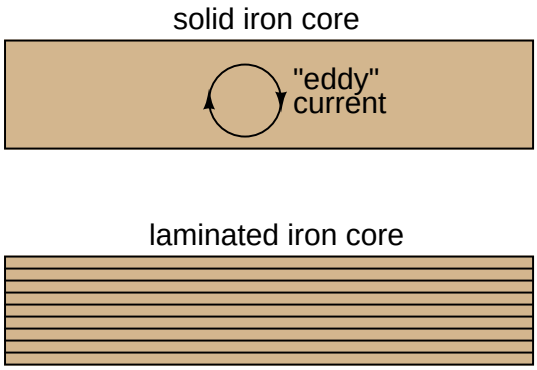


Figure 9.63: *Dividing the iron core into thin insulated laminations minimizes eddy current loss.*

Laminated cores like the one shown here are standard in almost all low-frequency transformers. Recall from the photograph of the transformer cut in half that the iron core was composed of many thin sheets rather than one solid piece. Eddy current losses increase with frequency, so transformers designed to run on higher-frequency power (such as 400 Hz, used in many military and aircraft applications) must use thinner laminations to keep the losses down to a respectable minimum. This has the undesirable effect of increasing the manufacturing cost of the transformer.

Another, similar technique for minimizing eddy current losses which works better for high-frequency applications is to make the core out of iron powder instead of thin iron sheets. Like the lamination sheets, these granules of iron are individually coated in an electrically insulating material, which makes the core nonconductive except for within the width of each granule. Powdered iron cores are often found in transformers handling radio-frequency currents.

Another "core loss" is that of magnetic *hysteresis*. All ferromagnetic materials tend to retain some degree of magnetization after exposure to an external magnetic field. This tendency to stay magnetized is called "hysteresis," and it takes a certain investment in energy to overcome this opposition to change every time the magnetic field produced by the primary winding changes polarity (twice per AC cycle). This type of loss can be mitigated through good core material selection (choosing a core alloy with low hysteresis, as evidenced by a "thin" B/H hysteresis curve), and designing the core for minimum flux density (large cross-sectional area).

Transformer energy losses tend to worsen with increasing frequency. The skin effect within winding conductors reduces the available cross-sectional area for electron flow, thereby increasing effective resistance as the frequency goes up and creating more power lost through resistive dissipation. Magnetic core losses are also exaggerated with higher frequencies, eddy currents and hysteresis effects becoming more severe. For this reason, transformers of significant size are designed to operate efficiently in a limited range of frequencies. In most power distribution systems where the line frequency is very stable, one would think excessive frequency would never pose a problem. Unfortunately it does, in the form of harmonics created by nonlinear loads.

As we've seen in earlier chapters, nonsinusoidal waveforms are equivalent to additive series of multiple sinusoidal waveforms at different amplitudes and frequencies. In power systems, these other frequencies are whole-number multiples of the fundamental (line) frequency, meaning that they will always be higher, not lower, than the design frequency of the transformer. In significant measure, they can cause severe transformer overheating. Power transformers can be engineered to handle certain levels of power system harmonics, and this capability is sometimes denoted with a "K factor" rating.

9.8.3 Stray capacitance and inductance

Aside from power ratings and power losses, transformers often harbor other undesirable limitations which circuit designers must be made aware of. Like their simpler counterparts – inductors – transformers exhibit capacitance due to the insulation dielectric between conductors: from winding to winding, turn to turn (in a single winding), and winding to core. Usually this capacitance is of no concern in a power application, but small signal applications (especially those of high frequency) may not tolerate this quirk well. Also, the effect of having capacitance along with the windings' designed inductance gives transformers the ability to *resonate* at a particular frequency, definitely a design concern in signal applications where the applied frequency may reach this point (usually the resonant frequency of a power transformer is well beyond the frequency of the AC power it was designed to operate on).

Flux containment (making sure a transformer's magnetic flux doesn't escape so as to interfere with another device, and making sure other devices' magnetic flux is shielded from the transformer core) is another concern shared both by inductors and transformers.

Closely related to the issue of flux containment is leakage inductance. We've already seen the detrimental effects of leakage inductance on voltage regulation with SPICE simulations

early in this chapter. Because leakage inductance is equivalent to an inductance connected in series with the transformer's winding, it manifests itself as a series impedance with the load. Thus, the more current drawn by the load, the less voltage available at the secondary winding terminals. Usually, good voltage regulation is desired in transformer design, but there are exceptional applications. As was stated before, discharge lighting circuits require a step-up transformer with "loose" (poor) voltage regulation to ensure reduced voltage after the establishment of an arc through the lamp. One way to meet this design criterion is to engineer the transformer with flux leakage paths for magnetic flux to bypass the secondary winding(s). The resulting leakage flux will produce leakage inductance, which will in turn produce the poor regulation needed for discharge lighting.

9.8.4 Core saturation

Transformers are also constrained in their performance by the magnetic flux limitations of the core. For ferromagnetic core transformers, we must be mindful of the saturation limits of the core. Remember that ferromagnetic materials cannot support infinite magnetic flux densities: they tend to "saturate" at a certain level (dictated by the material and core dimensions), meaning that further increases in magnetic field force (mmf) do not result in proportional increases in magnetic field flux (Φ).

When a transformer's primary winding is overloaded from excessive applied voltage, the core flux may reach saturation levels during peak moments of the AC sinewave cycle. If this happens, the voltage induced in the secondary winding will no longer match the wave-shape as the voltage powering the primary coil. In other words, the overloaded transformer will *distort* the waveshape from primary to secondary windings, creating harmonics in the secondary winding's output. As we discussed before, harmonic content in AC power systems typically causes problems.

Special transformers known as *peaking transformers* exploit this principle to produce brief voltage pulses near the peaks of the source voltage waveform. The core is designed to saturate quickly and sharply, at voltage levels well below peak. This results in a severely cropped sine-wave flux waveform, and secondary voltage pulses only when the flux is changing (below saturation levels): (Figure 9.64)

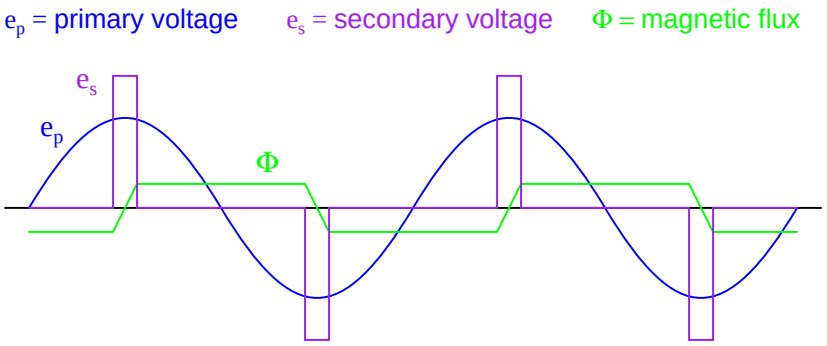


Figure 9.64: *Voltage and flux waveforms for a peaking transformer.*

Another cause of abnormal transformer core saturation is operation at frequencies lower than normal. For example, if a power transformer designed to operate at 60 Hz is forced to operate at 50 Hz instead, the flux must reach greater peak levels than before in order to produce the same opposing voltage needed to balance against the source voltage. This is true even if the source voltage is the same as before. (Figure 9.65)

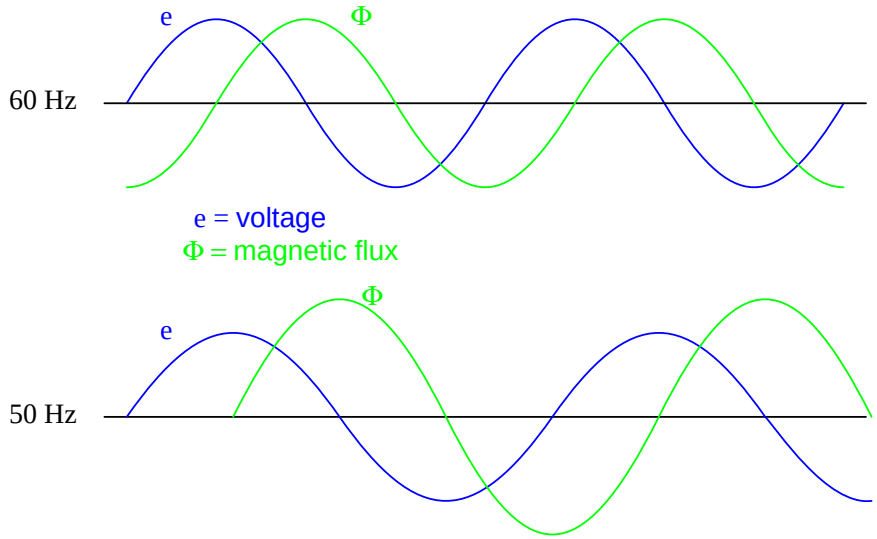


Figure 9.65: *Magnetic flux is higher in a transformer core driven by 50 Hz as compared to 60 Hz for the same voltage.*

Since instantaneous winding voltage is proportional to the instantaneous magnetic flux's *rate of change* in a transformer, a voltage waveform reaching the same peak value, but taking a longer amount of time to complete each half-cycle, demands that the flux maintain the same rate of change as before, but for longer periods of time. Thus, if the flux has to climb at the same rate as before, but for longer periods of time, it will climb to a greater peak value. (Figure 9.66)

Mathematically, this is another example of calculus in action. Because the voltage is proportional to the flux's rate-of-change, we say that the voltage waveform is the *derivative* of the flux waveform, "derivative" being that calculus operation defining one mathematical function (waveform) in terms of the rate-of-change of another. If we take the opposite perspective, though, and relate the original waveform to its derivative, we may call the original waveform the *integral* of the derivative waveform. In this case, the voltage waveform is the derivative of the flux waveform, and the flux waveform is the integral of the voltage waveform.

The integral of any mathematical function is proportional to the area accumulated underneath the curve of that function. Since each half-cycle of the 50 Hz waveform accumulates more area between it and the zero line of the graph than the 60 Hz waveform will – and we know that the magnetic flux is the integral of the voltage – the flux will attain higher values in Figure 9.66.

Yet another cause of transformer saturation is the presence of DC current in the primary winding. Any amount of DC voltage dropped across the primary winding of a transformer will

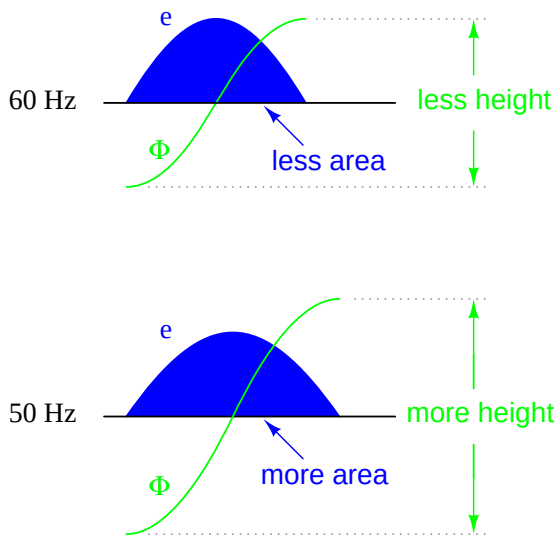


Figure 9.66: *Flux changing at the same rate rises to a higher level at 50 Hz than at 60 Hz.*

cause additional magnetic flux in the core. This additional flux "bias" or "offset" will push the alternating flux waveform closer to saturation in one half-cycle than the other. (Figure 9.67)

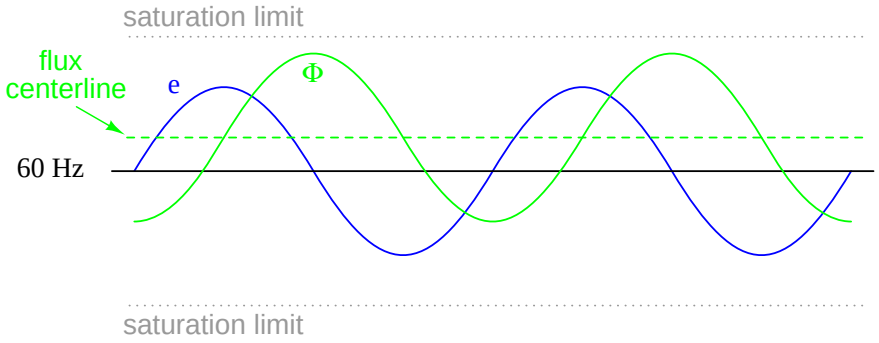


Figure 9.67: *DC in primary, shifts the waveform peaks toward the upper saturation limit.*

For most transformers, core saturation is a very undesirable effect, and it is avoided through good design: engineering the windings and core so that magnetic flux densities remain well below the saturation levels. This ensures that the relationship between mmf and Φ is more linear throughout the flux cycle, which is good because it makes for less distortion in the magnetization current waveform. Also, engineering the core for low flux densities provides a safe margin between the normal flux peaks and the core saturation limits to accommodate occasional, abnormal conditions such as frequency variation and DC offset.

9.8.5 Inrush current

When a transformer is initially connected to a source of AC voltage, there may be a substantial surge of current through the primary winding called *inrush current*. (Figure 9.72) This is analogous to the inrush current exhibited by an electric motor that is started up by sudden connection to a power source, although transformer inrush is caused by a different phenomenon.

We know that the rate of change of instantaneous flux in a transformer core is proportional to the instantaneous voltage drop across the primary winding. Or, as stated before, the voltage waveform is the derivative of the flux waveform, and the flux waveform is the integral of the voltage waveform. In a continuously-operating transformer, these two waveforms are phase-shifted by 90^o. (Figure 9.68) Since flux (Φ) is proportional to the magnetomotive force (mmf) in the core, and the mmf is proportional to winding current, the current waveform will be in-phase with the flux waveform, and both will be lagging the voltage waveform by 90^o:

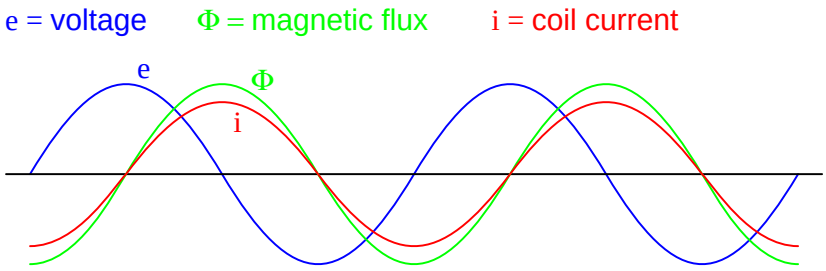


Figure 9.68: *Continuous steady-state operation: Magnetic flux, like current, lags applied voltage by 90^o.*

Let us suppose that the primary winding of a transformer is suddenly connected to an AC voltage source at the exact moment in time when the instantaneous voltage is at its positive peak value. In order for the transformer to create an opposing voltage drop to balance against this applied source voltage, a magnetic flux of rapidly increasing value must be generated. The result is that winding current increases rapidly, but actually no more rapidly than under normal conditions: (Figure 9.69)

Both core flux and coil current start from zero and build up to the same peak values experienced during continuous operation. Thus, there is no "surge" or "inrush" or current in this scenario. (Figure 9.69)

Alternatively, let us consider what happens if the transformer's connection to the AC voltage source occurs at the exact moment in time when the instantaneous voltage is at zero. During continuous operation (when the transformer has been powered for quite some time), this is the point in time where both flux and winding current are at their negative peaks, experiencing zero rate-of-change ($d\Phi/dt = 0$ and $di/dt = 0$). As the voltage builds to its positive peak, the flux and current waveforms build to their maximum positive rates-of-change, and on upward to their positive peaks as the voltage descends to a level of zero:

A significant difference exists, however, between continuous-mode operation and the sudden starting condition assumed in this scenario: during continuous operation, the flux and current levels were at their negative peaks when voltage was at its zero point; in a transformer that has been sitting idle, however, both magnetic flux and winding current should

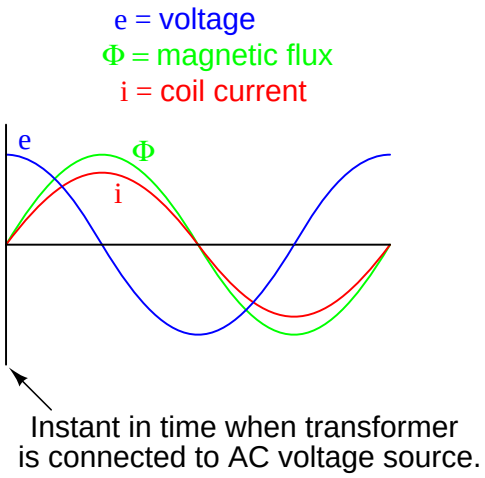


Figure 9.69: *Connecting transformer to line at AC volt peak: Flux increases rapidly from zero, same as steady-state operation.*

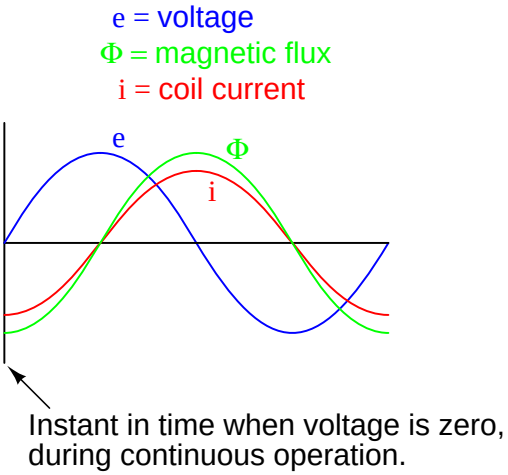


Figure 9.70: *Starting at e=0 V is not the same as running continuously in Figure 9.3 These expected waveforms are incorrect– Φ and i should start at zero.*

start at *zero*. When the magnetic flux increases in response to a rising voltage, it will increase from zero upward, not from a previously negative (magnetized) condition as we would normally have in a transformer that's been powered for awhile. Thus, in a transformer that's just "starting," the flux will reach approximately twice its normal peak magnitude as it "integrates" the area under the voltage waveform's first half-cycle: (Figure 9.71)

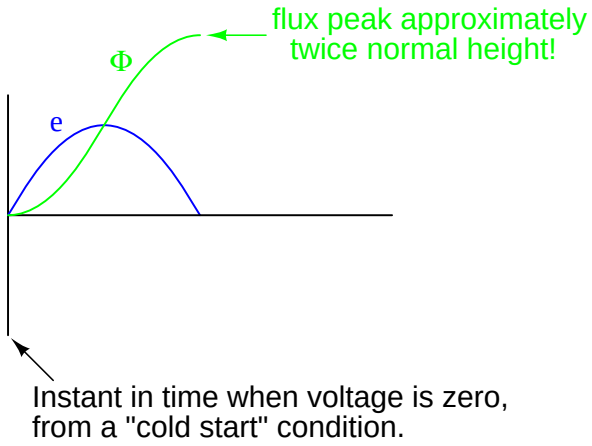


Figure 9.71: *Starting at e=0 V, Φ starts at initial condition Φ=0, increasing to twice the normal value, assuming it doesn't saturate the core.*

In an ideal transformer, the magnetizing current would rise to approximately twice its normal peak value as well, generating the necessary mmf to create this higher-than-normal flux. However, most transformers aren't designed with enough of a margin between normal flux peaks and the saturation limits to avoid saturating in a condition like this, and so the core will almost certainly saturate during this first half-cycle of voltage. During saturation, disproportionate amounts of mmf are needed to generate magnetic flux. This means that winding current, which creates the mmf to cause flux in the core, will disproportionately rise to a value *easily exceeding* twice its normal peak: (Figure 9.72)

This is the mechanism causing inrush current in a transformer's primary winding when connected to an AC voltage source. As you can see, the magnitude of the inrush current strongly depends on the exact time that electrical connection to the source is made. If the transformer happens to have some residual magnetism in its core at the moment of connection to the source, the inrush could be even more severe. Because of this, transformer overcurrent protection devices are usually of the "slow-acting" variety, so as to tolerate current surges such as this without opening the circuit.

9.8.6 Heat and Noise

In addition to unwanted electrical effects, transformers may also exhibit undesirable physical effects, the most notable being the production of heat and noise. Noise is primarily a nuisance effect, but heat is a potentially serious problem because winding insulation will be damaged if allowed to overheat. Heating may be minimized by good design, ensuring that the core does

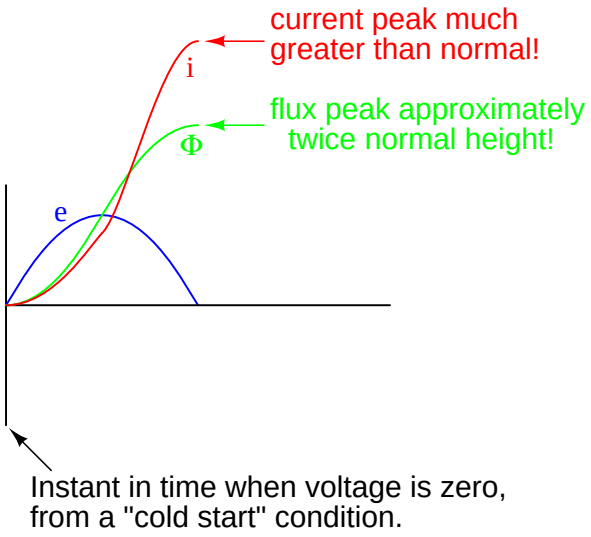


Figure 9.72: *Starting at e=0 V, Current also increases to twice the normal value for an unsaturated core, or considerably higher in the (designed for) case of saturation.*

not approach saturation levels, that eddy currents are minimized, and that the windings are not overloaded or operated too close to maximum ampacity.

Large power transformers have their core and windings submerged in an oil bath to transfer heat and muffle noise, and also to displace moisture which would otherwise compromise the integrity of the winding insulation. Heat-dissipating "radiator" tubes on the outside of the transformer case provide a convective oil flow path to transfer heat from the transformer's core to ambient air: (Figure 9.73)

Oil-less, or "dry," transformers are often rated in terms of maximum operating temperature "rise" (temperature increase beyond ambient) according to a letter-class system: A, B, F, or H. These letter codes are arranged in order of lowest heat tolerance to highest:

- **Class A:** No more than 55^o Celsius winding temperature rise, at 40^o Celsius (maximum) ambient air temperature.
- **Class B:** No more than 80^o Celsius winding temperature rise, at 40^o Celsius (maximum)ambient air temperature.
- **Class F:** No more than 115^o Celsius winding temperature rise, at 40^o Celsius (maximum)ambient air temperature.
- **Class H:** No more than 150^o Celsius winding temperature rise, at 40^o Celsius (maximum)ambient air temperature.

Audible noise is an effect primarily originating from the phenomenon of *magnetostriction*: the slight change of length exhibited by a ferromagnetic object when magnetized. The familiar "hum" heard around large power transformers is the sound of the iron core expanding and

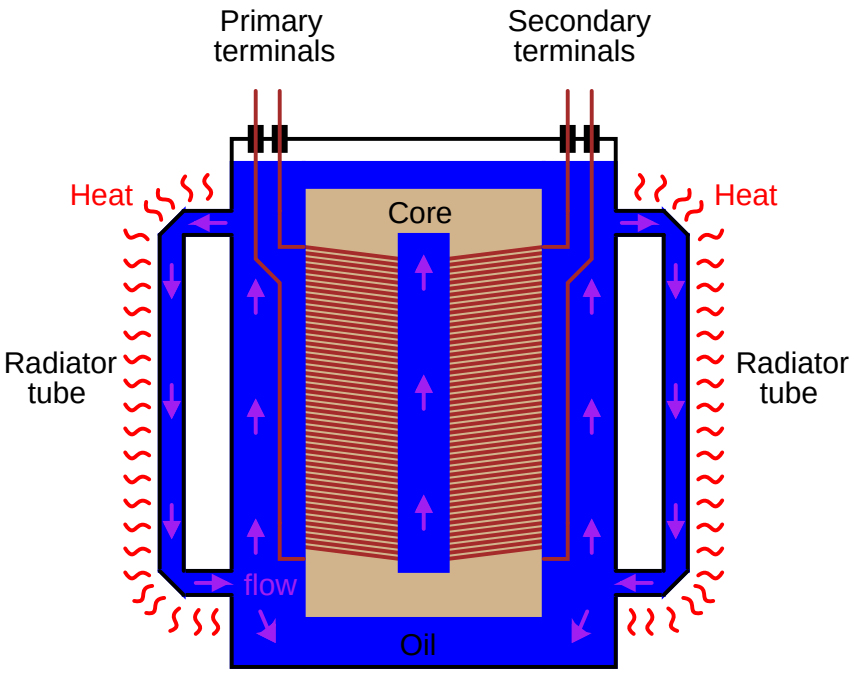


Figure 9.73: *Large power transformers are submerged in heat dissipating insulating oil.*

contracting at 120 Hz (twice the system frequency, which is 60 Hz in the United States) – one cycle of core contraction and expansion for every peak of the magnetic flux waveform – plus noise created by mechanical forces between primary and secondary windings. Again, maintaining low magnetic flux levels in the core is the key to minimizing this effect, which explains why ferroresonant transformers – which must operate in saturation for a large portion of the current waveform – operate both hot and noisy.

Another noise-producing phenomenon in power transformers is the physical reaction force between primary and secondary windings when heavily loaded. If the secondary winding is open-circuited, there will be no current through it, and consequently no magneto-motive force (mmf) produced by it. However, when the secondary is "loaded" (current supplied to a load), the winding generates an mmf, which becomes counteracted by a "reflected" mmf in the primary winding to prevent core flux levels from changing. These opposing mmf's generated between primary and secondary windings as a result of secondary (load) current produce a repulsive, physical force between the windings which will tend to make them vibrate. Transformer designers have to consider these physical forces in the construction of the winding coils, to ensure there is adequate mechanical support to handle the stresses. Under heavy load (high current) conditions, though, these stresses may be great enough to cause audible noise to emanate from the transformer.

- **REVIEW:**
- Power transformers are limited in the amount of power they can transfer from primary to secondary winding(s). Large units are typically rated in VA (volt-amps) or kVA (kilo volt-amps).
- Resistance in transformer windings contributes to inefficiency, as current will dissipate heat, wasting energy.
- Magnetic effects in a transformer's iron core also contribute to inefficiency. Among the effects are *eddy currents* (circulating induction currents in the iron core) and *hysteresis* (power lost due to overcoming the tendency of iron to magnetize in a particular direction).
- Increased frequency results in increased power losses within a power transformer. The presence of harmonics in a power system is a source of frequencies significantly higher than normal, which may cause overheating in large transformers.
- Both transformers and inductors harbor certain unavoidable amounts of capacitance due to wire insulation (dielectric) separating winding turns from the iron core and from each other. This capacitance can be significant enough to give the transformer a natural *resonant frequency*, which can be problematic in signal applications.
- *Leakage inductance* is caused by magnetic flux not being 100% coupled between windings in a transformer. Any flux not involved with *transferring* energy from one winding to another will store and release energy, which is how (self-) inductance works. Leakage inductance tends to worsen a transformer's voltage regulation (secondary voltage "sags" more for a given amount of load current).
- Magnetic *saturation* of a transformer core may be caused by excessive primary voltage, operation at too low of a frequency, and/or by the presence of a DC current in any of

the windings. Saturation may be minimized or avoided by conservative design, which provides an adequate margin of safety between peak magnetic flux density values and the saturation limits of the core.

- Transformers often experience significant *inrush currents* when initially connected to an AC voltage source. Inrush current is most severe when connection to the AC source is made at the moment instantaneous source voltage is zero.
- Noise is a common phenomenon exhibited by transformers – especially power transformers – and is primarily caused by *magnetostriction* of the core. Physical forces causing winding vibration may also generate noise under conditions of heavy (high current) secondary winding load.

9.9 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Bart Anderson (January 2004): Corrected conceptual errors regarding Tesla coil operation and safety.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Bibliography

[1] Mitsuyoshi Yamamoto, Mitsugi Yamaguchi, "Electric Power In Japan, Rapid Electrification a Century Ago", EDN, (4/11/2002). http://www.ieee.org/organizations/pes/public/2005/mar/peshistory.html

Chapter 10

POLYPHASE AC CIRCUITS

Contents

10.1 Single-phase power systems

Figure 10.1: *Single phase power system schematic diagram shows little about the wiring of a practical power circuit.*

Depicted above (Figure 10.1) is a very simple AC circuit. If the load resistor's power dissipation were substantial, we might call this a "power circuit" or "power system" instead of regarding it as just a regular circuit. The distinction between a "power circuit" and a "regular circuit" may seem arbitrary, but the practical concerns are definitely not.

One such concern is the size and cost of wiring necessary to deliver power from the AC source to the load. Normally, we do not give much thought to this type of concern if we're merely analyzing a circuit for the sake of learning about the laws of electricity. However, in the real world it can be a major concern. If we give the source in the above circuit a voltage value and also give power dissipation values to the two load resistors, we can determine the wiring needs for this particular circuit: (Figure 10.2)

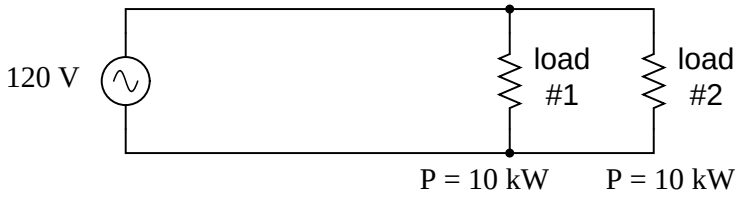


Figure 10.2: *As a practical matter, the wiring for the 20 kW loads at 120 Vac is rather substantial (167 A).*

$$I = \frac{P}{E}$$

$$I = \frac{10\ kW}{120\ V}$$

$I = 83.33\ A$ *(for each load resistor)*

$I_{total} = I_{load\#1} + I_{load\#2}$ $\qquad$ $P_{total} = (10\ kW) + (10\ kW)$

$I_{total} = (83.33\ A) + (83.33\ A)$ $\qquad$ $P_{total} = 20\ kW$

$I_{total} = 166.67\ A$

83.33 amps for each load resistor in Figure 10.2 adds up to 166.66 amps total circuit current. This is no small amount of current, and would necessitate copper wire conductors of at least 1/0 gage. Such wire is well over 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter, weighing over 300 pounds per thousand feet. Bear in mind that copper is not cheap either! It would be in our best interest to find ways to minimize such costs if we were designing a power system with long conductor lengths.

One way to do this would be to increase the voltage of the power source and use loads built to dissipate 10 kW each at this higher voltage. The loads, of course, would have to have greater resistance values to dissipate the same power as before (10 kW each) at a greater voltage than before. The advantage would be less current required, permitting the use of smaller, lighter, and cheaper wire: (Figure 10.3)

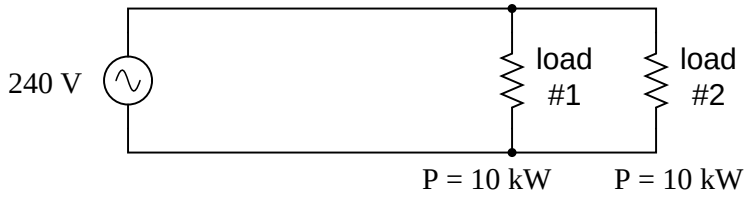


Figure 10.3: *Same 10 kW loads at 240 Vac requires less substantial wiring than at 120 Vac (83 A).*

$$I = \frac{P}{E}$$

$$I = \frac{10\ kW}{240\ V}$$

$I = 41.67\ A$ *(for each load resistor)*

$I_{total} = I_{load\#1} + I_{load\#2}$ $P_{total} = (10\ kW) + (10\ kW)$

$I_{total} = (41.67\ A) + (41.67\ A)$ $P_{total} = 20\ kW$

$I_{total} = 83.33\ A$

Now our *total* circuit current is 83.33 amps, half of what it was before. We can now use number 4 gage wire, which weighs less than half of what 1/0 gage wire does per unit length. This is a considerable reduction in system cost with no degradation in performance. This is why power distribution system designers elect to transmit electric power using very high voltages (many thousands of volts): to capitalize on the savings realized by the use of smaller, lighter, cheaper wire.

However, this solution is not without disadvantages. Another practical concern with power circuits is the danger of electric shock from high voltages. Again, this is not usually the sort of thing we concentrate on while learning about the laws of electricity, but it is a very valid concern in the real world, especially when large amounts of power are being dealt with. The gain in efficiency realized by stepping up the circuit voltage presents us with increased danger of electric shock. Power distribution companies tackle this problem by stringing their power lines along high poles or towers, and insulating the lines from the supporting structures with large, porcelain insulators.

At the point of use (the electric power customer), there is still the issue of what voltage to use for powering loads. High voltage gives greater system efficiency by means of reduced conductor current, but it might not always be practical to keep power wiring out of reach at the point of use the way it can be elevated out of reach in distribution systems. This tradeoff between efficiency and danger is one that European power system designers have decided to

risk, all their households and appliances operating at a nominal voltage of 240 volts instead of 120 volts as it is in North America. That is why tourists from America visiting Europe must carry small step-down transformers for their portable appliances, to step the 240 VAC (volts AC) power down to a more suitable 120 VAC.

Is there any way to realize the advantages of both increased efficiency and reduced safety hazard at the same time? One solution would be to install step-down transformers at the end-point of power use, just as the American tourist must do while in Europe. However, this would be expensive and inconvenient for anything but very small loads (where the transformers can be built cheaply) or very large loads (where the expense of thick copper wires would exceed the expense of a transformer).

An alternative solution would be to use a higher voltage supply to provide power to two lower voltage loads in series. This approach combines the efficiency of a high-voltage system with the safety of a low-voltage system: (Figure 10.4)

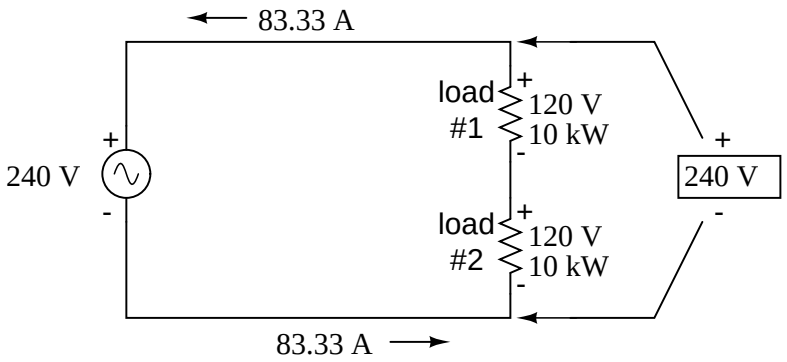


Figure 10.4: *Series connected 120 Vac loads, driven by 240 Vac source at 83.3 A total current.*

Notice the polarity markings (+ and -) for each voltage shown, as well as the unidirectional arrows for current. For the most part, I've avoided labeling "polarities" in the AC circuits we've been analyzing, even though the notation is valid to provide a frame of reference for phase. In later sections of this chapter, phase relationships will become very important, so I'm introducing this notation early on in the chapter for your familiarity.

The current through each load is the same as it was in the simple 120 volt circuit, but the currents are not additive because the loads are in series rather than parallel. The voltage across each load is only 120 volts, not 240, so the safety factor is better. Mind you, we still have a full 240 volts across the power system wires, but *each load* is operating at a reduced voltage. If anyone is going to get shocked, the odds are that it will be from coming into contact with the conductors of a particular load rather than from contact across the main wires of a power system.

There's only one disadvantage to this design: the consequences of one load failing open, or being turned off (assuming each load has a series on/off switch to interrupt current) are not good. Being a series circuit, if either load were to open, current would stop in the other load as well. For this reason, we need to modify the design a bit: (Figure 10.5)

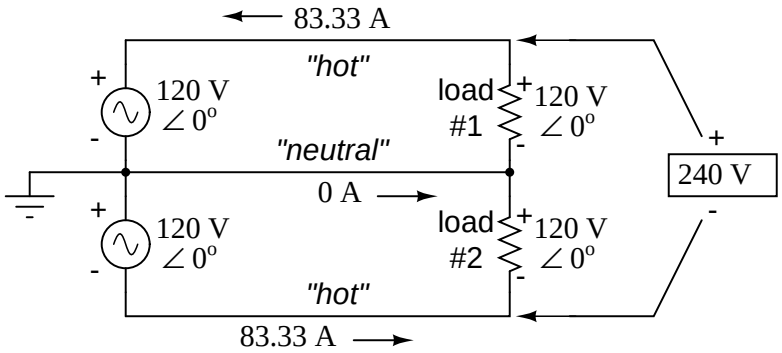


Figure 10.5: *Addition of neutral conductor allows loads to be individually driven.*

$E_{total} = (120\ V \angle 0^o) + (120\ V \angle 0^o)$

$E_{total} = 240\ V \angle 0^o$

$$I = \frac{P}{E}$$

$$I = \frac{10\ kW}{120\ V}$$

$I = 83.33\ A$ *(for each load resistor)*

$P_{total} = (10\ kW) + (10\ kW)$

$P_{total} = 20\ kW$

Instead of a single 240 volt power supply, we use two 120 volt supplies (in phase with each other!) in series to produce 240 volts, then run a third wire to the connection point between the loads to handle the eventuality of one load opening. This is called a *split-phase* power system. Three smaller wires are still cheaper than the two wires needed with the simple parallel design, so we're still ahead on efficiency. The astute observer will note that the neutral wire only has to carry the *difference* of current between the two loads back to the source. In the above case, with perfectly "balanced" loads consuming equal amounts of power, the neutral wire carries zero current.

Notice how the neutral wire is connected to earth ground at the power supply end. This is a common feature in power systems containing "neutral" wires, since grounding the neutral wire ensures the least possible voltage at any given time between any "hot" wire and earth ground.

An essential component to a split-phase power system is the dual AC voltage source. Fortunately, designing and building one is not difficult. Since most AC systems receive their power from a step-down transformer anyway (stepping voltage down from high distribution levels to a user-level voltage like 120 or 240), that transformer can be built with a center-tapped secondary winding: (Figure 10.6)

If the AC power comes directly from a generator (alternator), the coils can be similarly center-tapped for the same effect. The extra expense to include a center-tap connection in a

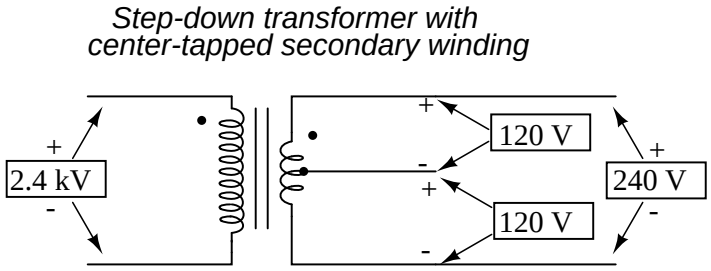


Figure 10.6: *American 120/240 Vac power is derived from a center tapped utility transformer.*

transformer or alternator winding is minimal.

Here is where the (+) and (-) polarity markings really become important. This notation is often used to reference the phasings of *multiple* AC voltage sources, so it is clear whether they are aiding ("boosting") each other or opposing ("bucking") each other. If not for these polarity markings, phase relations between multiple AC sources might be very confusing. Note that the split-phase sources in the schematic (each one 120 volts $\angle$ 0^o), with polarity marks (+) to (-) just like series-aiding batteries can alternatively be represented as such: (Figure 10.7)

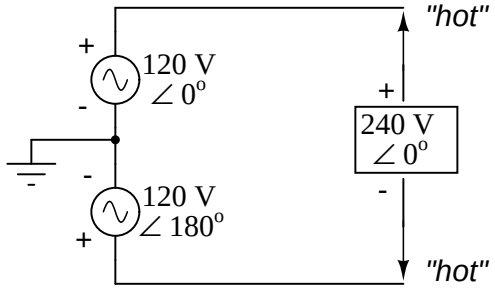


Figure 10.7: *Split phase 120/240 Vac source is equivalent to two series aiding 120 Vac sources.*

To mathematically calculate voltage between "hot" wires, we must *subtract* voltages, because their polarity marks show them to be opposed to each other:

Polar	*Rectangular*
$120 \angle 0^o$	120 + j0 V
- $120 \angle 180^o$	- (-120 + j0) V
$240 \angle 0^o$	240 + j0 V

If we mark the two sources' common connection point (the neutral wire) with the same polarity mark (-), we must express their relative phase shifts as being 180^o apart. Otherwise, we'd be denoting two voltage sources in direct opposition with each other, which would give 0 volts between the two "hot" conductors. Why am I taking the time to elaborate on polarity marks and phase angles? It will make more sense in the next section!

Power systems in American households and light industry are most often of the split-phase variety, providing so-called 120/240 VAC power. The term "split-phase" merely refers to the split-voltage supply in such a system. In a more general sense, this kind of AC power supply is called *single phase* because both voltage waveforms are in phase, or in step, with each other.

The term "single phase" is a counterpoint to another kind of power system called "polyphase" which we are about to investigate in detail. Apologies for the long introduction leading up to the title-topic of this chapter. The advantages of polyphase power systems are more obvious if one first has a good understanding of single phase systems.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Single phase* power systems are defined by having an AC source with only one voltage waveform.
- A *split-phase* power system is one with multiple (in-phase) AC voltage sources connected in series, delivering power to loads at more than one voltage, with more than two wires. They are used primarily to achieve balance between system efficiency (low conductor currents) and safety (low load voltages).
- Split-phase AC sources can be easily created by center-tapping the coil windings of transformers or alternators.

10.2 Three-phase power systems

Split-phase power systems achieve their high conductor efficiency *and* low safety risk by splitting up the total voltage into lesser parts and powering multiple loads at those lesser voltages, while drawing currents at levels typical of a full-voltage system. This technique, by the way, works just as well for DC power systems as it does for single-phase AC systems. Such systems are usually referred to as *three-wire* systems rather than *split-phase* because "phase" is a concept restricted to AC.

But we know from our experience with vectors and complex numbers that AC voltages don't always add up as we think they would if they are out of phase with each other. This principle, applied to power systems, can be put to use to make power systems with even greater conductor efficiencies and lower shock hazard than with split-phase.

Suppose that we had two sources of AC voltage connected in series just like the split-phase system we saw before, except that each voltage source was 120^o out of phase with the other: (Figure 10.8)

Since each voltage source is 120 volts, and each load resistor is connected directly in parallel with its respective source, the voltage across each load *must* be 120 volts as well. Given load currents of 83.33 amps, each load must still be dissipating 10 kilowatts of power. However, voltage between the two "hot" wires is not 240 volts ($120 \angle 0^o$ - $120 \angle 180^o$) because the phase difference between the two sources is not 180^o. Instead, the voltage is:

$$E_{total} = (120\ V \angle 0^o) - (120\ V \angle 120^o)$$

$$E_{total} = 207.85\ V \angle -30^o$$

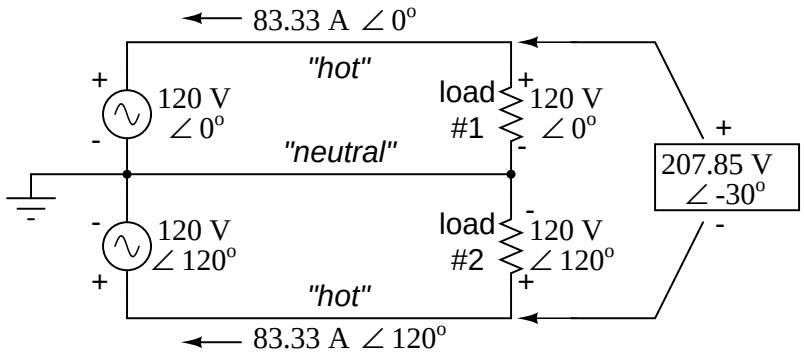


Figure 10.8: *Pair of 120 Vac sources phased 120°, similar to split-phase.*

Nominally, we say that the voltage between "hot" conductors is 208 volts (rounding up), and thus the power system voltage is designated as 120/208.

If we calculate the current through the "neutral" conductor, we find that it is *not* zero, even with balanced load resistances. Kirchhoff's Current Law tells us that the currents entering and exiting the node between the two loads must be zero: (Figure 10.9)

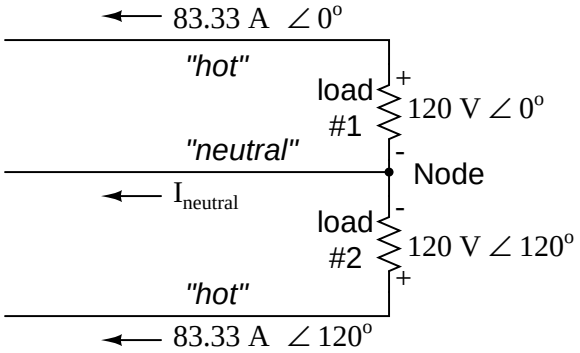


Figure 10.9: *Neutral wire carries a current in the case of a pair of 120° phased sources.*

$$-I_{load\#1} - I_{load\#2} - I_{neutral} = 0$$

$$-I_{neutral} = I_{load\#1} + I_{load\#2}$$

$$I_{neutral} = -I_{load\#1} - I_{load\#2}$$

$$I_{neutral} = -(83.33\ A \angle 0^{o}) - (83.33\ A \angle 120^{0})$$

$$I_{neutral} = 83.33\ A \angle 240^{o} \quad or \quad 83.33\ A \angle -120^{o}$$

So, we find that the "neutral" wire is carrying a full 83.33 amps, just like each "hot" wire.

Note that we are still conveying 20 kW of total power to the two loads, with each load's "hot" wire carrying 83.33 amps as before. With the same amount of current through each "hot" wire, we must use the same gage copper conductors, so we haven't reduced system cost over the split-phase 120/240 system. However, we have realized a gain in safety, because the overall voltage between the two "hot" conductors is 32 volts lower than it was in the split-phase system (208 volts instead of 240 volts).

The fact that the neutral wire is carrying 83.33 amps of current raises an interesting possibility: since its carrying current anyway, why not use that third wire as another "hot" conductor, powering another load resistor with a third 120 volt source having a phase angle of 240^o? That way, we could transmit *more* power (another 10 kW) without having to add any more conductors. Let's see how this might look: (Figure 10.10)

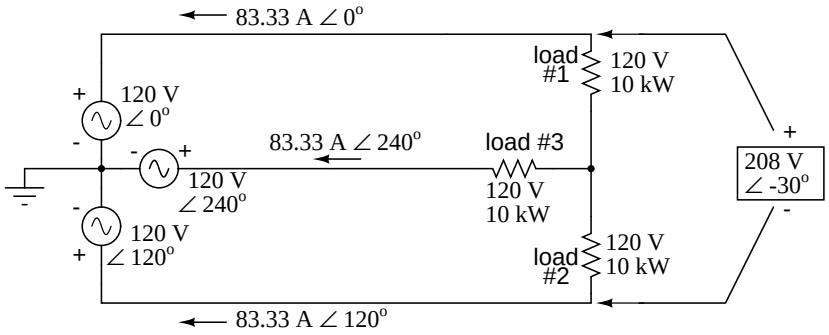


Figure 10.10: *With a third load phased 120^o to the other two, the currents are the same as for two loads.*

A full mathematical analysis of all the voltages and currents in this circuit would necessitate the use of a network theorem, the easiest being the Superposition Theorem. I'll spare you the long, drawn-out calculations because you should be able to intuitively understand that the three voltage sources at three different phase angles will deliver 120 volts each to a balanced triad of load resistors. For proof of this, we can use SPICE to do the math for us: (Figure 10.11, SPICE listing: 120/208 polyphase power system)

Sure enough, we get 120 volts across each load resistor, with (approximately) 208 volts between any two "hot" conductors and conductor currents equal to 83.33 amps. (Figure 10.12) At that current and voltage, each load will be dissipating 10 kW of power. Notice that this circuit has no "neutral" conductor to ensure stable voltage to all loads if one should open. What we have here is a situation similar to our split-phase power circuit with no "neutral" conductor: if one load should happen to fail open, the voltage drops across the remaining load(s) will change. To ensure load voltage stability in the event of another load opening, we need a neutral wire to connect the source node and load node together:

So long as the loads remain balanced (equal resistance, equal currents), the neutral wire will not have to carry any current at all. It is there just in case one or more load resistors should fail open (or be shut off through a disconnecting switch).

This circuit we've been analyzing with three voltage sources is called a *polyphase* circuit.

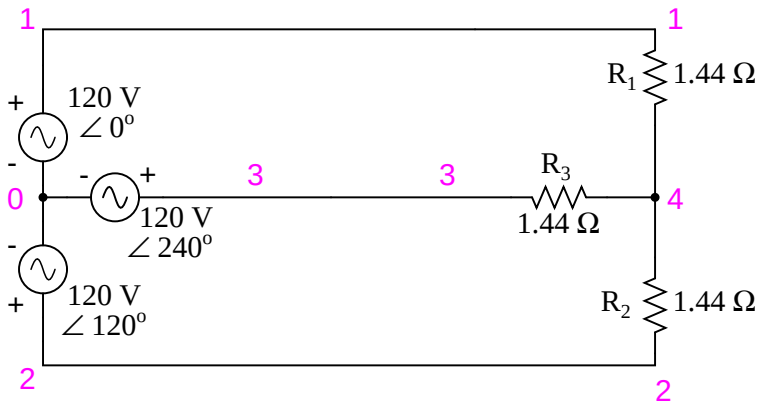


Figure 10.11: *SPICE circuit: Three 3-Φ loads phased at 120°.*

```
120/208 polyphase power system
v1 1 0 ac 120 0 sin
v2 2 0 ac 120 120 sin
v3 3 0 ac 120 240 sin
r1 1 4 1.44
r2 2 4 1.44
r3 3 4 1.44
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,4) v(2,4) v(3,4)
.print ac v(1,2) v(2,3) v(3,1)
.print ac i(v1) i(v2) i(v3)
.end
```

```
VOLTAGE ACROSS EACH LOAD
freq         v(1,4)       v(2,4)       v(3,4)
6.000E+01    1.200E+02    1.200E+02    1.200E+02
VOLTAGE BETWEEN ‘‘HOT’’ CONDUCTORS
freq         v(1,2)       v(2,3)       v(3,1)
6.000E+01    2.078E+02    2.078E+02    2.078E+02
CURRENT THROUGH EACH VOLTAGE SOURCE
freq         i(v1)        i(v2)        i(v3)
6.000E+01    8.333E+01    8.333E+01    8.333E+01
```

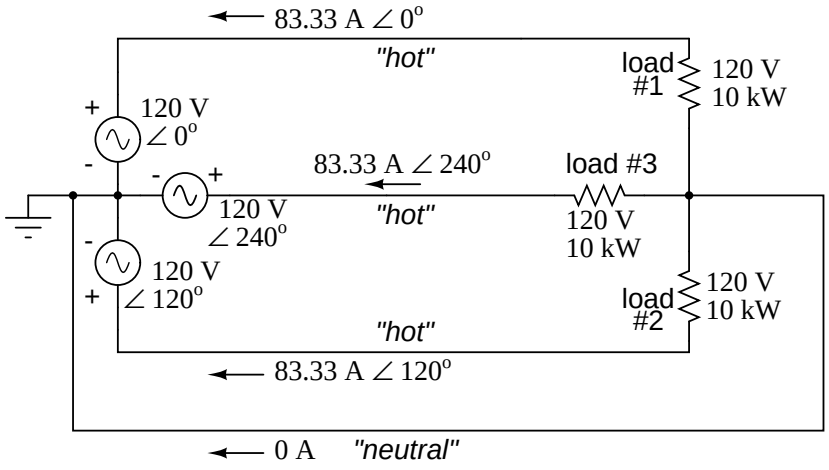


Figure 10.12: *SPICE circuit annotated with simulation results: Three 3-Φ loads phased at 120°.*

The prefix "poly" simply means "more than one," as in "*poly*theism" (belief in more than one deity), "*poly*gon" (a geometrical shape made of multiple line segments: for example, *pentagon* and *hexagon*), and "*poly*atomic" (a substance composed of multiple types of atoms). Since the voltage sources are all at different phase angles (in this case, three different phase angles), this is a "*poly*phase" circuit. More specifically, it is a *three-phase circuit*, the kind used predominantly in large power distribution systems.

Let's survey the advantages of a three-phase power system over a single-phase system of equivalent load voltage and power capacity. A single-phase system with three loads connected directly in parallel would have a very high total current (83.33 times 3, or 250 amps. (Figure 10.13)

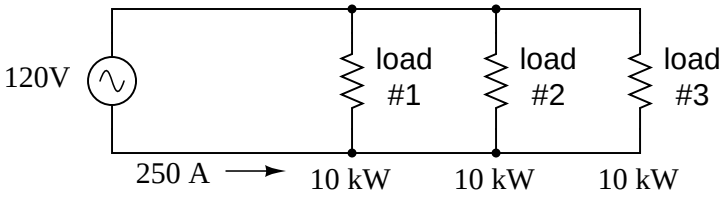


Figure 10.13: *For comparison, three 10 Kw loads on a 120 Vac system draw 250 A.*

This would necessitate 3/0 gage copper wire (*very* large!), at about 510 pounds per thousand feet, and with a considerable price tag attached. If the distance from source to load was 1000 feet, we would need over a half-ton of copper wire to do the job. On the other hand, we could build a split-phase system with two 15 kW, 120 volt loads. (Figure 10.14)

Our current is half of what it was with the simple parallel circuit, which is a great improvement. We could get away with using number 2 gage copper wire at a total mass of about 600

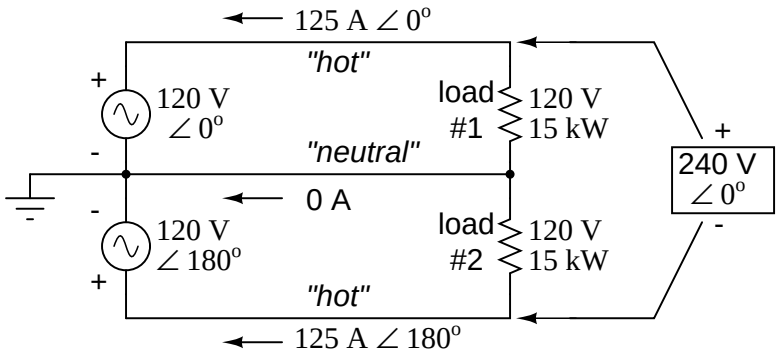


Figure 10.14: *Split phase system draws half the current of 125 A at 240 Vac compared to 120 Vac system.*

pounds, figuring about 200 pounds per thousand feet with three runs of 1000 feet each between source and loads. However, we also have to consider the increased safety hazard of having 240 volts present in the system, even though each load only receives 120 volts. Overall, there is greater potential for dangerous electric shock to occur.

When we contrast these two examples against our three-phase system (Figure 10.12), the advantages are quite clear. First, the conductor currents are quite a bit less (83.33 amps versus 125 or 250 amps), permitting the use of much thinner and lighter wire. We can use number 4 gage wire at about 125 pounds per thousand feet, which will total 500 pounds (four runs of 1000 feet each) for our example circuit. This represents a significant cost savings over the split-phase system, with the additional benefit that the maximum voltage in the system is lower (208 versus 240).

One question remains to be answered: how in the world do we get three AC voltage sources whose phase angles are exactly 120^o apart? Obviously we can't center-tap a transformer or alternator winding like we did in the split-phase system, since that can only give us voltage waveforms that are either in phase or 180^o out of phase. Perhaps we could figure out some way to use capacitors and inductors to create phase shifts of 120^o, but then those phase shifts would depend on the phase angles of our load impedances as well (substituting a capacitive or inductive load for a resistive load would change everything!).

The best way to get the phase shifts we're looking for is to generate it at the source: construct the AC generator (alternator) providing the power in such a way that the rotating magnetic field passes by three sets of wire windings, each set spaced 120^o apart around the circumference of the machine as in Figure 10.15.

Together, the six "pole" windings of a three-phase alternator are connected to comprise three winding pairs, each pair producing AC voltage with a phase angle 120^o shifted from either of the other two winding pairs. The interconnections between pairs of windings (as shown for the single-phase alternator: the jumper wire between windings 1a and 1b) have been omitted from the three-phase alternator drawing for simplicity.

In our example circuit, we showed the three voltage sources connected together in a "Y" configuration (sometimes called the "star" configuration), with one lead of each source tied to

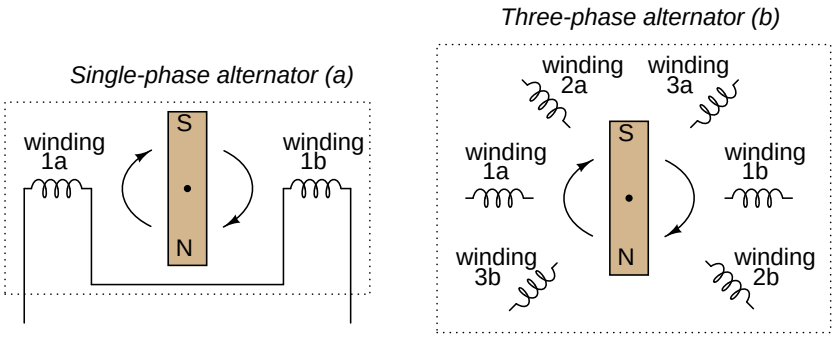


Figure 10.15: *(a) Single-phase alternator, (b) Three-phase alternator.*

a common point (the node where we attached the "neutral" conductor). The common way to depict this connection scheme is to draw the windings in the shape of a "Y" like Figure 10.16.

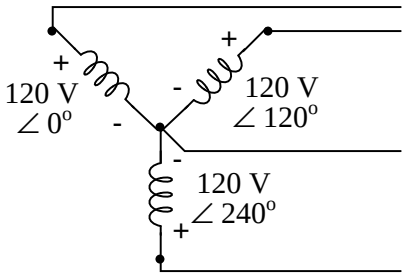


Figure 10.16: *Alternator "Y" configuration.*

The "Y" configuration is not the only option open to us, but it is probably the easiest to understand at first. More to come on this subject later in the chapter.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *single-phase* power system is one where there is only one AC voltage source (one source voltage waveform).
- A *split-phase* power system is one where there are two voltage sources, 180^{o} phase-shifted from each other, powering a two series-connected loads. The advantage of this is the ability to have lower conductor currents while maintaining low load voltages for safety reasons.
- A *polyphase* power system uses multiple voltage sources at different phase angles from each other (many "phases" of voltage waveforms at work). A polyphase power system can deliver more power at less voltage with smaller-gage conductors than single- or split-phase systems.

- The phase-shifted voltage sources necessary for a polyphase power system are created in alternators with multiple sets of wire windings. These winding sets are spaced around the circumference of the rotor's rotation at the desired angle(s).

10.3 Phase rotation

Let's take the three-phase alternator design laid out earlier (Figure 10.17) and watch what happens as the magnet rotates.

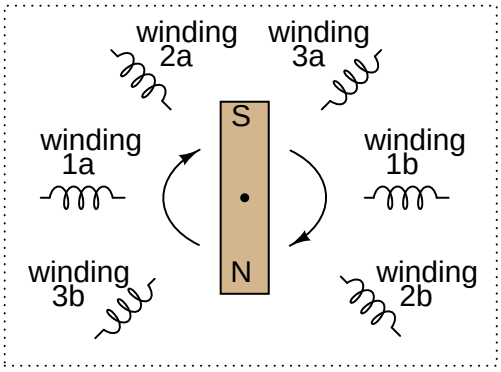


Figure 10.17: *Three-phase alternator*

The phase angle shift of 120^o is a function of the actual rotational angle shift of the three pairs of windings (Figure 10.18). If the magnet is rotating clockwise, winding 3 will generate its peak instantaneous voltage exactly 120^o (of alternator shaft rotation) after winding 2, which will hits its peak 120^o after winding 1. The magnet passes by each pole pair at different positions in the rotational movement of the shaft. Where we decide to place the windings will dictate the amount of phase shift between the windings' AC voltage waveforms. If we make winding 1 our "reference" voltage source for phase angle (0^o), then winding 2 will have a phase angle of -120^o (120^o lagging, or 240^o leading) and winding 3 an angle of -240^o (or 120^o leading).

This sequence of phase shifts has a definite order. For clockwise rotation of the shaft, the order is 1-2-3 (winding 1 peaks first, them winding 2, then winding 3). This order keeps repeating itself as long as we continue to rotate the alternator's shaft. (Figure 10.18)

However, if we *reverse* the rotation of the alternator's shaft (turn it counter-clockwise), the magnet will pass by the pole pairs in the opposite sequence. Instead of 1-2-3, we'll have 3-2-1. Now, winding 2's waveform will be *leading* 120^o ahead of 1 instead of lagging, and 3 will be another 120^o ahead of 2. (Figure 10.19)

The order of voltage waveform sequences in a polyphase system is called *phase rotation* or *phase sequence*. If we're using a polyphase voltage source to power resistive loads, phase rotation will make no difference at all. Whether 1-2-3 or 3-2-1, the voltage and current magnitudes will all be the same. There are some applications of three-phase power, as we will see shortly, that depend on having phase rotation being one way or the other. Since voltmeters and ammeters would be useless in telling us what the phase rotation of an operating power system is, we

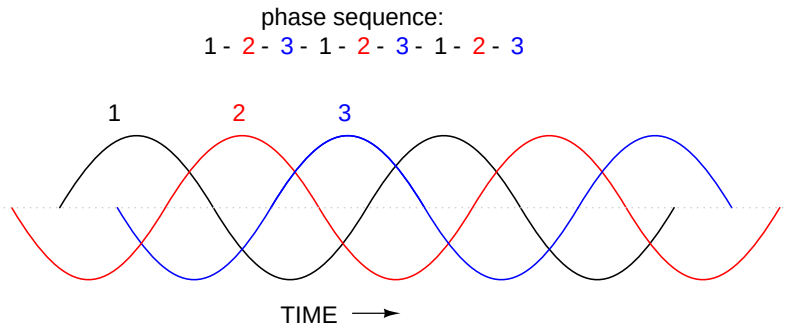


Figure 10.18: *Clockwise rotation phase sequence: 1-2-3.*

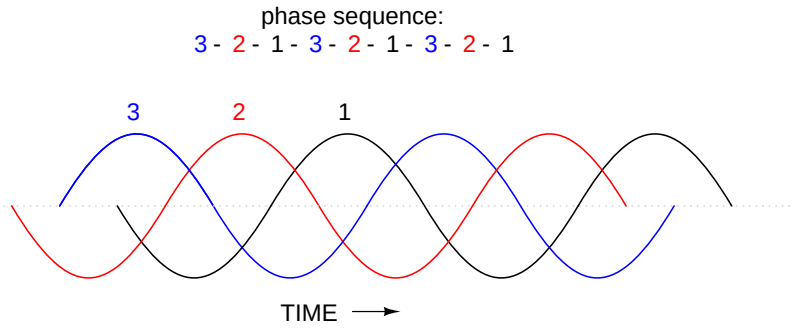


Figure 10.19: *Counterclockwise rotation phase sequence: 3-2-1.*

need to have some other kind of instrument capable of doing the job.

One ingenious circuit design uses a capacitor to introduce a phase shift between voltage and current, which is then used to detect the sequence by way of comparison between the brightness of two indicator lamps in Figure 10.20.

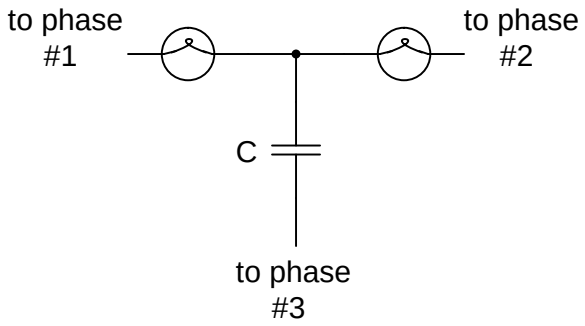


Figure 10.20: *Phase sequence detector compares brightness of two lamps.*

The two lamps are of equal filament resistance and wattage. The capacitor is sized to have approximately the same amount of reactance at system frequency as each lamp's resistance. If the capacitor were to be replaced by a resistor of equal value to the lamps' resistance, the two lamps would glow at equal brightness, the circuit being balanced. However, the capacitor introduces a phase shift between voltage and current in the third leg of the circuit equal to 90^o. This phase shift, greater than 0^o but less than 120^o, skews the voltage and current values across the two lamps according to their phase shifts relative to phase 3. The following SPICE analysis demonstrates what will happen: (Figure 10.21), "phase rotation detector – sequence = v1-v2-v3"

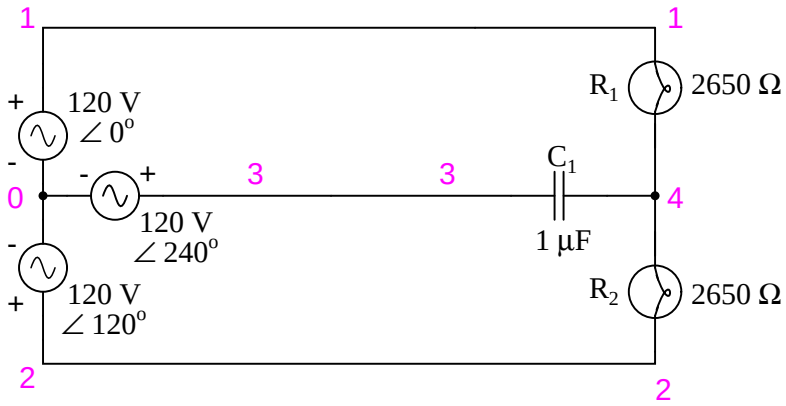


Figure 10.21: *SPICE circuit for phase sequence detector.*

The resulting phase shift from the capacitor causes the voltage across phase 1 lamp (between nodes 1 and 4) to fall to 48.1 volts and the voltage across phase 2 lamp (between nodes

```
phase rotation detector -- sequence = v1-v2-v3
v1 1 0 ac 120 0 sin
v2 2 0 ac 120 120 sin
v3 3 0 ac 120 240 sin
r1 1 4 2650
r2 2 4 2650
c1 3 4 1u
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,4) v(2,4) v(3,4)
.end
freq          v(1,4)      v(2,4)      v(3,4)
6.000E+01     4.810E+01   1.795E+02   1.610E+02
```

2 and 4) to rise to 179.5 volts, making the first lamp dim and the second lamp bright. Just the opposite will happen if the phase sequence is reversed: ”phase rotation detector – sequence = v3-v2-v1 ”

```
phase rotation detector -- sequence = v3-v2-v1
v1 1 0 ac 120 240 sin
v2 2 0 ac 120 120 sin
v3 3 0 ac 120 0 sin
r1 1 4 2650
r2 2 4 2650
c1 3 4 1u
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,4) v(2,4) v(3,4)
.end
freq          v(1,4)      v(2,4)      v(3,4)
6.000E+01     1.795E+02   4.810E+01   1.610E+02
```

Here,(”phase rotation detector – sequence = v3-v2-v1”) the first lamp receives 179.5 volts while the second receives only 48.1 volts.

We’ve investigated how phase rotation is produced (the order in which pole pairs get passed by the alternator’s rotating magnet) and how it can be changed by reversing the alternator’s shaft rotation. However, reversal of the alternator’s shaft rotation is not usually an option open to an end-user of electrical power supplied by a nationwide grid (“the” alternator actually being the combined total of all alternators in all power plants feeding the grid). There is a *much* easier way to reverse phase sequence than reversing alternator rotation: just exchange any two of the three “hot” wires going to a three-phase load.

This trick makes more sense if we take another look at a running phase sequence of a three-phase voltage source:

```
1-2-3 rotation:  1-2-3-1-2-3-1-2-3-1-2-3-1-2-3 . . .
3-2-1 rotation:  3-2-1-3-2-1-3-2-1-3-2-1-3-2-1 . . .
```

What is commonly designated as a “1-2-3” phase rotation could just as well be called “2-3-1” or “3-1-2,” going from left to right in the number string above. Likewise, the opposite rotation

(3-2-1) could just as easily be called "2-1-3" or "1-3-2."

Starting out with a phase rotation of 3-2-1, we can try all the possibilities for swapping any two of the wires at a time and see what happens to the resulting sequence in Figure 10.22.

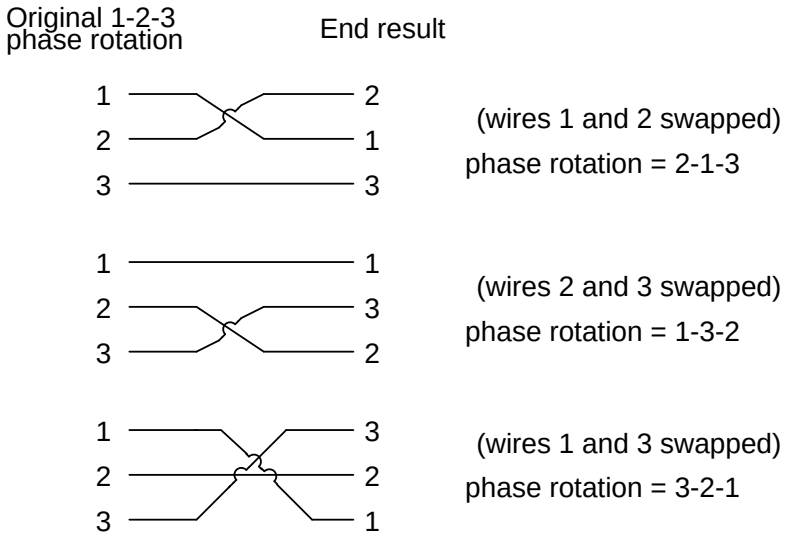


Figure 10.22: *All possibilities of swapping any two wires.*

No matter which pair of "hot" wires out of the three we choose to swap, the phase rotation ends up being reversed (1-2-3 gets changed to 2-1-3, 1-3-2 or 3-2-1, all equivalent).

- **REVIEW:**
- *Phase rotation*, or *phase sequence*, is the order in which the voltage waveforms of a polyphase AC source reach their respective peaks. For a three-phase system, there are only two possible phase sequences: 1-2-3 and 3-2-1, corresponding to the two possible directions of alternator rotation.
- Phase rotation has no impact on resistive loads, but it will have impact on unbalanced reactive loads, as shown in the operation of a phase rotation detector circuit.
- Phase rotation can be reversed by swapping any two of the three "hot" leads supplying three-phase power to a three-phase load.

10.4 Polyphase motor design

Perhaps the most important benefit of polyphase AC power over single-phase is the design and operation of AC motors. As we studied in the first chapter of this book, some types of AC motors are virtually identical in construction to their alternator (generator) counterparts, consisting of stationary wire windings and a rotating magnet assembly. (Other AC motor designs are not quite this simple, but we will leave those details to another lesson).

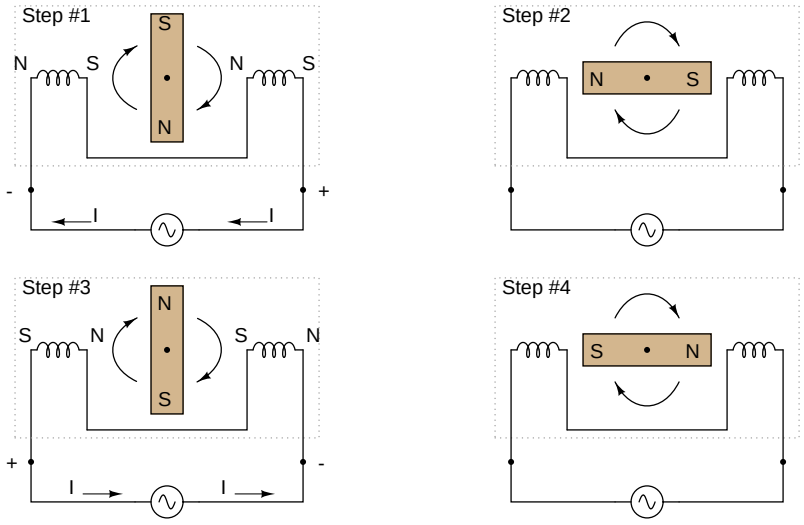


Figure 10.23: *Clockwise AC motor operation.*

If the rotating magnet is able to keep up with the frequency of the alternating current energizing the electromagnet windings (coils), it will continue to be pulled around clockwise. (Figure 10.23) However, clockwise is not the only valid direction for this motor's shaft to spin. It could just as easily be powered in a counter-clockwise direction by the same AC voltage waveform a in Figure 10.24.

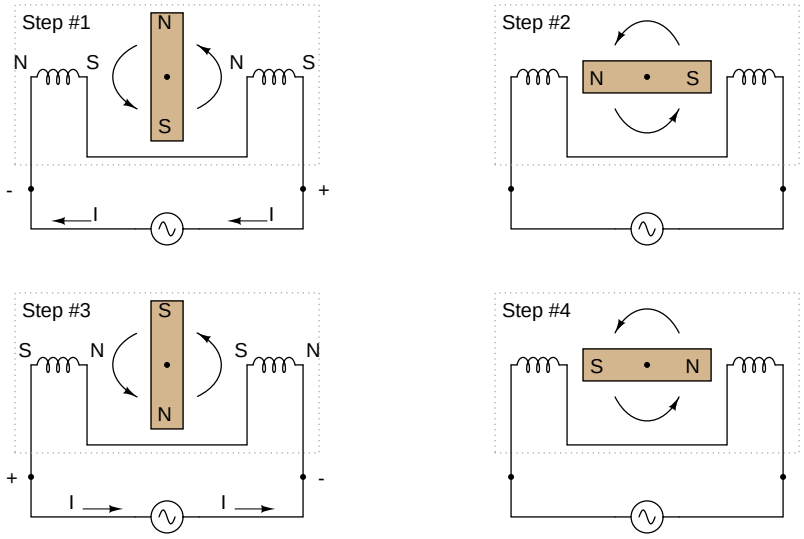


Figure 10.24: *Counterclockwise AC motor operation.*

Notice that with the exact same sequence of polarity cycles (voltage, current, and magnetic poles produced by the coils), the magnetic rotor can spin in either direction. This is a common trait of all single-phase AC "induction" and "synchronous" motors: they have no normal or "correct" direction of rotation. The natural question should arise at this point: how can the motor get started in the intended direction if it can run either way just as well? The answer is that these motors need a little help getting started. Once helped to spin in a particular direction. they will continue to spin that way as long as AC power is maintained to the windings.

Where that "help" comes from for a single-phase AC motor to get going in one direction can vary. Usually, it comes from an additional set of windings positioned differently from the main set, and energized with an AC voltage that is out of phase with the main power. (Figure 10.25)

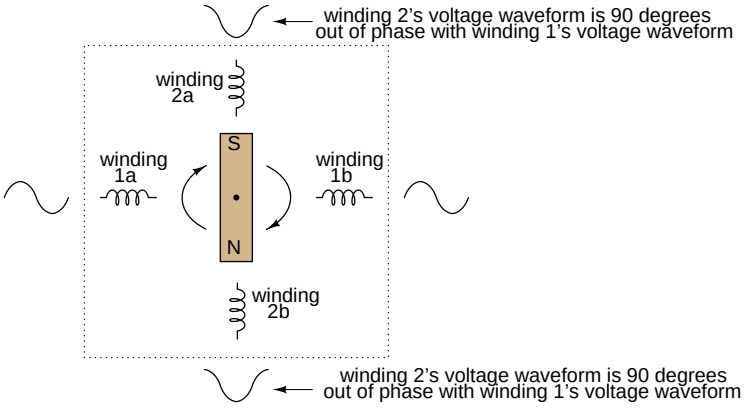


Figure 10.25: *Unidirectional-starting AC two-phase motor.*

These supplementary coils are typically connected in series with a capacitor to introduce a phase shift in current between the two sets of windings. (Figure 10.26)

That phase shift creates magnetic fields from coils 2a and 2b that are equally out of step with the fields from coils 1a and 1b. The result is a set of magnetic fields with a definite phase rotation. It is this phase rotation that pulls the rotating magnet around in a definite direction.

Polyphase AC motors require no such trickery to spin in a definite direction. Because their supply voltage waveforms already have a definite rotation sequence, so do the respective magnetic fields generated by the motor's stationary windings. In fact, the combination of all three phase winding sets working together creates what is often called a *rotating magnetic field*. It was this concept of a rotating magnetic field that inspired Nikola Tesla to design the world's first polyphase electrical systems (simply to make simpler, more efficient motors). The line current and safety advantages of polyphase power over single phase power were discovered later.

What can be a confusing concept is made much clearer through analogy. Have you ever seen a row of blinking light bulbs such as the kind used in Christmas decorations? Some strings appear to "move" in a definite direction as the bulbs alternately glow and darken in sequence. Other strings just blink on and off with no apparent motion. What makes the difference between the two types of bulb strings? Answer: phase shift!

Examine a string of lights where every other bulb is lit at any given time as in (Figure 10.27)

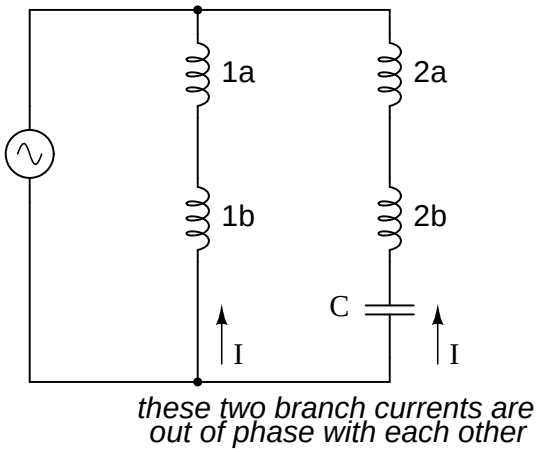


Figure 10.26: *Capacitor phase shift adds second phase.*

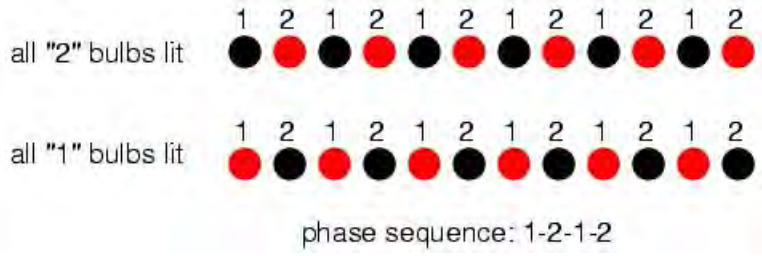


Figure 10.27: *Phase sequence 1-2-1-2: lamps appear to move.*

When all of the "1" bulbs are lit, the "2" bulbs are dark, and vice versa. With this blinking sequence, there is no definite "motion" to the bulbs' light. Your eyes could follow a "motion" from left to right just as easily as from right to left. Technically, the "1" and "2" bulb blinking sequences are 180^o out of phase (exactly opposite each other). This is analogous to the single-phase AC motor, which can run just as easily in either direction, but which cannot start on its own because its magnetic field alternation lacks a definite "rotation."

Now let's examine a string of lights where there are three sets of bulbs to be sequenced instead of just two, and these three sets are equally out of phase with each other in Figure 10.28.

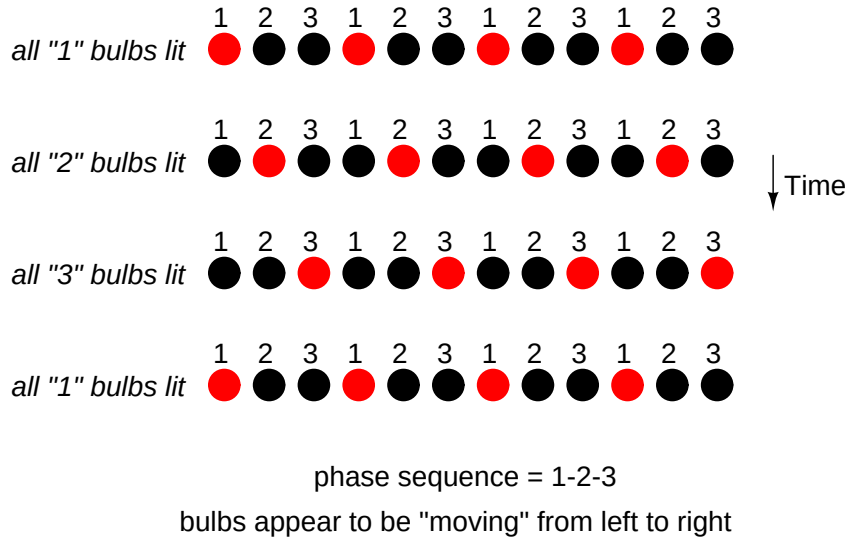


Figure 10.28: *Phase sequence: 1-2-3: bulbs appear to move left to right.*

If the lighting sequence is 1-2-3 (the sequence shown in (Figure 10.28)), the bulbs will appear to "move" from left to right. Now imagine this blinking string of bulbs arranged into a circle as in Figure 10.29.

Now the lights in Figure 10.29 appear to be "moving" in a clockwise direction because they are arranged around a circle instead of a straight line. It should come as no surprise that the appearance of motion will reverse if the phase sequence of the bulbs is reversed.

The blinking pattern will either appear to move clockwise or counter-clockwise depending on the phase sequence. This is analogous to a three-phase AC motor with three sets of windings energized by voltage sources of three different phase shifts in Figure 10.30.

With phase shifts of less than 180^o we get true rotation of the magnetic field. With single-phase motors, the rotating magnetic field necessary for self-starting must to be created by way of capacitive phase shift. With polyphase motors, the necessary phase shifts are there already. Plus, the direction of shaft rotation for polyphase motors is very easily reversed: just swap any two "hot" wires going to the motor, and it will run in the opposite direction!

- **REVIEW:**

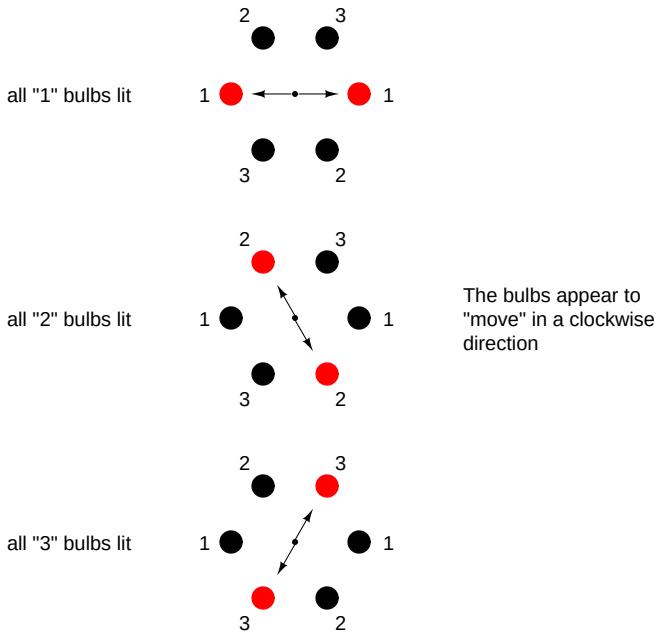


Figure 10.29: *Circular arrangement; bulbs appear to rotate clockwise.*

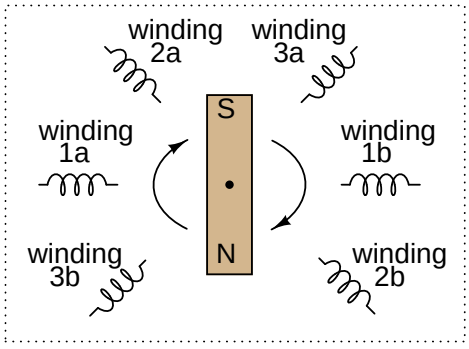


Figure 10.30: *Three-phase AC motor: A phase sequence of 1-2-3 spins the magnet clockwise, 3-2-1 spins the magnet counterclockwise.*

- AC "induction" and "synchronous" motors work by having a rotating magnet follow the alternating magnetic fields produced by stationary wire windings.
- Single-phase AC motors of this type need help to get started spinning in a particular direction.
- By introducing a phase shift of less than 180^{o} to the magnetic fields in such a motor, a definite direction of shaft rotation can be established.
- Single-phase induction motors often use an auxiliary winding connected in series with a capacitor to create the necessary phase shift.
- Polyphase motors don't need such measures; their direction of rotation is fixed by the phase sequence of the voltage they're powered by.
- Swapping any two "hot" wires on a polyphase AC motor will reverse its phase sequence, thus reversing its shaft rotation.

10.5 Three-phase Y and Δ configurations

Initially we explored the idea of three-phase power systems by connecting three voltage sources together in what is commonly known as the "Y" (or "star") configuration. This configuration of voltage sources is characterized by a common connection point joining one side of each source. (Figure 10.31)

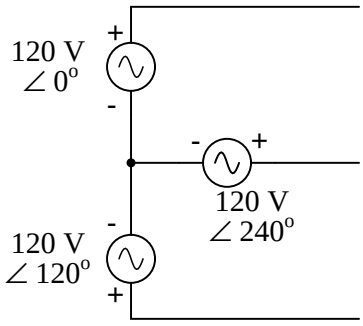


Figure 10.31: *Three-phase "Y" connection has three voltage sources connected to a common point.*

If we draw a circuit showing each voltage source to be a coil of wire (alternator or transformer winding) and do some slight rearranging, the "Y" configuration becomes more obvious in Figure 10.32.

The three conductors leading away from the voltage sources (windings) toward a load are typically called *lines*, while the windings themselves are typically called *phases*. In a Y-connected system, there may or may not (Figure 10.33) be a neutral wire attached at the junction point in the middle, although it certainly helps alleviate potential problems should one element of a three-phase load fail open, as discussed earlier.

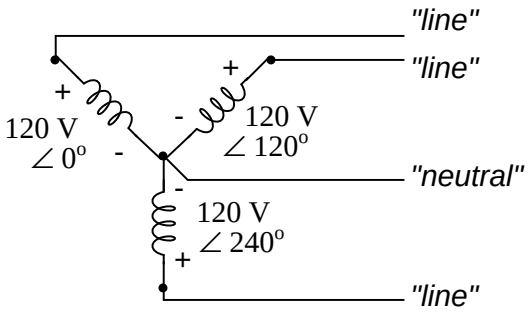


Figure 10.32: *Three-phase, four-wire "Y" connection uses a "common" fourth wire.*

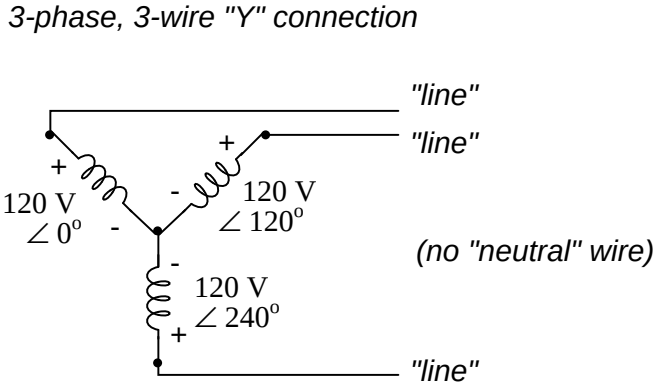


Figure 10.33: *Three-phase, three-wire "Y" connection does not use the neutral wire.*

When we measure voltage and current in three-phase systems, we need to be specific as to *where* we're measuring. *Line voltage* refers to the amount of voltage measured between any two line conductors in a balanced three-phase system. With the above circuit, the line voltage is roughly 208 volts. *Phase voltage* refers to the voltage measured across any one component (source winding or load impedance) in a balanced three-phase source or load. For the circuit shown above, the phase voltage is 120 volts. The terms *line current* and *phase current* follow the same logic: the former referring to current through any one line conductor, and the latter to current through any one component.

Y-connected sources and loads always have line voltages greater than phase voltages, and line currents equal to phase currents. If the Y-connected source or load is balanced, the line voltage will be equal to the phase voltage times the square root of 3:

For "Y" circuits:

$$E_{line} = \sqrt{3}\ E_{phase}$$

$$I_{line} = I_{phase}$$

However, the "Y" configuration is not the only valid one for connecting three-phase voltage source or load elements together. Another configuration is known as the "Delta," for its geometric resemblance to the Greek letter of the same name (Δ). Take close notice of the polarity for each winding in Figure 10.34.

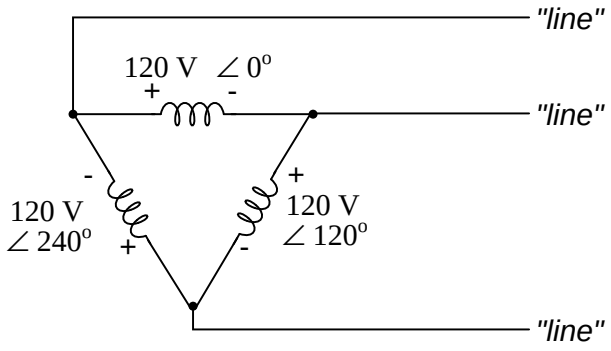


Figure 10.34: *Three-phase, three-wire Δ connection has no common.*

At first glance it seems as though three voltage sources like this would create a short-circuit, electrons flowing around the triangle with nothing but the internal impedance of the windings to hold them back. Due to the phase angles of these three voltage sources, however, this is not the case.

One quick check of this is to use Kirchhoff's Voltage Law to see if the three voltages around the loop add up to zero. If they do, then there will be no voltage available to push current around and around that loop, and consequently there will be no circulating current. Starting with the top winding and progressing counter-clockwise, our KVL expression looks something like this:

$$(120 \text{ V} \angle 0^{o}) + (120 \text{ V} \angle 240^{o}) + (120 \text{ V} \angle 120^{o})$$

Does it all equal 0?

Yes!

Indeed, if we add these three vector quantities together, they do add up to zero. Another way to verify the fact that these three voltage sources can be connected together in a loop without resulting in circulating currents is to open up the loop at one junction point and calculate voltage across the break: (Figure 10.35)

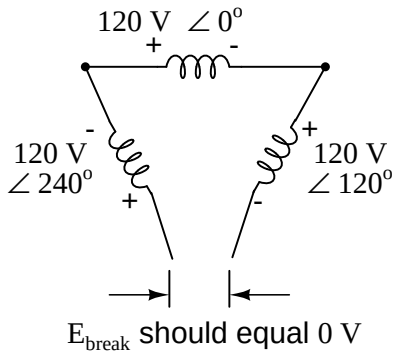


Figure 10.35: *Voltage across open Δ should be zero.*

Starting with the right winding ($120 \text{ V} \angle 120^{o}$) and progressing counter-clockwise, our KVL equation looks like this:

$$(120 \text{ V} \angle 120^{o}) + (120 \angle 0^{o}) + (120 \text{ V} \angle 240^{o}) + E_{break} = 0$$

$$0 + E_{break} = 0$$

$$E_{break} = 0$$

Sure enough, there will be zero voltage across the break, telling us that no current will circulate within the triangular loop of windings when that connection is made complete.

Having established that a Δ-connected three-phase voltage source will not burn itself to a crisp due to circulating currents, we turn to its practical use as a source of power in three-phase circuits. Because each pair of line conductors is connected directly across a single winding in a Δ circuit, the line voltage will be equal to the phase voltage. Conversely, because each line conductor attaches at a node between two windings, the line current will be the vector sum of the two joining phase currents. Not surprisingly, the resulting equations for a Δ configuration are as follows:

For Δ ("delta") circuits:

$E_{line} = E_{phase}$

$I_{line} = \sqrt{3}\ I_{phase}$

Let's see how this works in an example circuit: (Figure 10.36)

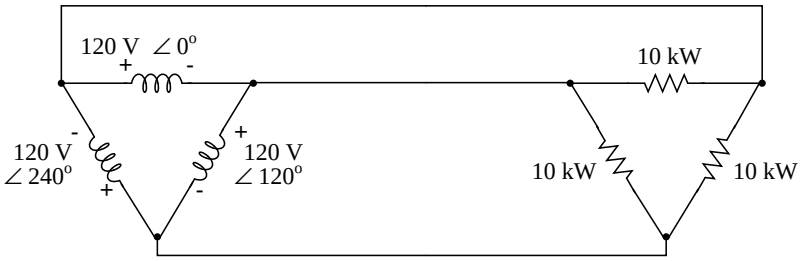


Figure 10.36: *The load on the Δ source is wired in a Δ.*

With each load resistance receiving 120 volts from its respective phase winding at the source, the current in each phase of this circuit will be 83.33 amps:

$$I = \frac{P}{E}$$

$$I = \frac{10\ kW}{120\ V}$$

$I = 83.33\ A$ *(for each load resistor and source winding)*

$I_{line} = \sqrt{3}\ I_{phase}$

$I_{line} = \sqrt{3}\ (83.33\ A)$

$I_{line} = 144.34\ A$

So each line current in this three-phase power system is equal to 144.34 amps, which is substantially more than the line currents in the Y-connected system we looked at earlier. One might wonder if we've lost all the advantages of three-phase power here, given the fact that we have such greater conductor currents, necessitating thicker, more costly wire. The answer is no. Although this circuit would require three number 1 gage copper conductors (at 1000 feet of distance between source and load this equates to a little over 750 pounds of copper for the whole system), it is still less than the 1000+ pounds of copper required for a single-phase system delivering the same power (30 kW) at the same voltage (120 volts conductor-to-conductor).

One distinct advantage of a Δ-connected system is its lack of a neutral wire. With a Y-connected system, a neutral wire was needed in case one of the phase loads were to fail open (or be turned off), in order to keep the phase voltages at the load from changing. This is not necessary (or even possible!) in a Δ-connected circuit. With each load phase element directly connected across a respective source phase winding, the phase voltage will be constant regardless of open failures in the load elements.

Perhaps the greatest advantage of the Δ-connected source is its fault tolerance. It is possible for one of the windings in a Δ-connected three-phase source to fail open (Figure 10.37) without affecting load voltage or current!

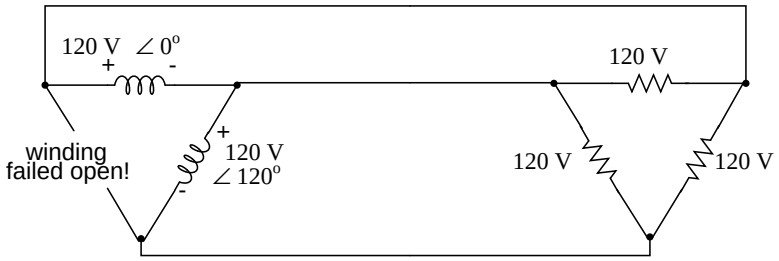


Figure 10.37: *Even with a source winding failure, the line voltage is still 120 V, and load phase voltage is still 120 V. The only difference is extra current in the remaining functional source windings.*

The only consequence of a source winding failing open for a Δ-connected source is increased phase current in the remaining windings. Compare this fault tolerance with a Y-connected system suffering an open source winding in Figure 10.38.

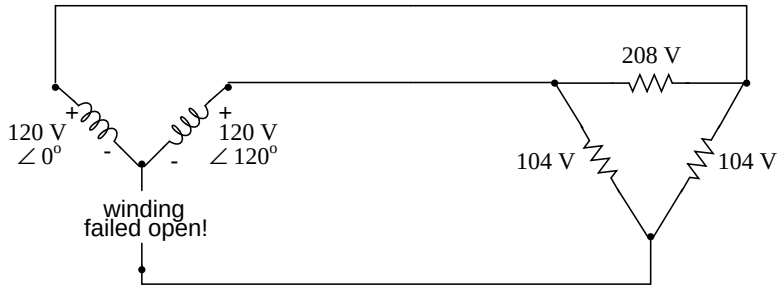


Figure 10.38: *Open "Y" source winding halves the voltage on two loads of a Δ connected load.*

With a Δ-connected load, two of the resistances suffer reduced voltage while one remains at the original line voltage, 208. A Y-connected load suffers an even worse fate (Figure 10.39) with the same winding failure in a Y-connected source

In this case, two load resistances suffer reduced voltage while the third loses supply voltage completely! For this reason, Δ-connected sources are preferred for reliability. However, if dual voltages are needed (e.g. 120/208) or preferred for lower line currents, Y-connected systems are

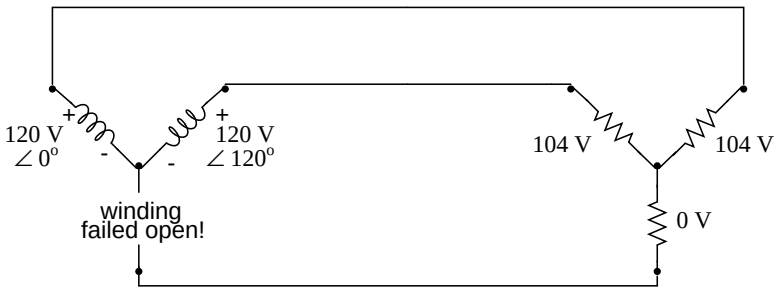


Figure 10.39: *Open source winding of a "Y-Y" system halves the voltage on two loads, and looses one load entirely.*

the configuration of choice.

- **REVIEW:**
- The conductors connected to the three points of a three-phase source or load are called *lines*.
- The three components comprising a three-phase source or load are called *phases*.
- *Line voltage* is the voltage measured between any two lines in a three-phase circuit.
- *Phase voltage* is the voltage measured across a single component in a three-phase source or load.
- *Line current* is the current through any one line between a three-phase source and load.
- *Phase current* is the current through any one component comprising a three-phase source or load.
- In balanced "Y" circuits, line voltage is equal to phase voltage times the square root of 3, while line current is equal to phase current.

  For "Y" circuits:

  $E_{line} = \sqrt{3}\ E_{phase}$

- $I_{line} = I_{phase}$
- In balanced Δ circuits, line voltage is equal to phase voltage, while line current is equal to phase current times the square root of 3.

  For Δ ("delta") circuits:

  $E_{line} = E_{phase}$

- $I_{line} = \sqrt{3}\ I_{phase}$

- Δ-connected three-phase voltage sources give greater reliability in the event of winding failure than Y-connected sources. However, Y-connected sources can deliver the same amount of power with less line current than Δ-connected sources.

10.6 Three-phase transformer circuits

Since three-phase is used so often for power distribution systems, it makes sense that we would need three-phase transformers to be able to step voltages up or down. This is only partially true, as regular single-phase transformers can be ganged together to transform power between two three-phase systems in a variety of configurations, eliminating the requirement for a special three-phase transformer. However, special three-phase transformers are built for those tasks, and are able to perform with less material requirement, less size, and less weight than their modular counterparts.

A three-phase transformer is made of three sets of primary and secondary windings, each set wound around one leg of an iron core assembly. Essentially it looks like three single-phase transformers sharing a joined core as in Figure 10.40.

Three-phase transformer core

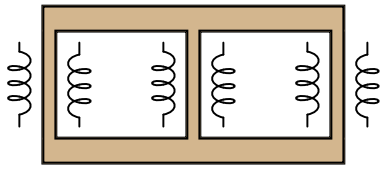


Figure 10.40: *Three phase transformer core has three sets of windings.*

Those sets of primary and secondary windings will be connected in either Δ or Y configurations to form a complete unit. The various combinations of ways that these windings can be connected together in will be the focus of this section.

Whether the winding sets share a common core assembly or each winding pair is a separate transformer, the winding connection options are the same:

- **Primary - Secondary**
- Y - Y
- Y - Δ
- Δ - Y
- Δ - Δ

The reasons for choosing a Y or Δ configuration for transformer winding connections are the same as for any other three-phase application: Y connections provide the opportunity for multiple voltages, while Δ connections enjoy a higher level of reliability (if one winding fails open, the other two can still maintain full line voltages to the load).

Probably the most important aspect of connecting three sets of primary and secondary windings together to form a three-phase transformer bank is paying attention to proper winding phasing (the dots used to denote "polarity" of windings). Remember the proper phase relationships between the phase windings of Δ and Y: (Figure 10.41)

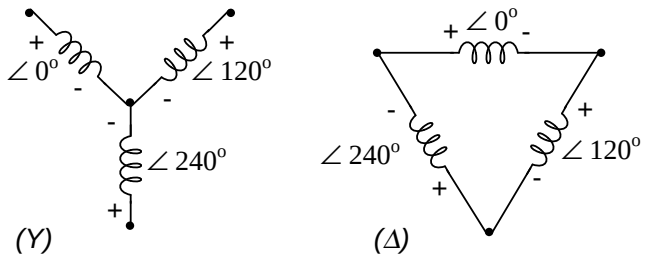


Figure 10.41: *(Y) The center point of the "Y" must tie either all the "-" or all the "+" winding points together. (Δ) The winding polarities must stack together in a complementary manner (+ to -).*

Getting this phasing correct when the windings aren't shown in regular Y or Δ configuration can be tricky. Let me illustrate, starting with Figure 10.42.

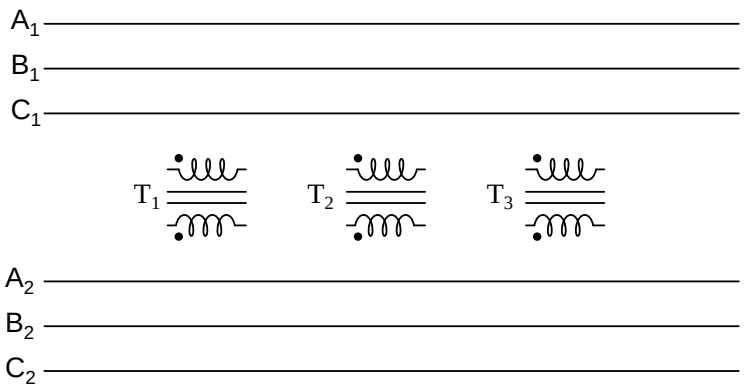


Figure 10.42: *Inputs A_1, A_2, A_3 may be wired either "Δ" or "Y", as may outputs B_1, B_2, B_3.*

Three individual transformers are to be connected together to transform power from one three-phase system to another. First, I'll show the wiring connections for a Y-Y configuration: Figure 10.43

Note in Figure 10.43 how all the winding ends marked with dots are connected to their respective phases A, B, and C, while the non-dot ends are connected together to form the centers of each "Y". Having both primary and secondary winding sets connected in "Y" formations allows for the use of neutral conductors (N_1 and N_2) in each power system.

Now, we'll take a look at a Y-Δ configuration: (Figure 10.44)

Note how the secondary windings (bottom set, Figure 10.44) are connected in a chain, the "dot" side of one winding connected to the "non-dot" side of the next, forming the Δ loop. At

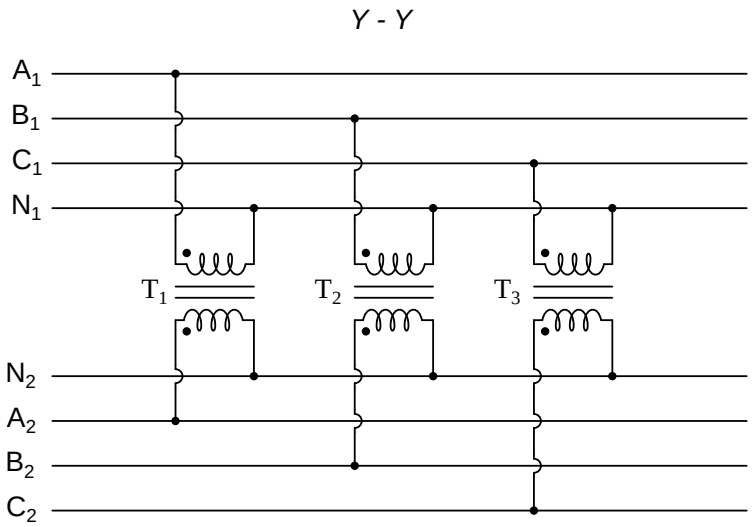


Figure 10.43: *Phase wiring for "Y-Y" transformer.*

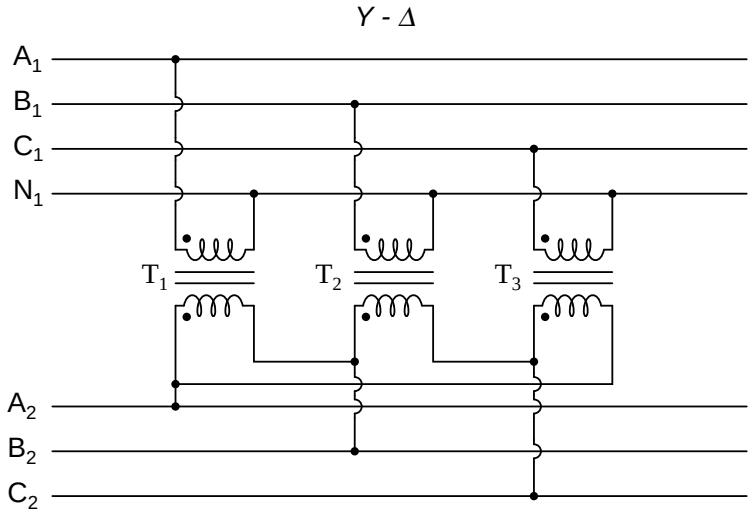


Figure 10.44: *Phase wiring for "Y-Δ" transformer.*

every connection point between pairs of windings, a connection is made to a line of the second power system (A, B, and C).

Now, let's examine a Δ-Y system in Figure 10.45.

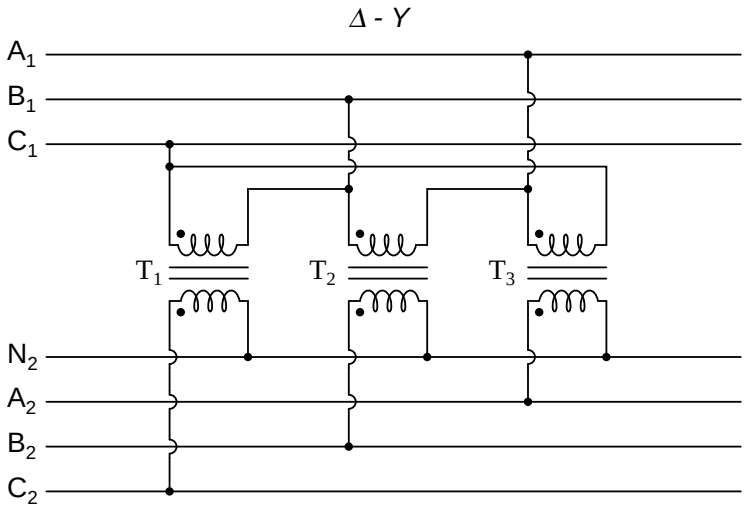


Figure 10.45: *Phase wiring for "Δ-Y" transformer.*

Such a configuration (Figure 10.45) would allow for the provision of multiple voltages (line-to-line or line-to-neutral) in the second power system, from a source power system having no neutral.

And finally, we turn to the Δ-Δ configuration: (Figure 10.46)

When there is no need for a neutral conductor in the secondary power system, Δ-Δ connection schemes (Figure 10.46) are preferred because of the inherent reliability of the Δ configuration.

Considering that a Δ configuration can operate satisfactorily missing one winding, some power system designers choose to create a three-phase transformer bank with only two transformers, representing a Δ-Δ configuration with a missing winding in both the primary and secondary sides: (Figure 10.47)

This configuration is called "V" or "Open-Δ." Of course, each of the two transformers have to be oversized to handle the same amount of power as three in a standard Δ configuration, but the overall size, weight, and cost advantages are often worth it. Bear in mind, however, that with one winding set missing from the Δ shape, this system no longer provides the fault tolerance of a normal Δ-Δ system. If one of the two transformers were to fail, the load voltage and current would definitely be affected.

The following photograph (Figure 10.48) shows a bank of step-up transformers at the Grand Coulee hydroelectric dam in Washington state. Several transformers (green in color) may be seen from this vantage point, and they are grouped in threes: three transformers per hydroelectric generator, wired together in some form of three-phase configuration. The photograph doesn't reveal the primary winding connections, but it appears the secondaries are connected in a Y configuration, being that there is only one large high-voltage insulator protruding from

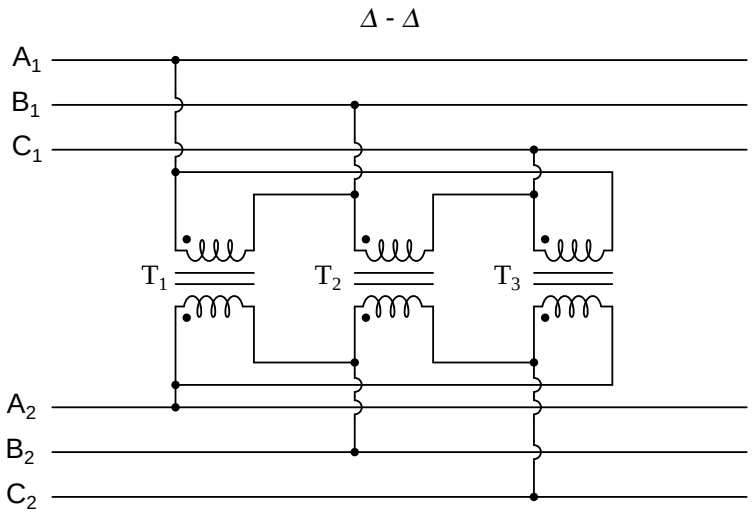


Figure 10.46: *Phase wiring for "Δ-Δ" transformer.*

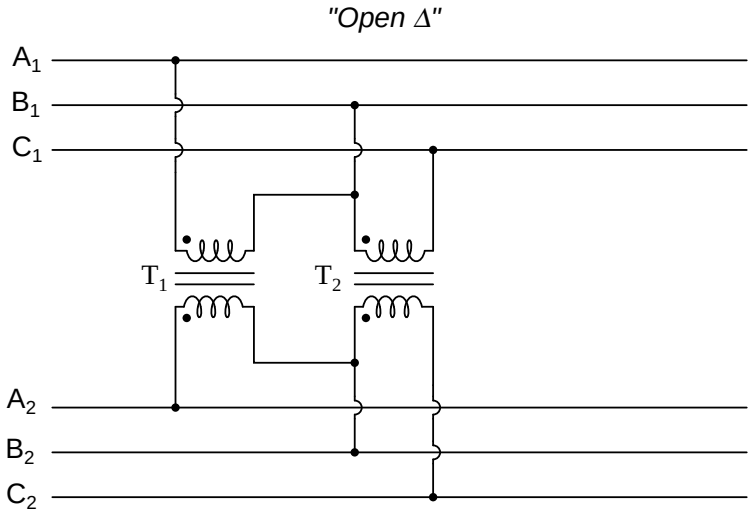


Figure 10.47: *"V" or "open-Δ" provides 2-ϕ power with only two transformers.*

each transformer. This suggests the other side of each transformer's secondary winding is at or near ground potential, which could only be true in a Y system. The building to the left is the powerhouse, where the generators and turbines are housed. On the right, the sloping concrete wall is the downstream face of the dam:

Figure 10.48: *Step-up transfromer bank at Grand Coulee hydroelectric dam, Washington state, USA.*

10.7 Harmonics in polyphase power systems

In the chapter on mixed-frequency signals, we explored the concept of *harmonics* in AC systems: frequencies that are integer multiples of the fundamental source frequency. With AC power systems where the source voltage waveform coming from an AC generator (alternator) is supposed to be a single-frequency sine wave, undistorted, there should be no harmonic content . . . ideally.

This would be true were it not for *nonlinear components*. Nonlinear components draw current disproportionately with respect to the source voltage, causing non-sinusoidal current waveforms. Examples of nonlinear components include gas-discharge lamps, semiconductor power-control devices (diodes, transistors, SCRs, TRIACs), transformers (primary winding magnetization current is usually non-sinusoidal due to the B/H saturation curve of the core), and electric motors (again, when magnetic fields within the motor's core operate near saturation levels). Even incandescent lamps generate slightly nonsinusoidal currents, as the filament resistance changes throughout the cycle due to rapid fluctuations in temperature. As we learned in the mixed-frequency chapter, *any* distortion of an otherwise sine-wave shaped waveform constitutes the presence of harmonic frequencies.

When the nonsinusoidal waveform in question is symmetrical above and below its average centerline, the harmonic frequencies will be odd integer multiples of the fundamental source frequency only, with no even integer multiples. (Figure 10.49) Most nonlinear loads produce

current waveforms like this, and so even-numbered harmonics (2nd, 4th, 6th, 8th, 10th, 12th, etc.) are absent or only minimally present in most AC power systems.

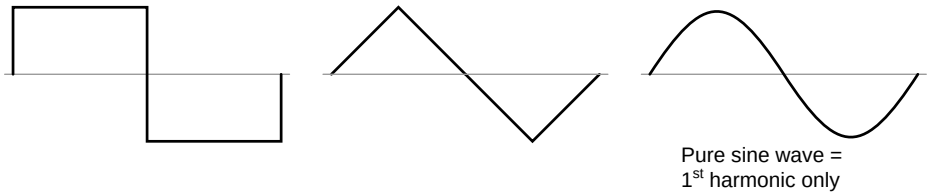


Figure 10.49: *Examples of symmetrical waveforms – odd harmonics only.*

Examples of nonsymmetrical waveforms with even harmonics present are shown for reference in Figure 10.50.

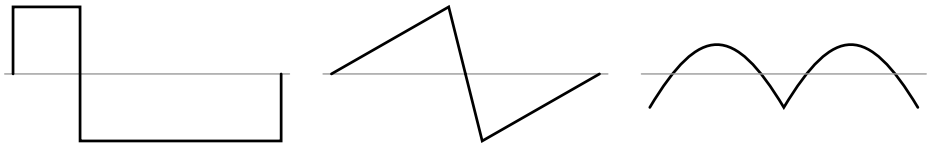


Figure 10.50: *Examples of nonsymmetrical waveforms – even harmonics present.*

Even though half of the possible harmonic frequencies are eliminated by the typically symmetrical distortion of nonlinear loads, the odd harmonics can still cause problems. Some of these problems are general to all power systems, single-phase or otherwise. Transformer overheating due to eddy current losses, for example, can occur in *any* AC power system where there is significant harmonic content. However, there are some problems caused by harmonic currents that are specific to polyphase power systems, and it is these problems to which this section is specifically devoted.

It is helpful to be able to simulate nonlinear loads in SPICE so as to avoid a lot of complex mathematics and obtain a more intuitive understanding of harmonic effects. First, we'll begin our simulation with a very simple AC circuit: a single sine-wave voltage source with a purely linear load and all associated resistances: (Figure 10.51)

The R_{source} and R_{line} resistances in this circuit do more than just mimic the real world: they also provide convenient shunt resistances for measuring currents in the SPICE simulation: by reading voltage across a 1 Ω resistance, you obtain a direct indication of current through it, since E = IR.

A SPICE simulation of this circuit (SPICE listing: "linear load simulation") with Fourier analysis on the voltage measured across R_{line} should show us the harmonic content of this circuit's line current. Being completely linear in nature, we should expect no harmonics other than the 1st (fundamental) of 60 Hz, assuming a 60 Hz source. See SPICE output "Fourier components of transient response v(2,3)" and Figure 10.52.

A `.plot` command appears in the SPICE netlist, and normally this would result in a sine-wave graph output. In this case, however, I've purposely omitted the waveform display for

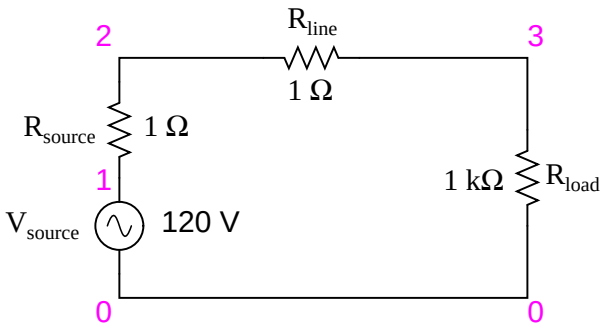


Figure 10.51: *SPICE circuit with single sine-wave source.*

```
linear load simulation
vsource 1 0 sin(0 120 60 0 0)
rsource 1 2 1
rline 2 3 1
rload 3 0 1k
.options itl5=0
.tran 0.5m 30m 0 1u
.plot tran v(2,3)
.four 60 v(2,3)
.end
```

```
Fourier components of transient response v(2,3)
dc component =   4.028E-12
harmonic frequency   Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E-01     1.000000   -72.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   5.793E-12     0.000000    51.122     123.122
3      1.800E+02   7.407E-12     0.000000   -34.624      37.376
4      2.400E+02   9.056E-12     0.000000     4.267      76.267
5      3.000E+02   1.651E-11     0.000000   -83.461     -11.461
6      3.600E+02   3.931E-11     0.000000    36.399     108.399
7      4.200E+02   2.338E-11     0.000000   -41.343      30.657
8      4.800E+02   4.716E-11     0.000000    53.324     125.324
9      5.400E+02   3.453E-11     0.000000    21.691      93.691
total harmonic distortion =      0.000000  percent
```

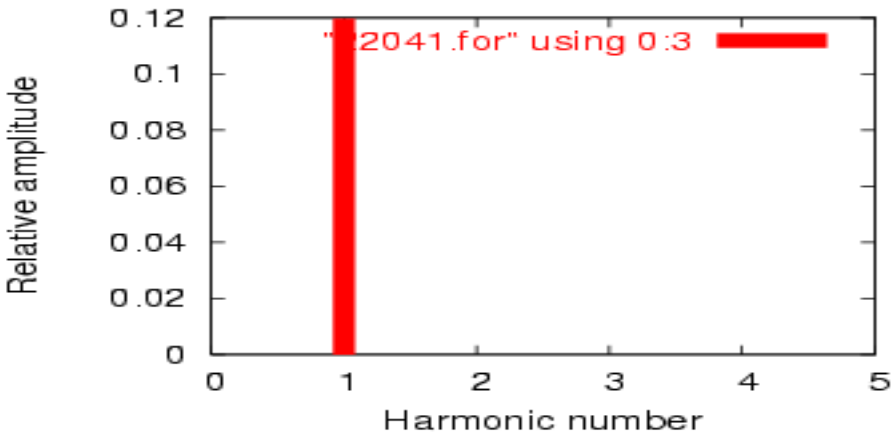


Figure 10.52: *Frequency domain plot of single frequency component. See SPICE listing: "linear load simulation".*

brevity's sake – the `.plot` command is in the netlist simply to satisfy a quirk of SPICE's Fourier transform function.

No discrete Fourier transform is perfect, and so we see very small harmonic currents indicated (in the pico-amp range!) for all frequencies up to the 9th harmonic (in the table), which is as far as SPICE goes in performing Fourier analysis. We show 0.1198 amps (1.198E-01) for the "Fourier component" of the 1st harmonic, or the fundamental frequency, which is our expected load current: about 120 mA, given a source voltage of 120 volts and a load resistance of 1 kΩ.

Next, I'd like to simulate a nonlinear load so as to generate harmonic currents. This can be done in two fundamentally different ways. One way is to design a load using nonlinear components such as diodes or other semiconductor devices which are easy to simulate with SPICE. Another is to add some AC current sources in parallel with the load resistor. The latter method is often preferred by engineers for simulating harmonics, since current sources of known value lend themselves better to mathematical network analysis than components with highly complex response characteristics. Since we're letting SPICE do all the math work, the complexity of a semiconductor component would cause no trouble for us, but since current sources can be fine-tuned to produce any arbitrary amount of current (a convenient feature), I'll choose the latter approach shown in Figure 10.53 and SPICE listing: "Nonlinear load simulation".

In this circuit, we have a current source of 50 mA magnitude and a frequency of 180 Hz, which is three times the source frequency of 60 Hz. Connected in parallel with the 1 kΩ load resistor, its current will add with the resistor's to make a nonsinusoidal total line current. I'll show the waveform plot in Figure 10.54 just so you can see the effects of this 3rd-harmonic current on the total current, which would ordinarily be a plain sine wave.

In the Fourier analysis, (See Figure 10.55 and "Fourier components of transient response v(2,3)") the mixed frequencies are unmixed and presented separately. Here we see the same 0.1198 amps of 60 Hz (fundamental) current as we did in the first simulation, but appearing in the 3rd harmonic row we see 49.9 mA: our 50 mA, 180 Hz current source at work. Why don't

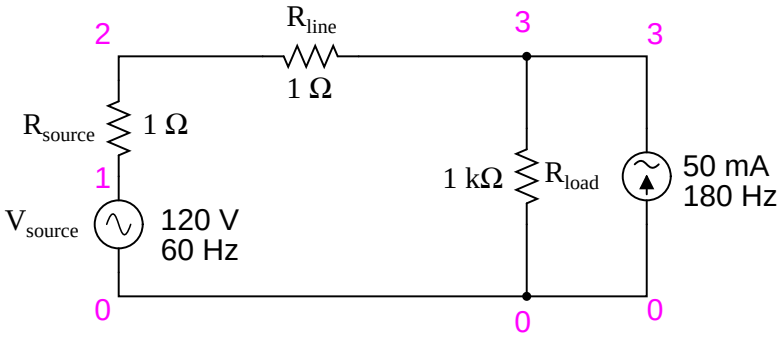


Figure 10.53: *SPICE circuit: 60 Hz source with 3rd harmonic added.*

```
Nonlinear load simulation
vsource 1 0 sin(0 120 60 0 0)
rsource 1 2 1
rline 2 3 1
rload 3 0 1k
i3har 3 0 sin(0 50m 180 0 0)
.options itl5=0
.tran 0.5m 30m 0 1u
.plot tran v(2,3)
.four 60 v(2,3)
.end
```

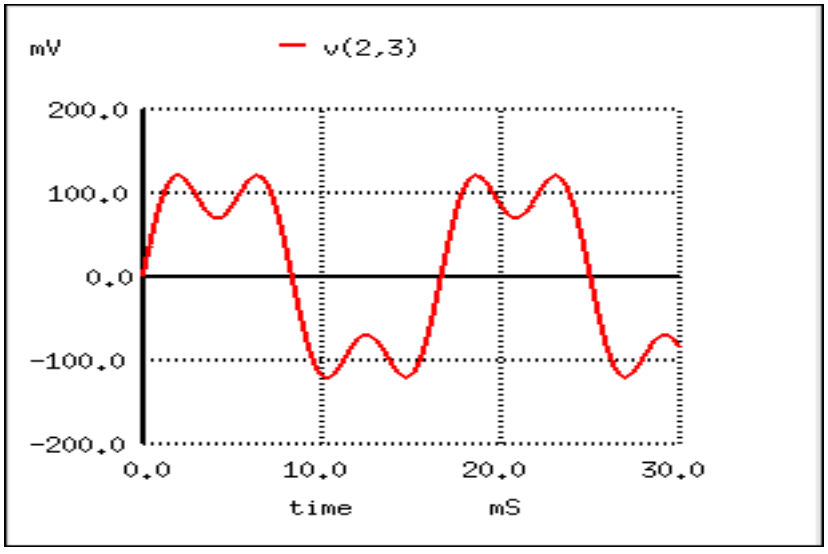


Figure 10.54: *SPICE time-domain plot showing sum of 60 Hz source and 3rd harmonic of 180 Hz.*

```
Fourier components of transient response v(2,3)
dc component =   1.349E-11
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no          (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E-01     1.000000   -72.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   1.609E-11     0.000000    67.570     139.570
3      1.800E+02   4.990E-02     0.416667   144.000     216.000
4      2.400E+02   1.074E-10     0.000000  -169.546     -97.546
5      3.000E+02   3.871E-11     0.000000   169.582     241.582
6      3.600E+02   5.736E-11     0.000000   140.845     212.845
7      4.200E+02   8.407E-11     0.000000   177.071     249.071
8      4.800E+02   1.329E-10     0.000000   156.772     228.772
9      5.400E+02   2.619E-10     0.000000   160.498     232.498
total harmonic distortion =     41.666663  percent
```

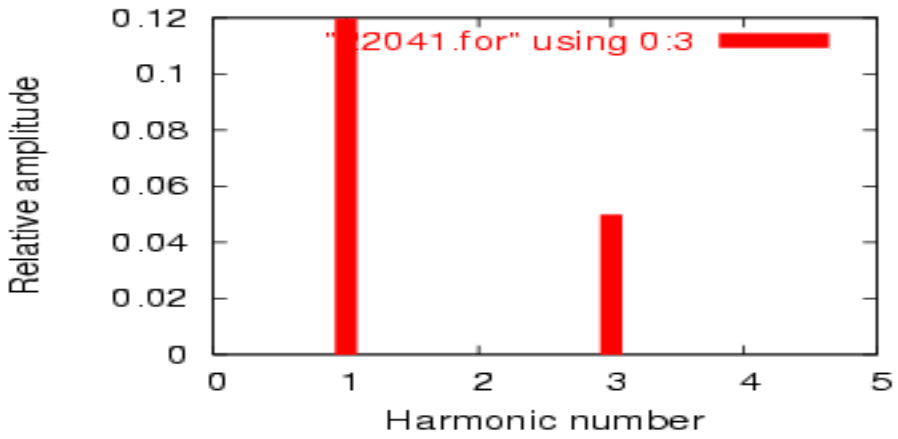


Figure 10.55: *SPICE Fourier plot showing 60 Hz source and 3rd harmonic of 180 Hz.*

we see the entire 50 mA through the line? Because that current source is connected across the 1 kΩ load resistor, so some of its current is shunted through the load and never goes through the line back to the source. It's an inevitable consequence of this type of simulation, where one part of the load is "normal" (a resistor) and the other part is imitated by a current source.

If we were to add more current sources to the "load," we would see further distortion of the line current waveform from the ideal sine-wave shape, and each of those harmonic currents would appear in the Fourier analysis breakdown. See Figure 10.56 and SPICE listing: "Nonlinear load simulation".

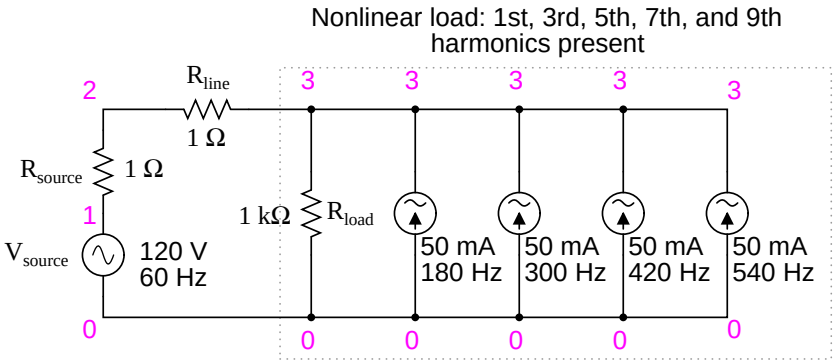


Figure 10.56: *Nonlinear load: 1st, 3rd, 5th, 7th, and 9th harmonics present.*

```
Nonlinear load simulation
vsource 1 0 sin(0 120 60 0 0)
rsource 1 2 1
rline 2 3 1
rload 3 0 1k
i3har 3 0 sin(0 50m 180 0 0)
i5har 3 0 sin(0 50m 300 0 0)
i7har 3 0 sin(0 50m 420 0 0)
i9har 3 0 sin(0 50m 540 0 0)
.options itl5=0
.tran 0.5m 30m 0 1u
.plot tran v(2,3)
.four 60 v(2,3)
.end
```

As you can see from the Fourier analysis, (Figure 10.57) every harmonic current source is equally represented in the line current, at 49.9 mA each. So far, this is just a single-phase power system simulation. Things get more interesting when we make it a three-phase simulation. Two Fourier analyses will be performed: one for the voltage across a line resistor, and one for the voltage across the neutral resistor. As before, reading voltages across fixed resistances of 1 Ω each gives direct indications of current through those resistors. See Figure 10.58 and SPICE listing "Y-Y source/load 4-wire system with harmonics".

```
Fourier components of transient response v(2,3)
dc component =   6.299E-11
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no          (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E-01     1.000000   -72.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   1.900E-09     0.000000   -93.908     -21.908
3      1.800E+02   4.990E-02     0.416667   144.000     216.000
4      2.400E+02   5.469E-09     0.000000  -116.873     -44.873
5      3.000E+02   4.990E-02     0.416667     0.000      72.000
6      3.600E+02   6.271E-09     0.000000    85.062     157.062
7      4.200E+02   4.990E-02     0.416666  -144.000     -72.000
8      4.800E+02   2.742E-09     0.000000   -38.781      33.219
9      5.400E+02   4.990E-02     0.416666    72.000     144.000
total harmonic distortion =     83.333296  percent
```

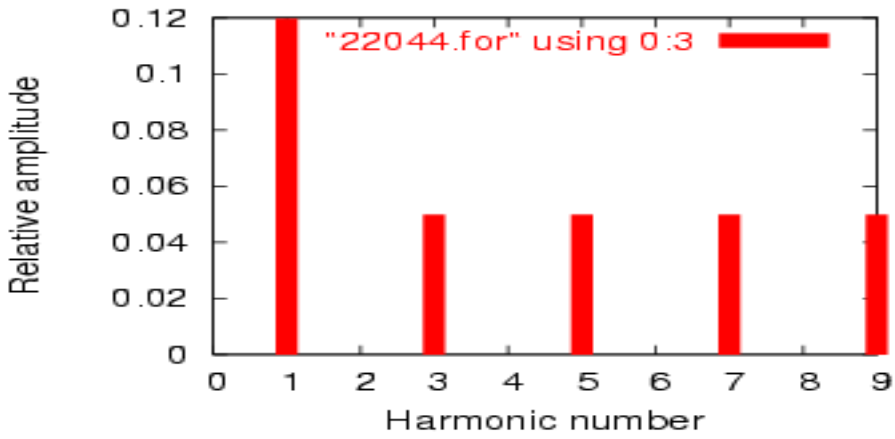


Figure 10.57: *Fourier analysis: "Fourier components of transient response v(2,3)".*

```
Y-Y source/load 4-wire system with harmonics
*
* phase1 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 0 deg)
vsource1 1 0 sin(0 120 60 0 0)
rsource1 1 2 1
*
* phase2 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 120 deg)
vsource2 3 0 sin(0 120 60 5.55555m 0)
rsource2 3 4 1
*
* phase3 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 240 deg)
vsource3 5 0 sin(0 120 60 11.1111m 0)
rsource3 5 6 1
*
* line and neutral wire resistances
rline1 2 8 1
rline2 4 9 1
rline3 6 10 1
rneutral 0 7 1
*
* phase 1 of load
rload1 8 7 1k
i3har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 180 0 0)
i5har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 300 0 0)
i7har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 420 0 0)
i9har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 540 0 0)
*
* phase 2 of load
rload2 9 7 1k
i3har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 180 5.55555m 0)
i5har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 300 5.55555m 0)
i7har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 420 5.55555m 0)
i9har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 540 5.55555m 0)
*
* phase 3 of load
rload3 10 7 1k
i3har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 180 11.1111m 0)
i5har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 300 11.1111m 0)
i7har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 420 11.1111m 0)
i9har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 540 11.1111m 0)
*
* analysis stuff
.options itl5=0
.tran 0.5m 100m 12m 1u
.plot tran v(2,8)
.four 60 v(2,8)
.plot tran v(0,7)
.four 60 v(0,7)
.end
```

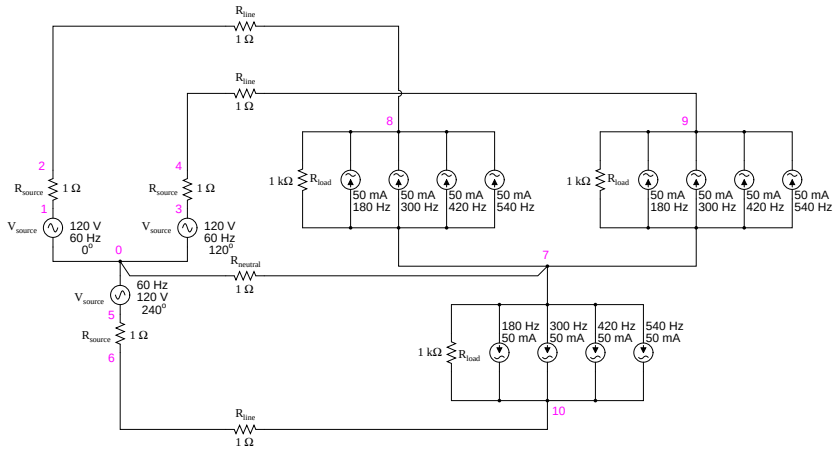


Figure 10.58: *SPICE circuit: analysis of "line current" and "neutral current", Y-Y source/load 4-wire system with harmonics.*

Fourier analysis of line current:

```
Fourier components of transient response v(2,8)
dc component =  -6.404E-12
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no          (hz)     component   component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E-01     1.000000     0.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   2.218E-10     0.000000   172.985     172.985
3      1.800E+02   4.975E-02     0.415423     0.000       0.000
4      2.400E+02   4.236E-10     0.000000   166.990     166.990
5      3.000E+02   4.990E-02     0.416667     0.000       0.000
6      3.600E+02   1.877E-10     0.000000  -147.146    -147.146
7      4.200E+02   4.990E-02     0.416666     0.000       0.000
8      4.800E+02   2.784E-10     0.000000  -148.811    -148.811
9      5.400E+02   4.975E-02     0.415422     0.000       0.000
total harmonic distortion =     83.209009  percent
```

Fourier analysis of neutral current:

This is a balanced Y-Y power system, each phase identical to the single-phase AC system simulated earlier. Consequently, it should come as no surprise that the Fourier analysis for line current in one phase of the 3-phase system is nearly identical to the Fourier analysis for line current in the single-phase system: a fundamental (60 Hz) line current of 0.1198 amps, and odd harmonic currents of approximately 50 mA each. See Figure 10.59 and Fourier analysis: "Fourier components of transient response v(2,8)"

What should be surprising here is the analysis for the neutral conductor's current, as determined by the voltage drop across the $R_{neutral}$ resistor between SPICE nodes 0 and 7. (Figure 10.60) In a balanced 3-phase Y load, we would expect the neutral current to be zero. Each

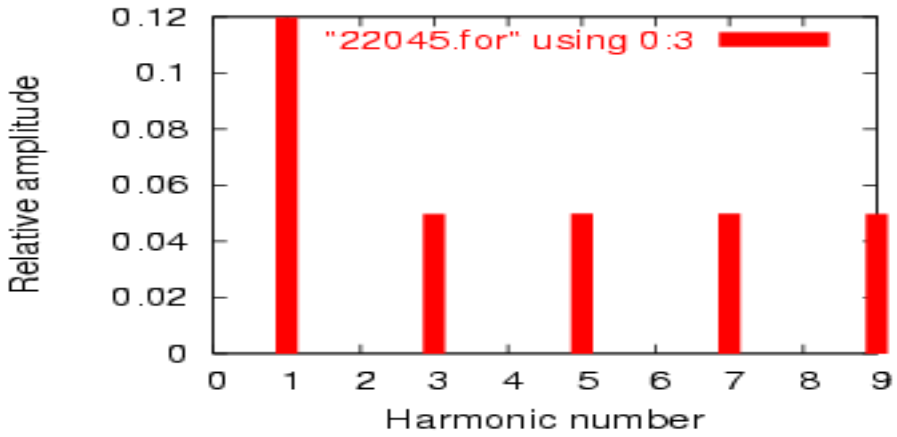


Figure 10.59: *Fourier analysis of line current in balanced Y-Y system*

```
Fourier components of transient response v(0,7)
dc component =   1.819E-10
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   4.337E-07     1.000000    60.018       0.000
2      1.200E+02   1.869E-10     0.000431    91.206      31.188
3      1.800E+02   1.493E-01  344147.7638  -180.000    -240.018
4      2.400E+02   1.257E-09     0.002898   -21.103     -81.121
5      3.000E+02   9.023E-07     2.080596   119.981      59.963
6      3.600E+02   3.396E-10     0.000783    15.882     -44.136
7      4.200E+02   1.264E-06     2.913955    59.993      -0.025
8      4.800E+02   5.975E-10     0.001378    35.584     -24.434
9      5.400E+02   1.493E-01  344147.4889  -179.999    -240.017
```

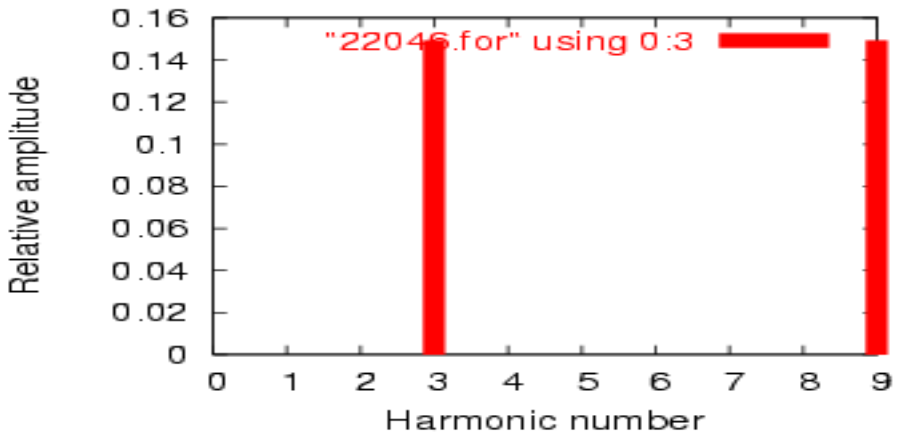


Figure 10.60: *Fourier analysis of neutral current shows other than no harmonics! Compare to line current in Figure 10.59*

phase current – which by itself would go through the neutral wire back to the supplying phase on the source Y – should cancel each other in regard to the neutral conductor because they're all the same magnitude and all shifted 120^o apart. In a system with no harmonic currents, this *is* what happens, leaving zero current through the neutral conductor. However, we cannot say the same for *harmonic* currents in the same system.

Note that the fundamental frequency (60 Hz, or the 1st harmonic) current is virtually absent from the neutral conductor. Our Fourier analysis shows only 0.4337 μA of 1st harmonic when reading voltage across $R_{neutral}$. The same may be said about the 5th and 7th harmonics, both of those currents having negligible magnitude. In contrast, the 3rd and 9th harmonics are strongly represented within the neutral conductor, with 149.3 mA (1.493E-01 volts across 1 Ω) each! This is very nearly 150 mA, or three times the current sources' values, individually. With three sources per harmonic frequency in the load, it appears our 3rd and 9th harmonic currents in each phase are *adding* to form the neutral current. See Fourier analysis: "Fourier components of transient response v(0,7) "

This is exactly what's happening, though it might not be apparent why this is so. The key to understanding this is made clear in a time-domain graph of phase currents. Examine this plot of balanced phase currents over time, with a phase sequence of 1-2-3. (Figure 10.61)

With the three fundamental waveforms equally shifted across the time axis of the graph, it is easy to see how they would cancel each other to give a resultant current of zero in the neutral conductor. Let's consider, though, what a 3rd harmonic waveform for phase 1 would look like superimposed on the graph in Figure 10.62.

Observe how this harmonic waveform has the same phase relationship to the 2nd and 3rd fundamental waveforms as it does with the 1st: in each positive half-cycle of *any* of the fundamental waveforms, you will find exactly two positive half-cycles and one negative half-cycle of the harmonic waveform. What this means is that the 3rd-harmonic waveforms of three 120^o phase-shifted fundamental-frequency waveforms are actually *in phase* with each other. The phase shift figure of 120^o generally assumed in three-phase AC systems applies only to the

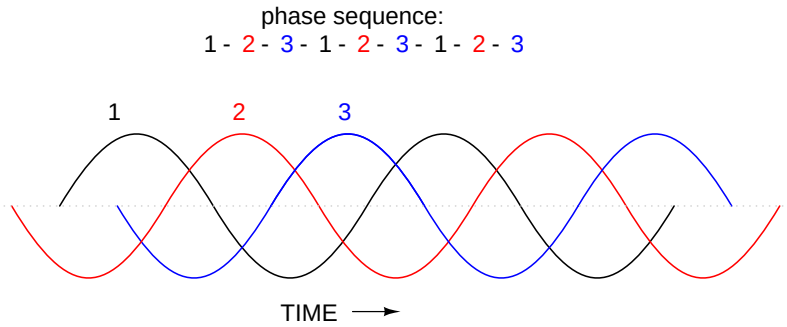


Figure 10.61: *Phase sequence 1-2-3-1-2-3-1-2-3 of equally spaced waves.*

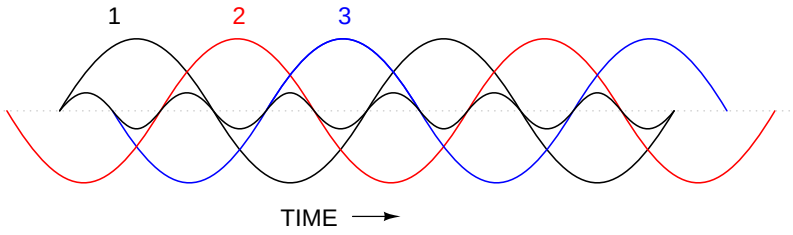


Figure 10.62: *Third harmonic waveform for phase-1 superimposed on three-phase fundamental waveforms.*

fundamental frequencies, not to their harmonic multiples!

If we were to plot all three 3rd-harmonic waveforms on the same graph, we would see them precisely overlap and appear as a single, unified waveform (shown in bold in (Figure 10.63)

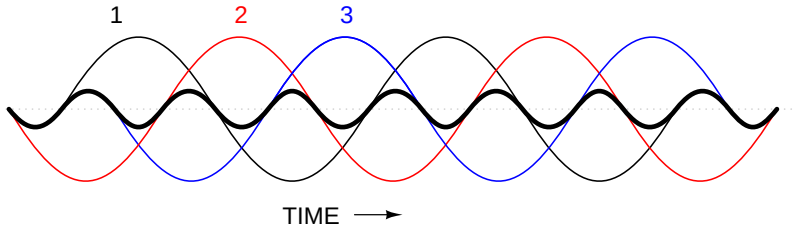


Figure 10.63: *Third harmonics for phases 1, 2, 3 all coincide when superimposed on the fundamental three-phase waveforms.*

For the more mathematically inclined, this principle may be expressed symbolically. Suppose that **A** represents one waveform and **B** another, both at the same frequency, but shifted 120^o from each other in terms of phase. Let's call the 3rd harmonic of each waveform **A'** and **B'**, respectively. The phase shift between **A'** and **B'** is not 120^o (that is the phase shift between **A** and **B**), but 3 times that, because the **A'** and **B'** waveforms alternate three times as fast as **A** and **B**. The shift between waveforms is only accurately expressed in terms of *phase angle* when the same angular velocity is assumed. When relating waveforms of different frequency, the most accurate way to represent phase shift is in terms of *time*; and the *time-shift* between **A'** and **B'** is equivalent to 120^o at a frequency three times lower, or 360^o at the frequency of **A'** and **B'**. A phase shift of 360^o is the same as a phase shift of 0^o, which is to say no phase shift at all. Thus, **A'** and **B'** must be in phase with each other:

Phase sequence = ***A-B-C***

Fundamental	**A** 0^o	**B** 120^o	**C** 240^o
3rd harmonic	**A'** 3 x 0^o (0^o)	**B'** 3 x 120^o ($360^o = 0^o$)	**C'** 3 x 240^o ($720^o = 0^o$)

This characteristic of the 3rd harmonic in a three-phase system also holds true for any integer multiples of the 3rd harmonic. So, not only are the 3rd harmonic waveforms of each fundamental waveform in phase with each other, but so are the 6th harmonics, the 9th harmonics, the 12th harmonics, the 15th harmonics, the 18th harmonics, the 21st harmonics, and so on. Since only odd harmonics appear in systems where waveform distortion is symmetrical about the centerline – and most nonlinear loads create symmetrical distortion – even-numbered multiples of the 3rd harmonic (6th, 12th, 18th, etc.) are generally not significant, leaving only the odd-numbered multiples (3rd, 9th, 15th, 21st, etc.) to significantly contribute to neutral currents.

In polyphase power systems with some number of phases other than three, this effect occurs

with harmonics of the same multiple. For instance, the harmonic currents that add in the neutral conductor of a star-connected 4-phase system where the phase shift between fundamental waveforms is 90^o would be the 4th, 8th, 12th, 16th, 20th, and so on.

Due to their abundance and significance in three-phase power systems, the 3rd harmonic and its multiples have their own special name: *triplen harmonics*. All triplen harmonics add with each other in the neutral conductor of a 4-wire Y-connected load. In power systems containing substantial nonlinear loading, the triplen harmonic currents may be of great enough magnitude to cause neutral conductors to overheat. This is very problematic, as other safety concerns prohibit neutral conductors from having overcurrent protection, and thus there is no provision for automatic interruption of these high currents.

The following illustration shows how triplen harmonic currents created at the load add within the neutral conductor. The symbol "ω" is used to represent angular velocity, and is mathematically equivalent to 2πf. So, "ω" represents the fundamental frequency, "3ω " represents the 3rd harmonic, "5ω" represents the 5th harmonic, and so on: (Figure 10.64)

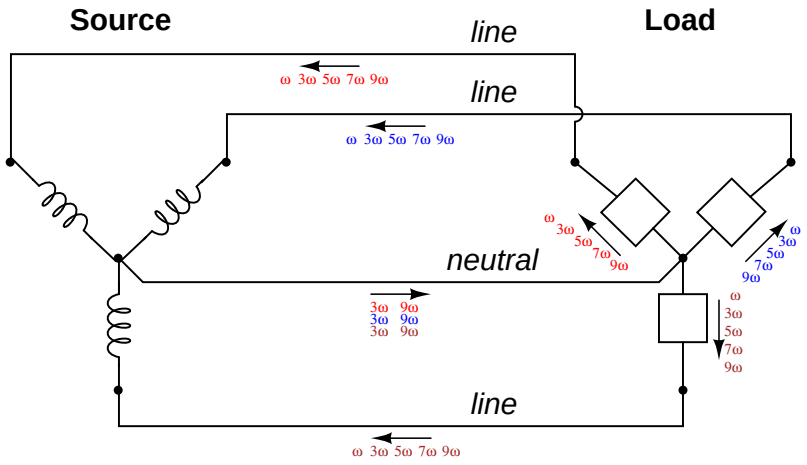


Figure 10.64: *"Y-Y"Triplen source/load: Harmonic currents add in neutral conductor.*

In an effort to mitigate these additive triplen currents, one might be tempted to remove the neutral wire entirely. If there is no neutral wire in which triplen currents can flow together, then they won't, right? Unfortunately, doing so just causes a different problem: the load's "Y" center-point will no longer be at the same potential as the source's, meaning that each phase of the load will receive a different voltage than what is produced by the source. We'll re-run the last SPICE simulation without the 1 Ω $R_{neutral}$ resistor and see what happens:

Fourier analysis of line current:

Fourier analysis of voltage between the two "Y" center-points:

Fourier analysis of load phase voltage:

Strange things are happening, indeed. First, we see that the triplen harmonic currents (3rd and 9th) all but disappear in the lines connecting load to source. The 5th and 7th harmonic currents are present at their normal levels (approximately 50 mA), but the 3rd and 9th harmonic currents are of negligible magnitude. Second, we see that there is substantial harmonic

```
Y-Y source/load (no neutral) with harmonics
*
* phase1 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 0 deg)
vsource1 1 0 sin(0 120 60 0 0)
rsource1 1 2 1
*
* phase2 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 120 deg)
vsource2 3 0 sin(0 120 60 5.55555m 0)
rsource2 3 4 1
*
* phase3 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 240 deg)
vsource3 5 0 sin(0 120 60 11.1111m 0)
rsource3 5 6 1
*
* line resistances
rline1 2 8 1
rline2 4 9 1
rline3 6 10 1
*
* phase 1 of load
rload1 8 7 1k
i3har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 180 0 0)
i5har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 300 0 0)
i7har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 420 0 0)
i9har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 540 0 0)
*
* phase 2 of load
rload2 9 7 1k
i3har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 180 5.55555m 0)
i5har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 300 5.55555m 0)
i7har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 420 5.55555m 0)
i9har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 540 5.55555m 0)
*
* phase 3 of load
rload3 10 7 1k
i3har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 180 11.1111m 0)
i5har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 300 11.1111m 0)
i7har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 420 11.1111m 0)
i9har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 540 11.1111m 0)
*
* analysis stuff
.options itl5=0
.tran 0.5m 100m 12m 1u
.plot tran v(2,8)
.four 60 v(2,8)
.plot tran v(0,7)
.four 60 v(0,7)
.plot tran v(8,7)
.four 60 v(8,7)
.end
```

```
Fourier components of transient response v(2,8)
dc component =   5.423E-11
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E-01     1.000000     0.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   2.388E-10     0.000000   158.016     158.016
3      1.800E+02   3.136E-07     0.000003   -90.009     -90.009
4      2.400E+02   5.963E-11     0.000000  -111.510    -111.510
5      3.000E+02   4.990E-02     0.416665     0.000       0.000
6      3.600E+02   8.606E-11     0.000000  -124.565    -124.565
7      4.200E+02   4.990E-02     0.416668     0.000       0.000
8      4.800E+02   8.126E-11     0.000000  -159.638    -159.638
9      5.400E+02   9.406E-07     0.000008   -90.005     -90.005
total harmonic distortion =     58.925539  percent


Fourier components of transient response v(0,7)
dc component =   6.093E-08
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.453E-04     1.000000    60.018       0.000
2      1.200E+02   6.263E-08     0.000431    91.206      31.188
3      1.800E+02   5.000E+01  344147.7879  -180.000    -240.018
4      2.400E+02   4.210E-07     0.002898   -21.103     -81.121
5      3.000E+02   3.023E-04     2.080596   119.981      59.963
6      3.600E+02   1.138E-07     0.000783    15.882     -44.136
7      4.200E+02   4.234E-04     2.913955    59.993      -0.025
8      4.800E+02   2.001E-07     0.001378    35.584     -24.434
9      5.400E+02   5.000E+01  344147.4728  -179.999    -240.017
total harmonic distortion =  ************  percent


Fourier components of transient response v(8,7)
dc component =   6.070E-08
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E+02     1.000000     0.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   6.231E-08     0.000000    90.473      90.473
3      1.800E+02   5.000E+01     0.417500  -180.000    -180.000
4      2.400E+02   4.278E-07     0.000000   -19.747     -19.747
5      3.000E+02   9.995E-02     0.000835   179.850     179.850
6      3.600E+02   1.023E-07     0.000000    13.485      13.485
7      4.200E+02   9.959E-02     0.000832   179.790     179.789
8      4.800E+02   1.991E-07     0.000000    35.462      35.462
9      5.400E+02   5.000E+01     0.417499  -179.999    -179.999
total harmonic distortion =     59.043467  percent
```

voltage between the two "Y" center-points, between which the neutral conductor used to connect. According to SPICE, there is 50 volts of both 3rd and 9th harmonic frequency between these two points, which is definitely not normal in a linear (no harmonics), balanced Y system. Finally, the voltage as measured across one of the load's phases (between nodes 8 and 7 in the SPICE analysis) likewise shows strong triplen harmonic voltages of 50 volts each.

Figure 10.65 is a graphical summary of the aforementioned effects.

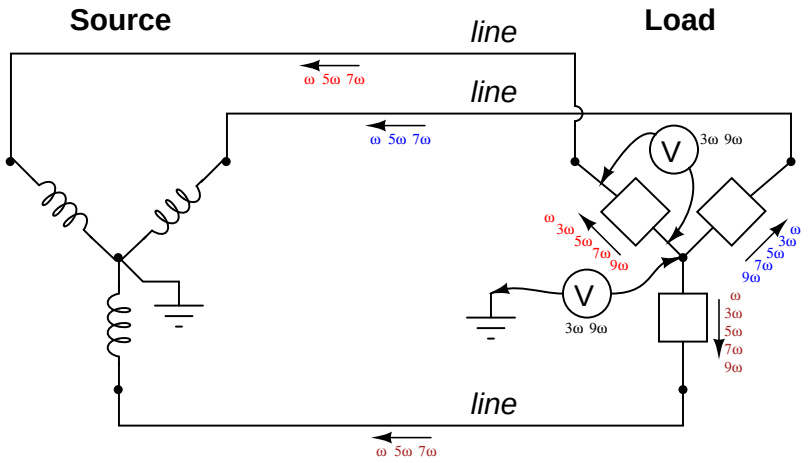


Figure 10.65: *Three-wire "Y-Y" (no neutral) system: Triplen voltages appear between "Y" centers. Triplen voltages appear across load phases. Non-triplen currents appear in line conductors.*

In summary, removal of the neutral conductor leads to a "hot" center-point on the load "Y", and also to harmonic load phase voltages of equal magnitude, all comprised of triplen frequencies. In the previous simulation where we had a 4-wire, Y-connected system, the undesirable effect from harmonics was excessive neutral *current*, but at least each phase of the load received voltage nearly free of harmonics.

Since removing the neutral wire didn't seem to work in eliminating the problems caused by harmonics, perhaps switching to a Δ configuration will. Let's try a Δ source instead of a Y, keeping the load in its present Y configuration, and see what happens. The measured parameters will be line current (voltage across R_{line}, nodes 0 and 8), load phase voltage (nodes 8 and 7), and source phase current (voltage across R_{source}, nodes 1 and 2). (Figure 10.66)

Note: the following paragraph is for those curious readers who follow every detail of my SPICE netlists. If you just want to find out what happens in the circuit, skip this paragraph! When simulating circuits having AC sources of differing frequency and differing phase, the only way to do it in SPICE is to set up the sources with a *delay time* or *phase offset* specified in seconds. Thus, the 0^o source has these five specifying figures: "(0 207.846 60 0 0)", which means 0 volts DC offset, 207.846 volts peak amplitude (120 times the square root of three, to ensure the load phase voltages remain at 120 volts each), 60 Hz, 0 time delay, and 0 damping factor. The 120^o phase-shifted source has these figures: "(0 207.846 60 5.55555m 0)", all the same as the first except for the time delay factor of 5.55555 milliseconds, or 1/3 of the full

```
Delta-Y source/load with harmonics
*
* phase1 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 0 deg)
vsource1 1 0 sin(0 207.846 60 0 0)
rsource1 1 2 1
*
* phase2 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 120 deg)
vsource2 3 2 sin(0 207.846 60 5.55555m 0)
rsource2 3 4 1
*
* phase3 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 240 deg)
vsource3 5 4 sin(0 207.846 60 11.1111m 0)
rsource3 5 0 1
*
* line resistances
rline1 0 8 1
rline2 2 9 1
rline3 4 10 1
*
* phase 1 of load
rload1 8 7 1k
i3har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 180 9.72222m 0)
i5har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 300 9.72222m 0)
i7har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 420 9.72222m 0)
i9har1 8 7 sin(0 50m 540 9.72222m 0)
*
* phase 2 of load
rload2 9 7 1k
i3har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 180 15.2777m 0)
i5har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 300 15.2777m 0)
i7har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 420 15.2777m 0)
i9har2 9 7 sin(0 50m 540 15.2777m 0)
*
* phase 3 of load
rload3 10 7 1k
i3har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 180 4.16666m 0)
i5har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 300 4.16666m 0)
i7har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 420 4.16666m 0)
i9har3 10 7 sin(0 50m 540 4.16666m 0)
*
* analysis stuff
.options itl5=0
.tran 0.5m 100m 16m 1u
.plot tran v(0,8) v(8,7) v(1,2)
.four 60 v(0,8) v(8,7) v(1,2)
.end
```

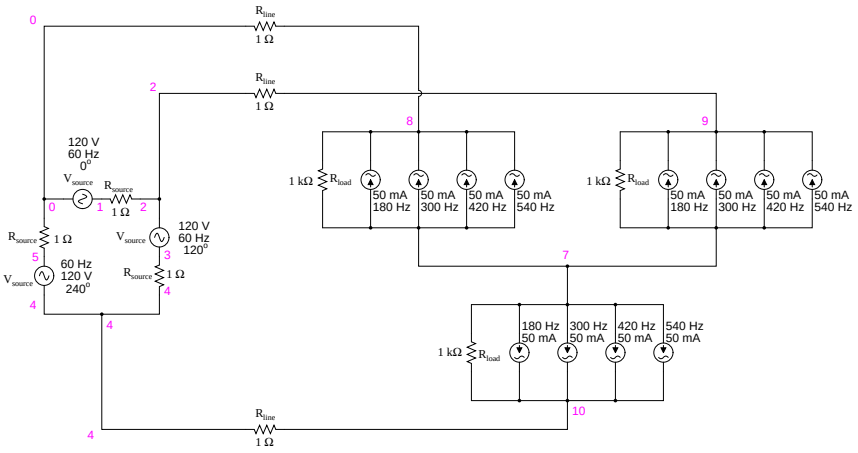


Figure 10.66: *Delta-Y source/load with harmonics*

period of 16.6667 milliseconds for a 60 Hz waveform. The 240^o source must be time-delayed twice that amount, equivalent to a fraction of 240/360 of 16.6667 milliseconds, or 11.1111 milliseconds. This is for the Δ-connected source. The Y-connected load, on the other hand, requires a different set of time-delay figures for its harmonic current sources, because the phase voltages in a Y load are not in phase with the phase voltages of a Δ source. If Δ source voltages V_{AC}, V_{BA}, and V_{CB} are referenced at 0^o, 120^o, and 240^o, respectively, then "Y" load voltages V_A, V_B, and V_C will have phase angles of -30^o, 90^o, and 210^o, respectively. This is an intrinsic property of all Δ-Y circuits and not a quirk of SPICE. Therefore, when I specified the delay times for the harmonic sources, I had to set them at 15.2777 milliseconds (-30^o, or +330^o), 4.16666 milliseconds (90^o), and 9.72222 milliseconds (210^o). One final note: when delaying AC sources in SPICE, they don't "turn on" until their delay time has elapsed, which means any mathematical analysis up to that point in time will be in error. Consequently, I set the `.tran` transient analysis line to hold off analysis until 16 milliseconds after start, which gives all sources in the netlist time to engage before any analysis takes place.

The result of this analysis is almost as disappointing as the last. (Figure 10.67) Line currents remain unchanged (the only substantial harmonic content being the 5th and 7th harmonics), and load phase voltages remain unchanged as well, with a full 50 volts of triplen harmonic (3rd and 9th) frequencies across each load component. Source phase current is a fraction of the line current, which should come as no surprise. Both 5th and 7th harmonics are represented there, with negligible triplen harmonics:

Fourier analysis of line current:

Fourier analysis of load phase voltage:

Fourier analysis of source phase current:

Really, the only advantage of the Δ-Y configuration from the standpoint of harmonics is that there is no longer a center-point at the load posing a shock hazard. Otherwise, the load components receive the same harmonically-rich voltages and the lines see the same currents as in a three-wire Y system.

```
Fourier components of transient response v(0,8)
dc component =  -6.850E-11
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E-01     1.000000   150.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   2.491E-11     0.000000   159.723       9.722
3      1.800E+02   1.506E-06     0.000013     0.005    -149.996
4      2.400E+02   2.033E-11     0.000000    52.772     -97.228
5      3.000E+02   4.994E-02     0.416682    30.002    -119.998
6      3.600E+02   1.234E-11     0.000000    57.802     -92.198
7      4.200E+02   4.993E-02     0.416644   -29.998    -179.998
8      4.800E+02   8.024E-11     0.000000  -174.200    -324.200
9      5.400E+02   4.518E-06     0.000038  -179.995    -329.995
total harmonic distortion =     58.925038  percent


Fourier components of transient response v(8,7)
dc component =   1.259E-08
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.198E+02     1.000000   150.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   1.941E-07     0.000000    49.693    -100.307
3      1.800E+02   5.000E+01     0.417222   -89.998    -239.998
4      2.400E+02   1.519E-07     0.000000    66.397     -83.603
5      3.000E+02   6.466E-02     0.000540  -151.112    -301.112
6      3.600E+02   2.433E-07     0.000000    68.162     -81.838
7      4.200E+02   6.931E-02     0.000578   148.548      -1.453
8      4.800E+02   2.398E-07     0.000000  -174.897    -324.897
9      5.400E+02   5.000E+01     0.417221    90.006     -59.995
total harmonic distortion =     59.004109  percent


Fourier components of transient response v(1,2)
dc component =   3.564E-11
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   6.906E-02     1.000000    -0.181       0.000
2      1.200E+02   1.525E-11     0.000000  -156.674    -156.493
3      1.800E+02   1.422E-06     0.000021  -179.996    -179.815
4      2.400E+02   2.949E-11     0.000000  -110.570    -110.390
5      3.000E+02   2.883E-02     0.417440  -179.996    -179.815
6      3.600E+02   2.324E-11     0.000000   -91.926     -91.745
7      4.200E+02   2.883E-02     0.417398  -179.994    -179.813
8      4.800E+02   4.140E-11     0.000000   -39.875     -39.694
9      5.400E+02   4.267E-06     0.000062     0.006       0.186
total harmonic distortion =     59.031969  percent
```

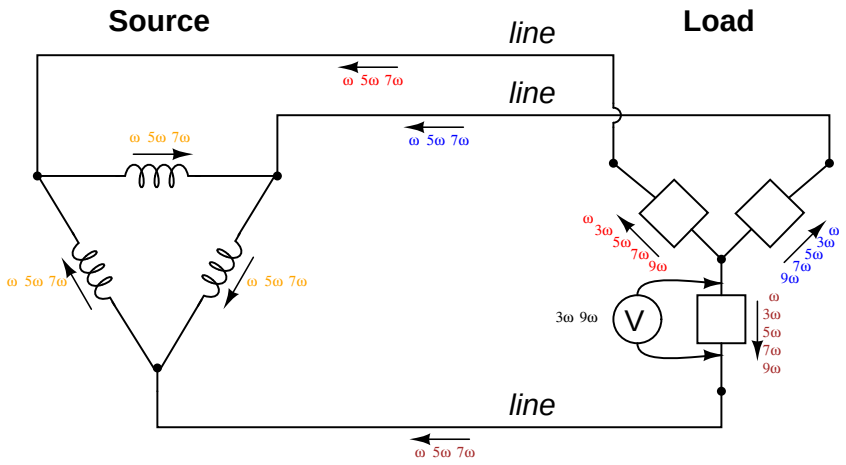


Figure 10.67: *"Δ-Y" source/load: Triplen voltages appear across load phases. Non-triplen currents appear in line conductors and in source phase windings.*

If we were to reconfigure the system into a Δ-Δ arrangement, (Figure 10.68) that should guarantee that each load component receives non-harmonic voltage, since each load phase would be directly connected in parallel with each source phase. The complete lack of any neutral wires or "center points" in a Δ-Δ system prevents strange voltages or additive currents from occurring. It would seem to be the ideal solution. Let's simulate and observe, analyzing line current, load phase voltage, and source phase current. See SPICE listing: "Delta-Delta source/load with harmonics", "Fourier analysis: Fourier components of transient response v(0,6)", and "Fourier components of transient response v(2,1)".

Fourier analysis of line current:

Fourier analysis of load phase voltage:

Fourier analysis of source phase current:

As predicted earlier, the load phase voltage is almost a pure sine-wave, with negligible harmonic content, thanks to the direct connection with the source phases in a Δ-Δ system. But what happened to the triplen harmonics? The 3rd and 9th harmonic frequencies don't appear in any substantial amount in the line current, nor in the load phase voltage, nor in the source phase current! We know that triplen currents exist, because the 3rd and 9th harmonic current sources are intentionally placed in the phases of the load, but where did those currents go?

Remember that the triplen harmonics of 120^o phase-shifted fundamental frequencies are in phase with each other. Note the directions that the arrows of the current sources within the load phases are pointing, and think about what would happen if the 3rd and 9th harmonic sources were DC sources instead. What we would have is current *circulating within the loop formed by the Δ-connected phases*. This is where the triplen harmonic currents have gone: they stay within the Δ of the load, never reaching the line conductors or the windings of the source. These results may be graphically summarized as such in Figure 10.69.

This is a major benefit of the Δ-Δ system configuration: triplen harmonic currents remain

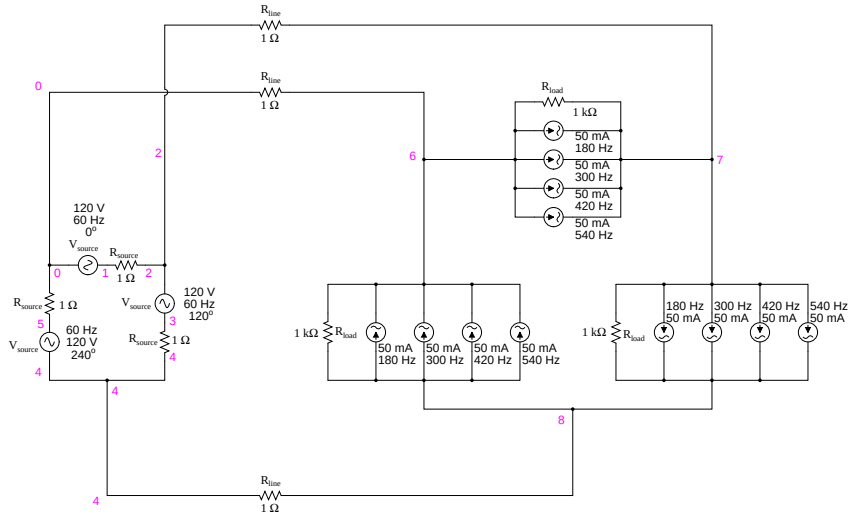


Figure 10.68: *Delta-Delta source/load with harmonics.*

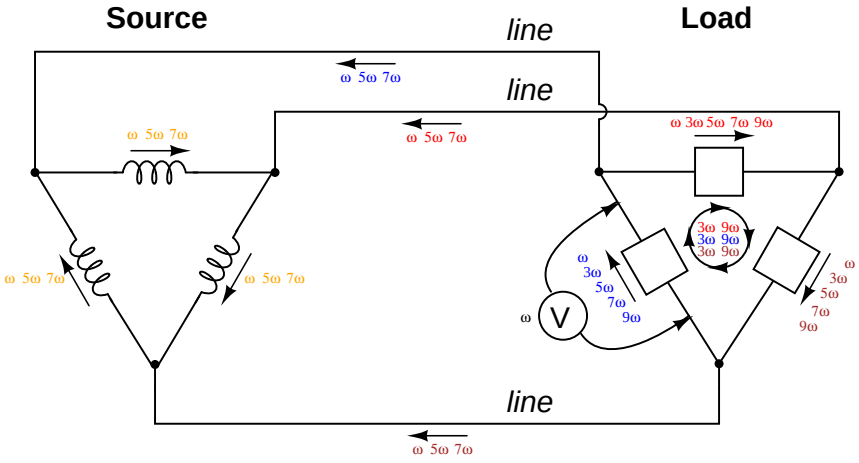


Figure 10.69: Δ-Δ *source/load: Load phases receive undistorted sinewave voltages. Triplen currents are confined to circulate within load phases. Non-triplen currents apprear in line conductors and in source phase windings.*

```
Delta-Delta source/load with harmonics
*
* phase1 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 0 deg)
vsource1 1 0 sin(0 120 60 0 0)
rsource1 1 2 1
*
* phase2 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 120 deg)
vsource2 3 2 sin(0 120 60 5.55555m 0)
rsource2 3 4 1
*
* phase3 voltage source and r (120 v /_ 240 deg)
vsource3 5 4 sin(0 120 60 11.1111m 0)
rsource3 5 0 1
*
* line resistances
rline1 0 6 1
rline2 2 7 1
rline3 4 8 1
*
* phase 1 of load
rload1 7 6 1k
i3har1 7 6 sin(0 50m 180 0 0)
i5har1 7 6 sin(0 50m 300 0 0)
i7har1 7 6 sin(0 50m 420 0 0)
i9har1 7 6 sin(0 50m 540 0 0)
*
* phase 2 of load
rload2 8 7 1k
i3har2 8 7 sin(0 50m 180 5.55555m 0)
i5har2 8 7 sin(0 50m 300 5.55555m 0)
i7har2 8 7 sin(0 50m 420 5.55555m 0)
i9har2 8 7 sin(0 50m 540 5.55555m 0)
*
* phase 3 of load
rload3 6 8 1k
i3har3 6 8 sin(0 50m 180 11.1111m 0)
i5har3 6 8 sin(0 50m 300 11.1111m 0)
i7har3 6 8 sin(0 50m 420 11.1111m 0)
i9har3 6 8 sin(0 50m 540 11.1111m 0)
*
* analysis stuff
.options itl5=0
.tran 0.5m 100m 16m 1u
.plot tran v(0,6) v(7,6) v(2,1) i(3har1)
.four 60 v(0,6) v(7,6) v(2,1)
.end
```

```
Fourier components of transient response v(0,6)
dc component =  -6.007E-11
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   2.070E-01     1.000000   150.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   5.480E-11     0.000000   156.666       6.666
3      1.800E+02   6.257E-07     0.000003    89.990     -60.010
4      2.400E+02   4.911E-11     0.000000     8.187    -141.813
5      3.000E+02   8.626E-02     0.416664  -149.999    -300.000
6      3.600E+02   1.089E-10     0.000000   -31.997    -181.997
7      4.200E+02   8.626E-02     0.416669   150.001       0.001
8      4.800E+02   1.578E-10     0.000000   -63.940    -213.940
9      5.400E+02   1.877E-06     0.000009    89.987     -60.013
total harmonic distortion =     58.925538  percent


Fourier components of transient response v(7,6)
dc component =  -5.680E-10
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.195E+02     1.000000     0.000       0.000
2      1.200E+02   1.039E-09     0.000000   144.749     144.749
3      1.800E+02   1.251E-06     0.000000    89.974      89.974
4      2.400E+02   4.215E-10     0.000000    36.127      36.127
5      3.000E+02   1.992E-01     0.001667  -180.000    -180.000
6      3.600E+02   2.499E-09     0.000000    -4.760      -4.760
7      4.200E+02   1.992E-01     0.001667  -180.000    -180.000
8      4.800E+02   2.951E-09     0.000000  -151.385    -151.385
9      5.400E+02   3.752E-06     0.000000    89.905      89.905
total harmonic distortion =      0.235702  percent


Fourier components of transient response v(2,1)
dc component =  -1.923E-12
harmonic  frequency  Fourier    normalized    phase    normalized
no         (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1      6.000E+01   1.194E-01     1.000000   179.940       0.000
2      1.200E+02   2.569E-11     0.000000   133.491     -46.449
3      1.800E+02   3.129E-07     0.000003    89.985     -89.955
4      2.400E+02   2.657E-11     0.000000    23.368    -156.571
5      3.000E+02   4.980E-02     0.416918  -180.000    -359.939
6      3.600E+02   4.595E-11     0.000000   -22.475    -202.415
7      4.200E+02   4.980E-02     0.416921  -180.000    -359.939
8      4.800E+02   7.385E-11     0.000000   -63.759    -243.699
9      5.400E+02   9.385E-07     0.000008    89.991     -89.949
total harmonic distortion =     58.961298  percent
```

confined in whatever set of components create them, and do not "spread" to other parts of the system.

- **REVIEW:**

- *Nonlinear* components are those that draw a non-sinusoidal (non-sine-wave) current waveform when energized by a sinusoidal (sine-wave) voltage. Since any distortion of an originally pure sine-wave constitutes harmonic frequencies, we can say that nonlinear components generate harmonic currents.

- When the sine-wave distortion is symmetrical above and below the average centerline of the waveform, the only harmonics present will be *odd-numbered*, not even-numbered.

- The 3rd harmonic, and integer multiples of it (6th, 9th, 12th, 15th) are known as *triplen* harmonics. They are in phase with each other, despite the fact that their respective fundamental waveforms are 120^o out of phase with each other.

- In a 4-wire Y-Y system, triplen harmonic currents add within the neutral conductor.

- Triplen harmonic currents in a Δ-connected set of components circulate within the loop formed by the Δ.

10.8 Harmonic phase sequences

In the last section, we saw how the 3rd harmonic and all of its integer multiples (collectively called *triplen* harmonics) generated by 120^o phase-shifted fundamental waveforms are actually in phase with each other. In a 60 Hz three-phase power system, where phases **A**, **B**, and **C** are 120^o apart, the third-harmonic multiples of those frequencies (180 Hz) fall perfectly into phase with each other. This can be thought of in graphical terms, (Figure 10.70) and/or in mathematical terms:

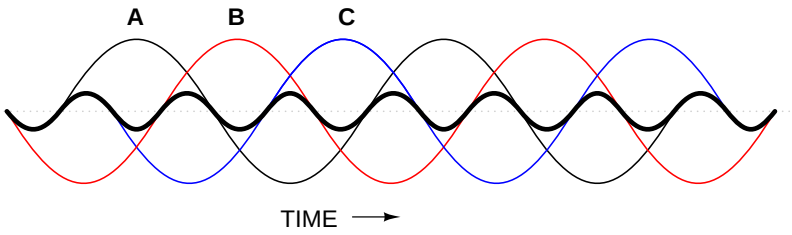


Figure 10.70: *Harmonic currents of Phases A, B, C all coincide, that is, no rotation.*

Phase sequence = ***A-B-C***

Fundamental	**A** 0^o	**B** 120^o	**C** 240^o
3rd harmonic	**A'** 3×0^o (0^o)	**B'** 3×120^o ($360^o = 0^o$)	**C'** 3×240^o ($720^o = 0^o$)

If we extend the mathematical table to include higher odd-numbered harmonics, we will notice an interesting pattern develop with regard to the rotation or sequence of the harmonic frequencies:

Fundamental	**A** 0^o	**B** 120^o	**C** 240^o	**A-B-C**
3rd harmonic	**A'** 3×0^o (0^o)	**B'** 3×120^o ($360^o = 0^o$)	**C'** 3×240^o ($720^o = 0^o$)	*no rotation*
5th harmonic	**A''** 5×0^o (0^o)	**B''** 5×120^o ($600^o = 720^o - 120^o$) (-120^o)	**C''** 5×240^o ($1200^o = 1440^o - 240^o$) (-240^o)	**C-B-A**
7th harmonic	**A'''** 7×0^o (0^o)	**B'''** 7×120^o ($840^o = 720^o + 120^o$) (120^o)	**C'''** 7×240^o ($1680^o = 1440^o + 240^o$) (240^o)	**A-B-C**
9th harmonic	**A''''** 9×0^o (0^o)	**B''''** 9×120^o ($1080^o = 0^o$)	**C''''** 9×240^o ($2160^o = 0^o$)	*no rotation*

Harmonics such as the 7th, which "rotate" with the same sequence as the fundamental, are called *positive sequence*. Harmonics such as the 5th, which "rotate" in the opposite sequence as the fundamental, are called *negative sequence*. Triplen harmonics (3rd and 9th shown in this table) which don't "rotate" at all because they're in phase with each other, are called *zero sequence*.

This pattern of positive-zero-negative-positive continues indefinitely for all odd-numbered harmonics, lending itself to expression in a table like this:

Rotation sequences according to harmonic number

+	1st	7th	13th	19th	← Rotates with fundamental
0	3rd	9th	15th	21st	← Does not rotate
-	5th	11th	17th	23rd	← Rotates against fundamental

Sequence especially matters when we're dealing with AC motors, since the mechanical rotation of the rotor depends on the torque produced by the sequential "rotation" of the applied 3-phase power. Positive-sequence frequencies work to push the rotor in the proper direction, whereas negative-sequence frequencies actually work *against* the direction of the rotor's rotation. Zero-sequence frequencies neither contribute to nor detract from the rotor's torque. An excess of negative-sequence harmonics (5th, 11th, 17th, and/or 23rd) in the power supplied to a three-phase AC motor will result in a degradation of performance and possible overheating. Since the higher-order harmonics tend to be attenuated more by system inductances and magnetic core losses, and generally originate with less amplitude anyway, the primary harmonic of concern is the 5th, which is 300 Hz in 60 Hz power systems and 250 Hz in 50 Hz power systems.

10.9 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Ed Beroset (May 6, 2002): Suggested better ways to illustrate the meaning of the prefix "poly-".

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 11

POWER FACTOR

Contents

11.1 Power in resistive and reactive AC circuits

Consider a circuit for a single-phase AC power system, where a 120 volt, 60 Hz AC voltage source is delivering power to a resistive load: (Figure 11.1)

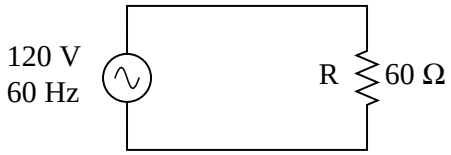


Figure 11.1: *Ac source drives a purely resistive load.*

$Z_R = 60 + j0\ \Omega \quad or \quad 60\ \Omega \angle 0^o$

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

$$I = \frac{120\ V}{60\ \Omega}$$

$I = 2\ A$

In this example, the current to the load would be 2 amps, RMS. The power dissipated at the load would be 240 watts. Because this load is purely resistive (no reactance), the current is in phase with the voltage, and calculations look similar to that in an equivalent DC circuit. If we were to plot the voltage, current, and power waveforms for this circuit, it would look like Figure 11.2.

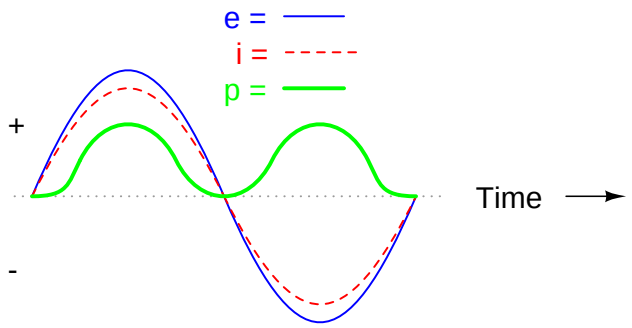


Figure 11.2: *Current is in phase with voltage in a resistive circuit.*

Note that the waveform for power is always positive, never negative for this resistive circuit. This means that power is always being dissipated by the resistive load, and never returned to the source as it is with reactive loads. If the source were a mechanical generator, it would take 240 watts worth of mechanical energy (about 1/3 horsepower) to turn the shaft.

Also note that the waveform for power is not at the same frequency as the voltage or current! Rather, its frequency is *double* that of either the voltage or current waveforms. This different frequency prohibits our expression of power in an AC circuit using the same complex (rectangular or polar) notation as used for voltage, current, and impedance, because this form of mathematical symbolism implies unchanging phase relationships. When frequencies are not the same, phase relationships constantly change.

As strange as it may seem, the best way to proceed with AC power calculations is to use *scalar* notation, and to handle any relevant phase relationships with trigonometry.

For comparison, let's consider a simple AC circuit with a purely reactive load in Figure 11.3.

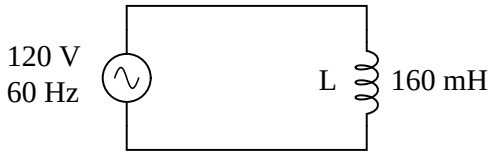


Figure 11.3: *AC circuit with a purely reactive (inductive) load.*

$X_L = 60.319\ \Omega$

$Z_L = 0 + j60.319\ \Omega \quad or \quad 60.319\ \Omega \angle 90^o$

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

$$I = \frac{120\ V}{60.319\ \Omega}$$

$I = 1.989$ A

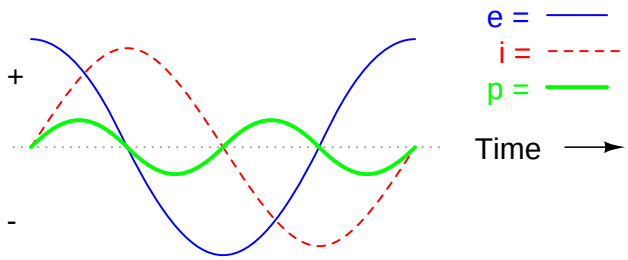


Figure 11.4: *Power is not dissipated in a purely reactive load. Though it is alternately absorbed from and returned to the source.*

Note that the power alternates equally between cycles of positive and negative. (Figure 11.4) This means that power is being alternately absorbed from and returned to the source. If the source were a mechanical generator, it would take (practically) no net mechanical energy to turn the shaft, because no power would be used by the load. The generator shaft would be easy to spin, and the inductor would not become warm as a resistor would.

Now, let's consider an AC circuit with a load consisting of both inductance and resistance in Figure 11.5.

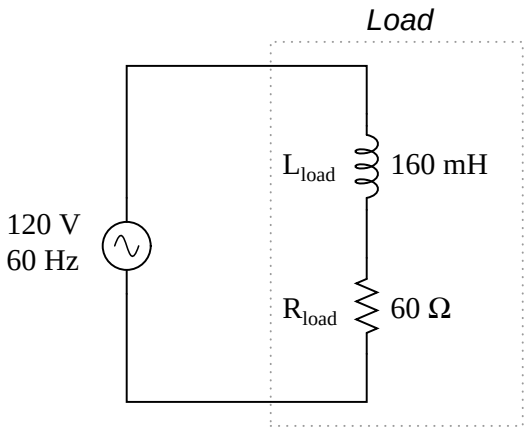


Figure 11.5: *AC circuit with both reactance and resistance.*

$X_L = 60.319\ \Omega$

$Z_L = 0 + j60.319\ \Omega \quad or \quad 60.319\ \Omega \angle 90^o$

$Z_R = 60 + j0\ \Omega \quad or \quad 60\ \Omega \angle 0^o$

$Z_{total} = 60 + j60.319\ \Omega \quad or \quad 85.078\ \Omega \angle 45.152^o$

$$I = \frac{E}{Z}$$

$$I = \frac{120\ V}{85.078\ \Omega}$$

$I = 1.410$ A

At a frequency of 60 Hz, the 160 millihenrys of inductance gives us 60.319 Ω of inductive reactance. This reactance combines with the 60 Ω of resistance to form a total load impedance of 60 + j60.319 Ω, or 85.078 Ω ∠ 45.152^o. If we're not concerned with phase angles (which we're not at this point), we may calculate current in the circuit by taking the polar magnitude of the voltage source (120 volts) and dividing it by the polar magnitude of the impedance (85.078 Ω). With a power supply voltage of 120 volts RMS, our load current is 1.410 amps. This is the figure an RMS ammeter would indicate if connected in series with the resistor and inductor.

We already know that reactive components dissipate zero power, as they equally absorb power from, and return power to, the rest of the circuit. Therefore, any inductive reactance in this load will likewise dissipate zero power. The only thing left to dissipate power here is the

resistive portion of the load impedance. If we look at the waveform plot of voltage, current, and total power for this circuit, we see how this combination works in Figure 11.6.

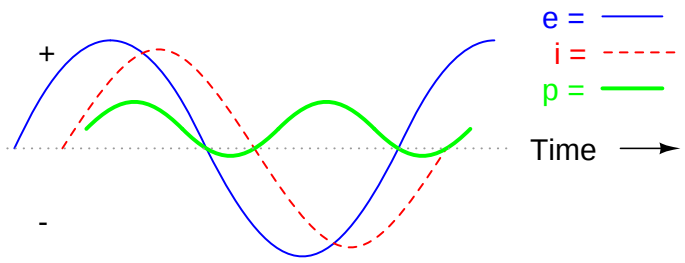


Figure 11.6: *A combined resistive/reactive circuit dissipates more power than it returns to the source. The reactance dissipates no power; though, the resistor does.*

As with any reactive circuit, the power alternates between positive and negative instantaneous values over time. In a purely reactive circuit that alternation between positive and negative power is equally divided, resulting in a net power dissipation of zero. However, in circuits with mixed resistance and reactance like this one, the power waveform will still alternate between positive and negative, but the amount of positive power will exceed the amount of negative power. In other words, the combined inductive/resistive load will consume more power than it returns back to the source.

Looking at the waveform plot for power, it should be evident that the wave spends more time on the positive side of the center line than on the negative, indicating that there is more power absorbed by the load than there is returned to the circuit. What little returning of power that occurs is due to the reactance; the imbalance of positive versus negative power is due to the resistance as it dissipates energy outside of the circuit (usually in the form of heat). If the source were a mechanical generator, the amount of mechanical energy needed to turn the shaft would be the amount of power averaged between the positive and negative power cycles.

Mathematically representing power in an AC circuit is a challenge, because the power wave isn't at the same frequency as voltage or current. Furthermore, the phase angle for power means something quite different from the phase angle for either voltage or current. Whereas the angle for voltage or current represents a relative *shift in timing* between two waves, the phase angle for power represents a *ratio* between power dissipated and power returned. Because of this way in which AC power differs from AC voltage or current, it is actually easier to arrive at figures for power by calculating with *scalar* quantities of voltage, current, resistance, and reactance than it is to try to derive it from *vector*, or *complex* quantities of voltage, current, and impedance that we've worked with so far.

- **REVIEW:**
- In a purely resistive circuit, all circuit power is dissipated by the resistor(s). Voltage and current are in phase with each other.
- In a purely reactive circuit, no circuit power is dissipated by the load(s). Rather, power is alternately absorbed from and returned to the AC source. Voltage and current are 90^{o} out of phase with each other.

- In a circuit consisting of resistance and reactance mixed, there will be more power dissipated by the load(s) than returned, but some power will definitely be dissipated and some will merely be absorbed and returned. Voltage and current in such a circuit will be out of phase by a value somewhere between 0^o and 90^o.

11.2 True, Reactive, and Apparent power

We know that reactive loads such as inductors and capacitors dissipate zero power, yet the fact that they drop voltage and draw current gives the deceptive impression that they actually *do* dissipate power. This "phantom power" is called *reactive power*, and it is measured in a unit called *Volt-Amps-Reactive* (VAR), rather than watts. The mathematical symbol for reactive power is (unfortunately) the capital letter Q. The actual amount of power being used, or dissipated, in a circuit is called *true power*, and it is measured in watts (symbolized by the capital letter P, as always). The combination of reactive power and true power is called *apparent power*, and it is the product of a circuit's voltage and current, without reference to phase angle. Apparent power is measured in the unit of *Volt-Amps* (VA) and is symbolized by the capital letter S.

As a rule, true power is a function of a circuit's dissipative elements, usually resistances (R). Reactive power is a function of a circuit's reactance (X). Apparent power is a function of a circuit's total impedance (Z). Since we're dealing with scalar quantities for power calculation, any complex starting quantities such as voltage, current, and impedance must be represented by their *polar magnitudes*, not by real or imaginary rectangular components. For instance, if I'm calculating true power from current and resistance, I must use the polar magnitude for current, and not merely the "real" or "imaginary" portion of the current. If I'm calculating apparent power from voltage and impedance, both of these formerly complex quantities must be reduced to their polar magnitudes for the scalar arithmetic.

There are several power equations relating the three types of power to resistance, reactance, and impedance (all using scalar quantities):

P = true power $P = I^2R$ $P = \frac{E^2}{R}$

Measured in units of ***Watts***

Q = reactive power $Q = I^2X$ $Q = \frac{E^2}{X}$

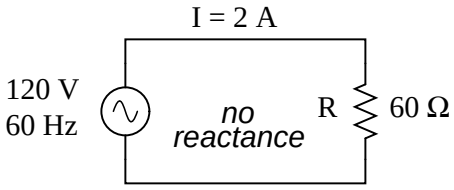
Measured in units of ***Volt-Amps-Reactive (VAR)***

S = apparent power $S = I^2Z$ $S = \frac{E^2}{Z}$ $S = IE$

Measured in units of ***Volt-Amps (VA)***

Please note that there are two equations each for the calculation of true and reactive power. There are three equations available for the calculation of apparent power, P=IE being useful *only* for that purpose. Examine the following circuits and see how these three types of power interrelate for: a purely resistive load in Figure 11.7, a purely reactive load in Figure 11.8, and a resistive/reactive load in Figure 11.9.

Resistive load only:



P = true power = I^2R = 240 W

Q = reactive power = I^2X = 0 VAR

S = apparent power = I^2Z = 240 VA

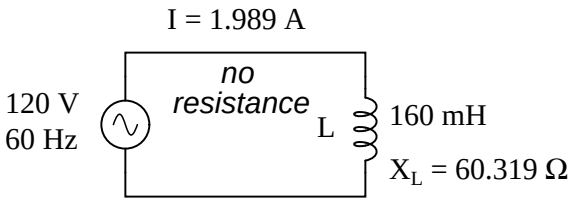
Figure 11.7: *True power, reactive power, and apparent power for a purely resistive load.*

Reactive load only:

Resistive/reactive load:

These three types of power – true, reactive, and apparent – relate to one another in trigonometric form. We call this the *power triangle*: (Figure 11.10).

Using the laws of trigonometry, we can solve for the length of any side (amount of any type of power), given the lengths of the other two sides, or the length of one side and an angle.

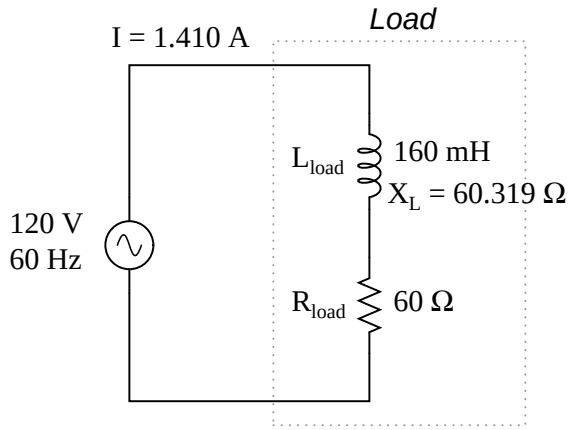


P = true power = I^2R = 0 W

Q = reactive power = I^2X = 238.73 VAR

S = apparent power = I^2Z = 238.73 VA

Figure 11.8: *True power, reactive power, and apparent power for a purely reactive load.*



P = true power = I^2R = 119.365 W

Q = reactive power = I^2X = 119.998 VAR

S = apparent power = I^2Z = 169.256 VA

Figure 11.9: *True power, reactive power, and apparent power for a resistive/reactive load.*

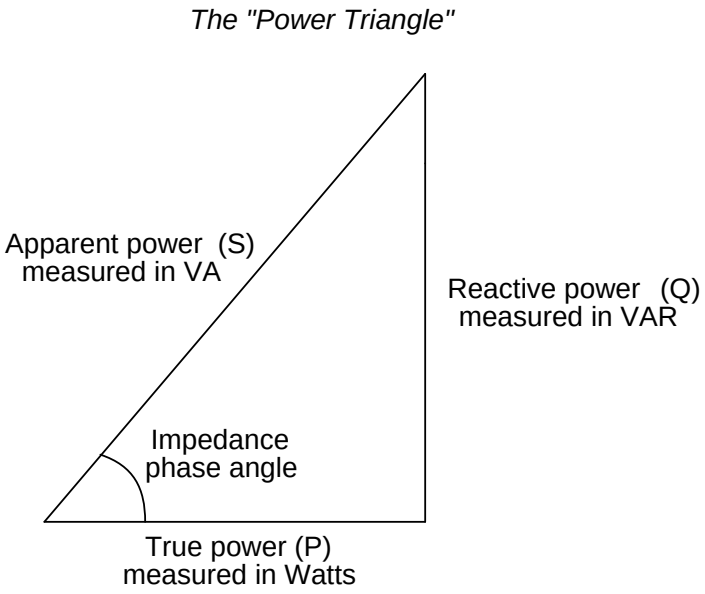


Figure 11.10: *Power triangle relating appearant power to true power and reactive power.*

- **REVIEW:**
- Power dissipated by a load is referred to as *true power*. True power is symbolized by the letter P and is measured in the unit of Watts (W).
- Power merely absorbed and returned in load due to its reactive properties is referred to as *reactive power*. Reactive power is symbolized by the letter Q and is measured in the unit of Volt-Amps-Reactive (VAR).
- Total power in an AC circuit, both dissipated and absorbed/returned is referred to as *apparent power*. Apparent power is symbolized by the letter S and is measured in the unit of Volt-Amps (VA).
- These three types of power are trigonometrically related to one another. In a right triangle, P = adjacent length, Q = opposite length, and S = hypotenuse length. The opposite angle is equal to the circuit's impedance (Z) phase angle.

11.3 Calculating power factor

As was mentioned before, the angle of this "power triangle" graphically indicates the ratio between the amount of dissipated (or *consumed*) power and the amount of absorbed/returned power. It also happens to be the same angle as that of the circuit's impedance in polar form. When expressed as a fraction, this ratio between true power and apparent power is called the *power factor* for this circuit. Because true power and apparent power form the adjacent and

hypotenuse sides of a right triangle, respectively, the power factor ratio is also equal to the cosine of that phase angle. Using values from the last example circuit:

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{\text{True power}}{\text{Apparent power}}$$

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{119.365 \text{ W}}{169.256 \text{ VA}}$$

$$\text{Power factor} = 0.705$$

$$\cos 45.152^{o} = 0.705$$

It should be noted that power factor, like all ratio measurements, is a *unitless* quantity.

For the purely resistive circuit, the power factor is 1 (perfect), because the reactive power equals zero. Here, the power triangle would look like a horizontal line, because the opposite (reactive power) side would have zero length.

For the purely inductive circuit, the power factor is zero, because true power equals zero. Here, the power triangle would look like a vertical line, because the adjacent (true power) side would have zero length.

The same could be said for a purely capacitive circuit. If there are no dissipative (resistive) components in the circuit, then the true power must be equal to zero, making any power in the circuit purely reactive. The power triangle for a purely capacitive circuit would again be a vertical line (pointing down instead of up as it was for the purely inductive circuit).

Power factor can be an important aspect to consider in an AC circuit, because any power factor less than 1 means that the circuit's wiring has to carry more current than what would be necessary with zero reactance in the circuit to deliver the same amount of (true) power to the resistive load. If our last example circuit had been purely resistive, we would have been able to deliver a full 169.256 watts to the load with the same 1.410 amps of current, rather than the mere 119.365 watts that it is presently dissipating with that same current quantity. The poor power factor makes for an inefficient power delivery system.

Poor power factor can be corrected, paradoxically, by adding another load to the circuit drawing an equal and opposite amount of reactive power, to cancel out the effects of the load's inductive reactance. Inductive reactance can only be canceled by capacitive reactance, so we have to add a *capacitor* in parallel to our example circuit as the additional load. The effect of these two opposing reactances in parallel is to bring the circuit's total impedance equal to its total resistance (to make the impedance phase angle equal, or at least closer, to zero).

Since we know that the (uncorrected) reactive power is 119.998 VAR (inductive), we need to calculate the correct capacitor size to produce the same quantity of (capacitive) reactive power. Since this capacitor will be directly in parallel with the source (of known voltage), we'll use the power formula which starts from voltage and reactance:

$$Q = \frac{E^2}{X}$$

. . . solving for X . . .

$$X = \frac{E^2}{Q}$$

$$X = \frac{(120\ \text{V})^2}{119.998\ \text{VAR}}$$

$$X = 120.002\ \Omega$$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

. . . solving for C . . .

$$C = \frac{1}{2\pi f X_C}$$

$$C = \frac{1}{2\pi(60\ \text{Hz})(120.002\ \Omega)}$$

$$C = 22.105\ \mu\text{F}$$

Let's use a rounded capacitor value of 22 μF and see what happens to our circuit: (Figure 11.11)

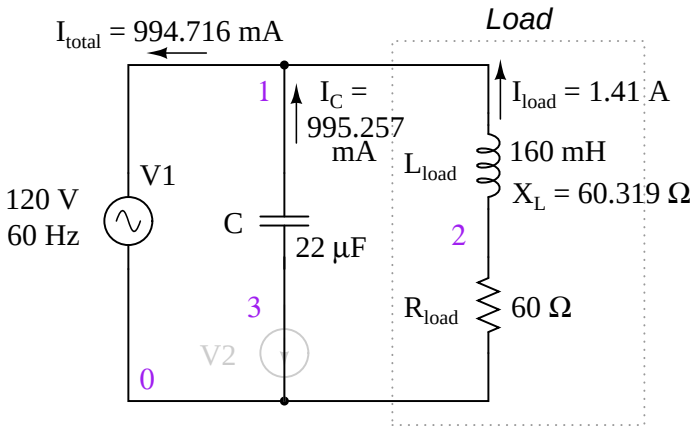


Figure 11.11: *Parallel capacitor corrects lagging power factor of inductive load. V2 and node numbers: 0, 1, 2, and 3 are SPICE related, and may be ignored for the moment.*

$Z_{total} = Z_C \,//\, (Z_L$ -- $Z_R)$

$Z_{total} = (120.57\ \Omega \angle -90^o) \,//\, (60.319\ \Omega \angle 90^o$ -- $60\ \Omega \angle 0^o)$

$Z_{total} = 120.64 - j573.58m\ \Omega$ *or* $120.64\ \Omega \angle 0.2724^o$

P = true power = $I^2R = 119.365$ W

S = apparent power = $I^2Z = 119.366$ VA

The power factor for the circuit, overall, has been substantially improved. The main current has been decreased from 1.41 amps to 994.7 milliamps, while the power dissipated at the load resistor remains unchanged at 119.365 watts. The power factor is much closer to being 1:

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{\text{True power}}{\text{Apparent power}}$$

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{119.365\ \text{W}}{119.366\ \text{VA}}$$

Power factor = 0.9999887

Impedance (polar) angle = 0.272^o

$\cos 0.272^o = 0.9999887$

Since the impedance angle is still a positive number, we know that the circuit, overall, is still more inductive than it is capacitive. If our power factor correction efforts had been perfectly on-target, we would have arrived at an impedance angle of exactly zero, or purely resistive. If we had added too large of a capacitor in parallel, we would have ended up with an impedance angle that was negative, indicating that the circuit was more capacitive than inductive.

A SPICE simulation of the circuit of (Figure 11.11) shows total voltage and total current are nearly in phase. The SPICE circuit file has a zero volt voltage-source (V2) in series with the capacitor so that the capacitor current may be measured. The start time of 200 msec (instead of 0) in the transient analysis statement allows the DC conditions to stabilize before collecting data. See SPICE listing “pf.cir power factor”.

The Nutmeg plot of the various currents with respect to the applied voltage V_{total} is shown in (Figure 11.12). The reference is V_{total}, to which all other measurements are compared. This is because the applied voltage, V_{total}, appears across the parallel branches of the circuit. There is no single current common to all components. We can compare those currents to V_{total}.

Note that the total current (I_{total}) is in phase with the applied voltage (V_{total}), indicating a phase angle of near zero. This is no coincidence. Note that the lagging current, I_L of the inductor would have caused the total current to have a lagging phase somewhere between (I_{total})

```
pf.cir power factor
V1 1 0 sin(0 170 60)
C1 1 3 22uF
v2 3 0 0
L1 1 2 160mH
R1 2 0 60
# resolution stop start
.tran 1m     200m 160m
.end
```

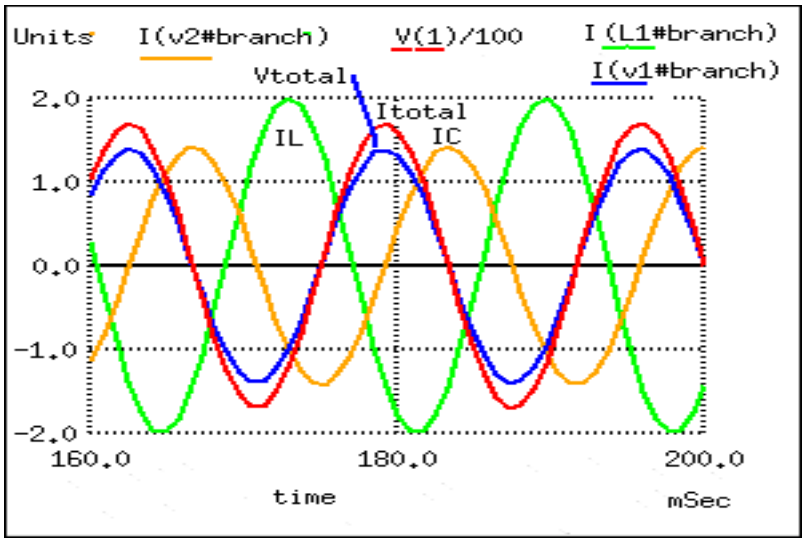


Figure 11.12: *Zero phase angle due to in-phase V_{total} and I_{total} . The lagging I_L with respect to V_{total} is corrected by a leading I_C .*

and I_L. However, the leading capacitor current, I_C, compensates for the lagging inductor current. The result is a total current phase-angle somewhere between the inductor and capacitor currents. Moreover, that total current (I_{total}) was forced to be in-phase with the total applied voltage (V_{total}), by the calculation of an appropriate capacitor value.

Since the total voltage and current are in phase, the product of these two waveforms, power, will always be positive throughout a 60 Hz cycle, real power as in Figure 11.2. Had the phase-angle not been corrected to zero (PF=1), the product would have been negative where positive portions of one waveform overlapped negative portions of the other as in Figure 11.6. Negative power is fed back to the generator. It cannont be sold; though, it does waste power in the resistance of electric lines between load and generator. The parallel capacitor corrects this problem.

Note that reduction of line losses applies to the lines from the generator to the point where the power factor correction capacitor is applied. In other words, there is still circulating current between the capacitor and the inductive load. This is not normally a problem because the power factor correction is applied close to the offending load, like an induction motor.

It should be noted that too much capacitance in an AC circuit will result in a low power factor just as well as too much inductance. You must be careful not to over-correct when adding capacitance to an AC circuit. You must also be *very* careful to use the proper capacitors for the job (rated adequately for power system voltages and the occasional voltage spike from lightning strikes, for continuous AC service, and capable of handling the expected levels of current).

If a circuit is predominantly inductive, we say that its power factor is *lagging* (because the current wave for the circuit lags behind the applied voltage wave). Conversely, if a circuit is predominantly capacitive, we say that its power factor is *leading*. Thus, our example circuit started out with a power factor of 0.705 lagging, and was corrected to a power factor of 0.999 lagging.

- **REVIEW:**

- Poor power factor in an AC circuit may be "corrected", or re-established at a value close to 1, by adding a parallel reactance opposite the effect of the load's reactance. If the load's reactance is inductive in nature (which is almost always will be), parallel *capacitance* is what is needed to correct poor power factor.

11.4 Practical power factor correction

When the need arises to correct for poor power factor in an AC power system, you probably won't have the luxury of knowing the load's exact inductance in henrys to use for your calculations. You may be fortunate enough to have an instrument called a *power factor meter* to tell you what the power factor is (a number between 0 and 1), and the apparent power (which can be figured by taking a voltmeter reading in volts and multiplying by an ammeter reading in amps). In less favorable circumstances you may have to use an oscilloscope to compare voltage and current waveforms, measuring phase shift in *degrees* and calculating power factor by the cosine of that phase shift.

Most likely, you will have access to a wattmeter for measuring true power, whose reading you can compare against a calculation of apparent power (from multiplying total voltage and

total current measurements). From the values of true and apparent power, you can determine reactive power and power factor. Let's do an example problem to see how this works: (Figure 11.13)

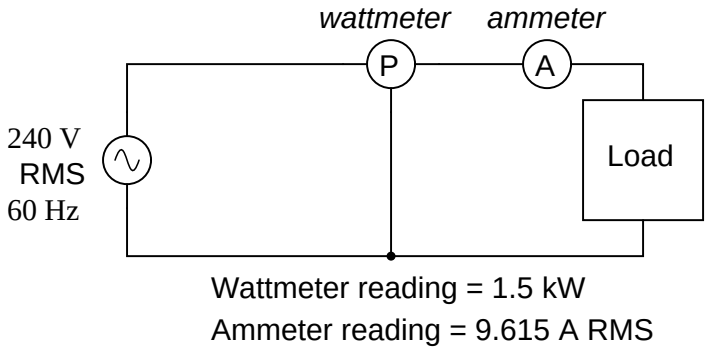


Figure 11.13: *Wattmeter reads true power; product of voltmeter and ammeter readings yields appearant power.*

First, we need to calculate the apparent power in kVA. We can do this by multiplying load voltage by load current:

$$S = IE$$

$$S = (9.615 \text{ A})(240 \text{ V})$$

$$S = 2.308 \text{ kVA}$$

As we can see, 2.308 kVA is a much larger figure than 1.5 kW, which tells us that the power factor in this circuit is rather poor (substantially less than 1). Now, we figure the power factor of this load by dividing the true power by the apparent power:

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{P}{S}$$

$$\text{Power factor} = \frac{1.5 \text{ kW}}{2.308 \text{ kVA}}$$

$$\text{Power factor} = 0.65$$

Using this value for power factor, we can draw a power triangle, and from that determine the reactive power of this load: (Figure 11.14)

To determine the unknown (reactive power) triangle quantity, we use the Pythagorean Theorem "backwards," given the length of the hypotenuse (apparent power) and the length of the adjacent side (true power):

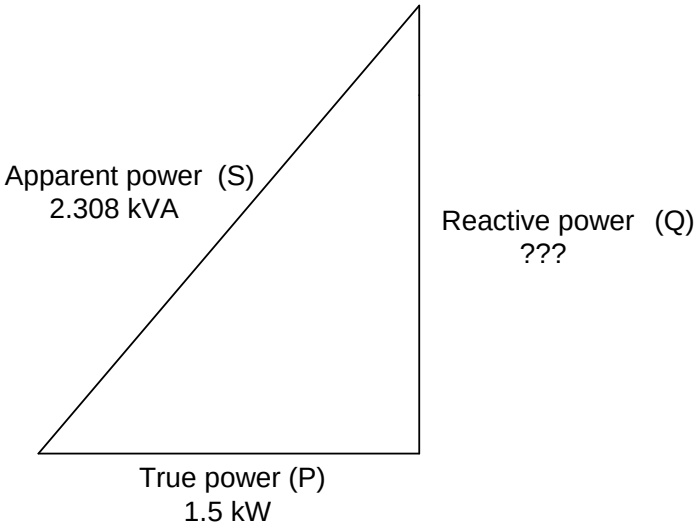


Figure 11.14: *Reactive power may be calculated from true power and appearant power.*

$$\text{Reactive power} = \sqrt{(\text{Apparent power})^2 - (\text{True power})^2}$$

$$Q = 1.754 \text{ kVAR}$$

If this load is an electric motor, or most any other industrial AC load, it will have a lagging (inductive) power factor, which means that we'll have to correct for it with a *capacitor* of appropriate size, wired in parallel. Now that we know the amount of reactive power (1.754 kVAR), we can calculate the size of capacitor needed to counteract its effects:

$$Q = \frac{E^2}{X}$$

. . . solving for X . . .

$$X = \frac{E^2}{Q}$$

$$X = \frac{(240)^2}{1.754 \text{ kVAR}}$$

$$X = 32.845\ \Omega$$

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

. . . solving for C . . .

$$C = \frac{1}{2\pi f X_C}$$

$$C = \frac{1}{2\pi(60 \text{ Hz})(32.845\ \Omega)}$$

$$C = 80.761\ \mu\text{F}$$

Rounding this answer off to 80 μF, we can place that size of capacitor in the circuit and calculate the results: (Figure 11.15)

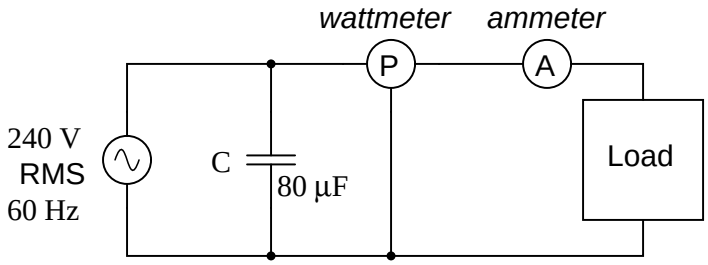


Figure 11.15: *Parallel capacitor corrects lagging (inductive) load.*

An 80 μF capacitor will have a capacitive reactance of 33.157 Ω, giving a current of 7.238 amps, and a corresponding reactive power of 1.737 kVAR (for the capacitor *only*). Since the capacitor's current is 180^o out of phase from the the load's inductive contribution to current draw, the capacitor's reactive power will directly subtract from the load's reactive power, resulting in:

Inductive kVAR - Capacitive kVAR = Total kVAR

1.754 kVAR - 1.737 kVAR = 16.519 VAR

This correction, of course, will not change the amount of true power consumed by the load, but it will result in a substantial reduction of apparent power, and of the total current drawn from the 240 Volt source: (Figure 11.16)

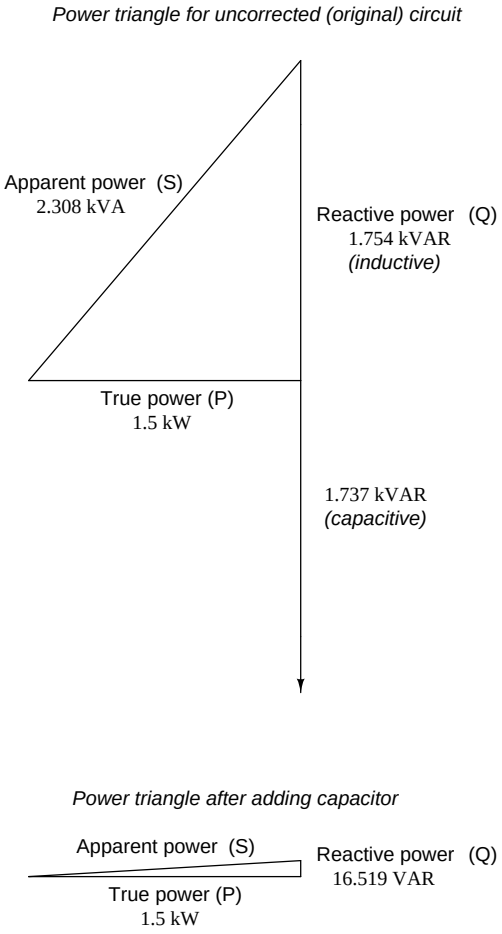


Figure 11.16: *Power triangle before and after capacitor correction.*

The new apparent power can be found from the true and new reactive power values, using the standard form of the Pythagorean Theorem:

$$\text{Apparent power} = \sqrt{(\text{Reactive power})^2 + (\text{True power})^2}$$

$$\text{Apparent power} = 1.50009 \text{ kVA}$$

This gives a corrected power factor of (1.5kW / 1.5009 kVA), or 0.99994, and a new total current of (1.50009 kVA / 240 Volts), or 6.25 amps, a substantial improvement over the uncorrected value of 9.615 amps! This lower total current will translate to less heat losses in the circuit wiring, meaning greater system efficiency (less power wasted).

11.5 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Chapter 12

AC METERING CIRCUITS

Contents

12.1 AC voltmeters and ammeters

AC electromechanical meter movements come in two basic arrangements: those based on DC movement designs, and those engineered specifically for AC use. Permanent-magnet moving coil (PMMC) meter movements will not work correctly if directly connected to alternating current, because the direction of needle movement will change with each half-cycle of the AC. (Figure 12.1) Permanent-magnet meter movements, like permanent-magnet motors, are devices whose motion depends on the polarity of the applied voltage (or, you can think of it in terms of the direction of the current).

In order to use a DC-style meter movement such as the D'Arsonval design, the alternating current must be *rectified* into DC. This is most easily accomplished through the use of devices called *diodes*. We saw diodes used in an example circuit demonstrating the creation of harmonic frequencies from a distorted (or rectified) sine wave. Without going into elaborate detail over how and why diodes work as they do, just remember that they each act like a one-way valve for electrons to flow: acting as a conductor for one polarity and an insulator for another. Oddly enough, the arrowhead in each diode symbol points *against* the permitted direction of electron flow rather than with it as one might expect. Arranged in a bridge, four diodes will

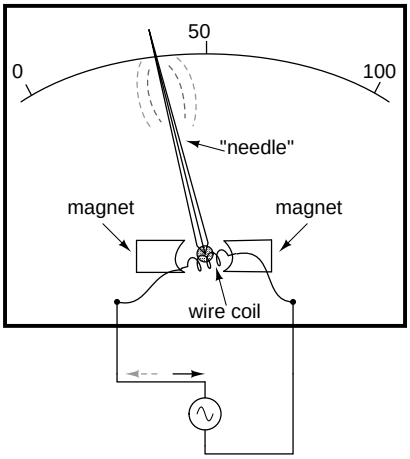


Figure 12.1: *Passing AC through this D'Arsonval meter movement causes useless flutter of the needle.*

serve to steer AC through the meter movement in a constant direction throughout all portions of the AC cycle: (Figure 12.2)

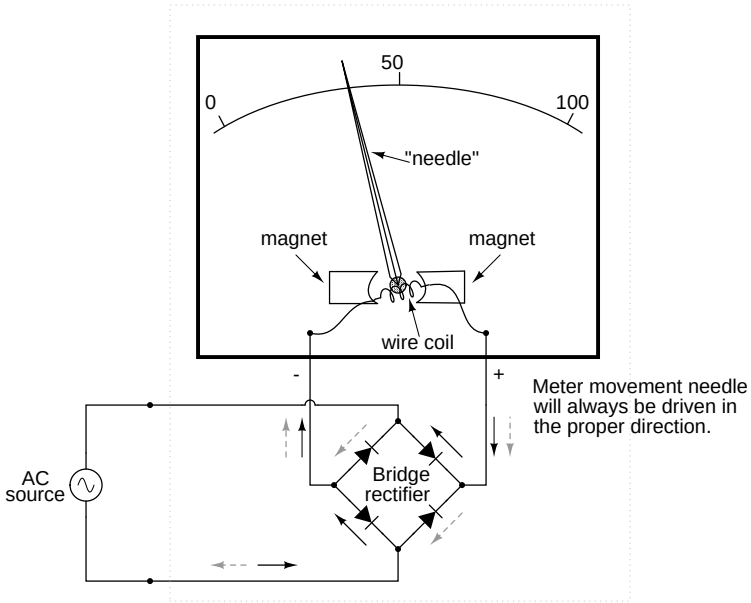


Figure 12.2: *Passing AC through this Rectified AC meter movement will drive it in one direction.*

Another strategy for a practical AC meter movement is to redesign the movement without the inherent polarity sensitivity of the DC types. This means avoiding the use of permanent magnets. Probably the simplest design is to use a nonmagnetized iron vane to move the needle against spring tension, the vane being attracted toward a stationary coil of wire energized by the AC quantity to be measured as in Figure 12.3.

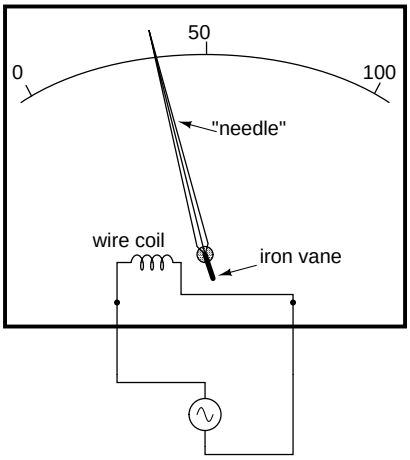


Figure 12.3: *Iron-vane electromechanical meter movement.*

Electrostatic attraction between two metal plates separated by an air gap is an alternative mechanism for generating a needle-moving force proportional to applied voltage. This works just as well for AC as it does for DC, or should I say, just as poorly! The forces involved are very small, much smaller than the magnetic attraction between an energized coil and an iron vane, and as such these "electrostatic" meter movements tend to be fragile and easily disturbed by physical movement. But, for some high-voltage AC applications, the electrostatic movement is an elegant technology. If nothing else, this technology possesses the advantage of extremely high input impedance, meaning that no current need be drawn from the circuit under test. Also, electrostatic meter movements are capable of measuring very high voltages without need for range resistors or other, external apparatus.

When a sensitive meter movement needs to be re-ranged to function as an AC voltmeter, series-connected "multiplier" resistors and/or resistive voltage dividers may be employed just as in DC meter design: (Figure 12.4)

Capacitors may be used instead of resistors, though, to make voltmeter divider circuits. This strategy has the advantage of being non-dissipative (no true power consumed and no heat produced): (Figure 12.5)

If the meter movement is electrostatic, and thus inherently capacitive in nature, a single "multiplier" capacitor may be connected in series to give it a greater voltage measuring range, just as a series-connected multiplier resistor gives a moving-coil (inherently resistive) meter movement a greater voltage range: (Figure 12.6)

The Cathode Ray Tube (CRT) mentioned in the DC metering chapter is ideally suited for measuring AC voltages, especially if the electron beam is swept side-to-side across the screen

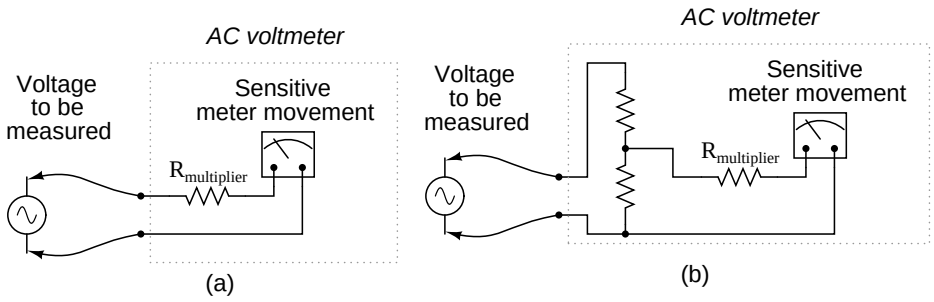


Figure 12.4: *Multiplier resistor (a) or resistive divider (b) scales the range of the basic meter movement.*

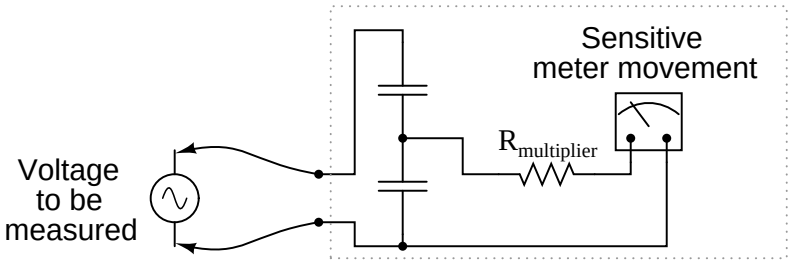


Figure 12.5: *AC voltmeter with capacitive divider.*

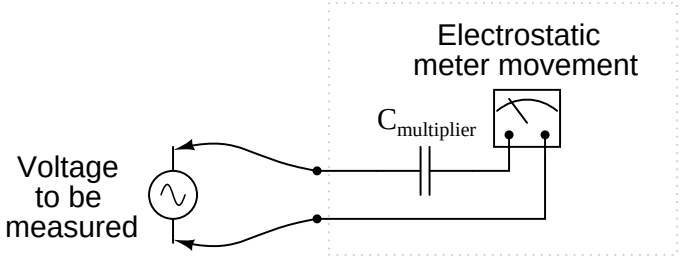


Figure 12.6: *An electrostatic meter movement may use a capacitive multiplier to multiply the scale of the basic meter movement..*

of the tube while the measured AC voltage drives the beam up and down. A graphical representation of the AC wave shape and not just a measurement of magnitude can easily be had with such a device. However, CRT's have the disadvantages of weight, size, significant power consumption, and fragility (being made of evacuated glass) working against them. For these reasons, electromechanical AC meter movements still have a place in practical usage.

With some of the advantages and disadvantages of these meter movement technologies having been discussed already, there is another factor crucially important for the designer and user of AC metering instruments to be aware of. This is the issue of RMS measurement. As we already know, AC measurements are often cast in a scale of DC power equivalence, called *RMS* (**R**oot-**M**ean-**S**quare) for the sake of meaningful comparisons with DC and with other AC waveforms of varying shape. None of the meter movement technologies so far discussed inherently measure the RMS value of an AC quantity. Meter movements relying on the motion of a mechanical needle ("rectified" D'Arsonval, iron-vane, and electrostatic) all tend to mechanically average the instantaneous values into an overall average value for the waveform. This average value is not necessarily the same as RMS, although many times it is mistaken as such. Average and RMS values rate against each other as such for these three common waveform shapes: (Figure 12.7)

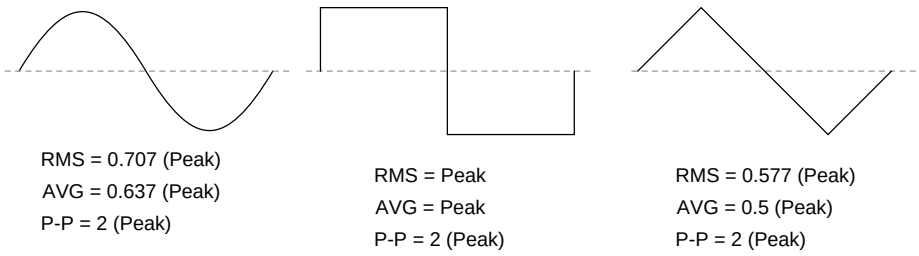


Figure 12.7: *RMS, Average, and Peak-to-Peak values for sine, square, and triangle waves.*

Since RMS seems to be the kind of measurement most people are interested in obtaining with an instrument, and electromechanical meter movements naturally deliver *average* measurements rather than RMS, what are AC meter designers to do? Cheat, of course! Typically the assumption is made that the waveform shape to be measured is going to be sine (by far the most common, especially for power systems), and then the meter movement scale is altered by the appropriate multiplication factor. For sine waves we see that RMS is equal to 0.707 times the peak value while Average is 0.637 times the peak, so we can divide one figure by the other to obtain an average-to-RMS conversion factor of 1.109:

$$\frac{0.707}{0.637} = 1.1099$$

In other words, the meter movement will be calibrated to indicate approximately 1.11 times higher than it would ordinarily (naturally) indicate with no special accommodations. It must be stressed that this "cheat" only works well when the meter is used to measure pure sine wave sources. Note that for triangle waves, the ratio between RMS and Average is not the same as for sine waves:

$$\frac{0.577}{0.5} = 1.154$$

With square waves, the RMS and Average values are identical! An AC meter calibrated to accurately read RMS voltage or current on a pure sine wave will *not* give the proper value while indicating the magnitude of anything other than a perfect sine wave. This includes triangle waves, square waves, or any kind of distorted sine wave. With harmonics becoming an ever-present phenomenon in large AC power systems, this matter of accurate RMS measurement is no small matter.

The astute reader will note that I have omitted the CRT "movement" from the RMS/Average discussion. This is because a CRT with its practically weightless electron beam "movement" displays the Peak (or Peak-to-Peak if you wish) of an AC waveform rather than Average or RMS. Still, a similar problem arises: how do you determine the RMS value of a waveform from it? Conversion factors between Peak and RMS only hold so long as the waveform falls neatly into a known category of shape (sine, triangle, and square are the only examples with Peak/RMS/Average conversion factors given here!).

One answer is to design the meter movement around the very definition of RMS: the effective heating value of an AC voltage/current as it powers a resistive load. Suppose that the AC source to be measured is connected across a resistor of known value, and the heat output of that resistor is measured with a device like a thermocouple. This would provide a far more direct measurement means of RMS than any conversion factor could, for it will work with ANY waveform shape whatsoever: (Figure 12.8)

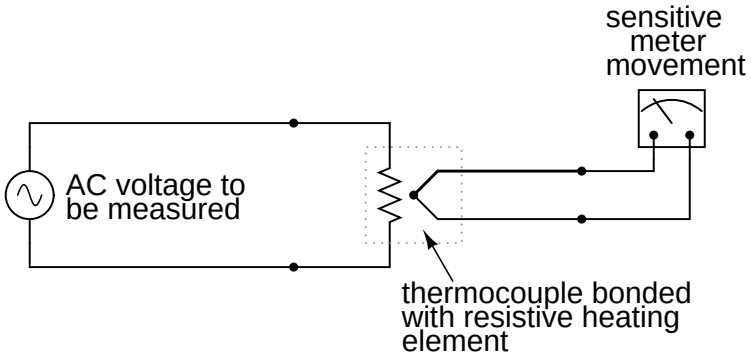


Figure 12.8: *Direct reading thermal RMS voltmeter accommodates any wave shape.*

While the device shown above is somewhat crude and would suffer from unique engineering problems of its own, the concept illustrated is very sound. The resistor converts the AC voltage or current quantity into a thermal (heat) quantity, effectively squaring the values in real-time. The system's mass works to average these values by the principle of thermal inertia, and then the meter scale itself is calibrated to give an indication based on the square-root of the thermal measurement: perfect Root-Mean-Square indication all in one device! In fact, one major instrument manufacturer has implemented this technique into its high-end line of handheld electronic multimeters for "true-RMS" capability.

Calibrating AC voltmeters and ammeters for different full-scale ranges of operation is much

the same as with DC instruments: series "multiplier" resistors are used to give voltmeter movements higher range, and parallel "shunt" resistors are used to allow ammeter movements to measure currents beyond their natural range. However, we are not limited to these techniques as we were with DC: because we can use transformers with AC, meter ranges can be electromagnetically rather than resistively "stepped up" or "stepped down," sometimes far beyond what resistors would have practically allowed for. Potential Transformers (PT's) and Current Transformers (CT's) are precision instrument devices manufactured to produce very precise ratios of transformation between primary and secondary windings. They can allow small, simple AC meter movements to indicate extremely high voltages and currents in power systems with accuracy and complete electrical isolation (something multiplier and shunt resistors could never do): (Figure 12.9)

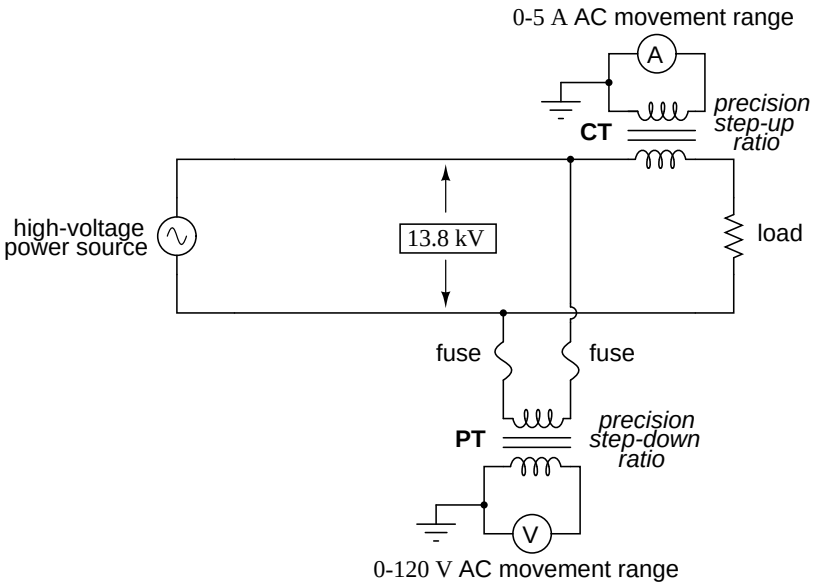


Figure 12.9: *(CT) Current transformer scales current down. (PT) Potential transformer scales voltage down.*

Shown here is a voltage and current meter panel from a three-phase AC system. The three "donut" current transformers (CT's) can be seen in the rear of the panel. Three AC ammeters (rated 5 amps full-scale deflection each) on the front of the panel indicate current through each conductor going through a CT. As this panel has been removed from service, there are no current-carrying conductors threaded through the center of the CT "donuts" anymore: (Figure 12.10)

Because of the expense (and often large size) of instrument transformers, they are not used to scale AC meters for any applications other than high voltage and high current. For scaling a milliamp or microamp movement to a range of 120 volts or 5 amps, normal precision resistors (multipliers and shunts) are used, just as with DC.

- **REVIEW:**

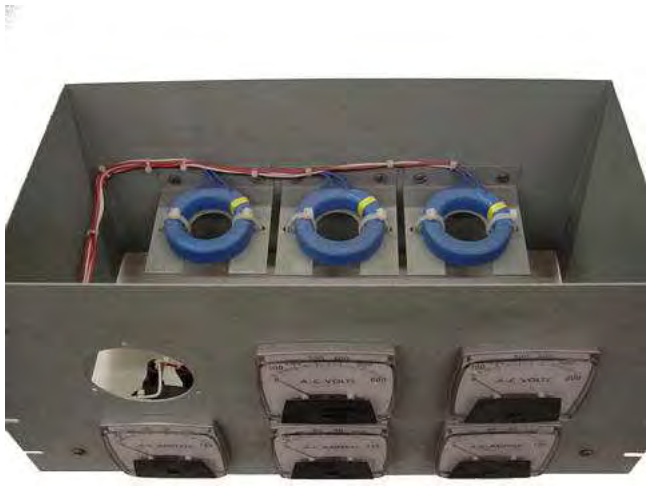


Figure 12.10: *Toroidal current transformers scale high current levels down for application to 5 A full-scale AC ammeters.*

- Polarized (DC) meter movements must use devices called *diodes* to be able to indicate AC quantities.
- Electromechanical meter movements, whether electromagnetic or electrostatic, naturally provide the *average* value of a measured AC quantity. These instruments may be ranged to indicate RMS value, but only if the shape of the AC waveform is precisely known beforehand!
- So-called *true RMS* meters use different technology to provide indications representing the actual RMS (rather than skewed average or peak) of an AC waveform.

12.2 Frequency and phase measurement

An important electrical quantity with no equivalent in DC circuits is *frequency*. Frequency measurement is very important in many applications of alternating current, especially in AC power systems designed to run efficiently at one frequency and one frequency only. If the AC is being generated by an electromechanical alternator, the frequency will be directly proportional to the shaft speed of the machine, and frequency could be measured simply by measuring the speed of the shaft. If frequency needs to be measured at some distance from the alternator, though, other means of measurement will be necessary.

One simple but crude method of frequency measurement in power systems utilizes the principle of mechanical resonance. Every physical object possessing the property of elasticity (springiness) has an inherent frequency at which it will prefer to vibrate. The tuning fork is a great example of this: strike it once and it will continue to vibrate at a tone specific to its length. Longer tuning forks have lower resonant frequencies: their tones will be lower on the musical scale than shorter forks.

Imagine a row of progressively-sized tuning forks arranged side-by-side. They are all mounted on a common base, and that base is vibrated at the frequency of the measured AC voltage (or current) by means of an electromagnet. Whichever tuning fork is closest in resonant frequency to the frequency of that vibration will tend to shake the most (or the loudest). If the forks' tines were flimsy enough, we could see the relative motion of each by the length of the blur we would see as we inspected each one from an end-view perspective. Well, make a collection of "tuning forks" out of a strip of sheet metal cut in a pattern akin to a rake, and you have the *vibrating reed* frequency meter: (Figure 12.11)

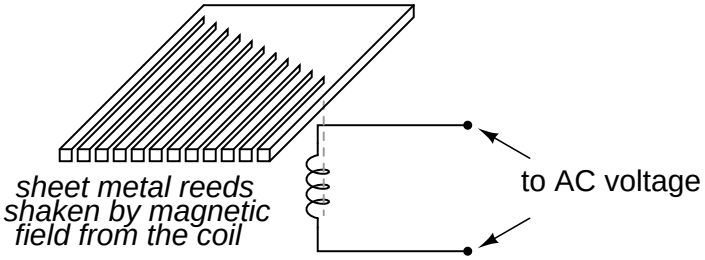


Figure 12.11: *Vibrating reed frequency meter diagram.*

The user of this meter views the ends of all those unequal length reeds as they are collectively shaken at the frequency of the applied AC voltage to the coil. The one closest in resonant frequency to the applied AC will vibrate the most, looking something like Figure 12.12.

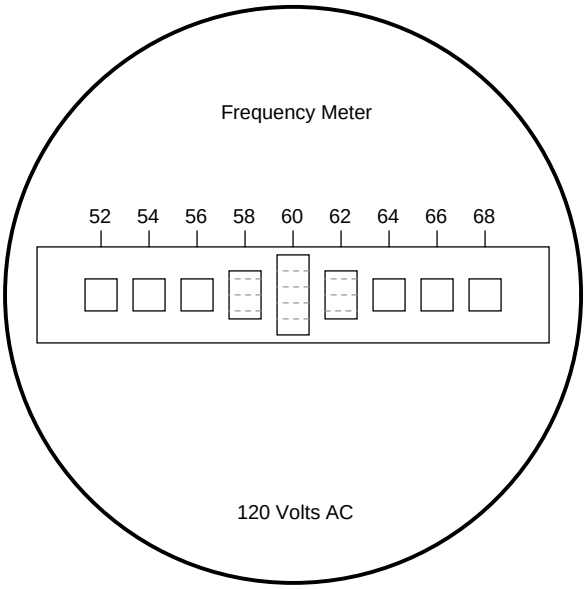


Figure 12.12: *Vibrating reed frequency meter front panel.*

Vibrating reed meters, obviously, are not precision instruments, but they are very simple and therefore easy to manufacture to be rugged. They are often found on small engine-driven generator sets for the purpose of setting engine speed so that the frequency is somewhat close to 60 (50 in Europe) Hertz.

While reed-type meters are imprecise, their operational principle is not. In lieu of mechanical resonance, we may substitute electrical resonance and design a frequency meter using an inductor and capacitor in the form of a tank circuit (parallel inductor and capacitor). See Figure 12.13. One or both components are made adjustable, and a meter is placed in the circuit to indicate maximum amplitude of voltage across the two components. The adjustment knob(s) are calibrated to show resonant frequency for any given setting, and the frequency is read from them after the device has been adjusted for maximum indication on the meter. Essentially, this is a tunable filter circuit which is adjusted and then read in a manner similar to a bridge circuit (which must be balanced for a "null" condition and then read).

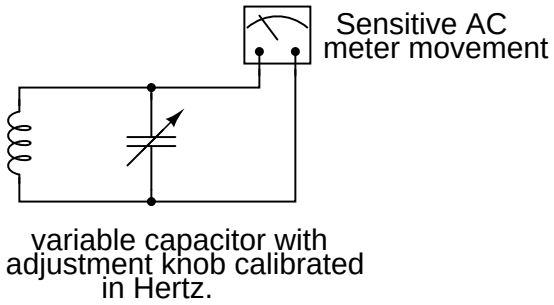


Figure 12.13: *Resonant frequency meter "peaks" as L-C resonant frequency is tuned to test frequency.*

This technique is a popular one for amateur radio operators (or at least it was before the advent of inexpensive digital frequency instruments called *counters*), especially because it doesn't require direct connection to the circuit. So long as the inductor and/or capacitor can intercept enough stray field (magnetic or electric, respectively) from the circuit under test to cause the meter to indicate, it will work.

In frequency as in other types of electrical measurement, the most accurate means of measurement are usually those where an unknown quantity is compared against a known *standard*, the basic instrument doing nothing more than indicating when the two quantities are equal to each other. This is the basic principle behind the DC (Wheatstone) bridge circuit and it is a sound metrological principle applied throughout the sciences. If we have access to an accurate frequency standard (a source of AC voltage holding very precisely to a single frequency), then measurement of any unknown frequency by comparison should be relatively easy.

For that frequency standard, we turn our attention back to the tuning fork, or at least a more modern variation of it called the *quartz crystal*. Quartz is a naturally occurring mineral possessing a very interesting property called *piezoelectricity*. Piezoelectric materials produce a voltage across their length when physically stressed, and will physically deform when an external voltage is applied across their lengths. This deformation is very, very slight in most cases, but it does exist.

Quartz rock is elastic (springy) within that small range of bending which an external voltage would produce, which means that it will have a mechanical resonant frequency of its own capable of being manifested as an electrical voltage signal. In other words, if a chip of quartz is struck, it will "ring" with its own unique frequency determined by the length of the chip, and that resonant oscillation will produce an equivalent voltage across multiple points of the quartz chip which can be tapped into by wires fixed to the surface of the chip. In reciprocal manner, the quartz chip will tend to vibrate most when it is "excited" by an applied AC voltage at precisely the right frequency, just like the reeds on a vibrating-reed frequency meter.

Chips of quartz rock can be precisely cut for desired resonant frequencies, and that chip mounted securely inside a protective shell with wires extending for connection to an external electric circuit. When packaged as such, the resulting device is simply called a *crystal* (or sometimes "*xtal*"). The schematic symbol is shown in Figure 12.14.

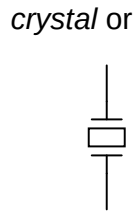


Figure 12.14: *Crystal (frequency determing element) schematic symbol.*

Electrically, that quartz chip is equivalent to a series LC resonant circuit. (Figure 12.15) The dielectric properties of quartz contribute an additional capacitive element to the equivalent circuit.

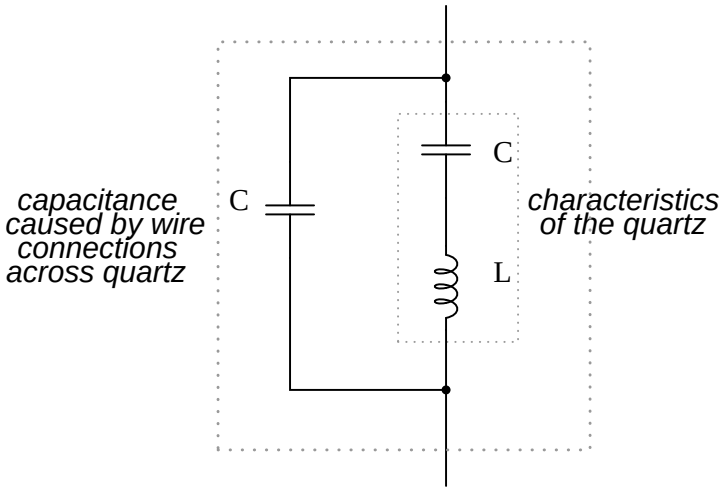


Figure 12.15: *Quartz crystal equivalent circuit.*

The "capacitance" and "inductance" shown in series are merely electrical equivalents of the quartz's mechanical resonance properties: they do not exist as discrete components within the crystal. The capacitance shown in parallel due to the wire connections across the dielectric (insulating) quartz body is real, and it has an effect on the resonant response of the whole system. A full discussion on crystal dynamics is not necessary here, but what needs to be understood about crystals is this resonant circuit equivalence and how it can be exploited within an oscillator circuit to achieve an output voltage with a stable, known frequency.

Crystals, as resonant elements, typically have much higher "Q" (*quality*) values than tank circuits built from inductors and capacitors, principally due to the relative absence of stray resistance, making their resonant frequencies very definite and precise. Because the resonant frequency is solely dependent on the physical properties of quartz (a very stable substance, mechanically), the resonant frequency variation over time with a quartz crystal is very, very low. This is how *quartz movement* watches obtain their high accuracy: by means of an electronic oscillator stabilized by the resonant action of a quartz crystal.

For laboratory applications, though, even greater frequency stability may be desired. To achieve this, the crystal in question may be placed in a temperature stabilized environment (usually an oven), thus eliminating frequency errors due to thermal expansion and contraction of the quartz.

For the ultimate in a frequency standard though, nothing discovered thus far surpasses the accuracy of a single resonating atom. This is the principle of the so-called *atomic clock*, which uses an atom of mercury (or cesium) suspended in a vacuum, excited by outside energy to resonate at its own unique frequency. The resulting frequency is detected as a radio-wave signal and that forms the basis for the most accurate clocks known to humanity. National standards laboratories around the world maintain a few of these hyper-accurate clocks, and broadcast frequency signals based on those atoms' vibrations for scientists and technicians to tune in and use for frequency calibration purposes.

Now we get to the practical part: once we have a *source* of accurate frequency, how do we compare that against an unknown frequency to obtain a measurement? One way is to use a CRT as a frequency-comparison device. Cathode Ray Tubes typically have means of deflecting the electron beam in the horizontal as well as the vertical axis. If metal plates are used to electrostatically deflect the electrons, there will be a pair of plates to the left and right of the beam as well as a pair of plates above and below the beam as in Figure 12.16.

If we allow one AC signal to deflect the beam up and down (connect that AC voltage source to the "vertical" deflection plates) and another AC signal to deflect the beam left and right (using the other pair of deflection plates), patterns will be produced on the screen of the CRT indicative of the *ratio* of these two AC frequencies. These patterns are called *Lissajous figures* and are a common means of comparative frequency measurement in electronics.

If the two frequencies are the same, we will obtain a simple figure on the screen of the CRT, the shape of that figure being dependent upon the phase shift between the two AC signals. Here is a sampling of Lissajous figures for two sine-wave signals of equal frequency, shown as they would appear on the face of an oscilloscope (an AC voltage-measuring instrument using a CRT as its "movement"). The first picture is of the Lissajous figure formed by two AC voltages perfectly in phase with each other: (Figure 12.17)

If the two AC voltages are not in phase with each other, a straight line will not be formed. Rather, the Lissajous figure will take on the appearance of an oval, becoming perfectly circular if the phase shift is exactly 90^o between the two signals, and if their amplitudes are equal:

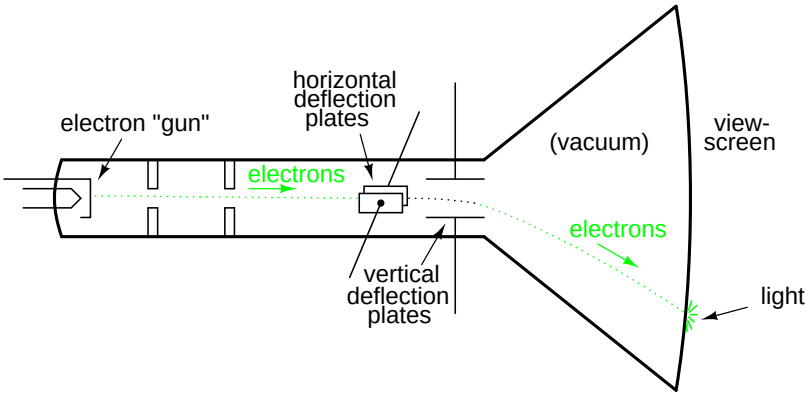


Figure 12.16: *Cathode ray tube (CRT) with vertical and horizontal deflection plates.*

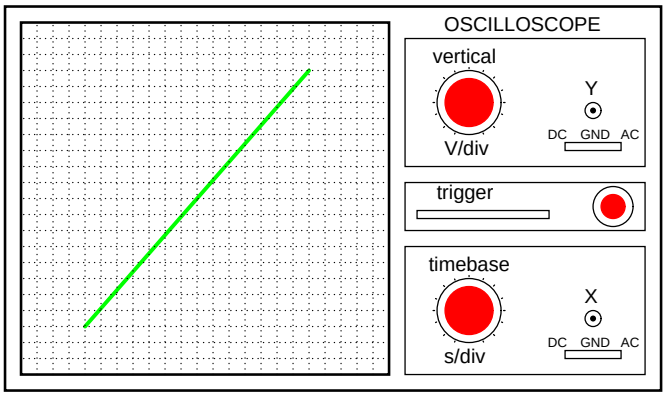


Figure 12.17: *Lissajous figure: same frequency, zero degrees phase shift.*

(Figure 12.18)

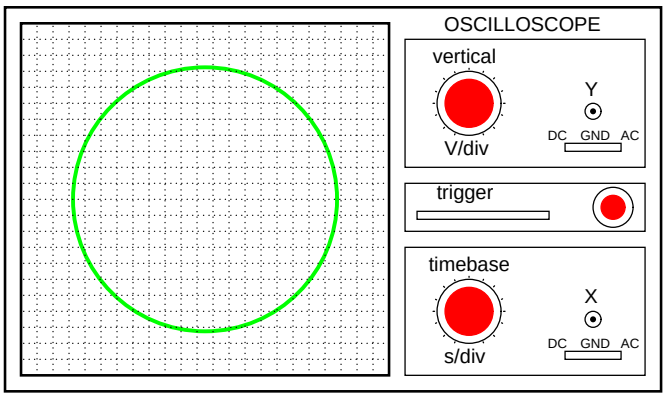


Figure 12.18: *Lissajous figure: same frequency, 90 or 270 degrees phase shift.*

Finally, if the two AC signals are directly opposing one another in phase (180^o shift), we will end up with a line again, only this time it will be oriented in the opposite direction: (Figure 12.19)

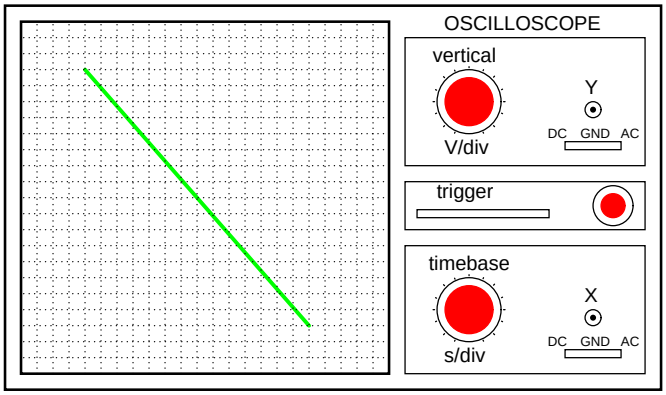


Figure 12.19: *Lissajous figure: same frequency, 180 degrees phase shift.*

When we are faced with signal frequencies that are not the same, Lissajous figures get quite a bit more complex. Consider the following examples and their given vertical/horizontal frequency ratios: (Figure 12.20)

The more complex the ratio between horizontal and vertical frequencies, the more complex the Lissajous figure. Consider the following illustration of a 3:1 frequency ratio between horizontal and vertical: (Figure 12.21)

. . . and a 3:2 frequency ratio (horizontal = 3, vertical = 2) in Figure 12.22.

In cases where the frequencies of the two AC signals are not exactly a simple ratio of each other (but close), the Lissajous figure will appear to "move," slowly changing orientation as the

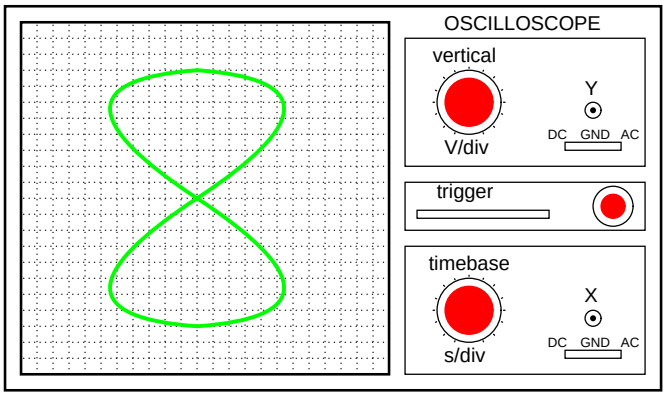


Figure 12.20: *Lissajous figure: Horizontal frequency is twice that of vertical.*

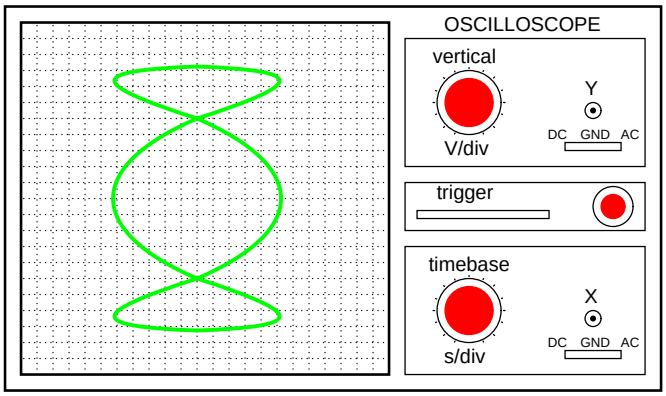


Figure 12.21: *Lissajous figure: Horizontal frequency is three times that of vertical.*

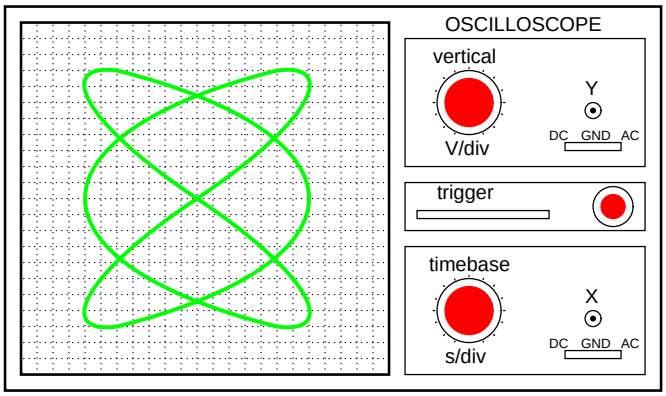


Figure 12.22: *Lissajous figure: Horizontal/vertical frequency ratio is 3:2.*

phase angle between the two waveforms rolls between 0^o and 180^o. If the two frequencies are locked in an exact integer ratio between each other, the Lissajous figure will be stable on the viewscreen of the CRT.

The physics of Lissajous figures limits their usefulness as a frequency-comparison technique to cases where the frequency ratios are simple integer values (1:1, 1:2, 1:3, 2:3, 3:4, etc.). Despite this limitation, Lissajous figures are a popular means of frequency comparison wherever an accessible frequency standard (signal generator) exists.

- **REVIEW:**
- Some frequency meters work on the principle of mechanical resonance, indicating frequency by relative oscillation among a set of uniquely tuned "reeds" shaken at the measured frequency.
- Other frequency meters use electric resonant circuits (LC tank circuits, usually) to indicate frequency. One or both components is made to be adjustable, with an accurately calibrated adjustment knob, and a sensitive meter is read for maximum voltage or current at the point of resonance.
- Frequency can be measured in a comparative fashion, as is the case when using a CRT to generate *Lissajous figures*. Reference frequency signals can be made with a high degree of accuracy by oscillator circuits using quartz crystals as resonant devices. For ultra precision, atomic clock signal standards (based on the resonant frequencies of individual atoms) can be used.

12.3 Power measurement

Power measurement in AC circuits can be quite a bit more complex than with DC circuits for the simple reason that phase shift complicates the matter beyond multiplying voltage by

current figures obtained with meters. What is needed is an instrument able to determine the product (multiplication) of *instantaneous* voltage and current. Fortunately, the common electrodynamometer movement with its stationary and moving coil does a fine job of this.

Three phase power measurement can be accomplished using two dynamometer movements with a common shaft linking the two moving coils together so that a single pointer registers power on a meter movement scale. This, obviously, makes for a rather expensive and complex movement mechanism, but it is a workable solution.

An ingenious method of deriving an electronic power meter (one that generates an electric signal representing power in the system rather than merely move a pointer) is based on the Hall effect. The Hall effect is an unusual effect first noticed by E. H. Hall in 1879, whereby a voltage is generated along the width of a current-carrying conductor exposed to a perpendicular magnetic field: (Figure 12.23)

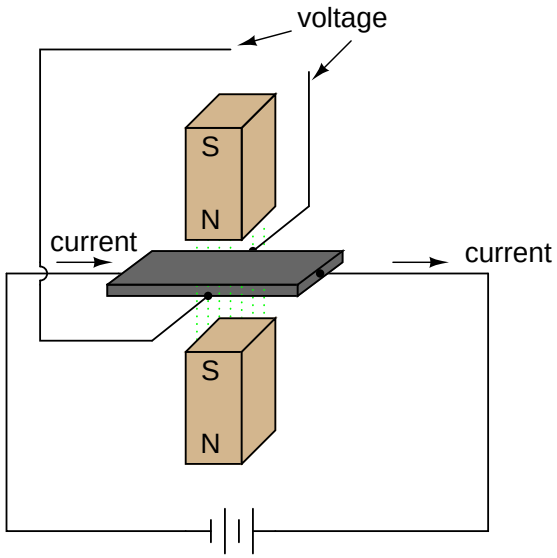


Figure 12.23: *Hall effect: Voltage is proportional to current and strength of the perpendicular magnetic field.*

The voltage generated across the width of the flat, rectangular conductor is directly proportional to both the magnitude of the current through it and the strength of the magnetic field. Mathematically, it is a product (multiplication) of these two variables. The amount of "Hall Voltage" produced for any given set of conditions also depends on the type of material used for the flat, rectangular conductor. It has been found that specially prepared "semiconductor" materials produce a greater Hall voltage than do metals, and so modern Hall Effect devices are made of these.

It makes sense then that if we were to build a device using a Hall-effect sensor where the current through the conductor was pushed by AC voltage from an external circuit and the magnetic field was set up by a pair or wire coils energized by the current of the AC power circuit, the Hall voltage would be in direct proportion to the multiple of circuit current and

voltage. Having no mass to move (unlike an electromechanical movement), this device is able to provide *instantaneous* power measurement: (Figure 12.24)

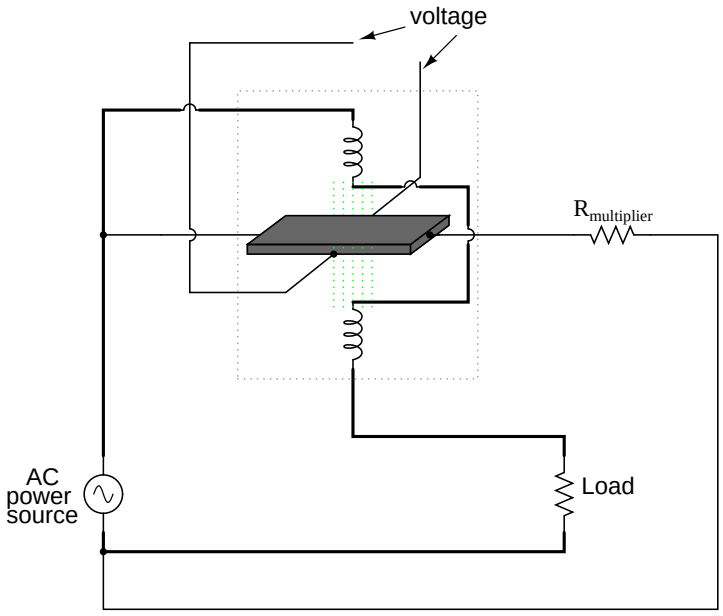


Figure 12.24: *Hall effect power sensor measures instantaneous power.*

Not only will the output voltage of the Hall effect device be the representation of instantaneous power at any point in time, but it will also be a DC signal! This is because the Hall voltage polarity is dependent upon *both* the polarity of the magnetic field and the direction of current through the conductor. If both current direction and magnetic field polarity reverses – as it would ever half-cycle of the AC power – the output voltage polarity will stay the same.

If voltage and current in the power circuit are 90^o out of phase (a power factor of zero, meaning *no* real power delivered to the load), the alternate peaks of Hall device current and magnetic field will never coincide with each other: when one is at its peak, the other will be zero. At those points in time, the Hall output voltage will likewise be zero, being the product (multiplication) of current and magnetic field strength. Between those points in time, the Hall output voltage will fluctuate equally between positive and negative, generating a signal corresponding to the instantaneous absorption and release of power through the reactive load. The net DC output voltage will be zero, indicating zero true power in the circuit.

Any phase shift between voltage and current in the power circuit less than 90^o will result in a Hall output voltage that oscillates between positive and negative, but spends more time positive than negative. Consequently there will be a net DC output voltage. Conditioned through a low-pass filter circuit, this net DC voltage can be separated from the AC mixed with it, the final output signal registered on a sensitive DC meter movement.

Often it is useful to have a meter to totalize power usage over a period of time rather than instantaneously. The output of such a meter can be set in units of Joules, or total energy

consumed, since *power* is a measure of work being done *per* unit time. Or, more commonly, the output of the meter can be set in units of Watt-Hours.

Mechanical means for measuring Watt-Hours are usually centered around the concept of the motor: build an AC motor that spins at a rate of speed proportional to the instantaneous power in a circuit, then have that motor turn an "odometer" style counting mechanism to keep a running total of energy consumed. The "motor" used in these meters has a rotor made of a thin aluminum disk, with the rotating magnetic field established by sets of coils energized by line voltage and load current so that the rotational speed of the disk is dependent on both voltage and current.

12.4 Power quality measurement

It used to be with large AC power systems that "power quality" was an unheard-of concept, aside from power factor. Almost all loads were of the "linear" variety, meaning that they did not distort the shape of the voltage sine wave, or cause non-sinusoidal currents to flow in the circuit. This is not true anymore. Loads controlled by "nonlinear" electronic components are becoming more prevalent in both home and industry, meaning that the voltages and currents in the power system(s) feeding these loads are rich in harmonics: what should be nice, clean sine-wave voltages and currents are becoming highly distorted, which is equivalent to the presence of an infinite series of high-frequency sine waves at multiples of the fundamental power line frequency.

Excessive harmonics in an AC power system can overheat transformers, cause exceedingly high neutral conductor currents in three-phase systems, create electromagnetic "noise" in the form of radio emissions that can interfere with sensitive electronic equipment, reduce electric motor horsepower output, and can be difficult to pinpoint. With problems like these plaguing power systems, engineers and technicians require ways to precisely detect and measure these conditions.

Power Quality is the general term given to represent an AC power system's freedom from harmonic content. A "power quality" meter is one that gives some form of harmonic content indication.

A simple way for a technician to determine power quality in their system without sophisticated equipment is to compare voltage readings between two accurate voltmeters measuring the same system voltage: one meter being an "averaging" type of unit (such as an electromechanical movement meter) and the other being a "true-RMS" type of unit (such as a high-quality digital meter). Remember that "averaging" type meters are calibrated so that their scales indicate volts RMS, *based on the assumption that the AC voltage being measured is sinusoidal*. If the voltage is anything but sinewave-shaped, the averaging meter will *not* register the proper value, whereas the true-RMS meter always will, regardless of waveshape. The rule of thumb here is this: the greater the disparity between the two meters, the worse the power quality is, and the greater its harmonic content. A power system with good quality power should generate equal voltage readings between the two meters, to within the rated error tolerance of the two instruments.

Another qualitative measurement of power quality is the oscilloscope test: connect an oscilloscope (CRT) to the AC voltage and observe the shape of the wave. Anything other than a clean sine wave could be an indication of trouble: (Figure 12.25)

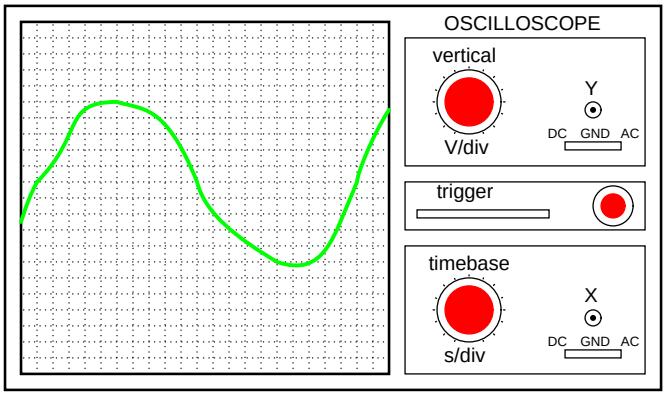


Figure 12.25: *This is a moderately ugly "sine" wave. Definite harmonic content here!*

Still, if quantitative analysis (definite, numerical figures) is necessary, there is no substitute for an instrument specifically designed for that purpose. Such an instrument is called a *power quality meter* and is sometimes better known in electronic circles as a low-frequency *spectrum analyzer*. What this instrument does is provide a graphical representation on a CRT or digital display screen of the AC voltage's frequency "spectrum." Just as a prism splits a beam of white light into its constituent color components (how much red, orange, yellow, green, and blue is in that light), the spectrum analyzer splits a mixed-frequency signal into its constituent frequencies, and displays the result in the form of a histogram: (Figure 12.26)

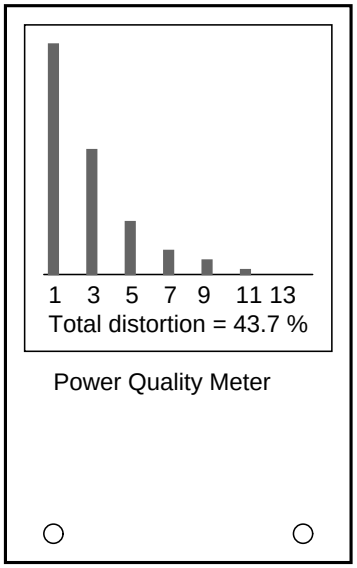


Figure 12.26: *Power quality meter is a low frequency spectrum analyzer.*

Each number on the horizontal scale of this meter represents a harmonic of the fundamental frequency. For American power systems, the "1" represents 60 Hz (the 1st harmonic, or *fundamental*), the "3" for 180 Hz (the 3rd harmonic), the "5" for 300 Hz (the 5th harmonic), and so on. The black rectangles represent the relative magnitudes of each of these harmonic components in the measured AC voltage. A pure, 60 Hz sine wave would show only a tall black bar over the "1" with no black bars showing at all over the other frequency markers on the scale, because a pure sine wave has no harmonic content.

Power quality meters such as this might be better referred to as *overtone* meters, because they are designed to display only those frequencies known to be generated by the power system. In three-phase AC power systems (predominant for large power applications), even-numbered harmonics tend to be canceled out, and so only harmonics existing in significant measure are the odd-numbered.

Meters like these are very useful in the hands of a skilled technician, because different types of nonlinear loads tend to generate different spectrum "signatures" which can clue the troubleshooter to the source of the problem. These meters work by very quickly sampling the AC voltage at many different points along the waveform shape, digitizing those points of information, and using a microprocessor (small computer) to perform numerical Fourier analysis (the *Fast Fourier Transform* or "*FFT*" algorithm) on those data points to arrive at harmonic frequency magnitudes. The process is not much unlike what the SPICE program tells a computer to do when performing a Fourier analysis on a simulated circuit voltage or current waveform.

12.5 AC bridge circuits

As we saw with DC measurement circuits, the circuit configuration known as a *bridge* can be a very useful way to measure unknown values of resistance. This is true with AC as well, and we can apply the very same principle to the accurate measurement of unknown impedances.

To review, the bridge circuit works as a pair of two-component voltage dividers connected across the same source voltage, with a *null-detector* meter movement connected between them to indicate a condition of "balance" at zero volts: (Figure 12.27)

Any one of the four resistors in the above bridge can be the resistor of unknown value, and its value can be determined by a ratio of the other three, which are "calibrated," or whose resistances are known to a precise degree. When the bridge is in a balanced condition (zero voltage as indicated by the null detector), the ratio works out to be this:

In a condition of ***balance****:*

$$\frac{R_1}{R_2} = \frac{R_3}{R_4}$$

One of the advantages of using a bridge circuit to measure resistance is that the voltage of the power source is irrelevant. Practically speaking, the higher the supply voltage, the easier it is to detect a condition of imbalance between the four resistors with the null detector, and thus the more sensitive it will be. A greater supply voltage leads to the possibility of increased measurement precision. However, there will be no fundamental error introduced as a result of a lesser or greater power supply voltage unlike other types of resistance measurement schemes.

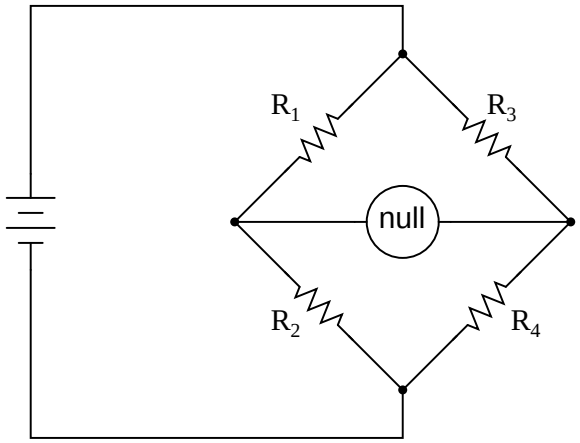


Figure 12.27: *A balanced bridge shows a "null", or minimum reading, on the indicator.*

Impedance bridges work the same, only the balance equation is with *complex* quantities, as both magnitude and phase across the components of the two dividers must be equal in order for the null detector to indicate "zero." The null detector, of course, must be a device capable of detecting very small AC voltages. An oscilloscope is often used for this, although very sensitive electromechanical meter movements and even headphones (small speakers) may be used if the source frequency is within audio range.

One way to maximize the effectiveness of audio headphones as a null detector is to connect them to the signal source through an impedance-matching transformer. Headphone speakers are typically low-impedance units (8 Ω), requiring substantial current to drive, and so a step-down transformer helps "match" low-current signals to the impedance of the headphone speakers. An audio output transformer works well for this purpose: (Figure 12.28)

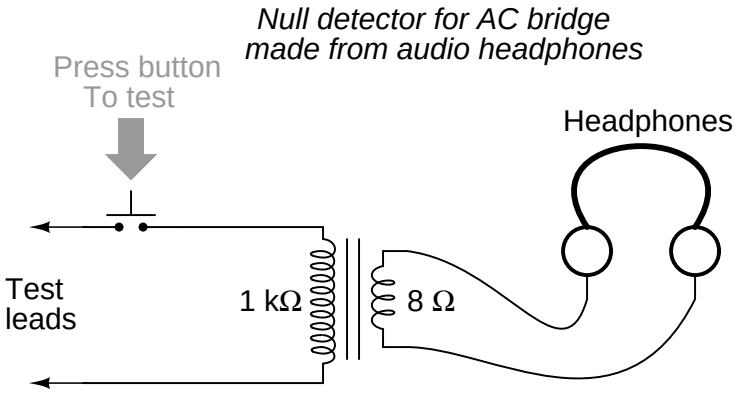


Figure 12.28: *"Modern" low-Ohm headphones require an impedance matching transformer for use as a sensitive null detector.*

Using a pair of headphones that completely surround the ears (the "closed-cup" type), I've been able to detect currents of less than 0.1 μA with this simple detector circuit. Roughly equal performance was obtained using two different step-down transformers: a small power transformer (120/6 volt ratio), and an audio output transformer (1000:8 ohm impedance ratio). With the pushbutton switch in place to interrupt current, this circuit is usable for detecting signals from DC to over 2 MHz: even if the frequency is far above or below the audio range, a "click" will be heard from the headphones each time the switch is pressed and released.

Connected to a resistive bridge, the whole circuit looks like Figure 12.29.

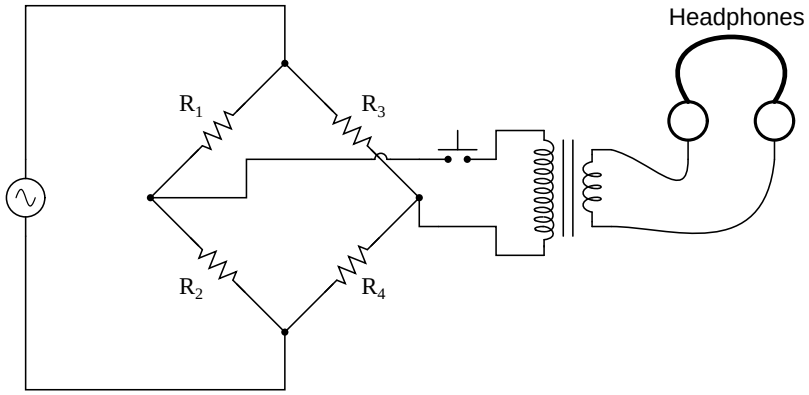


Figure 12.29: *Bridge with sensitive AC null detector.*

Listening to the headphones as one or more of the resistor "arms" of the bridge is adjusted, a condition of balance will be realized when the headphones fail to produce "clicks" (or tones, if the bridge's power source frequency is within audio range) as the switch is actuated.

When describing general AC bridges, where *impedances* and not just resistances must be in proper ratio for balance, it is sometimes helpful to draw the respective bridge legs in the form of box-shaped components, each one with a certain impedance: (Figure 12.30)

For this general form of AC bridge to balance, the impedance ratios of each branch must be equal:

$$\frac{Z_1}{Z_2} = \frac{Z_3}{Z_4}$$

Again, it must be stressed that the impedance quantities in the above equation *must* be complex, accounting for both magnitude and phase angle. It is insufficient that the impedance magnitudes alone be balanced; without phase angles in balance as well, there will still be voltage across the terminals of the null detector and the bridge will not be balanced.

Bridge circuits can be constructed to measure just about any device value desired, be it capacitance, inductance, resistance, or even "Q." As always in bridge measurement circuits, the unknown quantity is always "balanced" against a known standard, obtained from a high-quality, calibrated component that can be adjusted in value until the null detector device indicates a condition of balance. Depending on how the bridge is set up, the unknown component's value may be determined directly from the setting of the calibrated standard, or derived from

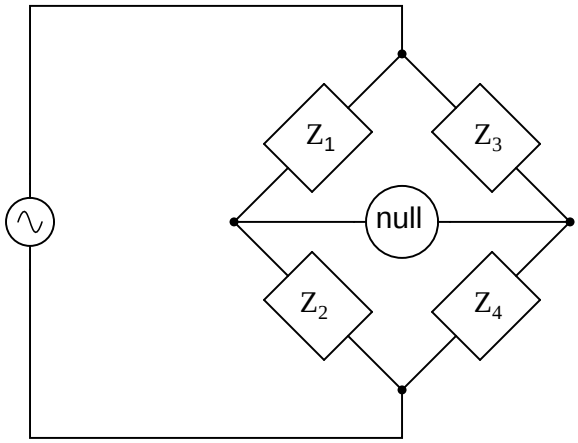


Figure 12.30: *Generalized AC impedance bridge: Z = nonspecific complex impedance.*

that standard through a mathematical formula.

A couple of simple bridge circuits are shown below, one for inductance (Figure 12.31) and one for capacitance: (Figure 12.32)

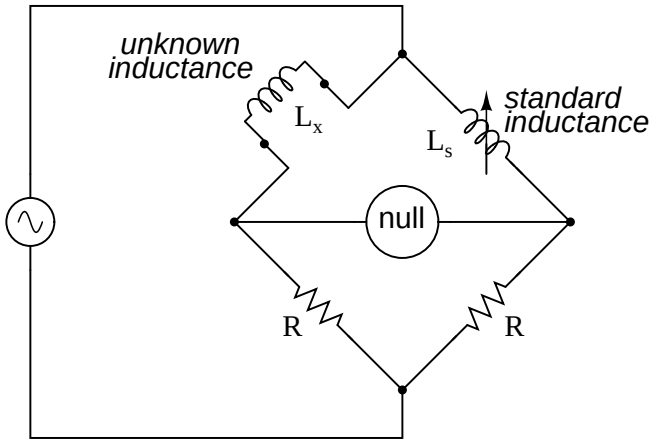


Figure 12.31: *Symmetrical bridge measures unknown inductor by comparison to a standard inductor.*

Simple "symmetrical" bridges such as these are so named because they exhibit symmetry (mirror-image similarity) from left to right. The two bridge circuits shown above are balanced by adjusting the calibrated reactive component (L_s or C_s). They are a bit simplified from their real-life counterparts, as practical symmetrical bridge circuits often have a calibrated, variable resistor in series or parallel with the reactive component to balance out stray resistance in the unknown component. But, in the hypothetical world of perfect components, these simple bridge

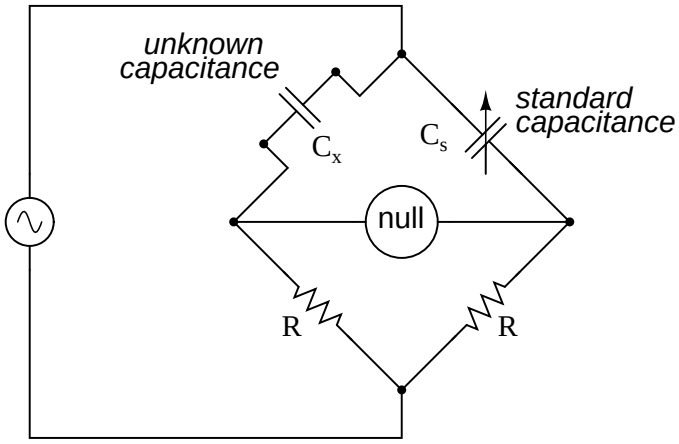


Figure 12.32: *Symmetrical bridge measures unknown capacitor by comparison to a standard capacitor.*

circuits do just fine to illustrate the basic concept.

An example of a little extra complexity added to compensate for real-world effects can be found in the so-called *Wien bridge*, which uses a parallel capacitor-resistor standard impedance to balance out an unknown series capacitor-resistor combination. (Figure 12.33) All capacitors have some amount of internal resistance, be it literal or equivalent (in the form of dielectric heating losses) which tend to spoil their otherwise perfectly reactive natures. This internal resistance may be of interest to measure, and so the Wien bridge attempts to do so by providing a balancing impedance that isn't "pure" either:

Being that there are two standard components to be adjusted (a resistor and a capacitor) this bridge will take a little more time to balance than the others we've seen so far. The combined effect of R_s and C_s is to alter the magnitude and phase angle until the bridge achieves a condition of balance. Once that balance is achieved, the settings of R_s and C_s can be read from their calibrated knobs, the parallel impedance of the two determined mathematically, and the unknown capacitance and resistance determined mathematically from the balance equation ($Z_1/Z_2 = Z_3/Z_4$).

It is assumed in the operation of the Wien bridge that the standard capacitor has negligible internal resistance, or at least that resistance is already known so that it can be factored into the balance equation. Wien bridges are useful for determining the values of "lossy" capacitor designs like electrolytics, where the internal resistance is relatively high. They are also used as frequency meters, because the balance of the bridge is frequency-dependent. When used in this fashion, the capacitors are made fixed (and usually of equal value) and the top two resistors are made variable and are adjusted by means of the same knob.

An interesting variation on this theme is found in the next bridge circuit, used to precisely measure inductances.

This ingenious bridge circuit is known as the *Maxwell-Wien bridge* (sometimes known plainly as the *Maxwell bridge*), and is used to measure unknown inductances in terms of calibrated resistance and capacitance. (Figure 12.34) Calibration-grade inductors are more

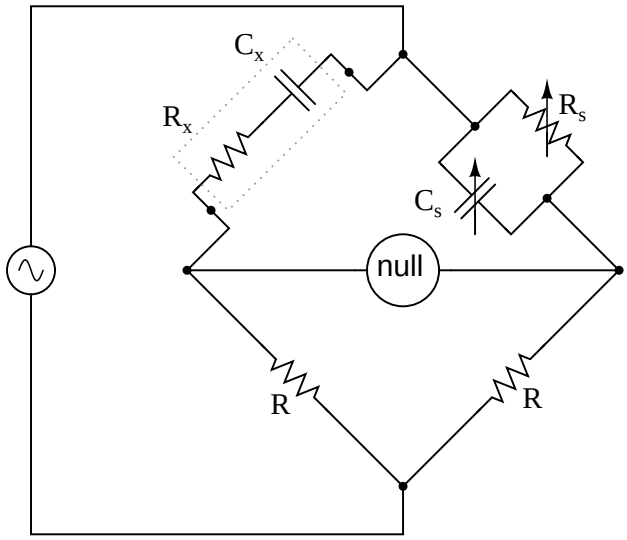


Figure 12.33: *Wein Bridge measures both capacitive C_x and resistive R_x components of "real" capacitor.*

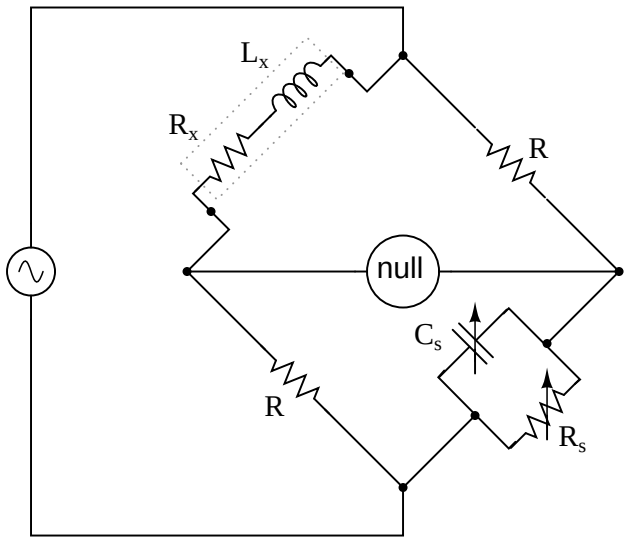


Figure 12.34: *Maxwell-Wein bridge measures an inductor in terms of a capacitor standard.*

difficult to manufacture than capacitors of similar precision, and so the use of a simple "symmetrical" inductance bridge is not always practical. Because the phase shifts of inductors and capacitors are exactly opposite each other, a capacitive impedance can balance out an inductive impedance if they are located in opposite legs of a bridge, as they are here.

Another advantage of using a Maxwell bridge to measure inductance rather than a symmetrical inductance bridge is the elimination of measurement error due to mutual inductance between two inductors. Magnetic fields can be difficult to shield, and even a small amount of coupling between coils in a bridge can introduce substantial errors in certain conditions. With no second inductor to react with in the Maxwell bridge, this problem is eliminated.

For easiest operation, the standard capacitor (C_s) and the resistor in parallel with it (R_s) are made variable, and both must be adjusted to achieve balance. However, the bridge can be made to work if the capacitor is fixed (non-variable) and more than one resistor made variable (at least the resistor in parallel with the capacitor, and one of the other two). However, in the latter configuration it takes more trial-and-error adjustment to achieve balance, as the different variable resistors interact in balancing magnitude and phase.

Unlike the plain Wien bridge, the balance of the Maxwell-Wien bridge is independent of source frequency, and in some cases this bridge can be made to balance in the presence of mixed frequencies from the AC voltage source, the limiting factor being the inductor's stability over a wide frequency range.

There are more variations beyond these designs, but a full discussion is not warranted here. General-purpose impedance bridge circuits are manufactured which can be switched into more than one configuration for maximum flexibility of use.

A potential problem in sensitive AC bridge circuits is that of stray capacitance between either end of the null detector unit and ground (earth) potential. Because capacitances can "conduct" alternating current by charging and discharging, they form stray current paths to the AC voltage source which may affect bridge balance: (Figure 12.35)

While reed-type meters are imprecise, their operational principle is not. In lieu of mechanical resonance, we may substitute electrical resonance and design a frequency meter using an inductor and capacitor in the form of a tank circuit (parallel inductor and capacitor). One or both components are made adjustable, and a meter is placed in the circuit to indicate maximum amplitude of voltage across the two components. The adjustment knob(s) are calibrated to show resonant frequency for any given setting, and the frequency is read from them after the device has been adjusted for maximum indication on the meter. Essentially, this is a tunable filter circuit which is adjusted and then read in a manner similar to a bridge circuit (which must be balanced for a "null" condition and then read). The problem is worsened if the AC voltage source is firmly grounded at one end, the total stray impedance for leakage currents made far less and any leakage currents through these stray capacitances made greater as a result: (Figure 12.36)

One way of greatly reducing this effect is to keep the null detector at ground potential, so there will be no AC voltage between it and the ground, and thus no current through stray capacitances. However, directly connecting the null detector to ground is not an option, as it would create a *direct* current path for stray currents, which would be worse than any capacitive path. Instead, a special voltage divider circuit called a *Wagner ground* or *Wagner earth* may be used to maintain the null detector at ground potential without the need for a direct connection to the null detector. (Figure 12.37)

The Wagner earth circuit is nothing more than a voltage divider, designed to have the volt-

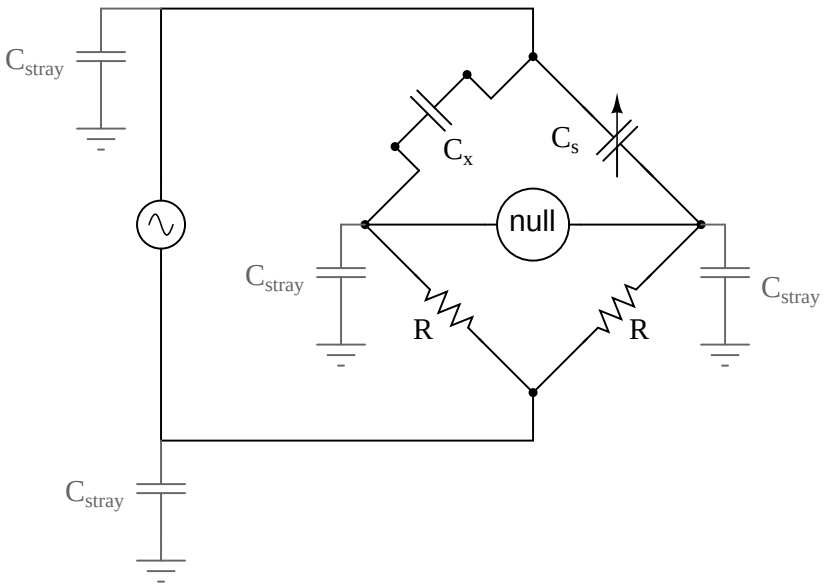


Figure 12.35: *Stray capacitance to ground may introduce errors into the bridge.*

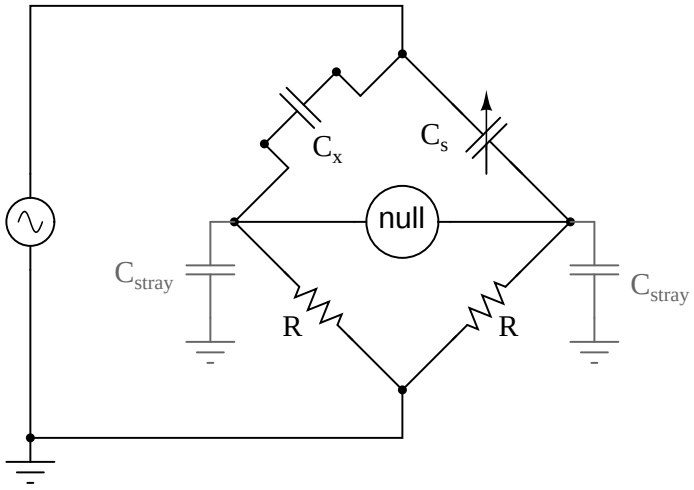


Figure 12.36: *Stray capacitance errors are more severe if one side of the AC supply is grounded.*

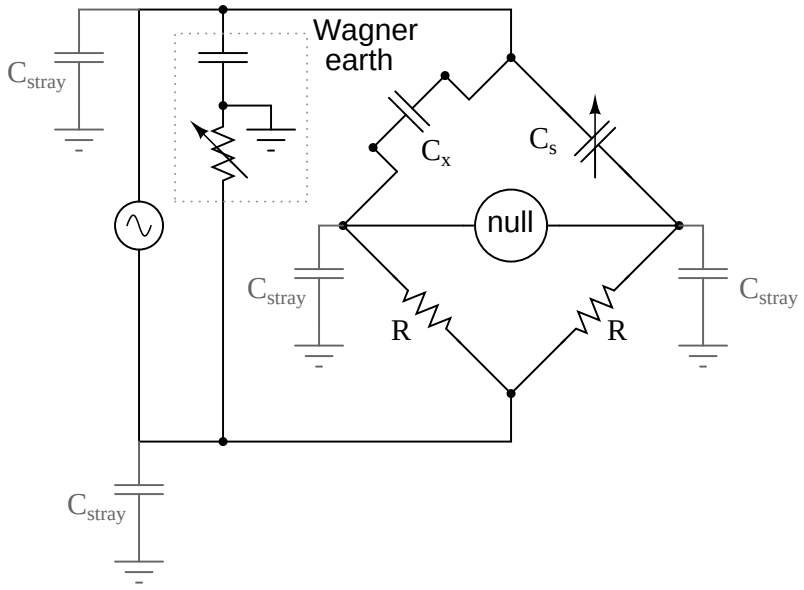


Figure 12.37: *Wagner ground for AC supply minimizes the effects of stray capacitance to ground on the bridge.*

age ratio and phase shift as each side of the bridge. Because the midpoint of the Wagner divider is directly grounded, any other divider circuit (including either side of the bridge) having the same voltage proportions and phases as the Wagner divider, and powered by the same AC voltage source, will be at ground potential as well. Thus, the Wagner earth divider forces the null detector to be at ground potential, without a direct connection between the detector and ground.

There is often a provision made in the null detector connection to confirm proper setting of the Wagner earth divider circuit: a two-position switch, (Figure 12.38) so that one end of the null detector may be connected to either the bridge or the Wagner earth. When the null detector registers zero signal in both switch positions, the bridge is not only guaranteed to be balanced, but the null detector is also guaranteed to be at zero potential with respect to ground, thus eliminating any errors due to leakage currents through stray detector-to-ground capacitances:

- **REVIEW:**
- AC bridge circuits work on the same basic principle as DC bridge circuits: that a balanced ratio of impedances (rather than resistances) will result in a "balanced" condition as indicated by the null-detector device.
- Null detectors for AC bridges may be sensitive electromechanical meter movements, oscilloscopes (CRT's), headphones (amplified or unamplified), or any other device capable of registering very small AC voltage levels. Like DC null detectors, its only required point of calibration accuracy is at zero.

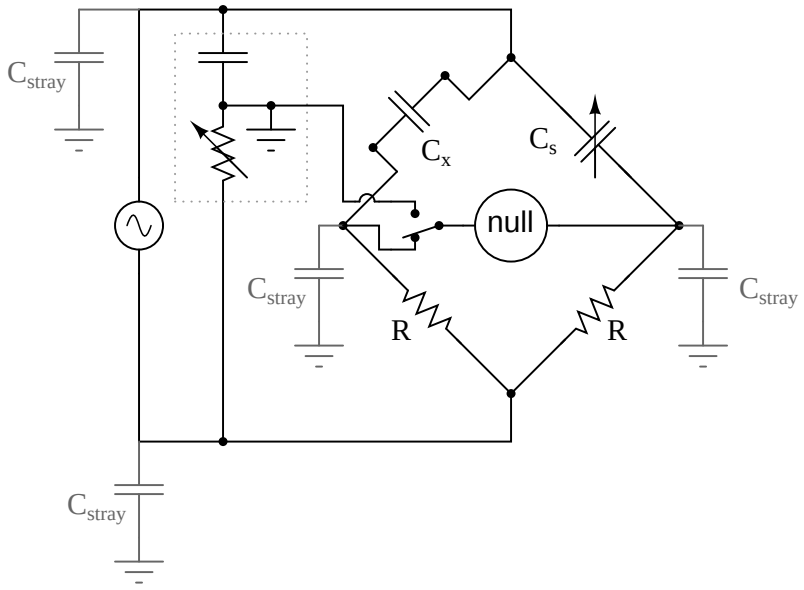


Figure 12.38: *Switch-up position allows adjustment of the Wagner ground.*

- AC bridge circuits can be of the "symmetrical" type where an unknown impedance is balanced by a standard impedance of similar type on the same side (top or bottom) of the bridge. Or, they can be "nonsymmetrical," using parallel impedances to balance series impedances, or even capacitances balancing out inductances.
- AC bridge circuits often have more than one adjustment, since both impedance magnitude *and* phase angle must be properly matched to balance.
- Some impedance bridge circuits are frequency-sensitive while others are not. The frequency-sensitive types may be used as frequency measurement devices if all component values are accurately known.
- A *Wagner earth* or *Wagner ground* is a voltage divider circuit added to AC bridges to help reduce errors due to stray capacitance coupling the null detector to ground.

12.6 AC instrumentation transducers

Just as devices have been made to measure certain physical quantities and repeat that information in the form of DC electrical signals (thermocouples, strain gauges, pH probes, etc.), special devices have been made that do the same with AC.

It is often necessary to be able to detect and transmit the physical position of mechanical parts via electrical signals. This is especially true in the fields of automated machine tool control and robotics. A simple and easy way to do this is with a potentiometer: (Figure 12.39)

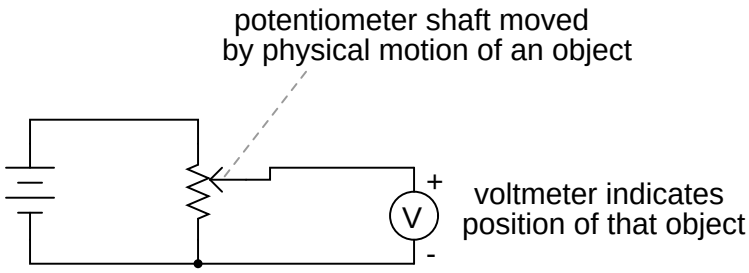


Figure 12.39: *Potentiometer tap voltage indicates position of an object slaved to the shaft.*

However, potentiometers have their own unique problems. For one, they rely on physical contact between the "wiper" and the resistance strip, which means they suffer the effects of physical wear over time. As potentiometers wear, their proportional output versus shaft position becomes less and less certain. You might have already experienced this effect when adjusting the volume control on an old radio: when twisting the knob, you might hear "scratching" sounds coming out of the speakers. Those noises are the result of poor wiper contact in the volume control potentiometer.

Also, this physical contact between wiper and strip creates the possibility of arcing (sparking) between the two as the wiper is moved. With most potentiometer circuits, the current is so low that wiper arcing is negligible, but it is a possibility to be considered. If the potentiometer is to be operated in an environment where combustible vapor or dust is present, this potential for arcing translates into a potential for an explosion!

Using AC instead of DC, we are able to completely avoid sliding contact between parts if we use a *variable transformer* instead of a potentiometer. Devices made for this purpose are called LVDT's, which stands for **L**inear **V**ariable **D**ifferential **T**ransformers. The design of an LVDT looks like this: (Figure 12.40)

Obviously, this device is a *transformer*: it has a single primary winding powered by an external source of AC voltage, and two secondary windings connected in series-bucking fashion. It is *variable* because the core is free to move between the windings. It is *differential* because of the way the two secondary windings are connected. Being arranged to oppose each other (180^o out of phase) means that the output of this device will be the *difference* between the voltage output of the two secondary windings. When the core is centered and both windings are outputting the same voltage, the net result at the output terminals will be zero volts. It is called *linear* because the core's freedom of motion is straight-line.

The AC voltage output by an LVDT indicates the position of the movable core. Zero volts means that the core is centered. The further away the core is from center position, the greater percentage of input ("excitation") voltage will be seen at the output. The phase of the output voltage relative to the excitation voltage indicates which direction from center the core is offset.

The primary advantage of an LVDT over a potentiometer for position sensing is the absence of physical contact between the moving and stationary parts. The core does not contact the wire windings, but slides in and out within a nonconducting tube. Thus, the LVDT does not "wear" like a potentiometer, nor is there the possibility of creating an arc.

Excitation of the LVDT is typically 10 volts RMS or less, at frequencies ranging from power

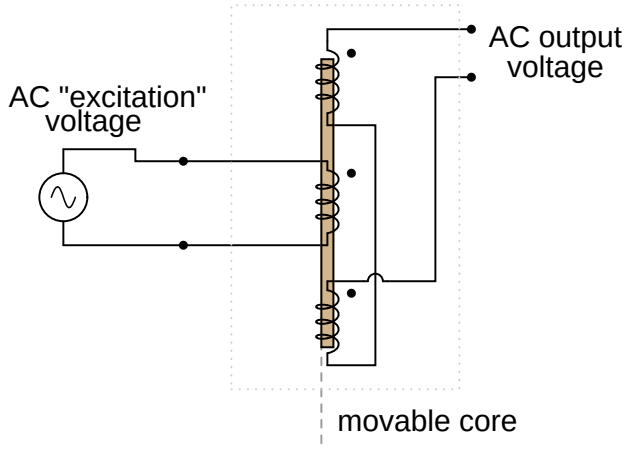


Figure 12.40: *AC output of linear variable differential transformer (LVDT) indicates core position.*

line to the high audio (20 kHz) range. One potential disadvantage of the LVDT is its response time, which is mostly dependent on the frequency of the AC voltage source. If very quick response times are desired, the frequency must be higher to allow whatever voltage-sensing circuits enough cycles of AC to determine voltage level as the core is moved. To illustrate the potential problem here, imagine this exaggerated scenario: an LVDT powered by a 60 Hz voltage source, with the core being moved in and out hundreds of times per second. The output of this LVDT wouldn't even look like a sine wave because the core would be moved throughout its range of motion before the AC source voltage could complete a single cycle! It would be almost impossible to determine instantaneous core position if it moves faster than the instantaneous source voltage does.

A variation on the LVDT is the RVDT, or **R**otary **V**ariable **D**ifferential **T**ransformer. This device works on almost the same principle, except that the core revolves on a shaft instead of moving in a straight line. RVDT's can be constructed for limited motion of 360^o (full-circle) motion.

Continuing with this principle, we have what is known as a *Synchro* or *Selsyn*, which is a device constructed a lot like a wound-rotor polyphase AC motor or generator. The rotor is free to revolve a full 360^o, just like a motor. On the rotor is a single winding connected to a source of AC voltage, much like the primary winding of an LVDT. The stator windings are usually in the form of a three-phase Y, although synchros with more than three phases have been built. (Figure 12.41) A device with a two-phase stator is known as a *resolver*. A resolver produces sine and cosine outputs which indicate shaft position.

Voltages induced in the stator windings from the rotor's AC excitation are *not* phase-shifted by 120^o as in a real three-phase generator. If the rotor were energized with DC current rather than AC and the shaft spun continuously, then the voltages would be true three-phase. But this is not how a synchro is designed to be operated. Rather, this is a *position-sensing* device much like an RVDT, except that its output signal is much more definite. With the rotor energized by AC, the stator winding voltages will be proportional in magnitude to the angular position

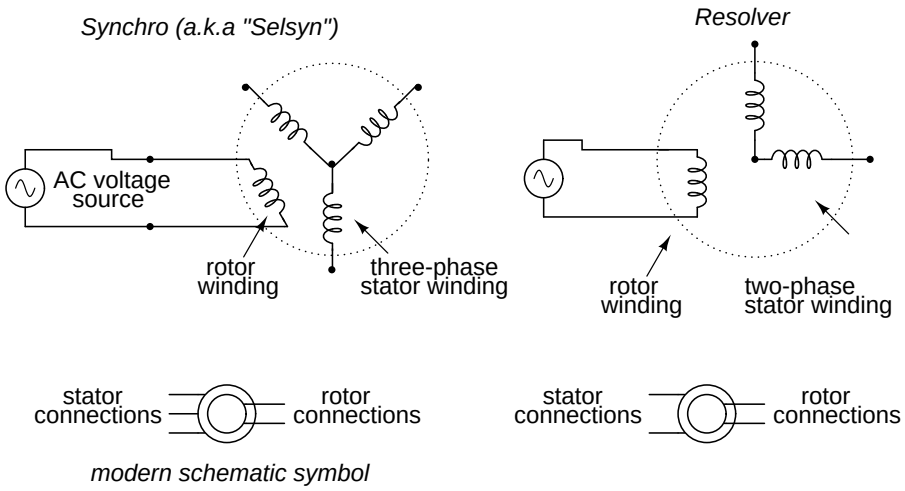


Figure 12.41: *A synchro is wound with a three-phase stator winding, and a rotating field. A resolver has a two-phase stator.*

of the rotor, phase either 0^o or 180^o shifted, like a regular LVDT or RVDT. You could think of it as a transformer with one primary winding and three secondary windings, each secondary winding oriented at a unique angle. As the rotor is slowly turned, each winding in turn will line up directly with the rotor, producing full voltage, while the other windings will produce something less than full voltage.

Synchros are often used in pairs. With their rotors connected in parallel and energized by the same AC voltage source, their shafts will match position to a high degree of accuracy: (Figure 12.42)

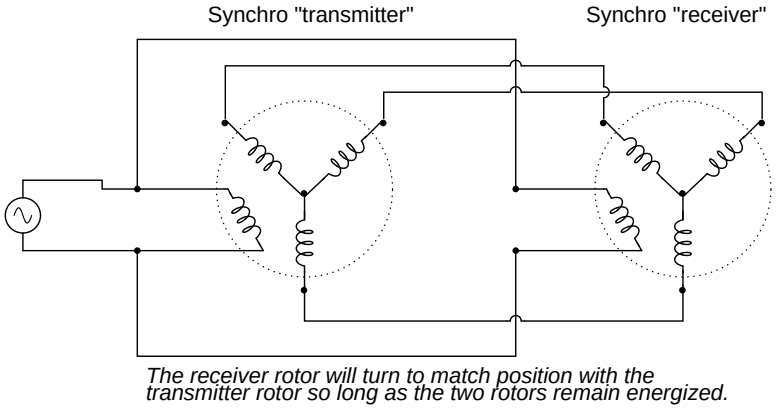


Figure 12.42: *Synchro shafts are slaved to each other. Rotating one moves the other.*

Such “transmitter/receiver” pairs have been used on ships to relay rudder position, or to

relay navigational gyro position over fairly long distances. The only difference between the "transmitter" and the "receiver" is which one gets turned by an outside force. The "receiver" can just as easily be used as the "transmitter" by forcing its shaft to turn and letting the synchro on the left match position.

If the receiver's rotor is left unpowered, it will act as a position-error detector, generating an AC voltage at the rotor if the shaft is anything other than 90^o or 270^o shifted from the shaft position of the transmitter. The receiver rotor will no longer generate any torque and consequently will no longer automatically match position with the transmitter's: (Figure 12.43)

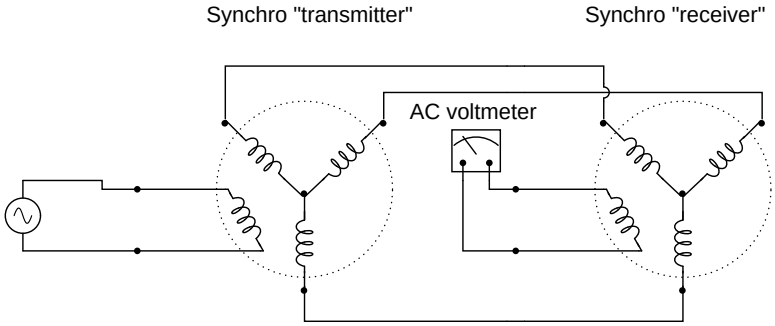


Figure 12.43: *AC voltmeter registers voltage if the receiver rotor is not rotated exactly 90 or 270 degrees from the transmitter rotor.*

This can be thought of almost as a sort of bridge circuit that achieves balance only if the receiver shaft is brought to one of two (matching) positions with the transmitter shaft.

One rather ingenious application of the synchro is in the creation of a phase-shifting device, provided that the stator is energized by three-phase AC: (Figure 12.44)

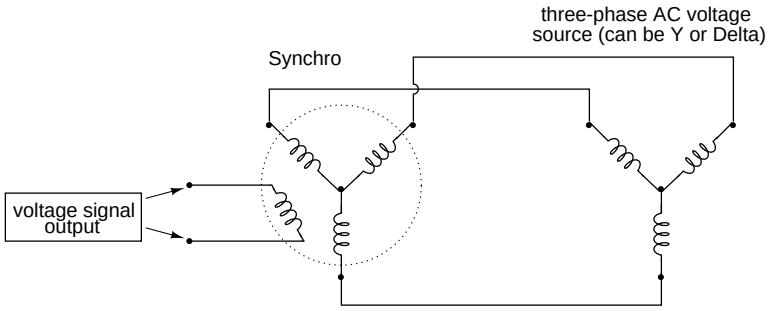


Figure 12.44: *Full rotation of the rotor will smoothly shift the phase from 0^o all the way to 360^o (back to 0^o).*

As the synchro's rotor is turned, the rotor coil will progressively align with each stator coil, their respective magnetic fields being 120^o phase-shifted from one another. In between those positions, these phase-shifted fields will mix to produce a rotor voltage somewhere between 0^o,

120^o, or 240^o shift. The practical result is a device capable of providing an infinitely variable-phase AC voltage with the twist of a knob (attached to the rotor shaft).

A synchro or a resolver may measure linear motion if geared with a rack and pinion mechanism. A linear movement of a few inches (or cm) resulting in multiple revolutions of the synchro (resolver) generates a train of sinewaves. An *Inductosyn*® is a linear version of the resolver. It outputs signals like a resolver; though, it bears slight resemblance.

The Inductosyn consists of two parts: a fixed serpentine winding having a 0.1 in or 2 mm pitch, and a movable winding known as a *slider*. (Figure 12.45) The slider has a pair of windings having the same pitch as the fixed winding. The slider windings are offset by a quarter pitch so both sine and cosine waves are produced by movement. One slider winding is adequate for counting pulses, but provides no direction information. The 2-phase windings provide direction information in the phasing of the sine and cosine waves. Movement by one pitch produces a cycle of sine and cosine waves; multiple pitches produce a train of waves.

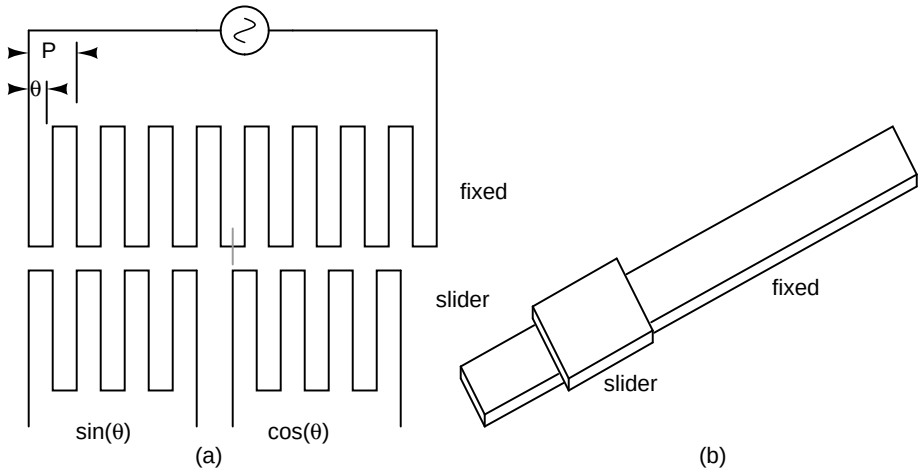


Figure 12.45: *Inductosyn: (a) Fixed serpentine winding, (b) movable slider 2-phase windings. Adapted from fig 6.16 [1]*

When we say sine and cosine waves are produces as a function of linear movement, we really mean a high frequency carrier is amplitude modulated as the slider moves. The two slider AC signals must be measured to determine position within a pitch, the fine position. How many pitches has the slider moved? The sine and cosine signals' relationship does not reveal that. However, the number of pitches (number of waves) may be counted from a known starting point yielding coarse position. This is an *incremental encoder*. If absolute position must be known regardless of the starting point, an auxiliary resolver geared for one revolution per length gives a coarse position. This constitutes an *absolute encoder*.

A linear Inductosyn has a transformer ratio of 100:1. Compare this to the 1:1 ratio for a resolver. A few volts AC excitation into an Inductosyn yields a few millivolts out. This low signal level is converted to to a 12-bit digital format by a *resolver to digital converter (RDC)*. Resolution of 25 microinches is achievable.

There is also a rotary version of the Inductosyn having 360 pattern pitches per revolution. When used with a 12-bit resolver to digital converter, better that 1 arc second resolution is achievable. This is an incremental encoder. Counting of pitches from a known starting point is necessary to determine absolute position. Alternatively, a resolver may determine coarse absolute position. [1]

So far the transducers discussed have all been of the inductive variety. However, it is possible to make transducers which operate on variable capacitance as well, AC being used to sense the change in capacitance and generate a variable output voltage.

Remember that the capacitance between two conductive surfaces varies with three major factors: the overlapping area of those two surfaces, the distance between them, and the dielectric constant of the material in between the surfaces. If two out of three of these variables can be fixed (stabilized) and the third allowed to vary, then any measurement of capacitance between the surfaces will be solely indicative of changes in that third variable.

Medical researchers have long made use of capacitive sensing to detect physiological changes in living bodies. As early as 1907, a German researcher named H. Cremer placed two metal plates on either side of a beating frog heart and measured the capacitance changes resulting from the heart alternately filling and emptying itself of blood. Similar measurements have been performed on human beings with metal plates placed on the chest and back, recording respiratory and cardiac action by means of capacitance changes. For more precise capacitive measurements of organ activity, metal probes have been inserted into organs (especially the heart) on the tips of catheter tubes, capacitance being measured between the metal probe and the body of the subject. With a sufficiently high AC excitation frequency and sensitive enough voltage detector, not just the pumping action but also the *sounds* of the active heart may be readily interpreted.

Like inductive transducers, capacitive transducers can also be made to be self-contained units, unlike the direct physiological examples described above. Some transducers work by making one of the capacitor plates movable, either in such a way as to vary the overlapping area or the distance between the plates. Other transducers work by moving a dielectric material in and out between two fixed plates: (Figure 12.46)

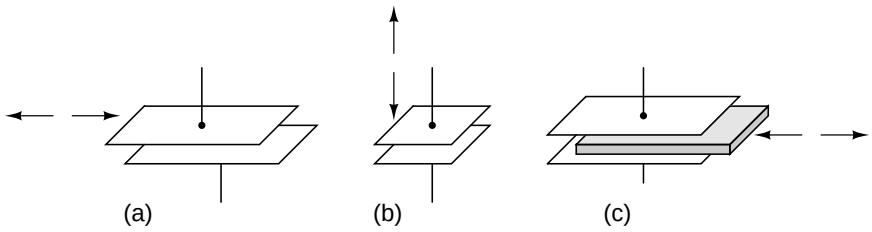


Figure 12.46: *Variable capacitive transducer varies; (a) area of overlap, (b) distance between plates, (c) amount of dielectric between plates.*

Transducers with greater sensitivity and immunity to changes in other variables can be obtained by way of differential design, much like the concept behind the LVDT (Linear Variable *Differential* Transformer). Here are a few examples of differential capacitive transducers: (Figure 12.47)

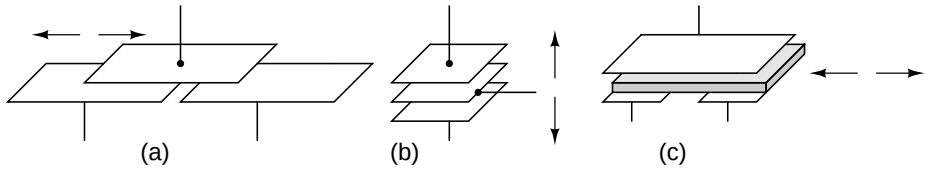


Figure 12.47: *Differential capacitive transducer varies capacitance ratio by changing: (a) area of overlap, (b) distance between plates, (c) dielectric between plates.*

As you can see, all of the differential devices shown in the above illustration have *three* wire connections rather than two: one wire for each of the "end" plates and one for the "common" plate. As the capacitance between one of the "end" plates and the "common" plate changes, the capacitance between the other "end" plate and the "common" plate is such to change in the opposite direction. This kind of transducer lends itself very well to implementation in a bridge circuit: (Figure 12.48)

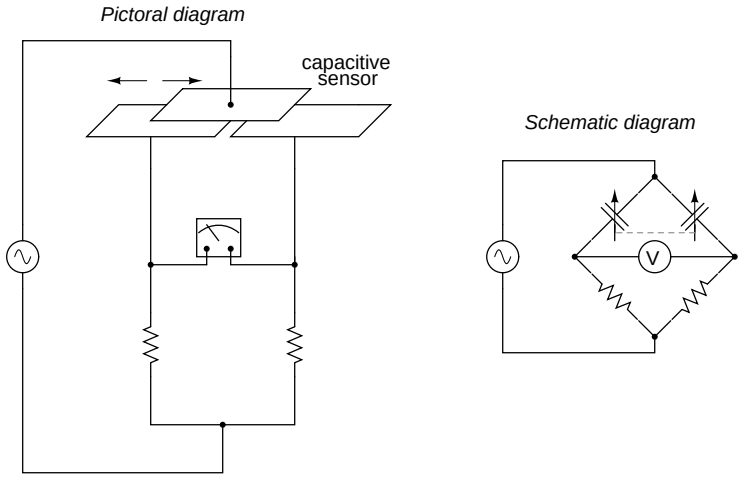


Figure 12.48: *Differential capacitive transducer bridge measurement circuit.*

Capacitive transducers provide relatively small capacitances for a measurement circuit to operate with, typically in the *pico*farad range. Because of this, high power supply frequencies (in the megahertz range!) are usually required to reduce these capacitive reactances to reasonable levels. Given the small capacitances provided by typical capacitive transducers, stray capacitances have the potential of being major sources of measurement error. Good conductor shielding is *essential* for reliable and accurate capacitive transducer circuitry!

The bridge circuit is not the only way to effectively interpret the differential capacitance output of such a transducer, but it is one of the simplest to implement and understand. As with the LVDT, the voltage output of the bridge is proportional to the displacement of the transducer action from its center position, and the direction of offset will be indicated by phase

shift. This kind of bridge circuit is similar in function to the kind used with strain gauges: it is not intended to be in a "balanced" condition all the time, but rather the degree of imbalance represents the magnitude of the quantity being measured.

An interesting alternative to the bridge circuit for interpreting differential capacitance is the *twin-T*. It requires the use of diodes, those "one-way valves" for electric current mentioned earlier in the chapter: (Figure 12.49)

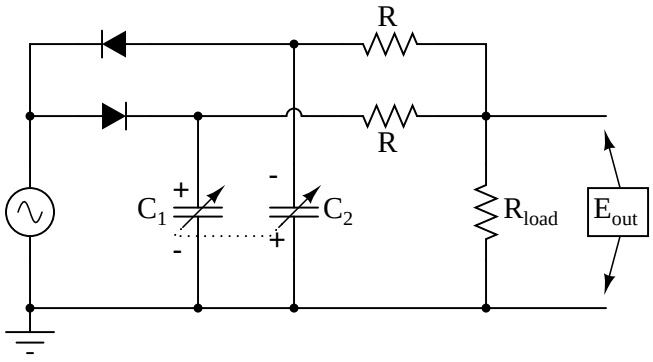


Figure 12.49: *Differential capacitive transducer "Twin-T" measurement circuit.*

This circuit might be better understood if re-drawn to resemble more of a bridge configuration: (Figure 12.50)

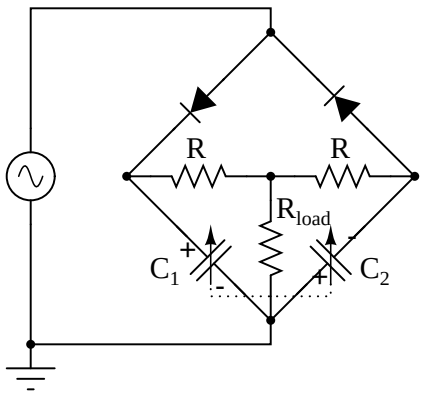


Figure 12.50: *Differential capacitor transducer "Twin-T" measurement circuit redrawn as a bridge.Output is across* R_{load}.

Capacitor C_1 is charged by the AC voltage source during every positive half-cycle (positive as measured in reference to the ground point), while C_2 is charged during every negative half-cycle. While one capacitor is being charged, the other capacitor discharges (at a slower rate than it was charged) through the three-resistor network. As a consequence, C_1 maintains a positive DC voltage with respect to ground, and C_2 a negative DC voltage with respect to

ground.

If the capacitive transducer is displaced from center position, one capacitor will increase in capacitance while the other will decrease. This has little effect on the peak voltage charge of each capacitor, as there is negligible resistance in the charging current path from source to capacitor, resulting in a very short time constant (τ). However, when it comes time to discharge through the resistors, the capacitor with the greater capacitance value will hold its charge longer, resulting in a greater average DC voltage over time than the lesser-value capacitor.

The load resistor (R_{load}), connected at one end to the point between the two equal-value resistors (R) and at the other end to ground, will drop no DC voltage if the two capacitors' DC voltage charges are equal in magnitude. If, on the other hand, one capacitor maintains a greater DC voltage charge than the other due to a difference in capacitance, the load resistor will drop a voltage proportional to the difference between these voltages. Thus, differential capacitance is translated into a DC voltage across the load resistor.

Across the load resistor, there is both AC and DC voltage present, with only the DC voltage being significant to the difference in capacitance. If desired, a low-pass filter may be added to the output of this circuit to block the AC, leaving only a DC signal to be interpreted by measurement circuitry: (Figure 12.51)

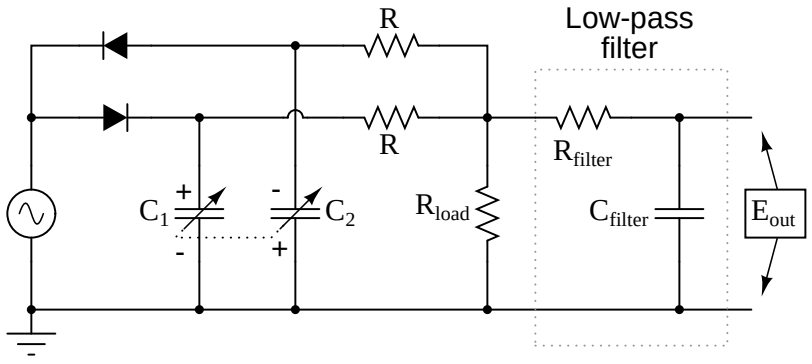


Figure 12.51: *Addition of low-pass filter to "twin-T" feeds pure DC to measurement indicator.*

As a measurement circuit for differential capacitive sensors, the twin-T configuration enjoys many advantages over the standard bridge configuration. First and foremost, transducer displacement is indicated by a simple DC voltage, not an AC voltage whose magnitude *and* phase must be interpreted to tell which capacitance is greater. Furthermore, given the proper component values and power supply output, this DC output signal may be strong enough to directly drive an electromechanical meter movement, eliminating the need for an amplifier circuit. Another important advantage is that all important circuit elements have one terminal directly connected to ground: the source, the load resistor, and both capacitors are all ground-referenced. This helps minimize the ill effects of stray capacitance commonly plaguing bridge measurement circuits, likewise eliminating the need for compensatory measures such as the Wagner earth.

This circuit is also easy to specify parts for. Normally, a measurement circuit incorporating complementary diodes requires the selection of "matched" diodes for good accuracy. Not so with

this circuit! So long as the power supply voltage is significantly greater than the deviation in voltage drop between the two diodes, the effects of mismatch are minimal and contribute little to measurement error. Furthermore, supply frequency variations have a relatively low impact on gain (how much output voltage is developed for a given amount of transducer displacement), and square-wave supply voltage works as well as sine-wave, assuming a 50% duty cycle (equal positive and negative half-cycles), of course.

Personal experience with using this circuit has confirmed its impressive performance. Not only is it easy to prototype and test, but its relative insensitivity to stray capacitance and its high output voltage as compared to traditional bridge circuits makes it a very robust alternative.

12.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jason Starck (June 2000): HTML document formatting, which led to a much better-looking second edition.

Bibliography

[1] Waltt Kestler, "Position and Motion Sensors", Analog Devices. http://www.analog.com/UploadedFiles/Associated_Docs/32469561844850653211484395250143580531854906618011988Fsect6.PDF

Chapter 13

AC MOTORS

Contents

Original author: Dennis Crunkilton

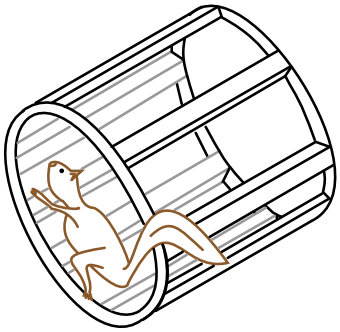


Figure 13.1: *Conductors of squirrel cage induction motor removed from rotor.*

13.1 Introduction

After the introduction of the DC electrical distribution system by Edison in the United States, a gradual transition to the more economical AC system commenced. Lighting worked as well on AC as on DC. Transmission of electrical energy covered longer distances at lower loss with alternating current. However, motors were a problem with alternating current. Initially, AC

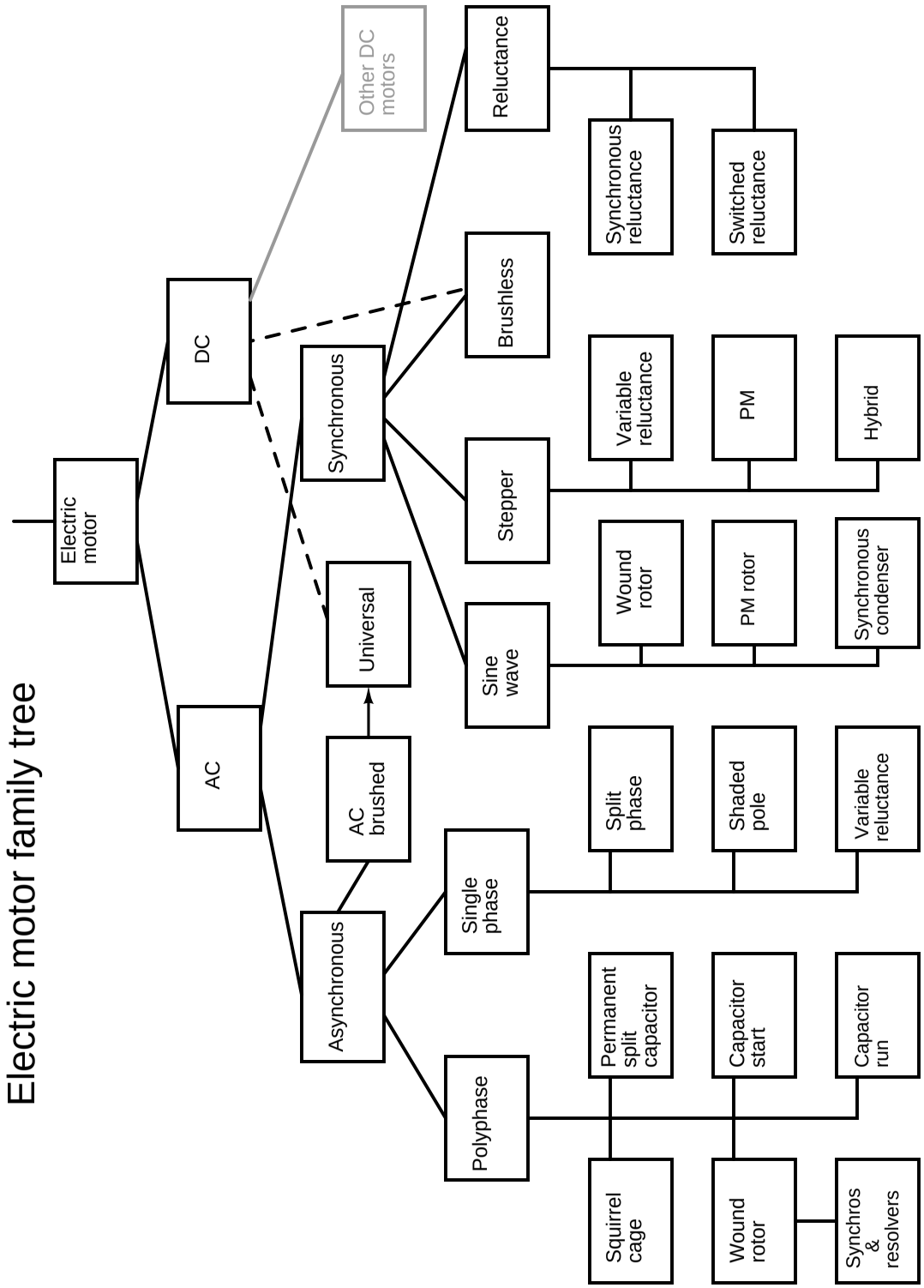


Figure 13.2: *AC electric motor family diagram.*

motors were constructed like DC motors. Numerous problems were encountered due to changing magnetic fields, as compared to the static fields in DC motor motor field coils.

Charles P. Steinmetz contributed to solving these problems with his investigation of hysteresis losses in iron armatures. Nikola Tesla envisioned an entirely new type of motor when he visualized a spinning turbine, not spun by water or steam, but by a rotating magnetic field. His new type of motor, the AC induction motor, is the workhorse of industry to this day. Its ruggedness and simplicity (Figure 13.1) make for long life, high reliability, and low maintenance. Yet small brushed AC motors, similar to the DC variety, persist in small appliances along with small Tesla induction motors. Above one horsepower (750 W), the Tesla motor reigns supreme.

Modern solid state electronic circuits drive *brushless DC motors* with AC waveforms generated from a DC source. The brushless DC motor, actually an AC motor, is replacing the conventional brushed DC motor in many applications. And, the *stepper motor*, a digital version of motor, is driven by alternating current square waves, again, generated by solid state circuitry. Figure 13.2 shows the family tree of the AC motors described in this chapter.

Cruise ships and other large vessels replace reduction geared drive shafts with large multi-megawatt generators and motors. Such has been the case with diesel-electric locomotives on a smaller scale for many years.

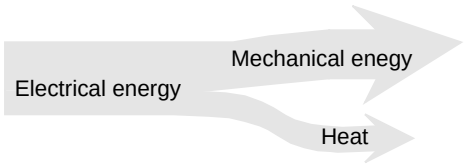


Figure 13.3: *Motor system level diagram.*

At the system level, (Figure 13.3) a motor takes in electrical energy in terms of a potential difference and a current flow, converting it to mechanical work. Alas, electric motors are not 100% efficient. Some of the electric energy is lost to heat, another form of energy, due to I^2R losses in the motor windings. The heat is an undesired byproduct of the conversion. It must be removed from the motor and may adversely affect longevity. Thus, one goal is to maximize motor efficiency, reducing the heat loss. AC motors also have some losses not encountered by DC motors: hysteresis and eddy currents.

13.1.1 Hysteresis and Eddy Current

Early designers of AC motors encountered problems traced to losses unique to alternating current magnetics. These problems were encountered when adapting DC motors to AC operation. Though few AC motors today bear any resemblance to DC motors, these problems had to be solved before AC motors of any type could be properly designed before they were built.

Both rotor and stator cores of AC motors are composed of a stack of insulated laminations. The laminations are coated with insulating varnish before stacking and bolting into the final form. *Eddy currents* are minimized by breaking the potential conductive loop into smaller less lossy segments. (Figure 13.4) The current loops look like shorted transformer secondary turns.

The thin isolated laminations break these loops. Also, the silicon (a semiconductor) added to the alloy used in the laminations increases electrical resistance which decreases the magnitude of eddy currents.

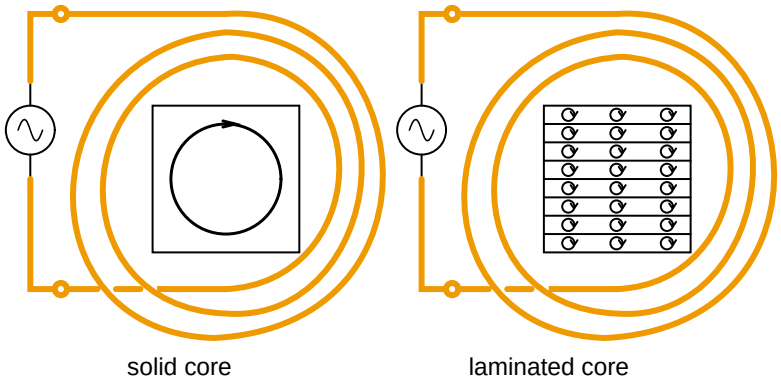


Figure 13.4: *Eddy currents in iron cores.*

If the laminations are made of silicon alloy grain oriented steel, *hysteresis* losses are minimized. Magnetic hysteresis is a lagging behind of magnetic field strength as compared to magnetizing force. If a soft iron nail is temporarily magnetized by a solenoid, one would expect the nail to lose the magnetic field once the solenoid is de-energized. However, a small amount of *residual magnetization*, B_r due to hysteresis remains. (Figure 13.5) An alternating current has to expend energy, $-H_c$ the *coercive force*, in overcoming this residual magnetization before it can magnetize the core back to zero, let alone in the opposite direction. Hysteresis loss is encountered each time the polarity of the AC reverses. The loss is proportional to the area enclosed by the hysteresis loop on the B-H curve. "Soft" iron alloys have lower losses than "hard" high carbon steel alloys. Silicon grain oriented steel, 4% silicon, rolled to preferentially orient the grain or crystalline structure, has still lower losses.

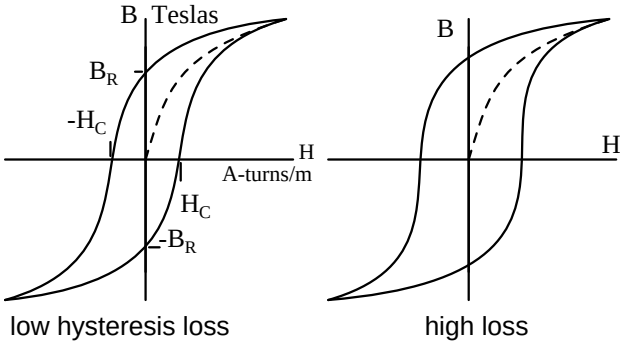


Figure 13.5: *Hysteresis curves for low and high loss alloys.*

Once Steinmetz's Laws of hysteresis could predict iron core losses, it was possible to design

AC motors which performed as designed. This was akin to being able to design a bridge ahead of time that would not collapse once it was actually built. This knowledge of eddy current and hysteresis was first applied to building AC commutator motors similar to their DC counterparts. Today this is but a minor category of AC motors. Others invented new types of AC motors bearing little resemblance to their DC kin.

13.2 Synchronous Motors

Single phase synchronous motors are available in small sizes for applications requiring precise timing such as time keeping, (clocks) and tape players. Though battery powered quartz regulated clocks are widely available, the AC line operated variety has better long term accuracy−− over a period of months. This is due to power plant operators purposely maintaining the long term accuracy of the frequency of the AC distribution system. If it falls behind by a few cycles, they will make up the lost cycles of AC so that clocks lose no time.

Above 10 Horsepower (10 kW) the higher efficiency and leading powerfactor make large synchronous motors useful in industry. Large synchronous motors are a few percent more efficient than the more common induction motors. Though, the synchronous motor is more complex.

Since motors and generators are similar in construction, it should be possible to use a generator as a motor, conversely, use a motor as a generator. A synchronous motor is similar to an alternator with a rotating field. The figure below shows small alternators with a permanent magnet rotating field. This figure 13.6 could either be two paralleled and synchronized alternators driven by a mechanical energy sources, or an alternator driving a synchronous motor. Or, it could be two motors, if an external power source were connected. The point is that in either case the rotors must run at the same nominal frequency, and be in phase with each other. That is, they must be *synchronized*. The procedure for synchronizing two alternators is to (1) open the switch, (2) drive both alternators at the same rotational rate, (3) advance or retard the phase of one unit until both AC outputs are in phase, (4) close the switch before they drift out of phase. Once synchronized, the alternators will be locked to each other, requiring considerable torque to break one unit loose (out of synchronization) from the other.

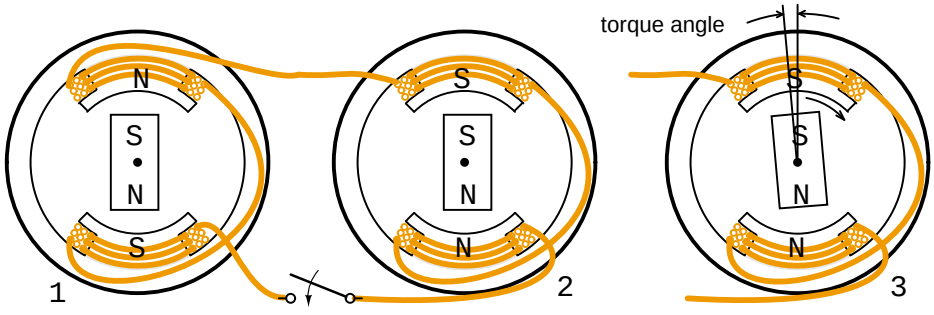


Figure 13.6: *Synchronous motor running in step with alternator.*

If more torque in the direction of rotation is applied to the rotor of one of the above rotating

alternators, the angle of the rotor will advance (opposite of (3)) with respect to the magnetic field in the stator coils while still synchronized and the rotor will deliver energy to the AC line like an alternator. The rotor will also be advanced with respect to the rotor in the other alternator. If a load such as a brake is applied to one of the above units, the angle of the rotor will lag the stator field as at (3), extracting energy from the AC line, like a motor. If excessive torque or drag is applied, the rotor will exceed the maximum *torque angle* advancing or lagging so much that synchronization is lost. Torque is developed only when synchronization of the motor is maintained.

In the case of a small synchronous motor in place of the alternator Figure 13.6 right, it is not necessary to go through the elaborate synchronization procedure for alternators. However, the synchronous motor is not self starting and must still be brought up to the approximate alternator electrical speed before it will lock (synchronize) to the generator rotational rate. Once up to speed, the synchronous motor will maintain synchronism with the AC power source and develop torque.

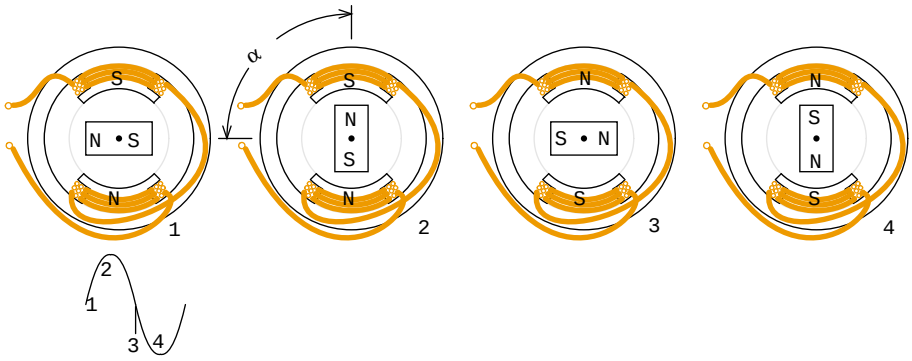


Figure 13.7: *Sinewave drives synchronous motor.*

Assuming that the motor is up to synchronous speed, as the sine wave changes to positive in Figure 13.7 (1), the lower north coil pushes the north rotor pole, while the upper south coil attracts that rotor north pole. In a similar manner the rotor south pole is repelled by the upper south coil and attracted to the lower north coil. By the time that the sine wave reaches a peak at (2), the torque holding the north pole of the rotor up is at a maximum. This torque decreases as the sine wave decreases to 0 V_{DC} at (3) with the torque at a minimum.

As the sine wave changes to negative between (3&4), the lower south coil pushes the south rotor pole, while attracting rotor north rotor pole. In a similar manner the rotor north pole is repelled by the upper north coil and attracted to the lower south coil. At (4) the sinewave reaches a negative peak with holding torque again at a maximum. As the sine wave changes from negative to 0 V_{DC} to positive, The process repeats for a new cycle of sine wave.

Note, the above figure illustrates the rotor position for a no-load condition (α=0^o). In actual practice, loading the rotor will cause the rotor to lag the positions shown by angle α. This angle increases with loading until the maximum motor torque is reached at α=90^o electrical. Synchronization and torque are lost beyond this angle.

The current in the coils of a single phase synchronous motor pulsates while alternating

polarity. If the permanent magnet rotor speed is close to the frequency of this alternation, it synchronizes to this alternation. Since the coil field pulsates and does not rotate, it is necessary to bring the permanent magnet rotor up to speed with an auxiliary motor. This is a small induction motor similar to those in the next section.

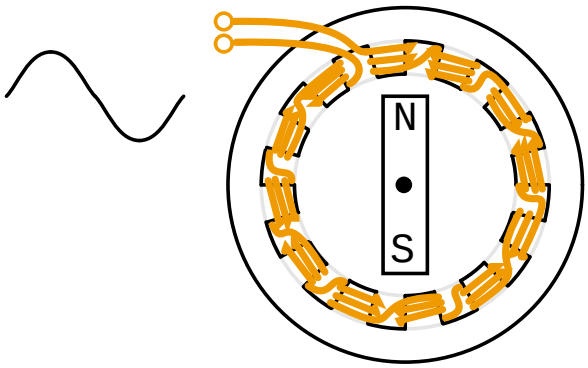


Figure 13.8: *Addition of field poles decreases speed.*

A 2-pole (pair of N-S poles) alternator will generate a 60 Hz sine wave when rotated at 3600 rpm (revolutions per minute). The 3600 rpm corresponds to 60 revolutions per second. A similar 2-pole permanent magnet synchronous motor will also rotate at 3600 rpm. A lower speed motor may be constructed by adding more pole pairs. A 4-pole motor would rotate at 1800 rpm, a 12-pole motor at 600 rpm. The style of construction shown (Figure 13.8) is for illustration. Higher efficiency higher torque multi-pole stator synchronous motors actually have multiple poles in the rotor.

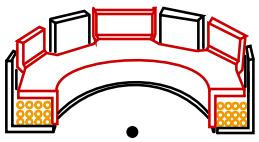


Figure 13.9: *One-winding 12-pole synchronous motor.*

Rather than wind 12-coils for a 12-pole motor, wind a single coil with twelve interdigitated steel poles pieces as shown in Figure 13.9. Though the polarity of the coil alternates due to the appplied AC, assume that the top is temporarily north, the bottom south. Pole pieces route the south flux from the bottom and outside of the coil to the top. These 6-souths are interleaved with 6-north tabs bent up from the top of the steel pole piece of the coil. Thus, a permanent magnet rotor bar will encounter 6-pole pairs corresponding to 6-cycles of AC in one physical rotation of the bar magnet. The rotation speed will be 1/6 of the electrical speed of the AC. Rotor speed will be 1/6 of that experienced with a 2-pole synchronous motor. Example: 60 Hz would rotate a 2-pole motor at 3600 rpm, or 600 rpm for a 12-pole motor.

The stator (Figure 13.10) shows a 12-pole Westclox synchronous clock motor. Construction is similar to the previous figure with a single coil. The one coil style of construction is

Figure 13.10: *Reprinted by permission of Westclox History at* www.clockHistory.com

economical for low torque motors. This 600 rpm motor drives reduction gears moving clock hands.

If the Westclox motor were to run at 600 rpm from a 50 Hz power source, how many poles would be required? A 10-pole motor would have 5-pairs of N-S poles. It would rotate at 50/5 = 10 rotations per second or 600 rpm (10 s^{-1} x 60 s/minute.)

Figure 13.11: *Reprinted by permission of Westclox History at* www.clockHistory.com

The rotor (Figure 13.11) consists of a permanent magnet bar and a steel induction motor cup. The synchronous motor bar rotating within the pole tabs keeps accurate time. The induction motor cup outside of the bar magnet fits outside and over the tabs for self starting. At one time non-self-starting motors without the induction motor cup were manufactured.

A 3-phase synchronous motor as shown in Figure 13.12 generates an electrically rotating field in the stator. Such motors are not self starting if started from a fixed frequency power

source such as 50 or 60 Hz as found in an industrial setting. Furthermore, the rotor is not a permanent magnet as shown below for the multi-horsepower (multi-kilowatt) motors used in industry, but an electromagnet. Large industrial synchronous motors are more efficient than induction motors. They are used when constant speed is required. Having a leading power factor, they can correct the AC line for a lagging power factor.

The three phases of stator excitation add vectorially to produce a single resultant magnetic field which rotates f/2n times per second, where f is the power line frequency, 50 or 60 Hz for industrial power line operated motors. The number of poles is n. For rotor speed in rpm, multiply by 60.

```
S = f120/n

where: S = rotor speed in rpm
       f = AC line frequency
       n = number of poles per phase
```

The 3-phase 4-pole (per phase) synchronous motor (Figure 13.12) will rotate at 1800 rpm with 60 Hz power or 1500 rpm with 50 Hz power. If the coils are energized one at a time in the sequence ϕ-1, ϕ-2, ϕ-3, the rotor should point to the corresponding poles in turn. Since the sine waves actually overlap, the resultant field will rotate, not in steps, but smoothly. For example, when the ϕ-1 and ϕ-2 sinewaves coincide, the field will be at a peak pointing between these poles. The bar magnet rotor shown is only appropriate for small motors. The rotor with multiple magnet poles (below right) is used in any efficient motor driving a substantial load. These will be slip ring fed electromagnets in large industrial motors. Large industrial synchronous motors are self started by embedded squirrel cage conductors in the armature, acting like an induction motor. The electromagnetic armature is only energized after the rotor is brought up to near synchronous speed.

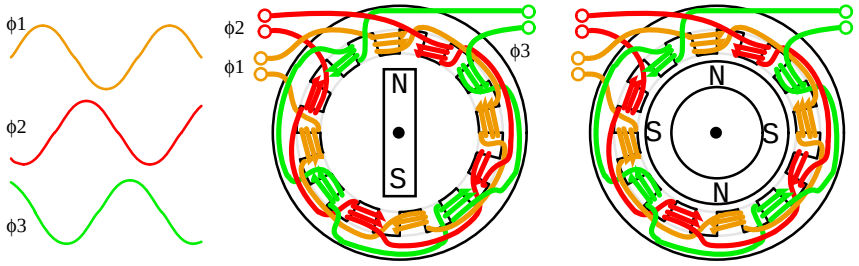


Figure 13.12: *Three phase, 4-pole synchronous motor*

Small multi-phase synchronous motors (Figure 13.12) may be started by ramping the drive frequency from zero to the final running frequency. The multi-phase drive signals are generated by electronic circuits, and will be square waves in all but the most demanding applications. Such motors are known as brushless DC motors. True synchronous motors are driven by sine waveforms. Two or three phase drive may be used by supplying the appropriate number of windings in the stator. Only 3-phase is shown above.

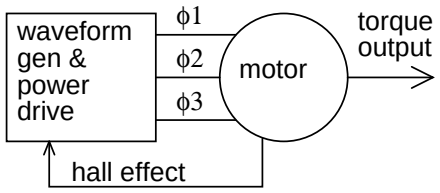


Figure 13.13: *Electronic synchronous motor*

The block diagram (Figure 13.13) shows the drive electronics associated with a low voltage (12 V_{DC}) synchronous motor. These motors have a *position sensor* integrated within the motor, which provides a low level signal with a frequency proportional to the speed of rotation of the motor. The position sensor could be as simple as as solid state magnetic field sensors such as *Hall effect* devices providing commutation (armature current direction) timing to the drive electronics The position sensor could be a high resolution angular sensor such as a resolver, inductosyn (magnetic encoder), or an optical encoder.

If constant and accurate speed of rotation is required, (as for a disk drive) a *tachometer* and *phase locked loop* may be included. (Figure 13.14) This tachometer signal, a pulse train proportional to motor speed, is fed back to a phase locked loop, which compares the tachometer frequency and phase to a stable reference frequency source such as a crystal oscillator.

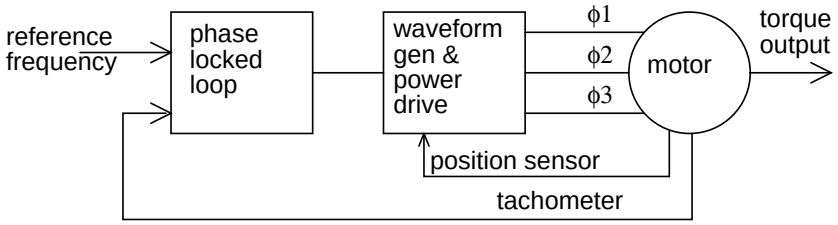


Figure 13.14: *Phase locked loop controls synchronous motor speed.*

A motor driven by square waves of current, as proviced by simple hall effect sensors, is known as a *brushless DC motor*. This type of motor has higher *ripple torque* torque variation through a shaft revolution than a sine wave driven motor. This is not a problem for many applications. Though, we are primarily interested in synchronous motors in this section.

Ripple torque, or cogging is caused by magnetic attraction of the rotor poles to the stator pole pieces. (Figure 13.15) Note that there are no stator coils, not even a motor. The PM rotor may be rotated by hand but will encounter attraction to the pole pieces when near them. This is analogous to the mechanical situation. Would ripple torque be a problem for a motor used in a tape player? Yes, we do not want the motor to alternately speed and slow as it moves audio tape past a tape playback head. Would ripple torque be a problem for a fan motor? No.

If a motor is driven by sinewaves of current synchronous with the motor back emf, it is classified as a synchronous AC motor, regardless of whether the drive waveforms are generated by electronic means. A synchronous motor will generate a sinusoidal back emf if the stator

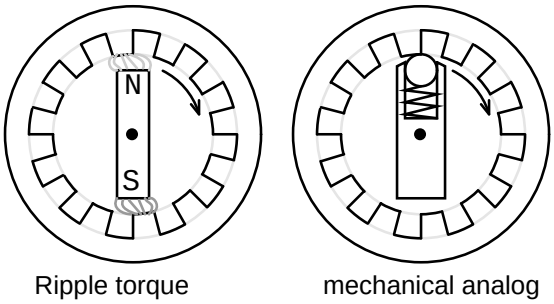


Figure 13.15: *Motor ripple torque and mechanical analog.*

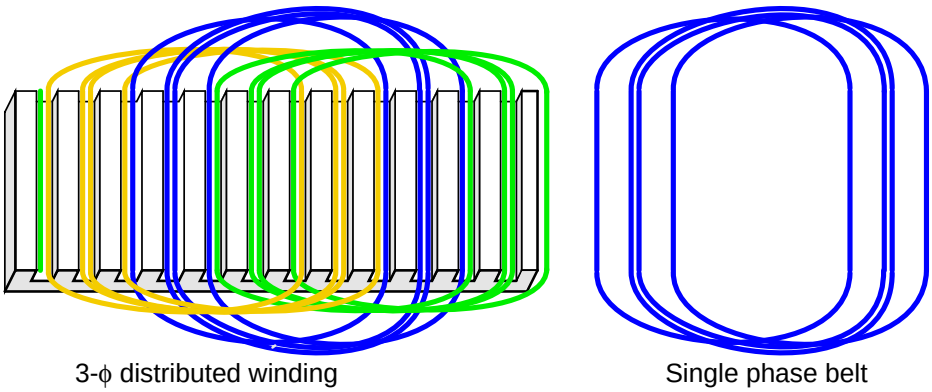


Figure 13.16: *Windings distributed in a belt produce a more sinusoidal field.*

magnetic field has a sinusoidal distribution. It will be more sinusoidal if pole windings are distributed in a belt (Figure 13.16) across many slots instead of concentrated on one large pole (as drawn in most of our simplified illustrations). This arrangement cancels many of the stator field odd harmonics. Slots having fewer windings at the edge of the phase winding may share the space with other phases. Winding belts may take on an alternate concentric form as shown in Figure 13.76.

For a 2-phase motor, driven by a sinewave, the torque is constant throughout a revolution by the trigonometric identity:

$$\sin^2\theta + \cos^2\theta = 1$$

The generation and synchronization of the drive waveform requires a more precise rotor position indication than provided by the hall effect sensors used in brushless DC motors. A *resolver*, or *optical or magnetic encoder* provides resolution of hundreds to thousands of parts (pulses) per revolution. A resolver provides analog angular position signals in the form of signals proportional to the sine and cosine of shaft angle. Encoders provide a digital angular position indication in either serial or parallel format. The sine wave drive may actually be from a PWM, *Pulse Width Modulator*, a high efficiency method of approximating a sinewave with a digital waveform. (Figure 13.17) Each phase requires drive electronics for this wave form phase-shifted by the appropriate amount per phase.

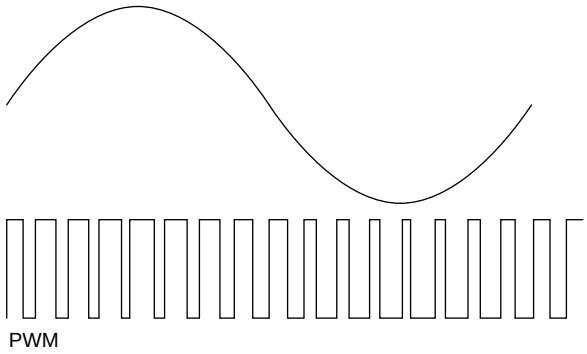


Figure 13.17: *PWM approximates a sinewave.*

Synchronous motor efficiency is higher than that of induction motors. The synchronous motor can also be smaller, especially if high energy permanent magnets are used in the rotor. The advent of modern solid state electronics makes it possible to drive these motors at variable speed. Induction motors are mostly used in railway traction. However, a small synchronous motor, which mounts inside a drive wheel, makes it attractive for such applications. The *high temperature superconducting* version of this motor is one fifth to one third the weight of a copper wound motor.[1] The largest experimental superconducting synchronous motor is capable of driving a naval destroyer class ship. In all these applications the electronic variable speed drive is essential.

The variable speed drive must also reduce the drive voltage at low speed due to decreased inductive reactance at lower frequency. To develop maximum torque, the rotor needs to lag the stator field direction by 90^o. Any more, it loses synchronization. Much less results in reduced torque. Thus, the position of the rotor needs to be known accurately. And the position of the rotor with respect to the stator field needs to be calculated, and controlled. This type of control is known as *vector phase control*. It is implemented with a fast microprocessor driving a pulse width modulator for the stator phases.

The stator of a synchronous motor is the same as that of the more popular induction motor. As a result the industrial grade electronic speed control used with induction motors is also applicable to large industrial synchronous motors.

If the rotor and stator of a conventional rotary synchronous motor are unrolled, a synchronous linear motor results. This type of motor is applied to precise high speed linear positioning.[2]

A larger version of the linear synchronous motor with a movable carriage containing high energy NdBFe permanent magnets is being developed to launch aircraft from naval aricraft carriers.[3]

13.3 Synchronous condenser

Synchronous motors load the power line with a leading power factor. This is often usefull in cancelling out the more commonly encountered lagging power factor caused by induction motors and other inductive loads. Originally, large industrial synchronous motors came into wide use because of this ability to correct the lagging power factor of induction motors.

This leading power factor can be exaggerated by removing the mechanical load and *over exciting* the field of the synchronous motor. Such a device is known as a *synchronous condenser*. Furthermore, the leading power factor can be adjusted by varying the field excitation. This makes it possible to nearly cancel an arbitrary lagging power factor to unity by paralleling the lagging load with a synchronous motor. A synchronous condenser is operated in a borderline condition between a motor and a generator with no mechanical load to fulfill this function. It can compensate either a leading or lagging power factor, by absorbing or supplying reactive power to the line. This enhances power line voltage regulation.

Since a synchronous condenser does not supply a torque, the output shaft may be dispensed with and the unit easily enclosed in a gas tight shell. The synchronous condenser may then be filled with hydrogen to aid cooling and reduce windage losses. Since the density of hydrogen is 7% of that of air, the windage loss for a hydrogen filled unit is 7% of that encountered in air. Furthermore, the thermal conductivity of hydrogen is ten times that of air. Thus, heat removal is ten times more efficient. As a result, a hydrogen filled synchronous condenser can be driven harder than an air cooled unit, or it may be physically smaller for a given capacity. There is no explosion hazard as long as the hydrogen concentration is maintained above 70%, typically above 91%.

The efficiency of long power transmission lines may be increased by placing synchronous condensers along the line to compensate lagging currents caused by line inductance. More real power may be transmitted through a fixed size line if the power factor is brought closer to unity by synchronous condensers absorbing reactive power.

The ability of synchronous condensers to absorb or produce reactive power on a transient basis stabilizes the power grid against short circuits and other transient fault conditions. Transient sags and dips of milliseconds duration are stabilized. This supplements longer response times of quick acting voltage regulation and excitation of generating equipment. The synchronous condenser aids voltage regulation by drawing leading current when the line voltage sags, which increases generator excitation thereby restoring line voltage. (Figure 13.18) A capacitor bank does not have this ability.

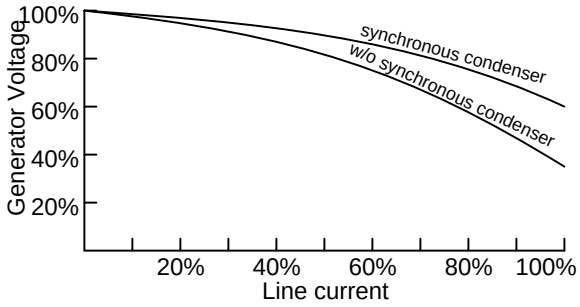


Figure 13.18: *Synchronous condenser improves power line voltage regulation.*

The capacity of a synchronous condenser can be increased by replacing the copper wound iron field rotor with an ironless rotor of *high temperature superconducting wire*, which must be cooled to the liquid nitrogen boiling point of 77^{o}K (-196^{o}C). The superconducting wire carries 160 times the current of comparable copper wire, while producing a flux density of 3 Teslas or higher. An iron core would saturate at 2 Teslas in the rotor air gap. Thus, an iron core, approximate μ_r=1000, is of no more use than air, or any other material with a relative permeability μ_r=1, in the rotor. Such a machine is said to have considerable additional transient ability to supply reactive power to troublesome loads like metal melting arc furnaces. The manufacturer describes it as being a “reactive power shock absorber”. Such a synchronous condenser has a higher power density (smaller physically) than a switched capacitor bank. The ability to absorb or produce reactive power on a transient basis stabilizes the overall power grid against fault conditions.

13.4 Reluctance motor

The *variable reluctance motor* is based on the principle that an unrestrained piece of iron will move to complete a magnetic flux path with minimum *reluctance*, the magnetic analog of electrical resistance. (Figure 13.19)

13.4.1 Synchronous reluctance

If the rotating field of a large synchronous motor with salient poles is de-energized, it will still develop 10 or 15% of synchronous torque. This is due to variable reluctance throughout

a rotor revolution. There is no practical application for a large synchronous reluctance motor. However, it is practical in small sizes.

If slots are cut into the conductorless rotor of an induction motor, corresponding to the stator slots, a *synchronous reluctance motor* results. It starts like an induction motor but runs with a small amount of synchronous torque. The synchronous torque is due to changes in reluctance of the magnetic path from the stator through the rotor as the slots align. This motor is an inexpensive means of developing a moderate synchronous torque. Low power factor, low pull-out torque, and low efficiency are characteristics of the direct power line driven variable reluctance motor. Such was the status of the variable reluctance motor for a century before the development of semiconductor power control.

13.4.2 Switched reluctance

If an iron rotor with poles, but without any conductors, is fitted to a multi-phase stator, a *switched reluctance motor*, capable of synchronizing with the stator field results. When a stator coil pole pair is energized, the rotor will move to the lowest magnetic reluctance path. (Figure 13.19) A switched reluctance motor is also known as a variable reluctance motor. The reluctance of the rotor to stator flux path varies with the position of the rotor.

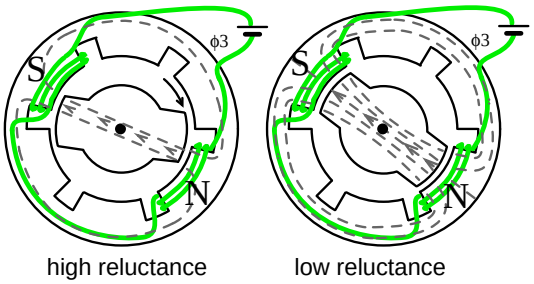


Figure 13.19: *Reluctance is a function of rotor position in a variable reluctance motor.*

Sequential switching (Figure 13.20) of the stator phases moves the rotor from one position to the next. The mangetic flux seeks the path of least reluctance, the magnetic analog of electric resistance. This is an over simplified rotor and waveforms to illustrate operation.

If one end of each 3-phase winding of the switched reluctance motor is brought out via a common lead wire, we can explain operation as if it were a stepper motor. (Figure 13.20) The other coil connections are successively pulled to ground, one at a time, in a *wave drive* pattern. This attracts the rotor to the clockwise rotating magnetic field in 60^o increments.

Various waveforms may drive variable reluctance motors. (Figure 13.21) Wave drive (a) is simple, requiring only a single ended unipolar switch. That is, one which only switches in one direction. More torque is provided by the bipolar drive (b), but requires a bipolar switch. The power driver must pull alternately high and low. Waveforms (a & b) are applicable to the stepper motor version of the variable reluctance motor. For smooth vibration free operation the 6-step approximation of a sine wave (c) is desirable and easy to generate. Sine wave drive (d) may be generated by a pulse width modulator (PWM), or drawn from the power line.

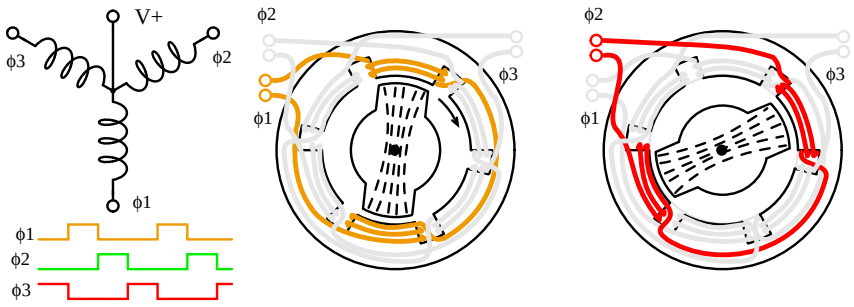


Figure 13.20: *Variable reluctance motor, over-simplified operation.*

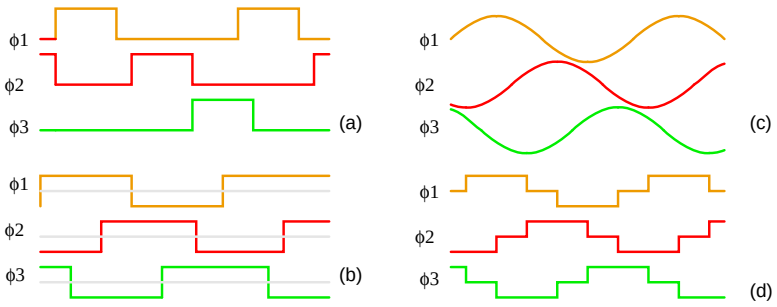


Figure 13.21: *Variable reluctance motor drive waveforms: (a) unipolar wave drive, (b) bipolar full step (c) sinewave (d) bipolar 6-step.*

Doubling the number of stator poles decreases the rotating speed and increases torque. This might eliminate a gear reduction drive. A variable reluctance motor intended to move in discrete steps, stop, and start is a *variable reluctance stepper motor*, covered in another section. If smooth rotation is the goal, there is an electronic driven version of the switched reluctance motor. Variable reluctance motors or steppers actually use rotors like those in Figure 13.22.

13.4.3 Electronic driven variable reluctance motor

Variable reluctance motors are poor performers when direct power line driven. However, microprocessors and solid state power drive makes this motor an economical high performance solution in some high volume applications.

Though difficult to control, this motor is easy to spin. Sequential switching of the field coils creates a rotating magnetic field which drags the irregularly shaped rotor around with it as it seeks out the lowest magnetic reluctance path. The relationship between torque and stator current is highly nonlinear– difficult to control.

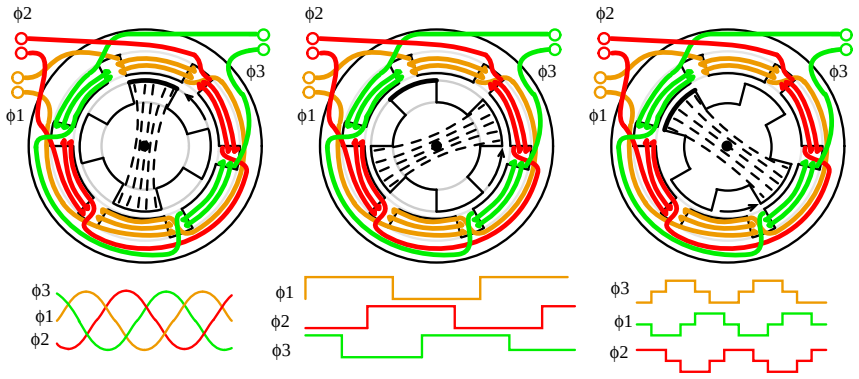


Figure 13.22: *Electronic driven variable reluctance motor.*

An electronic driven variable reluctance motor (Figure 13.23) resembles a brushless DC motor without a permanent magnet rotor. This makes the motor simple and inexpensive. However, this is offset by the cost of the electronic control, which is not nearly as simple as that for a brushless DC motor.

While the variable reluctance motor is simple, even more so than an induction motor, it is difficult to control. Electronic control solves this problem and makes it practical to drive the motor well above and below the power line frequency. A variable reluctance motor driven by a *servo*, an electronic feedback system, controls torque and speed, minimizing ripple torque. Figure 13.23

This is the opposite of the high ripple torque desired in stepper motors. Rather than a stepper, a variable reluctance motor is optimized for continuous high speed rotation with minimum ripple torque. It is necessary to measure the rotor position with a rotary position sensor like an optical or magnetic encoder, or derive this from monitoring the stator back EMF. A microprocessor performs complex calculations for switching the windings at the proper time with solid state devices. This must be done precisely to minimize audible noise and ripple

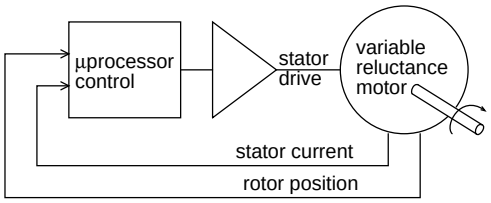


Figure 13.23: *Electronic driven variable reluctance motor.*

torque. For lowest ripple torque, winding current must be monitored and controlled. The strict drive requirements make this motor only practical for high volume applications like energy efficient vacuum cleaner motors, fan motors, or pump motors. One such vacuum cleaner uses a compact high efficiency electronic driven 100,000 rpm fan motor. The simplicity of the motor compensates for the drive electronics cost. No brushes, no commutator, no rotor windings, no permanent magnets, simplifies motor manufacture. The efficiency of this electronic driven motor can be high. But, it requires considerable optimization, using specialized design techniques, which is only justified for large manufacturing volumes.

Advantages

- Simple construction- no brushes, commutator, or permanent magnets, no Cu or Al in the rotor.
- High efficiency and reliability compared to conventional AC or DC motors.
- High starting torque.
- Cost effective compared to bushless DC motor in high volumes.
- Adaptable to very high ambient temperature.
- Low cost accurate speed control possible if volume is high enough.

Disadvantages

- Current versus torque is highly nonlinear
- Phase switching must be precise to minimize ripple torque
- Phase current must be controlled to minimize ripple torque
- Acoustic and electrical noise
- Not applicable to low volumes due to complex control issues

13.5 Stepper motors

A *stepper motor* is a "digital" version of the electric motor. The rotor moves in discrete steps as commanded, rather than rotating continuously like a conventional motor. When stopped but energized, a *stepper* (short for stepper motor) holds its load steady with a *holding torque*. Wide spread acceptance of the stepper motor within the last two decades was driven by the ascendancy of digital electronics. Modern solid state driver electronics was a key to its success. And, microprocessors readily interface to stepper motor driver circuits.

Application wise, the predecessor of the stepper motor was the servo motor. Today this is a higher cost solution to high performance motion control applications. The expense and complexity of a servomotor is due to the additional system components: position sensor and error amplifier. (Figure 13.24) It is still the way to position heavy loads beyond the grasp of lower power steppers. High acceleration or unusually high accuracy still requires a servo motor. Otherwise, the default is the stepper due to low cost, simple drive electronics, good accuracy, good torque, moderate speed, and low cost.

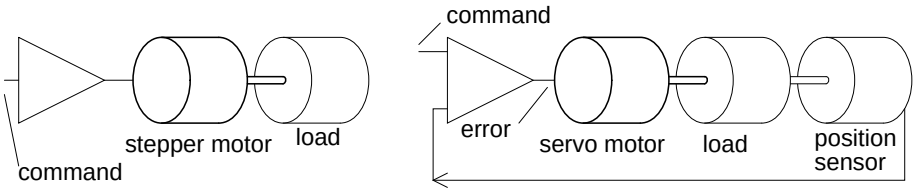


Figure 13.24: *Stepper motor vs servo motor.*

A stepper motor positions the read-write heads in a floppy drive. They were once used for the same purpose in harddrives. However, the high speed and accuracy required of modern harddrive head positioning dictates the use of a linear servomotor (voice coil).

The servo amplifier is a linear amplifier with some difficult to integrate discrete components. A considerable design effort is required to optimize the servo amplifier gain vs phase response to the mechanical components. The stepper motor drivers are less complex solid state switches, being either "on" or "off". Thus, a stepper motor controller is less complex and costly than a servo motor controller.

Slo-syn synchronous motors can run from AC line voltage like a single-phase permanent-capacitor induction motor. The capacitor generates a 90^o second phase. With the direct line voltage, we have a 2-phase drive. Drive waveforms of *bipolar* ($\pm$) square waves of 2-24V are more common these days. The bipolar magnetic fields may also be generated from *unipolar* (one polarity) voltages applied to alternate ends of a center tapped winding. (Figure 13.25) In other words, DC can be switched to the motor so that it sees AC. As the windings are energized in sequence, the rotor synchronizes with the consequent stator magnetic field. Thus, we treat stepper motors as a class of AC synchronous motor.

13.5.1 Characteristics

Stepper motors are rugged and inexpensive because the rotor contains no winding slip rings, or commutator. The rotor is a cylindrical solid, which may also have either salient poles or

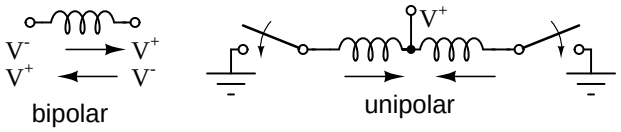


Figure 13.25: *Unipolar drive of center tapped coil at (b), emulates AC current in single coil at (a).*

fine teeth. More often than not the rotor is a permanent magnet. Determine that the rotor is a permanent magnet by unpowered hand rotation showing *detent torque*, torque pulsations. Stepper motor coils are wound within a laminated stator, except for *can stack* construction. There may be as few as two winding phases or as many as five. These phases are frequently split into pairs. Thus, a 4-pole stepper motor may have two phases composed of in-line pairs of poles spaced 90^o apart. There may also be multiple pole pairs per phase. For example a 12-pole stepper has 6-pairs of poles, three pairs per phase.

Since stepper motors do not necessarily rotate continuously, there is no horsepower rating. If they do rotate continuously, they do not even approach a sub-fractional hp rated capability. They are truly small low power devices compared to other motors. They have torque ratings to a thousand in-oz (inch-ounces) or ten n-m (newton-meters) for a 4 kg size unit. A small "dime" size stepper has a torque of a hundredth of a newton-meter or a few inch-ounces. Most steppers are a few inches in diameter with a fraction of a n-m or a few in-oz torque. The torque available is a function of motor speed, load inertia, load torque, and drive electronics as illustrated on the *speed vs torque curve*. (Figure 13.26) An energized, holding stepper has a relatively high *holding torque* rating. There is less torque available for a running motor, decreasing to zero at some high speed. This speed is frequently not attainable due to mechanical resonance of the motor load combination.

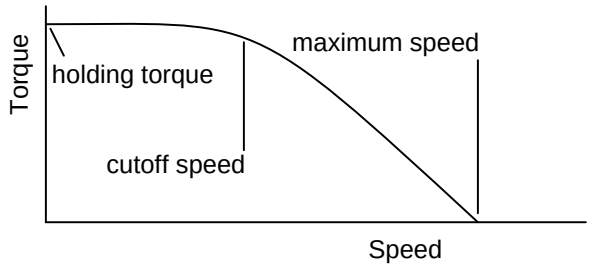


Figure 13.26: *Stepper speed characteristics.*

Stepper motors move one step at a time, the *step angle*, when the drive waveforms are changed. The step angle is related to motor construction details: number of coils, number of poles, number of teeth. It can be from 90^o to 0.75^o, corresponding to 4 to 500 steps per revolution. Drive electronics may halve the step angle by moving the rotor in *half-steps*.

Steppers cannot achieve the speeds on the speed torque curve instantaneously. The *maximum start frequency* is the highest rate at which a stopped and unloaded stepper can be

started. Any load will make this parameter unattainable. In practice, the step rate is ramped up during starting from well below the maximum start frequency. When stopping a stepper motor, the step rate may be decreased before stopping.

The maximum torque at which a stepper can start and stop is the *pull-in torque*. This torque load on the stepper is due to frictional (brake) and inertial (flywheel) loads on the motor shaft. Once the motor is up to speed, *pull-out torque* is the maximum sustainable torque without losing steps.

There are three types of stepper motors in order of increasing complexity: variable reluctance, permanent magnet, and hybrid. The variable reluctance stepper has s solid soft steel rotor with salient poles. The permanent magnet stepper has a cylindrical permanent magnet rotor. The hybrid stepper has soft steel teeth added to the permanent magnet rotor for a smaller step angle.

13.5.2 Variable reluctance stepper

A *variable reluctance stepper motor* relies upon magnetic flux seeking the lowest reluctance path through a magnetic circuit. This means that an irregularly shaped soft magnetic rotor will move to complete a magnetic circuit, minimizing the length of any high reluctance air gap. The stator typically has three windings distributed between pole pairs , the rotor four salient poles, yielding a 30^o step angle.(Figure 13.27) A de-energized stepper with no detent torque when hand rotated is identifiable as a variable reluctance type stepper.

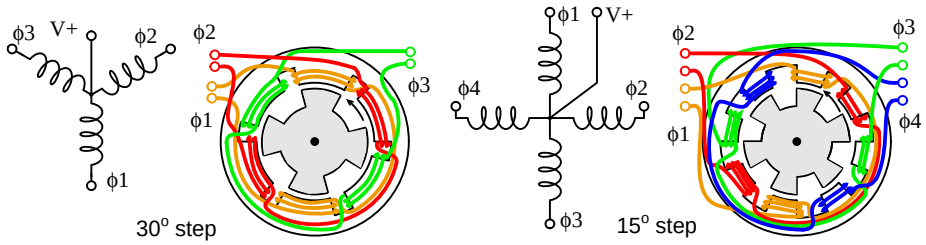


Figure 13.27: *Three phase and four phase variable reluctance stepper motors.*

The drive waveforms for the 3-ϕ stepper can be seen in the "Reluctance motor" section. The drive for a 4-ϕ stepper is shown in Figure 13.28. Sequentially switching the stator phases produces a rotating magnetic field which the rotor follows. However, due to the lesser number of rotor poles, the rotor moves less than the stator angle for each step. For a variable reluctance stepper motor, the step angle is given by:

Θ_S = 360^o/N$_S$
Θ_R = 360^o/N$_R$
Θ_{ST} = Θ_R - Θ_S
where: Θ_S = stator angle, Θ_R = Rotor angle, Θ_{ST} = step angle
N$_S$ = number stator poles, N$_P$ = number rotor poles

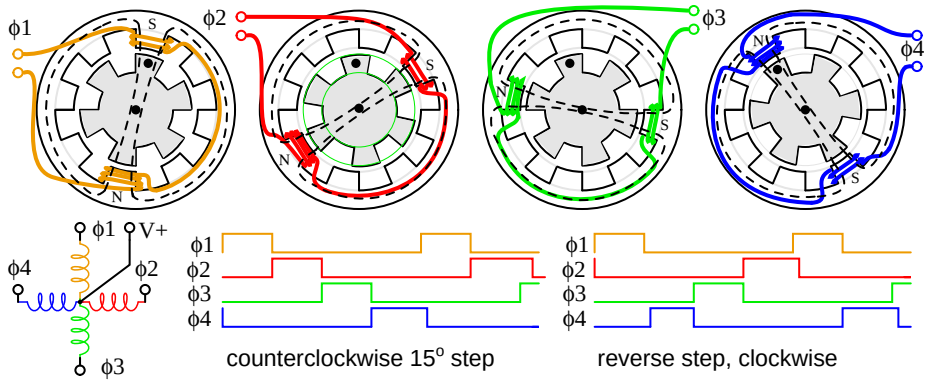


Figure 13.28: *Stepping sequence for variable reluctance stepper.*

In Figure 13.28, moving from ϕ_1 to ϕ_2, etc., the stator magnetic field rotates clockwise. The rotor moves counterclockwise (CCW). Note what does not happen! The dotted rotor tooth does not move to the next stator tooth. Instead, the ϕ_2 stator field attracts a different tooth in moving the rotor CCW, which is a smaller angle (15^o) than the stator angle of 30^o. The rotor tooth angle of 45^o enters into the calculation by the above equation. The rotor moved CCW to the next rotor tooth at 45^o, but it aligns with a CW by 30^o stator tooth. Thus, the actual step angle is the difference between a stator angle of 45^o and a rotor angle of 30^o . How far would the stepper rotate if the rotor and stator had the same number of teeth? Zero– no notation.

Starting at rest with phase ϕ_1 energized, three pulses are required (ϕ_2, ϕ_3, ϕ_4) to align the "dotted" rotor tooth to the next CCW stator Tooth, which is 45^o. With 3-pulses per stator tooth, and 8-stator teeth, 24-pulses or steps move the rotor through 360^o.

By reversing the sequence of pulses, the direction of rotation is reversed above right. The direction, step rate, and number of steps are controlled by a stepper motor controller feeding a driver or amplifier. This could be combined into a single circuit board. The controller could be a microprocessor or a specialized integrated circuit. The driver is not a linear amplifier, but a simple on-off switch capable of high enough current to energize the stepper. In principle, the driver could be a relay or even a toggle switch for each phase. In practice, the driver is either discrete transistor switches or an integrated circuit. Both driver and controller may be combined into a single integrated circuit accepting a direction command and step pulse. It outputs current to the proper phases in sequence.

Disassemble a reluctance stepper to view the internal components. Otherwise, we show the internal construction of a variable reluctance stepper motor in Figure 13.29. The rotor has protruding poles so that they may be attracted to the rotating stator field as it is switched. An actual motor, is much longer than our simplified illustration.

The shaft is frequently fitted with a drive screw. (Figure 13.30) This may move the heads of a floppy drive upon command by the floppy drive controller.

Variable reluctance stepper motors are applied when only a moderate level of torque is required and a coarse step angle is adequate. A screw drive, as used in a floppy disk drive is such an application. When the controller powers-up, it does not know the position of the carriage. However, it can drive the carriage toward the optical interrupter, calibrating the

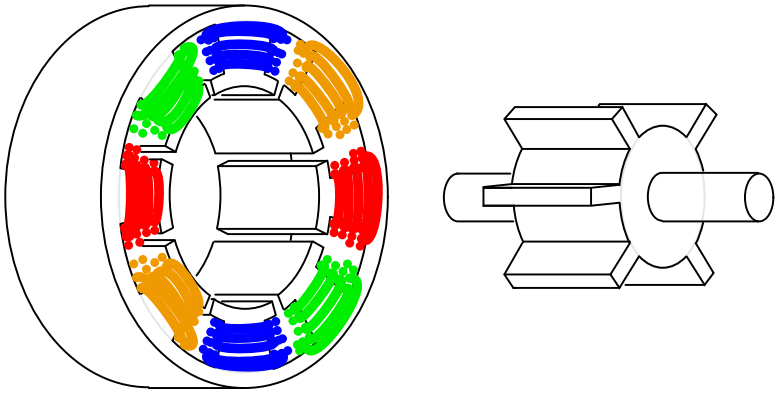


Figure 13.29: *Variable reluctance stepper motor.*

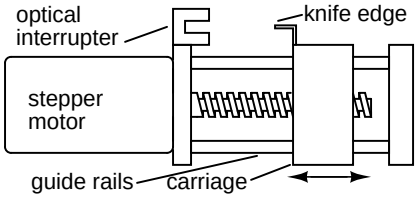


Figure 13.30: *Variable reluctance stepper drives lead screw.*

position at which the knife edge cuts the interrupter as “home”. The controller counts step pulses from this position. As long as the load torque does not exceed the motor torque, the controller will know the carriage position.

Summary: variable reluctance stepper motor

- The rotor is a soft iron cylinder with salient (protruding) poles.
- This is the least complex, most inexpensive stepper motor.
- The only type stepper with no detent torque in hand rotation of a de-energized motor shaft.
- Large step angle
- A lead screw is often mounted to the shaft for linear stepping motion.

13.5.3 Permanent magnet stepper

A *permanent magnet stepper motor* has a cylindrical permanent magnet rotor. The stator usually has two windings. The windings could be center tapped to allow for a *unipolar* driver circuit where the polarity of the magnetic field is changed by switching a voltage from one end to the other of the winding. A *bipolar* drive of alternating polarity is required to power windings without the center tap. A pure permanent magnet stepper usually has a large step angle. Rotation of the shaft of a de-energized motor exhibits detent torque. If the detent angle is large, say 7.5^o to 90^o, it is likely a permanent magnet stepper rather than a hybrid stepper (next subsection).

Permanent magnet stepper motors require phased alternating currents applied to the two (or more) windings. In practice, this is almost always square waves generated from DC by solid state electronics. *Bipolar* drive is square waves alternating between (+) and (-) polarities, say, +2.5 V to -2.5 V. *Unipolar* drive supplies a (+) and (-) alternating magnetic flux to the coils developed from a pair of positive square waves applied to opposite ends of a center tapped coil. The timing of the bipolar or unipolar wave is wave drive, full step, or half step.

Wave drive

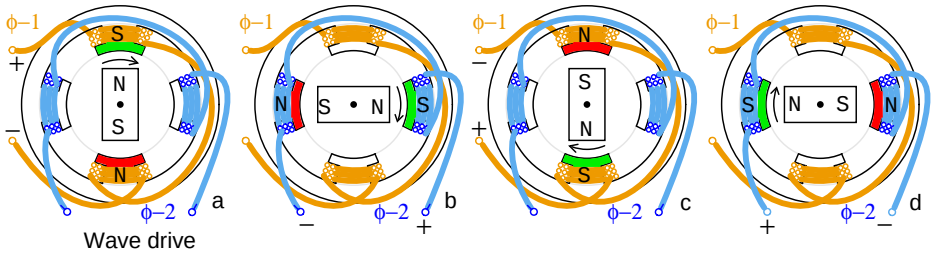


Figure 13.31: *PM wave drive sequence (a)* ϕ_1*+ , (b)* ϕ_2*+ , (c)* ϕ_1*- , (d)* ϕ_2*-.*

Conceptually, the simplest drive is *wave drive*. (Figure 13.31) The rotation sequence left to right is positive ϕ-1 points rotor north pole up, (+) ϕ-2 points rotor north right, negative ϕ-1 attracts rotor north down, (-) ϕ-2 points rotor left. The wave drive waveforms below show that only one coil is energized at a time. While simple, this does not produce as much torque as other drive techniques.

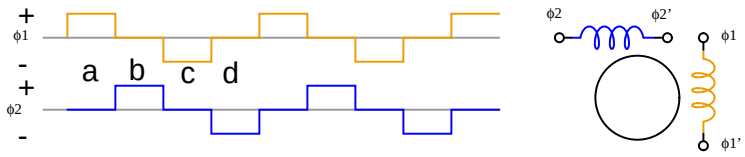


Figure 13.32: *Waveforms: bipolar wave drive.*

The waveforms (Figure 13.32) are bipolar because both polarities , (+) and (-) drive the stepper. The coil magnetic field reverses because the polarity of the drive current reverses.

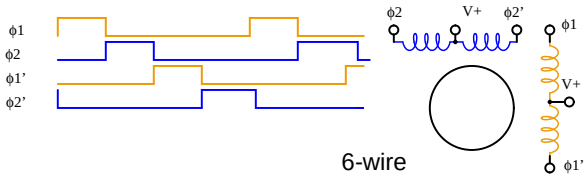


Figure 13.33: *Waveforms: unipolar wave drive.*

The (Figure 13.33) waveforms are unipolar because only one polarity is required. This simplifies the drive electronics, but requires twice as many drivers. There are twice as many waveforms because a pair of (+) waves is required to produce an alternating magnetic field by application to opposite ends of a center tapped coil. The motor requires alternating magnetic fields. These may be produced by either unipolar or bipolar waves. However, motor coils must have center taps for unipolar drive.

Permanent magnet stepper motors are manufactured with various lead-wire configurations. (Figure 13.34)

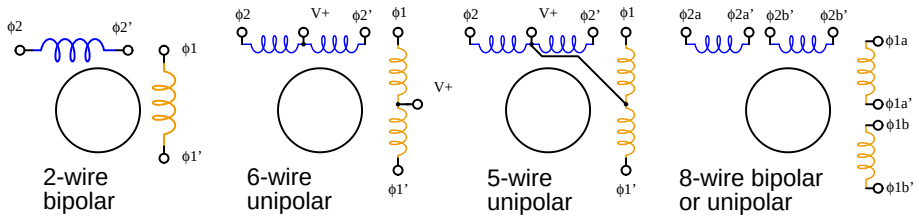


Figure 13.34: *Stepper motor wiring diagrams.*

The 4-wire motor can only be driven by bipolar waveforms. The 6-wire motor, the most

common arrangement, is intended for unipolar drive because of the center taps. Though, it may be driven by bipolar waves if the center taps are ignored. The 5-wire motor can only be driven by unipolar waves, as the common center tap interferes if both windings are energized simultaneously. The 8-wire configuration is rare, but provides maximum flexibility. It may be wired for unipolar drive as for the 6-wire or 5-wire motor. A pair of coils may be connected in series for high voltage bipolar low current drive, or in parallel for low voltage high current drive.

A *bifilar winding* is produced by winding the coils with two wires in parallel, often a red and green enamelled wire. This method produces exact 1:1 turns ratios for center tapped windings. This winding method is applicable to all but the 4-wire arrangement above.

Full step drive

Full step drive provides more torque than wave drive because both coils are energized at the same time. This attracts the rotor poles midway between the two field poles. (Figure 13.35)

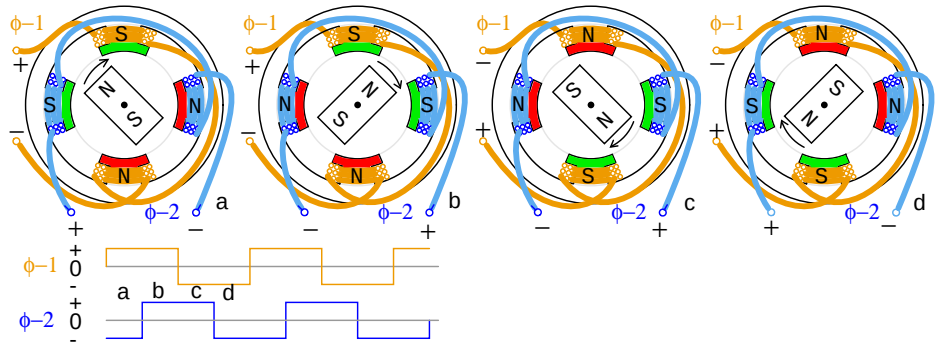


Figure 13.35: *Full step, bipolar drive.*

Full step bipolar drive as shown in Figure 13.35 has the same step angle as wave drive. Unipolar drive (not shown) would require a pair of unipolar waveforms for each of the above bipolar waveforms applied to the ends of a center tapped winding. Unipolar drive uses a less complex, less expensive driver circuit. The additional cost of bipolar drive is justified when more torque is required.

Half step drive

The step angle for a given stepper motor geometry is cut in half with *half step* drive. This corresponds to twice as many step pulses per revolution. (Figure 13.36) Half stepping provides greater resolution in positioning of the motor shaft. For example, half stepping the motor moving the print head across the paper of an inkjet printer would double the dot density.

Half step drive is a combination of wave drive and full step drive with one winding energized, followed by both windings energized, yielding twice as many steps. The unipolar waveforms for half step drive are shown above. The rotor aligns with the field poles as for wave drive and between the poles as for full step drive.

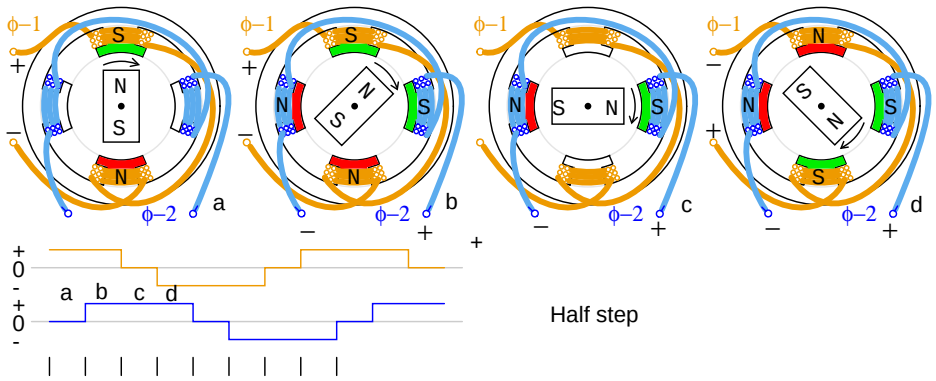


Figure 13.36: *Half step, bipolar drive.*

Microstepping is possible with specialized controllers. By varying the currents to the windings sinusoidally many microsteps can be interpolated between the normal positions.

Construction

The contruction of a permanent magnet stepper motor is considerably different from the drawings above. It is desirable to increase the number of poles beyond that illustrated to produce a smaller step angle. It is also desirable to reduce the number of windings, or at least not increase the number of windings for ease of manufacture.

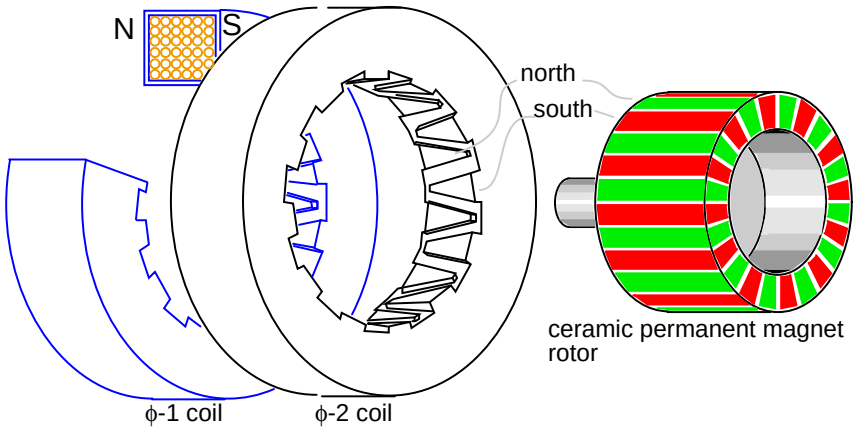


Figure 13.37: *Permanent magnet stepper motor, 24-pole can-stack construction.*

The permanent magnet stepper (Figure 13.37) only has two windings, yet has 24-poles in each of two phases. This style of construction is known as *can stack*. A phase winding is wrapped with a mild steel shell, with fingers brought to the center. One phase, on a transient basis, will have a north side and a south side. Each side wraps around to the center

of the doughnut with twelve interdigitated fingers for a total of 24 poles. These alternating north-south fingers will attract the permanent magnet rotor. If the polarity of the phase were reversed, the rotor would jump $360^o/24 = 15^o$. We do not know which direction, which is not usefull. However, if we energize ϕ-1 followed by ϕ-2, the rotor will move 7.5^o because the ϕ-2 is offset (rotated) by 7.5^o from ϕ-1. See below for offset. And, it will rotate in a reproducible direction if the phases are alternated. Application of any of the above waveforms will rotate the permanent magnet rotor.

Note that the rotor is a gray ferrite ceramic cylinder magnetized in the 24-pole pattern shown. This can be viewed with magnet viewer film or iron filings applied to a paper wrapping. Though, the colors will be green for both north and south poles with the film.

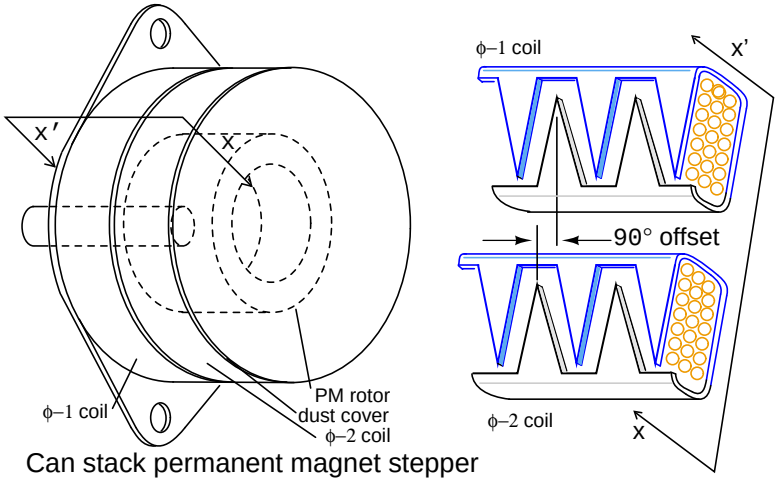


Figure 13.38: *(a) External view of can stack, (b) field offset detail.*

Can-stack style construction of a PM stepper is distinctive and easy to identify by the stacked "cans". (Figure 13.38) Note the rotational offset between the two phase sections. This is key to making the rotor follow the switching of the fields between the two phases.

Summary: permanent magnet stepper motor

- The rotor is a permanent magnet, often a ferrite sleeve magnetized with numerous poles.
- Can-stack construction provides numerous poles from a single coil with interleaved fingers of soft iron.
- Large to moderate step angle.
- Often used in computer printers to advance paper.

13.5.4 Hybrid stepper motor

The *hybrid stepper motor* combines features of both the variable reluctance stepper and the permanent magnet stepper to produce a smaller step angle. The rotor is a cylindrical perma-

nent magnet, magnetized along the axis with radial soft iron teeth (Figure 13.39). The stator coils are wound on alternating poles with corresponding teeth. There are typically two winding phases distributed between pole pairs. This winding may be center tapped for unipolar drive. The center tap is achieved by a *bifilar winding*, a pair of wires wound physically in parallel, but wired in series. The north-south poles of a phase swap polarity when the phase drive current is reversed. Bipolar drive is required for un-tapped windings.

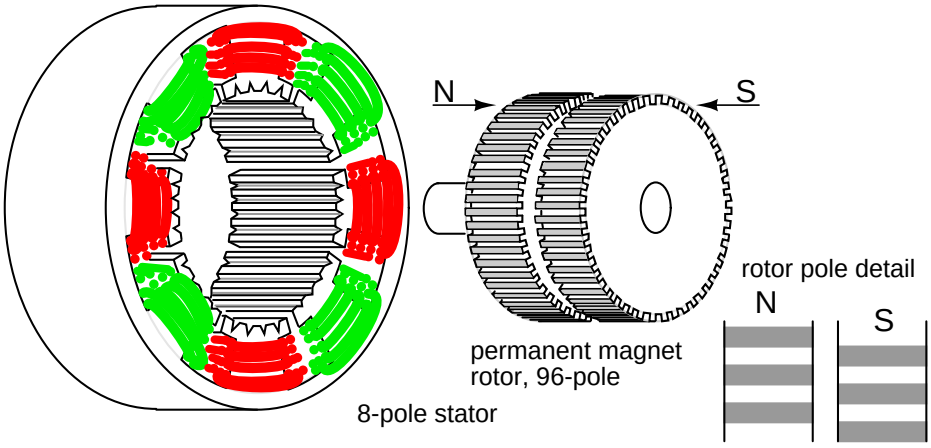


Figure 13.39: *Hybrid stepper motor.*

Note that the 48-teeth on one rotor section are offset by half a pitch from the other. See rotor pole detail above. This rotor tooth offset is also shown below. Due to this offset, the rotor effectively has 96 interleaved poles of opposite polarity. This offset allows for rotation in 1/96 th of a revolution steps by reversing the field polarity of one phase. Two phase windings are common as shown above and below. Though, there could be as many as five phases.

The stator teeth on the 8-poles correspond to the 48-rotor teeth, except for missing teeth in the space between the poles. Thus, one pole of the rotor, say the south pole, may align with the stator in 48 distinct positions. However, the teeth of the south pole are offset from the north teeth by half a tooth. Therefore, the rotor may align with the stator in 96 distinct positions. This half tooth offset shows in the rotor pole detail above, or Figure 13.30.

As if this were not complicated enough, the stator main poles are divided into two phases (ϕ-1, ϕ-2). These stator phases are offset from one another by one-quarter of a tooth. This detail is only discernable on the schematic diagrams below. The result is that the rotor moves in steps of a quarter of a tooth when the phases are alternately energized. In other words, the rotor moves in 2×96=192 steps per revolution for the above stepper.

The above drawing is representative of an actual hybrid stepper motor. However, we provide a simplified pictorial and schematic representation (Figure 13.40) to illustrate details not obvious above. Note the reduced number of coils and teeth in rotor and stator for simplicity. In the next two figures, we attempt to illustrate the quarter tooth rotation produced by the two stator phases offset by a quarter tooth, and the rotor half tooth offset. The quarter tooth stator offset in conjunction with drive current timing also defines direction of rotation.

Features of hybrid stepper schematic (Figure 13.40)

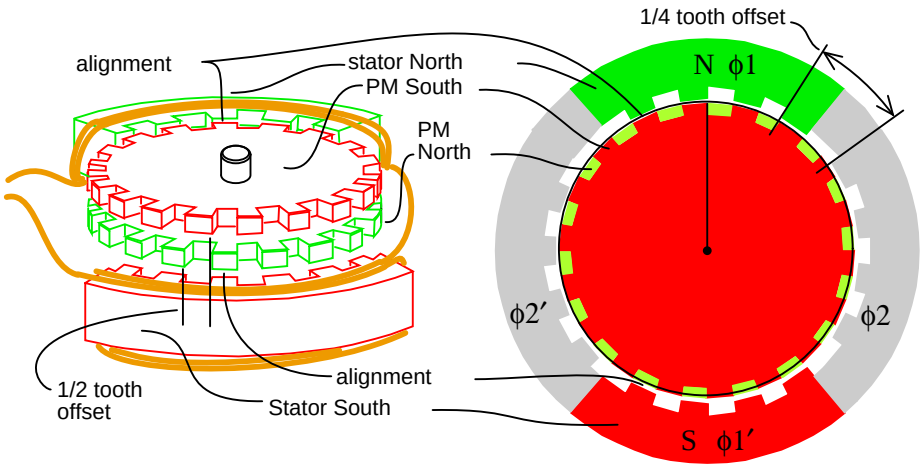


Figure 13.40: *Hybrid stepper motor schematic diagram.*

- The top of the permanent magnet rotor is the south pole, the bottom north.
- The rotor north-south teeth are offset by half a tooth.
- If the ϕ-1 stator is temporarily energized north top, south bottom.
- The top ϕ-1 stator teeth align north to rotor top south teeth.
- The bottom ϕ-1' stator teeth align south to rotor bottom north teeth.
- Enough torque applied to the shaft to overcome the hold-in torque would move the rotor by one tooth.
- If the polarity of ϕ-1 were reversed, the rotor would move by one-half tooth, direction unknown. The alignment would be south stator top to north rotor bottom, north stator bottom to south rotor.
- The ϕ-2 stator teeth are not aligned with the rotor teeth when ϕ-1 is energized. In fact, the ϕ-2 stator teeth are offset by one-quarter tooth. This will allow for rotation by that amount if ϕ-1 is de-energized and ϕ-2 energized. Polarity of ϕ-1 and ¡phi-2¿ drive determines direction of rotation.

Hybrid stepper motor rotation (Figure 13.41)

- Rotor top is permanent magnet south, bottom north. Fields ϕ1, ϕ-2 are switchable: on, off, reverse.
- **(a)** ϕ-1=on=north-top, ϕ-2=off. **Align (top to bottom):** ϕ-1 stator-N:rotor-top-S, ϕ-1' stator-S: rotor-bottom-N. Start position, rotation=0.
- **(b)** ϕ-1=off, ϕ-2=on. **Align (right to left):** ϕ-2 stator-N-right:rotor-top-S, ϕ-2' stator-S: rotor-bottom-N. Rotate 1/4 tooth, total rotation=1/4 tooth.

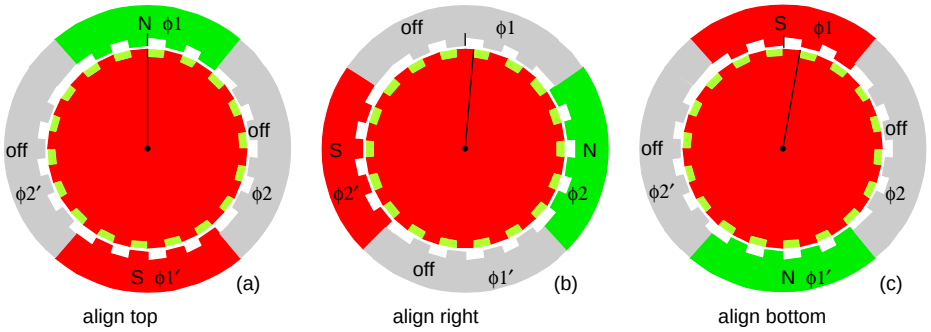


Figure 13.41: *Hybrid stepper motor rotation sequence.*

- **(c)** ϕ-1=reverse(on), ϕ-2=off. **Align (bottom to top):** ϕ-1 stator-S:rotor-bottom-N, ϕ-1' stator-N:rotor-top-S. Rotate 1/4 tooth from last position. Total rotation from start: 1/2 tooth.
- Not shown: ϕ-1=off, ϕ-2=reverse(on). **Align (left to right):** Total rotation: 3/4 tooth.
- Not shown: ϕ-1=on, ϕ-2=off (same as (a)). **Align (top to bottom):** Total rotation 1-tooth.

An un-powered stepper motor with detent torque is either a permanent magnet stepper or a hybrid stepper. The hybrid stepper will have a small step angle, much less than the 7.5^o of permanent magnet steppers. The step angle could be a fraction of a degree, corresponding to a few hundred steps per revolution.

Summary: hybrid stepper motor

- The step angle is smaller than variable reluctance or permanent magnet steppers.
- The rotor is a permanent magnet with fine teeth. North and south teeth are offset by half a tooth for a smaller step angle.
- The stator poles have matching fine teeth of the same pitch as the rotor.
- The stator windings are divided into no less than two phases.
- The poles of one stator windings are offset by a quarter tooth for an even smaller step angle.

13.6 Brushless DC motor

Brushless DC motors were developed from conventional brushed DC motors with the availability of solid state power semiconductors. So, why do we discuss brushless DC motors in a chapter on AC motors? Brushless DC motors are similar to AC synchronous motors. The major

difference is that synchronous motors develop a sinusoidal back EMF, as compared to a rectangular, or trapezoidal, back EMF for brushless DC motors. Both have stator created rotating magnetic fields producing torque in a magnetic rotor.

Synchronous motors are usually large multi-kilowatt size, often with electromagnet rotors. True synchronous motors are considered to be single speed, a submultiple of the powerline frequency. Brushless DC motors tend to be small– a few watts to tens of watts, with permanent magnet rotors. The speed of a brushless DC motor is not fixed unless driven by a phased locked loop slaved to a reference frequency. The style of construction is either cylindrical or pancake. (Figures 13.42 and 13.43)

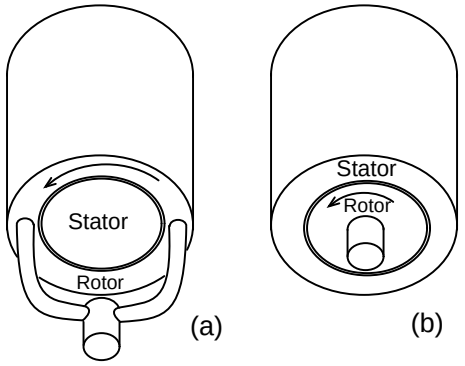


Figure 13.42: *Cylindrical construction: (a) outside rotor, (b) inside rotor.*

The most usual construction, cylindrical, can take on two forms (Figure 13.42). The most common cylindrical style is with the rotor on the inside, above right. This style motor is used in hard disk drives. It is also possible the put the rotor on the outside surrounding the stator. Such is the case with brushless DC fan motors, sans the shaft. This style of construction may be short and fat. However, the direction of the magnetic flux is radial with respect to the rotational axis.

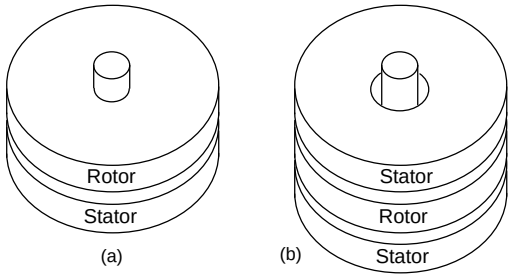


Figure 13.43: *Pancake motor construction: (a) single stator, (b) double stator.*

High torque pancake motors may have stator coils on both sides of the rotor (Figure 13.43-b). Lower torque applications like floppy disk drive motors suffice with a stator coil on one side

of the rotor, (Figure 13.43-a). The direction of the magnetic flux is axial, that is, parallel to the axis of rotation.

The commutation function may be performed by various shaft position sensors: optical encoder, magnetic encoder (resolver, synchro, etc), or Hall effect magnetic sensors. Small inexpensive motors use Hall effect sensors. (Figure 13.44) A Hall effect sensor is a semiconductor device where the electron flow is affected by a magnetic field perpendicular to the direction of current flow.. It looks like a four terminal variable resistor network. The voltages at the two outputs are complementary. Application of a magnetic field to the sensor causes a small voltage change at the output. The Hall output may drive a comparator to provide for more stable drive to the power device. Or, it may drive a compound transistor stage if properly biased. More modern Hall effect sensors may contain an integrated amplifier, and digital circuitry. This 3-lead device may directly drive the power transistor feeding a phase winding. The sensor must be mounted close to the permanent magnet rotor to sense its position.

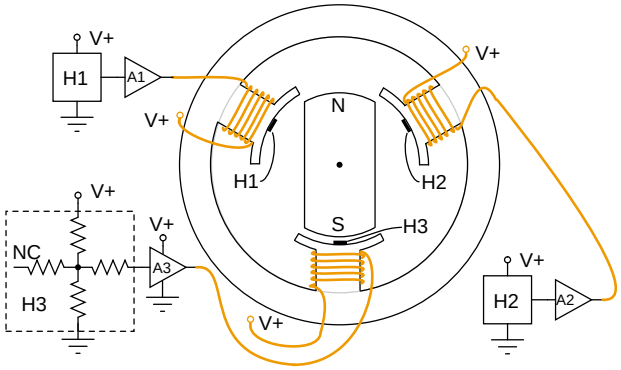


Figure 13.44: *Hall effect sensors commutate 3-ϕ brushless DC motor.*

The simple cylindrical 3-ϕ motor Figure 13.44 is commutated by a Hall effect device for each of the three stator phases. The changing position of the permanent magnet rotor is sensed by the Hall device as the polarity of the passing rotor pole changes. This Hall signal is amplified so that the stator coils are driven with the proper current. Not shown here, the Hall signals may be processed by combinatorial logic for more efficient drive waveforms.

The above cylindrical motor could drive a harddrive if it were equipped with a phased locked loop (PLL) to maintain constant speed. Similar circuitry could drive the pancake floppy disk drive motor (Figure 13.45). Again, it would need a PLL to maintain constant speed.

The 3-ϕ pancake motor (Figure 13.45) has 6-stator poles and 8-rotor poles. The rotor is a flat ferrite ring magnetized with eight axially magnetized alternating poles. We do not show that the rotor is capped by a mild steel plate for mounting to the bearing in the middle of the stator. The steel plate also helps complete the magnetic circuit. The stator poles are also mounted atop a steel plate, helping to close the magnetic circuit. The flat stator coils are trapezoidal to more closely fit the coils, and approximate the rotor poles. The 6-stator coils comprise three winding phases.

If the three stator phases were successively energized, a rotating magnetic field would be generated. The permanent magnet rotor would follow as in the case of a synchronous motor. A

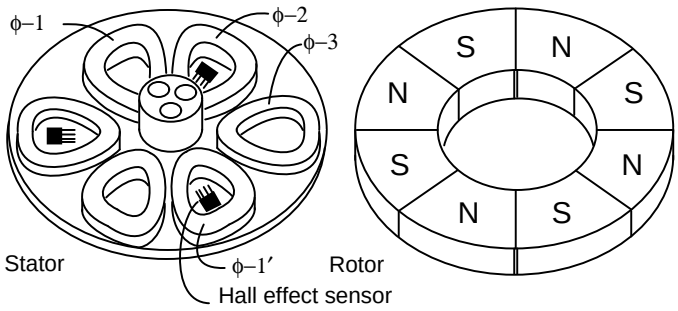


Figure 13.45: *Brushless pancake motor*

two pole rotor would follow this field at the same rotation rate as the rotating field. However, our 8-pole rotor will rotate at a submultiple of this rate due the the extra poles in the rotor.

The brushless DC fan motor (Figure 13.46) has these feature:

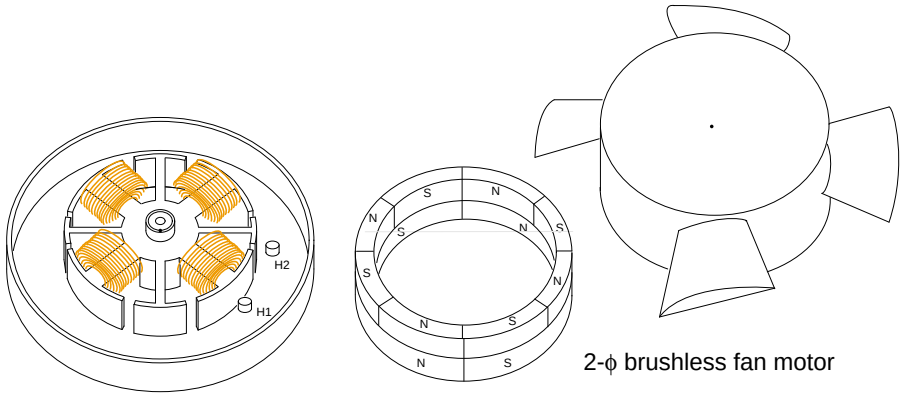


Figure 13.46: *Brushless fan motor, 2-ϕ.*

- The stator has 2-phases distributed between 4-poles
- There are 4-salient poles with no windings to eliminate zero torque points.
- The rotor has four main drive poles.
- The rotor has 8-poles superimposed to help eliminate zero torque points.
- The Hall effect sensors are spaced at 45^o physical.
- The fan housing is placed atop the rotor, which is placed over the stator.

The goal of a brushless fan motor is to minimize the cost of manufacture. This is an incentive to move lower performance products from a 3-ϕ to a 2-ϕ configuration. Depending on how it is driven, it may be called a 4-ϕ motor.

You may recall that conventional DC motors cannot have an even number of armature poles (2,4, etc) if they are to be self-starting, 3,5,7 being common. Thus, it is possible for a hypothetical 4-pole motor to come to rest at a torque minima, where it cannot be started from rest. The addition of the four small salient poles with no windings superimposes a ripple torque upon the torque vs position curve. When this ripple torque is added to normal energized-torque curve, the result is that torque minima are partially removed. This makes it possible to start the motor for all possible stopping positions. The addition of eight permanant magnet poles to the normal 4-pole permanent magnet rotor superimposes a small second harmonic ripple torque upon the normal 4-pole ripple torque. This further removes the torque minima. As long as the torque minima does not drop to zero, we should be able to start the motor. The more successful we are in removing the torque minima, the easier the motor starting.

The 2-ϕ stator requires that the Hall sensors be spaced apart by 90^o electrical. If the rotor was a 2-pole rotor, the Hall sensors would be placed 90^o physical. Since we have a 4-pole permanent magnet rotor, the sensors must be placed 45^o physical to achieve the 90^o electrical spacing. Note Hall spacing above. The majority of the torque is due to the interaction of the inside stator 2-ϕ coils with the 4-pole section of the rotor. Moreover, the 4-pole section of the rotor must be on the bottom so that the Hall sensors will sense the proper commutation signals. The 8-poles rotor section is only for improving motor starting.

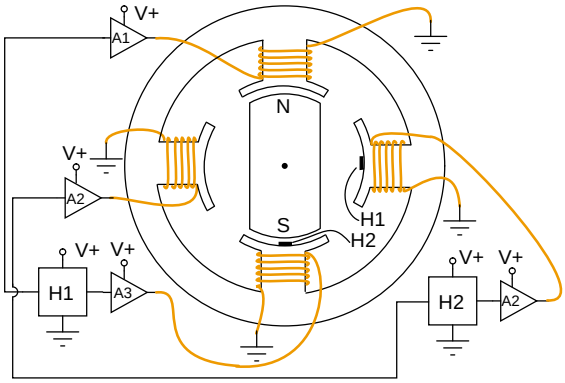


Figure 13.47: *Brushless DC motor 2-ϕ push-pull drive.*

In Figure 13.47, the 2-ϕ push-pull drive (also known as 4-ϕ drive) uses two Hall effect sensors to drive four windings. The sensors are spaced 90^o electrical apart, which is 90^o physical for a single pole rotor. Since the Hall sensor has two complementary outputs, one sensor provides commutation for two opposing windings.

13.7 Tesla polyphase induction motors

Most AC motors are induction motors. Induction motors are favored due to their ruggedness and simplicity. In fact, 90% of industrial motors are induction motors.

Nikola Tesla conceived the basic principals of the polyphase induction motor in 1883, and had a half horsepower (400 watt) model by 1888. Tesla sold the manufacturing rights to George

Westinghouse for $65,000.

Most large ($>$ 1 hp or 1 kW) industrial motors are *poly-phase induction motors*. By poly-phase, we mean that the stator contains multiple distinct windings per motor pole, driven by corresponding time shifted sine waves. In practice, this is two or three phases. Large industrial motors are 3-phase. While we include numerous illustrations of two-phase motors for simplicity, we must emphasize that nearly all poly-phase motors are three-phase. By *induction motor*, we mean that the stator windings induce a current flow in the rotor conductors, like a transformer, unlike a brushed DC commutator motor.

13.7.1 Construction

An induction motor is composed of a rotor, known as an armature, and a stator containing windings connected to a poly-phase energy source as shown in Figure 13.48. The simple 2-phase induction motor below is similar to the 1/2 horsepower motor which Nikola Tesla introduced in 1888.

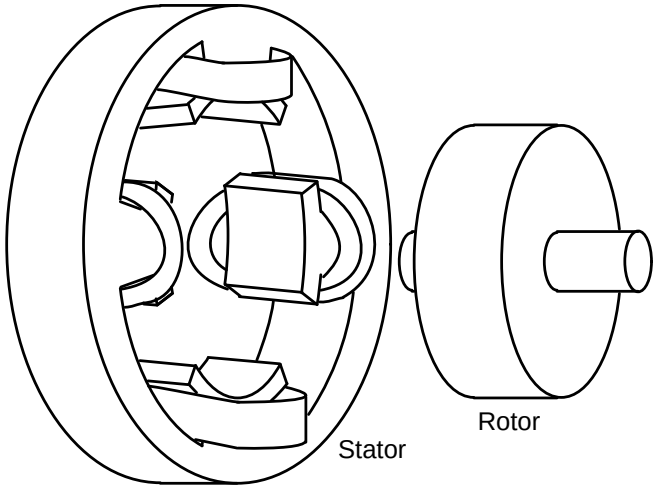


Figure 13.48: *Tesla polyphase induction motor.*

The stator in Figure 13.48 is wound with pairs of coils corresponding to the phases of electrical energy available. The 2-phase induction motor stator above has 2-pairs of coils, one pair for each of the two phases of AC. The individual coils of a pair are connected in series and correspond to the opposite poles of an electromagnet. That is, one coil corresponds to a N-pole, the other to a S-pole until the phase of AC changes polarity. The other pair of coils is oriented 90^o in space to the first pair. This pair of coils is connected to AC shifted in time by 90^o in the case of a 2-phase motor. In Tesla's time, the source of the two phases of AC was a 2-phase alternator.

The stator in Figure 13.48 has *salient*, obvious protruding poles, as used on Tesla's early induction motor. This design is used to this day for sub-fractional horsepower motors ($<$50 watts). However, for larger motors less torque pulsation and higher efficiency results if the

coils are embedded into slots cut into the stator laminations. (Figure 13.49)

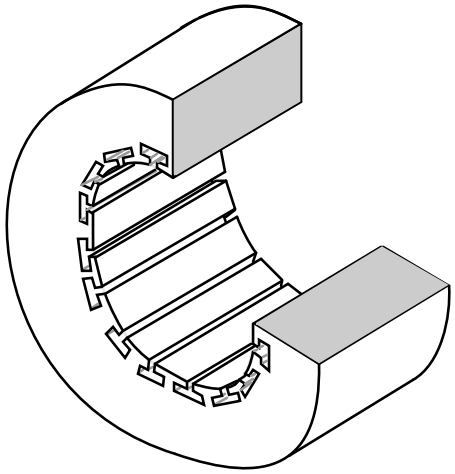


Figure 13.49: *Stator frame showing slots for windings.*

The stator laminations are thin insulated rings with slots punched from sheets of electrical grade steel. A stack of these is secured by end screws, which may also hold the end housings.

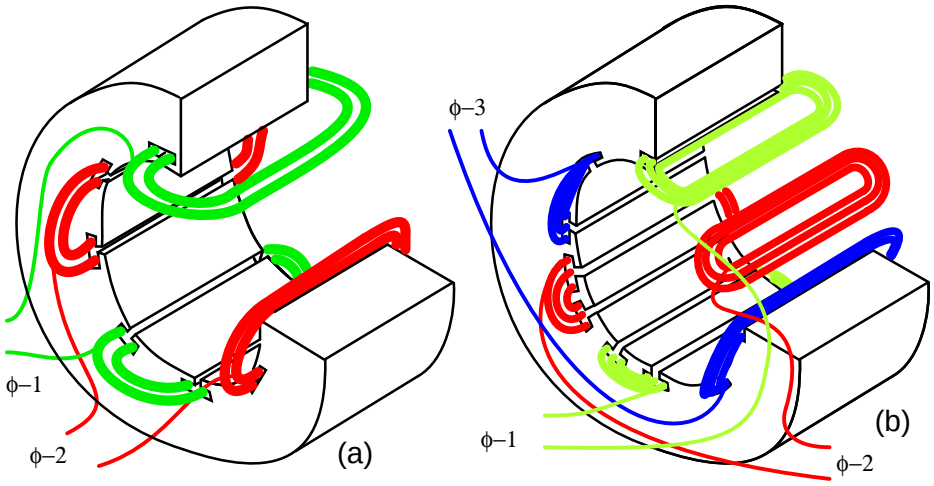


Figure 13.50: *Stator with (a) 2-ϕ and (b) 3-ϕ windings.*

In Figure 13.50, the windings for both a two-phase motor and a three-phase motor have been installed in the stator slots. The coils are wound on an external fixture, then worked into the slots. Insulation wedged between the coil periphery and the slot protects against abrasion.

Actual stator windings are more complex than the single windings per pole in Figure 13.50. Comparing the 2-ϕ motor to Tesla's 2-ϕ motor with salient poles, the number of coils is the

same. In actual large motors, a pole winding, is divided into identical coils inserted into many smaller slots than above. This group is called a *phase belt*. See Figure 13.16. The distributed coils of the phase belt cancel some of the odd harmonics, producing a more sinusoidal magnetic field distribution across the pole. This is shown in the synchronous motor section. The slots at the edge of the pole may have fewer turns than the other slots. Edge slots may contain windings from two phases. That is, the phase belts overlap.

The key to the popularity of the AC induction motor is simplicity as evidenced by the simple rotor (Figure 13.51). The rotor consists of a shaft, a steel laminated rotor, and an embedded copper or aluminum *squirrel cage*, shown at (b) removed from the rotor. As compared to a DC motor armature, there is no commutator. This eliminates the brushes, arcing, sparking, graphite dust, brush adjustment and replacement, and re-machining of the commutator.

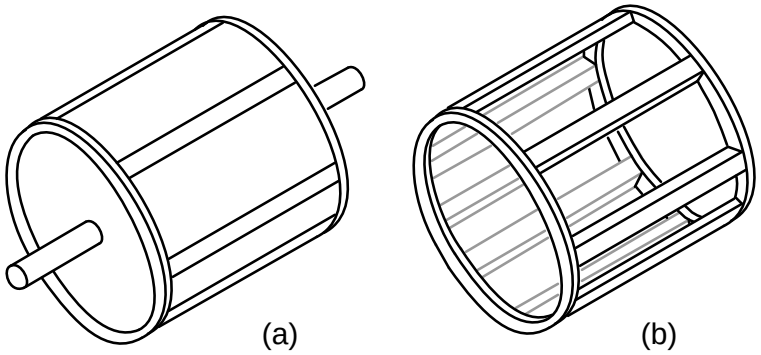


Figure 13.51: *Laminated rotor with (a) embedded squirrel cage, (b) conductive cage removed from rotor.*

The squirrel cage conductors may be skewed, twisted, with respsect to the shaft. The misalignment with the stator slots reduces torque pulsations.

Both rotor and stator cores are composed of a stack of insulated laminations. The laminations are coated with insulating oxide or varnish to minimize eddy current losses. The alloy used in the laminations is selected for low hysteresis losses.

13.7.2 Theory of operation

A short explanation of operation is that the stator creates a rotating magnetic field which drags the rotor around.

The theory of operation of induction motors is based on a rotating magnetic field. One means of creating a rotating magnetic field is to rotate a permanent magnet as shown in Figure 13.52. If the moving magnetic lines of flux cut a conductive disk, it will follow the motion of the magnet. The lines of flux cutting the conductor will induce a voltage, and consequent current flow, in the conductive disk. This current flow creates an electromagnet whose polarity opposes the motion of the permanent magnet– *Lenz's Law*. The polarity of the electromagnet is such that it pulls against the permanent magnet. The disk follows with a little less speed than the permanent magnet.

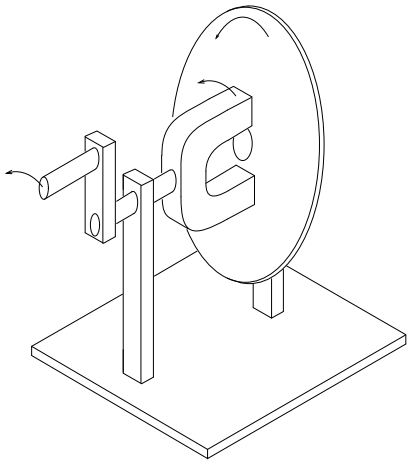


Figure 13.52: *Rotating magnetic field produces torque in conductive disk.*

The torque developed by the disk is proportional to the number of flux lines cutting the disk and the rate at which it cuts the disk. If the disk were to spin at the same rate as the permanent magnet, there would be no flux cutting the disk, no induced current flow, no electromagnet field, no torque. Thus, the disk speed will always fall behind that of the rotating permanent magnet, so that lines of flux cut the disk induce a current, create an electromagnetic field in the disk, which follows the permanent magnet. If a load is applied to the disk, slowing it, more torque will be developed as more lines of flux cut the disk. Torque is proportional to *slip*, the degree to which the disk falls behind the rotating magnet. More slip corresponds to more flux cutting the conductive disk, developing more torque.

An analog automotive eddy current speedometer is based on the principle illustrated above. With the disk restrained by a spring, disk and needle deflection is proportional to magnet rotation rate.

A rotating magnetic field is created by two coils placed at right angles to each other, driven by currents which are 90^o out of phase. This should not be surprising if you are familiar with oscilloscope Lissajous patterns.

In Figure 13.53, a circular Lissajous is produced by driving the horizontal and vertical oscilloscope inputs with 90^o out of phase sine waves. Starting at (a) with maximum "X" and minimum "Y" deflection, the trace moves up and left toward (b). Between (a) and (b) the two waveforms are equal to 0.707 V_{pk} at 45^o. This point (0.707, 0.707) falls on the radius of the circle between (a) and (b) The trace moves to (b) with minimum "X" and maximum "Y" deflection. With maximum negative "X" and minimum "Y" deflection, the trace moves to (c). Then with minimum "X" and maximum negative "Y", it moves to (d), and on back to (a), completing one cycle.

Figure 13.54 shows the two 90^o phase shifted sine waves applied to oscilloscope deflection plates which are at right angles in space. If this were not the case, a one dimensional line would display. The combination of 90^o phased sine waves and right angle deflection, results in a two dimensional pattern– a circle. This circle is traced out by a counterclockwise rotating

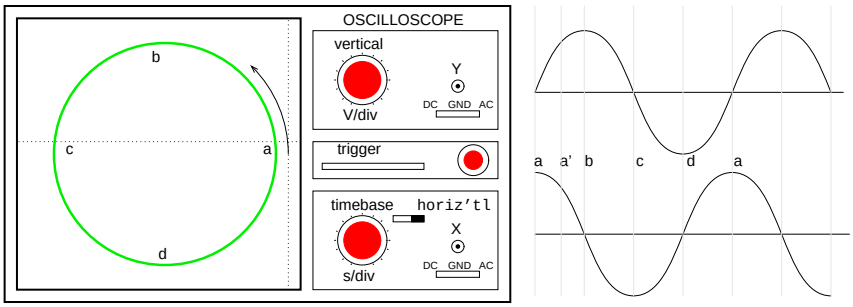


Figure 13.53: *Out of phase (90^o) sine waves produce circular Lissajous pattern.*

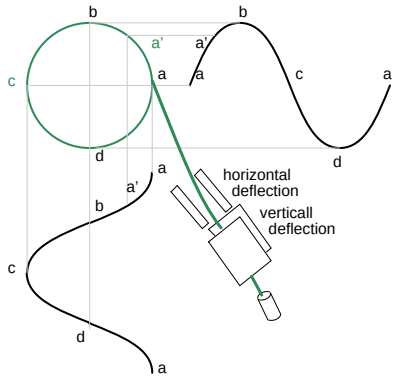


Figure 13.54: *X-axis sine and Y-axis cosine trace circle.*

electron beam.

For reference, Figure 13.55shows why in-phase sine waves will not produce a circular pattern. Equal “X” and “Y” deflection moves the illuminated spot from the origin at (a) up to right (1,1) at (b), back down left to origin at (c),down left to (-1.-1) at (d), and back up right to origin. The line is produced by equal deflections along both axes; y=x is a straight line.

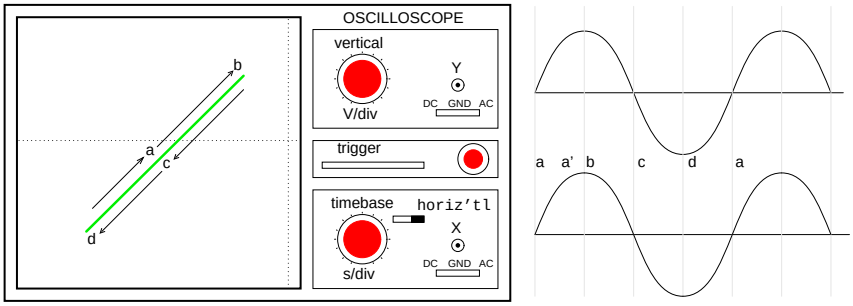


Figure 13.55: *No circular motion from in-phase waveforms.*

If a pair of 90^o out of phase sine waves produces a circular Lissajous, a similar pair of currents should be able to produce a circular rotating magnetic field. Such is the case for a 2-phase motor. By analogy three windings placed 120^o apart in space, and fed with corresponding 120^o phased currents will also produce a rotating magnetic field.

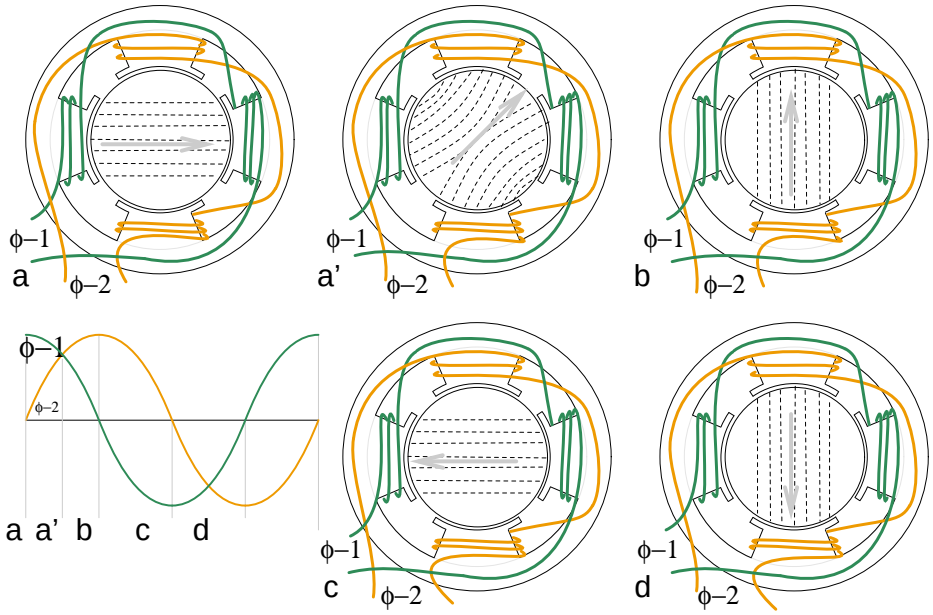


Figure 13.56: *Rotating magnetic field from 90^o phased sinewaves.*

As the 90^o phased sinewaves, Figure 13.56, progress from points (a) through (d), the magnetic field rotates counterclockwise (figures a-d) as follows:

- (a) ϕ-1 maximum, ϕ-2 zero
- (a') ϕ-1 70%, ϕ-2 70%
- (b) ϕ-1 zero, ϕ-2 maximum
- (c) ϕ-1 maximum negative, ϕ-2 zero
- (d) ϕ-1 zero, ϕ-2 maximum negative

Motor speed

The rotation rate of a stator rotating magnetic field is related to the number of pole pairs per stator phase. The "full speed" Figure 13.57 has a total of six poles or three pole-pairs and three phases. However,there is but one pole pair per phase– the number we need. The magnetic field will rotate once per sine wave cycle. In the case of 60 Hz power, the field rotates at 60 times per second or 3600 revolutions per minute (rpm). For 50 Hz power, it rotates at 50 rotations per second, or 3000 rpm. The 3600 and 3000 rpm, are the *synchronous speed* of the motor. Though the rotor of an induction motor never achieves this speed, it certainly is an upper limit. If we double the number of motor poles, the synchronous speed is cut in half because the magnetic field rotates 180^o in space for 360^o of electrical sine wave.

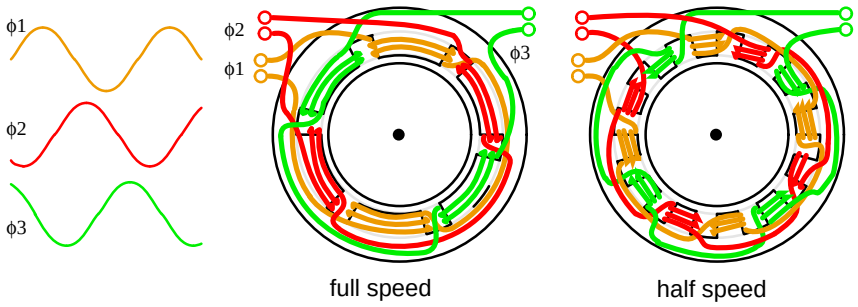


Figure 13.57: *Doubling the stator poles halves the synchronous speed.*

The synchronous speed is given by:

N_s = 120·f/P

N_s = synchronous speed in rpm

f = frequency of applied power, Hz

P = total number of poles per phase, a multiple of 2

Example:
The "half speed" Figure 13.57 has four poles per phase (3-phase). The synchronous speed for 50 Hz power is:

S = 120·50/4 = 1500 rpm

The short explanation of the induction motor is that the rotating magnetic field produced by the stator drags the rotor around with it.

The longer more correct explanation is that the stator's magnetic field induces an alternating current into the rotor squirrel cage conductors which constitutes a transformer secondary. This induced rotor current in turn creates a magnetic field. The rotating stator magnetic field interacts with this rotor field. The rotor field attempts to align with the rotating stator field. The result is rotation of the squirrel cage rotor. If there were no mechanical motor torque load, no bearing, windage, or other losses, the rotor would rotate at the synchronous speed. However, the *slip* between the rotor and the synchronous speed stator field develops torque. It is the magnetic flux cutting the rotor conductors as it slips which develops torque. Thus, a loaded motor will slip in proportion to the mechanical load. If the rotor were to run at synchronous speed, there would be no stator flux cutting the rotor, no current induced in the rotor, no torque.

Torque

When power is first applied to the motor, the rotor is at rest, while the stator magnetic field rotates at the synchronous speed N_s. The stator field is cutting the rotor at the synchronous speed N_s. The current induced in the rotor shorted turns is maximum, as is the frequency of the current, the line frequency. As the rotor speeds up, the rate at which stator flux cuts the rotor is the difference between synchronous speed N_s and actual rotor speed N, or (N_s - N). The ratio of actual flux cutting the rotor to synchronous speed is defined as *slip*:

$s = (N_s - N)/N_s$

where: N_s = synchronous speed, N = rotor speed

The frequency of the current induced into the rotor conductors is only as high as the line frequency at motor start, decreasing as the rotor approaches synchronous speed. *Rotor frequency* is given by:

$f_r = s \cdot f$

where: s = slip, f = stator power line frequency

Slip at 100% torque is typically 5% or less in induction motors. Thus for f = 50 Hz line frequency, the frequency of the induced current in the rotor $f_r = 0.05 \cdot 50 = 2.5$ Hz. Why is it so low? The stator magnetic field rotates at 50 Hz. The rotor speed is 5% less. The rotating magnetic field is only cutting the rotor at 2.5 Hz. The 2.5 Hz is the difference between the synchronous speed and the actual rotor speed. If the rotor spins a little faster, at the synchronous speed, no flux will cut the rotor at all, $f_r = 0$.

The Figure 13.58 graph shows that starting torque known as *locked rotor torque* (LRT) is higher than 100% of the *full load torque* (FLT), the safe continuous torque rating. The locked

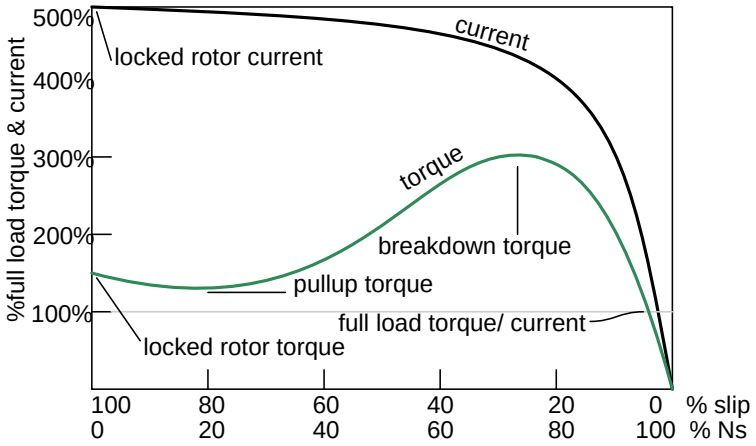


Figure 13.58: *Torque and speed vs %Slip. %N_s=%Synchronous Speed.*

rotor torque is about 175% of FLT for the example motor graphed above. Starting current known as *locked rotor current* (LRC) is 500% of *full load current* (FLC), the safe running current. The current is high because this is analogous to a shorted secondary on a transformer. As the rotor starts to rotate the torque may decrease a bit for certain classes of motors to a value known as the *pull up torque*. This is the lowest value of torque ever encountered by the starting motor. As the rotor gains 80% of synchronous speed, torque increases from 175% up to 300% of the full load torque. This *breakdown torque* is due to the larger than normal 20% slip. The current has decreased only slightly at this point, but will decrease rapidly beyond this point. As the rotor accelerates to within a few percent of synchronous speed, both torque and current will decrease substantially. Slip will be only a few percent during normal operation. For a running motor, any portion of the torque curve below 100% rated torque is normal. The motor load determines the operating point on the torque curve. While the motor torque and current may exceed 100% for a few seconds during starting, continuous operation above 100% can damage the motor. Any motor torque load above the breakdown torque will stall the motor. The torque, slip, and current will approach zero for a "no mechanical torque" load condition. This condition is analogous to an open secondary transformer.

There are several basic induction motor designs (Figure 13.59) showing consideable variation from the torque curve above. The different designs are optimized for starting and running different types of loads. The locked rotor torque (LRT) for various motor designs and sizes ranges from 60% to 350% of full load torque (FLT). Starting current or locked rotor current (LRC) can range from 500% to 1400% of full load current (FLC). This current draw can present a starting problem for large induction motors.

NEMA design classes

Various standard classes (or designs) for motors, corresponding to the torque curves (Figure 13.59) have been developed to better drive various type loads. The National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA) has specified motor classes A, B, C, and D to meet these

drive requirements. Similar International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) classes N and H correspond to NEMA B and C designs respectively.

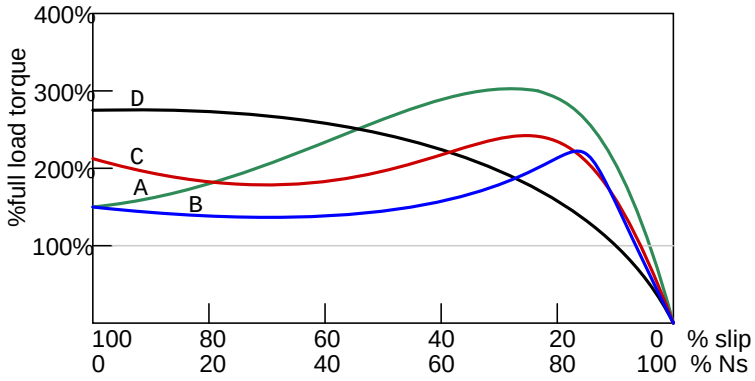


Figure 13.59: *Characteristics for NEMA designs.*

All motors, except class D, operate at %5 slip or less at full load.

- **Class B (IEC Class N)** motors are the default motor to use in most applications. With a starting torque of LRT = 150% to 170% of FLT, it can start most loads, without excessive starting current (LRT). Efficiency and power factor are high. It typically drives pumps, fans, and machine tools.
- **Class A** starting torque is the same as class B. Drop out torque and starting current (LRT)are higher. This motor handles transient overloads as encountered in injection molding machines.
- **Class C (IEC Class H)** has higher starting torque than class A and B at LRT = 200% of FLT. This motor is applied to hard-starting loads which need to be driven at constant speed like conveyors, crushers, and reciprocating pumps and compressors.
- **Class D** motors have the highest starting torque (LRT) coupled with low starting current due to high slip (5% to 13% at FLT). The high slip results in lower speed. Speed regulation is poor. However, the motor excels at driving highly variable speed loads like those requiring an energy storage flywheel. Applications include punch presses, shears, and elevators.
- **Class E** motors are a higher efficiency version of class B.
- **Class F** motors have much lower LRC, LRT, and break down torque than class B. They drive constant easily started loads.

Power factor

Induction motors present a lagging (inductive) power factor to the power line.The power factor in large fully loaded high speed motors can be as favorable as 90% for large high speed motors.

At 3/4 full load the largest high speed motor power factor can be 92%. The power factor for small low speed motors can be as low as 50%. At starting, the power factor can be in the range of 10% to 25%, rising as the rotor achieves speed.

Power factor (PF) varies considerably with the motor mechanical load (Figure 13.60). An unloaded motor is analogous to a transformer with no resistive load on the secondary. Little resistance is reflected from the secondary (rotor) to the primary (stator). Thus the power line sees a reactive load, as low as 10% PF. As the rotor is loaded an increasing resistive component is reflected from rotor to stator, increasing the power factor.

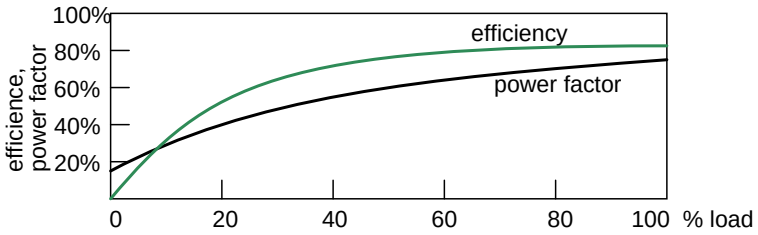


Figure 13.60: *Induction motor power factor and efficiency.*

Efficiency

Large three phase motors are more efficient than smaller 3-phase motors, and most all single phase motors. Large induction motor efficiency can be as high as 95% at full load, though 90% is more common. Efficiency for a lightly load or no-loaded induction motor is poor because most of the current is involved with maintaining magnetizing flux. As the torque load is increased, more current is consumed in generating torque, while current associated with magnetizing remains fixed. Efficiency at 75% FLT can be slightly higher than that at 100% FLT. Efficiency is decreased a few percent at 50% FLT, and decreased a few more percent at 25% FLT. Efficiency only becomes poor below 25% FLT. The variation of efficiency with loading is shown in Figure 13.60

Induction motors are typically oversized to guarantee that their mechanical load can be started and driven under all operating conditions. If a polyphase motor is loaded at less than 75% of rated torque where efficiency peaks, efficiency suffers only slightly down to 25% FLT.

Nola power factor corrrector

Frank Nola of NASA proposed a power factor corrector (PFC) as an energy saving device for single phase induction motors in the late 1970's. It is based on the premise that a less than fully loaded induction motor is less efficient and has a lower power factor than a fully loaded motor. Thus, there is energy to be saved in partially loaded motors, 1-ϕ motors in particular. The energy consumed in maintaining the stator magnetic field is relatively fixed with respect to load changes. While there is nothing to be saved in a fully loaded motor, the voltage to a partially loaded motor may be reduced to decrease the energy required to maintain the magnetic field. This will increase power factor and efficiency. This was a good concept for the notoriously inefficient single phase motors for which it was intended.

This concept is not very applicable to large 3-phase motors. Because of their high efficiency (90%+), there is not much energy to be saved. Moreover, a 95% efficient motor is still 94% efficient at 50% full load torque (FLT) and 90% efficient at 25% FLT. The potential energy savings in going from 100% FLT to 25% FLT is the difference in efficiency 95% - 90% = 5%. This is not 5% of the full load wattage but 5% of the wattage at the reduced load. The Nola power factor corrector might be applicable to a 3-phase motor which idles most of the time (below 25% FLT), like a punch press. The pay-back period for the expensive electronic controller has been estimated to be unattractive for most applications. Though, it might be economical as part of an electronic motor starter or speed Control. [7]

13.7.3 Induction motor alternator

An induction motor may function as an alternator if it is driven by a torque at greater than 100% of the synchronous speed. (Figure 13.61) This corresponds to a few % of "negative" slip, say -1% slip. This means that as we are rotating the motor faster than the synchronous speed, the rotor is advancing 1% faster than the stator rotating magnetic field. It normally lags by 1% in a motor. Since the rotor is cutting the stator magnetic field in the opposite direction (leading), the rotor induces a voltage into the stator feeding electrical energy back into the power line.

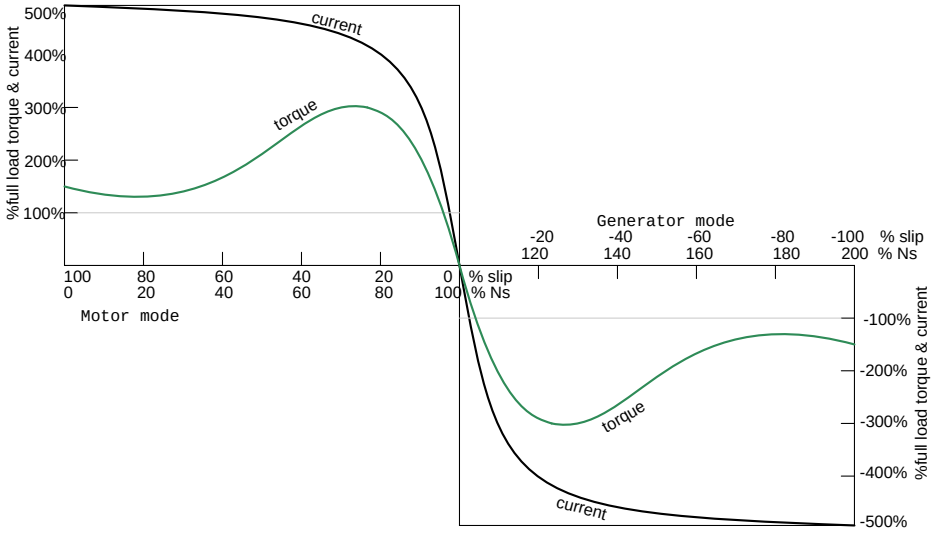


Figure 13.61: *Negative torque makes induction motor into generator.*

Such an *induction generator* must be excited by a "live" source of 50 or 60 Hz power. No power can be generated in the event of a power company power failure. This type of alternator appears to be unsuited as a standby power source. As an auxiliary power wind turbine generator, it has the advantage of not requiring an automatic power failure disconnect switch to protect repair crews. It is fail-safe.

Small remote (from the power grid) installations may be make self-exciting by placing capacitors in parallel with the stator phases. If the load is removed residual magnetism may generate a small amount of current flow. This current is allowed to flow by the capacitors without dissipating power. As the generator is brought up to full speed, the current flow increases to supply a magnetizing current to the stator. The load may be applied at this point. Voltage regulation is poor. An induction motor may be converted to a self-excited generator by the addition of capacitors.[6]

Start up procedure is to bring the wind turbine up to speed in motor mode by application of normal power line voltage to the stator. Any wind induced turbine speed in excess of synchronous speed will develop negative torque, feeding power back into the power line, reversing the normal direction of the electric kilowatt-hour meter. Whereas an induction motor presents a lagging power factor to the power line, an induction alternator presents a leading power factor. Induction generators are not widely used in conventional power plants. The speed of the steam turbine drive is steady and controllable as required by synchronous alternators. Synchronous alternators are also more efficient.

The speed of a wind turbine is difficult to control, and subject to wind speed variation by gusts. An induction alternator is better able to cope with these variations due to the inherent slip. This stresses the gear train and mechanical components less than a synchronous genertor. However, this allowable speed variation only amounts to about 1%. Thus, a direct line connected induction generator is considered to be fixed-speed in a wind turbine. See Doubly-fed induction generator for a true variable speed alternator. Multiple generators or multiple windings on a common shaft may be switched to provide a high and low speed to accomodate variable wind conditions.

13.7.4 Motor starting and speed control

Some induction motors can draw over 1000% of full load current during starting; though, a few hundred percent is more common. Small motors of a few kilowatts or smaller can be started by direct connection to the power line. Starting larger motors can cause line voltage sag, affecting other loads. Motor-start rated circuit breakers (analogous to slow blow fuses) should replace standard circuit breakers for starting motors of a few kilowatts. This breaker accepts high over-current for the duration of starting.

Motors over 50 kW use motor starters to reduce line current from several hundred to a few hundred percent of full load current. An intermittent duty autotarnsformer may reduce the stator voltage for a fraction of a minute during the start interval, followed by application of full line voltage as in Figure 13.62. Closure of the S contacts applies reduced voltage during the start interval. The S contacts open and the R contacts close after starting. This reduces starting current to, say, 200% of full load current. Since the autotransformer is only used for the short start interval, it may be sized considerably smaller than a continuous duty unit.

Running 3-phase motors on 1-phase

Three-phase motors will run on single phase as readily as single phase motors. The only problem for either motor is starting. Sometimes 3-phase motors are purchased for use on single phase if three-phase power is anticipated. The power rating needs to be 50% larger than for a comparable single phase motor to make up for one unused winding. Single phase is applied

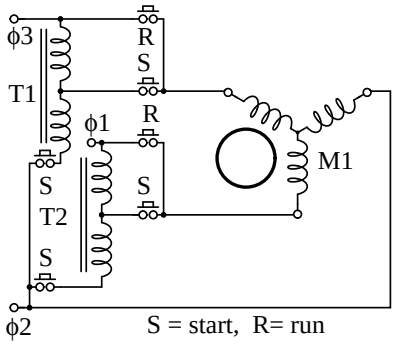


Figure 13.62: *Autotransformer induction motor starter.*

to a pair of windings simultanous with a start capacitor in series with the third winding. The start switch is opened in Figure 13.63 upon motor start. Sometimes a smaller capacitor than the start capacitor is retained while running.

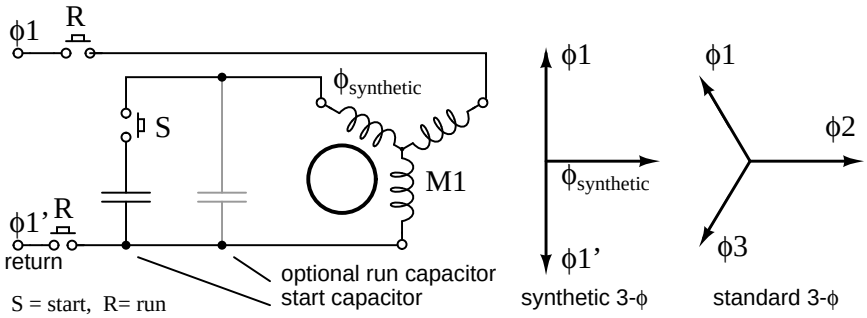


Figure 13.63: *Starting a three-phase motor on single phase.*

The circuit for running a three-phase motor on single phase is known as "add a phase" or various other brand names. "Add a phase" supplies a phase approximately midway $\angle 90^o$ between the $\angle 180^o$ single phase power source terminals.

Multiple fields

Induction motors may contain multiple field windings, for example a 4-pole and an 8-pole winding corresponding to 1800 and 900 rpm synchronous speeds. Energizing one field or the other is less complex than rewiring the stator coils in Figure 13.64.

If the field is segmented with leads brought out, it may be rewired (or switched) from 4-pole to 2-pole as shown above for a 2-phase motor. The 22.5^o segments are switchable to 45^o segments. Only the wiring for one phase is shown above for clarity. Thus, our induction motor may run at multiple speeds. When switching the above 60 Hz motor from 4 poles to 2 poles

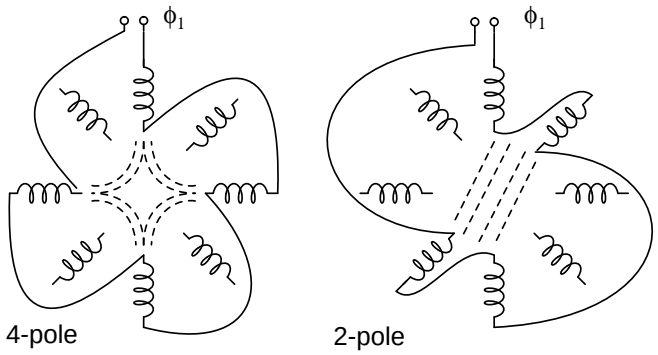


Figure 13.64: *Multiple fields allow speed change.*

the synchronous speed increases from 1800 rpm to 3600 rpm. If the motor is driven by 50 Hz, what would be the corresponding 4-pole and 2-pole synchronous speeds?

N_s = 120f/P = 120*50/4 = 1500 rpm (4-pole)

N_s = 3000 rpm (2-pole)

Variable voltage

The speed of small squirrel cage induction motors for applications such as driving fans, may be changed by reducing the line voltage. This reduces the torque available to the load which reduces the speed. (Figure 13.65)

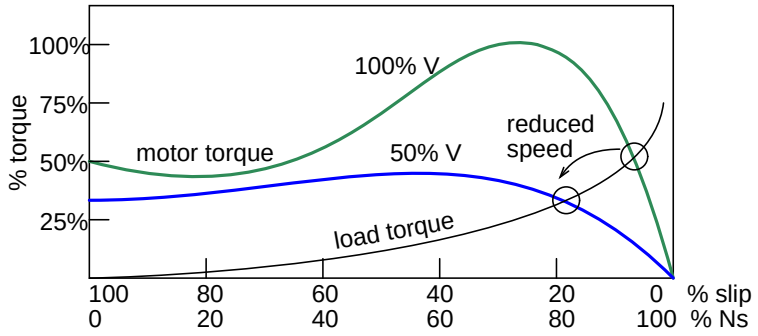


Figure 13.65: *Variable voltage controls induction motor speed.*

Electronic speed control

Modern solid state electronics increase the options for speed control. By changing the 50 or 60 Hz line frequency to higher or lower values, the synchronous speed of the motor may be

changed. However, decreasing the frequency of the current fed to the motor also decreases reactance X_L which increases the stator current. This may cause the stator magnetic circuit to saturate with disastrous results. In practice, the voltage to the motor needs to be decreased when frequency is decreased.

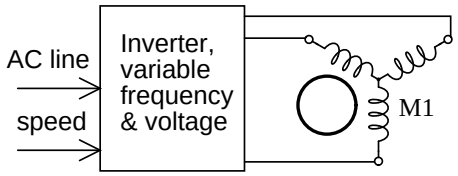


Figure 13.66: *Electronic variable speed drive.*

Conversely, the drive frequency may be increased to increase the synchronous speed of the motor. However, the voltage needs to be increased to overcome increasing reactance to keep current up to a normal value and maintain torque. The inverter (Figure¡ref¿02480.eps¡x1¿) approximates sinewaves to the motor with pulse width modulation outputs. This is a chopped waveform which is either on or off, high or low, the percentage of "on" time corresponds to the instantaneous sine wave voltage.

Once electronics is applied to induction motor control, many control methods are available, varying from the simple to complex:

Summary: Speed control

- *Scaler Control* Low cost method described above to control only voltage and frequency, without feedback.
- *Vector Control* Also known as vector phase control. The flux and torque producing components of stator current are measured or estimated on a real-time basis to enhance the motor torque-speed curve. This is computation intensive.
- *Direct Torque Control* An elaborate adaptive motor model allows more direct control of flux and torque without feedback. This method quickly responds to load changes.

Summary: Tesla polyphase induction motors

- A *polyphase induction motor* consists of a polyphase winding embedded in a laminated stator and a conductive squirrel cage embedded in a laminated rotor.
- Three phase currents flowing within the stator create a rotating magnetic field which induces a current, and consequent magnetic field in the rotor. Rotor torque is developed as the rotor slips a little behind the rotating stator field.
- Unlike single phase motors, polyphase induction motors are *self-starting*.
- *Motor starters* minimize loading of the power line while providing a larger starting torque than required during running. Starters are only required for large motors.
- *Multiple field windings* can be rewired for multiple discrete motor speeds by changing the number of poles.

13.7.5 Linear induction motor

The wound stator and the squirrel cage rotor of an induction motor may be cut at the circumference and unrolled into a linear induction motor. The direction of linear travel is controlled by the sequence of the drive to the stator phases.

The linear induction motor has been proposed as a drive for high speed passenger trains. Up to this time, the linear induction motor with the accompanying magnetic repulsion levitation system required for a smooth ride has been too costly for all but experimental installations. However, the linear induction motor is scheduled to replace steam driven catapult aircraft launch systems on the next generation of naval aircraft carrier, CVNX-1, in 2013. This will increase efficiency and reduce maintenance.[4] [5]

13.8 Wound rotor induction motors

A *wound rotor* induction motor has a stator like the squirrel cage induction motor, but a rotor with insulated windings brought out via slip rings and brushes. However, no power is applied to the slip rings. Their sole purpose is to allow resistance to be placed in series with the rotor windings while starting. (Figure 13.67) This resistance is shorted out once the motor is started to make the rotor look electrically like the squirrel cage counterpart.

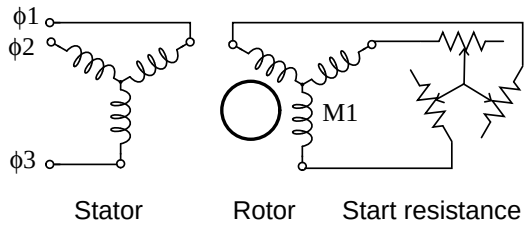


Figure 13.67: *Wound rotor induction motor.*

Why put resistance in series with the rotor? Squirrel cage induction motors draw 500% to over 1000% of full load current (FLC) during starting. While this is not a severe problem for small motors, it is for large (10's of kW) motors. Placing resistance in series with the rotor windings not only decreases start current, locked rotor current (LRC), but also increases the starting torque, locked rotor torque (LRT). Figure 13.68 shows that by increasing the rotor resistance from R_0 to R_1 to R_2, the breakdown torque peak is shifted left to zero speed.Note that this torque peak is much higher than the starting torque available with no rotor resistance (R_0) Slip is proportional to rotor resistance, and pullout torque is proportional to slip. Thus, high torque is produced while starting.

The resistance decreases the torque available at full running speed. But that resistance is shorted out by the time the rotor is started. A shorted rotor operates like a squirrel cage rotor. Heat generated during starting is mostly dissipated external to the motor in the starting resistance. The complication and maintenance associated with brushes and slip rings is a disadvantage of the wound rotor as compared to the simple squirrel cage rotor.

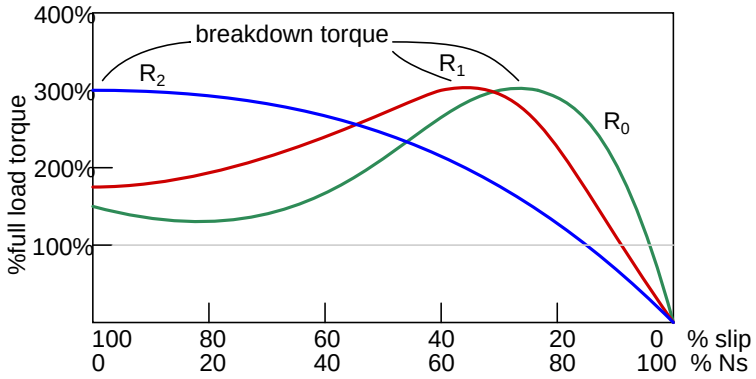


Figure 13.68: *Breakdown torque peak is shifted to zero speed by increasing rotor resistance.*

This motor is suited for starting high inertial loads. A high starting resistance makes the high pull out torque available at zero speed. For comparison, a squirrel cage rotor only exhibits pull out (peak) torque at 80% of its' synchronous speed.

13.8.1 Speed control

Motor speed may be varied by putting variable resistance back into the rotor circuit. This reduces rotor current and speed. The high starting torque available at zero speed, the down shifted break down torque, is not available at high speed. See R_2 curve at 90% Ns, Figure 13.69. Resistors $R_0R_1R_2R_3$ increase in value from zero. A higher resistance at R_3 reduces the speed further. Speed regulation is poor with respect to changing torque loads. This speed control technique is only usefull over a range of 50% to 100% of full speed. Speed control works well with variable speed loads like elevators and printing presses.

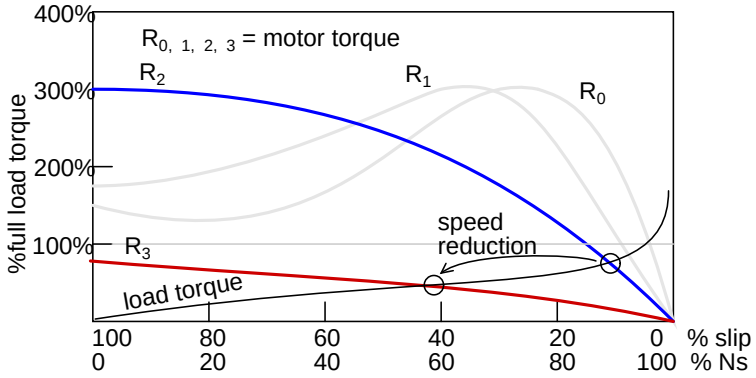


Figure 13.69: *Rotor resistance controls speed of wound rotor induction motor.*

13.8.2 Doubly-fed induction generator

We previously described a squirrel cage induction motor acting like a generator if driven faster than the synchronous speed. (See Induction motor alternator) This is a *singly-fed induction generator*, having electrical connections only to the stator windings. A wound rotor induction motor may also act as a generator when driven above the synchronous speed. Since there are connections to both the stator and rotor, such a machine is known as a *doubly-fed induction generator* (DFIG).

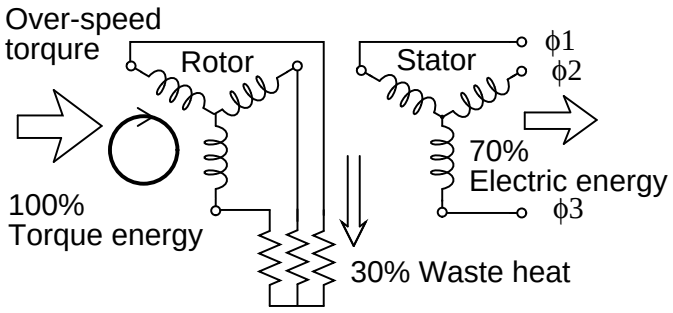


Figure 13.70: *Rotor resistance allows over-speed of doubly-fed induction generator.*

The singly-fed induction generator only had a useable slip range of 1% when driven by troublesome wind torque. Since the speed of a wound rotor induction motor may be controlled over a range of 50-100% by inserting resistance in the rotor, we may expect the same of the doubly-fed induction generator. Not only can we slow the rotor by 50%, we can also overspeed it by 50%. That is, we can vary the speed of a doubly fed induction generator by $\pm 50\%$ from the synchronous speed. In actual practice, $\pm 30\%$ is more practical.

If the generator over-speeds, resistance placed in the rotor circuit will absorb excess energy while the stator feeds constant 60 Hz to the power line. (Figure 13.70) In the case of under-speed, negative resistance inserted into the rotor circuit can make up the energy deficit, still allowing the stator to feed the power line with 60 Hz power.

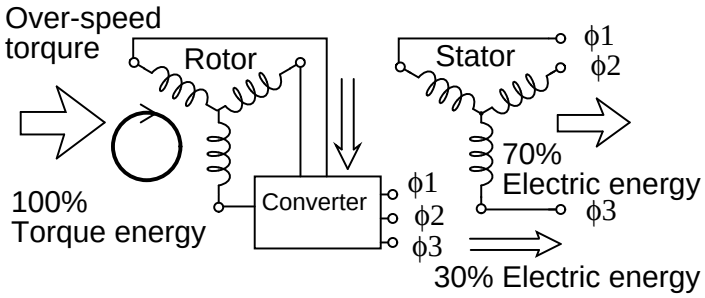


Figure 13.71: *Converter recovers energy from rotor of doubly-fed induction generator.*

In actual practice, the rotor resistance may be replaced by a converter (Figure 13.71) ab-

sorbing power from the rotor, and feeding power into the power line instead of dissipating it. This improves the efficiency of the generator.

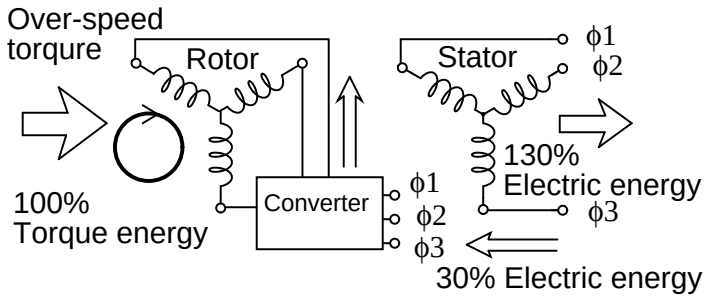


Figure 13.72: *Converter borrows energy from power line for rotor of doubly fed induction generator, allowing it to function well under synchronous speed.*

The converter may "borrow" power from the line for the under-speed rotor, which passes it on to the stator. (Figure 13.72) The borrowed power, along with the larger shaft energy, passes to the stator which is connected to the power line. The stator appears to be supplying 130% of power to the line. Keep in mind that the rotor "borrows" 30%, leaving, leaving the line with 100% for the theoretical lossless DFIG.

Wound rotor induction motor qualities.

- Excellent starting torque for high inertia loads.
- Low starting current compared to squirrel cage induction motor.
- Speed is resistance variable over 50% to 100% full speed.
- Higher maintenance of brushes and slip rings compared to squirrel cage motor.
- The generator version of the wound rotor machine is known as a *doubly-fed induction generator*, a variable speed machine.

13.9 Single-phase induction motors

A three phase motor may be run from a single phase power source. (Figure 13.73) However, it will not self-start. It may be hand started in either direction, coming up to speed in a few seconds. It will only develop 2/3 of the 3-ϕ power rating because one winding is not used.

The single coil of a single phase induction motor does not produce a rotating magnetic field, but a pulsating field reaching maximum intensity at 0^o and 180^o electrical. (Figure 13.74)

Another view is that the single coil excited by a single phase current produces two counter rotating magnetic field phasors, coinciding twice per revolution at 0^o (Figure 13.74-a) and 180^o (figure e). When the phasors rotate to 90^o and -90^o they cancel in figure b. At 45^o and -45^o (figure c) they are partially additive along the +x axis and cancel along the y axis. An analogous

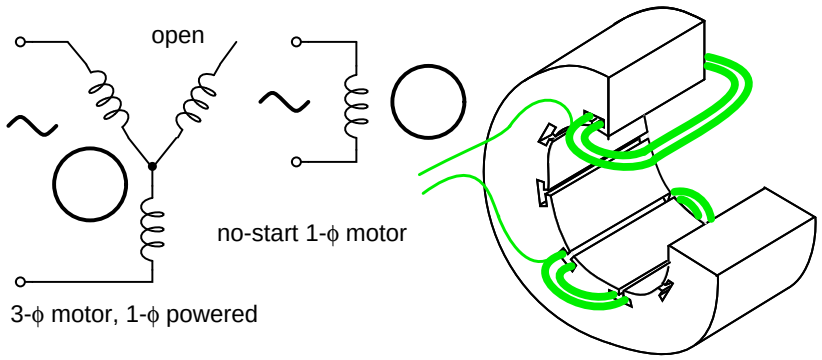


Figure 13.73: *3-ϕmotor runs from 1-ϕ power, but does not start.*

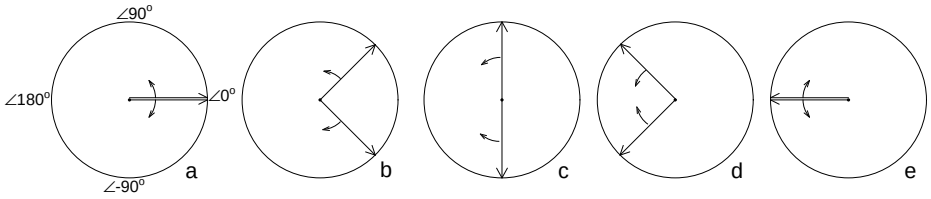


Figure 13.74: *Single phase stator produces a nonrotating, pulsating magnetic field.*

situation exists in figure d. The sum of these two phasors is a phasor stationary in space, but alternating polarity in time. Thus, no starting torque is developed.

However, if the rotor is rotated forward at a bit less than the synchronous speed, It will develop maximum torque at 10% slip with respect to the forward rotating phasor. Less torque will be developed above or below 10% slip. The rotor will see 200% - 10% slip with respect to the counter rotating magnetic field phasor. Little torque (see torque vs slip curve) other than a double freqency ripple is developed from the counter rotating phasor. Thus, the single phase coil will develop torque, once the rotor is started. If the rotor is started in the reverse direction, it will develop a similar large torque as it nears the speed of the backward rotating phasor.

Single phase induction motors have a copper or aluminum squirrel cage embedded in a cylinder of steel laminations, typical of poly-phase induction motors.

13.9.1 Permanent-split capacitor motor

One way to solve the single phase problem is to build a 2-phase motor, deriving 2-phase power from single phase. This requires a motor with two windings spaced apart 90^o electrical, fed with two phases of current displaced 90^o in time. This is called a permanent-split capacitor motor in Figure 13.75.

This type of motor suffers increased current magnitude and backward time shift as the motor comes up to speed, with torque pulsations at full speed. The solution is to keep the capacitor (impedance) small to minimize losses. The losses are less than for a shaded pole motor.

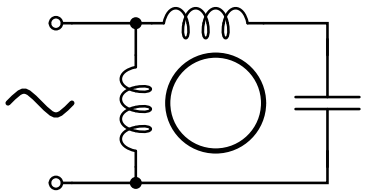


Figure 13.75: *Permanent-split capacitor induction motor.*

This motor configuration works well up to 1/4 horsepower (200watt), though, usually applied to smaller motors. The direction of the motor is easily reversed by switching the capacitor in series with the other winding. This type of motor can be adapted for use as a servo motor, described elsewhere is this chapter.

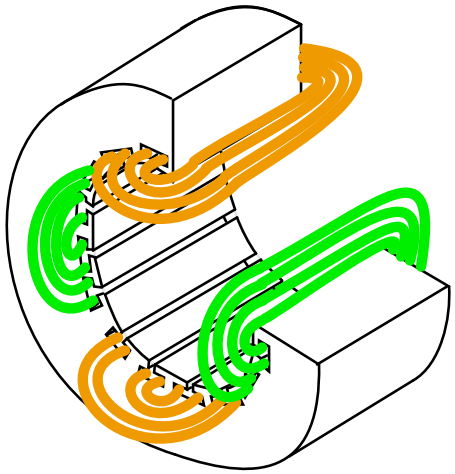


Figure 13.76: *Single phase induction motor with embedded stator coils.*

Single phase induction motors may have coils embedded into the stator as shown in Figure 13.76 for larger size motors. Though, the smaller sizes use less complex to build concentrated windings with salient poles.

13.9.2 Capacitor-start induction motor

In Figure 13.77 a larger capacitor may be used to start a single phase induction motor via the auxiliary winding if it is switched out by a centrifugal switch once the motor is up to speed. Moreover, the auxiliary winding may be many more turns of heavier wire than used in a resistance split-phase motor to mitigate excessive temperature rise. The result is that more starting torque is available for heavy loads like air conditioning compressors. This motor configuration works so well that it is available in multi-horsepower (multi-kilowatt) sizes.

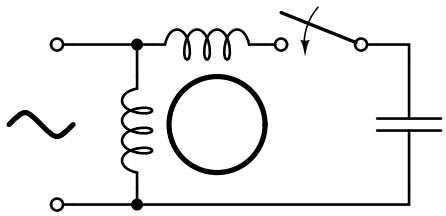


Figure 13.77: *Capacitor-start induction motor.*

13.9.3 Capacitor-run motor induction motor

A variation of the capacitor-start motor (Figure 13.78) is to start the motor with a relatively large capacitor for high starting torque, but leave a smaller value capacitor in place after starting to improve running characteristics while not drawing excessive current. The additional complexity of the capacitor-run motor is justified for larger size motors.

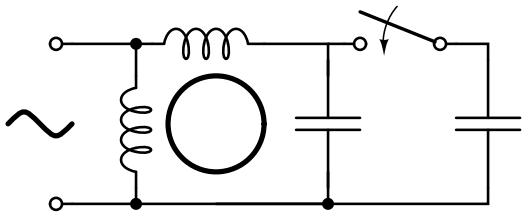


Figure 13.78: *Capacitor-run motor induction motor.*

A motor starting capacitor may be a double-anode non-polar electrolytic capacitor which could be two + to + (or - to -) series connected polarized electrolytic capacitors. Such AC rated electrolytic capacitors have such high losses that they can only be used for intermittent duty (1 second on, 60 seconds off) like motor starting. A capacitor for motor running must not be of electrolytic construction, but a lower loss polymer type.

13.9.4 Resistance split-phase motor induction motor

If an auxiliary winding of much fewer turns of smaller wire is placed at 90^o electrical to the main winding, it can start a single phase induction motor. (Figure 13.79) With lower inductance and higher resistance, the current will experience less phase shift than the main winding. About 30^o of phase difference may be obtained. This coil produces a moderate starting torque, which is disconnected by a centrifugal switch at 3/4 of synchronous speed. This simple (no capacitor) arrangement serves well for motors up to 1/3 horsepower (250 watts) driving easily started loads.

This motor has more starting torque than a shaded pole motor (next section), but not as much as a two phase motor built from the same parts. The current density in the auxiliary winding is so high during starting that the consequent rapid temperature rise precludes frequent restarting or slow starting loads.

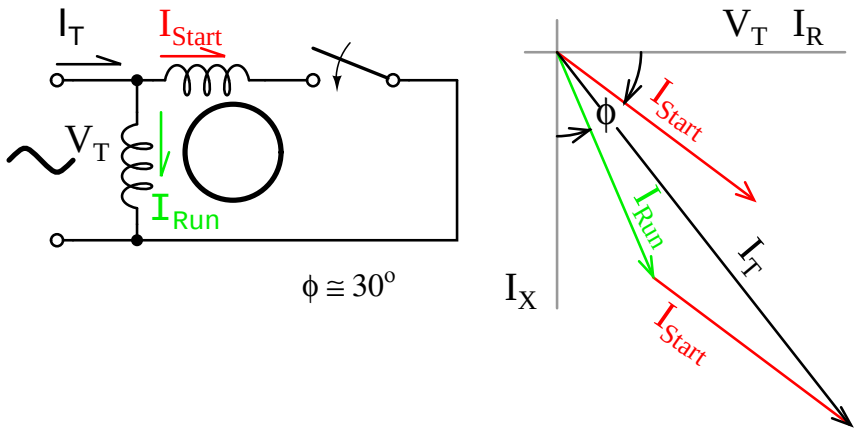


Figure 13.79: *Resistance split-phase motor induction motor.*

13.9.5 Nola power factor corrrector

Frank Nola of NASA proposed a power factor corrector for improving the efficiency of AC induction motors in the mid 1970's. It is based on the premise that induction motors are inefficient at less than full load. This inefficiency correlates with a low power factor. The less than unity power factor is due to magnetizing current required by the stator. This fixed current is a larger proportion of total motor current as motor load is decreased. At light load, the full magnetizing current is not required. It could be reduced by decreasing the applied voltage, improving the power factor and efficiency. The power factor corrector senses power factor, and decreases motor voltage, thus restoring a higher power factor and decreasing losses.

Since single-phase motors are about 2 to 4 times as inefficient as three-phase motors, there is potential energy savings for 1-ϕ motors. There is no savings for a fully loaded motor since all the stator magnetizing current is required. The voltage cannot be reduced. But there is potential savings from a less than fully loaded motor. A nominal 117 VAC motor is designed to work at as high as 127 VAC, as low as 104 VAC. That means that it is not fully loaded when operated at greater than 104 VAC, for example, a 117 VAC refrigerator. It is safe for the power factor controller to lower the line voltage to 104-110 VAC. The higher the initial line voltage, the greater the potential savings. Of course, if the power company delivers closer to 110 VAC, the motor will operate more efficiently without any add-on device.

Any substantially idle, 25% FLC or less, single phase induction motor is a candidate for a PFC. Though, it needs to operate a large number of hours per year. And the more time it idles, as in a lumber saw, punch press, or conveyor, the greater the possibility of paying for the controller in a few years operation. It should be easier to pay for it by a factor of three as compared to the more efficient 3-ϕ-motor. The cost of a PFC cannot be recovered for a motor operating only a few hours per day. [7]

Summary: Single-phase induction motors

- *Single-phase induction motors* are not self-starting without an auxiliary stator winding

driven by an out of phase current of near 90^o. Once started the auxiliary winding is optional.

- The auxiliary winding of a *permanent-split capacitor motor* has a capacitor in series with it during starting and running.
- A *capacitor-start induction motor*only has a capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding during starting.
- A *capacitor-run motor* typically has a large non-polarized electrolytic capacitor in series with the auxiliary winding for starting, then a smaller non-electrolytic capacitor during running.
- The auxiliary winding of a *resistance split-phase motor* develops a phase difference versus the main winding during starting by virtue of the difference in resistance.

13.10 Other specialized motors

13.10.1 Shaded pole induction motor

An easy way to provide starting torque to a single phase motor is to embed a shorted turn in each pole at 30^o to 60^o to the main winding. (Figure 13.80) Typically 1/3 of the pole is enclosed by a bare copper strap. These shading coils produce a time lagging damped flux spaced 30^o to 60^o from the main field. This lagging flux with the undamped main component, produces a rotating field with a small torque to start the rotor.

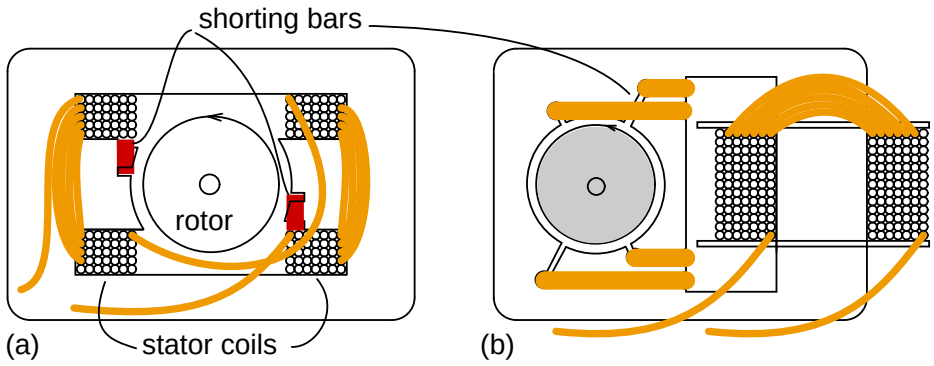


Figure 13.80: *Shaded pole induction motor, (a) dual coil design, (b) smaller single coil version.*

Starting torque is so low that shaded pole motors are only manufactured in smaller sizes, below 50 watts. Low cost and simplicity suit this motor to small fans, air circulators, and other low torque applications. Motor speed can be lowered by switching reactance in series to limit current and torque, or by switching motor coil taps as in Figure 13.81.

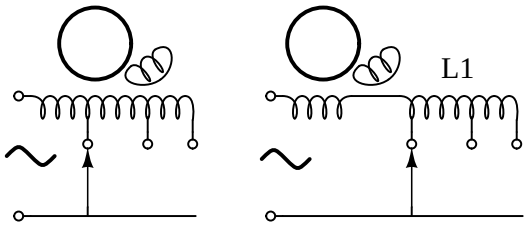


Figure 13.81: *Speed control of shaded pole motor.*

13.10.2 2-phase servo motor

A *servo motor* is typically part of a feedback loop containing electronic, mechanical, and electrical components. The servo loop is a means of controlling the motion of an object via the motor. A requirement of many such systems is fast response. To reduce acceleration robbing inertial, the iron core is removed from the rotor leaving only a shaft mounted aluminum cup to rotate. (Figure 13.82) The iron core is reinserted within the cup as a static (non-rotating) component to complete the magnetic circuit. Otherwise, the construction is typical of a two phase motor. The low mass rotor can accelerate more rapidly than a squirrel cage rotor.

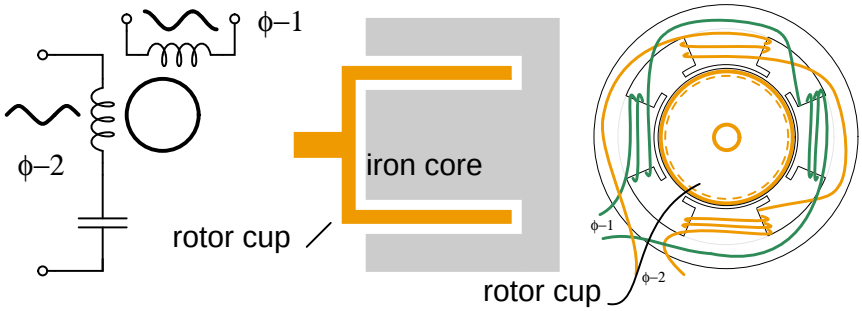


Figure 13.82: *High acceleration 2-ϕ AC servo motor.*

One phase is connected to the single phase line; the other is driven by an amplifier. One of the windings is driven by a 90^o phase shifted waveform. In the above figure, this is accomplished by a series capacitor in the power line winding. The other winding is driven by a variable amplitude sine wave to control motor speed. The phase of the waveform may invert (180^o phase shift) to reverse the direction of the motor. This variable sine wave is the output of an error amplifier. See synchro CT section for example. Aircraft control surfaces may be positioned by 400 Hz 2-ϕ servo motors.

13.10.3 Hysteresis motor

If the low hysteresis Si-steel laminated rotor of an induction motor is replaced by a slotless windingless cylinder of hardened magnet steel, hysteresis, or lagging behind of rotor magneti-

zation, is greatly accentuated. The resulting low torque synchronous motor develops constant torque from stall to synchronous speed. Because of the low torque, the hysteresis motor is only available in very small sizes, and is only used for constant speed applications like clock drives, and formerly, phonograph turntables.

13.10.4 Eddy current clutch

If the stator of an induction motor or a synchronous motor is mounted to rotate independently of the rotor, an eddy current clutch results. The coils are excited with DC and attached to the mechanical load. The squirrel cage rotor is attached to the driving motor. The drive motor is started with no DC excitation to the clutch. The DC excitation is adjusted from zero to the desired final value providing a continuously and smoothly variable torque. The operation of the eddy current clutch is similar to an analog eddy current automotive speedometer.

Summary: Other specialized motors

- The *shaded pole induction motor*, used in under 50 watt low torque applications, develops a second phase from shorted turns in the stator.
- *Hysteresis motors* are a small low torque synchronous motor once used in clocks and phonographs.
- The *eddy current clutch* provides an adjustable torque.

13.11 Selsyn (synchro) motors

Normally, the rotor windings of a wound rotor induction motor are shorted out after starting. During starting, resistance may be placed in series with the rotor windings to limit starting current. If these windings are connected to a common starting resistance, the two rotors will remain synchronized during starting. (Figure 13.83) This is usefull for printing presses and draw bridges, where two motors need to be synchronized during starting. Once started, and the rotors are shorted, the synchronizing torque is absent. The higher the resistance during starting, the higher the synchronizing torque for a pair of motors. If the starting resistors are removed, but the rotors still paralleled, there is no starting torque. However there is a substantial synchronizing torque. This is a *selsyn*, which is an abbreviation for “self synchronous”.

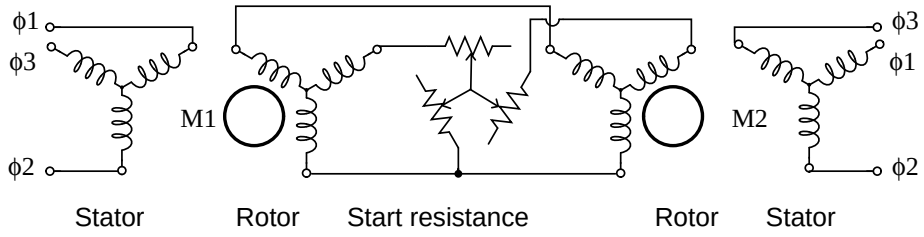


Figure 13.83: *Starting wound rotor induction motors from common resistors.*

The rotors may be stationary. If one rotor is moved through an angle θ, the other selsyn shaft will move through an angle θ. If drag is applied to one selsyn, this will be felt when attempting to rotate the other shaft. While multi-horsepower (multi-kilowatt) selsyns exist, the main appplication is small units of a few watts for instrumentation applications– remote position indication.

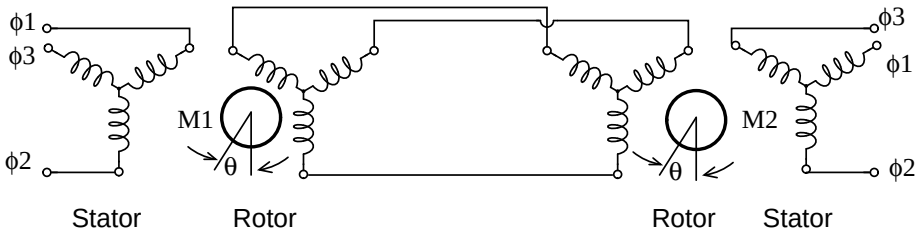


Figure 13.84: *Selsyns without starting resistance.*

Instrumentation selsyns have no use for starting resistors. (Figure 13.84) They are not intended to be self rotating. Since the rotors are not shorted out nor resistor loaded, no starting torque is developed. However, manual rotation of one shaft will produce an unbalance in the rotor currents until the parallel unit's shaft follows. Note that a common source of three phase power is applied to both stators. Though we show three phase rotors above, a single phase powered rotor is sufficient as shown in Figure 13.85.

13.11.1 Transmitter - receiver

Small instrumentation selsyns, also known as *sychros*, use single phase paralleled, AC energized rotors, retaining the 3-phase paralleled stators, which are not externally energized. (Figure 13.85) Synchros function as rotary transformers. If the rotors of both the *torque transmitter* (TX) and *torque receiver* (RX) are at the same angle, the phases of the induced stator voltages will be identical for both, and no current will flow. Should one rotor be displaced from the other, the stator phase voltages will differ between transmitter and receiver. Stator current will flow developing torque. The receiver shaft is electrically slaved to the transmitter shaft. Either the transmitter or receiver shaft may be rotated to turn the opposite unit.

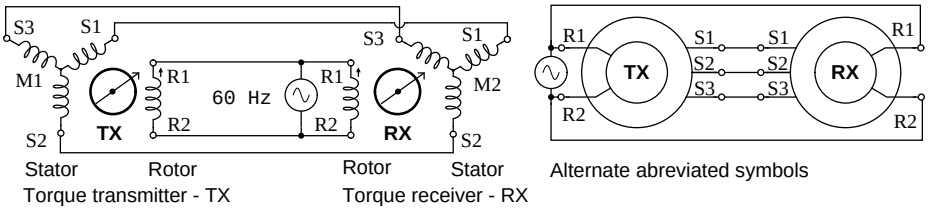


Figure 13.85: *Synchros have single phase powered rotors.*

Synchro stators are wound with 3-phase windings brought out to external terminals. The single rotor winding of a torque transmitter or receiver is brough out by brushed slip rings.

Synchro transmitters and receivers are electrically identical. However, a synchro receiver has inertial damping built in. A synchro torque transmitter may be substituted for a torque receiver.

Remote position sensing is the main synchro application. (Figure 13.86) For example, a synchro transmitter coupled to a radar antenna indicates antenna position on an indicator in a control room. A synchro transmitter coupled to a weather vane indicates wind direction at a remote console. Synchros are available for use with 240 Vac 50 Hz, 115 Vac 60 Hz, 115 Vac 400 Hz, and 26 Vac 400 Hz power.

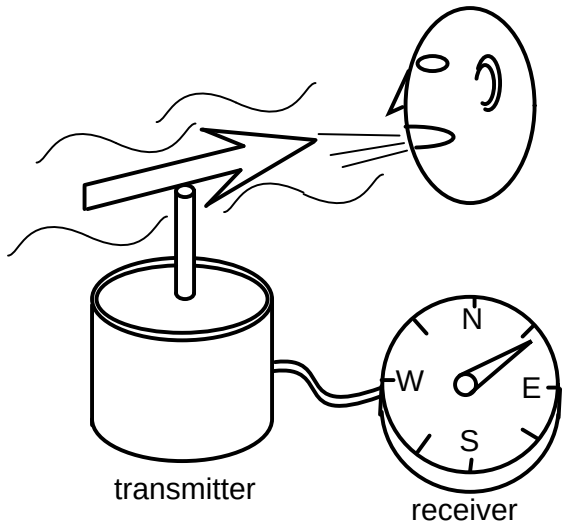


Figure 13.86: *Synchro application: remote position indication.*

13.11.2 Differential transmitter - receiver

A *synchro differential transmitter* (TDX) has both a three phase rotor and stator. (Figure 13.87) A synchro differential transmitter adds a shaft angle input to an electrical angle input on the rotor inputs, outputting the sum on the stator outputs. This stator electrical angle may be displayed by sending it to an RX. For example, a synchro receiver displays the position of a radar antenna relative to a ship's bow. The addition of a ship's compass heading by a synchro differential transmitter, displays antenna postion on an RX relative to true north, regardless of ship's heading. Reversing the S1-S3 pair of stator leads between a TX and TDX subtracts angular positions.

A shipboard radar antenna coupled to a synchro transmitter encodes the antenna angle with respect to ship's bow. (Figure 13.88) It is desired to display the antenna position with respect to true north. We need to add the ships heading from a gyrocompass to the bow-relative antenna position to display antenna angle with respect to true north. ∠antenna + ∠gyro

∠antenna-N = ∠antenna + ∠gyro

∠rx = ∠tx + ∠gy

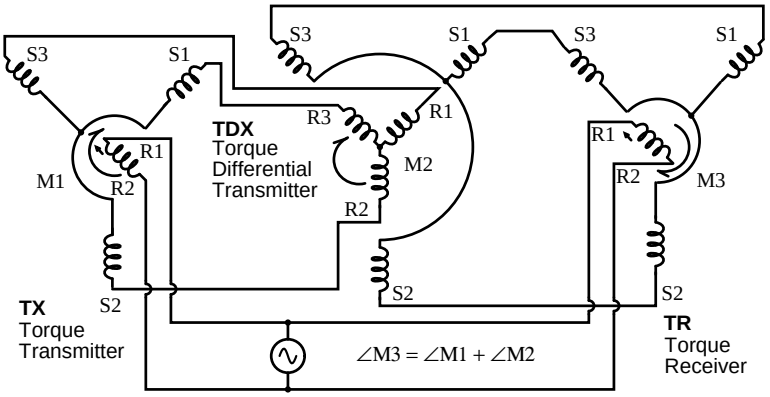


Figure 13.87: *Torque differential transmitter (TDX).*

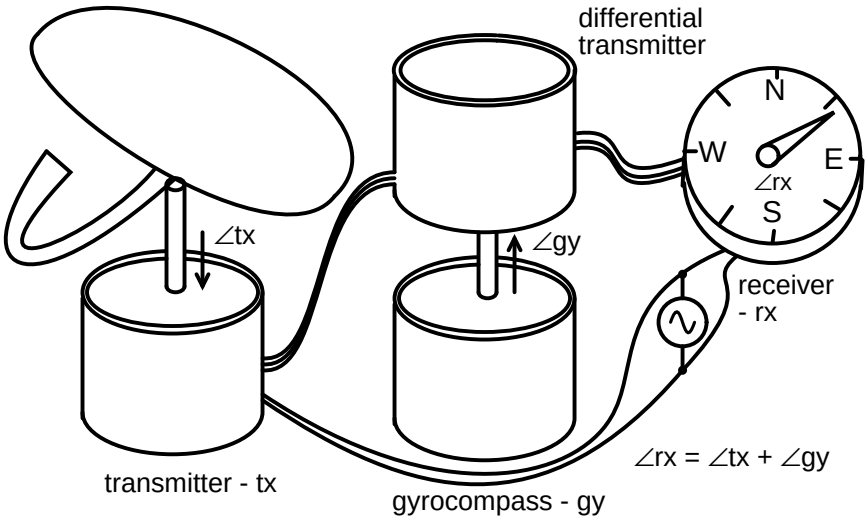


Figure 13.88: *Torque differential transmitter application: angular addition.*

For example, ship's heading is $\angle 30^o$, antenna position relative to ship's bow is $\angle 0^o$, $\angle$antenna-N is:

$\angle rx = \angle tx + \angle gy$

$\angle 30^o = \angle 30^o + \angle 0^o$

Example, ship's heading is $\angle 30^o$, antenna position relative to ship's bow is $\angle 15^o$, $\angle$antenna-N is:

$\angle 45^o = \angle 30^o + \angle 15^o$

Addition vs subtraction

For reference we show the wiring diagrams for subtraction and addition of shaft angles using both TDX's (Torque Differential transmitter) and TDR's (Torque Differential Receiver). The TDX has a torque angle input on the shaft, an electrical angle input on the three stator connections, and an electrical angle output on the three rotor connections. The TDR has electrical angle inputs on both the stator and rotor. The angle output is a torque on the TDR shaft. The difference between a TDX and a TDR is that the TDX is a torque transmitter and the TDR a torque receiver.

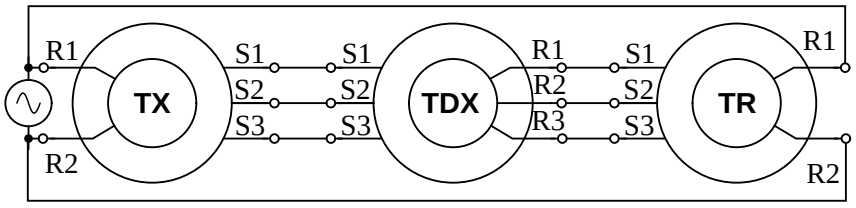


Figure 13.89: *TDX subtraction.*

The torque inputs in Figure 13.89 are TX and TDX. The torque output angular difference is TR.

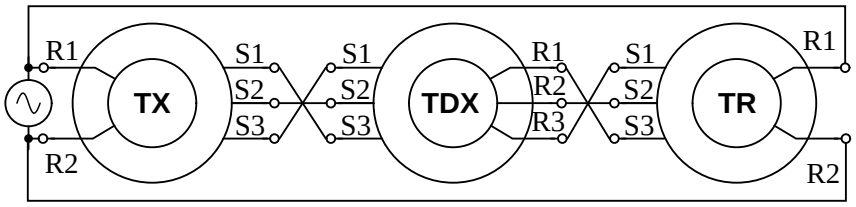
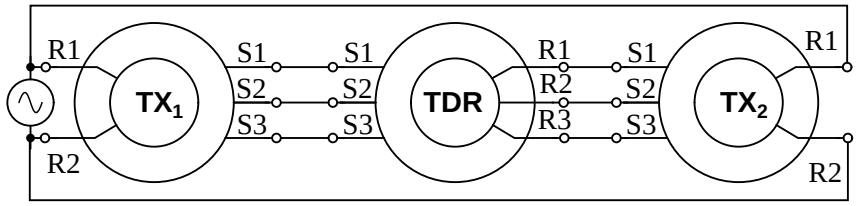


Figure 13.90: *TDX Addition.*

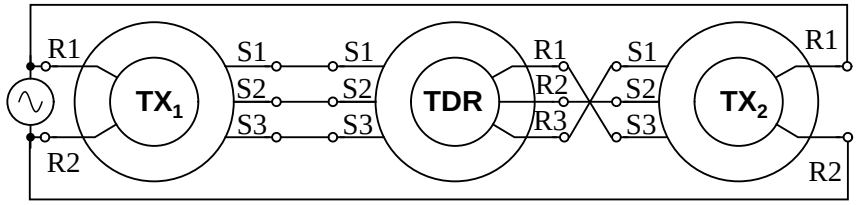
The torque inputs in Figure 13.90 are TX and TDX. The torque output angular sum is TR.

The torque inputs in Figure 13.91 are TX_1 and TX_2. The torque output angular difference is TDR.



TDR subtraction: $\angle TDR = \angle TX_1 - \angle TX_2$

Figure 13.91: *TDR subtraction.*



TDR addition: $\angle TDR = \angle TX_1 + \angle TX_2$

Figure 13.92: *TDR addition.*

The torque inputs in Figure 13.92 are TX_1 and TX_2. The torque output angular sum is TDR.

13.11.3 Control transformer

A variation of the synchro transmitter is the *control transformer*. It has three equally spaced stator windings like a TX. Its rotor is wound with more turns than a transmitter or receiver to make it more sensitive at detecting a null as it is rotated, typically, by a *servo* system. The CT (Control Transformer) rotor output is zero when it is oriented at a angle right angle to the stator magnetic field vector. Unlike a TX or RX, the CT neither transmits nor receives torque. It is simply a sensitive angular position detector.

In Figure 13.93, the shaft of the TX is set to the desired position of the radar antenna. The servo system will cause the servo motor to drive the antenna to the commanded position. The CT compares the commanded to actual position and signals the servo amplifier to drive the motor until that commanded angle is achieved.

When the control transformer rotor detects a null at 90^o to the axis of the stator field, there is no rotor output. Any rotor displacement produces an AC error voltage proportional to displacement. A *servo* (Figure 13.94) seeks to minimize the error between a commanded and measured variable due to negative feedback. The control transformer compares the shaft angle to the the stator magnetic field angle, sent by the TX stator. When it measures a minimum, or null, the servo has driven the antenna and control transformer rotor to the commanded position. There is no error between measured and commanded position, no CT, control transformer, output to be amplified. The *servo motor*, a 2-phase motor, stops rotating. However,

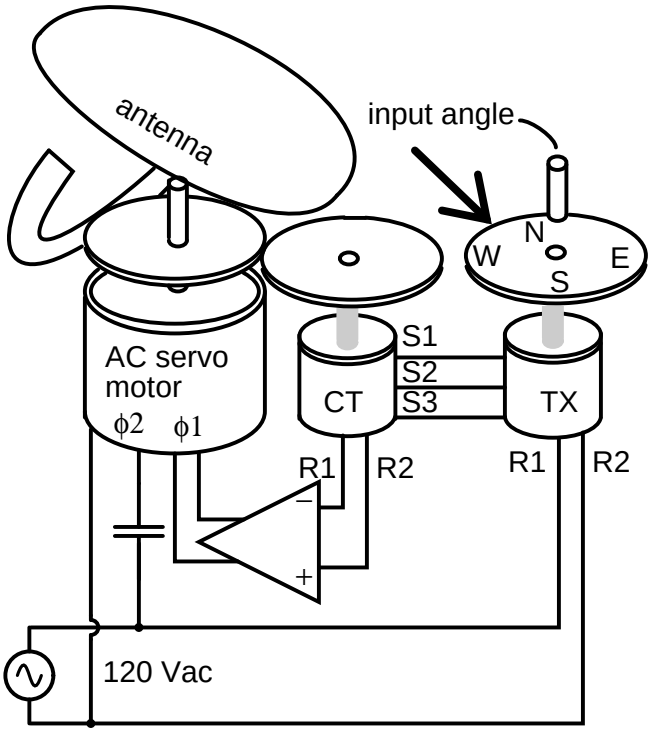


Figure 13.93: *Control transformer (CT) detects servo null.*

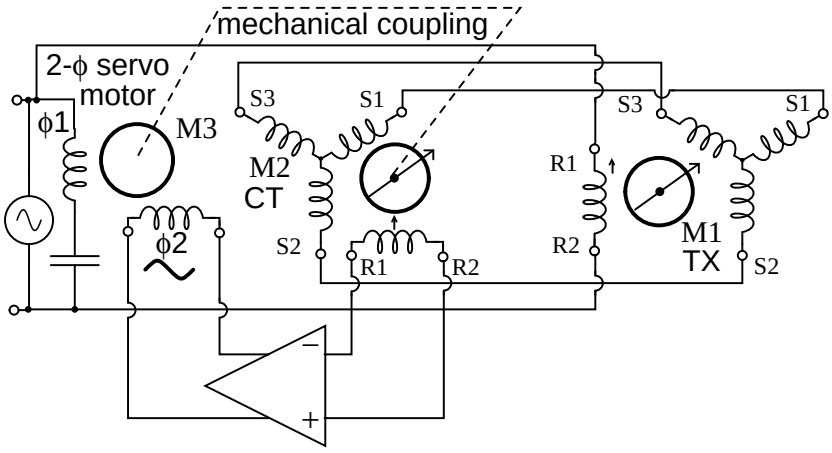


Figure 13.94: *Servo uses CT to sense antenna position null*

any CT detected error drives the amplifier which drives the motor until the error is minimized. This corresponds to the servo system having driven the antenna coupled CT to match the angle commanded by the TX.

The servo motor may drive a reduction gear train and be large compared to the TX and CT synchros. However, the poor efficiency of AC servo motors limits them to smaller loads. They are also difficult to control since they are constant speed devices. However, they can be controlled to some extent by varying the voltage to one phase with line voltage on the other phase. Heavy loads are more efficiently driven by large DC servo motors.

Airborne applications use 400Hz components– TX, CT, and servo motor. Size and weight of the AC magnetic components is inversely proportional to frequency. Therefore, use of 400 Hz components for aircraft applications, like moving control surfaces, saves size and weight.

13.11.4 Resolver

A *resolver* (Figure 13.95) has two stator winding placed at 90^o to each other, and a single rotor winding driven by alternating current. A resolver is used for polar to rectangular conversion. An angle input at the rotor shaft produces rectangular co-ordinates $\sin\theta$ and $\cos\theta$ proportional voltages on the stator windings.

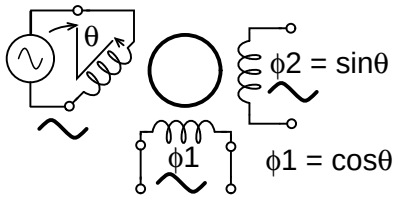


Figure 13.95: *Resolver converts shaft angle to sine and cosine of angle.*

For example, a black-box within a radar encodes the distance to a target as a sine wave proportional voltage V, with the bearing angle as a shaft angle. Convert to X and Y co-ordinates. The sine wave is fed to the rotor of a resolver. The bearing angle shaft is coupled to the resolver shaft. The coordinates (X, Y) are available on the resolver stator coils:

X=V(cos(∠bearing))

Y=V(sin(∠bearing))

The Cartesian coordinates (X, Y) may be plotted on a map display.

A TX (torque transmitter) may be adapted for service as a resolver. (Figure 13.96)

It is possible to derive resolver-like quadrature angular components from a synchro transmitter by using a *Scott-T* transformer. The three TX outputs, 3-phases, are processed by a *Scott-T* transformer into a pair of quadrature components. See Scott-T chapter 9 for details.

There is also a linear version of the resolver known as an inductosyn. The rotary version of the *inductosyn* has a finer resolution than a resolver.

Summary: Selsyn (synchro) motors

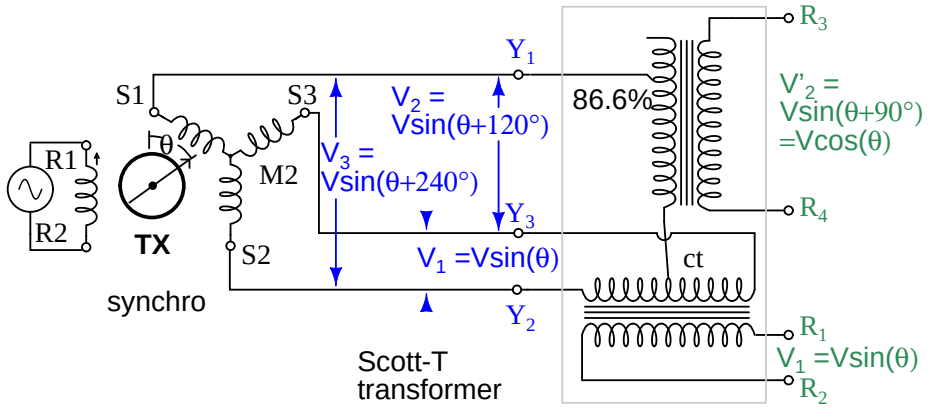


Figure 13.96: *Scott-T converts 3-ϕ to 2-ϕ enabling TX to perform resolver function.*

- A *synchro*, also known as a *selsyn*, is a rotary transformer used to transmit shaft torque.
- A TX, *torque transmitter*, accepts a torque input at its shaft for transmission on three-phase electrical outputs.
- An RX, *torque receiver*, accepts a three-phase electrical representation of an angular input for conversion to a torque output at its shaft. Thus, TX transmits a torque form an input shaft to a remote RX output shaft.
- A TDX, *torque differential transmitter*, sums an electrical angle input with a shaft angle input producing an electrical angle output
- A TDR, *torque differential receiver,* sums two electrical angle inputs producing a shaft angle output
- A CT, *control transformer*, detects a null when the rotor is positioned at a right angle to the stator angle input. A CT is typically a component of a servo– feedback system.
- A *Resolver* outputs a quadrature sinθ and cosine(theta) representation of the shaft angle input instead of a three-phase output.
- The three-phase output of a TX is converted to a resolver style output by a *Scott-T transformer*.

13.12 AC commutator motors

Charles Proteus Steinmetz's first job after arriving in America was to investigate problems encountered in the design of the alternating current version of the brushed commutator motor. The situation was so bad that motors could not be designed ahead of the actual construction. The success or failure of a motor design was not known until after it was actually built at great expense and tested. He formlated the laws of magnetic *hysteresis* in finding a solution.

Hysteresis is a lagging behind of the magnetic field strength as compared to the magnetizing force. This produces a loss not present in DC magnetics. Low hysteresis alloys and breaking the alloy into thin insulated *laminations* made it possible to accurately design AC commutator motors before building.

AC commutator motors, like comparable DC motors, have higher starting torque and higher speed than AC induction motors. The series motor operates well above the synchronous speed of a conventional AC motor. AC commutator motors may be either single-phase or poly-phase. The single-phase AC version suffers a double line frequency torque pulsation, not present in poly-phase motor. Since a commutator motor can operate at much higher speed than an induction motor, it can output more power than a similar size induction motor. However commutator motors are not as maintenance free as induction motors, due to brush and commutator wear.

13.12.1 Single phase series motor

If a DC series motor equipped with a laminated field is connected to AC, the lagging reactance of the field coil will considerably reduce the field current. While such a motor will rotate, operation is marginal. While starting, armature windings connected to commutator segments shorted by the brushes look like shorted transformer turns to the field. This results in considerable arcing and sparking at the brushes as the armature begins to turn. This is less of a problem as speed increases, which shares the arcing and sparking between commutator segments The lagging reactance and arcing brushes are only tolerable in very small uncompensated series AC motors operated at high speed. Series AC motors smaller than hand drills and kitchen mixers may be uncompensated. (Figure 13.97)

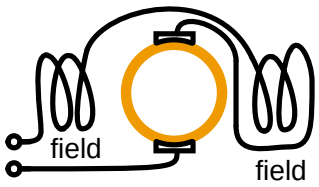


Figure 13.97: *Uncompensated series AC motor.*

13.12.2 Compensated series motor

The arcing and sparking is mitigated by placing a *compensating winding* the stator in series with the armature positioned so that its magnetomotive force (mmf) cancels out the armature AC mmf. (Figure 13.98) A smaller motor air gap and fewer field turns reduces lagging reactance in series with the armature improving the power factor. All but very small AC commutator motors employ compensating windings. Motors as large as those employed in a kitchen mixer, or larger, use compensated stator windings.

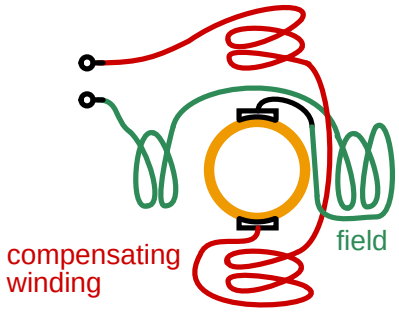


Figure 13.98: *Compensated series AC motor.*

13.12.3 Universal motor

It is possible to design small (under 300 watts) *universal motors* which run from either DC or AC. Very small universal motors may be uncompensated. Larger higher speed universal motors use a compensating winding. A motor will run slower on AC than DC due to the reactance encountered with AC. However, the peaks of the sine waves saturate the magnetic path reducing total flux below the DC value, increasing the speed of the "series" motor. Thus, the offsetting effects result in a nearly constant speed from DC to 60 Hz. Small line operated appliances, such as drills, vacuum cleaners, and mixers, requiring 3000 to 10,000 rpm use universal motors. Though, the development of solid state rectifiers and inexpensive permanent magnets is making the DC permanent magnet motor a viable alternative.

13.12.4 Repulsion motor

A repulsion motor (Figure 13.99) consists of a field directly connected to the AC line voltage and a pair of shorted brushes offset by $15^o$to 25^o from the field axis. The field induces a current flow into the shorted armature whose magnetic field opposes that of the field coils. Speed can be conrolled by rotating the brushes with respect to the field axis. This motor has superior commutation below synchronous speed, inferior commutation above synchronous speed. Low starting current produces high starting torque.

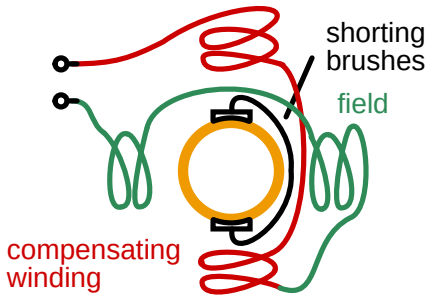


Figure 13.99: *Repulsion AC motor.*

13.12.5 Repulsion start induction motor

When an induction motor drives a hard starting load like a compressor, the high starting torque of the repulsion motor may be put to use. The induction motor rotor windings are brought out to commutator segments for starting by a pair of shorted brushes. At near running speed, a centrifugal switch shorts out all commutator segments, giving the effect of a squirrel cage rotor . The brushes may also be lifted to prolong bush life. Starting torque is 300% to 600% of the full speed value as compared to under 200% for a pure induction motor.

Summary: AC commutator motors

- The *single phase series motor* is an attempt to build a motor like a DC commutator motor. The resulting motor is only practical in the smallest sizes.
- The addition of a compensating winding yields the *compensated series motor*, overcoming excessive commutator sparking. Most AC commutator motors are this type. At high speed this motor provides more power than a same-size induction motor, but is not maintenance free.
- It is possible to produce small appliance motors powered by either AC or DC. This is known as a *universal motor*.
- The AC line is directly connected to the stator of a *repulsion motor* with the commutator shorted by the brushes.
- Retractable shorted brushes may start a wound rotor induction motor. This is known as a *repulsion start induction motor*.

Bibliography

[1] American Superconductor achieves full power of 5MW Ship motor, at www.spacedaily.com/news/energy-tech-04zzn.html

[2] "Linear motor applications guide", (Aerotech, Inc., Pittsburg, PA) www.aerotech.com/products/PDF/LMAppGuide.pdfopt_txt

[3] Linear motor outperforms steam-piston catapults, Design News, www.designnews.com/index.asp?layout=article&articleid=CA151563&cfd=1

[4] Future Aircraft Carrier - CVF, Navy Matters, http://navy-matters.beedall.com/cvf3-2.htm

[5] Bill Schweber, "Electronics poised to replace steam-powered aircraft launch system", EDN, (4/11/2002). www.edn.com/article/CA207108.html?pubdate=04%2F11%2F2002

[6] "Operating 60 cycle motors as generators", Red Rock Energy www.redrok.com/cimtext.pdf

[7] "Energy Saver systems for Induction motors," M Photonics Ltd, P.O. Box 13 076, Christchurch, New Zealand at http://www.lmphotonics.com/energy.htm

Chapter 14

TRANSMISSION LINES

Contents

14.1 A 50-ohm cable?

Early in my explorations of electricity, I came across a length of *coaxial cable* with the label "50 ohms" printed along its outer sheath. (Figure 14.1) Now, coaxial cable is a two-conductor cable made of a single conductor surrounded by a braided wire jacket, with a plastic insulating material separating the two. As such, the outer (braided) conductor completely surrounds the inner (single wire) conductor, the two conductors insulated from each other for the entire length of the cable. This type of cabling is often used to conduct weak (low-amplitude) voltage signals, due to its excellent ability to shield such signals from external interference.

I was mystified by the "50 ohms" label on this coaxial cable. How could two conductors, insulated from each other by a relatively thick layer of plastic, have 50 ohms of resistance between them? Measuring resistance between the outer and inner conductors with my ohmmeter, I found it to be infinite (open-circuit), just as I would have expected from two insulated conductors. Measuring each of the two conductors' resistances from one end of the cable to the other indicated nearly zero ohms of resistance: again, exactly what I would have expected from continuous, unbroken lengths of wire. Nowhere was I able to measure 50 Ω of resistance on this cable, regardless of which points I connected my ohmmeter between.

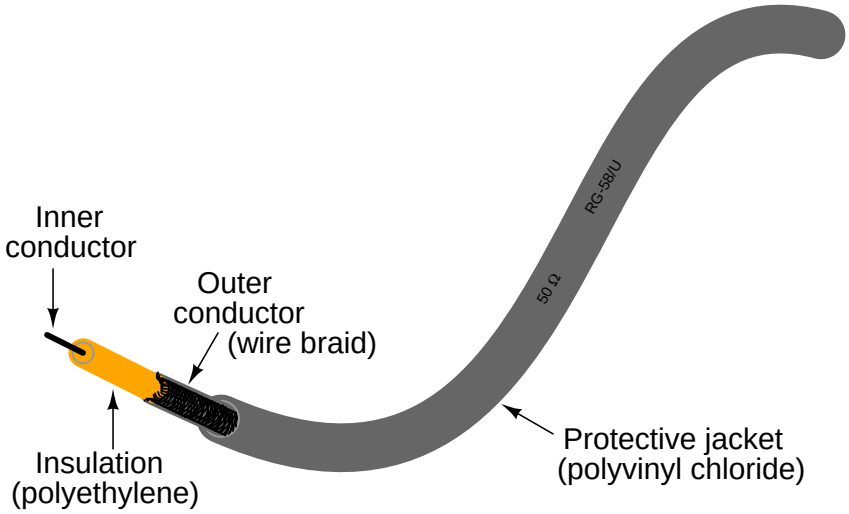


Figure 14.1: *Coaxial cable contruction.*

What I didn't understand at the time was the cable's response to short-duration voltage "pulses" and high-frequency AC signals. Continuous direct current (DC) – such as that used by my ohmmeter to check the cable's resistance – shows the two conductors to be completely insulated from each other, with nearly infinite resistance between the two. However, due to the effects of capacitance and inductance distributed along the length of the cable, the cable's response to rapidly-changing voltages is such that it acts as a *finite* impedance, drawing current proportional to an applied voltage. What we would normally dismiss as being just a pair of wires becomes an important circuit element in the presence of transient and high-frequency AC signals, with characteristic properties all its own. When expressing such properties, we refer to the wire pair as a *transmission line*.

This chapter explores transmission line behavior. Many transmission line effects do not appear in significant measure in AC circuits of powerline frequency (50 or 60 Hz), or in continuous DC circuits, and so we haven't had to concern ourselves with them in our study of electric circuits thus far. However, in circuits involving high frequencies and/or extremely long cable lengths, the effects are very significant. Practical applications of transmission line effects abound in radio-frequency ("RF") communication circuitry, including computer networks, and in low-frequency circuits subject to voltage transients ("surges") such as lightning strikes on power lines.

14.2 Circuits and the speed of light

Suppose we had a simple one-battery, one-lamp circuit controlled by a switch. When the switch is closed, the lamp immediately lights. When the switch is opened, the lamp immediately darkens: (Figure¡ref¿02352.eps¡x1¿)

Actually, an incandescent lamp takes a short time for its filament to warm up and emit light after receiving an electric current of sufficient magnitude to power it, so the effect is not

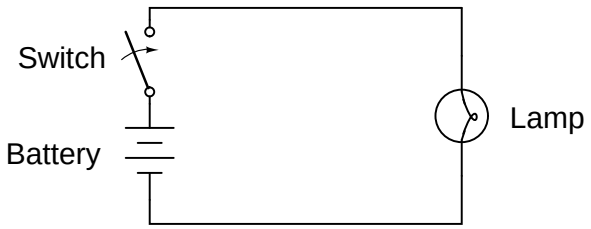


Figure 14.2: *Lamp appears to immediately respond to switch.*

instant. However, what I'd like to focus on is the immediacy of the electric current itself, not the response time of the lamp filament. For all practical purposes, the effect of switch action is instant at the lamp's location. Although electrons move through wires very slowly, the overall effect of electrons pushing against each other happens at the speed of light (approximately 186,000 miles per *second*!).

What would happen, though, if the wires carrying power to the lamp were 186,000 miles long? Since we know the effects of electricity do have a finite speed (albeit very fast), a set of very long wires should introduce a time delay into the circuit, delaying the switch's action on the lamp: (Figure¡ref¿02353.eps¡x1¿)

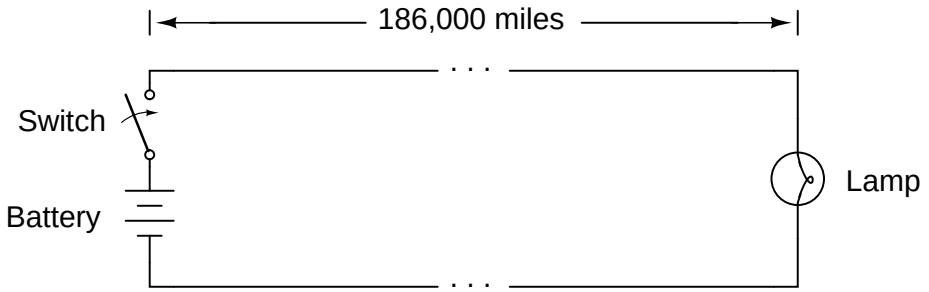


Figure 14.3: *At the speed of light, lamp responds after 1 second.*

Assuming no warm-up time for the lamp filament, and no resistance along the 372,000 mile length of both wires, the lamp would light up approximately one second after the switch closure. Although the construction and operation of superconducting wires 372,000 miles in length would pose enormous practical problems, it is theoretically possible, and so this "thought experiment" is valid. When the switch is opened again, the lamp will continue to receive power for one second of time after the switch opens, then it will de-energize.

One way of envisioning this is to imagine the electrons within a conductor as rail cars in a train: linked together with a small amount of "slack" or "play" in the couplings. When one rail car (electron) begins to move, it pushes on the one ahead of it and pulls on the one behind it, but not before the slack is relieved from the couplings. Thus, motion is transferred from car to car (from electron to electron) at a maximum velocity limited by the coupling slack, resulting in a much faster transfer of motion from the left end of the train (circuit) to the right end than

the actual speed of the cars (electrons): (Figure¡ref¿02354.eps¡x1¿)

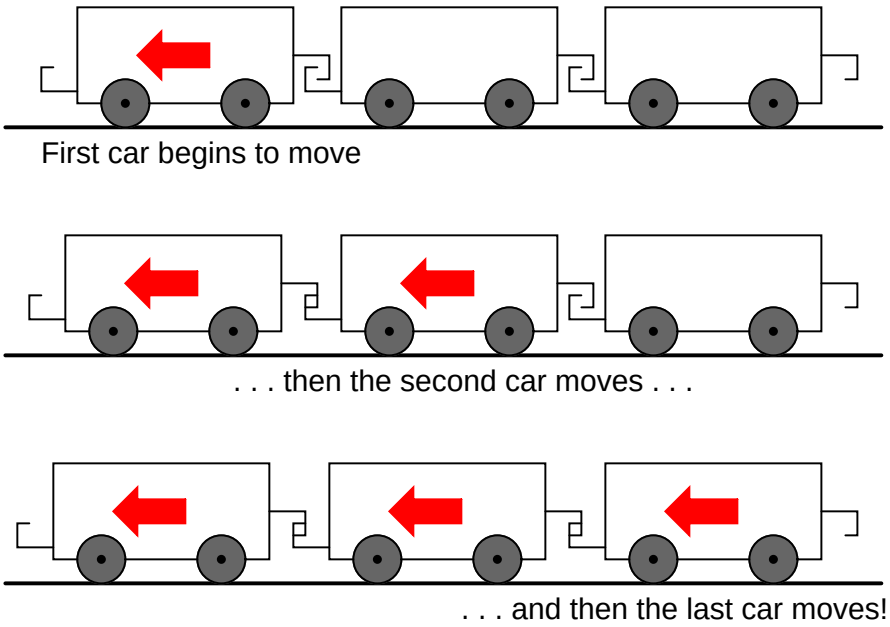


Figure 14.4: *Motion is transmitted sucessively from one car to next.*

Another analogy, perhaps more fitting for the subject of transmission lines, is that of waves in water. Suppose a flat, wall-shaped object is suddenly moved horizontally along the surface of water, so as to produce a wave ahead of it. The wave will travel as water molecules bump into each other, transferring wave motion along the water's surface far faster than the water molecules themselves are actually traveling: (Figure¡ref¿02355.eps¡x1¿)

Likewise, electron motion "coupling" travels approximately at the speed of light, although the electrons themselves don't move that quickly. In a very long circuit, this "coupling" speed would become noticeable to a human observer in the form of a short time delay between switch action and lamp action.

- **REVIEW:**
- In an electric circuit, the effects of electron motion travel approximately at the speed of light, although electrons within the conductors do not travel anywhere near that velocity.

14.3 Characteristic impedance

Suppose, though, that we had a set of parallel wires of *infinite* length, with no lamp at the end. What would happen when we close the switch? Being that there is no longer a load at the end of the wires, this circuit is open. Would there be no current at all? (Figure¡ref¿02356.eps¡x1¿)

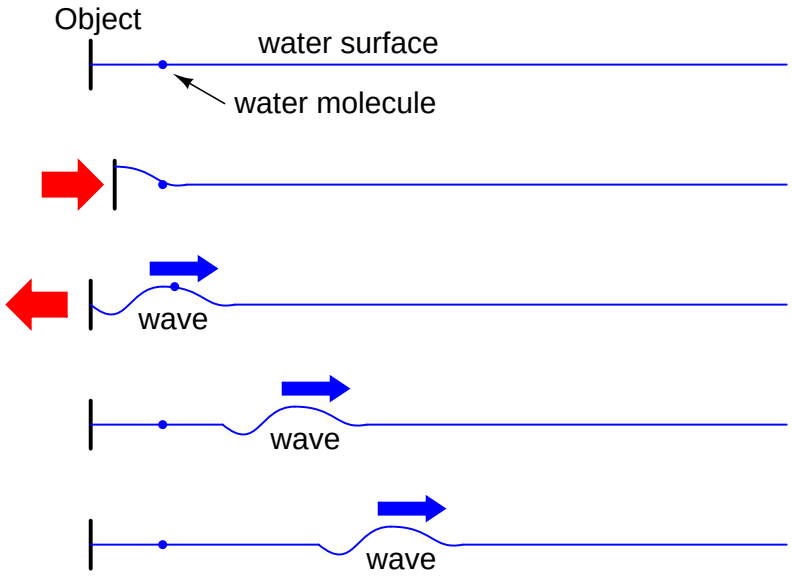


Figure 14.5: *Wave motion in water.*

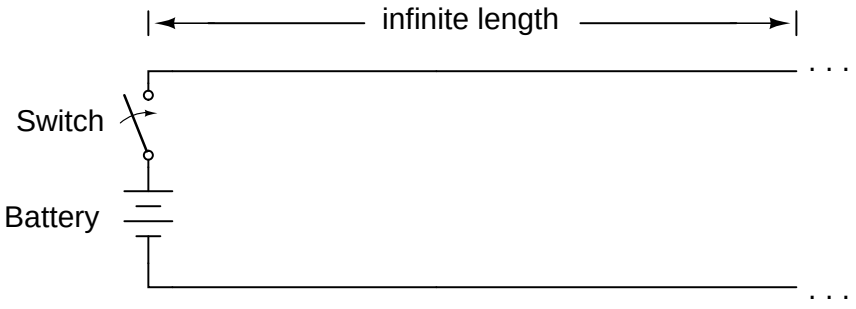


Figure 14.6: *Driving an infinite transmission line.*

Despite being able to avoid wire resistance through the use of superconductors in this "thought experiment," we cannot eliminate capacitance along the wires' lengths. *Any* pair of conductors separated by an insulating medium creates capacitance between those conductors: (Figure¡ref¿02359.eps¡x1¿)

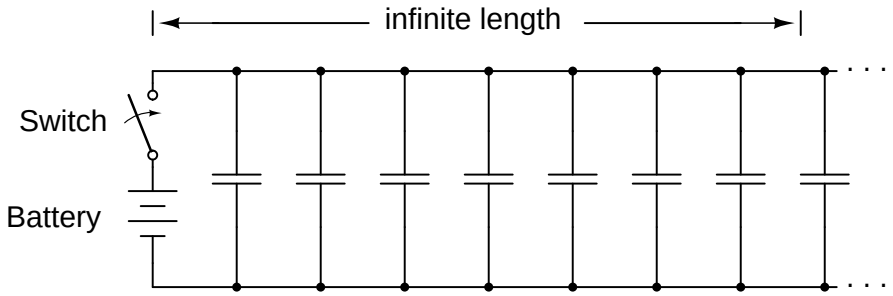


Figure 14.7: *Equivalent circuit showing stray capacitance between conductors.*

Voltage applied between two conductors creates an electric field between those conductors. Energy is stored in this electric field, and this storage of energy results in an opposition to change in voltage. The reaction of a capacitance against changes in voltage is described by the equation i = C(de/dt), which tells us that current will be drawn proportional to the voltage's rate of change over time. Thus, when the switch is closed, the capacitance between conductors will react against the sudden voltage increase by charging up and drawing current from the source. According to the equation, an instant rise in applied voltage (as produced by perfect switch closure) gives rise to an infinite charging current.

However, the current drawn by a pair of parallel wires will not be infinite, because there exists series impedance along the wires due to inductance. (Figure 14.8) Remember that current through *any* conductor develops a magnetic field of proportional magnitude. Energy is stored in this magnetic field, (Figure 14.9) and this storage of energy results in an opposition to change in current. Each wire develops a magnetic field as it carries charging current for the capacitance between the wires, and in so doing drops voltage according to the inductance equation e = L(di/dt). This voltage drop limits the voltage rate-of-change across the distributed capacitance, preventing the current from ever reaching an infinite magnitude:

Because the electrons in the two wires transfer motion to and from each other at nearly the speed of light, the "wave front" of voltage and current change will propagate down the length of the wires at that same velocity, resulting in the distributed capacitance and inductance progressively charging to full voltage and current, respectively, like this: (Figures¡ref¿02360.eps¡x1¿, ¡ref¿02361.eps¡x1¿, ¡ref¿02362.eps¡x1¿, ¡ref¿02363.eps¡x1¿)

The end result of these interactions is a constant current of limited magnitude through the battery source. Since the wires are infinitely long, their distributed capacitance will never fully charge to the source voltage, and their distributed inductance will never allow unlimited charging current. In other words, this pair of wires will draw current from the source so long as the switch is closed, behaving as a constant load. No longer are the wires merely conductors of electrical current and carriers of voltage, but now constitute a circuit component in themselves,

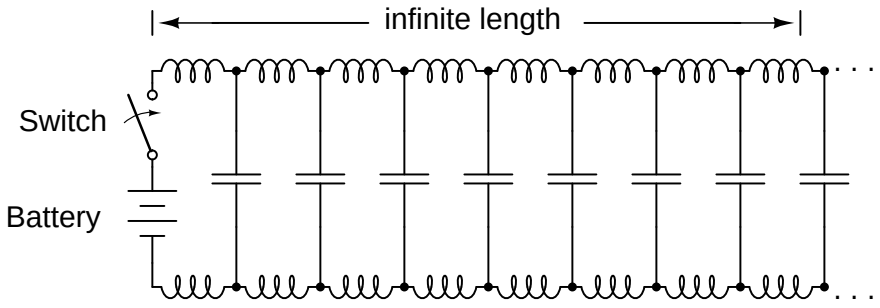


Figure 14.8: *Equivalent circuit showing stray capacitance and inductance.*

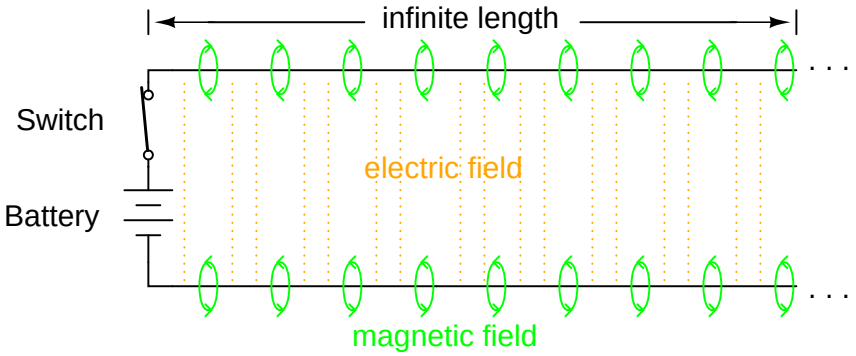


Figure 14.9: *Voltage charges capacitance, current charges inductance.*

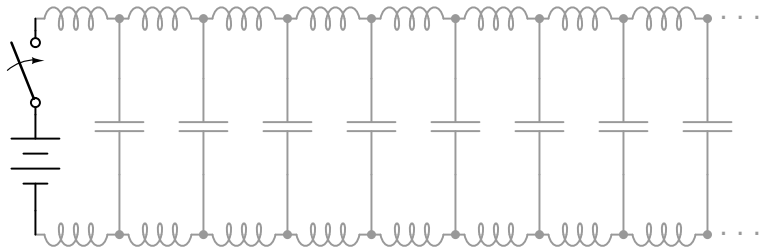


Figure 14.10: *Uncharged transmission line.*

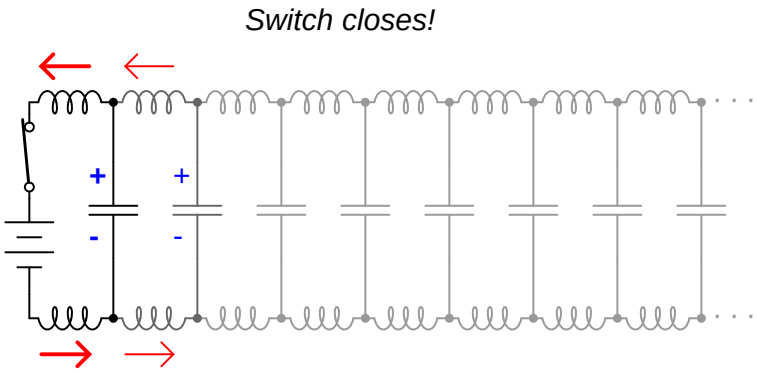


Figure 14.11: *Begin wave propagation.*

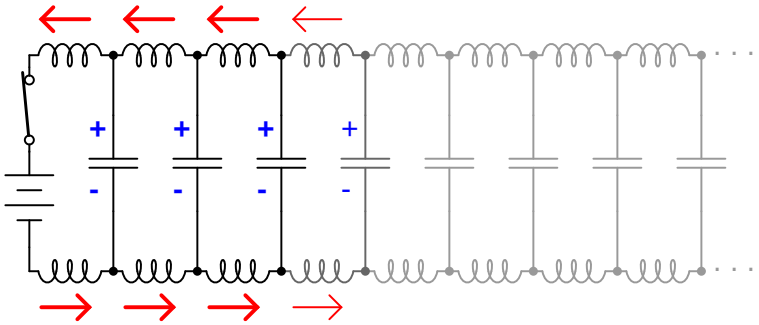


Figure 14.12: *Continue wave propagation.*

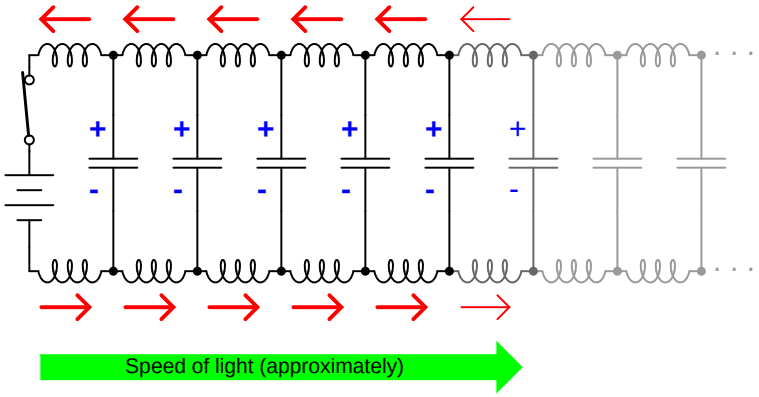


Figure 14.13: *Propagate at speed of light.*

with unique characteristics. No longer are the two wires merely *a pair of conductors*, but rather a *transmission line*.

As a constant load, the transmission line's response to applied voltage is resistive rather than reactive, despite being comprised purely of inductance and capacitance (assuming superconducting wires with zero resistance). We can say this because there is no difference from the battery's perspective between a resistor eternally dissipating energy and an infinite transmission line eternally absorbing energy. The impedance (resistance) of this line in ohms is called the *characteristic impedance*, and it is fixed by the geometry of the two conductors. For a parallel-wire line with air insulation, the characteristic impedance may be calculated as such:

$$Z_0 = \frac{276}{\sqrt{k}} \log \frac{d}{r}$$

Where,

Z_0 = Characteristic impedance of line
d = Distance between conductor centers
r = Conductor radius
k = Relative permittivity of insulation between conductors

If the transmission line is coaxial in construction, the characteristic impedance follows a different equation:

$$Z_0 = \frac{138}{\sqrt{k}} \log \frac{d_1}{d_2}$$

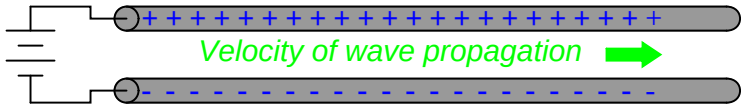
Where,

Z_0 = Characteristic impedance of line
d_1 = Inside diameter of outer conductor
d_2 = Outside diameter of inner conductor
k = Relative permittivity of insulation between conductors

In both equations, identical units of measurement must be used in both terms of the fraction. If the insulating material is other than air (or a vacuum), both the characteristic impedance

and the propagation velocity will be affected. The ratio of a transmission line's true propagation velocity and the speed of light in a vacuum is called the *velocity factor* of that line.

Velocity factor is purely a factor of the insulating material's relative permittivity (otherwise known as its *dielectric constant*), defined as the ratio of a material's electric field permittivity to that of a pure vacuum. The velocity factor of any cable type – coaxial or otherwise – may be calculated quite simply by the following formula:



$$\text{Velocity factor} = \frac{v}{c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{k}}$$

Where,

v = Velocity of wave propagation

c = Velocity of light in a vacuum

k = Relative permittivity of insulation between conductors

Characteristic impedance is also known as *natural impedance*, and it refers to the equivalent resistance of a transmission line if it were infinitely long, owing to distributed capacitance and inductance as the voltage and current "waves" propagate along its length at a propagation velocity equal to some large fraction of light speed.

It can be seen in either of the first two equations that a transmission line's characteristic impedance (Z_0) increases as the conductor spacing increases. If the conductors are moved away from each other, the distributed capacitance will decrease (greater spacing between capacitor "plates"), and the distributed inductance will increase (less cancellation of the two opposing magnetic fields). Less parallel capacitance and more series inductance results in a smaller current drawn by the line for any given amount of applied voltage, which by definition is a greater impedance. Conversely, bringing the two conductors closer together increases the parallel capacitance and decreases the series inductance. Both changes result in a larger current drawn for a given applied voltage, equating to a lesser impedance.

Barring any dissipative effects such as dielectric "leakage" and conductor resistance, the characteristic impedance of a transmission line is equal to the square root of the ratio of the line's inductance per unit length divided by the line's capacitance per unit length:

$$Z_0 = \sqrt{\frac{L}{C}}$$

Where,

Z_0 = Characteristic impedance of line

L = Inductance per unit length of line

C = Capacitance per unit length of line

- **REVIEW:**
- A *transmission line* is a pair of parallel conductors exhibiting certain characteristics due to distributed capacitance and inductance along its length.
- When a voltage is suddenly applied to one end of a transmission line, both a voltage "wave" and a current "wave" propagate along the line at nearly light speed.
- If a DC voltage is applied to one end of an infinitely long transmission line, the line will draw current from the DC source as though it were a constant resistance.
- The *characteristic impedance* (Z_0) of a transmission line is the resistance it would exhibit if it were infinite in length. This is entirely different from leakage resistance of the dielectric separating the two conductors, and the metallic resistance of the wires themselves. Characteristic impedance is purely a function of the capacitance and inductance distributed along the line's length, and would exist even if the dielectric were perfect (infinite parallel resistance) and the wires superconducting (zero series resistance).
- *Velocity factor* is a fractional value relating a transmission line's propagation speed to the speed of light in a vacuum. Values range between 0.66 and 0.80 for typical two-wire lines and coaxial cables. For any cable type, it is equal to the reciprocal (1/x) of the square root of the relative permittivity of the cable's insulation.

14.4 Finite-length transmission lines

A transmission line of infinite length is an interesting abstraction, but physically impossible. All transmission lines have some finite length, and as such do not behave precisely the same as an infinite line. If that piece of 50 Ω "RG-58/U" cable I measured with an ohmmeter years ago had been infinitely long, I actually would have been able to measure 50 Ω worth of resistance between the inner and outer conductors. But it was not infinite in length, and so it measured as "open" (infinite resistance).

Nonetheless, the characteristic impedance rating of a transmission line is important even when dealing with limited lengths. An older term for characteristic impedance, which I like for its descriptive value, is *surge impedance*. If a transient voltage (a "surge") is applied to the end of a transmission line, the line will draw a current proportional to the surge voltage magnitude divided by the line's surge impedance (I=E/Z). This simple, Ohm's Law relationship between current and voltage will hold true for a limited period of time, but not indefinitely.

If the end of a transmission line is open-circuited – that is, left unconnected – the current "wave" propagating down the line's length will have to stop at the end, since electrons cannot flow where there is no continuing path. This abrupt cessation of current at the line's end causes a "pile-up" to occur along the length of the transmission line, as the electrons successively find no place to go. Imagine a train traveling down the track with slack between the rail car couplings: if the lead car suddenly crashes into an immovable barricade, it will come to a stop, causing the one behind it to come to a stop as soon as the first coupling slack is taken up, which causes the next rail car to stop as soon as the next coupling's slack is taken up, and so on until the last rail car stops. The train does not come to a halt together, but rather in sequence from first car to last: (Figure¡ref¿02364.eps¡x1¿)

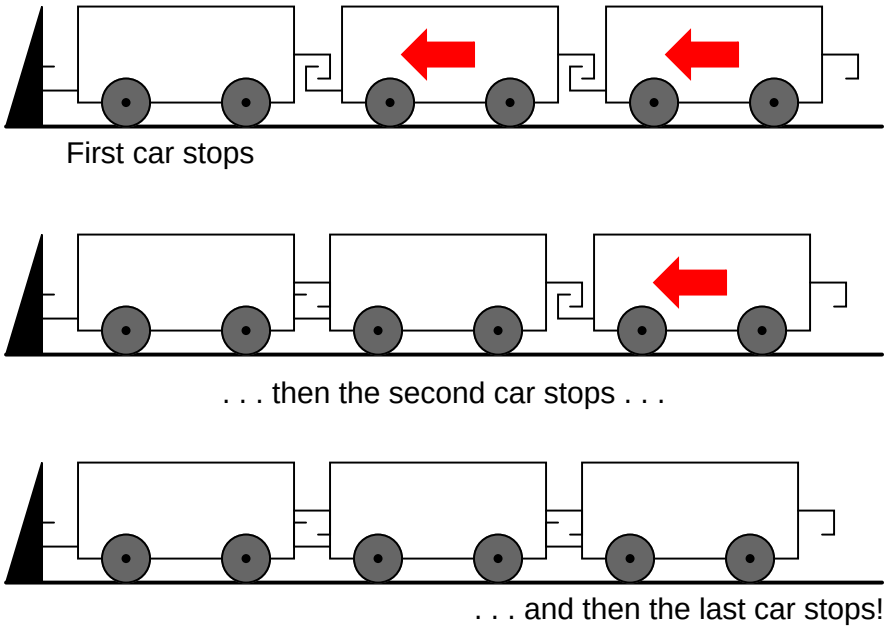


Figure 14.14: *Reflected wave.*

A signal propagating from the source-end of a transmission line to the load-end is called an *incident wave*. The propagation of a signal from load-end to source-end (such as what happened in this example with current encountering the end of an open-circuited transmission line) is called a *reflected wave*.

When this electron "pile-up" propagates back to the battery, current at the battery ceases, and the line acts as a simple open circuit. All this happens very quickly for transmission lines of reasonable length, and so an ohmmeter measurement of the line never reveals the brief time period where the line actually behaves as a resistor. For a mile-long cable with a velocity factor of 0.66 (signal propagation velocity is 66% of light speed, or 122,760 miles per second), it takes only 1/122,760 of a second (8.146 microseconds) for a signal to travel from one end to the other. For the current signal to reach the line's end and "reflect" back to the source, the round-trip time is twice this figure, or 16.292 μs.

High-speed measurement instruments are able to detect this transit time from source to line-end and back to source again, and may be used for the purpose of determining a cable's length. This technique may also be used for determining the presence *and* location of a break in one or both of the cable's conductors, since a current will "reflect" off the wire break just as it will off the end of an open-circuited cable. Instruments designed for such purposes are called *time-domain reflectometers* (TDRs). The basic principle is identical to that of sonar range-finding: generating a sound pulse and measuring the time it takes for the echo to return.

A similar phenomenon takes place if the end of a transmission line is short-circuited: when the voltage wave-front reaches the end of the line, it is reflected back to the source, because voltage cannot exist between two electrically common points. When this reflected wave reaches

the source, the source sees the entire transmission line as a short-circuit. Again, this happens as quickly as the signal can propagate round-trip down and up the transmission line at whatever velocity allowed by the dielectric material between the line's conductors.

A simple experiment illustrates the phenomenon of wave reflection in transmission lines. Take a length of rope by one end and "whip" it with a rapid up-and-down motion of the wrist. A wave may be seen traveling down the rope's length until it dissipates entirely due to friction: (Figure¡ref¿02365.eps¡x1¿)

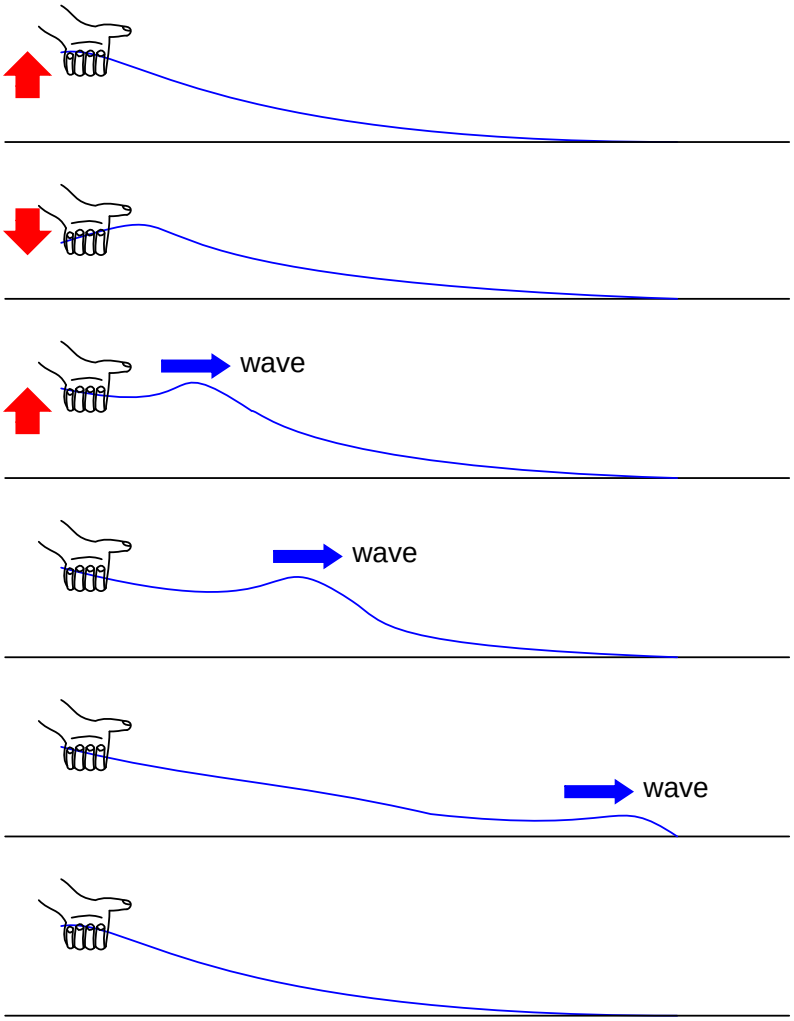


Figure 14.15: *Lossy transmission line.*

This is analogous to a long transmission line with internal loss: the signal steadily grows weaker as it propagates down the line's length, never reflecting back to the source. However, if the far end of the rope is secured to a solid object at a point prior to the incident wave's total

dissipation, a second wave will be reflected back to your hand: (Figure¡ref¿02366.eps¡x1¿)

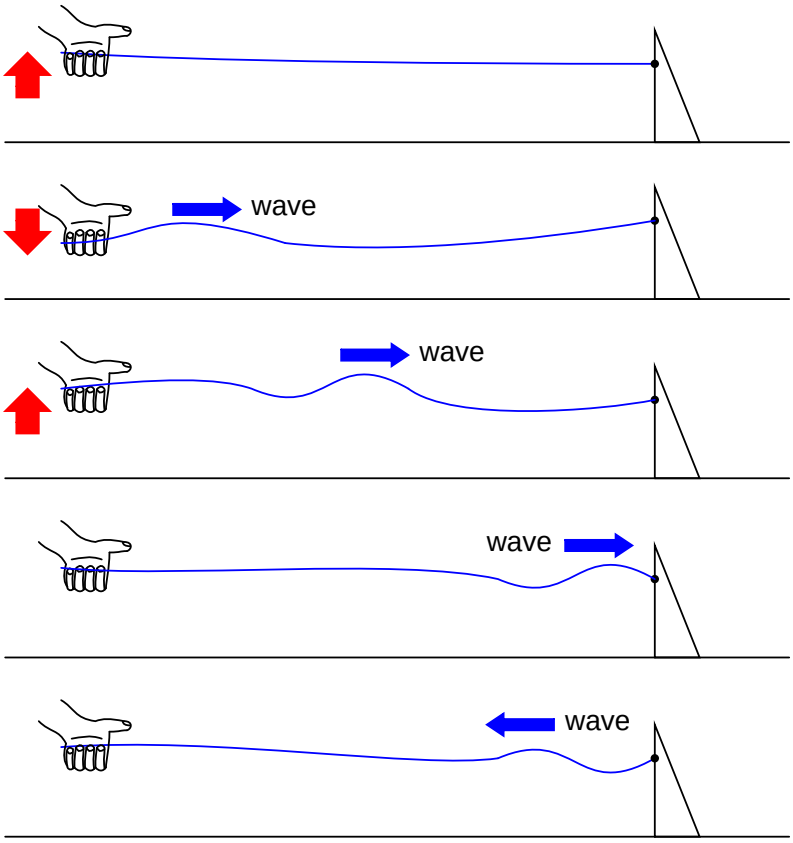


Figure 14.16: *Reflected wave.*

Usually, the purpose of a transmission line is to convey electrical energy from one point to another. Even if the signals are intended for information only, and not to power some significant load device, the ideal situation would be for all of the original signal energy to travel from the source to the load, and then be completely absorbed or dissipated by the load for maximum signal-to-noise ratio. Thus, "loss" along the length of a transmission line is undesirable, as are reflected waves, since reflected energy is energy not delivered to the end device.

Reflections may be eliminated from the transmission line if the load's impedance exactly equals the characteristic ("surge") impedance of the line. For example, a 50 Ω coaxial cable that is either open-circuited or short-circuited will reflect all of the incident energy back to the source. However, if a 50 Ω resistor is connected at the end of the cable, there will be no reflected energy, all signal energy being dissipated by the resistor.

This makes perfect sense if we return to our hypothetical, infinite-length transmission line example. A transmission line of 50 Ω characteristic impedance and infinite length behaves exactly like a 50 Ω resistance as measured from one end. (Figure 14.17) If we cut this line to

some finite length, it will behave as a 50 Ω resistor to a constant source of DC voltage for a brief time, but then behave like an open- or a short-circuit, depending on what condition we leave the cut end of the line: open (Figure 14.18) or shorted. (Figure 14.19) However, if we *terminate* the line with a 50 Ω resistor, the line will once again behave as a 50 Ω resistor, indefinitely: the same as if it were of infinite length again: (Figure 14.20)

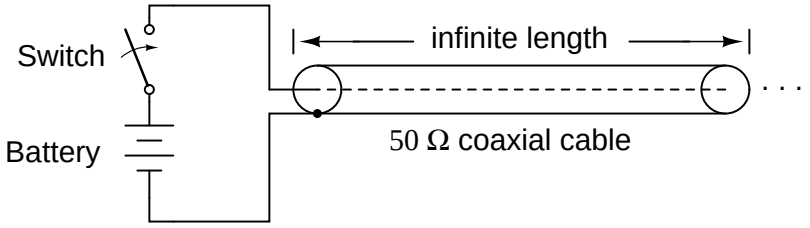


Figure 14.17: *Infinite transmission line looks like resistor.*

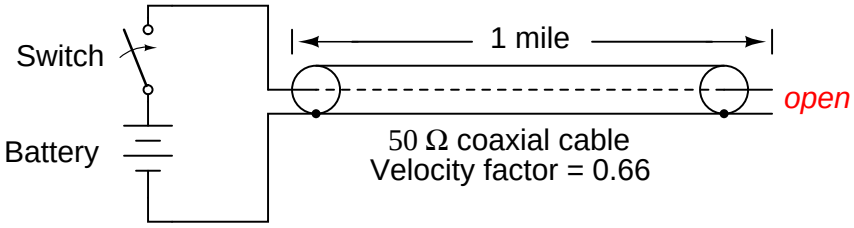
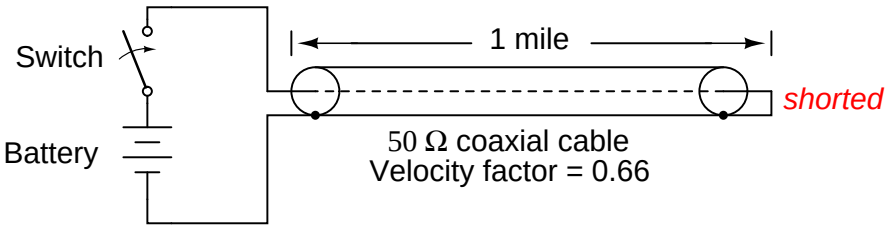


Figure 14.18: *One mile transmission.*

In essence, a terminating resistor matching the natural impedance of the transmission line makes the line "appear" infinitely long from the perspective of the source, because a resistor has the ability to eternally dissipate energy in the same way a transmission line of infinite length is able to eternally absorb energy.

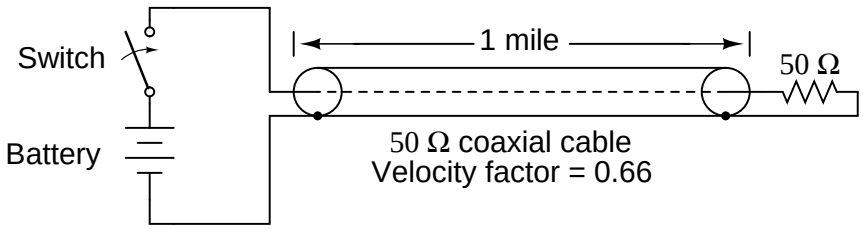
Reflected waves will also manifest if the terminating resistance isn't precisely equal to the characteristic impedance of the transmission line, not just if the line is left unconnected (open) or jumpered (shorted). Though the energy reflection will not be total with a terminating impedance of slight mismatch, it will be partial. This happens whether or not the terminating resistance is *greater* or *less* than the line's characteristic impedance.



Cable's behavior from perspective of battery:

Like a 50 Ω resistor for 16.292 µs,
then like a short (zero resistance)

Figure 14.19: *Shorted transmission line.*



Cable's behavior from perspective of battery:

Exactly like a 50 Ω resistor

Figure 14.20: *Line terminated in characteristic impedance.*

Re-reflections of a reflected wave may also occur at the *source end* of a transmission line, if the source's internal impedance (Thevenin equivalent impedance) is not exactly equal to the line's characteristic impedance. A reflected wave returning back to the source will be dissipated entirely if the source impedance matches the line's, but will be reflected back toward the line end like another incident wave, at least partially, if the source impedance does not match the line. This type of reflection may be particularly troublesome, as it makes it appear that the source has transmitted another pulse.

- **REVIEW:**
- Characteristic impedance is also known as *surge impedance*, due to the temporarily resistive behavior of any length transmission line.
- A finite-length transmission line will appear to a DC voltage source as a constant resistance for some short time, then as whatever impedance the line is terminated with. Therefore, an open-ended cable simply reads "open" when measured with an ohmmeter, and "shorted" when its end is short-circuited.
- A transient ("surge") signal applied to one end of an open-ended or short-circuited transmission line will "reflect" off the far end of the line as a secondary wave. A signal traveling on a transmission line from source to load is called an *incident wave*; a signal "bounced" off the end of a transmission line, traveling from load to source, is called a *reflected wave*.
- Reflected waves will also appear in transmission lines terminated by resistors not precisely matching the characteristic impedance.
- A finite-length transmission line may be made to appear infinite in length if terminated by a resistor of equal value to the line's characteristic impedance. This eliminates all signal reflections.
- A reflected wave may become re-reflected off the source-end of a transmission line if the source's internal impedance does not match the line's characteristic impedance. This re-reflected wave will appear, of course, like another pulse signal transmitted from the source.

14.5 "Long" and "short" transmission lines

In DC and low-frequency AC circuits, the characteristic impedance of parallel wires is usually ignored. This includes the use of coaxial cables in instrument circuits, often employed to protect weak voltage signals from being corrupted by induced "noise" caused by stray electric and magnetic fields. This is due to the relatively short timespans in which reflections take place in the line, as compared to the period of the waveforms or pulses of the significant signals in the circuit. As we saw in the last section, if a transmission line is connected to a DC voltage source, it will behave as a resistor equal in value to the line's characteristic impedance only for as long as it takes the incident pulse to reach the end of the line and return as a reflected pulse, back to the source. After that time (a brief 16.292 μs for the mile-long coaxial cable of the last example), the source "sees" only the terminating impedance, whatever that may be.

If the circuit in question handles low-frequency AC power, such short time delays introduced by a transmission line between when the AC source outputs a voltage peak and when the source "sees" that peak loaded by the terminating impedance (round-trip time for the incident wave to reach the line's end and reflect back to the source) are of little consequence. Even though we know that signal magnitudes along the line's length are not equal at any given time due to signal propagation at (nearly) the speed of light, the actual phase difference between start-of-line and end-of-line signals is negligible, because line-length propagations occur within a very small fraction of the AC waveform's period. For all practical purposes, we can say that voltage along all respective points on a low-frequency, two-conductor line are equal and in-phase with each other at any given point in time.

In these cases, we can say that the transmission lines in question are *electrically short*, because their propagation effects are much quicker than the periods of the conducted signals. By contrast, an *electrically long* line is one where the propagation time is a large fraction or even a multiple of the signal period. A "long" line is generally considered to be one where the source's signal waveform completes at least a quarter-cycle (90^o of "rotation") before the incident signal reaches line's end. Up until this chapter in the *Lessons In Electric Circuits* book series, all connecting lines were assumed to be electrically short.

To put this into perspective, we need to express the distance traveled by a voltage or current signal along a transmission line in relation to its source frequency. An AC waveform with a frequency of 60 Hz completes one cycle in 16.66 ms. At light speed (186,000 m/s), this equates to a distance of 3100 miles that a voltage or current signal will propagate in that time. If the velocity factor of the transmission line is less than 1, the propagation velocity will be less than 186,000 miles per second, and the distance less by the same factor. But even if we used the coaxial cable's velocity factor from the last example (0.66), the distance is still a very long 2046 miles! Whatever distance we calculate for a given frequency is called the *wavelength* of the signal.

A simple formula for calculating wavelength is as follows:

$$\lambda = \frac{v}{f}$$

Where,

λ = Wavelength

v = Velocity of propagation

f = Frequency of signal

The lower-case Greek letter "lambda" (λ) represents wavelength, in whatever unit of length used in the velocity figure (if miles per second, then wavelength in miles; if meters per second, then wavelength in meters). Velocity of propagation is usually the speed of light when calculating signal wavelength in open air or in a vacuum, but will be less if the transmission line has a velocity factor less than 1.

If a "long" line is considered to be one at least 1/4 wavelength in length, you can see why all connecting lines in the circuits discussed thusfar have been assumed "short." For a 60 Hz AC power system, power lines would have to exceed 775 miles in length before the effects of propagation time became significant. Cables connecting an audio amplifier to speakers would have to be over 4.65 miles in length before line reflections would significantly impact a 10 kHz

audio signal!

When dealing with radio-frequency systems, though, transmission line length is far from trivial. Consider a 100 MHz radio signal: its wavelength is a mere 9.8202 feet, even at the full propagation velocity of light (186,000 m/s). A transmission line carrying this signal would not have to be more than about 2-1/2 feet in length to be considered "long!" With a cable velocity factor of 0.66, this critical length shrinks to 1.62 feet.

When an electrical source is connected to a load via a "short" transmission line, the load's impedance dominates the circuit. This is to say, when the line is short, its own characteristic impedance is of little consequence to the circuit's behavior. We see this when testing a coaxial cable with an ohmmeter: the cable reads "open" from center conductor to outer conductor if the cable end is left unterminated. Though the line acts as a resistor for a very brief period of time after the meter is connected (about 50 Ω for an RG-58/U cable), it immediately thereafter behaves as a simple "open circuit:" the impedance of the line's open end. Since the combined response time of an ohmmeter and the human being using it *greatly exceeds* the round-trip propagation time up and down the cable, it is "electrically short" for this application, and we only register the terminating (load) impedance. It is the extreme speed of the propagated signal that makes us unable to detect the cable's 50 Ω transient impedance with an ohmmeter.

If we use a coaxial cable to conduct a DC voltage or current to a load, and no component in the circuit is capable of measuring or responding quickly enough to "notice" a reflected wave, the cable is considered "electrically short" and its impedance is irrelevant to circuit function. Note how the electrical "shortness" of a cable is relative to the application: in a DC circuit where voltage and current values change slowly, nearly any physical length of cable would be considered "short" from the standpoint of characteristic impedance and reflected waves. Taking the same length of cable, though, and using it to conduct a high-frequency AC signal could result in a vastly different assessment of that cable's "shortness!"

When a source is connected to a load via a "long" transmission line, the line's own characteristic impedance dominates over load impedance in determining circuit behavior. In other words, an electrically "long" line acts as the principal component in the circuit, its own characteristics overshadowing the load's. With a source connected to one end of the cable and a load to the other, current drawn from the source is a function primarily of the line and not the load. This is increasingly true the longer the transmission line is. Consider our hypothetical 50 Ω cable of infinite length, surely the ultimate example of a "long" transmission line: no matter what kind of load we connect to one end of this line, the source (connected to the other end) will only see 50 Ω of impedance, because the line's infinite length prevents the signal from *ever reaching* the end where the load is connected. In this scenario, line impedance exclusively defines circuit behavior, rendering the load completely irrelevant.

The most effective way to minimize the impact of transmission line length on circuit behavior is to match the line's characteristic impedance to the load impedance. If the load impedance is equal to the line impedance, then *any* signal source connected to the other end of the line will "see" the exact same impedance, and will have the exact same amount of current drawn from it, regardless of line length. In this condition of perfect impedance matching, line length only affects the amount of time delay from signal departure at the source to signal arrival at the load. However, perfect matching of line and load impedances is not always practical or possible.

The next section discusses the effects of "long" transmission lines, especially when line length happens to match specific fractions or multiples of signal wavelength.

- **REVIEW:**
- Coaxial cabling is sometimes used in DC and low-frequency AC circuits as well as in high-frequency circuits, for the excellent immunity to induced "noise" that it provides for signals.
- When the period of a transmitted voltage or current signal greatly exceeds the propagation time for a transmission line, the line is considered *electrically short*. Conversely, when the propagation time is a large fraction or multiple of the signal's period, the line is considered *electrically long*.
- A signal's *wavelength* is the physical distance it will propagate in the timespan of one period. Wavelength is calculated by the formula λ=v/f, where "λ" is the wavelength, "v" is the propagation velocity, and "f" is the signal frequency.
- A rule-of-thumb for transmission line "shortness" is that the line must be at least 1/4 wavelength before it is considered "long."
- In a circuit with a "short" line, the terminating (load) impedance dominates circuit behavior. The source effectively sees nothing but the load's impedance, barring any resistive losses in the transmission line.
- In a circuit with a "long" line, the line's own characteristic impedance dominates circuit behavior. The ultimate example of this is a transmission line of infinite length: since the signal will *never* reach the load impedance, the source only "sees" the cable's characteristic impedance.
- When a transmission line is terminated by a load precisely matching its impedance, there are no reflected waves and thus no problems with line length.

14.6 Standing waves and resonance

Whenever there is a mismatch of impedance between transmission line and load, reflections will occur. If the incident signal is a continuous AC waveform, these reflections will mix with more of the oncoming incident waveform to produce stationary waveforms called *standing waves*.

The following illustration shows how a triangle-shaped incident waveform turns into a mirror-image reflection upon reaching the line's unterminated end. The transmission line in this illustrative sequence is shown as a single, thick line rather than a pair of wires, for simplicity's sake. The incident wave is shown traveling from left to right, while the reflected wave travels from right to left: (Figure 14.21)

If we add the two waveforms together, we find that a third, stationary waveform is created along the line's length: (Figure 14.22)

This third, "standing" wave, in fact, represents the only voltage along the line, being the representative sum of incident and reflected voltage waves. It oscillates in instantaneous magnitude, but does not propagate down the cable's length like the incident or reflected waveforms causing it. Note the dots along the line length marking the "zero" points of the standing wave

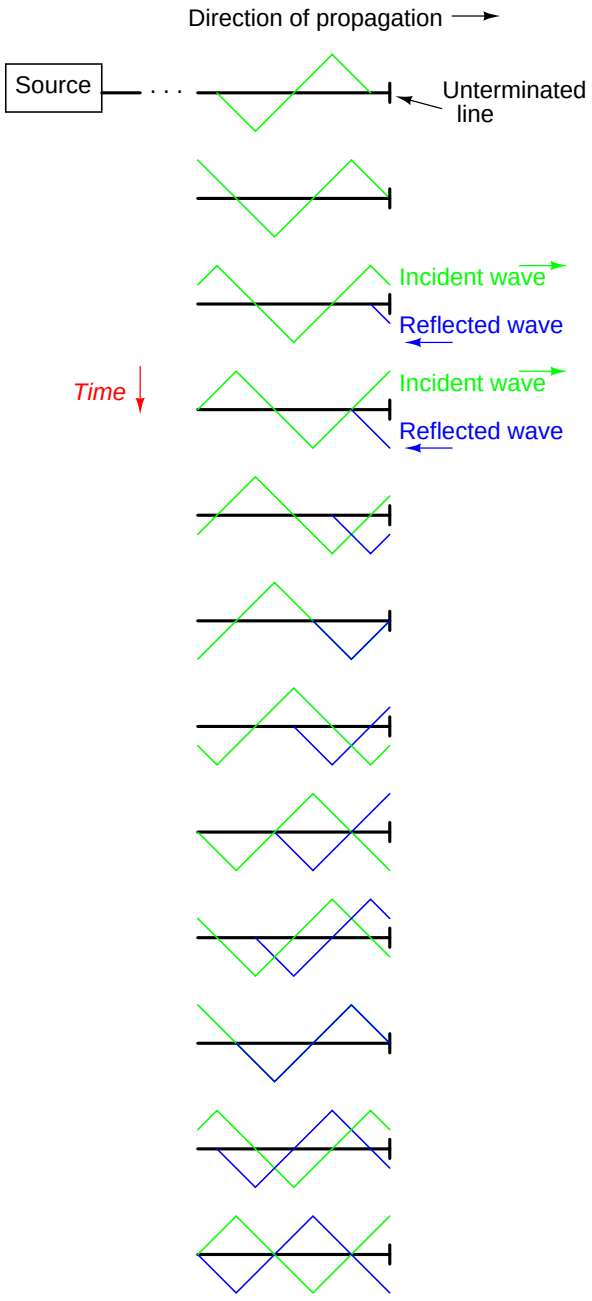


Figure 14.21: *Incident wave reflects off end of unterminated transmission line.*

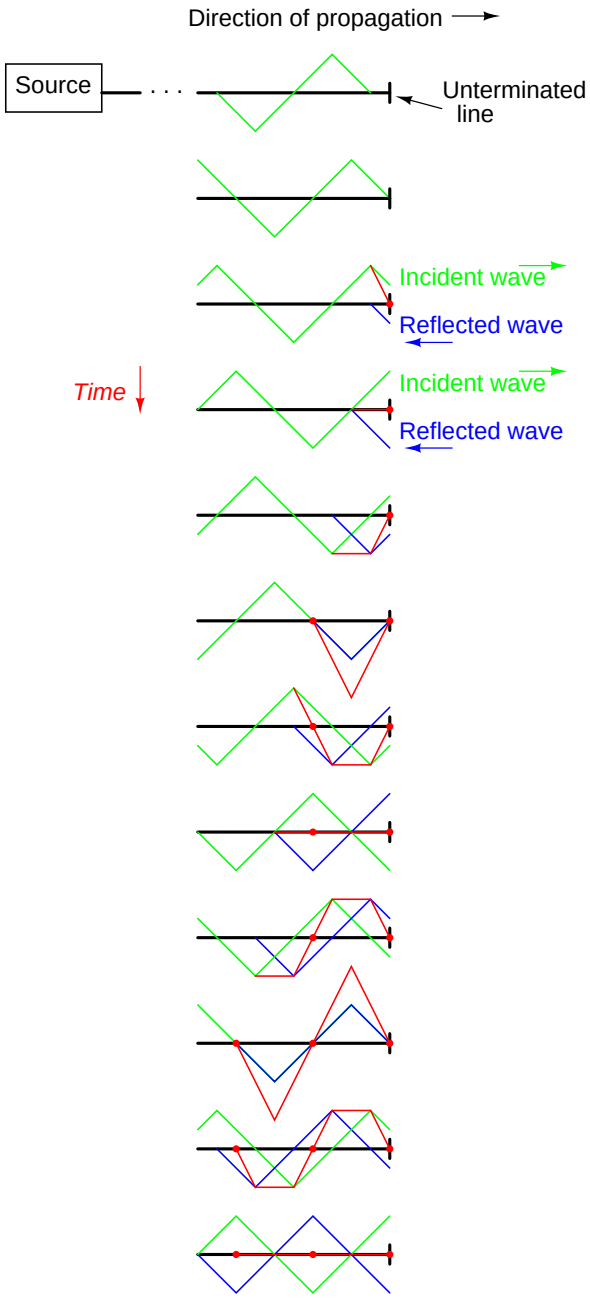


Figure 14.22: *The sum of the incident and reflected waves is a stationary wave.*

(where the incident and reflected waves cancel each other), and how those points never change position: (Figure 14.23)

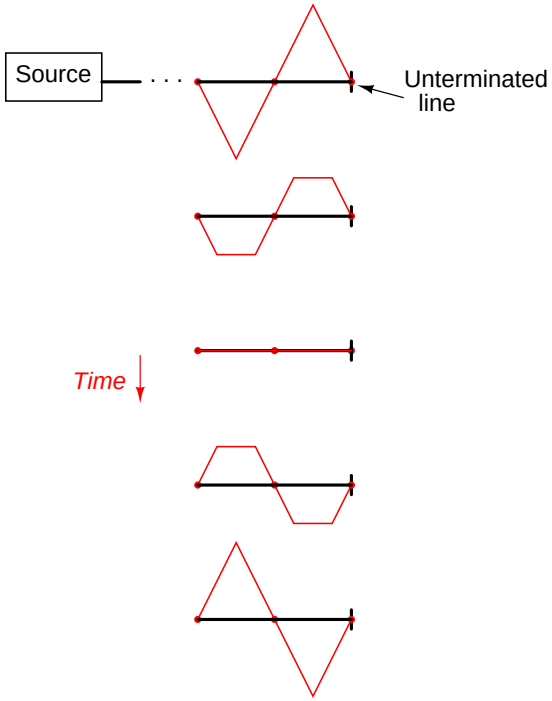


Figure 14.23: *The standing wave does not propgate along the transmission line.*

Standing waves are quite abundant in the physical world. Consider a string or rope, shaken at one end, and tied down at the other (only one half-cycle of hand motion shown, moving downward): (Figure 14.24)

Both the nodes (points of little or no vibration) and the antinodes (points of maximum vibration) remain fixed along the length of the string or rope. The effect is most pronounced when the free end is shaken at just the right frequency. Plucked strings exhibit the same "standing wave" behavior, with "nodes" of maximum and minimum vibration along their length. The major difference between a plucked string and a shaken string is that the plucked string supplies its own "correct" frequency of vibration to maximize the standing-wave effect: (Figure 14.25)

Wind blowing across an open-ended tube also produces standing waves; this time, the waves are vibrations of air molecules (sound) within the tube rather than vibrations of a solid object. Whether the standing wave terminates in a node (minimum amplitude) or an antinode (maximum amplitude) depends on whether the other end of the tube is open or closed: (Figure 14.26)

A closed tube end must be a wave node, while an open tube end must be an antinode. By analogy, the anchored end of a vibrating string must be a node, while the free end (if there is any) must be an antinode.

Note how there is more than one wavelength suitable for producing standing waves of

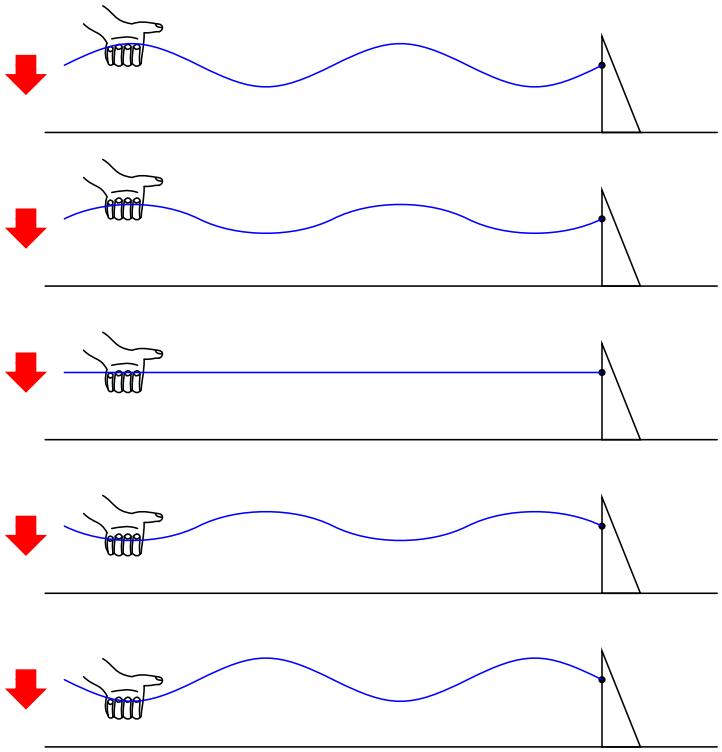


Figure 14.24: *Standing waves on a rope.*

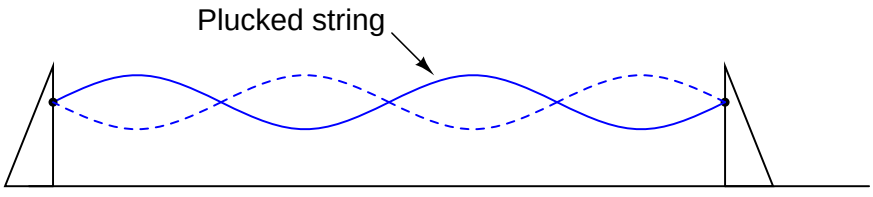


Figure 14.25: *Standing waves on a plucked string.*

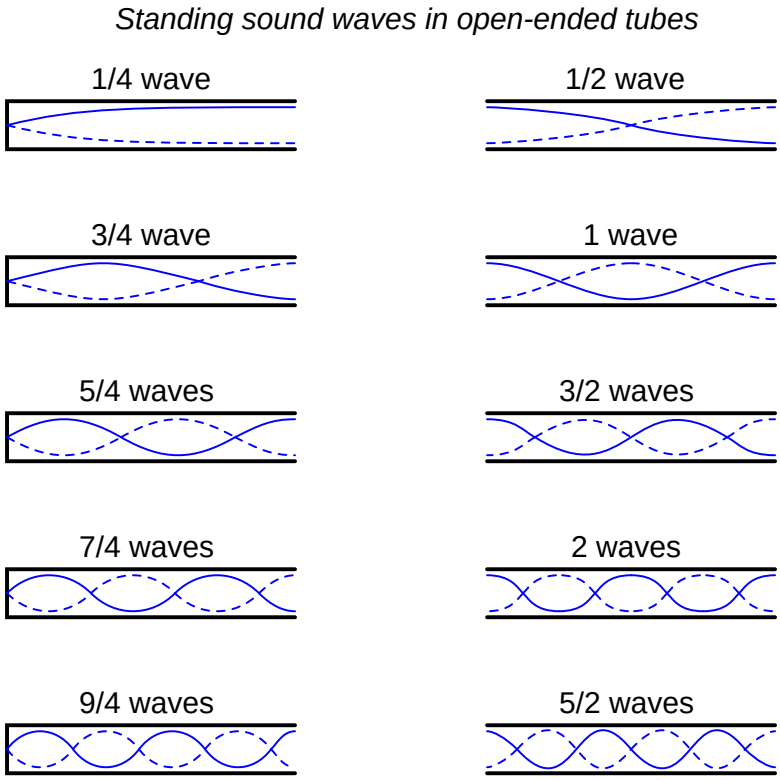


Figure 14.26: *Standing sound waves in open ended tubes.*

vibrating air within a tube that precisely match the tube's end points. This is true for all standing-wave systems: standing waves will resonate with the system for any frequency (wavelength) correlating to the node/antinode points of the system. Another way of saying this is that there are multiple resonant frequencies for any system supporting standing waves.

All higher frequencies are integer-multiples of the lowest (fundamental) frequency for the system. The sequential progression of harmonics from one resonant frequency to the next defines the *overtone* frequencies for the system: (Figure 14.27)

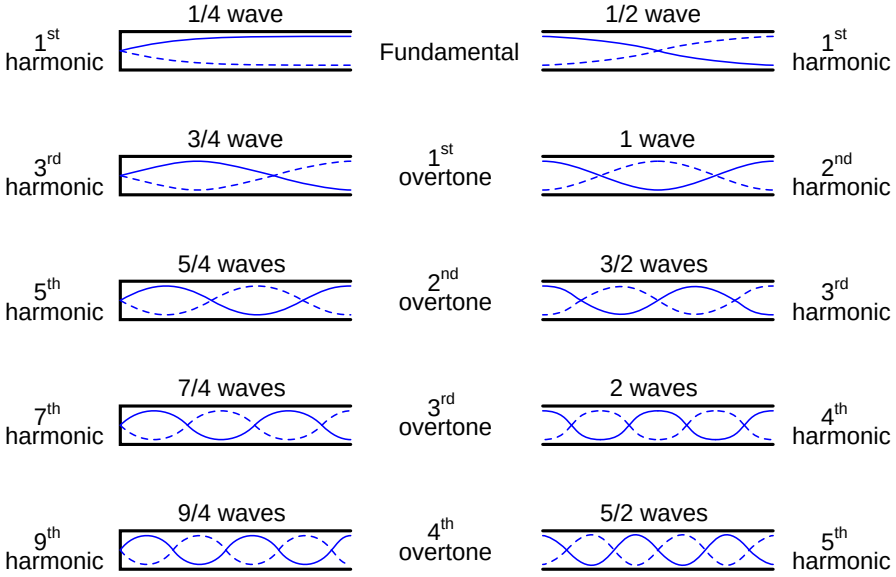


Figure 14.27: *Harmonics (overtones) in open ended pipes*

The actual frequencies (measured in Hertz) for any of these harmonics or overtones depends on the physical length of the tube and the waves' propagation velocity, which is the speed of sound in air.

Because transmission lines support standing waves, and force these waves to possess nodes and antinodes according to the type of termination impedance at the load end, they also exhibit resonance at frequencies determined by physical length and propagation velocity. Transmission line resonance, though, is a bit more complex than resonance of strings or of air in tubes, because we must consider both voltage waves and current waves.

This complexity is made easier to understand by way of computer simulation. To begin, let's examine a perfectly matched source, transmission line, and load. All components have an impedance of 75 Ω: (Figure 14.28)

Using SPICE to simulate the circuit, we'll specify the transmission line (`t1`) with a 75 Ω characteristic impedance (`z0=75`) and a propagation delay of 1 microsecond (`td=1u`). This is a convenient method for expressing the physical length of a transmission line: the amount of time it takes a wave to propagate down its entire length. If this were a real 75 Ω cable – perhaps a type "RG-59B/U" coaxial cable, the type commonly used for cable television distribution – with a velocity factor of 0.66, it would be about 648 feet long. Since 1 μs is the period of a

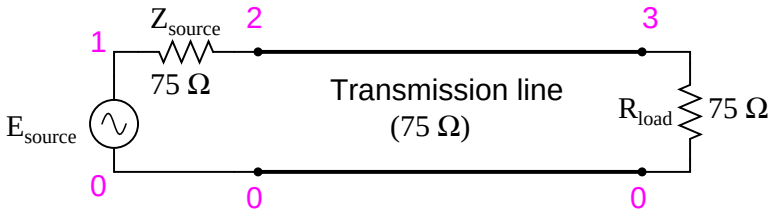


Figure 14.28: *Perfectly matched transmission line.*

1 MHz signal, I'll choose to sweep the frequency of the AC source from (nearly) zero to that figure, to see how the system reacts when exposed to signals ranging from DC to 1 wavelength.

Here is the SPICE netlist for the circuit shown above:

```
Transmission line
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
rsource 1 2 75
t1 2 0 3 0 z0=75 td=1u
rload 3 0 75
.ac lin 101 1m 1meg
* Using ''Nutmeg'' program to plot analysis
.end
```

Running this simulation and plotting the source impedance drop (as an indication of current), the source voltage, the line's source-end voltage, and the load voltage, we see that the source voltage – shown as `vm(1)` (voltage magnitude between node 1 and the implied ground point of node 0) on the graphic plot – registers a steady 1 volt, while every other voltage registers a steady 0.5 volts: (Figure 14.29)

In a system where all impedances are perfectly matched, there can be no standing waves, and therefore no resonant "peaks" or "valleys" in the Bode plot.

Now, let's change the load impedance to 999 MΩ, to simulate an open-ended transmission line. (Figure 14.30) We should definitely see some reflections on the line now as the frequency is swept from 1 mHz to 1 MHz: (Figure 14.31)

```
Transmission line
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
rsource 1 2 75
t1 2 0 3 0 z0=75 td=1u
rload 3 0 999meg
.ac lin 101 1m 1meg
* Using ''Nutmeg'' program to plot analysis
.end
```

Here, both the supply voltage `vm(1)` and the line's load-end voltage `vm(3)` remain steady at 1 volt. The other voltages dip and peak at different frequencies along the sweep range of 1

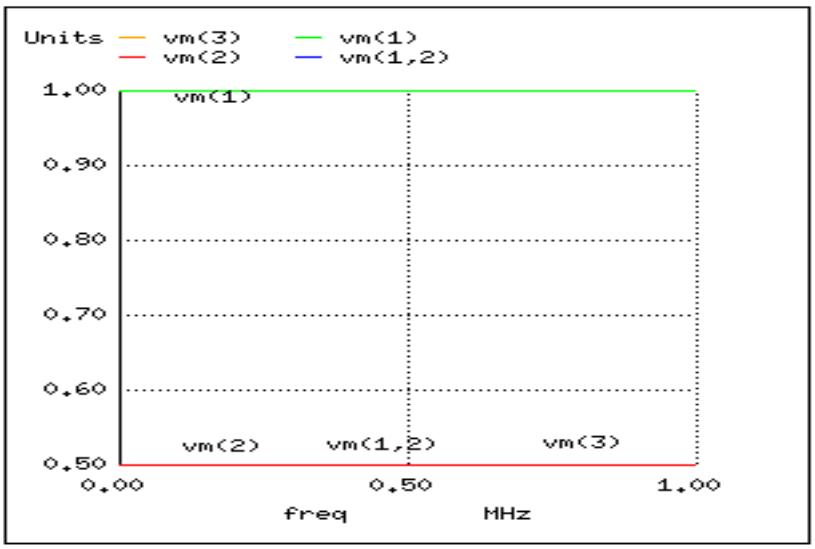


Figure 14.29: *No resonances on a matched transmission line.*

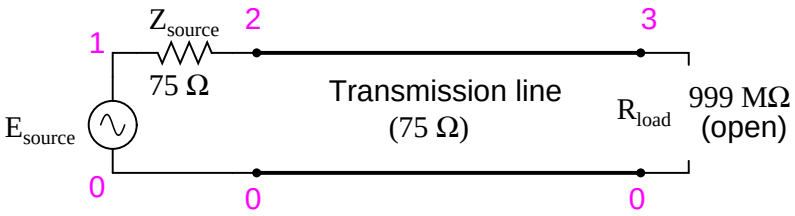


Figure 14.30: *Open ended transmission line.*

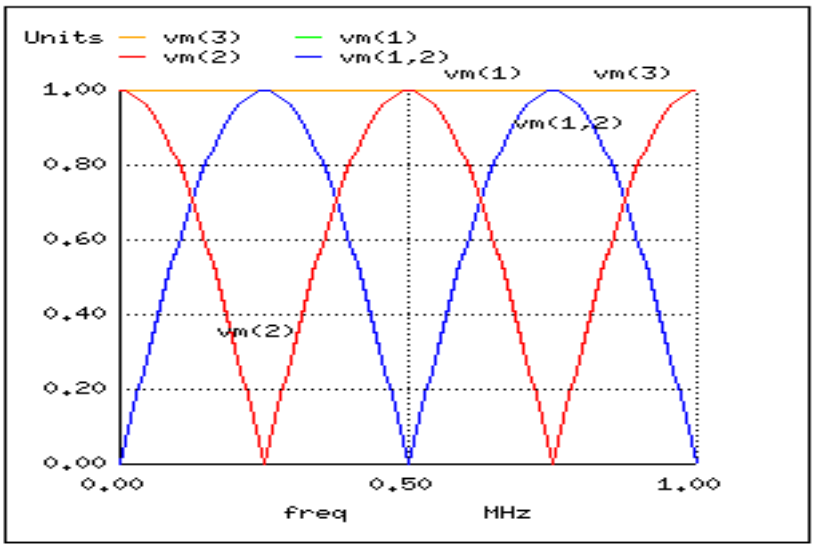


Figure 14.31: *Resonances on open transmission line.*

mHz to 1 MHz. There are five points of interest along the horizontal axis of the analysis: 0 Hz, 250 kHz, 500 kHz, 750 kHz, and 1 MHz. We will investigate each one with regard to voltage and current at different points of the circuit.

At 0 Hz (actually 1 mHz), the signal is practically DC, and the circuit behaves much as it would given a 1-volt DC battery source. There is no circuit current, as indicated by zero voltage drop across the source impedance (Z_{source}: `vm(1,2)`), and full source voltage present at the source-end of the transmission line (voltage measured between node 2 and node 0: `vm(2)`). (Figure 14.32)

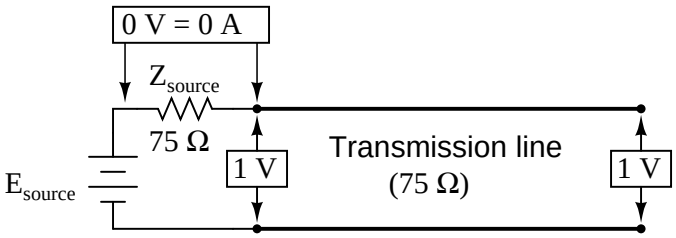


Figure 14.32: *At f=0: input: V=1, I=0; end: V=1, I=0.*

At 250 kHz, we see zero voltage and maximum current at the source-end of the transmission line, yet still full voltage at the load-end: (Figure 14.33)

You might be wondering, how can this be? How can we get full source voltage at the line's open end while there is zero voltage at its entrance? The answer is found in the paradox of the standing wave. With a source frequency of 250 kHz, the line's length is precisely right for

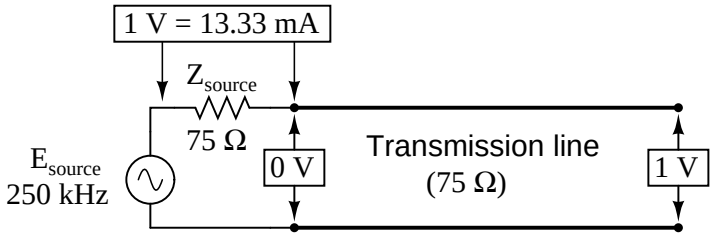


Figure 14.33: *At f=250 KHz: input: V=0, I=13.33 mA; end: V=1 I=0.*

1/4 wavelength to fit from end to end. With the line's load end open-circuited, there can be no current, but there will be voltage. Therefore, the load-end of an open-circuited transmission line is a current node (zero point) and a voltage antinode (maximum amplitude): (Figure¡ref¿02383.eps¡x1¿)

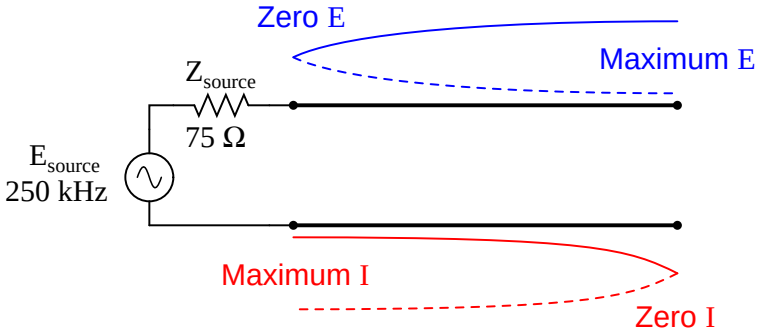


Figure 14.34: *Open end of transmission line shows current node, voltage antinode at open end.*

At 500 kHz, exactly one-half of a standing wave rests on the transmission line, and here we see another point in the analysis where the source current drops off to nothing and the source-end voltage of the transmission line rises again to full voltage: (Figure 14.35)

At 750 kHz, the plot looks a lot like it was at 250 kHz: zero source-end voltage (`vm(2)`) and maximum current (`vm(1,2)`). This is due to 3/4 of a wave poised along the transmission line, resulting in the source "seeing" a short-circuit where it connects to the transmission line, even though the other end of the line is open-circuited: (Figure 14.36)

When the supply frequency sweeps up to 1 MHz, a full standing wave exists on the transmission line. At this point, the source-end of the line experiences the same voltage and current amplitudes as the load-end: full voltage and zero current. In essence, the source "sees" an open circuit at the point where it connects to the transmission line. (Figure 14.37)

In a similar fashion, a short-circuited transmission line generates standing waves, although the node and antinode assignments for voltage and current are reversed: at the shorted end of the line, there will be zero voltage (node) and maximum current (antinode). What follows is the SPICE simulation (circuit Figure 14.38 and illustrations of what happens (Figure 14.39 at resonances) at all the interesting frequencies: 0 Hz (Figure¡ref¿02388.eps¡x1¿) , 250 kHz

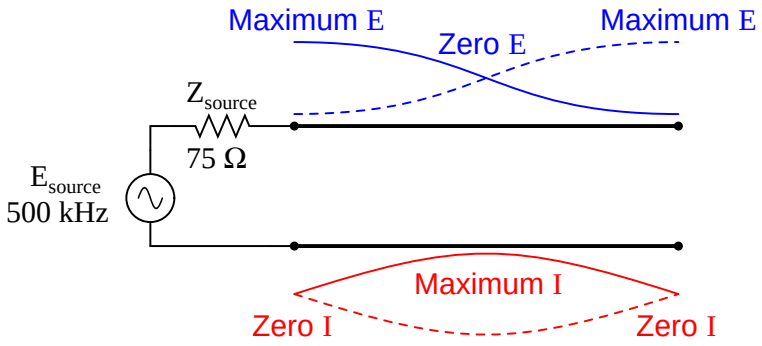


Figure 14.35: *Full standing wave on half wave open transmission line.*

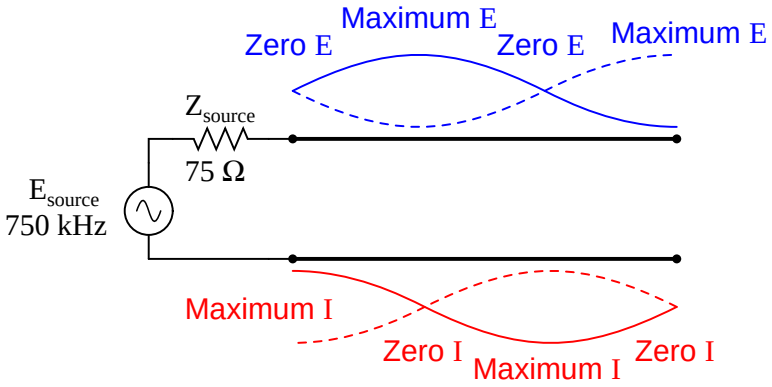


Figure 14.36: *1 1/2 standing waves on 3/4 wave open transmission line.*

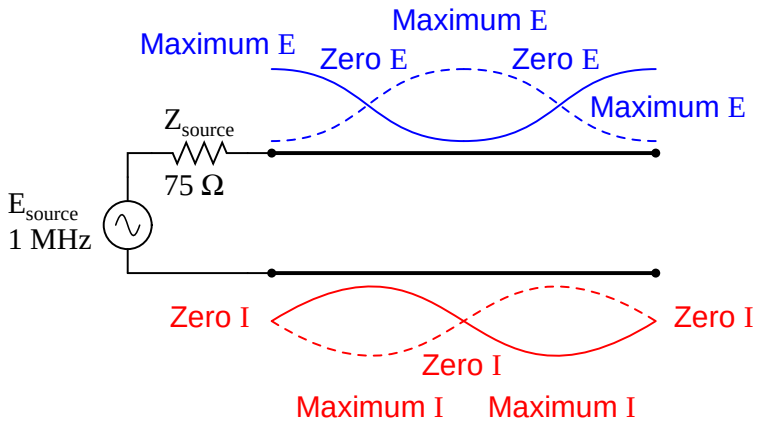


Figure 14.37: *Double standing waves on full wave open transmission line.*

(Figure 14.40), 500 kHz (Figure¡ref¿02389.eps¡x1¿), 750 kHz (Figure¡ref¿02390.eps¡x1¿), and 1 MHz (Figure¡ref¿02391.eps¡x1¿). The short-circuit jumper is simulated by a 1 $\mu\Omega$ load impedance: (Figure 14.38)

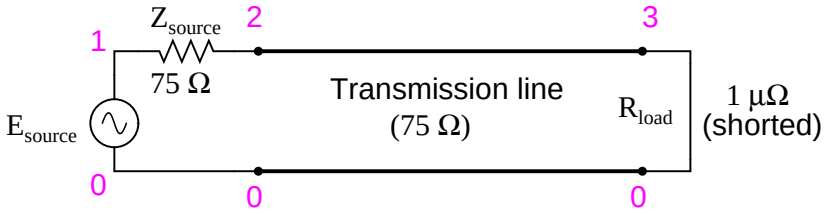


Figure 14.38: *Shorted transmission line.*

```
Transmission line
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
rsource 1 2 75
t1 2 0 3 0 z0=75 td=1u
rload 3 0 1u
.ac lin 101 1m 1meg
* Using ‘‘Nutmeg’’ program to plot analysis
.end
```

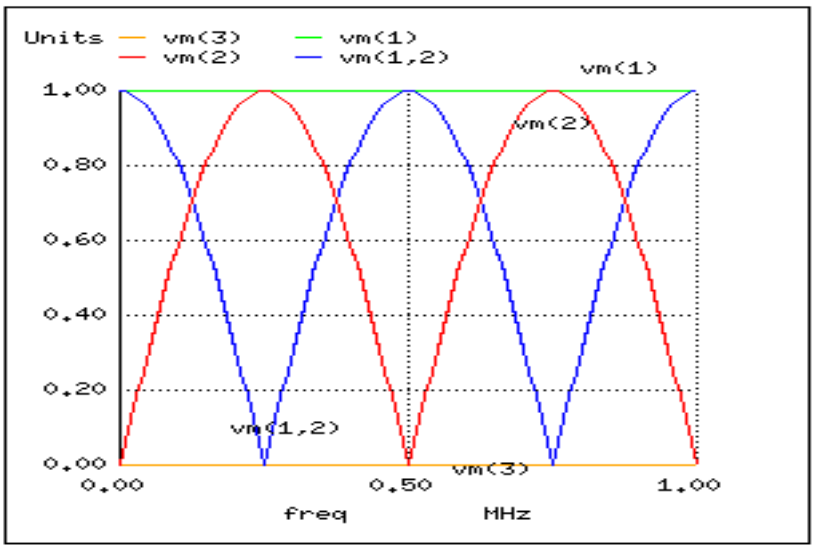


Figure 14.39: *Resonances on shorted transmission line*

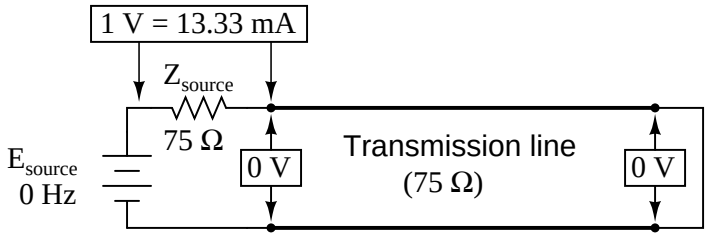


Figure 14.40: *At f=0 Hz: input: V=0, I=13.33 mA; end: V=0, I=13.33 mA.*

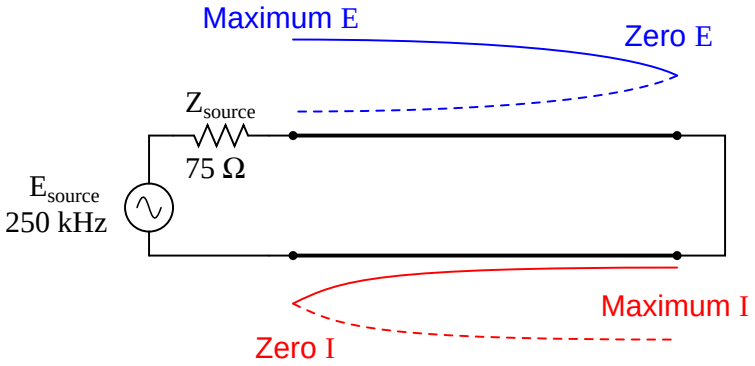


Figure 14.41: *Half wave standing wave pattern on 1/4 wave shorted transmission line.*

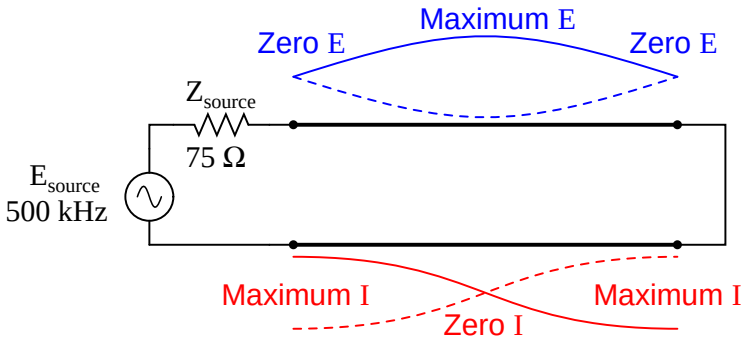


Figure 14.42: *Full wave standing wave pattern on half wave shorted transmission line.*

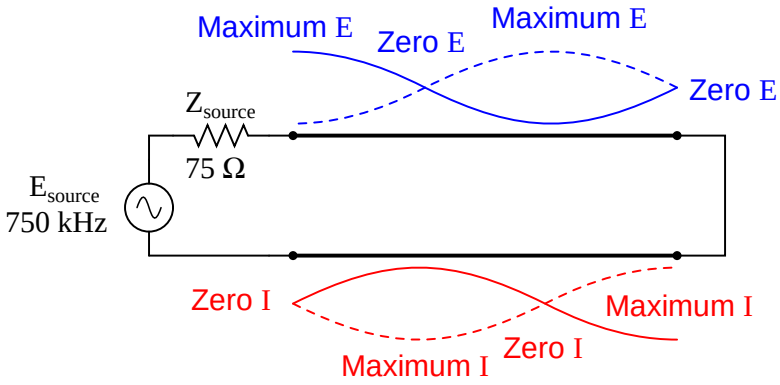


Figure 14.43: *1 1/2 standing wavepattern on 3/4 wave shorted transmission line.*

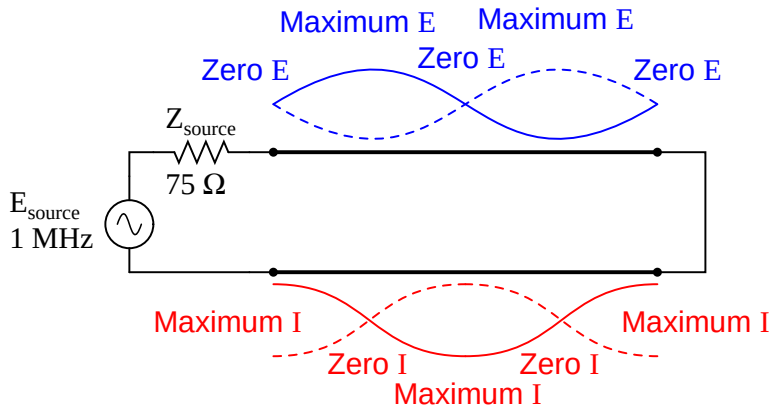


Figure 14.44: *Double standing waves on full wave shorted transmission line.*

In both these circuit examples, an open-circuited line and a short-circuited line, the energy reflection is total: 100% of the incident wave reaching the line's end gets reflected back toward the source. If, however, the transmission line is terminated in some impedance other than an open or a short, the reflections will be less intense, as will be the difference between minimum and maximum values of voltage and current along the line.

Suppose we were to terminate our example line with a 100 Ω resistor instead of a 75 Ω resistor. (Figure 14.45) Examine the results of the corresponding SPICE analysis to see the effects of impedance mismatch at different source frequencies: (Figure 14.46)

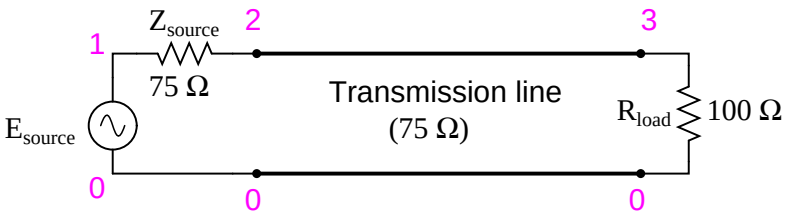


Figure 14.45: *Transmission line terminated in a mismatch*

```
Transmission line
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
rsource 1 2 75
t1 2 0 3 0 z0=75 td=1u
rload 3 0 100
.ac lin 101 1m 1meg
* Using ‘‘Nutmeg’’ program to plot analysis
.end
```

If we run another SPICE analysis, this time printing numerical results rather than plotting them, we can discover exactly what is happening at all the interesting frequencies: (DC, Figure 14.47; 250 kHz, Figure 14.47; 500 kHz, Figure 14.48; 750 kHz, Figure 14.49; and 1 MHz, Figure 14.50).

```
Transmission line
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
rsource 1 2 75
t1 2 0 3 0 z0=75 td=1u
rload 3 0 100
.ac lin 5 1m 1meg
.print ac v(1,2) v(1) v(2) v(3)
.end
```

At all frequencies, the source voltage, `v(1)`, remains steady at 1 volt, as it should. The load voltage, `v(3)`, also remains steady, but at a lesser voltage: 0.5714 volts. However, both the line input voltage (`v(2)`) and the voltage dropped across the source's 75 Ω impedance (`v(1,2)`, indicating current drawn from the source) vary with frequency.

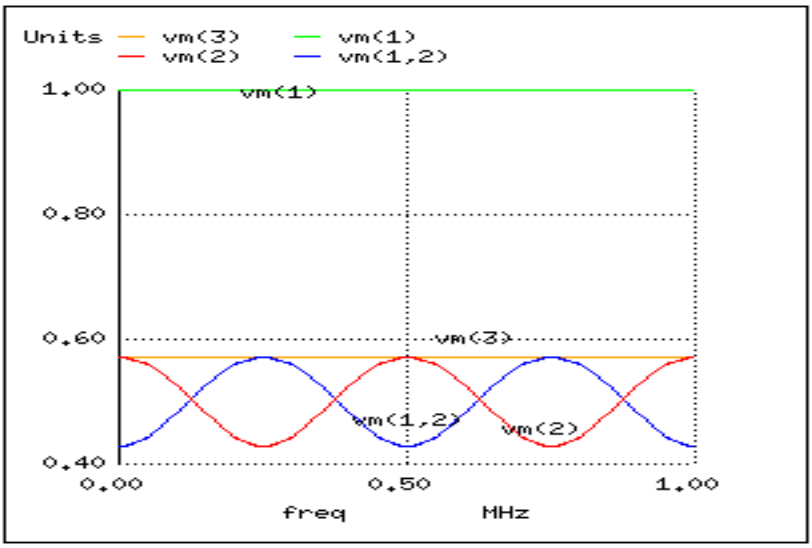


Figure 14.46: *Weak resonances on a mismatched transmission line*

freq	v(1,2)	v(1)	v(2)	v(3)
1.000E-03	4.286E-01	1.000E+00	5.714E-01	5.714E-01
2.500E+05	5.714E-01	1.000E+00	4.286E-01	5.714E-01
5.000E+05	4.286E-01	1.000E+00	5.714E-01	5.714E-01
7.500E+05	5.714E-01	1.000E+00	4.286E-01	5.714E-01
1.000E+06	4.286E-01	1.000E+00	5.714E-01	5.714E-01

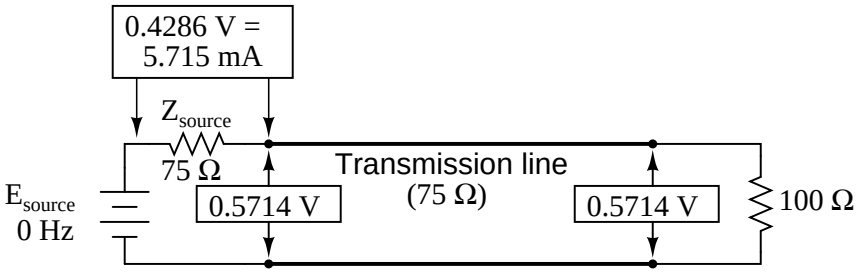


Figure 14.47: *At f=0 Hz: input: V=0.57.14, I=5.715 mA; end: V=0.5714, I=5.715 mA.*

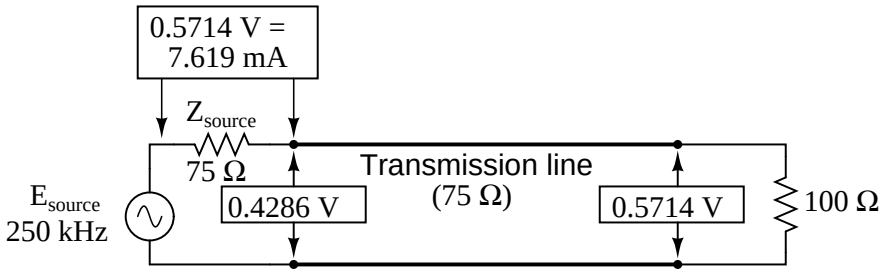


Figure 14.48: *At f=250 KHz: input: V=0.4286, I=7.619 mA; end: V=0.5714, I=7.619 mA.*

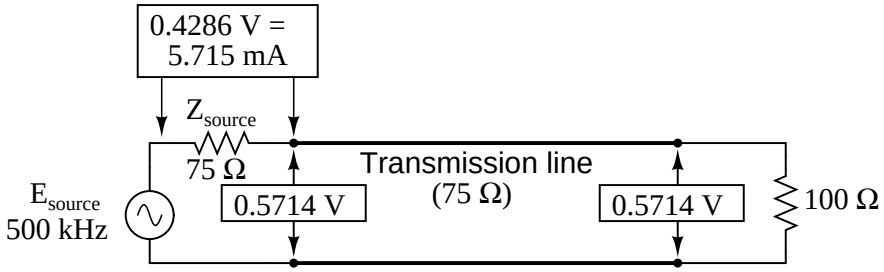


Figure 14.49: *At f=500 KHz: input: V=0.5714, I=5.715 mA; end: V=5.714, I=5.715 mA.*

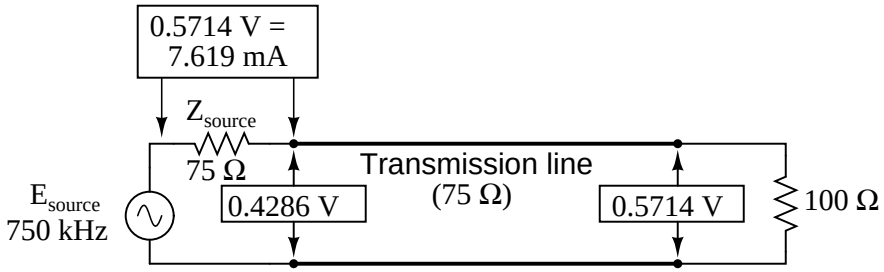


Figure 14.50: *At f=750 KHz: input: V=0.4286, I=7.619 mA; end: V=0.5714, I=7.619 mA.*

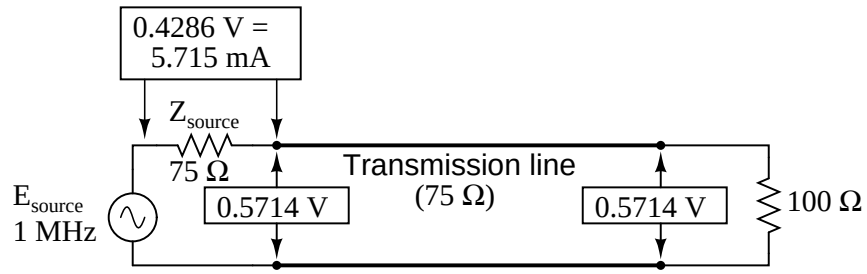


Figure 14.51: *At f=1 MHz: input: V=0.5714, I=5.715 mA; end: V=0.5714, I=0.5715 mA.*

At odd harmonics of the fundamental frequency (250 kHz, Figure 14.48 and 750 kHz, Figure 14.50) we see differing levels of voltage at each end of the transmission line, because at those frequencies the standing waves terminate at one end in a node and at the other end in an antinode. Unlike the open-circuited and short-circuited transmission line examples, the maximum and minimum voltage levels along this transmission line do not reach the same extreme values of 0% and 100% source voltage, but we still have points of "minimum" and "maximum" voltage. (Figure 14.46) The same holds true for current: if the line's terminating impedance is mismatched to the line's characteristic impedance, we will have points of minimum and maximum current at certain fixed locations on the line, corresponding to the standing current wave's nodes and antinodes, respectively.

One way of expressing the severity of standing waves is as a ratio of maximum amplitude (antinode) to minimum amplitude (node), for voltage or for current. When a line is terminated by an open or a short, this *standing wave ratio*, or *SWR* is valued at infinity, since the minimum amplitude will be zero, and any finite value divided by zero results in an infinite (actually, "undefined") quotient. In this example, with a 75 Ω line terminated by a 100 Ω impedance, the SWR will be finite: 1.333, calculated by taking the maximum line voltage at either 250 kHz or 750 kHz (0.5714 volts) and dividing by the minimum line voltage (0.4286 volts).

Standing wave ratio may also be calculated by taking the line's terminating impedance and the line's characteristic impedance, and dividing the larger of the two values by the smaller. In this example, the terminating impedance of 100 Ω divided by the characteristic impedance of 75 Ω yields a quotient of exactly 1.333, matching the previous calculation very closely.

$$\text{SWR} = \frac{E_{maximum}}{E_{minimum}} = \frac{I_{maximum}}{I_{minimum}}$$

$$\text{SWR} = \frac{Z_{load}}{Z_0} \quad \textit{or} \quad \frac{Z_0}{Z_{load}}$$

which ever is greater

A perfectly terminated transmission line will have an SWR of 1, since voltage at any location along the line's length will be the same, and likewise for current. Again, this is usually considered ideal, not only because reflected waves constitute energy not delivered to the load, but because the high values of voltage and current created by the antinodes of standing waves may over-stress the transmission line's insulation (high voltage) and conductors (high current), respectively.

Also, a transmission line with a high SWR tends to act as an antenna, radiating electromagnetic energy away from the line, rather than channeling all of it to the load. This is usually undesirable, as the radiated energy may "couple" with nearby conductors, producing signal interference. An interesting footnote to this point is that antenna structures – which typically resemble open- or short-circuited transmission lines – are often designed to operate at *high* standing wave ratios, for the very reason of maximizing signal radiation and reception.

The following photograph (Figure 14.52) shows a set of transmission lines at a junction point in a radio transmitter system. The large, copper tubes with ceramic insulator caps at

the ends are rigid coaxial transmission lines of 50 Ω characteristic impedance. These lines carry RF power from the radio transmitter circuit to a small, wooden shelter at the base of an antenna structure, and from that shelter on to other shelters with other antenna structures:

Figure 14.52: *Flexible coaxial cables connected to rigid lines.*

Flexible coaxial cable connected to the rigid lines (also of 50 Ω characteristic impedance) conduct the RF power to capacitive and inductive "phasing" networks inside the shelter. The white, plastic tube joining two of the rigid lines together carries "filling" gas from one sealed line to the other. The lines are gas-filled to avoid collecting moisture inside them, which would be a definite problem for a coaxial line. Note the flat, copper "straps" used as jumper wires to connect the conductors of the flexible coaxial cables to the conductors of the rigid lines. Why flat straps of copper and not round wires? Because of the skin effect, which renders most of the cross-sectional area of a round conductor useless at radio frequencies.

Like many transmission lines, these are operated at low SWR conditions. As we will see in the next section, though, the phenomenon of standing waves in transmission lines is not always undesirable, as it may be exploited to perform a useful function: impedance transformation.

- **REVIEW:**
- *Standing waves* are waves of voltage and current which do not propagate (i.e. they are stationary), but are the result of interference between incident and reflected waves along a transmission line.
- A *node* is a point on a standing wave of *minimum* amplitude.
- An *antinode* is a point on a standing wave of *maximum* amplitude.
- Standing waves can only exist in a transmission line when the terminating impedance does not match the line's characteristic impedance. In a perfectly terminated line, there are no reflected waves, and therefore no standing waves at all.

- At certain frequencies, the nodes and antinodes of standing waves will correlate with the ends of a transmission line, resulting in *resonance*.
- The lowest-frequency resonant point on a transmission line is where the line is one quarter-wavelength long. Resonant points exist at every harmonic (integer-multiple) frequency of the fundamental (quarter-wavelength).
- *Standing wave ratio*, or *SWR*, is the ratio of maximum standing wave amplitude to minimum standing wave amplitude. It may also be calculated by dividing termination impedance by characteristic impedance, or vice versa, which ever yields the greatest quotient. A line with no standing waves (perfectly matched: Z_{load} to Z_0) has an SWR equal to 1.
- Transmission lines may be damaged by the high maximum amplitudes of standing waves. Voltage antinodes may break down insulation between conductors, and current antinodes may overheat conductors.

14.7 Impedance transformation

Standing waves at the resonant frequency points of an open- or short-circuited transmission line produce unusual effects. When the signal frequency is such that exactly 1/2 wave or some multiple thereof matches the line's length, the source "sees" the load impedance as it is. The following pair of illustrations shows an open-circuited line operating at 1/2 (Figure 14.53) and 1 wavelength (Figure 14.54) frequencies:

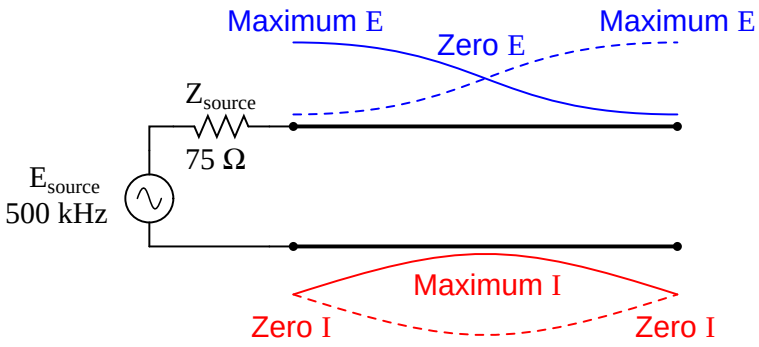


Figure 14.53: *Source sees open, same as end of half wavelength line.*

In either case, the line has voltage antinodes at both ends, and current nodes at both ends. That is to say, there is maximum voltage and minimum current at either end of the line, which corresponds to the condition of an open circuit. The fact that this condition exists at *both* ends of the line tells us that the line faithfully reproduces its terminating impedance at the source end, so that the source "sees" an open circuit where it connects to the transmission line, just as if it were directly open-circuited.

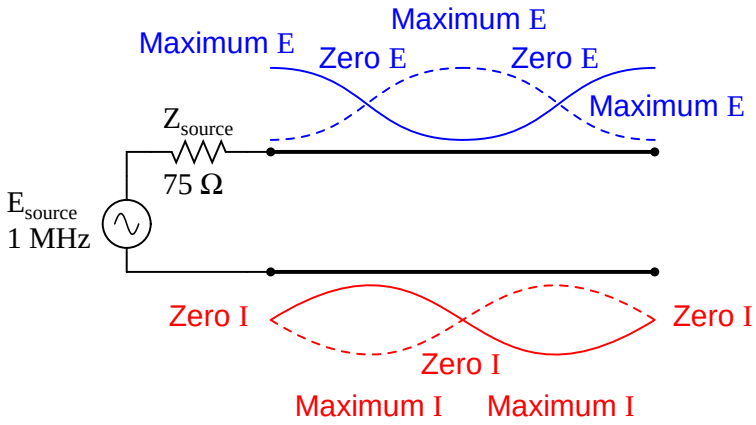


Figure 14.54: *Source sees open, same as end of full wavelength (2x half wavelength line).*

The same is true if the transmission line is terminated by a short: at signal frequencies corresponding to 1/2 wavelength (Figure¡ref¿02390a.eps¡x1¿ below) or some multiple (Figure¡ref¿02392a.eps¡x1¿ below) thereof, the source "sees" a short circuit, with minimum voltage and maximum current present at the connection points between source and transmission line:

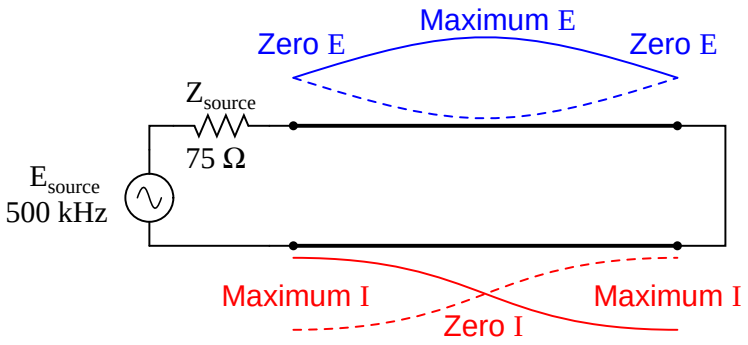


Figure 14.55: *Source sees short, same as end of half wave length line.*

However, if the signal frequency is such that the line resonates at *1/4* wavelength or some multiple thereof, the source will "see" the exact opposite of the termination impedance. That is, if the line is open-circuited, the source will "see" a short-circuit at the point where it connects to the line; and if the line is short-circuited, the source will "see" an open circuit: (Figure 14.57)

Line open-circuited; source "sees" a short circuit: at quarter wavelength line (Figure 14.57), at three-quarter wavelength line (Figure 14.58)

Line short-circuited; source "sees" an open circuit: at quarter wavelength line (Figure 14.59), at three-quarter wavelength line (Figure 14.60)

At these frequencies, the transmission line is actually functioning as an *impedance transformer*, transforming an infinite impedance into zero impedance, or vice versa. Of course,

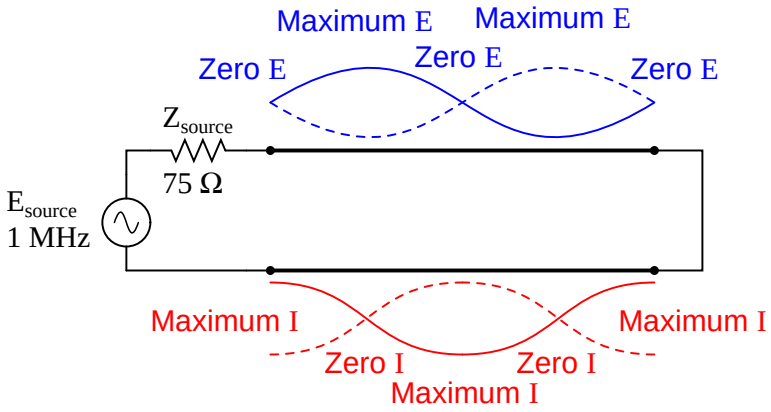


Figure 14.56: *Source sees short, same as end of full wavelength line (2x half wavelength).*

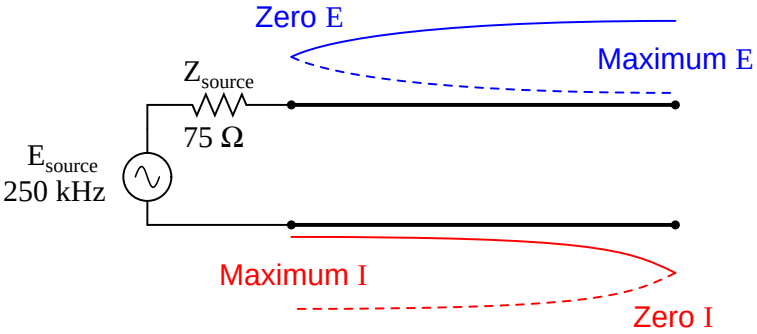


Figure 14.57: *Source sees short, reflected from open at end of quarter wavelength line.*

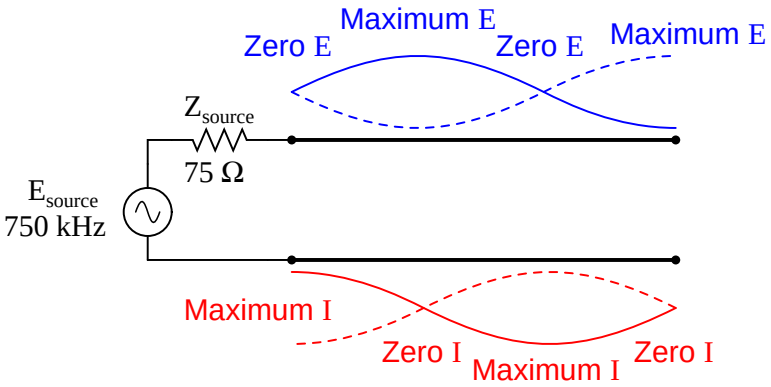


Figure 14.58: *Source sees short, reflected from open at end of three-quarter wavelength line.*

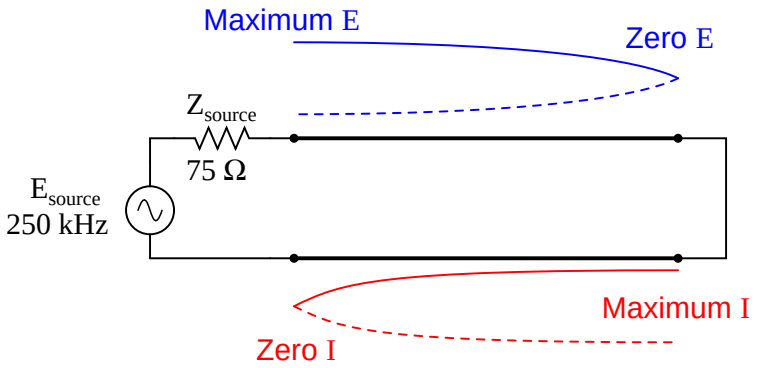


Figure 14.59: *Source sees open, reflected from short at end of quarter wavelength line.*

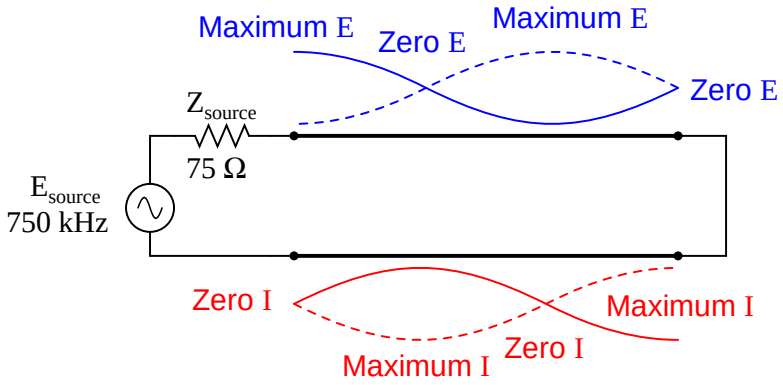


Figure 14.60: *Source sees open, reflected from short at end of three-quarter wavelength line.*

this only occurs at resonant points resulting in a standing wave of 1/4 cycle (the line's fundamental, resonant frequency) or some odd multiple (3/4, 5/4, 7/4, 9/4 . . .), but if the signal frequency is known and unchanging, this phenomenon may be used to match otherwise unmatched impedances to each other.

Take for instance the example circuit from the last section where a 75 Ω source connects to a 75 Ω transmission line, terminating in a 100 Ω load impedance. From the numerical figures obtained via SPICE, let's determine what impedance the source "sees" at its end of the transmission line at the line's resonant frequencies: quarter wavelength (Figure 14.61), halfwave length (Figure 14.62), three-quarter wavelength (Figure 14.63) full wavelength (Figure 14.64)

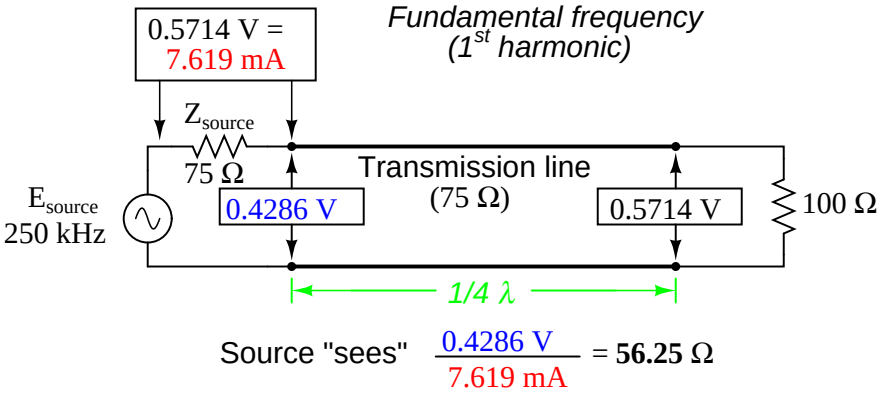


Figure 14.61: *Source sees 56.25 Ω reflected from 100 Ω load at end of quarter wavelength line.*

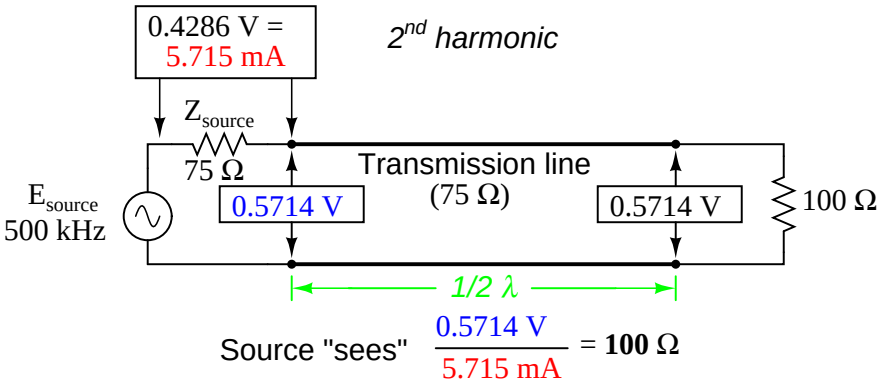


Figure 14.62: *Source sees 100 Ω reflected from 100 Ω load at end of half wavelength line.*

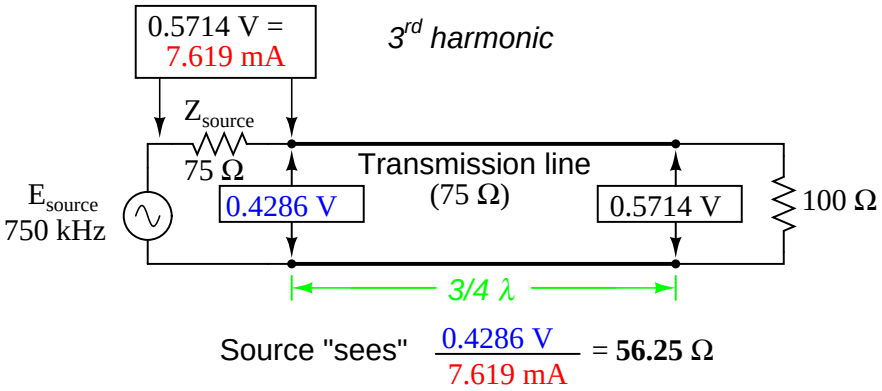


Figure 14.63: *Source sees 56.25 Ω reflected from 100 Ω load at end of three-quarter wavelength line (same as quarter wavelength).*

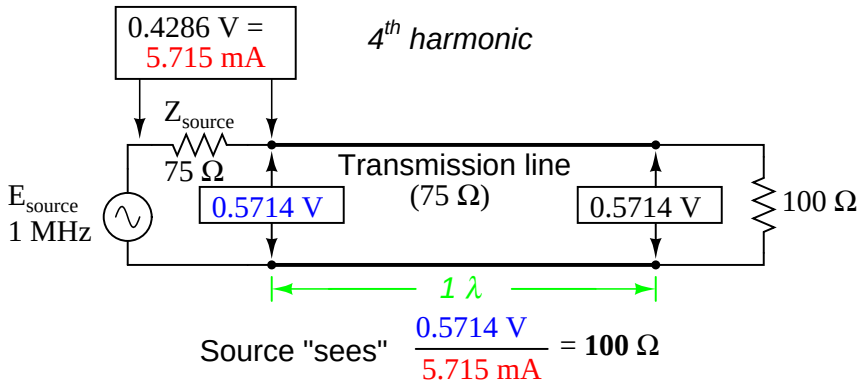


Figure 14.64: *Source sees 56.25 Ω reflected from 100 Ω load at end of full-wavelength line (same as half-wavelength).*

A simple equation relates line impedance (Z_0), load impedance (Z_{load}), and input impedance (Z_{input}) for an unmatched transmission line operating at an odd harmonic of its fundamental frequency:

$$Z_0 = \sqrt{Z_{input} Z_{load}}$$

One practical application of this principle would be to match a 300 Ω load to a 75 Ω signal source at a frequency of 50 MHz. All we need to do is calculate the proper transmission line impedance (Z_0), and length so that exactly 1/4 of a wave will "stand" on the line at a frequency of 50 MHz.

First, calculating the line impedance: taking the 75 Ω we desire the source to "see" at the source-end of the transmission line, and multiplying by the 300 Ω load resistance, we obtain a figure of 22,500. Taking the square root of 22,500 yields 150 Ω for a characteristic line

impedance.

Now, to calculate the necessary line length: assuming that our cable has a velocity factor of 0.85, and using a speed-of-light figure of 186,000 miles per second, the velocity of propagation will be 158,100 miles per second. Taking this velocity and dividing by the signal frequency gives us a wavelength of 0.003162 miles, or 16.695 feet. Since we only need one-quarter of this length for the cable to support a quarter-wave, the requisite cable length is 4.1738 feet.

Here is a schematic diagram for the circuit, showing node numbers for the SPICE analysis we're about to run: (Figure¡ref¿02403.eps¡x1¿)

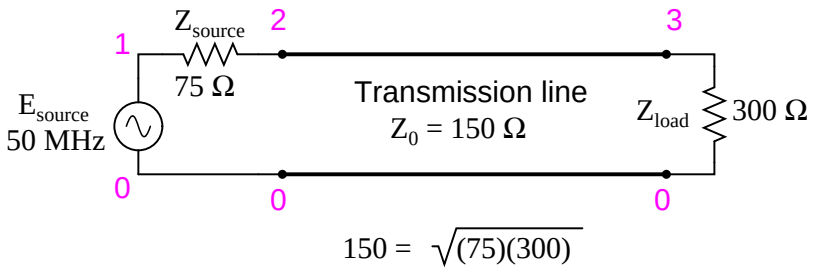


Figure 14.65: *Quarter wave section of 150 Ω transmission line matches 75 Ω source to 300 Ω load.*

We can specify the cable length in SPICE in terms of time delay from beginning to end. Since the frequency is 50 MHz, the signal period will be the reciprocal of that, or 20 nanoseconds (20 ns). One-quarter of that time (5 ns) will be the time delay of a transmission line one-quarter wavelength long:

```
Transmission line
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
rsource 1 2 75
t1 2 0 3 0 z0=150 td=5n
rload 3 0 300
.ac lin 1 50meg 50meg
.print ac v(1,2) v(1) v(2) v(3)
.end

freq          v(1,2)      v(1)        v(2)        v(3)
5.000E+07     5.000E-01   1.000E+00   5.000E-01   1.000E+00
```

At a frequency of 50 MHz, our 1-volt signal source drops half of its voltage across the series 75 Ω impedance (`v(1,2)`) and the other half of its voltage across the input terminals of the transmission line (`v(2)`). This means the source "thinks" it is powering a 75 Ω load. The actual load impedance, however, receives a full 1 volt, as indicated by the 1.000 figure at `v(3)`. With 0.5 volt dropped across 75 Ω, the source is dissipating 3.333 mW of power: the same as dissipated by 1 volt across the 300 Ω load, indicating a perfect match of impedance, according to the Maximum Power Transfer Theorem. The 1/4-wavelength, 150 Ω, transmission line segment has successfully matched the 300 Ω load to the 75 Ω source.

Bear in mind, of course, that this only works for 50 MHz and its odd-numbered harmonics. For any other signal frequency to receive the same benefit of matched impedances, the 150 Ω line would have to lengthened or shortened accordingly so that it was exactly 1/4 wavelength long.

Strangely enough, the exact same line can also match a 75 Ω load to a 300 Ω source, demonstrating how this phenomenon of impedance transformation is fundamentally different in principle from that of a conventional, two-winding transformer:

```
Transmission line
v1 1 0 ac 1 sin
rsource 1 2 300
t1 2 0 3 0 z0=150 td=5n
rload 3 0 75
.ac lin 1 50meg 50meg
.print ac v(1,2) v(1) v(2) v(3)
.end

freq          v(1,2)      v(1)        v(2)        v(3)
5.000E+07     5.000E-01   1.000E+00   5.000E-01   2.500E-01
```

Here, we see the 1-volt source voltage equally split between the 300 Ω source impedance (`v(1,2)`) and the line's input (`v(2)`), indicating that the load "appears" as a 300 Ω impedance from the source's perspective where it connects to the transmission line. This 0.5 volt drop across the source's 300 Ω internal impedance yields a power figure of 833.33 μW, the same as the 0.25 volts across the 75 Ω load, as indicated by voltage figure `v(3)`. Once again, the impedance values of source and load have been matched by the transmission line segment.

This technique of impedance matching is often used to match the differing impedance values of transmission line and antenna in radio transmitter systems, because the transmitter's frequency is generally well-known and unchanging. The use of an impedance "transformer" 1/4 wavelength in length provides impedance matching using the shortest conductor length possible. (Figure 14.66)

- **REVIEW:**
- A transmission line with standing waves may be used to match different impedance values if operated at the correct frequency(ies).
- When operated at a frequency corresponding to a standing wave of 1/4-wavelength along the transmission line, the line's characteristic impedance necessary for impedance transformation must be equal to the square root of the product of the source's impedance and the load's impedance.

14.8 Waveguides

A *waveguide* is a special form of transmission line consisting of a hollow, metal tube. The tube wall provides distributed inductance, while the empty space between the tube walls provide distributed capacitance: Figure 14.67

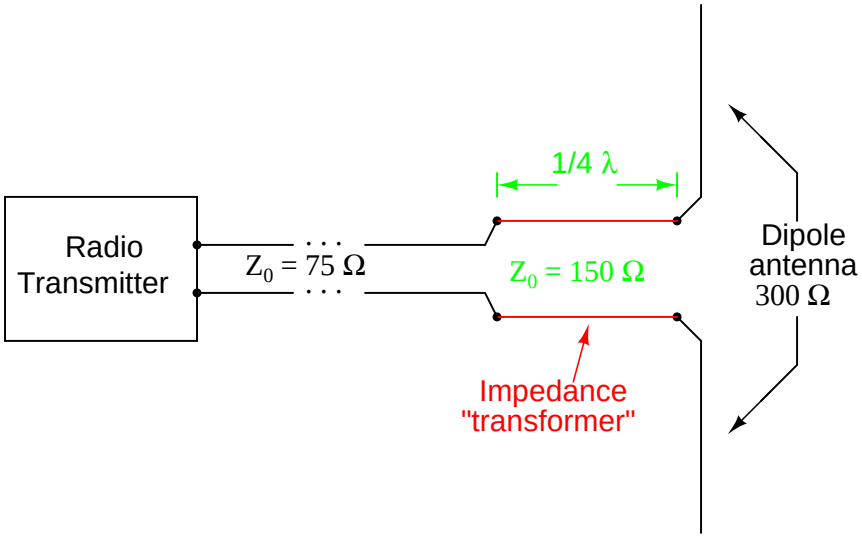


Figure 14.66: *Quarter wave 150 Ω transmission line section matches 75 Ω line to 300 Ω antenna.*

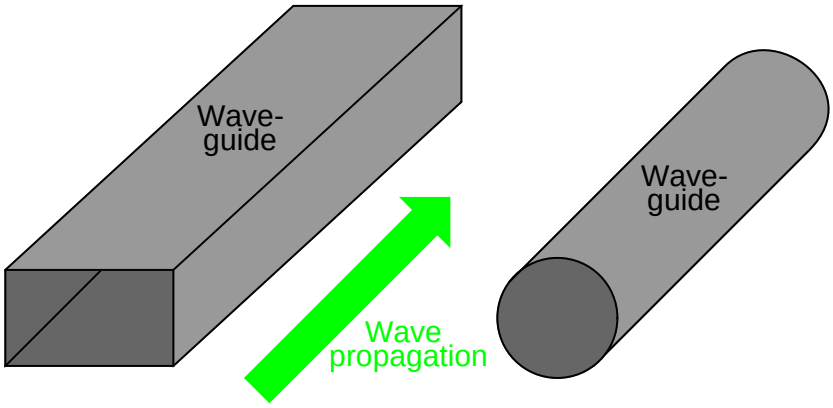


Figure 14.67: *Wave guides conduct microwave energy at lower loss than coaxial cables.*

Waveguides are practical only for signals of extremely high frequency, where the wavelength approaches the cross-sectional dimensions of the waveguide. Below such frequencies, waveguides are useless as electrical transmission lines.

When functioning as transmission lines, though, waveguides are considerably simpler than two-conductor cables – especially coaxial cables – in their manufacture and maintenance. With only a single conductor (the waveguide's "shell"), there are no concerns with proper conductor-to-conductor spacing, or of the consistency of the dielectric material, since the only dielectric in a waveguide is air. Moisture is not as severe a problem in waveguides as it is within coaxial cables, either, and so waveguides are often spared the necessity of gas "filling."

Waveguides may be thought of as conduits for electromagnetic energy, the waveguide itself acting as nothing more than a "director" of the energy rather than as a signal conductor in the normal sense of the word. In a sense, all transmission lines function as conduits of electromagnetic energy when transporting pulses or high-frequency waves, directing the waves as the banks of a river direct a tidal wave. However, because waveguides are single-conductor elements, the propagation of electrical energy down a waveguide is of a very different nature than the propagation of electrical energy down a two-conductor transmission line.

All electromagnetic waves consist of electric and magnetic fields propagating in the same direction of travel, but perpendicular to each other. Along the length of a normal transmission line, both electric and magnetic fields are perpendicular (transverse) to the direction of wave travel. This is known as the *principal mode*, or *TEM* (**T**ransverse **E**lectric and **M**agnetic) mode. This mode of wave propagation can exist only where there are two conductors, and it is the dominant mode of wave propagation where the cross-sectional dimensions of the transmission line are small compared to the wavelength of the signal. (Figure 14.68)

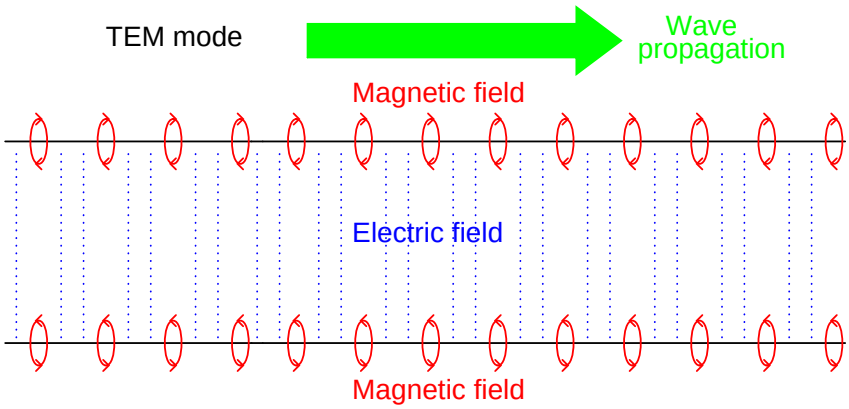


Figure 14.68: *Twin lead transmission line propagation: TEM mode.*

At *microwave* signal frequencies (between 100 MHz and 300 GHz), two-conductor transmission lines of any substantial length operating in standard TEM mode become impractical. Lines small enough in cross-sectional dimension to maintain TEM mode signal propagation

for microwave signals tend to have low voltage ratings, and suffer from large, parasitic power losses due to conductor "skin" and dielectric effects. Fortunately, though, at these short wavelengths there exist other modes of propagation that are not as "lossy," if a conductive tube is used rather than two parallel conductors. It is at these high frequencies that waveguides become practical.

When an electromagnetic wave propagates down a hollow tube, only one of the fields – either electric or magnetic – will actually be transverse to the wave's direction of travel. The other field will "loop" longitudinally to the direction of travel, but still be perpendicular to the other field. Whichever field remains transverse to the direction of travel determines whether the wave propagates in *TE* mode (**T**ransverse **E**lectric) or *TM* (**T**ransverse **M**agnetic) mode. (Figure 14.69)

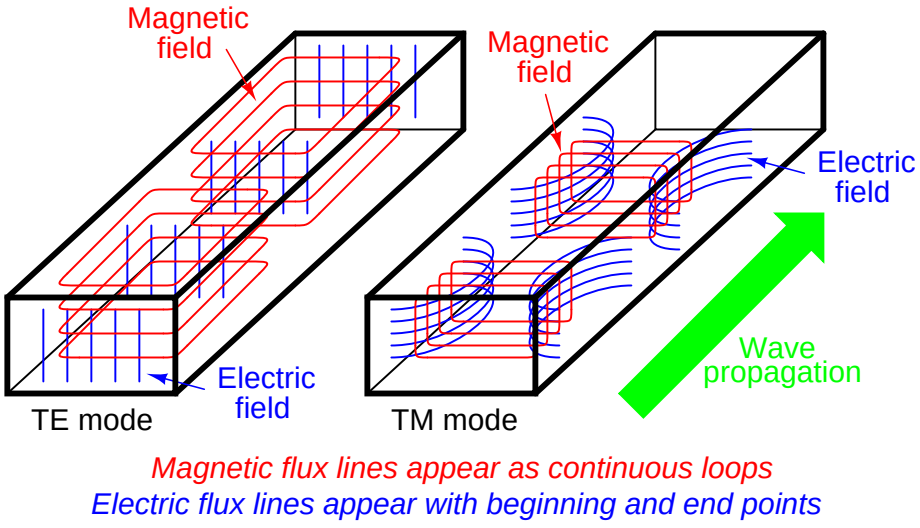


Figure 14.69: *Waveguide (TE) transverse electric and (TM) transverse magnetic modes.*

Many variations of each mode exist for a given waveguide, and a full discussion of this is subject well beyond the scope of this book.

Signals are typically introduced to and extracted from waveguides by means of small antenna-like coupling devices inserted into the waveguide. Sometimes these coupling elements take the form of a dipole, which is nothing more than two open-ended stub wires of appropriate length. Other times, the coupler is a single stub (a half-dipole, similar in principle to a "whip" antenna, $1/4\lambda$ in physical length), or a short loop of wire terminated on the inside surface of the waveguide: (Figure 14.70)

In some cases, such as a class of vacuum tube devices called *inductive output tubes* (the so-called *klystron* tube falls into this category), a "cavity" formed of conductive material may intercept electromagnetic energy from a modulated beam of electrons, having no contact with the beam itself: (Figure¡ref¿02408.eps¡x1¿ below)

Just as transmission lines are able to function as resonant elements in a circuit, especially when terminated by a short-circuit or an open-circuit, a dead-ended waveguide may also res-

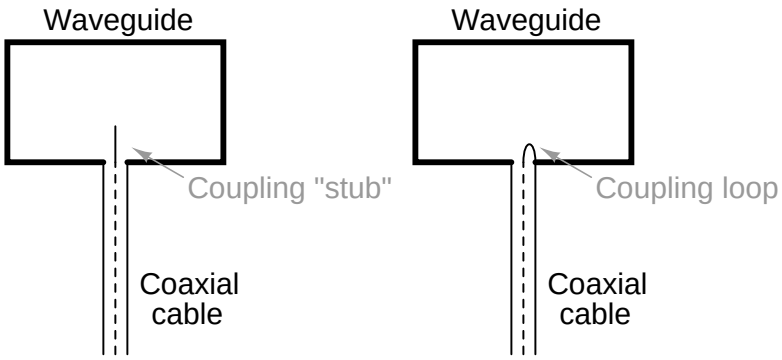


Figure 14.70: *Stub and loop coupling to waveguide.*

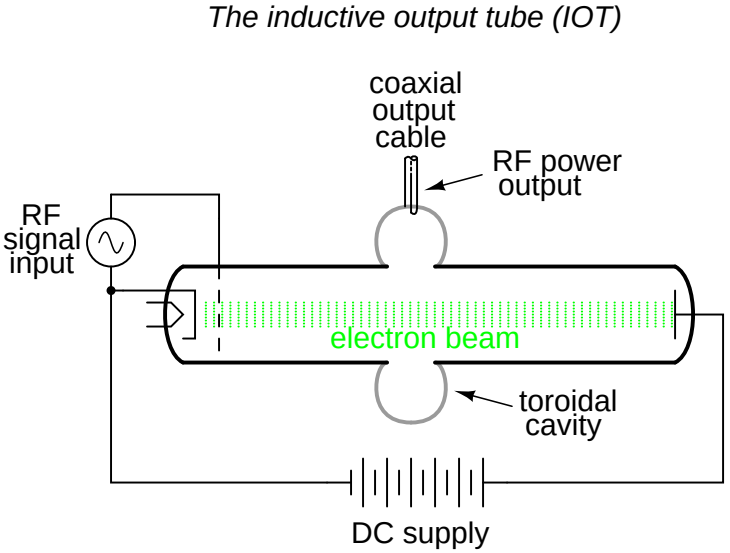


Figure 14.71: *Klystron inductive output tube.*

onate at particular frequencies. When used as such, the device is called a *cavity resonator*. Inductive output tubes use toroid-shaped cavity resonators to maximize the power transfer efficiency between the electron beam and the output cable.

A cavity's resonant frequency may be altered by changing its physical dimensions. To this end, cavities with movable plates, screws, and other mechanical elements for tuning are manufactured to provide coarse resonant frequency adjustment.

If a resonant cavity is made open on one end, it functions as a unidirectional antenna. The following photograph shows a home-made waveguide formed from a tin can, used as an antenna for a 2.4 GHz signal in an "802.11b" computer communication network. The coupling element is a quarter-wave stub: nothing more than a piece of solid copper wire about 1-1/4 inches in length extending from the center of a coaxial cable connector penetrating the side of the can: (Figure 14.72)

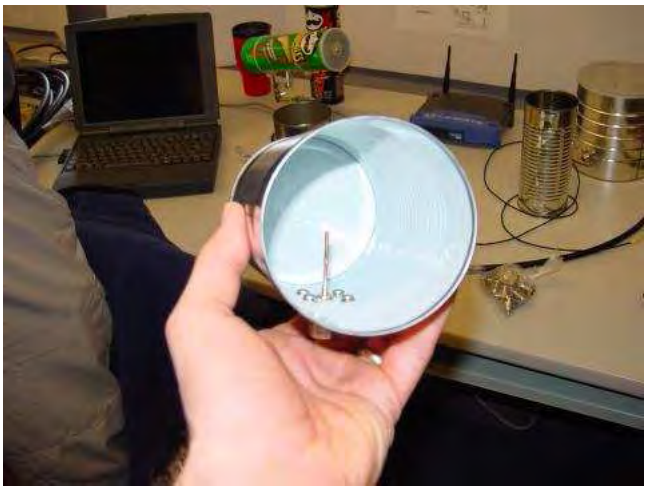


Figure 14.72: *Can-tenna illustrates stub coupling to waveguide.*

A few more tin-can antennae may be seen in the background, one of them a "Pringles" potato chip can. Although this can is of cardboard (paper) construction, its metallic inner lining provides the necessary conductivity to function as a waveguide. Some of the cans in the background still have their plastic lids in place. The plastic, being nonconductive, does not interfere with the RF signal, but functions as a physical barrier to prevent rain, snow, dust, and other physical contaminants from entering the waveguide. "Real" waveguide antennae use similar barriers to physically enclose the tube, yet allow electromagnetic energy to pass unimpeded.

- **REVIEW:**

- *Waveguides* are metal tubes functioning as "conduits" for carrying electromagnetic waves. They are practical only for signals of extremely high frequency, where the signal wavelength approaches the cross-sectional dimensions of the waveguide.

- Wave propagation through a waveguide may be classified into two broad categories: *TE* (Transverse Electric), or *TM* (Transverse Magnetic), depending on which field (electric or magnetic) is perpendicular (transverse) to the direction of wave travel. Wave travel along a standard, two-conductor transmission line is of the *TEM* (Transverse Electric and Magnetic) mode, where both fields are oriented perpendicular to the direction of travel. TEM mode is only possible with two conductors and cannot exist in a waveguide.
- A dead-ended waveguide serving as a resonant element in a microwave circuit is called a *cavity resonator*.
- A cavity resonator with an open end functions as a unidirectional antenna, sending or receiving RF energy to/from the direction of the open end.

Appendix A-1

ABOUT THIS BOOK

A-1.1 Purpose

They say that necessity is the mother of invention. At least in the case of this book, that adage is true. As an industrial electronics instructor, I was forced to use a sub-standard textbook during my first year of teaching. My students were daily frustrated with the many typographical errors and obscure explanations in this book, having spent much time at home struggling to comprehend the material within. Worse yet were the many incorrect answers in the back of the book to selected problems. Adding insult to injury was the $100+ price.

Contacting the publisher proved to be an exercise in futility. Even though the particular text I was using had been in print and in popular use for a couple of years, they claimed my complaint was the first they'd ever heard. My request to review the draft for the next edition of their book was met with disinterest on their part, and I resolved to find an alternative text.

Finding a suitable alternative was more difficult than I had imagined. Sure, there were plenty of texts in print, but the really good books seemed a bit too heavy on the math and the less intimidating books omitted a lot of information I felt was important. Some of the best books were out of print, and those that were still being printed were quite expensive.

It was out of frustration that I compiled *Lessons in Electric Circuits* from notes and ideas I had been collecting for years. My primary goal was to put readable, high-quality information into the hands of my students, but a secondary goal was to make the book as affordable as possible. Over the years, I had experienced the benefit of receiving free instruction and encouragement in my pursuit of learning electronics from many people, including several teachers of mine in elementary and high school. Their selfless assistance played a key role in my own studies, paving the way for a rewarding career and fascinating hobby. If only I could extend the gift of their help by giving to other people what they gave to me . . .

So, I decided to make the book freely available. More than that, I decided to make it "open" following the same development model used in the making of free software (most notably the various UNIX utilities released by the Free Software Foundation, and the Linux operating system, whose fame is growing even as I write). The goal was to copyright the text – so as to protect my authorship – but expressly allow anyone to distribute and/or modify the text to suit their own needs with a minimum of legal encumbrance. This willful and formal revoking of

standard distribution limitations under copyright is whimsically termed *copyleft*. Anyone can "copyleft" their creative work simply by appending a notice to that effect on their work, but several Licenses already exist, covering the fine legal points in great detail.

The first such License I applied to my work was the GPL – General Public License – of the Free Software Foundation (GNU). The GPL, however, is intended to copyleft works of computer software, and although its introductory language is broad enough to cover works of text, its wording is not as clear as it could be for that application. When other, less specific copyleft Licenses began appearing within the free software community, I chose one of them (the Design Science License, or DSL) as the official notice for my project.

In "copylefting" this text, I guaranteed that no instructor would be limited by a text insufficient for their needs, as I had been with error-ridden textbooks from major publishers. I'm sure this book in its initial form will not satisfy everyone, but anyone has the freedom to change it, leveraging my efforts to suit variant and individual requirements. For the beginning student of electronics, learn what you can from this book, editing it as you feel necessary if you come across a useful piece of information. Then, if you pass it on to someone else, you will be giving them something better than what you received. For the instructor or electronics professional, feel free to use this as a reference manual, adding or editing to your heart's content. The only "catch" is this: if you plan to distribute your modified version of this text, you must give credit where credit is due (to me, the original author, and anyone else whose modifications are contained in your version), and you must ensure that whoever you give the text to is aware of their freedom to similarly share and edit the text. The next chapter covers this process in more detail.

It must be mentioned that although I strive to maintain technical accuracy in all of this book's content, the subject matter is broad and harbors many potential dangers. Electricity maims and kills without provocation, and deserves the utmost respect. I strongly encourage experimentation on the part of the reader, but only with circuits powered by small batteries where there is no risk of electric shock, fire, explosion, etc. High-power electric circuits should be left to the care of trained professionals! The Design Science License clearly states that neither I nor any contributors to this book bear any liability for what is done with its contents.

A-1.2 The use of SPICE

One of the best ways to learn how things work is to follow the inductive approach: to observe specific instances of things working and derive general conclusions from those observations. In science education, labwork is the traditionally accepted venue for this type of learning, although in many cases labs are designed by educators to reinforce principles previously learned through lecture or textbook reading, rather than to allow the student to learn on their own through a truly exploratory process.

Having taught myself most of the electronics that I know, I appreciate the sense of frustration students may have in teaching themselves from books. Although electronic components are typically inexpensive, not everyone has the means or opportunity to set up a laboratory in their own homes, and when things go wrong there's no one to ask for help. Most textbooks seem to approach the task of education from a deductive perspective: tell the student how things are supposed to work, then apply those principles to specific instances that the student may or may not be able to explore by themselves. The inductive approach, as useful as it is, is

hard to find in the pages of a book.

However, textbooks don't have to be this way. I discovered this when I started to learn a computer program called SPICE. It is a text-based piece of software intended to model circuits and provide analyses of voltage, current, frequency, etc. Although nothing is quite as good as building real circuits to gain knowledge in electronics, computer simulation is an excellent alternative. In learning how to use this powerful tool, I made a discovery: SPICE could be used within a textbook to present circuit simulations to allow students to "observe"the phenomena for themselves. This way, the readers could learn the concepts inductively (by interpreting SPICE's output) as well as deductively (by interpreting my explanations). Furthermore, in seeing SPICE used over and over again, they should be able to understand how to use it themselves, providing a perfectly safe means of experimentation on their own computers with circuit simulations of their own design.

Another advantage to including computer analyses in a textbook is the empirical verification it adds to the concepts presented. Without demonstrations, the reader is left to take the author's statements on faith, trusting that what has been written is indeed accurate. The problem with faith, of course, is that it is only as good as the authority in which it is placed and the accuracy of interpretation through which it is understood. Authors, like all human beings, are liable to err and/or communicate poorly. With demonstrations, however, the reader can immediately see for themselves that what the author describes is indeed true. Demonstrations also serve to clarify the meaning of the text with concrete examples.

SPICE is introduced early in volume I (DC) of this book series, and hopefully in a gentle enough way that it doesn't create confusion. For those wishing to learn more, a chapter in the Reference volume (volume V) contains an overview of SPICE with many example circuits. There may be more flashy (graphic) circuit simulation programs in existence, but SPICE is free, a virtue complementing the charitable philosophy of this book very nicely.

A-1.3 Acknowledgements

First, I wish to thank my wife, whose patience during those many and long evenings (and weekends!) of typing has been extraordinary.

I also wish to thank those whose open-source software development efforts have made this endeavor all the more affordable and pleasurable. The following is a list of various free computer software used to make this book, and the respective programmers:

- *GNU/Linux* Operating System – Linus Torvalds, Richard Stallman, and a host of others too numerous to mention.
- *Vim* text editor – Bram Moolenaar and others.
- *Xcircuit* drafting program – Tim Edwards.
- *SPICE* circuit simulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- *Nutmeg* post-processor program for SPICE – Wayne Christopher.
- TEX text processing system – Donald Knuth and others.

- *Texinfo* document formatting system – Free Software Foundation.
- LaTeX document formatting system – Leslie Lamport and others.
- *Gimp* image manipulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- *Winscope* signal analysis software – Dr. Constantin Zeldovich. (Free for personal and academic use.)

Appreciation is also extended to Robert L. Boylestad, whose first edition of *Introductory Circuit Analysis* taught me more about electric circuits than any other book. Other important texts in my electronics studies include the 1939 edition of *The "Radio" Handbook*, Bernard Grob's second edition of *Introduction to Electronics I*, and Forrest Mims' original *Engineer's Notebook*.

Thanks to the staff of the Bellingham Antique Radio Museum, who were generous enough to let me terrorize their establishment with my camera and flash unit. Similar thanks to Jim Swartos and KARI radio in Blaine, Washington for a very informative tour of their expanded (50 kW) facilities as well as their vintage transmitter equipment.

I wish to specifically thank Jeffrey Elkner and all those at Yorktown High School for being willing to host my book as part of their Open Book Project, and to make the first effort in contributing to its form and content. Thanks also to David Sweet (website: `(http://www.andamooka.org)`) and Ben Crowell (website: `(http://www.lightandmatter.com)`) for providing encouragement, constructive criticism, and a wider audience for the online version of this book.

Thanks to Michael Stutz for drafting his Design Science License, and to Richard Stallman for pioneering the concept of copyleft.

Last but certainly not least, many thanks to my parents and those teachers of mine who saw in me a desire to learn about electricity, and who kindled that flame into a passion for discovery and intellectual adventure. I honor you by helping others as you have helped me.

Tony Kuphaldt, April 2002

"A candle loses nothing of its light when lighting another"
Kahlil Gibran

Appendix A-2

CONTRIBUTOR LIST

A-2.1 How to contribute to this book

As a copylefted work, this book is open to revision and expansion by any interested parties. The only "catch" is that credit must be given where credit is due. This *is* a copyrighted work: it is *not* in the public domain!

If you wish to cite portions of this book in a work of your own, you must follow the same guidelines as for any other copyrighted work. Here is a sample from the Design Science License:

```
The Work is copyright the Author.  All rights to the Work are reserved
by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License
describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you
to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as
dictated by ''fair use'') quote from it, just as you would any
copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or
execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk,
because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY -- see Section 7 (''NO
WARRANTY'') below.
```

If you wish to modify this book in any way, you must document the nature of those modifications in the "Credits" section along with your name, and ideally, information concerning how you may be contacted. Again, the Design Science License:

```
Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work,
producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work
under the terms described in the section for distribution above,
```

```
provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this
License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or
title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of
the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences
between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is
attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from
the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate
notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature
and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.
```

Given the complexities and security issues surrounding the maintenance of files comprising this book, it is recommended that you submit any revisions or expansions to the original author (Tony R. Kuphaldt). You are, of course, welcome to modify this book directly by editing your own personal copy, but we would all stand to benefit from your contributions if your ideas were incorporated into the online "master copy" where all the world can see it.

A-2.2 Credits

All entries arranged in alphabetical order of surname. Major contributions are listed by individual name with some detail on the nature of the contribution(s), date, contact info, etc. Minor contributions (typo corrections, etc.) are listed by name only for reasons of brevity. Please understand that when I classify a contribution as "minor," it is in no way inferior to the effort or value of a "major" contribution, just smaller in the sense of less text changed. Any and all contributions are gratefully accepted. I am indebted to all those who have given freely of their own knowledge, time, and resources to make this a better book!

A-2.2.1 Tony R. Kuphaldt

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** 1996 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author.
- **Contact at:** `liec0@lycos.com`

A-2.2.2 Jason Starck

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** May-June 2000
- **Nature of contribution:** HTML formatting, some error corrections.
- **Contact at:** `jstarck@yhslug.tux.org`

A-2.2.3 Dennis Crunkilton

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** April 2005 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Spice-Nutmeg plots, gnuplot Fourier plots chapters 6, 7, 8, 9, 10; 04/2005.
- **Nature of contribution:** Broke "Special transformers and applications" section into subsections. Scott-T and LVDT subsections inserted, added to Air core transformers subsections chapter 9; 09/2005.
- **Nature of contribution:** Chapter 13: AC motors; 01/2006.
- **Nature of contribution:** Mini table of contents, all chapters except appedicies; html, latex, ps, pdf; See Devel/tutorial.html; 01/2006.
- **Nature of contribution:** Chapters: all; Incremented edition number to 6 for major format change. Added floating captioned LaTeX figures for more book-like appearance of .pdf; 06/2006. Added Doubly-Fed Induction Generator subsection, CH 13.
- **Contact at:** `liecibiblio(at)gmail(dot)com`

A-2.2.4 Bill Stoddard, www.billsclockworks.com

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** June 2005
- **Nature of contribution:** Granted permission to reprint synchronous westclox motor jpg's, Reprinted by permission of Westclox History at www.clockHistory.com, chapter 13
- **Contact at:** `bill(at)billsclockworks(dot)com`

A-2.2.5 Your name here

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** Month and year of contribution
- **Nature of contribution:** Insert text here, describing how you contributed to the book.
- **Contact at:** `my_email@provider.net`

A-2.2.6 Typo corrections and other "minor" contributions

- **line-allaboutcircuits.com** (June 2005) Typographical error correction in Volumes 1,2,3,5, various chapters, (s/visa-versa/vice versa/).
- *The students of Bellingham Technical College's Instrumentation program*.
- **Bart Anderson** (January 2004) Corrected conceptual and safety errors regarding Tesla coils.
- **Ed Beroset** (May 2002) Suggested better ways to illustrate the meaning of the prefix "poly-" in chapter 10.

- **anonymous** (September 2007) Typo correction in Basic AC chapter, s/Alterantor/Alternator.¡/itemi¿
- **Michiel van Bolhuis** (April 2007), Corrections numerous chapters, images: 12008.eps, 02053.eps, 02056.eps, 02062.eps, 02515.eps, 02257.eps, 02258.eps, 02068.eps, 02074.eps, 02516.eps, 02516.eps, 02263.eps, text: s/(Figure 8.18/(Figure 8.18), s/dividing it my the/dividing it by the/, s/will be drive it/will drive it/, s/because we can to use/because we can use/, s/phase shift makes complicates/phase shift complicates/, s/750 kiloWatt/750 Watt, s/over 50 Kw use/over 50 kW use/, s/in an open ended/in open ended/.
- **Kieran Clancy** (August 2006) Ch 4, s/capcitive/capacitive, s/positive negative/positive or negative.
- **Richard Cooper** (December 2005) Clarification of 02206.eps, 02209.eps 3-phase transformer images. Correction of 02210.eps open-delta image.
- **Colin Creitz** (May 2007) Chapters: several, s/it's/its.
- **Duane Damiano** (February 2003) Pointed out magnetic polarity error in DC generator illustration.
- **Jeff DeFreitas** (March 2006)Improve appearance: replace ”/” and ”/” various chapters.
- **Sean Donner** (January 2005) Typographical error correction in “Series resistor-inductor circuits” section, Chapter 3: REACTANCE AND IMPEDANCE – INDUCTIVE “Voltage and current” section, (If we were restrict ourselves /If we were to restrict ourselves), (Across voltage across the resistor/ Voltage across the resistor); More on the “skin effect” section, (corrected for the skin effect/corrected for the skin effect).

  (January 2005),Typographical error correction in “AC capacitor circuits” section, Chapter 4: REACTANCE AND IMPEDANCE – CAPACITIVE (calculate the phase angle of the inductor's reactive opposition / calculate the phase angle of the capacitor's reactive opposition).

  (January 2005),Typographical error correction in “ Parallel R, L, and C” section, Chapter 5: REACTANCE AND IMPEDANCE – R, L, AND C, (02083.eps, change Vic to Vir above resistor in image)

  (January 2005),Typographical error correction in “Other waveshapes” section, Chapter 7: MIXED-FREQUENCY AC SIGNALS, (which only allow passage current in one direction./ which only allow the passage of current in one direction.)

  (January 2005),Typographical error correction in “What is a filter?” section, Chapter 8: FILTERS, (from others in within mixed-frequency signals. / from others within mixed-frequency signals.), (dropping most of the voltage gets across series resistor / dropping most of the voltage across series resistor)
- **Brendan Finley** (March 2007) Suggested content change in Transformers chapter, clarified text, changed image 02305.eps “Mutual inductance and basic operation” section.
- **Steven Jones** (November 2006) Suggested content addition in Power factor chapter, added graph to “Calculating factor correction” section.

- **Harvey Lew** (February 2003) Typo correction in Basic AC chapter: word “circuit” should have been “circle”.
- **Elmo Mäntynen** (August 2006) Numerous corrections in chapters: Resonance, Polyphase AC Circuits, Power Factor, AC Motors.
- **Jim Palmer** (May 2002) Typo correction on complex number math.
- **Bob Schmid** (April 20027) Suggested we add Inductosyn, added to Ch12“AC metering”.
- **Don Stalkowski** (June 2002) Technical help with PostScript-to-PDF file format conversion.
- **John Symonds** (March 2002) Suggested an improved explanation of the unit “Hertz.”
- **Puddy Tat@allaboutcircuits.com** (May 2007) Pointed out error in Form Factor definition and calculation, 3plcs Ch 1.3 .
- **Joseph Teichman** (June 2002) Suggestion and technical help regarding use of PNG images instead of JPEG.
- **Mark D. Zarella** (April 2002) Suggested an improved explanation for the “average” value of a waveform.
- **machan@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2007) Transformer voltage regulation example error, image: 12105.eps.
- **recca02@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2007) Resonance, Parallel; missing formula, image: 12081.eps.
- **earsintraining@allaboutcircuits.com** (July 2007) Ch 1, “AC Phase” image 02022.png not displayed in html.
- **Dave@allaboutcircuits.com** (Aug 2007) Ch , s/Vary/Very/ .
- **jut@allaboutcircuits.com** (Sept 2007) Ch 1 , s/as a the/as the/, s/eight white/seven white/ .
- **rrgibbs@allaboutcircuits.com** (Oct 2007) Ch 1 , s/100/180 trigonometric sin function table.
- **Devin Bayer** (September 2007) Correction to sml2html.sed, ¡backslash¿} to } in <tabular>.
- **mike@allaboutcircuits.com** (Nov 2007) Ch 13 , Corrected error concerning Tesla’s sale of AC induction motor, Change one million to to $65,000.
- **stacymckenna@allaboutcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Ch 9 , Clarification of light load as refering to less current.
- **Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Ch 2, s/by/be in ”More on AC polarity” section.

- **Timothy Kingman** (Feb 2008) Changed default roman font to newcent.
- **Imranullah Syed** (Feb 2008) Suggested centering of uncaptioned schematics.
- **ShaunManners@allaboutcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Ch 1 , Error in the sign of value in sine table.
- **Miguel Rodriguez Yepes** (June 2008) Ch 5 ,images 12058.png, 1206[0123678].png, s/254.40/145/04 .
- **theamber@allaboutcircuits.com** (June 2008) Ch 9 ,image 02415.png, s/V32/V23, s/V13/V31; LVDT section, s/V2/V3 2-plcs.
- **trunks14@allaboutcircuits.com** (July 2008) Ch 1, s/use use/use .

Appendix A-3

DESIGN SCIENCE LICENSE

A-3.1 0. Preamble

Copyright law gives certain exclusive rights to the author of a work, including the rights to copy, modify and distribute the work (the "reproductive," "adaptative," and "distribution" rights).

The idea of "copyleft" is to willfully revoke the exclusivity of those rights under certain terms and conditions, so that anyone can copy and distribute the work or properly attributed derivative works, while all copies remain under the same terms and conditions as the original.

The intent of this license is to be a general "copyleft" that can be applied to any kind of work that has protection under copyright. This license states those certain conditions under which a work published under its terms may be copied, distributed, and modified.

Whereas "design science" is a strategy for the development of artifacts as a way to reform the environment (not people) and subsequently improve the universal standard of living, this Design Science License was written and deployed as a strategy for promoting the progress of science and art through reform of the environment.

A-3.2 1. Definitions

"License" shall mean this Design Science License. The License applies to any work which contains a notice placed by the work's copyright holder stating that it is published under the terms of this Design Science License.

"Work" shall mean such an aforementioned work. The License also applies to the output of the Work, only if said output constitutes a "derivative work" of the licensed Work as defined by copyright law.

"Object Form" shall mean an executable or performable form of the Work, being an embodiment of the Work in some tangible medium.

"Source Data" shall mean the origin of the Object Form, being the entire, machine-readable, preferred form of the Work for copying and for human modification (usually the language, encoding or format in which composed or recorded by the Author); plus any accompanying files, scripts or other data necessary for installation, configuration or compilation of the Work.

(Examples of "Source Data" include, but are not limited to, the following: if the Work is an image file composed and edited in 'PNG' format, then the original PNG source file is the Source Data; if the Work is an MPEG 1.0 layer 3 digital audio recording made from a 'WAV' format audio file recording of an analog source, then the original WAV file is the Source Data; if the Work was composed as an unformatted plaintext file, then that file is the the Source Data; if the Work was composed in LaTeX, the LaTeX file(s) and any image files and/or custom macros necessary for compilation constitute the Source Data.)

"Author" shall mean the copyright holder(s) of the Work.

The individual licensees are referred to as "you."

A-3.3 2. Rights and copyright

The Work is copyright the Author. All rights to the Work are reserved by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as dictated by "fair use") quote from it, just as you would any copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk, because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY – see Section 7 ("NO WARRANTY") below.

A-3.4 3. Copying and distribution

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present verbatim copies of the entire Source Data of the Work, in any medium, provided that full copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty, where applicable, is conspicuously published on all copies, and a copy of this License is distributed along with the Work.

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present copies of the Object Form of the Work, in any medium, under the terms for distribution of Source Data above and also provided that one of the following additional conditions are met:

(a) The Source Data is included in the same distribution, distributed under the terms of this License; or

(b) A written offer is included with the distribution, valid for at least three years or for as long as the distribution is in print (whichever is longer), with a publicly-accessible address (such as a URL on the Internet) where, for a charge not greater than transportation and media costs, anyone may receive a copy of the Source Data of the Work distributed according to the section above; or

(c) A third party's written offer for obtaining the Source Data at no cost, as described in paragraph (b) above, is included with the distribution. This option is valid only if you are a

non-commercial party, and only if you received the Object Form of the Work along with such an offer.

You may copy and distribute the Work either gratis or for a fee, and if desired, you may offer warranty protection for the Work.

The aggregation of the Work with other works which are not based on the Work – such as but not limited to inclusion in a publication, broadcast, compilation, or other media – does not bring the other works in the scope of the License; nor does such aggregation void the terms of the License for the Work.

A-3.5 4. Modification

Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work, producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work under the terms described in the section for distribution above, provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.

A-3.6 5. No restrictions

You may not impose any further restrictions on the Work or any of its derivative works beyond those restrictions described in this License.

A-3.7 6. Acceptance

Copying, distributing or modifying the Work (including but not limited to sampling from the Work in a new work) indicates acceptance of these terms. If you do not follow the terms of this License, any rights granted to you by the License are null and void. The copying, distribution or modification of the Work outside of the terms described in this License is expressly prohibited by law.

If for any reason, conditions are imposed on you that forbid you to fulfill the conditions of this License, you may not copy, distribute or modify the Work at all.

If any part of this License is found to be in conflict with the law, that part shall be interpreted in its broadest meaning consistent with the law, and no other parts of the License shall be affected.

A-3.8 7. No warranty

THE WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS," AND COMES WITH ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

A-3.9 8. Disclaimer of liability

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS WORK, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

```
[$Id:  dsl.txt,v 1.25 2000/03/14 13:14:14 m Exp m $]
```

Index

.

Fifth Edition, last update July 02, 2007

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume III – Semiconductors

By Tony R. Kuphaldt

Fifth Edition, last update July 02, 2007

PRINTING HISTORY

- First Edition: Printed in June of 2000. Plain-ASCII illustrations for universal computer readability.
- Second Edition: Printed in September of 2000. Illustrations reworked in standard graphic (eps and jpeg) format. Source files translated to *Texinfo* format for easy online and printed publication.
- Third Edition: Printed in January 2002. Source files translated to *SubML* format. SubML is a simple markup language designed to easily convert to other markups like LaTeX, HTML, or DocBook using nothing but search-and-replace substitutions.
- Fourth Edition: Printed in December 2002. New sections added, and error corrections made, since third edition.
- Fith Edition: Printed in July 2007. New sections added, and error corrections made, format change.

Contents

Chapter 1

AMPLIFIERS AND ACTIVE DEVICES

Contents

1.1 From electric to electronic

This third volume of the book series *Lessons In Electric Circuits* makes a departure from the former two in that the transition between *electric* circuits and *electronic* circuits is formally crossed. Electric circuits are connections of conductive wires and other devices whereby the uniform flow of electrons occurs. Electronic circuits add a new dimension to electric circuits in that some means of *control* is exerted over the flow of electrons by another electrical signal, either a voltage or a current.

In and of itself, the control of electron flow is nothing new to the student of electric circuits. Switches control the flow of electrons, as do potentiometers, especially when connected as variable resistors (rheostats). Neither the switch nor the potentiometer should be new to your experience by this point in your study. The threshold marking the transition from electric to electronic, then, is defined by *how* the flow of electrons is controlled rather than whether or not any form of control exists in a circuit. Switches and rheostats control the flow of electrons according to the positioning of a mechanical device, which is actuated by some physical force external to the circuit. In electronics, however, we are dealing with special devices able to control the flow of electrons according to another flow of electrons, or by the application of a static voltage. In other words, in an electronic circuit, *electricity is able to control electricity*.

The historic precursor to the modern electronics era was invented by Thomas Edison in 1880 while developing the electric incandescent lamp. Edison found that a small current passed from the heated lamp filament to a metal plate mounted inside the vacuum envelop. (Figure 1.1 (a)) Today this is known as the "Edison effect". Note that the battery is only necessary to heat the filament. Electrons would still flow if a non-electrical heat source was used.

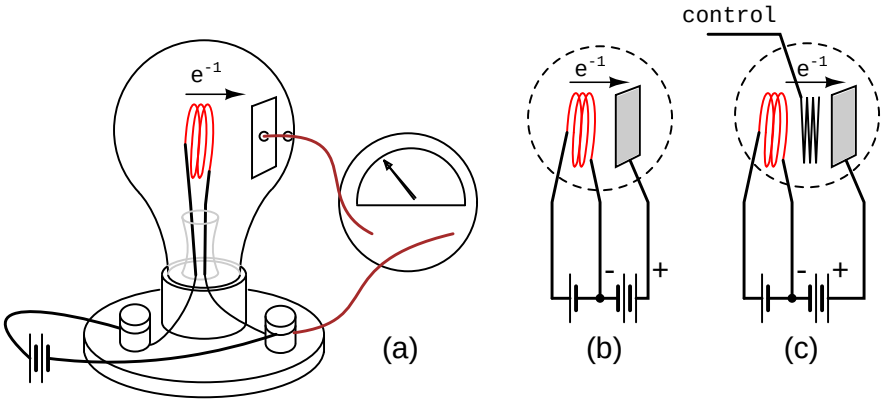


Figure 1.1: *(a) Edison effect, (b) Fleming valve or vacuum diode, (c) DeForest audion triode vacuum tube amplifier.*

By 1904 Marconi Wireless Company adviser John Flemming found that an externally applied current (plate battery) only passed in one direction from filament to plate (Figure 1.1 (b)), but not the reverse direction (not shown). This invention was the vacuum diode, used to convert alternating currents to DC. The addition of a third electrode by Lee DeForest (Figure 1.1 (c)) allowed a small signal to control the larger electron flow from filament to plate.

Historically, the era of electronics began with the invention of the *Audion tube*, a device controlling the flow of an electron stream through a vacuum by the application of a small voltage between two metal structures within the tube. A more detailed summary of so-called *electron tube* or *vacuum tube* technology is available in the last chapter of this volume for those who are interested.

Electronics technology experienced a revolution in 1948 with the invention of the *transistor*. This tiny device achieved approximately the same effect as the Audion tube, but in a vastly smaller amount of space and with less material. Transistors control the flow of elec-

trons through solid *semiconductor* substances rather than through a vacuum, and so transistor technology is often referred to as *solid-state* electronics.

1.2 Active versus passive devices

An *active* device is any type of circuit component with the ability to electrically control electron flow (electricity controlling electricity). In order for a circuit to be properly called *electronic*, it must contain at least one active device. Components incapable of controlling current by means of another electrical signal are called *passive* devices. Resistors, capacitors, inductors, transformers, and even diodes are all considered passive devices. Active devices include, but are not limited to, vacuum tubes, transistors, silicon-controlled rectifiers (SCRs), and TRIACs. A case might be made for the saturable reactor to be defined as an active device, since it is able to control an AC current with a DC current, but I've never heard it referred to as such. The operation of each of these active devices will be explored in later chapters of this volume.

All active devices control the flow of electrons through them. Some active devices allow a voltage to control this current while other active devices allow another current to do the job. Devices utilizing a static voltage as the controlling signal are, not surprisingly, called *voltage-controlled* devices. Devices working on the principle of one current controlling another current are known as *current-controlled* devices. For the record, vacuum tubes are voltage-controlled devices while transistors are made as either voltage-controlled or current controlled types. The first type of transistor successfully demonstrated was a current-controlled device.

1.3 Amplifiers

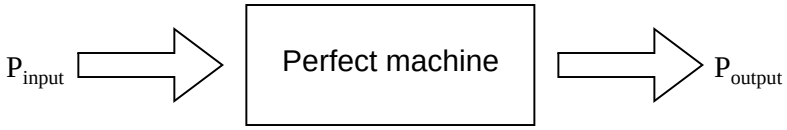
The practical benefit of active devices is their *amplifying* ability. Whether the device in question be voltage-controlled or current-controlled, the amount of power required of the controlling signal is typically far less than the amount of power available in the controlled current. In other words, an active device doesn't just allow electricity to control electricity; it allows a *small* amount of electricity to control a *large* amount of electricity.

Because of this disparity between *controlling* and *controlled* powers, active devices may be employed to govern a large amount of power (controlled) by the application of a small amount of power (controlling). This behavior is known as *amplification*.

It is a fundamental rule of physics that energy can neither be created nor destroyed. Stated formally, this rule is known as the Law of Conservation of Energy, and no exceptions to it have been discovered to date. If this Law is true – and an overwhelming mass of experimental data suggests that it is – then it is impossible to build a device capable of taking a small amount of energy and magically transforming it into a large amount of energy. All machines, electric and electronic circuits included, have an upper efficiency limit of 100 percent. At best, power out equals power in as in Figure 1.2.

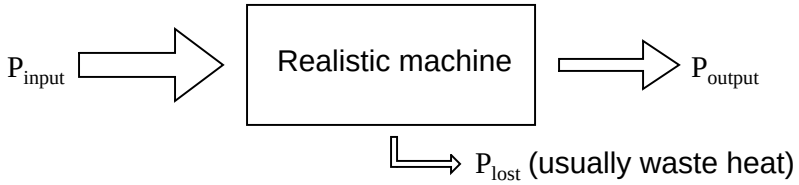
Usually, machines fail even to meet this limit, losing some of their input energy in the form of heat which is radiated into surrounding space and therefore not part of the output energy stream. (Figure 1.3)

Many people have attempted, without success, to design and build machines that output more power than they take in. Not only would such a *perpetual motion* machine prove that the



$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}} = 1 = 100\%$$

Figure 1.2: *The power output of a machine can approach, but never exceed, the power input for 100% efficiency as an upper limit.*



$$\text{Efficiency} = \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}} < 1 = \text{less than } 100\%$$

Figure 1.3: *A realistic machine most often loses some of its input energy as heat in transforming it into the output energy stream.*

Law of Conservation of Energy was not a Law after all, but it would usher in a technological revolution such as the world has never seen, for it could power itself in a circular loop and generate excess power for "free". (Figure 1.4)

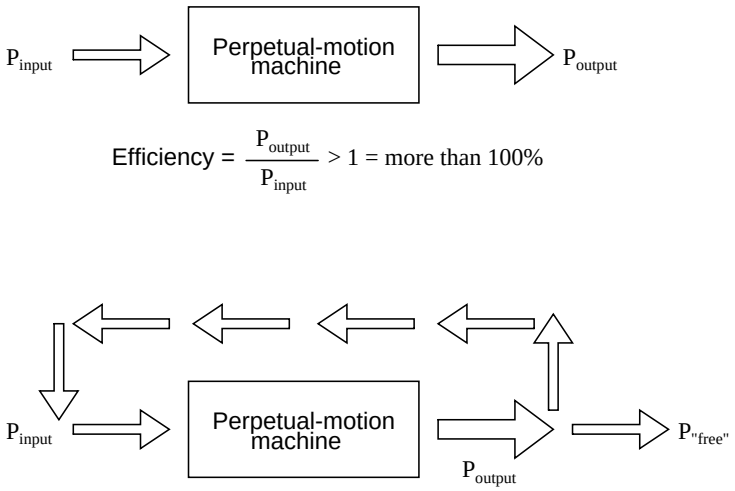


Figure 1.4: *Hypothetical "perpetual motion machine" powers itself?*

Despite much effort and many unscrupulous claims of "free energy" or *over-unity* machines, not one has ever passed the simple test of powering itself with its own energy output and generating energy to spare.

There does exist, however, a class of machines known as *amplifiers*, which are able to take in small-power signals and output signals of much greater power. The key to understanding how amplifiers can exist without violating the Law of Conservation of Energy lies in the behavior of active devices.

Because active devices have the ability to *control* a large amount of electrical power with a small amount of electrical power, they may be arranged in circuit so as to duplicate the form of the input signal power from a larger amount of power supplied by an external power source. The result is a device that appears to magically magnify the power of a small electrical signal (usually an AC voltage waveform) into an identically-shaped waveform of larger magnitude. The Law of Conservation of Energy is not violated because the additional power is supplied by an external source, usually a DC battery or equivalent. The amplifier neither creates nor destroys energy, but merely reshapes it into the waveform desired as shown in Figure 1.5.

In other words, the current-controlling behavior of active devices is employed to *shape* DC power from the external power source into the same waveform as the input signal, producing an output signal of like shape but different (greater) power magnitude. The transistor or other active device within an amplifier merely forms a larger *copy* of the input signal waveform out of the "raw" DC power provided by a battery or other power source.

Amplifiers, like all machines, are limited in efficiency to a maximum of 100 percent. Usually, electronic amplifiers are far less efficient than that, dissipating considerable amounts of energy in the form of waste heat. Because the efficiency of an amplifier is always 100 percent

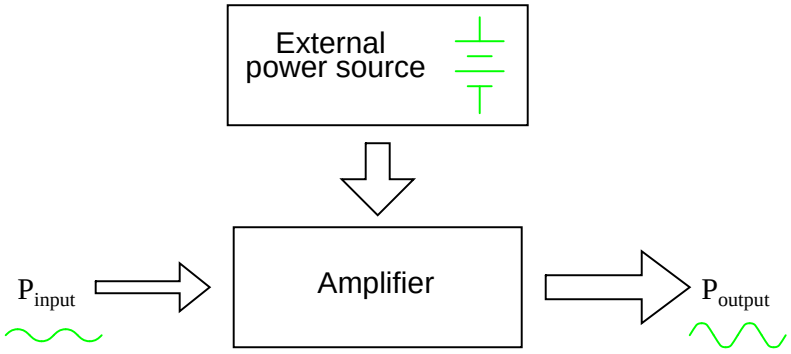


Figure 1.5: *While an amplifier can scale a small input signal to large output, its energy source is an external power supply.*

or less, one can never be made to function as a "perpetual motion" device.

The requirement of an external source of power is common to all types of amplifiers, electrical and non-electrical. A common example of a non-electrical amplification system would be power steering in an automobile, amplifying the power of the driver's arms in turning the steering wheel to move the front wheels of the car. The source of power necessary for the amplification comes from the engine. The active device controlling the driver's "input signal" is a hydraulic valve shuttling fluid power from a pump attached to the engine to a hydraulic piston assisting wheel motion. If the engine stops running, the amplification system fails to amplify the driver's arm power and the car becomes very difficult to turn.

1.4 Amplifier gain

Because amplifiers have the ability to increase the magnitude of an input signal, it is useful to be able to rate an amplifier's amplifying ability in terms of an output/input ratio. The technical term for an amplifier's output/input magnitude ratio is *gain*. As a ratio of equal units (power out / power in, voltage out / voltage in, or current out / current in), gain is naturally a unitless measurement. Mathematically, gain is symbolized by the capital letter "A".

For example, if an amplifier takes in an AC voltage signal measuring 2 volts RMS and outputs an AC voltage of 30 volts RMS, it has an AC voltage gain of 30 divided by 2, or 15:

$$A_V = \frac{V_{output}}{V_{input}}$$

$$A_V = \frac{30\ V}{2\ V}$$

$$A_V = 15$$

Correspondingly, if we know the gain of an amplifier and the magnitude of the input signal, we can calculate the magnitude of the output. For example, if an amplifier with an AC current

gain of 3.5 is given an AC input signal of 28 mA RMS, the output will be 3.5 times 28 mA, or 98 mA:

$$I_{output} = (A_I)(I_{input})$$

$$I_{output} = (3.5)(28\ mA)$$

$$I_{output} = 98\ mA$$

In the last two examples I specifically identified the gains and signal magnitudes in terms of "AC." This was intentional, and illustrates an important concept: electronic amplifiers often respond differently to AC and DC input signals, and may amplify them to different extents. Another way of saying this is that amplifiers often amplify *changes* or *variations* in input signal magnitude (AC) at a different ratio than *steady* input signal magnitudes (DC). The specific reasons for this are too complex to explain at this time, but the fact of the matter is worth mentioning. If gain calculations are to be carried out, it must first be understood what type of signals and gains are being dealt with, AC or DC.

Electrical amplifier gains may be expressed in terms of voltage, current, and/or power, in both AC and DC. A summary of gain definitions is as follows. The triangle-shaped "delta" symbol (Δ) represents *change* in mathematics, so "$\Delta V_{output} / \Delta V_{input}$" means "change in output voltage divided by change in input voltage," or more simply, "AC output voltage divided by AC input voltage":

	DC gains	AC gains
Voltage	$A_V = \frac{V_{output}}{V_{input}}$	$A_V = \frac{\Delta V_{output}}{\Delta V_{input}}$
Current	$A_I = \frac{I_{output}}{I_{input}}$	$A_I = \frac{\Delta I_{output}}{\Delta I_{input}}$
Power	$A_P = \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$ $\quad A_P = \frac{(\Delta V_{output})(\Delta I_{output})}{(\Delta V_{input})(\Delta I_{input})}$ $\quad A_P = (A_V)(A_I)$	

Δ = *"change in . . ."*

If multiple amplifiers are staged, their respective gains form an overall gain equal to the product (multiplication) of the individual gains. (Figure 1.6) If a 1 V signal were applied to the input of the gain of 3 amplifier in Figure 1.6 a 3 V signal out of the first amplifier would be further amplified by a gain of 5 at the second stage yielding 15 V at the final output.

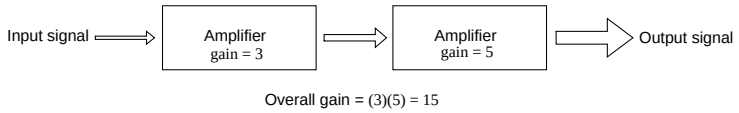


Figure 1.6: *The gain of a chain of cascaded amplifiers is the product of the individual gains.*

1.5 Decibels

In its simplest form, an amplifier's *gain* is a ratio of output over input. Like all ratios, this form of gain is unitless. However, there is an actual unit intended to represent gain, and it is called the *bel*.

As a unit, the bel was actually devised as a convenient way to represent power *loss* in telephone system wiring rather than *gain* in amplifiers. The unit's name is derived from Alexander Graham Bell, the famous Scottish inventor whose work was instrumental in developing telephone systems. Originally, the bel represented the amount of signal power loss due to resistance over a standard length of electrical cable. Now, it is defined in terms of the common (base 10) logarithm of a power ratio (output power divided by input power):

$$A_{P(ratio)} = \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$$

$$A_{P(Bel)} = \log \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$$

Because the bel is a logarithmic unit, it is nonlinear. To give you an idea of how this works, consider the following table of figures, comparing power losses and gains in bels versus simple ratios:

Table: Gain / loss in bels

Loss/gain as a ratio	Loss/gain in bels	Loss/gain as a ratio	Loss/gain in bels
$\frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$	$\log \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$	$\frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$	$\log \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$
1000	3 B	0.1	-1 B
100	2 B	0.01	-2 B
10	1 B	0.001	-3 B
1 (no loss or gain)	0 B	0.0001	-4 B

It was later decided that the bel was too large of a unit to be used directly, and so it became

customary to apply the metric prefix *deci* (meaning 1/10) to it, making it *deci*bels, or dB. Now, the expression "dB" is so common that many people do not realize it is a combination of "deci-" and "-bel," or that there even is such a unit as the "bel." To put this into perspective, here is another table contrasting power gain/loss ratios against decibels:

Table: Gain / loss in decibels

Loss/gain as a ratio	Loss/gain in decibels	Loss/gain as a ratio	Loss/gain in decibels
$\frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$	$10 \log \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$	$\frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$	$10 \log \frac{P_{output}}{P_{input}}$
1000	30 dB	0.1	-10 dB
100	20 dB	0.01	-20 dB
10	10 dB	0.001	-30 dB
1 (no loss or gain)	0 dB	0.0001	-40 dB

As a logarithmic unit, this mode of power gain expression covers a wide range of ratios with a minimal span in figures. It is reasonable to ask, "why did anyone feel the need to invent a *logarithmic* unit for electrical signal power loss in a telephone system?" The answer is related to the dynamics of human hearing, the perceptive intensity of which is logarithmic in nature.

Human hearing is highly nonlinear: in order to double the perceived intensity of a sound, the actual sound power must be multiplied by a factor of ten. Relating telephone signal power loss in terms of the logarithmic "bel" scale makes perfect sense in this context: a power loss of 1 bel translates to a perceived sound loss of 50 percent, or 1/2. A power gain of 1 bel translates to a doubling in the perceived intensity of the sound.

An almost perfect analogy to the bel scale is the Richter scale used to describe earthquake intensity: a 6.0 Richter earthquake is 10 times more powerful than a 5.0 Richter earthquake; a 7.0 Richter earthquake 100 times more powerful than a 5.0 Richter earthquake; a 4.0 Richter earthquake is 1/10 as powerful as a 5.0 Richter earthquake, and so on. The measurement scale for chemical pH is likewise logarithmic, a difference of 1 on the scale is equivalent to a tenfold difference in hydrogen ion concentration of a chemical solution. An advantage of using a logarithmic measurement scale is the tremendous range of expression afforded by a relatively small span of numerical values, and it is this advantage which secures the use of Richter numbers for earthquakes and pH for hydrogen ion activity.

Another reason for the adoption of the bel as a unit for gain is for simple expression of system gains and losses. Consider the last system example (Figure 1.6) where two amplifiers were connected tandem to amplify a signal. The respective gain for each amplifier was expressed as a ratio, and the overall gain for the system was the product (multiplication) of those two ratios:

```
Overall gain = (3)(5) = 15
```

If these figures represented *power* gains, we could directly apply the unit of bels to the task

of representing the gain of each amplifier, and of the system altogether. (Figure 1.7)

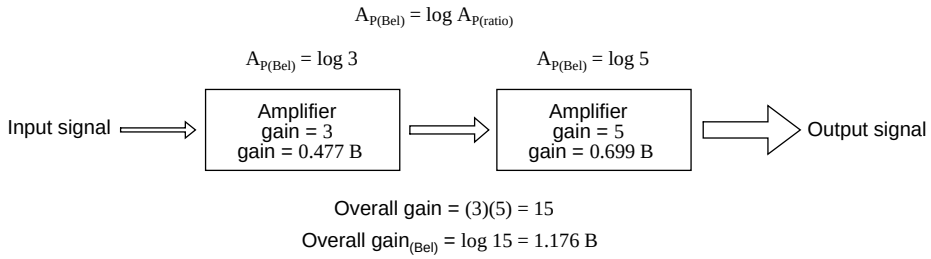


Figure 1.7: *Power gain in bels is additive: 0.477 B + 0.699 B = 1.176 B.*

Close inspection of these gain figures in the unit of "bel" yields a discovery: they're additive. Ratio gain figures are multiplicative for staged amplifiers, but gains expressed in bels *add* rather than *multiply* to equal the overall system gain. The first amplifier with its power gain of 0.477 B adds to the second amplifier's power gain of 0.699 B to make a system with an overall power gain of 1.176 B.

Recalculating for decibels rather than bels, we notice the same phenomenon. (Figure 1.8)

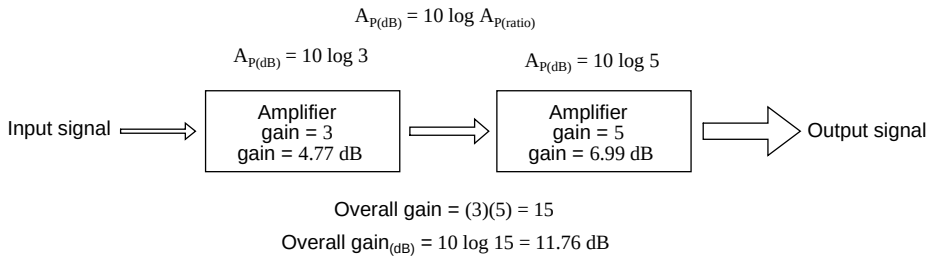


Figure 1.8: *Gain of amplifier stages in decibels is additive: 4.77 dB + 6.99 dB = 11.76 dB.*

To those already familiar with the arithmetic properties of logarithms, this is no surprise. It is an elementary rule of algebra that the antilogarithm of the sum of two numbers' logarithm values equals the product of the two original numbers. In other words, if we take two numbers and determine the logarithm of each, then add those two logarithm figures together, then determine the "antilogarithm" of that sum (elevate the base number of the logarithm – in this case, 10 – to the power of that sum), the result will be the same as if we had simply multiplied the two original numbers together. This algebraic rule forms the heart of a device called a *slide rule*, an analog computer which could, among other things, determine the products and quotients of numbers by addition (adding together physical lengths marked on sliding wood, metal, or plastic scales). Given a table of logarithm figures, the same mathematical trick could be used to perform otherwise complex multiplications and divisions by only having to do additions and subtractions, respectively. With the advent of high-speed, handheld, digital calculator devices, this elegant calculation technique virtually disappeared from popular use. However, it is still important to understand when working with measurement scales that are

logarithmic in nature, such as the bel (decibel) and Richter scales.

When converting a power gain from units of bels or decibels to a unitless ratio, the mathematical inverse function of common logarithms is used: powers of 10, or the *antilog*.

If:

$$A_{P(Bel)} = \log A_{P(ratio)}$$

Then:

$$A_{P(ratio)} = 10^{A_{P(Bel)}}$$

Converting decibels into unitless ratios for power gain is much the same, only a division factor of 10 is included in the exponent term:

If:

$$A_{P(dB)} = 10 \log A_{P(ratio)}$$

Then:

$$A_{P(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{P(dB)}}{10}}$$

Example: Power into an amplifier is 1 watts, the power out is 10 watt. Find the power gain in dB.

$$A_{P(dB)} = 10 \log_{10}(P_O / P_I) = 10 \log_{10} (10 /1) = 10 \log_{10} (10) = 10 (1) = 10 \text{ dB}$$

Example: Find the power gain ratio $A_{P(ratio)} = (P_O / P_I)$ for a 20 dB Power gain.

$$A_{P(dB)} = 20 = 10 \log_{10} A_{P(ratio)}$$

$$20/10 = \log_{10} A_{P(ratio)}$$

$$10^{20/10} = 10^{log_{10}(A_{P(ratio)})}$$

$$100 = A_{P(ratio)} = (P_O / P_I)$$

Because the bel is fundamentally a unit of *power* gain or loss in a system, voltage or current gains and losses don't convert to bels or dB in quite the same way. When using bels or decibels to express a gain other than power, be it voltage or current, we must perform the calculation in terms of how much power gain there would be for that amount of voltage or current gain. For a constant load impedance, a voltage or current gain of 2 equates to a power gain of 4 (2^2); a voltage or current gain of 3 equates to a power gain of 9 (3^2). If we multiply either voltage or current by a given factor, then the power gain incurred by that multiplication will be the square of that factor. This relates back to the forms of Joule's Law where power was calculated from either voltage or current, and resistance:

$$P = \frac{E^2}{R}$$

$$P = I^2R$$

Power is proportional to the *square* of either voltage or current

Thus, when translating a voltage or current gain *ratio* into a respective gain in terms of the bel unit, we must include this exponent in the equation(s):

$$A_{P(Bel)} = \log A_{P(ratio)}$$

$$A_{V(Bel)} = \log A_{V(ratio)}^{2}$$

$$A_{I(Bel)} = \log A_{I(ratio)}^{2}$$

Exponent required

The same exponent requirement holds true when expressing voltage or current gains in terms of decibels:

$$A_{P(dB)} = 10 \log A_{P(ratio)}$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 10 \log A_{V(ratio)}^{2}$$

$$A_{I(dB)} = 10 \log A_{I(ratio)}^{2}$$

Exponent required

However, thanks to another interesting property of logarithms, we can simplify these equations to eliminate the exponent by including the "2" as a *multiplying factor* for the logarithm function. In other words, instead of taking the logarithm of the *square* of the voltage or current gain, we just multiply the voltage or current gain's logarithm figure by 2 and the final result in bels or decibels will be the same:

For bels:

$$A_{V(Bel)} = \log A_{V(ratio)}^{2}$$

. . . is the same as . . .

$$A_{V(Bel)} = 2 \log A_{V(ratio)}$$

$$A_{I(Bel)} = \log A_{I(ratio)}^{2}$$

. . . is the same as . . .

$$A_{I(Bel)} = 2 \log A_{I(ratio)}$$

For decibels:

$$A_{V(dB)} = 10 \log A_{V(ratio)}^{2}$$

. . . is the same as . . .

$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log A_{V(ratio)}$$

$$A_{I(dB)} = 10 \log A_{I(ratio)}^{2}$$

. . . is the same as . . .

$$A_{I(dB)} = 20 \log A_{I(ratio)}$$

The process of converting voltage or current gains from bels or decibels into unitless ratios is much the same as it is for power gains:

If:

$$A_{V(Bel)} = 2 \log A_{V(ratio)} \qquad A_{I(Bel)} = 2 \log A_{I(ratio)}$$

Then:

$$A_{V(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{V(Bel)}}{2}} \qquad A_{I(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{I(Bel)}}{2}}$$

Here are the equations used for converting voltage or current gains in decibels into unitless ratios:

If:

$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log A_{V(ratio)} \qquad A_{I(dB)} = 20 \log A_{I(ratio)}$$

Then:

$$A_{V(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{V(dB)}}{20}} \qquad A_{I(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{I(dB)}}{20}}$$

While the bel is a unit naturally scaled for power, another logarithmic unit has been invented to directly express voltage or current gains/losses, and it is based on the *natural* logarithm rather than the *common* logarithm as bels and decibels are. Called the *neper*, its unit symbol is a lower-case "n."

$$A_{V(ratio)} = \frac{V_{output}}{V_{input}} \qquad A_{I(ratio)} = \frac{I_{output}}{I_{input}}$$

$$A_{V(neper)} = \ln A_{V(ratio)} \qquad A_{I(neper)} = \ln A_{I(ratio)}$$

For better or for worse, neither the neper nor its attenuated cousin, the *decineper*, is popularly used as a unit in American engineering applications.

Example: The voltage into a 600 Ω audio line amplifier is 10 mV, the voltage across a 600 Ω load is 1 V. Find the power gain in dB.

$$A_{(dB)} = 20 \log_{10}(V_O / V_I) = 20 \log_{10} (1 / 0.01) = 20 \log_{10} (100) = 20 (2) = 40 \text{ dB}$$

Example: Find the voltage gain ratio $A_{V(ratio)} = (V_O / V_I)$ for a 20 dB gain amplifier having a 50 Ω input and out impedance.

$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log_{10} A_{V(ratio)}$$

$$20 = 20 \log_{10} A_{V(ratio)}$$

$$20/20 = \log_{10} A_{P(ratio)}$$

$$10^{20/20} = 10^{log_{10}(A_{V(ratio)})}$$

$$10 = A_{V(ratio)} = (V_O / V_I)$$

- **REVIEW:**
- Gains and losses may be expressed in terms of a unitless ratio, or in the unit of bels (B) or decibels (dB). A decibel is literally a *deci*-bel: one-tenth of a bel.

- The bel is fundamentally a unit for expressing *power* gain or loss. To convert a power ratio to either bels or decibels, use one of these equations:

- $A_{P(Bel)} = \log A_{P(ratio)}$ $A_{P(db)} = 10 \log A_{P(ratio)}$

- When using the unit of the bel or decibel to express a *voltage* or *current* ratio, it must be cast in terms of an equivalent *power* ratio. Practically, this means the use of different equations, with a multiplication factor of 2 for the logarithm value corresponding to an exponent of 2 for the voltage or current gain ratio:

$A_{V(Bel)} = 2 \log A_{V(ratio)}$ $A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log A_{V(ratio)}$

- $A_{I(Bel)} = 2 \log A_{I(ratio)}$ $A_{I(dB)} = 20 \log A_{I(ratio)}$

- To convert a decibel gain into a unitless ratio gain, use one of these equations:

$$A_{V(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{V(dB)}}{20}}$$

$$A_{I(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{I(dB)}}{20}}$$

- $A_{P(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{P(dB)}}{10}}$

- A gain (amplification) is expressed as a positive bel or decibel figure. A loss (attenuation) is expressed as a negative bel or decibel figure. Unity gain (no gain or loss; ratio = 1) is expressed as zero bels or zero decibels.

- When calculating overall gain for an amplifier system composed of multiple amplifier stages, individual gain ratios are *multiplied* to find the overall gain ratio. Bel or decibel figures for each amplifier stage, on the other hand, are *added* together to determine overall gain.

1.6 Absolute dB scales

It is also possible to use the decibel as a unit of absolute power, in addition to using it as an expression of power gain or loss. A common example of this is the use of decibels as a measurement of sound pressure intensity. In cases like these, the measurement is made in reference to some standardized power level defined as 0 dB. For measurements of sound pressure, 0 dB is loosely defined as the lower threshold of human hearing, objectively quantified as 1 picowatt of sound power per square meter of area.

A sound measuring 40 dB on the decibel sound scale would be 10^4 times greater than the threshold of hearing. A 100 dB sound would be 10^{10} (ten billion) times greater than the threshold of hearing.

Because the human ear is not equally sensitive to all frequencies of sound, variations of the decibel sound-power scale have been developed to represent physiologically equivalent sound intensities at different frequencies. Some sound intensity instruments were equipped with filter networks to give disproportionate indications across the frequency scale, the intent of

which to better represent the effects of sound on the human body. Three filtered scales became commonly known as the "A," "B," and "C" weighted scales. Decibel sound intensity indications measured through these respective filtering networks were given in units of dBA, dBB, and dBC. Today, the "A-weighted scale" is most commonly used for expressing the equivalent physiological impact on the human body, and is especially useful for rating dangerously loud noise sources.

Another standard-referenced system of power measurement in the unit of decibels has been established for use in telecommunications systems. This is called the *dBm* scale. (Figure 1.9) The reference point, 0 dBm, is defined as 1 milliwatt of electrical power dissipated by a 600 Ω load. According to this scale, 10 dBm is equal to 10 times the reference power, or 10 milliwatts; 20 dBm is equal to 100 times the reference power, or 100 milliwatts. Some AC voltmeters come equipped with a dBm range or scale (sometimes labeled "DB") intended for use in measuring AC signal power across a 600 Ω load. 0 dBm on this scale is, of course, elevated above zero because it represents something greater than 0 (actually, it represents 0.7746 volts across a 600 Ω load, voltage being equal to the square root of power times resistance; the square root of 0.001 multiplied by 600). When viewed on the face of an analog meter movement, this dBm scale appears compressed on the left side and expanded on the right in a manner not unlike a resistance scale, owing to its logarithmic nature.

Radio frequency power measurements for low level signals encountered in radio receivers use dBm measurements referenced to a 50 Ω load. Signal generators for the evaluation of radio receivers may output an adjustable dBm rated signal. The signal level is selected by a device called an attenuator, described in the next section.

Table: Absolute power levels in dBm (decibel milliwatt)

Power in watts	Power in milliwatts	Power in dBm	Power in milliwatts	Power in dBm
1	1000	30 dB	1	0 dB
0.1	100	20 dB	0.1	-10 dB
0.01	10	10 dB	0.01	-20 dB
0.004	4	6 dB	0.001	-30 dB
0.002	2	3 dB	0.0001	-40 dB

Figure 1.9: *Absolute power levels in dBm (decibels referenced to 1 milliwatt.*

An adaptation of the dBm scale for audio signal strength is used in studio recording and broadcast engineering for standardizing volume levels, and is called the *VU* scale. VU meters are frequently seen on electronic recording instruments to indicate whether or not the recorded signal exceeds the maximum signal level limit of the device, where significant distortion will

occur. This "volume indicator" scale is calibrated in according to the dBm scale, but does not directly indicate dBm for any signal other than steady sine-wave tones. The proper unit of measurement for a VU meter is *volume units*.

When relatively large signals are dealt with, and an absolute dB scale would be useful for representing signal level, specialized decibel scales are sometimes used with reference points greater than the 1 mW used in dBm. Such is the case for the *dBW* scale, with a reference point of 0 dBW established at 1 watt. Another absolute measure of power called the *dBk* scale references 0 dBk at 1 kW, or 1000 watts.

- **REVIEW:**
- The unit of the bel or decibel may also be used to represent an absolute measurement of power rather than just a relative gain or loss. For sound power measurements, 0 dB is defined as a standardized reference point of power equal to 1 picowatt per square meter. Another dB scale suited for sound intensity measurements is normalized to the same physiological effects as a 1000 Hz tone, and is called the *dBA* scale. In this system, 0 dBA is defined as any frequency sound having the same physiological equivalence as a 1 picowatt-per-square-meter tone at 1000 Hz.
- An electrical dB scale with an absolute reference point has been made for use in telecommunications systems. Called the *dBm* scale, its reference point of 0 dBm is defined as 1 milliwatt of AC signal power dissipated by a 600 Ω load.
- A *VU* meter reads audio signal level according to the dBm for sine-wave signals. Because its response to signals other than steady sine waves is not the same as true dBm, its unit of measurement is *volume units*.
- dB scales with greater absolute reference points than the dBm scale have been invented for high-power signals. The *dBW* scale has its reference point of 0 dBW defined as 1 watt of power. The *dBk* scale sets 1 kW (1000 watts) as the zero-point reference.

1.7 Attenuators

Attenuators are passive devices. It is convenient to discuss them along with decibels. Attenuators weaken or *attenuate* the high level output of a signal generator, for example, to provide a lower level signal for something like the antenna input of a sensitive radio receiver. (Figure 1.10) The attenuator could be built into the signal generator, or be a stand-alone device. It could provide a fixed or adjustable amount of attenuation. An attenuator section can also provide isolation between a source and a troublesome load.

In the case of a stand-alone attenuator, it must be placed in series between the signal source and the load by breaking open the signal path as shown above. In addition, it must match both the source impedance $\mathbf{Z}_I$ and the load impedance $\mathbf{Z}_O$, while providing a specified amount of attenuation. In this section we will only consider the special, and most common, case where the source and load impedances are equal. Not considered in this section, unequal source and load impedances may be matched by an attenuator section. However, the formulation is more complex.

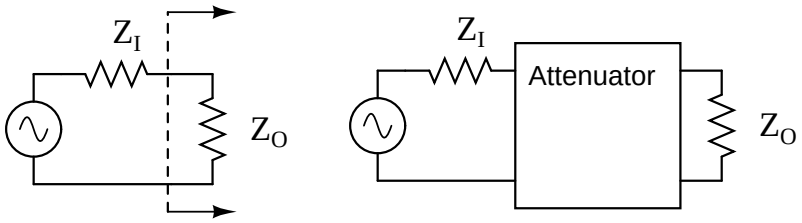


Figure 1.10: *Constant impedance attenuator is matched to source impedance Z_I and load impedance Z_O. For radio frequency equipment Z is 50 Ω.*

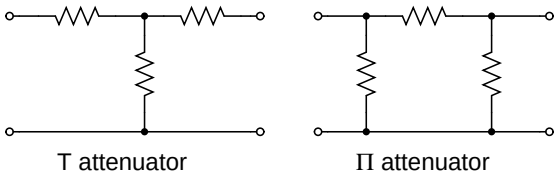


Figure 1.11: *T section and Π section attenuators are common forms.*

Common configurations are the **T** and Π networks shown in Figure 1.11 Multiple attenuator sections may be cascaded when even weaker signals are needed as in Figure 1.19.

1.7.1 Decibels

Voltage ratios, as used in the design of attenuators are often expressed in terms of decibels. The voltage ratio (K below) must be derived from the attenuation in decibels. Power ratios expressed as decibels are additive. For example, a 10 dB attenuator followed by a 6 dB attenuator provides 16dB of attenuation overall.

10 dB + 6 db = 16 dB

Changing sound levels are perceptible roughly proportional to the logarithm of the power ratio (P_I / P_O).

sound level = $\log_{10}(P_I / P_O)$

A change of 1 dB in sound level is barely perceptible to a listener, while 2 db is readily perceptible. An attenuation of 3 dB corresponds to cutting power in half, while a gain of 3 db corresponds to a doubling of the power level. A gain of -3 dB is the same as an attenuation of +3 dB, corresponding to half the original power level.

The power change in decibels in terms of power ratio is:

dB = 10 $\log_{10}(P_I / P_O)$

Assuming that the load R_I at P_I is the same as the load resistor R_O at P_O (R_I = R_O), the decibels may be derived from the voltage ratio (V_I / V_O) or current ratio (I_I / I_O):

$P_O = V_O I_O = V_O^2 / R = I_O^2 R$

$P_I = V_I I_I = V_I^2 / R = I_I^2 R$

$dB = 10 \log_{10}(P_I / P_O) = 10 \log_{10}(V_I^2 / V_O^2) = 20 \log_{10}(V_I/V_O)$

$dB = 10 \log_{10}(P_I / P_O) = 10 \log_{10}(I_I^2 / I_O^2) = 20 \log_{10}(I_I/I_O)$

The two most often used forms of the decibel equation are:

$dB = 10 \log_{10}(P_I / P_O)$ or $dB = 20 \log_{10}(V_I / V_O)$

We will use the latter form, since we need the voltage ratio. Once again, the voltage ratio form of equation is only applicable where the two corresponding resistors are equal. That is, the source and load resistance need to be equal.

Example: Power into an attenuator is 10 watts, the power out is 1 watt. Find the attenuation in dB.

$dB = 10 \log_{10}(P_I / P_O) = 10 \log_{10}(10 /1) = 10 \log_{10}(10) = 10 (1) = 10$ dB

Example: Find the voltage attenuation ratio ($K = (V_I / V_O)$) for a 10 dB attenuator.

$dB = 10 = 20 \log_{10}(V_I / V_O)$

$10/20 = \log_{10}(V_I / V_O)$

$10^{10/20} = 10^{log_{10}(V_I/V_O)}$

$3.16 = (V_I / V_O) = A_{P(ratio)}$

Example: Power into an attenuator is 100 milliwatts, the power out is 1 milliwatt. Find the attenuation in dB.

$dB = 10 \log_{10}(P_I / P_O) = 10 \log_{10}(100 /1) = 10 \log_{10}(100) = 10 (2) = 20$ dB

Example: Find the voltage attenuation ratio ($K = (V_I / V_O)$) for a 20 dB attenuator.

$dB = 20 = 20 \log_{10}(V_I / V_O)$

$10^{20/20} = 10^{log_{10}(V_I/V_O)}$

$10 = (V_I / V_O) = K$

dB = attenuation in decibels

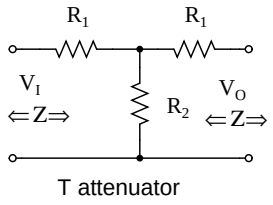
Z = source/load impedance (resistive)

K > 1

$$K = \frac{V_I}{V_O} = 10^{dB/20}$$

$$R_1 = Z\left(\frac{K-1}{K+1}\right)$$

$$R_2 = Z\left(\frac{2K}{K^2-1}\right)$$



T attenuator

Resistors for T-section			
Z = 50			
Attenuation			
dB	K=Vi/Vo	R1	R2
1.0	1.12	2.88	433.34
2.0	1.26	5.73	215.24
3.0	1.41	8.55	141.93
4.0	1.58	11.31	104.83
6.0	2.00	16.61	66.93
10.0	3.16	25.97	35.14
20.0	10.00	40.91	10.10

Figure 1.12: *Formulas for T-section attenuator resistors, given K, the voltage attenuation ratio, and $Z_I = Z_O = 50\ \Omega$.*

1.7.2 T-section attenuator

The T and Π attenuators must be connected to a **Z** source and **Z** load impedance. The **Z**-(arrows) pointing away from the attenuator in the figure below indicate this. The **Z**-(arrows) pointing toward the attenuator indicates that the impedance seen looking into the attenuator with a load Z on the opposite end is Z, Z=50 Ω for our case. This impedance is a constant (50 Ω) with respect to attenuation– impedance does not change when attenuation is changed.

The table in Figure 1.12 lists resistor values for the **T** and Π attenuators to match a 50 Ω source/ load, as is the usual requirement in radio frequency work.

Telephone utility and other audio work often requires matching to 600 Ω. Multiply all **R** values by the ratio (600/50) to correct for 600 Ω matching. Multiplying by 75/50 would convert table values to match a 75 Ω source and load.

The amount of attenuation is customarily specified in dB (decibels). Though, we need the voltage (or current) ratio **K** to find the resistor values from equations. See the **dB/20** term in the power of **10** term for computing the voltage ratio **K** from dB, above.

The **T** (and below Π) configurations are most commonly used as they provide bidirectional matching. That is, the attenuator input and output may be swapped end for end and still match the source and load impedances while supplying the same attenuation.

Disconnecting the source and looking in to the right at $\mathbf{V}_I$, we need to see a series parallel combination of $\mathbf{R}_O$, $\mathbf{R}_I$, $\mathbf{R}_O$, and **Z** looking like an equivalent resistance of **Z**, the source/load impedance: (Z is connected to the output.)

$$Z = R_O + (R_2 \text{ ——} (R_1 + Z))$$

For example, substitute the 10 dB values from the 50 Ω attenuator table for $\mathbf{R}_1$ and $\mathbf{R}_2$ as shown in Figure 1.13.

$$Z = 25.97 + (35.14 \text{ ——} (25.97 + 50))$$

$$Z = 25.97 + (35.14 \text{ ——} 75.97\ )$$

$$Z = 25.97 + 24.03 = 50$$

This shows us that we see 50 Ω looking right into the example attenuator (Figure 1.13) with a 50 Ω load.

Replacing the source generator, disconnecting load **Z** at $\mathbf{V}_O$, and looking in to the left, should give us the same equation as above for the impedance at $\mathbf{V}_O$, due to symmetry. Moreover, the three resistors must be values which supply the required attenuation from input to output. This is accomplished by the equations for $\mathbf{R}_1$ and $\mathbf{R}_2$ above as applied to the **T**-attenuator below.

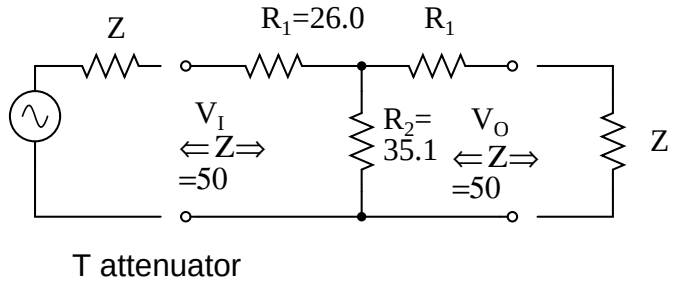


Figure 1.13: *10 dB T-section attenuator for insertion between a 50 Ω source and load.*

1.7.3 PI-section attenuator

The table in Figure 1.14 lists resistor values for the Π attenuator matching a 50 Ω source/ load at some common attenuation levels. The resistors corresponding to other attenuation levels may be calculated from the equations.

dB = attenuation in decibels

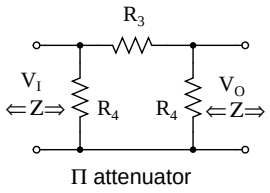
Z = source/load impedance (resistive)

K > 1

$$K = \frac{V_I}{V_O} = 10^{dB/20}$$

$$R_3 = Z\left(\frac{K^2-1}{2K}\right)$$

$$R_4 = Z\left(\frac{K+1}{K-1}\right)$$



Resistors for Π-section			
Z=50.00			
Attenuation			
dB	K=Vi/Vo	R3	R4
1.0	1.12	5.77	869.55
2.0	1.26	11.61	436.21
3.0	1.41	17.61	292.40
4.0	1.58	23.85	220.97
6.0	2.00	37.35	150.48
10.0	3.16	71.15	96.25
20.0	10.00	247.50	61.11

Figure 1.14: *Formulas for* Π*-section attenuator resistors, given K, the voltage attenuation ratio, and* $Z_I = Z_O = 50\ \Omega$.

The above apply to the π-attenuator below.

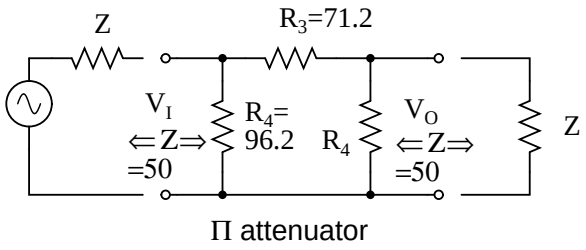


Figure 1.15: *10 dB Π-section attenuator example for matching a 50 Ω source and load.*

What resistor values would be required for both the Π attenuators for 10 dB of attenuation matching a 50 Ω source and load?

The **10 dB** corresponds to a voltage attenuation ratio of **K=3.16** in the next to last line of the above table. Transfer the resistor values in that line to the resistors on the schematic diagram in Figure 1.15.

1.7.4 L-section attenuator

The table in Figure 1.16 lists resistor values for the **L** attenuators to match a 50 Ω source/ load. The table in Figure 1.17 lists resistor values for an alternate form. Note that the resistor values are not the same.

dB = attenuation in decibels

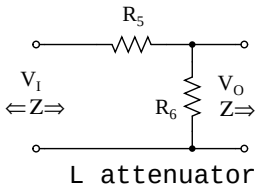
Z = source/load impedance (resistive)

K > 1

$$K = \frac{V_I}{V_O} = 10^{dB/20}$$

$$R_5 = Z\left(\frac{K-1}{K}\right)$$

$$R_6 = \frac{Z}{(K-1)}$$



Resistors for L-section			
Z=,50.00			
Attenuation L			
dB	K=Vi/Vo	R5	R6
1.0	1.12	5.44	409.77
2.0	1.26	10.28	193.11
3.0	1.41	14.60	121.20
4.0	1.58	18.45	85.49
6.0	2.00	24.94	50.24
10.0	3.16	34.19	23.12
20.0	10.00	45.00	5.56

Figure 1.16: *L-section attenuator table for 50 Ω source and load impedance.*

The above apply to the **L** attenuator below.

1.7.5 Bridged T attenuator

The table in Figure 1.18 lists resistor values for the bridged **T** attenuators to match a 50 Ω source and load. The bridged-T attenuator is not often used. Why not?

dB = attenuation in decibels

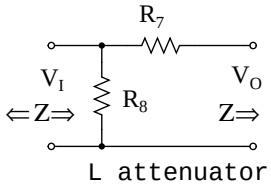
Z = source/load impedance (resistive)

K > 1

$$K = \frac{V_I}{V_O} = 10^{dB/20}$$

$$R_7 = Z(K-1)$$

$$R_8 = Z\left(\frac{K}{K-1}\right)$$



Resistors for L-section			
Z=50.00			
Attenuation			
dB	K=Vi/Vo	R7	R8
1.0	1.12	6.10	459.77
2.0	1.26	12.95	243.11
3.0	1.41	20.63	171.20
4.0	1.58	29.24	135.49
6.0	2.00	49.76	100.24
10.0	3.16	108.11	73.12
20.0	10.00	450.00	55.56

Figure 1.17: *Alternate form L-section attenuator table for 50 Ω source and load impedance.*

dB = attenuation in decibels

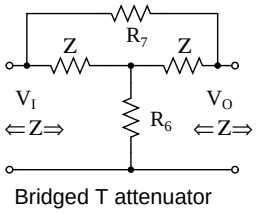
Z = source/load impedance (resistive)

K > 1

$$K = \frac{V_I}{V_O} = 10^{dB/20}$$

$$R_6 = \frac{Z}{(K-1)}$$

$$R_7 = Z(K-1)$$



Resistors for bridged T			
Z=50.00			
Attenuation			
dB	K=Vi/Vo	R7	R6
1.0	1.12	6.10	409.77
2.0	1.26	12.95	193.11
3.0	1.41	20.63	121.20
4.0	1.58	29.24	85.49
6.0	2.00	49.76	50.24
10.0	3.16	108.11	23.12
20.0	10.00	450.00	5.56

Figure 1.18: *Formulas and abbreviated table for bridged-T attenuator section, Z = 50 Ω.*

1.7.6 Cascaded sections

Attenuator sections can be cascaded as in Figure 1.19 for more attenuation than may be available from a single section. For example two 10 db attenuators may be cascaded to provide 20 dB of attenuation, the dB values being additive. The voltage attenuation ratio **K** or $\mathbf{V}_I/\mathbf{V}_O$ for a 10 dB attenuator section is 3.16. The voltage attenuation ratio for the two cascaded sections is the product of the two **K**s or 3.16x3.16=10 for the two cascaded sections.

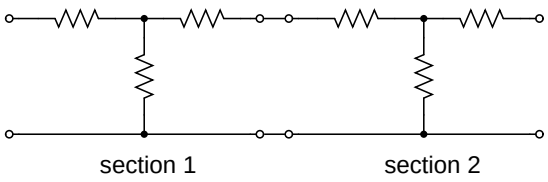


Figure 1.19: *Cascaded attenuator sections: dB attenuation is additive.*

Variable attenuation can be provided in discrete steps by a switched attenuator. The example Figure 1.20, shown in the 0 dB position, is capable of 0 through 7 dB of attenuation by additive switching of none, one or more sections.

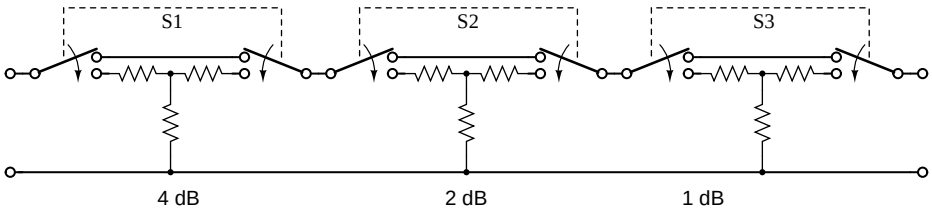


Figure 1.20: *Switched attenuator: attenuation is variable in discrete steps.*

The typical multi section attenuator has more sections than the above figure shows. The addition of a 3 or 8 dB section above enables the unit to cover to 10 dB and beyond. Lower signal levels are achieved by the addition of 10 dB and 20 dB sections, or a binary multiple 16 dB section.

1.7.7 RF attenuators

For radio frequency (RF) work (<1000 Mhz), the individual sections must be mounted in shielded compartments to thwart capacitive coupling if lower signal levels are to be achieved at the highest frequencies. The individual sections of the switched attenuators in the previous section are mounted in shielded sections. Additional measures may be taken to extend the frequency range to beyond 1000 Mhz. This involves construction from special shaped lead-less resistive elements.

A coaxial T-section attenuator consisting of resistive rods and a resistive disk is shown in Figure 1.21. This construction is usable to a few gigahertz. The coaxial Π version would have one resistive rod between two resistive disks in the coaxial line as in Figure 1.22.

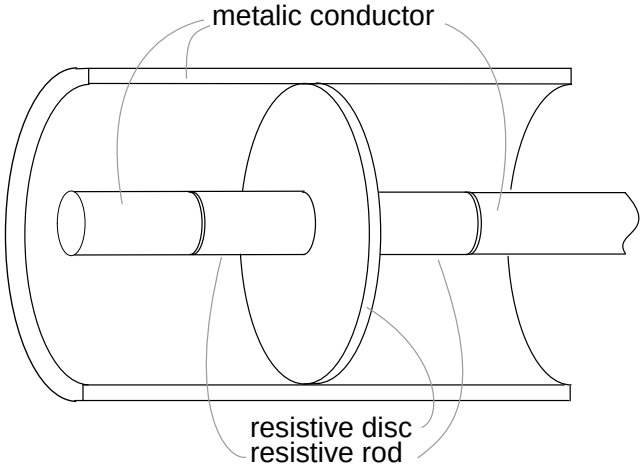


Figure 1.21: *Coaxial T-attenuator for radio frequency work.*

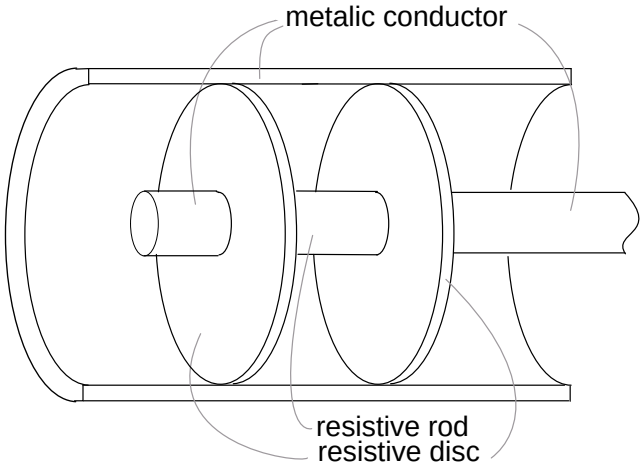


Figure 1.22: *Coaxial* Π*-attenuator for radio frequency work.*

RF connectors, not shown, are attached to the ends of the above T and Π attenuators. The connectors allow individual attenuators to be cascaded, in addition to connecting between a source and load. For example, a 10 dB attenuator may be placed between a troublesome signal source and an expensive spectrum analyzer input. Even though we may not need the attenuation, the expensive test equipment is protected from the source by attenuating any overvoltage.

Summary: Attenuators

- An *attenuator* reduces an input signal to a lower level.
- The amount of attenuation is specified in *decibels* (dB). Decibel values are additive for cascaded attenuator sections.
- dB from power ratio: $dB = 10 \log_{10}(P_I / P_O)$
- dB from voltage ratio: $dB = 20 \log_{10}(V_I / V_O)$
- *T* and Π section attenuators are the most common circuit configurations.

Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Colin Barnard (November 2003): Correction regarding Alexander Graham Bell's country of origin (Scotland, not the United States).

Chapter 2

SOLID-STATE DEVICE THEORY

Contents

2.1 Introduction

This chapter will cover the physics behind the operation of semiconductor devices and show how these principles are applied in several different types of semiconductor devices. Subsequent chapters will deal primarily with the practical aspects of these devices in circuits and omit theory as much as possible.

2.2 Quantum physics

"I think it is safe to say that no one understands quantum mechanics."

Physicist Richard P. Feynman

To say that the invention of semiconductor devices was a revolution would not be an exaggeration. Not only was this an impressive technological accomplishment, but it paved the way for developments that would indelibly alter modern society. Semiconductor devices made possible miniaturized electronics, including computers, certain types of medical diagnostic and treatment equipment, and popular telecommunication devices, to name a few applications of this technology.

But behind this revolution in technology stands an even greater revolution in general science: the field of *quantum physics*. Without this leap in understanding the natural world, the development of semiconductor devices (and more advanced electronic devices still under development) would never have been possible. Quantum physics is an incredibly complicated realm of science. This chapter is but a brief overview. When scientists of Feynman's caliber say that "no one understands [it]," you can be sure it is a complex subject. Without a basic understanding of quantum physics, or at least an understanding of the scientific discoveries that led to its formulation, though, it is impossible to understand how and why semiconductor electronic devices function. Most introductory electronics textbooks I've read try to explain semiconductors in terms of "classical" physics, resulting in more confusion than comprehension.

Many of us have seen diagrams of atoms that look something like Figure 2.1.

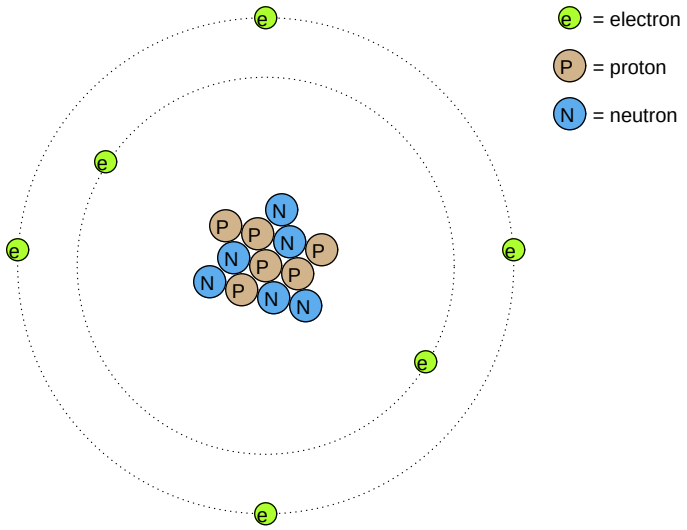


Figure 2.1: *Rutherford atom: negative electrons orbit a small positive nucleus.*

Tiny particles of matter called *protons* and *neutrons* make up the center of the atom; *electrons* orbit like planets around a star. The nucleus carries a positive electrical charge, owing to

the presence of protons (the neutrons have no electrical charge whatsoever), while the atom's balancing negative charge resides in the orbiting electrons. The negative electrons are attracted to the positive protons just as planets are gravitationally attracted by the Sun, yet the orbits are stable because of the electrons' motion. We owe this popular model of the atom to the work of Ernest Rutherford, who around the year 1911 experimentally determined that atoms' positive charges were concentrated in a tiny, dense core rather than being spread evenly about the diameter as was proposed by an earlier researcher, J.J. Thompson.

Rutherford's scattering experiment involved bombarding a thin gold foil with positively charged alpha particles as in Figure 2.2. Young graduate students H. Geiger and E. Marsden experienced unexpected results. A few Alpha particles were deflected at large angles. A few Alpha particles were back-scattering, recoiling at nearly 180^o. Most of the particles passed through the gold foil undeflected, indicating that the foil was mostly empty space. The fact that a few alpha particles experienced large deflections indicated the presence of a miniscule positively charged nucleus.

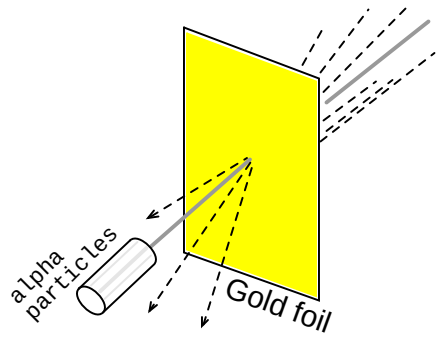


Figure 2.2: *Rutherford scattering: a beam of alpha particles is scattered by a thin gold foil.*

Although Rutherford's atomic model accounted for experimental data better than Thompson's, it still wasn't perfect. Further attempts at defining atomic structure were undertaken, and these efforts helped pave the way for the bizarre discoveries of quantum physics. Today our understanding of the atom is quite a bit more complex. Nevertheless, despite the revolution of quantum physics and its contribution to our understanding of atomic structure, Rutherford's solar-system picture of the atom embedded itself in the popular consciousness to such a degree that it persists in some areas of study even when inappropriate.

Consider this short description of electrons in an atom, taken from a popular electronics textbook:

> *Orbiting negative electrons are therefore attracted toward the positive nucleus, which leads us to the question of why the electrons do not fly into the atom's nucleus. The answer is that the orbiting electrons remain in their stable orbit because of two equal but opposite forces. The centrifugal outward force exerted on the electrons because of the orbit counteracts the attractive inward force (centripetal) trying to pull the electrons toward the nucleus because of the unlike charges.*

In keeping with the Rutherford model, this author casts the electrons as solid chunks of matter engaged in circular orbits, their inward attraction to the oppositely charged nucleus balanced by their motion. The reference to "centrifugal force" is technically incorrect (even for orbiting planets), but is easily forgiven because of its popular acceptance: in reality, there is no such thing as a force pushing *any* orbiting body *away* from its center of orbit. It seems that way because a body's inertia tends to keep it traveling in a straight line, and since an orbit is a constant deviation (acceleration) from straight-line travel, there is constant inertial opposition to whatever force is attracting the body toward the orbit center (centripetal), be it gravity, electrostatic attraction, or even the tension of a mechanical link.

The real problem with this explanation, however, is the idea of electrons traveling in circular orbits in the first place. It is a verifiable fact that accelerating electric charges emit electromagnetic radiation, and this fact was known even in Rutherford's time. Since orbiting motion is a form of acceleration (the orbiting object in constant acceleration away from normal, straight-line motion), electrons in an orbiting state should be throwing off radiation like mud from a spinning tire. Electrons accelerated around circular paths in particle accelerators called *synchrotrons* are known to do this, and the result is called *synchrotron radiation*. If electrons were losing energy in this way, their orbits would eventually decay, resulting in collisions with the positively charged nucleus. Nevertheless, this doesn't ordinarily happen within atoms. Indeed, electron "orbits" are remarkably stable over a wide range of conditions.

Furthermore, experiments with "excited" atoms demonstrated that electromagnetic energy emitted by an atom only occurs at certain, definite frequencies. Atoms that are "excited" by outside influences such as light are known to absorb that energy and return it as electromagnetic waves of specific frequencies, like a tuning fork that rings at a fixed pitch no matter how it is struck. When the light emitted by an excited atom is divided into its constituent frequencies (colors) by a prism, distinct lines of color appear in the spectrum, the pattern of spectral lines being unique to that element. This phenomenon is commonly used to identify atomic elements, and even measure the proportions of each element in a compound or chemical mixture. According to Rutherford's solar-system atomic model (regarding electrons as chunks of matter free to orbit at any radius) and the laws of classical physics, excited atoms should return energy over a virtually limitless range of frequencies rather than a select few. In other words, if Rutherford's model were correct, there would be no "tuning fork" effect, and the light spectrum emitted by any atom would appear as a continuous band of colors rather than as a few distinct lines.

A pioneering researcher by the name of Niels Bohr attempted to improve upon Rutherford's model after studying in Rutherford's laboratory for several months in 1912. Trying to harmonize the findings of other physicists (most notably, Max Planck and Albert Einstein), Bohr suggested that each electron had a certain, specific amount of energy, and that their orbits were *quantized* such that each may occupy certain places around the nucleus, as marbles fixed in circular tracks around the nucleus rather than the free-ranging satellites each were formerly imagined to be. (Figure 2.3) In deference to the laws of electromagnetics and accelerating charges, Bohr alluded to these "orbits" as *stationary states* to escape the implication that they were in motion.

Although Bohr's ambitious attempt at re-framing the structure of the atom in terms that agreed closer to experimental results was a milestone in physics, it was not complete. His mathematical analysis produced better predictions of experimental events than analyses belonging to previous models, but there were still some unanswered questions about *why* elec-

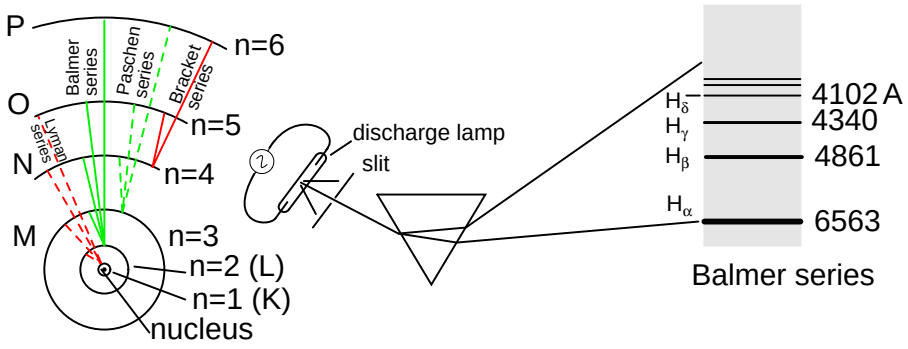


Figure 2.3: *Bohr hydrogen atom (with orbits drawn to scale) only allows electrons to inhabit discrete orbitals. Electrons falling from n=3,4,5, or 6 to n=2 accounts for Balmer series of spectral lines.*

trons should behave in such strange ways. The assertion that electrons existed in stationary, quantized states around the nucleus accounted for experimental data better than Rutherford's model, but he had no idea what would force electrons to manifest those particular states. The answer to that question had to come from another physicist, Louis de Broglie, about a decade later.

De Broglie proposed that electrons, as photons (particles of light) manifested both particle-like and wave-like properties. Building on this proposal, he suggested that an analysis of orbiting electrons from a wave perspective rather than a particle perspective might make more sense of their quantized nature. Indeed, another breakthrough in understanding was reached.

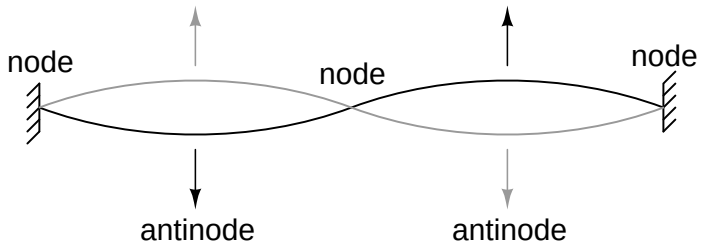


Figure 2.4: *String vibrating at resonant frequency between two fixed points forms* ***standing wave****.*

The atom according to de Broglie consisted of electrons existing as *standing waves*, a phenomenon well known to physicists in a variety of forms. As the plucked string of a musical instrument (Figure 2.4) vibrating at a resonant frequency, with "nodes" and "antinodes" at stable positions along its length. De Broglie envisioned electrons around atoms standing as waves bent around a circle as in Figure 2.5.

Electrons only could exist in certain, definite "orbits" around the nucleus because those were the only distances where the wave ends would match. In any other radius, the wave

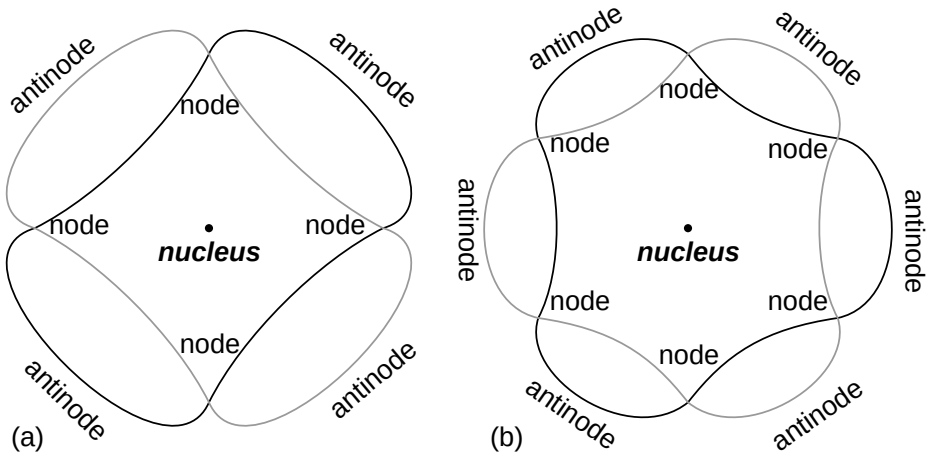


Figure 2.5: *"Orbiting" electron as standing wave around the nucleus, (a) two cycles per orbit, (b) three cycles per orbit.*

should destructively interfere with itself and thus cease to exist.

De Broglie's hypothesis gave both mathematical support and a convenient physical analogy to account for the quantized states of electrons within an atom, but his atomic model was still incomplete. Within a few years, though, physicists Werner Heisenberg and Erwin Schrodinger, working independently of each other, built upon de Broglie's concept of a matter-wave duality to create more mathematically rigorous models of subatomic particles.

This theoretical advance from de Broglie's primitive standing wave model to Heisenberg's matrix and Schrodinger's differential equation models was given the name *quantum mechanics*, and it introduced a rather shocking characteristic to the world of subatomic particles: the trait of probability, or uncertainty. According to the new quantum theory, it was impossible to determine the exact position *and* exact momentum of a particle at the same time. The popular explanations of this "uncertainty principle" was that it was a measurement error usually caused by the process of measurement (i.e. by attempting to precisely measure the position of an electron, you interfere with its momentum and thus cannot know what it was before the position measurement was taken, and vice versa). The startling implication of quantum mechanics is that particles do not actually have precise positions *and* momenta, but rather balance the two quantities in a such way that their combined uncertainties never diminish below a certain minimum value.

This form of "uncertainty" relationship exists in areas other than quantum mechanics. As discussed in the "Mixed-Frequency AC Signals" chapter in volume II of this book series, there is a mutually exclusive relationship between the certainty of a waveform's time-domain data and its frequency-domain data. In simple terms, the more precisely we know its constituent frequency(ies), the less precisely we know its amplitude in time, and vice versa. To quote myself:

> *A waveform of infinite duration (infinite number of cycles) can be analyzed with absolute precision, but the less cycles available to the computer for analysis, the less*

precise the analysis. . . . The fewer times that a wave cycles, the less certain its frequency is. Taking this concept to its logical extreme, a short pulse – a waveform that doesn't even complete a cycle – actually has no frequency, but rather acts as an infinite range of frequencies. This principle is common to all wave-based phenomena, not just AC voltages and currents.

In order to precisely determine the amplitude of a varying signal, we must sample it over a very narrow span of time. However, doing this limits our view of the wave's frequency. Conversely, to determine a wave's frequency with great precision, we must sample it over many cycles, which means we lose view of its amplitude at any given moment. Thus, we cannot simultaneously know the instantaneous amplitude and the overall frequency of any wave with unlimited precision. Stranger yet, this uncertainty is much more than observer imprecision; it resides in the very nature of the wave. It is not as though it would be possible, given the proper technology, to obtain precise measurements of *both* instantaneous amplitude and frequency at once. Quite literally, a wave cannot have both a precise, instantaneous amplitude, and a precise frequency at the same time.

The minimum uncertainty of a particle's position and momentum expressed by Heisenberg and Schrodinger has nothing to do with limitation in measurement; rather it is an intrinsic property of the particle's matter-wave dual nature. Electrons, therefore, do not really exist in their "orbits" as precisely defined bits of matter, or even as precisely defined waveshapes, but rather as "clouds" – the technical term is *wavefunction* – of probability distribution, as if each electron were "spread" or "smeared" over a range of positions and momenta.

This radical view of electrons as imprecise clouds at first seems to contradict the original principle of quantized electron states: that electrons exist in discrete, defined "orbits" around atomic nuclei. It was, after all, this discovery that led to the formation of quantum theory to explain it. How odd it seems that a theory developed to explain the discrete behavior of electrons ends up declaring that electrons exist as "clouds" rather than as discrete pieces of matter. However, the quantized behavior of electrons does not depend on electrons having definite position and momentum values, but rather on other properties called *quantum numbers*. In essence, quantum mechanics dispenses with commonly held notions of absolute position and absolute momentum, and replaces them with absolute notions of a sort having no analogue in common experience.

Even though electrons are known to exist in ethereal, "cloud-like" forms of distributed probability rather than as discrete chunks of matter, those "clouds" have other characteristics that *are* discrete. Any electron in an atom can be described by four numerical measures (the previously mentioned *quantum numbers*), called the **Principal**, **Angular Momentum**, **Magnetic**, and **Spin** numbers. The following is a synopsis of each of these numbers' meanings:

Principal Quantum Number: Symbolized by the letter **n**, this number describes the *shell* that an electron resides in. An electron "shell" is a region of space around an atom's nucleus that electrons are allowed to exist in, corresponding to the stable "standing wave" patterns of de Broglie and Bohr. Electrons may "leap" from shell to shell, but cannot exist *between* the shell regions.

The principle quantum number must be a positive integer (a whole number, greater than or equal to 1). In other words, principle quantum number for an electron cannot be 1/2 or -3. These integer values were not arrived at arbitrarily, but rather through experimental evidence of light spectra: the differing frequencies (colors) of light emitted by excited hydrogen

atoms follow a sequence mathematically dependent on specific, integer values as illustrated in Figure 2.3.

Each shell has the capacity to hold multiple electrons. An analogy for electron shells is the concentric rows of seats of an amphitheater. Just as a person seated in an amphitheater must choose a row to sit in (one cannot sit *between* rows), electrons must "choose" a particular shell to "sit" in. As in amphitheater rows, the outermost shells are hold more electrons than the inner shells. Also, electrons tend to seek the lowest available shell, as people in an amphitheater seek the closest seat to the center stage. The higher the shell number, the greater the energy of the electrons in it.

The maximum number of electrons that any shell may hold is described by the equation $2n^2$, where "n" is the principle quantum number. Thus, the first shell (n=1) can hold 2 electrons; the second shell (n=2) 8 electrons, and the third shell (n=3) 18 electrons. (Figure 2.6)

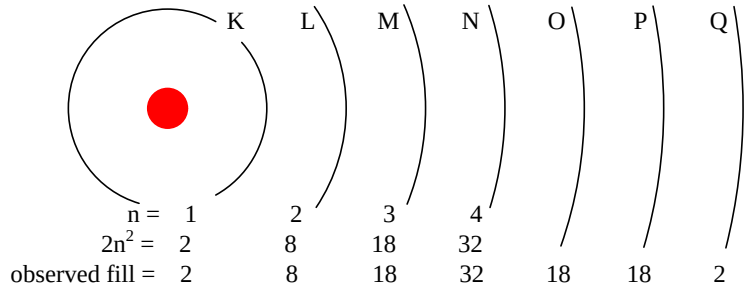


Figure 2.6: *Principal quantum number n and maximum number of electrons per shell both predicted by 2(n^2), and observed. Orbitals not to scale.*

Electron shells in an atom were formerly designated by letter rather than by number. The first shell (n=1) was labeled K, the second shell (n=2) L, the third shell (n=3) M, the fourth shell (n=4) N, the fifth shell (n=5) O, the sixth shell (n=6) P, and the seventh shell (n=7) Q.

Angular Momentum Quantum Number: A shell, is composed of *subshells*. One might be inclined to think of subshells as simple subdivisions of shells, as lanes dividing a road. The subshells are much stranger. Subshells are regions of space where electron "clouds" are allowed to exist, and different subshells actually have different *shapes*. The first subshell is shaped like a sphere, (Figure 2.7(s)) which makes sense when visualized as a cloud of electrons surrounding the atomic nucleus in three dimensions. The second subshell, however, resembles a dumbbell, comprised of two "lobes" joined together at a single point near the atom's center. (Figure 2.7(p)) The third subshell typically resembles a set of four "lobes" clustered around the atom's nucleus. These subshell shapes are reminiscent of graphical depictions of radio antenna signal strength, with bulbous lobe-shaped regions extending from the antenna in various directions. (Figure 2.7(d))

Valid angular momentum quantum numbers are positive integers like principal quantum numbers, but also include zero. These quantum numbers for electrons are symbolized by the letter **l**. The number of subshells in a shell is equal to the shell's principal quantum number. Thus, the first shell (n=1) has one subshell, numbered 0; the second shell (n=2) has two subshells, numbered 0 and 1; the third shell (n=3) has three subshells, numbered 0, 1, and 2.

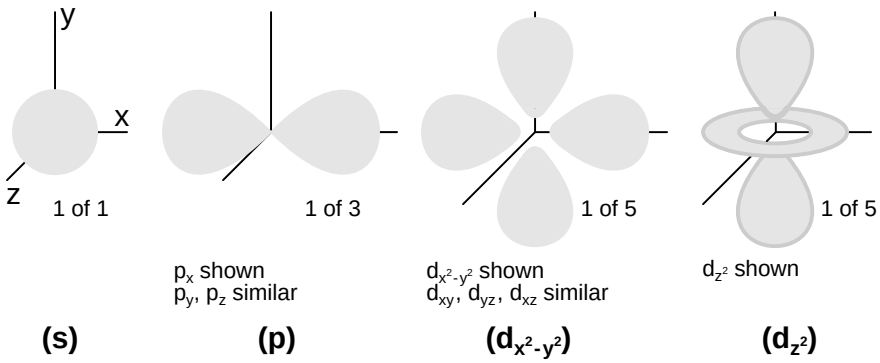


Figure 2.7: *Orbitals: (s) Three fold symmetry. (p) Shown: s_x, one of three possible orientations (s_x, s_y, s_z), about their respective axes. (d) Shown: $d_x{}^2$-$y_{}{}^2$ similar to d_{xz}, d_{yz}, d_{xz}. Shown: $d_z{}^2$. Possible d-orbital orientations: five.*

An older convention for subshell description used letters rather than numbers. In this notation, the first subshell (l=0) was designated *s*, the second subshell (l=1) designated *p*, the third subshell (l=2) designated *d*, and the fourth subshell (l=3) designated *f*. The letters come from the words *sharp*, *principal* (not to be confused with the principal quantum number, *n*), *diffuse*, and *fundamental*. You will still see this notational convention in many periodic tables, used to designate the electron configuration of the atoms' outermost, or *valence*, shells. (Figure 2.8)

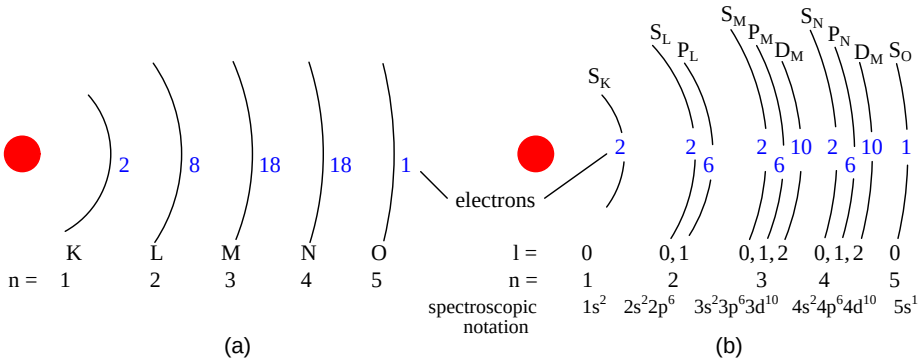


Figure 2.8: *(a) Bohr representation of Silver atom, (b) Subshell representation of Ag with division of shells into subshells (angular quantum number l). This diagram implies nothing about the actual position of electrons, but represents energy levels.*

Magnetic Quantum Number: The magnetic quantum number for an electron classifies which orientation its subshell shape is pointed. The "lobes" for subshells point in multiple directions. These different orientations are called *orbitals*. For the first subshell (s; l=0), which resembles a sphere pointing in no "direction", so there is only one orbital. For the second (p; l=1) subshell in each shell, which resembles dumbbells point in three possible directions.

Think of three dumbbells intersecting at the origin, each oriented along a different axis in a three-axis coordinate space.

Valid numerical values for this quantum number consist of integers ranging from -l to l, and are symbolized as $\mathbf{m}_l$ in atomic physics and $\mathbf{l}_z$ in nuclear physics. To calculate the number of orbitals in any given subshell, double the subshell number and add 1 (2l + 1). For example, the first subshell (l=0) in any shell contains a single orbital, numbered 0; the second subshell (l=1) in any shell contains three orbitals, numbered -1, 0, and 1; the third subshell (l=2) contains five orbitals, numbered -2, -1, 0, 1, and 2; and so on.

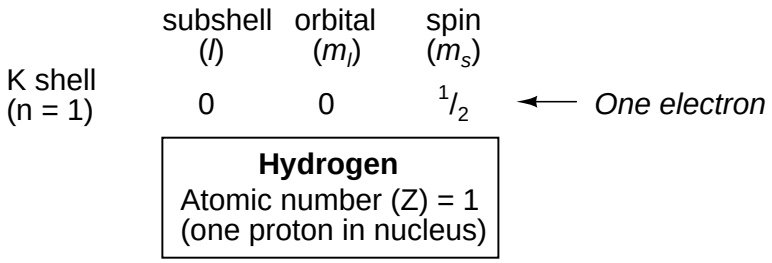
Like principal quantum numbers, the magnetic quantum number arose directly from experimental evidence: The Zeeman effect, the division of spectral lines by exposing an ionized gas to a magnetic field, hence the name "magnetic" quantum number.

Spin Quantum Number: Like the magnetic quantum number, this property of atomic electrons was discovered through experimentation. Close observation of spectral lines revealed that each line was actually a pair of very closely-spaced lines, and this so-called *fine structure* was hypothesized to result from each electron "spinning" on an axis as if a planet. Electrons with different "spins" would give off slightly different frequencies of light when excited. The name "spin" was assigned to this quantum number. The concept of a spinning electron is now obsolete, being better suited to the (incorrect) view of electrons as discrete chunks of matter rather than as "clouds"; but, the name remains.

Spin quantum numbers are symbolized as $\mathbf{m}_s$ in atomic physics and $\mathbf{s}_z$ in nuclear physics. For each orbital in each subshell in each shell, there may be two electrons, one with a spin of +1/2 and the other with a spin of -1/2.

The physicist Wolfgang Pauli developed a principle explaining the ordering of electrons in an atom according to these quantum numbers. His principle, called the *Pauli exclusion principle*, states that no two electrons in the same atom may occupy the exact same quantum states. That is, each electron in an atom has a unique set of quantum numbers. This limits the number of electrons that may occupy any given orbital, subshell, and shell.

Shown here is the electron arrangement for a hydrogen atom:

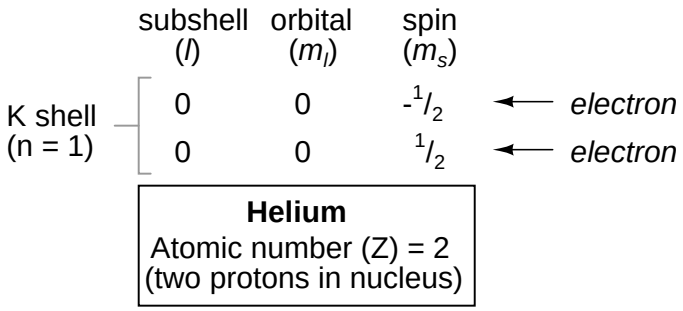


Spectroscopic notation: $1s^1$

With one proton in the nucleus, it takes one electron to electrostatically balance the atom (the proton's positive electric charge exactly balanced by the electron's negative electric charge). This one electron resides in the lowest shell (n=1), the first subshell (l=0), in the only orbital (spatial orientation) of that subshell (m_l=0), with a spin value of 1/2. A common method of describing this organization is by listing the electrons according to their shells and subshells

in a convention called *spectroscopic notation*. In this notation, the shell number is shown as an integer, the subshell as a letter (s,p,d,f), and the total number of electrons in the subshell (all orbitals, all spins) as a superscript. Thus, hydrogen, with its lone electron residing in the base level, is described as $1s^1$.

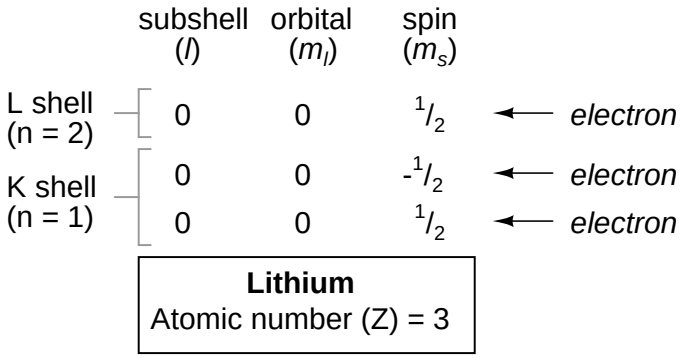
Proceeding to the next atom (in order of atomic number), we have the element helium:



Spectroscopic notation: $1s^2$

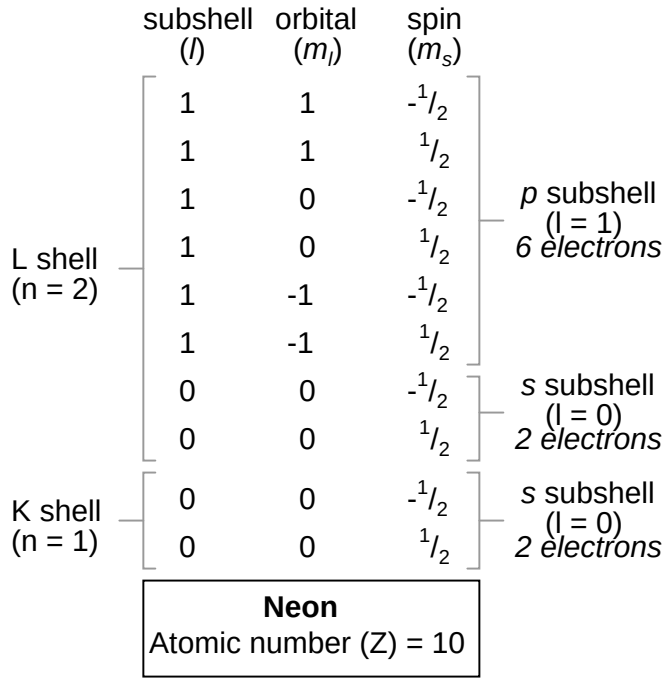
A helium atom has two protons in the nucleus, and this necessitates two electrons to balance the double-positive electric charge. Since two electrons – one with spin=1/2 and the other with spin=-1/2 – fit into one orbital, the electron configuration of helium requires no additional subshells or shells to hold the second electron.

However, an atom requiring three or more electrons *will* require additional subshells to hold all electrons, since only two electrons will fit into the lowest shell (n=1). Consider the next atom in the sequence of increasing atomic numbers, lithium:



Spectroscopic notation: $1s^2 2s^1$

An atom of lithium uses a fraction of the L shell's (n=2) capacity. This shell actually has a total capacity of eight electrons (maximum shell capacity = $2n^2$ electrons). If we examine the organization of the atom with a completely filled L shell, we will see how all combinations of subshells, orbitals, and spins are occupied by electrons:



Spectroscopic notation: $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$

Often, when the spectroscopic notation is given for an atom, any shells that are completely filled are omitted, and the unfilled, or the highest-level filled shell, is denoted. For example, the element neon (shown in the previous illustration), which has two completely filled shells, may be spectroscopically described simply as $2p^6$ rather than $1s^2 2s^2 2p^6$. Lithium, with its K shell completely filled and a solitary electron in the L shell, may be described simply as $2s^1$ rather than $1s^2 2s^1$.

The omission of completely filled, lower-level shells is not just a notational convenience. It also illustrates a basic principle of chemistry: that the chemical behavior of an element is primarily determined by its unfilled shells. Both hydrogen and lithium have a single electron in their outermost shells ($1s^1$ and $2s^1$, respectively), and this gives the two elements some similar properties. Both are highly reactive, and reactive in much the same way (bonding to similar elements in similar modes). It matters little that lithium has a completely filled K shell underneath its almost-vacant L shell: the unfilled L shell is the shell that determines its chemical behavior.

Elements having completely filled outer shells are classified as *noble*, and are distinguished by almost complete non-reactivity with other elements. These elements used to be classified as *inert*, when it was thought that these were completely unreactive, but are now known to form compounds with other elements under specific conditions.

Since elements with identical electron configurations in their outermost shell(s) exhibit similar chemical properties, Dimitri Mendeleev organized the different elements in a table accordingly. Such a table is known as a *periodic table of the elements*, and modern tables follow

this general form in Figure 2.9.

Dmitri Mendeleev, a Russian chemist, was the first to develop a periodic table of the elements. Although Mendeleev organized his table according to atomic mass rather than atomic number, and produced a table that was not quite as useful as modern periodic tables, his development stands as an excellent example of scientific proof. Seeing the patterns of periodicity (similar chemical properties according to atomic mass), Mendeleev hypothesized that all elements should fit into this ordered scheme. When he discovered "empty" spots in the table, he followed the logic of the existing order and hypothesized the existence of heretofore undiscovered elements. The subsequent discovery of those elements granted scientific legitimacy to Mendeleev's hypothesis, furthering future discoveries, and leading to the form of the periodic table we use today.

This is how science *should* work: hypotheses followed to their logical conclusions, and accepted, modified, or rejected as determined by the agreement of experimental data to those conclusions. Any fool may formulate a hypothesis after-the-fact to explain existing experimental data, and many do. What sets a scientific hypothesis apart from *post hoc* speculation is the prediction of future experimental data yet uncollected, and the possibility of disproof as a result of that data. To boldly follow a hypothesis to its logical conclusion(s) and dare to predict the results of future experiments is not a dogmatic leap of faith, but rather a public test of that hypothesis, open to challenge from anyone able to produce contradictory data. In other words, scientific hypotheses are always"risky" due to the claim to predict the results of experiments not yet conducted, and are therefore susceptible to disproof if the experiments do not turn out as predicted. Thus, if a hypothesis successfully predicts the results of repeated experiments, its falsehood is disproven.

Quantum mechanics, first as a hypothesis and later as a theory, has proven to be extremely successful in predicting experimental results, hence the high degree of scientific confidence placed in it. Many scientists have reason to believe that it is an incomplete theory, though, as its predictions hold true more at micro physical scales than at *macro*scopic dimensions, but nevertheless it is a tremendously useful theory in explaining and predicting the interactions of particles and atoms.

As you have already seen in this chapter, quantum physics is essential in describing and predicting many different phenomena. In the next section, we will see its significance in the electrical conductivity of solid substances, including semiconductors. Simply put, nothing in chemistry or solid-state physics makes sense within the popular theoretical framework of electrons existing as discrete chunks of matter, whirling around atomic nuclei like miniature satellites. It is when electrons are viewed as "wavefunctions" existing in definite, discrete states that the regular and periodic behavior of matter can be explained.

- **REVIEW:**

- Electrons in atoms exist in "clouds" of distributed probability, not as discrete chunks of matter orbiting the nucleus like tiny satellites, as common illustrations of atoms show.

- Individual electrons around an atomic nucleus seek unique "states," described by four *quantum numbers*: the *Principal Quantum Number*, known as the *shell*; the *Angular Momentum Quantum Number*, known as the *subshell*; the *Magnetic Quantum Number*, describing the *orbital* (subshell orientation); and the *Spin Quantum Number*, or simply

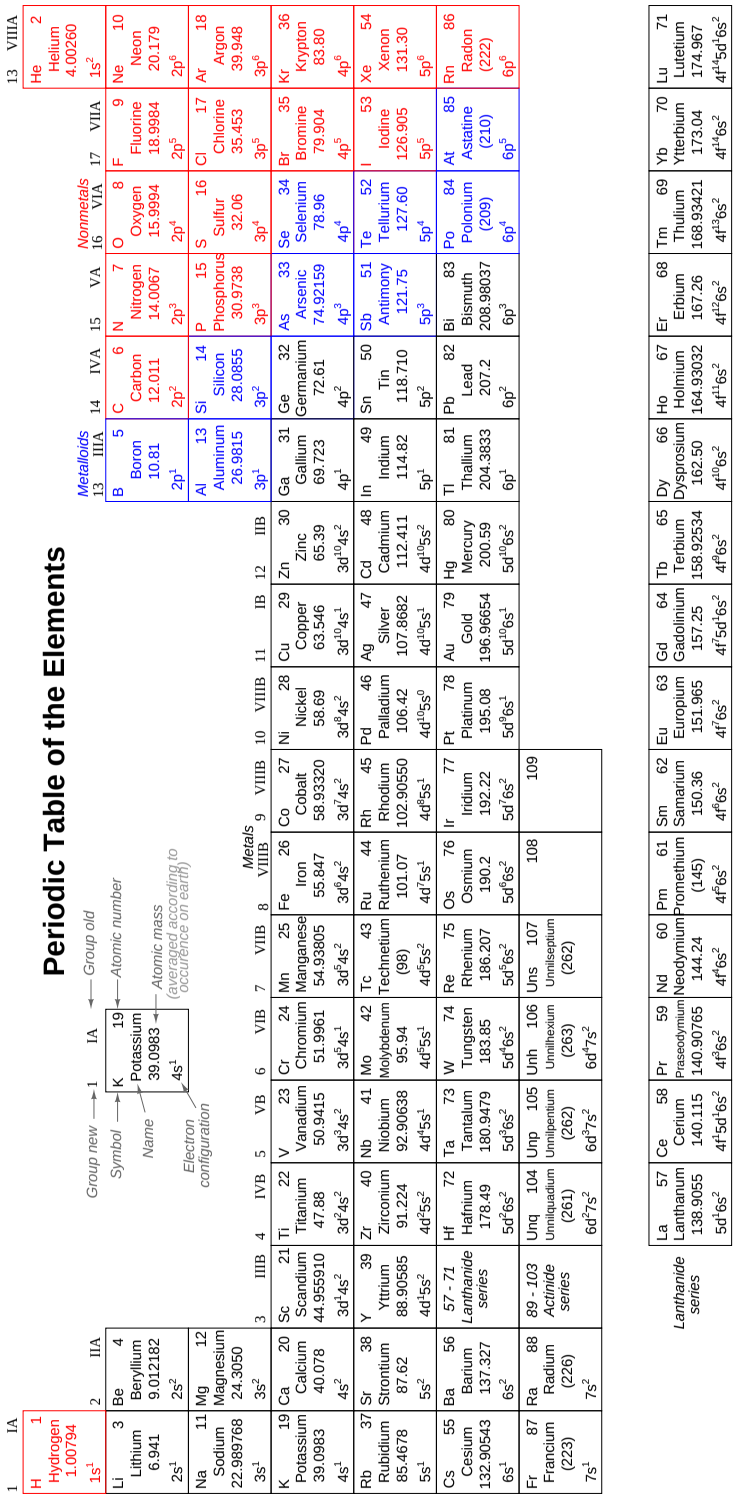


Figure 2.9: *Periodic table of chemical elements.*

spin. These states are quantized, meaning that no "in-between" conditions exist for an electron other than those states that fit into the quantum numbering scheme.

- The *Principal Quantum Number* (n) describes the basic level or shell that an electron resides in. The larger this number, the greater radius the electron cloud has from the atom's nucleus, and the greater that electron's energy. Principal quantum numbers are whole numbers (positive integers).
- The *Angular Momentum Quantum Number* (l) describes the shape of the electron cloud within a particular shell or level, and is often known as the "subshell." There are as many subshells (electron cloud shapes) in any given shell as that shell's principal quantum number. Angular momentum quantum numbers are positive integers beginning at zero and ending at one less than the principal quantum number (n-1).
- The *Magnetic Quantum Number* (m_l) describes which orientation a subshell (electron cloud shape) has. Subshells may assume as many different orientations as 2-times the subshell number (l) plus 1, (2l+1) (E.g. for l=1, ml= -1, 0, 1) and each unique orientation is called an *orbital*. These numbers are integers ranging from the negative value of the subshell number (l) through 0 to the positive value of the subshell number.
- The *Spin Quantum Number* (m_s) describes another property of an electron, and may be a value of +1/2 or -1/2.
- *Pauli's Exclusion Principle* says that no two electrons in an atom may share the exact same set of quantum numbers. Therefore, no more than two electrons may occupy each orbital (spin=1/2 and spin=-1/2), *2l+1* orbitals in every subshell, and n subshells in every shell, and no more.
- *Spectroscopic notation* is a convention for denoting the electron configuration of an atom. Shells are shown as whole numbers, followed by subshell letters (s,p,d,f), with superscripted numbers totaling the number of electrons residing in each respective subshell.
- An atom's chemical behavior is solely determined by the electrons in the unfilled shells. Low-level shells that are completely filled have little or no effect on the chemical bonding characteristics of elements.
- Elements with completely filled electron shells are almost entirely unreactive, and are called *noble* (formerly known as *inert*).

2.3 Valence and Crystal structure

Valence: The electrons in the outer most shell, or valence shell, are known as *valence* electrons. These valence electrons are responsible for the chemical properties of the chemical elements. It is these electrons which participate in chemical reactions with other elements. An over simplified chemistry rule applicable to simple reactions is that atoms try to form a complete outer shell of 8 electrons (two for the L shell). Atoms may give away a few electrons to expose an underlying complete shell. Atoms may accept a few electrons to complete the shell. These two processes form ions from atoms. Atoms may even share electrons among atoms in

an attempt to complete the outer shell. This process forms molecular bonds. That is, atoms associate to form a molecule.

For example group I elements: Li, Na, K, Cu, Ag, and Au have a single valence electron. (Figure 2.10) These elements all have similar chemical properties. These atoms readily give away one electron to react with other elements. The ability to easily give away an electron makes these elements excellent conductors.

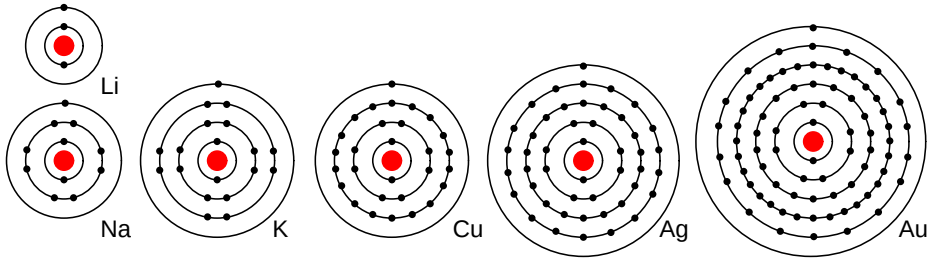


Figure 2.10: *Periodic table group IA elements: Li, Na, and K, and group IB elements: Cu, Ag, and Au have one electron in the outer, or valence, shell, which is readily donated. Inner shell electrons: For n= 1, 2, 3, 4; $2n^2$ = 2, 8, 18, 32.*

Group VIIA elements: Fl, Cl, Br, and I all have 7 electrons in the outer shell. These elements readily accept an electron to fill up the outer shell with a full 8 electrons. (Figure 2.11) If these elements do accept an electron, a negative ion is formed from the neutral atom. These elements which do not give up electrons are insulators.

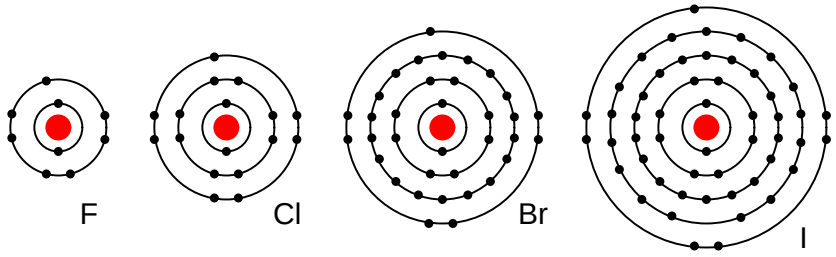


Figure 2.11: *Periodic table group VIIA elements: F, Cl, Br, and I with 7 valence electrons readily accept an electron in reactions with other elements.*

For example, a Cl atom accepts an electron from an Na atom to become a Cl^- ion as shown in Figure 2.12. An *ion* is a charged particle formed from an atom by either donating or accepting an electron. As the Na atom donates an electron, it becomes a Na^+ ion. This is how Na and Cl atoms combine to form NaCl, table salt, which is actually Na^+Cl^-, a pair of ions. The Na^+ and Cl^- carrying opposite charges, attract one other.

Sodium chloride crystallizes in the cubic structure shown in Figure 2.16. This model is not to scale to show the three dimensional structure. The Na^+Cl^- ions are actually packed similar to layers of stacked marbles. The easily drawn cubic crystal structure illustrates that a solid

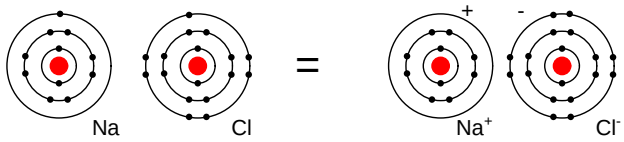


Figure 2.12: *Neutral Sodium atom donates an electron to neutral Chlorine atom forming Na^+ and Cl^- ions.*

crystal may contain charged particles.

Group VIIIA elements: He, Ne, Ar, Kr, Xe all have 8 electrons in the valence shell. (Figure below) That is, the valence shell is complete meaning these elements neither donate nor accept electrons. Nor do they readily participate in chemical reactions since group VIIIA elements do not easily combine with other elements. In recent years chemists have forced Xe and Kr to form a few compounds, however for the purposes of our discussion this is not applicable. These elements are good electrical insulators and are gases at room temperature.

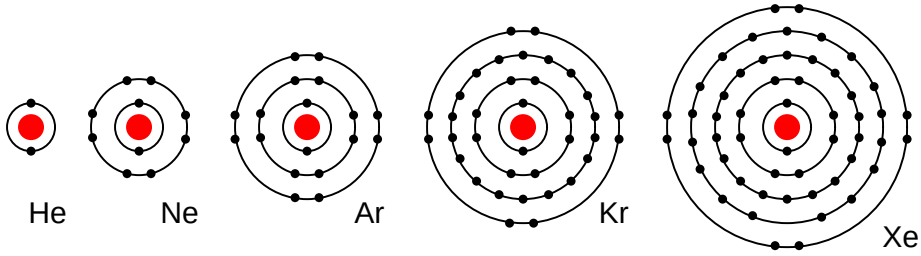


Figure 2.13: *Group VIIIA elements: He, Ne, Ar, Kr, Xe are largely unreactive since the valence shell is complete..*

Group IVA elements: C, Si, Ge, having 4 electrons in the valence shell as shown in Figure 2.14 form compounds by sharing electrons with other elements without forming ions. This shared electron bonding is known as *covalent bonding*. Note that the center atom (and the others by extension) has completed its valence shell by sharing electrons. Note that the figure is a 2-d representation of bonding, which is actually 3-d. It is this group, IVA, that we are interested in for its semiconducting properties.

Crystal structure: Most inorganic substances form their atoms (or ions) into an ordered array known as a *crystal*. The outer electron clouds of atoms interact in an orderly manner. Even metals are composed of crystals at the microscopic level. If a metal sample is given an optical polish, then acid etched, the microscopic *microcrystalline* structure shows as in Figure 2.15. It is also possible to purchase, at considerable expense, metallic single crystal specimens from specialized suppliers. Polishing and etching such a specimen discloses no microcrystalline structure. Practically all industrial metals are polycrystalline. Most modern semiconductors, on the other hand, are single crystal devices. We are primarily interested in monocrystalline structures.

Many metals are soft and easily deformed by the various metal working techniques. The

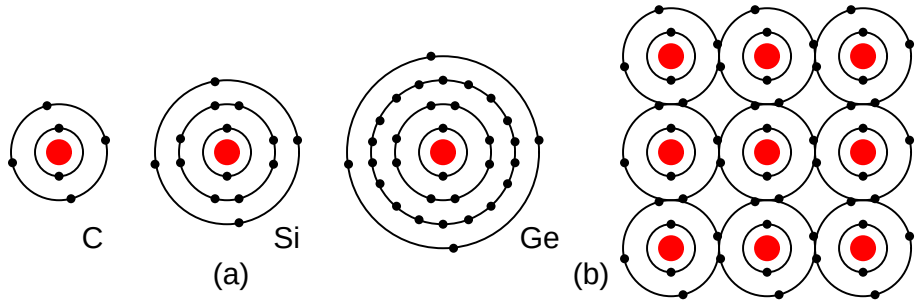


Figure 2.14: *(a) Group IVA elements: C, Si, Ge having 4 electrons in the valence shell, (b) complete the valence shell by sharing electrons with other elements.*

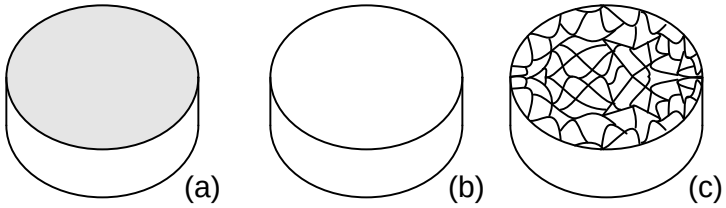


Figure 2.15: *(a) Metal sample, (b) polished, (c) acid etched to show microcrystalline structure.*

microcrystals are deformed in metal working. Also, the valence electrons are free to move about the crystal lattice, and from crystal to crystal. The valence electrons do not belong to any particular atom, but to all atoms.

The rigid crystal structure in Figure 2.16 is composed of a regular repeating pattern of positive Na ions and negative Cl ions. Once the Na and Cl atoms have formed Na^+ and Cl^- ions by transferring an electron from Na to Cl, with no free electrons. Electrons are not free to move about the crystal lattice, a difference compared with a metal. Nor are the ions free. Ions are fixed in place within the crystal structure. Though, the ions are free to move about if the NaCl crystal is dissolved in water. However, the crystal no longer exists. The regular, repeating structure is gone. Evaporation of the water deposits the Na^+ and Cl^- ions in the form of new crystals as the oppositely charged ions attract each other. Ionic materials form crystal structures due to the strong electrostatic attraction of the oppositely charged ions.

Semiconductors in Group IV also form crystals because of the tetrahedral bonding pattern of the s^2p^2 electrons about the atom, sharing electron-pair bonds to four adjacent atoms. (Figure 2.18(a)) More correctly the four outer electrons: two in the s-orbital, (s_z) offset along the z-axis, and two in the p-orbital (p_x and p_y) hybridize to form four sp^3 molecular orbitals. These four electron clouds repel one another to equidistant tetrahedral spacing about the Si atom, attracted by the positive nucleus as shown in Figure 2.17.

Every semiconductor atom, Si, Ge, or C (diamond) is chemically bonded to four other atoms by *covalent bonds*, shared electron bonds. Two electrons may share an orbital if each have opposite spin quantum numbers. Thus, an unpaired electron may share an orbital with an

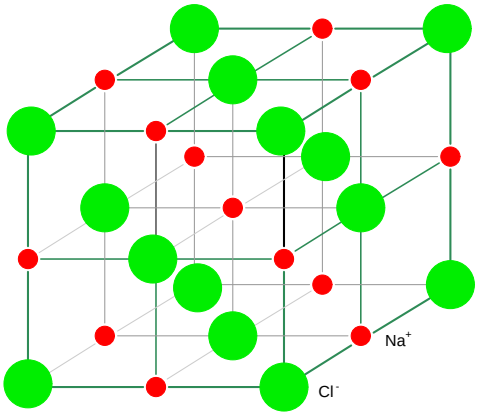


Figure 2.16: *NaCl crystal having a cubic structure.*

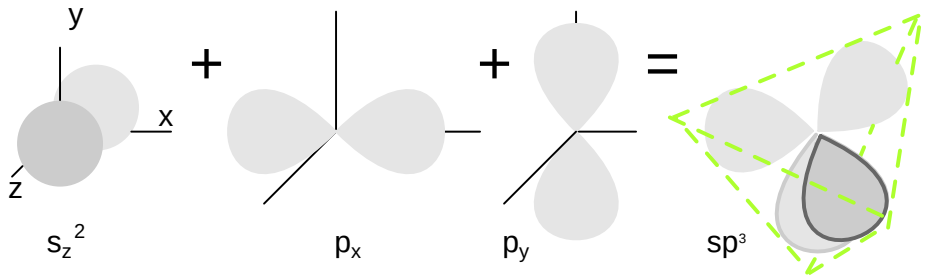


Figure 2.17: *Two s-orbital (s_z) electrons and two p-orbital (s_x and s_y) electrons hybridize, (c) forming four sp^3 molecular orbitals.*

electron from another atom. This corresponds to overlapping Figure 2.18(a) of the electron clouds, or bonding. Figure 2.18 (b) is one fourth of the volume of the diamond crystal structure unit cell shown in Figure 2.19 at the origin. The bonds are particularly strong in diamond, decreasing in strength going down group IV to silicon, and germanium. Silicon and germanium both form crystals with a diamond structure.

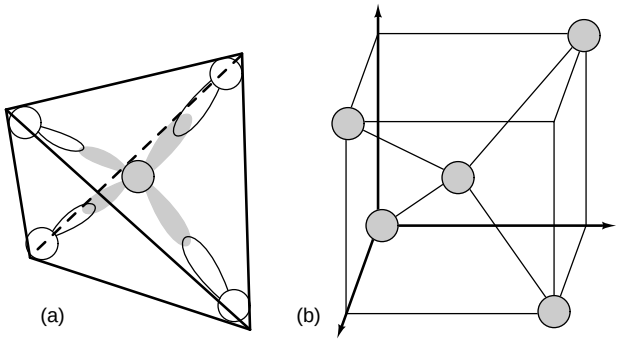


Figure 2.18: *(a) Tetrahedral bonding of Si atom. (b) leads to 1/4 of the cubic unit cell*

The diamond *unit cell*, the basic crystal building block, in Figure 2.19 shows four atoms (dark) bonded to four others within the volume of the cell. This is equivalent to placing one of Figure 2.18(b) at the origin in Figure 2.19, then placing three more on adjacent faces to fill the full cube. Six atoms fall on the middle of each of the six cube faces, showing two bonds. The other two bonds to adjacent cubes were omitted for clarity. Out of eight cube corners, four atoms bond to an atom within the cube. Where are the other four atoms bonded? The other four bond to adjacent cubes of the crystal. Keep in mind that even though four corner atoms show no bonds in the cube, all atoms within the crystal are bonded in one giant molecule. A semiconductor crystal is built up from copies of this unit cell.

The crystal is effectively one molecule. An atom covalent bonds to four others, which in turn bond to four others, and so on. The crystal lattice is relatively stiff resisting deformation. Few electrons free themselves for conduction about the crystal. A property of semiconductors is that once an electron is freed, a positively charged empty space develops which also contributes to conduction.

- **REVIEW**
- Atoms try to form a complete outer, valence, shell of 8-electrons (2-electrons for the innermost shell). Atoms may donate a few to expose an userlying shell of 8, accept a few to complete a shell, or share electrons to complete a shell.
- Atoms often form ordered arrays of ions or atoms in a rigid structure known as a crystal.
- A neutral atom may form a positive ion by donating an electron.
- A neutral atom may form a negative ion by accepting an electron

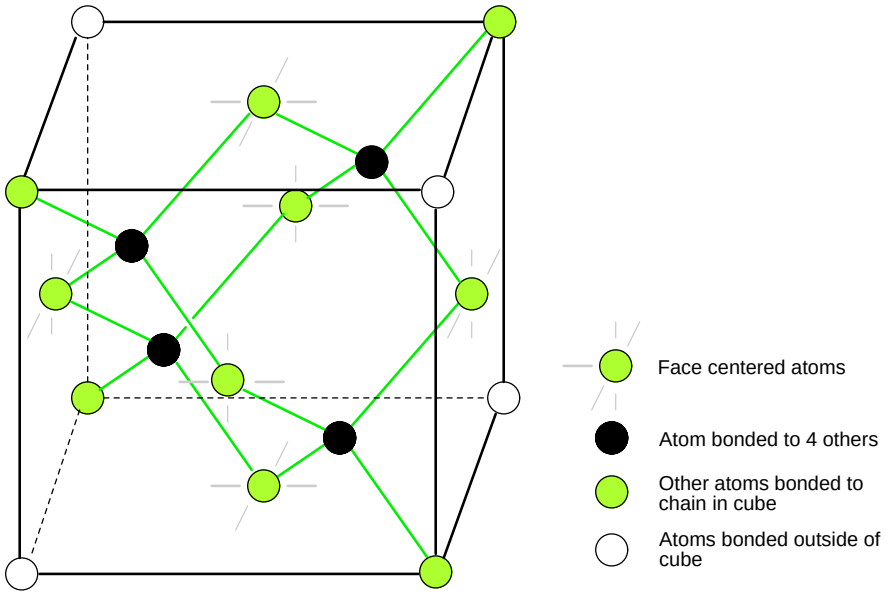


Figure 2.19: *Si, Ge, and C (diamond) form interleaved face centered cube.*

- The group IVA semiconductors: C, Si, Ge crystallize into a diamond structure. Each atom in the crystal is part of a giant molecule, bonding to four other atoms.
- Most semiconductor devices are manufactured from single crystals.

2.4 Band theory of solids

Quantum physics describes the states of electrons in an atom according to the four-fold scheme of *quantum numbers*. The quantum numbers describe the *allowable states* electrons may assume in an atom. To use the analogy of an amphitheater, quantum numbers describe how many rows and seats are available. Individual electrons may be described by the combination of quantum numbers, like a spectator in an amphitheater assigned to a particular row and seat.

Like spectators in an amphitheater moving between seats and rows, electrons may change their statuses, given the presence of available spaces for them to fit, and available energy. Since shell level is closely related to the amount of energy that an electron possesses, “leaps” between shell (and even subshell) levels requires transfers of energy. If an electron is to move into a higher-order shell, it requires that additional energy be given to the electron from an external source. Using the amphitheater analogy, it takes an increase in energy for a person to move into a higher row of seats, because that person must climb to a greater height against the force of gravity. Conversely, an electron “leaping” into a lower shell gives up some of its energy, like a person jumping down into a lower row of seats, the expended energy manifesting as heat and sound.

Not all "leaps" are equal. Leaps between different shells require a substantial exchange of energy, but leaps between subshells or between orbitals require lesser exchanges.

When atoms combine to form substances, the outermost shells, subshells, and orbitals merge, providing a greater number of available energy levels for electrons to assume. When large numbers of atoms are close to each other, these available energy levels form a nearly continuous *band* wherein electrons may move as illustrated in Figure 2.20

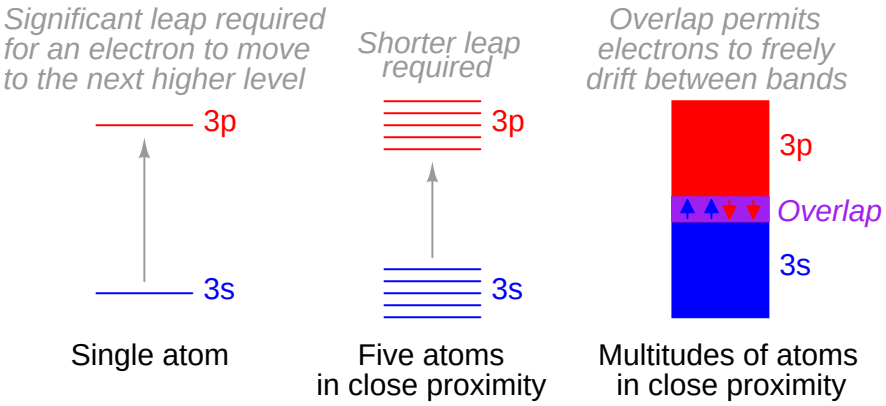


Figure 2.20: *Electron band overlap in metallic elements.*

It is the width of these bands and their proximity to existing electrons that determines how mobile those electrons will be when exposed to an electric field. In metallic substances, empty bands overlap with bands containing electrons, meaning that electrons of a single atom may move to what would normally be a higher-level state with little or no additional energy imparted. Thus, the outer electrons are said to be "free," and ready to move at the beckoning of an electric field.

Band overlap will not occur in all substances, no matter how many atoms are close to each other. In some substances, a substantial gap remains between the highest band containing electrons (the so-called *valence band*) and the next band, which is empty (the so-called *conduction band*). See Figure 2.21. As a result, valence electrons are "bound" to their constituent atoms and cannot become mobile within the substance without a significant amount of imparted energy. These substances are electrical insulators.

Materials that fall within the category of *semiconductors* have a narrow gap between the valence and conduction bands. Thus, the amount of energy required to motivate a valence electron into the conduction band where it becomes mobile is quite modest. (Figure 2.22)

At low temperatures, little thermal energy is available to push valence electrons across this gap, and the semiconducting material acts more as an insulator. at higher temperatures, though, the ambient thermal energy becomes enough to force electrons across the gap, and the material will increase conduction of electricity.

It is difficult to predict the conductive properties of a substance by examining the electron configurations of its constituent atoms. Although the best metallic conductors of electricity (silver, copper, and gold) all have outer *s* subshells with a single electron, the relationship between conductivity and valence electron count is not necessarily consistent:

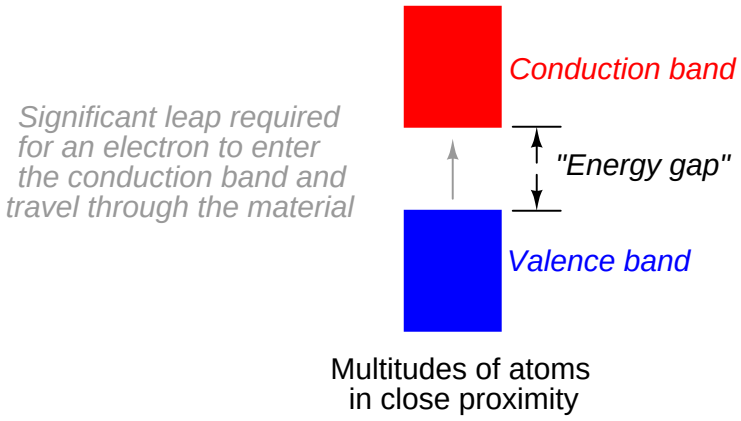


Figure 2.21: *Electron band separation in insulating substances.*

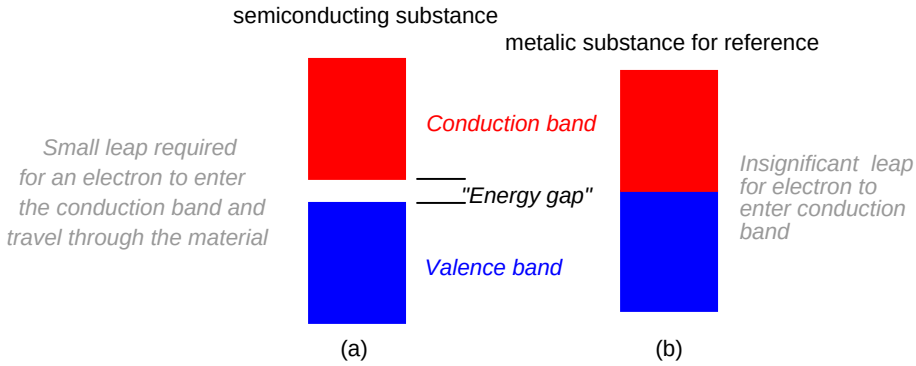


Figure 2.22: *Electron band separation in semiconducting substances, (a) multitudes of semiconducting close atoms still results in a significant band gap, (b) multitudes of close metal atoms for reference.*

Element	Specific resistance (ρ) at 20° Celsius	Electron configuration	Element	Specific resistance (ρ) at 20° Celsius	Electron configuration
Silver (Ag)	9.546 Ω·cmil/ft	$4d^{10}5s^1$	Molybdenum (Mo)	32.12 Ω·cmil/ft	$4d^5 5s^1$
Copper (Cu)	10.09 Ω·cmil/ft	$3d^{10}4s^1$	Zinc (Zn)	35.49 Ω·cmil/ft	$3d^{10}4s^2$
Gold (Au)	13.32 Ω·cmil/ft	$5d^{10}6s^1$	Nickel (Ni)	41.69 Ω·cmil/ft	$3d^8 4s^2$
Aluminum (Al)	15.94 Ω·cmil/ft	$3p^1$	Iron (Fe)	57.81 Ω·cmil/ft	$3d^6 4s^2$
Tungsten (W)	31.76 Ω·cmil/ft	$5d^4 6s^2$	Platinum (Pt)	63.16 Ω·cmil/ft	$5d^9 6s^1$

The electron band configurations produced by compounds of different elements defies easy association with the electron configurations of its constituent elements.

- **REVIEW:**
- Energy is required to remove an electron from the valence band to a higher unoccupied band, a conduction band. More energy is required to move between shells, less between subshells.
- Since the valence and conduction bands overlap in metals, little energy removes an electron. Metals are excellent conductors.
- The large gap between the valence and conduction bands of an insulator requires high energy to remove an electron. Thus, insulators do not conduct.
- Semiconductors have a small non-overlapping gap between the valence and conduction bands. Pure semiconductors are neither good insulators nor conductors. Semiconductors are semi-conductive.

2.5 Electrons and "holes"

Pure semiconductors are relatively good insulators as compared with metals, though not nearly as good as a true insulator like glass. To be useful in semiconductor applications, the *intrinsic semiconductor*, pure undoped semiconductor must have no more than one impurity atom in 10 billion semiconductor atoms. This is analogous to a grain of salt impurity in a railroad boxcar of sugar. Impure, or dirty semiconductors are considerably more conductive, though not as good as metals. Why might this be? To answer that question, we must look at the electron structure of such materials in Figure 2.23.

Figure 2.23 (a) shows four electrons in the valence shell of a semiconductor forming covalent bonds to four other atoms. This is a flattened, easier to draw, version of Figure 2.19. All electrons of an atom are tied up in four covalent bonds, pairs of shared electrons. Electrons are not free to move about the crystal lattice. Thus, intrinsic, pure, semiconductors are relatively good insulators as compared to metals.

Thermal energy may occasionally free an electron from the crystal lattice as in Figure 2.23 (b). This electron is free for conduction about the crystal lattice. When the electron was freed, it left an empty spot with a positive charge in the crystal lattice known as a *hole*. This hole is not fixed to the lattice; but, is free to move about. The free electron and hole both contribute

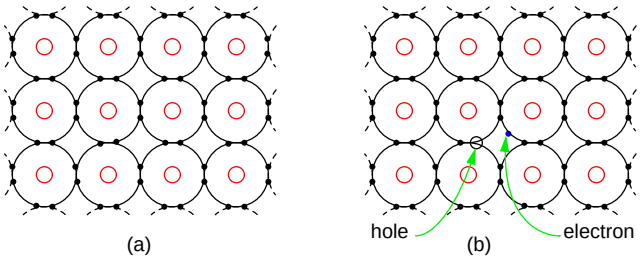


Figure 2.23: *(a) Intrinsic semiconductor is an insulator having a complete electron shell. (b) However, thermal energy can create few electron hole pairs resulting in weak conduction.*

to conduction about the crystal lattice. That is, the electron is free until it falls into a hole. This is called *recombination*. If an external electric field is applied to the semiconductor, the electrons and holes will conduct in opposite directions. Increasing temperature will increase the number of electrons and holes, decreasing the resistance. This is opposite of metals, where resistance increases with temperature by increasing the collisions of electrons with the crystal lattice. The number of electrons and holes in an intrinsic semiconductor are equal. However, both carriers do not necessarily move with the same velocity with the application of an external field. Another way of stating this is that the *mobility* is not the same for electrons and holes.

Pure semiconductors, by themselves, are not particularly useful. Though, semiconductors must be refined to a high level of purity as a starting point prior the addition of specific impurities.

Semiconductor material pure to 1 part in 10 billion, may have specific impurities added at approximately 1 part per 10 million to increase the number of carriers. The addition of a desired impurity to a semiconductor is known as *doping*. Doping increases the conductivity of a semiconductor so that it is more comparable to a metal than an insulator.

It is possible to increase the number of negative charge carriers within the semiconductor crystal lattice by doping with an electron *donor* like Phosphorus. Electron donors, also known as *N-type* dopants include elements from group VA of the periodic table: nitrogen, phosphorus, arsenic, and antimony. Nitrogen and phosphorus are N-type dopants for diamond. Phosphorus, arsenic, and antimony are used with silicon.

The crystal lattice in Figure 2.24 (a) contains atoms having four electrons in the outer shell, forming four covalent bonds to adjacent atoms. This is the anticipated crystal lattice. The addition of a phosphorus atom with five electrons in the outer shell introduces an extra electron into the lattice as compared with the silicon atom. The pentavalent impurity forms four covalent bonds to four silicon atoms with four of the five electrons, fitting into the lattice with one electron left over. Note that this spare electron is not strongly bonded to the lattice as the electrons of normal Si atoms are. It is free to move about the crystal lattice, not being bound to the Phosphorus lattice site. Since we have doped at one part phosphorus in 10 million silicon atoms, few free electrons were created compared with the numerous silicon atoms. However, many electrons were created compared with the fewer electron-hole pairs in intrinsic silicon. Application of an external electric field produces strong conduction in the doped semiconductor in the conduction band (above the valence band). A heavier doping level produces stronger

conduction. Thus, a poorly conducting intrinsic semiconductor has been converted into a good electrical conductor.

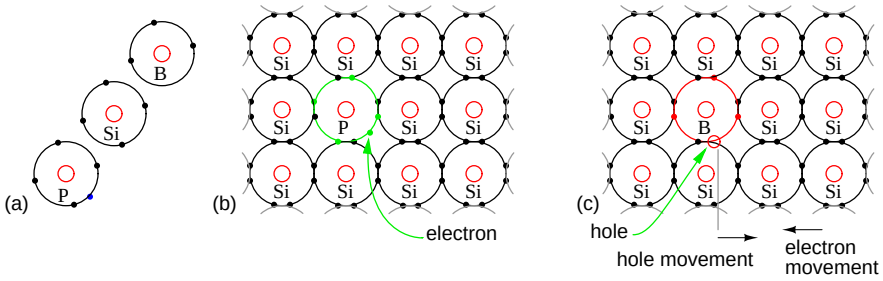


Figure 2.24: *(a) Outer shell electron configuration of donor N-type Phosphorus, Silicon (for reference), and acceptor P-type Boron. (b) N-type donor impurity creates free electron (c) P-type acceptor impurity creates hole, a positive charge carrier.*

It is also possible to introduce an impurity lacking an electron as compared with silicon, having three electrons in the valence shell as compared with four for silicon. In Figure 2.24 (b), this leaves an empty spot known as a *hole*, a positive charge carrier. The boron atom tries to bond to four silicon atoms, but only has three electrons in the valence band. In attempting to form four covalent bonds the three electrons move around trying to form four bonds. This makes the hole appear to move. Furthermore, the trivalent atom may borrow an electron from an adjacent (or more distant) silicon atom to form four covalent bonds. However, this leaves the silicon atom deficient by one electron. In other words, the hole has moved to an adjacent (or more distant) silicon atom. Holes reside in the valence band, a level below the conduction band. Doping with an electron *acceptor*, an atom which may accept an electron, creates a deficiency of electrons, the same as an excess of holes. Since holes are positive charge carriers, an electron acceptor dopant is also known as a *P-type* dopant. The P-type dopant leaves the semiconductor with an excess of holes, positive charge carriers. The P-type elements from group IIIA of the periodic table include: boron, aluminum, gallium, and indium. Boron is used as a P-type dopant for silicon and diamond semiconductors, while indium is used with germanium.

The “marble in a tube” analogy to electron conduction in Figure 2.25 relates the movement of holes with the movement of electrons. The marble represent electrons in a conductor, the tube. The movement of electrons from left to right as in a wire or N-type semiconductor is explained by an electron entering the tube at the left forcing the exit of an electron at the right. Conduction of N-type electrons in the conduction band. Compare that with the movement of a hole in the valence band.

For a hole to enter at the left of Figure 2.25 (b), an electron must be removed. Moving a hole left to right, the electron must be moved right to left. The first electron is ejected from the left end of the tube so that the hole may move to the right into the tube. The electron is moving in the opposite direction of the positive hole. As the hole moves farther to the right, electrons must move left to accommodate the hole. The hole is the absence of an electron in the valence band due to P-type doping. It has a localized positive charge. To move the hole in a given direction, the valence electrons move in the opposite direction.

Electron flow in an N-type semiconductor is similar to electrons moving in a metallic wire.

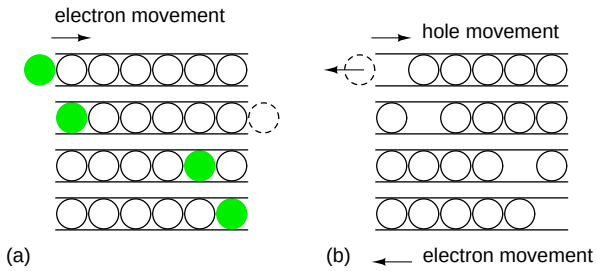


Figure 2.25: *Marble in a tube analogy: (a) Electrons move right in the conduction band as electrons enter tube. (b) Hole moves right in the valence band as electrons move left.*

The N-type dopant atoms will yield electrons available for conduction. These electrons, due to the dopant are known as *majority carriers*, for they are in the majority as compared to the very few thermal holes. If an electric field is applied across the N-type semiconductor bar in Figure 2.26 (a), electrons enter the negative (left) end of the bar, traverse the crystal lattice, and exit at right to the (+) battery terminal.

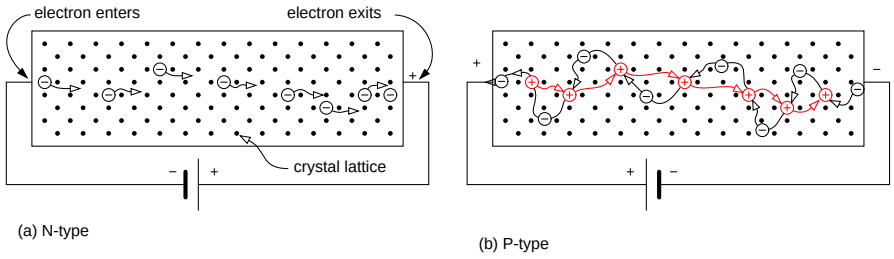


Figure 2.26: *(a) N-type semiconductor with electrons moving left to right through the crystal lattice. (b) P-semiconductor with holes moving left to right, which corresponds to electrons moving in the opposite direction.*

Current flow in a P-type semiconductor is a little more difficult to explain. The P-type dopant, an electron acceptor, yields localized regions of positive charge known as holes. The majority carrier in a P-type semiconductor is the hole. While holes form at the trivalent dopant atom sites, they may move about the semiconductor bar. Note that the battery in Figure 2.26 (b) is reversed from (a). The positive battery terminal is connected to the left end of the P-type bar. Electron flow is out of the negative battery terminal, through the P-type bar, returning to the positive battery terminal. An electron leaving the positive (left) end of the semiconductor bar for the positive battery terminal leaves a hole in the semiconductor, that may move to the right. Holes traverse the crystal lattice from left to right. At the negative end of the bar an electron from the battery combines with a hole, neutralizing it. This makes room for another hole to move in at the positive end of the bar toward the right. Keep in mind that as holes move left to right, that it is actually electrons moving in the opposite direction that is responsible for the apparant hole movement.

The elements used to produce semiconductors are summarized in Figure 2.27. The oldest group IVA bulk semiconductor material germanium is only used to a limited extent today. Silicon based semiconductors account for about 90% of commercial production of all semiconductors. Diamond based semiconductors are a research and development activity with considerable potential at this time. Compound semiconductors not listed include silicon germanium (thin layers on Si wafers), silicon carbide and III-V compounds such as gallium arsenide. III-VI compound semiconductors include: AlN, GaN, InN, AlP, AlAs, AlSb, GaP, GaAs, GaSb, InP, InAs, InSb, $Al_xGa_{1-x}As$ and $In_xGa_{1-x}As$. Columns II and VI of periodic table, not shown in the figure, also form compound semiconductors.

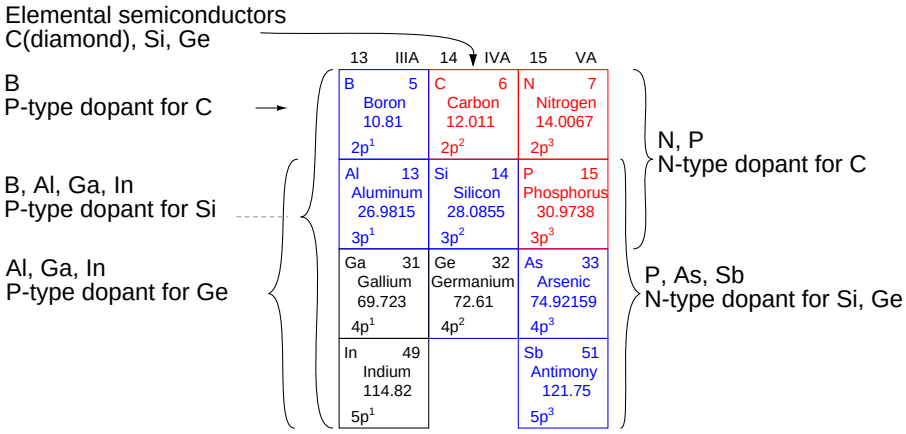


Figure 2.27: *Group IIIA P-type dopants, group IV basic semiconductor materials, and group VA N-type dopants.*

The main reason for the inclusion of the IIIA and VA groups in Figure 2.27 is to show the dopants used with the group IVA semiconductors. Group IIIA elements are acceptors, P-type dopants, which accept electrons leaving a hole in the crystal lattice, a positive carrier. Boron is the P-type dopant for diamond, and the most common dopant for silicon semiconductors. Indium is the P-type dopant for germanium.

Group VA elements are donors, N-type dopants, yielding a free electron. Nitrogen and Phosphorus are suitable N-type dopants for diamond. Phosphorus and arsenic are the most commonly used N-type dopants for silicon; though, antimony can be used.

- **REVIEW:**
- Intrinsic semiconductor materials, pure to 1 part in 10 billion, are poor conductors.
- N-type semiconductor is doped with a pentavalent impurity to create free electrons. Such a material is conductive. The electron is the majority carrier.
- P-type semiconductor, doped with a trivalent impurity, has an abundance of free holes. These are positive charge carriers. The P-type material is conductive. The hole is the majority carrier

- Most semiconductors are based on elements from group IVA of the periodic table, silicon being the most prevalent. Germanium is all but obsolete. Carbon (diamond) is being developed.
- Compound semiconductors such as silicon carbide (group IVA) and gallium arsenide (group III-V) are widely used.

2.6 The P-N junction

If a block of P-type semiconductor is placed in contact with a block of N-type semiconductor in Figure 2.28(a), the result is of no value. We have two conductive blocks in contact with each other, showing no unique properties. The problem is two separate and distinct crystal bodies. The number of electrons is balanced by the number of protons in both blocks. Thus, neither block has any net charge.

However, a single semiconductor crystal manufactured with P-type material at one end and N-type material at the other in Figure 2.28 (b) has some unique properties. The P-type material has positive majority charge carriers, holes, which are free to move about the crystal lattice. The N-type material has mobile negative majority carriers, electrons. Near the junction, the N-type material electrons diffuse across the junction, combining with holes in P-type material. The region of the P-type material near the junction takes on a net negative charge because of the electrons attracted. Since electrons departed the N-type region, it takes on a localized positive charge. The thin layer of the crystal lattice between these charges has been depleted of majority carriers, thus, is known as the *depletion region*. It becomes nonconductive intrinsic semiconductor material. In effect, we have nearly an insulator separating the conductive P an N doped regions.

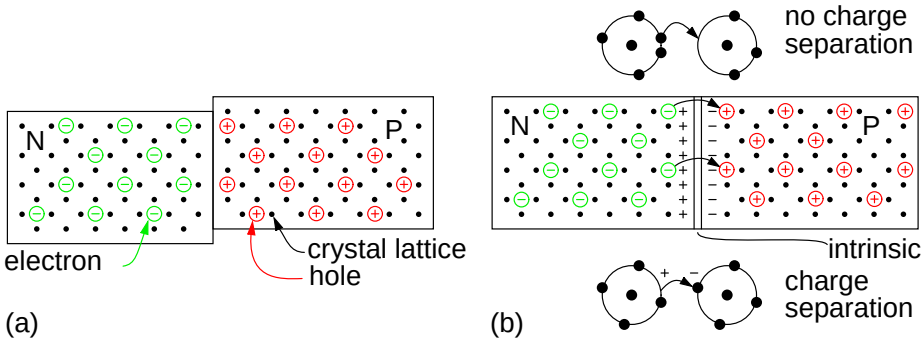


Figure 2.28: *(a) Blocks of P and N semiconductor in contact have no exploitable properties. (b) Single crystal doped with P and N type impurities develops a potential barrier.*

This separation of charges at the PN junction constitutes a potential barrier. This potential barrier must be overcome by an external voltage source to make the junction conduct. The formation of the junction and potential barrier happens during the manufacturing process. The magnitude of the potential barrier is a function of the materials used in manufacturing. Silicon PN junctions have a higher potential barrier than germanium junctions.

In Figure 2.29(a) the battery is arranged so that the negative terminal supplies electrons to the N-type material. These electrons diffuse toward the junction. The positive terminal removes electrons from the P-type semiconductor, creating holes that diffuse toward the junction. If the battery voltage is great enough to overcome the junction potential (0.6V in Si), the N-type electrons and P-holes combine annihilating each other. This frees up space within the lattice for more carriers to flow toward the junction. Thus, currents of N-type and P-type majority carriers flow toward the junction. The recombination at the junction allows a battery current to flow through the PN junction diode. Such a junction is said to be *forward biased*.

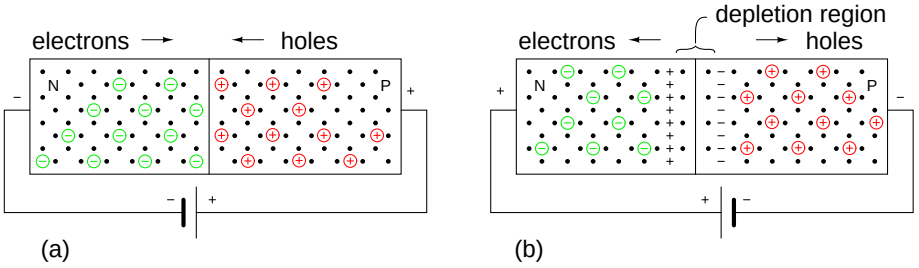


Figure 2.29: *(a) Forward battery bias repells carriers toward junction, where recombination results in battery current. (b) Reverse battery bias attracts carriers toward battery terminals, away from junction. Depletion region thickness increases. No sustained battery current flows.*

If the battery polarity is reversed as in Figure 2.29(b) majority carriers are attracted away from the junction toward the battery terminals. The positive battery terminal attracts N-type electrons majority carriers away from the junction. The negative terminal attracts P-type majority carriers, holes away from the junction. This increases the thickness of the nonconducting depletion region. There is no recombination of majority carriers; thus, no conduction. This arrangement of battery polarity is called *reverse bias*.

The diode schematic symbol is illustrated in Figure 2.30(b) corresponding to the doped semiconductor bar at (a). The diode is a *unidirectional* device. Electron current only flows in one direction, against the arrow, corresponding to forward bias. The cathode, bar, of the diode symbol corresponds to N-type semiconductor. The anode, arrow, corresponds to the P-type semiconductor. To remember this relationship, **N**ot-pointing (bar) on the symbol corresponds to **N**-type semiconductor. **P**ointing (arrow) corresponds to **P**-type.

If a diode is forward biased as in Figure 2.30(a), current will increase slightly as voltage is increased from 0 V. In the case of a silicon diode a measurable current flows when the voltage approaches 0.6 V at (c). As the voltage is increases past 0.6 V, current increases considerably after the knee. Increasing the voltage well beyond 0.7 V may result in high enough current to destroy the diode. The forward voltage, V_F, is a characteristic of the semiconductor: 0.6 to 0.7 V for silicon, 0.2 V for germanium, a few volts for Light Emitting Diodes (LED). The forward current ranges from a few mA for point contact diodes to 100 mA for small signal diodes to tens or thousands of amperes for power diodes.

If the diode is reverse biased, only the leakage of the intrinsic semiconductor flows. This is plotted to the left of the origin in Figure 2.30(c). This current will only be as high as 1 μA for the most extreme conditions for silicon small signal diodes. This current does not increase

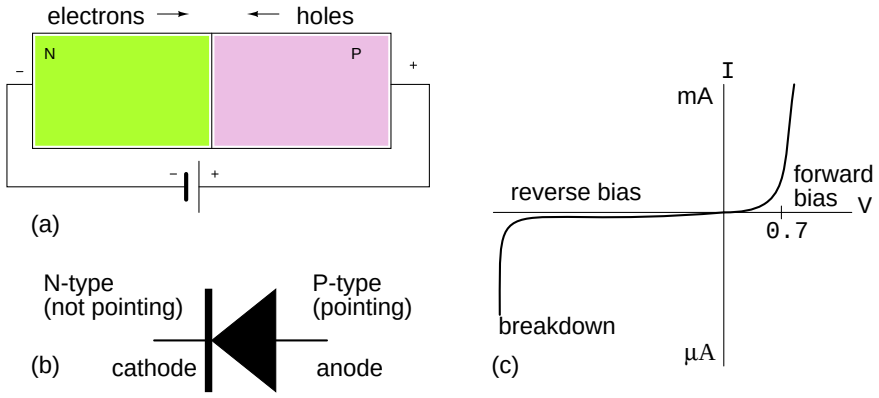


Figure 2.30: *(a) PN junction, (b) Corresponding diode schematic symbol (c)Silicon Diode I vs V characteristic curve.*

appreciably with increasing reverse bias until the diode breaks down. At breakdown, the current increases so greatly that the diode will be destroyed unless a high series resistance limits current. We normally select a diode with a higher reverse voltage rating than any applied voltage to prevent this. Silicon diodes are typically available with reverse break down ratings of 50, 100, 200, 400, 800 V and higher. It is possible to fabricate diodes with a lower rating of a few volts for use as voltage standards.

We previously mentioned that the reverse leakage current of under a μA for silicon diodes was due to conduction of the intrinsic semiconductor. This is the leakage that can be explained by theory. Thermal energy produces few electron hole pairs, which conduct leakage current until recombination. In actual practice this predictable current is only part of the leakage current. Much of the leakage current is due to surface conduction, related to the lack of cleanliness of the semiconductor surface. Both leakage currents increase with increasing temperature, approaching a μA for small silicon diodes.

For germanium, the leakage current is orders of magnitude higher. Since germanium semiconductors are rarely used today, this is not a problem in practice.

- **REVIEW:**

- PN junctions are fabricated from a monocrystalline piece of semiconductor with both a P-type and N-type region in proximity at a junction.

- The transfer of electrons from the N side of the junction to holes annihilated on the P side of the junction produces a barrier voltage. This is 0.6 to 0.7 V in silicon, and varies with other semiconductors.

- A forward biased PN junction conducts a current once the barrier voltage is overcome. The external applied potential forces majority carriers toward the junction where recombinetion takes place, allowing current flow.

- A reverse biased PN junction conducts almost no current. The applied reverse bias attracts majority carriers away from the junction. This increases the thickness of the nonconducting depletion region.
- Reverse biased PN junctions show a temperature dependent reverse leakage current. This is less than a μA in small silicon diodes.

2.7 Junction diodes

There were some historic crude, but useable semiconductor rectifiers before high purity materials were available. Ferdinand Braun invented a lead sulfide, PbS, based point contact rectifier in 1874. Cuprous oxide rectifiers were used as power rectifiers in 1924. The forward voltage drop is 0.2 V. The linear characteristic curve perhaps is why Cu_2O was used as a rectifier for the AC scale on D'Arsonval based multimeters. This diode is also photosensitive.

Selenium oxide rectifiers were used before modern power diode rectifiers became available. This and the Cu_2O rectifiers were polycrystalline devices. Photoelectric cells were once made from Selenium.

Before the modern semiconductor era, an early diode application was as a radio frequency *detector*, which recovered audio from a radio signal. The "semiconductor" was a polycrystalline piece of the mineral galena, lead sulfide, PbS. A pointed metallic wire known as a *cat whisker* was brought in contact with a spot on a crystal within the polycrystalline mineral. (Figure 2.31) The operator labored to find a "sensitive" spot on the galena by moving the cat whisker about. Presumably there were P and N-type spots randomly distributed throughout the crystal due to the variability of uncontrolled impurities. Less often the mineral iron pyrites, fools gold, was used, as was the mineral carborundum, silicon carbide, SiC.. Another detector, part of a *foxhole radio*, consisted of a sharpened pencil lead bound to a bent safety pin, touching a rusty blue-blade disposable razor blade. These all required searching for a sensitive spot, easily lost because of vibration.

Replacing the mineral with an N-doped semiconductor (Figure 2.32(a)) makes the whole surface sensitive, so that searching for a sensitive spot was no longer required. This device was perfected by G.W.Pickard in 1906. The pointed metal contact produced a localized P-type region within the semiconductor. The metal point was fixed in place, and the whole *point contact diode* encapsulated in a cylindrical body for mechanical and electrical stability. (Figure 2.32(d)) Note that the cathode bar on the schematic corresponds to the bar on the physical package.

Silicon point contact diodes made an important contribution to radar in World War II, detecting giga-hertz radio frequency echo signals in the radar receiver.. The concept to be made clear is that the point contact diode preceded the junction diode and modern semiconductors by several decades. Even to this day, the point contact diode is a practical means of microwave frequency detection because of its low capacitance. Germanium point contact diodes were once more readily available than they are today, being preferred for the lower 0.2 V forward voltage in some applications like self-powered crystal radios. Point contact diodes, though sensitive to a wide bandwidth,, have a low current capability compared with junction diodes..

Most diodes today are silicon junction diodes. The cross-section in Figure 2.32(b) looks a bit more complex than a simple PN junction; though, it is still a PN junction. Starting at the cathode connection, the N^+ indicates this region is heavily doped, having nothing to do with

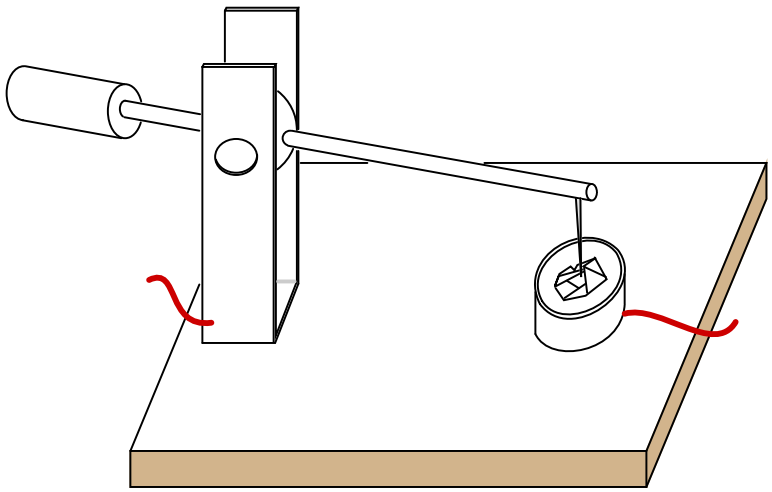


Figure 2.31: *Crystal detector*

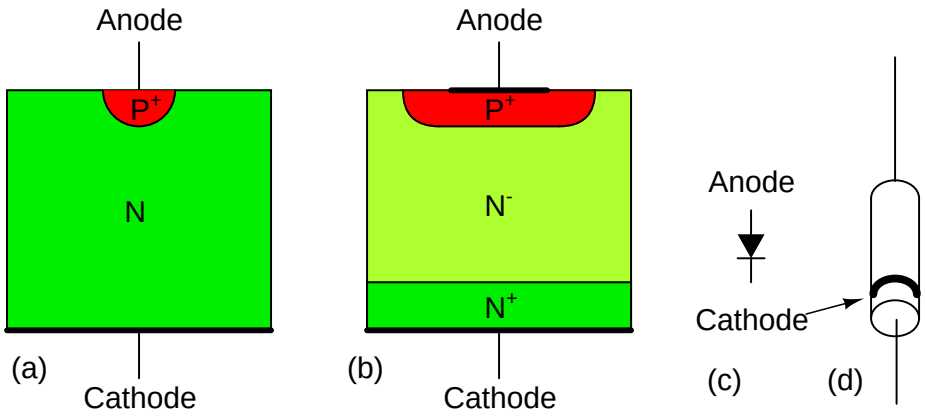


Figure 2.32: *Silicon diode cross-section: (a) point contact diode, (b) junction diode, (c) schematic symbol, (d) small signal diode package.*

polarity. This reduces the series resistance of the diode. The N^- region is lightly doped as indicated by the (-). Light doping produces a diode with a higher reverse breakdown voltage, important for high voltage power rectifier diodes. Lower voltage diodes, even low voltage power rectifiers, would have lower forward losses with heavier doping. The heaviest level of doping produce zener diodes designed for a low reverse breakdown voltage. However, heavy doping increases the reverse leakage current. The P^+ region at the anode contact is heavily doped P-type semiconductor, a good contact strategy. Glass encapsulate small signal junction diodes are capable of 10's to 100's of mA of current. Plastic or ceramic encapsulated power rectifier diodes handle to 1000's of amperes of current.

- **REVIEW:**
- Point contact diodes have superb high frequency characteristics, useable well into the microwave frequencies.
- Junction diodes range in size from small signal diodes to power rectifiers capable of 1000's of amperes.
- The level of doping near the junction determines the reverse breakdown voltage. Light doping produces a high voltage diode. Heavy doping produces a lower breakdown voltage, and increases reverse leakage current. Zener diodes have a lower breakdown voltage because of heavy doping.

2.8 Bipolar junction transistors

The *bipolar transistor* (BJT) was named because its operation involves conduction by two carriers: electrons and holes in the same crystal. The first bipolar transistor was invented at Bell Labs by William Shockley, Walter Brattain, and John Bardeen so late in 1947 that it was not published until 1948. Thus, many texts differ as to the date of invention. Brattain fabricated a germanium *point contact transistor*, bearing some resemblance to a point contact diode. Within a month, Shockley had a more practical *junction transistor*, which we describe in following paragraphs. They were awarded the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1956 for the transistor.

The bipolar junction transistor shown in Figure 2.33(a) is an NPN three layer semiconductor sandwich with an *emitter* and *collector* at the ends, and a *base* in between. It is as if a third layer were added to a two layer diode. If this were the only requirement, we would have no more than a pair of back-to-back diodes. In fact, it is far easier to build a pair of back-to-back diodes. The key to the fabrication of a bipolar junction transistor is to make the middle layer, the base, as thin as possible without shorting the outside layers, the emitter and collector. We cannot over emphasize the importance of the thin base region.

The device in Figure 2.33(a) has a pair of junctions, emitter to base and base to collector, and two depletion regions.

It is customary to reverse bias the base-collector junction of a bipolar junction transistor as shown in (Figure 2.33(b). Note that this increases the width of the depletion region. The reverse bias voltage could be a few volts to tens of volts for most transistors. There is no current flow, except leakage current, in the collector circuit.

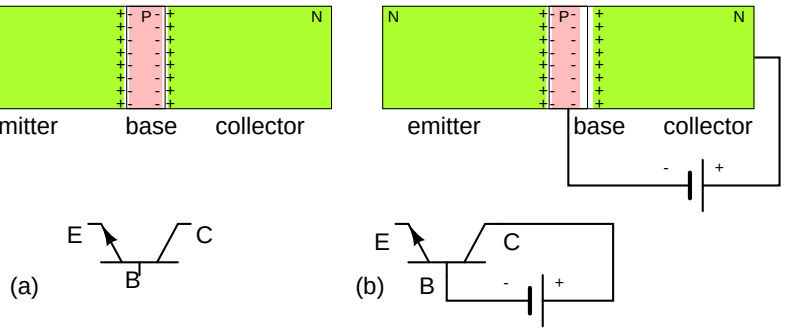


Figure 2.33: *(a) NPN junction bipolar transistor. (b) Apply reverse bias to collector base junction.*

In Figure 2.34(a), a voltage source has been added to the emitter base circuit. Normally we forward bias the emitter-base junction, overcoming the 0.6 V potential barrier. This is similar to forward biasing a junction diode. This voltage source needs to exceed 0.6 V for majority carriers (electrons for NPN) to flow from the emitter into the base becoming minority carriers in the P-type semiconductor.

If the base region were thick, as in a pair of back-to-back diodes, all the current entering the base would flow out the base lead. In our NPN transistor example, electrons leaving the emitter for the base would combine with holes in the base, making room for more holes to be created at the (+) battery terminal on the base as electrons exit.

However, the base is manufactured thin. A few majority carriers in the emitter, injected as minority carriers into the base, actually recombine. See Figure 2.34(b). Few electrons injected by the emitter into the base of an NPN transistor fall into holes. Also, few electrons entering the base flow directly through the base to the positive battery terminal. Most of the emitter current of electrons diffuses through the thin base into the collector. Moreover, modulating the small base current produces a larger change in collector current. If the base voltage falls below approximately 0.6 V for a silicon transistor, the large emitter-collector current ceases to flow.

In Figure 2.35 we take a closer look at the current amplification mechanism. We have an enlarged view of an NPN junction transistor with emphasis on the thin base region. Though not shown, we assume that external voltage sources 1) forward bias the emitter-base junction, 2) reverse bias the base-collector junction. Electrons, majority carriers, enter the emitter from the (-) battery terminal. The base current flow corresponds to electrons leaving the base terminal for the (+) battery terminal. This is but a small current compared to the emitter current.

Majority carriers within the N-type emitter are electrons, becoming minority carriers when entering the P-type base. These electrons face four possible fates entering the thin P-type base. A few at Figure 2.35(a) fall into holes in the base that contributes to base current flow to the (+) battery terminal. Not shown, holes in the base may diffuse into the emitter and combine with electrons, contributing to base terminal current. Few at (b) flow on through the base to the (+) battery terminal as if the base were a resistor. Both (a) and (b) contribute to the very small base current flow. Base current is typically 1% of emitter or collector current for small signal transistors. Most of the emitter electrons diffuse right through the thin base (c) into

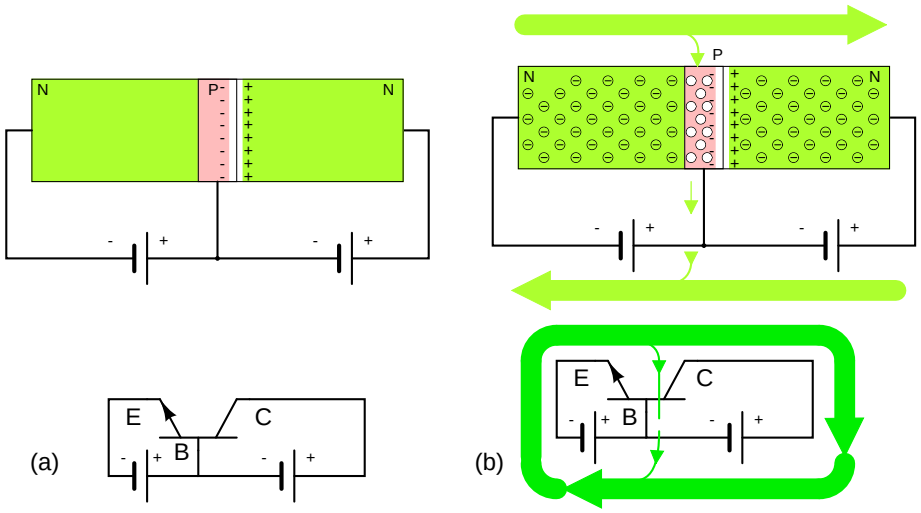


Figure 2.34: *NPN junction bipolar transistor with reverse biased collector-base: (a) Adding forward bias to base-emitter junction, results in (b) a small base current and large emitter and collector currents.*

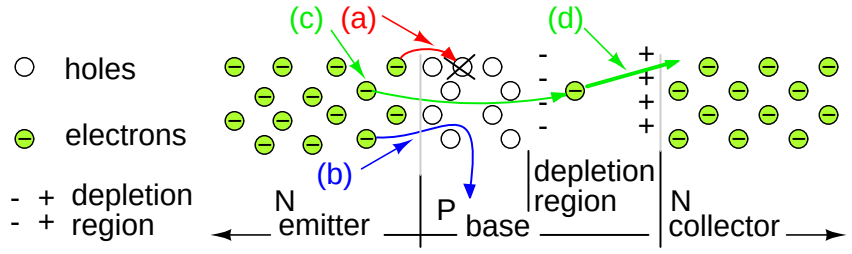


Figure 2.35: *Disposition of electrons entering base: (a) Lost due to recombination with base holes. (b) Flows out base lead. (c) Most diffuse from emitter through thin base into base-collector depletion region, and (d) are rapidly swept by the strong depletion region electric field into the collector.*

the base-collector depletion region. Note the polarity of the depletion region surrounding the electron at (d). The strong electric field sweeps the electron rapidly into the collector. The strength of the field is proportional to the collector battery voltage. Thus 99% of the emitter current flows into the collector. It is controlled by the base current, which is 1% of the emitter current. This is a potential current gain of 99, the ratio of I_C/I_B, also known as beta, β.

This magic, the diffusion of 99% of the emitter carriers through the base, is only possible if the base is very thin. What would be the fate of the base minority carriers in a base 100 times thicker? One would expect the recombination rate, electrons falling into holes, to be much higher. Perhaps 99%, instead of 1%, would fall into holes, never getting to the collector. The second point to make is that the base current may control 99% of the emitter current, only if 99% of the emitter current diffuses into the collector. If it all flows out the base, no control is possible.

Another feature accounting for passing 99% of the electrons from emitter to collector is that real bipolar junction transistors use a small heavily doped emitter. The high concentration of emitter electrons forces many electrons to diffuse into the base. The lower doping concentration in the base means fewer holes diffuse into the emitter, which would increase the base current. Diffusion of carriers from emitter to base is strongly favored.

The thin base and the heavily doped emitter help keep the *emitter efficiency* high, 99% for example. This corresponds to 100% emitter current splitting between the base as 1% and the collector as 99%. The emitter efficiency is known as $\alpha = I_C/I_E$.

Bipolar junction transistors are available as PNP as well as NPN devices. We present a comparison of these two in Figure 2.36. The difference is the polarity of the base emitter diode junctions, as signified by the direction of the schematic symbol emitter arrow. It points in the same direction as the anode arrow for a junction diode, against electron current flow. See diode junction, Figure 2.30. The point of the arrow and bar correspond to P-type and N-type semiconductors, respectively. For NPN and PNP emitters, the arrow points away and toward the base respectively. There is no schematic arrow on the collector. However, the base-collector junction is the same polarity as the base-emitter junction compared to a diode. Note, we speak of diode, not power supply, polarity.

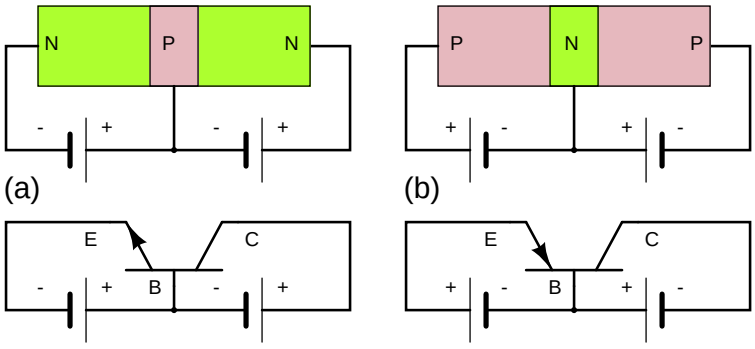


Figure 2.36: *Compare NPN transistor at (a) with the PNP transistor at (b). Note direction of emitter arrow and supply polarity.*

The voltage sources for PNP transistors are reversed compared with an NPN transistors

as shown in Figure 2.36. The base-emitter junction must be forward biased in both cases. The base on a PNP transistor is biased negative (b) compared with positive (a) for an NPN. In both cases the base-collector junction is reverse biased. The PNP collector power supply is negative campared with positive for an NPN transistor.

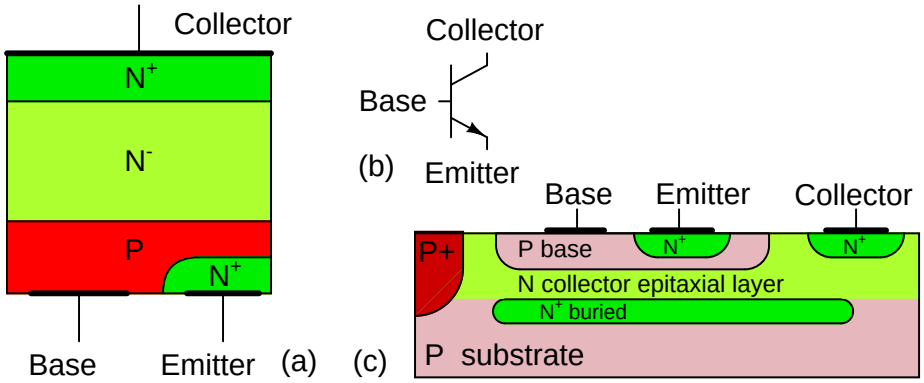


Figure 2.37: *Bipolar junction transistor: (a) discrete device cross-section, (b) schematic symbol, (c) integrated circuit cross-section.*

Note that the BJT in Figure 2.37(a) has heavy doping in the emitter as indicated by the N^+ notation. The base has a normal P-dopant level. The base is much thinner than the not-to-scale cross-section shows. The collector is lightly doped as indicated by the N^- notation. The collector needs to be lightly doped so that the collector-base junction will have a high breakdown voltage. This translates into a high allowable collector power supply voltage. Small signal silicon transistors have a 60-80 V breakdown voltage. Though, it may run to hundreds of volts for high voltage transistors. The collector also needs to be heavily doped to minimize ohmic losses if the transistor must handle high current. These contradicting requirements are met by doping the collector more heavily at the metallic contact area. The collector near the base is lightly doped as compared with the emitter. The heavy doping in the emitter gives the emitter-base a low approximate 7 V breakdown voltage in small signal transistors. The heavily doped emitter makes the emitter-base junction have zener diode like characteristics in reverse bias.

The BJT *die*, a piece of a sliced and diced semiconductor wafer, is mounted collector down to a metal case for power transistors. That is, the metal case is electrically connected to the collector. A small signal die may be encapsulated in epoxy. In power transistors, aluminum bonding wires connect the base and emitter to package leads. Small signal transistor dies may be mounted directly to the lead wires. Multiple transistors may be fabricated on a single die called an *integrated circuit*. Even the collector may be bonded out to a lead instead of the case. The integrated circuit may contain internal wiring of the transistors and other integrated components. The integrated BJT shown in (Figure **??**) is much thinner than the "not to scale" drawing. The P^+ region isolates multiple transistors in a single die. An aluminum metalization layer (not shown) interconnects multiple transistors and other components. The emitter region is heavily doped, N^+ compared to the base and collector to improve emitter efficiency.

Discrete PNP transistors are almost as high quality as the NPN counterpart. However, in-

tegrated PNP transistors are not nearly a good as the NPN variety within the same integrated circuit die. Thus, integrated circuits use the NPN variety as much as possible.

- **REVIEW:**
- Bipolar transistors conduct current using both electrons and holes in the same device.
- Operation of a bipolar transistor as a current amplifier requires that the collector-base junction be reverse biased and the emitter-base junction be forward biased.
- A transistor differs from a pair of back to back diodes in that the base, the center layer, is very thin. This allows majority carriers from the emitter to diffuse as minority carriers through the base into the depletion region of the base-collector junction, where the strong electric field collects them.
- Emitter efficiency is improved by heavier doping compared with the collector. Emitter efficiency: α = I_C/I_E, 0.99 for small signal devices
- Current gain is β=I_C/I_B, 100 to 300 for small signal transistors.

2.9 Junction field-effect transistors

The field effect transistor was proposed by Julius Lilienfeld in US patents in 1926 and 1933 (1,900,018). Moreover, Shockley, Brattain, and Bardeen were investigating the field effect transistor in 1947. Though, the extreme difficulties sidetracked them into inventing the bipolar transistor instead. Shockley's field effect transistor theory was published in 1952. However, the materials processing technology was not mature enough until 1960 when John Atalla produced a working device.

A *field effect transistor* (FET) is a *unipolar* device, conducting a current using only one kind of charge carrier. If based on an N-type slab of semiconductor, the carriers are electrons. Conversely, a P-type based device uses only holes.

At the circuit level, field effect transistor operation is simple. A voltage applied to the *gate*, input element, controls the resistance of the *channel*, the unipolar region between the gate regions. (Figure 2.38) In an N-channel device, this is a lightly doped N-type slab of silicon with terminals at the ends. The *source* and *drain* terminals are analogous to the emitter and collector, respectively, of a BJT. In an N-channel device, a heavy P-type region on both sides of the center of the slab serves as a control electrode, the gate. The gate is analogous to the base of a BJT.

"Cleanliness is next to godliness" applies to the manufacture of field effect transistors. Though it is possible to make bipolar transistors outside of a *clean room*, it is a necessity for field effect transistors. Even in such an environment, manufacture is tricky because of contamination control issues. The unipolar field effect transistor is conceptually simple, but difficult to manufacture. Most transistors today are a metal oxide semiconductor variety (later section) of the field effect transistor contained within integrated circuits. However, discrete JFET devices are available.

A properly biased N-channel junction field effect transistor (JFET) is shown in Figure 2.38. The gate constitutes a diode junction to the source to drain semiconductor slab. The gate is

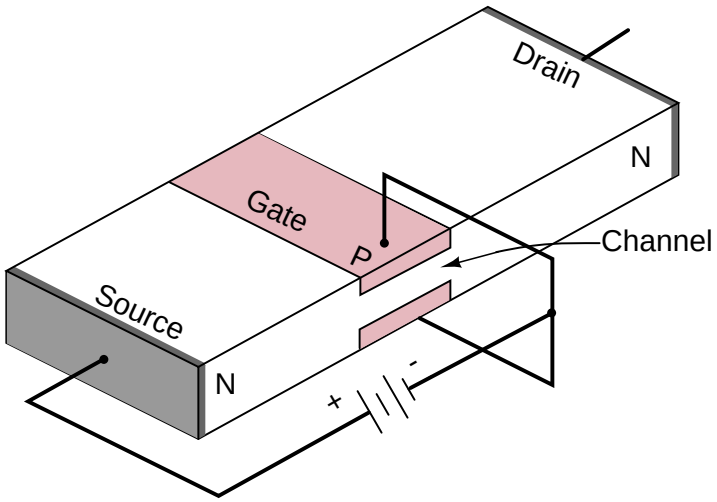


Figure 2.38: *Junction field effect transistor cross-section.*

reverse biased. If a voltage (or an ohmmeter) were applied between the source and drain, the N-type bar would conduct in either direction because of the doping. Neither gate nor gate bias is required for conduction. If a gate junction is formed as shown, conduction can be controlled by the degree of reverse bias.

Figure 2.39(a) shows the depletion region at the gate junction. This is due to diffusion of holes from the P=type gate region into the N-type channel, giving the charge separation about the junction, with a non-conductive depletion region at the junction. The depletion region extends more deeply into the channel side due to the heavy gate doping and light channel doping.

The thickness of the depletion region can be increased Figure 2.39(b) by applying moderate reverse bias. This increases the resistance of the source to drain channel by narrowing the channel. Increasing the reverse bias at (c) increases the depletion region, decreases the channel width, and increases the channel resistance. Increasing the reverse bias V_{GS} at (d) will *pinch-off* the channel current. The channel resistance will be very high. This V_{GS} at which pinch-off occurs is V_P, the pinch-off voltage. It is typically a few volts. In summation,the channel resistance can be controlled by the degree of reverse biasing on the gate.

The source and drain are interchangeable, and the source to drain current may flow in either direction for low level drain battery voltage (¡ 0.6 V). That is, the drain battery may be replaced by a low voltage AC source. For a high drain power supply voltage, to 10's of volts for small signal devices, the polarity must be as indicated in Figure 2.40(a). This drain power supply, not shown in previous figures, distorts the depletion region, enlarging it on the drain side of the gate. This is a more correct representation for common DC drain supply voltages, from a few to tens of volts. As drain voltage V_{DS} is increased,the gate depletion region expands toward the drain. This increases the length of the narrow channel, increasing its resistance a little. We say "a little" because large resistance changes are due to changing gate bias. Figure 2.40(b) shows the schematic symbol for an N-channel field effect transistor compared

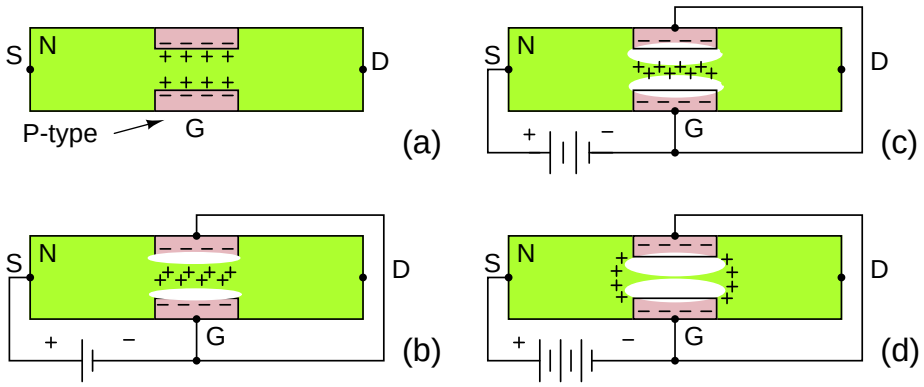


Figure 2.39: *N-channel JFET: (a) Depletion at gate diode. (b) Reverse biased gate diode increases depletion region. (c) Increasing reverse bias enlarges depletion region. (d) Increasing reverse bias pinches-off the S-D channel.*

to the silicon cross-section at (a). The gate arrow points in the same direction as a junction diode. The"pointing" arrow and "non-pointing" bar correspond to P and N-type semiconductors, respectively.

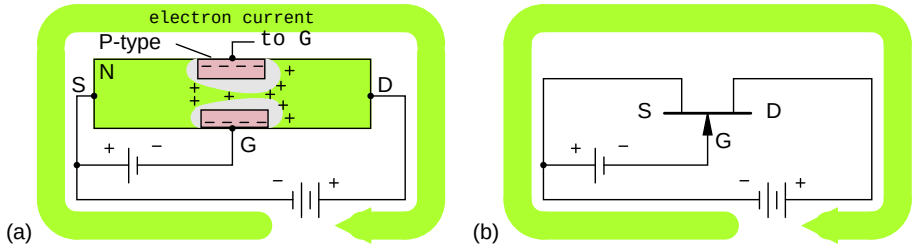


Figure 2.40: *N-channel JFET electron current flow from source to drain in (a) cross-section, (b) schematic symbol.*

Figure 2.40 shows a large electron current flow from (-) battery terminal, to FET source, out the drain, returning to the (+) battery terminal. This current flow may be controlled by varying the gate voltage. A load in series with the battery sees an amplified version of the changing gate voltage.

P-channel field effect transistors are also available. The channel is made of P-type material. The gate is a heavy N-type region. All the voltage sources are reversed in the P-channel circuit (Figure 2.41) as compared with the more popular N-channel device. Also note, the arrow points out of the gate of the schematic symbol (b) of the P-channel field effect transistor.

As the positive gate bias voltage is increased, the resistance of the P-channel increases, decreasing the current flow in the drain circuit.

Discrete devices are manufactured with the cross-section shown in Figure 2.42. The cross-section, oriented so that it corresponds to the schematic symbol, is upside down with respect

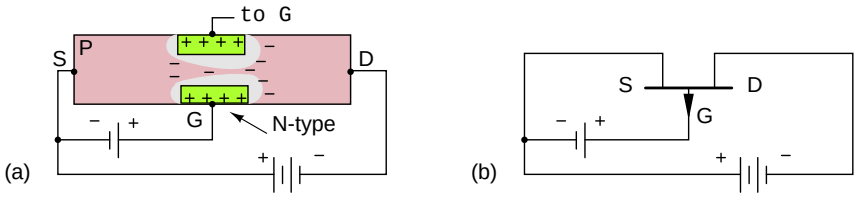


Figure 2.41: *P-channel JFET: (a) N-type gate, P-type channel, reversed voltage sources compared with N-channel device. (b) Note reversed gate arrow and voltage sources on schematic.*

to a semiconductor wafer. That is, the gate connections are on the top of the wafer. The gate is heavily doped, P^+, to diffuse holes well into the channel for a large depletion region. The source and drain connections in this N-channel device are heavily doped, N^+ to lower connection resistance. However, the channel surrounding the gate is lightly doped to allow holes from the gate to diffuse deeply into the channel. That is the N^- region.

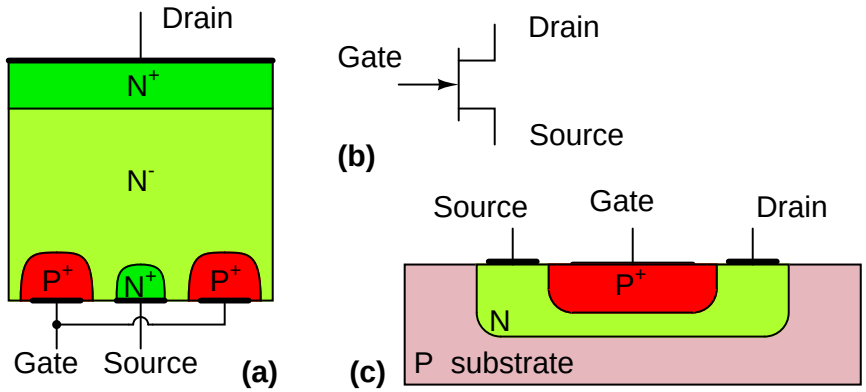


Figure 2.42: *Junction field effect transistor: (a) Discrete device cross-section, (b) schematic symbol, (c) integrated circuit device cross-section.*

All three FET terminals are available on the top of the die for the integrated circuit version so that a metalization layer (not shown) can interconnect multiple components. (Figure 2.42(c)) Integrated circuit FET's are used in analog circuits for the high gate input resistance.. The N-channel region under the gate must be very thin so that the intrinsic region about the gate can control and pinch-off the channel. Thus, gate regions on both sides of the channel are not necessary.

The static induction field effect transistor (SIT) is a short channel device with a buried gate. (Figure 2.43) It is a power device, as opposed to a small signal device. The low gate resistance and low gate to source capacitance make for a fast switching device. The SIT is capable of hundreds of amps and thousands of volts. And, is said to be capable of an incredible frequency of 10 gHz.[24]

The *Metal semiconductor field effect transistor (MESFET)* is similar to a JFET except the

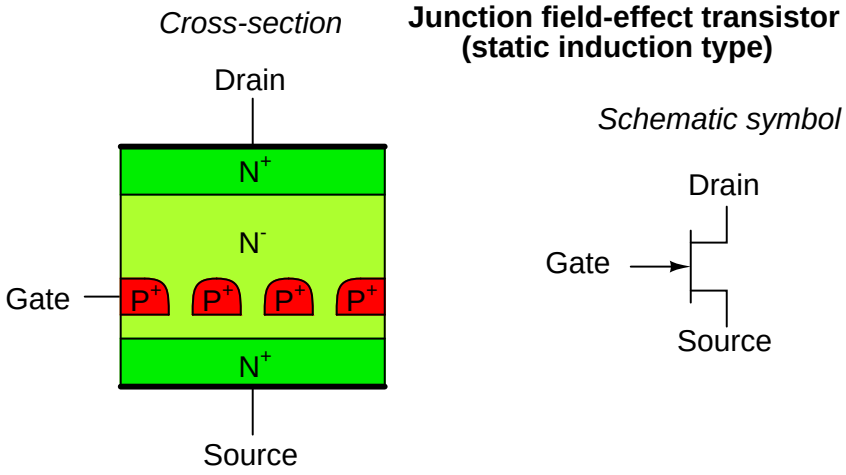


Figure 2.43: *Junction field effect transistor (static induction type): (a) Cross-section, (b) schematic symbol.*

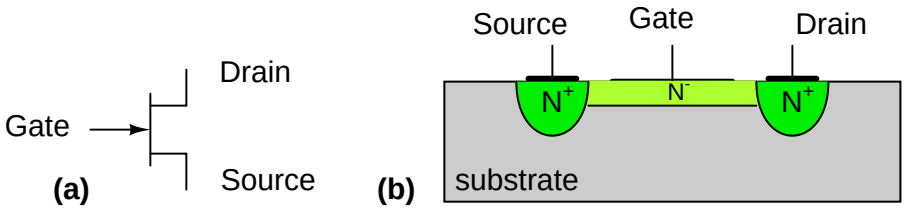


Figure 2.44: *Metal semiconductor field effect transistor (MESFET): (a) schematic symbol, (b) cross-section.*

gate is a schottky diode instead of a junction diode. A *schottky diode* is a metal rectifying contact to a semiconductor compared with a more common ohmic contact. In Figure 2.44 the the source and drain are heavily doped (N^+). The channel is lightly doped (N^-). MESFET's are higher speed than JFET's. The MESET is a depletion mode device, normally on, like a JFET. They are used as microwave power amplifiers to 30 gHz. MESFET's can be fabricated from silicon, gallium arsenide, indium phosphide, silicon carbide, and the diamond allotrope of carbon.

- **REVIEW:**
- The unipolar junction field effect transistor (FET or JFET) is so called because conduction in the channel is due to one type of carrier
- The JFET source, gate, and drain correspond to the BJT's emitter, base, and collector, respectively.
- Application of reverse bias to the gate varies the channel resistance by expanding the gate diode depletion region.

2.10 Insulated-gate field-effect transistors (MOSFET)

The *insulated-gate field-effect transistor* (IGFET), also known as the *metal oxide field effect transistor* (MOSFET), is a derivative of the field effect transistor (FET). Today, most transistors are of the MOSFET type as components of digital integrated circuits. Though discrete BJT's are more numerous than discrete MOSFET's. The MOSFET transistor count within an integrated circuit may approach the hundreds of a million. The dimensions of individual MOSFET devices are under a micron, decreasing every 18 months. Much larger MOSFET's are capable of switching nearly 100 amperes of current at low voltages; some handle nearly 1000 V at lower currents. These devices occupy a good fraction of a square centimeter of silicon. MOSFET's find much wider application than FET's. However, MOSFET power devices are not as widely used as bipolar junction transistors at this time.

The MOSFET has source, gate, and drain terminals like the FET. However, the gate lead does not make a direct connection to the silicon compared with the case for the FET. The MOSFET gate is a metallic or polysilicon layer atop a silicon dioxide insulator. The gate bears a resemblance to a *metal oxide semiconductor* (MOS) capacitor in Figure 2.45. When charged, the plates of the capacitor take on the charge polarity of the respective battery terminals. The lower plate is P-type silicon from which electrons are repelled by the negative (-) battery terminal toward the oxide, and attracted by the positive (+) top plate.. This excess of electrons near the oxide creates an inverted (excess of electrons) channel under the oxide. This channel is also accompanied by a depletion region isolating the channel from the bulk silicon substrate.

In Figure 2.46 (a) the MOS capacitor is placed between a pair of N-type diffusions in a P-type substrate. With no charge on the capacitor, no bias on the gate, the N-type diffusions, the source and drain, remain electrically isolated.

A positive bias applied to the gate, charges the capacitor (the gate). The gate atop the oxide takes on a positive charge from the gate bias battery. The P-type substrate below the gate takes on a negative charge. An inversion region with an excess of electrons forms below the gate

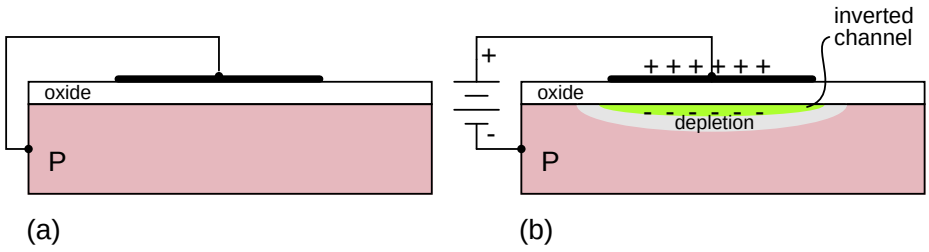


Figure 2.45: *N-channel MOS capacitor: (a) no charge, (b) charged.*

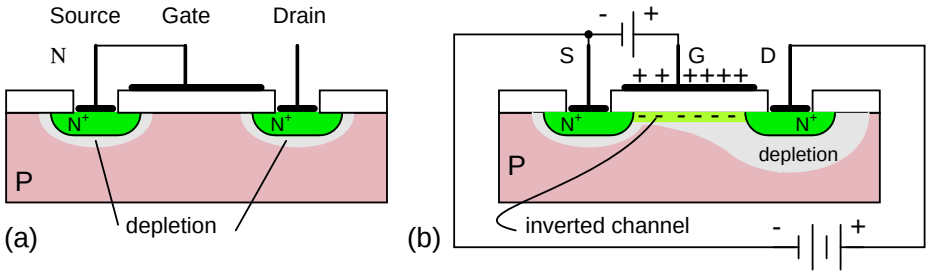


Figure 2.46: *N-channel MOSFET (enhancement type): (a) 0 V gate bias, (b) positive gate bias.*

oxide. This region now connects the source and drain N-type regions, forming a continuous N-region from source to drain. Thus, the MOSFET, like the FET is a unipolar device. One type of charge carrier is responsible for conduction. This example is an N-channel MOSFET. Conduction of a large current from source to drain is possible with a voltage applied between these connections. A practical circuit would have a load in series with the drain battery in Figure 2.46 (b).

The MOSFET described above in Figure 2.46 is known as an *enhancement mode* MOSFET. The non-conducting, off, channel is turned on by enhancing the channel below the gate by application of a bias. This is the most common kind of device. The other kind of MOSFET will not be described here. See the Insulated-gate field-effect transistor chapter for the *depletion mode* device.

The MOSFET, like the FET, is a voltage controlled device. A voltage input to the gate controls the flow of current from source to drain. The gate does not draw a continuous current. Though, the gate draws a surge of current to charge the gate capacitance.

The cross-section of an N-channel discrete MOSFET is shown in Figure 2.47 (a). Discrete devices are usually optimized for high power switching. The N^+ indicates that the source and drain are heavily N-type doped. This minimizes resistive losses in the high current path from source to drain. The N^- indicates light doping. The P-region under the gate, between source and drain can be inverted by application of a positive bias voltage. The doping profile is a cross-section, which may be laid out in a serpentine pattern on the silicon die. This greatly increases the area, and consequently, the current handling ability.

The MOSFET schematic symbol in Figure 2.47 (b) shows a “floating” gate, indicating no

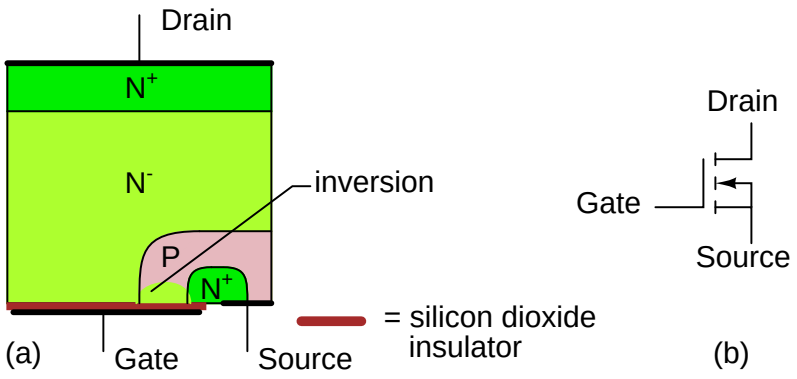


Figure 2.47: *N-channel MOSFET (enhancement type): (a) Cross-section, (b) schematic symbol.*

direct connection to the silicon substrate. The broken line from source to drain indicates that this device is off, not conducting, with zero bias on the gate. A normally "off" MOSFET is an enhancement mode device. The channel must be enhanced by application of a bias to the gate for conduction. The "pointing" end of the substrate arrow corresponds to P-type material, which points toward an N-type channel, the "non-pointing" end. This is the symbol for an N-channel MOSFET. The arrow points in the opposite direction for a P-channel device (not shown). MOSFET's are four terminal devices: source, gate, drain, and substrate. The substrate is connected to the source in discrete MOSFET's, making the packaged part a three terminal device. MOSFET's, that are part of an integrated circuit, have the substrate common to all devices, unless purposely isolated. This common connection may be bonded out of the die for connection to a ground or power supply bias voltage.

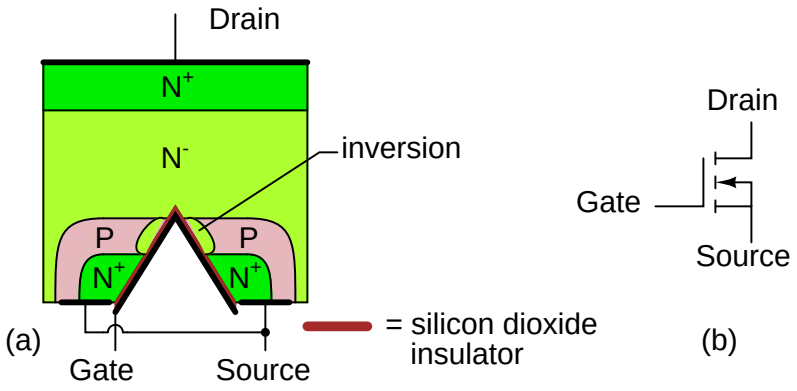


Figure 2.48: *N-channel "V-MOS" transistor: (a) Cross-section, (b) schematic symbol.*

The *V-MOS* device in (Figure 2.48) is an improved power MOSFET with the doping profile arranged for lower on-state source to drain resistance. VMOS takes its name from the V-shaped gate region, which increases the cross-section area of the source-drain path. This minimizes

losses and allows switching of higher levels of power. UMOS, a variation using a U-shaped grove, is more reproducible in manufacture.

- **REVIEW:**
- MOSFET's are unipoar conduction devices, conduction with one type of charge carrier, like a FET, but unlike a BJT.
- A MOSFET is a voltage controlled device like a FET. A gate voltage input controls the source to drain current.
- The MOSFET gate draws no continuous current, except leakage. However, a considerable initial surge of current is required to charge the gate capacitance.

2.11 Thyristors

Thyristors are a broad classification of bipolar-conducting semiconductor devices having four (or more) alternating N-P-N-P layers. Thyristors include: silicon controlled rectifier (SCR), TRIAC, gate turn off switch (GTO), silicon controlled switch (SCS), AC diode (DIAC), unijunction transistor (UJT), programmable unijunction transistor (PUT). Only the SCR is examined in this section; though the GTO is mentioned.

Shockley proposed the four layer diode thyristor in 1950. It was not realized until years later at General Electric. SCR's are now available to handle power levels spanning watts to megawatts. The smallest devices, packaged like small-signal transistors, switch 100's of milliamp at near 100 VAC. The largest packaged devices are 172 mm in diameter, switching 5600 Amps at 10,000 VAC. The highest power SCR's may consist of a whole semiconductor wafer several inches in diameter (100's of mm).

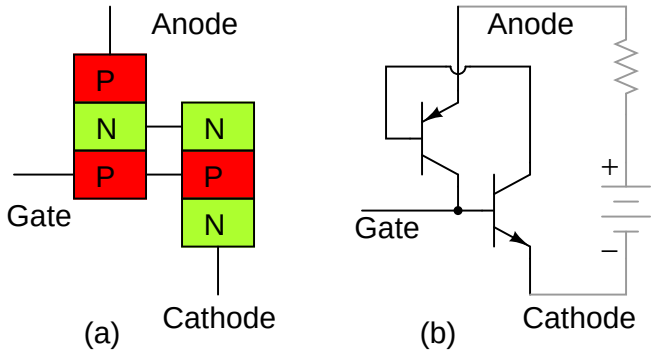


Figure 2.49: *Silicon controlled rectifier (SCR): (a) doping profile, (b) BJT equivalent circuit.*

The silicon controlled rectifier is a four layer diode with a gate connection as in Figure 2.49 (a). When turned on, it conducts like a diode, for one polarity of current. If not triggered on, it is nonconducting. Operation is explained in terms of the compound connected transistor equivalent in Figure 2.49 (b). A positive trigger signal is applied between the gate and cathode

terminals. This causes the NPN equivalent transistor to conduct. The collector of the conducting NPN transistor pulls low, moving the PNP base toward of its collector voltage, which causes the PNP to conduct. The collector of the conducting PNP pulls high, moving the NPN base in the direction of its collector. This positive feedback (regeneration) reinforces the NPN's already conducting state. Moreover, the NPN will now conduct even in the absence of a gate signal. Once an SCR conducts, it continues for as long as a positive anode voltage is present. For the DC battery shown, this is forever. However, SCR's are most often used with an alternating current or pulsating DC supply. Conduction ceases with the expiration of the positive half of the sinewave at the anode. Moreover, most practical SCR circuits depend on the AC cycle going to zero to cutoff or *commutate* the SCR.

Figure 2.50 (a) shows the doping profile of an SCR. Note that the cathode, which corresponds to an equivalent emitter of an NPN transistor is heavily doped as N^+ indicates. The anode is also heavily doped (P^+). It is the equivalent emitter of a PNP transistor. The two middle layers, corresponding to base and collector regions of the equivalent transistors, are less heavily doped: N^- and P. This profile in high power SCR's may be spread across a whole semiconductor wafer of substantial diameter.

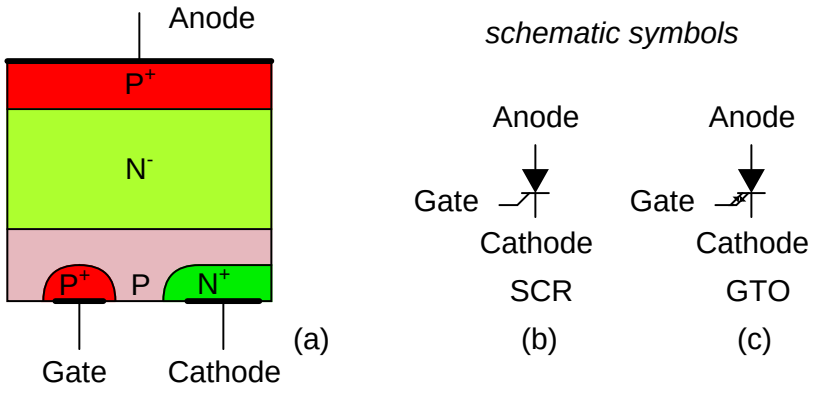


Figure 2.50: *Thyristors: (a) Cross-section, (b) silicon controlled rectifier (SCR) symbol, (c) gate turn-off thyristor (GTO) symbol.*

The schematic symbols for an SCR and GTO are shown in Figures 2.50 (b &c). The basic diode symbol indicates that cathode to anode conduction is unidirectional like a diode. The addition of a gate lead indicates control of diode conduction. The gate turn off switch (GTO) has bidirectional arrows about the gate lead, indicating that the conduction can be disabled by a negative pulse, as well as initiated by a positive pulse.

In addition to the ubiquitous silicon based SCR's, experimental silicon carbide devices have been produced. Silicon carbide (SiC) operates at higher temperatures, and is more conductive of heat than any metal, second to diamond. This should allow for either physically smaller or higher power capable devices.

- **REVIEW:**
- SCR's are the most prevalent member of the thyristor four layer diode family.

- A positive pulse applied to the gate of an SCR triggers it into conduction. Conduction continues even if the gate pulse is removed. Conduction only ceases when the anode to cathode voltage drops to zero.
- SCR's are most often used with an AC supply (or pulsating DC) because of the continuous conduction.
- A gate turn off switch (GTO) may be turned off by application of a negative pulse to the gate.
- SCR's switch megawatts of power, up to 5600 A and 10,000 V.

2.12 Semiconductor manufacturing techniques

The manufacture of only silicon based semiconductors is described in this section; most semiconductors are silicon. Silicon is particularly suitable for integrated circuits because it readily forms an oxide coating, useful in patterning integrated components like transistors.

Silicon is the second most common element in the Earth's crust in the form of silicon dioxide, SiO_2, otherwise known as silica sand. Silicon is freed from silicon dioxide by reduction with carbon in an electric arc furnace

$$SiO_2 + C = CO_2 + Si$$

Such metalurgical grade silicon is suitable for use in silicon steel transformer laminations, but not nearly pure enough for semiconductor applications. Conversion to the chloride $SiCl_4$ (or $SiHCl_3$) allows purification by fractional distillation. Reduction by ultrapure zinc or magnesium yields sponge silicon, requiring further purification. Or, thermal decomposition on a hot polycrystalline silicon rod heater by hydrogen yields ultra pure silicon.

$$Si + 3HCl = SiHCl_3 + H_2$$
$$SiHCl_3 + H_2 = Si + 3HCl_2$$

The polycrystalline silicon is melted in a fused silica crucible heated by an induction heated graphite suceptor. The graphite heater may alternately be directly driven by a low voltage at high current. In the *Czochralski process*, the silicon melt is solidified on to a pencil sized monocrystal silicon rod of the desired crystal lattice orientation. (Figure 2.51) The rod is rotated and pulled upward at a rate to encourage the diameter to expand to several inches. Once this diameter is attained, the *boule* is automatically pulled at a rate to maintain a constant diameter to a length of a few feet. Dopants may be added to the crucible melt to create, for example, a P-type semiconductor. The growing apparatus is enclosed within an inert atmosphere.

The finished boule is ground to a precise final diameter, and the ends trimmed. The boule is sliced into wafers by an inside diameter diamond saw. The wafers are ground flat and polished. The wafers could have an N-type *epitaxial* layer grown atop the wafer by thermal deposition for higher quality. Wafers at this stage of manufacture are delivered by the silicon wafer manufacturer to the semiconductor manufacturer.

The processing of semiconductors involves photo lithography, a process for making metal lithographic printing plates by acid etching. The electronics based version of this is the processing of copper printed circuit boards. This is reviewed in Figure 2.53 as an easy introduction to the photo lithography involved in semiconductor processing.

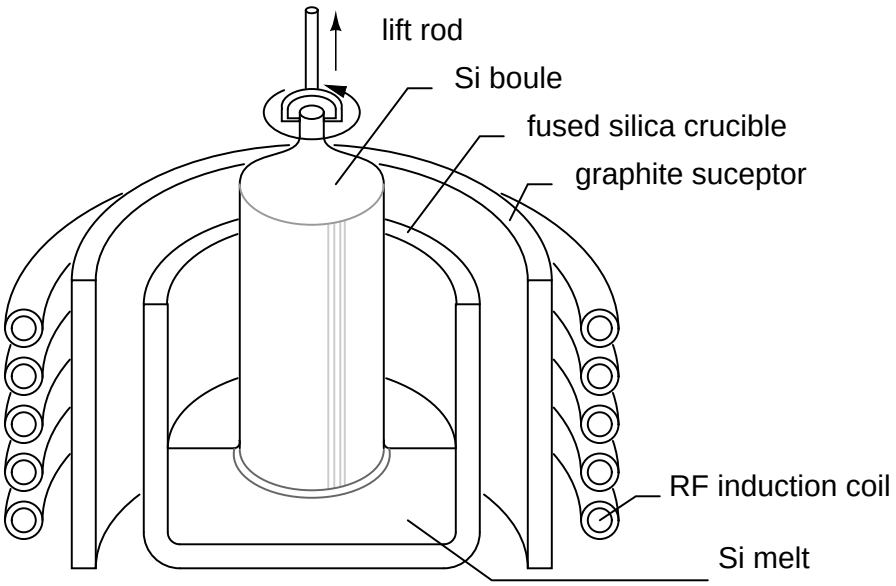


Figure 2.51: *Czochralski monocrystalline silicon growth.*

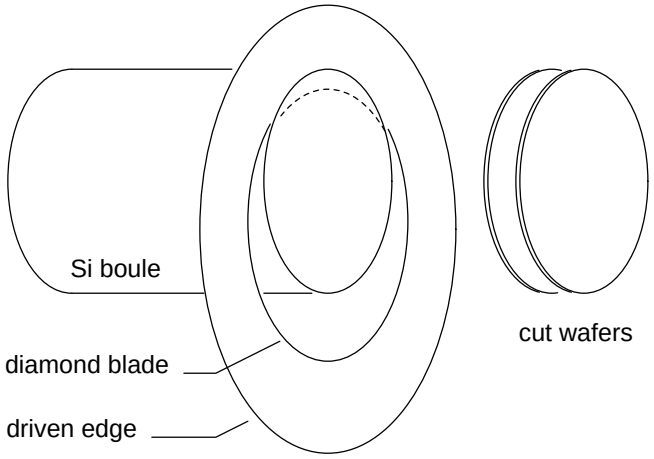


Figure 2.52: *Silicon boule is diamond sawed into wafers.*

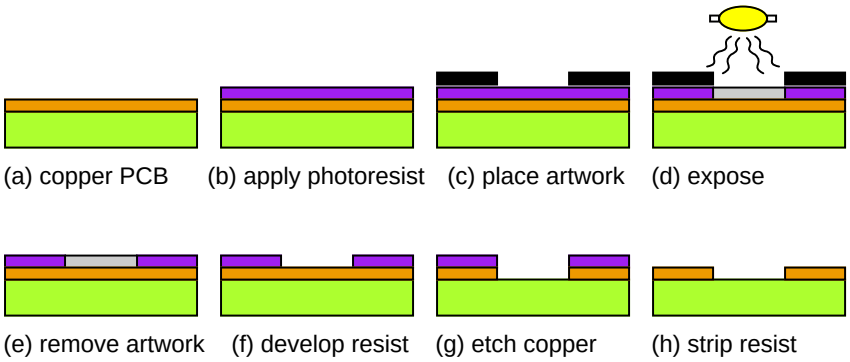


Figure 2.53: *Processing of copper printed circuit boards is similar to the photo lithographic steps of semiconductor processing.*

We start with a copper foil laminated to an epoxy fiberglass board in Figure 2.53 (a). We also need positive artwork with black lines corresponding to the copper wiring lines and pads that are to remain on the finished board. Positive artwork is required because positive acting resist is used. Though, negative resist is available for both circuit boards and semiconductor processing. At (b) the liquid positive photo resist is applied to the copper face of the printed circuit board (PCB). It is allowed to dry and may be baked in an oven. The artwork may be a plastic film positive reproduction of the original artwork scaled to the required size. The artwork is placed in contact with the circuit board under a glass plate at (c). The board is exposed to ultraviolet light (d) to form a *latent* image of softened photo resist. The artwork is removed (e) and the softened resist washed away by an alkaline solution (f). The rinsed and dried (baked) circuit board has a hardened resist image atop the copper lines and pads that are to remain after etching. The board is immersed in the etchant (g) to remove copper not protected by hardened resist. The etched board is rinsed and the resist removed by a solvent.

The major difference in the patterning of semiconductors is that a silicon dioxide layer atop the wafer takes the place of the resist during the high temperature processing steps. Though, the resist is required in low temperature wet processing to pattern the silicon dioxide.

An N-type doped silicon wafer in Figure 2.54 (a) is the starting material in the manufacture of semiconductor junctions. A silicon dioxide layer (b) is grown atop the wafer in the presence of oxygen or water vapor at high temperature (over 1000^o C in a diffusion furnace. A pool of resist is applied to the center of the cooled wafer, then spun in a vacuum chuck to evenly distribute the resist. The baked on resist (c) has a chrome on glass mask applied to the wafer at (d). This mask contains a pattern of windows which is exposed to ultraviolet light (e).

After the mask is removed in Figure 2.54 (f), the positive resist can be developed (g) in an alkaline solution, opening windows in the UV softened resist. The purpose of the resist is to protect the silicon dioxide from the hydrofluoric acid etch (h), leaving only open windows corresponding to the mask openings. The remaining resist (i) is stripped from the wafer before returning to the diffusion furnace. The wafer is exposed to a gaseous P-type dopant at high temperature in a diffusion furnace (j). The dopant only diffuses into the silicon through the openings in the silicon dioxide layer. Each P-diffusion through an opening produces a PN

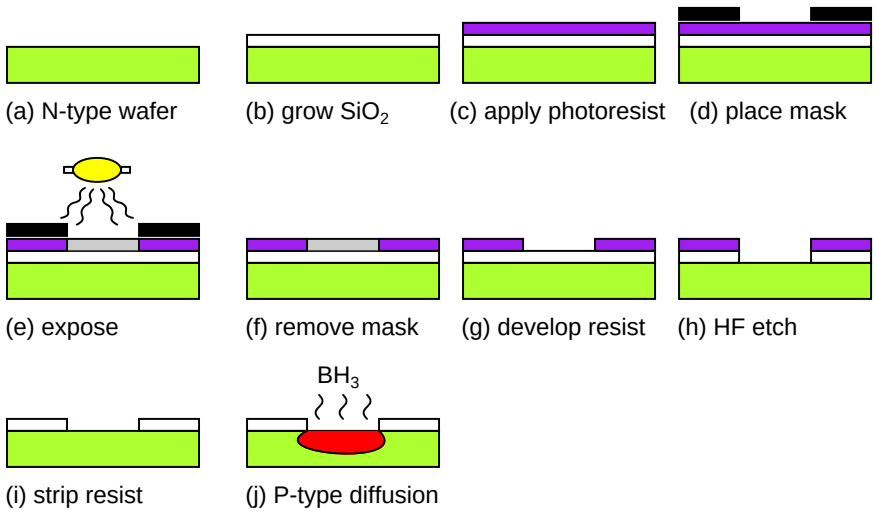


Figure 2.54: *Manufacture of a silicon diode junction.*

junction. If diodes were the desired product, the wafer would be diamond scribed and broken into individual diode chips. However, the whole wafer may be processed further into bipolar junction transistors.

To convert the diodes into transistors, a small N-type diffusion in the middle of the existing P-region is required. Repeating the previous steps with a mask having smaller openings accomplishes this. Though not shown in Figure 2.54 (j), an oxide layer was probably formed in that step during the P-diffusion. The oxide layer over the P-diffusion is shown in Figure 2.55 (k). Positive photo resist is applied and dried (l). The chrome on glass emitter mask is applied (m), and UV exposed (n). The mask is removed (o). The UV softened resist in the emitter opening is removed with an alkaline solution (p). The exposed silicon dioxide is etched away with hydrofluoric acid (HF) at (q)

After the unexposed resist is stripped from the wafer (r), it is placed in a diffusion furnace (Figure 2.55 (s) for high temperature processing. An N-type gaseous dopant, such phosphorus oxychloride (POCl) diffuses through the small emitter window in the oxide (s). This creates NPN layers corresponding to the emitter, base, and collector of a BJT. It is important that the N-type emitter not be driven all the way through the P-type base, shorting the emitter and collector. The base region between the emitter and collector also needs to be thin so that the transistor has a useful β. Otherwise, a thick base region could form a pair of diodes rather than a transistor. At (t) metalization is shown making contact with the transistor regions. This requires a repeat of the previous steps (not shown here) with a mask for contact openings through the oxide. Another repeat with another mask defines the metalization pattern atop the oxide and contacting the transistor regions through the openings.

The metalization could connect numerous transistors and other components into an *integrated circuit*. Though, only one transistor is shown. The finished wafer is diamond scribed and broken into individual dies for packaging. Fine gauge aluminum wire bonds the metalized contacts on the die to a *lead frame*, which brings the contacts out of the final package.

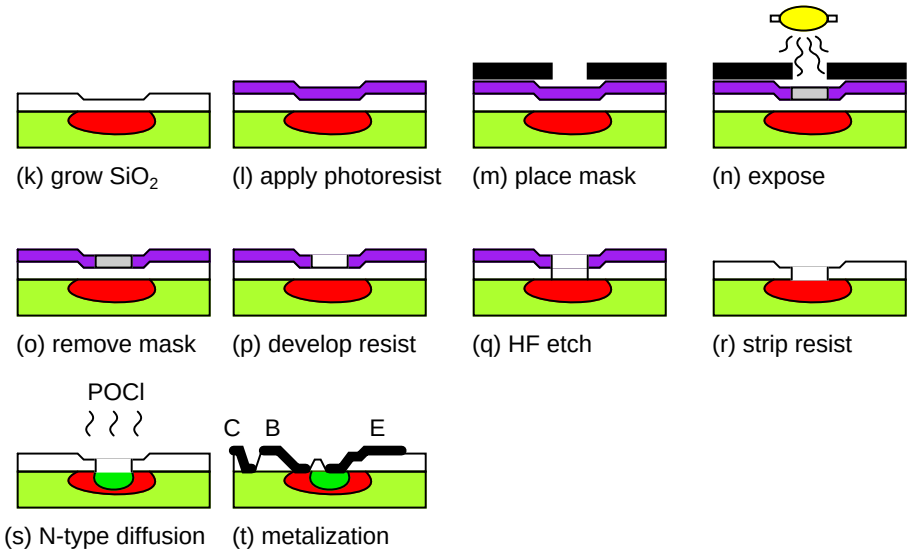


Figure 2.55: *Manufacture of a bipolar junction transistor, continuation of Manufacture of a silicon diode junction.*

- **REVIEW:**
- Most semiconductor are based on ultra pure silicon because it forms a glass oxide atop the wafer. This oxide can be patterned with photo lithography, making complex integrated circuits possible.
- Sausage shaped single crystals of silicon are grown by the Czochralski process, These are diamond sawed into wafers.
- The patterning of silicon wafers by photo lithography is similar to patterning copper printed circuit boards. Photo resist is applied to the wafer, which is exposed to UV light through a mask. The resist is developed, then the wafer is etched.
- hydrofluoric acid etching opens windows in the protective silicon dioxide atop the wafer.
- Exposure to gaseous dopants at high temperature produces semiconductor junctions as defined by the openings in the silicon dioxide layer.
- The photo lithography is repeated for more diffusions, contacts, and metalization.
- The metalization may interconnect multiple components into an integrated circuit.

2.13 Superconducting devices

Superconducting devices, though not widely used, have some unique characteristics not available in standard semiconductor devices. High sensitivity with respect to amplification of electrical signals, detection of magnetic fields, and detection of light are prized applications. High speed switching is also possible, though not applied to computers at this time. Conventional superconducting devices must be cooled to within a few degrees of 0 Kelvin (-273 ^{o} C). Though, work is proceeding at this time on *high temperature superconductor* based devices, useable at 90 K and below. This is significant because inexpensive liquid nitrogen may be used for cooling.

Superconductivity: Heike Onnes discovered *superconductivity* in mercury (Hg) in 1911, for which he won a Nobel prize. Most metals decrease electrical resistance with decreasing temperature. Though, most do not decrease to zero resistance as 0 Kelvin is approached. Mercury is unique in that its resistance abruptly drops to zero Ω at 4.2 K. Superconductors lose all resistance abruptly when cooled below their *critical temperature,* T_c A property of superconductivity is no power loss in conductors. Current may flow in a loop of superconducting wire for thousands of years. Super conductors include lead (Pb), aluminum, (Al), tin (Sn) and niobium (Nb).

Cooper pair: Lossless conduction in superconductors is not by ordinary electron flow. Electron flow in normal conductors encounters opposition as collisions with the rigid ionic metal crystal lattice. Decreasing vibrations of the crystal lattice with decreasing temperature accounts for decreasing resistance– up to a point. Lattice vibrations cease at absolute zero, but not the energy dissipating collisions of electrons with the lattice. Thus, normal conductors do not lose all resistance at absolute zero.

Electrons in superconductors form a pair of electrons called a *cooper pair*, as temperature drops below the critical temperature at which superconductivity begins. The cooper pair exists because it is at a lower energy level than unpaired electrons. The electrons are attracted to each other due to the exchange of *phonons*, very low energy particles related to vibrations. This cooper pair, quantum mechanical entity (particle or wave) is not subject to the normal laws of physics. This entity propagates through the lattice without encountering the metal ions comprising the fixed lattice. Thus, it dissipates no energy. The quantum mechanical nature of the cooper pair only allows it to exchange discrete amounts of energy, not continuously variable amounts. An absolute minimum quantum of energy is acceptable to the cooper pair. If the vibrational energy of the crystal lattice is less, (due to the low temperature), the cooper pair cannot accept it, cannot be scattered by the lattice. Thus, under the critical temperature, the cooper pairs flow unimpeded through the lattice.

Josephson junctions: Brian Josephson won a Nobel prize for his 1962 prediction of the *Josepheson junction*. A Josephson junction is a pair of superconductors bridged by a thin insulator, as in Figure 2.56 (b), through which electrons can tunnel. The first Josephson junctions were lead superconductors bridged by an insulator. These days a tri-layer of aluminum and niobium is preferred. Electrons can tunnel through the insulator even with zero voltage applied across the superconductors.

If a voltage is applied across the junction, the current decreases and oscillates at a high frequency proportional to voltage. The relationship between applied voltage and frequency is so precise that the standard volt is now defined in terms of Josephson junction oscillation frequency. The Josephson junction can also serve as a hyper-sensitive detector of low level magnetic fields. It is also very sensitive to electromagnetic radiation from microwaves to gamma

rays.

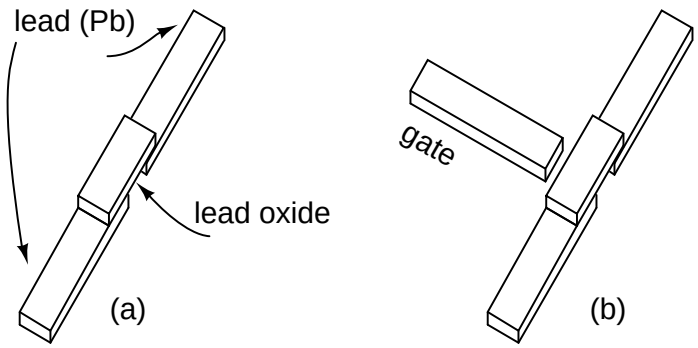


Figure 2.56: *(a) Josephson junction, (b) Josephson transistor.*

Josephson transistor: An electrode close to the oxide of the Josephson junction can influence the junction by capacitive coupling. Such an assembly in Figure 2.56 (b) is Josephson transistor. A major feature of the Josephson transistor is low power dissipation applicable to high density circuitry, for example, computers. This transistor is generally part of a more complex superconducting device like a SQUID or RSFQ.

SQUID: A *Superconduction quantum interference device* or *SQUID* is an assembly of Josephson junctions within a superconducting ring. The DC SQUID is only considered in this discussion. This device is highly sensitive to low level magnetic fields.

A constant current bias is forced across the ring in parallel with both Josephson junctions in Figure 2.57. The current divides equally between the two junctions in the absence of an applied magnetic field and no voltage is developed across across the ring. [3] While any value of Magnetic flux (Φ) may be applied to the SQUID, only a quantized value (a multiple of the flux quanta) can flow through the opening in the superconducting ring.[2] If the applied flux is not an exact multiple of the flux quanta, the excess flux is cancelled by a circulating current around the ring which produces a fractional flux quanta. The circulating current will flow in that direction which cancels any excess flux above a multiple of the flux quanta. It may either add to, or subtract from the applied flux, up to $\pm(1/2)$ a flux quanta. If the circulating current flows clockwise, the current adds to the top Josepheson junction and subtracts from the lower one. Changing applied flux linearly causes the circulating current to vary as a sinusoid.[**?**] This can be measured as a voltage across the SQUID. As the applied magnetic field is increased, a voltage pulse may be counted for each increase by a flux quanta.[18]

A SQUID is said to be sensitive to 10^{-14} Tesla, It can detect the magnetic field of neural currents in the brain at 10^{-13} Tesla. Compare this with the 30 x 10^{-6} Tesla strength of the Earth's magnetic field.

Rapid single flux quantum (RSFQ): Rather than mimic silicon semiconductor circuits, RSFQ circuits rely upon new concepts: magnetic flux quantization within a superconductor, and movement of the flux quanta produces a picosecond quantized voltage pulse. Magnetic flux can only exist within a section of superconductor quantized in discrete multiples. The lowest flux quanta allowed is employed. The pulses are switched by Josephson junctions instead of conventional transistors. The superconductors are based on a triple layer of aluminum and

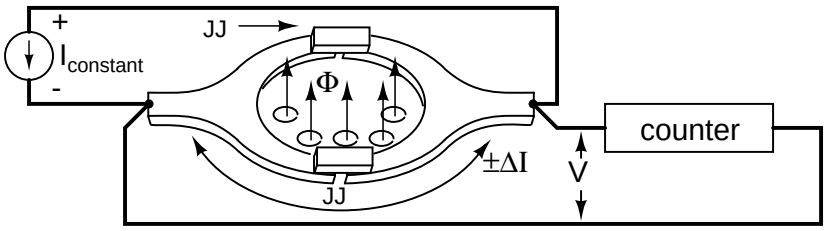


Figure 2.57: *Superconduction quantum interference device (SQUID): Josephson junction pair within a superconducting ring. A change in flux produces a voltage variation across the JJ pair.*

niobium with a critical temperature of 9.5 K, cooled to 5 K.

RSQF's operate at over 100 gHz with very little power dissipation. Manufacture is simple with existing photolithographic techniques. Though, operation requires refrigeration down to 5 K . Real world commercial applications include analog-to-digital and digital to analog converters, toggle flip-flops, shift registers, memory, adders, and multipliers.[4]

High temperature superconductors: *High temperature superconductors* are compounds exhibiting superconductivity above the liquid nitrogen boiling point of 77 K. This is significant because liquid nitrogen is readily available and inexpensive. Most conventional superconductors are metals; widely used high temperature superconductors are *cuprates*, mixed oxides of copper (Cu), for example $YBa_2Cu_3O_{7-x}$, critical temperature, T_c = 90 K . A list of others is available.[22] Most of the devices described in this section are being developed in high temperature superconductor versions for less critical applications. Though they do not have the performance of the conventional metal superconductor devices, the liquid nitrogen cooling is more available.

- **REVIEW:**
- Most metals decrease resistance as they approach absolute 0; though, the resistance does not drop to 0. Superconductors experience a rapid drop to zero resistance at their critical temperature on being cooled. Typically T_c is within 10 K of absolute zero.
- A Cooper pair, electron pair, a quantum mechanical entity, moves unimpeded through the metal crystal lattice.
- Electrons are able to tunnel through a Josephson junction, an insulating gap across a pair of superconductors.
- The addition of a third electrode, or gate, near the junction constitutes a Josephson transistor.
- A SQUID, Superconduction quantum interference device, is an highly sensitive detector of magnetic fields. It counts quantum units of a magnetic field within a superconducting ring.
- RSFQ, Rapid single flux quantum is a high speed switching device based on switching the magnetic quanta existing withing a superconducting loop.

- High temperature superconductors, T_c above liquid nitrogen boiling point, may also be used to build the superconducting devices in this section.

2.14 Quantum devices

Most integrated circuits are digital, based on MOS (CMOS) transistors. Every couple of years since the late 1960's a geometry shrink has taken place, increasing the circuit density– more circuitry at lower cost in the same space. As of this writing (2006), the MOS transistor gate length is 65-nm for leading edge production, with 45-nm anticipated within a year. At 65-nm leakage currents were becoming evident. At 45-nm, heroic innovations were required to minimize this leakage. The end of shrinkage in MOS transistors is expected at 20- to 30-nm. Though some think that 1- to 2-nm is the limit. Photolithography, or other lithographic techniques, will continue to improve, providing ever smaller geometry. However, conventional MOS transistors are not expected to be useable at these smaller geometries below 20- to 30-nm.

Improved photolithography will have to be applied to other than the conventional transistors, dimensions (under 20- to 30-nm). The objectional MOS leakage currents are due to quantum mechanical effects–electron tunneling through gate oxide, and the narrow channel. In summary, quantum mechanical effects are a hindrance to ever smaller conventional MOS transistors. The path to ever smaller geometry devices involves unique active devices which make practical use of quantum mechanical principles. As physical geometry becomes very small, electrons may be treated as the quantum mechanical equivalent: a wave. Devices making use of quantum mechanical principles include: resonant tunneling diodes, quantum tunneling transistors, metal insulator insulator metal diodes, and quantum dot transistors.

Quantum tunneling: is the passing of electrons through an insulating barrier which is thin compared to the de Broglie (page 31) electron wavelength. If the "electron wave" is large compared to the barrier, there is a possibility that the wave appears on both sides of the barrier.

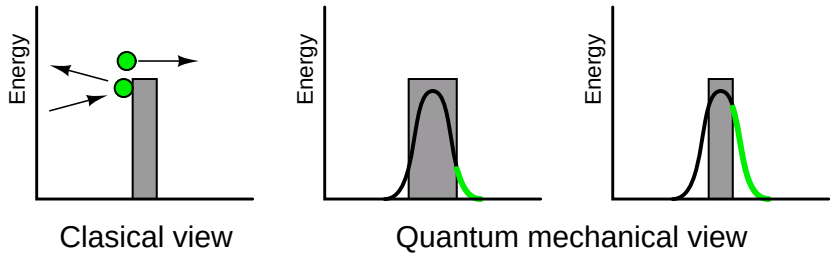


Figure 2.58: *Classical view of an electron surmounting a barrier, or not. Quantum mechanical view allows an electron to tunnel through a barrier. The probability (green) is related to the barrier thickness. After Figure 1 [21]*

In classical physics, an electron must have sufficient energy to surmount a barrier. Otherwise, it recoils from the barrier. (Figure 2.58) Quantum mechanics allows for a probability of the electron being on the other side of the barrier. If treated as a wave, the electron may look quite large compared to the thickness of the barrier. Even when treated as a wave, there is only a small probability that it will be found on the other side of a thick barrier. See green

portion of curve, Figure 2.58. Thinning the barrier increases the probability that the electron is found on the other side of the barrier. [21]

Tunnel diode: The unqualified term *tunnel diode* refers to the *esaki tunnel diode*, an early quantum device. A reverse biased diode forms a depletion region, an insulating region, between the conductive anode and cathode. This depletion region is only thin as compared to the electron wavelength when heavily doped– 1000 times the doping of a rectifier diode. With proper biasing, quantum tunneling is possible. See (page 144)for details.

RTD, resonant tunneling diode: This is a quantum device not to be confused with the Esaki tunnel diode, (page 144) , a conventional heavily doped bipolar semiconductor. Electrons *tunnel* through two barriers separated by a well in flowing source to drain in a *resonant tunneling diode*. Tunneling is also known as quantum mechanical tunneling. The flow of electrons is controlled by diode bias. This matches the energy levels of the electrons in the source to the quantized level in the well so that electrons can tunnel through the barriers. The energy level in the well is quantized because the well is small. When the energy levels are equal, a *resonance* occurs, allowing electron flow through the barriers as shown in Figure 2.59 (b). No bias or too much bias, in Figures 2.59 (a) and (c) respectively, yields an energy mismatch between the source and the well, and no conduction.

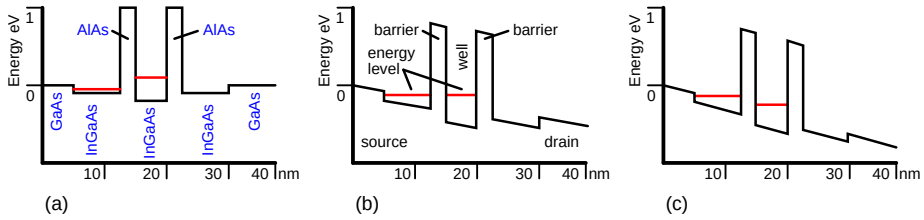


Figure 2.59: *Resonant tunneling diode (RTD): (a) No bias, source and well energy levels not matched, no conduction. (b) Small bias causes matched energy levels (resonance); conduction results. (c) Further bias mismatches energy levels, decreasing conduction.*

As bias is increased from zero across the RTD, the current increases and then decreases, corresponding to off, on, and off states. This makes simplification of conventional transistor circuits possible by substituting a pair of RTD's for two transistors. For example, two back-to-back RTD's and a transistor form a memory cell, using fewer components, less area and power compared with a conventional circuit. The potential application of RTD's is to reduce the component count, area, and power dissipation of conventional transistor circuits by replacing some, though not all, transistors. [10] RTD's have been shown to oscillate up to 712 gHz. [7]

Double-layer tunneling transistor: The *Deltt*, otherwise known as the *Double-layer tunneling transistor* is constructed of a pair of conductive wells separated by an insulator or high band gap semiconductor. (Figure 2.60) The wells are so thin that electrons are confined to two dimensions. These are known as *¡quantum wells*. A pair of these quantum wells are insulated by a thin GaAlAs, high band gap (does not easily conduct) layer. Electrons can *tunnel* through the insulating layer if the electrons in the two quantum wells have the same momentum and energy. The wells are so thin that the electron may be treated as a wave– the quantum mechanical duality of particles and waves. The top and optional bottom control gates may be adjusted to equalize the energy levels (resonance) of the electrons to allow conduction from

source to drain. Figure 2.60, barrier diagram red bars show unequal energy levels in the wells, an "off-state" condition. Proper biasing of the gates equalizes the energy levels of electrons in the wells, the "on-state" condition. The bars would be at the same level in the energy level diagram.

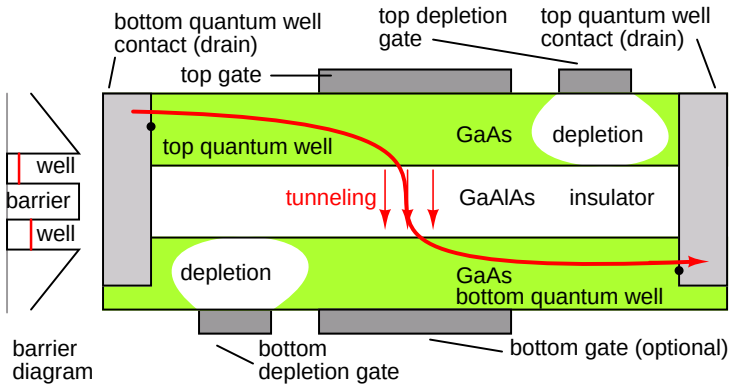


Figure 2.60: *Double-layer tunneling transistor (Deltt) is composed of two electron containing wells separated by a nonconducting barrier. The gate voltages may be adjusted so that the energy and momentum of the electrons in the wells are equal which permits electrons to tunnel through the nonconductive barrier. (The energy levels are shown as unequal in the barrier diagram.)*

If gate bias is increased beyond that required for tunneling, the energy levels in the quantum wells no longer match, tunneling is inhibited, source to drain current decreases. To summarize, increasing gate bias from zero results in on, off, on conditions. This allows a pair of Deltt's to be stacked in the manner of a CMOS complementary pair; though, different p- and n-type transistors are not required. Power supply voltage is about 100 mV. Experimental Deltt's have been produced which operate near 4.2 K, 77 K, and 0^o C. Room temperature versions are expected.[10] [12] [19]

MIIM diode: The *metal-insulator-insulator-metal* (MIIM) diode is a quantum tunneling device, not based on semiconductors. See "MIIM diode section" Figure 2.61. The insulator layers must be thin compared to the de Broglie (page 31) electron wavelength, for quantum tunneling to be possible. For diode action, there must be a prefered tunneling direction, resulting in a sharp bend in the diode forward characteristic curve. The MIIM diode has a sharper forward curve than the metal insulator metal (MIM) diode, not considered here.

The energy levels of M1 and M2 are equal in "no bias" Figure 2.61. However, (thermal) electrons cannot flow due to the high I1 and I2 barriers. Electrons in metal M2 have a higher energy level in "reverse bias" Figure 2.61, but still cannot overcome the isulator barrier. As "forward bias" Figure 2.61 is increased, a *quantum well*, an area where electrons may exist, is formed between the insulators. Electrons may pass through insulator I1 if M1 is bised at the same energy level as the quantum well. A simple explanation is that the distance through the insulators is shorter. A longer explanation is that as bias increases, the probability of the electron wave everlapping from M1 to the quantum well increases. For a more detailed

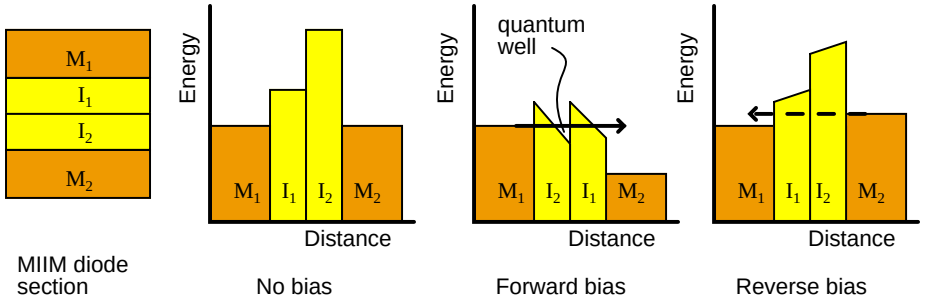


Figure 2.61: *Metal insulator insulator metal (MIIM) diode: Cross section of diode. Energy levels for no bias, forward bias, and reverse bias. After Figure 1 [20].*

explanation see Phiar Corp. [20]

MIIM devices operate at higher frequencies (3.7 THz) than microwave transistors. [15] The addition of a third electrode to a MIIM diode produces a transistor.

Quantum dot transistor: An isolated conductor may take on a charge, measured in coulombs for large objects. For a nano-scale isolated conductor known as a *quantum dot*, the charge is measured in electrons. A quantum dot of 1- to 3-nm may take on an incremental charge of a single electron. This is the basis of the *quantum dot transistor*, also known as a *single electron transistor*.

A quantum dot placed atop a thin insulator over an electron rich source is known as a *single electron box*. (Figure 2.62 (a)) The energy required to transfer an electron is related to the size of the dot and the number of electrons already on the dot.

A gate electrode above the quantum dot can adjust the energy level of the dot so that quantum mechanical tunneling of an electron (as a wave) from the source through the insulator is possible. (Figure 2.62 (b)) Thus, a single electron may tunnel to the dot.

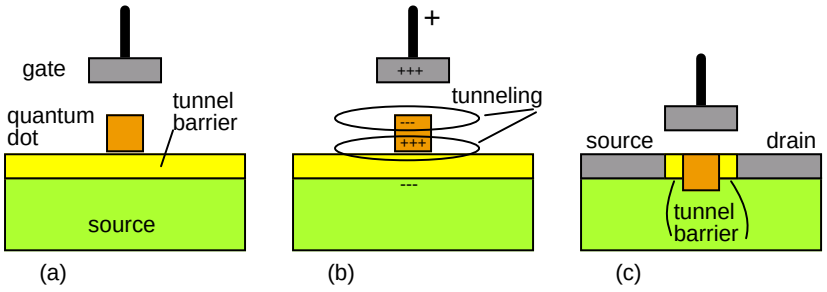


Figure 2.62: *(a) Single electron box, an isolated quantum dot separated from an electron source by an insulator. (b) Positive charge on the gate polarizes quantum dot, tunneling an electron from the source to the dot. (c) Quantum transistor: channel is replaced by quantum dot surrounded by tunneling barrier.*

If the quantum dot is surrounded by a tunnel barrier and embedded between the source

and drain of a conventional FET, as in Figure 2.62 (c) , the charge on the dot can modulate the flow of electrons from source to drain. As gate voltage increases, the source to drain current increases, up to a point. A further increase in gate voltage decreases drain current. This is similar to the behavior of the RTD and Deltt resonant devices. Only one kind of transistor is required to build a complementary logic gate.[10]

Single electron transistor: If a pair of conductors, superconductors, or semiconductors are separated by a pair tunnel barriers (insulator), surrounding a tiny conductive island, like a quantum dot, the flow of a single charge (a Cooper pair for superconductors) may be controlled by a gate. This is *single electron transistor* similar to Figure 2.62 (c). Increasing the positive charge on the gate, allows an electron to tunnel to the island. If it is sufficiently small, the low capacitance will cause the dot potential to rise substantially due to the single electron. No more electrons can tunnel to the island due the electron charge. This is known at the *coulomb blockade*. The electron which tunneled to the island, can tunnel to the drain.

Single electron transistors operate at near absolute zero. The exception is the graphene single electron transistor, having a graphene island. They are all experimental devices.

Graphene transistor: Graphite, an allotrope of carbon, does not have the rigid interlocking crystalline structure of diamond. None the less, it has a crystalline structure– one atom thick, a so called two-dimensional structure. A graphite is a three-dimensional crystal. However, it cleaves into thin sheets. Experimenters, taking this to the extreme, produce micron sized specks as thin as a single atom known as *graphene*. (Figure 2.63 (a)) These membranes have unique electronic properties. Highly conductive, conduction is by either electrons or holes, without doping of any kind. [11]

Graphene sheets may be cut into transistor structures by lithographic techniques. The transistors bear some resemblance to a MOSFET. A gate capacitively coupled to a graphene channel controls conduction.

As silicon transistors scale to smaller sizes, leakage increases along with power dissipation. And they get smaller every couple of years. Graphene transistors dissipate little power. And, they switch at high speed. Graphene might be a replacement for silicon someday.

Graphene can be fashioned into devices as small as sixty atoms wide. Graphene quantum dots within a transistor this small serve as *single electron transistors*. Previous single electron transistors fashioned from either superconductors or conventional semiconductors operate near absolute zero. Graphene single electron transistors uniquely function at room temperature.[23]

Graphene transistors are laboratory curiosities at this time. If they are to go into production two decades from now, graphene wafers must be produced. The first step, production of graphene by chemical vapor deposition (CVD) has been accomplished on an experimental scale. Though, no wafers are available to date.

Carbon nanotube transistor: If a 2-D sheet of graphene is rolled, the resulting 1-D structure is known as a *carbon nanotube*. (Figure 2.63 (b)) The reason to treat it as 1-dimensional is that it is highly conductive. Electrons traverse the carbon nanotube without being scattered by a crystal lattice. Resistance in normal metals is caused by scattering of electrons by the metallic crystalline lattice. If electrons avoid this scattering, conduction is said to be by *ballistic transport*. Both metallic (acting) and semiconducting carbon nanotubes have been produced. [5]

Field effect transistors may be fashioned from a carbon nanotubes by depositing source and drain contacts on the ends, and capacitively coupling a gate to the nanotube between the

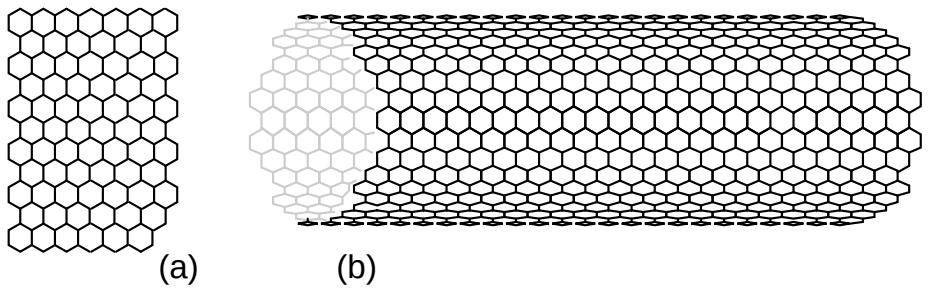


Figure 2.63: *(a) Graphene: A single sheet of the graphite allotrope of carbon. The atoms are arranged in a hexagonal pattern with a carbon at each intersection. (b) Carbon nanotube: A rolled-up sheet of graphene.*

contacts. Both p- and n-type transistors have been fabricated. Why the interest in carbon nanotube transistors? Nanotube semiconductors are Smaller, faster, lower power compared with silicon transistors. [6]

Spintronics: Conventional semiconductors control the flow of electron charge, current. Digital states are represented by "on" or "off" flow of current. As semiconductors become more dense with the move to smaller geometry, the power that must be dissipated as heat increases to the point that it is difficult to remove. Electrons have properties other than charge such as spin. A tentative explanation of *electron spin* is the rotation of distributed electron charge about the spin axis, analogous to diurnal rotation of the Earth. The loops of current created by charge movement, form a magnetic field. However, the electron is more like a point charge than a distributed charge, Thus, the rotating distributed charge analogy is not a correct explanation of spin. Electron spin may have one of two states: up or down which may represent digital states. More precisely the spin (m_s) quantum number may be $\pm 1/2$ the angular momentum (l) quantum number. [1]

Controlling electron spin instead of charge flow considerably reduces power dissipation and increases switching speed. *Spintronics*, an acronym for *SPIN TRansport electrONICS,* is not widely applied because of the difficulty of generating, controlling, and sensing electron spin. However, high density, non-volatile magnetic spin memory is in production using modified semiconductor processes. This is related to the *spin valve* magnetic read head used in computer harddisk drives, not mentioned further here.

A simple *magnetic tunnel junction (MTJ)* is shown in Figure 2.64 (a), consisting of a pair of *ferromagnetic*, strong magnetic properties like iron (Fe), layers separated by a thin insulator. Electrons can tunnel through a sufficiently thin insulator due to the quantum mechanical properties of electrons– the wave nature of electrons. The current flow through the MTJ is a function of the magnetization, spin polarity, of the ferromagnetic layers. The resistance of the MTJ is low if the magnetic spin of the top layer is in the same direction (polarity) as the bottom layer. If the magnetic spins of the two layers oppose, the resistance is higher. [8]

The change in resistance can be enhanced by the addition of an *antiferromagnet*, material having spins aligned but opposing, below the bottom layer in Figure 2.64 (b). This bias magnet *pins* the lower ferromagnetic layer spin to a single unchanging polarity. The top layer magnetization (spin) may be flipped to represent data by the application of an external magnetic field

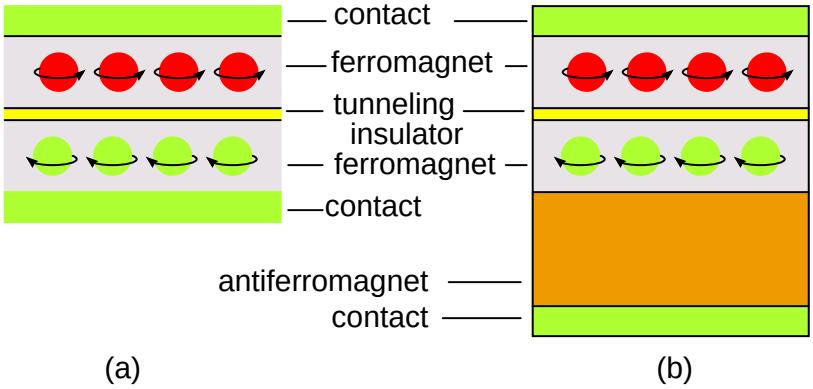


Figure 2.64: *(a) Magnetic tunnel junction (MTJ): Pair of ferromagnetic layers separated by a thin insulator. The resistance varies with the magnetization polarity of the top layer (b) Antiferromagnetic bias magnet and pinned bottom ferromagnetic layer increases resistance sensitivity to changes in polarity of the top ferromagnetic layer. Adapted from [8] Figure 3.*

not shown in the figure. The pinned layer is not affected by external magnetic fields. Again, the MTJ resistance is lowest when the spin of the top ferromagnetic layer is the same sense as the bottom pinned ferromagnetic layer. [8]

The MTJ may be improved further by splitting the pinned ferromagnetic layer into two layers separated by a buffer layer in Figure 2.65 (a). This isolates the top layer. The bottom ferromagnetic layer is pinned by the antiferromagnet as in the previous figure. The ferromagnetic layer atop the buffer is attracted by the bottom ferromagnetic layer. Opposites attract. Thus, the spin polarity of the additional layer is opposite of that in the bottom layer due to attraction. The bottom and middle ferromagnetic layers remain fixed. The top ferromagnetic layer may be set to either spin polarity by high currents in proximate conductors (not shown). This is how data are stored. Data are read out by the difference in current flow through the tunnel junction. Resistance is lowest if the layers on both sides of the insulting layer are of the same spin. [8]

An array of magnetic tunnel junctions may be embedded in a silicon wafer with conductors connecting the top and bottom terminals for reading data bits from the MTJ's with conventional CMOS circuitry. One such MTJ is shown in Figure 2.65 (b) with the read conductors. Not shown, another crossed array of conductors carrying heavy write currents switch the magnetic spin of the top ferromagnetic layer to store data. A current is applied to one of many "X" conductors and a "Y" conductor. One MTJ in the array is magnetized under the conductors' cross-over. Data are read out by sensing the MTJ current with conventional silicon semiconductor circuitry. [9]

The main reason for interest in magnetic tunnel junction memory is that it is *nonvolatile*. It does not lose data when powered "off". Other types of nonvolatile memory are capable of only limited storage cycles. MTJ memory is also higher speed than most semiconductor memory types. It is now (2006) a commercial product. [17]

Not a commercial product, or even a laboratory device, is the theoretical spin transistor

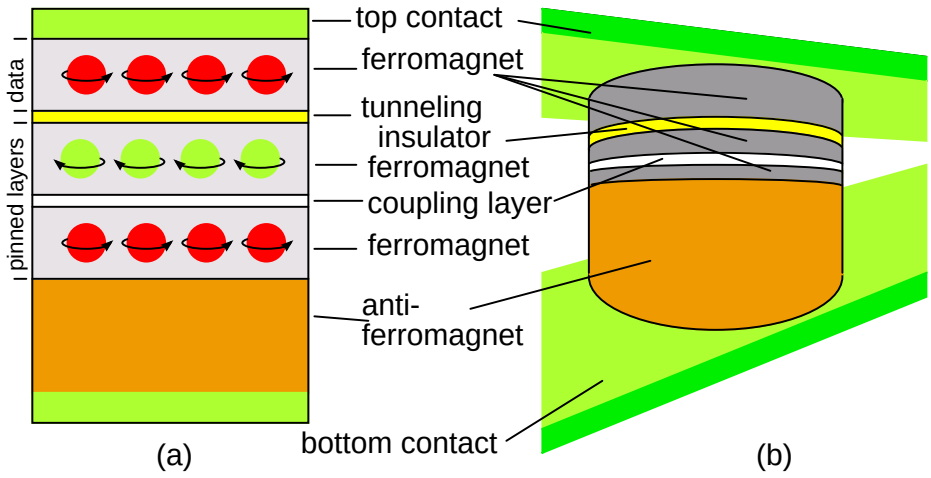


Figure 2.65: *(a)Splitting the pinned ferromagnetic layer of (b) by a buffer layer improves stability and isolates the top ferromagnetic unpinned layer. Data are stored in the top ferromagnetic layer based on spin polarity (b) MTJ cell embedded in read lines of a semiconductor die– one of many MTJ's. Adapted from [9]*

which might one day make spin logic gates possible. The spin transistor is a derivative of the theoretical spin diode.

It has been known for some time that electrons flowing through a cobalt-iron ferromagnet become spin polarized. The ferromagnet acts as a filter passing electrons of one spin preferentially. These electrons may flow into an adjacent nonmagnetic conductor (or semiconductor) retaining the spin polarization for a short time, nano-seconds. Though, spin polarized electrons may propagate a considerable distance compared with semiconductor dimensions. The spin polarized electrons may be detected by a nickel-iron ferromagnetic layer adjacent to the semiconductor. [1] [14]

It has also been shown that electron spin polarization occurs when circularly polarized light illuminates some semiconductor materials. Thus, it should be possible to inject spin polarized electrons into a semiconductor diode or transistor. The interest in spin based transistors and gates is because of the non-dissipative nature of spin propagation, compared with dissipative charge flow. As conventional semiconductors are scaled down in size, power dissipation increases. At some point the scaling down will no longer be practical. Researchers are looking for a replacement for the conventional charge flow based transistor. That device may be based on spintronics. [13]

- **REVIEW:**
- As MOS gate oxide thins with each generation of smaller transistors, excessive gate leakage causes unacceptable power dissipation and heating. The limit of scaling down conventional semiconductor geometry is within sight.
- Resonant tunneling diode (RTD): Quantum mechanical effects, which degrade conven-

tional semiconductors, are employed in the RTD. The flow of electrons through a sufficiently thin insulator, is by the wave nature of the electron– particle wave duality. The RTD functions as an amplifier.

- Double layer tunneling transistor (Deltt): The Deltt is a transistor version of the RTD. Gate bias controls the ability of electrons to tunnel through a thin insulator from one quantum well to another (source to drain).

- Quantum dot transistor: A quantum dot, capable of holding a charge, is surrounded by a thin tunnel barrier replacing the gate of a conventional FET. The charge on the quantum dot controls source to drain current flow.

- Spintronics: Electrons have two basic properties: charge and spin. Conventional electronic devices control the flow of charge, dissipating energy. Spintronic devices manipulate electron spin, a propagative, non-dissipative process.

2.15 Semiconductor devices in SPICE

The SPICE (**s**imulation **p**rogram, **i**ntegrated **c**ircuit **e**mphesis) electronic simulation program provides circuit elements and models for semiconductors. The SPICE element names begin with d, q, j, or m correspond to diode, BJT, JFET and MOSFET elements, respectively. These elements are accompanied by corresponding "models" These models have extensive lists of parameters describing the device. Though, we do not list them here. In this section we provide a very brief listing of simple spice models for semiconductors, just enough to get started. For more details on models and an extensive list of model parameters see Kuphaldt. [16] This reference also gives instructions on using SPICE.

Diode: The diode statement begins with a diode element name which must begin with "d" plus optional characters. Some example diode element names include: d1, d2, dtest, da, db, d101, etc. Two node numbers specify the connection of the anode and cathode, respectively, to other components. The node numbers are followed by a model name, referring to a ".model" statement.

The model statement line begins with ".model", followed by the model name matching one or more diode statements. Next is a "d" indicating that a diode is being modeled. The remainder of the model statement is a list of optional diode parameters of the form ParameterName=ParameterValue. None are shown in the example below. For a list, see reference, "diodes". [16]

```
General form:  d[name] [anode] [cathode] [model]
               .model  [modelname] d ( [parmtr1=x] [parmtr2=y] . . .)

Example:       d1 1 2 mod1
                .model mod1 d
```

Models for specific diode part numbers are often furnished by the semiconductor diode manufacturer. These models include parameters. Otherwise, the parameters default to so called "default values", as in the example.

BJT, bipolar junction transistor: The BJT element statement begins with an element name which must begin with "q" with associated circuit symbol designator characters, example: q1, q2, qa, qgood. The BJT node numbers (connections) identify the wiring of the collector, base, emitter respectively. A model name following the node numbers is associated with a model statement.

```
General form:  q[name] [collector] [base] [emitter] [model]
               .model [modelname] [npn or pnp] ([parmtr1=x] . . .)

Example:       q1 2 3 0 mod1
              .model mod1 pnp
Example:       q2 7 8 9 q2n090
              .model q2n090  npn ( bf=75 )
```

The model statement begins with ".model", followed by the model name, followed by one of "npn" or "pnp". The optional list of parameters follows, and may continue for a few lines beginning with line continuation symbol "+", plus. Shown above is the forward β parameter set to 75 for the hypothetical q2n090 model. Detailed transistor models are often available from semiconductor manufacturers.

FET, field effect transistor The field effect transistor element statement begins with an element name beginning with "j" for JFET associated with some unique characters, example: j101, j2b, jalpha, etc. The node numbers follow for the drain, gate and source terminals, respectively. The node numbers define connectivity to other circuit components. Finally, a model name indicates the JFET model to use.

```
General form:  j[name] [drain] [gate] [source] [model]
               .model [modelname] [njf or pjf] ( [parmtr1=x] . . .)

Example:       j1 2 3 0 mod1
               .model mod1 pjf
               j3 4 5 0 mod2
               .model mod2 njf ( vto=-4.0 )
```

The ".model" in the JFET model statement is followed by the model name to identify this model to the JFET element statement(s) using it. Following the model name is either pjf or njf for p-channel or n-channel JFET's respectively. A long list of JFET parameters may follow. We only show how to set V_p, pinch off voltage, to -4.0 V for an n-channel JFET model. Otherwise, this vto parameter defaults to -2.5 V or 2.5V for n-channel or p-channel devices, respectively.

MOSFET, metal oxide field effect transistor The MOSFET element name must begin with "m", and is the first word in the element statement. Following are the four node numbers for the drain, gate, source, and substrate, respectively. Next is the model name. Note that the source and substrate are both connected to the same node "0" in the example. Discrete MOSFET's are packaged as three terminal devices, the source and substrate are the same physical terminal. Integrated MOSFET's are four terminal devices; the substrate is a fourth terminal. Integrated MOSFET's may have numerous devices sharing the same substrate, separate from the sources. Though, the sources might still be connected to the common substrate.

```
General form:  m[name] [drain] [gate] [source] [substrate] [model]
               .model [modelname] [nmos or pmos] ( [parmtr1=x] . . . )
```

```
Example:        m1 2 3 0 0 mod1
                m5 5 6 0 0 mod4
                .model mod1 pmos
                .model mod4 nmos ( vto=1 )
```

The MOSFET model statement begins with ".model" followed by the model name followed by either "pmos" or "nmos". Optional MOSFET model parameters follow. The list of possible parameters is long. See Volume 5, "MOSFET" for details. [16] MOSFET manufacturers provide detailed models. Otherwise, defaults are in effect.

The bare minimum semiconductor SPICE information is provided in this section. The models shown here allow simulation of basic circuits. In particular, these models do not account for high speed or high frequency operation. Simulations are shown in the Volume 5 Chapter 7, "Using SPICE ...".

- **REVIEW:**
- Semiconductors may be computer simulated with SPICE.
- SPICE provides element statements and models for the diode, BJT, JFET, and MOSFET.

Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Maciej Noszczyski (December 2003): Corrected spelling of Niels Bohr's name.

Bill Heath (September 2002): Pointed out error in illustration of carbon atom – the nucleus was shown with seven protons instead of six.

Bibliography

[1] David D. Awschalom, Michael E. Flatte, Nitin Samarth, "Spintronics", Scientific American, June 2002 at http://www.sciam.com

[2] John Bland, "The Fluxoid" in "A Mossbauer Spectroscopy and Magnetometry Study of Magnetic Multilayers and Oxides", Oliver Lodge Laboratory, Department of Physics, University of Liverpool, 2002, at http://www.cmp.liv.ac.uk/frink/thesis/thesis/node45.html ¡bibitem¿[JBb]John Bland, "Superconducting Quantum Interference Device (SQUID)" in "A Mssbauer Spectroscopy and Magnetometry Study of Magnetic Multilayers and Oxides", Oliver Lodge Laboratory, Department of Physics, University of Liverpool, 2002, at http://www.cmp.liv.ac.uk/frink/thesis/thesis/node48.html

[3] John Bland, "SQUID Magnetometer" in "A Mossbauer Spectroscopy and Magnetometry Study of Magnetic Multilayers and Oxides", Oliver Lodge Laboratory, Department of Physics, University of Liverpool, 2002, at http://www.cmp.liv.ac.uk/frink/thesis/thesis/node48.html

[4] Darren K. Brock, "RSFQ Technology: Circuits and Systems", Hypres, Inc., NY, at http://www.hypres.com/papers/Brock-RSFQ-CirSys-Rev01.pdf

[5] Matthew Broersma , "Nanotubes break semiconducting record", Cnet News, December 19, 2003, at http://news.com.com/2100-1006-5129761.html

[6] "Carbon Nanotube Transistor", Physics News Graphics, May 13, 1998, at http://www.aip.org/mgr/png/html/tubefet.htm

[7] E. R. Brown, C. D. Parker, "Resonant Tunnel Diodes as Submillimetre-Wave Sources", Philosophical Transactions: Mathematical, Physical and Engineering Sciences, Vol. 354, No. 1717, The Current Status of Semiconductor Tunnelling Devices (Oct. 15, 1996), pp. 2365-2381 at http://links.jstor.org/sici?sici=1364-503X(19961015)354%3A1717%3C2365%3ARTDASS%3E2.0.CO%3B2-Q

[8] W. J. Gallagher, S. S. P. Parkin, "Development of the magnetic tunnel junction MRAM at IBM: From first junctions to a 16-Mb MRAM demonstrator chip", IBM Research and Development, Spintronics, Volume 50, Number 1, 2006, at http://www.research.ibm.com/journal/rd/501/gallagher.html

[9] "IBM, Infineon Develop Most Advanced MRAM Technology to Date", IBM Research, at http://domino.research.ibm.com/comm/pr.nsf/pages/news.20030610_mram.html

[10] Linda Geppert "Quantum Transistors: toward nanoectronic", IEEE Spectrum, September 2000, at http://www.ece.osu.edu/~berger/press/quan0900.pdf

[11] A. K. Geim1 and K. S. Novoselov1 , "The rise of graphene", Nature Materials, 6, 2007, at http://www.nature.com/nmat/journal/v6/n3/full/nmat1849.html

[12] Ilan Greenberg, "Transistor Technology Takes a Quantum Leap", Wired News, December 8, 1997, at http://www.wired.com/news/technology/0,1282,8994,00.html

[13] R. Colin Johnson, "Spintronics approach advances toward live chips," EE Times, 11/06/2006, at http://www.eetimes.com/showArticle.jhtml?articleID=193500309

[14] R. Colin Johnson " U. of Delaware researchers edge closer to spintronics," EE Times, 07/26/2007, at http://www.eetimes.com/news/design/showArticle.jhtml?articleID=201201400

[15] R. Colin Johnson, "Can metal-insulator electronics do it better, sans semiconductors?" http://www.eetimes.com/showArticle.jhtml?articleID=201200024

[16] Tony R. Kuphaldt, "Lessons in Electricity", Reference, Vol. 5, Ch 7, 2007 at http://www.ibiblio.org/obp/electricCircuits/Ref/spice.html

[17] Tom Lee, "Is nonvolatile MRAM right for your consumer embedded device application? ", Freescale Semiconductor at http://www.acumeninfo.com/subscriber/article/getArticle.jhtml?articleId=197006965

[18] HyperPhysics, "SQUID Magnetometer", HyperPhysics at http://hyperphysics.phy-astr.gsu.edu/hbase/solids/squid.html

[19] Phillip F. Schewe, Ben Stein, "A Quantum Tunneling Transistor", Physics Nessw Update, Number 357, February 4, 1998, at http://www.aip.org/pnu/1998/physnews.357.htm

[20] "Why MIIM?", Phiar Corporation, at http://www.phiar.com/whyMIIM.php4

[21] "What is Quantum Tunneling?", Phiar Corporation, at http://www.phiar.com/whatQuantum.php4

[22] Oxford University, "Theory, Superconductor Synthesis", Oxford University, 1996, at http://www.chem.ox.ac.uk/vrchemistry/super/theory.htm

[23] John Walko, "Graphene transistor to rival silicon, say researchers", EE Times Europe, 03/02/2007, at http://www.eetimes.com/news/design/showArticle.jhtml?articleID=197700700

[24] Ying-Yu Tzou,"Power Electronics: An Introduction", Institute of Control Engineering, National Chiao Tung University, at http://pemclab.cn.nctu.edu.tw/peclub/w3cnotes

Chapter 3

DIODES AND RECTIFIERS

Contents

3.1 Introduction

A *diode* is an electrical device allowing current to move through it in one direction with far greater ease than in the other. The most common kind of diode in modern circuit design is the *semiconductor* diode, although other diode technologies exist. Semiconductor diodes are symbolized in schematic diagrams such as Figure 3.1. The term "diode" is customarily reserved for small signal devices, $I \leq 1$ A. The term *rectifier* is used for power devices, $I > 1$ A.

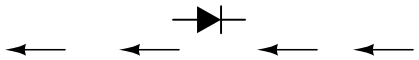


Figure 3.1: *Semiconductor diode schematic symbol: Arrows indicate the direction of electron current flow.*

When placed in a simple battery-lamp circuit, the diode will either allow or prevent current through the lamp, depending on the polarity of the applied voltage. (Figure 3.2)

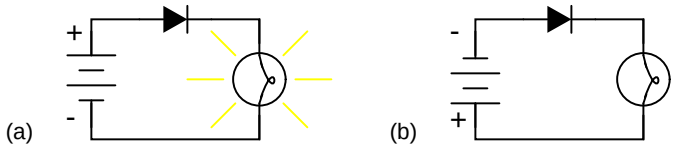


Figure 3.2: *Diode operation: (a) Current flow is permitted; the diode is forward biased. (b) Current flow is prohibited; the diode is reversed biased.*

When the polarity of the battery is such that electrons are allowed to flow through the diode, the diode is said to be *forward-biased*. Conversely, when the battery is "backward" and the diode blocks current, the diode is said to be *reverse-biased*. A diode may be thought of as like a switch: "closed" when forward-biased and "open" when reverse-biased.

Oddly enough, the direction of the diode symbol's "arrowhead" points *against* the direction of electron flow. This is because the diode symbol was invented by engineers, who predominantly use *conventional flow* notation in their schematics, showing current as a flow of charge from the positive (+) side of the voltage source to the negative (-). This convention holds true for all semiconductor symbols possessing "arrowheads:" the arrow points in the permitted direction of conventional flow, and against the permitted direction of electron flow.

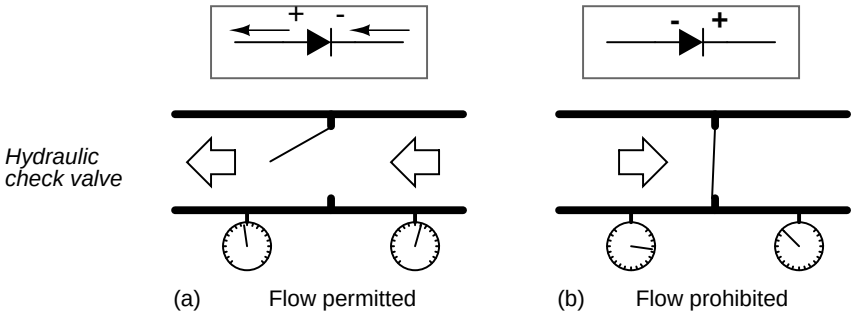


Figure 3.3: *Hydraulic check valve analogy: (a) Electron current flow permitted. (b) Current flow prohibited.*

Diode behavior is analogous to the behavior of a hydraulic device called a *check valve*. A check valve allows fluid flow through it in only one direction as in Figure 3.3.

Check valves are essentially pressure-operated devices: they open and allow flow if the pressure across them is of the correct "polarity" to open the gate (in the analogy shown, greater fluid pressure on the right than on the left). If the pressure is of the opposite "polarity," the pressure difference across the check valve will close and hold the gate so that no flow occurs.

Like check valves, diodes are essentially "pressure-" operated (voltage-operated) devices. The essential difference between forward-bias and reverse-bias is the polarity of the voltage dropped across the diode. Let's take a closer look at the simple battery-diode-lamp circuit shown earlier, this time investigating voltage drops across the various components in Figure 3.4.

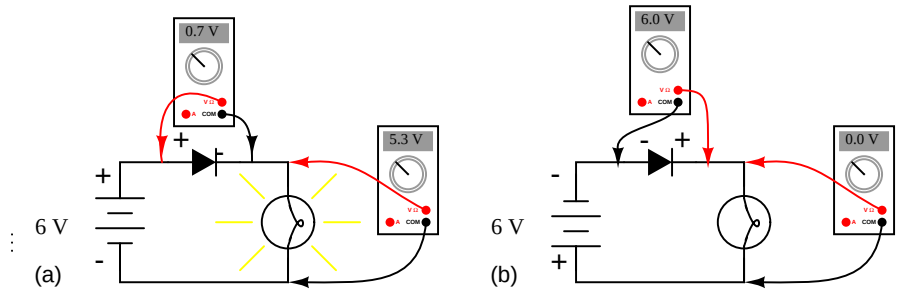


Figure 3.4: *Diode circuit voltage measurements: (a) Forward biased. (b) Reverse biased.*

A forward-biased diode conducts current and drops a small voltage across it, leaving most of the battery voltage dropped across the lamp. If the battery's polarity is reversed, the diode becomes reverse-biased, and drops *all* of the battery's voltage leaving none for the lamp. If we consider the diode to be a self-actuating switch (closed in the forward-bias mode and open in the reverse-bias mode), this behavior makes sense. The most substantial difference is that the diode drops a lot more voltage when conducting than the average mechanical switch (0.7 volts versus tens of millivolts).

This forward-bias voltage drop exhibited by the diode is due to the action of the depletion region formed by the P-N junction under the influence of an applied voltage. If no voltage applied is across a semiconductor diode, a thin depletion region exists around the region of the P-N junction, preventing current flow. (Figure 3.5 (a)) The depletion region is almost devoid of available charge carriers, and acts as an insulator:

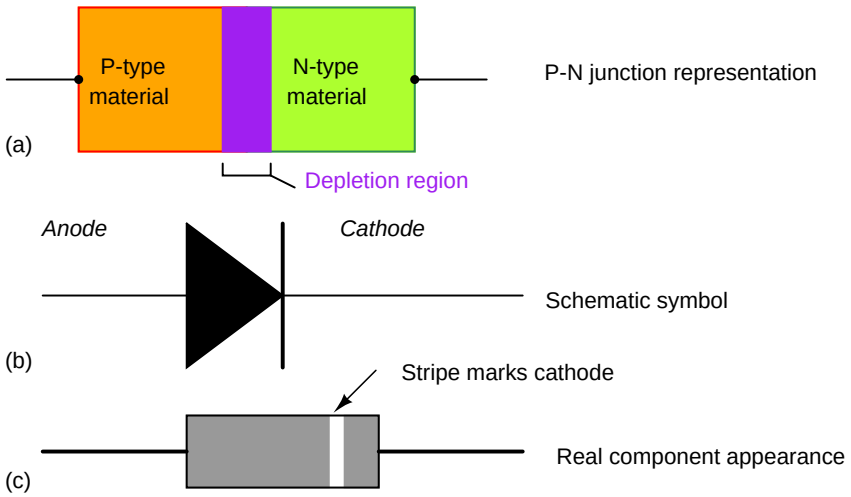


Figure 3.5: *Diode representations: PN-junction model, schematic symbol, physical part.*

The schematic symbol of the diode is shown in Figure 3.5 (b) such that the anode (pointing end) corresponds to the P-type semiconductor at (a). The cathode bar, non-pointing end, at (b) corresponds to the N-type material at (a). Also note that the cathode stripe on the physical part (c) corresponds to the cathode on the symbol.

If a reverse-biasing voltage is applied across the P-N junction, this depletion region expands, further resisting any current through it. (Figure 3.6)

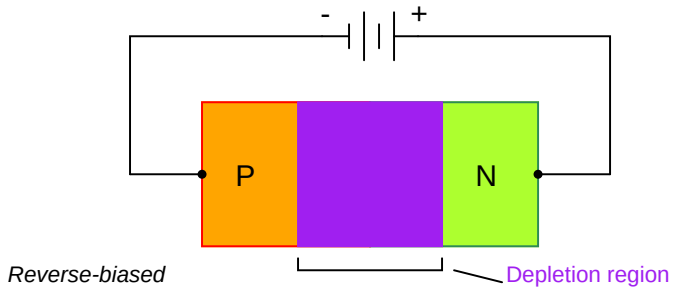


Figure 3.6: *Depletion region expands with reverse bias.*

Conversely, if a forward-biasing voltage is applied across the P-N junction, the depletion region collapses becoming thinner. The diode becomes less resistive to current through it. In

order for a sustained current to go through the diode; though, the depletion region must be fully collapsed by the applied voltage. This takes a certain minimum voltage to accomplish, called the *forward voltage* as illustrated in Figure 3.7.

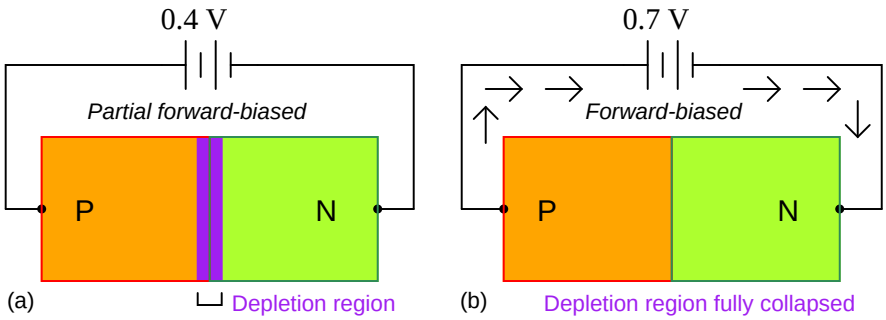


Figure 3.7: *Inceasing forward bias from (a) to (b) decreases depletion region thickness.*

For silicon diodes, the typical forward voltage is 0.7 volts, nominal. For germanium diodes, the forward voltage is only 0.3 volts. The chemical constituency of the P-N junction comprising the diode accounts for its nominal forward voltage figure, which is why silicon and germanium diodes have such different forward voltages. Forward voltage drop remains approximately constant for a wide range of diode currents, meaning that diode voltage drop is not like that of a resistor or even a normal (closed) switch. For most simplified circuit analysis, the voltage drop across a conducting diode may be considered constant at the nominal figure and not related to the amount of current.

Actually, forward voltage drop is more complex. An equation describes the exact current through a diode, given the voltage dropped across the junction, the temperature of the junction, and several physical constants. It is commonly known as the *diode equation*:

$$I_D = I_S (e^{qV_D/NkT} - 1)$$

Where,

I_D = Diode current in amps

I_S = Saturation current in amps (typically 1 x 10^{-12} amps)

e = Euler's constant (~ 2.718281828)

q = charge of electron (1.6 x 10^{-19} coulombs)

V_D = Voltage applied across diode in volts

N = "Nonideality" or "emission" coefficient (typically between 1 and 2)

k = Boltzmann's constant (1.38 x 10^{-23})

T = Junction temperature in Kelvins

The term kT/q describes the voltage produced within the P-N junction due to the action of temperature, and is called the *thermal voltage*, or V_t of the junction. At room temperature, this is about 26 millivolts. Knowing this, and assuming a "nonideality" coefficient of 1, we may simplify the diode equation and re-write it as such:

$$I_D = I_S (e^{V_D/0.026} - 1)$$

Where,

I_D = Diode current in amps

I_S = Saturation current in amps (typically 1 x 10^{-12} amps)

e = Euler's constant (~ 2.718281828)

V_D = Voltage applied across diode in volts

You need not be familiar with the "diode equation" to analyze simple diode circuits. Just understand that the voltage dropped across a current-conducting diode *does* change with the amount of current going through it, but that this change is fairly small over a wide range of currents. This is why many textbooks simply say the voltage drop across a conducting, semiconductor diode remains constant at 0.7 volts for silicon and 0.3 volts for germanium. However, some circuits intentionally make use of the P-N junction's inherent exponential current/voltage relationship and thus can only be understood in the context of this equation. Also, since temperature is a factor in the diode equation, a forward-biased P-N junction may also be used as a temperature-sensing device, and thus can only be understood if one has a conceptual grasp on this mathematical relationship.

A reverse-biased diode prevents current from going through it, due to the expanded depletion region. In actuality, a very small amount of current can and does go through a reverse-biased diode, called the *leakage current*, but it can be ignored for most purposes. The ability of a diode to withstand reverse-bias voltages is limited, as it is for any insulator. If the ap-

plied reverse-bias voltage becomes too great, the diode will experience a condition known as *breakdown* (Figure 3.8), which is usually destructive. A diode's maximum reverse-bias voltage rating is known as the *Peak Inverse Voltage*, or *PIV*, and may be obtained from the manufacturer. Like forward voltage, the PIV rating of a diode varies with temperature, except that PIV *increases* with increased temperature and *decreases* as the diode becomes cooler – exactly opposite that of forward voltage.

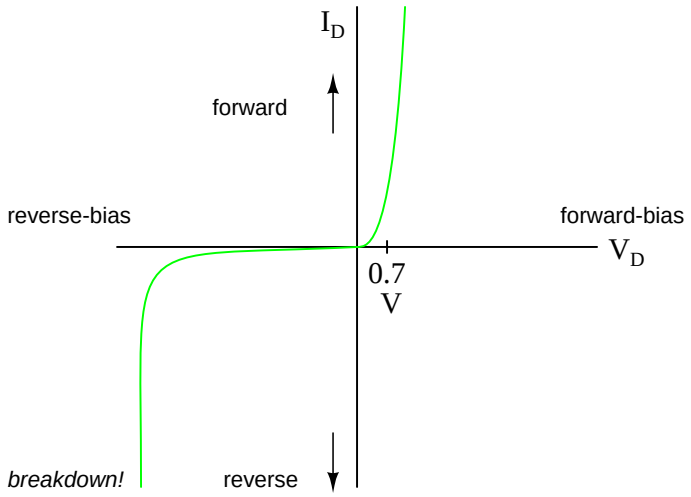


Figure 3.8: *Diode curve: showing knee at 0.7 V forward bias for Si, and reverse breakdown.*

Typically, the PIV rating of a generic "rectifier" diode is at least 50 volts at room temperature. Diodes with PIV ratings in the many thousands of volts are available for modest prices.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *diode* is an electrical component acting as a one-way valve for current.
- When voltage is applied across a diode in such a way that the diode allows current, the diode is said to be *forward-biased*.
- When voltage is applied across a diode in such a way that the diode prohibits current, the diode is said to be *reverse-biased*.
- The voltage dropped across a conducting, forward-biased diode is called the *forward voltage*. Forward voltage for a diode varies only slightly for changes in forward current and temperature, and is fixed by the chemical composition of the P-N junction.
- Silicon diodes have a forward voltage of approximately 0.7 volts.
- Germanium diodes have a forward voltage of approximately 0.3 volts.
- The maximum reverse-bias voltage that a diode can withstand without "breaking down" is called the *Peak Inverse Voltage*, or *PIV* rating.

3.2 Meter check of a diode

Being able to determine the polarity (cathode versus anode) and basic functionality of a diode is a very important skill for the electronics hobbyist or technician to have. Since we know that a diode is essentially nothing more than a one-way valve for electricity, it makes sense we should be able to verify its one-way nature using a DC (battery-powered) ohmmeter as in Figure 3.9. Connected one way across the diode, the meter should show a very low resistance at (a). Connected the other way across the diode, it should show a very high resistance at (b) ("OL" on some digital meter models).

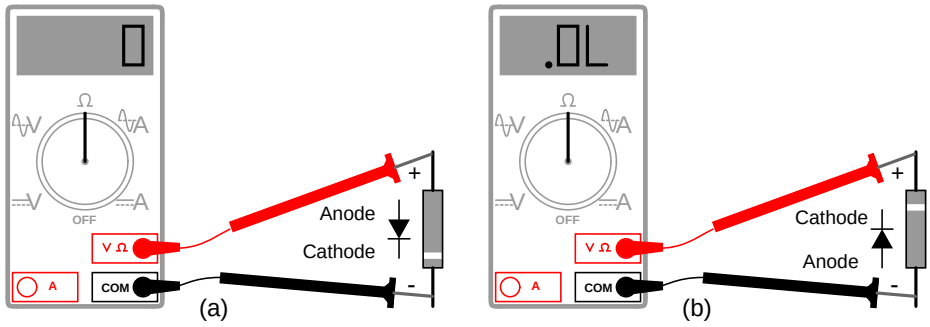


Figure 3.9: *Determination of diode polarity: (a) Low resistance indicates forward bias, black lead is cathode and red lead anode (for most meters) (b) Reversing leads shows high resistance indicating reverse bias.*

Of course, to determine which end of the diode is the cathode and which is the anode, you must know with certainty which test lead of the meter is positive (+) and which is negative (-) when set to the "resistance" or "Ω" function. With most digital multimeters I've seen, the red lead becomes positive and the black lead negative when set to measure resistance, in accordance with standard electronics color-code convention. However, this is not guaranteed for all meters. Many analog multimeters, for example, actually make their black leads positive (+) and their red leads negative (-) when switched to the "resistance" function, because it is easier to manufacture it that way!

One problem with using an ohmmeter to check a diode is that the readings obtained only have qualitative value, not quantitative. In other words, an ohmmeter only tells you which way the diode conducts; the low-value resistance indication obtained while conducting is useless. If an ohmmeter shows a value of "1.73 ohms" while forward-biasing a diode, that figure of 1.73 Ω doesn't represent any real-world quantity useful to us as technicians or circuit designers. It neither represents the forward voltage drop nor any "bulk" resistance in the semiconductor material of the diode itself, but rather is a figure dependent upon both quantities and will vary substantially with the particular ohmmeter used to take the reading.

For this reason, some digital multimeter manufacturers equip their meters with a special "diode check" function which displays the actual forward voltage drop of the diode in volts, rather than a "resistance" figure in ohms. These meters work by forcing a small current through the diode and measuring the voltage dropped between the two test leads. (Figure 3.10)

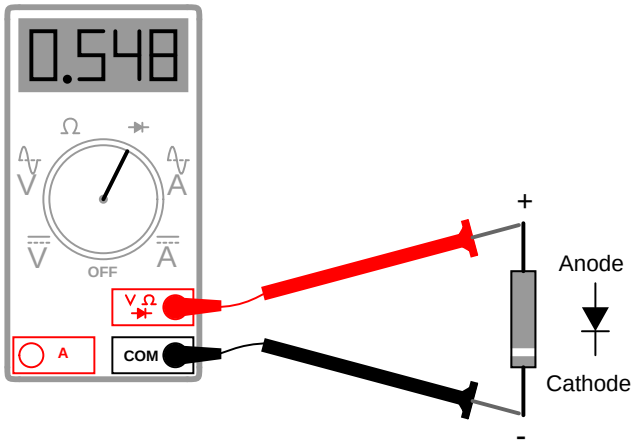


Figure 3.10: *Meter with a "Diode check" function displays the forward voltage drop of 0.548 volts instead of a low resistance.*

The forward voltage reading obtained with such a meter will typically be less than the "normal" drop of 0.7 volts for silicon and 0.3 volts for germanium, because the current provided by the meter is of trivial proportions. If a multimeter with diode-check function isn't available, or you would like to measure a diode's forward voltage drop at some non-trivial current, the circuit of Figure 3.11 may be constructed using a battery, resistor, and voltmeter

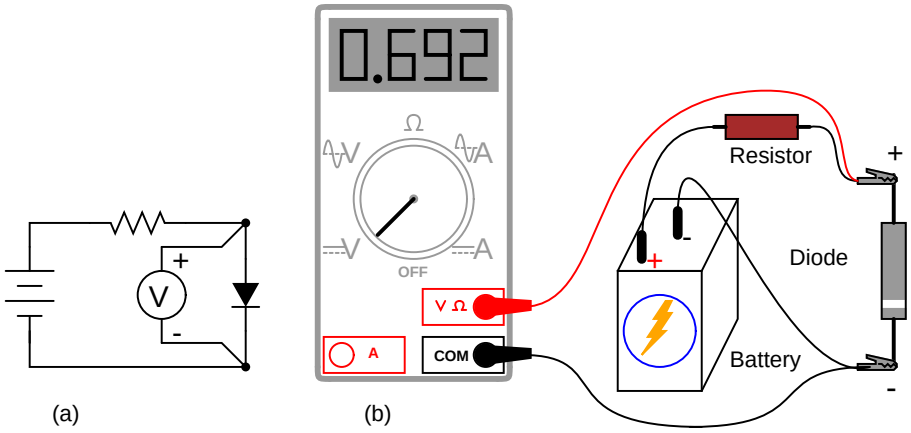


Figure 3.11: *Measuring forward voltage of a diode without"diode check" meter function: (a) Schematic diagram. (b) Pictorial diagram.*

Connecting the diode backwards to this testing circuit will simply result in the voltmeter indicating the full voltage of the battery.

If this circuit were designed to provide a constant or nearly constant current through the

diode despite changes in forward voltage drop, it could be used as the basis of a temperature-measurement instrument, the voltage measured across the diode being inversely proportional to diode junction temperature. Of course, diode current should be kept to a minimum to avoid self-heating (the diode dissipating substantial amounts of heat energy), which would interfere with temperature measurement.

Beware that some digital multimeters equipped with a "diode check" function may output a very low test voltage (less than 0.3 volts) when set to the regular "resistance" (Ω) function: too low to fully collapse the depletion region of a PN junction. The philosophy here is that the "diode check" function is to be used for testing semiconductor devices, and the "resistance" function for anything else. By using a very low test voltage to measure resistance, it is easier for a technician to measure the resistance of non-semiconductor components connected to semiconductor components, since the semiconductor component junctions will not become forward-biased with such low voltages.

Consider the example of a resistor and diode connected in parallel, soldered in place on a printed circuit board (PCB). Normally, one would have to unsolder the resistor from the circuit (disconnect it from all other components) before measuring its resistance, otherwise any parallel-connected components would affect the reading obtained. When using a multimeter which outputs a very low test voltage to the probes in the "resistance" function mode, the diode's PN junction will not have enough voltage impressed across it to become forward-biased, and will only pass negligible current. Consequently, the meter "sees" the diode as an open (no continuity), and only registers the resistor's resistance. (Figure 3.12)

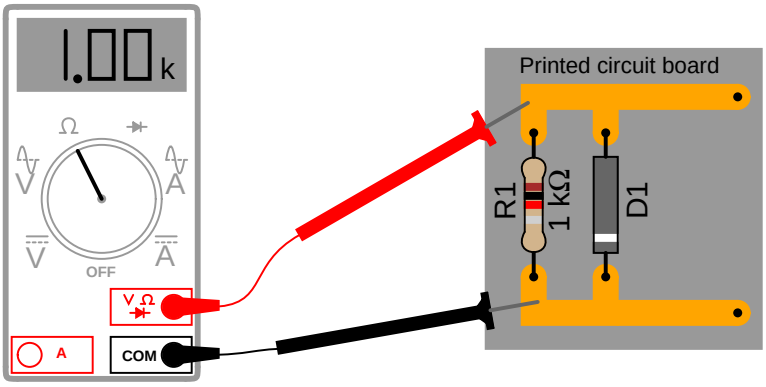


Figure 3.12: *Ohmmeter equipped with a low test voltage (<0.7 V) does not see diodes allowing it to measure parallel resistors.*

If such an ohmmeter were used to test a diode, it would indicate a very high resistance (many mega-ohms) even if connected to the diode in the "correct" (forward-biased) direction. (Figure 3.13)

Reverse voltage strength of a diode is not as easily tested, because exceeding a normal diode's PIV usually results in destruction of the diode. Special types of diodes, though, which are designed to "break down" in reverse-bias mode without damage (called *zener diodes*), which are tested with the same voltage source / resistor / voltmeter circuit, provided that the voltage

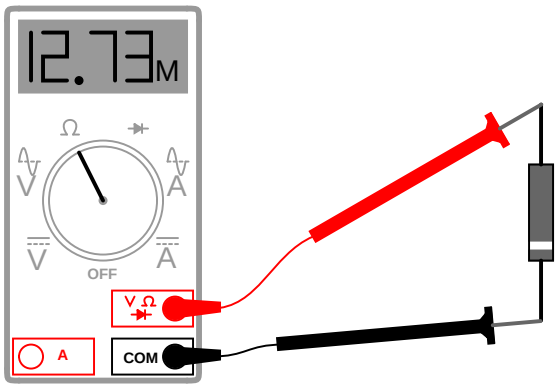


Figure 3.13: *Ohmmeter equipped with a low test voltage, too low to forward bias diodes, does not see diodes.*

source is of high enough value to force the diode into its breakdown region. More on this subject in a later section of this chapter.

- **REVIEW:**
- An ohmmeter may be used to qualitatively check diode function. There should be low resistance measured one way and very high resistance measured the other way. When using an ohmmeter for this purpose, be sure you know which test lead is positive and which is negative! The actual polarity may not follow the colors of the leads as you might expect, depending on the particular design of meter.
- Some multimeters provide a "diode check" function that displays the actual forward voltage of the diode when its conducting current. Such meters typically indicate a slightly lower forward voltage than what is "nominal" for a diode, due to the very small amount of current used during the check.

3.3 Diode ratings

In addition to forward voltage drop (V_f) and peak inverse voltage (PIV), there are many other ratings of diodes important to circuit design and component selection. Semiconductor manufacturers provide detailed specifications on their products – diodes included – in publications known as *datasheets*. Datasheets for a wide variety of semiconductor components may be found in reference books and on the internet. I prefer the internet as a source of component specifications because all the data obtained from manufacturer websites are up-to-date.

A typical diode datasheet will contain figures for the following parameters:

Maximum repetitive reverse voltage = V_{RRM}, the maximum amount of voltage the diode can withstand in reverse-bias mode, in repeated pulses. Ideally, this figure would be infinite.

Maximum DC reverse voltage = V_R or V_{DC}, the maximum amount of voltage the diode can withstand in reverse-bias mode on a continual basis. Ideally, this figure would be infinite.

Maximum forward voltage = V_F, usually specified at the diode's rated forward current. Ideally, this figure would be zero: the diode providing no opposition whatsoever to forward current. In reality, the forward voltage is described by the "diode equation."

Maximum (average) forward current = $I_{F(AV)}$, the maximum average amount of current the diode is able to conduct in forward bias mode. This is fundamentally a thermal limitation: how much heat can the PN junction handle, given that dissipation power is equal to current (I) multiplied by voltage (V or E) and forward voltage is dependent upon both current and junction temperature. Ideally, this figure would be infinite.

Maximum (peak or surge) forward current = I_{FSM} or $i_{f(surge)}$, the maximum peak amount of current the diode is able to conduct in forward bias mode. Again, this rating is limited by the diode junction's thermal capacity, and is usually much higher than the average current rating due to thermal inertia (the fact that it takes a finite amount of time for the diode to reach maximum temperature for a given current). Ideally, this figure would be infinite.

Maximum total dissipation = P_D, the amount of power (in watts) allowable for the diode to dissipate, given the dissipation (P=IE) of diode current multiplied by diode voltage drop, and also the dissipation ($P=I^2R$) of diode current squared multiplied by bulk resistance. Fundamentally limited by the diode's thermal capacity (ability to tolerate high temperatures).

Operating junction temperature = T_J, the maximum allowable temperature for the diode's PN junction, usually given in degrees Celsius (^{o}C). Heat is the "Achilles' heel" of semiconductor devices: they *must* be kept cool to function properly and give long service life.

Storage temperature range = T_{STG}, the range of allowable temperatures for storing a diode (unpowered). Sometimes given in conjunction with operating junction temperature (T_J), because the maximum storage temperature and the maximum operating temperature ratings are often identical. If anything, though, maximum storage temperature rating will be greater than the maximum operating temperature rating.

Thermal resistance = $R(\Theta)$, the temperature difference between junction and outside air ($R(\Theta)_{JA}$) or between junction and leads ($R(\Theta)_{JL}$) for a given power dissipation. Expressed in units of degrees Celsius per watt (^{o}C/W). Ideally, this figure would be zero, meaning that the diode package was a perfect thermal conductor and radiator, able to transfer all heat energy from the junction to the outside air (or to the leads) with no difference in temperature across the thickness of the diode package. A high thermal resistance means that the diode will build up excessive temperature at the junction (where its critical) despite best efforts at cooling the outside of the diode, and thus will limit its maximum power dissipation.

Maximum reverse current = I_R, the amount of current through the diode in *reverse-bias* operation, with the maximum rated inverse voltage applied (V_{DC}). Sometimes referred to as *leakage current*. Ideally, this figure would be zero, as a perfect diode would block all current when reverse-biased. In reality, it is very small compared to the maximum forward current.

Typical junction capacitance = C_J, the typical amount of capacitance intrinsic to the junction, due to the depletion region acting as a dielectric separating the anode and cathode connections. This is usually a very small figure, measured in the range of picofarads (pF).

Reverse recovery time = t_{rr}, the amount of time it takes for a diode to "turn off" when the voltage across it alternates from forward-bias to reverse-bias polarity. Ideally, this figure would be zero: the diode halting conduction *immediately* upon polarity reversal. For a typical rectifier diode, reverse recovery time is in the range of tens of microseconds; for a "fast switching" diode, it may only be a few nanoseconds.

Most of these parameters vary with temperature or other operating conditions, and so a

single figure fails to fully describe any given rating. Therefore, manufacturers provide graphs of component ratings plotted against other variables (such as temperature), so that the circuit designer has a better idea of what the device is capable of.

3.4 Rectifier circuits

Now we come to the most popular application of the diode: *rectification*. Simply defined, rectification is the conversion of alternating current (AC) to direct current (DC). This involves a device that only allows one-way flow of electrons. As we have seen, this is exactly what a semiconductor diode does. The simplest kind of rectifier circuit is the *half-wave* rectifier. It only allows one half of an AC waveform to pass through to the load. (Figure 3.14)

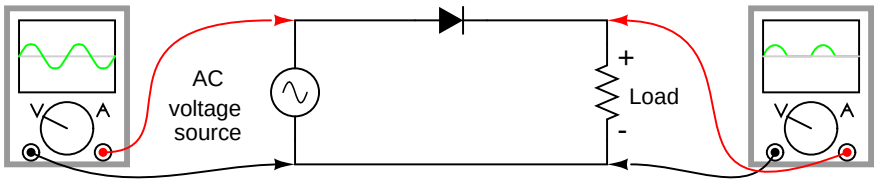


Figure 3.14: *Half-wave rectifier circuit.*

For most power applications, half-wave rectification is insufficient for the task. The harmonic content of the rectifier's output waveform is very large and consequently difficult to filter. Furthermore, the AC power source only supplies power to the load once every half-cycle, meaning that much of its capacity is unused. Half-wave rectification is, however, a very simple way to reduce power to a resistive load. Some two-position lamp dimmer switches apply full AC power to the lamp filament for "full" brightness and then half-wave rectify it for a lesser light output. (Figure 3.15)

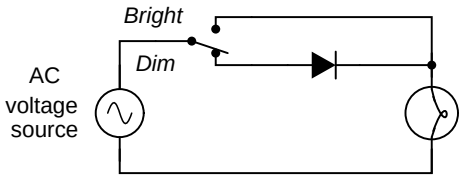


Figure 3.15: *Half-wave rectifier application: Two level lamp dimmer.*

In the "Dim" switch position, the incandescent lamp receives approximately one-half the power it would normally receive operating on full-wave AC. Because the half-wave rectified power pulses far more rapidly than the filament has time to heat up and cool down, the lamp does not blink. Instead, its filament merely operates at a lesser temperature than normal, providing less light output. This principle of "pulsing" power rapidly to a slow-responding load device to control the electrical power sent to it is common in the world of industrial electronics.

Since the controlling device (the diode, in this case) is either fully conducting or fully nonconducting at any given time, it dissipates little heat energy while controlling load power, making this method of power control very energy-efficient. This circuit is perhaps the crudest possible method of pulsing power to a load, but it suffices as a proof-of-concept application.

If we need to rectify AC power to obtain the full use of *both* half-cycles of the sine wave, a different rectifier circuit configuration must be used. Such a circuit is called a *full-wave* rectifier. One kind of full-wave rectifier, called the *center-tap* design, uses a transformer with a center-tapped secondary winding and two diodes, as in Figure 3.16.

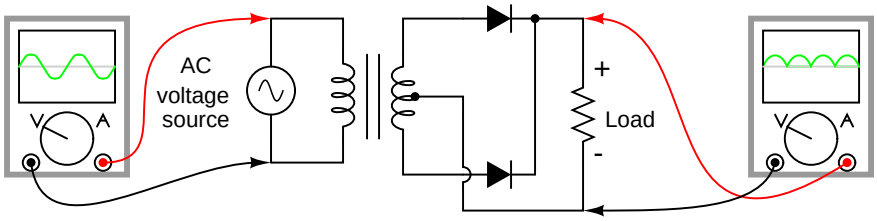


Figure 3.16: *Full-wave rectifier, center-tapped design.*

This circuit's operation is easily understood one half-cycle at a time. Consider the first half-cycle, when the source voltage polarity is positive (+) on top and negative (-) on bottom. At this time, only the top diode is conducting; the bottom diode is blocking current, and the load "sees" the first half of the sine wave, positive on top and negative on bottom. Only the top half of the transformer's secondary winding carries current during this half-cycle as in Figure 3.17.

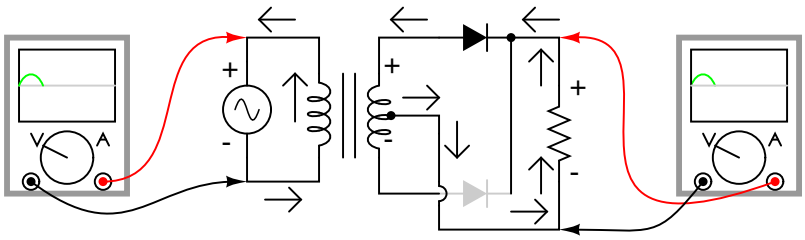


Figure 3.17: *Full-wave center-tap rectifier: Top half of secondary winding conducts during positive half-cycle of input, delivering positive half-cycle to load..*

During the next half-cycle, the AC polarity reverses. Now, the other diode and the other half of the transformer's secondary winding carry current while the portions of the circuit formerly carrying current during the last half-cycle sit idle. The load still "sees" half of a sine wave, of the same polarity as before: positive on top and negative on bottom. (Figure 3.18)

One disadvantage of this full-wave rectifier design is the necessity of a transformer with a center-tapped secondary winding. If the circuit in question is one of high power, the size and expense of a suitable transformer is significant. Consequently, the center-tap rectifier design is only seen in low-power applications.

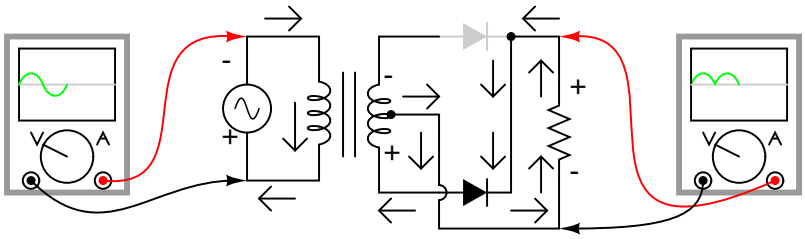


Figure 3.18: *Full-wave center-tap rectifier: During negative input half-cycle, bottom half of secondary winding conducts, delivering a positive half-cycle to the load.*

The full-wave center-tapped rectifier polarity at the load may be reversed by changing the direction of the diodes. Furthermore, the reversed diodes can be paralleled with an existing positive-output rectifier. The result is dual-polarity full-wave center-tapped rectifier in Figure 3.19. Note that the connectivity of the diodes themselves is the same configuration as a bridge.

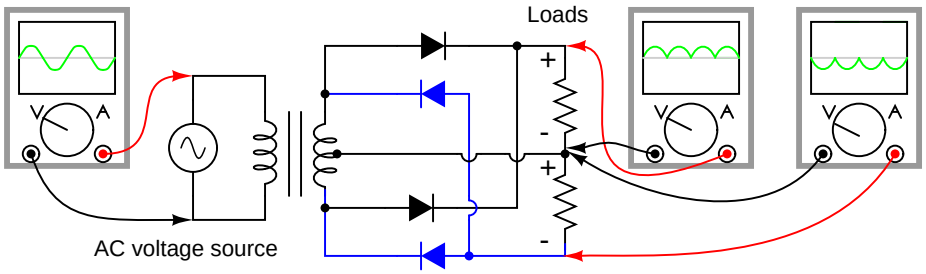


Figure 3.19: *Dual polarity full-wave center tap rectifier*

Another, more popular full-wave rectifier design exists, and it is built around a four-diode bridge configuration. For obvious reasons, this design is called a *full-wave bridge*. (Figure 3.20)

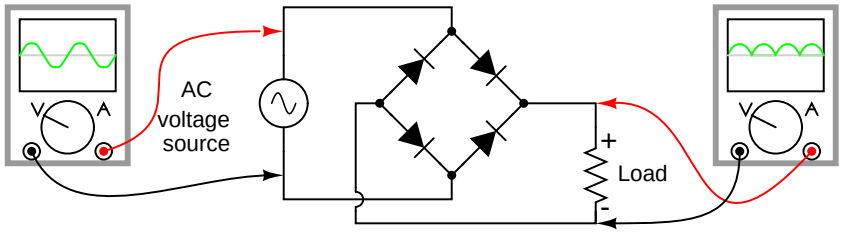


Figure 3.20: *Full-wave bridge rectifier.*

Current directions for the full-wave bridge rectifier circuit are as shown in Figure 3.21 for positive half-cycle and Figure 3.22 for negative half-cycles of the AC source waveform. Note

that regardless of the polarity of the input, the current flows in the same direction through the load. That is, the negative half-cycle of source is a positive half-cycle at the load. The current flow is through two diodes in series for both polarities. Thus, two diode drops of the source voltage are lost (0.7·2=1.4 V for Si) in the diodes. This is a disadvantage compared with a full-wave center-tap design. This disadvantage is only a problem in very low voltage power supplies.

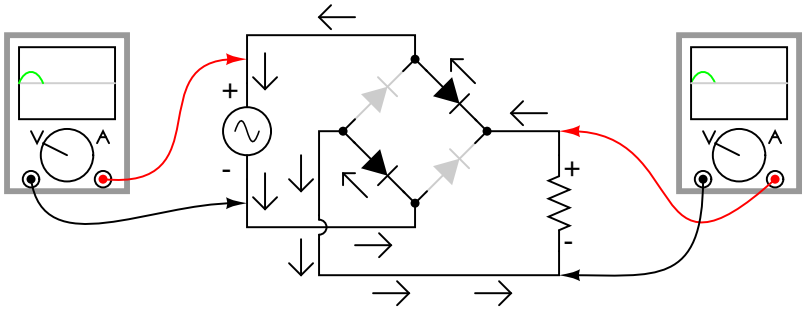


Figure 3.21: *Full-wave bridge rectifier: Electron flow for positive half-cycles.*

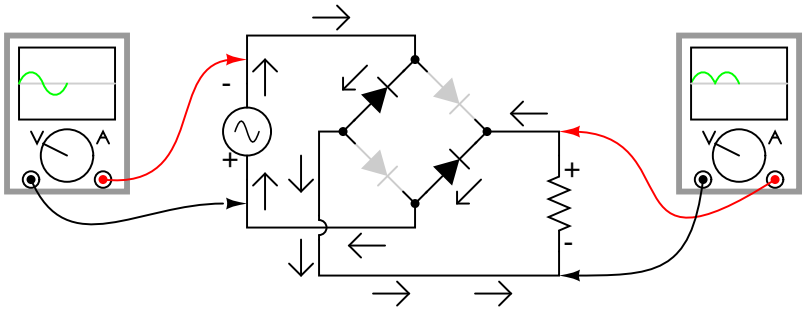


Figure 3.22: *Full-wave bridge rectifier: Electron flow for negative half=cycles.*

Remembering the proper layout of diodes in a full-wave bridge rectifier circuit can often be frustrating to the new student of electronics. I've found that an alternative representation of this circuit is easier both to remember and to comprehend. It's the exact same circuit, except all diodes are drawn in a horizontal attitude, all "pointing" the same direction. (Figure 3.23)

One advantage of remembering this layout for a bridge rectifier circuit is that it expands easily into a polyphase version in Figure 3.24.

Each three-phase line connects between a pair of diodes: one to route power to the positive (+) side of the load, and the other to route power to the negative (-) side of the load. Polyphase systems with more than three phases are easily accommodated into a bridge rectifier scheme. Take for instance the six-phase bridge rectifier circuit in Figure 3.25.

When polyphase AC is rectified, the phase-shifted pulses overlap each other to produce a DC output that is much "smoother" (has less AC content) than that produced by the rectification of

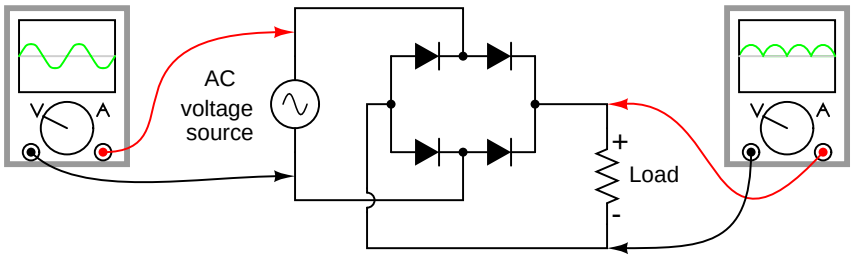


Figure 3.23: *Alternative layout style for Full-wave bridge rectifier.*

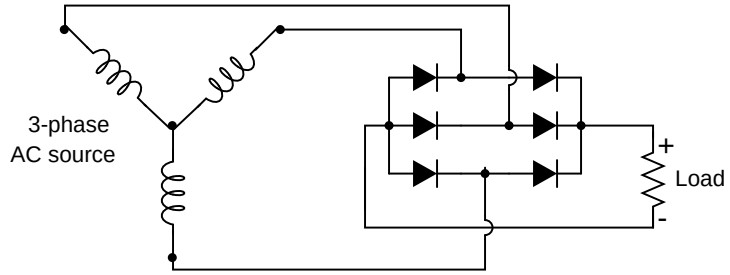


Figure 3.24: *Three-phase full-wave bridge rectifier circuit.*

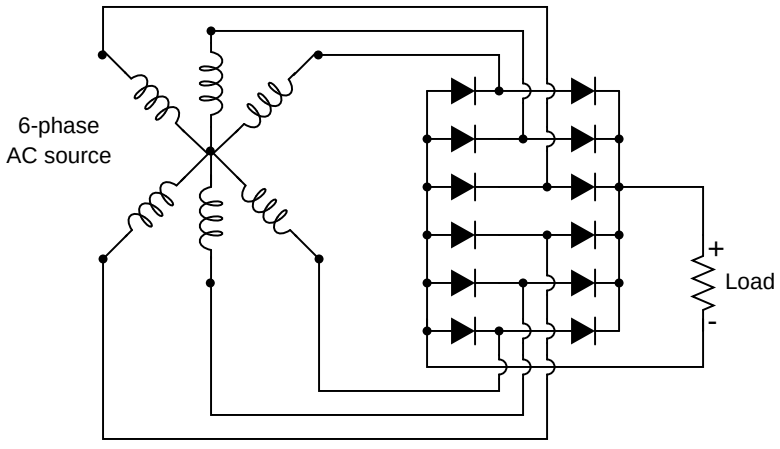


Figure 3.25: *Six-phase full-wave bridge rectifier circuit.*

single-phase AC. This is a decided advantage in high-power rectifier circuits, where the sheer physical size of filtering components would be prohibitive but low-noise DC power must be obtained. The diagram in Figure 3.26 shows the full-wave rectification of three-phase AC.

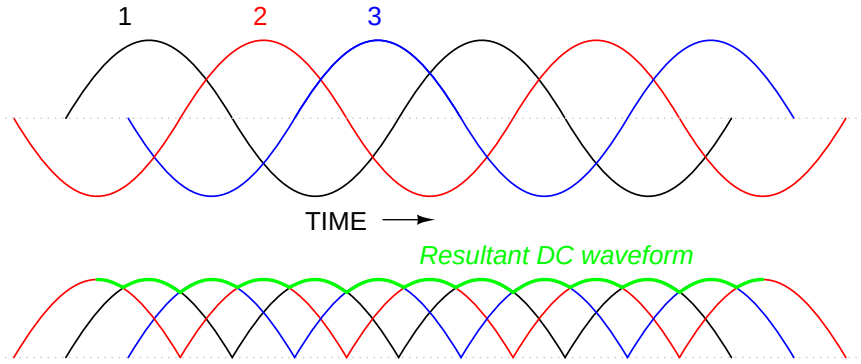


Figure 3.26: *Three-phase AC and 3-phase full-wave rectifier output.*

In any case of rectification – single-phase or polyphase – the amount of AC voltage mixed with the rectifier's DC output is called *ripple voltage*. In most cases, since "pure" DC is the desired goal, ripple voltage is undesirable. If the power levels are not too great, filtering networks may be employed to reduce the amount of ripple in the output voltage.

Sometimes, the method of rectification is referred to by counting the number of DC "pulses" output for every 360^o of electrical "rotation." A single-phase, half-wave rectifier circuit, then, would be called a *1-pulse* rectifier, because it produces a single pulse during the time of one complete cycle (360^o) of the AC waveform. A single-phase, full-wave rectifier (regardless of design, center-tap or bridge) would be called a *2-pulse* rectifier, because it outputs two pulses of DC during one AC cycle's worth of time. A three-phase full-wave rectifier would be called a *6-pulse* unit.

Modern electrical engineering convention further describes the function of a rectifier circuit by using a three-field notation of *phases*, *ways*, and number of *pulses*. A single-phase, half-wave rectifier circuit is given the somewhat cryptic designation of 1Ph1W1P (1 phase, 1 way, 1 pulse), meaning that the AC supply voltage is single-phase, that current on each phase of the AC supply lines moves in only one direction (way), and that there is a single pulse of DC produced for every 360^o of electrical rotation. A single-phase, full-wave, center-tap rectifier circuit would be designated as 1Ph1W2P in this notational system: 1 phase, 1 way or direction of current in each winding half, and 2 pulses or output voltage per cycle. A single-phase, full-wave, bridge rectifier would be designated as 1Ph2W2P: the same as for the center-tap design, except current can go *both* ways through the AC lines instead of just one way. The three-phase bridge rectifier circuit shown earlier would be called a 3Ph2W6P rectifier.

Is it possible to obtain more pulses than twice the number of phases in a rectifier circuit? The answer to this question is yes: especially in polyphase circuits. Through the creative use of transformers, sets of full-wave rectifiers may be paralleled in such a way that more than six pulses of DC are produced for three phases of AC. A 30^o phase shift is introduced from primary to secondary of a three-phase transformer when the winding configurations are not

of the same type. In other words, a transformer connected either Y-Δ or Δ-Y will exhibit this 30^o phase shift, while a transformer connected Y-Y or Δ-Δ will not. This phenomenon may be exploited by having one transformer connected Y-Y feed a bridge rectifier, and have another transformer connected Y-Δ feed a second bridge rectifier, then parallel the DC outputs of both rectifiers. (Figure 3.27) Since the ripple voltage waveforms of the two rectifiers' outputs are phase-shifted 30^o from one another, their superposition results in less ripple than either rectifier output considered separately: 12 pulses per 360^o instead of just six:

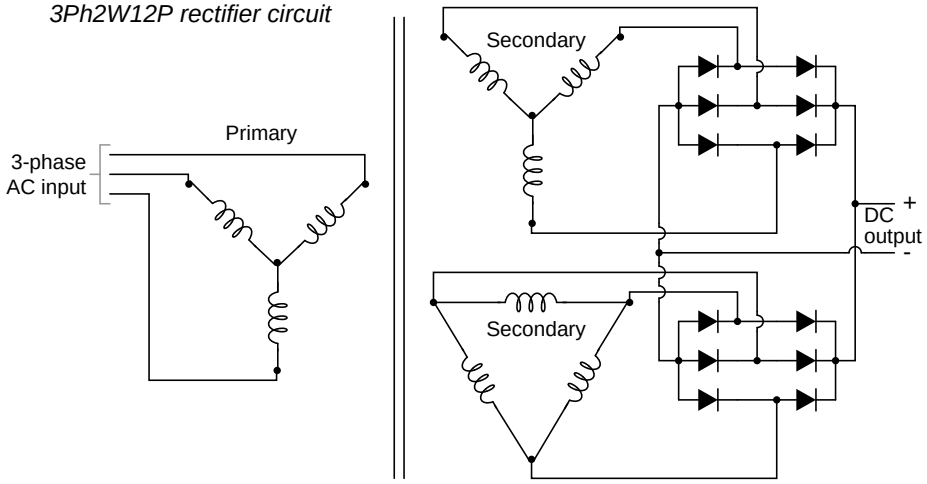


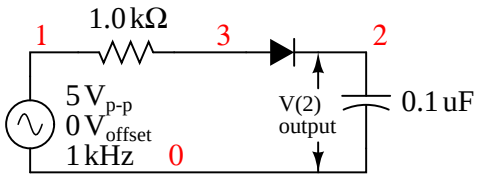
Figure 3.27: *Polyphase rectifier circuit: 3-phase 2-way 12-pulse (3Ph2W12P)*

- **REVIEW:**
- *Rectification* is the conversion of alternating current (AC) to direct current (DC).
- A *half-wave* rectifier is a circuit that allows only one half-cycle of the AC voltage waveform to be applied to the load, resulting in one non-alternating polarity across it. The resulting DC delivered to the load "pulsates" significantly.
- A *full-wave* rectifier is a circuit that converts both half-cycles of the AC voltage waveform to an unbroken series of voltage pulses of the same polarity. The resulting DC delivered to the load doesn't "pulsate" as much.
- Polyphase alternating current, when rectified, gives a much "smoother" DC waveform (less *ripple* voltage) than rectified single-phase AC.

3.5 Peak detector

A *peak detector* is a series connection of a diode and a capacitor outputting a DC voltage equal to the peak value of the applied AC signal. The circuit is shown in Figure 3.28 with the corresponding SPICE net list. An AC voltage source applied to the peak detector, charges the

capacitor to the peak of the input. The diode conducts positive "half cycles," charging the capacitor to the waveform peak. When the input waveform falls below the DC "peak" stored on the capacitor, the diode is reverse biased, blocking current flow from capacitor back to the source. Thus, the capacitor retains the peak value even as the waveform drops to zero. Another view of the peak detector is that it is the same as a half-wave rectifier with a filter capacitor added to the output.




```
*SPICE 03441.eps
C1 2 0 0.1u
R1 1 3 1.0k
V1 1 0 SIN(0 5 1k)
D1 3 2 diode
.model diode d
.tran 0.01m 50mm
.end
```

Figure 3.28: *Peak detector: Diode conducts on positive half cycles charging capacitor to the peak voltage (less diode forward drop).*

It takes a few cycles for the capacitor to charge to the peak as in Figure 3.29 due to the series resistance (RC "time constant"). Why does the capacitor not charge all the way to 5 V? It would charge to 5 V if an "ideal diode" were obtainable. However, the silicon diode has a forward voltage drop of 0.7 V which subtracts from the 5 V peak of the input.

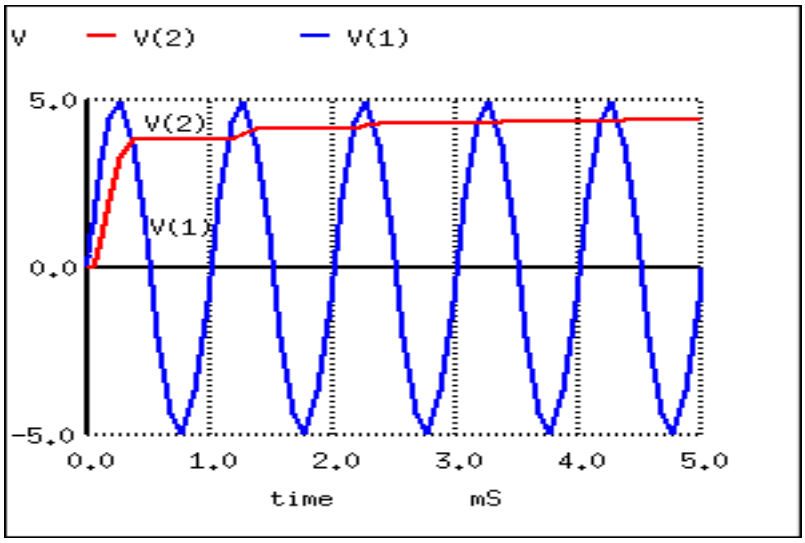


Figure 3.29: *Peak detector: Capacitor charges to peak within a few cycles.*

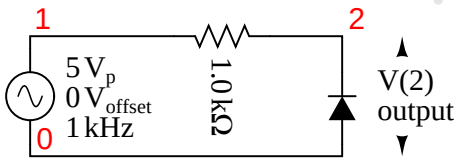
The circuit in Figure 3.28 could represent a DC power supply based on a half-wave rectifier. The resistance would be a few Ohms instead of 1 kΩ due to a transformer secondary winding

replacing the voltage source and resistor. A larger "filter" capacitor would be used. A power supply based on a 60 Hz source with a filter of a few hundred μF could supply up to 100 mA. Half-wave supplies seldom supply more due to the difficulty of filtering a half-wave.

The peak detector may be combined with other components to build a crystal radio (page 396).

3.6 Clipper circuits

A circuit which removes the peak of a waveform is known as a *clipper*. A negative clipper is shown in Figure 3.30. This schematic diagram was produced with Xcircuit schematic capture program. Xcircuit produced the SPICE net list Figure 3.30, except for the second, and next to last pair of lines which were inserted with a text editor.




```
*SPICE 03437.eps
*  A K ModelName
D1 0 2 diode
R1 2 1 1.0k
V1 1 0 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran .05m 3m
.end
```

Figure 3.30: *Clipper: clips negative peak at -0.7 V.*

During the positive half cycle of the 5 V peak input, the diode is reversed biased. The diode does not conduct. It is as if the diode were not there. The positive half cycle is unchanged at the output V(2) in Figure 3.31. Since the output positive peaks actually overlays the input sinewave V(1), the input has been shifted upward in the plot for clarity. In Nutmeg, the SPICE display module, the command "plot v(1)+1)" accomplishes this.

During the negative half cycle of sinewave input of Figure 3.31, the diode is forward biased, that is, conducting. The negative half cycle of the sinewave is shorted out. The negative half cycle of V(2) would be clipped at 0 V for an ideal diode. The waveform is clipped at -0.7 V due to the forward voltage drop of the silicon diode. The spice model defaults to 0.7 V unless parameters in the model statement specify otherwise. Germanium or Schottky diodes clip at lower voltages.

Closer examination of the negative clipped peak (Figure 3.31) reveals that it follows the input for a slight period of time while the sinewave is moving toward -0.7 V. The clipping action is only effective after the input sinewave exceeds -0.7 V. The diode is not conducting for the complete half cycle, though, during most of it.

The addition of an anti-parallel diode to the existing diode in Figure 3.30 yields the symmetrical clipper in Figure 3.32.

Diode D1 clips the negative peak at -0.7 V as before. The additional diode D2 conducts for positive half cycles of the sine wave as it exceeds 0.7 V, the forward diode drop. The remainder of the voltage drops across the series resistor. Thus, both peaks of the input sinewave are clipped in Figure 3.33. The net list is in Figure 3.32

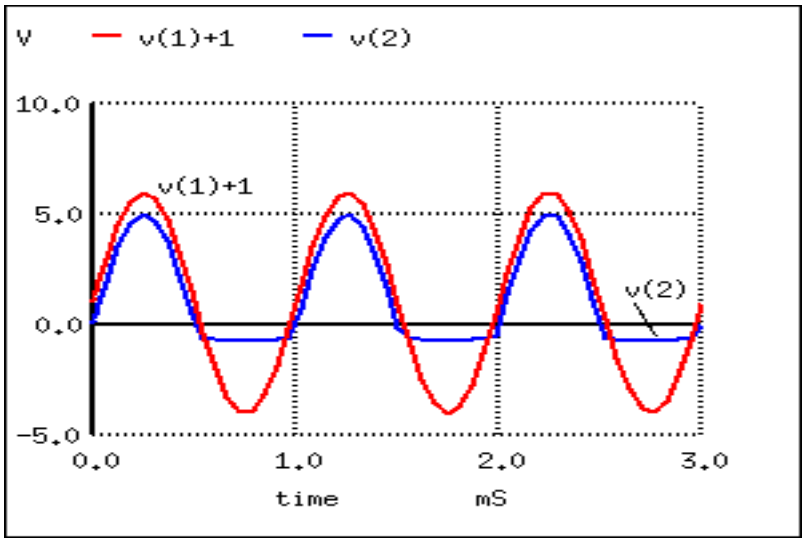
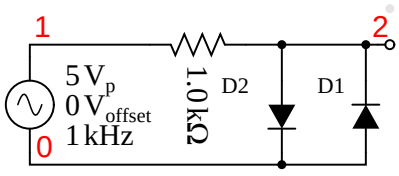


Figure 3.31: *V(1)+1 is actually V(1), a 5 Vptp sinewave, offset by 1 V for display clarity. V(2) output is clipped at -0.7 V, by diode D1.*




```
*SPICE 03438.eps
D1 0 2 diode
D2 2 0 diode
R1 2 1 1.0k
V1 1 0 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.05m 3m
.end
```

Figure 3.32: *Symmetrical clipper: Anti-parallel diodes clip both positive and negative peak, leaving a ± 0.7 V output.*

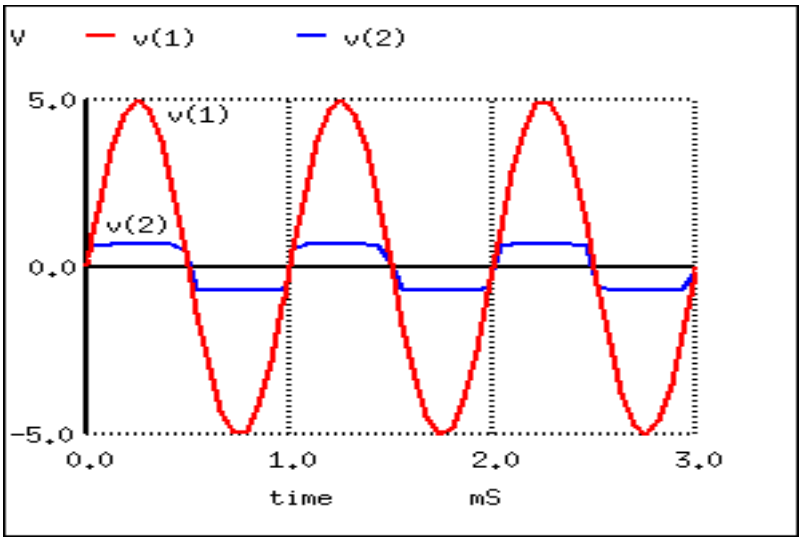
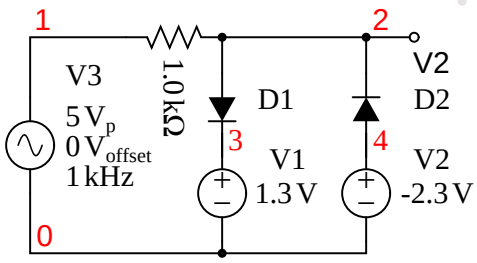


Figure 3.33: *Diode D1 clips at -0.7 V as it conducts during negative peaks. D2 conducts for positive peaks, clipping at 0.7V.*

The most general form of the diode clipper is shown in Figure 3.34. For an ideal diode, the clipping occurs at the level of the clipping voltage, V1 and V2. However, the voltage sources have been adjusted to account for the 0.7 V forward drop of the real silicon diodes. D1 clips at 1.3V +0.7V=2.0V when the diode begins to conduct. D2 clips at -2.3V -0.7V=-3.0V when D2 conducts.




```
*SPICE 03439.eps
V1 3 0 1.3
V2 4 0 -2.3
D1 2 3 diode
D2 4 2 diode
R1 2 1 1.0k
V3 1 0 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.05m 3m
.end
```

Figure 3.34: *D1 clips the input sinewave at 2V. D2 clips at -3V.*

The clipper in Figure 3.34 does not have to clip both levels. To clip at one level with one diode and one voltage source, remove the other diode and source.

The net list is in Figure 3.34. The waveforms in Figure 3.35 show the clipping of v(1) at output v(2).

There is also a zener diode clipper circuit in the “Zener diode” section. A zener diode replaces

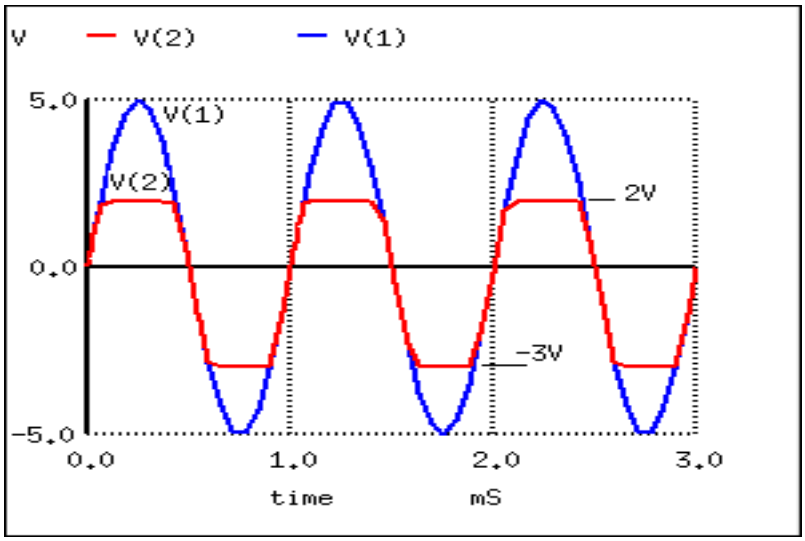


Figure 3.35: *D1 clips the sinewave at 2V. D2 clips at -3V.*

both the diode and the DC voltage source.

A practical application of a clipper is to prevent an amplified speech signal from overdriving a radio transmitter in Figure 3.36. Over driving the transmitter generates spurious radio signals which causes interference with other stations. The clipper is a protective measure.

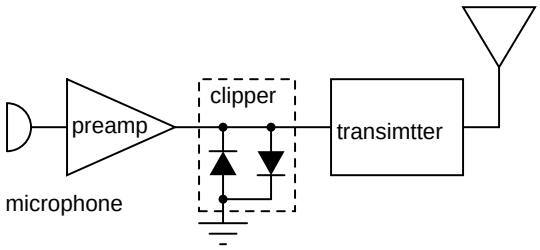


Figure 3.36: *Clipper prevents over driving radio transmitter by voice peaks.*

A sinewave may be squared up by overdriving a clipper. Another clipper application is the protection of exposed inputs of integrated circuits. The input of the IC is connected to a pair of diodes as at node "2" of Figure **??**. The voltage sources are replaced by the power supply rails of the IC. For example, CMOS IC's use 0V and +5 V. Analog amplifiers might use $\pm$12V for the V1 and V2 sources.

- **REVIEW**
- A resistor and diode driven by an AC voltage source clips the signal observed across the diode.

- A pair of anti-parallel Si diodes clip symmetrically at ±0.7V
- The grounded end of a clipper diode(s) can be disconnected and wired to a DC voltage to clip at an arbitrary level.
- A clipper can serve as a protective measure, preventing a signal from exceeding the clip limits.

3.7 Clamper circuits

The circuits in Figure 3.37 are known as *clampers* or *DC restorers*. The corresponding netlist is in Figure 3.38. These circuits clamp a peak of a waveform to a specific DC level compared with a capacitively coupled signal which swings about its average DC level (usually 0V). If the diode is removed from the clamper, it defaults to a simple coupling capacitor– no clamping.

What is the clamp voltage? And, which peak gets clamped? In Figure 3.37 (a) the clamp voltage is 0 V ignoring diode drop, (more exactly 0.7 V with Si diode drop). In Figure 3.38, the positive peak of V(1) is clamped to the 0 V (0.7 V) clamp level. Why is this? On the first positive half cycle, the diode conducts charging the capacitor left end to +5 V (4.3 V). This is -5 V (-4.3 V) on the right end at V(1,4). Note the polarity marked on the capacitor in Figure 3.37 (a). The right end of the capacitor is -5 V DC (-4.3 V) with respect to ground. It also has an AC 5 V peak sinewave coupled across it from source V(4) to node 1. The sum of the two is a 5 V peak sine riding on a - 5 V DC (-4.3 V) level. The diode only conducts on successive positive excursions of source V(4) if the peak V(4) exceeds the charge on the capacitor. This only happens if the charge on the capacitor drained off due to a load, not shown. The charge on the capacitor is equal to the positive peak of V(4) (less 0.7 diode drop). The AC riding on the negative end, right end, is shifted down. The positive peak of the waveform is clamped to 0 V (0.7 V) because the diode conducts on the positive peak.

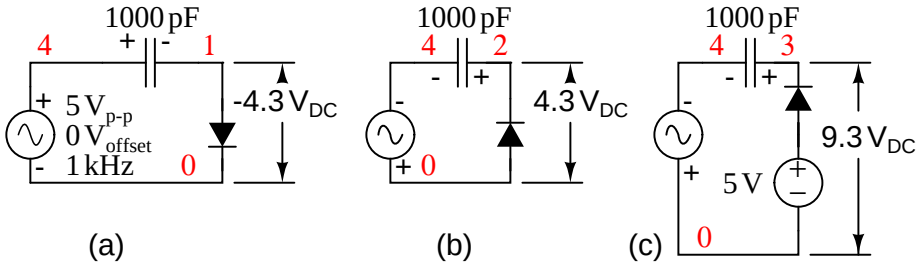
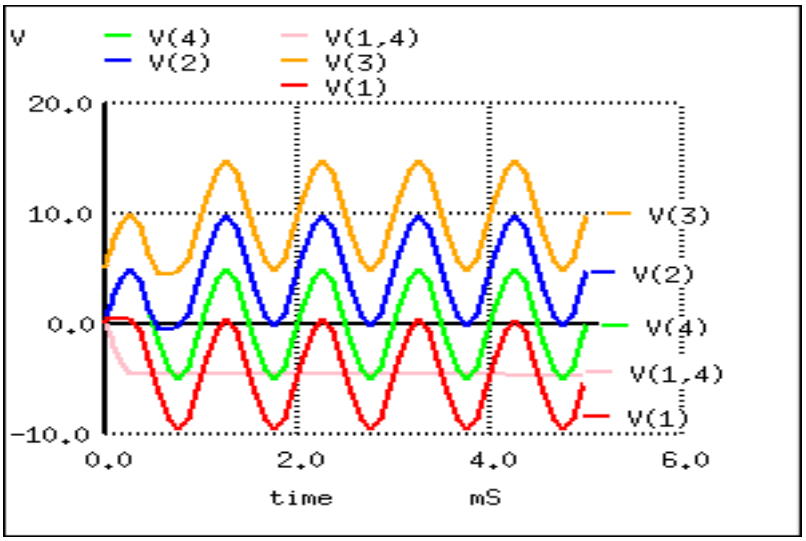


Figure 3.37: *Clampers: (a) Positive peak clamped to 0 V. (b) Negative peak clamped to 0 V. (c) Negative peak clamped to 5 V.*

Suppose the polarity of the diode is reversed as in Figure 3.37 (b)? The diode conducts on the negative peak of source V(4). The negative peak is clamped to 0 V (-0.7 V). See V(2) in Figure 3.38.

The most general realization of the clamper is shown in Figure 3.37 (c) with the diode connected to a DC reference. The capacitor still charges during the negative peak of the source.




```
*SPICE 03443.eps
V1 6 0 5
D1 6 3 diode
C1 4 3 1000p
D2 0 2 diode
C2 4 2 1000p
C3 4 1 1000p
D3 1 0 diode
V2 4 0 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.01m 5m
.end
```

Figure 3.38: *V(4) source voltage 5 V peak used in all clampers. V(1) clamper output from Figure 3.37 (a). V(1,4) DC voltage on capacitor in Figure (a). V(2) clamper output from Figure (b). V(3) clamper output from Figure (c).*

Note that the polarities of the AC source and the DC reference are series aiding. Thus, the capacitor charges to the sum to the two, 10 V DC (9.3 V). Coupling the 5 V peak sinewave across the capacitor yields Figure 3.38 V(3), the sum of the charge on the capacitor and the sinewave. The negative peak appears to be clamped to 5 V DC (4.3V), the value of the DC clamp reference (less diode drop).

Describe the waveform if the DC clamp reference is changed from 5 V to 10 V. The clamped waveform will shift up. The negative peak will be clamped to 10 V (9.3). Suppose that the amplitude of the sine wave source is increased from 5 V to 7 V? The negative peak clamp level will remain unchanged. Though, the amplitude of the sinewave output will increase.

An application of the clamper circuit is as a “DC restorer” in “composite video” circuitry in both television transmitters and receivers. An NTSC (US video standard) video signal “white level” corresponds to minimum (12.5%) transmitted power. The video “black level” corresponds to a high level (75% of transmitter power. There is a “blacker than black level” corresponding to 100% transmitted power assigned to synchronization signals. The NTSC signal contains both video and synchronization pulses. The problem with the composite video is that its average DC level varies with the scene, dark vs light. The video itself is supposed to vary. However, the sync must always peak at 100%. To prevent the sync signals from drifting with changing scenes, a “DC restorer” clamps the top of the sync pulses to a voltage corresponding to 100% transmitter modulation. [2]

- REVIEW:
- A capacitively coupled signal alternates about its average DC level (0 V).

- The signal out of a clamper appears the have one peak clamped to a DC voltage. Example: The negative peak is clamped to 0 VDC, the waveform appears to be shifted upward. The polarity of the diode determines which peak is clamped.
- An application of a clamper, or DC restorer, is in clamping the sync pulses of composite video to a voltage corresponding to 100% of transmitter power.

3.8 Voltage multipliers

A *voltage multiplier* is a specialized rectifier circuit producing an output which is theoretically an integer times the AC peak input, for example, 2, 3, or 4 times the AC peak input. Thus, it is possible to get 200 VDC from a 100 V_{peak} AC source using a doubler, 400 VDC from a quadrupler. Any load in a practical circuit will lower these voltages.

A voltage doubler application is a DC power supply capable of using either a 240 VAC or 120 VAC source. The supply uses a switch selected full-wave bridge to produce about 300 VDC from a 240 VAC source. The 120 V position of the switch rewires the bridge as a doubler producing about 300 VDC from the 120 VAC. In both cases, 300 VDC is produced. This is the input to a switching regulator producing lower voltages for powering, say, a personal computer.

The half-wave voltage doubler in Figure 3.39 (a) is composed of two circuits: a clamper at (b) and peak detector (half-wave rectifier) in Figure 3.28, which is shown in modified form in Figure 3.39 (c). C2 has been added to a peak detector (half-wave rectifier).

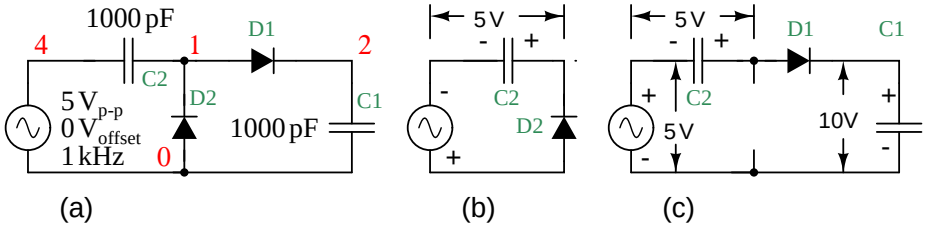
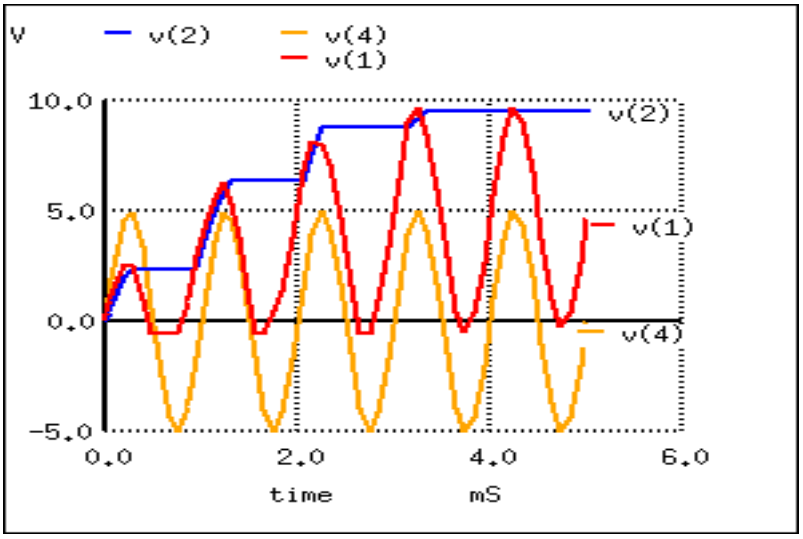


Figure 3.39: *Half-wave voltage doubler (a) is composed of (b) a clamper and (c) a half-wave rectifier.*

Referring to Figure 3.39 (b), C2 charges to 5 V (4.3 V considering the diode drop) on the negative half cycle of AC input. The right end is grounded by the conducting D2. The left end is charged at the negative peak of the AC input. This is the operation of the clamper.

During the positive half cycle, the half-wave rectifier comes into play at Figure 3.39 (c). Diode D2 is out of the circuit since it is reverse biased. C2 is now in series with the voltage source. Note the polarities of the generator and C2, series aiding. Thus, rectifier D1 sees a total of 10 V at the peak of the sinewave, 5 V from generator and 5 V from C2. D1 conducts waveform v(1) (Figure 3.40), charging C1 to the peak of the sine wave riding on 5 V DC (Figure 3.40 v(2)). Waveform v(2) is the output of the doubler, which stabilizes at 10 V (8.6 V with diode drops) after a few cycles of sinewave input.

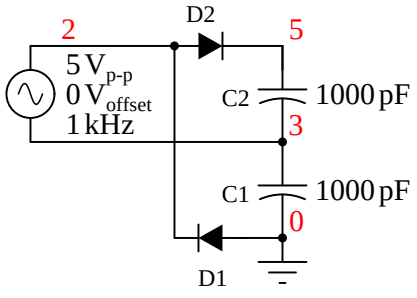
The *full-wave voltage doubler* is composed of a pair of series stacked half-wave rectifiers. (Figure 3.41) The corresponding netlist is in Figure 3.41. The bottom rectifier charges C1 on




```
*SPICE 03255.eps
C1 2 0 1000p
D1 1 2 diode
C2 4 1 1000p
D2 0 1 diode
V1 4 0 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.01m 5m
.end
```

Figure 3.40: *Voltage doubler: v(4) input. v(1) clamper stage. v(2) half-wave rectifier stage, which is the doubler output.*

the negative half cycle of input. The top rectifier charges C2 on the positive halfcycle. Each capacitor takes on a charge of 5 V (4.3 V considering diode drop). The output at node 5 is the series total of C1 + C2 or 10 V (8.6 V with diode drops).




```
*SPICE 03273.eps
*R1 3 0 100k
*R2 5 3 100k
D1 0 2 diode
D2 2 5 diode
C1 3 0 1000p
C2 5 3 1000p
V1 2 3 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.01m 5m
.end
```

Figure 3.41: *Full-wave voltage doubler consists of two half-wave rectifiers operating on alternating polarities.*

Note that the output v(5) Figure 3.42 reaches full value within one cycle of the input v(2) excursion.

Figure 3.43 illustrates the derivation of the full-wave doubler from a pair of opposite polarity half-wave rectifiers (a). The negative rectifier of the pair is redrawn for clarity (b). Both are combined at (c) sharing the same ground. At (d) the negative rectifier is re-wired to share

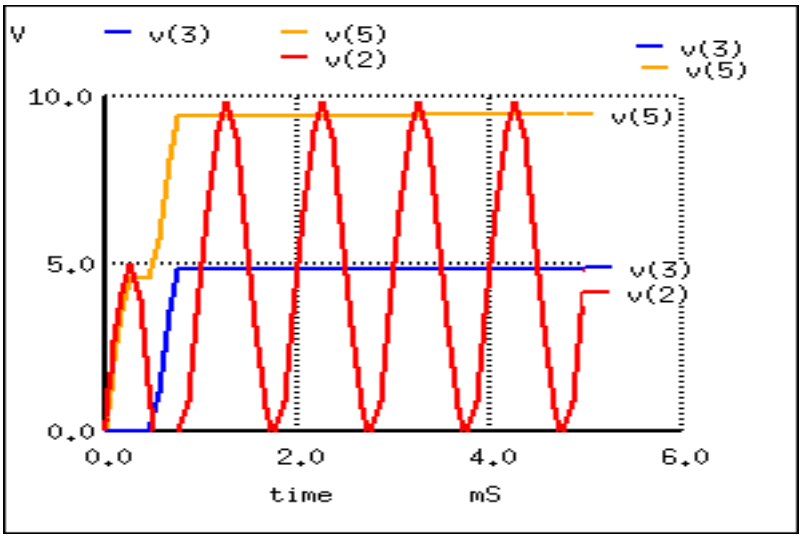


Figure 3.42: *Full-wave voltage doubler: v(2) input, v(3)voltage at mid point, v(5) voltage at output*

one voltage source with the positive rectifier. This yields a ±5 V (4.3 V with diode drop) power supply; though, 10 V is measurable between the two outputs. The ground reference point is moved so that +10 V is available with respect to ground.

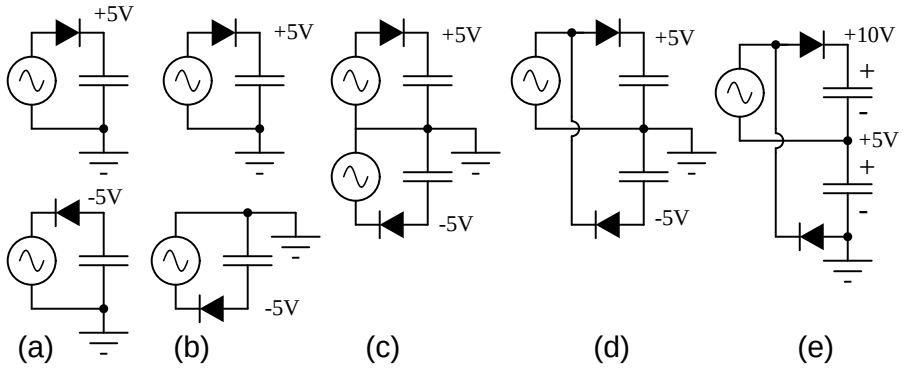


Figure 3.43: *Full-wave doubler: (a) Pair of doublers, (b) redrawn, (c) sharing the ground, (d) share the same voltage source. (e) move the ground point.*

A *voltage tripler* (Figure 3.44) is built from a combination of a doubler and a half wave rectifier (C3, D3). The half-wave rectifier produces 5 V (4.3 V) at node 3. The doubler provides another 10 V (8.4 V) between nodes 2 and 3. for a total of 15 V (12.9 V) at the output node 2 with respect to ground. The netlist is in Figure 3.45.

Note that V(3) in Figure 3.45 rises to 5 V (4.3 V) on the first negative half cycle. Input v(4)

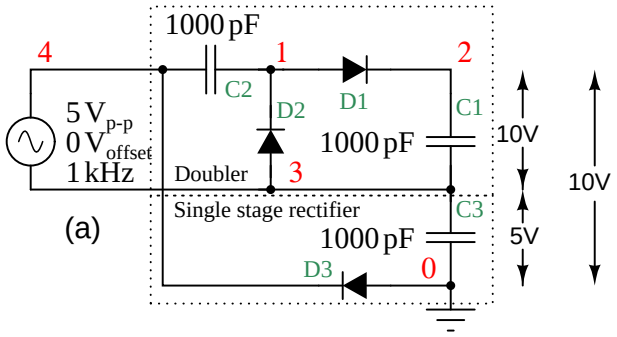
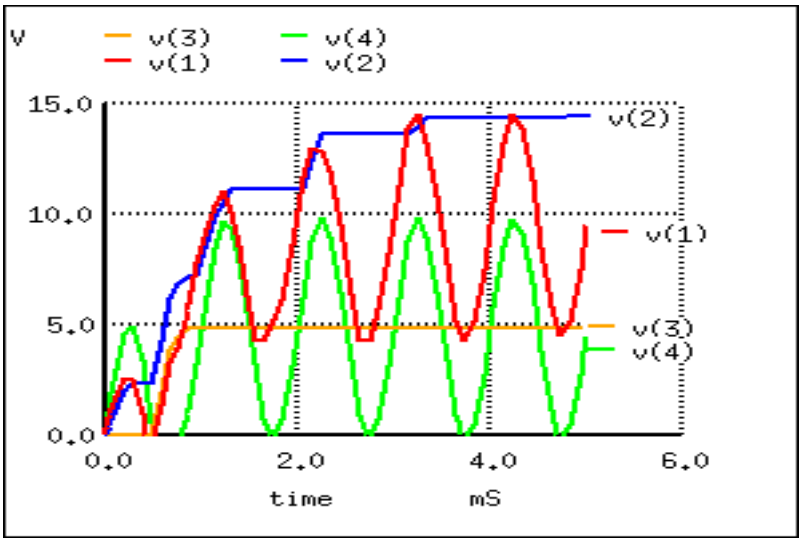


Figure 3.44: *Voltage tripler composed of doubler stacked atop a single stage rectifier.*

is shifted upward by 5 V (4.3 V) due to 5 V from the half-wave rectifier. And 5 V more at v(1) due to the clamper (C2, D2). D1 charges C1 (waveform v(2)) to the peak value of v(1).




```
*SPICE 03283.eps
C3 3 0 1000p
D3 0 4 diode
C1 2 3 1000p
D1 1 2 diode
C2 4 1 1000p
D2 3 1 diode
V1 4 3 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.01m 5m
.end
```

Figure 3.45: *Voltage tripler: v(3) half-wave rectifier, v(4) input+ 5 V, v(1) clamper, v(2) final output.*

A *voltage quadrupler* is a stacked combination of two doublers shown in Figure 3.46. Each doubler provides 10 V (8.6 V) for a series total at node 2 with respect to ground of 20 V (17.2 V). The netlist is in Figure 3.47.

The waveforms of the quadrupler are shown in Figure 3.47. Two DC outputs are available: v(3), the doubler output, and v(2) the quadrupler output. Some of the intermediate voltages at clampers illustrate that the input sinewave (not shown), which swings by ¡plusminus¿5 V, is successively clamped at higher levels: at v(5), v(4) and v(1). Strictly v(4) is not a clamper

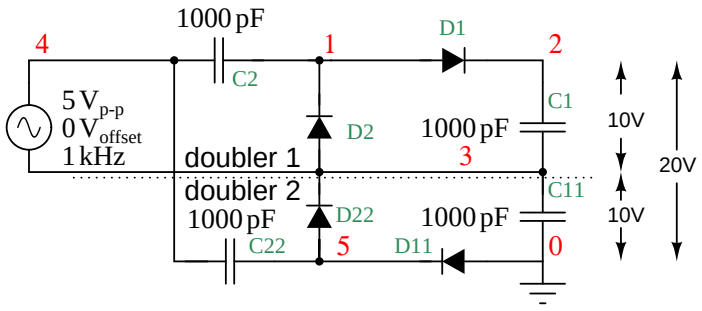
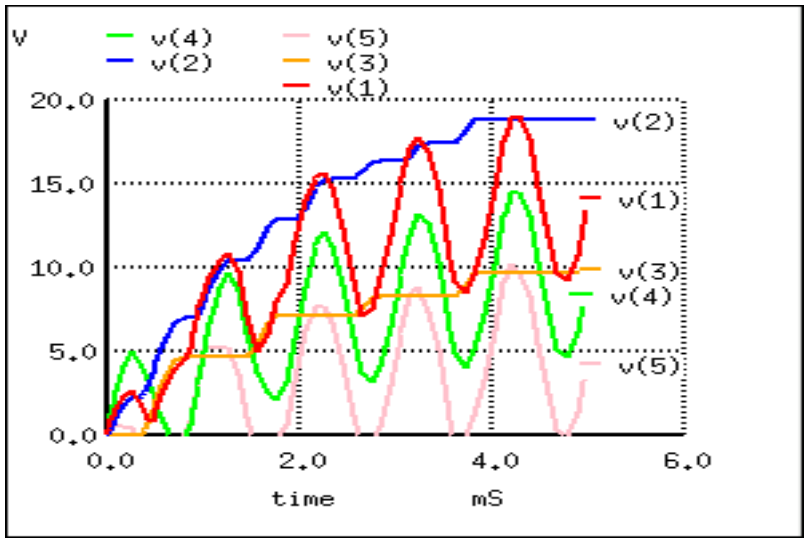


Figure 3.46: *Voltage quadrupler, composed of two doublers stacked in series, with output at node 2.*

output. It is simply the AC voltage source in series with the v(3) the doubler output. None the less, v(1) is a clamped version of v(4)




```
*SPICE 03441.eps
*SPICE 03286.eps
C22 4 5 1000p
C11 3 0 1000p
D11 0 5 diode
D22  5 3 diode
C1 2 3 1000p
D1  1 2 diode
C2 4 1 1000p
D2  3 1 diode
V1 4 3 SIN(0 5 1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.01m 5m
.end
```

Figure 3.47: *Voltage quadrupler: DC voltage available at v(3) and v(2). Intermediate waveforms: Clampers: v(5), v(4), v(1).*

Some notes on voltage multipliers are in order at this point. The circuit parameters used in the examples (V= 5 V 1 kHz, C=1000 pf) do not provide much current, microamps. Furthermore, load resistors have been omitted. Loading reduces the voltages from those shown. If the circuits are to be driven by a kHz source at low voltage, as in the examples, the capacitors are usually 0.1 to 1.0 μF so that milliamps of current are available at the output. If the multipliers are driven from 50/60 Hz, the capacitor are a few hundred to a few thousand microfarads to provide hundreds of milliamps of output current. If driven from line voltage, pay attention to

the polarity and voltage ratings of the capacitors.

Finally, any direct line driven power supply (no transformer) is dangerous to the experimenter and line operated test equipment. Commercial direct driven supplies are safe because the hazardous circuitry is in an enclosure to protect the user. When breadboarding these circuits with electrolytic capacitors of any voltage, the capacitors will explode if the polarity is reversed. Such circuits should be powered up behind a safety shield.

A voltage multiplier of cascaded half-wave doublers of arbitrary length is known as a *Cockcroft-Walton* multiplier as shown in Figure 3.48. This multiplier is used when a high voltage at low current is required. The advantage over a conventional supply is that an expensive high voltage transformer is not required– at least not as high as the output.

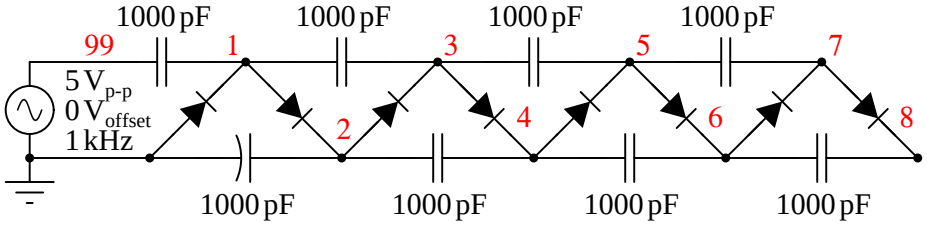


Figure 3.48: *Cockcroft-Walton x8 voltage multiplier; output at v(8).*

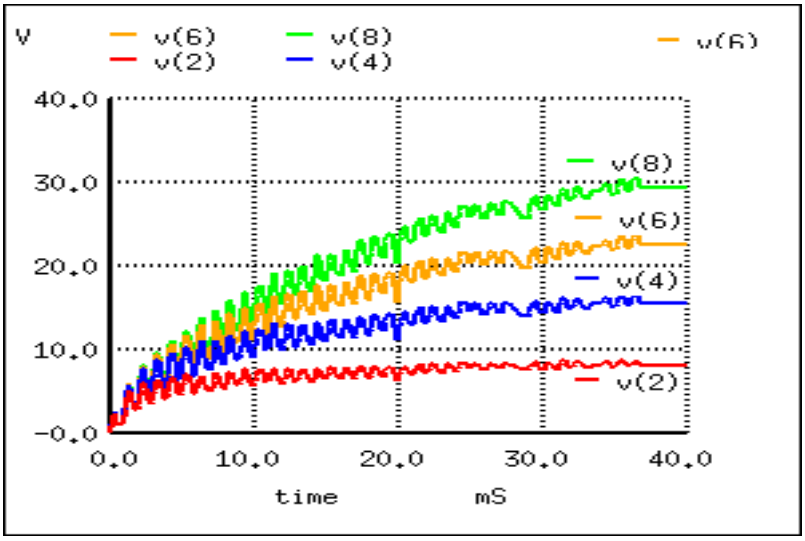
The pair of diodes and capacitors to the left of nodes 1 and 2 in Figure 3.48 constitute a half-wave doubler. Rotating the diodes by 45^o counterclockwise, and the bottom capacitor by 90^o makes it look like Figure 3.39 (a). Four of the doubler sections are cascaded to the right for a theoretical x8 multiplication factor. Node 1 has a clamper waveform (not shown), a sinewave shifted up by 1x (5 V). The other odd numbered nodes are sinewaves clamped to successively higher voltages. Node 2, the output of the first doubler, is a 2x DC voltage v(2) in Figure 3.49. Successive even numbered nodes charge to successively higher voltages: v(4), v(6), v(8)

Without diode drops, each doubler yields 2Vin or 10 V, considering two diode drops (10-1.4)=8.6 V is realistic. For a total of 4 doublers one expects 4·8.6=34.4 V out of 40 V. Consulting Figure 3.49, v(2) is about right;however, v(8) is <30 V instead of the anticipated 34.4 V. The bane of the Cockcroft-Walton multiplier is that each additional stage adds less than the previous stage. Thus, a practical limit to the number of stages exist. It is possible to overcome this limitation with a modification to the basic circuit. [3] Also note the time scale of 40 msec compared with 5 ms for previous circuits. It required 40 msec for the voltages to rise to a terminal value for this circuit. The netlist in Figure 3.49 has a ".tran 0.010m 50m" command to extend the simulation time to 50 msec; though, only 40 msec is plotted.

The Cockcroft-Walton multiplier serves as a more efficient high voltage source for photomultiplier tubes requiring up to 2000 V. [3] Moreover, the tube has numerous *dynodes*, terminals requiring connection to the lower voltage "even numbered" nodes. The series string of multiplier taps replaces a heat generating resistive voltage divider of previous designs.

An AC line operated Cockcroft-Walton multiplier provides high voltage to "ion generators" for neutralizing electrostatic charge and for air purifiers.

- **REVIEW:**
- A voltage multiplier produces a DC multiple (2,3,4, etc) of the AC peak input voltage.




```
D1 7 8 diode
C1 8 6 1000p
D2 6 7 diode
C2 5 7 1000p
D3 5 6 diode
C3 4 6 1000p
D4 4 5 diode
C4 3 5 1000p
D5 3 4 diode
C5 2 4 1000p
D6 2 3 diode
D7 1 2 diode
C6 1 3 1000p
C7 2 0 1000p
C8 99 1 1000p
D8 0 1 diode
V1 99 0 SIN(0 5
1k)
.model diode d
.tran 0.01m 50m
.end
```

Figure 3.49: *Cockcroft-Walton (x8) waveforms. Output is v(8).*

- The most basic multiplier is a half-wave doubler.
- The full-wave double is a superior circuit as a doubler.
- A tripler is a half-wave doubler and a conventional rectifier stage (peak detector).
- A quadrupler is a pair of half-wave doublers
- A long string of half-wave doublers is known as a Cockcroft-Walton multiplier.

3.9 Inductor commutating circuits

A popular use of diodes is for the mitigation of inductive "kickback:" the pulses of high voltage produced when direct current through an inductor is interrupted. Take, for example, this simple circuit in Figure 3.50 with no protection against inductive kickback.

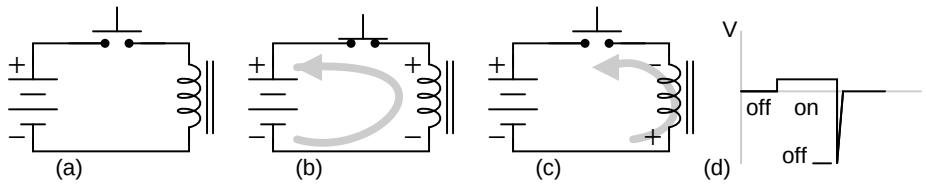


Figure 3.50: *Inductive kickback: (a) Switch open. (b) Switch closed, electron current flows from battery through coil which has polarity matching battery. Magnetic field stores energy. (c) Switch open, Current still flows in coil due to collapsing magnetic field. Note polarity change on coil changed. (d) Coil voltage vs time.*

When the pushbutton switch is actuated, current goes through the inductor, producing a magnetic field around it. When the switch is de-actuated, its contacts open, interrupting current through the inductor, and causing the magnetic field to rapidly collapse. Because the voltage induced in a coil of wire is directly proportional to the *rate of change* over time of magnetic flux (Faraday's Law: e = N$d\Phi/dt$), this rapid collapse of magnetism around the coil produces a high voltage "spike".

If the inductor in question is an electromagnet coil, such as in a solenoid or relay (constructed for the purpose of creating a physical force via its magnetic field when energized), the effect of inductive "kickback" serves no useful purpose at all. In fact, it is quite detrimental to the switch, as it causes excessive arcing at the contacts, greatly reducing their service life. Of the practical methods for mitigating the high voltage transient created when the switch is opened, none so simple as the so-called *commutating diode* in Figure 3.51.

In this circuit, the diode is placed in parallel with the coil, such that it will be reverse-biased when DC voltage is applied to the coil through the switch. Thus, when the coil is energized, the diode conducts no current in Figure 3.51 (b).

However, when the switch is opened, the coil's inductance responds to the decrease in current by inducing a voltage of reverse polarity, in an effort to maintain current at the same magnitude and in the same direction. This sudden reversal of voltage polarity across the coil

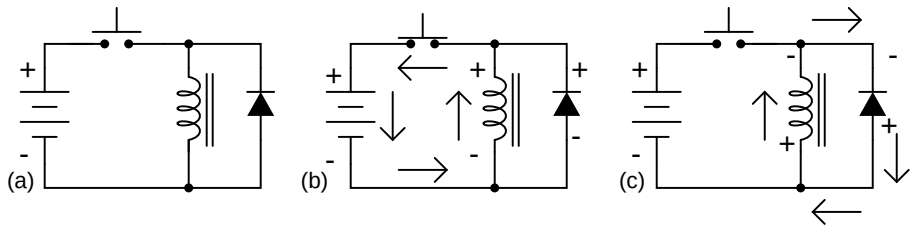


Figure 3.51: *Inductive kickback with protection: (a) Switch open. (b)Switch closed, storing energy in magnetic field. (c) Switch open, inductive kickback is shorted by diode.*

forward-biases the diode, and the diode provides a current path for the inductor's current, so that its stored energy is dissipated slowly rather than suddenly in Figure 3.51 (c).

As a result, the voltage induced in the coil by its collapsing magnetic field is quite low: merely the forward voltage drop of the diode, rather than hundreds of volts as before. Thus, the switch contacts experience a voltage drop equal to the battery voltage plus about 0.7 volts (if the diode is silicon) during this discharge time.

In electronics parlance, *commutation* refers to the reversal of voltage polarity or current direction. Thus, the purpose of a *commutating diode* is to act whenever voltage reverses polarity, for example, on an inductor coil when current through it is interrupted. A less formal term for a commutating diode is *snubber*, because it "snubs" or "squelches" the inductive kickback.

A noteworthy disadvantage of this method is the extra time it imparts to the coil's discharge. Because the induced voltage is clamped to a very low value, its rate of magnetic flux change over time is comparatively slow. Remember that Faraday's Law describes the magnetic flux rate-of-change ($d\Phi/dt$) as being proportional to the induced, instantaneous voltage (e or v). If the instantaneous voltage is limited to some low figure, then the rate of change of magnetic flux over time will likewise be limited to a low (slow) figure.

If an electromagnet coil is "snubbed" with a commutating diode, the magnetic field will dissipate at a relatively slow rate compared to the original scenario (no diode) where the field disappeared almost instantly upon switch release. The amount of time in question will most likely be less than one second, but it will be measurably slower than without a commutating diode in place. This may be an intolerable consequence if the coil is used to actuate an electromechanical relay, because the relay will possess a natural "time delay" upon coil de-energization, and an unwanted delay of even a fraction of a second may wreak havoc in some circuits.

Unfortunately, one cannot eliminate the high-voltage transient of inductive kickback *and* maintain fast de-magnetization of the coil: Faraday's Law will not be violated. However, if slow de-magnetization is unacceptable, a compromise may be struck between transient voltage and time by allowing the coil's voltage to rise to some higher level (but not so high as without a commutating diode in place). The schematic in Figure 3.52 shows how this can be done.

A resistor placed in series with the commutating diode allows the coil's induced voltage to rise to a level greater than the diode's forward voltage drop, thus hastening the process of de-magnetization. This, of course, will place the switch contacts under greater stress, and so the resistor must be sized to limit that transient voltage at an acceptable maximum level.

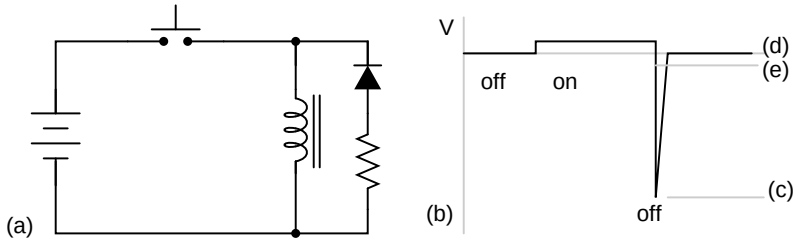


Figure 3.52: *(a) Commutating diode with series resistor. (b) Voltage waveform. (c) Level with no diode. (d) Level with diode, no resistor. (e) Compromise level with diode and resistor.*

3.10 Diode switching circuits

Diodes can perform switching and digital logic operations. Forward and reverse bias switch a diode between the low and high impedance states, respectively. Thus, it serves as a switch.

3.10.1 Logic

Diodes can perform digital logic functions: AND, and OR. Diode logic was used in early digital computers. It only finds limited application today. Sometimes it is convenient to fashion a single logic gate from a few diodes.

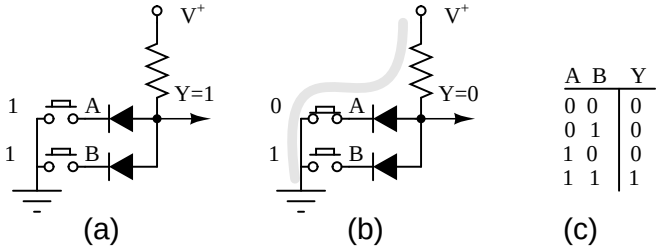


Figure 3.53: *Diode AND gate*

An AND gate is shown in Figure 3.53. Logic gates have inputs and an output (Y) which is a function of the inputs. The inputs to the gate are high (logic 1), say 10 V, or low, 0 V (logic 0). In the figure, the logic levels are generated by switches. If a switch is up, the input is effectively high (1). If the switch is down, it connects a diode cathode to ground, which is low (0). The output depends on the combination of inputs at A and B. The inputs and output are customarily recorded in a "truth table" at (c) to describe the logic of a gate. At (a) all inputs are high (1). This is recorded in the last line of the truth table at (c). The output, Y, is high (1) due to the V^+ on the top of the resistor. It is unaffected by open switches. At (b) switch A pulls the cathode of the connected diode low, pulling output Y low (0.7 V). This is recorded in the third line of the truth table. The second line of the truth table describes the output with the switches reversed from (b). Switch B pulls the diode and output low. The first line of the

truth table recordes the Output=0 for both input low (0). The truth table describes a logical AND function. Summary: both inputs A and B high yields a high (1) out.

A two input OR gate composed of a pair of diodes is shown in Figure **??**. If both inputs are logic low at (a) as simulated by both switches "downward," the output Y is pulled low by the resistor. This logic zero is recorded in the first line of the truth table at (c). If one of the inputs is high as at (b), or the other input is high, or both inputs high, the diode(s) conduct(s), pulling the output Y high. These results are reordered in the second through fourth lines of the truth table. Summary: any input "high" is a high out at Y.

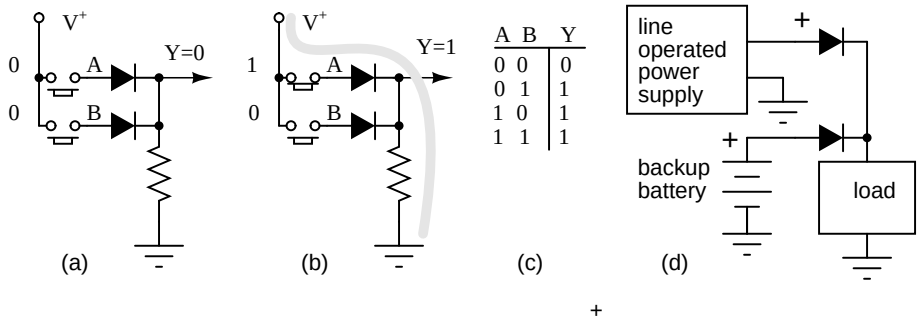


Figure 3.54: *OR gate: (a) First line, truth table (TT). (b) Third line TT. (d) Logical OR of power line supply and back-up battery.*

A backup battery may be OR-wired with a line operated DC power supply in Figure 3.54 (d) to power a load, even during a power failure. With AC power present, the line supply powers the load, assuming that it is a higher voltage than the battery. In the event of a power failure, the line supply voltage drops to 0 V; the battery powers the load. The diodes must be is series with the power sources to prevent a failed line supply from draining the battery, and to prevent it from over charging the battery when line power is available. Does your PC computer retain its BIOS setting when powered off? Does your VCR (video cassette recorder) retain the clock setting after a power failure? (PC Yes, old VCR no, new VCR yes.)

3.10.2 Analog switch

Diodes can switch analog signals. A reverse biased diode appears to be an open circuit. A forward biased diode is a low resistance conductor. The only problem is isolating the AC signal being switched from the DC control signal. The circuit in Figure 3.55 is a parallel resonant network: resonant tuning inductor paralleled by one (or more) of the switched resonator capacitors. This parallel LC resonant circuit could be a preselector filter for a radio receiver. It could be the frequency determining network of an oscillator (not shown). The digital control lines may be driven by a microprocessor interface.

The large value DC blocking capacitor grounds the resonant tuning inductor for AC while blocking DC. It would have a low reactance compared to the parallel LC reactances. This prevents the anode DC voltage from being shorted to ground by the resonant tuning inductor. A switched resonator capacitor is selected by pulling the corresponding digital control low. This

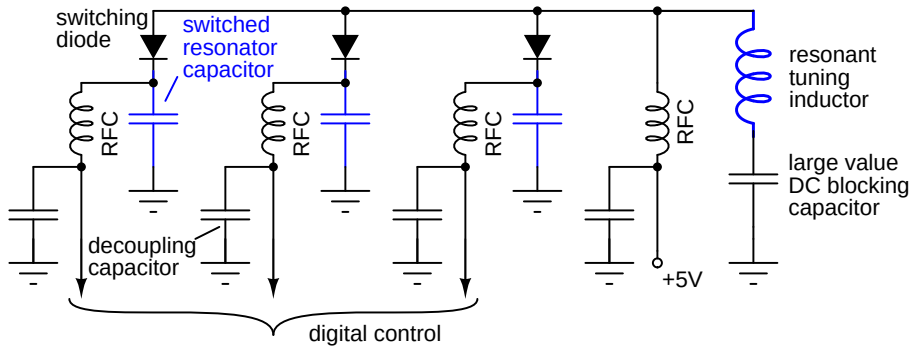


Figure 3.55: *Diode switch: A digital control signal (low) selects a resonator capacitor by forward biasing the switching diode.*

forward biases the switching diode. The DC current path is from +5 V through an RF choke (RFC), a switching diode, and an RFC to ground via the digital control. The purpose of the RFC at the +5 V is to keep AC out of the +5 V supply. The RFC in series with the digital control is to keep AC out of the external control line. The decoupling capacitor shorts the little AC leaking through the RFC to ground, bypassing the external digital control line.

With all three digital control lines high ($\geq$+5 V), no switched resonator capacitors are selected due to diode reverse bias. Pulling one or more lines low, selects one or more switched resonator capacitors, respectively. As more capacitors are switched in parallel with the resonant tuning inductor, the resonant frequency decreases.

The reverse biased diode capacitance may be substantial compared with very high frequency or ultra high frequency circuits. PIN diodes may be used as switches for lower capacitance.

3.11 Zener diodes

If we connect a diode and resistor in series with a DC voltage source so that the diode is forward-biased, the voltage drop across the diode will remain fairly constant over a wide range of power supply voltages as in Figure 3.56 (a).

According to the "diode equation", the current through a forward-biased PN junction is proportional to e raised to the power of the forward voltage drop. Because this is an exponential function, current rises quite rapidly for modest increases in voltage drop. Another way of considering this is to say that voltage dropped across a forward-biased diode changes little for large variations in diode current. In the circuit shown above, diode current is limited by the voltage of the power supply, the series resistor, and the diode's voltage drop, which as we know doesn't vary much from 0.7 volts. If the power supply voltage were to be increased, the resistor's voltage drop would increase almost the same amount, and the diode's voltage drop just a little. Conversely, a decrease in power supply voltage would result in an almost equal decrease in resistor voltage drop, with just a little decrease in diode voltage drop. In a word, we could summarize this behavior by saying that the diode is *regulating* the voltage drop at

approximately 0.7 volts.

Voltage regulation is a useful diode property to exploit. Suppose we were building some kind of circuit which could not tolerate variations in power supply voltage, but needed to be powered by a chemical battery, whose voltage changes over its lifetime. We could form a circuit as shown and connect the circuit requiring steady voltage across the diode, where it would receive an unchanging 0.7 volts.

This would certainly work, but most practical circuits of any kind require a power supply voltage in excess of 0.7 volts to properly function. One way we could increase our voltage regulation point would be to connect multiple diodes in series, so that their individual forward voltage drops of 0.7 volts each would add to create a larger total. For instance, if we had ten diodes in series, the regulated voltage would be ten times 0.7, or 7 volts in Figure 3.56 (b).

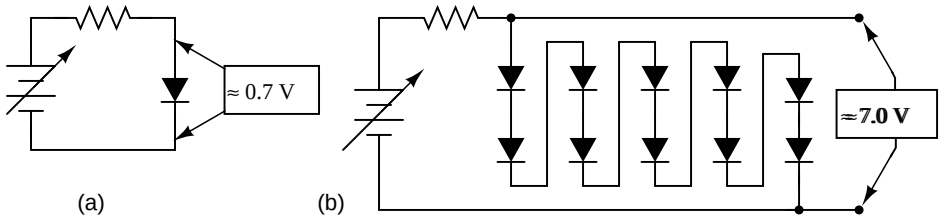


Figure 3.56: *Forward biased Si reference: (a) single diode, 0.7V, (b) 10-diodes in series 7.0V.*

So long as the battery voltage never sagged below 7 volts, there would always be about 7 volts dropped across the ten-diode "stack."

If larger regulated voltages are required, we could either use more diodes in series (an inelegant option, in my opinion), or try a fundamentally different approach. We know that diode forward voltage is a fairly constant figure under a wide range of conditions, but so is *reverse breakdown voltage*, and breakdown voltage is typically much, much greater than forward voltage. If we reversed the polarity of the diode in our single-diode regulator circuit and increased the power supply voltage to the point where the diode "broke down" (could no longer withstand the reverse-bias voltage impressed across it), the diode would similarly regulate the voltage at that breakdown point, not allowing it to increase further as in Figure 3.57 (a).

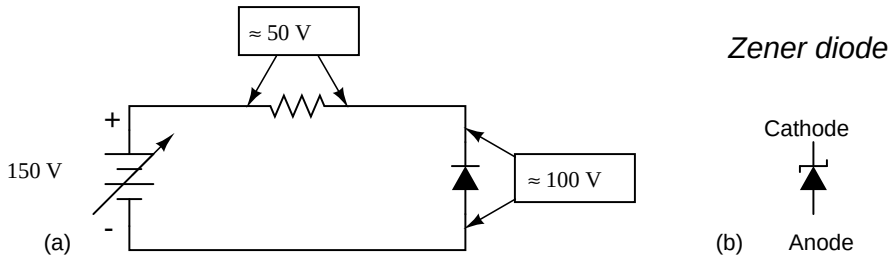


Figure 3.57: *(a) Reverse biased Si small-signal diode breaks down at about 100V. (b) Symbol for Zener diode.*

Unfortunately, when normal rectifying diodes "break down," they usually do so destructively. However, it is possible to build a special type of diode that can handle breakdown without failing completely. This type of diode is called a *zener diode*, and its symbol looks like Figure 3.57 (b).

When forward-biased, zener diodes behave much the same as standard rectifying diodes: they have a forward voltage drop which follows the "diode equation" and is about 0.7 volts. In reverse-bias mode, they do not conduct until the applied voltage reaches or exceeds the so-called *zener voltage*, at which point the diode is able to conduct substantial current, and in doing so will try to limit the voltage dropped across it to that zener voltage point. So long as the power dissipated by this reverse current does not exceed the diode's thermal limits, the diode will not be harmed.

Zener diodes are manufactured with zener voltages ranging anywhere from a few volts to hundreds of volts. This zener voltage changes slightly with temperature, and like common carbon-composition resistor values, may be anywhere from 5 percent to 10 percent in error from the manufacturer's specifications. However, this stability and accuracy is generally good enough for the zener diode to be used as a voltage regulator device in common power supply circuit in Figure 3.58.

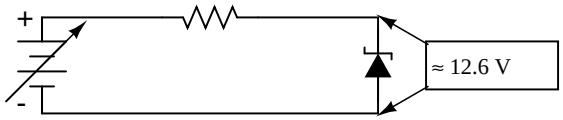


Figure 3.58: *Zener diode regulator circuit, Zener voltage = 12.6V).*

Please take note of the zener diode's orientation in the above circuit: the diode is *reverse-biased*, and intentionally so. If we had oriented the diode in the "normal" way, so as to be forward-biased, it would only drop 0.7 volts, just like a regular rectifying diode. If we want to exploit this diode's reverse breakdown properties, we must operate it in its reverse-bias mode. So long as the power supply voltage remains above the zener voltage (12.6 volts, in this example), the voltage dropped across the zener diode will remain at approximately 12.6 volts.

Like any semiconductor device, the zener diode is sensitive to temperature. Excessive temperature will destroy a zener diode, and because it both drops voltage and conducts current, it produces its own heat in accordance with Joule's Law (P=IE). Therefore, one must be careful to design the regulator circuit in such a way that the diode's power dissipation rating is not exceeded. Interestingly enough, when zener diodes fail due to excessive power dissipation, they usually fail *shorted* rather than open. A diode failed in this manner is readily detected: it drops almost zero voltage when biased either way, like a piece of wire.

Let's examine a zener diode regulating circuit mathematically, determining all voltages, currents, and power dissipations. Taking the same form of circuit shown earlier, we'll perform calculations assuming a zener voltage of 12.6 volts, a power supply voltage of 45 volts, and a series resistor value of 1000 Ω (we'll regard the zener voltage to be *exactly* 12.6 volts so as to avoid having to qualify all figures as "approximate" in Figure 3.59 (a)

If the zener diode's voltage is 12.6 volts and the power supply's voltage is 45 volts, there will be 32.4 volts dropped across the resistor (45 volts - 12.6 volts = 32.4 volts). 32.4 volts dropped across 1000 Ω gives 32.4 mA of current in the circuit. (Figure 3.59 (b))

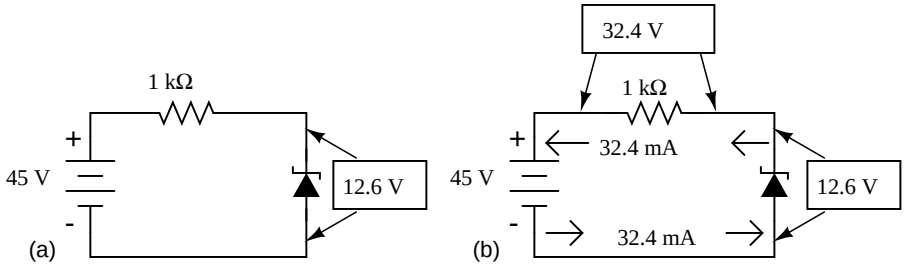


Figure 3.59: *(a) Zener Voltage regulator with 1000 Ω resistor. (b) Calculation of voltage drops and current.*

Power is calculated by multiplying current by voltage (P=IE), so we can calculate power dissipations for both the resistor and the zener diode quite easily:

$P_{resistor}$ = (32.4 mA)(32.4 V)

$P_{resistor}$ = 1.0498 W

P_{diode} = (32.4 mA)(12.6 V)

P_{diode} = 408.24 mW

A zener diode with a power rating of 0.5 watt would be adequate, as would a resistor rated for 1.5 or 2 watts of dissipation.

If excessive power dissipation is detrimental, then why not design the circuit for the least amount of dissipation possible? Why not just size the resistor for a very high value of resistance, thus severely limiting current and keeping power dissipation figures very low? Take this circuit, for example, with a 100 kΩ resistor instead of a 1 kΩ resistor. Note that both the power supply voltage and the diode's zener voltage in Figure 3.60 are identical to the last example:

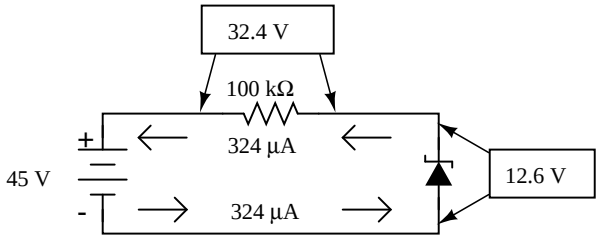


Figure 3.60: *Zener regulator with 100 kΩ resistor.*

With only 1/100 of the current we had before (324 μA instead of 32.4 mA), both power dissipation figures should be 100 times smaller:

$P_{resistor}$ = (324 µA)(32.4 V)

$P_{resistor}$ = 10.498 mW

P_{diode} = (324 µA)(12.6 V)

P_{diode} = 4.0824 mW

Seems ideal, doesn't it? Less power dissipation means lower operating temperatures for both the diode and the resistor, and also less wasted energy in the system, right? A higher resistance value *does* reduce power dissipation levels in the circuit, but it unfortunately introduces another problem. Remember that the purpose of a regulator circuit is to provide a stable voltage *for another circuit*. In other words, we're eventually going to power something with 12.6 volts, and this something will have a current draw of its own. Consider our first regulator circuit, this time with a 500 Ω load connected in parallel with the zener diode in Figure 3.61.

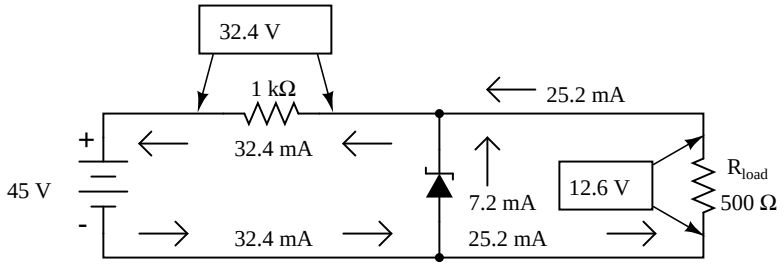


Figure 3.61: *Zener regulator with 1000 Ω series resistor and 500 Ω load.*

If 12.6 volts is maintained across a 500 Ω load, the load will draw 25.2 mA of current. In order for the 1 kΩ series "dropping" resistor to drop 32.4 volts (reducing the power supply's voltage of 45 volts down to 12.6 across the zener), it still must conduct 32.4 mA of current. This leaves 7.2 mA of current through the zener diode.

Now consider our "power-saving" regulator circuit with the 100 kΩ dropping resistor, delivering power to the same 500 Ω load. What it is supposed to do is maintain 12.6 volts across the load, just like the last circuit. However, as we will see, it *cannot* accomplish this task. (Figure 3.62)

With the larger value of dropping resistor in place, there will only be about 224 mV of voltage across the 500 Ω load, far less than the expected value of 12.6 volts! Why is this? If we actually had 12.6 volts across the load, it would draw 25.2 mA of current, as before. This load current would have to go through the series dropping resistor as it did before, but with a new (much larger!) dropping resistor in place, the voltage dropped across that resistor with 25.2 mA of current going through it would be 2,520 volts! Since we obviously don't have that much voltage supplied by the battery, this cannot happen.

The situation is easier to comprehend if we temporarily remove the zener diode from the circuit and analyze the behavior of the two resistors alone in Figure 3.63.

Both the 100 kΩ dropping resistor and the 500 Ω load resistance are in series with each other, giving a total circuit resistance of 100.5 kΩ. With a total voltage of 45 volts and a total

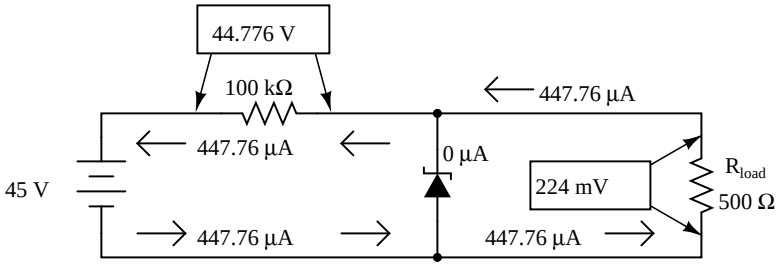


Figure 3.62: *Zener non-regulator with 100 KΩ series resistor with 500 Ω load.¿*

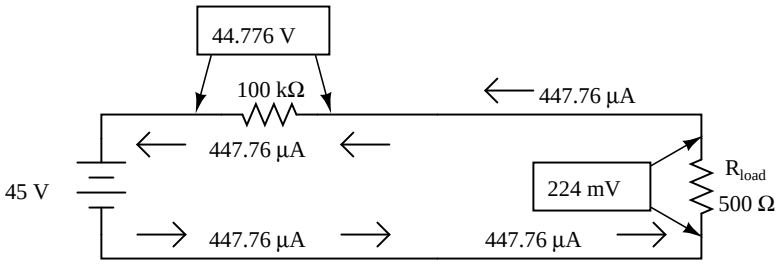


Figure 3.63: *Non-regulator with Zener removed.*

resistance of 100.5 kΩ, Ohm's Law (I=E/R) tells us that the current will be 447.76 μA. Figuring voltage drops across both resistors (E=IR), we arrive at 44.776 volts and 224 mV, respectively. If we were to re-install the zener diode at this point, it would "see" 224 mV across it as well, being in parallel with the load resistance. This is far below the zener breakdown voltage of the diode and so it will not "break down" and conduct current. For that matter, at this low voltage the diode wouldn't conduct even if it were forward-biased! Thus, the diode ceases to regulate voltage. At least 12.6 volts must be dropped across to "activate" it.

The analytical technique of removing a zener diode from a circuit and seeing whether or not enough voltage is present to make it conduct is a sound one. Just because a zener diode happens to be connected in a circuit doesn't guarantee that the full zener voltage will always be dropped across it! Remember that zener diodes work by *limiting* voltage to some maximum level; they cannot *make up* for a lack of voltage.

In summary, any zener diode regulating circuit will function so long as the load's resistance is equal to or greater than some minimum value. If the load resistance is too low, it will draw too much current, dropping too much voltage across the series dropping resistor, leaving insufficient voltage across the zener diode to make it conduct. When the zener diode stops conducting current, it can no longer regulate voltage, and the load voltage will fall below the regulation point.

Our regulator circuit with the 100 kΩ dropping resistor must be good for some value of load resistance, though. To find this acceptable load resistance value, we can use a table to calculate resistance in the two-resistor series circuit (no diode), inserting the known values of total voltage and dropping resistor resistance, and calculating for an expected load voltage of

12.6 volts:

	$R_{dropping}$	R_{load}	Total	
E		12.6	45	Volts
I				Amps
R	100 k			Ohms

With 45 volts of total voltage and 12.6 volts across the load, we should have 32.4 volts across $R_{dropping}$:

	$R_{dropping}$	R_{load}	Total	
E	**32.4**	12.6	45	Volts
I				Amps
R	100 k			Ohms

With 32.4 volts across the dropping resistor, and 100 kΩ worth of resistance in it, the current through it will be 324 μA:

	$R_{dropping}$	R_{load}	Total	
E	32.4	12.6	45	Volts
I	**324** μ			Amps
R	100 k			Ohms

Ohm's Law

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

Being a series circuit, the current is equal through all components at any given time:

	$R_{dropping}$	R_{load}	Total	
E	32.4	12.6	45	Volts
I	324 μ	**324** μ	**324** μ	Amps
R	100 k			Ohms

Rule of series circuits:

$$I_{Total} = I_1 = I_2 = \ldots I_n$$

Calculating load resistance is now a simple matter of Ohm's Law (R = E/I), giving us 38.889 kΩ:

	$R_{dropping}$	R_{load}	Total	
E	32.4	12.6	45	Volts
I	324 µ	324 µ	324 µ	Amps
R	100 k	**38.889 k**		Ohms

Ohm's Law

$$R = \frac{E}{I}$$

Thus, if the load resistance is exactly 38.889 kΩ, there will be 12.6 volts across it, diode or no diode. Any load resistance smaller than 38.889 kΩ will result in a load voltage less than 12.6 volts, diode or no diode. With the diode in place, the load voltage will be regulated to a maximum of 12.6 volts for any load resistance *greater* than 38.889 kΩ.

With the original value of 1 kΩ for the dropping resistor, our regulator circuit was able to adequately regulate voltage even for a load resistance as low as 500 Ω. What we see is a tradeoff between power dissipation and acceptable load resistance. The higher-value dropping resistor gave us less power dissipation, at the expense of raising the acceptable minimum load resistance value. If we wish to regulate voltage for low-value load resistances, the circuit must be prepared to handle higher power dissipation.

Zener diodes regulate voltage by acting as complementary loads, drawing more or less current as necessary to ensure a constant voltage drop across the load. This is analogous to regulating the speed of an automobile by braking rather than by varying the throttle position: not only is it wasteful, but the brakes must be built to handle all the engine's power when the driving conditions don't demand it. Despite this fundamental inefficiency of design, zener diode regulator circuits are widely employed due to their sheer simplicity. In high-power applications where the inefficiencies would be unacceptable, other voltage-regulating techniques are applied. But even then, small zener-based circuits are often used to provide a "reference" voltage to drive a more efficient amplifier circuit controlling the main power.

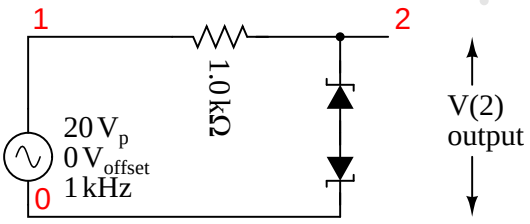
Zener diodes are manufactured in standard voltage ratings listed in Table 3.1. The table "Common zener diode voltages" lists common voltages for 0.3W and 1.3W parts. The wattage corresponds to die and package size, and is the power that the diode may dissipate without damage.

Zener diode clipper: A clipping circuit which clips the peaks of waveform a approximately the zener voltage of the diodes. The circuit of Figure 3.64 has two zeners connected series opposing to symmetrically clip a waveform at nearly the Zener voltage. The resistor limits current drawn by the zeners to a safe value.

The zener breakdown voltage for the diodes is set at 10 V by the diode model parameter "bv=10" in the spice net list in Figure 3.64. This causes the zeners to clip at about 10 V. The back-to-back diodes clip both peaks. For a positive half-cycle, the top zener is reverse biased, breaking down at the zener voltage of 10 V. The lower zener drops approximately 0.7 V since it is forward biased. Thus, a more accurate clipping level is 10+0.7=10.7V. Similar negative

Table 3.1: *Common zener diode voltages*

0.5W						
2.7V	3.0V	3.3V	3.6V	3.9V	4.3V	4.7V
5.1V	5.6V	6.2V	6.8V	7.5V	8.2V	9.1V
10V	11V	12V	13V	15V	16V	18V
20V	24V	27V	30V			
1.3W						
4.7V	5.1V	5.6V	6.2V	6.8V	7.5V	8.2V
9.1V	10V	11V	12V	13V	15V	16V
18V	20V	22V	24V	27V	30V	33V
36V	39V	43V	47V	51V	56V	62V
68V	75V	100V	200V			




```
*SPICE 03445.eps
D1 4 0 diode
D2 4 2 diode
R1 2 1 1.0k
V1 1 0 SIN(0 20
1k)
.model diode d
bv=10
.tran 0.001m 2m
.end
```

Figure 3.64: *Zener diode clipper:*

half-cycle clipping occurs a -10.7 V. (Figure 3.65) shows the clipping level at a little over $\pm$10 V.

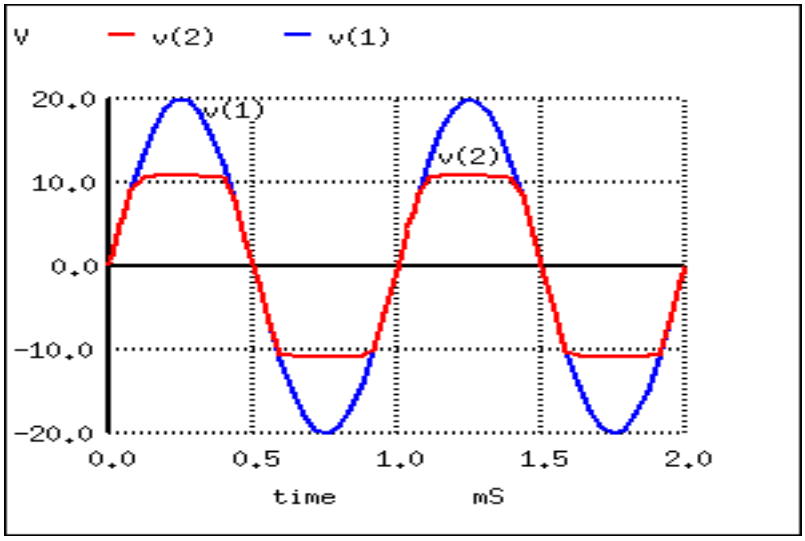


Figure 3.65: *Zener diode clipper: v(1) input is clipped at waveform v(2).*

- **REVIEW:**
- Zener diodes are designed to be operated in reverse-bias mode, providing a relatively low, stable breakdown, or *zener* voltage at which they being to conduct substantial reverse current.
- A zener diode may function as a voltage regulator by acting as an accessory load, drawing more current from the source if the voltage is too high, and less if it is too low.

3.12 Special-purpose diodes

3.12.1 Schottky diodes

Schottky diodes are constructed of a *metal*-to-N junction rather than a P-N semiconductor junction. Also known as *hot-carrier* diodes, Schottky diodes are characterized by fast switching times (low reverse-recovery time), low forward voltage drop (typically 0.25 to 0.4 volts for a metal-silicon junction), and low junction capacitance.

The schematic symbol for a schottky diode is shown in Figure 3.66.

The forward voltage drop (V_F), reverse-recovery time (t_{rr}), and junction capacitance (C_J) of Schottky diodes are closer to ideal than the average "rectifying" diode. This makes them well suited for high-frequency applications. Unfortunately, though, Schottky diodes typically have lower forward current (I_F) and reverse voltage (V_{RRM} and V_{DC}) ratings than rectifying diodes and are thus unsuitable for applications involving substantial amounts of power. Though they are used in low voltage switching regulator power supplies.

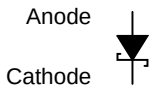


Figure 3.66: *Schottky diode schematic symbol.*

Schottky diode technology finds broad application in high-speed computer circuits, where the fast switching time equates to high speed capability, and the low forward voltage drop equates to less power dissipation when conducting.

Switching regulator power supplies operating at 100's of kHz cannot use conventional silicon diodes as rectifiers because of their slow switching speed . When the signal applied to a diode changes from forward to reverse bias, conduction continues for a short time, while carriers are being swept out of the depletion region. Conduction only ceases after this t_r *reverse recovery time* has expired. Schottky diodes have a shorter reverse recovery time.

Regardless of switching speed, the 0.7 V forward voltage drop of silicon diodes causes poor efficiency in low voltage supplies. This is not a problem in, say, a 10 V supply. In a 1 V supply the 0.7 V drop is a substantial portion of the output. One solution is to use a schottky power diode which has a lower forward drop.

3.12.2 Tunnel diodes

Tunnel diodes exploit a strange quantum phenomenon called *resonant tunneling* to provide a negative resistance forward-bias characteristics. When a small forward-bias voltage is applied across a tunnel diode, it begins to conduct current. (Figure 3.67(b)) As the voltage is increased, the current increases and reaches a peak value called the *peak current* (I_P). If the voltage is increased a little more, the current actually begins to *decrease* until it reaches a low point called the *valley current* (I_V). If the voltage is increased further yet, the current begins to increase again, this time without decreasing into another "valley." The schematic symbol for the tunnel diode shown in Figure 3.67(a).

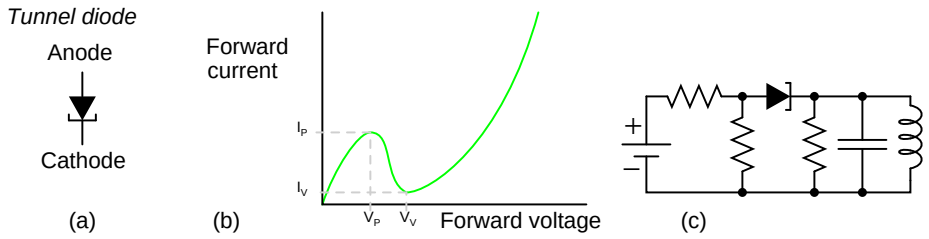


Figure 3.67: *Tunnel diode (a) Schematic symbol. (b) Current vs voltage plot (c) Oscillator.*

The forward voltages necessary to drive a tunnel diode to its peak and valley currents are known as peak voltage (V_P) and valley voltage (V_V), respectively. The region on the graph where current is decreasing while applied voltage is increasing (between V_P and V_V on the horizontal scale) is known as the region of *negative resistance*.

Tunnel diodes, also known as *Esaki diodes* in honor of their Japanese inventor Leo Esaki, are able to transition between peak and valley current levels very quickly, "switching" between high and low states of conduction much faster than even Schottky diodes. Tunnel diode characteristics are also relatively unaffected by changes in temperature.

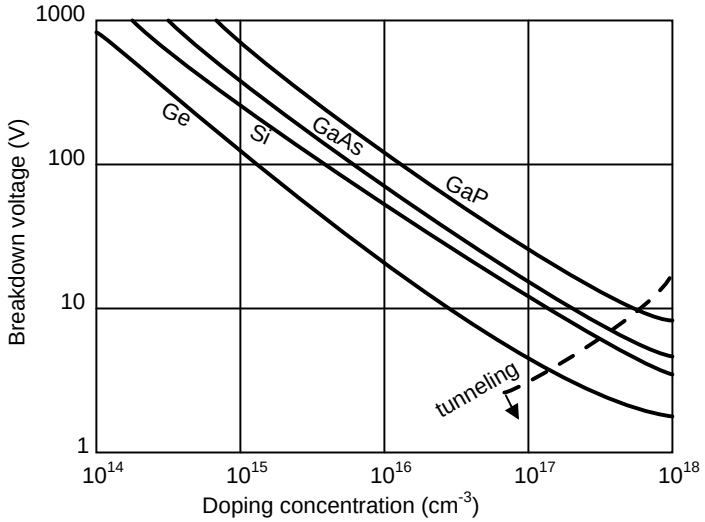


Figure 3.68: *Reverse breakdown voltage versus doping level. After Sze [22]*

Tunnel diodes are heavily doped in both the P and N regions, 1000 times the level in a rectifier. This can be seen in Figure 3.68. Standard diodes are to the far left, zener diodes near to the left, and tunnel diodes to the right of the dashed line. The heavy doping produces an unusually thin depletion region. This produces an unusually low reverse breakdown voltage with high leakage. The thin depletion region causes high capacitance. To overcome this, the tunnel diode junction area must be tiny. The forward diode characteristic consists of two regions: a normal forward diode characteristic with current rising exponentially beyond V_F, 0.3 V for Ge, 0.7 V for Si. Between 0 V and V_F is an additional "negative resistance" characteristic peak. This is due to quantum mechanical tunneling involving the dual particle-wave nature of electrons. The depletion region is thin enough compared with the equivalent wavelength of the electron that they can tunnel through. They do not have to overcome the normal forward diode voltage V_F. The energy level of the conduction band of the N-type material overlaps the level of the valence band in the P-type region. With increasing voltage, tunneling begins; the levels overlap; current increases, up to a point. As current increases further, the energy levels overlap less; current decreases with increasing voltage. This is the "negative resistance" portion of the curve.

Tunnel diodes are not good rectifiers, as they have relatively high "leakage" current when reverse-biased. Consequently, they find application only in special circuits where their unique tunnel effect has value. To exploit the tunnel effect, these diodes are maintained at a bias voltage somewhere between the peak and valley voltage levels, always in a forward-biased polarity (anode positive, and cathode negative).

Perhaps the most common application of a tunnel diode is in simple high-frequency oscillator circuits as in Figure 3.67(c), where it allows a DC voltage source to contribute power to an LC "tank" circuit, the diode conducting when the voltage across it reaches the peak (tunnel) level and effectively insulating at all other voltages. The resistors bias the tunnel diode at a few tenths of a volt centered on the negative resistance portion of the characteristic curve. The L-C resonant circuit may be a section of waveguide for microwave operation. Oscillation to 5 GHz is possible.

At one time the tunnel diode was the only solid-state microwave amplifier available. Tunnel diodes were popular starting in the 1960's. They were longer lived than traveling wave tube amplifiers, an important consideration in satellite transmitters. Tunnel diodes are also resistant to radiation because of the heavy doping. Today various transistors operate at microwave frequencies. Even small signal tunnel diodes are expensive and difficult to find today. There is one remaining manufacturer of germanium tunnel diodes, and none for silicon devices. They are sometimes used in military equipment because they are insensitive to radiation and large temperature changes.

There has been some research involving possible integration of silicon tunnel diodes into CMOS integrated circuits. They are thought to be capable of switching at 100 GHz in digital circuits. The sole manufacturer of germanium devices produces them one at a time. A batch process for silicon tunnel diodes must be developed, then integrated with conventional CMOS processes. [21]

The Esaki tunnel diode should not be confused with the *resonant tunneling diode* (page 84), of more complex construction from compound semiconductors. The RTD is a more recent development capable of higher speed.

3.12.3 Light-emitting diodes

Diodes, like all semiconductor devices, are governed by the principles described in quantum physics. One of these principles is the emission of specific-frequency radiant energy whenever electrons fall from a higher energy level to a lower energy level. This is the same principle at work in a neon lamp, the characteristic pink-orange glow of ionized neon due to the specific energy transitions of its electrons in the midst of an electric current. The unique color of a neon lamp's glow is due to the fact that its *neon* gas inside the tube, and not due to the particular amount of current through the tube or voltage between the two electrodes. Neon gas glows pinkish-orange over a wide range of ionizing voltages and currents. Each chemical element has its own "signature" emission of radiant energy when its electrons "jump" between different, quantized energy levels. Hydrogen gas, for example, glows red when ionized; mercury vapor glows blue. This is what makes spectrographic identification of elements possible.

Electrons flowing through a PN junction experience similar transitions in energy level, and emit radiant energy as they do so. The frequency of this radiant energy is determined by the crystal structure of the semiconductor material, and the elements comprising it. Some semiconductor junctions, composed of special chemical combinations, emit radiant energy within the spectrum of visible light as the electrons change energy levels. Simply put, these junctions *glow* when forward biased. A diode intentionally designed to glow like a lamp is called a *light-emitting diode*, or *LED*.

Forward biased silicon diodes give off heat as electron and holes from the N-type and P-type regions, respectively, recombine at the junction. In a forward biased LED, the recombination of

electrons and holes in the active region in Figure 3.69 (c) yields photons. This process is known as *electroluminescence*. To give off photons, the potential barrier through which the electrons fall must be higher than for a silicon diode. The forward diode drop can range to a few volts for some color LEDs.

Diodes made from a combination of the elements gallium, arsenic, and phosphorus (called *gallium-arsenide-phosphide*) glow bright red, and are some of the most common LEDs manufactured. By altering the chemical constituency of the PN junction, different colors may be obtained. Some of the currently available colors other than red are green, blue, and infra-red (invisible light at a frequency lower than red). Other colors may be obtained by combining two or more primary-color (red, green, and blue) LEDs together in the same package, sharing the same optical lens. For instance, a yellow LED may be made by merging a red LED with a green LED.

The schematic symbol for an LED is a regular diode shape inside of a circle, with two small arrows pointing away (indicating emitted light), shown in Figure 3.69.

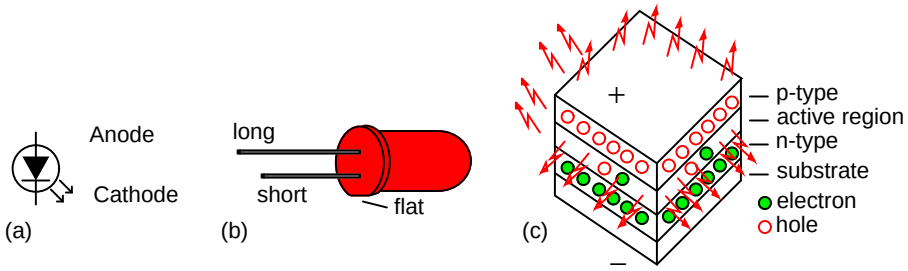


Figure 3.69: *LED, Light Emitting Diode: (a) schematic symbol. (b) Flat side and short lead of device correspond to cathode. (c) Cross section of Led die.*

This notation of having two small arrows pointing away from the device is common to the schematic symbols of all light-emitting semiconductor devices. Conversely, if a device is light-*activated* (meaning that incoming light stimulates it), then the symbol will have two small arrows pointing *toward* it. LEDs can sense light. They generate a small voltage when exposed to light, much like a solar cell on a small scale. This property can be gainfully applied in a variety of light-sensing circuits.

Because LEDs are made of different chemical substances than silicon diodes, their forward voltage drops will be different. Typically, LEDs have much larger forward voltage drops than rectifying diodes, anywhere from about 1.6 volts to over 3 volts, depending on the color. Typical operating current for a standard-sized LED is around 20 mA. When operating an LED from a DC voltage source greater than the LED's forward voltage, a series-connected "dropping" resistor must be included to prevent full source voltage from damaging the LED. Consider the example circuit in Figure 3.70 (a) using a 6 V source.

With the LED dropping 1.6 volts, there will be 4.4 volts dropped across the resistor. Sizing the resistor for an LED current of 20 mA is as simple as taking its voltage drop (4.4 volts) and dividing by circuit current (20 mA), in accordance with Ohm's Law (R=E/I). This gives us a figure of 220 Ω. Calculating power dissipation for this resistor, we take its voltage drop and multiply by its current (P=IE), and end up with 88 mW, well within the rating of a 1/8 watt

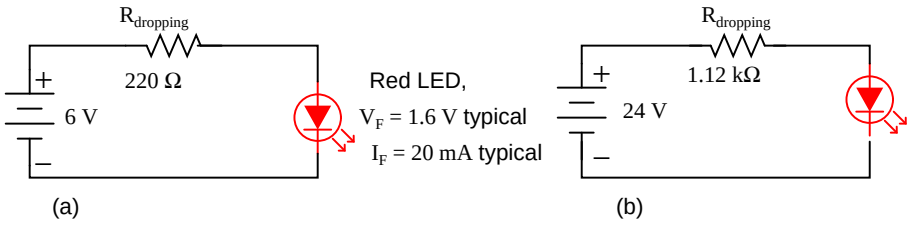


Figure 3.70: *Setting LED current at 20 ma. (a) for a 6 V source, (b) for a 24 V source.*

resistor. Higher battery voltages will require larger-value dropping resistors, and possibly higher-power rating resistors as well. Consider the example in Figure **??** (b) for a supply voltage of 24 volts:

Here, the dropping resistor must be increased to a size of 1.12 kΩ to drop 22.4 volts at 20 mA so that the LED still receives only 1.6 volts. This also makes for a higher resistor power dissipation: 448 mW, nearly one-half a watt of power! Obviously, a resistor rated for 1/8 watt power dissipation or even 1/4 watt dissipation will overheat if used here.

Dropping resistor values need not be precise for LED circuits. Suppose we were to use a 1 kΩ resistor instead of a 1.12 kΩ resistor in the circuit shown above. The result would be a slightly greater circuit current and LED voltage drop, resulting in a brighter light from the LED and slightly reduced service life. A dropping resistor with too much resistance (say, 1.5 kΩ instead of 1.12 kΩ) will result in less circuit current, less LED voltage, and a dimmer light. LEDs are quite tolerant of variation in applied power, so you need not strive for perfection in sizing the dropping resistor.

Multiple LEDs are sometimes required, say in lighting. If LEDs are operated in parallel, each must have its own current limiting resistor as in Figure **??** (a) to ensure currents dividing more equally. However, it is more efficient to operate LEDs in series (Figure 3.71 (b)) with a single dropping resistor. As the number of series LEDs increases the series resistor value must decrease to maintain current, to a point. The number of LEDs in series (V_f) cannot exceed the capability of the power supply. Multiple series strings may be employed as in Figure 3.71 (c).

In spite of equalizing the currents in multiple LEDs, the brightness of the devices may not match due to variations in the individual parts. Parts can be selected for brightness matching for critical applications.

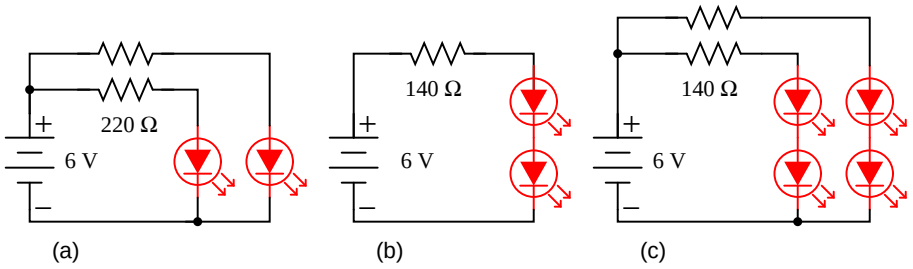


Figure 3.71: *Multiple LEDs: (a) In parallel, (b) in series, (c) series-parallel*

Also because of their unique chemical makeup, LEDs have much, much lower peak-inverse voltage (PIV) ratings than ordinary rectifying diodes. A typical LED might only be rated at 5 volts in reverse-bias mode. Therefore, when using alternating current to power an LED, connect a protective rectifying diode anti-parallel with the LED to prevent reverse breakdown every other half-cycle as in Figure 3.72 (a).

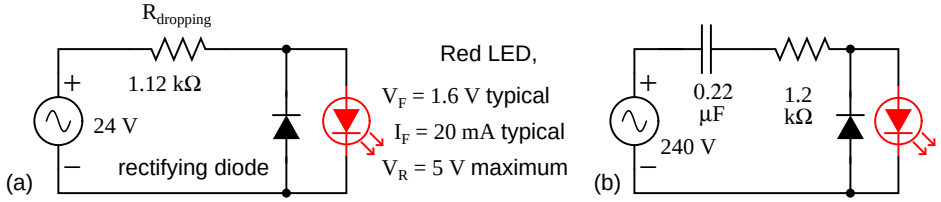


Figure 3.72: *Safely driving an LED with AC: (a) from 24 VAC, (b) from 240 VAC.*

If the LED is driven from a 240 VAC source, the Figure 3.72 (a) voltage source is increased from 24 VAC to 240 VAC, the resistor from 1.12 kΩ to 12 kΩ. The power dissipated in the 12 kΩ resistor is an unattractive 4.8 watts.

$$P = VI = (240\ V)(20\ mA) = 4.8\ watt$$

A potential solution is to replace the 12 kΩ resistor with a non-dissipative 12 kΩ capacitive reactance. This would be Figure 3.72 (b) with the resistor shorted. That circuit at (b), missing the resistor, was published in an electrical engineering journal. This author constructed the circuit. It worked the first time it was powered "on," but not thereafter upon "power on". Each time it was powered "on," it got dimmer until it failed completely. Why? If "power on" occurs near a zero crossing of the AC sinewave, the circuit works. However, if powered "on" at, say, the peak of the sinewave, the voltage rises abruptly from zero to the peak. Since the current through the capacitor is i = C(dv/dt), the current spikes to a very large value exceeding the "surge current" rating of the LED, destroying it.

The solution is to design a capacitor for the continuous current of the LED, and a series resistor to limit current during "power on" to the surge current rating of the LED. Often the surge current rating of an LED is ten times higher than the continuous current rating. (Though, this is not true of high current illumination grade LED's.) We calculate a capacitor to supply 20 mA continuous current, then select a resistor having resistance of 1/10 th the capacitive reactance.

$$I = 20\ mA$$
$$X_c = (240\ V) / (20\ mA) = 12\ k\Omega$$
$$X_c = 1/2\pi f_c$$
$$C = 1/2\pi X_c = 1/2\pi 60(12\ k\Omega = 0.22\ \mu F$$
$$R = (0.10)X_c = (0.10)(12k\Omega) = 1.2\ k\Omega$$
$$P = I^2R = (20\ mA)^2(1.2\ k\Omega) = 0.48\ watt$$

The resistor limits the LED current to 200 mA during the "power on" surge. Thereafter it passes 20 mA as limited by the capacitor. The 1.2 k¡OMEGA ¿resistor dissipates 0.48 watts compared with 4.8 watts for the 12 kΩ resistor circuit.

What component values would be required to operate the circuit on 120 VAC? One solution is to use the 240 VAC circuit on 120 VAC with no change in component values, halving the LED

continuous current to 10 mA. If operation at 20 mA is required, double the capacitor value and halve the resistor value.

The anti-parallel diodes in Figure 3.72 can be replaced with an anti-parallel LED. The resulting pair of anti-parallel LED's illuminate on alternating half-cycles of the AC sinewave. This configuration draws 20 ma, splitting it equally between the LED's on alternating AC half cycles. Each LED only receives 10 mA due to this sharing. The same is true of the LED anti-parallel combination with a rectifier. The LED only receives 10 ma. If 20 mA was required for the LED(s), The capacitor value in μF could be doubled and the resistor halved.

The forward voltage drop of LED's is inversely proportional to the wavelength (λ). As wavelength decreases going from infrared to visible colors to ultraviolet, V_f increases. While this trend is most obvious in the various devices from a single manufacturer, The voltage range for a particular color LED from various manufacturers varies. This range of voltages is shown in Table 3.2.

Table 3.2: *Optical and electrical properties of LED's*

LED	λ **nm (= 10** $^{-9}$**m)**	$\mathbf{V_f}$**(from)**	$\mathbf{V_f}$ **(to)**
infrared	940	1.2	1.7
red	660	1.5	2.4
orange	602-620	2.1	2.2
yellow, green	560-595	1.7	2.8
white, blue, violet	-	3	4
ultraviolet	370	4.2	4.8

As lamps, LEDs are superior to incandescent bulbs in many ways. First and foremost is efficiency: LEDs output far more light power per watt of electrical input than an incandescent lamp. This is a significant advantage if the circuit in question is battery-powered, efficiency translating to longer battery life. Second is the fact that LEDs are far more reliable, having a much greater service life than incandescent lamps. This is because LEDs are "cold" devices: they operate at much cooler temperatures than an incandescent lamp with a white-hot metal filament, susceptible to breakage from mechanical and thermal shock. Third is the high speed at which LEDs may be turned on and off. This advantage is also due to the "cold" operation of LEDs: they don't have to overcome thermal inertia in transitioning from off to on or vice versa. For this reason, LEDs are used to transmit digital (on/off) information as pulses of light, conducted in empty space or through fiber-optic cable, at very high rates of speed (millions of pulses per second).

LEDs excel in monochromatic lighting applications like traffic signals and automotive tail lights. Incandescents are abysmal in this application since they require filtering, decreasing efficiency. LEDs do not require filtering.

One major disadvantage of using LEDs as sources of illumination is their monochromatic (single-color) emission. No one wants to read a book under the light of a red, green, or blue LED. However, if used in combination, LED colors may be mixed for a more broad-spectrum glow. A new broad spectrum light source is the white LED. While small white panel indicators have been available for many years, illumination grade devices are still in development.

A white LED is a blue LED exciting a phosphor which emits yellow light. The blue plus yellow approximates white light. The nature of the phosphor determines the characteristics of

Table 3.3: *Efficiency of lighting*

Lamp type	**Efficiency lumen/watt**	**Life hrs**	**notes**
White LED	35	100,000	costly
White LED, future	100	100,000	R&D target
Incandescent	12	1000	inexpensive
Halogen	15-17	2000	high quality light
Compact fluorescent	50-100	10,000	cost effective
Sodium vapor, lp	70-200	20,000	outdoor
Mercury vapor	13-48	18,000	outdoor

the light. A red phosphor may be added to improve the quality of the yellow plus blue mixture at the expense of efficiency. Table 3.3 compares white illumination LEDs to expected future devices and other conventional lamps. Efficiency is measured in lumens of light output per watt of input power. If the 50 lumens/watt device can be improved to 100 lumens/watt, white LEDs will be comparable to compact fluorescent lamps in efficiency.

3.12.4 Laser diodes

The *laser diode* is a further development upon the regular light-emitting diode, or LED. The term "laser" itself is actually an acronym, despite the fact its often written in lower-case letters. "Laser" stands for **L**ight **A**mplification by **S**timulated **E**mission of **R**adiation, and refers to another strange quantum process whereby characteristic light emitted by electrons falling from high-level to low-level energy states in a material stimulate other electrons in a substance to make similar "jumps," the result being a synchronized output of light from the material. This synchronization extends to the actual *phase* of the emitted light, so that all light waves emitted from a "lasing" material are not just the same frequency (color), but also the same phase as each other, so that they reinforce one another and are able to travel in a very tightly-confined, nondispersing beam. This is why laser light stays so remarkably focused over long distances: each and every light wave coming from the laser is in step with each other.

Incandescent lamps produce "white" (mixed-frequency, or mixed-color) light as in Figure 3.73 (a). Regular LEDs produce monochromatic light: same frequency (color), but different phases, resulting in similar beam dispersion in Figure 3.73 (b). Laser LEDs produce *coherent light*: light that is both monochromatic (single-color) and monophasic (single-phase), resulting in precise beam confinement as in Figure 3.73 (c).

Laser light finds wide application in the modern world: everything from surveying, where a straight and nondispersing light beam is very useful for precise sighting of measurement markers, to the reading and writing of optical disks, where only the narrowness of a focused laser beam is able to resolve the microscopic "pits" in the disk's surface comprising the binary 1's and 0's of digital information.

Some laser diodes require special high-power "pulsing" circuits to deliver large quantities of voltage and current in short bursts. Other laser diodes may be operated continuously at lower power. In the continuous laser, laser action occurs only within a certain range of diode current, necessitating some form of current-regulator circuit. As laser diodes age, their power requirements may change (more current required for less output power), but it should be remembered

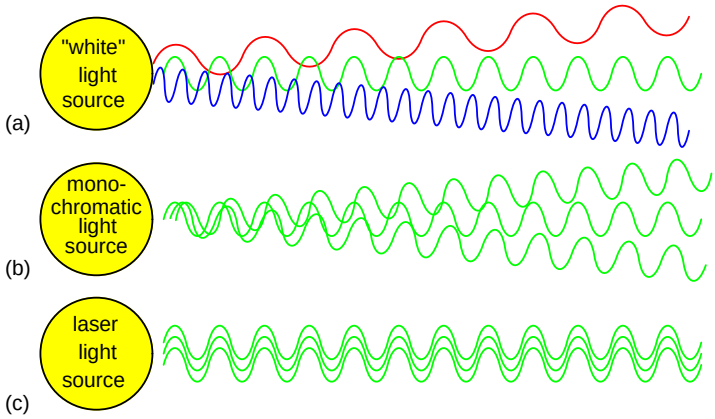


Figure 3.73: *(a) White light of many wavelengths. (b) Mono-chromatic LED light, a single wavelength. (c) Phase coherent laser light.*

that low-power laser diodes, like LEDs, are fairly long-lived devices, with typical service lives in the tens of thousands of hours.

3.12.5 Photodiodes

A *photodiode* is a diode optimized to produce an electron current flow in response to irradiation by ultraviolet, visible, or infrared light. Silicon is most often used to fabricate photodiodes; though, germanium and gallium arsenide can be used. The junction through which light enters the semiconductor must be thin enough to pass most of the light on to the active region (depletion region) where light is converted to electron hole pairs.

In Figure 3.74 a shallow P-type diffusion into an N-type wafer produces a PN junction near the surface of the wafer. The P-type layer needs to be thin to pass as much light as possible. A heavy N+ diffusion on the back of the wafer makes contact with metalization. The top metalization may be a fine grid of metallic fingers on the top of the wafer for large cells. In small photodiodes, the top contact might be a sole bond wire contacting the bare P-type silicon top.

Light entering the top of the photodiode stack fall off exponentially in with depth of the silicon. A thin top P-type layer allows most photons to pass into the depletion region where electron-hole pairs are formed. The electric field across the depletion region due to the built in diode potential causes electrons to be swept into the N-layer, holes into the P-layer. Actually electron-hole pairs may be formed in any of the semiconductor regions. However, those formed in the depletion region are most likely to be separated into the respective N and P-regions. Many of the electron-hole pairs formed in the P and N-regions recombine. Only a few do so in the depletion region. Thus, a few electron-hole pairs in the N and P-regions, and most in the depletion region contribute to *photocurrent*, that current resulting from light falling on the photodiode.

The voltage out of a photodiode may be observed. However, operation in this *photovoltaic*

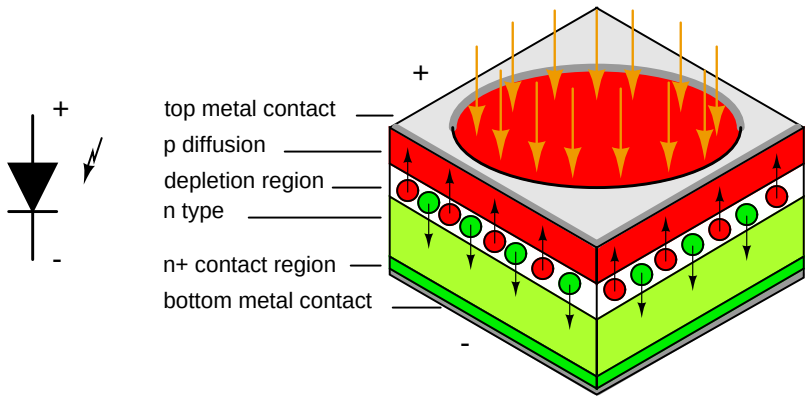


Figure 3.74: *Photodiode: Schematic symbol and cross section.*

(PV) mode is not linear over a large dynamic range. Though, it is sensitive and low noise at low frequencies, < 100 kHz. The preferred mode of operation is often *photocurrent (PC)* mode because the current is linearly proportional to light flux over several decades of intensity, and higher frequency response can be achieved. PC mode is achieved with reverse bias or zero bias on the photodiode. A current amplifier (transimpedance amplifier) should be used with a photodiode in PC mode. Linearity and PC mode are achieved as long as the diode does not become forward biased.

High speed operation is often required of photodiodes, as opposed to solar cells. Speed is a function of diode capacitance, which can be minimized by decreasing cell area. Thus, a sensor for a high speed fiber optic link will use an area no larger than necessary, say 1 mm^2. Capacitance may also be decreased by increasing the thickness of the depletion region, in the manufacturing process or by increasing the reverse bias on the diode.

PIN diode The *p-i-n diode* or *PIN diode* is a photodiode with an intrinsic layer between the P and N-regions as in Figure 3.75. The **P-I**ntrinsic-**N** structure increases the distance between the P and N conductive layers, decreasing capacitance, increasing speed. The volume of the photo sensitive region also increases, enhancing conversion efficiency. The bandwidth can extend to 10's of gHz. PIN photodiodes are the preferred for high sensitivity, and high speed at moderate cost.

Avalanche photo diode: An *avalanche photodiode (APD)*designed to operate at high reverse bias exhibits an electron multiplier effect analogous to a photomultiplier tube. The reverse bias can run from 10's of volts to nearly 2000 V. The high level of reverse bias accelerates photon created electron-hole pairs in the intrinsic region to a high enough velocity to free additional carriers from collisions with the crystal lattice. Thus, many electrons per photon result. The motivation for the APD is to achieve amplification within the photodiode to overcome noise in external amplifiers. This works to some extent. However, the APD creates noise of its own. At high speed the APD is superior to a PIN diode amplifier combination, though not for low speed applications. APD's are expensive, roughly the price of a photomultiplier tube. So, they are only competitive with PIN photodiodes for niche applications. One such application is single photon counting as applied to nuclear physics.

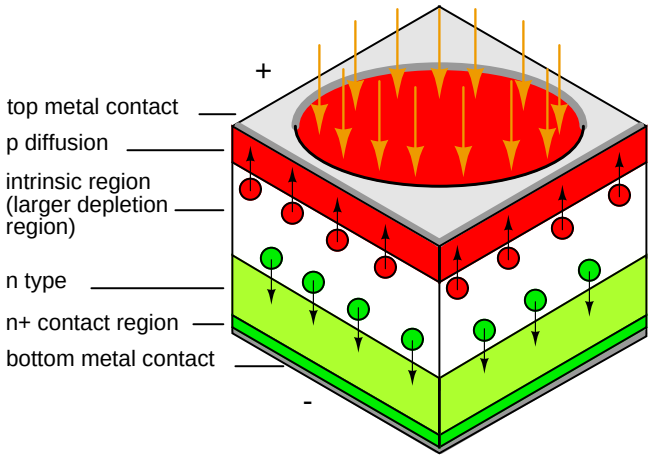


Figure 3.75: *PIN photodiode: The intrinsic region increases the thickness of the depletion region.*

3.12.6 Solar cells

A photodiode optimized for efficiently delivering power to a load is the *solar cell*. It operates in photovoltaic mode (PV) because it is forward biased by the voltage developed across the load resistance.

Monocrystalline solar cells are manufactured in a process similar to semiconductor processing. This involves growing a single crystal boule from molten high purity silicon (P-type), though, not as high purity as for semiconductors. The boule is diamond sawed or wire sawed into wafers. The ends of the boule must be discarded or recycled, and silicon is lost in the saw kerf. Since modern cells are nearly square, silicon is lost in squaring the boule. Cells may be etched to texture (roughen) the surface to help trap light within the cell. Considerable silicon is lost in producing the 10 or 15 cm square wafers. These days (2007) it is common for solar cell manufacturer to purchase the wafers at this stage from a supplier to the semiconductor industry.

P-type Wafers are loaded back-to-back into fused silica boats exposing only the outer surface to the N-type dopant in the diffusion furnace. The diffusion process forms a thin n-type layer on the top of the cell. The diffusion also shorts the edges of the cell front to back. The periphery must be removed by plasma etching to unshort the cell. Silver and or aluminum paste is screened on the back of the cell, and a silver grid on the front. These are sintered in a furnace for good electrical contact. (Figure 3.76)

The cells are wired in series with metal ribbons. For charging 12 V batteries, 36 cells at approximately 0.5 V are vacuum laminated between glass, and a polymer metal back. The glass may have a textured surface to help trap light.

The ultimate commercial high efficiency (21.5%) single crystal silicon solar cells have all contacts on the back of the cell. The active area of the cell is increased by moving the top (-) contact conductors to the back of the cell. The top (-) contacts are normally made to the N-type silicon on top of the cell. In Figure 3.77 the (-) contacts are made to N^+ diffusions on the bottom

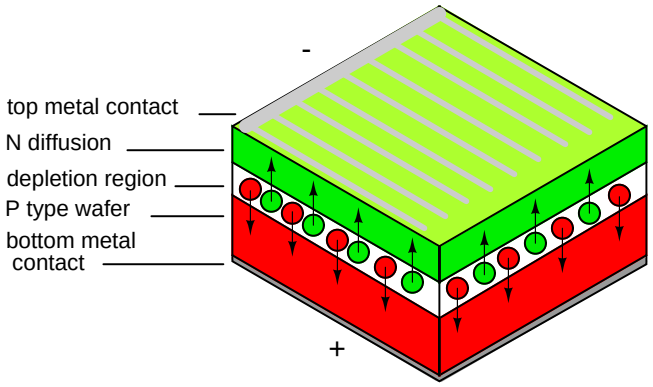


Figure 3.76: *Silicon Solar cell*

interleaved with (+) contacts. The top surface is textured to aid in trapping light within the cell.. [18]

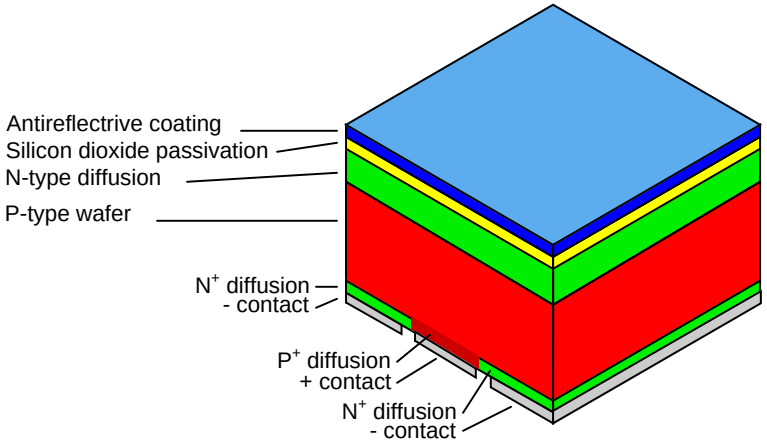


Figure 3.77: *High efficiency solar cell with all contacts on the back. Adapted from Figure 1 [18]*

Multicyrstalline silicon cells start out as molten silicon cast into a rectangular mold. As the silicon cools, it crystallizes into a few large (mm to cm sized) randomly oriented crystals instead of a single one. The remainder of the process is the same as for single crystal cells. The finished cells show lines dividing the individual crystals, as if the cells were cracked. The high efficiency is not quite as high as single crystal cells due to losses at crystal grain boundaries. The cell surface cannot be roughened by etching due to the random orientation of the crystals. However, an antireflectrive coating improves efficiency. These cells are competitive for all but space applications.

Three layer cell: The highest efficiency solar cell is a stack of three cells tuned to absorb different portions of the solar spectrum. Though three cells can be stacked atop one another,

a monolithic single crystal structure of 20 semiconductor layers is more compact. At 32 % efficiency, it is now (2007) favored over silicon for space application. The high cost prevents it from finding many earth bound applications other than concentrators based on lenses or mirrors.

Intensive research has recently produced a version enhanced for terrestrial concentrators at 400 - 1000 suns and 40.7% efficiency. This requires either a big inexpensive Fresnel lens or reflector and a small area of the expensive semiconductor. This combination is thought to be competitive with inexpensive silicon cells for solar power plants. [9] [23]

Metal organic chemical vapor deposition (MOCVD) deposits the layers atop a P-type germanium substrate. The top layers of N and P-type gallium indium phosphide (GaInP) having a band gap of 1.85 eV, absorbs ultraviolet and visible light. These wavelengths have enough energy to exceed the band gap. Longer wavelengths (lower energy) do not have enough energy to create electron-hole pairs, and pass on through to the next layer. A gallium arsenide layers having a band gap of 1.42 eV, absorbs near infrared light. Finally the germanium layer and substrate absorb far infrared. The series of three cells produce a voltage which is the sum of the voltages of the three cells. The voltage developed by each material is 0.4 V less than the band gap energy listed in Table 3.4. For example, for GaInP: 1.8 eV/e - 0.4 V = 1.4 V. For all three the voltage is 1.4 V + 1.0 V + 0.3 V = 2.7 V. [4]

Table 3.4: *High efficiency triple layer solar cell.*

Layer	**Band gap**	**Light absorbed**
Gallium indium phosphide	1.8 eV	UV, visible
Gallium arsenide	1.4 eV	near infrared
Germanium	0.7 eV	far infrared

Crystalline solar cell arrays have a long useable life. Many arrays are guaranteed for 25 years, and believed to be good for 40 years. They do not suffer initial degradation compared with amorphous silicon.

Both single and multicrystalline solar cells are based on silicon wafers. The silicon is both the substrate and the active device layers. Much silicon is consumed. This kind of cell has been around for decades, and takes approximately 86% of the solar electric market. For further information about crystalline solar cells see Honsberg. [8]

Amorphous silicon thin film solar cells use tiny amounts of the active raw material, silicon. Approximately half the cost of conventional crystalline solar cells is the solar cell grade silicon. The thin film deposition process reduces this cost. The downside is that efficiency is about half that of conventional crystalline cells. Moreover, efficiency degrades by 15-35% upon exposure to sunlight. A 7% efficient cell soon ages to 5% efficiency. Thin film amorphous silicon cells work better than crystalline cells in dim light. They are put to good use in solar powered calculators.

Non-silicon based solar cells make up about 7% of the market. These are thin-film polycrystalline products. Various compound semiconductors are the subject of research and development. Some non-silicon products are in production. Generally, the efficiency is better than amorphous silicon, but not nearly as good as crystalline silicon.

Cadmium telluride as a polycrystalline thin film on metal or glass can have a higher efficiency than amorphous silicon thin films. If deposited on metal, that layer is the negative

contact to the cadmium telluride thin film. The transparent P-type cadmium sulfide atop the cadmium telluride serves as a buffer layer. The positive top contact is transparent, electrically conductive fluorine doped tin oxide. These layers may be laid down on a sacrificial foil in place of the glass in the process in the following pargraph. The sacrificial foil is removed after the cell is mounted to a permanent substrate.

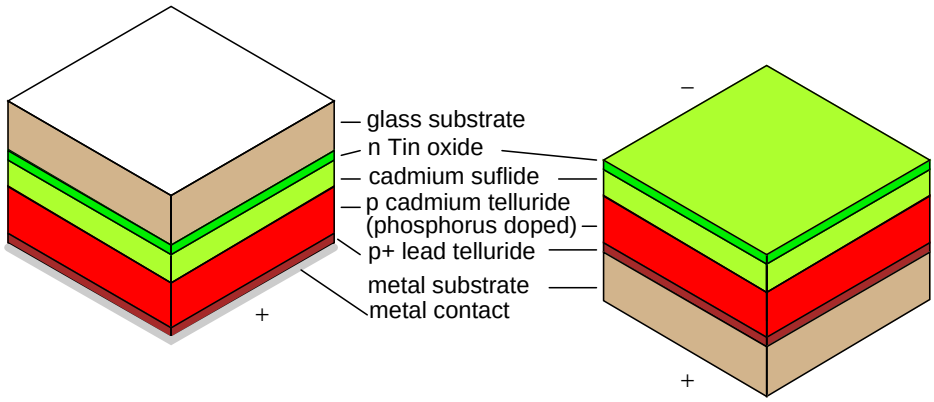


Figure 3.78: *Cadmium telluride solar cell on glass or metal.*

A process for depositing cadmium telluride on glass begins with the deposition of N-type transparent, electrically conducive, tin oxide on a glass substrate. The next layer is P-type cadmium telluride; though, N-type or intrinsic may be used. These two layers constitute the NP junction. A P^+ (heavy P-type) layer of lead telluride aids in establishing a low resistance contact. A metal layer makes the final contact to the lead telluride. These layers may be laid down by vacuum deposition, chemical vapor deposition (CVD), screen printing, electrodeposition, or atmospheric pressure chemical vapor deposition (APCVD) in helium. [10]

A variation of cadmium telluride is mercury cadmium telluride. Having lower bulk resistance and lower contact resistance improves efficiency over cadmium telluride.

Cadmium Indium Gallium diSelenide: A most promising thin film solar cell at this time (2007) is manufactured on a ten inch wide roll of flexible polyimide– Cadmium Indium Gallium diSelenide (CIGS). It has a spectacular efficiency of 10%. Though, commercial grade crystalline silicon cells surpassed this decades ago, CIGS should be cost competitive. The deposition processes are at a low enough temperature to use a polyimide polymer as a substrate instead of metal or glass. (Figure 3.79) The CIGS is manufactured in a roll to roll process, which should drive down costs. GIGS cells may also be produced by an inherently low cost electrochemical process. [7]

- **REVIEW**:
- Most solar cells are silicon single crystal or multicrystal because of their good efficiency and moderate cost.
- Less efficient thin films of various amorphous or polycrystalline materials comprise the rest of the market.

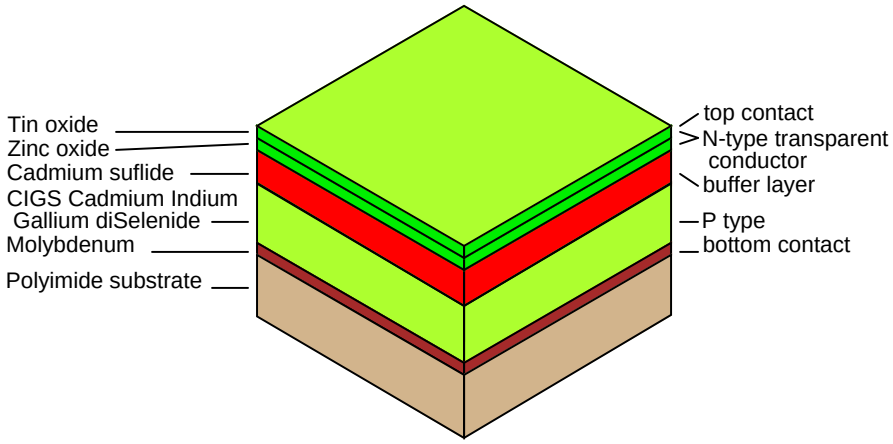


Figure 3.79: *Cadmium Indium Gallium diSelenide solar cell (CIGS)*

- Table 3.5 compares selected solar cells.

3.12.7 Varicap or varactor diodes

A variable capacitance diode is known as a *varicap diode* or as a *varactor*. If a diode is reverse biased, an insulating depletion region forms between the two semiconductive layers. In many diodes the width of the depletion region may be changed by varying the reverse bias. This varies the capacitance. This effect is accentuated in varicap diodes. The schematic symbols is shown in Figure 3.80, one of which is packaged as common cathode dual diode.

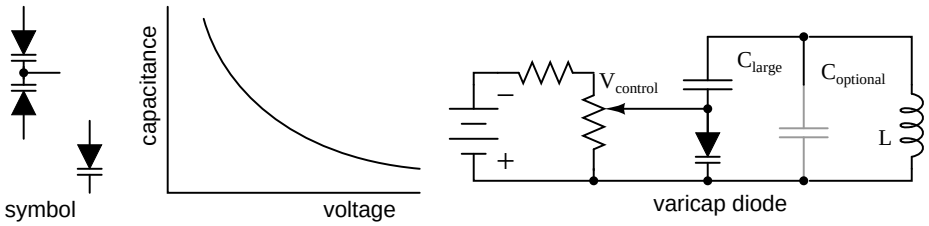


Figure 3.80: *Varicap diode: Capacitance varies with reverse bias. This varies the frequency of a resonant network.*

If a varicap diode is part of a resonant circuit as in Figure 3.80, the frequency my be varied with a control voltage, $V_{control}$. A large capacitance, low X_c, in series with the varicap prevents $V_{control}$ from being shorted out by inductor L. As long as the series capacitor is large, it has minimal effect on the frequency of resonant circuit. $C_{optional}$ may be used to set the center resonant frequency. $V_{control}$ can then vary the frequency about this point. Note that the required active circuitry to make the resonant network oscillate is not shown. For an example of

Table 3.5: *Solar cell properties*

Solar cell type	**Maximum efficiency**	**Practical efficiency**	**Notes**
Selenium, polycrystalline	0.7%	-	1883, Charles Fritts
Silicon, single crystal	-	4%	1950's, first silicon solar cell
Silicon, single crystal PERL, terrestrial, space	25%	-	solar cars, cost=100x commercial
Silicon, single crystal, commercial terrestrial	24%	14-17%	$5-$10/peak watt
Cypress Semiconductor, Sunpower, silicon single crystal	21.5%	19%	all contacts on cell back
Gallium Indium Phosphide/ Gallium Arsenide/ Germanium, single crystal, multilayer	-	32%	Preferred for space.
Advanced terrestrial version of above.	-	40.7%	Uses optical concentrator.
Silicon, multicrystalline	18.5%	15.5%	-
Thin films,	-	-	-
Silicon, amorphous	13%	5-7%	Degrades in sun light. Good indoors for calculators or cloudy outdoors.
Cadmium telluride, polycrystalline	16%	-	glass or metal substrate
Copper indium arsenide diselenide, polycrystalline	18%	10%	10 inch flexible polymer web. [17]
Organic polymer, 100% plastic	4.5%	-	R&D project

a varicap diode tuned AM radio receiver see “electronic varicap diode tuning,” (page 398)

Some varicap diodes may be referred to as abrupt, hyperabrupt, or super hyper abrupt. These refer to the change in junction capacitance with changing reverse bias as being abrupt or hyper-abrupt, or super hyperabrupt. These diodes offer a relatively large change in capacitance. This is useful when oscillators or filters are swept over a large frequency range. Varying the bias of abrupt varicaps over the rated limits, changes capacitance by a 4:1 ratio, hyperabrupt by 10:1, super hyperabrupt by 20:1.

Varactor diodes may be used in frequency multiplier circuits. See “Practical analog semiconductor circuits,” Varactor multiplier

3.12.8 Snap diode

The *snap diode*, also known as the *step recovery diode* is designed for use in high ratio frequency multipliers up to 20 gHz. When the diode is forward biased, charge is stored in the PN junction. This charge is drawn out as the diode is reverse biased. The diode looks like a low impedance current source during forward bias. When reverse bias is applied it still looks like a low impedance source until all the charge is withdrawn. It then “snaps” to a high impedance state causing a voltage impulse, rich in harmonics. An applications is a comb generator, a generator of many harmonics. Moderate power 2x and 4x multipliers are another application.

3.12.9 PIN diodes

A *PIN diode* is a fast low capacitance switching diode. Do not confuse a PIN switching diode with a PIN photo diode (page 153). A PIN diode is manufactured like a silicon switching diode with an intrinsic region added between the PN junction layers. This yields a thicker depletion region, the insulating layer at the junction of a reverse biased diode. This results in lower capacitance than a reverse biased switching diode.

PIN diodes are used in place of switching diodes in radio frequency (RF) applications, for example, a T/R switch (page 400). The 1n4007 1000 V, 1 A general purpose power diode is reported to be useable as a PIN switching diode. The high voltage rating of this diode is achieved by the inclusion of an intrinsic layer dividing the PN junction. This intrinsic layer makes the 1n4007 a PIN diode. Another PIN diode application is a the antenna switch (page 400) for a direction finder receiver.

PIN diodes serve as variable resistors when the forward bias is varied. One such application is the voltage variable attenuator (page 400). The low capacitance characteristic of PIN diodes, extends the frequency flat response of the attenuator to microwave frequencies.

3.12.10 IMPATT diode

¡The *IMPact Avalanche Transit Time* diode is a high power radio frequency (RF) generator operating from 3 to 100 gHz. IMPATT diodes are fabricated from silicon, gallium arsenide, or silicon carbide.

An IMPATT diode is reverse biased above the breakdown voltage. The high doping levels produce a thin depletion region. The resulting high electric field rapidly accelerates carriers which free other carriers in collisions with the crystal lattice. Holes are swept into the P_+

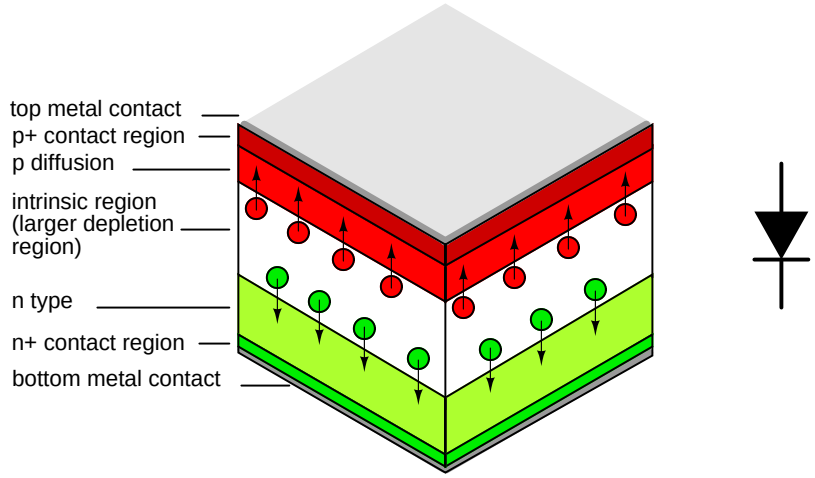


Figure 3.81: *Pin diode: Cross section aligned with schematic symbol.*

region. Electrons drift toward the N regions. The cascading effect creates an avalanche current which increases even as voltage across the junction decreases. The pulses of current lag the voltage peak across the junction. A "negative resistance" effect in conjunction with a resonant circuit produces oscillations at high power levels (high for semiconductors).

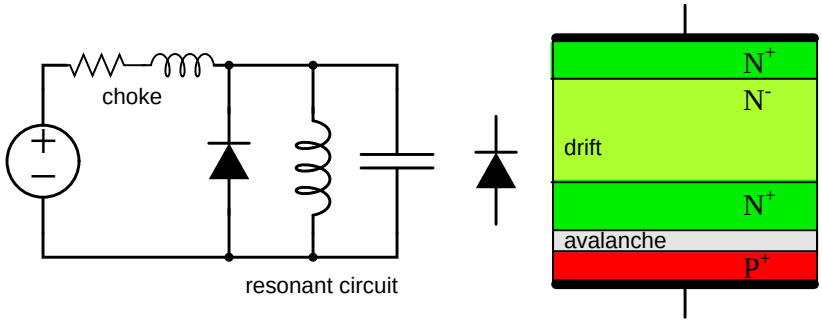


Figure 3.82: *IMPATT diode: Oscillator circuit and heavily doped P and N layers.*

The resonant circuit in the schematic diagram of Figure 3.82 is the lumped circuit equivalent of a waveguide section, where the IMPATT diode is mounted. DC reverse bias is applied through a choke which keeps RF from being lost in the bias supply. This may be a section of waveguide known as a bias Tee. Low power RADAR transmitters may use an IMPATT diode as a power source. They are too noisy for use in the receiver. [20]

3.12.11 Gunn diode

Diode, gunn Gunn diode

A *gunn diode* is solely composed of N-type semiconductor. As such, it is not a true diode. Figure 3.83 shows a lightly doped N_ layer surrounded by heavily doped N+ layers. A voltage applied across the N-type gallium arsenide gunn diode creates a strong electric field across the lightly doped N^- layer.

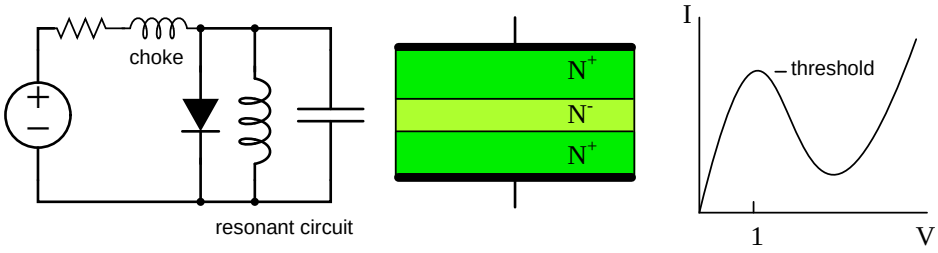


Figure 3.83: *Gunn diode: Oscillator circuit and cross section of only N-type semiconductor diode.*

As voltage is increased, conduction increases due to electrons in a low energy conduction band. As voltage is increased beyond the threshold of approximately 1 V, electrons move from the lower conduction band to the higher energy conduction band where they no longer contribute to conduction. In other words, as voltage increases, current decreases, a negative resistance condition. The oscillation frequency is determined by the transit time of the conduction electrons, which is inversely related to the thickness of the N^- layer.

The frequency may be controlled to some extent by embedding the gunn diode into a resonant circuit. The lumped circuit equivalent shown in Figure 3.83 is actually a coaxial transmission line or waveguide. Gallium arsenide gunn diodes are available for operation from 10 to 200 gHz at 5 to 65 mw power. Gunn diodes may also serve as amplifiers. [19] [14]

3.12.12 Shockley diode

The *Shockley diode*is a 4-layer thyristor used to trigger larger thyristors. It only conducts in one direction when triggered by a voltage exceeding the *breakover voltage*, about 20 V. See "Thyristors," The Shockley Diode. The bidirectional version is called a *diac*. See "Thyristors," The DIAC.

3.12.13 Constant-current diodes

A *constant-current diode*, also known as a *current-limiting diode*, or *current-regulating diode*, does exactly what its name implies: it regulates current through it to some maximum level. The constant current diode is a two terminal version of a JFET. If we try to force more current through a constant-current diode than its current-regulation point, it simply "fights back" by dropping more voltage. If we were to build the circuit in Figure 3.84(a) and plot diode current

against diode voltage, we'd get a graph that rises at first and then levels off at the current regulation point as in Figure 3.84(b).

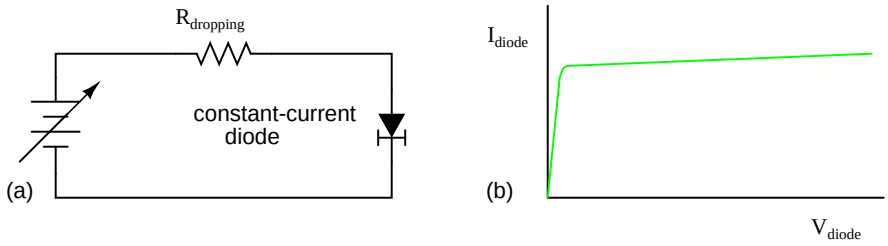


Figure 3.84: *Constant current diode: (a) Test circuit, (b) current vs voltage characteristic.*

One application for a constant-current diode is to automatically limit current through an LED or laser diode over a wide range of power supply voltages as in Figure **??**.

Of course, the constant-current diode's regulation point should be chosen to match the LED or laser diode's optimum forward current. This is especially important for the laser diode, not so much for the LED, as regular LEDs tend to be more tolerant of forward current variations.

Another application is in the charging of small secondary-cell batteries, where a constant charging current leads to predictable charging times. Of course, large secondary-cell battery banks might also benefit from constant-current charging, but constant-current diodes tend to be very small devices, limited to regulating currents in the milliamp range.

3.13 Other diode technologies

3.13.1 SiC diodes

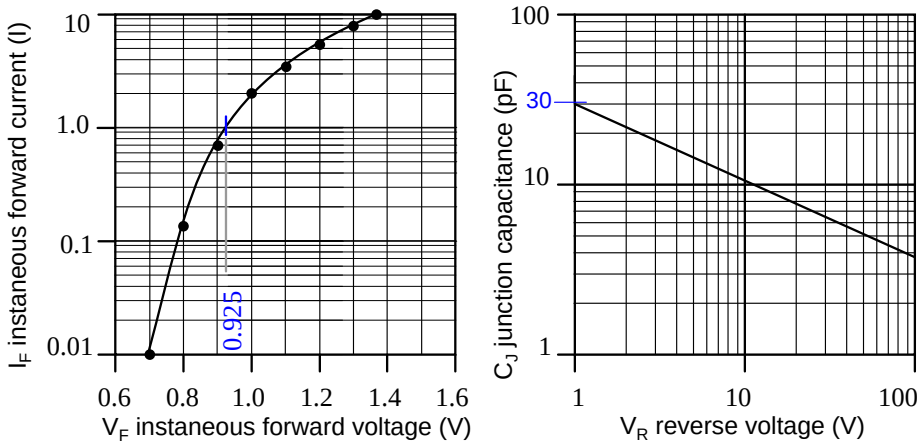
Diodes manufactured from silicon carbide are capable of high temperature operation to 400^{o}C. This could be in a high temperature environment: down hole oil well logging, gas turbine engines, auto engines. Or, operation in a moderate environment at high power dissipation. Nuclear and space applications are promising as SiC is 100 times more resistant to radiation compared with silicon. SiC is a better conductor of heat than any metal. Thus, SiC is better than silicon at conducting away heat. Breakdown voltage is several kV. SiC power devices are expected to reduce electrical energy losses in the power industry by a factor of 100.

3.13.2 Polymer diode

Diodes based on organic chemicals have been produce using low temperature processes. Hole rich and electron rich conductive polymers may be ink jet printed in layers. Most of the research and development is of the *organic LED* (OLED). However, development of inexpensive printable organic RFID (radio frequency identification) tags is on going. In this effort, a pentacene organic rectifier has been operated at 50 MHz. Rectification to 800 MHz is a development goal. An inexpensive *metal insulator metal* (MIM) diode acting like a back-to-back zener diode clipper has been delveloped. Also, a tunnel diode like device has been fabricated.

3.14 SPICE models

The SPICE circuit simulation program provides for modeling diodes in circuit simulations. The diode model is based on characterization of individual devices as described in a product data sheet and manufacturing process characteristics not listed. Some information has been extracted from a 1N4004 data sheet in Figure 3.85.



Max avg rectified current I_O (A)	1	Forward voltage drop V_F (V)	1
Peak repetitive reverse voltage V_{RRM} (V)	400	@ I_F (A)	1
Peak forward surge current I_{FSM} (A)	30	Max reverse current I_R (μA)	5
Total capacitance C_T (pF)	15	@ V_R (V)	400

Figure 3.85: *Data sheet 1N4004 excerpt, after [6].*

The diode statement begins with a diode element name which must begin with “d” plus optional characters. Example diode element names include: d1, d2, dtest, da, db, d101. Two node numbers specify the connection of the anode and cathode, respectively, to other components. The node numbers are followed by a model name, referring to a subsequent “.model” statement.

The model statement line begins with “.model,” followed by the model name matching one or more diode statements. Next, a “d” indicates a diode is being modeled. The remainder of the model statement is a list of optional diode parameters of the form Parameter-Name=ParameterValue. None are used in Example below. Example2 has some parameters defined. For a list of diode parameters, see Table 3.6.

```
General form:  d[name] [anode] [cathode] [model]
               .model ([modelname] d [parmtr1=x] [parmtr2=y] . . .)

Example:       d1 1 2 mod1
                .model mod1 d
```

```
 Example2:       D2 1 2 Da1N4004
                  .model Da1N4004 D (IS=18.8n RS=0 BV=400 IBV=5.00u CJO=30
M=0.333 N=2)
```

The easiest approach to take for a SPICE model is the same as for a data sheet: consult the manufacturer's web site. Table 3.7 lists the model parameters for some selected diodes. A fallback strategy is to build a SPICE model from those parameters listed on the data sheet. A third strategy, not considered here, is to take measurements of an actual device. Then, calculate, compare and adjust the SPICE parameters to the measurements.

Table 3.6: *Diode SPICE parameters*

Symbol	**Name**	**Parameter**	**Units**	**Default**
I_S	IS	Saturation current (diode equation)	A	1E-14
R_S	RS	Parsitic resistance (series resistance)	Ω	0
n	N	Emission coefficient, 1 to 2	-	1
τ_D	TT	Transit time	s	0
$C_D(0)$	CJO	Zero-bias junction capacitance	F	0
ϕ_0	VJ	Junction potential	V	1
m	M	Junction grading coefficient	-	0.5
-	-	0.33 for linearly graded junction	-	-
-	-	0.5 for abrupt junction	-	-
E_g	EG	Activation energy:	eV	1.11
-	-	Si: 1.11	-	-
-	-	Ge: 0.67	-	-
-	-	Schottky: 0.69	-	-
p_i	XTI	IS temperature exponent	-	3.0
-	-	pn junction: 3.0	-	-
-	-	Schottky: 2.0	-	-
k_f	KF	Flicker noise coefficient	-	0
a_f	AF	Flicker noise exponent	-	1
FC	FC	Forward bias depletion capacitance coefficient	-	0.5
BV	BV	Reverse breakdown voltage	V	∞
IBV	IBV	Reverse breakdown current	A	1E-3

If diode parameters are not specified as in "Example" model above, the parameters take on the default values listed in Table 3.6 and Table 3.7. These defaults model integrated circuit diodes. These are certainly adequate for preliminary work with discrete devices For more critical work, use SPICE models supplied by the manufacturer [5], SPICE vendors, and other sources. [16]

Otherwise, derive some of the parameters from the data sheet. First select a value for spice

Table 3.7: *SPICE parameters for selected diodes; sk=schottky Ge=germanium; else silicon.*

Part	**IS**	**RS**	**N**	**TT**	**CJO**	**M**	**VJ**	**EG**	**XTI**	**BV**	**IBV**
Default	1E-14	0	1	0	0	0.5	1	1.11	3	∞	1m
1N5711 sk	315n	2.8	2.03	1.44n	2.00p	0.333	-	0.69	2	70	10u
1N5712 sk	680p	12	1.003	50p	1.0p	0.5	0.6	0.69	2	20	-
1N34 Ge	200p	84m	2.19	144n	4.82p	0.333	0.75	0.67	-	60	15u
1N4148	35p	64m	1.24	5.0n	4.0p	0.285	0.6	-	-	75	-
1N3891	63n	9.6m	2	110n	114p	0.255	0.6	-	-	250	-
10A04 10A	844n	2.06m	2.06	4.32u	277p	0.333	-	-	-	400	10u
1N4004 1A	76.9n	42.2m	1.45	4.32u	39.8p	0.333	-	-	-	400	5u
1N4004 data sheet	18.8n	-	2	-	30p	0.333	-	-	-	400	5u

parameter N between 1 and 2. It is required for the diode equation (n). Massobrio [1] pp 9, recommends ".. n, the emission coefficient is usually about 2." In Table 3.7, we see that power rectifiers 1N3891 (12 A), and 10A04 (10 A) both use about 2. The first four in the table are not relevant because they are schottky, schottky, germanium, and silicon small signal, respectively. The saturation current, IS, is derived from the diode equation, a value of (V_D, I_D) on the graph in Figure 3.85, and N=2 (n in the diode equation).

$I_D = I_S(e^{V_D/nV_T} - 1)$

V_T = 26 mV at 25^{o}C n = 2.0 V_D = 0.925 V at 1 A from graph

1 A = $I_S(e^{(0.925V)/(2)(26mV)} - 1)$

I_S = 18.8E-9

The numerical values of IS=18.8n and N=2 are entered in last line of Table 3.7 for comparison to the manufacturers model for 1N4004, which is considerably different. RS defaults to 0 for now. It will be estimated later. The important DC static parameters are N, IS, and RS.

Rashid [15] suggests that TT, τ_D, the transit time, be approximated from the reverse recovery stored charge Q_{RR}, a data sheet parameter (not available on our data sheet) and I_F, forward current.

$I_D = I_S(e^{V_D/nV_T} - 1)$

$\tau_D = Q_{RR}/I_F$

We take the TT=0 default for lack of Q_{RR}. Though it would be reasonable to take TT for a similar rectifier like the 10A04 at 4.32u. The 1N3891 TT is not a valid choice because it is a fast recovery rectifier. CJO, the zero bias junction capacitance is estimated from the V_R vs C_J

graph in Figure 3.85. The capacitance at the nearest to zero voltage on the graph is 30 pF at 1 V. If simulating high speed transient response, as in switching regulator power supplies, TT and CJO parameters must be provided.

The junction grading coefficient M is related to the doping profile of the junction. This is not a data sheet item. The default is 0.5 for an abrupt junction. We opt for M=0.333 corresponding to a linearly graded junction. The power rectifiers in Table 3.7 use lower values for M than 0.5.

We take the default values for VJ and EG. Many more diodes use VJ=0.6 than shown in Table 3.7. However the 10A04 rectifier uses the default, which we use for our 1N4004 model (Da1N4001 in Table 3.6). Use the default EG=1.11 for silicon diodes and rectifiers. Table 3.6 lists values for schottky and germanium diodes. Take the XTI=3, the default IS temperature coefficient for silicon devices. See Table 3.6 for XTI for schottky diodes.

The abbreviated data sheet, Figure 3.85, lists I_R = 5 μA @ V_R = 400 V, corresponding to IBV=5u and BV=400 respectively. The 1n4004 SPICE parameters derived from the data sheet are listed in the last line of Table 3.7 for comparison to the manufacturer's model listed above it. BV is only necessary if the simulation exceeds the reverse breakdown voltage of the diode, as is the case for zener diodes. IBV, reverse breakdown current, is frequently omitted, but may be entered if provided with BV.

Figure 3.86 shows a circuit to compare the manufacturers model, the model derived from the datasheet, and the default model using default parameters. The three dummy 0 V sources are necessary for diode current measurement. The 1 V source is swept from 0 to 1.4 V in 0.2 mV steps. See .DC statement in the netlist in Table 3.8. DI1N4004 is the manufacturer's diode model, Da1N4004 is our derived diode model.

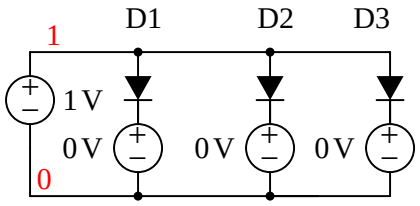


Figure 3.86: *SPICE circuit for comparison of manufacturer model (D1), calculated datasheet model (D2), and default model (D3).*

We compare the three models in Figure 3.87. and to the datasheet graph data in Table 3.9. VD is the diode voltage versus the diode currents for the manufacturer's model, our calculated datasheet model and the default diode model. The last column "1N4004 graph" is from the datasheet voltage versus current curve in Figure 3.85 which we attempt to match. Comparison of the currents for the three model to the last column shows that the default model is good at low currents, the manufacturer's model is good at high currents, and our calculated datasheet model is best of all up to 1 A. Agreement is almost perfect at 1 A because the IS calculation is based on diode voltage at 1 A. Our model grossly over states current above 1 A.

The solution is to increase RS from the default RS=0. Changing RS from 0 to 8m in the datasheet model causes the curve to intersect 10 A (not shown) at the same voltage as the manufacturer's model. Increasing RS to 28.6m shifts the curve further to the right as shown in Figure 3.88. This has the effect of more closely matching our datasheet model to the datasheet

Table 3.8: *SPICE netlist parameters: (D1) DI1N4004 manufacturer's model, (D2) Da1N40004 datasheet derived, (D3) default diode model.*

```
*SPICE circuit <03468.eps> from XCircuit v3.20
D1 1 5 DI1N4004
V1 5 0 0
D2 1 3 Da1N4004
V2 3 0 0
D3 1 4 Default
V3 4 0 0
V4 1 0 1
.DC V4 0 1400mV 0.2m
.model Da1N4004 D (IS=18.8n RS=0      BV=400 IBV=5.00u CJO=30
+M=0.333   N=2.0  TT=0)
.MODEL DI1N4004 D (IS=76.9n RS=42.0m  BV=400 IBV=5.00u CJO=39.8p
+M=0.333 N=1.45 TT=4.32u)
.MODEL Default D
.end
```

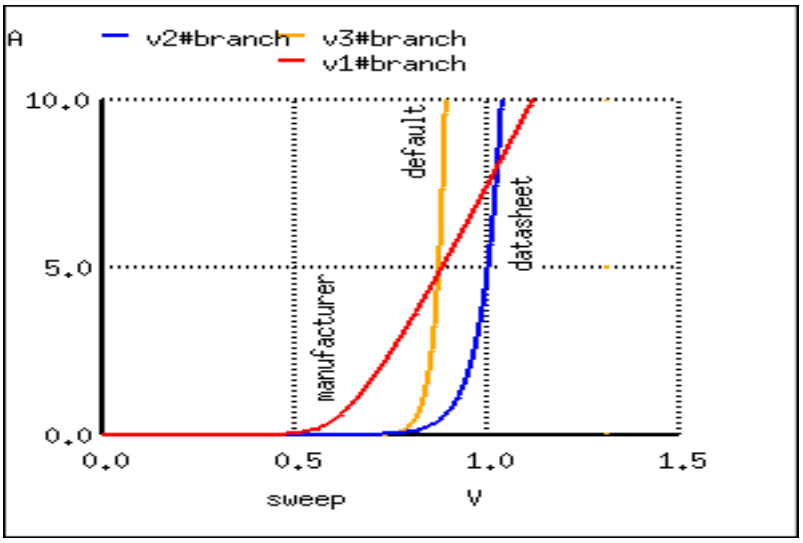


Figure 3.87: *First trial of manufacturer model, calculated datasheet model, and default model.*

Table 3.9: *Comparison of manufacturer model, calculated datasheet model, and default model to 1N4004 datasheet graph of V vs I.*

1N4004 index	VD	model manufacturer	model datasheet	model default	graph
3500	7.000000e-01	1.612924e+00	1.416211e-02	5.674683e-03	0.01
4001	8.002000e-01	3.346832e+00	9.825960e-02	2.731709e-01	0.13
4500	9.000000e-01	5.310740e+00	6.764928e-01	1.294824e+01	0.7
4625	9.250000e-01	5.823654e+00	1.096870e+00	3.404037e+01	1.0
5000	1.000000e-00	7.395953e+00	4.675526e+00	6.185078e+02	2.0
5500	1.100000e+00	9.548779e+00	3.231452e+01	2.954471e+04	3.3
6000	1.200000e+00	1.174489e+01	2.233392e+02	1.411283e+06	5.3
6500	1.300000e+00	1.397087e+01	1.543591e+03	6.741379e+07	8.0
7000	1.400000e+00	1.621861e+01	1.066840e+04	3.220203e+09	12.

graph (Figure 3.85). Table 3.10 shows that the current 1.224470e+01 A at 1.4 V matches the graph at 12 A. However, the current at 0.925 V has degraded from 1.096870e+00 above to 7.318536e-01.

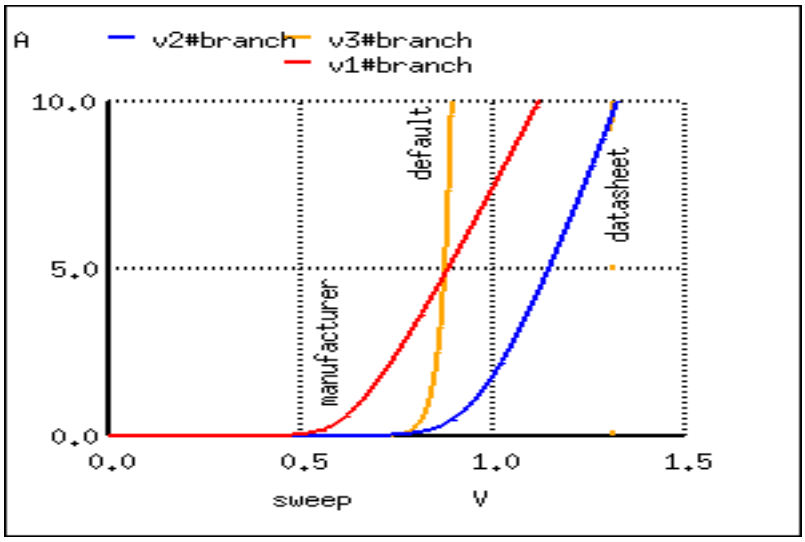


Figure 3.88: *Second trial to improve calculated datasheet model compared with manufacturer model and default model.*

Table 3.10: *Changing Da1N4004 model statement RS=0 to RS=28.6m decreases the current at VD=1.4 V to 12.2 A.*

```
.model Da1N4004 D (IS=18.8n RS=28.6m  BV=400 IBV=5.00u CJO=30
+M=0.333   N=2.0  TT=0)
```

index	VD	model manufacturer	model datasheet	1N4001 graph
3505	7.010000e-01	1.628276e+00	1.432463e-02	0.01
4000	8.000000e-01	3.343072e+00	9.297594e-02	0.13
4500	9.000000e-01	5.310740e+00	5.102139e-01	0.7
4625	9.250000e-01	5.823654e+00	7.318536e-01	1.0
5000	1.000000e-00	7.395953e+00	1.763520e+00	2.0
5500	1.100000e+00	9.548779e+00	3.848553e+00	3.3
6000	1.200000e+00	1.174489e+01	6.419621e+00	5.3
6500	1.300000e+00	1.397087e+01	9.254581e+00	8.0
7000	1.400000e+00	1.621861e+01	1.224470e+01	12.

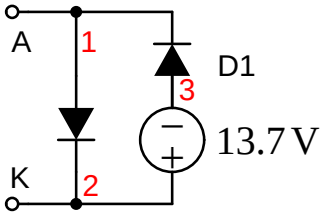
Suggested reader exercise: decrease N so that the current at VD=0.925 V is restored to 1 A. This may increase the current (12.2 A) at VD=1.4 V requiring an increase of RS to decrease current to 12 A.

Zener diode: There are two approaches to modeling a zener diode: set the BV parameter

to the zener voltage in the model statement, or model the zener with a subcircuit containing a diode clamper set to the zener voltage. An example of the first approach sets the breakdown voltage BV to 15 for the 1n4469 15 V zener diode model (IBV optional):

```
.model D1N4469 D ( BV=15 IBV=17m )
```

The second approach models the zener with a subcircuit. Clamper D1 and VZ in Figure **??** models the 15 V reverse breakdown voltage of a 1N4477A zener diode. Diode DR accounts for the forward conduction of the zener in the subcircuit.




```
.SUBCKT DI-1N4744A
1 2
* Terminals A K
D1 1 2 DF
DZ 3 1 DR
VZ 2 3 13.7
.MODEL DF D (
IS=27.5p RS=0.620
N=1.10
+ CJO=78.3p
VJ=1.00 M=0.330
TT=50.1n )
.MODEL DR D (
IS=5.49f RS=0.804
N=1.77 )
.ENDS
```

Figure 3.89: *Zener diode subcircuit uses clamper (D1 and VZ) to model zener.*

Tunnel diode: A tunnel diode may be modeled by a pair of field effect transistors (JFET) in a SPICE subcircuit. [11] An oscillator circuit is also shown in this reference.

Gunn diode: A Gunn diode may also be modeled by a pair of JFET's. [12] This reference shows a microwave relaxation oscillator.

- **REVIEW:**
- Diodes are described in SPICE by a diode component statement referring to .model statement. The .model statement contains parameters describing the diode. If parameters are not provided, the model takes on default values.
- Static DC parameters include N, IS, and RS. Reverse breakdown parameters: BV, IBV.
- Accurate dynamic timing requires TT and CJO parameters
- Models provided by the manufacturer are highly recommended.

Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jered Wierzbicki (December 2002): Pointed out error in diode equation – Boltzmann's constant shown incorrectly.

Bibliography

[1] Paolo Antognetti, Giuseppe Massobrio "Semiconductor Device Modeling with SPICE," ISBN 0-07-002107-4, 1988

[2] ATCO Newsletter, Volume 14 No. 1, January 1997 at http://www.atco.tv/homepage/vol14_1.pdf

[3] D.A. Brunner, et al,, "A Cockcroft-Walton Base for the FEU84-3 Photomultiplier Tube," Department of Physics, Indiana University, Bloomington, Indiana 47405 January 1998, at http://dustbunny.physics.indiana.edu/~paul/cwbase/

[4] Brenton Burnet, "The Basic Physics and Design of III-V Multijunction Solar," NREL, at photochemistry.epfl.ch/EDEY/NREL.pdf

[5] Diodes Incorporated http://www.diodes.com/products/spicemodels/index.php

[6] Diodes Incorporated, "1N4001/L - 1N4007/l, 1.0A rectifier," at http://www.diodes.com/datasheets/ds28002.pdf

[7] "Solar firm gains $30 million in funding," EE Times, 07/12/2007 at http://www.eetimes.com/news/latest/showArticle.jhtml?articleID=201001129

[8] Christiana Honsberg, Stuart Bowden, "Photovoltaics CDROM," at http://www.udel.edu/igert/pvcdrom/

[9] R. R. King, et. al., "40% efficient metamorphic GaInP/GaInAs/Ge multijunction solar cells", Applied Physics Letters, 90, 183516 (2007) , at http://scitation.aip.org/getabs/servlet/GetabsServlet?prog=normal&id=APPLAB000090000018183516000001&idtype=cvips&gifs=yes

[10] Kim W Mitchell, "Method of making a thin film cadmium telluride solar cell," United States Patent 4734381,http://www.freepatentsonline.com/4734381.html

[11] Karl H. Muller "RF/Microwave Analysis" Intusoft Newsletter #51, November 1997, at http://www.intusoft.com/nlhtm/nl51.htm

[12] "A Gunn Diode Relaxation Oscillator," Intusoft Newsletter #52, February 1998, at http://www.intusoft.com/nlhtm/nl52.htm

[13] OAK Solar., "Technical LED's LED color chart," at http://www.oksolar.com/led/led_color_chart.htm

[14] Ian Poole, "Summary of the Gunn Diode," at http://www.radio-electronics.com/nfo/data/semicond/gunndiode/gunndiode.php

[15] Muhammad H. Rashid, "SPICE for Power Electronics and Electric Power," ISBN 0-13-030420-4, 1993

[16] "SPICE model index," V2.16 30-Nov-05, at http://homepages.which.net/~paul.hills/Circuits/Spice/ModelIndex.html

[17] Neil Thomas, "Advancing CIGS Solar Cell Manufacturing Technology," April 6, 2007 at http://www.renewableenergyaccess.com/rea/news/story?id=48033&src=rss

[18] P.J. Verlinden, Sinton, K. Wickham, R.M. Swanson Crane, "BACKSIDE-CONTACT SILICON SOLAR CELLS WITH IMPROVED EFFICIENCY." at http://www.sunpowercorp.com/techpapers/EPSEC97.pdf

[19] Christian Wolff, "Radar Principles," Radar components, Gunn diodes at at http://www.radartutorial.eu/17.bauteile/bt12.en.htm

[20] L. Yuan, M. R. Melloch, J. A. Cooper, K. J. Webb,"Silicon Carbide IMPATT Oscillators for High-Power Microwave and Millimeter-Wave Generation," IEEE/Cornell Conference on Advanced Concepts in High Speed Semiconductor Devices and Circuits, Ithaca, NY, August 7-9, 2000. at http://www.ecn.purdue.edu/WBG/Device_Research/IMPATT_Diodes/Index.html

[21] Alan Seabaugh, Zhaoming HU, Qingmin LIU, David Rink, Jinli Wang, "Silicon Based Tunnel Diodes and Integrated Circuits," at http://www.nd.edu/~nano/0a1003QFDpaper_v1.pdf

[22] S. M. Sze, G. Gibbons, "Avalanche breakdown voltages of abrupt and linearly graded p-n junctions in Ge, Si, GaAs, and Ga P," Appl. Phys. Lett., 8, 111 (1966).

[23] Lisa Zyga, "40% efficient solar cells to be used for solar electricity", PhysOrgForum, at http://www.physorg.com/news99904887.html

Chapter 4

BIPOLAR JUNCTION TRANSISTORS

Contents

***** INCOMPLETE *****

4.1 Introduction

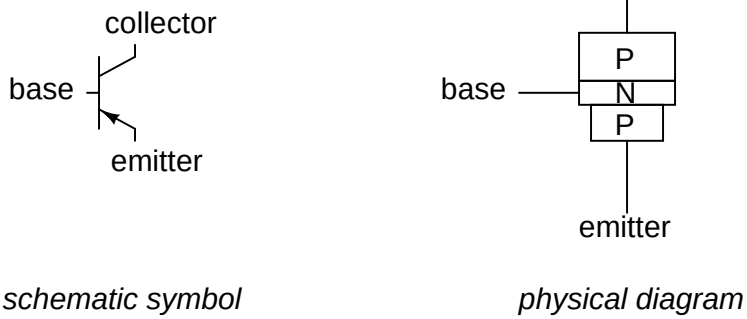
The invention of the bipolar transistor in 1948 ushered in a revolution in electronics. Technical feats previously requiring relatively large, mechanically fragile, power-hungry vacuum tubes were suddenly achievable with tiny, mechanically rugged, power-thrifty specks of crystalline silicon. This revolution made possible the design and manufacture of lightweight, inexpensive

electronic devices that we now take for granted. Understanding how transistors function is of paramount importance to anyone interested in understanding modern electronics.

My intent here is to focus as exclusively as possible on the practical function and application of bipolar transistors, rather than to explore the quantum world of semiconductor theory. Discussions of holes and electrons are better left to another chapter in my opinion. Here I want to explore how to *use* these components, not analyze their intimate internal details. I don't mean to downplay the importance of understanding semiconductor physics, but sometimes an intense focus on solid-state physics detracts from understanding these devices' functions on a component level. In taking this approach, however, I assume that the reader possesses a certain minimum knowledge of semiconductors: the difference between "P" and "N" doped semiconductors, the functional characteristics of a PN (diode) junction, and the meanings of the terms "reverse biased" and "forward biased." If these concepts are unclear to you, it is best to refer to earlier chapters in this book before proceeding with this one.

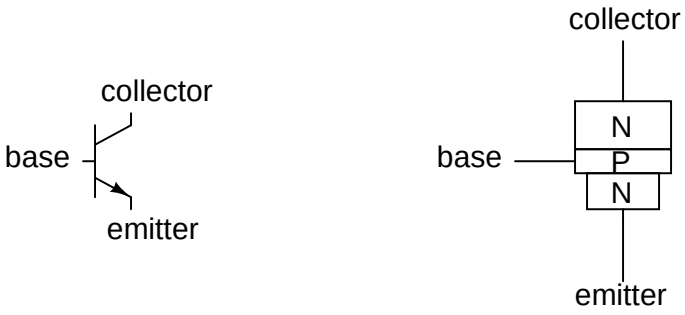
A bipolar transistor consists of a three-layer "sandwich" of doped (extrinsic) semiconductor materials, either P-N-P or N-P-N. Each layer forming the transistor has a specific name, and each layer is provided with a wire contact for connection to a circuit. Shown here are schematic symbols and physical diagrams of these two transistor types:

PNP transistor



schematic symbol *physical diagram*

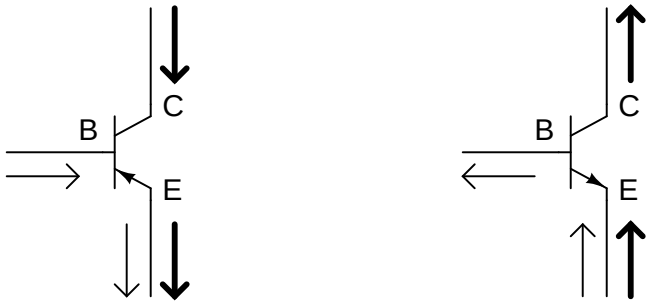
NPN transistor



schematic symbol *physical diagram*

The only functional difference between a PNP transistor and an NPN transistor is the proper biasing (polarity) of the junctions when operating. For any given state of operation, the current directions and voltage polarities for each type of transistor are exactly opposite each other.

Bipolar transistors work as current-controlled current *regulators*. In other words, they restrict the amount of current that can go through them according to a smaller, controlling current. The main current that is *controlled* goes from collector to emitter, or from emitter to collector, depending on the type of transistor it is (PNP or NPN, respectively). The small current that *controls* the main current goes from base to emitter, or from emitter to base, once again depending on the type of transistor it is (PNP or NPN, respectively). According to the confusing standards of semiconductor symbology, the arrow always points *against* the direction of electron flow:



⟶ = small, *controlling* current

⟶ = large, *controlled* current

Bipolar transistors are called *bi*polar because the main flow of electrons through them takes place in *two* types of semiconductor material: P and N, as the main current goes from emitter to collector (or vice versa). In other words, two types of charge carriers – electrons and holes – comprise this main current through the transistor.

As you can see, the *controlling* current and the *controlled* current always mesh together through the emitter wire, and their electrons always flow *against* the direction of the transistor's arrow. This is the first and foremost rule in the use of transistors: all currents must be going in the proper directions for the device to work as a current regulator. The small, controlling current is usually referred to simply as the *base current* because it is the only current that goes through the base wire of the transistor. Conversely, the large, controlled current is referred to as the *collector current* because it is the only current that goes through the collector wire. The emitter current is the sum of the base and collector currents, in compliance with Kirchhoff's Current Law.

If there is no current through the base of the transistor, it shuts off like an open switch and prevents current through the collector. If there is a base current, then the transistor turns on like a closed switch and allows a proportional amount of current through the collector. Collector current is primarily limited by the base current, regardless of the amount of voltage available to push it. The next section will explore in more detail the use of bipolar transistors as switching elements.

- **REVIEW:**

- Bipolar transistors are so named because the controlled current must go through *two* types of semiconductor material: P and N. The current consists of both electron and hole flow, in different parts of the transistor.

- Bipolar transistors consist of either a P-N-P or an N-P-N semiconductor "sandwich" structure.

- The three leads of a bipolar transistor are called the *Emitter*, *Base*, and *Collector*.

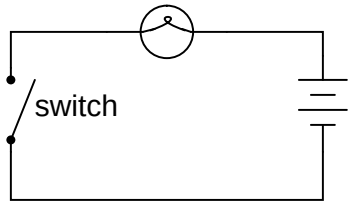
- Transistors function as current regulators by allowing a small current to *control* a larger current. The amount of current allowed between collector and emitter is primarily determined by the amount of current moving between base and emitter.

- In order for a transistor to properly function as a current regulator, the controlling (base) current and the controlled (collector) currents must be going in the proper directions: meshing additively at the emitter and going *against* the emitter arrow symbol.

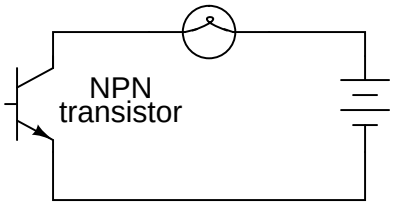
4.2 The transistor as a switch

Because a transistor's collector current is proportionally limited by its base current, it can be used as a sort of current-controlled switch. A relatively small flow of electrons sent through the base of the transistor has the ability to exert control over a much larger flow of electrons through the collector.

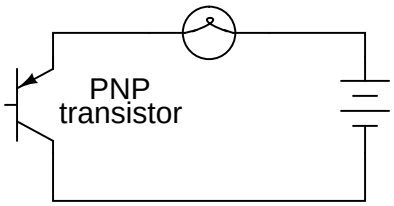
Suppose we had a lamp that we wanted to turn on and off by means of a switch. Such a circuit would be extremely simple:



For the sake of illustration, let's insert a transistor in place of the switch to show how it can control the flow of electrons through the lamp. Remember that the controlled current through a transistor must go between collector and emitter. Since its the current through the lamp that we want to control, we must position the collector and emitter of our transistor where the two contacts of the switch are now. We must also make sure that the lamp's current will move *against* the direction of the emitter arrow symbol to ensure that the transistor's junction bias will be correct:

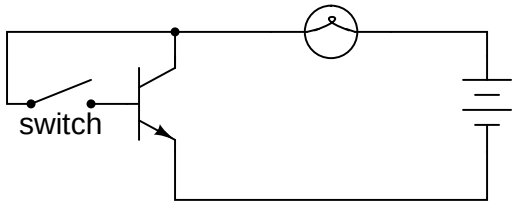


In this example I happened to choose an NPN transistor. A PNP transistor could also have been chosen for the job, and its application would look like this:

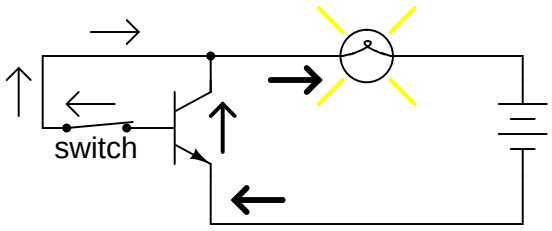


The choice between NPN and PNP is really arbitrary. All that matters is that the proper current directions are maintained for the sake of correct junction biasing (electron flow going *against* the transistor symbol's arrow).

Going back to the NPN transistor in our example circuit, we are faced with the need to add something more so that we can have base current. Without a connection to the base wire of the transistor, base current will be zero, and the transistor cannot turn on, resulting in a lamp that is always off. Remember that for an NPN transistor, base current must consist of electrons flowing from emitter to base (against the emitter arrow symbol, just like the lamp current). Perhaps the simplest thing to do would be to connect a switch between the base and collector wires of the transistor like this:

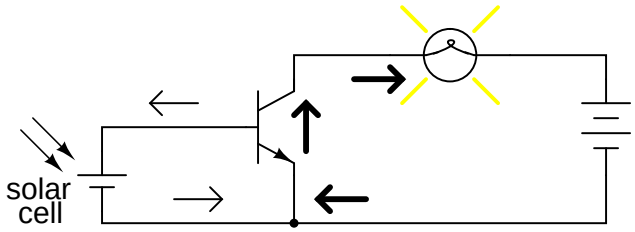


If the switch is open, the base wire of the transistor will be left "floating" (not connected to anything) and there will be no current through it. In this state, the transistor is said to be *cutoff*. If the switch is closed, however, electrons will be able to flow from the emitter through to the base of the transistor, through the switch and up to the left side of the lamp, back to the positive side of the battery. This base current will enable a much larger flow of electrons from the emitter through to the collector, thus lighting up the lamp. In this state of maximum circuit current, the transistor is said to be *saturated*.

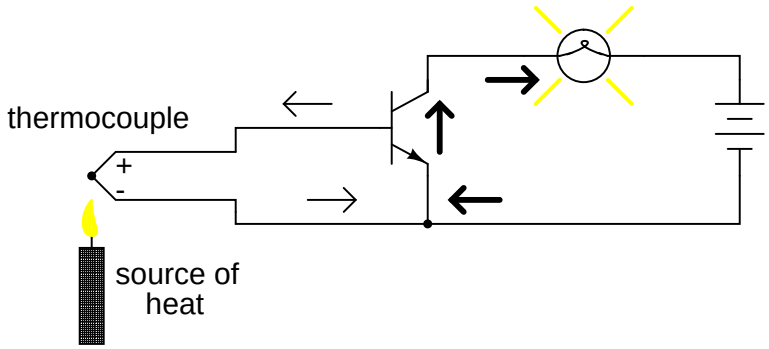


Of course, it may seem pointless to use a transistor in this capacity to control the lamp. After all, we're still using a switch in the circuit, aren't we? If we're still using a switch to control the lamp – if only indirectly – then what's the point of having a transistor to control the current? Why not just go back to our original circuit and use the switch directly to control the lamp current?

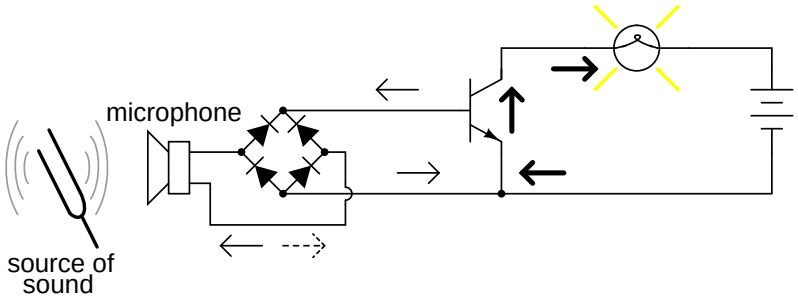
There are a couple of points to be made here, actually. First is the fact that when used in this manner, the switch contacts need only handle what little base current is necessary to turn the transistor on, while the transistor itself handles the majority of the lamp's current. This may be an important advantage if the switch has a low current rating: a small switch may be used to control a relatively high-current load. Perhaps more importantly, though, is the fact that the current-controlling behavior of the transistor enables us to use something completely different to turn the lamp on or off. Consider this example, where a solar cell is used to control the transistor, which in turn controls the lamp:



Or, we could use a thermocouple to provide the necessary base current to turn the transistor on:



Even a microphone of sufficient voltage and current output could be used to turn the transistor on, provided its output is rectified from AC to DC so that the emitter-base PN junction within the transistor will always be forward-biased:

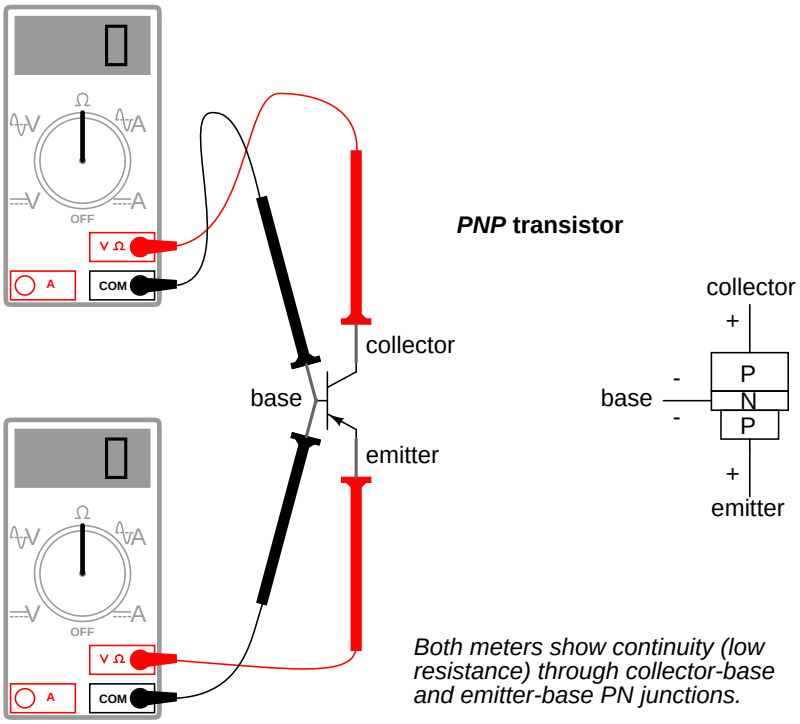


The point should be quite apparent by now: *any* sufficient source of DC current may be used to turn the transistor on, and that source of current need only be a fraction of the amount of current needed to energize the lamp. Here we see the transistor functioning not only as a switch, but as a true *amplifier*: using a relatively low-power signal to *control* a relatively large amount of power. Please note that the actual power for lighting up the lamp comes from the battery to the right of the schematic. It is not as though the small signal current from the solar cell, thermocouple, or microphone is being magically transformed into a greater amount of power. Rather, those small power sources are simply *controlling* the battery's power to light up the lamp.

- **REVIEW:**
- Transistors may be used as switching elements to control DC power to a load. The switched (controlled) current goes between emitter and collector, while the controlling current goes between emitter and base.
- When a transistor has zero current through it, it is said to be in a state of *cutoff* (fully nonconducting).
- When a transistor has maximum current through it, it is said to be in a state of *saturation* (fully conducting).

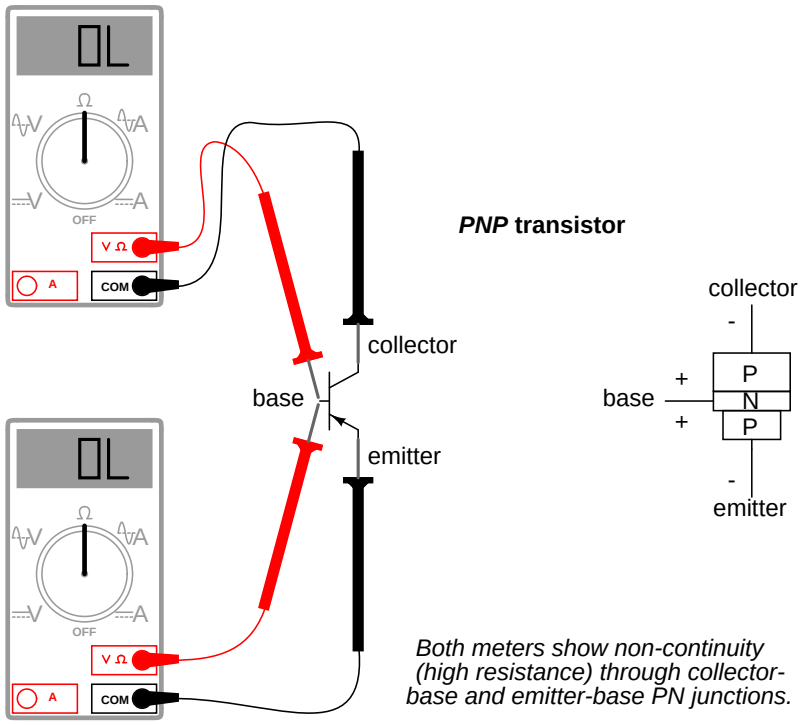
4.3 Meter check of a transistor

Bipolar transistors are constructed of a three-layer semiconductor ”sandwich,” either PNP or NPN. As such, they register as two diodes connected back-to-back when tested with a multimeter’s ”resistance” or ”diode check” functions:



Both meters show continuity (low resistance) through collector-base and emitter-base PN junctions.

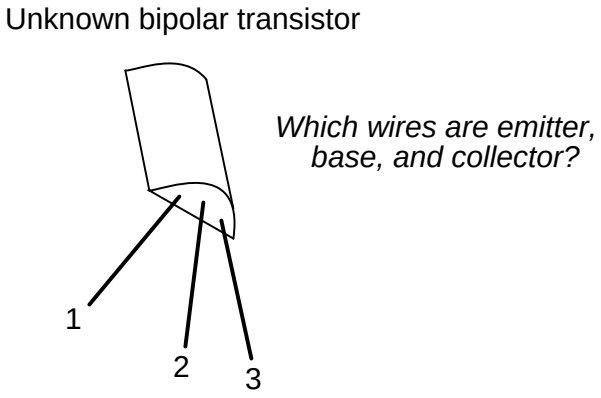
Here I’m assuming the use of a multimeter with only a single continuity range (resistance) function to check the PN junctions. Some multimeters are equipped with two separate continuity check functions: resistance and ”diode check,” each with its own purpose. If your meter has a designated ”diode check” function, use that rather than the ”resistance” range, and the meter will display the actual forward voltage of the PN junction and not just whether or not it conducts current.



Meter readings will be exactly opposite, of course, for an NPN transistor, with both PN junctions facing the other way. If a multimeter with a ”diode check” function is used in this test, it will be found that the emitter-base junction possesses a slightly greater forward voltage drop than the collector-base junction. This forward voltage difference is due to the disparity in doping concentration between the emitter and collector regions of the transistor: the emitter is a much more heavily doped piece of semiconductor material than the collector, causing its junction with the base to produce a higher forward voltage drop.

Knowing this, it becomes possible to determine which wire is which on an unmarked transistor. This is important because transistor packaging, unfortunately, is not standardized. All bipolar transistors have three wires, of course, but the positions of the three wires on the actual physical package are not arranged in any universal, standardized order.

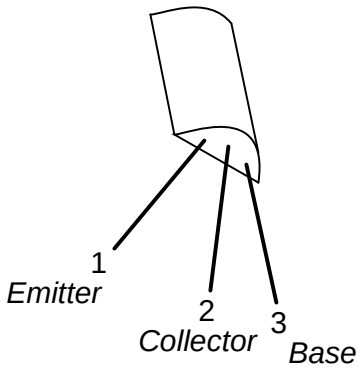
Suppose a technician finds a bipolar transistor and proceeds to measure continuity with a multimeter set in the ”diode check” mode. Measuring between pairs of wires and recording the values displayed by the meter, the technician obtains the following data:



- Meter touching wire 1 (+) and 2 (-): "OL"
- Meter touching wire 1 (-) and 2 (+): "OL"
- Meter touching wire 1 (+) and 3 (-): 0.655 volts
- Meter touching wire 1 (-) and 3 (+): "OL"
- Meter touching wire 2 (+) and 3 (-): 0.621 volts
- Meter touching wire 2 (-) and 3 (+): "OL"

The only combinations of test points giving conducting meter readings are wires 1 and 3 (red test lead on 1 and black test lead on 3), and wires 2 and 3 (red test lead on 2 and black test lead on 3). These two readings *must* indicate forward biasing of the emitter-to-base junction (0.655 volts) and the collector-to-base junction (0.621 volts).

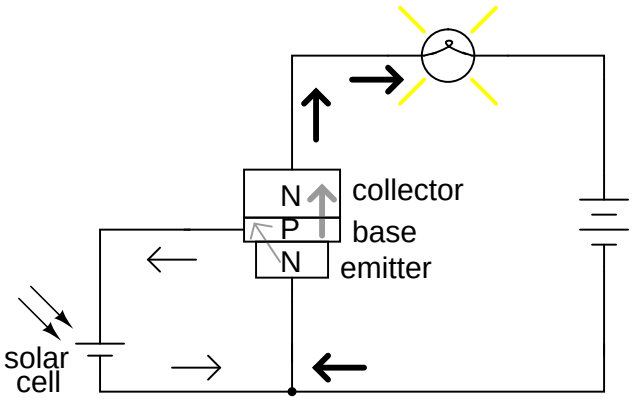
Now we look for the one wire common to both sets of conductive readings. It must be the base connection of the transistor, because the base is the only layer of the three-layer device common to both sets of PN junctions (emitter-base and collector-base). In this example, that wire is number 3, being common to both the 1-3 and the 2-3 test point combinations. In both those sets of meter readings, the *black* (-) meter test lead was touching wire 3, which tells us that the base of this transistor is made of N-type semiconductor material (black = negative). Thus, the transistor is an PNP type with base on wire 3, emitter on wire 1 and collector on wire 2:



Please note that the base wire in this example is *not* the middle lead of the transistor, as one might expect from the three-layer "sandwich" model of a bipolar transistor. This is quite often the case, and tends to confuse new students of electronics. The only way to be sure which lead is which is by a meter check, or by referencing the manufacturer's "data sheet" documentation on that particular part number of transistor.

Knowing that a bipolar transistor behaves as two back-to-back diodes when tested with a conductivity meter is helpful for identifying an unknown transistor purely by meter readings. It is also helpful for a quick functional check of the transistor. If the technician were to measure continuity in any more than two or any less than two of the six test lead combinations, he or she would immediately know that the transistor was defective (or else that it *wasn't* a bipolar transistor but rather something else – a distinct possibility if no part numbers can be referenced for sure identification!). However, the "two diode" model of the transistor fails to explain how or why it acts as an amplifying device.

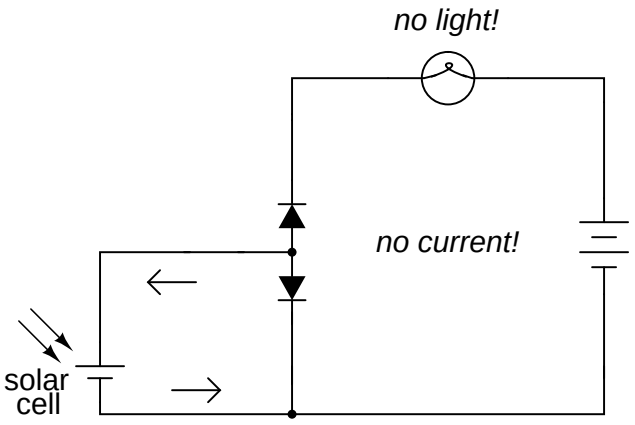
To better illustrate this paradox, let's examine one of the transistor switch circuits using the physical diagram rather than the schematic symbol to represent the transistor. This way the two PN junctions will be easier to see:



A grey-colored diagonal arrow shows the direction of electron flow through the emitter-base junction. This part makes sense, since the electrons are flowing from the N-type emitter to the P-type base: the junction is obviously forward-biased. However, the base-collector junction is another matter entirely. Notice how the grey-colored thick arrow is pointing in the direction of

electron flow (upwards) from base to collector. With the base made of P-type material and the collector of N-type material, this direction of electron flow is clearly backwards to the direction normally associated with a PN junction! A normal PN junction wouldn't permit this "backward" direction of flow, at least not without offering significant opposition. However, when the transistor is saturated, there is very little opposition to electrons all the way from emitter to collector, as evidenced by the lamp's illumination!

Clearly then, something is going on here that defies the simple "two-diode" explanatory model of the bipolar transistor. When I was first learning about transistor operation, I tried to construct my own transistor from two back-to-back diodes, like this:



Back-to-back diodes don't act like a transistor!

My circuit didn't work, and I was mystified. However useful the "two diode" description of a transistor might be for testing purposes, it doesn't explain how a transistor can behave as a controlled switch.

What happens in a transistor is this: the reverse bias of the base-collector junction prevents collector current when the transistor is in cutoff mode (that is, when there is no base current). However, when the base-emitter junction is forward biased by the controlling signal, the normally-blocking action of the base-collector junction is overridden and current is permitted through the collector, despite the fact that electrons are going the "wrong way" through that PN junction. This action is dependent on the quantum physics of semiconductor junctions, and can only take place when the two junctions are properly spaced and the doping concentrations of the three layers are properly proportioned. Two diodes wired in series fail to meet these criteria, and so the top diode can never "turn on" when it is reversed biased, no matter how much current goes through the bottom diode in the base wire loop.

That doping concentrations play a crucial part in the special abilities of the transistor is further evidenced by the fact that collector and emitter are not interchangeable. If the transistor is merely viewed as two back-to-back PN junctions, or merely as a plain N-P-N or P-N-P sandwich of materials, it may seem as though either end of the transistor could serve as collector or emitter. This, however, is not true. If connected "backwards" in a circuit, a base-collector current will fail to control current between collector and emitter. Despite the fact that both the emitter and collector layers of a bipolar transistor are of the same doping *type* (either N or P),

they are definitely not identical!

So, current through the emitter-base junction allows current through the reverse-biased base-collector junction. The action of base current can be thought of as ”opening a gate” for current through the collector. More specifically, any given amount of emitter-to-base current *permits a limited amount* of base-to-collector current. For every electron that passes through the emitter-base junction and on through the base wire, there is allowed a certain, restricted number of electrons to pass through the base-collector junction and no more.

In the next section, this current-limiting behavior of the transistor will be investigated in more detail.

- **REVIEW:**
- Tested with a multimeter in the ”resistance” or ”diode check” modes, a transistor behaves like two back-to-back PN (diode) junctions.
- The emitter-base PN junction has a slightly greater forward voltage drop than the collector-base PN junction, due to more concentrated doping of the emitter semiconductor layer.
- The reverse-biased base-collector junction normally blocks any current from going through the transistor between emitter and collector. However, that junction begins to conduct if current is drawn through the base wire. Base current can be thought of as ”opening a gate” for a certain, limited amount of current through the collector.

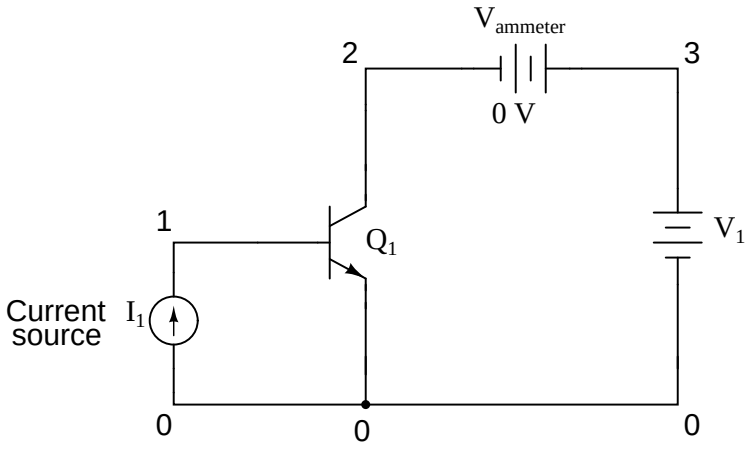
4.4 Active mode operation

When a transistor is in the fully-off state (like an open switch), it is said to be *cutoff*. Conversely, when it is fully conductive between emitter and collector (passing as much current through the collector as the collector power supply and load will allow), it is said to be *saturated*. These are the two modes of operation explored thus far in using the transistor as a switch.

However, bipolar transistors don’t have to be restricted to these two extreme modes of operation. As we learned in the previous section, base current ”opens a gate” for a limited amount of current through the collector. If this limit for the controlled current is greater than zero but less than the maximum allowed by the power supply and load circuit, the transistor will ”throttle” the collector current in a mode somewhere between cutoff and saturation. This mode of operation is called the *active* mode.

An automotive analogy for transistor operation is as follows: *cutoff* is the condition where there is no motive force generated by the mechanical parts of the car to make it move. In cutoff mode, the brake is engaged (zero base current), preventing motion (collector current). *Active mode* is when the automobile is cruising at a constant, controlled speed (constant, controlled collector current) as dictated by the driver. *Saturation* is when the automobile is driving up a steep hill that prevents it from going as fast as the driver would wish. In other words, a ”saturated” automobile is one where the accelerator pedal is pushed all the way down (base current calling for more collector current than can be provided by the power supply/load circuit).

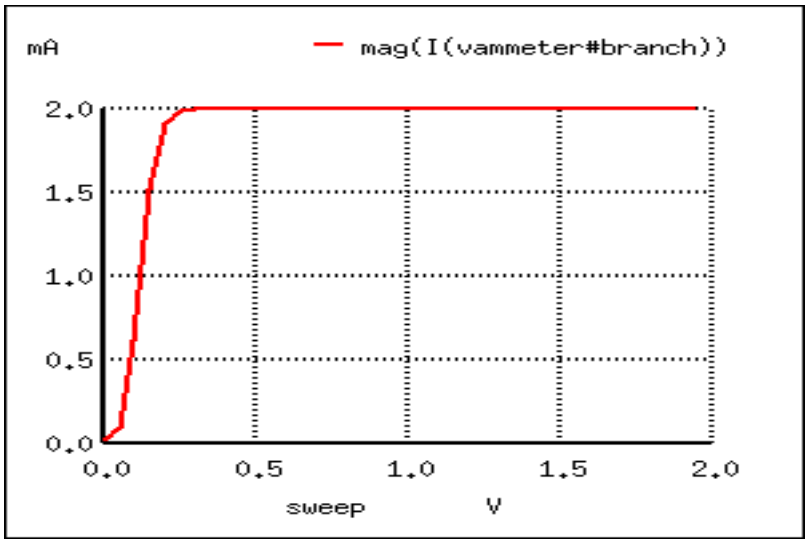
I’ll set up a circuit for SPICE simulation to demonstrate what happens when a transistor is in its active mode of operation:



"Q" is the standard letter designation for a transistor in a schematic diagram, just as "R" is for resistor and "C" is for capacitor. In this circuit, we have an NPN transistor powered by a battery (V_1) and controlled by current through a *current source* (I_1). A current source is a device that outputs a specific amount of current, generating as much or as little voltage as necessary across its terminals to ensure that exact amount of current through it. Current sources are notoriously difficult to find in nature (unlike voltage sources, which by contrast attempt to maintain a constant voltage, outputting as much or as little current in the fulfillment of that task), but can be simulated with a small collection of electronic components. As we are about to see, transistors themselves tend to mimic the constant-current behavior of a current source in their ability to *regulate* current at a fixed value.

In the SPICE simulation, I'll set the current source at a constant value of 20 μA, then vary the voltage source (V_1) over a range of 0 to 2 volts and monitor how much current goes through it. The "dummy" battery ($V_{ammeter}$) with its output of 0 volts serves merely to provide SPICE with a circuit element for current measurement.

```
bipolar transistor simulation
i1 0 1 dc 20u
q1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc
.model mod1 npn
.dc v1 0 2 0.05
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end

type        npn
is        1.00E-16
bf         100.000
nf           1.000
br           1.000
nr           1.000
```

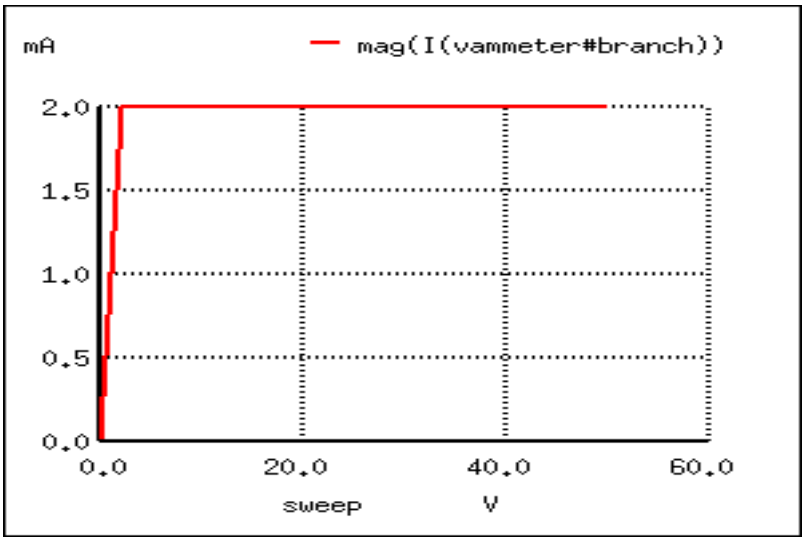


The constant base current of 20 μA sets a collector current limit of 2 mA, exactly 100 times as much. Notice how flat the curve is for collector current over the range of battery voltage from 0 to 2 volts. The only exception to this featureless plot is at the very beginning, where the battery increases from 0 volts to 0.25 volts. There, the collector current increases rapidly from 0 amps to its limit of 2 mA.

Let's see what happens if we vary the battery voltage over a wider range, this time from 0 to 50 volts. We'll keep the base current steady at 20 μA:

```
bipolar transistor simulation
i1 0 1 dc 20u
q1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc
.model mod1 npn
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```

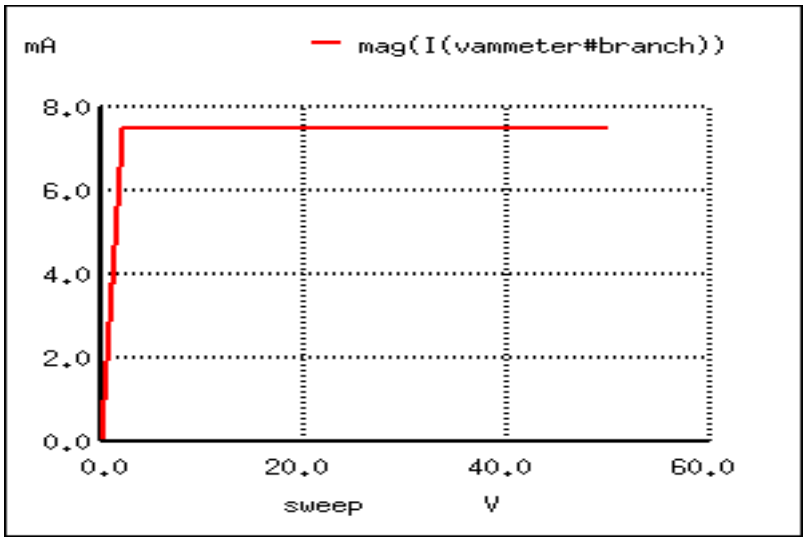
```
type        npn
is        1.00E-16
bf         100.000
nf           1.000
br           1.000
nr           1.000
```



Same result! The collector current holds absolutely steady at 2 mA despite the fact that the battery (v1) voltage varies all the way from 0 to 50 volts. It would appear from our simulation that collector-to-emitter voltage has little effect over collector current, except at very low levels (just above 0 volts). The transistor is acting as a current regulator, allowing exactly 2 mA through the collector and no more.

Now let's see what happens if we increase the controlling (I_1) current from 20 μA to 75 μA, once again sweeping the battery (V_1) voltage from 0 to 50 volts and graphing the collector current:

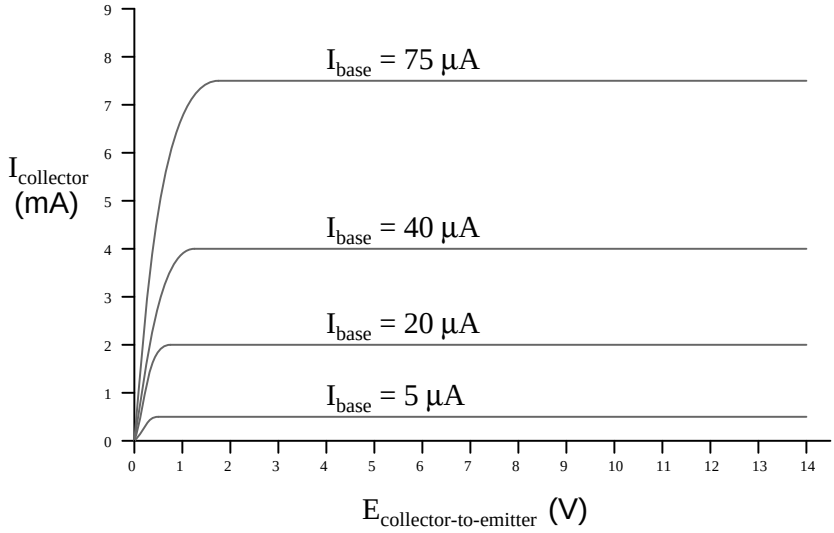
```
bipolar transistor simulation
i1 0 1 dc 75u
q1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc
.model mod1 npn
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end


type        npn
is        1.00E-16
bf         100.000
nf           1.000
br           1.000
nr           1.000
```



Not surprisingly, SPICE gives us a similar plot: a flat line, holding steady this time at 7.5 mA – exactly 100 times the base current – over the range of battery voltages from just above 0 volts to 50 volts. It appears that the base current is the deciding factor for collector current, the V_1 battery voltage being irrelevant so long as its above a certain minimum level.

This voltage/current relationship is entirely different from what we're used to seeing across a resistor. With a resistor, current increases linearly as the voltage across it increases. Here, with a transistor, current from emitter to collector stays limited at a fixed, maximum value no matter how high the voltage across emitter and collector increases.

Often it is useful to superimpose several collector current/voltage graphs for different base currents on the same graph. A collection of curves like this – one curve plotted for each distinct level of base current – for a particular transistor is called the transistor's *characteristic curves*:



Each curve on the graph reflects the collector current of the transistor, plotted over a range of collector-to-emitter voltages, for a given amount of base current. Since a transistor tends to act as a current regulator, limiting collector current to a proportion set by the base current, it is useful to express this proportion as a standard transistor performance measure. Specifically, the ratio of collector current to base current is known as the *Beta* ratio (symbolized by the Greek letter β):

$$\beta = \frac{I_{collector}}{I_{base}}$$

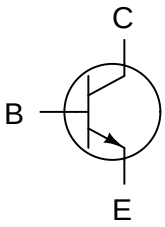
β is also known as h_{fe}

Sometimes the β ratio is designated as "h_{fe}," a label used in a branch of mathematical semiconductor analysis known as "hybrid parameters" which strives to achieve very precise predictions of transistor performance with detailed equations. Hybrid parameter variables are many, but they are all labeled with the general letter "h" and a specific subscript. The variable "h_{fe}" is just another (standardized) way of expressing the ratio of collector current to base current, and is interchangeable with "β." Like all ratios, β is unitless.

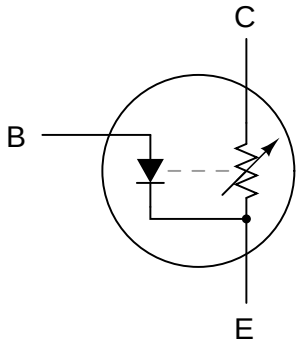
β for any transistor is determined by its design: it cannot be altered after manufacture. However, there are so many physical variables impacting β that it is rare to have two transistors of the same design exactly match. If a circuit design relies on equal β ratios between multiple transistors, "matched sets" of transistors may be purchased at extra cost. However, it is generally considered bad design practice to engineer circuits with such dependencies.

It would be nice if the β of a transistor remained stable for all operating conditions, but this is not true in real life. For an actual transistor, the β ratio may vary by a factor of over 3 within its operating current limits. For example, a transistor with advertised β of 50 may actually test with I_c/I_b ratios as low as 30 and as high as 100, depending on the amount of collector current, the transistor's temperature, and frequency of amplified signal, among other factors. For tutorial purposes it is adequate to assume a constant β for any given transistor (which is what SPICE tends to do in a simulation), but just realize that real life is not that simple!

Sometimes it is helpful for comprehension to "model" complex electronic components with a collection of simpler, better-understood components. The following is a popular model shown in many introductory electronics texts:

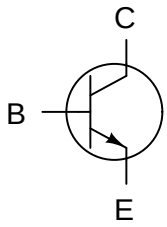


NPN diode-rheostat model

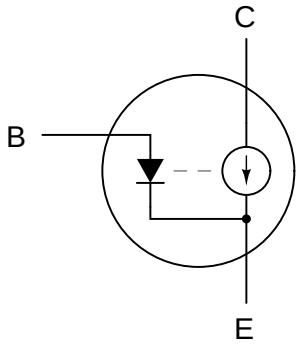


This model casts the transistor as a combination of diode and rheostat (variable resistor). Current through the base-emitter diode controls the resistance of the collector-emitter rheostat (as implied by the dashed line connecting the two components), thus controlling collector current. An NPN transistor is modeled in the figure shown, but a PNP transistor would be only slightly different (only the base-emitter diode would be reversed). This model succeeds in illustrating the basic concept of transistor amplification: how the base current signal can exert control over the collector current. However, I personally don't like this model because it tends to miscommunicate the notion of a set amount of collector-emitter resistance for a given amount of base current. If this were true, the transistor wouldn't *regulate* collector current at all like the characteristic curves show. Instead of the collector current curves flattening out after their brief rise as the collector-emitter voltage increases, the collector current would be directly proportional to collector-emitter voltage, rising steadily in a straight line on the graph.

A better transistor model, often seen in more advanced textbooks, is this:

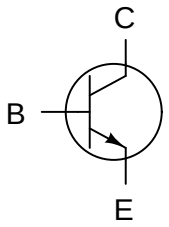


NPN diode-current source model

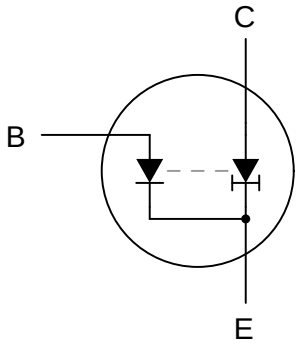


It casts the transistor as a combination of diode and current source, the output of the current source being set at a multiple (β ratio) of the base current. This model is far more accurate in depicting the true input/output characteristics of a transistor: base current establishes a certain amount of collector *current*, rather than a certain amount of collector-emitter *resistance* as the first model implies. Also, this model is favored when performing network analysis on transistor circuits, the current source being a well-understood theoretical component. Unfortunately, using a current source to model the transistor's current-controlling behavior can be misleading: in no way will the transistor ever act as a *source* of electrical energy, which the current source symbol implies is a possibility.

My own personal suggestion for a transistor model substitutes a constant-current diode for the current source:



NPN diode-regulating diode model



Since no diode ever acts as a *source* of electrical energy, this analogy escapes the false implication of the current source model as a source of power, while depicting the transistor's constant-current behavior better than the rheostat model. Another way to describe the constant-current diode's action would be to refer to it as a *current regulator*, so this transistor illustration of mine might also be described as a *diode-current regulator* model. The greatest disadvantage I see to this model is the relative obscurity of constant-current diodes. Many people may be unfamiliar with their symbology or even of their existence, unlike either rheostats or current sources, which are commonly known.

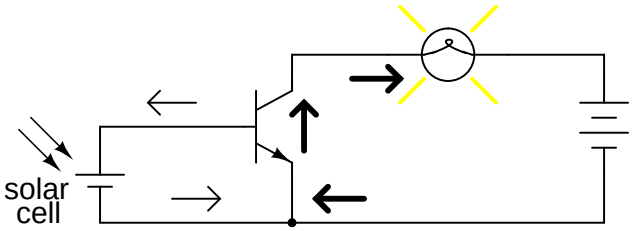
- **REVIEW:**
- A transistor is said to be in its *active* mode if it is operating somewhere between fully on (saturated) and fully off (cutoff).
- Base current tends to regulate collector current. By *regulate*, we mean that no more collector current may exist than what is allowed by the base current.
- The ratio between collector current and base current is called "Beta" (β) or "h_{fe}".
- β ratios are different for every transistor, and they tend to change for different operating conditions.

4.5 The common-emitter amplifier

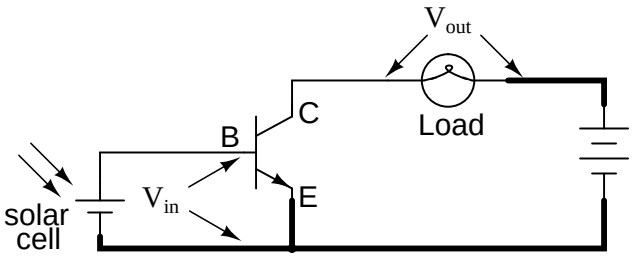
At the beginning of this chapter we saw how transistors could be used as switches, operating in either their "saturation" or "cutoff" modes. In the last section we saw how transistors behave

within their "active" modes, between the far limits of saturation and cutoff. Because transistors are able to control current in an analog (infinitely divisible) fashion, they find use as amplifiers for analog signals.

One of the simpler transistor amplifier circuits to study is the one used previously for illustrating the transistor's switching ability:

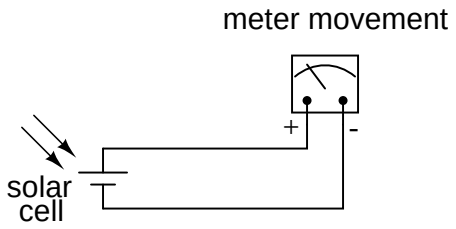


It is called the *common-emitter* configuration because (ignoring the power supply battery) both the signal source and the load share the emitter lead as a common connection point. This is not the only way in which a transistor may be used as an amplifier, as we will see in later sections of this chapter:



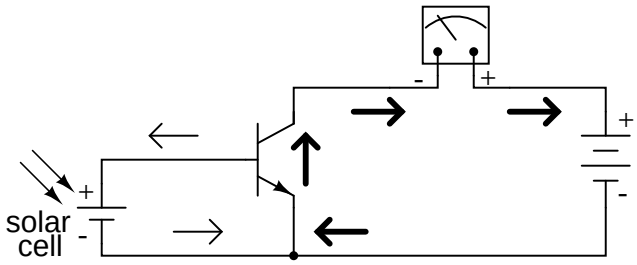
Before, this circuit was shown to illustrate how a relatively small current from a solar cell could be used to saturate a transistor, resulting in the illumination of a lamp. Knowing now that transistors are able to "throttle" their collector currents according to the amount of base current supplied by an input signal source, we should be able to see that the brightness of the lamp in this circuit is controllable by the solar cell's light exposure. When there is just a little light shone on the solar cell, the lamp will glow dimly. The lamp's brightness will steadily increase as more light falls on the solar cell.

Suppose that we were interested in using the solar cell as a light intensity instrument. We want to be able to measure the intensity of incident light with the solar cell by using its output current to drive a meter movement. It is possible to directly connect a meter movement to a solar cell for this purpose. In fact, the simplest light-exposure meters for photography work are designed like this:



While this approach might work for moderate light intensity measurements, it would not work as well for low light intensity measurements. Because the solar cell has to supply the meter movement's power needs, the system is necessarily limited in its sensitivity. Supposing that our need here is to measure very low-level light intensities, we are pressed to find another solution.

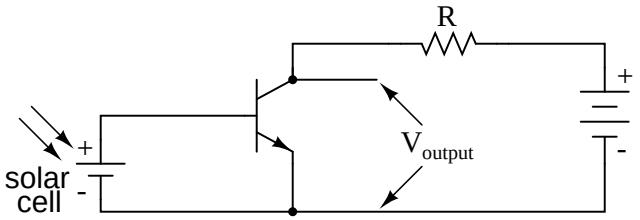
Perhaps the most direct solution to this measurement problem is to use a transistor to *amplify* the solar cell's current so that more meter movement needle deflection may be obtained for less incident light. Consider this approach:



Current through the meter movement in this circuit will be β times the solar cell current. With a transistor β of 100, this represents a substantial increase in measurement sensitivity. It is prudent to point out that the additional power to move the meter needle comes from the battery on the far right of the circuit, not the solar cell itself. All the solar cell's current does is *control* battery current to the meter to provide a greater meter reading than the solar cell could provide unaided.

Because the transistor is a current-regulating device, and because meter movement indications are based on the amount of current through their movement coils, meter indication in this circuit should depend only on the amount of current from the solar cell, not on the amount of voltage provided by the battery. This means the accuracy of the circuit will be independent of battery condition, a significant feature! All that is required of the battery is a certain minimum voltage and current output ability to be able to drive the meter full-scale if needed.

Another way in which the common-emitter configuration may be used is to produce an output *voltage* derived from the input signal, rather than a specific output *current*. Let's replace the meter movement with a plain resistor and measure voltage between collector and emitter:

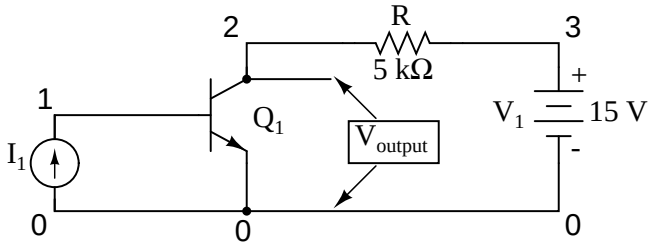


With the solar cell darkened (no current), the transistor will be in cutoff mode and behave as an open switch between collector and emitter. This will produce maximum voltage drop between collector and emitter for maximum V_{output}, equal to the full voltage of the battery.

At full power (maximum light exposure), the solar cell will drive the transistor into saturation mode, making it behave like a closed switch between collector and emitter. The result will be minimum voltage drop between collector and emitter, or almost zero output voltage. In actuality, a saturated transistor can never achieve zero voltage drop between collector and emitter due to the two PN junctions through which collector current must travel. However, this "collector-emitter saturation voltage" will be fairly low, around several tenths of a volt, depending on the specific transistor used.

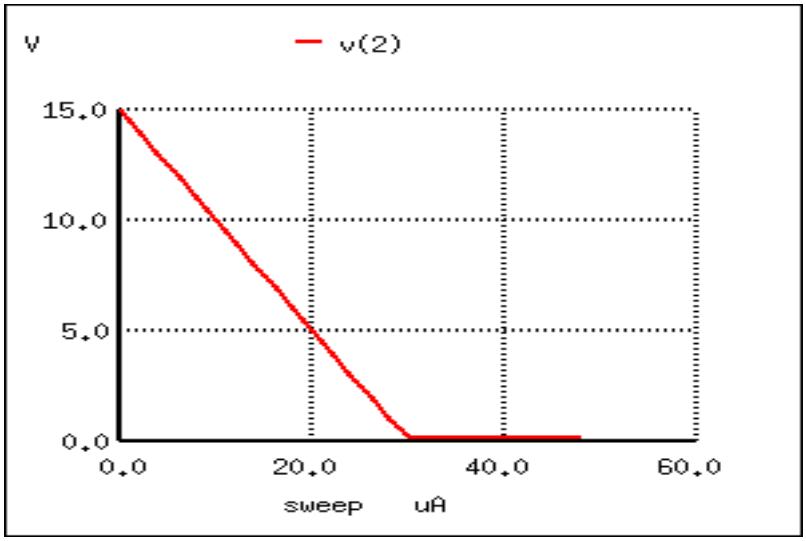
For light exposure levels somewhere between zero and maximum solar cell output, the transistor will be in its active mode, and the output voltage will be somewhere between zero and full battery voltage. An important quality to note here about the common-emitter configuration is that the output voltage is *inversely proportional* to the input signal strength. That is, the output voltage decreases as the input signal increases. For this reason, the common-emitter amplifier configuration is referred to as an *inverting* amplifier.

A quick SPICE simulation will verify our qualitative conclusions about this amplifier circuit:



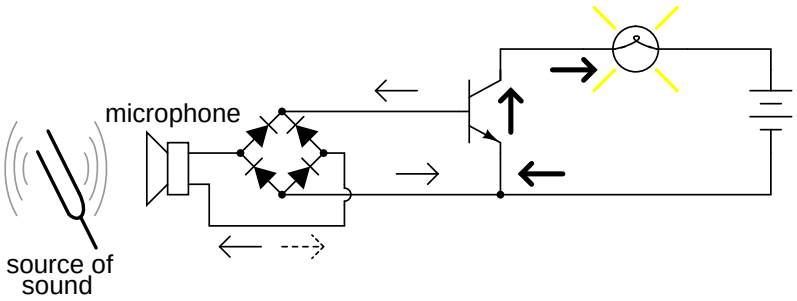

```
common-emitter amplifier
i1 0 1 dc
q1 2 1 0 mod1
r 3 2 5000
v1 3 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.dc i1 0 50u 2u
.plot dc v(2,0)
.end

type        npn
```

```
is          1.00E-16
bf           100.000
nf             1.000
br             1.000
nr             1.000
```

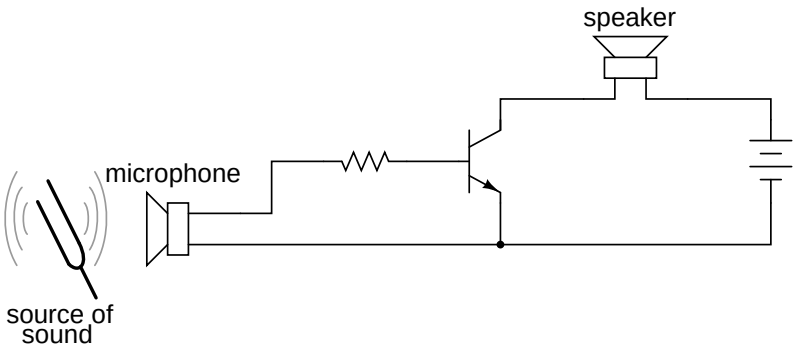


At the beginning of the simulation where the current source (solar cell) is outputting zero current, the transistor is in cutoff mode and the full 15 volts from the battery is shown at the amplifier output (between nodes 2 and 0). As the solar cell's current begins to increase, the output voltage proportionally decreases, until the transistor reaches saturation at 30 μA of base current (3 mA of collector current). Notice how the output voltage trace on the graph is perfectly linear (1 volt steps from 15 volts to 1 volt) until the point of saturation, where it never quite reaches zero. This is the effect mentioned earlier, where a saturated transistor can never achieve exactly zero voltage drop between collector and emitter due to internal junction effects. What we do see is a sharp output voltage decrease from 1 volt to 0.2261 volts as the input current increases from 28 μA to 30 μA, and then a continuing decrease in output voltage from then on (albeit in progressively smaller steps). The lowest the output voltage ever gets in this simulation is 0.1299 volts, asymptotically approaching zero.

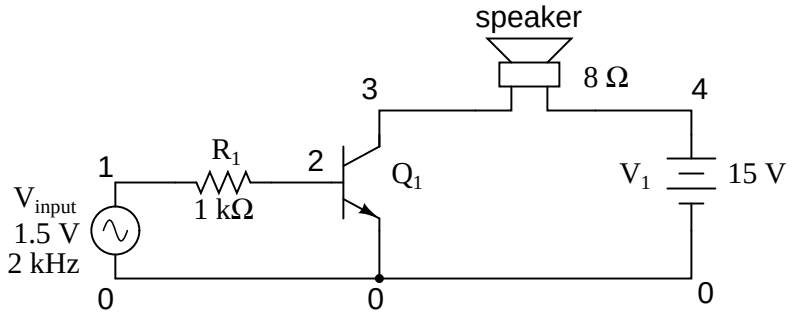
So far, we've seen the transistor used as an amplifier for DC signals. In the solar cell light meter example, we were interested in amplifying the DC output of the solar cell to drive a DC meter movement, or to produce a DC output voltage. However, this is not the only way in which a transistor may be employed as an amplifier. In many cases, what is desired is an *AC* amplifier for amplifying *alternating* current and voltage signals. One common application of this is in audio electronics (radios, televisions, and public-address systems). Earlier, we saw an example where the audio output of a tuning fork could be used to activate a transistor as a switch. Let's see if we can modify that circuit to send power to a speaker rather than to a lamp:



In the original circuit, a full-wave bridge rectifier was used to convert the microphone's AC output signal into a DC voltage to drive the input of the transistor. All we cared about here was turning the lamp on with a sound signal from the microphone, and this arrangement sufficed for that purpose. But now we want to actually reproduce the AC signal and drive a speaker. This means we cannot rectify the microphone's output anymore, because we need undistorted AC signal to drive the transistor! Let's remove the bridge rectifier and replace the lamp with a speaker:

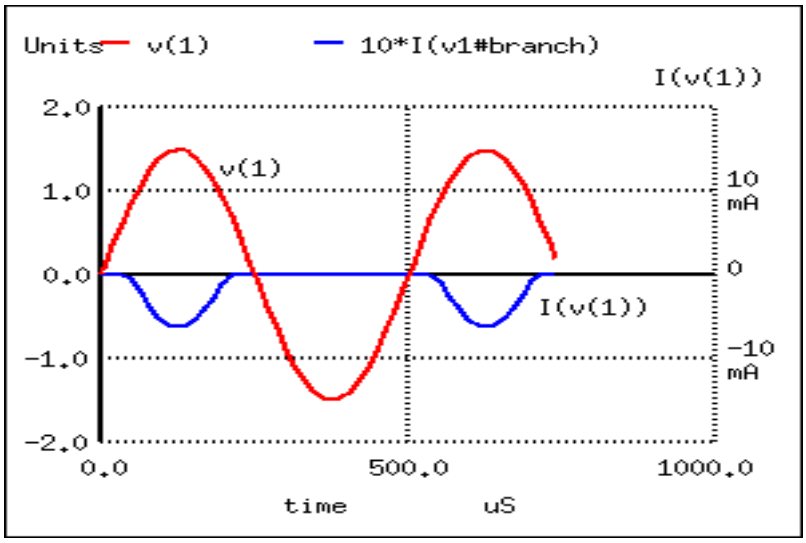


Since the microphone may produce voltages exceeding the forward voltage drop of the base-emitter PN (diode) junction, I've placed a resistor in series with the microphone. Let's simulate this circuit now in SPICE and see what happens:



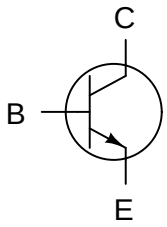

```
common-emitter amplifier
vinput 1 0 sin (0 1.5 2000 0 0)
```

```
r1 1 2 1k
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 8
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.74m
.plot tran v(1,0) i(v1)
.end
```

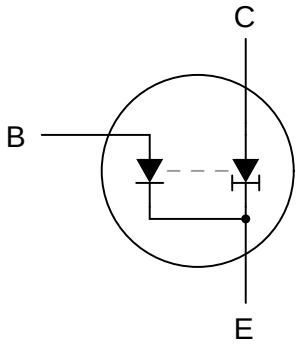


The simulation plots both the input voltage (an AC signal of 1.5 volt peak amplitude and 2000 Hz frequency) and the current through the 15 volt battery, which is the same as the current through the speaker. What we see here is a full AC sine wave alternating in both positive and negative directions, and a half-wave output current waveform that only pulses in one direction. If we were actually driving a speaker with this waveform, the sound produced would be horribly distorted.

What's wrong with the circuit? Why won't it faithfully reproduce the entire AC waveform from the microphone? The answer to this question is found by close inspection of the transistor diode-regulating diode model:

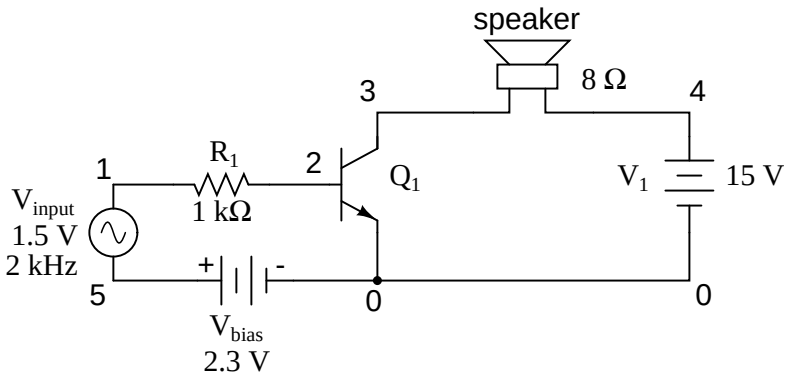


NPN diode-regulating diode model

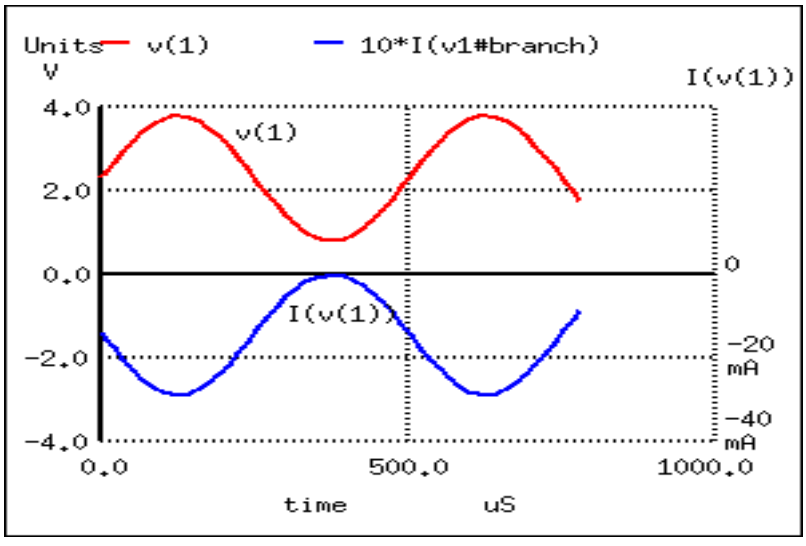


Collector current is controlled, or regulated, through the constant-current mechanism according to the pace set by the current through the base-emitter diode. Note that both current paths through the transistor are monodirectional: *one way only!* Despite our intent to use the transistor to amplify an *AC* signal, it is essentially a *DC* device, capable of handling currents in a single direction only. We may apply an AC voltage input signal between the base and emitter, but electrons cannot flow in that circuit during the part of the cycle that reverse-biases the base-emitter diode junction. Therefore, the transistor will remain in cutoff mode throughout that portion of the cycle. It will ”turn on” in its active mode only when the input voltage is of the correct polarity to forward-bias the base-emitter diode, and only when that voltage is sufficiently high to overcome the diode’s forward voltage drop. Remember that bipolar transistors are *current-controlled devices*: they regulate collector current based on the existence of base-to-emitter *current*, not base-to-emitter *voltage*.

The only way we can get the transistor to reproduce the entire waveform as current through the speaker is to keep the transistor in its active mode the entire time. This means we must maintain current through the base during the entire input waveform cycle. Consequently, the base-emitter diode junction must be kept forward-biased at all times. Fortunately, this can be accomplished with the aid of a DC *bias voltage* added to the input signal. By connecting a sufficient DC voltage in series with the AC signal source, forward-bias can be maintained at all points throughout the wave cycle:



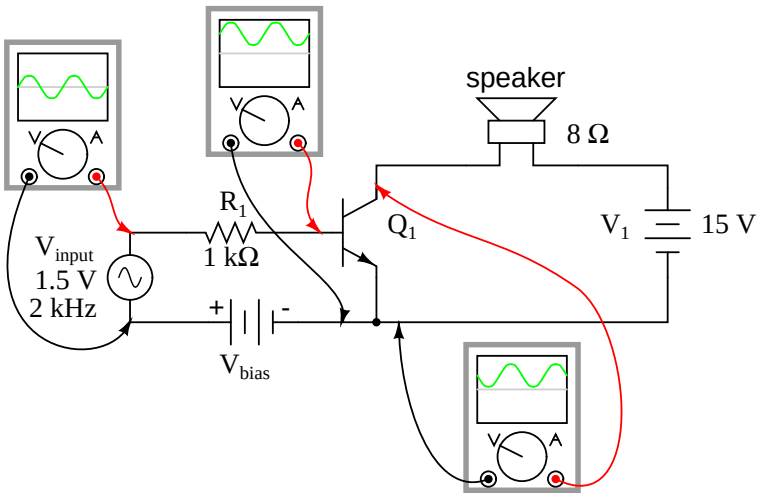

```
common-emitter amplifier
vinput 1 5 sin (0 1.5 2000 0 0)
vbias 5 0 dc 2.3
r1 1 2 1k
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 8
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.78m
.plot tran v(1,0) i(v1)
.end
```



With the bias voltage source of 2.3 volts in place, the transistor remains in its active mode throughout the entire cycle of the wave, faithfully reproducing the waveform at the speaker.

Notice that the input voltage (measured between nodes 1 and 0) fluctuates between about 0.8 volts and 3.8 volts, a peak-to-peak voltage of 3 volts just as expected (source voltage = 1.5 volts peak). The output (speaker) current varies between zero and almost 300 mA, 180^o out of phase with the input (microphone) signal.

The following illustration is another view of the same circuit, this time with a few oscilloscopes ("scopemeters") connected at crucial points to display all the pertinent signals:



The need for biasing a transistor amplifier circuit to obtain full waveform reproduction is an important consideration. A separate section of this chapter will be devoted entirely to the subject biasing and biasing techniques. For now, it is enough to understand that biasing may be necessary for proper voltage and current output from the amplifier.

Now that we have a functioning amplifier circuit, we can investigate its voltage, current, and power gains. The generic transistor used in these SPICE analyses has a β of 100, as indicated by the short transistor statistics printout included in the text output (these statistics were cut from the last two analyses for brevity's sake):

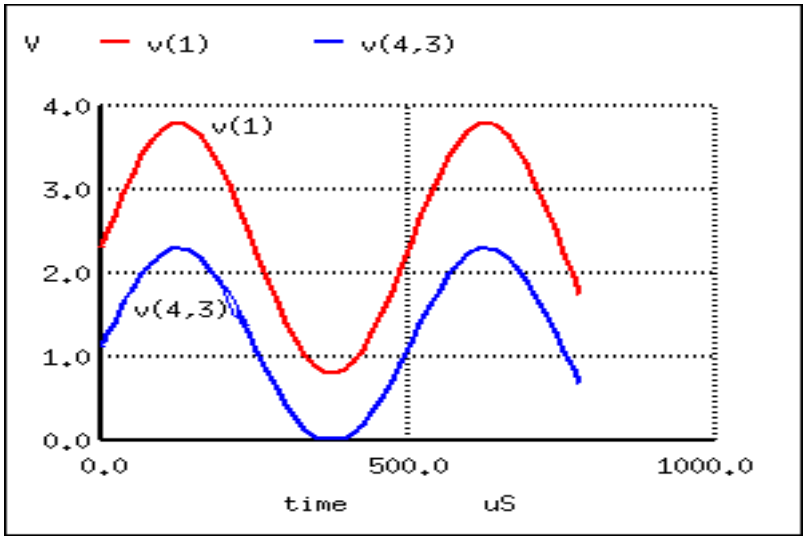
```
type         npn
is         1.00E-16
bf          100.000
nf            1.000
br            1.000
nr            1.000
```

β is listed under the abbreviation "bf," which actually stands for "**b**eta, **f**orward". If we wanted to insert our own β ratio for an analysis, we could have done so on the `.model` line of the SPICE netlist.

Since β is the ratio of collector current to base current, and we have our load connected in series with the collector terminal of the transistor and our source connected in series with the base, the ratio of output current to input current is equal to beta. Thus, our current gain for this example amplifier is 100, or 40 dB.

Voltage gain is a little more complicated to figure than current gain for this circuit. As always, voltage gain is defined as the ratio of output voltage divided by input voltage. In order to experimentally determine this, we need to modify our last SPICE analysis to plot output voltage rather than output current so we have two voltage plots to compare:

```
common-emitter amplifier
vinput 1 5 sin (0 1.5 2000 0 0)
vbias 5 0 dc 2.3
r1 1 2 1k
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 8
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.78m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(4,3)
.end
```

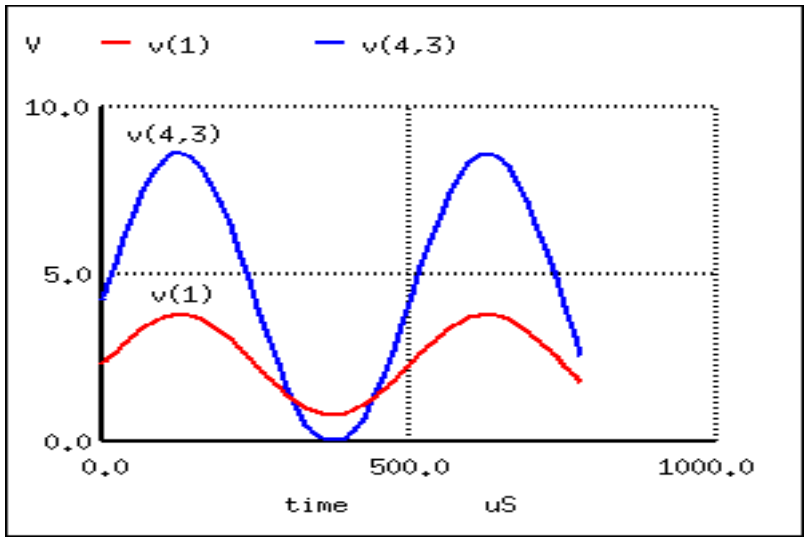


Plotted on the same scale (from 0 to 4 volts), we see that the output waveform ("+") has a smaller peak-to-peak amplitude than the input waveform ("*"), in addition to being at a lower bias voltage, not elevated up from 0 volts like the input. Since voltage gain for an AC amplifier is defined by the ratio of AC amplitudes, we can ignore any DC bias separating the two waveforms. Even so, the input waveform is still larger than the output, which tells us that the voltage gain is less than 1 (a negative dB figure).

To be honest, this low voltage gain is not characteristic to *all* common-emitter amplifiers. In this case it is a consequence of the great disparity between the input and load resistances. Our input resistance (R_1) here is 1000 Ω, while the load (speaker) is only 8 Ω. Because the current gain of this amplifier is determined solely by the β of the transistor, and because that β figure is fixed, the current gain for this amplifier won't change with variations in either of

these resistances. However, voltage gain *is* dependent on these resistances. If we alter the load resistance, making it a larger value, it will drop a proportionately greater voltage for its range of load currents, resulting in a larger output waveform. Let's try another simulation, only this time with a 30 Ω load instead of an 8 Ω load:

```
common-emitter amplifier
vinput 1 5 sin (0 1.5 2000 0 0)
vbias 5 0 dc 2.3
r1 1 2 1k
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 30
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.78m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(4,3)
.end
```



This time the output voltage waveform is significantly greater in amplitude than the input waveform. Looking closely, we can see that the output waveform ("+") crests between 0 and about 9 volts: approximately 3 times the amplitude of the input voltage.

We can perform another computer analysis of this circuit, only this time instructing SPICE to analyze it from an AC point of view, giving us peak voltage figures for input and output instead of a time-based plot of the waveforms:

```
common-emitter amplifier
vinput 1 5 ac 1.5
vbias 5 0 dc 2.3
```

```
r1 1 2 1k
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 30
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.ac lin 1 2000 2000
.print ac v(1,0) v(4,3)
.end

freq          v(1)        v(4,3)
2.000E+03     1.500E+00   4.418E+00
```

Peak voltage measurements of input and output show an input of 1.5 volts and an output of 4.418 volts. This gives us a voltage gain ratio of 2.9453 (4.418 V / 1.5 V), or 9.3827 dB.

$$A_V = \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}}$$

$$A_V = \frac{4.418\ V}{1.5\ V}$$

$$A_V = 2.9453$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log A_{V(ratio)}$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log 2.9453$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 9.3827\ dB$$

Because the current gain of the common-emitter amplifier is fixed by β, and since the input and output voltages will be equal to the input and output currents multiplied by their respective resistors, we can derive an equation for approximate voltage gain:

$$A_V = \beta \frac{R_{out}}{R_{in}}$$

$$A_V = (100) \frac{30\ \Omega}{1000\ \Omega}$$

$$A_V = 3$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log A_{V(ratio)}$$

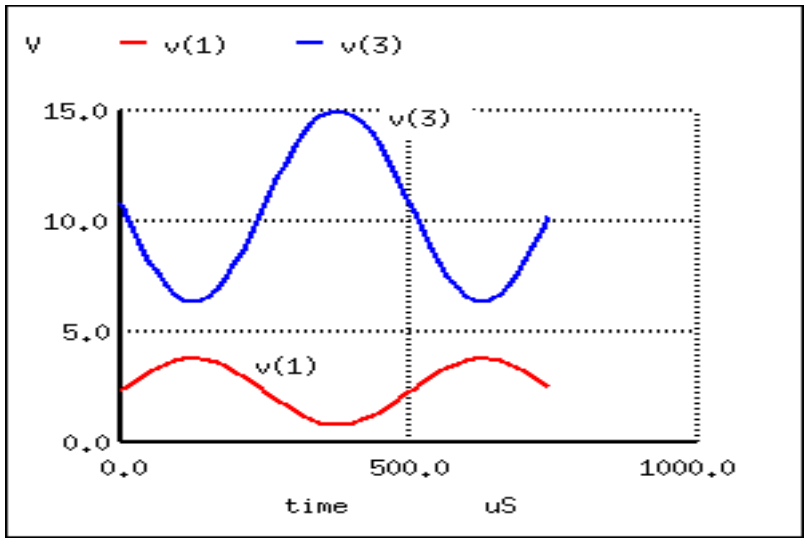
$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log 3$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 9.5424\ dB$$

As you can see, the predicted results for voltage gain are quite close to the simulated results. With perfectly linear transistor behavior, the two sets of figures would exactly match. SPICE does a reasonable job of accounting for the many "quirks" of bipolar transistor function in its analysis, hence the slight mismatch in voltage gain based on SPICE's output.

These voltage gains remain the same regardless of where we measure output voltage in the circuit: across collector and emitter, or across the series load resistor as we did in the last analysis. The amount of output voltage *change* for any given amount of input voltage will remain the same. Consider the two following SPICE analyses as proof of this. The first simulation is time-based, to provide a plot of input and output voltages. You will notice that the two signals are 180^{o} out of phase with each other. The second simulation is an AC analysis, to provide simple, peak voltage readings for input and output:

```
common-emitter amplifier
vinput 1 5 sin (0 1.5 2000 0 0)
vbias 5 0 dc 2.3
r1 1 2 1k
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 30
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.74m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

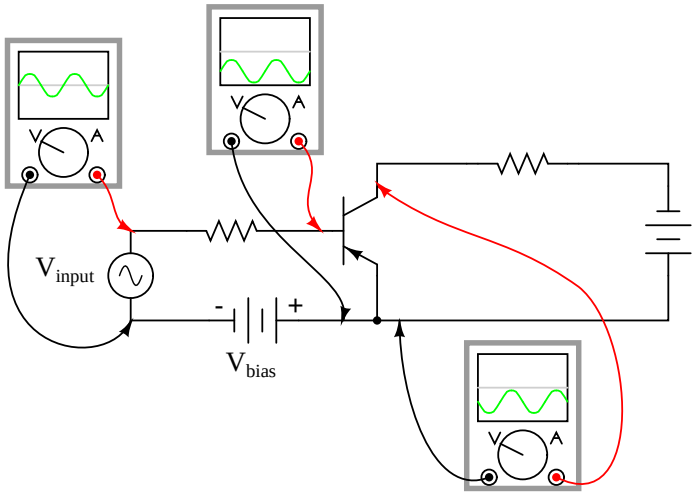



```
common-emitter amplifier
vinput 1 5 ac 1.5
vbias 5 0 dc 2.3
```

```
r1 1 2 1k
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 30
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.ac lin 1 2000 2000
.print ac v(1,0) v(3,0)
.end

freq          v(1)        v(3)
2.000E+03     1.500E+00   4.418E+00
```

We still have a peak output voltage of 4.418 volts with a peak input voltage of 1.5 volts. The only difference from the last set of simulations is the *phase* of the output voltage.

So far, the example circuits shown in this section have all used NPN transistors. PNP transistors are just as valid to use as NPN in *any* amplifier configuration, so long as the proper polarity and current directions are maintained, and the common-emitter amplifier is no exception. The inverting behavior and gain properties of a PNP transistor amplifier are the same as its NPN counterpart, just the polarities are different:

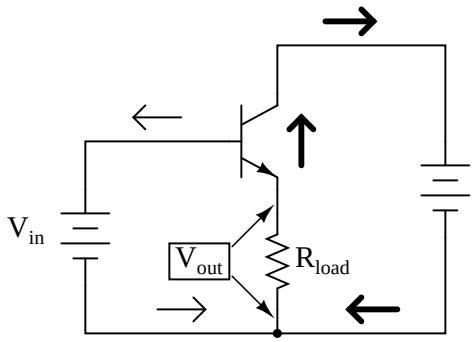


- **REVIEW:**
- *Common-emitter* transistor amplifiers are so-called because the input and output voltage points share the emitter lead of the transistor in common with each other, not considering any power supplies.
- Transistors are essentially DC devices: they cannot directly handle voltages or currents that reverse direction. In order to make them work for amplifying AC signals, the input signal must be offset with a DC voltage to keep the transistor in its active mode throughout the entire cycle of the wave. This is called *biasing*.

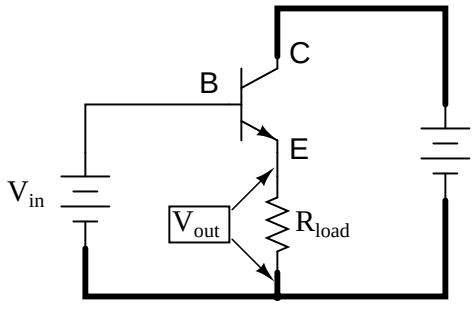
- If the output voltage is measured between emitter and collector on a common-emitter amplifier, it will be 180^o out of phase with the input voltage waveform. For this reason, the common-emitter amplifier is called an *inverting* amplifier circuit.
- The current gain of a common-emitter transistor amplifier with the load connected in series with the collector is equal to β. The voltage gain of a common-emitter transistor amplifier is approximately given here:
- $$A_V = \beta \frac{R_{out}}{R_{in}}$$
- Where "R_{out}" is the resistor connected in series with the collector and "R_{in}" is the resistor connected in series with the base.

4.6 The common-collector amplifier

Our next transistor configuration to study is a bit simpler in terms of gain calculations. Called the *common-collector* configuration, its schematic diagram looks like this:



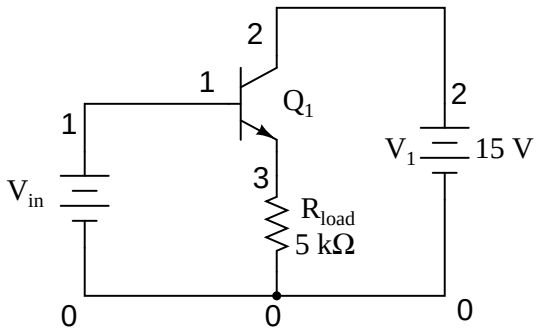
It is called the *common-collector* configuration because (ignoring the power supply battery) both the signal source and the load share the collector lead as a common connection point:



It should be apparent that the load resistor in the common-collector amplifier circuit receives both the base and collector currents, being placed in series with the emitter. Since the emitter lead of a transistor is the one handling the most current (the sum of base and collector

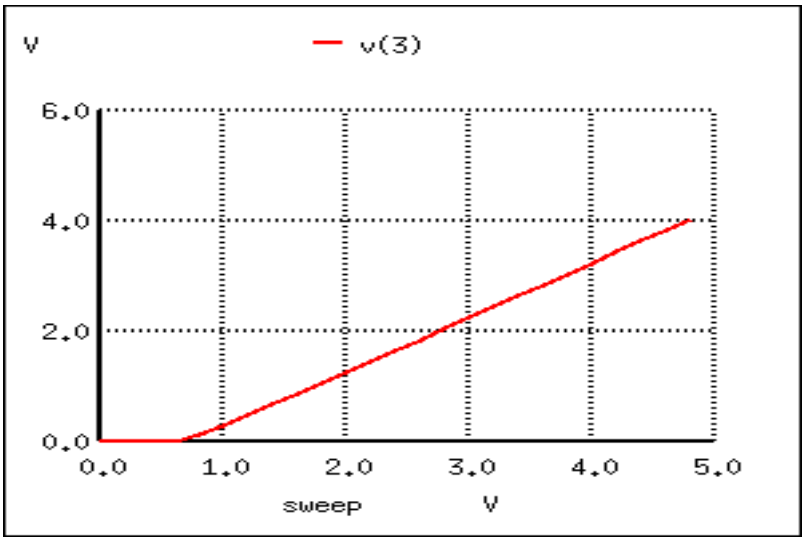
currents, since base and collector currents always mesh together to form the emitter current), it would be reasonable to presume that this amplifier will have a very large current gain (maximum output current for minimum input current). This presumption is indeed correct: the current gain for a common-collector amplifier is quite large, larger than any other transistor amplifier configuration. However, this is not necessarily what sets it apart from other amplifier designs.

Let's proceed immediately to a SPICE analysis of this amplifier circuit, and you will be able to immediately see what is unique about this amplifier:




```
common-collector amplifier
vin 1 0
q1 2 1 3 mod1
v1 2 0 dc 15
rload 3 0 5k
.model mod1 npn
.dc vin 0 5 0.2
.plot dc v(3,0)
.end
```

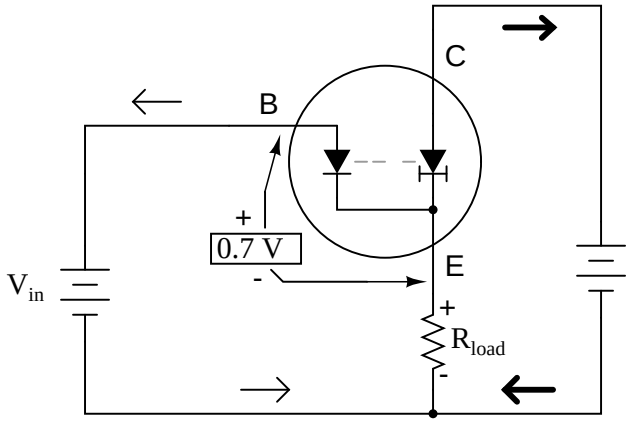
```
type        npn
is        1.00E-16
bf         100.000
nf           1.000
br           1.000
nr           1.000
```



Unlike the common-emitter amplifier from the previous section, the common-collector produces an output voltage in *direct* rather than *inverse* proportion to the rising input voltage. As the input voltage increases, so does the output voltage. More than that, a close examination reveals that the output voltage is nearly *identical* to the input voltage, lagging behind only about 0.77 volts.

This is the unique quality of the common-collector amplifier: an output voltage that is nearly equal to the input voltage. Examined from the perspective of output voltage *change* for a given amount of input voltage *change*, this amplifier has a voltage gain of almost exactly unity (1), or 0 dB. This holds true for transistors of any β value, and for load resistors of any resistance value.

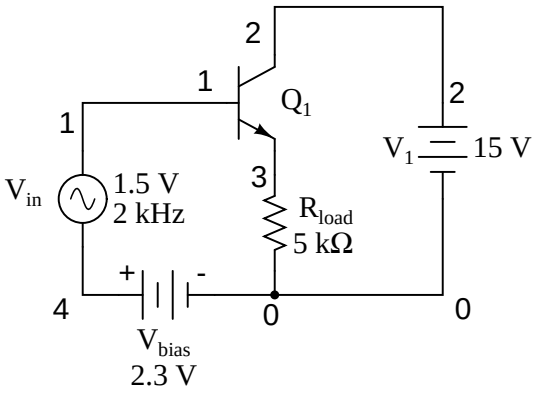
It is simple to understand why the output voltage of a common-collector amplifier is always nearly equal to the input voltage. Referring back to the diode-regulating diode transistor model, we see that the base current must go through the base-emitter PN junction, which is equivalent to a normal rectifying diode. So long as this junction is forward-biased (the transistor conducting current in either its active or saturated modes), it will have a voltage drop of approximately 0.7 volts, assuming silicon construction. This 0.7 volt drop is largely irrespective of the actual magnitude of base current, so we can regard it as being constant:



Given the voltage polarities across the base-emitter PN junction and the load resistor, we see that they *must* add together to equal the input voltage, in accordance with Kirchhoff's Voltage Law. In other words, the load voltage will always be about 0.7 volts less than the input voltage for all conditions where the transistor is conducting. Cutoff occurs at input voltages below 0.7 volts, and saturation at input voltages in excess of battery (supply) voltage plus 0.7 volts.

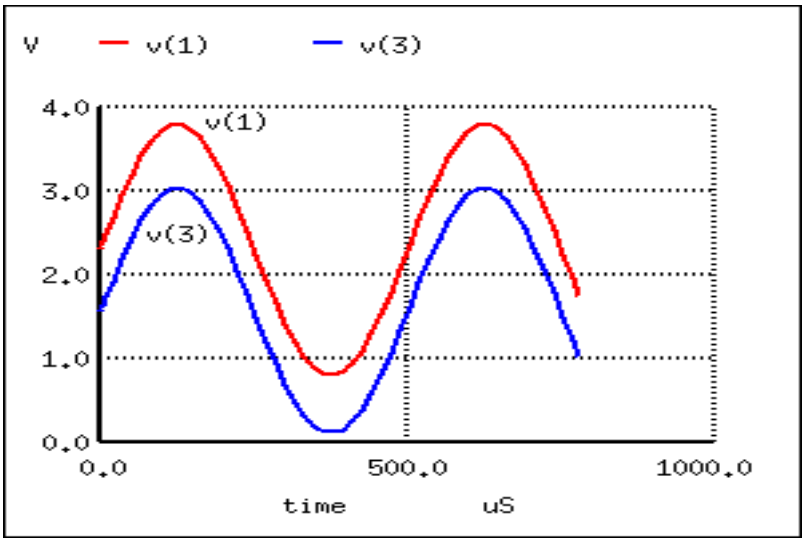
Because of this behavior, the common-collector amplifier circuit is also known as the *voltage-follower* or *emitter-follower* amplifier, in reference to the fact that the input and load voltages follow each other so closely.

Applying the common-collector circuit to the amplification of AC signals requires the same input "biasing" used in the common-emitter circuit: a DC voltage must be added to the AC input signal to keep the transistor in its active mode during the entire cycle. When this is done, the result is a non-inverting amplifier:

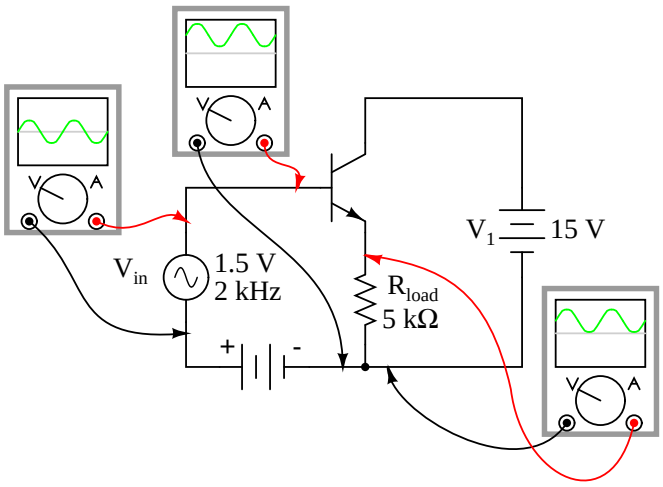



```
common-collector amplifier
vin 1 4 sin(0 1.5 2000 0 0)
vbias 4 0 dc 2.3
q1 2 1 3 mod1
v1 2 0 dc 15
```

```
rload 3 0 5k
.model mod1 npn
.tran .02m .78m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(3,0)
.end
```



Here's another view of the circuit, this time with oscilloscopes connected to several points of interest:



Since this amplifier configuration doesn't provide any voltage gain (in fact, in practice it actually has a voltage gain of slightly *less* than 1), its only amplifying factor is current. The common-emitter amplifier configuration examined in the previous section had a current gain

equal to the β of the transistor, being that the input current went through the base and the output (load) current went through the collector, and β by definition is the ratio between the collector and base currents. In the common-collector configuration, though, the load is situated in series with the emitter, and thus its current is equal to the emitter current. With the emitter carrying collector current *and* base current, the load in this type of amplifier has all the current of the collector running through it *plus* the input current of the base. This yields a current gain of β plus 1:

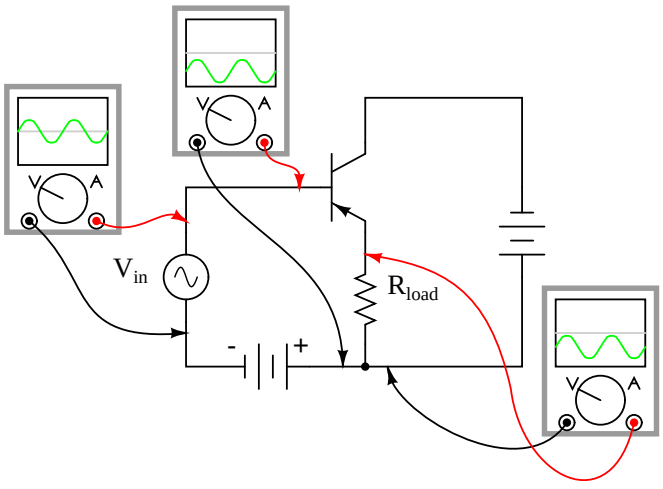
$$A_I = \frac{I_{emitter}}{I_{base}}$$

$$A_I = \frac{I_{collector} + I_{base}}{I_{base}}$$

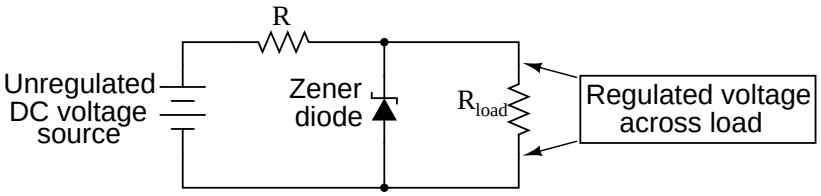
$$A_I = \frac{I_{collector}}{I_{base}} + 1$$

$$A_I = \beta + 1$$

Once again, PNP transistors are just as valid to use in the common-collector configuration as NPN transistors. The gain calculations are all the same, as is the non-inverting behavior of the amplifier. The only difference is in voltage polarities and current directions:

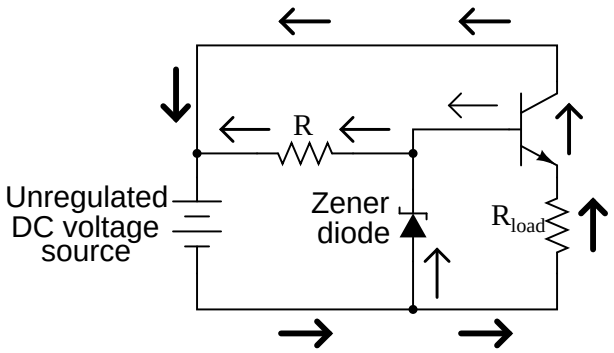


A popular application of the common-collector amplifier is for regulated DC power supplies, where an unregulated (varying) source of DC voltage is clipped at a specified level to supply regulated (steady) voltage to a load. Of course, zener diodes already provide this function of voltage regulation:



However, when used in this direct fashion, the amount of current that may be supplied to the load is usually quite limited. In essence, this circuit regulates voltage across the load by keeping current through the series resistor at a high enough level to drop all the excess power source voltage across it, the zener diode drawing more or less current as necessary to keep the voltage across itself steady. For high-current loads, an plain zener diode voltage regulator would have to be capable of shunting a lot of current through the diode in order to be effective at regulating load voltage in the event of large load resistance or voltage source changes.

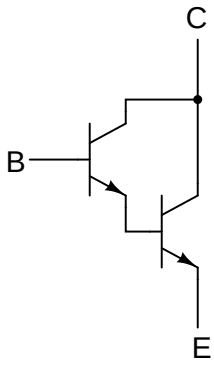
One popular way to increase the current-handling ability of a regulator circuit like this is to use a common-collector transistor to amplify current to the load, so that the zener diode circuit only has to handle the amount of current necessary to drive the base of the transistor:



There's really only one caveat to this approach: the load voltage will be approximately 0.7 volts less than the zener diode voltage, due to the transistor's 0.7 volt base-emitter drop. However, since this 0.7 volt difference is fairly constant over a wide range of load currents, a zener diode with a 0.7 volt higher rating can be chosen for the application.

Sometimes the high current gain of a single-transistor, common-collector configuration isn't enough for a particular application. If this is the case, multiple transistors may be staged together in a popular configuration known as a *Darlington pair*, just an extension of the common-collector concept:

An NPN "Darlington pair"



Darlington pairs essentially place one transistor as the common-collector load for another transistor, thus multiplying their individual current gains. Base current through the upper-left transistor is amplified through that transistor's emitter, which is directly connected to the base of the lower-right transistor, where the current is again amplified. The overall current gain is as follows:

Darlington pair current gain

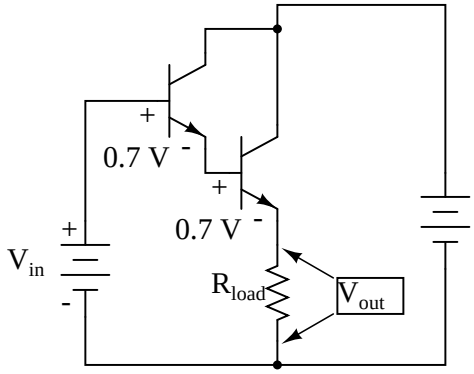
$$A_I = (\beta_1 + 1)(\beta_2 + 1)$$

Where,

β_1 = Beta of first transistor

β_2 = Beta of second transistor

Voltage gain is still nearly equal to 1 if the entire assembly is connected to a load in common-collector fashion, although the load voltage will be a full 1.4 volts less than the input voltage:



$$V_{out} = V_{in} - 1.4$$

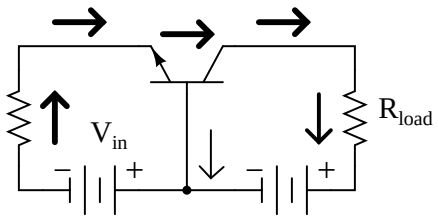
Darlington pairs may be purchased as discrete units (two transistors in the same package),

or may be built up from a pair of individual transistors. Of course, if even more current gain is desired than what may be obtained with a pair, Darlington triplet or quadruplet assemblies may be constructed.

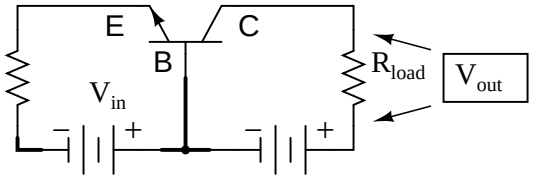
- **REVIEW:**
- *Common-collector* transistor amplifiers are so-called because the input and output voltage points share the collector lead of the transistor in common with each other, not considering any power supplies.
- The output voltage on a common-collector amplifier will be in phase with the input voltage, making the common-collector a *non-inverting* amplifier circuit.
- The current gain of a common-collector amplifier is equal to β plus 1. The voltage gain is approximately equal to 1 (in practice, just a little bit less).
- A *Darlington pair* is a pair of transistors "piggybacked" on one another so that the emitter of one feeds current to the base of the other in common-collector form. The result is an overall current gain equal to the product (multiplication) of their individual common-collector current gains (β plus 1).

4.7 The common-base amplifier

The final transistor amplifier configuration we need to study is the *common-base*. This configuration is more complex than the other two, and is less common due to its strange operating characteristics.



It is called the *common-base* configuration because (DC power source aside), the signal source and the load share the base of the transistor as a common connection point:

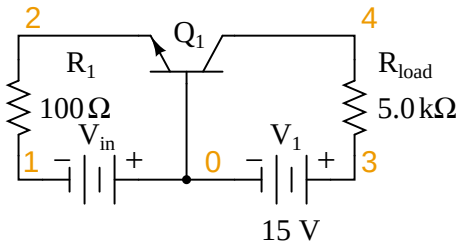


Perhaps the most striking characteristic of this configuration is that the input signal source must carry the full emitter current of the transistor, as indicated by the heavy arrows in the first illustration. As we know, the emitter current is greater than any other current in the

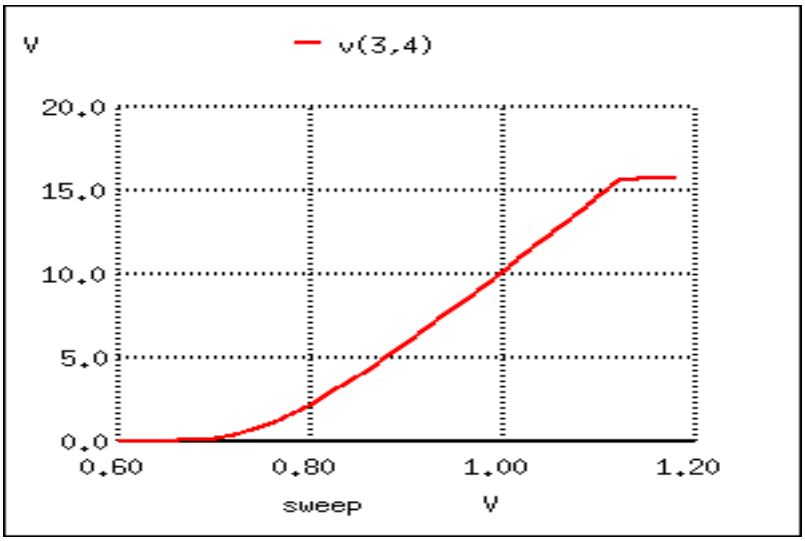
transistor, being the sum of base and collector currents. In the last two amplifier configurations, the signal source was connected to the base lead of the transistor, thus handling the *least* current possible.

Because the input current exceeds all other currents in the circuit, including the output current, the current gain of this amplifier is actually *less than 1* (notice how R_{load} is connected to the collector, thus carrying slightly less current than the signal source). In other words, it *attenuates* current rather than *amplifying* it. With common-emitter and common-collector amplifier configurations, the transistor parameter most closely associated with gain was β. In the common-base circuit, we follow another basic transistor parameter: the ratio between collector current and emitter current, which is a fraction always less than 1. This fractional value for any transistor is called the *alpha* ratio, or α ratio.

Since it obviously can't boost signal current, it only seems reasonable to expect it to boost signal voltage. A SPICE simulation will vindicate that assumption:

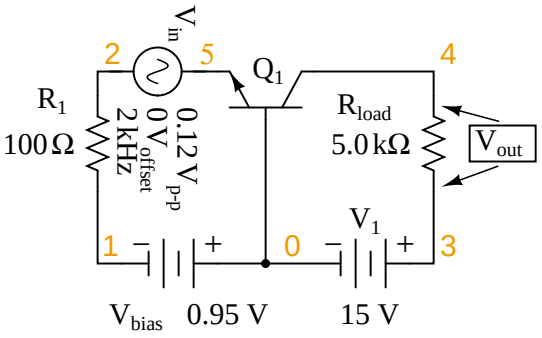



```
common-base amplifier
vin 0 1
r1 1 2 100
q1 4 0 2 mod1
v1 3 0 dc 15
rload 3 4 5k
.model mod1 npn
.dc vin 0.6 1.2 .02
.plot dc v(3,4)
.end
```



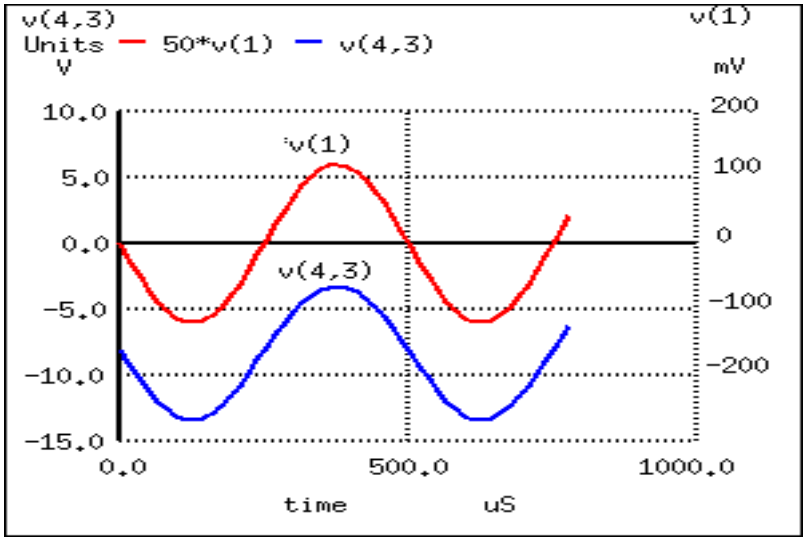
Notice how in this simulation the output voltage goes from practically nothing (cutoff) to 15.75 volts (saturation) with the input voltage being swept over a range of 0.6 volts to 1.2 volts. In fact, the output voltage plot doesn't show a rise until about 0.7 volts at the input, and cuts off (flattens) at about 1.12 volts input. This represents a rather large voltage gain with an output voltage span of 15.75 volts and an input voltage span of only 0.42 volts: a gain ratio of 37.5, or 31.48 dB. Notice also how the output voltage (measured across R_{load}) actually exceeds the power supply (15 volts) at saturation, due to the series-aiding effect of the the input voltage source.

A second set of SPICE analyses with an AC signal source (and DC bias voltage) tells the same story: a high voltage gain.




```
common-base amplifier
vin 5 2 sin (0 0.12 2000 0 0)
vbias 0 1  dc 0.95
r1 2 1 100
q1 4 0 5 mod1
v1 3 0 dc 15
```

```
rload 3 4 5k
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.78m
.plot tran v(5,2) v(4,3)
.end
```



As you can see, the input and output waveforms are in phase with each other. This tells us that the common-base amplifier is non-inverting.

```
common-base amplifier
vin 5 2 sin (0 0.12 2000 0 0)
vbias 0 1  dc 0.95
r1 2 1 100
q1 4 0 5 mod1
v1 3 0 dc 15
rload 3 4 5k
.model mod1 npn
.ac lin 1 2000 2000
.print ac v(5,2) v(3,4)
.end

freq          v(1)        v(3,4)
2.000E+03     1.200E-01   5.129E+00
```

Voltage figures from the second analysis (AC mode) show a voltage gain of 42.742 (5.129 V / 0.12 V), or 32.617 dB:

$$A_V = \frac{V_{out}}{V_{in}}$$

$$A_V = \frac{5.129 \text{ V}}{0.12 \text{ V}}$$

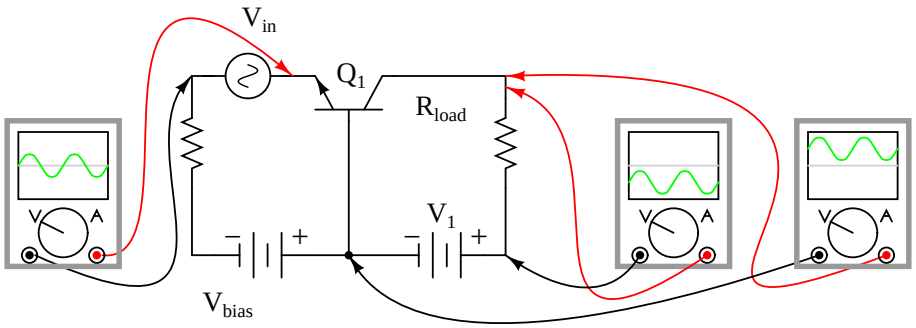
$$A_V = 42.742$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log A_{V(ratio)}$$

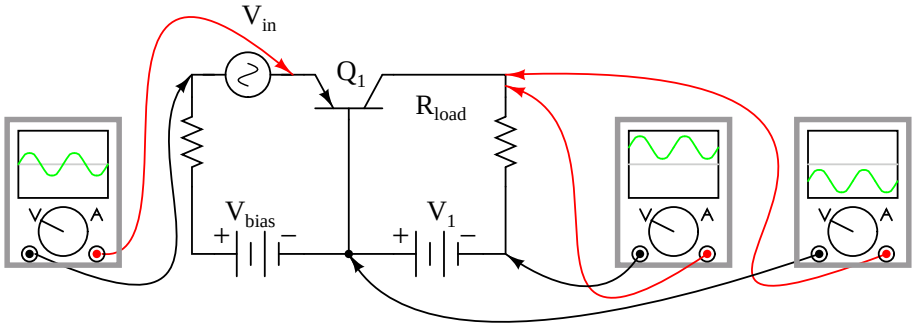
$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log 42.742$$

$$A_{V(dB)} = 32.617 \text{ dB}$$

Here's another view of the circuit, showing the phase relations and DC offsets of various signals in the circuit just simulated:



. . . and for a PNP transistor:



Predicting voltage gain for the common-base amplifier configuration is quite difficult, and involves approximations of transistor behavior that are difficult to measure directly. Unlike the other amplifier configurations, where voltage gain was either set by the ratio of two resistors (common-emitter), or fixed at an unchangeable value (common-collector), the voltage gain of the common-base amplifier depends largely on the amount of DC bias on the input signal. As it turns out, the internal transistor resistance between emitter and base plays a major role in

determining voltage gain, and this resistance changes with different levels of current through the emitter.

While this phenomenon is difficult to explain, it is rather easy to demonstrate through the use of computer simulation. What I'm going to do here is run several SPICE simulations on a common-base amplifier circuit, changing the DC bias voltage slightly while keeping the AC signal amplitude and all other circuit parameters constant. As the voltage gain changes from one simulation to another, different output voltage amplitudes will be noticed as a result.

Although these analyses will all be conducted in the AC mode, they were first "proofed" in the transient analysis mode (voltage plotted over time) to ensure that the entire wave was being faithfully reproduced and not "clipped" due to improper biasing. No meaningful calculations of gain can be based on waveforms that are distorted:

```
common-base amplifier
vin 5 2 sin (0 0.12 2000 0 0)
vbias 0 1  dc 0.95
r1 2 1 100
q1 4 0 5 mod1
v1 3 0 dc 15
rload 3 4 5k
.model mod1 npn
.ac lin 1 2000 2000
.print ac v(5,2) v(3,4)
.end

freq          v(5,2)        v(3,4)
2.000E+03     8.000E-02   3.005E+00

common-base amplifier
vin 5 2 sin (0 0.12 2000 0 0)
vbias 0 1  dc 0.95
r1 2 1 100
q1 4 0 5 mod1
v1 3 0 dc 15
rload 3 4 5k
.model mod1 npn
.ac lin 1 2000 2000
.print ac v(5,2) v(3,4)
.end

freq          v(5,2)        v(3,4)
2.000E+03     8.000E-02   3.264E+00

common-base amplifier
vin 5 2 sin (0 0.12 2000 0 0)
vbias 0 1  dc 0.95
r1 2 1 100
```

```
q1 4 0 5 mod1
v1 3 0 dc 15
rload 3 4 5k
.model mod1 npn
.ac lin 1 2000 2000
.print ac v(5,2) v(3,4)
.end

freq          v(5,2)        v(3,4)
2.000E+03     8.000E-02   3.419E+00
```

A trend should be evident here: with increases in DC bias voltage, voltage gain increases as well. We can see that the voltage gain is increasing because each subsequent simulation produces greater output voltage for the exact same input signal voltage (0.08 volts). As you can see, the changes are quite large, and they are caused by miniscule variations in bias voltage!

The combination of very low current gain (always less than 1) and somewhat unpredictable voltage gain conspire against the common-base design, relegating it to few practical applications.

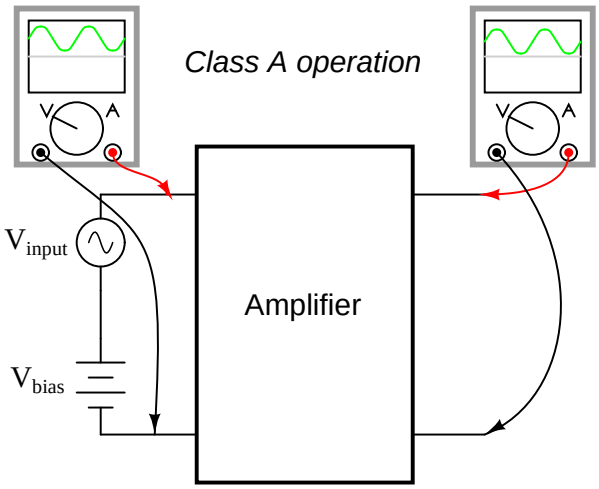
- **REVIEW:**
- *Common-base* transistor amplifiers are so-called because the input and output voltage points share the base lead of the transistor in common with each other, not considering any power supplies.
- The current gain of a common-base amplifier is always less than 1. The voltage gain is a function of input and output resistances, and also the internal resistance of the emitter-base junction, which is subject to change with variations in DC bias voltage. Suffice to say that the voltage gain of a common-base amplifier can be very high.
- The ratio of a transistor's collector current to emitter current is called α. The α value for any transistor is always less than unity, or in other words, less than 1.

4.8 Biasing techniques

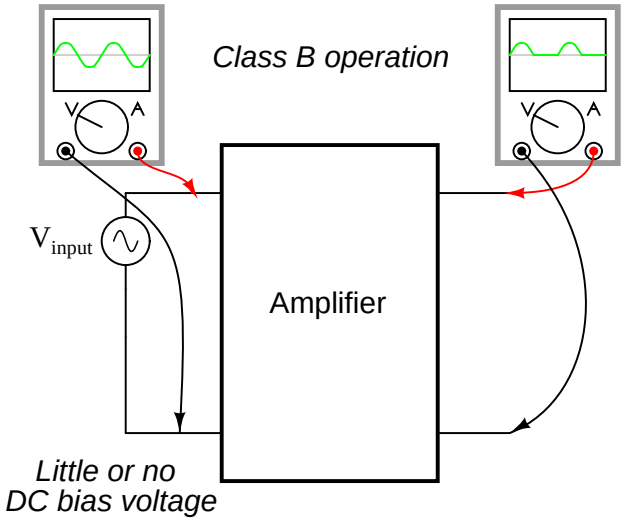
In the common-emitter section of this chapter, we saw a SPICE analysis where the output waveform resembled a half-wave rectified shape: only half of the input waveform was reproduced, with the other half being completely cut off. Since our purpose at that time was to reproduce the entire waveshape, this constituted a problem. The solution to this problem was to add a small bias voltage to the amplifier input so that the transistor stayed in active mode throughout the entire wave cycle. This addition was called a *bias voltage*.

There are applications, though, where a half-wave output is not problematic. In fact, some applications may *necessitate* this very type of amplification. Because it is possible to operate an amplifier in modes other than full-wave reproduction, and because there are specific applications requiring different ranges of reproduction, it is useful to describe the degree to which an amplifier reproduces the input waveform by designating it according to *class*. Amplifier class operation is categorized by means of alphabetical letters: A, B, C, and AB.

Class A operation is where the entire input waveform is faithfully reproduced. Although I didn't introduce this concept back in the common-emitter section, this is what we were hoping to attain in our simulations. Class A operation can only be obtained when the transistor spends its entire time in the active mode, never reaching either cutoff or saturation. To achieve this, sufficient DC bias voltage is usually set at the level necessary to drive the transistor exactly halfway between cutoff and saturation. This way, the AC input signal will be perfectly "centered" between the amplifier's high and low signal limit levels.

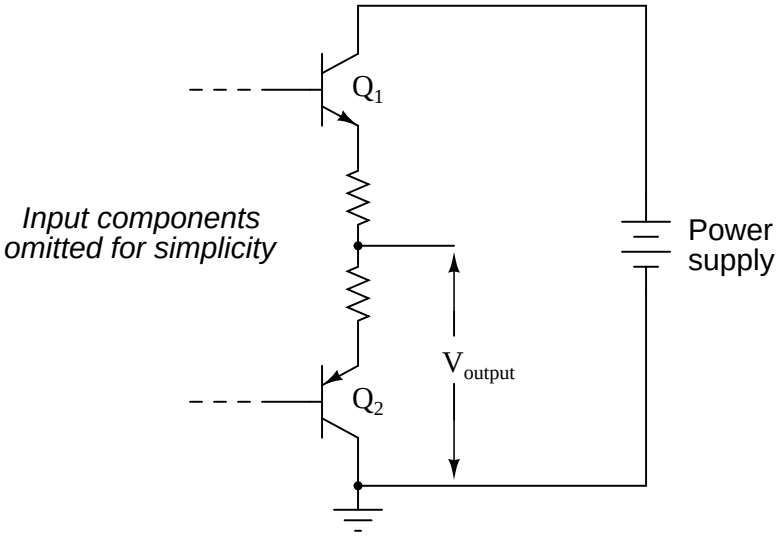


Class B operation is what we had the first time an AC signal was applied to the common-emitter amplifier with no DC bias voltage. The transistor spent half its time in active mode and the other half in cutoff with the input voltage too low (or even of the wrong polarity!) to forward-bias its base-emitter junction.



By itself, an amplifier operating in class B mode is not very useful. In most circumstances,

the severe distortion introduced into the waveshape by eliminating half of it would be unacceptable. However, class B operation is a useful mode of biasing if two amplifiers are operated as a *push-pull* pair, each amplifier handling only half of the waveform at a time:

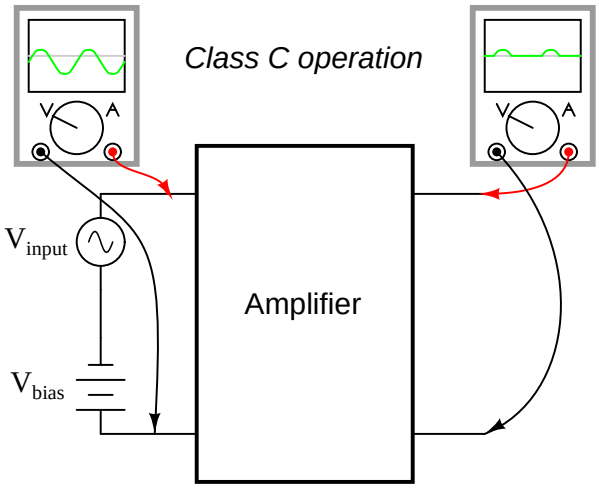


Transistor Q_1 "pushes" (drives the output voltage in a positive direction with respect to ground), while transistor Q_2 "pulls" the output voltage (in a negative direction, toward 0 volts with respect to ground). Individually, each of these transistors is operating in class B mode, active only for one-half of the input waveform cycle. Together, however, they function as a team to produce an output waveform identical in shape to the input waveform.

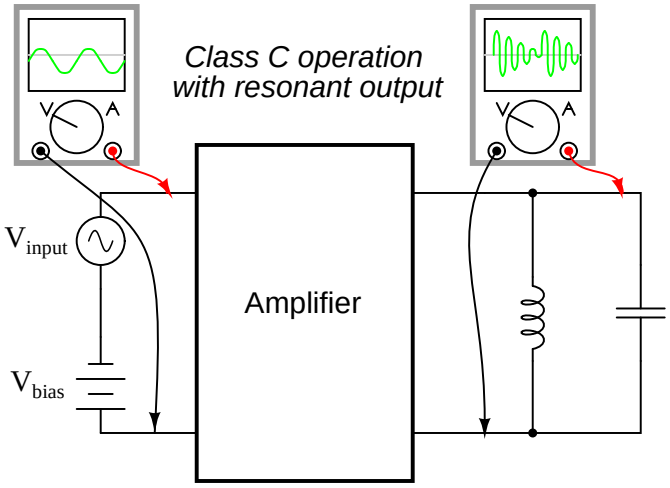
A decided advantage of the class B (push-pull) amplifier design over the class A design is greater output power capability. With a class A design, the transistor dissipates a lot of energy in the form of heat because it never stops conducting current. At all points in the wave cycle it is in the active (conducting) mode, conducting substantial current and dropping substantial voltage. This means there is substantial power dissipated by the transistor throughout the cycle. In a class B design, each transistor spends half the time in cutoff mode, where it dissipates zero power (zero current = zero power dissipation). This gives each transistor a time to "rest" and cool while the other transistor carries the burden of the load. Class A amplifiers are simpler in design, but tend to be limited to low-power signal applications for the simple reason of transistor heat dissipation.

There is another class of amplifier operation known as *class AB*, which is somewhere between class A and class B: the transistor spends more than 50% but less than 100% of the time conducting current.

If the input signal bias for an amplifier is slightly negative (opposite of the bias polarity for class A operation), the output waveform will be further "clipped" than it was with class B biasing, resulting in an operation where the transistor spends the majority of the time in cutoff mode:



At first, this scheme may seem utterly pointless. After all, how useful could an amplifier be if it clips the waveform as badly as this? If the output is used directly with no conditioning of any kind, it would indeed be of questionable utility. However, with the application of a tank circuit (parallel resonant inductor-capacitor combination) to the output, the occasional output surge produced by the amplifier can set in motion a higher-frequency oscillation maintained by the tank circuit. This may be likened to a machine where a heavy flywheel is given an occasional ”kick” to keep it spinning:

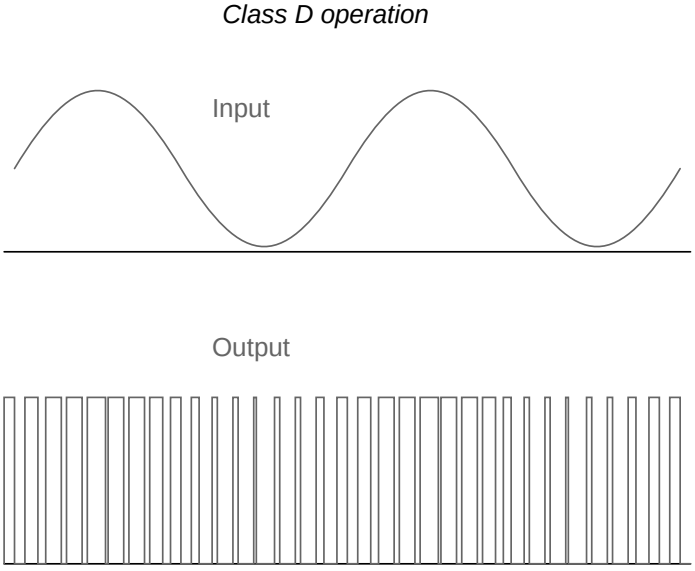


Called *class C* operation, this scheme also enjoys high power efficiency due to the fact that the transistor(s) spend the vast majority of time in the cutoff mode, where they dissipate zero power. The rate of output waveform decay (decreasing oscillation amplitude between ”kicks” from the amplifier) is exaggerated here for the benefit of illustration. Because of the tuned tank circuit on the output, this type of circuit is usable only for amplifying signals of definite, fixed frequency.

Another type of amplifier operation, significantly different from Class A, B, AB, or C, is

called *Class D*. It is not obtained by applying a specific measure of bias voltage as are the other classes of operation, but requires a radical re-design of the amplifier circuit itself. It's a little too early in this chapter to investigate exactly how a class D amplifier is built, but not too early to discuss its basic principle of operation.

A class D amplifier reproduces the profile of the input voltage waveform by generating a rapidly-pulsing squarewave output. The duty cycle of this output waveform (time "on" versus total cycle time) varies with the instantaneous amplitude of the input signal. The following plots demonstrate this principle:

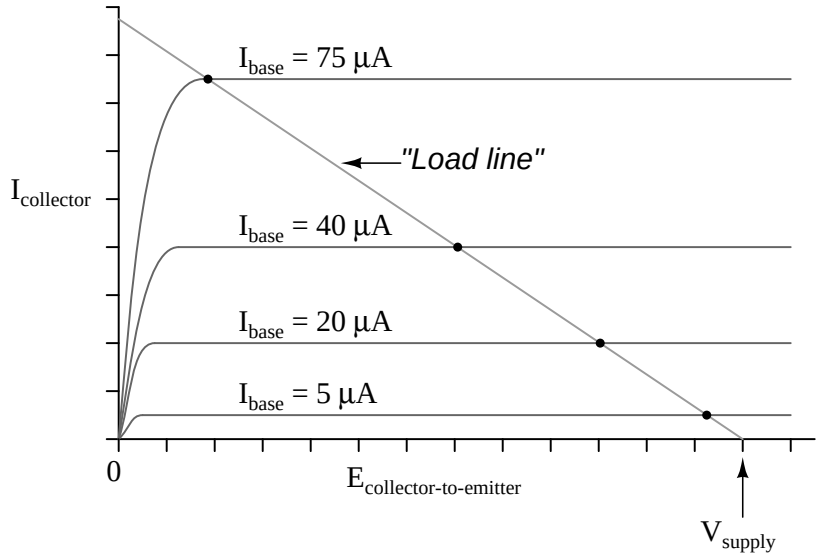


The greater the instantaneous voltage of the input signal, the greater the duty cycle of the output squarewave pulse. If there can be any goal stated of the class D design, it is to avoid active-mode transistor operation. Since the output transistor of a class D amplifier is never in the active mode, only cutoff or saturated, there will be little heat energy dissipated by it. This results in very high power efficiency for the amplifier. Of course, the disadvantage of this strategy is the overwhelming presence of harmonics on the output. Fortunately, since these harmonic frequencies are typically much greater than the frequency of the input signal, they can be filtered out by a low-pass filter with relative ease, resulting in an output more closely resembling the original input signal waveform. Class D technology is typically seen where extremely high power levels and relatively low frequencies are encountered, such as in industrial inverters (devices converting DC into AC power to run motors and other large devices) and high-performance audio amplifiers.

A term you will likely come across in your studies of electronics is something called *quiescent*, which is a modifier designating the normal, or zero input signal, condition of a circuit. Quiescent current, for example, is the amount of current in a circuit with zero input signal voltage applied. Bias voltage in a transistor circuit forces the transistor to operate at a different level of collector current with zero input signal voltage than it would without that bias voltage. Therefore, the amount of bias in an amplifier circuit determines its quiescent values.

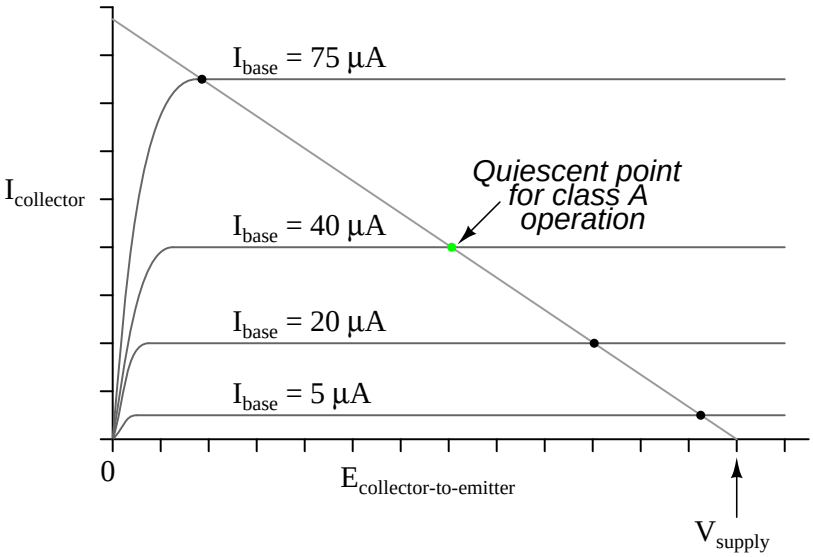
In a class A amplifier, the quiescent current should be exactly half of its saturation value

(halfway between saturation and cutoff, cutoff by definition being zero). Class B and class C amplifiers have quiescent current values of zero, since they are supposed to be cutoff with no signal applied. Class AB amplifiers have very low quiescent current values, just above cutoff. To illustrate this graphically, a "load line" is sometimes plotted over a transistor's characteristic curves to illustrate its range of operation while connected to a load resistance of specific value:

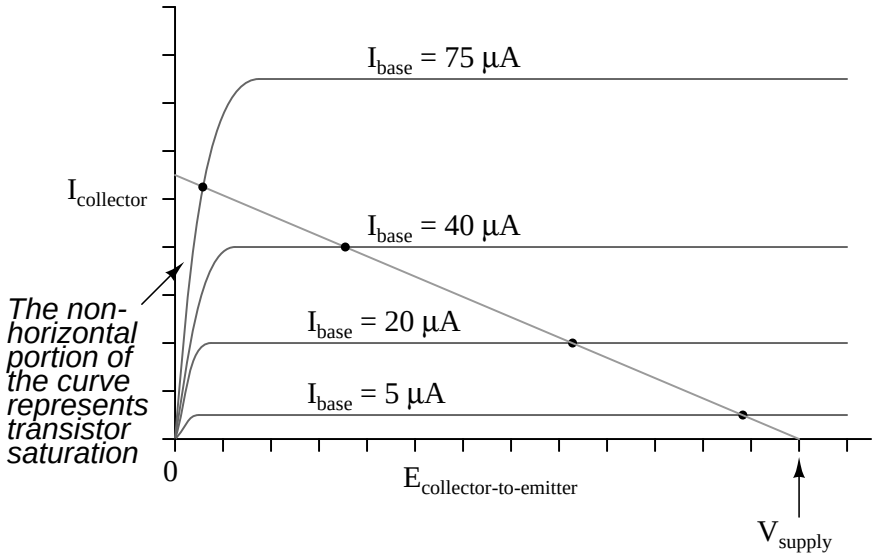


A load line is a plot of collector-to-emitter voltage over a range of base currents. At the lower-right corner of the load line, voltage is at maximum and current is at zero, representing a condition of cutoff. At the upper-left corner of the line, voltage is at zero while current is at a maximum, representing a condition of saturation. Dots marking where the load line intersects the various transistor curves represent realistic operating conditions for those base currents given.

Quiescent operating conditions may be shown on this type of graph in the form of a single dot along the load line. For a class A amplifier, the quiescent point will be in the middle of the load line, like this:



In this illustration, the quiescent point happens to fall on the curve representing a base current of 40 μA. If we were to change the load resistance in this circuit to a greater value, it would affect the slope of the load line, since a greater load resistance would limit the maximum collector current at saturation, but would not change the collector-emitter voltage at cutoff. Graphically, the result is a load line with a different upper-left point and the same lower-right point:

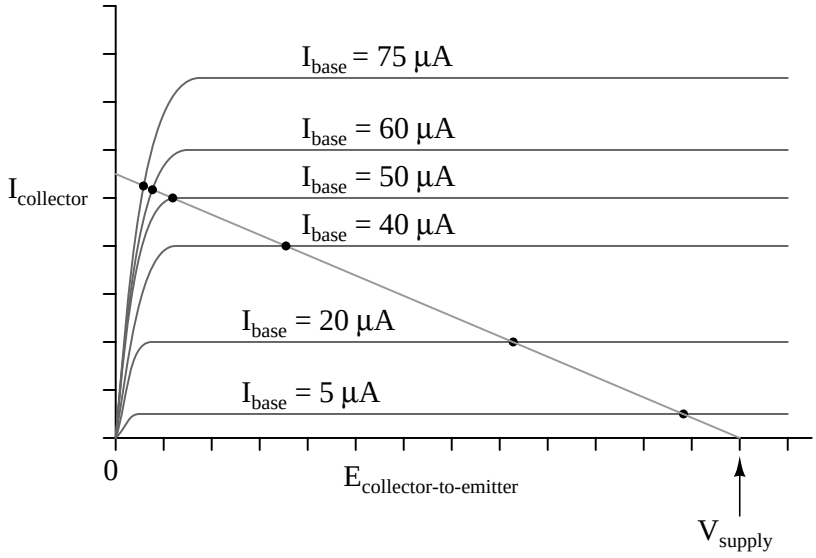


Note how the new load line doesn't intercept the 75 μA curve along its flat portion as before. This is very important to realize because the non-horizontal portion of a characteristic curve represents a condition of saturation. Having the load line intercept the 75 μA curve outside of the curve's horizontal range means that the amplifier will be saturated at that amount of

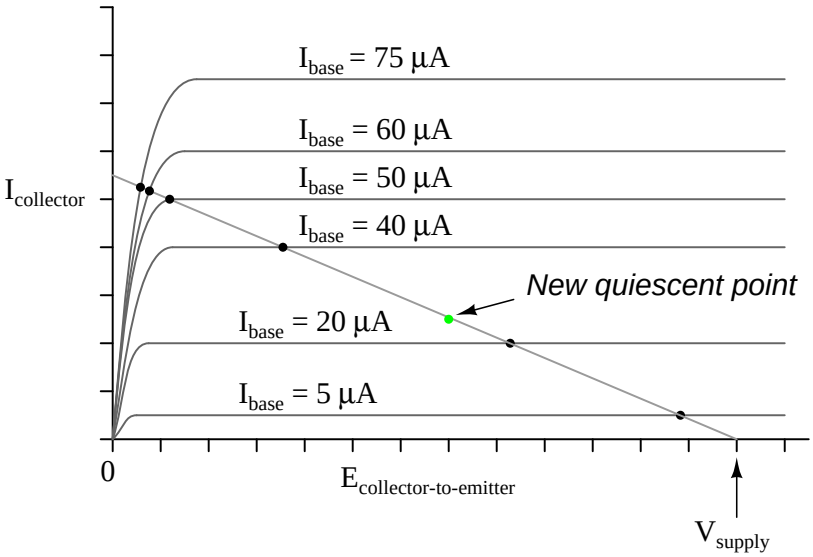
base current. Increasing the load resistor value is what caused the load line to intercept the 75 μA curve at this new point, and it indicates that saturation will occur at a lesser value of base current than before.

With the old, lower-value load resistor in the circuit, a base current of 75 μA would yield a proportional collector current (base current multiplied by β). In the first load line graph, a base current of 75 μA gave a collector current almost twice what was obtained at 40 μA, as the β ratio would predict. Now, however, there is only a marginal increase in collector current between base current values of 75 μA and 40 μA, because the transistor begins to lose sufficient collector-emitter voltage to continue to regulate collector current.

In order to maintain linear (no-distortion) operation, transistor amplifiers shouldn't be operated at points where the transistor will saturate; that is, in any case where the load line will not potentially fall on the horizontal portion of a collector current curve. In this case, we'd have to add a few more curves to the graph before we could tell just how far we could "push" this transistor with increased base currents before it saturates.

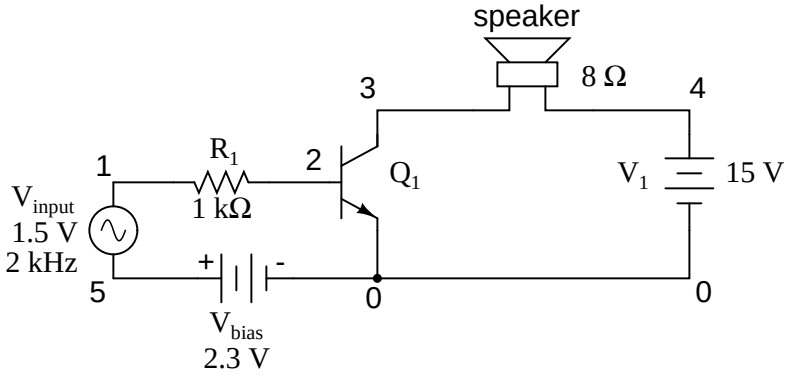


It appears in this graph that the highest-current point on the load line falling on the straight portion of a curve is the point on the 50 μA curve. This new point should be considered the maximum allowable input signal level for class A operation. Also for class A operation, the bias should be set so that the quiescent point is halfway between this new maximum point and cutoff:

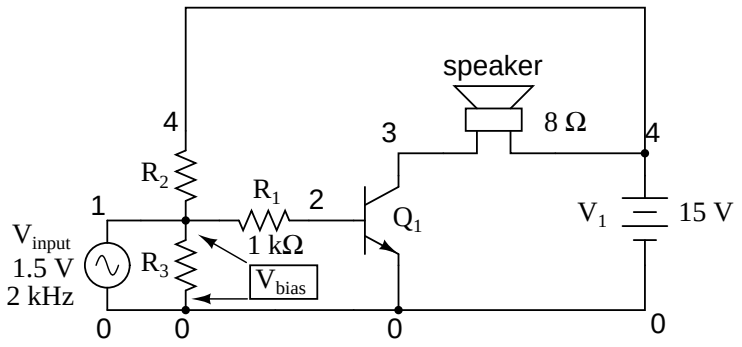


Now that we know a little more about the consequences of different DC bias voltage levels, it is time to investigate practical biasing techniques. So far, I've shown a small DC voltage source (battery) connected in series with the AC input signal to bias the amplifier for whatever desired class of operation. In real life, the connection of a precisely-calibrated battery to the input of an amplifier is simply not practical. Even if it were possible to customize a battery to produce just the right amount of voltage for any given bias requirement, that battery would not remain at its manufactured voltage indefinitely. Once it started to discharge and its output voltage drooped, the amplifier would begin to drift in the direction of class B operation.

Take this circuit, illustrated in the common-emitter section for a SPICE simulation, for instance:

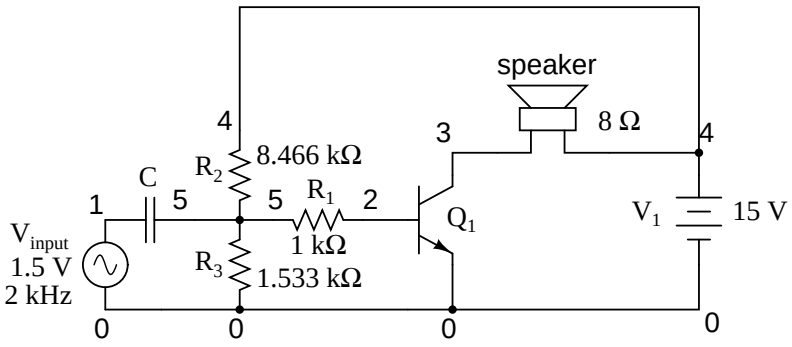


That 2.3 volt "V_{bias}" battery would not be practical to include in a real amplifier circuit. A far more practical method of obtaining bias voltage for this amplifier would be to develop the necessary 2.3 volts using a voltage divider network connected across the 15 volt battery. After all, the 15 volt battery is already there by necessity, and voltage divider circuits are very easy to design and build. Let's see how this might look:



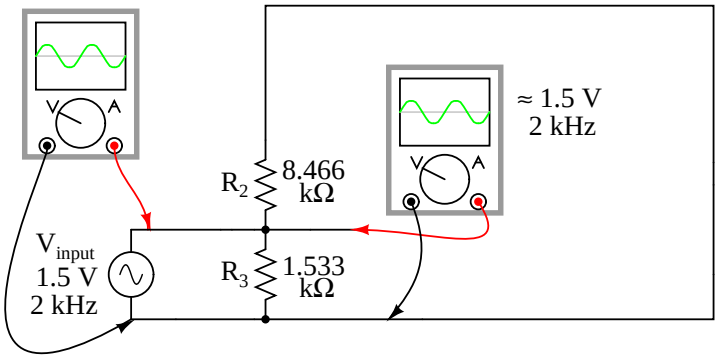
If we choose a pair of resistor values for R_2 and R_3 that will produce 2.3 volts across R_3 from a total of 15 volts (such as 8466 Ω for R_2 and 1533 Ω for R_3), we should have our desired value of 2.3 volts between base and emitter for biasing with no signal input. The only problem is, this circuit configuration places the AC input signal source directly in parallel with R_3 of our voltage divider. This is not acceptable, as the AC source will tend to overpower any DC voltage dropped across R_3. Parallel components *must* have the same voltage, so if an AC voltage source is directly connected across one resistor of a DC voltage divider, the AC source will "win" and there will be no DC bias voltage added to the signal.

One way to make this scheme work, although it may not be obvious *why* it will work, is to place a *coupling capacitor* between the AC voltage source and the voltage divider like this:



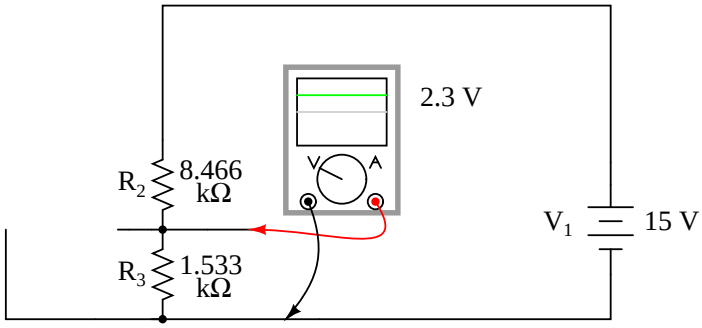
The capacitor forms a high-pass filter between the AC source and the DC voltage divider, passing almost all of the AC signal voltage on to the transistor while blocking all DC voltage from being shorted through the AC signal source. This makes much more sense if you understand the superposition theorem and how it works. According to superposition, any linear, bilateral circuit can be analyzed in a piecemeal fashion by only considering one power source at a time, then algebraically adding the effects of all power sources to find the final result. If we were to separate the capacitor and $R_2 - - R_3$ voltage divider circuit from the rest of the amplifier, it might be easier to understand how this superposition of AC and DC would work.

With only the AC signal source in effect, and a capacitor with an arbitrarily low impedance at signal frequency, almost all the AC voltage appears across R_3:



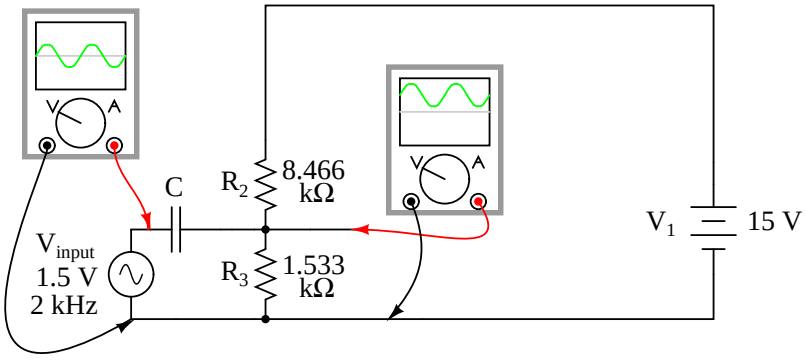
Due to the capacitor's very low impedance at signal frequency, it behaves much like a straight piece of wire and thus can be omitted for the purpose of this step in superposition analysis.

With only the DC source in effect, the capacitor appears to be an open circuit, and thus neither it nor the shorted AC signal source will have any effect on the operation of the $R_2 - - R_3$ voltage divider:



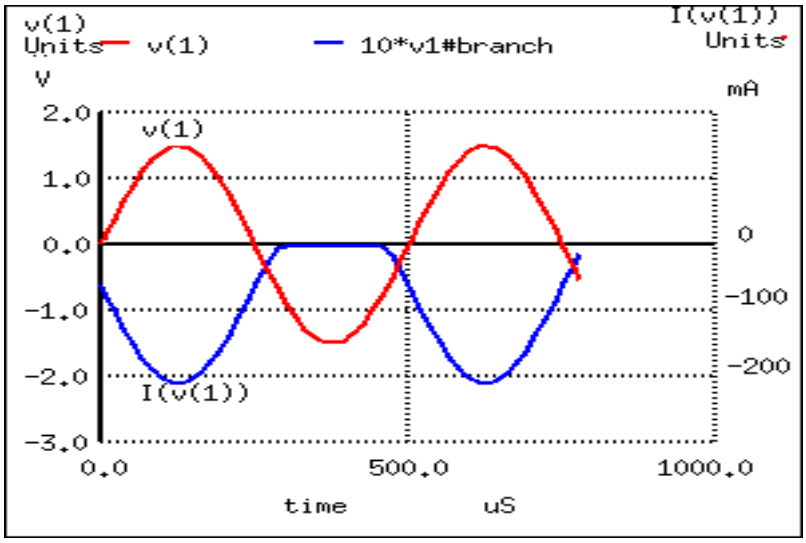
The capacitor appears to be an open circuit as far as DC analysis is concerned

Combining these two separate analyses, we get a superposition of (almost) 1.5 volts AC and 2.3 volts DC, ready to be connected to the base of the transistor:



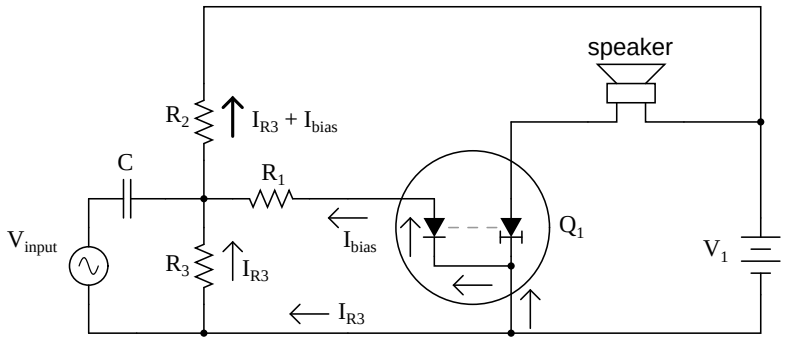
Enough talk – its about time for a SPICE simulation of the whole amplifier circuit. I'll use a capacitor value of 100 μF to obtain an arbitrarily low (0.796 Ω) impedance at 2000 Hz:

```
voltage divider biasing
vinput 1 0 sin (0 1.5 2000 0 0)
c1 1 5 100u
r1 5 2 1k
r2 4 5 8466
r3 5 0 1533
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 8
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.78m
.plot tran v(1,0) i(v1)
.end
```



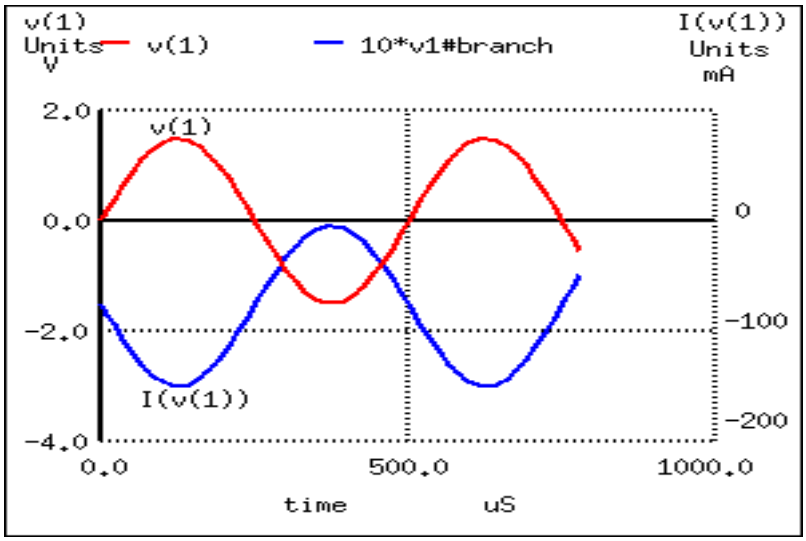
Notice that there is substantial distortion in the output waveform here: the sine wave is being clipped during most of the input signal's negative half-cycle. This tells us the transistor is entering into cutoff mode when it shouldn't (I'm assuming a goal of class A operation as before). Why is this? This new biasing technique should give us exactly the same amount of DC bias voltage as before, right?

With the capacitor and R_2--R_3 resistor network unloaded, it will provide exactly 2.3 volts worth of DC bias. However, once we connect this network to the transistor, it is no longer unloaded. Current drawn through the base of the transistor will load the voltage divider, thus reducing the DC bias voltage available for the transistor. Using the diode-regulating diode transistor model to illustrate, the bias problem becomes evident:



A voltage divider's output depends not only on the size of its constituent resistors, but also on how much current is being divided away from it through a load. In this case, the base-emitter PN junction of the transistor is a load that decreases the DC voltage dropped across R_3, due to the fact that the bias current joins with R_3's current to go through R_2, upsetting the divider ratio formerly set by the resistance values of R_2 and R_3. In order to obtain a DC bias voltage of 2.3 volts, the values of R_2 and/or R_3 must be adjusted to compensate for the effect of base current loading. In this case, we want to *increase* the DC voltage dropped across R_3, so we can lower the value of R_2, raise the value of R_3, or both.

```
voltage divider biasing
vinput 1 0 sin (0 1.5 2000 0 0)
c1 1 5 100u
r1 5 2 1k
r2 4 5 6k      <--- R2 decreased to 6 k ohms
r3 5 0 4k      <--- R3 increased to 4 k ohms
q1 3 2 0 mod1
rspkr 3 4 8
v1 4 0 dc 15
.model mod1 npn
.tran 0.02m 0.78m
.plot tran v(1,0) i(v1)
.end
```



As you can see, the new resistor values of 6 kΩ and 4 kΩ (R_2 and R_3, respectively) results in class A waveform reproduction, just the way we wanted.

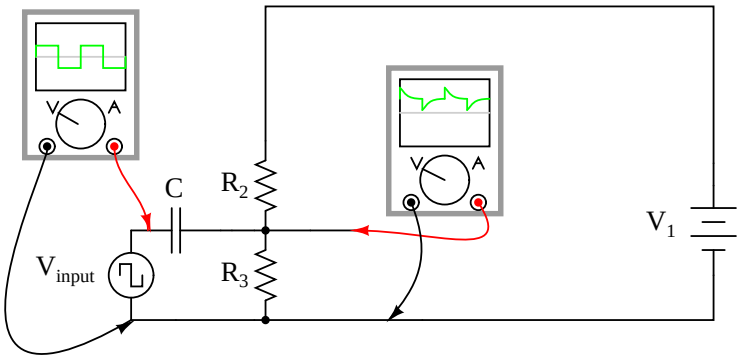
- **REVIEW:**
- *Class A* operation is where an amplifier is biased so as to be in the active mode throughout the entire waveform cycle, thus faithfully reproducing the whole waveform.
- *Class B* operation is where an amplifier is biased so that only half of the input waveform gets reproduced: either the positive half or the negative half. The transistor spends half its time in the active mode and half its time cutoff. Complementary pairs of transistors running in class B operation are often used to deliver high power amplification in audio signal systems, each transistor of the pair handling a separate half of the waveform cycle. Class B operation delivers better power efficiency than a class A amplifier of similar output power.
- *Class AB* operation is where an amplifier is biased at a point somewhere between class A and class B.
- *Class C* operation is where an amplifier's bias forces it to amplify only a small portion of the waveform. A majority of the transistor's time is spent in cutoff mode. In order for there to be a complete waveform at the output, a resonant tank circuit is often used as a "flywheel" to maintain oscillations for a few cycles after each "kick" from the amplifier. Because the transistor is not conducting most of the time, power efficiencies are very high for a class C amplifier.
- *Class D* operation requires an advanced circuit design, and functions on the principle of representing instantaneous input signal amplitude by the duty cycle of a high-frequency squarewave. The output transistor(s) never operate in active mode, only cutoff and saturation. Thus, there is very little heat energy dissipated and energy efficiency is high.

- DC bias voltage on the input signal, necessary for certain classes of operation (especially class A and class C), may be obtained through the use of a voltage divider and *coupling capacitor* rather than a battery connected in series with the AC signal source.

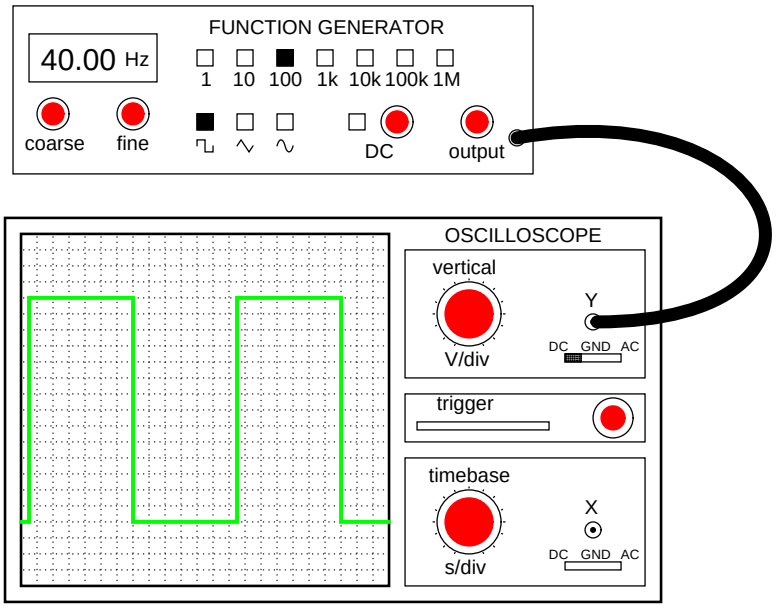
4.9 Input and output coupling

To overcome the challenge of creating necessary DC bias voltage for an amplifier's input signal without resorting to the insertion of a battery in series with the AC signal source, we used a voltage divider connected across the DC power source. To make this work in conjunction with an AC input signal, we "coupled" the signal source to the divider through a capacitor, which acted as a high-pass filter. With that filtering in place, the low impedance of the AC signal source couldn't "short out" the DC voltage dropped across the bottom resistor of the voltage divider. A simple solution, but not without any disadvantages.

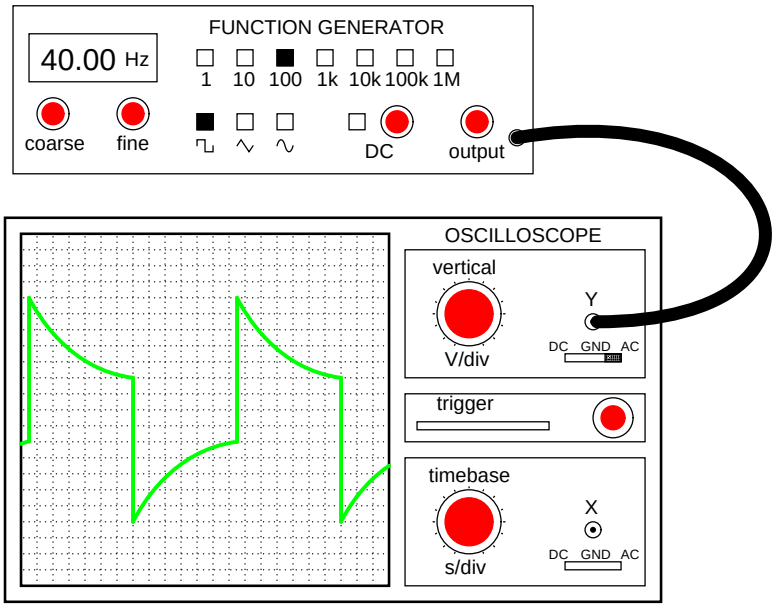
Most obvious is the fact that using a high-pass filter capacitor to couple the signal source to the amplifier means that the amplifier can only amplify AC signals. A steady, DC voltage applied to the input would be blocked by the coupling capacitor just as much as the voltage divider bias voltage is blocked from the input source. Furthermore, since capacitive reactance is frequency-dependent, lower-frequency AC signals will not be amplified as much as higher-frequency signals. Non-sinusoidal signals will tend to be distorted, as the capacitor responds differently to each of the signal's constituent harmonics. An extreme example of this would be a low-frequency square-wave signal:



Incidentally, this same problem occurs when oscilloscope inputs are set to the "AC coupling" mode. In this mode, a coupling capacitor is inserted in series with the measured voltage signal to eliminate any vertical offset of the displayed waveform due to DC voltage combined with the signal. This works fine when the AC component of the measured signal is of a fairly high frequency, and the capacitor offers little impedance to the signal. However, if the signal is of a low frequency, and/or contains considerable levels of harmonics over a wide frequency range, the oscilloscope's display of the waveform will not be accurate.

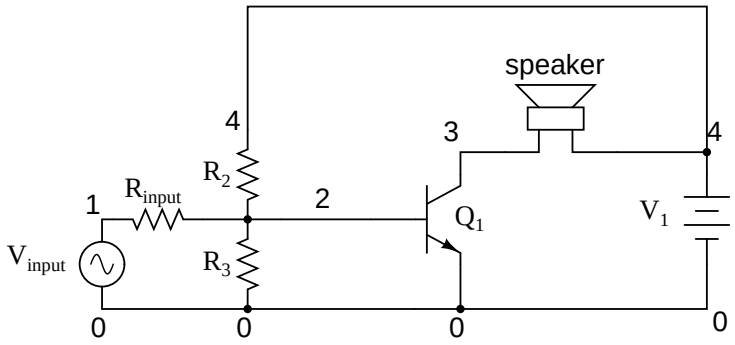


With DC coupling, the oscilloscope properly indicates the shape of the square wave coming from the signal generator.



With AC coupling, the high-pass filtering of the coupling capacitor distorts the square wave's shape so that what is seen is not an accurate representation of the real voltage signal.

In applications where the limitations of capacitive coupling would be intolerable, another solution may be used: *direct coupling*. Direct coupling avoids the use of capacitors or any other frequency-dependent coupling component in favor of resistors. A direct-coupled amplifier circuit might look something like this:



With no capacitor to filter the input signal, this form of coupling exhibits no frequency dependence. DC and AC signals alike will be amplified by the transistor with the same gain (the transistor itself may tend to amplify some frequencies better than others, but that is another subject entirely!).

If direct coupling works for DC as well as for AC signals, then why use capacitive coupling for *any* application? One reason might be to avoid any *unwanted* DC bias voltage naturally present in the signal to be amplified. Some AC signals may be superimposed on an uncontrolled DC voltage right from the source, and an uncontrolled DC voltage would make reliable transistor biasing impossible. The high-pass filtering offered by a coupling capacitor would work well here to avoid biasing problems.

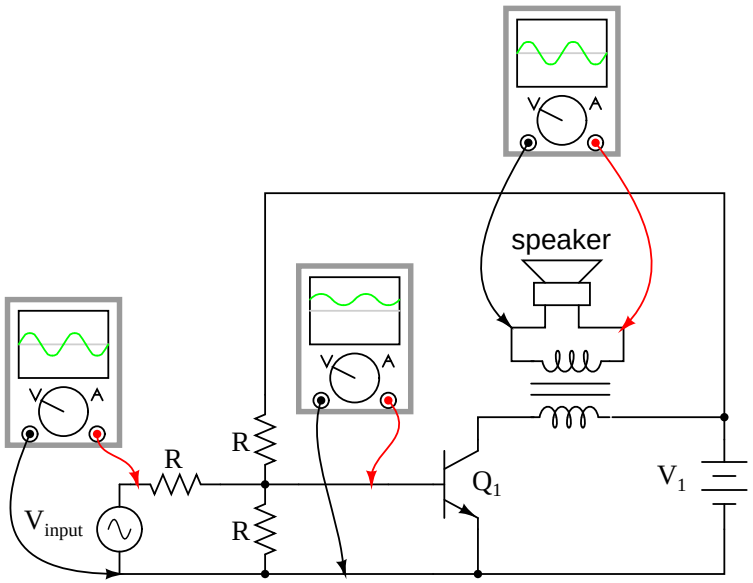
Another reason to use capacitive coupling rather than direct is its relative lack of signal attenuation. Direct coupling through a resistor has the disadvantage of diminishing, or attenuating, the input signal so that only a fraction of it reaches the base of the transistor. In many applications, some attenuation is necessary anyway to prevent normal signal levels from "overdriving" the transistor into cutoff and saturation, so any attenuation inherent to the coupling network is useful anyway. However, some applications require that there be *no* signal loss from the input connection to the transistor's base for maximum voltage gain, and a direct coupling scheme with a voltage divider for bias simply won't suffice.

So far, we've discussed a couple of methods for coupling an *input* signal to an amplifier, but haven't addressed the issue of coupling an amplifier's *output* to a load. The example circuit used to illustrate input coupling will serve well to illustrate the issues involved with output coupling.

In our example circuit, the load is a speaker. Most speakers are electromagnetic in design: that is, they use the force generated by an lightweight electromagnet coil suspended within a strong permanent-magnet field to move a thin paper or plastic cone, producing vibrations in the air which our ears interpret as sound. An applied voltage of one polarity moves the cone outward, while a voltage of the opposite polarity will move the cone inward. To exploit cone's full freedom of motion, the speaker must receive true (unbiased) AC voltage. DC bias applied to the speaker coil tends to offset the cone from its natural center position, and this tends to limit the amount of back-and-forth motion it can sustain from the applied AC voltage without

overtraveling. However, our example circuit applies a varying voltage of only *one* polarity across the speaker, because the speaker is connected in series with the transistor which can only conduct current one way. This situation would be unacceptable in the case of any high-power audio amplifier.

Somehow we need to isolate the speaker from the DC bias of the collector current so that it only receives AC voltage. One way to achieve this goal is to couple the transistor collector circuit to the speaker through a transformer:

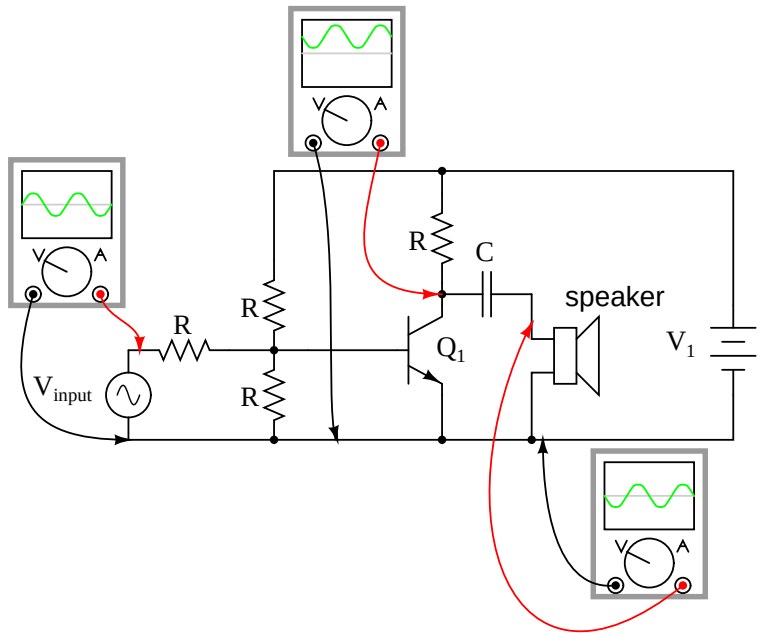


Voltage induced in the secondary (speaker-side) of the transformer will be strictly due to *variations* in collector current, because the mutual inductance of a transformer only works on *changes* in winding current. In other words, only the AC portion of the collector current signal will be coupled to the secondary side for powering the speaker. The speaker will "see" true alternating current at its terminals, without any DC bias.

Transformer output coupling works, and has the added benefit of being able to provide impedance matching between the transistor circuit and the speaker coil with custom winding ratios. However, transformers tend to be large and heavy, especially for high-power applications. Also, it is difficult to engineer a transformer to handle signals over a wide range of frequencies, which is almost always required for audio applications. To make matters worse, DC current through the primary winding adds to the magnetization of the core in one polarity only, which tends to make the transformer core saturate more easily in one AC polarity cycle than the other. This problem is reminiscent of having the speaker directly connected in series with the transistor: a DC bias current tends to limit how much output signal amplitude the system can handle without distortion. Generally, though, a transformer can be designed to handle a lot more DC bias current than a speaker without running into trouble, so transformer coupling is still a viable solution in most cases.

Another method to isolate the speaker from DC bias in the output signal is to alter the circuit a bit and use a coupling capacitor in a manner similar to coupling the input signal to

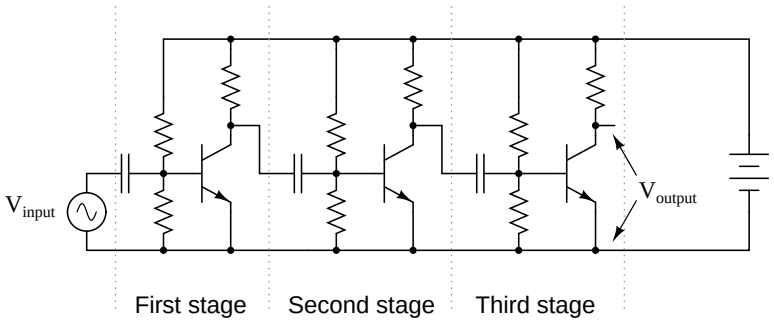
the amplifier:



This circuit resembles the more conventional form of common-emitter amplifier, with the transistor collector connected to the battery through a resistor. The capacitor acts as a high-pass filter, passing most of the AC voltage to the speaker while blocking all DC voltage. Again, the value of this coupling capacitor is chosen so that its impedance at the expected signal frequency will be arbitrarily low.

The blocking of DC voltage from an amplifier's output, be it via a transformer or a capacitor, is useful not only in coupling an amplifier to a load, but also in coupling one amplifier to another amplifier. "Staged" amplifiers are often used to achieve higher power gains than what would be possible using a single transistor:

Three-stage common-emitter amplifier

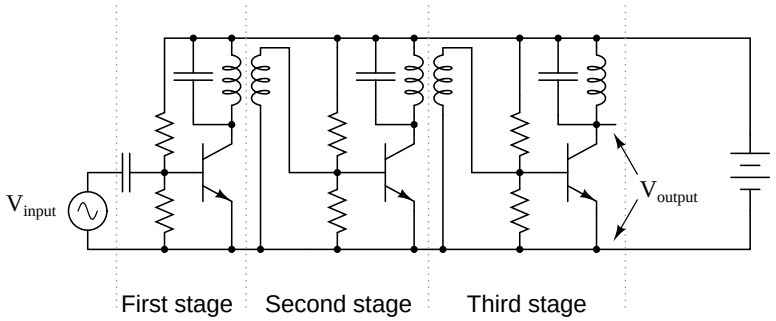


While it is possible to directly couple each stage to the next (via a resistor rather than a capacitor), this makes the whole amplifier *very* sensitive to variations in the DC bias voltage of

the first stage, since that DC voltage will be amplified along with the AC signal until the last stage. In other words, the biasing of the first stage will affect the biasing of the second stage, and so on. However, if the stages are capacitively coupled as shown in the above illustration, the biasing of one stage has no effect on the biasing of the next, because DC voltage is blocked from passing on to the next stage.

Transformer coupling between amplifier stages is also a possibility, but less often seen due to some of the problems inherent to transformers mentioned previously. One notable exception to this rule is in the case of radio-frequency amplifiers where coupling transformers are typically small, have air cores (making them immune to saturation effects), and can be made part of a resonant circuit so as to block unwanted harmonic frequencies from passing on to subsequent stages. The use of resonant circuits assumes that the signal frequency remains constant, of course, but this is typically the case in radio circuitry. Also, the "flywheel" effect of LC tank circuits allows for class C operation for high efficiency:

Three-stage tuned (RF) amplifier



Having said all this, it must be mentioned that it *is* possible to use direct coupling within a multi-stage transistor amplifier circuit. In cases where the amplifier is expected to handle DC signals, this is the only alternative.

- **REVIEW:**

- Capacitive coupling acts like a high-pass filter on the input of an amplifier. This tends to make the amplifier's voltage gain decrease at lower signal frequencies. Capacitive-coupled amplifiers are all but unresponsive to DC input signals.

- Direct coupling with a series resistor instead of a series capacitor avoids the problem of frequency-dependent gain, but has the disadvantage of reducing amplifier gain for all signal frequencies by attenuating the input signal.

- Transformers and capacitors may be used to couple the output of an amplifier to a load, to eliminate DC voltage from getting to the load.

- Multi-stage amplifiers often make use of capacitive coupling between stages to eliminate problems with the bias from one stage affecting the bias of another.

4.10 Feedback

If some percentage of an amplifier's output signal is connected to the input, so that the amplifier amplifies part of its own output signal, we have what is known as *feedback*. Feedback comes in two varieties: *positive* (also called *regenerative*), and *negative* (also called *degenerative*). Positive feedback reinforces the direction of an amplifier's output voltage change, while negative feedback does just the opposite.

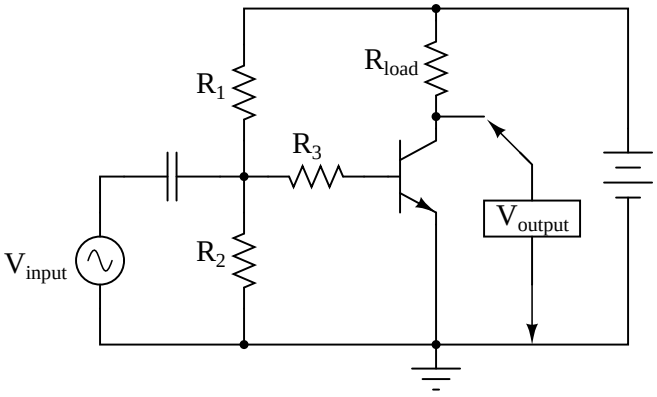
A familiar example of feedback happens in public-address ("PA") systems where someone holds the microphone too close to a speaker: a high-pitched "whine" or "howl" ensues, because the audio amplifier system is detecting and amplifying its own noise. Specifically, this is an example of *positive* or *regenerative* feedback, as any sound detected by the microphone is amplified and turned into a louder sound by the speaker, which is then detected by the microphone again, and so on . . . the result being a noise of steadily increasing volume until the system becomes "saturated" and cannot produce any more volume.

One might wonder what possible benefit feedback is to an amplifier circuit, given such an annoying example as PA system "howl." If we introduce positive, or regenerative, feedback into an amplifier circuit, it has the tendency of creating and sustaining oscillations, the frequency of which determined by the values of components handling the feedback signal from output to input. This is one way to make an *oscillator* circuit to produce AC from a DC power supply. Oscillators are very useful circuits, and so feedback has a definite, practical application for us.

Negative feedback, on the other hand, has a "dampening" effect on an amplifier: if the output signal happens to increase in magnitude, the feedback signal introduces a decreasing influence into the input of the amplifier, thus opposing the change in output signal. While positive feedback drives an amplifier circuit toward a point of instability (oscillations), negative feedback drives it the opposite direction: toward a point of stability.

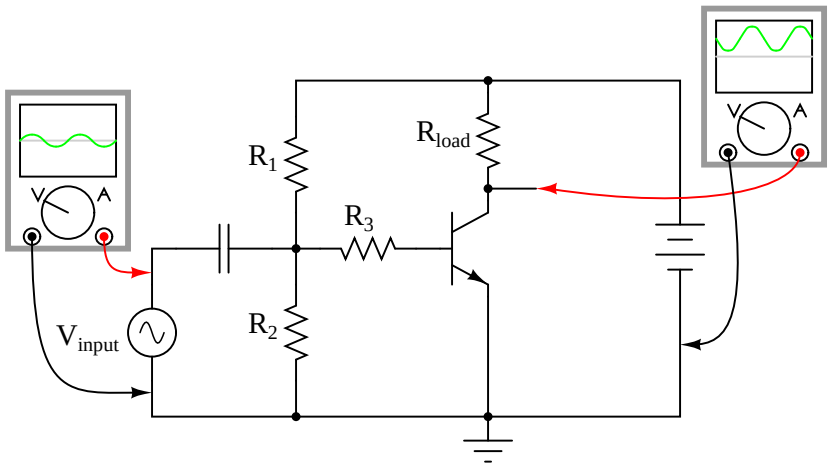
An amplifier circuit equipped with some amount of negative feedback is not only more stable, but it tends to distort the input waveform to a lesser degree and is generally capable of amplifying a wider range of frequencies. The tradeoff for these advantages (there just *has* to be a disadvantage to negative feedback, right?) is decreased gain. If a portion of an amplifier's output signal is "fed back" to the input in such a way as to oppose any changes in the output, it will require a greater input signal amplitude to drive the amplifier's output to the same amplitude as before. This constitutes a decreased gain. However, the advantages of stability, lower distortion, and greater bandwidth are worth the tradeoff in reduced gain for many applications.

Let's examine a simple amplifier circuit and see how we might introduce negative feedback into it:

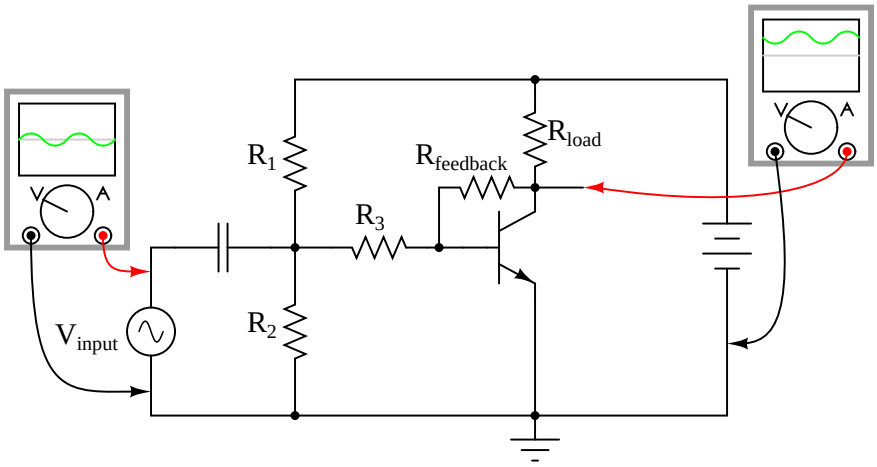


The amplifier configuration shown here is a common-emitter, with a resistor bias network formed by R_1 and R_2. The capacitor couples V_{input} to the amplifier so that the signal source doesn't have a DC voltage imposed on it by the R_1/R_2 divider network. Resistor R_3 serves the purpose of controlling voltage gain. We could omit if for maximum voltage gain, but since base resistors like this are common in common-emitter amplifier circuits, we'll keep it in this schematic.

Like all common-emitter amplifiers, this one *inverts* the input signal as it is amplified. In other words, a positive-going input voltage causes the output voltage to decrease, or go in the direction of negative, and vice versa. If we were to examine the waveforms with oscilloscopes, it would look something like this:



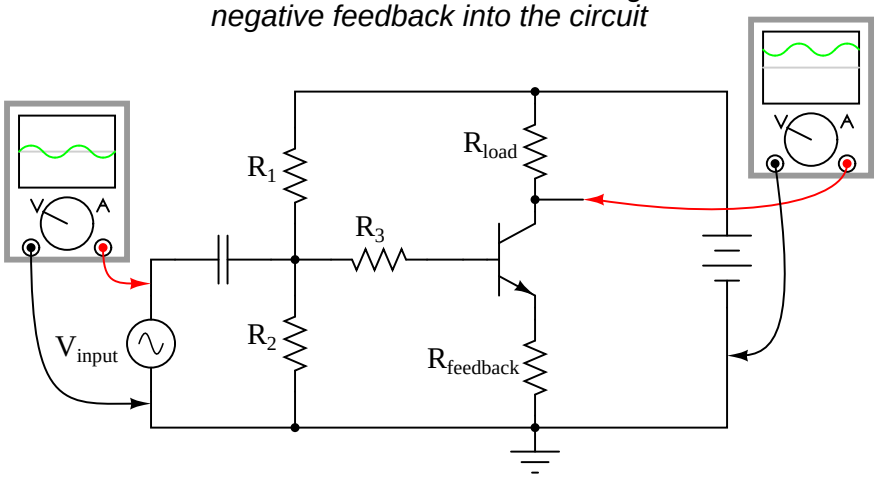
Because the output is an inverted, or mirror-image, reproduction of the input signal, any connection between the output (collector) wire and the input (base) wire of the transistor will result in *negative* feedback:



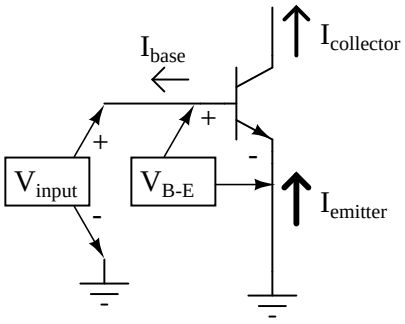
The resistances of R_1, R_2, R_3, and $R_{feedback}$ function together as a signal-mixing network so that the voltage seen at the base of the transistor (in reference to ground) is a weighted average of the input voltage and the feedback voltage, resulting in signal of reduced amplitude going into the transistor. As a result, the amplifier circuit will have reduced voltage gain, but improved linearity (reduced distortion) and increased bandwidth.

A resistor connecting collector to base is not the only way to introduce negative feedback into this amplifier circuit, though. Another method, although more difficult to understand at first, involves the placement of a resistor between the transistor's emitter terminal and circuit ground, like this:

A different method of introducing negative feedback into the circuit

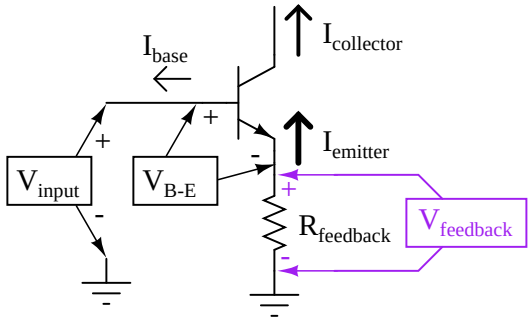


This new feedback resistor drops voltage proportional to the emitter current through the transistor, and it does so in such a way as to oppose the input signal's influence on the base-emitter junction of the transistor. Let's take a closer look at the emitter-base junction and see what difference this new resistor makes:



With no feedback resistor connecting the emitter to ground, whatever level of input signal (V_{input}) makes it through the coupling capacitor and $R_1/R_2/R_3$ resistor network will be impressed directly across the base-emitter junction as the transistor's input voltage (V_{B-E}). In other words, with no feedback resistor, V_{B-E} equals V_{input}. Therefore, if V_{input} increases by 100 mV, then V_{B-E} likewise increases by 100 mV: a change in one is the same as a change in the other, since the two voltages are equal to each other.

Now let's consider the effects of inserting a resistor ($R_{feedback}$) between the transistor's emitter lead and ground:



Note how the voltage dropped across $R_{feedback}$ adds with V_{B-E} to equal V_{input}. With $R_{feedback}$ in the $V_{input} -- V_{B-E}$ loop, V_{B-E} will no longer be equal to V_{input}. We know that $R_{feedback}$ will drop a voltage proportional to emitter current, which is in turn controlled by the base current, which is in turn controlled by the voltage dropped across the base-emitter junction of the transistor (V_{B-E}). Thus, if V_{input} were to increase in a positive direction, it would increase V_{B-E}, causing more base current, causing more collector (load) current, causing more emitter current, and causing more feedback voltage to be dropped across $R_{feedback}$. This increase of voltage drop across the feedback resistor, though, *subtracts* from V_{input} to reduce the V_{B-E}, so that the actual voltage increase for V_{B-E} will be less than the voltage increase of V_{input}. No longer will a 100 mV increase in V_{input} result in a full 100 mV increase for V_{B-E}, because the two voltages are *not* equal to each other.

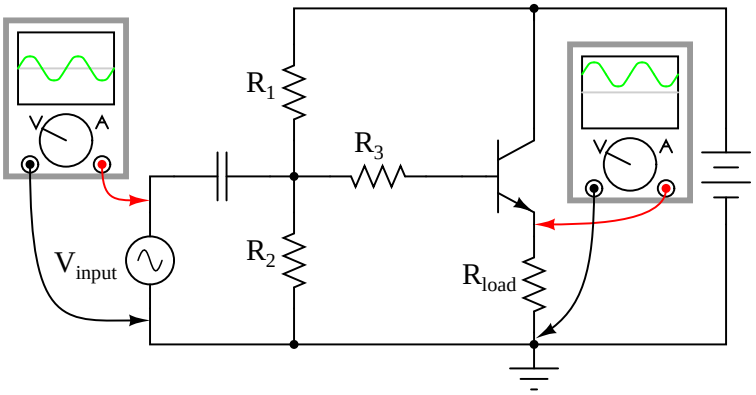
Consequently, the input voltage has less control over the transistor than before, and the voltage gain for the amplifier is reduced: just what we expected from negative feedback.

In practical common-emitter circuits, negative feedback isn't just a luxury; its a necessity for stable operation. In a perfect world, we could build and operate a common-emitter transistor amplifier with no negative feedback, and have the full amplitude of V_{input} impressed across

the transistor's base-emitter junction. This would give us a large voltage gain. Unfortunately, though, the relationship between base-emitter voltage and base-emitter current changes with temperature, as predicted by the "diode equation." As the transistor heats up, there will be less of a forward voltage drop across the base-emitter junction for any given current. This causes a problem for us, as the R_1/R_2 voltage divider network is designed to provide the correct quiescent current through the base of the transistor so that it will operate in whatever class of operation we desire (in this example, I've shown the amplifier working in class-A mode). If the transistor's voltage/current relationship changes with temperature, the amount of DC bias voltage necessary for the desired class of operation will change. In this case, a hot transistor will draw more bias current for the same amount of bias voltage, making it heat up even more, drawing even more bias current. The result, if unchecked, is called *thermal runaway*.

Common-collector amplifiers, however, do not suffer from thermal runaway. Why is this? The answer has everything to do with negative feedback:

A common-collector amplifier



Note that the common-collector amplifier has its load resistor placed in exactly the same spot as we had the $R_{feedback}$ resistor in the last circuit: between emitter and ground. This means that the only voltage impressed across the transistor's base-emitter junction is the *difference* between V_{input} and V_{output}, resulting in a very low voltage gain (usually close to 1 for a common-collector amplifier). Thermal runaway is impossible for this amplifier: if base current happens to increase due to transistor heating, emitter current will likewise increase, dropping more voltage across the load, which in turn *subtracts* from V_{input} to reduce the amount of voltage dropped between base and emitter. In other words, the negative feedback afforded by placement of the load resistor makes the problem of thermal runaway *self-correcting*. In exchange for a greatly reduced voltage gain, we get superb stability and immunity from thermal runaway.

By adding a "feedback" resistor between emitter and ground in a common-emitter amplifier, we make the amplifier behave a little less like an "ideal" common-emitter and a little more like a common-collector. The feedback resistor value is typically quite a bit less than the load, minimizing the amount of negative feedback and keeping the voltage gain fairly high.

Another benefit of negative feedback, seen clearly in the common-collector circuit, is that

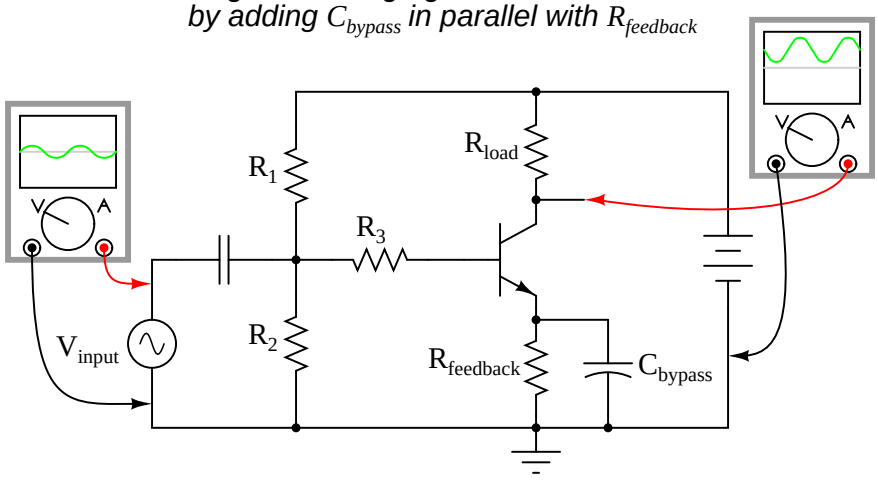
it tends to make the voltage gain of the amplifier less dependent on the characteristics of the transistor. Note that in a common-collector amplifier, voltage gain is nearly equal to unity (1), regardless of the transistor's β. This means, among other things, that we could replace the transistor in a common-collector amplifier with one having a different β and not see any significant changes in voltage gain. In a common-emitter circuit, the voltage gain is highly dependent on β. If we were to replace the transistor in a common-emitter circuit with another of differing β, the voltage gain for the amplifier would change significantly. In a common-emitter amplifier equipped with negative feedback, the voltage gain will still be dependent upon transistor β to some degree, but not as much as before, making the circuit more predictable despite variations in transistor β.

The fact that we have to introduce negative feedback into a common-emitter amplifier to avoid thermal runaway is an unsatisfying solution. It would be nice, after all, to avoid thermal runaway without having to suppress the amplifier's inherently high voltage gain. A best-of-both-worlds solution to this dilemma is available to us if we closely examine the nature of the problem: the voltage gain that we have to minimize in order to avoid thermal runaway is the *DC* voltage gain, not the *AC* voltage gain. After all, it isn't the AC input signal that fuels thermal runaway: its the DC bias voltage required for a certain class of operation: that quiescent DC signal that we use to "trick" the transistor (fundamentally a DC device) into amplifying an AC signal. We can suppress DC voltage gain in a common-emitter amplifier circuit without suppressing AC voltage gain if we figure out a way to make the negative feedback function with DC only. That is, if we only feed back an inverted DC signal from output to input, but not an inverted AC signal.

The $R_{feedback}$ emitter resistor provides negative feedback by dropping a voltage proportional to load current. In other words, negative feedback is accomplished by inserting an impedance into the emitter current path. If we want to feed back DC but not AC, we need an impedance that is high for DC but low for AC. What kind of circuit presents a high impedance to DC but a low impedance to AC? A high-pass filter, of course!

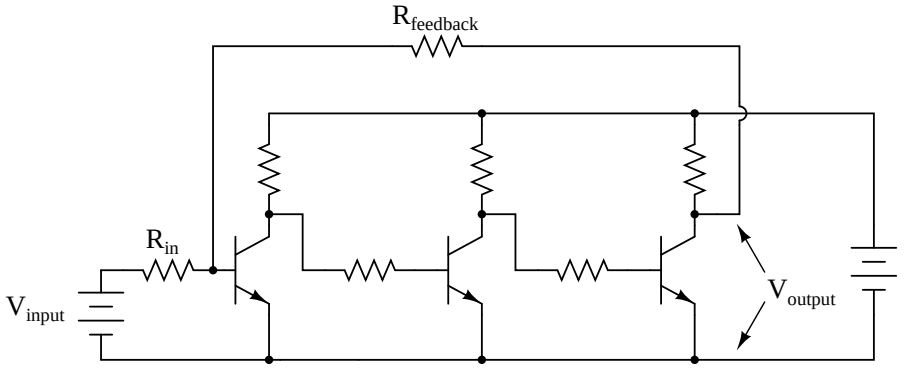
By connecting a capacitor in parallel with the feedback resistor, we create the very situation we need: a path from emitter to ground that is easier for AC than it is for DC:

High AC voltage gain re-established by adding C_{bypass} in parallel with $R_{feedback}$



The new capacitor "bypasses" AC from the transistor's emitter to ground, so that no appreciable AC voltage will be dropped from emitter to ground to "feed back" to the input and suppress voltage gain. Direct current, on the other hand, cannot go through the bypass capacitor, and so must travel through the feedback resistor, dropping a DC voltage between emitter and ground which lowers the DC voltage gain and stabilizes the amplifier's DC response, preventing thermal runaway. Because we want the reactance of this capacitor (X_C) to be as low as possible, C_{bypass} should be sized relatively large. Because the polarity across this capacitor will never change, it is safe to use a polarized (electrolytic) capacitor for the task.

Another approach to the problem of negative feedback reducing voltage gain is to use multistage amplifiers rather than single-transistor amplifiers. If the attenuated gain of a single transistor is insufficient for the task at hand, we can use more than one transistor to make up for the reduction caused by feedback. Here is an example circuit showing negative feedback in a three-stage common-emitter amplifier:



Note how there is but one "path" for feedback, from the final output to the input through a single resistor, $R_{feedback}$. Since each stage is a common-emitter amplifier – and thus inverting in nature – and there are an odd number of stages from input to output, the output signal will be inverted with respect to the input signal, and the feedback will be negative (degenerative). Relatively large amounts of feedback may be used without sacrificing voltage gain, because the three amplifier stages provide so much gain to begin with.

At first, this design philosophy may seem inelegant and perhaps even counter-productive. Isn't this a rather crude way to overcome the loss in gain incurred through the use of negative feedback, to simply recover gain by adding stage after stage? What is the point of creating a huge voltage gain using three transistor stages if we're just going to attenuate all that gain anyway with negative feedback? The point, though perhaps not apparent at first, is increased predictability and stability from the circuit as a whole. If the three transistor stages are designed to provide an arbitrarily high voltage gain (in the tens of thousands, or greater) with no feedback, it will be found that the addition of negative feedback causes the overall voltage gain to become less dependent of the individual stage gains, and approximately equal to the simple ratio $R_{feedback}/R_{in}$. The more voltage gain the circuit has (without feedback), the more closely the voltage gain will approximate $R_{feedback}/R_{in}$ once feedback is established. In other words, voltage gain in this circuit is fixed by the values of two resistors, and nothing more.

This advantage has profound impact on mass-production of electronic circuitry: if amplifiers of predictable gain may be constructed using transistors of widely varied β values, it makes

the selection and replacement of components very easy and inexpensive. It also means the amplifier's gain varies little with changes in temperature. This principle of stable gain control through a high-gain amplifier "tamed" by negative feedback is elevated almost to an art form in electronic circuits called *operational amplifiers*, or *op-amps*. You may read much more about these circuits in a later chapter of this book!

- **REVIEW:**
- *Feedback* is the coupling of an amplifier's output to its input.
- *Positive*, or *regenerative* feedback has the tendency of making an amplifier circuit unstable, so that it produces oscillations (AC). The frequency of these oscillations is largely determined by the components in the feedback network.
- *Negative*, or *degenerative* feedback has the tendency of making an amplifier circuit more stable, so that its output changes *less* for a given input signal than without feedback. This reduces the gain of the amplifier, but has the advantage of decreasing distortion and increasing bandwidth (the range of frequencies the amplifier can handle).
- Negative feedback may be introduced into a common-emitter circuit by coupling collector to base, or by inserting a resistor between emitter and ground.
- An emitter-to-ground "feedback" resistor is usually found in common-emitter circuits as a preventative measure against *thermal runaway*.
- Negative feedback also has the advantage of making amplifier voltage gain more dependent on resistor values and less dependent on the transistor's characteristics.
- Common-collector amplifiers have a lot of negative feedback, due to the placement of the load resistor between emitter and ground. This feedback accounts for the extremely stable voltage gain of the amplifier, as well as its immunity against thermal runaway.
- Voltage gain for a common-emitter circuit may be re-established without sacrificing immunity to thermal runaway, by connecting a *bypass capacitor* in parallel with the emitter "feedback resistor."
- If the voltage gain of an amplifier is arbitrarily high (tens of thousands, or greater), and negative feedback is used to reduce the gain to reasonable levels, it will be found that the gain will approximately equal $R_{feedback}/R_{in}$. Changes in transistor β or other internal component values will have comparatively little effect on voltage gain with feedback in operation, resulting in an amplifier that is stable and easy to design.

4.11 Amplifier impedances

*** **PENDING** ***

- **REVIEW:**
-

-
-

4.12 Current mirrors

An interesting and often-used circuit applying the bipolar junction transistor is the so-called *current mirror*, which serves as a simple current regulator, supplying nearly constant current to a load over a wide range of load resistances.

We know that in a transistor operating in its active mode, collector current is equal to base current multiplied by the ratio β. We also know that the ratio between collector current and emitter current is called α. Because collector current is equal to base current multiplied by β, and emitter current is the sum of the base and collector currents, α should be mathematically derivable from β. If you do the algebra, you'll find that $\alpha = \beta/(\beta+1)$ for any transistor.

We've seen already how maintaining a constant base current through an active transistor results in the regulation of collector current, according to the β ratio. Well, the α ratio works similarly: if emitter current is held constant, collector current will remain at a stable, regulated value so long as the transistor has enough collector-to-emitter voltage drop to maintain it in its active mode. Therefore, if we have a way of holding emitter current constant through a transistor, the transistor will work to regulate collector current at a constant value.

Remember that the base-emitter junction of a BJT is nothing more than a PN junction, just like a diode, and that the "diode equation" specifies how much current will go through a PN junction given forward voltage drop and junction temperature:

$$I_D = I_S (e^{qV_D/NkT} - 1)$$

Where,

I_D = Diode current in amps

I_S = Saturation current in amps (typically 1 x 10^{-12} amps)

e = Euler's constant (~ 2.718281828)

q = charge of electron (1.6 x 10^{-19} coulombs)

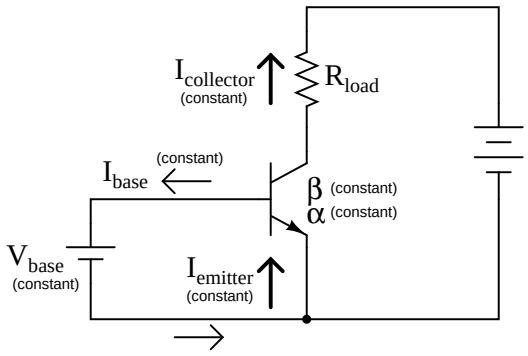
V_D = Voltage applied across diode in volts

N = "Nonideality" or "emission" coefficient (typically between 1 and 2)

k = Boltzmann's constant (1.38 x 10^{-23})

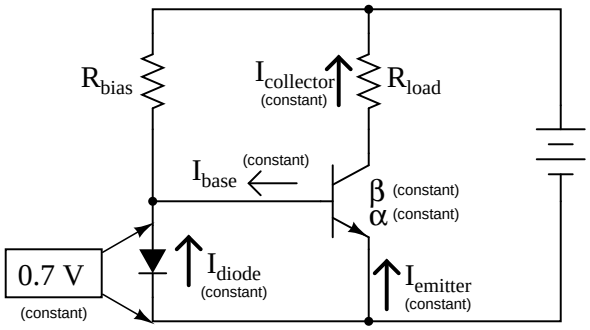
T = Junction temperature in Kelvins

If both junction voltage and temperature are held constant, then the PN junction current will likewise be constant. Following this rationale, if we were to hold the base-emitter voltage of a transistor constant, then its emitter current should likewise be constant, given a constant temperature:



This constant emitter current, multiplied by a constant α ratio, gives a constant collector current through R_{load}, provided that there is enough battery voltage to keep the transistor in its active mode for any change in R_{load}'s resistance.

Maintaining a constant voltage across the transistor's base-emitter junction is easy: use a forward-biased diode to establish a constant voltage of approximately 0.7 volts, and connect it in parallel with the base-emitter junction:



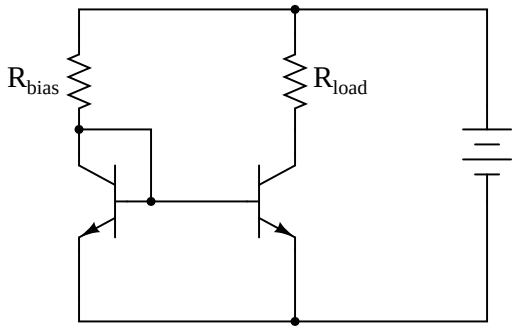
Now, here's where it gets interesting. The voltage dropped across the diode probably won't be 0.7 volts exactly. The exact amount of forward voltage dropped across it depends on the current through the diode, and the diode's temperature, all in accordance with the diode equation. If diode current is increased (say, by reducing the resistance of R_{bias}), its voltage drop will increase slightly, increasing the voltage drop across the transistor's base-emitter junction, which will increase the emitter current by the same proportion, assuming the diode's PN junction and the transistor's base-emitter junction are well-matched to each other. In other words, transistor emitter current will closely equal diode current at any given time. If you change the diode current by changing the resistance value of R_{bias}, then the transistor's emitter current will follow suit, because the emitter current is described by the same equation as the diode's, and both PN junctions experience the same voltage drop.

Remember, the transistor's collector current is almost equal to its emitter current, as the α ratio of a typical transistor is almost unity (1). If we have control over the transistor's emitter current by setting diode current with a simple resistor adjustment, then we likewise have control over the transistor's collector current. In other words, collector current mimics, or *mirrors*, diode current.

Current through resistor R_{load} is therefore a function of current set by the bias resistor, the two being nearly equal. This is the function of the current mirror circuit: to regulate current through the load resistor by conveniently adjusting the value of R_{bias}. It is very easy to create a set amount of diode current, as current through the diode is described by a simple equation: power supply voltage minus diode voltage (almost a constant value), divided by the resistance of R_{bias}.

To better match the characteristics of the two PN junctions (the diode junction and the transistor base-emitter junction), a transistor may be used in place of a regular diode, like this:

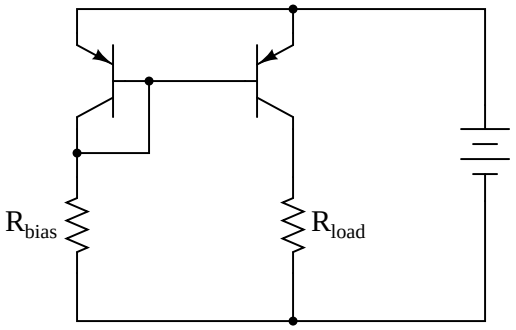
A current mirror circuit using two transistors



Because temperature is a factor in the "diode equation," and we want the two PN junctions to behave identically under all operating conditions, we should maintain the two transistors at exactly the same temperature. This is easily done using discrete components by gluing the two transistor cases back-to-back. If the transistors are manufactured together on a single chip of silicon (as a so-called *integrated circuit*, or *IC*), the designers should locate the two transistors very close to one another to facilitate heat transfer between them.

The current mirror circuit shown with two NPN transistors is sometimes called a *current-sinking* type, because the regulating transistor conducts current to the load *from ground* ("sinking" current), rather than *from the positive side of the battery* ("sourcing" current). If we wish to have a grounded load, and a *current sourcing* mirror circuit, we could use PNP transistors like this:

*A **current-sourcing** mirror circuit*



- **REVIEW:**
- A *current mirror* is a transistor circuit that regulates current through a load resistance, the regulation point being set by a simple resistor adjustment.
- Transistors in a current mirror circuit must be maintained at the same temperature for precise operation. When using discrete transistors, you may glue their cases together to help accomplish this.
- Current mirror circuits may be found in two basic varieties: the current *sinking* configuration, where the regulating transistor connects the load to ground; and the current *sourcing* configuration, where the regulating transistor connects the load to the positive terminal of the DC power supply.

4.13 Transistor ratings and packages

***** INCOMPLETE *****

Like all electrical and electronic components, transistors are limited in the amounts of voltage and current they can handle without sustaining damage. Since transistors are a bit more complex than some of the other components you're used to seeing at this point, they tend to have more kinds of ratings. What follows is an itemized description of some typical transistor ratings.

Power dissipation: When a transistor conducts current between collector and emitter, it also drops voltage between those two points. At any given time, the power dissipated by a transistor is equal to the product (multiplication) of collector current and collector-emitter voltage. Just like resistors, transistors are rated in terms of how many watts they can safely dissipate without sustaining damage. High temperature is the mortal enemy of all semiconductor devices, and bipolar transistors tend to be more susceptible to thermal damage than most. Power ratings are always given in reference to the temperature of ambient (surrounding) air. When transistors are to be used in hotter-than-normal environments, their power ratings must be *derated* to avoid a shortened service life.

Reverse voltages: As with diodes, bipolar transistors are rated for maximum allowable reverse-bias voltage across their PN junctions. This includes voltage ratings for the base-emitter junction, base-collector junction, and also from collector to emitter. The rating for maximum collector-emitter voltage can be thought of in terms of the maximum voltage it can withstand while in full-cutoff mode (no base current). This rating is of particular importance when using a bipolar transistor as a switch.

Collector current: A maximum value for collector current will be given by the manufacturer in amps. Understand that this maximum figure assumes a saturated state (minimum collector-emitter voltage drop). If the transistor is *not* saturated, and in fact is dropping substantial voltage between collector and emitter, the maximum power dissipation rating will probably be exceeded before the maximum collector current rating will. Just something to keep in mind when designing a transistor circuit!

Saturation voltages: Ideally, a saturated transistor acts as a closed switch contact between collector and emitter, dropping zero voltage at full collector current. In reality this is *never* true. Manufacturers will specify the maximum voltage drop of a transistor at saturation, both between the collector and emitter, and also between base and emitter (forward voltage drop of that PN junction). Collector-emitter voltage drop at saturation is generally expected to be 0.3 volts or less, but this figure is of course dependent on the specific type of transistor. Base-emitter forward voltage drop is very similar to that of an equivalent diode, which should come as no surprise.

Beta: The ratio of collector current to base current, β is the fundamental parameter characterizing the amplifying ability of a bipolar transistor. β is usually assumed to be a constant figure in circuit calculations, but unfortunately this is far from true in practice. As such, manufacturers provide a set of β (or "h_{fe}") figures for a given transistor over a wide range of operating conditions, usually in the form of maximum/minimum/typical ratings. It may surprise you to see just how widely β can be expected to vary within normal operating limits. One popular small-signal transistor, the 2N3903, is advertised as having a β ranging from 15 to 150 depending on the amount of collector current. Generally, β is highest for medium collector currents, decreasing for very low and very high collector currents.

Alpha: the ratio of collector current to emitter current, α may be derived from β, being equal to $\beta/(\beta+1)$.

Bipolar transistors come in a wide variety of physical packages. Package type is primarily dependent upon the power dissipation of the transistor, much like resistors: the greater the maximum power dissipation, the larger the device has to be to stay cool. There are several standardized package types for three-terminal semiconductor devices, any of which may be used to house a bipolar transistor. This is an important fact to consider: there are many other semiconductor devices other than bipolar transistors which have three connection points. It is *impossible* to positively identify a three-terminal semiconductor device without referencing the part number printed on it, and/or subjecting it to a set of electrical tests.

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

4.14 BJT quirks

***** PENDING *****

Nonlinearity Temperature drift Thermal runaway Junction capacitance Noise Mismatch (problem with paralleling transistors) β cutoff frequency Alpha cutoff frequency

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

Chapter 5

JUNCTION FIELD-EFFECT TRANSISTORS

Contents

***** INCOMPLETE *****

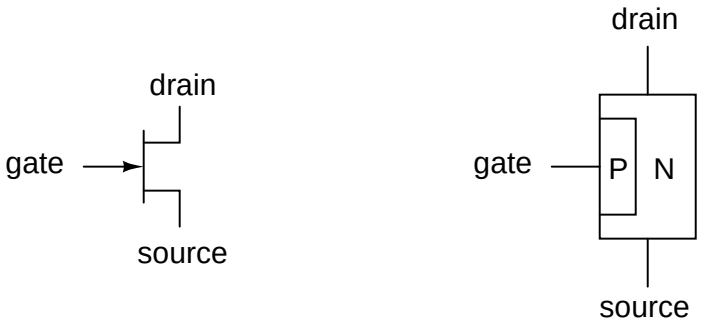
5.1 Introduction

A *transistor* is a linear semiconductor device that controls current with the application of a lower-power electrical signal. Transistors may be roughly grouped into two major divisions: *bipolar* and *field-effect*. In the last chapter we studied bipolar transistors, which utilize a small current to control a large current. In this chapter, we'll introduce the general concept of the field-effect transistor – a device utilizing a small *voltage* to control current – and then focus on one particular type: the *junction* field-effect transistor. In the next chapter we'll explore another type of field-effect transistor, the *insulated gate* variety.

All field-effect transistors are *unipolar* rather than *bipolar* devices. That is, the main current through them is comprised either of electrons through an N-type semiconductor or holes

through a P-type semiconductor. This becomes more evident when a physical diagram of the device is seen:

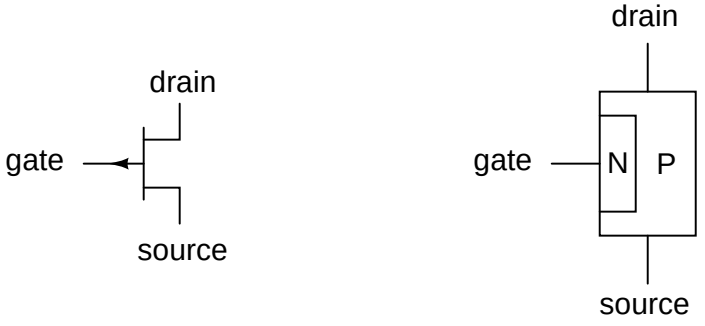
***N-channel* JFET**



schematic symbol *physical diagram*

In a junction field-effect transistor, or JFET, the controlled current passes from source to drain, or from drain to source as the case may be. The controlling voltage is applied between the gate and source. Note how the current does not have to cross through a PN junction on its way between source and drain: the path (called a *channel*) is an uninterrupted block of semiconductor material. In the image just shown, this channel is an N-type semiconductor. P-type channel JFETs are also manufactured:

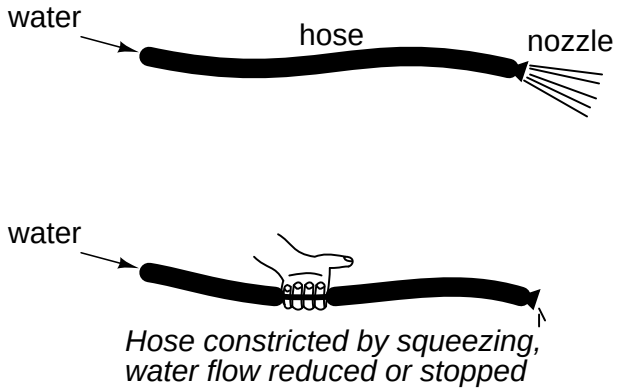
***P-channel* JFET**



schematic symbol *physical diagram*

Generally, N-channel JFETs are more commonly used than P-channel. The reasons for this have to do with obscure details of semiconductor theory, which I'd rather not discuss in this chapter. As with bipolar transistors, I believe the best way to introduce field-effect transistor usage is to avoid theory whenever possible and concentrate instead on operational characteristics. The only practical difference between N- and P-channel JFETs you need to concern yourself with now is biasing of the PN junction formed between the gate material and the channel.

With no voltage applied between gate and source, the channel is a wide-open path for electrons to flow. However, if a voltage is applied between gate and source of such polarity that it reverse-biases the PN junction, the flow between source and drain connections becomes limited, or regulated, just as it was for bipolar transistors with a set amount of base current. Maximum gate-source voltage "pinches off" all current through source and drain, thus forcing the JFET into cutoff mode. This behavior is due to the depletion region of the PN junction expanding under the influence of a reverse-bias voltage, eventually occupying the entire width of the channel if the voltage is great enough. This action may be likened to reducing the flow of a liquid through a flexible hose by squeezing it: with enough force, the hose will be constricted enough to completely block the flow.



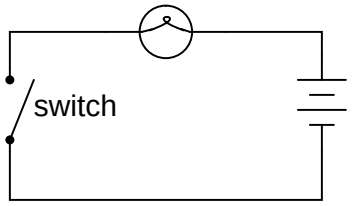
Note how this operational behavior is exactly opposite of the bipolar junction transistor. Bipolar transistors are *normally-off* devices: no current through the base, no current through the collector or the emitter. JFETs, on the other hand, are *normally-on* devices: no voltage applied to the gate allows maximum current through the source and drain. Also take note that the amount of current allowed through a JFET is determined by a *voltage* signal rather than a *current* signal as with bipolar transistors. In fact, with the gate-source PN junction reverse-biased, there should be nearly zero current through the gate connection. For this reason, we classify the JFET as a *voltage-controlled device*, and the bipolar transistor as a *current-controlled device*.

If the gate-source PN junction is forward-biased with a small voltage, the JFET channel will "open" a little more to allow greater currents through. However, the PN junction of a JFET is not built to handle any substantial current itself, and thus it is not recommended to forward-bias the junction under any circumstances.

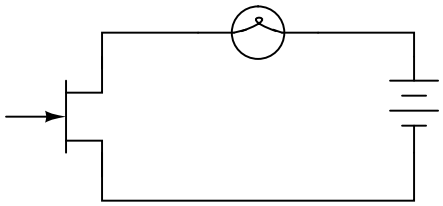
This is a very condensed overview of JFET operation. In the next section, we'll explore the use of the JFET as a switching device.

5.2 The transistor as a switch

Like its bipolar cousin, the field-effect transistor may be used as an on/off switch controlling electrical power to a load. Let's begin our investigation of the JFET as a switch with our familiar switch/lamp circuit:

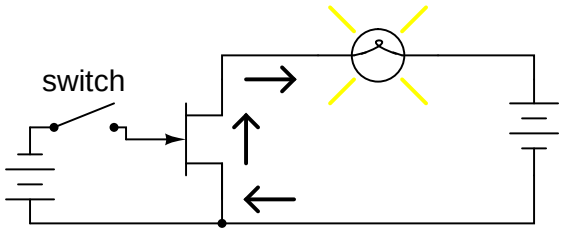


Remembering that the *controlled* current in a JFET flows between source and drain, we substitute the source and drain connections of a JFET for the two ends of the switch in the above circuit:

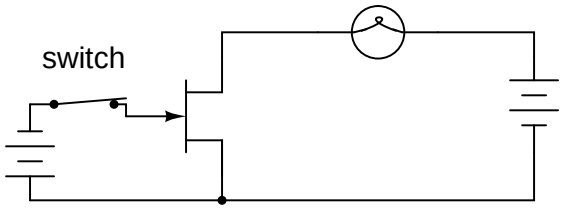


If you haven't noticed by now, the source and drain connections on a JFET look identical on the schematic symbol. Unlike the bipolar junction transistor where the emitter is clearly distinguished from the collector by the arrowhead, a JFET's source and drain lines both run perpendicular into the bar representing the semiconductor channel. This is no accident, as the source and drain lines of a JFET are often interchangeable in practice! In other words, JFETs are usually able to handle channel current in either direction, from source to drain or from drain to source.

Now all we need in the circuit is a way to control the JFET's conduction. With zero applied voltage between gate and source, the JFET's channel will be "open," allowing full current to the lamp. In order to turn the lamp off, we will need to connect another source of DC voltage between the gate and source connections of the JFET like this:

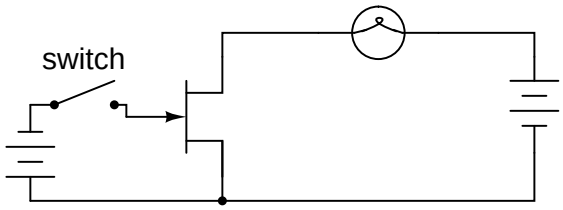


Closing this switch will "pinch off" the JFET's channel, thus forcing it into cutoff and turning the lamp off:



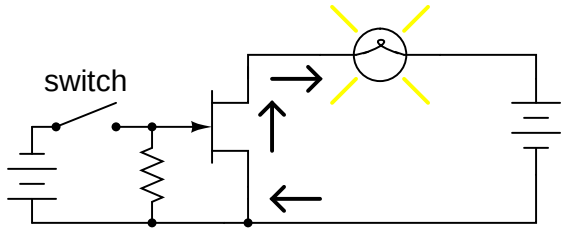
Note that there is no current going through the gate. As a reverse-biased PN junction, it firmly opposes the flow of any electrons through it. As a voltage-controlled device, the JFET requires negligible input current. This is an advantageous trait of the JFET over the bipolar transistor: there is virtually zero power required of the controlling signal.

Opening the control switch again should disconnect the reverse-biasing DC voltage from the gate, thus allowing the transistor to turn back on. Ideally, anyway, this is how it works. In practice this may not work at all:



No lamp current after the switch opens!

Why is this? Why doesn't the JFET's channel open up again and allow lamp current through like it did before with no voltage applied between gate and source? The answer lies in the operation of the reverse-biased gate-source junction. The depletion region within that junction acts as an insulating barrier separating gate from source. As such, it possesses a certain amount of *capacitance* capable of storing an electric charge potential. After this junction has been forcibly reverse-biased by the application of an external voltage, it will tend to hold that reverse-biasing voltage as a stored charge even after the source of that voltage has been disconnected. What is needed to turn the JFET on again is to bleed off that stored charge between the gate and source through a resistor:



Resistor bleeds off stored charge in PN junction to allow transistor to turn on once again.

This resistor's value is not very important. The capacitance of the JFET's gate-source junction is very small, and so even a rather high-value bleed resistor creates a fast RC time constant, allowing the transistor to resume conduction with little delay once the switch is opened.

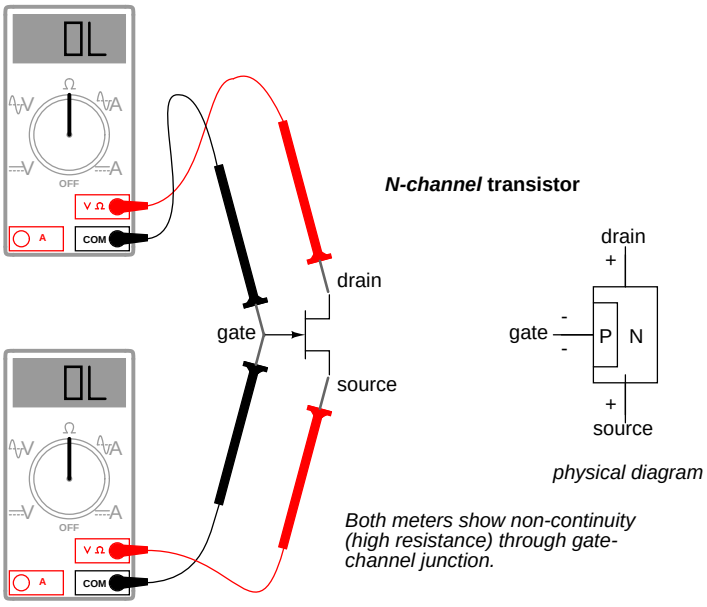
Like the bipolar transistor, it matters little where or what the controlling voltage comes from. We could use a solar cell, thermocouple, or any other sort of voltage-generating device to supply the voltage controlling the JFET's conduction. All that is required of a voltage source for JFET switch operation is *sufficient* voltage to achieve pinch-off of the JFET channel. This level is usually in the realm of a few volts DC, and is termed the *pinch-off* or *cutoff* voltage. The exact pinch-off voltage for any given JFET is a function of its unique design, and is not a

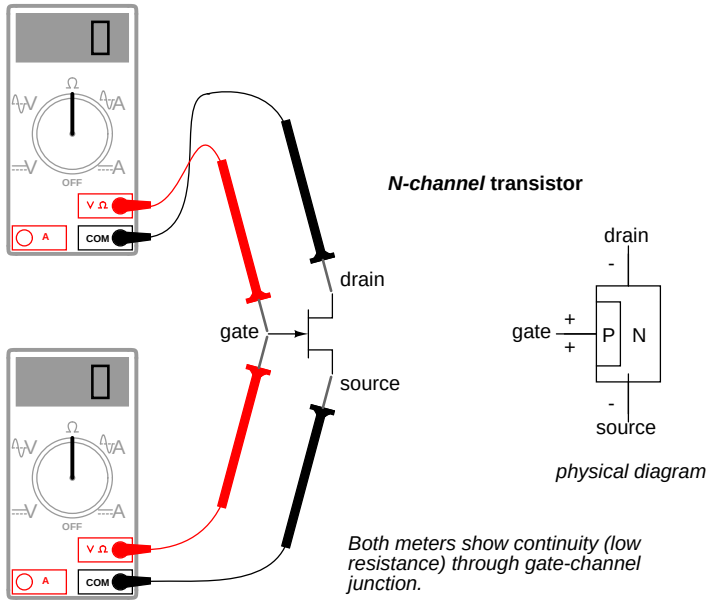
universal figure like 0.7 volts is for a silicon BJT's base-emitter junction voltage.

- **REVIEW:**
- Field-effect transistors control the current between source and drain connections by a voltage applied between the gate and source. In a *junction* field-effect transistor (JFET), there is a PN junction between the gate and source which is normally reverse-biased for control of source-drain current.
- JFETs are normally-on (normally-saturated) devices. The application of a reverse-biasing voltage between gate and source causes the depletion region of that junction to expand, thereby "pinching off" the channel between source and drain through which the controlled current travels.
- It may be necessary to attach a "bleed-off" resistor between gate and source to discharge the stored charge built up across the junction's natural capacitance when the controlling voltage is removed. Otherwise, a charge may remain to keep the JFET in cutoff mode even after the voltage source has been disconnected.

5.3 Meter check of a transistor

Testing a JFET with a multimeter might seem to be a relatively easy task, seeing as how it has only one PN junction to test: either measured between gate and source, or between gate and drain.





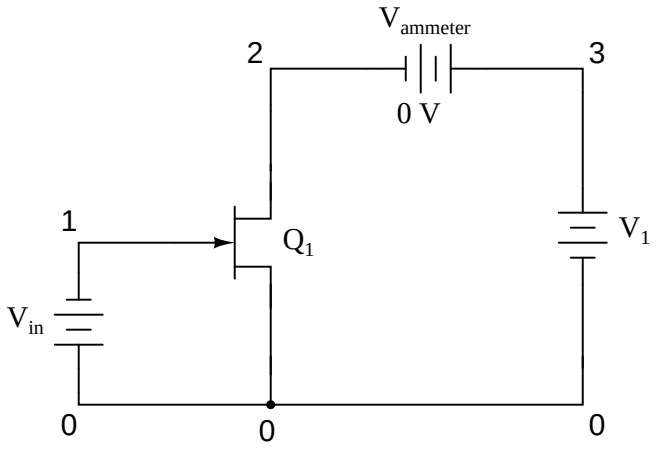
Testing continuity through the drain-source channel is another matter, though. Remember from the last section how a stored charge across the capacitance of the gate-channel PN junction could hold the JFET in a pinched-off state without any external voltage being applied across it? This can occur even when you're holding the JFET in your hand to test it! Consequently, any meter reading of continuity through that channel will be unpredictable, since you don't necessarily know if a charge is being stored by the gate-channel junction. Of course, if you know beforehand which terminals on the device are the gate, source, and drain, you may connect a jumper wire between gate and source to eliminate any stored charge and then proceed to test source-drain continuity with no problem. However, if you *don't* know which terminals are which, the unpredictability of the source-drain connection may confuse your determination of terminal identity.

A good strategy to follow when testing a JFET is to insert the pins of the transistor into anti-static foam (the material used to ship and store static-sensitive electronic components) just prior to testing. The conductivity of the foam will make a resistive connection between all terminals of the transistor when it is inserted. This connection will ensure that all residual voltage built up across the gate-channel PN junction will be neutralized, thus "opening up" the channel for an accurate meter test of source-to-drain continuity.

Since the JFET channel is a single, uninterrupted piece of semiconductor material, there is usually no difference between the source and drain terminals. A resistance check from source to drain should yield the same value as a check from drain to source. This resistance should be relatively low (a few hundred ohms at most) when the gate-source PN junction voltage is zero. By applying a reverse-bias voltage between gate and source, pinch-off of the channel should be apparent by an increased resistance reading on the meter.

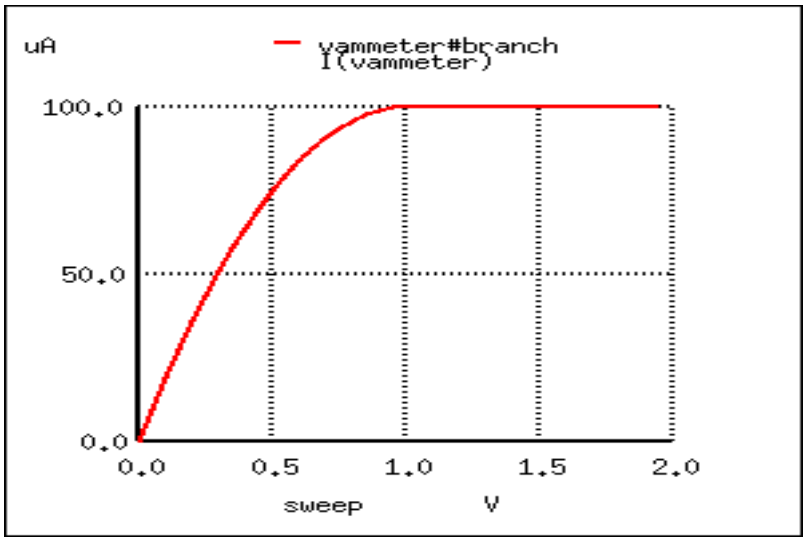
5.4 Active-mode operation

JFETs, like bipolar transistors, are able to "throttle" current in a mode between cutoff and saturation called the *active* mode. To better understand JFET operation, let's set up a SPICE simulation similar to the one used to explore basic bipolar transistor function:




```
jfet simulation
vin 0 1 dc 1
j1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc
.model mod1 njf
.dc v1 0 2 0.05
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```

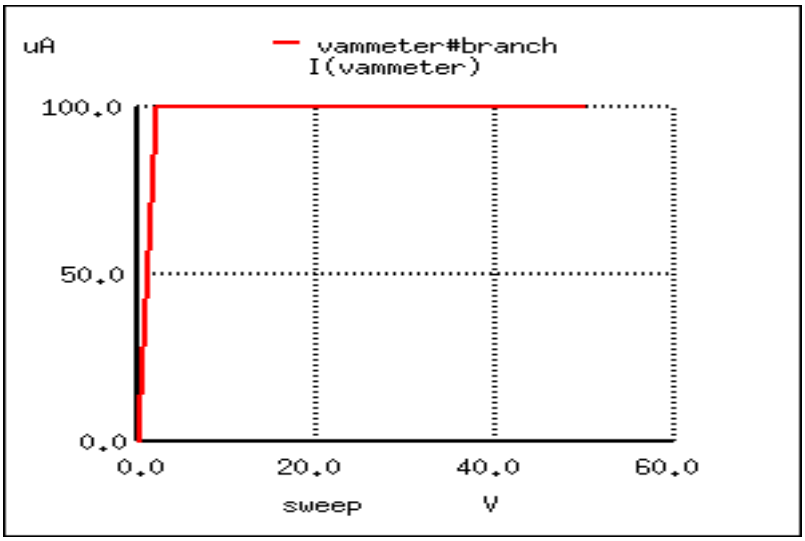
Note that the transistor labeled "Q_1" in the schematic is represented in the SPICE netlist as `j1`. Although all transistor types are commonly referred to as "Q" devices in circuit schematics – just as resistors are referred to by "R" designations, and capacitors by "C" – SPICE needs to be told what type of transistor this is by means of a different letter designation: `q` for bipolar junction transistors, and `j` for junction field-effect transistors.



Here, the controlling signal is a steady voltage of 1 volt, applied with negative towards the JFET gate and positive toward the JFET source, to reverse-bias the PN junction. In the first BJT simulation of chapter 4, a constant-current source of 20 μA was used for the controlling signal, but remember that a JFET is a *voltage-controlled* device, not a current-controlled device like the bipolar junction transistor.

Like the BJT, the JFET tends to regulate the controlled current at a fixed level above a certain power supply voltage, no matter how high that voltage may climb. Of course, this current regulation has limits in real life – no transistor can withstand infinite voltage from a power source – and with enough drain-to-source voltage the transistor will "break down" and drain current will surge. But within normal operating limits the JFET keeps the drain current at a steady level independent of power supply voltage. To verify this, we'll run another computer simulation, this time sweeping the power supply voltage (V_1) all the way to 50 volts:

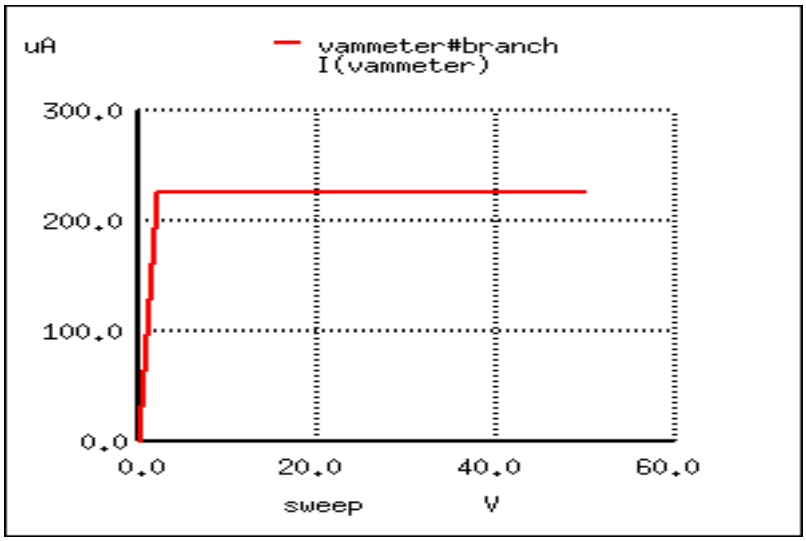
```
jfet simulation
vin 0 1 dc 1
j1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc
.model mod1 njf
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



Sure enough, the drain current remains steady at a value of 100 μA (1.000E-04 amps) no matter how high the power supply voltage is adjusted.

Because the input voltage has control over the constriction of the JFET's channel, it makes sense that changing this voltage should be the only action capable of altering the current regulation point for the JFET, just like changing the base current on a BJT is the only action capable of altering collector current regulation. Let's decrease the input voltage from 1 volt to 0.5 volts and see what happens:

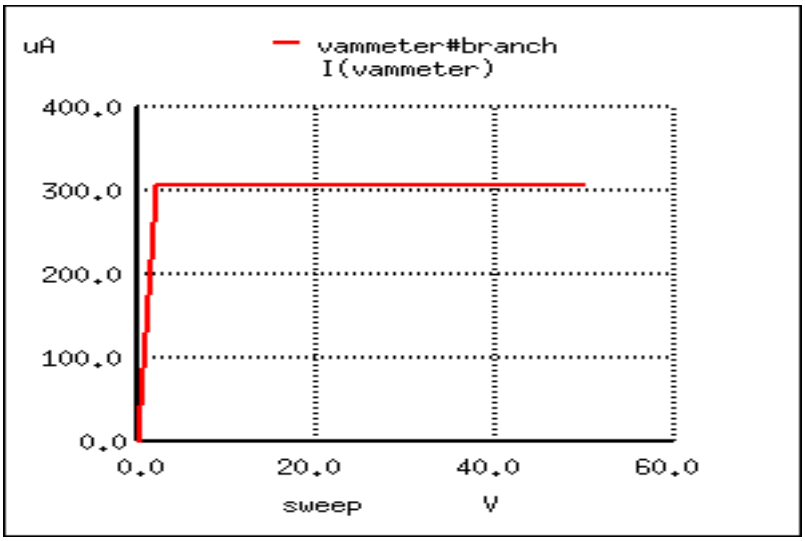
```
jfet simulation
vin 0 1 dc 0.5
j1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc
.model mod1 njf
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



As expected, the drain current is greater now than it was in the previous simulation. With less reverse-bias voltage impressed across the gate-source junction, the depletion region is not as wide as it was before, thus "opening" the channel for charge carriers and increasing the drain current figure.

Please note, however, the actual value of this new current figure: 225 μA (2.250E-04 amps). The last simulation showed a drain current of 100 μA, and that was with a gate-source voltage of 1 volt. Now that we've reduced the controlling voltage by a factor of 2 (from 1 volt down to 0.5 volts), the drain current increased, but not by the same 2:1 proportion! Let's reduce our gate-source voltage once more by another factor of 2 (down to 0.25 volts) and see what happens:

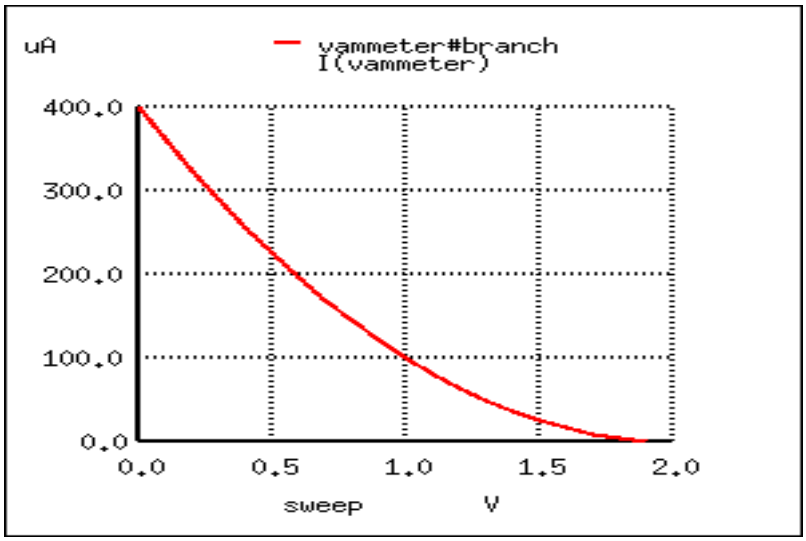
```
jfet simulation
vin 0 1 dc 0.25
j1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc
.model mod1 njf
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



With the gate-source voltage set to 0.25 volts, one-half what it was before, the drain current is 306.3 μA. Although this is still an increase over the 225 μA from the prior simulation, it isn't *proportional* to the change of the controlling voltage.

To obtain a better understanding of what is going on here, we should run a different kind of simulation: one that keeps the power supply voltage constant and instead varies the controlling (voltage) signal. When this kind of simulation was run on a BJT, the result was a straight-line graph, showing how the input current / output current relationship of a BJT is linear. Let's see what kind of relationship a JFET exhibits:

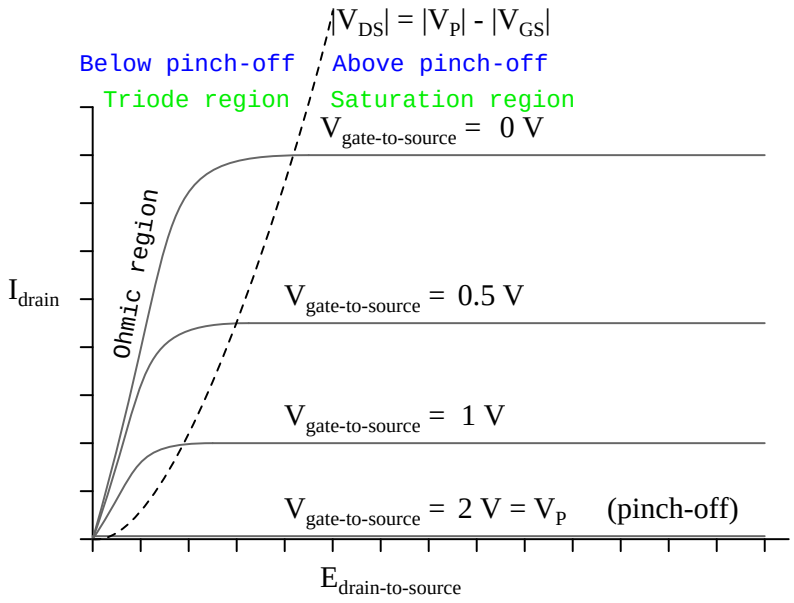
```
jfet simulation
vin 0 1 dc
j1 2 1 0 mod1
vammeter 3 2 dc 0
v1 3 0 dc 25
.model mod1 njf
.dc vin 0 2 0.1
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



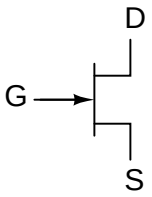
This simulation directly reveals an important characteristic of the junction field-effect transistor: the control effect of gate voltage over drain current is *nonlinear*. Notice how the drain current does not decrease linearly as the gate-source voltage is increased. With the bipolar junction transistor, collector current was directly proportional to base current: output signal proportionately followed input signal. Not so with the JFET! The controlling signal (gate-source voltage) has less and less effect over the drain current as it approaches cutoff. In this simulation, most of the controlling action (75 percent of drain current decrease – from 400 μA to 100 μA) takes place within the first volt of gate-source voltage (from 0 to 1 volt), while the remaining 25 percent of drain current reduction takes another whole volt worth of input signal. Cutoff occurs at 2 volts input.

Linearity is generally important for a transistor because it allows it to faithfully amplify a waveform without distorting it. If a transistor is nonlinear in its input/output amplification, the shape of the input waveform will become corrupted in some way, leading to the production of harmonics in the output signal. The only time linearity is *not* important in a transistor circuit is when its being operated at the extreme limits of cutoff and saturation (off and on, respectively, like a switch).

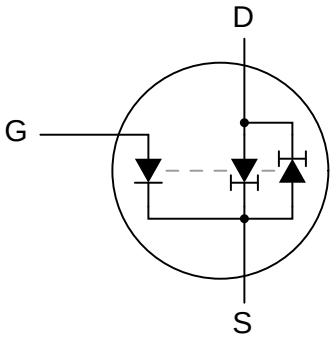
A JFET's characteristic curves display the same current-regulating behavior as for a BJT, and the nonlinearity between gate-to-source voltage and drain current is evident in the disproportionate vertical spacings between the curves:



To better comprehend the current-regulating behavior of the JFET, it might be helpful to draw a model made up of simpler, more common components, just as we did for the BJT:



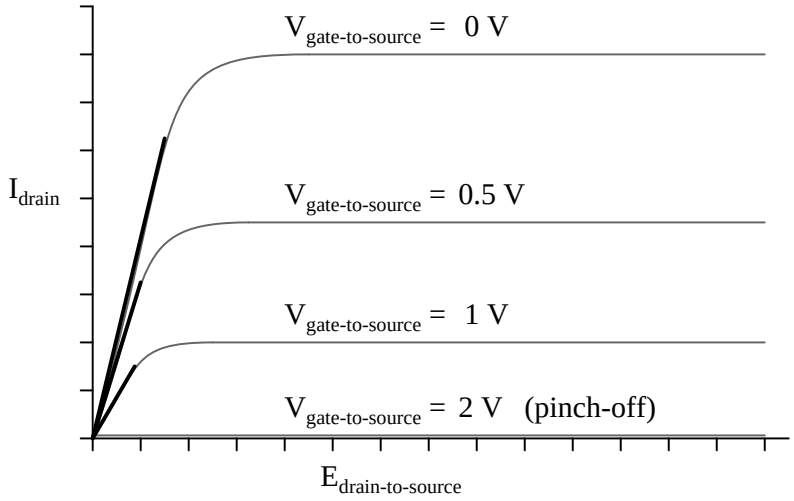
N-channel JFET diode-regulating diode model



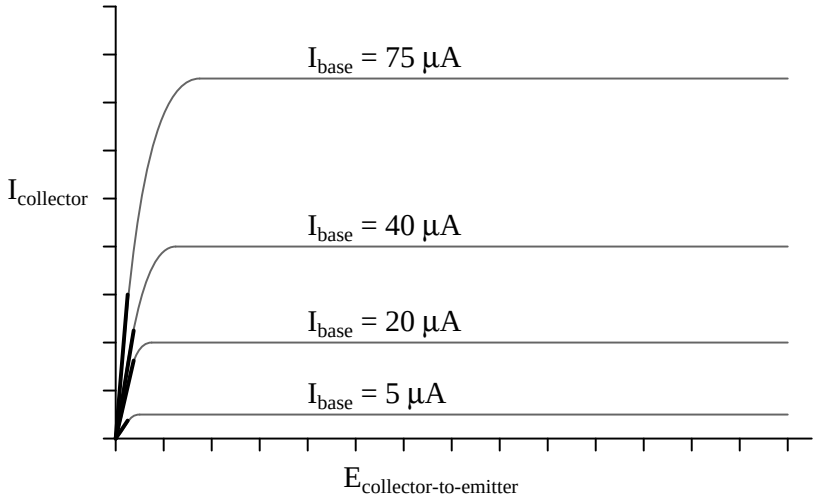
In the case of the JFET, it is the *voltage* across the reverse-biased gate-source diode which sets the current regulation point for the pair of constant-current diodes. A pair of opposing constant-current diodes is included in the model to facilitate current in either direction be-

tween source and drain, a trait made possible by the unipolar nature of the channel. With no PN junctions for the source-drain current to traverse, there is no polarity sensitivity in the controlled current. For this reason, JFETs are often referred to as *bilateral* devices.

A contrast of the JFET's characteristic curves against the curves for a bipolar transistor reveals a notable difference: the linear (straight) portion of each curve's non-horizontal area is surprisingly long compared to the respective portions of a BJT's characteristic curves:

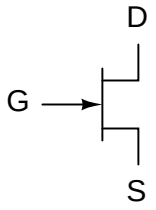


"Ohmic regions"

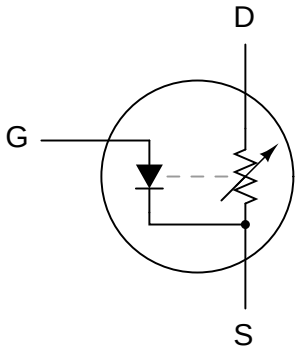


A JFET transistor operated in the *triode region* tends to act very much like a plain resistor as measured from drain to source. Like all simple resistances, its current/voltage graph is a straight line. For this reason, the triode region (non-horizontal) portion of a JFET's characteristic curve is sometimes referred to as the *ohmic region*. In this mode of operation where there

isn't enough drain-to-source voltage to bring drain current up to the regulated point, the drain current is directly proportional to the drain-to-source voltage. In a carefully designed circuit, this phenomenon can be used to an advantage. Operated in this region of the curve, the JFET acts like a voltage-controlled *resistance* rather than a voltage-controlled *current regulator*, and the appropriate model for the transistor is different:



N-channel JFET diode-rheostat model
(for saturation, or "ohmic," mode only!)



Here and here alone the rheostat (variable resistor) model of a transistor is accurate. It must be remembered, however, that this model of the transistor holds true only for a narrow range of its operation: when it is extremely saturated (far less voltage applied between drain and source than what is needed to achieve full regulated current through the drain). The amount of resistance (measured in ohms) between drain and source in this mode is controlled by how much reverse-bias voltage is applied between gate and source. The less gate-to-source voltage, the less resistance (steeper line on graph).

Because JFETs are *voltage*-controlled current regulators (at least when they're allowed to operate in their active), their inherent amplification factor cannot be expressed as a unitless ratio as with BJTs. In other words, there is no β ratio for a JFET. This is true for all voltage-controlled active devices, including other types of field-effect transistors and even electron tubes. There is, however, an expression of controlled (drain) current to controlling (gate-source) voltage, and it is called *transconductance*. Its unit is Siemens, the same unit for conductance (formerly known as the *mho*).

Why this choice of units? Because the equation takes on the general form of current (output signal) divided by voltage (input signal).

$$g_{fs} = \frac{\Delta I_D}{\Delta V_{GS}}$$

Where,

g_{fs} = Transconductance in Siemens
ΔI_D = Change in drain current
ΔV_{GS} = Change in gate-source voltage

Unfortunately, the transconductance value for any JFET is not a stable quantity: it varies significantly with the amount of gate-to-source control voltage applied to the transistor. As we saw in the SPICE simulations, the drain current does not change proportionally with changes in gate-source voltage. To calculate drain current for any given gate-source voltage, there is another equation that may be used. It is obviously nonlinear upon inspection (note the power of 2), reflecting the nonlinear behavior we've already experienced in simulation:

$$I_D = I_{DSS} \left(1 - \frac{V_{GS}}{V_{GS(cutoff)}} \right)^2$$

Where,

I_D = Drain current
I_{DSS} = Drain current with gate shorted to source
V_{GS} = Gate-to-source voltage
$V_{GS(cutoff)}$ = Pinch-off gate-to-source voltage

- **REVIEW:**
- In their active modes, JFETs regulate drain current according to the amount of reverse-bias voltage applied between gate and source, much like a BJT regulates collector current according to base current. The mathematical ratio between drain current (output) and gate-to-source voltage (input) is called *transconductance*, and it is measured in units of Siemens.
- The relationship between gate-source (control) voltage and drain (controlled) current is nonlinear: as gate-source voltage is decreased, drain current increases exponentially. That is to say, the transconductance of a JFET is not constant over its range of operation.
- In their triode region, JFETs regulate drain-to-source *resistance* according to the amount of reverse-bias voltage applied between gate and source. In other words, they act like voltage-controlled resistances.

5.5 The common-source amplifier – PENDING

***** PENDING *****

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

5.6 The common-drain amplifier – PENDING

***** PENDING *****

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

5.7 The common-gate amplifier – PENDING

***** PENDING *****

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

5.8 Biasing techniques – PENDING

***** PENDING *****

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

5.9 Transistor ratings and packages – PENDING

***** PENDING *****

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

5.10 JFET quirks – PENDING

***** PENDING *****

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

Chapter 6

INSULATED-GATE FIELD-EFFECT TRANSISTORS

Contents

***** INCOMPLETE *****

6.1 Introduction

As was stated in the last chapter, there is more than one type of field-effect transistor. The junction field-effect transistor, or JFET, uses voltage applied across a reverse-biased PN junction to control the width of that junction's depletion region, which then controls the conductivity of a semiconductor channel through which the controlled current moves. Another type of field-effect device – the insulated gate field-effect transistor, or IGFET – exploits a similar principle of a depletion region controlling conductivity through a semiconductor channel, but it differs primarily from the JFET in that there is no *direct* connection between the gate lead

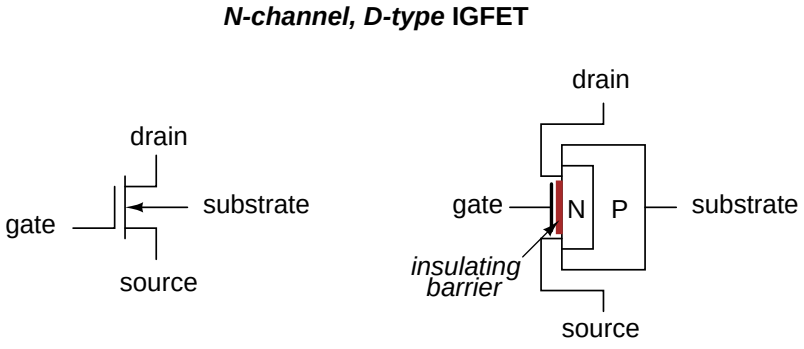
and the semiconductor material itself. Rather, the gate lead is insulated from the transistor body by a thin barrier, hence the term *insulated gate*. This insulating barrier acts like the dielectric layer of a capacitor, and allows gate-to-source voltage to influence the depletion region electrostatically rather than by direct connection.

In addition to a choice of N-channel versus P-channel design, IGFETs come in two major types: *enhancement* and *depletion*. The depletion type is more closely related to the JFET, so we will begin our study of IGFETs with it.

6.2 Depletion-type IGFETs

Insulated gate field-effect transistors are unipolar devices just like JFETs: that is, the controlled current does not have to cross a PN junction. There is a PN junction inside the transistor, but its only purpose is to provide that nonconducting depletion region which is used to restrict current through the channel.

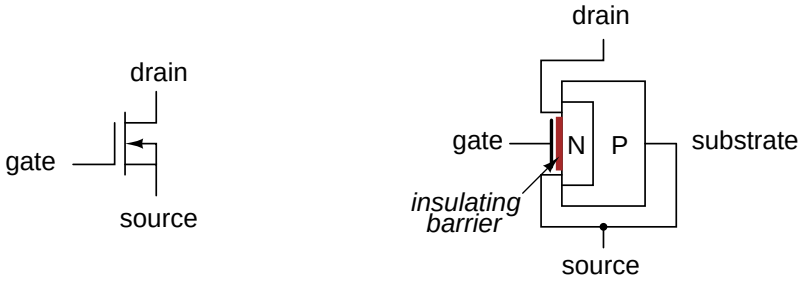
Here is a diagram of an N-channel IGFET of the "depletion" type:



Notice how the source and drain leads connect to either end of the N channel, and how the gate lead attaches to a metal plate separated from the channel by a thin insulating barrier. That barrier is sometimes made from silicon dioxide (the primary chemical compound found in sand), which is a very good insulator. Due to this **M**etal (gate) - **O**xide (barrier) - **S**emiconductor (channel) construction, the IGFET is sometimes referred to as a MOSFET. There are other types of IGFET construction, though, and so "IGFET" is the better descriptor for this general class of transistors.

Notice also how there are four connections to the IGFET. In practice, the *substrate* lead is directly connected to the *source* lead to make the two electrically common. Usually, this connection is made internally to the IGFET, eliminating the separate substrate connection, resulting in a three-terminal device with a slightly different schematic symbol:

***N-channel, D-type* IGFET**

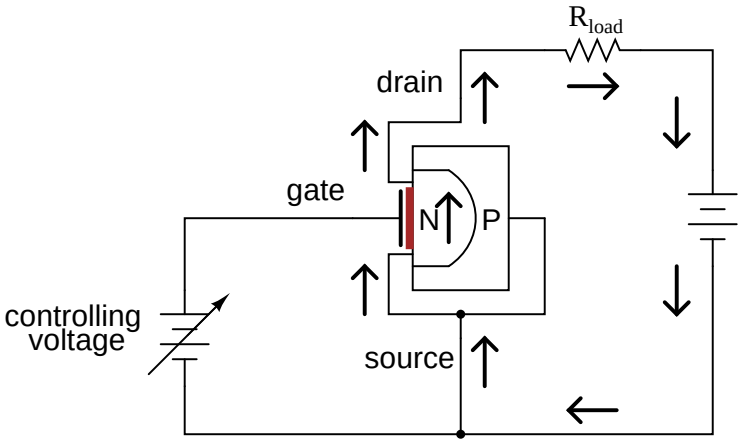


schematic symbol *physical diagram*

With source and substrate common to each other, the N and P layers of the IGFET end up being directly connected to each other through the outside wire. This connection prevents any voltage from being impressed across the PN junction. As a result, a depletion region exists between the two materials, but it can never be expanded or collapsed. JFET operation is based on the expansion of the PN junction's depletion region, but here in the IGFET that cannot happen, so IGFET operation must be based on a different effect.

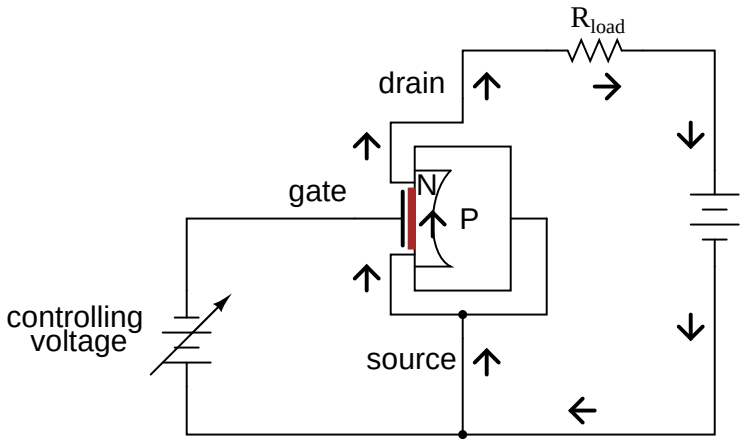
Indeed it is, for when a controlling voltage is applied between gate and source, the conductivity of the channel is changed as a result of the depletion region *moving* closer to or further away from the gate. In other words, the channel's effective width changes just as with the JFET, but this change in channel width is due to depletion region *displacement* rather than depletion region *expansion*.

In an N-channel IGFET, a controlling voltage applied positive (+) to the gate and negative (-) to the source has the effect of repelling the PN junction's depletion region, expanding the N-type channel and increasing conductivity:



Channel expands for greater conductivity

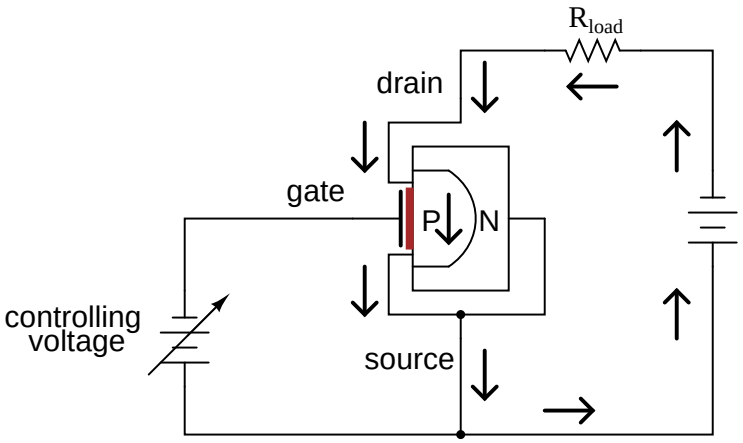
Reversing the controlling voltage's polarity has the opposite effect, attracting the depletion region and narrowing the channel, consequently reducing channel conductivity:



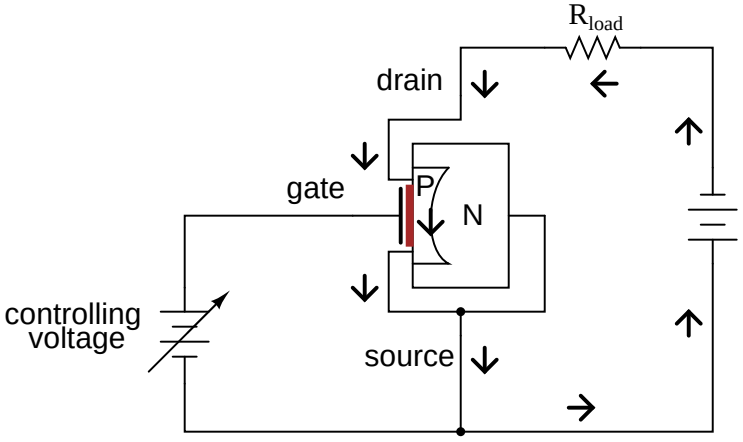
The insulated gate allows for controlling voltages of any polarity without danger of forward-biasing a junction, as was the concern with JFETs. This type of IGFET, although its called a "depletion-type," actually has the capability of having its channel *either* depleted (channel narrowed) *or* enhanced (channel expanded). Input voltage polarity determines which way the channel will be influenced.

Understanding which polarity has which effect is not as difficult as it may seem. The key is to consider the type of semiconductor doping used in the channel (N-channel or P-channel?), then relate that doping type to the side of the input voltage source connected to the channel by means of the source lead. If the IGFET is an N-channel and the input voltage is connected so that the positive (+) side is on the gate while the negative (-) side is on the source, the channel will be enhanced as extra electrons build up on the channel side of the dielectric barrier. Think, "negative (-) correlates with *N*-type, thus enhancing the channel with the right type of charge carrier (electrons) and making it more conductive." Conversely, if the input voltage is connected to an N-channel IGFET the other way, so that negative (-) connects to the gate while positive (+) connects to the source, free electrons will be "robbed" from the channel as the gate-channel capacitor charges, thus depleting the channel of majority charge carriers and making it less conductive.

For P-channel IGFETs, the input voltage polarity and channel effects follow the same rule. That is to say, it takes just the opposite polarity as an N-channel IGFET to either deplete or enhance:

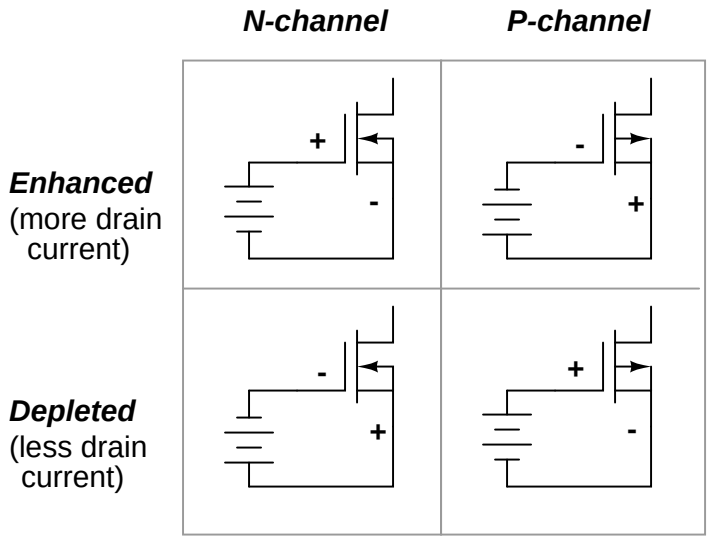


Channel expands for greater conductivity



Channel narrows for less conductivity

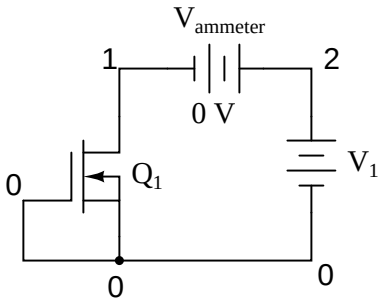
Illustrating the proper biasing polarities with standard IGFET symbols:



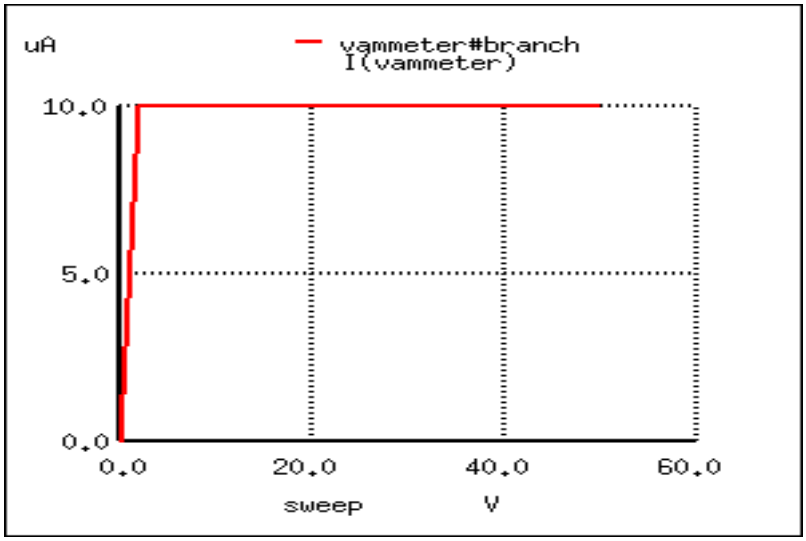
When there is zero voltage applied between gate and source, the IGFET will conduct current between source and drain, but not as much current as it would if it were enhanced by the proper gate voltage. This places the depletion-type, or simply *D-type*, IGFET in a category of its own in the transistor world. Bipolar junction transistors are *normally-off* devices: with no base current, they block any current from going through the collector. Junction field-effect transistors are *normally-on* devices: with zero applied gate-to-source voltage, they allow maximum drain current (actually, you can coax a JFET into greater drain currents by applying a very small forward-bias voltage between gate and source, but this should never be done in practice for risk of damaging its fragile PN junction). D-type IGFETs, however, are *normally half-on* devices: with no gate-to-source voltage, their conduction level is somewhere between cutoff and full saturation. Also, they will tolerate applied gate-source voltages of any polarity, the PN junction being immune from damage due to the insulating barrier and especially the direct connection between source and substrate preventing any voltage differential across the junction.

Ironically, the conduction behavior of a D-type IGFET is strikingly similar to that of an electron tube of the triode/tetrode/pentode variety. These devices were voltage-controlled current regulators that likewise allowed current through them with zero controlling voltage applied. A controlling voltage of one polarity (grid negative and cathode positive) would diminish conductivity through the tube while a voltage of the other polarity (grid positive and cathode negative) would enhance conductivity. I find it curious that one of the later transistor designs invented exhibits the same basic properties of the very first active (electronic) device.

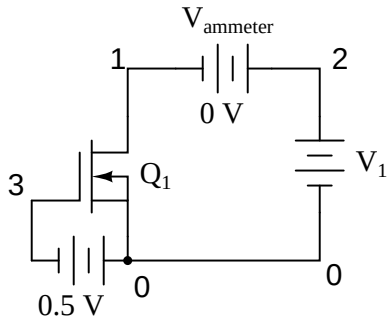
A few SPICE analyses will demonstrate the current-regulating behavior of D-type IGFETs. First, a test with zero input voltage (gate shorted to source) and the power supply swept from 0 to 50 volts. The graph shows drain current:



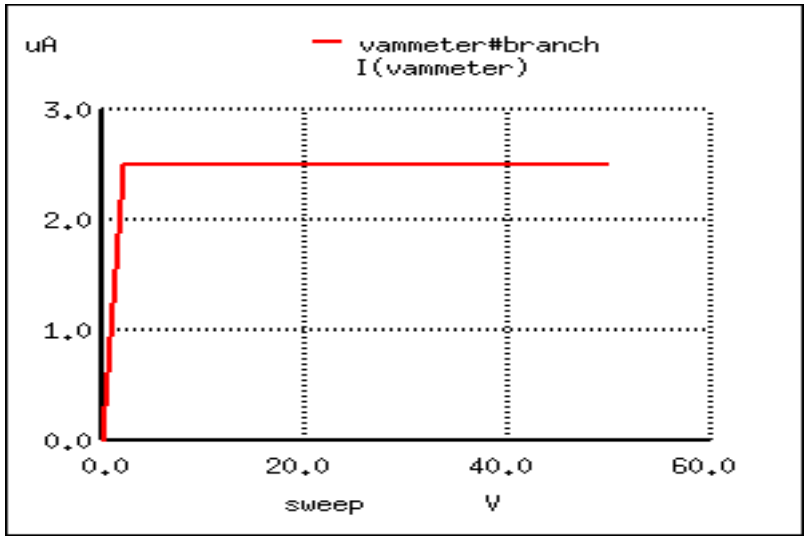

```
n-channel igfet characteristic curve
m1 1 0 0 0 mod1
vammeter 2 1 dc 0
v1 2 0
.model mod1 nmos vto=-1
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



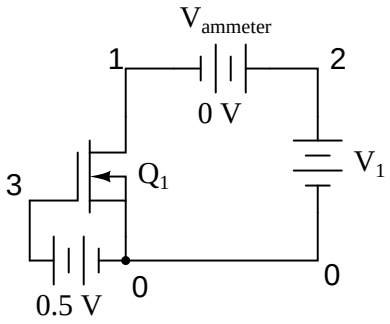
As expected for any transistor, the controlled current holds steady at a regulated value over a wide range of power supply voltages. In this case, that regulated point is 10 μA (1.000E-05). Now let's see what happens when we apply a negative voltage to the gate (with reference to the source) and sweep the power supply over the same range of 0 to 50 volts:



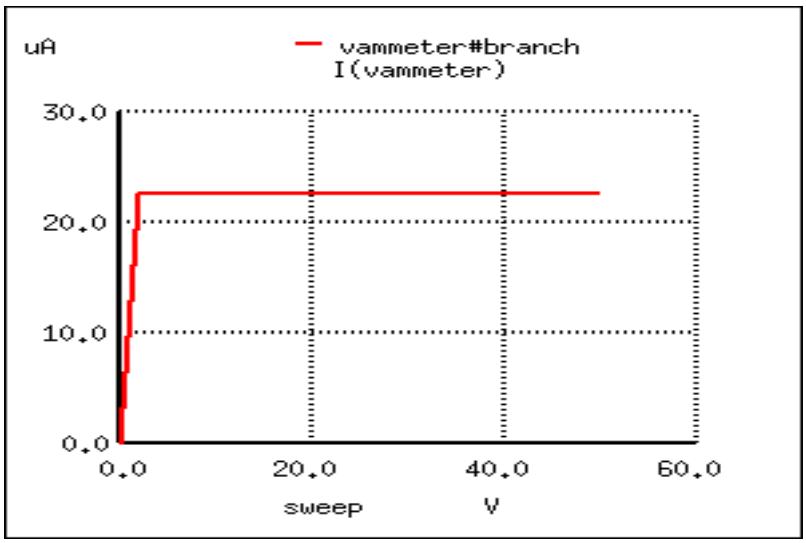

```
n-channel igfet characteristic curve
m1 1 3 0 0 mod1
vin 0 3 dc 0.5
vammeter 2 1 dc 0
v1 2 0
.model mod1 nmos vto=-1
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



Not surprisingly, the drain current is now regulated at a lower value of 2.5 μA (down from 10 μA with zero input voltage). Now let's apply an input voltage of the other polarity, to *enhance* the IGFET:



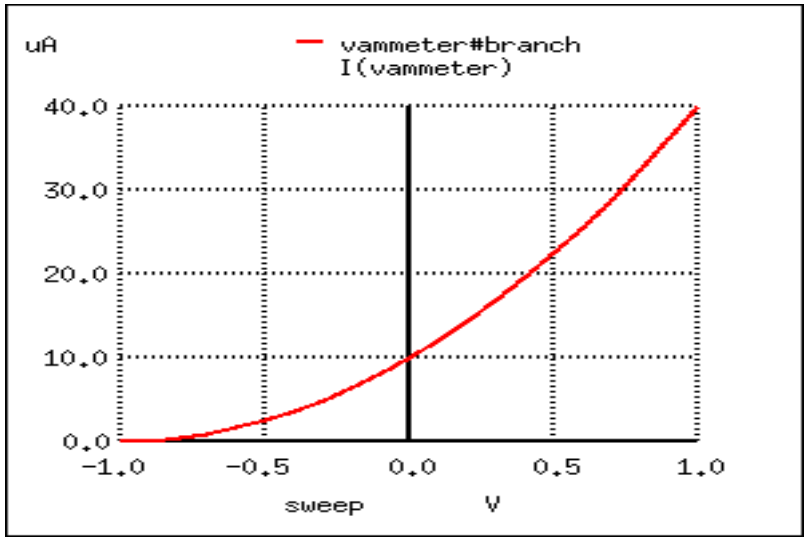

```
n-channel igfet characteristic curve
m1 1 3 0 0 mod1
vin 3 0 dc 0.5
vammeter 2 1 dc 0
v1 2 0
.model mod1 nmos vto=-1
.dc v1 0 50 2
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



With the transistor enhanced by the small controlling voltage, the drain current is now at an increased value of 22.5 μA (2.250E-05). It should be apparent from these three sets of voltage and current figures that the relationship of drain current to gate-source voltage is nonlinear just as it was with the JFET. With 1/2 volt of depleting voltage, the drain current is 2.5 μA; with 0 volts input the drain current goes up to 10 μA; and with 1/2 volt of enhancing voltage, the current is at 22.5 μA. To obtain a better understanding of this nonlinearity, we

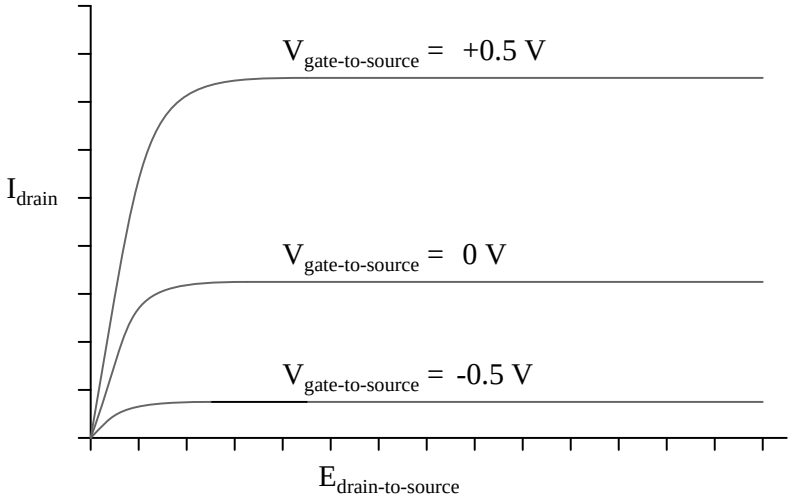
can use SPICE to plot the drain current over a range of input voltage values, sweeping from a negative (depleting) figure to a positive (enhancing) figure, maintaining the power supply voltage of V_1 at a constant value:

```
n-channel igfet
m1 1 3 0 0 mod1
vin 3 0
vammeter 2 1 dc 0
v1 2 0 dc 24
.model mod1 nmos vto=-1
.dc vin -1 1 0.1
.plot dc i(vammeter)
.end
```



Just as it was with JFETs, this inherent nonlinearity of the IGFET has the potential to cause distortion in an amplifier circuit, as the input signal will not be reproduced with 100 percent accuracy at the output. Also notice that a gate-source voltage of about 1 volt in the depleting direction is able to pinch off the channel so that there is virtually no drain current. D-type IGFETs, like JFETs, have a certain pinch-off voltage rating. This rating varies with the precise unique of the transistor, and may not be the same as in our simulation here.

Plotting a set of characteristic curves for the IGFET, we see a pattern not unlike that of the JFET:



- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.3 Enhancement-type IGFETs – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.4 Active-mode operation – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.5 The common-source amplifier – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.6 The common-drain amplifier – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.7 The common-gate amplifier – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.8 Biasing techniques – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.9 Transistor ratings and packages – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

6.10 IGFET quirks – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

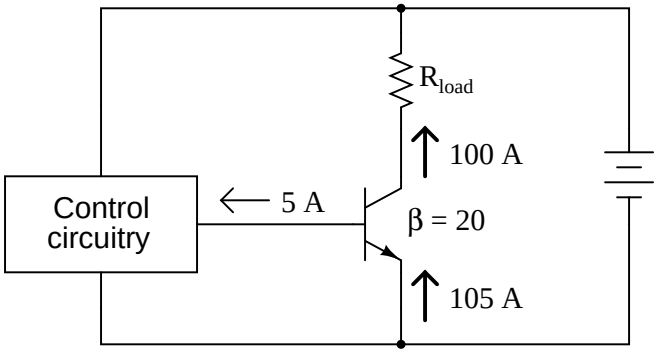
6.11 MESFETs – PENDING

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

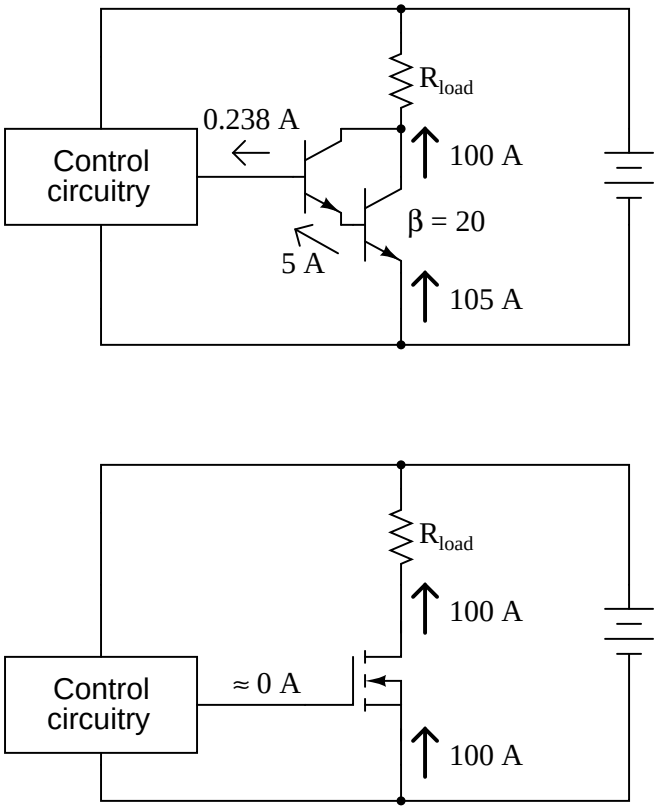
6.12 IGBTs

Because of their insulated gates, IGFETs of all types have extremely high current gain: there can be no sustained gate current if there is no continuous gate *circuit* in which electrons may continually flow. The only current we see through the gate terminal of an IGFET, then, is whatever transient (brief surge) may be required to charge the gate-channel capacitance and displace the depletion region as the transistor switches from an "on" state to an "off" state, or vice versa.

This high current gain would at first seem to place IGFET technology at a decided advantage over bipolar transistors for the control of very large currents. If a bipolar junction transistor is used to control a large collector current, there must be a substantial base current sourced or sunk by some control circuitry, in accordance with the β ratio. To give an example, in order for a power BJT with a β of 20 to conduct a collector current of 100 amps, there must be at least 5 amps of base current, a substantial amount of current in itself for miniature discrete or integrated control circuitry to handle:



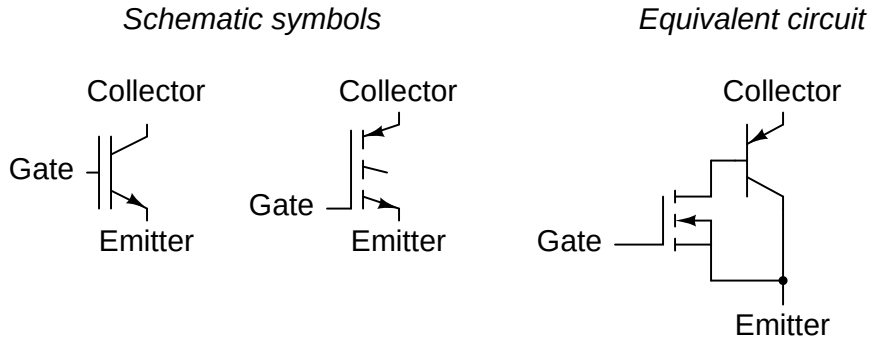
It would be nice from the standpoint of control circuitry to have power transistors with high current gain, so that far less current is needed for control of load current. Of course, we can use Darlington pair transistors to increase the current gain, but this kind of arrangement still requires *far* more controlling current than an equivalent power IGFET:



Unfortunately, though, IGFETs have problems of their own controlling high current: they typically exhibit greater drain-to-source voltage drop while saturated than the collector-to-emitter voltage drop of a saturated BJT. This greater voltage drop equates to higher power dissipation for the same amount of load current, limiting the usefulness of IGFETs as high-power devices. Although some specialized designs such as the so-called VMOS transistor have been designed to minimize this inherent disadvantage, the bipolar junction transistor is still superior in its ability to switch high currents.

An interesting solution to this dilemma leverages the best features of IGFETs with the best of features of BJTs, in one device called an *Insulated-Gate Bipolar Transistor*, or *IGBT*. Also known as an *Bipolar-mode MOSFET*, a *Conductivity-Modulated Field-Effect Transistor* (*COMFET*), or simply as an *Insulated-Gate Transistor* (*IGT*), it is equivalent to a Darlington pair of IGFET and BJT:

Insulated-Gate Bipolar Transistor (IGBT)
(N-channel)



In essence, the IGFET controls the base current of a BJT, which handles the main load current between collector and emitter. This way, there is extremely high current gain (since the insulated gate of the IGFET draws practically no current from the control circuitry), but the collector-to-emitter voltage drop during full conduction is as low as that of an ordinary BJT.

One disadvantage of the IGBT over a standard BJT is its slower turn-off time. For *fast* switching and high current-handling capacity, its difficult to beat the bipolar junction transistor. Faster turn-off times for the IGBT may be achieved by certain changes in design, but only at the expense of a higher saturated voltage drop between collector and emitter. However, the IGBT provides a good alternative to IGFETs and BJTs for high-power control applications.

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

Chapter 7

THYRISTORS

Contents

***** INCOMPLETE *****

7.1 Hysteresis

Thyristors are a class of semiconductor components exhibiting *hysteresis*, that property whereby a system fails to return to its original state after some cause of state change has been removed. A very simple example of hysteresis is the mechanical action of a toggle switch: when the lever is pushed, it flips to one of two extreme states (positions) and will remain there even after the source of motion is removed (after you remove your hand from the switch lever). To illustrate the absence of hysteresis, consider the action of a "momentary" pushbutton switch, which returns to its original state after the button is no longer pressed: when the stimulus is removed (your hand), the system (switch) immediately and fully returns to its prior state with no "latching" behavior.

Bipolar, junction field-effect, and insulated gate field-effect transistors are all non-hysteretic devices. That is, they do not inherently "latch" into a state after being stimulated by a voltage or current signal. For any given input signal at any given time, a transistor will exhibit

a predictable output response as defined by its characteristic curve. Thyristors, on the other hand, are semiconductor devices that tend to stay ”on” once turned on, and tend to stay ”off” once turned off. A momentary event is able to flip these devices into either their on or off states where they will remain that way on their own, even after the cause of the state change is taken away. As such, they are useful only as on/off switching devices – much like a toggle switch – and cannot be used as analog signal amplifiers.

Thyristors are constructed using the same technology as bipolar junction transistors, and in fact may be analyzed as circuits comprised of transistor pairs. How then, can a hysteretic device (a thyristor) be made from non-hysteretic devices (transistors)? The answer to this question is *positive feedback*, also known as *regenerative feedback*. As you should recall, feedback is the condition where a percentage of the output signal is ”fed back” to the input of an amplifying device. Negative, or degenerative, feedback results in a diminishing of voltage gain with increases in stability, linearity, and bandwidth. Positive feedback, on the other hand, results in a kind of instability where the amplifier’s output tends to ”saturate.” In the case of thyristors, this saturating tendency equates to the device ”wanting” to stay on once turned on, and off once turned off.

In this chapter we will explore several different kinds of thyristors, most of which stem from a single, basic two-transistor core circuit. Before we do that, though, it would be beneficial to study the technological predecessor to thyristors: gas discharge tubes.

7.2 Gas discharge tubes

If you’ve ever witnessed a lightning storm, you’ve seen electrical hysteresis in action (and probably didn’t realize what you were seeing). The action of strong wind and rain accumulates tremendous static electric charges between cloud and earth, and between clouds as well. Electric charge imbalances manifest themselves as high voltages, and when the electrical resistance of air can no longer hold these high voltages at bay, huge surges of current travel between opposing poles of electrical charge which we call ”lightning.”

The buildup of high voltages by wind and rain is a fairly continuous process, the rate of charge accumulation increasing under the proper atmospheric conditions. However, lightning bolts are anything but continuous: they exist as relatively brief surges rather than continuous discharges. Why is this? Why don’t we see soft, glowing lightning *arcs* instead of violently brief lightning *bolts*? The answer lies in the nonlinear (and hysteretic) resistance of air.

Under ordinary conditions, air has an extremely high amount of resistance. It is so high, in fact, that we typically treat its resistance as infinite and electrical conduction through the air as negligible. The presence of water and/or dust in air lowers its resistance some, but it is still an insulator for most practical purposes. When a sufficient amount of high voltage is applied across a distance of air, though, its electrical properties change: electrons become ”stripped” from their normal positions around their respective atoms and are liberated to constitute a current. In this state, air is considered to be *ionized* and is referred to as a *plasma* rather than a normal *gas*. This usage of the word ”plasma” is not to be confused with the medical term (meaning the fluid portion of blood), but is a fourth state of matter, the other three being solid, liquid, and vapor (gas). Plasma is a relatively good conductor of electricity, its specific resistance being much lower than that of the same substance in its gaseous state.

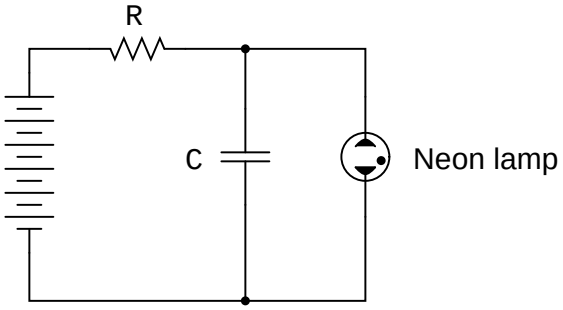
As an electric current moves through the plasma, there is energy dissipated in the plasma

in the form of heat, just as current through a solid resistor dissipates energy in the form of heat. In the case of lightning, the temperatures involved are extremely high. High temperatures are also sufficient to convert gaseous air into a plasma or maintain plasma in that state without the presence of high voltage. As the voltage between cloud and earth, or between cloud and cloud, decreases as the charge imbalance is neutralized by the current of the lightning bolt, the heat dissipated by the bolt maintains the air path in a plasma state, keeping its resistance low. The lightning bolt remains a plasma until the voltage decreases to too low a level to sustain enough current to dissipate enough heat. Finally, the air returns to a normal, gaseous state and stops conducting current, thus allowing voltage to build up once more.

Note how throughout this cycle, the air exhibits hysteresis. When not conducting electricity, it tends to *remain an insulator* until voltage builds up past a critical threshold point. Then, once it changes state and becomes a plasma, it tends to *remain a conductor* until voltage falls below a lower critical threshold point. Once "turned on" it tends to stay "on," and once "turned off" it tends to stay "off." This hysteresis, combined with a steady buildup of voltage due to the electrostatic effects of wind and rain, explains the action of lightning as brief bursts.

In electronic terms, what we have here in the action of lightning is a simple *relaxation oscillator*. Oscillators are electronic circuits that produce an oscillating (AC) voltage from a steady supply of DC power. A relaxation oscillator is one that works on the principle of a charging capacitor that is suddenly discharged every time its voltage reaches a critical threshold value. One of the simplest relaxation oscillators in existence is comprised of three components (not counting the DC power supply): a resistor, capacitor, and neon lamp:

Simple relaxation oscillator



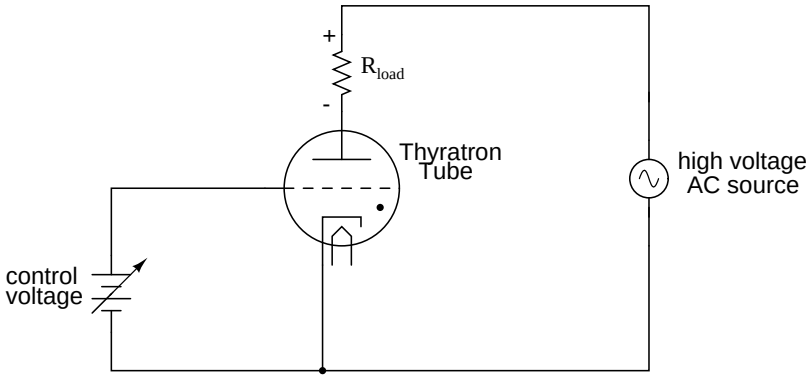
Neon lamps are nothing more than two metal electrodes inside a sealed glass bulb, separated by the neon gas inside. At room temperatures and with no applied voltage, the lamp has nearly infinite resistance. However, once a certain threshold voltage is exceeded (this voltage depends on the gas pressure and geometry of the lamp), the neon gas will become ionized (turned into a plasma) and its resistance dramatically reduced. In effect, the neon lamp exhibits the same characteristics as air in a lightning storm, complete with the emission of light as a result of the discharge, albeit on a much smaller scale.

The capacitor in the relaxation oscillator circuit shown above charges at an inverse exponential rate determined by the size of the resistor. When its voltage reaches the threshold voltage of the lamp, the lamp suddenly "turns on" and quickly discharges the capacitor to a low voltage value. Once discharged, the lamp "turns off" and allows the capacitor to build up

a charge once more. The result is a series of brief flashes of light from the lamp, the rate of which dictated by battery voltage, resistor resistance, capacitor capacitance, and lamp threshold voltage.

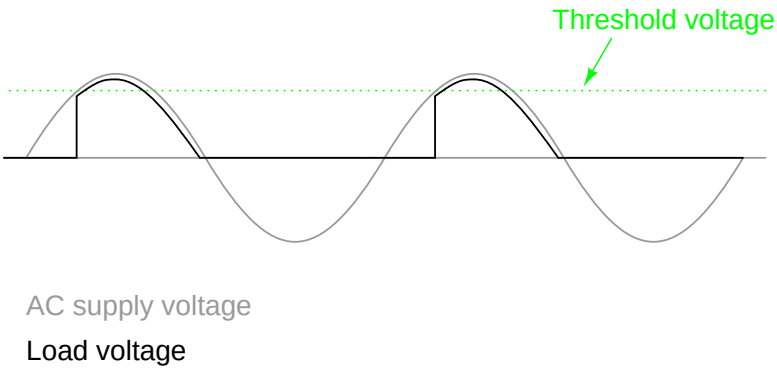
While gas-discharge lamps are more commonly used as sources of illumination, their hysteretic properties were leveraged in slightly more sophisticated variants known as *thyratron tubes*. Essentially a gas-filled triode tube (a triode being a three-element vacuum electron tube performing much a similar function to the N-channel, D-type IGFET), the thyratron tube could be turned on with a small control voltage applied between grid and cathode, and turned off by reducing the plate-to-cathode voltage.

(Simple) Thyratron control circuit



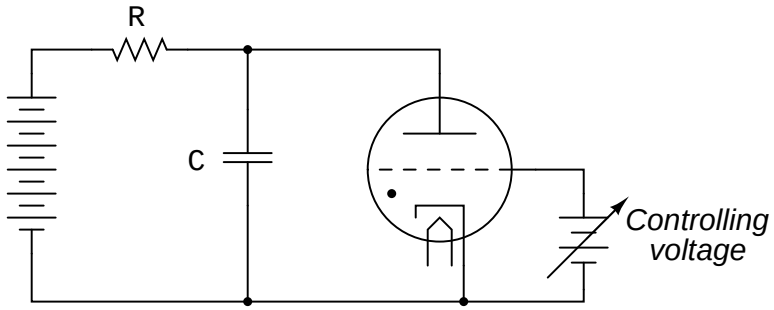
In essence, thyratron tubes were *controlled* versions of neon lamps built specifically for switching current to a load. The dot inside the circle of the schematic symbol indicates a gas fill, as opposed to the hard vacuum normally seen in other electron tube designs. In the circuit shown above, the thyratron tube allows current through the load in one direction (note the polarity across the load resistor) when triggered by the small DC control voltage connected between grid and cathode. Note that the load's power source is AC, which provides a clue as to how the thyratron turns off after its been triggered on: since AC voltage periodically passes through a condition of 0 volts between half-cycles, the current through an AC-powered load must also periodically halt. This brief pause of current between half-cycles gives the tube's gas time to cool, letting it return to its normal "off" state. Conduction may resume only if there is enough voltage applied by the AC power source (some other time in the wave's cycle) *and* if the DC control voltage allows it.

An oscilloscope display of load voltage in such a circuit would look something like this:



As the AC supply voltage climbs from zero volts to its first peak, the load voltage remains at zero (no load current) until the threshold voltage is reached. At that point, the tube switches ”on” and begins to conduct, the load voltage now following the AC voltage through the rest of the half cycle. Notice how there is load voltage (and thus load current) even when the AC voltage waveform has dropped below the threshold value of the tube. This is hysteresis at work: the tube stays in its conductive mode past the point where it first turned on, continuing to conduct until there the supply voltage drops off to almost zero volts. Because thyratron tubes are one-way (diode) devices, there is no voltage across the load through the negative half-cycle of AC. In practical thyratron circuits, multiple tubes arranged in some form of full-wave rectifier circuit to facilitate full-wave DC power to the load.

The thyratron tube has been applied to a relaxation oscillator circuit. [1] The frequency is controlled by a small DC voltage between grid and cathode. This voltage-controlled oscillator is known as a *VCO*. Relaxation oscillators produce a very non-sinusoidal output, and so they exist mostly as demonstration circuits (as is the case here) or in applications where the harmonic rich waveform is desirable. [2]



I speak of thyratron tubes in the past tense for good reason: modern semiconductor components have obsoleted thyratron tube technology for all but a few very special applications. It is no coincidence that the word *thyristor* bears so much similarity to the word *thyratron*, for this class of semiconductor components does much the same thing: use *hys*ter*e*tically switch current on and off. It is these modern devices that we now turn our attention to.

- **REVIEW:**
- Electrical *hysteresis*, the tendency for a component to remain ”on” (conducting) after it

begins to conduct and to remain "off" (nonconducting) after it ceases to conduct, helps to explain why lightning bolts exist as momentary surges of current rather than continuous discharges through the air.

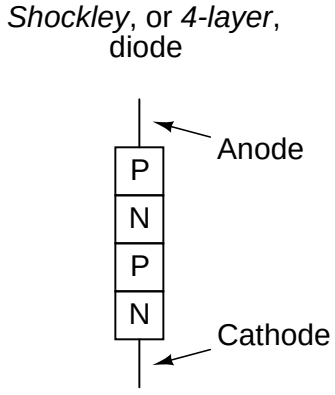
- Simple gas-discharge tubes such as neon lamps exhibit electrical hysteresis.

- More advanced gas-discharge tubes have been made with control elements so that their "turn-on" voltage could be adjusted by an external signal. The most common of these tubes was called the *thyratron*.

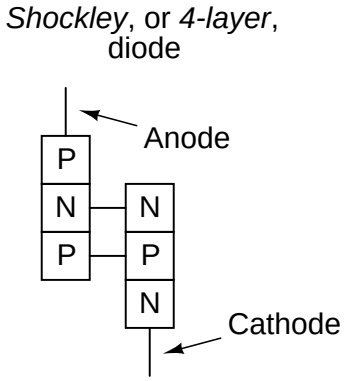
- Simple oscillator circuits called *relaxation oscillators* may be created with nothing more than a resistor-capacitor charging network and a hysteretic device connected across the capacitor.

7.3 The Shockley Diode

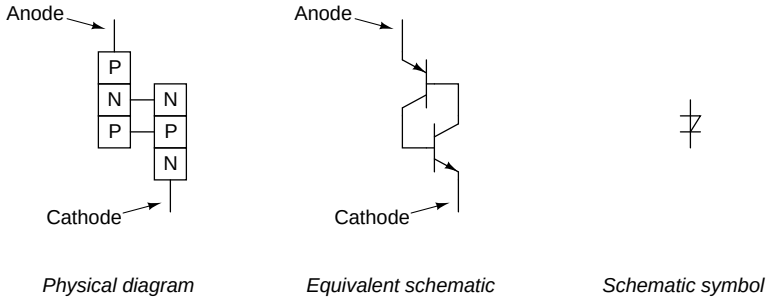
Our exploration of thyristors begins with a device called the *four-layer diode*, also known as a *PNPN diode*, or a *Shockley diode* after its inventor, William Shockley. This is not to be confused with a *Schottky diode*, that two-layer metal-semiconductor device known for its high switching speed. A crude illustration of the Shockley diode, often seen in textbooks, is a four-layer sandwich of P-N-P-N semiconductor material:



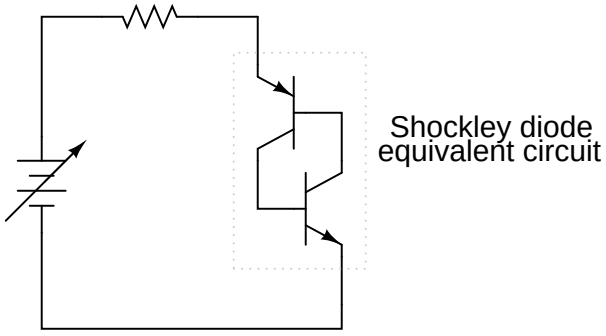
Unfortunately, this simple illustration does nothing to enlighten the viewer on how it works or why. Consider an alternative rendering of the device's construction:



Shown like this, it appears to be a set of interconnected bipolar transistors, one PNP and the other NPN. Drawn using standard schematic symbols, and respecting the layer doping concentrations not shown in the last image, the Shockley diode looks like this:



Let's connect one of these devices to a source of variable voltage and see what happens:

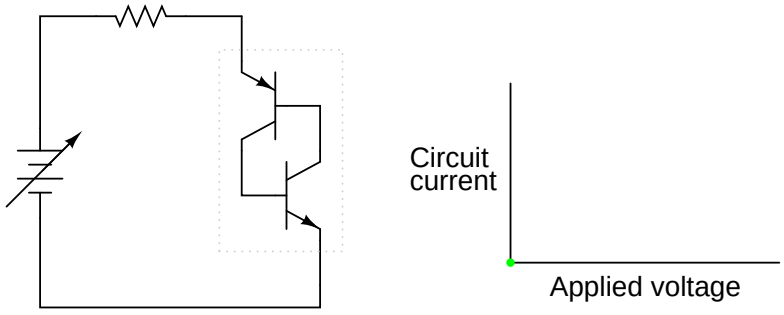


With no voltage applied, of course there will be no current. As voltage is initially increased, there will still be no current because neither transistor is able to turn on: both will be in cutoff mode. To understand why this is, consider what it takes to turn a bipolar junction transistor on: current through the base-emitter junction. As you can see in the diagram, base current through the lower transistor is controlled by the upper transistor, and the base current through the upper transistor is controlled by the lower transistor. In other words, neither transistor can turn on until the *other* transistor turns on. What we have here, in vernacular terms, is known as a Catch-22.

So how can a Shockley diode ever conduct current, if its constituent transistors stubbornly maintain themselves in a state of cutoff? The answer lies in the behavior of *real* transistors as opposed to *ideal* transistors. An ideal bipolar transistor will never conduct collector current if there is no base current, no matter how much or little voltage we apply between collector and emitter. Real transistors, on the other hand, have definite limits to how much collector-emitter voltage they can withstand before they break down and conduct. If two real transistors are connected together in this fashion to form a Shockley diode, they *will* be able to conduct if there is sufficient voltage applied by the battery between anode and cathode to cause one of them to break down. Once one transistor breaks down and begins to conduct, it will allow base current through the other transistor, causing it to turn on in a normal fashion, which then allows base current through the first transistor. The end result is that both transistors will be saturated, now keeping each other turned on instead of off.

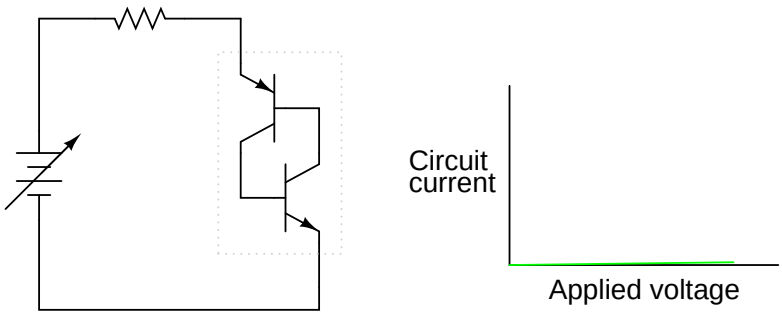
So, we can force a Shockley diode to turn on by applying sufficient voltage between anode and cathode. As we have seen, this will inevitably cause one of the transistors to turn on, which then turns the other transistor on, ultimately "latching" both transistors on where they will tend to remain. But how do we now get the two transistors to turn off again? Even if the applied voltage is reduced to a point well below what it took to get the Shockley diode conducting, it will remain conducting because both transistors now have base current to maintain regular, controlled conduction. The answer to this is to reduce the applied voltage to a much lower point where there is too little current to maintain transistor bias, at which point one of the transistors will cutoff, which then halts base current through the other transistor, sealing both transistors in the "off" state as they were before any voltage was applied at all.

If we graph this sequence of events and plot the results on an I/V graph, the hysteresis is very evident. First, we will observe the circuit as the DC voltage source (battery) is set to zero voltage:



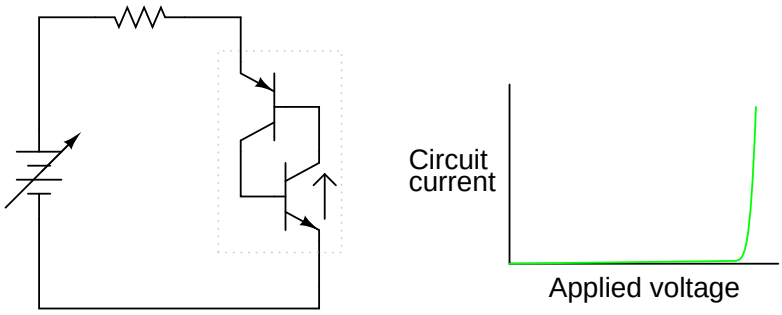
Zero applied voltage; zero current

Next, we will steadily increase the DC voltage. Current through the circuit is at or nearly at zero, as the breakdown limit has not been reached for either transistor:



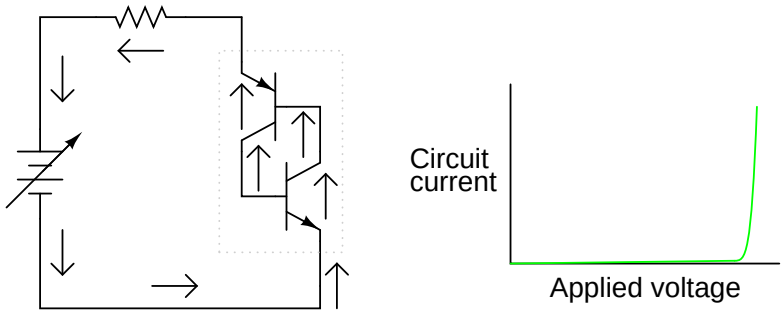
Some voltage applied, still no appreciable current

When the voltage breakdown limit of one transistor is reached, it will begin to conduct collector current even though no base current has gone through it yet. Normally, this sort of treatment would destroy a bipolar junction transistor, but the PNP junctions comprising a Shockley diode are engineered to take this kind of abuse, similar to the way a Zener diode is built to handle reverse breakdown without sustaining damage. For the sake of illustration I'll assume the lower transistor breaks down first, sending current through the base of the upper transistor:



More voltage applied; lower transistor breaks down

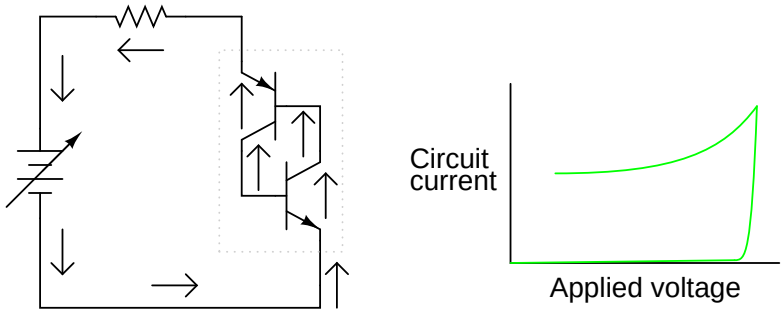
As the upper transistor receives base current, it turns on as expected. This action allows the lower transistor to conduct normally, the two transistors "sealing" themselves in the "on" state. Full current is very quickly seen in the circuit:



Transistors now fully conducting

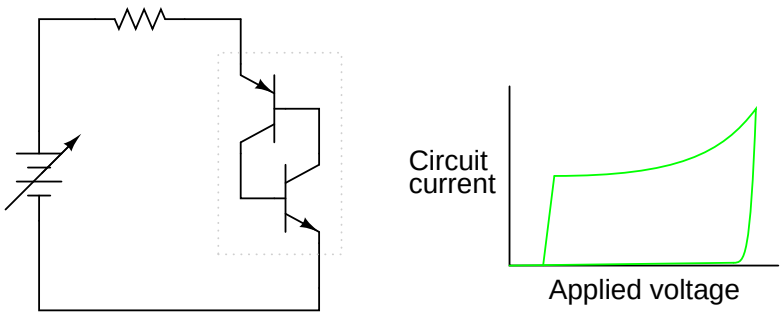
The positive feedback mentioned earlier in this chapter is clearly evident here. When one transistor breaks down, it allows current through the device structure. This current may be viewed as the "output" signal of the device. Once an output current is established, it works to hold both transistors in saturation, thus ensuring the continuation of a substantial output current. In other words, an output current "feeds back" positively to the input (transistor base current) to keep both transistors in the "on" state, thus reinforcing (or *regenerating*) itself.

With both transistors maintained in a state of saturation with the presence of ample base current, they will continue to conduct even if the applied voltage is greatly reduced from the breakdown level. The effect of positive feedback is to keep both transistors in a state of saturation despite the loss of input stimulus (the original, high voltage needed to break down one transistor and cause a base current through the other transistor):



Current maintained even when voltage is reduced

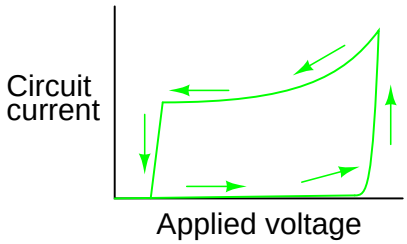
If the DC voltage source is turned down too far, though, the circuit will eventually reach a point where there isn't enough current to sustain both transistors in saturation. As one transistor passes less and less collector current, it reduces the base current for the other transistor, thus reducing base current for the first transistor. The vicious cycle continues rapidly until both transistors fall into cutoff:



If the voltage drops too low, both transistors shut off

Here, positive feedback is again at work: the fact that the cause/effect cycle between both transistors is "vicious" (a decrease in current through one works to decrease current through the other, further decreasing current through the first transistor) indicates a positive relationship between output (controlled current) and input (controlling current through the transistors' bases).

The resulting curve on the graph is classicly hysteretic: as the input signal (voltage) is increased and decreased, the output (current) does not follow the same path going down as it did going up:

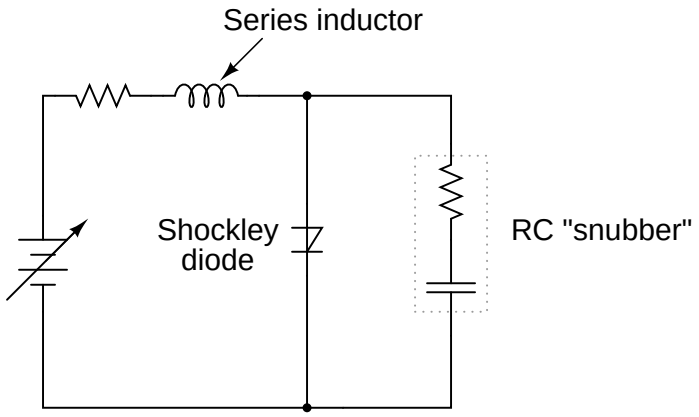


Put in simple terms, the Shockley diode tends to stay on once its turned on, and stay off once its turned off. There is no "in-between" or "active" mode in its operation: it is a purely on or off device, as are all thyristors.

There are a few special terms applied to Shockley diodes and all other thyristor devices built upon the Shockley diode foundation. First is the term used to describe its "on" state: *latched*. The word "latch" is reminiscent of a door lock mechanism, which tends to keep the door closed once it has been pushed shut. The term *firing* refers to the initiation of a latched state. In order to get a Shockley diode to latch, the applied voltage must be increased until *breakover* is attained. Despite the fact that this action is best described in terms of transistor break*down*, the term break*over* is used instead because the end result is a pair of transistors in mutual saturation rather than destruction as would be the case with a normal transistor. A latched Shockley diode is re-set back into its nonconducting state by reducing current through it until *low-current dropout* occurs.

It should be noted that Shockley diodes may be fired in a way other than breakover: excessive *voltage rise*, or dv/dt. This is when the applied voltage across the diode increases at a high rate of change. This is able to cause latching (turning on) of the diode due to inherent junction

capacitances within the transistors. Capacitors, as you may recall, oppose *changes* in voltage by drawing or supplying current. If the applied voltage across a Shockley diode rises at too fast a rate, those tiny capacitances will draw enough current during that time to activate the transistor pair, turning them both on. Usually, this form of latching is undesirable, and can be minimized by filtering high-frequency (fast voltage rises) from the diode with series inductors and/or parallel resistor-capacitor networks called *snubbers*:



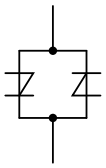
Both the series inductor and the parallel resistor-capacitor "snubber" circuit help minimize the Shockley diode's exposure to excessively rising voltages.

The voltage rise limit of a Shockley diode is referred to as the *critical rate of voltage rise*. Manufacturers usually provide this specification for the devices they sell.

- **REVIEW:**
- Shockley diodes are four-layer PNPN semiconductor devices. They behave as a pair of interconnected PNP and NPN transistors.
- Like all thyristors, Shockley diodes tend to stay on once they've been turned on (*latched*), and stay off once they've been turned off.
- There are two ways to latch a Shockley diode: exceed the anode-to-cathode *breakover* voltage, or exceed the anode-to-cathode *critical rate of voltage rise*.
- There is only one way to cause a Shockley diode to stop conducting, and that is to reduce the current going through it to a level below its *low-current dropout* threshold.

7.4 The DIAC

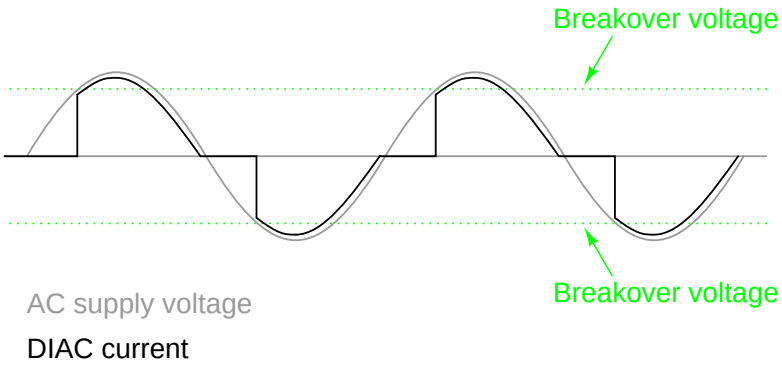
Like all diodes, Shockley diodes are unidirectional devices; that is, they only conduct current in one direction. If bidirectional (AC) operation is desired, two Shockley diodes may be joined in parallel facing different directions to form a new kind of thyristor, the *DIAC*:



DIAC equivalent circuit

DIAC schematic symbol

A DIAC operated with a DC voltage across it behaves exactly the same as a Shockley diode. With AC, however, the behavior is different from what one might expect. Because alternating current repeatedly reverses direction, DIACs will not stay latched longer than one-half cycle. If a DIAC becomes latched, it will continue to conduct current only as long as there is voltage available to push enough current in that direction. When the AC polarity reverses, as it must twice per cycle, the DIAC will drop out due to insufficient current, necessitating another breakover before it conducts again. The result is a current waveform that looks like this:



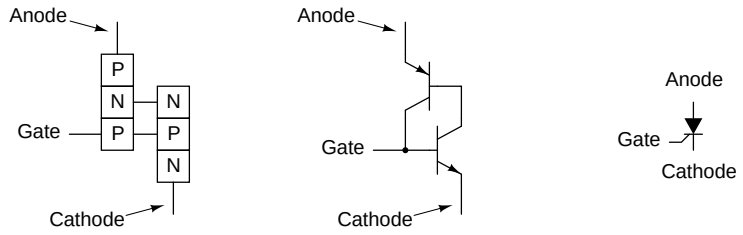
DIACs are almost never used alone, but in conjunction with other thyristor devices.

7.5 The Silicon-Controlled Rectifier (SCR)

Shockley diodes are curious devices, but rather limited in application. Their usefulness may be expanded, however, by equipping them with another means of latching. In doing so, they become true amplifying devices (if only in an on/off mode), and we refer to them as *silicon-controlled rectifiers*, or *SCR*s.

The progression from Shockley diode to SCR is achieved with one small addition, actually nothing more than a third wire connection to the existing PNPN structure:

The Silicon-Controlled Rectifier (SCR)



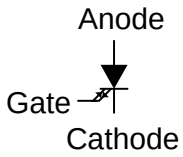
Physical diagram *Equivalent schematic* *Schematic symbol*

If an SCR's gate is left *floating* (disconnected), it behaves exactly as a Shockley diode. It may be latched by breakover voltage or by exceeding the critical rate of voltage rise between anode and cathode, just as with the Shockley diode. Dropout is accomplished by reducing current until one or both internal transistors fall into cutoff mode, also like the Shockley diode. However, because the gate terminal connects directly to the base of the lower transistor, it may be used as an alternative means to latch the SCR. By applying a small voltage between gate and cathode, the lower transistor will be forced *on* by the resulting base current, which will cause the upper transistor to conduct, which then supplies the lower transistor's base with current so that it no longer needs to be activated by a gate voltage. The necessary gate current to initiate latch-up, of course, will be much lower than the current through the SCR from cathode to anode, so the SCR does achieve a measure of amplification.

This method of securing SCR conduction is called *triggering*, and it is by far the most common way that SCRs are latched in actual practice. In fact, SCRs are usually chosen so that their breakover voltage is far beyond the greatest voltage expected to be experienced from the power source, so that it can be turned on *only* by an intentional voltage pulse applied to the gate.

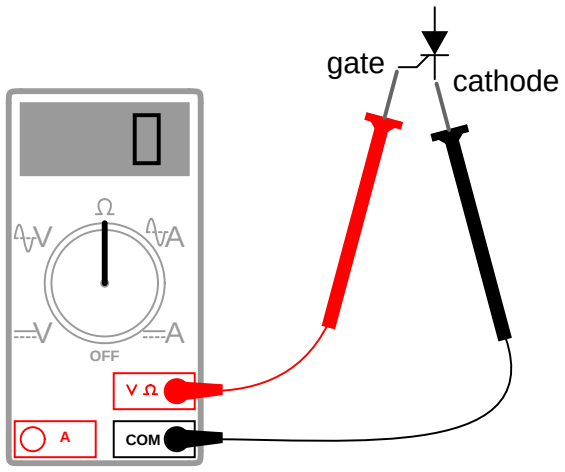
It should be mentioned that SCRs may *sometimes* be turned off by directly shorting their gate and cathode terminals together, or by "reverse-triggering" the gate with a negative voltage (in reference to the cathode), so that the lower transistor is forced into cutoff. I say this is "sometimes" possible because it involves shunting all of the upper transistor's collector current past the lower transistor's base. This current may be substantial, making triggered shut-off of an SCR difficult at best. A variation of the SCR, called a *Gate-Turn-Off* thyristor, or *GTO*, makes this task easier. But even with a GTO, the gate current required to turn it off may be as much as 20% of the anode (load) current! The schematic symbol for a GTO is shown in the following illustration:

Gate Turn-Off thyristor (GTO)



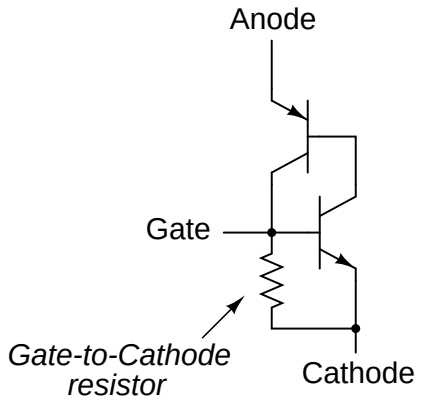
SCRs and GTOs share the same equivalent schematics (two transistors connected in a positive-feedback fashion), the only differences being details of construction designed to grant the NPN transistor a greater β than the PNP. This allows a smaller gate current (forward or reverse) to exert a greater degree of control over conduction from cathode to anode, with the PNP transistor's latched state being more dependent upon the NPN's than vice versa. The Gate-Turn-Off thyristor is also known by the name of *Gate-Controlled Switch*, or *GCS*.

A rudimentary test of SCR function, or at least terminal identification, may be performed with an ohmmeter. Because the internal connection between gate and cathode is a single PN junction, a meter should indicate continuity between these terminals with the red test lead on the gate and the black test lead on the cathode like this:



All other continuity measurements performed on an SCR will show "open" ("OL" on some digital multimeter displays). It must be understood that this test is very crude and does *not* constitute a comprehensive assessment of the SCR. It is possible for an SCR to give good ohmmeter indications and still be defective. Ultimately, the only way to test an SCR is to subject it to a load current.

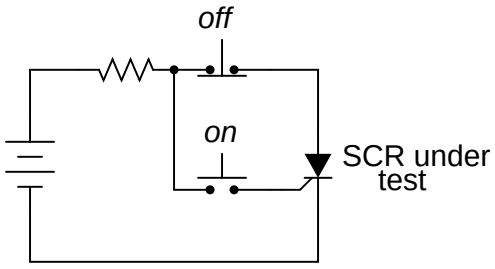
If you are using a multimeter with a "diode check" function, the gate-to-cathode junction voltage indication you get may or may not correspond to what's expected of a silicon PN junction (approximately 0.7 volts). In some cases, you will read a much lower junction voltage: mere hundredths of a volt. This is due to an internal resistor connected between the gate and cathode incorporated within some SCRs. This resistor is added to make the SCR less susceptible to false triggering by spurious voltage spikes, from circuit "noise" or from static electric discharge. In other words, having a resistor connected across the gate-cathode junction requires that a *strong* triggering signal (substantial current) be applied to latch the SCR. This feature is often found in larger SCRs, not on small SCRs. Bear in mind that an SCR with an internal resistor connected between gate and cathode will indicate continuity *in both directions* between those two terminals:



"Normal" SCRs, lacking this internal resistor, are sometimes referred to as *sensitive gate* SCRs due to their ability to be triggered by the slightest positive gate signal.

The test circuit for an SCR is both practical as a diagnostic tool for checking suspected SCRs and also an excellent aid to understanding basic SCR operation. A DC voltage source is used for powering the circuit, and two pushbutton switches are used to latch and unlatch the SCR, respectively:

SCR testing circuit



Actuating the normally-open "on" pushbutton switch connects the gate to the anode, allowing current from the negative terminal of the battery, through the cathode-gate PN junction, through the switch, through the load resistor, and back to the battery. This gate current should force the SCR to latch on, allowing current to go directly from cathode to anode without further triggering through the gate. When the "on" pushbutton is released, the load should remain energized.

Pushing the normally-closed "off" pushbutton switch breaks the circuit, forcing current through the SCR to halt, thus forcing it to turn off (low-current dropout).

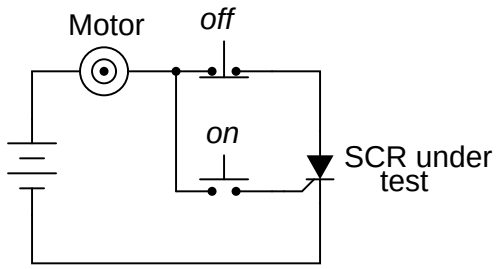
If the SCR fails to latch, the problem may be with the load and not the SCR. There is a certain minimum amount of load current required to hold the SCR latched in the "on" state. This minimum current level is called the *holding current*. A load with too great a resistance value may not draw enough current to keep an SCR latched when gate current ceases, thus giving the false impression of a bad (unlatchable) SCR in the test circuit. Holding current values for different SCRs should be available from the manufacturers. Typical holding current

values range from 1 milliamp to 50 milliamps or more for larger units.

For the test to be fully comprehensive, more than the triggering action needs to be tested. The forward breakover voltage limit of the SCR could be tested by increasing the DC voltage supply (with no pushbuttons actuated) until the SCR latches all on its own. Beware that a breakover test may require very high voltage: many power SCRs have breakover voltage ratings of 600 volts or more! Also, if a pulse voltage generator is available, the critical rate of voltage rise for the SCR could be tested in the same way: subject it to pulsing supply voltages of different V/time rates with no pushbutton switches actuated and see when it latches.

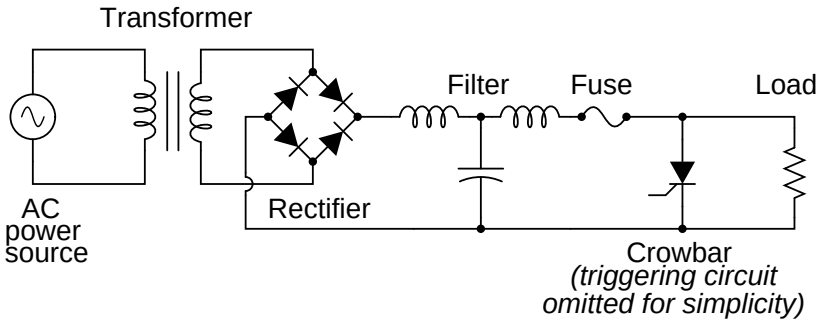
In this simple form, the SCR test circuit could suffice as a start/stop control circuit for a DC motor, lamp, or other practical load:

DC motor start/stop control circuit



Another practical use for the SCR in a DC circuit is as a *crowbar* device for overvoltage protection. A "crowbar" circuit consists of an SCR placed in parallel with the output of a DC power supply, for the purpose of placing a direct short-circuit on the output of that supply to prevent excessive voltage from reaching the load. Damage to the SCR and power supply is prevented by the judicious placement of a fuse or substantial series resistance ahead of the SCR to limit short-circuit current:

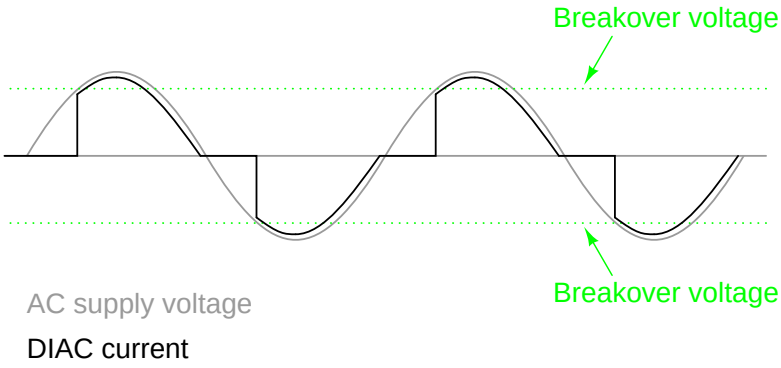
Crowbar as used in an AC-DC power supply



Some device or circuit sensing the output voltage will be connected to the gate of the SCR, so that when an overvoltage condition occurs, voltage will be applied between the gate and cathode, triggering the SCR and forcing the fuse to blow. The effect will be approximately the

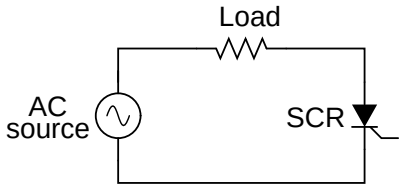
same as dropping a solid steel crowbar directly across the output terminals of the power supply, hence the name of the circuit.

Most applications of the SCR are for AC power control, despite the fact that SCRs are inherently DC (unidirectional) devices. If bidirectional circuit current is required, multiple SCRs may be used, with one or more facing each direction to handle current through both half-cycles of the AC wave. The primary reason SCRs are used at all for AC power control applications is the unique response of a thyristor to an alternating current. As we saw in the case of the thyratron tube (the electron tube version of the SCR) and the DIAC, a hysteretic device triggered on during a portion of an AC half-cycle will latch and remain on throughout the remainder of the half-cycle until the AC current decreases to zero, as it must to begin the next half-cycle. Just prior to the zero-crossover point of the current waveform, the thyristor will turn off due to insufficient current (this behavior is also known as *natural commutation*) and must be fired again during the next cycle. The result is a circuit current equivalent to a "chopped up" sine wave. For review, here is the graph of a DIAC's response to an AC voltage whose peak exceeds the breakover voltage of the DIAC:



With the DIAC, that breakover voltage limit was a fixed quantity. With the SCR, we have control over exactly when the device becomes latched by triggering the gate at any point in time along the waveform. By connecting a suitable control circuit to the gate of an SCR, we can "chop" the sine wave at any point to allow for time-proportioned power control to a load.

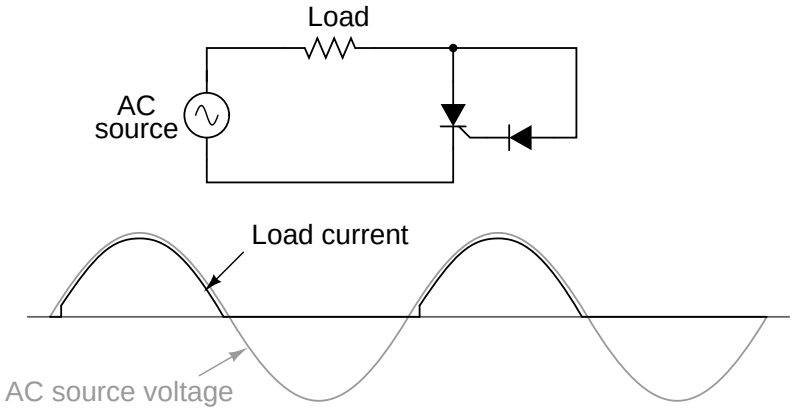
Take the following circuit as an example. Here, an SCR is positioned in a circuit to control power to a load from an AC source:



Being a unidirectional (one-way) device, at most we can only deliver half-wave power to the load, in the half-cycle of AC where the supply voltage polarity is positive on the top and negative on the bottom. However, for demonstrating the basic concept of time-proportional control, this simple circuit is better than one controlling full-wave power (which would require two SCRs).

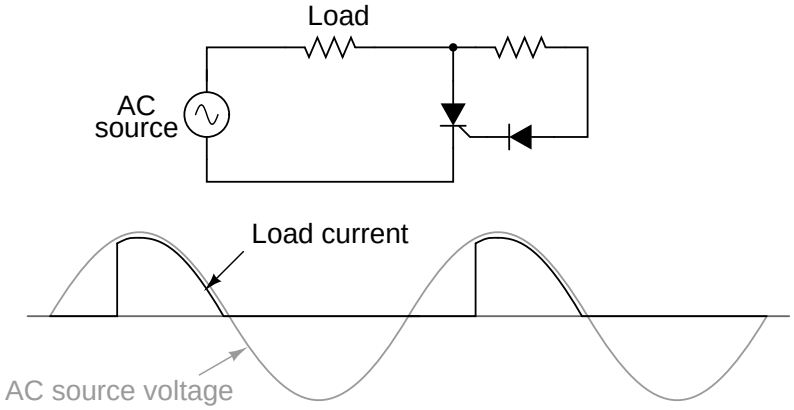
With no triggering to the gate, and the AC source voltage well below the SCR's breakover voltage rating, the SCR will never turn on. Connecting the SCR gate to the anode through a normal rectifying diode (to prevent reverse current through the gate in the event of the SCR containing a built-in gate-cathode resistor), will allow the SCR to be triggered almost immediately at the beginning of every positive half-cycle:

Gate connected directly to anode through a diode;
nearly complete half-wave current through load



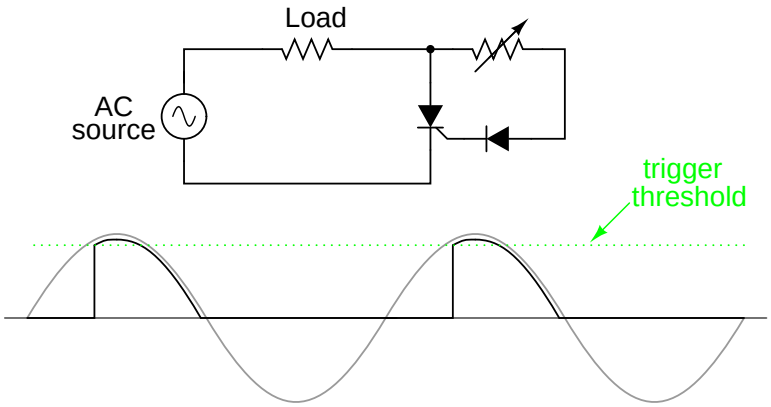
We can delay the triggering of the SCR, however, by inserting some resistance into the gate circuit, thus increasing the amount of voltage drop required before there is enough gate current to trigger the SCR. In other words, if we make it harder for electrons to flow through the gate by adding a resistance, the AC voltage will have to reach a higher point in its cycle before there will be enough gate current to turn the SCR on. The result looks like this:

Resistance inserted in gate circuit;
less than half-wave current through load



With the half-sine wave chopped up to a greater degree by delayed triggering of the SCR,

the load receives less average power (power is delivered for less time throughout a cycle). By making the series gate resistor variable, we can make adjustments to the time-proportioned power:

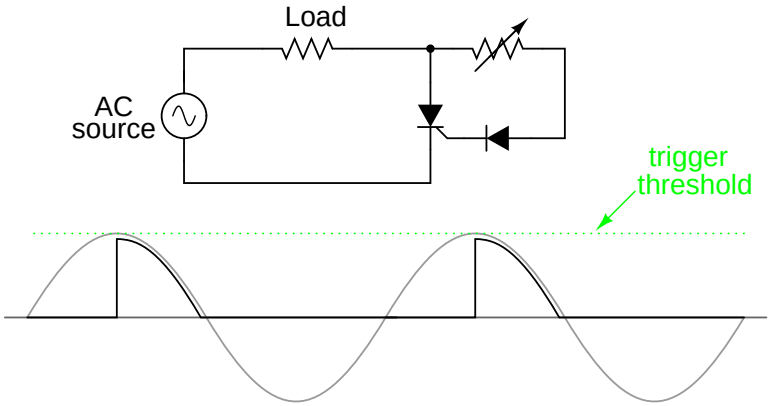


Increasing the resistance raises the threshold level, causing less power to be delivered to the load.

Decreasing the resistance lowers the threshold level, causing more power to be delivered to the load.

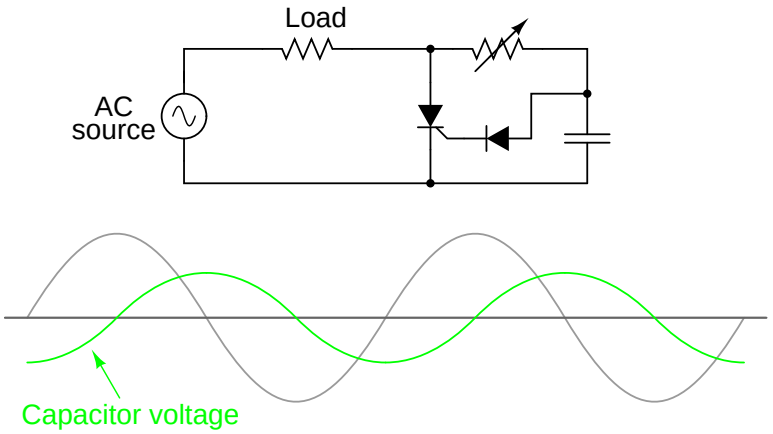
Unfortunately, this control scheme has a significant limitation. In using the AC source waveform for our SCR triggering signal, we limit control to the first half of the waveform's half-cycle. In other words, there is no way for us to wait until *after* the wave's peak to trigger the SCR. This means we can turn down the power only to the point where the SCR turns on at the very peak of the wave:

Circuit at minimum power setting



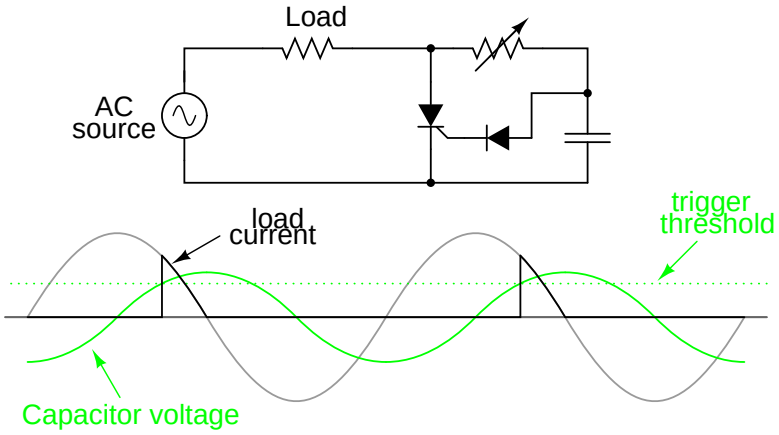
Raising the trigger threshold any more will cause the circuit to not trigger at all, since not even the peak of the AC power voltage will be enough to trigger the SCR. The result will be no power to the load.

An ingenious solution to this control dilemma is found in the addition of a phase-shifting capacitor to the circuit:



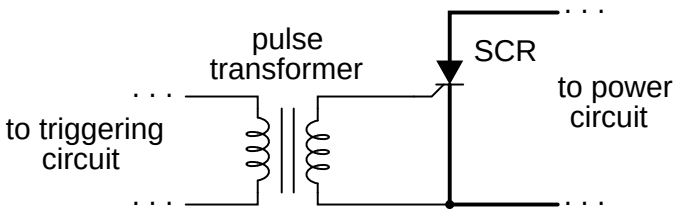
The smaller waveform shown on the graph is voltage across the capacitor. For the sake of illustrating the phase shift, I'm assuming a condition of maximum control resistance where the SCR is not triggering at all and there is no load current, save for what little current goes through the control resistor and capacitor. This capacitor voltage will be phase-shifted anywhere from 0^o to 90^o lagging behind the power source AC waveform. When this phase-shifted voltage reaches a high enough level, the SCR will trigger.

Assuming there is periodically enough voltage across the capacitor to trigger the SCR, the resulting load current waveform will look something like this:



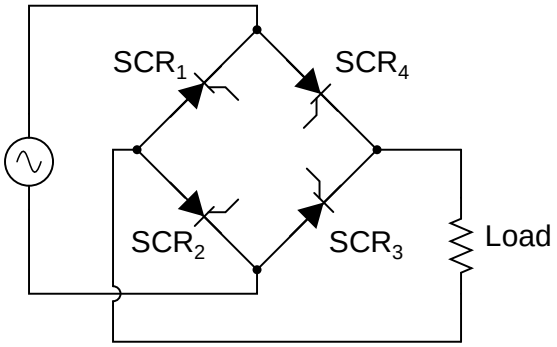
Because the capacitor waveform is still *rising* after the main AC power waveform has reached its peak, it becomes possible to trigger the SCR at a threshold level beyond that peak, thus chopping the load current wave further than it was possible with the simpler circuit. In reality, the capacitor voltage waveform is a bit more complex that what is shown here, its sinusoidal shape distorted every time the SCR latches on. However, what I'm trying to illustrate here is the delayed triggering action gained with the phase-shifting RC network, and so a simplified, undistorted waveform serves the purpose well.

SCRs may also be triggered, or "fired," by more complex circuits. While the circuit previously shown is sufficient for a simple application like a lamp control, large industrial motor controls often rely on more sophisticated triggering methods. Sometimes, pulse transformers are used to couple a triggering circuit to the gate and cathode of an SCR to provide electrical isolation between the triggering and power circuits:

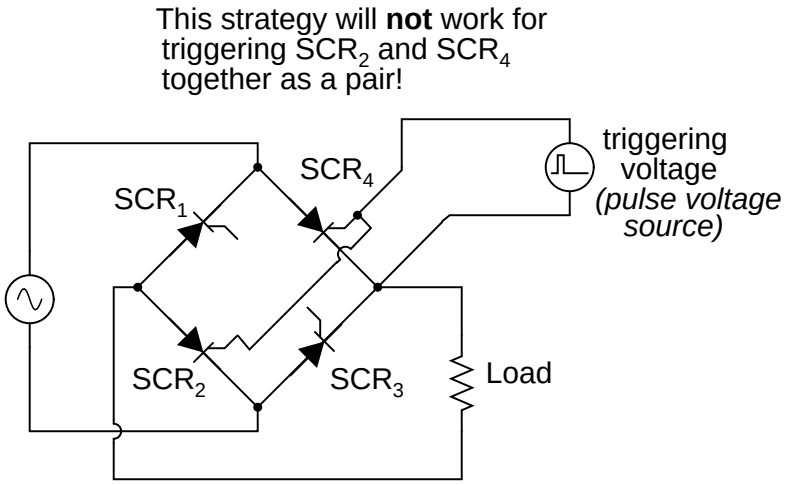


When multiple SCRs are used to control power, their cathodes are often *not* electrically common, making it difficult to connect a single triggering circuit to all SCRs equally. An example of this is the *controlled bridge rectifier* shown here:

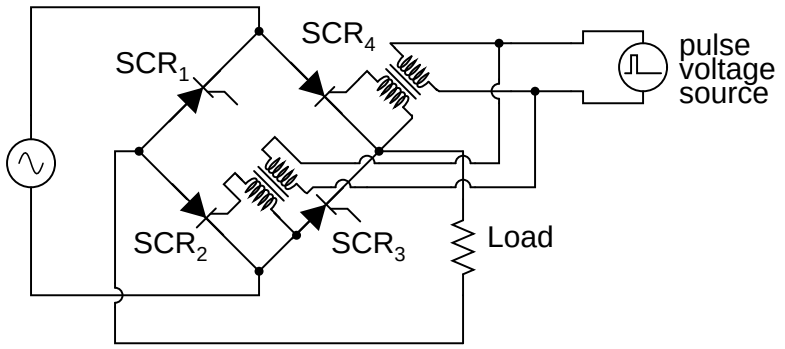
Controlled bridge rectifier



In any bridge rectifier circuit, the rectifying diodes (or in this case, the rectifying SCRs) must conduct in opposite pairs. SCR_1 and SCR_3 must be fired simultaneously, and likewise SCR_2 and SCR_4 must be fired together as a pair. As you will notice, though, these pairs of SCRs do not share the same cathode connections, meaning that it would not work to simply parallel their respective gate connections and connect a single voltage source to trigger both:

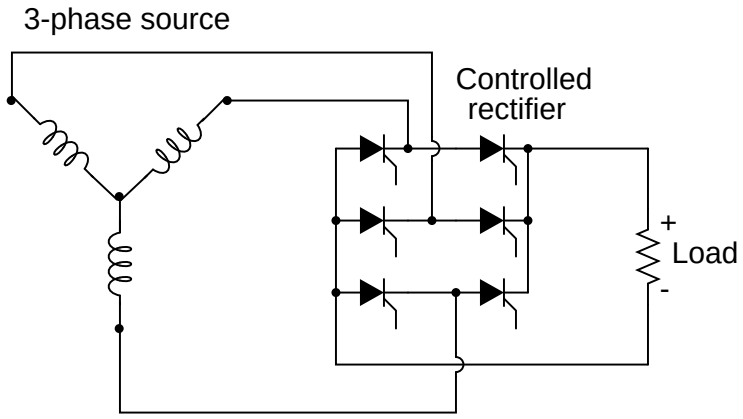


Although the triggering voltage source shown will trigger SCR_4, it will not trigger SCR_2 properly because the two thyristors do not share a common cathode connection to reference that triggering voltage. Pulse transformers connecting the two thyristor gates to a common triggering voltage source *will* work, however:



Bear in mind that this circuit only shows the gate connections for two out of the four SCRs. Pulse transformers and triggering sources for SCR_1 and SCR_3, as well as the details of the pulse sources themselves, have been omitted for the sake of simplicity.

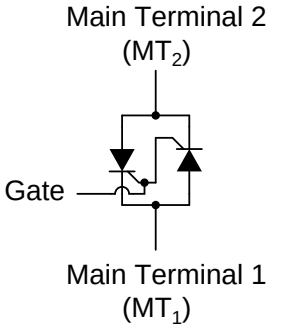
Controlled bridge rectifiers are not limited to single-phase designs. In most industrial control systems, AC power is available in three-phase form for maximum efficiency, and solid-state control circuits are built to take advantage of that. A three-phase controlled rectifier circuit built with SCRs, without pulse transformers or triggering circuitry shown, would look like this:



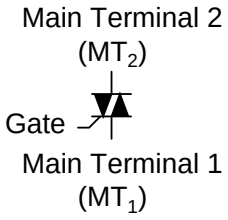
- **REVIEW:**
- A *Silicon-Controlled Rectifier*, or *SCR*, is essentially a Shockley diode with an extra terminal added. This extra terminal is called the *gate*, and it is used to *trigger* the device into conduction (latch it) by the application of a small voltage.
- To trigger, or *fire*, an SCR, voltage must be applied between the gate and cathode, positive to the gate and negative to the cathode. When testing an SCR, a momentary connection between the gate and anode is sufficient in polarity, intensity, and duration to trigger it.
- SCRs may be fired by intentional triggering of the gate terminal, excessive voltage (breakdown) between anode and cathode, or excessive rate of voltage rise between anode and cathode. SCRs may be turned off by anode current falling below the *holding current value* (low-current dropout), or by ”reverse-firing” the gate (applying a negative voltage to the gate). Reverse-firing is only sometimes effective, and always involves high gate current.
- A variant of the SCR, called a Gate-Turn-Off thyristor (GTO), is specifically designed to be turned off by means of reverse triggering. Even then, reverse triggering requires fairly high current: typically 20% of the anode current.
- SCR terminals may be identified by a continuity meter: the only two terminals showing any continuity between them at all should be the gate and cathode. Gate and cathode terminals connect to a PN junction inside the SCR, so a continuity meter should obtain a diode-like reading between these two terminals with the red (+) lead on the gate and the black (-) lead on the cathode. Beware, though, that some large SCRs have an internal resistor connected between gate and cathode, which will affect any continuity readings taken by a meter.
- SCRs are true *rectifiers*: they only allow current through them in one direction. This means they cannot be used alone for full-wave AC power control.
- If the diodes in a rectifier circuit are replaced by SCRs, you have the makings of a *controlled* rectifier circuit, whereby DC power to a load may be time-proportioned by triggering the SCRs at different points along the AC power waveform.

7.6 The TRIAC

SCRs are unidirectional (one-way) current devices, making them useful for controlling DC only. If two SCRs are joined in back-to-back parallel fashion just like two Shockley diodes were joined together to form a DIAC, we have a new device known as the *TRIAC*:

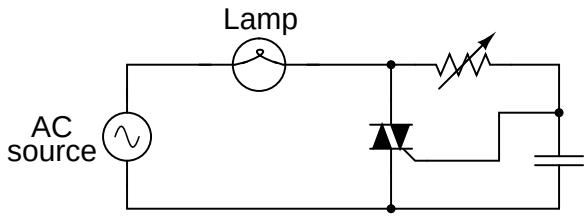


TRIAC equivalent circuit



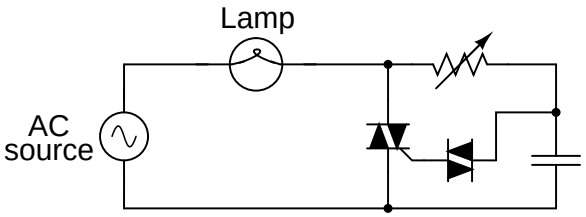
TRIAC schematic symbol

Because individual SCRs are more flexible to use in advanced control systems, they are more commonly seen in circuits like motor drives, while TRIACs are usually seen in simple, low-power applications like household dimmer switches. A simple lamp dimmer circuit is shown here, complete with the phase-shifting resistor-capacitor network necessary for after-peak firing.



TRIACs are notorious for not firing *symmetrically*. This means they usually won't trigger at the exact same gate voltage level for one polarity as for the other. Generally speaking, this is undesirable, because unsymmetrical firing results in a current waveform with a greater variety of harmonic frequencies. Waveforms that are symmetrical above and below their average centerlines are comprised of only odd-numbered harmonics. Unsymmetrical waveforms, on the other hand, contain even-numbered harmonics (which may or may not be accompanied by odd-numbered harmonics as well).

In the interest of reducing total harmonic content in power systems, the fewer and less diverse the harmonics, the better – one more reason why individual SCRs are favored over TRIACs for complex, high-power control circuits. One way to make the TRIAC's current waveform more symmetrical is to use a device external to the TRIAC to time the triggering pulse. A DIAC placed in series with the gate does a fair job of this:

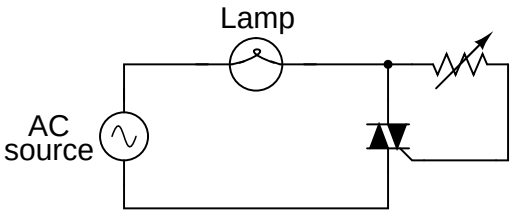


DIAC breakover voltages tend to be much more symmetrical (the same in one polarity as the other) than TRIAC triggering voltage thresholds. Since the DIAC prevents any gate current until the triggering voltage has reached a certain, repeatable level in either direction, the firing point of the TRIAC from one half-cycle to the next tends to be more consistent, and the waveform more symmetrical above and below its centerline.

Practically all the characteristics and ratings of SCRs apply equally to TRIACs, except that TRIACs of course are bidirectional (can handle current in both directions). Not much more needs to be said about this device except for an important caveat concerning its terminal designations.

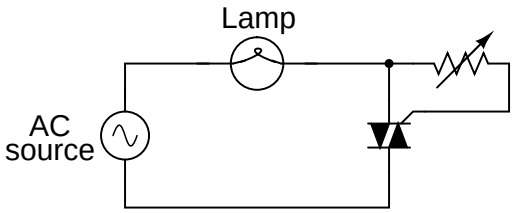
From the equivalent circuit diagram shown earlier, one might think that main terminals 1 and 2 were interchangeable. They are not! Although it is helpful to imagine the TRIAC as being composed of two SCRs joined together, it in fact is constructed from a single piece of semiconducting material, appropriately doped and layered. The actual operating characteristics may differ slightly from that of the equivalent model.

This is made most evident by contrasting two simple circuit designs, one that works and one that doesn't. The following two circuits are a variation of the lamp dimmer circuit shown earlier, the phase-shifting capacitor and DIAC removed for simplicity's sake. Although the resulting circuit lacks the fine control ability of the more complex version (with capacitor and DIAC), it *does* function:



Suppose we were to swap the two main terminals of the TRIAC around. According to the equivalent circuit diagram shown earlier in this section, the swap should make no difference. The circuit ought to work:

*This circuit **will not work**!*



However, if this circuit is built, it will be found that it does not work! The load will receive no power, the TRIAC refusing to fire at all, no matter how low or high a resistance value the control resistor is set to. The key to successfully triggering a TRIAC is to make sure the gate receives its triggering current from the *main terminal 2* side of the circuit (the main terminal on the opposite side of the TRIAC symbol from the gate terminal). Identification of the MT_1 and MT_2 terminals must be done via the TRIAC's part number with reference to a data sheet or book.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *TRIAC* acts much like two SCRs connected back-to-back for bidirectional (AC) operation.
- TRIAC controls are more often seen in simple, low-power circuits than complex, high-power circuits. In large power control circuits, multiple SCRs tend to be favored.
- When used to control AC power to a load, TRIACs are often accompanied by DIACs connected in series with their gate terminals. The DIAC helps the TRIAC fire more symmetrically (more consistently from one polarity to another).
- Main terminals 1 and 2 on a TRIAC are *not* interchangeable.
- To successfully trigger a TRIAC, gate current must come from the *main terminal 2* (MT_2) side of the circuit!

7.7 Optothyristors

Like bipolar transistors, SCRs and TRIACs are also manufactured as light-sensitive devices, the action of impinging light replacing the function of triggering voltage.

Optically-controlled SCRs are often known by the acronym *LASCR*, or **L**ight **A**ctivated **SCR**. Its symbol, not surprisingly, looks like this:

Light **A**ctivated **SCR**

LASCR

Optically-controlled TRIACs don't receive the honor of having their own acronym, but instead are humbly known as opto-TRIACs. Their schematic symbol looks like this:

Opto-TRIAC

Optothyristors (a general term for either the LASCR or the opto-TRIAC) are commonly found inside sealed "optoisolator" modules.

7.8 The Unijunction Transistor (UJT) – PENDING

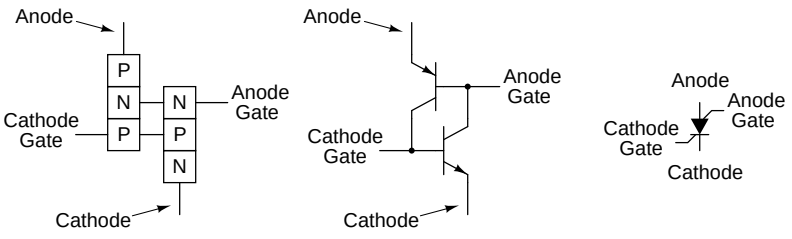
Programmable Unijunction Transistors (PUTs).

- **REVIEW:**
-
-
-

7.9 The Silicon-Controlled Switch (SCS)

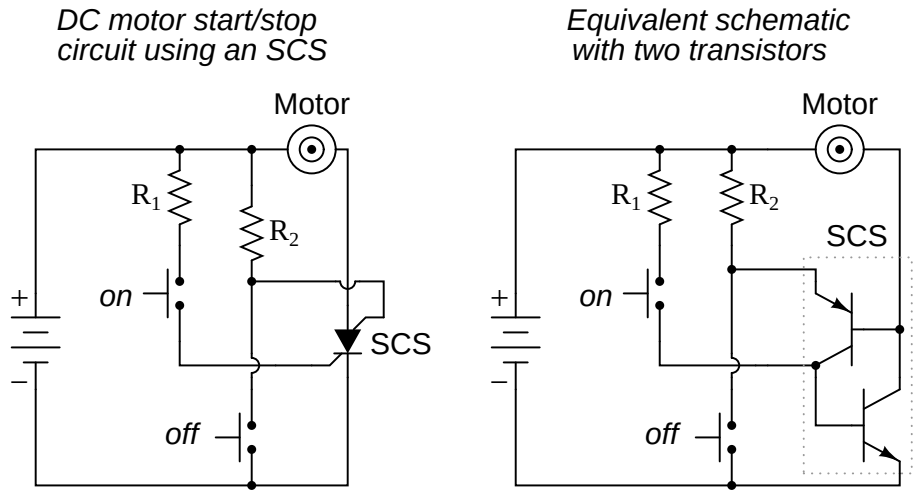
If we take the equivalent circuit for an SCR and add another external terminal, connected to the base of the top transistor and the collector of the bottom transistor, we have a device known as a *silicon-controlled-switch*, or *SCS*:

The Silicon-Controlled Switch (SCS)



Physical diagram *Equivalent schematic* *Schematic symbol*

This extra terminal allows more control to be exerted over the device, particularly in the mode of *forced commutation*, where an external signal forces it to turn off while the main current through the device has not yet fallen below the holding current value. Consider the following circuit:



When the "on" pushbutton switch is actuated, there is a voltage applied between the cathode gate and the cathode, forward-biasing the lower transistor's base-emitter junction, and turning it on. The top transistor of the SCS is ready to conduct, having been supplied with a current path from its emitter terminal (the SCS's anode terminal) through resistor R_2 to the positive side of the power supply. As in the case of the SCR, both transistors turn on and maintain each other in the "on" mode. When the lower transistor turns on, it conducts the motor's load current, and the motor starts and runs.

The motor may be stopped by interrupting the power supply, as with an SCR, and this is called *natural commutation*. However, the SCS provides us with another means of turning off: *forced commutation* by shorting the anode terminal to the cathode. If this is done (by actuating the "off" pushbutton switch), the upper transistor within the SCS will lose its emitter current, thus halting current through the base of the lower transistor. When the lower transistor turns off, it breaks the circuit for base current through the top transistor (securing its "off" state), and the motor (making it stop). The SCS will remain in the off condition until such time that the "on" pushbutton switch is re-actuated.

- **REVIEW:**

- A *silicon-controlled switch*, or *SCS*, is essentially an SCR with an extra gate terminal.

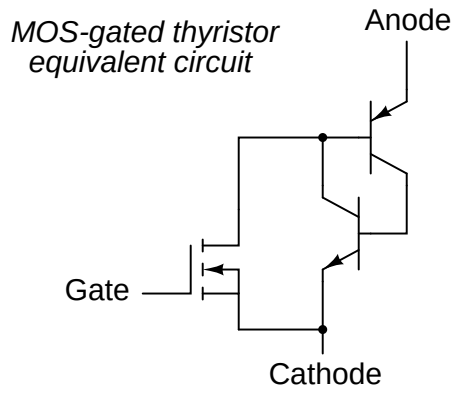
- Typically, the load current through an SCS is carried by the *anode gate* and *cathode* terminals, with the *cathode gate* and *anode* terminals sufficing as control leads.

- An SCS is turned on by applying a positive voltage between the *cathode gate* and *cathode* terminals. It may be turned off (forced commutation) by applying a negative voltage between the *anode* and *cathode* terminals, or simply by shorting those two terminals together. The *anode* terminal must be kept positive with respect to the cathode in order for the SCS to latch.

7.10 Field-effect-controlled thyristors

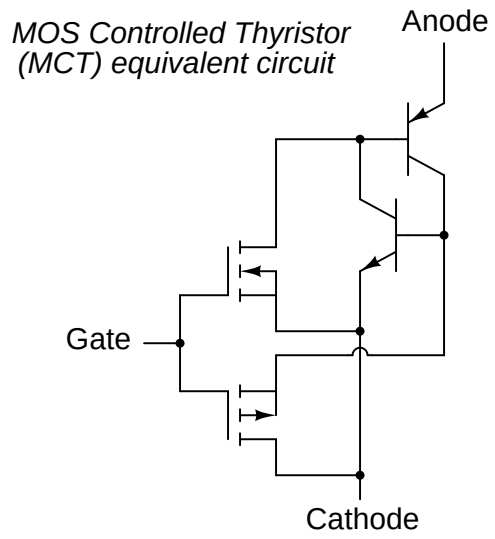
Two relatively recent technologies designed to reduce the ”driving” (gate trigger current) requirements of classic thyristor devices are the *MOS-gated thyristor* and the *MOS Controlled Thyristor*, or *MCT*.

The MOS-gated thyristor uses a MOSFET to initiate conduction through the upper (PNP) transistor of a normal thyristor structure, thus triggering the device. Since a MOSFET requires negligible current to ”drive” (cause it to saturate), this makes the thyristor as a whole very easy to trigger:



Given the fact that ordinary SCRs are quite easy to ”drive” as it is, the practical advantage of using an even more sensitive device (a MOSFET) to initiate triggering is debatable. Also, placing a MOSFET at the gate input of the thyristor now makes it *impossible* to turn it off by a reverse-triggering signal. Only low-current dropout can make this device stop conducting after it has been latched.

A device of arguably greater value would be a fully-controllable thyristor, whereby a small gate signal could both trigger the thyristor and force it to turn off. Such a device does exist, and it is called the *MOS Controlled Thyristor*, or *MCT*. It uses a pair of MOSFETs connected to a common gate terminal, one to trigger the thyristor and the other to ”untrigger” it:



A positive gate voltage (with respect to the cathode) turns on the upper (N-channel) MOSFET, allowing base current through the upper (PNP) transistor, which latches the transistor pair in an "on" state. Once both transistors are fully latched, there will be little voltage dropped between anode and cathode, and the thyristor will remain latched so long as the controlled current exceeds the minimum (holding) current value. However, if a negative gate voltage is applied (with respect to the anode, which is at nearly the same voltage as the cathode in the latched state), the lower MOSFET will turn on and "short" between the lower (NPN) transistor's base and emitter terminals, thus forcing it into cutoff. Once the NPN transistor cuts off, the PNP transistor will drop out of conduction, and the whole thyristor turns off. Gate voltage has full control over conduction through the MCT: to turn it on and to turn it off.

This device is still a thyristor, though. If there is zero voltage applied between gate and cathode, neither MOSFET will turn on. Consequently, the bipolar transistor pair will remain in whatever state it was last in (hysteresis). So, a brief positive pulse to the gate turns the MCT on, a brief negative pulse forces it off, and no applied gate voltage lets it remain in whatever state it is already in. In essence, the MCT is a latching version of the IGBT (Insulated Gate Bipolar Transistor).

- **REVIEW:**

- A *MOS-gated thyristor* uses an N-channel MOSFET to trigger a thyristor, resulting in an extremely low gate current requirement.

- A *MOS Controlled Thyristor*, or *MCT*, uses two MOSFETS to exert full control over the thyristor. A positive gate voltage triggers the device, while a negative gate voltage forces it to turn off. Zero gate voltage allows the thyristor to remain in whatever state it was previously in (off, or latched on).

Bibliography

[1] ”Phattytron PT-1 Vacuum Tube Synthesizer”, The Audio Playground Synthesizer Museum at http://www.keyboardmuseum.com/ar/m/meta/pt1.html

[2] ”At last, a pitch source with tube power”, METASONIX, PMB 109, 881 11th Street, Lakeport CA 95453 USA at http://www.metasonix.com/index.php?option=com_content&task=view&id=14&Itemid=31

Chapter 8

OPERATIONAL AMPLIFIERS

Contents

8.1 Introduction

The operational amplifier is arguably the most useful single device in analog electronic circuitry. With only a handful of external components, it can be made to perform a wide variety

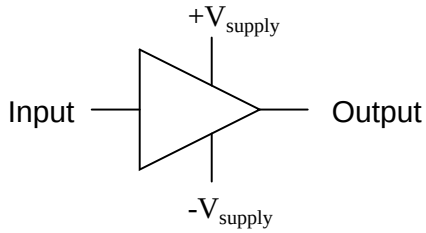
of analog signal processing tasks. It is also quite affordable, most general-purpose amplifiers selling for under a dollar apiece. Modern designs have been engineered with durability in mind as well: several "op-amps" are manufactured that can sustain direct short-circuits on their outputs without damage.

One key to the usefulness of these little circuits is in the engineering principle of feedback, particularly *negative* feedback, which constitutes the foundation of almost all automatic control processes. The principles presented here in operational amplifier circuits, therefore, extend well beyond the immediate scope of electronics. It is well worth the electronics student's time to learn these principles and learn them well.

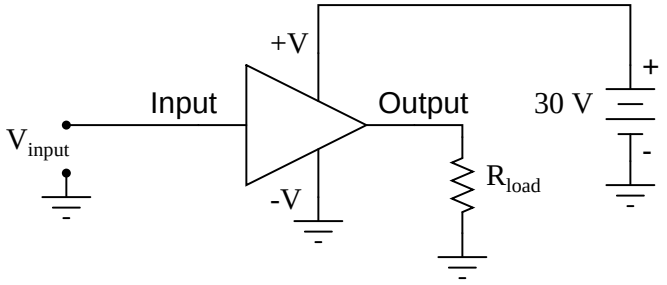
8.2 Single-ended and differential amplifiers

For ease of drawing complex circuit diagrams, electronic amplifiers are often symbolized by a simple triangle shape, where the internal components are not individually represented. This symbology is very handy for cases where an amplifier's construction is irrelevant to the greater function of the overall circuit, and it is worthy of familiarization:

General amplifier circuit symbol



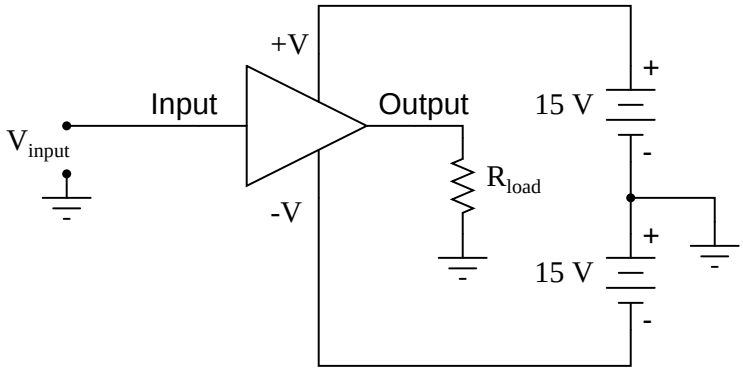
The +V and -V connections denote the positive and negative sides of the DC power supply, respectively. The input and output voltage connections are shown as single conductors, because it is assumed that all signal voltages are referenced to a common connection in the circuit called *ground*. Often (but not always!), one pole of the DC power supply, either positive or negative, is that ground reference point. A practical amplifier circuit (showing the input voltage source, load resistance, and power supply) might look like this:



Without having to analyze the actual transistor design of the amplifier, you can readily discern the whole circuit's function: to take an input signal (V_{in}), amplify it, and drive a load

resistance (R_{load}). To complete the above schematic, it would be good to specify the gains of that amplifier (A_V, A_I, A_P) and the Q (bias) point for any needed mathematical analysis.

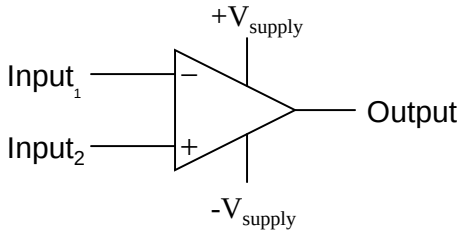
If it is necessary for an amplifier to be able to output true AC voltage (reversing polarity) to the load, a *split* DC power supply may be used, whereby the ground point is electrically "centered" between +V and -V. Sometimes the split power supply configuration is referred to as a *dual* power supply.



The amplifier is still being supplied with 30 volts overall, but with the split voltage DC power supply, the output voltage across the load resistor can now swing from a theoretical maximum of +15 volts to -15 volts, instead of +30 volts to 0 volts. This is an easy way to get true alternating current (AC) output from an amplifier without resorting to capacitive or inductive (transformer) coupling on the output. The peak-to-peak amplitude of this amplifier's output between cutoff and saturation remains unchanged.

By signifying a transistor amplifier within a larger circuit with a triangle symbol, we ease the task of studying and analyzing more complex amplifiers and circuits. One of these more complex amplifier types that we'll be studying is called the *differential amplifier*. Unlike normal amplifiers, which amplify a single input signal (often called *single-ended* amplifiers), differential amplifiers amplify the voltage difference between two input signals. Using the simplified triangle amplifier symbol, a differential amplifier looks like this:

Differential amplifier



The two input leads can be seen on the left-hand side of the triangular amplifier symbol, the output lead on the right-hand side, and the +V and -V power supply leads on top and bottom. As with the other example, all voltages are referenced to the circuit's ground point. Notice that one input lead is marked with a (-) and the other is marked with a (+). Because a differential amplifier amplifies the difference in voltage between the two inputs, each input influences the

output voltage in opposite ways. Consider the following table of input/output voltages for a differential amplifier with a voltage gain of 4:

(-) $Input_1$	0	0	0	0	1	2.5	7	3	-3	-2
(+) $Input_2$	0	1	2.5	7	0	0	0	3	3	-7
Output	0	4	10	28	-4	-10	-28	0	24	-20

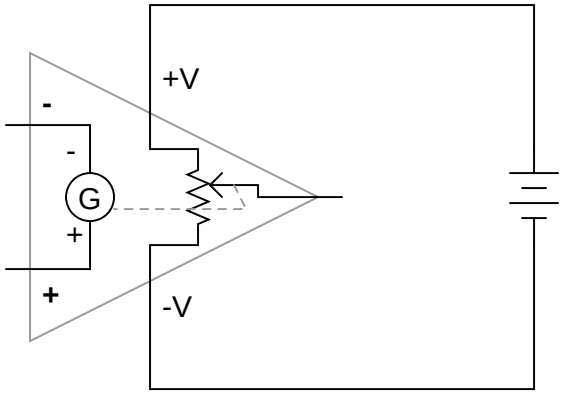
Voltage output equation: $V_{out} = A_V(Input_2 - Input_1)$

or

$V_{out} = A_V(Input_{(+)} - Input_{(-)})$

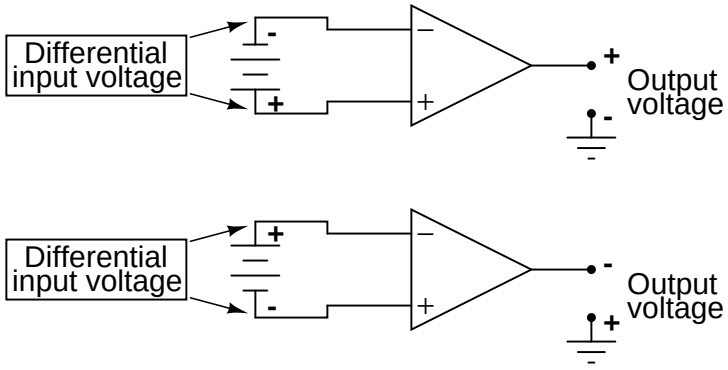
An increasingly positive voltage on the (+) input tends to drive the output voltage more positive, and an increasingly positive voltage on the (-) input tends to drive the output voltage more negative. Likewise, an increasingly negative voltage on the (+) input tends to drive the output negative as well, and an increasingly negative voltage on the (-) input does just the opposite. Because of this relationship between inputs and polarities, the (-) input is commonly referred to as the *inverting* input and the (+) as the *noninverting* input.

It may be helpful to think of a differential amplifier as a variable voltage source controlled by a sensitive voltmeter, as such:

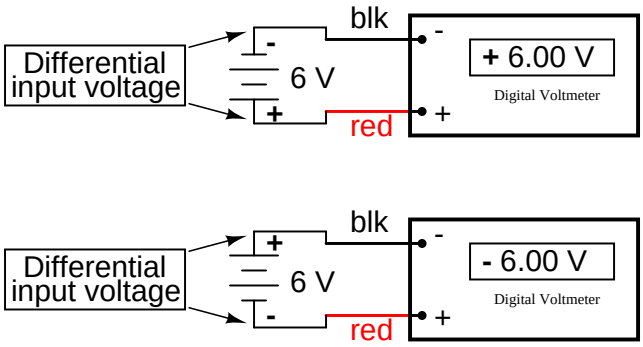


Bear in mind that the above illustration is only a *model* to aid in understanding the behavior of a differential amplifier. It is not a realistic schematic of its actual design. The "G" symbol represents a galvanometer, a sensitive voltmeter movement. The potentiometer connected between +V and -V provides a variable voltage at the output pin (with reference to one side of the DC power supply), that variable voltage set by the reading of the galvanometer. It must be understood that any load powered by the output of a differential amplifier gets its current from the DC power source (battery), *not* the input signal. The input signal (to the galvanometer) merely *controls* the output.

This concept may at first be confusing to students new to amplifiers. With all these polarities and polarity markings (- and +) around, its easy to get confused and not know what the output of a differential amplifier will be. To address this potential confusion, here's a simple rule to remember:



When the polarity of the *differential* voltage matches the markings for inverting and noninverting inputs, the output will be positive. When the polarity of the differential voltage clashes with the input markings, the output will be negative. This bears some similarity to the mathematical sign displayed by digital voltmeters based on input voltage polarity. The red test lead of the voltmeter (often called the "positive" lead because of the color red's popular association with the positive side of a power supply in electronic wiring) is more positive than the black, the meter will display a positive voltage figure, and vice versa:



Just as a voltmeter will only display the voltage *between* its two test leads, an ideal differential amplifier only amplifies the potential difference between its two input connections, not the voltage between any one of those connections and ground. The output polarity of a differential amplifier, just like the signed indication of a digital voltmeter, depends on the relative polarities of the differential voltage between the two input connections.

If the input voltages to this amplifier represented mathematical quantities (as is the case within analog computer circuitry), or physical process measurements (as is the case within analog electronic instrumentation circuitry), you can see how a device such as a differential amplifier could be very useful. We could use it to compare two quantities to see which is greater (by the polarity of the output voltage), or perhaps we could compare the difference between two quantities (such as the level of liquid in two tanks) and flag an alarm (based on the absolute value of the amplifier output) if the difference became too great. In basic automatic control circuitry, the quantity being controlled (called the *process variable*) is compared with a target value (called the *setpoint*), and decisions are made as to how to act based on the discrepancy between these two values. The first step in electronically controlling such a scheme

is to amplify the difference between the process variable and the setpoint with a differential amplifier. In simple controller designs, the output of this differential amplifier can be directly utilized to drive the final control element (such as a valve) and keep the process reasonably close to setpoint.

- **REVIEW:**
- A "shorthand" symbol for an electronic amplifier is a triangle, the wide end signifying the input side and the narrow end signifying the output. Power supply lines are often omitted in the drawing for simplicity.
- To facilitate true AC output from an amplifier, we can use what is called a *split* or *dual* power supply, with two DC voltage sources connected in series with the middle point grounded, giving a positive voltage to ground (+V) and a negative voltage to ground (-V). Split power supplies like this are frequently used in differential amplifier circuits.
- Most amplifiers have one input and one output. *Differential amplifiers* have two inputs and one output, the output signal being proportional to the difference in signals between the two inputs.
- The voltage output of a differential amplifier is determined by the following equation: $V_{out} = A_V(V_{noninv} - V_{inv})$

8.3 The "operational" amplifier

Long before the advent of digital electronic technology, computers were built to electronically perform calculations by employing voltages and currents to represent numerical quantities. This was especially useful for the simulation of physical processes. A variable voltage, for instance, might represent velocity or force in a physical system. Through the use of resistive voltage dividers and voltage amplifiers, the mathematical operations of division and multiplication could be easily performed on these signals.

The reactive properties of capacitors and inductors lend themselves well to the simulation of variables related by calculus functions. Remember how the current through a capacitor was a function of the voltage's rate of change, and how that rate of change was designated in calculus as the *derivative*? Well, if voltage across a capacitor were made to represent the velocity of an object, the current through the capacitor would represent the force required to accelerate or decelerate that object, the capacitor's capacitance representing the object's mass:

$$i_C = C \frac{dv}{dt} \qquad F = m \frac{dv}{dt}$$

Where,

i_C = Instantaneous current through capacitor

C = Capacitance in farads

$\frac{dv}{dt}$ = Rate of change of voltage over time

Where,

F = Force applied to object

m = Mass of object

$\frac{dv}{dt}$ = Rate of change of velocity over time

This analog electronic computation of the calculus derivative function is technically known as *differentiation*, and it is a natural function of a capacitor's current in relation to the voltage applied across it. Note that this circuit requires no "programming" to perform this relatively advanced mathematical function as a digital computer would.

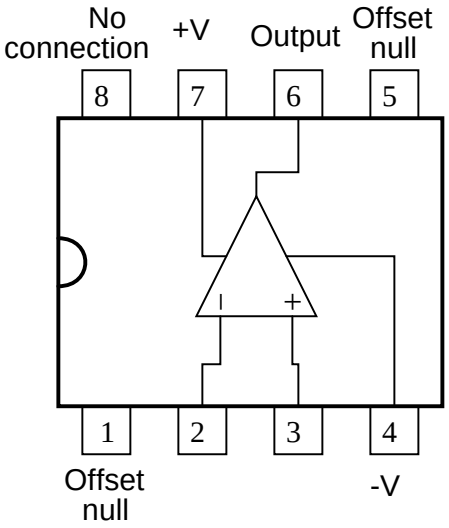
Electronic circuits are very easy and inexpensive to create compared to complex physical systems, so this kind of analog electronic simulation was widely used in the research and development of mechanical systems. For realistic simulation, though, amplifier circuits of high accuracy and easy configurability were needed in these early computers.

It was found in the course of analog computer design that differential amplifiers with extremely high voltage gains met these requirements of accuracy and configurability better than single-ended amplifiers with custom-designed gains. Using simple components connected to the inputs and output of the high-gain differential amplifier, virtually any gain and any function could be obtained from the circuit, overall, without adjusting or modifying the internal circuitry of the amplifier itself. These high-gain differential amplifiers came to be known as *operational amplifiers*, or *op-amps*, because of their application in analog computers' mathematical *operations*.

Modern op-amps, like the popular model 741, are high-performance, inexpensive integrated circuits. Their input impedances are quite high, the inputs drawing currents in the range of half a microamp (maximum) for the 741, and far less for op-amps utilizing field-effect input transistors. Output impedance is typically quite low, about 75 Ω for the model 741, and many models have built-in output short circuit protection, meaning that their outputs can be directly shorted to ground without causing harm to the internal circuitry. With direct coupling between op-amps' internal transistor stages, they can amplify DC signals just as well as AC (up to certain maximum voltage-risetime limits). It would cost far more in money and time to design a comparable discrete-transistor amplifier circuit to match that kind of performance, unless high power capability was required. For these reasons, op-amps have all but obsoleted discrete-transistor signal amplifiers in many applications.

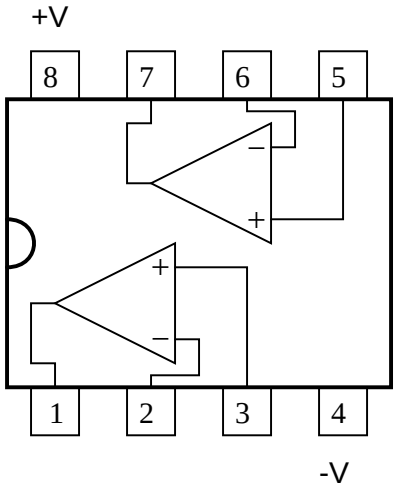
The following diagram shows the pin connections for single op-amps (741 included) when housed in an 8-pin DIP (**D**ual **I**nline **P**ackage) integrated circuit:

Typical 8-pin "DIP" op-amp integrated circuit



Some models of op-amp come two to a package, including the popular models TL082 and 1458. These are called ”dual” units, and are typically housed in an 8-pin DIP package as well, with the following pin connections:

Dual op-amp in 8-pin DIP

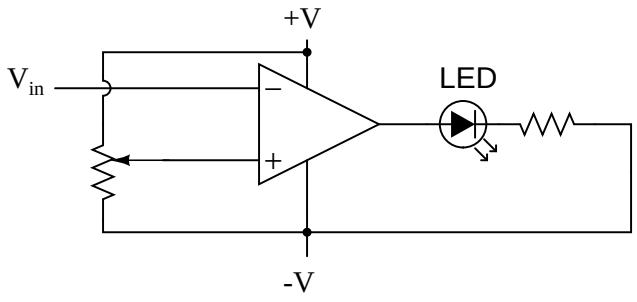


Operational amplifiers are also available four to a package, usually in 14-pin DIP arrangements. Unfortunately, pin assignments aren’t as standard for these ”quad” op-amps as they are for the ”dual” or single units. Consult the manufacturer datasheet(s) for details.

Practical operational amplifier voltage gains are in the range of 200,000 or more, which

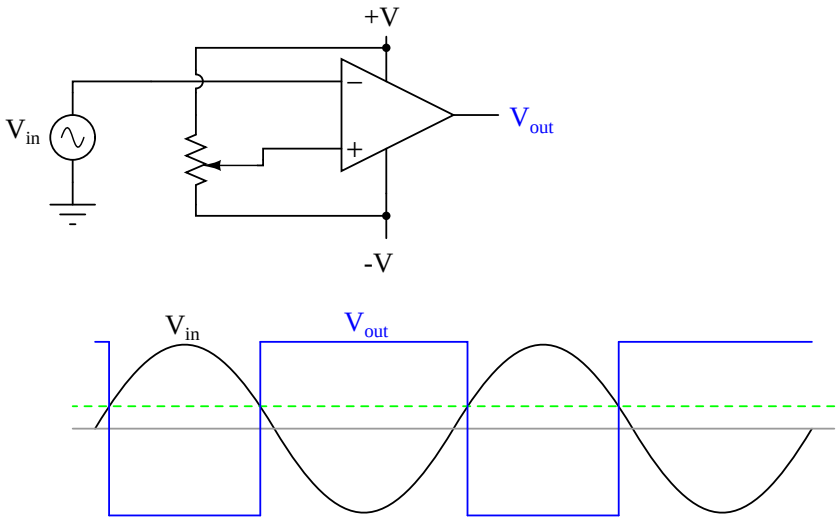
makes them almost useless as an analog differential amplifier by themselves. For an op-amp with a voltage gain (A_V) of 200,000 and a maximum output voltage swing of +15V/-15V, all it would take is a differential input voltage of 75 μV (microvolts) to drive it to saturation or cutoff! Before we take a look at how external components are used to bring the gain down to a reasonable level, let's investigate applications for the "bare" op-amp by itself.

One application is called the *comparator*. For all practical purposes, we can say that the output of an op-amp will be saturated fully positive if the (+) input is more positive than the (-) input, and saturated fully negative if the (+) input is less positive than the (-) input. In other words, an op-amp's extremely high voltage gain makes it useful as a device to compare two voltages and change output voltage states when one input exceeds the other in magnitude.

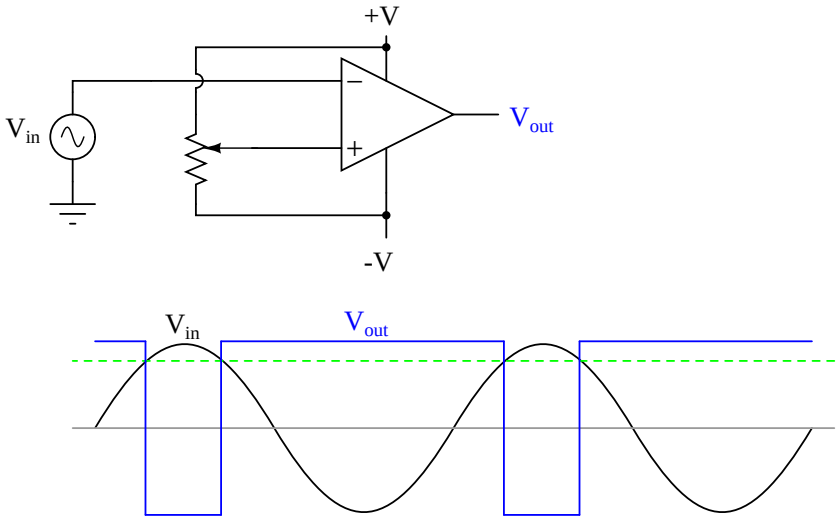


In the above circuit, we have an op-amp connected as a comparator, comparing the input voltage with a reference voltage set by the potentiometer (R_1). If V_{in} drops below the voltage set by R_1, the op-amp's output will saturate to +V, thereby lighting up the LED. Otherwise, if V_{in} is above the reference voltage, the LED will remain off. If V_{in} is a voltage signal produced by a measuring instrument, this comparator circuit could function as a "low" alarm, with the trip-point set by R_1. Instead of an LED, the op-amp output could drive a relay, a transistor, an SCR, or any other device capable of switching power to a load such as a solenoid valve, to take action in the event of a low alarm.

Another application for the comparator circuit shown is a square-wave converter. Suppose that the input voltage applied to the inverting (-) input was an AC sine wave rather than a stable DC voltage. In that case, the output voltage would transition between opposing states of saturation whenever the input voltage was equal to the reference voltage produced by the potentiometer. The result would be a square wave:



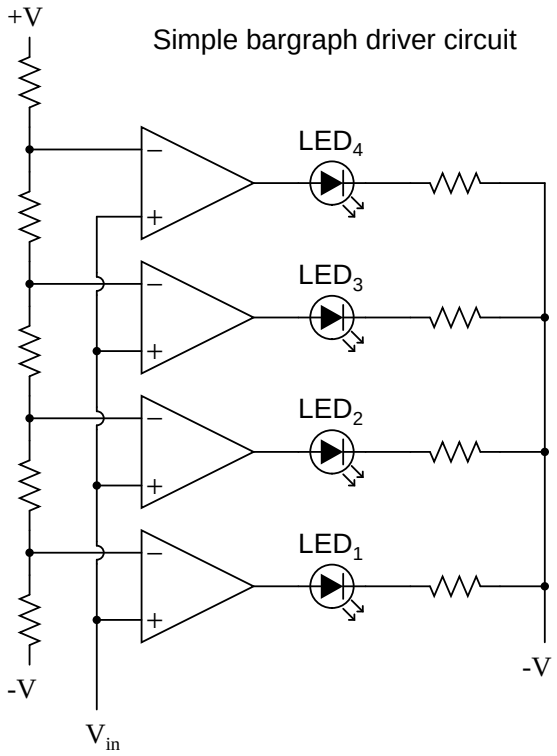
Adjustments to the potentiometer setting would change the reference voltage applied to the noninverting (+) input, which would change the points at which the sine wave would cross, changing the on/off times, or *duty cycle* of the square wave:



It should be evident that the AC input voltage would not have to be a sine wave in particular for this circuit to perform the same function. The input voltage could be a triangle wave, sawtooth wave, or any other sort of wave that ramped smoothly from positive to negative to positive again. This sort of comparator circuit is very useful for creating square waves of varying duty cycle. This technique is sometimes referred to as *pulse-width modulation*, or PWM (varying, or *modulating* a waveform according to a controlling signal, in this case the signal produced by the potentiometer).

Another comparator application is that of the bargraph driver. If we had several op-amps

connected as comparators, each with its own reference voltage connected to the inverting input, but each one monitoring the same voltage signal on their noninverting inputs, we could build a bargraph-style meter such as what is commonly seen on the face of stereo tuners and graphic equalizers. As the signal voltage (representing radio signal strength or audio sound level) increased, each comparator would "turn on" in sequence and send power to its respective LED. With each comparator switching "on" at a different level of audio sound, the number of LED's illuminated would indicate how strong the signal was.



In the circuit shown above, LED_1 would be the first to light up as the input voltage increased in a positive direction. As the input voltage continued to increase, the other LED's would illuminate in succession, until all were lit.

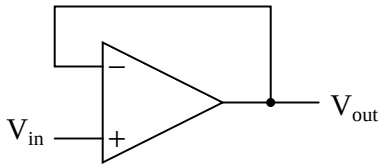
This very same technology is used in some analog-to-digital signal converters, namely the *flash converter*, to translate an analog signal quantity into a series of on/off voltages representing a digital number.

- **REVIEW:**
- A triangle shape is the generic symbol for an amplifier circuit, the wide end signifying the input and the narrow end signifying the output.
- Unless otherwise specified, *all* voltages in amplifier circuits are referenced to a common *ground* point, usually connected to one terminal of the power supply. This way, we can speak of a certain amount of voltage being "on" a single wire, while realizing that voltage is *always* measured between two points.

- A *differential amplifier* is one amplifying the voltage *difference* between two signal inputs. In such a circuit, one input tends to drive the output voltage to the same polarity of the input signal, while the other input does just the opposite. Consequently, the first input is called the *noninverting* (+) input and the second is called the *inverting* (-) input.
- An *operational amplifier* (or *op-amp* for short) is a differential amplifier with an extremely high voltage gain (A_V = 200,000 or more). Its name hails from its original use in analog computer circuitry (performing mathematical *operations*).
- Op-amps typically have very high input impedances and fairly low output impedances.
- Sometimes op-amps are used as signal *comparators*, operating in full cutoff or saturation mode depending on which input (inverting or noninverting) has the greatest voltage. Comparators are useful in detecting "greater-than" signal conditions (comparing one to the other).
- One comparator application is called the *pulse-width modulator*, and is made by comparing a sine-wave AC signal against a DC reference voltage. As the DC reference voltage is adjusted, the square-wave output of the comparator changes its duty cycle (positive versus negative times). Thus, the DC reference voltage controls, or *modulates* the pulse width of the output voltage.

8.4 Negative feedback

If we connect the output of an op-amp to its inverting input and apply a voltage signal to the noninverting input, we find that the output voltage of the op-amp closely follows that input voltage (I've neglected to draw in the power supply, +V/-V wires, and ground symbol for simplicity):



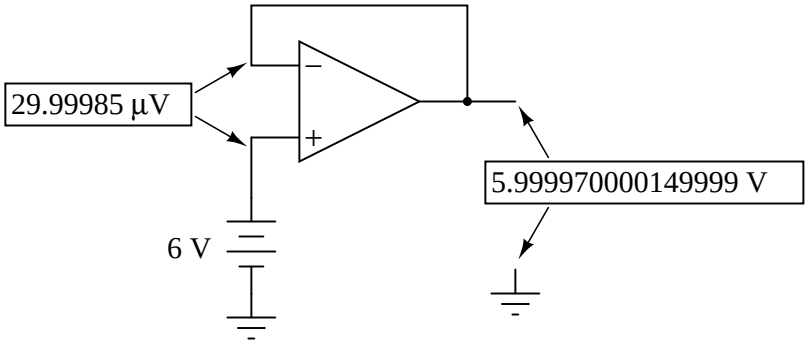
As V_{in} increases, V_{out} will increase in accordance with the differential gain. However, as V_{out} increases, that output voltage is fed back to the inverting input, thereby acting to decrease the voltage differential between inputs, which acts to bring the output down. What will happen for any given voltage input is that the op-amp will output a voltage very nearly equal to V_{in}, but just low enough so that there's enough voltage difference left between V_{in} and the (-) input to be amplified to generate the output voltage.

The circuit will quickly reach a point of stability (known as *equilibrium* in physics), where the output voltage is just the right amount to maintain the right amount of differential, which in turn produces the right amount of output voltage. Taking the op-amp's output voltage and coupling it to the inverting input is a technique known as *negative feedback*, and it is the key to having a self-stabilizing system (this is true not only of op-amps, but of any dynamic system in general). This stability gives the op-amp the capacity to work in its linear (active) mode, as

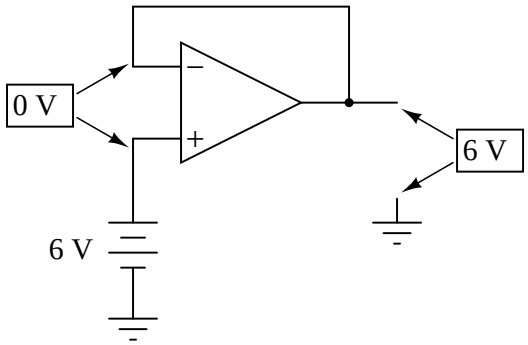
opposed to merely being saturated fully "on" or "off" as it was when used as a comparator, with no feedback at all.

Because the op-amp's gain is so high, the voltage on the inverting input can be maintained almost equal to V_{in}. Let's say that our op-amp has a differential voltage gain of 200,000. If V_{in} equals 6 volts, the output voltage will be 5.999970000149999 volts. This creates just enough differential voltage (6 volts - 5.999970000149999 volts = 29.99985 μV) to cause 5.999970000149999 volts to be manifested at the output terminal, and the system holds there in balance. As you can see, 29.99985 μV is not a lot of differential, so for practical calculations, we can assume that the differential voltage between the two input wires is held by negative feedback exactly at 0 volts.

The effects of negative feedback



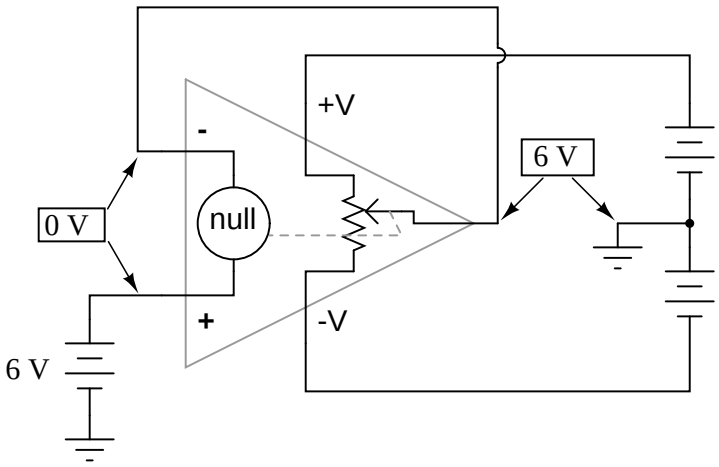
The effects of negative feedback (rounded figures)



One great advantage to using an op-amp with negative feedback is that the actual voltage gain of the op-amp doesn't matter, so long as its very large. If the op-amp's differential gain were 250,000 instead of 200,000, all it would mean is that the output voltage would hold just a little closer to V_{in} (less differential voltage needed between inputs to generate the required output). In the circuit just illustrated, the output voltage would still be (for all practical purposes) equal to the non-inverting input voltage. Op-amp gains, therefore, do not have to be precisely set by the factory in order for the circuit designer to build an amplifier circuit with

precise gain. Negative feedback makes the system self-correcting. The above circuit as a whole will simply follow the input voltage with a stable gain of 1.

Going back to our differential amplifier model, we can think of the operational amplifier as being a variable voltage source controlled by an extremely sensitive *null detector*, the kind of meter movement or other sensitive measurement device used in bridge circuits to detect a condition of balance (zero volts). The "potentiometer" inside the op-amp creating the variable voltage will move to whatever position it must to "balance" the inverting and noninverting input voltages so that the "null detector" has zero voltage across it:



As the "potentiometer" will move to provide an output voltage necessary to satisfy the "null detector" at an "indication" of zero volts, the output voltage becomes equal to the input voltage: in this case, 6 volts. If the input voltage changes at all, the "potentiometer" inside the op-amp will change position to hold the "null detector" in balance (indicating zero volts), resulting in an output voltage approximately equal to the input voltage at all times.

This will hold true within the range of voltages that the op-amp can output. With a power supply of +15V/-15V, and an ideal amplifier that can swing its output voltage just as far, it will faithfully "follow" the input voltage between the limits of +15 volts and -15 volts. For this reason, the above circuit is known as a *voltage follower*. Like its one-transistor counterpart, the common-collector ("emitter-follower") amplifier, it has a voltage gain of 1, a high input impedance, a low output impedance, and a high current gain. Voltage followers are also known as *voltage buffers*, and are used to boost the current-sourcing ability of voltage signals too weak (too high of source impedance) to directly drive a load. The op-amp model shown in the last illustration depicts how the output voltage is essentially isolated from the input voltage, so that current on the output pin is not supplied by the input voltage source at all, but rather from the power supply powering the op-amp.

It should be mentioned that many op-amps cannot swing their output voltages exactly to +V/-V power supply rail voltages. The model 741 is one of those that cannot: when saturated, its output voltage peaks within about one volt of the +V power supply voltage and within about 2 volts of the -V power supply voltage. Therefore, with a split power supply of +15/-15 volts, a 741 op-amp's output may go as high as +14 volts or as low as -13 volts (approximately), but no further. This is due to its bipolar transistor design. These two voltage limits are known

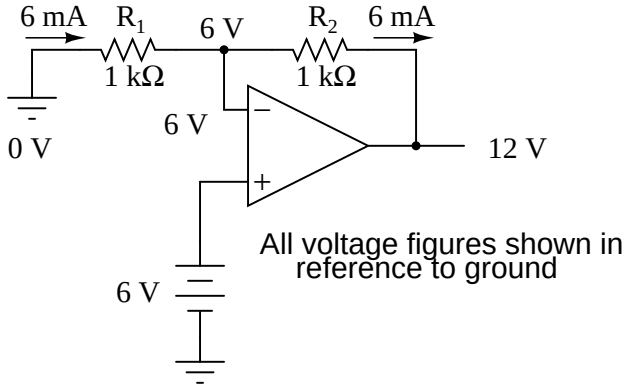
as the *positive saturation voltage* and *negative saturation voltage*, respectively. Other op-amps, such as the model 3130 with field-effect transistors in the final output stage, have the ability to swing their output voltages within millivolts of either power supply *rail* voltage. Consequently, their positive and negative saturation voltages are practically equal to the supply voltages.

- **REVIEW:**
- Connecting the output of an op-amp to its inverting (-) input is called *negative feedback*. This term can be broadly applied to any dynamic system where the output signal is "fed back" to the input somehow so as to reach a point of equilibrium (balance).
- When the output of an op-amp is *directly* connected to its inverting (-) input, a *voltage follower* will be created. Whatever signal voltage is impressed upon the noninverting (+) input will be seen on the output.
- An op-amp with negative feedback will try to drive its output voltage to whatever level necessary so that the differential voltage between the two inputs is practically zero. The higher the op-amp differential gain, the closer that differential voltage will be to zero.
- Some op-amps cannot produce an output voltage equal to their supply voltage when saturated. The model 741 is one of these. The upper and lower limits of an op-amp's output voltage swing are known as *positive saturation voltage* and *negative saturation voltage*, respectively.

8.5 Divided feedback

If we add a voltage divider to the negative feedback wiring so that only a *fraction* of the output voltage is fed back to the inverting input instead of the full amount, the output voltage will be a *multiple* of the input voltage (please bear in mind that the power supply connections to the op-amp have been omitted once again for simplicity's sake):

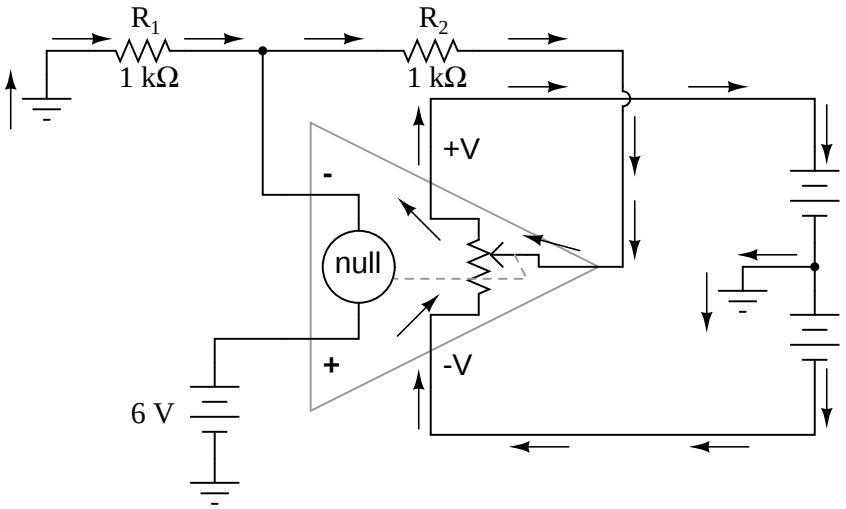
The effects of divided negative feedback



If R_1 and R_2 are both equal and V_{in} is 6 volts, the op-amp will output whatever voltage is needed to drop 6 volts across R_1 (to make the inverting input voltage equal to 6 volts, as well, keeping the voltage difference between the two inputs equal to zero). With the 2:1 voltage divider of R_1 and R_2, this will take 12 volts at the output of the op-amp to accomplish.

Another way of analyzing this circuit is to start by calculating the magnitude and direction of current through R_1, knowing the voltage on either side (and therefore, by subtraction, the voltage across R_1), and R_1's resistance. Since the left-hand side of R_1 is connected to ground (0 volts) and the right-hand side is at a potential of 6 volts (due to the negative feedback holding that point equal to V_{in}), we can see that we have 6 volts across R_1. This gives us 6 mA of current through R_1 from left to right. Because we know that both inputs of the op-amp have extremely high impedance, we can safely assume they won't add or subtract any current through the divider. In other words, we can treat R_1 and R_2 as being in series with each other: all of the electrons flowing through R_1 must flow through R_2. Knowing the current through R_2 and the resistance of R_2, we can calculate the voltage across R_2 (6 volts), and its polarity. Counting up voltages from ground (0 volts) to the right-hand side of R_2, we arrive at 12 volts on the output.

Upon examining the last illustration, one might wonder, "where does that 6 mA of current go?" The last illustration doesn't show the entire current path, but in reality it comes from the negative side of the DC power supply, through ground, through R_1, through R_2, through the output pin of the op-amp, and then back to the positive side of the DC power supply through the output transistor(s) of the op-amp. Using the null detector/potentiometer model of the op-amp, the current path looks like this:



The 6 volt signal source does not have to supply any current for the circuit: it merely commands the op-amp to balance voltage between the inverting (-) and noninverting (+) input pins, and in so doing produce an output voltage that is twice the input due to the dividing effect of the two 1 kΩ resistors.

We can change the voltage gain of this circuit, overall, just by adjusting the values of R_1 and R_2 (changing the ratio of output voltage that is fed back to the inverting input). Gain can be calculated by the following formula:

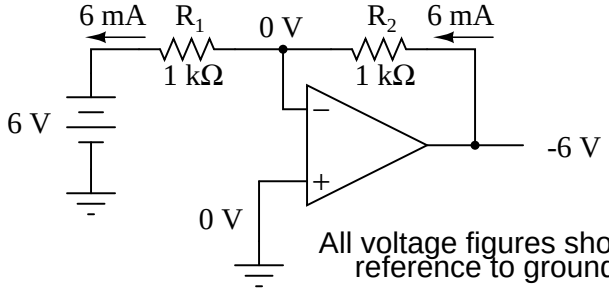
$$A_V = \frac{R_2}{R_1} + 1$$

Note that the voltage gain for this design of amplifier circuit can never be less than 1. If we were to lower R_2 to a value of zero ohms, our circuit would be essentially identical to the voltage follower, with the output directly connected to the inverting input. Since the voltage follower has a gain of 1, this sets the lower gain limit of the noninverting amplifier. However, the gain can be increased far beyond 1, by increasing R_2 in proportion to R_1.

Also note that the polarity of the output matches that of the input, just as with a voltage follower. A positive input voltage results in a positive output voltage, and vice versa (with respect to ground). For this reason, this circuit is referred to as a *noninverting amplifier*.

Just as with the voltage follower, we see that the differential gain of the op-amp is irrelevant, so long as its very high. The voltages and currents in this circuit would hardly change at all if the op-amp's voltage gain were 250,000 instead of 200,000. This stands as a stark contrast to single-transistor amplifier circuit designs, where the Beta of the individual transistor greatly influenced the overall gains of the amplifier. With negative feedback, we have a self-correcting system that amplifies voltage according to the ratios set by the feedback resistors, not the gains internal to the op-amp.

Let's see what happens if we retain negative feedback through a voltage divider, but apply the input voltage at a different location:



By grounding the noninverting input, the negative feedback from the output seeks to hold the inverting input's voltage at 0 volts, as well. For this reason, the inverting input is referred to in this circuit as a *virtual ground*, being held at ground potential (0 volts) by the feedback, yet not directly connected to (electrically common with) ground. The input voltage this time is applied to the left-hand end of the voltage divider (R_1 = R_2 = 1 kΩ again), so the output voltage must swing to -6 volts in order to balance the middle at ground potential (0 volts). Using the same techniques as with the noninverting amplifier, we can analyze this circuit's operation by determining current magnitudes and directions, starting with R_1, and continuing on to determining the output voltage.

We can change the overall voltage gain of this circuit, overall, just by adjusting the values of R_1 and R_2 (changing the ratio of output voltage that is fed back to the inverting input). Gain can be calculated by the following formula:

$$A_V = \frac{R_2}{R_1}$$

Note that this circuit's voltage gain *can* be less than 1, depending solely on the ratio of R_2

to R_1. Also note that the output voltage is always the opposite polarity of the input voltage. A positive input voltage results in a negative output voltage, and vice versa (with respect to ground). For this reason, this circuit is referred to as an *inverting amplifier*. Sometimes, the gain formula contains a negative sign (before the R_2/R_1 fraction) to reflect this reversal of polarities.

These two amplifier circuits we've just investigated serve the purpose of multiplying or dividing the magnitude of the input voltage signal. This is exactly how the mathematical operations of multiplication and division are typically handled in analog computer circuitry.

- **REVIEW:**

- By connecting the inverting (-) input of an op-amp directly to the output, we get negative feedback, which gives us a *voltage follower* circuit. By connecting that negative feedback through a resistive voltage divider (feeding back a *fraction* of the output voltage to the inverting input), the output voltage becomes a *multiple* of the input voltage.

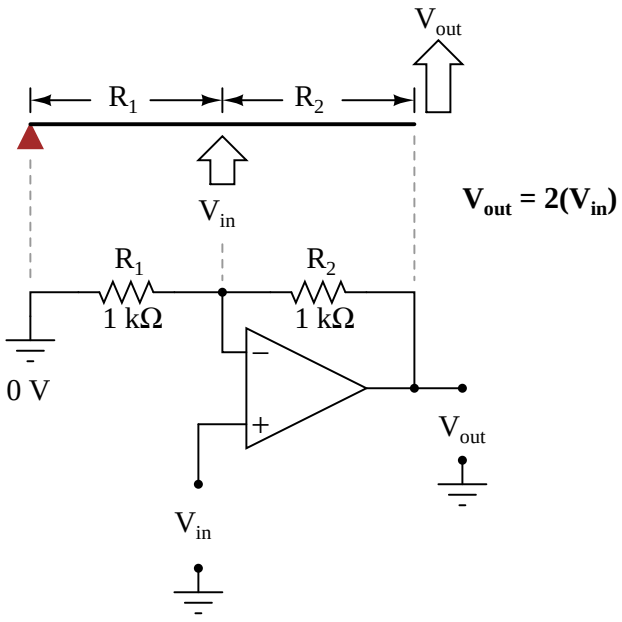
- A negative-feedback op-amp circuit with the input signal going to the noninverting (+) input is called a *noninverting amplifier*. The output voltage will be the same polarity as the input. Voltage gain is given by the following equation: $A_V = (R_2/R_1) + 1$

- A negative-feedback op-amp circuit with the input signal going to the "bottom" of the resistive voltage divider, with the noninverting (+) input grounded, is called an *inverting amplifier*. Its output voltage will be the opposite polarity of the input. Voltage gain is given by the following equation: $A_V = R_2/R_1$

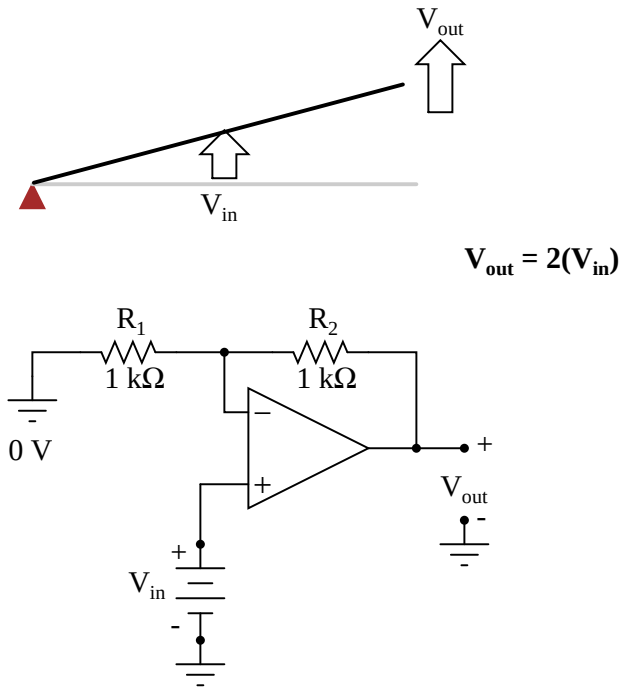
8.6 An analogy for divided feedback

A helpful analogy for understanding divided feedback amplifier circuits is that of a mechanical lever, with relative motion of the lever's ends representing change in input and output voltages, and the fulcrum (pivot point) representing the location of the ground point, real or virtual.

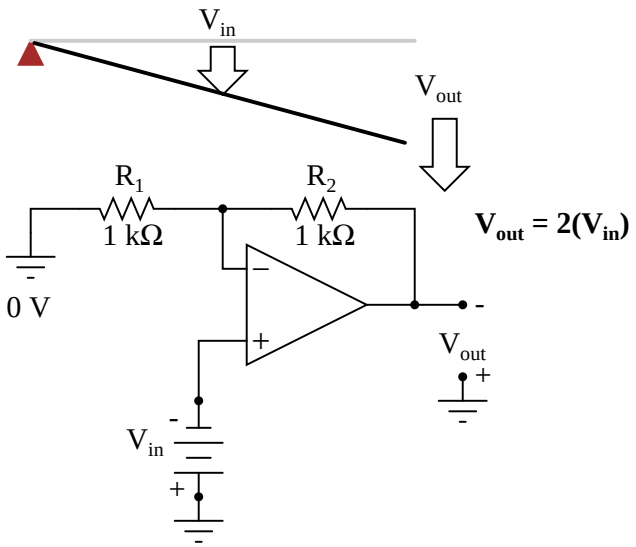
Take for example the following noninverting op-amp circuit. We know from the prior section that the voltage gain of a noninverting amplifier configuration can never be less than unity (1). If we draw a lever diagram next to the amplifier schematic, with the distance between fulcrum and lever ends representative of resistor values, the motion of the lever will signify changes in voltage at the input and output terminals of the amplifier:



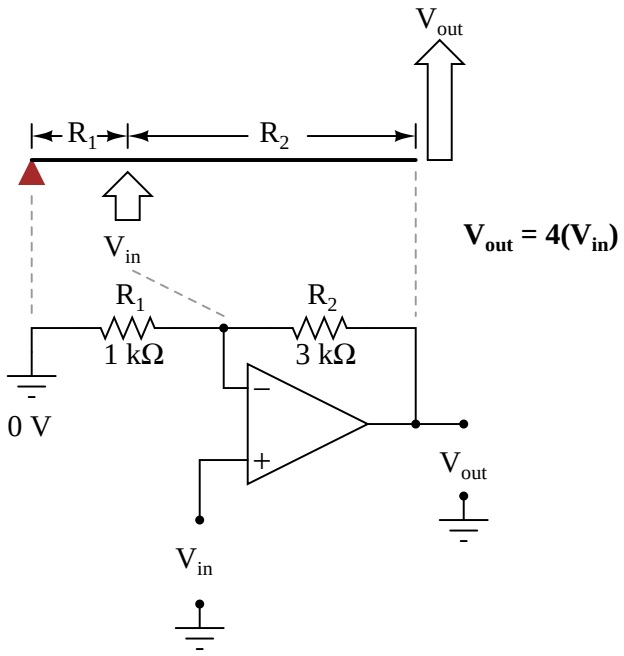
Physicists call this type of lever, with the input force (effort) applied between the fulcrum and output (load), a *third-class* lever. It is characterized by an output displacement (motion) at least as large than the input displacement – a "gain" of at least 1 – and in the same direction. Applying a positive input voltage to this op-amp circuit is analogous to displacing the "input" point on the lever upward:



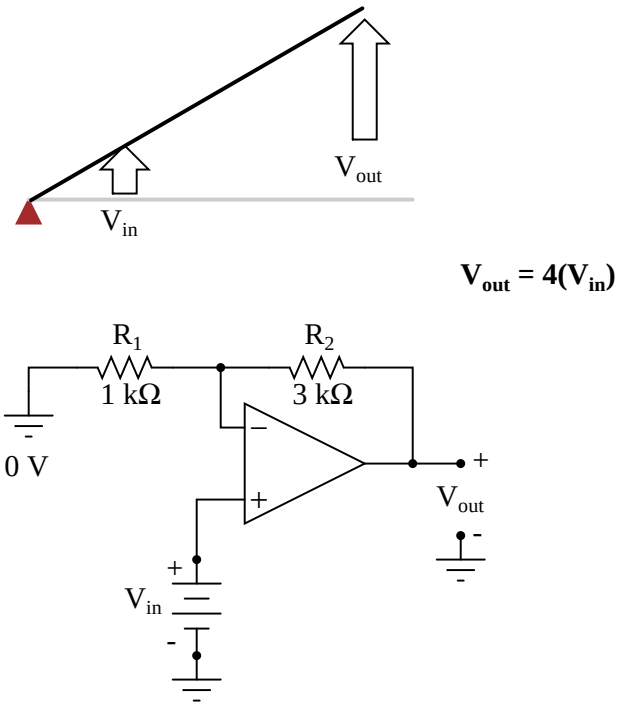
Due to the displacement-amplifying characteristics of the lever, the "output" point will move twice as far as the "input" point, and in the same direction. In the electronic circuit, the output voltage will equal twice the input, with the same polarity. Applying a negative input voltage is analogous to moving the lever downward from its level "zero" position, resulting in an amplified output displacement that is also negative:



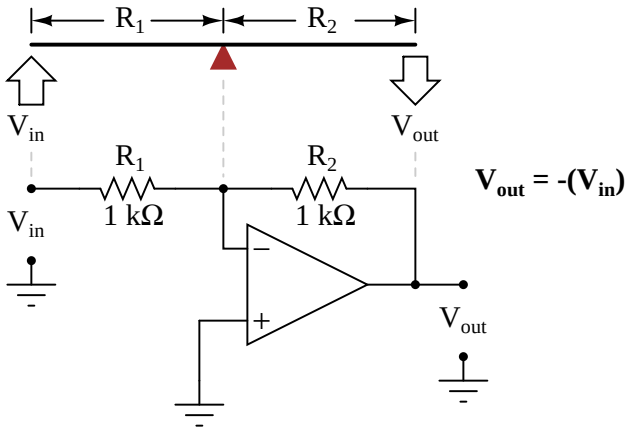
If we alter the resistor ratio R_2/R_1, we change the gain of the op-amp circuit. In lever terms, this means moving the input point in relation to the fulcrum and lever end, which similarly changes the displacement "gain" of the machine:



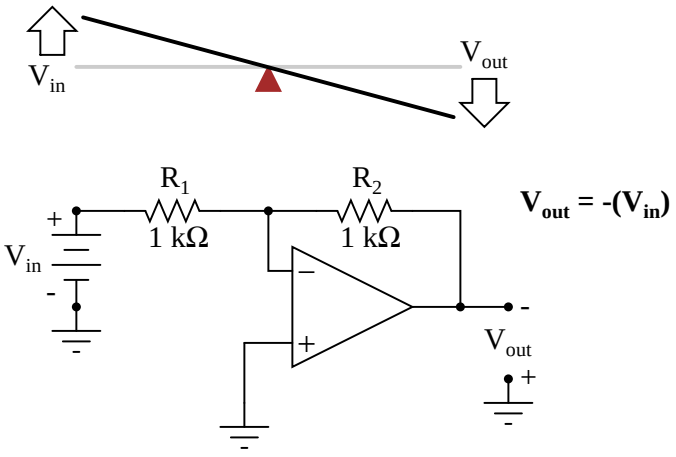
Now, any input signal will become amplified by a factor of four instead of by a factor of two:



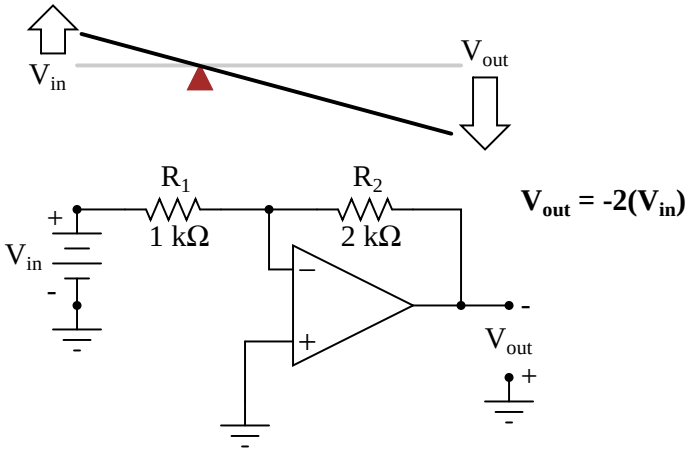
Inverting op-amp circuits may be modeled using the lever analogy as well. With the inverting configuration, the ground point of the feedback voltage divider is the op-amp's inverting input with the input to the left and the output to the right. This is mechanically equivalent to a *first-class* lever, where the input force (effort) is on the opposite side of the fulcrum from the output (load):



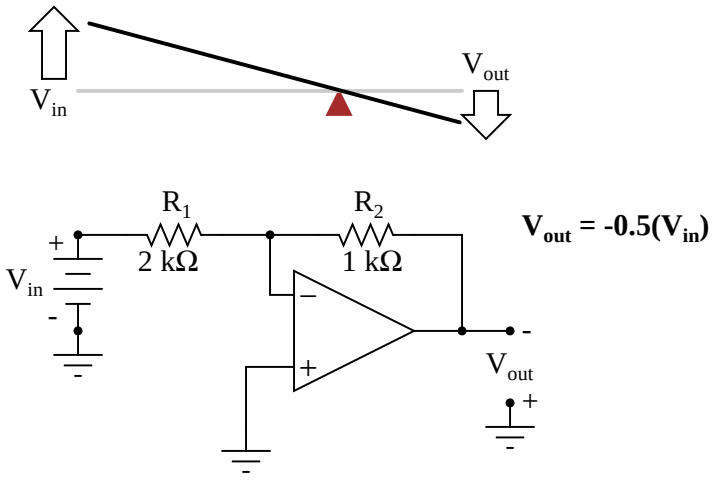
With equal-value resistors (equal-lengths of lever on each side of the fulcrum), the output voltage (displacement) will be equal in magnitude to the input voltage (displacement), but of the opposite polarity (direction). A positive input results in a negative output:



Changing the resistor ratio R_2/R_1 changes the gain of the amplifier circuit, just as changing the fulcrum position on the lever changes its mechanical displacement "gain." Consider the following example, where R_2 is made twice as large as R_1:



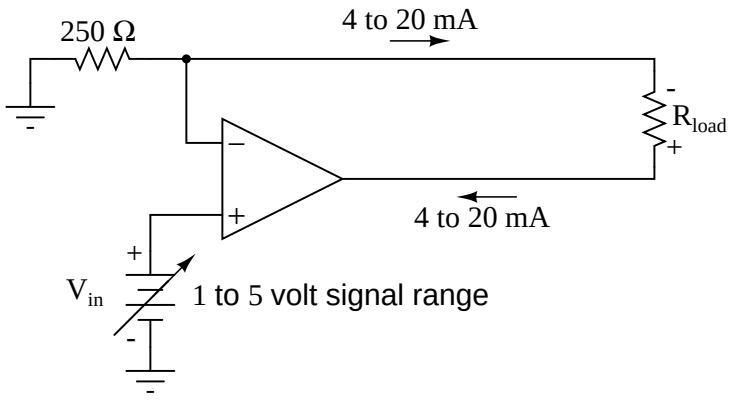
With the inverting amplifier configuration, though, gains of less than 1 are possible, just as with first-class levers. Reversing R_2 and R_1 values is analogous to moving the fulcrum to its complementary position on the lever: one-third of the way from the output end. There, the output displacement will be one-half the input displacement:



8.7 Voltage-to-current signal conversion

In instrumentation circuitry, DC signals are often used as analog representations of physical measurements such as temperature, pressure, flow, weight, and motion. Most commonly, *DC current* signals are used in preference to *DC voltage* signals, because current signals are exactly equal in magnitude throughout the series circuit loop carrying current from the source (measuring device) to the load (indicator, recorder, or controller), whereas voltage signals in a parallel circuit may vary from one end to the other due to resistive wire losses. Furthermore, current-sensing instruments typically have low impedances (while voltage-sensing instruments have high impedances), which gives current-sensing instruments greater electrical noise immunity.

In order to use current as an analog representation of a physical quantity, we have to have some way of generating a precise amount of current within the signal circuit. But how do we generate a precise current signal when we might not know the resistance of the loop? The answer is to use an amplifier designed to hold current to a prescribed value, applying as much or as little voltage as necessary to the load circuit to maintain that value. Such an amplifier performs the function of a *current source*. An op-amp with negative feedback is a perfect candidate for such a task:



The input voltage to this circuit is assumed to be coming from some type of physical transducer/amplifier arrangement, calibrated to produce 1 volt at 0 percent of physical measurement, and 5 volts at 100 percent of physical measurement. The standard analog current signal range is 4 mA to 20 mA, signifying 0% to 100% of measurement range, respectively. At 5 volts input, the 250 Ω (precision) resistor will have 5 volts applied across it, resulting in 20 mA of current in the large loop circuit (with R_{load}). It does not matter what resistance value R_{load} is, or how much wire resistance is present in that large loop, so long as the op-amp has a high enough power supply voltage to output the voltage necessary to get 20 mA flowing through R_{load}. The 250 Ω resistor establishes the relationship between input voltage and output current, in this case creating the equivalence of 1-5 V in / 4-20 mA out. If we were converting the 1-5 volt input signal to a 10-50 mA output signal (an older, obsolete instrumentation standard for industry), we'd use a 100 Ω precision resistor instead.

Another name for this circuit is *transconductance amplifier*. In electronics, transconductance is the mathematical ratio of current change divided by voltage change (ΔI / Δ V), and it is measured in the unit of Siemens, the same unit used to express conductance (the mathematical reciprocal of resistance: current/voltage). In this circuit, the transconductance ratio is fixed by the value of the 250 Ω resistor, giving a linear current-out/voltage-in relationship.

- **REVIEW:**

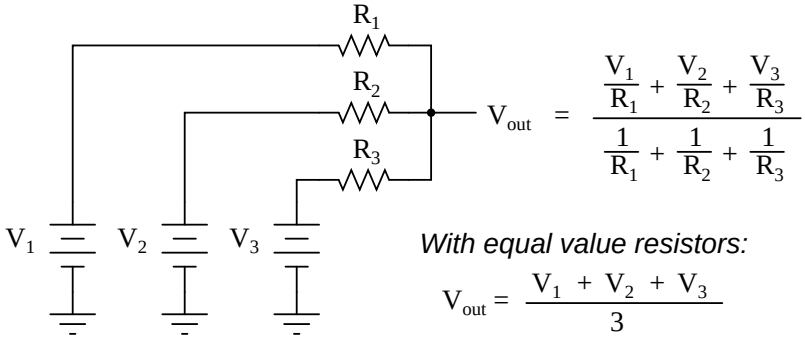
- In industry, DC current signals are often used in preference to DC voltage signals as analog representations of physical quantities. Current in a series circuit is absolutely equal at all points in that circuit regardless of wiring resistance, whereas voltage in a parallel-connected circuit may vary from end to end because of wire resistance, making current-signaling more accurate from the "transmitting" to the "receiving" instrument.

- Voltage signals are relatively easy to produce directly from transducer devices, whereas accurate current signals are not. Op-amps can be used to "convert" a voltage signal into a current signal quite easily. In this mode, the op-amp will output whatever voltage is necessary to maintain current through the signaling circuit at the proper value.

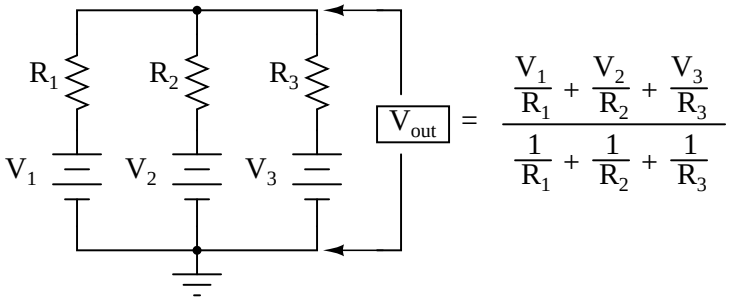
8.8 Averager and summer circuits

If we take three equal resistors and connect one end of each to a common point, then apply three input voltages (one to each of the resistors' free ends), the voltage seen at the common point will be the mathematical *average* of the three.

"Passive averager" circuit



This circuit is really nothing more than a practical application of Millman's Theorem:



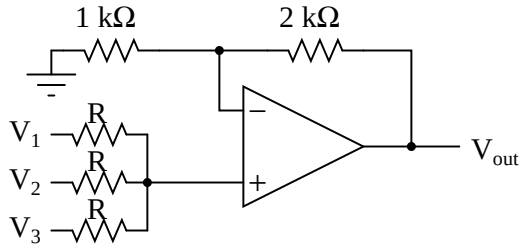
This circuit is commonly known as a *passive averager*, because it generates an average voltage with non-amplifying components. *Passive* simply means that it is an unamplified circuit. The large equation to the right of the averager circuit comes from Millman's Theorem, which describes the voltage produced by multiple voltage sources connected together through individual resistances. Since the three resistors in the averager circuit are equal to each other, we can simplify Millman's formula by writing R_1, R_2, and R_3 simply as R (one, equal resistance instead of three individual resistances):

$$V_{out} = \frac{\frac{V_1}{R} + \frac{V_2}{R} + \frac{V_3}{R}}{\frac{1}{R} + \frac{1}{R} + \frac{1}{R}}$$

$$V_{out} = \frac{\frac{V_1 + V_2 + V_3}{R}}{\frac{3}{R}}$$

$$V_{out} = \frac{V_1 + V_2 + V_3}{3}$$

If we take a passive averager and use it to connect three input voltages into an op-amp amplifier circuit with a gain of 3, we can turn this *averaging* function into an *addition* function. The result is called a *noninverting summer* circuit:

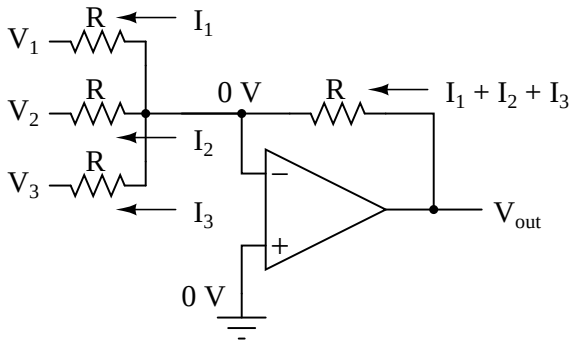


With a voltage divider composed of a 2 kΩ / 1 kΩ combination, the noninverting amplifier circuit will have a voltage gain of 3. By taking the voltage from the passive averager, which is the sum of V_1, V_2, and V_3 divided by 3, and multiplying that average by 3, we arrive at an output voltage equal to the *sum* of V_1, V_2, and V_3:

$$V_{out} = 3 \frac{V_1 + V_2 + V_3}{3}$$

$$V_{out} = V_1 + V_2 + V_3$$

Much the same can be done with an inverting op-amp amplifier, using a passive averager as part of the voltage divider feedback circuit. The result is called an *inverting summer* circuit:



Now, with the right-hand sides of the three averaging resistors connected to the virtual ground point of the op-amp's inverting input, Millman's Theorem no longer directly applies as it did before. The voltage at the virtual ground is now held at 0 volts by the op-amp's negative feedback, whereas before it was free to float to the average value of V_1, V_2, and V_3. However, with all resistor values equal to each other, the currents through each of the three resistors will be proportional to their respective input voltages. Since those three currents will *add* at the virtual ground node, the algebraic sum of those currents through the feedback resistor will produce a voltage at V_{out} equal to $V_1 + V_2 + V_3$, except with reversed polarity. The reversal in polarity is what makes this circuit an *inverting* summer:

$$V_{out} = -(V_1 + V_2 + V_3)$$

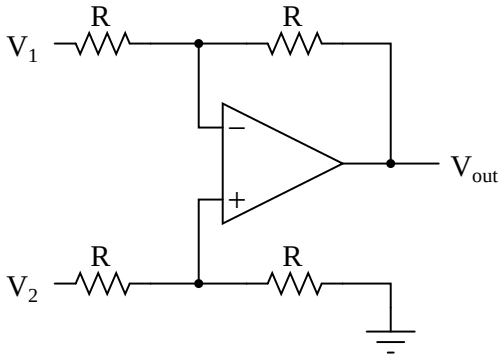
Summer (adder) circuits are quite useful in analog computer design, just as multiplier and divider circuits would be. Again, it is the extremely high differential gain of the op-amp which allows us to build these useful circuits with a bare minimum of components.

- **REVIEW:**

- A *summer* circuit is one that *sums*, or adds, multiple analog voltage signals together. There are two basic varieties of op-amp summer circuits: noninverting and inverting.

8.9 Building a differential amplifier

An op-amp with no feedback is already a differential amplifier, amplifying the voltage difference between the two inputs. However, its gain cannot be controlled, and it is generally too high to be of any practical use. So far, our application of negative feedback to op-amps has resulting in the practical loss of one of the inputs, the resulting amplifier only good for amplifying a single voltage signal input. With a little ingenuity, however, we can construct an op-amp circuit maintaining both voltage inputs, yet with a controlled gain set by external resistors.

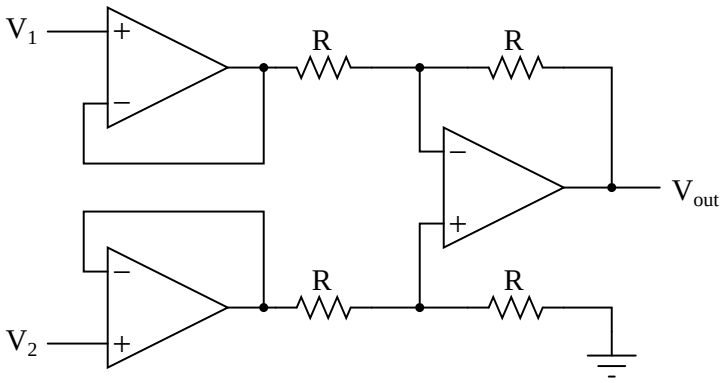


If all the resistor values are equal, this amplifier will have a differential voltage gain of 1. The analysis of this circuit is essentially the same as that of an inverting amplifier, except that the noninverting input (+) of the op-amp is at a voltage equal to a fraction of V_2, rather than being connected directly to ground. As would stand to reason, V_2 functions as the noninverting input and V_1 functions as the inverting input of the final amplifier circuit. Therefore:

$$V_{out} = V_2 - V_1$$

If we wanted to provide a differential gain of anything other than 1, we would have to adjust the resistances in *both* upper and lower voltage dividers, necessitating multiple resistor changes and balancing between the two dividers for symmetrical operation. This is not always practical, for obvious reasons.

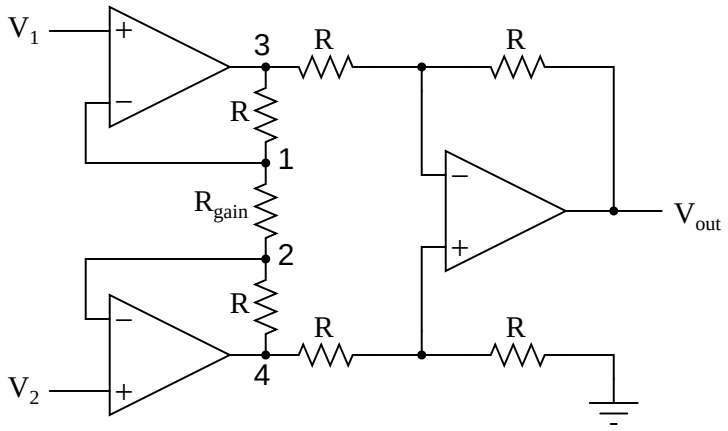
Another limitation of this amplifier design is the fact that its input impedances are rather low compared to that of some other op-amp configurations, most notably the noninverting (single-ended input) amplifier. Each input voltage source has to drive current through a resistance, which constitutes far less impedance than the bare input of an op-amp alone. The solution to this problem, fortunately, is quite simple. All we need to do is "buffer" each input voltage signal through a voltage follower like this:



Now the V_1 and V_2 input lines are connected straight to the inputs of two voltage-follower op-amps, giving very high impedance. The two op-amps on the left now handle the driving of current through the resistors instead of letting the input voltage sources (whatever they may be) do it. The increased complexity to our circuit is minimal for a substantial benefit.

8.10 The instrumentation amplifier

As suggested before, it is beneficial to be able to adjust the gain of the amplifier circuit without having to change more than one resistor value, as is necessary with the previous design of differential amplifier. The so-called *instrumentation* builds on the last version of differential amplifier to give us that capability:



This intimidating circuit is constructed from a buffered differential amplifier stage with three new resistors linking the two buffer circuits together. Consider all resistors to be of equal value except for R_{gain}. The negative feedback of the upper-left op-amp causes the voltage at point 1 (top of R_{gain}) to be equal to V_1. Likewise, the voltage at point 2 (bottom of R_{gain}) is held to a value equal to V_2. This establishes a voltage drop across R_{gain} equal to the voltage difference between V_1 and V_2. That voltage drop causes a current through R_{gain}, and since the feedback loops of the two input op-amps draw no current, that same amount of current through R_{gain} must be going through the two "R" resistors above and below it. This produces a voltage drop between points 3 and 4 equal to:

$$V_{3\text{-}4} = (V_2 - V_1)\left(1 + \frac{2R}{R_{gain}}\right)$$

The regular differential amplifier on the right-hand side of the circuit then takes this voltage drop between points 3 and 4, and amplifies it by a gain of 1 (assuming again that all "R" resistors are of equal value). Though this looks like a cumbersome way to build a differential amplifier, it has the distinct advantages of possessing extremely high input impedances on the V_1 and V_2 inputs (because they connect straight into the noninverting inputs of their respective op-amps), and adjustable gain that can be set by a single resistor. Manipulating the above formula a bit, we have a general expression for overall voltage gain in the instrumentation amplifier:

$$A_V = \left(1 + \frac{2R}{R_{gain}}\right)$$

Though it may not be obvious by looking at the schematic, we can change the differential gain of the instrumentation amplifier simply by changing the value of one resistor: R_{gain}. Yes, we could still change the overall gain by changing the values of some of the other resistors,

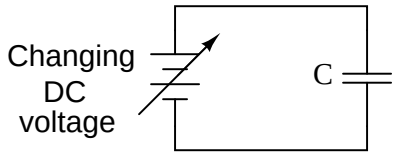
but this would necessitate *balanced* resistor value changes for the circuit to remain symmetrical. Please note that the lowest gain possible with the above circuit is obtained with R_{gain} completely open (infinite resistance), and that gain value is 1.

- **REVIEW:**
- An *instrumentation amplifier* is a differential op-amp circuit providing high input impedances with ease of gain adjustment through the variation of a single resistor.

8.11 Differentiator and integrator circuits

By introducing electrical reactance into the feedback loops of op-amp amplifier circuits, we can cause the output to respond to changes in the input voltage over *time*. Drawing their names from their respective calculus functions, the *integrator* produces a voltage output proportional to the product (multiplication) of the input voltage and time; and the *differentiator* (not to be confused with *differential*) produces a voltage output proportional to the input voltage's rate of change.

Capacitance can be defined as the measure of a capacitor's opposition to changes in voltage. The greater the capacitance, the more the opposition. Capacitors oppose voltage change by creating current in the circuit: that is, they either charge or discharge in response to a change in applied voltage. So, the more capacitance a capacitor has, the greater its charge or discharge current will be for any given rate of voltage change across it. The equation for this is quite simple:



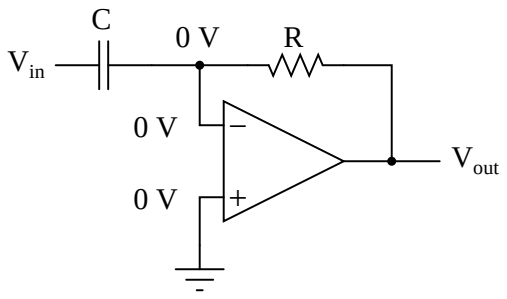
$$i = C \frac{dv}{dt}$$

The dv/dt fraction is a calculus expression representing the rate of voltage change over time. If the DC supply in the above circuit were steadily increased from a voltage of 15 volts to a voltage of 16 volts over a time span of 1 hour, the current through the capacitor would most likely be *very* small, because of the very low rate of voltage change (dv/dt = 1 volt / 3600 seconds). However, if we steadily increased the DC supply from 15 volts to 16 volts over a shorter time span of 1 second, the rate of voltage change would be much higher, and thus the charging current would be much higher (3600 times higher, to be exact). Same amount of change in voltage, but vastly different *rates* of change, resulting in vastly different amounts of current in the circuit.

To put some definite numbers to this formula, if the voltage across a 47 μF capacitor was changing at a linear rate of 3 volts per second, the current "through" the capacitor would be (47 μF)(3 V/s) = 141 μA.

We can build an op-amp circuit which measures change in voltage by measuring current through a capacitor, and outputs a voltage proportional to that current:

Differentiator



The right-hand side of the capacitor is held to a voltage of 0 volts, due to the "virtual ground" effect. Therefore, current "through" the capacitor is solely due to *change* in the input voltage. A steady input voltage won't cause a current through C, but a *changing* input voltage will.

Capacitor current moves through the feedback resistor, producing a drop across it, which is the same as the output voltage. A linear, positive rate of input voltage change will result in a steady negative voltage at the output of the op-amp. Conversely, a linear, negative rate of input voltage change will result in a steady positive voltage at the output of the op-amp. This polarity inversion from input to output is due to the fact that the input signal is being sent (essentially) to the inverting input of the op-amp, so it acts like the inverting amplifier mentioned previously. The faster the rate of voltage change at the input (either positive or negative), the greater the voltage at the output.

The formula for determining voltage output for the differentiator is as follows:

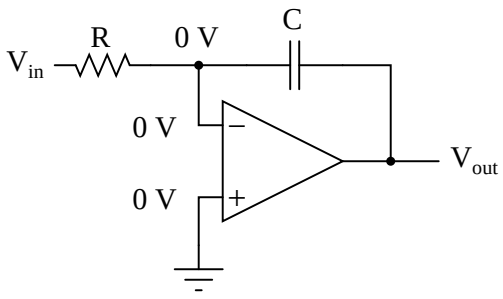
$$V_{out} = -RC \frac{dv_{in}}{dt}$$

Applications for this, besides representing the derivative calculus function inside of an analog computer, include rate-of-change indicators for process instrumentation. One such rate-of-change signal application might be for monitoring (or controlling) the rate of temperature change in a furnace, where too high or too low of a temperature rise rate could be detrimental. The DC voltage produced by the differentiator circuit could be used to drive a comparator, which would signal an alarm or activate a control if the rate of change exceeded a pre-set level.

In process control, the derivative function is used to make control decisions for maintaining a process at setpoint, by monitoring the rate of process change over time and taking action to prevent excessive rates of change, which can lead to an unstable condition. Analog electronic controllers use variations of this circuitry to perform the derivative function.

On the other hand, there are applications where we need precisely the opposite function, called *integration* in calculus. Here, the op-amp circuit would generate an output voltage proportional to the magnitude and duration that an input voltage signal has deviated from 0 volts. Stated differently, a constant input signal would generate a certain *rate of change* in the output voltage: differentiation in reverse. To do this, all we have to do is swap the capacitor and resistor in the previous circuit:

Integrator



As before, the negative feedback of the op-amp ensures that the inverting input will be held at 0 volts (the virtual ground). If the input voltage is exactly 0 volts, there will be no current through the resistor, therefore no charging of the capacitor, and therefore the output voltage will not change. We cannot guarantee what voltage will be at the output with respect to ground in this condition, but we can say that the output voltage *will be constant*.

However, if we apply a constant, positive voltage to the input, the op-amp output will fall negative at a linear rate, in an attempt to produce the changing voltage across the capacitor necessary to maintain the current established by the voltage difference across the resistor. Conversely, a constant, negative voltage at the input results in a linear, rising (positive) voltage at the output. The output voltage rate-of-change will be proportional to the value of the input voltage.

The formula for determining voltage output for the integrator is as follows:

$$\frac{dv_{out}}{dt} = - \frac{V_{in}}{RC}$$

or

$$V_{out} = \int_0^t - \frac{V_{in}}{RC}\, dt + c$$

Where,

c = Output voltage at start time (t=0)

One application for this device would be to keep a ”running total” of radiation exposure, or dosage, if the input voltage was a proportional signal supplied by an electronic radiation detector. Nuclear radiation can be just as damaging at low intensities for long periods of time as it is at high intensities for short periods of time. An integrator circuit would take both the intensity (input voltage magnitude) and time into account, generating an output voltage representing total radiation dosage.

Another application would be to integrate a signal representing water flow, producing a signal representing total quantity of water that has passed by the flowmeter. This application of an integrator is sometimes called a *totalizer* in the industrial instrumentation trade.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *differentiator* circuit produces a constant output voltage for a steadily changing input voltage.
- An *integrator* circuit produces a steadily changing output voltage for a constant input voltage.
- Both types of devices are easily constructed, using reactive components (usually capacitors rather than inductors) in the feedback part of the circuit.

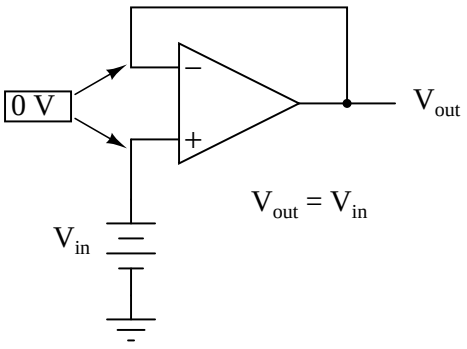
8.12 Positive feedback

As we've seen, negative feedback is an incredibly useful principle when applied to operational amplifiers. It is what allows us to create all these practical circuits, being able to precisely set gains, rates, and other significant parameters with just a few changes of resistor values. Negative feedback makes all these circuits stable and self-correcting.

The basic principle of negative feedback is that the output tends to drive in a direction that creates a condition of equilibrium (balance). In an op-amp circuit with no feedback, there is no corrective mechanism, and the output voltage will saturate with the tiniest amount of differential voltage applied between the inputs. The result is a comparator:

With negative feedback (the output voltage "fed back" somehow to the inverting input), the circuit tends to prevent itself from driving the output to full saturation. Rather, the output voltage drives only as high or as low as needed to balance the two inputs' voltages:

Negative feedback

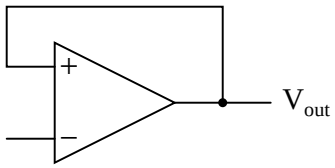


Whether the output is directly fed back to the inverting (-) input or coupled through a set of components, the effect is the same: the extremely high differential voltage gain of the op-amp will be "tamed" and the circuit will respond according to the dictates of the feedback "loop" connecting output to inverting input.

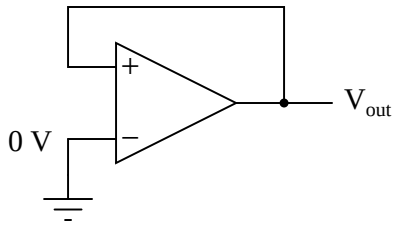
Another type of feedback, namely *positive feedback*, also finds application in op-amp circuits. Unlike negative feedback, where the output voltage is "fed back" to the inverting (-) input, with positive feedback the output voltage is somehow routed back to the noninverting

(+) input. In its simplest form, we could connect a straight piece of wire from output to noninverting input and see what happens:

Positive feedback



The inverting input remains disconnected from the feedback loop, and is free to receive an external voltage. Let's see what happens if we ground the inverting input:

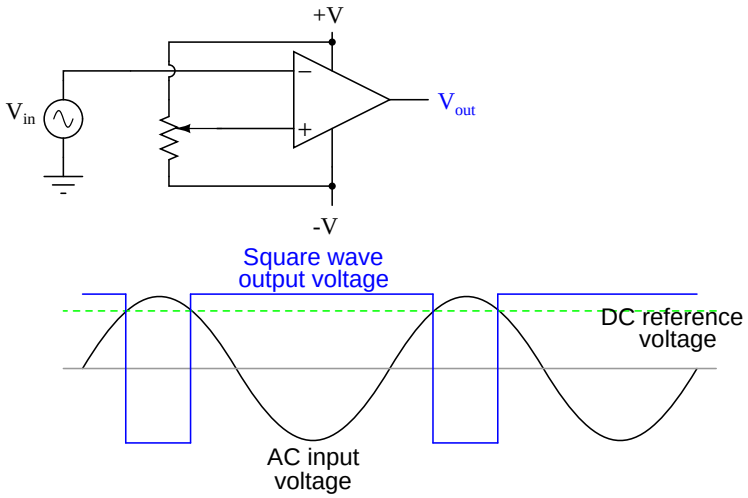


With the inverting input grounded (maintained at zero volts), the output voltage will be dictated by the magnitude and polarity of the voltage at the noninverting input. If that voltage happens to be positive, the op-amp will drive its output positive as well, feeding that positive voltage back to the noninverting input, which will result in full positive output saturation. On the other hand, if the voltage on the noninverting input happens to start out negative, the op-amp's output will drive in the negative direction, feeding back to the noninverting input and resulting in full negative saturation.

What we have here is a circuit whose output is *bistable*: stable in one of two states (saturated positive or saturated negative). Once it has reached one of those saturated states, it will tend to remain in that state, unchanging. What is necessary to get it to switch states is a voltage placed upon the inverting (-) input of the same polarity, but of a slightly greater magnitude. For example, if our circuit is saturated at an output voltage of +12 volts, it will take an input voltage at the inverting input of at least +12 volts to get the output to change. When it changes, it will saturate fully negative.

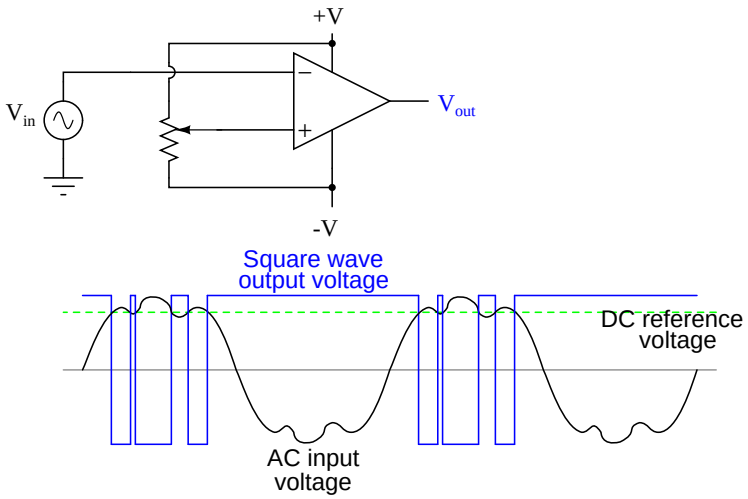
So, an op-amp with positive feedback tends to stay in whatever output state its already in. It "latches" between one of two states, saturated positive or saturated negative. Technically, this is known as *hysteresis*.

Hysteresis can be a useful property for a comparator circuit to have. As we've seen before, comparators can be used to produce a square wave from any sort of ramping waveform (sine wave, triangle wave, sawtooth wave, etc.) input. If the incoming AC waveform is noise-free (that is, a "pure" waveform), a simple comparator will work just fine.



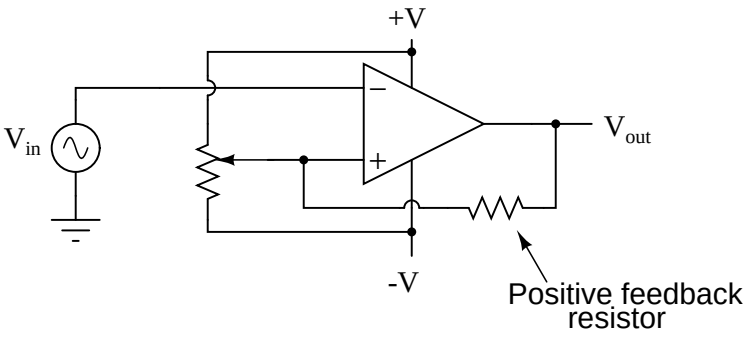
A "clean" AC input waveform produces predictable transition points on the output voltage square wave

However, if there exist any anomalies in the waveform such as harmonics or ”spikes” which cause the voltage to rise and fall significantly within the timespan of a single cycle, a comparator’s output might switch states unexpectedly:

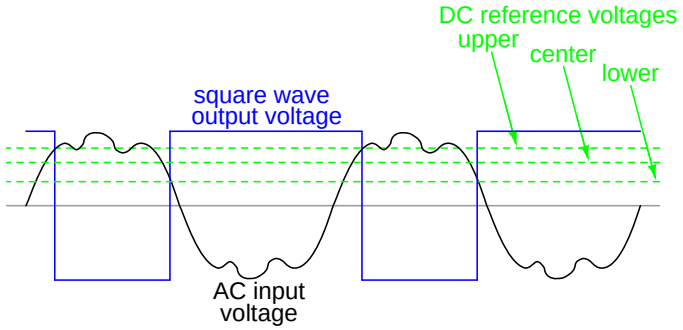


Any time there is a transition through the reference voltage level, no matter how tiny that transition may be, the output of the comparator will switch states, producing a square wave with ”glitches.”

If we add a little positive feedback to the comparator circuit, we will introduce hysteresis into the output. This hysteresis will cause the output to remain in its current state unless the AC input voltage undergoes a *major* change in magnitude.



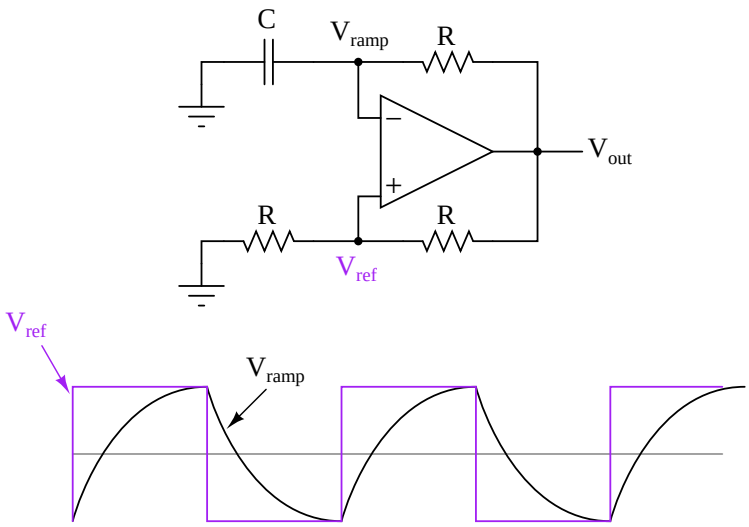
What this feedback resistor creates is a dual-reference for the comparator circuit. The voltage applied to the noninverting (+) input as a reference which to compare with the incoming AC voltage changes depending on the value of the op-amp's output voltage. When the op-amp output is saturated positive, the reference voltage at the noninverting input will be more positive than before. Conversely, when the op-amp output is saturated negative, the reference voltage at the noninverting input will be more negative than before. The result is easier to understand on a graph:



When the op-amp output is saturated positive, the upper reference voltage is in effect, and the output won't drop to a negative saturation level unless the AC input rises *above* that upper reference level. Conversely, when the op-amp output is saturated negative, the lower reference voltage is in effect, and the output won't rise to a positive saturation level unless the AC input drops *below* that lower reference level. The result is a clean square-wave output again, despite significant amounts of distortion in the AC input signal. In order for a "glitch" to cause the comparator to switch from one state to another, it would have to be at least as big (tall) as the difference between the upper and lower reference voltage levels, and at the right point in time to cross both those levels.

Another application of positive feedback in op-amp circuits is in the construction of oscillator circuits. An *oscillator* is a device that produces an alternating (AC), or at least pulsing, output voltage. Technically, it is known as an *astable* device: having no stable output state (no equilibrium whatsoever). Oscillators are very useful devices, and they are easily made with just an op-amp and a few external components.

Oscillator circuit using positive feedback



V_{out} is a square wave just like V_{ref}, only taller

When the output is saturated positive, the V_{ref} will be positive, and the capacitor will charge up in a positive direction. When V_{ramp} exceeds V_{ref} by the tiniest margin, the output will saturate negative, and the capacitor will charge in the opposite direction (polarity). Oscillation occurs because the positive feedback is instantaneous and the negative feedback is delayed (by means of an RC time constant). The frequency of this oscillator may be adjusted by varying the size of any component.

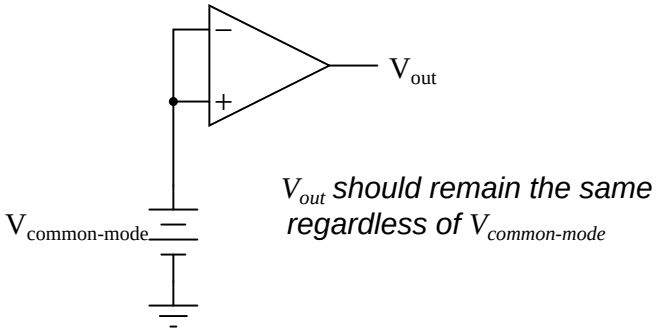
- **REVIEW:**
- Negative feedback creates a condition of *equilibrium* (balance). Positive feedback creates a condition of *hysteresis* (the tendency to "latch" in one of two extreme states).
- An *oscillator* is a device producing an alternating or pulsing output voltage.

8.13 Practical considerations

Real operational have some imperfections compared to an "ideal" model. A real device deviates from a perfect difference amplifier. One minus one may not be zero. It may have have an offset like an analog meter which is not zeroed. The inputs may draw current. The characteristics may drift with age and temperature. Gain may be reduced at high frequencies, and phase may shift from input to output. These imperfection may cause no noticable errors in some applications, unacceptable errors in others. In some cases these errors may be compensated for. Sometimes a higher quality, higher cost device is required.

8.13.1 Common-mode gain

As stated before, an ideal differential amplifier only amplifies the voltage *difference* between its two inputs. If the two inputs of a differential amplifier were to be shorted together (thus ensuring zero potential difference between them), there should be no change in output voltage for any amount of voltage applied between those two shorted inputs and ground:



Voltage that is common between either of the inputs and ground, as "$V_{common-mode}$" is in this case, is called *common-mode voltage*. As we vary this common voltage, the perfect differential amplifier's output voltage should hold absolutely steady (no change in output for any arbitrary change in common-mode input). This translates to a *common-mode voltage gain* of zero.

$$A_V = \frac{\text{Change in } V_{out}}{\text{Change in } V_{in}}$$

. . . if change in V_{out} = 0 . . .

$$\frac{0}{\text{Change in } V_{in}} = 0$$

$$A_V = 0$$

The operational amplifier, being a differential amplifier with high differential gain, would ideally have zero common-mode gain as well. In real life, however, this is not easily attained. Thus, common-mode voltages will invariably have some effect on the op-amp's output voltage.

The performance of a real op-amp in this regard is most commonly measured in terms of its differential voltage gain (how much it amplifies the difference between two input voltages) versus its common-mode voltage gain (how much it amplifies a common-mode voltage). The ratio of the former to the latter is called the *common-mode rejection ratio*, abbreviated as CMRR:

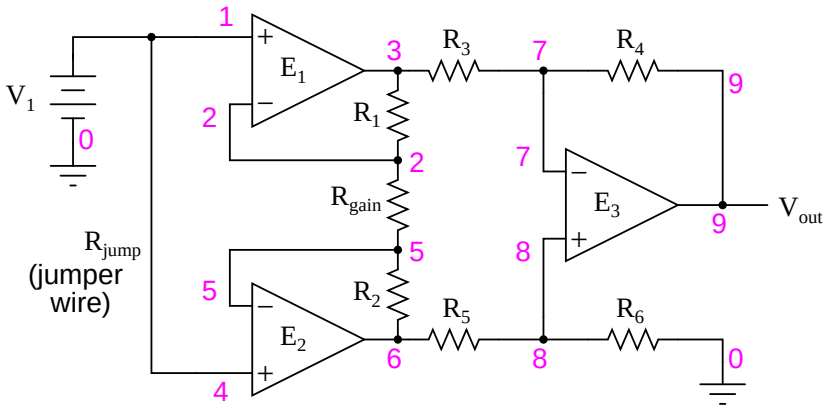
$$\text{CMRR} = \frac{\text{Differential } A_V}{\text{Common-mode } A_V}$$

An ideal op-amp, with zero common-mode gain would have an infinite CMRR. Real op-amps have high CMRRs, the ubiquitous 741 having something around 70 dB, which works out to a

little over 3,000 in terms of a ratio.

Because the common mode rejection ratio in a typical op-amp is so high, common-mode gain is usually not a great concern in circuits where the op-amp is being used with negative feedback. If the common-mode input voltage of an amplifier circuit were to suddenly change, thus producing a corresponding change in the output due to common-mode gain, that change in output would be quickly corrected as negative feedback and differential gain (being *much* greater than common-mode gain) worked to bring the system back to equilibrium. Sure enough, a change might be seen at the output, but it would be a lot smaller than what you might expect.

A consideration to keep in mind, though, is common-mode gain in differential op-amp circuits such as instrumentation amplifiers. Outside of the op-amp's sealed package and extremely high differential gain, we may find common-mode gain introduced by an imbalance of resistor values. To demonstrate this, we'll run a SPICE analysis on an instrumentation amplifier with inputs shorted together (no differential voltage), imposing a common-mode voltage to see what happens. First, we'll run the analysis showing the output voltage of a perfectly balanced circuit. We should expect to see no change in output voltage as the common-mode voltage changes:




```
instrumentation amplifier
v1 1 0
rin1 1 0 9e12
rjump 1 4 1e-12
rin2 4 0 9e12
e1 3 0 1 2 999k
e2 6 0 4 5 999k
e3 9 0 8 7 999k
rload 9 0 10k
r1 2 3 10k
rgain 2 5 10k
r2 5 6 10k
r3 3 7 10k
r4 7 9 10k
r5 6 8 10k
```

```
r6 8 0 10k
.dc v1 0 10 1
.print dc v(9)
.end

v1            v(9)
0.000E+00     0.000E+00
1.000E+00     1.355E-16
2.000E+00     2.710E-16
3.000E+00     0.000E+00   As you can see, the output voltage v(9)
4.000E+00     5.421E-16   hardly changes at all for a common-mode
5.000E+00     0.000E+00   input voltage (v1) that sweeps from 0
6.000E+00     0.000E+00   to 10 volts.
7.000E+00     0.000E+00
8.000E+00     1.084E-15
9.000E+00    -1.084E-15
1.000E+01     0.000E+00
```

Aside from very small deviations (actually due to quirks of SPICE rather than real behavior of the circuit), the output remains stable where it should be: at 0 volts, with zero input voltage differential. However, let's introduce a resistor imbalance in the circuit, increasing the value of R_5 from 10,000 Ω to 10,500 Ω, and see what happens (the netlist has been omitted for brevity – the only thing altered is the value of R_5):

```
v1           v(9)
0.000E+00     0.000E+00
1.000E+00    -2.439E-02
2.000E+00    -4.878E-02
3.000E+00    -7.317E-02   This time we see a significant variation
4.000E+00    -9.756E-02   (from 0 to 0.2439 volts) in output voltage
5.000E+00    -1.220E-01   as the common-mode input voltage sweeps
6.000E+00    -1.463E-01   from 0 to 10 volts as it did before.
7.000E+00    -1.707E-01
8.000E+00    -1.951E-01
9.000E+00    -2.195E-01
1.000E+01    -2.439E-01
```

Our input voltage differential is still zero volts, yet the output voltage changes significantly as the common-mode voltage is changed. This is indicative of a common-mode gain, something we're trying to avoid. More than that, its a common-mode gain of our own making, having nothing to do with imperfections in the op-amps themselves. With a much-tempered differential gain (actually equal to 3 in this particular circuit) and no negative feedback outside the circuit, this common-mode gain will go unchecked in an instrument signal application.

There is only one way to correct this common-mode gain, and that is to balance all the resistor values. When designing an instrumentation amplifier from discrete components (rather than purchasing one in an integrated package), it is wise to provide some means of making

fine adjustments to at least one of the four resistors connected to the final op-amp to be able to "trim away" any such common-mode gain. Providing the means to "trim" the resistor network has additional benefits as well. Suppose that all resistor values are exactly as they should be, but a common-mode gain exists due to an imperfection in one of the op-amps. With the adjustment provision, the resistance could be trimmed to compensate for this unwanted gain.

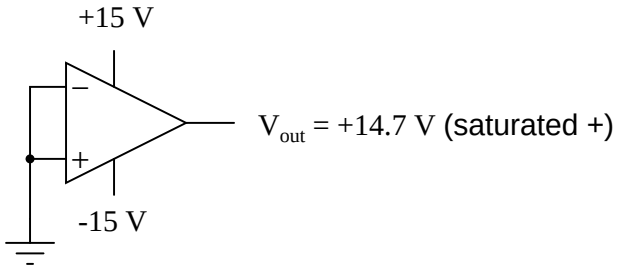
One quirk of some op-amp models is that of output *latch-up*, usually caused by the common-mode input voltage exceeding allowable limits. If the common-mode voltage falls outside of the manufacturer's specified limits, the output may suddenly "latch" in the high mode (saturate at full output voltage). In JFET-input operational amplifiers, latch-up may occur if the common-mode input voltage approaches too closely to the negative power supply rail voltage. On the TL082 op-amp, for example, this occurs when the common-mode input voltage comes within about 0.7 volts of the negative power supply rail voltage. Such a situation may easily occur in a single-supply circuit, where the negative power supply rail is ground (0 volts), and the input signal is free to swing to 0 volts.

Latch-up may also be triggered by the common-mode input voltage *exceeding* power supply rail voltages, negative or positive. As a rule, you should never allow either input voltage to rise above the positive power supply rail voltage, or sink below the negative power supply rail voltage, even if the op-amp in question is protected against latch-up (as are the 741 and 1458 op-amp models). At the very least, the op-amp's behavior may become unpredictable. At worst, the kind of latch-up triggered by input voltages exceeding power supply voltages may be destructive to the op-amp.

While this problem may seem easy to avoid, its possibility is more likely than you might think. Consider the case of an operational amplifier circuit during power-up. If the circuit receives full input signal voltage *before* its own power supply has had time enough to charge the filter capacitors, the common-mode input voltage may easily exceed the power supply rail voltages for a short time. If the op-amp receives signal voltage from a circuit supplied by a different power source, and its own power source fails, the signal voltage(s) may exceed the power supply rail voltages for an indefinite amount of time!

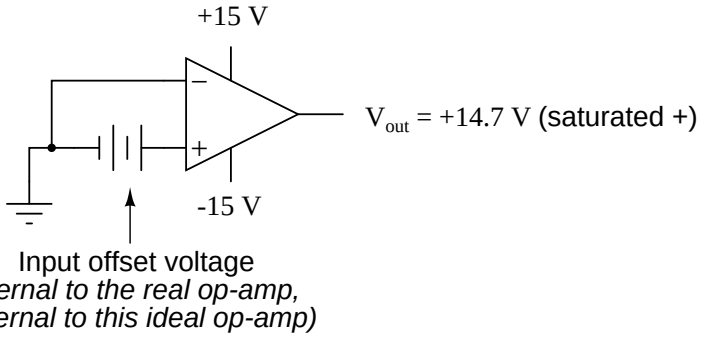
8.13.2 Offset voltage

Another practical concern for op-amp performance is *voltage offset*. That is, effect of having the output voltage something other than zero volts when the two input terminals are shorted together. Remember that operational amplifiers are differential amplifiers above all: they're supposed to amplify the difference in voltage between the two input connections and nothing more. When that input voltage difference is exactly zero volts, we would (ideally) expect to have exactly zero volts present on the output. However, in the real world this rarely happens. Even if the op-amp in question has zero common-mode gain (infinite CMRR), the output voltage may not be at zero when both inputs are shorted together. This deviation from zero is called *offset*.

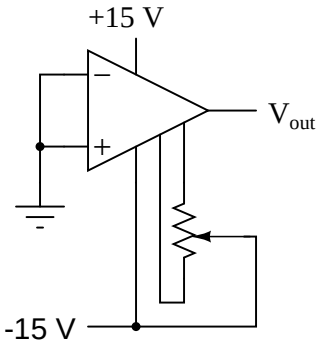


A perfect op-amp would output exactly zero volts with both its inputs shorted together and grounded. However, most op-amps off the shelf will drive their outputs to a saturated level, either negative or positive. In the example shown above, the output voltage is saturated at a value of positive 14.7 volts, just a bit less than +V (+15 volts) due to the positive saturation limit of this particular op-amp. Because the offset in this op-amp is driving the output to a completely saturated point, there's no way of telling how much voltage offset is present at the output. If the +V/-V split power supply was of a high enough voltage, who knows, maybe the output would be several hundred volts one way or the other due to the effects of offset!

For this reason, offset voltage is usually expressed in terms of the equivalent amount of *input* voltage differential producing this effect. In other words, we imagine that the op-amp is perfect (no offset whatsoever), and a small voltage is being applied in series with one of the inputs to force the output voltage one way or the other away from zero. Being that op-amp differential gains are so high, the figure for "input offset voltage" doesn't have to be much to account for what we see with shorted inputs:



Offset voltage will tend to introduce slight errors in any op-amp circuit. So how do we compensate for it? Unlike common-mode gain, there are usually provisions made by the manufacturer to trim the offset of a packaged op-amp. Usually, two extra terminals on the op-amp package are reserved for connecting an external "trim" potentiometer. These connection points are labeled *offset null* and are used in this general way:



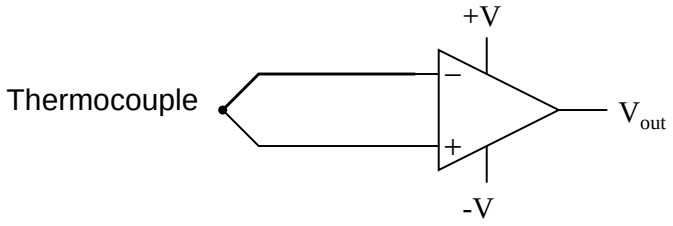
Potentiometer adjusted so that
V_{out} = 0 volts with inputs shorted together

On single op-amps such as the 741 and 3130, the offset null connection points are pins 1 and 5 on the 8-pin DIP package. Other models of op-amp may have the offset null connections located on different pins, and/or require a slightly difference configuration of trim potentiometer connection. Some op-amps don't provide offset null pins at all! Consult the manufacturer's specifications for details.

8.13.3 Bias current

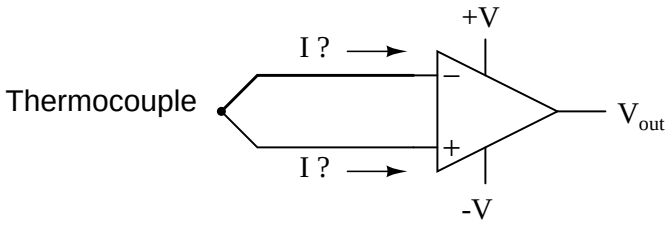
Inputs on an op-amp have extremely high input impedances. That is, the input currents entering or exiting an op-amp's two input signal connections are extremely small. For most purposes of op-amp circuit analysis, we treat them as though they don't exist at all. We analyze the circuit as though there was absolutely zero current entering or exiting the input connections.

This idyllic picture, however, is not entirely true. Op-amps, especially those op-amps with bipolar transistor inputs, have to have some amount of current through their input connections in order for their internal circuits to be properly biased. These currents, logically, are called *bias currents*. Under certain conditions, op-amp bias currents may be problematic. The following circuit illustrates one of those problem conditions:



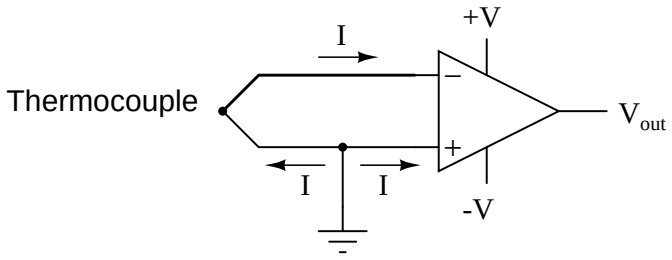
At first glance, we see no apparent problems with this circuit. A thermocouple, generating a small voltage proportional to temperature (actually, a voltage proportional to the *difference* in temperature between the measurement junction and the "reference" junction formed when the alloy thermocouple wires connect with the copper wires leading to the op-amp) drives the op-amp either positive or negative. In other words, this is a kind of comparator circuit, comparing the temperature between the end thermocouple junction and the reference junction (near the op-amp). The problem is this: the wire loop formed by the thermocouple does not provide a

path for both input bias currents, because both bias currents are trying to go the same way (either into the op-amp or out of it).



*This comparator circuit **won't** work*

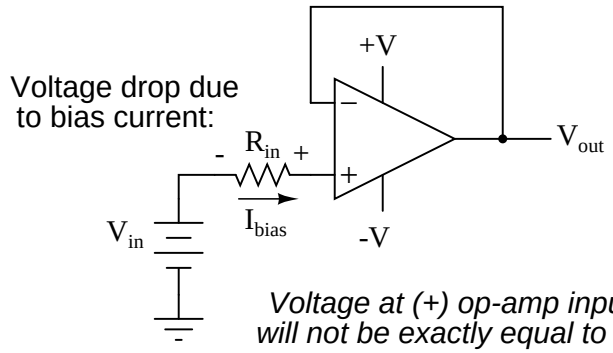
In order for this circuit to work properly, we must ground one of the input wires, thus providing a path to (or from) ground for both currents:



*This comparator circuit **will** work*

Not necessarily an obvious problem, but a very real one!

Another way input bias currents may cause trouble is by dropping unwanted voltages across circuit resistances. Take this circuit for example:



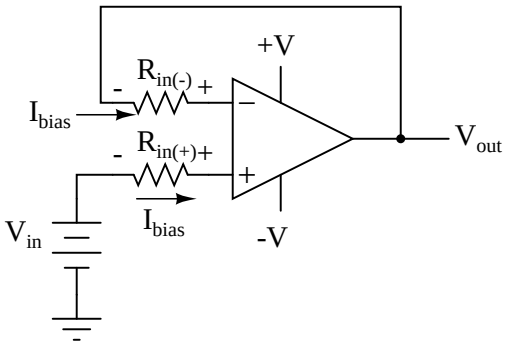
Voltage at (+) op-amp input will not be exactly equal to V_{in}

We expect a voltage follower circuit such as the one above to reproduce the input voltage precisely at the output. But what about the resistance in series with the input voltage source? If there is any bias current through the noninverting (+) input at all, it will drop some voltage across R_{in}, thus making the voltage at the noninverting input unequal to the actual V_{in} value. Bias currents are usually in the microamp range, so the voltage drop across R_{in} won't be very much, unless R_{in} is very large. One example of an application where the input resistance

(R_{in}) *would* be very large is that of pH probe electrodes, where one electrode contains an ion-permeable glass barrier (a very poor conductor, with millions of Ω of resistance).

If we were actually building an op-amp circuit for pH electrode voltage measurement, we'd probably want to use a FET or MOSFET (IGFET) input op-amp instead of one built with bipolar transistors (for less input bias current). But even then, what slight bias currents may remain can cause measurement errors to occur, so we have to find some way to mitigate them through good design.

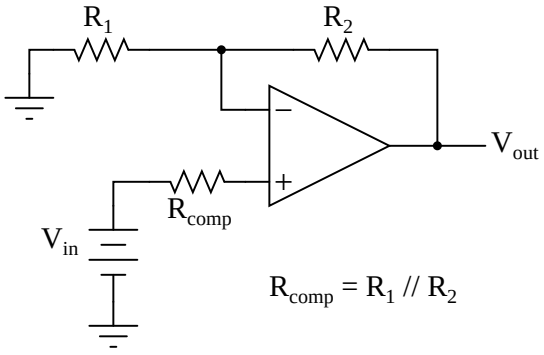
One way to do so is based on the assumption that the two input bias currents will be the same. In reality, they are often close to being the same, the difference between them referred to as the *input offset current*. If they are the same, then we should be able to cancel out the effects of input resistance voltage drop by inserting an equal amount of resistance in series with the other input, like this:



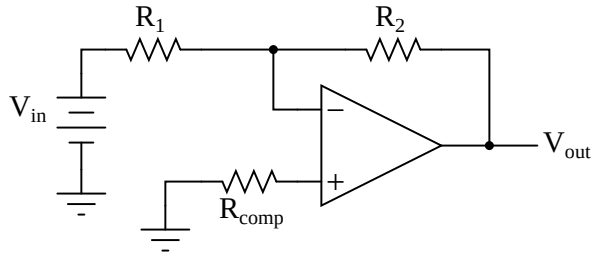
With the additional resistance added to the circuit, the output voltage will be closer to V_{in} than before, even if there is some offset between the two input currents.

For both inverting and noninverting amplifier circuits, the bias current compensating resistor is placed in series with the noninverting (+) input to compensate for bias current voltage drops in the divider network:

Noninverting amplifier with compensating resistor



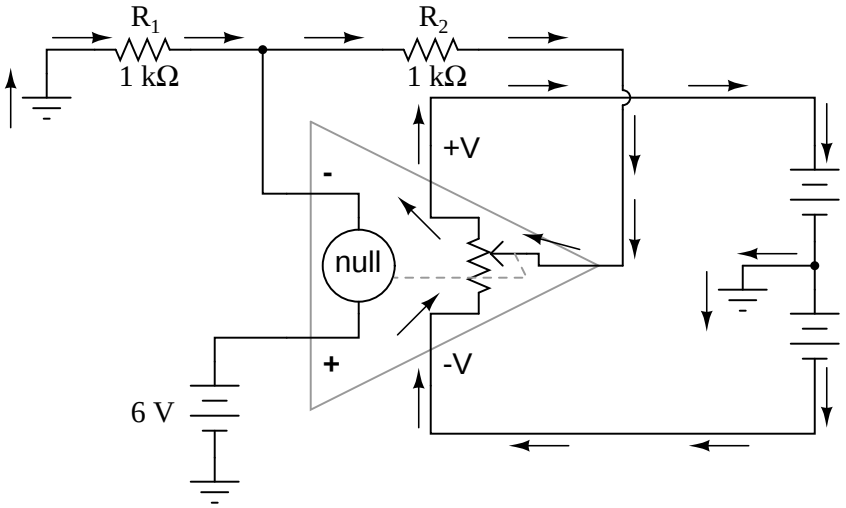
Inverting amplifier with compensating resistor



$$R_{comp} = R_1 \,//\, R_2$$

In either case, the compensating resistor value is determined by calculating the parallel resistance value of R_1 and R_2. Why is the value equal to the *parallel* equivalent of R_1 and R_2? When using the Superposition Theorem to figure how much voltage drop will be produced by the inverting (-) input's bias current, we treat the bias current as though it were coming from a current source inside the op-amp and short-circuit all voltage sources (V_{in} and V_{out}). This gives two parallel paths for bias current (through R_1 and through R_2, both to ground). We want to duplicate the bias current's effect on the noninverting (+) input, so the resistor value we choose to insert in series with that input needs to be equal to R_1 in parallel with R_2.

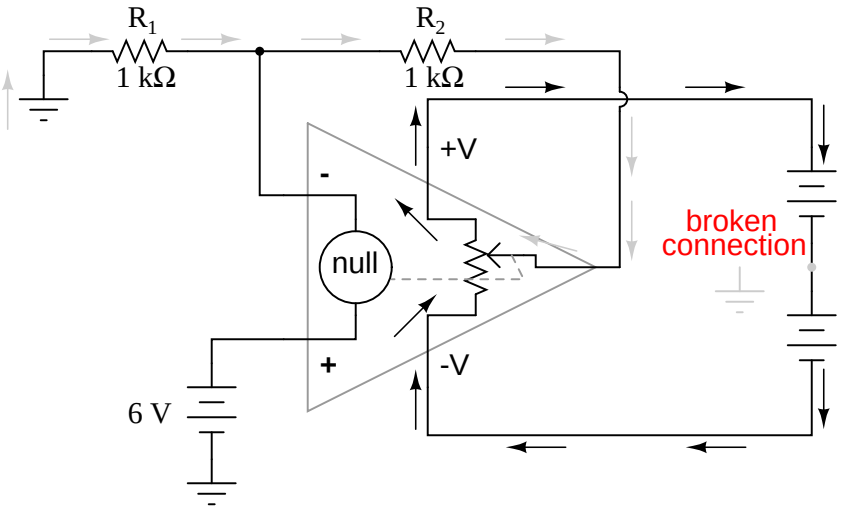
A related problem, occasionally experienced by students just learning to build operational amplifier circuits, is caused by a lack of a common ground connection to the power supply. It is *imperative* to proper op-amp function that some terminal of the DC power supply be common to the "ground" connection of the input signal(s). This provides a complete path for the bias currents, feedback current(s), and for the load (output) current. Take this circuit illustration, for instance, showing a properly grounded power supply:



Here, arrows denote the path of electron flow through the power supply batteries, both for powering the op-amp's internal circuitry (the "potentiometer" inside of it that controls output

voltage), and for powering the feedback loop of resistors R_1 and R_2. Suppose, however, that the ground connection for this "split" DC power supply were to be removed. The effect of doing this is profound:

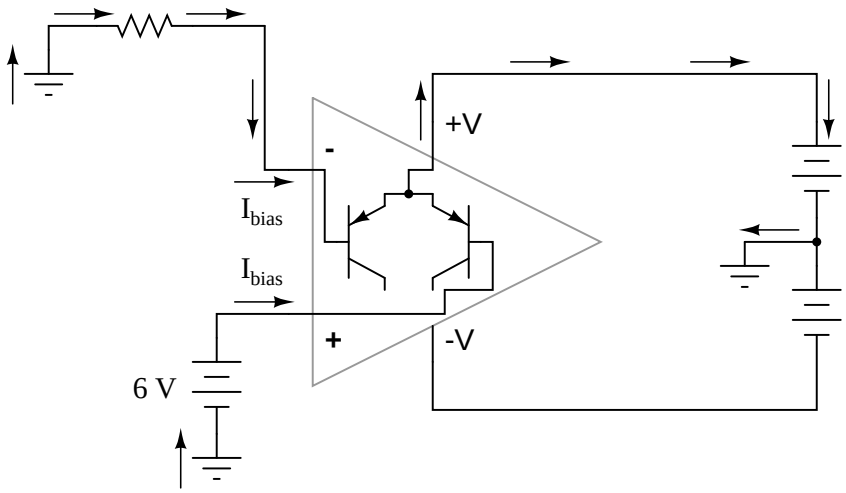
A power supply ground is essential to circuit operation!



No electrons may flow in or out of the op-amp's output terminal, because the pathway to the power supply is a "dead end." Thus, no electrons flow through the ground connection to the left of R_1, neither through the feedback loop. This effectively renders the op-amp useless: it can neither sustain current through the feedback loop, nor through a grounded load, since there is no connection from any point of the power supply to ground.

The bias currents are also stopped, because they rely on a path to the power supply and back to the input source through ground. The following diagram shows the bias currents (only), as they go through the input terminals of the op-amp, through the base terminals of the input transistors, and eventually through the power supply terminal(s) and back to ground.

Bias current paths shown, through power supply



Without a ground reference on the power supply, the bias currents will have no complete path for a circuit, and they will halt. Since bipolar junction transistors are current-controlled devices, this renders the input stage of the op-amp useless as well, as both input transistors will be forced into cutoff by the complete lack of base current.

- **REVIEW:**

- Op-amp inputs usually conduct very small currents, called *bias currents*, needed to properly bias the first transistor amplifier stage internal to the op-amps' circuitry. Bias currents are small (in the microamp range), but large enough to cause problems in some applications.

- Bias currents in both inputs *must* have paths to flow to either one of the power supply "rails" or to ground. It is not enough to just have a conductive path from one input to the other.

- To cancel any offset voltages caused by bias current flowing through resistances, just add an equivalent resistance in series with the other op-amp input (called a *compensating resistor*). This corrective measure is based on the assumption that the two input bias currents will be equal.

- Any inequality between bias currents in an op-amp constitutes what is called an *input offset current*.

- It is essential for proper op-amp operation that there be a ground reference on some terminal of the power supply, to form complete paths for bias currents, feedback current(s), and load current.

8.13.4 Drift

Being semiconductor devices, op-amps are subject to slight changes in behavior with changes in operating temperature. Any changes in op-amp performance with temperature fall under the category of op-amp *drift*. Drift parameters can be specified for bias currents, offset voltage, and the like. Consult the manufacturer's data sheet for specifics on any particular op-amp.

To minimize op-amp drift, we can select an op-amp made to have minimum drift, and/or we can do our best to keep the operating temperature as stable as possible. The latter action may involve providing some form of temperature control for the inside of the equipment housing the op-amp(s). This is not as strange as it may first seem. Laboratory-standard precision voltage reference generators, for example, are sometimes known to employ "ovens" for keeping their sensitive components (such as zener diodes) at constant temperatures. If extremely high accuracy is desired over the usual factors of cost and flexibility, this may be an option worth looking at.

- **REVIEW:**

- Op-amps, being semiconductor devices, are susceptible to variations in temperature. Any variations in amplifier performance resulting from changes in temperature is known as *drift*. Drift is best minimized with environmental temperature control.

8.13.5 Frequency response

With their incredibly high differential voltage gains, op-amps are prime candidates for a phenomenon known as *feedback oscillation*. You've probably heard the equivalent audio effect when the volume (gain) on a public-address or other microphone amplifier system is turned too high: that high pitched squeal resulting from the sound waveform "feeding back" through the microphone to be amplified again. An op-amp circuit can manifest this same effect, with the feedback happening electrically rather than audibly.

A case example of this is seen in the 3130 op-amp, if it is connected as a voltage follower with the bare minimum of wiring connections (the two inputs, output, and the power supply connections). The output of this op-amp will self-oscillate due to its high gain, no matter what the input voltage. To combat this, a small *compensation capacitor* must be connected to two specially-provided terminals on the op-amp. The capacitor provides a high-impedance path for negative feedback to occur within the op-amp's circuitry, thus decreasing the AC gain and inhibiting unwanted oscillations. If the op-amp is being used to amplify high-frequency signals, this compensation capacitor may not be needed, but it is absolutely essential for DC or low-frequency AC signal operation.

Some op-amps, such as the model 741, have a compensation capacitor built in to minimize the need for external components. This improved simplicity is not without a cost: due to that capacitor's presence inside the op-amp, the negative feedback tends to get stronger as the operating frequency increases (that capacitor's reactance decreases with higher frequencies). As a result, the op-amp's differential voltage gain decreases as frequency goes up: it becomes a less effective amplifier at higher frequencies.

Op-amp manufacturers will publish the frequency response curves for their products. Since a sufficiently high differential gain is absolutely essential to good feedback operation in op-amp

circuits, the gain/frequency response of an op-amp effectively limits its ”bandwidth” of operation. The circuit designer must take this into account if good performance is to be maintained over the required range of signal frequencies.

- **REVIEW:**
- Due to capacitances within op-amps, their differential voltage gain tends to decrease as the input frequency increases. Frequency response curves for op-amps are available from the manufacturer.

8.13.6 Input to output phase shift

In order to illustrate the phase shift from input to output of an operational amplifier (op-amp), the OPA227 was tested in our lab. The OPA227 was constructed in a typical non-inverting configuration (Figure 8.1).

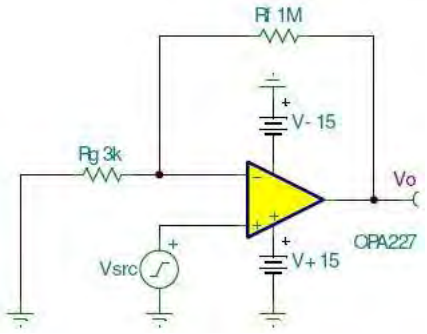


Figure 8.1: *OPA227 Non-inverting stage*

The circuit configuration calls for a signal gain of ≅34 V/V or ≅50 dB. The input excitation at Vsrc was set to 10 mVp, and three frequencies of interest: 2.2 kHz, 22 kHz, and 220 MHz. The OPA227's open loop gain and phase curve vs. frequency is shown in Figure 8.2.

To help predict the closed loop phase shift from input to output, we can use the open loop gain and phase curve. Since the circuit configuration calls for a closed loop gain, or $1/\beta$, of ≅50 dB, the closed loop gain curve intersects the open loop gain curve at approximately 22 kHz. After this intersection, the closed loop gain curve rolls off at the typical 20 dB/decade for voltage feedback amplifiers, and follows the open loop gain curve.

What is actually at work here is the negative feedback from the closed loop modifies the open loop response. Closing the loop with negative feedback establishes a closed loop pole at 22 kHz. Much like the dominant pole in the open loop phase curve, we will expect phase shift in the closed loop response. How much phase shift will we see?

Since the new pole is now at 22 kHz, this is also the -3 dB point as the pole starts to roll off the closed loop again at 20 dB per decade as stated earlier. As with any pole in basic control theory, phase shift starts to occur one decade in frequency before the pole, and ends at 90^o of phase shift one decade in frequency after the pole. So what does this predict for the closed loop response in our circuit?

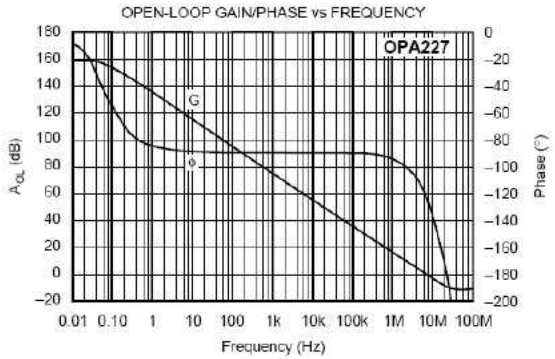


Figure 8.2: *A_V and Φ vs. Frequency plot*

This will predict phase shift starting at 2.2 kHz, with 45^o of phase shift at the -3 dB point of 22 kHz, and finally ending with 90^o of phase shift at 220 kHz. The three Figures shown below are oscilloscope captures at the frequencies of interest for our OPA227 circuit. Figure 8.3 is set for 2.2 kHz, and no noticeable phase shift is present. Figure 8.4 is set for 220 kHz, and $\cong 45^o$ of phase shift is recorded. Finally, Figure 8.5 is set for 220 MHz, and the expected $\cong 90^o$ of phase shift is recorded. The scope plots were captured using a LeCroy 44x Wavesurfer. The final scope plot used a x1 probe with the trigger set to HF reject.

Figure 8.3: *OPA227 Av=50dB @ 2.2 kHz*

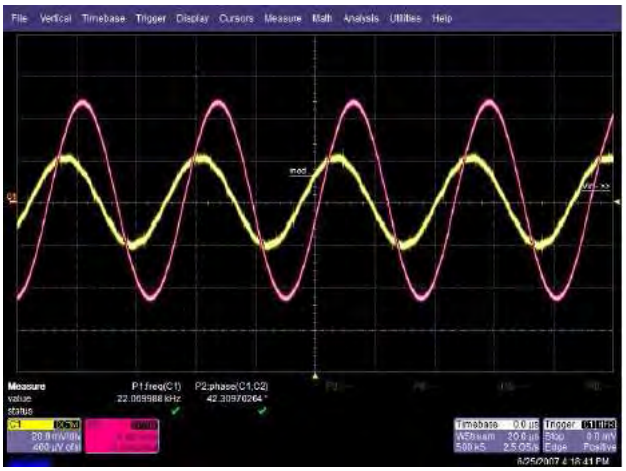


Figure 8.4: *OPA227 Av=50dB @ 22 kHz*

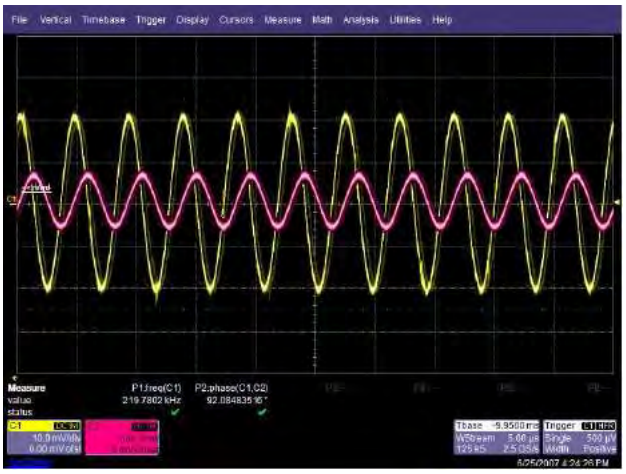
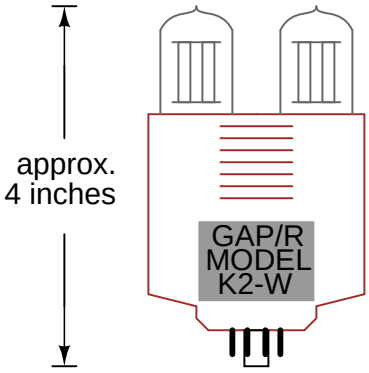


Figure 8.5: *OPA227 Av=50dB @ 220 kHz*

8.14 Operational amplifier models

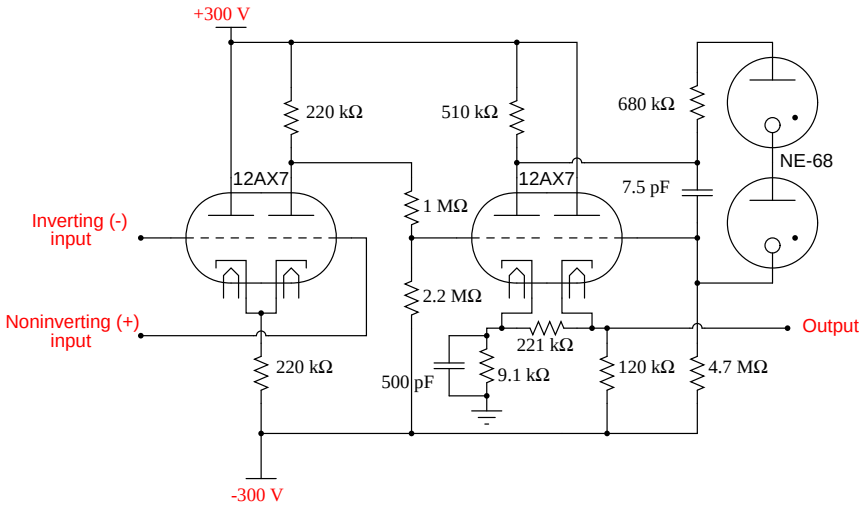
While mention of operational amplifiers typically provokes visions of semiconductor devices built as integrated circuits on a miniature silicon chip, the first op-amps were actually vacuum tube circuits. The first commercial, general purpose operational amplifier was manufactured by the George A. Philbrick Researches, Incorporated, in 1952. Designated the K2-W, it was built around two twin-triode tubes mounted in an assembly with an octal (8-pin) socket for easy installation and servicing in electronic equipment chassis of that era. The assembly looked something like this:

The Philbrick Researches op-amp, model K2-W



The schematic diagram shows the two tubes, along with ten resistors and two capacitors, a fairly simple circuit design even by 1952 standards:

The Philbrick Researches op-amp, model K2-W



In case you're unfamiliar with the operation of vacuum tubes, they operate similarly to N-

channel depletion-type IGFET transistors: that is, they conduct more current when the control grid (the dashed line) is made more positive with respect to the cathode (the bent line near the bottom of the tube symbol), and conduct less current when the control grid is made less positive (or more negative) than the cathode. The twin triode tube on the left functions as a *differential pair*, converting the differential inputs (inverting and noninverting input voltage signals) into a single, amplified voltage signal which is then fed to the control grid of the left triode of the second triode pair through a voltage divider (1 MΩ $--$ 2.2 MΩ). That triode amplifies and inverts the output of the differential pair for a larger voltage gain, then the amplified signal is coupled to the second triode of the same dual-triode tube in a noninverting amplifier configuration for a larger current gain. The two neon "glow tubes" act as voltage regulators, similar to the behavior of semiconductor zener diodes, to provide a bias voltage in the coupling between the two single-ended amplifier triodes.

With a dual-supply voltage of +300/-300 volts, this op-amp could only swing its output +/- 50 volts, which is very poor by today's standards. It had an open-loop voltage gain of 15,000 to 20,000, a slew rate of +/- 12 volts/μsecond, a maximum output current of 1 mA, a quiescent power consumption of over 3 watts (not including power for the tubes' filaments!), and cost about $24 in 1952 dollars. Better performance could have been attained using a more sophisticated circuit design, but only at the expense of greater power consumption, greater cost, and decreased reliability.

With the advent of solid-state transistors, op-amps with far less quiescent power consumption and increased reliability became feasible, but many of the other performance parameters remained about the same. Take for instance Philbrick's model P55A, a general-purpose solid-state op-amp circa 1966. The P55A sported an open-loop gain of 40,000, a slew rate of 1.5 volt/μsecond and an output swing of +/- 11 volts (at a power supply voltage of +/- 15 volts), a maximum output current of 2.2 mA, and a cost of $49 (or about $21 for the "utility grade" version). The P55A, as well as other op-amps in Philbrick's lineup of the time, was of discrete-component construction, its constituent transistors, resistors, and capacitors housed in a solid "brick" resembling a large integrated circuit package.

It isn't very difficult to build a crude operational amplifier using discrete components. A schematic of one such circuit is shown in Figure 8.6.

While its performance is rather dismal by modern standards, it demonstrates that complexity is not necessary to create a minimally functional op-amp. Transistors Q_3 and Q_4 form the heart of another differential pair circuit, the semiconductor equivalent of the first triode tube in the K2-W schematic. As it was in the vacuum tube circuit, the purpose of a differential pair is to amplify and convert a differential voltage between the two input terminals to a single-ended output voltage.

With the advent of integrated-circuit (IC) technology, op-amp designs experienced a dramatic increase in performance, reliability, density, and economy. Between the years of 1964 and 1968, the Fairchild corporation introduced three models of IC op-amps: the 702, 709, and the still-popular 741. While the 741 is now considered outdated in terms of performance, it is still a favorite among hobbyists for its simplicity and fault tolerance (short-circuit protection on the output, for instance). Personal experience abusing many 741 op-amps has led me to the conclusion that it is a hard chip to kill . . .

The internal schematic diagram for a model 741 op-amp is shown in Figure 8.7.

By integrated circuit standards, the 741 is a very simple device: an example of *small-scale integration*, or *SSI* technology. It would be no small matter to build this circuit using

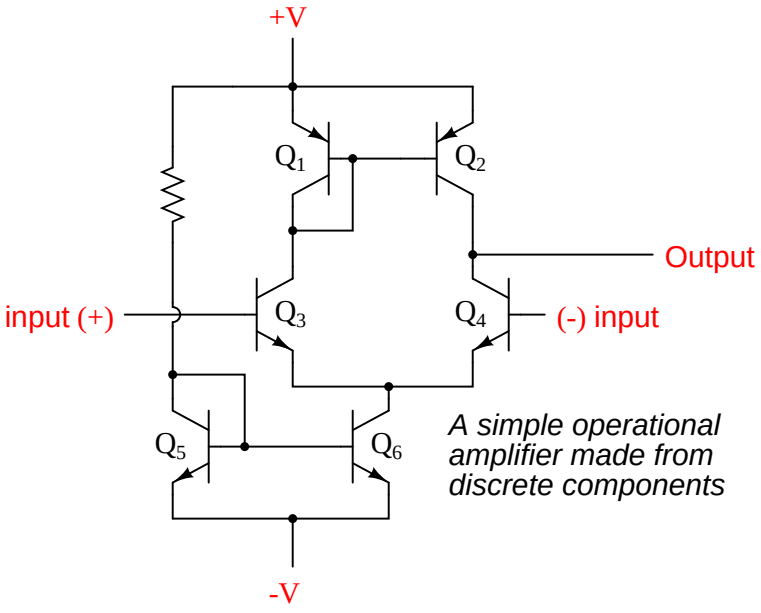


Figure 8.6: *A simple operational amplifier made from discrete components.*

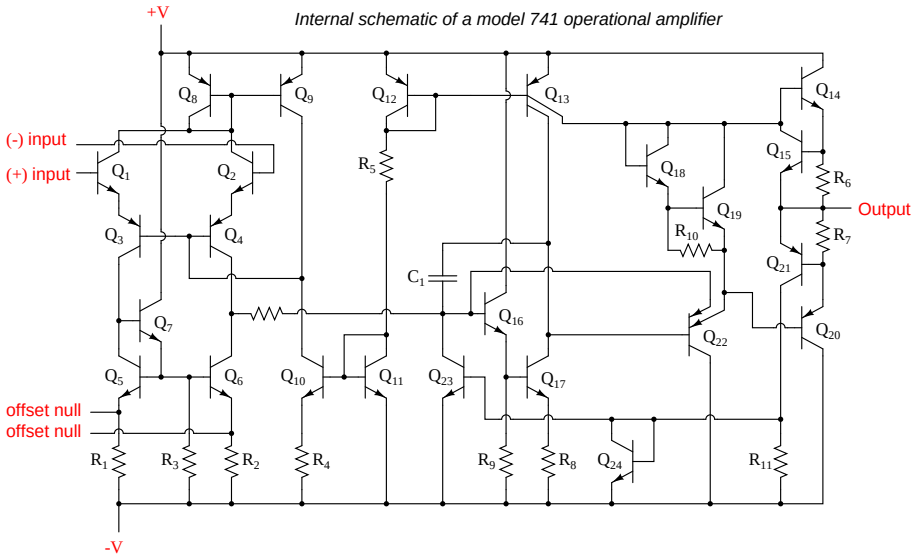


Figure 8.7: *Schematic diagram of a model 741 op-amp.*

discrete components, so you can see the advantages of even the most primitive integrated circuit technology over discrete components where high parts counts are involved.

For the hobbyist, student, or engineer desiring greater performance, there are literally hundreds of op-amp models to choose from. Many sell for less than a dollar apiece, even retail! Special-purpose instrumentation and radio-frequency (RF) op-amps may be quite a bit more expensive. In this section I will showcase several popular and affordable op-amps, comparing and contrasting their performance specifications. The venerable 741 is included as a "benchmark" for comparison, although it is, as I said before, considered an obsolete design.

Table 8.1: *Widely used operational amplifiers*

Model number	**Devices/ package (count)**	**Power supply (V)**	**Bandwidth (Mhz)**	**Bias current (nA)**	**Slew rate (V/μS)**	**Output current (mA)**
TL082	2	12 / 36	4	8	13	17
LM301A	1	10 / 36	1	250	0.5	25
LM318	1	10 / 40	15	500	70	20
LM324	4	3 / 32	1	45	0.25	20
LF353	2	12 / 36	4	8	13	20
LF356	1	10 / 36	5	8	12	25
LF411	1	10 / 36	4	20	15	25
741C	1	10 / 36	1	500	0.5	25
LM833	2	10 / 36	15	1050	7	40
LM1458	2	6 / 36	1	800	10	45
CA3130	1	5 / 16	15	0.05	10	20

Listed in Table 8.1 are but a few of the low-cost operational amplifier models widely available from electronics suppliers. Most of them are available through retail supply stores such as Radio Shack. All are under $1.00 cost direct from the manufacturer (year 2001 prices). As you can see, there is substantial variation in performance between some of these units. Take for instance the parameter of input bias current: the CA3130 wins the prize for lowest, at 0.05 nA (or 50 pA), and the LM833 has the highest at slightly over 1 μA. The model CA3130 achieves its incredibly low bias current through the use of MOSFET transistors in its input stage. One manufacturer advertises the 3130's input impedance as 1.5 tera-ohms, or 1.5 x 10^{12} Ω! Other op-amps shown here with low bias current figures use JFET input transistors, while the high bias current models use bipolar input transistors.

While the 741 is specified in many electronic project schematics and showcased in many textbooks, its performance has long been surpassed by other designs in every measure. Even some designs originally based on the 741 have been improved over the years to far surpass original design specifications. One such example is the model 1458, two op-amps in an 8-pin DIP package, which at one time had the exact same performance specifications as the single 741. In its latest incarnation it boasts a wider power supply voltage range, a slew rate 50 times as great, and almost twice the output current capability of a 741, while still retaining the output short-circuit protection feature of the 741. Op-amps with JFET and MOSFET input transistors *far* exceed the 741's performance in terms of bias current, and generally manage to beat the 741 in terms of bandwidth and slew rate as well.

My own personal recommendations for op-amps are as such: when low bias current is a priority (such as in low-speed integrator circuits), choose the 3130. For general-purpose DC amplifier work, the 1458 offers good performance (and you get two op-amps in the space of one package). For an upgrade in performance, choose the model 353, as it is a pin-compatible replacement for the 1458. The 353 is designed with JFET input circuitry for very low bias current, and has a bandwidth 4 times are great as the 1458, although its output current limit is lower (but still short-circuit protected). It may be more difficult to find on the shelf of your local electronics supply house, but it is just as reasonably priced as the 1458.

If low power supply voltage is a requirement, I recommend the model 324, as it functions on as low as 3 volts DC. Its input bias current requirements are also low, and it provides four op-amps in a single 14-pin chip. Its major weakness is speed, limited to 1 MHz bandwidth and an output slew rate of only 0.25 volts per μs. For high-frequency AC amplifier circuits, the 318 is a very good "general purpose" model.

Special-purpose op-amps are available for modest cost which provide better performance specifications. Many of these are tailored for a specific type of performance advantage, such as maximum bandwidth or minimum bias current. Take for instance the op-amps, both designed for high bandwidth in Table 8.2.

Table 8.2: *High bandwidth operational amplifiers*

Model number	**Devices/ package (count)**	**Power supply (V)**	**Bandwidth (Mhz)**	**Bias current (nA)**	**Slew rate (V/μS)**	**Output current (mA)**
CLC404	1	10 / 14	232	44,000	2600	70
CLC425	1	5 / 14	1900	40,000	350	90

The CLC404 lists at $21.80 (almost as much as George Philbrick's first commercial op-amp, albeit without correction for inflation), while the CLC425 is quite a bit less expensive at $3.23 per unit. In both cases high speed is achieved at the expense of high bias currents and restrictive power supply voltage ranges. Some op-amps, designed for high power output are listed in Table 8.3.

Table 8.3: *High current operational amplifiers*

Model number	**Devices/ package (count)**	**Power supply (V)**	**Bandwidth (Mhz)**	**Bias current (nA)**	**Slew rate (V/μS)**	**Output current (mA)**
LM12CL	1	15 / 80	0.7	1000	9	13,000
LM7171	1	5.5 / 36	200	12,000	4100	100

Yes, the LM12CL actually has an output current rating of *13 amps* (13,000 milliamps)! It lists at $14.40, which is not a lot of money, considering the raw power of the device. The LM7171, on the other hand, trades high current output ability for fast voltage output ability (a high slew rate). It lists at $1.19, about as low as some "general purpose" op-amps.

Amplifier packages may also be purchased as complete application circuits as opposed to bare operational amplifiers. The Burr-Brown and Analog Devices corporations, for example,

both long known for their precision amplifier product lines, offer instrumentation amplifiers in pre-designed packages as well as other specialized amplifier devices. In designs where high precision and repeatability after repair is important, it might be advantageous for the circuit designer to choose such a pre-engineered amplifier ”block” rather than build the circuit from individual op-amps. Of course, these units typically cost quite a bit more than individual op-amps.

8.15 Data

Parametrical data for all semiconductor op-amp models *except* the CA3130 comes from National Semiconductor's online resources, available at this website: (`http://www.national.com`). Data for the CA3130 comes from Harris Semiconductor's CA3130/CA3130A datasheet (file number 817.4).

Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Wayne Little (June 2007): Author, “Input to output phase shift” subsection, in “Practical considerations” section.

Chapter 9

PRACTICAL ANALOG SEMICONDUCTOR CIRCUITS

Contents

***** INCOMPLETE *****

9.1 ElectroStatic Discharge

Volume I chapter 1.1 discusses static electricity, and how it is created. This has a lot more significance than might be first assumed, as control of static electricity plays a large part in

modern electronics and other professions. An ElectroStatic Discharge event is when a static charge is bled off in an uncontrolled fashion, and will be referred to as ESD hereafter.

ESD comes in many forms, it can be as small as 50 volts of electricity being equalized up to many millions of volts. The actual power is extremely small, so small that no danger is generally offered to someone who is in the discharge path of ESD. It usually takes several thousand volts for a person to even notice ESD in the form of a spark and the familiar zap that accompanies it. The problem with ESD is even a small discharge that can go completely unnoticed can ruin semiconductors. A static charge of millions of volts is common, however the reason it is not a threat is there is no current capacity behind it. These extreme voltages do allow ionization of the air and allow other materials to break down, which is the root of where the damage comes from.

ESD is not a new problem. Black powder manufacturing and other pyrotechnic industries have always been dangerous if an ESD event occurs in the wrong circumstance. During the era of tubes (AKA valves) ESD was a nonexistent issue for electronics, but with the advent of semiconductors, and the increase in miniaturization, it has become much more serious.

Damage to components can, and usually do, occur when the part is in the ESD path. Many parts, such as power diodes, are very robust and can handle the discharge, but if a part has a small or thin geometry as part of their physical structure then the voltage can break down that part of the semiconductor. Currents during these events become quite high, but are in the nanosecond to microsecond time frame. Part of the component is left permanently damaged by this, which can cause two types of failure modes. Catastrophic is the easy one, leaving the part completely nonfunctional. The other can be much more serious. Latent damage may allow the problem component to work for hours, days or even months after the initial damage before catastrophic failure. Many times these parts are referred to as ”walking wounded”, since they are working but bad. Figure 9.1 is shown an example of latent (”walking wounded”) ESD damage. If these components end up in a life support role, such as medical or military use, then the consequences can be grim. For most hobbyists it is an inconvenience, but it can be an expensive one.

Even components that are considered fairly rugged can be damaged by ESD. Bipolar transistors, the earliest of the solid state amplifiers, are not immune, though less susceptible. Some of the newer high speed components can be ruined with as little as 3 volts. There are components that might not be considered at risk, such as some specialized resistors and capacitors manufactured using MOS (Metal Oxide Semiconductor) technology, that can be damaged via ESD.

9.1.1 ESD Damage Prevention

Before ESD can be prevented it is important to understand what causes it. Generally materials around the workbench can be broken up into 3 categories. These are ESD Generative, ESD Neutral, and ESD Dissipative (or ESD Conductive). ESD Generative materials are active static generators, such as most plastics, cat hair, and polyester clothing. ESD Neutral materials are generally insulative, but don’t tend to generate or hold static charges very well. Examples of this include wood, paper, and cotton. This is not to say they can not be static generators or an ESD hazard, but the risk is somewhat minimized by other factors. Wood and wood products, for example, tend to hold moisture, which can make them slightly conductive. This is true of a lot of organic materials. A highly polished table would not fall under this category, because

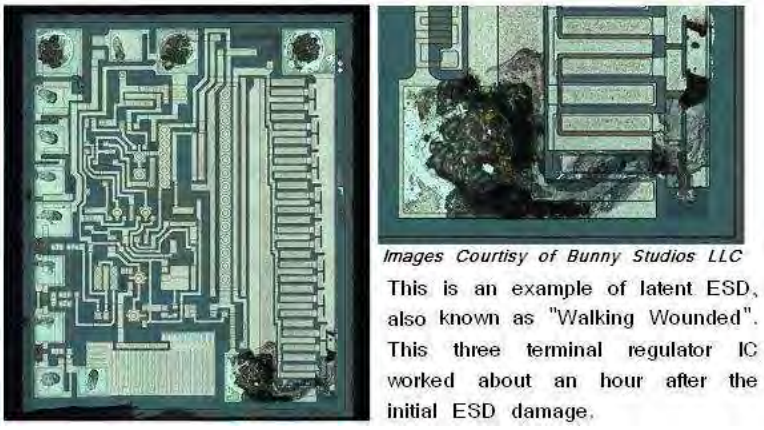


Figure 9.1:

the gloss is usually plastic, or varnish, which are highly efficient insulators. ESD Conductive materials are pretty obvious, they are the metal tools laying around. Plastic handles can be a problem, but the metal will bleed a static charge away as fast as it is generated if it is on a grounded surface. There are a lot of other materials, such as some plastics, that are designed to be conductive. They would fall under the heading of ESD Dissipative. Dirt and concrete are also conductive, and fall under the ESD Dissipative heading.

There are a lot of activities that generate static, which you need to be aware of as part of an ESD control regimen. The simple act of pulling tape off a dispenser can generate millions of volts. Rolling around in a chair is another static generator, as is scratching. In fact, any activity that allows 2 or more surfaces to rub against each other is pretty certain to generate some static charge. This was mentioned in the beginning of this book, but real world examples can be subtle. This is why a method for continuously bleeding off this voltage is needed. Things that generate huge amounts of static should be avoided while working on components.

Plastic is usually associated with the generation of static. This has been gotten around in the form of conductive plastics. The usual way to make conductive plastic is an additive that changes the electrical characteristics of the plastic from an insulator to a conductor, although it will likely still have a resistance of millions of ohms per square inch. Plastics have been developed that can be used as conductors is in low weight applications, such as those in the airline industries. These are specialist applications, and are not generally associated with ESD control.

It is not all bad news for ESD protection. The human body is a pretty decent conductor. High humidity in the air will also allow a static charge to dissipate harmlessly away, as well as making ESD Neutral materials more conductive. This is why cold winter days, where the humidity inside a house can be quite low, can increase the number of sparks on a doorknob. Summer, or rainy days, you would have to work quite hard to generate a substantial amount of static. Industry clean rooms and factory floors go the effort to regulate both temperature and humidity for this reason. Concrete floors are also conductive, so there may be some existing components in the home that can aid in setting up protections.

To establish ESD protection there has to be a standard voltage level that everything is referenced to. Such a level exists in the form of ground. There are very good safety reasons that ground is used around the house in outlets. In some ways this relates to static, but not directly. It does give us a place to dump our excess electrons, or acquire some if we are short, to neutralize any charges our bodies and tools might acquire. If everything on a workbench is connected directly or indirectly to ground via a conductor then static will dissipate long before an ESD event has a chance to occur.

A good grounding point can be made several different ways. In houses with modern wiring that is up to code the ground pin on the AC plug in can be used, or the screw that holds the outlets cover plate on. This is because house wiring actually has a wire or spike going into the earth somewhere where the power is tapped from the main power lines. For people whose house wiring isn't quite right a spike driven into the earth at least 3 feet or a simple electrical connection to metal plumbing (worst option) can be used. The main thing is to establish an electrical path to the earth outside the house.

Ten megohms is considered a conductor in the world of ESD control. Static electricity is voltage with no real current, and if a charge is bled off seconds after being generated it is nullified. Generally a 1 to 10 megohm resistor is used to connect any ESD protection for this reason. It has the benefit of slowing the discharge rate during an ESD event, which increases the likelihood of a component surviving undamaged. The faster the discharge, the higher the current spike going though the component. Another reason such a resistance is considered desirable is if the user is accidentally shorted to high voltage, such as household current, it won't be the ESD protections that kill them.

A large industry has grown up around controlling ESD in the electronics industry. The staple of any electronics construction is the workbench with a static conductive or dissipative surface. This surface can be bought commercially, or home made in the form of a sheet of metal or foil. In the case of a metal surface it might be a good idea to lay thin paper on top, although it is not necessary if you are not doing any powered tests on the surface. The commercial version is usually some form of conductive plastic whose resistance is high enough not to be a problem, which is a better solution. If you are making your own surface for the workbench be sure to add the 10 megohm resistor to ground, otherwise you have no protection at all.

The other big item that needs ESD grounded is you. People are walking static generators. Your body being conductive it is relatively easy to ground it though, this is usually done with a wrist strap. Commercial versions already have the resistor built in, and have a wide strap to offer a good contact surface with your skin. Disposable versions can be bought for a few dollars. A metal watchband is also a good ESD protection connection point. Just add a wire (with the resistor) to your grounding point. Most industries take the issue seriously enough to use real time monitors that will sound an alarm if the operator is not properly grounded.

Another way of grounding yourself is a heel strap. A conductive plastic part is wrapped around the heel of your shoe, with a conductive plastic strap going up and under your sock for good contact with the skin. It only works on floors with conductive wax or concrete. The method will keep a person from generating large charges that can overwhelm other ESD protections, and is not considered adequate in and of itself. You can get the same effect by walking barefoot on a concrete floor.

Yet another ESD protection is to wear ESD conductive smocks. Like the heel strap, this is a secondary protection, not meant to replace the wrist strap. They are meant to short circuit any charges that your clothes may generate.

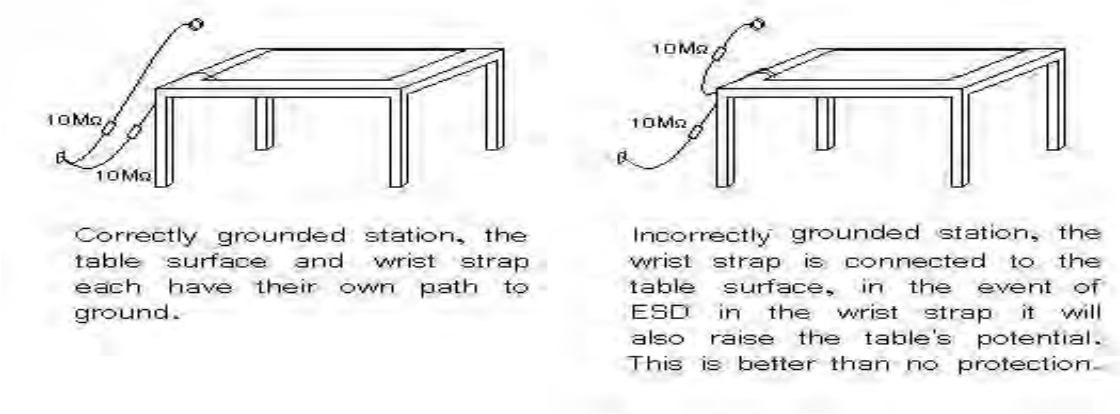


Figure 9.2:

Moving air can also generate substantial static charges. When you blow dust off your electronics their will be static generated. An industrial solution to the problem to this issue is two fold: Firstly, air guns have a small, well shielded radioactive material implanted within the air gun to ionize the air. Ionized air is a conductor, and will bleed off static charges quite well. Secondly, use high voltage electricity to ionize the air coming out of a fan, which has the same effect as the air gun. This will effectively help a workstation reduce the potential for ESD generation by a large amount.

Another ESD protection is the simplest of all, distance. Many industries have rules stating all Neutral and Generative materials will be at least 12 inches or more from any work in progress.

The user can also reduce the possibility of ESD damage by simply not removing the part out of its protective packaging until it is time to insert it into the circuit. This will reduce the likelihood of ESD exposure, and while the circuit will still be vulnerable, the component will have some minor protection from the rest of the components, as the other components will offer different discharge paths for ESD.

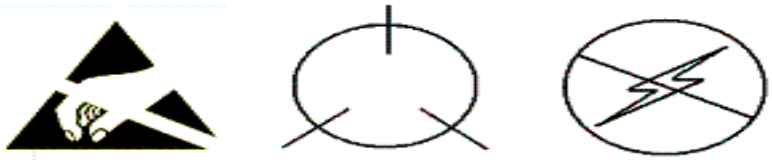
9.1.2 Storage and Transportation of ESD sensitive component and boards

It does no good to follow ESD protections on the workbench if the parts are being damaged while storing or carrying them. The most common method is to use a variation of a Faraday cage, an ESD bag. An ESD bag surrounds the component with a conductive shield, and usually has a non static generating insulative layer inside. In permanent Faraday cages this shield is grounded, as in the case of RFI rooms, but with portable containers this isn't practical. By putting a ESD bag on a grounded surface the same thing is accomplished. Faraday cages work by routing the electric charge around the contents and grounding them immediately. A car struck by lightning is an extreme example of a Faraday cage.

Static bags are by far the most common method of storing components and boards. They

are made using extremely thin layers of metal, so thin as to be almost transparent. A bag with a hole, even small ones, or one that is not folded on top to seal the content from outside charges is ineffective.

Another method of protecting parts in storage is totes or tubes. In these cases the parts are put into conductive boxes, with a lid of the same material. This effectively forms a Faraday cage. A tube is meant for ICs and other devices with a lot of pins, and stores the parts in a molded conductive plastic tube that keeps the parts safe both mechanically and electrically.



These are some of the more common logos associated with anti-static labels. They are used to inform the user that the contents are static sensitive.

Figure 9.3:

9.1.3 Conclusion

ESD can be a minor unfelt event measuring a few volts, or a massive event presenting real dangers to operators. All ESD protections can be overwhelmed by circumstance, but this can be circumvented by awareness of what it is and how to prevent it. Many projects have been built with no ESD protections at all and worked well. Given that protecting these projects is a minor inconvenience it is better to make the effort.

Industry takes the problem very seriously, as both a potential life threatening issue and a quality issue. Someone who buys an expensive piece of electronics or high tech hardware is not going to be happy if they have to return it in 6 months. When a reputation is on the line it is easier to do the right thing.

9.2 Power supply circuits – INCOMPLETE

There are three major kinds of power supplies: *unregulated* (also called *brute force*), *linear regulated*, and *switching*. A fourth type of power supply circuit called the *ripple-regulated*, is a hybrid between the ”brute force” and ”switching” designs, and merits a subsection to itself.

9.2.1 Unregulated

An unregulated power supply is the most rudimentary type, consisting of a transformer, rectifier, and low-pass filter. These power supplies typically exhibit a lot of ripple voltage (i.e.

rapidly-varying instability) and other AC ”noise” superimposed on the DC power. If the input voltage varies, the output voltage will vary by a proportional amount. The advantage of an unregulated supply is that its cheap, simple, and efficient.

9.2.2 Linear regulated

A linear regulated supply is simply a ”brute force” (unregulated) power supply followed by a transistor circuit operating in its ”active,” or ”linear” mode, hence the name *linear* regulator. (Obvious in retrospect, isn't it?) A typical linear regulator is designed to output a fixed voltage for a wide range of input voltages, and it simply drops any excess input voltage to allow a maximum output voltage to the load. This excess voltage drop results in significant power dissipation in the form of heat. If the input voltage gets too low, the transistor circuit will lose regulation, meaning that it will fail to keep the voltage steady. It can only drop excess voltage, not make up for a deficiency in voltage from the brute force section of the circuit. Therefore, you have to keep the input voltage at least 1 to 3 volts higher than the desired output, depending on the regulator type. This means the power equivalent of at *least* 1 to 3 volts multiplied by the full load current will be dissipated by the regulator circuit, generating a lot of heat. This makes linear regulated power supplies rather inefficient. Also, to get rid of all that heat they have to use large heat sinks which makes them large, heavy, and expensive.

9.2.3 Switching

A switching regulated power supply (”switcher”) is an effort to realize the advantages of both brute force and linear regulated designs (small, efficient, and cheap, but also ”clean,” stable output voltage). Switching power supplies work on the principle of rectifying the incoming AC power line voltage into DC, re-converting it into high-frequency square-wave AC through transistors operated as on/off switches, stepping that AC voltage up or down by using a lightweight transformer, then rectifying the transformer's AC output into DC and filtering for final output. Voltage regulation is achieved by altering the ”duty cycle” of the DC-to-AC inversion on the transformer's primary side. In addition to lighter weight because of a smaller transformer core, switchers have another tremendous advantage over the prior two designs: this type of power supply can be made so totally independent of the input voltage that it can work on any electric power system in the world; these are called ”universal” power supplies.

The downside of switchers is that they are more complex, and due to their operation they tend to generate a lot of high-frequency AC ”noise” on the power line. Most switchers also have significant ripple voltage on their outputs. With the cheaper types, this noise and ripple can be as bad as for an unregulated power supply; such low-end switchers aren't worthless, because they still provide a stable average output voltage, and there's the ”universal” input capability.

Expensive switchers are ripple-free and have noise nearly as low as for some a linear types; these switchers tend to be as expensive as linear supplies. The reason to use an expensive switcher instead of a good linear is if you need universal power system compatibility or high efficiency. High efficiency, light weight, and small size are the reasons switching power supplies are almost universally used for powering digital computer circuitry.

9.2.4 Ripple regulated

A ripple-regulated power supply is an alternative to the linear regulated design scheme: a "brute force" power supply (transformer, rectifier, filter) constitutes the "front end" of the circuit, but a transistor operated strictly in its on/off (saturation/cutoff) modes transfers DC power to a large capacitor as needed to maintain the output voltage between a high and a low setpoint. As in switchers, the transistor in a ripple regulator never passes current while in its "active," or "linear," mode for any substantial length of time, meaning that very little energy will be wasted in the form of heat. However, the biggest drawback to this regulation scheme is the necessary presence of some ripple voltage on the output, as the DC voltage varies between the two voltage control setpoints. Also, this ripple voltage varies in frequency depending on load current, which makes final filtering of the DC power more difficult.

Ripple regulator circuits tend to be quite a bit simpler than switcher circuitry, and they need not handle the high power line voltages that switcher transistors must handle, making them safer to work on.

9.3 Amplifier circuits – PENDING

Note, Q_3 and Q_4 in Figure 9.4 are complementary, NPN and PNP respectively. This circuit works well for moderate power audio amplifiers. For an explanation of this circuit see "Direct coupled complementary-pair,"

(page **??**).

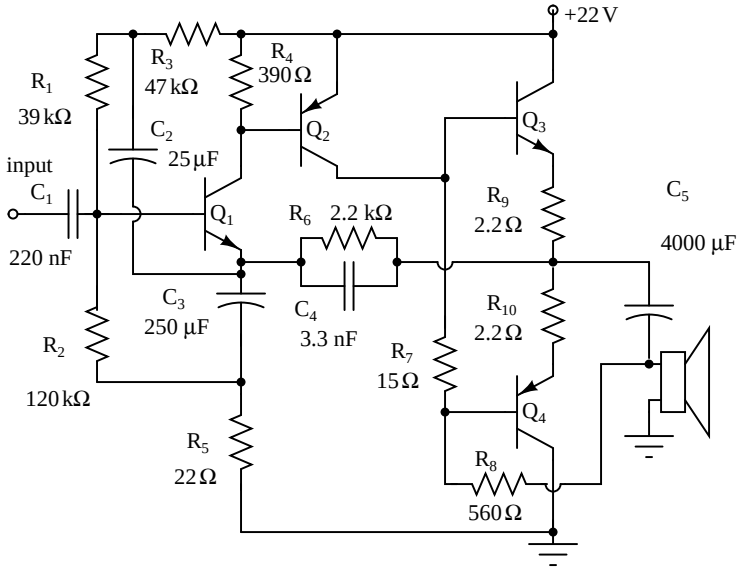


Figure 9.4: *Direct coupled complementary symmetry 3 w audio amplifier. After Mullard. [2]*

9.4 Oscillator circuits – INCOMPLETE

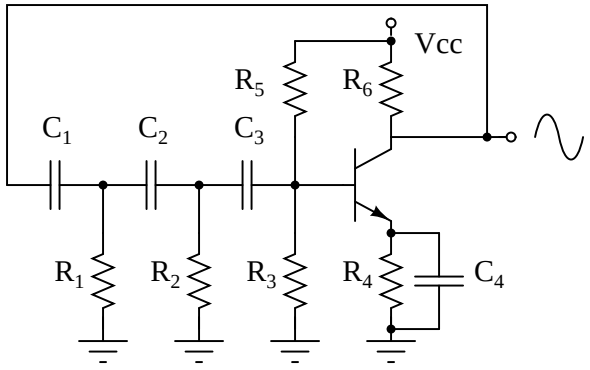


Figure 9.5: *Phase shift oscillator. R_1C_1, R_2C_2, and R_3C_3 each provide 60^o of phase shift.*

The phase shift oscillator of Figure 9.5 produces a sinewave output in the audio frequency range. Resistive feedback from the collector would be negative feedback due to 180^o phasing (base to collector phase inversion). However, the three 60^o RC phase shifters (R_1C_1, R_2C_2, and R_3C_3) provide an additional 180^o for a total of 360^o. This in-phase feedback constitutes positive feedback. Oscillations result if transistor gain exceeds feedback network losses.

9.4.1 Varactor multiplier

A Varactor or variable capacitance diode with a nonlinear capacitance vs frequency characteristic distorts the applied sinewave f1 in Figure 9.6, generating harmonics, f3.

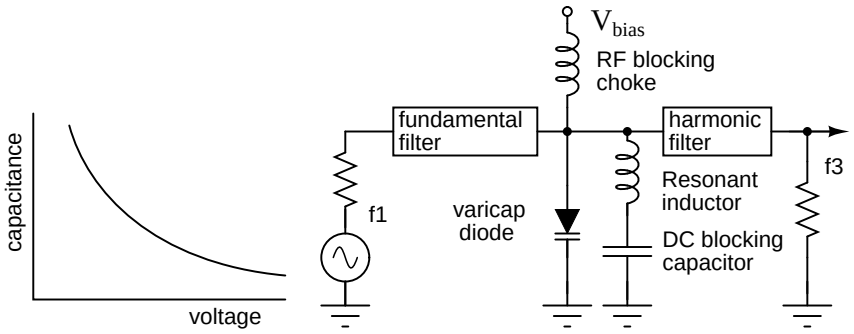


Figure 9.6: *Varactor diode, having a nonlinear capacitance vs voltage characteristic, serves in frequency multiplier.*

The fundamental filter passes f1, blocking the harmonics from returning to the generator. The choke passes DC, and blocks radio frequencies (RF) from entering the V_{bias} supply. The

harmonic filter passes the desired harmonic, say the 3rd, to the output, f3. The capacitor at the bottom of the inductor is a large value, low reactance, to block DC but ground the inductor for RF. The varicap diode in parallel with the indctor constitutes a parallel resonant network. It is tuned to the desired harmonic. Note that the reverse bias, V_{bias}, is fixed.

The varicap multiplier is primarily used to generate microwave signals which cannot be directly produced by oscillators. The lumped circuit representation in Figure 9.6 is actually stripline or waveguide sections. Frequenies up to hundreds of gHz may be produced by varactor multipliers.

9.5 Phase-locked loops – PENDING

9.6 Radio circuits – INCOMPLETE

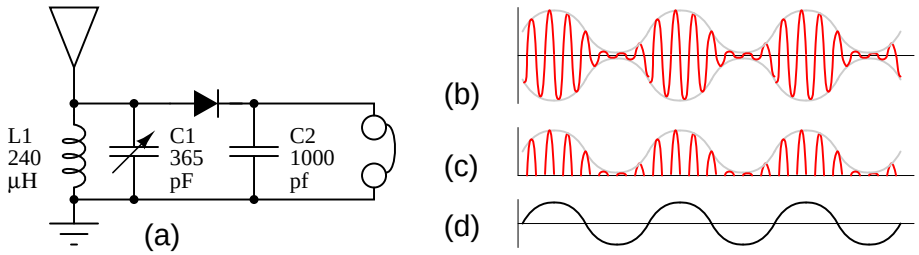


Figure 9.7: *(a) Crystal radio. (b) Modulated RF at antenna. (c) Rectified RF at diode cathode, without C2 filter capacitor. (d) Demodualted audio to headphones.*

An antenna ground system, tank circuit, peak detector, and headphones are the the main components of a *crystal radio*. See Figure 9.7 (a). The antenna absorbs transimtted radio signals (b) which flow to ground via the other components. The combination of C1 and L1 comprise a resonant circuit, refered to as a *tank circuit*. Its purpose is to select one out of many available radios signals. The variable capacitor C1 allows for *tuning* to the various signals. The diode passes the positive half cycles of the RF, removing the negative half cycles (c). C2 is sized to filter the radio frequencies from the RF envelope (c), passing audio frequencies (d) to the headset. Note that no power supply is required for a crystal radio. A germanium diode, which has a lower forward voltage drop provides greater sensitvity than a silicon diode.

The circuit in Figure 9.9 is an integrated circuit AM radio containing all the active radio frequency circuitry within a single IC. All capacitors and inductors, along with a few resistors, are external to the IC. The 370 Pf variable capacitor tunes the desired RF signal. The 320 pF variable capacitor tunes the local oscillator 455 KHz above the RF input signal. The RF signal and local oscillator frequencies mix producing the sun and difference of the two at pin 15. The external 455 KHz ceramic filter between pins 15 and 12, selects the 455 KHz difference frequency. Most of the amplification is in the intermediate frequency (IF) amplifier between pins 12 and 7. A diode at pin 7 recovers audio from the IF. Some automatic gain control (AGC) is recovered and filtered to DC and fed back into pin 9.

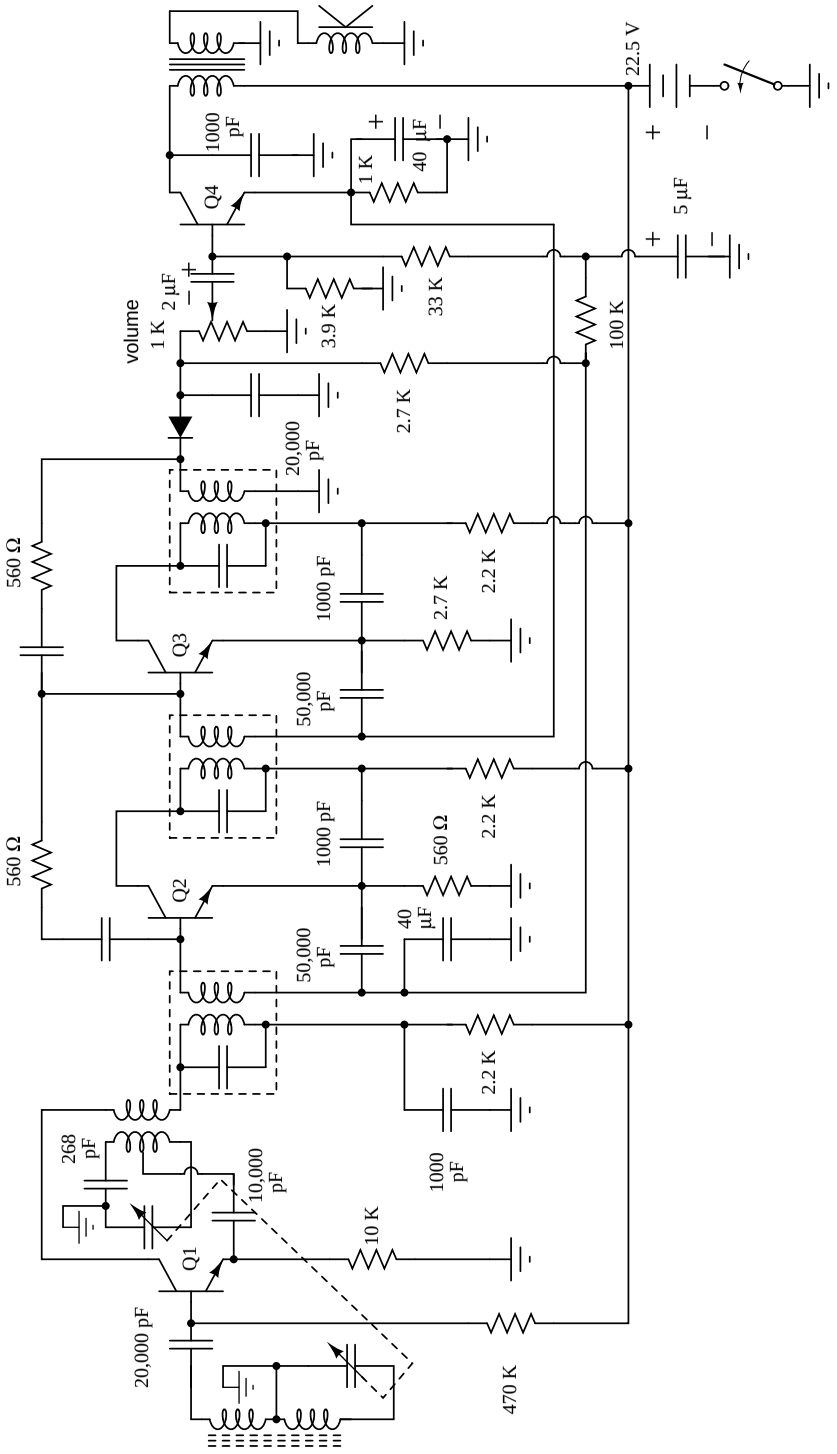


Figure 9.8: *Regency TR1: First mass produced transistor radio, 1954.*

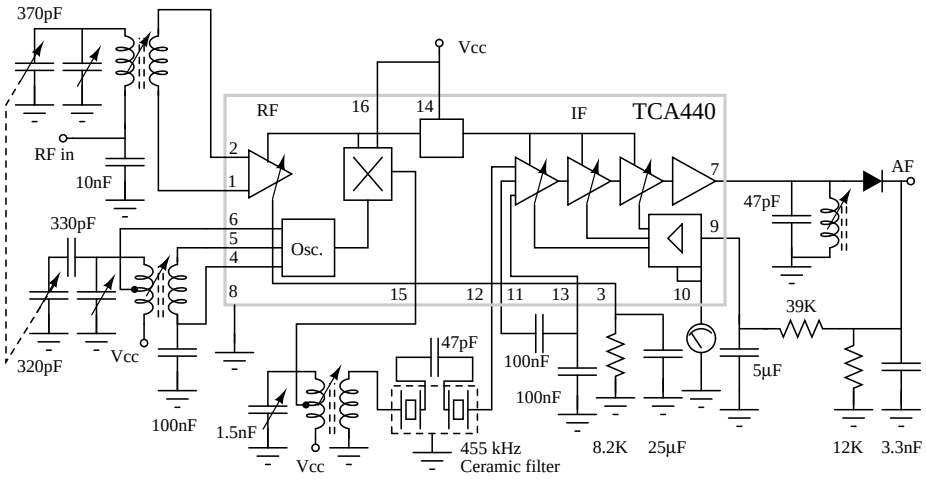


Figure 9.9: *IC radio, After Signetics [3]*

Figure 9.10 shows conventional mecahnical tuning (a) of the RF input tuner and the local oscillator with varactor diode tuning (b). The meshed plates of a dual variable capacitor make for a bulky component. It is ecconomic to replace it with varicap tuning diodes. Increasing the reverse bias V_{tune} decreases capacitance which increases frequency. V_{tune} could be produced by a potentiometer.

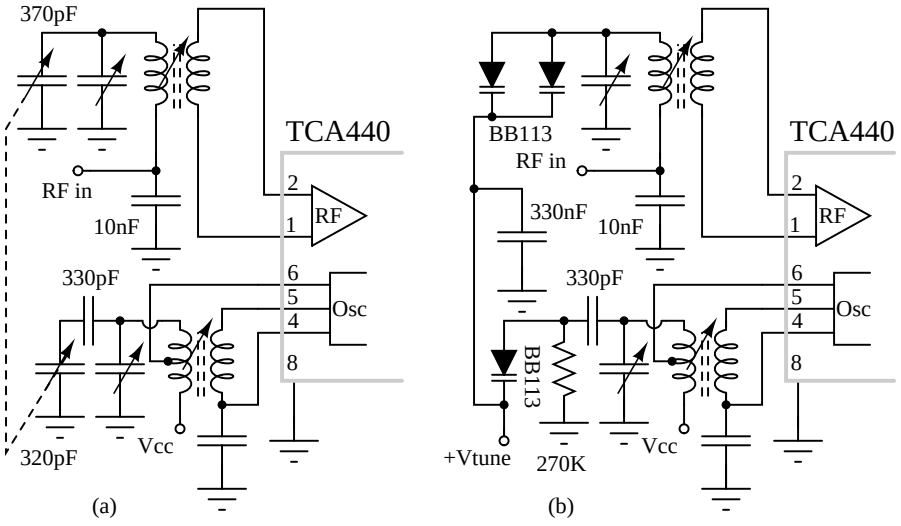


Figure 9.10: *IC radio comparison of (a) mechanical tuning to (b) electronic varicap diode tuning.[3]*

Figure 9.11 shows an even lower parts count AM radio. Sony engineers have included the intermediate frequency (IF) bandpass filter within the 8-pin IC. This eliminates external IF transformers and an IF ceramic filter. L-C tuning components are still required for the radio frequency (RF) input and the local oscillator. Though, the variable capacitors could be replaced by varicap tuning diodes.

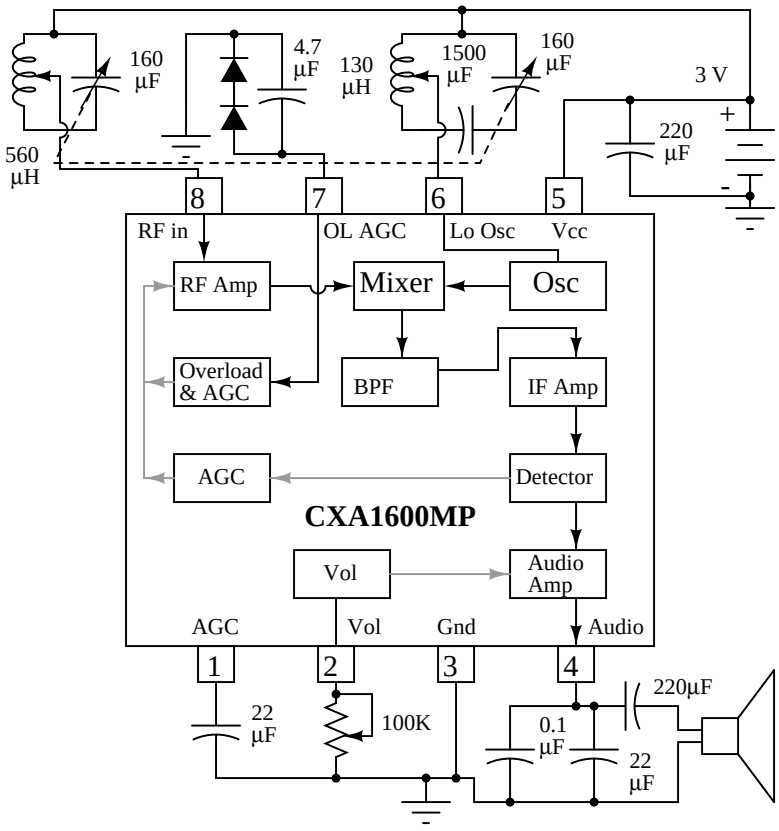


Figure 9.11: *Compact IC radio eliminates external IF filters. After Sony [4]*

Figure 9.12 is an example of a common-base (CB) RF amplifier. It is a good illustration because it looks like a CB for lack of a bias network. Since there is no bias, this is a class C amplifier. The transistor conducts for less than 180^o of the input signal because at least 0.7 V bias would be required for 180^o class B. The common-base configuration has higher power gain at high RF frequencies than common-emitter. This is a power amplifier (3/4 W) as opposed to a small signal amplifier. The input and output π-networks match the emitter and collector to the 50 Ω input and output coaxial terminations, respectively. The output π-network also helps filter harmonics generated by the class C amplifier. Though, more sections would likely be required by modern radiated emissions standards.

An example of a high gain common-base RF amplifier is shown in Figure 9.13. The common-base circuit can be pushed to a higher frequency than other configurations. This is a common

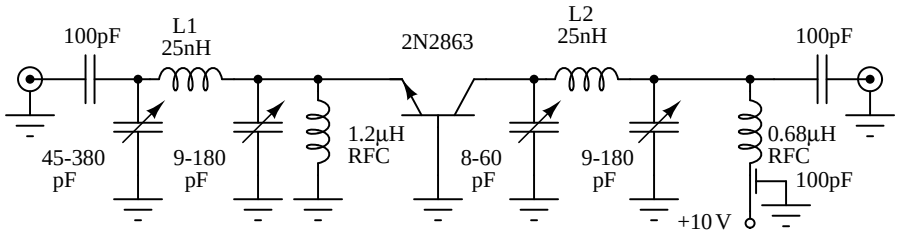


Figure 9.12: *Class C common-base 750 mW RF power amplifier. L1 = #10 Cu wire 1/2 turn, 5/8 in. ID by 3/4 in. high. L2 = #14 tinned Cu wire 1 1/2 turns, 1/2 in. ID by 1/3 in. spacing. After Texas Instruments [5]*

base configuration because the transistor bases are grounded for AC by 1000 pF capacitors. The capacitors are necessary (unlike the class C, Figure 9.12) to allow the 1KΩ-4KΩ voltage divider to bias the transistor base for class A operation. The 500Ω resistors are emitter bias resistors. They stablize the collector current. The 850Ω resistors are collector DC loads. The three stage amplifier provides an overall gain of 38 dB at 100 MHz with a 9 MHz bandwidth.

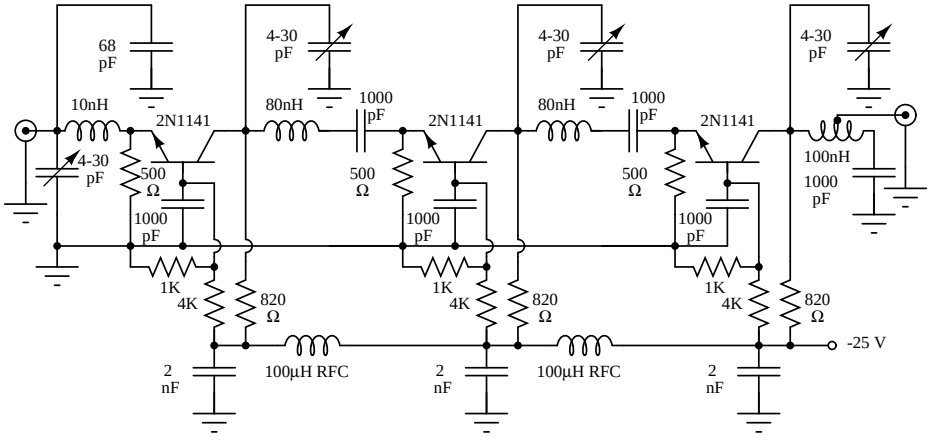


Figure 9.13: *Class A common-base small-signal high gain amplifier. After Texas Instruments [6]*

The PIN diodes are arranged in a π-attenuator network. The anti-series diodes cancel some harmonic distortion compared with a single series diode. The fixed 1.25 V supply forward biases the parallel diodes, which not only conducting DC current from ground via the resistors, but also, conduct RF to ground through the diodes' capacitors. The control voltage $V_{control}$, increases current through the parallel diodes as it increases. This decreases the resistance and attenuation, passing more RF from input to output. Attenuation is about 3 dB at $V_{control}$= 5 V. Attenuation is 40 dB at $V_{control}$= 1 V with flat frequency response to 2 gHz. At $V_{control}$= 0.5 V, attenuation is 80 dB at 10 MHz. However, the frequency response varies too much to use. [1]

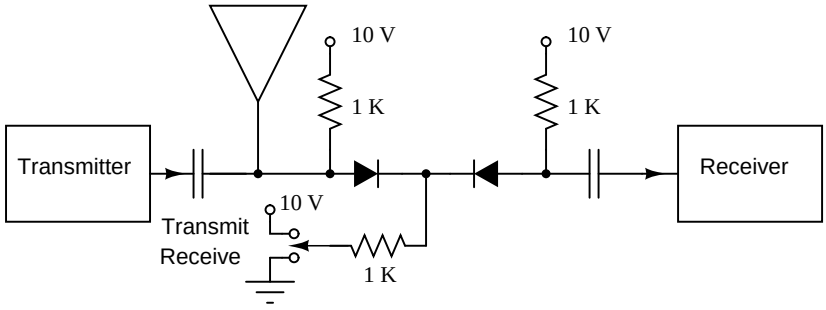


Figure 9.14: *PIN diode T/R switch disconnects receiver from antenna during transmit.*

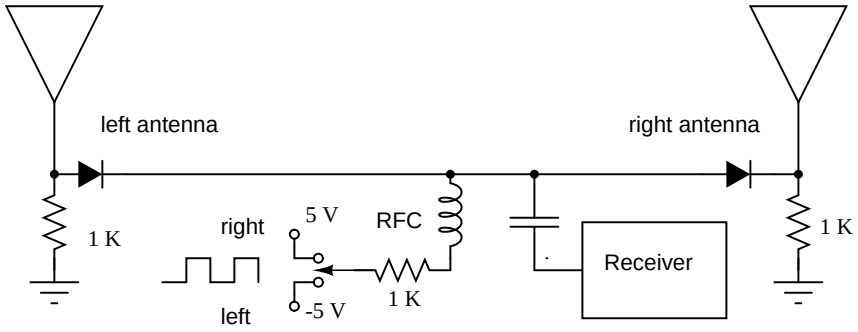


Figure 9.15: *PIN diode antenna switch for direction finder receiver.*

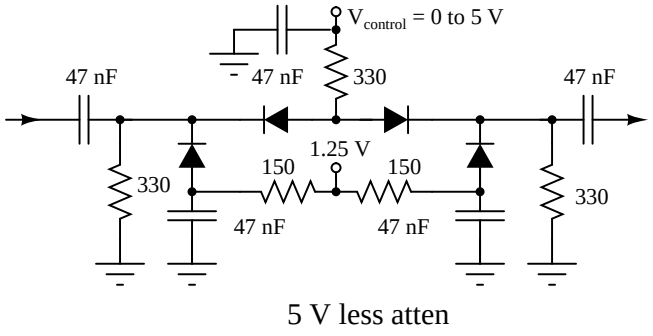


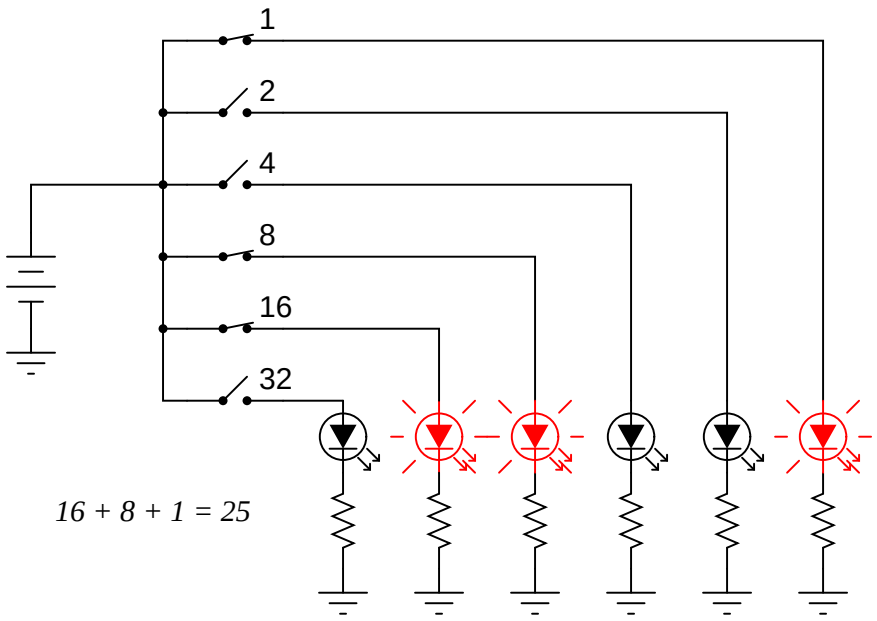
Figure 9.16: *PIN diode attenuator: PIN diodes function as voltage variable resistors. After Lin [1].*

9.7 Computational circuits

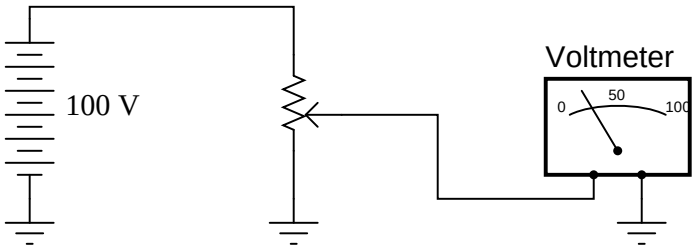
When someone mentions the word ”computer,” a digital device is what usually comes to mind. Digital circuits represent numerical quantities in *binary* format: patterns of 1’s and 0’s represented by a multitude of transistor circuits operating in saturated or cutoff states. However, analog circuitry may also be used to represent numerical quantities and perform mathematical calculations, by using variable voltage signals instead of discrete on/off states.

Here is a simple example of binary (digital) representation versus analog representation of the number ”twenty-five:”

A digital circuit representing the number 25:



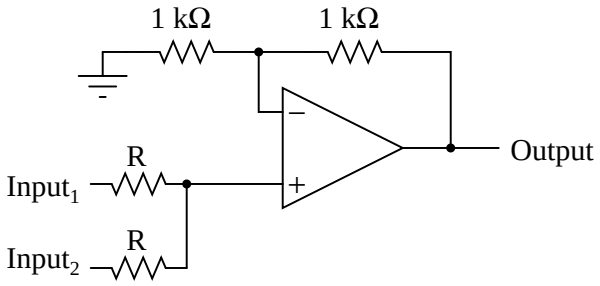
An analog circuit representing the number 25:



Digital circuits are very different from circuits built on analog principles. Digital computational circuits can be incredibly complex, and calculations must often be performed in sequential "steps" to obtain a final answer, much as a human being would perform arithmetical calculations in steps with pencil and paper. Analog computational circuits, on the other hand, are quite simple in comparison, and perform their calculations in continuous, real-time fashion. There is a disadvantage to using analog circuitry to represent numbers, though: imprecision. The digital circuit shown above is representing the number twenty-five, precisely. The analog circuit shown above may or may not be exactly calibrated to 25.000 volts, but is subject to "drift" and error.

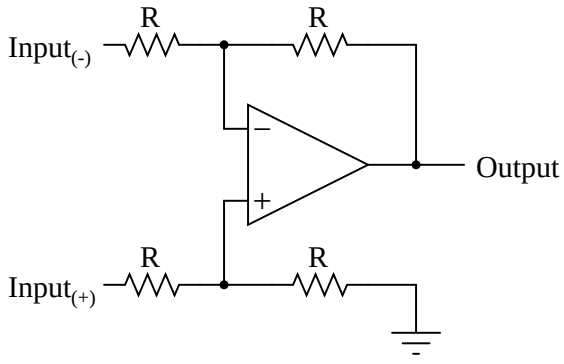
In applications where precision is not critical, analog computational circuits are very practical and elegant. Shown here are a few op-amp circuits for performing analog computation:

Analog summer (adder) circuit



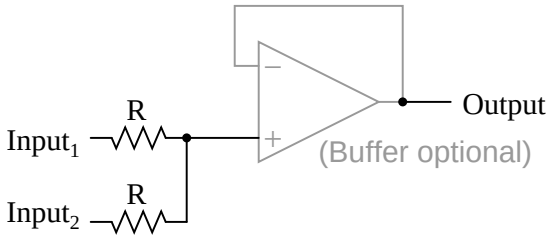
$$\text{Output} = \text{Input}_1 + \text{Input}_2$$

Analog subtractor circuit



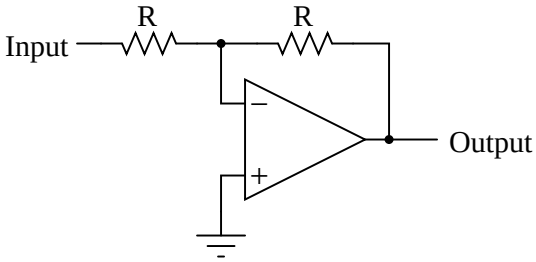
$$\text{Output} = \text{Input}_{(+)} - \text{Input}_{(-)}$$

Analog averager circuit



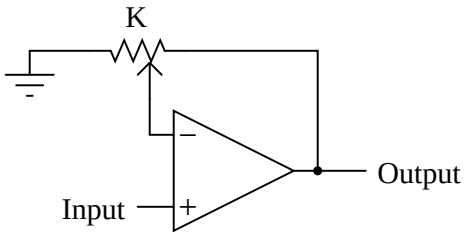
$$\text{Output} = \frac{\text{Input}_1 + \text{Input}_2}{2}$$

Analog inverter (sign reverser) circuit



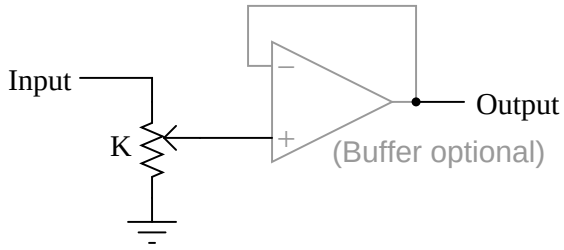
$$\text{Output} = - \text{Input}$$

Analog "multiply-by-constant" circuit



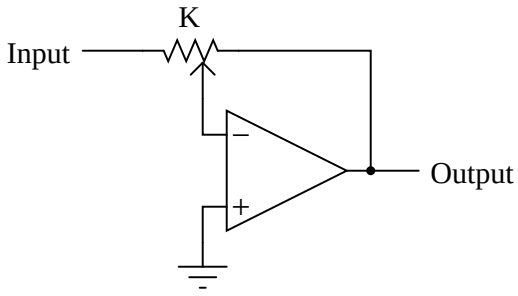
$$\text{Output} = (K)(\text{Input})$$

Analog "divide-by-constant" circuit



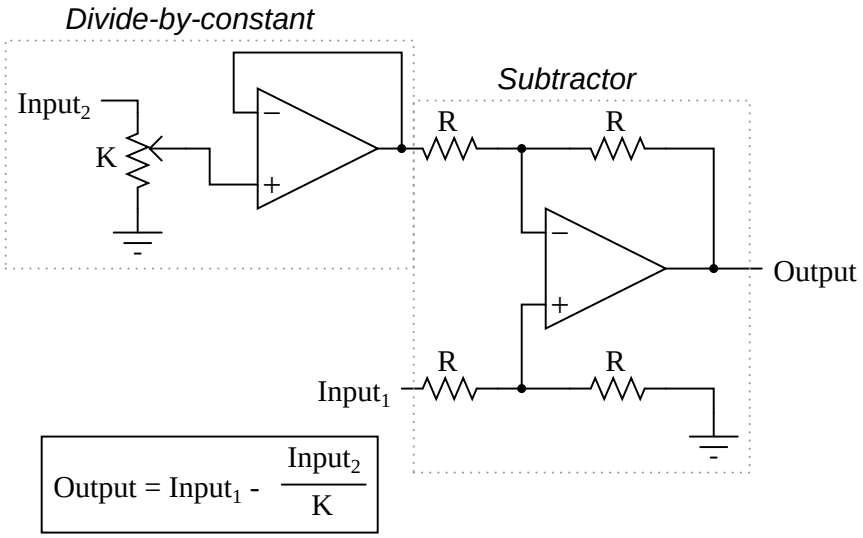
$$\text{Output} = \frac{\text{Input}}{K}$$

Analog inverting "multiply/divide-by-constant" circuit



$$\text{Output} = -(K)(\text{Input})$$

Each of these circuits may be used in modular fashion to create a circuit capable of multiple calculations. For instance, suppose that we needed to subtract a certain fraction of one variable from another variable. By combining a divide-by-constant circuit with a subtractor circuit, we could obtain the required function:



Devices called *analog computers* used to be common in universities and engineering shops, where dozens of op-amp circuits could be "patched" together with removable jumper wires to model mathematical statements, usually for the purpose of simulating some physical process whose underlying equations were known. Digital computers have made analog computers all but obsolete, but analog computational circuitry cannot be beaten by digital in terms of sheer elegance and economy of necessary components.

Analog computational circuitry excels at performing the calculus operations *integration* and *differentiation* with respect to time, by using capacitors in an op-amp feedback loop. To fully understand these circuits' operation and applications, though, we must first grasp the meaning of these fundamental calculus concepts. Fortunately, the application of op-amp circuits to real-world problems involving calculus serves as an excellent means to teach basic calculus. In the words of John I. Smith, taken from his outstanding textbook, *Modern Operational Circuit Design*:

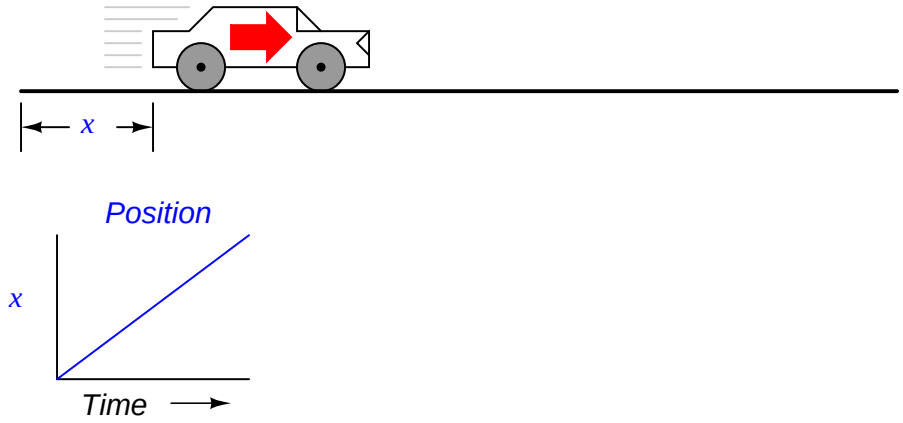
> *"A note of encouragement is offered to certain readers: integral calculus is one of the mathematical disciplines that operational [amplifier] circuitry exploits and, in the process, rather demolishes as a barrier to understanding."* (pg. 4)

Mr. Smith's sentiments on the pedagogical value of analog circuitry as a learning tool for mathematics are not unique. Consider the opinion of engineer George Fox Lang, in an article he wrote for the August 2000 issue of the journal *Sound and Vibration*, entitled, "Analog was not a Computer Trademark!":

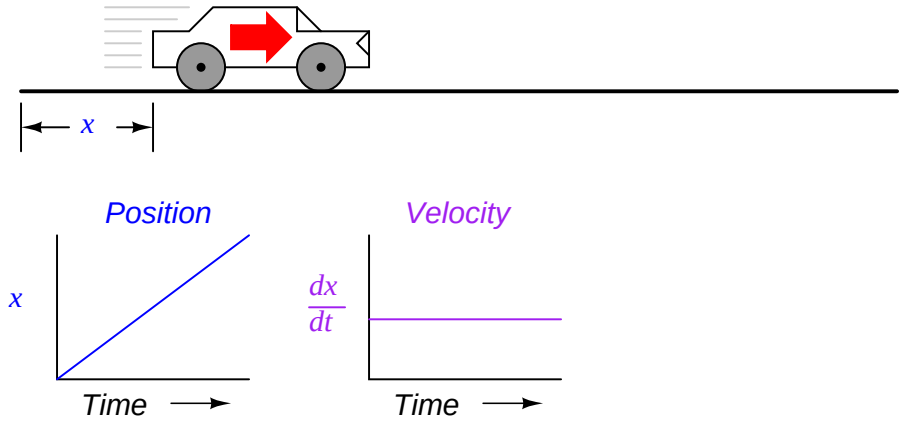
> *"Creating a real physical entity (a circuit) governed by a particular set of equations and interacting with it provides unique insight into those mathematical statements. There is no better way to develop a "gut feel" for the interplay between physics and mathematics than to experience such an interaction. The analog computer was a powerful interdisciplinary teaching tool; its obsolescence is mourned by many educators in a variety of fields."* (pg. 23)

Differentiation is the first operation typically learned by beginning calculus students. Simply put, differentiation is determining the instantaneous rate-of-change of one variable as it relates to another. In analog differentiator circuits, the independent variable is time, and so the rates of change we're dealing with are rates of change for an electronic signal (voltage or current) with respect to time.

Suppose we were to measure the position of a car, traveling in a direct path (no turns), from its starting point. Let us call this measurement, x. If the car moves at a rate such that its distance from "start" increases steadily over time, its position will plot on a graph as a *linear* function (straight line):



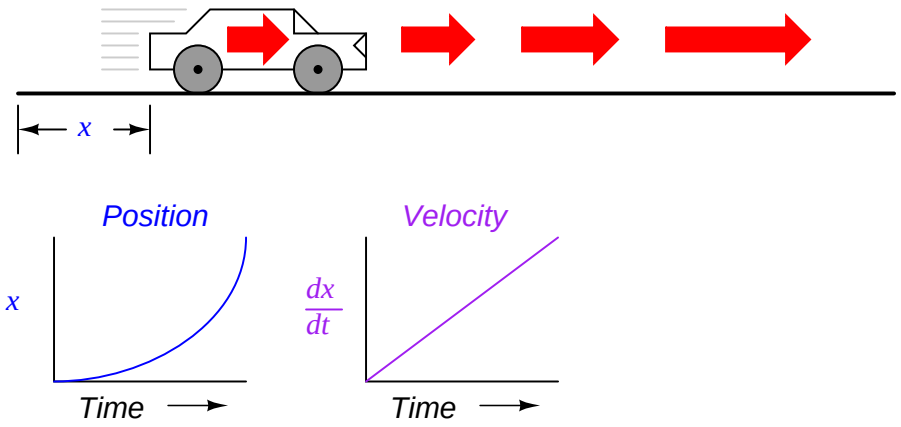
If we were to calculate the *derivative* of the car's position with respect to time (that is, determine the rate-of-change of the car's position with respect to time), we would arrive at a quantity representing the car's velocity. The differentiation function is represented by the fractional notation d/d, so when differentiating position (x) with respect to time (t), we denote the result (the derivative) as dx/dt:



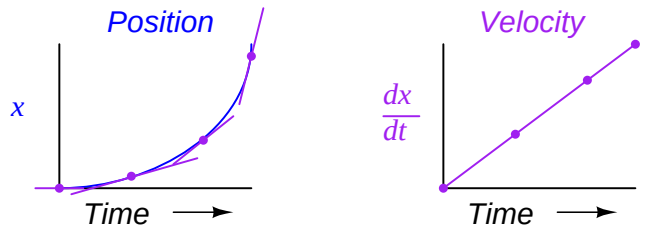
For a linear graph of x over time, the derivate of position (dx/dt), otherwise and more commonly known as *velocity*, will be a flat line, unchanging in value. The derivative of a mathematical function may be graphically understood as its *slope* when plotted on a graph,

and here we can see that the position (x) graph has a constant slope, which means that its derivative (dx/dt) must be constant over time.

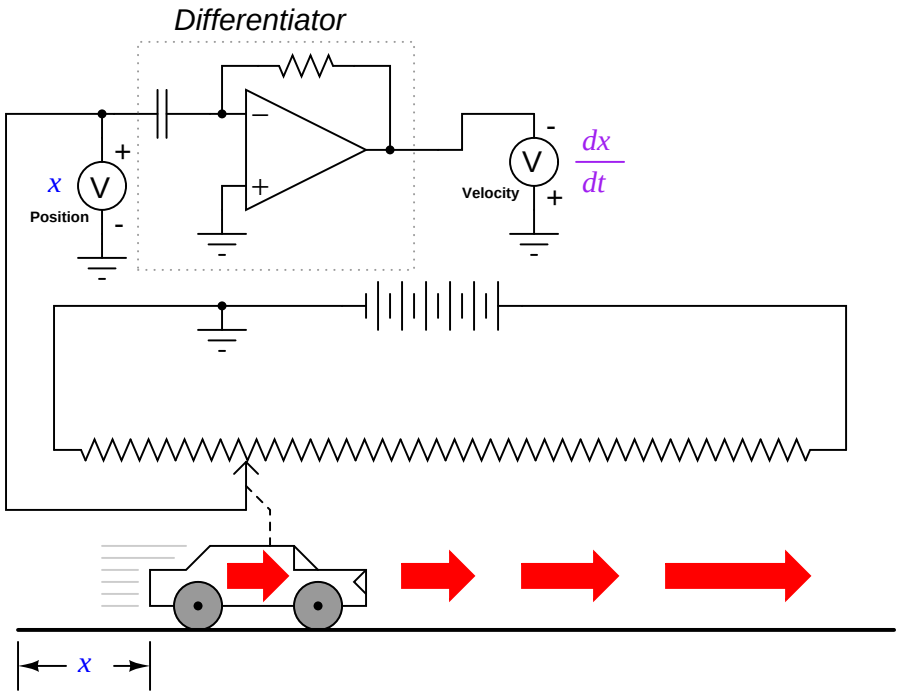
Now, suppose the distance traveled by the car increased exponentially over time: that is, it began its travel in slow movements, but covered more additional distance with each passing period in time. We would then see that the derivative of position (dx/dt), otherwise known as velocity (v), would not be constant over time, but would increase:



The height of points on the velocity graph correspond to the rates-of-change, or slope, of points at corresponding times on the position graph:



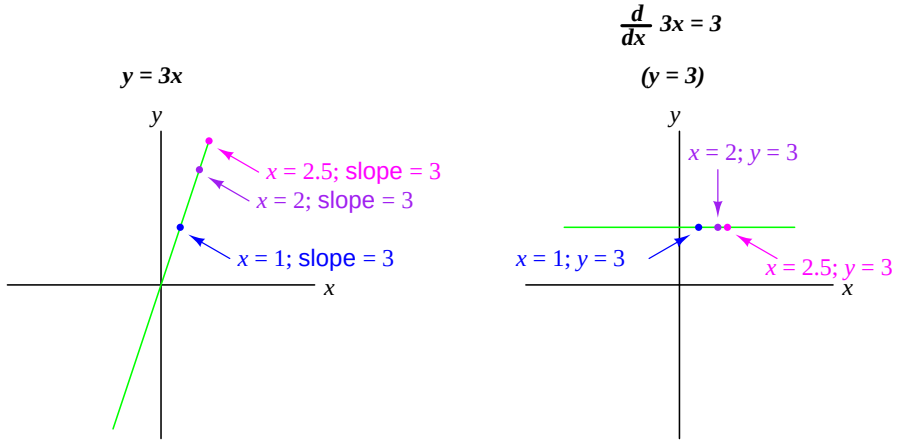
What does this have to do with analog electronic circuits? Well, if we were to have an analog voltage signal represent the car's position (think of a huge potentiometer whose wiper was attached to the car, generating a voltage proportional to the car's position), we could connect a differentiator circuit to this signal and have the circuit continuously *calculate* the car's velocity, displaying the result via a voltmeter connected to the differentiator circuit's output:



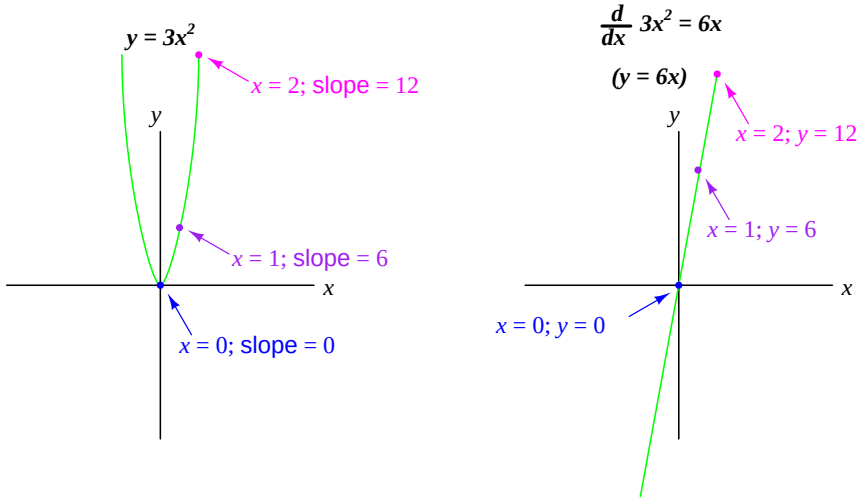
Recall from the last chapter that a differentiator circuit outputs a voltage proportional to the input voltage's *rate-of-change over time* (d/dt). Thus, if the input voltage is changing over time at a constant *rate*, the output voltage will be at a constant value. If the car moves in such a way that its elapsed distance over time builds up at a steady rate, then that means the car is traveling at a constant velocity, and the differentiator circuit will output a constant voltage proportional to that velocity. If the car's elapsed distance over time changes in a non-steady manner, the differentiator circuit's output will likewise be non-steady, but always at a level representative of the input's rate-of-change over time.

Note that the voltmeter registering velocity (at the output of the differentiator circuit) is connected in "reverse" polarity to the output of the op-amp. This is because the differentiator circuit shown is *inverting*: outputting a negative voltage for a positive input voltage rate-of-change. If we wish to have the voltmeter register a positive value for velocity, it will have to be connected to the op-amp as shown. As impractical as it may be to connect a giant potentiometer to a moving object such as an automobile, the concept should be clear: by electronically performing the calculus function of differentiation on a signal representing position, we obtain a signal representing velocity.

Beginning calculus students learn symbolic techniques for differentiation. However, this requires that the equation describing the original graph be known. For example, calculus students learn how to take a function such as $y = 3x$ and find its derivative with respect to x (d/dx), 3, simply by manipulating the equation. We may verify the accuracy of this manipulation by comparing the graphs of the two functions:



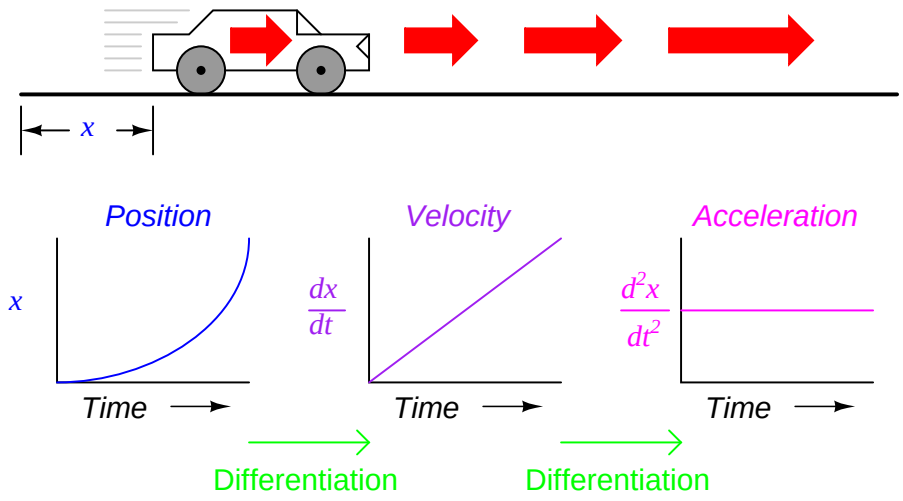
Nonlinear functions such as $y = 3x^2$ may also be differentiated by symbolic means. In this case, the derivative of $y = 3x^2$ with respect to x is $6x$:



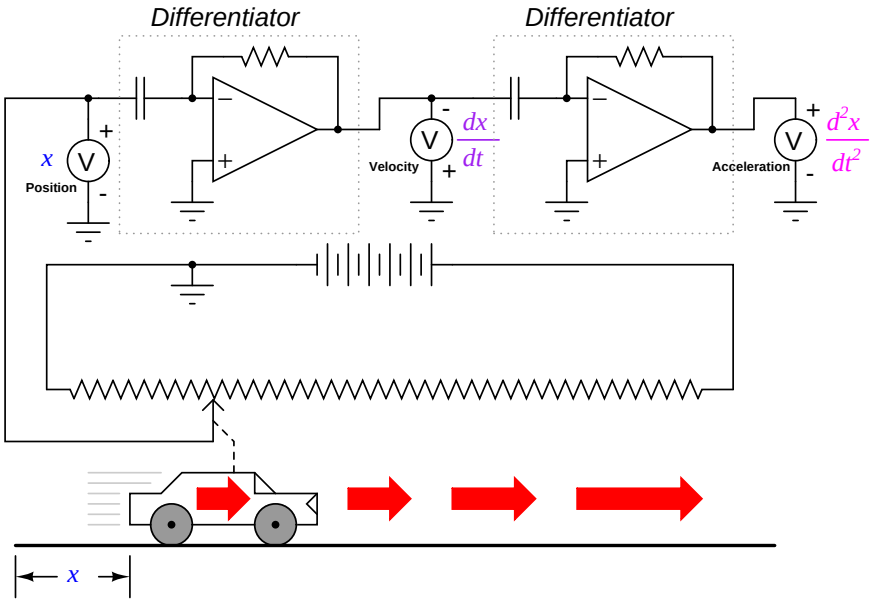
In real life, though, we often cannot describe the behavior of any physical event by a simple equation like $y = 3x$, and so symbolic differentiation of the type learned by calculus students may be impossible to apply to a physical measurement. If someone wished to determine the derivative of our hypothetical car's position (dx/dt = velocity) by symbolic means, they would first have to obtain an equation describing the car's position over time, based on position measurements taken from a real experiment – a nearly impossible task unless the car is operated under carefully controlled conditions leading to a very simple position graph. However, an analog differentiator circuit, by exploiting the behavior of a capacitor with respect to voltage, current, and time $i = C(dv/dt)$, naturally differentiates any real signal in relation to time, and would be able to output a signal corresponding to instantaneous velocity (dx/dt) at any moment. By logging the car's position signal along with the differentiator's output signal using a chart recorder or other data acquisition device, both graphs would naturally present them-

selves for inspection and analysis.

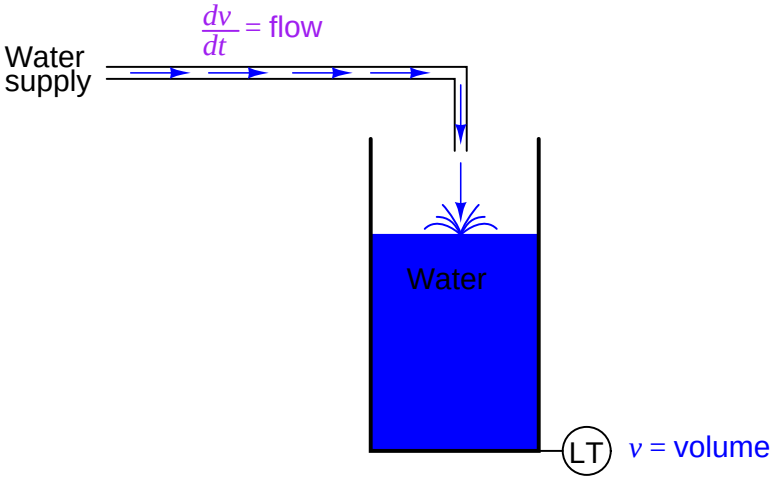
We may take the principle of differentiation one step further by applying it to the velocity signal using another differentiator circuit. In other words, use it to calculate the rate-of-change of velocity, which we know is the rate-of-change of position. What practical measure would we arrive at if we did this? Think of this in terms of the units we use to measure position and velocity. If we were to measure the car's position from its starting point in miles, then we would probably express its velocity in units of miles *per hour* (dx/dt). If we were to differentiate the velocity (measured in miles per hour) with respect to time, we would end up with a unit of miles per hour *per hour*. Introductory physics classes teach students about the behavior of falling objects, measuring position in *meters*, velocity in *meters per second*, and change in velocity over time in *meters per second, per second*. This final measure is called *acceleration*: the rate of change of velocity over time:



The expression d^2x/dt^2 is called the *second derivative* of position (x) with regard to time (t). If we were to connect a second differentiator circuit to the output of the first, the last voltmeter would register acceleration:



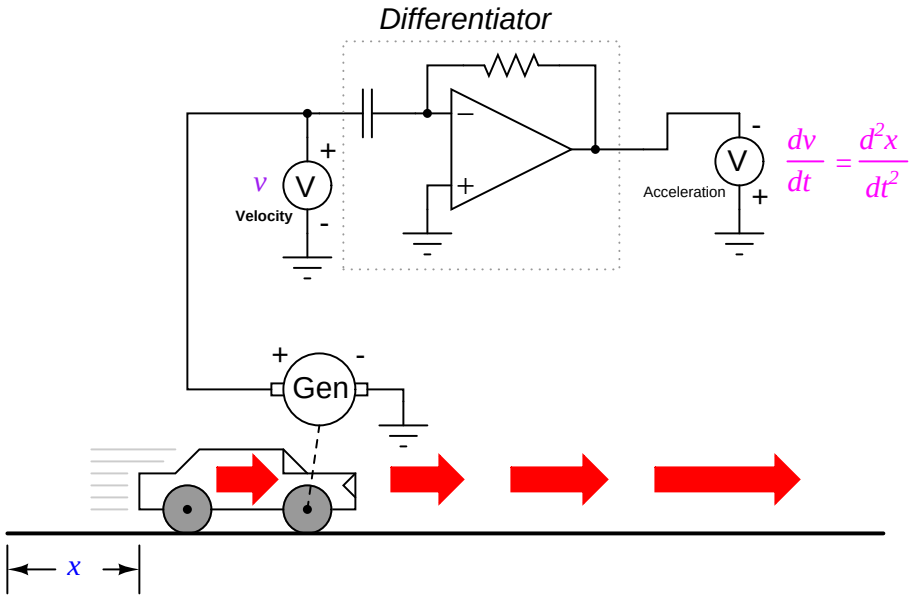
Deriving velocity from position, and acceleration from velocity, we see the principle of differentiation very clearly illustrated. These are not the only physical measurements related to each other in this way, but they are, perhaps, the most common. Another example of calculus in action is the relationship between liquid flow (q) and liquid volume (v) accumulated in a vessel over time:



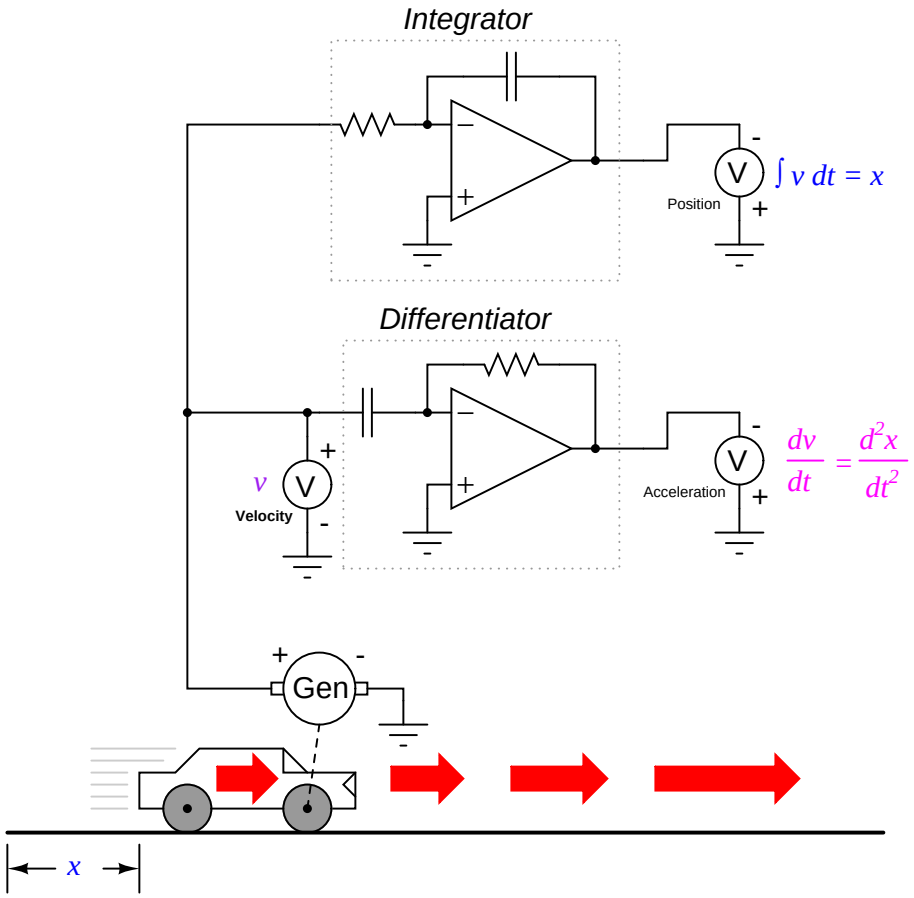
A "Level Transmitter" device mounted on a water storage tank provides a signal directly proportional to water level in the tank, which – if the tank is of constant cross-sectional area throughout its height – directly equates water volume stored. If we were to take this volume signal and differentiate it with respect to time (dv/dt), we would obtain a signal proportional to the water *flow rate* through the pipe carrying water to the tank. A differentiator circuit

connected in such a way as to receive this volume signal would produce an output signal proportional to flow, possibly substituting for a flow-measurement device ("Flow Transmitter") installed in the pipe.

Returning to the car experiment, suppose that our hypothetical car were equipped with a tachogenerator on one of the wheels, producing a voltage signal directly proportional to velocity. We could differentiate the signal to obtain acceleration with one circuit, like this:



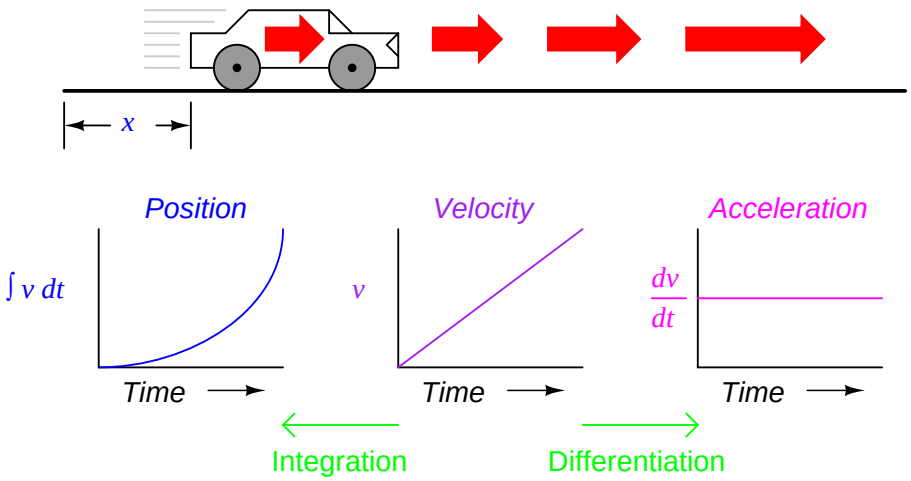
By its very nature, the tachogenerator differentiates the car's position with respect to time, generating a voltage proportional to how rapidly the wheel's angular position changes over time. This provides us with a raw signal already representative of velocity, with only a single step of differentiation needed to obtain an acceleration signal. A tachogenerator measuring velocity, of course, is a far more practical example of automobile instrumentation than a giant potentiometer measuring its physical position, but what we gain in practicality we lose in position measurement. No matter how many times we differentiate, we can never infer the car's position from a velocity signal. If the process of differentiation brought us from position to velocity to acceleration, then somehow we need to perform the "reverse" process of differentiation to go from velocity to position. Such a mathematical process does exist, and it is called *integration*. The "integrator" circuit may be used to perform this function of integration with respect to time:



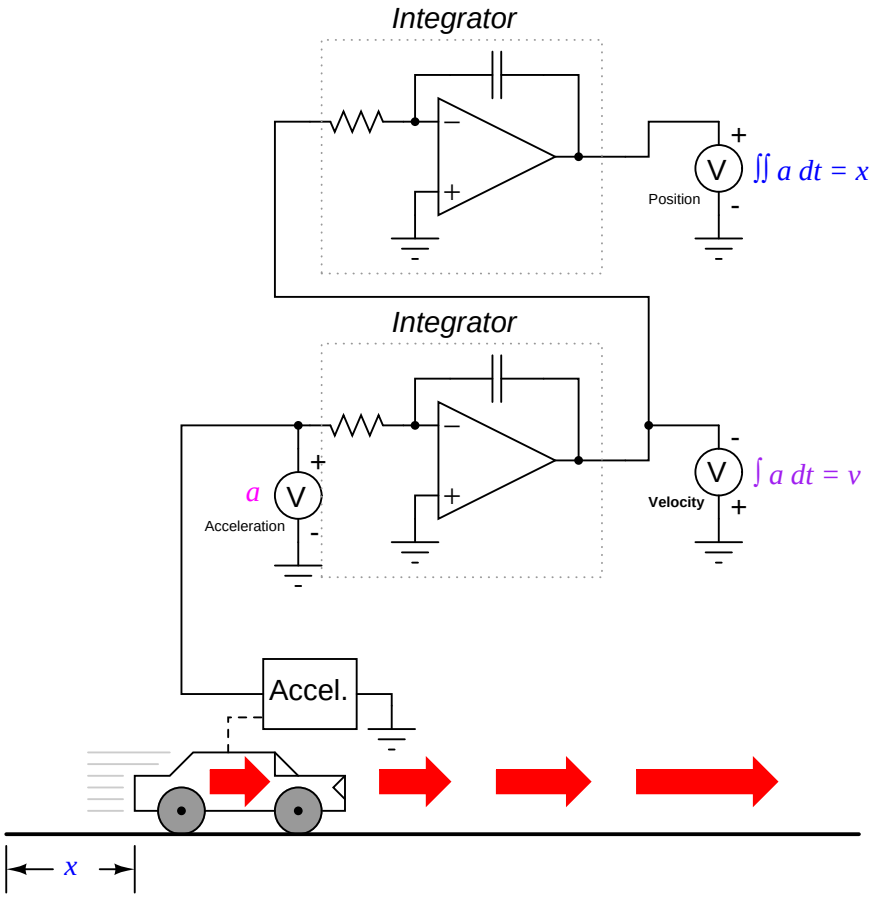
Recall from the last chapter that an integrator circuit outputs a voltage whose rate-of-change over time is proportional to the input voltage's magnitude. Thus, given a constant input voltage, the output voltage will *change* at a constant *rate*. If the car travels at a constant velocity (constant voltage input to the integrator circuit from the tachogenerator), then its distance traveled will increase steadily as time progresses, and the integrator will output a steadily changing voltage proportional to that distance. If the car's velocity is not constant, then neither will the rate-of-change over time be of the integrator circuit's output, but the output voltage *will* faithfully represent the amount of distance traveled by the car at any given point in time.

The symbol for integration looks something like a very narrow, cursive letter "S" ($\int$). The equation utilizing this symbol ($\int v\ dt = x$) tells us that we are integrating velocity (v) with respect to time (dt), and obtaining position (x) as a result.

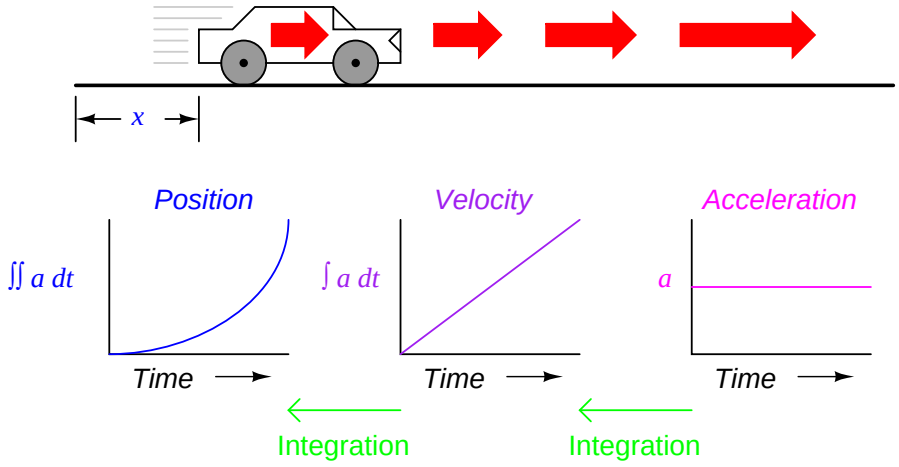
So, we may express three measures of the car's motion (position, velocity, and acceleration) in terms of velocity (v) just as easily as we could in terms of position (x):



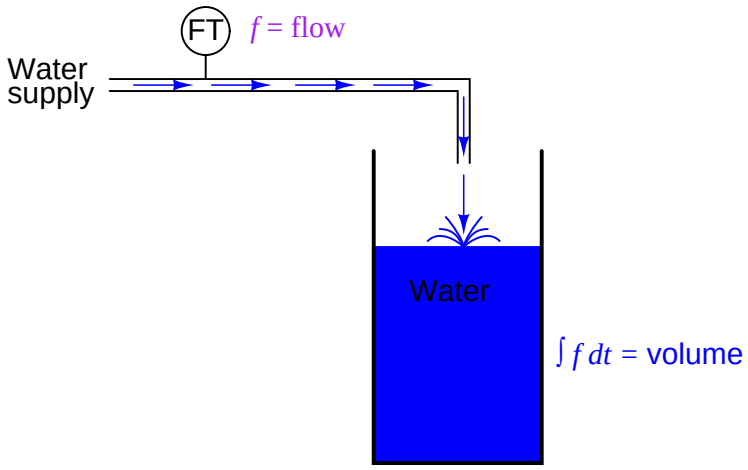
If we had an accelerometer attached to the car, generating a signal proportional to the rate of acceleration or deceleration, we could (hypothetically) obtain a velocity signal with one step of integration, and a position signal with a second step of integration:



Thus, all three measures of the car's motion (position, velocity, and acceleration) may be expressed in terms of acceleration:



As you might have suspected, the process of integration may be illustrated in, and applied to, other physical systems as well. Take for example the water storage tank and flow example shown earlier. If flow rate is the *derivative* of tank volume with respect to time ($q = dv/dt$), then we could also say that volume is the *integral* of flow rate with respect to time:

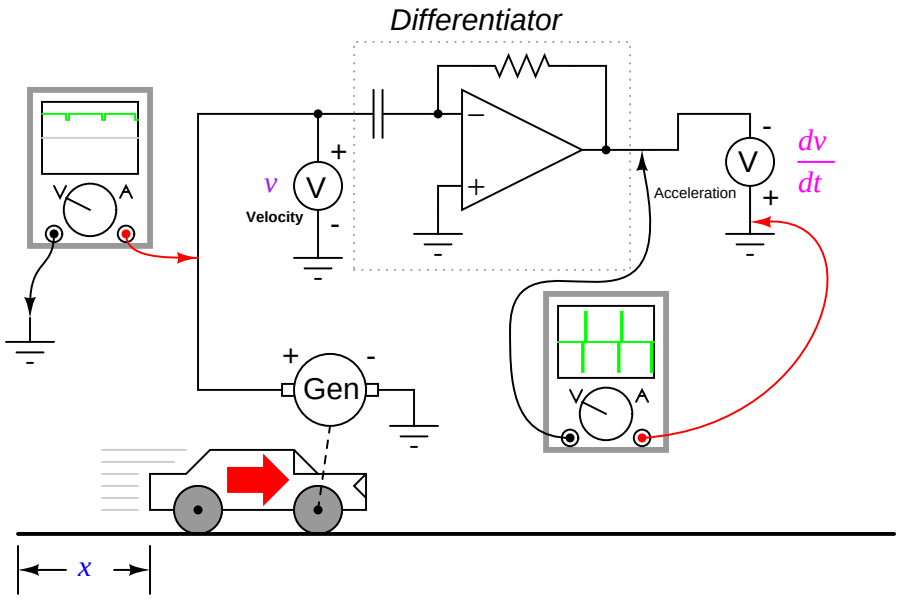


If we were to use a "Flow Transmitter" device to measure water flow, then by time-integration we could calculate the volume of water accumulated in the tank over time. Although it is theoretically possible to use a capacitive op-amp integrator circuit to derive a volume signal from a flow signal, mechanical and digital electronic "integrator" devices are more suitable for integration over long periods of time, and find frequent use in the water treatment and distribution industries.

Just as there are symbolic techniques for differentiation, there are also symbolic techniques for integration, although they tend to be more complex and varied. Applying symbolic integration to a real-world problem like the acceleration of a car, though, is still contingent on the availability of an equation precisely describing the measured signal – often a difficult or impossible thing to derive from measured data. However, electronic integrator circuits perform this mathematical function continuously, in real time, and for *any* input signal profile, thus providing a powerful tool for scientists and engineers.

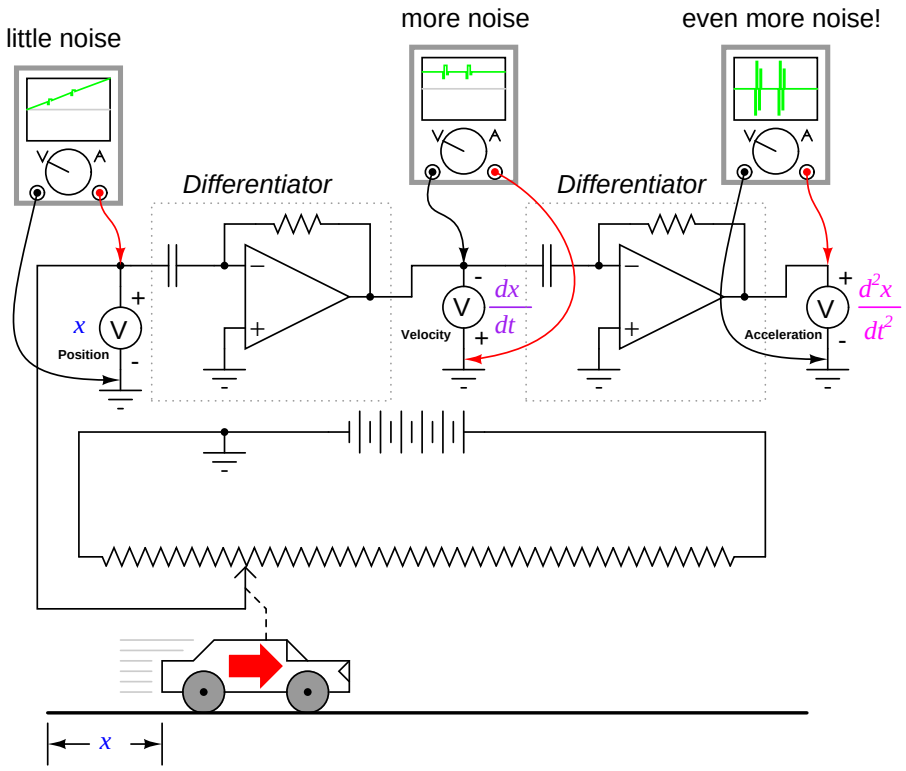
Having said this, there are caveats to the using calculus techniques to derive one type of measurement from another. Differentiation has the undesirable tendency of amplifying "noise" found in the measured variable, since the noise will typically appear as frequencies much higher than the measured variable, and high frequencies by their very nature possess high rates-of-change over time.

To illustrate this problem, suppose we were deriving a measurement of car acceleration from the velocity signal obtained from a tachogenerator with worn brushes or commutator bars. Points of poor contact between brush and commutator will produce momentary "dips" in the tachogenerator's output voltage, and the differentiator circuit connected to it will interpret these dips as very rapid changes in velocity. For a car moving at constant speed – neither accelerating nor decelerating – the acceleration signal should be 0 volts, but "noise" in the velocity signal caused by a faulty tachogenerator will cause the differentiated (acceleration) signal to contain "spikes," falsely indicating brief periods of high acceleration and deceleration:

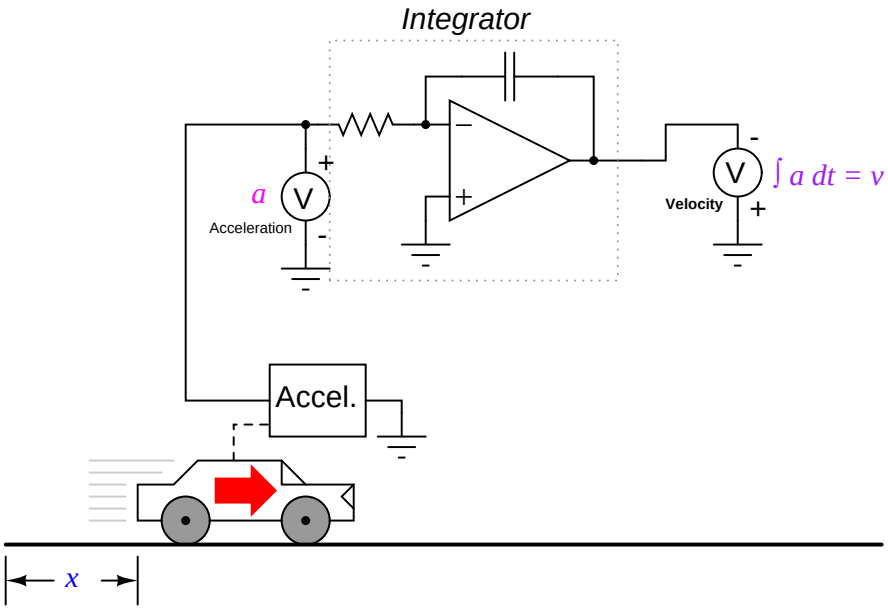


Noise voltage present in a signal to be differentiated need not be of significant amplitude to cause trouble: all that is required is that the noise profile have fast rise or fall times. In other words, any electrical noise with a high dv/dt component will be problematic when differentiated, even if it is of low amplitude.

It should be noted that this problem is not an artifact (an idiosyncratic error of the measuring/computing instrument) of the analog circuitry; rather, it is inherent to the process of differentiation. No matter how we might perform the differentiation, "noise" in the velocity signal will invariably corrupt the output signal. Of course, if we were differentiating a signal twice, as we did to obtain both velocity and acceleration from a position signal, the amplified noise signal output by the first differentiator circuit will be amplified again by the next differentiator, thus compounding the problem:

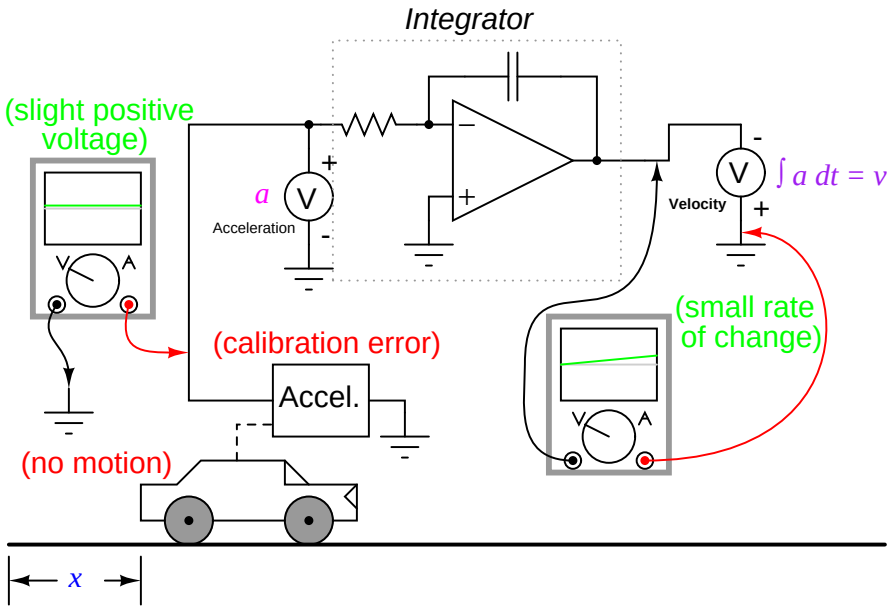


Integration does not suffer from this problem, because integrators act as low-pass filters, attenuating high-frequency input signals. In effect, all the high and low peaks resulting from noise on the signal become averaged together over time, for a diminished net result. One might suppose, then, that we could avoid all trouble by measuring acceleration directly and integrating that signal to obtain velocity; in effect, calculating in ”reverse” from the way shown previously:



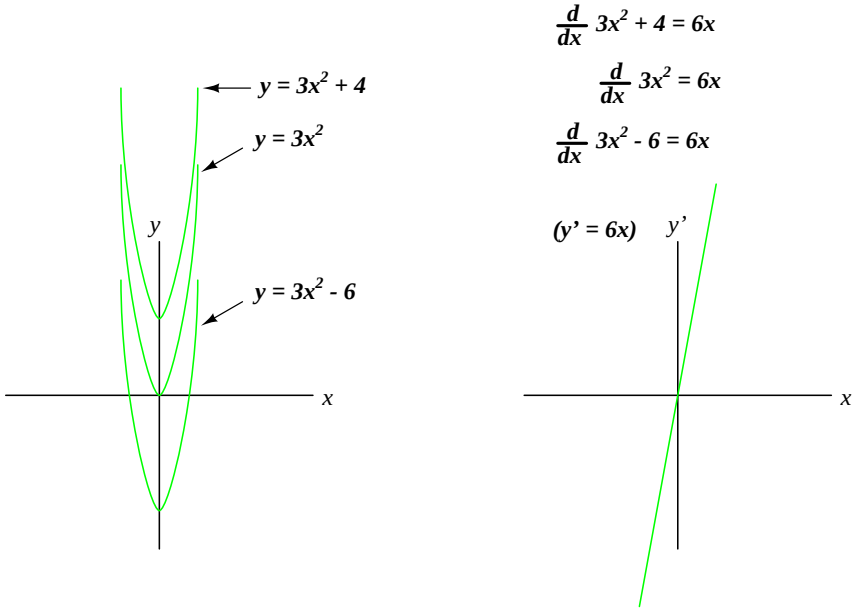
Unfortunately, following this methodology might lead us into other difficulties, one being a common artifact of analog integrator circuits known as *drift*. All op-amps have some amount of input bias current, and this current will tend to cause a charge to accumulate on the capacitor in addition to whatever charge accumulates as a result of the input voltage signal. In other words, all analog integrator circuits suffer from the tendency of having their output voltage "drift" or "creep" even when there is absolutely no voltage input, accumulating error over time as a result. Also, imperfect capacitors will tend to lose their stored charge over time due to internal resistance, resulting in "drift" toward zero output voltage. These problems *are* artifacts of the analog circuitry, and may be eliminated through the use of digital computation.

Circuit artifacts notwithstanding, possible errors may result from the integration of one measurement (such as acceleration) to obtain another (such as velocity) simply because of the way integration works. If the "zero" calibration point of the raw signal sensor is not perfect, it will output a slight positive or negative signal even in conditions when it should output nothing. Consider a car with an imperfectly calibrated accelerometer, or one that is influenced by gravity to detect a slight acceleration unrelated to car motion. Even with a perfect integrating computer, this sensor error will cause the integrator to accumulate error, resulting in an output signal indicating a change of velocity when the car is neither accelerating nor decelerating.



As with differentiation, this error will also compound itself if the integrated signal is passed on to another integrator circuit, since the ”drifting” output of the first integrator will very soon present a significant positive or negative signal for the next integrator to integrate. Therefore, care should be taken when integrating sensor signals: if the ”zero” adjustment of the sensor is not *perfect*, the integrated result will drift, even if the integrator circuit itself is perfect.

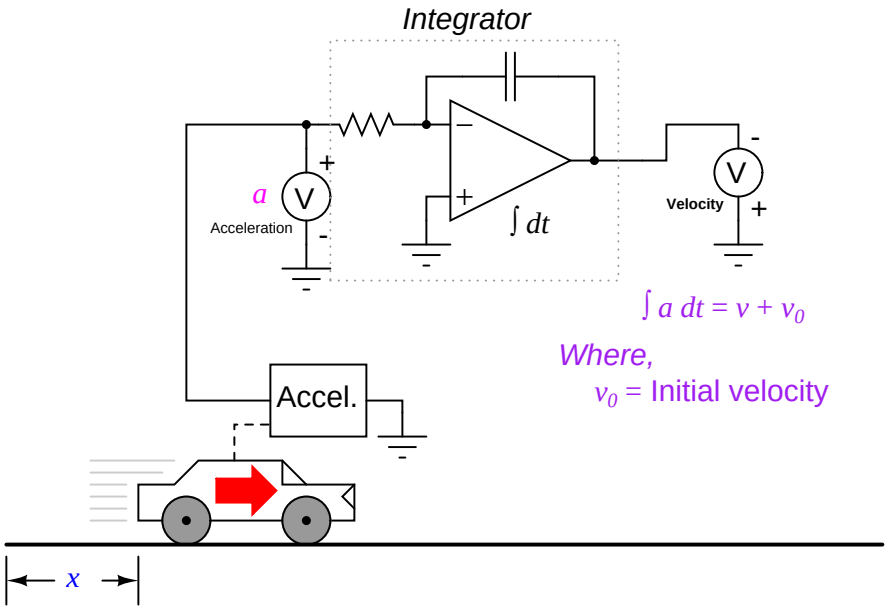
So far, the only integration errors discussed have been artificial in nature: originating from imperfections in the circuitry and sensors. There also exists a source of error inherent to the process of integration itself, and that is the *unknown constant* problem. Beginning calculus students learn that whenever a function is integrated, there exists an unknown constant (usually represented as the variable C) added to the result. This uncertainty is easiest to understand by comparing the derivatives of several functions differing only by the addition of a constant value:



Note how each of the parabolic curves ($y = 3x^2 + C$) share the exact same shape, differing from each other in regard to their vertical offset. However, they all share the exact same derivative function: $y' = (d/dx)(3x^2 + C) = 6x$, because they all share identical *rates of change* (slopes) at corresponding points along the x axis. While this seems quite natural and expected from the perspective of differentiation (different equations sharing a common derivative), it usually strikes beginning students as odd from the perspective of integration, because there are multiple correct answers for the integral of a function. Going from an equation to its derivative, there is only one answer, but going from that derivative back to the original equation leads us to a range of correct solutions. In honor of this uncertainty, the symbolic function of integration is called the *indefinite integral*.

When an integrator performs live signal integration with respect to time, the output is the sum of the integrated input signal over time *and* an initial value of arbitrary magnitude, representing the integrator's pre-existing output at the time integration began. For example, if I integrate the velocity of a car driving in a straight line away from a city, calculating that a constant velocity of 50 miles per hour over a time of 2 hours will produce a distance ($\int v\ dt$) of 100 miles, that does not necessarily mean the car will be 100 miles away from the city after 2 hours. All it tells us is that the car will be 100 miles *further* away from the city after 2 hours of driving. The actual distance from the city after 2 hours of driving depends on how far the car was from the city when integration began. If we do not know this initial value for distance, we cannot determine the car's exact distance from the city after 2 hours of driving.

This same problem appears when we integrate acceleration with respect to time to obtain velocity:



In this integrator system, the calculated velocity of the car will only be valid if the integrator circuit is *initialized* to an output value of zero when the car is stationary ($v = 0$). Otherwise, the integrator could very well be outputting a non-zero signal for velocity (v_0) when the car is stationary, for the accelerometer cannot tell the difference between a stationary state (0 miles per hour) and a state of constant velocity (say, 60 miles per hour, unchanging). This uncertainty in integrator output is inherent to the process of integration, and not an artifact of the circuitry or of the sensor.

In summary, if maximum accuracy is desired for any physical measurement, it is best to measure that variable directly rather than compute it from other measurements. This is not to say that computation is worthless. Quite to the contrary, often it is the only practical means of obtaining a desired measurement. However, the limits of computation must be understood and respected in order that precise measurements be obtained.

9.8 Measurement circuits – INCOMPLETE

Figure 9.17 shows a photodiode amplifier for measuring low levels of light. Best sensitivity and bandwidth are obtained with a *transimpedance amplifier*, a current to voltage amplifier, instead of a conventional operational amplifier. The photodiode remains reverse biased for lowest diode capacitance, hence wider bandwidth, and lower noise. The feedback resistor sets the "gain", the current to voltage amplification factor. Typical values are 1 to 10 Meg Ω. Higher values yield higher gain. A capacitor of a few pF may be required to compensate for photodiode capacitance, and prevents instability at the high gain. The wiring at the summing node must be as compact as possible. This point is sensitive to circuit board contaminants and must be thoroughly cleaned. The most sensitive amplifiers contain the photodiode and amplifier within a hybrid microcircuit package or single die.

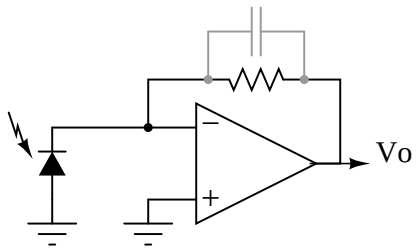


Figure 9.17: *Photodiode amplifier.*

9.9 Control circuits – PENDING

Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Warren Young (August 2002): Initial idea and text for "Power supply circuits" section. Paragraphs modified by Tony Kuphaldt (changes in vocabulary, plus inclusion of additional concepts).

Bill Marsden (April 2008) Author of "ElectroStatic Discharge" section.

Bibliography

[1] Chin-Leong Lim, Lim Yeam Ch'ng, Goh Swee Chye, "Diode Quad Is Foundation For PIN Diode Attenuator," Microwaves & RF, May 2006, at http://www.mwrf.com/Articles/Index.cfm?Ad=1&ArticleID=12523

[2] "Transistor Audio and Radio Circuits," TP1399, 2nd Ed., pp 39-40, Mullard, London, 1972.

[3] "AM Receiver Circuit TCA440," Analog Data Manual, 2nd Ed., pp 14-20 to 14-26, Signetics, 1982.

[4] Sony "8-pin Single-Chip AM Radio with Builot-in Power Amplifier," pp 5, at http://www.datasheetcatalog.com/datasheets_pdf/C/X/A/1/CXA1600.shtml

[5] Texas Instruments "Solid State Communications," pp 318, McGraw-Hill, N.Y., 1966.

[6] Texas Instruments "Transistor Circuit Design," pp 290, McGraw-Hill, N.Y., 1963.

Chapter 10

ACTIVE FILTERS

Contents

*** PENDING ***

Chapter 11

DC MOTOR DRIVES

Contents

***** PENDING *****

Chapter 12

INVERTERS AND AC MOTOR DRIVES

Contents

*** PENDING ***

Chapter 13

ELECTRON TUBES

Contents

13.1 Introduction

An often neglected area of study in modern electronics is that of *tubes*, more precisely known as *vacuum tubes* or *electron tubes*. Almost completely overshadowed by semiconductor, or "solid-state" components in most modern applications, tube technology once dominated electronic circuit design.

In fact, the historical transition from "electric" to "electronic" circuits really began with tubes, for it was with tubes that we entered into a whole new realm of circuit function: a way of controlling the flow of electrons (current) in a circuit by means of another electric signal (in the case of most tubes, the controlling signal is a small voltage). The semiconductor counterpart to the tube, of course, is the transistor. Transistors perform much the same function as tubes: controlling the flow of electrons in a circuit by means of another flow of electrons in the case of the bipolar transistor, and controlling the flow of electrons by means of a voltage in the case of

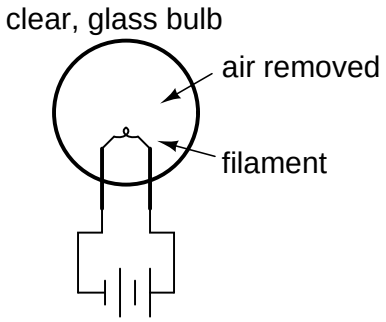
the field-effect transistor. In either case, a relatively small electric signal controls a relatively large electric current. This is the essence of the word ”electronic,” so as to distinguish it from ”electric,” which has more to do with how electron flow is regulated by Ohm’s Law and the physical attributes of wire and components.

Though tubes are now obsolete for all but a few specialized applications, they are still a worthy area of study. If nothing else, it is fascinating to explore ”the way things used to be done” in order to better appreciate modern technology.

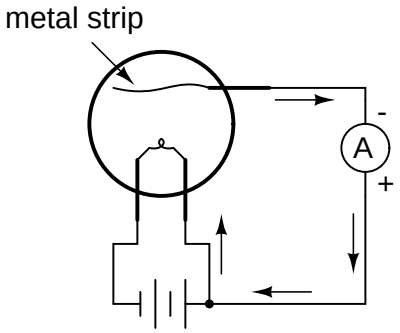
13.2 Early tube history

Thomas Edison, that prolific American inventor, is often credited with the invention of the incandescent lamp. More accurately, it could be said that Edison was the man who *perfected* the incandescent lamp. Edison’s successful design of 1879 was actually preceded by 77 years by the British scientist Sir Humphry Davy, who first demonstrated the principle of using electric current to heat a thin strip of metal (called a ”filament”) to the point of incandescence (glowing white hot).

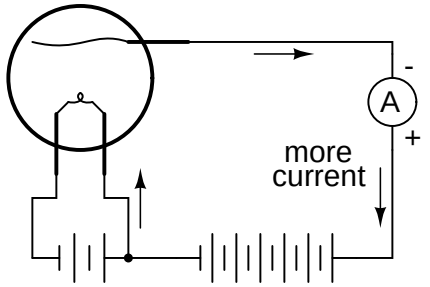
Edison was able to achieve his success by placing his filament (made of carbonized sewing thread) inside of a clear glass bulb from which the air had been forcibly removed. In this vacuum, the filament could glow at white-hot temperatures without being consumed by combustion:



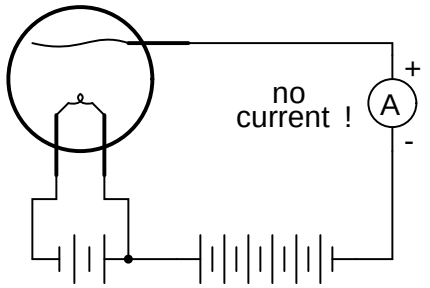
In the course of his experimentation (sometime around 1883), Edison placed a strip of metal inside of an evacuated (vacuum) glass bulb along with the filament. Between this metal strip and one of the filament connections he attached a sensitive ammeter. What he found was that electrons would flow through the meter whenever the filament was hot, but ceased when the filament cooled down:



The white-hot filament in Edison's lamp was liberating free electrons into the vacuum of the lamp, those electrons finding their way to the metal strip, through the galvanometer, and back to the filament. His curiosity piqued, Edison then connected a fairly high-voltage battery in the galvanometer circuit to aid the small current:



Sure enough, the presence of the battery created a much larger current from the filament to the metal strip. However, when the battery was turned around, there was little to no current at all!



In effect, what Edison had stumbled upon was a diode! Unfortunately, he saw no practical use for such a device and proceeded with further refinements in his lamp design.

The one-way electron flow of this device (known as the *Edison Effect*) remained a curiosity until J. A. Fleming experimented with its use in 1895. Fleming marketed his device as a "valve," initiating a whole new area of study in electric circuits. Vacuum tube diodes – Fleming's "valves" being no exception – are not able to handle large amounts of current, and so Fleming's invention was impractical for any application in AC power, only for small electric signals.

Then in 1906, another inventor by the name of Lee De Forest started playing around with the "Edison Effect," seeing what more could be gained from the phenomenon. In doing so, he made a startling discovery: by placing a metal screen between the glowing filament and the metal strip (which by now had taken the form of a plate for greater surface area), the stream of electrons flowing from filament to plate could be regulated by the application of a small voltage between the metal screen and the filament:

The DeForest "Audion" tube

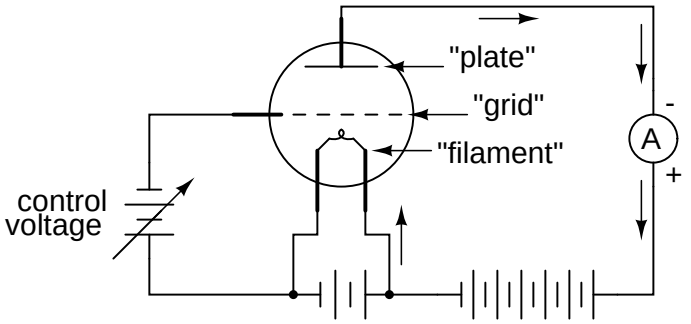


plate current can be controlled by the application of a small control voltage between the grid and filament!

De Forest called this metal screen between filament and plate a *grid*. It wasn't just the amount of voltage between grid and filament that controlled current from filament to plate, it was the polarity as well. A negative voltage applied to the grid with respect to the filament would tend to choke off the natural flow of electrons, whereas a positive voltage would tend to enhance the flow. Although there was some amount of current through the grid, it was very small; much smaller than the current through the plate.

Perhaps most importantly was his discovery that the small amounts of grid voltage and grid current were having large effects on the amount of plate voltage (with respect to the filament) and plate current. In adding the grid to Fleming's "valve," De Forest had made the valve adjustable: it now functioned as an *amplifying* device, whereby a small electrical signal could take control over a larger electrical quantity.

The closest semiconductor equivalent to the Audion tube, and to all of its more modern tube equivalents, is an n-channel D-type MOSFET. It is a voltage-controlled device with a large current gain.

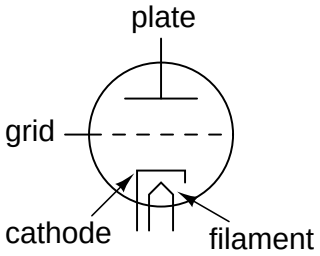
Calling his invention the "Audion," he vigorously applied it to the development of communications technology. In 1912 he sold the rights to his Audion tube as a telephone signal amplifier to the American Telephone and Telegraph Company (AT and T), which made long-distance telephone communication practical. In the following year he demonstrated the use of an Audion tube for generating radio-frequency AC signals. In 1915 he achieved the remarkable feat of broadcasting voice signals via radio from Arlington, Virginia to Paris, and in 1916 inaugurated the first radio news broadcast. Such accomplishments earned De Forest the title "Father of Radio" in America.

13.3 The triode

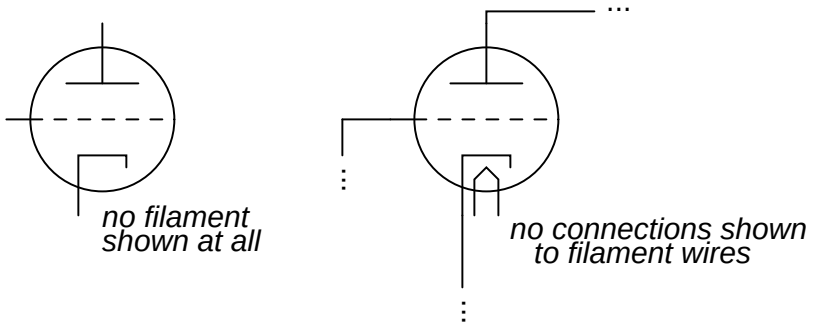
De Forest's Audion tube came to be known as the *triode* tube, because it had three elements: filament, grid, and plate (just as the "di" in the name *diode* refers to two elements, filament and plate). Later developments in diode tube technology led to the refinement of the electron emitter: instead of using the filament directly as the emissive element, another metal strip called the *cathode* could be heated by the filament.

This refinement was necessary in order to avoid some undesired effects of an incandescent filament as an electron emitter. First, a filament experiences a voltage drop along its length, as current overcomes the resistance of the filament material and dissipates heat energy. This meant that the voltage potential between different points along the length of the filament wire and other elements in the tube would not be constant. For this and similar reasons, alternating current used as a power source for heating the filament wire would tend to introduce unwanted AC "noise" in the rest of the tube circuit. Furthermore, the surface area of a thin filament was limited at best, and limited surface area on the electron emitting element tends to place a corresponding limit on the tube's current-carrying capacity.

The cathode was a thin metal cylinder fitting snugly over the twisted wire of the filament. The cathode cylinder would be heated by the filament wire enough to freely emit electrons, without the undesirable side effects of actually carrying the heating current as the filament wire had to. The tube symbol for a triode with an indirectly-heated cathode looks like this:

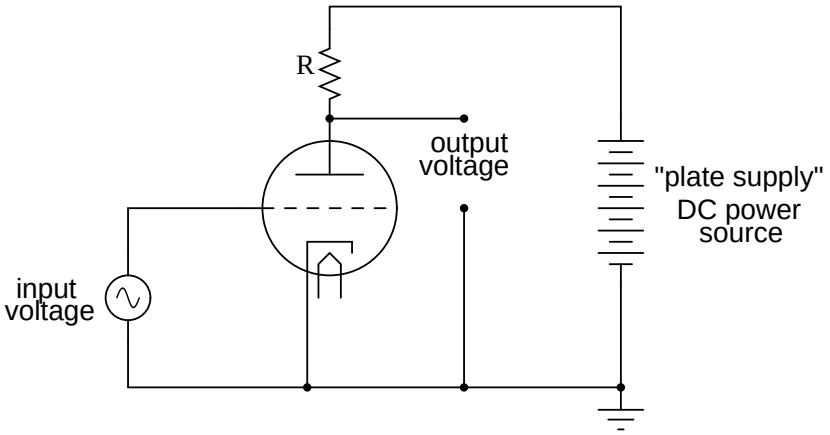


Since the filament is necessary for all but a few types of vacuum tubes, it is often omitted in the symbol for simplicity, or it may be included in the drawing but with no power connections drawn to it:



A simple triode circuit is shown to illustrate its basic operation as an amplifier:

Triode amplifier circuit



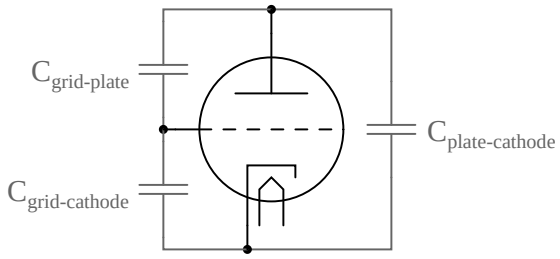
The low-voltage AC signal connected between the grid and cathode alternately suppresses, then enhances the electron flow between cathode and plate. This causes a change in voltage on the output of the circuit (between plate and cathode). The AC voltage and current magnitudes on the tube's grid are generally quite small compared with the variation of voltage and current in the plate circuit. Thus, the triode functions as an amplifier of the incoming AC signal

(taking high-voltage, high-current DC power supplied from the large DC source on the right and "throttling" it by means of the tube's controlled conductivity).

In the triode, the amount of current from cathode to plate (the "controlled" current is a function both of grid-to-cathode voltage (the controlling signal) and the plate-to-cathode voltage (the electromotive force available to push electrons through the vacuum). Unfortunately, neither of these independent variables have a purely linear effect on the amount of current through the device (often referred to simply as the "plate current"). That is, triode current does not necessarily respond in a direct, proportional manner to the voltages applied.

In this particular amplifier circuit the nonlinearities are compounded, as plate voltage (with respect to cathode) changes along with the grid voltage (also with respect to cathode) as plate current is throttled by the tube. The result will be an output voltage waveform that doesn't precisely resemble the waveform of the input voltage. In other words, the quirkiness of the triode tube and the dynamics of this particular circuit will *distort* the waveshape. If we really wanted to get complex about how we stated this, we could say that the tube introduces *harmonics* by failing to exactly reproduce the input waveform.

Another problem with triode behavior is that of stray capacitance. Remember that any time we have two conductive surfaces separated by an insulating medium, a capacitor will be formed. Any voltage between those two conductive surfaces will generate an electric field within that insulating region, potentially storing energy and introducing reactance into a circuit. Such is the case with the triode, most problematically between the grid and the plate. It is as if there were tiny capacitors connected between the pairs of elements in the tube:



Now, this stray capacitance is quite small, and the reactive impedances usually high. Usually, that is, unless radio frequencies are being dealt with. As we saw with De Forest's Audion tube, radio was probably the prime application for this new technology, so these "tiny" capacitances became more than just a potential problem. Another refinement in tube technology was necessary to overcome the limitations of the triode.

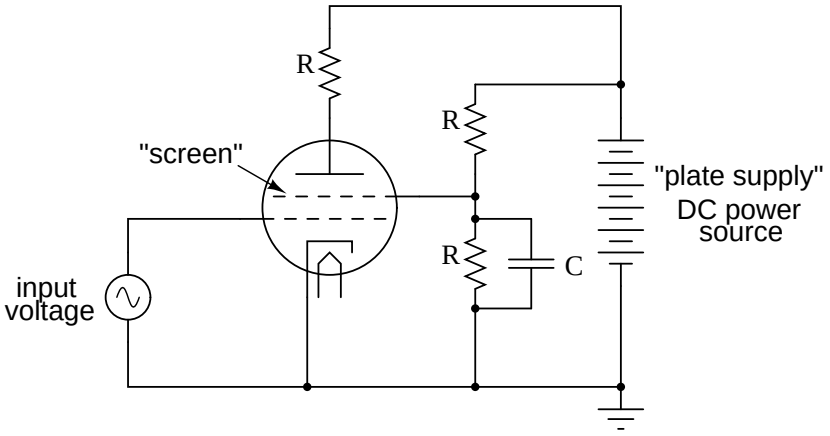
13.4 The tetrode

As the name suggests, the *tetrode* tube contained four elements: cathode (with the implicit filament, or "heater"), grid, plate, and a new element called the *screen*. Similar in construction to the grid, the screen was a wire mesh or coil positioned between the grid and plate, connected to a source of positive DC potential (with respect to the cathode, as usual) equal to a fraction of the plate voltage. When connected to ground through an external capacitor, the screen had the effect of electrostatically shielding the grid from the plate. Without the screen, the

capacitive linking between the plate and the grid could cause significant signal feedback at high frequencies, resulting in unwanted oscillations.

The screen, being of less surface area and lower positive potential than the plate, didn't attract many of the electrons passing through the grid from the cathode, so the vast majority of electrons in the tube still flew by the screen to be collected by the plate:

Tetrode amplifier circuit



With a constant DC screen voltage, electron flow from cathode to plate became almost exclusively dependent upon grid voltage, meaning the plate voltage could vary over a wide range with little effect on plate current. This made for more stable gains in amplifier circuits, and better linearity for more accurate reproduction of the input signal waveform.

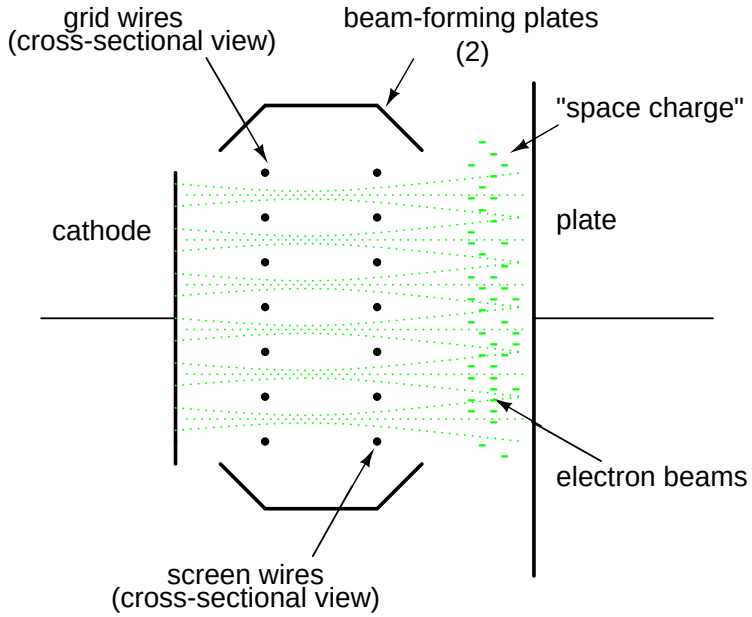
Despite the advantages realized by the addition of a screen, there were some disadvantages as well. The most significant disadvantage was related to something known as *secondary emission*. When electrons from the cathode strike the plate at high velocity, they can cause free electrons to be jarred loose from atoms in the metal of the plate. These electrons, knocked off the plate by the impact of the cathode electrons, are said to be "secondarily emitted." In a triode tube, secondary emission is not that great a problem, but in a tetrode with a positively-charged screen grid in close proximity, these secondary electrons will be attracted to the screen rather than the plate from which they came, resulting in a loss of plate current. Less plate current means less gain for the amplifier, which is not good.

Two different strategies were developed to address this problem of the tetrode tube: *beam power* tubes and *pentodes*. Both solutions resulted in new tube designs with approximately the same electrical characteristics.

13.5 Beam power tubes

In the beam power tube, the basic four-element structure of the tetrode was maintained, but the grid and screen wires were carefully arranged along with a pair of auxiliary plates to create an interesting effect: focused beams or "sheets" of electrons traveling from cathode to plate. These electron beams formed a stationary "cloud" of electrons between the screen and plate

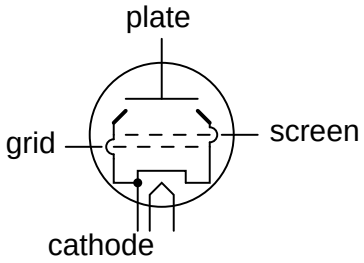
(called a ”space charge”) which acted to repel secondary electrons emitted from the plate back to the plate. A set of ”beam-forming” plates, each connected to the cathode, were added to help maintain proper electron beam focus. Grid and screen wire coils were arranged in such a way that each turn or wrap of the screen fell directly behind a wrap of the grid, which placed the screen wires in the ”shadow” formed by the grid. This precise alignment enabled the screen to still perform its shielding function with minimal interference to the passage of electrons from cathode to plate.



This resulted in lower screen current (and more plate current!) than an ordinary tetrode tube, with little added expense to the construction of the tube.

Beam power tetrodes were often distinguished from their non-beam counterparts by a different schematic symbol, showing the beam-forming plates:

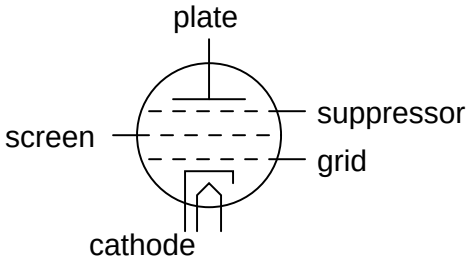
The "Beam power" tetrode tube



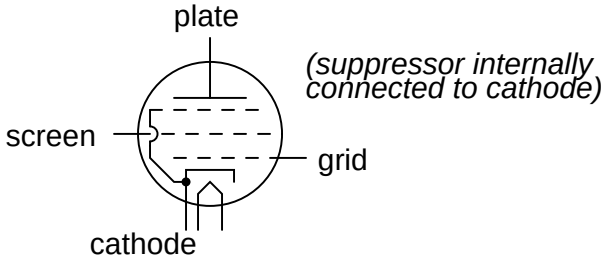
13.6 The pentode

Another strategy for addressing the problem of secondary electrons being attracted by the screen was the addition of a fifth wire element to the tube structure: a *suppressor*. These five-element tubes were naturally called *pentodes*.

The pentode tube



The suppressor was another wire coil or mesh situated between the screen and the plate, usually connected directly to ground potential. In some pentode tube designs, the suppressor was internally connected to the cathode so as to minimize the number of connection pins having to penetrate the tube envelope:



The suppressor's job was to repel any secondarily emitted electrons back to the plate: a structural equivalent of the beam power tube's space charge. This, of course, increased plate current and decreased screen current, resulting in better gain and overall performance. In some instances it allowed for greater operating plate voltage as well.

13.7 Combination tubes

Similar in thought to the idea of the integrated circuit, tube designers tried integrating different tube functions into single tube envelopes to reduce space requirements in more modern tube-type electronic equipment. A common combination seen within a single glass shell was two either diodes or two triodes. The idea of fitting pairs of diodes inside a single envelope makes a lot of sense in light of power supply full-wave rectifier designs, always requiring multiple diodes.

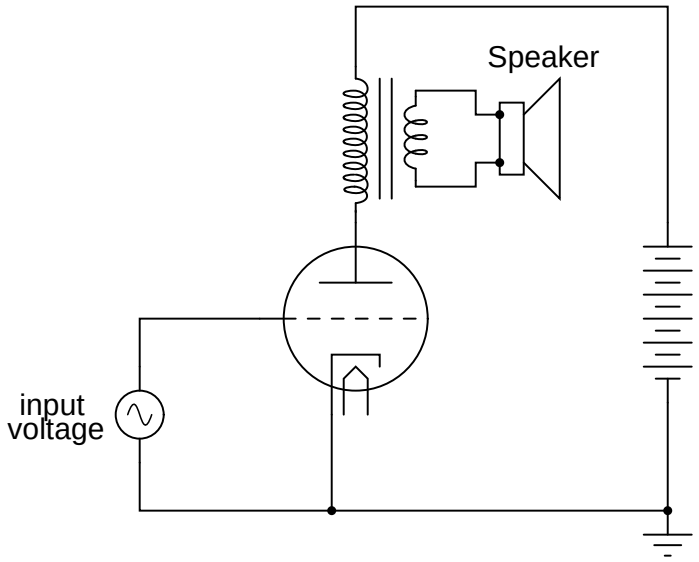
Of course, it would have been quite impossible to combine thousands of tube elements into a single tube envelope the way that thousands of transistors can be etched onto a single piece

of silicon, but engineers still did their best to push the limits of tube miniaturization and consolidation. Some of these tubes, whimsically called *compactrons*, held four or more complete tube elements within a single envelope.

Sometimes the functions of two different tubes could be integrated into a single, combination tube in a way that simply worked more elegantly than two tubes ever could. An example of this was the *pentagrid converter*, more generally called a *heptode*, used in some superheterodyne radio designs. These tubes contained seven elements: 5 grids plus a cathode and a plate. Two of the grids were normally reserved for signal input, the other three relegated to screening and suppression (performance-enhancing) functions. Combining the superheterodyne functions of oscillator and signal mixer together in one tube, the signal coupling between these two stages was intrinsic. Rather than having separate oscillator and mixer circuits, the oscillator creating an AC voltage and the mixer "mixing" that voltage with another signal, the pentagrid converter's oscillator section created an electron stream that oscillated in intensity which then directly passed through another grid for "mixing" with another signal.

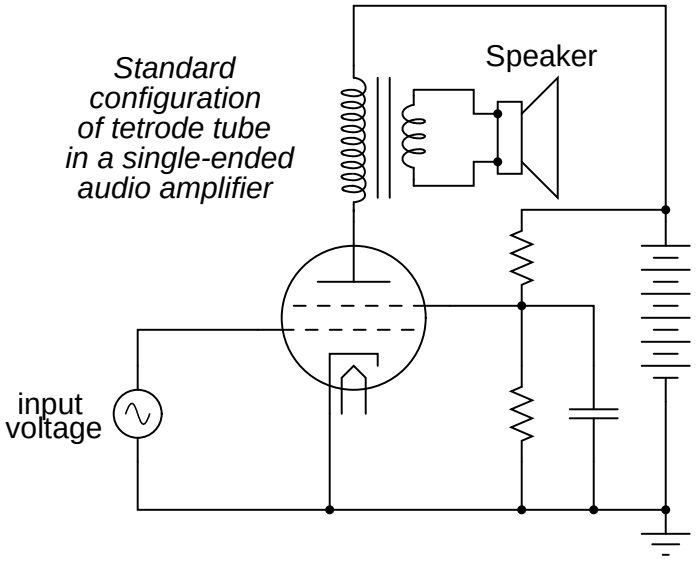
This same tube was sometimes used in a different way: by applying a DC voltage to one of the control grids, the gain of the tube could be changed for a signal impressed on the other control grid. This was known as *variable-mu* operation, because the "mu" (μ) of the tube (its amplification factor, measured as a ratio of plate-to-cathode voltage change over grid-to-cathode voltage change with a constant plate current) could be altered at will by a DC control voltage signal.

Enterprising electronics engineers also discovered ways to exploit such multi-variable capabilities of "lesser" tubes such as tetrodes and pentodes. One such way was the so-called *ultralinear* audio power amplifier, invented by a pair of engineers named Hafler and Keroes, utilizing a tetrode tube in combination with a "tapped" output transformer to provide substantial improvements in amplifier linearity (decreases in distortion levels). Consider a "single-ended" triode tube amplifier with an output transformer coupling power to the speaker:

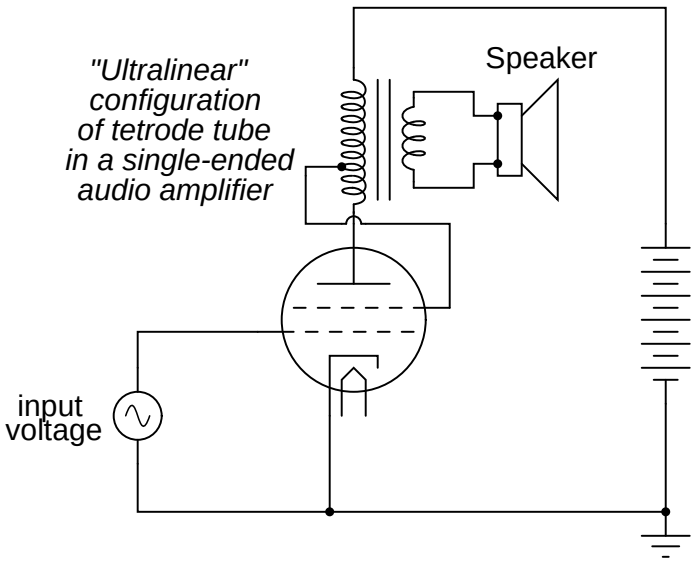


If we substitute a tetrode for a triode in this circuit, we will see improvements in circuit gain

resulting from the electrostatic shielding offered by the screen, preventing unwanted feedback between the plate and control grid:



However, the tetrode's screen may be used for functions other than merely shielding the grid from the plate. It can also be used as another control element, like the grid itself. If a "tap" is made on the transformer's primary winding, and this tap connected to the screen, the screen will receive a voltage that varies with the signal being amplified (feedback). More specifically, the feedback signal is proportional to the rate-of-change of magnetic flux in the transformer core ($d\Phi/dt$), thus improving the amplifier's ability to reproduce the input signal waveform at the speaker terminals and not just in the primary winding of the transformer:

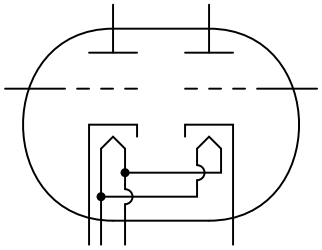


This signal feedback results in significant improvements in amplifier linearity (and consequently, distortion), so long as precautions are taken against "overpowering" the screen with too great a positive voltage with respect to the cathode. As a concept, the ultralinear (screen-feedback) design demonstrates the flexibility of operation granted by multiple grid-elements inside a single tube: a capability rarely matched by semiconductor components.

Some tube designs combined multiple tube functions in a most economic way: dual plates with a single cathode, the currents for each of the plates controlled by separate sets of control grids. Common examples of these tubes were *triode-heptode* and *triode-hexode* tubes (a hexode tube is a tube with four grids, one cathode, and one plate).

Other tube designs simply incorporated separate tube structures inside a single glass envelope for greater economy. Dual diode (rectifier) tubes were quite common, as were dual triode tubes, especially when the power dissipation of each tube was relatively low.

Dual triode tube



The 12AX7 and 12AU7 models are common examples of dual-triode tubes, both of low-power rating. The 12AX7 is especially common as a preamplifier tube in electric guitar amplifier circuits.

13.8 Tube parameters

For bipolar junction transistors, the fundamental measure of amplification is the Beta ratio (β), defined as the ratio of collector current to base current (I_C/I_B). Other transistor characteristics such as junction resistance, which in some amplifier circuits may impact performance as much as β, are quantified for the benefit of circuit analysis. Electron tubes are no different, their performance characteristics having been explored and quantified long ago by electrical engineers.

Before we can speak meaningfully on these characteristics, we must define several mathematical variables used for expressing common voltage, current, and resistance measurements as well as some of the more complex quantities:

μ = amplification factor, pronounced "*mu*" (unitless)

g_m = mutual conductance, in siemens

E_p = plate-to-cathode voltage

E_g = grid-to-cathode voltage

I_p = plate current

I_k = cathode current

E_s = input signal voltage

r_p = dynamic plate resistance, in ohms

Δ = delta, the Greek symbol for *change*

The two most basic measures of an amplifying tube's characteristics are its amplification factor (μ) and its mutual conductance (g_m), also known as *transconductance*. Transconductance is defined here just the same as it is for field-effect transistors, another category of voltage-controlled devices. Here are the two equations defining each of these performance characteristics:

$$\mu = \frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta E_g} \quad \text{with constant } I_p \text{ (plate current)}$$

$$g_m = \frac{\Delta I_p}{\Delta E_g} \quad \text{with constant } E_p \text{ (plate voltage)}$$

Another important, though more abstract, measure of tube performance is its *plate resistance*. This is the measurement of plate voltage change over plate current change for a constant value of grid voltage. In other words, this is an expression of how much the tube acts like a resistor for any given amount of grid voltage, analogous to the operation of a JFET in its ohmic mode:

$$r_p = \frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta I_p} \quad \text{with constant } E_g \text{ (grid voltage)}$$

The astute reader will notice that plate resistance may be determined by dividing the amplification factor by the transconductance:

$$\mu = \frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta E_g} \qquad g_m = \frac{\Delta I_p}{\Delta E_g}$$

. . . dividing μ by g_m . . .

$$r_p = \frac{\frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta E_g}}{\frac{\Delta I_p}{\Delta E_g}}$$

$$r_p = \frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta E_g} \frac{\Delta E_g}{\Delta I_p}$$

$$r_p = \frac{\Delta E_p}{\Delta I_p}$$

These three performance measures of tubes are subject to change from tube to tube (just as β ratios between two "identical" bipolar transistors are never precisely the same) and between different operating conditions. This variability is due partly to the unavoidable nonlinearities of electron tubes and partly due to how they are defined. Even supposing the existence of a perfectly linear tube, it will be impossible for all three of these measures to be constant over the allowable ranges of operation. Consider a tube that *perfectly* regulates current at any given amount of grid voltage (like a bipolar transistor with an absolutely constant β): that tube's plate resistance *must* vary with plate voltage, because plate current will not change even though plate voltage does.

Nevertheless, tubes were (and are) rated by these values at given operating conditions, and may have their characteristic curves published just like transistors.

13.9 Ionization (gas-filled) tubes

So far, we've explored tubes which are totally "evacuated" of all gas and vapor inside their glass envelopes, properly known as *vacuum tubes*. With the addition of certain gases or vapors, however, tubes take on significantly different characteristics, and are able to fulfill certain special roles in electronic circuits.

When a high enough voltage is applied across a distance occupied by a gas or vapor, or when that gas or vapor is heated sufficiently, the electrons of those gas molecules will be stripped away from their respective nuclei, creating a condition of *ionization*. Having freed the electrons from their electrostatic bonds to the atoms' nuclei, they are free to migrate in the form of a current, making the ionized gas a relatively good conductor of electricity. In this state, the gas is more properly referred to as a *plasma*.

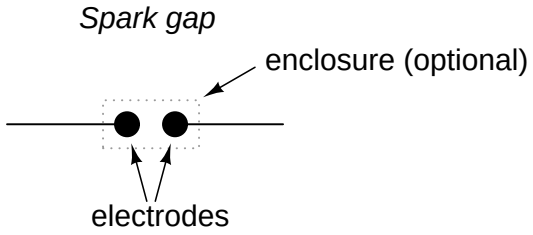
Ionized gas is not a perfect conductor. As such, the flow of electrons through ionized gas will tend to dissipate energy in the form of heat, thereby helping to keep the gas in a state

of ionization. The result of this is a tube that will begin to conduct under certain conditions, then tend to stay in a state of conduction until the applied voltage across the gas and/or the heat-generating current drops to a minimum level.

The astute observer will note that this is precisely the kind of behavior exhibited by a class of semiconductor devices called "thyristors," which tend to stay "on" once turned "on" and tend to stay "off" once turned "off." Gas-filled tubes, it can be said, manifest this same property of *hysteresis*.

Unlike their vacuum counterparts, ionization tubes were often manufactured with no filament (heater) at all. These were called *cold-cathode* tubes, with the heated versions designated as *hot-cathode* tubes. Whether or not the tube contained a source of heat obviously impacted the characteristics of a gas-filled tube, but not to the extent that lack of heat would impact the performance of a hard-vacuum tube.

The simplest type of ionization device is not necessarily a tube at all; rather, it is constructed of two electrodes separated by a gas-filled gap. Simply called a *spark gap*, the gap between the electrodes may be occupied by ambient air, other times a special gas, in which case the device must have a sealed envelope of some kind.

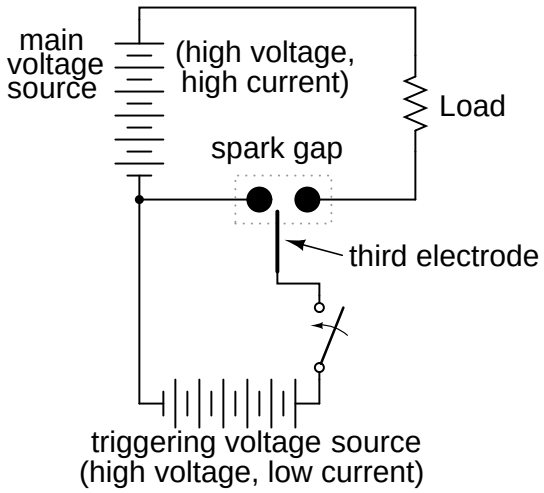


A prime application for spark gaps is in overvoltage protection. Engineered not to ionize, or "break down" (begin conducting), with normal system voltage applied across the electrodes, the spark gap's function is to conduct in the event of a significant increase in voltage. Once conducting, it will act as a heavy load, holding the system voltage down through its large current draw and subsequent voltage drop along conductors and other series impedances. In a properly engineered system, the spark gap will stop conducting ("extinguish") when the system voltage decreases to a normal level, well below the voltage required to initiate conduction.

One major caveat of spark gaps is their significantly finite life. The discharge generated by such a device can be quite violent, and as such will tend to deteriorate the surfaces of the electrodes through pitting and/or melting.

Spark gaps can be made to conduct on command by placing a third electrode (usually with a sharp edge or point) between the other two and applying a high voltage pulse between that electrode and one of the other electrodes. The pulse will create a small spark between the two electrodes, ionizing part of the pathway between the two large electrodes, and enabling conduction between them if the applied voltage is high enough:

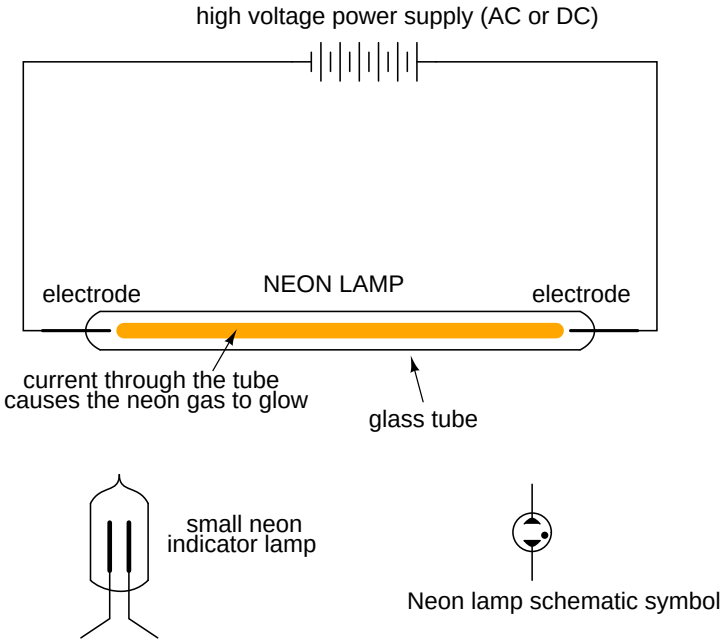
Triggered spark gap



Spark gaps of both the triggered and untriggered variety can be built to handle huge amounts of current, some even into the range of mega-amps (millions of amps)! Physical size is the primary limiting factor to the amount of current a spark gap can safely and reliably handle.

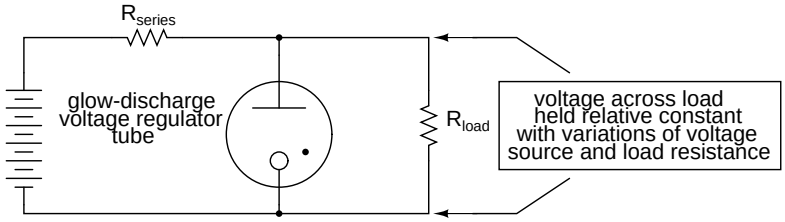
When the two main electrodes are placed in a sealed tube filled with a special gas, a *discharge tube* is formed. The most common type of discharge tube is the neon light, used popularly as a source of colorful illumination, the color of the light emitted being dependent on the type of gas filling the tube.

Construction of neon lamps closely resembles that of spark gaps, but the operational characteristics are quite different:



By controlling the spacing of the electrodes and the type of gas in the tube, neon lights can be made to conduct without drawing the excessive currents that spark gaps do. They still exhibit hysteresis in that it takes a higher voltage to initiate conduction than it does to make them "extinguish," and their resistance is definitely nonlinear (the more voltage applied across the tube, the more current, thus more heat, thus lower resistance). Given this nonlinear tendency, the voltage across a neon tube must not be allowed to exceed a certain limit, lest the tube be damaged by excessive temperatures.

This nonlinear tendency gives the neon tube an application other than colorful illumination: it can act somewhat like a zener diode, "clamping" the voltage across it by drawing more and more current if the voltage decreases. When used in this fashion, the tube is known as a *glow tube*, or *voltage-regulator tube*, and was a popular means of voltage regulation in the days of electron tube circuit design.



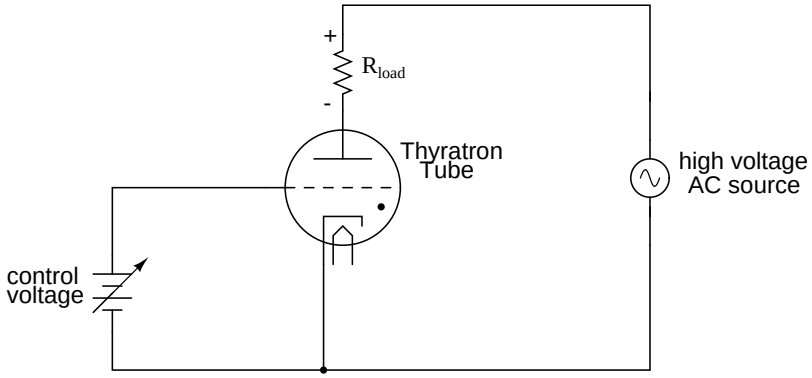
Please take note of the black dot found in the tube symbol shown above (and in the neon lamp symbol shown before that). That marker indicates the tube is gas-filled. It is a common marker used in all gas-filled tube symbols.

One example of a glow tube designed for voltage regulation was the VR-150, with a nominal regulating voltage of 150 volts. Its resistance throughout the allowable limits of current could

vary from 5 kΩ to 30 kΩ, a 6:1 span. Like zener diode regulator circuits of today, glow tube regulators could be coupled to amplifying tubes for better voltage regulation and higher load current ranges.

If a regular triode was filled with gas instead of a hard vacuum, it would manifest all the hysteresis and nonlinearity of other gas tubes with one major advantage: the amount of voltage applied between grid and cathode would determine the minimum plate-to cathode voltage necessary to initiate conduction. In essence, this tube was the equivalent of the semiconductor SCR (Silicon-Controlled Rectifier), and was called the *thyratron*.

(Simple) Thyratron control circuit



It should be noted that the schematic shown above is greatly simplified for most purposes and thyratron tube designs. Some thyratrons, for instance, required that the grid voltage switch polarity between their ”on” and ”off” states in order to properly work. Also, some thyratrons had more than one grid!

Thyratrons found use in much the same way as SCR’s find use today: controlling rectified AC to large loads such as motors. Thyratron tubes have been manufactured with different types of gas fillings for different characteristics: inert (chemically non-reactive) gas, hydrogen gas, and mercury (vaporized into a gas form when activated). Deuterium, a rare isotope of hydrogen, was used in some special applications requiring the switching of high voltages.

13.10 Display tubes

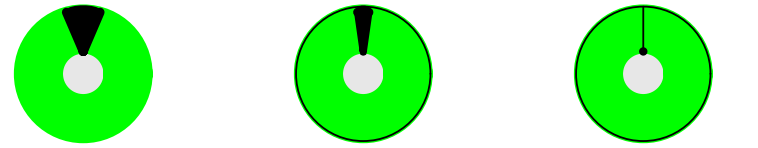
In addition to performing tasks of amplification and switching, tubes can be designed to serve as display devices.

Perhaps the best-known display tube is the *cathode ray tube*, or *CRT*. Originally invented as an instrument to study the behavior of ”cathode rays” (electrons) in a vacuum, these tubes developed into instruments useful in detecting voltage, then later as video projection devices with the advent of television. The main difference between CRTs used in oscilloscopes and CRTs used in televisions is that the oscilloscope variety exclusively use electrostatic (plate) deflection, while televisions use electromagnetic (coil) deflection. Plates function much better than coils over a wider range of signal frequencies, which is great for oscilloscopes but irrelevant for televisions, since a television electron beam sweeps vertically and horizontally at fixed

frequencies. Electromagnetic deflection coils are much preferred in television CRT construction because they do not have to penetrate the glass envelope of the tube, thus decreasing the production costs and increasing tube reliability.

An interesting ”cousin” to the CRT is the *Cat-Eye* or *Magic-Eye* indicator tube. Essentially, this tube is a voltage-measuring device with a display resembling a glowing green ring. Electrons emitted by the cathode of this tube impinge on a fluorescent screen, causing the green-colored light to be emitted. The shape of the glow produced by the fluorescent screen varies as the amount of voltage applied to a grid changes:

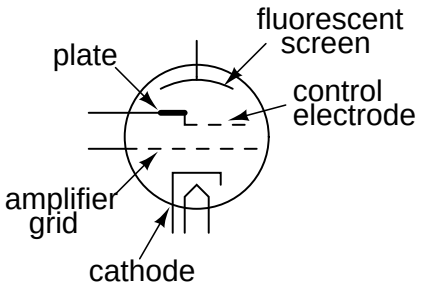
"Cat-Eye" indicator tube displays



The width of the shadow is directly determined by the potential difference between the control electrode and the fluorescent screen. The control electrode is a narrow rod placed between the cathode and the fluorescent screen. If that control electrode (rod) is significantly more negative than the fluorescent screen, it will deflect some electrons away from the that area of the screen. The area of the screen ”shadowed” by the control electrode will appear darker when there is a significant voltage difference between the two. When the control electrode and fluorescent screen are at equal potential (zero voltage between them), the shadowing effect will be minimal and the screen will be equally illuminated.

The schematic symbol for a ”cat-eye” tube looks something like this:

"Cat-Eye" or "Magic-Eye" indicator tube

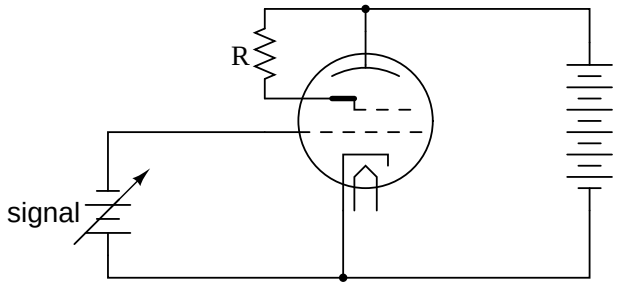


Here is a photograph of a cat-eye tube, showing the circular display region as well as the glass envelope, socket (black, at far end of tube), and some of its internal structure:

Normally, only the end of the tube would protrude from a hole in an instrument panel, so the user could view the circular, fluorescent screen.

In its simplest usage, a ”cat-eye” tube could be operated without the use of the amplifier grid. However, in order to make it more sensitive, the amplifier grid *is* used, and it is used like this:

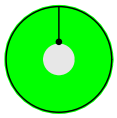
"Cat-Eye" indicator tube circuit



As the signal voltage increases, current through the tube is choked off. This decreases the voltage between the plate and the fluorescent screen, lessening the shadow effect (shadow narrows).

The cathode, amplifier grid, and plate act as a triode to create large changes in plate-to-cathode voltage for small changes in grid-to-cathode voltage. Because the control electrode is internally connected to the plate, it is electrically common to it and therefore possesses the same amount of voltage with respect to the cathode that the plate does. Thus, the large voltage changes induced on the plate due to small voltage changes on the amplifier grid end up causing large changes in the width of the shadow seen by whoever is viewing the tube.

Control electrode negative with respect to the fluorescent screen. This is caused by a positive amplifier grid voltage (with respect to the cathode).



No voltage between control electrode and flourescent screen. This is caused by a negative amplifier grid voltage (with respect to the cathode).

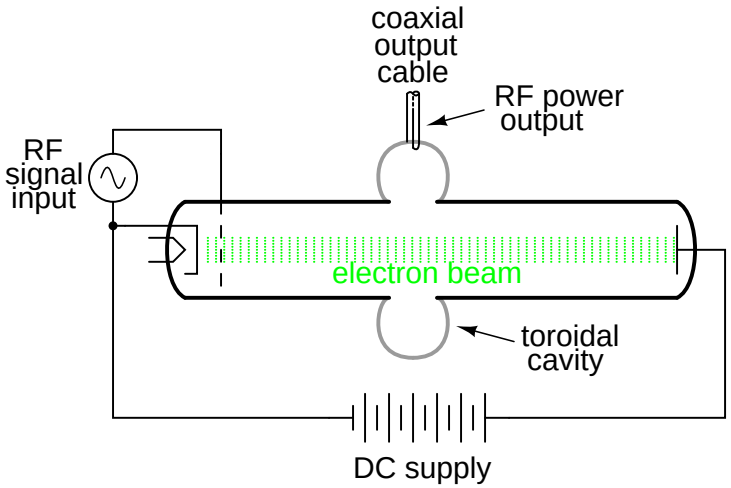
"Cat-eye" tubes were never accurate enough to be equipped with a graduated scale as is the case with CRT's and electromechanical meter movements, but they served well as null detectors in bridge circuits, and as signal strength indicators in radio tuning circuits. An unfortunate limitation to the "cat-eye" tube as a null detector was the fact that it was not directly capable of voltage indication in both polarities.

13.11 Microwave tubes

For extremely high-frequency applications (above 1 GHz), the interelectrode capacitances and transit-time delays of standard electron tube construction become prohibitive. However, there seems to be no end to the creative ways in which tubes may be constructed, and several high-frequency electron tube designs have been made to overcome these challenges.

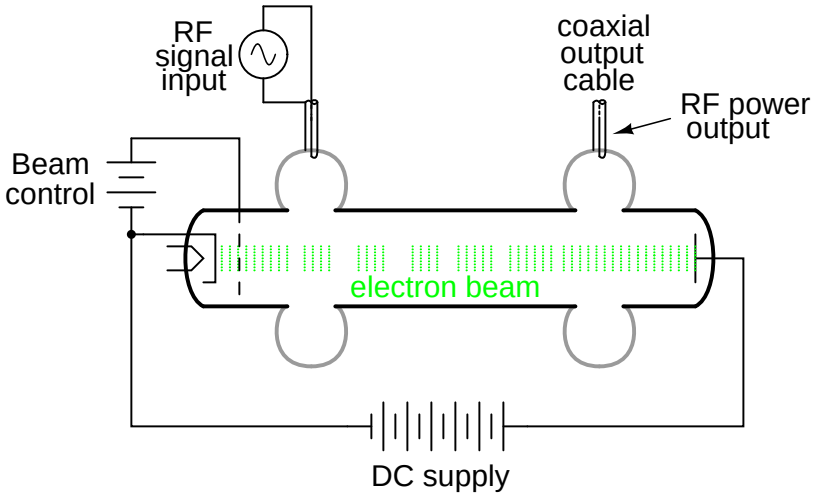
It was discovered in 1939 that a toroidal cavity made of conductive material called a *cavity resonator* surrounding an electron beam of oscillating intensity could extract power from the beam without actually intercepting the beam itself. The oscillating electric and magnetic fields associated with the beam "echoed" inside the cavity, in a manner similar to the sounds of traveling automobiles echoing in a roadside canyon, allowing radio-frequency energy to be transferred from the beam to a waveguide or coaxial cable connected to the resonator with a coupling loop. The tube was called an *inductive output tube*, or *IOT*:

The inductive output tube (IOT)



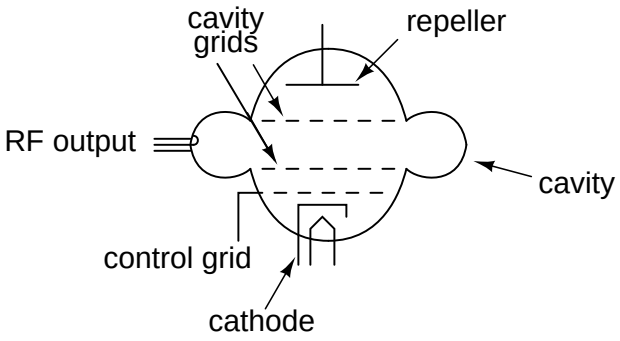
Two of the researchers instrumental in the initial development of the IOT, a pair of brothers named Sigurd and Russell Varian, added a second cavity resonator for signal input to the inductive output tube. This input resonator acted as a pair of inductive grids to alternately "bunch" and release packets of electrons down the drift space of the tube, so the electron beam would be composed of electrons traveling at different velocities. This "velocity modulation" of the beam translated into the same sort of amplitude variation at the output resonator, where energy was extracted from the beam. The Varian brothers called their invention a *klystron*.

The klystron tube



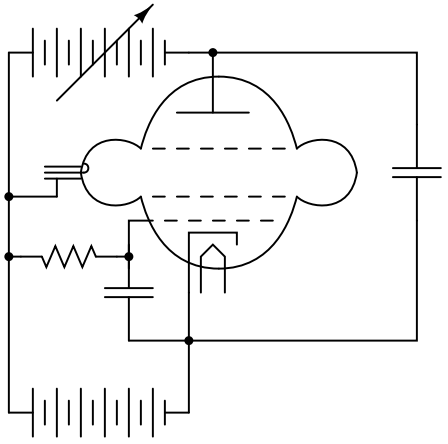
Another invention of the Varian brothers was the *reflex klystron* tube. In this tube, electrons emitted from the heated cathode travel through the cavity grids toward the repeller plate, then are repelled and returned back the way they came (hence the name *reflex*) through the cavity grids. Self-sustaining oscillations would develop in this tube, the frequency of which could be changed by adjusting the repeller voltage. Hence, this tube operated as a voltage-controlled oscillator.

The reflex klystron tube



As a voltage-controlled oscillator, reflex klystron tubes served commonly as ”local oscillators” for radar equipment and microwave receivers:

Reflex klystron tube used as a voltage-controlled oscillator

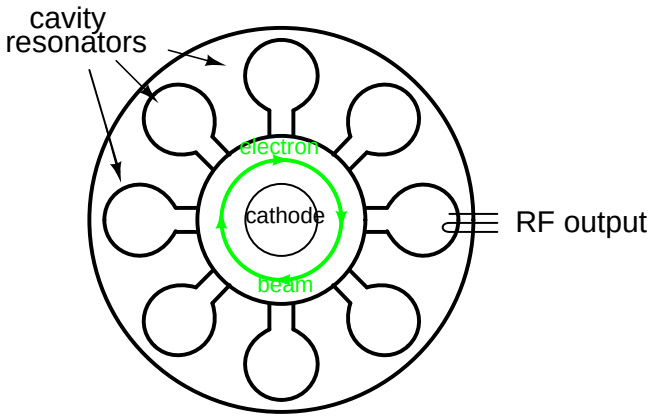


Initially developed as low-power devices whose output required further amplification for radio transmitter use, reflex klystron design was refined to the point where the tubes could serve as power devices in their own right. Reflex klystrons have since been superseded by semiconductor devices in the application of local oscillators, but amplification klystrons continue to find use in high-power, high-frequency radio transmitters and in scientific research applications.

One microwave tube performs its task so well and so cost-effectively that it continues to reign supreme in the competitive realm of consumer electronics: the magnetron tube. This device forms the heart of every microwave oven, generating several hundred watts of microwave RF energy used to heat food and beverages, and doing so under the most grueling conditions for a tube: powered on and off at random times and for random durations.

Magnetron tubes are representative of an entirely different kind of tube than the IOT and klystron. Whereas the latter tubes use a linear electron beam, the magnetron directs its electron beam in a circular pattern by means of a strong magnetic field:

The magnetron tube



Once again, cavity resonators are used as microwave-frequency ”tank circuits,” extracting energy from the passing electron beam inductively. Like all microwave-frequency devices using a cavity resonator, at least one of the resonator cavities is tapped with a *coupling loop*: a loop of wire magnetically coupling the coaxial cable to the resonant structure of the cavity, allowing RF power to be directed out of the tube to a load. In the case of the microwave oven, the output power is directed through a waveguide to the food or drink to be heated, the water molecules within acting as tiny load resistors, dissipating the electrical energy in the form of heat.

The magnet required for magnetron operation is not shown in the diagram. Magnetic flux runs perpendicular to the plane of the circular electron path. In other words, from the view of the tube shown in the diagram, you are looking straight at one of the magnetic poles.

13.12 Tubes versus Semiconductors

Devoting a whole chapter in a modern electronics text to the design and function of electron tubes may seem a bit strange, seeing as how semiconductor technology has all but obsoleted tubes in almost every application. However, there is merit in exploring tubes not just for historical purposes, but also for those niche applications that necessitate the qualifying phrase ”*almost* every application” in regard to semiconductor supremacy.

In some applications, electron tubes not only continue to see practical use, but perform their respective tasks better than any solid-state device yet invented. In some cases the performance and reliability of electron tube technology is *far* superior.

In the fields of high-power, high-speed circuit switching, specialized tubes such as hydrogen thyratrons and krytrons are able to switch far larger amounts of current, far faster than any semiconductor device designed to date. The thermal and temporal limits of semiconductor physics place limitations on switching ability that tubes – which do not operate on the same principles – are exempt from.

In high-power microwave transmitter applications, the excellent thermal tolerance of tubes alone secures their dominance over semiconductors. Electron conduction through semiconducting materials is greatly impacted by temperature. Electron conduction through a vacuum

is not. As a consequence, the practical thermal limits of semiconductor devices are rather low compared to that of tubes. Being able to operate tubes at far greater temperatures than equivalent semiconductor devices allows tubes to dissipate more thermal energy for a given amount of dissipation area, which makes them smaller and lighter in continuous high power applications.

Another decided advantage of tubes over semiconductor components in high-power applications is their rebuildability. When a large tube fails, it may be disassembled and repaired at far lower cost than the purchase price of a new tube. When a semiconductor component fails, large or small, there is generally no means of repair.

The following photograph shows the front panel of a 1960's vintage 5 kW AM radio transmitter. One of two "Eimac" brand power tubes can be seen in a recessed area, behind the glass door. According to the station engineer who gave the facility tour, the rebuild cost for such a tube is only $800: quite inexpensive compared to the cost of a new tube, and still quite reasonable in contrast to the price of a new, comparable semiconductor component!

Tubes, being less complex in their manufacture than semiconductor components, are potentially cheaper to produce as well, although the huge volume of semiconductor device production in the world greatly offsets this theoretical advantage. Semiconductor manufacture is quite complex, involving many dangerous chemical substances and necessitating super-clean assembly environments. Tubes are essentially nothing more than glass and metal, with a vacuum seal. Physical tolerances are "loose" enough to permit hand-assembly of vacuum tubes, and the assembly work need not be done in a "clean room" environment as is necessary for semiconductor manufacture.

One modern area where electron tubes enjoy supremacy over semiconductor components is in the professional and high-end audio amplifier markets, although this is partially due to musical culture. Many professional guitar players, for example, prefer tube amplifiers over transistor amplifiers because of the specific distortion produced by tube circuits. An electric guitar amplifier is designed to *produce distortion* rather than avoid distortion as is the case with audio-reproduction amplifiers (this is why an electric guitar sounds so much different than an acoustical guitar), and the type of distortion produced by an amplifier is as much a matter of personal taste as it is technical measurement. Since rock music in particular was

born with guitarists playing tube-amplifier equipment, there is a significant level of "tube appeal" inherent to the genre itself, and this appeal shows itself in the continuing demand for "tubed" guitar amplifiers among rock guitarists.

As an illustration of the attitude among some guitarists, consider the following quote taken from the technical glossary page of a tube-amplifier website which will remain nameless:

> **Solid State:** *A component that has been specifically designed to make a guitar amplifier sound bad. Compared to tubes, these devices can have a very long lifespan, which guarantees that your amplifier will retain its thin, lifeless, and buzzy sound for a long time to come.*

In the area of audio reproduction amplifiers (music studio amplifiers and home entertainment amplifiers), it is best for an amplifier to reproduce the musical signal with as *little* distortion as possible. Paradoxically, in contrast to the guitar amplifier market where distortion is a design goal, high-end audio is another area where tube amplifiers enjoy continuing consumer demand. Though one might suppose the objective, technical requirement of low distortion would eliminate any subjective bias on the part of audiophiles, one would be very wrong. The market for high-end "tubed" amplifier equipment is quite volatile, changing rapidly with trends and fads, driven by highly subjective claims of "magical" sound from audio system reviewers and salespeople. As in the electric guitar world, there is no small measure of cult-like devotion to tube amplifiers among some quarters of the audiophile world. As an example of this irrationality, consider the design of many ultra-high-end amplifiers, with chassis built to display the working tubes openly, even though this physical exposure of the tubes obviously enhances the undesirable effect of *microphonics* (changes in tube performance as a result of sound waves vibrating the tube structure).

Having said this, though, there is a wealth of technical literature contrasting tubes against semiconductors for audio power amplifier use, especially in the area of distortion analysis. More than a few competent electrical engineers prefer tube amplifier designs over transistors, and are able to produce experimental evidence in support of their choice. The primary difficulty in quantifying audio system performance is the uncertain response of human hearing. *All* amplifiers distort their input signal to some degree, especially when overloaded, so the question is which type of amplifier design distorts the least. However, since human hearing is very nonlinear, people do not interpret all types of acoustic distortion equally, and so some amplifiers will sound "better" than others even if a quantitative distortion analysis with electronic instruments indicates similar distortion levels. To determine what type of audio amplifier will distort a musical signal "the least," we must regard the human ear and brain as part of the whole acoustical system. Since no complete model yet exists for human auditory response, objective assessment is difficult at best. However, some research indicates that the characteristic distortion of tube amplifier circuits (especially when overloaded) is less objectionable than distortion produced by transistors.

Tubes also possess the distinct advantage of low "drift" over a wide range of operating conditions. Unlike semiconductor components, whose barrier voltages, β ratios, bulk resistances, and junction capacitances may change substantially with changes in device temperature and/or other operating conditions, the fundamental characteristics of a vacuum tube remain nearly constant over a wide range in operating conditions, because those characteristics are determined primarily by the physical dimensions of the tube's structural elements

(cathode, grid(s), and plate) rather than the interactions of subatomic particles in a crystalline lattice.

This is one of the major reasons solid-state amplifier designers typically engineer their circuits to maximize power-efficiency even when it compromises distortion performance, because a power-inefficient amplifier dissipates a lot of energy in the form of waste heat, and transistor characteristics tend to change substantially with temperature. Temperature-induced "drift" makes it difficult to stabilize "Q" points and other important performance-related measures in an amplifier circuit. Unfortunately, power efficiency and low distortion seem to be mutually exclusive design goals.

For example, class A audio amplifier circuits typically exhibit very low distortion levels, but are very wasteful of power, meaning that it would be difficult to engineer a solid-state class A amplifier of any substantial power rating due to the consequent drift of transistor characteristics. Thus, most solid-state audio amplifier designers choose class B circuit configurations for greater efficiency, even though class B designs are notorious for producing a type of distortion known as *crossover distortion*. However, with tubes it is easy to design a stable class A audio amplifier circuit because tubes are not as adversely affected by the changes in temperature experienced in a such a power-inefficient circuit configuration.

Tube performance parameters, though, tend to "drift" more than semiconductor devices when measured over long periods of time (years). One major mechanism of tube "aging" appears to be vacuum leaks: when air enters the inside of a vacuum tube, its electrical characteristics become irreversibly altered. This same phenomenon is a major cause of tube mortality, or why tubes typically do not last as long as their respective solid-state counterparts. When tube vacuum is maintained at a high level, though, excellent performance and life is possible. An example of this is a klystron tube (used to produce the high-frequency radio waves used in a radar system) that lasted for 240,000 hours of operation (cited by Robert S. Symons of Litton Electron Devices Division in his informative paper, "Tubes: Still vital after all these years," printed in the April 1998 issue of *IEEE Spectrum* magazine).

If nothing else, the tension between audiophiles over tubes versus semiconductors has spurred a remarkable degree of experimentation and technical innovation, serving as an excellent resource for those wishing to educate themselves on amplifier theory. Taking a wider view, the versatility of electron tube technology (different physical configurations, multiple control grids) hints at the potential for circuit designs of far greater variety than is possible using semiconductors. For this and other reasons, electron tubes will never be "obsolete," but will continue to serve in niche roles, and to foster innovation for those electronics engineers, inventors, and hobbyists who are unwilling to let their minds by stifled by convention.

Appendix A-1

ABOUT THIS BOOK

A-1.1 Purpose

They say that necessity is the mother of invention. At least in the case of this book, that adage is true. As an industrial electronics instructor, I was forced to use a sub-standard textbook during my first year of teaching. My students were daily frustrated with the many typographical errors and obscure explanations in this book, having spent much time at home struggling to comprehend the material within. Worse yet were the many incorrect answers in the back of the book to selected problems. Adding insult to injury was the $100+ price.

Contacting the publisher proved to be an exercise in futility. Even though the particular text I was using had been in print and in popular use for a couple of years, they claimed my complaint was the first they'd ever heard. My request to review the draft for the next edition of their book was met with disinterest on their part, and I resolved to find an alternative text.

Finding a suitable alternative was more difficult than I had imagined. Sure, there were plenty of texts in print, but the really good books seemed a bit too heavy on the math and the less intimidating books omitted a lot of information I felt was important. Some of the best books were out of print, and those that were still being printed were quite expensive.

It was out of frustration that I compiled *Lessons in Electric Circuits* from notes and ideas I had been collecting for years. My primary goal was to put readable, high-quality information into the hands of my students, but a secondary goal was to make the book as affordable as possible. Over the years, I had experienced the benefit of receiving free instruction and encouragement in my pursuit of learning electronics from many people, including several teachers of mine in elementary and high school. Their selfless assistance played a key role in my own studies, paving the way for a rewarding career and fascinating hobby. If only I could extend the gift of their help by giving to other people what they gave to me . . .

So, I decided to make the book freely available. More than that, I decided to make it "open," following the same development model used in the making of free software (most notably the various UNIX utilities released by the Free Software Foundation, and the Linux operating

system, whose fame is growing even as I write). The goal was to copyright the text – so as to protect my authorship – but expressly allow anyone to distribute and/or modify the text to suit their own needs with a minimum of legal encumbrance. This willful and formal revoking of standard distribution limitations under copyright is whimsically termed *copyleft*. Anyone can "copyleft" their creative work simply by appending a notice to that effect on their work, but several Licenses already exist, covering the fine legal points in great detail.

The first such License I applied to my work was the GPL – General Public License – of the Free Software Foundation (GNU). The GPL, however, is intended to copyleft works of computer software, and although its introductory language is broad enough to cover works of text, its wording is not as clear as it could be for that application. When other, less specific copyleft Licenses began appearing within the free software community, I chose one of them (the Design Science License, or DSL) as the official notice for my project.

In "copylefting" this text, I guaranteed that no instructor would be limited by a text insufficient for their needs, as I had been with error-ridden textbooks from major publishers. I'm sure this book in its initial form will not satisfy everyone, but anyone has the freedom to change it, leveraging my efforts to suit variant and individual requirements. For the beginning student of electronics, learn what you can from this book, editing it as you feel necessary if you come across a useful piece of information. Then, if you pass it on to someone else, you will be giving them something better than what you received. For the instructor or electronics professional, feel free to use this as a reference manual, adding or editing to your heart's content. The only "catch" is this: if you plan to distribute your modified version of this text, you must give credit where credit is due (to me, the original author, and anyone else whose modifications are contained in your version), and you must ensure that whoever you give the text to is aware of their freedom to similarly share and edit the text. The next chapter covers this process in more detail.

It must be mentioned that although I strive to maintain technical accuracy in all of this book's content, the subject matter is broad and harbors many potential dangers. Electricity maims and kills without provocation, and deserves the utmost respect. I strongly encourage experimentation on the part of the reader, but only with circuits powered by small batteries where there is no risk of electric shock, fire, explosion, etc. High-power electric circuits should be left to the care of trained professionals! The Design Science License clearly states that neither I nor any contributors to this book bear any liability for what is done with its contents.

A-1.2 The use of SPICE

One of the best ways to learn how things work is to follow the inductive approach: to observe specific instances of things working and derive general conclusions from those observations. In science education, labwork is the traditionally accepted venue for this type of learning, although in many cases labs are designed by educators to reinforce principles previously learned through lecture or textbook reading, rather than to allow the student to learn on their own through a truly exploratory process.

Having taught myself most of the electronics that I know, I appreciate the sense of frustration students may have in teaching themselves from books. Although electronic components are typically inexpensive, not everyone has the means or opportunity to set up a laboratory in their own homes, and when things go wrong there's no one to ask for help. Most textbooks

seem to approach the task of education from a deductive perspective: tell the student how things are supposed to work, then apply those principles to specific instances that the student may or may not be able to explore by themselves. The inductive approach, as useful as it is, is hard to find in the pages of a book.

However, textbooks don't have to be this way. I discovered this when I started to learn a computer program called SPICE. It is a text-based piece of software intended to model circuits and provide analyses of voltage, current, frequency, etc. Although nothing is quite as good as building real circuits to gain knowledge in electronics, computer simulation is an excellent alternative. In learning how to use this powerful tool, I made a discovery: SPICE could be used within a textbook to present circuit simulations to allow students to "observe" the phenomena for themselves. This way, the readers could learn the concepts inductively (by interpreting SPICE's output) as well as deductively (by interpreting my explanations). Furthermore, in seeing SPICE used over and over again, they should be able to understand how to use it themselves, providing a perfectly safe means of experimentation on their own computers with circuit simulations of their own design.

Another advantage to including computer analyses in a textbook is the empirical verification it adds to the concepts presented. Without demonstrations, the reader is left to take the author's statements on faith, trusting that what has been written is indeed accurate. The problem with faith, of course, is that it is only as good as the authority in which it is placed and the accuracy of interpretation through which it is understood. Authors, like all human beings, are liable to err and/or communicate poorly. With demonstrations, however, the reader can immediately see for themselves that what the author describes is indeed true. Demonstrations also serve to clarify the meaning of the text with concrete examples.

SPICE is introduced early in volume I (DC) of this book series, and hopefully in a gentle enough way that it doesn't create confusion. For those wishing to learn more, a chapter in the Reference volume (volume V) contains an overview of SPICE with many example circuits. There may be more flashy (graphic) circuit simulation programs in existence, but SPICE is free, a virtue complementing the charitable philosophy of this book very nicely.

A-1.3 Acknowledgements

First, I wish to thank my wife, whose patience during those many and long evenings (and weekends!) of typing has been extraordinary.

I also wish to thank those whose open-source software development efforts have made this endeavor all the more affordable and pleasurable. The following is a list of various free computer software used to make this book, and the respective programmers:

- *GNU/Linux* Operating System – Linus Torvalds, Richard Stallman, and a host of others too numerous to mention.
- *Vim* text editor – Bram Moolenaar and others.
- *Xcircuit* drafting program – Tim Edwards.
- *SPICE* circuit simulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- TEX text processing system – Donald Knuth and others.

- *Texinfo* document formatting system – Free Software Foundation.
- LaTeX document formatting system – Leslie Lamport and others.
- *Gimp* image manipulation program – too many contributors to mention.

Appreciation is also extended to Robert L. Boylestad, whose first edition of *Introductory Circuit Analysis* taught me more about electric circuits than any other book. Other important texts in my electronics studies include the 1939 edition of *The "Radio" Handbook*, Bernard Grob's second edition of *Introduction to Electronics I*, and Forrest Mims' original *Engineer's Notebook*.

Thanks to the staff of the Bellingham Antique Radio Museum, who were generous enough to let me terrorize their establishment with my camera and flash unit.

I wish to specifically thank Jeffrey Elkner and all those at Yorktown High School for being willing to host my book as part of their Open Book Project, and to make the first effort in contributing to its form and content. Thanks also to David Sweet (website: (`http://www.andamooka.org`)) and Ben Crowell (website: (`http://www.lightandmatter.com`)) for providing encouragement, constructive criticism, and a wider audience for the online version of this book.

Thanks to Michael Stutz for drafting his Design Science License, and to Richard Stallman for pioneering the concept of copyleft.

Last but certainly not least, many thanks to my parents and those teachers of mine who saw in me a desire to learn about electricity, and who kindled that flame into a passion for discovery and intellectual adventure. I honor you by helping others as you have helped me.

Tony Kuphaldt, July 2001

"A candle loses nothing of its light when lighting another"
Kahlil Gibran

Appendix A-2

CONTRIBUTOR LIST

A-2.1 How to contribute to this book

As a copylefted work, this book is open to revision and expansion by any interested parties. The only ”catch” is that credit must be given where credit is due. This *is* a copyrighted work: it is *not* in the public domain!

If you wish to cite portions of this book in a work of your own, you must follow the same guidelines as for any other copyrighted work. Here is a sample from the Design Science License:

```
The Work is copyright the Author.  All rights to the Work are reserved
by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License
describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you
to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as
dictated by "fair use") quote from it, just as you would any
copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or
execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk,
because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY -- see Section 7 ("NO
WARRANTY") below.
```

If you wish to modify this book in any way, you must document the nature of those modifications in the ”Credits” section along with your name, and ideally, information concerning how you may be contacted. Again, the Design Science License:

```
Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work,
```

```
producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work
under the terms described in the section for distribution above,
provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this
License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or
title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of
the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences
between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is
attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from
the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate
notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature
and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.
```

Given the complexities and security issues surrounding the maintenance of files comprising this book, it is recommended that you submit any revisions or expansions to the original author (Tony R. Kuphaldt). You are, of course, welcome to modify this book directly by editing your own personal copy, but we would all stand to benefit from your contributions if your ideas were incorporated into the online ”master copy” where all the world can see it.

A-2.2 Credits

All entries arranged in alphabetical order of surname. Major contributions are listed by individual name with some detail on the nature of the contribution(s), date, contact info, etc. Minor contributions (typo corrections, etc.) are listed by name only for reasons of brevity. Please understand that when I classify a contribution as ”minor,” it is in no way inferior to the effort or value of a ”major” contribution, just smaller in the sense of less text changed. Any and all contributions are gratefully accepted. I am indebted to all those who have given freely of their own knowledge, time, and resources to make this a better book!

A-2.2.1 Benjamin Crowell, Ph.D.

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** January 2001
- **Nature of contribution:** Suggestions on improving technical accuracy of electric field and charge explanations in the first two chapters.
- **Contact at:** crowell01@lightandmatter.com

A-2.2.2 Dennis Crunkilton

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** January 2006 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Mini table of contents, all chapters except appedicies; html, latex, ps, pdf; See Devel/tutorial.html; 01/2006.
- DC network analysis ch, Mesh current section, Mesh current by inspection, new material.i DC network analysis ch, Node voltage method, new section.
- Ch3, Added AFCI paragraphs after GFCI, 10/09/2007.
- **Contact at:** `dcrunkilton(at)att(dot)net`

A-2.2.3 Tony R. Kuphaldt

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** 1996 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author.
- **Contact at:** `liec0@lycos.com`

A-2.2.4 Ron LaPlante

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** October 1998
- **Nature of contribution:** Helped create the ”table” concept for use in analysis of series and parallel circuits.

A-2.2.5 Davy Van Nieuwenborgh

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** October 2006
- **Nature of contribution:**DC network analysis ch, Mesh current section, supplied solution to mesh problem, pointed out error in text.
- **Contact at:**`Theoretical Computer Science laboratory, Department of Computer Science, Vrije Universiteit Brussel.`

A-2.2.6 Jason Starck

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** June 2000
- **Nature of contribution:** HTML formatting, some error corrections.
- **Contact at:** `jstarck@yhslug.tux.org`

A-2.2.7 Warren Young

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** August 2002
- **Nature of contribution:** Provided capacitor photographs for chapter 13.

A-2.2.8 Your name here

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** Month and year of contribution
- **Nature of contribution:** Insert text here, describing how you contributed to the book.
- **Contact at:** `my_email@provider.net`

A-2.2.9 Typo corrections and other ”minor” contributions

- *The students of Bellingham Technical College's Instrumentation program*.
- **anonymous** (July 2007) Ch 1, remove :registers. Ch 5, s/figures something/figures is something/. Ch 6 s/The current/The current. (September 2007) Ch 5, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 15. Numerous typos, clarifications.
- **Tony Armstrong** (January 2003) Suggested diagram correction in ”Series and Parallel Combination Circuits” chapter.
- **James Boorn** (January 2001) Clarification on SPICE simulation.
- **Dejan Budimir** (January 2003) Clarification of Mesh Current method explanation.
- **Sridhar Chitta**, Assoc. Professor, Dept. of Instrumentation and Control Engg., Vignan Institute of Technology and Science, Deshmukhi Village, Pochampally Mandal, Nalgonda Distt, Andhra Pradesh, India (December 2005) Chapter 13: CAPACITORS, Clarification: s/note the direction of current/note the direction of electron current/, 2-places
- **Colin Creitz** (May 2007) Chapters: several, s/it's/its.
- **Larry Cramblett** (September 2004) Typographical error correction in ”Nonlinear conduction” section.
- **Brad Drum** (May 2006) Error correction in ”Superconductivity” section, Chapter 12: PHYSICS OF CONDUCTORS AND INSULATORS. Degrees are not used as a modifier with kelvin(s), 3 changes.
- **Jeff DeFreitas** (March 2006)Improve appearance: replace “/” and ”/” Chapters: A1, A2. Type errors Chapter 3: /am injurious spark/an injurious spark/, /in the even/inthe event/
- **Sean Donner** (December 2004) Typographical error correction in ”Voltage and current” section, Chapter 1: BASIC CONCEPTS OF ELECTRICITY,(by a the/ by the) (current of current/ of current).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Fuses” section, Chapter 12: THE PHYSICS OF CONDUCTORS AND INSULATORS (Neither fuses nor circuit breakers were not designed to open / Neither fuses nor circuit breakers were designed to open).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Factors Affecting Capacitance” section, Chapter 13: CAPACITORS, (greater plate area gives greater capacitance; less plate area gives less capacitance / greater plate area gives greater capacitance; less plate area gives less capacitance); ”Factors Affecting Capacitance” section, (thin layer if insulation/thin layer of insulation).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Practical Considerations” section, Chapter 15: INDUCTORS, (there is not such thing / there is no such thing).

(January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Voltage and current calculations” section, Chapter 16: RC AND L/R TIME CONSTANTS (voltage in current / voltage and current).

- **Manuel Duarte** (August 2006): Ch: DC Metering Circuits ammeter images: 00163.eps, 00164.eps; Ch: RC and L/R Time Constants, simplified ln() equation images 10263.eps, 10264.eps, 10266.eps, 10276.eps.

- **Aaron Forster** (February 2003) Typographical error correction in ”Physics of Conductors and Insulators” chapter.

- **Bill Heath** (September-December 2002) Correction on illustration of atomic structure, and corrections of several typographical errors.

- **Stefan Kluehspies** (June 2003): Corrected spelling error in Andrew Tannenbaum's name.

- **David M. St. Pierre** (November 2007): Corrected spelling error in Andrew Tanenbaum's name (from the title page of his book).

- **Geoffrey Lessel**,Thompsons Station, TN (June 2005): Corrected typo error in Ch 1 ”If this charge (static electricity) is stationary, and you won't realize–remove If; Ch 2 ”Ohm's Law also make intuitive sense if you apply if to the water-and-pipe analogy.” s/if/it; Chapter 2 ”Ohm's Law is not very useful for analyzing the behavior of components like these where resistance is varies with voltage and current.” remove ”is”; Ch 3 ”which halts fibrillation and and gives the heart a chance to recover.” double ”and”; Ch 3 ”To be safest, you should follow this procedure is checking, using, and then checking your meter.... s/is/of.

- **LouTheBlueGuru**, allaboutcircuits.com, July 2005 Typographical errors, in Ch 6 ”the current through R1 is half:” s/half/twice; ”current through R1 is still exactly twice that of R2” s/R3/R2

- **Norm Meyrowitz** , nkm, allaboutcircuits.com, July 2005 Typographical errors, in Ch 2.3 ”where we don't know both voltage and resistance:” s/resistance/current

- **Don Stalkowski** (June 2002) Technical help with PostScript-to-PDF file format conversion.

- **Joseph Teichman** (June 2002) Suggestion and technical help regarding use of PNG images instead of JPEG.
- **Derek Terveer** (June 2006) Typographical errors, several in Ch 1,2,3.
- **Geoffrey Lessel** (June 2005) Typographical error, s/It discovered/It was discovered/ in Ch 1.
- **Austin@allaboutcircuits.com** (July 2007) Ch 2, units of mass, pound vs kilogram, near ”units of pound” s/pound/kilogram/.
- **CATV@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2007) Telephone ring voltage error, Ch 3.
- **line@allaboutcircuits.com** (June 2005) Typographical error correction in Volumes 1,2,3,5, various chapters ,(:s/visa-versa/vice versa/).
- **rob843@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2007) Telephone ring voltage error, Ch 3.
- **bigtwenty@allaboutcircuits.com** (July 2007) Ch 4 near “different metric prefix”, s/right to left/left to right/.
- **jut@allaboutcircuits.com** (September 2007) Ch 13 near s/if were we to/if we were to/, s/a capacitors/a capacitor.
- **rxtxau@allaboutcircuits.com** (October 2007) Ch 3, suggested, GFCI terminology, non-US usage.
- **Stacy Mckenna Seip** (November 2007) Ch 3 s/on hand/one hand, Ch 4 s/weight/weigh, Ch 8 s/weight/weigh, s/left their/left there, Ch 9 s/cannot spare/cannot afford/, Ch1 Clarification, static electricity.
- **Cory Benjamin** (November 2007) Ch 3 s/on hand/one hand.
- **Larry Weber** (Feb 2008) Ch 3 s/on hand/one hand.
- **trunks14@allaboutrcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Ch 15 s/of of/of .
- **Greg Herrington** (Feb 2008) Ch 1, Clarification: no neutron in hydrogen atom.
- **mark44** (Feb 2008) Ch 1, s/naturaly/naturally/
- **Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (February 2008) Ch 1, s/smokelsee/smokeless , s/ecconomic/economic/ .
- **Timothy Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Changed default roman font to newcent.
- **Imranullah Syed** (Feb 2008) Suggested centering of uncaptioned schematics.
- **davidr@insyst_ltd.com** (april 2008) Ch 5, s/results/result 2plcs.
- **Professor Thom@allaboutcircuits.com** (Oct 2008) Ch 6, s/g/c near Ecd and near 00435.png, 2plcs.

Appendix A-3

DESIGN SCIENCE LICENSE

A-3.1 0. Preamble

Copyright law gives certain exclusive rights to the author of a work, including the rights to copy, modify and distribute the work (the ”reproductive,” ”adaptative,” and ”distribution” rights).

The idea of ”copyleft” is to willfully revoke the exclusivity of those rights under certain terms and conditions, so that anyone can copy and distribute the work or properly attributed derivative works, while all copies remain under the same terms and conditions as the original.

The intent of this license is to be a general ”copyleft” that can be applied to any kind of work that has protection under copyright. This license states those certain conditions under which a work published under its terms may be copied, distributed, and modified.

Whereas ”design science” is a strategy for the development of artifacts as a way to reform the environment (not people) and subsequently improve the universal standard of living, this Design Science License was written and deployed as a strategy for promoting the progress of science and art through reform of the environment.

A-3.2 1. Definitions

”License” shall mean this Design Science License. The License applies to any work which contains a notice placed by the work’s copyright holder stating that it is published under the terms of this Design Science License.

”Work” shall mean such an aforementioned work. The License also applies to the output of the Work, only if said output constitutes a ”derivative work” of the licensed Work as defined by copyright law.

”Object Form” shall mean an executable or performable form of the Work, being an embodiment of the Work in some tangible medium.

”Source Data” shall mean the origin of the Object Form, being the entire, machine-readable, preferred form of the Work for copying and for human modification (usually the language, encoding or format in which composed or recorded by the Author); plus any accompanying files, scripts or other data necessary for installation, configuration or compilation of the Work.

(Examples of ”Source Data” include, but are not limited to, the following: if the Work is an image file composed and edited in ’PNG’ format, then the original PNG source file is the Source Data; if the Work is an MPEG 1.0 layer 3 digital audio recording made from a ’WAV’ format audio file recording of an analog source, then the original WAV file is the Source Data; if the Work was composed as an unformatted plaintext file, then that file is the the Source Data; if the Work was composed in LaTeX, the LaTeX file(s) and any image files and/or custom macros necessary for compilation constitute the Source Data.)

”Author” shall mean the copyright holder(s) of the Work.

The individual licensees are referred to as ”you.”

A-3.3 2. Rights and copyright

The Work is copyright the Author. All rights to the Work are reserved by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as dictated by ”fair use”) quote from it, just as you would any copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk, because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY – see Section 7 (”NO WARRANTY”) below.

A-3.4 3. Copying and distribution

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present verbatim copies of the entire Source Data of the Work, in any medium, provided that full copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty, where applicable, is conspicuously published on all copies, and a copy of this License is distributed along with the Work.

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present copies of the Object Form of the Work, in any medium, under the terms for distribution of Source Data above and also provided that one of the following additional conditions are met:

(a) The Source Data is included in the same distribution, distributed under the terms of this License; or

(b) A written offer is included with the distribution, valid for at least three years or for as long as the distribution is in print (whichever is longer), with a publicly-accessible address (such as a URL on the Internet) where, for a charge not greater than transportation and media costs, anyone may receive a copy of the Source Data of the Work distributed according to the section above; or

(c) A third party's written offer for obtaining the Source Data at no cost, as described in paragraph (b) above, is included with the distribution. This option is valid only if you are a non-commercial party, and only if you received the Object Form of the Work along with such an offer.

You may copy and distribute the Work either gratis or for a fee, and if desired, you may offer warranty protection for the Work.

The aggregation of the Work with other works which are not based on the Work – such as but not limited to inclusion in a publication, broadcast, compilation, or other media – does not bring the other works in the scope of the License; nor does such aggregation void the terms of the License for the Work.

A-3.5 4. Modification

Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work, producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work under the terms described in the section for distribution above, provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.

A-3.6 5. No restrictions

You may not impose any further restrictions on the Work or any of its derivative works beyond those restrictions described in this License.

A-3.7 6. Acceptance

Copying, distributing or modifying the Work (including but not limited to sampling from the Work in a new work) indicates acceptance of these terms. If you do not follow the terms of this License, any rights granted to you by the License are null and void. The copying, distribution or modification of the Work outside of the terms described in this License is expressly prohibited by law.

If for any reason, conditions are imposed on you that forbid you to fulfill the conditions of this License, you may not copy, distribute or modify the Work at all.

If any part of this License is found to be in conflict with the law, that part shall be interpreted in its broadest meaning consistent with the law, and no other parts of the License shall be affected.

A-3.8 7. No warranty

THE WORK IS PROVIDED ”AS IS,” AND COMES WITH ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

A-3.9 8. Disclaimer of liability

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS WORK, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

```
[$Id:  dsl.txt,v 1.25 2000/03/14 13:14:14 m Exp m $]
```

Index

.

Fourth Edition, last update November 01, 2007

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume IV – Digital

By Tony R. Kuphaldt

Fourth Edition, last update November 01, 2007

PRINTING HISTORY

- First Edition: Printed in June of 2000. Plain-ASCII illustrations for universal computer readability.
- Second Edition: Printed in September of 2000. Illustrations reworked in standard graphic (eps and jpeg) format. Source files translated to *Texinfo* format for easy online and printed publication.
- Third Edition: Printed in February 2001. Source files translated to *SubML* format. SubML is a simple markup language designed to easily convert to other markups like LaTeX, HTML, or DocBook using nothing but search-and-replace substitutions.
- Fourth Edition: Printed in March 2002. Additions and improvements to 3rd edition.

Contents

Chapter 1

NUMERATION SYSTEMS

Contents

"There are three types of people: those who can count, and those who can't."
Anonymous

1.1 Numbers and symbols

The expression of numerical quantities is something we tend to take for granted. This is both a good and a bad thing in the study of electronics. It is good, in that we're accustomed to the use and manipulation of numbers for the many calculations used in analyzing electronic circuits. On the other hand, the particular system of notation we've been taught from grade school onward is *not* the system used internally in modern electronic computing devices, and learning any different system of notation requires some re-examination of deeply ingrained assumptions.

First, we have to distinguish the difference between numbers and the symbols we use to represent numbers. A *number* is a mathematical quantity, usually correlated in electronics to a physical quantity such as voltage, current, or resistance. There are many different types of numbers. Here are just a few types, for example:

```
WHOLE NUMBERS:
1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 . . .
```

INTEGERS:
-4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4 . . .

IRRATIONAL NUMBERS:
π (approx. 3.1415927), e (approx. 2.718281828),
square root of any prime

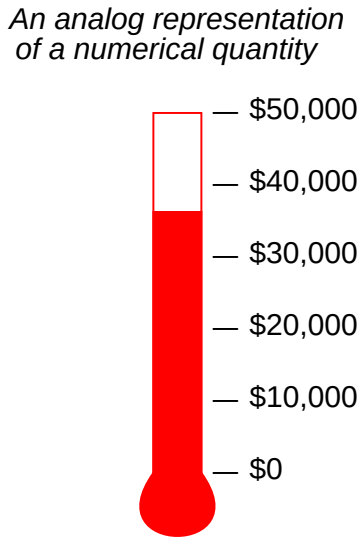
REAL NUMBERS:
(All one-dimensional numerical values, negative and positive,
including zero, whole, integer, and irrational numbers)

COMPLEX NUMBERS:
3 - j4 , 34.5 $\angle$ 20^o

Different types of numbers find different application in the physical world. Whole numbers work well for counting discrete objects, such as the number of resistors in a circuit. Integers are needed when negative equivalents of whole numbers are required. Irrational numbers are numbers that cannot be exactly expressed as the ratio of two integers, and the ratio of a perfect circle's circumference to its diameter (π) is a good physical example of this. The non-integer quantities of voltage, current, and resistance that we're used to dealing with in DC circuits can be expressed as real numbers, in either fractional or decimal form. For AC circuit analysis, however, real numbers fail to capture the dual essence of magnitude and phase angle, and so we turn to the use of complex numbers in either rectangular or polar form.

If we are to use numbers to understand processes in the physical world, make scientific predictions, or balance our checkbooks, we must have a way of symbolically denoting them. In other words, we may know how much money we have in our checking account, but to keep record of it we need to have some system worked out to symbolize that quantity on paper, or in some other kind of form for record-keeping and tracking. There are two basic ways we can do this: analog and digital. With analog representation, the quantity is symbolized in a way that is infinitely divisible. With digital representation, the quantity is symbolized in a way that is discretely packaged.

You're probably already familiar with an analog representation of money, and didn't realize it for what it was. Have you ever seen a fund-raising poster made with a picture of a thermometer on it, where the height of the red column indicated the amount of money collected for the cause? The more money collected, the taller the column of red ink on the poster.



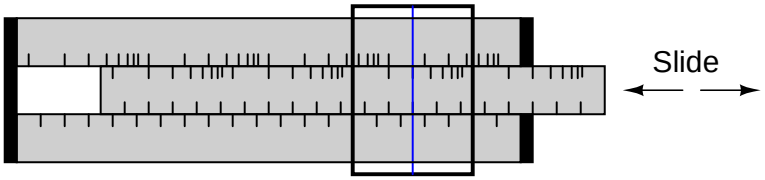
This is an example of an analog representation of a number. There is no real limit to how finely divided the height of that column can be made to symbolize the amount of money in the account. Changing the height of that column is something that can be done without changing the essential nature of what it is. Length is a physical quantity that can be divided as small as you would like, with no practical limit. The slide rule is a mechanical device that uses the very same physical quantity – length – to represent numbers, and to help perform arithmetical operations with two or more numbers at a time. It, too, is an analog device.

On the other hand, a *digital* representation of that same monetary figure, written with standard symbols (sometimes called ciphers), looks like this:

```
$35,955.38
```

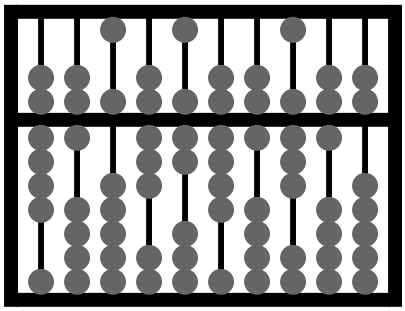
Unlike the ”thermometer” poster with its red column, those symbolic characters above cannot be finely divided: that particular combination of ciphers stand for one quantity and one quantity only. If more money is added to the account (+ $40.12), different symbols must be used to represent the new balance ($35,995.50), or at least the same symbols arranged in different patterns. This is an example of digital representation. The counterpart to the slide rule (analog) is also a digital device: the abacus, with beads that are moved back and forth on rods to symbolize numerical quantities:

Slide rule *(an analog device)*



Numerical quantities are represented by the positioning of the slide.

Abacus *(a digital device)*



Numerical quantities are represented by the discrete positions of the beads.

Lets contrast these two methods of numerical representation:

ANALOG		DIGITAL
Intuitively understood	----------	Requires training to interpret
Infinitely divisible	----------	Discrete
Prone to errors of precision	------	Absolute precision

Interpretation of numerical symbols is something we tend to take for granted, because it has been taught to us for many years. However, if you were to try to communicate a quantity of something to a person ignorant of decimal numerals, that person could still understand the simple thermometer chart!

The infinitely divisible vs. discrete and precision comparisons are really flip-sides of the same coin. The fact that digital representation is composed of individual, discrete symbols (decimal digits and abacus beads) necessarily means that it will be able to symbolize quantities in precise steps. On the other hand, an analog representation (such as a slide rule's length) is not composed of individual steps, but rather a continuous range of motion. The ability for a slide rule to characterize a numerical quantity to infinite resolution is a trade-off for imprecision. If a slide rule is bumped, an error will be introduced into the representation of

the number that was ”entered” into it. However, an abacus must be bumped much harder before its beads are completely dislodged from their places (sufficient to represent a different number).

Please don't misunderstand this difference in precision by thinking that digital representation is necessarily more *accurate* than analog. Just because a clock is digital doesn't mean that it will always read time more accurately than an analog clock, it just means that the *interpretation* of its display is less ambiguous.

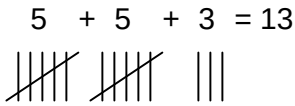
Divisibility of analog versus digital representation can be further illuminated by talking about the representation of irrational numbers. Numbers such as π are called irrational, because they cannot be exactly expressed as the fraction of integers, or whole numbers. Although you might have learned in the past that the fraction 22/7 can be used for π in calculations, this is just an approximation. The actual number ”pi” cannot be exactly expressed by any finite, or limited, number of decimal places. The digits of π go on forever:

```
3.1415926535897932384 . . . . .
```

It is possible, at least theoretically, to set a slide rule (or even a thermometer column) so as to perfectly represent the number π, because analog symbols have no minimum limit to the degree that they can be increased or decreased. If my slide rule shows a figure of 3.141593 instead of 3.141592654, I can bump the slide just a bit more (or less) to get it closer yet. However, with digital representation, such as with an abacus, I would need additional rods (place holders, or digits) to represent π to further degrees of precision. An abacus with 10 rods simply cannot represent any more than 10 digits worth of the number π, no matter how I set the beads. To perfectly represent π, an abacus would have to have an infinite number of beads and rods! The tradeoff, of course, is the practical limitation to adjusting, and reading, analog symbols. Practically speaking, one cannot read a slide rule's scale to the 10th digit of precision, because the marks on the scale are too coarse and human vision is too limited. An abacus, on the other hand, can be set and read with no interpretational errors at all.

Furthermore, analog symbols require some kind of standard by which they can be compared for precise interpretation. Slide rules have markings printed along the length of the slides to translate length into standard quantities. Even the thermometer chart has numerals written along its height to show how much money (in dollars) the red column represents for any given amount of height. Imagine if we all tried to communicate simple numbers to each other by spacing our hands apart varying distances. The number 1 might be signified by holding our hands 1 inch apart, the number 2 with 2 inches, and so on. If someone held their hands 17 inches apart to represent the number 17, would everyone around them be able to immediately and accurately interpret that distance as 17? Probably not. Some would guess short (15 or 16) and some would guess long (18 or 19). Of course, fishermen who brag about their catches don't mind overestimations in quantity!

Perhaps this is why people have generally settled upon digital symbols for representing numbers, especially whole numbers and integers, which find the most application in everyday life. Using the fingers on our hands, we have a ready means of symbolizing integers from 0 to 10. We can make hash marks on paper, wood, or stone to represent the same quantities quite easily:



For large numbers, though, the "hash mark" numeration system is too inefficient.

1.2 Systems of numeration

The Romans devised a system that was a substantial improvement over hash marks, because it used a variety of symbols (or *ciphers*) to represent increasingly large quantities. The notation for 1 is the capital letter I. The notation for 5 is the capital letter V. Other ciphers possess increasing values:

```
X = 10
L = 50
C = 100
D = 500
M = 1000
```

If a cipher is accompanied by another cipher of equal or lesser value to the immediate right of it, with no ciphers greater than that other cipher to the right of that other cipher, that other cipher's value is added to the total quantity. Thus, VIII symbolizes the number 8, and CLVII symbolizes the number 157. On the other hand, if a cipher is accompanied by another cipher of lesser value to the immediate left, that other cipher's value is *subtracted* from the first. Therefore, IV symbolizes the number 4 (V minus I), and CM symbolizes the number 900 (M minus C). You might have noticed that ending credit sequences for most motion pictures contain a notice for the date of production, in Roman numerals. For the year 1987, it would read: MCMLXXXVII. Let's break this numeral down into its constituent parts, from left to right:

```
M = 1000
+
CM = 900
+
L = 50
+
XXX = 30
+
V = 5
+
II = 2
```

Aren't you glad we don't use this system of numeration? Large numbers are very difficult to denote this way, and the left vs. right / subtraction vs. addition of values can be very confusing, too. Another major problem with this system is that there is no provision for representing the number zero or negative numbers, both very important concepts in mathematics. Roman

culture, however, was more pragmatic with respect to mathematics than most, choosing only to develop their numeration system as far as it was necessary for use in daily life.

We owe one of the most important ideas in numeration to the ancient Babylonians, who were the first (as far as we know) to develop the concept of cipher position, or place value, in representing larger numbers. Instead of inventing new ciphers to represent larger numbers, as the Romans did, they re-used the same ciphers, placing them in different positions from right to left. Our own decimal numeration system uses this concept, with only ten ciphers (0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9) used in "weighted" positions to represent very large and very small numbers.

Each cipher represents an integer quantity, and each place from right to left in the notation represents a multiplying constant, or *weight*, for each integer quantity. For example, if we see the decimal notation "1206", we known that this may be broken down into its constituent weight-products as such:

```
1206 = 1000 + 200 + 6
1206  =  (1 x 1000) + (2 x 100) + (0 x 10) + (6 x 1)
```

Each cipher is called a *digit* in the decimal numeration system, and each weight, or *place value*, is ten times that of the one to the immediate right. So, we have a *ones* place, a *tens* place, a *hundreds* place, a *thousands* place, and so on, working from right to left.

Right about now, you're probably wondering why I'm laboring to describe the obvious. Who needs to be told how decimal numeration works, after you've studied math as advanced as algebra and trigonometry? The reason is to better understand other numeration systems, by first knowing the how's and why's of the one you're already used to.

The decimal numeration system uses ten ciphers, and place-weights that are multiples of ten. What if we made a numeration system with the same strategy of weighted places, except with fewer or more ciphers?

The binary numeration system is such a system. Instead of ten different cipher symbols, with each weight constant being ten times the one before it, we only have *two* cipher symbols, and each weight constant is *twice* as much as the one before it. The two allowable cipher symbols for the binary system of numeration are "1" and "0," and these ciphers are arranged right-to-left in doubling values of weight. The rightmost place is the *ones* place, just as with decimal notation. Proceeding to the left, we have the *twos* place, the *fours* place, the *eights* place, the *sixteens* place, and so on. For example, the following binary number can be expressed, just like the decimal number 1206, as a sum of each cipher value times its respective weight constant:

```
11010 = 2 + 8 + 16 = 26
11010 = (1 x 16) + (1 x 8) + (0 x 4) + (1 x 2) + (0 x 1)
```

This can get quite confusing, as I've written a number with binary numeration (11010), and then shown its place values and total in standard, decimal numeration form (16 + 8 + 2 = 26). In the above example, we're mixing two different kinds of numerical notation. To avoid unnecessary confusion, we have to denote which form of numeration we're using when we write (or type!). Typically, this is done in subscript form, with a "2" for binary and a "10" for decimal, so the binary number 11010_2 is equal to the decimal number 26_{10}.

The subscripts are not mathematical operation symbols like superscripts (exponents) are. All they do is indicate what system of numeration we're using when we write these symbols for other people to read. If you see "3_{10}", all this means is the number three written using *decimal* numeration. However, if you see "3^{10}", this means something completely different: three to the tenth power (59,049). As usual, if no subscript is shown, the cipher(s) are assumed to be representing a decimal number.

Commonly, the number of cipher types (and therefore, the place-value multiplier) used in a numeration system is called that system's *base*. Binary is referred to as "base two" numeration, and decimal as "base ten." Additionally, we refer to each cipher position in binary as a *bit* rather than the familiar word *digit* used in the decimal system.

Now, why would anyone use binary numeration? The decimal system, with its ten ciphers, makes a lot of sense, being that we have ten fingers on which to count between our two hands. (It is interesting that some ancient central American cultures used numeration systems with a base of twenty. Presumably, they used both fingers and toes to count!!). But the primary reason that the binary numeration system is used in modern electronic computers is because of the ease of representing two cipher states (0 and 1) electronically. With relatively simple circuitry, we can perform mathematical operations on binary numbers by representing each bit of the numbers by a circuit which is either on (current) or off (no current). Just like the abacus with each rod representing another decimal digit, we simply add more circuits to give us more bits to symbolize larger numbers. Binary numeration also lends itself well to the storage and retrieval of numerical information: on magnetic tape (spots of iron oxide on the tape either being magnetized for a binary "1" or demagnetized for a binary "0"), optical disks (a laser-burned pit in the aluminum foil representing a binary "1" and an unburned spot representing a binary "0"), or a variety of other media types.

Before we go on to learning exactly how all this is done in digital circuitry, we need to become more familiar with binary and other associated systems of numeration.

1.3 Decimal versus binary numeration

Let's count from zero to twenty using four different kinds of numeration systems: hash marks, Roman numerals, decimal, and binary:

System:	Hash Marks	Roman	Decimal	Binary
Zero	n/a	n/a	0	0
One	|	I	1	1
Two	||	II	2	10
Three	|||	III	3	11
Four	||||	IV	4	100
Five	/|||/	V	5	101
Six	/|||/ |	VI	6	110
Seven	/|||/ ||	VII	7	111
Eight	/|||/ |||	VIII	8	1000
Nine	/|||/ ||||	IX	9	1001
Ten	/|||/ /|||/	X	10	1010

Eleven	/|||/ /|||/ |	XI	11	1011
Twelve	/|||/ /|||/ ||	XII	12	1100
Thirteen	/|||/ /|||/ |||	XIII	13	1101
Fourteen	/|||/ /|||/ ||||	XIV	14	1110
Fifteen	/|||/ /|||/ /|||/	XV	15	1111
Sixteen	/|||/ /|||/ /|||/ |	XVI	16	10000
Seventeen	/|||/ /|||/ /|||/ ||	XVII	17	10001
Eighteen	/|||/ /|||/ /|||/ |||	XVIII	18	10010
Nineteen	/|||/ /|||/ /|||/ ||||	XIX	19	10011
Twenty	/|||/ /|||/ /|||/ /|||/	XX	20	10100

Neither hash marks nor the Roman system are very practical for symbolizing large numbers. Obviously, place-weighted systems such as decimal and binary are more efficient for the task. Notice, though, how much shorter decimal notation is over binary notation, for the same number of quantities. What takes five bits in binary notation only takes two digits in decimal notation.

This raises an interesting question regarding different numeration systems: how large of a number can be represented with a limited number of cipher positions, or places? With the crude hash-mark system, the number of places IS the largest number that can be represented, since one hash mark "place" is required for every integer step. For place-weighted systems of numeration, however, the answer is found by taking base of the numeration system (10 for decimal, 2 for binary) and raising it to the power of the number of places. For example, 5 digits in a decimal numeration system can represent 100,000 different integer number values, from 0 to 99,999 (10 to the 5th power = 100,000). 8 bits in a binary numeration system can represent 256 different integer number values, from 0 to 11111111 (binary), or 0 to 255 (decimal), because 2 to the 8th power equals 256. With each additional place position to the number field, the capacity for representing numbers increases by a factor of the base (10 for decimal, 2 for binary).

An interesting footnote for this topic is the one of the first electronic digital computers, the Eniac. The designers of the Eniac chose to represent numbers in decimal form, digitally, using a series of circuits called "ring counters" instead of just going with the binary numeration system, in an effort to minimize the number of circuits required to represent and calculate very large numbers. This approach turned out to be counter-productive, and virtually all digital computers since then have been purely binary in design.

To convert a number in binary numeration to its equivalent in decimal form, all you have to do is calculate the sum of all the products of bits with their respective place-weight constants. To illustrate:

Convert 11001101_2 to decimal form:

bits =	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	1
.	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
weight =	1	6	3	1	8	4	2	1
(in decimal	2	4	2	6				
notation)	8							

The bit on the far right side is called the Least Significant Bit (LSB), because it stands in the place of the lowest weight (the one's place). The bit on the far left side is called the Most Significant Bit (MSB), because it stands in the place of the highest weight (the one hundred twenty-eight's place). Remember, a bit value of "1" means that the respective place weight gets added to the total value, and a bit value of "0" means that the respective place weight does *not* get added to the total value. With the above example, we have:

128_{10} + 64_{10} + 8_{10} + 4_{10} + 1_{10} = 205_{10}

If we encounter a binary number with a dot (.), called a "binary point" instead of a decimal point, we follow the same procedure, realizing that each place weight to the right of the point is one-half the value of the one to the left of it (just as each place weight to the right of a *decimal* point is one-tenth the weight of the one to the left of it). For example:

Convert 101.011_2 to decimal form:

```
.
bits =         1  0  1  .  0  1  1
.              -  -  -  -  -  -  -
weight =       4  2  1     1  1  1
(in decimal                /  /  /
notation)                  2  4  8
```

4_{10} + 1_{10} + 0.25_{10} + 0.125_{10} = 5.375_{10}

1.4 Octal and hexadecimal numeration

Because binary numeration requires so many bits to represent relatively small numbers compared to the economy of the decimal system, analyzing the numerical states inside of digital electronic circuitry can be a tedious task. Computer programmers who design sequences of number codes instructing a computer what to do would have a very difficult task if they were forced to work with nothing but long strings of 1's and 0's, the "native language" of any digital circuit. To make it easier for human engineers, technicians, and programmers to "speak" this language of the digital world, other systems of place-weighted numeration have been made which are very easy to convert to and from binary.

One of those numeration systems is called *octal*, because it is a place-weighted system with a base of eight. Valid ciphers include the symbols 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, and 7. Each place weight differs from the one next to it by a factor of eight.

Another system is called *hexadecimal*, because it is a place-weighted system with a base of sixteen. Valid ciphers include the normal decimal symbols 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, and 9, plus six alphabetical characters A, B, C, D, E, and F, to make a total of sixteen. As you might have guessed already, each place weight differs from the one before it by a factor of sixteen.

Let's count again from zero to twenty using decimal, binary, octal, and hexadecimal to contrast these systems of numeration:

```
Number       Decimal      Binary        Octal      Hexadecimal
```

Zero	0	0	0	0
One	1	1	1	1
Two	2	10	2	2
Three	3	11	3	3
Four	4	100	4	4
Five	5	101	5	5
Six	6	110	6	6
Seven	7	111	7	7
Eight	8	1000	10	8
Nine	9	1001	11	9
Ten	10	1010	12	A
Eleven	11	1011	13	B
Twelve	12	1100	14	C
Thirteen	13	1101	15	D
Fourteen	14	1110	16	E
Fifteen	15	1111	17	F
Sixteen	16	10000	20	10
Seventeen	17	10001	21	11
Eighteen	18	10010	22	12
Nineteen	19	10011	23	13
Twenty	20	10100	24	14

Octal and hexadecimal numeration systems would be pointless if not for their ability to be easily converted to and from binary notation. Their primary purpose in being is to serve as a "shorthand" method of denoting a number represented electronically in binary form. Because the bases of octal (eight) and hexadecimal (sixteen) are even multiples of binary's base (two), binary bits can be grouped together and directly converted to or from their respective octal or hexadecimal digits. With octal, the binary bits are grouped in three's (because $2^3 = 8$), and with hexadecimal, the binary bits are grouped in four's (because $2^4 = 16$):

BINARY TO OCTAL CONVERSION

Convert 10110111.1_2 to octal:

```
.
.                          implied zero       implied zeros
.                               |                  ||
.                              010   110   111   100
Convert each group of bits     ###   ###   ### . ###
to its octal equivalent:        2     6     7     4
.
```

Answer: $10110111.1_2 = 267.4_8$

We had to group the bits in three's, from the binary point left, and from the binary point right, adding (implied) zeros as necessary to make complete 3-bit groups. Each octal digit was translated from the 3-bit binary groups. Binary-to-Hexadecimal conversion is much the same:

BINARY TO HEXADECIMAL CONVERSION

```
Convert 10110111.1₂  to hexadecimal:
.
.                                          implied zeros
.                                               |||
.                                1011   0111   1000
Convert each group of bits       ----   ---- . ----
to its hexadecimal equivalent:     B      7      8
.
Answer:     10110111.1₂  =  B7.8₁₆
```

Here we had to group the bits in four's, from the binary point left, and from the binary point right, adding (implied) zeros as necessary to make complete 4-bit groups:

Likewise, the conversion from either octal or hexadecimal to binary is done by taking each octal or hexadecimal digit and converting it to its equivalent binary (3 or 4 bit) group, then putting all the binary bit groups together.

Incidentally, hexadecimal notation is more popular, because binary bit groupings in digital equipment are commonly multiples of eight (8, 16, 32, 64, and 128 bit), which are also multiples of 4. Octal, being based on binary bit groups of 3, doesn't work out evenly with those common bit group sizings.

1.5 Octal and hexadecimal to decimal conversion

Although the prime intent of octal and hexadecimal numeration systems is for the "shorthand" representation of binary numbers in digital electronics, we sometimes have the need to convert from either of those systems to decimal form. Of course, we could simply convert the hexadecimal or octal format to binary, then convert from binary to decimal, since we already know how to do both, but we can also convert directly.

Because octal is a base-eight numeration system, each place-weight value differs from either adjacent place by a factor of eight. For example, the octal number 245.37 can be broken down into place values as such:

```
octal
digits =       2  4  5  .  3  7
.              -  -  -  -  -  -
weight =       6  8  1     1  1
(in decimal    4           /  /
notation)                  8  6
.                             4
```

The decimal value of each octal place-weight times its respective cipher multiplier can be determined as follows:

$$(2 \times 64_{10}) + (4 \times 8_{10}) + (5 \times 1_{10}) + (3 \times 0.125_{10}) + (7 \times 0.015625_{10}) = 165.484375_{10}$$

The technique for converting hexadecimal notation to decimal is the same, except that each successive place-weight changes by a factor of sixteen. Simply denote each digit's weight, multiply each hexadecimal digit value by its respective weight (in decimal form), then add up all the decimal values to get a total. For example, the hexadecimal number $30F.A9_{16}$ can be converted like this:

```
hexadecimal
digits =       3  0  F  .  A  9
.              -  -  -  -  -  -
weight =       2  1  1     1  1
(in decimal    5  6        /  /
notation)      6           1  2
.                          6  5
.                             6
```

$$(3 \times 256_{10}) + (0 \times 16_{10}) + (15 \times 1_{10}) + (10 \times 0.0625_{10}) + (9 \times 0.00390625_{10}) = 783.66015625_{10}$$

These basic techniques may be used to convert a numerical notation of *any* base into decimal form, if you know the value of that numeration system's base.

1.6 Conversion from decimal numeration

Because octal and hexadecimal numeration systems have bases that are multiples of binary (base 2), conversion back and forth between either hexadecimal or octal and binary is very easy. Also, because we are so familiar with the decimal system, converting binary, octal, or hexadecimal to decimal form is relatively easy (simply add up the products of cipher values and place-weights). However, conversion from decimal to any of these "strange" numeration systems is a different matter.

The method which will probably make the most sense is the "trial-and-fit" method, where you try to "fit" the binary, octal, or hexadecimal notation to the desired value as represented in decimal form. For example, let's say that I wanted to represent the decimal value of 87 in binary form. Let's start by drawing a binary number field, complete with place-weight values:

```
.
.              -  -  -  -  -  -  -  -
weight =       1  6  3  1  8  4  2  1
(in decimal    2  4  2  6
notation)      8
```

Well, we know that we won't have a "1" bit in the 128's place, because that would immediately give us a value greater than 87. However, since the next weight to the right (64) is less than 87, we know that we must have a "1" there.

```
.              1
```

```
.               -  -  -  -  -  -  -    Decimal value so far = 64(10)
weight =        6  3  1  8  4  2  1
(in decimal     4  2  6
notation)
```

If we were to make the next place to the right a "1" as well, our total value would be 64_{10} + 32_{10}, or 96_{10}. This is greater than 87_{10}, so we know that this bit must be a "0". If we make the next (16's) place bit equal to "1," this brings our total value to 64_{10} + 16_{10}, or 80_{10}, which is closer to our desired value (87_{10}) without exceeding it:

```
.               1  0  1
.               -  -  -  -  -  -  -    Decimal value so far = 80(10)
weight =        6  3  1  8  4  2  1
(in decimal     4  2  6
notation)
```

By continuing in this progression, setting each lesser-weight bit as we need to come up to our desired total value without exceeding it, we will eventually arrive at the correct figure:

```
.               1  0  1  0  1  1  1
.               -  -  -  -  -  -  -    Decimal value so far = 87(10)
weight =        6  3  1  8  4  2  1
(in decimal     4  2  6
notation)
```

This trial-and-fit strategy will work with octal and hexadecimal conversions, too. Let's take the same decimal figure, 87_{10}, and convert it to octal numeration:

```
.
.               -  -  -
weight =        6  8  1
(in decimal     4
notation)
```

If we put a cipher of "1" in the 64's place, we would have a total value of 64_{10} (less than 87_{10}). If we put a cipher of "2" in the 64's place, we would have a total value of 128_{10} (greater than 87_{10}). This tells us that our octal numeration must start with a "1" in the 64's place:

```
.               1
.               -  -  -    Decimal value so far = 64(10)
weight =        6  8  1
(in decimal     4
notation)
```

Now, we need to experiment with cipher values in the 8's place to try and get a total (decimal) value as close to 87 as possible without exceeding it. Trying the first few cipher options, we get:

"1" = 64_{10} + 8_{10} = 72_{10}
"2" = 64_{10} + 16_{10} = 80_{10}
"3" = 64_{10} + 24_{10} = 88_{10}

A cipher value of "3" in the 8's place would put us over the desired total of 87_{10}, so "2" it is!

```
.              1  2
.              -  -  -    Decimal value so far = 80(10)
weight =       6  8  1
(in decimal    4
notation)
```

Now, all we need to make a total of 87 is a cipher of "7" in the 1's place:

```
.              1  2  7
.              -  -  -    Decimal value so far = 87(10)
weight =       6  8  1
(in decimal    4
notation)
```

Of course, if you were paying attention during the last section on octal/binary conversions, you will realize that we can take the binary representation of (decimal) 87_{10}, which we previously determined to be 1010111_2, and easily convert from that to octal to check our work:

```
.          Implied zeros
.               ||
.               001 010 111   Binary
.               --- --- ---
.                1   2   7    Octal
.
Answer: 1010111(2) = 127(8)
```

Can we do decimal-to-hexadecimal conversion the same way? Sure, but who would want to? This method is simple to understand, but laborious to carry out. There is another way to do these conversions, which is essentially the same (mathematically), but easier to accomplish.

This other method uses repeated cycles of division (using decimal notation) to break the decimal numeration down into multiples of binary, octal, or hexadecimal place-weight values. In the first cycle of division, we take the original decimal number and divide it by the base of the numeration system that we're converting to (binary=2 octal=8, hex=16). Then, we take the whole-number portion of division result (quotient) and divide it by the base value again, and so on, until we end up with a quotient of less than 1. The binary, octal, or hexadecimal digits are determined by the "remainders" left over by each division step. Let's see how this works for binary, with the decimal example of 87_{10}:

```
.   87              Divide 87 by 2, to get a quotient of 43.5
.  --- = 43.5       Division "remainder" = 1, or the < 1 portion
```

```
.   2               of the quotient times the divisor (0.5 x 2)
.
.   43              Take the whole-number portion of 43.5 (43)
.  --- = 21.5       and divide it by 2 to get 21.5, or 21 with
.   2               a remainder of 1
.
.   21              And so on . . . remainder = 1 (0.5 x 2)
.  --- = 10.5
.   2
.
.   10              And so on . . . remainder = 0
.  --- = 5.0
.   2
.
.   5               And so on . . . remainder = 1 (0.5 x 2)
.  --- = 2.5
.   2
.
.   2               And so on . . . remainder = 0
.  --- = 1.0
.   2
.
.   1               . . . until we get a quotient of less than 1
.  --- = 0.5        remainder = 1 (0.5 x 2)
.   2
```

The binary bits are assembled from the remainders of the successive division steps, beginning with the LSB and proceeding to the MSB. In this case, we arrive at a binary notation of 1010111_2. When we divide by 2, we will always get a quotient ending with either ".0" or ".5", i.e. a remainder of either 0 or 1. As was said before, this repeat-division technique for conversion will work for numeration systems other than binary. If we were to perform successive divisions using a different number, such as 8 for conversion to octal, we will necessarily get remainders between 0 and 7. Let's try this with the same decimal number, 87_{10}:

```
.   87              Divide 87 by 8, to get a quotient of 10.875
.  --- = 10.875     Division "remainder" = 7, or the < 1 portion
.   8               of the quotient times the divisor (.875 x 8)
.
.   10
.  --- = 1.25       Remainder = 2
.   8
.
.   1
.  --- = 0.125      Quotient is less than 1, so we'll stop here.
.   8               Remainder = 1
.
```

```
.  RESULT:   87_10   = 127_8
```

We can use a similar technique for converting numeration systems dealing with quantities less than 1, as well. For converting a decimal number less than 1 into binary, octal, or hexadecimal, we use repeated multiplication, taking the integer portion of the product in each step as the next digit of our converted number. Let's use the decimal number 0.8125_{10} as an example, converting to binary:

```
.  0.8125 x 2 = 1.625     Integer portion of product = 1
.
.  0.625 x 2 = 1.25       Take < 1 portion of product and remultiply
.                         Integer portion of product = 1
.
.  0.25 x 2 = 0.5         Integer portion of product = 0
.
.  0.5 x 2 = 1.0          Integer portion of product = 1
.                         Stop when product is a pure integer
.                         (ends with .0)
.
.  RESULT:   0.8125_10   = 0.1101_2
```

As with the repeat-division process for integers, each step gives us the next digit (or bit) further away from the "point." With integer (division), we worked from the LSB to the MSB (right-to-left), but with repeated multiplication, we worked from the left to the right. To convert a decimal number greater than 1, with a ¡ 1 component, we must use *both* techniques, one at a time. Take the decimal example of 54.40625_{10}, converting to binary:

```
REPEATED DIVISION FOR THE INTEGER PORTION:
.
.     54
.    --- = 27.0          Remainder = 0
.     2
.
.     27
.    --- = 13.5          Remainder = 1  (0.5 x 2)
.     2
.
.     13
.    --- = 6.5           Remainder = 1 (0.5 x 2)
.     2
.
.     6
.    --- = 3.0           Remainder = 0
.     2
.
.     3
```

```
.    --- = 1.5           Remainder = 1 (0.5 x 2)
.     2
.
.     1
.    --- = 0.5           Remainder = 1 (0.5 x 2)
.     2
.
```

PARTIAL ANSWER: 54_{10} = 110110_2

REPEATED MULTIPLICATION FOR THE < 1 PORTION:

```
.
.  0.40625 x 2 = 0.8125  Integer portion of product = 0
.
.  0.8125 x 2 = 1.625    Integer portion of product = 1
.
.  0.625 x 2 = 1.25      Integer portion of product = 1
.
.  0.25 x 2 = 0.5        Integer portion of product = 0
.
.  0.5 x 2 = 1.0         Integer portion of product = 1
.
```

. PARTIAL ANSWER: 0.40625_{10} = 0.01101_2

. COMPLETE ANSWER: 54_{10} + 0.40625_{10} = 54.40625_{10}

. 110110_2 + 0.01101_2 = 110110.01101_2

Chapter 2

BINARY ARITHMETIC

Contents

2.1 Numbers versus numeration

It is imperative to understand that the type of numeration system used to represent numbers has no impact upon the outcome of any arithmetical function (addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, roots, powers, or logarithms). A number is a number is a number; one plus one will always equal two (so long as we're dealing with *real* numbers), no matter how you symbolize one, one, and two. A prime number in decimal form is still prime if its shown in binary form, or octal, or hexadecimal. π is still the ratio between the circumference and diameter of a circle, no matter what symbol(s) you use to denote its value. The essential functions and interrelations of mathematics are unaffected by the particular system of symbols we might choose to represent quantities. This distinction between *numbers* and *systems of numeration* is critical to understand.

The essential distinction between the two is much like that between an object and the spoken word(s) we associate with it. A house is still a house regardless of whether we call it by its English name *house* or its Spanish name *casa*. The first is the actual thing, while the second is merely the symbol for the thing.

That being said, performing a simple arithmetic operation such as addition (longhand) in binary form can be confusing to a person accustomed to working with decimal numeration only. In this lesson, we'll explore the techniques used to perform simple arithmetic functions

on binary numbers, since these techniques will be employed in the design of electronic circuits to do the same. You might take longhand addition and subtraction for granted, having used a calculator for so long, but deep inside that calculator's circuitry all those operations are performed "longhand," using binary numeration. To understand how that's accomplished, we need to review to the basics of arithmetic.

2.2 Binary addition

Adding binary numbers is a very simple task, and very similar to the longhand addition of decimal numbers. As with decimal numbers, you start by adding the bits (digits) one column, or place weight, at a time, from right to left. Unlike decimal addition, there is little to memorize in the way of rules for the addition of binary bits:

```
0 + 0 = 0
1 + 0 = 1
0 + 1 = 1
1 + 1 = 10
1 + 1 + 1 = 11
```

Just as with decimal addition, when the sum in one column is a two-bit (two-digit) number, the least significant figure is written as part of the total sum and the most significant figure is "carried" to the next left column. Consider the following examples:

```
.                          11  1 <--- Carry bits -----> 11
.     1001101              1001001                    1000111
.   + 0010010            + 0011001                  + 0010110
.   ---------            ---------                  ---------
.     1011111              1100010                    1011101
```

The addition problem on the left did not require any bits to be carried, since the sum of bits in each column was either 1 or 0, not 10 or 11. In the other two problems, there definitely were bits to be carried, but the process of addition is still quite simple.

As we'll see later, there are ways that electronic circuits can be built to perform this very task of addition, by representing each bit of each binary number as a voltage signal (either "high," for a 1; or "low" for a 0). This is the very foundation of all the arithmetic which modern digital computers perform.

2.3 Negative binary numbers

With addition being easily accomplished, we can perform the operation of subtraction with the same technique simply by making one of the numbers negative. For example, the subtraction problem of 7 - 5 is essentially the same as the addition problem 7 + (-5). Since we already know how to represent positive numbers in binary, all we need to know now is how to represent their negative counterparts and we'll be able to subtract.

Usually we represent a negative decimal number by placing a minus sign directly to the left of the most significant digit, just as in the example above, with -5. However, the whole purpose of using binary notation is for constructing on/off circuits that can represent bit values in terms of voltage (2 alternative values: either "high" or "low"). In this context, we don't have the luxury of a third symbol such as a "minus" sign, since these circuits can only be on or off (two possible states). One solution is to reserve a bit (circuit) that does nothing but represent the mathematical sign:

```
.                        101₂ = 5₁₀    (positive)
.
.  Extra bit, representing sign (0=positive, 1=negative)
.                        |
.                       0101₂ = 5₁₀    (positive)
.
.  Extra bit, representing sign (0=positive, 1=negative)
.                        |
.                       1101₂ = -5₁₀   (negative)
```

As you can see, we have to be careful when we start using bits for any purpose other than standard place-weighted values. Otherwise, 1101_2 could be misinterpreted as the number thirteen when in fact we mean to represent negative five. To keep things straight here, we must first decide how many bits are going to be needed to represent the largest numbers we'll be dealing with, and then be sure not to exceed that bit field length in our arithmetic operations. For the above example, I've limited myself to the representation of numbers from negative seven (1111_2) to positive seven (0111_2), and no more, by making the fourth bit the "sign" bit. Only by first establishing these limits can I avoid confusion of a negative number with a larger, positive number.

Representing negative five as 1101_2 is an example of the *sign-magnitude* system of negative binary numeration. By using the leftmost bit as a sign indicator and not a place-weighted value, I am sacrificing the "pure" form of binary notation for something that gives me a practical advantage: the representation of negative numbers. The leftmost bit is read as the sign, either positive or negative, and the remaining bits are interpreted according to the standard binary notation: left to right, place weights in multiples of two.

As simple as the sign-magnitude approach is, it is not very practical for arithmetic purposes. For instance, how do I add a negative five (1101_2) to any other number, using the standard technique for binary addition? I'd have to invent a new way of doing addition in order for it to work, and if I do that, I might as well just do the job with longhand subtraction; there's no arithmetical advantage to using negative numbers to perform subtraction through addition if we have to do it with sign-magnitude numeration, and that was our goal!

There's another method for representing negative numbers which works with our familiar technique of longhand addition, and also happens to make more sense from a place-weighted numeration point of view, called *complementation*. With this strategy, we assign the leftmost bit to serve a special purpose, just as we did with the sign-magnitude approach, defining our number limits just as before. However, this time, the leftmost bit is more than just a sign bit; rather, it possesses a negative place-weight value. For example, a value of negative five would be represented as such:

```
Extra bit, place weight = negative eight
.                    |
.                    1011₂ = 5₁₀   (negative)
.
.          (1 x -8₁₀)  +  (0 x 4₁₀)  +  (1 x 2₁₀)  +  (1 x 1₁₀)  =  -5₁₀
```

With the right three bits being able to represent a magnitude from zero through seven, and the leftmost bit representing either zero or negative eight, we can successfully represent any integer number from negative seven (1001_2 = $-8_{10} + 1_{10} = -7_{10}$) to positive seven ($0111_2 = 0_{10} + 7_{10} = 7_{10}$).

Representing positive numbers in this scheme (with the fourth bit designated as the negative weight) is no different from that of ordinary binary notation. However, representing negative numbers is not quite as straightforward:

zero	0000		
positive one	0001	negative one	1111
positive two	0010	negative two	1110
positive three	0011	negative three	1101
positive four	0100	negative four	1100
positive five	0101	negative five	1011
positive six	0110	negative six	1010
positive seven	0111	negative seven	1001
.		negative eight	1000

Note that the negative binary numbers in the right column, being the sum of the right three bits' total plus the negative eight of the leftmost bit, don't "count" in the same progression as the positive binary numbers in the left column. Rather, the right three bits have to be set at the proper value to equal the desired (negative) total when summed with the negative eight place value of the leftmost bit.

Those right three bits are referred to as the *two's complement* of the corresponding positive number. Consider the following comparison:

positive number	two's complement
001	111
010	110
011	101
100	100
101	011
110	010
111	001

In this case, with the negative weight bit being the fourth bit (place value of negative eight), the two's complement for any positive number will be whatever value is needed to add to negative eight to make that positive value's negative equivalent. Thankfully, there's an easy way to figure out the two's complement for any binary number: simply invert all the bits of that

number, changing all 1's to 0's and vice versa (to arrive at what is called the *one's complement*) and then add one! For example, to obtain the two's complement of five (101_2), we would first invert all the bits to obtain 010_2 (the "one's complement"), then add one to obtain 011_2, or -5_{10} in three-bit, two's complement form.

Interestingly enough, generating the two's complement of a binary number works the same if you manipulate *all* the bits, including the leftmost (sign) bit at the same time as the magnitude bits. Let's try this with the former example, converting a positive five to a negative five, but performing the complementation process on all four bits. We must be sure to include the 0 (positive) sign bit on the original number, five (0101_2). First, inverting all bits to obtain the one's complement: 1010_2. Then, adding one, we obtain the final answer: 1011_2, or -5_{10} expressed in four-bit, two's complement form.

It is critically important to remember that the place of the negative-weight bit must be already determined before any two's complement conversions can be done. If our binary numeration field were such that the eighth bit was designated as the negative-weight bit (10000000_2), we'd have to determine the two's complement based on all seven of the other bits. Here, the two's complement of five (0000101_2) would be 1111011_2. A positive five in this system would be represented as 00000101_2, and a negative five as 11111011_2.

2.4 Subtraction

We can subtract one binary number from another by using the standard techniques adapted for decimal numbers (subtraction of each bit pair, right to left, "borrowing" as needed from bits to the left). However, if we can leverage the already familiar (and easier) technique of binary addition to subtract, that would be better. As we just learned, we can represent negative binary numbers by using the "two's complement" method and a negative place-weight bit. Here, we'll use those negative binary numbers to subtract through addition. Here's a sample problem:

Subtraction: 7_{10} - 5_{10} Addition equivalent: 7_{10} + (-5_{10})

If all we need to do is represent seven and negative five in binary (two's complemented) form, all we need is three bits plus the negative-weight bit:

positive seven = 0111_2
negative five = 1011_2

Now, let's add them together:

```
.                    1111  <--- Carry bits
.                     0111
.                   + 1011
.                   ------
.                    10010
.                    |
.             Discard extra bit
.
```

```
.             Answer = 0010₂
```

Since we've already defined our number bit field as three bits plus the negative-weight bit, the fifth bit in the answer (1) will be discarded to give us a result of 0010_2, or positive two, which is the correct answer.

Another way to understand why we discard that extra bit is to remember that the leftmost bit of the lower number possesses a negative weight, in this case equal to negative eight. When we add these two binary numbers together, what we're actually doing with the MSBs is subtracting the lower number's MSB from the upper number's MSB. In subtraction, one never "carries" a digit or bit on to the next left place-weight.

Let's try another example, this time with larger numbers. If we want to add -25_{10} to 18_{10}, we must first decide how large our binary bit field must be. To represent the largest (absolute value) number in our problem, which is twenty-five, we need at least five bits, plus a sixth bit for the negative-weight bit. Let's start by representing positive twenty-five, then finding the two's complement and putting it all together into one numeration:

```
+25₁₀  = 011001₂ (showing all six bits)
One's complement of 11001₂ = 100110₂
One's complement + 1 = two's complement = 100111₂
-25₁₀ = 100111₂
```

Essentially, we're representing negative twenty-five by using the negative-weight (sixth) bit with a value of negative thirty-two, plus positive seven (binary 111_2).

Now, let's represent positive eighteen in binary form, showing all six bits:

```
.              18₁₀  = 010010₂
.
.       Now, let's add them together and see what we get:
.
.                      11   <--- Carry bits
.                   100111
.                 + 010010
.                 --------
.                   111001
```

Since there were no "extra" bits on the left, there are no bits to discard. The leftmost bit on the answer is a 1, which means that the answer is negative, in two's complement form, as it should be. Converting the answer to decimal form by summing all the bits times their respective weight values, we get:

```
(1 x -32₁₀)  +  (1 x 16₁₀)  +  (1 x 8₁₀)  +  (1 x 1₁₀)  = -7₁₀
```

Indeed -7_{10} is the proper sum of -25_{10} and 18_{10}.

2.5 Overflow

One caveat with signed binary numbers is that of *overflow*, where the answer to an addition or subtraction problem exceeds the magnitude which can be represented with the alloted number of bits. Remember that the place of the sign bit is fixed from the beginning of the problem. With the last example problem, we used five binary bits to represent the magnitude of the number, and the left-most (sixth) bit as the negative-weight, or sign, bit. With five bits to represent magnitude, we have a representation range of 2^5, or thirty-two integer steps from 0 to maximum. This means that we can represent a number as high as $+31_{10}$ (011111_2), or as low as -32_{10} (100000_2). If we set up an addition problem with two binary numbers, the sixth bit used for sign, and the result either exceeds $+31_{10}$ or is less than -32_{10}, our answer will be incorrect. Let's try adding 17_{10} and 19_{10} to see how this overflow condition works for excessive positive numbers:

```
.       17₁₀  = 10001₂            19₁₀  = 10011₂
.
.                            1  11  <--- Carry bits
.    (Showing sign bits)     010001
.                           + 010011
.                           --------
.                             100100
```

The answer (100100_2), interpreted with the sixth bit as the -32_{10} place, is actually equal to -28_{10}, not $+36_{10}$ as we should get with $+17_{10}$ and $+19_{10}$ added together! Obviously, this is not correct. What went wrong? The answer lies in the restrictions of the six-bit number field within which we're working Since the magnitude of the true and proper sum (36_{10}) exceeds the allowable limit for our designated bit field, we have an *overflow error*. Simply put, six places doesn't give enough bits to represent the correct sum, so whatever figure we obtain using the strategy of discarding the left-most "carry" bit will be incorrect.

A similar error will occur if we add two negative numbers together to produce a sum that is too low for our six-bit binary field. Let's try adding -17_{10} and -19_{10} together to see how this works (or doesn't work, as the case may be!):

```
.      -17₁₀  = 101111₂           -19₁₀  = 101101₂
.
.                           1 1111  <--- Carry bits
.    (Showing sign bits)     101111
.                           + 101101
.                           --------
.                            1011100
.                            |
.                  Discard extra bit
.
FINAL ANSWER:   011100₂   = +28₁₀
```

The (incorrect) answer is a *positive* twenty-eight. The fact that the real sum of negative seventeen and negative nineteen was too low to be properly represented with a five bit magnitude

field and a sixth sign bit is the root cause of this difficulty.

Let's try these two problems again, except this time using the seventh bit for a sign bit, and allowing the use of 6 bits for representing the magnitude:

```
.          17₁₀ + 19₁₀                        (-17₁₀) + (-19₁₀)
.
.           1  11                               11 1111
.          0010001                               1101111
.        + 0010011                             + 1101101
.        ---------                             ---------
.          0100100₂                             11011100₂
.                                                 |
.                                          Discard extra bit
.
. ANSWERS:  0100100₂ = +36₁₀
.           1011100₂ = -36₁₀
```

By using bit fields sufficiently large to handle the magnitude of the sums, we arrive at the correct answers.

In these sample problems we've been able to detect overflow errors by performing the addition problems in decimal form and comparing the results with the binary answers. For example, when adding $+17_{10}$ and $+19_{10}$ together, we knew that the answer was *supposed* to be $+36_{10}$, so when the binary sum checked out to be -28_{10}, we knew that something had to be wrong. Although this is a valid way of detecting overflow, it is not very efficient. After all, the whole idea of complementation is to be able to reliably add binary numbers together and not have to double-check the result by adding the same numbers together in decimal form! This is especially true for the purpose of building electronic circuits to add binary quantities together: the circuit has to be able to check itself for overflow without the supervision of a human being who already knows what the correct answer is.

What we need is a simple error-detection method that doesn't require any additional arithmetic. Perhaps the most elegant solution is to check for the *sign* of the sum and compare it against the signs of the numbers added. Obviously, two positive numbers added together should give a positive result, and two negative numbers added together should give a negative result. Notice that whenever we had a condition of overflow in the example problems, the sign of the sum was always *opposite* of the two added numbers: $+17_{10}$ plus $+19_{10}$ giving -28_{10}, or -17_{10} plus -19_{10} giving $+28_{10}$. By checking the signs alone we are able to tell that something is wrong.

But what about cases where a positive number is added to a negative number? What sign should the sum be in order to be correct. Or, more precisely, what sign of sum would necessarily indicate an overflow error? The answer to this is equally elegant: there will *never* be an overflow error when two numbers of opposite signs are added together! The reason for this is apparent when the nature of overflow is considered. Overflow occurs when the magnitude of a number exceeds the range allowed by the size of the bit field. The sum of two identically-signed numbers may very well exceed the range of the bit field of those two numbers, and so in this case overflow is a possibility. However, if a positive number is added to a negative number, the

sum will always be closer to zero than either of the two added numbers: its magnitude *must* be less than the magnitude of either original number, and so overflow is impossible.

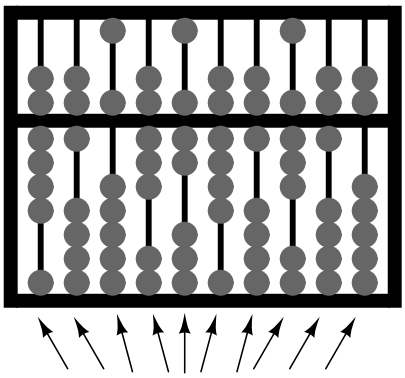
Fortunately, this technique of overflow detection is easily implemented in electronic circuitry, and it is a standard feature in digital adder circuits: a subject for a later chapter.

2.6 Bit groupings

The singular reason for learning and using the binary numeration system in electronics is to understand how to design, build, and troubleshoot circuits that represent and process numerical quantities in digital form. Since the bivalent (two-valued) system of binary bit numeration lends itself so easily to representation by ”on” and ”off” transistor states (saturation and cutoff, respectively), it makes sense to design and build circuits leveraging this principle to perform binary calculations.

If we were to build a circuit to represent a binary number, we would have to allocate enough transistor circuits to represent as many bits as we desire. In other words, in designing a digital circuit, we must first decide how many bits (maximum) we would like to be able to represent, since each bit requires one on/off circuit to represent it. This is analogous to designing an abacus to digitally represent decimal numbers: we must decide how many digits we wish to handle in this primitive ”calculator” device, for each digit requires a separate rod with its own beads.

A 10-rod abacus



A ten-rod abacus would be able to represent a ten-digit decimal number, or a maxmium value of 9,999,999,999. If we wished to represent a larger number on this abacus, we would be unable to, unless additional rods could be added to it.

In digital, electronic computer design, it is common to design the system for a common ”bit width:” a maximum number of bits allocated to represent numerical quantities. Early digital computers handled bits in groups of four or eight. More modern systems handle numbers in clusters of 32 bits or more. To more conveniently express the ”bit width” of such clusters in a digital computer, specific labels were applied to the more common groupings.

Eight bits, grouped together to form a single binary quantity, is known as a *byte*. Four bits, grouped together as one binary number, is known by the humorous title of *nibble*, often spelled as *nybble*.

A multitude of terms have followed byte and nibble for labeling specfiic groupings of binary bits. Most of the terms shown here are informal, and have not been made "authoritative" by any standards group or other sanctioning body. However, their inclusion into this chapter is warranted by their occasional appearance in technical literature, as well as the levity they add to an otherwise dry subject:

- **Bit**: A single, bivalent unit of binary notation. Equivalent to a decimal "digit."
- **Crumb**, **Tydbit**, or **Tayste**: Two bits.
- **Nibble**, or **Nybble**: Four bits.
- **Nickle**: Five bits.
- **Byte**: Eight bits.
- **Deckle**: Ten bits.
- **Playte**: Sixteen bits.
- **Dynner**: Thirty-two bits.
- **Word**: (system dependent).

The most ambiguous term by far is *word*, referring to the standard bit-grouping within a particular digital system. For a computer system using a 32 bit-wide "data path," a "word" would mean 32 bits. If the system used 16 bits as the standard grouping for binary quantities, a "word" would mean 16 bits. The terms *playte* and *dynner*, by contrast, always refer to 16 and 32 bits, respectively, regardless of the system context in which they are used.

Context dependence is likewise true for derivative terms of *word*, such as *double word* and *longword* (both meaning twice the standard bit-width), *half-word* (half the standard bit-width), and *quad* (meaning four times the standard bit-width). One humorous addition to this somewhat boring collection of *word*-derivatives is the term *chawmp*, which means the same as *half-word*. For example, a *chawmp* would be 16 bits in the context of a 32-bit digital system, and 18 bits in the context of a 36-bit system. Also, the term *gawble* is sometimes synonymous with *word*.

Definitions for bit grouping terms were taken from Eric S. Raymond's "Jargon Lexicon," an indexed collection of terms – both common and obscure – germane to the world of computer programming.

Chapter 3

LOGIC GATES

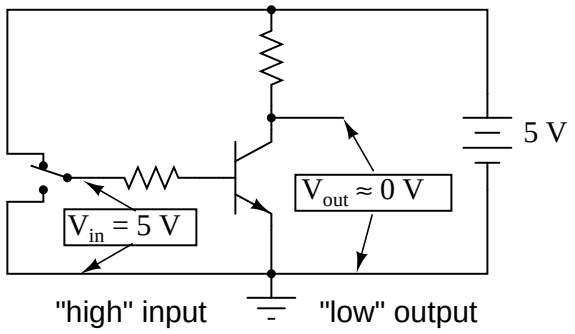
Contents

3.1 Digital signals and gates

While the binary numeration system is an interesting mathematical abstraction, we haven't yet seen its practical application to electronics. This chapter is devoted to just that: practically applying the concept of binary bits to circuits. What makes binary numeration so important to the application of digital electronics is the ease in which bits may be represented in physical terms. Because a binary bit can only have one of two different values, either 0 or 1, any physical medium capable of switching between two saturated states may be used to represent a bit. Consequently, any physical system capable of representing binary bits is able to represent numerical quantities, and potentially has the ability to manipulate those numbers. This is the basic concept underlying digital computing.

Electronic circuits are physical systems that lend themselves well to the representation of binary numbers. Transistors, when operated at their bias limits, may be in one of two different states: either cutoff (no controlled current) or saturation (maximum controlled current). If a transistor circuit is designed to maximize the probability of falling into either one of these states (and not operating in the linear, or *active*, mode), it can serve as a physical representation of a binary bit. A voltage signal measured at the output of such a circuit may also serve as a representation of a single bit, a low voltage representing a binary "0" and a (relatively) high voltage representing a binary "1." Note the following transistor circuit:

Transistor in saturation



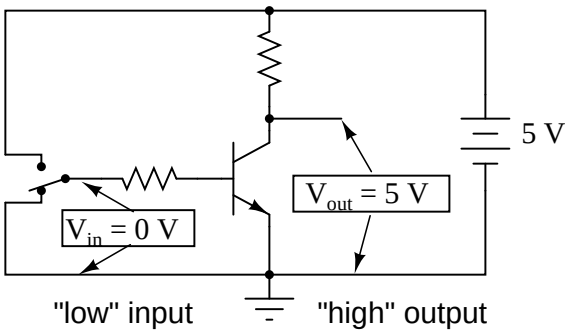
0 V = "low" logic level (0)

5 V = "high" logic level (1)

In this circuit, the transistor is in a state of saturation by virtue of the applied input voltage (5 volts) through the two-position switch. Because its saturated, the transistor drops very little voltage between collector and emitter, resulting in an output voltage of (practically) 0 volts. If we were using this circuit to represent binary bits, we would say that the input signal is a binary "1" and that the output signal is a binary "0." Any voltage close to full supply voltage (measured in reference to ground, of course) is considered a "1" and a lack of voltage is considered a "0." Alternative terms for these voltage levels are *high* (same as a binary "1") and *low* (same as a binary "0"). A general term for the representation of a binary bit by a circuit voltage is *logic level*.

Moving the switch to the other position, we apply a binary ”0” to the input and receive a binary ”1” at the output:

Transistor in cutoff



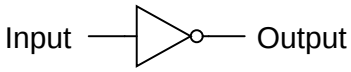
0 V = "low" logic level (0)

5 V = "high" logic level (1)

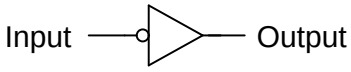
What we’ve created here with a single transistor is a circuit generally known as a *logic gate*, or simply *gate*. A gate is a special type of amplifier circuit designed to accept and generate voltage signals corresponding to binary 1’s and 0’s. As such, gates are not intended to be used for amplifying analog signals (voltage signals *between* 0 and full voltage). Used together, multiple gates may be applied to the task of binary number storage (memory circuits) or manipulation (computing circuits), each gate’s output representing one bit of a multi-bit binary number. Just how this is done is a subject for a later chapter. Right now it is important to focus on the operation of individual gates.

The gate shown here with the single transistor is known as an *inverter*, or NOT gate, because it outputs the exact opposite digital signal as what is input. For convenience, gate circuits are generally represented by their own symbols rather than by their constituent transistors and resistors. The following is the symbol for an inverter:

Inverter, or NOT gate



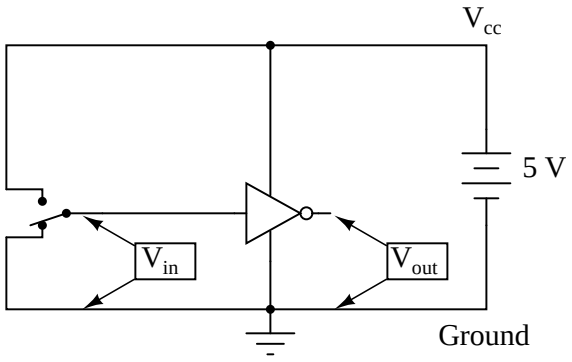
An alternative symbol for an inverter is shown here:



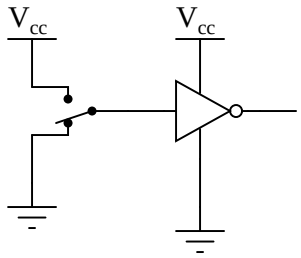
Notice the triangular shape of the gate symbol, much like that of an operational amplifier. As was stated before, gate circuits actually are amplifiers. The small circle, or ”bubble” shown on either the input or output terminal is standard for representing the inversion function. As you might suspect, if we were to remove the bubble from the gate symbol, leaving only a triangle, the resulting symbol would no longer indicate inversion, but merely direct amplification.

Such a symbol and such a gate actually do exist, and it is called a *buffer*, the subject of the next section.

Like an operational amplifier symbol, input and output connections are shown as single wires, the implied reference point for each voltage signal being "ground." In digital gate circuits, ground is almost always the negative connection of a single voltage source (power supply). Dual, or "split," power supplies are seldom used in gate circuitry. Because gate circuits are amplifiers, they require a source of power to operate. Like operational amplifiers, the power supply connections for digital gates are often omitted from the symbol for simplicity's sake. If we were to show *all* the necessary connections needed for operating this gate, the schematic would look something like this:



Power supply conductors are rarely shown in gate circuit schematics, even if the power supply connections at each gate are. Minimizing lines in our schematic, we get this:

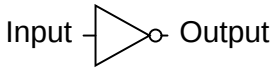


"V_{cc}" stands for the constant voltage supplied to the collector of a bipolar junction transistor circuit, in reference to ground. Those points in a gate circuit marked by the label "V_{cc}" are all connected to the same point, and that point is the positive terminal of a DC voltage source, usually 5 volts.

As we will see in other sections of this chapter, there are quite a few different types of logic gates, most of which have multiple input terminals for accepting more than one signal. The output of any gate is dependent on the state of its input(s) and its logical function.

One common way to express the particular function of a gate circuit is called a *truth table*. Truth tables show all combinations of input conditions in terms of logic level states (either "high" or "low," "1" or "0," for each input terminal of the gate), along with the corresponding output logic level, either "high" or "low." For the inverter, or NOT, circuit just illustrated, the truth table is very simple indeed:

NOT gate truth table



Input	Output
0	1
1	0

Truth tables for more complex gates are, of course, larger than the one shown for the NOT gate. A gate's truth table must have as many rows as there are possibilities for unique input combinations. For a single-input gate like the NOT gate, there are only two possibilities, 0 and 1. For a two input gate, there are *four* possibilities (00, 01, 10, and 11), and thus four rows to the corresponding truth table. For a three-input gate, there are *eight* possibilities (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110, and 111), and thus a truth table with eight rows are needed. The mathematically inclined will realize that the number of truth table rows needed for a gate is equal to 2 raised to the power of the number of input terminals.

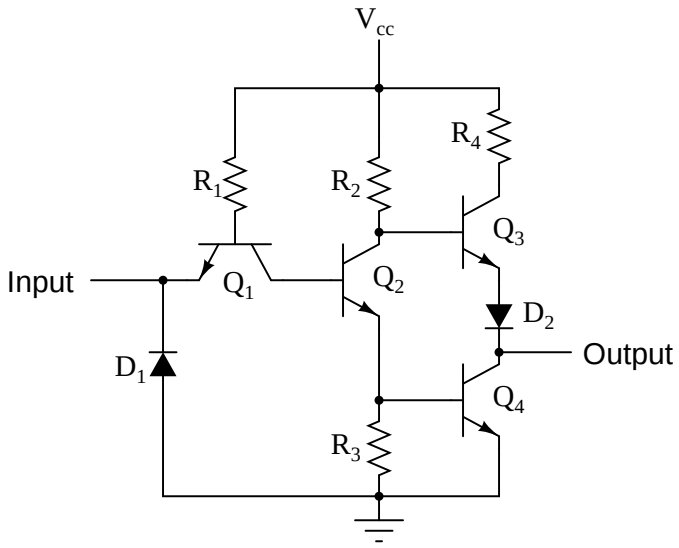
- **REVIEW:**
- In digital circuits, binary bit values of 0 and 1 are represented by voltage signals measured in reference to a common circuit point called *ground*. An absence of voltage represents a binary "0" and the presence of full DC supply voltage represents a binary "1."
- A *logic gate*, or simply *gate*, is a special form of amplifier circuit designed to input and output *logic level* voltages (voltages intended to represent binary bits). Gate circuits are most commonly represented in a schematic by their own unique symbols rather than by their constituent transistors and resistors.
- Just as with operational amplifiers, the power supply connections to gates are often omitted in schematic diagrams for the sake of simplicity.
- A *truth table* is a standard way of representing the input/output relationships of a gate circuit, listing all the possible input logic level combinations with their respective output logic levels.

3.2 The NOT gate

The single-transistor inverter circuit illustrated earlier is actually too crude to be of practical use as a gate. Real inverter circuits contain more than one transistor to maximize voltage gain (so as to ensure that the final output transistor is either in full cutoff or full saturation), and other components designed to reduce the chance of accidental damage.

Shown here is a schematic diagram for a real inverter circuit, complete with all necessary components for efficient and reliable operation:

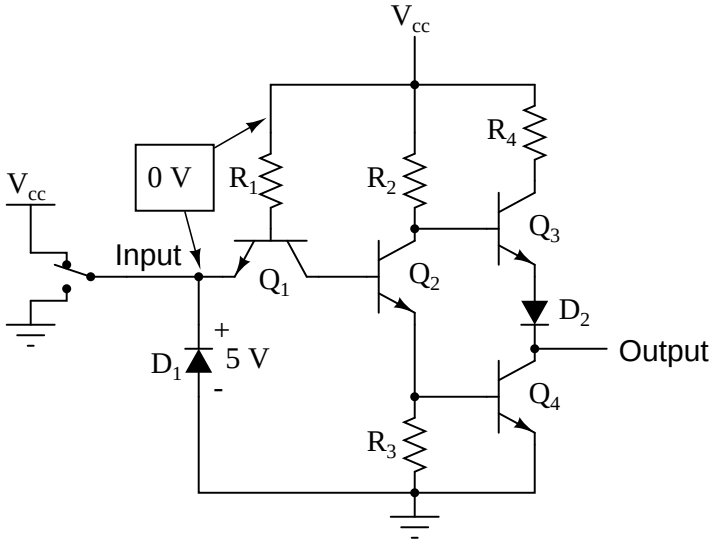
Practical inverter (NOT) circuit



This circuit is composed exclusively of resistors and bipolar transistors. Bear in mind that other circuit designs are capable of performing the NOT gate function, including designs substituting field-effect transistors for bipolar (discussed later in this chapter).

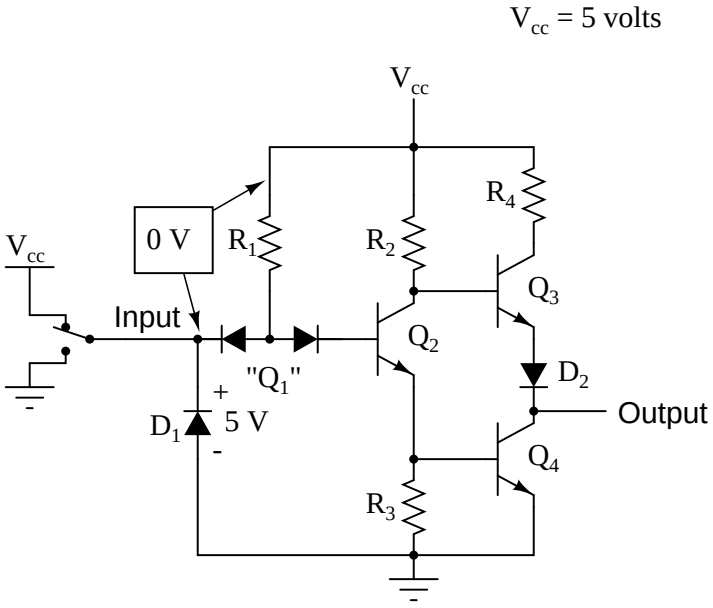
Let's analyze this circuit for the condition where the input is "high," or in a binary "1" state. We can simulate this by showing the input terminal connected to V_{cc} through a switch:

$V_{cc} = 5$ volts

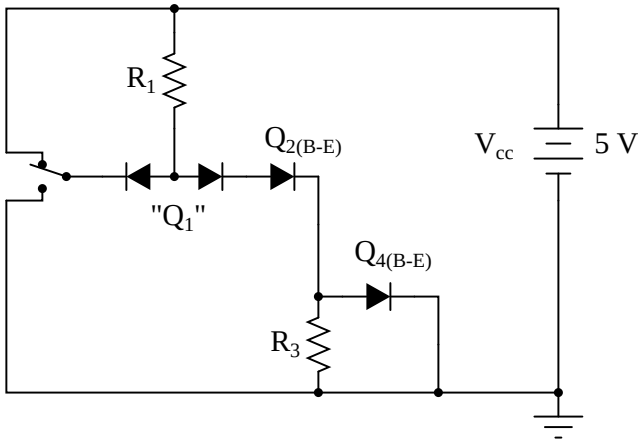


In this case, diode D_1 will be reverse-biased, and therefore not conduct any current. In fact,

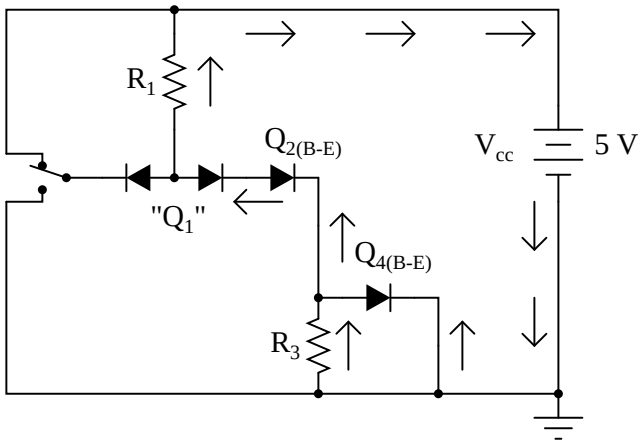
the only purpose for having D_1 in the circuit is to prevent transistor damage in the case of a *negative* voltage being impressed on the input (a voltage that is negative, rather than positive, with respect to ground). With no voltage between the base and emitter of transistor Q_1, we would expect no current through it, either. However, as strange as it may seem, transistor Q_1 is not being used as is customary for a transistor. In reality, Q_1 is being used in this circuit as nothing more than a back-to-back pair of diodes. The following schematic shows the real function of Q_1:



The purpose of these diodes is to "steer" current to or away from the base of transistor Q_2, depending on the logic level of the input. Exactly how these two diodes are able to "steer" current isn't exactly obvious at first inspection, so a short example may be necessary for understanding. Suppose we had the following diode/resistor circuit, representing the base-emitter junctions of transistors Q_2 and Q_4 as single diodes, stripping away all other portions of the circuit so that we can concentrate on the current "steered" through the two back-to-back diodes:

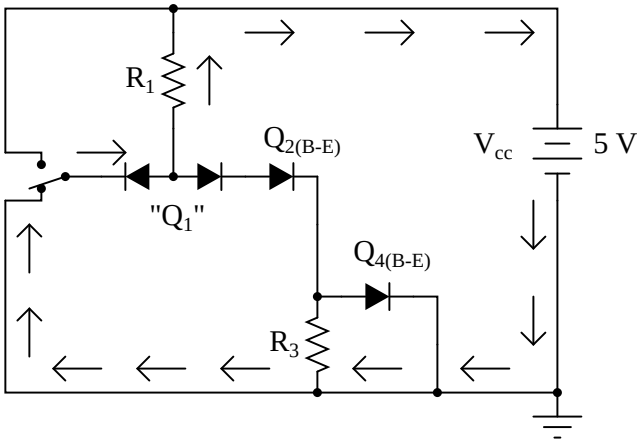


With the input switch in the ”up” position (connected to V_{cc}), it should be obvious that there will be no current through the left steering diode of Q_1, because there isn't any voltage in the switch-diode-R_1-switch loop to motivate electrons to flow. However, there *will* be current through the right steering diode of Q_1, as well as through Q_2's base-emitter diode junction and Q_4's base-emitter diode junction:



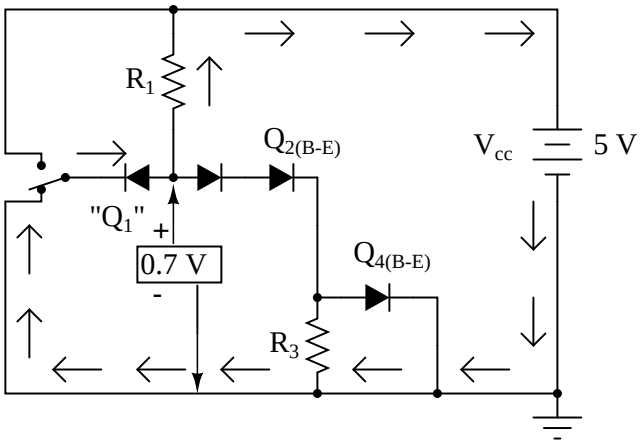
This tells us that in the real gate circuit, transistors Q_2 and Q_4 will have base current, which will turn them on to conduct collector current. The total voltage dropped between the base of Q_1 (the node joining the two back-to-back steering diodes) and ground will be about 2.1 volts, equal to the combined voltage drops of three PN junctions: the right steering diode, Q_2's base-emitter diode, and Q_4's base-emitter diode.

Now, let's move the input switch to the ”down” position and see what happens:



If we were to measure current in this circuit, we would find that *all* of the current goes through the left steering diode of Q_1 and *none* of it through the right diode. Why is this? It still appears as though there is a complete path for current through Q_4's diode, Q_2's diode, the right diode of the pair, and R_1, so why will there be no current through that path?

Remember that PN junction diodes are very nonlinear devices: they do not even begin to conduct current until the forward voltage applied across them reaches a certain minimum quantity, approximately 0.7 volts for silicon and 0.3 volts for germanium. And then when they begin to conduct current, they will not drop substantially more than 0.7 volts. When the switch in this circuit is in the "down" position, the left diode of the steering diode pair is fully conducting, and so it drops about 0.7 volts across it and no more.

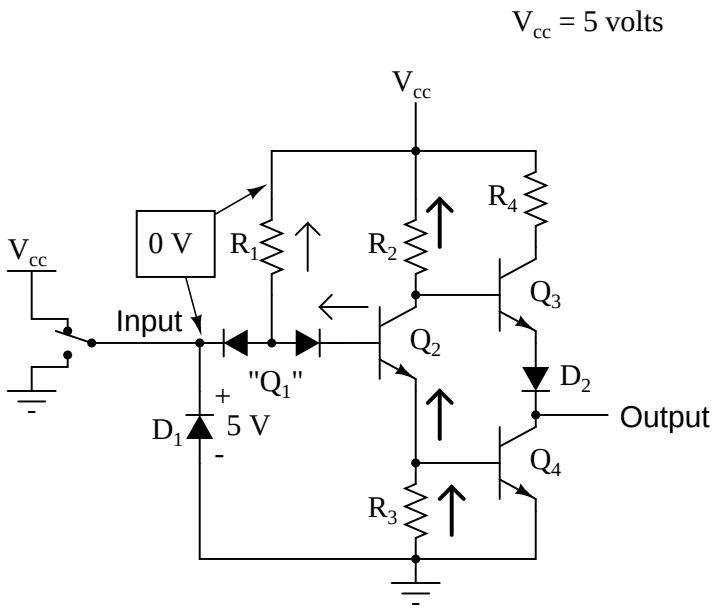


Recall that with the switch in the "up" position (transistors Q_2 and Q_4 conducting), there was about 2.1 volts dropped between those same two points (Q_1's base and ground), which also happens to be the *minimum* voltage necessary to forward-bias three series-connected silicon PN junctions into a state of conduction. The 0.7 volts provided by the left diode's forward voltage drop is simply insufficient to allow any electron flow through the series string of the right diode, Q_2's diode, and the R_3//Q_4 diode parallel subcircuit, and so no electrons flow through

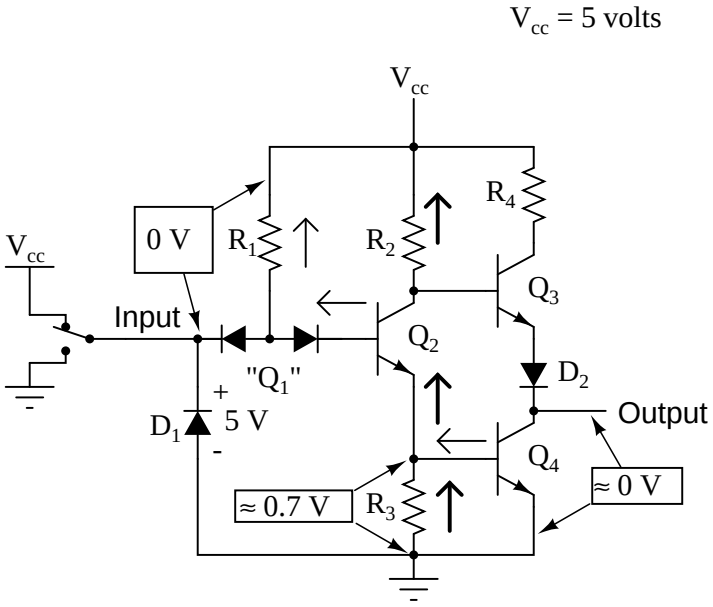
that path. With no current through the bases of either transistor Q_2 or Q_4, neither one will be able to conduct collector current: transistors Q_2 and Q_4 will both be in a state of cutoff.

Consequently, this circuit configuration allows 100 percent switching of Q_2 base current (and therefore control over the rest of the gate circuit, including voltage at the output) by diversion of current through the left steering diode.

In the case of our example gate circuit, the input is held "high" by the switch (connected to V_{cc}), making the left steering diode (zero voltage dropped across it). However, the right steering diode is conducting current through the base of Q_2, through resistor R_1:

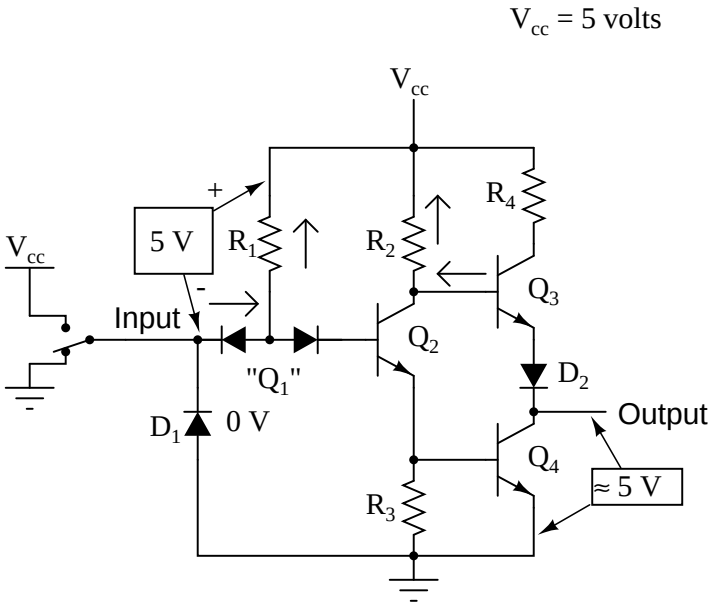


With base current provided, transistor Q_2 will be turned "on." More specifically, it will be *saturated* by virtue of the more-than-adequate current allowed by R_1 through the base. With Q_2 saturated, resistor R_3 will be dropping enough voltage to forward-bias the base-emitter junction of transistor Q_4, thus saturating it as well:



With Q_4 saturated, the output terminal will be almost directly shorted to ground, leaving the output terminal at a voltage (in reference to ground) of almost 0 volts, or a binary "0" ("low") logic level. Due to the presence of diode D_2, there will not be enough voltage between the base of Q_3 and its emitter to turn it on, so it remains in cutoff.

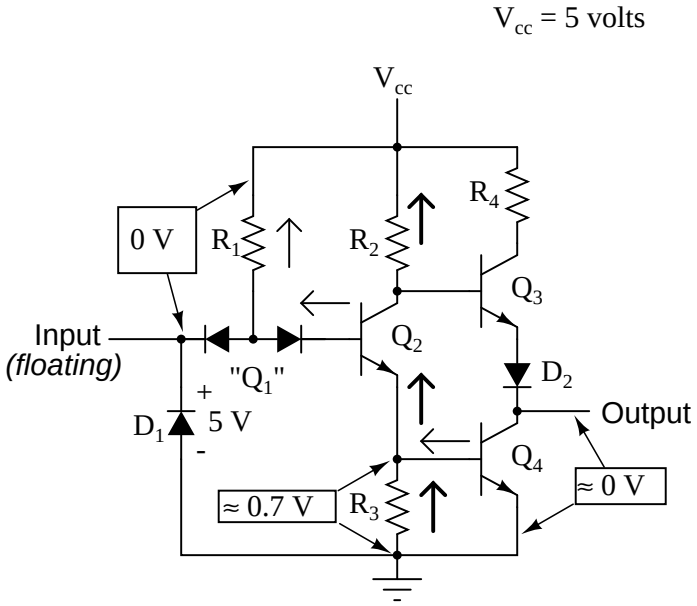
Let's see now what happens if we reverse the input's logic level to a binary "0" by actuating the input switch:



Now there will be current through the left steering diode of Q_1 and no current through the right steering diode. This eliminates current through the base of Q_2, thus turning it off. With Q_2 off, there is no longer a path for Q_4 base current, so Q_4 goes into cutoff as well. Q_3, on the other hand, now has sufficient voltage dropped between its base and ground to forward-bias its base-emitter junction and saturate it, thus raising the output terminal voltage to a "high" state. In actuality, the output voltage will be somewhere around 4 volts depending on the degree of saturation and any load current, but still high enough to be considered a "high" (1) logic level.

With this, our simulation of the inverter circuit is complete: a "1" in gives a "0" out, and vice versa.

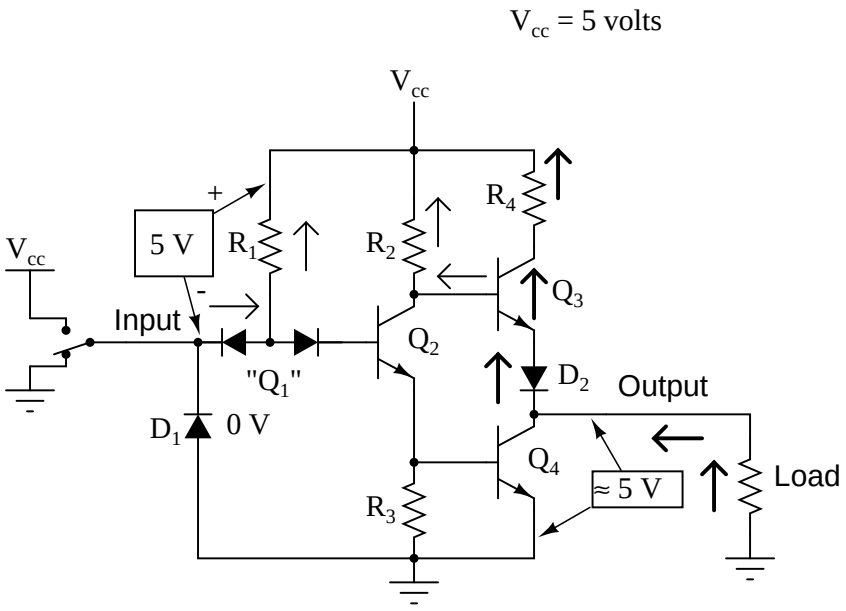
The astute observer will note that this inverter circuit's input will assume a "high" state of left floating (not connected to either V_{cc} or ground). With the input terminal left unconnected, there will be no current through the left steering diode of Q_1, leaving all of R_1's current to go through Q_2's base, thus saturating Q_2 and driving the circuit output to a "low" state:



The tendency for such a circuit to assume a high input state if left floating is one shared by all gate circuits based on this type of design, known as **T**ransistor-to-**T**ransistor **L**ogic, or *TTL*. This characteristic may be taken advantage of in simplifying the design of a gate's *output* circuitry, knowing that the outputs of gates typically drive the inputs of other gates. If the input of a TTL gate circuit assumes a high state when floating, then the output of any gate driving a TTL input need only provide a path to ground for a low state and be floating for a high state. This concept may require further elaboration for full understanding, so I will explore it in detail here.

A gate circuit as we have just analyzed has the ability to handle output current in two directions: in and out. Technically, this is known as *sourcing* and *sinking* current, respectively. When the gate output is high, there is continuity from the output terminal to V_{cc} through the top output transistor (Q_3), allowing electrons to flow from ground, through a load, into the

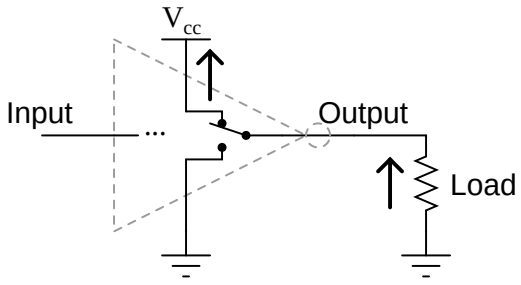
gate's output terminal, through the emitter of Q_3, and eventually up to the V_{cc} power terminal (positive side of the DC power supply):



*Inverter gate **sourcing** current*

To simplify this concept, we may show the output of a gate circuit as being a double-throw switch, capable of connecting the output terminal either to V_{cc} or ground, depending on its state. For a gate outputting a "high" logic level, the combination of Q_3 saturated and Q_4 cutoff is analogous to a double-throw switch in the "V_{cc}" position, providing a path for current through a grounded load:

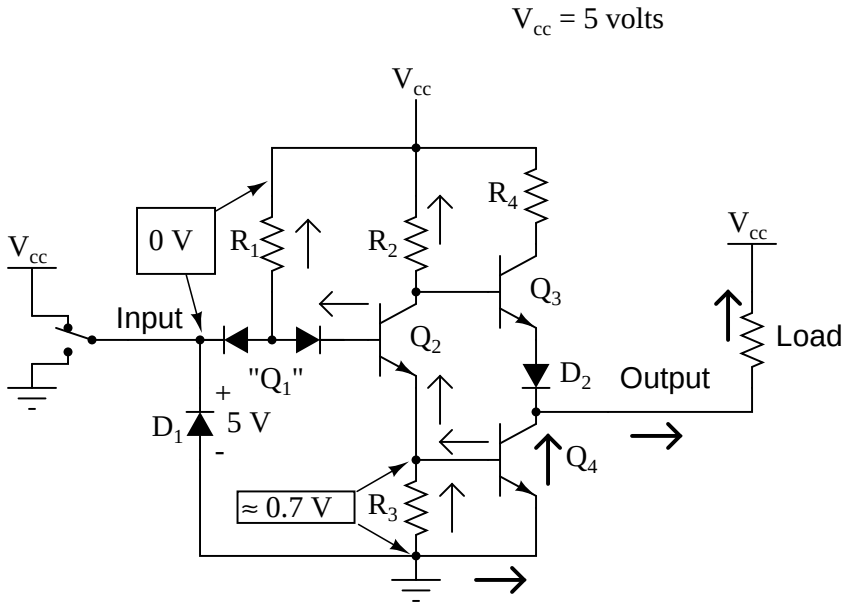
*Simplified gate circuit **sourcing** current*



Please note that this two-position switch shown inside the gate symbol is representative of transistors Q_3 and Q_4 alternately connecting the output terminal to V_{cc} or ground, *not* of the switch previously shown sending an input signal to the gate!

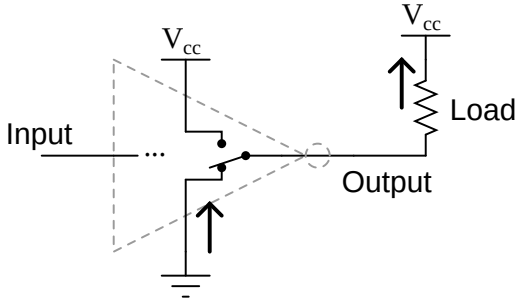
Conversely, when a gate circuit is outputting a "low" logic level to a load, it is analogous to the double-throw switch being set in the "ground" position. Current will then be going the

other way if the load resistance connects to V_{cc}: from ground, through the emitter of Q_4, out the output terminal, through the load resistance, and back to V_{cc}. In this condition, the gate is said to be *sinking* current:

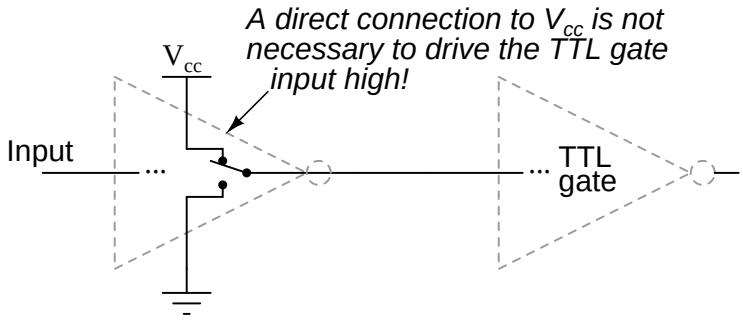


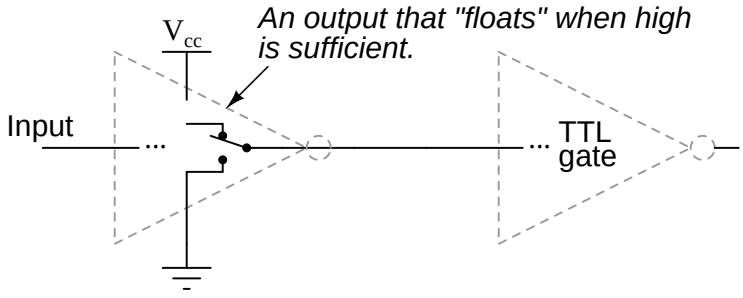
*Inverter gate **sinking** current*

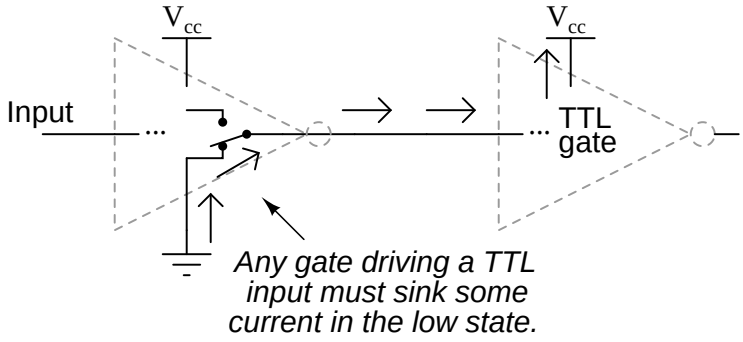
*Simplified gate circuit **sinking** current*



The combination of Q_3 and Q_4 working as a "push-pull" transistor pair (otherwise known as a *totem pole output*) has the ability to either source current (draw in current to V_{cc}) or sink current (output current from ground) to a load. However, a standard TTL gate *input* never needs current to be sourced, only sunk. That is, since a TTL gate input naturally assumes a high state if left floating, any gate output driving a TTL input need only sink current to provide a "0" or "low" input, and need not source current to provide a "1" or a "high" logic level at the input of the receiving gate:

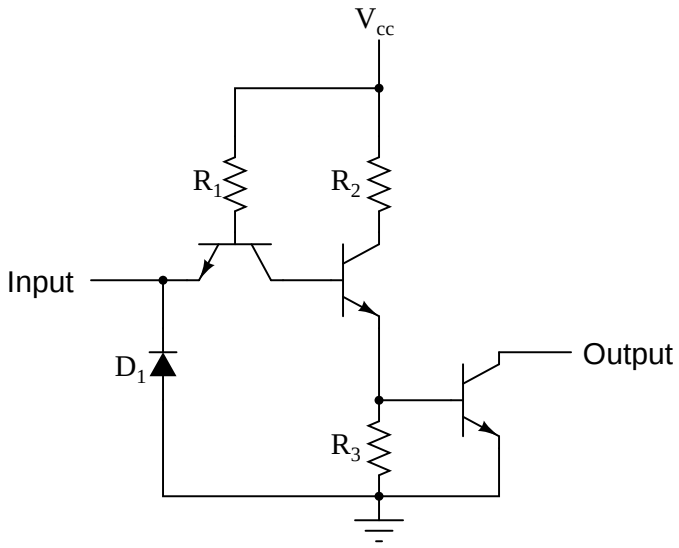






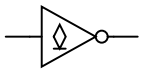
This means we have the option of simplifying the output stage of a gate circuit so as to eliminate Q_3 altogether. The result is known as an *open-collector output*:

Inverter circuit with open-collector output



To designate open-collector output circuitry within a standard gate symbol, a special marker is used. Shown here is the symbol for an inverter gate with open-collector output:

Inverter with open-collector output



Please keep in mind that the ”high” default condition of a floating gate input is only true for TTL circuitry, and not necessarily for other types, especially for logic gates constructed of field-effect transistors.

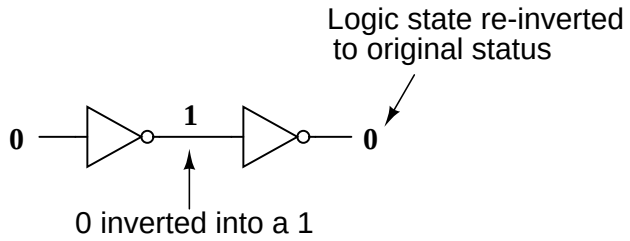
- **REVIEW:**
- An inverter, or NOT, gate is one that outputs the opposite state as what is input. That is, a ”low” input (0) gives a ”high” output (1), and vice versa.
- Gate circuits constructed of resistors and bipolar transistors as illustrated in this section are called *TTL*. TTL is an acronym standing for *Transistor-to-Transistor Logic*. There are other design methodologies used in gate circuits, some which use field-effect transistors rather than bipolar transistors.
- A gate is said to be *sourcing* current when it provides a path for current between the output terminal and the positive side of the DC power supply (V_{cc}). In other words, it is connecting the output terminal to the *power source* (+V).
- A gate is said to be *sinking* current when it provides a path for current between the output terminal and ground. In other words, it is grounding (sinking) the output terminal.

- Gate circuits with *totem pole* output stages are able to both *source* and *sink* current. Gate circuits with *open-collector* output stages are only able to sink current, and not source current. Open-collector gates are practical when used to drive TTL gate inputs because TTL inputs don’t require current sourcing.

3.3 The ”buffer” gate

If we were to connect two inverter gates together so that the output of one fed into the input of another, the two inversion functions would ”cancel” each other out so that there would be no inversion from input to final output:

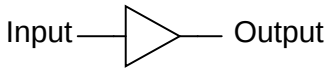
Double inversion



While this may seem like a pointless thing to do, it does have practical application. Remember that gate circuits are signal *amplifiers*, regardless of what logic function they may perform. A weak signal source (one that is not capable of sourcing or sinking very much current to a load) may be boosted by means of two inverters like the pair shown in the previous illustration. The logic level is unchanged, but the full current-sourcing or -sinking capabilities of the final inverter are available to drive a load resistance if needed.

For this purpose, a special logic gate called a *buffer* is manufactured to perform the same function as two inverters. Its symbol is simply a triangle, with no inverting ”bubble” on the output terminal:

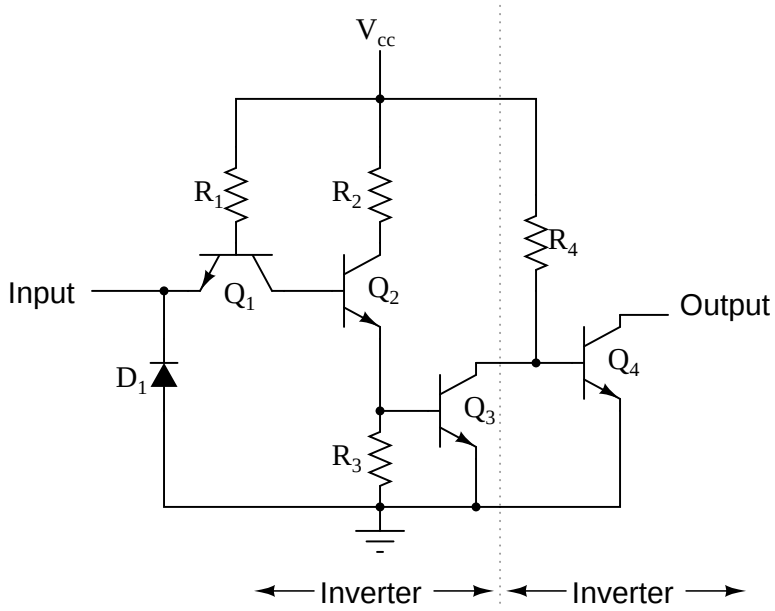
"Buffer" gate



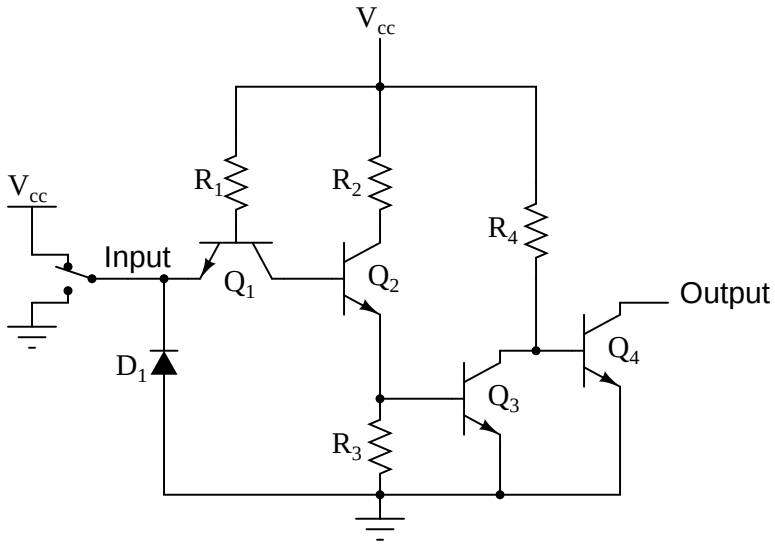
Input	Output
0	0
1	1

The internal schematic diagram for a typical open-collector buffer is not much different from that of a simple inverter: only one more common-emitter transistor stage is added to re-invert the output signal.

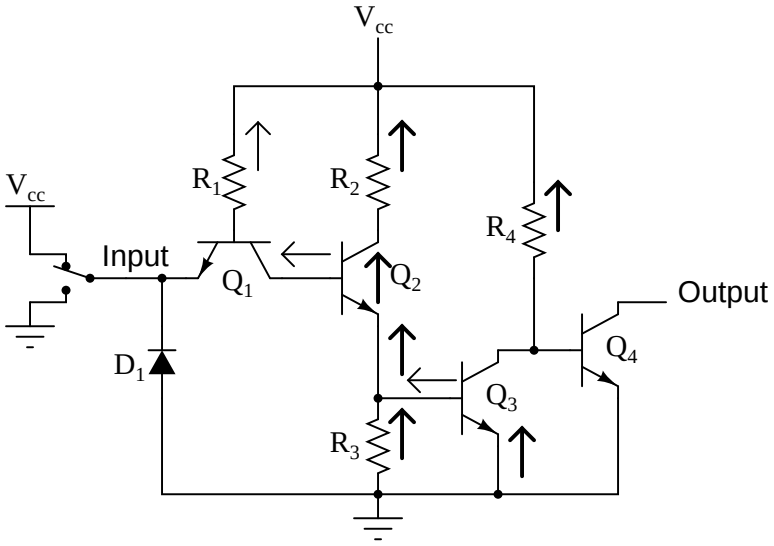
Buffer circuit with open-collector output



Let's analyze this circuit for two conditions: an input logic level of "1" and an input logic level of "0." First, a "high" (1) input:

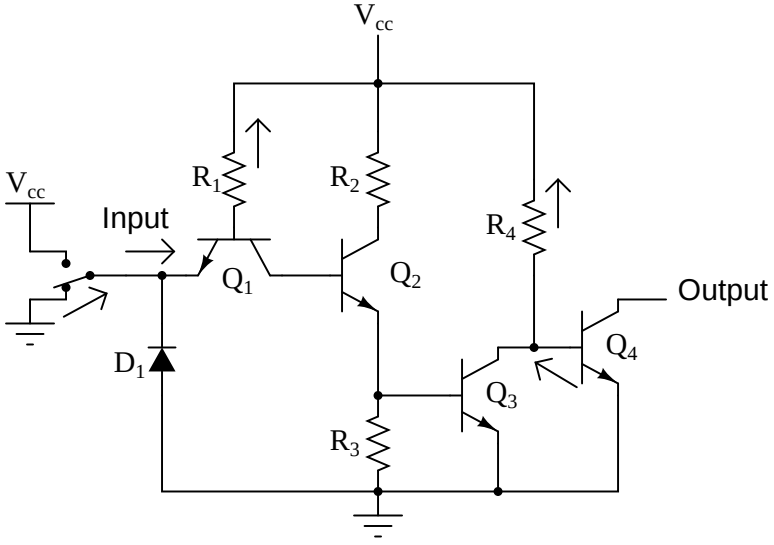


As before with the inverter circuit, the "high" input causes no conduction through the left steering diode of Q_1 (emitter-to-base PN junction). All of R_1's current goes through the base of transistor Q_2, saturating it:



Having Q_2 saturated causes Q_3 to be saturated as well, resulting in very little voltage dropped between the base and emitter of the final output transistor Q_4. Thus, Q_4 will be in cutoff mode, conducting no current. The output terminal will be floating (neither connected to ground nor V_{cc}), and this will be equivalent to a "high" state on the input of the next TTL gate that this one feeds in to. Thus, a "high" input gives a "high" output.

With a "low" input signal (input terminal grounded), the analysis looks something like this:

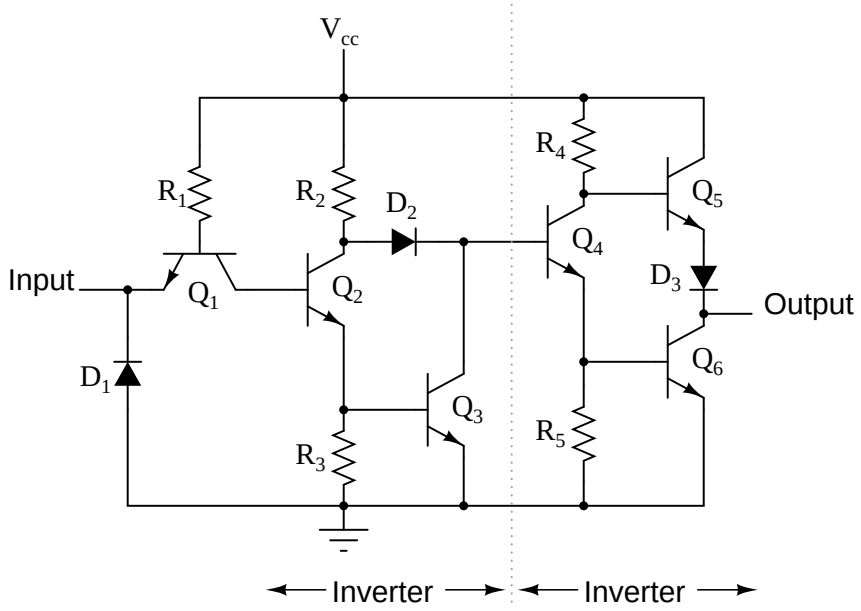


All of R_1's current is now diverted through the input switch, thus eliminating base current through Q_2. This forces transistor Q_2 into cutoff so that no base current goes through Q_3 either. With Q_3 cutoff as well, Q_4 is will be saturated by the current through resistor R_4, thus connecting the output terminal to ground, making it a "low" logic level. Thus, a "low" input

gives a ”low” output.

The schematic diagram for a buffer circuit with totem pole output transistors is a bit more complex, but the basic principles, and certainly the truth table, are the same as for the open-collector circuit:

Buffer circuit with totem pole output



- **REVIEW:**
- Two inverter, or NOT, gates connected in ”series” so as to invert, then re-invert, a binary bit perform the function of a buffer. Buffer gates merely serve the purpose of signal amplification: taking a ”weak” signal source that isn’t capable of sourcing or sinking much current, and boosting the current capacity of the signal so as to be able to drive a load.
- Buffer circuits are symbolized by a triangle symbol with no inverter ”bubble.”
- Buffers, like inverters, may be made in open-collector output or totem pole output forms.

3.4 Multiple-input gates

Inverters and buffers exhaust the possibilities for single-input gate circuits. What more can be done with a single logic signal but to buffer it or invert it? To explore more logic gate possibilities, we must add more input terminals to the circuit(s).

Adding more input terminals to a logic gate increases the number of input state possibilities. With a single-input gate such as the inverter or buffer, there can only be two possible input states: either the input is ”high” (1) or it is ”low” (0). As was mentioned previously in

this chapter, a two input gate has *four* possibilities (00, 01, 10, and 11). A three-input gate has *eight* possibilities (000, 001, 010, 011, 100, 101, 110, and 111) for input states. The number of possible input states is equal to two to the power of the number of inputs:

$$\text{Number of possible input states} = 2^n$$

Where,

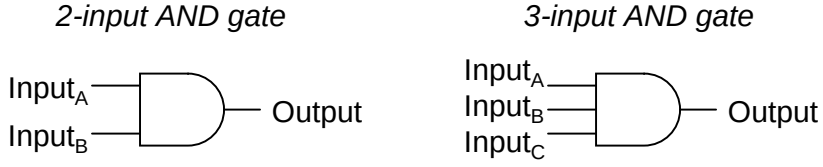
n = Number of inputs

This increase in the number of possible input states obviously allows for more complex gate behavior. Now, instead of merely inverting or amplifying (buffering) a single ”high” or ”low” logic level, the output of the gate will be determined by whatever *combination* of 1’s and 0’s is present at the input terminals.

Since so many combinations are possible with just a few input terminals, there are many different types of multiple-input gates, unlike single-input gates which can only be inverters or buffers. Each basic gate type will be presented in this section, showing its standard symbol, truth table, and practical operation. The actual TTL circuitry of these different gates will be explored in subsequent sections.

3.4.1 The AND gate

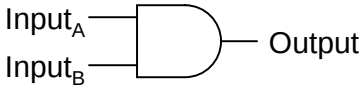
One of the easiest multiple-input gates to understand is the AND gate, so-called because the output of this gate will be ”high” (1) if and only if *all* inputs (first input *and* the second input *and* . . .) are ”high” (1). If any input(s) are ”low” (0), the output is guaranteed to be in a ”low” state as well.



In case you might have been wondering, AND gates are made with more than three inputs, but this is less common than the simple two-input variety.

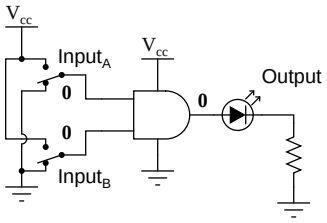
A two-input AND gate’s truth table looks like this:

2-input AND gate

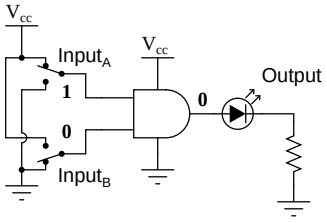


A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

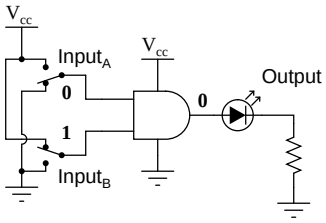
What this truth table means in practical terms is shown in the following sequence of illustrations, with the 2-input AND gate subjected to all possibilities of input logic levels. An LED (Light-Emitting Diode) provides visual indication of the output logic level:



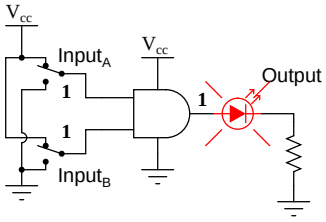
Input$_A$ = **0**
Input$_B$ = **0**
Output = **0** *(no light)*



Input$_A$ = **1**
Input$_B$ = **0**
Output = **0** *(no light)*



$Input_A$ = **0**
$Input_B$ = **1**
Output = **0** *(no light)*



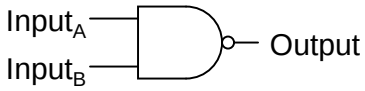
$Input_A$ = **1**
$Input_B$ = **1**
Output = **1** *(light!)*

It is only with all inputs raised to ”high” logic levels that the AND gate’s output goes ”high,” thus energizing the LED for only one out of the four input combination states.

3.4.2 The NAND gate

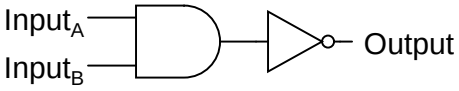
A variation on the idea of the AND gate is called the NAND gate. The word ”NAND” is a verbal contraction of the words NOT and AND. Essentially, a NAND gate behaves the same as an AND gate with a NOT (inverter) gate connected to the output terminal. To symbolize this output signal inversion, the NAND gate symbol has a bubble on the output line. The truth table for a NAND gate is as one might expect, exactly opposite as that of an AND gate:

2-input NAND gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

Equivalent gate circuit

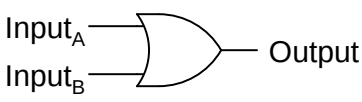


As with AND gates, NAND gates are made with more than two inputs. In such cases, the same general principle applies: the output will be ”low” (0) if and only if all inputs are ”high” (1). If any input is ”low” (0), the output will go ”high” (1).

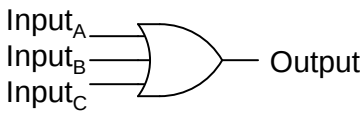
3.4.3 The OR gate

Our next gate to investigate is the OR gate, so-called because the output of this gate will be ”high” (1) if *any* of the inputs (first input *or* the second input *or* . . .) are ”high” (1). The output of an OR gate goes ”low” (0) if and only if all inputs are ”low” (0).

2-input OR gate

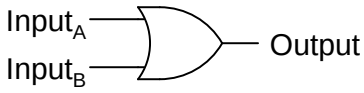


3-input OR gate



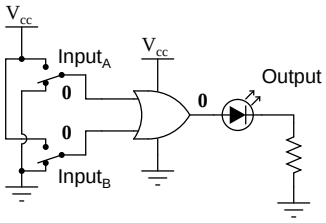
A two-input OR gate’s truth table looks like this:

2-input OR gate

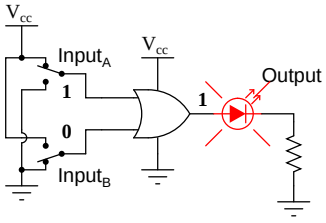


A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

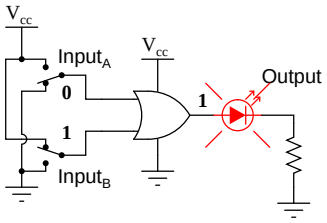
The following sequence of illustrations demonstrates the OR gate's function, with the 2-inputs experiencing all possible logic levels. An LED (Light-Emitting Diode) provides visual indication of the gate's output logic level:



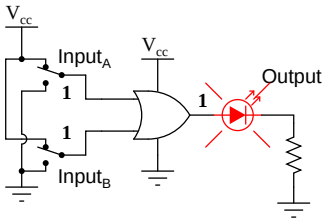
Input$_A$ = **0**
Input$_B$ = **0**
Output = **0** *(no light)*



Input$_A$ = **1**
Input$_B$ = **0**
Output = **1** *(light!)*



$Input_A$ = **0**
$Input_B$ = **1**
Output = **1** *(light!)*



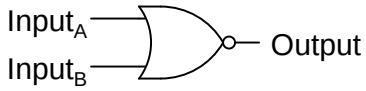
$Input_A$ = **1**
$Input_B$ = **1**
Output = **1** *(light!)*

A condition of any input being raised to a "high" logic level makes the OR gate's output go "high," thus energizing the LED for three out of the four input combination states.

3.4.4 The NOR gate

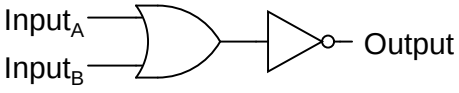
As you might have suspected, the NOR gate is an OR gate with its output inverted, just like a NAND gate is an AND gate with an inverted output.

2-input NOR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0

Equivalent gate circuit

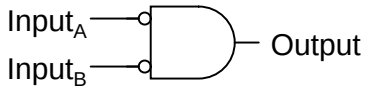


NOR gates, like all the other multiple-input gates seen thus far, can be manufactured with more than two inputs. Still, the same logical principle applies: the output goes ”low” (0) if any of the inputs are made ”high” (1). The output is ”high” (1) only when all inputs are ”low” (0).

3.4.5 The Negative-AND gate

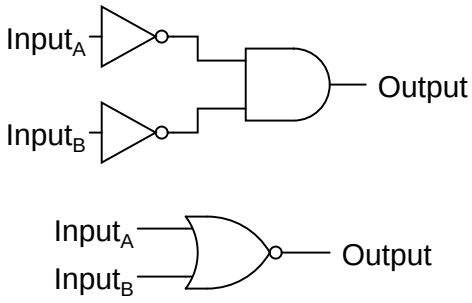
A Negative-AND gate functions the same as an AND gate with all its inputs inverted (connected through NOT gates). In keeping with standard gate symbol convention, these inverted inputs are signified by bubbles. Contrary to most peoples' first instinct, the logical behavior of a Negative-AND gate is *not* the same as a NAND gate. Its truth table, actually, is identical to a NOR gate:

2-input Negative-AND gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0

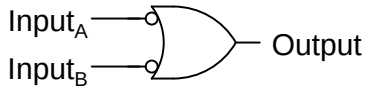
Equivalent gate circuits



3.4.6 The Negative-OR gate

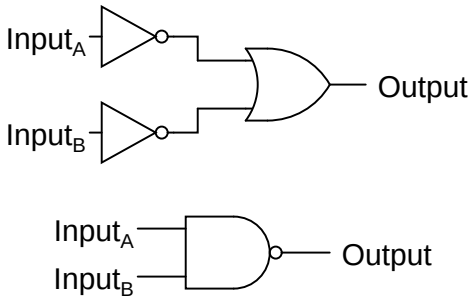
Following the same pattern, a Negative-OR gate functions the same as an OR gate with all its inputs inverted. In keeping with standard gate symbol convention, these inverted inputs are signified by bubbles. The behavior and truth table of a Negative-OR gate is the same as for a NAND gate:

2-input Negative-OR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

Equivalent gate circuits

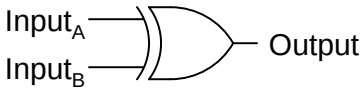


3.4.7 The Exclusive-OR gate

The last six gate types are all fairly direct variations on three basic functions: AND, OR, and NOT. The Exclusive-OR gate, however, is something quite different.

Exclusive-OR gates output a ”high” (1) logic level if the inputs are at *different* logic levels, either 0 and 1 or 1 and 0. Conversely, they output a ”low” (0) logic level if the inputs are at the *same* logic levels. The Exclusive-OR (sometimes called XOR) gate has both a symbol and a truth table pattern that is unique:

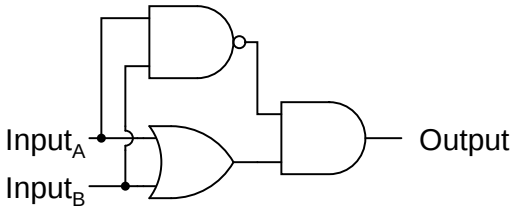
Exclusive-OR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

There are equivalent circuits for an Exclusive-OR gate made up of AND, OR, and NOT gates, just as there were for NAND, NOR, and the negative-input gates. A rather direct approach to simulating an Exclusive-OR gate is to start with a regular OR gate, then add additional gates to inhibit the output from going ”high” (1) when both inputs are ”high” (1):

Exclusive-OR equivalent circuit

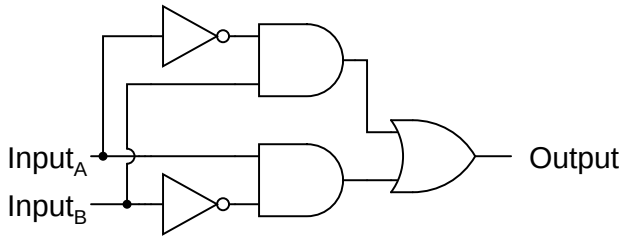


A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

In this circuit, the final AND gate acts as a buffer for the output of the OR gate whenever the NAND gate’s output is high, which it is for the first three input state combinations (00, 01, and 10). However, when both inputs are ”high” (1), the NAND gate outputs a ”low” (0) logic level, which forces the final AND gate to produce a ”low” (0) output.

Another equivalent circuit for the Exclusive-OR gate uses a strategy of two AND gates with inverters, set up to generate ”high” (1) outputs for input conditions 01 and 10. A final OR gate then allows either of the AND gates’ ”high” outputs to create a final ”high” output:

Exclusive-OR equivalent circuit



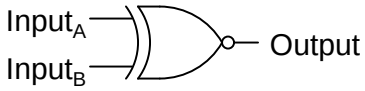
A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

Exclusive-OR gates are very useful for circuits where two or more binary numbers are to be compared bit-for-bit, and also for error detection (parity check) and code conversion (binary to Grey and vice versa).

3.4.8 The Exclusive-NOR gate

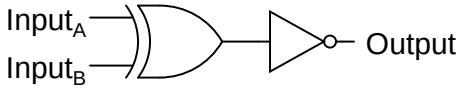
Finally, our last gate for analysis is the Exclusive-NOR gate, otherwise known as the XNOR gate. It is equivalent to an Exclusive-OR gate with an inverted output. The truth table for this gate is exactly opposite as for the Exclusive-OR gate:

Exclusive-NOR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

Equivalent gate circuit



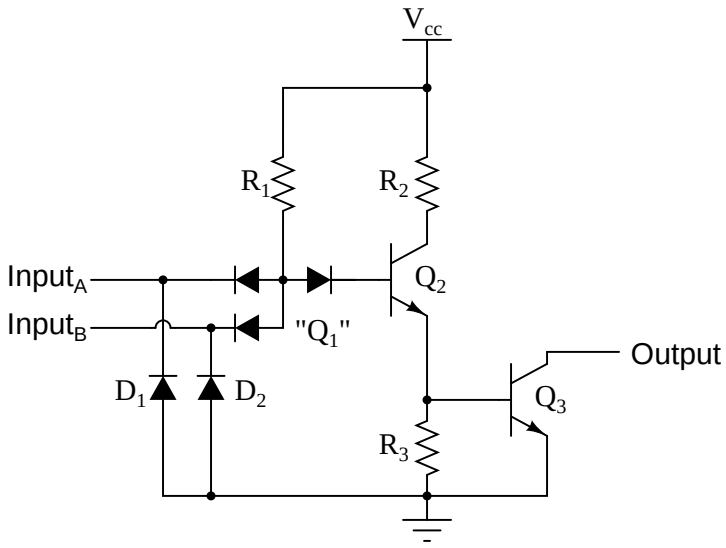
As indicated by the truth table, the purpose of an Exclusive-NOR gate is to output a ”high” (1) logic level whenever both inputs are at the same logic levels (either 00 or 11).

- **REVIEW:**
- Rule for an AND gate: output is ”high” only if first input *and* second input are both ”high.”
- Rule for an OR gate: output is ”high” if input A *or* input B are ”high.”
- Rule for a NAND gate: output is *not* ”high” if both the first input *and* the second input are ”high.”
- Rule for a NOR gate: output is *not* ”high” if either the first input *or* the second input are ”high.”
- A Negative-AND gate behaves like a NOR gate.
- A Negative-OR gate behaves like a NAND gate.
- Rule for an Exclusive-OR gate: output is ”high” if the input logic levels are *different*.
- Rule for an Exclusive-NOR gate: output is ”high” if the input logic levels are the *same*.

3.5 TTL NAND and AND gates

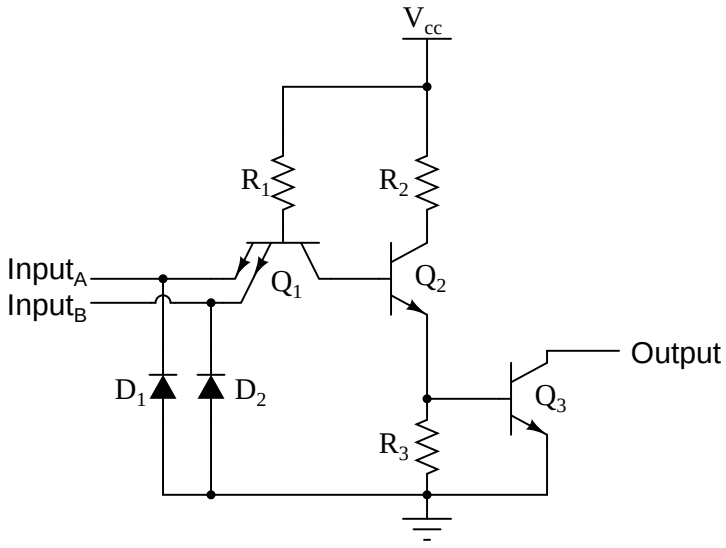
Suppose we altered our basic open-collector inverter circuit, adding a second input terminal just like the first:

A two-input inverter circuit



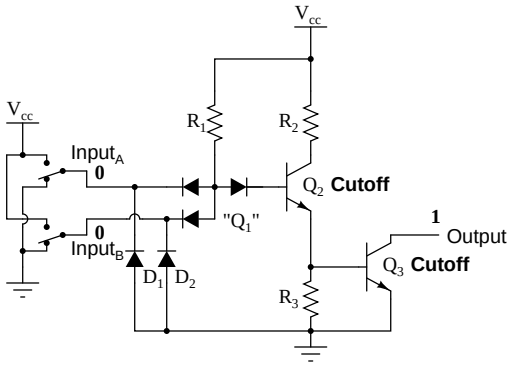
This schematic illustrates a real circuit, but it isn't called a "two-input inverter." Through analysis we will discover what this circuit's logic function is and correspondingly what it should be designated as.

Just as in the case of the inverter and buffer, the "steering" diode cluster marked "Q_1" is actually formed like a transistor, even though it isn't used in any amplifying capacity. Unfortunately, a simple NPN transistor structure is inadequate to simulate the *three* PN junctions necessary in this diode network, so a different transistor (and symbol) is needed. This transistor has one collector, one base, and *two* emitters, and in the circuit it looks like this:



In the single-input (inverter) circuit, grounding the input resulted in an output that assumed the "high" (1) state. In the case of the open-collector output configuration, this "high" state was simply "floating." Allowing the input to float (or be connected to V_{cc}) resulted in the output becoming grounded, which is the "low" or 0 state. Thus, a 1 in resulted in a 0 out, and vice versa.

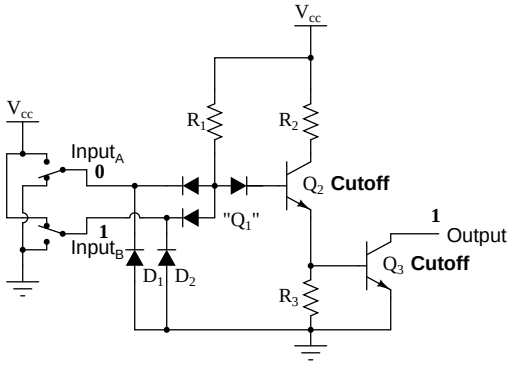
Since this circuit bears so much resemblance to the simple inverter circuit, the only difference being a second input terminal connected in the same way to the base of transistor Q_2, we can say that each of the inputs will have the same effect on the output. Namely, if either of the inputs are grounded, transistor Q_2 will be forced into a condition of cutoff, thus turning Q_3 off and floating the output (output goes "high"). The following series of illustrations shows this for three input states (00, 01, and 10):



$Input_A$ = **0**

$Input_B$ = **0**

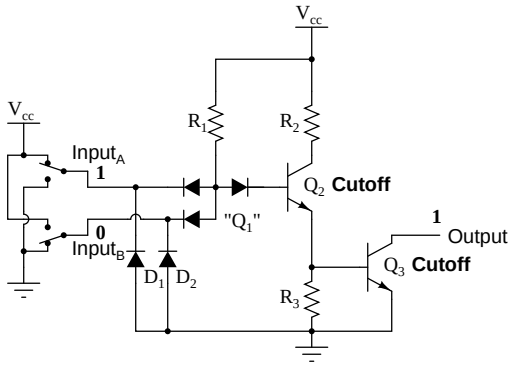
Output = **1**



$Input_A$ = **0**

$Input_B$ = **1**

Output = **1**

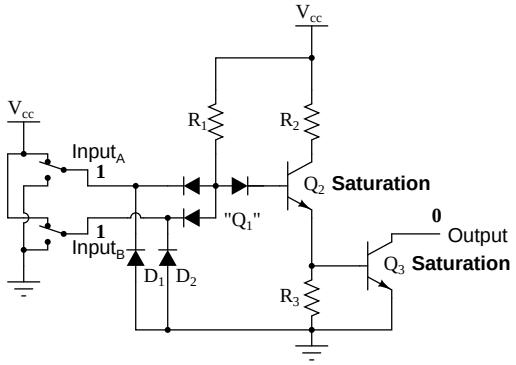


$Input_A$ = **1**

$Input_B$ = **0**

Output = **1**

In any case where there is a grounded ("low") input, the output is guaranteed to be floating ("high"). Conversely, the only time the output will ever go "low" is if transistor Q_3 turns on, which means transistor Q_2 must be turned on (saturated), which means neither input can be diverting R_1 current away from the base of Q_2. The only condition that will satisfy this requirement is when both inputs are "high" (1):



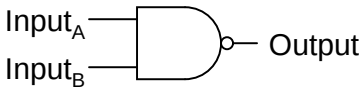
$Input_A$ = **1**

$Input_B$ = **1**

Output = **0**

Collecting and tabulating these results into a truth table, we see that the pattern matches that of the NAND gate:

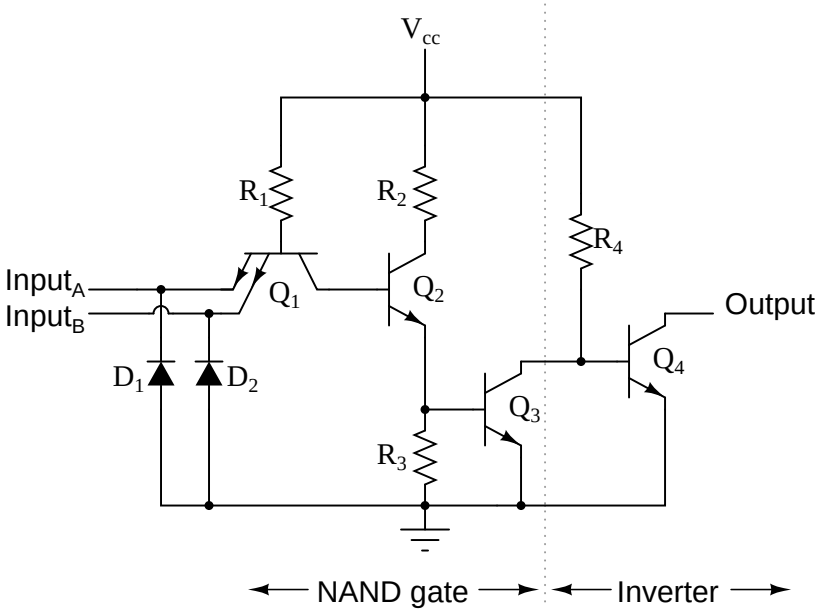
NAND gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

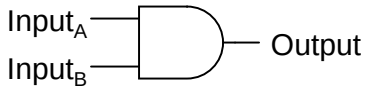
In the earlier section on NAND gates, this type of gate was created by taking an AND gate and increasing its complexity by adding an inverter (NOT gate) to the output. However, when we examine this circuit, we see that the NAND function is actually the simplest, most natural mode of operation for this TTL design. To create an AND function using TTL circuitry, we need to *increase* the complexity of this circuit by adding an inverter stage to the output, just like we had to add an additional transistor stage to the TTL inverter circuit to turn it into a buffer:

AND gate with open-collector output



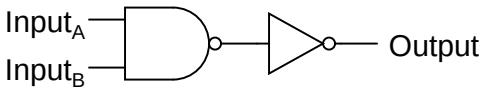
The truth table and equivalent gate circuit (an inverted-output NAND gate) are shown here:

AND gate



A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

Equivalent circuit



Of course, both NAND and AND gate circuits may be designed with totem-pole output stages rather than open-collector. I am opting to show the open-collector versions for the sake of simplicity.

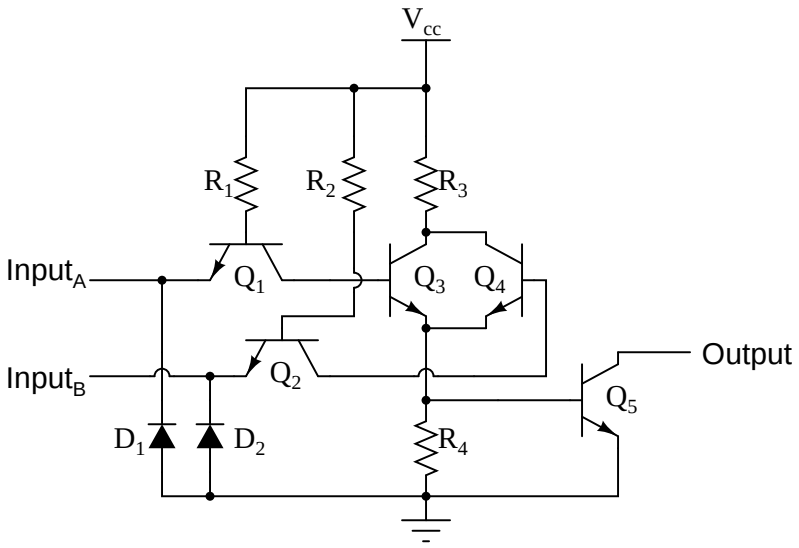
- **REVIEW:**

- A TTL NAND gate can be made by taking a TTL inverter circuit and adding another input.

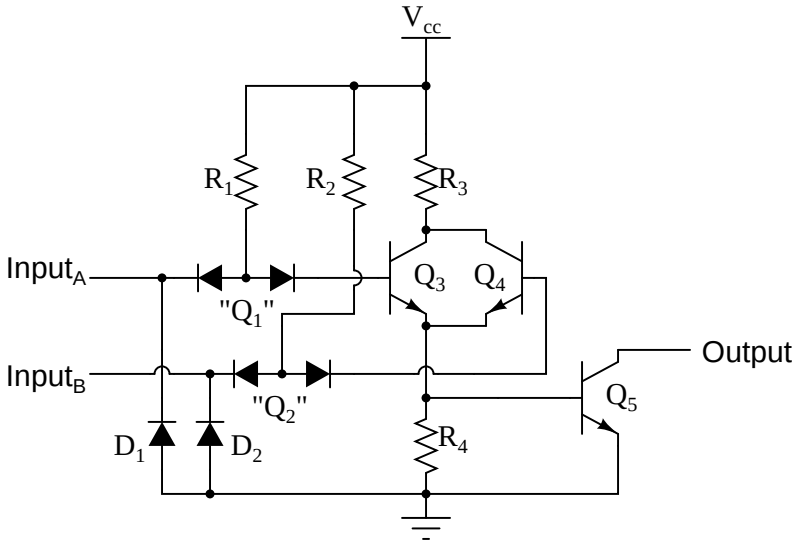
- An AND gate may be created by adding an inverter stage to the output of the NAND gate circuit.

3.6 TTL NOR and OR gates

Let's examine the following TTL circuit and analyze its operation:



Transistors Q_1 and Q_2 are both arranged in the same manner that we've seen for transistor Q_1 in all the other TTL circuits. Rather than functioning as amplifiers, Q_1 and Q_2 are both being used as two-diode "steering" networks. We may replace Q_1 and Q_2 with diode sets to help illustrate:



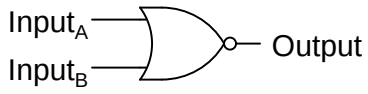
If input A is left floating (or connected to V_{cc}), current will go through the base of transistor Q_3, saturating it. If input A is grounded, that current is diverted away from Q_3's base through the left steering diode of "Q_1," thus forcing Q_3 into cutoff. The same can be said for input B and transistor Q_4: the logic level of input B determines Q_4's conduction: either saturated or cutoff.

Notice how transistors Q_3 and Q_4 are paralleled at their collector and emitter terminals. In essence, these two transistors are acting as paralleled switches, allowing current through

resistors R_3 and R_4 according to the logic levels of inputs A and B. If *any* input is at a "high" (1) level, then at least one of the two transistors (Q_3 and/or Q_4) will be saturated, allowing current through resistors R_3 and R_4, and turning on the final output transistor Q_5 for a "low" (0) logic level output. The only way the output of this circuit can ever assume a "high" (1) state is if *both* Q_3 and Q_4 are cutoff, which means *both* inputs would have to be grounded, or "low" (0).

This circuit's truth table, then, is equivalent to that of the NOR gate:

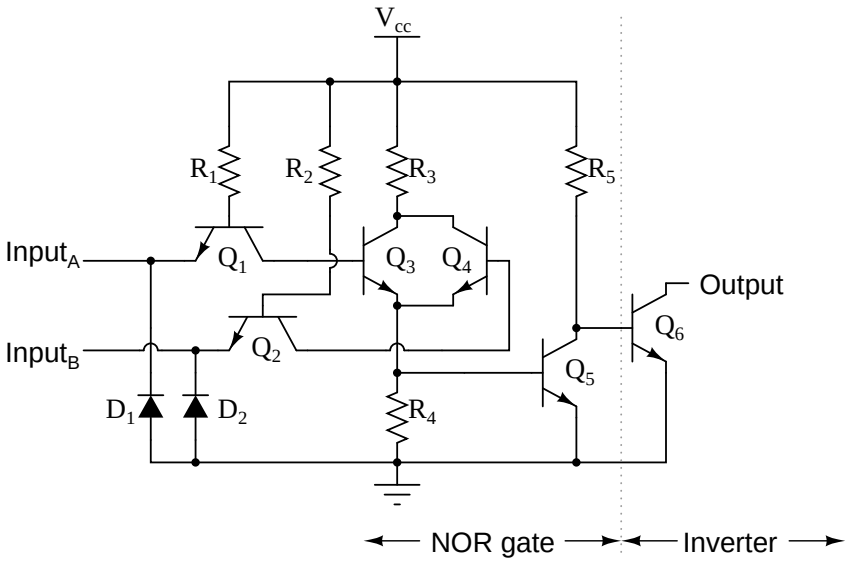
NOR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0

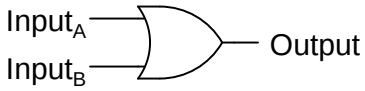
In order to turn this NOR gate circuit into an OR gate, we would have to invert the output logic level with another transistor stage, just like we did with the NAND-to-AND gate example:

OR gate with open-collector output



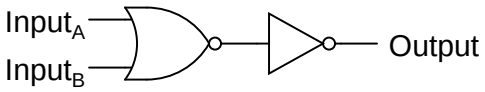
The truth table and equivalent gate circuit (an inverted-output NOR gate) are shown here:

OR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

Equivalent circuit



Of course, totem-pole output stages are also possible in both NOR and OR TTL logic circuits.

- **REVIEW:**

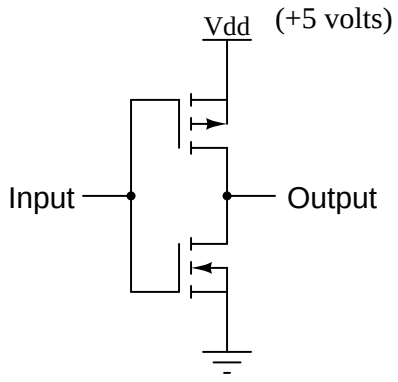
- An OR gate may be created by adding an inverter stage to the output of the NOR gate circuit.

3.7 CMOS gate circuitry

Up until this point, our analysis of transistor logic circuits has been limited to the *TTL* design paradigm, whereby bipolar transistors are used, and the general strategy of floating inputs being equivalent to "high" (connected to V_{cc}) inputs – and correspondingly, the allowance of "open-collector" output stages – is maintained. This, however, is not the only way we can build logic gates.

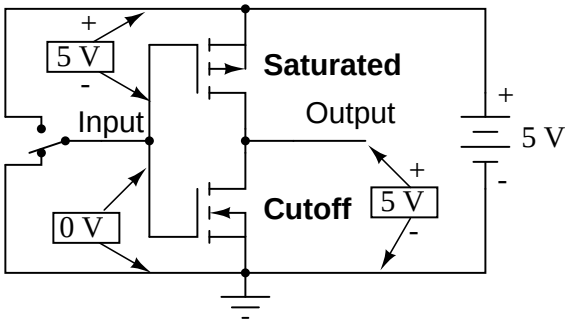
Field-effect transistors, particularly the insulated-gate variety, may be used in the design of gate circuits. Being voltage-controlled rather than current-controlled devices, IGFETs tend to allow very simple circuit designs. Take for instance, the following inverter circuit built using P- and N-channel IGFETs:

Inverter circuit using IGFETs



Notice the "V_{dd}" label on the positive power supply terminal. This label follows the same convention as "V_{cc}" in TTL circuits: it stands for the constant voltage applied to the drain of a field effect transistor, in reference to ground.

Let's connect this gate circuit to a power source and input switch, and examine its operation. Please note that these IGFET transistors are E-type (Enhancement-mode), and so are *normally-off* devices. It takes an applied voltage between gate and drain (actually, between gate and substrate) of the correct polarity to bias them *on*.



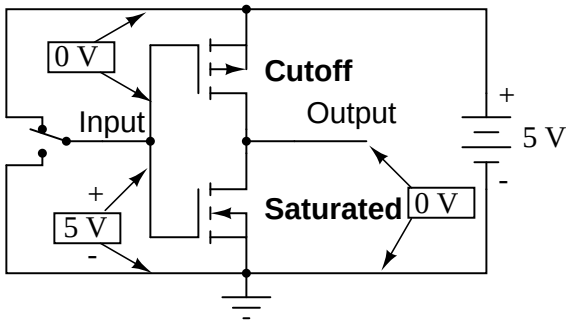
Input = "low" (0)

Output = "high" (1)

The upper transistor is a P-channel IGFET. When the channel (substrate) is made more positive than the gate (gate negative in reference to the substrate), the channel is enhanced and current is allowed between source and drain. So, in the above illustration, the top transistor is turned on.

The lower transistor, having zero voltage between gate and substrate (source), is in its normal mode: *off*. Thus, the action of these two transistors are such that the output terminal of the gate circuit has a solid connection to V_{dd} and a very high resistance connection to ground. This makes the output "high" (1) for the "low" (0) state of the input.

Next, we'll move the input switch to its other position and see what happens:



Input = "high" (1)

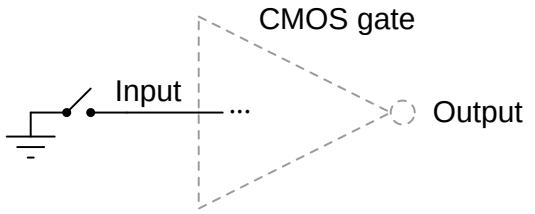
Output = "low" (0)

Now the lower transistor (N-channel) is saturated because it has sufficient voltage of the correct polarity applied between gate and substrate (channel) to turn it on (positive on gate, negative on the channel). The upper transistor, having zero voltage applied between its gate and substrate, is in its normal mode: *off*. Thus, the output of this gate circuit is now "low" (0). Clearly, this circuit exhibits the behavior of an inverter, or NOT gate.

Using field-effect transistors instead of bipolar transistors has greatly simplified the design of the inverter gate. Note that the output of this gate never floats as is the case with the simplest TTL circuit: it has a natural "totem-pole" configuration, capable of both sourcing and sinking load current. Key to this gate circuit's elegant design is the *complementary* use of both P- and N-channel IGFETs. Since IGFETs are more commonly known as MOSFETs (**M**etal-**O**xide-**S**emiconductor **F**ield **E**ffect **T**ransistor), and this circuit uses both P- and N-channel transistors together, the general classification given to gate circuits like this one is *CMOS*: **C**omplementary **M**etal **O**xide **S**emiconductor.

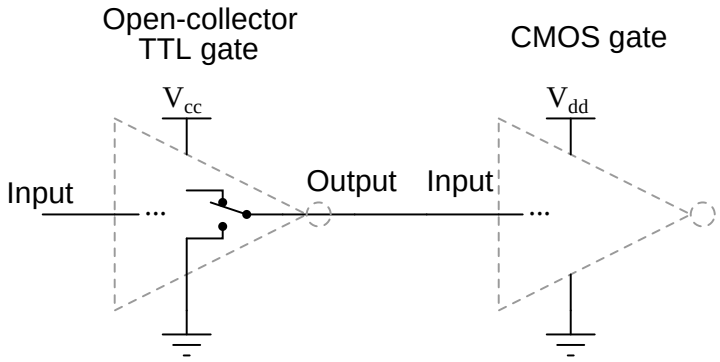
CMOS circuits aren't plagued by the inherent nonlinearities of the field-effect transistors, because as digital circuits their transistors always operate in either the *saturated* or *cutoff* modes and never in the *active* mode. Their inputs are, however, sensitive to high voltages generated by electrostatic (static electricity) sources, and may even be activated into "high" (1) or "low" (0) states by spurious voltage sources if left floating. For this reason, it is inadvisable to allow a CMOS logic gate input to float under any circumstances. Please note that this is very different from the behavior of a TTL gate where a floating input was safely interpreted as a "high" (1) logic level.

This may cause a problem if the input to a CMOS logic gate is driven by a single-throw switch, where one state has the input solidly connected to either V_{dd} or ground and the other state has the input floating (not connected to anything):



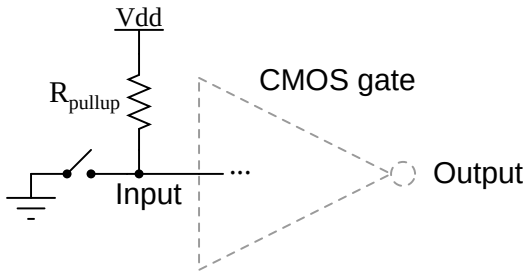
When switch is closed, the gate sees a definite "low" (0) input. However, when switch is open, the input logic level will be uncertain because it's floating.

Also, this problem arises if a CMOS gate input is being driven by an *open-collector* TTL gate. Because such a TTL gate's output floats when it goes "high" (1), the CMOS gate input will be left in an uncertain state:



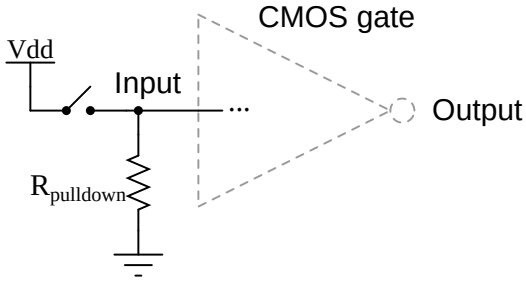
When the open-collector TTL gate's output is "high" (1), the CMOS gate's input will be left floating and in an uncertain logic state.

Fortunately, there is an easy solution to this dilemma, one that is used frequently in CMOS logic circuitry. Whenever a single-throw switch (or any other sort of gate output incapable of *both* sourcing and sinking current) is being used to drive a CMOS input, a resistor connected to either V_{dd} or ground may be used to provide a stable logic level for the state in which the driving device's output is floating. This resistor's value is not critical: 10 kΩ is usually sufficient. When used to provide a "high" (1) logic level in the event of a floating signal source, this resistor is known as a *pullup resistor*:



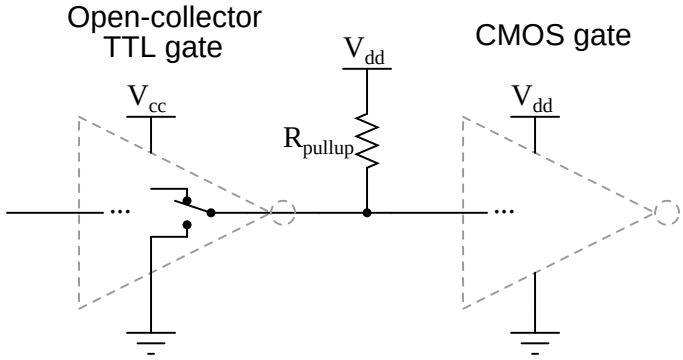
When switch is closed, the gate sees a definite "low" (0) input. When the switch is open, R_{pullup} will provide the connection to Vdd needed to secure a reliable "high" logic level for the CMOS gate input.

When such a resistor is used to provide a ”low” (0) logic level in the event of a floating signal source, it is known as a *pulldown resistor*. Again, the value for a pulldown resistor is not critical:



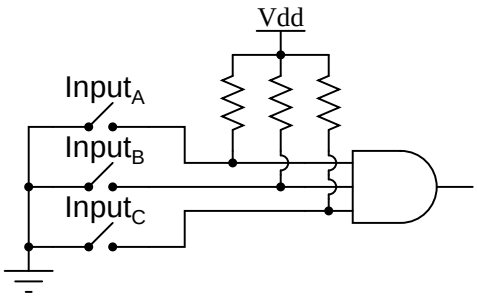
When switch is closed, the gate sees a definite "high" (1) input. When the switch is open, $R_{pulldown}$ will provide the connection to ground needed to secure a reliable "low" logic level for the CMOS gate input.

Because open-collector TTL outputs always sink, never source, current, pull*up* resistors are necessary when interfacing such an output to a CMOS gate input:



Although the CMOS gates used in the preceding examples were all inverters (single-input), the same principle of pullup and pulldown resistors applies to multiple-input CMOS gates. Of course, a separate pullup or pulldown resistor will be required for each gate input:

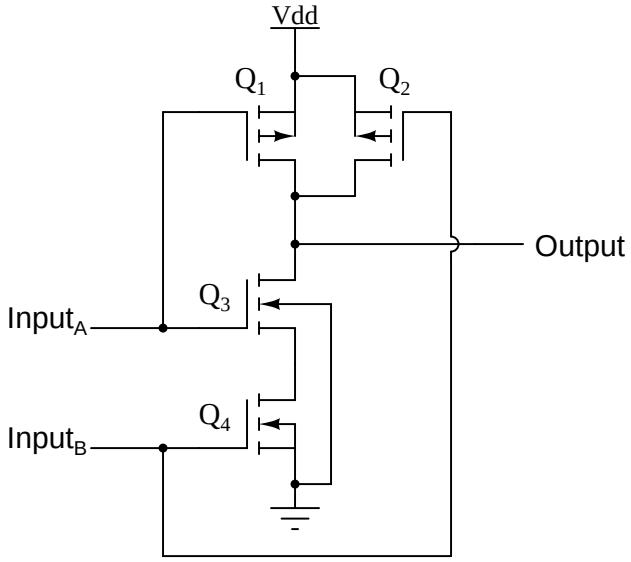
Pullup resistors for a 3-input CMOS AND gate



This brings us to the next question: how do we design multiple-input CMOS gates such as AND, NAND, OR, and NOR? Not surprisingly, the answer(s) to this question reveal a simplicity of design much like that of the CMOS inverter over its TTL equivalent.

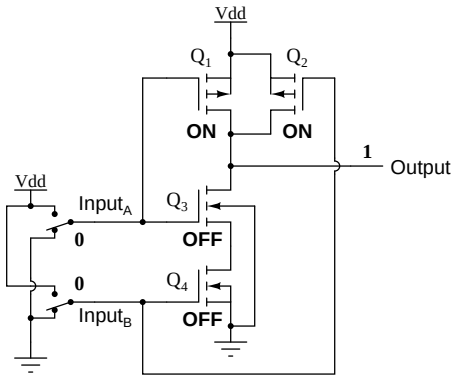
For example, here is the schematic diagram for a CMOS NAND gate:

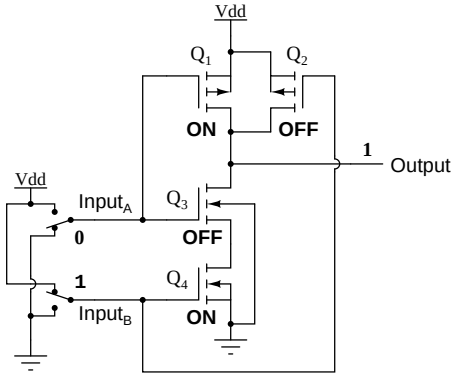
CMOS NAND gate

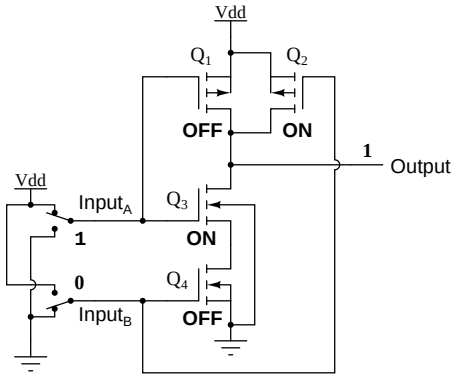


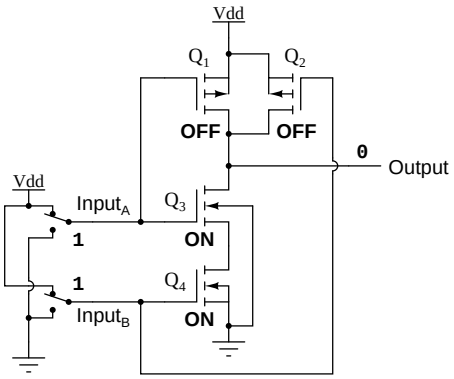
Notice how transistors Q_1 and Q_3 resemble the series-connected complementary pair from the inverter circuit. Both are controlled by the same input signal (input A), the upper transistor turning off and the lower transistor turning on when the input is "high" (1), and vice versa. Notice also how transistors Q_2 and Q_4 are similarly controlled by the same input signal (input B), and how they will also exhibit the same on/off behavior for the same input logic levels. The

upper transistors of both pairs (Q_1 and Q_2) have their source and drain terminals paralleled, while the lower transistors (Q_3 and Q_4) are series-connected. What this means is that the output will go "high" (1) if *either* top transistor saturates, and will go "low" (0) only if *both* lower transistors saturate. The following sequence of illustrations shows the behavior of this NAND gate for all four possibilities of input logic levels (00, 01, 10, and 11):

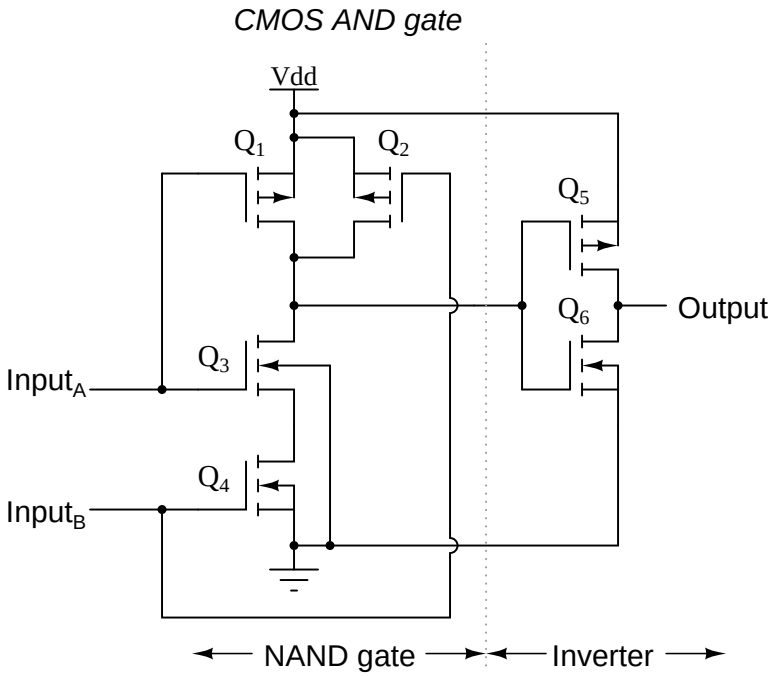






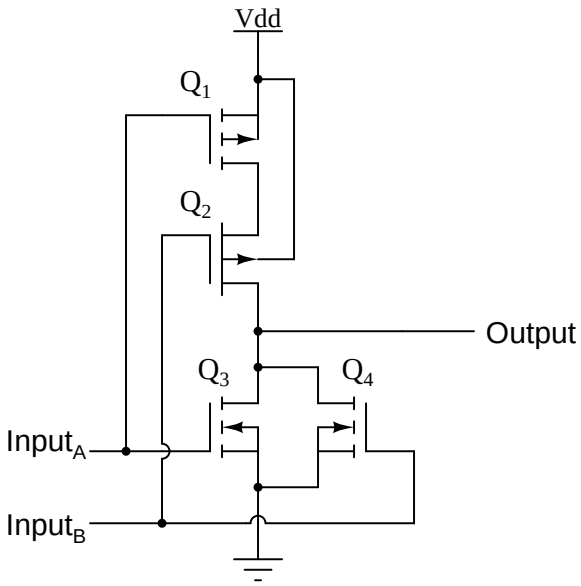


As with the TTL NAND gate, the CMOS NAND gate circuit may be used as the starting point for the creation of an AND gate. All that needs to be added is another stage of transistors to invert the output signal:



A CMOS NOR gate circuit uses four MOSFETs just like the NAND gate, except that its transistors are differently arranged. Instead of two paralleled *sourcing* (upper) transistors connected to V_{dd} and two series-connected *sinking* (lower) transistors connected to ground, the NOR gate uses two series-connected sourcing transistors and two parallel-connected sinking transistors like this:

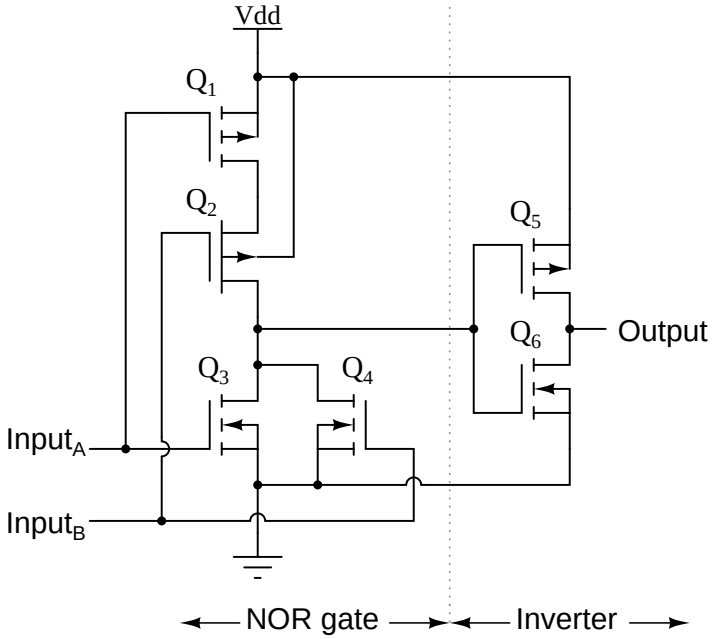
CMOS NOR gate



As with the NAND gate, transistors Q_1 and Q_3 work as a complementary pair, as do transistors Q_2 and Q_4. Each pair is controlled by a single input signal. If *either* input A *or* input B are "high" (1), at least one of the lower transistors (Q_3 or Q_4) will be saturated, thus making the output "low" (0). Only in the event of *both* inputs being "low" (0) will both lower transistors be in cutoff mode and both upper transistors be saturated, the conditions necessary for the output to go "high" (1). This behavior, of course, defines the NOR logic function.

The OR function may be built up from the basic NOR gate with the addition of an inverter stage on the output:

CMOS OR gate



Since it appears that any gate possible to construct using TTL technology can be duplicated in CMOS, why do these two "families" of logic design still coexist? The answer is that both TTL and CMOS have their own unique advantages.

First and foremost on the list of comparisons between TTL and CMOS is the issue of power consumption. In this measure of performance, CMOS is the unchallenged victor. Because the complementary P- and N-channel MOSFET pairs of a CMOS gate circuit are (ideally) never conducting at the same time, there is little or no current drawn by the circuit from the V_{dd} power supply except for what current is necessary to source current to a load. TTL, on the other hand, cannot function without some current drawn at all times, due to the biasing requirements of the bipolar transistors from which it is made.

There is a caveat to this advantage, though. While the power dissipation of a TTL gate remains rather constant regardless of its operating state(s), a CMOS gate dissipates more power as the frequency of its input signal(s) rises. If a CMOS gate is operated in a static (unchanging) condition, it dissipates zero power (ideally). However, CMOS gate circuits draw transient current during every output state switch from "low" to "high" and vice versa. So, the more often a CMOS gate switches modes, the more often it will draw current from the V_{dd} supply, hence greater power dissipation at greater frequencies.

A CMOS gate also draws much less current from a driving gate output than a TTL gate because MOSFETs are voltage-controlled, not current-controlled, devices. This means that one gate can drive many more CMOS inputs than TTL inputs. The measure of how many gate inputs a single gate output can drive is called *fanout*.

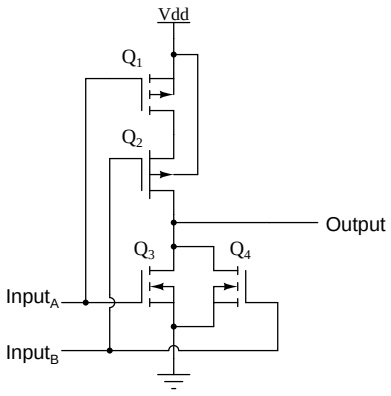
Another advantage that CMOS gate designs enjoy over TTL is a much wider allowable range of power supply voltages. Whereas TTL gates are restricted to power supply (V_{cc}) volt-

ages between 4.75 and 5.25 volts, CMOS gates are typically able to operate on any voltage between 3 and 15 volts! The reason behind this disparity in power supply voltages is the respective bias requirements of MOSFET versus bipolar junction transistors. MOSFETs are controlled exclusively by gate voltage (with respect to substrate), whereas BJTs are *current-controlled* devices. TTL gate circuit resistances are precisely calculated for proper bias currents assuming a 5 volt regulated power supply. Any significant variations in that power supply voltage will result in the transistor bias currents being incorrect, which then results in unreliable (unpredictable) operation. The only effect that variations in power supply voltage have on a CMOS gate is the voltage definition of a "high" (1) state. For a CMOS gate operating at 15 volts of power supply voltage (V_{dd}), an input signal must be close to 15 volts in order to be considered "high" (1). The voltage threshold for a "low" (0) signal remains the same: near 0 volts.

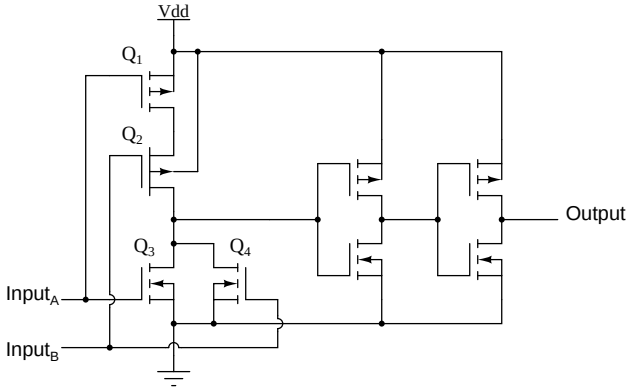
One decided disadvantage of CMOS is slow speed, as compared to TTL. The input capacitances of a CMOS gate are much, much greater than that of a comparable TTL gate – owing to the use of MOSFETs rather than BJTs – and so a CMOS gate will be slower to respond to a signal transition (low-to-high or vice versa) than a TTL gate, all other factors being equal. The RC time constant formed by circuit resistances and the input capacitance of the gate tend to impede the fast rise- and fall-times of a digital logic level, thereby degrading high-frequency performance.

A strategy for minimizing this inherent disadvantage of CMOS gate circuitry is to "buffer" the output signal with additional transistor stages, to increase the overall voltage gain of the device. This provides a faster-transitioning output voltage (high-to-low or low-to-high) for an input voltage slowly changing from one logic state to another. Consider this example, of an "unbuffered" NOR gate versus a "buffered," or *B-series*, NOR gate:

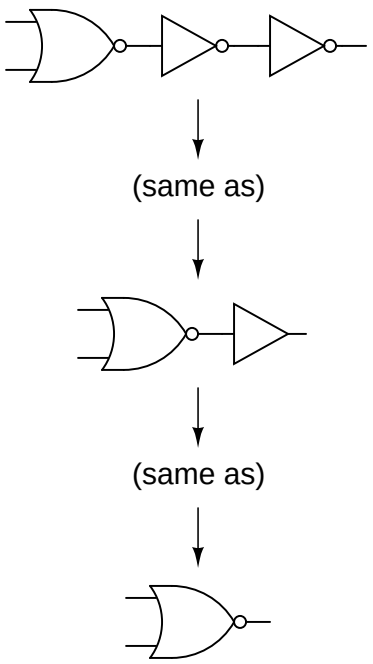
"Unbuffered" NOR gate



"B-series" (buffered) NOR gate



In essence, the B-series design enhancement adds two inverters to the output of a simple NOR circuit. This serves no purpose as far as digital logic is concerned, since two cascaded inverters simply cancel:



However, adding these inverter stages to the circuit does serve the purpose of increasing overall voltage gain, making the output more sensitive to changes in input state, working to overcome the inherent slowness caused by CMOS gate input capacitance.

- **REVIEW:**
- CMOS logic gates are made of IGFET (MOSFET) transistors rather than bipolar junction transistors.
- CMOS gate inputs are sensitive to static electricity. They may be damaged by high voltages, and they may assume any logic level if left floating.
- *Pullup* and *pulldown* resistors are used to prevent a CMOS gate input from floating if being driven by a signal source capable only of sourcing or sinking current.
- CMOS gates dissipate far less power than equivalent TTL gates, but their power dissipation increases with signal frequency, whereas the power dissipation of a TTL gate is approximately constant over a wide range of operating conditions.
- CMOS gate inputs draw far less current than TTL inputs, because MOSFETs are voltage-controlled, not current-controlled, devices.
- CMOS gates are able to operate on a much wider range of power supply voltages than TTL: typically 3 to 15 volts versus 4.75 to 5.25 volts for TTL.
- CMOS gates tend to have a much lower maximum operating frequency than TTL gates due to input capacitances caused by the MOSFET gates.

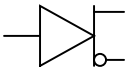
- *B-series* CMOS gates have ”buffered” outputs to increase voltage gain from input to output, resulting in faster output response to input signal changes. This helps overcome the inherent slowness of CMOS gates due to MOSFET input capacitance and the RC time constant thereby engendered.

3.8 Special-output gates

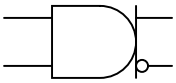
It is sometimes desirable to have a logic gate that provides both inverted and non-inverted outputs. For example, a single-input gate that is both a buffer and an inverter, with a separate output terminal for each function. Or, a two-input gate that provides both the AND and the NAND functions in a single circuit. Such gates do exist and they are referred to as *complementary output* gates.

The general symbology for such a gate is the basic gate figure with a bar and two output lines protruding from it. An array of complementary gate symbols is shown in the following illustration:

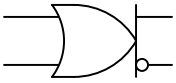
Complementary buffer



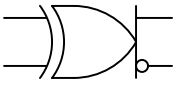
Complementary AND gate



Complementary OR gate

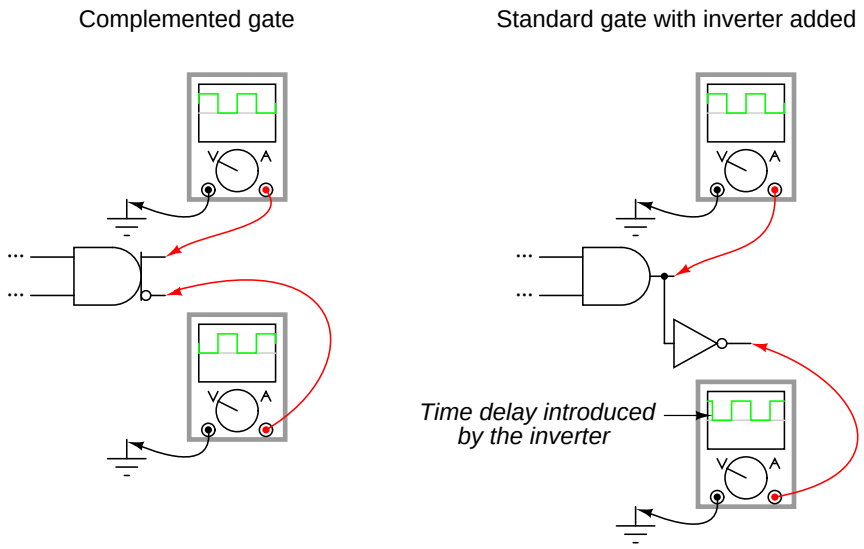


Complementary XOR gate



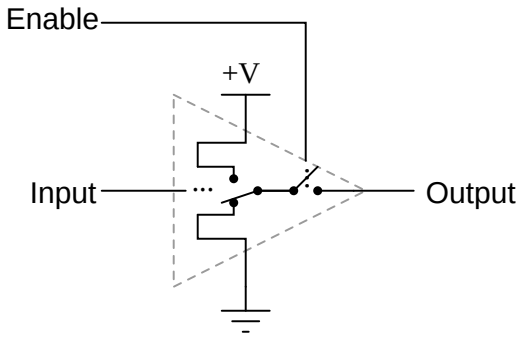
Complementary gates are especially useful in ”crowded” circuits where there may not be enough physical room to mount the additional integrated circuit chips necessary to provide both inverted and noninverted outputs using standard gates and additional inverters. They are also useful in applications where a complementary output is necessary from a gate, but the addition of an inverter would introduce an unwanted time lag in the inverted output relative to the noninverted output. The internal circuitry of complemented gates is such that both

inverted and noninverted outputs change state at almost exactly the same time:



Another type of special gate output is called *tristate*, because it has the ability to provide three different output modes: current sinking ("low" logic level), current sourcing ("high"), and floating ("high-Z," or *high-impedance*). Tristate outputs are usually found as an optional feature on buffer gates. Such gates require an extra input terminal to control the "high-Z" mode, and this input is usually called the *enable*.

Tristate buffer gate

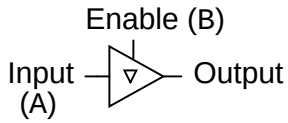


With the enable input held "high" (1), the buffer acts like an ordinary buffer with a totem pole output stage: it is capable of both sourcing and sinking current. However, the output terminal floats (goes into "high-Z" mode) if ever the enable input is grounded ("low"), regardless of the data signal's logic level. In other words, making the enable input terminal "low" (0) effectively *disconnects* the gate from whatever its output is wired to so that it can no longer have any effect.

Tristate buffers are marked in schematic diagrams by a triangle character within the gate

symbol like this:

Tristate buffer symbol

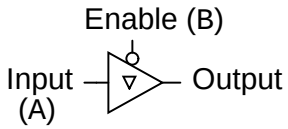


Truth table

A	B	Output
0	0	High-Z
0	1	0
1	0	High-Z
1	1	1

Tristate buffers are also made with inverted enable inputs. Such a gate acts normal when the enable input is ”low” (0) and goes into high-Z output mode when the enable input is ”high” (1):

Tristate buffer with inverted enable input



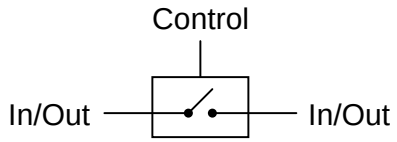
Truth table

A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	High-Z
1	0	1
1	1	High-Z

One special type of gate known as the *bilateral switch* uses gate-controlled MOSFET transistors acting as on/off switches to switch electrical signals, analog or digital. The ”on” resistance of such a switch is in the range of several hundred ohms, the ”off” resistance being in the range of several hundred *mega*-ohms.

Bilateral switches appear in schematics as SPST (Single-Pole, Single-Throw) switches inside of rectangular boxes, with a control terminal on one of the box's long sides:

CMOS bilateral switch

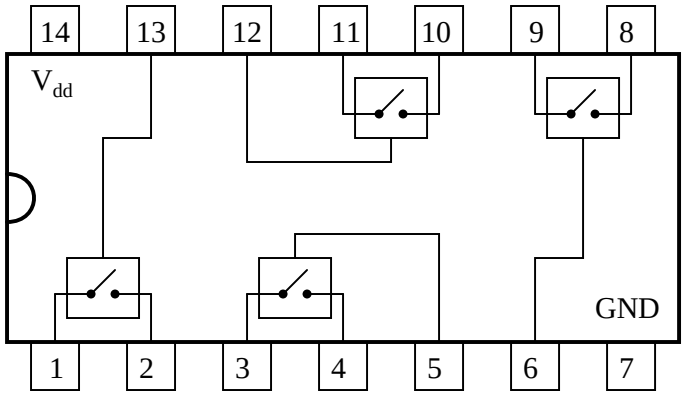


A bilateral switch might be best envisioned as a solid-state (semiconductor) version of an electromechanical relay: a signal-actuated switch contact that may be used to conduct virtually any type of electric signal. Of course, being solid-state, the bilateral switch has none of the undesirable characteristics of electromechanical relays, such as contact "bouncing," arcing, slow speed, or susceptibility to mechanical vibration. Conversely, though, they are rather limited in their current-carrying ability. Additionally, the signal conducted by the "contact" must not exceed the power supply "rail" voltages powering the bilateral switch circuit.

Four bilateral switches are packaged inside the popular model "4066" integrated circuit:

Quad CMOS bilateral switch

4066



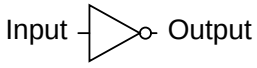
- **REVIEW:**
- *Complementary* gates provide both inverted and noninverted output signals, in such a way that neither one is delayed with respect to the other.
- *Tristate* gates provide three different output states: high, low, and floating (High-Z). Such gates are commanded into their high-impedance output modes by a separate input terminal called the *enable*.
- *Bilateral switches* are MOSFET circuits providing on/off switching for a variety of electrical signal types (analog and digital), controlled by logic level voltage signals. In essence, they are solid-state relays with very low current-handling ability.

3.9 Gate universality

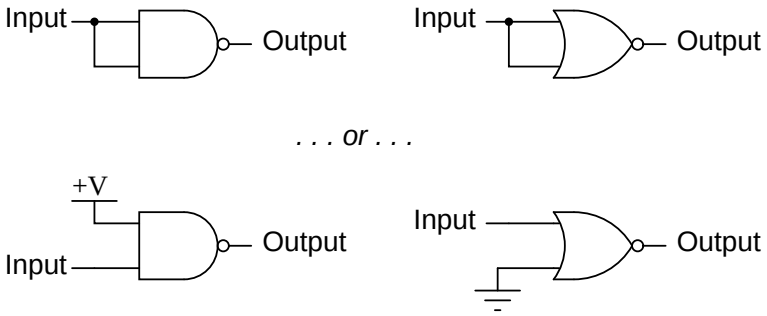
NAND and NOR gates possess a special property: they are universal. That is, given enough gates, either type of gate is able to mimic the operation of *any* other gate type. For example, it is possible to build a circuit exhibiting the OR function using three interconnected NAND gates. The ability for a single gate type to be able to mimic any other gate type is one enjoyed only by the NAND and the NOR. In fact, digital control systems have been designed around nothing but either NAND or NOR gates, all the necessary logic functions being derived from collections of interconnected NANDs or NORs.

As proof of this property, this section will be divided into subsections showing how all the basic gate types may be formed using only NANDs or only NORs.

3.9.1 Constructing the NOT function



Input	Output
0	1
1	0



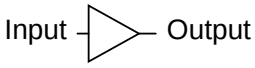
As you can see, there are two ways to use a NAND gate as an inverter, and two ways to use a NOR gate as an inverter. Either method works, although connecting TTL inputs together increases the amount of current loading to the driving gate. For CMOS gates, common input terminals decreases the switching speed of the gate due to increased input capacitance.

Inverters are the fundamental tool for transforming one type of logic function into another, and so there will be many inverters shown in the illustrations to follow. In those diagrams, I will only show one method of inversion, and that will be where the unused NAND gate input is connected to +V (either V_{cc} or V_{dd}, depending on whether the circuit is TTL or CMOS) and where the unused input for the NOR gate is connected to ground. Bear in mind that the other inversion method (connecting both NAND or NOR inputs together) works just as well from a

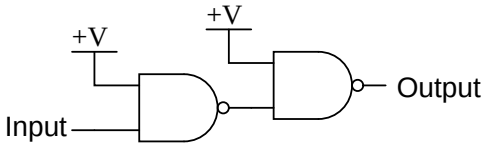
logical (1's and 0's) point of view, but is undesirable from the practical perspectives of increased current loading for TTL and increased input capacitance for CMOS.

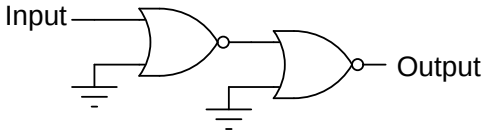
3.9.2 Constructing the "buffer" function

Being that it is quite easy to employ NAND and NOR gates to perform the inverter (NOT) function, it stands to reason that two such stages of gates will result in a buffer function, where the output is the same logical state as the input.



Input	Output
0	0
1	1

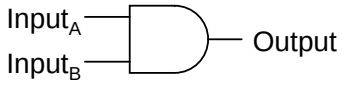




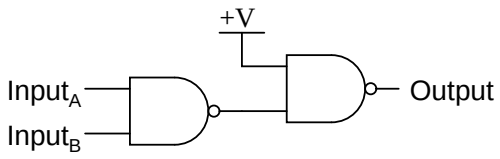
3.9.3 Constructing the AND function

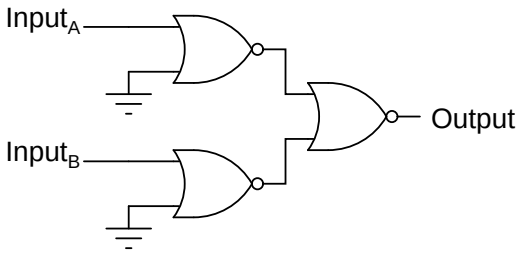
To make the AND function from NAND gates, all that is needed is an inverter (NOT) stage on the output of a NAND gate. This extra inversion "cancels out" the first *N* in *NAND*, leaving the AND function. It takes a little more work to wrestle the same functionality out of NOR gates, but it can be done by inverting ("NOT") all of the inputs to a NOR gate.

2-input AND gate



A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

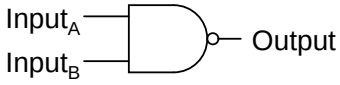




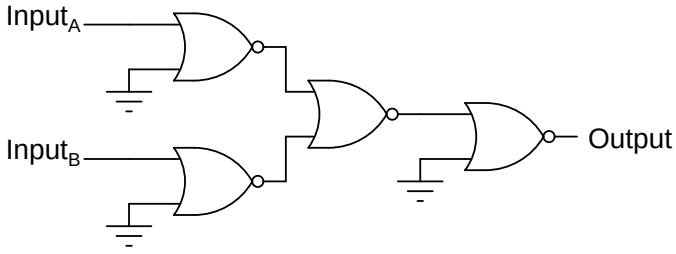
3.9.4 Constructing the NAND function

It would be pointless to show you how to ”construct” the NAND function using a NAND gate, since there is nothing to do. To make a NOR gate perform the NAND function, we must invert all inputs to the NOR gate as well as the NOR gate’s output. For a two-input gate, this requires three more NOR gates connected as inverters.

2-input NAND gate



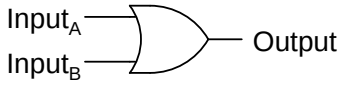
A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0



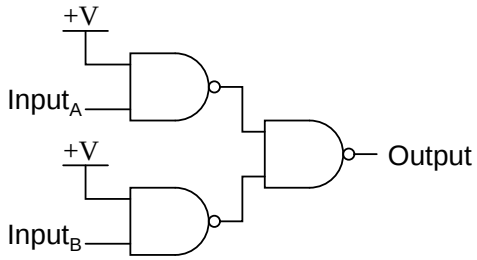
3.9.5 Constructing the OR function

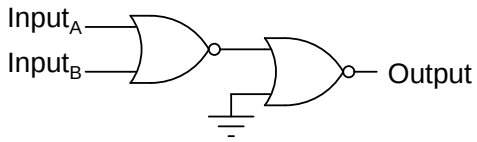
Inverting the output of a NOR gate (with another NOR gate connected as an inverter) results in the OR function. The NAND gate, on the other hand, requires inversion of all inputs to mimic the OR function, just as we needed to invert all inputs of a NOR gate to obtain the AND function. Remember that inversion of all inputs to a gate results in changing that gate's essential function from AND to OR (or vice versa), plus an inverted output. Thus, with all inputs inverted, a NAND behaves as an OR, a NOR behaves as an AND, an AND behaves as a NOR, and an OR behaves as a NAND. In Boolean algebra, this transformation is referred to as *DeMorgan's Theorem*, covered in more detail in a later chapter of this book.

2-input OR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

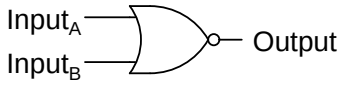




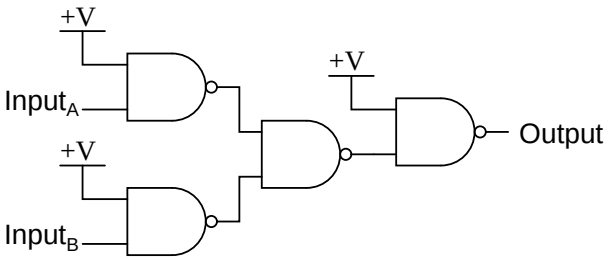
3.9.6 Constructing the NOR function

Much the same as the procedure for making a NOR gate behave as a NAND, we must invert all inputs and the output to make a NAND gate function as a NOR.

2-input NOR gate



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0

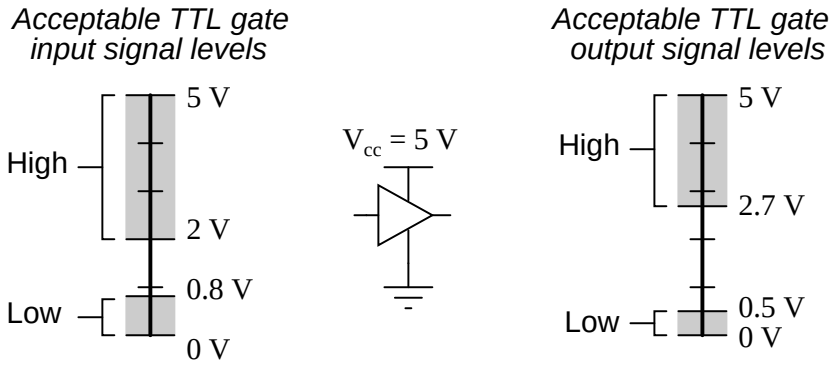


- **REVIEW:**
- NAND and NOR gates are universal: that is, they have the ability to mimic any type of gate, if interconnected in sufficient numbers.

3.10 Logic signal voltage levels

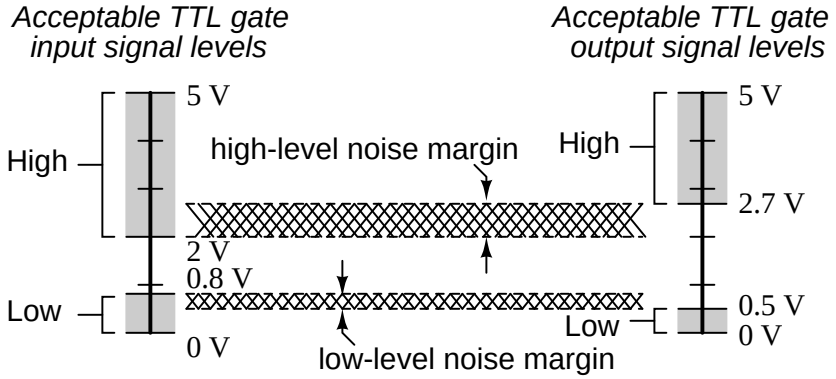
Logic gate circuits are designed to input and output only two types of signals: ”high” (1) and ”low” (0), as represented by a variable voltage: full power supply voltage for a ”high” state and zero voltage for a ”low” state. In a perfect world, all logic circuit signals would exist at these extreme voltage limits, and never deviate from them (i.e., less than full voltage for a ”high,” or more than zero voltage for a ”low”). However, in reality, logic signal voltage levels rarely attain these perfect limits due to stray voltage drops in the transistor circuitry, and so we must understand the signal level limitations of gate circuits as they try to interpret signal voltages lying somewhere *between* full supply voltage and zero.

TTL gates operate on a nominal power supply voltage of 5 volts, +/- 0.25 volts. Ideally, a TTL ”high” signal would be 5.00 volts exactly, and a TTL ”low” signal 0.00 volts exactly. However, real TTL gate circuits cannot output such perfect voltage levels, and are designed to accept ”high” and ”low” signals deviating substantially from these ideal values. ”Acceptable” input signal voltages range from 0 volts to 0.8 volts for a ”low” logic state, and 2 volts to 5 volts for a ”high” logic state. ”Acceptable” output signal voltages (voltage levels guaranteed by the gate manufacturer over a specified range of load conditions) range from 0 volts to 0.5 volts for a ”low” logic state, and 2.7 volts to 5 volts for a ”high” logic state:

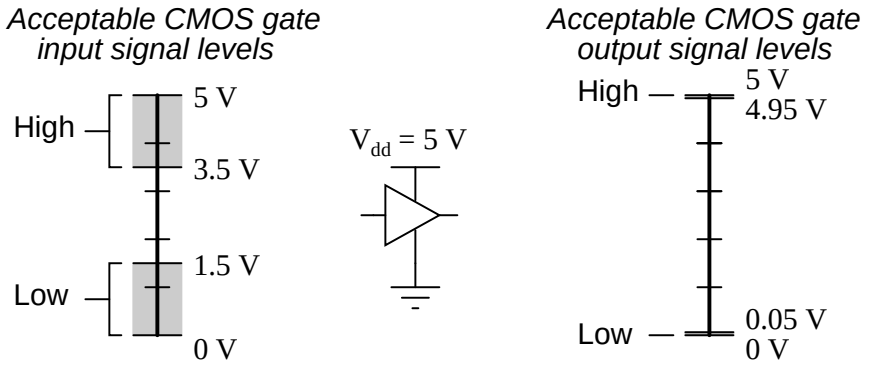


If a voltage signal ranging between 0.8 volts and 2 volts were to be sent into the input of a TTL gate, there would be no certain response from the gate. Such a signal would be considered *uncertain*, and no logic gate manufacturer would guarantee how their gate circuit would interpret such a signal.

As you can see, the tolerable ranges for output signal levels are narrower than for input signal levels, to ensure that any TTL gate outputting a digital signal into the input of another TTL gate will transmit voltages acceptable to the receiving gate. The difference between the tolerable output and input ranges is called the *noise margin* of the gate. For TTL gates, the low-level noise margin is the difference between 0.8 volts and 0.5 volts (0.3 volts), while the high-level noise margin is the difference between 2.7 volts and 2 volts (0.7 volts). Simply put, the noise margin is the peak amount of spurious or "noise" voltage that may be superimposed on a weak gate output voltage signal before the receiving gate might interpret it wrongly:

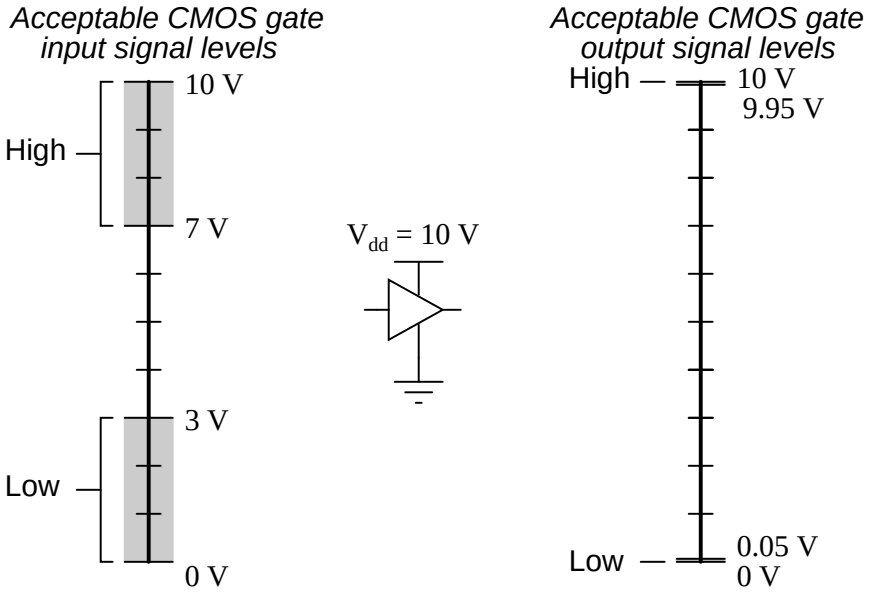


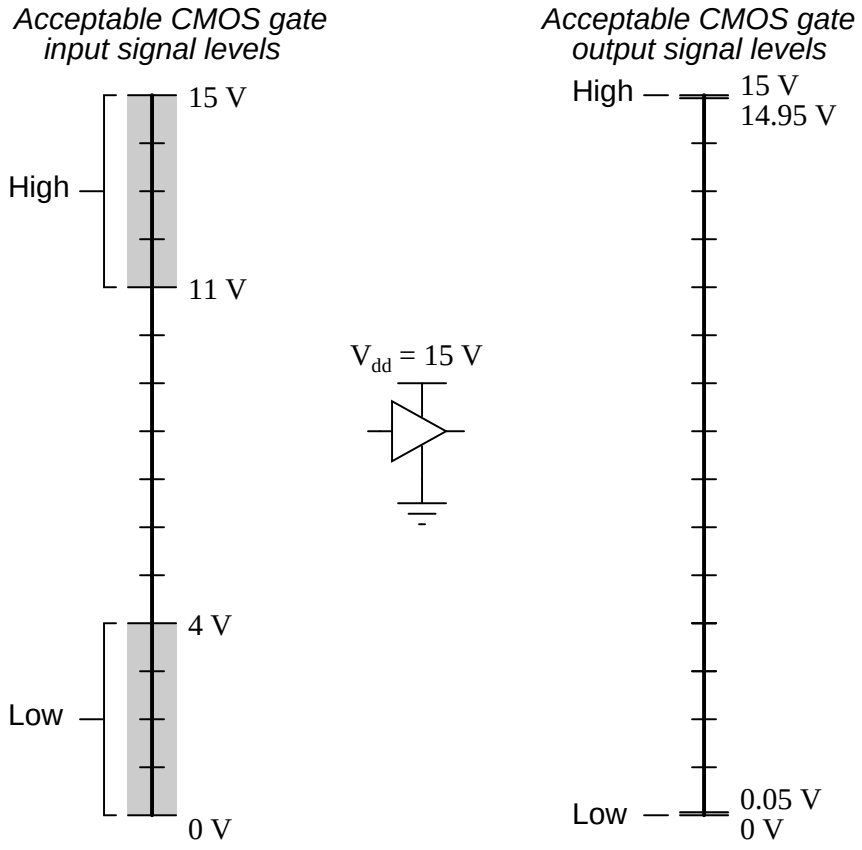
CMOS gate circuits have input and output signal specifications that are quite different from TTL. For a CMOS gate operating at a power supply voltage of 5 volts, the acceptable input signal voltages range from 0 volts to 1.5 volts for a "low" logic state, and 3.5 volts to 5 volts for a "high" logic state. "Acceptable" output signal voltages (voltage levels guaranteed by the gate manufacturer over a specified range of load conditions) range from 0 volts to 0.05 volts for a "low" logic state, and 4.95 volts to 5 volts for a "high" logic state:



It should be obvious from these figures that CMOS gate circuits have far greater noise margins than TTL: 1.45 volts for CMOS low-level and high-level margins, versus a maximum of 0.7 volts for TTL. In other words, CMOS circuits can tolerate over twice the amount of superimposed "noise" voltage on their input lines before signal interpretation errors will result.

CMOS noise margins widen even further with higher operating voltages. Unlike TTL, which is restricted to a power supply voltage of 5 volts, CMOS may be powered by voltages as high as 15 volts (some CMOS circuits as high as 18 volts). Shown here are the acceptable "high" and "low" states, for both input and output, of CMOS integrated circuits operating at 10 volts and 15 volts, respectively:



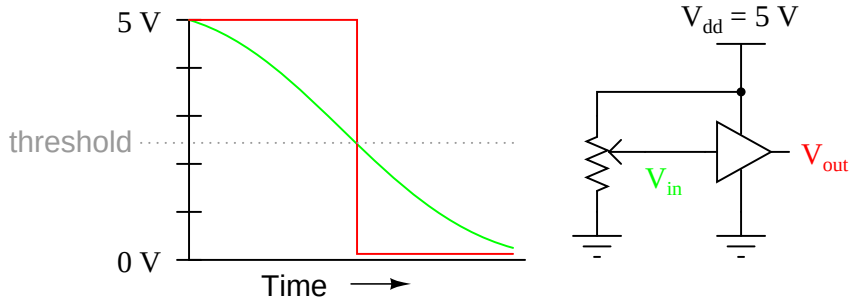


The margins for acceptable ”high” and ”low” signals may be greater than what is shown in the previous illustrations. What is shown represents ”worst-case” input signal performance, based on manufacturer’s specifications. In practice, it may be found that a gate circuit will tolerate ”high” signals of considerably less voltage and ”low” signals of considerably greater voltage than those specified here.

Conversely, the extremely small output margins shown – guaranteeing output states for ”high” and ”low” signals to within 0.05 volts of the power supply ”rails” – are optimistic. Such ”solid” output voltage levels will be true only for conditions of minimum loading. If the gate is sourcing or sinking substantial current to a load, the output voltage will not be able to maintain these optimum levels, due to internal channel resistance of the gate’s final output MOSFETs.

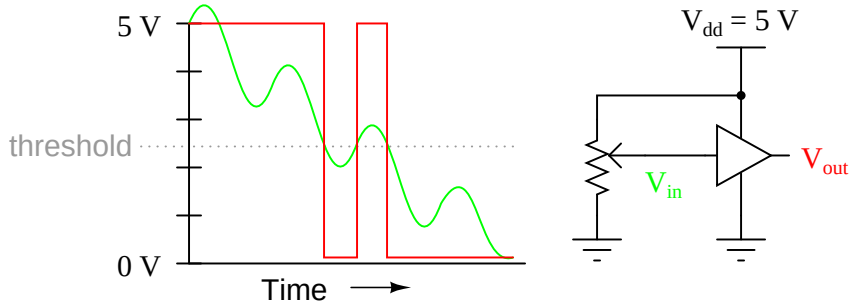
Within the ”uncertain” range for any gate input, there will be some point of demarcation dividing the gate’s actual ”low” input signal range from its actual ”high” input signal range. That is, somewhere between the lowest ”high” signal voltage level and the highest ”low” signal voltage level guaranteed by the gate manufacturer, there is a threshold voltage at which the gate will *actually* switch its interpretation of a signal from ”low” or ”high” or vice versa. For most gate circuits, this unspecified voltage is a single point:

Typical response of a logic gate to a variable (analog) input voltage

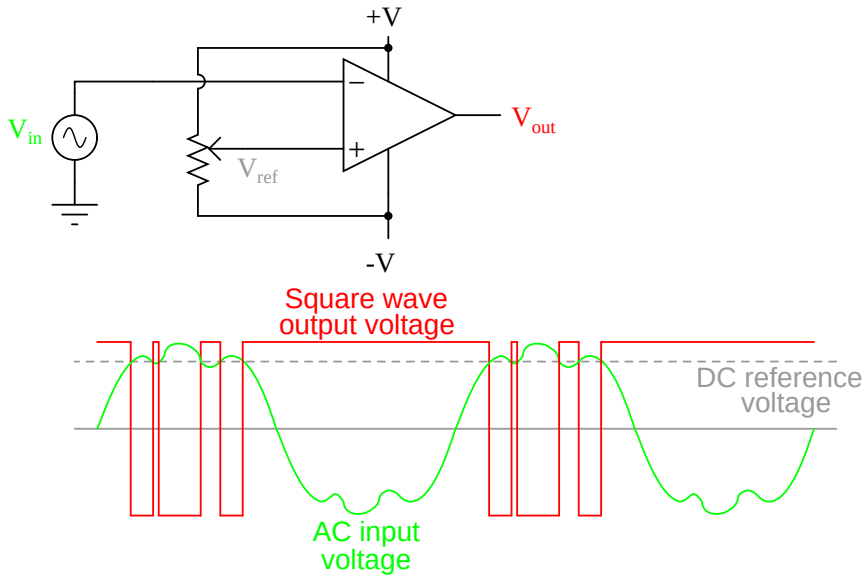


In the presence of AC "noise" voltage superimposed on the DC input signal, a single threshold point at which the gate alters its interpretation of logic level will result in an erratic output:

Slowly-changing DC signal with AC noise superimposed

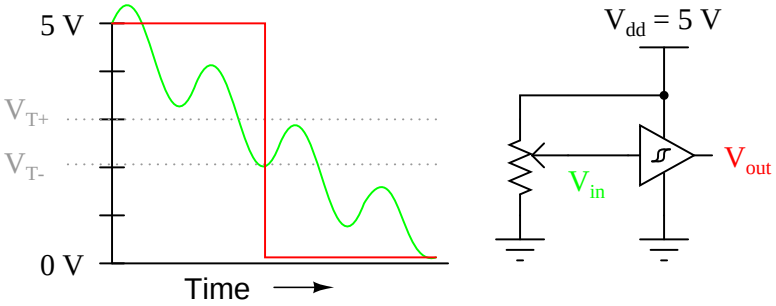


If this scenario looks familiar to you, its because you remember a similar problem with (analog) voltage comparator op-amp circuits. With a single threshold point at which an input causes the output to switch between "high" and "low" states, the presence of significant noise will cause erratic changes in the output:



The solution to this problem is a bit of *positive feedback* introduced into the amplifier circuit. With an op-amp, this is done by connecting the output back around to the noninverting (+) input through a resistor. In a gate circuit, this entails redesigning the internal gate circuitry, establishing the feedback inside the gate package rather than through external connections. A gate so designed is called a *Schmitt trigger*. Schmitt triggers interpret varying input voltages according to *two* threshold voltages: a *positive-going* threshold (V_{T+}), and a *negative-going* threshold (V_{T-}):

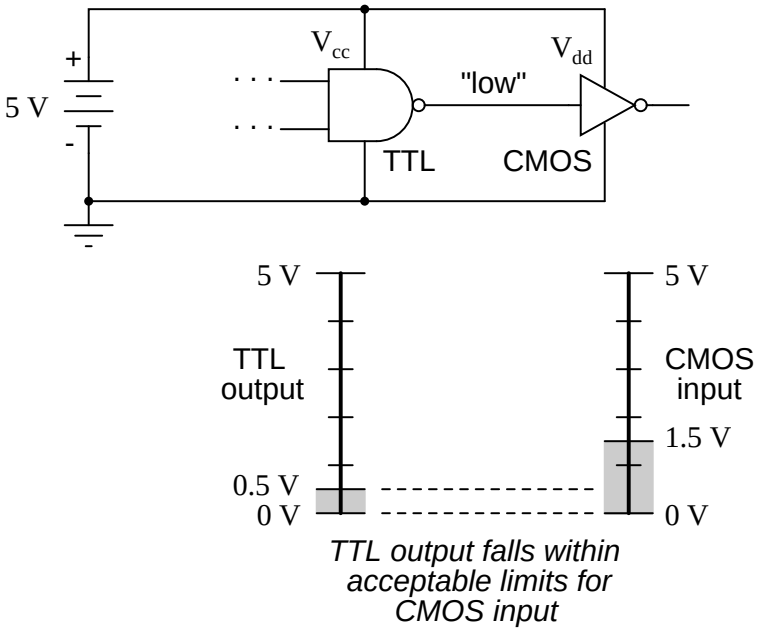
Schmitt trigger response to a "noisy" input signal



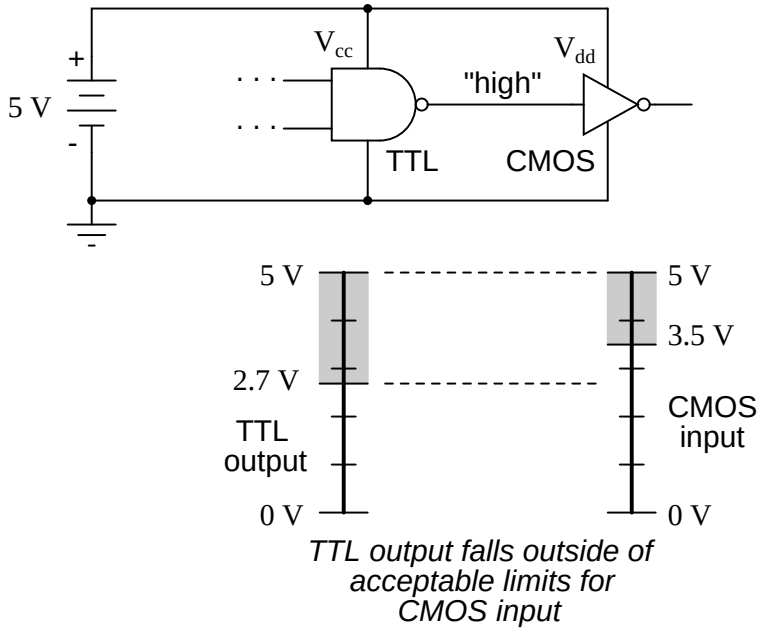
Schmitt trigger gates are distinguished in schematic diagrams by the small "hysteresis" symbol drawn within them, reminiscent of the B-H curve for a ferromagnetic material. Hysteresis engendered by positive feedback within the gate circuitry adds an additional level of noise immunity to the gate's performance. Schmitt trigger gates are frequently used in applications where noise is expected on the input signal line(s), and/or where an erratic output would be very detrimental to system performance.

The differing voltage level requirements of TTL and CMOS technology present problems when the two types of gates are used in the same system. Although operating CMOS gates on the same 5.00 volt power supply voltage required by the TTL gates is no problem, TTL output voltage levels will not be compatible with CMOS input voltage requirements.

Take for instance a TTL NAND gate outputting a signal into the input of a CMOS inverter gate. Both gates are powered by the same 5.00 volt supply (V_{cc}). If the TTL gate outputs a "low" signal (guaranteed to be between 0 volts and 0.5 volts), it will be properly interpreted by the CMOS gate's input as a "low" (expecting a voltage between 0 volts and 1.5 volts):

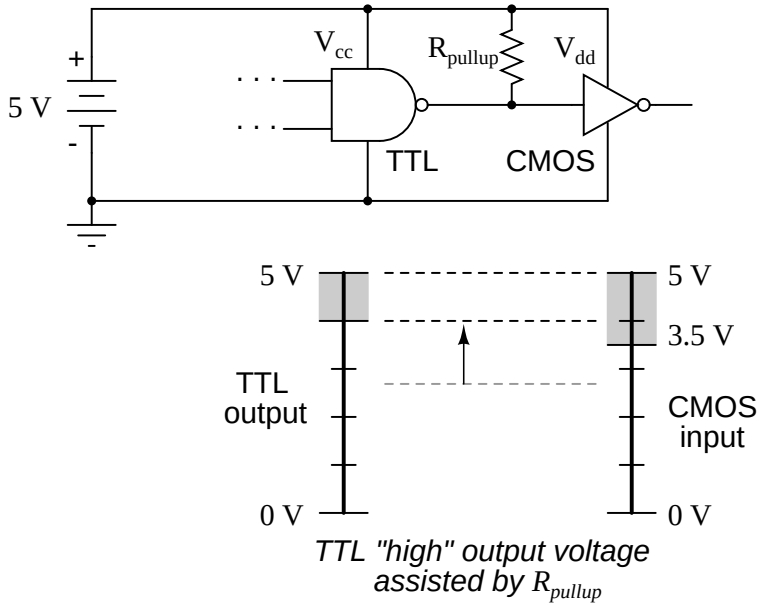


However, if the TTL gate outputs a "high" signal (guaranteed to be between 5 volts and 2.7 volts), it *might not* be properly interpreted by the CMOS gate's input as a "high" (expecting a voltage between 5 volts and *3.5* volts):



TTL output falls outside of acceptable limits for CMOS input

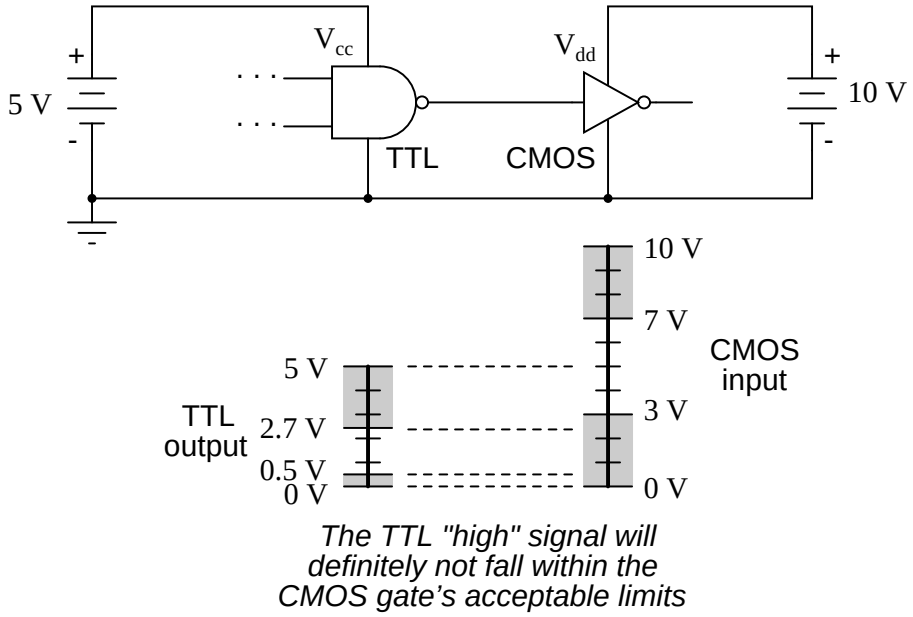
Given this mismatch, it is entirely possible for the TTL gate to output a valid ”high” signal (valid, that is, according to the standards for TTL) that lies within the ”uncertain” range for the CMOS input, and may be (falsely) interpreted as a ”low” by the receiving gate. An easy ”fix” for this problem is to augment the TTL gate’s ”high” signal voltage level by means of a pullup resistor:



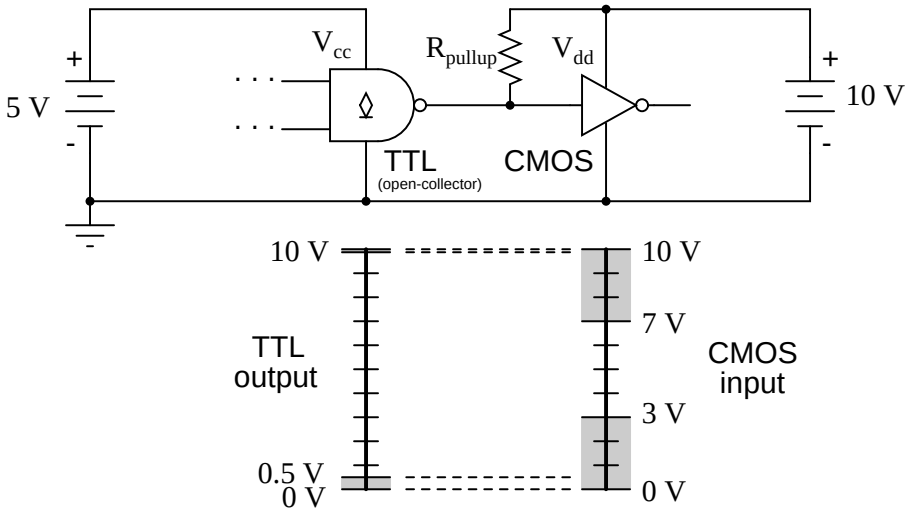
TTL "high" output voltage assisted by R_{pullup}

Something more than this, though, is required to interface a TTL output with a CMOS

input, if the receiving CMOS gate is powered by a greater power supply voltage:



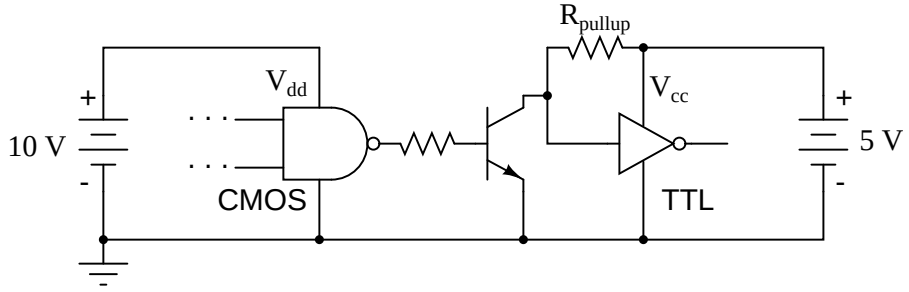
There will be no problem with the CMOS gate interpreting the TTL gate's "low" output, of course, but a "high" signal from the TTL gate is another matter entirely. The guaranteed output voltage range of 2.7 volts to 5 volts from the TTL gate output is nowhere near the CMOS gate's acceptable range of 7 volts to 10 volts for a "high" signal. If we use an *open-collector* TTL gate instead of a totem-pole output gate, though, a pullup resistor to the 10 volt V_{dd} supply rail will raise the TTL gate's "high" output voltage to the full power supply voltage supplying the CMOS gate. Since an open-collector gate can only sink current, not source current, the "high" state voltage level is entirely determined by the power supply to which the pullup resistor is attached, thus neatly solving the mismatch problem:



Now, both "low" and "high" TTL signals are acceptable to the CMOS gate input

Due to the excellent output voltage characteristics of CMOS gates, there is typically no problem connecting a CMOS output to a TTL input. The only significant issue is the current loading presented by the TTL inputs, since the CMOS output must sink current for each of the TTL inputs while in the "low" state.

When the CMOS gate in question is powered by a voltage source in excess of 5 volts (V_{cc}), though, a problem will result. The "high" output state of the CMOS gate, being greater than 5 volts, will exceed the TTL gate's acceptable input limits for a "high" signal. A solution to this problem is to create an "open-collector" inverter circuit using a discrete NPN transistor, and use it to interface the two gates together:



The "R_{pullup}" resistor is optional, since TTL inputs automatically assume a "high" state when left floating, which is what will happen when the CMOS gate output is "low" and the transistor cuts off. Of course, one very important consequence of implementing this solution is the logical inversion created by the transistor: when the CMOS gate outputs a "low" signal, the TTL gate sees a "high" input; and when the CMOS gate outputs a "high" signal, the transistor saturates and the TTL gate sees a "low" input. So long as this inversion is accounted for in the logical scheme of the system, all will be well.

3.11 DIP gate packaging

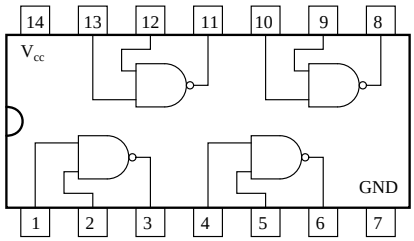
Digital logic gate circuits are manufactured as integrated circuits: all the constituent transistors and resistors built on a single piece of semiconductor material. The engineer, technician, or hobbyist using small numbers of gates will likely find what he or she needs enclosed in a DIP (**D**ual **I**nline **P**ackage) housing. DIP-enclosed integrated circuits are available with even numbers of pins, located at 0.100 inch intervals from each other for standard circuit board layout compatibility. Pin counts of 8, 14, 16, 18, and 24 are common for DIP "chips."

Part numbers given to these DIP packages specify what type of gates are enclosed, and how many. These part numbers are industry standards, meaning that a "74LS02" manufactured by Motorola will be identical in function to a "74LS02" manufactured by Fairchild or by any other manufacturer. Letter codes prepended to the part number are unique to the manufacturer, and are not industry-standard codes. For instance, a SN74LS02 is a quad 2-input TTL NOR gate manufactured by Motorola, while a DM74LS02 is the exact same circuit manufactured by Fairchild.

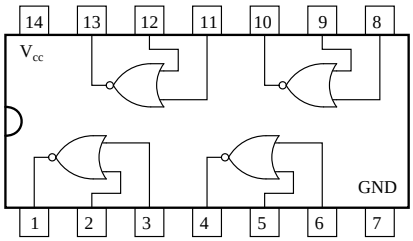
Logic circuit part numbers beginning with "74" are commercial-grade TTL. If the part number begins with the number "54", the chip is a military-grade unit: having a greater operating temperature range, and typically more robust in regard to allowable power supply and signal voltage levels. The letters "LS" immediately following the 74/54 prefix indicate "Low-power Schottky" circuitry, using Schottky-barrier diodes and transistors throughout, to decrease power dissipation. Non-Schottky gate circuits consume more power, but are able to operate at higher frequencies due to their faster switching times.

A few of the more common TTL "DIP" circuit packages are shown here for reference:

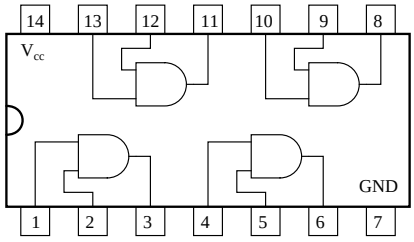
5400/7400
Quad NAND gate



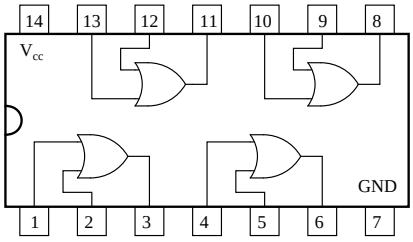
5402/7402
Quad NOR gate



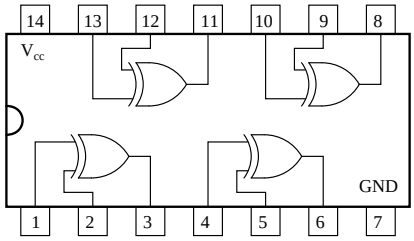
5408/7408
Quad AND gate



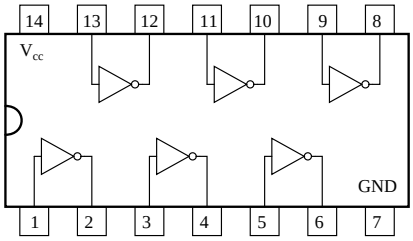
5432/7432
Quad OR gate

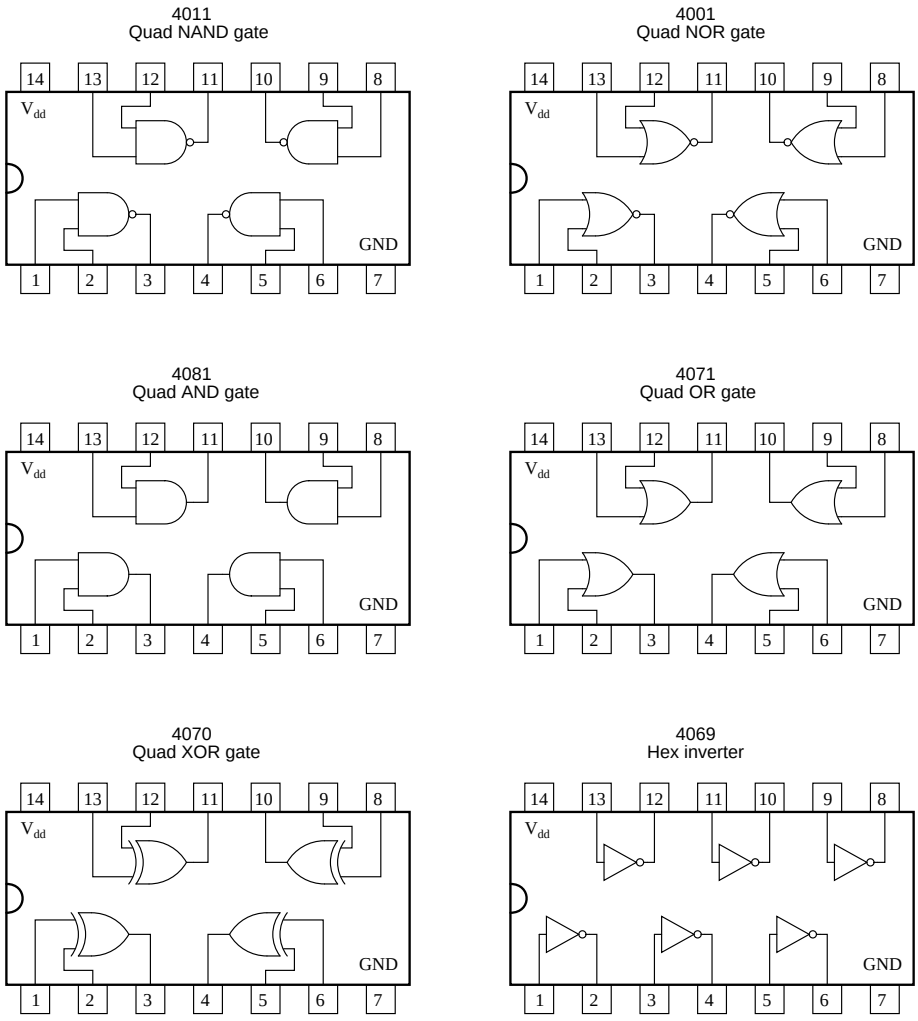


5486/7486
Quad XOR gate



5404/7404
Hex inverter





3.12 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Jan-Willem Rensman (May 2, 2002): Suggested the inclusion of Schmitt triggers and gate hysteresis to this chapter.

Chapter 4

SWITCHES

Contents

4.1 Switch types

An electrical switch is any device used to interrupt the flow of electrons in a circuit. Switches are essentially binary devices: they are either completely on (”closed”) or completely off (”open”). There are many different types of switches, and we will explore some of these types in this chapter.

Though it may seem strange to cover this elementary electrical topic at such a late stage in this book series, I do so because the chapters that follow explore an older realm of digital technology based on mechanical switch contacts rather than solid-state gate circuits, and a thorough understanding of switch types is necessary for the undertaking. Learning the function of switch-based circuits at the same time that you learn about solid-state logic gates makes both topics easier to grasp, and sets the stage for an enhanced learning experience in Boolean algebra, the mathematics behind digital logic circuits.

The simplest type of switch is one where two electrical conductors are brought in contact with each other by the motion of an actuating mechanism. Other switches are more complex, containing electronic circuits able to turn on or off depending on some physical stimulus (such as light or magnetic field) sensed. In any case, the final output of any switch will be (at least) a pair of wire-connection terminals that will either be connected together by the switch’s internal contact mechanism (”closed”), or not connected together (”open”).

Any switch designed to be operated by a person is generally called a *hand switch*, and they are manufactured in several varieties:

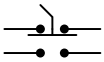
Toggle switch

Toggle switches are actuated by a lever angled in one of two or more positions. The common light switch used in household wiring is an example of a toggle switch. Most toggle switches will come to rest in any of their lever positions, while others have an internal spring mechanism returning the lever to a certain *normal* position, allowing for what is called "momentary" operation.

Pushbutton switch

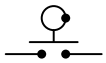
Pushbutton switches are two-position devices actuated with a button that is pressed and released. Most pushbutton switches have an internal spring mechanism returning the button to its "out," or "unpressed," position, for momentary operation. Some pushbutton switches will latch alternately on or off with every push of the button. Other pushbutton switches will stay in their "in," or "pressed," position until the button is pulled back out. This last type of pushbutton switches usually have a mushroom-shaped button for easy push-pull action.

Selector switch



Selector switches are actuated with a rotary knob or lever of some sort to select one of two or more positions. Like the toggle switch, selector switches can either rest in any of their positions or contain spring-return mechanisms for momentary operation.

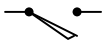
Joystick switch



A joystick switch is actuated by a lever free to move in more than one axis of motion. One or more of several switch contact mechanisms are actuated depending on which way the lever is pushed, and sometimes by how *far* it is pushed. The circle-and-dot notation on the switch symbol represents the direction of joystick lever motion required to actuate the contact. Joystick hand switches are commonly used for crane and robot control.

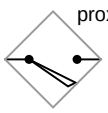
Some switches are specifically designed to be operated by the motion of a machine rather than by the hand of a human operator. These motion-operated switches are commonly called *limit switches*, because they are often used to limit the motion of a machine by turning off the actuating power to a component if it moves too far. As with hand switches, limit switches come in several varieties:

Lever actuator limit switch



These limit switches closely resemble rugged toggle or selector hand switches fitted with a lever pushed by the machine part. Often, the levers are tipped with a small roller bearing, preventing the lever from being worn off by repeated contact with the machine part.

Proximity switch

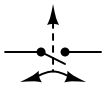


Proximity switches sense the approach of a metallic machine part either by a magnetic or high-frequency electromagnetic field. Simple proximity switches use a permanent magnet to actuate a sealed switch mechanism whenever the machine part gets close (typically 1 inch or less). More complex proximity switches work like a metal detector, energizing a coil of wire with a high-frequency current, and electronically monitoring the magnitude of that current. If a metallic part (not necessarily magnetic) gets close enough to the coil, the current will increase, and trip the monitoring circuit. The symbol shown here for the proximity switch is of the electronic variety, as indicated by the diamond-shaped box surrounding the switch. A non-electronic proximity switch would use the same symbol as the lever-actuated limit switch.

Another form of proximity switch is the optical switch, comprised of a light source and photocell. Machine position is detected by either the interruption or reflection of a light beam. Optical switches are also useful in safety applications, where beams of light can be used to detect personnel entry into a dangerous area.

In many industrial processes, it is necessary to monitor various physical quantities with switches. Such switches can be used to sound alarms, indicating that a process variable has exceeded normal parameters, or they can be used to shut down processes or equipment if those variables have reached dangerous or destructive levels. There are many different types of process switches:

Speed switch

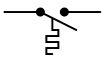


These switches sense the rotary speed of a shaft either by a centrifugal weight mechanism mounted on the shaft, or by some kind of non-contact detection of shaft motion such as optical or magnetic.

Pressure switch

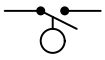
Gas or liquid pressure can be used to actuate a switch mechanism if that pressure is applied to a piston, diaphragm, or bellows, which converts pressure to mechanical force.

Temperature switch



An inexpensive temperature-sensing mechanism is the ”bimetallic strip:” a thin strip of two metals, joined back-to-back, each metal having a different rate of thermal expansion. When the strip heats or cools, differing rates of thermal expansion between the two metals causes it to bend. The bending of the strip can then be used to actuate a switch contact mechanism. Other temperature switches use a brass bulb filled with either a liquid or gas, with a tiny tube connecting the bulb to a pressure-sensing switch. As the bulb is heated, the gas or liquid expands, generating a pressure increase which then actuates the switch mechanism.

Liquid level switch



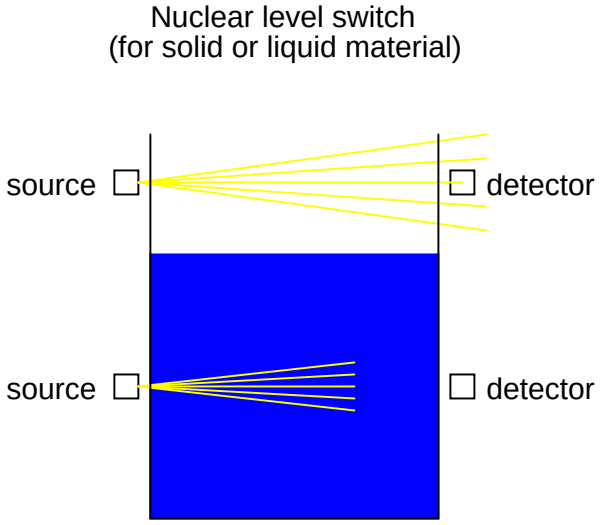
A floating object can be used to actuate a switch mechanism when the liquid level in an tank rises past a certain point. If the liquid is electrically conductive, the liquid itself can be used as a conductor to bridge between two metal probes inserted into the tank at the required depth. The conductivity technique is usually implemented with a special design of relay triggered by a small amount of current through the conductive liquid. In most cases it is impractical and dangerous to switch the full load current of the circuit through a liquid.

Level switches can also be designed to detect the level of solid materials such as wood chips, grain, coal, or animal feed in a storage silo, bin, or hopper. A common design for this application is a small paddle wheel, inserted into the bin at the desired height, which is slowly turned by a small electric motor. When the solid material fills the bin to that height, the material prevents the paddle wheel from turning. The torque response of the small motor than trips the switch mechanism. Another design uses a ”tuning fork” shaped metal prong, inserted into the bin from the outside at the desired height. The fork is vibrated at its resonant frequency by an electronic circuit and magnet/electromagnet coil assembly. When the bin fills to that height, the solid material dampens the vibration of the fork, the change in vibration amplitude and/or frequency detected by the electronic circuit.

Liquid flow switch

Inserted into a pipe, a flow switch will detect any gas or liquid flow rate in excess of a certain threshold, usually with a small paddle or vane which is pushed by the flow. Other flow switches are constructed as differential pressure switches, measuring the pressure drop across a restriction built into the pipe.

Another type of level switch, suitable for liquid or solid material detection, is the nuclear switch. Composed of a radioactive source material and a radiation detector, the two are mounted across the diameter of a storage vessel for either solid or liquid material. Any height of material beyond the level of the source/detector arrangement will attenuate the strength of radiation reaching the detector. This decrease in radiation at the detector can be used to trigger a relay mechanism to provide a switch contact for measurement, alarm point, or even control of the vessel level.



Both source and detector are outside of the vessel, with no intrusion at all except the radiation flux itself. The radioactive sources used are fairly weak and pose no immediate health threat to operations or maintenance personnel.

As usual, there is usually more than one way to implement a switch to monitor a physical process or serve as an operator control. There is usually no single ”perfect” switch for any application, although some obviously exhibit certain advantages over others. Switches must be intelligently matched to the task for efficient and reliable operation.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *switch* is an electrical device, usually electromechanical, used to control continuity between two points.
- *Hand* switches are actuated by human touch.
- *Limit* switches are actuated by machine motion.
- *Process* switches are actuated by changes in some physical process (temperature, level, flow, etc.).

4.2 Switch contact design

A switch can be constructed with any mechanism bringing two conductors into contact with each other in a controlled manner. This can be as simple as allowing two copper wires to touch each other by the motion of a lever, or by directly pushing two metal strips into contact. However, a good switch design must be rugged and reliable, and avoid presenting the operator with the possibility of electric shock. Therefore, industrial switch designs are rarely this crude.

The conductive parts in a switch used to make and break the electrical connection are called *contacts*. Contacts are typically made of silver or silver-cadmium alloy, whose conductive properties are not significantly compromised by surface corrosion or oxidation. Gold contacts exhibit the best corrosion resistance, but are limited in current-carrying capacity and may "cold weld" if brought together with high mechanical force. Whatever the choice of metal, the switch contacts are guided by a mechanism ensuring square and even contact, for maximum reliability and minimum resistance.

Contacts such as these can be constructed to handle extremely large amounts of electric current, up to thousands of amps in some cases. The limiting factors for switch contact ampacity are as follows:

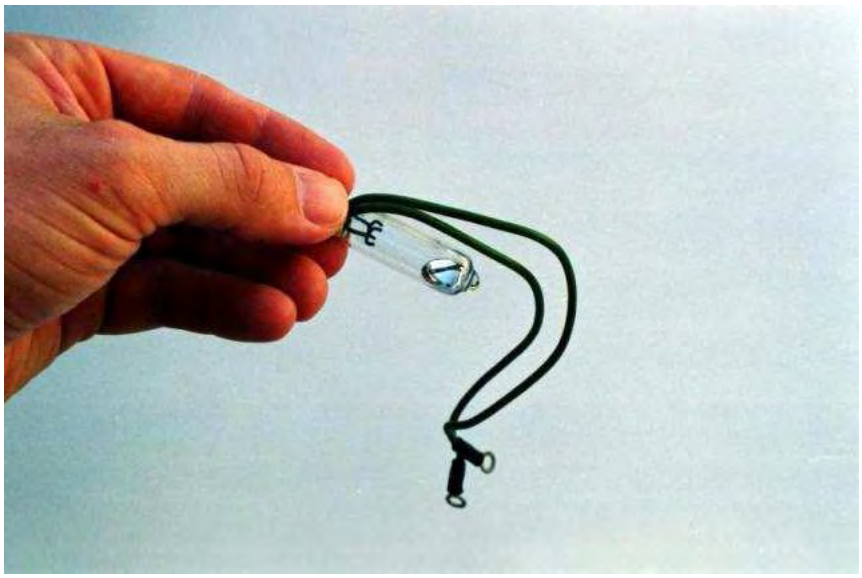
- Heat generated by current through metal contacts (while closed).
- Sparking caused when contacts are opened or closed.
- The voltage across open switch contacts (potential of current jumping across the gap).

One major disadvantage of standard switch contacts is the exposure of the contacts to the surrounding atmosphere. In a nice, clean, control-room environment, this is generally not a problem. However, most industrial environments are not this benign. The presence of corrosive chemicals in the air can cause contacts to deteriorate and fail prematurely. Even more troublesome is the possibility of regular contact sparking causing flammable or explosive chemicals to ignite.

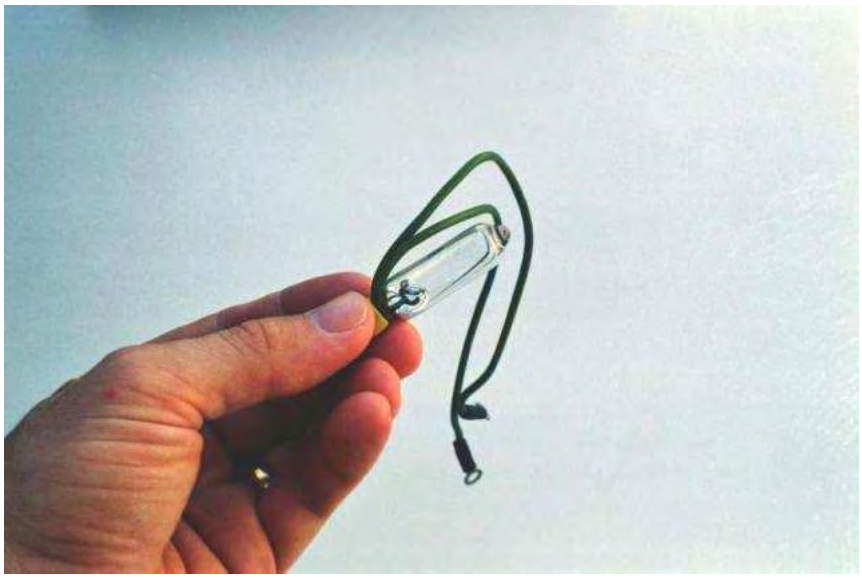
When such environmental concerns exist, other types of contacts can be considered for small switches. These other types of contacts are sealed from contact with the outside air, and therefore do not suffer the same exposure problems that standard contacts do.

A common type of sealed-contact switch is the mercury switch. Mercury is a metallic element, liquid at room temperature. Being a metal, it possesses excellent conductive properties. Being a liquid, it can be brought into contact with metal probes (to close a circuit) inside of a sealed chamber simply by tilting the chamber so that the probes are on the bottom. Many industrial switches use small glass tubes containing mercury which are tilted one way to close the contact, and tilted another way to open. Aside from the problems of tube breakage and spilling mercury (which is a toxic material), and susceptibility to vibration, these devices are an excellent alternative to open-air switch contacts wherever environmental exposure problems are a concern.

Here, a mercury switch (often called a *tilt* switch) is shown in the open position, where the mercury is out of contact with the two metal contacts at the other end of the glass bulb:



Here, the same switch is shown in the closed position. Gravity now holds the liquid mercury in contact with the two metal contacts, providing electrical continuity from one to the other:



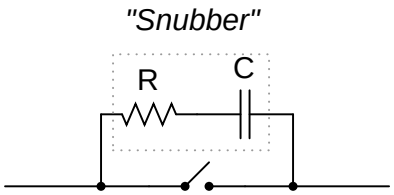
Mercury switch contacts are impractical to build in large sizes, and so you will typically find such contacts rated at no more than a few amps, and no more than 120 volts. There are exceptions, of course, but these are common limits.

Another sealed-contact type of switch is the magnetic reed switch. Like the mercury switch, a reed switch's contacts are located inside a sealed tube. Unlike the mercury switch which uses liquid metal as the contact medium, the reed switch is simply a pair of very thin, magnetic, metal strips (hence the name "reed") which are brought into contact with each other by apply-

ing a strong magnetic field outside the sealed tube. The source of the magnetic field in this type of switch is usually a permanent magnet, moved closer to or further away from the tube by the actuating mechanism. Due to the small size of the reeds, this type of contact is typically rated at lower currents and voltages than the average mercury switch. However, reed switches typically handle vibration better than mercury contacts, because there is no liquid inside the tube to splash around.

It is common to find general-purpose switch contact voltage and current ratings to be greater on any given switch or relay if the electric power being switched is AC instead of DC. The reason for this is the self-extinguishing tendency of an alternating-current arc across an air gap. Because 60 Hz power line current actually stops and reverses direction 120 times per second, there are many opportunities for the ionized air of an arc to lose enough temperature to stop conducting current, to the point where the arc will not re-start on the next voltage peak. DC, on the other hand, is a continuous, uninterrupted flow of electrons which tends to maintain an arc across an air gap much better. Therefore, switch contacts of any kind incur more wear when switching a given value of direct current than for the same value of alternating current. The problem of switching DC is exaggerated when the load has a significant amount of inductance, as there will be very high voltages generated across the switch's contacts when the circuit is opened (the inductor doing its best to maintain circuit current at the same magnitude as when the switch was closed).

With both AC and DC, contact arcing can be minimized with the addition of a "snubber" circuit (a capacitor and resistor wired in series) in parallel with the contact, like this:



A sudden rise in voltage across the switch contact caused by the contact opening will be tempered by the capacitor's charging action (the capacitor opposing the increase in voltage by drawing current). The resistor limits the amount of current that the capacitor will discharge through the contact when it closes again. If the resistor were not there, the capacitor might actually make the arcing during contact closure worse than the arcing during contact opening without a capacitor! While this addition to the circuit helps mitigate contact arcing, it is not without disadvantage: a prime consideration is the possibility of a failed (shorted) capacitor/resistor combination providing a path for electrons to flow through the circuit at all times, even when the contact is open and current is not desired. The risk of this failure, and the severity of the resulting consequences must be considered against the increased contact wear (and inevitable contact failure) without the snubber circuit.

The use of snubbers in DC switch circuits is nothing new: automobile manufacturers have been doing this for years on engine ignition systems, minimizing the arcing across the switch contact "points" in the distributor with a small capacitor called a *condenser*. As any mechanic can tell you, the service life of the distributor's "points" is directly related to how well the condenser is functioning.

With all this discussion concerning the reduction of switch contact arcing, one might be

led to think that less current is always better for a mechanical switch. This, however, is not necessarily so. It has been found that a small amount of periodic arcing can actually be good for the switch contacts, because it keeps the contact faces free from small amounts of dirt and corrosion. If a mechanical switch contact is operated with too little current, the contacts will tend to accumulate excessive resistance and may fail prematurely! This minimum amount of electric current necessary to keep a mechanical switch contact in good health is called the *wetting current*.

Normally, a switch's wetting current rating is far below its maximum current rating, and well below its normal operating current load in a properly designed system. However, there are applications where a mechanical switch contact may be required to routinely handle currents below normal wetting current limits (for instance, if a mechanical selector switch needs to open or close a digital logic or analog electronic circuit where the current value is extremely small). In these applications, is it highly recommended that gold-plated switch contacts be specified. Gold is a "noble" metal and does not corrode as other metals will. Such contacts have extremely low wetting current requirements as a result. Normal silver or copper alloy contacts will not provide reliable operation if used in such low-current service!

- **REVIEW:**
- The parts of a switch responsible for making and breaking electrical continuity are called the "contacts." Usually made of corrosion-resistant metal alloy, contacts are made to touch each other by a mechanism which helps maintain proper alignment and spacing.
- Mercury switches use a slug of liquid mercury metal as a moving contact. Sealed in a glass tube, the mercury contact's spark is sealed from the outside environment, making this type of switch ideally suited for atmospheres potentially harboring explosive vapors.
- Reed switches are another type of sealed-contact device, contact being made by two thin metal "reeds" inside a glass tube, brought together by the influence of an external magnetic field.
- Switch contacts suffer greater duress switching DC than AC. This is primarily due to the self-extinguishing nature of an AC arc.
- A resistor-capacitor network called a "snubber" can be connected in parallel with a switch contact to reduce contact arcing.
- *Wetting current* is the minimum amount of electric current necessary for a switch contact to carry in order for it to be self-cleaning. Normally this value is far below the switch's maximum current rating.

4.3 Contact "normal" state and make/break sequence

Any kind of switch contact can be designed so that the contacts "close" (establish continuity) when actuated, or "open" (interrupt continuity) when actuated. For switches that have a spring-return mechanism in them, the direction that the spring returns it to with no applied force is called the *normal* position. Therefore, contacts that are open in this position are called *normally open* and contacts that are closed in this position are called *normally closed*.

For process switches, the normal position, or state, is that which the switch is in when there is no process influence on it. An easy way to figure out the normal condition of a process switch is to consider the state of the switch as it sits on a storage shelf, uninstalled. Here are some examples of "normal" process switch conditions:

- **Speed switch**: Shaft not turning
- **Pressure switch**: Zero applied pressure
- **Temperature switch**: Ambient (room) temperature
- **Level switch**: Empty tank or bin
- **Flow switch**: Zero liquid flow

It is important to differentiate between a switch's "normal" condition and its "normal" use in an operating process. Consider the example of a liquid flow switch that serves as a low-flow alarm in a cooling water system. The normal, or properly-operating, condition of the cooling water system is to have fairly constant coolant flow going through this pipe. If we want the flow switch's contact to *close* in the event of a loss of coolant flow (to complete an electric circuit which activates an alarm siren, for example), we would want to use a flow switch with *normally-closed* rather than normally-open contacts. When there's adequate flow through the pipe, the switch's contacts are forced open; when the flow rate drops to an abnormally low level, the contacts return to their normal (closed) state. This is confusing if you think of "normal" as being the regular state of the process, so be sure to always think of a switch's "normal" state as that which its in as it sits on a shelf.

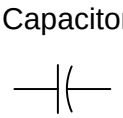
The schematic symbology for switches vary according to the switch's purpose and actuation. A normally-open switch contact is drawn in such a way as to signify an open connection, ready to close when actuated. Conversely, a normally-closed switch is drawn as a closed connection which will be opened when actuated. Note the following symbols:

Pushbutton switch

There is also a generic symbology for any switch contact, using a pair of vertical lines to represent the contact points in a switch. Normally-open contacts are designated by the lines not touching, while normally-closed contacts are designated with a diagonal line bridging between the two lines. Compare the two:

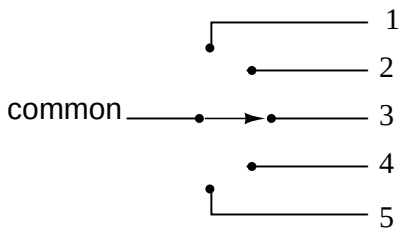
Generic switch contact designation

The switch on the left will close when actuated, and will be open while in the "normal" (unactuated) position. The switch on the right will open when actuated, and is closed in the "normal" (unactuated) position. If switches are designated with these generic symbols, the type of switch usually will be noted in text immediately beside the symbol. Please note that the symbol on the left is *not* to be confused with that of a capacitor. If a capacitor needs to be represented in a control logic schematic, it will be shown like this:



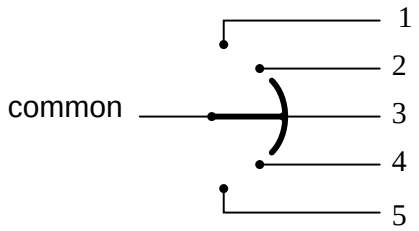
In standard electronic symbology, the figure shown above is reserved for polarity-sensitive capacitors. In control logic symbology, this capacitor symbol is used for *any* type of capacitor, even when the capacitor is not polarity sensitive, so as to clearly distinguish it from a normally-open switch contact.

With multiple-position selector switches, another design factor must be considered: that is, the sequence of breaking old connections and making new connections as the switch is moved from position to position, the moving contact touching several stationary contacts in sequence.



The selector switch shown above switches a common contact lever to one of five different positions, to contact wires numbered 1 through 5. The most common configuration of a multi-position switch like this is one where the contact with one position is broken *before* the contact with the next position is made. This configuration is called *break-before-make*. To give an example, if the switch were set at position number 3 and slowly turned clockwise, the contact lever would move off of the number 3 position, opening that circuit, move to a position between number 3 and number 4 (both circuit paths open), and then touch position number 4, closing that circuit.

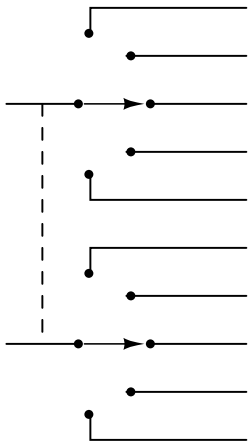
There are applications where it is unacceptable to completely open the circuit attached to the "common" wire at any point in time. For such an application, a *make-before-break* switch design can be built, in which the movable contact lever actually bridges between two positions of contact (between number 3 and number 4, in the above scenario) as it travels between positions. The compromise here is that the circuit must be able to tolerate switch closures between adjacent position contacts (1 and 2, 2 and 3, 3 and 4, 4 and 5) as the selector knob is turned from position to position. Such a switch is shown here:



When movable contact(s) can be brought into one of several positions with stationary contacts, those positions are sometimes called *throws*. The number of movable contacts is sometimes called *poles*. Both selector switches shown above with one moving contact and five stationary contacts would be designated as "single-pole, five-throw" switches.

If two identical single-pole, five-throw switches were mechanically ganged together so that they were actuated by the same mechanism, the whole assembly would be called a "double-pole, five-throw" switch:

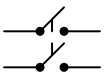
Double-pole, 5-throw switch assembly



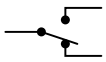
Here are a few common switch configurations and their abbreviated designations:

Single-pole, single-throw (SPST)

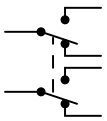
Double-pole, single-throw (DPST)



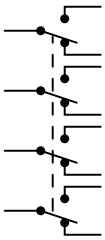
Single-pole, double-throw
(SPDT)



Double-pole, double-throw
(DPDT)



Four-pole, double-throw
(4PDT)



- **REVIEW:**
- The *normal* state of a switch is that where it is unactuated. For process switches, this is the condition its in when sitting on a shelf, uninstalled.
- A switch that is open when unactuated is called *normally-open*. A switch that is closed when unactuated is called *normally-closed*. Sometimes the terms "normally-open" and "normally-closed" are abbreviated N.O. and N.C., respectively.
- The generic symbology for N.O. and N.C. switch contacts is as follows:

Generic switch contact designation

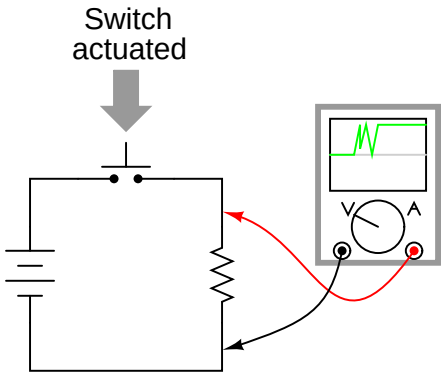
Normally-open *Normally-closed*

-
- Multiposition switches can be either break-before-make (most common) or make-before-break.
- The "poles" of a switch refers to the number of moving contacts, while the "throws" of a switch refers to the number of stationary contacts per moving contact.

4.4 Contact ”bounce”

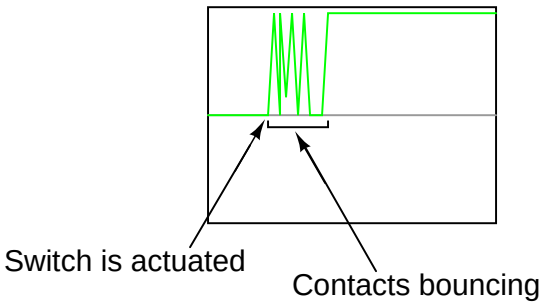
When a switch is actuated and contacts touch one another under the force of actuation, they are supposed to establish continuity in a single, crisp moment. Unfortunately, though, switches do not exactly achieve this goal. Due to the mass of the moving contact and any elasticity inherent in the mechanism and/or contact materials, contacts will ”bounce” upon closure for a period of milliseconds before coming to a full rest and providing unbroken contact. In many applications, switch bounce is of no consequence: it matters little if a switch controlling an incandescent lamp ”bounces” for a few cycles every time it is actuated. Since the lamp’s warm-up time greatly exceeds the bounce period, no irregularity in lamp operation will result.

However, if the switch is used to send a signal to an electronic amplifier or some other circuit with a fast response time, contact bounce may produce very noticeable and undesired effects:



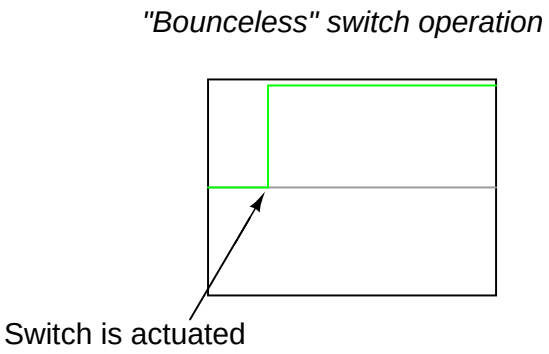
A closer look at the oscilloscope display reveals a rather ugly set of makes and breaks when the switch is actuated a single time:

Close-up view of oscilloscope display:



If, for example, this switch is used to provide a ”clock” signal to a digital counter circuit, so that each actuation of the pushbutton switch is supposed to increment the counter by a value of 1, what will happen instead is the counter will increment by several counts each time the switch is actuated. Since mechanical switches often interface with digital electronic circuits in modern systems, switch contact bounce is a frequent design consideration. Somehow, the

”chattering” produced by bouncing contacts must be eliminated so that the receiving circuit sees a clean, crisp off/on transition:



Switch contacts may be *debounced* several different ways. The most direct means is to address the problem at its source: the switch itself. Here are some suggestions for designing switch mechanisms for minimum bounce:

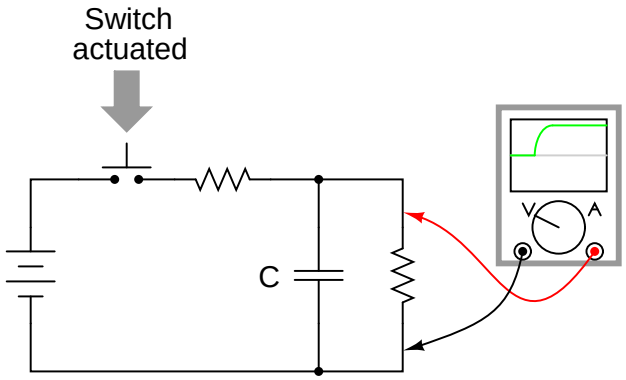
- Reduce the kinetic energy of the moving contact. This will reduce the force of impact as it comes to rest on the stationary contact, thus minimizing bounce.
- Use ”buffer springs” on the stationary contact(s) so that they are free to recoil and gently absorb the force of impact from the moving contact.
- Design the switch for ”wiping” or ”sliding” contact rather than direct impact. ”Knife” switch designs use sliding contacts.
- Dampen the switch mechanism’s movement using an air or oil ”shock absorber” mechanism.
- Use sets of contacts in parallel with each other, each slightly different in mass or contact gap, so that when one is rebounding off the stationary contact, at least one of the others will still be in firm contact.
- ”Wet” the contacts with liquid mercury in a sealed environment. After initial contact is made, the surface tension of the mercury will maintain circuit continuity even though the moving contact may bounce off the stationary contact several times.

Each one of these suggestions sacrifices some aspect of switch performance for limited bounce, and so it is impractical to design *all* switches with limited contact bounce in mind. Alterations made to reduce the kinetic energy of the contact may result in a small open-contact gap or a slow-moving contact, which limits the amount of voltage the switch may handle and the amount of current it may interrupt. Sliding contacts, while non-bouncing, still produce ”noise” (irregular current caused by irregular contact resistance when moving), and suffer from more mechanical wear than normal contacts.

Multiple, parallel contacts give less bounce, but only at greater switch complexity and cost. Using mercury to ”wet” the contacts is a very effective means of bounce mitigation, but it is unfortunately limited to switch contacts of low ampacity. Also, mercury-wetted contacts are

usually limited in mounting position, as gravity may cause the contacts to ”bridge” accidently if oriented the wrong way.

If re-designing the switch mechanism is not an option, mechanical switch contacts may be debounced externally, using other circuit components to condition the signal. A low-pass filter circuit attached to the output of the switch, for example, will reduce the voltage/current fluctuations generated by contact bounce:



Switch contacts may be debounced electronically, using hysteretic transistor circuits (circuits that ”latch” in either a high or a low state) with built-in time delays (called ”one-shot” circuits), or two inputs controlled by a double-throw switch. These hysteretic circuits, called *multivibrators*, are discussed in detail in a later chapter.

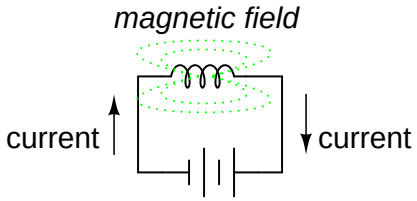
Chapter 5

ELECTROMECHANICAL RELAYS

Contents

5.1 Relay construction

An electric current through a conductor will produce a magnetic field at right angles to the direction of electron flow. If that conductor is wrapped into a coil shape, the magnetic field produced will be oriented along the length of the coil. The greater the current, the greater the strength of the magnetic field, all other factors being equal:



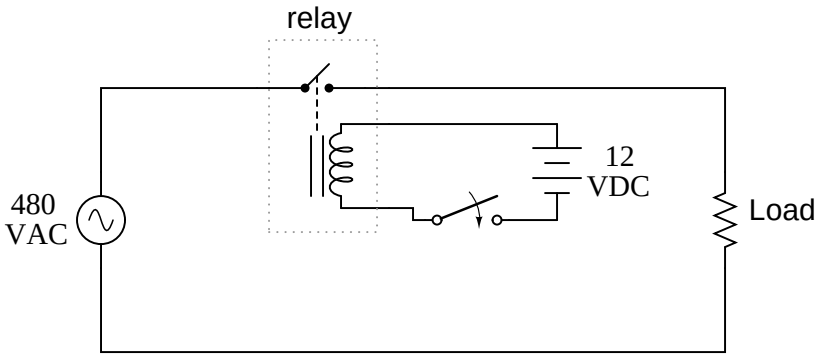
Inductors react against changes in current because of the energy stored in this magnetic field. When we construct a transformer from two inductor coils around a common iron core, we use this field to transfer energy from one coil to the other. However, there are simpler and more direct uses for electromagnetic fields than the applications we've seen with inductors and transformers. The magnetic field produced by a coil of current-carrying wire can be used to

exert a mechanical force on any magnetic object, just as we can use a permanent magnet to attract magnetic objects, except that this magnet (formed by the coil) can be turned on or off by switching the current on or off through the coil.

If we place a magnetic object near such a coil for the purpose of making that object move when we energize the coil with electric current, we have what is called a *solenoid*. The movable magnetic object is called an *armature*, and most armatures can be moved with either direct current (DC) or alternating current (AC) energizing the coil. The polarity of the magnetic field is irrelevant for the purpose of attracting an iron armature. Solenoids can be used to electrically open door latches, open or shut valves, move robotic limbs, and even actuate electric switch mechanisms. However, if a solenoid is used to actuate a set of switch contacts, we have a device so useful it deserves its own name: the *relay*.

Relays are extremely useful when we have a need to control a large amount of current and/or voltage with a small electrical signal. The relay coil which produces the magnetic field may only consume fractions of a watt of power, while the contacts closed or opened by that magnetic field may be able to conduct hundreds of times that amount of power to a load. In effect, a relay acts as a binary (on or off) amplifier.

Just as with transistors, the relay's ability to control one electrical signal with another finds application in the construction of logic functions. This topic will be covered in greater detail in another lesson. For now, the relay's "amplifying" ability will be explored.



In the above schematic, the relay's coil is energized by the low-voltage (12 VDC) source, while the single-pole, single-throw (SPST) contact interrupts the high-voltage (480 VAC) circuit. It is quite likely that the current required to energize the relay coil will be hundreds of times less than the current rating of the contact. Typical relay coil currents are well below 1 amp, while typical contact ratings for industrial relays are at least 10 amps.

One relay coil/armature assembly may be used to actuate more than one set of contacts. Those contacts may be normally-open, normally-closed, or any combination of the two. As with switches, the "normal" state of a relay's contacts is that state when the coil is de-energized, just as you would find the relay sitting on a shelf, not connected to any circuit.

Relay contacts may be open-air pads of metal alloy, mercury tubes, or even magnetic reeds, just as with other types of switches. The choice of contacts in a relay depends on the same factors which dictate contact choice in other types of switches. Open-air contacts are the best for high-current applications, but their tendency to corrode and spark may cause problems in some industrial environments. Mercury and reed contacts are sparkless and won't corrode, but

they tend to be limited in current-carrying capacity.

Shown here are three small relays (about two inches in height, each), installed on a panel as part of an electrical control system at a municipal water treatment plant:

The relay units shown here are called "octal-base," because they plug into matching sockets, the electrical connections secured via eight metal pins on the relay bottom. The screw terminal connections you see in the photograph where wires connect to the relays are actually part of the socket assembly, into which each relay is plugged. This type of construction facilitates easy removal and replacement of the relay(s) in the event of failure.

Aside from the ability to allow a relatively small electric signal to switch a relatively large electric signal, relays also offer electrical isolation between coil and contact circuits. This means that the coil circuit and contact circuit(s) are electrically insulated from one another. One circuit may be DC and the other AC (such as in the example circuit shown earlier), and/or they may be at completely different voltage levels, across the connections or from connections to ground.

While relays are essentially binary devices, either being completely on or completely off, there are operating conditions where their state may be indeterminate, just as with semiconductor logic gates. In order for a relay to positively "pull in" the armature to actuate the contact(s), there must be a certain minimum amount of current through the coil. This minimum amount is called the *pull-in* current, and it is analogous to the minimum input voltage that a logic gate requires to guarantee a "high" state (typically 2 Volts for TTL, 3.5 Volts for CMOS). Once the armature is pulled closer to the coil's center, however, it takes less magnetic field flux (less coil current) to hold it there. Therefore, the coil current must drop below a value significantly lower than the pull-in current before the armature "drops out" to its spring-loaded position and the contacts resume their normal state. This current level is called the *drop-out* current, and it is analogous to the maximum input voltage that a logic gate input will allow to guarantee a "low" state (typically 0.8 Volts for TTL, 1.5 Volts for CMOS).

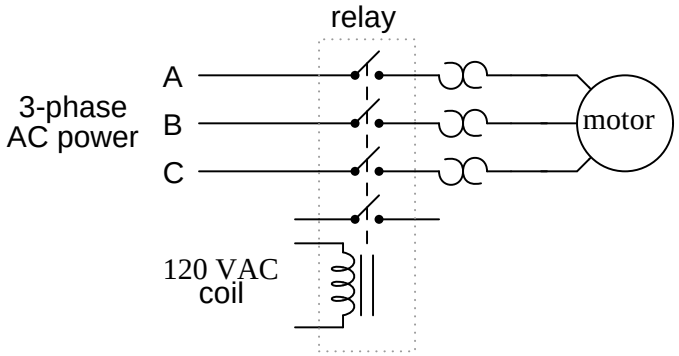
The hysteresis, or difference between pull-in and drop-out currents, results in operation that is similar to a Schmitt trigger logic gate. Pull-in and drop-out currents (and voltages) vary widely from relay to relay, and are specified by the manufacturer.

- **REVIEW:**

- A *solenoid* is a device that produces mechanical motion from the energization of an electromagnet coil. The movable portion of a solenoid is called an *armature*.
- A *relay* is a solenoid set up to actuate switch contacts when its coil is energized.
- *Pull-in* current is the minimum amount of coil current needed to actuate a solenoid or relay from its "normal" (de-energized) position.
- *Drop-out* current is the maximum coil current below which an energized relay will return to its "normal" state.

5.2 Contactors

When a relay is used to switch a large amount of electrical power through its contacts, it is designated by a special name: *contactor*. Contactors typically have multiple contacts, and those contacts are usually (but not always) normally-open, so that power to the load is shut off when the coil is de-energized. Perhaps the most common industrial use for contactors is the control of electric motors.



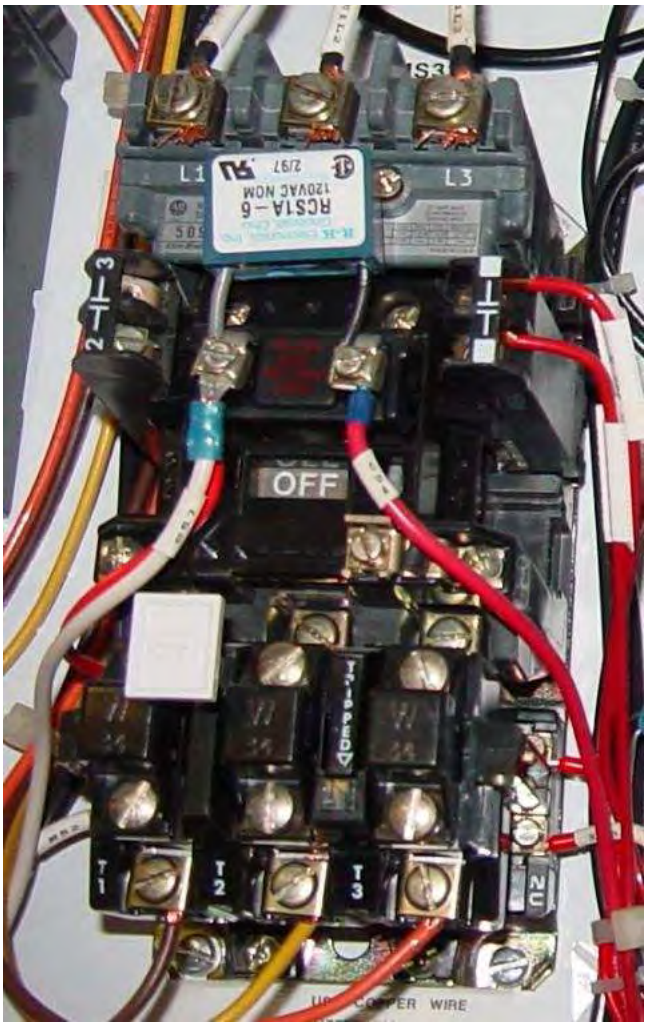
The top three contacts switch the respective phases of the incoming 3-phase AC power, typically at least 480 Volts for motors 1 horsepower or greater. The lowest contact is an "auxiliary" contact which has a current rating much lower than that of the large motor power contacts, but is actuated by the same armature as the power contacts. The auxiliary contact is often used in a relay logic circuit, or for some other part of the motor control scheme, typically switching 120 Volt AC power instead of the motor voltage. One contactor may have several auxiliary contacts, either normally-open or normally-closed, if required.

The three "opposed-question-mark" shaped devices in series with each phase going to the motor are called *overload heaters*. Each "heater" element is a low-resistance strip of metal intended to heat up as the motor draws current. If the temperature of any of these heater elements reaches a critical point (equivalent to a moderate overloading of the motor), a normally-closed switch contact (not shown in the diagram) will spring open. This normally-closed contact is usually connected in series with the relay coil, so that when it opens the relay will automatically de-energize, thereby shutting off power to the motor. We will see more of this overload protection wiring in the next chapter. Overload heaters are intended to provide overcurrent

protection for large electric motors, unlike circuit breakers and fuses which serve the primary purpose of providing overcurrent protection for power conductors.

Overload heater function is often misunderstood. They are not fuses; that is, it is not their function to burn open and directly break the circuit as a fuse is designed to do. Rather, overload heaters are designed to thermally mimic the heating characteristic of the particular electric motor to be protected. All motors have thermal characteristics, including the amount of heat energy generated by resistive dissipation (I^2R), the thermal transfer characteristics of heat "conducted" to the cooling medium through the metal frame of the motor, the physical mass and specific heat of the materials constituting the motor, etc. These characteristics are mimicked by the overload heater on a miniature scale: when the motor heats up toward its critical temperature, so will the heater toward *its* critical temperature, ideally at the same rate and approach curve. Thus, the overload contact, in sensing heater temperature with a thermo-mechanical mechanism, will sense an analogue of the real motor. If the overload contact trips due to excessive heater temperature, it will be an indication that the real motor has reached *its* critical temperature (or, would have done so in a short while). After tripping, the heaters are supposed to cool down at the same rate and approach curve as the real motor, so that they indicate an accurate proportion of the motor's thermal condition, and will not allow power to be re-applied until the motor is truly ready for start-up again.

Shown here is a contactor for a three-phase electric motor, installed on a panel as part of an electrical control system at a municipal water treatment plant:



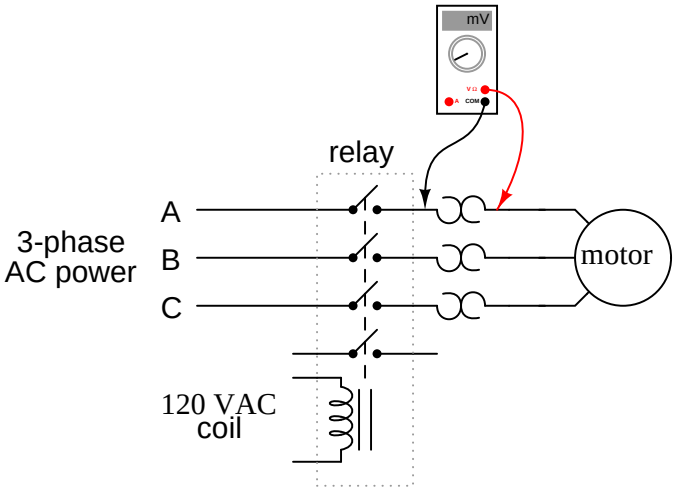
Three-phase, 480 volt AC power comes in to the three normally-open contacts at the top of the contactor via screw terminals labeled "L1," "L2," and "L3" (The "L2" terminal is hidden behind a square-shaped "snubber" circuit connected across the contactor's coil terminals). Power to the motor exits the overload heater assembly at the bottom of this device via screw terminals labeled "T1," "T2," and "T3."

The overload heater units themselves are black, square-shaped blocks with the label "W34," indicating a particular thermal response for a certain horsepower and temperature rating of electric motor. If an electric motor of differing power and/or temperature ratings were to be substituted for the one presently in service, the overload heater units would have to be replaced with units having a thermal response suitable for the new motor. The motor manufacturer can provide information on the appropriate heater units to use.

A white pushbutton located between the "T1" and "T2" line heaters serves as a way to manually re-set the normally-closed switch contact back to its normal state after having been

tripped by excessive heater temperature. Wire connections to the ”overload” switch contact may be seen at the lower-right of the photograph, near a label reading ”NC” (normally-closed). On this particular overload unit, a small ”window” with the label ”Tripped” indicates a tripped condition by means of a colored flag. In this photograph, there is no ”tripped” condition, and the indicator appears clear.

As a footnote, heater elements may be used as a crude current shunt resistor for determining whether or not a motor is drawing current when the contactor is closed. There may be times when you're working on a motor control circuit, where the contactor is located far away from the motor itself. How do you know if the motor is consuming power when the contactor coil is energized and the armature has been pulled in? If the motor's windings are burnt open, you could be sending voltage to the motor through the contactor contacts, but still have zero current, and thus no motion from the motor shaft. If a clamp-on ammeter isn't available to measure line current, you can take your multimeter and measure millivoltage across each heater element: if the current is zero, the voltage across the heater will be zero (unless the heater element itself is open, in which case the voltage across it will be large); if there is current going to the motor through that phase of the contactor, you will read a definite millivoltage across that heater:



This is an especially useful trick to use for troubleshooting 3-phase AC motors, to see if one phase winding is burnt open or disconnected, which will result in a rapidly destructive condition known as ”single-phasing.” If one of the lines carrying power to the motor is open, it will not have any current through it (as indicated by a 0.00 mV reading across its heater), although the other two lines will (as indicated by small amounts of voltage dropped across the respective heaters).

- **REVIEW:**
- A *contactor* is a large relay, usually used to switch current to an electric motor or other high-power load.
- Large electric motors can be protected from overcurrent damage through the use of *overload heaters* and *overload contacts*. If the series-connected heaters get too hot from exces-

sive current, the normally-closed overload contact will open, de-energizing the contactor sending power to the motor.

5.3 Time-delay relays

Some relays are constructed with a kind of "shock absorber" mechanism attached to the armature which prevents immediate, full motion when the coil is either energized or de-energized. This addition gives the relay the property of *time-delay* actuation. Time-delay relays can be constructed to delay armature motion on coil energization, de-energization, or both.

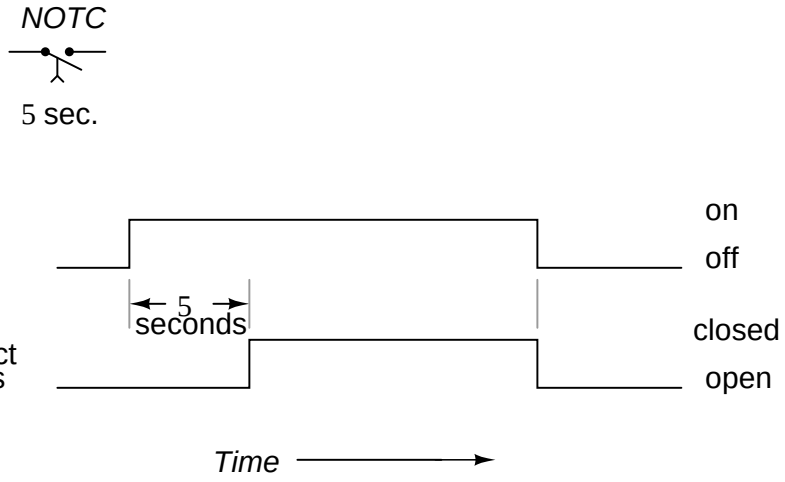
Time-delay relay contacts must be specified not only as either normally-open or normally-closed, but whether the delay operates in the direction of closing or in the direction of opening. The following is a description of the four basic types of time-delay relay contacts.

First we have the normally-open, timed-closed (NOTC) contact. This type of contact is normally open when the coil is unpowered (de-energized). The contact is closed by the application of power to the relay coil, but only after the coil has been continuously powered for the specified amount of time. In other words, the *direction* of the contact's motion (either to close or to open) is identical to a regular NO contact, but there is a delay in *closing* direction. Because the delay occurs in the direction of coil energization, this type of contact is alternatively known as a normally-open, *on*-delay:

Normally-open, timed-closed

Closes 5 seconds after coil energization
Opens immediately upon coil de-energization

The following is a timing diagram of this relay contact's operation:



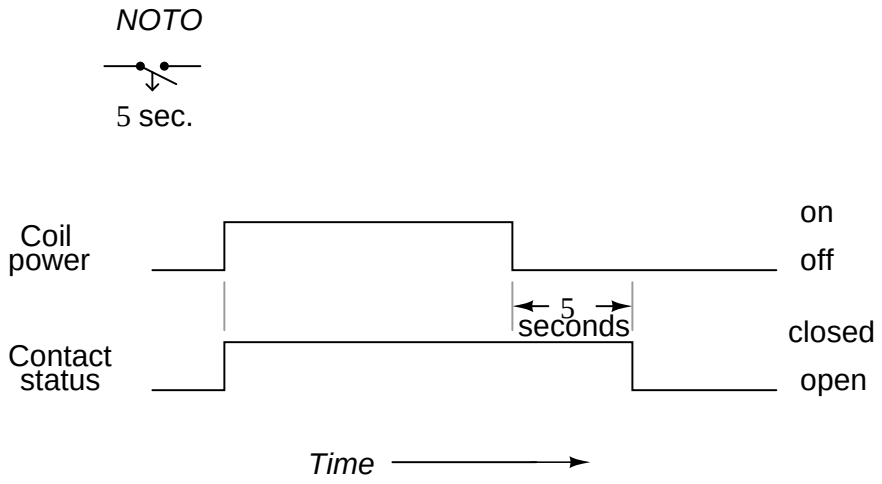
Next we have the normally-open, timed-open (NOTO) contact. Like the NOTC contact, this type of contact is normally open when the coil is unpowered (de-energized), and closed by the application of power to the relay coil. However, unlike the NOTC contact, the timing action occurs upon *de-energization* of the coil rather than upon energization. Because the delay occurs in the direction of coil de-energization, this type of contact is alternatively known as a normally-open, *off*-delay:

Normally-open, timed-open

5 sec.

Closes immediately upon coil energization
Opens 5 seconds after coil de-energization

The following is a timing diagram of this relay contact's operation:



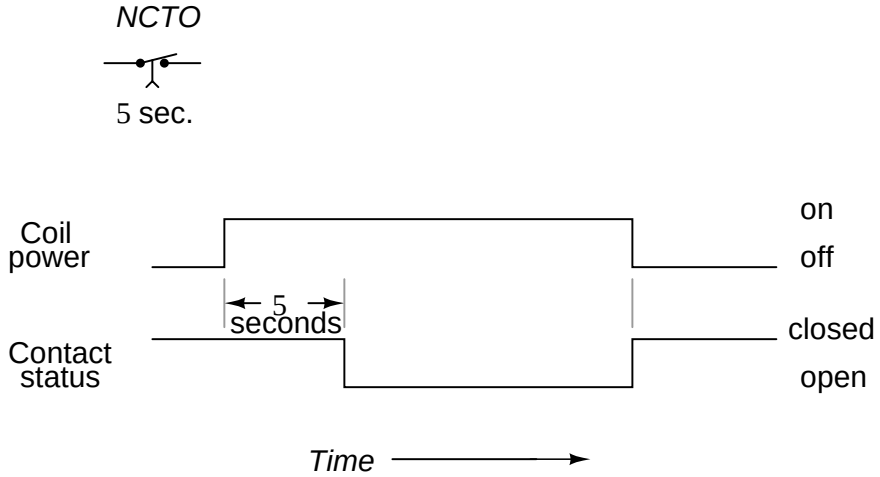
Next we have the normally-closed, timed-open (NCTO) contact. This type of contact is normally closed when the coil is unpowered (de-energized). The contact is opened with the application of power to the relay coil, but only after the coil has been continuously powered for the specified amount of time. In other words, the *direction* of the contact's motion (either to close or to open) is identical to a regular NC contact, but there is a delay in the *opening* direction. Because the delay occurs in the direction of coil energization, this type of contact is alternatively known as a normally-closed, *on*-delay:

Normally-closed, timed-open

5 sec.

Opens 5 seconds after coil energization
Closes immediately upon coil de-energization

The following is a timing diagram of this relay contact's operation:



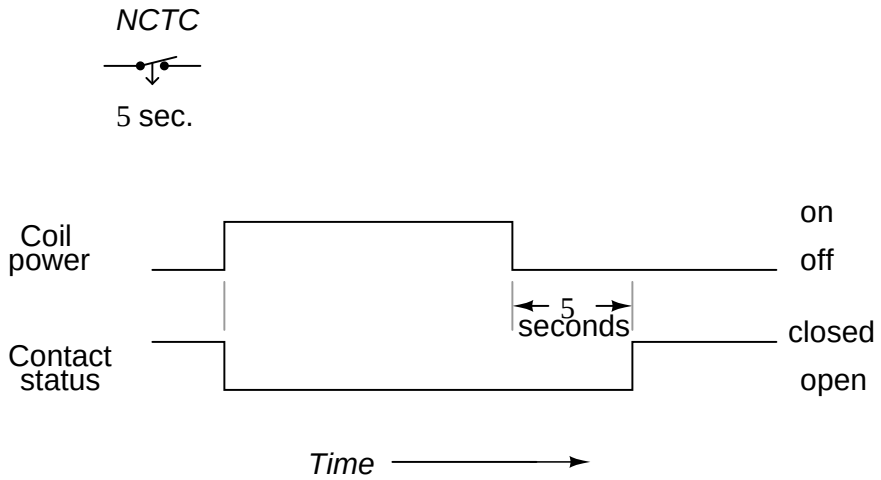
Finally we have the normally-closed, timed-closed (NCTC) contact. Like the NCTO contact, this type of contact is normally closed when the coil is unpowered (de-energized), and opened by the application of power to the relay coil. However, unlike the NCTO contact, the timing action occurs upon *de-energization* of the coil rather than upon energization. Because the delay occurs in the direction of coil de-energization, this type of contact is alternatively known as a normally-closed, *off*-delay:

Normally-closed, timed-closed

5 sec.

Opens immediately upon coil energization
Closes 5 seconds after coil de-energization

The following is a timing diagram of this relay contact's operation:



Time-delay relays are very important for use in industrial control logic circuits. Some examples of their use include:

- Flashing light control (time on, time off): two time-delay relays are used in conjunction with one another to provide a constant-frequency on/off pulsing of contacts for sending intermittent power to a lamp.

- Engine autostart control: Engines that are used to power emergency generators are often equipped with ”autostart” controls that allow for automatic start-up if the main electric power fails. To properly start a large engine, certain auxiliary devices must be started first and allowed some brief time to stabilize (fuel pumps, pre-lubrication oil pumps) before the engine’s starter motor is energized. Time-delay relays help sequence these events for proper start-up of the engine.

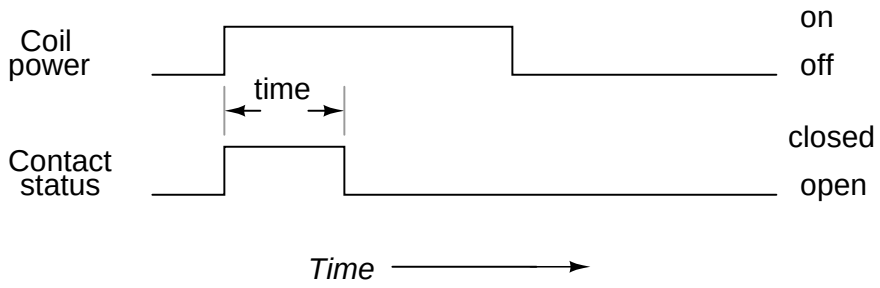
- Furnace safety purge control: Before a combustion-type furnace can be safely lit, the air fan must be run for a specified amount of time to ”purge” the furnace chamber of any potentially flammable or explosive vapors. A time-delay relay provides the furnace control logic with this necessary time element.

- Motor soft-start delay control: Instead of starting large electric motors by switching full power from a dead stop condition, reduced voltage can be switched for a ”softer” start and less inrush current. After a prescribed time delay (provided by a time-delay relay), full power is applied.

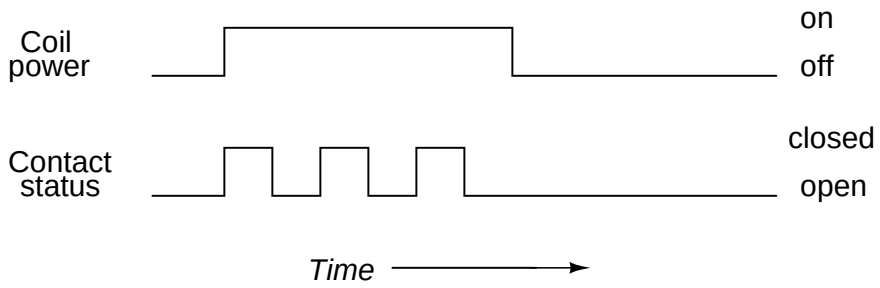
- Conveyor belt sequence delay: when multiple conveyor belts are arranged to transport material, the conveyor belts must be started in reverse sequence (the last one first and the first one last) so that material doesn’t get piled on to a stopped or slow-moving conveyor. In order to get large belts up to full speed, some time may be needed (especially if soft-start motor controls are used). For this reason, there is usually a time-delay circuit arranged on each conveyor to give it adequate time to attain full belt speed before the next conveyor belt feeding it is started.

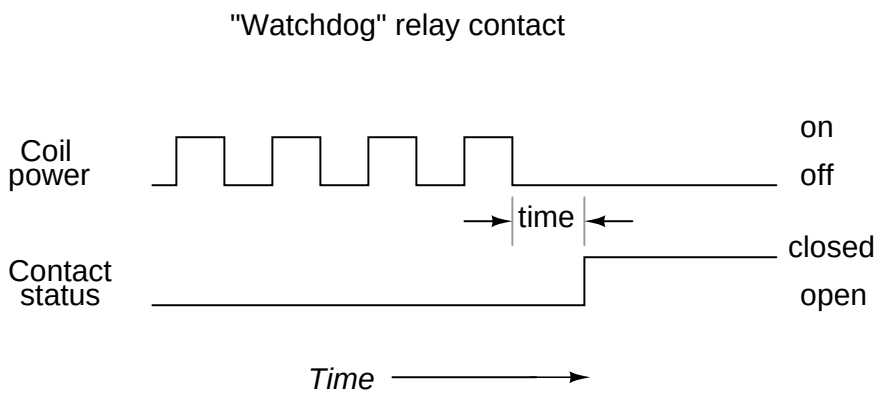
The older, mechanical time-delay relays used pneumatic dashpots or fluid-filled piston/cylinder arrangements to provide the ”shock absorbing” needed to delay the motion of the armature. Newer designs of time-delay relays use electronic circuits with resistor-capacitor (RC) networks to generate a time delay, then energize a normal (instantaneous) electromechanical relay coil with the electronic circuit’s output. The electronic-timer relays are more versatile than the older, mechanical models, and less prone to failure. Many models provide advanced timer features such as ”one-shot” (one measured output pulse for every transition of the input from de-energized to energized), ”recycle” (repeated on/off output cycles for as long as the input connection is energized) and ”watchdog” (changes state if the input signal does not repeatedly cycle on and off).

"One-shot" normally-open relay contact



"Recycle" normally-open relay contact





The ”watchdog” timer is especially useful for monitoring of computer systems. If a computer is being used to control a critical process, it is usually recommended to have an automatic alarm to detect computer ”lockup” (an abnormal halting of program execution due to any number of causes). An easy way to set up such a monitoring system is to have the computer regularly energize and de-energize the coil of a watchdog timer relay (similar to the output of the ”recycle” timer). If the computer execution halts for any reason, the signal it outputs to the watchdog relay coil will stop cycling and freeze in one or the other state. A short time thereafter, the watchdog relay will ”time out” and signal a problem.

- **REVIEW:**
- Time delay relays are built in these four basic modes of contact operation:
- 1: Normally-open, timed-closed. Abbreviated ”NOTC”, these relays open immediately upon coil de-energization and close only if the coil is continuously energized for the time duration period. Also called *normally-open, on-delay* relays.
- 2: Normally-open, timed-open. Abbreviated ”NOTO”, these relays close immediately upon coil energization and open after the coil has been de-energized for the time duration period. Also called *normally-open, off delay* relays.
- 3: Normally-closed, timed-open. Abbreviated ”NCTO”, these relays close immediately upon coil de-energization and open only if the coil is continuously energized for the time duration period. Also called *normally-closed, on-delay* relays.
- 4: Normally-closed, timed-closed. Abbreviated ”NCTC”, these relays open immediately upon coil energization and close after the coil has been de-energized for the time duration period. Also called *normally-closed, off delay* relays.
- *One-shot* timers provide a single contact pulse of specified duration for each coil energization (transition from coil *off* to coil *on*).
- *Recycle* timers provide a repeating sequence of on-off contact pulses as long as the coil is maintained in an energized state.
- *Watchdog* timers actuate their contacts only if the coil fails to be continuously sequenced on and off (energized and de-energized) at a minimum frequency.

5.4 Protective relays

A special type of relay is one which monitors the current, voltage, frequency, or any other type of electric power measurement either from a generating source or to a load for the purpose of triggering a circuit breaker to open in the event of an abnormal condition. These relays are referred to in the electrical power industry as *protective relays*.

The circuit breakers which are used to switch large quantities of electric power on and off are actually electromechanical relays, themselves. Unlike the circuit breakers found in residential and commercial use which determine when to trip (open) by means of a bimetallic strip inside that bends when it gets too hot from overcurrent, large industrial circuit breakers must be ”told” by an external device when to open. Such breakers have two electromagnetic coils inside: one to close the breaker contacts and one to open them. The ”trip” coil can be energized by one or more protective relays, as well as by hand switches, connected to switch 125 Volt DC power. DC power is used because it allows for a battery bank to supply close/trip power to the breaker control circuits in the event of a complete (AC) power failure.

Protective relays can monitor large AC currents by means of current transformers (CT's), which encircle the current-carrying conductors exiting a large circuit breaker, transformer, generator, or other device. Current transformers step down the monitored current to a secondary (output) range of 0 to 5 amps AC to power the protective relay. The current relay uses this 0-5 amp signal to power its internal mechanism, closing a contact to switch 125 Volt DC power to the breaker's trip coil if the monitored current becomes excessive.

Likewise, (protective) voltage relays can monitor high AC voltages by means of voltage, or potential, transformers (PT's) which step down the monitored voltage to a secondary range of 0 to 120 Volts AC, typically. Like (protective) current relays, this voltage signal powers the internal mechanism of the relay, closing a contact to switch 125 Volt DC power to the breaker's trip coil is the monitored voltage becomes excessive.

There are many types of protective relays, some with highly specialized functions. Not all monitor voltage or current, either. They all, however, share the common feature of outputting a contact closure signal which can be used to switch power to a breaker trip coil, close coil, or operator alarm panel. Most protective relay functions have been categorized into an ANSI standard number code. Here are a few examples from that code list:

ANSI protective relay designation numbers

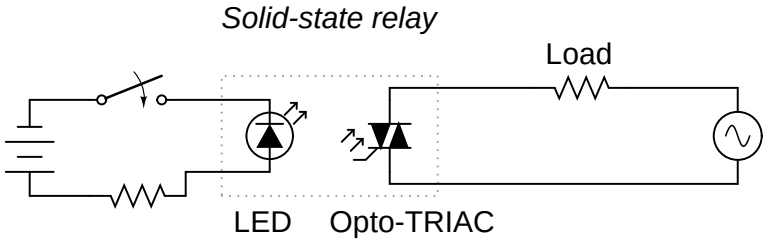
```
12 = Overspeed
24 = Overexcitation
25 = Syncrocheck
27 = Bus/Line undervoltage
32 = Reverse power (anti-motoring)
38 = Stator overtemp (RTD)
39 = Bearing vibration
40 = Loss of excitation
46 = Negative sequence undercurrent (phase current imbalance)
47 = Negative sequence undervoltage (phase voltage imbalance)
49 = Bearing overtemp (RTD)
50 = Instantaneous overcurrent
51 = Time overcurrent
```

```
51V = Time overcurrent -- voltage restrained
55 = Power factor
59 = Bus overvoltage
60FL = Voltage transformer fuse failure
67 = Phase/Ground directional current
79 = Autoreclose
81 = Bus over/underfrequency
```

- **REVIEW:**
- Large electric circuit breakers do not contain within themselves the necessary mechanisms to automatically trip (open) in the event of overcurrent conditions. They must be ”told” to trip by external devices.
- *Protective relays* are devices built to automatically trigger the actuation coils of large electric circuit breakers under certain conditions.

5.5 Solid-state relays

As versatile as electromechanical relays can be, they do suffer many limitations. They can be expensive to build, have a limited contact cycle life, take up a lot of room, and switch slowly, compared to modern semiconductor devices. These limitations are especially true for large power contactor relays. To address these limitations, many relay manufacturers offer ”solid-state” relays, which use an SCR, TRIAC, or transistor output instead of mechanical contacts to switch the controlled power. The output device (SCR, TRIAC, or transistor) is optically-coupled to an LED light source inside the relay. The relay is turned on by energizing this LED, usually with low-voltage DC power. This optical isolation between input to output rivals the best that electromechanical relays can offer.



Being solid-state devices, there are no moving parts to wear out, and they are able to switch on and off much faster than any mechanical relay armature can move. There is no sparking between contacts, and no problems with contact corrosion. However, solid-state relays are still too expensive to build in very high current ratings, and so electromechanical contactors continue to dominate that application in industry today.

One significant advantage of a solid-state SCR or TRIAC relay over an electromechanical device is its natural tendency to open the AC circuit only at a point of zero load current. Because SCR’s and TRIAC’s are *thyristors*, their inherent hysteresis maintains circuit continuity after the LED is de-energized until the AC current falls below a threshold value (the *holding*

current). In practical terms what this means is the circuit will never be interrupted in the middle of a sine wave peak. Such untimely interruptions in a circuit containing substantial inductance would normally produce large voltage spikes due to the sudden magnetic field collapse around the inductance. This will not happen in a circuit broken by an SCR or TRIAC. This feature is called *zero-crossover switching*.

One disadvantage of solid state relays is their tendency to fail "shorted" on their outputs, while electromechanical relay contacts tend to fail "open." In either case, it is possible for a relay to fail in the other mode, but these are the most common failures. Because a "fail-open" state is generally considered safer than a "fail-closed" state, electromechanical relays are still favored over their solid-state counterparts in many applications.

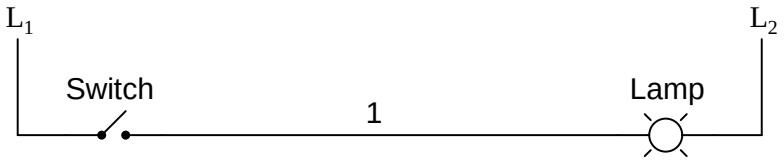
Chapter 6

LADDER LOGIC

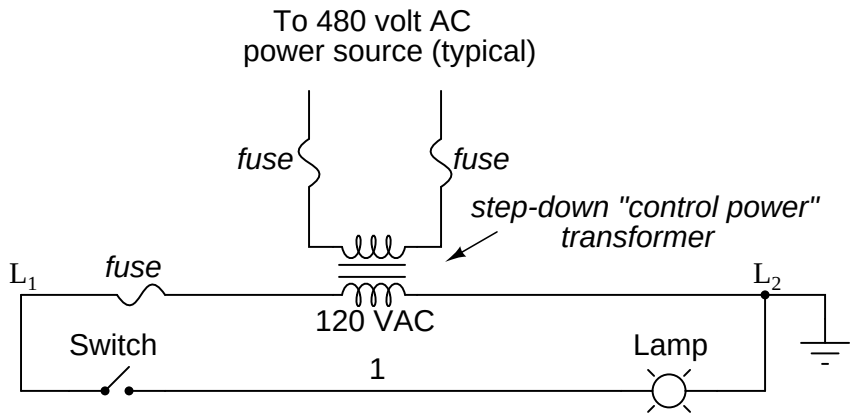
Contents

6.1 "Ladder" diagrams

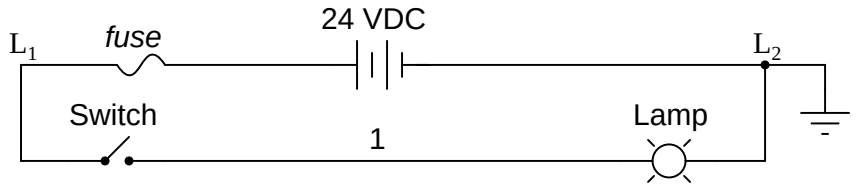
Ladder diagrams are specialized schematics commonly used to document industrial control logic systems. They are called "ladder" diagrams because they resemble a ladder, with two vertical rails (supply power) and as many "rungs" (horizontal lines) as there are control circuits to represent. If we wanted to draw a simple ladder diagram showing a lamp that is controlled by a hand switch, it would look like this:



The "L_1" and "L_2" designations refer to the two poles of a 120 VAC supply, unless otherwise noted. L_1 is the "hot" conductor, and L_2 is the grounded ("neutral") conductor. These designations have nothing to do with inductors, just to make things confusing. The actual transformer or generator supplying power to this circuit is omitted for simplicity. In reality, the circuit looks something like this:

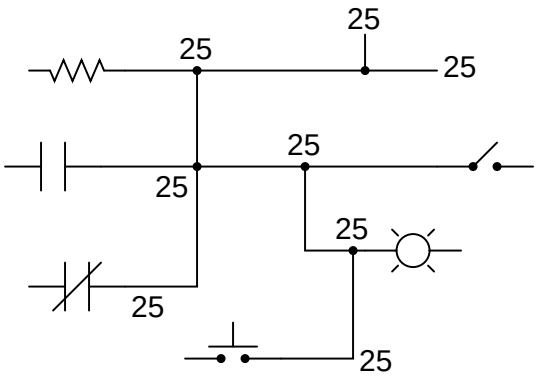


Typically in industrial relay logic circuits, but not always, the operating voltage for the switch contacts and relay coils will be 120 volts AC. Lower voltage AC and even DC systems are sometimes built and documented according to ”ladder” diagrams:



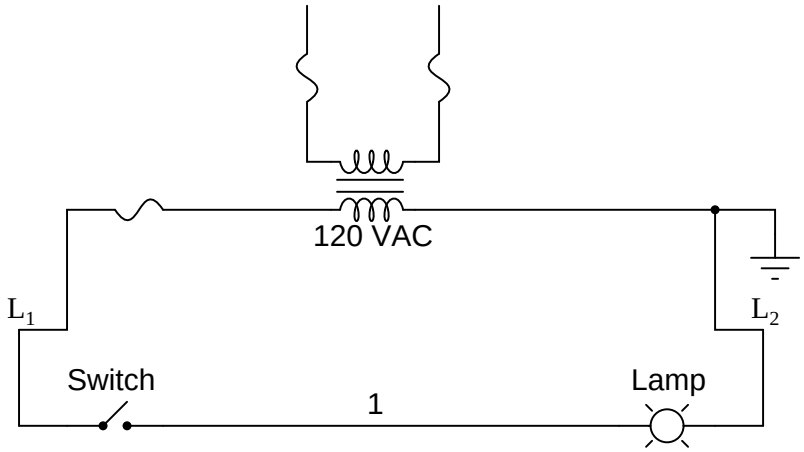
So long as the switch contacts and relay coils are all adequately rated, it really doesn’t matter what level of voltage is chosen for the system to operate with.

Note the number ”1” on the wire between the switch and the lamp. In the real world, that wire would be labeled with that number, using heat-shrink or adhesive tags, wherever it was convenient to identify. Wires leading to the switch would be labeled ”L_1” and ”1,” respectively. Wires leading to the lamp would be labeled ”1” and ”L_2,” respectively. These wire numbers make assembly and maintenance very easy. Each conductor has its own unique wire number for the control system that its used in. Wire numbers do not change at any junction or node, even if wire size, color, or length changes going into or out of a connection point. Of course, it is preferable to maintain consistent wire colors, but this is not always practical. What matters is that any one, electrically continuous point in a control circuit possesses the same wire number. Take this circuit section, for example, with wire #25 as a single, electrically continuous point threading to many different devices:

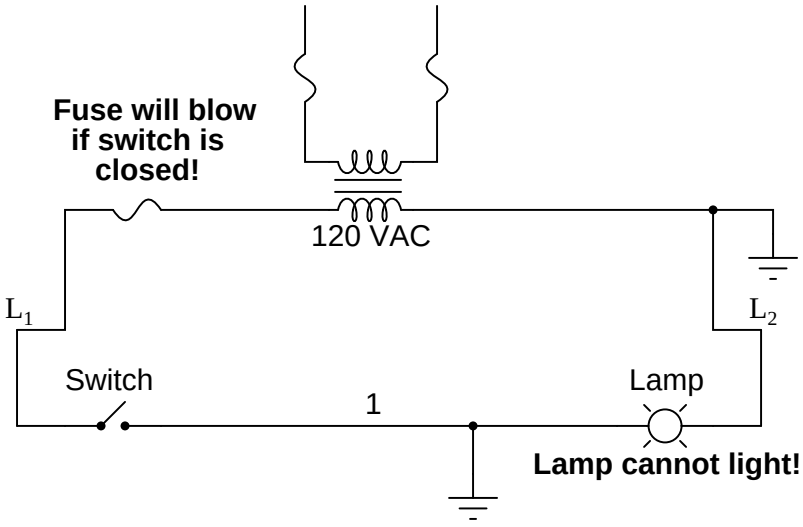


In ladder diagrams, the load device (lamp, relay coil, solenoid coil, etc.) is almost always drawn at the right-hand side of the rung. While it doesn't matter electrically where the relay coil is located within the rung, it *does* matter which end of the ladder's power supply is grounded, for reliable operation.

Take for instance this circuit:

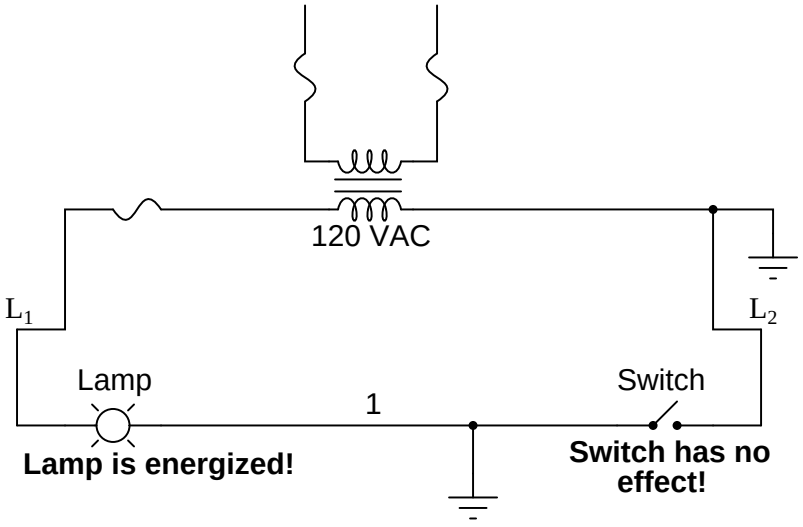


Here, the lamp (load) is located on the right-hand side of the rung, and so is the ground connection for the power source. This is no accident or coincidence; rather, it is a purposeful element of good design practice. Suppose that wire #1 were to accidently come in contact with ground, the insulation of that wire having been rubbed off so that the bare conductor came in contact with grounded, metal conduit. Our circuit would now function like this:



With both sides of the lamp connected to ground, the lamp will be "shorted out" and unable to receive power to light up. If the switch were to close, there would be a short-circuit, immediately blowing the fuse.

However, consider what would happen to the circuit with the same fault (wire #1 coming in contact with ground), except this time we'll swap the positions of switch and fuse (L_2 is still grounded):



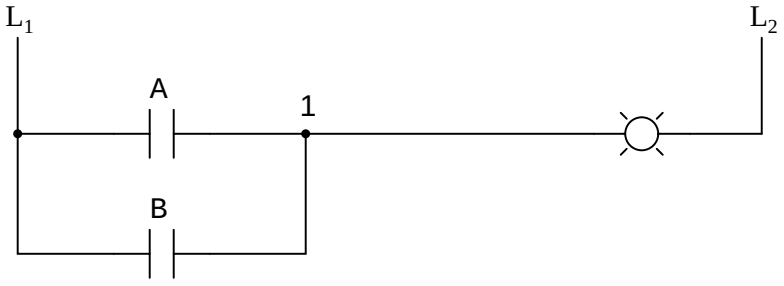
This time the accidental grounding of wire #1 will force power to the lamp while the switch will have no effect. It is much safer to have a system that blows a fuse in the event of a ground fault than to have a system that uncontrollably energizes lamps, relays, or solenoids

in the event of the same fault. For this reason, the load(s) must always be located nearest the grounded power conductor in the ladder diagram.

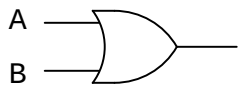
- **REVIEW:**
- Ladder diagrams (sometimes called ”ladder logic”) are a type of electrical notation and symbology frequently used to illustrate how electromechanical switches and relays are interconnected.
- The two vertical lines are called ”rails” and attach to opposite poles of a power supply, usually 120 volts AC. L_1 designates the ”hot” AC wire and L_2 the ”neutral” (grounded) conductor.
- Horizontal lines in a ladder diagram are called ”rungs,” each one representing a unique parallel circuit branch between the poles of the power supply.
- Typically, wires in control systems are marked with numbers and/or letters for identification. The rule is, all permanently connected (electrically common) points must bear the same label.

6.2 Digital logic functions

We can construct simply logic functions for our hypothetical lamp circuit, using multiple contacts, and document these circuits quite easily and understandably with additional rungs to our original ”ladder.” If we use standard binary notation for the status of the switches and lamp (0 for unactuated or de-energized; 1 for actuated or energized), a truth table can be made to show how the logic works:

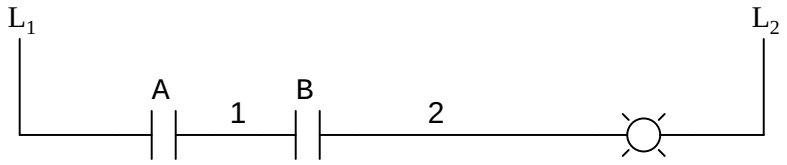


A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

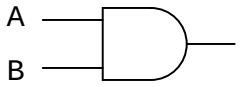


Now, the lamp will come on if either contact A or contact B is actuated, because all it takes for the lamp to be energized is to have at least one path for current from wire L_1 to wire 1. What we have is a simple OR logic function, implemented with nothing more than contacts and a lamp.

We can mimic the AND logic function by wiring the two contacts in series instead of parallel:

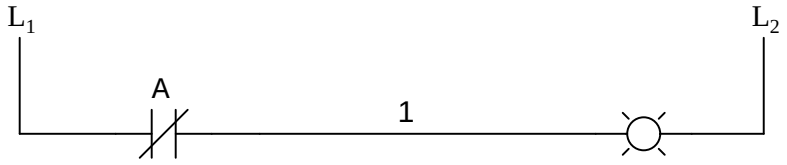


A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

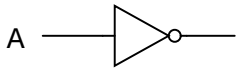


Now, the lamp energizes only if contact A *and* contact B are simultaneously actuated. A path exists for current from wire L_1 to the lamp (wire 2) if and only if *both* switch contacts are closed.

The logical inversion, or NOT, function can be performed on a contact input simply by using a normally-closed contact instead of a normally-open contact:

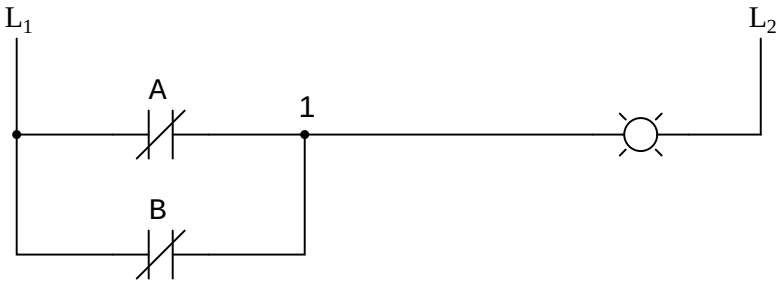


A	Output
0	1
1	0

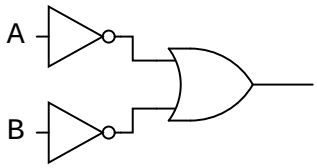


Now, the lamp energizes if the contact is *not* actuated, and de-energizes when the contact *is* actuated.

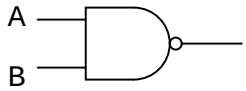
If we take our OR function and invert each "input" through the use of normally-closed contacts, we will end up with a NAND function. In a special branch of mathematics known as *Boolean algebra*, this effect of gate function identity changing with the inversion of input signals is described by *DeMorgan's Theorem*, a subject to be explored in more detail in a later chapter.



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

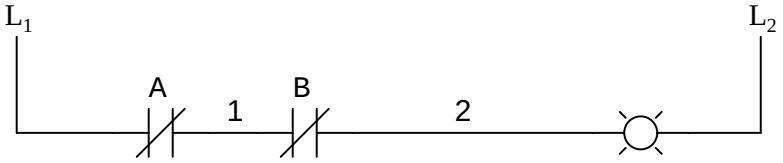


or

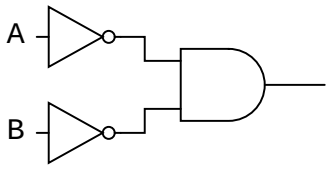


The lamp will be energized if *either* contact is unactuated. It will go out only if *both* contacts are actuated simultaneously.

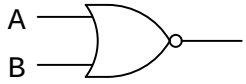
Likewise, if we take our AND function and invert each "input" through the use of normally-closed contacts, we will end up with a NOR function:



A	B	Output
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0



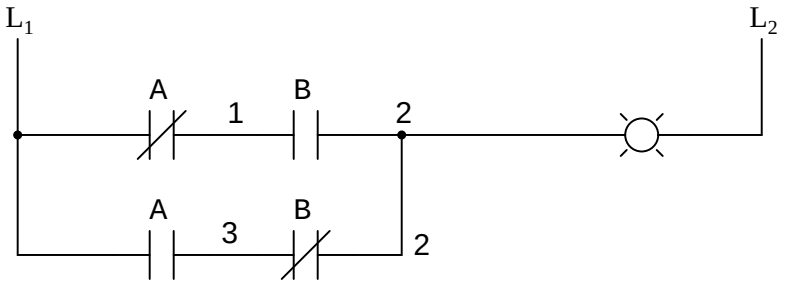
or



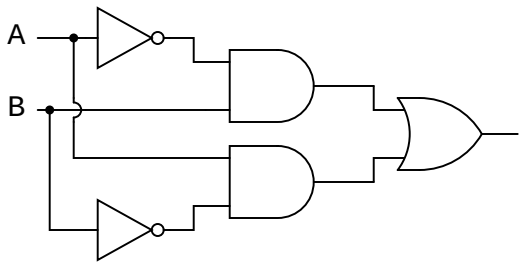
A pattern quickly reveals itself when ladder circuits are compared with their logic gate counterparts:

- Parallel contacts are equivalent to an OR gate.
- Series contacts are equivalent to an AND gate.
- Normally-closed contacts are equivalent to a NOT gate (inverter).

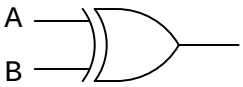
We can build combinational logic functions by grouping contacts in series-parallel arrangements, as well. In the following example, we have an Exclusive-OR function built from a combination of AND, OR, and inverter (NOT) gates:



A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0



or



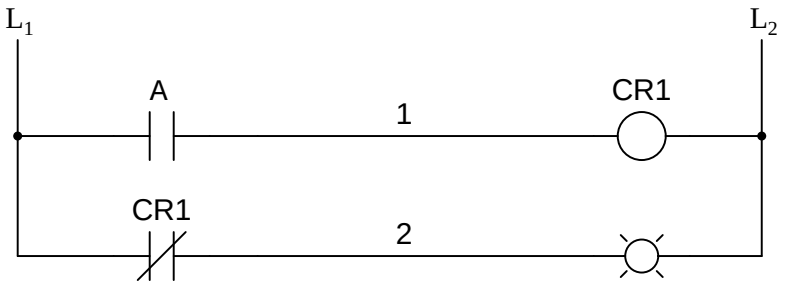
The top rung (NC contact A in series with NO contact B) is the equivalent of the top NOT/AND gate combination. The bottom rung (NO contact A in series with NC contact B) is the equivalent of the bottom NOT/AND gate combination. The parallel connection between the two rungs at wire number 2 forms the equivalent of the OR gate, in allowing either rung 1 *or* rung 2 to energize the lamp.

To make the Exclusive-OR function, we had to use two contacts per input: one for direct input and the other for ”inverted” input. The two ”A” contacts are physically actuated by the same mechanism, as are the two ”B” contacts. The common association between contacts is denoted by the label of the contact. There is no limit to how many contacts per switch can be represented in a ladder diagram, as each new contact on any switch or relay (either normally-open or normally-closed) used in the diagram is simply marked with the same label.

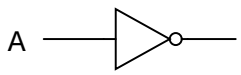
Sometimes, multiple contacts on a single switch (or relay) are designated by a compound labels, such as ”A-1” and ”A-2” instead of two ”A” labels. This may be especially useful if

you want to specifically designate which set of contacts on each switch or relay is being used for which part of a circuit. For simplicity's sake, I'll refrain from such elaborate labeling in this lesson. If you see a common label for multiple contacts, you know those contacts are all actuated by the same mechanism.

If we wish to invert the *output* of any switch-generated logic function, we must use a relay with a normally-closed contact. For instance, if we want to energize a load based on the inverse, or NOT, of a normally-open contact, we could do this:

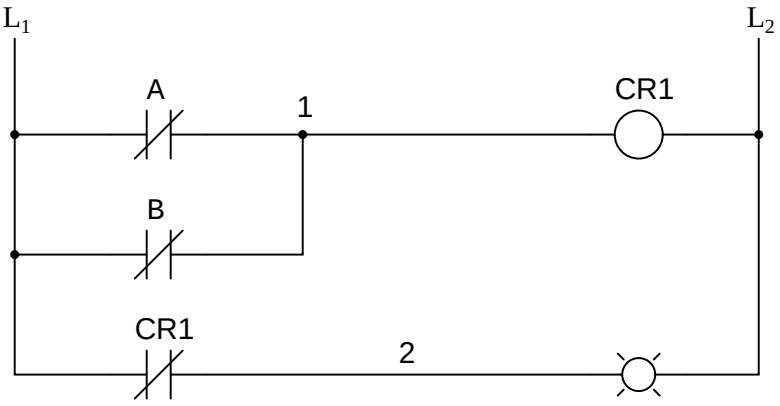


A	CR1	Output
0	0	1
1	1	0

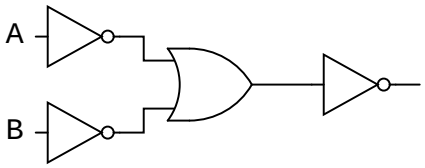


We will call the relay, "control relay 1," or CR_1. When the coil of CR_1 (symbolized with the pair of parentheses on the first rung) is energized, the contact on the second rung *opens*, thus de-energizing the lamp. From switch A to the coil of CR_1, the logic function is noninverted. The normally-closed contact actuated by relay coil CR_1 provides a logical inverter function to drive the lamp opposite that of the switch's actuation status.

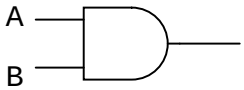
Applying this inversion strategy to one of our inverted-input functions created earlier, such as the OR-to-NAND, we can invert the output with a relay to create a noninverted function:



A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1



or



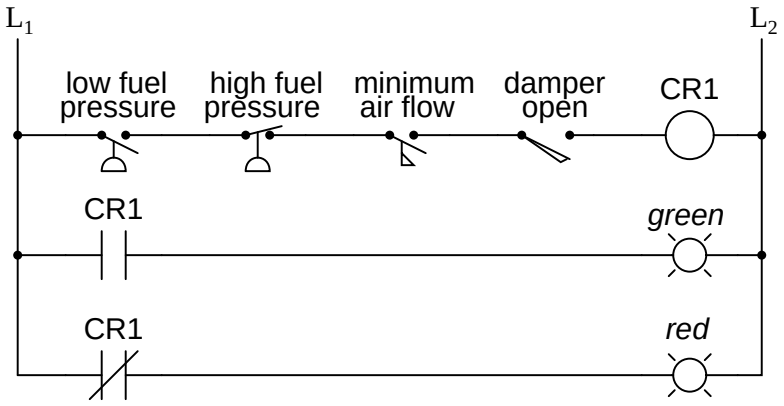
From the switches to the coil of CR_1, the logical function is that of a NAND gate. CR_1's normally-closed contact provides one final inversion to turn the NAND function into an AND function.

- **REVIEW:**
- Parallel contacts are logically equivalent to an OR gate.
- Series contacts are logically equivalent to an AND gate.
- Normally closed (N.C.) contacts are logically equivalent to a NOT gate.
- A relay must be used to invert the *output* of a logic gate function, while simple normally-closed switch contacts are sufficient to represent inverted gate *inputs*.

6.3 Permissive and interlock circuits

A practical application of switch and relay logic is in control systems where several process conditions have to be met before a piece of equipment is allowed to start. A good example of this is burner control for large combustion furnaces. In order for the burners in a large furnace to be started safely, the control system requests ”permission” from several process switches, including high and low fuel pressure, air fan flow check, exhaust stack damper position, access

door position, etc. Each process condition is called a *permissive*, and each permissive switch contact is wired in series, so that if any one of them detects an unsafe condition, the circuit will be opened:



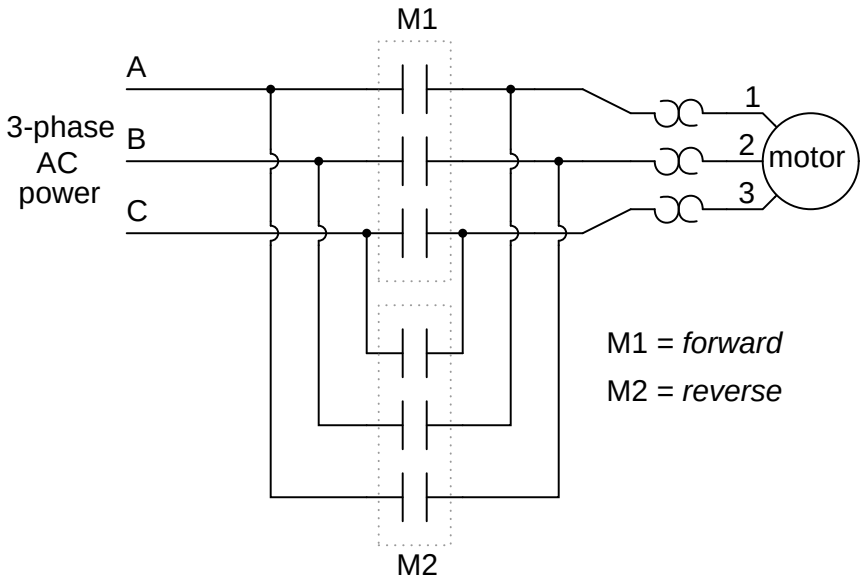
Green light = *conditions met: safe to start*

Red light = *conditions not met: unsafe to start*

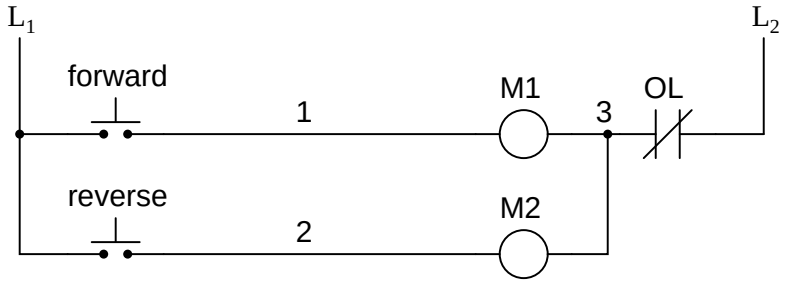
If all permissive conditions are met, CR_1 will energize and the green lamp will be lit. In real life, more than just a green lamp would be energized: usually a control relay or fuel valve solenoid would be placed in that rung of the circuit to be energized when all the permissive contacts were "good:" that is, all closed. If any one of the permissive conditions are not met, the series string of switch contacts will be broken, CR_2 will de-energize, and the red lamp will light.

Note that the high fuel pressure contact is normally-closed. This is because we want the switch contact to open if the fuel pressure gets too high. Since the "normal" condition of any pressure switch is when zero (low) pressure is being applied to it, and we want this switch to open with excessive (high) pressure, we must choose a switch that is closed in its normal state.

Another practical application of relay logic is in control systems where we want to ensure two incompatible events cannot occur at the same time. An example of this is in reversible motor control, where two motor contactors are wired to switch polarity (or phase sequence) to an electric motor, and we don't want the forward and reverse contactors energized simultaneously:



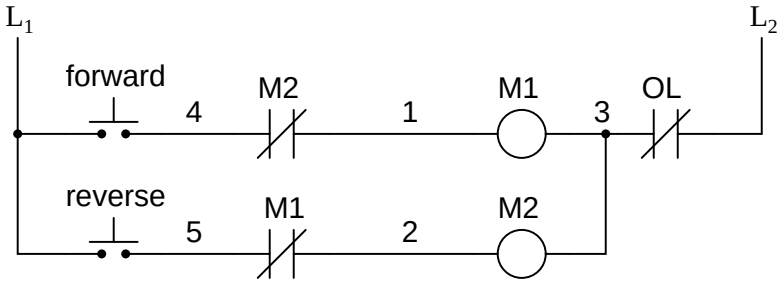
When contactor M_1 is energized, the 3 phases (A, B, and C) are connected directly to terminals 1, 2, and 3 of the motor, respectively. However, when contactor M_2 is energized, phases A and B are reversed, A going to motor terminal 2 and B going to motor terminal 1. This reversal of phase wires results in the motor spinning the opposite direction. Let's examine the control circuit for these two contactors:



Take note of the normally-closed "OL" contact, which is the thermal overload contact activated by the "heater" elements wired in series with each phase of the AC motor. If the heaters get too hot, the contact will change from its normal (closed) state to being open, which will prevent either contactor from energizing.

This control system will work fine, so long as no one pushes both buttons at the same time. If someone were to do that, phases A and B would be short-circuited together by virtue of the fact that contactor M_1 sends phases A and B straight to the motor and contactor M_2 reverses them; phase A would be shorted to phase B and vice versa. Obviously, this is a bad control system design!

To prevent this occurrence from happening, we can design the circuit so that the energization of one contactor prevents the energization of the other. This is called *interlocking*, and it is accomplished through the use of auxiliary contacts on each contactor, as such:



Now, when M_1 is energized, the normally-closed auxiliary contact on the second rung will be open, thus preventing M_2 from being energized, even if the "Reverse" pushbutton is actuated. Likewise, M_1's energization is prevented when M_2 is energized. Note, as well, how additional wire numbers (4 and 5) were added to reflect the wiring changes.

It should be noted that this is not the only way to interlock contactors to prevent a short-circuit condition. Some contactors come equipped with the option of a *mechanical* interlock: a lever joining the armatures of two contactors together so that they are physically prevented from simultaneous closure. For additional safety, electrical interlocks may still be used, and due to the simplicity of the circuit there is no good reason not to employ them in addition to mechanical interlocks.

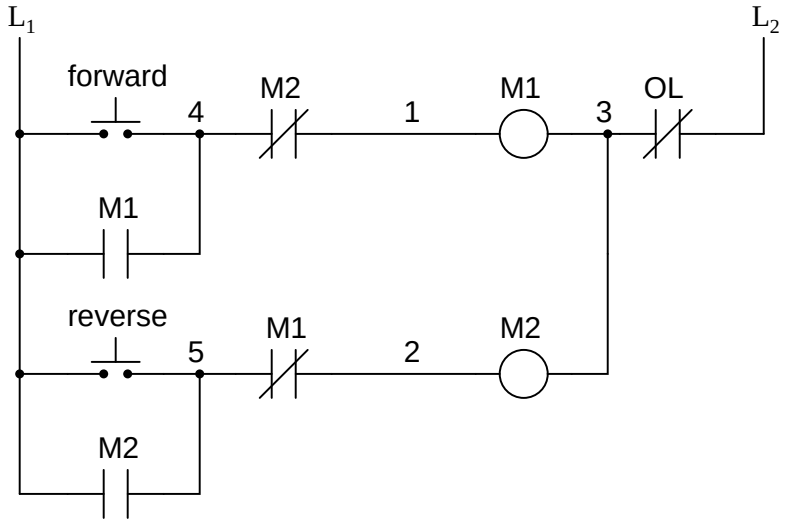
- **REVIEW:**

- Switch contacts installed in a rung of ladder logic designed to interrupt a circuit if certain physical conditions are not met are called *permissive* contacts, because the system requires permission from these inputs to activate.

- Switch contacts designed to prevent a control system from taking two incompatible actions at once (such as powering an electric motor forward and backward simultaneously) are called *interlocks*.

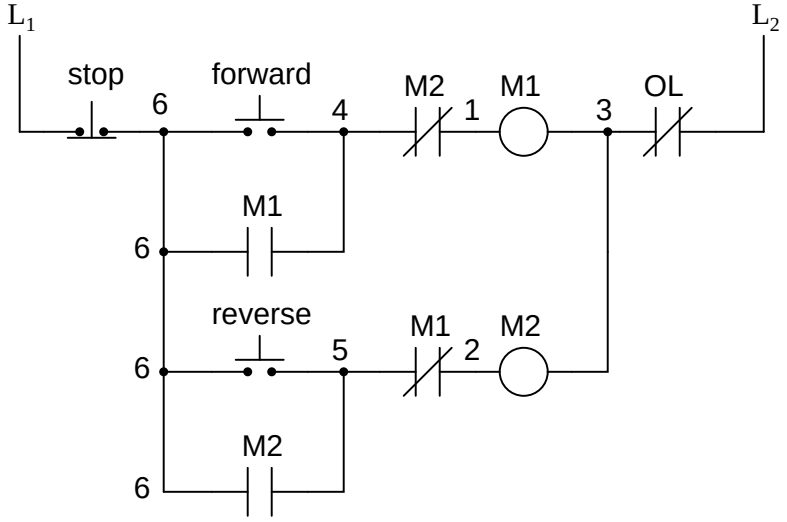
6.4 Motor control circuits

The interlock contacts installed in the previous section's motor control circuit work fine, but the motor will run only as long as each pushbutton switch is held down. If we wanted to keep the motor running even after the operator takes his or her hand off the control switch(es), we could change the circuit in a couple of different ways: we could replace the pushbutton switches with toggle switches, or we could add some more relay logic to "latch" the control circuit with a single, momentary actuation of either switch. Let's see how the second approach is implemented, since it is commonly used in industry:



When the "Forward" pushbutton is actuated, M_1 will energize, closing the normally-open auxiliary contact in parallel with that switch. When the pushbutton is released, the closed M_1 auxiliary contact will maintain current to the coil of M_1, thus latching the "Forward" circuit in the "on" state. The same sort of thing will happen when the "Reverse" pushbutton is pressed. These parallel auxiliary contacts are sometimes referred to as *seal-in* contacts, the word "seal" meaning essentially the same thing as the word *latch*.

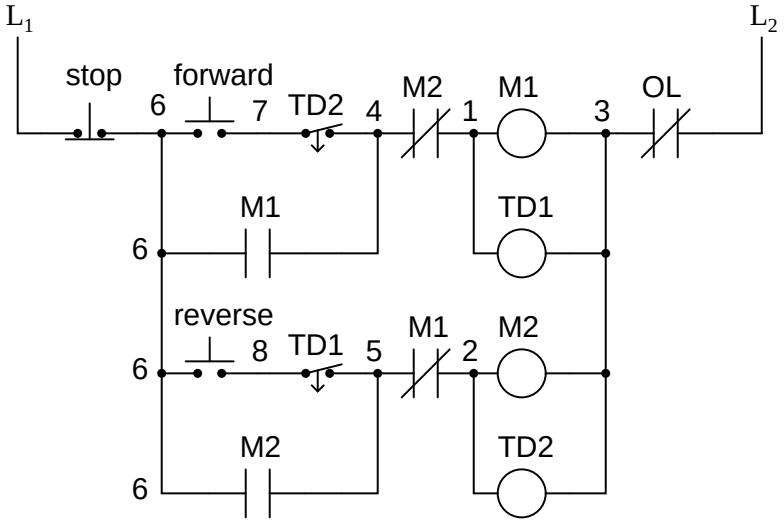
However, this creates a new problem: how to *stop* the motor! As the circuit exists right now, the motor will run either forward or backward once the corresponding pushbutton switch is pressed, and will continue to run as long as there is power. To stop either circuit (forward or backward), we require some means for the operator to interrupt power to the motor contactors. We'll call this new switch, *Stop*:



Now, if either forward or reverse circuits are latched, they may be "unlatched" by momentarily pressing the "Stop" pushbutton, which will open either forward or reverse circuit, de-energizing the energized contactor, and returning the seal-in contact to its normal (open) state. The "Stop" switch, having normally-closed contacts, will conduct power to either forward or reverse circuits when released.

So far, so good. Let's consider another practical aspect of our motor control scheme before we quit adding to it. If our hypothetical motor turned a mechanical load with a lot of momentum, such as a large air fan, the motor might continue to coast for a substantial amount of time after the stop button had been pressed. This could be problematic if an operator were to try to reverse the motor direction without waiting for the fan to stop turning. If the fan was still coasting forward and the "Reverse" pushbutton was pressed, the motor would struggle to overcome that inertia of the large fan as it tried to begin turning in reverse, drawing excessive current and potentially reducing the life of the motor, drive mechanisms, and fan. What we might like to have is some kind of a time-delay function in this motor control system to prevent such a premature startup from happening.

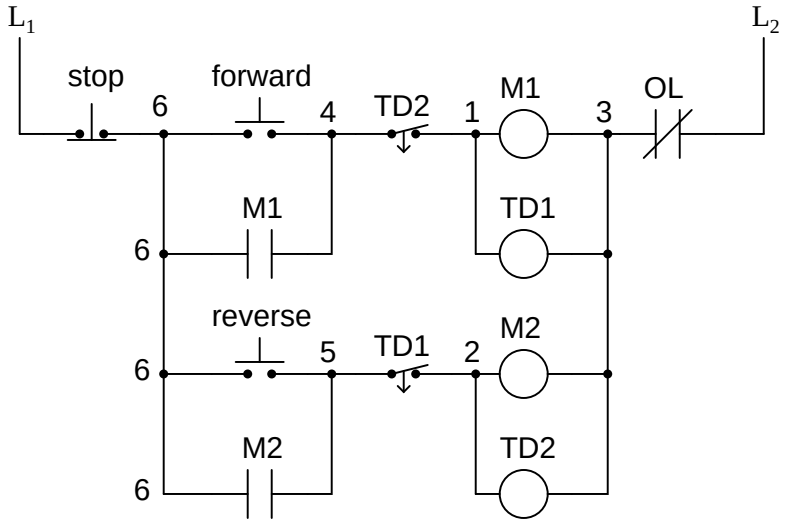
Let's begin by adding a couple of time-delay relay coils, one in parallel with each motor contactor coil. If we use contacts that delay returning to their normal state, these relays will provide us a "memory" of which direction the motor was last powered to turn. What we want each time-delay contact to do is to open the starting-switch leg of the opposite rotation circuit for several seconds, while the fan coasts to a halt.



If the motor has been running in the forward direction, both M_1 and TD_1 will have been energized. This being the case, the normally-closed, timed-closed contact of TD_1 between wires 8 and 5 will have immediately opened the moment TD_1 was energized. When the stop button is pressed, contact TD_1 waits for the specified amount of time before returning to its normally-closed state, thus holding the reverse pushbutton circuit open for the duration so M_2 can't be energized. When TD_1 times out, the contact will close and the circuit will allow M_2 to be energized, if the reverse pushbutton is pressed. In like manner, TD_2 will prevent the "Forward" pushbutton from energizing M_1 until the prescribed time delay after M_2 (and TD_2) have been

de-energized.

The careful observer will notice that the time-interlocking functions of TD_1 and TD_2 render the M_1 and M_2 interlocking contacts redundant. We can get rid of auxiliary contacts M_1 and M_2 for interlocks and just use TD_1 and TD_2's contacts, since they immediately open when their respective relay coils are energized, thus "locking out" one contactor if the other is energized. Each time delay relay will serve a dual purpose: preventing the other contactor from energizing while the motor is running, and preventing the same contactor from energizing until a prescribed time after motor shutdown. The resulting circuit has the advantage of being simpler than the previous example:



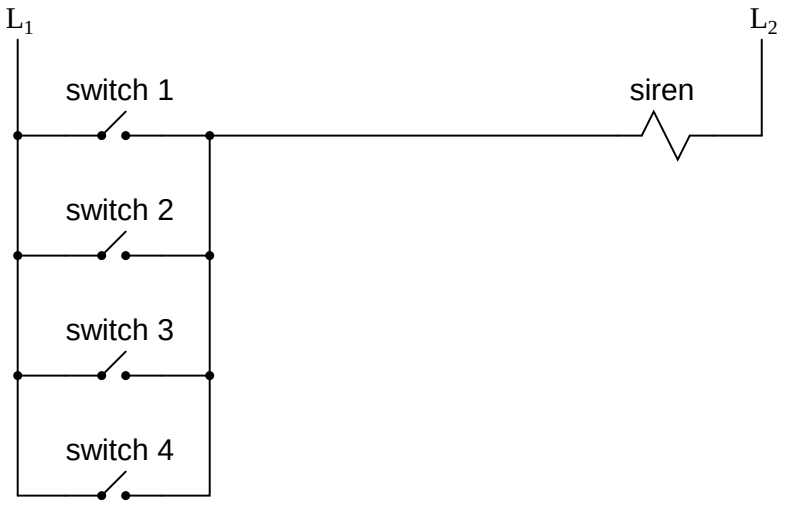
- **REVIEW:**
- Motor contactor (or "starter") coils are typically designated by the letter "M" in ladder logic diagrams.
- Continuous motor operation with a momentary "start" switch is possible if a normally-open "seal-in" contact from the contactor is connected in parallel with the start switch, so that once the contactor is energized it maintains power to itself and keeps itself "latched" on.
- Time delay relays are commonly used in large motor control circuits to prevent the motor from being started (or reversed) until a certain amount of time has elapsed from an event.

6.5 Fail-safe design

Logic circuits, whether comprised of electromechanical relays or solid-state gates, can be built in many different ways to perform the same functions. There is usually no one "correct" way to design a complex logic circuit, but there are usually ways that are better than others.

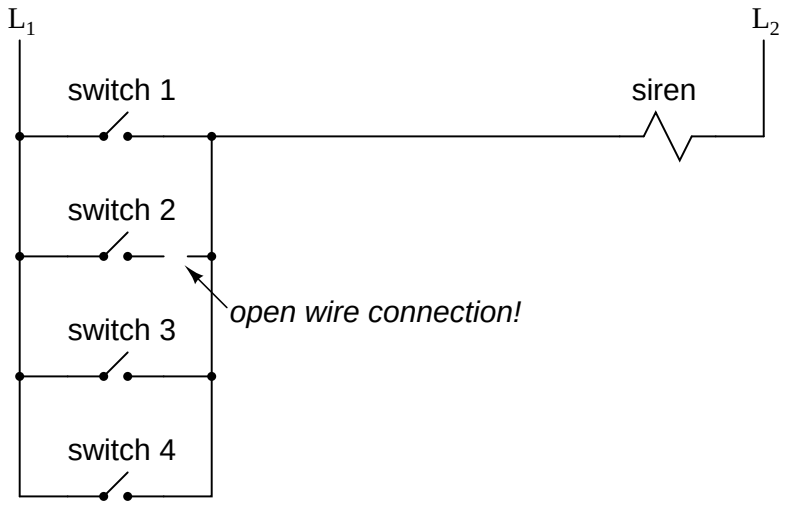
In control systems, safety is (or at least should be) an important design priority. If there are multiple ways in which a digital control circuit can be designed to perform a task, and one of those ways happens to hold certain advantages in safety over the others, then that design is the better one to choose.

Let's take a look at a simple system and consider how it might be implemented in relay logic. Suppose that a large laboratory or industrial building is to be equipped with a fire alarm system, activated by any one of several latching switches installed throughout the facility. The system should work so that the alarm siren will energize if any one of the switches is actuated. At first glance it seems as though the relay logic should be incredibly simple: just use normally-open switch contacts and connect them all in parallel with each other:



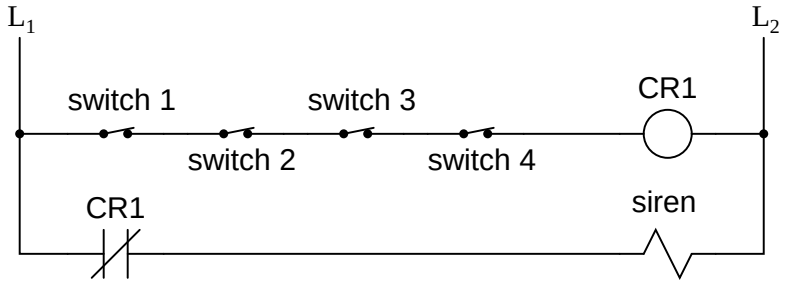
Essentially, this is the OR logic function implemented with four switch inputs. We could expand this circuit to include any number of switch inputs, each new switch being added to the parallel network, but I'll limit it to four in this example to keep things simple. At any rate, it is an elementary system and there seems to be little possibility of trouble.

Except in the event of a wiring failure, that is. The nature of electric circuits is such that "open" failures (open switch contacts, broken wire connections, open relay coils, blown fuses, etc.) are statistically more likely to occur than any other type of failure. With that in mind, it makes sense to engineer a circuit to be as tolerant as possible to such a failure. Let's suppose that a wire connection for Switch #2 were to fail open:



If this failure were to occur, the result would be that Switch #2 would no longer energize the siren if actuated. This, obviously, is not good in a fire alarm system. Unless the system were regularly tested (a good idea anyway), no one would know there was a problem until someone tried to use that switch in an emergency.

What if the system were re-engineered so as to sound the alarm in the event of an open failure? That way, a failure in the wiring would result in a false alarm, a scenario much more preferable than that of having a switch silently fail and not function when needed. In order to achieve this design goal, we would have to re-wire the switches so that an *open* contact sounded the alarm, rather than a *closed* contact. That being the case, the switches will have to be normally-closed and in series with each other, powering a relay coil which then activates a normally-closed contact for the siren:



When all switches are unactuated (the regular operating state of this system), relay CR_1 will be energized, thus keeping contact CR_1 open, preventing the siren from being powered. However, if any of the switches are actuated, relay CR_1 will de-energize, closing contact CR_1 and sounding the alarm. Also, if there is a break in the wiring anywhere in the top rung of the circuit, the alarm will sound. When it is discovered that the alarm is false, the workers in the facility will know that something failed in the alarm system and that it needs to be repaired.

Granted, the circuit is more complex than it was before the addition of the control relay, and the system could still fail in the ”silent” mode with a broken connection in the bottom rung,

but its still a safer design than the original circuit, and thus preferable from the standpoint of safety.

This design of circuit is referred to as *fail-safe*, due to its intended design to default to the safest mode in the event of a common failure such as a broken connection in the switch wiring. Fail-safe design always starts with an assumption as to the most likely kind of wiring or component failure, and then tries to configure things so that such a failure will cause the circuit to act in the safest way, the "safest way" being determined by the physical characteristics of the process.

Take for example an electrically-actuated (solenoid) valve for turning on cooling water to a machine. Energizing the solenoid coil will move an armature which then either opens or closes the valve mechanism, depending on what kind of valve we specify. A spring will return the valve to its "normal" position when the solenoid is de-energized. We already know that an open failure in the wiring or solenoid coil is more likely than a short or any other type of failure, so we should design this system to be in its safest mode with the solenoid de-energized.

If its cooling water we're controlling with this valve, chances are it is safer to have the cooling water turn on in the event of a failure than to shut off, the consequences of a machine running without coolant usually being severe. This means we should specify a valve that turns on (opens up) when de-energized and turns off (closes down) when energized. This may seem "backwards" to have the valve set up this way, but it will make for a safer system in the end.

One interesting application of fail-safe design is in the power generation and distribution industry, where large circuit breakers need to be opened and closed by electrical control signals from protective relays. If a 50/51 relay (instantaneous and time overcurrent) is going to command a circuit breaker to trip (open) in the event of excessive current, should we design it so that the relay *closes* a switch contact to send a "trip" signal to the breaker, or *opens* a switch contact to interrupt a regularly "on" signal to initiate a breaker trip? We know that an open connection will be the most likely to occur, but what is the safest state of the system: breaker open or breaker closed?

At first, it would seem that it would be safer to have a large circuit breaker trip (open up and shut off power) in the event of an open fault in the protective relay control circuit, just like we had the fire alarm system default to an alarm state with any switch or wiring failure. However, things are not so simple in the world of high power. To have a large circuit breaker indiscriminately trip open is no small matter, especially when customers are depending on the continued supply of electric power to supply hospitals, telecommunications systems, water treatment systems, and other important infrastructures. For this reason, power system engineers have generally agreed to design protective relay circuits to output a *closed* contact signal (power applied) to open large circuit breakers, meaning that any open failure in the control wiring will go unnoticed, simply leaving the breaker in the status quo position.

Is this an ideal situation? Of course not. If a protective relay detects an overcurrent condition while the control wiring is failed open, it will not be able to trip open the circuit breaker. Like the first fire alarm system design, the "silent" failure will be evident only when the system is needed. However, to engineer the control circuitry the other way – so that any open failure would immediately shut the circuit breaker off, potentially blacking out large potions of the power grid – really isn't a better alternative.

An entire book could be written on the principles and practices of good fail-safe system design. At least here, you know a couple of the fundamentals: that wiring tends to fail open more often than shorted, and that an electrical control system's (open) failure mode should be

such that it indicates and/or actuates the real-life process in the safest alternative mode. These fundamental principles extend to non-electrical systems as well: identify the most common mode of failure, then engineer the system so that the probable failure mode places the system in the safest condition.

- **REVIEW:**
- The goal of *fail-safe* design is to make a control system as tolerant as possible to likely wiring or component failures.
- The most common type of wiring and component failure is an ”open” circuit, or broken connection. Therefore, a fail-safe system should be designed to default to its safest mode of operation in the case of an open circuit.

6.6 Programmable logic controllers

Before the advent of solid-state logic circuits, logical control systems were designed and built exclusively around electromechanical relays. Relays are far from obsolete in modern design, but have been replaced in many of their former roles as logic-level control devices, relegated most often to those applications demanding high current and/or high voltage switching.

Systems and processes requiring ”on/off” control abound in modern commerce and industry, but such control systems are rarely built from either electromechanical relays or discrete logic gates. Instead, digital computers fill the need, which may be *programmed* to do a variety of logical functions.

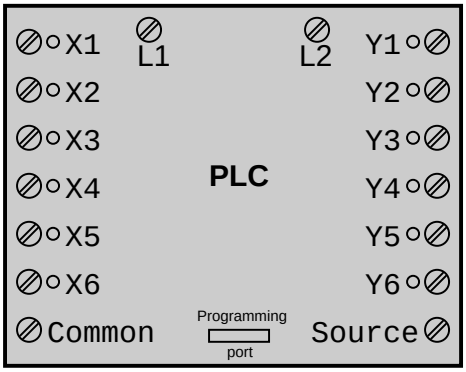
In the late 1960’s an American company named Bedford Associates released a computing device they called the *MODICON*. As an acronym, it meant **Mod**ular **Di**gital **Con**troller, and later became the name of a company division devoted to the design, manufacture, and sale of these special-purpose control computers. Other engineering firms developed their own versions of this device, and it eventually came to be known in non-proprietary terms as a *PLC*, or **P**rogrammable **L**ogic **C**ontroller. The purpose of a PLC was to directly replace electromechanical relays as logic elements, substituting instead a solid-state digital computer with a stored program, able to emulate the interconnection of many relays to perform certain logical tasks.

A PLC has many ”input” terminals, through which it interprets ”high” and ”low” logical states from sensors and switches. It also has many output terminals, through which it outputs ”high” and ”low” signals to power lights, solenoids, contactors, small motors, and other devices lending themselves to on/off control. In an effort to make PLCs easy to program, their programming language was designed to resemble ladder logic diagrams. Thus, an industrial electrician or electrical engineer accustomed to reading ladder logic schematics would feel comfortable programming a PLC to perform the same control functions.

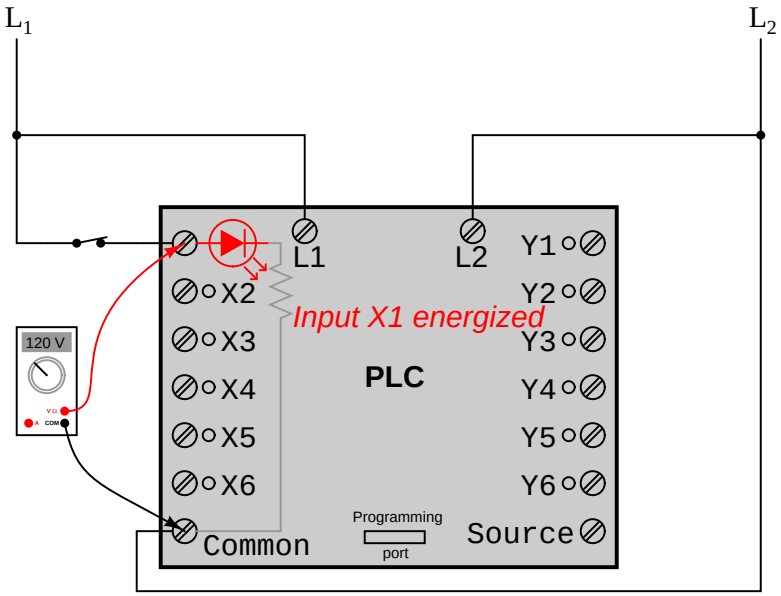
PLCs are industrial computers, and as such their input and output signals are typically 120 volts AC, just like the electromechanical control relays they were designed to replace. Although some PLCs have the ability to input and output low-level DC voltage signals of the magnitude used in logic gate circuits, this is the exception and not the rule.

Signal connection and programming standards vary somewhat between different models of PLC, but they are similar enough to allow a ”generic” introduction to PLC programming here. The following illustration shows a simple PLC, as it might appear from a front view. Two screw

terminals provide connection to 120 volts AC for powering the PLC's internal circuitry, labeled L1 and L2. Six screw terminals on the left-hand side provide connection to input devices, each terminal representing a different input "channel" with its own "X" label. The lower-left screw terminal is a "Common" connection, which is generally connected to L2 (neutral) of the 120 VAC power source.

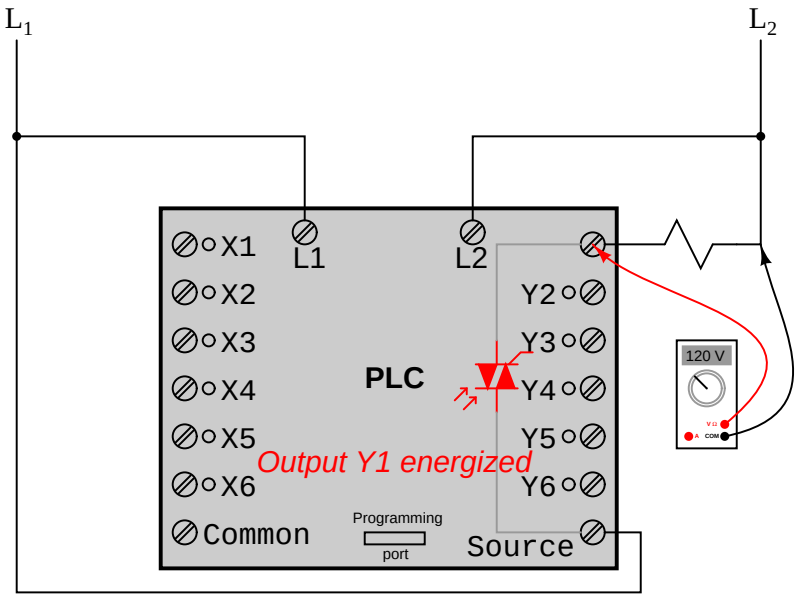


Inside the PLC housing, connected between each input terminal and the Common terminal, is an opto-isolator device (Light-Emitting Diode) that provides an electrically isolated "high" logic signal to the computer's circuitry (a photo-transistor interprets the LED's light) when there is 120 VAC power applied between the respective input terminal and the Common terminal. An indicating LED on the front panel of the PLC gives visual indication of an "energized" input:



Output signals are generated by the PLC's computer circuitry activating a switching device (transistor, TRIAC, or even an electromechanical relay), connecting the "Source" terminal to

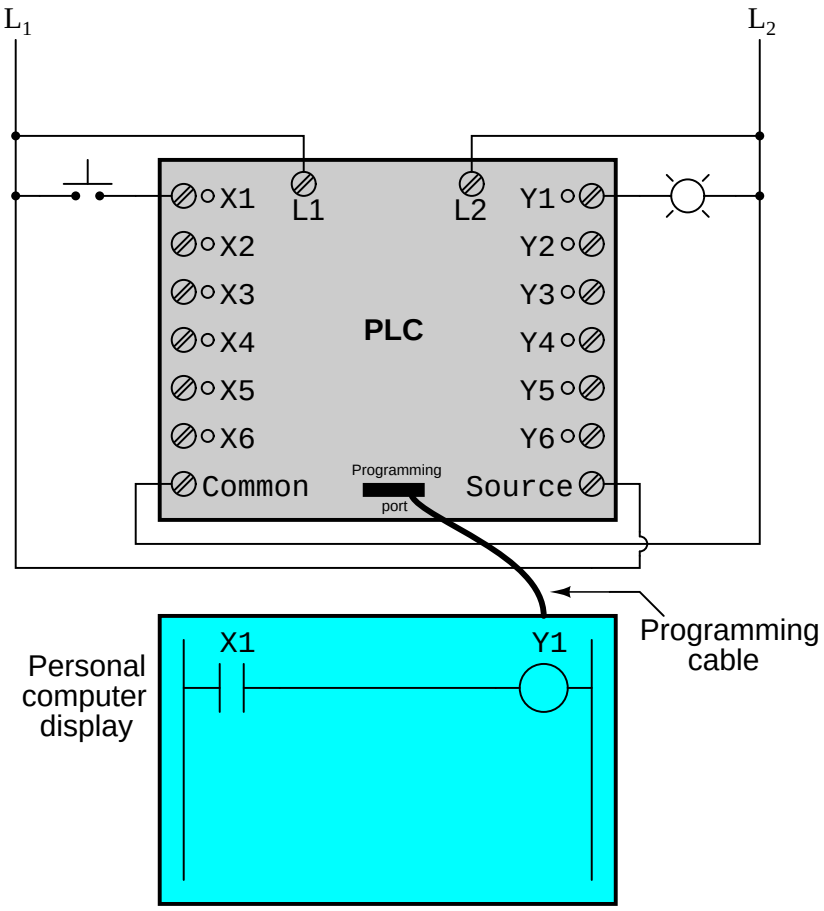
any of the "Y-" labeled output terminals. The "Source" terminal, correspondingly, is usually connected to the L1 side of the 120 VAC power source. As with each input, an indicating LED on the front panel of the PLC gives visual indication of an "energized" output:



In this way, the PLC is able to interface with real-world devices such as switches and solenoids.

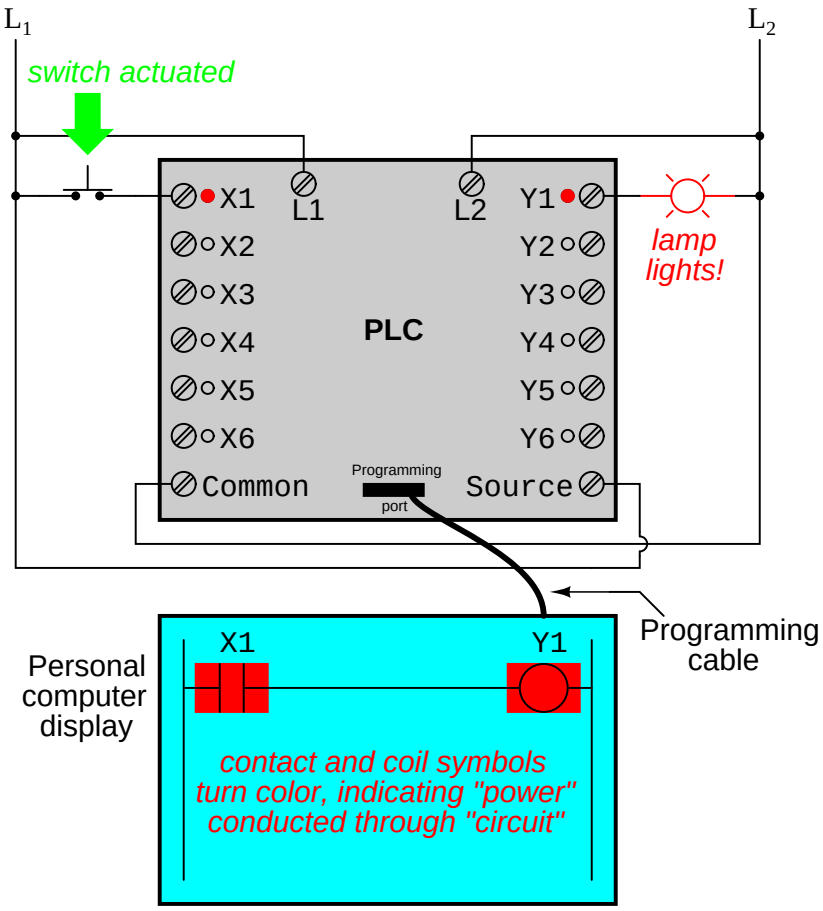
The actual *logic* of the control system is established inside the PLC by means of a computer program. This program dictates which output gets energized under which input conditions. Although the program itself appears to be a ladder logic diagram, with switch and relay symbols, there are no actual switch contacts or relay coils operating inside the PLC to create the logical relationships between input and output. These are *imaginary* contacts and coils, if you will. The program is entered and viewed via a personal computer connected to the PLC's programming port.

Consider the following circuit and PLC program:



When the pushbutton switch is unactuated (unpressed), no power is sent to the X1 input of the PLC. Following the program, which shows a normally-open X1 contact in series with a Y1 coil, no ”power” will be sent to the Y1 coil. Thus, the PLC’s Y1 output remains de-energized, and the indicator lamp connected to it remains dark.

If the pushbutton switch is pressed, however, power will be sent to the PLC’s X1 input. Any and all X1 contacts appearing in the program will assume the actuated (non-normal) state, as though they were relay contacts actuated by the energizing of a relay coil named ”X1”. In this case, energizing the X1 input will cause the normally-open X1 contact will ”close,” sending ”power” to the Y1 coil. When the Y1 coil of the program ”energizes,” the real Y1 output will become energized, lighting up the lamp connected to it:



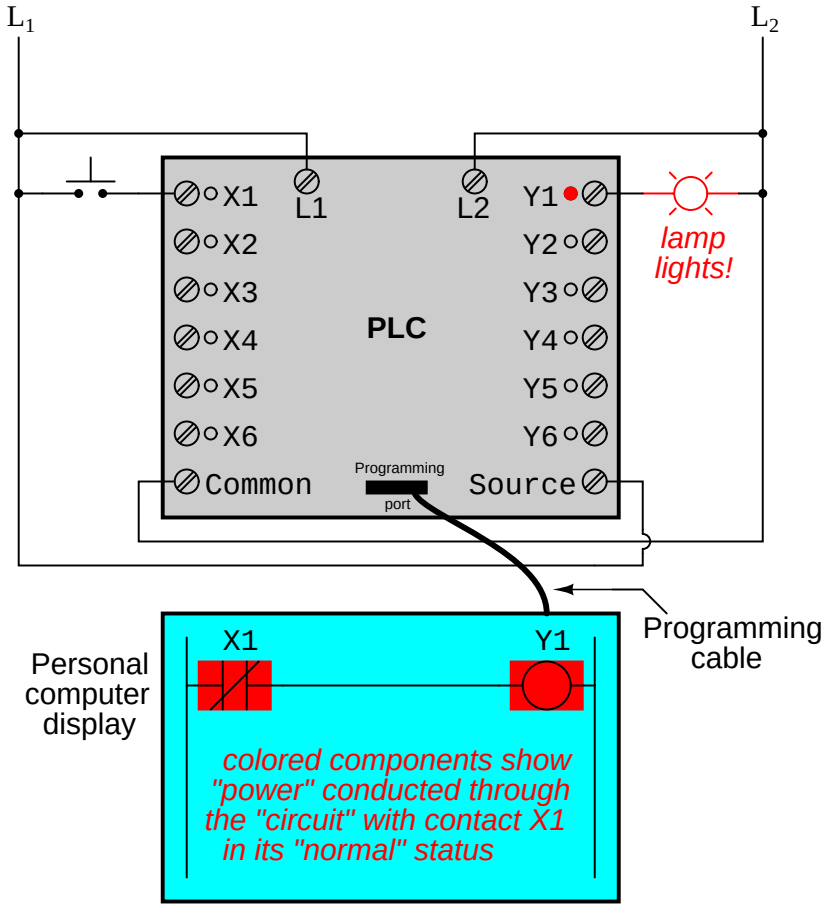
It must be understood that the X1 contact, Y1 coil, connecting wires, and ”power” appearing in the personal computer’s display are all *virtual*. They do not exist as real electrical components. They exist as commands in a computer program – a piece of software only – that just happens to resemble a real relay schematic diagram.

Equally important to understand is that the personal computer used to display and edit the PLC’s program is not necessary for the PLC’s continued operation. Once a program has been loaded to the PLC from the personal computer, the personal computer may be unplugged from the PLC, and the PLC will continue to follow the programmed commands. I include the personal computer display in these illustrations for your sake only, in aiding to understand the relationship between real-life conditions (switch closure and lamp status) and the program’s status (”power” through virtual contacts and virtual coils).

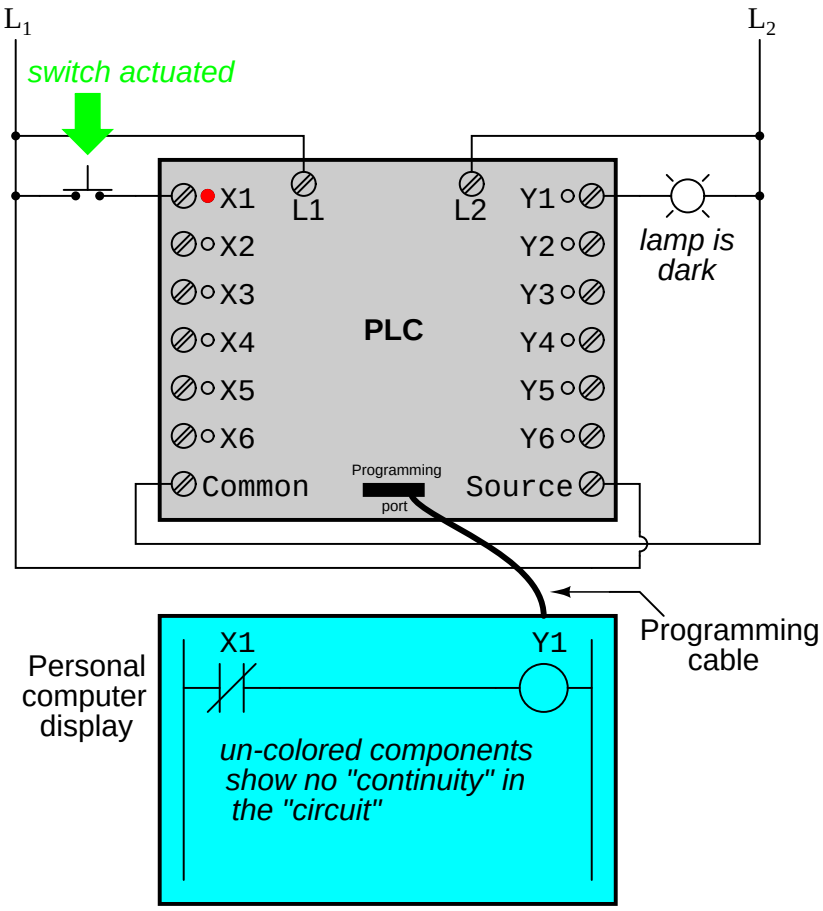
The true power and versatility of a PLC is revealed when we want to alter the behavior of a control system. Since the PLC is a programmable device, we can alter its behavior by changing the commands we give it, without having to reconfigure the electrical components connected to it. For example, suppose we wanted to make this switch-and-lamp circuit function in an inverted fashion: push the button to make the lamp turn *off*, and release it to make it turn *on*. The ”hardware” solution would require that a normally-closed pushbutton switch be

substituted for the normally-open switch currently in place. The ”software” solution is much easier: just alter the program so that contact X1 is normally-closed rather than normally-open.

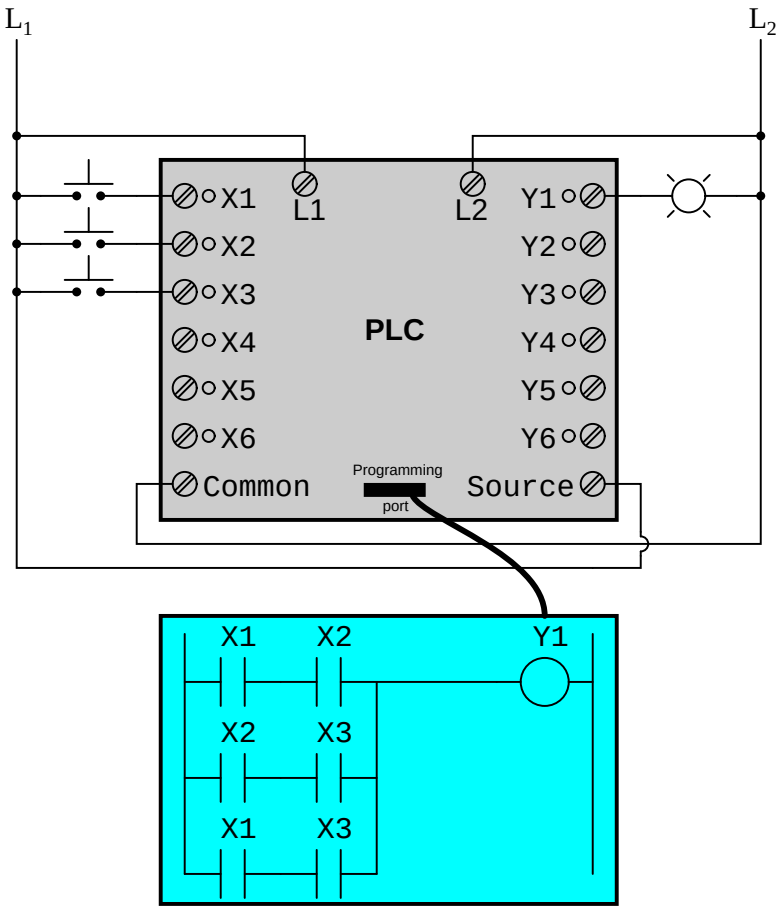
In the following illustration, we have the altered system shown in the state where the pushbutton is unactuated (*not* being pressed):



In this next illustration, the switch is shown actuated (pressed):

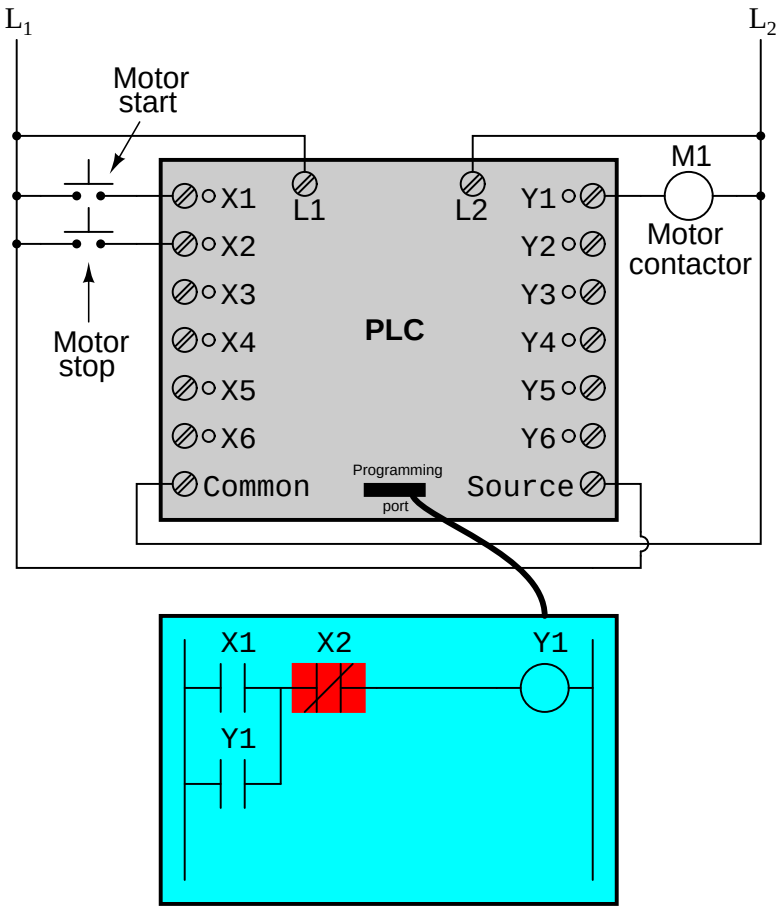


One of the advantages of implementing logical control in software rather than in hardware is that input signals can be re-used as many times in the program as is necessary. For example, take the following circuit and program, designed to energize the lamp if at least two of the three pushbutton switches are simultaneously actuated:



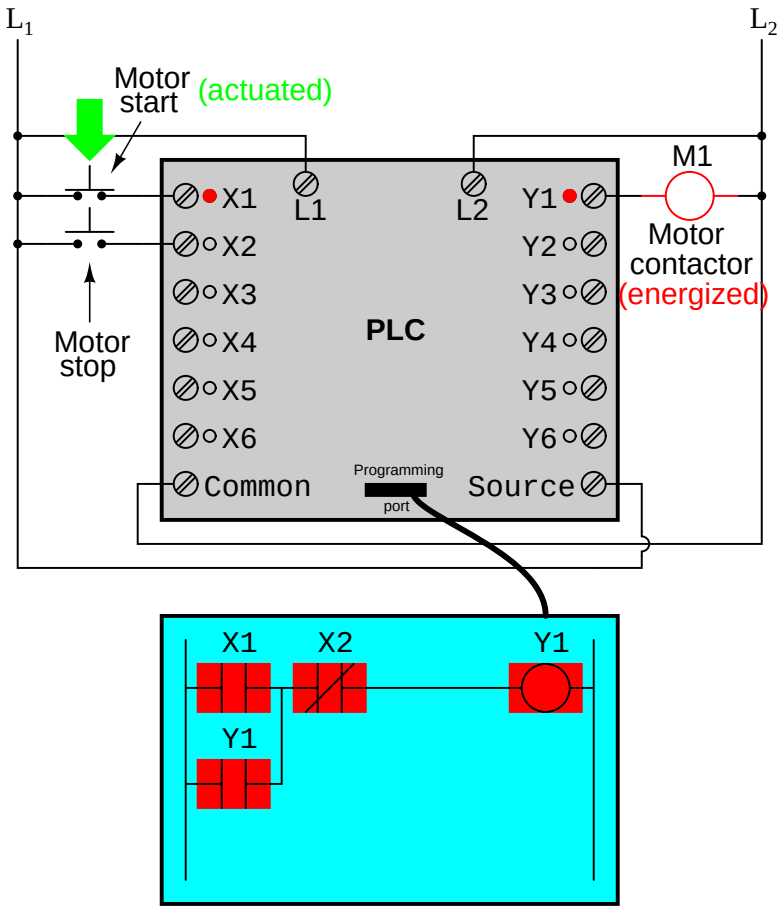
To build an equivalent circuit using electromechanical relays, three relays with two normally-open contacts each would have to be used, to provide two contacts per input switch. Using a PLC, however, we can program as many contacts as we wish for each "X" input without adding additional hardware, since each input and each output is nothing more than a single bit in the PLC's digital memory (either 0 or 1), and can be recalled as many times as necessary.

Furthermore, since each output in the PLC is nothing more than a bit in its memory as well, we can assign contacts in a PLC program "actuated" by an output (Y) status. Take for instance this next system, a motor start-stop control circuit:

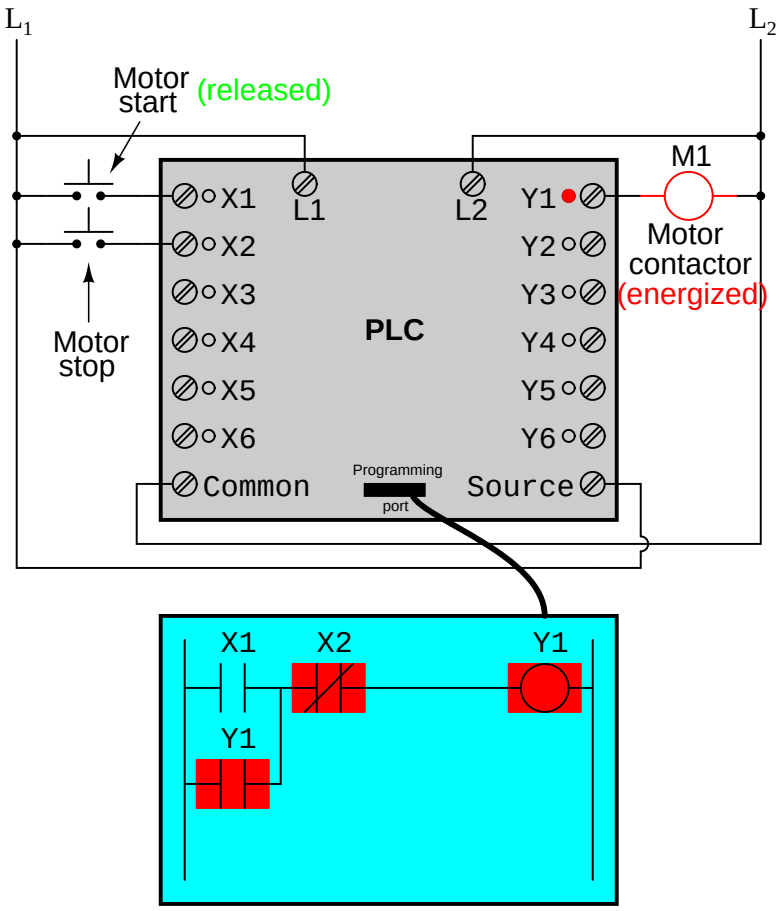


The pushbutton switch connected to input X1 serves as the "Start" switch, while the switch connected to input X2 serves as the "Stop." Another contact in the program, named Y1, uses the output coil status as a seal-in contact, directly, so that the motor contactor will continue to be energized after the "Start" pushbutton switch is released. You can see the normally-closed contact X2 appear in a colored block, showing that it is in a closed ("electrically conducting") state.

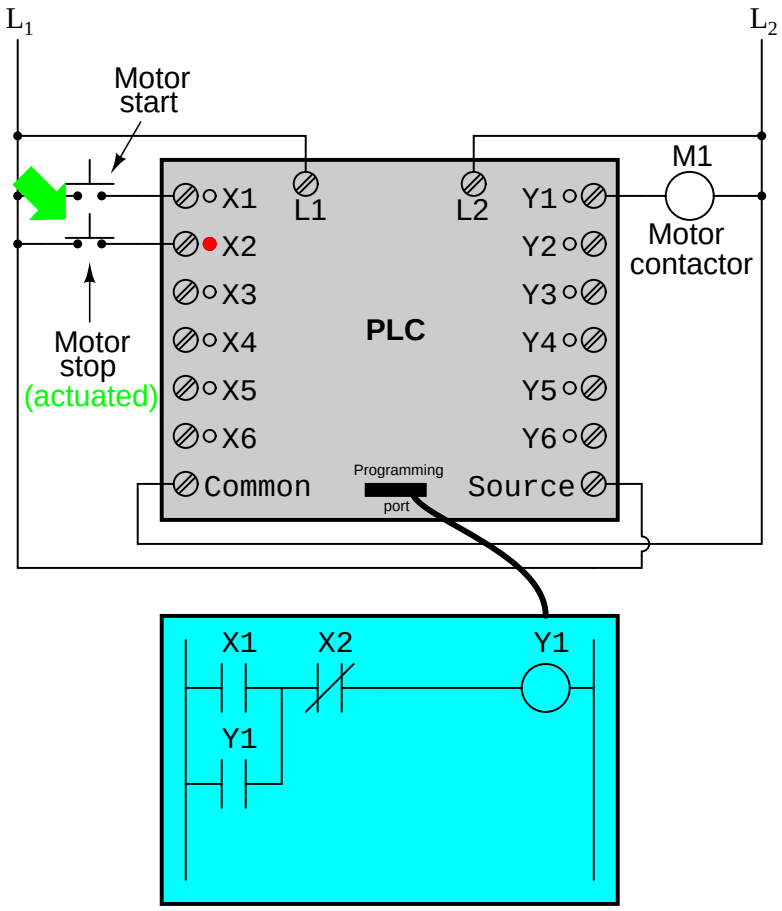
If we were to press the "Start" button, input X1 would energize, thus "closing" the X1 contact in the program, sending "power" to the Y1 "coil," energizing the Y1 output and applying 120 volt AC power to the real motor contactor coil. The parallel Y1 contact will also "close," thus latching the "circuit" in an energized state:



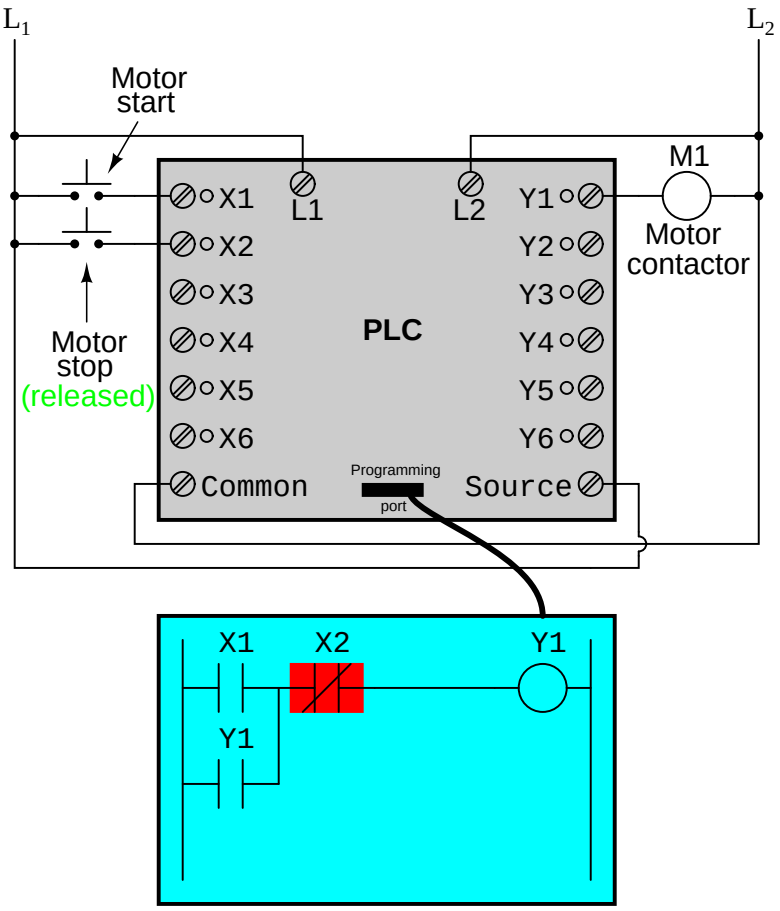
Now, if we release the ”Start” pushbutton, the normally-open X1 ”contact” will return to its ”open” state, but the motor will continue to run because the Y1 seal-in ”contact” continues to provide ”continuity” to ”power” coil Y1, thus keeping the Y1 output energized:



To stop the motor, we must momentarily press the ”Stop” pushbutton, which will energize the X2 input and ”open” the normally-closed ”contact,” breaking continuity to the Y1 ”coil:”

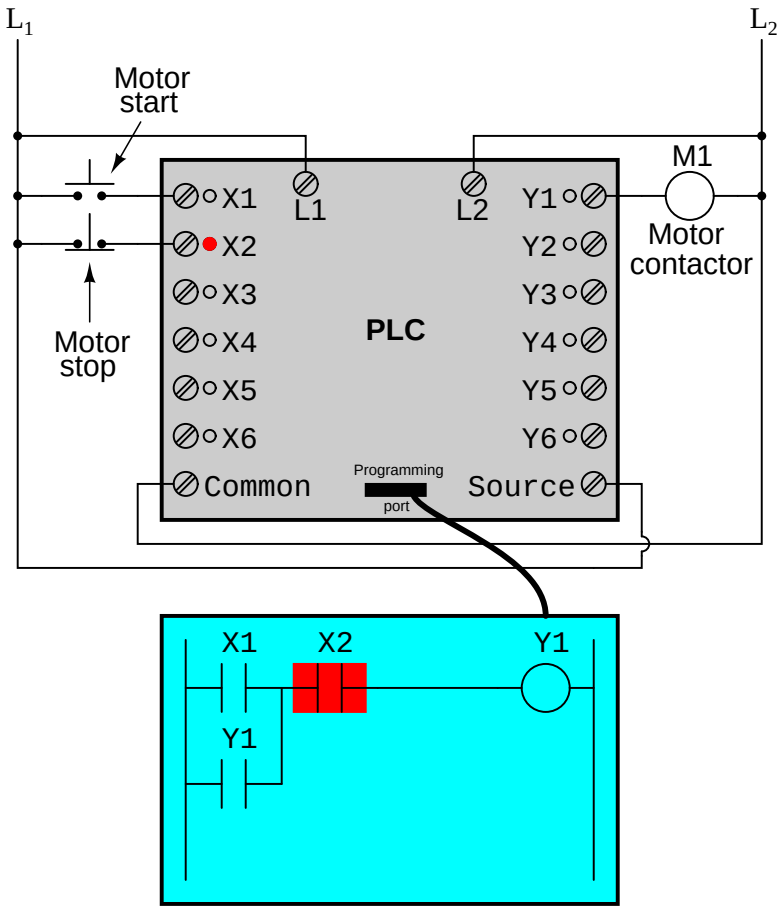


When the "Stop" pushbutton is released, input X2 will de-energize, returning "contact" X2 to its normal, "closed" state. The motor, however, will not start again until the "Start" pushbutton is actuated, because the "seal-in" of Y1 has been lost:



An important point to make here is that *fail-safe* design is just as important in PLC-controlled systems as it is in electromechanical relay-controlled systems. One should always consider the effects of failed (open) wiring on the device or devices being controlled. In this motor control circuit example, we have a problem: if the input wiring for X2 (the ”Stop” switch) were to fail open, there would be no way to stop the motor!

The solution to this problem is a reversal of logic between the X2 ”contact” inside the PLC program and the actual ”Stop” pushbutton switch:



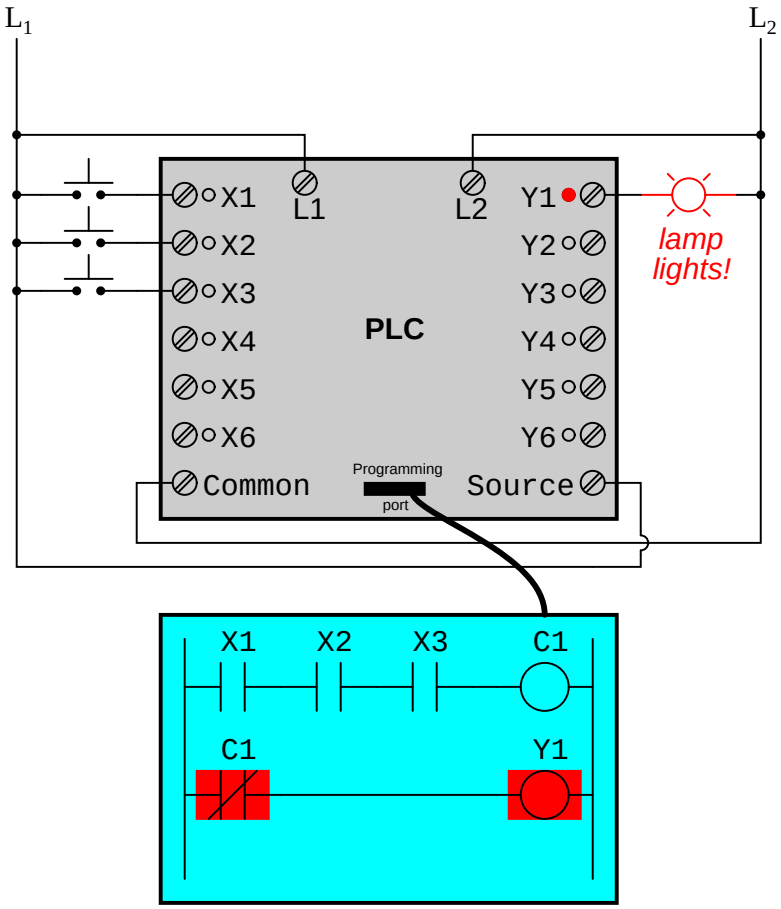
When the normally-closed ”Stop” pushbutton switch is unactuated (not pressed), the PLC’s X2 input will be energized, thus ”closing” the X2 ”contact” inside the program. This allows the motor to be started when input X1 is energized, and allows it to continue to run when the ”Start” pushbutton is no longer pressed. When the ”Stop” pushbutton is actuated, input X2 will de-energize, thus ”opening” the X2 ”contact” inside the PLC program and shutting off the motor. So, we see there is no operational difference between this new design and the previous design.

However, if the input wiring on input X2 were to fail open, X2 input would de-energize in the same manner as when the ”Stop” pushbutton is pressed. The result, then, for a wiring failure on the X2 input is that the motor will immediately shut off. This is a safer design than the one previously shown, where a ”Stop” switch wiring failure would have resulted in an *inability* to turn off the motor.

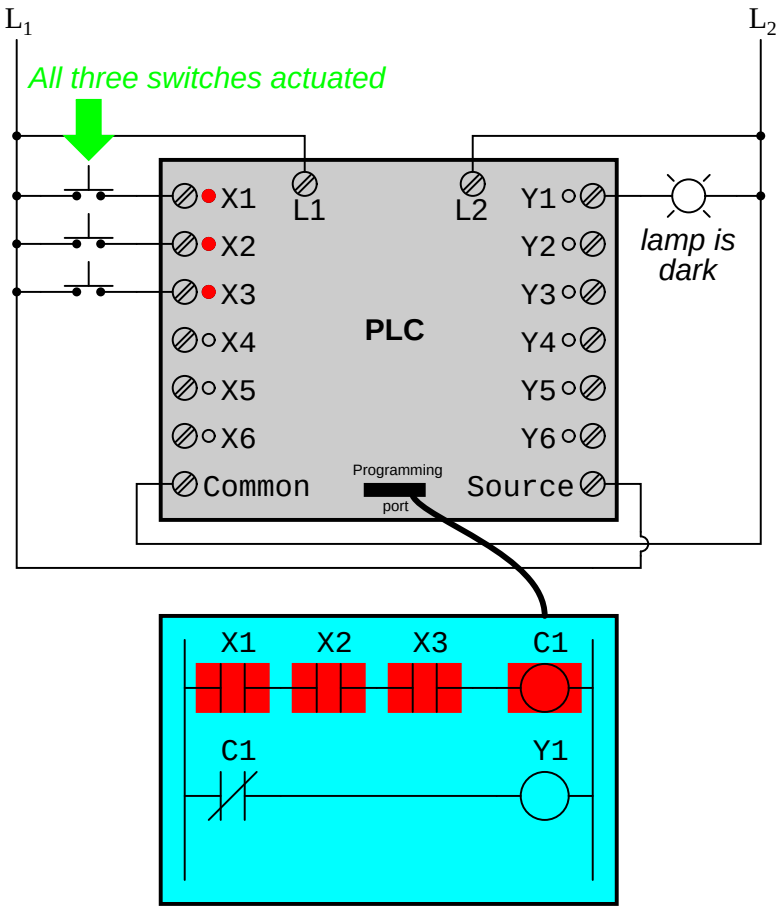
In addition to input (X) and output (Y) program elements, PLCs provide ”internal” coils and contacts with no intrinsic connection to the outside world. These are used much the same as ”control relays” (CR1, CR2, etc.) are used in standard relay circuits: to provide logic signal inversion when necessary.

To demonstrate how one of these ”internal” relays might be used, consider the following

example circuit and program, designed to emulate the function of a three-input NAND gate. Since PLC program elements are typically designed by single letters, I will call the internal control relay "C1" rather than "CR1" as would be customary in a relay control circuit:



In this circuit, the lamp will remain lit so long as *any* of the pushbuttons remain unactuated (unpressed). To make the lamp turn off, we will have to actuate (press) *all* three switches, like this:



This section on programmable logic controllers illustrates just a small sample of their capabilities. As computers, PLCs can perform timing functions (for the equivalent of time-delay relays), drum sequencing, and other advanced functions with far greater accuracy and reliability than what is possible using electromechanical logic devices. Most PLCs have the capacity for far more than six inputs and six outputs. The following photograph shows several input and output modules of a single Allen-Bradley PLC.

With each module having sixteen ”points” of either input or output, this PLC has the ability to monitor and control dozens of devices. Fit into a control cabinet, a PLC takes up little room, especially considering the equivalent space that would be needed by electromechanical relays to perform the same functions:

One advantage of PLCs that simply *cannot* be duplicated by electromechanical relays is remote monitoring and control via digital computer networks. Because a PLC is nothing more than a special-purpose digital computer, it has the ability to communicate with other computers rather easily. The following photograph shows a personal computer displaying a graphic image of a real liquid-level process (a pumping, or ”lift,” station for a municipal wastewater treatment system) controlled by a PLC. The actual pumping station is located miles away from

the personal computer display:

6.7 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Roger Hollingsworth (May 2003): Suggested a way to make the PLC motor control circuit fail-safe.

Chapter 7

BOOLEAN ALGEBRA

Contents

0 + 0 = 0
0 + 1 = 1
1 + 0 = 1
1 + 1 = 1
Rules of addition for Boolean quantities

"Gee Toto, I don't think we're in Kansas anymore!"
Dorothy, in The Wizard of Oz

7.1 Introduction

Mathematical rules are based on the defining limits we place on the particular numerical quantities dealt with. When we say that 1 + 1 = 2 or 3 + 4 = 7, we are implying the use of integer quantities: the same types of numbers we all learned to count in elementary education.

What most people assume to be self-evident rules of arithmetic – valid at all times and for all purposes – actually depend on what we define a number to be.

For instance, when calculating quantities in AC circuits, we find that the "real" number quantities which served us so well in DC circuit analysis are inadequate for the task of representing AC quantities. We know that voltages add when connected in series, but we also know that it is possible to connect a 3-volt AC source in series with a 4-volt AC source and end up with 5 volts total voltage (3 + 4 = 5)! Does this mean the inviolable and self-evident rules of arithmetic have been violated? No, it just means that the rules of "real" numbers do not apply to the kinds of quantities encountered in AC circuits, where every variable has both a magnitude and a phase. Consequently, we must use a different kind of numerical quantity, or object, for AC circuits (*complex* numbers, rather than *real* numbers), and along with this different system of numbers comes a different set of rules telling us how they relate to one another.

An expression such as "3 + 4 = 5" is nonsense within the scope and definition of real numbers, but it fits nicely within the scope and definition of complex numbers (think of a right triangle with opposite and adjacent sides of 3 and 4, with a hypotenuse of 5). Because complex numbers are two-dimensional, they are able to "add" with one another trigonometrically as single-dimension "real" numbers cannot.

Logic is much like mathematics in this respect: the so-called "Laws" of logic depend on how we define what a proposition is. The Greek philosopher Aristotle founded a system of logic based on only two types of propositions: true and false. His bivalent (two-mode) definition of truth led to the four foundational laws of logic: the Law of Identity (A is A); the Law of Non-contradiction (A is not non-A); the Law of the Excluded Middle (either A or non-A); and the Law of Rational Inference. These so-called Laws function within the scope of logic where a proposition is limited to one of two possible values, but may not apply in cases where propositions can hold values other than "true" or "false." In fact, much work has been done and continues to be done on "multivalued," or *fuzzy* logic, where propositions may be true or false *to a limited degree*. In such a system of logic, "Laws" such as the Law of the Excluded Middle simply do not apply, because they are founded on the assumption of bivalence. Likewise, many premises which would violate the Law of Non-contradiction in Aristotelian logic have validity in "fuzzy" logic. Again, the defining limits of propositional values determine the Laws describing their functions and relations.

The English mathematician George Boole (1815-1864) sought to give symbolic form to Aristotle's system of logic. Boole wrote a treatise on the subject in 1854, titled *An Investigation of the Laws of Thought, on Which Are Founded the Mathematical Theories of Logic and Probabilities*, which codified several rules of relationship between mathematical quantities limited to one of two possible values: true or false, 1 or 0. His mathematical system became known as Boolean algebra.

All arithmetic operations performed with Boolean quantities have but one of two possible outcomes: either 1 or 0. There is no such thing as "2" or "-1" or "1/2" in the Boolean world. It is a world in which all other possibilities are invalid by fiat. As one might guess, this is not the kind of math you want to use when balancing a checkbook or calculating current through a resistor. However, Claude Shannon of MIT fame recognized how Boolean algebra could be applied to on-and-off circuits, where all signals are characterized as either "high" (1) or "low" (0). His 1938 thesis, titled *A Symbolic Analysis of Relay and Switching Circuits*, put Boole's theoretical work to use in a way Boole never could have imagined, giving us a powerful mathematical tool for designing and analyzing digital circuits.

In this chapter, you will find a lot of similarities between Boolean algebra and "normal" algebra, the kind of algebra involving so-called real numbers. Just bear in mind that the system of numbers defining Boolean algebra is severely limited in terms of scope, and that there can only be one of two possible values for any Boolean variable: 1 or 0. Consequently, the "Laws" of Boolean algebra often differ from the "Laws" of real-number algebra, making possible such statements as 1 + 1 = 1, which would normally be considered absurd. Once you comprehend the premise of all quantities in Boolean algebra being limited to the two possibilities of 1 and 0, and the general philosophical principle of Laws depending on quantitative definitions, the "nonsense" of Boolean algebra disappears.

It should be clearly understood that Boolean numbers are not the same as *binary* numbers. Whereas Boolean numbers represent an entirely different system of mathematics from real numbers, binary is nothing more than an alternative *notation* for real numbers. The two are often confused because both Boolean math and binary notation use the same two ciphers: 1 and 0. The difference is that Boolean quantities are restricted to a single bit (either 1 or 0), whereas binary numbers may be composed of many bits adding up in place-weighted form to a value of any finite size. The binary number 10011_2 ("nineteen") has no more place in the Boolean world than the decimal number 2_{10} ("two") or the octal number 32_8 ("twenty-six").

7.2 Boolean arithmetic

Let us begin our exploration of Boolean algebra by adding numbers together:

```
0 + 0 = 0

0 + 1 = 1

1 + 0 = 1

1 + 1 = 1
```

The first three sums make perfect sense to anyone familiar with elementary addition. The last sum, though, is quite possibly responsible for more confusion than any other single statement in digital electronics, because it seems to run contrary to the basic principles of mathematics. Well, it *does* contradict principles of addition for real numbers, but not for Boolean numbers. Remember that in the world of Boolean algebra, there are only two possible values for any quantity and for any arithmetic operation: 1 or 0. There is no such thing as "2" within the scope of Boolean values. Since the sum "1 + 1" certainly isn't 0, it must be 1 by process of elimination.

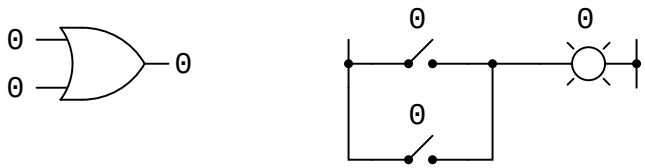
It does not matter how many or few terms we add together, either. Consider the following sums:

```
0 + 1 + 1 = 1

1 + 1 + 1 = 1

0 + 1 + 1 + 1 = 1

1 + 0 + 1 + 1 + 1 = 1
```

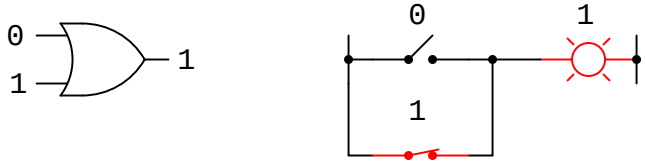
Take a close look at the two-term sums in the first set of equations. Does that pattern look familiar to you? It should! It is the same pattern of 1's and 0's as seen in the truth table for an

OR gate. In other words, Boolean addition corresponds to the logical function of an "OR" gate, as well as to parallel switch contacts:

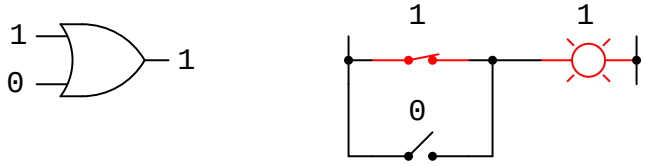
0 + 0 = 0



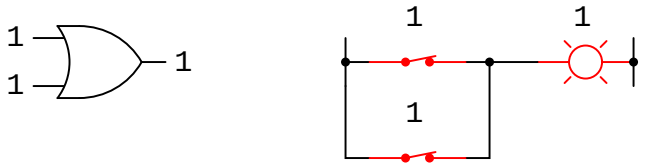
0 + 1 = 1



1 + 0 = 1



1 + 1 = 1



There is no such thing as subtraction in the realm of Boolean mathematics. Subtraction implies the existence of negative numbers: 5 - 3 is the same thing as 5 + (-3), and in Boolean algebra negative quantities are forbidden. There is no such thing as division in Boolean mathematics, either, since division is really nothing more than compounded subtraction, in the same way that multiplication is compounded addition.

Multiplication is valid in Boolean algebra, and thankfully it is the same as in real-number algebra: anything multiplied by 0 is 0, and anything multiplied by 1 remains unchanged:

$0 \times 0 = 0$

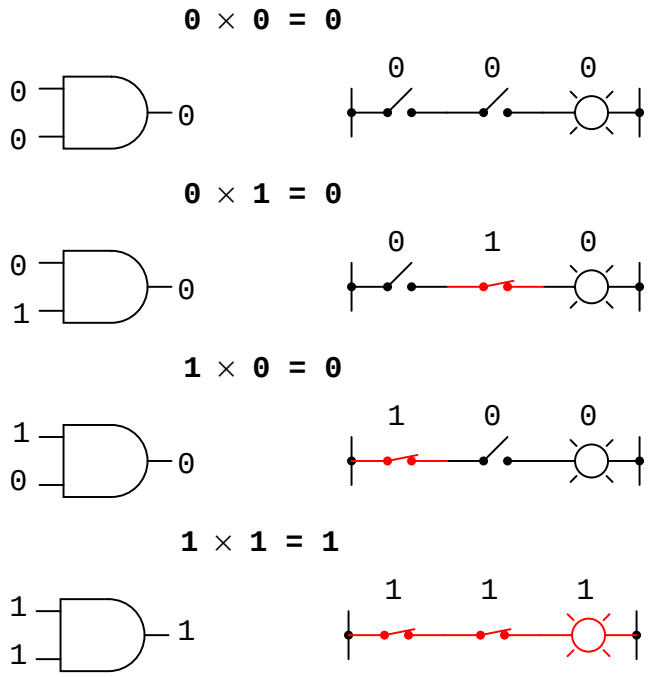
$0 \times 1 = 0$

$1 \times 0 = 0$

$1 \times 1 = 1$

This set of equations should also look familiar to you: it is the same pattern found in the

truth table for an AND gate. In other words, Boolean multiplication corresponds to the logical function of an "AND" gate, as well as to series switch contacts:



Like "normal" algebra, Boolean algebra uses alphabetical letters to denote variables. Unlike "normal" algebra, though, Boolean variables are always CAPITAL letters, never lowercase. Because they are allowed to possess only one of two possible values, either 1 or 0, each and every variable has a *complement*: the opposite of its value. For example, if variable "A" has a value of 0, then the complement of A has a value of 1. Boolean notation uses a bar above the variable character to denote complementation, like this:

If: A=0

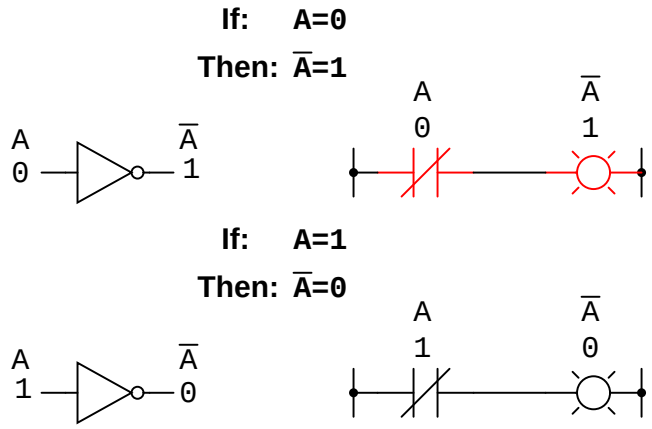
Then: $\overline{A}$=1

If: A=1

Then: $\overline{A}$=0

In written form, the complement of "A" denoted as "A-not" or "A-bar". Sometimes a "prime" symbol is used to represent complementation. For example, A' would be the complement of A, much the same as using a prime symbol to denote differentiation in calculus rather than the fractional notation d/dt. Usually, though, the "bar" symbol finds more widespread use than the "prime" symbol, for reasons that will become more apparent later in this chapter.

Boolean complementation finds equivalency in the form of the NOT gate, or a normally-closed switch or relay contact:



The basic definition of Boolean quantities has led to the simple rules of addition and multiplication, and has excluded both subtraction and division as valid arithmetic operations. We have a symbology for denoting Boolean variables, and their complements. In the next section we will proceed to develop Boolean identities.

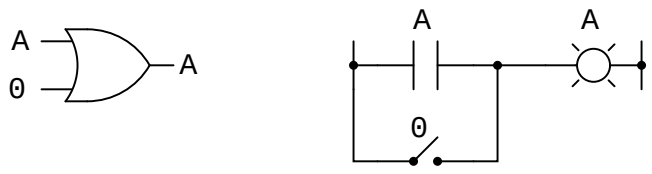
- **REVIEW:**
- Boolean addition is equivalent to the *OR* logic function, as well as *parallel* switch contacts.
- Boolean multiplication is equivalent to the *AND* logic function, as well as *series* switch contacts.
- Boolean complementation is equivalent to the *NOT* logic function, as well as *normally-closed* relay contacts.

7.3 Boolean algebraic identities

In mathematics, an *identity* is a statement true for all possible values of its variable or variables. The algebraic identity of x + 0 = x tells us that anything (x) added to zero equals the original "anything," no matter what value that "anything" (x) may be. Like ordinary algebra, Boolean algebra has its own unique identities based on the bivalent states of Boolean variables.

The first Boolean identity is that the sum of anything and zero is the same as the original "anything." This identity is no different from its real-number algebraic equivalent:

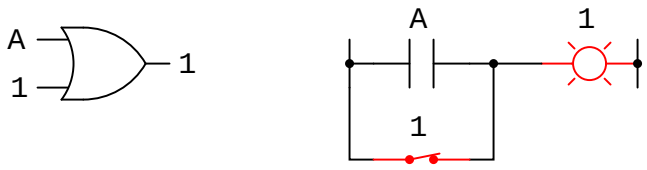
A + 0 = A



No matter what the value of A, the output will always be the same: when A=1, the output will also be 1; when A=0, the output will also be 0.

The next identity is most definitely *different* from any seen in normal algebra. Here we discover that the sum of anything and one is one:

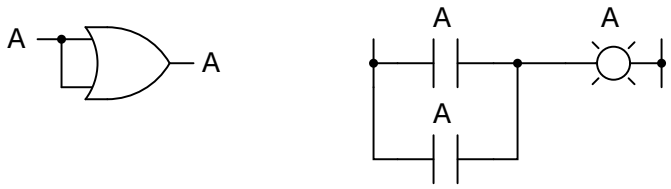
$$A + 1 = 1$$



No matter what the value of A, the sum of A and 1 will always be 1. In a sense, the "1" signal *overrides* the effect of A on the logic circuit, leaving the output fixed at a logic level of 1.

Next, we examine the effect of adding A and A together, which is the same as connecting both inputs of an OR gate to each other and activating them with the same signal:

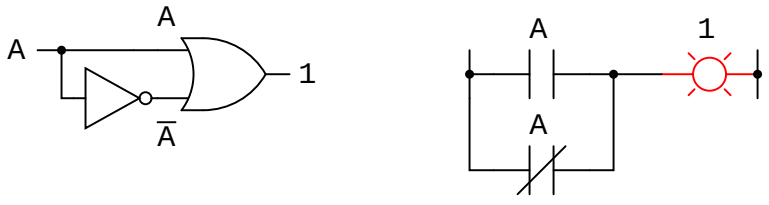
$$A + A = A$$



In real-number algebra, the sum of two identical variables is twice the original variable's value (x + x = 2x), but remember that there is no concept of "2" in the world of Boolean math, only 1 and 0, so we cannot say that A + A = 2A. Thus, when we add a Boolean quantity to itself, the sum is equal to the original quantity: 0 + 0 = 0, and 1 + 1 = 1.

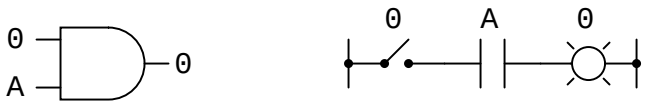
Introducing the uniquely Boolean concept of complementation into an additive identity, we find an interesting effect. Since there must be one "1" value between any variable and its complement, and since the sum of any Boolean quantity and 1 is 1, the sum of a variable and its complement must be 1:

$$A + \overline{A} = 1$$

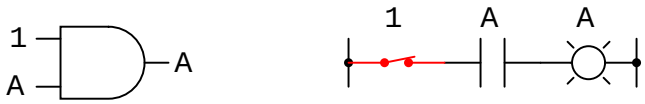


Just as there are four Boolean additive identities (A+0, A+1, A+A, and A+A'), so there are also four multiplicative identities: Ax0, Ax1, AxA, and AxA'. Of these, the first two are no different from their equivalent expressions in regular algebra:

0A = 0

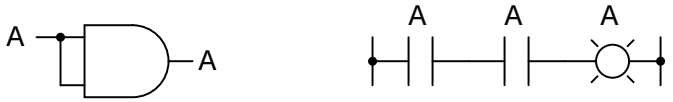


1A = A



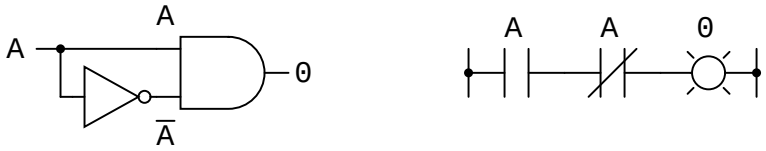
The third multiplicative identity expresses the result of a Boolean quantity multiplied by itself. In normal algebra, the product of a variable and itself is the *square* of that variable (3 x 3 = 3^2 = 9). However, the concept of "square" implies a quantity of 2, which has no meaning in Boolean algebra, so we cannot say that A x A = A^2. Instead, we find that the product of a Boolean quantity and itself is the original quantity, since 0 x 0 = 0 and 1 x 1 = 1:

AA = A



The fourth multiplicative identity has no equivalent in regular algebra because it uses the complement of a variable, a concept unique to Boolean mathematics. Since there must be one "0" value between any variable and its complement, and since the product of any Boolean quantity and 0 is 0, the product of a variable and its complement must be 0:

$A\overline{A}$ = 0



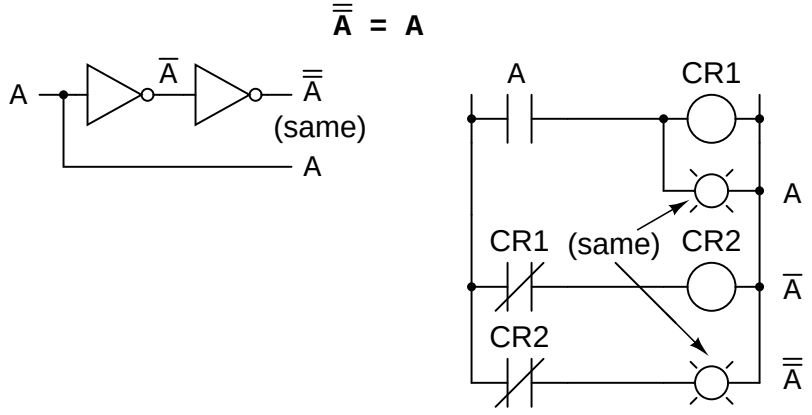
To summarize, then, we have four basic Boolean identities for addition and four for multiplication:

Basic Boolean algebraic identities

Additive	Multiplicative
A + 0 = A	0A = 0
A + 1 = 1	1A = A
A + A = A	AA = A
A + $\overline{A}$ = 1	A$\overline{A}$ = 0

Another identity having to do with complementation is that of the *double complement*: a variable inverted twice. Complementing a variable twice (or any even number of times) results in the original Boolean value. This is analogous to negating (multiplying by -1) in real-number

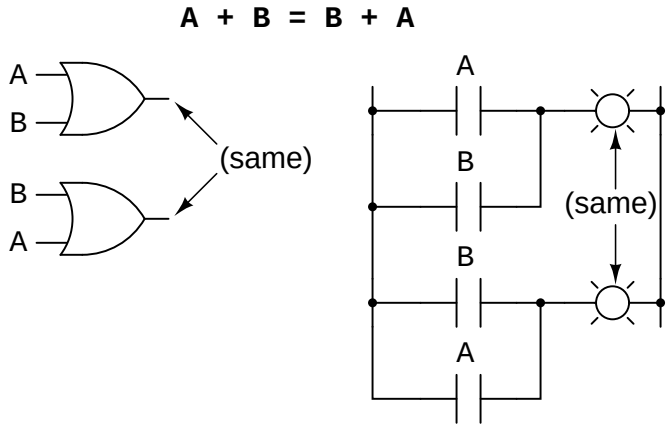
algebra: an even number of negations cancel to leave the original value:



7.4 Boolean algebraic properties

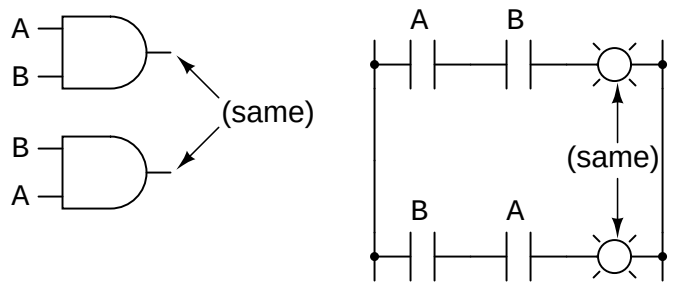
Another type of mathematical identity, called a ”property” or a ”law,” describes how differing variables relate to each other in a system of numbers. One of these properties is known as the *commutative property*, and it applies equally to addition and multiplication. In essence, the commutative property tells us we can reverse the order of variables that are either added together or multiplied together without changing the truth of the expression:

Commutative property of addition



Commutative property of multiplication

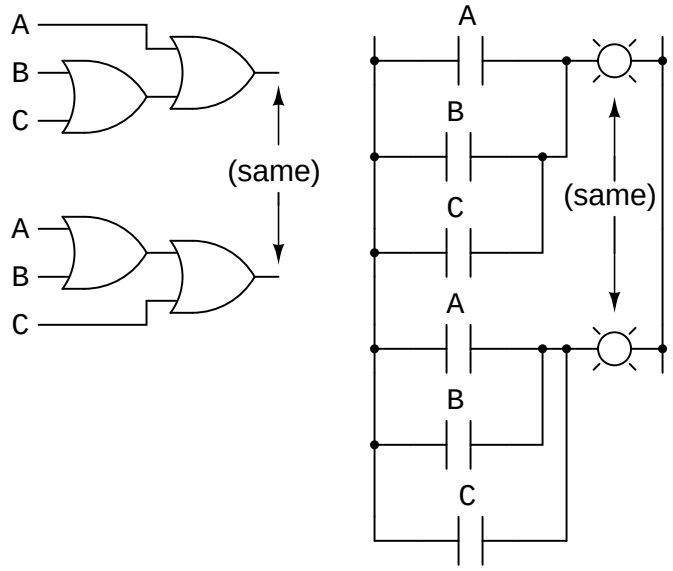
AB = BA



Along with the commutative properties of addition and multiplication, we have the *associative property*, again applying equally well to addition and multiplication. This property tells us we can associate groups of added or multiplied variables together with parentheses without altering the truth of the equations.

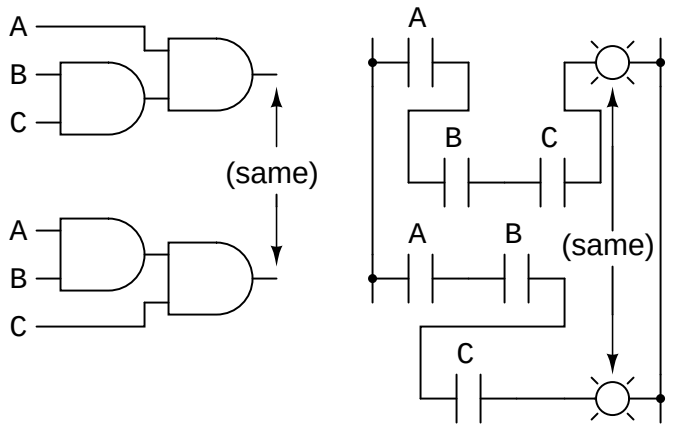
Associative property of addition

A + (B + C) = (A + B) + C



Associative property of multiplication

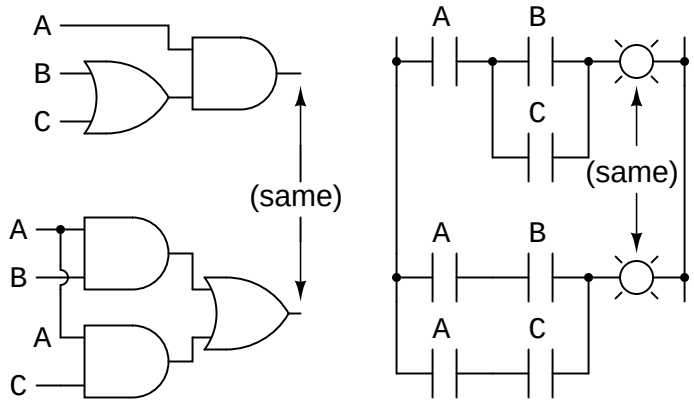
A(BC) = (AB)C



Lastly, we have the *distributive property*, illustrating how to expand a Boolean expression formed by the product of a sum, and in reverse shows us how terms may be factored out of Boolean sums-of-products:

Distributive property

A(B + C) = AB + AC



To summarize, here are the three basic properties: commutative, associative, and distributive.

Basic Boolean algebraic properties

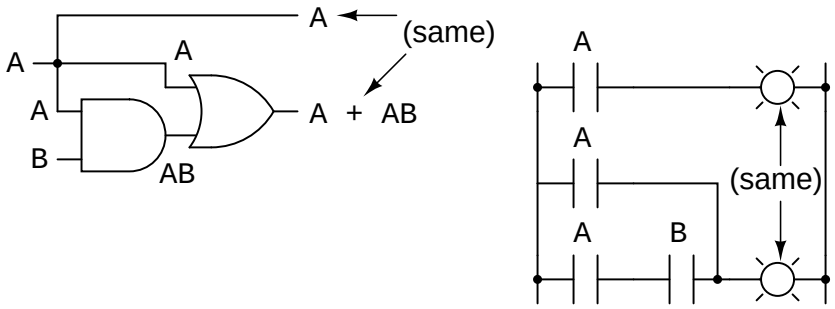
Additive	Multiplicative
A + B = B + A	AB = BA
A + (B + C) = (A + B) + C	A(BC) = (AB)C
A(B + C) = AB + AC	

7.5 Boolean rules for simplification

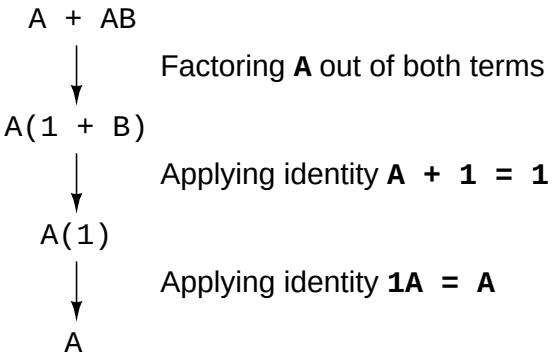
Boolean algebra finds its most practical use in the simplification of logic circuits. If we translate a logic circuit's function into symbolic (Boolean) form, and apply certain algebraic rules to the resulting equation to reduce the number of terms and/or arithmetic operations, the simplified equation may be translated back into circuit form for a logic circuit performing the same function with fewer components. If equivalent function may be achieved with fewer components, the result will be increased reliability and decreased cost of manufacture.

To this end, there are several rules of Boolean algebra presented in this section for use in reducing expressions to their simplest forms. The identities and properties already reviewed in this chapter are very useful in Boolean simplification, and for the most part bear similarity to many identities and properties of "normal" algebra. However, the rules shown in this section are all unique to Boolean mathematics.

A + AB = A



This rule may be proven symbolically by factoring an "A" out of the two terms, then applying the rules of A + 1 = 1 and 1A = A to achieve the final result:

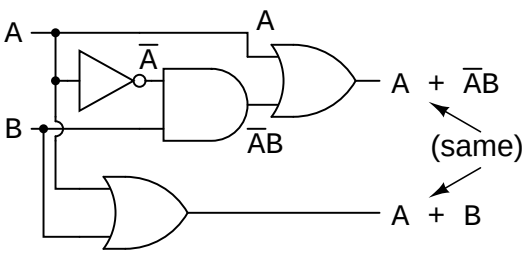


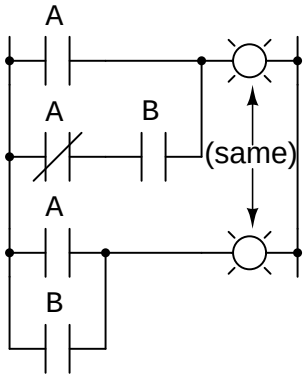
Please note how the rule A + 1 = 1 was used to reduce the (B + 1) term to 1. When a rule like "A + 1 = 1" is expressed using the letter "A", it doesn't mean it only applies to expressions containing "A". What the "A" stands for in a rule like A + 1 = 1 is *any* Boolean variable or collection of variables. This is perhaps the most difficult concept for new students to master in Boolean simplification: applying standardized identities, properties, and rules to expressions not in standard form.

For instance, the Boolean expression ABC + 1 also reduces to 1 by means of the "A + 1 = 1" identity. In this case, we recognize that the "A" term in the identity's standard form can represent the entire "ABC" term in the original expression.

The next rule looks similar to the first on shown in this section, but is actually quite different and requires a more clever proof:

$$\mathbf{A + \overline{A}B = A + B}$$





$A + \overline{A}B$

↓ Applying the previous rule to expand **A** term

A + AB = A

$A + AB + \overline{A}B$

↓ Factoring **B** out of 2nd and 3rd terms

$A + B(A + \overline{A})$

↓ Applying identity **A + $\overline{A}$ = 1**

$A + B(1)$

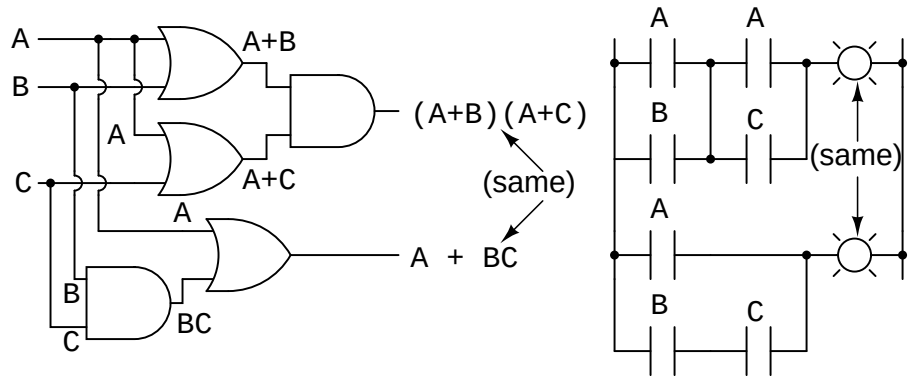
↓ Applying identity **1A = A**

$A + B$

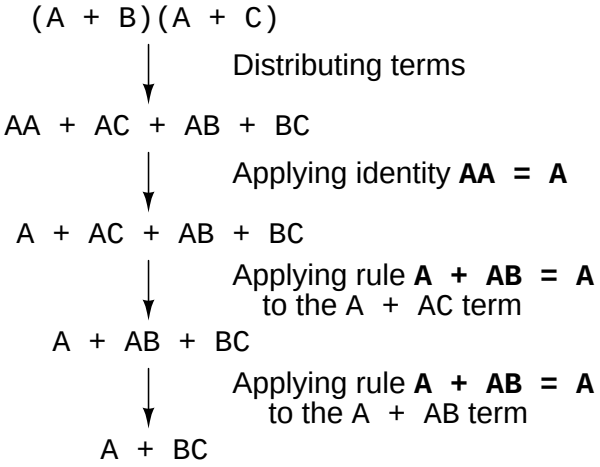
Note how the last rule (A + AB = A) is used to ”un-simplify” the first ”A” term in the expression, changing the ”A” into an ”A + AB”. While this may seem like a backward step, it certainly helped to reduce the expression to something simpler! Sometimes in mathematics we must take ”backward” steps to achieve the most elegant solution. Knowing when to take such a step and when not to is part of the art-form of algebra, just as a victory in a game of chess almost always requires calculated sacrifices.

Another rule involves the simplification of a product-of-sums expression:

$$(A + B)(A + C) = A + BC$$



And, the corresponding proof:



To summarize, here are the three new rules of Boolean simplification expounded in this section:

Useful Boolean rules for simplification

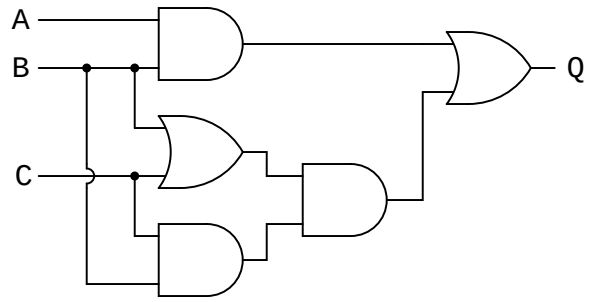
$$A + AB = A$$

$$A + \overline{A}B = A + B$$

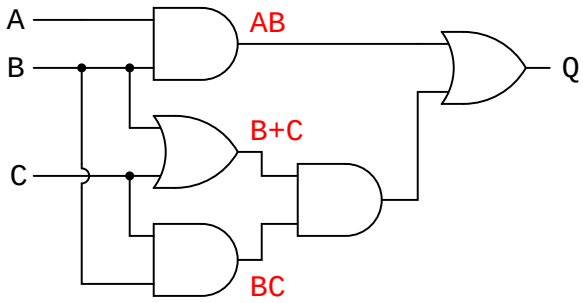
$$(A + B)(A + C) = A + BC$$

7.6 Circuit simplification examples

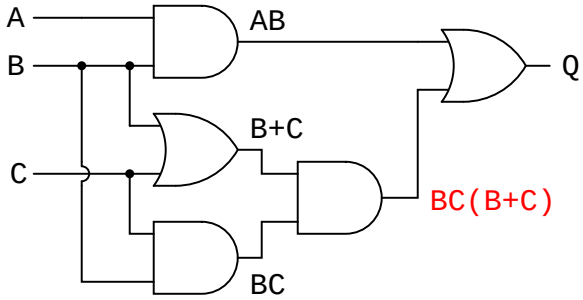
Let's begin with a semiconductor gate circuit in need of simplification. The "A," "B," and "C" input signals are assumed to be provided from switches, sensors, or perhaps other gate circuits. Where these signals originate is of no concern in the task of gate reduction.



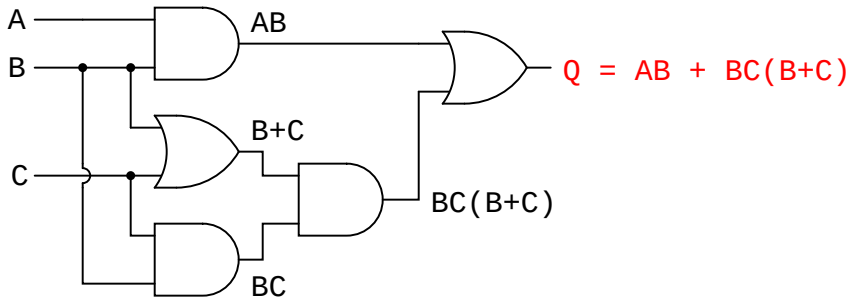
Our first step in simplification must be to write a Boolean expression for this circuit. This task is easily performed step by step if we start by writing sub-expressions at the output of each gate, corresponding to the respective input signals for each gate. Remember that OR gates are equivalent to Boolean addition, while AND gates are equivalent to Boolean multiplication. For example, I'll write sub-expressions at the outputs of the first three gates:



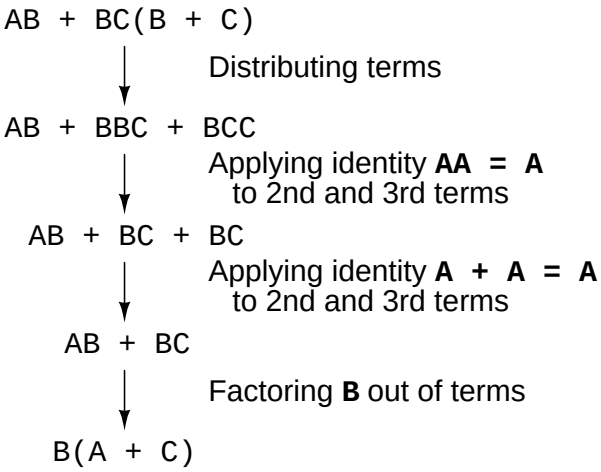
. . . then another sub-expression for the next gate:



Finally, the output ("Q") is seen to be equal to the expression AB + BC(B + C):

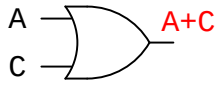


Now that we have a Boolean expression to work with, we need to apply the rules of Boolean algebra to reduce the expression to its simplest form (simplest defined as requiring the fewest gates to implement):

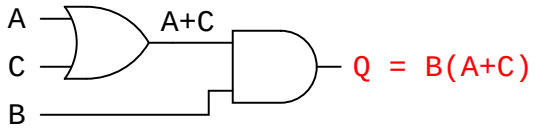


The final expression, B(A + C), is much simpler than the original, yet performs the same function. If you would like to verify this, you may generate a truth table for both expressions and determine Q's status (the circuits' output) for all eight logic-state combinations of A, B, and C, for both circuits. The two truth tables should be identical.

Now, we must generate a schematic diagram from this Boolean expression. To do this, evaluate the expression, following proper mathematical order of operations (multiplication before addition, operations inside parentheses before anything else), and draw gates for each step. Remember again that OR gates are equivalent to Boolean addition, while AND gates are equivalent to Boolean multiplication. In this case, we would begin with the sub-expression "A + C", which is an OR gate:

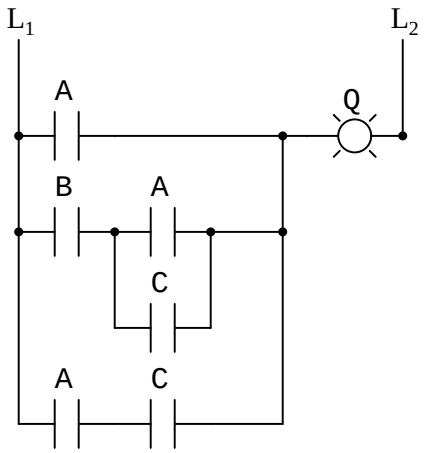


The next step in evaluating the expression "B(A + C)" is to multiply (AND gate) the signal B by the output of the previous gate (A + C):

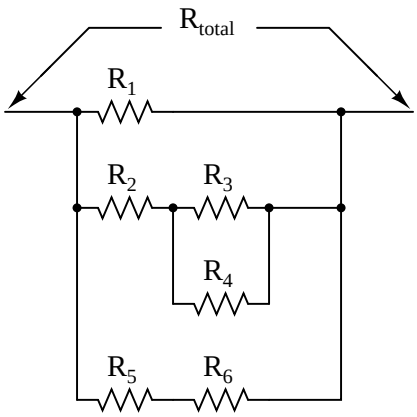


Obviously, this circuit is much simpler than the original, having only two logic gates instead of five. Such component reduction results in higher operating speed (less delay time from input signal transition to output signal transition), less power consumption, less cost, and greater reliability.

Electromechanical relay circuits, typically being slower, consuming more electrical power to operate, costing more, and having a shorter average life than their semiconductor counterparts, benefit dramatically from Boolean simplification. Let's consider an example circuit:

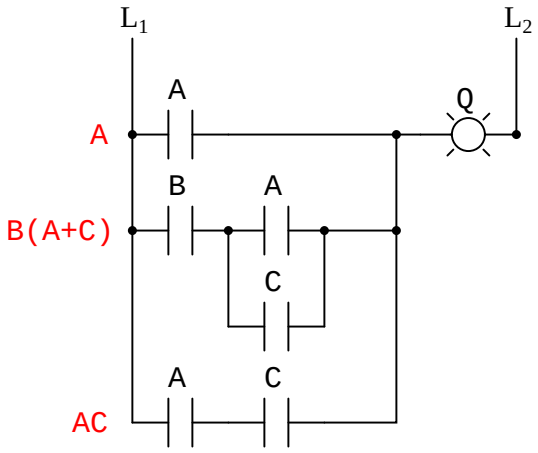


As before, our first step in reducing this circuit to its simplest form must be to develop a Boolean expression from the schematic. The easiest way I've found to do this is to follow the same steps I'd normally follow to reduce a series-parallel resistor network to a single, total resistance. For example, examine the following resistor network with its resistors arranged in the same connection pattern as the relay contacts in the former circuit, and corresponding total resistance formula:



$$R_{total} = R_1 \,//\, [(R_3 // R_4) \text{ -- } R_2] \,//\, (R_5 \text{ -- } R_6)$$

Remember that parallel contacts are equivalent to Boolean addition, while series contacts are equivalent to Boolean multiplication. Write a Boolean expression for this relay contact circuit, following the same order of precedence that you would follow in reducing a series-parallel resistor network to a total resistance. It may be helpful to write a Boolean sub-expression to the left of each ladder "rung," to help organize your expression-writing:



Q = A + B(A+C) + AC

Now that we have a Boolean expression to work with, we need to apply the rules of Boolean algebra to reduce the expression to its simplest form (simplest defined as requiring the fewest relay contacts to implement):

A + B(A + C) + AC

↓ Distributing terms

A + AB + BC + AC

↓ Applying rule **A + AB = A** to 1st and 2nd terms

A + BC + AC

↓ Applying rule **A + AB = A** to 1st and 3rd terms

A + BC

The more mathematically inclined should be able to see that the two steps employing the rule "A + AB = A" may be combined into a single step, the rule being expandable to: "A + AB + AC + AD + . . . = A"

A + B(A + C) + AC

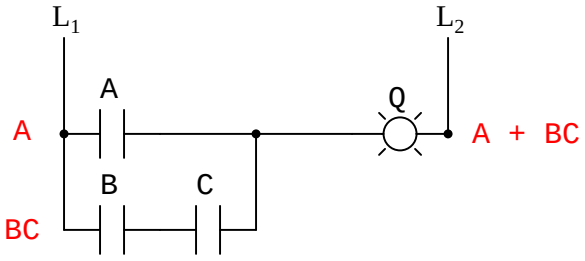
↓ Distributing terms

A + AB + BC + AC

↓ Applying (expanded) rule **A + AB = A** to 1st, 2nd, and 4th terms

A + BC

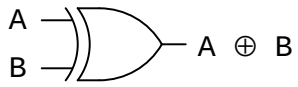
As you can see, the reduced circuit is much simpler than the original, yet performs the same logical function:



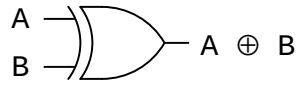
- **REVIEW:**
- To convert a gate circuit to a Boolean expression, label each gate output with a Boolean sub-expression corresponding to the gates' input signals, until a final expression is reached at the last gate.
- To convert a Boolean expression to a gate circuit, evaluate the expression using standard order of operations: multiplication before addition, and operations within parentheses before anything else.
- To convert a ladder logic circuit to a Boolean expression, label each rung with a Boolean sub-expression corresponding to the contacts' input signals, until a final expression is reached at the last coil or light. To determine proper order of evaluation, treat the contacts as though they were resistors, and as if you were determining total resistance of the series-parallel network formed by them. In other words, look for contacts that are either *directly* in series or *directly* in parallel with each other first, then "collapse" them into equivalent Boolean sub-expressions before proceeding to other contacts.
- To convert a Boolean expression to a ladder logic circuit, evaluate the expression using standard order of operations: multiplication before addition, and operations within parentheses before anything else.

7.7 The Exclusive-OR function

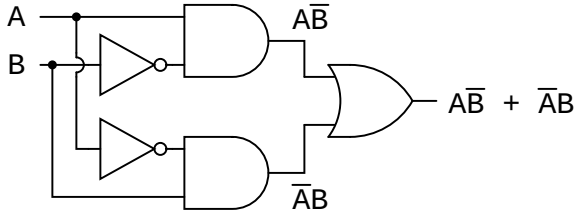
One element conspicuously missing from the set of Boolean operations is that of Exclusive-OR. Whereas the OR function is equivalent to Boolean addition, the AND function to Boolean multiplication, and the NOT function (inverter) to Boolean complementation, there is no direct Boolean equivalent for Exclusive-OR. This hasn't stopped people from developing a symbol to represent it, though:



This symbol is seldom used in Boolean expressions because the identities, laws, and rules of simplification involving addition, multiplication, and complementation do not apply to it. However, there is a way to represent the Exclusive-OR function in terms of OR and AND, as has been shown in previous chapters: AB' + A'B



. . . is equivalent to . . .



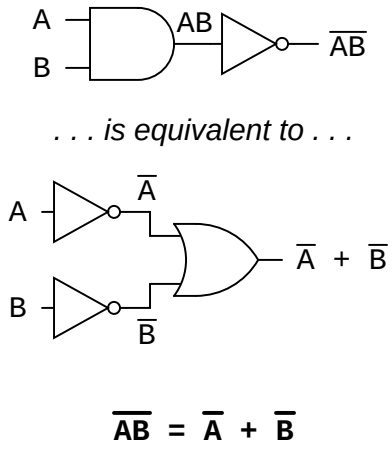
$$A \oplus B = A\overline{B} + \overline{A}B$$

As a Boolean equivalency, this rule may be helpful in simplifying some Boolean expressions. Any expression following the AB' + A'B form (two AND gates and an OR gate) may be replaced by a single Exclusive-OR gate.

7.8 DeMorgan's Theorems

A mathematician named DeMorgan developed a pair of important rules regarding group complementation in Boolean algebra. By *group* complementation, I'm referring to the complement of a group of terms, represented by a long bar over more than one variable.

You should recall from the chapter on logic gates that inverting all inputs to a gate reverses that gate's essential function from AND to OR, or vice versa, and also inverts the output. So, an OR gate with all inputs inverted (a Negative-OR gate) behaves the same as a NAND gate, and an AND gate with all inputs inverted (a Negative-AND gate) behaves the same as a NOR gate. DeMorgan's theorems state the same equivalence in "backward" form: that inverting the output of any gate results in the same function as the opposite type of gate (AND vs. OR) with inverted inputs:

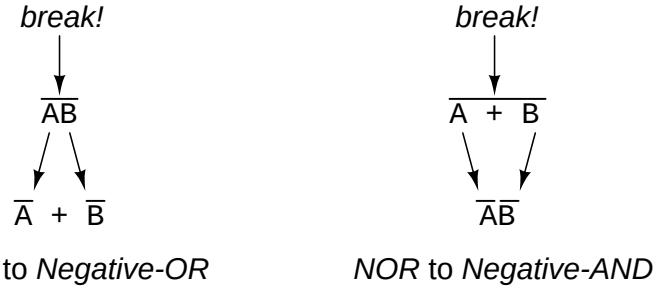


$$\overline{AB} = \overline{A} + \overline{B}$$

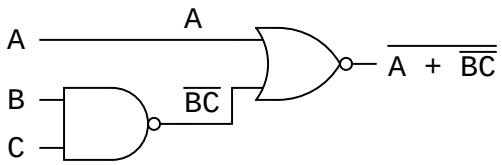
A long bar extending over the term AB acts as a grouping symbol, and as such is entirely different from the product of A and B independently inverted. In other words, (AB)' is not equal to A'B'. Because the "prime" symbol (') cannot be stretched over two variables like a bar can, we are forced to use parentheses to make it apply to the whole term AB in the previous sentence. A bar, however, acts as its own grouping symbol when stretched over more than one variable. This has profound impact on how Boolean expressions are evaluated and reduced, as we shall see.

DeMorgan's theorem may be thought of in terms of *breaking* a long bar symbol. When a long bar is broken, the operation directly underneath the break changes from addition to multiplication, or vice versa, and the broken bar pieces remain over the individual variables. To illustrate:

DeMorgan's Theorems



When multiple "layers" of bars exist in an expression, you may only break *one bar at a time*, and it is generally easier to begin simplification by breaking the longest (uppermost) bar first. To illustrate, let's take the expression (A + (BC)')' and reduce it using DeMorgan's Theorems:



Following the advice of breaking the longest (uppermost) bar first, I'll begin by breaking the bar covering the entire expression as a first step:

$$\overline{A + \overline{BC}}$$

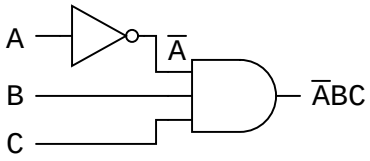
Breaking longest bar
(addition changes to multiplication)

$$\overline{A}\ \overline{\overline{BC}}$$

Applying identity $\overline{\overline{A}} = A$
to $\overline{\overline{BC}}$

$$\overline{A}BC$$

As a result, the original circuit is reduced to a three-input AND gate with the A input inverted:



You should *never* break more than one bar in a single step, as illustrated here:

$$\overline{A + \overline{BC}}$$

Incorrect step!

Breaking long bar between A and B;
Breaking both bars between B and C

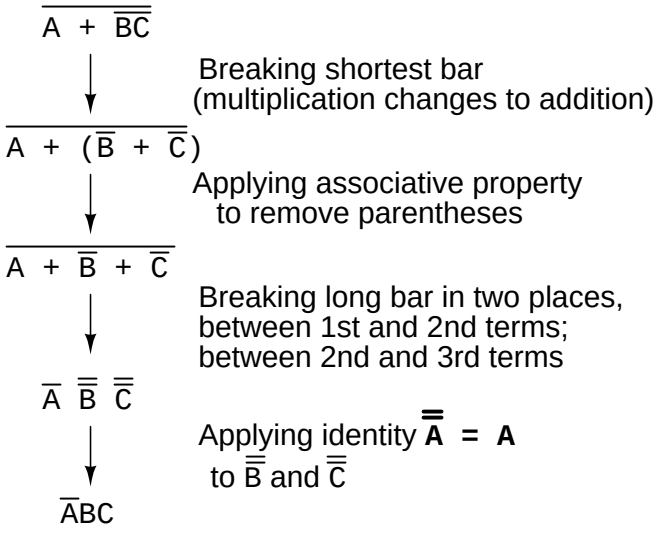
$$\overline{A}\ \overline{\overline{B}} + \overline{\overline{C}}$$

Applying identity $\overline{\overline{A}} = A$
to $\overline{\overline{B}}$ and $\overline{\overline{C}}$

Incorrect answer: $\overline{A}B + C$

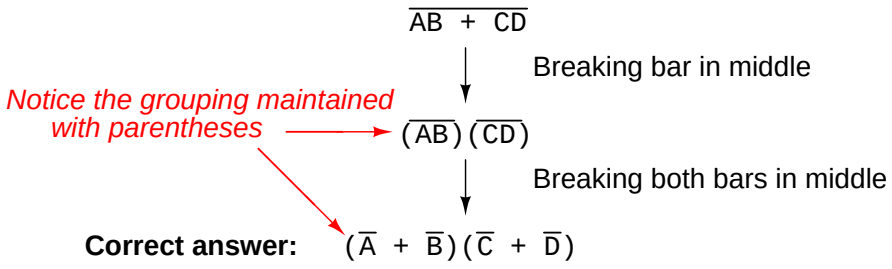
As tempting as it may be to conserve steps and break more than one bar at a time, it often leads to an incorrect result, so don't do it!

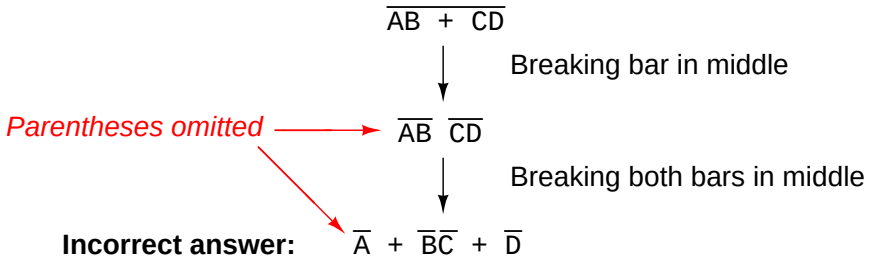
It is possible to properly reduce this expression by breaking the short bar first, rather than the long bar first:



The end result is the same, but more steps are required compared to using the first method, where the longest bar was broken first. Note how in the third step we broke the long bar in two places. This is a legitimate mathematical operation, and not the same as breaking two bars in one step! The prohibition against breaking more than one bar in one step is *not* a prohibition against breaking a bar in more than one place. Breaking in more than one *place* in a single step is okay; breaking more than one *bar* in a single step is not.

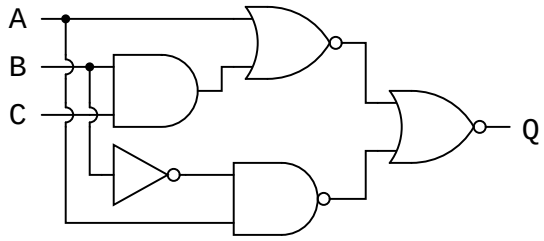
You might be wondering why parentheses were placed around the sub-expression B' + C', considering the fact that I just removed them in the next step. I did this to emphasize an important but easily neglected aspect of DeMorgan's theorem. Since a long bar functions as a grouping symbol, the variables formerly grouped by a broken bar must remain grouped lest proper precedence (order of operation) be lost. In this example, it really wouldn't matter if I forgot to put parentheses in after breaking the short bar, but in other cases it might. Consider this example, starting with a different expression:



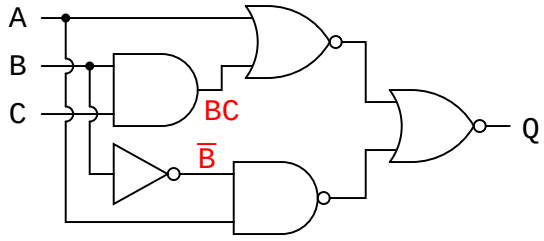


As you can see, maintaining the grouping implied by the complementation bars for this expression is crucial to obtaining the correct answer.

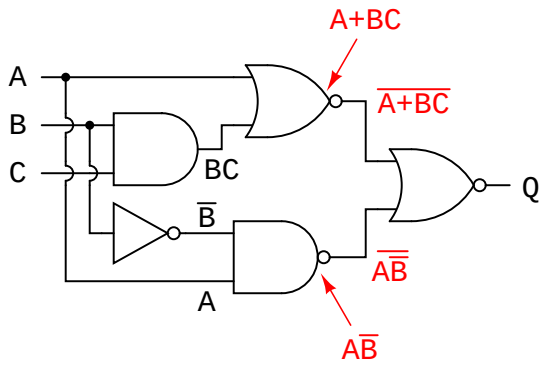
Let's apply the principles of DeMorgan's theorems to the simplification of a gate circuit:



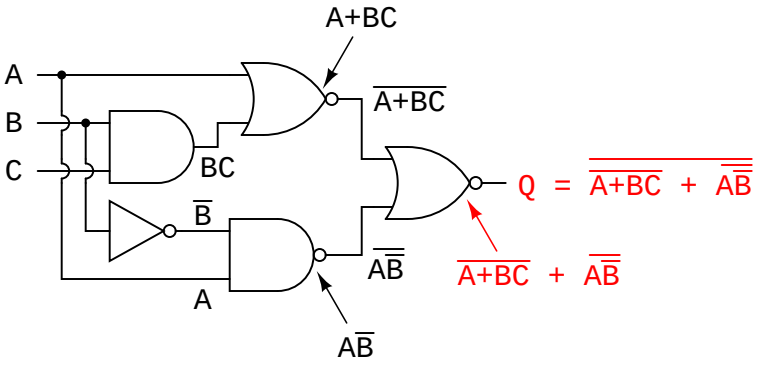
As always, our first step in simplifying this circuit must be to generate an equivalent Boolean expression. We can do this by placing a sub-expression label at the output of each gate, as the inputs become known. Here's the first step in this process:



Next, we can label the outputs of the first NOR gate and the NAND gate. When dealing with inverted-output gates, I find it easier to write an expression for the gate's output *without* the final inversion, with an arrow pointing to just before the inversion bubble. Then, at the wire leading out of the gate (after the bubble), I write the full, complemented expression. This helps ensure I don't forget a complementing bar in the sub-expression, by forcing myself to split the expression-writing task into two steps:



Finally, we write an expression (or pair of expressions) for the last NOR gate:



Now, we reduce this expression using the identities, properties, rules, and theorems (DeMorgan's) of Boolean algebra:

$$\overline{\overline{A + BC} + \overline{\overline{AB}}}$$

↓ Breaking longest bar

$$(\overline{\overline{A + BC}})\ (\overline{\overline{AB}})$$

↓ Applying identity $\overline{\overline{A}} = A$ wherever double bars of equal length are found

$$(A + BC)(A\overline{B})$$

↓ Distributive property

$$AA\overline{B} + BCA\overline{B}$$

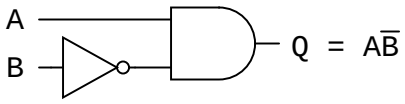
↓ Applying identity $AA = A$ to left term; applying identity $A\overline{A} = 0$ to B and $\overline{B}$ in right term

$$A\overline{B} + 0$$

↓ Applying identity $A + 0 = A$

$$A\overline{B}$$

The equivalent gate circuit for this much-simplified expression is as follows:



- **REVIEW**

- DeMorgan's Theorems describe the equivalence between gates with inverted inputs and gates with inverted outputs. Simply put, a NAND gate is equivalent to a Negative-OR gate, and a NOR gate is equivalent to a Negative-AND gate.

- When "breaking" a complementation bar in a Boolean expression, the operation directly underneath the break (addition or multiplication) reverses, and the broken bar pieces remain over the respective terms.

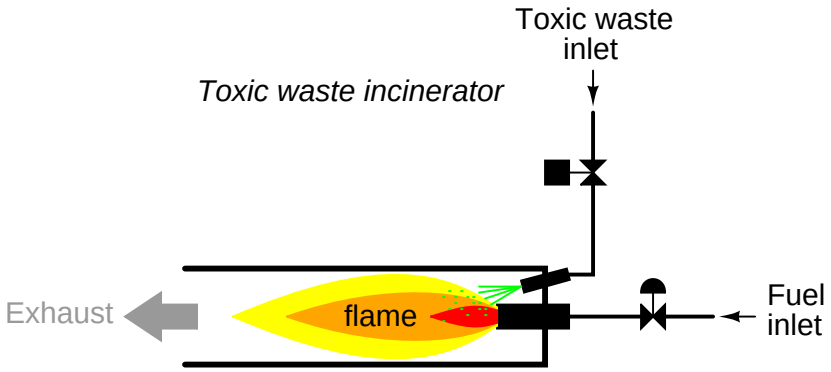
- It is often easier to approach a problem by breaking the longest (uppermost) bar before breaking any bars under it. You must *never* attempt to break two bars in one step!

- Complementation bars function as grouping symbols. Therefore, when a bar is broken, the terms underneath it must remain grouped. Parentheses may be placed around these grouped terms as a help to avoid changing precedence.

7.9 Converting truth tables into Boolean expressions

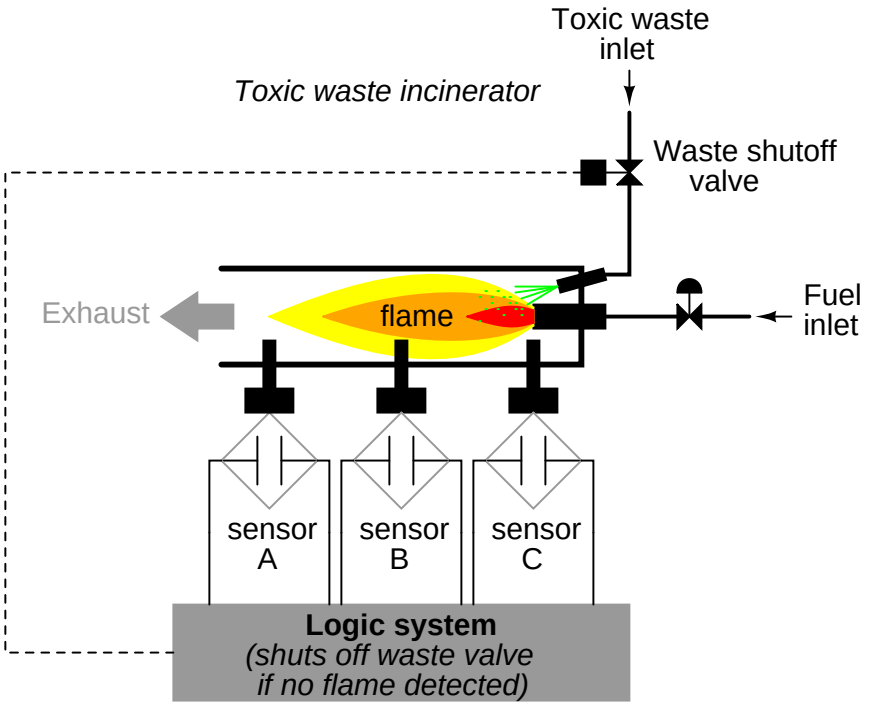
In designing digital circuits, the designer often begins with a truth table describing what the circuit should do. The design task is largely to determine what type of circuit will perform the function described in the truth table. While some people seem to have a natural ability to look at a truth table and immediately envision the necessary logic gate or relay logic circuitry for the task, there are procedural techniques available for the rest of us. Here, Boolean algebra proves its utility in a most dramatic way.

To illustrate this procedural method, we should begin with a realistic design problem. Suppose we were given the task of designing a flame detection circuit for a toxic waste incinerator. The intense heat of the fire is intended to neutralize the toxicity of the waste introduced into the incinerator. Such combustion-based techniques are commonly used to neutralize medical waste, which may be infected with deadly viruses or bacteria:



So long as a flame is maintained in the incinerator, it is safe to inject waste into it to be neutralized. If the flame were to be extinguished, however, it would be unsafe to continue to inject waste into the combustion chamber, as it would exit the exhaust un-neutralized, and pose a health threat to anyone in close proximity to the exhaust. What we need in this system is a sure way of detecting the presence of a flame, and permitting waste to be injected only if a flame is ”proven” by the flame detection system.

Several different flame-detection technologies exist: optical (detection of light), thermal (detection of high temperature), and electrical conduction (detection of ionized particles in the flame path), each one with its unique advantages and disadvantages. Suppose that due to the high degree of hazard involved with potentially passing un-neutralized waste out the exhaust of this incinerator, it is decided that the flame detection system be made redundant (multiple sensors), so that failure of a single sensor does not lead to an emission of toxins out the exhaust. Each sensor comes equipped with a normally-open contact (open if no flame, closed if flame detected) which we will use to activate the inputs of a logic system:



Our task, now, is to design the circuitry of the logic system to open the waste valve if and only if there is good flame proven by the sensors. First, though, we must decide what the logical behavior of this control system should be. Do we want the valve to be opened if only one out of the three sensors detects flame? Probably not, because this would defeat the purpose of having multiple sensors. If any one of the sensors were to fail in such a way as to falsely indicate the presence of flame when there was none, a logic system based on the principle of "any one out of three sensors showing flame" would give the same output that a single-sensor system would with the same failure. A far better solution would be to design the system so that the valve is commanded to open if any only if *all three sensors* detect a good flame. This way, any single, failed sensor falsely showing flame could not keep the valve in the open position; rather, it would require all three sensors to be failed in the same manner – a highly improbable scenario – for this dangerous condition to occur.

Thus, our truth table would look like this:

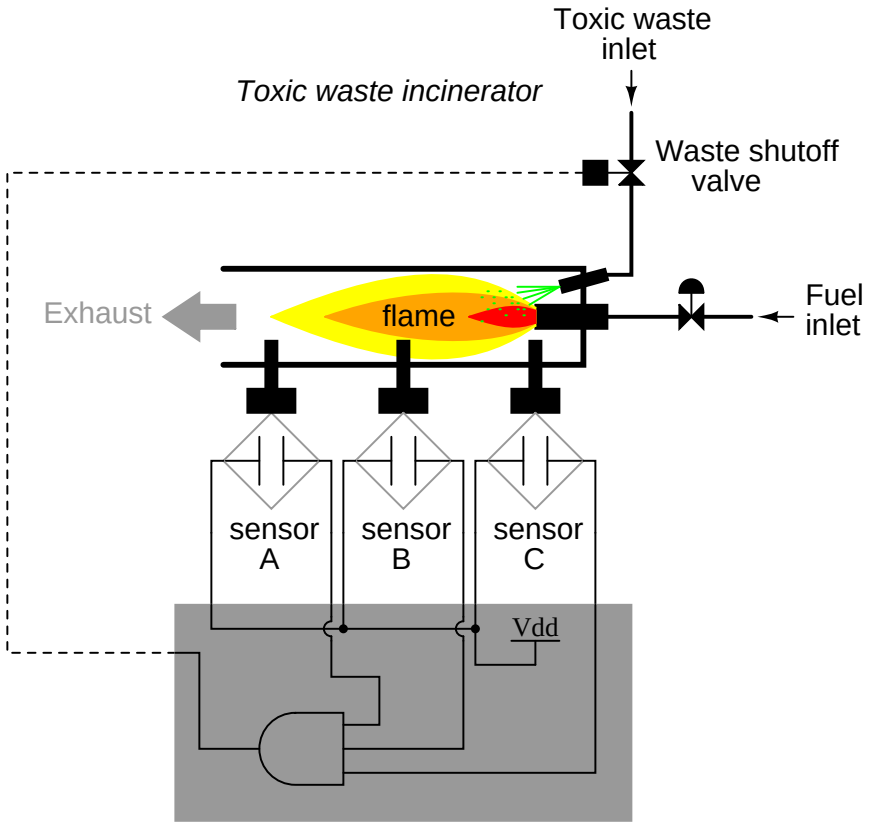
sensor inputs

A	B	C	Output
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0
0	1	1	0
1	0	0	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	0
1	1	1	1

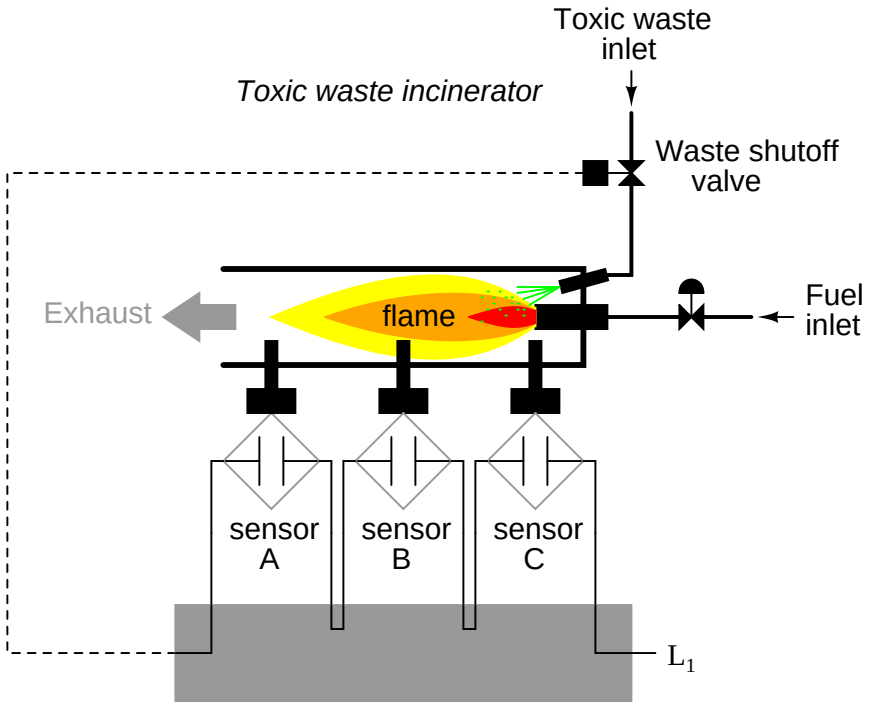
Output = 0 (close valve)

Output = 1 (open valve)

It does not require much insight to realize that this functionality could be generated with a three-input AND gate: the output of the circuit will be "high" if and only if input A *AND* input B *AND* input C are all "high:"



If using relay circuitry, we could create this AND function by wiring three relay contacts in series, or simply by wiring the three sensor contacts in series, so that the only way electrical power could be sent to open the waste valve is if all three sensors indicate flame:



While this design strategy maximizes safety, it makes the system very susceptible to sensor failures of the opposite kind. Suppose that one of the three sensors were to fail in such a way that it indicated no flame when there really was a good flame in the incinerator's combustion chamber. That single failure would shut off the waste valve unnecessarily, resulting in lost production time and wasted fuel (feeding a fire that wasn't being used to incinerate waste).

It would be nice to have a logic system that allowed for this kind of failure without shutting the system down unnecessarily, yet still provide sensor redundancy so as to maintain safety in the event that any single sensor failed "high" (showing flame at all times, whether or not there was one to detect). A strategy that would meet both needs would be a "two out of three" sensor logic, whereby the waste valve is opened if at least two out of the three sensors show good flame. The truth table for such a system would look like this:

sensor inputs

A	B	C	Output
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0
1	0	1	1
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	1

Output = 0 (close valve)

Output = 1 (open valve)

Here, it is not necessarily obvious what kind of logic circuit would satisfy the truth table. However, a simple method for designing such a circuit is found in a standard form of Boolean expression called the *Sum-Of-Products*, or *SOP*, form. As you might suspect, a Sum-Of-Products Boolean expression is literally a set of Boolean terms added (*summed*) together, each term being a multiplicative (*product*) combination of Boolean variables. An example of an SOP expression would be something like this: ABC + BC + DF, the sum of products "ABC," "BC," and "DF."

Sum-Of-Products expressions are easy to generate from truth tables. All we have to do is examine the truth table for any rows where the output is "high" (1), and write a Boolean product term that would equal a value of 1 given those input conditions. For instance, in the fourth row down in the truth table for our two-out-of-three logic system, where A=0, B=1, and C=1, the product term would be A'BC, since that term would have a value of 1 if and only if A=0, B=1, and C=1:

sensor inputs

A	B	C	Output
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0
1	0	1	1
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	1

$\overline{A}BC = 1$

Three other rows of the truth table have an output value of 1, so those rows also need

Boolean product expressions to represent them:

sensor inputs

A	B	C	Output	
0	0	0	0	
0	0	1	0	
0	1	0	0	
0	1	1	1	$\overline{A}BC = 1$
1	0	0	0	
1	0	1	1	$A\overline{B}C = 1$
1	1	0	1	$AB\overline{C} = 1$
1	1	1	1	$ABC = 1$

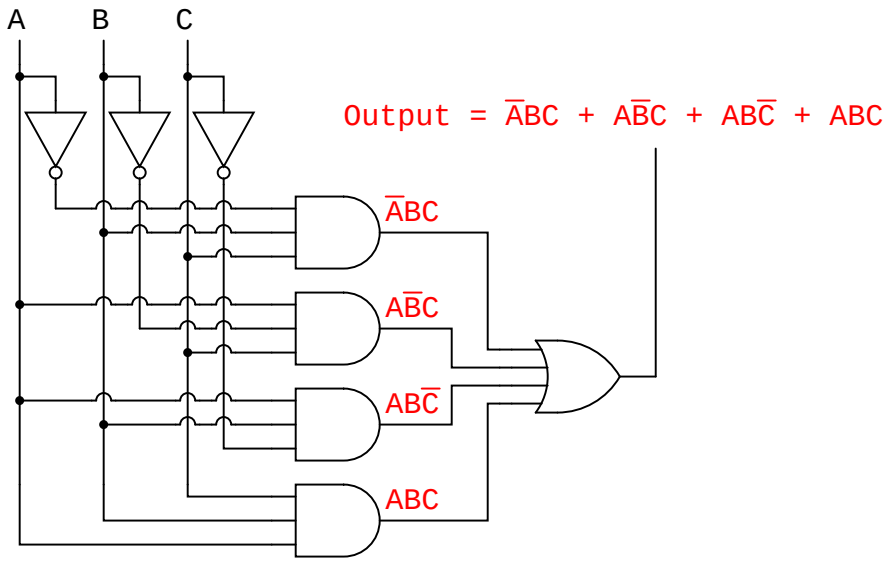
Finally, we join these four Boolean product expressions together by addition, to create a single Boolean expression describing the truth table as a whole:

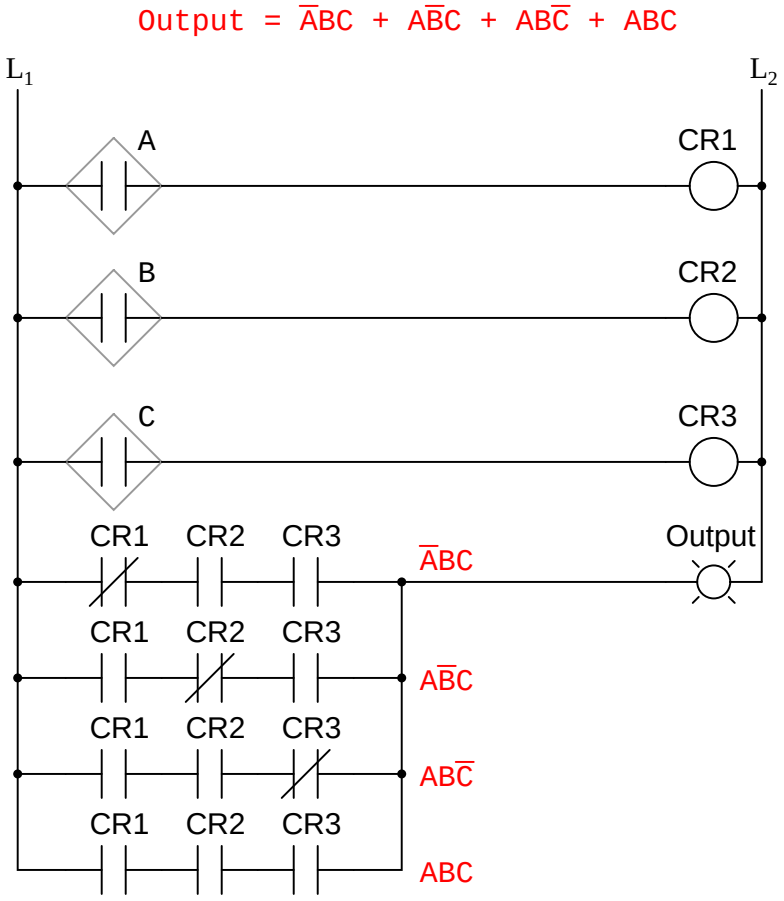
sensor inputs

A	B	C	Output	
0	0	0	0	
0	0	1	0	
0	1	0	0	
0	1	1	1	$\overline{A}BC = 1$
1	0	0	0	
1	0	1	1	$A\overline{B}C = 1$
1	1	0	1	$AB\overline{C} = 1$
1	1	1	1	$ABC = 1$

$$Output = \overline{A}BC + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C} + ABC$$

Now that we have a Boolean Sum-Of-Products expression for the truth table's function, we can easily design a logic gate or relay logic circuit based on that expression:


A
B
C
Output = $\overline{A}BC + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C} + ABC$
$\overline{A}BC$
$A\overline{B}C$
$AB\overline{C}$
ABC



Unfortunately, both of these circuits are quite complex, and could benefit from simplification. Using Boolean algebra techniques, the expression may be significantly simplified:

$\overline{A}BC + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C} + ABC$

↓ Factoring **BC** out of 1st and 4th terms

$BC(\overline{A} + A) + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C}$

↓ Applying identity $\mathbf{A + \overline{A} = 1}$

$BC(1) + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C}$

↓ Applying identity $\mathbf{1A = A}$

$BC + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C}$

↓ Factoring **B** out of 1st and 3rd terms

$B(C + A\overline{C}) + A\overline{B}C$

↓ Applying rule $\mathbf{A + \overline{A}B = A + B}$ to the $C + A\overline{C}$ term

$B(C + A) + A\overline{B}C$

↓ Distributing terms

$BC + AB + A\overline{B}C$

↓ Factoring **A** out of 2nd and 3rd terms

$BC + A(B + \overline{B}C)$

↓ Applying rule $\mathbf{A + \overline{A}B = A + B}$ to the $B + \overline{B}C$ term

$BC + A(B + C)$

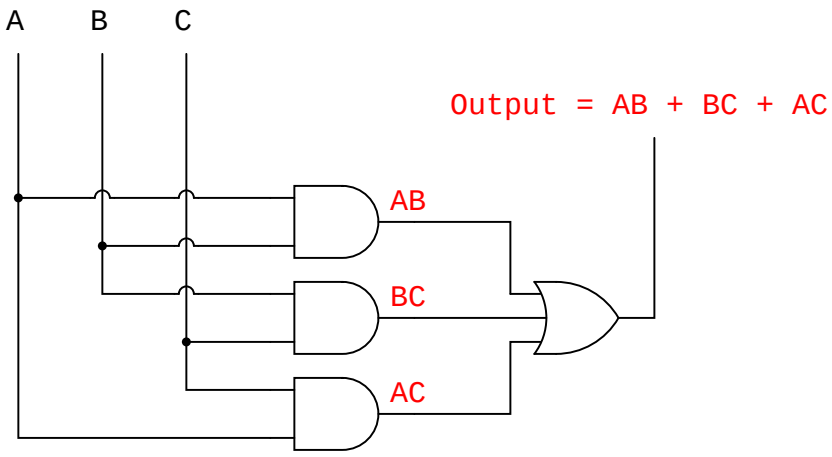
↓ Distributing terms

$BC + AB + AC$

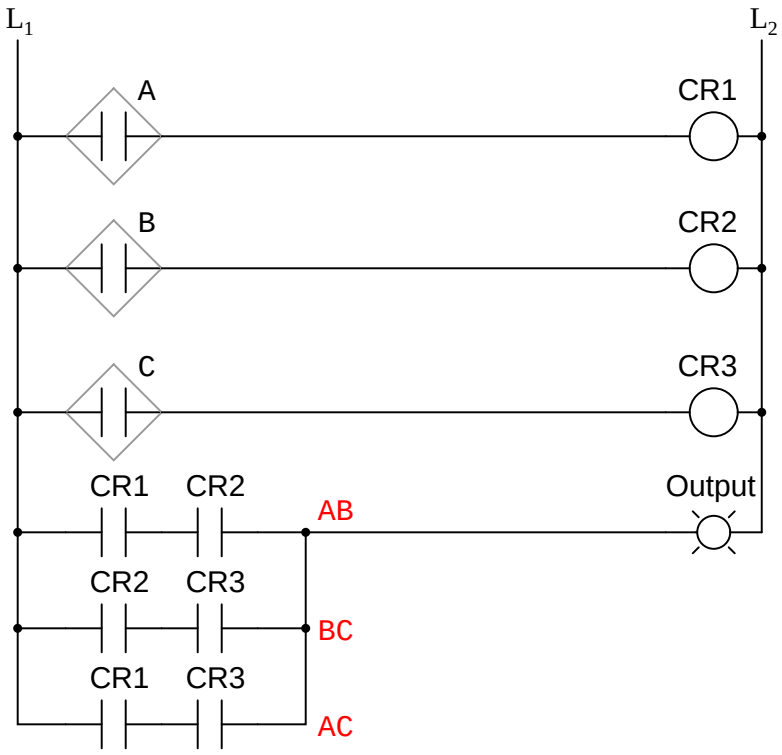
or Simplified result

$AB + BC + AC$

As a result of the simplification, we can now build much simpler logic circuits performing the same function, in either gate or relay form:



Output = AB + BC + AC

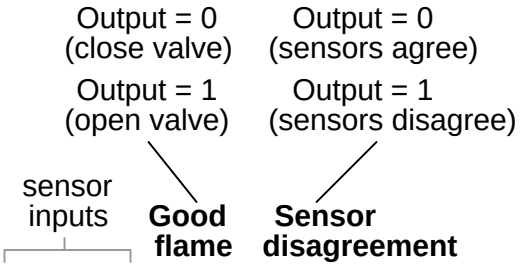


Either one of these circuits will adequately perform the task of operating the incinerator waste valve based on a flame verification from two out of the three flame sensors. At minimum, this is what we need to have a safe incinerator system. We can, however, extend the functionality of the system by adding to it logic circuitry designed to detect if any one of the sensors

does not agree with the other two.

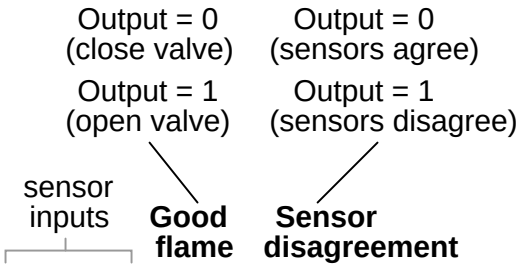
If all three sensors are operating properly, they should detect flame with equal accuracy. Thus, they should either all register ”low” (000: no flame) or all register ”high” (111: good flame). Any other output combination (001, 010, 011, 100, 101, or 110) constitutes a disagreement between sensors, and may therefore serve as an indicator of a potential sensor failure. If we added circuitry to detect any one of the six ”sensor disagreement” conditions, we could use the output of that circuitry to activate an alarm. Whoever is monitoring the incinerator would then exercise judgment in either continuing to operate with a possible failed sensor (inputs: 011, 101, or 110), or shut the incinerator down to be absolutely safe. Also, if the incinerator is shut down (no flame), and one or more of the sensors still indicates flame (001, 010, 011, 100, 101, or 110) while the other(s) indicate(s) no flame, it will be known that a definite sensor problem exists.

The first step in designing this ”sensor disagreement” detection circuit is to write a truth table describing its behavior. Since we already have a truth table describing the output of the ”good flame” logic circuit, we can simply add another output column to the table to represent the second circuit, and make a table representing the entire logic system:



A	B	C	Output	Output
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0	1
0	1	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	1
1	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	1	1
1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	0

While it is possible to generate a Sum-Of-Products expression for this new truth table column, it would require six terms, of three variables each! Such a Boolean expression would require many steps to simplify, with a large potential for making algebraic errors:

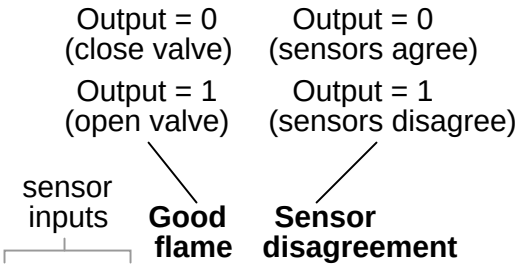


A	B	C	Output	Output	
0	0	0	0	0	
0	0	1	0	1	$\bar{A}\bar{B}C$
0	1	0	0	1	$\bar{A}B\bar{C}$
0	1	1	1	1	$\bar{A}BC$
1	0	0	0	1	$A\bar{B}\bar{C}$
1	0	1	1	1	$A\bar{B}C$
1	1	0	1	1	$AB\bar{C}$
1	1	1	1	0	

$$\text{Output} = \bar{A}\bar{B}C + \bar{A}B\bar{C} + \bar{A}BC + A\bar{B}\bar{C} + A\bar{B}C + AB\bar{C}$$

An alternative to generating a Sum-Of-Products expression to account for all the ”high” (1) output conditions in the truth table is to generate a *Product-Of-Sums*, or *POS*, expression, to account for all the ”low” (0) output conditions instead. Being that there are much fewer instances of a ”low” output in the last truth table column, the resulting Product-Of-Sums expression should contain fewer terms. As its name suggests, a Product-Of-Sums expression is a set of added terms (*sums*), which are multiplied (*product*) together. An example of a POS expression would be (A + B)(C + D), the product of the sums ”A + B” and ”C + D”.

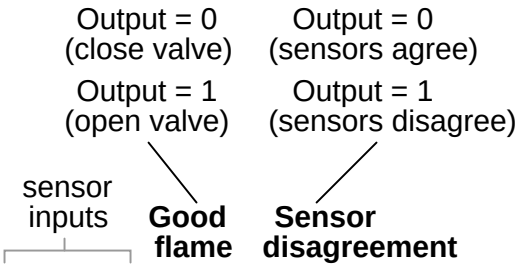
To begin, we identify which rows in the last truth table column have ”low” (0) outputs, and write a Boolean sum term that would equal 0 for that row’s input conditions. For instance, in the first row of the truth table, where A=0, B=0, and C=0, the sum term would be (A + B + C), since that term would have a value of 0 if and only if A=0, B=0, and C=0:



A	B	C	Output	Output
0	0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0	1
0	1	0	0	1
0	1	1	1	1
1	0	0	0	1
1	0	1	1	1
1	1	0	1	1
1	1	1	1	0

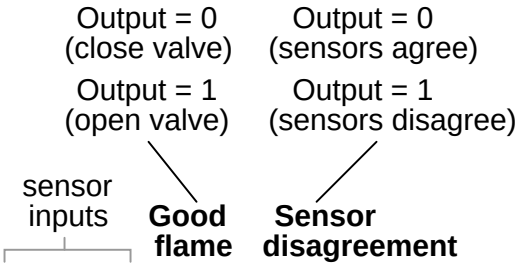
(A + B + C)

Only one other row in the last truth table column has a ”low” (0) output, so all we need is one more sum term to complete our Product-Of-Sums expression. This last sum term represents a 0 output for an input condition of A=1, B=1 and C=1. Therefore, the term must be written as (A’ + B’+ C’), because only the sum of the *complemented* input variables would equal 0 for that condition only:



A	B	C	Output	Output	
0	0	0	0	0	(A + B + C)
0	0	1	0	1	
0	1	0	0	1	
0	1	1	1	1	
1	0	0	0	1	
1	0	1	1	1	
1	1	0	1	1	
1	1	1	1	0	$(\overline{A} + \overline{B} + \overline{C})$

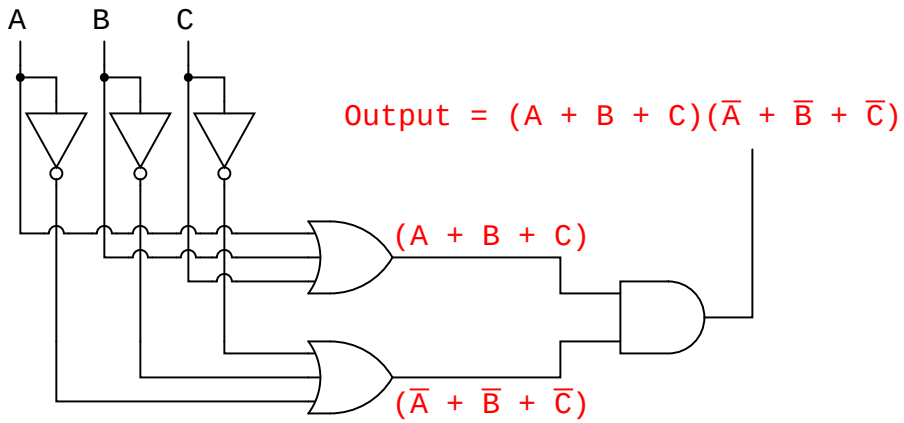
The completed Product-Of-Sums expression, of course, is the multiplicative combination of these two sum terms:



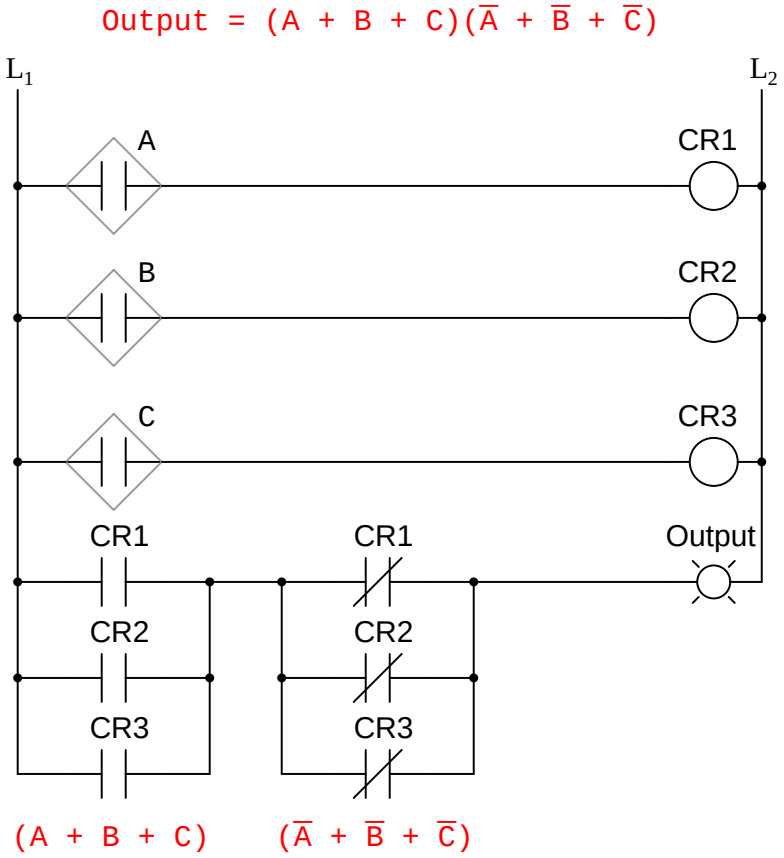
A	B	C	Output	Output	
0	0	0	0	0	(A + B + C)
0	0	1	0	1	
0	1	0	0	1	
0	1	1	1	1	
1	0	0	0	1	
1	0	1	1	1	
1	1	0	1	1	
1	1	1	1	0	$(\overline{A} + \overline{B} + \overline{C})$

$$\text{Output} = (A + B + C)(\overline{A} + \overline{B} + \overline{C})$$

Whereas a Sum-Of-Products expression could be implemented in the form of a set of AND gates with their outputs connecting to a single OR gate, a Product-Of-Sums expression can be implemented as a set of OR gates feeding into a single AND gate:

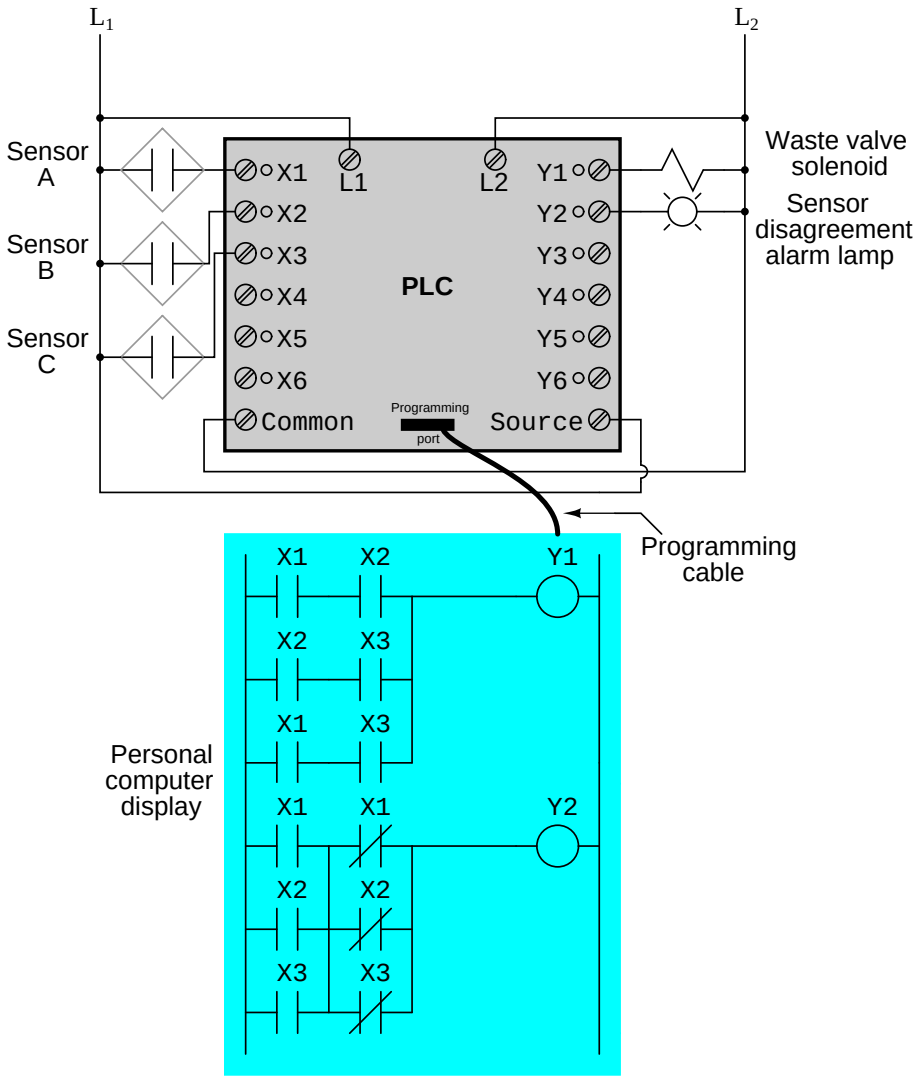


Correspondingly, whereas a Sum-Of-Products expression could be implemented as a parallel collection of series-connected relay contacts, a Product-Of-Sums expression can be implemented as a series collection of parallel-connected relay contacts:



The previous two circuits represent different versions of the ”sensor disagreement” logic circuit only, not the ”good flame” detection circuit(s). The entire logic system would be the combination of both ”good flame” and ”sensor disagreement” circuits, shown on the same diagram.

Implemented in a Programmable Logic Controller (PLC), the entire logic system might resemble something like this:



As you can see, both the Sum-Of-Products and Products-Of-Sums standard Boolean forms are powerful tools when applied to truth tables. They allow us to derive a Boolean expression – and ultimately, an actual logic circuit – from nothing but a truth table, which is a written specification for what we want a logic circuit to do. To be able to go from a written specification to an actual circuit using simple, deterministic procedures means that it is possible to automate the design process for a digital circuit. In other words, a computer could be programmed to design a custom logic circuit from a truth table specification! The steps to take from a truth table to the final circuit are so unambiguous and direct that it requires little, if any, creativity or other original thought to execute them.

- **REVIEW:**

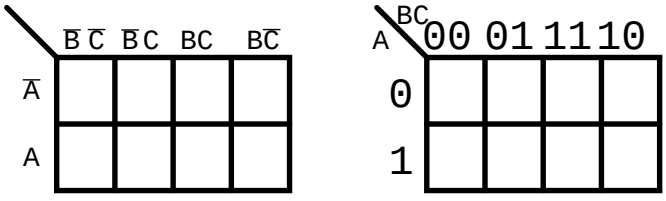
- *Sum-Of-Products*, or *SOP*, Boolean expressions may be generated from truth tables quite easily, by determining which rows of the table have an output of 1, writing one product term for each row, and finally summing all the product terms. This creates a Boolean expression representing the truth table as a whole.
- Sum-Of-Products expressions lend themselves well to implementation as a set of AND gates (products) feeding into a single OR gate (sum).
- *Product-Of-Sums*, or *POS*, Boolean expressions may also be generated from truth tables quite easily, by determining which rows of the table have an output of 0, writing one sum term for each row, and finally multiplying all the sum terms. This creates a Boolean expression representing the truth table as a whole.
- Product-Of-Sums expressions lend themselves well to implementation as a set of OR gates (sums) feeding into a single AND gate (product).

Chapter 8

KARNAUGH MAPPING

Contents

Original author: Dennis Crunkilton



8.1 Introduction

Why learn about *Karnaugh* maps? The Karnaugh map, like Boolean algebra, is a simplification tool applicable to digital logic. See the "Toxic waste incinerator" in the Boolean algebra chapter for an example of Boolean simplification of digital logic. The Karnaugh Map will simplify logic faster and more easily in most cases.

Boolean simplification is actually faster than the Karnaugh map for a task involving two or fewer Boolean variables. It is still quite usable at three variables, but a bit slower. At four input variables, Boolean algebra becomes tedious. Karnaugh maps are both faster and easier. Karnaugh maps work well for up to six input variables, are usable for up to eight variables. For more than six to eight variables, simplification should be by *CAD* (computer automated design).

Recommended logic simplification vs number of inputs			
Variables	Boolean algebra	Karnaugh map	computer automated
1-2	X		?
3	X	X	?
4	?	X	?
5-6		X	X
7-8		?	X
>8			X

In theory any of the three methods will work. However, as a practical matter, the above guidelines work well. We would not normally resort to computer automation to simplify a three input logic block. We could sooner solve the problem with pencil and paper. However, if we had seven of these problems to solve, say for a *BCD* (Binary Coded Decimal) to *seven segment decoder*, we might want to automate the process. A BCD to seven segment decoder generates the logic signals to drive a seven segment LED (light emitting diode) display.

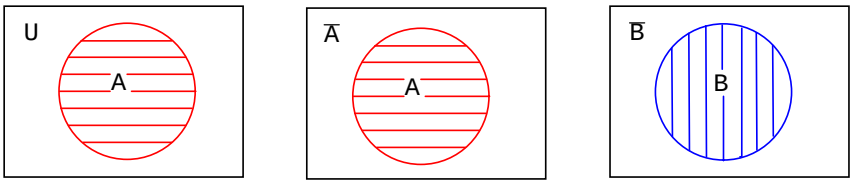
Examples of computer automated design languages for simplification of logic are PALASM, ABEL, CUPL, Verilog, and VHDL. These programs accept a *hardware descriptor language* input file which is based on Boolean equations and produce an output file describing a *reduced* (or simplified) Boolean solution. We will not require such tools in this chapter. Let's move on to Venn diagrams as an introduction to Karnaugh maps.

8.2 Venn diagrams and sets

Mathematicians use *Venn diagrams* to show the logical relationships of *sets* (collections of objects) to one another. Perhaps you have already seen Venn diagrams in your algebra or other mathematics studies. If you have, you may remember overlapping circles and the *union* and *intersection* of sets. We will review the overlapping circles of the Venn diagram. We will adopt the terms OR and AND instead of union and intersection since that is the terminology used in digital electronics.

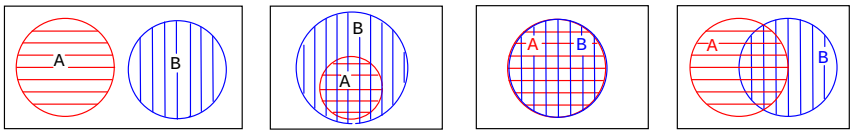
The Venn diagram bridges the Boolean algebra from a previous chapter to the Karnaugh Map. We will relate what you already know about Boolean algebra to Venn diagrams, then transition to Karnaugh maps.

A *set* is a collection of objects out of a universe as shown below. The *members* of the set are the objects contained within the set. The members of the set usually have something in common; though, this is not a requirement. Out of the universe of real numbers, for example, the set of all positive integers {1,2,3...} is a set. The set {3,4,5} is an example of a smaller set, or *subset* of the set of all positive integers. Another example is the set of all males out of the universe of college students. Can you think of some more examples of sets?

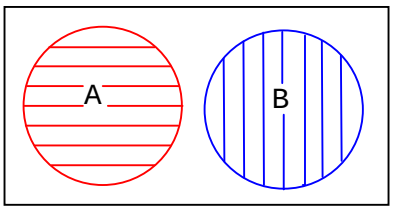


Above left, we have a Venn diagram showing the set A in the circle within the universe U, the rectangular area. If everything inside the circle is A, then anything outside of the circle is not A. Thus, above center, we label the rectangular area outside of the circle A as A-not instead of U. We show B and B-not in a similar manner.

What happens if both A and B are contained within the same universe? We show four possibilities.



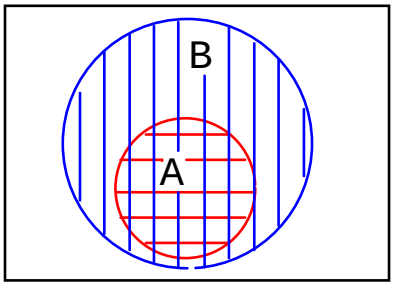
Let's take a closer look at each of the the four possibilities as shown above.



The first example shows that set A and set B have nothing in common according to the Venn diagram. There is no overlap between the A and B circular hatched regions. For example, suppose that sets A and B contain the following members:

set A = {1,2,3,4} set B = {5,6,7,8}

None of the members of set A are contained within set B, nor are any of the members of B contained within A. Thus, there is no overlap of the circles.

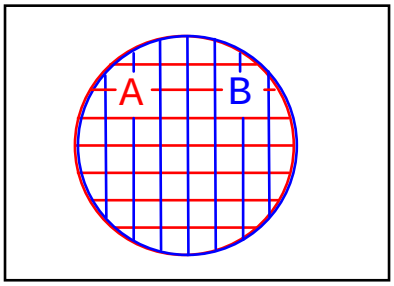


In the second example in the above Venn diagram, Set A is totally contained within set B How can we explain this situation? Suppose that sets A and B contain the following members:

set A = {1,2}
set B = {1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8}

All members of set A are also members of set B. Therefore, set A is a subset of Set B. Since all members of set A are members of set B, set A is drawn fully within the boundary of set B.

There is a fifth case, not shown, with the four examples. Hint: it is similar to the last (fourth) example. Draw a Venn diagram for this fifth case.



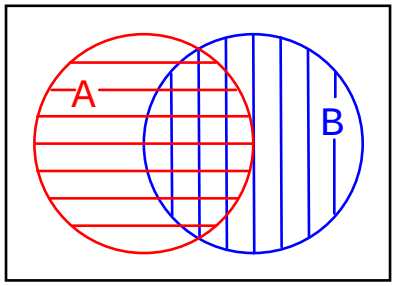
The third example above shows perfect overlap between set A and set B. It looks like both sets contain the same identical members. Suppose that sets A and B contain the following:

set A = {1,2,3,4} set B = {1,2,3,4}

Therefore,

Set A = Set B

Sets And B are identically equal because they both have the same identical members. The A and B regions within the corresponding Venn diagram above overlap completely. If there is any doubt about what the above patterns represent, refer to any figure above or below to be sure of what the circular regions looked like before they were overlapped.



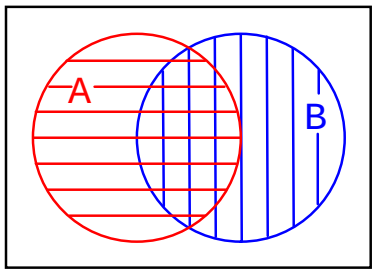
The fourth example above shows that there is something in common between set A and set B in the overlapping region. For example, we arbitrarily select the following sets to illustrate our point:

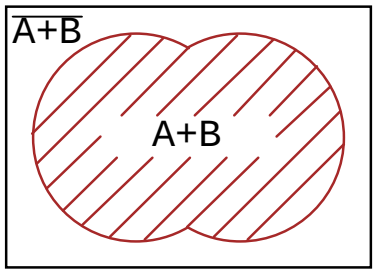
set A = {1,2,3,4} set B = {3,4,5,6}

Set A and Set B both have the elements 3 and 4 in common These elements are the reason for the overlap in the center common to A and B. We need to take a closer look at this situation

8.3 Boolean Relationships on Venn Diagrams

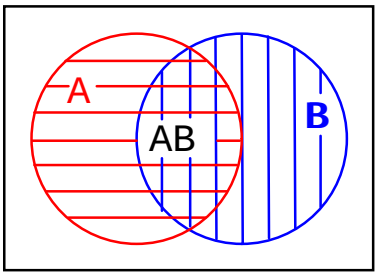
The fourth example has **A** partially overlapping **B**. Though, we will first look at the whole of all hatched area below, then later only the overlapping region. Let's assign some Boolean expressions to the regions above as shown below. Below left there is a red horizontal hatched area for **A**. There is a blue vertical hatched area for **B**.

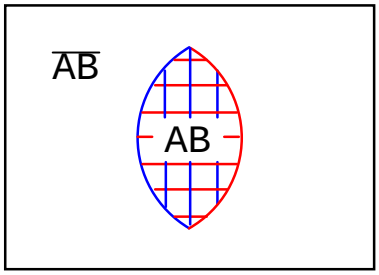




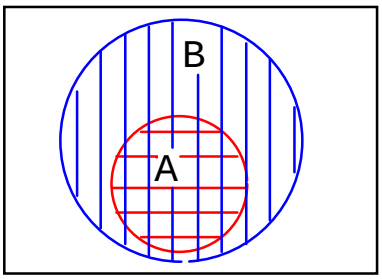
If we look at the whole area of both, regardless of the hatch style, the sum total of all hatched areas, we get the illustration above right which corresponds to the inclusive **OR** function of A, B. The Boolean expression is **A+B**. This is shown by the 45^o hatched area. Anything outside of the hatched area corresponds to **(A+B)-not** as shown above. Let's move on to next part of the fourth example

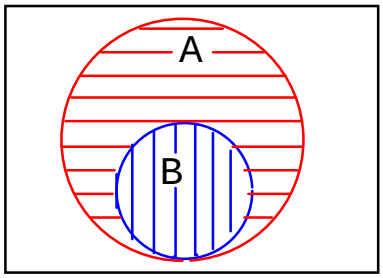
The other way of looking at a Venn diagram with overlapping circles is to look at just the part common to both **A** and **B**, the double hatched area below left. The Boolean expression for this common area corresponding to the **AND** function is **AB** as shown below right. Note that everything outside of double hatched **AB** is **AB-not**.





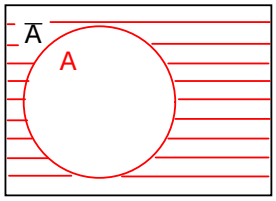
Note that some of the members of **A**, above, are members of **(AB)'**. Some of the members of **B** are members of **(AB)'**. But, none of the members of **(AB)'** are within the doubly hatched area **AB**.

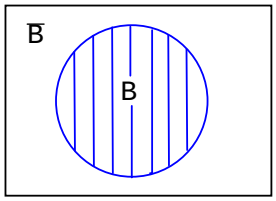


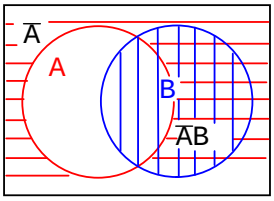


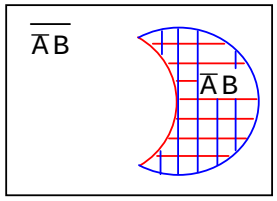
We have repeated the second example above left. Your fifth example, which you previously sketched, is provided above right for comparison. Later we will find the occasional element, or group of elements, totally contained within another group in a Karnaugh map.

Next, we show the development of a Boolean expression involving a complemented variable below.









Example: (above)

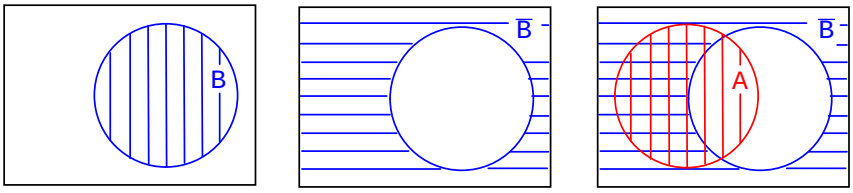
Show a Venn diagram for **A'B** (A-not AND B).

Solution:

Starting above top left we have red horizontal shaded **A'** (A-not), then, top right, **B**. Next, lower left, we form the AND function **A'B** by overlapping the two previous regions. Most people would use this as the answer to the example posed. However, only the double hatched **A'B** is shown far right for clarity. The expression **A'B** is the region where both **A'** and **B** overlap. The clear region outside of **A'B** is **(A'B)'**, which was not part of the posed example.

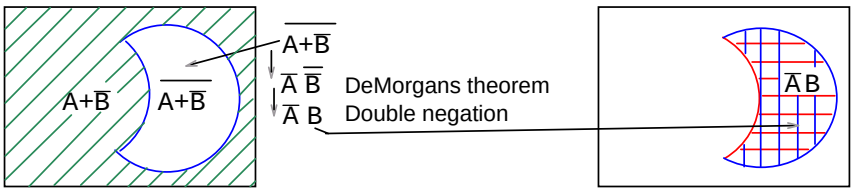
Let's try something similar with the Boolean **OR** function.

Example:
Find **B'+A**



Solution:

Above right we start out with **B** which is complemented to **B'**. Finally we overlay **A** on top of **B'**. Since we are interested in forming the **OR** function, we will be looking for all hatched area regardless of hatch style. Thus, **A+B'** is all hatched area above right. It is shown as a single hatch region below left for clarity.



Example:

Find **(A+B')'**

Solution:

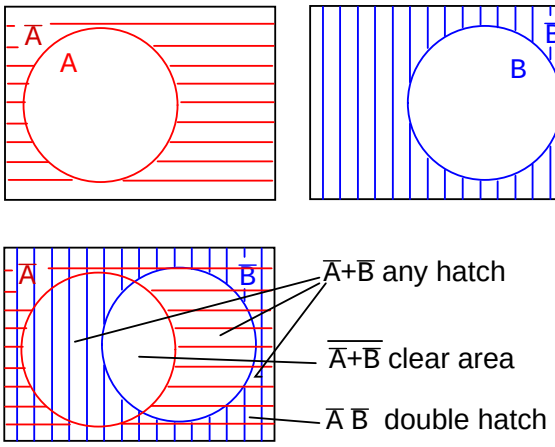
The green 45^o **A+B'** hatched area was the result of the previous example. Moving on to a to,**(A+B')'** ,the present example, above left, let us find the complement of **A+B'**, which is the

white clear area above left corresponding to **(A+B')'**. Note that we have repeated, at right, the **AB'** double hatched result from a previous example for comparison to our result. The regions corresponding to **(A+B')'** and **AB'** above left and right respectively are identical. This can be proven with DeMorgan's theorem and double negation.

This brings up a point. Venn diagrams don't actually prove anything. Boolean algebra is needed for formal proofs. However, Venn diagrams can be used for verification and visualization. We have verified and visualized DeMorgan's theorem with a Venn diagram.

Example:

What does the Boolean expression **A'+B'** look like on a Venn Diagram?



Solution: above figure

Start out with red horizontal hatched **A'** and blue vertical hatched **B'** above. Superimpose the diagrams as shown. We can still see the **A'** red horizontal hatch superimposed on the other hatch. It also fills in what used to be part of the **B** (B-true) circle, but only that part of the **B** open circle not common to the **A** open circle. If we only look at the **B'** blue vertical hatch, it fills that part of the open **A** circle not common to **B**. Any region with any hatch at all, regardless of type, corresponds to **A'+B'**. That is, everything but the open white space in the center.

Example:

What does the Boolean expression **(A'+B')'** look like on a Venn Diagram?

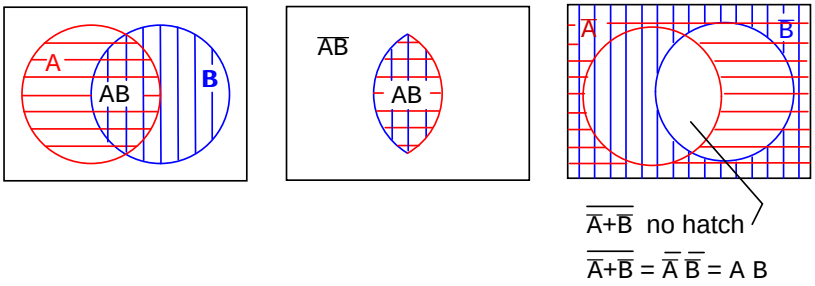
Solution: above figure, lower left

Looking at the white open space in the center, it is everything **NOT** in the previous solution of **A'+B'**, which is **(A'+B')'**.

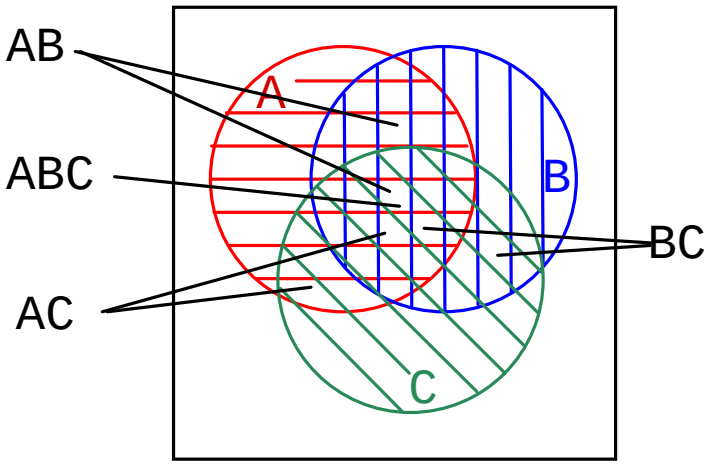
Example:

Show that **(A'+B') = AB**

Solution: below figure, lower left



We previously showed on the above right diagram that the white open region is **(A'+B')'**. On an earlier example we showed a doubly hatched region at the intersection (overlay) of **AB**. This is the left and middle figures repeated here. Comparing the two Venn diagrams, we see that this open region , **(A'+B')'**, is the same as the doubly hatched region **AB** (A AND B). We can also prove that **(A'+B')'=AB** by DeMorgan's theorem and double negation as shown above.



Three variable Venn diagram

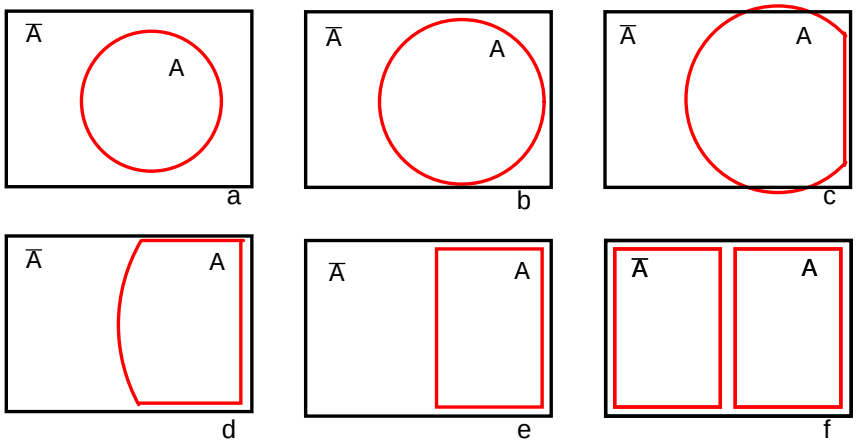
We show a three variable Venn diagram above with regions **A** (red horizontal), **B** (blue vertical), and, **C** (green 45^o). In the very center note that all three regions overlap representing Boolean expression **ABC**. There is also a larger petal shaped region where **A** and **B** overlap corresponding to Boolean expression **AB**. In a similar manner **A** and **C** overlap producing Boolean expression **AC**. And **B** and **C** overlap producing Boolean expression **BC**.

Looking at the size of regions described by AND expressions above, we see that region size varies with the number of variables in the associated AND expression.

- **A**, 1-variable is a large circular region.
- **AB**, 2-variable is a smaller petal shaped region.
- **ABC**, 3-variable is the smallest region.
- The more variables in the AND term, the smaller the region.

8.4 Making a Venn diagram look like a Karnaugh map

Starting with circle **A** in a rectangular **A' universe** in figure (a) below, we morph a Venn diagram into almost a Karnaugh map.



We expand circle **A** at (b) and (c), conform to the rectangular **A' universe** at (d), and change **A** to a rectangle at (e). Anything left outside of **A** is **A'** . We assign a rectangle to **A'** at (f). Also, we do not use shading in Karnaugh maps. What we have so far resembles a 1-variable Karnaugh map, but is of little utility. We need multiple variables.

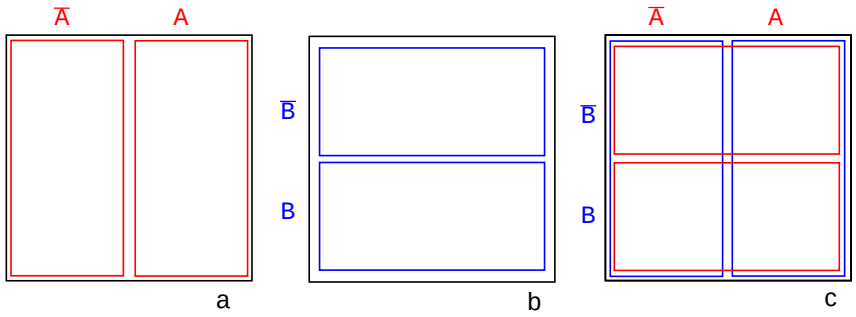
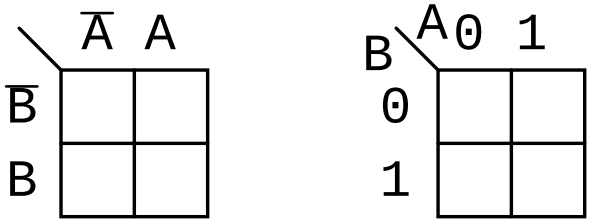


Figure (a) above is the same as the previous Venn diagram showing **A** and **A'** above except that the labels **A** and **A'** are above the diagram instead of inside the respective regions. Imagine

that we have go through a process similar to figures (a-f) to get a "square Venn diagram" for **B** and **B'** as we show in middle figure (b). We will now superimpose the diagrams in Figures (a) and (b) to get the result at (c), just like we have been doing for Venn diagrams. The reason we do this is so that we may observe that which may be common to two overlapping regions−− say where **A** overlaps **B**. The lower right cell in figure (c) corresponds to **AB** where **A** overlaps **B**.

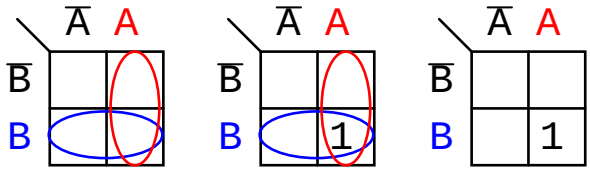


We don't waste time drawing a Karnaugh map like (c) above, sketching a simplified version as above left instead. The column of two cells under **A'** is understood to be associated with **A'**, and the heading **A** is associated with the column of cells under it. The row headed by **B'** is associated with the cells to the right of it. In a similar manner **B** is associated with the cells to the right of it. For the sake of simplicity, we do not delineate the various regions as clearly as with Venn diagrams.

The Karnaugh map above right is an alternate form used in most texts. The names of the variables are listed next to the diagonal line. The **A** above the diagonal indicates that the variable **A** (and **A'**) is assigned to the columns. The **0** is a substitute for **A'**, and the **1** substitutes for **A**. The **B** below the diagonal is associated with the rows: **0** for **B'**, and **1** for **B**

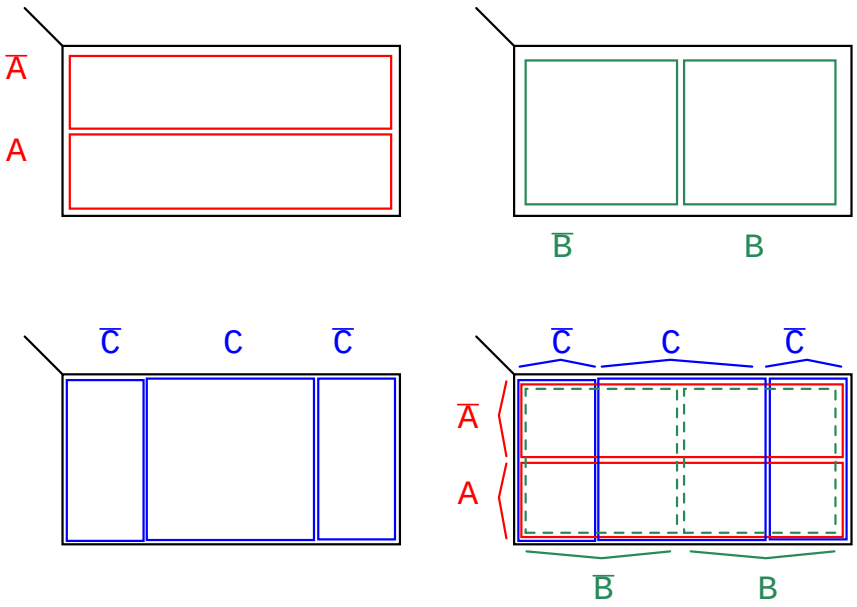
Example:

Mark the cell corresponding to the Boolean expression **AB** in the Karnaugh map above with a **1**



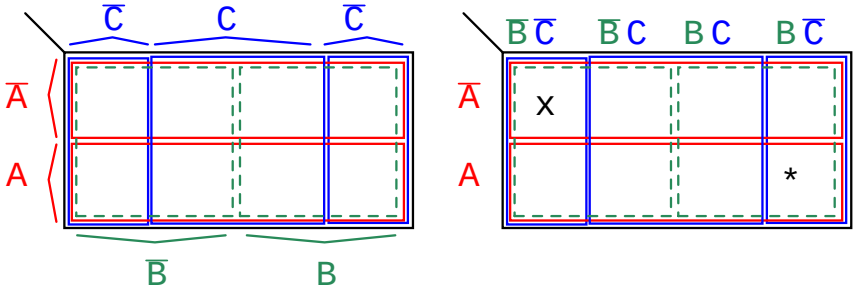
Solution:

Shade or circle the region corresponding to **A**. Then, shade or enclose the region corresponding to **B**. The overlap of the two regions is **AB**. Place a **1** in this cell. We do not necessarily enclose the **A** and **B** regions as at above left.



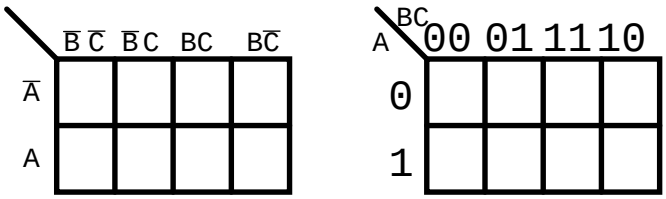
We develop a 3-variable Karnaugh map above, starting with Venn diagram like regions. The universe (inside the black rectangle) is split into two narrow narrow rectangular regions for **A'** and **A**. The variables **B'** and **B** divide the universe into two square regions. **C** occupies a square region in the middle of the rectangle, with **C'** split into two vertical rectangles on each side of the **C** square.

In the final figure, we superimpose all three variables, attempting to clearly label the various regions. The regions are less obvious without color printing, more obvious when compared to the other three figures. This 3-variable *K-Map* (Karnaugh map) has $2^3 = 8$ *cells*, the small squares within the map. Each individual cell is uniquely identified by the three Boolean Variables (**A, B, C**). For example, **ABC'** uniquely selects the lower right most cell(*), **A'B'C'** selects the upper left most cell (x).



We don't normally label the Karnaugh map as shown above left. Though this figure clearly shows map coverage by single boolean variables of a 4-cell region. Karnaugh maps are labeled like the illustration at right. Each cell is still uniquely identified by a 3-variable *product term*,

a Boolean **AND** expression. Take, for example, **ABC'** following the **A** row across to the right and the **BC'** column down, both intersecting at the lower right cell **ABC'**. See (*) above figure.



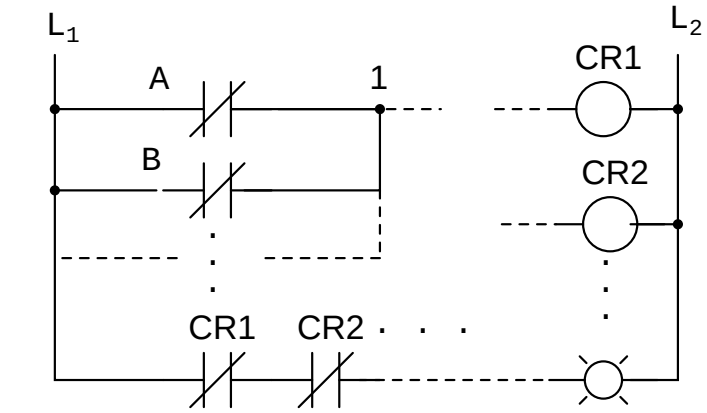
The above two different forms of a 3-variable Karnaugh map are equivalent, and is the final form that it takes. The version at right is a bit easier to use, since we do not have to write down so many boolean alphabetic headers and complement bars, just **1**s and **0**s Use the form of map on the right and look for the the one at left in some texts. The column headers on the left **B'C', B'C, BC, BC'** are equivalent to **00, 01, 11, 10** on the right. The row headers **A, A'** are equivalent to **0, 1** on the right map.

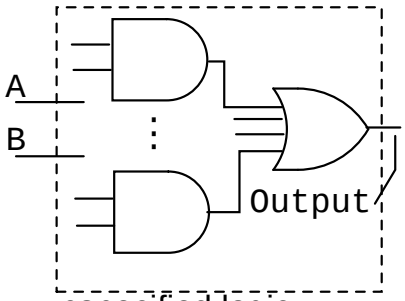
8.5 Karnaugh maps, truth tables, and Boolean expressions

Maurice Karnaugh, a telecommunications engineer, developed the Karnaugh map at Bell Labs in 1953 while designing digital logic based telephone switching circuits.

Now that we have developed the Karnaugh map with the aid of Venn diagrams, let's put it to use. Karnaugh maps *reduce* logic functions more quickly and easily compared to Boolean algebra. By reduce we mean simplify, reducing the number of gates and inputs. We like to simplify logic to a *lowest cost* form to save costs by elimination of components. We define lowest cost as being the lowest number of gates with the lowest number of inputs per gate.

Given a choice, most students do logic simplification with Karnaugh maps rather than Boolean algebra once they learn this tool.





unspecified logic

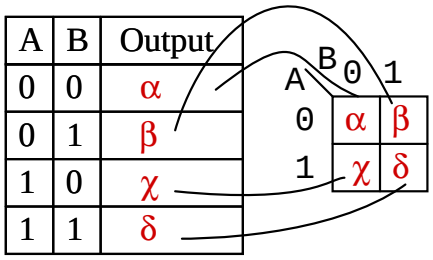
A	B	Output
0	0	α
0	1	β
1	0	χ
1	1	δ

A \ B	0	1
0	α	β
1	χ	δ

$$Output = \overline{ABC} + \overline{ABC} + \ldots \overline{ABC}$$

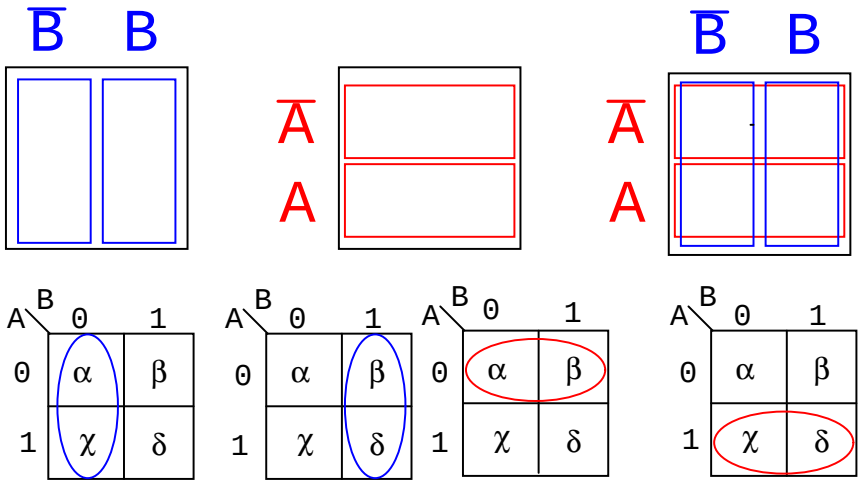
We show five individual items above, which are just different ways of representing the same thing: an arbitrary 2-input digital logic function. First is relay ladder logic, then logic gates, a truth table, a Karnaugh map, and a Boolean equation. The point is that any of these are equivalent. Two inputs **A** and **B** can take on values of either **0** or **1**, high or low, open or closed, True or False, as the case may be. There are $2^2 = 4$ combinations of inputs producing an output. This is applicable to all five examples.

These four outputs may be observed on a lamp in the relay ladder logic, on a logic probe on the gate diagram. These outputs may be recorded in the truth table, or in the Karnaugh map. Look at the Karnaugh map as being a rearranged truth table. The Output of the Boolean equation may be computed by the laws of Boolean algebra and transfered to the truth table or Karnaugh map. Which of the five equivalent logic descriptions should we use? The one which is most useful for the task to be accomplished.



The outputs of a truth table correspond on a one-to-one basis to Karnaugh map entries. Starting at the top of the truth table, the A=0, B=0 inputs produce an output α. Note that this same output α is found in the Karnaugh map at the A=0, B=0 cell address, upper left corner of K-map where the A=0 row and B=0 column intersect. The other truth table outputs β, χ, δ from inputs AB=01, 10, 11 are found at corresponding K-map locations.

Below, we show the adjacent 2-cell regions in the 2-variable K-map with the aid of previous rectangular Venn diagram like Boolean regions.

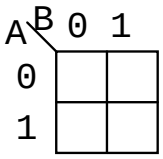


Cells α and χ are adjacent in the K-map as ellipses in the left most K-map below. Referring to the previous truth table, this is not the case. There is another truth table entry (β) between them. Which brings us to the whole point of the organizing the K-map into a square array, cells with any Boolean variables in common need to be close to one another so as to present a pattern that jumps out at us. For cells α and χ they have the Boolean variable **B'** in common. We know this because **B=0** (same as **B'**) for the column above cells α and χ. Compare this to the square Venn diagram above the K-map.

A similar line of reasoning shows that β and δ have Boolean **B** (B=1) in common. Then, α and β have Boolean **A'** (A=0) in common. Finally, χ and δ have Boolean **A** (A=1) in common. Compare the last two maps to the middle square Venn diagram.

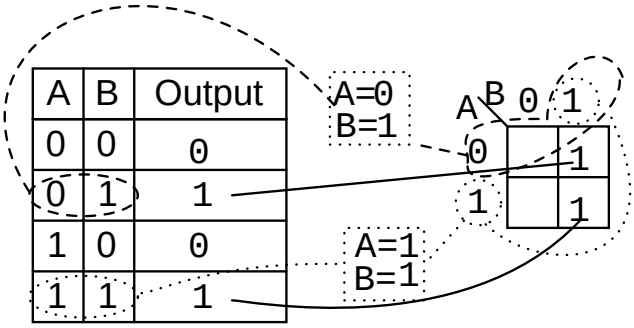
To summarize, we are looking for commonality of Boolean variables among cells. The Karnaugh map is organized so that we may see that commonality. Let's try some examples.

A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	0
1	1	1



Example:

Transfer the contents of the truth table to the Karnaugh map above.



Solution:

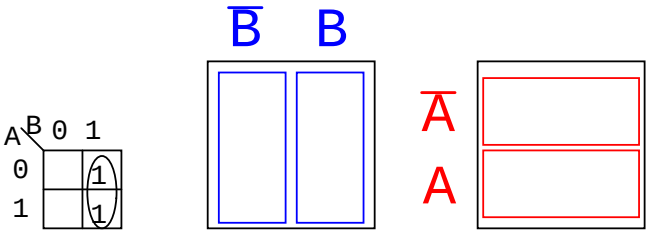
The truth table contains two **1**s. the K- map must have both of them. locate the first **1** in the 2nd row of the truth table above.

- note the truth table AB address
- locate the cell in the K-map having the same address
- place a **1** in that cell

Repeat the process for the **1** in the last line of the truth table.

Example:

For the Karnaugh map in the above problem, write the Boolean expression. Solution is below.



Solution:

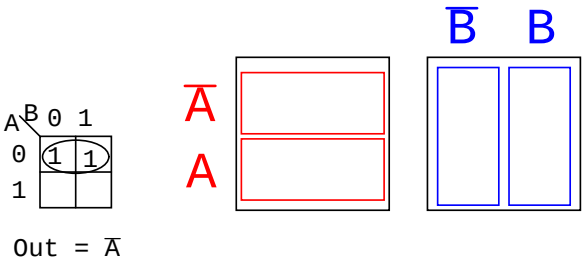
Look for adjacent cells, that is, above or to the side of a cell. Diagonal cells are not adjacent. Adjacent cells will have one or more Boolean variables in common.

- Group (circle) the two **1**s in the column
- Find the variable(s) top and/or side which are the same for the group, Write this as the Boolean result. It is **B** in our case.
- Ignore variable(s) which are not the same for a cell group. In our case A varies, is both 1 and 0, ignore Boolean A.
- Ignore any variable not associated with cells containing 1s. **B'** has no ones under it. Ignore B'
- Result **Out = B**

This might be easier to see by comparing to the Venn diagrams to the right, specifically the **B** column.

Example:

Write the Boolean expression for the Karnaugh map below.



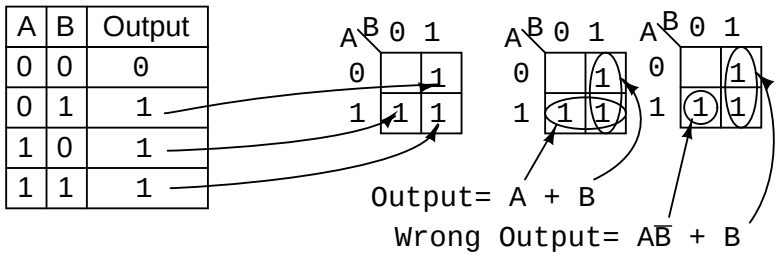
Solution: (above)

- Group (circle) the two **1's** in the row

- Find the variable(s) which are the same for the group, **Out = A'**

Example:

For the Truth table below, transfer the outputs to the Karnaugh, then write the Boolean expression for the result.



Solution:

Transfer the **1**s from the locations in the Truth table to the corresponding locations in the K-map.

- Group (circle) the two 1's in the column under **B=1**
- Group (circle) the two 1's in the row right of **A=1**
- Write product term for first group = **B**
- Write product term for second group = **A**
- Write Sum-Of-Products of above two terms **Output = A+B**

The solution of the K-map in the middle is the simplest or lowest cost solution. A less desirable solution is at far right. After grouping the two **1**s, we make the mistake of forming a group of 1-cell. The reason that this is not desirable is that:

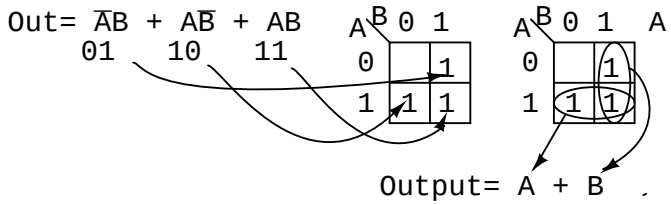
- The single cell has a product term of **AB'**
- The corresponding solution is **Output = AB' + B**
- This is not the simplest solution

The way to pick up this single **1** is to form a group of two with the **1** to the right of it as shown in the lower line of the middle K-map, even though this **1** has already been included in the column group (**B**). We are allowed to re-use cells in order to form larger groups. In fact, it is desirable because it leads to a simpler result.

We need to point out that either of the above solutions, Output or Wrong Output, are logically correct. Both circuits yield the same output. It is a matter of the former circuit being the lowest cost solution.

Example:

Fill in the Karnaugh map for the Boolean expression below, then write the Boolean expression for the result.



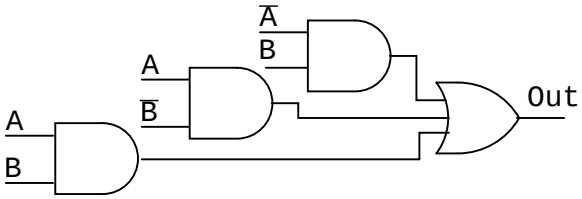
Solution: (above)

The Boolean expression has three product terms. There will be a **1** entered for each product term. Though, in general, the number of **1**s per product term varies with the number of variables in the product term compared to the size of the K-map. The product term is the address of the cell where the **1** is entered. The first product term, **A'B**, corresponds to the **01** cell in the map. A **1** is entered in this cell. The other two P-terms are entered for a total of three **1s**

Next, proceed with grouping and extracting the simplified result as in the previous truth table problem.

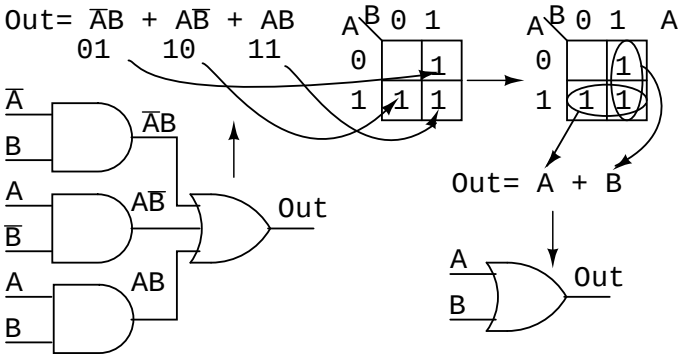
Example:

Simplify the logic diagram below.



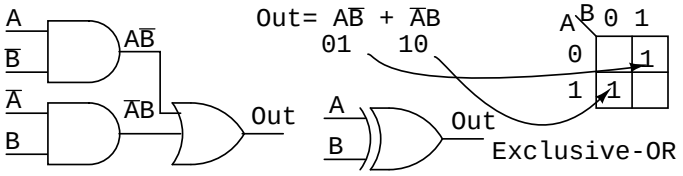
Solution: (Figure below)

- Write the Boolean expression for the original logic diagram as shown below
- Transfer the product terms to the Karnaugh map
- Form groups of cells as in previous examples
- Write Boolean expression for groups as in previous examples
- Draw simplified logic diagram



Example:

Simplify the logic diagram below.



Solution:

- Write the Boolean expression for the original logic diagram shown above
- Transfer the product terms to the Karnaugh map.
- It is not possible to form groups.
- No simplification is possible; leave it as it is.

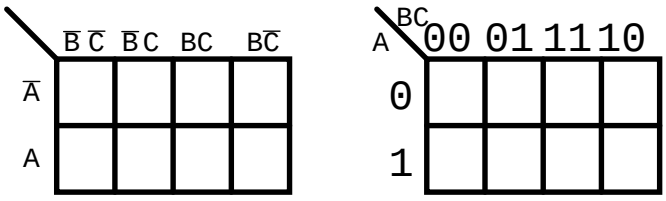
No logic simplification is possible for the above diagram. This sometimes happens. Neither the methods of Karnaugh maps nor Boolean algebra can simplify this logic further. We show an Exclusive-OR schematic symbol above; however, this is not a logical simplification. It just makes a schematic diagram look nicer. Since it is not possible to simplify the Exclusive-OR logic and it is widely used, it is provided by manufacturers as a basic integrated circuit (7486).

8.6 Logic simplification with Karnaugh maps

The logic simplification examples that we have done so could have been performed with Boolean algebra about as quickly. Real world logic simplification problems call for larger Karnaugh maps so that we may do serious work. We will work some contrived examples in this section, leaving most of the real world applications for the Combinatorial Logic chapter. By contrived,

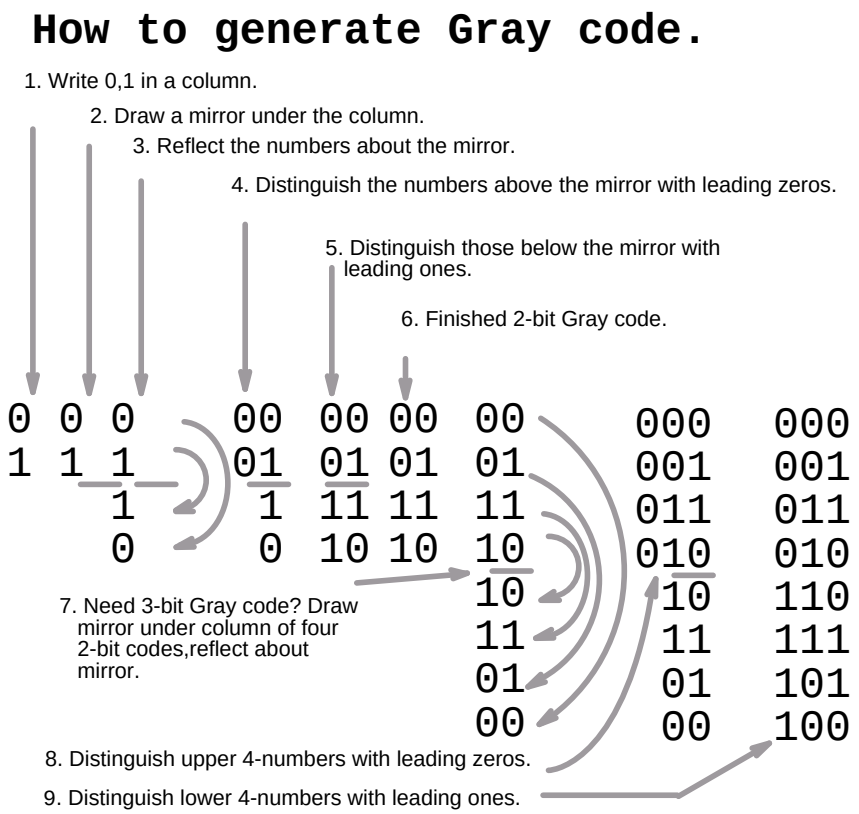
we mean examples which illustrate techniques. This approach will develop the tools we need to transition to the more complex applications in the Combinatorial Logic chapter.

We show our previously developed Karnaugh map. We will use the form on the right



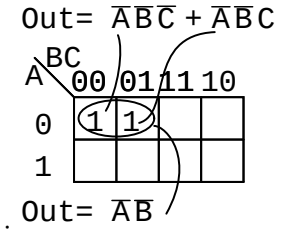
Note the sequence of numbers across the top of the map. It is not in binary sequence which would be **00, 01, 10, 11**. It is **00, 01, 11 10**, which is Gray code sequence. Gray code sequence only changes one binary bit as we go from one number to the next in the sequence, unlike binary. That means that adjacent cells will only vary by one bit, or Boolean variable. This is what we need to organize the outputs of a logic function so that we may view commonality. Moreover, the column and row headings must be in Gray code order, or the map will not work as a Karnaugh map. Cells sharing common Boolean variables would no longer be adjacent, nor show visual patterns. Adjacent cells vary by only one bit because a Gray code sequence varies by only one bit.

If we sketch our own Karnaugh maps, we need to generate Gray code for any size map that we may use. This is how we generate Gray code of any size.



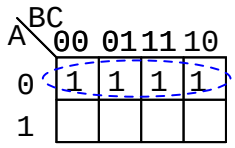
Note that the Gray code sequence, above right, only varies by one bit as we go down the list, or bottom to top up the list. This property of Gray code is often useful in digital electronics in general. In particular, it is applicable to Karnaugh maps.

Let us move on to some examples of simplification with 3-variable Karnaugh maps. We show how to map the product terms of the unsimplified logic to the K-map. We illustrate how to identify groups of adjacent cells which leads to a Sum-of-Products simplification of the digital logic.



Above we, place the 1's in the K-map for each of the product terms, identify a group of two, then write a *p-term* (product term) for the sole group as our simplified result.

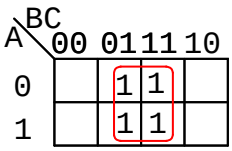
Out= $\overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C} + \overline{A}\overline{B}C + \overline{A}BC + \overline{A}B\overline{C}$



Out= $\overline{A}$

Mapping the four product terms above yields a group of four covered by Boolean **A'**

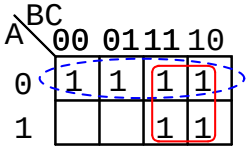
Out= $\overline{A}\overline{B}C + \overline{A}BC + A\overline{B}C + ABC$



Out= C

Mapping the four p-terms yields a group of four, which is covered by one variable **C**.

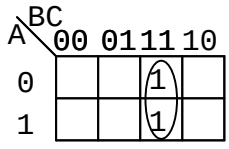
Out= $\overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}+\overline{A}\overline{B}C+\overline{A}BC+\overline{A}B\overline{C}+ABC+AB\overline{C}$



Out= $\overline{A} + B$

After mapping the six p-terms above, identify the upper group of four, pick up the lower two cells as a group of four by sharing the two with two more from the other group. Covering these two with a group of four gives a simpler result. Since there are two groups, there will be two p-terms in the Sum-of-Products result **A'+B**

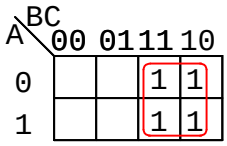
Out= $\overline{A}BC + ABC$



Out= BC

The two product terms above form one group of two and simplifies to **BC**

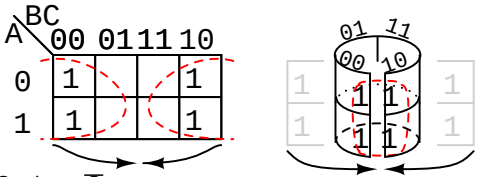
Out= $\overline{A}BC + \overline{A}B\overline{C} + ABC + AB\overline{C}$



Out= B .

Mapping the four p-terms yields a single group of four, which is **B**

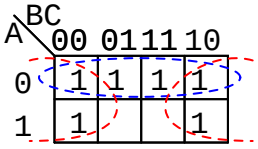
Out= $\overline{A}B\overline{C} + AB\overline{C} + \overline{A}B\overline{C} + AB\overline{C}$



Out= $\overline{C}$.

Mapping the four p-terms above yields a group of four. Visualize the group of four by rolling up the ends of the map to form a cylinder, then the cells are adjacent. We normally mark the group of four as above left. Out of the variables A, B, C, there is a common variable: C'. C' is a 0 over all four cells. Final result is **C'**.

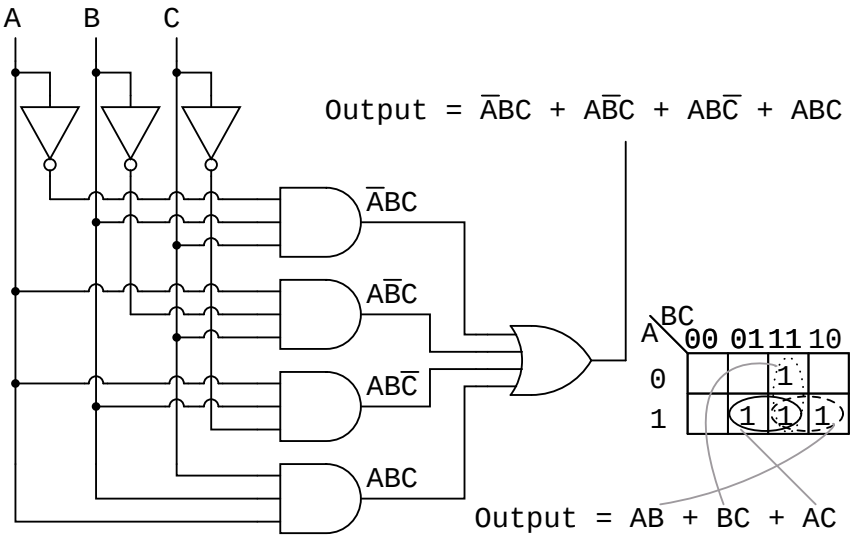
Out= $\overline{A}B\overline{C}+\overline{A}BC+\overline{A}BC+\overline{A}B\overline{C}+AB\overline{C}+AB\overline{C}$



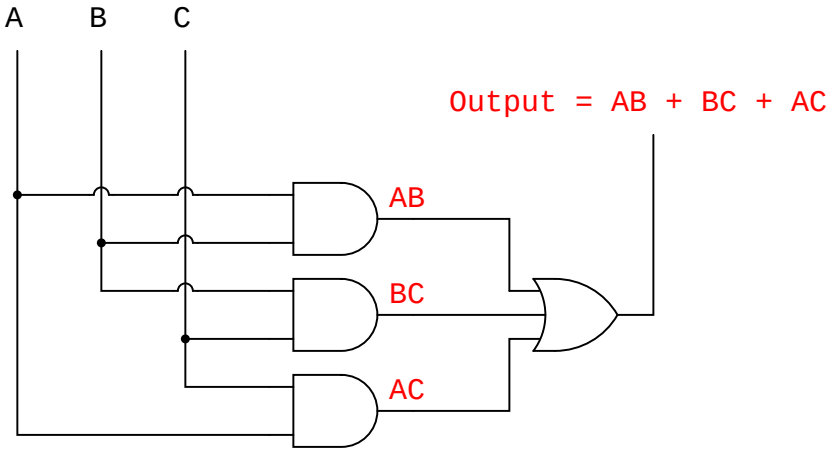
Out= $\overline{A} + \overline{C}$

The six cells above from the unsimplified equation can be organized into two groups of four. These two groups should give us two p-terms in our simplified result of **A' + C'**.

Below, we revisit the Toxic Waste Incinerator from the Boolean algebra chapter. See Boolean algebra chapter for details on this example. We will simplify the logic using a Karnaugh map.



The Boolean equation for the output has four product terms. Map four 1's corresponding to the p-terms. Forming groups of cells, we have three groups of two. There will be three p-terms in the simplified result, one for each group. See "Toxic Waste Incinerator", Boolean algebra chapter for a gate diagram of the result, which is reproduced below.



Below we repeat the Boolean algebra simplification of Toxic waste incinerator for comparison.

$\overline{A}BC + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C} + ABC$

↓ Factoring **BC** out of 1st and 4th terms

$BC(\overline{A} + A) + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C}$

↓ Applying identity $\mathbf{A + \overline{A} = 1}$

$BC(1) + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C}$

↓ Applying identity $\mathbf{1A = A}$

$BC + A\overline{B}C + AB\overline{C}$

↓ Factoring **B** out of 1st and 3rd terms

$B(C + A\overline{C}) + A\overline{B}C$

↓ Applying rule $\mathbf{A + \overline{A}B = A + B}$ to the $C + A\overline{C}$ term

$B(C + A) + A\overline{B}C$

↓ Distributing terms

$BC + AB + A\overline{B}C$

↓ Factoring **A** out of 2nd and 3rd terms

$BC + A(B + \overline{B}C)$

↓ Applying rule $\mathbf{A + \overline{A}B = A + B}$ to the $B + \overline{B}C$ term

$BC + A(B + C)$

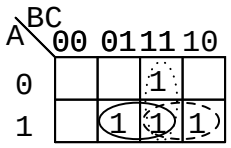
↓ Distributing terms

$BC + AB + AC$

or Simplified result

$AB + BC + AC$

Below we repeat the Toxic waste incinerator Karnaugh map solution for comparison to the above Boolean algebra simplification. This case illustrates why the Karnaugh map is widely used for logic simplification.

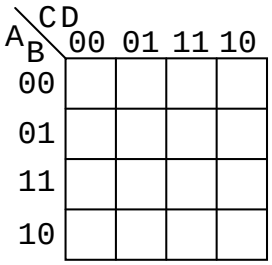


Output = AB + BC + AC

The Karnaugh map method looks easier than the previous page of boolean algebra.

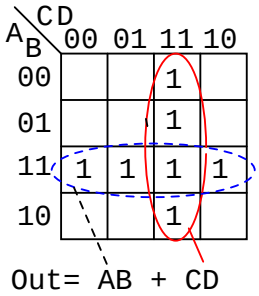
8.7 Larger 4-variable Karnaugh maps

Knowing how to generate Gray code should allow us to build larger maps. Actually, all we need to do is look at the left to right sequence across the top of the 3-variable map, and copy it down the left side of the 4-variable map. See below.



The following four variable Karnaugh maps illustrate reduction of Boolean expressions too tedious for Boolean algebra. Reductions could be done with Boolean algebra. However, the Karnaugh map is faster and easier, especially if there are many logic reductions to do.

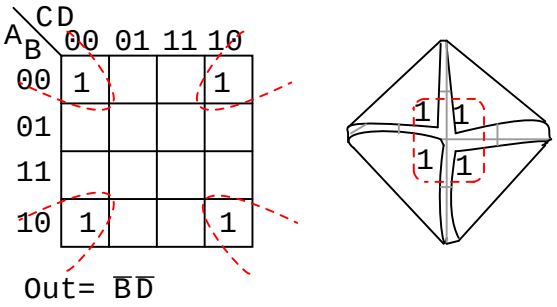
$$Out= \overline{A}\overline{B}CD+\overline{A}B\overline{C}D+ABCD+A\overline{B}CD+AB\overline{C}\,\overline{D}+AB\overline{C}D+ABC\overline{D}$$



The above Boolean expression has seven product terms. They are mapped top to bottom and left to right on the K-map above. For example, the first P-term **A'B'CD** is first row 3rd cell, corresponding to map location **A=0, B=0, C=1, D=1**. The other product terms are placed in a similar manner. Encircling the largest groups possible, two groups of four are shown above. The dashed horizontal group corresponds the the simplified product term **AB**. The vertical group corresponds to Boolean CD. Since there are two groups, there will be two product terms in the Sum-Of-Products result of **Out=AB+CD**.

Fold up the corners of the map below like it is a napkin to make the four cells physically adjacent.

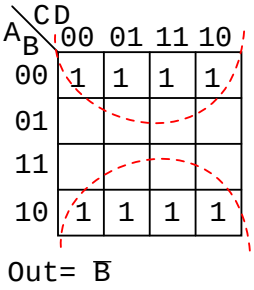
$Out = \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}\overline{D} + \overline{A}\overline{B}CD + A\overline{B}\overline{C}\overline{D} + A\overline{B}CD$



The four cells above are a group of four because they all have the Boolean variables **B'** and **D'** in common. In other words, **B=0** for the four cells, and **D=0** for the four cells. The other variables **(A, B)** are **0** in some cases, **1** in other cases with respect to the four corner cells. Thus, these variables **(A, B)** are not involved with this group of four. This single group comes out of the map as one product term for the simplified result: **Out=B'C'**

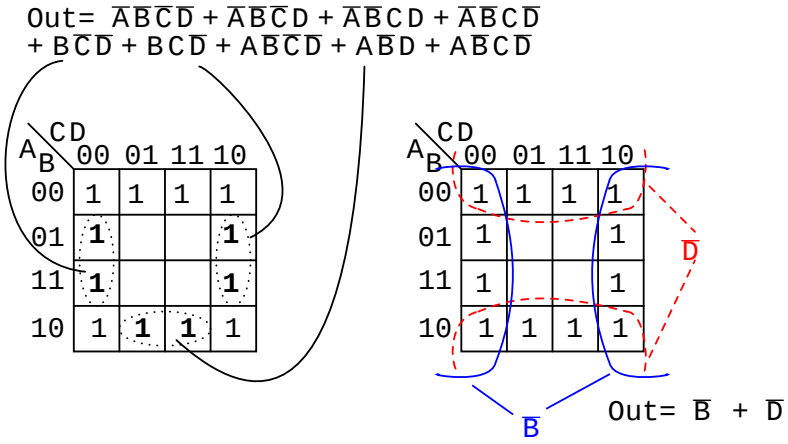
For the K-map below, roll the top and bottom edges into a cylinder forming eight adjacent cells.

$Out = \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}\overline{D} + \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}D + \overline{A}\overline{B}CD + \overline{A}\overline{B}CD$
$+ A\overline{B}\overline{C}\overline{D} + A\overline{B}\overline{C}D + A\overline{B}CD + A\overline{B}CD$



The above group of eight has one Boolean variable in common: **B=0**. Therefore, the one group of eight is covered by one p-term: **B'**. The original eight term Boolean expression simplifies to **Out=B'**

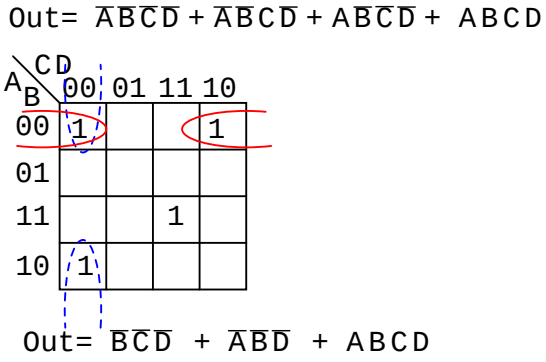
The Boolean expression below has nine p-terms, three of which have three Booleans instead of four. The difference is that while four Boolean variable product terms cover one cell, the three Boolean p-terms cover a pair of cells each.



The six product terms of four Boolean variables map in the usual manner above as single cells. The three Boolean variable terms (three each) map as cell pairs, which is shown above. Note that we are mapping p-terms into the K-map, not pulling them out at this point.

For the simplification, we form two groups of eight. Cells in the corners are shared with both groups. This is fine. In fact, this leads to a better solution than forming a group of eight and a group of four without sharing any cells. Final Solution is **Out=B'+D'**

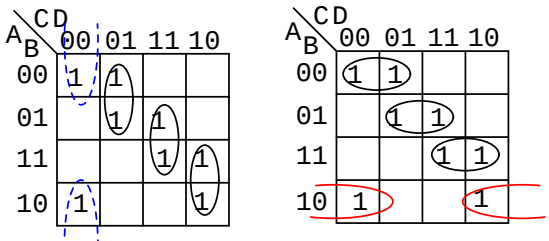
Below we map the unsimplified Boolean expression to the Karnaugh map.



Above, three of the cells form into a groups of two cells. A fourth cell cannot be combined with anything, which often happens in "real world" problems. In this case, the Boolean p-term **ABCD** is unchanged in the simplification process. Result: **Out= B'C'D'+A'B'D'+ABCD**

Often times there is more than one minimum cost solution to a simplification problem. Such is the case illustrated below.

$$Out = \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}\overline{D} + \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}D + \overline{A}B\overline{C}D + \overline{A}BCD + ABCD + ABC\overline{D} + AB\overline{C}\overline{D} + AB\overline{C}D$$



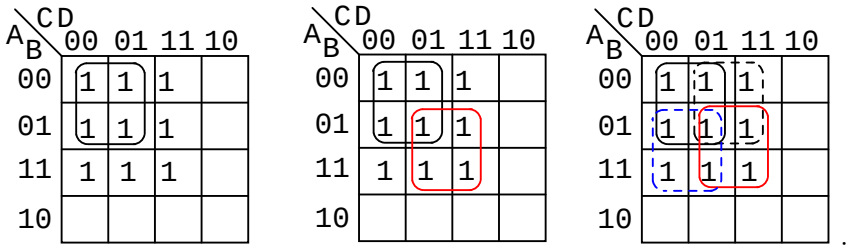
$$Out = \overline{B}\overline{C}\overline{D} + \overline{A}\overline{C}D + BCD + AC\overline{D}$$

$$Out = \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C} + \overline{A}BD + ABC + AB\overline{D}$$

Both results above have four product terms of three Boolean variable each. Both are equally valid *minimal cost* solutions. The difference in the final solution is due to how the cells are grouped as shown above. A minimal cost solution is a valid logic design with the minimum number of gates with the minimum number of inputs.

Below we map the unsimplified Boolean equation as usual and form a group of four as a first simplification step. It may not be obvious how to pick up the remaining cells.

$$Out = \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}\overline{D} + \overline{A}\overline{B}\overline{C}D + \overline{A}B\overline{C}D + \overline{A}BCD + AB\overline{C}\overline{D} + \overline{A}\overline{B}CD + ABCD + ABC\overline{D}$$

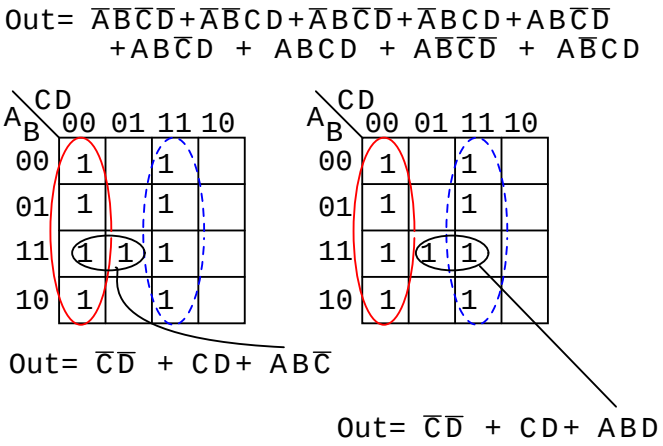


$$Out = \overline{A}\overline{C} + \overline{A}D + B\overline{C} + BD$$

Pick up three more cells in a group of four, center above. There are still two cells remaining. the minimal cost method to pick up those is to group them with neighboring cells as groups of four as at above right.

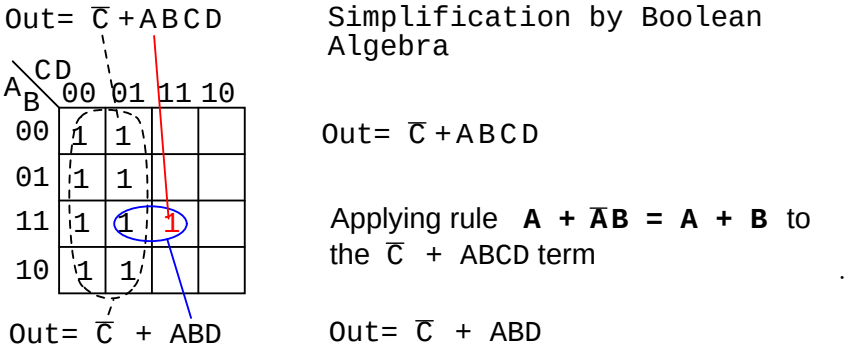
On a cautionary note, do not attempt to form groups of three. Groupings must be powers of 2, that is, 1, 2, 4, 8 ...

Below we have another example of two possible minimal cost solutions. Start by forming a couple of groups of four after mapping the cells.



The two solutions depend on whether the single remaining cell is grouped with the first or the second group of four as a group of two cells. That cell either comes out as either **ABC'** or **ABD**, your choice. Either way, this cell is covered by either Boolean product term. Final results are shown above.

Below we have an example of a simplification using the Karnaugh map at left or Boolean algebra at right. Plot **C'** on the map as the area of all cells covered by address **C=0**, the 8-cells on the left of the map. Then, plot the single **ABCD** cell. That single cell forms a group of 2-cell as shown, which simplifies to P-term **ABD**, for an end result of **Out = C' + ABD**.

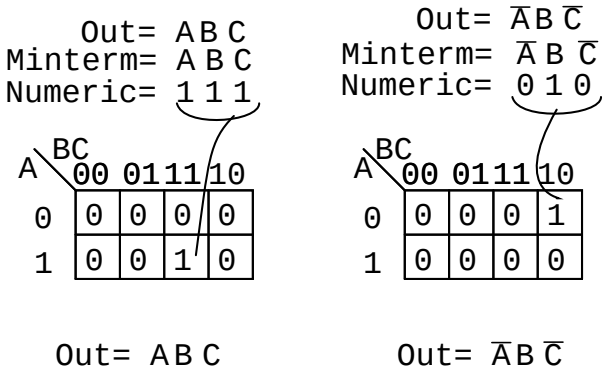


This (above) is a rare example of a four variable problem that can be reduced with Boolean algebra without a lot of work, assuming that you remember the theorems.

8.8 Minterm vs maxterm solution

So far we have been finding Sum-Of-Product (SOP) solutions to logic reduction problems. For each of these SOP solutions, there is also a Product-Of-Sums solution (POS), which could be

more useful, depending on the application. Before working a Product-Of-Sums solution, we need to introduce some new terminology. The procedure below for mapping product terms is not new to this chapter. We just want to establish a formal procedure for minterms for comparison to the new procedure for maxterms.

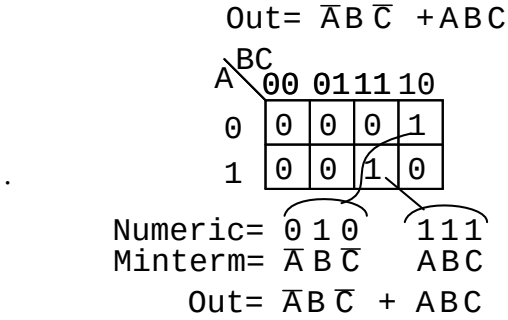


Out= A B C Out= Ā B C̄

A *minterm* is a Boolean expression resulting in **1** for the output of a single cell, and **0**s for all other cells in a Karnaugh map, or truth table. If a minterm has a single **1** and the remaining cells as **0**s, it would appear to cover a minimum area of **1**s. The illustration above left shows the minterm **ABC**, a single product term, as a single **1** in a map that is otherwise **0**s. We have not shown the **0**s in our Karnaugh maps up to this point, as it is customary to omit them unless specifically needed. Another minterm **A'BC'** is shown above right. The point to review is that the address of the cell corresponds directly to the minterm being mapped. That is, the cell **111** corresponds to the minterm **ABC** above left. Above right we see that the minterm **A'BC'** corresponds directly to the cell **010**. A Boolean expression or map may have multiple minterms.

Referring to the above figure, Let's summarize the procedure for placing a minterm in a K-map:

- Identify the minterm (product term) term to be mapped.
- Write the corresponding binary numeric value.
- Use binary value as an address to place a **1** in the K-map
- Repeat steps for other minterms (P-terms within a Sum-Of-Products).



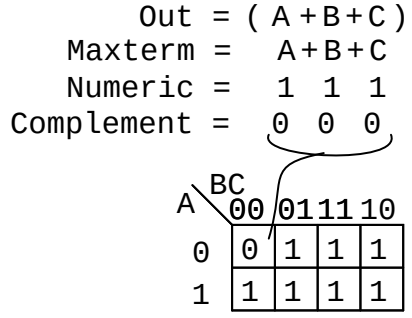
A Boolean expression will more often than not consist of multiple minterms corresponding to multiple cells in a Karnaugh map as shown above. The multiple minterms in this map are the individual minterms which we examined in the previous figure above. The point we review for reference is that the **1**s come out of the K-map as a binary cell address which converts directly to one or more product terms. By directly we mean that a **0** corresponds to a complemented variable, and a **1** corresponds to a true variable. Example: **010** converts directly to **A'BC'**. There was no reduction in this example. Though, we do have a Sum-Of-Products result from the minterms.

Referring to the above figure, Let's summarize the procedure for writing the Sum-Of-Products reduced Boolean equation from a K-map:

- Form largest groups of **1**s possible covering all minterms. Groups must be a power of 2.
- Write binary numeric value for groups.
- Convert binary value to a product term.
- Repeat steps for other groups. Each group yields a p-terms within a Sum-Of-Products.

Nothing new so far, a formal procedure has been written down for dealing with minterms. This serves as a pattern for dealing with maxterms.

Next we attack the Boolean function which is **0** for a single cell and **1**s for all others.



A *maxterm* is a Boolean expression resulting in a **0** for the output of a single cell expression, and **1**s for all other cells in the Karnaugh map, or truth table. The illustration above left shows the maxterm **(A+B+C)**, a single sum term, as a single **0** in a map that is otherwise **1**s. If a maxterm has a single **0** and the remaining cells as **1**s, it would appear to cover a maximum area of **1**s.

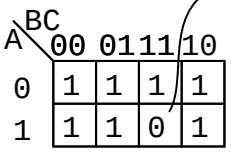
There are some differences now that we are dealing with something new, maxterms. The maxterm is a **0**, not a **1** in the Karnaugh map. A maxterm is a sum term, **(A+B+C)** in our example, not a product term.

It also looks strange that **(A+B+C)** is mapped into the cell **000**. For the equation **Out=(A+B+C)=0**, all three variables **(A, B, C)** must individually be equal to **0**. Only **(0+0+0)=0** will equal **0**. Thus we place our sole **0** for minterm **(A+B+C)** in cell **A,B,C=000** in the K-map, where the inputs are all**0** . This is the only case which will give us a **0** for our maxterm. All other cells contain **1**s because any input values other than ((**0,0,0)** for **(A+B+C)** yields **1**s upon evaluation.

Referring to the above figure, the procedure for placing a maxterm in the K-map is:

- Identify the Sum term to be mapped.
- Write corresponding binary numeric value.
- Form the complement
- Use the complement as an address to place a **0** in the K-map
- Repeat for other maxterms (Sum terms within Product-of-Sums expression).

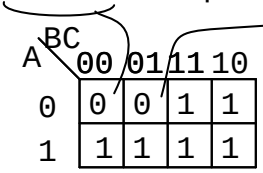
```
      Out = (A+B+C)
  Maxterm =  A+B+C
  Numeric =   0 0 0
Complement =  1 1 1
```



Another maxterm **A'+B'+C'** is shown above. Numeric **000** corresponds to **A'+B'+C'**. The complement is **111**. Place a **0** for maxterm **(A'+B'+C')** in this cell **(1,1,1)** of the K-map as shown above.

Why should **(A'+B'+C')** cause a **0** to be in cell **111**? When **A'+B'+C'** is **(1'+1'+1')**, all **1**s in, which is **(0+0+0)** after taking complements, we have the only condition that will give us a **0**. All the **1**s are complemented to all **0**s, which is **0** when **OR**ed.

```
     Out = ( A +B+C )( A+B+C )
  Maxterm= (A+B+C)     Maxterm= (A+B+C)
  Numeric=  1 1 1      Numeric=  1 1 0
Complement= 0 0 0    Complement= 0 0 1
```

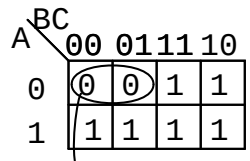


A Boolean Product-Of-Sums expression or map may have multiple maxterms as shown above. Maxterm **(A+B+C)** yields numeric **111** which complements to **000**, placing a **0** in cell **(0,0,0)**. Maxterm **(A+B+C')** yields numeric **110** which complements to **001**, placing a **0** in cell **(0,0,1)**.

Now that we have the k-map setup, what we are really interested in is showing how to write a Product-Of-Sums reduction. Form the **0**s into groups. That would be a group of two below. Write the binary value corresponding to the sum-term which is **(0,0,X)**. Both A and B

are **0** for the group. But, **C** is both **0** and **1** so we write an **X** as a place holder for **C**. Form the complement **(1,1,X)**. Write the Sum-term **(A+B)** discarding the **C** and the **X** which held its' place. In general, expect to have more sum-terms multiplied together in the Product-Of-Sums result. Though, we have a simple example here.

$$Out = (A+B+C)(A+B+\overline{C})$$



A B C = 0 0 X

Complement = 1 1 X

Sum-term =(A+B)

Out =(A+B)

Let's summarize the procedure for writing the Product-Of-Sums Boolean reduction for a K-map:

- Form largest groups of **0**s possible, covering all maxterms. Groups must be a power of 2.
- Write binary numeric value for group.
- Complement binary numeric value for group.
- Convert complement value to a sum-term.
- Repeat steps for other groups. Each group yields a sum-term within a Product-Of-Sums result.

Example:

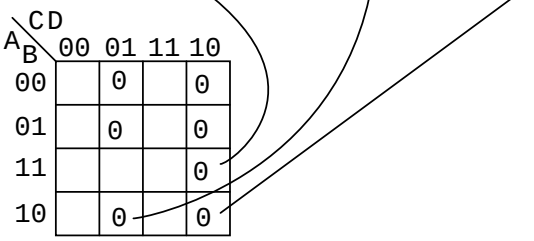
Simplify the Product-Of-Sums Boolean expression below, providing a result in POS form.

$$Out= (A+B+C+\overline{D})(A+B+\overline{C}+D)(A+\overline{B}+C+\overline{D})(A+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)$$
$$(\overline{A}+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)(\overline{A}+B+C+\overline{D})(\overline{A}+B+\overline{C}+D)$$

Solution:

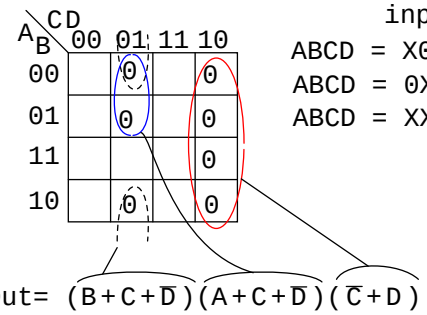
Transfer the seven maxterms to the map below as **0**s. Be sure to complement the input variables in finding the proper cell location.

Out= $(A+B+C+\overline{D})(A+B+\overline{C}+D)(A+\overline{B}+C+\overline{D})(A+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)$
$(\overline{A}+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)(\overline{A}+B+C+\overline{D})(\overline{A}+B+\overline{C}+D)$



We map the **0**s as they appear left to right top to bottom on the map above. We locate the last three maxterms with leader lines..

Once the cells are in place above, form groups of cells as shown below. Larger groups will give a sum-term with fewer inputs. Fewer groups will yield fewer sum-terms in the result.



	input		complement		Sum-term
ABCD =	X001	>	X110	>	$(B+C+\overline{D})$
ABCD =	0X01	>	1X10	>	$(A+C+\overline{D})$
ABCD =	XX10	>	XX01	>	$(\overline{C}+D)$

We have three groups, so we expect to have three sum-terms in our POS result above. The group of 4-cells yields a 2-variable sum-term. The two groups of 2-cells give us two 3-variable sum-terms. Details are shown for how we arrived at the Sum-terms above. For a group, write the binary group input address, then complement it, converting that to the Boolean sum-term. The final result is product of the three sums.

Example:

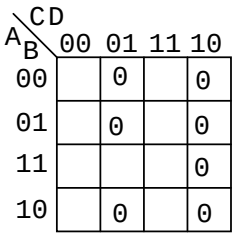
Simplify the Product-Of-Sums Boolean expression below, providing a result in SOP form.

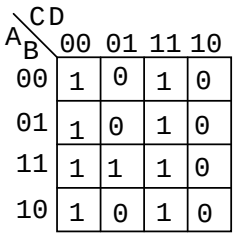
Out= $(A+B+C+\overline{D})(A+B+\overline{C}+D)(A+\overline{B}+C+\overline{D})(A+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)$
$(\overline{A}+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)(\overline{A}+B+C+\overline{D})(\overline{A}+B+\overline{C}+D)$

Solution:

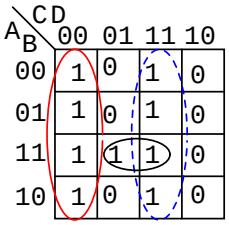
This looks like a repeat of the last problem. It is except that we ask for a Sum-Of-Products Solution instead of the Product-Of-Sums which we just finished. Map the maxterm **0**s from the Product-Of-Sums given as in the previous problem, below left.

Out= (A+B+C+$\overline{D}$)(A+B+$\overline{C}$+D)(A+$\overline{B}$+C+$\overline{D}$)(A+$\overline{B}$+$\overline{C}$+D)
(A+$\overline{B}$+$\overline{C}$+D)(A+B+C+$\overline{D}$)(A+B+$\overline{C}$+D)





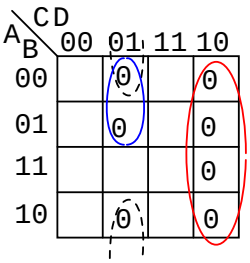
Then fill in the implied **1**s in the remaining cells of the map above right.

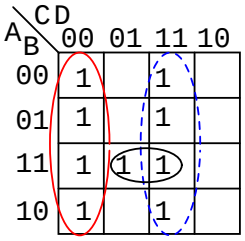


Out= $\overline{C}\overline{D}$ + CD+ ABD

Form groups of **1**s to cover all **1**s. Then write the Sum-Of-Products simplified result as in the previous section of this chapter. This is identical to a previous problem.

Out= (A+B+C+$\overline{D}$)(A+B+$\overline{C}$+D)(A+$\overline{B}$+C+$\overline{D}$)(A+$\overline{B}$+$\overline{C}$+D)
(A+$\overline{B}$+$\overline{C}$+D)(A+B+C+$\overline{D}$)(A+B+$\overline{C}$+D)





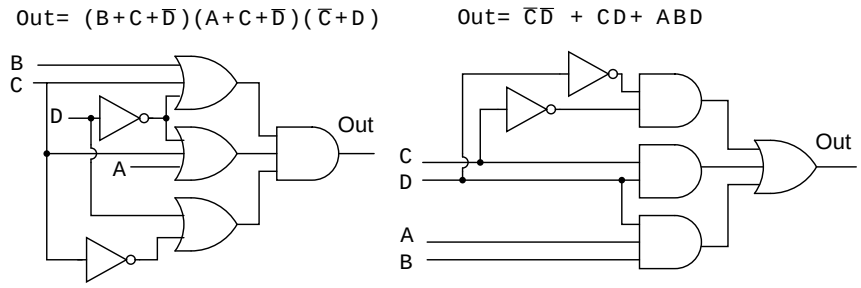
Out= $\overline{C}\overline{D}$ + CD+ ABD

Out= (B+C+$\overline{D}$)(A+C+$\overline{D}$)($\overline{C}$+D)

Above we show both the Product-Of-Sums solution, from the previous example, and the Sum-Of-Products solution from the current problem for comparison. Which is the simpler

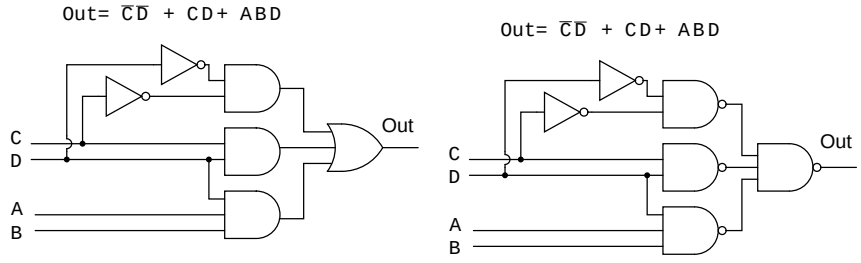
solution? The POS uses 3-OR gates and 1-AND gate, while the SOP uses 3-AND gates and 1-OR gate. Both use four gates each. Taking a closer look, we count the number of gate inputs. The POS uses 8-inputs; the SOP uses 7-inputs. By the definition of minimal cost solution, the SOP solution is simpler. This is an example of a technically correct answer that is of little use in the real world.

The better solution depends on complexity and the logic family being used. The SOP solution is usually better if using the TTL logic family, as NAND gates are the basic building block, which works well with SOP implementations. On the other hand, A POS solution would be acceptable when using the CMOS logic family since all sizes of NOR gates are available.

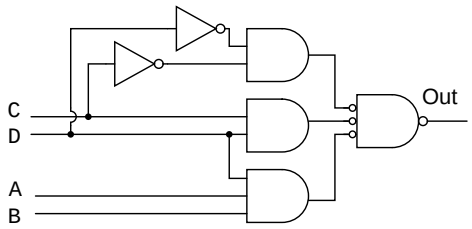


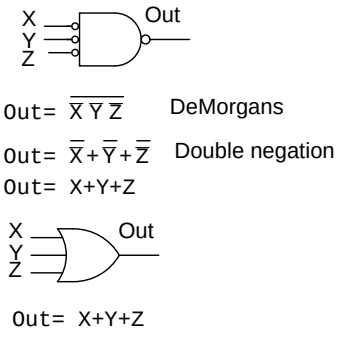
The gate diagrams for both cases are shown above, Product-Of-Sums left, and Sum-Of-Products right.

Below, we take a closer look at the Sum-Of-Products version of our example logic, which is repeated at left.



Above all AND gates at left have been replaced by NAND gates at right.. The OR gate at the output is replaced by a NAND gate. To prove that AND-OR logic is equivalent to NAND-NAND logic, move the inverter invert bubbles at the output of the 3-NAND gates to the input of the final NAND as shown in going from above right to below left.





Above right we see that the output NAND gate with inverted inputs is logically equivalent to an OR gate by DeMorgan's theorem and double negation. This information is useful in building digital logic in a laboratory setting where TTL logic family NAND gates are more readily available in a wide variety of configurations than other types.

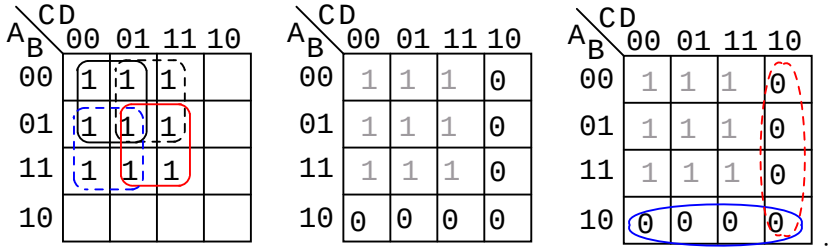
The Procedure for constructing NAND-NAND logic, in place of AND-OR logic is as follows:

- Produce a reduced Sum-Of-Products logic design.
- When drawing the wiring diagram of the SOP, replace all gates (both AND and OR) with NAND gates.
- Unused inputs should be tied to logic High.
- In case of troubleshooting, internal nodes at the first level of NAND gate outputs do NOT match AND-OR diagram logic levels, but are inverted. Use the NAND-NAND logic diagram. Inputs and final output are identical, though.
- Label any multiple packages U1, U2,.. etc.
- Use data sheet to assign pin numbers to inputs and outputs of all gates.

Example:

Let us revisit a previous problem involving an SOP minimization. Produce a Product-Of-Sums solution. Compare the POS solution to the previous SOP.

$$Out = \overline{A}\,\overline{B}\,\overline{C}\,\overline{D} + \overline{A}\,\overline{B}\,\overline{C}\,D + \overline{A}\,\overline{B}CD + \overline{A}B\,\overline{C}\,\overline{D} + \overline{A}B\,\overline{C}D + \overline{A}BCD + A\,\overline{B}\,\overline{C}\,\overline{D} + A\,\overline{B}\,\overline{C}\,D + A\,\overline{B}CD$$



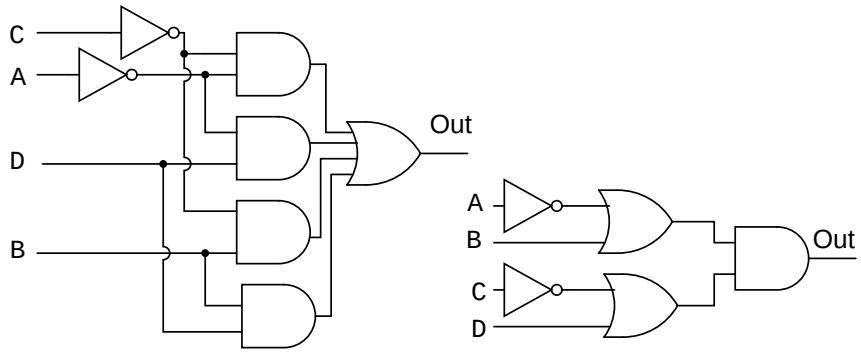
$Out = \overline{A}\,\overline{C} + \overline{A}D + B\,\overline{C} + BD$ $\qquad$ $Out = (\overline{A}+B)(\overline{C}+D)$

Solution:

Above left we have the original problem starting with a 9-minterm Boolean unsimplified expression. Reviewing, we formed four groups of 4-cells to yield a 4-product-term SOP result, lower left.

In the middle figure, above, we fill in the empty spaces with the implied **0**s. The **0**s form two groups of 4-cells. The solid red group is **(A'+B)**, the dashed red group is **(C'+D)**. This yields two sum-terms in the Product-Of-Sums result, above right **Out = (A'+B)(C'+D)**

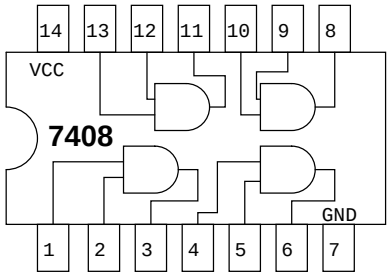
Comparing the previous SOP simplification, left, to the POS simplification, right, shows that the POS is the least cost solution. The SOP uses 5-gates total, the POS uses only 3-gates. This POS solution even looks attractive when using TTL logic due to simplicity of the result. We can find AND gates and an OR gate with 2-inputs.

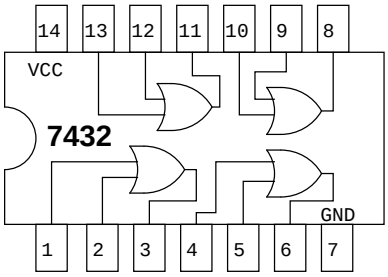


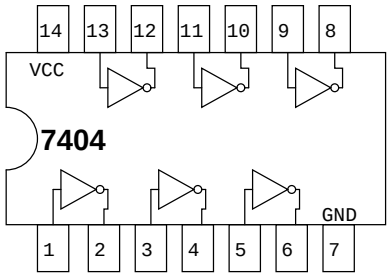
$Out = \overline{A}\,\overline{C} + \overline{A}D + B\,\overline{C} + BD$ $\qquad$ $Out = (\overline{A}+B)(\overline{C}+D)$

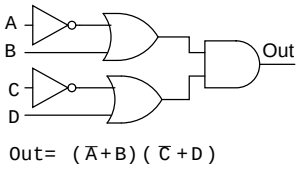
The SOP and POS gate diagrams are shown above for our comparison problem.

Given the pin-outs for the TTL logic family integrated circuit gates below, label the maxterm diagram above right with Circuit designators (U1-a, U1-b, U2-a, etc), and pin numbers.



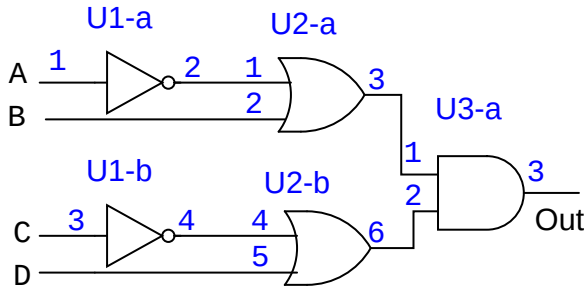






Each integrated circuit package that we use will receive a circuit designator: U1, U2, U3. To distinguish between the individual gates within the package, they are identified as a, b, c, d, etc. The 7404 hex-inverter package is U1. The individual inverters in it are are U1-a, U1-b, U1-c, etc. U2 is assigned to the 7432 quad OR gate. U3 is assigned to the 7408 quad AND gate. With reference to the pin numbers on the package diagram above, we assign pin numbers to all gate inputs and outputs on the schematic diagram below.

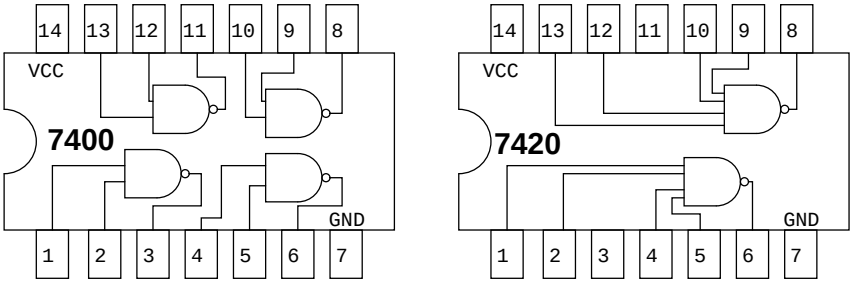
We can now build this circuit in a laboratory setting. Or, we could design a *printed circuit board* for it. A printed circuit board contains copper foil "wiring" backed by a non conductive substrate of phenolic, or epoxy-fiberglass. Printed circuit boards are used to mass produce electronic circuits. Ground the inputs of unused gates.



$\text{Out} = (\overline{A}+B)(\overline{C}+D)$

U1 = 7404
U2 = 7432
U3 = 7408

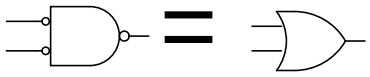
Label the previous POS solution diagram above left (third figure back) with Circuit designators and pin numbers. This will be similar to what we just did.



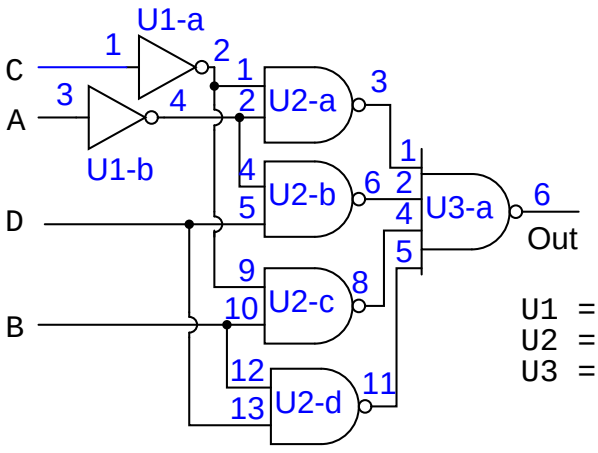
We can find 2-input AND gates, 7408 in the previous example. However, we have trouble finding a 4-input OR gate in our TTL catalog. The only kind of gate with 4-inputs is the 7420 NAND gate shown above right.

We can make the 4-input NAND gate into a 4-input OR gate by inverting the inputs to the NAND gate as shown below. So we will use the 7420 4-input NAND gate as an OR gate by inverting the inputs.

$\overline{Y} = \overline{A}\,\overline{B} = \overline{A+B}$ DeMorgan's
$Y = A+B$ Double negation



We will not use discrete inverters to invert the inputs to the 7420 4-input NAND gate, but will drive it with 2-input NAND gates in place of the AND gates called for in the SOP, minterm, solution. The inversion at the output of the 2-input NAND gates supply the inversion for the 4-input OR gate.



$\text{Out} = \overline{(\overline{AC})(\overline{AD})(\overline{BC})(\overline{BD})}$ Boolean from diagram

$\text{Out} = \overline{\overline{AC}} + \overline{\overline{AD}} + \overline{\overline{BC}} + \overline{\overline{BD}}$ DeMorgan's

$\text{Out} = AC + AD + B\overline{C} + BD$ Double negation

The result is shown above. It is the only practical way to actually build it with TTL gates by using NAND-NAND logic replacing AND-OR logic.

8.9 Σ (sum) and Π (product) notation

For reference, this section introduces the terminology used in some texts to describe the minterms and maxterms assigned to a Karnaugh map. Otherwise, there is no new material here.

Σ (sigma) indicates sum and lower case "m" indicates minterms. Σm indicates sum of minterms. The following example is revisited to illustrate our point. Instead of a Boolean equation description of unsimplified logic, we list the minterms.

f(A,B,C,D) = Σ m(1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 15)

or

f(A,B,C,D) = $\Sigma(m_1,m_2,m_3,m_4,m_5,m_7,m_8,m_9,m_{11},m_{12},m_{13},m_{15})$

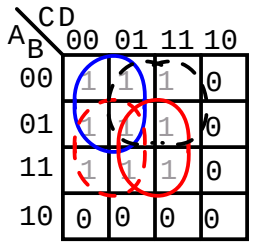
The numbers indicate cell location, or address, within a Karnaugh map as shown below right. This is certainly a compact means of describing a list of minterms or cells in a K-map.

$$\begin{aligned}Out= &\ \overline{A}\,\overline{B}\,\overline{C}\,\overline{D} + \overline{A}\,\overline{B}\,\overline{C}\,D + \overline{A}\,\overline{B}CD \\ &+ \overline{A}\,B\,\overline{C}\,\overline{D} + \overline{A}\,B\,\overline{C}D + \overline{A}\,BCD \\ &+ A\,B\,\overline{C}\,\overline{D} + A\,B\,\overline{C}\,D + ABCD\end{aligned}$$

$$f(A,B,C,D)=\Sigma\, m(0,1,3,4,5,7,12,13,15)$$

A\B \ CD	00	01	11	10
00	0	1	3	2
01	4	5	7	6
11	12	13	15	14
10	8	9	11	10

A\B \ CD	00	01	11	10
00	1	1	1	0
01	1	1	1	0
11	1	1	1	0
10	0	0	0	0



$$f(A,B,C,D) = \overline{A}\,\overline{C} + \overline{A}D + B\,\overline{C} + BD$$

The Sum-Of-Products solution is not affected by the new terminology. The minterms, **1**s, in the map have been grouped as usual and a Sum-OF-Products solution written.

Below, we show the terminology for describing a list of maxterms. Product is indicated by the Greek Π (pi), and upper case "M" indicates maxterms. ΠM indicates product of maxterms. The same example illustrates our point. The Boolean equation description of unsimplified logic, is replaced by a list of maxterms.

f(A,B,C,D) = Π M(2, 6, 8, 9, 10, 11, 14)

or

f(A,B,C,D) = $\Pi(M_2, M_6, M_8, M_9, M_{10}, M_{11}, M_{14})$

Once again, the numbers indicate K-map cell address locations. For maxterms this is the location of **0**s, as shown below. A Product-OF-Sums solution is completed in the usual manner.

$$Out = \overline{(\overline{A}+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+\overline{D})}(\overline{A}+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)(\overline{A}+\overline{B}+\overline{C}+D)(\overline{A}+B+C+D)$$
$$(\overline{A}+B+\overline{C+D})(\overline{A}+B+\overline{C+D})(\overline{A}+B+\overline{C}+D)$$

$$f(A,B,C,D) = \Pi M(2,6,8,9,10,11,14)$$

A\B \ CD	00	01	11	10
00	0	1	3	2
01	4	5	7	6
11	12	13	15	14
10	8	9	11	10

A\B \ CD	00	01	11	10
00	1	1	1	0
01	1	1	1	0
11	1	1	1	0
10	0	0	0	0

A\B \ CD	00	01	11	10
00	1	1	1	0
01	1	1	1	0
11	1	1	1	0
10	0	0	0	0

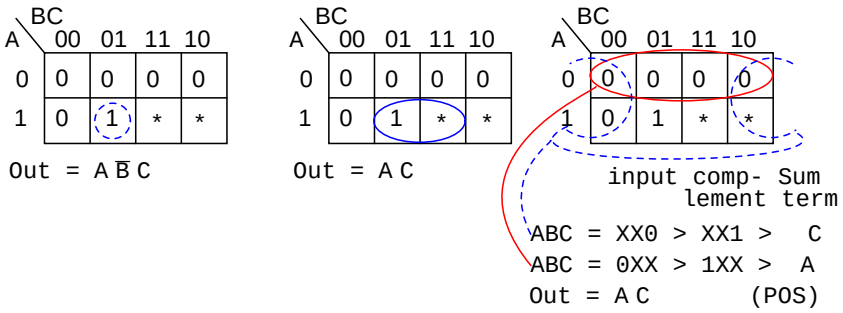
$$f(A,B,C,D) = \overline{(\overline{A}+B)}(\overline{C}+D)$$

8.10 Don't care cells in the Karnaugh map

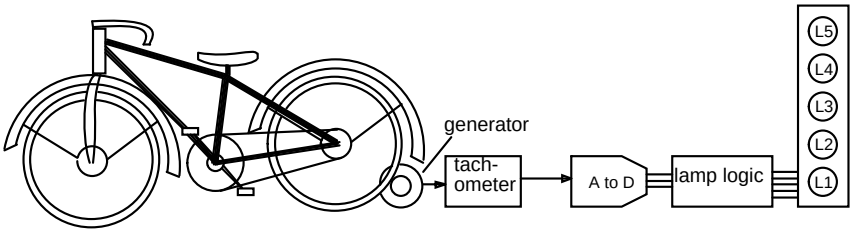
Up to this point we have considered logic reduction problems where the input conditions were completely specified. That is, a 3-variable truth table or Karnaugh map had $2^n = 2^3$ or 8-entries, a full table or map. It is not always necessary to fill in the complete truth table for some real-world problems. We may have a choice to not fill in the complete table.

For example, when dealing with BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) numbers encoded as four bits, we may not care about any codes above the BCD range of (0, 1, 2...9). The 4-bit binary codes for the hexadecimal numbers (Ah, Bh, Ch, Eh, Fh) are not valid BCD codes. Thus, we do not have to fill in those codes at the end of a truth table, or K-map, if we do not care to. We would not normally care to fill in those codes because those codes (1010, 1011, 1100, 1101, 1110, 1111) will never exist as long as we are dealing only with BCD encoded numbers. These six invalid codes are *don't cares* as far as we are concerned. That is, we do not care what output our logic circuit produces for these don't cares.

Don't cares in a Karnaugh map, or truth table, may be either **1**s or **0**s, as long as we don't care what the output is for an input condition we never expect to see. We plot these cells with an asterisk, *, among the normal **1**s and **0**s. When forming groups of cells, treat the don't care cell as either a **1** or a **0**, or ignore the don't cares. This is helpful if it allows us to form a larger group than would otherwise be possible without the don't cares. There is no requirement to group all or any of the don't cares. Only use them in a group if it simplifies the logic.



Above is an example of a logic function where the desired output is **1** for input **ABC = 101** over the range from **000 to 101**. We do not care what the output is for the other possible inputs (**110, 111**). Map those two as don't cares. We show two solutions. The solution on the right Out = AB'C is the more complex solution since we did not use the don't care cells. The solution in the middle, Out=AC, is less complex because we grouped a don't care cell with the single **1** to form a group of two. The third solution, a Product-Of-Sums on the right, results from grouping a don't care with three zeros forming a group of four **0**s. This is the same, less complex, **Out=AC**. We have illustrated that the don't care cells may be used as either **1**s or **0**s, whichever is useful.

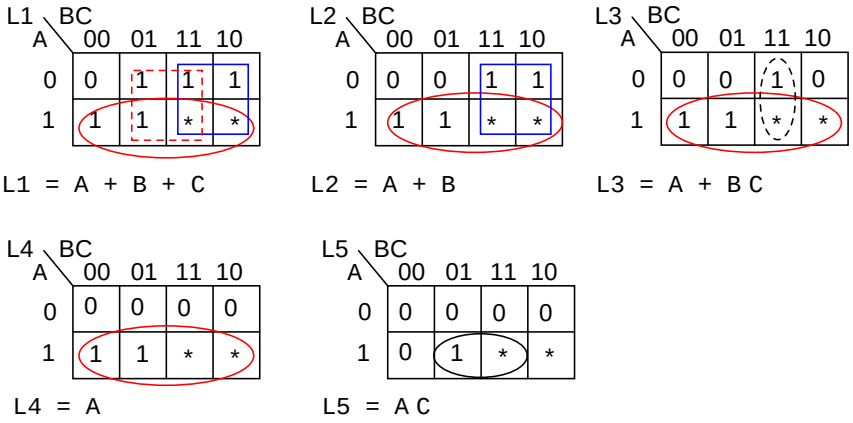


The electronics class of Lightning State College has been asked to build the lamp logic for a stationary bicycle exhibit at the local science museum. As a rider increases his pedaling speed, lamps will light on a bar graph display. No lamps will light for no motion. As speed increases, the lower lamp, L1 lights, then L1 and L2, then, L1, L2, and L3, until all lamps light at the highest speed. Once all the lamps illuminate, no further increase in speed will have any effect on the display.

A small DC generator coupled to the bicycle tire outputs a voltage proportional to speed. It drives a tachometer board which limits the voltage at the high end of speed where all lamps light. No further increase in speed can increase the voltage beyond this level. This is crucial

because the downstream A to D (Analog to Digital) converter puts out a 3-bit code, **ABC**, 2^3 or 8-codes, but we only have five lamps. **A** is the most significant bit, **C** the least significant bit.

The lamp logic needs to respond to the six codes out of the A to D. For **ABC=000**, no motion, no lamps light. For the five codes **(001 to 101)** lamps L1, L1&L2, L1&L2&L3, up to all lamps will light, as speed, voltage, and the A to D code (ABC) increases. We do not care about the response to input codes **(110, 111)** because these codes will never come out of the A to D due to the limiting in the tachometer block. We need to design five logic circuits to drive the five lamps.



Since, none of the lamps light for **ABC=000** out of the A to D, enter a **0** in all K-maps for cell **ABC=000**. Since we don't care about the never to be encountered codes **(110, 111)**, enter asterisks into those two cells in all five K-maps.

Lamp L5 will only light for code **ABC=101**. Enter a **1** in that cell and five **0**s into the remaining empty cells of L5 K-map.

L4 will light initially for code **ABC=100**, and will remain illuminated for any code greater, **ABC=101**, because all lamps below L5 will light when L5 lights. Enter **1**s into cells **100** and **101** of the L4 map so that it will light for those codes. Four **0**'s fill the remaining L4 cells

L3 will initially light for code **ABC=011**. It will also light whenever L5 and L4 illuminate. Enter three **1**s into cells **011, 100, 101** for L3 map. Fill three **0**s into the remaining L3 cells.

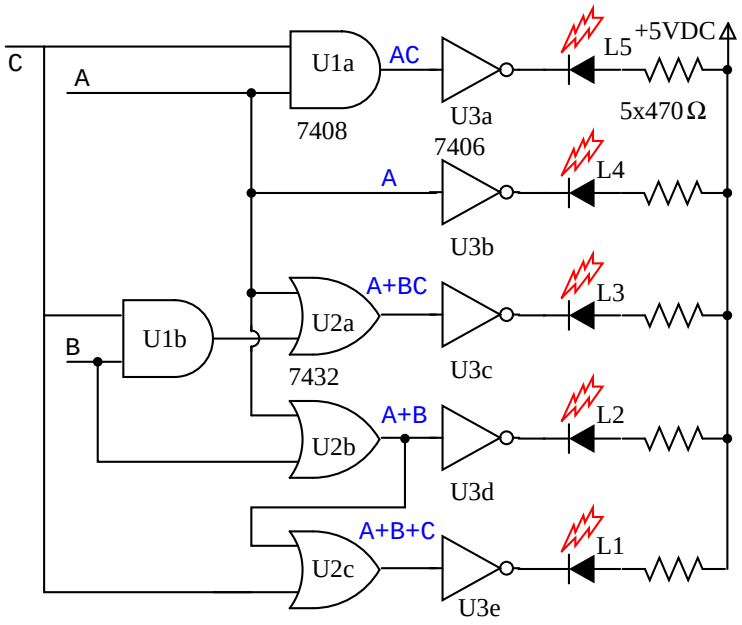
L2 lights for **ABC=010** and codes greater. Fill **1**s into cells **010, 011, 100, 101**, and two **0**s in the remaining cells.

The only time L1 is not lighted is for no motion. There is already a **0** in cell **ABC=000**. All the other five cells receive **1**s.

Group the **1**'s as shown above, using don't cares whenever a larger group results. The L1 map shows three product terms, corresponding to three groups of 4-cells. We used both don't cares in two of the groups and one don't care on the third group. The don't cares allowed us to form groups of four.

In a similar manner, the L2 and L4 maps both produce groups of 4-cells with the aid of the don't care cells. The L4 reduction is striking in that the L4 lamp is controlled by the most significant bit from the A to D converter, **L5=A**. No logic gates are required for lamp L4. In

the L3 and L5 maps, single cells form groups of two with don't care cells. In all five maps, the reduced Boolean equation is less complex than without the don't cares.



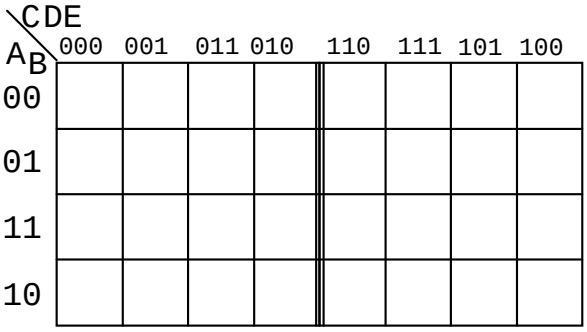
The gate diagram for the circuit is above. The outputs of the five K-map equations drive inverters. Note that the L1 **OR** gate is not a 3-input gate but a 2-input gate having inputs **(A+B), C**, outputting **A+B+C** The *open collector* inverters, **7406**, are desirable for driving LEDs, though, not part of the K-map logic design. The output of an open collecter gate or inverter is open circuited at the collector internal to the integrated circuit package so that all collector current may flow through an external load. An active high into any of the inverters pulls the output low, drawing current through the LED and the current limiting resistor. The LEDs would likely be part of a solid state relay driving 120VAC lamps for a museum exhibit, not shown here.

8.11 Larger 5 & 6-variable Karnaugh maps

Larger Karnaugh maps reduce larger logic designs. How large is large enough? That depends on the number of inputs, *fan-ins*, to the logic circuit under consideration. One of the large programmable logic companies has an answer.

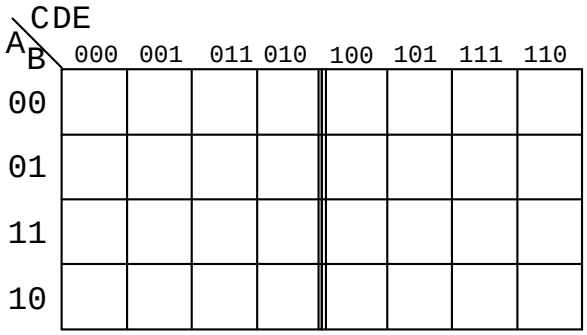
> Altera's own data, extracted from its library of customer designs, supports the value of heterogeneity. By examining logic cones, mapping them onto LUT-based nodes and sorting them by the number of inputs that would be best at each node, Altera found that the distribution of fan-ins was nearly flat between two and six inputs, with a nice peak at five.

The answer is no more than six inputs for most all designs, and five inputs for the average logic design. The five variable Karnaugh map follows.



5- variable Karnaugh map (Gray code)

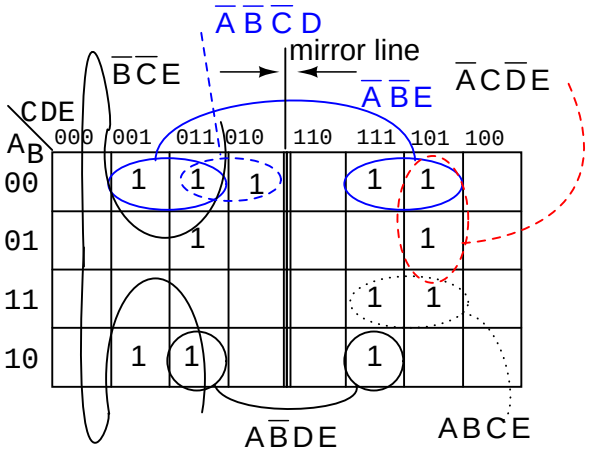
The older version of the five variable K-map, a Gray Code map or reflection map, is shown above. The top (and side for a 6-variable map) of the map is numbered in full Gray code. The Gray code reflects about the middle of the code. This style map is found in older texts. The newer preferred style is below.



5- variable Karnaugh map (overlay)

The overlay version of the Karnaugh map, shown above, is simply two (four for a 6-variable map) identical maps except for the most significant bit of the 3-bit address across the top. If we look at the top of the map, we will see that the numbering is different from the previous Gray code map. If we ignore the most significant digit of the 3-digit numbers, the sequence **00, 01, 11, 10** is at the heading of both sub maps of the overlay map. The sequence of eight 3-digit numbers is not Gray code. Though the sequence of four of the least significant two bits is.

Let's put our 5-variable Karnaugh Map to use. Design a circuit which has a 5-bit binary input (A, B, C, D, E), with A being the MSB (Most Significant Bit). It must produce an output logic High for any prime number detected in the input data.

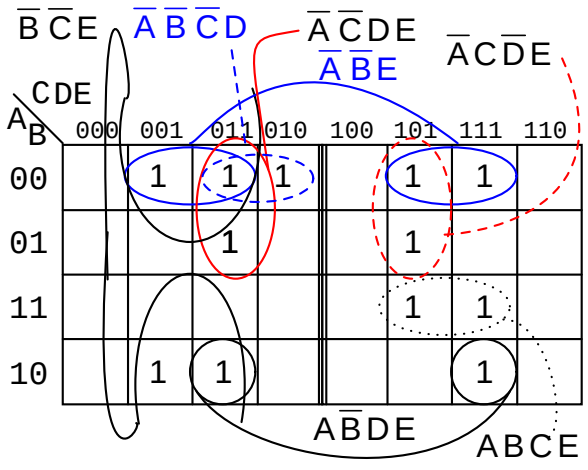


5- variable Karnaugh map (Gray code)

We show the solution above on the older Gray code (reflection) map for reference. The prime numbers are (1,2,3,5,7,11,13,17,19,23,29,31). Plot a **1** in each corresponding cell. Then, proceed with grouping of the cells. Finish by writing the simplified result. Note that 4-cell group A'B'E consists of two pairs of cell on both sides of the mirror line. The same is true of the 2-cell group AB'DE. It is a group of 2-cells by being reflected about the mirror line. When using this version of the K-map look for mirror images in the other half of the map.

Out = A'B'E + B'C'E + A'C'DE + A'CD'E + ABCE + AB'DE + A'B'C'D

Below we show the more common version of the 5-variable map, the overlay map.

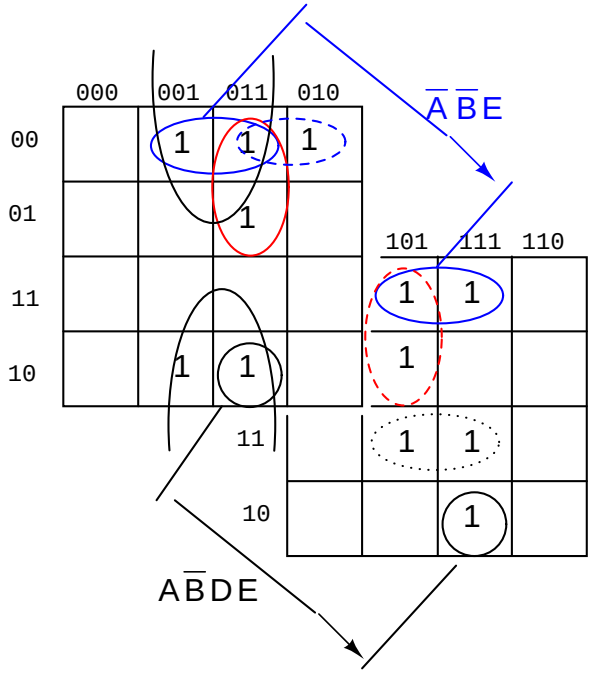


5- variable Karnaugh map (overlay)

If we compare the patterns in the two maps, some of the cells in the right half of the map are moved around since the addressing across the top of the map is different. We also need to

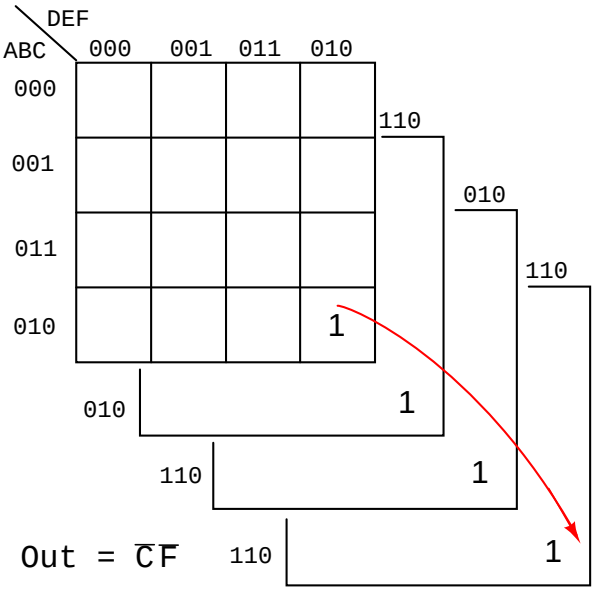
take a different approach at spotting commonality between the two halves of the map. Overlay one half of the map atop the other half. Any overlap from the top map to the lower map is a potential group. The figure below shows that group AB'DE is composed of two stacked cells. Group A'B'E consists of two stacked pairs of cells.

For the **A'B'E** group of 4-cells **ABCDE = 00xx1** for the group. That is A,B,E are the same **001** respectively for the group. And, **CD=xx** that is it varies, no commonality in **CD=xx** for the group of 4-cells. Since **ABCDE = 00xx1**, the group of 4-cells is covered by **A'B'XXE = A'B'E**.



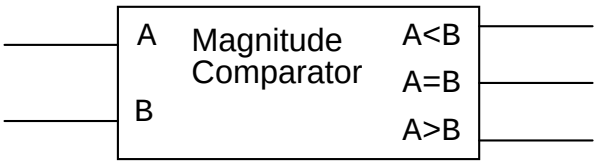
The above 5-variable overlay map is shown stacked.

An example of a six variable Karnaugh map follows. We have mentally stacked the four sub maps to see the group of 4-cells corresponding to **Out = C'F'**

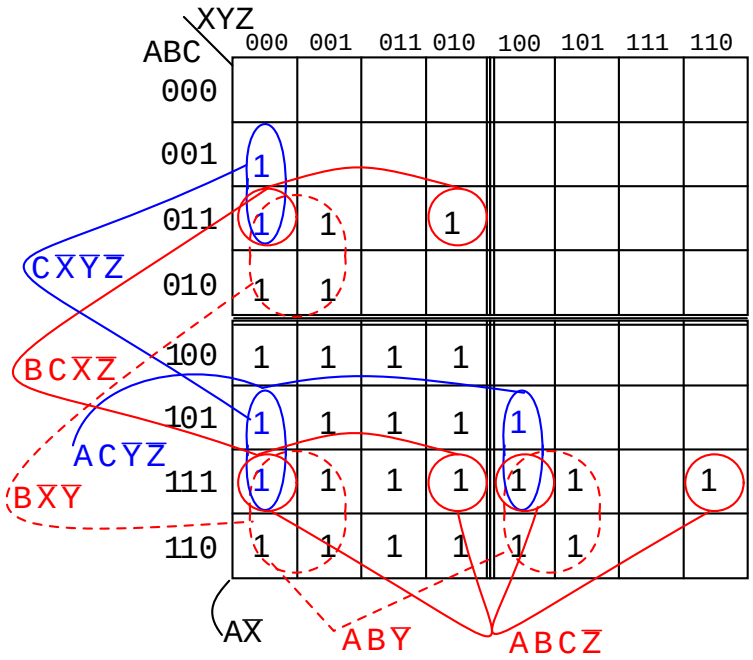


A magnitude comparator (used to illustrate a 6-variable K-map) compares two binary numbers, indicating if they are equal, greater than, or less than each other on three respective outputs. A three bit magnitude comparator has two inputs $A_2A_1A_0$ and $B_2B_1B_0$ An integrated circuit magnitude comparator (7485) would actually have four inputs, But, the Karnaugh map below needs to be kept to a reasonable size. We will only solve for the **A**>**B** output.

Below, a 6-variable Karnaugh map aids simplification of the logic for a 3-bit magnitude comparator. This is an overlay type of map. The binary address code across the top and down the left side of the map is not a full 3-bit Gray code. Though the 2-bit address codes of the four sub maps is Gray code. Find redundant expressions by stacking the four sub maps atop one another (shown above). There could be cells common to all four maps, though not in the example below. It does have cells common to pairs of sub maps.



The A>B output above is ABC>XYZ on the map below.



Out = AX+ABY+BXY+ABCZ+ACYZ+BCXZ+CXYZ

6- variable Karnaugh map (overlay)

Where ever **ABC** is greater than **XYZ**, a **1** is plotted. In the first line **ABC=000** cannot be greater than any of the values of **XYZ**. No **1**s in this line. In the second line, **ABC=001**, only the first cell **ABCXYZ= 001000** is **ABC** greater than **XYZ**. A single **1** is entered in the first cell of the second line. The fourth line, **ABC=010**, has a pair of **1**s. The third line, **ABC=011** has three **1**s. Thus, the map is filled with **1**s in any cells where **ABC** is greater than **XXZ**.

In grouping cells, form groups with adjacent sub maps if possible. All but one group of 16-cells involves cells from pairs of the sub maps. Look for the following groups:

- 1 group of 16-cells
- 2 groups of 8-cells
- 4 groups of 4-cells

The group of 16-cells, **AX'** occupies all of the lower right sub map; though, we don't circle it on the figure above.

One group of 8-cells is composed of a group of 4-cells in the upper sub map overlaying a similar group in the lower left map. The second group of 8-cells is composed of a similar group of 4-cells in the right sub map overlaying the same group of 4-cells in the lower left map.

The four groups of 4-cells are shown on the Karnaugh map above with the associated product terms. Along with the product terms for the two groups of 8-cells and the group of 16-cells, the final Sum-Of-Products reduction is shown, all seven terms. Counting the **1**s in the map,

there is a total of 16+6+6=28 ones. Before the K-map logic reduction there would have been 28 product terms in our SOP output, each with 6-inputs. The Karnaugh map yielded seven product terms of four or less inputs. This is really what Karnaugh maps are all about!

The wiring diagram is not shown. However, here is the parts list for the 3-bit magnitude comparator for ABC>XYZ using 4 TTL logic family parts:

- 1 ea 7410 triple 3-input NAND gate AX', ABY', BX'Y'
- 2 ea 7420 dual 4-input NAND gate ABCZ', ACY'Z', BCX'Z', CX'Y'Z'
- 1 ea 7430 8-input NAND gate for output of 7-P-terms

- **REVIEW:**
- Boolean algebra, Karnaugh maps, and CAD (Computer Aided Design) are methods of logic simplification. The goal of logic simplification is a minimal cost solution.
- A minimal cost solution is a valid logic reduction with the minimum number of gates with the minimum number of inputs.
- Venn diagrams allow us to visualize Boolean expressions, easing the transition to Karnaugh maps.
- Karnaugh map cells are organized in Gray code order so that we may visualize redundancy in Boolean expressions which results in simplification.
- The more common Sum-Of-Products (Sum of Minters) expressions are implemented as AND gates (products) feeding a single OR gate (sum).
- Sum-Of-Products expressions (AND-OR logic) are equivalent to a NAND-NAND implementation. All AND gates and OR gates are replaced by NAND gates.
- Less often used, Product-Of-Sums expressions are implemented as OR gates (sums) feeding into a single AND gate (product). Product-Of-Sums expressions are based on the **0**s, maxterms, in a Karnaugh map.

Chapter 9

COMBINATIONAL LOGIC FUNCTIONS

Contents

Original author: David Zitzelsberger

9.1 Introduction

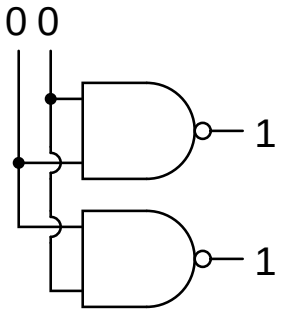
The term ”combinational” comes to us from mathematics. In mathematics a combination is an unordered set, which is a formal way to say that nobody cares which order the items came in. Most games work this way, if you rolled dice one at a time and get a 2 followed by a 3 it is the same as if you had rolled a 3 followed by a 2. With combinational logic, the circuit produces the same output regardless of the order the inputs are changed.

There are circuits which depend on the when the inputs change, these circuits are called sequential logic. Even though you will not find the term ”sequential logic” in the chapter titles, the next several chapters will discuss sequential logic.

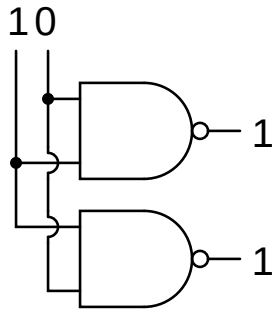
Practical circuits will have a mix of combinational and sequential logic, with sequential logic making sure everything happens in order and combinational logic performing functions like arithmetic, logic, or conversion.

You have already used combinational circuits. Each logic gate discussed previously is a combinational logic function. Lets follow how two NAND gate works if we provide them inputs in different orders.

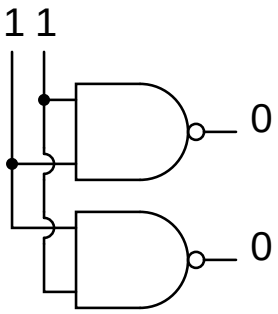
We begin with both inputs being 0.



We then set one input high.



We then set the other input high.



So NAND gates do not care about the order of the inputs, and you will find the same true of all the other gates covered up to this point (AND, XOR, OR, NOR, XNOR, and NOT).

9.2 A Half-Adder

As a first example of useful combinational logic, let's build a device that can add two binary digits together. We can quickly calculate what the answers should be:

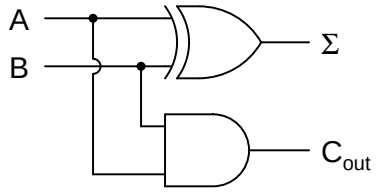
`0 + 0 = 0` `0 + 1 = 1` `1 + 0 = 1` $1 + 1 = 10_2$

So we well need two inputs (a and b) and two outputs. The low order output will be called Σ because it represents the sum, and the high order output will be called C_{out} because it represents the carry out.

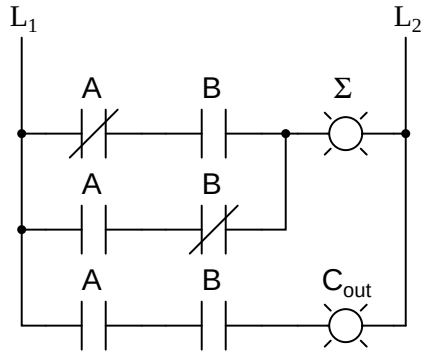
The truth table is

A	B	Σ	C_{out}
0	0	0	0
0	1	1	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

Simplifying boolean equations or making some Karnaugh map will produce the same circuit shown below, but start by looking at the results. The Σ column is our familiar XOR gate, while the C_{out} column is the AND gate. This device is called a half-adder for reasons that will make sense in the next section.



or in ladder logic



9.3 A Full-Adder

The half-adder is extremely useful until you want to add more that one binary digit quantities. The slow way to develop a two binary digit adders would be to make a truth table and reduce it. Then when you decide to make a three binary digit adder, do it again. Then when you decide to

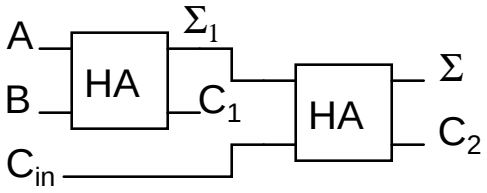
make a four digit adder, do it again. Then when ... The circuits would be fast, but development time would be slow.

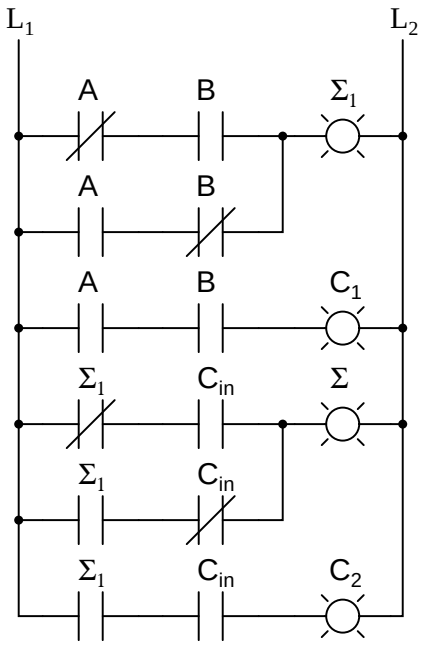
Looking at a two binary digit sum shows what we need to extend addition to multiple binary digits.

```
11
 11
 11
---
110
```

Look at how many inputs the middle column uses. Our adder needs three inputs; a, b, and the carry from the previous sum, and we can use our two-input adder to build a three input adder.

Σ is the easy part. Normal arithmetic tells us that if Σ = a + b + C_{in} and Σ_1 = a + b, then Σ = Σ_1 + C_{in}.





What do we do with C_1 and C_2? Let's look at three input sums and quickly calculate:

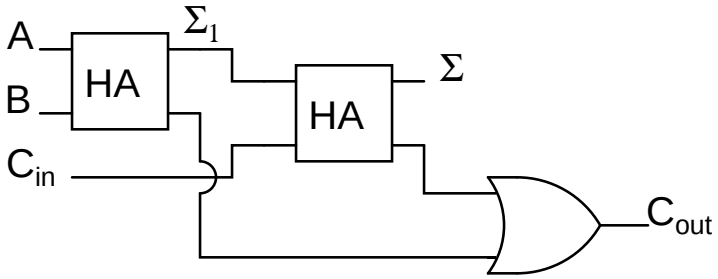
C_{in} + a + b = ?

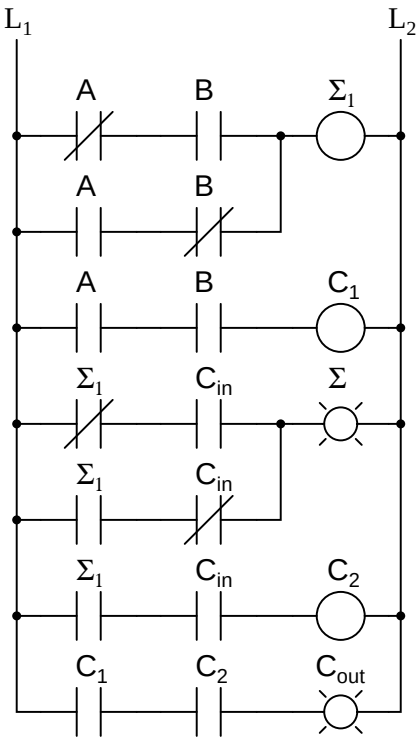
0 + 0 + 0 = 0 0 + 0 + 1 = 1 0 + 1 + 0 = 1 0 + 1 + 1 = 10

```
1 + 0 + 0 = 1          1 + 0 + 1 = 10          1 + 1 + 0 = 10          1 +
1 + 1 = 11
```

If you have any concern about the low order bit, please confirm that the circuit and ladder calculate it correctly.

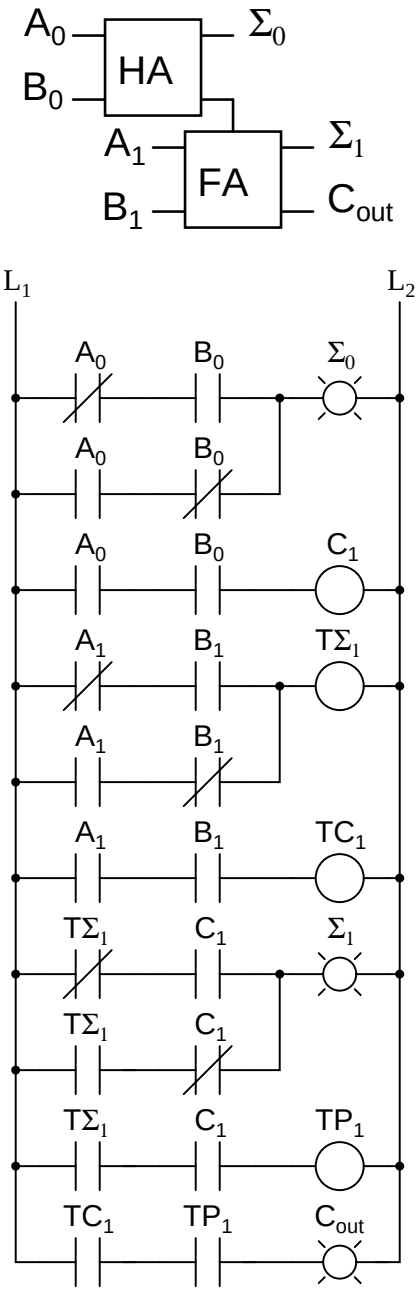
In order to calculate the high order bit, notice that it is 1 in both cases when a + b produces a C_1. Also, the high order bit is 1 when a + b produces a Σ_1 and C_{in} is a 1. So We will have a carry when C_1 OR (Σ_1 AND C_{in}). Our complete three input adder is:





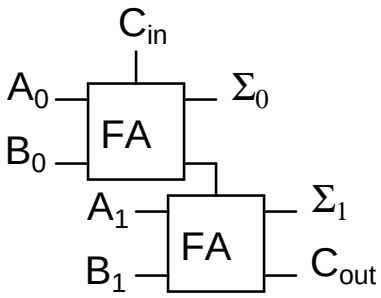
For some designs, being able to eliminate one or more types of gates can be important, and you can replace the final OR gate with an XOR gate without changing the results.

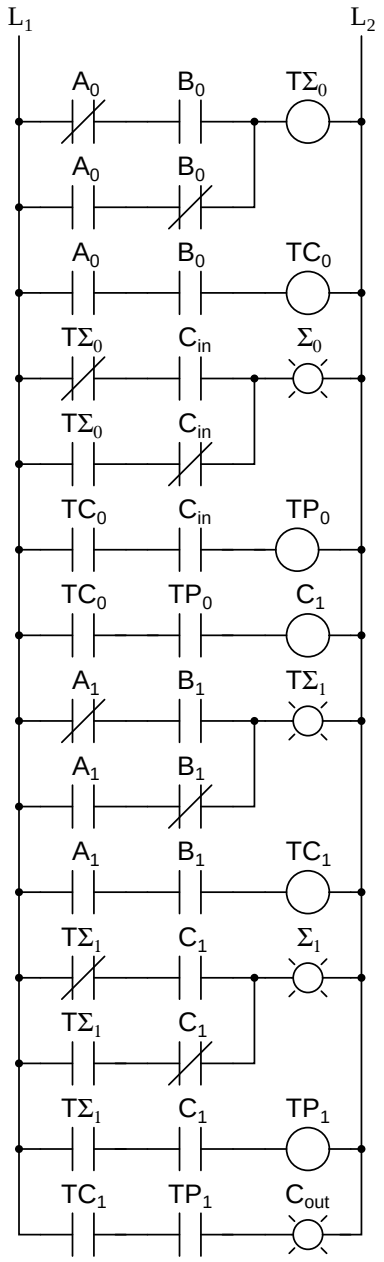
We can now connect two adders to add 2 bit quantities.



A_0 is the low order bit of A, A_1 is the high order bit of A, B_0 is the low order bit of B, B_1 is the high order bit of B, $\Sigma_0$is the low order bit of the sum, Σ_1 is the high order bit of the sum, and C_{out} is the Carry.

A two binary digit adder would never be made this way. Instead the lowest order bits would also go through a full adder too.


C_{in}
A_0
B_0
FA
Σ_0
A_1
B_1
FA
Σ_1
C_{out}



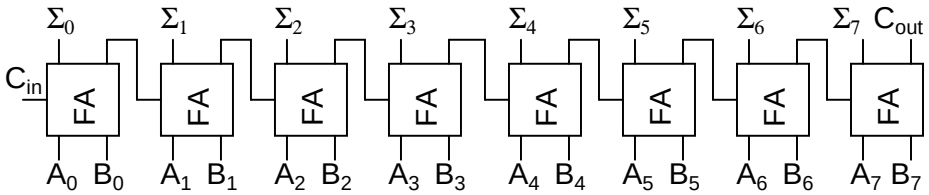
There are several reasons for this, one being that we can then allow a circuit to determine whether the lowest order carry should be included in the sum. This allows for the chaining of even larger sums. Consider two different ways to look at a four bit sum.

```
111              1<-+  11<+-
 0110               |  01  |  10
 1011               |  10  |  11
```

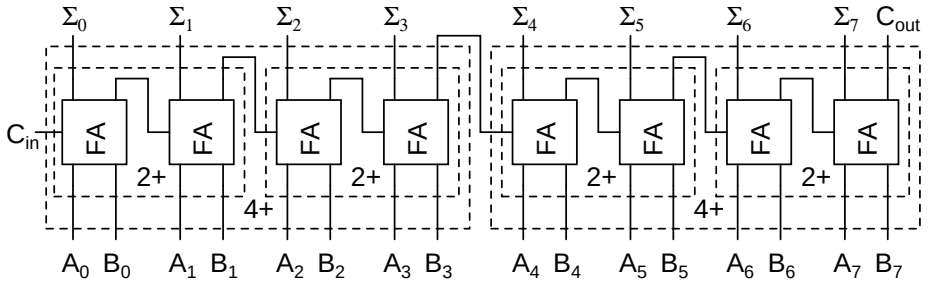
```
-----          -  | ---  | ---
10001          1  +-100  +-101
```

If we allow the program to add a two bit number and remember the carry for later, then use that carry in the next sum the program can add any number of bits the user wants even though we have only provided a two-bit adder. Small PLCs can also be chained together for larger numbers.

These full adders can also can be expanded to any number of bits space allows. As an example, here's how to do an 8 bit adder.



This is the same result as using the two 2-bit adders to make a 4-bit adder and then using two 4-bit adders to make an 8-bit adder or re-duplicating ladder logic and updating the numbers.



Each "2+" is a 2-bit adder and made of two full adders. Each "4+" is a 4-bit adder and made of two 2-bit adders. And the result of two 4-bit adders is the same 8-bit adder we used full adders to build.

For any large combinational circuit there are generally two approaches to design: you can take simpler circuits and replicate them; or you can design the complex circuit as a complete device.

Using simpler circuits to build complex circuits allows a you to spend less time designing but then requires more time for signals to propagate through the transistors. The 8-bit adder design above has to wait for all the $C_{x_{out}}$ signals to move from A_0 + B_0 up to the inputs of Σ_7.

If a designer builds an 8-bit adder as a complete device simplified to a sum of products, then each signal just travels through one NOT gate, one AND gate and one OR gate. A seventeen input device has a truth table with 131,072 entries, and reducing 131,072 entries to a sum of products will take some time.

When designing for systems that have a maximum allowed response time to provide the final result, you can begin by using simpler circuits and then attempt to replace portions of the circuit that are too slow. That way you spend most of your time on the portions of a circuit that matter.

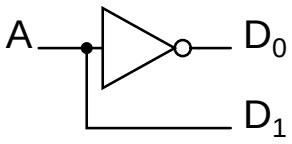
9.4 Decoder

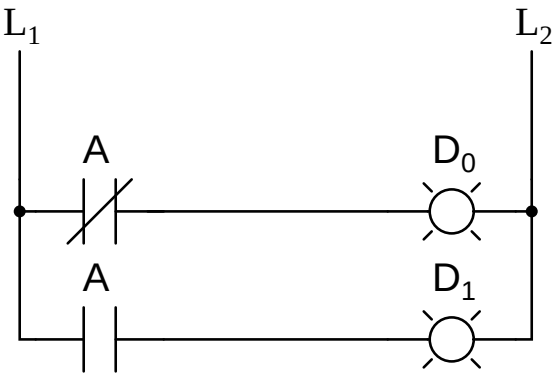
A decoder is a circuit that changes a code into a set of signals. It is called a decoder because it does the reverse of encoding, but we will begin our study of encoders and decoders with decoders because they are simpler to design.

A common type of decoder is the line decoder which takes an n-digit binary number and decodes it into 2^n data lines. The simplest is the 1-to-2 line decoder. The truth table is

A	D_1	D_0
0	0	1
1	1	0

A is the address and D is the dataline. D_0 is NOT A and D_1 is A. The circuit looks like

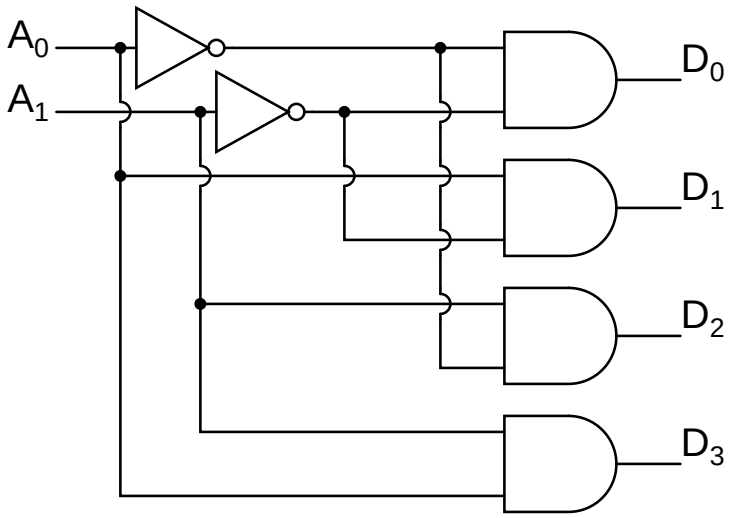


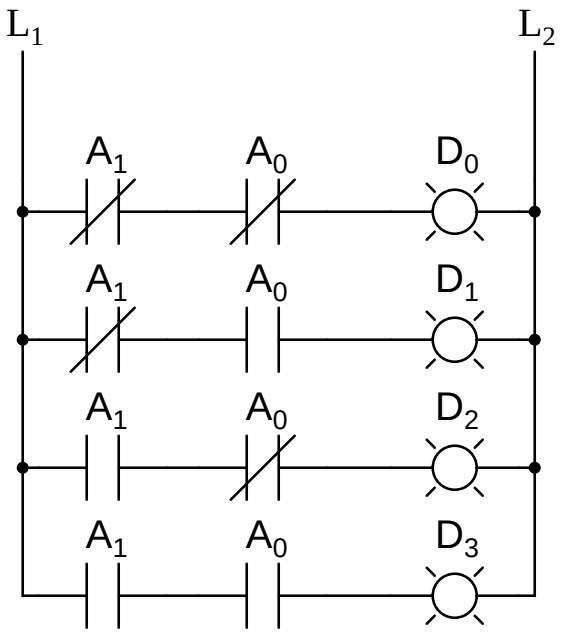


Only slightly more complex is the 2-to-4 line decoder. The truth table is

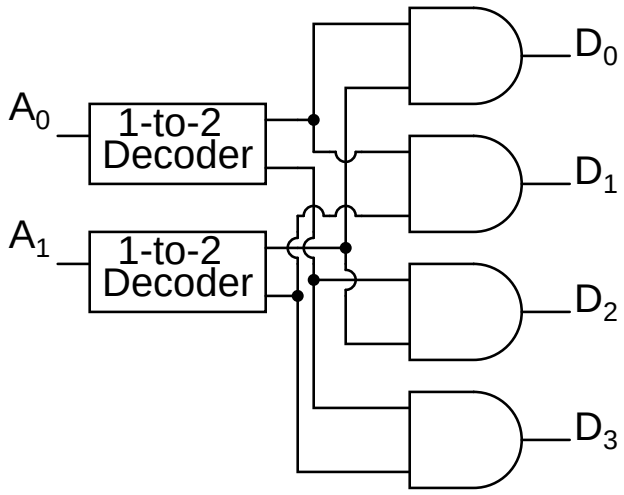
A_1	A_0	D_3	D_2	D_1	D_0
0	0	0	0	0	1
0	1	0	0	1	0
1	0	0	1	0	0
1	1	1	0	0	0

Developed into a circuit it looks like



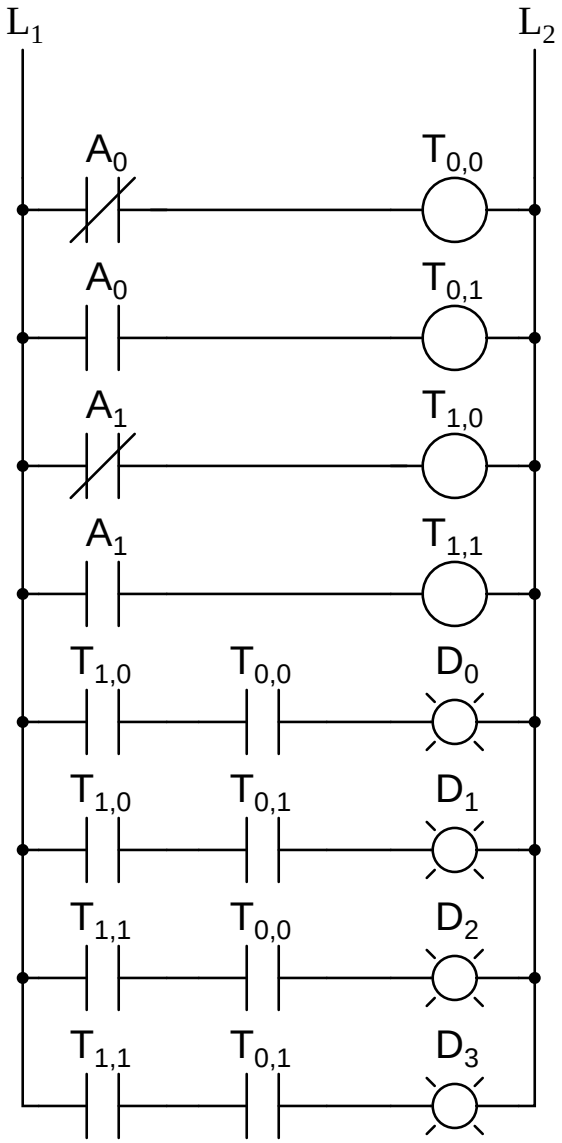


Larger line decoders can be designed in a similar fashion, but just like with the binary adder there is a way to make larger decoders by combining smaller decoders. An alternate circuit for the 2-to-4 line decoder is



Replacing the 1-to-2 Decoders with their circuits will show that both circuits are equivalent. In a similar fashion a 3-to-8 line decoder can be made from a 1-to-2 line decoder and a 2-to-4 line decoder, and a 4-to-16 line decoder can be made from two 2-to-4 line decoders.

You might also consider making a 2-to-4 decoder ladder from 1-to-2 decoder ladders. If you do it might look something like this:



For some logic it may be required to build up logic like this. For an eight-bit adder we only know how to sum eight bits by summing one bit at a time. Usually it is easier to design ladder logic from boolean equations or truth tables rather than design logic gates and then ”translate” that into ladder logic.

A typical application of a line decoder circuit is to select among multiple devices. A circuit needing to select among sixteen devices could have sixteen control lines to select which device should ”listen”. With a decoder only four control lines are needed.

9.5 Encoder

An encoder is a circuit that changes a set of signals into a code. Lets begin making a 2-to-1 line encoder truth table by reversing the 1-to-2 decoder truth table.

D_1	D_0	A
0	1	0
1	0	1

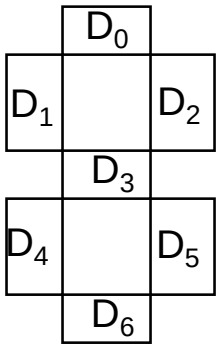
table.

This truth table is a little short. A complete truth table would be

D_1	D_0	A
0	0	
0	1	0
1	0	1
1	1	

One question we need to answer is what to do with those other inputs? Do we ignore them? Do we have them generate an additional error output? In many circuits this problem is solved by adding sequential logic in order to know not just what input is active but also which order the inputs became active.

A more useful application of combinational encoder design is a binary to 7-segment encoder. The seven segments are given according



Our truth table is:

I_3	I_2	I_1	I_0	D_6	D_5	D_4	D_3	D_2	D_1	D_0
0	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	1
0	0	0	1	0	0	1	0	0	1	0
0	0	1	0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1
0	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1
0	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	0	1	0
0	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0	1	1
0	1	1	0	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
0	1	1	1	1	0	1	0	0	1	0
1	0	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
1	0	0	1	1	1	1	1	0	1	1

Deciding what to do with the remaining six entries of the truth table is easier with this circuit. This circuit should not be expected to encode an undefined combination of inputs, so we can leave them as ”don’t care” when we design the circuit. The boolean equations are

$$D_0 = I_3 + I_1 + \bar{I}_3\bar{I}_2\bar{I}_1\bar{I}_0 + \bar{I}_3 I_2\bar{I}_1 I_0$$
$$D_1 = I_3 + \bar{I}_2\bar{I}_1 + I_2\bar{I}_1 + I_2\bar{I}_0$$
$$D_2 = I_2 + \bar{I}_3 I_2\bar{I}_1\bar{I}_0 + \bar{I}_3 I_2 I_1 I_0$$
$$D_3 = I_3 + I_1\bar{I}_0 + I_2\bar{I}_1$$
$$D_4 = I_1\bar{I}_0 + \bar{I}_2\bar{I}_1\bar{I}_0$$
$$D_5 = I_3 + I_2 + I_0$$
$$D_6 = I_3 + I_1\bar{I}_0 + \bar{I}_3\bar{I}_2 I_1 + \bar{I}_3\bar{I}_2\bar{I}_1\bar{I}_0 + \bar{I}_3 I_2\bar{I}_1 I_0$$

and the circuit is

(See Figure 9.1.)

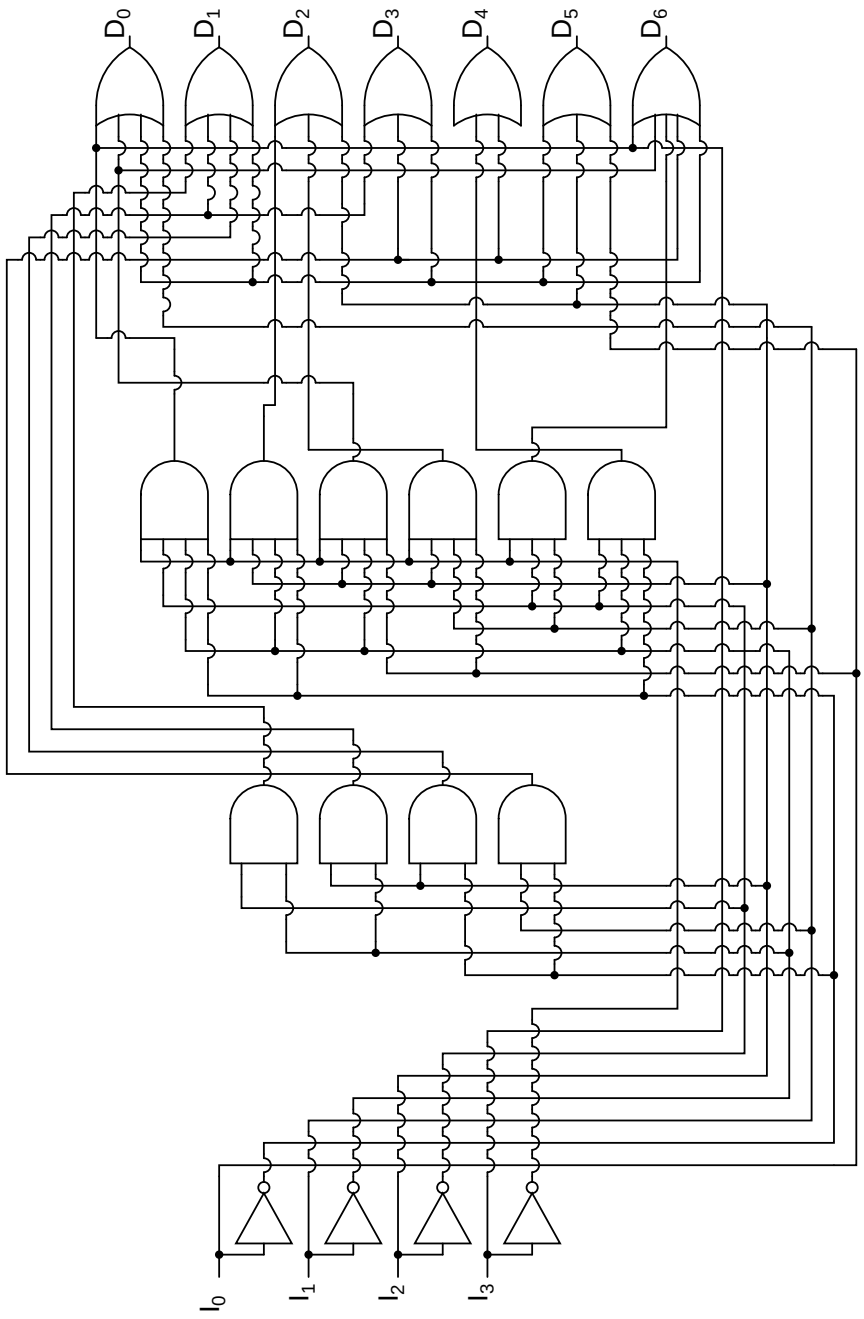
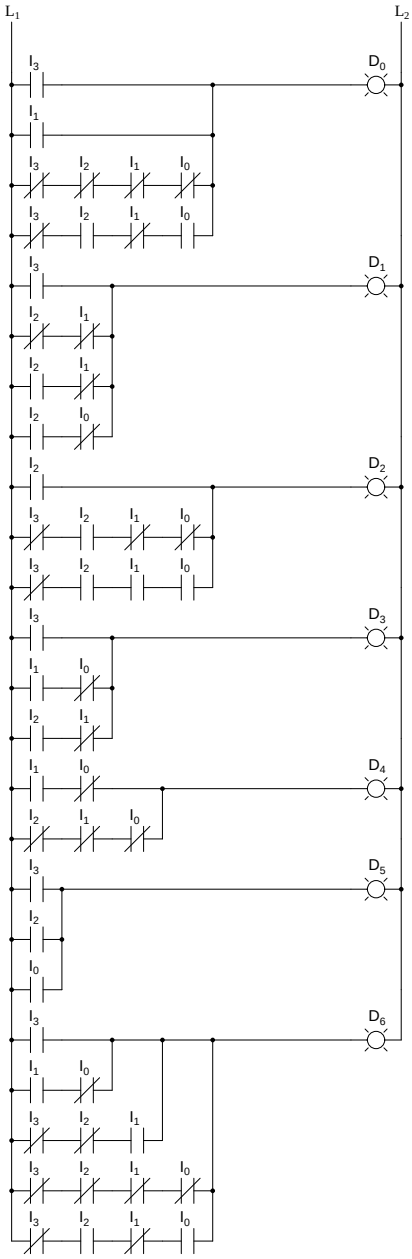


Figure 9.1: *Seven-segment decoder gate level diagram.*

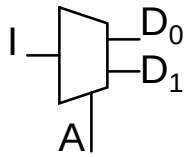


9.6 Demultiplexers

A demultiplexer, sometimes abbreviated dmux, is a circuit that has one input and more than one output. It is used when a circuit wishes to send a signal to one of many devices. This

description sounds similar to the description given for a decoder, but a decoder is used to select among many devices while a demultiplexer is used to send a signal among many devices.

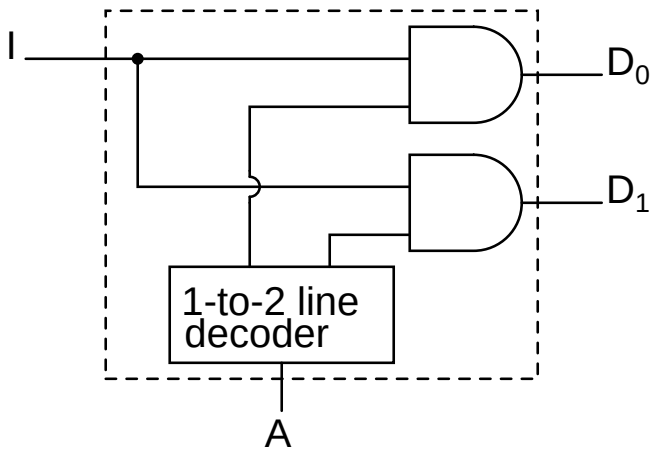
A demultiplexer is used often enough that it has its own schematic symbol

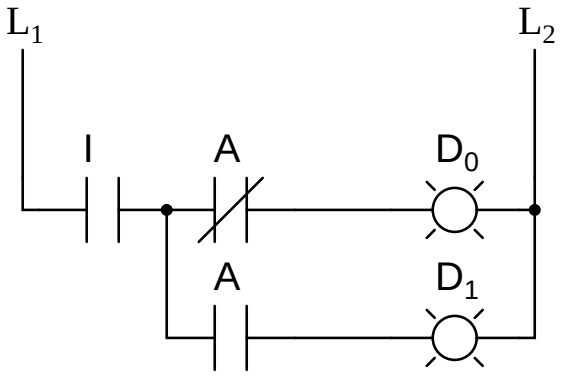


The truth table for a 1-to-2 demultiplexer is

I	A	D_0	D_1
0	0	0	0
0	1	0	0
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1

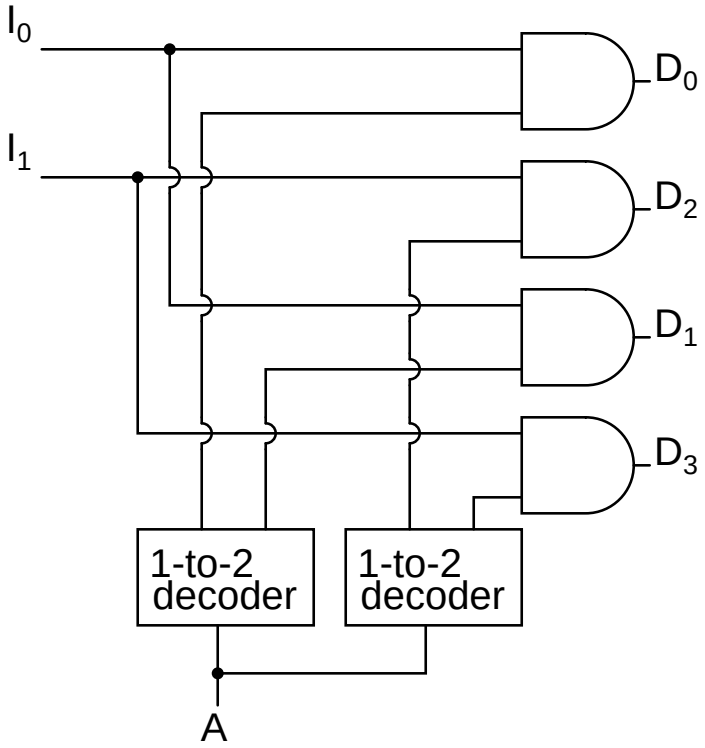
Using our 1-to-2 decoder as part of the circuit, we can express this circuit easily



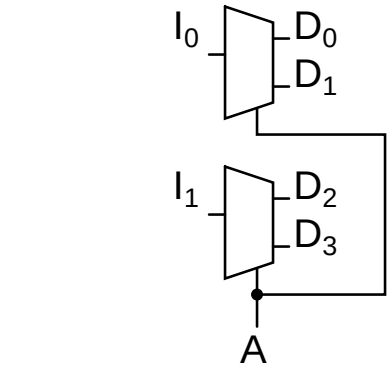


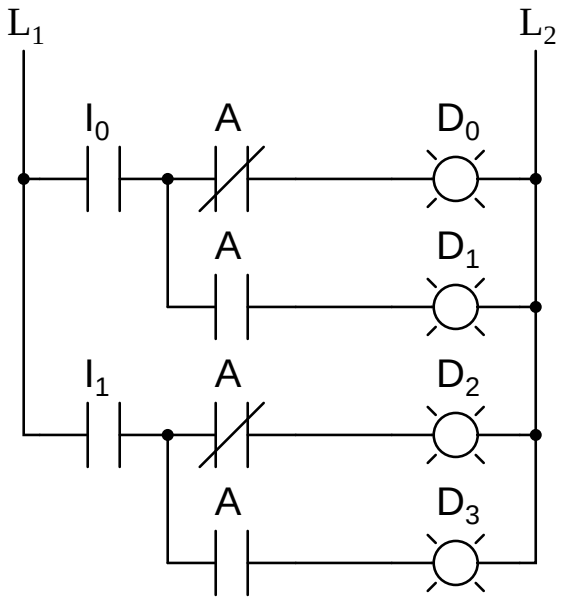
This circuit can be expanded two different ways. You can increase the number of signals that get transmitted, or you can increase the number of inputs that get passed through. To increase the number of inputs that get passed through just requires a larger line decoder. Increasing the number of signals that get transmitted is even easier.

As an example, a device that passes one set of two signals among four signals is a ”two-bit 1-to-2 demultiplexer”. Its circuit is



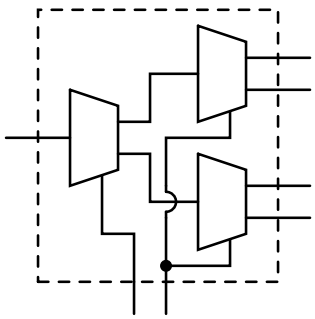
or by expressing the circuit as





shows that it could be two one-bit 1-to-2 demultiplexers without changing its expected behavior.

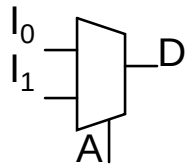
A 1-to-4 demultiplexer can easily be built from 1-to-2 demultiplexers as follows.



9.7 Multiplexers

A multiplexer, abbreviated mux, is a device that has multiple inputs and one output.

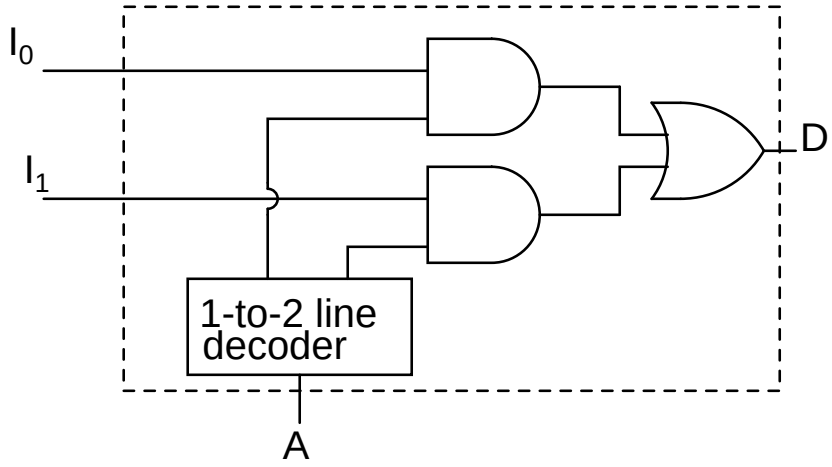
The schematic symbol for multiplexers is

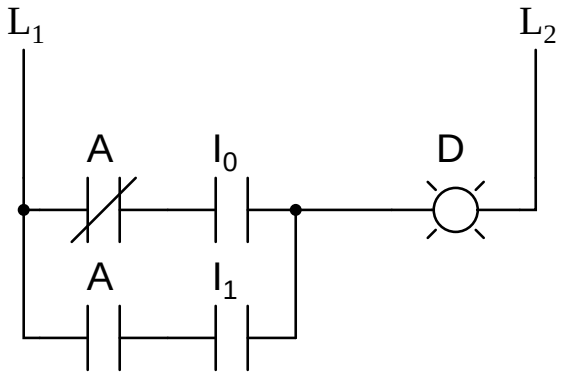


The truth table for a 2-to-1 multiplexer is

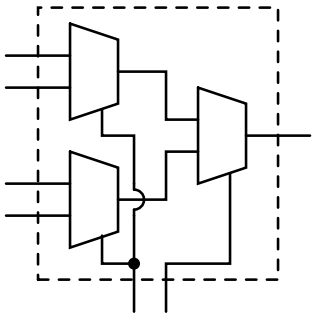
I_1	I_0	A	D
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	1

Using a 1-to-2 decoder as part of the circuit, we can express this circuit easily.





Multiplexers can also be expanded with the same naming conventions as demultiplexers. A 4-to-1 multiplexer circuit is

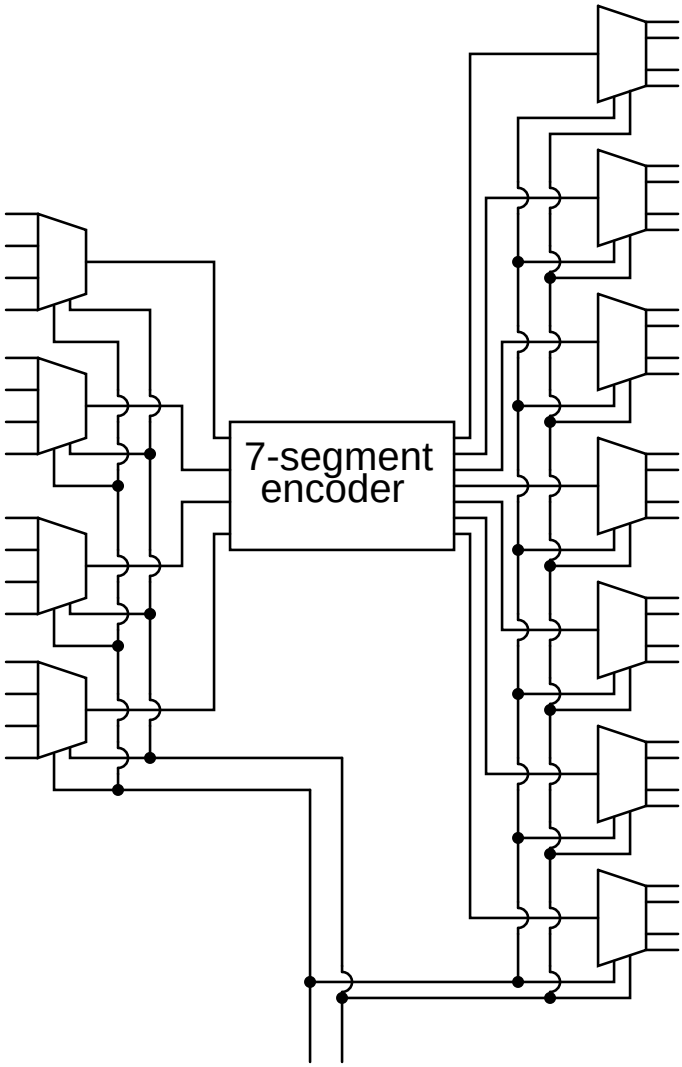


That is the formal definition of a multiplexer. Informally, there is a lot of confusion. Both demultiplexers and multiplexers have similar names, abbreviations, schematic symbols and circuits, so confusion is easy. The term multiplexer, and the abbreviation mux, are often used to also mean a demultiplexer, or a multiplexer and a demultiplexer working together. So when you hear about a multiplexer, it may mean something quite different.

9.8 Using multiple combinational circuits

As an example of using several circuits together, we are going to make a device that will have 16 inputs, representing a four digit number, to a four digit 7-segment display but using just one binary-to-7-segment encoder.

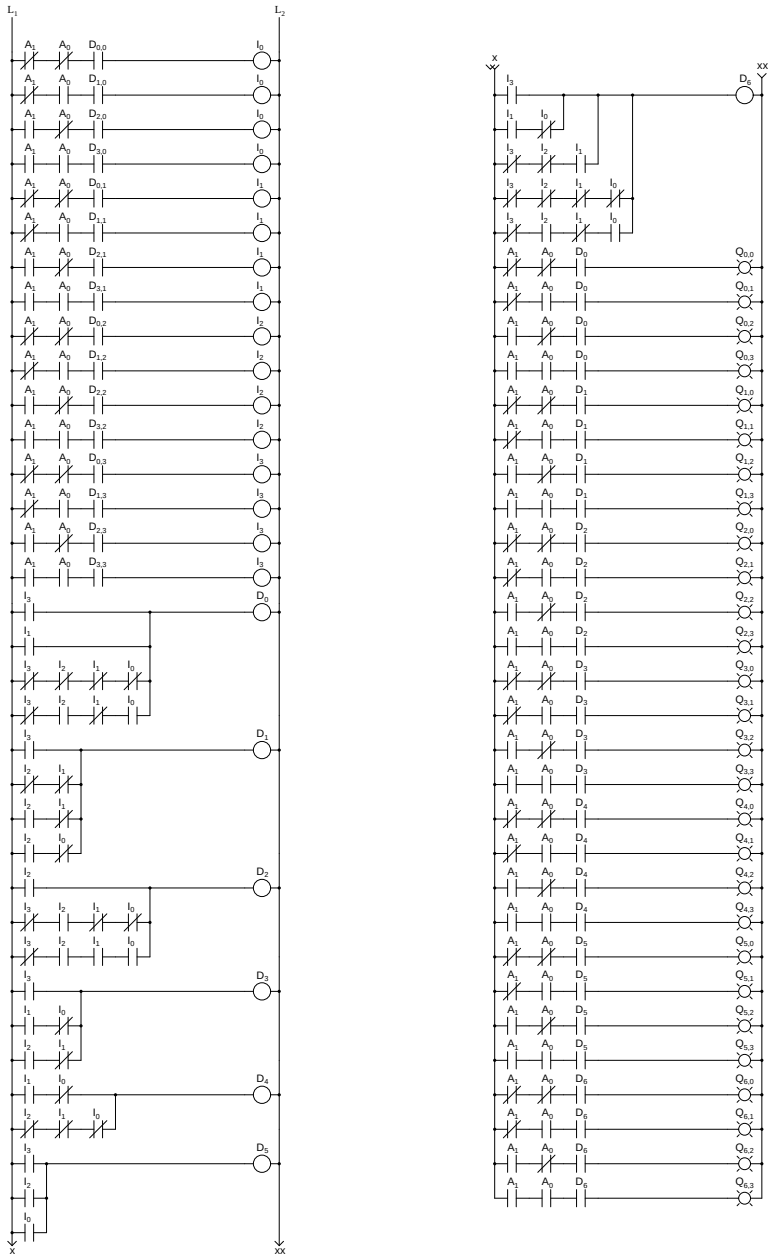
First, the overall architecture of our circuit provides what looks like our the description provided.



Follow this circuit through and you can confirm that it matches the description given above. There are 16 primary inputs. There are two more inputs used to select which digit will be displayed. There are 28 outputs to control the four digit 7-segment display. Only four of the primary inputs are encoded at a time. You may have noticed a potential question though.

When one of the digits are selected, what do the other three digits display? Review the circuit for the demultiplexers and notice that any line not selected by the A input is zero. So the other three digits are blank. We don't have a problem, only one digit displays at a time.

Let's get a perspective on just how complex this circuit is by looking at the equivalent ladder logic.



Notice how quickly this large circuit was developed from smaller parts. This is true of most complex circuits: they are composed of smaller parts allowing a designer to abstract away some complexity and understand the circuit as a whole. Sometimes a designer can even take components that others have designed and remove the detail design work.

In addition to the added quantity of gates, this design suffers from one additional weakness. You can only see one display one digit at a time. If there was some way to rotate through the

four digits quickly, you could have the appearance of all four digits being displayed at the same time. That is a job for a sequential circuit, which is the subject of the next several chapters.

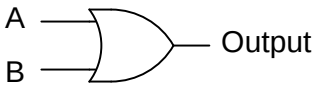
Chapter 10

MULTIVIBRATORS

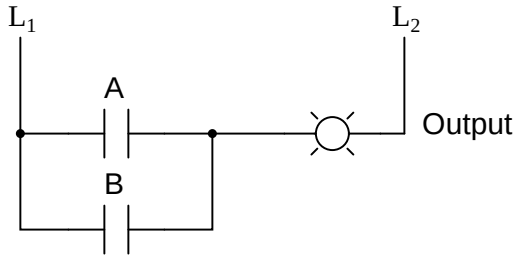
Contents

10.1 Digital logic with feedback

With simple gate and combinational logic circuits, there is a definite output state for any given input state. Take the truth table of an OR gate, for instance:

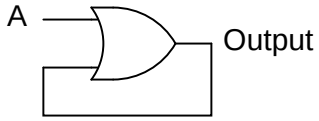


A	B	Output
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

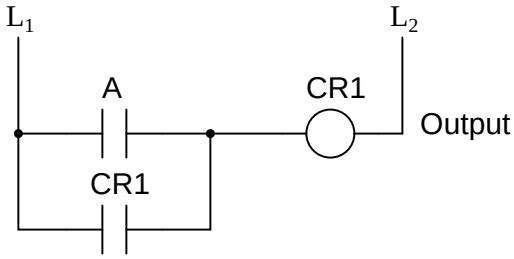


For each of the four possible combinations of input states (0-0, 0-1, 1-0, and 1-1), there is one, definite, unambiguous output state. Whether we're dealing with a multitude of cascaded gates or a single gate, that output state is determined by the truth table(s) for the gate(s) in the circuit, and nothing else.

However, if we alter this gate circuit so as to give signal feedback from the output to one of the inputs, strange things begin to happen:



A	Output
0	?
1	1

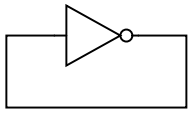


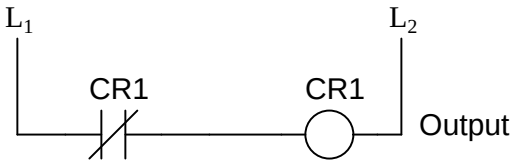
We know that if A is 1, the output *must* be 1, as well. Such is the nature of an OR gate: any "high" (1) input forces the output "high" (1). If A is "low" (0), however, we cannot guarantee the logic level or state of the output in our truth table. Since the output feeds back to one of the OR gate's inputs, and we know that any 1 input to an OR gates makes the output 1, this circuit will "latch" in the 1 output state after any time that A is 1. When A is 0, the output could be either 0 or 1, *depending on the circuit's prior state!* The proper way to complete the above truth table would be to insert the word *latch* in place of the question mark, showing that the output maintains its last state when A is 0.

Any digital circuit employing feedback is called a *multivibrator*. The example we just explored with the OR gate was a very simple example of what is called a *bistable* multivibrator. It is called "bistable" because it can hold stable in one of *two* possible output states, either 0 or 1. There are also *monostable* multivibrators, which have only *one* stable output state (that other state being momentary), which we'll explore later; and *astable* multivibrators, which have no stable state (oscillating back and forth between an output of 0 and 1).

A very simple astable multivibrator is an inverter with the output fed directly back to the input:

Inverter with feedback

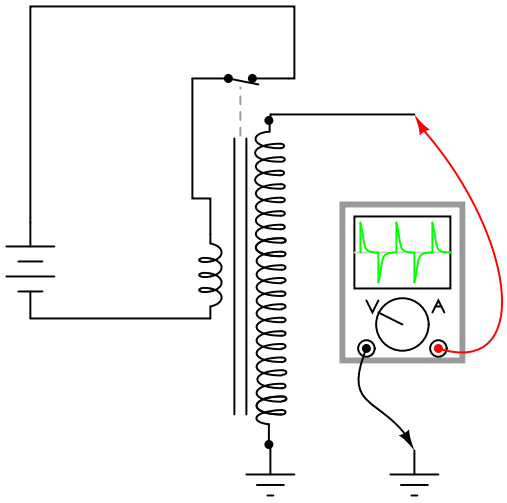




When the input is 0, the output switches to 1. That 1 output gets fed back to the input as a 1. When the input is 1, the output switches to 0. That 0 output gets fed back to the input as a 0, and the cycle repeats itself. The result is a high frequency (several megahertz) oscillator, if implemented with a solid-state (semiconductor) inverter gate:

If implemented with relay logic, the resulting oscillator will be considerably slower, cycling at a frequency well within the audio range. The *buzzer* or *vibrator* circuit thus formed was used extensively in early radio circuitry, as a way to convert steady, low-voltage DC power into pulsating DC power which could then be stepped up in voltage through a transformer to produce the high voltage necessary for operating the vacuum tube amplifiers. Henry Ford's engineers also employed the buzzer/transformer circuit to create continuous high voltage for operating the spark plugs on Model T automobile engines:

"Model T" high-voltage ignition coil



Borrowing terminology from the old mechanical buzzer (vibrator) circuits, solid-state circuit

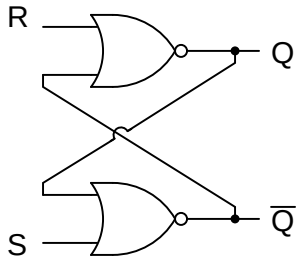
engineers referred to any circuit with two or more vibrators linked together as a *multivibrator*. The astable multivibrator mentioned previously, with only one ”vibrator,” is more commonly implemented with multiple gates, as we’ll see later.

The most interesting and widely used multivibrators are of the bistable variety, so we’ll explore them in detail now.

10.2 The S-R latch

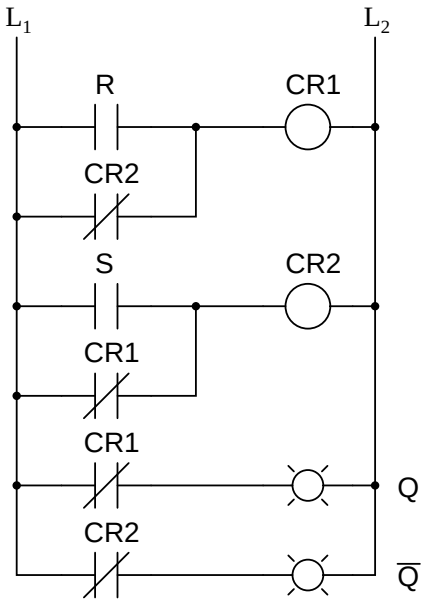
A bistable multivibrator has *two* stable states, as indicated by the prefix *bi* in its name. Typically, one state is referred to as *set* and the other as *reset*. The simplest bistable device, therefore, is known as a *set-reset*, or S-R, latch.

To create an S-R latch, we can wire two NOR gates in such a way that the output of one feeds back to the input of another, and vice versa, like this:



S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$
0	0	latch	latch
0	1	0	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	0

The Q and not-Q outputs are supposed to be in opposite states. I say ”supposed to” because making both the S and R inputs equal to 1 results in both Q and not-Q being 0. For this reason, having both S and R equal to 1 is called an *invalid* or *illegal* state for the S-R multivibrator. Otherwise, making S=1 and R=0 ”sets” the multivibrator so that Q=1 and not-Q=0. Conversely, making R=1 and S=0 ”resets” the multivibrator in the opposite state. When S and R are both equal to 0, the multivibrator’s outputs ”latch” in their prior states. Note how the same multivibrator function can be implemented in ladder logic, with the same results:



S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$
0	0	latch	latch
0	1	0	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	0

By definition, a condition of Q=1 and not-Q=0 is *set*. A condition of Q=0 and not-Q=1 is *reset*. These terms are universal in describing the output states of any multivibrator circuit.

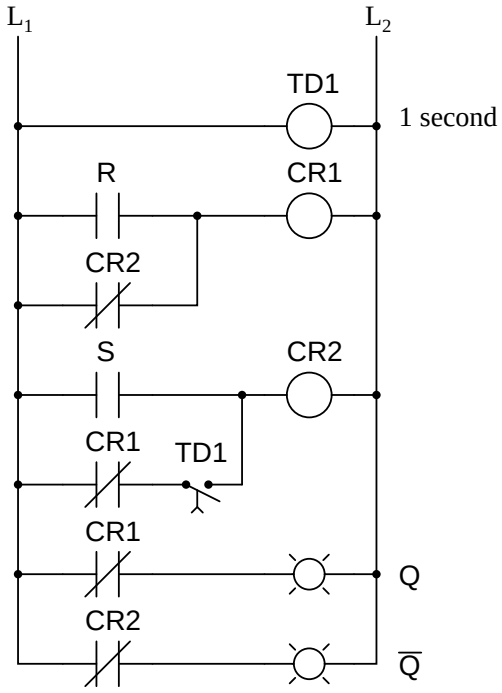
The astute observer will note that the initial power-up condition of either the gate or ladder variety of S-R latch is such that both gates (coils) start in the de-energized mode. As such, one would expect that the circuit will start up in an invalid condition, with both Q and not-Q outputs being in the same state. Actually, this is true! However, the invalid condition is unstable with both S and R inputs inactive, and the circuit will quickly stabilize in either the set or reset condition because one gate (or relay) is bound to react a little faster than the other. If both gates (or coils) were *precisely identical*, they would oscillate between high and low like an astable multivibrator upon power-up without ever reaching a point of stability! Fortunately for cases like this, such a precise match of components is a rare possibility.

It must be noted that although an astable (continually oscillating) condition would be extremely rare, there will most likely be a cycle or two of oscillation in the above circuit, and the final state of the circuit (set or reset) after power-up would be unpredictable. The root of the problem is a *race condition* between the two relays CR_1 and CR_2.

A race condition occurs when two mutually-exclusive events are simultaneously initiated through different circuit elements by a single cause. In this case, the circuit elements are relays CR_1 and CR_2, and their de-energized states are mutually exclusive due to the normally-closed interlocking contacts. If one relay coil is de-energized, its normally-closed contact will keep the other coil energized, thus maintaining the circuit in one of two states (set or reset). Interlocking prevents *both* relays from latching. However, if *both* relay coils start in their de-energized states (such as after the whole circuit has been de-energized and is then powered up) both relays will ”race” to become latched on as they receive power (the ”single cause”) through the normally-closed contact of the other relay. One of those relays will inevitably reach that condition before the other, thus opening its normally-closed interlocking contact and de-energizing the other relay coil. Which relay ”wins” this race is dependent on the physical

characteristics of the relays and not the circuit design, so the designer cannot ensure which state the circuit will fall into after power-up.

Race conditions should be avoided in circuit design primarily for the unpredictability that will be created. One way to avoid such a condition is to insert a time-delay relay into the circuit to disable one of the competing relays for a short time, giving the other one a clear advantage. In other words, by purposely slowing down the de-energization of one relay, we ensure that the other relay will always "win" and the race results will always be predictable. Here is an example of how a time-delay relay might be applied to the above circuit to avoid the race condition:

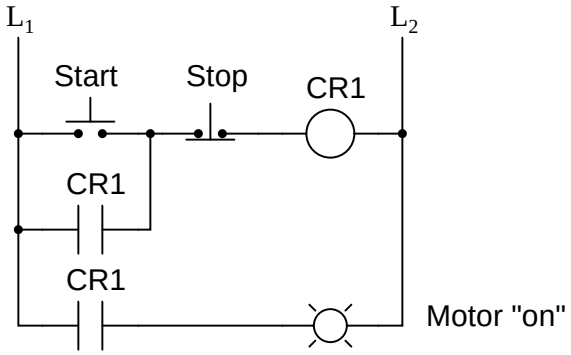


When the circuit powers up, time-delay relay contact TD_1 in the fifth rung down will delay closing for 1 second. Having that contact open for 1 second prevents relay CR_2 from energizing through contact CR_1 in its normally-closed state after power-up. Therefore, relay CR_1 will be allowed to energize first (with a 1-second head start), thus opening the normally-closed CR_1 contact in the fifth rung, preventing CR_2 from being energized without the S input going active. The end result is that the circuit powers up cleanly and predictably in the reset state with S=0 and R=0.

It should be mentioned that race conditions are not restricted to relay circuits. Solid-state logic gate circuits may also suffer from the ill effects of race conditions if improperly designed. Complex computer programs, for that matter, may also incur race problems if improperly designed. Race problems are a possibility for any sequential system, and may not be discovered until some time after initial testing of the system. They can be very difficult problems to detect and eliminate.

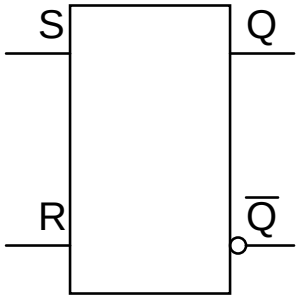
A practical application of an S-R latch circuit might be for starting and stopping a motor,

using normally-open, momentary pushbutton switch contacts for both *start* (S) and *stop* (R) switches, then energizing a motor contactor with either a CR_1 or CR_2 contact (or using a contactor in place of CR_1 or CR_2). Normally, a much simpler ladder logic circuit is employed, such as this:



In the above motor start/stop circuit, the CR_1 contact in parallel with the *start* switch contact is referred to as a "seal-in" contact, because it "seals" or latches control relay CR_1 in the energized state after the *start* switch has been released. To break the "seal," or to "unlatch" or "reset" the circuit, the *stop* pushbutton is pressed, which de-energizes CR_1 and restores the seal-in contact to its normally open status. Notice, however, that this circuit performs much the same function as the S-R latch. Also note that this circuit has no inherent instability problem (if even a remote possibility) as does the double-relay S-R latch design.

In semiconductor form, S-R latches come in prepackaged units so that you don't have to build them from individual gates. They are symbolized as such:

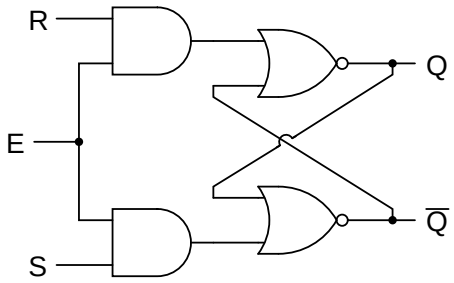


- **REVIEW:**
- A *bistable* multivibrator is one with *two* stable output states.
- In a bistable multivibrator, the condition of Q=1 and not-Q=0 is defined as *set*. A condition of Q=0 and not-Q=1 is conversely defined as *reset*. If Q and not-Q happen to be forced to the same state (both 0 or both 1), that state is referred to as *invalid*.
- In an S-R latch, activation of the S input sets the circuit, while activation of the R input resets the circuit. If both S and R inputs are activated simultaneously, the circuit will be in an invalid condition.

- A *race condition* is a state in a sequential system where two mutually-exclusive events are simultaneously initiated by a single cause.

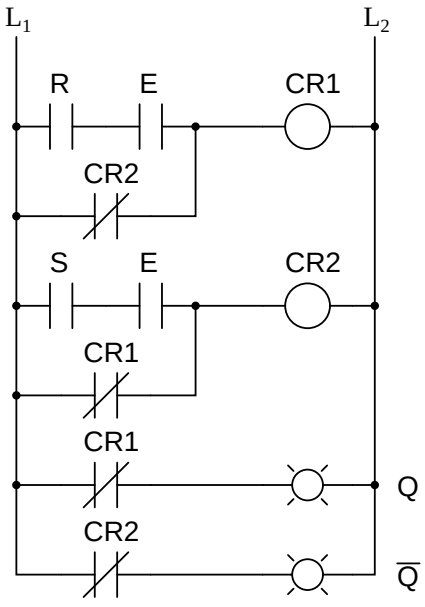
10.3 The gated S-R latch

It is sometimes useful in logic circuits to have a multivibrator which changes state only when certain conditions are met, regardless of its S and R input states. The conditional input is called the *enable*, and is symbolized by the letter E. Study the following example to see how this works:



E	S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$
0	0	0	latch	latch
0	0	1	latch	latch
0	1	0	latch	latch
0	1	1	latch	latch
1	0	0	latch	latch
1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	0

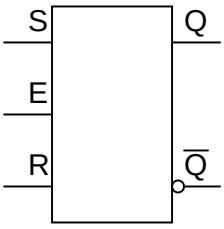
When the E=0, the outputs of the two AND gates are forced to 0, regardless of the states of either S or R. Consequently, the circuit behaves as though S and R were both 0, latching the Q and not-Q outputs in their last states. Only when the enable input is activated (1) will the latch respond to the S and R inputs. Note the identical function in ladder logic:



E	S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$
0	0	0	latch	latch
0	0	1	latch	latch
0	1	0	latch	latch
0	1	1	latch	latch
1	0	0	latch	latch
1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	0

A practical application of this might be the same motor control circuit (with two normally-open pushbutton switches for *start* and *stop*), except with the addition of a master lockout input (E) that disables both pushbuttons from having control over the motor when its low (0).

Once again, these multivibrator circuits are available as prepackaged semiconductor devices, and are symbolized as such:

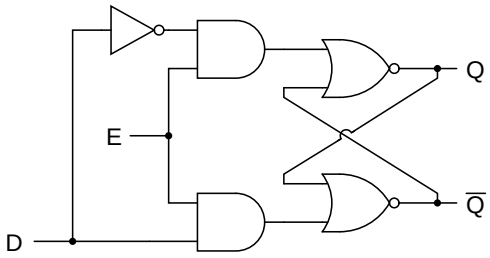


It is also common to see the enable input designated by the letters ”EN” instead of just ”E.”

- **REVIEW:**
- The *enable* input on a multivibrator must be activated for either S or R inputs to have any effect on the output state.
- This enable input is sometimes labeled ”E”, and other times as ”EN”.

10.4 The D latch

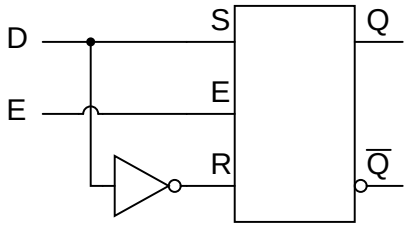
Since the enable input on a gated S-R latch provides a way to latch the Q and not-Q outputs without regard to the status of S or R, we can eliminate one of those inputs to create a multivibrator latch circuit with no ”illegal” input states. Such a circuit is called a D latch, and its internal logic looks like this:



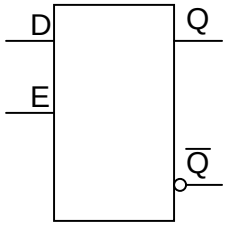
E	D	Q	$\overline{Q}$
0	0	latch	latch
0	1	latch	latch
1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0

Note that the R input has been replaced with the complement (inversion) of the old S input, and the S input has been renamed to D. As with the gated S-R latch, the D latch will not respond to a signal input if the enable input is 0 – it simply stays latched in its last state. When the enable input is 1, however, the Q output follows the D input.

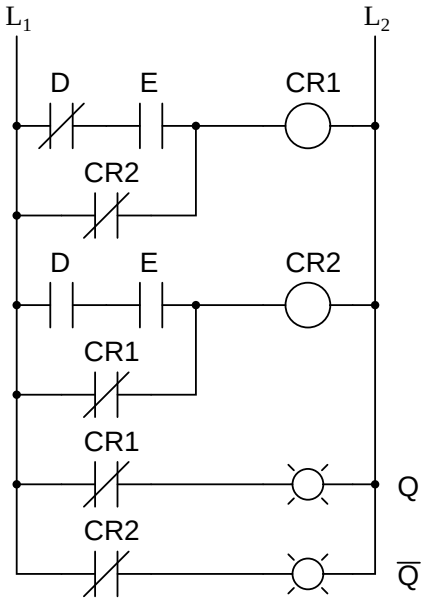
Since the R input of the S-R circuitry has been done away with, this latch has no ”invalid” or ”illegal” state. Q and not-Q are *always* opposite of one another. If the above diagram is confusing at all, the next diagram should make the concept simpler:



Like both the S-R and gated S-R latches, the D latch circuit may be found as its own prepackaged circuit, complete with a standard symbol:



The D latch is nothing more than a gated S-R latch with an inverter added to make R the complement (inverse) of S. Let's explore the ladder logic equivalent of a D latch, modified from the basic ladder diagram of an S-R latch:



E	D	Q	$\overline{Q}$
0	0	latch	latch
0	1	latch	latch
1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0

An application for the D latch is a 1-bit memory circuit. You can "write" (store) a 0 or 1 bit in this latch circuit by making the enable input high (1) and setting D to whatever you want the stored bit to be. When the enable input is made low (0), the latch ignores the status of the D input and merrily holds the stored bit value, outputting at the stored value at Q, and its inverse on output not-Q.

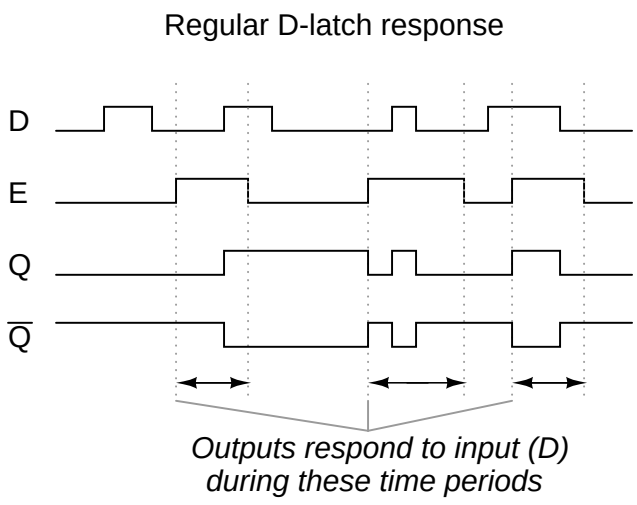
- **REVIEW:**

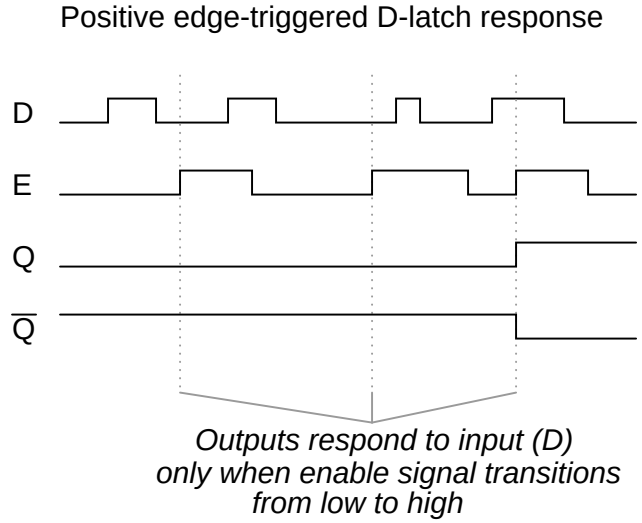
- A D latch is like an S-R latch with only one input: the ”D” input. Activating the D input sets the circuit, and de-activating the D input resets the circuit. Of course, this is only if the enable input (E) is activated as well. Otherwise, the output(s) will be latched, unresponsive to the state of the D input.

- D latches can be used as 1-bit memory circuits, storing either a ”high” or a ”low” state when disabled, and ”reading” new data from the D input when enabled.

10.5 Edge-triggered latches: Flip-Flops

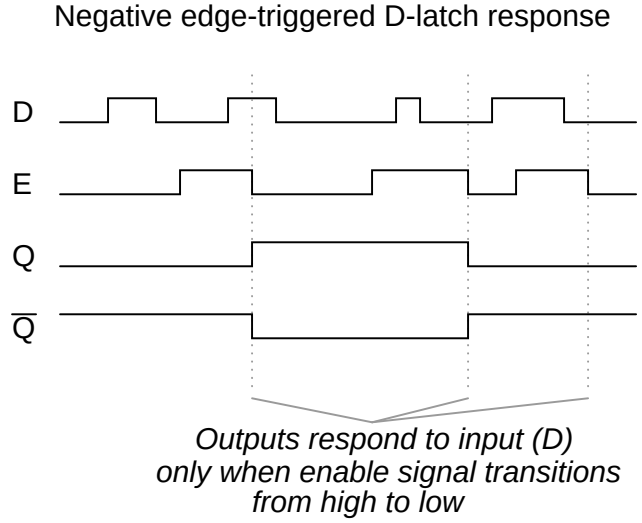
So far, we've studied both S-R and D latch circuits with an enable inputs. The latch responds to the data inputs (S-R or D) only when the enable input is activated. In many digital applications, however, it is desirable to limit the responsiveness of a latch circuit to a very short period of time instead of the entire duration that the enabling input is activated. One method of enabling a multivibrator circuit is called *edge triggering*, where the circuit's data inputs have control only during the time that the enable input is *transitioning* from one state to another. Let's compare timing diagrams for a normal D latch versus one that is edge-triggered:





In the first timing diagram, the outputs respond to input D whenever the enable (E) input is high, for however long it remains high. When the enable signal falls back to a low state, the circuit remains latched. In the second timing diagram, we note a distinctly different response in the circuit output(s): it only responds to the D input during that brief moment of time when the enable signal *changes*, or *transitions*, from low to high. This is known as *positive* edge-triggering.

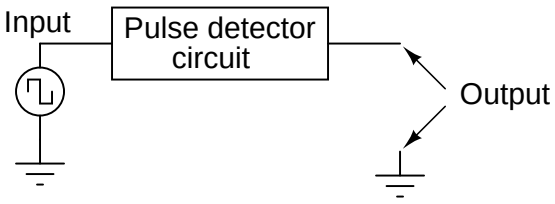
There is such a thing as *negative* edge triggering as well, and it produces the following response to the same input signals:

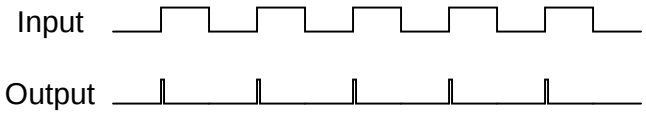


Whenever we enable a multivibrator circuit on the transitional edge of a square-wave enable signal, we call it a *flip-flop* instead of a *latch*. Consequently, and edge-triggered S-R circuit is more properly known as an S-R flip-flop, and an edge-triggered D circuit as a D flip-flop. The enable signal is renamed to be the *clock* signal. Also, we refer to the data inputs (S, R, and D,

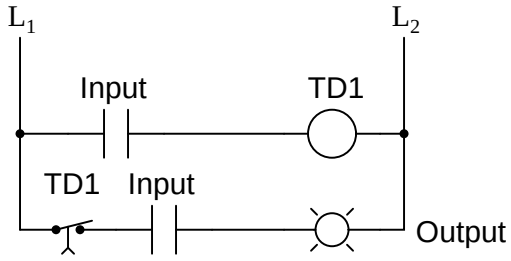
respectively) of these flip-flops as *synchronous* inputs, because they have effect only at the time of the clock pulse edge (transition), thereby synchronizing any output changes with that clock pulse, rather than at the whim of the data inputs.

But, how do we actually accomplish this edge-triggering? To create a "gated" S-R latch from a regular S-R latch is easy enough with a couple of AND gates, but how do we implement logic that only pays attention to the *rising or falling edge* of a changing digital signal? What we need is a digital circuit that outputs a brief pulse whenever the input is activated for an arbitrary period of time, and we can use the output of this circuit to briefly enable the latch. We're getting a little ahead of ourselves here, but this is actually a kind of monostable multivibrator, which for now we'll call a *pulse detector*.

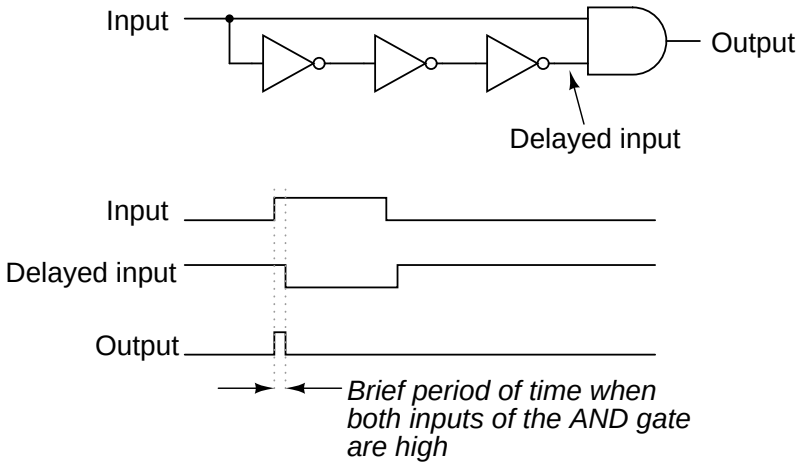




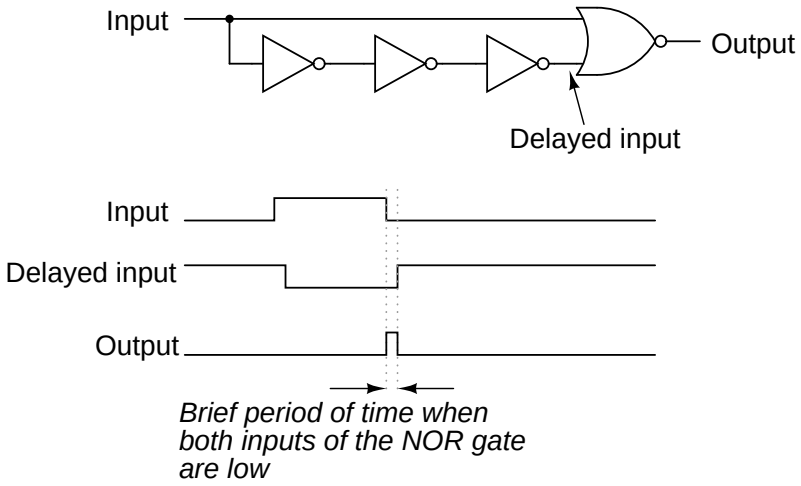
The duration of each output pulse is set by components in the pulse circuit itself. In ladder logic, this can be accomplished quite easily through the use of a time-delay relay with a very short delay time:



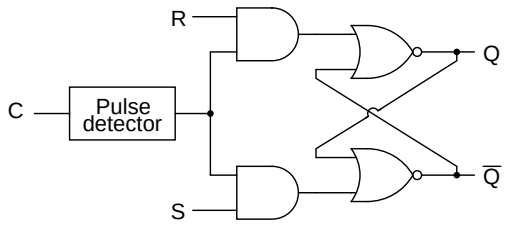
Implementing this timing function with semiconductor components is actually quite easy, as it exploits the inherent time delay within every logic gate (known as *propagation delay*). What we do is take an input signal and split it up two ways, then place a gate or a series of gates in one of those signal paths just to delay it a bit, then have both the original signal and its delayed counterpart enter into a two-input gate that outputs a high signal for the brief moment of time that the delayed signal has not yet caught up to the low-to-high change in the non-delayed signal. An example circuit for producing a clock pulse on a low-to-high input signal transition is shown here:



This circuit may be converted into a negative-edge pulse detector circuit with only a change of the final gate from AND to NOR:



Now that we know how a pulse detector can be made, we can show it attached to the enable input of a latch to turn it into a flip-flop. In this case, the circuit is a S-R flip-flop:

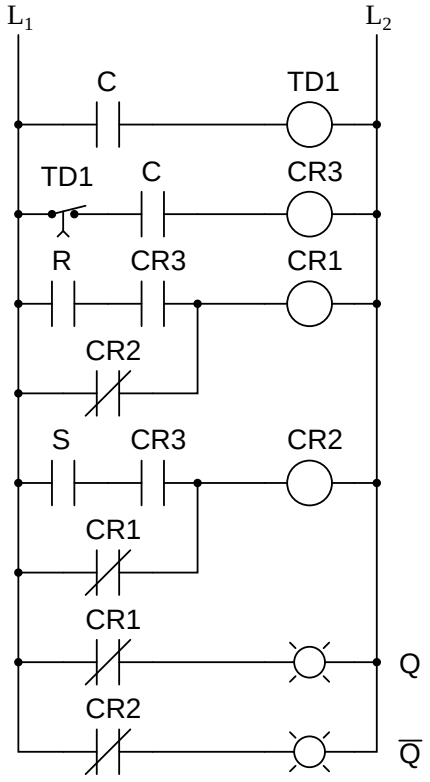


C	S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$
⌟⌜	0	0	latch	latch
⌟⌜	0	1	0	1
⌟⌜	1	0	1	0
⌟⌜	1	1	0	0
x	0	0	latch	latch
x	0	1	latch	latch
x	1	0	latch	latch
x	1	1	latch	latch

Only when the clock signal (C) is transitioning from low to high is the circuit responsive to

the S and R inputs. For any other condition of the clock signal ("x") the circuit will be latched.

A ladder logic version of the S-R flip-flop is shown here:

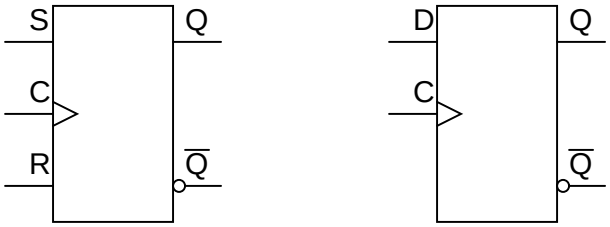


C	S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$
⌟⌜	0	0	latch	latch
⌟⌜	0	1	0	1
⌟⌜	1	0	1	0
⌟⌜	1	1	0	0
x	0	0	latch	latch
x	0	1	latch	latch
x	1	0	latch	latch
x	1	1	latch	latch

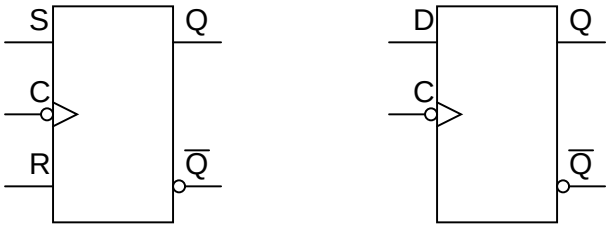
Relay contact CR_3 in the ladder diagram takes the place of the old E contact in the S-R latch circuit, and is closed only during the short time that both C is closed and time-delay contact TR_1 is closed. In either case (gate or ladder circuit), we see that the inputs S and R have no effect unless C is transitioning from a low (0) to a high (1) state. Otherwise, the flip-flop's outputs latch in their previous states.

It is important to note that the invalid state for the S-R flip-flop is maintained only for the short period of time that the pulse detector circuit allows the latch to be enabled. After that brief time period has elapsed, the outputs will latch into either the set or the reset state. Once again, the problem of a *race condition* manifests itself. With no enable signal, an invalid output state cannot be maintained. However, the valid "latched" states of the multivibrator – set and reset – are mutually exclusive to one another. Therefore, the two gates of the multivibrator circuit will "race" each other for supremacy, and whichever one attains a high output state first will "win."

The block symbols for flip-flops are slightly different from that of their respective latch counterparts:



The triangle symbol next to the clock inputs tells us that these are edge-triggered devices, and consequently that these are flip-flops rather than latches. The symbols above are positive edge-triggered: that is, they ”clock” on the rising edge (low-to-high transition) of the clock signal. Negative edge-triggered devices are symbolized with a bubble on the clock input line:

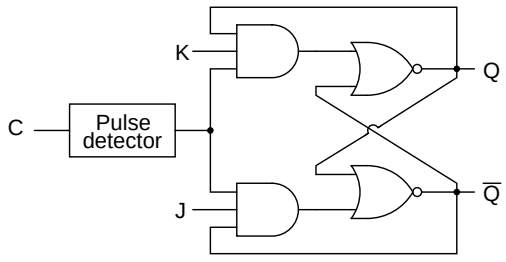


Both of the above flip-flops will ”clock” on the falling edge (high-to-low transition) of the clock signal.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *flip-flop* is a latch circuit with a ”pulse detector” circuit connected to the enable (E) input, so that it is enabled only for a brief moment on either the rising or falling edge of a clock pulse.
- Pulse detector circuits may be made from time-delay relays for ladder logic applications, or from semiconductor gates (exploiting the phenomenon of *propagation delay*).

10.6 The J-K flip-flop

Another variation on a theme of bistable multivibrators is the J-K flip-flop. Essentially, this is a modified version of an S-R flip-flop with no ”invalid” or ”illegal” output state. Look closely at the following diagram to see how this is accomplished:

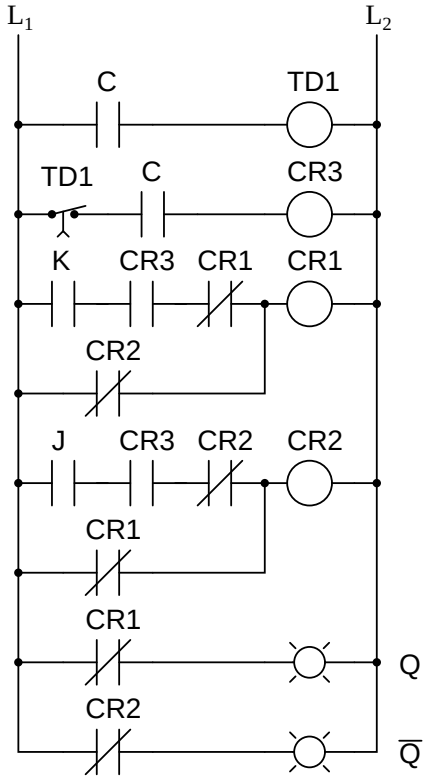


C	J	K	Q	$\overline{Q}$
⌐	0	0	latch	latch
⌐	0	1	0	1
⌐	1	0	1	0
⌐	1	1	toggle	toggle
x	0	0	latch	latch
x	0	1	latch	latch
x	1	0	latch	latch
x	1	1	latch	latch

What used to be the S and R inputs are now called the J and K inputs, respectively. The old two-input AND gates have been replaced with 3-input AND gates, and the third input of each gate receives feedback from the Q and not-Q outputs. What this does for us is permit the J input to have effect only when the circuit is reset, and permit the K input to have effect only when the circuit is set. In other words, the two inputs are *interlocked*, to use a relay logic term, so that they cannot both be activated simultaneously. If the circuit is "set," the J input is inhibited by the 0 status of not-Q through the lower AND gate; if the circuit is "reset," the K input is inhibited by the 0 status of Q through the upper AND gate.

When both J and K inputs are 1, however, something unique happens. Because of the selective inhibiting action of those 3-input AND gates, a "set" state inhibits input J so that the flip-flop acts as if J=0 while K=1 when in fact both are 1. On the next clock pulse, the outputs will switch ("toggle") from set (Q=1 and not-Q=0) to reset (Q=0 and not-Q=1). Conversely, a "reset" state inhibits input K so that the flip-flop acts as if J=1 and K=0 when in fact both are 1. The next clock pulse toggles the circuit again from reset to set.

See if you can follow this logical sequence with the ladder logic equivalent of the J-K flip-flop:



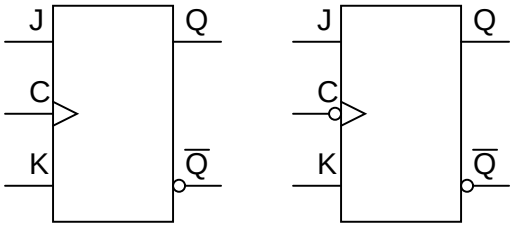
C	J	K	Q	$\overline{Q}$
⌟⌜	0	0	latch	latch
⌟⌜	0	1	0	1
⌟⌜	1	0	1	0
⌟⌜	1	1	toggle	toggle
x	0	0	latch	latch
x	0	1	latch	latch
x	1	0	latch	latch
x	1	1	latch	latch

The end result is that the S-R flip-flop's "invalid" state is eliminated (along with the race condition it engendered) and we get a useful feature as a bonus: the ability to toggle between the two (bistable) output states with every transition of the clock input signal.

There is no such thing as a J-K latch, only J-K flip-flops. Without the edge-triggering of

the clock input, the circuit would continuously toggle between its two output states when both J and K were held high (1), making it an astable device instead of a bistable device in that circumstance. If we want to preserve bistable operation for all combinations of input states, we *must* use edge-triggering so that it toggles only when we tell it to, one step (clock pulse) at a time.

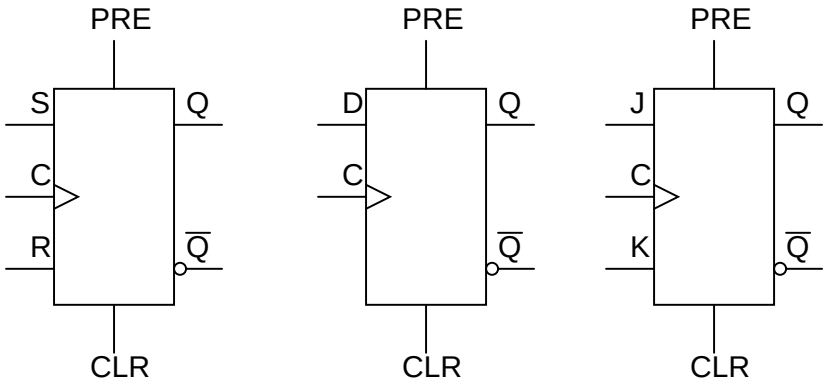
The block symbol for a J-K flip-flop is a whole lot less frightening than its internal circuitry, and just like the S-R and D flip-flops, J-K flip-flops come in two clock varieties (negative and positive edge-triggered):



- **REVIEW:**
- A J-K flip-flop is nothing more than an S-R flip-flop with an added layer of feedback. This feedback selectively enables one of the two set/reset inputs so that they cannot both carry an active signal to the multivibrator circuit, thus eliminating the invalid condition.
- When both J and K inputs are activated, and the clock input is pulsed, the outputs (Q and not-Q) will swap states. That is, the circuit will *toggle* from a set state to a reset state, or vice versa.

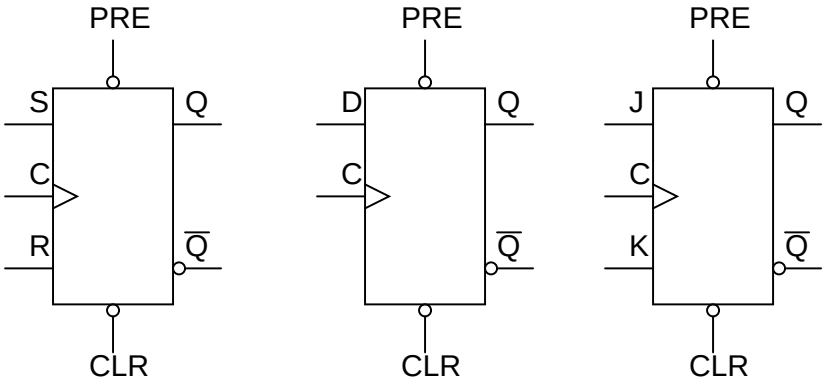
10.7 Asynchronous flip-flop inputs

The normal data inputs to a flip flop (D, S and R, or J and K) are referred to as *synchronous* inputs because they have effect on the outputs (Q and not-Q) only in step, or in sync, with the clock signal transitions. These extra inputs that I now bring to your attention are called *asynchronous* because they can set or reset the flip-flop regardless of the status of the clock signal. Typically, they're called *preset* and *clear*:

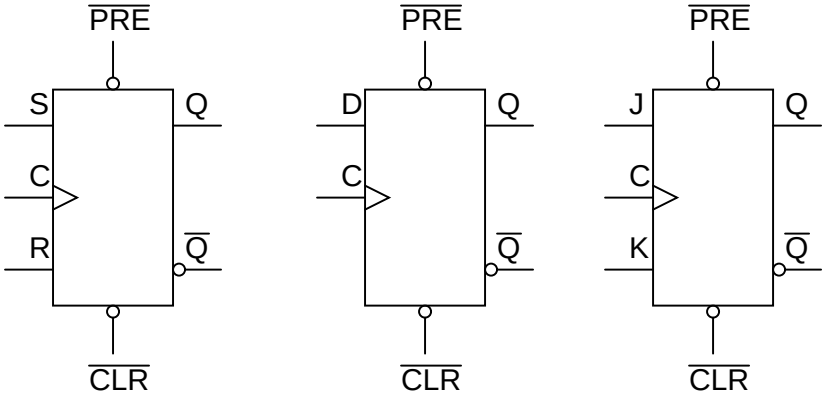


When the preset input is activated, the flip-flop will be set (Q=1, not-Q=0) regardless of any of the synchronous inputs or the clock. When the clear input is activated, the flip-flop will be reset (Q=0, not-Q=1), regardless of any of the synchronous inputs or the clock. So, what happens if both preset and clear inputs are activated? Surprise, surprise: we get an invalid state on the output, where Q and not-Q go to the same state, the same as our old friend, the S-R latch! Preset and clear inputs find use when multiple flip-flops are ganged together to perform a function on a multi-bit binary word, and a single line is needed to set or reset them all at once.

Asynchronous inputs, just like synchronous inputs, can be engineered to be active-high or active-low. If they're active-low, there will be an inverting bubble at that input lead on the block symbol, just like the negative edge-trigger clock inputs.



Sometimes the designations "PRE" and "CLR" will be shown with inversion bars above them, to further denote the negative logic of these inputs:



- **REVIEW:**
- *Asynchronous* inputs on a flip-flop have control over the outputs (Q and not-Q) regardless of clock input status.
- These inputs are called the *preset* (PRE) and *clear* (CLR). The preset input drives the flip-flop to a set state while the clear input drives it to a reset state.

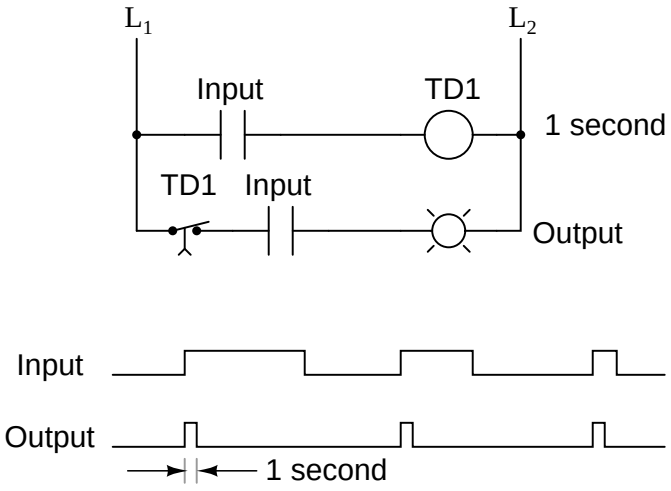
- It is possible to drive the outputs of a J-K flip-flop to an invalid condition using the asynchronous inputs, because all feedback within the multivibrator circuit is overridden.

10.8 Monostable multivibrators

We've already seen one example of a monostable multivibrator in use: the pulse detector used within the circuitry of flip-flops, to enable the latch portion for a brief time when the clock input signal transitions from either low to high or high to low. The pulse detector is classified as a monostable multivibrator because it has only *one* stable state. By *stable*, I mean a state of output where the device is able to latch or hold to forever, without external prodding. A latch or flip-flop, being a bistable device, can hold in either the "set" or "reset" state for an indefinite period of time. Once its set or reset, it will continue to latch in that state unless prompted to change by an external input. A monostable device, on the other hand, is only able to hold in one particular state indefinitely. Its other state can only be held momentarily when triggered by an external input.

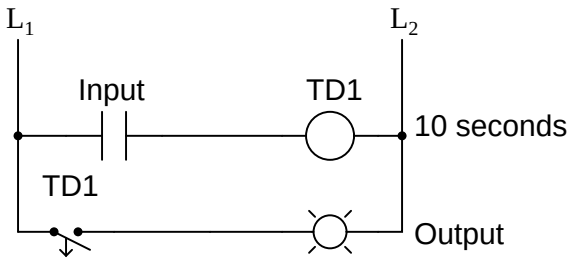
A mechanical analogy of a monostable device would be a momentary contact pushbutton switch, which spring-returns to its normal (stable) position when pressure is removed from its button actuator. Likewise, a standard wall (toggle) switch, such as the type used to turn lights on and off in a house, is a bistable device. It can latch in one of two modes: on or off.

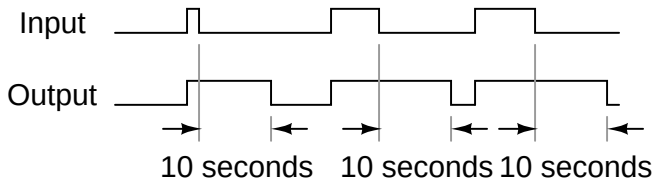
All monostable multivibrators are *timed* devices. That is, their unstable output state will hold only for a certain minimum amount of time before returning to its stable state. With semiconductor monostable circuits, this timing function is typically accomplished through the use of resistors and capacitors, making use of the exponential charging rates of RC circuits. A comparator is often used to compare the voltage across the charging (or discharging) capacitor with a steady reference voltage, and the on/off output of the comparator used for a logic signal. With ladder logic, time delays are accomplished with time-delay relays, which can be constructed with semiconductor/RC circuits like that just mentioned, or mechanical delay devices which impede the immediate motion of the relay's armature. Note the design and operation of the pulse detector circuit in ladder logic:



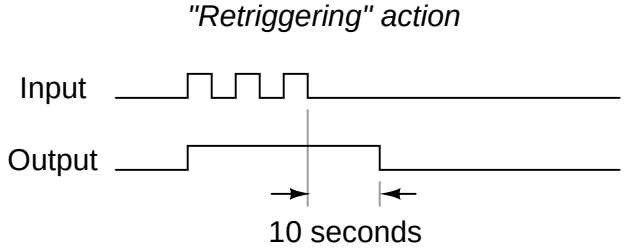
No matter how long the input signal stays high (1), the output remains high for just 1 second of time, then returns to its normal (stable) low state.

For some applications, it is necessary to have a monostable device that outputs a longer pulse than the input pulse which triggers it. Consider the following ladder logic circuit:

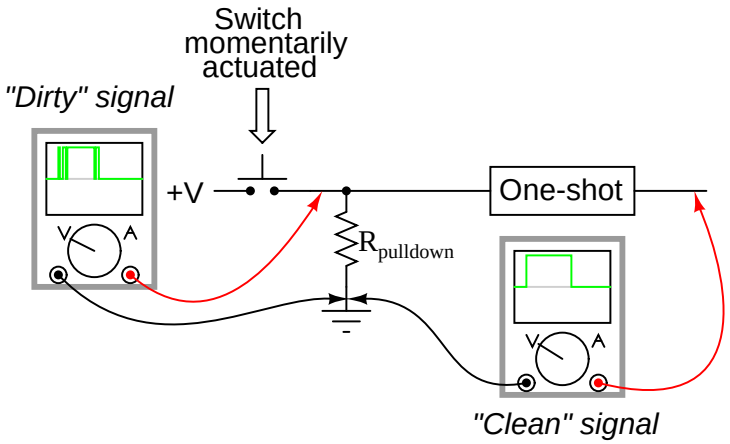




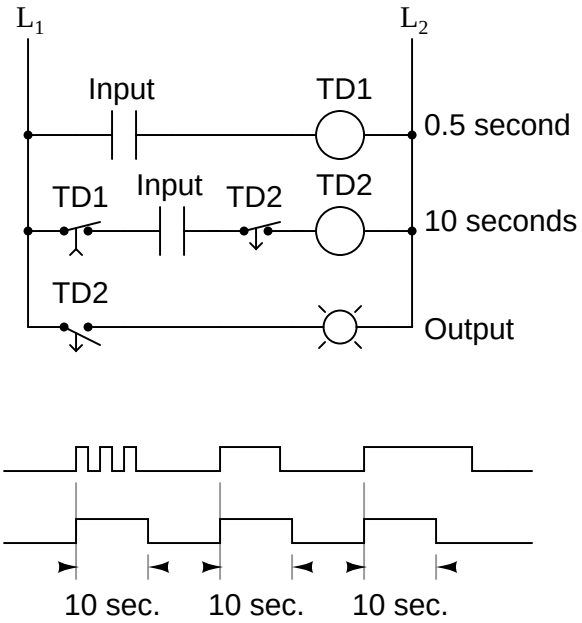
When the input contact closes, TD_1 contact immediately closes, and stays closed for 10 seconds after the input contact opens. No matter how short the input pulse is, the output stays high (1) for exactly 10 seconds after the input drops low again. This kind of monostable multivibrator is called a *one-shot*. More specifically, it is a *retriggerable* one-shot, because the timing begins after the input drops to a low state, meaning that multiple input pulses within 10 seconds of each other will maintain a continuous high output:



One application for a retriggerable one-shot is that of a single mechanical contact debouncer. As you can see from the above timing diagram, the output will remain high despite "bouncing" of the input signal from a mechanical switch. Of course, in a real-life switch debouncer circuit, you'd probably want to use a time delay of much shorter duration than 10 seconds, as you only need to "debounce" pulses that are in the millisecond range.



What if we only wanted a 10 second timed pulse output from a relay logic circuit, *regardless* of how many input pulses we received or how long-lived they may be? In that case, we'd have to couple a pulse-detector circuit to the retriggerable one-shot time delay circuit, like this:



Time delay relay TD_1 provides an "on" pulse to time delay relay coil TD_2 for an arbitrarily short moment (in this circuit, for at least 0.5 second each time the input contact is actuated). As soon as TD_2 is energized, the normally-closed, timed-closed TD_2 contact in series with it prevents coil TD_2 from being re-energized as long as its timing out (10 seconds). This effectively makes it unresponsive to any more actuations of the input switch during that 10 second period.

Only after TD_2 times out does the normally-closed, timed-closed TD_2 contact in series with it allow coil TD_2 to be energized again. This type of one-shot is called a *nonretriggerable* one-shot.

One-shot multivibrators of both the retriggerable and nonretriggerable variety find wide application in industry for siren actuation and machine sequencing, where an intermittent input signal produces an output signal of a set time.

- **REVIEW:**
- A *monostable* multivibrator has only one stable output state. The other output state can only be maintained temporarily.
- Monostable multivibrators, sometimes called *one-shots*, come in two basic varieties: *retriggerable* and *nonretriggerable*.
- One-shot circuits with very short time settings may be used to *debounce* the "dirty" signals created by mechanical switch contacts.

Chapter 11

COUNTERS

Contents

*** INCOMPLETE ***

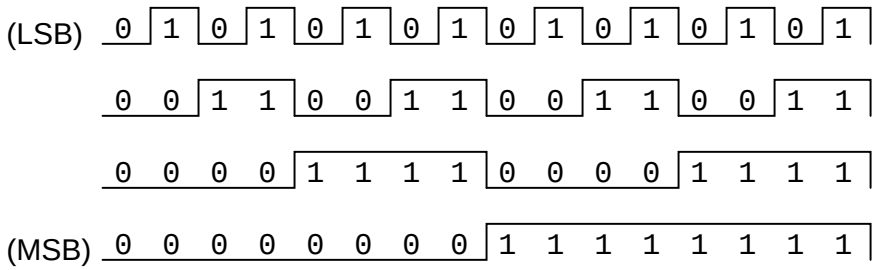
11.1 Binary count sequence

If we examine a four-bit binary count sequence from 0000 to 1111, a definite pattern will be evident in the ”oscillations” of the bits between 0 and 1:

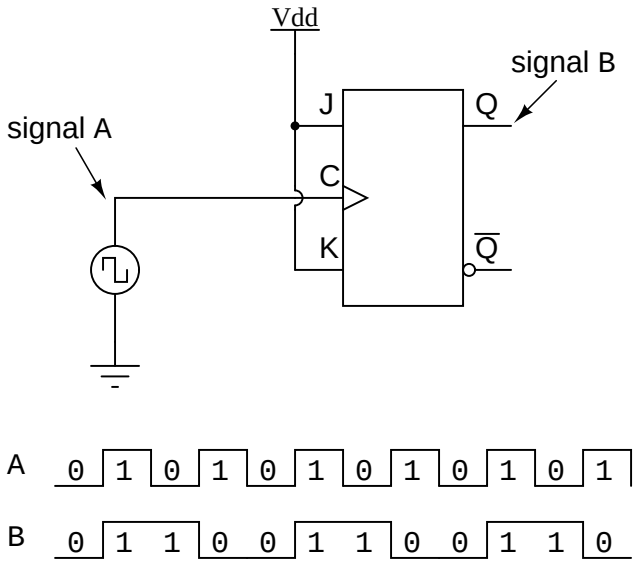
```
0 0 0 0
0 0 0 1
0 0 1 0
0 0 1 1
0 1 0 0
0 1 0 1
0 1 1 0
0 1 1 1
1 0 0 0
1 0 0 1
1 0 1 0
1 0 1 1
1 1 0 0
1 1 0 1
1 1 1 0
1 1 1 1
```

Note how the least significant bit (LSB) toggles between 0 and 1 for every step in the count sequence, while each succeeding bit toggles at one-half the frequency of the one before it. The most significant bit (MSB) only toggles once during the entire sixteen-step count sequence: at the transition between 7 (0111) and 8 (1000).

If we wanted to design a digital circuit to "count" in four-bit binary, all we would have to do is design a series of frequency divider circuits, each circuit dividing the frequency of a square-wave pulse by a factor of 2:



J-K flip-flops are ideally suited for this task, because they have the ability to "toggle" their output state at the command of a clock pulse when both J and K inputs are made "high" (1):



If we consider the two signals (A and B) in this circuit to represent two bits of a binary number, signal A being the LSB and signal B being the MSB, we see that the count sequence is backward: from 11 to 10 to 01 to 00 and back again to 11. Although it might not be counting in the direction we might have assumed, at least it counts!

The following sections explore different types of counter circuits, all made with J-K flip-flops, and all based on the exploitation of that flip-flop's toggle mode of operation.

- **REVIEW:**
- Binary count sequences follow a pattern of octave frequency division: the frequency of oscillation for each bit, from LSB to MSB, follows a divide-by-two pattern. In other words, the LSB will oscillate at the highest frequency, followed by the next bit at one-half the LSB's frequency, and the next bit at one-half the frequency of the bit before it, etc.
- Circuits may be built that "count" in a binary sequence, using J-K flip-flops set up in the "toggle" mode.

11.2 Asynchronous counters

In the previous section, we saw a circuit using one J-K flip-flop that counted backward in a two-bit binary sequence, from 11 to 10 to 01 to 00. Since it would be desirable to have a circuit that could count *forward* and not just backward, it would be worthwhile to examine a forward count sequence again and look for more patterns that might indicate how to build such a circuit.

Since we know that binary count sequences follow a pattern of octave (factor of 2) frequency division, and that J-K flip-flop multivibrators set up for the "toggle" mode are capable of performing this type of frequency division, we can envision a circuit made up of several J-K flip-flops, cascaded to produce four bits of output. The main problem facing us is to determine *how* to connect these flip-flops together so that they toggle at the right times to produce the

proper binary sequence. Examine the following binary count sequence, paying attention to patterns preceding the "toggling" of a bit between 0 and 1:

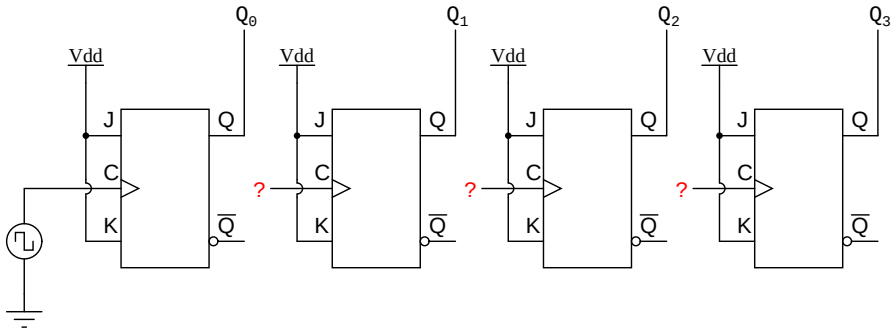
0 0 0 0
0 0 0 1
0 0 1 0
0 0 1 1
0 1 0 0
0 1 0 1
0 1 1 0
0 1 1 1
1 0 0 0
1 0 0 1
1 0 1 0
1 0 1 1
1 1 0 0
1 1 0 1
1 1 1 0
1 1 1 1

Note that each bit in this four-bit sequence toggles when the bit before it (the bit having a lesser significance, or place-weight), toggles in a particular direction: from 1 to 0. Small arrows indicate those points in the sequence where a bit toggles, the head of the arrow pointing to the previous bit transitioning from a "high" (1) state to a "low" (0) state:

0 0 0 0
0 0 0 1
0 0 1 0
0 0 1 1
0 1 0 0
0 1 0 1
0 1 1 0
0 1 1 1
1 0 0 0
1 0 0 1
1 0 1 0
1 0 1 1
1 1 0 0
1 1 0 1
1 1 1 0
1 1 1 1

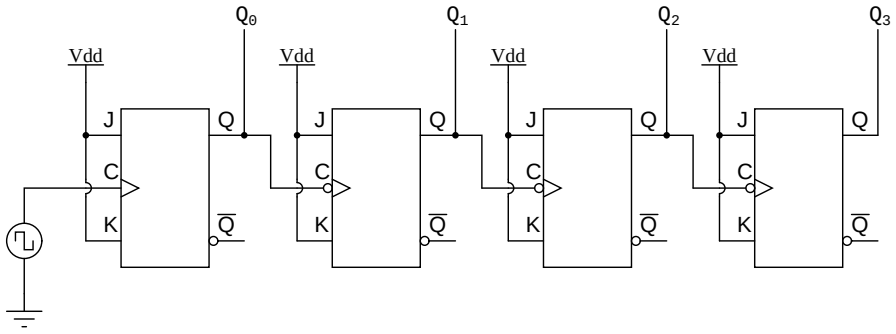
Starting with four J-K flip-flops connected in such a way to always be in the "toggle" mode, we need to determine how to connect the clock inputs in such a way so that each succeeding bit toggles when the bit before it transitions from 1 to 0. The Q outputs of each flip-flop will serve

as the respective binary bits of the final, four-bit count:

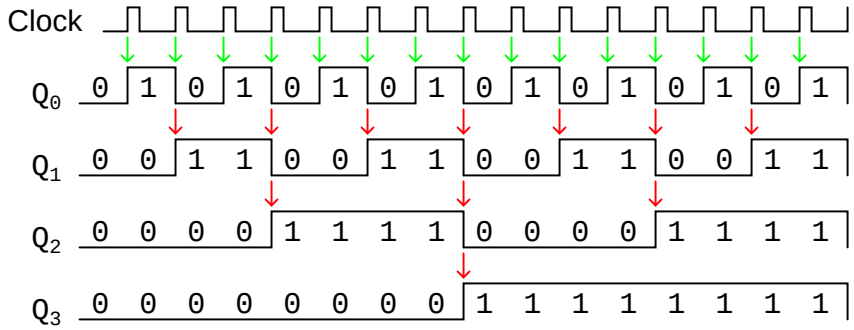


If we used flip-flops with negative-edge triggering (bubble symbols on the clock inputs), we could simply connect the clock input of each flip-flop to the Q output of the flip-flop before it, so that when the bit before it changes from a 1 to a 0, the "falling edge" of that signal would "clock" the next flip-flop to toggle the next bit:

A four-bit "up" counter



This circuit would yield the following output waveforms, when "clocked" by a repetitive source of pulses from an oscillator:



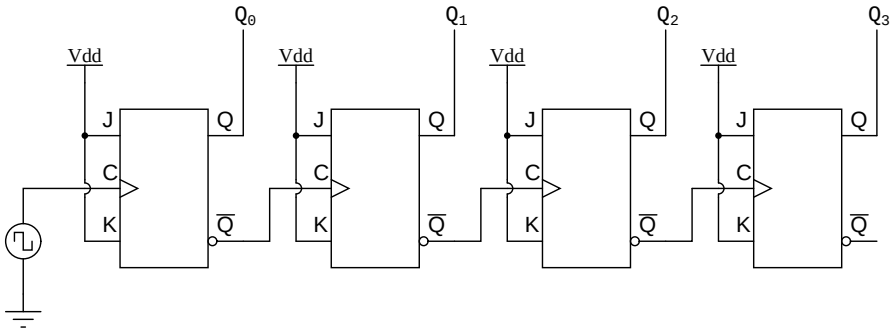
The first flip-flop (the one with the Q_0 output), has a positive-edge triggered clock input, so it toggles with each rising edge of the clock signal. Notice how the clock signal in this example has a duty cycle less than 50%. I've shown the signal in this manner for the purpose of

demonstrating how the clock signal need not be symmetrical to obtain reliable, "clean" output bits in our four-bit binary sequence. In the very first flip-flop circuit shown in this chapter, I used the clock signal itself as one of the output bits. This is a bad practice in counter design, though, because it necessitates the use of a square wave signal with a 50% duty cycle ("high" time = "low" time) in order to obtain a count sequence where each and every step pauses for the same amount of time. Using one J-K flip-flop for each output bit, however, relieves us of the necessity of having a symmetrical clock signal, allowing the use of practically any variety of high/low waveform to increment the count sequence.

As indicated by all the other arrows in the pulse diagram, each succeeding output bit is toggled by the action of the preceding bit transitioning from "high" (1) to "low" (0). This is the pattern necessary to generate an "up" count sequence.

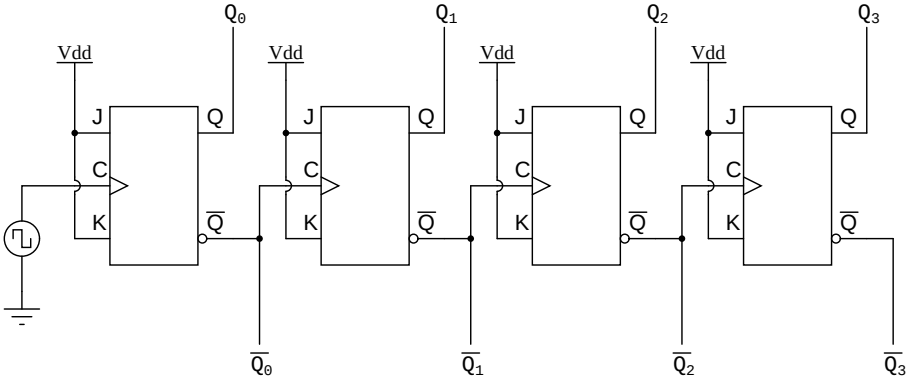
A less obvious solution for generating an "up" sequence using positive-edge triggered flip-flops is to "clock" each flip-flop using the Q' output of the preceding flip-flop rather than the Q output. Since the Q' output will always be the exact opposite state of the Q output on a J-K flip-flop (no invalid states with this type of flip-flop), a high-to-low transition on the Q output will be accompanied by a low-to-high transition on the Q' output. In other words, each time the Q output of a flip-flop transitions from 1 to 0, the Q' output of the same flip-flop will transition from 0 to 1, providing the positive-going clock pulse we would need to toggle a positive-edge triggered flip-flop at the right moment:

A different way of making a four-bit "up" counter

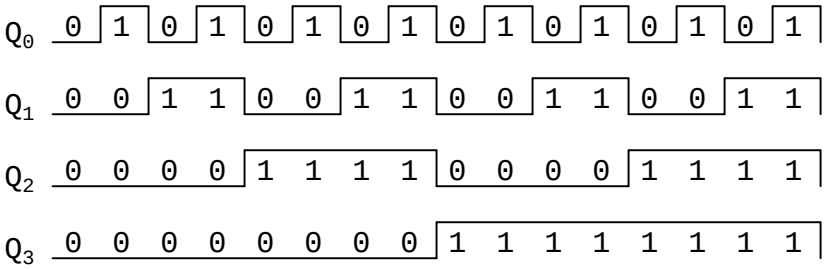


One way we could expand the capabilities of either of these two counter circuits is to regard the Q' outputs as another set of four binary bits. If we examine the pulse diagram for such a circuit, we see that the Q' outputs generate a *down*-counting sequence, while the Q outputs generate an *up*-counting sequence:

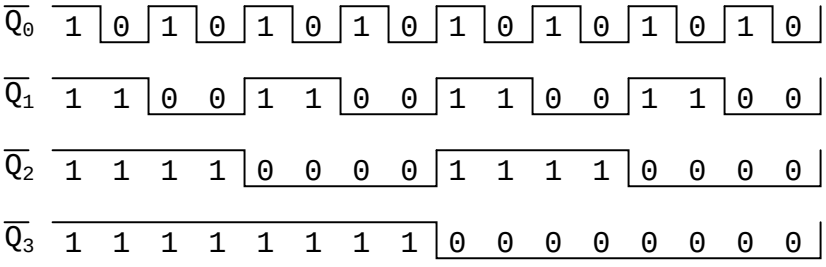
A simultaneous "up" and "down" counter



"Up" count sequence



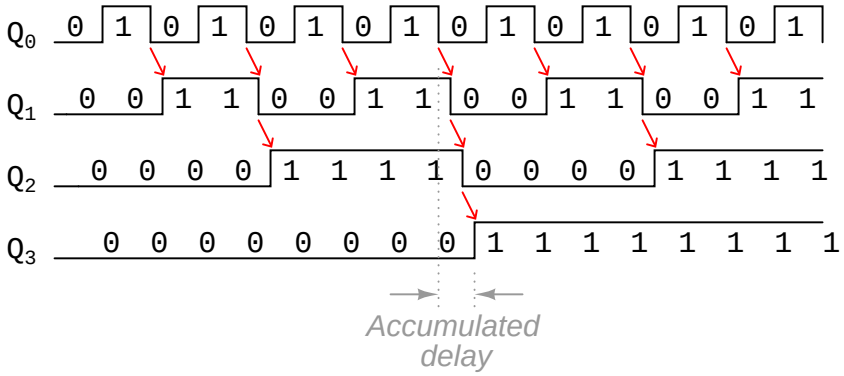
"Down" count sequence



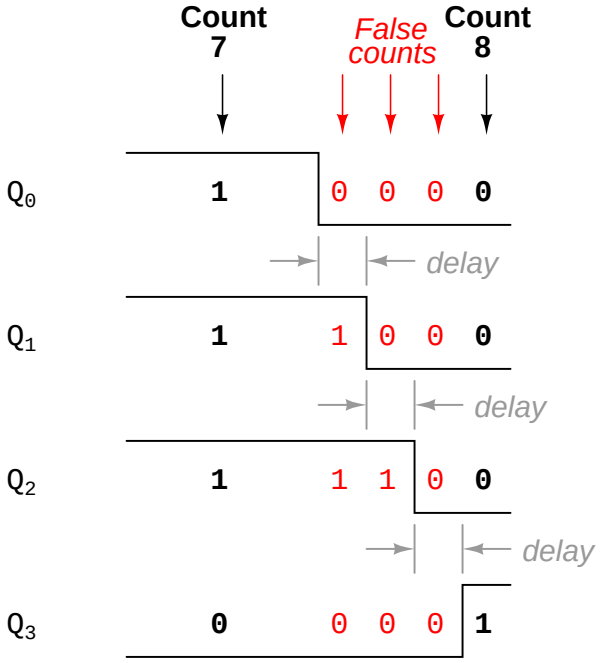
Unfortunately, all of the counter circuits shown thusfar share a common problem: the *ripple* effect. This effect is seen in certain types of binary adder and data conversion circuits, and is due to accumulative propagation delays between cascaded gates. When the Q output of a flip-flop transitions from 1 to 0, it commands the next flip-flop to toggle. If the next flip-flop toggle is a transition from 1 to 0, it will command the flip-flop after it to toggle as well, and so on. However, since there is always some small amount of propagation delay between the command to toggle (the clock pulse) and the actual toggle response (Q and Q' outputs changing states), any subsequent flip-flops to be toggled will toggle some time *after* the first flip-flop has toggled. Thus, when multiple bits toggle in a binary count sequence, they will not all toggle at exactly

the same time:

Pulse diagram showing (exaggerated) propagation delays



As you can see, the more bits that toggle with a given clock pulse, the more severe the accumulated delay time from LSB to MSB. When a clock pulse occurs at such a transition point (say, on the transition from 0111 to 1000), the output bits will "ripple" in sequence from LSB to MSB, as each succeeding bit toggles and commands the next bit to toggle as well, with a small amount of propagation delay between each bit toggle. If we take a close-up look at this effect during the transition from 0111 to 1000, we can see that there will be *false* output counts generated in the brief time period that the "ripple" effect takes place:

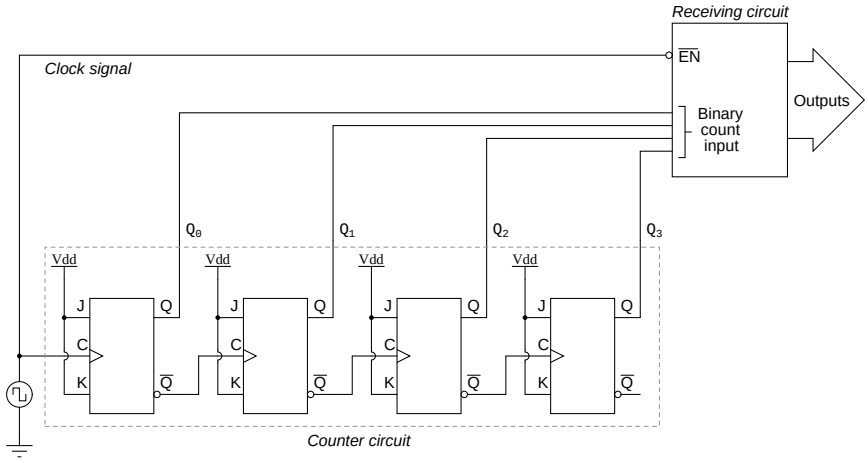


Instead of cleanly transitioning from a "0111" output to a "1000" output, the counter circuit will very quickly ripple from 0111 to 0110 to 0100 to 0000 to 1000, or from 7 to *6* to *4* to *0* and

then to 8. This behavior earns the counter circuit the name of *ripple counter*, or *asynchronous counter*.

In many applications, this effect is tolerable, since the ripple happens very, very quickly (the width of the delays has been exaggerated here as an aid to understanding the effects). If all we wanted to do was drive a set of light-emitting diodes (LEDs) with the counter's outputs, for example, this brief ripple would be of no consequence at all. However, if we wished to use this counter to drive the "select" inputs of a multiplexer, index a memory pointer in a microprocessor (computer) circuit, or perform some other task where false outputs could cause spurious errors, it would not be acceptable. There is a way to use this type of counter circuit in applications sensitive to false, ripple-generated outputs, and it involves a principle known as *strobing*.

Most decoder and multiplexer circuits are equipped with at least one input called the "enable." The output(s) of such a circuit will be active only when the enable input is made active. We can use this enable input to *strobe* the circuit receiving the ripple counter's output so that it is disabled (and thus not responding to the counter output) during the brief period of time in which the counter outputs might be rippling, and enabled only when sufficient time has passed since the last clock pulse that all rippling will have ceased. In most cases, the strobing signal can be the same clock pulse that drives the counter circuit:



With an active-low Enable input, the receiving circuit will respond to the binary count of the four-bit counter circuit only when the clock signal is "low." As soon as the clock pulse goes "high," the receiving circuit stops responding to the counter circuit's output. Since the counter circuit is positive-edge triggered (as determined by the *first* flip-flop clock input), all the counting action takes place on the low-to-high transition of the clock signal, meaning that the receiving circuit will become disabled just before any toggling occurs on the counter circuit's four output bits. The receiving circuit will not become enabled until the clock signal returns to a low state, which should be a long enough time *after* all rippling has ceased to be "safe" to allow the new count to have effect on the receiving circuit. The crucial parameter here is the clock signal's "high" time: it must be at least as long as the maximum expected ripple period of the counter circuit. If not, the clock signal will prematurely enable the receiving circuit, while some rippling is still taking place.

Another disadvantage of the asynchronous, or ripple, counter circuit is limited speed. While all gate circuits are limited in terms of maximum signal frequency, the design of asynchronous counter circuits compounds this problem by making propagation delays additive. Thus, even if strobing is used in the receiving circuit, an asynchronous counter circuit cannot be clocked at any frequency higher than that which allows the greatest possible accumulated propagation delay to elapse well before the next pulse.

The solution to this problem is a counter circuit that avoids ripple altogether. Such a counter circuit would eliminate the need to design a "strobing" feature into whatever digital circuits use the counter output as an input, and would also enjoy a much greater operating speed than its asynchronous equivalent. This design of counter circuit is the subject of the next section.

- **REVIEW:**

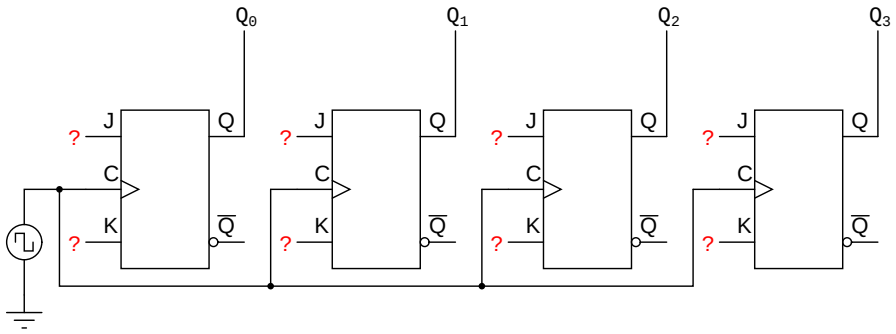
- An "up" counter may be made by connecting the clock inputs of positive-edge triggered J-K flip-flops to the Q' outputs of the preceding flip-flops. Another way is to use negative-edge triggered flip-flops, connecting the clock inputs to the Q outputs of the preceding flip-flops. In either case, the J and K inputs of all flip-flops are connected to V_{cc} or V_{dd} so as to always be "high."

- Counter circuits made from cascaded J-K flip-flops where each clock input receives its pulses from the output of the previous flip-flop invariably exhibit a *ripple effect*, where false output counts are generated between some steps of the count sequence. These types of counter circuits are called *asynchronous counters*, or *ripple counters*.

- *Strobing* is a technique applied to circuits receiving the output of an asynchronous (ripple) counter, so that the false counts generated during the ripple time will have no ill effect. Essentially, the *enable* input of such a circuit is connected to the counter's clock pulse in such a way that it is enabled only when the counter outputs are not changing, and will be disabled during those periods of changing counter outputs where ripple occurs.

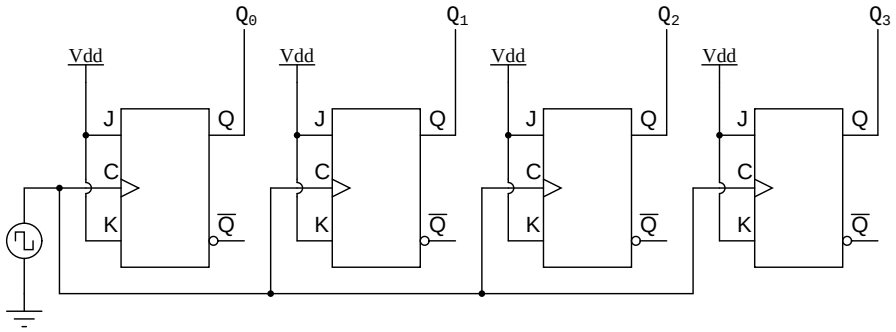
11.3 Synchronous counters

A *synchronous counter*, in contrast to an *asynchronous counter*, is one whose output bits change state simultaneously, with no ripple. The only way we can build such a counter circuit from J-K flip-flops is to connect all the clock inputs together, so that each and every flip-flop receives the exact same clock pulse at the exact same time:



Now, the question is, what do we do with the J and K inputs? We know that we still have to maintain the same divide-by-two frequency pattern in order to count in a binary sequence, and that this pattern is best achieved utilizing the "toggle" mode of the flip-flop, so the fact that the J and K inputs must both be (at times) "high" is clear. However, if we simply connect all the J and K inputs to the positive rail of the power supply as we did in the asynchronous circuit, this would clearly not work because all the flip-flops would toggle at the same time: with each and every clock pulse!

This circuit will not function as a counter!



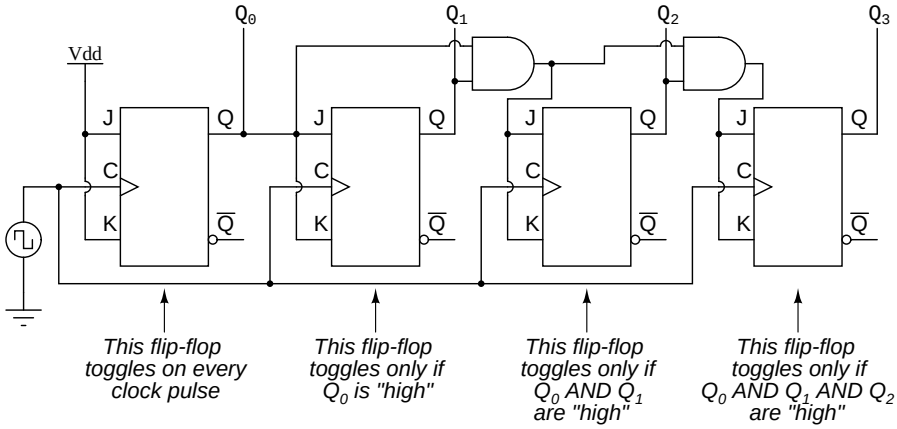
Let's examine the four-bit binary counting sequence again, and see if there are any other patterns that predict the toggling of a bit. Asynchronous counter circuit design is based on the fact that each bit toggle happens at the same time that the preceding bit toggles from a "high" to a "low" (from 1 to 0). Since we cannot clock the toggling of a bit based on the toggling of a previous bit in a synchronous counter circuit (to do so would create a ripple effect) we must find some other pattern in the counting sequence that can be used to trigger a bit toggle:

Examining the four-bit binary count sequence, another predictive pattern can be seen. Notice that just before a bit toggles, all preceding bits are "high:"

```
0 0 0 0
0 0 0 1
0 0 1 0
0 0 1 1
0 1 0 0
0 1 0 1
0 1 1 0
0 1 1 1
1 0 0 0
1 0 0 1
1 0 1 0
1 0 1 1
1 1 0 0
1 1 0 1
1 1 1 0
1 1 1 1
```

This pattern is also something we can exploit in designing a counter circuit. If we enable each J-K flip-flop to toggle based on whether or not all preceding flip-flop outputs (Q) are "high," we can obtain the same counting sequence as the asynchronous circuit without the ripple effect, since each flip-flop in this circuit will be clocked at exactly the same time:

A four-bit synchronous "up" counter



The result is a four-bit *synchronous* "up" counter. Each of the higher-order flip-flops are made ready to toggle (both J and K inputs "high") if the Q outputs of all previous flip-flops are "high." Otherwise, the J and K inputs for that flip-flop will both be "low," placing it into the "latch" mode where it will maintain its present output state at the next clock pulse. Since the first (LSB) flip-flop needs to toggle at every clock pulse, its J and K inputs are connected to V_{cc} or V_{dd}, where they will be "high" all the time. The next flip-flop need only "recognize" that the first flip-flop's Q output is high to be made ready to toggle, so no AND gate is needed. However,

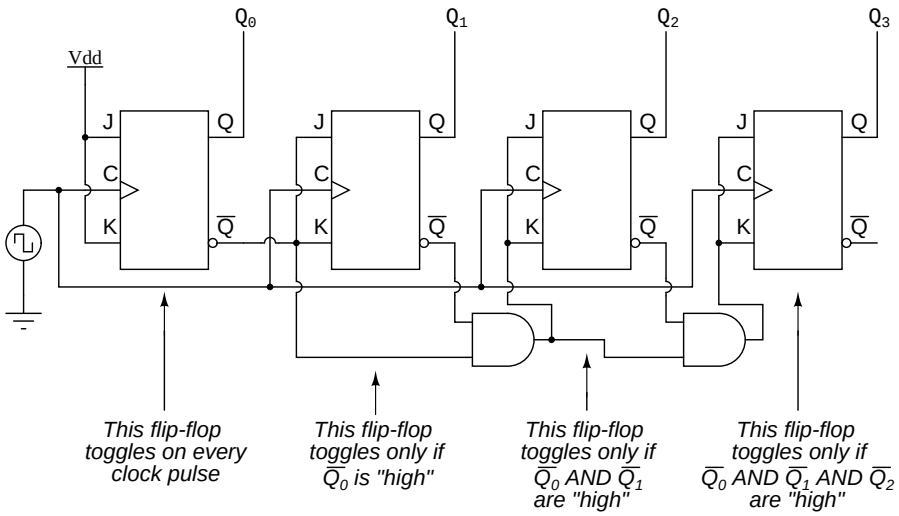
the remaining flip-flops should be made ready to toggle only when *all* lower-order output bits are "high," thus the need for AND gates.

To make a synchronous "down" counter, we need to build the circuit to recognize the appropriate bit patterns predicting each toggle state while counting down. Not surprisingly, when we examine the four-bit binary count sequence, we see that all preceding bits are "low" prior to a toggle (following the sequence from bottom to top):

```
0 0 0 0
0 0 0 1
0 0 1 0
0 0 1 1
0 1 0 0
0 1 0 1
0 1 1 0
0 1 1 1
1 0 0 0
1 0 0 1
1 0 1 0
1 0 1 1
1 1 0 0
1 1 0 1
1 1 1 0
1 1 1 1
```

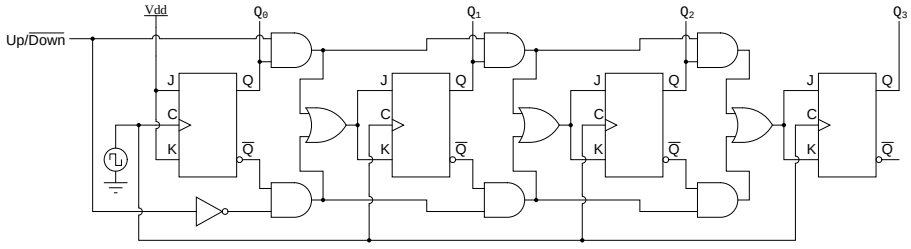
Since each J-K flip-flop comes equipped with a Q' output as well as a Q output, we can use the Q' outputs to enable the toggle mode on each succeeding flip-flop, being that each Q' will be "high" every time that the respective Q is "low:"

A four-bit synchronous "down" counter



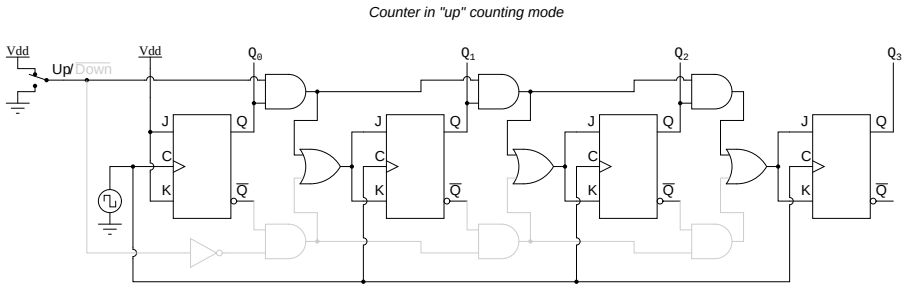
Taking this idea one step further, we can build a counter circuit with selectable between ”up” and ”down” count modes by having dual lines of AND gates detecting the appropriate bit conditions for an ”up” and a ”down” counting sequence, respectively, then use OR gates to combine the AND gate outputs to the J and K inputs of each succeeding flip-flop:

A four-bit synchronous "up/down" counter

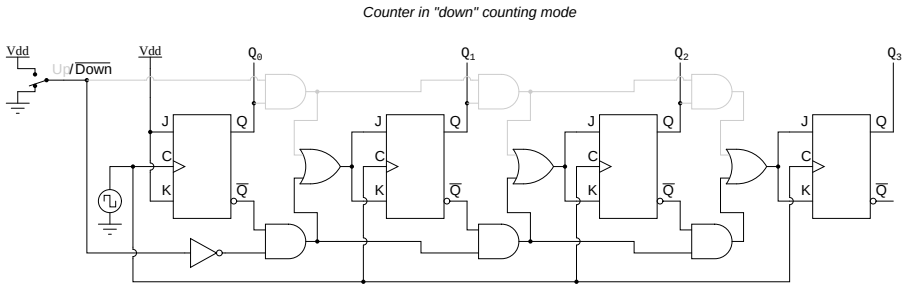


This circuit isn’t as complex as it might first appear. The Up/Down control input line simply enables either the upper string or lower string of AND gates to pass the Q/Q’ outputs to the succeeding stages of flip-flops. If the Up/Down control line is ”high,” the top AND gates become enabled, and the circuit functions exactly the same as the first (”up”) synchronous counter circuit shown in this section. If the Up/Down control line is made ”low,” the bottom AND gates become enabled, and the circuit functions identically to the second (”down” counter) circuit shown in this section.

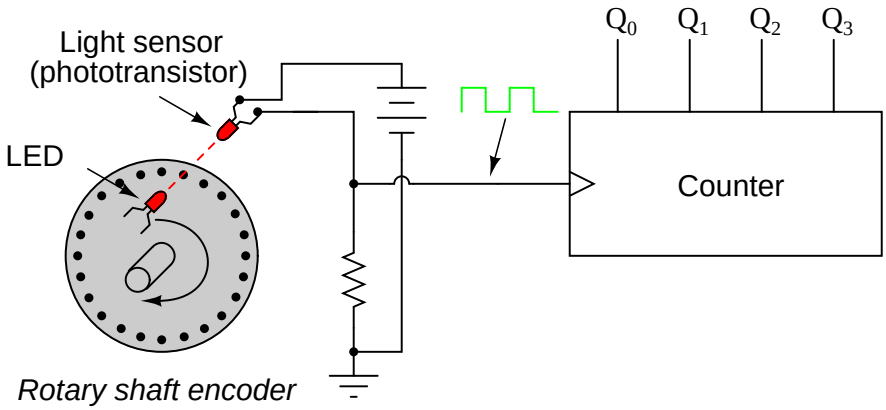
To illustrate, here is a diagram showing the circuit in the ”up” counting mode (all disabled circuitry shown in grey rather than black):



Here, shown in the ”down” counting mode, with the same grey coloring representing disabled circuitry:



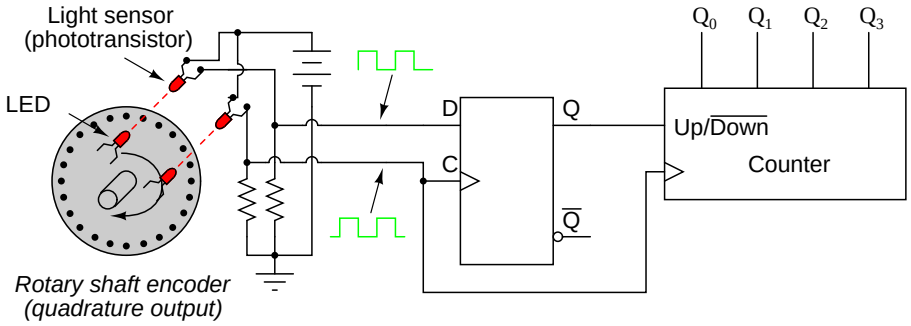
Up/down counter circuits are very useful devices. A common application is in machine motion control, where devices called *rotary shaft encoders* convert mechanical rotation into a series of electrical pulses, these pulses ”clocking” a counter circuit to track total motion:



As the machine moves, it turns the encoder shaft, making and breaking the light beam between LED and phototransistor, thereby generating clock pulses to increment the counter circuit. Thus, the counter integrates, or accumulates, total motion of the shaft, serving as an electronic indication of how far the machine has moved. If all we care about is tracking total motion, and do not care to account for changes in the *direction* of motion, this arrangement will suffice. However, if we wish the counter to *increment* with one direction of motion and *decrement* with the reverse direction of motion, we must use an up/down counter, and an

encoder/decoding circuit having the ability to discriminate between different directions.

If we re-design the encoder to have two sets of LED/phototransistor pairs, those pairs aligned such that their square-wave output signals are 90^o out of phase with each other, we have what is known as a *quadrature output* encoder (the word "quadrature" simply refers to a 90^o angular separation). A phase detection circuit may be made from a D-type flip-flop, to distinguish a clockwise pulse sequence from a counter-clockwise pulse sequence:



When the encoder rotates clockwise, the "D" input signal square-wave will lead the "C" input square-wave, meaning that the "D" input will already be "high" when the "C" transitions from "low" to "high," thus *setting* the D-type flip-flop (making the Q output "high") with every clock pulse. A "high" Q output places the counter into the "Up" count mode, and any clock pulses received by the clock from the encoder (from either LED) will increment it. Conversely, when the encoder reverses rotation, the "D" input will lag behind the "C" input waveform, meaning that it will be "low" when the "C" waveform transitions from "low" to "high," forcing the D-type flip-flop into the *reset* state (making the Q output "low") with every clock pulse. This "low" signal commands the counter circuit to decrement with every clock pulse from the encoder.

This circuit, or something very much like it, is at the heart of every position-measuring circuit based on a pulse encoder sensor. Such applications are very common in robotics, CNC machine tool control, and other applications involving the measurement of reversible, mechanical motion.

11.4 Counter modulus

Chapter 12

SHIFT REGISTERS

Contents

Original author: Dennis Crunkilton

12.1 Introduction

Shift registers, like counters, are a form of *sequential logic*. Sequential logic, unlike combinational logic is not only affected by the present inputs, but also, by the prior history. In other words, sequential logic remembers past events.

Shift registers produce a discrete delay of a digital signal or waveform. A waveform synchronized to a *clock*, a repeating square wave, is delayed by **"n"** discrete clock times, where **"n"** is the number of shift register stages. Thus, a four stage shift register delays "data in"

by four clocks to ”data out”. The stages in a shift register are *delay stages*, typically type **”D”** Flip-Flops or type **”JK”** Flip-flops.

Formerly, very long (several hundred stages) shift registers served as digital memory. This obsolete application is reminiscent of the acoustic mercury delay lines used as early computer memory.

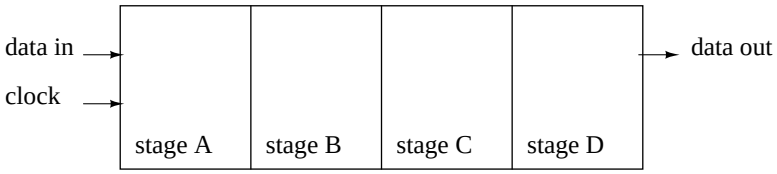
Serial data transmission, over a distance of meters to kilometers, uses shift registers to convert parallel data to serial form. Serial data communications replaces many slow parallel data wires with a single serial high speed circuit.

Serial data over shorter distances of tens of centimeters, uses shift registers to get data into and out of microprocessors. Numerous peripherals, including analog to digital converters, digital to analog converters, display drivers, and memory, use shift registers to reduce the amount of wiring in circuit boards.

Some specialized counter circuits actually use shift registers to generate repeating waveforms. Longer shift registers, with the help of feedback generate patterns so long that they look like random noise, *pseudo-noise*.

Basic shift registers are classified by structure according to the following types:

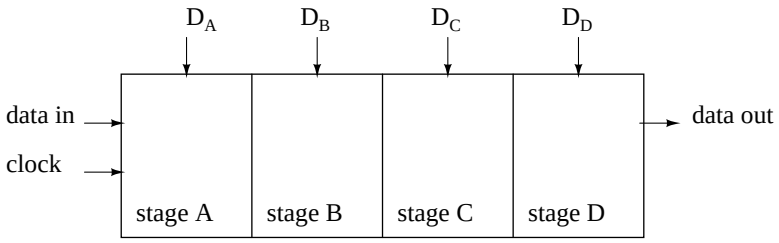
- Serial-in/serial-out
- Parallel-in/serial-out
- Serial-in/parallel-out
- Universal parallel-in/parallel-out
- Ring counter



Serial-in, serial-out shift register with 4-stages

Above we show a block diagram of a serial-in/serial-out shift register, which is 4-stages long. Data at the input will be delayed by four clock periods from the input to the output of the shift register.

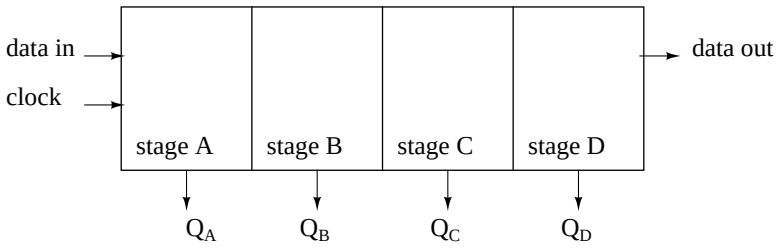
Data at ”data in”, above, will be present at the Stage **A** output after the first clock pulse. After the second pulse stage **A** data is transfered to stage **B** output, and ”data in” is transfered to stage **A** output. After the third clock, stage **C** is replaced by stage **B**; stage **B** is replaced by stage **A**; and stage A is replaced by ”data in”. After the fourth clock, the data originally present at ”data in” is at stage **D**, ”output”. The ”first in” data is ”first out” as it is shifted from ”data in” to ”data out”.



Parallel-in, serial-out shift register with 4-stages

Data is loaded into all stages at once of a parallel-in/serial-out shift register. The data is then shifted out via "data out" by clock pulses. Since a 4- stage shift register is shown above, four clock pulses are required to shift out all of the data. In the diagram above, stage **D** data will be present at the "data out" up until the first clock pulse; stage **C** data will be present at "data out" between the first clock and the second clock pulse; stage **B** data will be present between the second clock and the third clock; and stage **A** data will be present between the third and the fourth clock. After the fourth clock pulse and thereafter, successive bits of "data in" should appear at "data out" of the shift register after a delay of four clock pulses.

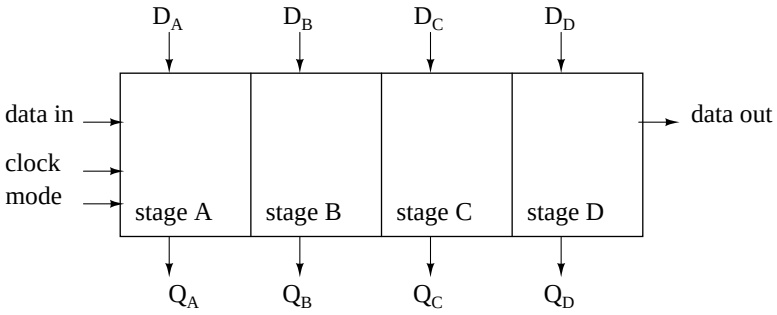
If four switches were connected to D_A through D_D, the status could be read into a microprocessor using only one data pin and a clock pin. Since adding more switches would require no additional pins, this approach looks attractive for many inputs.



Serial-in, parallel-out shift register with 4-stages

Above, four data bits will be shifted in from "data in" by four clock pulses and be available at Q_A through Q_D for driving external circuitry such as LEDs, lamps, relay drivers, and horns.

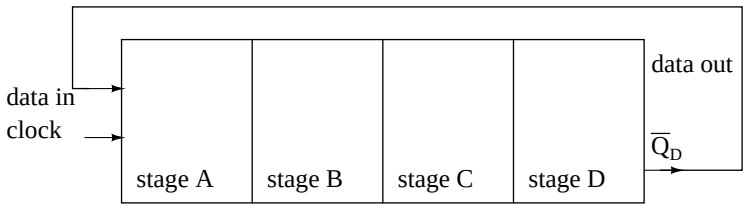
After the first clock, the data at "data in" appears at Q_A. After the second clock, The old Q_A data appears at Q_B; Q_A receives next data from "data in". After the third clock, Q_B data is at Q_C. After the fourth clock, Q_C data is at Q_D. This stage contains the data first present at "data in". The shift register should now contain four data bits.



Parallel-in, parallel-out shift register with 4-stages

A parallel-in/laralel-out shift register combines the function of the parallel-in, serial-out shift register with the function of the serial-in, parallel-out shift register to yields the universal shift register. The "do anything" shifter comes at a price– the increased number of I/O (Input/Output) pins may reduce the number of stages which can be packaged.

Data presented at D_A through D_D is parallel loaded into the registers. This data at Q_A through Q_D may be shifted by the number of pulses presented at the clock input. The shifted data is available at Q_A through Q_D. The "mode" input, which may be more than one input, controls parallel loading of data from D_A through D_D, shifting of data, and the direction of shifting. There are shift registers which will shift data either left or right.



Ring Counter, shift register output fed back to input

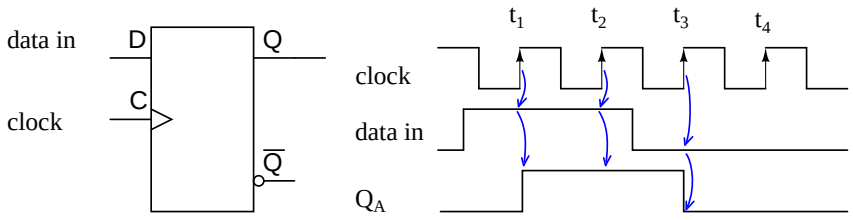
If the serial output of a shift register is connected to the serial input, data can be perpetually shifted around the ring as long as clock pulses are present. If the output is inverted before being fed back as shown above, we do not have to worry about loading the initial data into the "ring counter".

12.2 Serial-in/serial-out shift register

Serial-in, serial-out shift registers delay data by one clock time for each stage. They will store a bit of data for each register. A serial-in, serial-out shift register may be one to 64 bits in length, longer if registers or packages are cascaded.

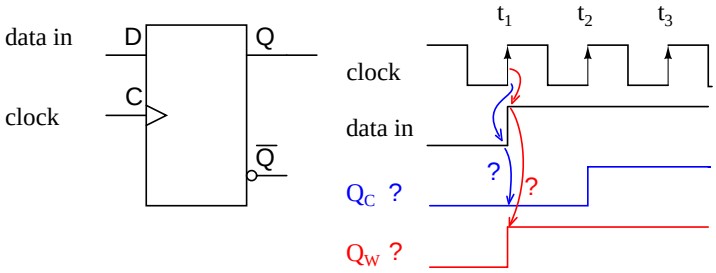
Below is a single stage shift register receiving data which is not synchronized to the register clock. The "data in" at the **D** pin of the type **D FF** (Flip-Flop) does not change levels when the

clock changes for low to high. We may want to synchronize the data to a system wide clock in a circuit board to improve the reliability of a digital logic circuit.



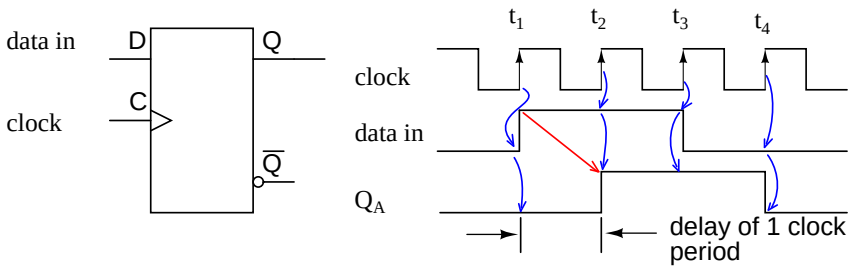
Data present at clock time is transfered from D to Q.

The obvious point (as compared to the figure below) illustrated above is that whatever "data in" is present at the **D** pin of a type **D** FF is transfered from D to output Q at clock time. Since our example shift register uses positive edge sensitive storage elements, the output **Q** follows the **D** input when the clock transitions from low to high as shown by the up arrows on the diagram above. There is no doubt what logic level is present at clock time because the data is stable well before and after the clock edge. This is seldom the case in multi-stage shift registers. But, this was an easy example to start with. We are only concerned with the positive, low to high, clock edge. The falling edge can be ignored. It is very easy to see **Q** follow **D** at clock time above. Compare this to the diagram below where the "data in" appears to change with the positive clock edge.



Does the clock t_1 see a 0 or a 1 at data in at D? Which output is correct, Q_C or Q_W ?

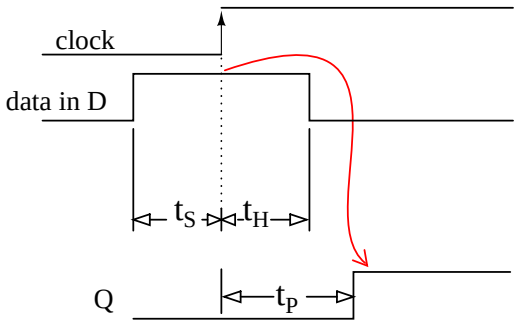
Since "data in" appears to changes at clock time t_1 above, what does the type **D** FF see at clock time? The short over simplified answer is that it sees the data that was present at **D** prior to the clock. That is what is transfered to **Q** at clock time t_1. The correct waveform is Q_C. At t_1 Q goes to a zero if it is not already zero. The **D** register does not see a one until time t_2, at which time Q goes high.



Data present t_H before clock time at D is transfered to Q.

Since data, above, present at **D** is clocked to **Q** at clock time, and **Q** cannot change until the next clock time, the **D** FF delays data by one clock period, provided that the data is already synchronized to the clock. The Q_A waveform is the same as "data in" with a one clock period delay.

A more detailed look at what the input of the type **D** Flip-Flop sees at clock time follows. Refer to the figure below. Since "data in" appears to changes at clock time (above), we need further information to determine what the **D** FF sees. If the "data in" is from another shift register stage, another same type **D** FF, we can draw some conclusions based on *data sheet* information. Manufacturers of digital logic make available information about their parts in data sheets, formerly only available in a collection called a *data book*. Data books are still available; though, the manufacturer's web site is the modern source.



Data must be present (t_S) before the clock and after(t_H) the clock. Data is delayed from D to Q by propagation delay (t_P)

The following data was extracted from the CD4006b data sheet for operation at $5V_{DC}$, which serves as an example to illustrate timing.
`(http://focus.ti.com/docs/prod/folders/print/cd4006b.html)`

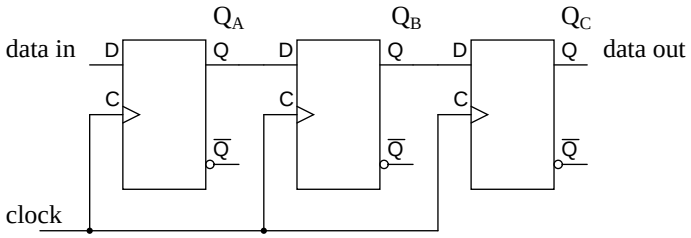
- t_S=100ns
- t_H=60ns
- t_P=200-400ns typ/max

t_S is the *setup time*, the time data must be present before clock time. In this case data must be present at **D** 100ns prior to the clock. Furthermore, the data must be held for *hold time* t_H=60ns after clock time. These two conditions must be met to reliably clock data from **D** to **Q** of the Flip-Flop.

There is no problem meeting the setup time of 60ns as the data at **D** has been there for the whole previous clock period if it comes from another shift register stage. For example, at a clock frequency of 1 Mhz, the clock period is 1000 μs, plenty of time. Data will actually be present for 1000μs prior to the clock, which is much greater than the minimum required t_S of 60ns.

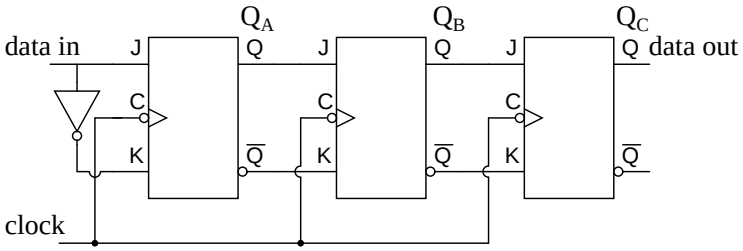
The hold time t_H=60ns is met because D connected to Q of another stage cannot change any faster than the propagation delay of the previous stage t_P=200ns. Hold time is met as long as the propagation delay of the previous **D** FF is greater than the hold time. Data at **D** driven by another stage **Q** will not change any faster than 200ns for the CD4006b.

To summarize, output **Q** follows input D at nearly clock time if Flip-Flops are cascaded into a multi-stage shift register.



Serial-in, serial-out shift register using type "D" storage elements

Three type **D** Flip-Flops are cascaded Q to D and the clocks paralleled to form a three stage shift register above.

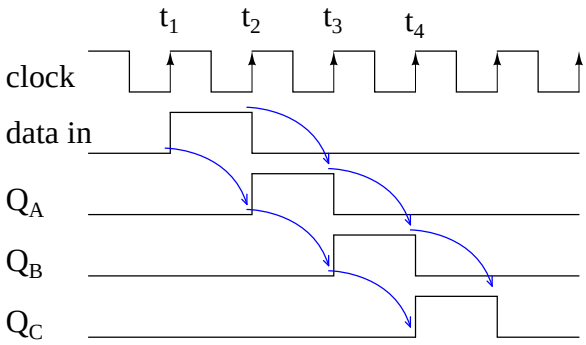


Serial-in, serial-out shift register using type "JK" storage elements

Type **JK** FFs cascaded Q to J, Q' to K with clocks in parallel to yield an alternate form of the shift register above.

A serial-in/serial-out shift register has a clock input, a data input, and a data output from the last stage. In general, the other stage outputs are not available Otherwise, it would be a serial-in, parallel-out shift register..

The waveforms below are applicable to either one of the preceding two versions of the serial-in, serial-out shift register. The three pairs of arrows show that a three stage shift register temporarily stores 3-bits of data and delays it by three clock periods from input to output.



At clock time t_1 a "data in" of **0** is clocked from **D** to **Q** of all three stages. In particular, **D** of stage **A** sees a logic **0**, which is clocked to Q_A where it remains until time t_2.

At clock time t_2 a "data in" of **1** is clocked from **D** to Q_A. At stages **B** and **C**, a **0**, fed from preceding stages is clocked to Q_B and Q_C.

At clock time t_3 a "data in" of **0** is clocked from **D** to Q_A. Q_A goes low and stays low for the remaining clocks due to "data in" being **0**. Q_B goes high at t_3 due to a **1** from the previous stage. Q_C is still low after t_3 due to a low from the previous stage.

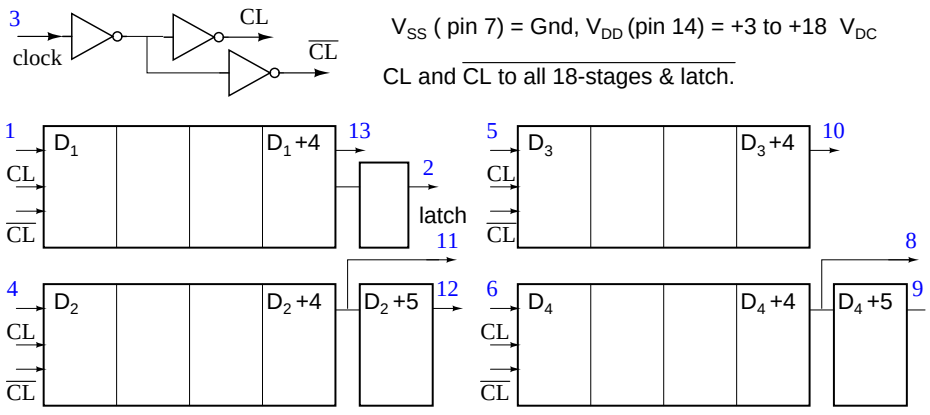
Q_C finally goes high at clock t_4 due to the high fed to **D** from the previous stage Q_B. All earlier stages have **0**s shifted into them. And, after the next clock pulse at t_5, all logic **1**s will have been shifted out, replaced by **0**s

12.2.1 Serial-in/serial-out devices

We will take a closer look at the following parts available as integrated circuits, courtesy of Texas Instruments. For complete device data sheets follow the links.

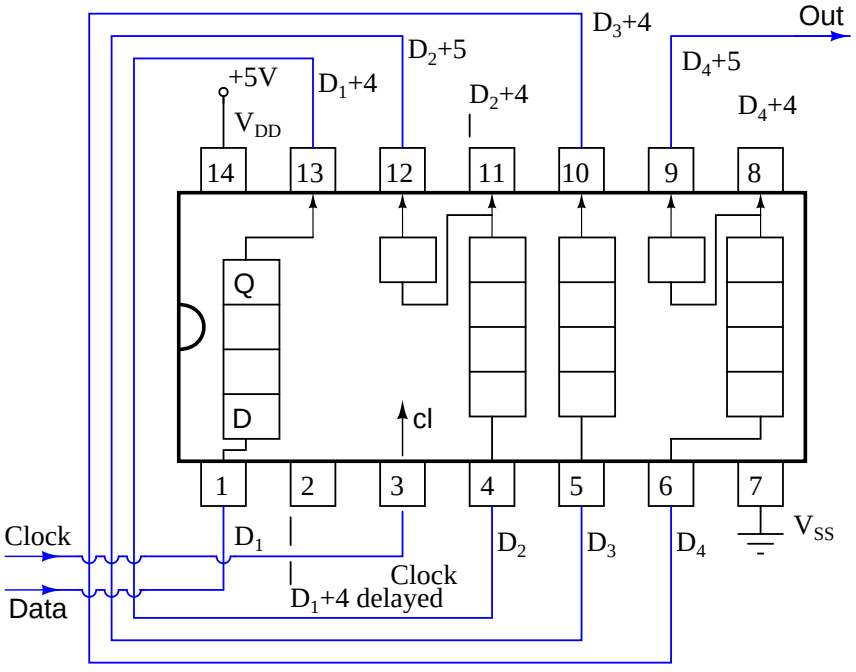
- CD4006b 18-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register
  `(http://focus.ti.com/docs/prod/folders/print/cd4006b.html)`
- CD4031b 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register
  `(http://focus.ti.com/docs/prod/folders/print/cd4031b.html)`
- CD4517b dual 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register
  `(http://focus.ti.com/docs/prod/folders/print/cd4517b.html)`

The following serial-in/ serial-out shift registers are 4000 series *CMOS* (Complementary Metal Oxide Semiconductor) family parts. As such, They will accept a V_{DD}, positive power supply of 3-Volts to 15-Volts. The V_{SS} pin is grounded. The maximum frequency of the shift clock, which varies with V_{DD}, is a few megahertz. See the full data sheet for details.



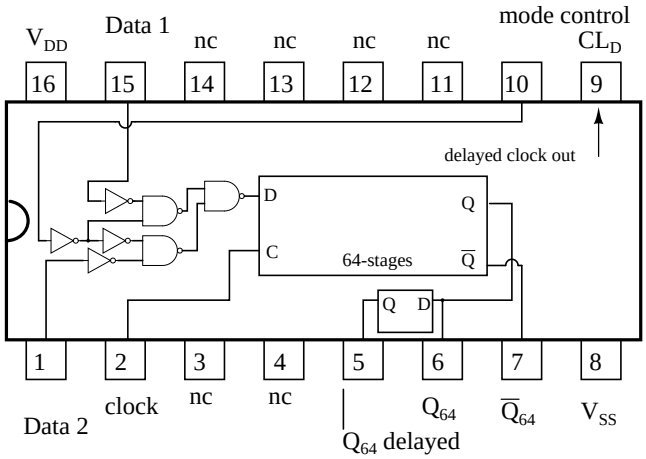
CD4006b Serial-in/ serial-out shift register

The 18-bit CD4006b consists of two stages of 4-bits and two more stages of 5-bits with a an output tap at 4-bits. Thus, the 5-bit stages could be used as 4-bit shift registers. To get a full 18-bit shift register the output of one shift register must be cascaded to the input of another and so on until all stages create a single shift register as shown below.



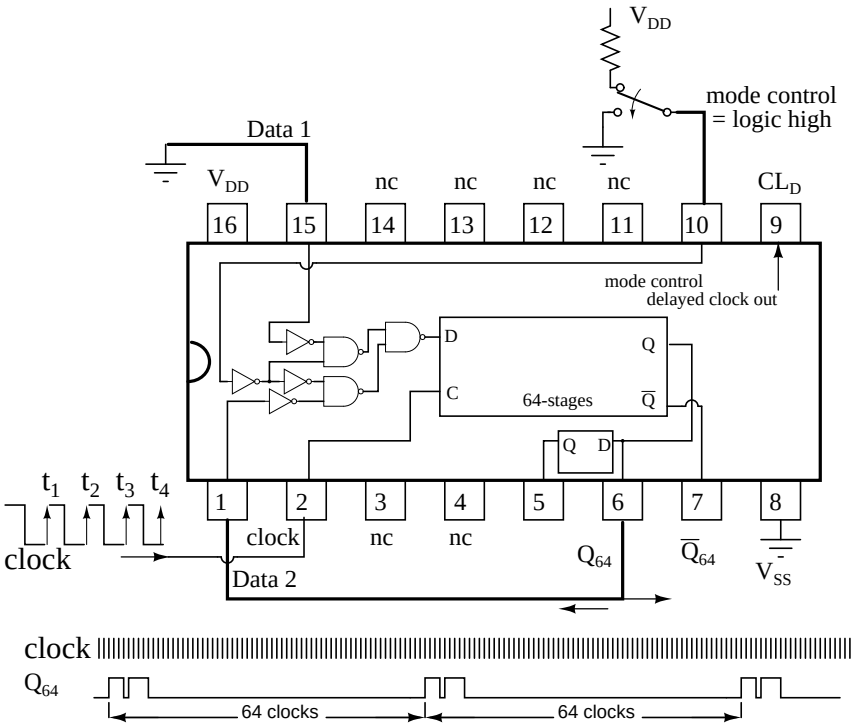
CD4006b 18-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register

A CD4031 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register is shown below. A number of pins are not connected (nc). Both Q and Q' are available from the 64th stage, actually Q_{64} and Q'_{64}. There is also a Q_{64} "delayed" from a half stage which is delayed by half a clock cycle. A major feature is a data selector which is at the data input to the shift register.



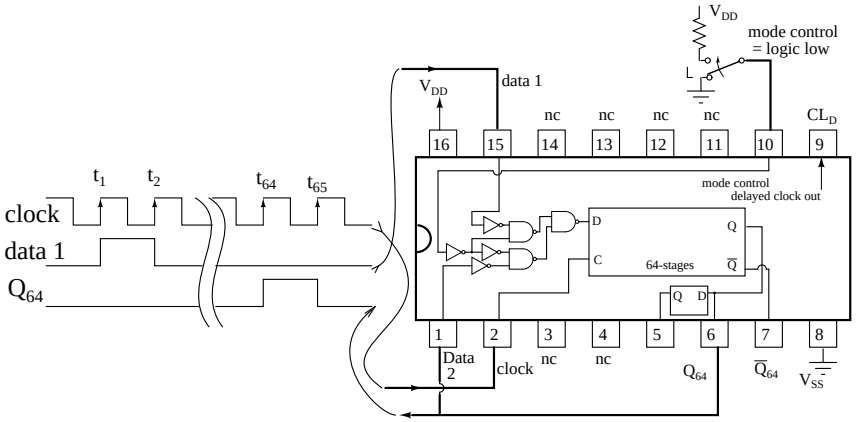
CD4031 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register

The "mode control" selects between two inputs: data 1 and data 2. If "mode control" is high, data will be selected from "data 2" for input to the shift register. In the case of "mode control" being logic low, the "data 1" is selected. Examples of this are shown in the two figures below.



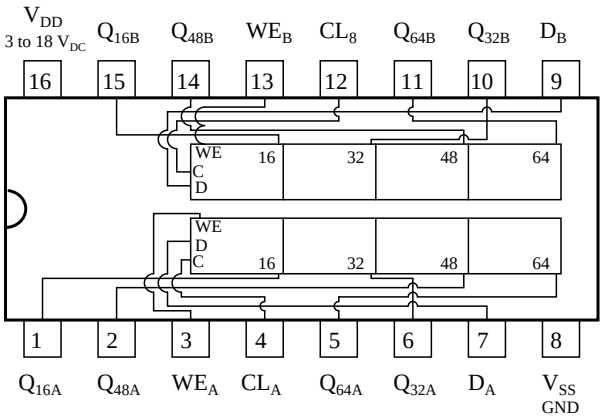
CD4031 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register recirculating data.

The "data 2" above is wired to the Q_{64} output of the shift register. With "mode control" high, the Q_{64} output is routed back to the shifter data input D. Data will *recirculate* from output to input. The data will repeat every 64 clock pulses as shown above. The question that arises is how did this data pattern get into the shift register in the first place?



CD4031 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register load new data at Data 1.

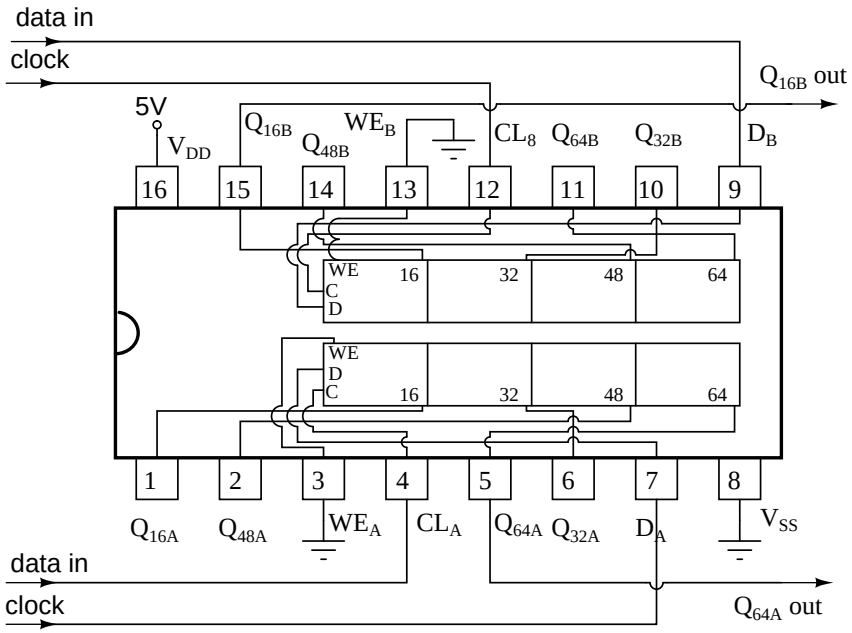
With ”mode control” low, the CD4031 ”data 1” is selected for input to the shifter. The output, Q_{64}, is not recirculated because the lower data selector gate is *disabled*. By disabled we mean that the logic low ”mode select” inverted twice to a low at the lower NAND gate prevents it for passing any signal on the lower pin (data 2) to the gate output. Thus, it is disabled.



CD4517b dual 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register

A CD4517b dual 64-bit shift register is shown above. Note the taps at the 16th, 32nd, and 48th stages. That means that shift registers of those lengths can be configured from one of the 64-bit shifters. Of course, the 64-bit shifters may be cascaded to yield an 80-bit, 96-bit, 112-bit, or 128-bit shift register. The clock CL_A and CL_B need to be paralleled when cascading the two shifters. WE_B and WE_B are grounded for normal shifting operations. The data inputs to the shift registers A and B are D_A and D_B respectively.

Suppose that we require a 16-bit shift register. Can this be configured with the CD4517b? How about a 64-shift register from the same part?



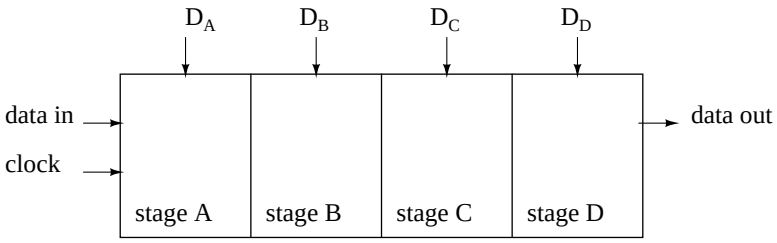
CD4517b dual 64-bit serial-in/ serial-out shift register, wired for 16-shift register, 64-bit shift register

Above we show A CD4517b wired as a 16-bit shift register for section B. The clock for section B is CL_B. The data is clocked in at CL_B. And the data delayed by 16-clocks is picked of off Q_{16B}. WE_B , the write enable, is grounded.

Above we also show the same CD4517b wired as a 64-bit shift register for the independent section A. The clock for section A is CL_A. The data enters at CL_A. The data delayed by 64-clock pulses is picked up from Q_{64A}. WE_A, the write enable for section A, is grounded.

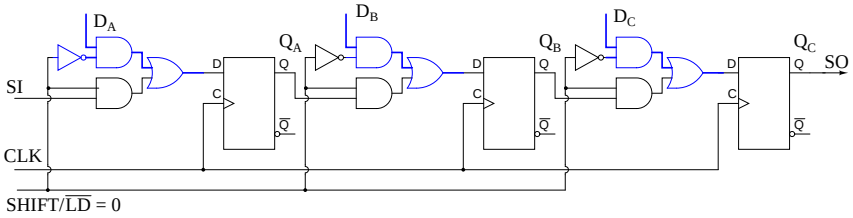
12.3 Parallel-in, serial-out shift register

Parallel-in/ serial-out shift registers do everything that the previous serial-in/ serial-out shift registers do plus input data to all stages simultaneously. The parallel-in/ serial-out shift register stores data, shifts it on a clock by clock basis, and delays it by the number of stages times the clock period. In addition, parallel-in/ serial-out really means that we can load data in parallel into all stages before any shifting ever begins. This is a way to convert data from a *parallel* format to a *serial* format. By parallel format we mean that the data bits are present simultaneously on individual wires, one for each data bit as shown below. By serial format we mean that the data bits are presented sequentially in time on a single wire or circuit as in the case of the ”data out” on the block diagram below.



Parallel-in, serial-out shift register with 4-stages

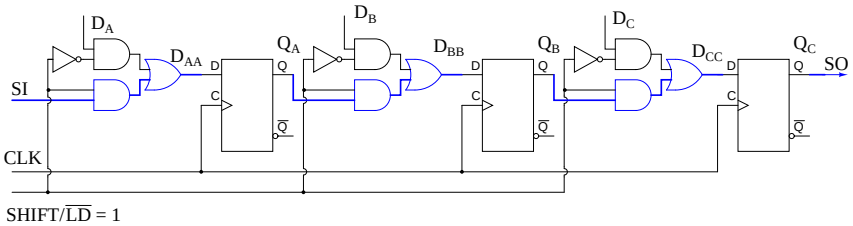
Below we take a close look at the internal details of a 3-stage parallel-in/ serial-out shift register. A stage consists of a type **D** Flip-Flop for storage, and an AND-OR selector to determine whether data will load in parallel, or shift stored data to the right. In general, these elements will be replicated for the number of stages required. We show three stages due to space limitations. Four, eight or sixteen bits is normal for real parts.



Parallel-in/ serial-out shift register showing parallel load path

Above we show the parallel load path when SHIFT/LD' is logic low. The upper NAND gates serving D_A D_B D_C are enabled, passing data to the D inputs of type **D** Flip-Flops Q_A Q_B D_C respectively. At the next positive going clock edge, the data will be clocked from D to Q of the three FFs. Three bits of data will load into Q_A Q_B D_C at the same time.

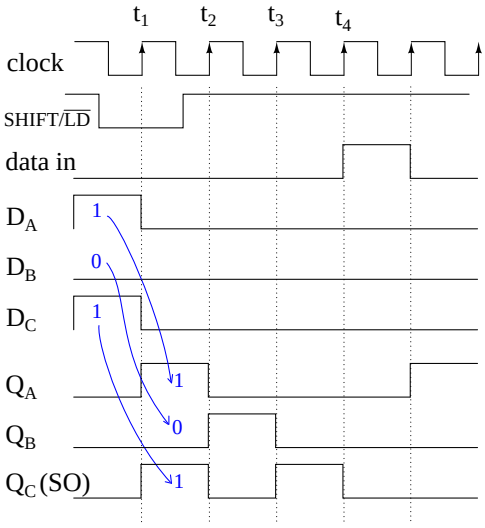
The type of parallel load just described, where the data loads on a clock pulse is known as *synchronous load* because the loading of data is synchronized to the clock. This needs to be differentiated from *asynchronous load* where loading is controlled by the preset and clear pins of the Flip-Flops which does not require the clock. Only one of these load methods is used within an individual device, the synchronous load being more common in newer devices.



Parallel-in/ serial-out shift register showing shift path

The shift path is shown above when SHIFT/LD' is logic high. The lower AND gates of the pairs feeding the OR gate are enabled giving us a shift register connection of SI to D_A , Q_A to D_B , Q_B to D_C , Q_C to SO. Clock pulses will cause data to be right shifted out to SO on successive pulses.

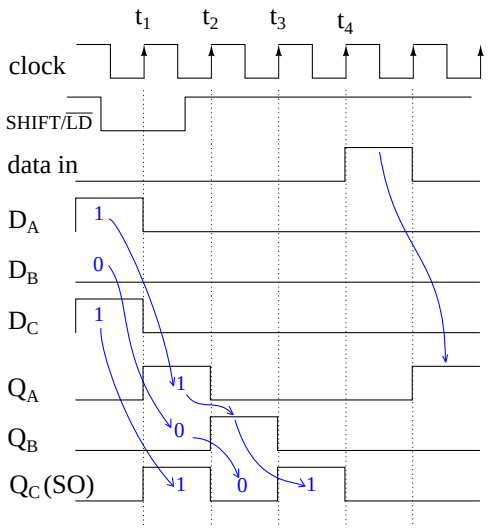
The waveforms below show both parallel loading of three bits of data and serial shifting of this data. Parallel data at D_A D_B D_C is converted to serial data at SO.



Parallel-in/ serial-out shift register load/shift waveforms

What we previously described with words for parallel loading and shifting is now set down as waveforms above. As an example we present **101** to the parallel inputs D_{AA} D_{BB} D_{CC}. Next, the SHIFT/LD' goes low enabling loading of data as opposed to shifting of data. It needs to be low a short time before and after the clock pulse due to setup and hold requirements. It is considerably wider than it has to be. Though, with synchronous logic it is convenient to make it wide. We could have made the active low SHIFT/LD' almost two clocks wide, low almost a clock before t_1 and back high just before t_3. The important factor is that it needs to be low around clock time t_1 to enable parallel loading of the data by the clock.

Note that at t_1 the data **101** at D_A D_B D_C is clocked from D to Q of the Flip-Flops as shown at Q_A Q_B Q_C at time t_1. This is the parallel loading of the data synchronous with the clock.



Parallel-in/ serial-out shift register load/shift waveforms

Now that the data is loaded, we may shift it provided that SHIFT/LD' is high to enable shifting, which it is prior to t_2. At t_2 the data **0** at Q_C is shifted out of SO which is the same as the Q_C waveform. It is either shifted into another integrated circuit, or lost if there is nothing connected to SO. The data at Q_B, a **0** is shifted to Q_C. The **1** at Q_A is shifted into Q_B. With "data in" a **0**, Q_A becomes **0**. After t_2, Q_A Q_B Q_C = **010**.

After t_3, Q_A Q_B Q_C = **001**. This **1**, which was originally present at Q_A after t_1, is now present at SO and Q_C. The last data bit is shifted out to an external integrated circuit if it exists. After t_4 all data from the parallel load is gone. At clock t_5 we show the shifting in of a data **1** present on the SI, serial input.

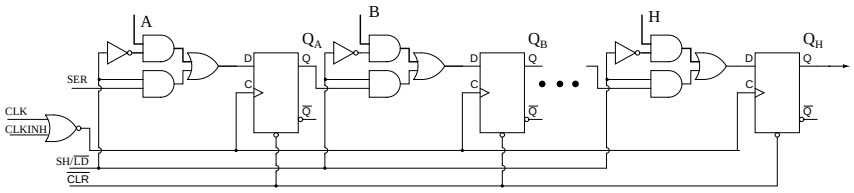
Why provide SI and SO pins on a shift register? These connections allow us to cascade shift register stages to provide large shifters than available in a single IC (Integrated Circuit) package. They also allow serial connections to and from other ICs like microprocessors.

12.3.1 Parallel-in/serial-out devices

Let's take a closer look at parallel-in/ serial-out shift registers available as integrated circuits, courtesy of Texas Instruments. For complete device data sheets follow these the links.

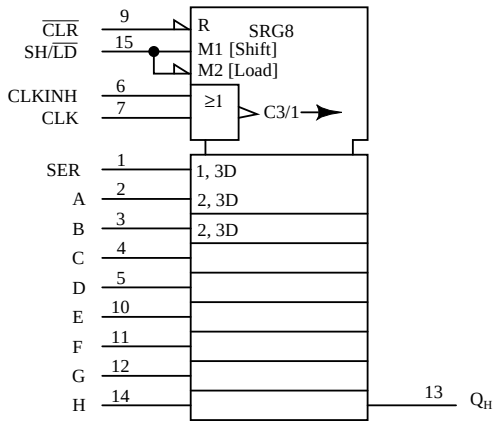
- SN74ALS166 parallel-in/ serial-out 8-bit shift register, synchronous load
  (`http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74als166.pdf`)
- SN74ALS165 parallel-in/ serial-out 8-bit shift register, asynchronous load
  (`http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74als165.pdf`)
- CD4014B parallel-in/ serial-out 8-bit shift register, synchronous load
  (`http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/cd4014b.pdf`)

- SN74LS647 parallel-in/ serial-out 16-bit shift register, synchronous load
  (http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74ls674.pdf)



SN74ALS166 Parallel-in/ serial-out 8-bit shift register

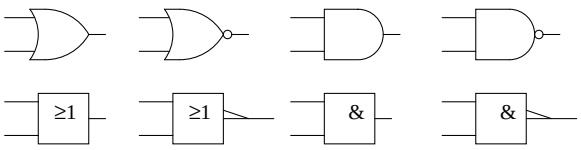
The SN74ALS166 shown above is the closest match of an actual part to the previous parallel-in/ serial out shifter figures. Let us note the minor changes to our figure above. First of all, there are 8-stages. We only show three. All 8-stages are shown on the data sheet available at the link above. The manufacturer labels the data inputs A, B, C, and so on to H. The SHIFT/LOAD control is called SH/LD'. It is abbreviated from our previous terminology, but works the same: parallel load if low, shift if high. The shift input (serial data in) is SER on the ALS166 instead of SI. The clock CLK is controlled by an inhibit signal, CLKINH. If CLKINH is high, the clock is inhibited, or disabled. Otherwise, this "real part" is the same as what we have looked at in detail.



SN74ALS166 ANSI Symbol

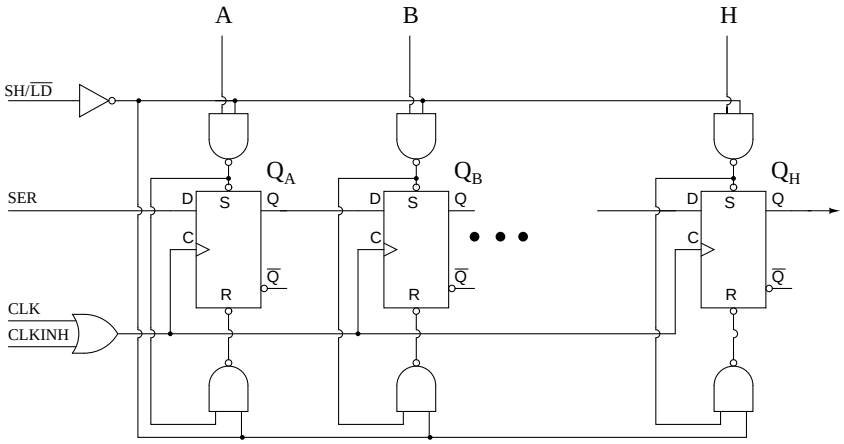
Above is the ANSI (American National Standards Institute) symbol for the SN74ALS166 as provided on the data sheet. Once we know how the part operates, it is convenient to hide the details within a symbol. There are many general forms of symbols. The advantage of the ANSI symbol is that the labels provide hints about how the part operates.

The large notched block at the top of the '74ASL166 is the control section of the ANSI symbol. There is a reset indicted by **R**. There are three control signals: **M1** (Shift), **M2** (Load), and **C3/1 (arrow)** (inhibited clock). The clock has two functions. First, **C3** for shifting parallel data wherever a prefix of 3 appears. Second, whenever **M1** is asserted, as indicated by the **1** of **C3/1 (arrow)**, the data is shifted as indicated by the right pointing arrow. The slash (/) is a separator between these two functions. The 8-shift stages, as indicated by title **SRG8**, are identified by the external inputs **A, B, C,** to **H**. The internal **2, 3D** indicates that data, **D**, is controlled by **M2** [Load] and **C3** clock. In this case, we can conclude that the parallel data is loaded synchronously with the clock **C3**. The upper stage at **A** is a wider block than the others to accommodate the input **SER**. The legend **1, 3D** implies that **SER** is controlled by **M1** [Shift] and **C3** clock. Thus, we expect to clock in data at **SER** when shifting as opposed to parallel loading.



ANSI gate symbols

The ANSI/IEEE basic gate *rectangular symbols* are provided above for comparison to the more familiar *shape symbols* so that we may decipher the meaning of the symbology associated with the **CLKIN**H and **CLK** pins on the previous ANSI SN74ALS166 symbol. The **CLK** and CLKINH feed an **OR** gate on the SN74ALS166 ANSI symbol. **OR** is indicated by **=>** on the rectangular inset symbol. The long triangle at the output indicates a clock. If there was a bubble with the arrow this would have indicated shift on negative clock edge (high to low). Since there is no bubble with the clock arrow, the register shifts on the positive (low to high transition) clock edge. The long arrow, after the legend **C3/1** pointing right indicates shift right, which is down the symbol.



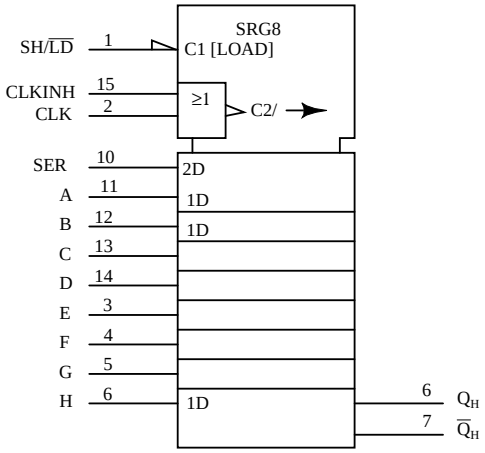
SN74ALS165 Parallel-in/ serial-out 8-bit shift register, asynchronous load

Part of the internal logic of the SN74ALS165 parallel-in/ serial-out, asynchronous load shift register is reproduced from the data sheet above. See the link at the beginning of this section the for the full diagram. We have not looked at asynchronous loading of data up to this point. First of all, the loading is accomplished by application of appropriate signals to the **Set** (preset) and **Reset** (clear) inputs of the Flip-Flops. The upper **NAND** gates feed the **Set** pins of the FFs and also cascades into the lower **NAND** gate feeding the **Reset** pins of the FFs. The lower **NAND** gate inverts the signal in going from the **Set** pin to the **Reset** pin.

First, **SH/LD'** must be pulled **Low** to enable the upper and lower **NAND** gates. If **SH/LD'** were at a logic **high** instead, the inverter feeding a logic **low** to all **NAND** gates would force a **High** out, releasing the "active low" **Set** and **Reset** pins of all FFs. There would be no possibility of loading the FFs.

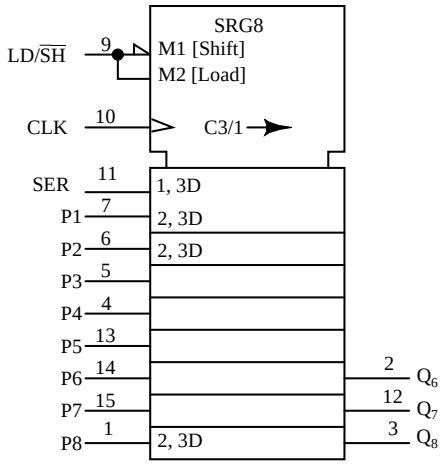
With **SH/LD'** held **Low**, we can feed, for example, a data **1** to parallel input **A**, which inverts to a zero at the upper **NAND** gate output, setting FF Q_A to a **1**. The **0** at the **Set** pin is fed to the lower **NAND** gate where it is inverted to a **1** , releasing the **Reset** pin of $\mathbf{Q}_A$. Thus, a data **A=1** sets $\mathbf{Q}_A$**=1**. Since none of this required the clock, the loading is asynchronous with respect to the clock. We use an asynchronous loading shift register if we cannot wait for a clock to parallel load data, or if it is inconvenient to generate a single clock pulse.

The only difference in feeding a data **0** to parallel input **A** is that it inverts to a **1** out of the upper gate releasing **Set**. This **1** at **Set** is inverted to a **0** at the lower gate, pulling **Reset** to a **Low**, which resets $\mathbf{Q}_A$**=0**.

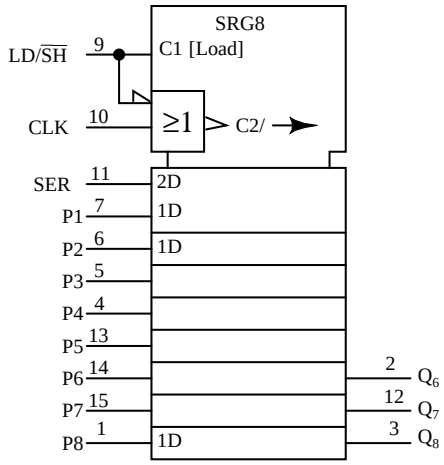


SN74ALS165 ANSI Symbol

The ANSI symbol for the SN74ALS166 above has two internal controls **C1** [LOAD] and **C2** clock from the **OR** function of (**CLKINH, CLK**). **SRG8** says 8-stage shifter. The arrow after **C2** indicates shifting right or down. **SER** input is a function of the clock as indicated by internal label **2D**. The parallel data inputs **A, B, C** to **H** are a function of **C1** [LOAD], indicated by internal label **1D**. **C1** is asserted when **sh/LD' =0** due to the half-arrow inverter at the input. Compare this to the control of the parallel data inputs by the clock of the previous synchronous ANSI SN75ALS166. Note the differences in the ANSI Data labels.



CD4014B, synchronous load

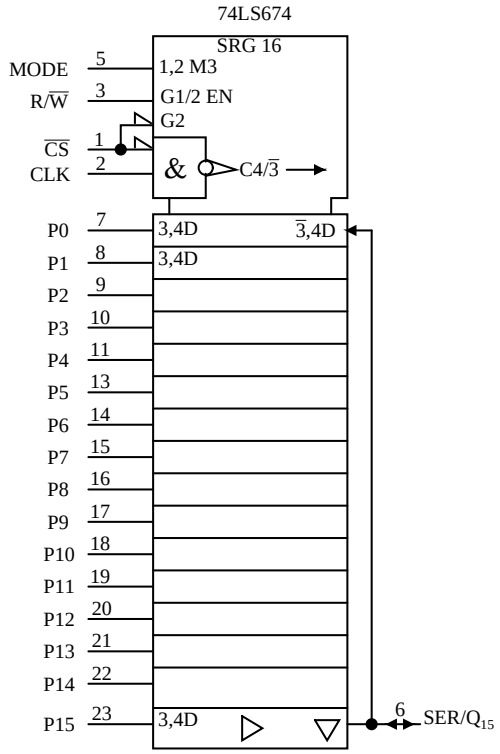


CD4021B, asynchronous load

CMOS Parallel-in/ serial-out shift registers, 8-bit ANSI symbols

On the CD4014B above, **M1** is asserted when **LD/SH'=0**. **M2** is asserted when **LD/SH'=1**. Clock **C3/1** is used for parallel loading data at **2, 3D** when **M2** is active as indicated by the **2,3** prefix labels. Pins **P3** to **P7** are understood to have the smae internal **2,3** prefix labels as **P2** and **P8**. At **SER**, the **1,3D** prefix implies that **M1** and clock **C3** are necessary to input serial data. Right shifting takes place when M1 active is as indicated by the **1** in **C3/1 arrow**.

The CD4021B is a similar part except for asynchronous parallel loading of data as implied by the lack of any **2** prefix in the data label **1D** for pins P1, P2, to P8. Of course, prefix **2** in label **2D** at input **SER** says that data is clocked into this pin. The **OR** gate inset shows that the clock is controlled by **LD/SH'**.



SN74LS674, parallel-in/serial-out, synchronous load

The above SN74LS674 internal label **SRG 16** indicates 16-bit shift register. The **MODE** input to the control section at the top of the symbol is labeled **1,2 M3**. Internal **M3** is a function of input **MODE** and **G1** and **G2** as indicated by the **1,2** preceding **M3**. The base label **G** indicates an **AND** function of any such **G** inputs. Input **R/W'** is internally labeled **G1/2 EN**. This is an enable **EN** (controlled by **G1 AND G2**) for tristate devices used elsewhere in the symbol. We note that **CS'** on (pin 1) is internal **G2**. Chip select **CS'** also is **AND**ed with the input **CLK** to give internal clock **C4**. The bubble within the clock arrow indicates that activity is on the negative (high to low transition) clock edge. The slash (/) is a separator implying two

functions for the clock. Before the slash, **C4** indicates control of anything with a prefix of **4**. After the slash, the **3' (arrow)** indicates shifting. The **3'** of **C4/3'** implies shifting when M3 is de-asserted (**MODE=0**). The long arrow indicates shift right (down).

Moving down below the control section to the data section, we have external inputs **P0-P15**, pins (7-11, 13-23). The prefix **3,4** of internal label **3,4D** indicates that **M3** and the clock **C4** control loading of parallel data. The **D** stands for Data. This label is assumed to apply to all the parallel inputs, though not explicitly written out. Locate the label **3',4D** on the right of the **P0** (pin7) stage. The complemented-**3** indicates that **M3=MODE=0** inputs (shifts) **SER/**$\mathbf{Q}_{15}$ (pin5) at clock time, (**4** of 3',4D) corresponding to clock **C4**. In other words, with **MODE=0**, we shift data into $\mathbf{Q}_0$ from the serial input (pin 6). All other stages shift right (down) at clock time.

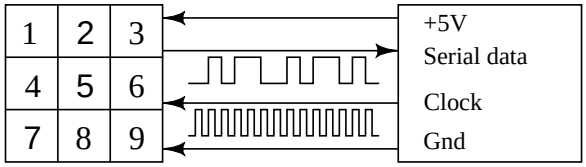
Moving to the bottom of the symbol, the triangle pointing right indicates a buffer between **Q** and the output pin. The Triangle pointing down indicates a tri-state device. We previously stated that the tristate is controlled by enable **EN**, which is actually **G1 AND G2** from the control section. If **R/W=0**, the tri-state is disabled, and we can shift data into $\mathbf{Q}_0$ via **SER** (pin 6), a detail we omitted above. We actually need **MODE=0, R/W'=0, CS'=0**

The internal logic of the SN74LS674 and a table summarizing the operation of the control signals is available in the link in the bullet list, top of section.

If **R/W'=1**, the tristate is enabled, $\mathbf{Q}_{15}$ shifts out **SER/**$\mathbf{Q}_{15}$ (pin 6) and recirculates to the $\mathbf{Q}_0$ stage via the right hand wire to **3',4D**. We have assumed that CS' was low giving us clock C4/3' and G2 to **EN**able the tri-state.

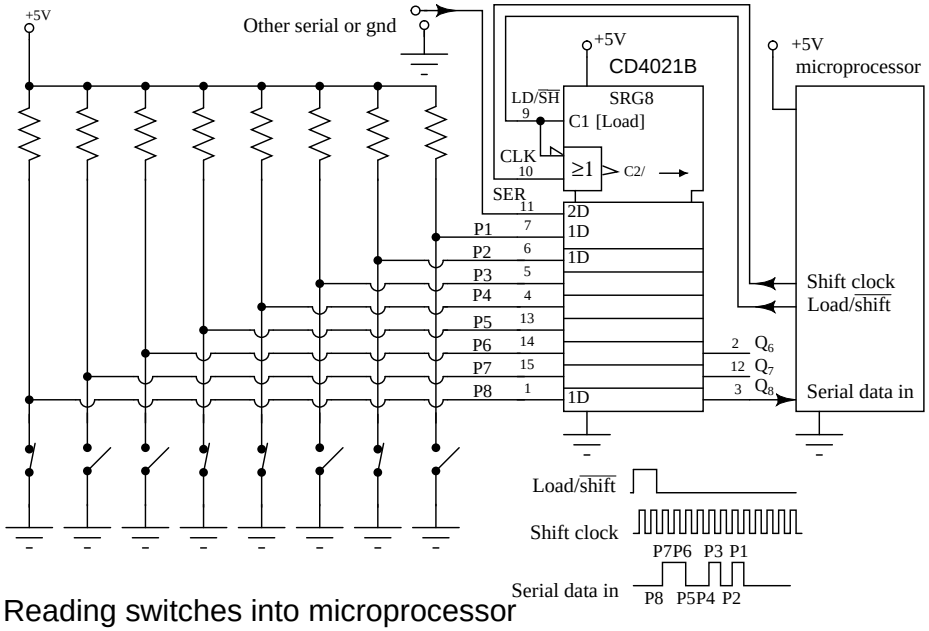
12.3.2 Practical applications

An application of a parallel-in/ serial-out shift register is to read data into a microprocessor.



Alarm with remote keypad

The Alarm above is controlled by a remote keypad. The alarm box supplies +5V and ground to the remote keypad to power it. The alarm reads the remote keypad every few tens of milliseconds by sending shift clocks to the keypad which returns serial data showing the status of the keys via a parallel-in/ serial-out shift register. Thus, we read nine key switches with four wires. How many wires would be required if we had to run a circuit for each of the nine keys?



Reading switches into microprocessor

A practical application of a parallel-in/ serial-out shift register is to read many switch closures into a microprocessor on just a few pins. Some low end microprocessors only have 6-I/O (Input/Output) pins available on an 8-pin package. Or, we may have used most of the pins on an 84-pin package. We may want to reduce the number of wires running around a circuit board, machine, vehicle, or building. This will increase the reliability of our system. It has been reported that manufacturers who have reduced the number of wires in an automobile produce a more reliable product. In any event, only three microprocessor pins are required to read in 8-bits of data from the switches in the figure above.

We have chosen an asynchronous loading device, the CD4021B because it is easier to control the loading of data without having to generate a single parallel load clock. The parallel data inputs of the shift register are pulled up to +5V with a resistor on each input. If all switches are open, all **1**s will be loaded into the shift register when the microprocessor moves the **LD/SH'** line from low to high, then back low in anticipation of shifting. Any switch closures will apply logic **0**s to the corresponding parallel inputs. The data pattern at P1-P7 will be parallel loaded by the **LD/SH'=1** generated by the microprocessor software.

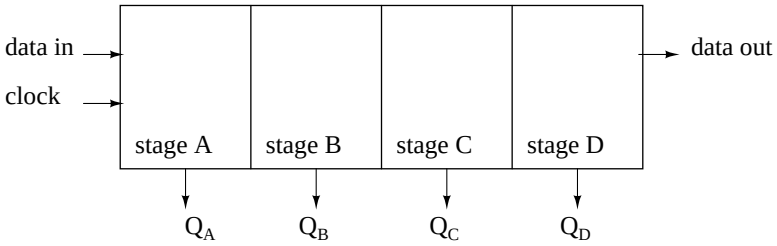
The microprocessor generates shift pulses and reads a data bit for each of the 8-bits. This process may be performed totally with software, or larger microprocessors may have one or more serial interfaces to do the task more quickly with hardware. With **LD/SH'=0**, the microprocessor generates a **0** to **1** transition on the **Shift clock line**, then reads a data bit on the **Serial data in** line. This is repeated for all 8-bits.

The **SER** line of the shift register may be driven by another identical CD4021B circuit if more switch contacts need to be read. In which case, the microprocessor generates 16-shift pulses. More likely, it will be driven by something else compatible with this serial data format, for example, an analog to digital converter, a temperature sensor, a keyboard scanner, a serial read-only memory. As for the switch closures, they may be limit switches on the carriage of a

machine, an over-temperature sensor, a magnetic reed switch, a door or window switch, an air or water pressure switch, or a solid state optical interrupter.

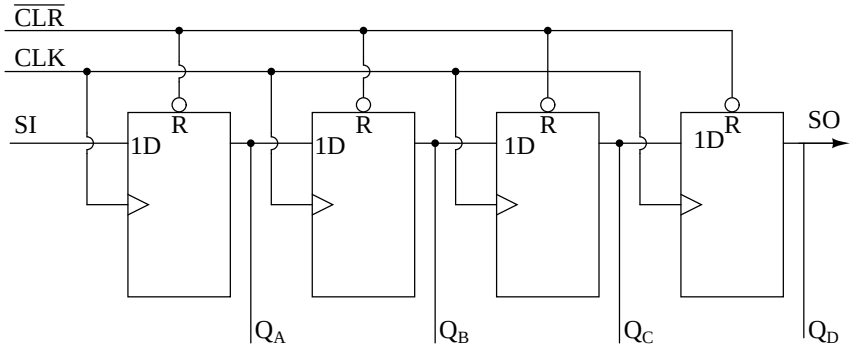
12.4 Serial-in, parallel-out shift register

A serial-in/parallel-out shift register is similar to the serial-in/ serial-out shift register in that it shifts data into internal storage elements and shifts data out at the serial-out, data-out, pin. It is different in that it makes all the internal stages available as outputs. Therefore, a serial-in/parallel-out shift register converts data from serial format to parallel format. If four data bits are shifted in by four clock pulses via a single wire at data-in, below, the data becomes available simultaneously on the four Outputs $\mathbf{Q}_A$ to $\mathbf{Q}_D$ after the fourth clock pulse.



Serial-in, parallel-out shift register with 4-stages

The practical application of the serial-in/parallel-out shift register is to convert data from serial format on a single wire to parallel format on multiple wires. Perhaps, we will illuminate four LEDs (Light Emitting Diodes) with the four outputs ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$).

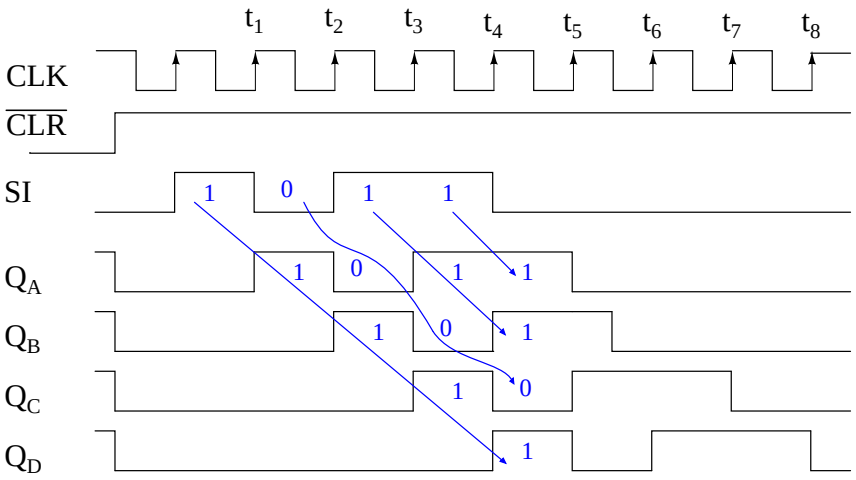


Serial-in/ Parallel out shift register details

The above details of the serial-in/parallel-out shift register are fairly simple. It looks like a serial-in/ serial-out shift register with taps added to each stage output. Serial data shifts in at **SI** (Serial Input). After a number of clocks equal to the number of stages, the first data bit

in appears at SO (Q_D) in the above figure. In general, there is no SO pin. The last stage (Q_D above) serves as SO and is cascaded to the next package if it exists.

If a serial-in/parallel-out shift register is so similar to a serial-in/ serial-out shift register, why do manufacturers bother to offer both types? Why not just offer the serial-in/parallel-out shift register? They actually only offer the serial-in/parallel-out shift register, as long as it has no more than 8-bits. Note that serial-in/ serial-out shift registers come in gigger than 8-bit lengths of 18 to to 64-bits. It is not practical to offer a 64-bit serial-in/parallel-out shift register requiring that many output pins. See waveforms below for above shift register.



Serial-in/ parallel-out shift register waveforms

The shift register has been cleared prior to any data by **CLR'**, an active low signal, which clears all type D Flip-Flops within the shift register. Note the serial data **1011** pattern presented at the **SI** input. This data is synchronized with the clock **CLK**. This would be the case if it is being shifted in from something like another shift register, for example, a parallel-in/ serial-out shift register (not shown here). On the first clock at **t1**, the data **1** at **SI** is shifted from **D** to **Q** of the first shift register stage. After **t2** this first data bit is at $\mathbf{Q}_B$. After **t3** it is at $\mathbf{Q}_C$. After **t4** it is at $\mathbf{Q}_D$. Four clock pulses have shifted the first data bit all the way to the last stage $\mathbf{Q}_D$. The second data bit a **0** is at $\mathbf{Q}_C$ after the 4th clock. The third data bit a **1** is at $\mathbf{Q}_B$. The fourth data bit another **1** is at $\mathbf{Q}_A$. Thus, the serial data input pattern **1011** is contained in ($\mathbf{Q}_D$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_A$). It is now available on the four outputs.

It will available on the four outputs from just after clock $\mathbf{t}_4$ to just before $\mathbf{t}_5$. This parallel data must be used or stored between these two times, or it will be lost due to shifting out the Q_D stage on following clocks $\mathbf{t}_5$ to $\mathbf{t}_8$ as shown above.

12.4.1 Serial-in/ parallel-out devices

Let's take a closer look at Serial-in/ parallel-out shift registers available as integrated circuits, courtesy of Texas Instruments. For complete device data sheets follow the links.

- SN74ALS164A serial-in/ parallel-out 8-bit shift register

  (http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74als164a.pdf)

- SN74AHC594 serial-in/ parallel-out 8-bit shift register with output register

  (http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74ahct594.pdf)

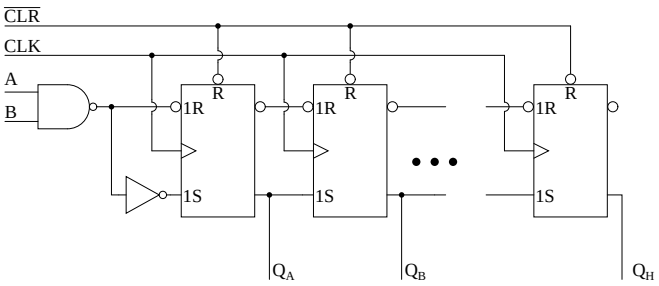
- SN74AHC595 serial-in/ parallel-out 8-bit shift register with output register

  (http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74ahct595.pdf)

- CD4094 serial-in/ parallel-out 8-bit shift register with output register

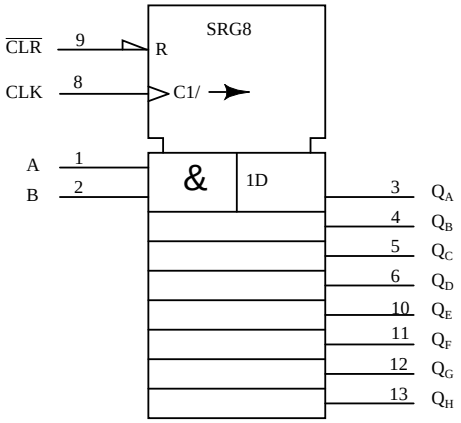
  (http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/cd4094b.pdf)

  (http://www.st.com/stonline/books/pdf/docs/2069.pdf)



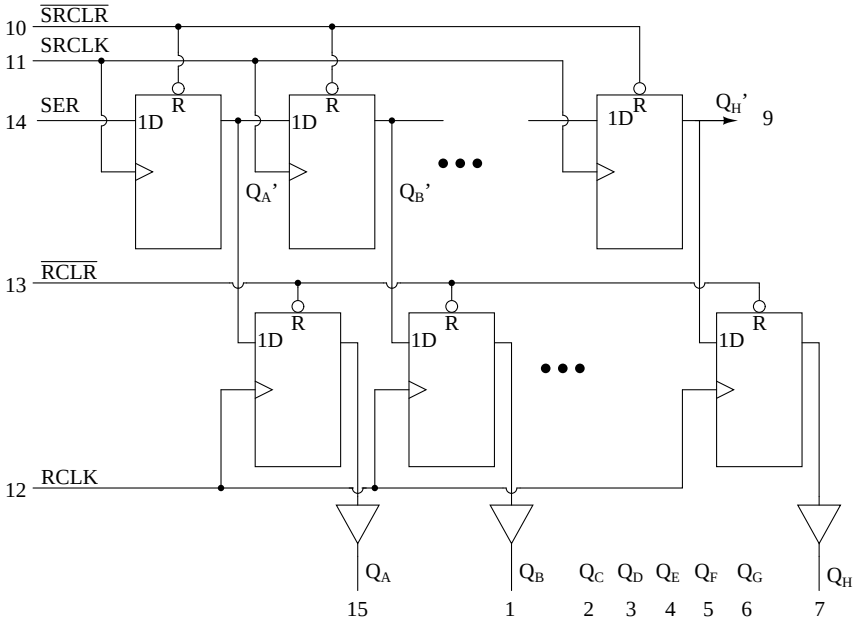
Serial-in/ Parallel out shift register details

The 74ALS164A is almost identical to our prior diagram with the exception of the two serial inputs **A** and **B**. The unused input should be pulled high to enable the other input. We do not show all the stages above. However, all the outputs are shown on the ANSI symbol below, along with the pin numbers.



. SN74ALS164A ANSI Symbol

The **CLK** input to the control section of the above ANSI symbol has two internal functions **C1**, control of anything with a prefix of **1**. This would be clocking in of data at **1D**. The second function, the arrow after after the slash (/) is right (down) shifting of data within the shift register. The eight outputs are available to the right of the eight registers below the control section. The first stage is wider than the others to accommodate the **A&B** input.

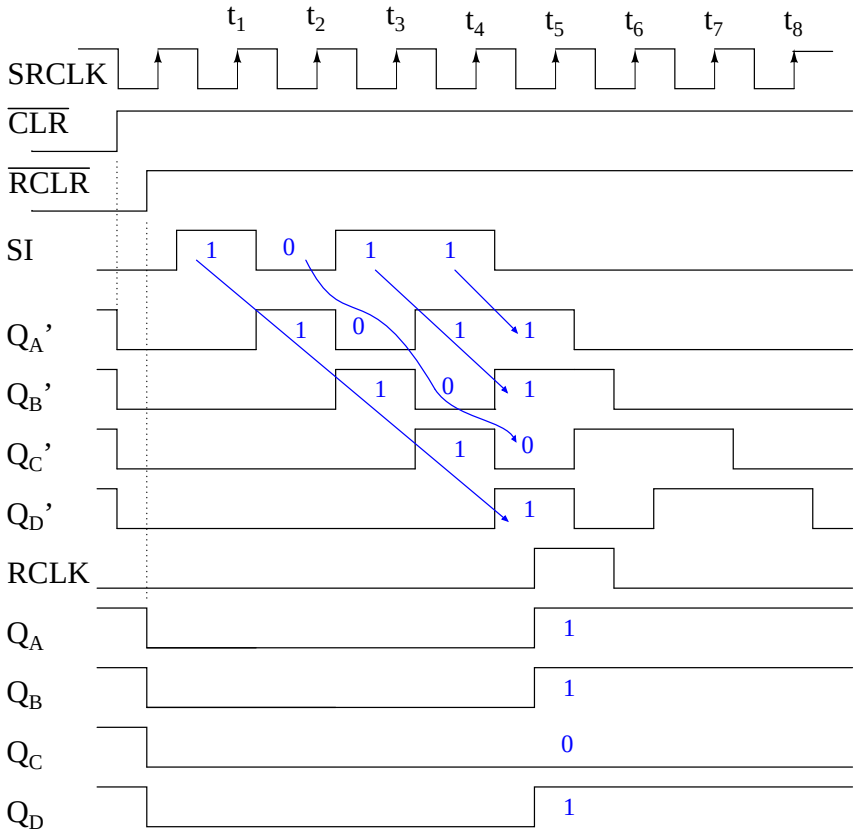


74AHC594 Serial-in/ Parallel out 8-bit shift register with output registers

The above internal logic diagram is adapted from the TI (Texas Instruments) data sheet for the 74AHC594. The type "D" FFs in the top row comprise a serial-in/ parallel-out shift register. This section works like the previously described devices. The outputs ($\mathbf{Q}_A$**'** $\mathbf{Q}_B$**'** to $\mathbf{Q}_H$**'**) of the shift register half of the device feed the type "D" FFs in the lower half in parallel. $\mathbf{Q}_H$**'** (pin 9) is shifted out to any optional cascaded device package.

A single positive clock edge at RCLK will transfer the data from **D** to **Q** of the lower FFs. All 8-bits transfer in parallel to the output *register* (a collection of storage elements). The purpose of the output register is to maintain a constant data output while new data is being shifted into the upper shift register section. This is necessary if the outputs drive relays, valves, motors, solenoids, horns, or buzzers. This feature may not be necessary when driving LEDs as long as flicker during shifting is not a problem.

Note that the 74AHC594 has separate clocks for the shift register (**SRCLK**) and the output register (**RCLK**). Also, the shifter may be cleared by **SRCLR** and, the output register by **RCLR**. It desirable to put the outputs in a known state at power-on, in particular, if driving relays, motors, etc. The waveforms below illustrate shifting and latching of data.



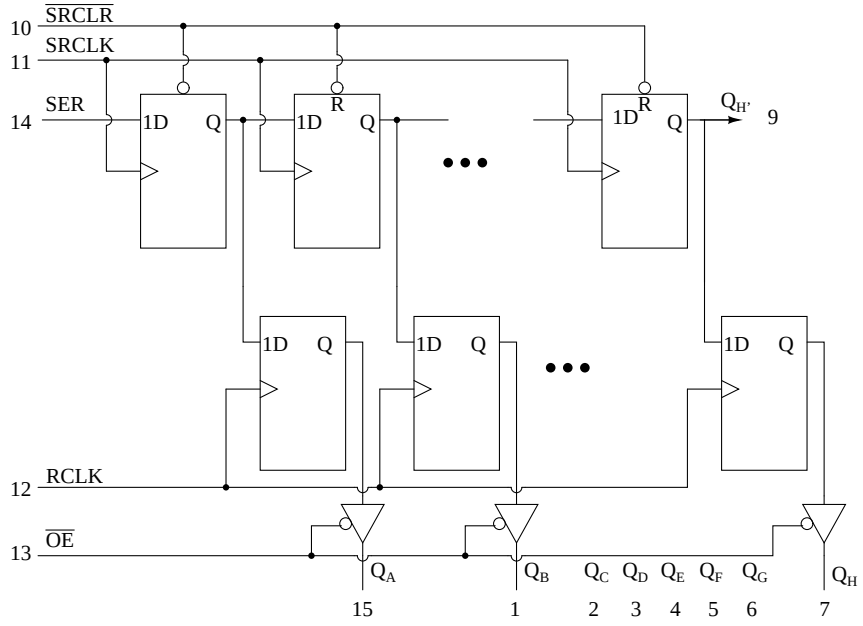
Waveforms for 74AHC594 serial-in/ parallel-out shift registe rwith latch

The above waveforms show shifting of 4-bits of data into the first four stages of 74AHC594, then the parallel transfer to the output register. In actual fact, the 74AHC594 is an 8-bit shift register, and it would take 8-clocks to shift in 8-bits of data, which would be the normal mode of operation. However, the 4-bits we show saves space and adequately illustrates the operation.

We clear the shift register half a clock prior to $\mathbf{t}_0$ with **SRCLR'=0**. **SRCLR'** must be released back high prior to shifting. Just prior to $\mathbf{t}_0$ the output register is cleared by **RCLR'=0**. It, too, is released (**RCLR'=1**).

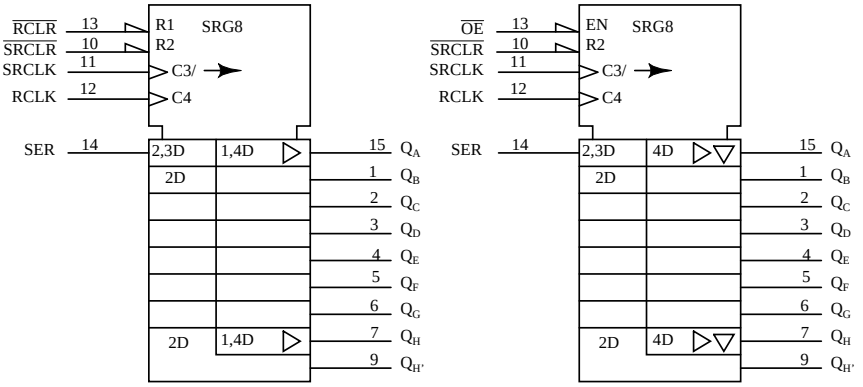
Serial data **1011** is presented at the SI pin between clocks $\mathbf{t}_0$ and $\mathbf{t}_4$. It is shifted in by clocks $\mathbf{t}_1$ $\mathbf{t}_2$ $\mathbf{t}_3$ $\mathbf{t}_4$ appearing at internal shift stages $\mathbf{Q}_A$**'** $\mathbf{Q}_B$**'** $\mathbf{Q}_C$**'** $\mathbf{Q}_D$**'** . This data is present at these stages between $\mathbf{t}_4$ and $\mathbf{t}_5$. After $\mathbf{t}_5$ the desired data (**1011**) will be unavailable on these internal shifter stages.

Between $\mathbf{t}_4$ and $\mathbf{t}_5$ we apply a positive going **RCLK** transferring data **1011** to register outputs $\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$. This data will be frozen here as more data (**0**s) shifts in during the succeeding **SRCLK**s ($\mathbf{t}_5$ to $\mathbf{t}_8$). There will not be a change in data here until another **RCLK** is applied.



74AHC595 Serial-in/ Parallel out 8-bit shift register with output registers

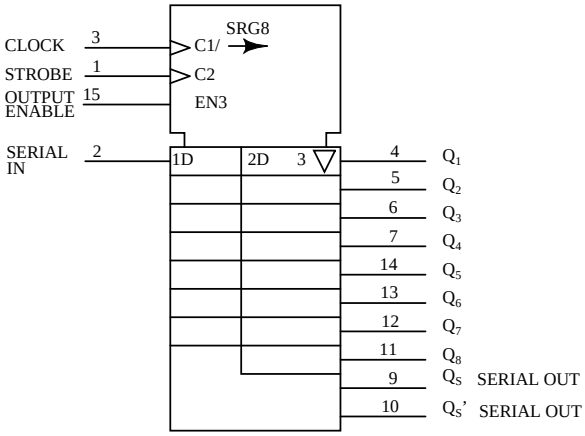
The 74AHC595 is identical to the '594 except that the **RCLR'** is replaced by an **OE'** enabling a tri-state buffer at the output of each of the eight output register bits. Though the output register cannot be cleared, the outputs may be disconnected by **OE'=1**. This would allow external pull-up or pull-down resistors to force any relay, solenoid, or valve drivers to a known state during a system power-up. Once the system is powered-up and, say, a microprocessor has shifted and latched data into the '595, the output enable could be asserted (**OE'=0**) to drive the relays, solenoids, and valves with valid data, but, not before that time.



SN74AHC594 ANSI Symbol SN74AHC595 ANSI Symbol

Above are the proposed ANSI symbols for these devices. **C3** clocks data into the serial input (external **SER**) as indicate by the **3** prefix of **2,3D**. The arrow after **C3/** indicates shifting right (down) of the shift register, the 8-stages to the left of the '595symbol below the control section. The **2** prefix of **2,3D** and **2D** indicates that these stages can be reset by **R2** (external **SRCLR'**).

The **1** prefix of **1,4D** on the **'594** indicates that **R1** (external **RCLR'**) may reset the output register, which is to the right of the shift register section. The **'595**, which has an **EN** at external **OE'** cannot reset the output register. But, the **EN** enables tristate (inverted triangle) output buffers. The right pointing triangle of both the **'594** and**'595** indicates internal buffering. Both the **'594** and**'595** output registers are clocked by C4 as indicated by **4** of **1,4D** and **4D** respectively.



CD4094B/ 74HCT4094 ANSI Symbol

The CD4094B is a 3 to 15V_{DC} capable latching shift register alternative to the previous 74AHC594 devices. **CLOCK**, **C**1, shifts data in at **SERIAL IN** as implied by the **1** prefix

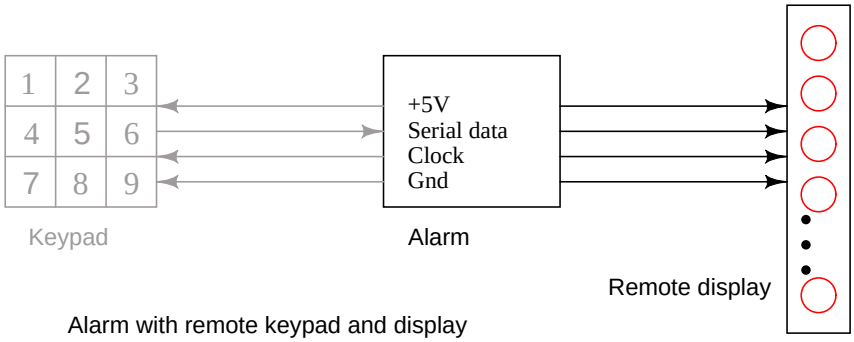
of **1D**. It is also the clock of the right shifting shift register (left half of the symbol body) as indicated by the /(right-arrow) of **C1**/(arrow) at the **CLOCK** input.

STROBE, **C2** is the clock for the 8-bit output register to the right of the symbol body. The **2** of **2D** indicates that **C2** is the clock for the output register. The inverted triangle in the output latch indicates that the output is tristated, being enabled by **EN3**. The **3** preceding the inverted triangle and the **3** of **EN3** are often omitted, as any enable (**EN**) is understood to control the tristate outputs.

$\mathbf{Q}_S$ and $\mathbf{Q}_S$**'** are non-latched outputs of the shift register stage. $\mathbf{Q}_S$ could be cascaded to **SERIAL IN** of a succeeding device.

12.4.2 Practical applications

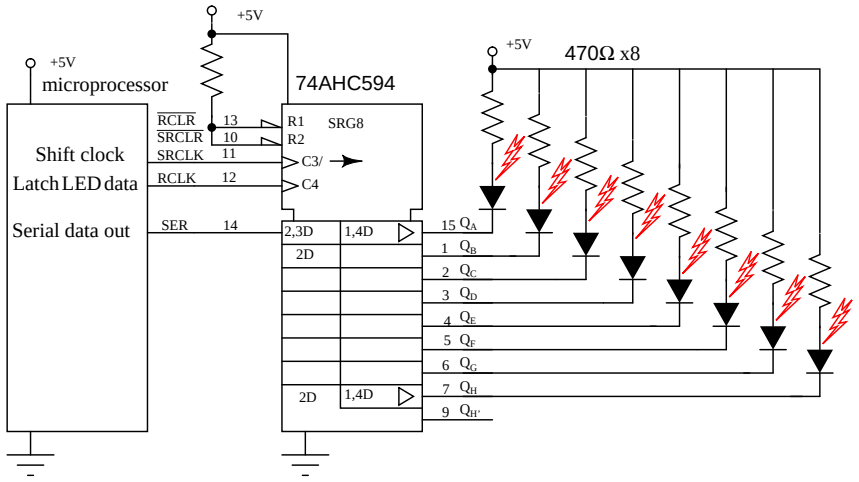
A real-world application of the serial-in/ parallel-out shift register is to output data from a microprocessor to a remote panel indicator. Or, another remote output device which accepts serial format data.



Alarm with remote keypad and display

The figure "Alarm with remote key pad" is repeated here from the parallel-in/ serial-out section with the addition of the remote display. Thus, we can display, for example, the status of the alarm loops connected to the main alarm box. If the Alarm detects an open window, it can send serial data to the remote display to let us know. Both the keypad and the display would likely be contained within the same remote enclosure, separate from the main alarm box. However, we will only look at the display panel in this section.

If the display were on the same board as the Alarm, we could just run eight wires to the eight LEDs along with two wires for power and ground. These eight wires are much less desirable on a long run to a remote panel. Using shift registers, we only need to run five wires- clock, serial data, a strobe, power, and ground. If the panel were just a few inches away from the main board, it might still be desirable to cut down on the number of wires in a connecting cable to improve reliability. Also, we sometimes use up most of the available pins on a microprocessor and need to use serial techniques to expand the number of outputs. Some integrated circuit output devices, such as Digital to Analog converters contain serial-in/ parallel-out shift registers to receive data from microprocessors. The techniques illustrated here are applicable to those parts.



Output to LEDs from microprocessor

We have chosen the 74AHC594 serial-in/ parallel-out shift register with output register; though, it requires an extra pin, **RCLK**, to parallel load the shifted-in data to the output pins. This extra pin prevents the outputs from changing while data is shifting in. This is not much of a problem for LEDs. But, it would be a problem if driving relays, valves, motors, etc.

Code executed within the microprocessor would start with 8-bits of data to be output. One bit would be output on the "Serial data out" pin, driving **SER** of the remote 74AHC594. Next, the microprocessor generates a low to high transition on "Shift clock", driving **SRCLK** of the '595 shift register. This positive clock shifts the data bit at **SER** from "D" to "Q" of the first shift register stage. This has no effect on the $\mathbf{Q}_A$ LED at this time because of the internal 8-bit output register between the shift register and the output pins ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ to $\mathbf{Q}_H$). Finally, "Shift clock" is pulled back low by the microprocessor. This completes the shifting of one bit into the '595.

The above procedure is repeated seven more times to complete the shifting of 8-bits of data from the microprocessor into the 74AHC594 serial-in/ parallel-out shift register. To transfer the 8-bits of data within the internal '595 shift register to the output requires that the microprocessor generate a low to high transition on **RCLK**, the output register clock. This applies new data to the LEDs. The **RCLK** needs to be pulled back low in anticipation of the next 8-bit transfer of data.

The data present at the output of the '595 will remain until the process in the above two paragraphs is repeated for a new 8-bits of data. In particular, new data can be shifted into the '595 internal shift register without affecting the LEDs. The LEDs will only be updated with new data with the application of the **RCLK** rising edge.

What if we need to drive more than eight LEDs? Simply cascade another 74AHC594 **SER** pin to the $\mathbf{Q}_H$**'** of the existing shifter. Parallel the **SRCLK** and **RCLK** pins. The microprocessor would need to transfer 16-bits of data with 16-clocks before generating an **RCLK** feeding both devices.

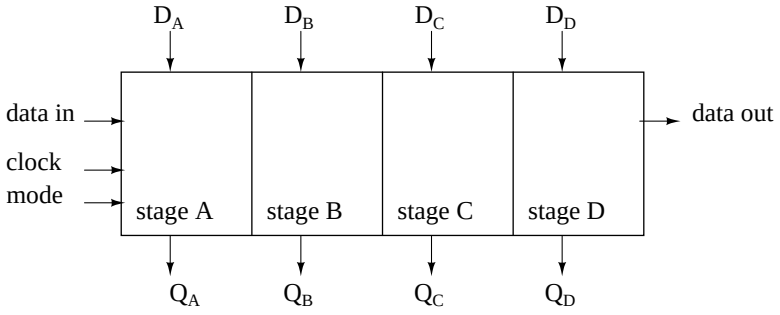
The discrete LED indicators, which we show, could be 7-segment LEDs. Though, there are LSI (Large Scale Integration) devices capable of driving several 7-segment digits. This device

accepts data from a microprocessor in a serial format, driving more LED segments than it has pins by by multiplexing the LEDs. For example, see link below for MAX6955

(http://www.maxim-ic.com/appnotes.cfm/appnote_number/3211)

12.5 Parallel-in, parallel-out, universal shift register

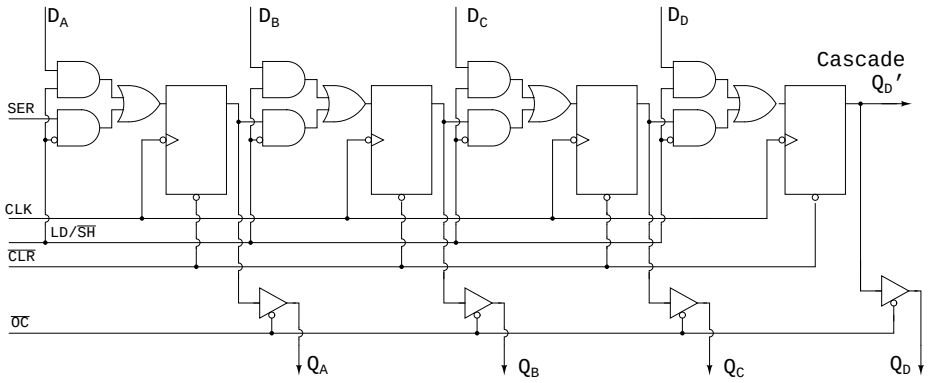
The purpose of the parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register is to take in parallel data, shift it, then output it as shown below. A universal shift register is a do-everything device in addition to the parallel-in/ parallel-out function.



Parallel-in, parallel-out shift register with 4-stages

Above we apply four bit of data to a parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register at $\mathbf{D}_A$ $\mathbf{D}_B$ $\mathbf{D}_C$ $\mathbf{D}_D$. The mode control, which may be multiple inputs, controls parallel loading vs shifting. The mode control may also control the direction of shifting in some real devices. The data will be shifted one bit position for each clock pulse. The shifted data is available at the outputs $\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$. The ”data in” and ”data out” are provided for cascading of multiple stages. Though, above, we can only cascade data for right shifting. We could accommodate cascading of left-shift data by adding a pair of left pointing signals, ”data in” and ”data out”, above.

The internal details of a right shifting parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register are shown below. The tri-state buffers are not strictly necessary to the parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register, but are part of the real-world device shown below.



74LS395 parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register with tri-state output

The 74LS395 so closely matches our concept of a hypothetical right shifting parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register that we use an overly simplified version of the data sheet details above. See the link to the full data sheet more more details, later in this chapter.

LD/SH' controls the AND-OR multiplexer at the data input to the FF's. If **LD/SH'=1**, the upper four AND gates are enabled allowing application of parallel inputs $\mathbf{D}_A$ $\mathbf{D}_B$ $\mathbf{D}_C$ $\mathbf{D}_D$ to the four FF data inputs. Note the inverter bubble at the clock input of the four FFs. This indicates that the 74LS395 clocks data on the negative going clock, which is the high to low transition. The four bits of data will be clocked in parallel from $\mathbf{D}_A$ $\mathbf{D}_B$ $\mathbf{D}_C$ $\mathbf{D}_D$ to $\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$ at the next negative going clock. In this "real part", **OC'** must be low if the data needs to be available at the actual output pins as opposed to only on the internal FFs.

The previously loaded data may be shifted right by one bit position if **LD/SH'=0** for the succeeding negative going clock edges. Four clocks would shift the data entirely out of our 4-bit shift register. The data would be lost unless our device was cascaded from $\mathbf{Q}_D$**'** to **SER** of another device.

	D_A	D_B	D_C	D_D
data	1	1	0	1
	Q_A	Q_B	Q_C	Q_D
load	1	1	0	1
shift	X	1	1	0
→				

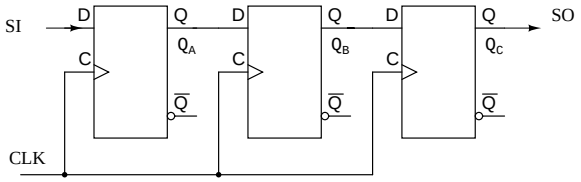
Load and shift

	D_A	D_B	D_C	D_D
data	1	1	0	1
	Q_A	Q_B	Q_C	Q_D
load	1	1	0	1
shift	X	1	1	0
shift	X	X	1	1
→				

Load and 2-shifts

Parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register

Above, a data pattern is presented to inputs $\mathbf{D}_A$ $\mathbf{D}_B$ $\mathbf{D}_C$ $\mathbf{D}_D$. The pattern is loaded to $\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$. Then it is shifted one bit to the right. The incoming data is indicated by **X**, meaning the we do no know what it is. If the input (**SER**) were grounded, for example, we would know what data (**0**) was shifted in. Also shown, is right shifting by two positions, requiring two clocks.



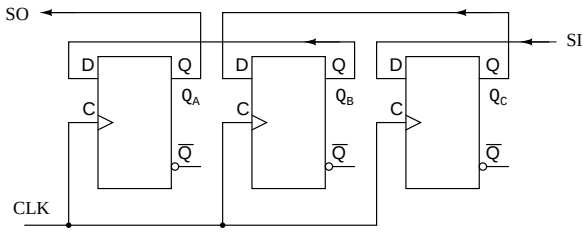
Shift right

The above figure serves as a reference for the hardware involved in right shifting of data. It is too simple to even bother with this figure, except for comparison to more complex figures to follow.

	Q_A	Q_B	Q_C
load	1	1	0
shift	X	1	1

Load and right shift

Right shifting of data is provided above for reference to the previous right shifter.



Shift left

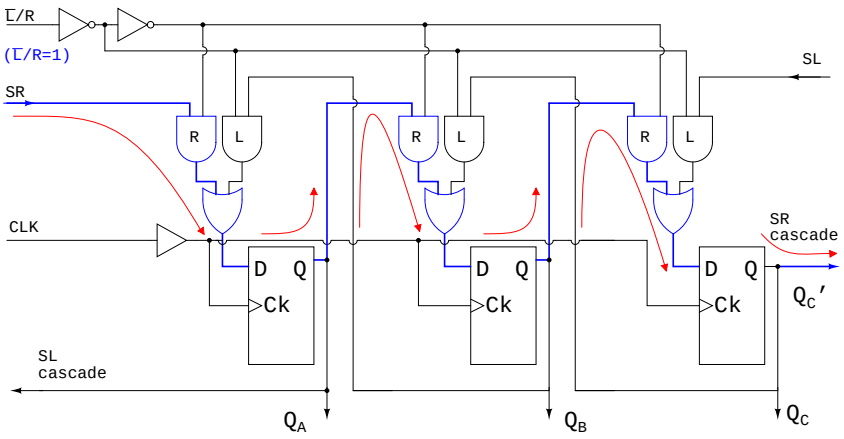
If we need to shift left, the FFs need to be rewired. Compare to the previous right shifter. Also, **SI** and **SO** have been reversed. **SI** shifts to $\mathbf{Q}_C$. $\mathbf{Q}_C$ shifts to $\mathbf{Q}_B$. $\mathbf{Q}_B$ shifts to $\mathbf{Q}_A$. $\mathbf{Q}_A$ leaves on the **SO** connection, where it could cascade to another shifter **SI**. This left shift sequence is backwards from the right shift sequence.

	Q_A	Q_B	Q_C
load	1	1	0
shift	1	0	X

Load and left shift

Above we shift the same data pattern left by one bit.

There is one problem with the "shift left" figure above. There is no market for it. Nobody manufactures a shift-left part. A "real device" which shifts one direction can be wired externally to shift the other direction. Or, should we say there is no left or right in the context of a device which shifts in only one direction. However, there is a market for a device which will shift left or right on command by a control line. Of course, left and right are valid in that context.

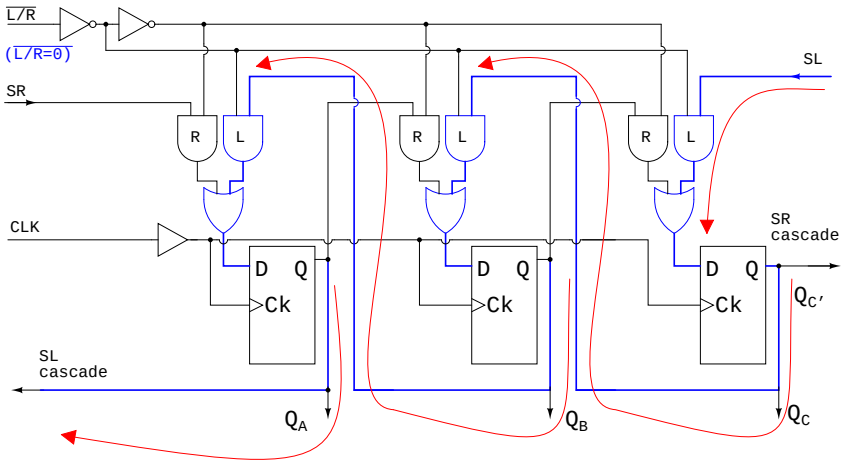


Shift left/ right, right action

What we have above is a hypothetical shift register capable of shifting either direction under the control of **L'/R**. It is setup with **L'/R=1** to shift the normal direction, right. **L'/R=1** enables the multiplexer AND gates labeled **R**. This allows data to follow the path illustrated by the arrows, when a clock is applied. The connection path is the same as the"too simple" "shift right" figure above.

Data shifts in at **SR**, to $\mathbf{Q}_A$, to $\mathbf{Q}_B$, to $\mathbf{Q}_C$, where it leaves at **SR cascade**. This pin could drive **SR** of another device to the right.

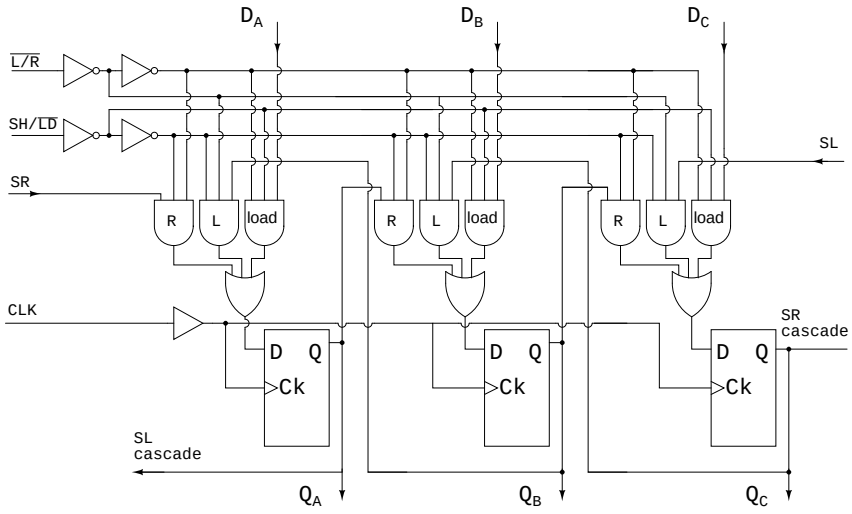
What if we change **L'/R** to **L'/R=0**?



Shift left/ right register, left action

With **L'/R=0**, the multiplexer AND gates labeled **L** are enabled, yielding a path, shown by the arrows, the same as the above "shift left" figure. Data shifts in at **SL**, to $\mathbf{Q}_C$, to $\mathbf{Q}_B$, to $\mathbf{Q}_A$, where it leaves at **SL cascade**. This pin could drive **SL** of another device to the left.

The prime virtue of the above two figures illustrating the "shift left/ right register" is simplicity. The operation of the left right control **L'/R=0** is easy to follow. A commercial part needs the parallel data loading implied by the section title. This appears in the figure below.



Shift left/ right/ load

Now that we can shift both left and right via **L'/R**, let us add **SH/LD'**, shift/ load, and the AND gates labeled "load" to provide for parallel loading of data from inputs $\mathbf{D}_A$ $\mathbf{D}_B$ $\mathbf{D}_C$. When

SH/LD'=0, AND gates **R** and **L** are disabled, AND gates "load" are enabled to pass data $\mathbf{D}_A$ $\mathbf{D}_B$ $\mathbf{D}_C$ to the FF data inputs. the next clock **CLK** will clock the data to $\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$. As long as the same data is present it will be re-loaded on succeeding clocks. However, data present for only one clock will be lost from the outputs when it is no longer present on the data inputs. One solution is to load the data on one clock, then proceed to shift on the next four clocks. This problem is remedied in the 74ALS299 by the addition of another AND gate to the multiplexer.

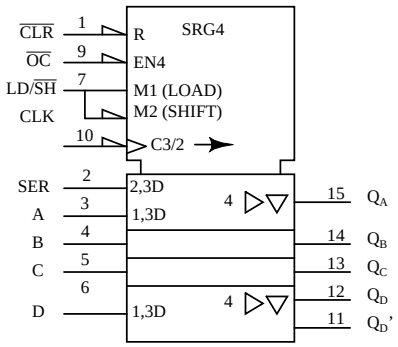
If **SH/LD'** is changed to **SH/LD'=1**, the AND gates labeled "load" are disabled, allowing the left/ right control **L'/R** to set the direction of shift on the **L** or **R** AND gates. Shifting is as in the previous figures.

The only thing needed to produce a viable integrated device is to add the fourth AND gate to the multiplexer as alluded for the 74ALS299. This is shown in the next section for that part.

12.5.1 Parallel-in/ parallel-out and universal devices

Let's take a closer look at Serial-in/ parallel-out shift registers available as integrated circuits, courtesy of Texas Instruments. For complete device data sheets, follow the links.

- SN74LS395A parallel-in/ parallel-out 4-bit shift register
  (`http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74ls395a.pdf`)
- SN74ALS299 parallel-in/ parallel-out 8-bit universal shift register
  (`http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/sn74als299.pdf`)



SN74LS395A ANSI Symbol

We have already looked at the internal details of the SN74LS395A, see above previous figure, 74LS395 parallel-in/ parallel-out shift register with tri-state output. Directly above is the ANSI symbol for the 74LS395.

Why only 4-bits, as indicated by **SRG4** above? Having both parallel inputs, and parallel outputs, in addition to control and power pins, does not allow for any more I/O (Input/Output) bits in a 16-pin DIP (Dual Inline Package).

R indicates that the shift register stages are reset by input **CLR'** (active low- inverting half arrow at input) of the control section at the top of the symbol. **OC'**, when low, (invert arrow

again) will enable (**EN4**) the four tristate output buffers ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$) in the data section. Load/shift' (**LD/SH'**) at pin (7) corresponds to internals **M1** (load) and **M2** (shift). Look for prefixes of **1** and **2** in the rest of the symbol to ascertain what is controlled by these.

The negative edge sensitive clock (indicated by the invert arrow at pin-10) **C3/2**has two functions. First, the **3** of **C3/2** affects any input having a prefix of **3**, say **2,3D** or **1,3D** in the data section. This would be parallel load at **A, B, C, D** attributed to **M1** and **C3** for **1,3D**. Second, **2** of **C3/2**-right-arrow indicates data clocking wherever **2** appears in a prefix (**2,3D** at pin-2). Thus we have clocking of data at **SER** into $\mathbf{Q}_A$ with mode **2** . The right arrow after **C3/2** accounts for shifting at internal shift register stages $\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$.

The right pointing triangles indicate buffering; the inverted triangle indicates tri-state, controlled by the **EN4**. Note, all the **4**s in the symbol associated with the **EN** are frequently omitted. Stages $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ are understood to have the same attributes as $\mathbf{Q}_D$. $\mathbf{Q}_D$**'** cascades to the next package's **SER** to the right.

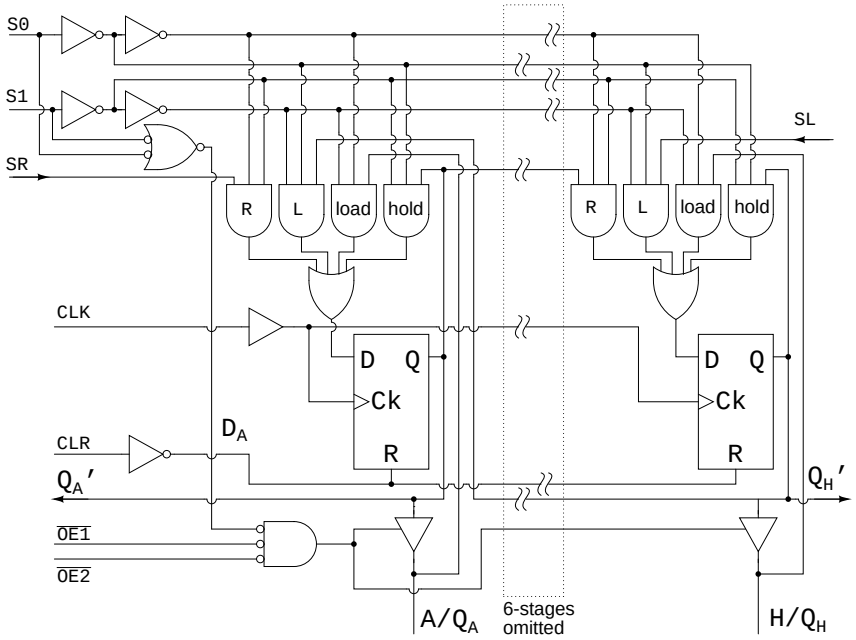
	mode			mux
activity	S1	S0	clock	gate
hold	0	0	↑	hold
shift left	0	1	↑	L
shift right	1	0	↑	R
load	1	1	↑	load

S1	S0	$\overline{OE2}$	$\overline{OE1}$	tristate
X	X	X	1	disable
X	X	1	X	disable
0	0	0	0	enable
0	1	0	0	enable
1	0	0	0	enable
1	1	X	X	disable

The table above, condensed from the data '299 data sheet, summarizes the operation of the 74ALS299 universal shift/ storage register. Follow the '299 link above for full details. The Multiplexer gates **R**, **L**, **load** operate as in the previous "shift left/ right register" figures. The difference is that the mode inputs **S1** and **S0** select shift left, shift right, and load with mode set to **S1 S0 =** to **01**, **10**, and **11**respectively as shown in the table, enabling multiplexer gates **L**, **R**, and **load** respectively. See table. A minor difference is the parallel load path from the tri-state outputs. Actually the tri-state buffers are (must be) disabled by **S1 S0 = 11** to float the I/O *bus* for use as inputs. A bus is a collection of similar signals. The inputs are applied to **A**, **B** through **H** (same pins as $\mathbf{Q}_A$, $\mathbf{Q}_B$, through $\mathbf{Q}_H$) and routed to the **load** gate in the multiplexers, and on the the **D** inputs of the FFs. Data is parallel load on a clock pulse.

The one new multiplexer gate is the AND gate labeled **hold**, enabled by **S1 S0 = 00**. The **hold** gate enables a path from the **Q** output of the FF back to the **hold** gate, to the D input of the same FF. The result is that with mode **S1 S0 = 00**, the output is continuously re-loaded with each new clock pulse. Thus, data is held. This is summarized in the table.

To read data from outputs $\mathbf{Q}_A$, $\mathbf{Q}_B$, through $\mathbf{Q}_H$, the tri-state buffers must be enabled by **OE2', OE1' =00** and mode =**S1 S0 = 00, 01, or 10**. That is, mode is anything except **load**. See second table.



74ALS299 universal shift/ storage register with tri-state outputs

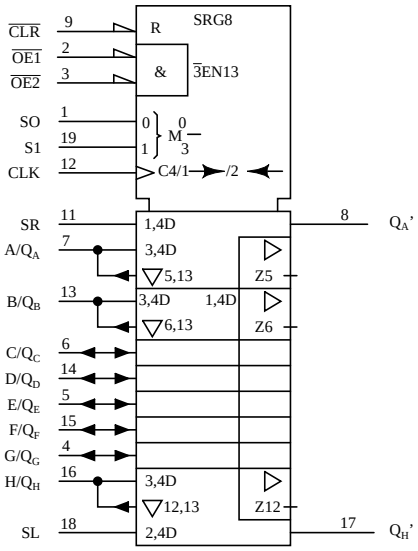
Right shift data from a package to the left, shifts in on the **SR** input. Any data shifted out to the right from stage Q_H cascades to the right via Q_H'. This output is unaffected by the tri-state buffers. The shift right sequence for **S1 S0 = 10** is:

SR > Q_A > Q_B > Q_C > Q_D > Q_E > Q_F > Q_G > Q_H (Q_H')

Left shift data from a package to the right shifts in on the **SL** input. Any data shifted out to the left from stage Q_A cascades to the left via Q_A', also unaffected by the tri-state buffers. The shift left sequence for **S1 S0 = 01** is:

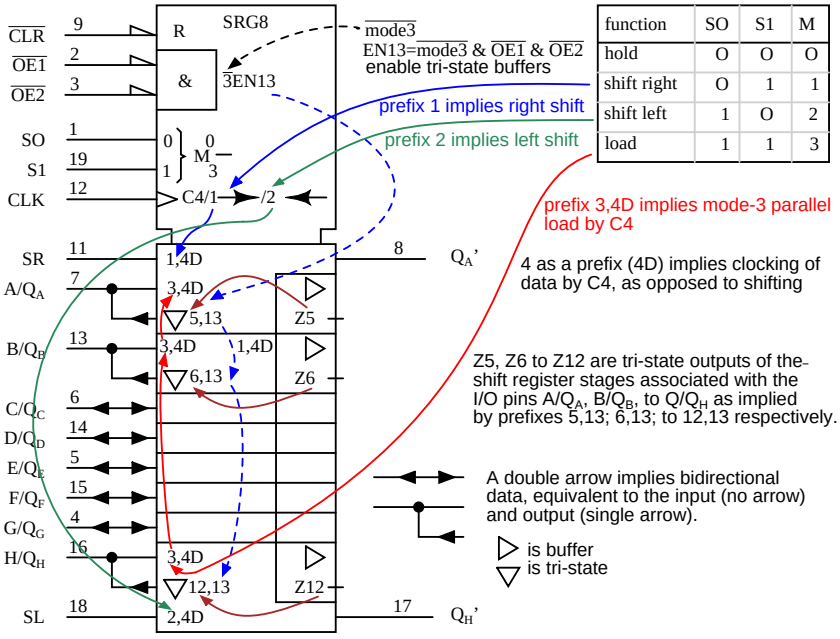
(Q_A') Q_A < Q_B < Q_C < Q_D < Q_E < Q_F < Q_G < Q_H (Q_{SL}')

Shifting may take place with the tri-state buffers disabled by one of **OE2'** or **OE1' = 1**. Though, the register contents outputs will not be accessible. See table.



SN74ALS299 ANSI Symbol

The ”clean” ANSI symbol for the SN74ALS299 parallel-in/ parallel-out 8-bit universal shift register with tri-state output is shown for reference above.

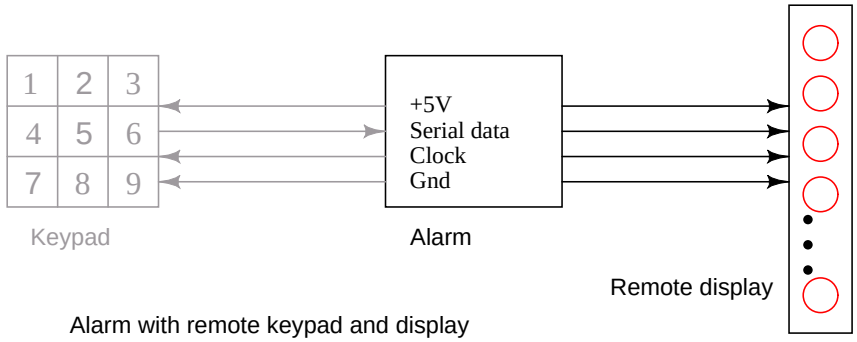


SN74ALS299 ANSI Symbol, annotated

The annotated version of the ANSI symbol is shown to clarify the terminology contained therein. Note that the ANSI mode (S0 S1) is reversed from the order (S1 S0) used in the previous table. That reverses the decimal mode numbers (1 & 2). In any event, we are in complete agreement with the official data sheet, copying this inconsistency.

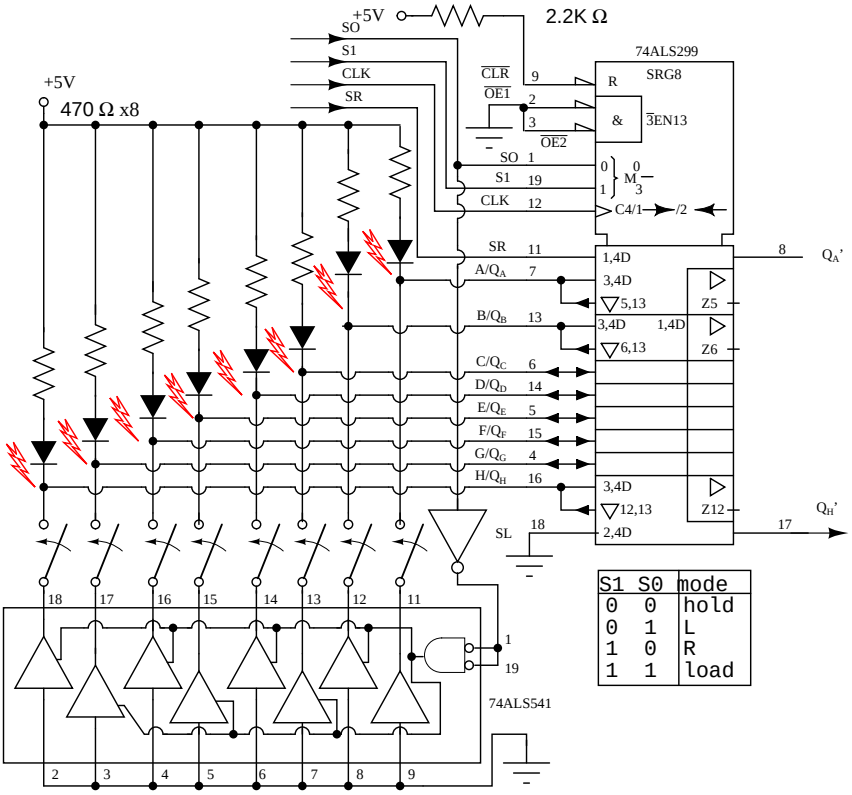
12.5.2 Practical applications

The Alarm with remote keypad block diagram is repeated below. Previously, we built the keypad reader and the remote display as separate units. Now we will combine both the keypad and display into a single unit using a universal shift register. Though separate in the diagram, the Keypad and Display are both contained within the same remote enclosure.



Alarm with remote keypad and display

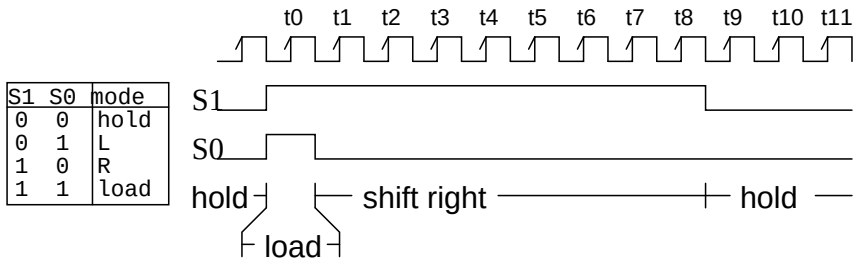
We will parallel load the keyboard data into the shift register on a single clock pulse, then shift it out to the main alarm box. At the same time , we will shift LED data from the main alarm to the remote shift register to illuminate the LEDs. We will be simultaneously shifting keyboard data out and LED data into the shift register.



74ALS299 universal shift register reads switches, drives LEDs

Eight LEDs and current limiting resistors are connected to the eight I/O pins of the 74ALS299 universal shift register. The LEDS can only be driven during Mode 3 with **S1=0 S0=0**. The **OE1'** and **OE2'** tristate enables are grounded to permenantly enable the tristate outputs during modes **0, 1, 2**. That will cause the LEDS to light (flicker) during shifting. If this were a problem the **EN1**' and **EN2'** could be ungrounded and paralleled with **S1** and **S0** respectively to only enable the tristate buffers and light the LEDS during hold, mode **3**. Let's keep it simple for this example.

During parallel loading, **S0=1** inverted to a 0, enables the octal tristate buffers to ground the switch wipers. The upper, open, switch contacts are pulled up to logic high by the resister-LED combination at the eight inputs. Any switch closure will short the input low. We parallel load the switch data into the **'299** at clock **t0** when both **S0** and **S1** are high. See waveforms below.



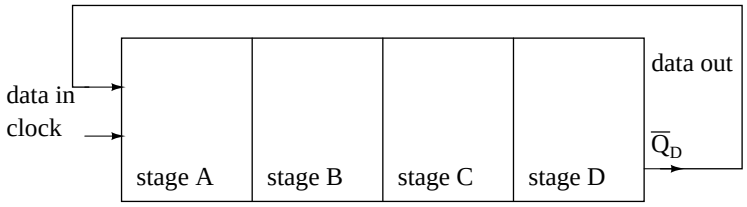
Load (t0) & shift (t1-t8) switches out of Q_H', shift LED data into SR

Once **S0** goes low, eight clocks (**t0** to**t8**) shift switch closure data out of the **'299** via the $\mathbf{Q}_h$**'** pin. At the same time, new LED data is shifted in at **SR** of the **299** by the same eight clocks. The LED data replaces the switch closure data as shifting proceeds.

After the 8th shift clock, **t8**, **S1** goes low to yield hold mode (**S1 S0 = 00**). The data in the shift register remains the same even if there are more clocks, for example, **T9**, **t10**, etc. Where do the waveforms come from? They could be generated by a microprocessor if the clock rate were not over 100 kHz, in which case, it would be inconvenient to generate any clocks after **t8**. If the clock was in the megahertz range, the clock would run continuously. The clock, **S1** and **S0** would be generated by digital logic, not shown here.

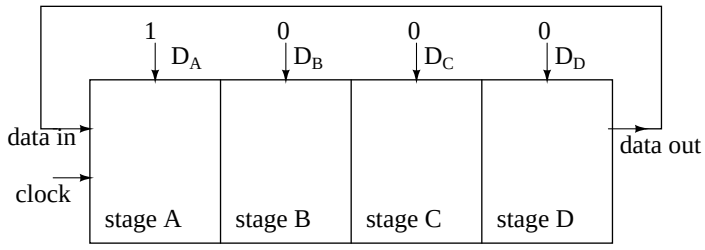
12.6 Ring counters

If the output of a shift register is fed back to the input. a ring counter results. The data pattern contained within the shift register will recirculate as long as clock pulses are applied. For example, the data pattern will repeat every four clock pulses in the figure below. However, we must load a data pattern. All **0**'s or all **1**'s doesn't count. Is a continuous logic level from such a condition useful?



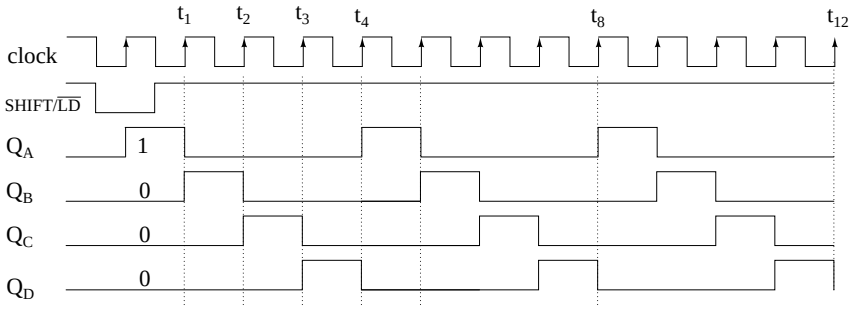
Ring Counter, shift register output fed back to input

We make provisions for loading data into the parallel-in/ serial-out shift register configured as a ring counter below. Any random pattern may be loaded. The most generally useful pattern is a single **1**.



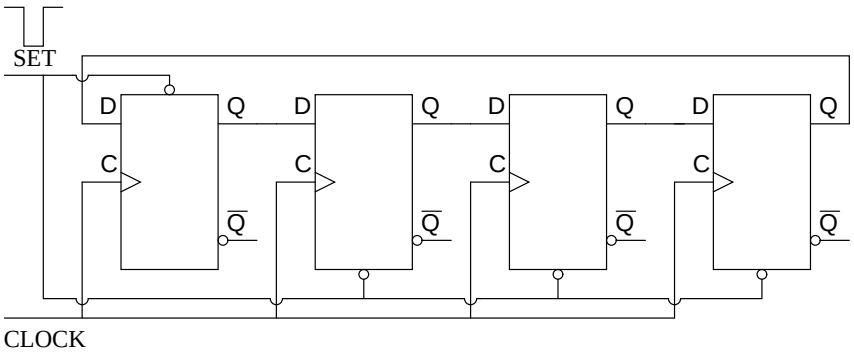
Parallel-in, serial-out shift register configured as a ring counter

Loading binary **1000** into the ring counter, above, prior to shifting yields a viewable pattern. The data pattern for a single stage repeats every four clock pulses in our 4-stage example. The waveforms for all four stages look the same, except for the one clock time delay from one stage to the next. See figure below.



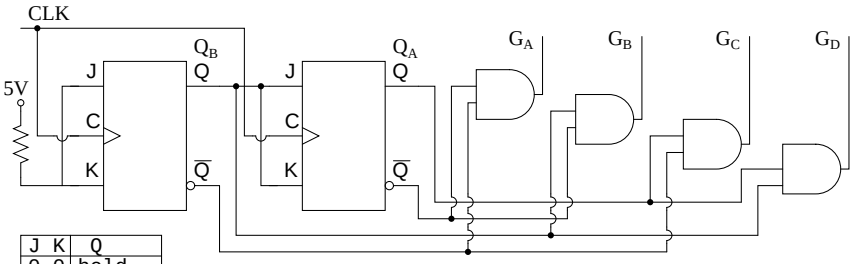
Load 1000 into 4-stage ring counter and shift

The circuit above is a divide by **4** counter. Comparing the clock input to any one of the outputs, shows a frequency ratio of 4:1. How may stages would we need for a divide by 10 ring counter? Ten stages would recirculate the **1** every **10** clock pulses.



Set one stage, clear three stages

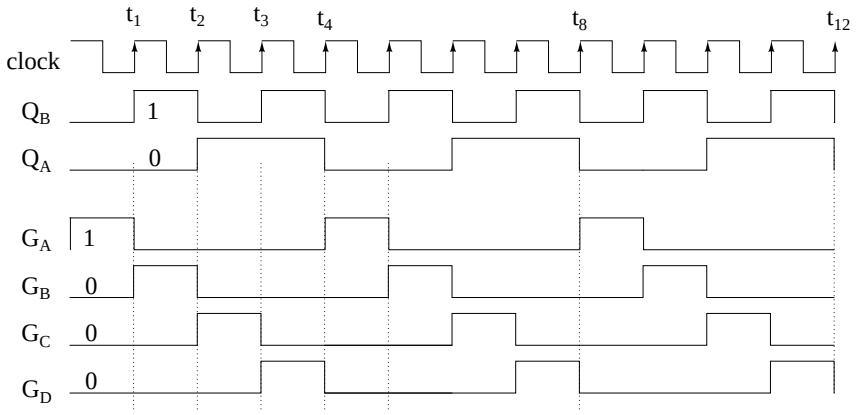
An alternate method of initializing the ring counter to **1000** is shown above. The shift waveforms are identical to those above, repeating every fourth clock pulse. The requirement for initialization is a disadvantage of the ring counter over a conventional counter. At a minimum, it must be initialized at power-up since there is no way to predict what state flip-flops will power up in. In theory, initialization should never be required again. In actual practice, the flip-flops could eventually be corrupted by noise, destroying the data pattern. A "self correcting" counter, like a conventional synchronous binary counter would be more reliable.



J	K	Q
0	0	hold
0	1	0
1	0	1
1	1	toggle

Compare to binary synchronous counter with decoder

The above binary synchronous counter needs only two stages, but requires decoder gates. The ring counter had more stages, but was self decoding, saving the decode gates above. Another disadvantage of the ring counter is that it is not "self starting". If we need the decoded outputs, the ring counter looks attractive, in particular, if most of the logic is in a single shift register package. If not, the conventional binary counter is less complex without the decoder.

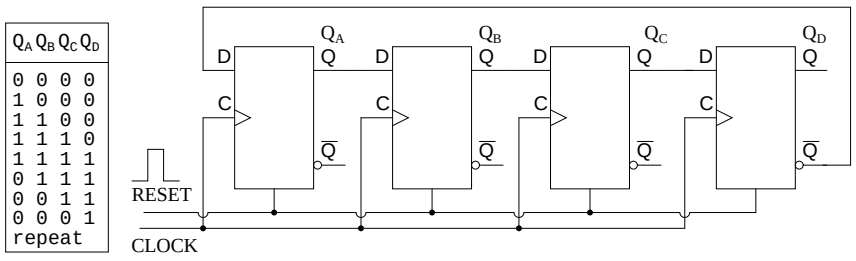


Compare to binary synchronous counter with decode, waveforms

The waveforms decoded from the synchronous binary counter are identical to the previous ring counter waveforms. The counter sequence is ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$) = (**00 01 10 11**).

12.6.1 Johnson counters

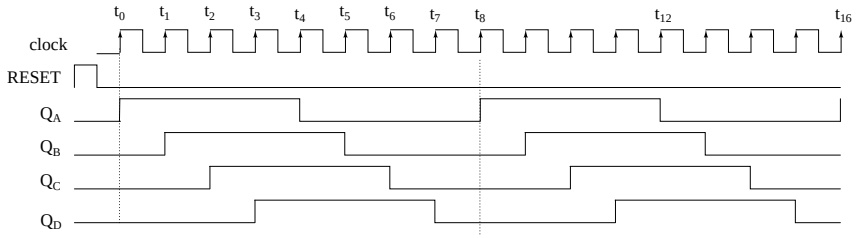
The *switch-tail ring counter*, also know as the *Johnson counter*, overcomes some of the limitations of the ring counter. Like a ring counter a Johnson counter is a shift register fed back on its' self. It requires half the stages of a comparable ring counter for a given division ratio. If the complement output of a ring counter is fed back to the input instead of the true output, a Johnson counter results. The difference between a ring counter and a Johnson counter is which output of the last stage is fed back (Q or Q'). Carefully compare the feedback connection below to the previous ring counter.



Johnson counter (note the $\overline{Q}_D$ to D_A feedback connection)

This "reversed" feedback connection has a profound effect upon the behavior of the otherwise similar circuits. Recirculating a single **1** around a ring counter divides the input clock by a factor equal to the number of stages. Whereas, a Johnson counter divides by a factor equal to twice the number of stages. For example, a 4-stage ring counter divides by **4**. A 4-stage Johnson counter divides by **8**.

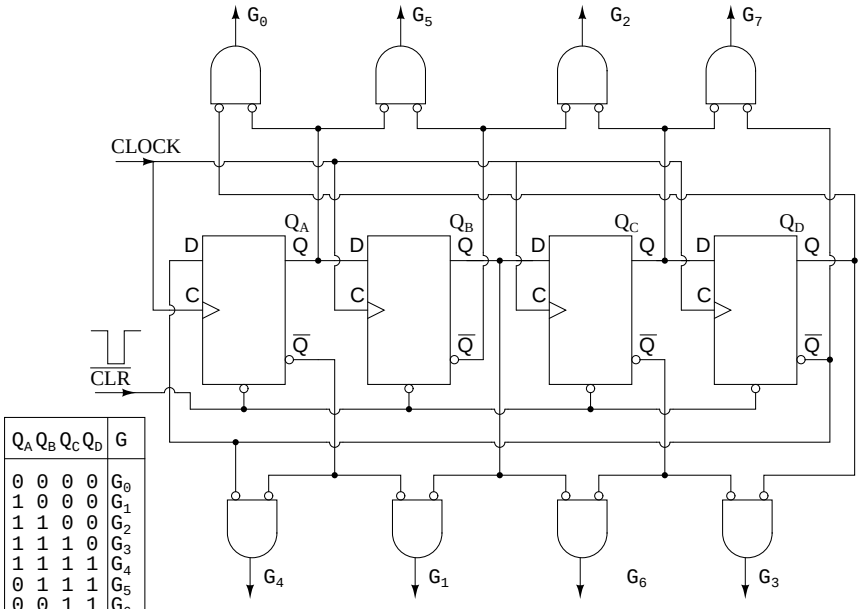
Start a Johnson counter by clearing all stages to **0**s before the first clock. This is often done at power-up time. Referring to the figure below, the first clock shifts three **0**s from ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$) to the right into ($\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{Q}_D$). The **1** at $\mathbf{Q}_D$**'** (the complement of Q) is shifted back into $\mathbf{Q}_A$. Thus, we start shifting **1**s to the right, replacing the **0**s. Where a ring counter recirculated a single **1**, the 4-stage Johnson counter recirculates four **0**s then four **1**s for an 8-bit pattern, then repeats.



Four stage Johnson counter waveforms

The above waveforms illustrates that multi-phase square waves are generated by a Johnson counter. The 4-stage unit above generates four overlapping phases of 50% duty cycle. How many stages would be required to generate a set of three phase waveforms? For example, a three stage Johnson counter, driven by a 360 Hertz clock would generate three 120^o phased square waves at 60 Hertz.

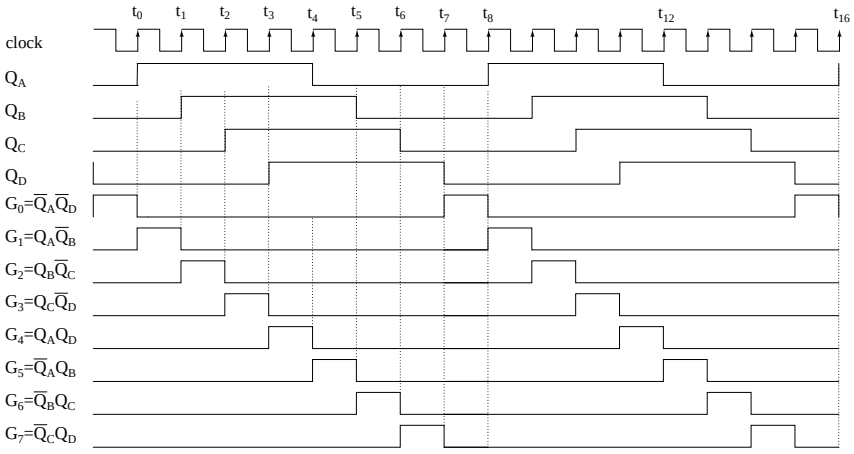
The outputs of the flop-flops in a Johnson counter are easy to decode to a single state. Below for example, the eight states of a 4-stage Johnson counter are decoded by no more than a two input gate for each of the states. In our example, eight of the two input gates decode the states for our example Johnson counter.



Q_A Q_B Q_C Q_D	G
0 0 0 0	G_0
1 0 0 0	G_1
1 1 0 0	G_2
1 1 1 0	G_3
1 1 1 1	G_4
0 1 1 1	G_5
0 0 1 1	G_6
0 0 0 1	G_7

Johnson counter with decoder (CD4022B)

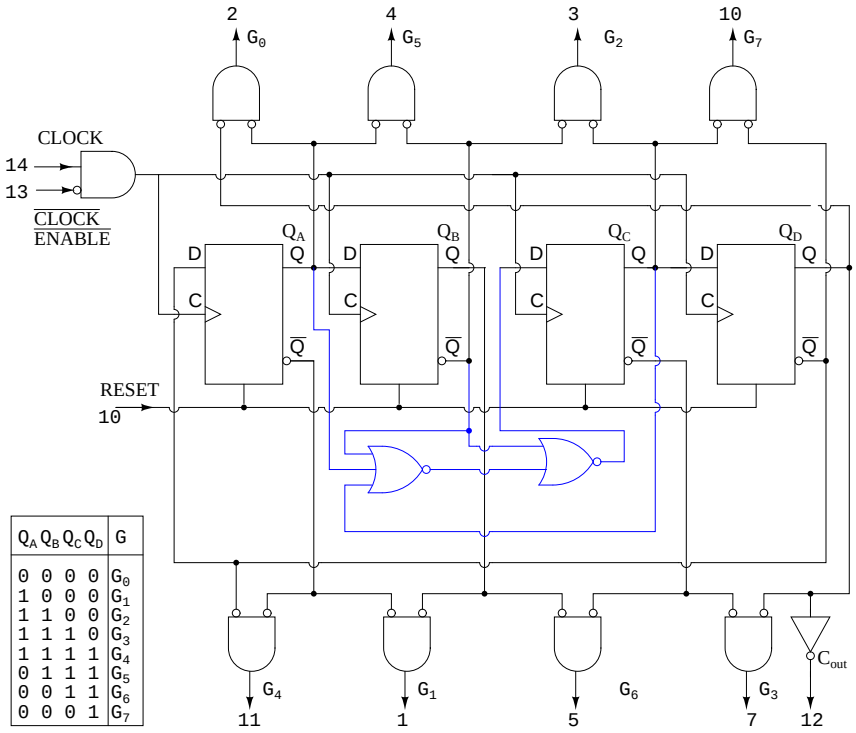
No matter how long the Johnson counter, only 2-input decoder gates are needed. Note, we could have used uninverted inputs to the **AND** gates by changing the gate inputs from true to inverted at the FFs, **Q** to **Q'**, (and vice versa). However, we are trying to make the diagram above match the data sheet for the CD4022B, as closely as practical.



Four stage (8-state) Johnson counter decoder waveforms

Above, our four phased square waves $\mathbf{Q}_A$ to $\mathbf{Q}_D$ are decoded to eight signals ($\mathbf{G}_0$ to $\mathbf{G}_7$)

active during one clock period out of a complete 8-clock cycle. For example, $\mathbf{G}_0$ is active high when both $\mathbf{Q}_A$ and $\mathbf{Q}_D$ are low. Thus, pairs of the various register outputs define each of the eight states of our Johnson counter example.



Q_A Q_B Q_C Q_D	G
0 0 0 0	G_0
1 0 0 0	G_1
1 1 0 0	G_2
1 1 1 0	G_3
1 1 1 1	G_4
0 1 1 1	G_5
0 0 1 1	G_6
0 0 0 1	G_7

NOR gate unused state detector: Q_A Q_B Q_C = 010 forces the **1** to a **0**

CD4022B modulo-8 Johnson counter with unused state detector

Above is the more complete internal diagram of the CD4022B Johnson counter. See the manufacturers' data sheet for minor details omitted. The major new addition to the diagram as compared to previous figures is the *disallowed state detector* composed of the two **NOR** gates. Take a look at the inset state table. There are 8-permissible states as listed in the table. Since our shifter has four flip-flops, there are a total of 16-states, of which there are 8-disallowed states. That would be the ones not listed in the table.

In theory, we will not get into any of the disallowed states as long as the shift register is **RESET** before first use. However, in the "real world" after many days of continuous operation due to unforeseen noise, power line disturbances, near lightning strikes, etc, the Johnson counter could get into one of the disallowed states. For high reliability applications, we need to plan for this slim possibility. More serious is the case where the circuit is not cleared at power-up. In this case there is no way to know which of the 16-states the circuit will power up in. Once in a disallowed state, the Johnson counter will not return to any of the permissible states without intervention. That is the purpose of the **NOR** gates.

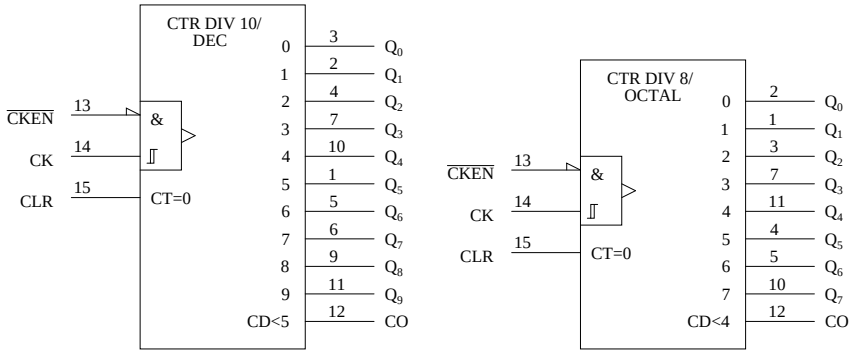
Examine the table for the sequence ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$) = (**010**). Nowhere does this sequence appear in the table of allowed states. Therefore (**010**) is disallowed. It should never occur. If it does, the Johnson counter is in a disallowed state, which it needs to exit to any allowed state. Suppose that ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$) = (**010**). The second **NOR** gate will replace $\mathbf{Q}_B$ = **1** with a **0** at the **D** input to FF $\mathbf{Q}_C$. In other words, the offending **010** is replaced by **000**. And **000**, which does appear in the table, will be shifted right. There are may triple-0 sequences in the table. This is how the **NOR** gates get the Johnson counter out of a disallowed state to an allowed state.

Not all disallowed states contain a **010** sequence. However, after a few clocks, this sequence will appear so that any disallowed states will eventually be escaped. If the circuit is powered-up without a **RESET**, the outputs will be unpredictable for a few clocks until an allowed state is reached. If this is a problem for a particular application, be sure to **RESET** on power-up.

Johnson counter devices

A pair of integrated circuit Johnson counter devices with the output states decoded is available. We have already looked at the CD4017 internal logic in the discussion of Johnson counters. The 4000 series devices can operate from 3V to 15V power supplies. The the 74HC' part, designed for a TTL compatiblity, can operate from a 2V to 6V supply, count faster, and has greater output drive capability. For complete device data sheets, follow the links.

- CD4017 Johnson counter with 10 decoded outputs
  CD4022 Johnson counter with 8 decoded outputs
  `(http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/cd4017b.pdf)`
- 74HC4017 Johnson counter, 10 decoded outputs
  `(http://www-s.ti.com/sc/ds/cd74hc4017.pdf)`



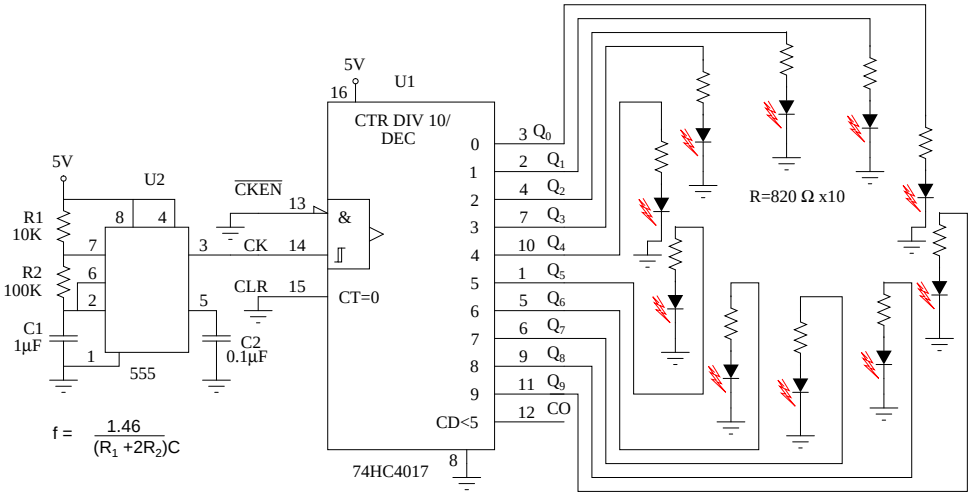
CD4017B, 74HC4017 CD4022B

The ANSI symbols for the *modulo*-10 (divide by 10) and modulo-8 Johnson counters are shown above. The symbol takes on the characteristics of a counter rather than a shift register derivative, which it is. Waveforms for the CD4022 modulo-8 and operation were shown previously. The CD4017B/ 74HC4017 decade counter is a 5-stage Johnson counter with ten decoded

outputs. The operation and waveforms are similar to the CD4017. In fact, the CD4017 and CD4022 are both detailed on the same data sheet. See above links. The 74HC4017 is a more modern version of the decade counter.

These devices are used where decoded outputs are needed instead of the binary or BCD (Binary Coded Decimal) outputs found on normal counters. By decoded, we mean one line out of the ten lines is active at a time for the '4017 in place of the four bit BCD code out of conventional counters. See previous waveforms for 1-of-8 decoding for the '4022 Octal Johnson counter.

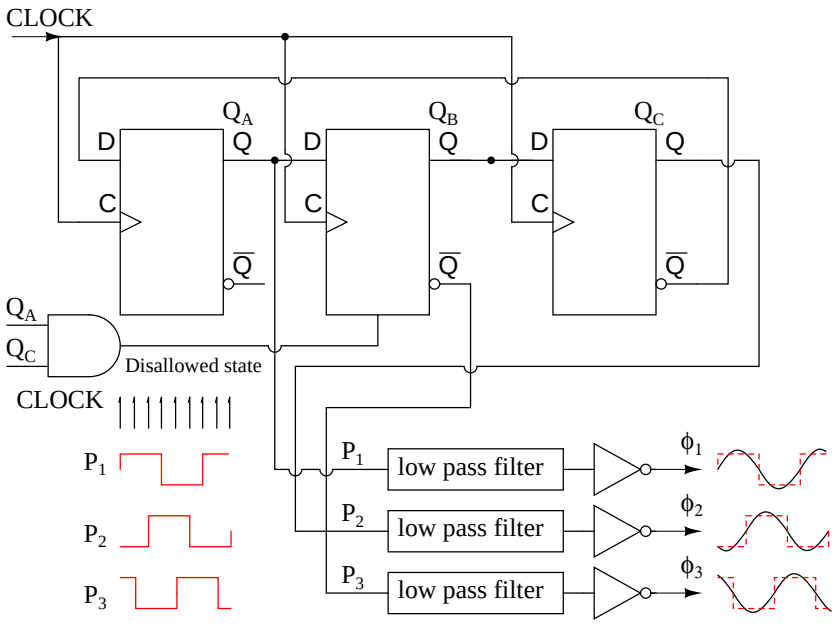
Practical applications



Decoded ring counter drives walking LED

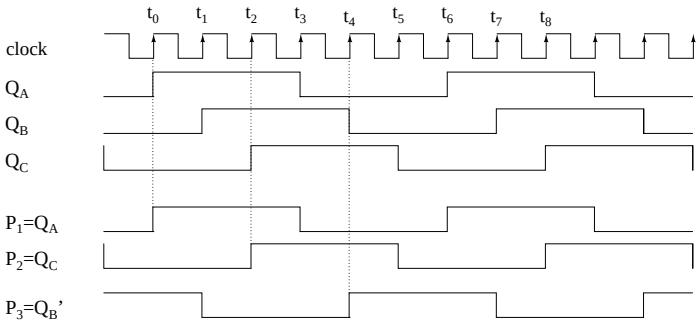
The above Johnson counter shifts a lighted LED each fifth of a second around the ring of ten. Note that the 74HC4017 is used instead of the '40017 because the former part has more current drive capability. From the data sheet, (at the link above) operating at V_{CC}= 5V, the V_{OH}= 4.6V at 4ma. In other words, the outputs can supply 4 ma at 4.6 V to drive the LEDs. Keep in mind that LEDs are normally driven with 10 to 20 ma of current. Though, they are visible down to 1 ma. This simple circuit illustrates an application of the 'HC4017. Need a bright display for an exhibit? Then, use inverting buffers to drive the cathodes of the LEDs pulled up to the power supply by lower value anode resistors.

The 555 timer, serving as an astable multivibrator, generates a clock frequency determined by R_1 R_2 C_1. This drives the 74HC4017 a step per clock as indicated by a single LED illuminated on the ring. Note, if the 555 does not reliably drive the clock pin of the '4015, run it through a single buffer stage between the 555 and the '4017. A variable R_2 could change the step rate. The value of decoupling capacitor C_2 is not critical. A similar capacitor should be applied across the power and ground pins of the '4017.



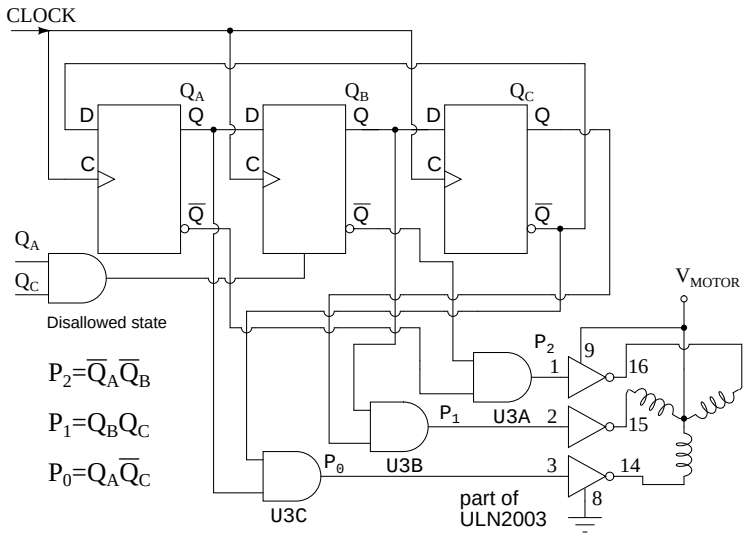
Three phase square/ sine wave generator.

The Johnson counter above generates 3-phase square waves, phased 60^o apart with respect to ($\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$). However, we need 120^o phased waveforms of power applications (see Volume II, AC). Choosing $\mathbf{P}_1$**=**$\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{P}_2$**=**$\mathbf{Q}_C$ $\mathbf{P}_3$**=**$\mathbf{Q}_B$**'** yields the 120^o phasing desired. See figure below. If these ($\mathbf{P}_1$ $\mathbf{P}_2$ $\mathbf{P}_3$) are low-pass filtered to sine waves and amplified, this could be the beginnings of a 3-phase power supply. For example, do you need to drive a small 3-phase 400 Hz aircraft motor? Then, feed 6x 400Hz to the above circuit **CLOCK**. Note that all these waveforms are 50% duty cycle.



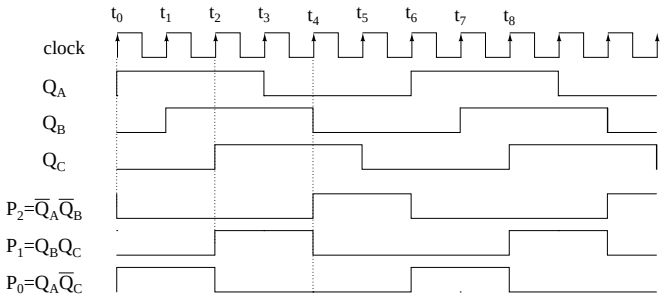
3-stage Johnson counter generates 3-Ø waveform.

The circuit below produces 3-phase nonoverlapping, less than 50% duty cycle, waveforms for driving 3-phase stepper motors.

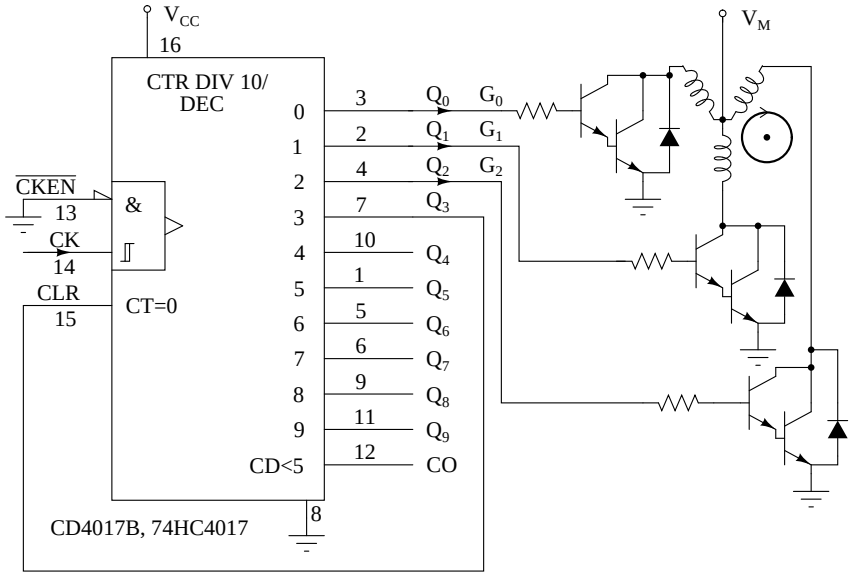


3-stage (6-state) Johnson counter decoded for 3-ϕ stepper motor.

Above we decode the overlapping outputs $\mathbf{Q}_A\ \mathbf{Q}_B\ \mathbf{Q}_C$ to non-overlapping outputs $\mathbf{P}_0\ \mathbf{P}_1\ \mathbf{P}_2$ as shown below. These waveforms drive a 3-phase stepper motor after suitable amplification from the milliamp level to the fractional amp level using the ULN2003 drivers shown above, or the discrete component Darlington pair driver shown in the circuit which follow. Not counting the motor driver, this circuit requires three IC (Integrated Circuit) packages: two dual type "D" FF packages and a quad NAND gate.



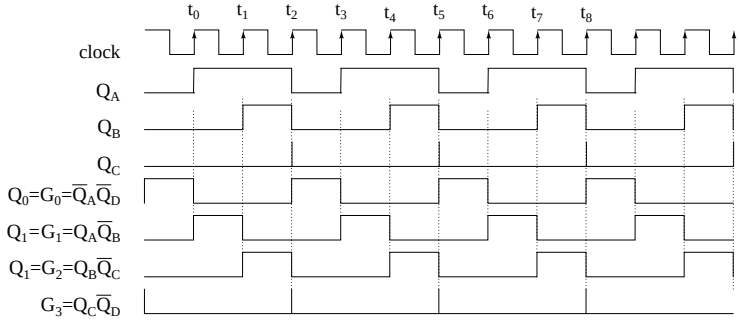
3-stage Johnson counter generates 3-Ø stepper waveform.



Johnson sequence terminated early by reset at Q_3, which is high.
for nano seconds

A single CD4017, above, generates the required 3-phase stepper waveforms in the circuit above by clearing the Johnson counter at count **3**. Count **3** persists for less than a microsecond before it clears its' self. The other counts ($\mathbf{Q_0{=}G_0}$ $\mathbf{Q_1{=}G_1}$ $\mathbf{Q_2{=}G_2}$) remain for a full clock period each.

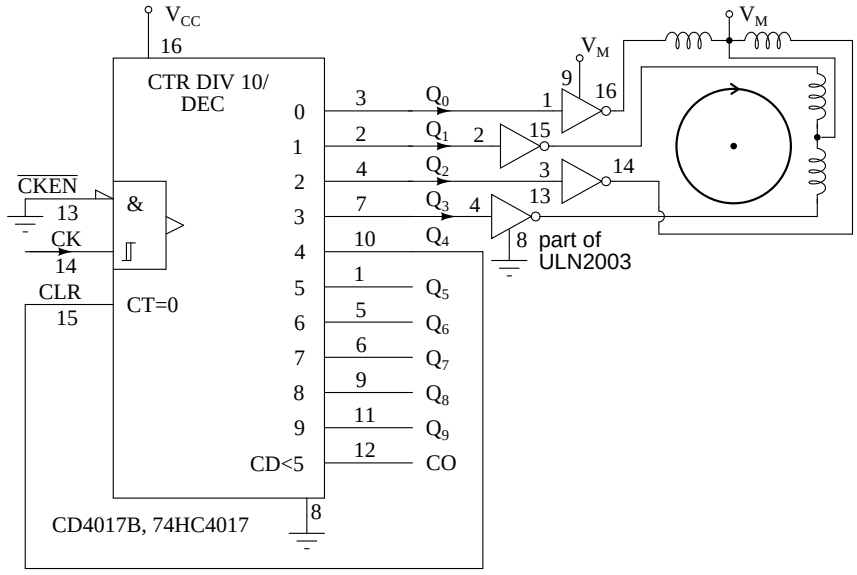
The Darlington bipolar transistor drivers shown above are a substitute for the internal circuitry of the ULN2003. The design of drivers is beyond the scope of this digital electronics chapter. Either driver may be used with either waveform generator circuit.



CD4017B 5-stage (10-state) Johnson counter resetting
at $Q_C\,Q_B\,Q_A = 100$ generates 3–ϕ stepper waveform.

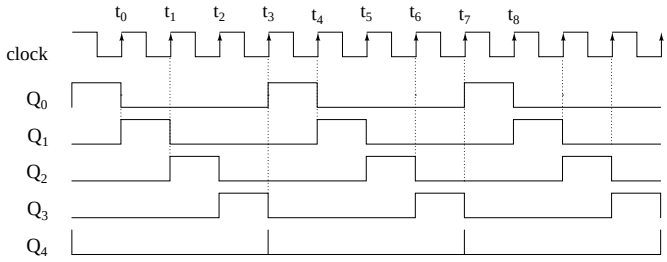
The above waceforms make the most sense in the context of the internal logic of the CD4017 shown earlier in this section. Though, the **AND** gating equations for the internal decoder are shown. The signals $\mathbf{Q}_A$ $\mathbf{Q}_B$ $\mathbf{Q}_C$ are Johnson counter direct shift register outputs not available

on pin-outs. The $\mathbf{Q}_D$ waveform shows resetting of the **'4017** every three clocks. $\mathbf{Q}_0$ $\mathbf{Q}_1$ $\mathbf{Q}_2$, etc. are decoded outputs which actually are available at output pins.



Johnson counter drives unipolar stepper motor.

Above we generate waveforms for driving a *unipolar stepper motor*, which only requires one polarity of driving signal. That is, we do not have to reverse the polarity of the drive to the windings. This simplifies the power driver between the '4017 and the motor. Darlington pairs from a prior diagram may be substituted for the ULN3003.



Johnson counter unipolar stepper motor waveforms.

Once again, the CD4017B generates the required waveforms with a reset after the teminal count. The decoded outputs $\mathbf{Q}_0$ $\mathbf{Q}_1$ $\mathbf{Q}_2$ $\mathbf{Q}_3$ sucessively drive the stepper motor windings, with $\mathbf{Q}_4$ reseting the counter at the end of each group of four pulses.

12.7 references

DataSheetCatalog.com http://www.datasheetcatalog.com/
http://www.st.com/stonline/psearch/index.htm select standard logics
http://www.st.com/stonline/books/pdf/docs/2069.pdf
http://www.ti.com/ (Products, Logic, Product Tree)

Chapter 13

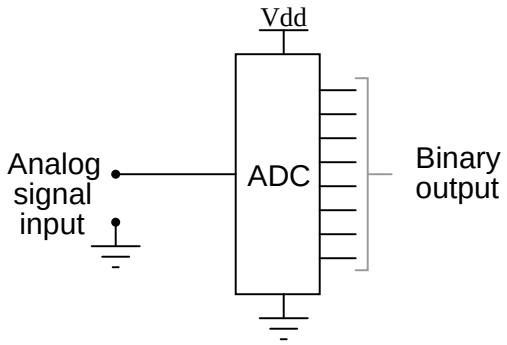
DIGITAL-ANALOG CONVERSION

Contents

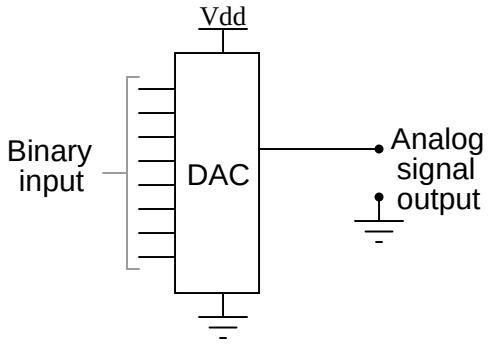
13.1 Introduction

Connecting digital circuitry to sensor devices is simple if the sensor devices are inherently digital themselves. Switches, relays, and encoders are easily interfaced with gate circuits due to the on/off nature of their signals. However, when analog devices are involved, interfacing becomes much more complex. What is needed is a way to electronically translate analog signals into digital (binary) quantities, and vice versa. An *analog-to-digital converter*, or ADC, performs the former task while a *digital-to-analog converter*, or DAC, performs the latter.

An ADC inputs an analog electrical signal such as voltage or current and outputs a binary number. In block diagram form, it can be represented as such:

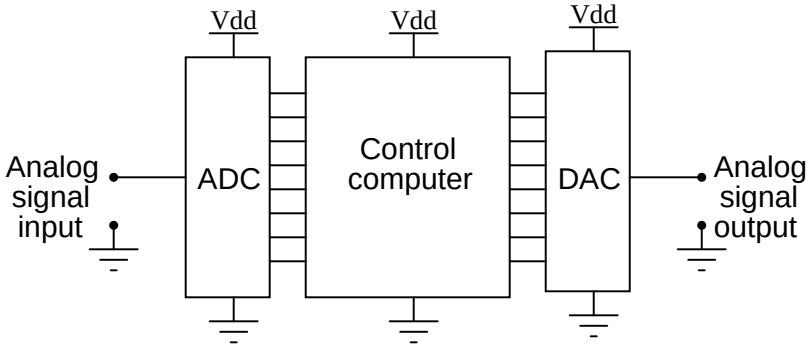


A DAC, on the other hand, inputs a binary number and outputs an analog voltage or current signal. In block diagram form, it looks like this:



Together, they are often used in digital systems to provide complete interface with analog sensors and output devices for control systems such as those used in automotive engine controls:

Digital control system with analog I/O

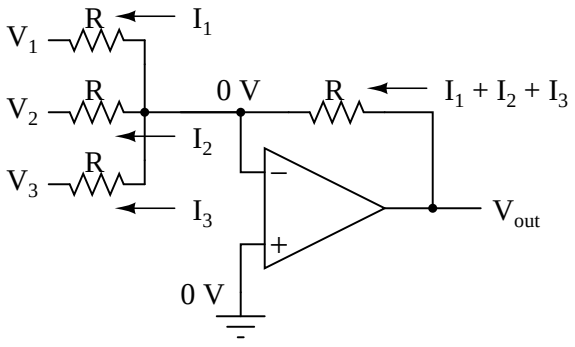


It is much easier to convert a digital signal into an analog signal than it is to do the reverse. Therefore, we will begin with DAC circuitry and then move to ADC circuitry.

13.2 The R/2^{n}R DAC

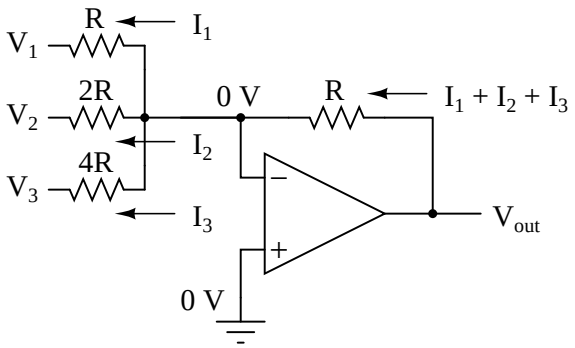
This DAC circuit, otherwise known as the *binary-weighted-input* DAC, is a variation on the inverting summer op-amp circuit. If you recall, the classic inverting summer circuit is an operational amplifier using negative feedback for controlled gain, with several voltage inputs and one voltage output. The output voltage is the inverted (opposite polarity) sum of all input voltages:

Inverting summer circuit



$$\mathbf{V_{out} = - (V_1 + V_2 + V_3)}$$

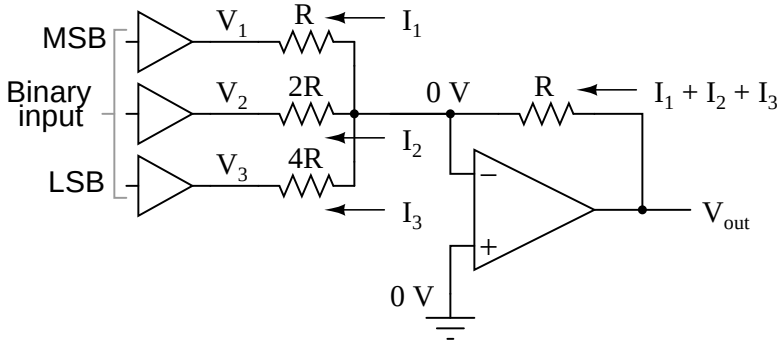
For a simple inverting summer circuit, all resistors must be of equal value. If any of the input resistors were different, the input voltages would have different degrees of effect on the output, and the output voltage would not be a true sum. Let's consider, however, intentionally setting the input resistors at different values. Suppose we were to set the input resistor values at multiple powers of two: R, 2R, and 4R, instead of all the same value R:



$$\mathbf{V_{out} = - \left(V_1 + \frac{V_2}{2} + \frac{V_3}{4}\right)}$$

Starting from V_1 and going through V_3, this would give each input voltage exactly half the effect on the output as the voltage before it. In other words, input voltage V_1 has a 1:1 effect on

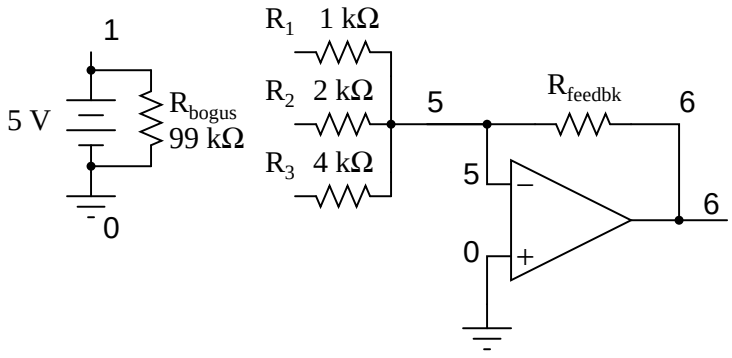
the output voltage (gain of 1), while input voltage V_2 has half that much effect on the output (a gain of 1/2), and V_3 half of that (a gain of 1/4). These ratios are were not arbitrarily chosen: they are the same ratios corresponding to place weights in the binary numeration system. If we drive the inputs of this circuit with digital gates so that each input is either 0 volts or full supply voltage, the output voltage will be an analog representation of the binary value of these three bits.



If we chart the output voltages for all eight combinations of binary bits (000 through 111) input to this circuit, we will get the following progression of voltages:

Binary	Output voltage
000	0.00 V
001	-1.25 V
010	-2.50 V
011	-3.75 V
100	-5.00 V
101	-6.25 V
110	-7.50 V
111	-8.75 V

Note that with each step in the binary count sequence, there results a 1.25 volt change in the output. This circuit is very easy to simulate using SPICE. In the following simulation, I set up the DAC circuit with a binary input of 110 (note the first node numbers for resistors R_1, R_2, and R_3: a node number of "1" connects it to the positive side of a 5 volt battery, and a node number of "0" connects it to ground). The output voltage appears on node 6 in the simulation:




```
binary-weighted dac
v1 1 0 dc 5
rbogus 1 0 99k
r1 1 5 1k
r2 1 5 2k
r3 0 5 4k
rfeedbk 5 6 1k
e1 6 0 5 0 999k
.end
node  voltage      node  voltage      node  voltage
(1)   5.0000       (5)   0.0000       (6)  -7.5000
```

We can adjust resistors values in this circuit to obtain output voltages directly corresponding to the binary input. For example, by making the feedback resistor 800 Ω instead of 1 kΩ, the DAC will output -1 volt for the binary input 001, -4 volts for the binary input 100, -7 volts for the binary input 111, and so on.

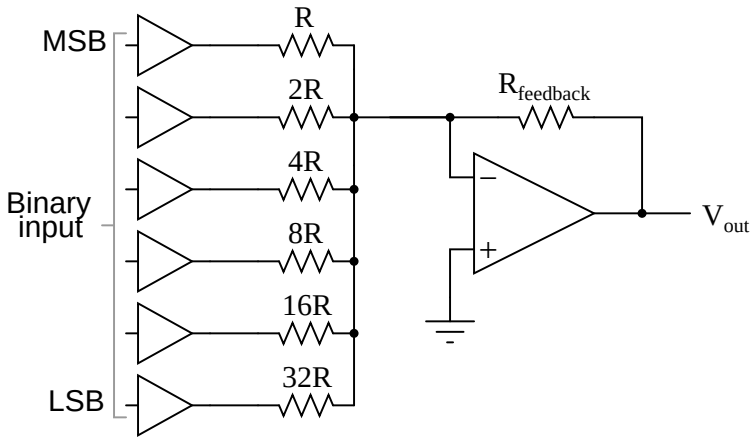
(with feedback resistor set at 800 ohms)

Binary	Output voltage
000	0.00 V
001	-1.00 V
010	-2.00 V
011	-3.00 V
100	-4.00 V
101	-5.00 V

```
|   110    |       -6.00 V      |
---------------------------------
|   111    |       -7.00 V      |
---------------------------------
```

If we wish to expand the resolution of this DAC (add more bits to the input), all we need to do is add more input resistors, holding to the same power-of-two sequence of values:

6-bit binary-weighted DAC

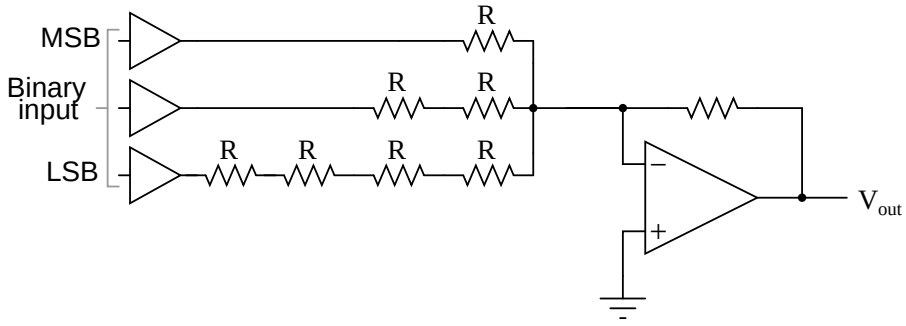


It should be noted that all logic gates must output exactly the same voltages when in the ”high” state. If one gate is outputting +5.02 volts for a ”high” while another is outputting only +4.86 volts, the analog output of the DAC will be adversely affected. Likewise, all ”low” voltage levels should be identical between gates, ideally 0.00 volts exactly. It is recommended that CMOS output gates are used, and that input/feedback resistor values are chosen so as to minimize the amount of current each gate has to source or sink.

13.3 The R/2R DAC

An alternative to the binary-weighted-input DAC is the so-called R/2R DAC, which uses fewer unique resistor values. A disadvantage of the former DAC design was its requirement of several different precise input resistor values: one unique value per binary input bit. Manufacture may be simplified if there are fewer different resistor values to purchase, stock, and sort prior to assembly.

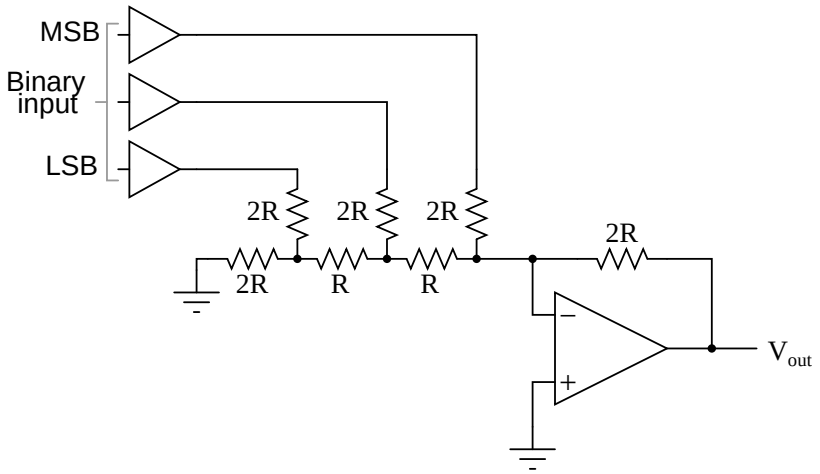
Of course, we could take our last DAC circuit and modify it to use a single input resistance value, by connecting multiple resistors together in series:



Unfortunately, this approach merely substitutes one type of complexity for another: volume of components over diversity of component values. There is, however, a more efficient design methodology.

By constructing a different kind of resistor network on the input of our summing circuit, we can achieve the same kind of binary weighting with only two kinds of resistor values, and with only a modest increase in resistor count. This ”ladder” network looks like this:

R/2R "ladder" DAC



Mathematically analyzing this ladder network is a bit more complex than for the previous circuit, where each input resistor provided an easily-calculated gain for that bit. For those who are interested in pursuing the intricacies of this circuit further, you may opt to use Thevenin’s theorem for each binary input (remember to consider the effects of the *virtual ground*), and/or use a simulation program like SPICE to determine circuit response. Either way, you should obtain the following table of figures:

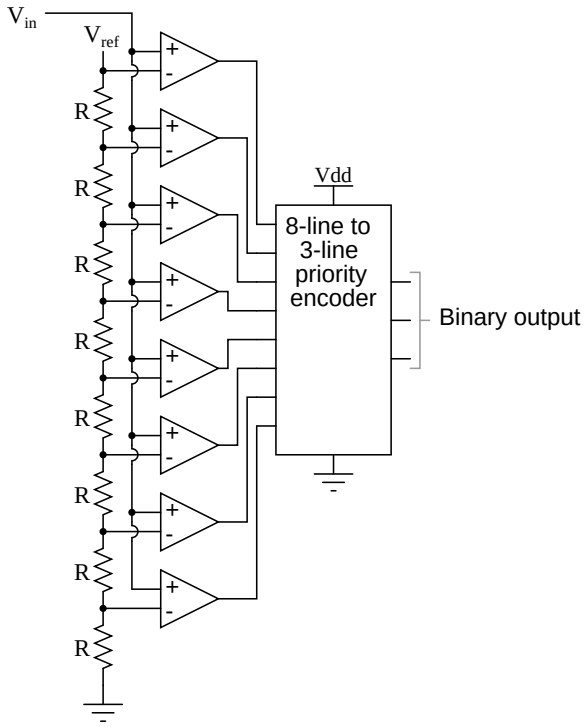
Binary	Output voltage
000	0.00 V

```
|   001    |       -1.25 V      |
---------------------------------
|   010    |       -2.50 V      |
---------------------------------
|   011    |       -3.75 V      |
---------------------------------
|   100    |       -5.00 V      |
---------------------------------
|   101    |       -6.25 V      |
---------------------------------
|   110    |       -7.50 V      |
---------------------------------
|   111    |       -8.75 V      |
---------------------------------
```

As was the case with the binary-weighted DAC design, we can modify the value of the feedback resistor to obtain any ”span” desired. For example, if we’re using +5 volts for a ”high” voltage level and 0 volts for a ”low” voltage level, we can obtain an analog output directly corresponding to the binary input (011 = -3 volts, 101 = -5 volts, 111 = -7 volts, etc.) by using a feedback resistance with a value of 1.6R instead of 2R.

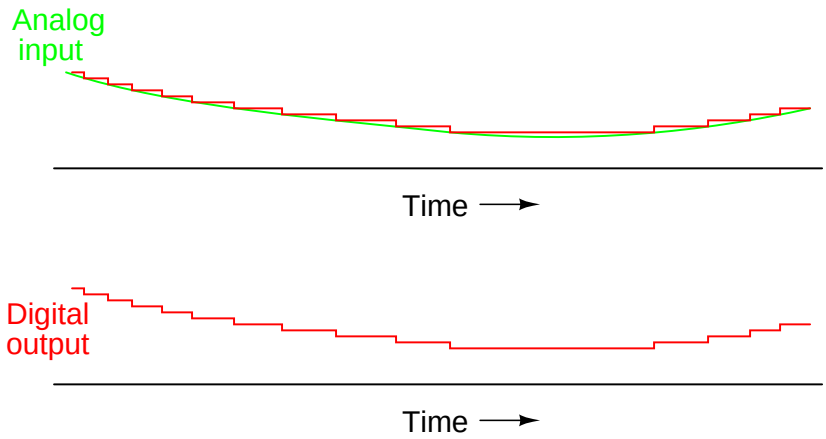
13.4 Flash ADC

Also called the *parallel* A/D converter, this circuit is the simplest to understand. It is formed of a series of comparators, each one comparing the input signal to a unique reference voltage. The comparator outputs connect to the inputs of a priority encoder circuit, which then produces a binary output. The following illustration shows a 3-bit flash ADC circuit:



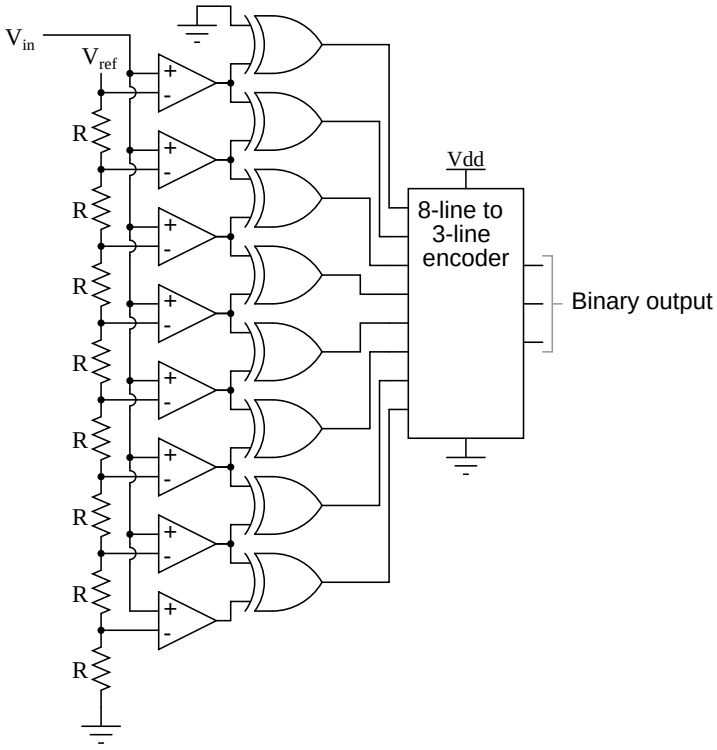
V_{ref} is a stable reference voltage provided by a precision voltage regulator as part of the converter circuit, not shown in the schematic. As the analog input voltage exceeds the reference voltage at each comparator, the comparator outputs will sequentially saturate to a high state. The priority encoder generates a binary number based on the highest-order active input, ignoring all other active inputs.

When operated, the flash ADC produces an output that looks something like this:

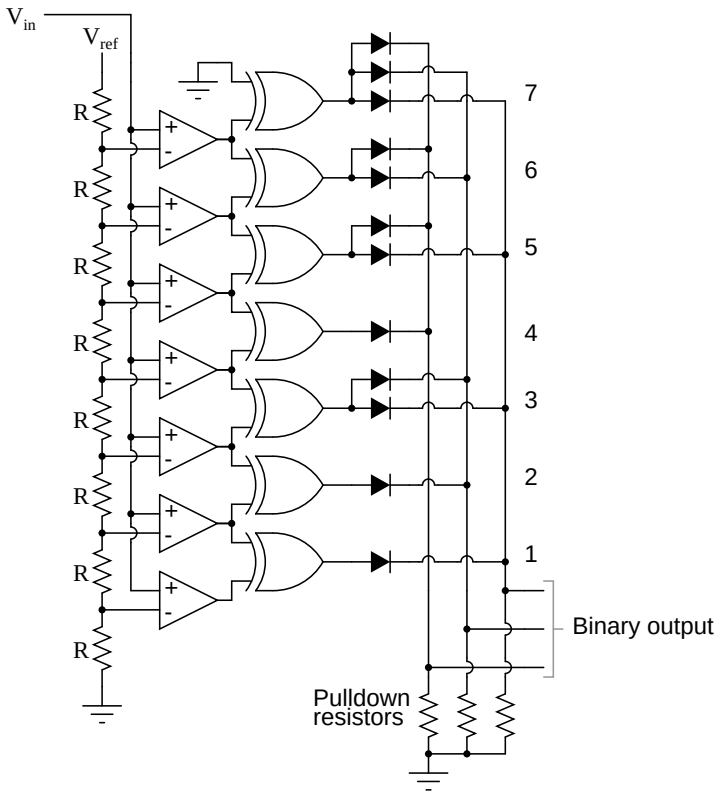


For this particular application, a regular priority encoder with all its inherent complexity isn't necessary. Due to the nature of the sequential comparator output states (each comparator

saturating "high" in sequence from lowest to highest), the same "highest-order-input selection" effect may be realized through a set of Exclusive-OR gates, allowing the use of a simpler, non-priority encoder:



And, of course, the encoder circuit itself can be made from a matrix of diodes, demonstrating just how simply this converter design may be constructed:



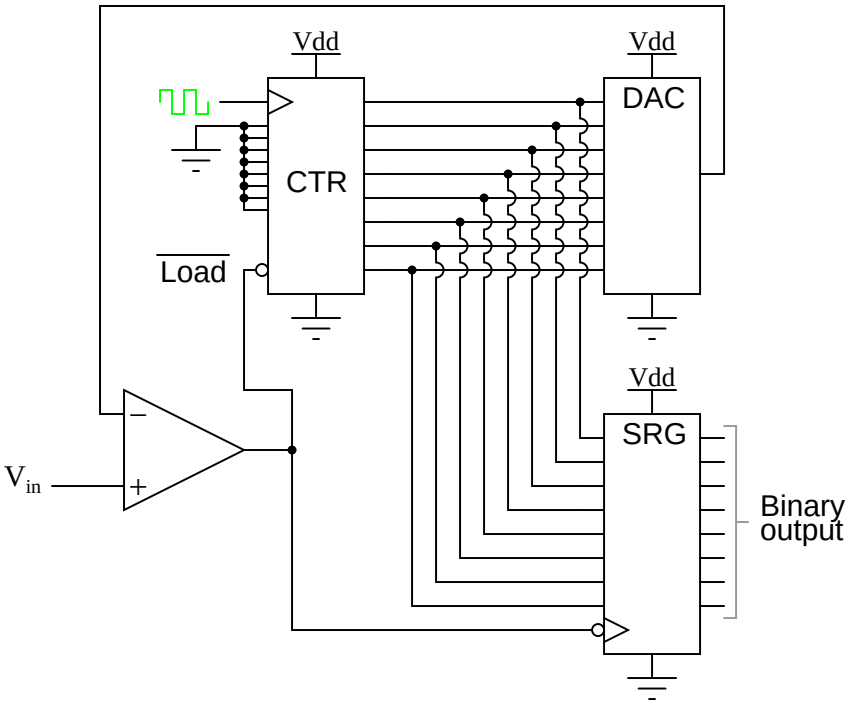
Not only is the flash converter the simplest in terms of operational theory, but it is the most efficient of the ADC technologies in terms of speed, being limited only in comparator and gate propagation delays. Unfortunately, it is the most component-intensive for any given number of output bits. This three-bit flash ADC requires eight comparators. A four-bit version would require 16 comparators. With each additional output bit, the number of required comparators doubles. Considering that eight bits is generally considered the minimum necessary for any practical ADC (256 comparators needed!), the flash methodology quickly shows its weakness.

An additional advantage of the flash converter, often overlooked, is the ability for it to produce a non-linear output. With equal-value resistors in the reference voltage divider network, each successive binary count represents the same amount of analog signal increase, providing a proportional response. For special applications, however, the resistor values in the divider network may be made non-equal. This gives the ADC a custom, nonlinear response to the analog input signal. No other ADC design is able to grant this signal-conditioning behavior with just a few component value changes.

13.5 Digital ramp ADC

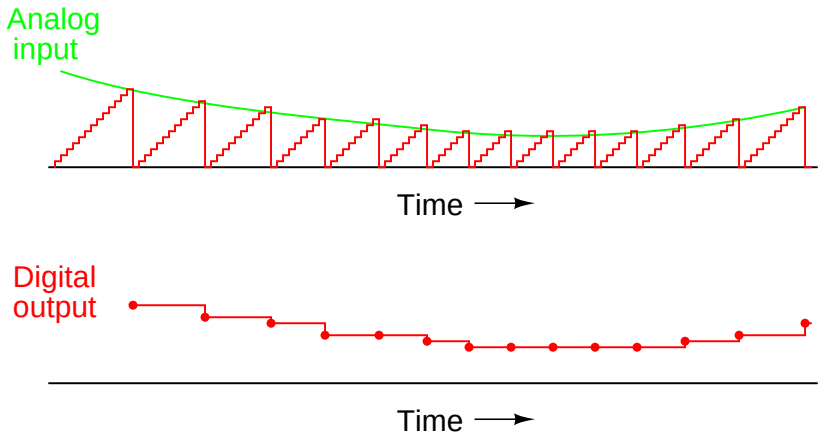
Also known as the *stairstep-ramp*, or simply *counter* A/D converter, this is also fairly easy to understand but unfortunately suffers from several limitations.

The basic idea is to connect the output of a free-running binary counter to the input of a DAC, then compare the analog output of the DAC with the analog input signal to be digitized and use the comparator's output to tell the counter when to stop counting and reset. The following schematic shows the basic idea:

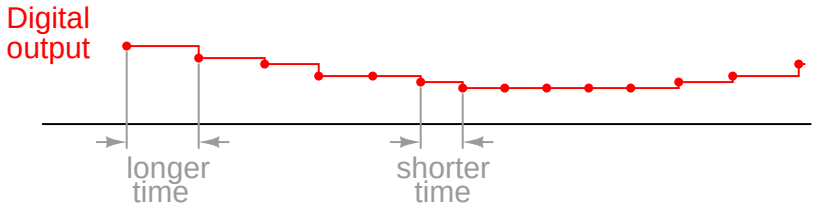


As the counter counts up with each clock pulse, the DAC outputs a slightly higher (more positive) voltage. This voltage is compared against the input voltage by the comparator. If the input voltage is greater than the DAC output, the comparator's output will be high and the counter will continue counting normally. Eventually, though, the DAC output will exceed the input voltage, causing the comparator's output to go low. This will cause two things to happen: first, the high-to-low transition of the comparator's output will cause the shift register to "load" whatever binary count is being output by the counter, thus updating the ADC circuit's output; secondly, the counter will receive a low signal on the active-low LOAD input, causing it to reset to 00000000 on the next clock pulse.

The effect of this circuit is to produce a DAC output that ramps up to whatever level the analog input signal is at, output the binary number corresponding to that level, and start over again. Plotted over time, it looks like this:



Note how the time between updates (new digital output values) changes depending on how high the input voltage is. For low signal levels, the updates are rather close-spaced. For higher signal levels, they are spaced further apart in time:

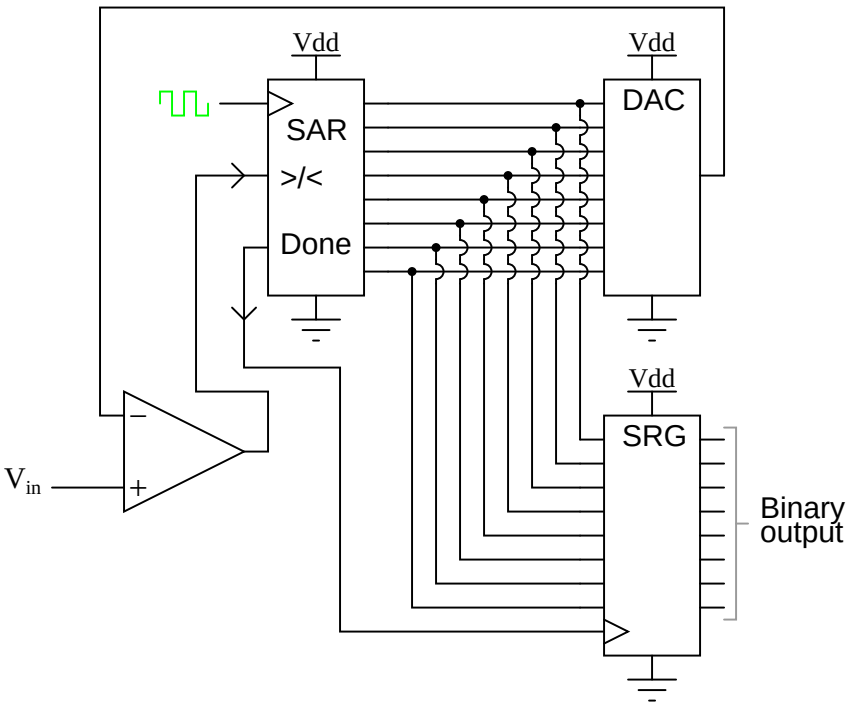


For many ADC applications, this variation in update frequency (sample time) would not be acceptable. This, and the fact that the circuit's need to count all the way from 0 at the beginning of each count cycle makes for relatively slow sampling of the analog signal, places the digital-ramp ADC at a disadvantage to other counter strategies.

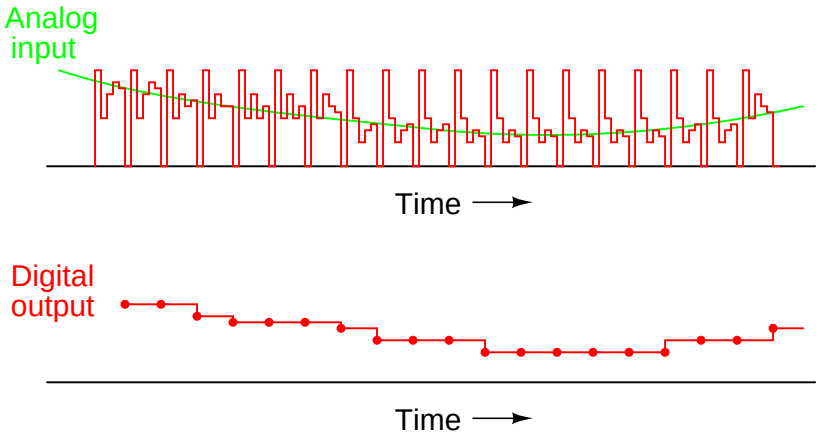
13.6 Successive approximation ADC

One method of addressing the digital ramp ADC's shortcomings is the so-called *successive-approximation* ADC. The only change in this design is a very special counter circuit known as a *successive-approximation register*. Instead of counting up in binary sequence, this register counts by trying all values of bits starting with the most-significant bit and finishing at the least-significant bit. Throughout the count process, the register monitors the comparator's output to see if the binary count is less than or greater than the analog signal input, adjusting the bit values accordingly. The way the register counts is identical to the "trial-and-fit" method of decimal-to-binary conversion, whereby different values of bits are tried from MSB to LSB to get a binary number that equals the original decimal number. The advantage to this counting strategy is much faster results: the DAC output converges on the analog signal input in much larger steps than with the 0-to-full count sequence of a regular counter.

Without showing the inner workings of the successive-approximation register (SAR), the circuit looks like this:



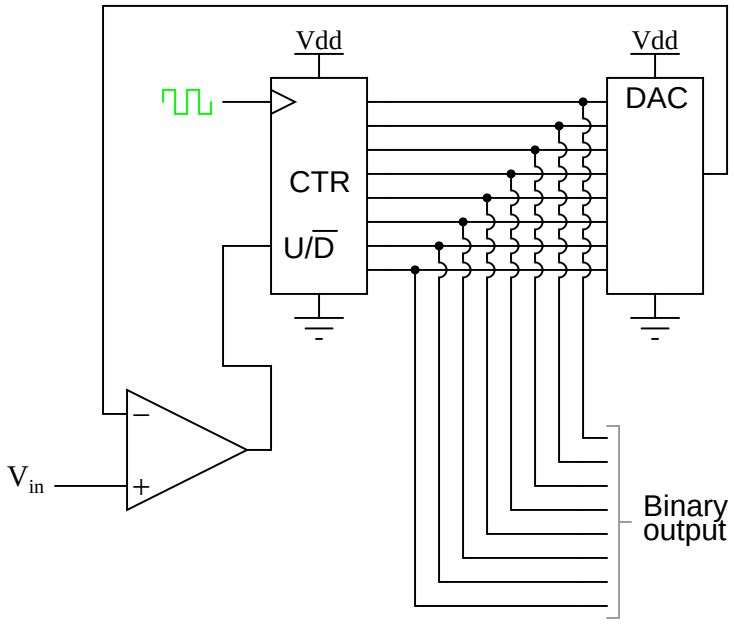
It should be noted that the SAR is generally capable of outputting the binary number in *serial* (one bit at a time) format, thus eliminating the need for a shift register. Plotted over time, the operation of a successive-approximation ADC looks like this:



Note how the updates for this ADC occur at regular intervals, unlike the digital ramp ADC circuit.

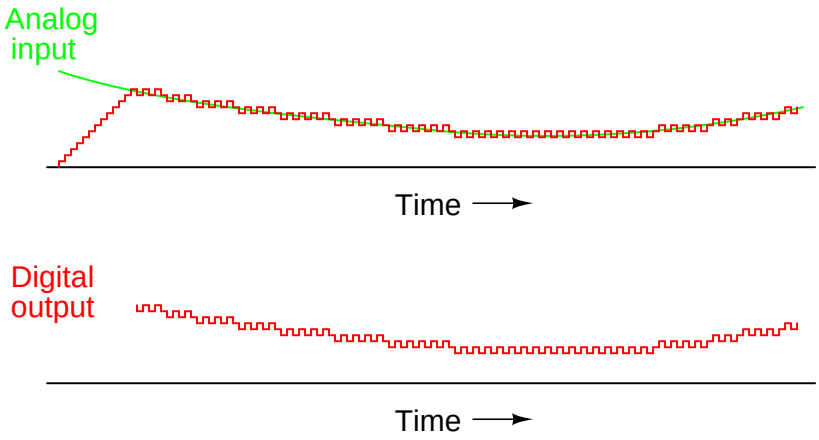
13.7 Tracking ADC

A third variation on the counter-DAC-based converter theme is, in my estimation, the most elegant. Instead of a regular ”up” counter driving the DAC, this circuit uses an up/down counter. The counter is continuously clocked, and the up/down control line is driven by the output of the comparator. So, when the analog input signal exceeds the DAC output, the counter goes into the ”count up” mode. When the DAC output exceeds the analog input, the counter switches into the ”count down” mode. Either way, the DAC output always counts in the proper direction to *track* the input signal.



Notice how no shift register is needed to buffer the binary count at the end of a cycle. Since the counter’s output continuously tracks the input (rather than counting to meet the input and then resetting back to zero), the binary output is legitimately updated with every clock pulse.

An advantage of this converter circuit is speed, since the counter never has to reset. Note the behavior of this circuit:



Note the much faster update time than any of the other "counting" ADC circuits. Also note how at the very beginning of the plot where the counter had to "catch up" with the analog signal, the rate of change for the output was identical to that of the first counting ADC. Also, with no shift register in this circuit, the binary output would actually ramp up rather than jump from zero to an accurate count as it did with the counter and successive approximation ADC circuits.

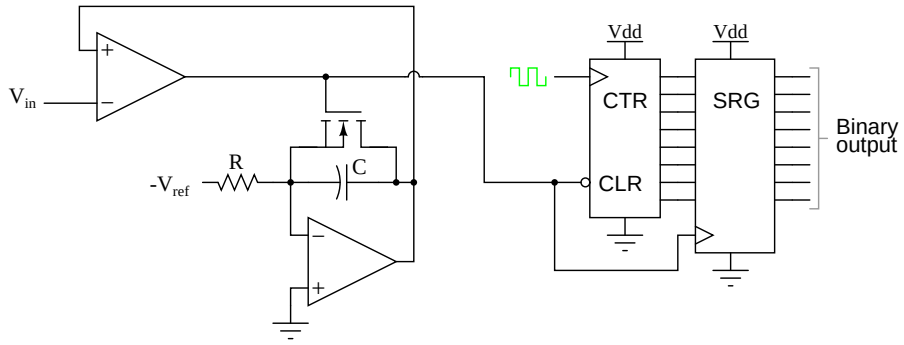
Perhaps the greatest drawback to this ADC design is the fact that the binary output is never stable: it always switches between counts with every clock pulse, even with a perfectly stable analog input signal. This phenomenon is informally known as *bit bobble*, and it can be problematic in some digital systems.

This tendency can be overcome, though, through the creative use of a shift register. For example, the counter's output may be latched through a parallel-in/parallel-out shift register only when the output changes by two or more steps. Building a circuit to detect two or more successive counts in the same direction takes a little ingenuity, but is worth the effort.

13.8 Slope (integrating) ADC

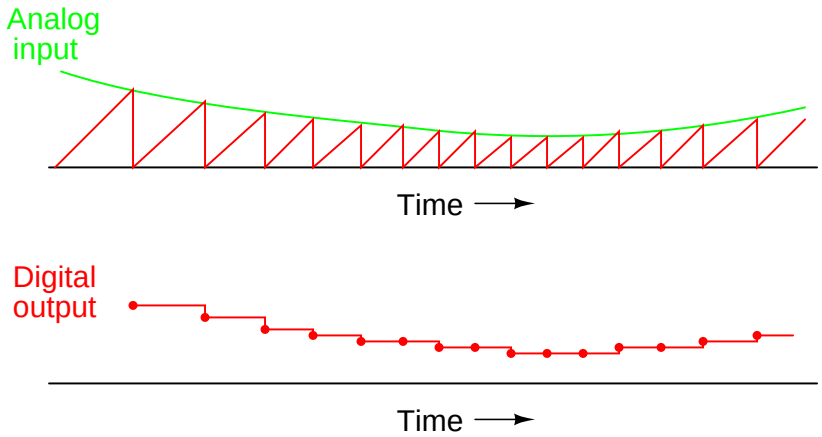
So far, we've only been able to escape the sheer volume of components in the flash converter by using a DAC as part of our ADC circuitry. However, this is not our only option. It is possible to avoid using a DAC if we substitute an analog ramping circuit and a digital counter with precise timing.

The is the basic idea behind the so-called *single-slope*, or *integrating* ADC. Instead of using a DAC with a ramped output, we use an op-amp circuit called an *integrator* to generate a sawtooth waveform which is then compared against the analog input by a comparator. The time it takes for the sawtooth waveform to exceed the input signal voltage level is measured by means of a digital counter clocked with a precise-frequency square wave (usually from a crystal oscillator). The basic schematic diagram is shown here:



The IGFET capacitor-discharging transistor scheme shown here is a bit oversimplified. In reality, a latching circuit timed with the clock signal would most likely have to be connected to the IGFET gate to ensure full discharge of the capacitor when the comparator's output goes high. The basic idea, however, is evident in this diagram. When the comparator output is low (input voltage greater than integrator output), the integrator is allowed to charge the capacitor in a linear fashion. Meanwhile, the counter is counting up at a rate fixed by the precision clock frequency. The time it takes for the capacitor to charge up to the same voltage level as the input depends on the input signal level and the combination of $-V_{ref}$, R, and C. When the capacitor reaches that voltage level, the comparator output goes high, loading the counter's output into the shift register for a final output. The IGFET is triggered "on" by the comparator's high output, discharging the capacitor back to zero volts. When the integrator output voltage falls to zero, the comparator output switches back to a low state, clearing the counter and enabling the integrator to ramp up voltage again.

This ADC circuit behaves very much like the digital ramp ADC, except that the comparator reference voltage is a smooth sawtooth waveform rather than a "stairstep:"



The single-slope ADC suffers all the disadvantages of the digital ramp ADC, with the added drawback of *calibration drift*. The accurate correspondence of this ADC's output with its input is dependent on the voltage slope of the integrator being matched to the counting rate of the counter (the clock frequency). With the digital ramp ADC, the clock frequency had no effect on conversion accuracy, only on update time. In this circuit, since the rate of integration and

the rate of count are independent of each other, variation between the two is inevitable as it ages, and will result in a loss of accuracy. The only good thing to say about this circuit is that it avoids the use of a DAC, which reduces circuit complexity.

An answer to this calibration drift dilemma is found in a design variation called the *dual-slope* converter. In the dual-slope converter, an integrator circuit is driven positive and negative in alternating cycles to ramp down and then up, rather than being reset to 0 volts at the end of every cycle. In one direction of ramping, the integrator is driven by the positive analog input signal (producing a negative, variable rate of output voltage change, or output *slope*) for a fixed amount of time, as measured by a counter with a precision frequency clock. Then, in the other direction, with a fixed reference voltage (producing a fixed rate of output voltage change) with time measured by the same counter. The counter stops counting when the integrator's output reaches the same voltage as it was when it started the fixed-time portion of the cycle. The amount of time it takes for the integrator's capacitor to discharge back to its original output voltage, as measured by the magnitude accrued by the counter, becomes the digital output of the ADC circuit.

The dual-slope method can be thought of analogously in terms of a rotary spring such as that used in a mechanical clock mechanism. Imagine we were building a mechanism to measure the rotary speed of a shaft. Thus, shaft speed is our "input signal" to be measured by this device. The measurement cycle begins with the spring in a relaxed state. The spring is then turned, or "wound up," by the rotating shaft (input signal) for a fixed amount of time. This places the spring in a certain amount of tension proportional to the shaft speed: a greater shaft speed corresponds to a faster rate of winding. and a greater amount of spring tension accumulated over that period of time. After that, the spring is uncoupled from the shaft and allowed to unwind at a fixed rate, the time for it to unwind back to a relaxed state measured by a timer device. The amount of *time* it takes for the spring to unwind at that fixed rate will be directly proportional to the *speed* at which it was wound (input signal magnitude) during the fixed-time portion of the cycle.

This technique of analog-to-digital conversion escapes the calibration drift problem of the single-slope ADC because both the integrator's integration coefficient (or "gain") and the counter's rate of speed are in effect during the entire "winding" and "unwinding" cycle portions. If the counter's clock speed were to suddenly increase, this would shorten the fixed time period where the integrator "winds up" (resulting in a lesser voltage accumulated by the integrator), but it would also mean that it would count faster during the period of time when the integrator was allowed to "unwind" at a fixed rate. The proportion that the counter is counting faster will be the same proportion as the integrator's accumulated voltage is diminished from before the clock speed change. Thus, the clock speed error would cancel itself out and the digital output would be exactly what it should be.

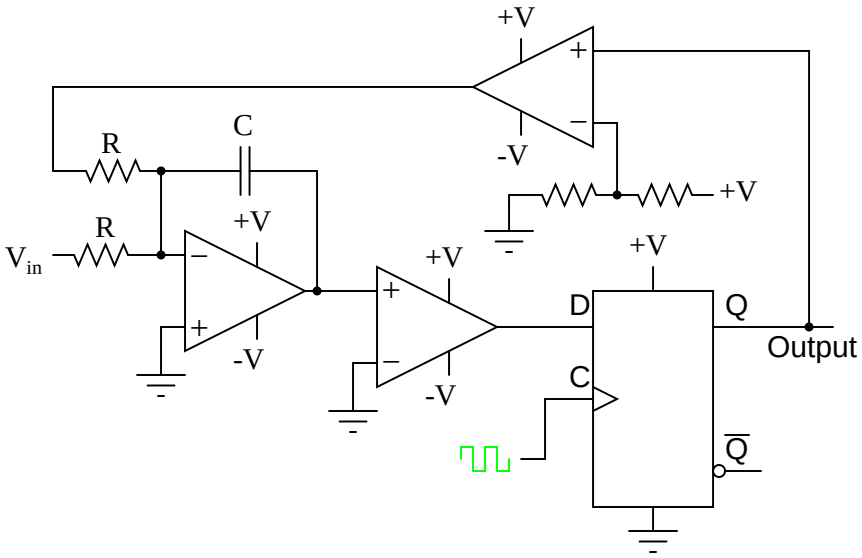
Another important advantage of this method is that the input signal becomes averaged as it drives the integrator during the fixed-time portion of the cycle. Any changes in the analog signal during that period of time have a cumulative effect on the digital output at the end of that cycle. Other ADC strategies merely "capture" the analog signal level at a single point in time every cycle. If the analog signal is "noisy" (contains significant levels of spurious voltage spikes/dips), one of the other ADC converter technologies may occasionally convert a spike or dip because it captures the signal repeatedly at a single point in time. A dual-slope ADC, on the other hand, averages together all the spikes and dips within the integration period, thus providing an output with greater noise immunity. Dual-slope ADCs are used in applications

demanding high accuracy.

13.9 Delta-Sigma (ΔΣ) ADC

One of the more advanced ADC technologies is the so-called delta-sigma, or ΔΣ (using the proper Greek letter notation). In mathematics and physics, the capital Greek letter delta (Δ) represents *difference* or *change*, while the capital letter sigma (Σ) represents *summation*: the adding of multiple terms together. Sometimes this converter is referred to by the same Greek letters in reverse order: sigma-delta, or ΣΔ.

In a ΔΣ converter, the analog input voltage signal is connected to the input of an integrator, producing a voltage rate-of-change, or slope, at the output corresponding to input magnitude. This ramping voltage is then compared against ground potential (0 volts) by a comparator. The comparator acts as a sort of 1-bit ADC, producing 1 bit of output ("high" or "low") depending on whether the integrator output is positive or negative. The comparator's output is then latched through a D-type flip-flop clocked at a high frequency, and *fed back* to another input channel on the integrator, to drive the integrator in the direction of a 0 volt output. The basic circuit looks like this:

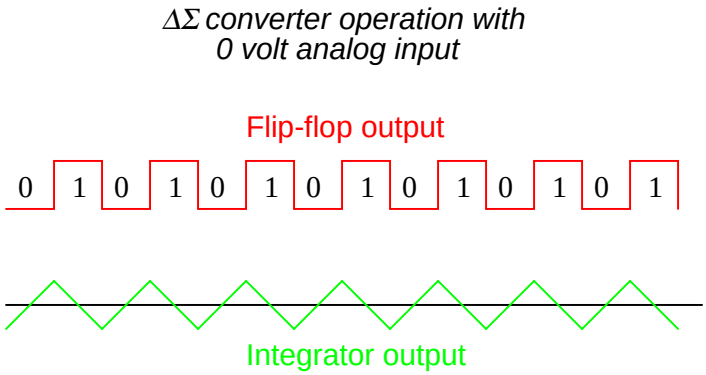


The leftmost op-amp is the (summing) integrator. The next op-amp the integrator feeds into is the comparator, or 1-bit ADC. Next comes the D-type flip-flop, which latches the comparator's output at every clock pulse, sending either a "high" or "low" signal to the next comparator at the top of the circuit. This final comparator is necessary to convert the single-polarity 0V / 5V logic level output voltage of the flip-flop into a +V / -V voltage signal to be fed back to the integrator.

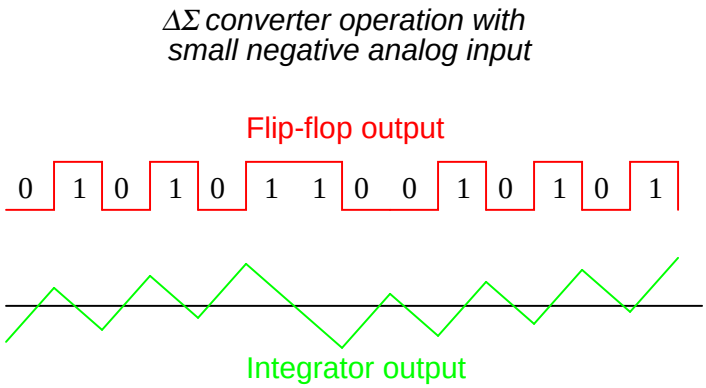
If the integrator output is positive, the first comparator will output a "high" signal to the D input of the flip-flop. At the next clock pulse, this "high" signal will be output from the Q line into the noninverting input of the last comparator. This last comparator, seeing an input voltage greater than the threshold voltage of 1/2 +V, saturates in a positive direction, sending

a full +V signal to the other input of the integrator. This +V feedback signal tends to drive the integrator output in a negative direction. If that output voltage ever becomes negative, the feedback loop will send a corrective signal (-V) back around to the top input of the integrator to drive it in a positive direction. This is the delta-sigma concept in action: the first comparator senses a *difference* (Δ) between the integrator output and zero volts. The integrator *sums* (Σ) the comparator's output with the analog input signal.

Functionally, this results in a serial stream of bits output by the flip-flop. If the analog input is zero volts, the integrator will have no tendency to ramp either positive or negative, except in response to the feedback voltage. In this scenario, the flip-flop output will continually oscillate between "high" and "low," as the feedback system "hunts" back and forth, trying to maintain the integrator output at zero volts:

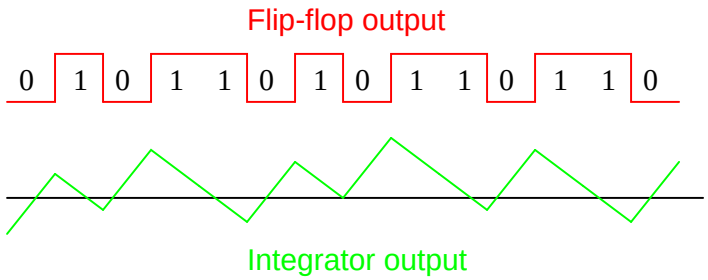


If, however, we apply a negative analog input voltage, the integrator will have a tendency to ramp its output in a positive direction. Feedback can only add to the integrator's ramping by a fixed voltage over a fixed time, and so the bit stream output by the flip-flop will not be quite the same:



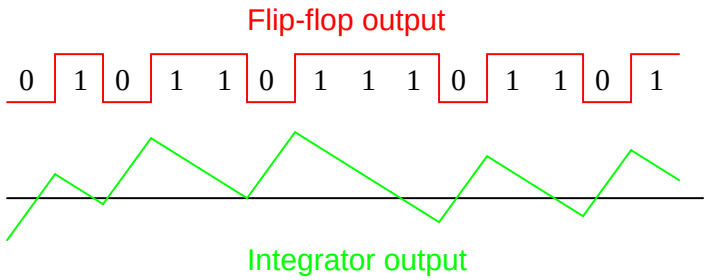
By applying a larger (negative) analog input signal to the integrator, we force its output to ramp more steeply in the positive direction. Thus, the feedback system has to output more 1's than before to bring the integrator output back to zero volts:

ΔΣ converter operation with medium negative analog input



As the analog input signal increases in magnitude, so does the occurrence of 1's in the digital output of the flip-flop:

ΔΣ converter operation with large negative analog input



A parallel binary number output is obtained from this circuit by averaging the serial stream of bits together. For example, a counter circuit could be designed to collect the total number of 1's output by the flip-flop in a given number of clock pulses. This count would then be indicative of the analog input voltage.

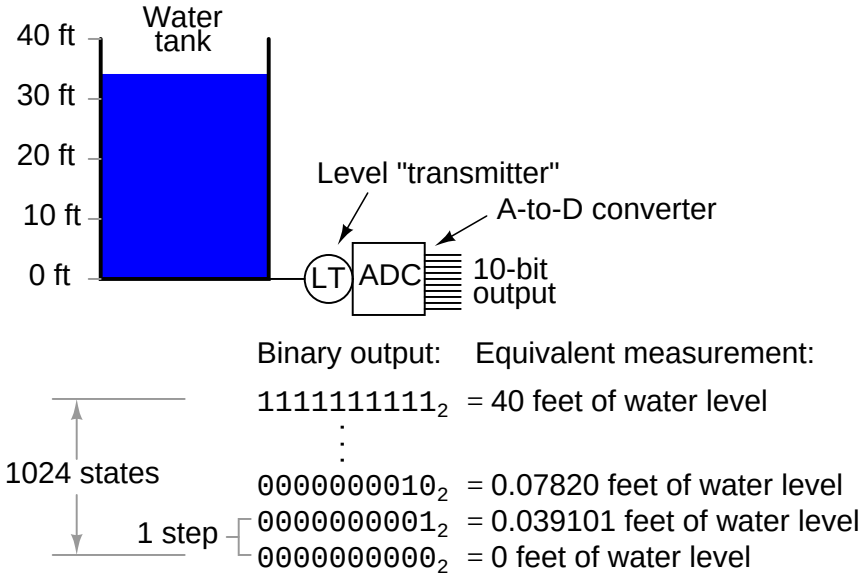
Variations on this theme exist, employing multiple integrator stages and/or comparator circuits outputting more than 1 bit, but one concept common to all $\Delta\Sigma$ converters is that of *oversampling*. Oversampling is when multiple samples of an analog signal are taken by an ADC (in this case, a 1-bit ADC), and those digitized samples are averaged. The end result is an effective increase in the number of bits resolved from the signal. In other words, an oversampled 1-bit ADC can do the same job as an 8-bit ADC with one-time sampling, albeit at a slower rate.

13.10 Practical considerations of ADC circuits

Perhaps the most important consideration of an ADC is its *resolution*. Resolution is the number of binary bits output by the converter. Because ADC circuits take in an analog signal, which is continuously variable, and resolve it into one of many discrete steps, it is important to know how many of these steps there are in total.

For example, an ADC with a 10-bit output can represent up to 1024 (2^{10}) unique conditions of signal measurement. Over the range of measurement from 0% to 100%, there will be exactly 1024 unique binary numbers output by the converter (from 0000000000 to 1111111111, inclusive). An 11-bit ADC will have twice as many states to its output (2048, or 2^{11}), representing twice as many unique conditions of signal measurement between 0% and 100%.

Resolution is very important in data acquisition systems (circuits designed to interpret and record physical measurements in electronic form). Suppose we were measuring the height of water in a 40-foot tall storage tank using an instrument with a 10-bit ADC. 0 feet of water in the tank corresponds to 0% of measurement, while 40 feet of water in the tank corresponds to 100% of measurement. Because the ADC is fixed at 10 bits of binary data output, it will interpret any given tank level as one out of 1024 possible states. To determine how much physical water level will be represented in each *step* of the ADC, we need to divide the 40 feet of measurement span by the number of steps in the 0-to-1024 range of possibilities, which is 1023 (one less than 1024). Doing this, we obtain a figure of 0.039101 feet per step. This equates to 0.46921 inches per step, a little less than half an inch of water level represented for every binary count of the ADC.



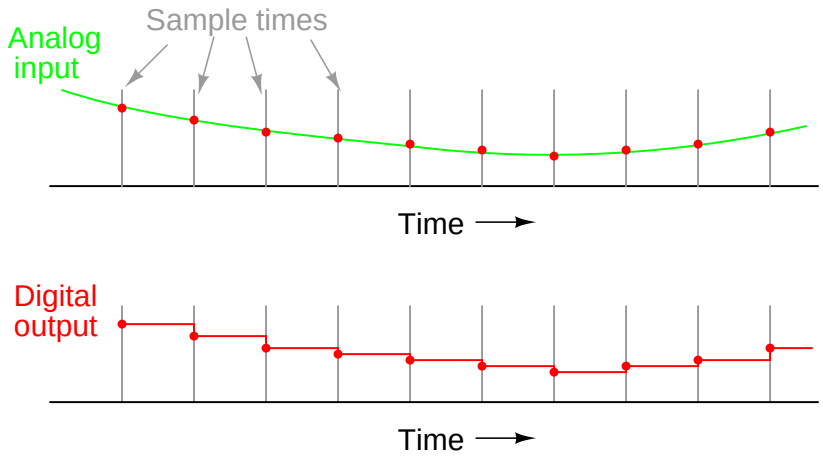
This step value of 0.039101 feet (0.46921 inches) represents the smallest amount of tank level change detectable by the instrument. Admittedly, this is a small amount, less than 0.1% of the overall measurement span of 40 feet. However, for some applications it may not be fine enough. Suppose we needed this instrument to be able to indicate tank level changes down to one-tenth of an inch. In order to achieve this degree of resolution and still maintain a measurement span of 40 feet, we would need an instrument with more than ten ADC bits.

To determine how many ADC bits are necessary, we need to first determine how many 1/10 inch steps there are in 40 feet. The answer to this is 40/(0.1/12), or 4800 1/10 inch steps in 40 feet. Thus, we need enough bits to provide at least 4800 discrete steps in a binary counting sequence. 10 bits gave us 1023 steps, and we knew this by calculating 2 to the power of 10 (2^{10} = 1024) and then subtracting one. Following the same mathematical procedure, 2^{11}-1 = 2047,

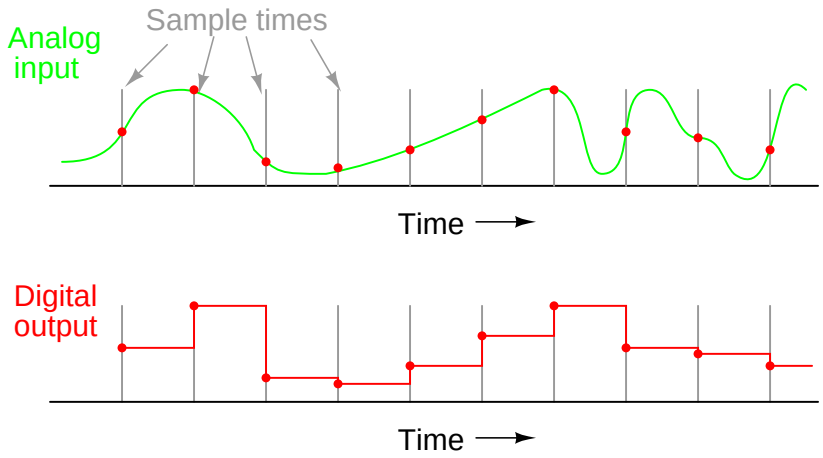
2^{12}-1 = 4095, and 2^{13}-1 = 8191. 12 bits falls shy of the amount needed for 4800 steps, while 13 bits is more than enough. Therefore, we need an instrument with at least 13 bits of resolution.

Another important consideration of ADC circuitry is its *sample frequency*, or *conversion rate*. This is simply the speed at which the converter outputs a new binary number. Like resolution, this consideration is linked to the specific application of the ADC. If the converter is being used to measure slow-changing signals such as level in a water storage tank, it could probably have a very slow sample frequency and still perform adequately. Conversely, if it is being used to digitize an audio frequency signal cycling at several thousand times per second, the converter needs to be considerably faster.

Consider the following illustration of ADC conversion rate versus signal type, typical of a successive-approximation ADC with regular sample intervals:



Here, for this slow-changing signal, the sample rate is more than adequate to capture its general trend. But consider *this* example with the same sample time:

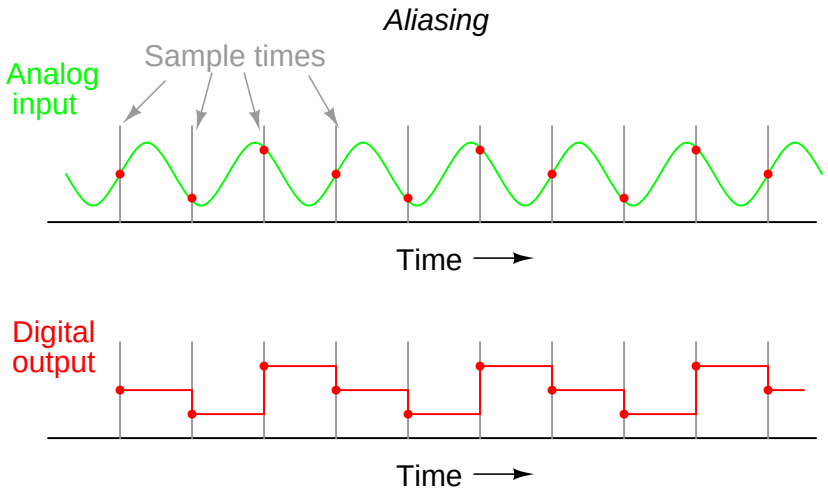


When the sample period is too long (too slow), substantial details of the analog signal will be missed. Notice how, especially in the latter portions of the analog signal, the digital output

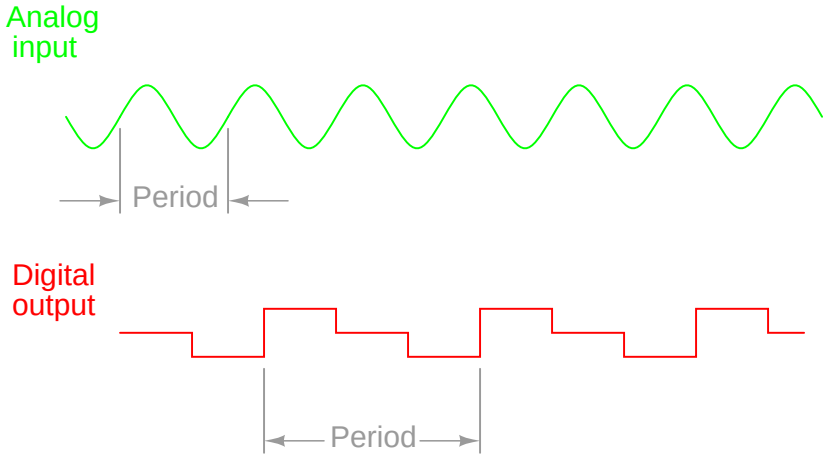
utterly fails to reproduce the true shape. Even in the first section of the analog waveform, the digital reproduction deviates substantially from the true shape of the wave.

It is imperative that an ADC's sample time is fast enough to capture essential changes in the analog waveform. In data acquisition terminology, the highest-frequency waveform that an ADC can theoretically capture is the so-called *Nyquist frequency*, equal to one-half of the ADC's sample frequency. Therefore, if an ADC circuit has a sample frequency of 5000 Hz, the highest-frequency waveform it can successfully resolve will be the Nyquist frequency of 2500 Hz.

If an ADC is subjected to an analog input signal whose frequency exceeds the Nyquist frequency for that ADC, the converter will output a digitized signal of falsely low frequency. This phenomenon is known as *aliasing*. Observe the following illustration to see how aliasing occurs:



Note how the period of the output waveform is much longer (slower) than that of the input waveform, and how the two waveform shapes aren't even similar:



It should be understood that the Nyquist frequency is an *absolute* maximum frequency limit for an ADC, and does not represent the highest *practical* frequency measurable. To be safe, one shouldn't expect an ADC to successfully resolve any frequency greater than one-fifth to one-tenth of its sample frequency.

A practical means of preventing aliasing is to place a low-pass filter before the input of the ADC, to block any signal frequencies greater than the practical limit. This way, the ADC circuitry will be prevented from seeing any excessive frequencies and thus will not try to digitize them. It is generally considered better that such frequencies go unconverted than to have them be "aliased" and appear in the output as false signals.

Yet another measure of ADC performance is something called *step recovery*. This is a measure of how quickly an ADC changes its output to match a large, sudden change in the analog input. In some converter technologies especially, step recovery is a serious limitation. One example is the tracking converter, which has a typically fast update period but a disproportionately slow step recovery.

An ideal ADC has a great many bits for very fine resolution, samples at lightning-fast speeds, and recovers from steps instantly. It also, unfortunately, doesn't exist in the real world. Of course, any of these traits may be improved through additional circuit complexity, either in terms of increased component count and/or special circuit designs made to run at higher clock speeds. Different ADC technologies, though, have different strengths. Here is a summary of them ranked from best to worst:

Resolution/complexity ratio:
Single-slope integrating, dual-slope integrating, counter, tracking, successive approximation, flash.

Speed:
Flash, tracking, successive approximation, single-slope integrating & counter, dual-slope integrating.

Step recovery:
Flash, successive-approximation, single-slope integrating & counter, dual-slope integrating, tracking.

Please bear in mind that the rankings of these different ADC technologies depend on other factors. For instance, how an ADC rates on step recovery depends on the nature of the step change. A tracking ADC is equally slow to respond to all step changes, whereas a single-slope or counter ADC will register a high-to-low step change quicker than a low-to-high step change. Successive-approximation ADCs are almost equally fast at resolving any analog signal, but a tracking ADC will consistently beat a successive-approximation ADC if the signal is changing slower than one resolution step per clock pulse. I ranked integrating converters as having a greater resolution/complexity ratio than counter converters, but this assumes that precision analog integrator circuits are less complex to design and manufacture than precision DACs required within counter-based converters. Others may not agree with this assumption.

Chapter 14

DIGITAL COMMUNICATION

Contents

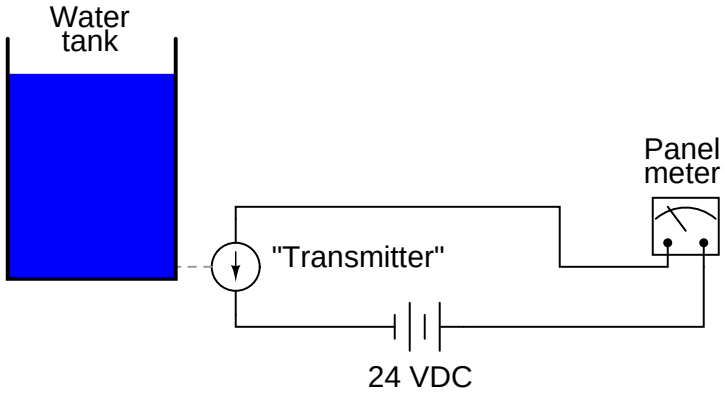
14.1 Introduction

In the design of large and complex digital systems, it is often necessary to have one device communicate digital information to and from other devices. One advantage of digital information is that it tends to be far more resistant to transmitted and interpreted errors than information symbolized in an analog medium. This accounts for the clarity of digitally-encoded telephone connections, compact audio disks, and for much of the enthusiasm in the engineering community for digital communications technology. However, digital communication has its own unique pitfalls, and there are multitudes of different and incompatible ways in which it can be sent. Hopefully, this chapter will enlighten you as to the basics of digital communication, its advantages, disadvantages, and practical considerations.

Suppose we are given the task of remotely monitoring the level of a water storage tank. Our job is to design a system to measure the level of water in the tank and send this information to a distant location so that other people may monitor it. Measuring the tank's level is quite easy, and can be accomplished with a number of different types of instruments, such as float switches, pressure transmitters, ultrasonic level detectors, capacitance probes, strain gauges, or radar level detectors.

For the sake of this illustration, we will use an analog level-measuring device with an output signal of 4-20 mA. 4 mA represents a tank level of 0%, 20 mA represents a tank level of 100%, and anything in between 4 and 20 mA represents a tank level proportionately between 0% and 100%. If we wanted to, we could simply send this 4-20 milliamp analog current signal to the remote monitoring location by means of a pair of copper wires, where it would drive a panel meter of some sort, the scale of which was calibrated to reflect the depth of water in the tank, in whatever units of measurement preferred.

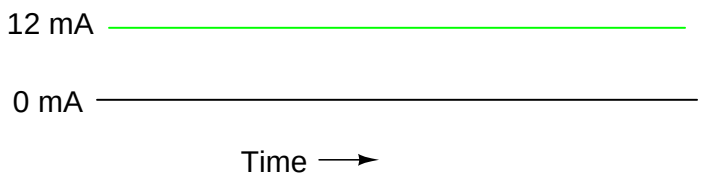
Analog tank-level measurement "loop"



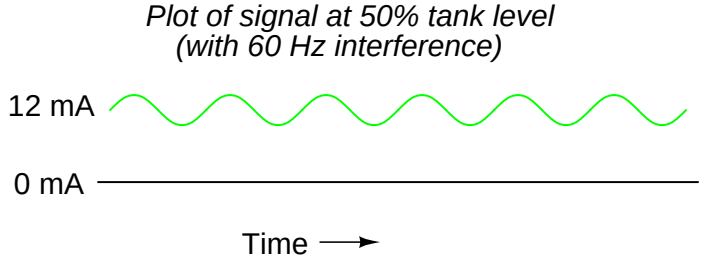
This analog communication system would be simple and robust. For many applications, it would suffice for our needs perfectly. But, it is not the *only* way to get the job done. For the purposes of exploring digital techniques, we'll explore other methods of monitoring this hypothetical tank, even though the analog method just described might be the most practical.

The analog system, as simple as it may be, does have its limitations. One of them is the problem of analog signal interference. Since the tank's water level is symbolized by the magnitude of DC current in the circuit, any "noise" in this signal will be interpreted as a change in the water level. With no noise, a plot of the current signal over time for a steady tank level of 50% would look like this:

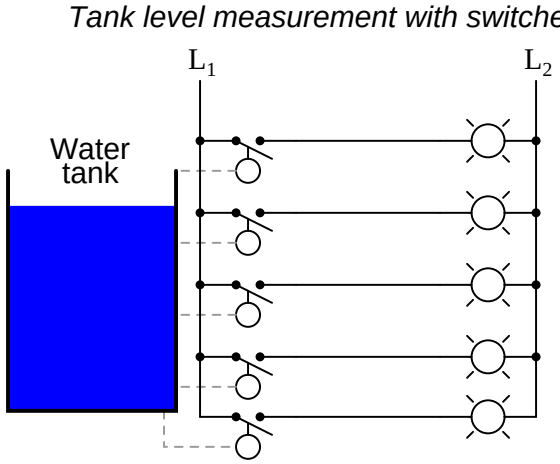
Plot of signal at 50% tank level



If the wires of this circuit are arranged too close to wires carrying 60 Hz AC power, for example, inductive and capacitive coupling may create a false "noise" signal to be introduced into this otherwise DC circuit. Although the low impedance of a 4-20 mA loop (250 Ω, typically) means that small noise voltages are significantly loaded (and thereby attenuated by the inefficiency of the capacitive/inductive coupling formed by the power wires), such noise can be significant enough to cause measurement problems:



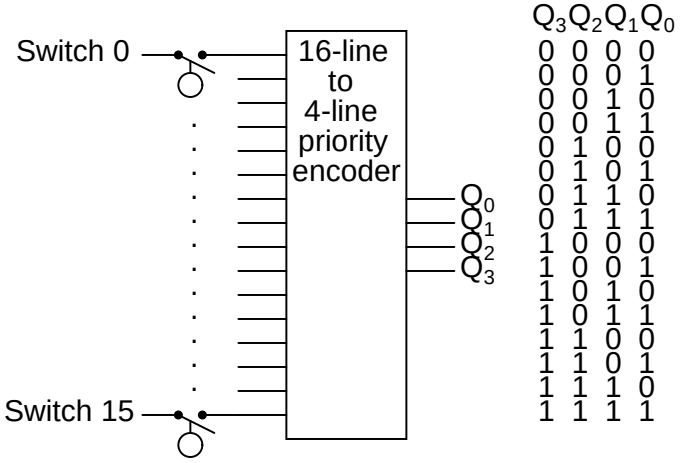
The above example is a bit exaggerated, but the concept should be clear: *any* electrical noise introduced into an analog measurement system will be interpreted as changes in the measured quantity. One way to combat this problem is to symbolize the tank's water level by means of a digital signal instead of an analog signal. We can do this really crudely by replacing the analog transmitter device with a set of water level switches mounted at different heights on the tank:



Each of these switches is wired to close a circuit, sending current to individual lamps mounted on a panel at the monitoring location. As each switch closed, its respective lamp would light, and whoever looked at the panel would see a 5-lamp representation of the tank's level.

Being that each lamp circuit is digital in nature – either 100% *on* or 100% *off* – electrical interference from other wires along the run have much less effect on the accuracy of measurement at the monitoring end than in the case of the analog signal. A *huge* amount of interference would be required to cause an "off" signal to be interpreted as an "on" signal, or vice versa. Relative resistance to electrical interference is an advantage enjoyed by all forms of digital communication over analog.

Now that we know digital signals are far more resistant to error induced by "noise," let's improve on this tank level measurement system. For instance, we could increase the resolution of this tank gauging system by adding more switches, for more precise determination of water level. Suppose we install 16 switches along the tank's height instead of five. This would significantly improve our measurement resolution, but at the expense of greatly increasing the quantity of wires needing to be strung between the tank and the monitoring location. One way to reduce this wiring expense would be to use a priority encoder to take the 16 switches and generate a binary number which represented the same information:



Q_3	Q_2	Q_1	Q_0
0	0	0	0
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0
0	0	1	1
0	1	0	0
0	1	0	1
0	1	1	0
0	1	1	1
1	0	0	0
1	0	0	1
1	0	1	0
1	0	1	1
1	1	0	0
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	0
1	1	1	1

Now, only 4 wires (plus any ground and power wires necessary) are needed to communicate the information, as opposed to 16 wires (plus any ground and power wires). At the monitoring location, we would need some kind of display device that could accept the 4-bit binary data and generate an easy-to-read display for a person to view. A decoder, wired to accept the 4-bit data as its input and light 1-of-16 output lamps, could be used for this task, or we could use a 4-bit decoder/driver circuit to drive some kind of numerical digit display.

Still, a resolution of 1/16 tank height may not be good enough for our application. To better resolve the water level, we need more bits in our binary output. We could add still more switches, but this gets impractical rather quickly. A better option would be to re-attach our original analog transmitter to the tank and electronically convert its 4-20 milliamp analog output into a binary number with far more bits than would be practical using a set of discrete level switches. Since the electrical noise we're trying to avoid is encountered along the long run of wire from the tank to the monitoring location, this A/D conversion can take place at the tank (where we have a "clean" 4-20 mA signal). There are a variety of methods to convert an analog signal to digital, but we'll skip an in-depth discussion of those techniques and concentrate on the digital signal communication itself.

The type of digital information being sent from our tank instrumentation to the monitoring instrumentation is referred to as *parallel* digital data. That is, each binary bit is being sent along its own dedicated wire, so that all bits arrive at their destination simultaneously. This obviously necessitates the use of at least one wire per bit to communicate with the monitoring location. We could further reduce our wiring needs by sending the binary data along a single channel (one wire + ground), so that each bit is communicated one at a time. This type of

information is referred to as *serial* digital data.

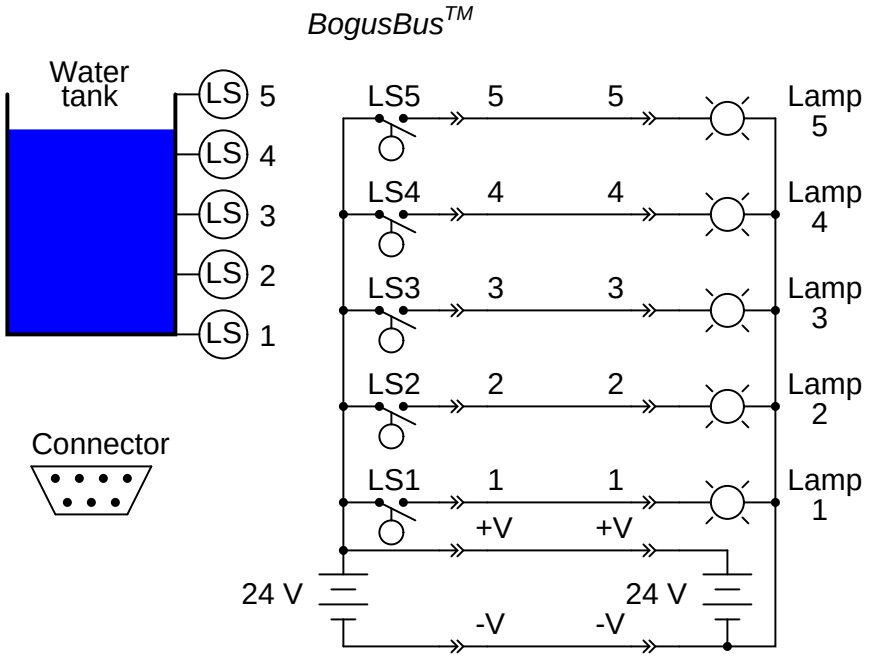
We could use a multiplexer or a shift register to take the parallel data from the A/D converter (at the tank transmitter), and convert it to serial data. At the receiving end (the monitoring location) we could use a demultiplexer or another shift register to convert the serial data to parallel again for use in the display circuitry. The exact details of how the mux/demux or shift register pairs are maintained in synchronization is, like A/D conversion, a topic for another lesson. Fortunately, there are digital IC chips called UARTs (Universal Asynchronous Receiver-Transmitters) that handle all these details on their own and make the designer's life much simpler. For now, we must continue to focus our attention on the matter at hand: how to communicate the digital information from the tank to the monitoring location.

14.2 Networks and busses

This collection of wires that I keep referring to between the tank and the monitoring location can be called a *bus* or a *network*. The distinction between these two terms is more semantic than technical, and the two may be used interchangeably for all practical purposes. In my experience, the term "bus" is usually used in reference to a set of wires connecting digital components within the enclosure of a computer device, and "network" is for something that is physically more widespread. In recent years, however, the word "bus" has gained popularity in describing networks that specialize in interconnecting discrete instrumentation sensors over long distances ("Fieldbus" and "Profibus" are two examples). In either case, we are making reference to the means by which two or more digital devices are connected together so that data can be communicated between them.

Names like "Fieldbus" or "Profibus" encompass not only the physical wiring of the bus or network, but also the specified voltage levels for communication, their timing sequences (especially for serial data transmission), connector pinout specifications, and all other distinguishing technical features of the network. In other words, when we speak of a certain type of bus or network by name, we're actually speaking of a communications *standard*, roughly analogous to the rules and vocabulary of a written language. For example, before two or more people can become pen-pals, they must be able to write to one another in a common format. To merely have a mail system that is able to deliver their letters to each other is not enough. If they agree to write to each other in French, they agree to hold to the conventions of character set, vocabulary, spelling, and grammar that is specified by the standard of the French language. Likewise, if we connect two Profibus devices together, they will be able to communicate with each other only because the Profibus standard has specified such important details as voltage levels, timing sequences, etc. Simply having a set of wires strung between multiple devices is not enough to construct a working system (especially if the devices were built by different manufacturers!).

To illustrate in detail, let's design our own bus standard. Taking the crude water tank measurement system with five switches to detect varying levels of water, and using (at least) five wires to conduct the signals to their destination, we can lay the foundation for the mighty *BogusBus*:



The physical wiring for the BogusBus consists of seven wires between the transmitter device (switches) and the receiver device (lamps). The transmitter consists of all components and wiring connections to the left of the leftmost connectors (the "–>>–" symbols). Each connector symbol represents a complementary male and female element. The bus wiring consists of the seven wires between the connector pairs. Finally, the receiver and all of its constituent wiring lies to the right of the rightmost connectors. Five of the network wires (labeled 1 through 5) carry the data while two of those wires (labeled +V and -V) provide connections for DC power supplies. There is a standard for the 7-pin connector plugs, as well. The pin layout is asymmetrical to prevent "backward" connection.

In order for manufacturers to receive the awe-inspiring "BogusBus-compliant" certification on their products, they would have to comply with the specifications set by the designers of BogusBus (most likely another company, which designed the bus for a specific task and ended up marketing it for a wide variety of purposes). For instance, all devices must be able to use the 24 Volt DC supply power of BogusBus: the switch contacts in the transmitter must be rated for switching that DC voltage, the lamps must definitely be rated for being powered by that voltage, and the connectors must be able to handle it all. Wiring, of course, must be in compliance with that same standard: lamps 1 through 5, for example, must be wired to the appropriate pins so that when LS4 of Manufacturer XYZ's transmitter closes, lamp 4 of Manufacturer ABC's receiver lights up, and so on. Since both transmitter and receiver contain DC power supplies rated at an output of 24 Volts, all transmitter/receiver combinations (from all certified manufacturers) *must* have power supplies that can be safely wired in parallel. Consider what could happen if Manufacturer XYZ made a transmitter with the negative (-) side of their 24VDC power supply attached to earth ground and Manufacturer ABC made a receiver with the positive (+) side of their 24VDC power supply attached to earth ground. If both earth grounds are relatively "solid" (that is, a low resistance between them, such as might

be the case if the two grounds were made on the metal structure of an industrial building), the two power supplies would short-circuit each other!

BogusBus, of course, is a completely hypothetical and very impractical example of a digital network. It has incredibly poor data resolution, requires substantial wiring to connect devices, and communicates in only a single direction (from transmitter to receiver). It does, however, suffice as a tutorial example of what a network is and some of the considerations associated with network selection and operation.

There are many types of buses and networks that you might come across in your profession. Each one has its own applications, advantages, and disadvantages. It is worthwhile to associate yourself with some of the ”alphabet soup” that is used to label the various designs:

14.2.1 Short-distance busses

PC/AT Bus used in early IBM-compatible computers to connect peripheral devices such as disk drive and sound cards to the motherboard of the computer.

PCI Another bus used in personal computers, but not limited to IBM-compatibles. Much faster than PC/AT. Typical data transfer rate of 100 Mbytes/second (32 bit) and 200 Mbytes/second (64 bit).

PCMCIA A bus designed to connect peripherals to laptop and notebook sized personal computers. Has a very small physical ”footprint,” but is considerably slower than other popular PC buses.

VME A high-performance bus (co-designed by Motorola, and based on Motorola’s earlier Versa-Bus standard) for constructing versatile industrial and military computers, where multiple memory, peripheral, and even microprocessor cards could be plugged in to a passive ”rack” or ”card cage” to facilitate custom system designs. Typical data transfer rate of 50 Mbytes/second (64 bits wide).

VXI Actually an expansion of the VME bus, VXI (VME eXtension for Instrumentation) includes the standard VME bus along with connectors for analog signals between cards in the rack.

S-100 Sometimes called the Altair bus, this bus standard was the product of a conference in 1976, intended to serve as an interface to the Intel 8080 microprocessor chip. Similar in philosophy to the VME, where multiple function cards could be plugged in to a passive ”rack,” facilitating the construction of custom systems.

MC6800 The Motorola equivalent of the Intel-centric S-100 bus, designed to interface peripheral devices to the popular Motorola 6800 microprocessor chip.

STD Stands for *Simple-To-Design*, and is yet another passive ”rack” similar to the PC/AT bus, and lends itself well toward designs based on IBM-compatible hardware. Designed by Pro-Log, it is 8 bits wide (parallel), accommodating relatively small (4.5 inch by 6.5 inch) circuit cards.

Multibus I and II Another bus intended for the flexible design of custom computer systems, designed by Intel. 16 bits wide (parallel).

CompactPCI An industrial adaptation of the personal computer PCI standard, designed as a higher-performance alternative to the older VME bus. At a bus clock speed of 66 MHz, data transfer rates are 200 Mbytes/ second (32 bit) or 400 Mbytes/sec (64 bit).

Microchannel Yet another bus, this one designed by IBM for their ill-fated PS/2 series of computers, intended for the interfacing of PC motherboards to peripheral devices.

IDE A bus used primarily for connecting personal computer hard disk drives with the appropriate peripheral cards. Widely used in today's personal computers for hard drive and CD-ROM drive interfacing.

SCSI An alternative (technically superior to IDE) bus used for personal computer disk drives. SCSI stands for *Small Computer System Interface*. Used in some IBM-compatible PC's, as well as Macintosh (Apple), and many mini and mainframe business computers. Used to interface hard drives, CD-ROM drives, floppy disk drives, printers, scanners, modems, and a host of other peripheral devices. Speeds up to 1.5 Mbytes per second for the original standard.

GPIB (IEEE 488) *General Purpose Interface Bus*, also known as HPIB or IEEE 488, which was intended for the interfacing of electronic test equipment such as oscilloscopes and multimeters to personal computers. 8 bit wide address/data "path" with 8 additional lines for communications control.

Centronics parallel Widely used on personal computers for interfacing printer and plotter devices. Sometimes used to interface with other peripheral devices, such as external ZIP (100 Mbyte floppy) disk drives and tape drives.

USB *Universal Serial Bus*, which is intended to interconnect many external peripheral devices (such as keyboards, modems, mice, etc.) to personal computers. Long used on Macintosh PC's, it is now being installed as new equipment on IBM-compatible machines.

FireWire (IEEE 1394) A high-speed serial network capable of operating at 100, 200, or 400 Mbps with versatile features such as "hot swapping" (adding or removing devices with the power on) and flexible topology. Designed for high-performance personal computer interfacing.

Bluetooth A radio-based communications network designed for office linking of computer devices. Provisions for data security designed into this network standard.

14.2.2 Extended-distance networks

20 mA current loop Not to be confused with the common instrumentation 4-20 mA analog standard, this is a digital communications network based on interrupting a 20 mA (or sometimes 60 mA) current loop to represent binary data. Although the low impedance gives good noise immunity, it is susceptible to wiring faults (such as breaks) which would fail the entire network.

RS-232C The most common serial network used in computer systems, often used to link peripheral devices such as printers and mice to a personal computer. Limited in speed and distance (typically 45 feet and 20 kbps, although higher speeds can be run with shorter distances). I've been able to run RS-232 reliably at speeds in excess of 100 kbps, but this was using a cable only 6 feet long! RS-232C is often referred to simply as RS-232 (no "C").

RS-422A/RS-485 Two serial networks designed to overcome some of the distance and versatility limitations of RS-232C. Used widely in industry to link serial devices together in electrically "noisy" plant environments. Much greater distance and speed limitations than RS-232C, typically over half a mile and at speeds approaching 10 Mbps.

Ethernet (IEEE 802.3) A high-speed network which links computers and some types of peripheral devices together. "Normal" Ethernet runs at a speed of 10 million bits/second, and "Fast" Ethernet runs at 100 million bits/second. The slower (10 Mbps) Ethernet has been implemented in a variety of means on copper wire (thick coax = "10BASE5", thin coax = "10BASE2", twisted-pair = "10BASE-T"), radio, and on optical fiber ("10BASE-F"). The Fast

Ethernet has also been implemented on a few different means (twisted-pair, 2 pair = 100BASE-TX; twisted-pair, 4 pair = 100BASE-T4; optical fiber = 100BASE-FX).

Token ring Another high-speed network linking computer devices together, using a philosophy of communication that is much different from Ethernet, allowing for more precise response times from individual network devices, and greater immunity to network wiring damage.

FDDI A very high-speed network exclusively implemented on fiber-optic cabling.

Modbus/Modbus Plus Originally implemented by the Modicon corporation, a large maker of Programmable Logic Controllers (PLCs) for linking remote I/O (Input/Output) racks with a PLC processor. Still quite popular.

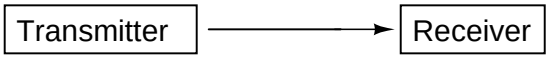
Profibus Originally implemented by the Siemens corporation, another large maker of PLC equipment.

Foundation Fieldbus A high-performance bus expressly designed to allow multiple process instruments (transmitters, controllers, valve positioners) to communicate with host computers and with each other. May ultimately displace the 4-20 mA analog signal as the standard means of interconnecting process control instrumentation in the future.

14.3 Data flow

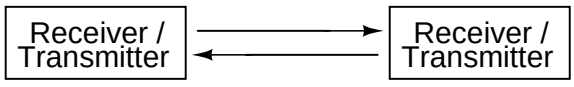
Buses and networks are designed to allow communication to occur between individual devices that are interconnected. The flow of information, or data, between nodes can take a variety of forms:

Simplex communication

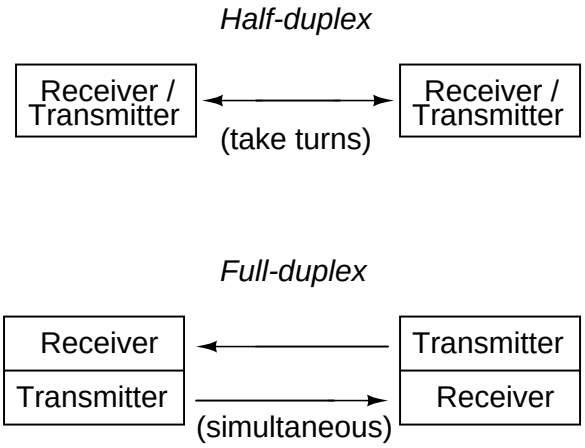


With simplex communication, all data flow is unidirectional: from the designated transmitter to the designated receiver. BogusBus is an example of simplex communication, where the transmitter sent information to the remote monitoring location, but no information is ever sent back to the water tank. If all we want to do is send information one-way, then simplex is just fine. Most applications, however, demand more:

Duplex communication



With duplex communication, the flow of information is bidirectional for each device. Duplex can be further divided into two sub-categories:

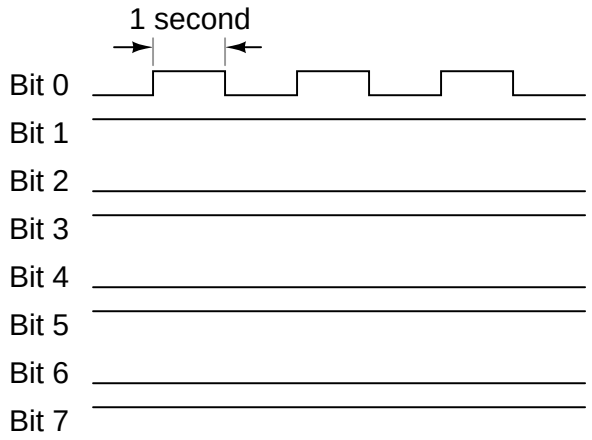


Half-duplex communication may be likened to two tin cans on the ends of a single taut string: Either can may be used to transmit or receive, but not at the same time. Full-duplex communication is more like a true telephone, where two people can talk at the same time and hear one another simultaneously, the mouthpiece of one phone transmitting the the earpiece of the other, and vice versa. Full-duplex is often facilitated through the use of two separate channels or networks, with an individual set of wires for each direction of communication. It is sometimes accomplished by means of multiple-frequency carrier waves, especially in radio links, where one frequency is reserved for each direction of communication.

14.4 Electrical signal types

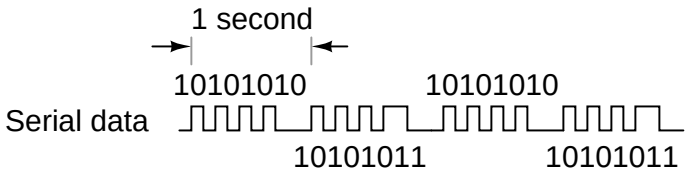
With BogusBus, our signals were very simple and straightforward: each signal wire (1 through 5) carried a single bit of digital data, 0 Volts representing ”off” and 24 Volts DC representing ”on.” Because all the bits arrived at their destination simultaneously, we would call BogusBus a *parallel* network technology. If we were to improve the performance of BogusBus by adding binary encoding (to the transmitter end) and decoding (to the receiver end), so that more steps of resolution were available with fewer wires, it would still be a parallel network. If, however, we were to add a parallel-to-serial converter at the transmitter end and a serial-to-parallel converter at the receiver end, we would have something quite different.

It is primarily with the use of serial technology that we are forced to invent clever ways to transmit data bits. Because serial data requires us to send all data bits through the same wiring channel from transmitter to receiver, it necessitates a potentially high frequency signal on the network wiring. Consider the following illustration: a modified BogusBus system is communicating digital data in parallel, binary-encoded form. Instead of 5 discrete bits like the original BogusBus, we’re sending 8 bits from transmitter to receiver. The A/D converter on the transmitter side generates a new output every second. That makes for 8 bits per second of data being sent to the receiver. For the sake of illustration, let’s say that the transmitter is bouncing between an output of 10101010 and 10101011 every update (once per second):



Since only the least significant bit (Bit 1) is changing, the frequency on that wire (to ground) is only 1/2 Hertz. In fact, no matter what numbers are being generated by the A/D converter between updates, the frequency on any wire in this modified BogusBus network cannot exceed 1/2 Hertz, because that's how fast the A/D updates its digital output. 1/2 Hertz is pretty slow, and should present no problems for our network wiring.

On the other hand, if we used an 8-bit serial network, all data bits must appear on the single channel in sequence. And these bits must be output by the transmitter within the 1-second window of time between A/D converter updates. Therefore, the alternating digital output of 10101010 and 10101011 (once per second) would look something like this:



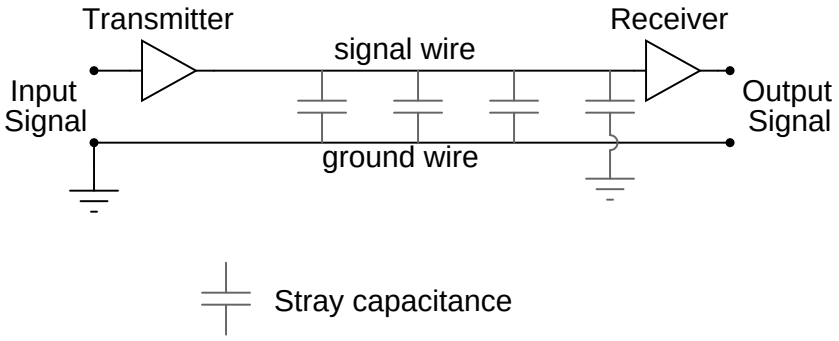
The frequency of our BogusBus signal is now approximately 4 Hertz instead of 1/2 Hertz, an eightfold increase! While 4 Hertz is still fairly slow, and does not constitute an engineering problem, you should be able to appreciate what might happen if we were transmitting 32 or 64 bits of data per update, along with the other bits necessary for parity checking and signal synchronization, at an update rate of thousands of times per second! Serial data network frequencies start to enter the radio range, and simple wires begin to act as antennas, pairs of wires as transmission lines, with all their associated quirks due to inductive and capacitive reactances.

What is worse, the signals that we're trying to communicate along a serial network are of a square-wave shape, being binary bits of information. Square waves are peculiar things, being mathematically equivalent to an infinite series of sine waves of diminishing amplitude and increasing frequency. A simple square wave at 10 kHz is actually "seen" by the capacitance and inductance of the network as a series of multiple sine-wave frequencies which extend into the hundreds of kHz at significant amplitudes. What we receive at the other end of a long 2-conductor network won't look like a clean square wave anymore, even under the best of conditions!

When engineers speak of network *bandwidth*, they're referring to the practical frequency limit of a network medium. In serial communication, bandwidth is a product of data volume (binary bits per transmitted "word") and data speed ("words" per second). The standard measure of network bandwidth is bits per second, or *bps*. An obsolete unit of bandwidth known as the *baud* is sometimes falsely equated with bits per second, but is actually the measure of *signal level changes* per second. Many serial network standards use multiple voltage or current level changes to represent a single bit, and so for these applications bps and baud are not equivalent.

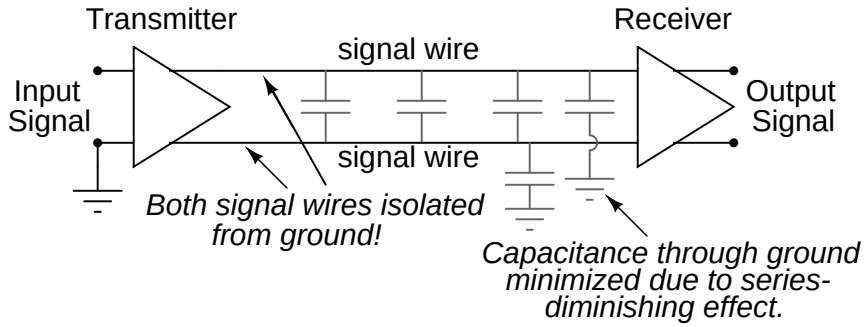
The general BogusBus design, where all bits are voltages referenced to a common "ground" connection, is the worst-case situation for high-frequency square wave data communication. Everything will work well for short distances, where inductive and capacitive effects can be held to a minimum, but for long distances this method will surely be problematic:

Ground-referenced voltage signal



A robust alternative to the common ground signal method is the *differential* voltage method, where each bit is represented by the difference of voltage between a ground-isolated pair of wires, instead of a voltage between one wire and a common ground. This tends to limit the capacitive and inductive effects imposed upon each signal and the tendency for the signals to be corrupted due to outside electrical interference, thereby significantly improving the practical distance of a serial network:

Differential voltage signal

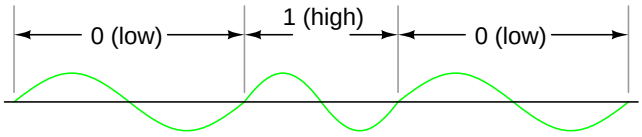


The triangular amplifier symbols represent *differential amplifiers*, which output a voltage signal between two wires, neither one electrically common with ground. Having eliminated any

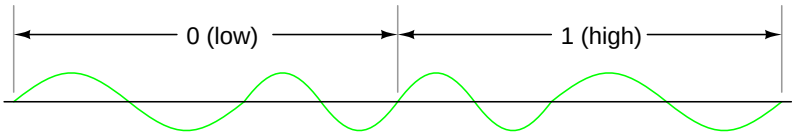
relation between the voltage signal and ground, the only significant capacitance imposed on the signal voltage is that existing between the two signal wires. Capacitance between a signal wire and a grounded conductor is of much less effect, because the capacitive path between the two signal wires via a ground connection is two capacitances in series (from signal wire #1 to ground, then from ground to signal wire #2), and series capacitance values are always less than any of the individual capacitances. Furthermore, any "noise" voltage induced between the signal wires and earth ground by an external source will be ignored, because that noise voltage will likely be induced on *both* signal wires in equal measure, and the receiving amplifier only responds to the *differential* voltage between the two signal wires, rather than the voltage between any one of them and earth ground.

RS-232C is a prime example of a ground-referenced serial network, while RS-422A is a prime example of a differential voltage serial network. RS-232C finds popular application in office environments where there is little electrical interference and wiring distances are short. RS-422A is more widely used in industrial applications where longer wiring distances and greater potential for electrical interference from AC power wiring exists.

However, a large part of the problem with digital network signals is the square-wave nature of such voltages, as was previously mentioned. If only we could avoid square waves all together, we could avoid many of their inherent difficulties in long, high-frequency networks. One way of doing this is to *modulate* a sine wave voltage signal with our digital data. "Modulation" means that magnitude of one signal has control over some aspect of another signal. Radio technology has incorporated modulation for decades now, in allowing an audio-frequency voltage signal to control either the amplitude (AM) or frequency (FM) of a much higher frequency "carrier" voltage, which is then send to the antenna for transmission. The frequency-modulation (FM) technique has found more use in digital networks than amplitude-modulation (AM), except that its referred to as Frequency Shift Keying (FSK). With simple FSK, sine waves of two distinct frequencies are used to represent the two binary states, 1 and 0:



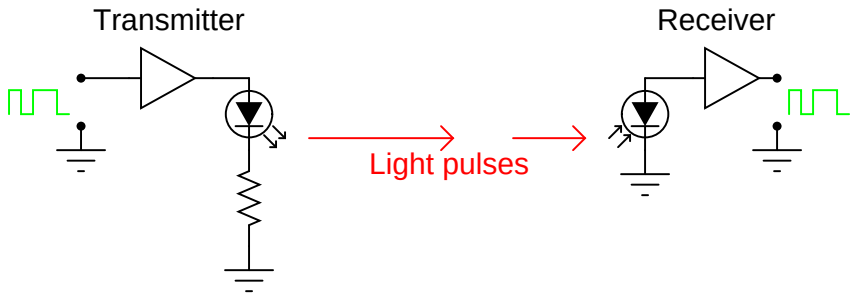
Due to the practical problems of getting the low/high frequency sine waves to begin and end at the zero crossover points for any given combination of 0's and 1's, a variation of FSK called phase-continuous FSK is sometimes used, where the consecutive *combination* of a low/high frequency represents one binary state and the combination of a high/low frequency represents the other. This also makes for a situation where each bit, whether it be 0 or 1, takes exactly the same amount of time to transmit along the network:



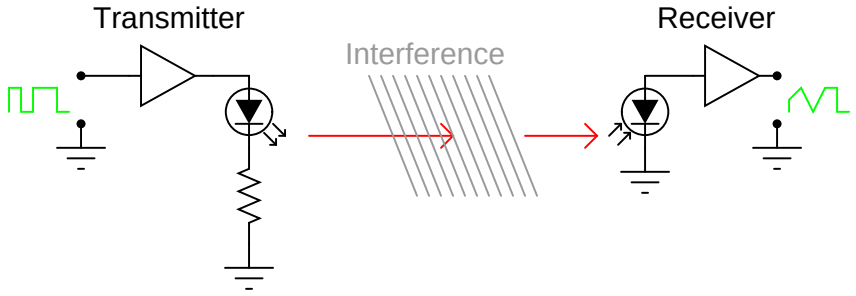
With sine wave signal voltages, many of the problems encountered with square wave digital signals are minimized, although the circuitry required to modulate (and demodulate) the network signals is more complex and expensive.

14.5 Optical data communication

A modern alternative to sending (binary) digital information via electric voltage signals is to use optical (light) signals. Electrical signals from digital circuits (high/low voltages) may be converted into discrete optical signals (light or no light) with LEDs or solid-state lasers. Likewise, light signals can be translated back into electrical form through the use of photodiodes or phototransistors for introduction into the inputs of gate circuits.

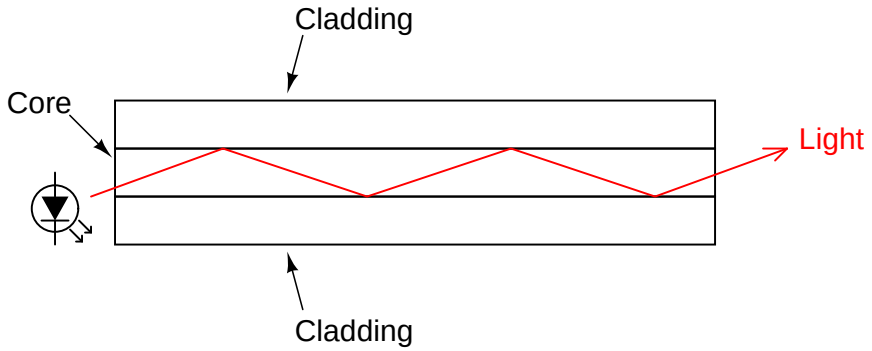


Transmitting digital information in optical form may be done in open air, simply by aiming a laser at a photodetector at a remote distance, but interference with the beam in the form of temperature inversion layers, dust, rain, fog, and other obstructions can present significant engineering problems:



One way to avoid the problems of open-air optical data transmission is to send the light pulses down an ultra-pure glass fiber. Glass fibers will ”conduct” a beam of light much as a copper wire will conduct electrons, with the advantage of completely avoiding all the associated problems of inductance, capacitance, and external interference plaguing electrical signals. Optical fibers keep the light beam contained within the fiber core by a phenomenon known as total internal reflectance.

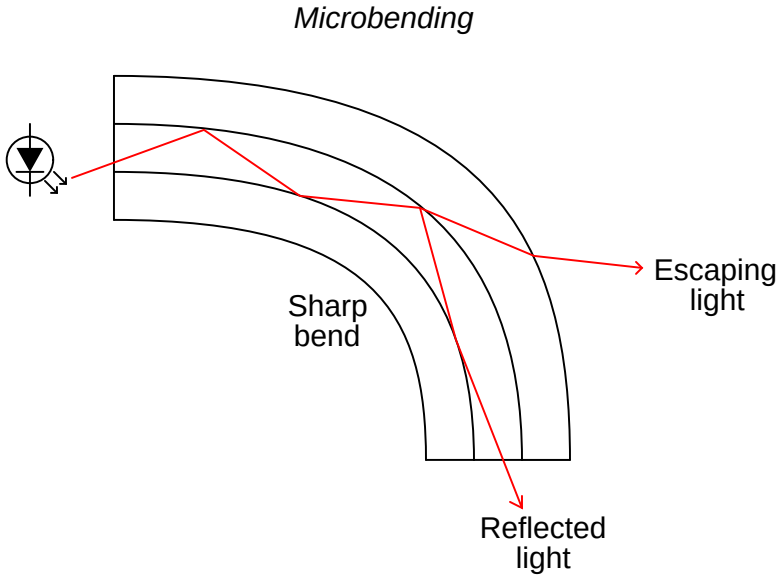
An optical fiber is composed of two layers of ultra-pure glass, each layer made of glass with a slightly different *refractive index*, or capacity to ”bend” light. With one type of glass concentrically layered around a central glass core, light introduced into the central core cannot escape outside the fiber, but is confined to travel within the core:



These layers of glass are very thin, the outer "cladding" typically 125 microns (1 micron = 1 millionth of a meter, or 10^{-6} meter) in diameter. This thinness gives the fiber considerable flexibility. To protect the fiber from physical damage, it is usually given a thin plastic coating, placed inside of a plastic tube, wrapped with kevlar fibers for tensile strength, and given an outer sheath of plastic similar to electrical wire insulation. Like electrical wires, optical fibers are often bundled together within the same sheath to form a single cable.

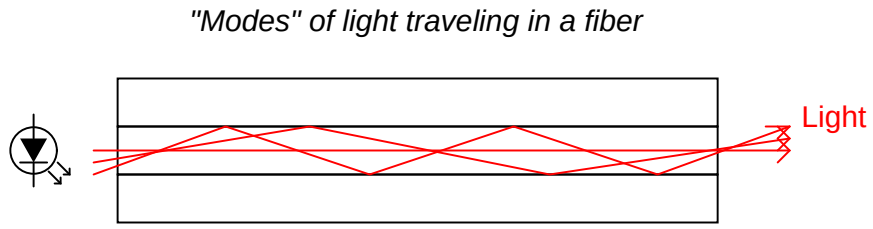
Optical fibers exceed the data-handling performance of copper wire in almost every regard. They are totally immune to electromagnetic interference and have very high bandwidths. However, they are not without certain weaknesses.

One weakness of optical fiber is a phenomenon known as *microbending*. This is where the fiber is bend around too small of a radius, causing light to escape the inner core, through the cladding:

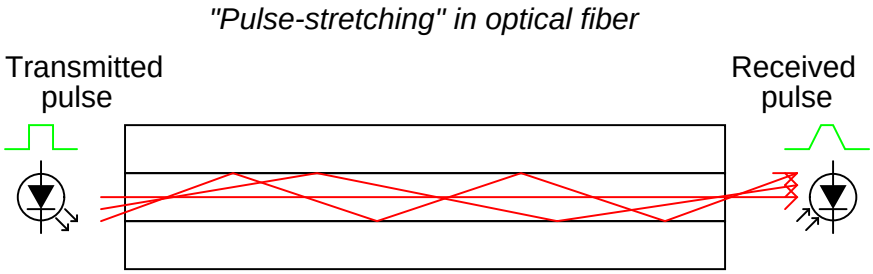


Not only does microbending lead to diminished signal strength due to the lost light, but it also constitutes a security weakness in that a light sensor intentionally placed on the outside of a sharp bend could intercept digital data transmitted over the fiber.

Another problem unique to optical fiber is signal distortion due to multiple light paths, or *modes*, having different distances over the length of the fiber. When light is emitted by a source, the photons (light particles) do not all travel the exact same path. This fact is patently obvious in any source of light not conforming to a straight beam, but is true even in devices such as lasers. If the optical fiber core is large enough in diameter, it will support multiple pathways for photons to travel, each of these pathways having a slightly different length from one end of the fiber to the other. This type of optical fiber is called *multimode* fiber:



A light pulse emitted by the LED taking a shorter path through the fiber will arrive at the detector sooner than light pulses taking longer paths. The result is distortion of the square-wave's rising and falling edges, called *pulse stretching*. This problem becomes worse as the overall fiber length is increased:

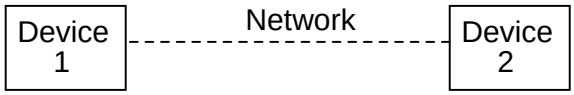


However, if the fiber core is made small enough (around 5 microns in diameter), light modes are restricted to a single pathway with one length. Fiber so designed to permit only a single mode of light is known as *single-mode* fiber. Because single-mode fiber escapes the problem of pulse stretching experienced in long cables, it is the fiber of choice for long-distance (several miles or more) networks. The drawback, of course, is that with only one mode of light, single-mode fibers do not conduct as as much light as multimode fibers. Over long distances, this exacerbates the need for "repeater" units to boost light power.

14.6 Network topology

If we want to connect two digital devices with a network, we would have a kind of network known as "point-to-point:"

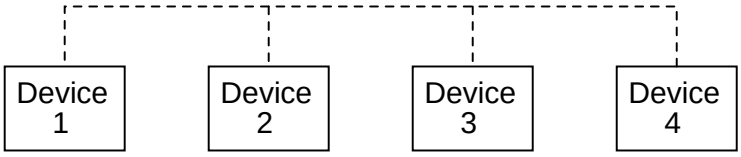
Point-to-Point topology



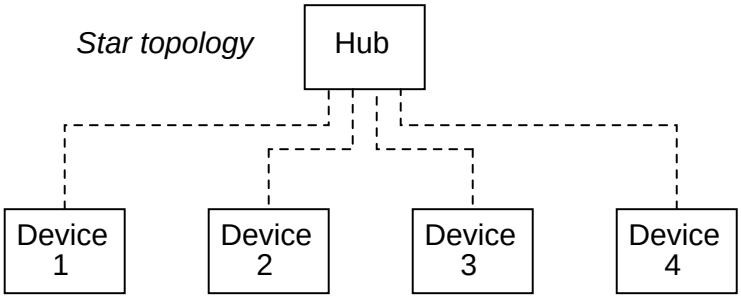
For the sake of simplicity, the network wiring is symbolized as a single line between the two devices. In actuality, it may be a twisted pair of wires, a coaxial cable, an optical fiber, or even a seven-conductor BogusBus. Right now, we're merely focusing on the "shape" of the network, technically known as its *topology*.

If we want to include more devices (sometimes called *nodes*) on this network, we have several options of network configuration to choose from:

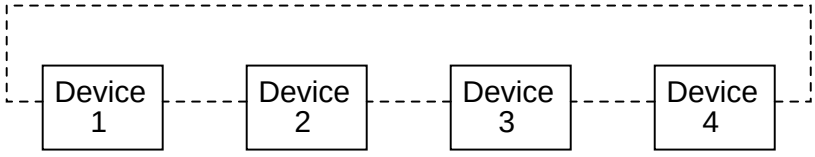
Bus topology



Star topology



Ring topology



Many network standards dictate the type of topology which is used, while others are more versatile. Ethernet, for example, is commonly implemented in a "bus" topology but can also be implemented in a "star" or "ring" topology with the appropriate interconnecting equipment. Other networks, such as RS-232C, are almost exclusively point-to-point; and token ring (as you might have guessed) is implemented solely in a ring topology.

Different topologies have different pros and cons associated with them:

14.6.1 Point-to-point

Quite obviously the only choice for two nodes.

14.6.2 Bus

Very simple to install and maintain. Nodes can be easily added or removed with minimal wiring changes. On the other hand, the one bus network must handle *all* communication signals from *all* nodes. This is known as *broadcast* networking, and is analogous to a group of people talking to each other over a single telephone connection, where only one person can talk at a time (limiting data exchange rates), and everyone can hear everyone else when they talk (which can be a data security issue). Also, a break in the bus wiring can lead to nodes being isolated in groups.

14.6.3 Star

With devices known as ”gateways” at branching points in the network, data flow can be restricted between nodes, allowing for private communication between specific groups of nodes. This addresses some of the speed and security issues of the simple bus topology. However, those branches could easily be cut off from the rest of the ”star” network if one of the gateways were to fail. Can also be implemented with ”switches” to connect individual nodes to a larger network on demand. Such a *switched* network is similar to the standard telephone system.

14.6.4 Ring

This topology provides the best reliability with the least amount of wiring. Since each node has two connection points to the ring, a single break in any part of the ring doesn't affect the integrity of the network. The devices, however, must be designed with this topology in mind. Also, the network must be interrupted to install or remove nodes. As with bus topology, ring networks are *broadcast* by nature.

As you might suspect, two or more ring topologies may be combined to give the ”best of both worlds” in a particular application. Quite often, industrial networks end up in this fashion over time, simply from engineers and technicians joining multiple networks together for the benefit of plant-wide information access.

14.7 Network protocols

Aside from the issues of the physical network (signal types and voltage levels, connector pinouts, cabling, topology, etc.), there needs to be a standardized way in which communication is arbitrated between multiple nodes in a network, even if its as simple as a two-node, point-to-point system. When a node ”talks” on the network, it is generating a signal on the network wiring, be it high and low DC voltage levels, some kind of modulated AC carrier wave signal, or even pulses of light in a fiber. Nodes that ”listen” are simply measuring that applied signal on the network (from the transmitting node) and passively monitoring it. If two or more nodes ”talk” at the same time, however, their output signals may clash (imagine two logic gates

trying to apply opposite signal voltages to a single line on a bus!), corrupting the transmitted data.

The standardized method by which nodes are allowed to transmit to the bus or network wiring is called a *protocol*. There are many different protocols for arbitrating the use of a common network between multiple nodes, and I'll cover just a few here. However, its good to be aware of these few, and to understand why some work better for some purposes than others. Usually, a specific protocol is associated with a standardized type of network. This is merely another "layer" to the set of standards which are specified under the titles of various networks.

The International Standards Organization (ISO) has specified a general architecture of network specifications in their DIS7498 model (applicable to most any digital network). Consisting of seven "layers," this outline attempts to categorize all levels of abstraction necessary to communicate digital data.

- **Level 1: Physical** Specifies electrical and mechanical details of communication: wire type, connector design, signal types and levels.
- **Level 2: Data link** Defines formats of messages, how data is to be addressed, and error detection/correction techniques.
- **Level 3: Network** Establishes procedures for encapsulation of data into "packets" for transmission and reception.
- **Level 4: Transport** Among other things, the transport layer defines how complete data files are to be handled over a network.
- **Level 5: Session** Organizes data transfer in terms of beginning and end of a specific transmission. Analogous to *job control* on a multitasking computer operating system.
- **Level 6: Presentation** Includes definitions for character sets, terminal control, and graphics commands so that abstract data can be readily encoded and decoded between communicating devices.
- **Level 7: Application** The end-user standards for generating and/or interpreting communicated data in its final form. In other words, the actual computer programs using the communicated data.

Some established network protocols only cover one or a few of the DIS7498 levels. For example, the widely used RS-232C serial communications protocol really only addresses the first ("physical") layer of this seven-layer model. Other protocols, such as the X-windows graphical client/server system developed at MIT for distributed graphic-user-interface computer systems, cover all seven layers.

Different protocols may use the same physical layer standard. An example of this is the RS-422A and RS-485 protocols, both of which use the same differential-voltage transmitter and receiver circuitry, using the same voltage levels to denote binary 1's and 0's. On a physical level, these two communication protocols are identical. However, on a more abstract level the protocols are different: RS-422A is point-to-point only, while RS-485 supports a bus topology *"multidrop"* with up to 32 addressable nodes.

Perhaps the simplest type of protocol is the one where there is only one transmitter, and all the other nodes are merely receivers. Such is the case for BogusBus, where a single transmitter

generates the voltage signals impressed on the network wiring, and one or more receiver units (with 5 lamps each) light up in accord with the transmitter's output. This is always the case with a simplex network: there's only one talker, and everyone else listens!

When we have multiple transmitting nodes, we must orchestrate their transmissions in such a way that they don't conflict with one another. Nodes shouldn't be allowed to talk when another node is talking, so we give each node the ability to "listen" and to refrain from talking until the network is silent. This basic approach is called *Carrier Sense Multiple Access* (CSMA), and there exists a few variations on this theme. Please note that CSMA is not a standardized protocol in itself, but rather a methodology that certain protocols follow.

One variation is to simply let any node begin to talk as soon as the network is silent. This is analogous to a group of people meeting at a round table: anyone has the ability to start talking, so long as they don't interrupt anyone else. As soon as the last person stops talking, the next person waiting to talk will begin. So, what happens when two or more people start talking at once? In a network, the simultaneous transmission of two or more nodes is called a *collision*. With CSMA/CD (*CSMA/Collision Detection*), the nodes that collide simply reset themselves with a random delay timer circuit, and the first one to finish its time delay tries to talk again. This is the basic protocol for the popular Ethernet network.

Another variation of CSMA is CSMA/BA (*CSMA/Bitwise Arbitration*), where colliding nodes refer to pre-set priority numbers which dictate which one has permission to speak first. In other words, each node has a "rank" which settles any dispute over who gets to start talking first after a collision occurs, much like a group of people where dignitaries and common citizens are mixed. If a collision occurs, the dignitary is generally allowed to speak first and the common person waits afterward.

In either of the two examples above (CSMA/CD and CSMA/BA), we assumed that any node could initiate a conversation so long as the network was silent. This is referred to as the "unsolicited" mode of communication. There is a variation called "solicited" mode for either CSMA/CD or CSMA/BA where the initial transmission is only allowed to occur when a designated master node requests (solicits) a reply. Collision detection (CD) or bitwise arbitration (BA) applies only to post-collision arbitration as multiple nodes respond to the master device's request.

An entirely different strategy for node communication is the *Master/Slave* protocol, where a single master device allots time slots for all the other nodes on the network to transmit, and schedules these time slots so that multiple nodes *cannot* collide. The master device addresses each node by name, one at a time, letting that node talk for a certain amount of time. When it is finished, the master addresses the next node, and so on, and so on.

Yet another strategy is the *Token-Passing* protocol, where each node gets a turn to talk (one at a time), and then grants permission for the next node to talk when its done. Permission to talk is passed around from node to node as each one hands off the "token" to the next in sequential order. The token itself is not a physical thing: it is a series of binary 1's and 0's broadcast on the network, carrying a specific address of the next node permitted to talk. Although token-passing protocol is often associated with ring-topology networks, it is not restricted to any topology in particular. And when this protocol is implemented in a ring network, the sequence of token passing does not have to follow the physical connection sequence of the ring.

Just as with topologies, multiple protocols may be joined together over different segments of a heterogeneous network, for maximum benefit. For instance, a dedicated Master/Slave network connecting instruments together on the manufacturing plant floor may be linked through

a gateway device to an Ethernet network which links multiple desktop computer workstations together, one of those computer workstations acting as a gateway to link the data to an FDDI fiber network back to the plant's mainframe computer. Each network type, topology, and protocol serves different needs and applications best, but through gateway devices, they can all share the same data.

It is also possible to blend multiple protocol strategies into a new hybrid within a single network type. Such is the case for Foundation Fieldbus, which combines Master/Slave with a form of token-passing. A Link Active Scheduler (LAS) device sends scheduled "Compel Data" (CD) commands to query slave devices on the Fieldbus for time-critical information. In this regard, Fieldbus is a Master/Slave protocol. However, when there's time between CD queries, the LAS sends out "tokens" to each of the other devices on the Fieldbus, one at a time, giving them opportunity to transmit any unscheduled data. When those devices are done transmitting their information, they return the token back to the LAS. The LAS also probes for new devices on the Fieldbus with a "Probe Node" (PN) message, which is expected to produce a "Probe Response" (PR) back to the LAS. The responses of devices back to the LAS, whether by PR message or returned token, dictate their standing on a "Live List" database which the LAS maintains. Proper operation of the LAS device is absolutely critical to the functioning of the Fieldbus, so there are provisions for redundant LAS operation by assigning "Link Master" status to some of the nodes, empowering them to become alternate Link Active Schedulers if the operating LAS fails.

Other data communications protocols exist, but these are the most popular. I had the opportunity to work on an old (circa 1975) industrial control system made by Honeywell where a master device called the *Highway Traffic Director*, or HTD, arbitrated all network communications. What made this network interesting is that the signal sent from the HTD to all slave devices for permitting transmission was *not* communicated on the network wiring itself, but rather on sets of individual twisted-pair cables connecting the HTD with each slave device. Devices on the network were then divided into two categories: those nodes connected to the HTD which were allowed to initiate transmission, and those nodes not connected to the HTD which could only transmit in response to a query sent by one of the former nodes. *Primitive* and *slow* are the only fitting adjectives for this communication network scheme, but it functioned adequately for its time.

14.8 Practical considerations

A principal consideration for industrial control networks, where the monitoring and control of real-life processes must often occur quickly and at set times, is the guaranteed maximum communication time from one node to another. If you're controlling the position of a nuclear reactor coolant valve with a digital network, you need to be able to guarantee that the valve's network node will receive the proper positioning signals from the control computer at the right times. If not, very bad things could happen!

The ability for a network to guarantee data "throughput" is called *determinism*. A deterministic network has a guaranteed maximum time delay for data transfer from node to node, whereas a non-deterministic network does not. The preeminent example of a non-deterministic network is Ethernet, where the nodes rely on random time-delay circuits to reset and reattempt transmission after a collision. Being that a node's transmission of data could be

delayed indefinitely from a long series of re-sets and re-tries after repeated collisions, there is no guarantee that its data will *ever* get sent out to the network. Realistically though, the odds are so astronomically great that such a thing would happen that it is of little practical concern in a lightly-loaded network.

Another important consideration, especially for industrial control networks, is network fault tolerance: that is, how susceptible is a particular network's signaling, topology, and/or protocol to failures? We've already briefly discussed some of the issues surrounding topology, but protocol impacts reliability just as much. For example, a Master/Slave network, while being extremely deterministic (a good thing for critical controls), is entirely dependent upon the master node to keep everything going (generally a bad thing for critical controls). If the master node fails for any reason, none of the other nodes will be able to transmit any data at all, because they'll never receive their alloted time slot permissions to do so, and the whole system will fail.

A similar issue surrounds token-passing systems: what happens if the node holding the token were to fail before passing the token on to the next node? Some token-passing systems address this possibility by having a few designated nodes generate a new token if the network is silent for too long. This works fine if a node holding the token dies, but it causes problems if part of a network falls silent because a cable connection comes undone: the portion of the network that falls silent generates its own token after awhile, and you essentially are left with two smaller networks with one token that's getting passed around each of them to sustain communication. Trouble occurs, however, if that cable connection gets plugged back in: those two segmented networks are joined in to one again, and now there's two tokens being passed around one network, resulting in nodes' transmissions colliding!

There is no "perfect network" for all applications. The task of the engineer and technician is to know the application and know the operations of the network(s) available. Only then can efficient system design and maintenance become a reality.

Chapter 15

DIGITAL STORAGE (MEMORY)

Contents

15.1 Why digital?

Although many textbooks provide good introductions to digital memory technology, I intend to make this chapter unique in presenting both past and present technologies to some degree of detail. While many of these memory designs are obsolete, their foundational principles are still quite interesting and educational, and may even find re-application in the memory technologies of the future.

The basic goal of digital memory is to provide a means to store and access binary data: sequences of 1's and 0's. The digital storage of information holds advantages over analog techniques much the same as digital communication of information holds advantages over analog communication. This is not to say that digital data storage is unequivocally superior to analog, but it does address some of the more common problems associated with analog techniques and thus finds immense popularity in both consumer and industrial applications. Digital data storage also complements digital computation technology well, and thus finds natural application in the world of computers.

The most evident advantage of digital data storage is the resistance to corruption. Suppose that we were going to store a piece of data regarding the magnitude of a voltage signal by means of magnetizing a small chunk of magnetic material. Since many magnetic materials

retain their strength of magnetization very well over time, this would be a logical media candidate for long-term storage of this particular data (in fact, this is precisely how audio and video tape technology works: thin plastic tape is impregnated with particles of iron-oxide material, which can be magnetized or demagnetized via the application of a magnetic field from an electromagnet coil. The data is then retrieved from the tape by moving the magnetized tape past another coil of wire, the magnetized spots on the tape inducing voltage in that coil, reproducing the voltage waveform initially used to magnetize the tape).

If we represent an analog signal by the strength of magnetization on spots of the tape, the storage of data on the tape will be susceptible to the smallest degree of degradation of that magnetization. As the tape ages and the magnetization fades, the analog signal magnitude represented on the tape will appear to be less than what it was when we first recorded the data. Also, if any spurious magnetic fields happen to alter the magnetization on the tape, even if its only by a small amount, that altering of field strength will be interpreted upon replay as an altering (or corruption) of the signal that was recorded. Since analog signals have infinite resolution, the smallest degree of change will have an impact on the integrity of the data storage.

If we were to use that same tape and store the data in binary digital form, however, the strength of magnetization on the tape would fall into two discrete levels: "high" and "low," with no valid in-between states. As the tape aged or was exposed to spurious magnetic fields, those same locations on the tape would experience slight alteration of magnetic field strength, but unless the alterations were *extreme*, no data corruption would occur upon re-play of the tape. By reducing the resolution of the signal impressed upon the magnetic tape, we've gained significant immunity to the kind of degradation and "noise" typically plaguing stored analog data. On the other hand, our data resolution would be limited to the scanning rate and the number of bits output by the A/D converter which interpreted the original analog signal, so the reproduction wouldn't necessarily be "better" than with analog, merely more rugged. With the advanced technology of modern A/D's, though, the tradeoff is acceptable for most applications.

Also, by encoding different types of data into specific binary number schemes, digital storage allows us to archive a wide variety of information that is often difficult to encode in analog form. Text, for example, is represented quite easily with the binary ASCII code, seven bits for each character, including punctuation marks, spaces, and carriage returns. A wider range of text is encoded using the Unicode standard, in like manner. Any kind of numerical data can be represented using binary notation on digital media, and any kind of information that can be encoded in numerical form (which almost any kind can!) is storable, too. Techniques such as parity and checksum error detection can be employed to further guard against data corruption, in ways that analog does not lend itself to.

15.2 Digital memory terms and concepts

When we store information in some kind of circuit or device, we not only need some way to store and retrieve it, but also to locate precisely *where* in the device that it is. Most, if not all, memory devices can be thought of as a series of mail boxes, folders in a file cabinet, or some other metaphor where information can be located in a variety of places. When we refer to the actual information being stored in the memory device, we usually refer to it as the *data*. The location of this data within the storage device is typically called the *address*, in a manner

reminiscent of the postal service.

With some types of memory devices, the address in which certain data is stored can be called up by means of parallel data lines in a digital circuit (we'll discuss this in more detail later in this lesson). With other types of devices, data is addressed in terms of an actual physical location on the surface of some type of media (the *tracks* and *sectors* of circular computer disks, for instance). However, some memory devices such as magnetic tapes have a one-dimensional type of data addressing: if you want to play your favorite song in the middle of a cassette tape album, you have to fast-forward to that spot in the tape, arriving at the proper spot by means of trial-and-error, judging the approximate area by means of a counter that keeps track of tape position, and/or by the amount of time it takes to get there from the beginning of the tape. The access of data from a storage device falls roughly into two categories: *random access* and *sequential access*. Random access means that you can quickly and precisely address a specific data location within the device, and non-random simply means that you cannot. A vinyl record platter is an example of a random-access device: to skip to any song, you just position the stylus arm at whatever location on the record that you want (compact audio disks so the same thing, only they do it automatically for you). Cassette tape, on the other hand, is sequential. You have to wait to go past the other songs in sequence before you can access or address the song that you want to skip to.

The process of storing a piece of data to a memory device is called *writing*, and the process of retrieving data is called *reading*. Memory devices allowing both reading and writing are equipped with a way to distinguish between the two tasks, so that no mistake is made by the user (writing new information to a device when all you wanted to do is see what was stored there). Some devices do not allow for the writing of new data, and are purchased "pre-written" from the manufacturer. Such is the case for vinyl records and compact audio disks, and this is typically referred to in the digital world as *read-only memory*, or ROM. Cassette audio and video tape, on the other hand, can be re-recorded (re-written) or purchased blank and recorded fresh by the user. This is often called *read-write memory*.

Another distinction to be made for any particular memory technology is its volatility, or data storage permanence without power. Many electronic memory devices store binary data by means of circuits that are either latched in a "high" or "low" state, and this latching effect holds only as long as electric power is maintained to those circuits. Such memory would be properly referred to as *volatile*. Storage media such as magnetized disk or tape is *nonvolatile*, because no source of power is needed to maintain data storage. This is often confusing for new students of computer technology, because the volatile electronic memory typically used for the construction of computer devices is commonly and distinctly referred to as *RAM* (**R**andom **A**ccess **M**emory). While RAM memory is typically randomly-accessed, so is virtually every other kind of memory device in the computer! What "RAM" *really* refers to is the *volatility* of the memory, and not its mode of access. Nonvolatile memory integrated circuits in personal computers are commonly (and properly) referred to as *ROM* (**R**ead-**O**nly **M**emory), but their data contents are accessed randomly, just like the volatile memory circuits!

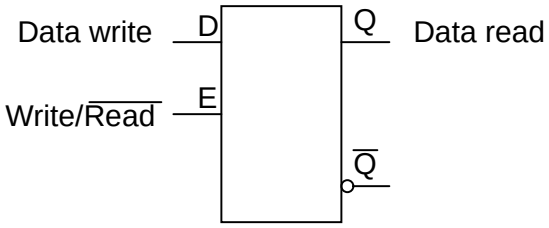
Finally, there needs to be a way to denote how much data can be stored by any particular memory device. This, fortunately for us, is very simple and straightforward: just count up the number of bits (or bytes, 1 byte = 8 bits) of total data storage space. Due to the high capacity of modern data storage devices, metric prefixes are generally affixed to the unit of bytes in order to represent storage space: 1.6 Gigabytes is equal to 1.6 billion bytes, or 12.8 billion bits, of data storage capacity. The only caveat here is to be aware of rounded numbers. Because the

storage mechanisms of many random-access memory devices are typically arranged so that the number of "cells" in which bits of data can be stored appears in binary progression (powers of 2), a "one kilobyte" memory device most likely contains 1024 (2 to the power of 10) locations for data bytes rather than exactly 1000. A "64 kbyte" memory device actually holds 65,536 bytes of data (2 to the 16th power), and should probably be called a "66 Kbyte" device to be more precise. When we round numbers in our base-10 system, we fall out of step with the round equivalents in the base-2 system.

15.3 Modern nonmechanical memory

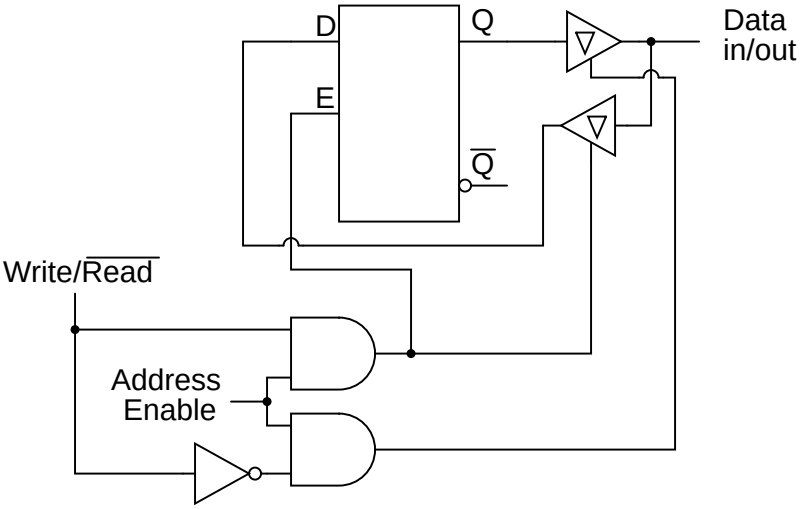
Now we can proceed to studying specific types of digital storage devices. To start, I want to explore some of the technologies which do not require any moving parts. These are not necessarily the newest technologies, as one might suspect, although they will most likely replace moving-part technologies in the future.

A very simple type of electronic memory is the bistable multivibrator. Capable of storing a single bit of data, it is volatile (requiring power to maintain its memory) and very fast. The D-latch is probably the simplest implementation of a bistable multivibrator for memory usage, the D input serving as the data "write" input, the Q output serving as the "read" output, and the enable input serving as the read/write control line:



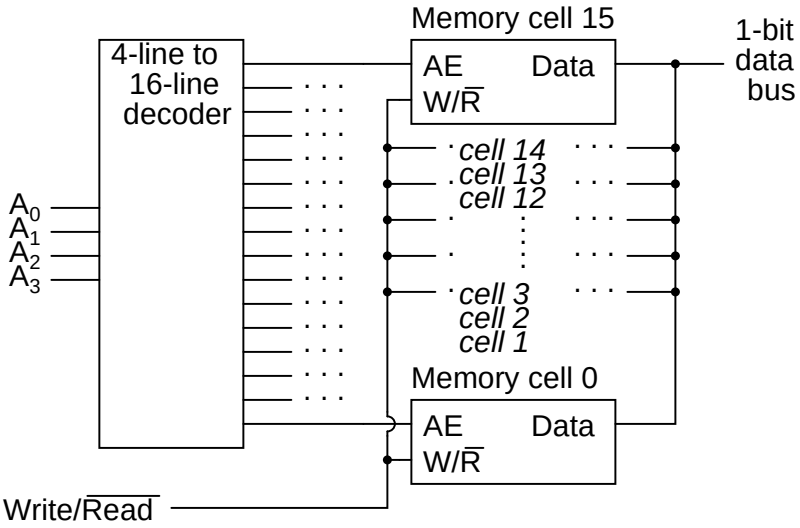
If we desire more than one bit's worth of storage (and we probably do), we'll have to have many latches arranged in some kind of an array where we can selectively address which one (or which set) we're reading from or writing to. Using a pair of tristate buffers, we can connect both the data write input and the data read output to a common data bus line, and enable those buffers to either connect the Q output to the data line (READ), connect the D input to the data line (WRITE), or keep both buffers in the High-Z state to disconnect D and Q from the data line (unaddressed mode). One memory "cell" would look like this, internally:

Memory cell circuit



When the address enable input is 0, both tristate buffers will be placed in high-Z mode, and the latch will be disconnected from the data input/output (bus) line. Only when the address enable input is active (1) will the latch be connected to the data bus. Every latch circuit, of course, will be enabled with a different "address enable" (AE) input line, which will come from a 1-of-n output decoder:

16 x 1 bit memory



In the above circuit, 16 memory cells are individually addressed with a 4-bit binary code input into the decoder. If a cell is not addressed, it will be disconnected from the 1-bit data bus

by its internal tristate buffers: consequently, data cannot be either written or read through the bus to or from that cell. Only the cell circuit that is addressed by the 4-bit decoder input will be accessible through the data bus.

This simple memory circuit is random-access and volatile. Technically, it is known as a *static RAM*. Its total memory capacity is 16 bits. Since it contains 16 addresses and has a data bus that is 1 bit wide, it would be designated as a 16 x 1 bit static RAM circuit. As you can see, it takes an incredible number of gates (and multiple transistors per gate!) to construct a practical static RAM circuit. This makes the static RAM a relatively low-density device, with less capacity than most other types of RAM technology per unit IC chip space. Because each cell circuit consumes a certain amount of power, the overall power consumption for a large array of cells can be quite high. Early static RAM banks in personal computers consumed a fair amount of power and generated a lot of heat, too. CMOS IC technology has made it possible to lower the specific power consumption of static RAM circuits, but low storage density is still an issue.

To address this, engineers turned to the capacitor instead of the bistable multivibrator as a means of storing binary data. A tiny capacitor could serve as a memory cell, complete with a single MOSFET transistor for connecting it to the data bus for charging (writing a 1), discharging (writing a 0), or reading. Unfortunately, such tiny capacitors have very small capacitances, and their charge tends to ”leak” away through any circuit impedances quite rapidly. To combat this tendency, engineers designed circuits internal to the RAM memory chip which would periodically read all cells and recharge (or ”refresh”) the capacitors as needed. Although this added to the complexity of the circuit, it still required far less componentry than a RAM built of multivibrators. They called this type of memory circuit a *dynamic RAM*, because of its need of periodic refreshing.

Recent advances in IC chip manufacturing has led to the introduction of *flash* memory, which works on a capacitive storage principle like the dynamic RAM, but uses the insulated gate of a MOSFET as the capacitor itself.

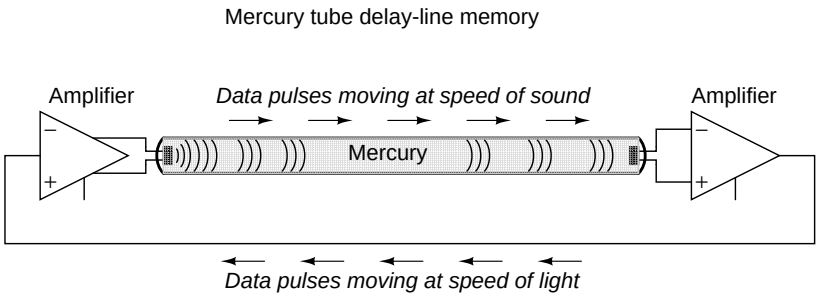
Before the advent of transistors (especially the MOSFET), engineers had to implement digital circuitry with gates constructed from vacuum tubes. As you can imagine, the enormous comparative size and power consumption of a vacuum tube as compared to a transistor made memory circuits like static and dynamic RAM a practical impossibility. Other, rather ingenious, techniques to store digital data without the use of moving parts were developed.

15.4 Historical, nonmechanical memory technologies

Perhaps the most ingenious technique was that of the *delay line*. A delay line is any kind of device which delays the propagation of a pulse or wave signal. If you’ve ever heard a sound echo back and forth through a canyon or cave, you’ve experienced an audio delay line: the noise wave travels at the speed of sound, bouncing off of walls and reversing direction of travel. The delay line ”stores” data on a very temporary basis if the signal is not strengthened periodically, but the very fact that it stores data at all is a phenomenon exploitable for memory technology.

Early computer delay lines used long tubes filled with liquid mercury, which was used as the physical medium through which sound waves traveled along the length of the tube. An electrical/sound transducer was mounted at each end, one to create sound waves from electrical impulses, and the other to generate electrical impulses from sound waves. A stream of serial

binary data was sent to the transmitting transducer as a voltage signal. The sequence of sound waves would travel from left to right through the mercury in the tube and be received by the transducer at the other end. The receiving transducer would receive the pulses in the same order as they were transmitted:



A feedback circuit connected to the receiving transducer would drive the transmitting transducer again, sending the same sequence of pulses through the tube as sound waves, storing the data as long as the feedback circuit continued to function. The delay line functioned like a first-in-first-out (FIFO) shift register, and external feedback turned that shift register behavior into a ring counter, cycling the bits around indefinitely.

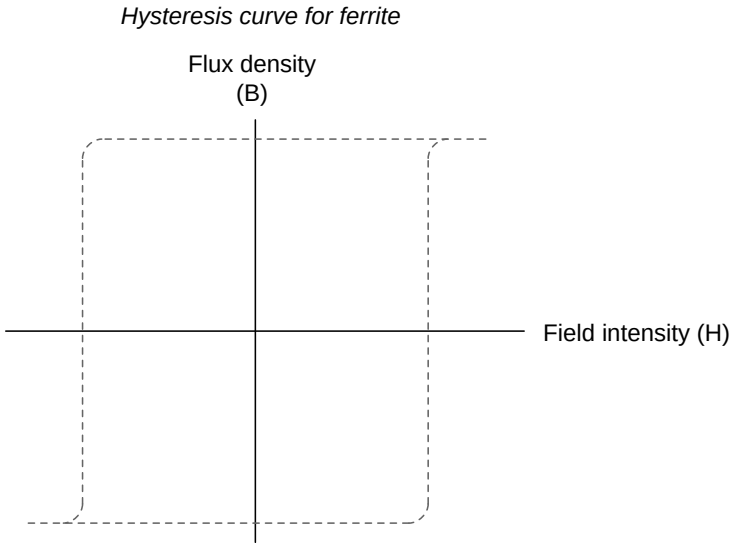
The delay line concept suffered numerous limitations from the materials and technology that were then available. The EDVAC computer of the early 1950's used 128 mercury-filled tubes, each one about 5 feet long and storing a maximum of 384 bits. Temperature changes would affect the speed of sound in the mercury, thus skewing the time delay in each tube and causing timing problems. Later designs replaced the liquid mercury medium with solid rods of glass, quartz, or special metal that delayed torsional (twisting) waves rather than longitudinal (lengthwise) waves, and operated at much higher frequencies.

One such delay line used a special nickel-iron-titanium wire (chosen for its good temperature stability) about 95 feet in length, coiled to reduce the overall package size. The total delay time from one end of the wire to the other was about 9.8 milliseconds, and the highest practical clock frequency was 1 MHz. This meant that approximately 9800 bits of data could be stored in the delay line wire at any given time. Given different means of delaying signals which wouldn't be so susceptible to environmental variables (such as serial pulses of light within a long optical fiber), this approach might someday find re-application.

Another approach experimented with by early computer engineers was the use of a cathode ray tube (CRT), the type commonly used for oscilloscope, radar, and television viewscreens, to store binary data. Normally, the focused and directed electron beam in a CRT would be used to make bits of phosphor chemical on the inside of the tube glow, thus producing a viewable image on the screen. In this application, however, the desired result was the creation of an electric charge on the glass of the screen by the impact of the electron beam, which would then be detected by a metal grid placed directly in front of the CRT. Like the delay line, the so-called *Williams Tube* memory needed to be periodically refreshed with external circuitry to retain its data. Unlike the delay line mechanisms, it was virtually immune to the environmental factors of temperature and vibration. The IBM model 701 computer sported a Williams Tube memory with 4 Kilobyte capacity and a bad habit of "overcharging" bits on the tube screen with successive re-writes so that false "1" states might overflow to adjacent spots on the screen.

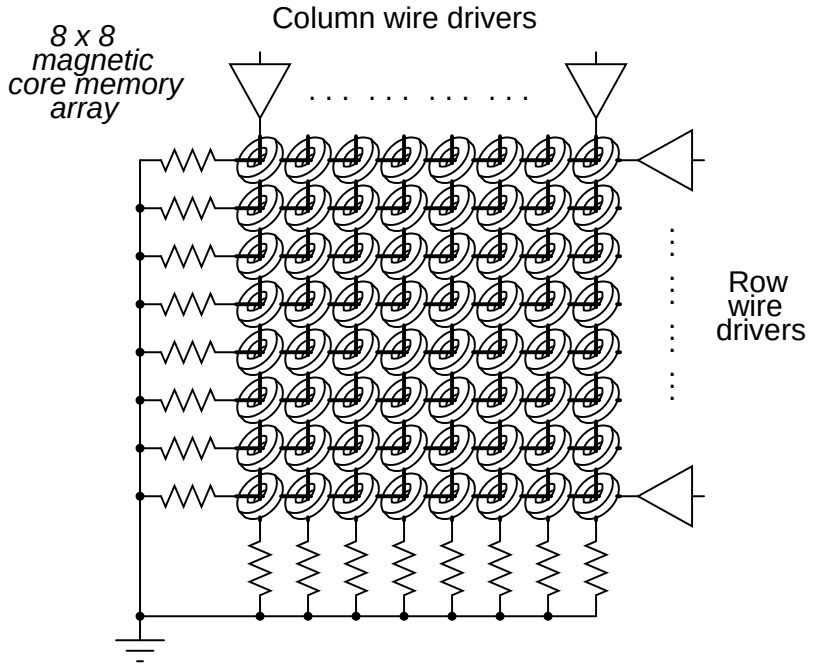
The next major advance in computer memory came when engineers turned to magnetic

materials as a means of storing binary data. It was discovered that certain compounds of iron, namely "ferrite," possessed hysteresis curves that were almost square:



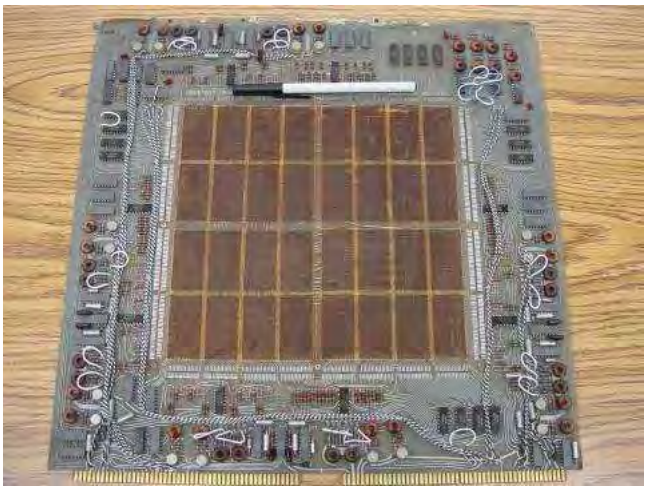
Shown on a graph with the strength of the applied magnetic field on the horizontal axis (*field intensity*), and the actual magnetization (orientation of electron spins in the ferrite material) on the vertical axis (*flux density*), ferrite won't become magnetized one direction until the applied field exceeds a critical threshold value. Once that critical value is exceeded, the electrons in the ferrite "snap" into magnetic alignment and the ferrite becomes magnetized. If the applied field is then turned off, the ferrite maintains full magnetism. To magnetize the ferrite in the other direction (polarity), the applied magnetic field must exceed the critical value in the opposite direction. Once that critical value is exceeded, the electrons in the ferrite "snap" into magnetic alignment in the opposite direction. Once again, if the applied field is then turned off, the ferrite maintains full magnetism. To put it simply, the magnetization of a piece of ferrite is "bistable."

Exploiting this strange property of ferrite, we can use this natural magnetic "latch" to store a binary bit of data. To set or reset this "latch," we can use electric current through a wire or coil to generate the necessary magnetic field, which will then be applied to the ferrite. Jay Forrester of MIT applied this principle in inventing the magnetic "core" memory, which became the dominant computer memory technology during the 1970's.

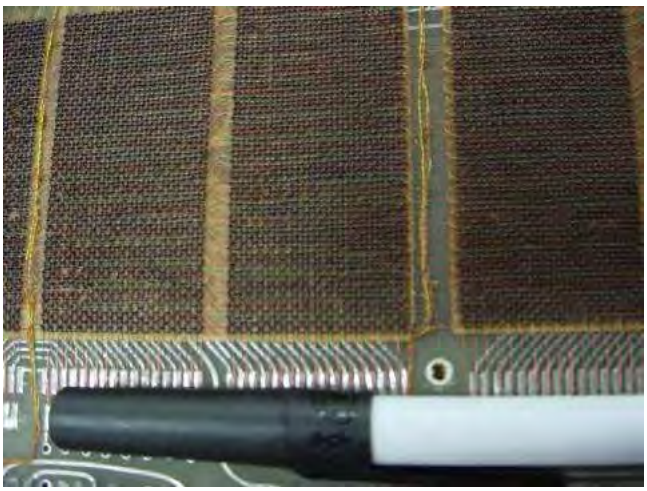


A grid of wires, electrically insulated from one another, crossed through the center of many ferrite rings, each of which being called a ”core.” As DC current moved through any wire from the power supply to ground, a circular magnetic field was generated around that energized wire. The resistor values were set so that the amount of current at the regulated power supply voltage would produce slightly more than 1/2 the critical magnetic field strength needed to magnetize any one of the ferrite rings. Therefore, if column #4 wire was energized, all the cores on that column would be subjected to the magnetic field from that one wire, but it would not be strong enough to change the magnetization of any of those cores. However, if column #4 wire and row #5 wire were both energized, the core at that intersection of column #4 and row #5 would be subjected to a sum of those two magnetic fields: a magnitude strong enough to ”set” or ”reset” the magnetization of that core. In other words, each core was addressed by the intersection of row and column. The distinction between ”set” and ”reset” was the direction of the core’s magnetic polarity, and that bit value of data would be determined by the polarity of the voltages (with respect to ground) that the row and column wires would be energized with.

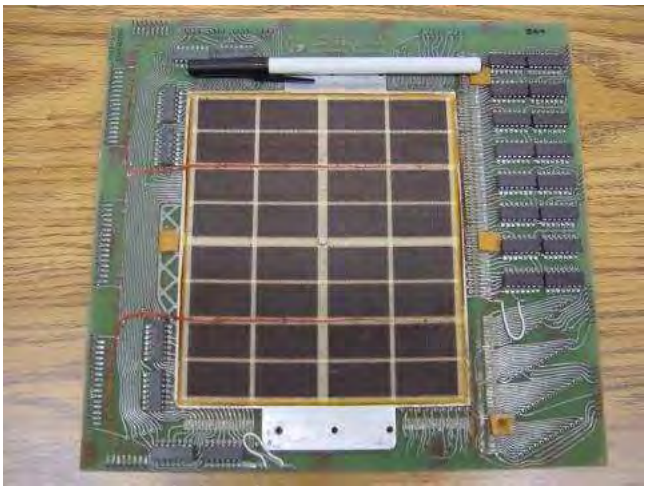
The following photograph shows a core memory board from a Data General brand, ”Nova” model computer, circa late 1960’s or early 1970’s. It had a total storage capacity of 4 kbytes (that’s *kilo*bytes, not *mega*bytes!). A ball-point pen is shown for size comparison:



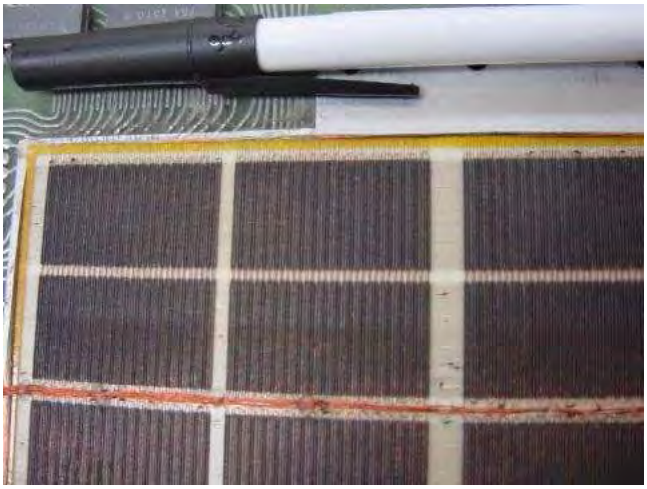
The electronic components seen around the periphery of this board are used for ”driving” the column and row wires with current, and also to read the status of a core. A close-up photograph reveals the ring-shaped cores, through which the matrix wires thread. Again, a ball-point pen is shown for size comparison:



A core memory board of later design (circa 1971) is shown in the next photograph. Its cores are much smaller and more densely packed, giving more memory storage capacity than the former board (8 kbytes instead of 4 kbytes):



And, another close-up of the cores:



Writing data to core memory was easy enough, but reading that data was a bit of a trick. To facilitate this essential function, a ”read” wire was threaded through *all* the cores in a memory matrix, one end of it being grounded and the other end connected to an amplifier circuit. A pulse of voltage would be generated on this ”read” wire if the addressed core *changed* states (from 0 to 1, or 1 to 0). In other words, to read a core's value, you had to *write* either a 1 or a 0 to that core and monitor the voltage induced on the read wire to see if the core changed. Obviously, if the core's state was changed, you would have to re-set it back to its original state, or else the data would have been lost. This process is known as a *destructive read*, because data may be changed (destroyed) as it is read. Thus, refreshing is necessary with core memory, although not in every case (that is, in the case of the core's state *not* changing when either a 1 or a 0 was written to it).

One major advantage of core memory over delay lines and Williams Tubes was nonvolatility. The ferrite cores maintained their magnetization indefinitely, with no power or refreshing required. It was also relatively easy to build, denser, and physically more rugged than any of

its predecessors. Core memory was used from the 1960's until the late 1970's in many computer systems, including the computers used for the Apollo space program, CNC machine tool control computers, business ("mainframe") computers, and industrial control systems. Despite the fact that core memory is long obsolete, the term "core" is still used sometimes with reference to a computer's RAM memory.

All the while that delay lines, Williams Tube, and core memory technologies were being invented, the simple static RAM was being improved with smaller active component (vacuum tube or transistor) technology. Static RAM was never totally eclipsed by its competitors: even the old ENIAC computer of the 1950's used vacuum tube ring-counter circuitry for data registers and computation. Eventually though, smaller and smaller scale IC chip manufacturing technology gave transistors the practical edge over other technologies, and core memory became a museum piece in the 1980's.

One last attempt at a magnetic memory better than core was the *bubble memory*. Bubble memory took advantage of a peculiar phenomenon in a mineral called *garnet*, which, when arranged in a thin film and exposed to a constant magnetic field perpendicular to the film, supported tiny regions of oppositely-magnetized "bubbles" that could be nudged along the film by prodding with other external magnetic fields. "Tracks" could be laid on the garnet to focus the movement of the bubbles by depositing magnetic material on the surface of the film. A continuous track was formed on the garnet which gave the bubbles a long loop in which to travel, and motive force was applied to the bubbles with a pair of wire coils wrapped around the garnet and energized with a 2-phase voltage. Bubbles could be created or destroyed with a tiny coil of wire strategically placed in the bubbles' path.

The presence of a bubble represented a binary "1" and the absence of a bubble represented a binary "0." Data could be read and written in this chain of moving magnetic bubbles as they passed by the tiny coil of wire, much the same as the read/write "head" in a cassette tape player, reading the magnetization of the tape as it moves. Like core memory, bubble memory was nonvolatile: a permanent magnet supplied the necessary background field needed to support the bubbles when the power was turned off. Unlike core memory, however, bubble memory had phenomenal storage density: millions of bits could be stored on a chip of garnet only a couple of square inches in size. What killed bubble memory as a viable alternative to static and dynamic RAM was its slow, sequential data access. Being nothing more than an incredibly long serial shift register (ring counter), access to any particular portion of data in the serial string could be quite slow compared to other memory technologies.

An electrostatic equivalent of the bubble memory is the *Charge-Coupled Device* (CCD) memory, an adaptation of the CCD devices used in digital photography. Like bubble memory, the bits are serially shifted along channels on the substrate material by clock pulses. Unlike bubble memory, the electrostatic charges decay and must be refreshed. CCD memory is therefore volatile, with high storage density and sequential access. Interesting, isn't it? The old Williams Tube memory was adapted from CRT *viewing* technology, and CCD memory from video *recording* technology.

15.5 Read-only memory

Read-only memory (ROM) is similar in design to static or dynamic RAM circuits, except that the "latching" mechanism is made for one-time (or limited) operation. The simplest type of

ROM is that which uses tiny ”fuses” which can be selectively blown or left alone to represent the two binary states. Obviously, once one of the little fuses is blown, it cannot be made whole again, so the writing of such ROM circuits is one-time only. Because it can be written (programmed) once, these circuits are sometimes referred to as PROMs (Programmable Read-Only Memory).

However, not all writing methods are as permanent as blown fuses. If a transistor latch can be made which is resettable only with significant effort, a memory device that's something of a cross between a RAM and a ROM can be built. Such a device is given a rather oxymoronic name: the EPROM (Erasable Programmable Read-Only Memory). EPROMs come in two basic varieties: Electrically-erasable (EEPROM) and Ultraviolet-erasable (UV/EPROM). Both types of EPROMs use capacitive charge MOSFET devices to latch on or off. UV/EPROMs are ”cleared” by long-term exposure to ultraviolet light. They are easy to identify: they have a transparent glass window which exposes the silicon chip material to light. Once programmed, you must cover that glass window with tape to prevent ambient light from degrading the data over time. EPROMs are often programmed using higher signal voltages than what is used during ”read-only” mode.

15.6 Memory with moving parts: ”Drives”

The earliest forms of digital data storage involving moving parts was that of the punched paper card. Joseph Marie Jacquard invented a weaving loom in 1780 which automatically followed weaving instructions set by carefully placed holes in paper cards. This same technology was adapted to electronic computers in the 1950's, with the cards being read mechanically (metal-to-metal contact through the holes), pneumatically (air blown through the holes, the presence of a hole sensed by air nozzle backpressure), or optically (light shining through the holes).

An improvement over paper cards is the paper tape, still used in some industrial environments (notably the CNC machine tool industry), where data storage and speed demands are low and ruggedness is highly valued. Instead of wood-fiber paper, mylar material is often used, with optical reading of the tape being the most popular method.

Magnetic tape (very similar to audio or video cassette tape) was the next logical improvement in storage media. It is still widely used today, as a means to store ”backup” data for archiving and emergency restoration for other, faster methods of data storage. Like paper tape, magnetic tape is sequential access, rather than random access. In early home computer systems, regular audio cassette tape was used to store data in modulated form, the binary 1's and 0's represented by different frequencies (similar to FSK data communication). Access speed was terribly slow (if you were reading ASCII text from the tape, you could almost keep up with the pace of the letters appearing on the computer's screen!), but it was cheap and fairly reliable.

Tape suffered the disadvantage of being sequential access. To address this weak point, magnetic storage ”drives” with disk- or drum-shaped media were built. An electric motor provided constant-speed motion. A movable read/write coil (also known as a ”head”) was provided which could be positioned via servo-motors to various locations on the height of the drum or the radius of the disk, giving access that is almost random (you might still have to wait for the drum or disk to rotate to the proper position once the read/write coil has reached the right location).

The disk shape lent itself best to portable media, and thus the *floppy disk* was born. Floppy disks (so-called because the magnetic media is thin and flexible) were originally made in 8-inch diameter formats. Later, the 5-1/4 inch variety was introduced, which was made practical by advances in media particle density. All things being equal, a larger disk has more space upon which to write data. However, storage density can be improved by making the little grains of iron-oxide material on the disk substrate smaller. Today, the 3-1/2 inch floppy disk is the preeminent format, with a capacity of 1.44 Mbytes (2.88 Mbytes on SCSI drives). Other portable drive formats are becoming popular, with IoMega's 100 Mbyte "ZIP" and 1 Gbyte "JAZ" disks appearing as original equipment on some personal computers.

Still, floppy drives have the disadvantage of being exposed to harsh environments, being constantly removed from the drive mechanism which reads, writes, and spins the media. The first disks were enclosed units, sealed from all dust and other particulate matter, and were definitely *not* portable. Keeping the media in an enclosed environment allowed engineers to avoid dust altogether, as well as spurious magnetic fields. This, in turn, allowed for much closer spacing between the head and the magnetic material, resulting in a much tighter-focused magnetic field to write data to the magnetic material.

The following photograph shows a hard disk drive "platter" of approximately 30 Mbytes storage capacity. A ball-point pen has been set near the bottom of the platter for size reference:

Modern disk drives use multiple platters made of hard material (hence the name, "hard drive") with multiple read/write heads for every platter. The gap between head and platter is much smaller than the diameter of a human hair. If the hermetically-sealed environment inside a hard disk drive is contaminated with outside air, the hard drive will be rendered useless. Dust will lodge between the heads and the platters, causing damage to the surface of the media.

Here is a hard drive with four platters, although the angle of the shot only allows viewing of the top platter. This unit is complete with drive motor, read/write heads, and associated electronics. It has a storage capacity of 340 Mbytes, and is about the same length as the ball-point pen shown in the previous photograph:

While it is inevitable that non-moving-part technology will replace mechanical drives in the future, current state-of-the-art electromechanical drives continue to rival "solid-state" non-volatile memory devices in storage density, and at a lower cost. In 1998, a 250 Mbyte hard drive was announced that was approximately the size of a quarter (smaller than the metal platter hub in the center of the last hard disk photograph)! In any case, storage density and reliability will undoubtedly continue to improve.

An incentive for digital data storage technology advancement was the advent of digitally encoded music. A joint venture between Sony and Phillips resulted in the release of the "compact audio disc" (CD) to the public in the late 1980's. This technology is a read-only type, the media being a transparent plastic disc backed by a thin film of aluminum. Binary bits are encoded as pits in the plastic which vary the path length of a low-power laser beam. Data is read by the low-power laser (the beam of which can be focused more precisely than normal light) reflecting off the aluminum to a photocell receiver.

The advantages of CDs over magnetic tape are legion. Being digital, the information is highly resistant to corruption. Being non-contact in operation, there is no wear incurred through playing. Being optical, they are immune to magnetic fields (which can easily corrupt data on magnetic tape or disks). It is possible to purchase CD "burner" drives which contain the high-power laser necessary to write to a blank disc.

Following on the heels of the music industry, the video entertainment industry has leveraged the technology of optical storage with the introduction of the *Digital Video Disc*, or DVD. Using a similar-sized plastic disc as the music CD, a DVD employs closer spacing of pits to achieve much greater storage density. This increased density allows feature-length movies to be encoded on DVD media, complete with trivia information about the movie, director's notes, and so on.

Much effort is being directed toward the development of a practical read/write optical disc (CD-W). Success has been found in using chemical substances whose color may be changed through exposure to bright laser light, then "read" by lower-intensity light. These optical discs are immediately identified by their characteristically colored surfaces, as opposed to the silver-colored underside of a standard CD.

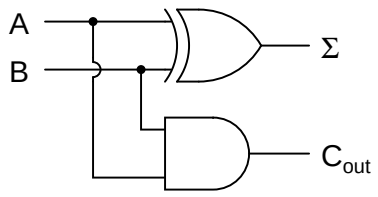
Chapter 16

PRINCIPLES OF DIGITAL COMPUTING

Contents

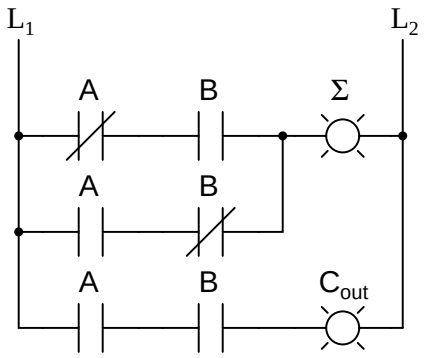
16.1 A binary adder

Suppose we wanted to build a device that could add two binary bits together. Such a device is known as a half-adder, and its gate circuit looks like this:



The Σ symbol represents the "sum" output of the half-adder, the sum's least significant bit (LSB). C_{out} represents the "carry" output of the half-adder, the sum's most significant bit (MSB).

If we were to implement this same function in ladder (relay) logic, it would look like this:



Either circuit is capable of adding two binary digits together. The mathematical "rules" of how to add bits together are intrinsic to the hard-wired logic of the circuits. If we wanted to perform a different arithmetic operation with binary bits, such as multiplication, we would have to construct another circuit. The above circuit designs will only perform one function: add two binary bits together. To make them do something else would take re-wiring, and perhaps different componentry.

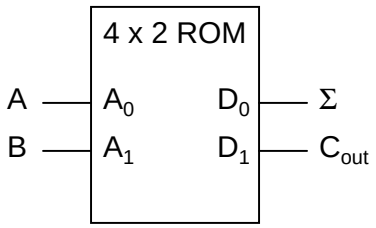
In this sense, digital arithmetic circuits aren't much different from analog arithmetic (operational amplifier) circuits: they do exactly what they're wired to do, no more and no less. We are not, however, restricted to designing digital computer circuits in this manner. It is possible to embed the mathematical "rules" for any arithmetic operation in the form of digital data rather than in hard-wired connections between gates. The result is unparalleled flexibility in operation, giving rise to a whole new kind of digital device: the *programmable computer*.

While this chapter is by no means exhaustive, it provides what I believe is a unique and interesting look at the nature of programmable computer devices, starting with two devices often overlooked in introductory textbooks: *look-up table memories* and *finite-state machines*.

16.2 Look-up tables

Having learned about digital memory devices in the last chapter, we know that it is possible to store binary data within solid-state devices. Those storage "cells" within solid-state memory devices are easily addressed by driving the "address" lines of the device with the proper binary value(s). Suppose we had a ROM memory circuit written, or programmed, with certain data, such that the address lines of the ROM served as inputs and the data lines of the ROM served as outputs, generating the characteristic response of a particular logic function. Theoretically, we could program this ROM chip to emulate whatever logic function we wanted without having to alter any wire connections or gates.

Consider the following example of a 4 x 2 bit ROM memory (a very small memory!) programmed with the functionality of a half adder:



Address		Data	
A	B	C_{out}	Σ
0	0	0	0
0	1	0	1
1	0	0	1
1	1	1	0

If this ROM has been written with the above data (representing a half-adder's truth table), driving the A and B address inputs will cause the respective memory cells in the ROM chip to be enabled, thus outputting the corresponding data as the Σ (Sum) and C_{out} bits. Unlike the half-adder circuit built of gates or relays, this device can be set up to perform any logic function at all with two inputs and two outputs, not just the half-adder function. To change the logic function, all we would need to do is write a different table of data to another ROM chip. We could even use an EPROM chip which could be re-written at will, giving the ultimate flexibility in function.

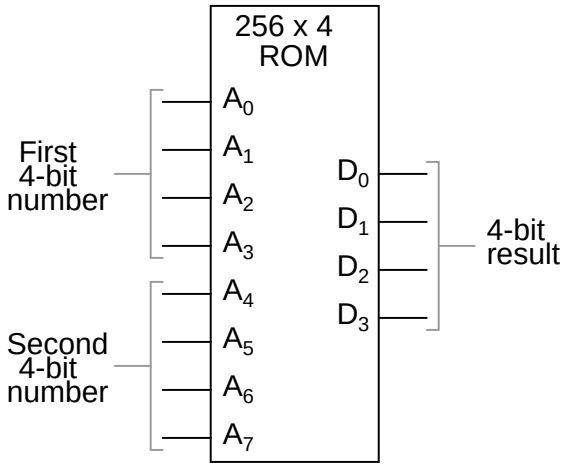
It is vitally important to recognize the significance of this principle as applied to digital circuitry. Whereas the half-adder built from gates or relays *processes* the input bits to arrive at a specific output, the ROM simply *remembers* what the outputs should be for any given combination of inputs. This is not much different from the "times tables" memorized in grade school: rather than having to calculate the product of 5 times 6 (5 + 5 + 5 + 5 + 5 + 5 = 30), school-children are taught to remember that 5 x 6 = 30, and then expected to recall this product from memory as needed. Likewise, rather than the logic function depending on the functional arrangement of hard-wired gates or relays (hardware), it depends solely on the data written into the memory (software).

Such a simple application, with definite outputs for every input, is called a *look-up table*, because the memory device simply "looks up" what the output(s) should to be for any given combination of inputs states.

This application of a memory device to perform logical functions is significant for several reasons:

- Software is much easier to change than hardware.
- Software can be archived on various kinds of memory media (disk, tape), thus providing an easy way to document and manipulate the function in a "virtual" form; hardware can only be "archived" abstractly in the form of some kind of graphical drawing.
- Software can be copied from one memory device (such as the EPROM chip) to another, allowing the ability for one device to "learn" its function from another device.
- Software such as the logic function example can be designed to perform functions that would be extremely difficult to emulate with discrete logic gates (or relays!).

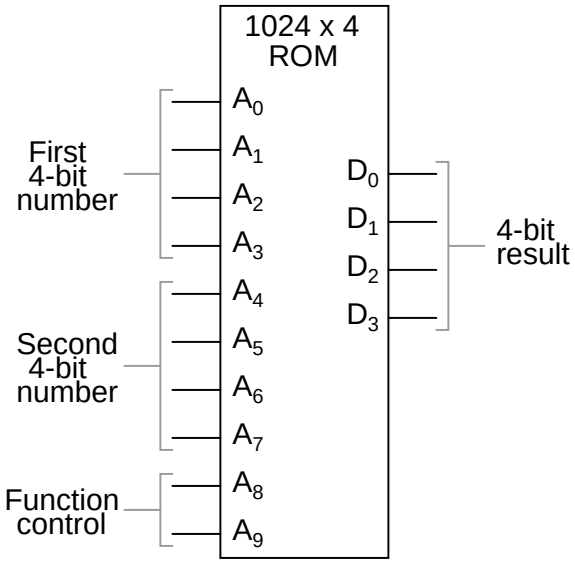
The usefulness of a look-up table becomes more and more evident with increasing complexity of function. Suppose we wanted to build a 4-bit adder circuit using a ROM. We'd require a ROM with 8 address lines (two 4-bit numbers to be added together), plus 4 data lines (for the signed output):



With 256 addressable memory locations in this ROM chip, we would have a fair amount of programming to do, telling it what binary output to generate for each and every combination of binary inputs. We would also run the risk of making a mistake in our programming and have it output an incorrect sum, if we weren't careful. However, the flexibility of being able to configure this function (or any function) through software alone generally outweighs that costs.

Consider some of the advanced functions we could implement with the above "adder." We know that when we add two sets of numbers in 2's complement signed notation, we risk having the answer overflow. For instance, if we try to add 0111 (decimal 7) to 0110 (decimal 6) with only a 4-bit number field, the answer we'll get is 1001 (decimal -7) instead of the correct value, 13 (7 + 6), which cannot be expressed using 4 signed bits. If we wanted to, we could avoid the strange answers given in overflow conditions by programming this look-up table circuit to output something else in conditions where we know overflow will occur (that is, in any case where the real sum would exceed +7 or -8). One alternative might be to program the ROM to output the quantity 0111 (the maximum positive value that can be represented with 4 signed bits), or any other value that we determined to be more appropriate for the application than the typical overflowed "error" value that a regular adder circuit would output. It's all up to the programmer to decide what he or she wants this circuit to do, because we are no longer limited by the constraints of logic gate functions.

The possibilities don't stop at customized logic functions, either. By adding more address lines to the 256 x 4 ROM chip, we can expand the look-up table to include multiple functions:



With two more address lines, the ROM chip will have 4 times as many addresses as before (1024 instead of 256). This ROM could be programmed so that when A8 and A9 were both low, the output data represented the *sum* of the two 4-bit binary numbers input on address lines A0 through A7, just as we had with the previous 256 x 4 ROM circuit. For the addresses A8=1 and A9=0, it could be programmed to output the *difference* (subtraction) between the first 4-bit binary number (A0 through A3) and the second binary number (A4 through A7). For the addresses A8=0 and A9=1, we could program the ROM to output the difference (subtraction) of the two numbers in reverse order (second - first rather than first - second), and finally, for the addresses A8=1 and A9=1, the ROM could be programmed to compare the two inputs and output an indication of equality or inequality. What we will have then is a device that can perform four different arithmetical operations on 4-bit binary numbers, all by "looking up" the answers programmed into it.

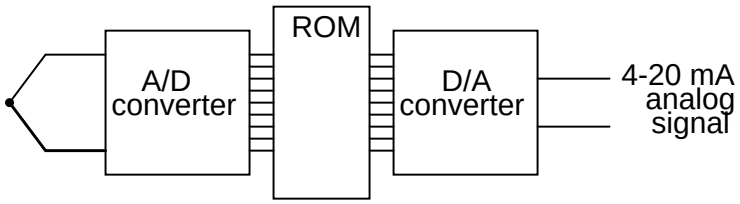
If we had used a ROM chip with more than two additional address lines, we could program it with a wider variety of functions to perform on the two 4-bit inputs. There are a number of operations peculiar to binary data (such as parity check or Exclusive-ORing of bits) that we might find useful to have programmed in such a look-up table.

Devices such as this, which can perform a variety of arithmetical tasks as dictated by a binary input code, are known as *Arithmetic Logic Units* (ALUs), and they comprise one of the essential components of computer technology. Although modern ALUs are more often constructed from very complex combinational logic (gate) circuits for reasons of speed, it should be comforting to know that the exact same functionality may be duplicated with a "dumb" ROM chip programmed with the appropriate look-up table(s). In fact, this exact approach was used by IBM engineers in 1959 with the development of the IBM 1401 and 1620 computers, which used look-up tables to perform addition, rather than binary adder circuitry. The machine was fondly known as the "CADET," which stood for "**C**an't **A**dd, **D**oesn't **E**ven **T**ry."

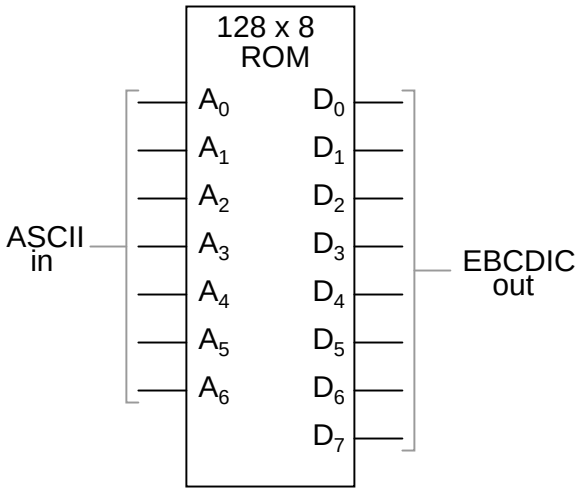
A very common application for look-up table ROMs is in control systems where a custom mathematical function needs to be represented. Such an application is found in computer-

controlled fuel injection systems for automobile engines, where the proper air/fuel mixture ratio for efficient and clean operation changes with several environmental and operational variables. Tests performed on engines in research laboratories determine what these ideal ratios are for varying conditions of engine load, ambient air temperature, and barometric air pressure. The variables are measured with sensor transducers, their analog outputs converted to digital signals with A/D circuitry, and those parallel digital signals used as address inputs to a high-capacity ROM chip programmed to output the optimum digital value for air/fuel ratio for any of these given conditions.

Sometimes, ROMs are used to provide one-dimensional look-up table functions, for "correcting" digitized signal values so that they more accurately represent their real-world significance. An example of such a device is a *thermocouple transmitter*, which measures the millivoltage signal generated by a junction of dissimilar metals and outputs a signal which is supposed to *directly* correspond to that junction temperature. Unfortunately, thermocouple junctions do not have perfectly linear temperature/voltage responses, and so the raw voltage signal is not perfectly proportional to temperature. By digitizing the voltage signal (A/D conversion) and sending that digital value to the address of a ROM programmed with the necessary correction values, the ROM's programming could eliminate some of the nonlinearity of the thermocouple's temperature-to-millivoltage relationship, so that the final output of the device would be more accurate. The popular instrumentation term for such a look-up table is a digital *characterizer*.



Another application for look-up tables is in special code translation. A 128 x 8 ROM, for instance, could be used to translate 7-bit ASCII code to 8-bit EBCDIC code:



Again, all that is required is for the ROM chip to be properly programmed with the neces-

sary data so that each valid ASCII input will produce a corresponding EBCDIC output code.

16.3 Finite-state machines

Feedback is a fascinating engineering principle. It can turn a rather simple device or process into something substantially more complex. We've seen the effects of feedback intentionally integrated into circuit designs with some rather astounding effects:

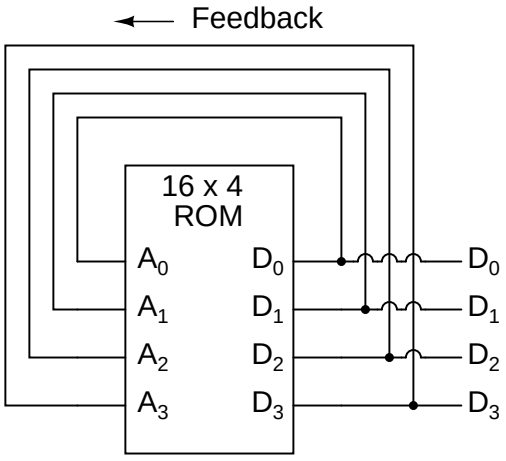
- Comparator + negative feedback ————> controllable-gain amplifier
- Comparator + positive feedback ————> comparator with hysteresis
- Combinational logic + positive feedback –> multivibrator

In the field of process instrumentation, feedback is used to transform a simple measurement system into something capable of control:

- Measurement system + negative feedback —> closed-loop control system

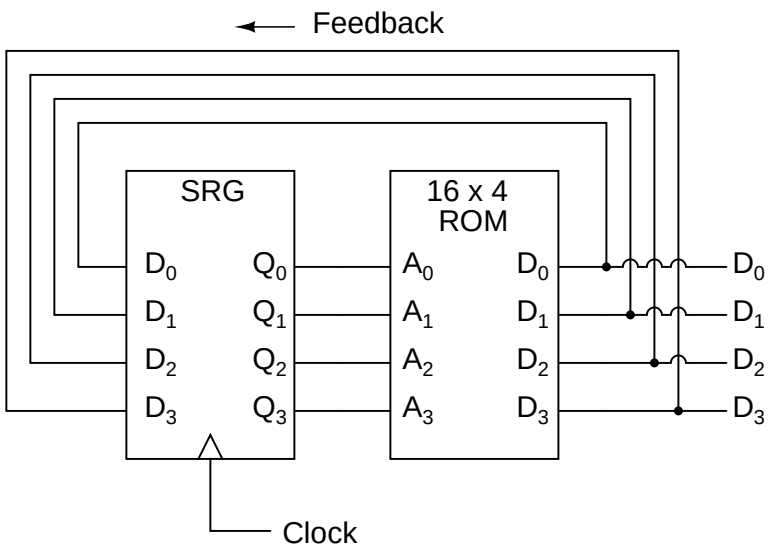
Feedback, both positive and negative, has the tendency to add whole new dynamics to the operation of a device or system. Sometimes, these new dynamics find useful application, while other times they are merely interesting. With look-up tables programmed into memory devices, feedback from the data outputs back to the address inputs creates a whole new type of device: the *Finite State Machine*, or *FSM*:

A crude Finite State Machine



The above circuit illustrates the basic idea: the data stored at each address becomes the next storage location that the ROM gets addressed to. The result is a specific sequence of binary numbers (following the sequence programmed into the ROM) at the output, over time. To avoid signal timing problems, though, we need to connect the data outputs back to the address inputs through a 4-bit D-type flip-flop, so that the sequence takes place step by step to the beat of a controlled clock pulse:

An improved Finite State Machine



An analogy for the workings of such a device might be an array of post-office boxes, each one with an identifying number on the door (the address), and each one containing a piece of paper with the address of another P.O. box written on it (the data). A person, opening the first P.O. box, would find in it the address of the next P.O. box to open. By storing a particular pattern of addresses in the P.O. boxes, we can dictate the sequence in which each box gets opened, and therefore the sequence of which paper gets read.

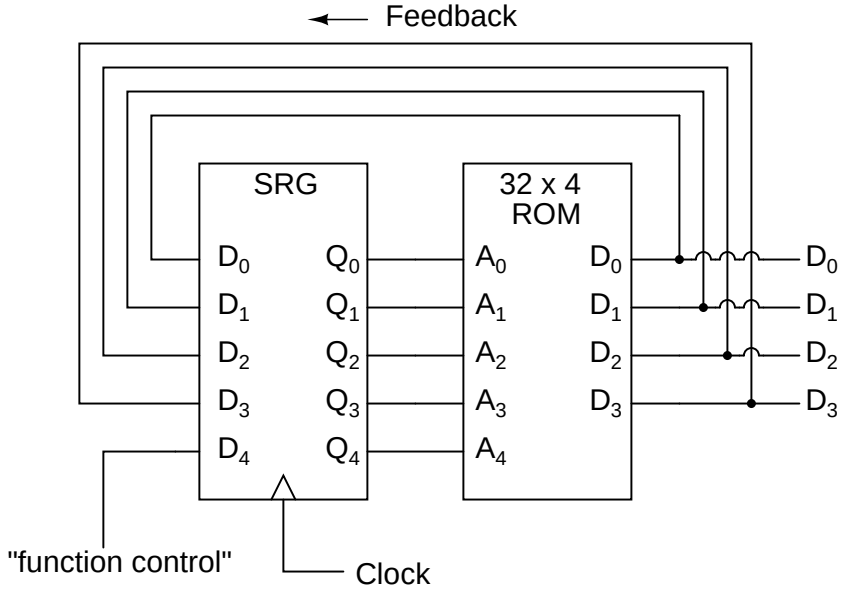
Having 16 addressable memory locations in the ROM, this Finite State Machine would have 16 different stable "states" in which it could latch. In each of those states, the identity of the next state would be programmed in to the ROM, awaiting the signal of the next clock pulse to be fed back to the ROM as an address. One useful application of such an FSM would be to generate an arbitrary count sequence, such as Gray Code:

```
Address  -----> Data          Gray Code count sequence:
0000   -------> 0001                 0   0000
0001   -------> 0011                 1   0001
0010   -------> 0110                 2   0011
0011   -------> 0010                 3   0010
0100   -------> 1100                 4   0110
0101   -------> 0100                 5   0111
0110   -------> 0111                 6   0101
0111   -------> 0101                 7   0100
1000   -------> 0000                 8   1100
1001   -------> 1000                 9   1101
1010   -------> 1011                10   1111
1011   -------> 1001                11   1110
1100   -------> 1101                12   1010
1101   -------> 1111                13   1011
```

```
1110   -------> 1010                14   1001
1111   -------> 1110                15   1000
```

Try to follow the Gray Code count sequence as the FSM would do it: starting at 0000, follow the data stored at that address (0001) to the next address, and so on (0011), and so on (0010), and so on (0110), etc. The result, for the program table shown, is that the sequence of addressing jumps around from address to address in what looks like a haphazard fashion, but when you check each address that is accessed, you will find that it follows the correct order for 4-bit Gray code. When the FSM arrives at its last programmed state (address 1000), the data stored there is 0000, which starts the whole sequence over again at address 0000 in step with the next clock pulse.

We could expand on the capabilities of the above circuit by using a ROM with more address lines, and adding more programming data:



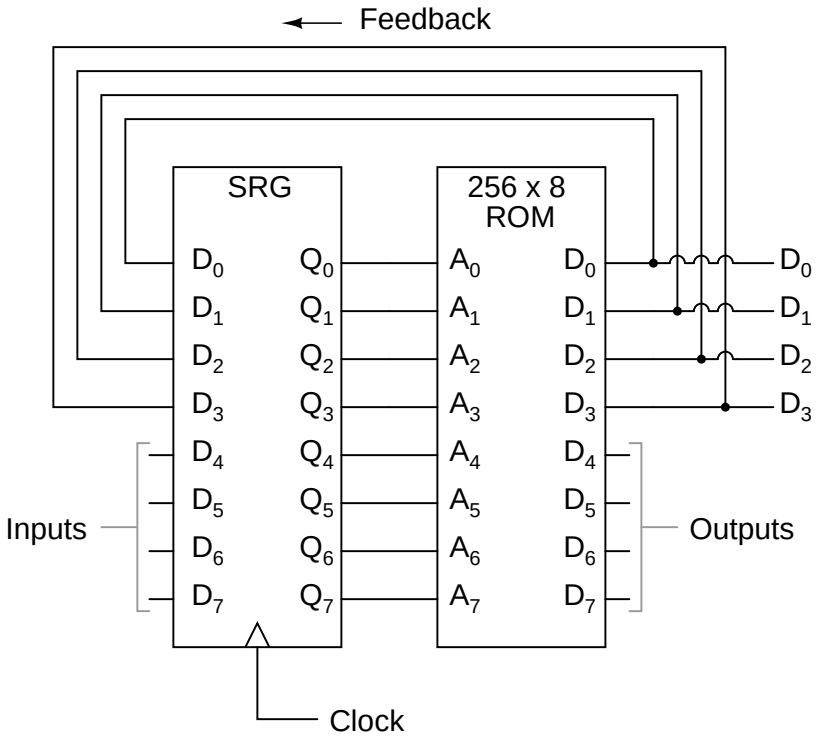
Now, just like the look-up table adder circuit that we turned into an Arithmetic Logic Unit (+, -, x, / functions) by utilizing more address lines as ”function control” inputs, this FSM counter can be used to generate more than one count sequence, a different sequence programmed for the four feedback bits (A0 through A3) for each of the two function control line input combinations (A4 = 0 or 1).

```
Address  -----> Data          Address  -----> Data
00000  -------> 0001          10000  -------> 0001
00001  -------> 0010          10001  -------> 0011
00010  -------> 0011          10010  -------> 0110
00011  -------> 0100          10011  -------> 0010
00100  -------> 0101          10100  -------> 1100
00101  -------> 0110          10101  -------> 0100
```

```
00110  -------> 0111          10110  -------> 0111
00111  -------> 1000          10111  -------> 0101
01000  -------> 1001          11000  -------> 0000
01001  -------> 1010          11001  -------> 1000
01010  -------> 1011          11010  -------> 1011
01011  -------> 1100          11011  -------> 1001
01100  -------> 1101          11100  -------> 1101
01101  -------> 1110          11101  -------> 1111
01110  -------> 1111          11110  -------> 1010
01111  -------> 0000          11111  -------> 1110
```

If A4 is 0, the FSM counts in binary; if A4 is 1, the FSM counts in Gray Code. In either case, the counting sequence is arbitrary: determined by the whim of the programmer. For that matter, the counting sequence doesn't even have to have 16 steps, as the programmer may decide to have the sequence recycle to 0000 at any one of the steps at all. It is a completely flexible counting device, the behavior strictly determined by the software (programming) in the ROM.

We can expand on the capabilities of the FSM even more by utilizing a ROM chip with additional address input and data output lines. Take the following circuit, for example:



Here, the D0 through D3 data outputs are used exclusively for feedback to the A0 through A3 address lines. Date output lines D4 through D7 can be programmed to output something other than the FSM's "state" value. Being that four data output bits are being fed back to four

address bits, this is still a 16-state device. However, having the output data come from other data output lines gives the programmer more freedom to configure functions than before. In other words, this device can do far more than just count! The programmed output of this FSM is dependent not only upon the state of the feedback address lines (A0 through A3), but also the states of the input lines (A4 through A7). The D-type flip/flop's clock signal input does not have to come from a pulse generator, either. To make things more interesting, the flip/flop could be wired up to clock on some external event, so that the FSM goes to the next state only when an input signal tells it to.

Now we have a device that better fulfills the meaning of the word "programmable." The data written to the ROM is a program in the truest sense: the outputs follow a pre-established order based on the inputs to the device and which "step" the device is on in its sequence. This is very close to the operating design of the *Turing Machine*, a theoretical computing device invented by Alan Turing, mathematically proven to be able to solve any known arithmetic problem, given enough memory capacity.

16.4 Microprocessors

Early computer science pioneers such as Alan Turing and John Von Neumann postulated that for a computing device to be really useful, it not only had to be able to generate specific outputs as dictated by programmed instructions, but it also had to be able to write data to memory, and be able to act on that data later. Both the program steps and the processed data were to reside in a common memory "pool," thus giving way to the label of the *stored-program computer*. Turing's theoretical machine utilized a sequential-access tape, which would store data for a control circuit to read, the control circuit re-writing data to the tape and/or moving the tape to a new position to read more data. Modern computers use random-access memory devices instead of sequential-access tapes to accomplish essentially the same thing, except with greater capability.

A helpful illustration is that of early automatic machine tool control technology. Called *open-loop*, or sometimes just *NC* (numerical control), these control systems would direct the motion of a machine tool such as a lathe or a mill by following instructions programmed as holes in paper tape. The tape would be run one direction through a "read" mechanism, and the machine would blindly follow the instructions on the tape without regard to any other conditions. While these devices eliminated the burden of having to have a human machinist direct every motion of the machine tool, it was limited in usefulness. Because the machine was blind to the real world, only following the instructions written on the tape, it could not compensate for changing conditions such as expansion of the metal or wear of the mechanisms. Also, the tape programmer had to be acutely aware of the sequence of previous instructions in the machine's program to avoid troublesome circumstances (such as telling the machine tool to move the drill bit laterally while it is still inserted into a hole in the work), since the device had no memory other than the tape itself, which was read-only. Upgrading from a simple tape reader to a Finite State control design gave the device a sort of memory that could be used to keep track of what it had already done (through feedback of some of the data bits to the address bits), so at least the programmer could decide to have the circuit remember "states" that the machine tool could be in (such as "coolant on," or tool position). However, there was still room for improvement.

The ultimate approach is to have the program give instructions which would include the writing of new data to a read/write (RAM) memory, which the program could easily recall and process. This way, the control system could record what it had done, and any sensor-detectable process changes, much in the same way that a human machinist might jot down notes or measurements on a scratch-pad for future reference in his or her work. This is what is referred to as CNC, or *Closed-loop Numerical Control*.

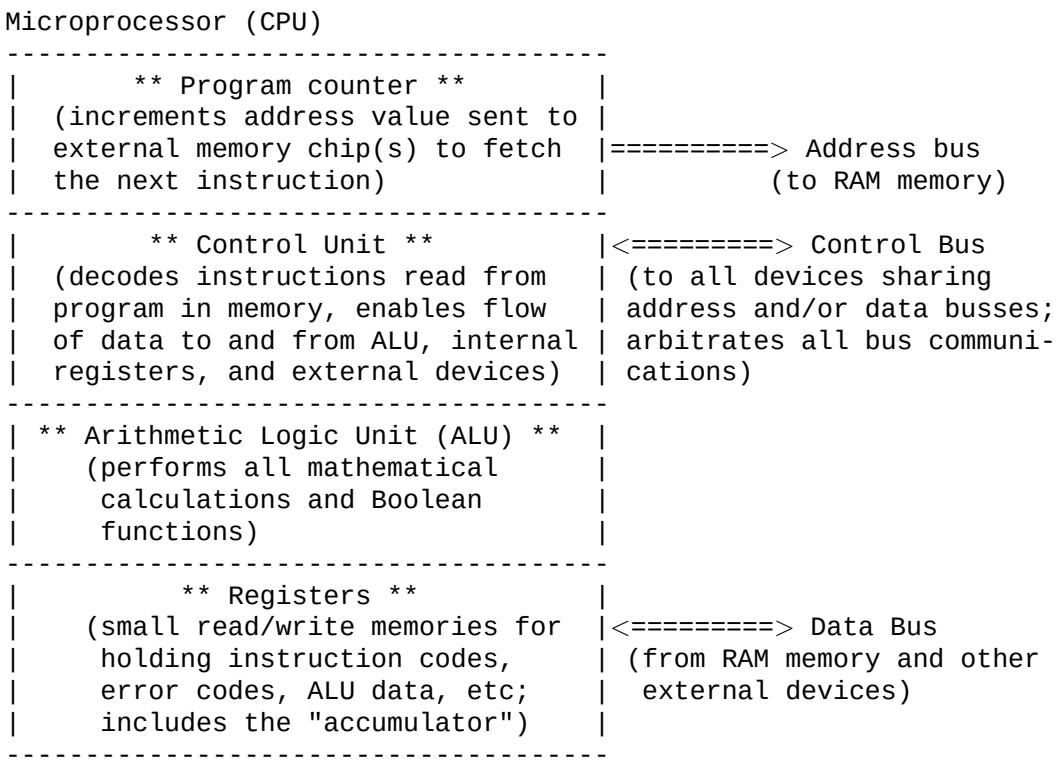
Engineers and computer scientists looked forward to the possibility of building digital devices that could modify their own programming, much the same as the human brain adapts the strength of inter-neural connections depending on environmental experiences (that is why memory retention improves with repeated study, and behavior is modified through consequential feedback). Only if the computer's program were stored in the same writable memory "pool" as the data would this be practical. It is interesting to note that the notion of a self-modifying program is still considered to be on the cutting edge of computer science. Most computer programming relies on rather fixed sequences of instructions, with a separate field of data being the only information that gets altered.

To facilitate the stored-program approach, we require a device that is much more complex than the simple FSM, although many of the same principles apply. First, we need read/write memory that can be easily accessed: this is easy enough to do. Static or dynamic RAM chips do the job well, and are inexpensive. Secondly, we need some form of logic to process the data stored in memory. Because standard and Boolean arithmetic functions are so useful, we can use an Arithmetic Logic Unit (ALU) such as the look-up table ROM example explored earlier. Finally, we need a device that controls how and where data flows between the memory, the ALU, and the outside world. This so-called *Control Unit* is the most mysterious piece of the puzzle yet, being comprised of tri-state buffers (to direct data to and from buses) and decoding logic which interprets certain binary codes as instructions to carry out. Sample instructions might be something like: "add the number stored at memory address 0010 with the number stored at memory address 1101," or, "determine the parity of the data in memory address 0111." The choice of which binary codes represent which instructions for the Control Unit to decode is largely arbitrary, just as the choice of which binary codes to use in representing the letters of the alphabet in the ASCII standard was largely arbitrary. ASCII, however, is now an internationally recognized standard, whereas control unit instruction codes are almost always manufacturer-specific.

Putting these components together (read/write memory, ALU, and control unit) results in a digital device that is typically called a *processor*. If minimal memory is used, and all the necessary components are contained on a single integrated circuit, it is called a *microprocessor*. When combined with the necessary bus-control support circuitry, it is known as a *Central Processing Unit*, or CPU.

CPU operation is summed up in the so-called *fetch/execute cycle*. *Fetch* means to read an instruction from memory for the Control Unit to decode. A small binary counter in the CPU (known as the *program counter* or *instruction pointer*) holds the address value where the next instruction is stored in main memory. The Control Unit sends this binary address value to the main memory's address lines, and the memory's data output is read by the Control Unit to send to another holding register. If the fetched instruction requires reading more data from memory (for example, in adding two numbers together, we have to read both the numbers that are to be added from main memory or from some other source), the Control Unit appropriately addresses the location of the requested data and directs the data output to ALU

registers. Next, the Control Unit would execute the instruction by signaling the ALU to do whatever was requested with the two numbers, and direct the result to another register called the *accumulator*. The instruction has now been ”fetched” and ”executed,” so the Control Unit now increments the program counter to step the next instruction, and the cycle repeats itself.



As one might guess, carrying out even simple instructions is a tedious process. Several steps are necessary for the Control Unit to complete the simplest of mathematical procedures. This is especially true for arithmetic procedures such as exponents, which involve repeated executions (”iterations”) of simpler functions. Just imagine the sheer quantity of steps necessary within the CPU to update the bits of information for the graphic display on a flight simulator game! The only thing which makes such a tedious process practical is the fact that microprocessor circuits are able to repeat the fetch/execute cycle with great speed.

In some microprocessor designs, there are minimal programs stored within a special ROM memory internal to the device (called *microcode*) which handle all the sub-steps necessary to carry out more complex math operations. This way, only a single instruction has to be read from the program RAM to do the task, and the programmer doesn’t have to deal with trying to tell the microprocessor how to do every minute step. In essence, its a processor inside of a processor; a program running inside of a program.

16.5 Microprocessor programming

The "vocabulary" of instructions which any particular microprocessor chip possesses is specific to that model of chip. An Intel 80386, for example, uses a completely different set of binary codes than a Motorola 68020, for designating equivalent functions. Unfortunately, there are no standards in place for microprocessor instructions. This makes programming at the very lowest level very confusing and specialized.

When a human programmer develops a set of instructions to directly tell a microprocessor how to do something (like automatically control the fuel injection rate to an engine), they're programming in the CPU's own "language." This language, which consists of the very same binary codes which the Control Unit inside the CPU chip decodes to perform tasks, is often referred to as *machine language*. While machine language software can be "worded" in binary notation, it is often written in hexadecimal form, because it is easier for human beings to work with. For example, I'll present just a few of the common instruction codes for the Intel 8080 micro-processor chip:

Hexadecimal	Binary	Instruction description
7B	01111011	Move contents of register A to register E
87	10000111	Add contents of register A to register D
1C	00011100	Increment the contents of register E by 1
D3	11010011	Output byte of data to data bus

Even with hexadecimal notation, these instructions can be easily confused and forgotten. For this purpose, another aid for programmers exists called *assembly language*. With assembly language, two to four letter mnemonic words are used in place of the actual hex or binary code for describing program steps. For example, the instruction `7B` for the Intel 8080 would be "`MOV A,E`" in assembly language. The mnemonics, of course, are useless to the microprocessor, which can only understand binary codes, but it is an expedient way for programmers to manage the writing of their programs on paper or text editor (word processor). There are even programs written for computers called *assemblers* which understand these mnemonics, translating them to the appropriate binary codes for a specified target microprocessor, so that the programmer can write a program in the computer's native language without ever having to deal with strange hex or tedious binary code notation.

Once a program is developed by a person, it must be written into memory before a microprocessor can execute it. If the program is to be stored in ROM (which some are), this can be done with a special machine called a *ROM programmer*, or (if you're masochistic), by plugging the ROM chip into a breadboard, powering it up with the appropriate voltages, and writing data by making the right wire connections to the address and data lines, one at a time, for each instruction. If the program is to be stored in volatile memory, such as the operating computer's RAM memory, there may be a way to type it in by hand through that computer's keyboard (some computers have a mini-program stored in ROM which tells the microprocessor how to accept keystrokes from a keyboard and store them as commands in RAM), even if it is too dumb to do

anything else. Many ”hobby” computer kits work like this. If the computer to be programmed is a fully-functional personal computer with an operating system, disk drives, and the whole works, you can simply command the assembler to store your finished program onto a disk for later retrieval. To ”run” your program, you would simply type your program's filename at the prompt, press the Enter key, and the microprocessor's Program Counter register would be set to point to the location (”address”) on the disk where the first instruction is stored, and your program would run from there.

Although programming in machine language or assembly language makes for fast and highly efficient programs, it takes a lot of time and skill to do so for anything but the simplest tasks, because each machine language instruction is so crude. The answer to this is to develop ways for programmers to write in ”high level” languages, which can more efficiently express human thought. Instead of typing in dozens of cryptic assembly language codes, a programmer writing in a high-level language would be able to write something like this . . .

```
Print "Hello, world!"
```

. . . and expect the computer to print ”Hello, world!” with no further instruction on how to do so. This is a great idea, but how does a microprocessor understand such ”human” thinking when its vocabulary is so limited?

The answer comes in two different forms: *interpretation*, or *compilation*. Just like two people speaking different languages, there has to be some way to transcend the language barrier in order for them to converse. A translator is needed to translate each person's words to the other person's language, one way at a time. For the microprocessor, this means another program, written by another programmer in machine language, which recognizes the ASCII character patterns of high-level commands such as Print (P-r-i-n-t) and can translate them into the necessary bite-size steps that the microprocessor can directly understand. If this translation is done during program execution, just like a translator intervening between two people in a live conversation, it is called ”interpretation.” On the other hand, if the entire program is translated to machine language in one fell swoop, like a translator recording a monologue on paper and then translating all the words at one sitting into a written document in the other language, the process is called ”compilation.”

Interpretation is simple, but makes for a slow-running program because the microprocessor has to continually translate the program between steps, and that takes time. Compilation takes time initially to translate the whole program into machine code, but the resulting machine code needs no translation after that and runs faster as a consequence. Programming languages such as BASIC and FORTH are interpreted. Languages such as C, C++, FORTRAN, and PASCAL are compiled. Compiled languages are generally considered to be the languages of choice for professional programmers, because of the efficiency of the final product.

Naturally, because machine language vocabularies vary widely from microprocessor to microprocessor, and since high-level languages are designed to be as universal as possible, the interpreting and compiling programs necessary for language translation must be microprocessor-specific. Development of these interpreters and compilers is a most impressive feat: the people who make these programs most definitely earn their keep, especially when you consider the work they must do to keep their software product current with the rapidly-changing microprocessor models appearing on the market!

To mitigate this difficulty, the trend-setting manufacturers of microprocessor chips (most notably, Intel and Motorola) try to design their new products to be *backwardly compatible* with their older products. For example, the entire instruction set for the Intel 80386 chip is contained within the latest Pentium IV chips, although the Pentium chips have additional instructions that the 80386 chips lack. What this means is that machine-language programs (compilers, too) written for 80386 computers will run on the latest and greatest Intel Pentium IV CPU, but machine-language programs written specifically to take advantage of the Pentium's larger instruction set will not run on an 80386, because the older CPU simply doesn't have some of those instructions in its vocabulary: the Control Unit inside the 80386 cannot decode them.

Building on this theme, most compilers have settings that allow the programmer to select which CPU type he or she wants to compile machine-language code for. If they select the 80386 setting, the compiler will perform the translation using only instructions known to the 80386 chip; if they select the Pentium setting, the compiler is free to make use of all instructions known to Pentiums. This is analogous to telling a translator what minimum reading level their audience will be: a document translated for a child will be understandable to an adult, but a document translated for an adult may very well be gibberish to a child.

Appendix A-1

ABOUT THIS BOOK

A-1.1 Purpose

They say that necessity is the mother of invention. At least in the case of this book, that adage is true. As an industrial electronics instructor, I was forced to use a sub-standard textbook during my first year of teaching. My students were daily frustrated with the many typographical errors and obscure explanations in this book, having spent much time at home struggling to comprehend the material within. Worse yet were the many incorrect answers in the back of the book to selected problems. Adding insult to injury was the $100+ price.

Contacting the publisher proved to be an exercise in futility. Even though the particular text I was using had been in print and in popular use for a couple of years, they claimed my complaint was the first they'd ever heard. My request to review the draft for the next edition of their book was met with disinterest on their part, and I resolved to find an alternative text.

Finding a suitable alternative was more difficult than I had imagined. Sure, there were plenty of texts in print, but the really good books seemed a bit too heavy on the math and the less intimidating books omitted a lot of information I felt was important. Some of the best books were out of print, and those that were still being printed were quite expensive.

It was out of frustration that I compiled *Lessons in Electric Circuits* from notes and ideas I had been collecting for years. My primary goal was to put readable, high-quality information into the hands of my students, but a secondary goal was to make the book as affordable as possible. Over the years, I had experienced the benefit of receiving free instruction and encouragement in my pursuit of learning electronics from many people, including several teachers of mine in elementary and high school. Their selfless assistance played a key role in my own studies, paving the way for a rewarding career and fascinating hobby. If only I could extend the gift of their help by giving to other people what they gave to me . . .

So, I decided to make the book freely available. More than that, I decided to make it "open," following the same development model used in the making of free software (most notably the various UNIX utilities released by the Free Software Foundation, and the Linux operating

system, whose fame is growing even as I write). The goal was to copyright the text – so as to protect my authorship – but expressly allow anyone to distribute and/or modify the text to suit their own needs with a minimum of legal encumbrance. This willful and formal revoking of standard distribution limitations under copyright is whimsically termed *copyleft*. Anyone can "copyleft" their creative work simply by appending a notice to that effect on their work, but several Licenses already exist, covering the fine legal points in great detail.

The first such License I applied to my work was the GPL – General Public License – of the Free Software Foundation (GNU). The GPL, however, is intended to copyleft works of computer software, and although its introductory language is broad enough to cover works of text, its wording is not as clear as it could be for that application. When other, less specific copyleft Licenses began appearing within the free software community, I chose one of them (the Design Science License, or DSL) as the official notice for my project.

In "copylefting" this text, I guaranteed that no instructor would be limited by a text insufficient for their needs, as I had been with error-ridden textbooks from major publishers. I'm sure this book in its initial form will not satisfy everyone, but anyone has the freedom to change it, leveraging my efforts to suit variant and individual requirements. For the beginning student of electronics, learn what you can from this book, editing it as you feel necessary if you come across a useful piece of information. Then, if you pass it on to someone else, you will be giving them something better than what you received. For the instructor or electronics professional, feel free to use this as a reference manual, adding or editing to your heart's content. The only "catch" is this: if you plan to distribute your modified version of this text, you must give credit where credit is due (to me, the original author, and anyone else whose modifications are contained in your version), and you must ensure that whoever you give the text to is aware of their freedom to similarly share and edit the text. The next chapter covers this process in more detail.

It must be mentioned that although I strive to maintain technical accuracy in all of this book's content, the subject matter is broad and harbors many potential dangers. Electricity maims and kills without provocation, and deserves the utmost respect. I strongly encourage experimentation on the part of the reader, but only with circuits powered by small batteries where there is no risk of electric shock, fire, explosion, etc. High-power electric circuits should be left to the care of trained professionals! The Design Science License clearly states that neither I nor any contributors to this book bear any liability for what is done with its contents.

A-1.2 The use of SPICE

One of the best ways to learn how things work is to follow the inductive approach: to observe specific instances of things working and derive general conclusions from those observations. In science education, labwork is the traditionally accepted venue for this type of learning, although in many cases labs are designed by educators to reinforce principles previously learned through lecture or textbook reading, rather than to allow the student to learn on their own through a truly exploratory process.

Having taught myself most of the electronics that I know, I appreciate the sense of frustration students may have in teaching themselves from books. Although electronic components are typically inexpensive, not everyone has the means or opportunity to set up a laboratory in their own homes, and when things go wrong there's no one to ask for help. Most textbooks

seem to approach the task of education from a deductive perspective: tell the student how things are supposed to work, then apply those principles to specific instances that the student may or may not be able to explore by themselves. The inductive approach, as useful as it is, is hard to find in the pages of a book.

However, textbooks don't have to be this way. I discovered this when I started to learn a computer program called SPICE. It is a text-based piece of software intended to model circuits and provide analyses of voltage, current, frequency, etc. Although nothing is quite as good as building real circuits to gain knowledge in electronics, computer simulation is an excellent alternative. In learning how to use this powerful tool, I made a discovery: SPICE could be used within a textbook to present circuit simulations to allow students to "observe" the phenomena for themselves. This way, the readers could learn the concepts inductively (by interpreting SPICE's output) as well as deductively (by interpreting my explanations). Furthermore, in seeing SPICE used over and over again, they should be able to understand how to use it themselves, providing a perfectly safe means of experimentation on their own computers with circuit simulations of their own design.

Another advantage to including computer analyses in a textbook is the empirical verification it adds to the concepts presented. Without demonstrations, the reader is left to take the author's statements on faith, trusting that what has been written is indeed accurate. The problem with faith, of course, is that it is only as good as the authority in which it is placed and the accuracy of interpretation through which it is understood. Authors, like all human beings, are liable to err and/or communicate poorly. With demonstrations, however, the reader can immediately see for themselves that what the author describes is indeed true. Demonstrations also serve to clarify the meaning of the text with concrete examples.

SPICE is introduced early in volume I (DC) of this book series, and hopefully in a gentle enough way that it doesn't create confusion. For those wishing to learn more, a chapter in the Reference volume (volume V) contains an overview of SPICE with many example circuits. There may be more flashy (graphic) circuit simulation programs in existence, but SPICE is free, a virtue complementing the charitable philosophy of this book very nicely.

A-1.3 Acknowledgements

First, I wish to thank my wife, whose patience during those many and long evenings (and weekends!) of typing has been extraordinary.

I also wish to thank those whose open-source software development efforts have made this endeavor all the more affordable and pleasurable. The following is a list of various free computer software used to make this book, and the respective programmers:

- *GNU/Linux* Operating System – Linus Torvalds, Richard Stallman, and a host of others too numerous to mention.
- *Vim* text editor – Bram Moolenaar and others.
- *Xcircuit* drafting program – Tim Edwards.
- *SPICE* circuit simulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- TEX text processing system – Donald Knuth and others.

- *Texinfo* document formatting system – Free Software Foundation.
- LaTeX document formatting system – Leslie Lamport and others.
- *Gimp* image manipulation program – too many contributors to mention.

Appreciation is also extended to Robert L. Boylestad, whose first edition of *Introductory Circuit Analysis* taught me more about electric circuits than any other book. Other important texts in my electronics studies include the 1939 edition of *The "Radio" Handbook*, Bernard Grob's second edition of *Introduction to Electronics I*, and Forrest Mims' original *Engineer's Notebook*.

Thanks to the staff of the Bellingham Antique Radio Museum, who were generous enough to let me terrorize their establishment with my camera and flash unit. Thanks as well to David Randolph of the Arlington Water Treatment facility in Arlington, Washington, for allowing me to take photographs of the equipment during a technical tour.

I wish to specifically thank Jeffrey Elkner and all those at Yorktown High School for being willing to host my book as part of their Open Book Project, and to make the first effort in contributing to its form and content. Thanks also to David Sweet (website: `(http://www.andamooka.org)`) and Ben Crowell (website: `(http://www.lightandmatter.com)`) for providing encouragement, constructive criticism, and a wider audience for the online version of this book.

Thanks to Michael Stutz for drafting his Design Science License, and to Richard Stallman for pioneering the concept of copyleft.

Last but certainly not least, many thanks to my parents and those teachers of mine who saw in me a desire to learn about electricity, and who kindled that flame into a passion for discovery and intellectual adventure. I honor you by helping others as you have helped me.

Tony Kuphaldt, July 2001

"A candle loses nothing of its light when lighting another"
Kahlil Gibran

Appendix A-2

CONTRIBUTOR LIST

A-2.1 How to contribute to this book

As a copylefted work, this book is open to revision and expansion by any interested parties. The only ”catch” is that credit must be given where credit is due. This *is* a copyrighted work: it is *not* in the public domain!

If you wish to cite portions of this book in a work of your own, you must follow the same guidelines as for any other copyrighted work. Here is a sample from the Design Science License:

```
The Work is copyright the Author.  All rights to the Work are reserved
by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License
describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you
to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as
dictated by "fair use") quote from it, just as you would any
copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or
execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk,
because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY -- see Section 7 ("NO
WARRANTY") below.
```

If you wish to modify this book in any way, you must document the nature of those modifications in the ”Credits” section along with your name, and ideally, information concerning how you may be contacted. Again, the Design Science License:

```
Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work,
```

```
producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work
under the terms described in the section for distribution above,
provided that the following terms are met:


(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this
License.


(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or
title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of
the Work, in any way.


(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences
between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is
attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from
the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate
notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature
and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.
```

Given the complexities and security issues surrounding the maintenance of files comprising this book, it is recommended that you submit any revisions or expansions to the original author (Tony R. Kuphaldt). You are, of course, welcome to modify this book directly by editing your own personal copy, but we would all stand to benefit from your contributions if your ideas were incorporated into the online "master copy" where all the world can see it.

A-2.2 Credits

All entries arranged in alphabetical order of surname. Major contributions are listed by individual name with some detail on the nature of the contribution(s), date, contact info, etc. Minor contributions (typo corrections, etc.) are listed by name only for reasons of brevity. Please understand that when I classify a contribution as "minor," it is in no way inferior to the effort or value of a "major" contribution, just smaller in the sense of less text changed. Any and all contributions are gratefully accepted. I am indebted to all those who have given freely of their own knowledge, time, and resources to make this a better book!

A-2.2.1 Tony R. Kuphaldt

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** 1996 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author.
- **Contact at:** liec0@lycos.com

A-2.2.2 Dennis Crunkilton

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** July 2004 to present
- **Nature of contribution:**Original author: Karnaugh mapping chapter; 04/2004; Shift registers chapter, June 2005.
- **Nature of contribution:** Mini table of contents, all chapters except appendicies; html, latex, ps, pdf; See Devel/tutorial.html; 01/2006.
- **Contact at:** `liecibiblio(at)gmail(dot)com`

A-2.2.3 David Zitzelsberger

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** November 2007
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author: "Combinatorial Logic Functions" chapter 9.
- **Contact at:** `davidzitzelsberger(at)yahoo(dot)com`

A-2.2.4 Your name here

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** Month and year of contribution
- **Nature of contribution:** Insert text here, describing how you contributed to the book.
- **Contact at:** `my_email@provider.net`

A-2.2.5 Typo corrections and other "minor" contributions

- **line-allaboutcircuits.com** (June 2005) Typographical error correction in Volumes 1,2,3,5, various chapters ,(:s/visa-versa/vice versa/).
- **Dennis Crunkilton** (October 2005) Typographical capitlization correction to sectiontitles, chapter 9.
- **Colin Creitz** (May 2007) Chapters: several, s/it's/its.
- **Jeff DeFreitas** (March 2006)Improve appearance: replace "/" and "/" Chapters: A1, A2.
- **Paul Stokes**, Program Chair, Computer and Electronics Engineering Technology, ITT Technical Institute, Houston, Tx (October 2004) Change (1001_2 = -8_{10} + 7_{10} = -1_{10}) to (1001_2 = -8_{10} + 1_{10} = -1_{10}), CH2, Binary Arithmetic
- **Paul Stokes**, Program Chair Computer and Electronics Engineering Technology, ITT Technical Institute, Houston, Tx (October 2004) Near "Fold up the corners" change Out=B'C' to Out=B'D', 14118.eps same change, Karnaugh Mapping
- *The students of Bellingham Technical College's Instrumentation program,* .

- **Roger Hollingsworth** (May 2003) Suggested a way to make the PLC motor control system fail-safe.
- **Jan-Willem Rensman** (May 2002) Suggested the inclusion of Schmitt triggers and gate hysteresis to the "Logic Gates" chapter.
- **Don Stalkowski** (June 2002) Technical help with PostScript-to-PDF file format conversion.
- **Joseph Teichman** (June 2002) Suggestion and technical help regarding use of PNG images instead of JPEG.
- **MWalden@allaboutcircuits.com** (June 2008) "Karnaugh Mapping", Larger Karnaugh Maps, error: s/A'B'D/A'B'D'/.
- **studiot@allaboutcircuits.com** (March 2008) Ch 15, s/disk/disc/ in CDROM .
- **Keith@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2008) Ch 12, s/sat/stage ; 04373.eps correction to caption.
- **psomero@allaboutcircuits.com** (April 2008) Ch 8, image 14122.eps replace 2nd instance A'B'C'D' with A'B'C'D .
- **Sonoma_Dog@allaboutcircuits.com** (August 2008) Ch 2, s/-1/-7 near "any integer number from negative seven".

Appendix A-3

DESIGN SCIENCE LICENSE

A-3.1 0. Preamble

Copyright law gives certain exclusive rights to the author of a work, including the rights to copy, modify and distribute the work (the ”reproductive,” ”adaptative,” and ”distribution” rights).

The idea of ”copyleft” is to willfully revoke the exclusivity of those rights under certain terms and conditions, so that anyone can copy and distribute the work or properly attributed derivative works, while all copies remain under the same terms and conditions as the original.

The intent of this license is to be a general ”copyleft” that can be applied to any kind of work that has protection under copyright. This license states those certain conditions under which a work published under its terms may be copied, distributed, and modified.

Whereas ”design science” is a strategy for the development of artifacts as a way to reform the environment (not people) and subsequently improve the universal standard of living, this Design Science License was written and deployed as a strategy for promoting the progress of science and art through reform of the environment.

A-3.2 1. Definitions

”License” shall mean this Design Science License. The License applies to any work which contains a notice placed by the work’s copyright holder stating that it is published under the terms of this Design Science License.

”Work” shall mean such an aforementioned work. The License also applies to the output of the Work, only if said output constitutes a ”derivative work” of the licensed Work as defined by copyright law.

”Object Form” shall mean an executable or performable form of the Work, being an embodiment of the Work in some tangible medium.

”Source Data” shall mean the origin of the Object Form, being the entire, machine-readable, preferred form of the Work for copying and for human modification (usually the language, encoding or format in which composed or recorded by the Author); plus any accompanying files, scripts or other data necessary for installation, configuration or compilation of the Work.

(Examples of ”Source Data” include, but are not limited to, the following: if the Work is an image file composed and edited in ’PNG’ format, then the original PNG source file is the Source Data; if the Work is an MPEG 1.0 layer 3 digital audio recording made from a ’WAV’ format audio file recording of an analog source, then the original WAV file is the Source Data; if the Work was composed as an unformatted plaintext file, then that file is the the Source Data; if the Work was composed in LaTeX, the LaTeX file(s) and any image files and/or custom macros necessary for compilation constitute the Source Data.)

”Author” shall mean the copyright holder(s) of the Work.

The individual licensees are referred to as ”you.”

A-3.3 2. Rights and copyright

The Work is copyright the Author. All rights to the Work are reserved by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as dictated by ”fair use”) quote from it, just as you would any copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk, because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY – see Section 7 (”NO WARRANTY”) below.

A-3.4 3. Copying and distribution

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present verbatim copies of the entire Source Data of the Work, in any medium, provided that full copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty, where applicable, is conspicuously published on all copies, and a copy of this License is distributed along with the Work.

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present copies of the Object Form of the Work, in any medium, under the terms for distribution of Source Data above and also provided that one of the following additional conditions are met:

(a) The Source Data is included in the same distribution, distributed under the terms of this License; or

(b) A written offer is included with the distribution, valid for at least three years or for as long as the distribution is in print (whichever is longer), with a publicly-accessible address (such as a URL on the Internet) where, for a charge not greater than transportation and media costs, anyone may receive a copy of the Source Data of the Work distributed according to the section above; or

(c) A third party's written offer for obtaining the Source Data at no cost, as described in paragraph (b) above, is included with the distribution. This option is valid only if you are a non-commercial party, and only if you received the Object Form of the Work along with such an offer.

You may copy and distribute the Work either gratis or for a fee, and if desired, you may offer warranty protection for the Work.

The aggregation of the Work with other works which are not based on the Work – such as but not limited to inclusion in a publication, broadcast, compilation, or other media – does not bring the other works in the scope of the License; nor does such aggregation void the terms of the License for the Work.

A-3.5 4. Modification

Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work, producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work under the terms described in the section for distribution above, provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.

A-3.6 5. No restrictions

You may not impose any further restrictions on the Work or any of its derivative works beyond those restrictions described in this License.

A-3.7 6. Acceptance

Copying, distributing or modifying the Work (including but not limited to sampling from the Work in a new work) indicates acceptance of these terms. If you do not follow the terms of this License, any rights granted to you by the License are null and void. The copying, distribution or modification of the Work outside of the terms described in this License is expressly prohibited by law.

If for any reason, conditions are imposed on you that forbid you to fulfill the conditions of this License, you may not copy, distribute or modify the Work at all.

If any part of this License is found to be in conflict with the law, that part shall be interpreted in its broadest meaning consistent with the law, and no other parts of the License shall be affected.

A-3.8 7. No warranty

THE WORK IS PROVIDED ”AS IS,” AND COMES WITH ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

A-3.9 8. Disclaimer of liability

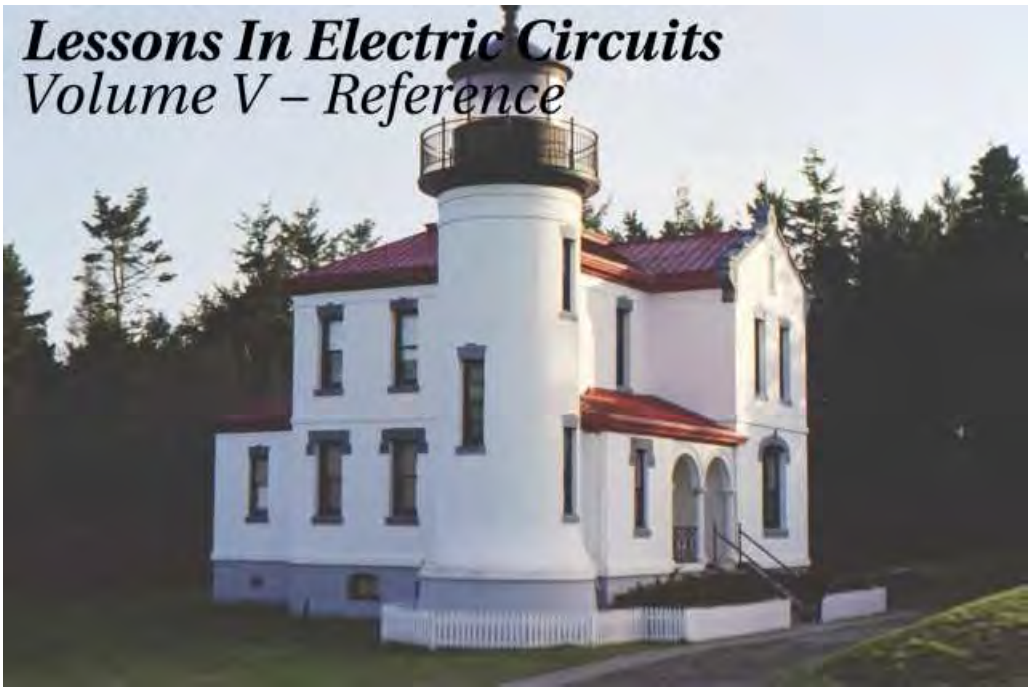
IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS WORK, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

```
[$Id:  dsl.txt,v 1.25 2000/03/14 13:14:14 m Exp m $]
```

Index

.



Fourth Edition, last update April 19, 2007

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume V – Reference

By Tony R. Kuphaldt

Fourth Edition, last update April 19, 2007

PRINTING HISTORY

- First Edition: Printed in June of 2000. Plain-ASCII illustrations for universal computer readability.
- Second Edition: Printed in September of 2000. Illustrations reworked in standard graphic (eps and jpeg) format. Source files translated to *Texinfo* format for easy online and printed publication.
- Third Edition: Equations and tables reworked as graphic images rather than plain-ASCII text.
- Fourth Edition: Printed in XXX 2001. Source files translated to *SubML* format. SubML is a simple markup language designed to easily convert to other markups like LaTeX, HTML, or DocBook using nothing but search-and-replace substitutions.

Contents

Chapter 1

USEFUL EQUATIONS AND CONVERSION FACTORS

Contents

1.1 DC circuit equations and laws

1.1.1 Ohm's and Joule's Laws

Ohm's Law

$$E = IR \qquad I = \frac{E}{R} \qquad R = \frac{E}{I}$$

Joule's Law

$$P = IE \qquad P = \frac{E^2}{R} \qquad P = I^2R$$

Where,

E = Voltage in volts
I = Current in amperes (amps)
R = Resistance in ohms
P = Power in watts

NOTE: the symbol "V" ("U" in Europe) is sometimes used to represent voltage instead of "E". In some cases, an author or circuit designer may choose to exclusively use "V" for voltage, never using the symbol "E." Other times the two symbols are used interchangeably, or "E" is used to represent voltage from a power source while "V" is used to represent voltage across a load (voltage "drop").

1.1.2 Kirchhoff's Laws

"The algebraic sum of all voltages in a loop must equal zero."
Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (KVL)

"The algebraic sum of all currents entering and exiting a node must equal zero."
Kirchhoff's Current Law (KCL)

1.2 Series circuit rules

- Components in a series circuit share the same current. $I_{total} = I_1 = I_2 = \ldots I_n$
- Total resistance in a series circuit is equal to the sum of the individual resistances, making it *greater* than any of the individual resistances. $R_{total} = R_1 + R_2 + \ldots R_n$
- Total voltage in a series circuit is equal to the sum of the individual voltage drops. $E_{total} = E_1 + E_2 + \ldots E_n$

1.3 Parallel circuit rules

- Components in a parallel circuit share the same voltage. $E_{total} = E_1 = E_2 = \ldots E_n$
- Total resistance in a parallel circuit is *less* than any of the individual resistances. $R_{total} = 1 / (1/R_1 + 1/R_2 + \ldots 1/R_n)$
- Total current in a parallel circuit is equal to the sum of the individual branch currents. $I_{total} = I_1 + I_2 + \ldots I_n$

1.4 Series and parallel component equivalent values

1.4.1 Series and parallel resistances

Resistances

$$R_{series} = R_1 + R_2 + \ldots R_n$$

$$R_{parallel} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2} + \cdots \frac{1}{R_n}}$$

1.4.2 Series and parallel inductances

Inductances

$$L_{series} = L_1 + L_2 + \ldots L_n$$

$$L_{parallel} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{L_1} + \frac{1}{L_2} + \ldots \frac{1}{L_n}}$$

Where,

L = Inductance in henrys

1.4.3 Series and Parallel Capacitances

Capacitances

$$C_{series} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{C_1} + \frac{1}{C_2} + \ldots \frac{1}{C_n}}$$

$$C_{parallel} = C_1 + C_2 + \ldots C_n$$

Where,

C = Capacitance in farads

1.5 Capacitor sizing equation

$$C = \frac{\varepsilon A}{d}$$

Where,

C = Capacitance in Farads

ε = Permittivity of dielectric (absolute, not relative)

A = Area of plate overlap in square meters

d = Distance between plates in meters

$\varepsilon = \varepsilon_0 K$

Where,

ε_0 = Permittivity of free space

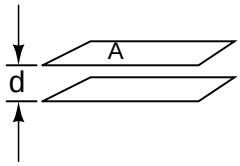
ε_0 = 8.8562×10^{-12} F/m

K = Dielectric constant of material between plates (see table)

Dielectric constants			
Dielectric	K	Dielectric	K
Vacuum	1.0000	Quartz, fused	3.8
Air	1.0006	Wood, maple	4.4
PTFE, Teflon	2.0	Glass	4.9-7.5
Mineral oil	2.0	Castor oil	5.0
Polypropylene	2.20-2.28	Wood, birch	5.2
ABS resin	2.4 - 3.2	Mica, muscovite	5.0-8.7
Polystyrene	2.45-4.0	Glass-bonded mica	6.3-9.3
Waxed paper	2.5	Poreclain, steatite	6.5
Transformer oil	2.5-4	Alumina Al_2O_3	8-10.0
Wood, oak	3.3	Water, distilled	80
Hard Rubber	2.5-4.8	Ta_2O_5	27.6
Silicones	3.4-4.3	Ba_2TiO_3	1200-1500
Bakelite	3.5-6.0	$BaSrTiO_3$	7500

A formula for capacitance in picofarads using practical dimensions:

$$C = \frac{0.0885K(n-1)\,A}{d} = \frac{0.225K(n-1)A'}{d'}$$



Where,

C = Capacitance in picofarads

K = Dielectric constant

A = Area of one plate in square centimeters

A' = Area of one plate in square inches

d = Thickness in centimeters

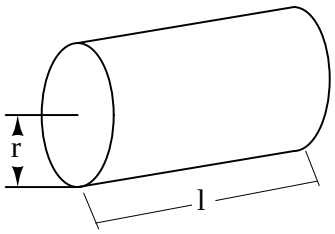
d' = Thickness in inches

n = Number of plates

1.6 Inductor sizing equation

$$L = \frac{N^2 \mu A}{l}$$

$$\mu = \mu_r \mu_0$$



Where,

L = Inductance of coil in Henrys

N = Number of turns in wire coil (straight wire = 1)

μ = Permeability of core material (absolute, not relative)

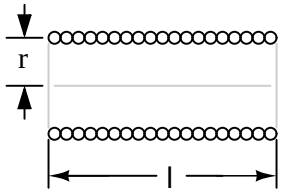
μ_r = Relative permeability, dimensionless (μ_0=1 for air)

μ_0 = 1.26 x 10 $^{-6}$ T-m/At permeability of free space

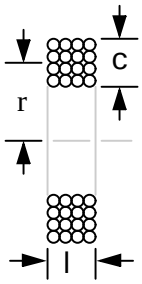
A = Area of coil in square meters = πr^2

l = Average length of coil in meters

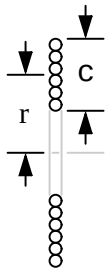
Wheeler's formulas for inductance of air core coils which follow are usefull for radio frequency inductors. The following formula for the inductance of a single layer air core solenoid coil is accurate to approximately 1% for $2r/l < 3$. The thick coil formula is 1% accurate when the denominator terms are approximately equal. Wheeler's spiral formula is 1% accurate for $c > 0.2r$. While this is a "round wire" formula, it may still be applicable to printed circuit spiral inductors at reduced accuracy.



$$L = \frac{N^2 r^2}{9r + 10 \cdot l}$$



$$L = \frac{0.8 N^2 r^2}{6r + 9 \cdot l + 10c}$$



$$L = \frac{N^2 r^2}{8r + 11c}$$

Where,

L = Inductance of coil in microhenrys

N = Number of turns of wire

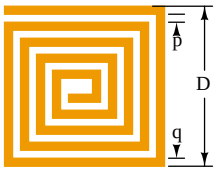
r = Mean radius of coil in inches

l = Length of coil in inches

c = Thickness of coil in inches

The inductance in henries of a square printed circuit inductor is given by two formulas where p=q, and p≠q.

$L = 85 \cdot 10^{-10} DN^{5/3}$
Where,
D = dimension, cm
N = number turns
p=q



$L = 27 \cdot 10^{-10} (D^{8/3}/p^{5/3})(1+R^{-1})^{5/3}$
Where,
D = coil dimension in cm
N = number of turns
R= p/q

The wire table provides ”turns per inch” for enamel magnet wire for use with the inductance formulas for coils.

AWG gauge	turns/ inch	AWG gauge	turns/ inch	AWG gauge	turns/ inch	AWG gauge	turns/ inch
10	9.6	20	29.4	30	90.5	40	282
11	10.7	21	33.1	31	101	41	327
12	12.0	22	37.0	32	113	42	378
13	13.5	23	41.3	33	127	43	421
14	15.0	24	46.3	34	143	44	471
15	16.8	25	51.7	35	158	45	523
16	18.9	26	58.0	36	175	46	581
17	21.2	27	64.9	37	198		
18	23.6	28	72.7	38	224		
19	26.4	29	81.6	39	248		

1.7 Time constant equations

1.7.1 Value of time constant in series RC and RL circuits

Time constant in seconds = RC

Time constant in seconds = L/R

1.7.2 Calculating voltage or current at specified time

Universal Time Constant Formula

$$\text{Change} = (\text{Final-Start})\left(1 - \frac{1}{e^{t/\tau}}\right)$$

Where,

Final = Value of calculated variable after infinite time (its *ultimate* value)

Start = Initial value of calculated variable

e = Euler's number (≈2.7182818)

t = Time in seconds

τ = Time constant for circuit in seconds

1.7.3 Calculating time at specified voltage or current

$$t = \tau \left(\ln \frac{1}{1 - \frac{\text{Change}}{\text{Final - Start}}}\right)$$

1.8 AC circuit equations

1.8.1 Inductive reactance

$$X_L = 2\pi fL$$

Where,

X_L = Inductive reactance in ohms

f = Frequency in hertz

L = Inductance in henrys

1.8.2 Capacitive reactance

$$X_C = \frac{1}{2\pi fC}$$

Where,

X_C = Inductive reactance in ohms

f = Frequency in hertz

C = Capacitance in farads

1.8.3 Impedance in relation to R and X

$$Z_L = R + jX_L$$

$$Z_C = R - jX_C$$

1.8.4 Ohm's Law for AC

$$E = IZ \qquad I = \frac{E}{Z} \qquad Z = \frac{E}{I}$$

Where,

E = Voltage in volts

I = Current in amperes (amps)

Z = Impedance in ohms

1.8.5 Series and Parallel Impedances

$$Z_{series} = Z_1 + Z_2 + \ldots Z_n$$

$$Z_{parallel} = \frac{1}{\frac{1}{Z_1} + \frac{1}{Z_2} + \ldots \frac{1}{Z_n}}$$

NOTE: All impedances must be calculated in *complex* number form for these equations to work.

1.8.6 Resonance

$$f_{resonant} = \frac{1}{2\pi\sqrt{LC}}$$

NOTE: This equation applies to a non-resistive LC circuit. In circuits containing resistance as well as inductance and capacitance, this equation applies only to series configurations and to parallel configurations where R is very small.

1.8.7 AC power

P = true power $P = I^2R$ $P = \frac{E^2}{R}$

Measured in units of ***Watts***

Q = reactive power $Q = I^2X$ $Q = \frac{E^2}{X}$

Measured in units of ***Volt-Amps-Reactive (VAR)***

S = apparent power $S = I^2Z$ $S = \frac{E^2}{Z}$ $S = IE$

Measured in units of ***Volt-Amps***

$P = (IE)(\text{power factor})$

$S = \sqrt{P^2 + Q^2}$

Power factor = cos (Z phase angle)

1.9 Decibels

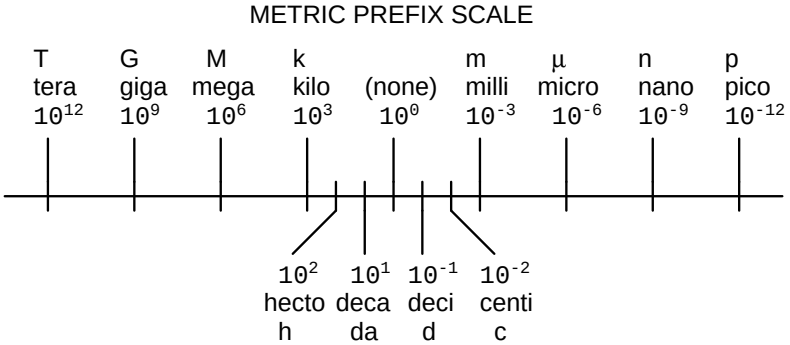
$$A_{V(dB)} = 20 \log A_{V(ratio)} \qquad A_{V(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{V(dB)}}{20}}$$

$$A_{I(dB)} = 20 \log A_{I(ratio)} \qquad A_{I(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{I(dB)}}{20}}$$

$$A_{P(dB)} = 10 \log A_{P(ratio)} \qquad A_{P(ratio)} = 10^{\frac{A_{P(dB)}}{10}}$$

1.10 Metric prefixes and unit conversions

- **Metric prefixes**
- Yotta = 10^{24} Symbol: Y
- Zetta = 10^{21} Symbol: Z
- Exa = 10^{18} Symbol: E
- Peta = 10^{15} Symbol: P
- Tera = 10^{12} Symbol: T
- Giga = 10^{9} Symbol: G
- Mega = 10^{6} Symbol: M
- Kilo = 10^{3} Symbol: k
- Hecto = 10^{2} Symbol: h
- Deca = 10^{1} Symbol: da
- Deci = 10^{-1} Symbol: d
- Centi = 10^{-2} Symbol: c
- Milli = 10^{-3} Symbol: m
- Micro = 10^{-6} Symbol: μ
- Nano = 10^{-9} Symbol: n
- Pico = 10^{-12} Symbol: p
- Femto = 10^{-15} Symbol: f
- Atto = 10^{-18} Symbol: a
- Zepto = 10^{-21} Symbol: z
- Yocto = 10^{-24} Symbol: y



- **Conversion factors for temperature**
- $^oF = (^oC)(9/5) + 32$
- $^oC = (^oF - 32)(5/9)$
- $^oR = ^oF + 459.67$
- $^oK = ^oC + 273.15$

Conversion equivalencies for volume

1 US gallon (gal) = 231.0 cubic inches (in^3) = 4 quarts (qt) = 8 pints (pt) = 128 fluid ounces (fl. oz.) = 3.7854 liters (l)

1 Imperial gallon (gal) = 160 fluid ounces (fl. oz.) = 4.546 liters (l)

Conversion equivalencies for distance

1 inch (in) = 2.540000 centimeter (cm)

Conversion equivalencies for velocity

1 mile per hour (mi/h) = 88 feet per minute (ft/m) = 1.46667 feet per second (ft/s) = 1.60934 kilometer per hour (km/h) = 0.44704 meter per second (m/s) = 0.868976 knot (knot – international)

Conversion equivalencies for weight

1 pound (lb) = 16 ounces (oz) = 0.45359 kilogram (kg)

Conversion equivalencies for force

1 pound-force (lbf) = 4.44822 newton (N)

Acceleration of gravity (free fall), Earth standard

9.806650 meters per second per second (m/s^2) = 32.1740 feet per second per second (ft/s^2)

Conversion equivalencies for area

1 acre = 43560 square feet (ft^2) = 4840 square yards (yd^2) = 4046.86 square meters (m^2)

Conversion equivalencies for pressure

1 pound per square inch (psi) = 2.03603 inches of mercury (in. Hg) = 27.6807 inches of water (in. W.C.) = 6894.757 pascals (Pa) = 0.0680460 atmospheres (Atm) = 0.0689476 bar (bar)

Conversion equivalencies for energy or work

1 british thermal unit (BTU – "International Table") = 251.996 calories (cal – "International Table") = 1055.06 joules (J) = 1055.06 watt-seconds (W-s) = 0.293071 watt-hour (W-hr) = 1.05506 x 10^{10} ergs (erg) = 778.169 foot-pound-force (ft-lbf)

Conversion equivalencies for power

1 horsepower (hp – 550 ft-lbf/s) = 745.7 watts (W) = 2544.43 british thermal units per hour (BTU/hr) = 0.0760181 boiler horsepower (hp – boiler)

Conversion equivalencies for motor torque

	Newton-meter (n-m)	Gram-centimeter (g-cm)	Pound-inch (lb-in)	Pound-foot (lb-ft)	Ounce-inch (oz-in)
n-m	1	1020	8.85	0.738	141.6
g-cm	981 x 10^{-6}	1	8.68 x 10^{-3}	723 x 10^{-6}	0.139
lb-in	0.113	115	1	0.0833	16
lb-ft	1.36	1383	12	1	192
oz-in	7.062 x 10^{-3}	7.20	0.0625	5.21 x 10^{-3}	1

Locate the row corresponding to known unit of torque along the left of the table. Multiply by the factor under the column for the desired units. For example, to convert 2 oz-in torque to n-m, locate oz-in row at table left. Locate 7.062 x 10^{-3} at intersection of desired n-m units column. Multiply 2 oz-in x (7.062 x 10^{-3}) = 14.12 x 10^{-3} n-m.

Converting between units is easy if you have a set of equivalencies to work with. Suppose we wanted to convert an energy quantity of 2500 calories into watt-hours. What we would need to do is find a set of equivalent figures for those units. In our reference here, we see that 251.996 calories is physically equal to 0.293071 watt hour. To convert from calories into watt-hours, we must form a "unity fraction" with these physically equal figures (a fraction composed of different figures and different units, the numerator and denominator being *physically* equal to one another), placing the desired unit in the numerator and the initial unit in the denominator, and then multiply our initial value of calories by that fraction.

Since both terms of the "unity fraction" are physically equal to one another, the fraction as a whole has a *physical* value of 1, and so does not change the true value of any figure when multiplied by it. When units are canceled, however, there will be a change in units.

For example, 2500 calories multiplied by the unity fraction of (0.293071 w-hr / 251.996 cal) = 2.9075 watt-hours.

Original figure 2500 calories

"Unity fraction" $\dfrac{0.293071 \text{ watt-hour}}{251.996 \text{ calories}}$

. . . cancelling units . . .

$$\frac{2500 \text{ calories}}{1} \quad \frac{0.293071 \text{ watt-hour}}{251.996 \text{ calories}}$$

Converted figure 2.9075 watt-hours

The "unity fraction" approach to unit conversion may be extended beyond single steps. Suppose we wanted to convert a fluid flow measurement of 175 gallons per hour into liters per day. We have two units to convert here: gallons into liters, and hours into days. Remember that the word "per" in mathematics means "divided by," so our initial figure of 175 gallons *per* hour means 175 gallons divided by hours. Expressing our original figure as such a fraction, we multiply it by the necessary unity fractions to convert gallons to liters (3.7854 liters = 1 gallon), and hours to days (1 day = 24 hours). The units must be arranged in the unity fraction in such a way that undesired units cancel each other out above and below fraction bars. For this problem it means using a gallons-to-liters unity fraction of (3.7854 liters / 1 gallon) and a hours-to-days unity fraction of (24 hours / 1 day):

Original figure 175 gallons/hour

"Unity fraction" $\frac{3.7854 \text{ liters}}{1 \text{ gallon}}$

"Unity fraction" $\frac{24 \text{ hours}}{1 \text{ day}}$

. . . cancelling units . . .

$$\frac{175 \text{ gallons}}{1 \text{ hour}} \quad \frac{3.7854 \text{ liters}}{1 \text{ gallon}} \quad \frac{24 \text{ hours}}{1 \text{ day}}$$

Converted figure 15,898.68 liters/day

Our final (converted) answer is 15898.68 liters per day.

1.11 Data

Conversion factors were found in the 78^{th} edition of the *CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics*, and the 3^{rd} edition of Bela Liptak's *Instrument Engineers' Handbook – Process Measurement and Analysis*.

1.12 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Gerald Gardner (January 2003): Addition of Imperial gallons conversion.

Chapter 2

COLOR CODES

Contents

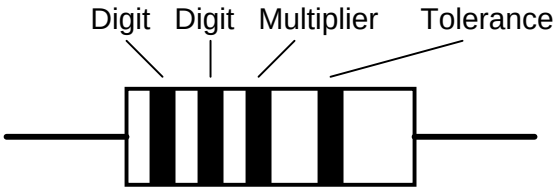
Components and wires are coded are with colors to identify their value and function.

2.1 Resistor Color Codes

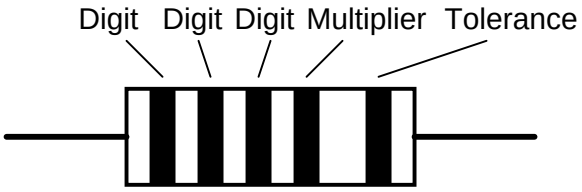
Components and wires are coded are with colors to identify their value and function.

Color	Digit	Multiplier	Tolerance (%)
Black	0	10^0 (1)	
Brown	1	10^1	1
Red	2	10^2	2
Orange	3	10^3	
Yellow	4	10^4	
Green	5	10^5	0.5
Blue	6	10^6	0.25
Violet	7	10^7	0.1
Grey	8	10^8	
White	9	10^9	
Gold		10^{-1}	5
Silver		10^{-2}	10
(none)			20

The colors brown, red, green, blue, and violet are used as tolerance codes on 5-band resistors only. All 5-band resistors use a colored tolerance band. The blank (20%) ”band” is only used with the ”4-band” code (3 colored bands + a blank ”band”).



4-band code



5-band code

2.1.1 Example #1

A resistor colored *Yellow-Violet-Orange-Gold* would be 47 kΩ with a tolerance of +/- 5%.

2.1.2 Example #2

A resistor colored *Green-Red-Gold-Silver* would be 5.2 Ω with a tolerance of +/- 10%.

2.1.3 Example #3

A resistor colored *White-Violet-Black* would be 97 Ω with a tolerance of +/- 20%. When you see only three color bands on a resistor, you know that it is actually a 4-band code with a blank (20%) tolerance band.

2.1.4 Example #4

A resistor colored *Orange-Orange-Black-Brown-Violet* would be 3.3 kΩ with a tolerance of +/- 0.1%.

2.1.5 Example #5

A resistor colored *Brown-Green-Grey-Silver-Red* would be 1.58 Ω with a tolerance of +/- 2%.

2.1.6 Example #6

A resistor colored *Blue-Brown-Green-Silver-Blue* would be 6.15 Ω with a tolerance of +/- 0.25%.

2.2 Wiring Color Codes

Wiring for AC and DC power distribution branch circuits are color coded for identification of individual wires. In some jurisdictions all wire colors are specified in legal documents. In other jurisdictions, only a few conductor colors are so codified. In that case, local custom dictates the "optional" wire colors.

IEC, AC: Most of Europe abides by IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission) wiring color codes for AC branch circuits. These are listed in Table 2.1. The older color codes in the table reflect the previous style which did not account for proper phase rotation. The protective ground wire (listed as green-yellow) is green with yellow stripe.

Table 2.1: *IEC (most of Europe) AC power circuit wiring color codes.*

Function	**label**	**Color, IEC**	**Color, old IEC**
Protective earth	PE	green-yellow	green-yellow
Neutral	N	blue	blue
Line, single phase	L	brown	brown or black
Line, 3-phase	L1	brown	brown or black
Line, 3-phase	L2	black	brown or black
Line, 3-phase	L3	grey	brown or black

UK, AC: The United Kingdom now follows the IEC AC wiring color codes. Table 2.2 lists these along with the obsolete domestic color codes. For adding new colored wiring to existing old colored wiring see Cook. [1]

Table 2.2: *UK AC power circuit wiring color codes.*

Function	**label**	**Color, IEC**	**Old UK color**
Protective earth	PE	green-yellow	green-yellow
Neutral	N	blue	black
Line, single phase	L	brown	red
Line, 3-phase	L1	brown	red
Line, 3-phase	L2	black	yellow
Line, 3-phase	L3	grey	blue

US, AC: The US National Electrical Code only mandates white (or grey) for the neutral power conductor and bare copper, green, or green with yellow stripe for the protective ground. In principle any other colors except these may be used for the power conductors. The colors adopted as local practice are shown in Table 2.3. Black, red, and blue are used for 208 VAC three-phase; brown, orange and yellow are used for 480 VAC. Conductors larger than #6 AWG are only available in black and are color taped at the ends.

Canada: Canadian wiring is governed by the CEC (Canadian Electric Code). See Table 2.4. The protective ground is green or green with yellow stripe. The neutral is white, the hot (live or active) single phase wires are black , and red in the case of a second active. Three-phase lines are red, black, and blue.

Table 2.3: *US AC power circuit wiring color codes.*

Function	**label**	**Color, common**	**Color, alternative**
Protective ground	PG	bare, green, or green-yellow	green
Neutral	N	white	grey
Line, single phase	L	black or red (2nd hot)	
Line, 3-phase	L1	black	brown
Line, 3-phase	L2	red	orange
Line, 3-phase	L3	blue	yellow

Table 2.4: *Canada AC power circuit wiring color codes.*

Function	**label**	**Color, common**
Protective ground	PG	green or green-yellow
Neutral	N	white
Line, single phase	L	black or red (2nd hot)
Line, 3-phase	L1	red
Line, 3-phase	L2	black
Line, 3-phase	L3	blue

IEC, DC: DC power installations, for example, solar power and computer data centers, use color coding which follows the AC standards. The IEC color standard for DC power cables is listed in Table 2.5, adapted from Table 2, Cook. [1]

Table 2.5: *IEC DC power circuit wiring color codes.*

Function	**label**	**Color**
Protective earth	PE	green-yellow
2-wire unearthed DC Power System		
Positive	L+	brown
Negative	L-	grey
2-wire earthed DC Power System		
Positive (of a negative earthed) circuit	L+	brown
Negative (of a negative earthed) circuit	M	blue
Positive (of a positive earthed) circuit	M	blue
Negative (of a positive earthed) circuit	L-	grey
3-wire earthed DC Power System		
Positive	L+	brown
Mid-wire	M	blue
Negative	L-	grey

US DC power: The US National Electrical Code (for both AC and DC) mandates that the grounded neutral conductor of a power system be white or grey. The protective ground must be bare, green or green-yellow striped. Hot (active) wires may be any other colors except these. However, common practice (per local electrical inspectors) is for the first hot (live or active) wire to be black and the second hot to be red. The recommendations in Table 2.6 are

by Wiles. [2] He makes no recommendation for ungrounded power system colors. Usage of the ungrounded system is discouraged for safety. However, red (+) and black (-) follows the coloring of the grounded systems in the table.

Table 2.6: *US recommended DC power circuit wiring color codes.*

Function	**label**	**Color**
Protective ground	PG	bare, green, or green-yellow
2-wire ungrounded DC Power System		
Positive	L+	no recommendation (red)
Negative	L-	no recommendation (black)
2-wire grounded DC Power System		
Positive (of a negative grounded) circuit	L+	red
Negative (of a negative grounded) circuit	N	white
Positive (of a positive grounded) circuit	N	white
Negative (of a positive grounded) circuit	L-	black
3-wire grounded DC Power System		
Positive	L+	red
Mid-wire (center tap)	N	white
Negative	L-	black

Bibliography

[1] Paul Cook, “Harmonised colours and alphanumeric marking”, IEE Wiring Matters, Spring 2004 at http://www.iee.org/Publish/WireRegs/IEE_Harmonized_colours.pdf

[2] John Wiles, “Photovoltaic Power Systems and the National Electrical Code: Suggested Practices”, Southwest Technology Development Institute, New Mexico State University, March 2001 at http://www.re.sandia.gov/en/ti/tu/Copy%20of%20NEC2000.pdf

Chapter 3

CONDUCTOR AND INSULATOR TABLES

Contents

3.1 Copper wire gage table

Soild copper wire table:

Size AWG	Diameter inches	Cross-sectional area cir. mils	sq. inches	Weight lb/1000 ft
4/0	0.4600	211,600	0.1662	640.5
3/0	0.4096	167,800	0.1318	507.9
2/0	0.3648	133,100	0.1045	402.8
1/0	0.3249	105,500	0.08289	319.5
1	0.2893	83,690	0.06573	253.5
2	0.2576	66,370	0.05213	200.9
3	0.2294	52,630	0.04134	159.3
4	0.2043	41,740	0.03278	126.4
5	0.1819	33,100	0.02600	100.2
6	0.1620	26,250	0.02062	79.46

```
7 ---------- 0.1443 ------- 20,820 ------ 0.01635 ------ 63.02
8 ---------- 0.1285 ------- 16,510 ------ 0.01297 ------ 49.97
9 ---------- 0.1144 ------- 13,090 ------ 0.01028 ------ 39.63
10 --------- 0.1019 ------- 10,380 ------ 0.008155 ----- 31.43
11 --------- 0.09074 ------- 8,234 ------ 0.006467 ----- 24.92
12 --------- 0.08081 ------- 6,530 ------ 0.005129 ----- 19.77
13 --------- 0.07196 ------- 5,178 ------ 0.004067 ----- 15.68
14 --------- 0.06408 ------- 4,107 ------ 0.003225 ----- 12.43
15 --------- 0.05707 ------- 3,257 ------ 0.002558 ----- 9.858
16 --------- 0.05082 ------- 2,583 ------ 0.002028 ----- 7.818
17 --------- 0.04526 ------- 2,048 ------ 0.001609 ----- 6.200
18 --------- 0.04030 ------- 1,624 ------ 0.001276 ----- 4.917
19 --------- 0.03589 ------- 1,288 ------ 0.001012 ----- 3.899
20 --------- 0.03196 ------- 1,022 ----- 0.0008023 ----- 3.092
21 --------- 0.02846 ------- 810.1 ----- 0.0006363 ----- 2.452
22 --------- 0.02535 ------- 642.5 ----- 0.0005046 ----- 1.945
23 --------- 0.02257 ------- 509.5 ----- 0.0004001 ----- 1.542
24 --------- 0.02010 ------- 404.0 ----- 0.0003173 ----- 1.233
25 --------- 0.01790 ------- 320.4 ----- 0.0002517 ----- 0.9699
26 --------- 0.01594 ------- 254.1 ----- 0.0001996 ----- 0.7692
27 --------- 0.01420 ------- 201.5 ----- 0.0001583 ----- 0.6100
28 --------- 0.01264 ------- 159.8 ----- 0.0001255 ----- 0.4837
29 --------- 0.01126 ------- 126.7 ----- 0.00009954 ---- 0.3836
30 --------- 0.01003 ------- 100.5 ----- 0.00007894 ---- 0.3042
31 -------- 0.008928 ------- 79.70 ----- 0.00006260 ---- 0.2413
32 -------- 0.007950 ------- 63.21 ----- 0.00004964 ---- 0.1913
33 -------- 0.007080 ------- 50.13 ----- 0.00003937 ---- 0.1517
34 -------- 0.006305 ------- 39.75 ----- 0.00003122 ---- 0.1203
35 -------- 0.005615 ------- 31.52 ----- 0.00002476 --- 0.09542
36 -------- 0.005000 ------- 25.00 ----- 0.00001963 --- 0.07567
37 -------- 0.004453 ------- 19.83 ----- 0.00001557 --- 0.06001
38 -------- 0.003965 ------- 15.72 ----- 0.00001235 --- 0.04759
39 -------- 0.003531 ------- 12.47 ---- 0.000009793 --- 0.03774
40 -------- 0.003145 ------- 9.888 ---- 0.000007766 --- 0.02993
41 -------- 0.002800 ------- 7.842 ---- 0.000006159 --- 0.02374
42 -------- 0.002494 ------- 6.219 ---- 0.000004884 --- 0.01882
43 -------- 0.002221 ------- 4.932 ---- 0.000003873 --- 0.01493
44 -------- 0.001978 ------- 3.911 ---- 0.000003072 --- 0.01184
```

3.2 Copper wire ampacity table

Ampacities of copper wire, in free air at 30^{o} C:

```
=======================================================
|                      INSULATION TYPE:                |
|         RUW, T           THW, THWN        FEP, FEPB  |
```

	TW	RUH	THHN, XHHW
Size AWG	Current Rating @ 60 degrees C	Current Rating @ 75 degrees C	Current Rating @ 90 degrees C
20	*9		*12.5
18	*13		18
16	*18		24
14	25	30	35
12	30	35	40
10	40	50	55
8	60	70	80
6	80	95	105
4	105	125	140
2	140	170	190
1	165	195	220
1/0	195	230	260
2/0	225	265	300
3/0	260	310	350
4/0	300	360	405

* = estimated values; normally, wire gages this small are not manufactured with these insulation types.

3.3 Coefficients of specific resistance

Specific resistance at 20^{o} C:

Material	Element/Alloy	(ohm-cmil/ft)	(ohm-cm$\cdot 10^{-6}$)
Nichrome	Alloy	675	112.2
Nichrome V	Alloy	650	108.1
Manganin	Alloy	290	48.21
Constantan	Alloy	272.97	45.38
Steel*	Alloy	100	16.62
Platinum	Element	63.16	10.5
Iron	Element	57.81	9.61
Nickel	Element	41.69	6.93
Zinc	Element	35.49	5.90
Molybdenum	Element	32.12	5.34
Tungsten	Element	31.76	5.28
Aluminum	Element	15.94	2.650
Gold	Element	13.32	2.214
Copper	Element	10.09	1.678
Silver	Element	9.546	1.587

* = Steel alloy at 99.5 percent iron, 0.5 percent carbon.

3.4 Temperature coefficients of resistance

Temperature coefficient (α) per degree C:

Material	Element/Alloy	Temp. coefficient
Nickel	Element	0.005866
Iron	Element	0.005671
Molybdenum	Element	0.004579
Tungsten	Element	0.004403
Aluminum	Element	0.004308
Copper	Element	0.004041
Silver	Element	0.003819
Platinum	Element	0.003729
Gold	Element	0.003715
Zinc	Element	0.003847
Steel*	Alloy	0.003
Nichrome	Alloy	0.00017
Nichrome V	Alloy	0.00013
Manganin	Alloy	+/- 0.000015
Constantan	Alloy	-0.000074

* = Steel alloy at 99.5 percent iron, 0.5 percent carbon

3.5 Critical temperatures for superconductors

Critical temperatures given in Kelvins

Material	Element/Alloy	Critical temperature(K)
Aluminum	Element	1.20
Cadmium	Element	0.56
Lead	Element	7.2
Mercury	Element	4.16
Niobium	Element	8.70
Thorium	Element	1.37
Tin	Element	3.72
Titanium	Element	0.39
Uranium	ELement	1.0
Zinc	Element	0.91
Niobium/Tin	Alloy	18.1
Cupric sulphide	Compound	1.6

Critical temperatures, high temperature superconuctors in Kelvins

Material	Critical temperature(K)
$HgBa_2Ca_2Cu_3O_{8+d}$	150 (23.5 GPa pressure)
$HgBa_2Ca_2Cu_3O_{8+d}$	133
$Tl_2Ba_2Ca_2Cu_3O_{10}$	125
$YBa_2Cu_3O_7$	90
$La_{1.85}Sr_{0.15}CuO_4$	40
Cs_3C_{60}	40 (15 Kbar pressure)
$Ba_{0.6}K_{0.4}BiO_3$	30
$Nd_{1.85}Ce_{0.15}CuO_4$	22
K_3C_{60}	19
$PbMo_6S_8$	12.6

Note: all critical temperatures given at zero magnetic field strength.

3.6 Dielectric strengths for insulators

Dielectric strength in kilovolts per inch (kV/in):

Material*	Dielectric strength
Vacuum	20
Air	20 to 75
Porcelain	40 to 200
Paraffin Wax	200 to 300
Transformer Oil	400
Bakelite	300 to 550
Rubber	450 to 700
Shellac	900
Paper	1250
Teflon	1500
Glass	2000 to 3000
Mica	5000

* = Materials listed are specially prepared for electrical use

3.7 Data

Tables of specific resistance and temperature coefficient of resistance for elemental materials (not alloys) were derived from figures found in the 78th edition of the CRC Handbook of Chemistry and Physics. Superconductivity data from Collier's Encyclopedia (volume 21, 1968, page 640).

Chapter 4

ALGEBRA REFERENCE

Contents

4.1 Basic identities

$a + 0 = a$ $1a = a$ $0a = 0$

$\frac{a}{1} = a$ $\frac{0}{a} = 0$ $\frac{a}{a} = 1$

$\frac{a}{0} = \textit{undefined}$

Note: while division by zero is popularly thought to be equal to infinity, this is not technically true. In some practical applications it may be helpful to think the result of such a fraction *approaching* positive infinity as a positive denominator *approaches* zero (imagine calculating current I=E/R in a circuit with resistance approaching zero – current would approach infinity), but the actual fraction of anything divided by zero is undefined in the scope of either real or complex numbers.

4.2 Arithmetic properties

4.2.1 The associative property

In addition and multiplication, terms may be arbitrarily *associated* with each other through the use of parentheses:

$a + (b + c) = (a + b) + c$ $a(bc) = (ab)c$

4.2.2 The commutative property

In addition and multiplication, terms may be arbitrarily interchanged, or *commutated*:

$a + b = b + a$ $ab=ba$

4.2.3 The distributive property

$a(b + c) = ab + ac$

4.3 Properties of exponents

$a^m a^n = a^{m+n}$ $(ab)^m = a^m b^m$

$(a^m)^n = a^{mn}$ $\frac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$

4.4 Radicals

4.4.1 Definition of a radical

When people talk of a "square root," they're referring to a radical with a root of 2. This is mathematically equivalent to a number raised to the power of 1/2. This equivalence is useful to know when using a calculator to determine a strange root. Suppose for example you needed to find the fourth root of a number, but your calculator lacks a "4th root" button or function. If it has a y^x function (which any scientific calculator should have), you can find the fourth root by raising that number to the 1/4 power, or $x^{0.25}$.

$$\sqrt[x]{a} = a^{1/x}$$

It is important to remember that when solving for an *even* root (square root, fourth root, etc.) of any number, there are *two* valid answers. For example, most people know that the square root of nine is three, but *negative* three is also a valid answer, since $(-3)^2 = 9$ just as $3^2 = 9$.

4.4.2 Properties of radicals

$$\sqrt[x]{a}^{x} = a \qquad \sqrt[x]{a^x} = a$$

$$\sqrt[x]{ab} = \sqrt[x]{a}\ \sqrt[x]{b}$$

$$\sqrt[x]{\frac{a}{b}} = \frac{\sqrt[x]{a}}{\sqrt[x]{b}}$$

4.5 Important constants

4.5.1 Euler's number

Euler's constant is an important value for exponential functions, especially scientific applications involving decay (such as the decay of a radioactive substance). It is especially important in calculus due to its uniquely self-similar properties of integration and differentiation.

e approximately equals:
2.71828 18284 59045 23536 02874 71352 66249 77572 47093 69996

$$e = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!}$$

$$\frac{1}{0!} + \frac{1}{1!} + \frac{1}{2!} + \frac{1}{3!} + \cdots \frac{1}{n!}$$

4.5.2 Pi

Pi (π) is defined as the ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter.

```
Pi approximately equals:
3.14159 26535 89793 23846 26433 83279 50288 41971 69399 37511
```

Note: For both Euler's constant (*e*) and pi (π), the spaces shown between each set of five digits have no mathematical significance. They are placed there just to make it easier for your eyes to "piece" the number into five-digit groups when manually copying.

4.6 Logarithms

4.6.1 Definition of a logarithm

If:

$b^y = x$

Then:

$\log_b x = y$

Where,

b = "Base" of the logarithm

"log" denotes a common logarithm (base = 10), while "ln" denotes a natural logarithm (base = e).

4.6.2 Properties of logarithms

$(\log a) + (\log b) = \log ab$

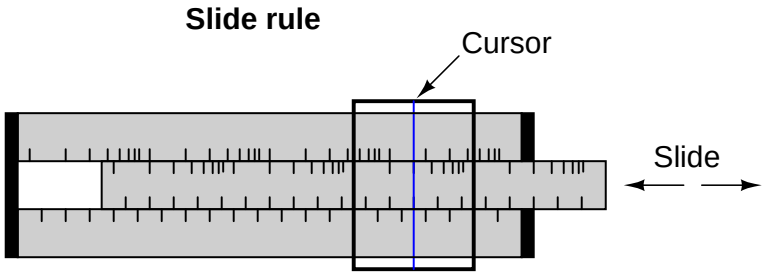
$(\log a) - (\log b) = \log \frac{a}{b}$

$\log a^m = (m)(\log a)$

$a^{(\log m)} = m$

These properties of logarithms come in handy for performing complex multiplication and division operations. They are an example of something called a *transform function*, whereby one type of mathematical operation is transformed into another type of mathematical operation that is simpler to solve. Using a table of logarithm figures, one can multiply or divide numbers by adding or subtracting their logarithms, respectively. then looking up that logarithm figure in the table and seeing what the final product or quotient is.

Slide rules work on this principle of logarithms by performing multiplication and division through addition and subtraction of distances on the slide.



Marks on a slide rule's scales are spaced in a logarithmic fashion, so that a linear positioning of the scale or cursor results in a nonlinear indication as read on the scale(s). Adding or subtracting lengths on these logarithmic scales results in an indication equivalent to the product or quotient, respectively, of those lengths.

Most slide rules were also equipped with special scales for trigonometric functions, powers, roots, and other useful arithmetic functions.

4.7 Factoring equivalencies

$x^2 - y^2 = (x+y)(x-y)$

$x^3 - y^3 = (x-y)(x^2 + xy + y^2)$

4.8 The quadratic formula

For a polynomial expression in the form of: $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

4.9 Sequences

4.9.1 Arithmetic sequences

An *arithmetic sequence* is a series of numbers obtained by adding (or subtracting) the same value with each step. A child's counting sequence (1, 2, 3, 4, . . .) is a simple arithmetic sequence, where the *common difference* is 1: that is, each adjacent number in the sequence differs by a value of one. An arithmetic sequence counting only even numbers (2, 4, 6, 8, . . .) or only odd numbers (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, . . .) would have a common difference of 2.

In the standard notation of sequences, a lower-case letter "a" represents an element (a single number) in the sequence. The term "a_n" refers to the element at the n^{th} step in the sequence. For example, "a_3" in an even-counting (common difference = 2) arithmetic sequence starting at 2 would be the number 6, "a" representing 4 and "a_1" representing the starting point of the sequence (given in this example as 2).

A capital letter "A" represents the *sum* of an arithmetic sequence. For instance, in the same even-counting sequence starting at 2, A_4 is equal to the sum of all elements from a_1 through a_4, which of course would be 2 + 4 + 6 + 8, or 20.

$a_n = a_{n-1} + d$ $\qquad$ $a_n = a_1 + d(n-1)$

Where:

d = The "common difference"

Example of an arithmetic sequence:

-7, -3, 1, 5, 9, 13, 17, 21, 25 . . .

$A_n = a_1 + a_2 + \ldots a_n$

$$A_n = \frac{n}{2}(a_1 + a_n)$$

4.9.2 Geometric sequences

A *geometric sequence*, on the other hand, is a series of numbers obtained by multiplying (or dividing) by the same value with each step. A binary place-weight sequence (1, 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64, . . .) is a simple geometric sequence, where the *common ratio* is 2: that is, each adjacent number in the sequence differs by a *factor* of two.

$a_n = r(a_{n-1})$ $a_n = a_1(r^{n-1})$

Where:

r = The "common ratio"

Example of a geometric sequence:

3, 12, 48, 192, 768, 3072 . . .

$A_n = a_1 + a_2 + \ldots a_n$

$$A_n = \frac{a_1(1 - r^n)}{1 - r}$$

4.10 Factorials

4.10.1 Definition of a factorial

Denoted by the symbol "!" after an integer; the product of that integer and all integers in descent to 1.

Example of a factorial:

5! = 5 x 4 x 3 x 2 x 1

5! = 120

4.10.2 Strange factorials

0! = 1 1! = 1

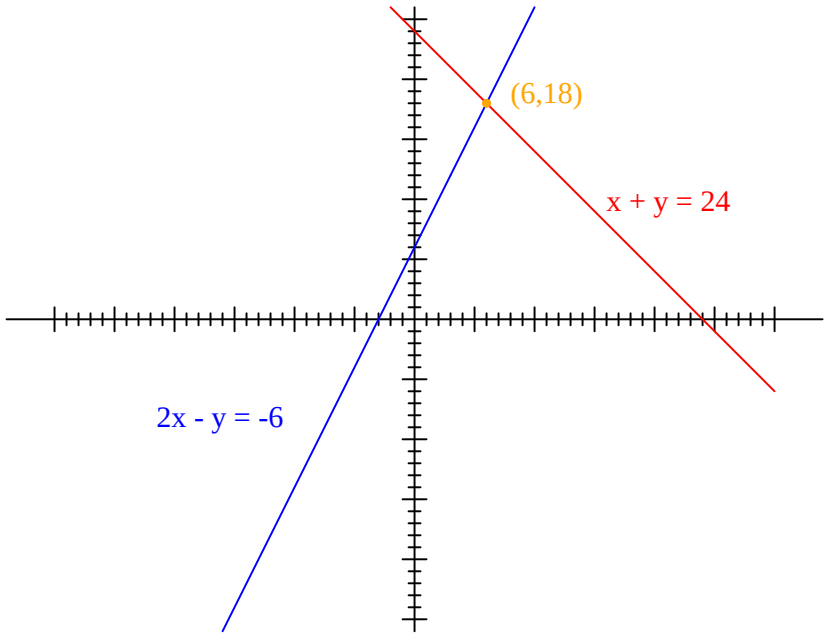
4.11 Solving simultaneous equations

The terms *simultaneous equations* and *systems of equations* refer to conditions where two or more unknown variables are related to each other through an equal number of equations. Consider the following example:

$$x + y = 24$$

$$2x - y = -6$$

For this set of equations, there is but a single combination of values for x and y that will satisfy both. Either equation, considered separately, has an infinitude of valid (x,y) solutions, but *together* there is only one. Plotted on a graph, this condition becomes obvious:



Each line is actually a continuum of points representing possible x and y solution pairs for each equation. Each equation, separately, has an infinite number of ordered pair (x,y) solutions. There is only one point where the two linear functions x + y = 24 and 2x - y = -6 intersect (where one of their many independent solutions happen to work for both equations), and that is where x is equal to a value of 6 and y is equal to a value of 18.

Usually, though, graphing is not a very efficient way to determine the simultaneous solution set for two or more equations. It is especially impractical for systems of three or more variables. In a three-variable system, for example, the solution would be found by the point intersection of three planes in a three-dimensional coordinate space – not an easy scenario to visualize.

4.11.1 Substitution method

Several algebraic techniques exist to solve simultaneous equations. Perhaps the easiest to comprehend is the *substitution* method. Take, for instance, our two-variable example problem:

$$x + y = 24$$

$$2x - y = -6$$

In the substitution method, we manipulate one of the equations such that one variable is defined in terms of the other:

$$x + y = 24$$

$$\Downarrow$$

$$y = 24 - x$$

Defining y *in terms of* x

Then, we take this new *definition* of one variable and *substitute* it for the same variable in the other equation. In this case, we take the definition of y, which is 24 - x and substitute this for the y term found in the other equation:

$$y = 24 - x$$

$$\downarrow \textit{ substitute}$$

$$2x - y = -6$$

$$\Downarrow$$

$$2x - (24 - x) = -6$$

Now that we have an equation with just a single variable (x), we can solve it using "normal" algebraic techniques:

$$2x - (24 - x) = -6$$

$$\Downarrow \text{ Distributive property}$$

$$2x - 24 + x = -6$$

$$\Downarrow \text{ Combining like terms}$$

$$3x - 24 = -6$$

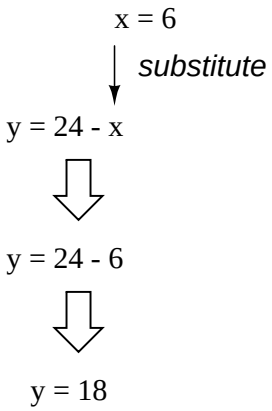
$$\Downarrow \text{ Adding 24 to each side}$$

$$3x = 18$$

$$\Downarrow \text{ Dividing both sides by 3}$$

$$x = 6$$

Now that x is known, we can plug this value into any of the original equations and obtain a value for y. Or, to save us some work, we can plug this value (6) into the equation we just generated to define y in terms of x, being that it is already in a form to solve for y:

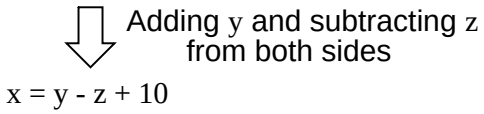


Applying the substitution method to systems of three or more variables involves a similar pattern, only with more work involved. This is generally true for any method of solution: the number of steps required for obtaining solutions increases rapidly with each additional variable in the system.

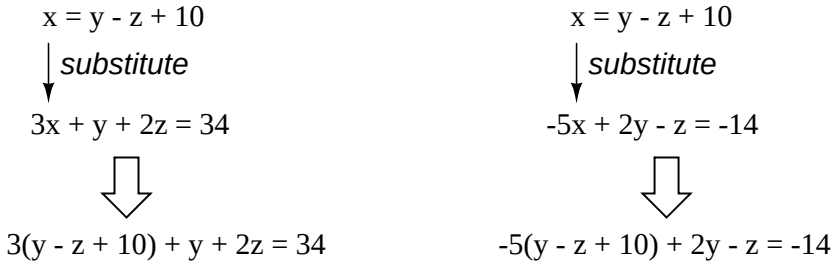
To solve for three unknown variables, we need at least three equations. Consider this example:

$$x - y + z = 10$$
$$3x + y + 2z = 34$$
$$-5x + 2y - z = -14$$

Being that the first equation has the simplest coefficients (1, -1, and 1, for x, y, and z, respectively), it seems logical to use it to develop a definition of one variable in terms of the other two. In this example, I'll solve for x in terms of y and z:



Now, we can substitute this definition of x where x appears in the other two equations:



Reducing these two equations to their simplest forms:

$3(y - z + 10) + y + 2z = 34$ $\qquad$ $-5(y - z + 10) + 2y - z = -14$

⇩ Distributive property ⇩

$3y - 3z + 30 + y + 2z = 34$ $\qquad$ $-5y + 5z - 50 + 2y - z = -14$

⇩ Combining like terms ⇩

$4y - z + 30 = 34$ $\qquad$ $-3y + 4z - 50 = -14$

⇩ Moving constant values to right of the "=" sign ⇩

$4y - z = 4$ $\qquad$ $-3y + 4z = 36$

So far, our efforts have reduced the system from three variables in three equations to two variables in two equations. Now, we can apply the substitution technique again to the two equations `4y - z = 4` and `-3y + 4z = 36` to solve for either `y` or `z`. First, I'll manipulate the first equation to define `z` in terms of `y`:

$4y - z = 4$

⇩ Adding z to both sides; subtracting 4 from both sides

$z = 4y - 4$

Next, we'll substitute this definition of `z` in terms of `y` where we see `z` in the other equation:

$z = 4y - 4$

↓ *substitute*

$-3y + 4z = 36$

⇩

$-3y + 4(4y - 4) = 36$

⇩ Distributive property

$-3y + 16y - 16 = 36$

⇩ Combining like terms

$13y - 16 = 36$

⇩ Adding 16 to both sides

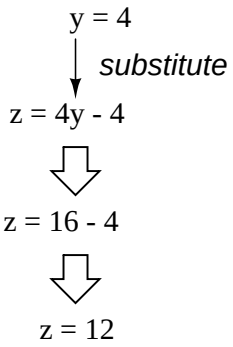
$13y = 52$

⇩ Dividing both sides by 13

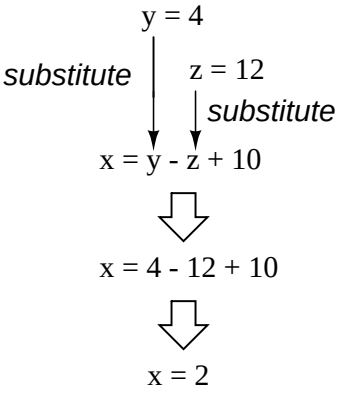
$y = 4$

Now that `y` is a known value, we can plug it into the equation defining `z` in terms of `y` and

obtain a figure for z:



Now, with values for y and z known, we can plug these into the equation where we defined x in terms of y and z, to obtain a value for x:



In closing, we've found values for x, y, and z of 2, 4, and 12, respectively, that satisfy all three equations.

4.11.2 Addition method

While the substitution method may be the easiest to grasp on a conceptual level, there are other methods of solution available to us. One such method is the so-called *addition* method, whereby equations are added to one another for the purpose of canceling variable terms.

Let's take our two-variable system used to demonstrate the substitution method:

$$x + y = 24$$

$$2x - y = -6$$

One of the most-used rules of algebra is that you may perform any arithmetic operation you wish to an equation so long as you do it *equally to both sides*. With reference to addition, this means we may add any quantity we wish to both sides of an equation – so long as its the *same* quantity – without altering the truth of the equation.

An option we have, then, is to add the corresponding sides of the equations together to form a new equation. Since each equation is an expression of equality (the same quantity on either

side of the = sign), adding the left-hand side of one equation to the left-hand side of the other equation is valid so long as we add the two equations' right-hand sides together as well. In our example equation set, for instance, we may add x + y to 2x - y, and add 24 and -6 together as well to form a new equation. What benefit does this hold for us? Examine what happens when we do this to our example equation set:

$$\begin{array}{r} x + y = 24 \\ +\ 2x - y = -6 \\ \hline 3x + 0 = 18 \end{array}$$

Because the top equation happened to contain a positive y term while the bottom equation happened to contain a negative y term, these two terms canceled each other in the process of addition, leaving no y term in the sum. What we have left is a new equation, but one with only a single unknown variable, x! This allows us to easily solve for the value of x:

$$3x + 0 = 18$$

⇩ Dropping the 0 term

$$3x = 18$$

⇩ Dividing both sides by 3

$$x = 6$$

Once we have a known value for x, of course, determining y's value is a simply matter of substitution (replacing x with the number 6) into one of the original equations. In this example, the technique of adding the equations together worked well to produce an equation with a single unknown variable. What about an example where things aren't so simple? Consider the following equation set:

$$2x + 2y = 14$$

$$3x + y = 13$$

We could add these two equations together – this being a completely valid algebraic operation – but it would not profit us in the goal of obtaining values for x and y:

$$\begin{array}{r} 2x + 2y = 14 \\ +\ 3x + y = 13 \\ \hline 5x + 3y = 27 \end{array}$$

The resulting equation still contains two unknown variables, just like the original equations do, and so we're no further along in obtaining a solution. However, what if we could manipulate one of the equations so as to have a negative term that *would* cancel the respective term in the other equation when added? Then, the system would reduce to a single equation with a single unknown variable just as with the last (fortuitous) example.

If we could only turn the y term in the lower equation into a - 2y term, so that when the two equations were added together, both y terms in the equations would cancel, leaving us with only an x term, this would bring us closer to a solution. Fortunately, this is not difficult to do. If we *multiply* each and every term of the lower equation by a -2, it will produce the result

we seek:

$$-2(3x + y) = -2(13)$$

⇩ Distributive property

$$-6x - 2y = -26$$

Now, we may add this new equation to the original, upper equation:

$$\begin{array}{r} 2x + 2y = 14 \\ +\ -6x - 2y = -26 \\ \hline -4x + 0y = -12 \end{array}$$

Solving for x, we obtain a value of 3:

$$-4x + 0y = -12$$

⇩ Dropping the 0 term

$$-4x = -12$$

⇩ Dividing both sides by -4

$$x = 3$$

Substituting this new-found value for x into one of the original equations, the value of y is easily determined:

$$x = 3$$

↓ *substitute*

$$2x + 2y = 14$$

⇩

$$6 + 2y = 14$$

⇩ Subtracting 6 from both sides

$$2y = 8$$

⇩ Dividing both sides by 2

$$y = 4$$

Using this solution technique on a three-variable system is a bit more complex. As with substitution, you must use this technique to reduce the three-equation system of three variables down to two equations with two variables, then apply it again to obtain a single equation with one unknown variable. To demonstrate, I'll use the three-variable equation system from the substitution section:

$$x - y + z = 10$$
$$3x + y + 2z = 34$$
$$-5x + 2y - z = -14$$

Being that the top equation has coefficient values of `1` for each variable, it will be an easy equation to manipulate and use as a cancellation tool. For instance, if we wish to cancel the `3x` term from the middle equation, all we need to do is take the top equation, multiply each of its terms by `-3`, then add it to the middle equation like this:

$$x - y + z = 10$$

⇩ Multiply both sides by -3

$$-3(x - y + z) = -3(10)$$

⇩ Distributive property

$$-3x + 3y - 3z = -30$$

(Adding)
$$\begin{array}{r} -3x + 3y - 3z = -30 \\ +\ 3x + y + 2z = 34 \\ \hline 0x + 4y - z = 4 \end{array}$$

or

$$4y - z = 4$$

We can rid the bottom equation of its `-5x` term in the same manner: take the original top equation, multiply each of its terms by `5`, then add that modified equation to the bottom equation, leaving a new equation with only `y` and `z` terms:

$$x - y + z = 10$$

⇩ Multiply both sides by 5

$$5(x - y + z) = 5(10)$$

⇩ Distributive property

$$5x - 5y + 5z = 50$$

(Adding)

$$\begin{array}{r} 5x - 5y + 5z = 50 \\ +\ -5x + 2y - z = -14 \\ \hline 0x - 3y + 4z = 36 \end{array}$$

or

$$-3y + 4z = 36$$

At this point, we have two equations with the same two unknown variables, y and z:

$$4y - z = 4$$

$$-3y + 4z = 36$$

By inspection, it should be evident that the -z term of the upper equation could be leveraged to cancel the 4z term in the lower equation if only we multiply each term of the upper equation by 4 and add the two equations together:

$$4y - z = 4$$

⇩ Multiply both sides by 4

$$4(4y - z) = 4(4)$$

⇩ Distributive property

$$16y - 4z = 16$$

(Adding)

$$\begin{array}{r} 16y - 4z = 16 \\ +\ -3y + 4z = 36 \\ \hline 13y + 0z = 52 \end{array}$$

or

$$13y = 52$$

Taking the new equation 13y = 52 and solving for y (by dividing both sides by 13), we get a value of 4 for y. Substituting this value of 4 for y in either of the two-variable equations

allows us to solve for z. Substituting both values of y and z into any one of the original, three-variable equations allows us to solve for x. The final result (I'll spare you the algebraic steps, since you should be familiar with them by now!) is that x = 2, y = 4, and z = 12.

4.12 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

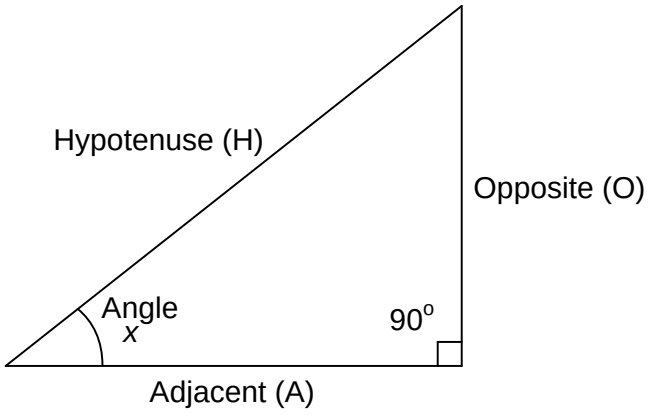
Chirvasuta Constantin (April 2, 2003): Pointed out error in quadratic equation formula.

Chapter 5

TRIGONOMETRY REFERENCE

Contents

5.1 Right triangle trigonometry



A *right triangle* is defined as having one angle precisely equal to 90^o (a *right angle*).

5.1.1 Trigonometric identities

$\sin x = \frac{O}{H}$ $\cos x = \frac{A}{H}$ $\tan x = \frac{O}{A}$ $\tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$

$\csc x = \frac{H}{O}$ $\sec x = \frac{H}{A}$ $\cot x = \frac{A}{O}$ $\cot x = \frac{\cos x}{\sin x}$

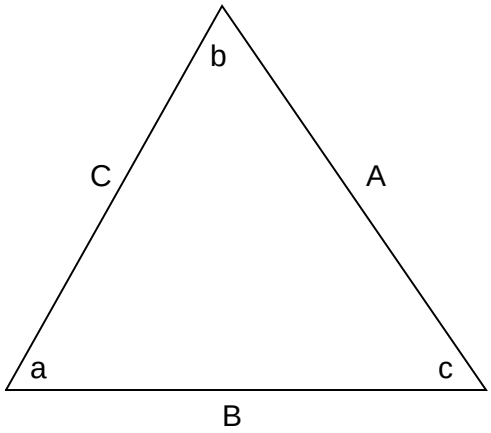
H is the *Hypotenuse*, always being opposite the right angle. Relative to angle x, O is the *Opposite* and A is the *Adjacent*.

"Arc" functions such as "arcsin", "arccos", and "arctan" are the complements of normal trigonometric functions. These functions return an angle for a ratio input. For example, if the tangent of 45^o is equal to 1, then the "arctangent" (arctan) of 1 is 45^o. "Arc" functions are useful for finding angles in a right triangle if the side lengths are known.

5.1.2 The Pythagorean theorem

$H^2 = A^2 + O^2$

5.2 Non-right triangle trigonometry



5.2.1 The Law of Sines (for *any* triangle)

$$\frac{\sin a}{A} = \frac{\sin b}{B} = \frac{\sin c}{C}$$

5.2.2 The Law of Cosines (for *any* triangle)

$A^2 = B^2 + C^2 - (2BC)(\cos a)$

$B^2 = A^2 + C^2 - (2AC)(\cos b)$

$C^2 = A^2 + B^2 - (2AB)(\cos c)$

5.3 Trigonometric equivalencies

$\sin -x = -\sin x$ $\cos -x = \cos x$ $\tan -t = -\tan t$

$\csc -t = -\csc t$ $\sec -t = \sec t$ $\cot -t = -\cot t$

$\sin 2x = 2(\sin x)(\cos x)$ $\cos 2x = (\cos^2 x) - (\sin^2 x)$

$$\tan 2t = \frac{2(\tan x)}{1 - \tan^2 x}$$

$$\sin^2 x = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\cos 2x}{2} \qquad \cos^2 x = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\cos 2x}{2}$$

5.4 Hyperbolic functions

$$\sinh x = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}$$

$$\cosh x = \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2}$$

$$\tanh x = \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x}$$

Note: all angles (x) must be expressed in units of *radians* for these hyperbolic functions. There are 2π radians in a circle (360^o).

5.5 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Harvey Lew (??? 2003): Corrected typographical error: ”tangent” should have been ”cotangent”.

Chapter 6

CALCULUS REFERENCE

Contents

6.1 Rules for limits

$$\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) + g(x)] = \lim_{x \to a} f(x) + \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$$

$$\lim_{x \to a} [f(x) - g(x)] = \lim_{x \to a} f(x) - \lim_{x \to a} g(x)$$

$$\lim_{x \to a} [f(x)\, g(x)] = [\lim_{x \to a} f(x)] \, [\lim_{x \to a} g(x)]$$

6.2 Derivative of a constant

If:

$f(x) = c$

Then:

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(x) = 0$$

("c" being a constant)

6.3 Common derivatives

$$\frac{d}{dx} x^n = nx^{n-1}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \ln x = \frac{1}{x}$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} a^x = (\ln a)(a^x)$$

6.4 Derivatives of power functions of *e*

If:

$f(x) = e^x$

Then:

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(x) = e^x$$

If:

$f(x) = e^{g(x)}$

Then:

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(x) = e^{g(x)} \frac{d}{dx} g(x)$$

Example:

$f(x) = e^{(x^2 + 2x)}$

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(x) = e^{(x^2 + 2x)} \frac{d}{dx} (x^2 + 2x)$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(x) = (e^{(x^2 + 2x)})(2x + 2)$$

6.5 Trigonometric derivatives

$$\frac{d}{dx} \sin x = \cos x \qquad \frac{d}{dx} \cos x = -\sin x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \tan x = \sec^2 x \qquad \frac{d}{dx} \cot x = -\csc^2 x$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} \sec x = (\sec x)(\tan x) \qquad \frac{d}{dx} \csc x = (-\csc x)(\cot x)$$

6.6 Rules for derivatives

6.6.1 Constant rule

$$\frac{d}{dx} [cf(x)] = c \frac{d}{dx} f(x)$$

6.6.2 Rule of sums

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) + g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx} f(x) + \frac{d}{dx} g(x)$$

6.6.3 Rule of differences

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) - g(x)] = \frac{d}{dx} f(x) - \frac{d}{dx} g(x)$$

6.6.4 Product rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}\,[f(x)\,g(x)] = f(x)[\frac{d}{dx}\,g(x)] + g(x)[\frac{d}{dx}\,f(x)]$$

6.6.5 Quotient rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}\,\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{g(x)[\frac{d}{dx}\,f(x)] - f(x)[\frac{d}{dx}\,g(x)]}{[g(x)]^2}$$

6.6.6 Power rule

$$\frac{d}{dx}\,f(x)^a = a[f(x)]^{a-1}\frac{d}{dx}\,f(x)$$

6.6.7 Functions of other functions

$$\frac{d}{dx}\,f[g(x)]$$

Break the function into two functions:

$u = g(x)$ *and* $y = f(u)$

Solve:

$$\frac{dy}{dx}\,f[g(x)] = \frac{dy}{du}f(u)\;\frac{du}{dx}g(x)$$

6.7 The antiderivative (Indefinite integral)

If:

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(x) = g(x)$$

Then:

$g(x)$ is the *derivative* of $f(x)$

$f(x)$ is the *antiderivative* of $g(x)$

$$\int g(x)\,dx = f(x) + c$$

Notice something important here: taking the derivative of f(x) may precisely give you g(x), but taking the antiderivative of g(x) does not necessarily give you f(x) in its original form. Example:

$$f(x) = 3x^2 + 5$$

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(x) = 6x$$

$$\int 6x\,dx = 3x^2 + c$$

Note that the constant c is unknown! The original function f(x) could have been $3x^2 + 5$, $3x^2 + 10$, $3x^2 +$ *anything*, and the derivative of f(x) would have still been 6x. Determining the antiderivative of a function, then, is a bit less certain than determining the derivative of a function.

6.8 Common antiderivatives

$$\int x^n\,dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + c$$

$$\int \frac{1}{x}\,dx = (\ln |x|) + c$$

Where,

c = a constant

$$\int a^x\,dx = \frac{a^x}{\ln a} + c$$

6.9 Antiderivatives of power functions of *e*

$\int e^x \, dx = e^x + c$

Note: this is a very unique and useful property of e. As in the case of derivatives, the antiderivative of such a function is that same function. In the case of the antiderivative, a constant term "c" is added to the end as well.

6.10 Rules for antiderivatives

6.10.1 Constant rule

$\int cf(x) \, dx = c \int f(x) \, dx$

6.10.2 Rule of sums

$\int [f(x) + g(x)] \, dx = [\int f(x) \, dx \,] + [\int g(x) \, dx \,]$

6.10.3 Rule of differences

$\int [f(x) - g(x)] \, dx = [\int f(x) \, dx \,] - [\int g(x) \, dx \,]$

6.11 Definite integrals and the fundamental theorem of calculus

If:

$\int f(x) \, dx = g(x)$ *or* $\frac{d}{dx} \, g(x) = f(x)$

Then:

$\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = g(b) - g(a)$

Where,

a and b are constants

If:

$$\int f(x)\,dx = g(x) \quad \textit{and} \quad a = 0$$

Then:

$$\int_0^x f(x)\,dx = g(x)$$

6.12 Differential equations

As opposed to normal equations where the solution is a number, a differential equation is one where the solution is actually a function, and which at least one derivative of that unknown function is part of the equation.

As with finding antiderivatives of a function, we are often left with a solution that encompasses more than one possibility (consider the many possible values of the constant ”c” typically found in antiderivatives). The set of functions which answer any differential equation is called the ”general solution” for that differential equation. Any one function out of that set is referred to as a ”particular solution” for that differential equation. The variable of reference for differentiation and integration within the differential equation is known as the ”independent variable.”

Chapter 7

USING THE *SPICE* CIRCUIT SIMULATION PROGRAM

Contents

7.1 Introduction

"With Electronics Workbench, you can create circuit schematics that look just the same as those you're already familiar with on paper – plus you can flip the power switch so the schematic behaves like a real circuit. With other electronics simulators, you may have to type in SPICE node lists as text files – an abstract representation of a circuit beyond the capabilities of all but advanced electronics engineers."

(Electronics Workbench User's guide – version 4, page 7)

This introduction comes from the operating manual for a circuit simulation program called *Electronics Workbench*. Using a graphic interface, it allows the user to draw a circuit schematic and then have the computer analyze that circuit, displaying the results in graphic form. It is a very valuable analysis tool, but it has its shortcomings. For one, it and other graphic programs like it tend to be unreliable when analyzing complex circuits, as the translation from picture to computer code is not quite the exact science we would want it to be (yet). Secondly, due to its graphics requirements, it tends to need a significant amount of computational "horsepower" to run, and a computer operating system that supports graphics. Thirdly, these graphic programs can be costly.

However, underneath the graphics skin of *Electronics Workbench* lies a robust (and free!) program called SPICE, which analyzes a circuit based on a text-file description of the circuit's components and connections. What the user pays for with *Electronics Workbench* and other graphic circuit analysis programs is the convenient "point and click" interface, while SPICE does the actual mathematical analysis.

By itself, SPICE does not require a graphic interface and demands little in system resources. It is also very reliable. The makers of Electronic Workbench would like you to think that using SPICE in its native text mode is a task suited for rocket scientists, but I'm writing this to prove them wrong. SPICE is fairly easy to use for simple circuits, and its non-graphic interface actually lends itself toward the analysis of circuits that can be difficult to draw. I think it was the programming expert Donald Knuth who quipped, "What you see is all you get" when it comes to computer applications. Graphics may look more attractive, but abstracted interfaces (text) are actually more efficient.

This document is not intended to be an exhaustive tutorial on how to use SPICE. I'm merely trying to show the interested user how to apply it to the analysis of simple circuits, as an alternative to proprietary ($$$) and buggy programs. Once you learn the basics, there are other tutorials better suited to take you further. Using SPICE – a program originally intended to develop integrated circuits – to analyze some of the really simple circuits showcased here may seem a bit like cutting butter with a chain saw, but it works!

All options and examples have been tested on SPICE version 2g6 on both MS-DOS and Linux operating systems. As far as I know, I'm not using features specific to version 2g6, so these simple functions should work on most versions of SPICE.

7.2 History of SPICE

SPICE is a computer program designed to simulate analog electronic circuits. It original intent was for the development of integrated circuits, from which it derived its name: **S**imulation **P**rogram with **I**ntegrated **C**ircuit **E**mphasis.

The origin of SPICE traces back to another circuit simulation program called CANCER. Developed by professor Ronald Rohrer of U.C. Berkeley along with some of his students in the late 1960's, CANCER continued to be improved through the early 1970's. When Rohrer left Berkeley, CANCER was re-written and re-named to SPICE, released as version 1 to the public domain in May of 1972. Version 2 of SPICE was released in 1975 (version 2g6 – the version used in this book – is a minor revision of this 1975 release). Instrumental in the decision to release SPICE as a public-domain computer program was professor Donald Pederson of Berkeley, who believed that all significant technical progress happens when information is freely shared. I for one thank him for his vision.

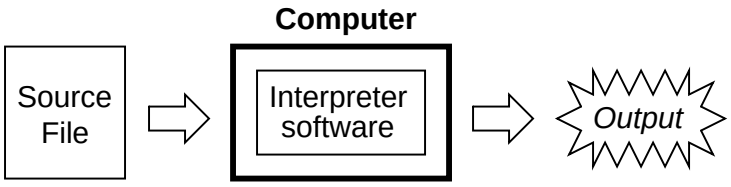
A major improvement came about in March of 1985 with version 3 of SPICE (also released under public domain). Written in the C language rather than FORTRAN, version 3 incorporated additional transistor types (the MESFET, for example), and switch elements. Version 3 also allowed the use of alphabetical node labels rather than only numbers. Instructions written for version 2 of SPICE should still run in version 3, though.

Despite the additional power of version 3, I have chosen to use version 2g6 throughout this book because it seems to be the easiest version to acquire and run on different computer systems.

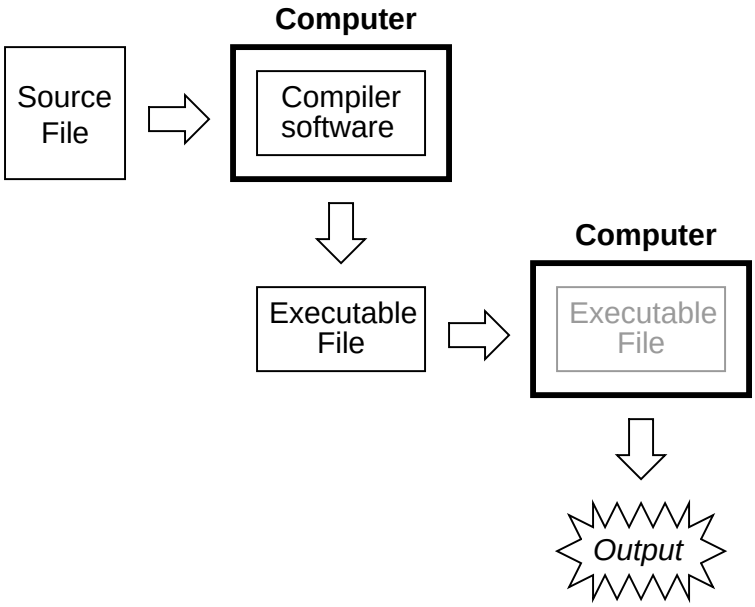
7.3 Fundamentals of SPICE programming

Programming a circuit simulation with SPICE is much like programming in any other computer language: you must type the commands as text in a file, save that file to the computer's hard drive, and then process the contents of that file with a program (compiler or interpreter) that understands such commands.

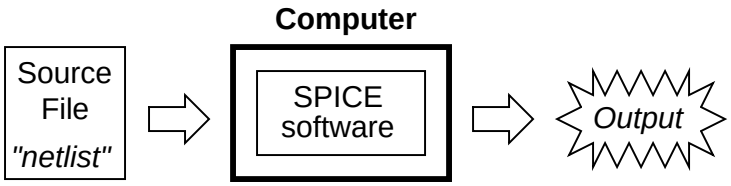
In an interpreted computer language, the computer holds a special program called an *interpreter* that translates the program you wrote (the so-called *source file*) into the computer's own language, on the fly, as its being executed:



In a compiled computer language, the program you wrote is translated all at once into the computer's own language by a special program called a *compiler*. After the program you've written has been "compiled," the resulting *executable* file needs no further translation to be understood directly by the computer. It can now be "run" on a computer whether or not compiler software has been installed on that computer:



SPICE is an interpreted language. In order for a computer to be able to understand the SPICE instructions you type, it must have the SPICE program (interpreter) installed:



SPICE source files are commonly referred to as "netlists," although they are sometimes known as "decks" with each line in the file being called a "card." Cute, don't you think? Netlists are created by a person like yourself typing instructions line-by-line using a word processor or text editor. Text editors are much preferred over word processors for any type of computer programming, as they produce pure ASCII text with no special embedded codes for text high-

lighting (like *italic* or **boldface** fonts), which are uninterpretable by interpreter and compiler software.

As in general programming, the source file you create for SPICE must follow certain conventions of programming. It is a computer language in itself, albeit a simple one. Having programmed in BASIC and C/C++, and having some experience reading PASCAL and FORTRAN programs, it is my opinion that the language of SPICE is much simpler than any of these. It is about the same complexity as a markup language such as HTML, perhaps less so.

There is a cycle of steps to be followed in using SPICE to analyze a circuit. The cycle starts when you first invoke the text editing program and make your first draft of the netlist. The next step is to run SPICE on that new netlist and see what the results are. If you are a novice user of SPICE, your first attempts at creating a good netlist will be fraught with small errors of syntax. Don't worry – as every computer programmer knows, proficiency comes with lots of practice. If your trial run produces error messages or results that are obviously incorrect, you need to re-invoke the text editing program and modify the netlist. After modifying the netlist, you need to run SPICE again and check the results. The sequence, then, looks something like this:

- Compose a new netlist with a text editing program. Save that netlist to a file with a name of your choice.
- Run SPICE on that netlist and observe the results.
- If the results contain errors, start up the text editing program again and modify the netlist.
- Run SPICE again and observe the new results.
- If there are still errors in the output of SPICE, re-edit the netlist again with the text editing program. Repeat this cycle of edit/run as many times as necessary until you are getting the desired results.
- Once you've "debugged" your netlist and are getting good results, run SPICE again, only this time redirecting the output to a new file instead of just observing it on the computer screen.
- Start up a text editing program *or* a word processor program and open the SPICE output file you just created. Modify that file to suit your formatting needs and either save those changes to disk and/or print them out on paper.

To "run" a SPICE "program," you need to type in a command at a terminal prompt interface, such as that found in MS-DOS, UNIX, or the MS-Windows DOS prompt option:

```
spice < example.cir
```

The word "spice" invokes the SPICE interpreting program (providing that the SPICE software has been installed on the computer!), the "<" symbol redirects the contents of the source file to the SPICE interpreter, and `example.cir` is the name of the source file for this circuit example. The file extension "`.cir`" is not mandatory; I have seen "`.inp`" (for "input") and just

plain ".txt" work well, too. It will even work when the netlist file has no extension. SPICE doesn't care what you name it, so long as it has a name compatible with the filesystem of your computer (for old MS-DOS machines, for example, the filename must be no more than 8 characters in length, with a 3 character extension, and no spaces or other non-alphanumerical characters).

When this command is typed in, SPICE will read the contents of the `example.cir` file, analyze the circuit specified by that file, and send a text report to the computer terminal's standard output (usually the screen, where you can see it scroll by). A typical SPICE output is several screens worth of information, so you might want to look it over with a slight modification of the command:

```
spice < example.cir | more
```

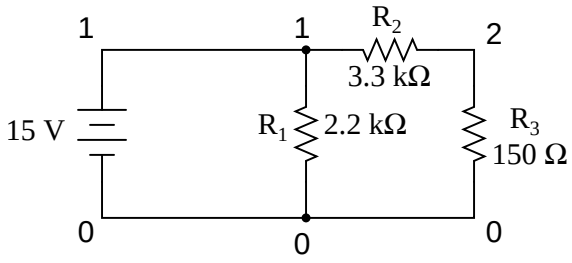
This alternative "pipes" the text output of SPICE to the "more" utility, which allows only one page to be displayed at a time. What this means (in English) is that the text output of SPICE is halted after one screen-full, and waits until the user presses a keyboard key to display the next screen-full of text. If you're just testing your example circuit file and want to check for any errors, this is a good way to do it.

```
spice < example.cir > example.txt
```

This second alternative (above) redirects the text output of SPICE to another file, called `example.txt`, where it can be viewed or printed. This option corresponds to the last step in the development cycle listed earlier. It is recommended by this author that you use this technique of "redirection" to a text file only after you've proven your example circuit netlist to work well, so that you don't waste time invoking a text editor just to see the output during the stages of "debugging."

Once you have a SPICE output stored in a `.txt` file, you can use a text editor or (better yet!) a word processor to edit the output, deleting any unnecessary banners and messages, even specifying alternative fonts to highlight the headings and/or data for a more polished appearance. Then, of course, you can print the output to paper if you so desire. Being that the direct SPICE output is plain ASCII text, such a file will be universally interpretable on any computer whether SPICE is installed on it or not. Also, the plain text format ensures that the file will be very small compared to the graphic screen-shot files generated by "point-and-click" simulators.

The netlist file format required by SPICE is quite simple. A netlist file is nothing more than a plain ASCII text file containing multiple lines of text, each line describing either a circuit component or special SPICE command. Circuit architecture is specified by assigning numbers to each component's connection points in each line, connections between components designated by common numbers. Examine the following example circuit diagram and its corresponding SPICE file. Please bear in mind that the circuit diagram exists only to make the simulation easier for human beings to understand. SPICE only understands netlists:




```
Example netlist
v1 1 0 dc 15
r1 1 0 2.2k
r2 1 2 3.3k
r3 2 0 150
.end
```

Each line of the source file shown above is explained here:

- `v1` represents the battery (voltage source 1), positive terminal numbered 1, negative terminal numbered 0, with a DC voltage output of 15 volts.
- `r1` represents resistor R_1 in the diagram, connected between points 1 and 0, with a value of 2.2 kΩ.
- `r2` represents resistor R_2 in the diagram, connected between points 1 and 2, with a value of 3.3 kΩ.
- `r3` represents resistor R_3 in the diagram, connected between points 2 and 0, with a value of 150 kΩ.

Electrically common points (or "nodes") in a SPICE circuit description share common numbers, much in the same way that wires connecting common points in a large circuit typically share common wire labels.

To simulate this circuit, the user would type those six lines of text on a text editor and save them as a file with a unique name (such as `example.cir`). Once the netlist is composed and saved to a file, the user then processes that file with one of the command-line statements shown earlier (`spice < example.cir`), and will receive this text output on their computer's screen:

```
1*******10/10/99 ******** spice 2g.6 3/15/83 ********07:32:42*****
0example netlist
0****   input listing                temperature =   27.000 deg c
v1 1 0 dc 15
r1 1 0 2.2k
r2 1 2 3.3k
r3 2 0 150
.end
```

```
*****10/10/99 ********  spice 2g.6  3/15/83 ******07:32:42******
0example netlist
0****   small signal bias solution     temperature =   27.000 deg c
node   voltage     node   voltage
(  1)   15.0000    (  2)    0.6522
voltage source currents
name       current
v1       -1.117E-02
total power dissipation   1.67E-01  watts
job concluded
0         total job time            0.02
1*******10/10/99 ********  spice 2g.6  3/15/83 ******07:32:42*****
0****   input listing                temperature =   27.000 deg c
```

SPICE begins by printing the time, date, and version used at the top of the output. It then lists the input parameters (the lines of the source file), followed by a display of DC voltage readings from each node (reference number) to ground (always reference number 0). This is followed by a list of current readings through each voltage source (in this case there's only one, v1). Finally, the total power dissipation and computation time in seconds is printed.

All output values provided by SPICE are displayed in scientific notation.

The SPICE output listing shown above is a little verbose for most peoples' taste. For a final presentation, it might be nice to trim all the unnecessary text and leave only what matters. Here is a sample of that same output, redirected to a text file (`spice < example.cir > example.txt`), then trimmed down judiciously with a text editor for final presentation and printed:

```
example netlist
v1 1 0 dc 15
r1 1 0 2.2k
r2 1 2 3.3k
r3 2 0 150
.end

node    voltage    node     voltage
(  1)   15.0000    (  2)    0.6522

voltage source currents
name       current
v1       -1.117E-02

total power dissipation   1.67E-01  watts
```

One of the very nice things about SPICE is that both input and output formats are plain-text, which is the most universal and easy-to-edit electronic format around. Practically *any* computer will be able to edit and display this format, even if the SPICE program itself is not resident on that computer. If the user desires, he or she is free to use the advanced capabilities of word processing programs to make the output look fancier. Comments can even be inserted between lines of the output for further clarity to the reader.

7.4 The command-line interface

If you've used DOS or UNIX operating systems before in a command-line shell environment, you may wonder why we have to use the "<" symbol between the word "spice" and the name of the netlist file to be interpreted. Why not just enter the file name as the first argument to the command "spice" as we do when we invoke the text editor? The answer is that SPICE has the option of an *interactive* mode, whereby each line of the netlist can be interpreted as it is entered through the computer's Standard Input (stdin). If you simple type "spice" at the prompt and press **[Enter]**, SPICE will begin to interpret anything you type in to it (live).

For most applications, its nice to save your netlist work in a separate file and then let SPICE interpret that file when you're ready. This is the way I encourage SPICE to be used, and so this is the way its presented in this lesson. In order to use SPICE this way in a command-line environment, we need to use the "<" redirection symbol to direct the contents of your netlist file to Standard Input (stdin), which SPICE can then process.

7.5 Circuit components

Remember that this tutorial is not exhaustive by any means, and that all descriptions for elements in the SPICE language are documented here in condensed form. SPICE is a very capable piece of software with lots of options, and I'm only going to document a few of them.

All components in a SPICE source file are primarily identified by the first letter in each respective line. Characters following the identifying letter are used to distinguish one component of a certain type from another of the same type (r1, r2, r3, rload, rpullup, etc.), and need not follow any particular naming convention, so long as no more than eight characters are used in both the component identifying letter and the distinguishing name.

For example, suppose you were simulating a digital circuit with "pullup" and "pulldown" resistors. The name `rpullup` would be valid because it is seven characters long. The name `rpulldown`, however, is nine characters long. This may cause problems when SPICE interprets the netlist.

You can actually get away with component names in excess of eight total characters if there are no other similarly-named components in the source file. SPICE only pays attention to the first eight characters of the first field in each line, so `rpulldown` is actually interpreted as `rpulldow` with the "n" at the end being ignored. Therefore, any other resistor having the first eight characters in its first field will be seen by SPICE as the same resistor, defined twice, which will cause an error (i.e. `rpulldown1` and `rpulldown2` would be interpreted as the same name, `rpulldow`).

It should also be noted that SPICE ignores character case, so `r1` and `R1` are interpreted by SPICE as one and the same.

SPICE allows the use of metric prefixes in specifying component values, which is a very handy feature. However, the prefix convention used by SPICE differs somewhat from standard metric symbols, primarily due to the fact that netlists are restricted to standard ASCII characters (ruling out Greek letters such as μ for the prefix "micro") and that SPICE is case-insensitive, so "m" (which is the standard symbol for "milli") and "M" (which is the standard symbol for "Mega") are interpreted identically. Here are a few examples of prefixes used in SPICE netlists:

`r1 1 0 2t` (Resistor R_1, 2t = 2 Tera-ohms = 2 TΩ)
`r2 1 0 4g` (Resistor R_2, 4g = 4 Giga-ohms = 4 GΩ)
`r3 1 0 47meg` (Resistor R_3, 47meg = 47 Mega-ohms = 47 MΩ)
`r4 1 0 3.3k` (Resistor R_4, 3.3k = 3.3 kilo-ohms = 3.3 kΩ)
`r5 1 0 55m` (Resistor R_5, 55m = 55 milli-ohms = 55 mΩ)
`r6 1 0 10u` (Resistor R_6, 10u = 10 micro-ohms 10 $\mu\Omega$)
`r7 1 0 30n` (Resistor R_7, 30n = 30 nano-ohms = 30 nΩ)
`r8 1 0 5p` (Resistor R_8, 5p = 5 pico-ohms = 5 pΩ)
`r9 1 0 250f` (Resistor R_9, 250f = 250 femto-ohms = 250 fΩ)

Scientific notation is also allowed in specifying component values. For example:

`r10 1 0 4.7e3` (Resistor R_{10}, 4.7e3 = 4.7 x 10^3 ohms = 4.7 kilo-ohms = 4.7 kΩ)
`r11 1 0 1e-12` (Resistor R_{11}, 1e-12 = 1 x 10^{-12} ohms = 1 pico-ohm = 1 pΩ)

The unit (ohms, volts, farads, henrys, etc.) is automatically determined by the type of component being specified. SPICE "knows" that all of the above examples are "ohms" because they are all resistors (r1, r2, r3, . . .). If they were capacitors, the values would be interpreted as "farads," if inductors, then "henrys," etc.

7.5.1 Passive components

CAPACITORS

```
General form:  c[name] [node1] [node2] [value] ic=[initial voltage]
Example 1:     c1 12 33 10u
Example 2:     c1 12 33 10u ic=3.5
```

Comments: The "initial condition" (`ic=`) variable is the capacitor's voltage in units of *volts* at the start of DC analysis. It is an optional value, with the starting voltage assumed to be zero if unspecified. Starting current values for capacitors are interpreted by SPICE only if the `.tran` analysis option is invoked (with the "`uic`" option).

INDUCTORS

```
General form:  l[name] [node1] [node2] [value] ic=[initial current]
Example 1:     l1 12 33 133m
Example 2:     l1 12 33 133m ic=12.7m
```

Comments: The "initial condition" (`ic=`) variable is the inductor's current in units of *amps* at the start of DC analysis. It is an optional value, with the starting current assumed to be zero if unspecified. Starting current values for inductors are interpreted by SPICE only if the .tran analysis option is invoked.

INDUCTOR COUPLING (transformers)

```
General form:  k[name] l[name] l[name] [coupling factor]
Example 1:     k1 l1 l2 0.999
```

Comments: SPICE will only allow coupling factor values between 0 and 1 (non-inclusive), with 0 representing no coupling and 1 representing perfect coupling. The order of specifying coupled inductors (l1, l2 or l2, l1) is irrelevant.

RESISTORS

```
General form:  r[name] [node1] [node2] [value]
Example:       rload 23 15 3.3k
```

Comments: In case you were wondering, there is no declaration of resistor power dissipation rating in SPICE. All components are assumed to be indestructible. If only real life were this forgiving!

7.5.2 Active components

All semiconductor components must have their electrical characteristics described in a line starting with the word ".model", which tells SPICE exactly how the device will behave. Whatever parameters are not explicitly defined in the .model card will default to values preprogrammed in SPICE. However, the .model card *must* be included, and at least specify the model name and device type (d, npn, pnp, njf, pjf, nmos, or pmos).

DIODES

```
General form:  d[name] [anode] [cathode] [model]
Example:       d1 1 2 mod1
```

DIODE MODELS:

```
General form:  .model [modelname] d [parmtr1=x] [parmtr2=x] . . .
Example:       .model mod1 d
Example:       .model mod2 d vj=0.65 rs=1.3
```

¡hypertarget¿diodeparameter¡/hypertarget¿
Parameter definitions:
is = saturation current in amps
rs = junction resistance in ohms
n = emission coefficient (unitless)
tt = transit time in seconds
cjo = zero-bias junction capacitance in farads
vj = junction potential in volts
m = grading coefficient (unitless)
eg = activation energy in electron-volts

xti = saturation-current temperature exponent (unitless)
kf = flicker noise coefficient (unitless)
af = flicker noise exponent (unitless)
fc = forward-bias depletion capacitance coefficient (unitless)
bv = reverse breakdown voltage in volts
ibv = current at breakdown voltage in amps

Comments: The model name *must* begin with a letter, not a number. If you plan to specify a model for a 1N4003 rectifying diode, for instance, you cannot use ”1n4003” for the model name. An alternative might be ”m1n4003” instead.

TRANSISTORS, bipolar junction – BJT

```
General form:  q[name] [collector] [base] [emitter] [model]
Example:       q1 2 3 0 mod1
```

BJT TRANSISTOR MODELS:

```
General form:  .model [modelname] [npn or pnp] [parmtr1=x] . . .
Example:       .model mod1 pnp
Example:       .model mod2 npn bf=75 is=1e-14
```

The model examples shown above are very nonspecific. To accurately model real-life transistors, more parameters are necessary. Take these two examples, for the popular 2N2222 and 2N2907 transistors (the ”+”) characters represent line-continuation marks in SPICE, when you wish to break a single line (card) into two or more separate lines on your text editor:

```
Example:       .model m2n2222 npn is=19f bf=150 vaf=100 ikf=.18
+                     ise=50p ne=2.5 br=7.5 var=6.4 ikr=12m
+                     isc=8.7p nc=1.2 rb=50 re=0.4 rc=0.4 cje=26p
+                     tf=0.5n cjc=11p tr=7n xtb=1.5 kf=0.032f af=1

Example:       .model m2n2907 pnp is=1.1p bf=200 nf=1.2 vaf=50
+                     ikf=0.1 ise=13p ne=1.9 br=6 rc=0.6 cje=23p
+                     vje=0.85 mje=1.25 tf=0.5n cjc=19p vjc=0.5
+                     mjc=0.2 tr=34n xtb=1.5
```

Parameter definitions:
is = transport saturation current in amps
bf = ideal maximum forward Beta (unitless)
nf = forward current emission coefficient (unitless)
vaf = forward Early voltage in volts
ikf = corner for forward Beta high-current rolloff in amps
ise = B-E leakage saturation current in amps
ne = B-E leakage emission coefficient (unitless)
br = ideal maximum reverse Beta (unitless)
nr = reverse current emission coefficient (unitless)

bar = reverse Early voltage in volts
ikrikr = corner for reverse Beta high-current rolloff in amps
iscisc = B-C leakage saturation current in amps
nc = B-C leakage emission coefficient (unitless)
rb = zero bias base resistance in ohms
irb = current for base resistance halfway value in amps
rbm = minimum base resistance at high currents in ohms
re = emitter resistance in ohms
rc = collector resistance in ohms
cje = B-E zero-bias depletion capacitance in farads
vje = B-E built-in potential in volts
mje = B-E junction exponential factor (unitless)
tf = ideal forward transit time (seconds)
xtf = coefficient for bias dependence of transit time (unitless)
vtf = B-C voltage dependence on transit time, in volts
itf = high-current parameter effect on transit time, in amps
ptf = excess phase at f=1/(transit time)(2)(pi) Hz, in degrees
cjc = B-C zero-bias depletion capacitance in farads
vjc = B-C built-in potential in volts
mjc = B-C junction exponential factor (unitless)
xjcj = B-C depletion capacitance fraction connected in base node (unitless)
tr = ideal reverse transit time in seconds
cjs = zero-bias collector-substrate capacitance in farads
vjs = substrate junction built-in potential in volts
mjs = substrate junction exponential factor (unitless)
xtb = forward/reverse Beta temperature exponent
eg = energy gap for temperature effect on transport saturation current in electron-volts
xti = temperature exponent for effect on transport saturation current (unitless)
kf = flicker noise coefficient (unitless)
af = flicker noise exponent (unitless)
fc = forward-bias depletion capacitance formula coefficient (unitless)

Comments: Just as with diodes, the model name given for a particular transistor type *must* begin with a letter, not a number. That's why the examples given above for the 2N2222 and 2N2907 types of BJTs are named "m2n2222" and "q2n2907" respectively.

As you can see, SPICE allows for very detailed specification of transistor properties. Many of the properties listed above are well beyond the scope and interest of the beginning electronics student, and aren't even useful apart from knowing the equations SPICE uses to model BJT transistors. For those interested in learning more about transistor modeling in SPICE, consult other books, such as Andrei Vladimirescu's *The Spice Book* (ISBN 0-471-60926-9).

JFET, junction field-effect transistor

```
General form:  j[name] [drain] [gate] [source] [model]
Example:       j1 2 3 0 mod1
```

JFET TRANSISTOR MODELS:

```
General form:     .model [modelname] [njf or pjf] [parmtr1=x] . . .
Example:          .model mod1 pjf
Example:          .model mod2 njf lambda=1e-5 pb=0.75
```

Parameter definitions:
vto = threshold voltage in volts
beta = transconductance parameter in amps/volts^2
lambda = channel length modulation parameter in units of 1/volts
rd = drain resistance in ohms
rs = source resistance in ohms
cgs = zero-bias G-S junction capacitance in farads
cgd = zero-bias G-D junction capacitance in farads
pb = gate junction potential in volts
is = gate junction saturation current in amps
kf = flicker noise coefficient (unitless)
af = flicker noise exponent (unitless)
fc = forward-bias depletion capacitance coefficient (unitless)

MOSFET, transistor

```
General form:  m[name] [drain] [gate] [source] [substrate] [model]
Example:       m1 2 3 0 0 mod1
```

MOSFET TRANSISTOR MODELS:

```
General form:  .model [modelname] [nmos or pmos] [parmtr1=x] . . .
Example:       .model mod1 pmos
Example:       .model mod2 nmos level=2 phi=0.65 rd=1.5
Example:       .model mod3 nmos vto=-1   (depletion)
Example:       .model mod4 nmos vto=1    (enhancement)
Example:       .model mod5 pmos vto=1    (depletion)
Example:       .model mod6 pmos vto=-1   (enhancement)
```

Comments: In order to distinguish between enhancement mode and depletion-mode (also known as depletion-enhancement mode) transistors, the model parameter "vto" (zero-bias threshold voltage) must be specified. Its default value is zero, but a positive value (+1 volts, for example) on a P-channel transistor or a negative value (-1 volts) on an N-channel transistor will specify that transistor to be a *depletion* (otherwise known as *depletion-enhancement*) *mode* device. Conversely, a negative value on a P-channel transistor or a positive value on an N-channel transistor will specify that transistor to be an *enhancement mode* device.

Remember that enhancement mode transistors are normally-off devices, and must be turned on by the application of gate voltage. Depletion-mode transistors are normally "on," but can be "pinched off" as well as enhanced to greater levels of drain current by applied gate voltage, hence the alternate designation of "depletion-enhancement" MOSFETs. The "vto" parameter specifies the threshold gate voltage for MOSFET conduction.

7.5.3 Sources

AC SINEWAVE VOLTAGE SOURCES (when using .ac card to specify frequency):

```
General form:  v[name] [+node] [-node] ac [voltage] [phase] sin
Example 1:     v1 1 0 ac 12 sin
Example 2:     v1 1 0 ac 12 240 sin   (12 V ∠ 240°)
```

Comments: This method of specifying AC voltage sources works well if you're using multiple sources at different phase angles from each other, but all at the same frequency. If you need to specify sources at different frequencies in the same circuit, you must use the next method!

AC SINEWAVE VOLTAGE SOURCES (when NOT using .ac card to specify frequency):

```
General form:  v[name] [+node] [-node] sin([offset] [voltage]
+               [freq] [delay] [damping factor])
Example 1:     v1 1 0 sin(0 12 60 0 0)
```

Parameter definitions:

`offset` = DC bias voltage, offsetting the AC waveform by a specified voltage.

`voltage` = peak, or crest, AC voltage value for the waveform.

`freq` = frequency in Hertz.

`delay` = time delay, or phase offset for the waveform, in seconds.

`damping factor` = a figure used to create waveforms of decaying amplitude.

Comments: This method of specifying AC voltage sources works well if you're using multiple sources at different frequencies from each other. Representing phase shift is tricky, though, necessitating the use of the *delay* factor.

DC VOLTAGE SOURCES (when using .dc card to specify voltage):

```
General form:  v[name] [+node] [-node] dc
Example 1:     v1 1 0 dc
```

Comments: If you wish to have SPICE output voltages *not* in reference to node 0, you must use the `.dc` analysis option, and to use this option you must specify at least one of your DC sources in this manner.

DC VOLTAGE SOURCES (when NOT using .dc card to specify voltage):

```
General form:  v[name] [+node] [-node] dc [voltage]
Example 1:     v1 1 0 dc 12
```

Comments: Nothing noteworthy here!

PULSE VOLTAGE SOURCES

```
General form:  v[name] [+node] [-node] pulse ([i] [p] [td] [tr]
+              [tf] [pw] [pd])
```

Parameter definitions:

`i` = initial value

`p` = pulse value

`td` = delay time (all time parameters in units of seconds)

`tr` = rise time

`tf` = fall time

pw = pulse width
pd = period

```
Example 1:      v1 1 0 pulse (-3 3 0 0 0 10m 20m)
```

Comments: Example 1 is a perfect square wave oscillating between -3 and +3 volts, with zero rise and fall times, a 20 millisecond period, and a 50 percent duty cycle (+3 volts for 10 ms, then -3 volts for 10 ms).

AC SINEWAVE CURRENT SOURCES (when using .ac card to specify frequency):

```
General form:  i[name] [+node] [-node] ac [current] [phase] sin
Example 1:     i1 1 0 ac 3 sin        (3 amps)
Example 2:     i1 1 0 ac 1m 240 sin   (1 mA ∠ 240°)
```

Comments: The same comments apply here (and in the next example) as for AC voltage sources.

AC SINEWAVE CURRENT SOURCES (when NOT using .ac card to specify frequency):

```
General form:  i[name] [+node] [-node] sin([offset]
+              [current] [freq] 0 0)
Example 1:     i1 1 0 sin(0 1.5 60 0 0)
```

DC CURRENT SOURCES (when using .dc card to specify current):

```
General form:  i[name] [+node] [-node] dc
Example 1:     i1 1 0 dc
```

DC CURRENT SOURCES (when NOT using .dc card to specify current):

```
General form:  i[name] [+node] [-node] dc [current]
Example 1:     i1 1 0 dc 12
```

Comments: Even though the books all say that the first node given for the DC current source is the positive node, that's not what I've found to be in practice. In actuality, a DC current source in SPICE pushes current in the same direction as a voltage source (battery) would with its *negative* node specified first.

PULSE CURRENT SOURCES

```
General form:  i[name] [+node] [-node] pulse ([i] [p] [td] [tr]
+              [tf] [pw] [pd])
```

Parameter definitions:
i = initial value
p = pulse value
td = delay time
tr = rise time
tf = fall time
pw = pulse width
pd = period

```
Example 1:     i1 1 0 pulse (-3m 3m 0 0 0 17m 34m)
```

Comments: Example 1 is a perfect square wave oscillating between -3 mA and +3 mA, with zero rise and fall times, a 34 millisecond period, and a 50 percent duty cycle (+3 mA for 17 ms, then -3 mA for 17 ms).

VOLTAGE SOURCES (dependent):

```
General form:  e[name] [out+node] [out-node] [in+node] [in-node]
+               [gain]
Example 1:     e1 2 0 1 2 999k
```

Comments: Dependent voltage sources are great to use for simulating operational amplifiers. Example 1 shows how such a source would be configured for use as a voltage follower, inverting input connected to output (node 2) for negative feedback, and the noninverting input coming in on node 1. The gain has been set to an arbitrarily high value of 999,000. One word of caution, though: SPICE does not recognize the input of a dependent source as being a load, so a voltage source tied only to the input of an independent voltage source will be interpreted as ”open.” See op-amp circuit examples for more details on this.

CURRENT SOURCES (dependent):

7.6 Analysis options

AC ANALYSIS:

```
General form:  .ac [curve] [points] [start] [final]
Example 1:     .ac lin 1 1000 1000
```

Comments: The [curve] field can be ”lin” (linear), ”dec” (decade), or ”oct” (octave), specifying the (non)linearity of the frequency sweep. ¡points¿ specifies how many points within the frequency sweep to perform analyses at (for decade sweep, the number of points per decade; for octave, the number of points per octave). The [start] and [final] fields specify the starting and ending frequencies of the sweep, respectively. One final note: the ”start” value cannot be zero!

DC ANALYSIS:

```
General form:     .dc [source] [start] [final] [increment]
Example 1:        .dc vin 1.5 15 0.5
```

Comments: The .dc card is necessary if you want to print or plot any voltage between two nonzero nodes. Otherwise, the default ”small-signal” analysis only prints out the voltage between each nonzero node and node zero.

TRANSIENT ANALYSIS:

```
General form:  .tran [increment] [stop_time] [start_time]
+                    [comp_interval]
Example 1:     .tran 1m 50m uic
Example 2:     .tran .5m 32m 0 .01m
```

Comments: Example 1 has an increment time of 1 millisecond and a stop time of 50 milliseconds (when only two parameters are specified, they are *increment time* and *stop time*,

respectively). Example 2 has an increment time of 0.5 milliseconds, a stop time of 32 milliseconds, a start time of 0 milliseconds (no delay on start), and a computation interval of 0.01 milliseconds.

Default value for start time is zero. Transient analysis *always* beings at time zero, but storage of data only takes place between start time and stop time. Data output interval is increment time, or (stop time - start time)/50, which ever is smallest. However, the computing interval variable can be used to force a computational interval smaller than either. For large total interval counts, the `itl5` variable in the `.options` card may be set to a higher number. The "`uic`" option tells SPICE to "use initial conditions."

PLOT OUTPUT:

```
General form:  .plot [type] [output1] [output2] . . . [output n]
Example 1:     .plot dc v(1,2) i(v2)
Example 2:     .plot ac v(3,4) vp(3,4) i(v1) ip(v1)
Example 3:     .plot tran v(4,5) i(v2)
```

Comments: SPICE can't handle more than eight data point requests on a single `.plot` or `.print` card. If requesting more than eight data points, use multiple cards!

Also, here's a major caveat when using SPICE version 3: if you're performing AC analysis and you ask SPICE to plot an AC voltage as in example #2, the `v(3,4)` command will only output the *real* component of a rectangular-form complex number! SPICE version 2 outputs the *polar* magnitude of a complex number: a much more meaningful quantity if only a single quantity is asked for. To coerce SPICE3 to give you polar magnitude, you will have to re-write the `.print` or `.plot` argument as such: `vm(3,4)`.

PRINT OUTPUT:

```
General form:  .print [type] [output1] [output2] . . . [output n]
Example 1:     .print dc v(1,2) i(v2)
Example 2:     .print ac v(2,4) i(vinput) vp(2,3)
Example 3:     .print tran v(4,5) i(v2)
```

Comments: SPICE can't handle more than eight data point requests on a single `.plot` or `.print` card. If requesting more than eight data points, use multiple cards!

FOURIER ANALYSIS:

```
General form:  .four [freq] [output1] [output2] . . . [output n]
Example 1:     .four 60 v(1,2)
```

Comments: The `.four` card relies on the `.tran` card being present somewhere in the deck, with the proper time periods for analysis of adequate cycles. Also, SPICE may "crash" if a `.plot` analysis isn't done along with the `.four` analysis, even if all `.tran` parameters are technically correct. Finally, the `.four` analysis option only works when the frequency of the AC source is specified in that source's card line, and *not* in an `.ac` analysis option line.

It helps to include a computation interval variable in the `.tran` card for better analysis precision. A Fourier analysis of the voltage or current specified is performed up to the 9th harmonic, with the [freq] specification being the fundamental, or starting frequency of the analysis spectrum.

MISCELLANEOUS:

```
General form:  .options [option1] [option2]
Example 1:     .options limpts=500
Example 2:     .options itl5=0
Example 3:     .options method=gear
Example 4:     .options list
Example 5:     .options nopage
Example 6:     .options numdgt=6
```

Comments: There are lots of options that can be specified using this card. Perhaps the one most needed by beginning users of SPICE is the "`limpts`" setting. When running a simulation that requires more than 201 points to be printed or plotted, this calculation point limit must be increased or else SPICE will terminate analysis. The example given above (`limpts=500`) tells SPICE to allocate enough memory to handle at least 500 calculation points in whatever type of analysis is specified (DC, AC, or transient).

In example 2, we see an *iteration* variable (`itl5`) being set to a value of 0. There are actually six different iteration variables available for user manipulation. They control the iteration cycle limits for solution of nonlinear equations. The variable `itl5` sets the maximum number of iterations for a transient analysis. Similar to the `limpts` variable, `itl5` usually needs to be set when a small computation interval has been specified on a `.tran` card. Setting `itl5` to a value of 0 turns off the limit entirely, allowing the computer infinite iteration cycles (infinite time) to compute the analysis. *Warning: this may result in long simulation times!*

Example 3 with "`method=gear`" sets the numerical integration method used by SPICE. The default is "trapezoid" rather than "gear," trapezoid being a simple geometric approximation of area under a curve found by slicing up the curve into trapezoids to approximate the shape. The "gear" method is based on second-order or better polynomial equations and is named after C.W. Gear (*Numerical Integration of Stiff Ordinary Equations*, Report 221, Department of Computer Science, University of Illinois, Urbana). The Gear method of integration is more demanding of the computer (computationally "expensive") and will sometimes give slightly different results from the trapezoid method.

The "`list`" option shown in example 4 gives a verbose summary of all circuit components and their respective values in the final output.

By default, SPICE will insert ASCII page-break control codes in the output to separate different sections of the analysis. Specifying the "`nopage`" option (example 5) will prevent such pagination.

The "`numdgt`" option shown in example 6 specifies the number of significant digits output when using one of the "`.print`" data output options. SPICE defaults at a precision of 4 significant digits.

WIDTH CONTROL:

```
General form:  .width in=[columns] out=[columns]
Example 1:     .width out=80
```

Comments: The `.width` card can be used to control the width of text output lines upon analysis. This is especially handy when plotting graphs with the `.plot` card. The default value is 120, which can cause problems on 80-character terminal displays unless set to 80 with this command.

7.7 Quirks

"Garbage in, garbage out."
Anonymous

SPICE is a very reliable piece of software, but it does have its little quirks that take some getting used to. By "quirk" I mean a demand placed upon the user to write the source file in a particular way in order for it to work without giving error messages. I do *not* mean any kind of fault with SPICE which would produce erroneous or misleading results: that would be more properly referred to as a "bug." Speaking of bugs, SPICE has a few of them as well.

Some (or all) of these quirks may be unique to SPICE version 2g6, which is the only version I've used extensively. They may have been fixed in later versions.

7.7.1 A good beginning

SPICE demands that the source file begin with something other than the first "card" in the circuit description "deck." This first character in the source file can be a linefeed, title line, or a comment: there just has to be *something* there before the first component-specifying line of the file. If not, SPICE will refuse to do an analysis at all, claiming that there is a serious error (such as improper node connections) in the "deck."

7.7.2 A good ending

SPICE demands that the `.end` line at the end of the source file not be terminated with a linefeed or carriage return character. In other words, when you finish typing "`.end`" you should not hit the **[Enter]** key on your keyboard. The cursor on your text editor should stop immediately to the right of the "d" after the "`.end`" and go no further. Failure to heed this quirk will result in a "*missing .end card*" error message at the end of the analysis output. The actual circuit analysis is not affected by this error, so I normally ignore the message. However, if you're looking to receive a "perfect" output, you must pay heed to this idiosyncrasy.

7.7.3 Must have a node 0

You are given much freedom in numbering circuit nodes, but you *must* have a node 0 somewhere in your netlist in order for SPICE to work. Node 0 is the default node for circuit ground, and it is the point of reference for all voltages specified at single node locations.

When simple DC analysis is performed by SPICE, the output will contain a listing of voltages at all non-zero nodes in the circuit. The point of reference (ground) for all these voltage readings is node 0. For example:

```
node    voltage    node     voltage
(  1)   15.0000    (  2)    0.6522
```

In this analysis, there is a DC voltage of 15 volts between node 1 and ground (node 0), and a DC voltage of 0.6522 volts between node 2 and ground (node 0). In both these cases, the voltage polarity is negative at node 0 with reference to the other node (in other words, both nodes 1 and 2 are positive with respect to node 0).

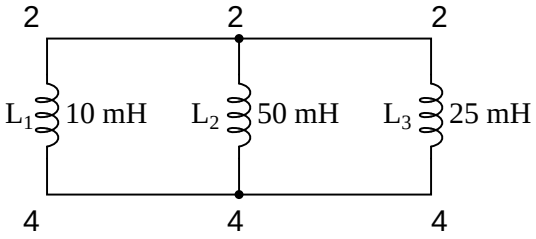
7.7.4 Avoid open circuits

SPICE cannot handle open circuits of any kind. If your netlist specifies a circuit with an open voltage source, for example, SPICE will refuse to perform an analysis. A prime example of this type of error is found when ”connecting” a voltage source to the input of a voltage-dependent source (used to simulate an operational amplifier). SPICE needs to see a complete path for current, so I usually tie a high-value resistor (call it `rbogus`!) across the voltage source to act as a minimal load.

7.7.5 Avoid certain component loops

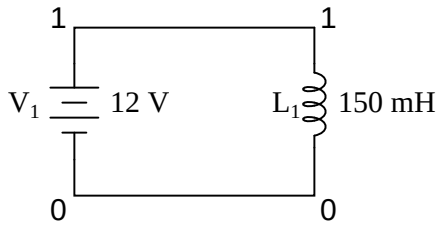
SPICE cannot handle certain uninterrupted loops of components in a circuit, namely voltage sources and inductors. The following loops will cause SPICE to abort analysis:

Parallel inductors

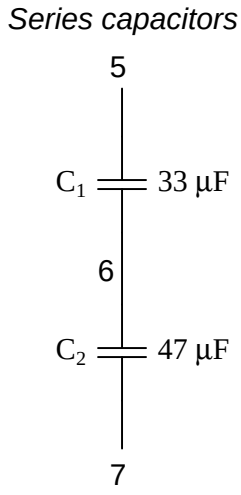



```
netlist
l1 2 4 10m
l2 2 4 50m
l3 2 4 25m
```

Voltage source / inductor loop




```
netlist
v1 1 0 dc 12
l1 1 0 150m
```

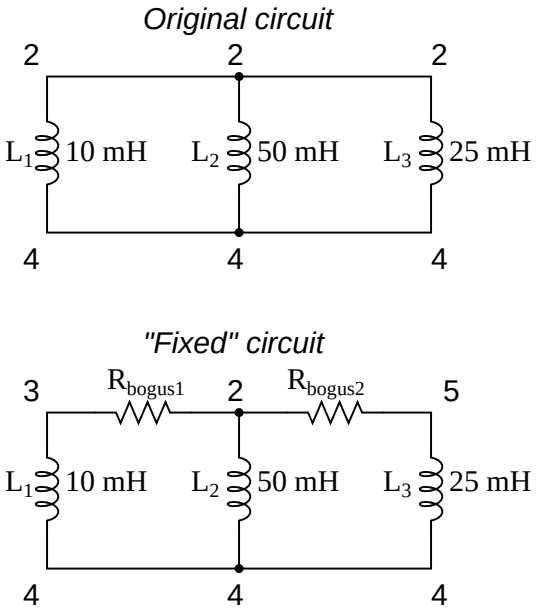



```
netlist
c1 5 6 33u
c2 6 7 47u
```

The reason SPICE can't handle these conditions stems from the way it performs DC analysis: by treating all inductors as shorts and all capacitors as opens. Since short-circuits (0 Ω) and open circuits (infinite resistance) either contain or generate mathematical infinitudes, a computer simply cannot deal with them, and so SPICE will discontinue analysis if any of these conditions occur.

In order to make these component configurations acceptable to SPICE, you must insert resistors of appropriate values into the appropriate places, eliminating the respective short-circuits and open-circuits. If a series resistor is required, choose a very low resistance value. Conversely, if a parallel resistor is required, choose a very high resistance value. For example:

To fix the parallel inductor problem, insert a very low-value resistor in series with each offending inductor.

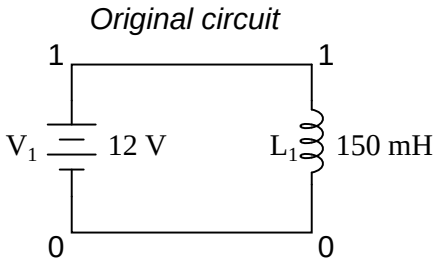


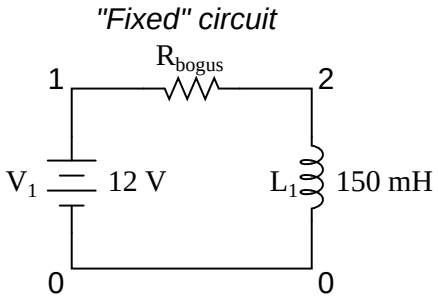

```
original netlist
l1 2 4 10m
l2 2 4 50m
l3 2 4 25m
```

```
fixed netlist
rbogus1 2 3 1e-12
rbogus2 2 5 1e-12
l1 3 4 10m
l2 2 4 50m
l3 5 4 25m
```

The extremely low-resistance resistors R_{bogus1} and R_{bogus2} (each one with a mere 1 pico-ohm of resistance) ”break up” the direct parallel connections that existed between L_1, L_2, and L_3. It is important to choose very low resistances here so that circuit operation is not substantially impacted by the ”fix.”

To fix the voltage source / inductor loop, insert a very low-value resistor in series with the two components.



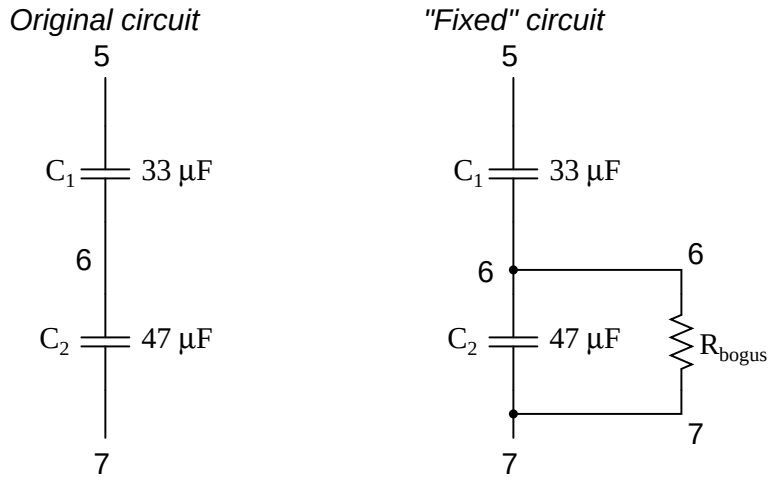



```
original netlist
v1 1 0 dc 12
l1 1 0 150m
```

```
fixed netlist
v1 1 0 dc 12
l1 2 0 150m
rbogus 1 2 1e-12
```

As in the previous example with parallel inductors, it is important to make the correction resistor (R_{bogus}) very low in resistance, so as to not substantially impact circuit operation.

To fix the series capacitor circuit, one of the capacitors must have a resistor shunting across it. SPICE requires a DC current path to each capacitor for analysis.

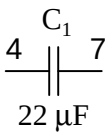



```
original netlist
c1 5 6 33u
c2 6 7 47u

fixed netlist
c1 5 6 33u
c2 6 7 47u
rbogus 6 7 9e12
```

The R_{bogus} value of 9 Tera-ohms provides a DC current path to C_1 (and around C_2) without substantially impacting the circuit's operation.

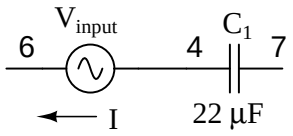
7.7.6 Current measurement

Although printing or plotting of voltage is quite easy in SPICE, the output of current values is a bit more difficult. Voltage measurements are specified by declaring the appropriate circuit nodes. For example, if we desire to know the voltage across a capacitor whose leads connect between nodes 4 and 7, we might make out `.print` statement look like this:



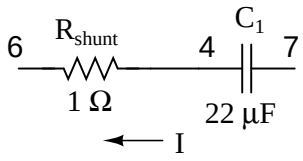

```
c1 4 7 22u
.print ac v(4,7)
```

However, if we wanted to have SPICE measure the *current* through that capacitor, it wouldn't be quite so easy. Currents in SPICE must be specified in relation to a voltage source, not any arbitrary component. For example:



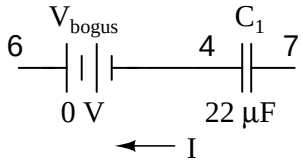

```
c1 4 7 22u
vinput 6 4 ac 1 sin
.print ac i(vinput)
```

This `.print` card instructs SPICE to print the current through voltage source V_{input}, which happens to be the same as the current through our capacitor between nodes 4 and 7. But what if there is no such voltage source in our circuit to reference for current measurement? One solution is to insert a shunt resistor into the circuit and measure voltage across it. In this case, I have chosen a shunt resistance value of 1 Ω to produce 1 volt per amp of current through C_1:




```
c1 4 7 22u
rshunt 6 4 1
.print ac v(6,4)
```

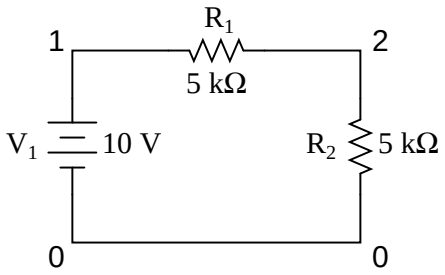
However, the insertion of an extra resistance into our circuit large enough to drop a meaningful voltage for the intended range of current might adversely affect things. A better solution for SPICE is this, although one would never seek such a current measurement solution in real life:




```
c1 4 7 22u
vbogus 6 4 dc 0
.print ac i(vbogus)
```

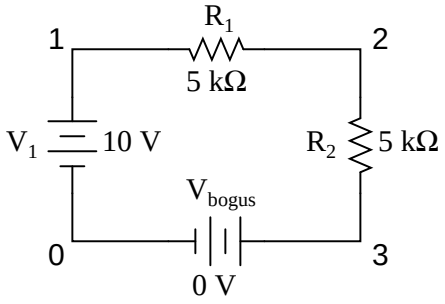
Inserting a "bogus" DC voltage source of zero volts doesn't affect circuit operation at all, yet it provides a convenient place for SPICE to take a current measurement. Interestingly enough, it doesn't matter that V_{bogus} is a DC source when we're looking to measure AC current! The fact that SPICE will output an AC current reading is determined by the "`ac`" specification in the `.print` card and nothing more.

It should also be noted that the way SPICE assigns a polarity to current measurements is a bit odd. Take the following circuit as an example:




```
example
v1 1 0
r1 1 2 5k
r2 2 0 5k
.dc v1 10 10 1
.print dc i(v1)
.end
```

With 10 volts total voltage and 10 kΩ total resistance, you might expect SPICE to tell you there's going to be 1 mA (1e-03) of current through voltage source V_1, but in actuality SPICE will output a figure of *negative* 1 mA (-1e-03)! SPICE regards current out of the negative end of a DC voltage source (the normal direction) to be a negative value of current rather than a positive value of current. There are times I'll throw in a "bogus" voltage source in a DC circuit like this simply to get SPICE to output a *positive* current value:




```
example
v1 1 0
r1 1 2 5k
r2 2 3 5k
vbogus 3 0 dc 0
.dc v1 10 10 1
.print dc i(vbogus)
.end
```

Notice how V_{bogus} is positioned so that the circuit current will enter its positive side (node 3) and exit its negative side (node 0). This orientation will ensure a positive output figure for circuit current.

7.7.7 Fourier analysis

When performing a Fourier (frequency-domain) analysis on a waveform, I have found it necessary to either print or plot the waveform using the `.print` or `.plot` cards, respectively. If you don't print or plot it, SPICE will pause for a moment during analysis and then abort the job after outputting the "initial transient solution."

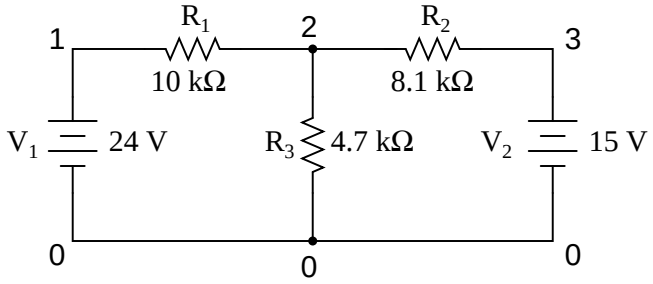
Also, when analyzing a square wave produced by the "`pulse`" source function, you must give the waveform some finite rise and fall time, or else the Fourier analysis results will be incorrect. For some reason, a perfect square wave with zero rise/fall time produces significant levels of *even* harmonics according to SPICE's Fourier analysis option, which is not true for real square waves.

7.8 Example circuits and netlists

The following circuits are pre-tested netlists for SPICE 2g6, complete with short descriptions when necessary. Feel free to "copy" and "paste" any of the netlists to your own SPICE source file for analysis and/or modification. My goal here is twofold: to give practical examples of SPICE netlist design to further understanding of SPICE netlist syntax, and to show how simple and compact SPICE netlists can be in analyzing simple circuits.

All output listings for these examples have been "trimmed" of extraneous information, giving you the most succinct presentation of the SPICE output as possible. I do this primarily to save space on this document. Typical SPICE outputs contain lots of headers and summary information not necessarily germane to the task at hand. So don't be surprised when you run a simulation on your own and find that the output doesn't *exactly* look like what I have shown here!

7.8.1 Multiple-source DC resistor network, part 1



Without a `.dc` card and a `.print` or `.plot` card, the output for this netlist will only display voltages for nodes 1, 2, and 3 (with reference to node 0, of course).

Netlist:

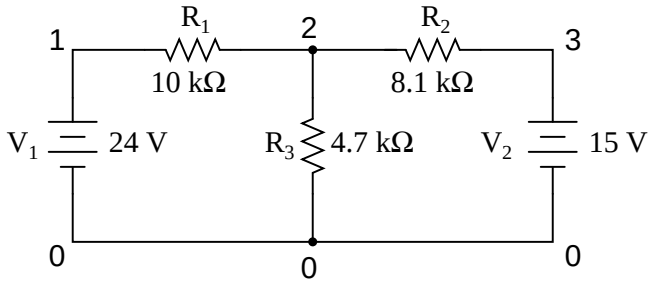
```
Multiple dc sources
v1 1 0 dc 24
v2 3 0 dc 15
```

```
r1 1 2 10k
r2 2 3 8.1k
r3 2 0 4.7k
.end
```

Output:

```
node    voltage    node     voltage   node    voltage
(  1)   24.0000    (  2)    9.7470    (  3)   15.0000

voltage source currents
name       current
v1       -1.425E-03
v2       -6.485E-04

total power dissipation   4.39E-02  watts
```

7.8.2 Multiple-source DC resistor network, part 2



By adding a `.dc` analysis card and specifying source V_1 from 24 volts to 24 volts in 1 step (in other words, 24 volts steady), we can use the `.print` card analysis to print out voltages between any two points we desire. Oddly enough, when the `.dc` analysis option is invoked, the default voltage printouts for each node (to ground) disappears, so we end up having to explicitly specify them in the `.print` card to see them at all.

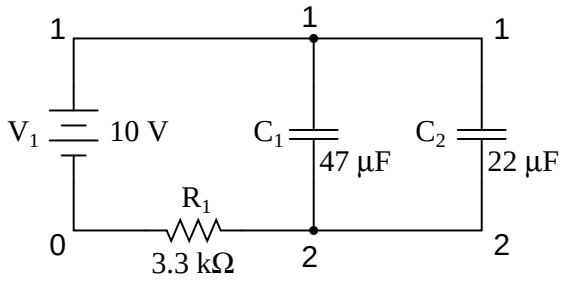
Netlist:

```
Multiple dc sources
v1 1 0
v2 3 0 15
r1 1 2 10k
r2 2 3 8.1k
r3 2 0 4.7k
.dc v1 24 24 1
.print dc v(1) v(2) v(3) v(1,2) v(2,3)
.end
```

Output:

```
v1           v(1)         v(2)         v(3)         v(1,2)       v(2,3)
2.400E+01    2.400E+01    9.747E+00    1.500E+01    1.425E+01   -5.253E+00
```

7.8.3 RC time-constant circuit



For DC analysis, the initial conditions of any reactive component (C or L) must be specified (voltage for capacitors, current for inductors). This is provided by the last data field of each capacitor card (`ic=0`). To perform a DC analysis, the `.tran` (”*transient*”) analysis option must be specified, with the first data field specifying time increment in seconds, the second specifying total analysis timespan in seconds, and the ”`uic`” telling it to ”use initial conditions” when analyzing.

Netlist:

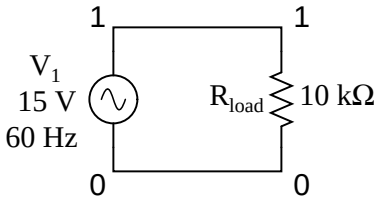
```
RC time delay circuit
v1 1 0 dc 10
c1 1 2 47u ic=0
c2 1 2 22u ic=0
r1 2 0 3.3k
.tran .05 1 uic
.print tran v(1,2)
.end
```

Output:

```
time          v(1,2)
0.000E+00     7.701E-06
5.000E-02     1.967E+00
1.000E-01     3.551E+00
1.500E-01     4.824E+00
2.000E-01     5.844E+00
2.500E-01     6.664E+00
3.000E-01     7.322E+00
3.500E-01     7.851E+00
4.000E-01     8.274E+00
4.500E-01     8.615E+00
5.000E-01     8.888E+00
5.500E-01     9.107E+00
```

```
6.000E-01     9.283E+00
6.500E-01     9.425E+00
7.000E-01     9.538E+00
7.500E-01     9.629E+00
8.000E-01     9.702E+00
8.500E-01     9.761E+00
9.000E-01     9.808E+00
9.500E-01     9.846E+00
1.000E+00     9.877E+00
```

7.8.4 Plotting and analyzing a simple AC sinewave voltage



This exercise does show the proper setup for plotting instantaneous values of a sine-wave voltage source with the `.plot` function (as a *transient* analysis). Not surprisingly, the Fourier analysis in this deck also requires the `.tran` (transient) analysis option to be specified over a suitable time range. The time range in this particular deck allows for a Fourier analysis with rather poor accuracy. The more cycles of the fundamental frequency that the transient analysis is performed over, the more precise the Fourier analysis will be. This is not a quirk of SPICE, but rather a basic principle of waveforms.

Netlist:

```
v1 1 0 sin(0 15 60 0 0)
rload 1 0 10k
* change tran card to the following for better Fourier precision
* .tran 1m 30m .01m     and include .options card:
* .options itl5=30000
.tran 1m 30m
.plot tran v(1)
.four 60 v(1)
.end
```

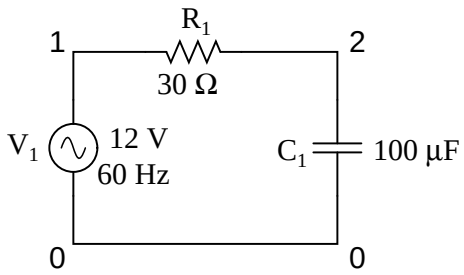
Output:

```
time      v(1)     -2.000E+01  -1.000E+01    0.000E+00    1.000E+01
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
0.000E+00  0.000E+00 .         .             *             .       .
1.000E-03  5.487E+00 .         .             .       *     .       .
2.000E-03  1.025E+01 .         .             .             *       .
3.000E-03  1.350E+01 .         .             .             .    *  .
4.000E-03  1.488E+01 .         .             .             .      *.
```

```
5.000E-03  1.425E+01 .         .             .             .     *  .
6.000E-03  1.150E+01 .         .             .             .  *     .
7.000E-03  7.184E+00 .         .             .          *  .        .
8.000E-03  1.879E+00 .         .             .   *         .        .
9.000E-03 -3.714E+00 .         .         *   .             .        .
1.000E-02 -8.762E+00 .         .  *          .             .        .
1.100E-02 -1.265E+01 .      *  .             .             .        .
1.200E-02 -1.466E+01 .   *     .             .             .        .
1.300E-02 -1.465E+01 .   *     .             .             .        .
1.400E-02 -1.265E+01 .      *  .             .             .        .
1.500E-02 -8.769E+00 .         .  *          .             .        .
1.600E-02 -3.709E+00 .         .         *   .             .        .
1.700E-02  1.876E+00 .         .             .   *         .        .
1.800E-02  7.191E+00 .         .             .          *  .        .
1.900E-02  1.149E+01 .         .             .             .  *     .
2.000E-02  1.425E+01 .         .             .             .     *  .
2.100E-02  1.489E+01 .         .             .             .       *.
2.200E-02  1.349E+01 .         .             .             .    *   .
2.300E-02  1.026E+01 .         .             .             *        .
2.400E-02  5.491E+00 .         .             .       *     .        .
2.500E-02  1.553E-03 .         .             *             .        .
2.600E-02 -5.514E+00 .         .     *       .             .        .
2.700E-02 -1.022E+01 .         *             .             .        .
2.800E-02 -1.349E+01 .    *    .             .             .        .
2.900E-02 -1.495E+01 .  *      .             .             .        .
3.000E-02 -1.427E+01 .   *     .             .             .        .
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

```
fourier components of transient response v(1)
dc component =  -1.885E-03
harmonic   frequency    fourier    normalized    phase     normalized
no            (hz)     component    component    (deg)    phase (deg)
1          6.000E+01   1.494E+01     1.000000   -71.998       0.000
2          1.200E+02   1.886E-02     0.001262   -50.162      21.836
3          1.800E+02   1.346E-03     0.000090   102.674     174.671
4          2.400E+02   1.799E-02     0.001204   -10.866      61.132
5          3.000E+02   3.604E-03     0.000241   160.923     232.921
6          3.600E+02   5.642E-03     0.000378  -176.247    -104.250
7          4.200E+02   2.095E-03     0.000140   122.661     194.658
8          4.800E+02   4.574E-03     0.000306  -143.754     -71.757
9          5.400E+02   4.896E-03     0.000328  -129.418     -57.420
total harmonic distortion =      0.186350  percent
```

7.8.5 Simple AC resistor-capacitor circuit



The `.ac` card specifies the points of ac analysis from 60Hz to 60Hz, at a single point. This card, of course, is a bit more useful for multi-frequency analysis, where a range of frequencies can be analyzed in steps. The `.print` card outputs the AC voltage between nodes 1 and 2, and the AC voltage between node 2 and ground.

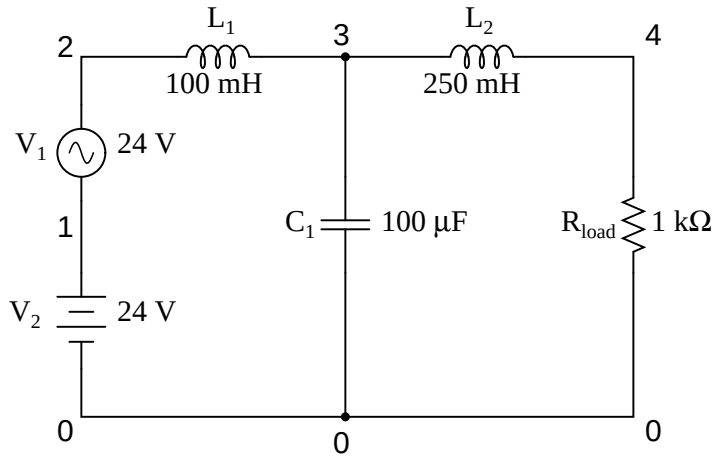
Netlist:

```
Demo of a simple AC circuit
v1 1 0 ac 12 sin
r1 1 2 30
c1 2 0 100u
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,2) v(2)
.end
```

Output:

```
freq          v(1,2)      v(2)
6.000E+01     8.990E+00   7.949E+00
```

7.8.6 Low-pass filter



This low-pass filter blocks AC and passes DC to the R_{load} resistor. Typical of a filter used to suppress ripple from a rectifier circuit, it actually has a resonant frequency, technically making it a band-pass filter. However, it works well anyway to pass DC and block the high-frequency harmonics generated by the AC-to-DC rectification process. Its performance is measured with an AC source sweeping from 500 Hz to 15 kHz. If desired, the `.print` card can be substituted or supplemented with a `.plot` card to show AC voltage at node 4 graphically.

Netlist:

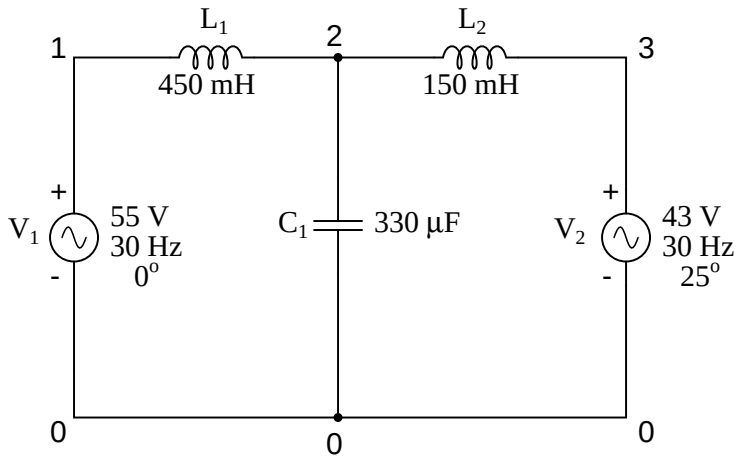
```
Lowpass filter
v1 2 1 ac 24 sin
v2 1 0 dc 24
rload 4 0 1k
l1 2 3 100m
l2 3 4 250m
c1 3 0 100u
.ac lin 30 500 15k
.print ac v(4)
.plot ac v(4)
.end
```

```
freq          v(4)
5.000E+02     1.935E-01
1.000E+03     3.275E-02
1.500E+03     1.057E-02
2.000E+03     4.614E-03
2.500E+03     2.402E-03
3.000E+03     1.403E-03
3.500E+03     8.884E-04
4.000E+03     5.973E-04
4.500E+03     4.206E-04
5.000E+03     3.072E-04
5.500E+03     2.311E-04
6.000E+03     1.782E-04
6.500E+03     1.403E-04
7.000E+03     1.124E-04
7.500E+03     9.141E-05
8.000E+03     7.536E-05
8.500E+03     6.285E-05
9.000E+03     5.296E-05
9.500E+03     4.504E-05
1.000E+04     3.863E-05
1.050E+04     3.337E-05
1.100E+04     2.903E-05
1.150E+04     2.541E-05
1.200E+04     2.237E-05
1.250E+04     1.979E-05
```

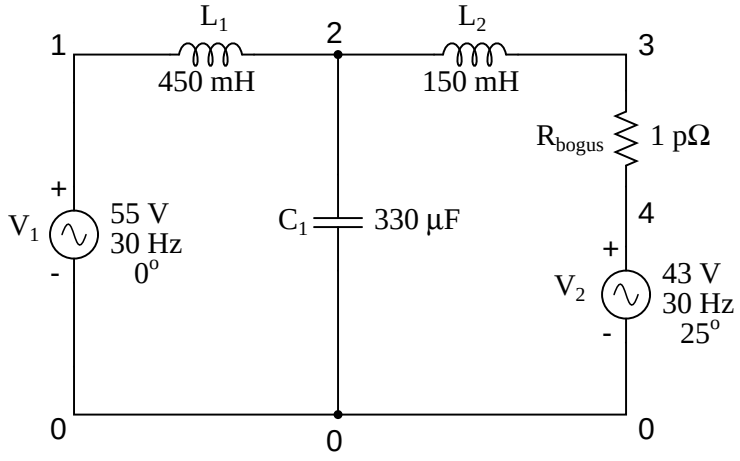
```
1.300E+04     1.760E-05
1.350E+04     1.571E-05
1.400E+04     1.409E-05
1.450E+04     1.268E-05
1.500E+04     1.146E-05
```

```
freq       v(4)  1.000E-06     1.000E-04    1.000E-02    1.000E+00
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
5.000E+02  1.935E-01 .              .              .         *     .
1.000E+03  3.275E-02 .              .              .    *          .
1.500E+03  1.057E-02 .              .              *               .
2.000E+03  4.614E-03 .              .            *  .               .
2.500E+03  2.402E-03 .              .          *    .               .
3.000E+03  1.403E-03 .              .        *      .               .
3.500E+03  8.884E-04 .              .      *        .               .
4.000E+03  5.973E-04 .              .    *          .               .
4.500E+03  4.206E-04 .              .   *           .               .
5.000E+03  3.072E-04 .              .  *            .               .
5.500E+03  2.311E-04 .              .  *            .               .
6.000E+03  1.782E-04 .              . *             .               .
6.500E+03  1.403E-04 .              .*              .               .
7.000E+03  1.124E-04 .              *               .               .
7.500E+03  9.141E-05 .              *               .               .
8.000E+03  7.536E-05 .             *.               .               .
8.500E+03  6.285E-05 .             *.               .               .
9.000E+03  5.296E-05 .            *  .               .               .
9.500E+03  4.504E-05 .            *  .               .               .
1.000E+04  3.863E-05 .           *   .               .               .
1.050E+04  3.337E-05 .           *   .               .               .
1.100E+04  2.903E-05 .          *    .               .               .
1.150E+04  2.541E-05 .          *    .               .               .
1.200E+04  2.237E-05 .         *     .               .               .
1.250E+04  1.979E-05 .         *     .               .               .
1.300E+04  1.760E-05 .         *     .               .               .
1.350E+04  1.571E-05 .        *      .               .               .
1.400E+04  1.409E-05 .        *      .               .               .
1.450E+04  1.268E-05 .        *      .               .               .
1.500E+04  1.146E-05 .       *       .               .               .
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

7.8.7 Multiple-source AC network



One of the idiosyncrasies of SPICE is its inability to handle any loop in a circuit exclusively composed of series voltage sources and inductors. Therefore, the "loop" of V_1-L_1-L_2-V_2-V_1 is unacceptable. To get around this, I had to insert a *low*-resistance resistor somewhere in that loop to break it up. Thus, we have R_{bogus} between 3 and 4 (with 1 pico-ohm of resistance), and V_2 between 4 and 0. The circuit above is the original design, while the circuit below has R_{bogus} inserted to avoid the SPICE error.



Netlist:

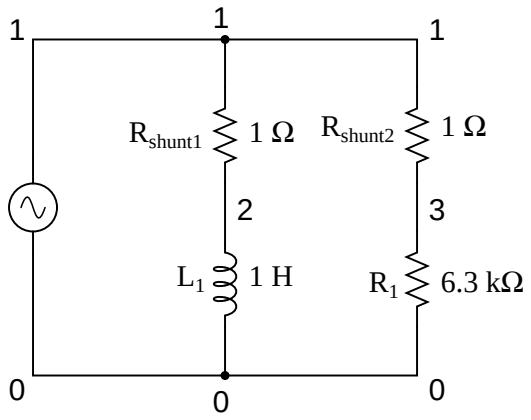
```
Multiple ac source
v1 1 0 ac 55 0 sin
v2 4 0 ac 43 25 sin
l1 1 2 450m
c1 2 0 330u
l2 2 3 150m
```

```
rbogus 3 4 1e-12
.ac lin 1 30 30
.print ac v(2)
.end
```

Output:

```
freq          v(2)
3.000E+01     1.413E+02
```

7.8.8 AC phase shift demonstration



The currents through each leg are indicated by the voltage drops across each respective shunt resistor (1 amp = 1 volt through 1 Ω), output by the `v(1,2)` and `v(1,3)` terms of the `.print` card. The phase of the currents through each leg are indicated by the phase of the voltage drops across each respective shunt resistor, output by the `vp(1,2)` and `vp(1,3)` terms in the `.print` card.

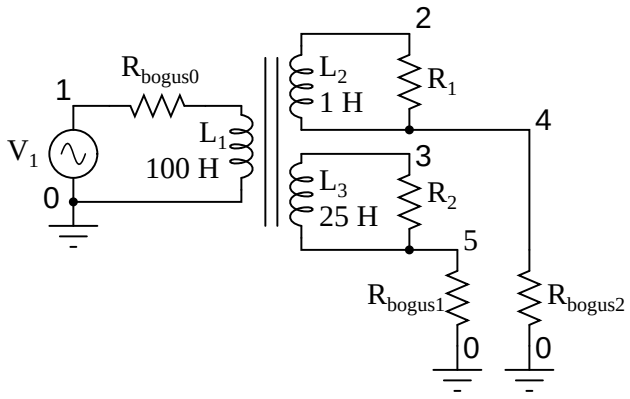
Netlist:

```
phase shift
v1 1 0 ac 4 sin
rshunt1 1 2 1
rshunt2 1 3 1
l1 2 0 1
r1 3 0 6.3k
.ac lin 1 1000 1000
.print ac v(1,2) v(1,3) vp(1,2) vp(1,3)
.end
```

Output:

```
freq          v(1,2)      v(1,3)      vp(1,2)     vp(1,3)
1.000E+03     6.366E-04   6.349E-04  -9.000E+01   0.000E+00
```

7.8.9 Transformer circuit



SPICE understands transformers as a set of mutually coupled inductors. Thus, to simulate a transformer in SPICE, you must specify the primary and secondary windings as separate inductors, then instruct SPICE to link them together with a ”k” card specifying the coupling constant. For ideal transformer simulation, the coupling constant would be unity (1). However, SPICE can't handle this value, so we use something like 0.999 as the coupling factor.

Note that *all* winding inductor pairs must be coupled with their own `k` cards in order for the simulation to work properly. For a two-winding transformer, a single `k` card will suffice. For a three-winding transformer, three `k` cards must be specified (to link L_1 with L_2, L_2 with L_3, and L_1 with L_3).

The L_1/L_2 inductance ratio of 100:1 provides a 10:1 step-down voltage transformation ratio. With 120 volts in we should see 12 volts out of the L_2 winding. The L_1/L_3 inductance ratio of 100:25 (4:1) provides a 2:1 step-down voltage transformation ratio, which should give us 60 volts out of the L_3 winding with 120 volts in.

Netlist:

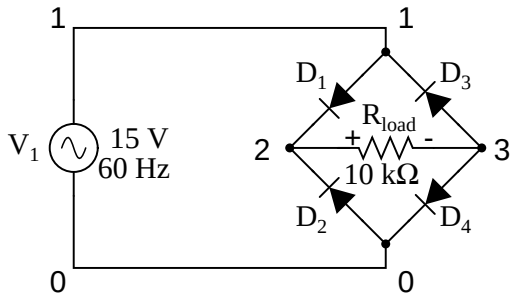
```
transformer
v1 1 0 ac 120 sin
rbogus0 1 6 1e-3
l1 6 0 100
l2 2 4 1
l3 3 5 25
k1 l1 l2 0.999
k2 l2 l3 0.999
k3 l1 l3 0.999
r1 2 4 1000
r2 3 5 1000
rbogus1 5 0 1e10
rbogus2 4 0 1e10
.ac lin 1 60 60
.print ac v(1,0) v(2,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

Output:

```
freq          v(1)        v(2)        v(3)
6.000E+01     1.200E+02   1.199E+01   5.993E+01
```

In this example, R_{bogus0} is a very low-value resistor, serving to break up the source/inductor loop of V_1/L_1. R_{bogus1} and R_{bogus2} are very high-value resistors necessary to provide DC paths to ground on each of the isolated circuits. Note as well that one side of the primary circuit is directly grounded. Without these ground references, SPICE will produce errors!

7.8.10 Full-wave bridge rectifier



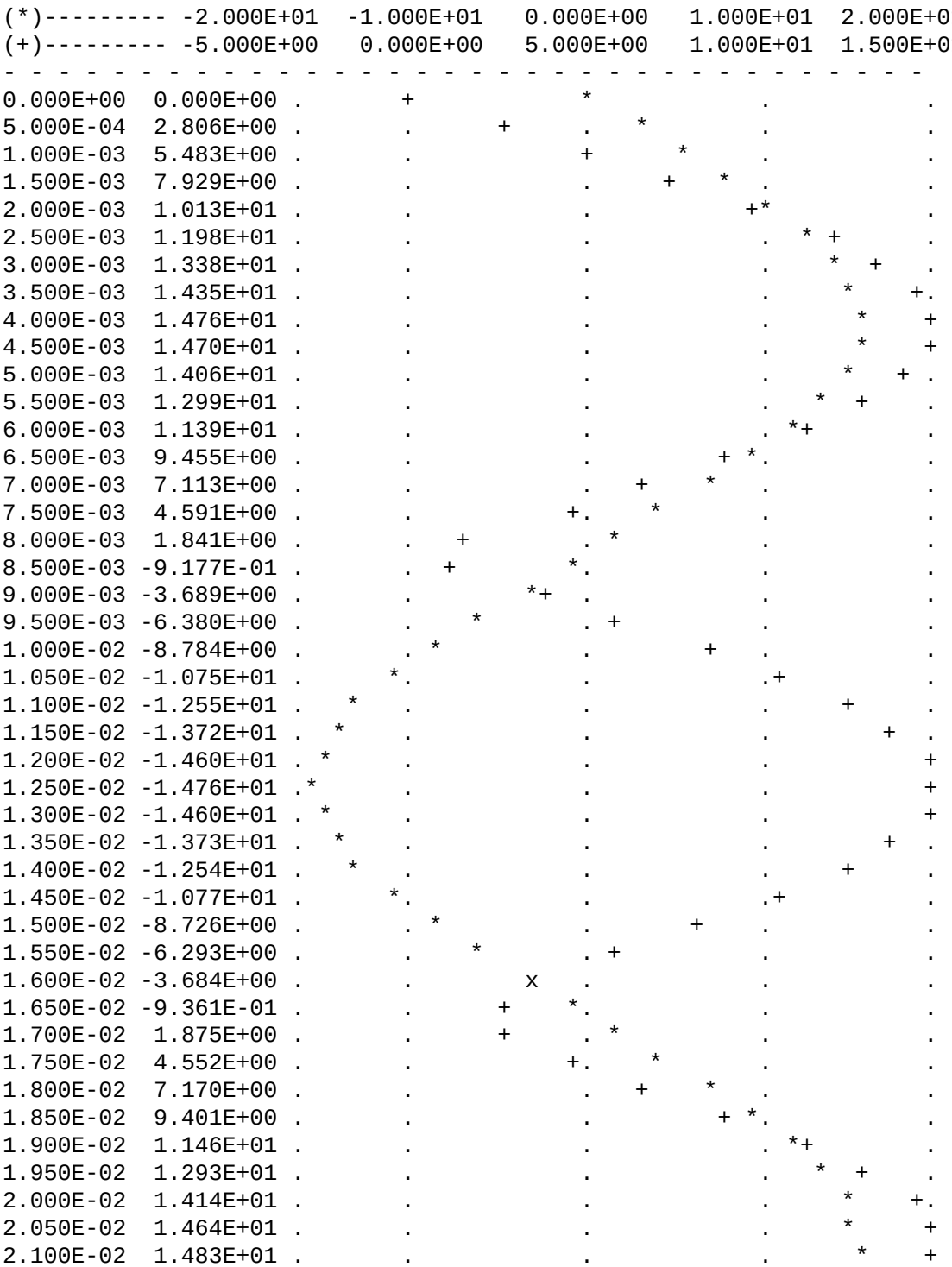
Diodes, like all semiconductor components in SPICE, must be modeled so that SPICE knows all the nitty-gritty details of how they're supposed to work. Fortunately, SPICE comes with a few generic models, and the diode is the most basic. Notice the `.model` card which simply specifies "d" as the generic diode model for `mod1`. Again, since we're plotting the waveforms here, we need to specify all parameters of the AC source in a single card and print/plot all values using the `.tran` option.

Netlist:

```
fullwave bridge rectifier
v1 1 0 sin(0 15 60 0 0)
rload 1 0 10k
d1 1 2 mod1
d2 0 2 mod1
d3 3 1 mod1
d4 3 0 mod1
.model mod1 d
.tran .5m 25m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(2,3)
.end
```

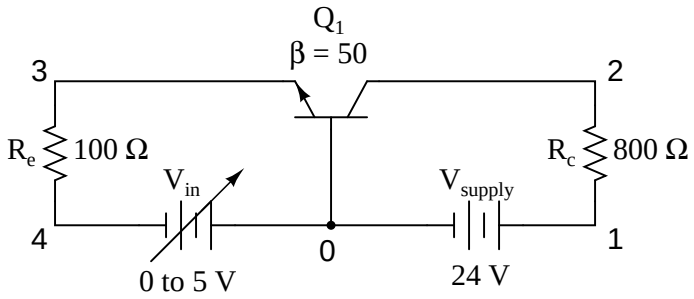
Output:

```
legend:
*: v(1)
+: v(2,3)
time      v(1)
```


(*)--------- -2.000E+01 -1.000E+01 0.000E+00 1.000E+01 2.000E+01
(+)--------- -5.000E+00 0.000E+00 5.000E+00 1.000E+01 1.500E+01
0.000E+00 0.000E+00
5.000E-04 2.806E+00
1.000E-03 5.483E+00
1.500E-03 7.929E+00
2.000E-03 1.013E+01
2.500E-03 1.198E+01
3.000E-03 1.338E+01
3.500E-03 1.435E+01
4.000E-03 1.476E+01
4.500E-03 1.470E+01
5.000E-03 1.406E+01
5.500E-03 1.299E+01
6.000E-03 1.139E+01
6.500E-03 9.455E+00
7.000E-03 7.113E+00
7.500E-03 4.591E+00
8.000E-03 1.841E+00
8.500E-03 -9.177E-01
9.000E-03 -3.689E+00
9.500E-03 -6.380E+00
1.000E-02 -8.784E+00
1.050E-02 -1.075E+01
1.100E-02 -1.255E+01
1.150E-02 -1.372E+01
1.200E-02 -1.460E+01
1.250E-02 -1.476E+01
1.300E-02 -1.460E+01
1.350E-02 -1.373E+01
1.400E-02 -1.254E+01
1.450E-02 -1.077E+01
1.500E-02 -8.726E+00
1.550E-02 -6.293E+00
1.600E-02 -3.684E+00
1.650E-02 -9.361E-01
1.700E-02 1.875E+00
1.750E-02 4.552E+00
1.800E-02 7.170E+00
1.850E-02 9.401E+00
1.900E-02 1.146E+01
1.950E-02 1.293E+01
2.000E-02 1.414E+01
2.050E-02 1.464E+01
2.100E-02 1.483E+01

```
2.150E-02  1.430E+01 .       .            .             .      *     +.
2.200E-02  1.344E+01 .       .            .             .    *   +   .
2.250E-02  1.195E+01 .       .            .             .  *+         .
2.300E-02  1.016E+01 .       .            .           +*              .
2.350E-02  7.917E+00 .       .            .     +   *   .             .
2.400E-02  5.460E+00 .       .            +       *     .             .
2.450E-02  2.809E+00 .       .      +     .   *         .             .
2.500E-02 -8.297E-04 .       +            *             .             .
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

7.8.11 Common-base BJT transistor amplifier



This analysis sweeps the input voltage (Vin) from 0 to 5 volts in 0.1 volt increments, then prints out the voltage between the collector and emitter leads of the transistor v(2,3). The transistor (Q1) is an NPN with a forward Beta of 50.

Netlist:

```
Common-base BJT amplifier
vsupply 1 0 dc 24
vin 0 4 dc
rc 1 2 800
re 3 4 100
q1 2 0 3 mod1
.model mod1 npn bf=50
.dc vin 0 5 0.1
.print dc v(2,3)
.plot dc v(2,3)
.end
```

Output:

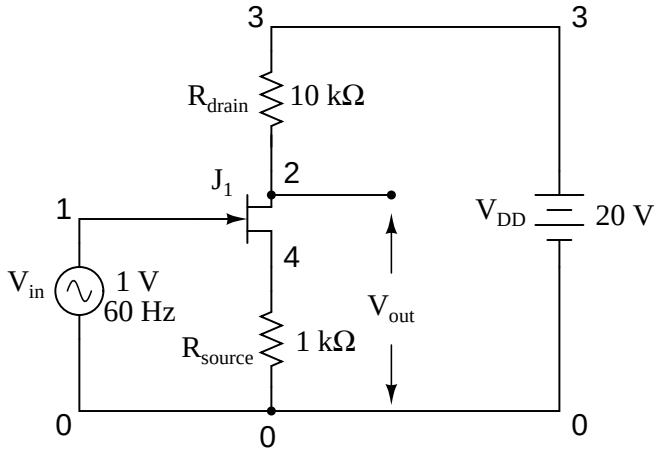
```
vin           v(2,3)
0.000E+00     2.400E+01
1.000E-01     2.410E+01
2.000E-01     2.420E+01
3.000E-01     2.430E+01
4.000E-01     2.440E+01
```

```
5.000E-01     2.450E+01
6.000E-01     2.460E+01
7.000E-01     2.466E+01
8.000E-01     2.439E+01
9.000E-01     2.383E+01
1.000E+00     2.317E+01
1.100E+00     2.246E+01
1.200E+00     2.174E+01
1.300E+00     2.101E+01
1.400E+00     2.026E+01
1.500E+00     1.951E+01
1.600E+00     1.876E+01
1.700E+00     1.800E+01
1.800E+00     1.724E+01
1.900E+00     1.648E+01
2.000E+00     1.572E+01
2.100E+00     1.495E+01
2.200E+00     1.418E+01
2.300E+00     1.342E+01
2.400E+00     1.265E+01
2.500E+00     1.188E+01
2.600E+00     1.110E+01
2.700E+00     1.033E+01
2.800E+00     9.560E+00
2.900E+00     8.787E+00
3.000E+00     8.014E+00
3.100E+00     7.240E+00
3.200E+00     6.465E+00
3.300E+00     5.691E+00
3.400E+00     4.915E+00
3.500E+00     4.140E+00
3.600E+00     3.364E+00
3.700E+00     2.588E+00
3.800E+00     1.811E+00
3.900E+00     1.034E+00
4.000E+00     2.587E-01
4.100E+00     9.744E-02
4.200E+00     7.815E-02
4.300E+00     6.806E-02
4.400E+00     6.141E-02
4.500E+00     5.657E-02
4.600E+00     5.281E-02
4.700E+00     4.981E-02
4.800E+00     4.734E-02
4.900E+00     4.525E-02
5.000E+00     4.346E-02
```

```
vin         v(2,3) 0.000E+00    1.000E+01    2.000E+01     3.000E+01
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
0.000E+00  2.400E+01 .             .             .     *        .
1.000E-01  2.410E+01 .             .             .     *        .
2.000E-01  2.420E+01 .             .             .     *        .
3.000E-01  2.430E+01 .             .             .     *        .
4.000E-01  2.440E+01 .             .             .     *        .
5.000E-01  2.450E+01 .             .             .     *        .
6.000E-01  2.460E+01 .             .             .     *        .
7.000E-01  2.466E+01 .             .             .      *       .
8.000E-01  2.439E+01 .             .             .     *        .
9.000E-01  2.383E+01 .             .             .    *         .
1.000E+00  2.317E+01 .             .             .   *          .
1.100E+00  2.246E+01 .             .             .  *           .
1.200E+00  2.174E+01 .             .             . *            .
1.300E+00  2.101E+01 .             .             .*             .
1.400E+00  2.026E+01 .             .             *              .
1.500E+00  1.951E+01 .             .            *.              .
1.600E+00  1.876E+01 .             .           * .              .
1.700E+00  1.800E+01 .             .          *  .              .
1.800E+00  1.724E+01 .             .         *   .              .
1.900E+00  1.648E+01 .             .        *    .              .
2.000E+00  1.572E+01 .             .       *     .              .
2.100E+00  1.495E+01 .             .      *      .              .
2.200E+00  1.418E+01 .             .     *       .              .
2.300E+00  1.342E+01 .             .    *        .              .
2.400E+00  1.265E+01 .             .   *         .              .
2.500E+00  1.188E+01 .             .  *          .              .
2.600E+00  1.110E+01 .             . *           .              .
2.700E+00  1.033E+01 .             *             .              .
2.800E+00  9.560E+00 .            *.             .              .
2.900E+00  8.787E+00 .           * .             .              .
3.000E+00  8.014E+00 .          *  .             .              .
3.100E+00  7.240E+00 .         *   .             .              .
3.200E+00  6.465E+00 .        *    .             .              .
3.300E+00  5.691E+00 .       *     .             .              .
3.400E+00  4.915E+00 .      *      .             .              .
3.500E+00  4.140E+00 .     *       .             .              .
3.600E+00  3.364E+00 .    *        .             .              .
3.700E+00  2.588E+00 .   *         .             .              .
3.800E+00  1.811E+00 .  *          .             .              .
3.900E+00  1.034E+00 .*            .             .              .
4.000E+00  2.587E-01 *             .             .              .
4.100E+00  9.744E-02 *             .             .              .
4.200E+00  7.815E-02 *             .             .              .
4.300E+00  6.806E-02 *             .             .              .
```

```
4.400E+00  6.141E-02 *             .             .             .
4.500E+00  5.657E-02 *             .             .             .
4.600E+00  5.281E-02 *             .             .             .
4.700E+00  4.981E-02 *             .             .             .
4.800E+00  4.734E-02 *             .             .             .
4.900E+00  4.525E-02 *             .             .             .
5.000E+00  4.346E-02 *             .             .             .
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

7.8.12 Common-source JFET amplifier with self-bias



Netlist:

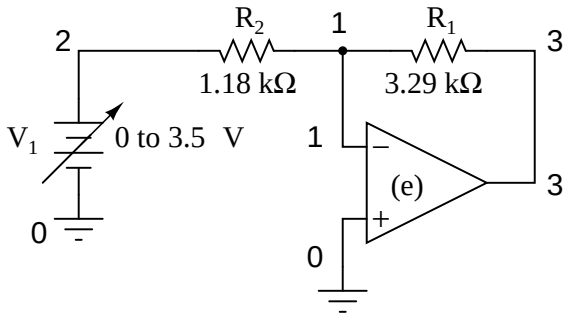
```
common source jfet amplifier
vin 1 0 sin(0 1 60 0 0)
vdd 3 0 dc 20
rdrain 3 2 10k
rsource 4 0 1k
j1 2 1 4 mod1
.model mod1 njf
.tran 1m 30m
.plot tran v(2,0) v(1,0)
.end
```

Output:

```
legend:
*: v(2)
+: v(1)
time      v(2)
(*)---------  1.400E+01    1.600E+01   1.800E+01  2.000E+01 2.200E+01
(+)--------- -1.000E+00   -5.000E-01   0.000E+00  5.000E-01 1.000E+00
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

```
0.000E+00  1.708E+01 .           .     *    +          .           .
1.000E-03  1.609E+01 .           .*          .        + .           .
2.000E-03  1.516E+01 .       *   .           .          .  +        .
3.000E-03  1.448E+01 .  *        .           .          .        +  .
4.000E-03  1.419E+01 .*          .           .          .           +
5.000E-03  1.432E+01 . *         .           .          .          +.
6.000E-03  1.490E+01 .     *     .           .          .    +      .
7.000E-03  1.577E+01 .         * .           .          +.          .
8.000E-03  1.676E+01 .           .  *        .  +       .           .
9.000E-03  1.768E+01 .           .    +    *.          .           .
1.000E-02  1.841E+01 .         + .           . *        .           .
1.100E-02  1.890E+01 .   +       .           .    *     .           .
1.200E-02  1.912E+01 .+          .           .      *   .           .
1.300E-02  1.912E+01 .+          .           .      *   .           .
1.400E-02  1.890E+01 .   +       .           .    *     .           .
1.500E-02  1.842E+01 .         + .           . *        .           .
1.600E-02  1.768E+01 .           .    +    *.          .           .
1.700E-02  1.676E+01 .           .  *        .  +       .           .
1.800E-02  1.577E+01 .         * .           .          +.          .
1.900E-02  1.491E+01 .     *     .           .          .    +      .
2.000E-02  1.432E+01 . *         .           .          .          +.
2.100E-02  1.419E+01 .*          .           .          .           +
2.200E-02  1.449E+01 .  *        .           .          .        +  .
2.300E-02  1.516E+01 .       *   .           .          .  +        .
2.400E-02  1.609E+01 .           .*          .        + .           .
2.500E-02  1.708E+01 .           .     *    +          .           .
2.600E-02  1.796E+01 .           . +         *          .           .
2.700E-02  1.861E+01 .         +   .           .  *       .           .
2.800E-02  1.900E+01 .  +        .           .     *    .           .
2.900E-02  1.916E+01 +           .           .      *   .           .
3.000E-02  1.908E+01 .+          .           .      *   .           .
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

7.8.13 Inverting op-amp circuit



To simulate an ideal operational amplifier in SPICE, we use a voltage-dependent voltage source as a differential amplifier with extremely high gain. The "e" card sets up the dependent voltage source with four nodes, 3 and 0 for voltage output, and 1 and 0 for voltage input. No power supply is needed for the dependent voltage source, unlike a real operational amplifier. The voltage gain is set at 999,000 in this case. The input voltage source (V_1) sweeps from 0 to 3.5 volts in 0.05 volt steps.

Netlist:

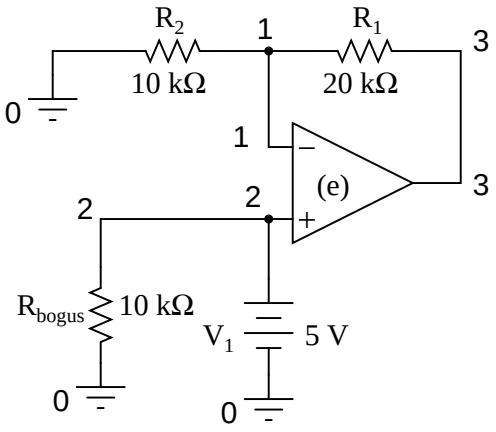
```
Inverting opamp
v1 2 0 dc
e 3 0 0 1 999k
r1 3 1 3.29k
r2 1 2 1.18k
.dc v1 0 3.5 0.05
.print dc v(3,0)
.end
```

Output:

```
v1            v(3)
0.000E+00     0.000E+00
5.000E-02    -1.394E-01
1.000E-01    -2.788E-01
1.500E-01    -4.182E-01
2.000E-01    -5.576E-01
2.500E-01    -6.970E-01
3.000E-01    -8.364E-01
3.500E-01    -9.758E-01
4.000E-01    -1.115E+00
4.500E-01    -1.255E+00
5.000E-01    -1.394E+00
5.500E-01    -1.533E+00
6.000E-01    -1.673E+00
6.500E-01    -1.812E+00
7.000E-01    -1.952E+00
7.500E-01    -2.091E+00
8.000E-01    -2.231E+00
8.500E-01    -2.370E+00
9.000E-01    -2.509E+00
9.500E-01    -2.649E+00
1.000E+00    -2.788E+00
1.050E+00    -2.928E+00
1.100E+00    -3.067E+00
1.150E+00    -3.206E+00
1.200E+00    -3.346E+00
1.250E+00    -3.485E+00
1.300E+00    -3.625E+00
```

```
1.350E+00    -3.764E+00
1.400E+00    -3.903E+00
1.450E+00    -4.043E+00
1.500E+00    -4.182E+00
1.550E+00    -4.322E+00
1.600E+00    -4.461E+00
1.650E+00    -4.600E+00
1.700E+00    -4.740E+00
1.750E+00    -4.879E+00
1.800E+00    -5.019E+00
1.850E+00    -5.158E+00
1.900E+00    -5.297E+00
1.950E+00    -5.437E+00
2.000E+00    -5.576E+00
2.050E+00    -5.716E+00
2.100E+00    -5.855E+00
2.150E+00    -5.994E+00
2.200E+00    -6.134E+00
2.250E+00    -6.273E+00
2.300E+00    -6.413E+00
2.350E+00    -6.552E+00
2.400E+00    -6.692E+00
2.450E+00    -6.831E+00
2.500E+00    -6.970E+00
2.550E+00    -7.110E+00
2.600E+00    -7.249E+00
2.650E+00    -7.389E+00
2.700E+00    -7.528E+00
2.750E+00    -7.667E+00
2.800E+00    -7.807E+00
2.850E+00    -7.946E+00
2.900E+00    -8.086E+00
2.950E+00    -8.225E+00
3.000E+00    -8.364E+00
3.050E+00    -8.504E+00
3.100E+00    -8.643E+00
3.150E+00    -8.783E+00
3.200E+00    -8.922E+00
3.250E+00    -9.061E+00
3.300E+00    -9.201E+00
3.350E+00    -9.340E+00
3.400E+00    -9.480E+00
3.450E+00    -9.619E+00
3.500E+00    -9.758E+00
```

7.8.14 Noninverting op-amp circuit



Another example of a SPICE quirk: since the dependent voltage source "e" isn't considered a load to voltage source V_1, SPICE interprets V_1 to be open-circuited and will refuse to analyze it. The fix is to connect R_{bogus} in parallel with V_1 to act as a DC load. Being directly connected across V_1, the resistance of R_{bogus} is not crucial to the operation of the circuit, so 10 kΩ will work fine. I decided not to sweep the V_1 input voltage at all in this circuit for the sake of keeping the netlist and output listing simple.

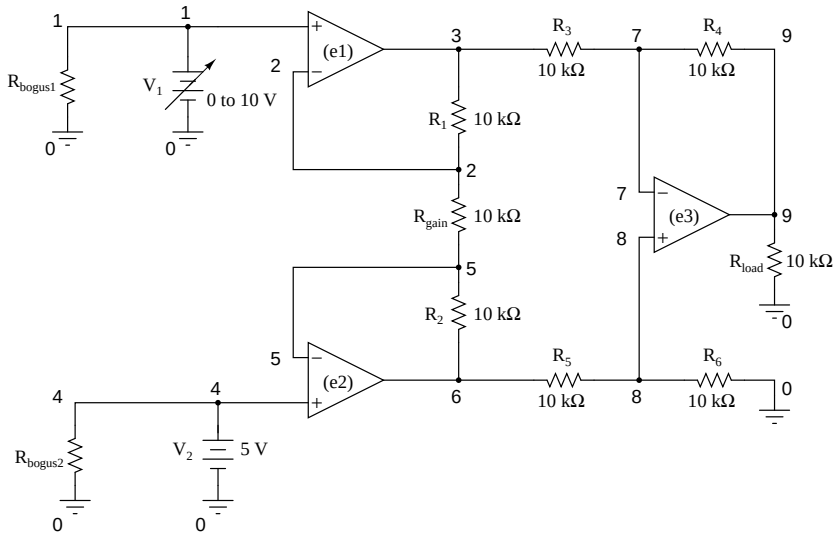
Netlist:

```
noninverting opamp
v1 2 0 dc 5
rbogus 2 0 10k
e 3 0 2 1 999k
r1 3 1 20k
r2 1 0 10k
.end
```

Output:

```
node     voltage   node     voltage   node    voltage
(  1)    5.0000    (  2)    5.0000    (  3)   15.0000
```

7.8.15 Instrumentation amplifier



Note the very high-resistance R_{bogus1} and R_{bogus2} resistors in the netlist (not shown in schematic for brevity) across each input voltage source, to keep SPICE from thinking V_1 and V_2 were open-circuited, just like the other op-amp circuit examples.

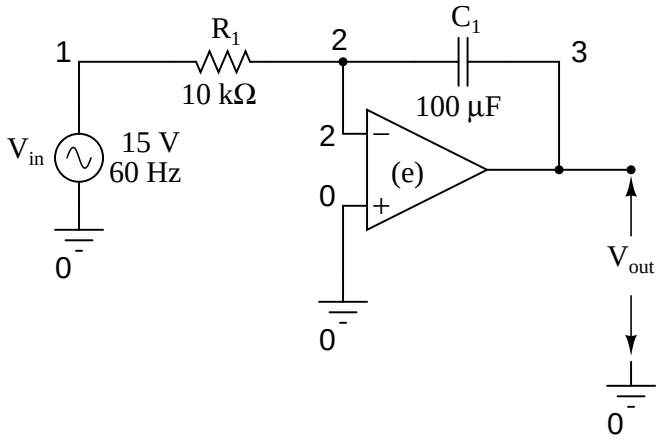
Netlist:

```
Instrumentation amplifier
v1 1 0
rbogus1 1 0 9e12
v2 4 0 dc 5
rbogus2 4 0 9e12
e1 3 0 1 2 999k
e2 6 0 4 5 999k
e3 9 0 8 7 999k
rload 9 0 10k
r1 2 3 10k
rgain 2 5 10k
r2 5 6 10k
r3 3 7 10k
r4 7 9 10k
r5 6 8 10k
r6 8 0 10k
.dc v1 0 10 1
.print dc v(9) v(3,6)
.end
```

Output:

```
v1            v(9)        v(3,6)
0.000E+00     1.500E+01  -1.500E+01
1.000E+00     1.200E+01  -1.200E+01
2.000E+00     9.000E+00  -9.000E+00
3.000E+00     6.000E+00  -6.000E+00
4.000E+00     3.000E+00  -3.000E+00
5.000E+00     9.955E-11  -9.956E-11
6.000E+00    -3.000E+00   3.000E+00
7.000E+00    -6.000E+00   6.000E+00
8.000E+00    -9.000E+00   9.000E+00
9.000E+00    -1.200E+01   1.200E+01
1.000E+01    -1.500E+01   1.500E+01
```

7.8.16 Op-amp integrator with sinewave input



Netlist:

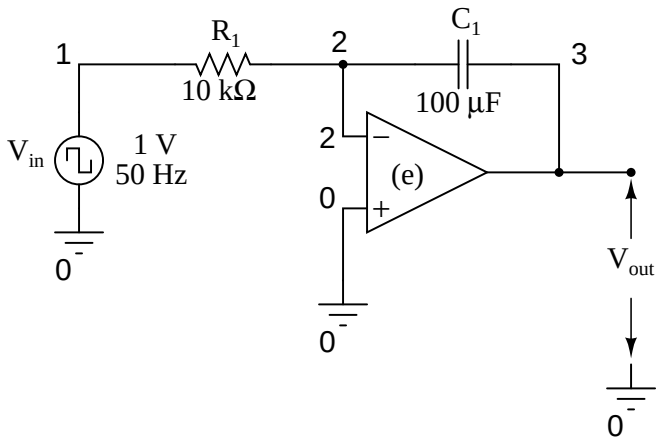
```
Integrator with sinewave input
vin 1 0 sin (0 15 60 0 0)
r1 1 2 10k
c1 2 3 150u ic=0
e 3 0 0 2 999k
.tran 1m 30m uic
.plot tran v(1,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

Output:

```
legend:
*: v(1)
+: v(3)
time       v(1)
```

```
(*)-------- -2.000E+01    -1.000E+01     0.000E+00     1.000E+01
(+)-------- -6.000E-02    -4.000E-02    -2.000E-02     0.000E+00
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
0.000E+00  6.536E-08 .        .              *              +        .
1.000E-03  5.516E+00 .        .              .        *     +.       .
2.000E-03  1.021E+01 .        .              .         +     *       .
3.000E-03  1.350E+01 .        .              .   +           .     *  .
4.000E-03  1.495E+01 .        .            +  .              .       *.
5.000E-03  1.418E+01 .        .    +         .              .      * .
6.000E-03  1.150E+01 .      + .              .              . *      .
7.000E-03  7.214E+00 . +      .              .           *  .        .
8.000E-03  1.867E+00 .+       .              .   *          .        .
9.000E-03 -3.709E+00 . +      .         *    .              .        .
1.000E-02 -8.805E+00 .   +    . *            .              .        .
1.100E-02 -1.259E+01 .    *   +              .              .        .
1.200E-02 -1.466E+01 . *      .     +        .              .        .
1.300E-02 -1.471E+01 . *      .             +.              .        .
1.400E-02 -1.259E+01 .    *   .              .    +         .        .
1.500E-02 -8.774E+00 .        . *            .          +   .        .
1.600E-02 -3.723E+00 .        .         *    .             +.        .
1.700E-02  1.870E+00 .        .              .   *           +        .
1.800E-02  7.188E+00 .        .              .          * + .        .
1.900E-02  1.154E+01 .        .              .       +      . *      .
2.000E-02  1.418E+01 .        .             .+             .     *  .
2.100E-02  1.490E+01 .        .       +     .              .      *.
2.200E-02  1.355E+01 .        . +           .              .    *  .
2.300E-02  1.020E+01 .    +   .              .             *       .
2.400E-02  5.496E+00 . +      .              .       *     .        .
2.500E-02 -1.486E-03 .+       .              *             .        .
2.600E-02 -5.489E+00 . +      .     *        .             .        .
2.700E-02 -1.021E+01 .    +   *              .             .        .
2.800E-02 -1.355E+01 .   *    . +            .             .        .
2.900E-02 -1.488E+01 . *      .       +      .             .        .
3.000E-02 -1.427E+01 .  *     .              .+            .        .
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

7.8.17 Op-amp integrator with squarewave input



Netlist:

```
Integrator with squarewave input
vin 1 0 pulse (-1 1 0 0 0 10m 20m)
r1 1 2 1k
c1 2 3 150u ic=0
e 3 0 0 2 999k
.tran 1m 50m uic
.plot tran v(1,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

Output:

```
legend:
*: v(1)
+: v(3)
time       v(1)
(*)-------- -1.000E+00   -5.000E-01     0.000E+00  5.000E-01  1.000E+00
(+)-------- -1.000E-01   -5.000E-02     0.000E+00  5.000E-02  1.000E-01
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
0.000E+00 -1.000E+00 *         .              +           .         .
1.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .              +           .         *
2.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .            + .           .         *
3.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .          +   .           .         *
4.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .        +     .           .         *
5.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .      +       .           .         *
6.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .    +         .           .         *
7.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .  +           .           .         *
8.000E-03  1.000E+00 .         .+             .           .         *
9.000E-03  1.000E+00 .        +.              .           .         *
```

```
1.000E-02  1.000E+00 .      +  .             .           .          *
1.100E-02  1.000E+00 .    +    .             .           .          *
1.200E-02 -1.000E+00 *    +    .             .           .          .
1.300E-02 -1.000E+00 *      +  .             .           .          .
1.400E-02 -1.000E+00 *        +.             .           .          .
1.500E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .+            .           .          .
1.600E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .  +          .           .          .
1.700E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .    +        .           .          .
1.800E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .      +      .           .          .
1.900E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .       +     .           .          .
2.000E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .         +   .           .          .
2.100E-02  1.000E+00 .         .         +   .           .          *
2.200E-02  1.000E+00 .         .       +     .           .          *
2.300E-02  1.000E+00 .         .      +      .           .          *
2.400E-02  1.000E+00 .         .    +        .           .          *
2.500E-02  1.000E+00 .         .  +          .           .          *
2.600E-02  1.000E+00 .         .+            .           .          *
2.700E-02  1.000E+00 .        +.             .           .          *
2.800E-02  1.000E+00 .      +  .             .           .          *
2.900E-02  1.000E+00 .    +    .             .           .          *
3.000E-02  1.000E+00 .  +      .             .           .          *
3.100E-02  1.000E+00 . +       .             .           .          *
3.200E-02 -1.000E+00 * +       .             .           .          .
3.300E-02 -1.000E+00 *  +      .             .           .          .
3.400E-02 -1.000E+00 *    +    .             .           .          .
3.500E-02 -1.000E+00 *      +  .             .           .          .
3.600E-02 -1.000E+00 *        +.             .           .          .
3.700E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .+            .           .          .
3.800E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .  +          .           .          .
3.900E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .    +        .           .          .
4.000E-02 -1.000E+00 *         .      +      .           .          .
4.100E-02  1.000E+00 .         .      +      .           .          *
4.200E-02  1.000E+00 .         .    +        .           .          *
4.300E-02  1.000E+00 .         .  +          .           .          *
4.400E-02  1.000E+00 .         .+            .           .          *
4.500E-02  1.000E+00 .        +.             .           .          *
4.600E-02  1.000E+00 .      +  .             .           .          *
4.700E-02  1.000E+00 .    +    .             .           .          *
4.800E-02  1.000E+00 .  +      .             .           .          *
4.900E-02  1.000E+00 . +       .             .           .          *
5.000E-02  1.000E+00 +         .             .           .          *
- - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - - -
```

Chapter 8

TROUBLESHOOTING – THEORY AND PRACTICE

Contents

8.1

Perhaps the most valuable but difficult-to-learn skill any technical person could have is the ability to troubleshoot a system. For those unfamiliar with the term, *troubleshooting* means the act of pinpointing and correcting problems in any kind of system. For an auto mechanic, this means determining and fixing problems in cars based on the car's behavior. For a doctor, this means correctly diagnosing a patient's malady and prescribing a cure. For a business expert, this means identifying the source(s) of inefficiency in a corporation and recommending corrective measures.

Troubleshooters must be able to determine the cause or causes of a problem simply by examining its effects. Rarely does the source of a problem directly present itself for all to see. Cause/effect relationships are often complex, even for seemingly simple systems, and often the proficient troubleshooter is regarded by others as something of a miracle-worker for their ability to quickly discern the root cause of a problem. While some people are gifted with a natural talent for troubleshooting, it is a skill that can be learned like any other.

Sometimes the system to be analyzed is in so bad a state of affairs that there is no hope of ever getting it working again. When investigators sift through the wreckage of a crashed airplane, or when a doctor performs an autopsy, they must do their best to determine the cause of massive failure after the fact. Fortunately, the task of the troubleshooter is usually not this grim. Typically, a misbehaving system is still functioning to some degree and may be stimulated and adjusted by the troubleshooter as part of the diagnostic procedure. In this sense, troubleshooting is a lot like scientific method: determining cause/effect relationships by means of live experimentation.

Like science, troubleshooting is a mixture of standard procedure and personal creativity. There are certain procedures employed as tools to discern cause(s) from effects, but they are impotent if not coupled with a creative and inquisitive mind. In the course of troubleshooting, the troubleshooter may have to invent their own specific technique – adapted to the particular system they're working on – and/or modify tools to perform a special task. Creativity is necessary in examining a problem from different perspectives: learning to ask different questions when the "standard" questions don't lead to fruitful answers.

If there is one personality trait I've seen positively associated with excellent troubleshooting more than any other, its technical curiosity. People fascinated by learning how things work, and who aren't discouraged by a challenging problem, tend to be better at troubleshooting than others. Richard Feynman, the late physicist who taught at Caltech for many years, illustrates to me the ultimate troubleshooting personality. Reading any of his (auto)biographical books is both educating and entertaining, and I recommend them to anyone seeking to develop their own scientific reasoning/troubleshooting skills.

8.2 Questions to ask before proceeding

- Has the system ever worked before? If yes, has anything happened to it since then that could cause the problem?
- Has this system proven itself to be prone to certain types of failure?
- How urgent is the need for repair?
- What are the *safety concerns*, before I start troubleshooting?
- What are the process quality concerns, before I start troubleshooting (what can I do without causing interruptions in production)?

These preliminary questions are not trivial. Indeed, they are essential to expedient and safe troubleshooting. They are especially important when the system to be trouble-shot is large, dangerous, and/or expensive.

Sometimes the troubleshooter will be required to work on a system that is still in full operation (perhaps the ultimate example of this is a doctor diagnosing a live patient). Once the cause or causes are determined to a high degree of certainty, there is the step of corrective action. Correcting a system fault without significantly interrupting the operation of the system can be very challenging, and it deserves thorough planning.

When there is high risk involved in taking corrective action, such as is the case with performing surgery on a patient or making repairs to an operating process in a chemical plant, it is essential for the worker(s) to plan ahead for possible trouble. One question to ask before proceeding with repairs is, ”how and at what point(s) can I abort the repairs if something goes wrong?” In risky situations, it is vital to have planned ”escape routes” in your corrective action, just in case things do not go as planned. A surgeon operating on a patient knows if there are any ”points of no return” in such a procedure, and stops to re-check the patient before proceeding past those points. He or she also knows how to ”back out” of a surgical procedure at those points if needed.

8.3 General troubleshooting tips

When first approaching a failed or otherwise misbehaving system, the new troubleshooter often doesn’t know where to begin. The following strategies are not exhaustive by any means, but provide the troubleshooter with a simple checklist of questions to ask in order to start isolating the problem.

As tips, these troubleshooting suggestions are not comprehensive procedures: they serve as starting points only for the troubleshooting process. An essential part of expedient troubleshooting is probability assessment, and these tips help the troubleshooter determine which possible points of failure are more or less likely than others. Final isolation of the system failure is usually determined through more specific techniques (outlined in the next section – *Specific Troubleshooting Techniques*).

8.3.1 Prior occurrence

If this device or process has been historically known to fail in a certain particular way, and the conditions leading to this common failure have not changed, check for this ”way” first. A corollary to this troubleshooting tip is the directive to keep detailed records of failure. Ideally, a computer-based failure log is optimal, so that failures may be referenced by and correlated to a number of factors such as time, date, and environmental conditions.

Example: *The car's engine is overheating. The last two times this happened, the cause was low coolant level in the radiator.*

What to do: Check the coolant level first. Of course, past history by no means guarantees the present symptoms are caused by the same problem, but since this is more likely, it makes sense to check this first.

If, however, the cause of routine failure in a system has been corrected (i.e. the leak causing low coolant level in the past has been repaired), then this may not be a probable cause of trouble this time.

8.3.2 Recent alterations

If a system has been having problems immediately after some kind of maintenance or other change, the problems might be linked to those changes.

Example: *The mechanic recently tuned my car's engine, and now I hear a rattling noise that I didn't hear before I took the car in for repair.*

What to do: Check for something that may have been left loose by the mechanic after his or her tune-up work.

8.3.3 Function vs. non-function

If a system isn't producing the desired end result, look for what it *is* doing correctly; in other words, identify where the problem is *not*, and focus your efforts elsewhere. Whatever components or subsystems necessary for the properly working parts to function are probably okay. The degree of fault can often tell you what part of it is to blame.

Example: *The radio works fine on the AM band, but not on the FM band.*

What to do: Eliminate from the list of possible causes, anything in the radio necessary for the AM band's function. Whatever the source of the problem is, it is specific to the FM band and not to the AM band. This eliminates the audio amplifier, speakers, fuse, power supply, and almost all external wiring. Being able to eliminate sections of the system as possible failures reduces the scope of the problem and makes the rest of the troubleshooting procedure more efficient.

8.3.4 Hypothesize

Based on your knowledge of how a system works, think of various kinds of failures that would cause this problem (or these phenomena) to occur, and check for those failures (starting with the most likely based on circumstances, history, or knowledge of component weaknesses).

Example: *The car's engine is overheating.*
What to do: Consider possible causes for overheating, based on what you know of engine operation. Either the engine is generating too much heat, or not getting rid of the heat well enough (most likely the latter). Brainstorm some possible causes: a loose fan belt, clogged radiator, bad water pump, low coolant level, etc. Investigate each one of those possibilities before investigating alternatives.

8.4 Specific troubleshooting techniques

After applying some of the general troubleshooting tips to narrow the scope of a problem's location, there are techniques useful in further isolating it. Here are a few:

8.4.1 Swap identical components

In a system with identical or parallel subsystems, swap components between those subsystems and see whether or not the problem moves with the swapped component. If it does, you've just swapped the faulty component; if it doesn't, keep searching!

This is a powerful troubleshooting method, because it gives you both a positive and a negative indication of the swapped component's fault: when the bad part is exchanged between identical systems, the formerly broken subsystem will start working again and the formerly good subsystem will fail.

I was once able to troubleshoot an elusive problem with an automotive engine ignition system using this method: I happened to have a friend with an automobile sharing the exact same model of ignition system. We swapped parts between the engines (distributor, spark plug wires, ignition coil – one at a time) until the problem moved to the other vehicle. The problem happened to be a "weak" ignition coil, and it only manifested itself under heavy load (a condition that could not be simulated in my garage). Normally, this type of problem could only be pinpointed using an ignition system analyzer (or oscilloscope) *and* a dynamometer to simulate loaded driving conditions. This technique, however, confirmed the source of the problem with 100% accuracy, using no diagnostic equipment whatsoever.

Occasionally you may swap a component and find that the problem still exists, but has changed in some way. This tells you that the components you just swapped are *somehow different* (different calibration, different function), and nothing more. However, don't dismiss this information just because it doesn't lead you straight to the problem – look for other changes in the system as a whole as a result of the swap, and try to figure out what these changes tell you about the source of the problem.

An important caveat to this technique is the possibility of causing further damage. Suppose a component has failed because of another, less conspicuous failure in the system. Swapping

the failed component with a good component will cause the good component to fail as well. For example, suppose that a circuit develops a short, which ”blows” the protective fuse for that circuit. The blown fuse is not evident by inspection, and you don't have a meter to electrically test the fuse, so you decide to swap the suspect fuse with one of the same rating from a working circuit. As a result of this, the good fuse that you move to the shorted circuit blows as well, leaving you with two blown fuses and two non-working circuits. At least you know for certain that the original fuse *was* blown, because the circuit it was moved to stopped working after the swap, but this knowledge was gained only through the loss of a good fuse and the additional ”down time” of the second circuit.

Another example to illustrate this caveat is the ignition system problem previously mentioned. Suppose that the ”weak” ignition coil had caused the engine to backfire, damaging the muffler. If swapping ignition system components with another vehicle causes the problem to move to the other vehicle, damage may be done to the other vehicle's muffler as well. As a general rule, the technique of swapping identical components should be used only when there is minimal chance of causing additional damage. It is an excellent technique for isolating non-destructive problems.

Example 1: *You're working on a CNC machine tool with X, Y, and Z-axis drives. The Y axis is not working, but the X and Z axes are working. All three axes share identical components (feedback encoders, servo motor drives, servo motors).*

What to do: Exchange these identical components, one at a time, Y axis and either one of the working axes (X or Z), and see after each swap whether or not the problem has moved with the swap.

Example 2: *A stereo system produces no sound on the left speaker, but the right speaker works just fine.*

What to do: Try swapping respective components between the two channels and see if the problem changes sides, from left to right. When it does, you've found the defective component. For instance, you could swap the speakers between channels: if the problem moves to the other side (i.e. the same speaker that was dead before is still dead, now that its connected to the right channel cable) then you know that speaker is bad. If the problem stays on the same side (i.e. the speaker formerly silent is now producing sound after having been moved to the other side of the room and connected to the other cable), then you know the speakers are fine, and the problem must lie somewhere else (perhaps in the cable connecting the silent speaker to the amplifier, or in the amplifier itself).

If the speakers have been verified as good, then you could check the cables using the same method. Swap the cables so that each one now connects to the other channel of the amplifier and to the other speaker. Again, if the problem changes sides (i.e. now the right speaker is now ”dead” and the left speaker now produces sound), then the cable now connected to the right speaker must be defective. If neither swap (the speakers nor the cables) causes the problem to change sides from left to right, then the problem must lie within the amplifier (i.e. the left channel output must be ”dead”).

8.4.2 Remove parallel components

If a system is composed of several parallel or redundant components which can be removed without crippling the whole system, start removing these components (one at a time) and see if things start to work again.

Example 1: *A "star" topology communications network between several computers has failed. None of the computers are able to communicate with each other.*

What to do: Try unplugging the computers, one at a time from the network, and see if the network starts working again after one of them is unplugged. If it does, then that last unplugged computer may be the one at fault (it may have been "jamming" the network by constantly outputting data or noise).

Example 2: *A household fuse keeps blowing (or the breaker keeps tripping open) after a short amount of time.*

What to do: Unplug appliances from that circuit until the fuse or breaker quits interrupting the circuit. If you can eliminate the problem by unplugging a single appliance, then that appliance might be defective. If you find that unplugging almost any appliance solves the problem, then the circuit may simply be overloaded by too many appliances, neither of them defective.

8.4.3 Divide system into sections and test those sections

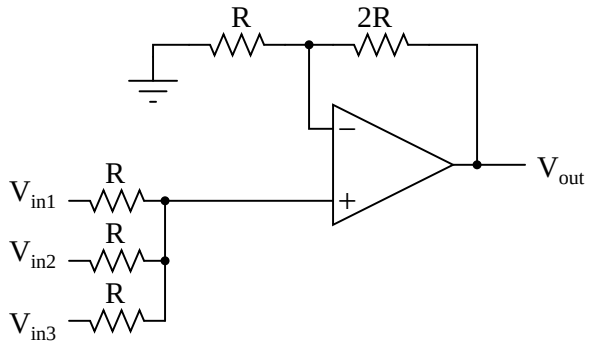
In a system with multiple sections or stages, carefully measure the variables going in and out of each stage until you find a stage where things don't look right.

Example 1: *A radio is not working (producing no sound at the speaker))*

What to do: Divide the circuitry into stages: tuning stage, mixing stages, amplifier stage, all the way through to the speaker(s). Measure signals at test points between these stages and tell whether or not a stage is working properly.

Example 2: *An analog summer circuit is not functioning properly.*

Analog summer circuit



What to do: I would test the passive averager network (the three resistors at the lower-left corner of the schematic) to see that the proper (averaged) voltage was seen at the noninverting input of the op-amp. I would then measure the voltage at the inverting input to see if it was the same as at the noninverting input (or, alternatively, measure the voltage difference between the two inputs of the op-amp, as it should be zero). Continue testing sections of the circuit (or just test points within the circuit) to see if you measure the expected voltages and currents.

8.4.4 Simplify and rebuild

Closely related to the strategy of dividing a system into sections, this is actually a design and fabrication technique useful for new circuits, machines, or systems. It's always easier begin the design and construction process in little steps, leading to larger and larger steps, rather than to build the whole thing at once and try to troubleshoot it as a whole.

Suppose that someone were building a custom automobile. He or she would be foolish to bolt all the parts together without checking and testing components and subsystems as they went along, expecting everything to work perfectly after its all assembled. Ideally, the builder would check the proper operation of components along the way through the construction process: start and tune the engine *before* its connected to the drivetrain, check for wiring problems *before* all the cover panels are put in place, check the brake system in the driveway *before* taking it out on the road, etc.

Countless times I've witnessed students build a complex experimental circuit and have trouble getting it to work because they didn't stop to check things along the way: test all resistors *before* plugging them into place, make sure the power supply is regulating voltage adequately *before* trying to power anything with it, etc. It is human nature to rush to completion of a project, thinking that such checks are a waste of valuable time. However, more time will be wasted in troubleshooting a malfunctioning circuit than would be spent checking the operation of subsystems throughout the process of construction.

Take the example of the analog summer circuit in the previous section for example: what if it wasn't working properly? How would you simplify it and test it in stages? Well, you could reconnect the op-amp as a basic comparator and see if its responsive to differential input voltages, and/or connect it as a voltage follower (buffer) and see if it outputs the same analog voltage as what is input. If it doesn't perform these simple functions, it will never perform its function in the summer circuit! By stripping away the complexity of the summer circuit, paring it down to an (almost) bare op-amp, you can test that component's functionality and then build from there (add resistor feedback and check for voltage amplification, then add input resistors and check for voltage summing), checking for expected results along the way.

8.4.5 Trap a signal

Set up instrumentation (such as a datalogger, chart recorder, or multimeter set on "record" mode) to monitor a signal over a period of time. This is especially helpful when tracking down intermittent problems, which have a way of showing up the moment you've turned your back and walked away.

This may be essential for proving what happens first in a fast-acting system. Many fast systems (especially shutdown "trip" systems) have a "first out" monitoring capability to provide this kind of data.

Example #1: *A turbine control system shuts automatically in response to an abnormal condition. By the time a technician arrives at the scene to survey the turbine's condition, however, everything is in a "down" state and its impossible to tell what signal or condition was responsible for the initial shutdown, as all operating parameters are now "abnormal."*

What to do: One technician I knew used a videocamera to record the turbine control panel, so he could see what happened (by indications on the gauges) first in an automatic-shutdown event. Simply by looking at the panel after the fact, there was no way to tell *which* signal shut the turbine down, but the videotape playback would show what happened in sequence, down to a frame-by-frame time resolution.

Example #2: *An alarm system is falsely triggering, and you suspect it may be due to a specific wire connection going bad. Unfortunately, the problem never manifests itself while you're watching it!*

What to do: Many modern digital multimeters are equipped with "record" settings, whereby they can monitor a voltage, current, or resistance over time and note whether that measurement deviates substantially from a regular value. This is an invaluable tool for use in "intermittent" electronic system failures.

8.5 Likely failures in proven systems

The following problems are arranged in order from most likely to least likely, top to bottom. This order has been determined largely from personal experience troubleshooting electrical and electronic problems in automotive, industry, and home applications. This order also assumes a circuit or system that has been proven to function as designed and has failed after substantial operation time. Problems experienced in newly assembled circuits and systems do not necessarily exhibit the same probabilities of occurrence.

8.5.1 Operator error

A frequent cause of system failure is error on the part of those human beings operating it. This cause of trouble is placed at the top of the list, but of course the actual likelihood depends largely on the particular individuals responsible for operation. When operator error is the cause of a failure, it is *unlikely* that it will be admitted prior to investigation. I do not mean to suggest that operators are incompetent and irresponsible – quite the contrary: these people are often your best teachers for learning system function and obtaining a history of failure – but the reality of human error cannot be overlooked. A positive attitude coupled with good interpersonal skills on the part of the troubleshooter goes a long way in troubleshooting when human error is the root cause of failure.

8.5.2 Bad wire connections

As incredible as this may sound to the new student of electronics, a high percentage of electrical and electronic system problems are caused by a very simple source of trouble: poor (i.e. open or shorted) wire connections. This is especially true when the environment is hostile, including such factors as high vibration and/or a corrosive atmosphere. Connection points found in any variety of plug-and-socket connector, terminal strip, or splice are at the greatest risk for failure. The category of "connections" also includes mechanical switch contacts, which can be thought of as a high-cycle connector. Improper wire termination lugs (such as a compression-style connector crimped on the end of a solid wire – a definite *faux pas*) can cause high-resistance connections after a period of trouble-free service.

It should be noted that connections in low-voltage systems tend to be far more troublesome than connections in high-voltage systems. The main reason for this is the effect of arcing across a discontinuity (circuit break) in higher-voltage systems tends to blast away insulating layers of dirt and corrosion, and may even weld the two ends together if sustained long enough. Low-voltage systems tend not to generate such vigorous arcing across the gap of a circuit break, and also tend to be more sensitive to additional resistance in the circuit. Mechanical switch contacts used in low-voltage systems benefit from having the recommended minimum *wetting current* conducted through them to promote a healthy amount of arcing upon opening, even if this level of current is not necessary for the operation of other circuit components.

Although *open* failures tend to more common than *shorted* failures, "shorts" still constitute a substantial percentage of wiring failure modes. Many shorts are caused by degradation of wire insulation. This, again, is especially true when the environment is hostile, including such factors as high vibration, high heat, high humidity, or high voltage. It is rare to find a mechanical switch contact that is failed shorted, except in the case of high-current contacts where contact "welding" may occur in overcurrent conditions. Shorts may also be caused by conductive buildup across terminal strip sections or the backs of printed circuit boards.

A common case of shorted wiring is the *ground fault*, where a conductor accidently makes contact with either earth or chassis ground. This may change the voltage(s) present between other conductors in the circuit and ground, thereby causing bizarre system malfunctions and/or personnel hazard.

8.5.3 Power supply problems

These generally consist of tripped overcurrent protection devices or damage due to overheating. Although power supply circuitry is usually less complex than the circuitry being powered, and therefore should figure to be less prone to failure on that basis alone, it generally handles more power than any other portion of the system and therefore must deal with greater voltages and/or currents. Also, because of its relative design simplicity, a system's power supply may not receive the engineering attention it deserves, most of the engineering focus devoted to more glamorous parts of the system.

8.5.4 Active components

Active components (amplification devices) tend to fail with greater regularity than passive (non-amplifying) devices, due to their greater complexity and tendency to amplify overvolt-

age/overcurrent conditions. Semiconductor devices are notoriously prone to failure due to electrical transient (voltage/current surge) overloading and thermal (heat) overloading. Electron tube devices are far more resistant to both of these failure modes, but are generally more prone to mechanical failures due to their fragile construction.

8.5.5 Passive components

Non-amplifying components are the most rugged of all, their relative simplicity granting them a statistical advantage over active devices. The following list gives an approximate relation of failure probabilities (again, top being the most likely and bottom being the least likely):

- Capacitors (shorted), especially *electrolytic* capacitors. The paste electrolyte tends to lose moisture with age, leading to failure. Thin dielectric layers may be punctured by overvoltage transients.
- Diodes open (rectifying diodes) or shorted (Zener diodes).
- Inductor and transformer windings open or shorted to conductive core. Failures related to overheating (insulation breakdown) are easily detected by smell.
- Resistors open, almost never shorted. Usually this is due to overcurrent heating, although it is less frequently caused by overvoltage transient (arc-over) or physical damage (vibration or impact). Resistors may also change resistance value if overheated!

8.6 Likely failures in unproven systems

"All men are liable to error;"
John Locke

Whereas the last section deals with component failures in systems that have been successfully operating for some time, this section concentrates on the problems plaguing brand-new systems. In this case, failure modes are generally not of the aging kind, but are related to mistakes in design and assembly caused by human beings.

8.6.1 Wiring problems

In this case, bad connections are usually due to assembly error, such as connection to the wrong point or poor connector fabrication. Shorted failures are also seen, but usually involve misconnections (conductors inadvertently attached to grounding points) or wires pinched under box covers.

Another wiring-related problem seen in new systems is that of electrostatic or electromagnetic interference between different circuits by way of close wiring proximity. This kind of problem is easily created by routing sets of wires too close to each other (especially routing signal cables close to power conductors), and tends to be very difficult to identify and locate with test equipment.

8.6.2 Power supply problems

Blown fuses and tripped circuit breakers are likely sources of trouble, especially if the project in question is an addition to an already-functioning system. Loads may be larger than expected, resulting in overloading and subsequent failure of power supplies.

8.6.3 Defective components

In the case of a newly-assembled system, component fault probabilities are not as predictable as in the case of an operating system that fails with age. *Any* type of component – active or passive – may be found defective or of imprecise value "out of the box" with roughly equal probability, barring any specific sensitivities in shipping (i.e fragile vacuum tubes or electrostatically sensitive semiconductor components). Moreover, these types of failures are not always as easy to identify by sight or smell as an age- or transient-induced failure.

8.6.4 Improper system configuration

Increasingly seen in large systems using microprocessor-based components, "programming" issues can still plague non-microprocessor systems in the form of incorrect time-delay relay settings, limit switch calibrations, and drum switch sequences. Complex components having configuration "jumpers" or switches to control behavior may not be "programmed" properly.

Components may be used in a new system outside of their tolerable ranges. Resistors, for example, with too low of power ratings, of too great of tolerance, may have been installed. Sensors, instruments, and controlling mechanisms may be uncalibrated, or calibrated to the wrong ranges.

8.6.5 Design error

Perhaps the most difficult to pinpoint and the slowest to be recognized (especially by the chief designer) is the problem of design error, where the system fails to function simply because it *cannot* function as designed. This may be as trivial as the designer specifying the wrong components in a system, or as fundamental as a system not working due to the designer's improper knowledge of physics.

I once saw a turbine control system installed that used a low-pressure switch on the lubrication oil tubing to shut down the turbine if oil pressure dropped to an insufficient level. The oil pressure for lubrication was supplied by an oil pump turned by the turbine. When installed, the turbine refused to start. Why? Because when it was stopped, the oil pump was not turning, thus there was no oil pressure to lubricate the turbine. The low-oil-pressure switch detected this condition and the control system maintained the turbine in shutdown mode, preventing it from starting. This is a classic example of a design flaw, and it could only be corrected by a change in the system logic.

While most design flaws manifest themselves early in the operational life of the system, some remain hidden until just the right conditions exist to trigger the fault. These types of flaws are the most difficult to uncover, as the troubleshooter usually overlooks the possibility of design error due to the fact that the system is assumed to be "proven." The example of the turbine lubrication system was a design flaw impossible to ignore on start-up. An example of

a ”hidden” design flaw might be a faulty emergency coolant system for a machine, designed to remain inactive until certain abnormal conditions are reached – conditions which might never be experienced in the life of the system.

8.7 Potential pitfalls

Fallacious reasoning and poor interpersonal relations account for more failed or belabored troubleshooting efforts than any other impediments. With this in mind, the aspiring troubleshooter needs to be familiar with a few common troubleshooting mistakes.

Trusting that a brand-new component will always be good. While it is generally true that a new component will be in good condition, it is not *always* true. It is also possible that a component has been mis-labeled and may have the wrong value (usually this mis-labeling is a mistake made at the point of distribution or warehousing and not at the manufacturer, but again, *not always*!).

Not periodically checking your test equipment. This is especially true with battery-powered meters, as weak batteries may give spurious readings. When using meters to safety-check for dangerous voltage, remember to test the meter on a known source of voltage both *before* and *after* checking the circuit to be serviced, to make sure the meter is in proper operating condition.

Assuming there is only one failure to account for the problem. Single-failure system problems are ideal for troubleshooting, but sometimes failures come in multiple numbers. In some instances, the failure of one component may lead to a system condition that damages other components. Sometimes a component in marginal condition goes undetected for a long time, then when another component fails the system suffers from problems with *both* components.

Mistaking coincidence for causality. Just because two events occurred at nearly the same time does *not* necessarily mean one event *caused* the other! They may be both consequences of a common cause, or they may be totally unrelated! If possible, try to duplicate the same condition suspected to be the cause and see if the event suspected to be the coincidence happens again. If not, then there is either no causal relationship as assumed. This may mean there is no causal relationship between the two events whatsoever, or that there is a causal relationship, but just not the one you expected.

Self-induced blindness. After a long effort at troubleshooting a difficult problem, you may become tired and begin to overlook crucial clues to the problem. Take a break and let someone else look at it for a while. You will be amazed at what a difference this can make. On the other hand, it is generally a bad idea to solicit help at the start of the troubleshooting process. Effective troubleshooting involves complex, multi-level thinking, which is not easily communicated with others. More often than not, ”team troubleshooting” takes more time and causes more frustration than doing it yourself. An exception to this rule is when the knowledge of the troubleshooters is complementary: for example, a technician who knows electronics

but not machine operation, teamed with an operator who knows machine function but not electronics.

Failing to question the troubleshooting work of others on the same job. This may sound rather cynical and misanthropic, but it is sound scientific practice. Because it is easy to overlook important details, troubleshooting data received from another troubleshooter should be personally verified before proceeding. This is a common situation when troubleshooters ”change shifts” and a technician takes over for another technician who is leaving before the job is done. It is important to exchange information, but do not assume the prior technician checked everything they said they did, or checked it perfectly. I’ve been hindered in my troubleshooting efforts on many occasions by failing to verify what someone else told me they checked.

Being pressured to ”hurry up.” When an important system fails, there will be pressure from other people to fix the problem as quickly as possible. As they say in business, ”time is money.” Having been on the receiving end of this pressure many times, I can understand the need for expedience. However, in many cases there is a higher priority: caution. If the system in question harbors great danger to life and limb, the pressure to ”hurry up” may result in injury or death. At the very least, hasty repairs may result in further damage when the system is restarted. Most failures can be recovered or at least temporarily repaired in short time if approached intelligently. Improper ”fixes” resulting in haste often lead to damage that *cannot* be recovered in short time, if ever. If the potential for greater harm is present, the troubleshooter needs to politely address the pressure received from others, and maintain their perspective in the midst of chaos. Interpersonal skills are just as important in this realm as technical ability!

Finger-pointing. It is all too easy to blame a problem on someone else, for reasons of ignorance, pride, laziness, or some other unfortunate facet of human nature. When the responsibility for system maintenance is divided into departments or work crews, troubleshooting efforts are often hindered by blame cast between groups. ”It’s a mechanical problem . . . its an electrical problem . . . its an instrument problem . . .” ad infinitum, ad nauseum, is all too common in the workplace. I have found that a positive attitude does more to quench the fires of blame than anything else.

On one particular job, I was summoned to fix a problem in a hydraulic system assumed to be related to the electronic metering and controls. My troubleshooting isolated the source of trouble to a faulty control valve, which was the domain of the millwright (mechanical) crew. I knew that the millwright on shift was a contentious person, so I expected trouble if I simply passed the problem on to his department. Instead, I politely explained to him and his supervisor the nature of the problem as well as a brief synopsis of my reasoning, then proceeded to help him replace the faulty valve, even though it wasn’t ”my” responsibility to do so. As a result, the problem was fixed very quickly, and I gained the respect of the millwright.

8.8 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

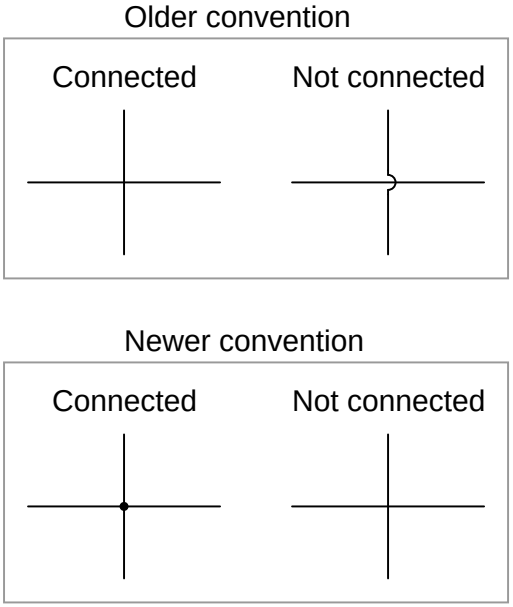
Alejandro Gamero Divasto (January 2002): contributed troubleshooting tips regarding potential hazards of swapping two similar components, avoiding pressure placed on the troubleshooter, perils of ”team” troubleshooting, wisdom of recording system history, operator error as a cause of failure, and the perils of finger-pointing.

Chapter 9

CIRCUIT SCHEMATIC SYMBOLS

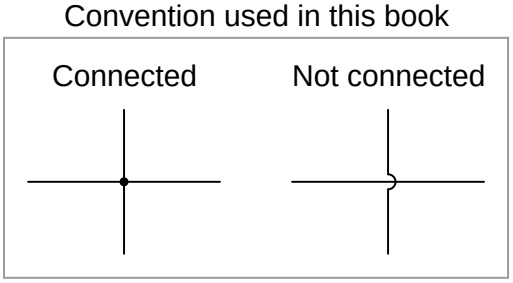
Contents

9.1 Wires and connections

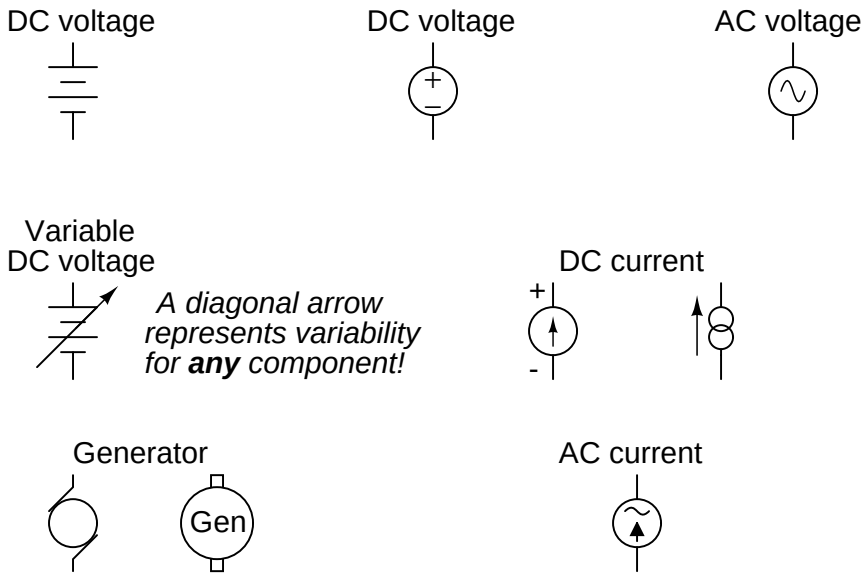


Older electrical schematics showed connecting wires crossing, while non-connecting wires ”jumped” over each other with little half-circle marks. Newer electrical schematics show connecting wires joining with a dot, while non-connecting wires cross with no dot. However, some people still use the older convention of connecting wires crossing with no dot, which may create confusion.

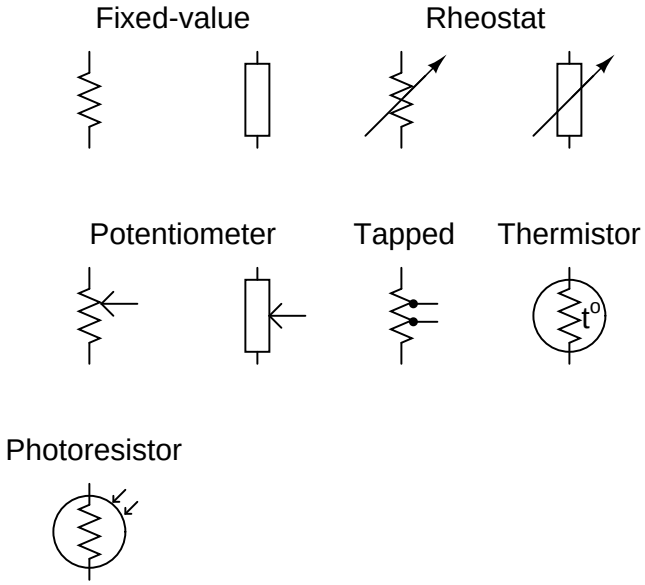
For this reason, I opt to use a hybrid convention, with connecting wires unambiguously connected by a dot, and non-connecting wires unambiguously ”jumping” over one another with a half-circle mark. While this may be frowned upon by some, it leaves no room for interpretational error: in each case, the intent is clear and unmistakable:



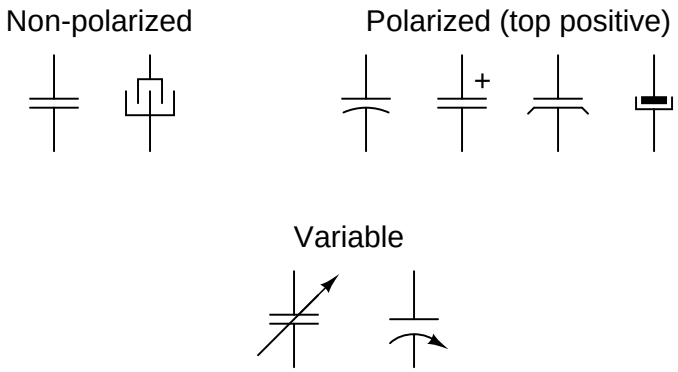
9.2 Power sources



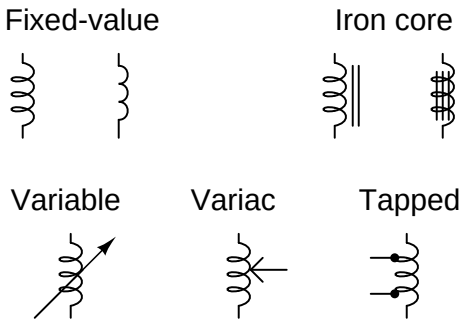
9.3 Resistors



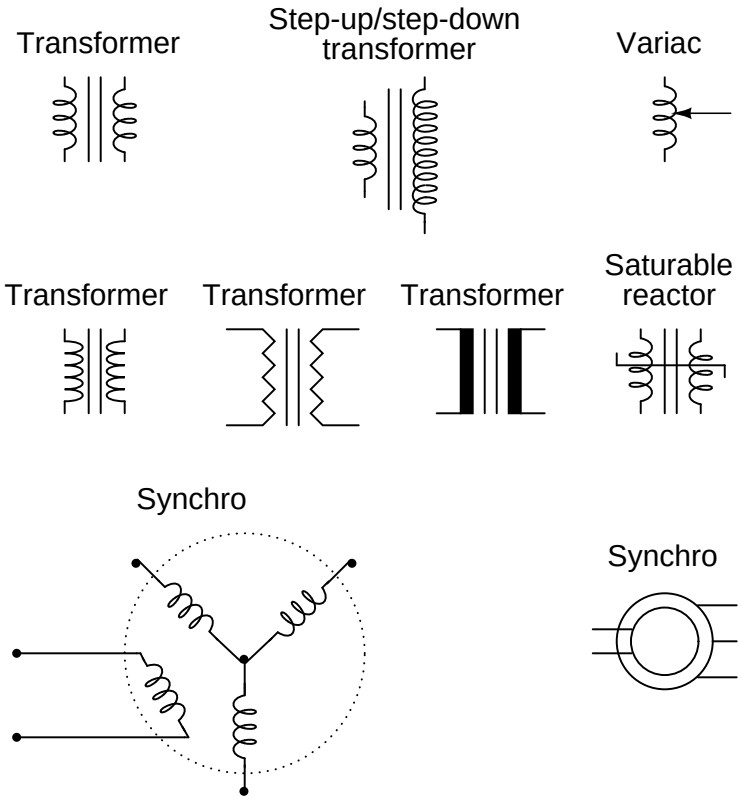
9.4 Capacitors



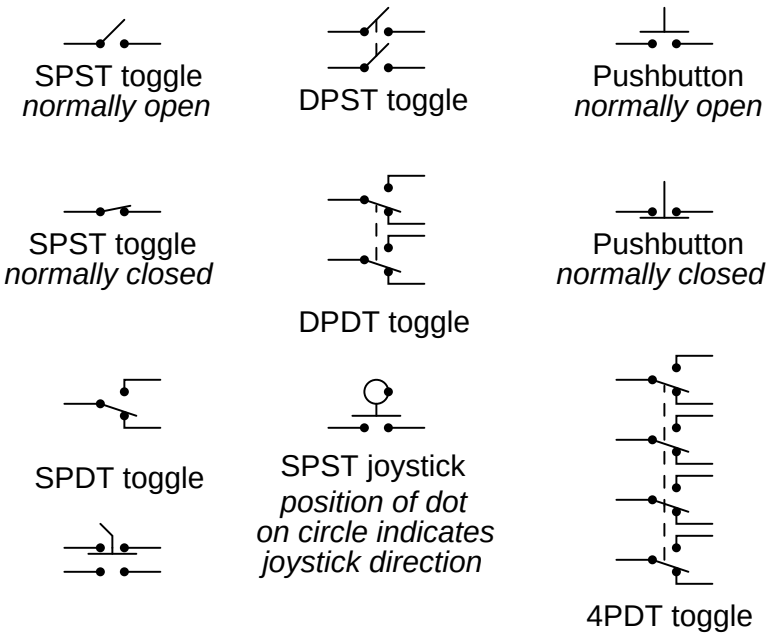
9.5 Inductors



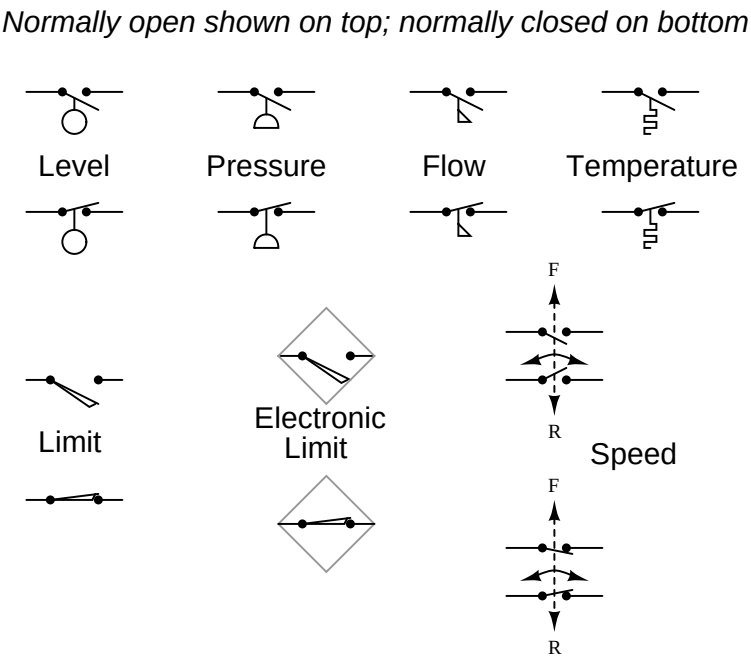
9.6 Mutual inductors



9.7 Switches, hand actuated



9.8 Switches, process actuated

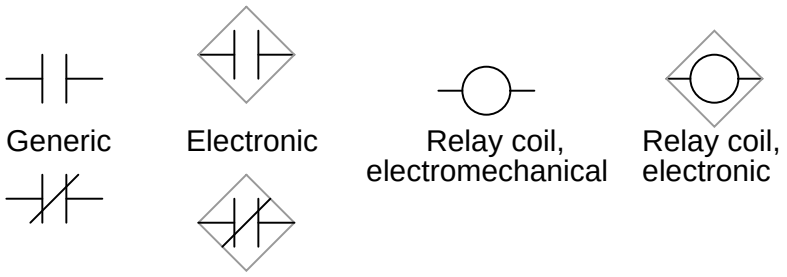


It is very important to keep in mind that the ”normal” contact status of a process-actuated switch refers to its status when the process is absent and/or inactive, *not* ”normal” in the sense of process conditions as expected during routine operation. For instance, a *normally-closed* low-flow detection switch installed on a coolant pipe will be maintained in the actuated state (open) when there is regular coolant flow through the pipe. If the coolant flow stops, the flow switch will go to its ”normal” (unactuated) status of closed.

A *limit* switch is one actuated by contact with a moving machine part. An *electronic limit* switch senses mechanical motion, but does so using light, magnetic fields, or other non-contact means.

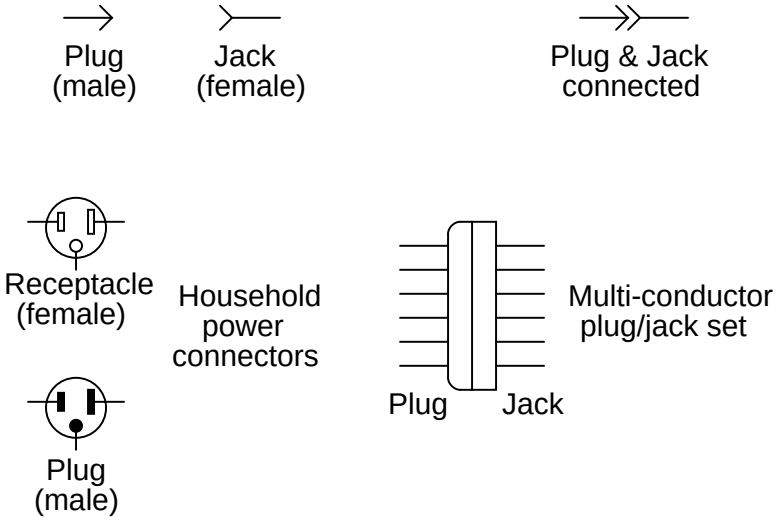
9.9 Switches, electrically actuated (relays)

Relay components, "ladder logic" notation style

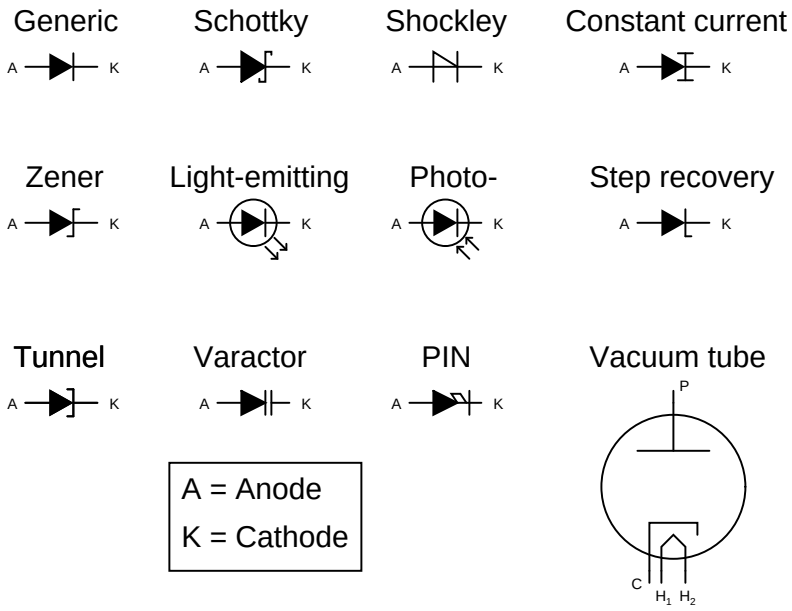


Relays, electronic schematic notation style

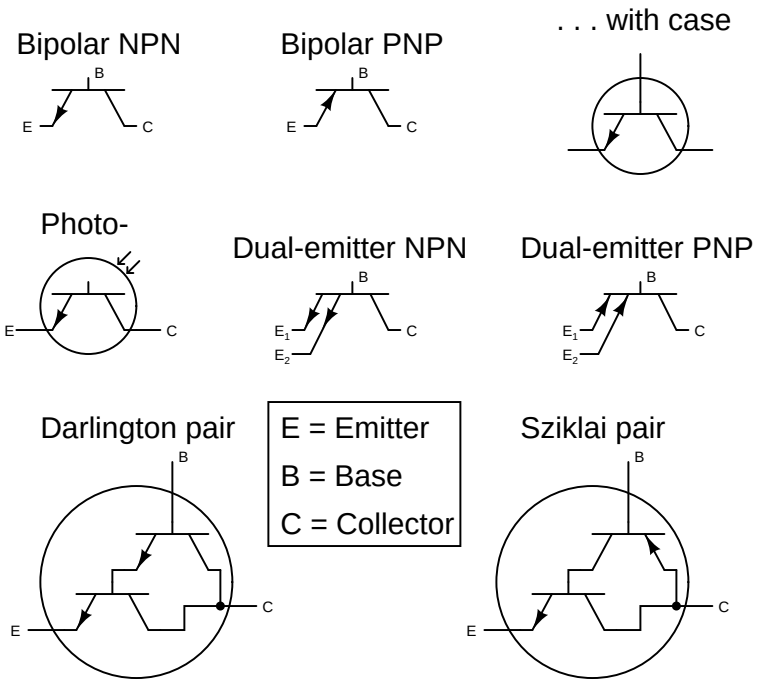
9.10 Connectors



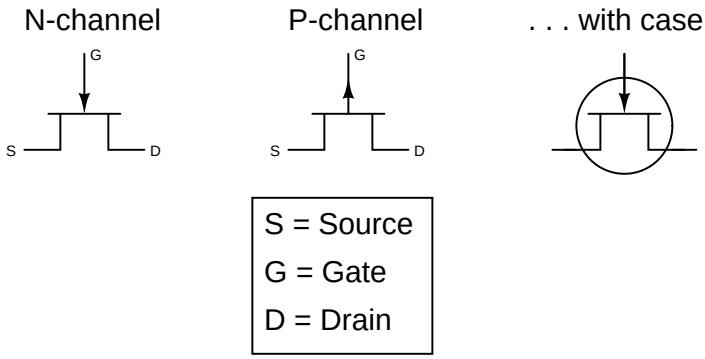
9.11 Diodes


Generic
Schottky
Shockley
Constant current
Zener
Light-emitting
Photo-
Step recovery
Tunnel
Varactor
PIN
Vacuum tube
A
K
A = Anode
K = Cathode
P
C
H1 H2

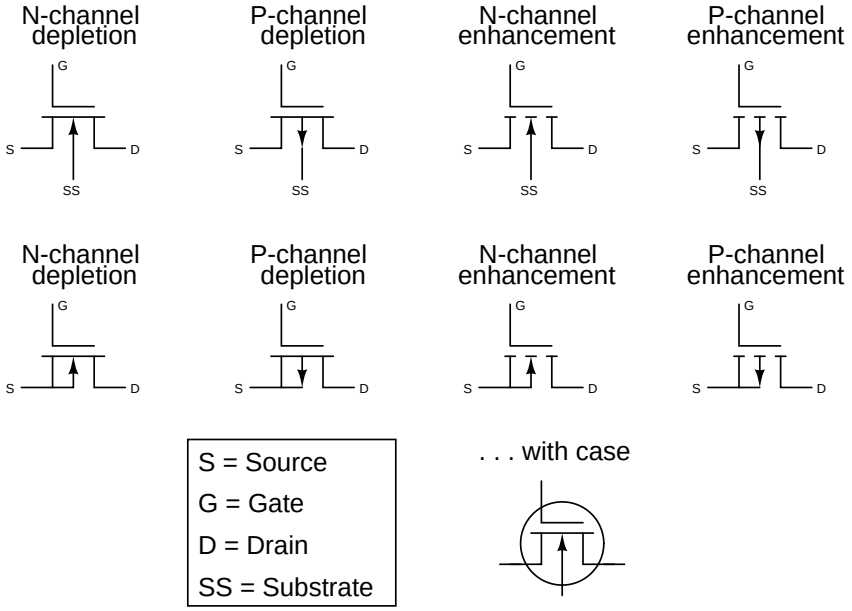
9.12 Transistors, bipolar



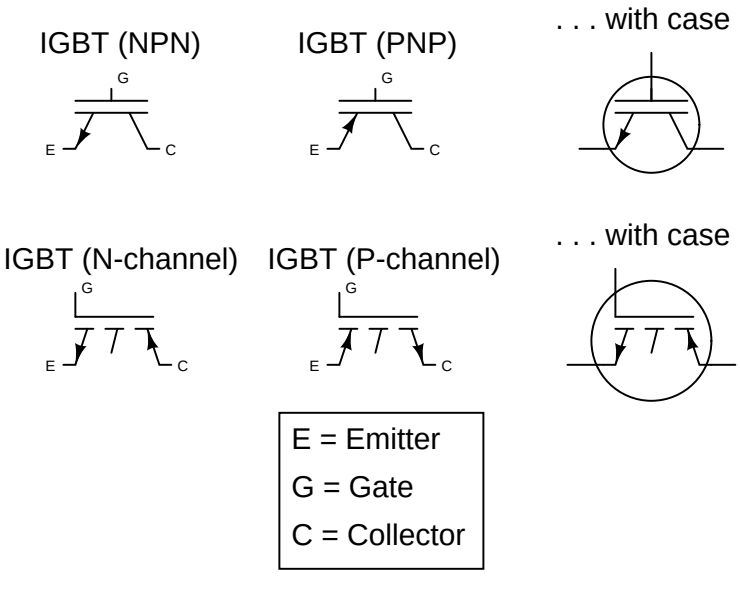
9.13 Transistors, junction field-effect (JFET)



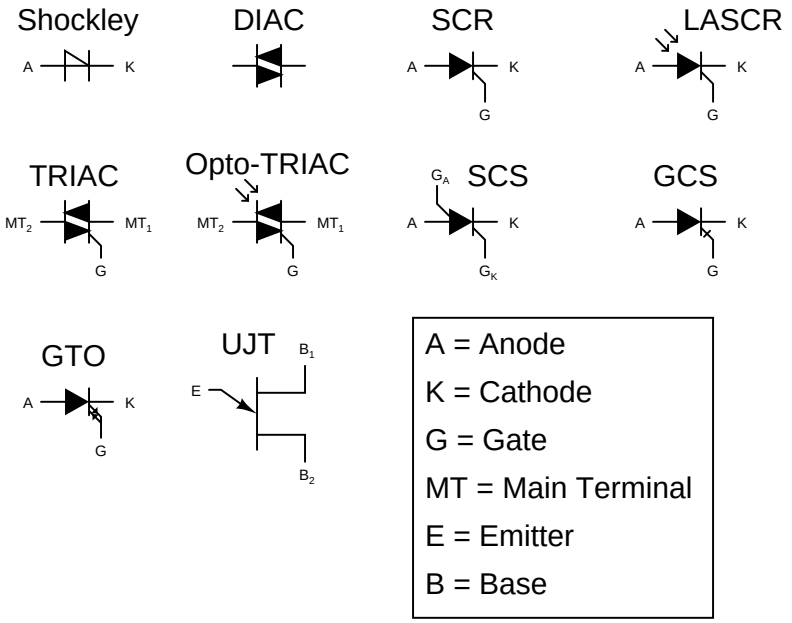
9.14 Transistors, insulated-gate field-effect (IGFET or MOSFET)



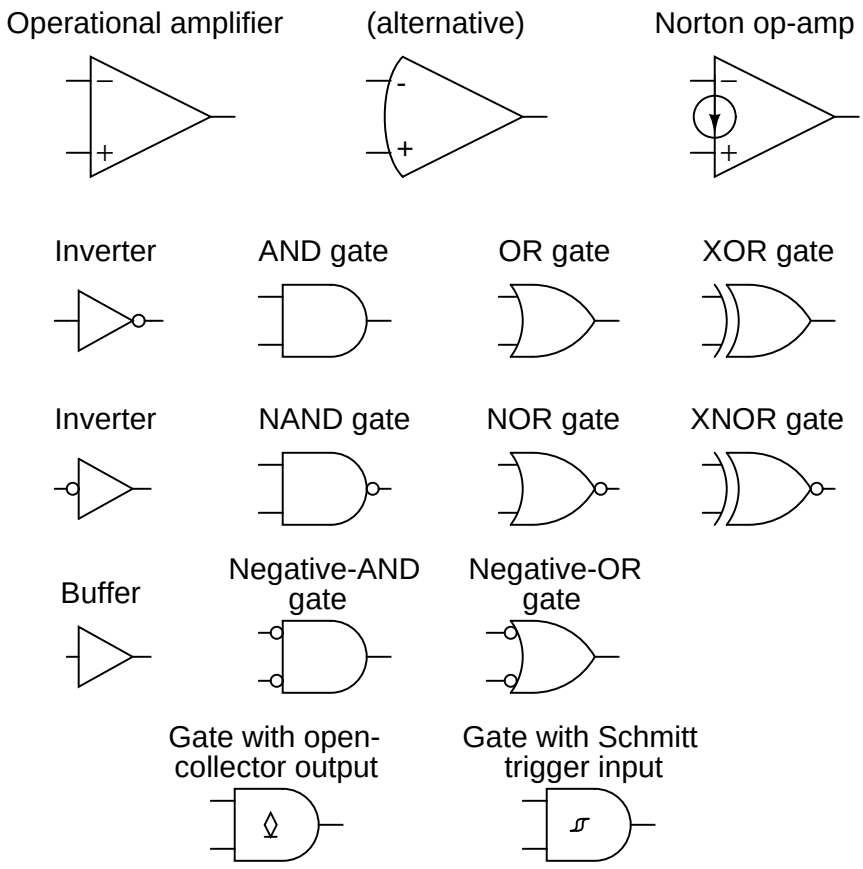
9.15 Transistors, hybrid



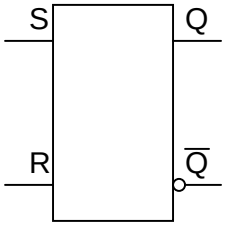
9.16 Thyristors



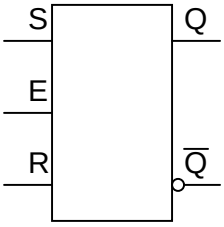
9.17 Integrated circuits



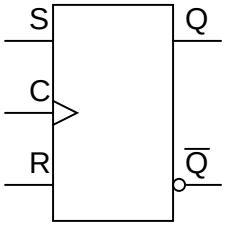
S-R Latch



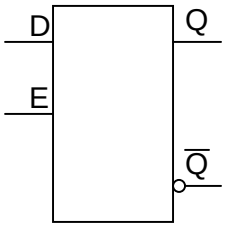
Enabled S-R Latch



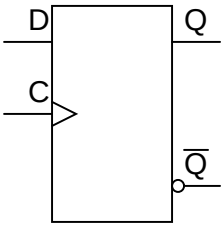
S-R Flip-flop



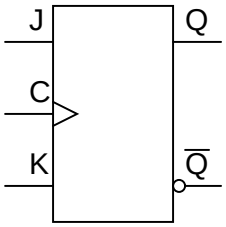
D Latch



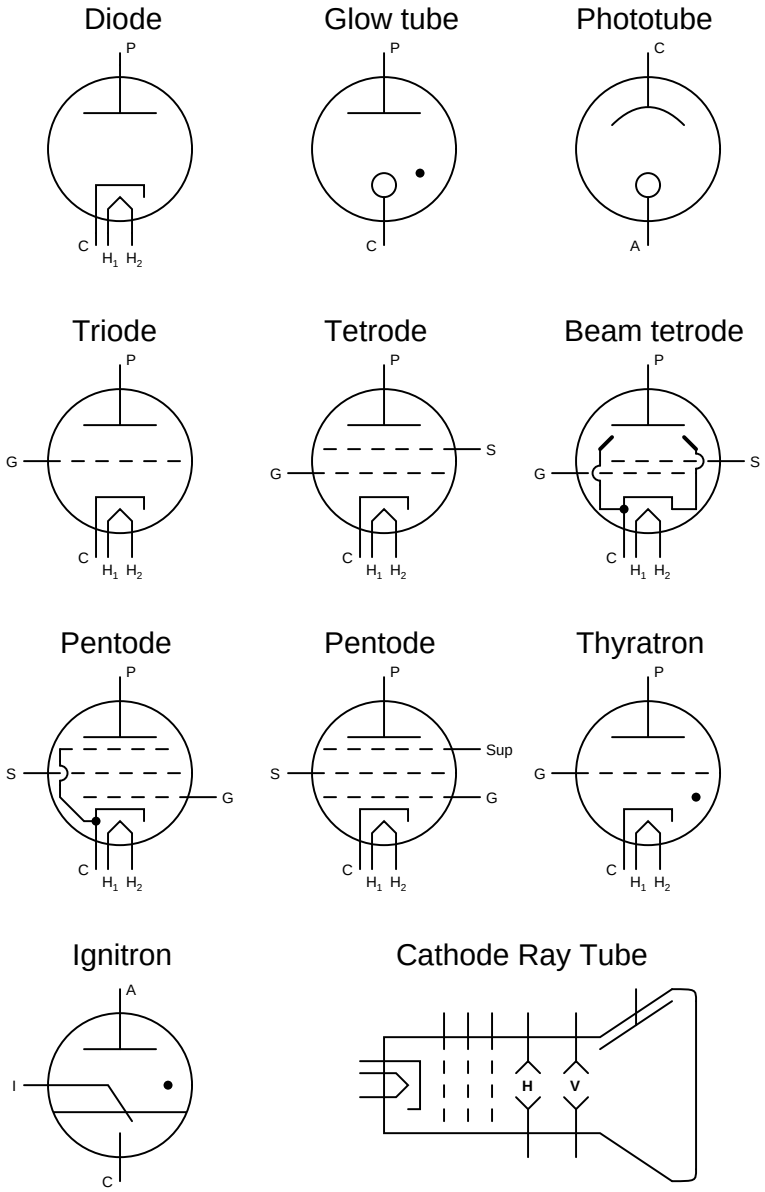
D Flip-flop



J-K Flip-flop



9.18 Electron tubes



P = Plate	S = Screen
G = Grid	A = Anode
C = Cathode	H = Heater
I = Ignitor	Sup = Suppressor

Chapter 10

PERIODIC TABLE OF THE ELEMENTS

Contents

10.1 Table (landscape view)

See Figure 10.1.

10.2 Data

Atomic masses shown in parentheses indicate the *most stable* isotope (longest half-life) known.

Electron configuration data was taken from Douglas C. Giancoli's Physics, 3rd edition. Average atomic masses were taken from Kenneth W. Whitten's, Kenneth D. Gailey's, and Raymond E. Davis' General Chemistry, 3rd edition. In the latter book, the masses were specified as 1985 IUPAC values.

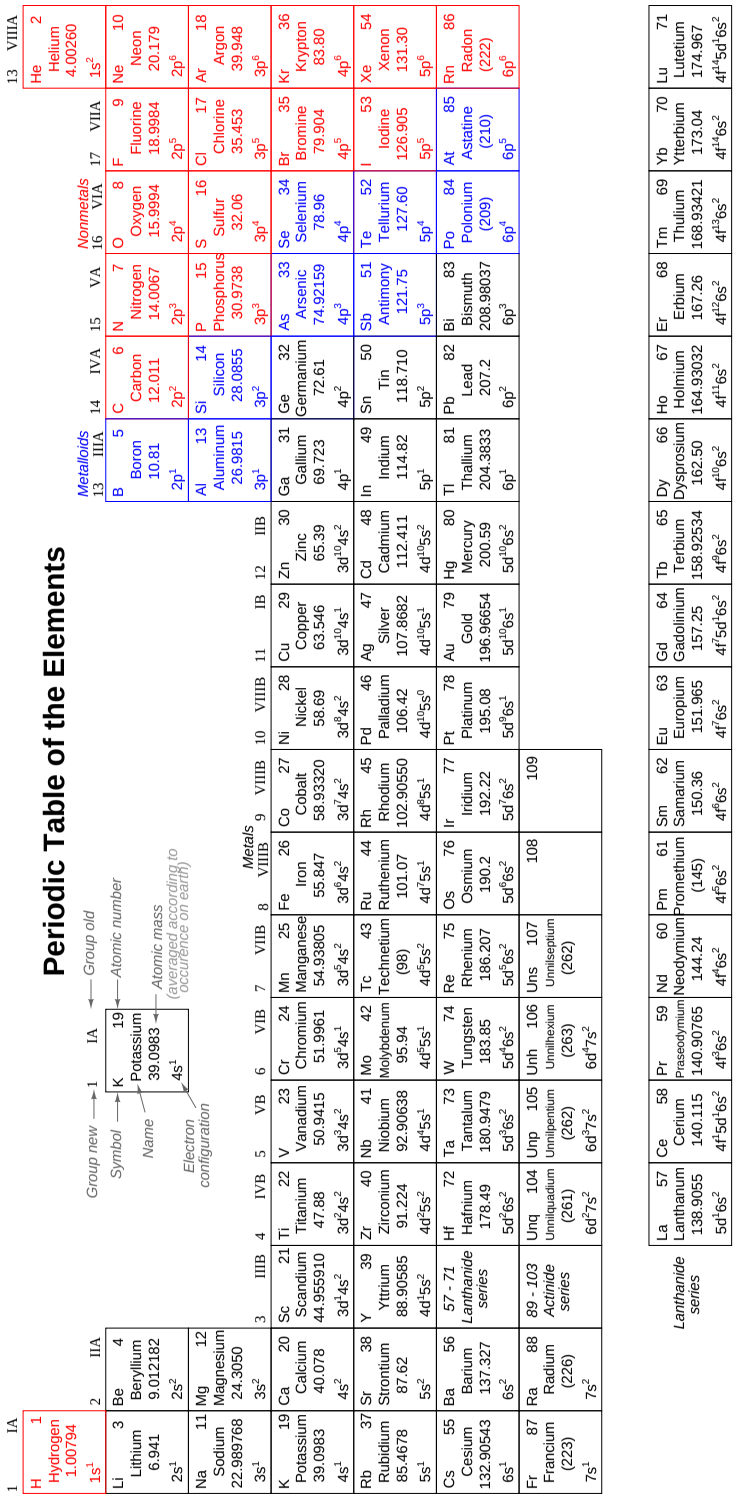


Figure 10.1: *Periodic table of chemical elements.*

Appendix A-1

ABOUT THIS BOOK

A-1.1 Purpose

They say that necessity is the mother of invention. At least in the case of this book, that adage is true. As an industrial electronics instructor, I was forced to use a sub-standard textbook during my first year of teaching. My students were daily frustrated with the many typographical errors and obscure explanations in this book, having spent much time at home struggling to comprehend the material within. Worse yet were the many incorrect answers in the back of the book to selected problems. Adding insult to injury was the $100+ price.

Contacting the publisher proved to be an exercise in futility. Even though the particular text I was using had been in print and in popular use for a couple of years, they claimed my complaint was the first they'd ever heard. My request to review the draft for the next edition of their book was met with disinterest on their part, and I resolved to find an alternative text.

Finding a suitable alternative was more difficult than I had imagined. Sure, there were plenty of texts in print, but the really good books seemed a bit too heavy on the math and the less intimidating books omitted a lot of information I felt was important. Some of the best books were out of print, and those that were still being printed were quite expensive.

It was out of frustration that I compiled *Lessons in Electric Circuits* from notes and ideas I had been collecting for years. My primary goal was to put readable, high-quality information into the hands of my students, but a secondary goal was to make the book as affordable as possible. Over the years, I had experienced the benefit of receiving free instruction and encouragement in my pursuit of learning electronics from many people, including several teachers of mine in elementary and high school. Their selfless assistance played a key role in my own studies, paving the way for a rewarding career and fascinating hobby. If only I could extend the gift of their help by giving to other people what they gave to me . . .

So, I decided to make the book freely available. More than that, I decided to make it "open," following the same development model used in the making of free software (most notably the various UNIX utilities released by the Free Software Foundation, and the Linux operating

system, whose fame is growing even as I write). The goal was to copyright the text – so as to protect my authorship – but expressly allow anyone to distribute and/or modify the text to suit their own needs with a minimum of legal encumbrance. This willful and formal revoking of standard distribution limitations under copyright is whimsically termed *copyleft*. Anyone can "copyleft" their creative work simply by appending a notice to that effect on their work, but several Licenses already exist, covering the fine legal points in great detail.

The first such License I applied to my work was the GPL – General Public License – of the Free Software Foundation (GNU). The GPL, however, is intended to copyleft works of computer software, and although its introductory language is broad enough to cover works of text, its wording is not as clear as it could be for that application. When other, less specific copyleft Licenses began appearing within the free software community, I chose one of them (the Design Science License, or DSL) as the official notice for my project.

In "copylefting" this text, I guaranteed that no instructor would be limited by a text insufficient for their needs, as I had been with error-ridden textbooks from major publishers. I'm sure this book in its initial form will not satisfy everyone, but anyone has the freedom to change it, leveraging my efforts to suit variant and individual requirements. For the beginning student of electronics, learn what you can from this book, editing it as you feel necessary if you come across a useful piece of information. Then, if you pass it on to someone else, you will be giving them something better than what you received. For the instructor or electronics professional, feel free to use this as a reference manual, adding or editing to your heart's content. The only "catch" is this: if you plan to distribute your modified version of this text, you must give credit where credit is due (to me, the original author, and anyone else whose modifications are contained in your version), and you must ensure that whoever you give the text to is aware of their freedom to similarly share and edit the text. The next chapter covers this process in more detail.

It must be mentioned that although I strive to maintain technical accuracy in all of this book's content, the subject matter is broad and harbors many potential dangers. Electricity maims and kills without provocation, and deserves the utmost respect. I strongly encourage experimentation on the part of the reader, but only with circuits powered by small batteries where there is no risk of electric shock, fire, explosion, etc. High-power electric circuits should be left to the care of trained professionals! The Design Science License clearly states that neither I nor any contributors to this book bear any liability for what is done with its contents.

A-1.2 The use of SPICE

One of the best ways to learn how things work is to follow the inductive approach: to observe specific instances of things working and derive general conclusions from those observations. In science education, labwork is the traditionally accepted venue for this type of learning, although in many cases labs are designed by educators to reinforce principles previously learned through lecture or textbook reading, rather than to allow the student to learn on their own through a truly exploratory process.

Having taught myself most of the electronics that I know, I appreciate the sense of frustration students may have in teaching themselves from books. Although electronic components are typically inexpensive, not everyone has the means or opportunity to set up a laboratory in their own homes, and when things go wrong there's no one to ask for help. Most textbooks

seem to approach the task of education from a deductive perspective: tell the student how things are supposed to work, then apply those principles to specific instances that the student may or may not be able to explore by themselves. The inductive approach, as useful as it is, is hard to find in the pages of a book.

However, textbooks don't have to be this way. I discovered this when I started to learn a computer program called SPICE. It is a text-based piece of software intended to model circuits and provide analyses of voltage, current, frequency, etc. Although nothing is quite as good as building real circuits to gain knowledge in electronics, computer simulation is an excellent alternative. In learning how to use this powerful tool, I made a discovery: SPICE could be used within a textbook to present circuit simulations to allow students to "observe" the phenomena for themselves. This way, the readers could learn the concepts inductively (by interpreting SPICE's output) as well as deductively (by interpreting my explanations). Furthermore, in seeing SPICE used over and over again, they should be able to understand how to use it themselves, providing a perfectly safe means of experimentation on their own computers with circuit simulations of their own design.

Another advantage to including computer analyses in a textbook is the empirical verification it adds to the concepts presented. Without demonstrations, the reader is left to take the author's statements on faith, trusting that what has been written is indeed accurate. The problem with faith, of course, is that it is only as good as the authority in which it is placed and the accuracy of interpretation through which it is understood. Authors, like all human beings, are liable to err and/or communicate poorly. With demonstrations, however, the reader can immediately see for themselves that what the author describes is indeed true. Demonstrations also serve to clarify the meaning of the text with concrete examples.

SPICE is introduced early in volume I (DC) of this book series, and hopefully in a gentle enough way that it doesn't create confusion. For those wishing to learn more, a chapter in this volume (volume V) contains an overview of SPICE with many example circuits. There may be more flashy (graphic) circuit simulation programs in existence, but SPICE is free, a virtue complementing the charitable philosophy of this book very nicely.

A-1.3 Acknowledgements

First, I wish to thank my wife, whose patience during those many and long evenings (and weekends!) of typing has been extraordinary.

I also wish to thank those whose open-source software development efforts have made this endeavor all the more affordable and pleasurable. The following is a list of various free computer software used to make this book, and the respective programmers:

- *GNU/Linux* Operating System – Linus Torvalds, Richard Stallman, and a host of others too numerous to mention.
- *Vim* text editor – Bram Moolenaar and others.
- *Xcircuit* drafting program – Tim Edwards.
- *SPICE* circuit simulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- TEX text processing system – Donald Knuth and others.

- *Texinfo* document formatting system – Free Software Foundation.
- LaTeX document formatting system – Leslie Lamport and others.
- *Gimp* image manipulation program – too many contributors to mention.

Appreciation is also extended to Robert L. Boylestad, whose first edition of *Introductory Circuit Analysis* taught me more about electric circuits than any other book. Other important texts in my electronics studies include the 1939 edition of *The "Radio" Handbook*, Bernard Grob's second edition of *Introduction to Electronics I*, and Forrest Mims' original *Engineer's Notebook*.

Thanks to the staff of the Bellingham Antique Radio Museum, who were generous enough to let me terrorize their establishment with my camera and flash unit.

I wish to specifically thank Jeffrey Elkner and all those at Yorktown High School for being willing to host my book as part of their Open Book Project, and to make the first effort in contributing to its form and content. Thanks also to David Sweet (website: (`http://www.andamooka.org`)) and Ben Crowell (website: (`http://www.lightandmatter.com`)) for providing encouragement, constructive criticism, and a wider audience for the online version of this book.

Thanks to Michael Stutz for drafting his Design Science License, and to Richard Stallman for pioneering the concept of copyleft.

Last but certainly not least, many thanks to my parents and those teachers of mine who saw in me a desire to learn about electricity, and who kindled that flame into a passion for discovery and intellectual adventure. I honor you by helping others as you have helped me.

Tony Kuphaldt, July 2001

"A candle loses nothing of its light when lighting another"
Kahlil Gibran

Appendix A-2

CONTRIBUTOR LIST

A-2.1 How to contribute to this book

As a copylefted work, this book is open to revision and expansion by any interested parties. The only ”catch” is that credit must be given where credit is due. This *is* a copyrighted work: it is *not* in the public domain!

If you wish to cite portions of this book in a work of your own, you must follow the same guidelines as for any other copyrighted work. Here is a sample from the Design Science License:

```
The Work is copyright the Author.  All rights to the Work are reserved
by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License
describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you
to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as
dictated by "fair use") quote from it, just as you would any
copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or
execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk,
because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY -- see Section 7 ("NO
WARRANTY") below.
```

If you wish to modify this book in any way, you must document the nature of those modifications in the ”Credits” section along with your name, and ideally, information concerning how you may be contacted. Again, the Design Science License:

```
Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work,
```

```
producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work
under the terms described in the section for distribution above,
provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this
License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or
title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of
the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences
between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is
attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from
the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate
notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature
and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.
```

Given the complexities and security issues surrounding the maintenance of files comprising this book, it is recommended that you submit any revisions or expansions to the original author (Tony R. Kuphaldt). You are, of course, welcome to modify this book directly by editing your own personal copy, but we would all stand to benefit from your contributions if your ideas were incorporated into the online "master copy" where all the world can see it.

A-2.2 Credits

All entries arranged in alphabetical order of surname. Major contributions are listed by individual name with some detail on the nature of the contribution(s), date, contact info, etc. Minor contributions (typo corrections, etc.) are listed by name only for reasons of brevity. Please understand that when I classify a contribution as "minor," it is in no way inferior to the effort or value of a "major" contribution, just smaller in the sense of less text changed. Any and all contributions are gratefully accepted. I am indebted to all those who have given freely of their own knowledge, time, and resources to make this a better book!

A-2.2.1 Dennis Crunkilton

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):**October 2005 to present
- **Nature of contribution:**Ch 1, added permitivity, capacitor and inductor formulas, wire table; 10/2005.
- **Nature of contribution:**Ch 1, expanded dielectric table, 10232.eps, copied data from Volume 1, Chapter 13; 10/2005.
- **Nature of contribution:** Mini table of contents, all chapters except appedicies; html, latex, ps, pdf; See Devel/tutorial.html; 01/2006.

- **Nature of contribution:** Changed CH2 from “Resistor color codes” to “Color codes”; Added wiring color codes; 10/2007.
- **Contact at:** dcrunkilton(at)att(dot)net

A-2.2.2 Alejandro Gamero Divasto

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** January 2002
- **Nature of contribution:** Suggestions related to troubleshooting: caveat regarding swapping two similar components as a troubleshooting tool; avoiding pressure placed on the troubleshooter; perils of ”team” troubleshooting; wisdom of recording system history; operator error as a cause of failure; and the perils of finger-pointing.

A-2.2.3 Tony R. Kuphaldt

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** 1996 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author.
- **Contact at:** liec0@lycos.com

A-2.2.4 Your name here

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** Month and year of contribution
- **Nature of contribution:** Insert text here, describing how you contributed to the book.
- **Contact at:** my_email@provider.net

A-2.2.5 Typo corrections and other “minor” contributions

- *The students of Bellingham Technical College’s Instrumentation program*.
- **Bernard Sheehan** (January 2005), Typographical error correction in ”Right triangle trigonometry” section Chapter 5: TRIGONOMETRY REFERENCE (two formulas for tan x the second one reads tan x = cos x/sin x it should be cot x = cos x/sin x– changes to 01001.eps previously made)
- **Michiel van Bolhuis** (April 2007) Typo Ch 1, s/picofards/picofarads.
- **Chirvasuta Constantin** (April 2003) Identified error in quadratic equation formula.
- **Colin Creitz** (May 2007) Chapters: several, s/it’s/its.
- **Jeff DeFreitas** (March 2006)Improve appearance: replace “/” and ”/” Chapters: A1, A2.
- **Gerald Gardner** (January 2003) Suggested adding Imperial gallons conversion to table.
- **Geoff Hosking** (July 2006) Typo correction in Conductors and Insulators chapter, Critical Temperatures of Superconductors: s/degrees Kelvin/Kelvins.

- **Harvey Lew** (??? 2003) Typo correction in Trig chapter: ”tangent” should have been ”cotangent”.
- **Len Nunn** (May 2008) Typo correction in Calculus chapter: ”dx/d(aˆx)” in error, 11042.png .
- **Don Stalkowski** (June 2002) Technical help with PostScript-to-PDF file format conversion.
- **Joseph Teichman** (June 2002) Suggestion and technical help regarding use of PNG images instead of JPEG.
- **Mark44@allaboutcircuits.com** (March 2008) Ch 4, Clarification of division by zero.
- **Timothy Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Changed default roman font to newcent.
- **Imranullah Syed** (Feb 2008) Suggested centering of uncaptioned schematics.
- **Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (Aug 2008) formatting of PDF off pps 130-136.

Appendix A-3

DESIGN SCIENCE LICENSE

A-3.1 0. Preamble

Copyright law gives certain exclusive rights to the author of a work, including the rights to copy, modify and distribute the work (the ”reproductive,” ”adaptative,” and ”distribution” rights).

The idea of ”copyleft” is to willfully revoke the exclusivity of those rights under certain terms and conditions, so that anyone can copy and distribute the work or properly attributed derivative works, while all copies remain under the same terms and conditions as the original.

The intent of this license is to be a general ”copyleft” that can be applied to any kind of work that has protection under copyright. This license states those certain conditions under which a work published under its terms may be copied, distributed, and modified.

Whereas ”design science” is a strategy for the development of artifacts as a way to reform the environment (not people) and subsequently improve the universal standard of living, this Design Science License was written and deployed as a strategy for promoting the progress of science and art through reform of the environment.

A-3.2 1. Definitions

”License” shall mean this Design Science License. The License applies to any work which contains a notice placed by the work’s copyright holder stating that it is published under the terms of this Design Science License.

”Work” shall mean such an aforementioned work. The License also applies to the output of the Work, only if said output constitutes a ”derivative work” of the licensed Work as defined by copyright law.

”Object Form” shall mean an executable or performable form of the Work, being an embodiment of the Work in some tangible medium.

”Source Data” shall mean the origin of the Object Form, being the entire, machine-readable, preferred form of the Work for copying and for human modification (usually the language, encoding or format in which composed or recorded by the Author); plus any accompanying files, scripts or other data necessary for installation, configuration or compilation of the Work.

(Examples of ”Source Data” include, but are not limited to, the following: if the Work is an image file composed and edited in ’PNG’ format, then the original PNG source file is the Source Data; if the Work is an MPEG 1.0 layer 3 digital audio recording made from a ’WAV’ format audio file recording of an analog source, then the original WAV file is the Source Data; if the Work was composed as an unformatted plaintext file, then that file is the the Source Data; if the Work was composed in LaTeX, the LaTeX file(s) and any image files and/or custom macros necessary for compilation constitute the Source Data.)

”Author” shall mean the copyright holder(s) of the Work.

The individual licensees are referred to as ”you.”

A-3.3 2. Rights and copyright

The Work is copyright the Author. All rights to the Work are reserved by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as dictated by ”fair use”) quote from it, just as you would any copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk, because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY – see Section 7 (”NO WARRANTY”) below.

A-3.4 3. Copying and distribution

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present verbatim copies of the entire Source Data of the Work, in any medium, provided that full copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty, where applicable, is conspicuously published on all copies, and a copy of this License is distributed along with the Work.

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present copies of the Object Form of the Work, in any medium, under the terms for distribution of Source Data above and also provided that one of the following additional conditions are met:

(a) The Source Data is included in the same distribution, distributed under the terms of this License; or

(b) A written offer is included with the distribution, valid for at least three years or for as long as the distribution is in print (whichever is longer), with a publicly-accessible address (such as a URL on the Internet) where, for a charge not greater than transportation and media costs, anyone may receive a copy of the Source Data of the Work distributed according to the section above; or

(c) A third party's written offer for obtaining the Source Data at no cost, as described in paragraph (b) above, is included with the distribution. This option is valid only if you are a non-commercial party, and only if you received the Object Form of the Work along with such an offer.

You may copy and distribute the Work either gratis or for a fee, and if desired, you may offer warranty protection for the Work.

The aggregation of the Work with other works which are not based on the Work – such as but not limited to inclusion in a publication, broadcast, compilation, or other media – does not bring the other works in the scope of the License; nor does such aggregation void the terms of the License for the Work.

A-3.5 4. Modification

Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work, producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work under the terms described in the section for distribution above, provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.

A-3.6 5. No restrictions

You may not impose any further restrictions on the Work or any of its derivative works beyond those restrictions described in this License.

A-3.7 6. Acceptance

Copying, distributing or modifying the Work (including but not limited to sampling from the Work in a new work) indicates acceptance of these terms. If you do not follow the terms of this License, any rights granted to you by the License are null and void. The copying, distribution or modification of the Work outside of the terms described in this License is expressly prohibited by law.

If for any reason, conditions are imposed on you that forbid you to fulfill the conditions of this License, you may not copy, distribute or modify the Work at all.

If any part of this License is found to be in conflict with the law, that part shall be interpreted in its broadest meaning consistent with the law, and no other parts of the License shall be affected.

A-3.8 7. No warranty

THE WORK IS PROVIDED ”AS IS,” AND COMES WITH ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

A-3.9 8. Disclaimer of liability

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS WORK, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

```
[$Id:  dsl.txt,v 1.25 2000/03/14 13:14:14 m Exp m $]
```

Index

.

First Edition, last update January 18, 2006

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume VI – Experiments

By Tony R. Kuphaldt

First Edition, last update January 18, 2006

PRINTING HISTORY

- First Edition: Printed in April 2002. Source files written in *SubML* format. SubML is a simple markup language designed to easily convert to other markups like LaTeX, HTML, or DocBook using nothing but search-and-replace substitutions.

Contents

Chapter 1

INTRODUCTION

Contents

1.1 Electronics as science

Electronics is a science, and a very accessible science at that. With other areas of scientific study, expensive equipment is generally required to perform any non-trivial experiments. Not so with electronics. Many advanced concepts may be explored using parts and equipment totaling under a few hundred US dollars. This is good, because hands-on experimentation is vital to gaining scientific knowledge about any subject.

When I started writing *Lessons In Electric Circuits*, my intent was to create a textbook suitable for introductory college use. However, being mostly self-taught in electronics myself, I knew the value of a good textbook to hobbyists and experimenters not enrolled in any formal electronics course. Many people selflessly volunteered their time and expertise in helping me learn electronics when I was younger, and my intent is to honor their service and love by giving back to the world what they gave to me.

In order for someone to teach themselves a science such as electronics, they must engage in hands-on experimentation. Knowledge gleaned from books alone has limited use, especially in scientific endeavors. If my contribution to society is to be complete, I must include a guide to experimentation along with the text(s) on theory, so that the individual learning on their own has a resource to guide their experimental adventures.

A formal laboratory course for college electronics study requires an enormous amount of work to prepare, and usually must be based around specific parts and equipment so that the

experiments will be sufficient detailed, with results sufficiently precise to allow for rigorous comparison between experimental and theoretical data. A process of assessment, articulated through a qualified instructor, is also vital to guarantee that a certain level of learning has taken place. Peer review (comparison of experimental results with the work of others) is another important component of college-level laboratory study, and helps to improve the quality of learning. Since I cannot meet these criteria through the medium of a book, it is impractical for me to present a complete laboratory course here. In the interest of keeping this experiment guide reasonably low-cost for people to follow, and practical for deployment over the internet, I am forced to design the experiments at a lower level than what would be expected for a college lab course.

The experiments in this volume begin at a level appropriate for someone with no electronics knowledge, and progress to higher levels. They stress qualitative knowledge over quantitative knowledge, although they could serve as templates for more rigorous coursework. If there is any portion of *Lessons In Electric Circuits* that will remain "incomplete," it is this one: I fully intend to continue adding experiments *ad infinitum* so as to provide the experimenter or hobbyist with a wealth of ideas to explore the science of electronics. This volume of the book series is also the easiest to contribute to, for those who would like to help me in providing free information to people learning electronics. It doesn't take a tremendous effort to describe an experiment or two, and I will gladly include it if you email it to me, giving you full credit for the work. Refer to Appendix 2 for details on contributing to this book.

When performing these experiments, feel free to explore by trying different circuit construction and measurement techniques. If something isn't working as the text describes it should, don't give up! It's probably due to a simple problem in construction (loose wire, wrong component value) or test equipment setup. It can be frustrating working through these problems on your own, but the knowledge gained by "troubleshooting" a circuit yourself is at least as important as the knowledge gained by a properly functioning experiment. This is one of the most important reasons why experimentation is so vital to your scientific education: the real problems you will invariably encounter in experimentation challenge you to develop practical problem-solving skills.

In many of these experiments, I offer part numbers for Radio Shack brand components. This is not an endorsement of Radio Shack, but simply a convenient reference to an electronic supply company well-known in North America. Often times, components of better quality and lower price may be obtained through mail-order companies and other, lesser-known supply houses. I strongly recommend that experimenters obtain some of the more expensive components such as transformers (see the AC chapter) by salvaging them from discarded electrical appliances, both for economic and ecological reasons.

All experiments shown in this book are designed with safety in mind. It is nearly impossible to shock or otherwise hurt yourself by battery-powered experiments or other circuits of low voltage. However, hazards *do* exist building anything with your own two hands. Where there is a greater-than-normal level of danger in an experiment, I take efforts to direct the reader's attention toward it. However, it is unfortunately necessary in this litigious society to disclaim any and all liability for the outcome of any experiment presented here. Neither myself nor any contributors bear responsibility for injuries resulting from the construction or use of any of these projects, from the mis-handling of electricity by the experimenter, or from any other unsafe practices leading to injury. **Perform these experiments at your own risk!**

1.2 Setting up a home lab

In order to build the circuits described in this volume, you will need a small work area, as well as a few tools and critical supplies. This section describes the setup of a home electronics laboratory.

1.2.1 Work area

A work area should consist of a large workbench, desk, or table (preferably wooden) for performing circuit assembly, with household electrical power (120 volts AC) readily accessible to power soldering equipment, power supplies, and any test equipment. Inexpensive desks intended for computer use function very well for this purpose. Avoid a metal-surface desk, as the electrical conductivity of a metal surface creates both a shock hazard and the very distinct possibility of unintentional "short circuits" developing from circuit components touching the metal tabletop. Vinyl and plastic bench surfaces are to be avoided for their ability to generate and store large static-electric charges, which may damage sensitive electronic components. Also, these materials melt easily when exposed to hot soldering irons and molten solder droplets.

If you cannot obtain a wooden-surface workbench, you may turn any form of table or desk into one by laying a piece of plywood on top. If you are reasonably skilled with woodworking tools, you may construct your own desk using plywood and 2x4 boards.

The work area should be well-lit and comfortable. I have a small radio set up on my own workbench for listening to music or news as I experiment. My own workbench has a "power strip" receptacle and switch assembly mounted to the underside, into which I plug all 120 volt devices. It is convenient to have a single switch for shutting off *all* power in case of an accidental short-circuit!

1.2.2 Tools

A few tools are required for basic electronics work. Most of these tools are inexpensive and easy to obtain. If you desire to keep the cost as low as possible, you might want to search for them at thrift stores and pawn shops before buying them new. As you can tell from the photographs, some of my own tools are rather old but function well nonetheless.

First and foremost in your tool collection is a multimeter. This is an electrical instrument designed to measure voltage, current, resistance, and often other variables as well. Multimeters are manufactured in both *digital* and *analog* form. A digital multimeter is preferred for precision work, but analog meters are also useful for gaining an intuitive understanding of instrument sensitivity and range.

My own digital multimeter is a Fluke model 27, purchased in 1987:

Digital multimeter

Most analog multimeters sold today are quite inexpensive, and not necessarily precision test instruments. I recommend having both digital and analog meter types in your tool collection, spending as little money as possible on the analog multimeter and investing in a good-quality digital multimeter (I highly recommend the Fluke brand).

==========

A test instrument I have found indispensable in my home work is a *sensitive voltage detector*, or *sensitive audio detector*, described in nearly identical experiments in two chapters of this book volume. It is nothing more than a sensitized set of audio headphones, equipped with an attenuator (volume control) and limiting diodes to limit sound intensity from strong signals. Its purpose is to audibly indicate the presence of low-intensity voltage signals, DC or AC. In the absence of an oscilloscope, this is a most valuable tool, because it allows you to *listen* to an electronic signal, and thereby determine something of its nature. Few tools engender an intuitive comprehension of frequency and amplitude as this! I cite its use in many of the experiments shown in this volume, so I strongly encourage that you build your own. Second only to a multimeter, it is the most useful piece of test equipment in the collection of the budget electronics experimenter.

Sensitive voltage/audio detector

As you can see, I built my detector using scrap parts (household electrical switch/receptacle box for the enclosure, section of brown lamp cord for the test leads). Even some of the internal components were salvaged from scrap (the step-down transformer and headphone jack were

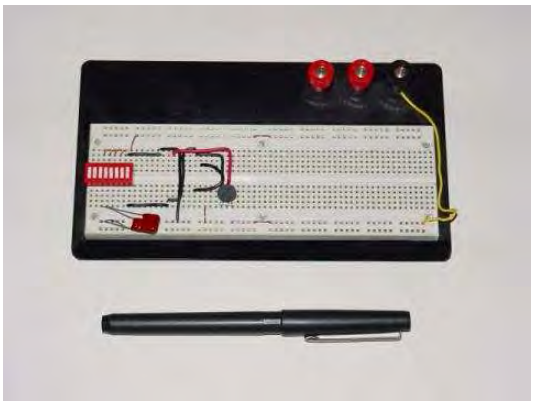
taken from an old radio, purchased in non-working condition from a thrift store). The entire thing, including the headphones purchased second-hand, cost no more than $15 to build. Of course, one could take much greater care in choosing construction materials (metal box, shielded test probe cable), but it probably wouldn't improve its performance significantly.

The single most influential component with regard to detector sensitivity is the headphone assembly: generally speaking, the greater the "dB" rating of the headphones, the better they will function for this purpose. Since the headphones need not be modified for use in the detector circuit, and they can be unplugged from it, you might justify the purchase of more expensive, high-quality headphones by using them as part of a home entertainment (audio/video) system.

==========

Also essential is a *solderless breadboard*, sometimes called a *prototyping board*, or *protoboard*. This device allows you to quickly join electronic components to one another without having to solder component terminals and wires together.

Solderless breadboard



==========

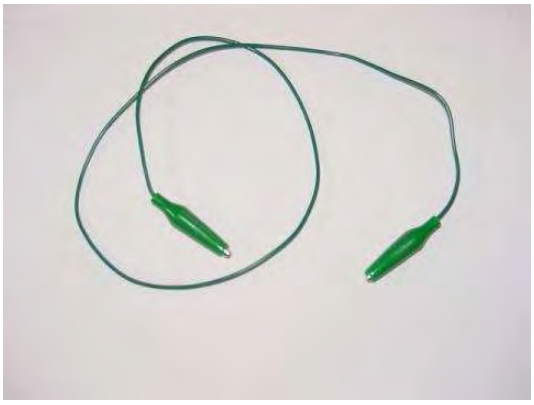
When working with wire, you need a tool to "strip" the plastic insulation off the ends so that bare copper metal is exposed. This tool is called a *wire stripper*, and it is a special form of plier with several knife-edged holes in the jaw area sized just right for cutting through the plastic insulation and not the copper, for a multitude of wire sizes, or *gauges*. Shown here are two different sizes of wire stripping pliers:

Wire stripping pliers

==========

In order to make quick, temporary connections between some electronic components, you need *jumper wires* with small "alligator-jaw" clips at each end. These may be purchased complete, or assembled from clips and wires.

Jumper wires (as sold by Radio Shack)



Jumper wires (home-made)

The home-made jumper wires with large, uninsulated (bare metal) alligator clips are okay

to use so long as care is taken to avoid any unintentional contact between the bare clips and any other wires or components. For use in crowded breadboard circuits, jumper wires with insulated (rubber-covered) clips like the jumper shown from Radio Shack are much preferred.

==========

Needle-nose pliers are designed to grasp small objects, and are especially useful for pushing wires into stubborn breadboard holes.

Needle-nose pliers

==========

No tool set would be complete without screwdrivers, and I recommend a complementary pair (3/16 inch slotted and #2 Phillips) as the starting point for your collection. You may later find it useful to invest in a set of *jeweler's screwdrivers* for work with very small screws and screw-head adjustments.

Screwdrivers

==========

For projects involving printed-circuit board assembly or repair, a small soldering iron and a spool of "rosin-core" solder are essential tools. I recommend a 25 watt soldering iron, no larger for printed circuit board work, and the thinnest solder you can find. *Do not use "acid-core" solder!* Acid-core solder is intended for the soldering of copper tubes (plumbing), where a small amount of acid helps to clean the copper of surface impurities and provide a stronger bond. If used for electrical work, the residual acid will cause wires to corrode. Also, you should avoid

solder containing the metal *lead*, opting instead for silver-alloy solder. If you do not already wear glasses, a pair of safety glasses is highly recommended while soldering, to prevent bits of molten solder from accidently landing in your eye should a wire release from the joint during the soldering process and fling bits of solder toward you.

Soldering iron and solder (”rosin core”)

==========

Projects requiring the joining of large wires by soldering will necessitate a more powerful heat source than a 25 watt soldering iron. A soldering *gun* is a practical option.

Soldering gun

==========

Knives, like screwdrivers, are essential tools for all kinds of work. For safety’s sake, I recommend a ”utility” knife with retracting blade. These knives are also advantageous to have for their ability to accept replacement blades.

Utility knife

==========

Pliers other than the needle-nose type are useful for the assembly and disassembly of electronic device chassis. Two types I recommend are *slip-joint* and *adjustable-joint* ("Channellock").

Slip-joint pliers

Adjustable-joint pliers

==========

Drilling may be required for the assembly of large projects. Although power drills work well, I have found that a simple hand-crank drill does a remarkable job drilling through plastic, wood, and most metals. It is certainly safer and quieter than a power drill, and costs quite a bit less.

Hand drill

As the wear on my drill indicates, it is an often-used tool around my home!

==========

Some experiments will require a source of audio-frequency voltage signals. Normally, this type of signal is generated in an electronics laboratory by a device called a *signal generator* or *function generator*. While building such a device is not impossible (nor difficult!), it often requires the use of an oscilloscope to fine-tune, and oscilloscopes are usually outside the budgetary range of the home experimenter. A relatively inexpensive alternative to a commercial signal generator is an *electronic keyboard* of the musical type. You need not be a musician to operate one for the purposes of generating an audio signal (just press any key on the board!), and they may be obtained quite readily at second-hand stores for substantially less than new price. The electronic signal generated by the keyboard is conducted to your circuit via a headphone cable plugged into the "headphones" jack. More details regarding the use of a "Musical Keyboard as a Signal Generator" may be found in the experiment of that name in chapter 4 (AC).

1.2.3 Supplies

Wire used in solderless breadboards must be 22-gauge, solid copper. Spools of this wire are available from electronic supply stores and some hardware stores, in different insulation colors. Insulation color has no bearing on the wire's performance, but different colors are sometimes useful for "color-coding" wire functions in a complex circuit.

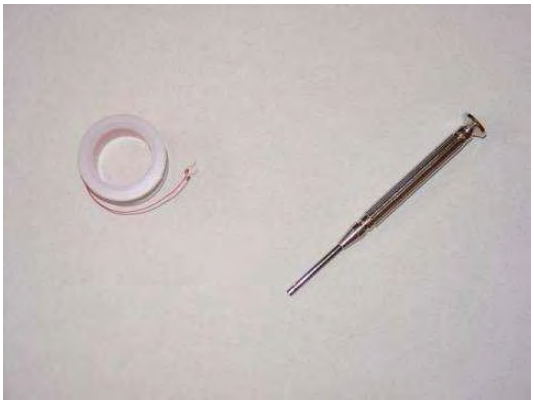
Spool of 22-gauge, solid copper wire

Note how the last 1/4 inch or so of the copper wire protruding from the spool has been ”stripped” of its plastic insulation.

==========

An alternative to solderless breadboard circuit construction is *wire-wrap*, where 30-gauge (very thin!) solid copper wire is tightly wrapped around the terminals of components inserted through the holes of a fiberglass board. No soldering is required, and the connections made are at least as durable as soldered connections, perhaps more. Wire-wrapping requires a spool of this very thin wire, and a special wrapping tool, the simplest kind resembling a small screwdriver.

Wire-wrap wire and wrapping tool



==========

Large wire (14 gauge and bigger) may be needed for building circuits that carry significant levels of current. Though electrical wire of practically any gauge may be purchased on spools, I have found a very inexpensive source of stranded (flexible), copper wire, available at any hardware store: cheap extension cords. Typically comprised of three wires colored white, black, and green, extension cords are often sold at prices less than the retail cost of the constituent wire alone. This is especially true if the cord is purchased on sale! Also, an extension cord provides you with a pair of 120 volt connectors: male (plug) and female (receptacle) that may be used for projects powered by 120 volts.

Extension cord, in package

To extract the wires, carefully cut the outer layer of plastic insulation away using a utility knife. With practice, you may find you can peel away the outer insulation by making a short cut in it at one end of the cable, then grasping the wires with one hand and the insulation with the other and pulling them apart. This is, of course, much preferable to slicing the entire length of the insulation with a knife, both for safety's sake and for the sake of avoiding cuts in the individual wires' insulation.

==========

During the course of building many circuits, you will accumulate a large number of small components. One technique for keeping these components organized is to keep them in a plastic "organizer" box like the type used for fishing tackle.

Component box

In this view of one of my component boxes, you can see plenty of 1/8 watt resistors, transistors, diodes, and even a few 8-pin integrated circuits ("chips"). Labels for each compartment were made with a permanent ink marker.

1.3 Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Michael Warner (April 9, 2002): Suggestions for a section describing home laboratory setup.

Chapter 2

BASIC CONCEPTS AND TEST EQUIPMENT

Contents

2.1 Voltmeter usage

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Multimeter, digital or analog
- Assorted batteries
- One light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- Small "hobby" motor, permanent-magnet type (Radio Shack catalog # 273-223 or equivalent)

- Two jumper wires with ”alligator clip” ends (Radio Shack catalog # 278-1156, 278-1157, or equivalent)

A *multimeter* is an electrical instrument capable of measuring voltage, current, and resistance. *Digital* multimeters have numerical displays, like digital clocks, for indicating the quantity of voltage, current, or resistance. *Analog* multimeters indicate these quantities by means of a moving pointer over a printed scale.

Analog multimeters tend to be less expensive than digital multimeters, and more beneficial as learning tools for the first-time student of electricity. I strongly recommend purchasing an analog multimeter before purchasing a digital multimeter, but to eventually have both in your tool kit for these experiments.

CROSS-REFERENCES

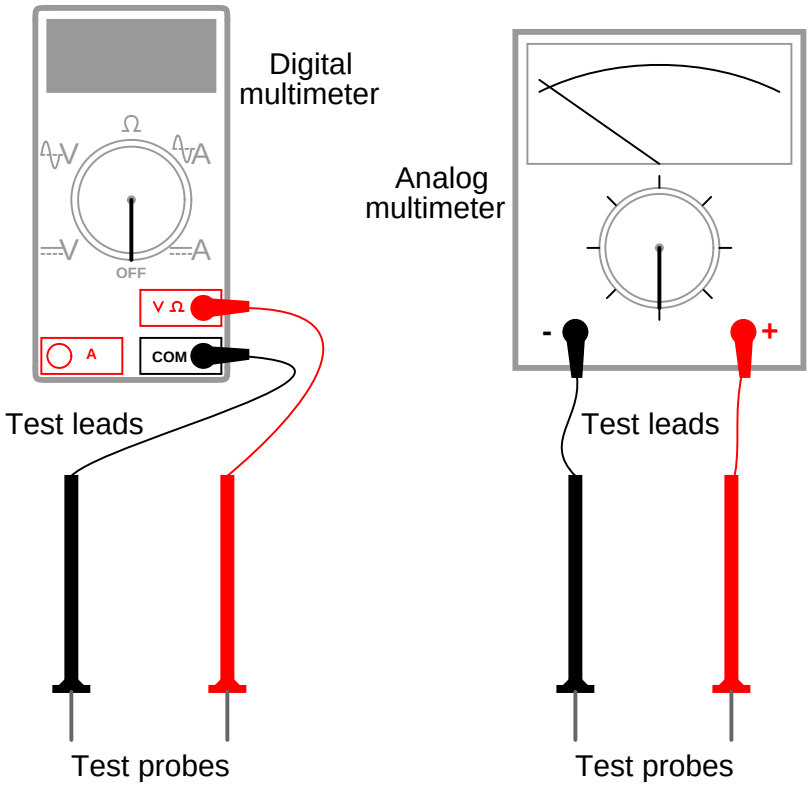
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 1: ”Basic Concepts of Electricity”

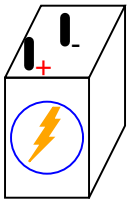
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to measure voltage
- Characteristics of voltage: existing *between two points*
- Selection of proper meter range

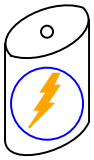
ILLUSTRATION





6-volt "lantern" battery

Light-emitting diode ("LED")



1.5-volt "D-cell" battery

Permanent-magnet motor

INSTRUCTIONS

In all the experiments in this book, you will be using some sort of test equipment to measure aspects of electricity you cannot directly see, feel, hear, taste, or smell. Electricity – at least in small, safe quantities – is insensible by our human bodies. Your most fundamental "eyes" in the world of electricity and electronics will be a device called a *multimeter*. Multimeters indicate the presence of, and measure the quantity of, electrical properties such as *voltage*, *current*, and *resistance*. In this experiment, you will familiarize yourself with the measurement of voltage.

Voltage is the measure of electrical "push" ready to motivate electrons to move through a conductor. In scientific terms, it is the specific energy per unit charge, mathematically defined as joules per coulomb. It is analogous to *pressure* in a fluid system: the force that moves fluid through a pipe, and is measured in the unit of the Volt (V).

Your multimeter should come with some basic instructions. Read them well! If your multimeter is digital, it will require a small battery to operate. If it is analog, it does not need a battery to measure voltage.

Some digital multimeters are *autoranging*. An autoranging meter has only a few selector switch (dial) positions. Manual-ranging meters have several different selector positions for each basic quantity: several for voltage, several for current, and several for resistance. Autoranging is usually found on only the more expensive digital meters, and is to manual ranging as an automatic transmission is to a manual transmission in a car. An autoranging meter "shifts gears" automatically to find the best measurement range to display the particular quantity being measured.

Set your multimeter's selector switch to the highest-value "DC volt" position available. Autoranging multimeters may only have a single position for DC voltage, in which case you need to set the switch to that one position. Touch the red test probe to the positive (+) side of a battery, and the black test probe to the negative (-) side of the same battery. The meter should now provide you with some sort of indication. Reverse the test probe connections to the battery if the meter's indication is negative (on an analog meter, a negative value is indicated by the pointer deflecting left instead of right).

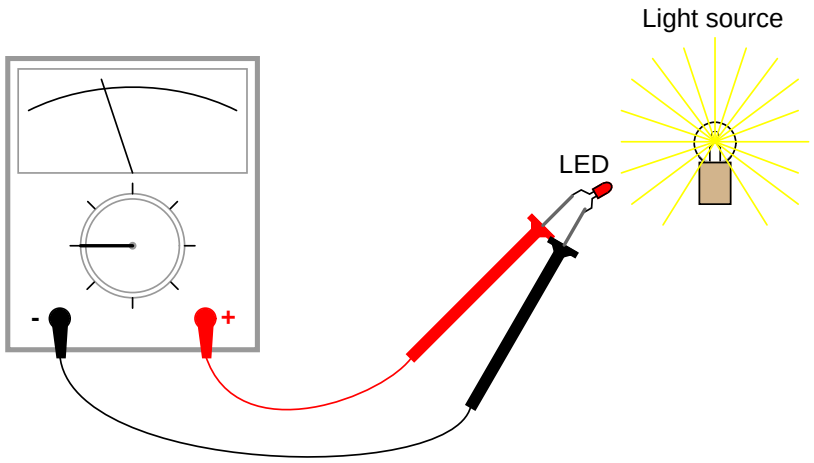
If your meter is a manual-range type, and the selector switch has been set to a high-range position, the indication will be small. Move the selector switch to the next lower DC voltage range setting and reconnect to the battery. The indication should be stronger now, as indicated by a greater deflection of the analog meter pointer (*needle*), or more active digits on the digital meter display. For the best results, move the selector switch to the lowest-range setting that does not "over-range" the meter. An over-ranged analog meter is said to be "pegged," as the needle will be forced all the way to the right-hand side of the scale, past the full-range scale value. An over-ranged digital meter sometimes displays the letters "OL", or a series of dashed lines. This indication is manufacturer-specific.

What happens if you only touch one meter test probe to one end of a battery? How does the meter have to connect to the battery in order to provide an indication? What does this tell us about voltmeter use and the nature of voltage? Is there such a thing as voltage "at" a single point?

Be sure to measure more than one size of battery, and learn how to select the best voltage range on the multimeter to give you maximum indication without over-ranging.

Now switch your multimeter to the lowest DC voltage range available, and touch the meter's test probes to the terminals (wire leads) of the light-emitting diode (LED). An LED is designed to produce light when powered by a small amount of electricity, but LEDs also happen to *generate* DC voltage when exposed to light, somewhat like a solar cell. Point the LED toward

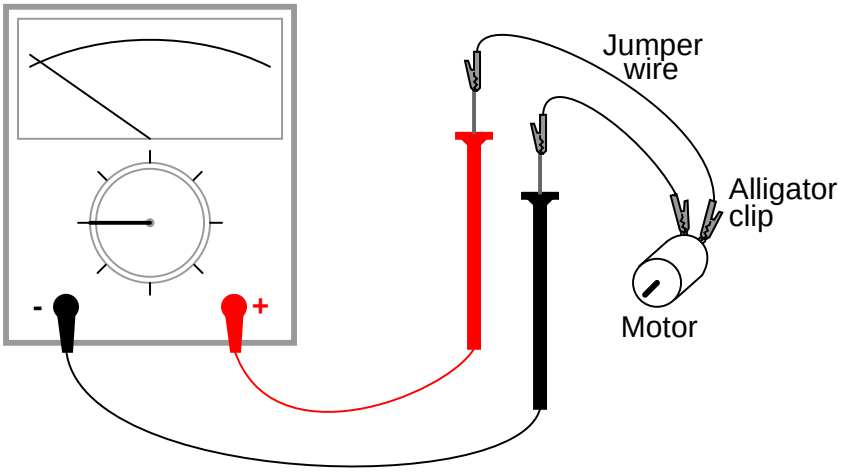
a bright source of light with your multimeter connected to it, and note the meter's indication:



Batteries develop electrical voltage through chemical reactions. When a battery "dies," it has exhausted its original store of chemical "fuel." The LED, however, does not rely on an internal "fuel" to generate voltage; rather, it *converts* optical energy into electrical energy. So long as there is light to illuminate the LED, it will produce voltage.

Another source of voltage through energy conversion a *generator*. The small electric motor specified in the "Parts and Materials" list functions as an electrical generator if its shaft is turned by a mechanical force. Connect your voltmeter (your multimeter, set to the "volt" function) to the motor's terminals just as you connected it to the LED's terminals, and spin the shaft with your fingers. The meter should indicate voltage by means of needle deflection (analog) or numerical readout (digital).

If you find it difficult to maintain both meter test probes in connection with the motor's terminals while simultaneously spinning the shaft with your fingers, you may use *alligator clip* "jumper" wires like this:



Determine the relationship between voltage and generator shaft speed? Reverse the generator's direction of rotation and note the change in meter indication. When you reverse shaft rotation, you change the *polarity* of the voltage created by the generator. The voltmeter indicates polarity by *direction* of needle direction (analog) or *sign* of numerical indication (digital). When the red test lead is positive (+) and the black test lead negative (-), the meter will register voltage in the normal direction. If the applied voltage is of the reverse polarity (negative on red and positive on black), the meter will indicate "backwards."

2.2 Ohmmeter usage

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Multimeter, digital or analog
- Assorted resistors (Radio Shack catalog # 271-312 is a 500-piece assortment)
- Rectifying diode (1N4001 or equivalent; Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- Cadmium Sulphide photocell (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1657)
- Breadboard (Radio Shack catalog # 276-174 or equivalent)
- Jumper wires
- Paper
- Pencil
- Glass of water
- Table salt

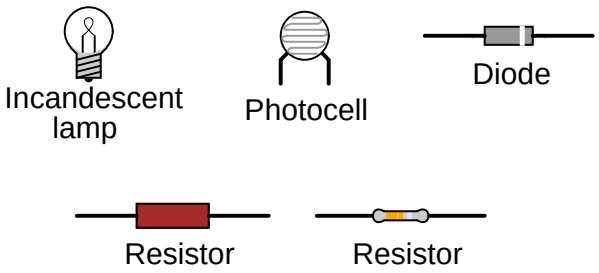
This experiment describes how to measure the electrical resistance of several objects. You need not possess *all* items listed above in order to effectively learn about resistance. Conversely, you need not limit your experiments to these items. However, be sure to **never** measure the resistance of any electrically ”live” object or circuit. In other words, do not attempt to measure the resistance of a battery or any other source of substantial voltage using a multimeter set to the resistance (”ohms”) function. Failing to heed this warning will likely result in meter damage and even personal injury.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 1: ”Basic Concepts of Electricity”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Determination and comprehension of ”electrical continuity”
- Determination and comprehension of ”electrically common points”
- How to measure resistance
- Characteristics of resistance: existing *between two points*
- Selection of proper meter range
- Relative conductivity of various components and materials

ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

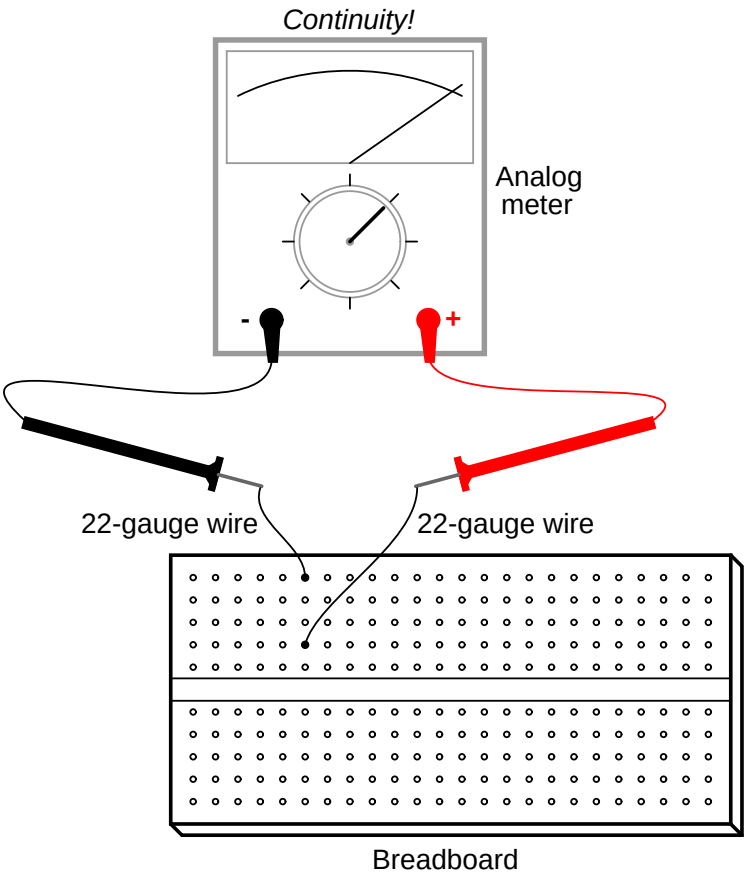
Resistance is the measure of electrical ”friction” as electrons move through a conductor. It is measured in the unit of the ”Ohm,” that unit symbolized by the capital Greek letter omega (Ω).

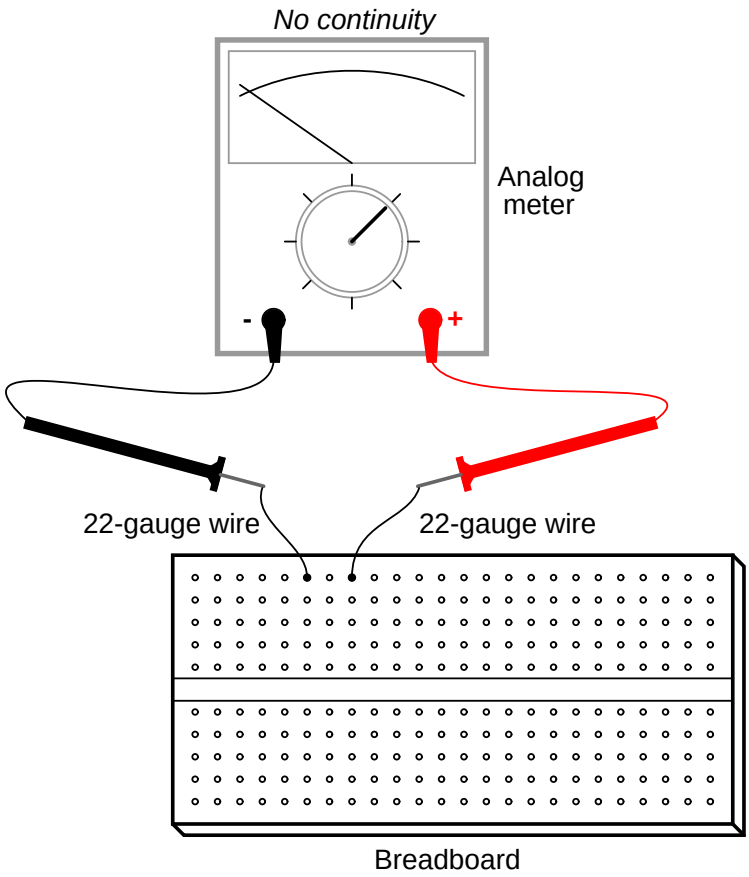
Set your multimeter to the highest resistance range available. The resistance function is usually denoted by the unit symbol for resistance: the Greek letter omega (Ω), or sometimes by the word ”ohms.” Touch the two test probes of your meter together. When you do, the meter should register 0 ohms of resistance. If you are using an analog meter, you will notice the needle deflect full-scale when the probes are touched together, and return to its resting position when the probes are pulled apart. The resistance scale on an analog multimeter is reverse-printed from the other scales: zero resistance in indicated at the far right-hand side of the scale, and infinite resistance is indicated at the far left-hand side. There should also be a small adjustment knob or ”wheel” on the analog multimeter to calibrate it for ”zero” ohms of resistance. Touch the test probes together and move this adjustment until the needle exactly points to zero at the right-hand end of the scale.

Although your multimeter is capable of providing quantitative values of measured resistance, it is also useful for *qualitative* tests of *continuity*: whether or not there is a continuous electrical connection from one point to another. You can, for instance, test the continuity of a piece of wire by connecting the meter probes to opposite ends of the wire and checking to see the the needle moves full-scale. What would we say about a piece of wire if the ohmmeter needle didn’t move at all when the probes were connected to opposite ends?

Digital multimeters set to the ”resistance” mode indicate non-continuity by displaying some non-numerical indication on the display. Some models say ”OL” (Open-Loop), while others display dashed lines.

Use your meter to determine continuity between the holes on a *breadboard*: a device used for temporary construction of circuits, where component terminals are inserted into holes on a plastic grid, metal spring clips underneath each hole connecting certain holes to others. Use small pieces of 22-gauge solid copper wire, inserted into the holes of the breadboard, to connect the meter to these spring clips so that you can test for continuity:


Continuity!
Analog meter
-
+
22-gauge wire
22-gauge wire
Breadboard



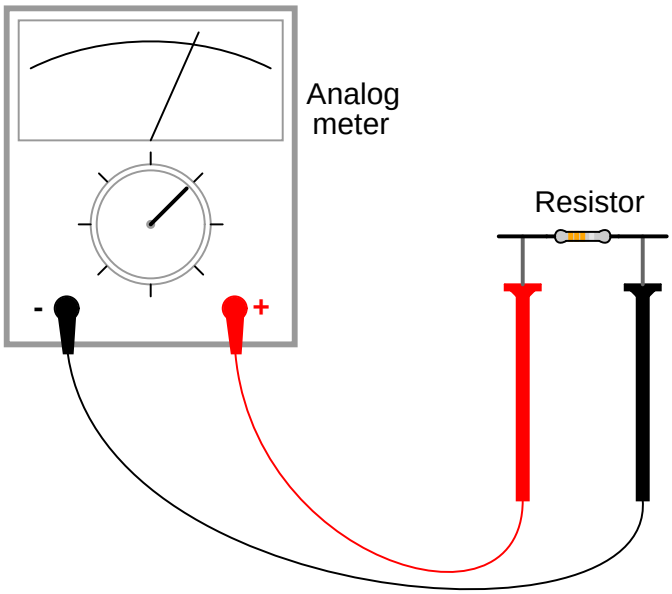
An important concept in electricity, closely related to electrical continuity, is that of points being *electrically common* to each other. Electrically common points are points of contact on a device or in a circuit that have negligible (extremely small) resistance between them. We could say, then, that points within a breadboard column (vertical in the illustrations) are *electrically common* to each other, because there is electrical *continuity* between them. Conversely, breadboard points within a row (horizontal in the illustrations) are not electrically common, because there is no continuity between them. *Continuity* describes what is between points of contact, while *commonality* describes how the points themselves relate to each other.

Like continuity, commonality is a qualitative assessment, based on a relative comparison of resistance between other points in a circuit. It is an important concept to grasp, because there are certain facts regarding voltage in relation to electrically common points that are valuable in circuit analysis and troubleshooting, the first one being that there will never be substantial voltage dropped between points that are electrically common to each other.

Select a 10,000 ohm (10 kΩ) resistor from your parts assortment. This resistance value is indicated by a series of color bands: Brown, Black, Orange, and then another color representing the precision of the resistor, Gold (+/- 5%) or Silver (+/- 10%). Some resistors have no color for precision, which marks them as +/- 20%. Other resistors use five color bands to denote their value and precision, in which case the colors for a 10 kΩ resistor will be Brown, Black, Black,

Red, and a fifth color for precision.

Connect the meter's test probes across the resistor as such, and note its indication on the resistance scale:



If the needle points very close to zero, you need to select a lower resistance range on the meter, just as you needed to select an appropriate voltage range when reading the voltage of a battery.

If you are using a digital multimeter, you should see a numerical figure close to 10 shown on the display, with a small "k" symbol on the right-hand side denoting the metric prefix for "kilo" (thousand). Some digital meters are manually-ranged, and require appropriate range selection just as the analog meter. If yours is like this, experiment with different range switch positions and see which one gives you the best indication.

Try reversing the test probe connections on the resistor. Does this change the meter's indication at all? What does this tell us about the resistance of a resistor? What happens when you only touch one probe to the resistor? What does this tell us about the nature of resistance, and how it is measured? How does this compare with voltage measurement, and what happened when we tried to measure battery voltage by touching only one probe to the battery?

When you touch the meter probes to the resistor terminals, try not to touch both probe tips to your fingers. If you do, you will be measuring the parallel combination of the resistor and your own body, which will tend to make the meter indication lower than it should be! When measuring a 10 kΩ resistor, this error will be minimal, but it may be more severe when measuring other values of resistor.

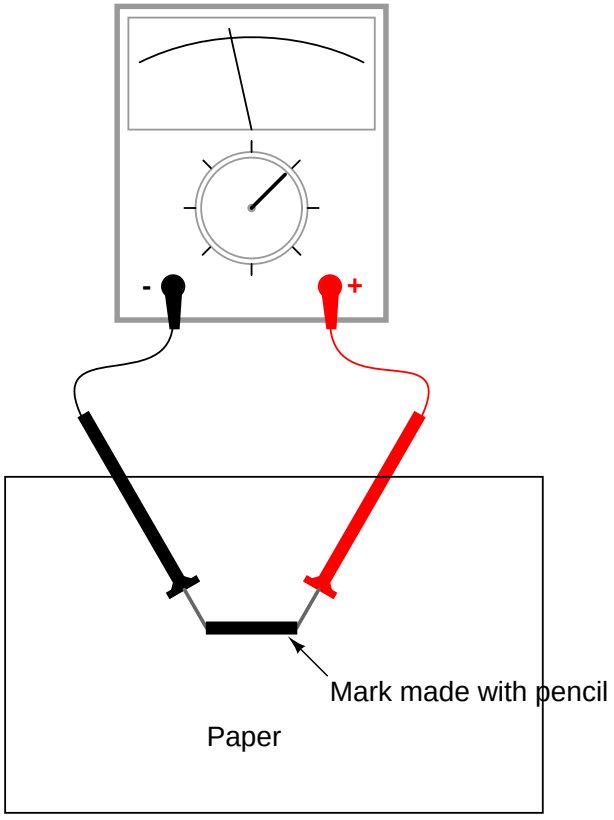
You may safely measure the resistance of your own body by holding one probe tip with the fingers of one hand, and the other probe tip with the fingers of the other hand. **Note:** be very careful with the probes, as they are often sharpened to a needle-point. Hold the probe tips along their length, not at the very points! You may need to adjust the meter range again after measuring the 10 kΩ resistor, as your body resistance tends to be greater than 10,000

ohms hand-to-hand. Try wetting your fingers with water and re-measuring resistance with the meter. What impact does this have on the indication? Try wetting your fingers with *salt*water prepared using the glass of water and table salt, and re-measuring resistance. What impact does this have on your body's resistance as measured by the meter?

Resistance is the measure of friction to electron flow through an object. The less resistance there is between two points, the harder it is for electrons to move (flow) between those two points. Given that electric shock is caused by a large flow of electrons through a person's body, and increased body resistance acts as a safeguard by making it more difficult for electrons to flow through us, what can we ascertain about electrical safety from the resistance readings obtained with wet fingers? Does water increase or decrease shock hazard to people?

Measure the resistance of a rectifying diode with an analog meter. Try reversing the test probe connections to the diode and re-measure resistance. What strikes you as being remarkable about the diode, especially in contrast to the resistor?

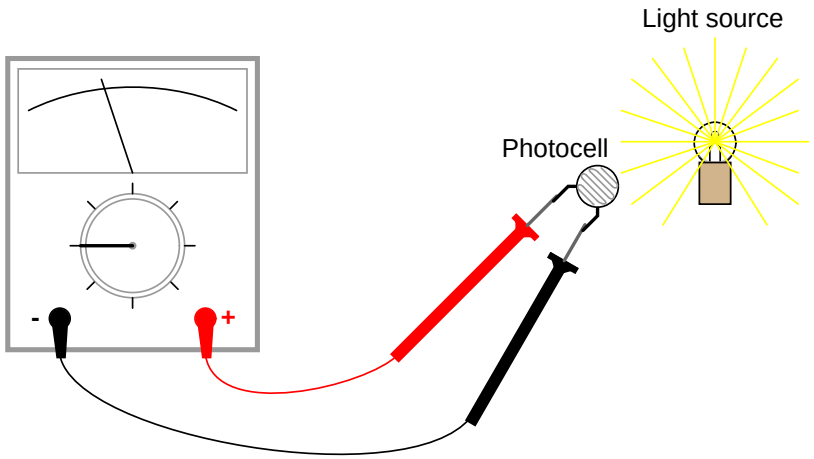
Take a piece of paper and draw a very heavy black mark on it with a pencil (not a pen!). Measure resistance on the black strip with your meter, placing the probe tips at each end of the mark like this:



Move the probe tips closer together on the black mark and note the change in resistance value. Does it increase or decrease with decreased probe spacing? If the results are inconsistent, you need to redraw the mark with more and heavier pencil strokes, so that it is consistent

in its density. What does this teach you about resistance versus length of a conductive material?

Connect your meter to the terminals of a cadmium-sulphide (CdS) photocell and measure the change in resistance created by differences in light exposure. Just as with the light-emitting diode (LED) of the voltmeter experiment, you may want to use alligator-clip jumper wires to make connection with the component, leaving your hands free to hold the photocell to a light source and/or change meter ranges:



Experiment with measuring the resistance of several different types of materials, just be sure not to try measure anything that produces substantial voltage, like a battery. Suggestions for materials to measure are: fabric, plastic, wood, metal, clean water, dirty water, salt water, glass, diamond (on a diamond ring or other piece of jewelry), paper, rubber, and oil.

2.3 A very simple circuit

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6-volt battery
- 6-volt incandescent lamp
- Jumper wires
- Breadboard
- Terminal strip

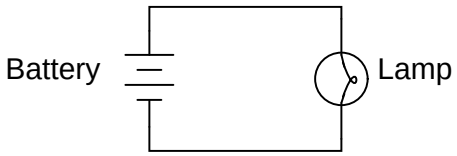
From this experiment on, a multimeter is assumed to be necessary and will not be included in the required list of parts and materials. In all subsequent illustrations, a digital multimeter will be shown instead of an analog meter unless there is some particular reason to use an analog meter. You are encouraged to use *both* types of meters to gain familiarity with the operation of each in these experiments.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 1: ”Basic Concepts of Electricity”

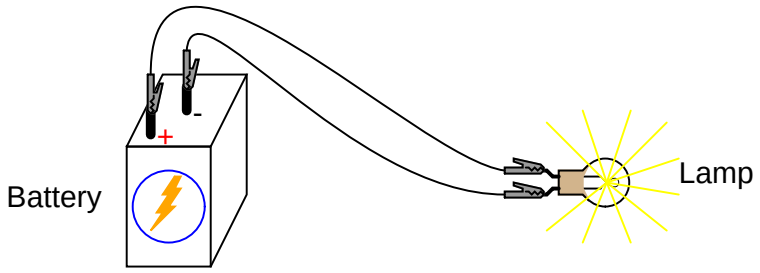
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Essential configuration needed to make a circuit
- Normal voltage drops in an operating circuit
- Importance of continuity to a circuit
- Working definitions of ”open” and ”short” circuits
- Breadboard usage
- Terminal strip usage

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



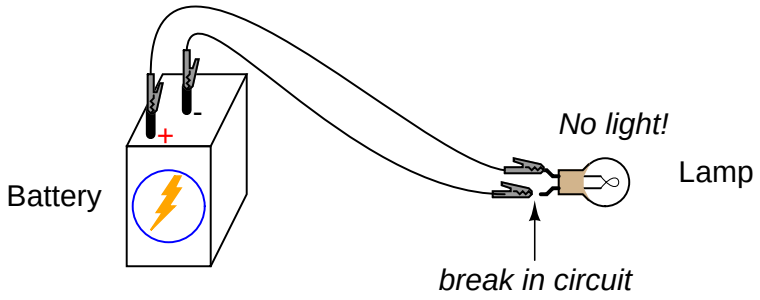
ILLUSTRATION

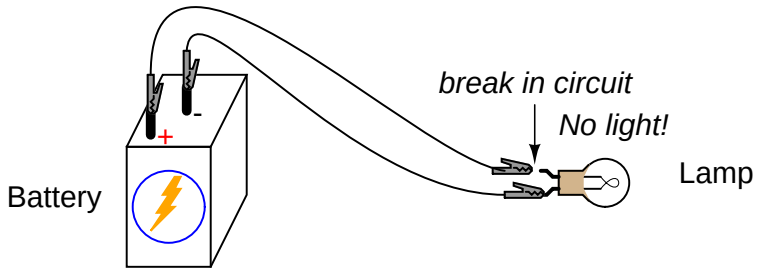


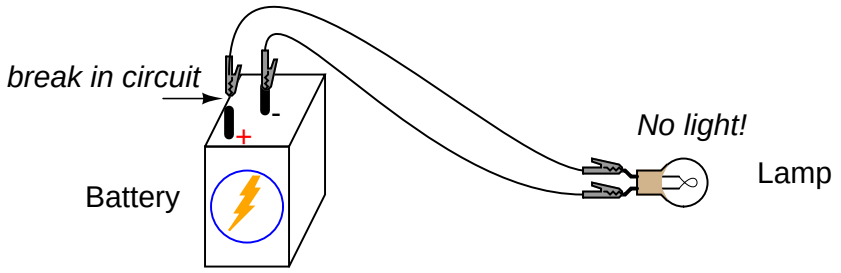
INSTRUCTIONS

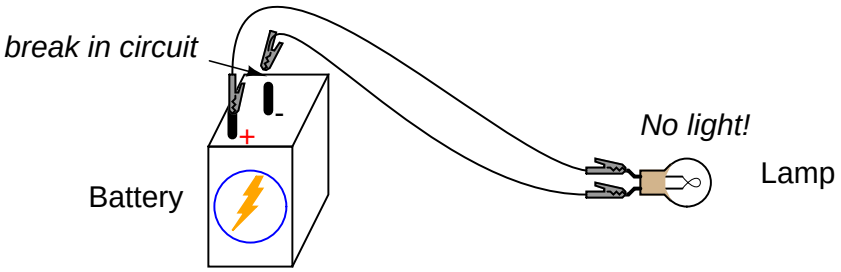
This is the simplest complete circuit in this collection of experiments: a battery and an incandescent lamp. Connect the lamp to the battery as shown in the illustration, and the lamp should light, assuming the battery and lamp are both in good condition and they are matched to one another in terms of voltage.

If there is a "break" (discontinuity) anywhere in the circuit, the lamp will fail to light. It does *not* matter where such a break occurs! Many students assume that because electrons leave the negative (-) side of the battery and continue through the circuit to the positive (+) side, that the wire connecting the negative terminal of the battery to the lamp is more important to circuit operation than the other wire providing a return path for electrons back to the battery. This is not true!



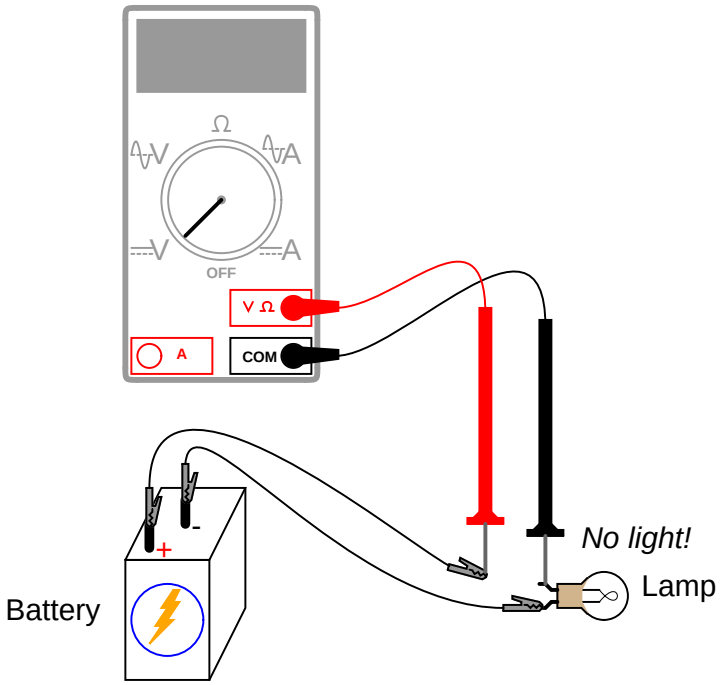






Using your multimeter set to the appropriate "DC volt" range, measure voltage across the battery, across the lamp, and across each jumper wire. Familiarize yourself with the normal voltages in a functioning circuit.

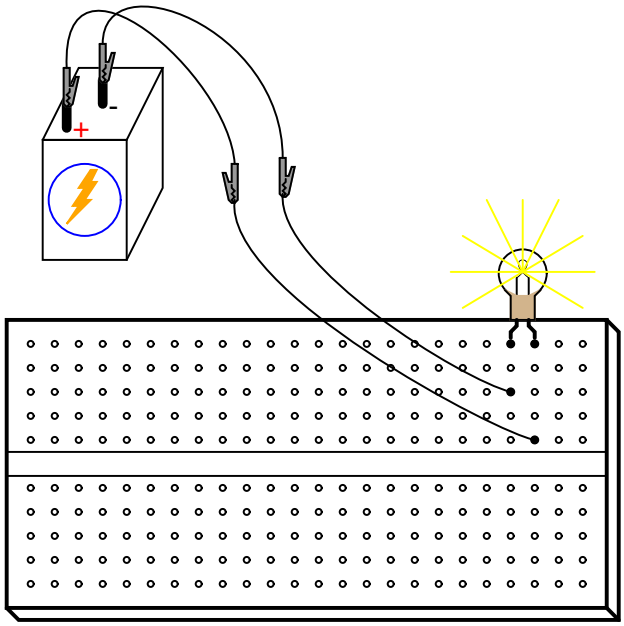
Now, "break" the circuit at one point and re-measure voltage between the same sets of points, additionally measuring voltage across the break like this:



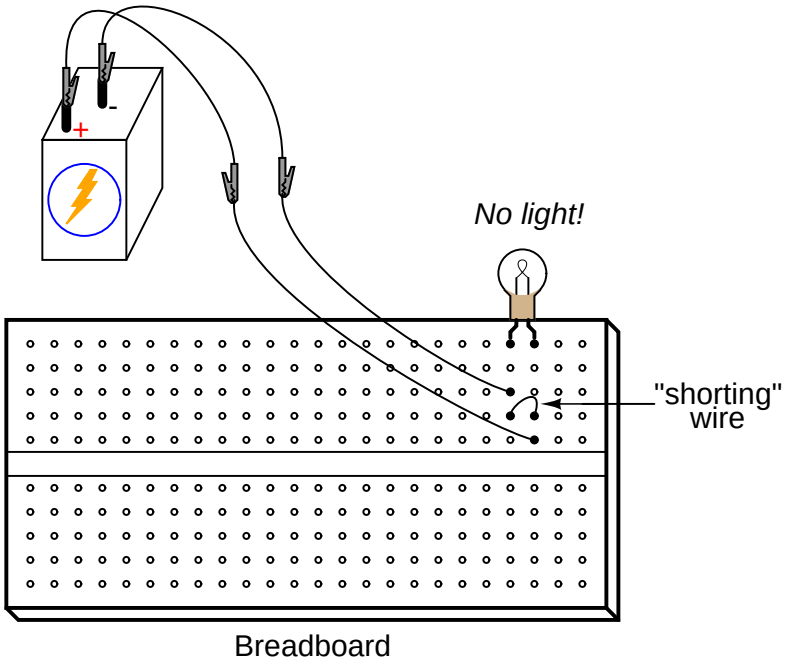
What voltages measure the same as before? What voltages are different since introducing the break? How much voltage is manifest, or *dropped* across the break? What is the *polarity* of the voltage drop across the break, as indicated by the meter?

Re-connect the jumper wire to the lamp, and break the circuit in another place. Measure all voltage ”drops” again, familiarizing yourself with the voltages of an ”open” circuit.

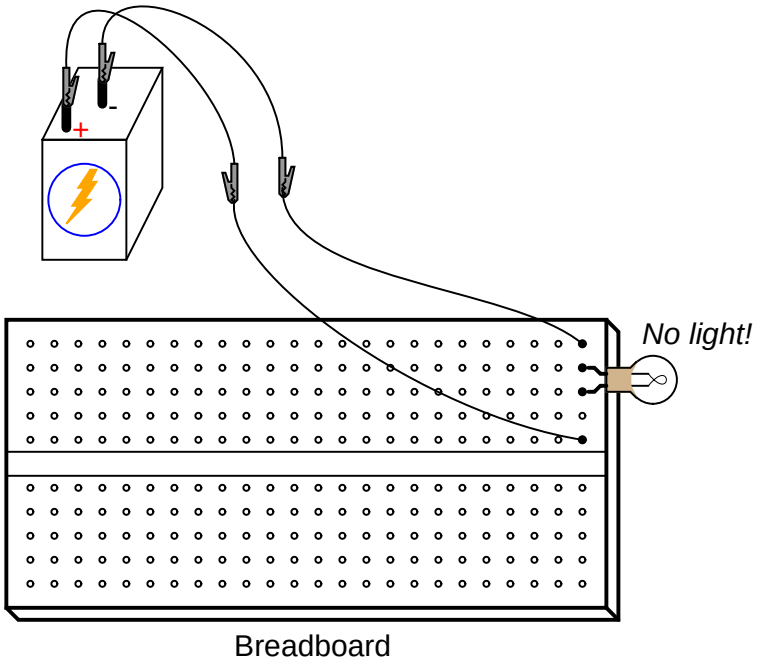
Construct the same circuit on a breadboard, taking care to place the lamp and wires into the breadboard in such a way that continuity will be maintained. The example shown here is only that: an example, not the *only* way to build a circuit on a breadboard:



Experiment with different configurations on the breadboard, plugging the lamp into different holes. If you encounter a situation where the lamp refuses to light up and the connecting wires are getting warm, you probably have a situation known as a *short circuit*, where a lower-resistance path than the lamp bypasses current around the lamp, preventing enough voltage from being dropped across the lamp to light it up. Here is an example of a short circuit made on a breadboard:



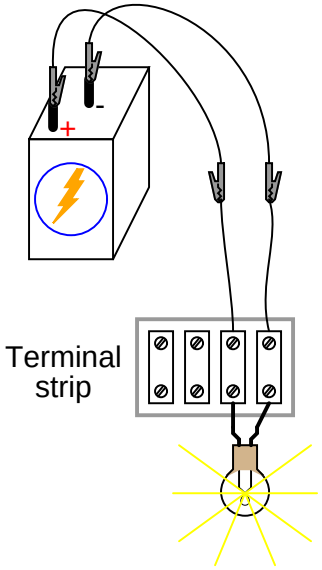
Here is an example of an *accidental* short circuit of the type typically made by students unfamiliar with breadboard usage:



Here there is no ”shorting” wire present on the breadboard, yet there *is* a short circuit, and the lamp refuses to light. Based on your understanding of breadboard hole connections, can you determine where the ”short” is in this circuit?

Short circuits are generally to be avoided, as they result in very high rates of electron flow, causing wires to heat up and battery power sources to deplete. If the power source is substantial enough, a short circuit may cause heat of explosive proportions to manifest, causing equipment damage and hazard to nearby personnel. This is what happens when a tree limb ”shorts” across wires on a power line: the limb – being composed of wet wood – acts as a low-resistance path to electric current, resulting in heat and sparks.

You may also build the battery/lamp circuit on a terminal strip: a length of insulating material with metal bars and screws to attach wires and component terminals to. Here is an example of how this circuit might be constructed on a terminal strip:



2.4 Ammeter usage

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6-volt battery
- 6-volt incandescent lamp

Basic circuit construction components such as breadboard, terminal strip, and jumper wires are also assumed to be available from now on, leaving only components and materials unique to the project listed under ”Parts and Materials.”

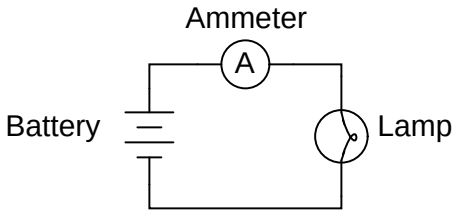
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 1: ”Basic Concepts of Electricity”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”

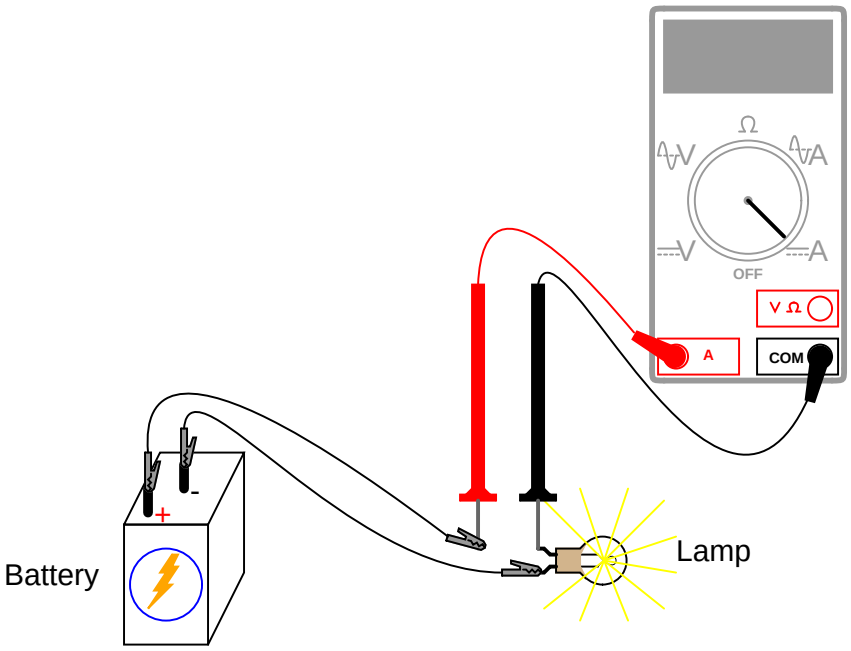
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to measure current with a multimeter
- How to check a multimeter’s internal fuse
- Selection of proper meter range

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



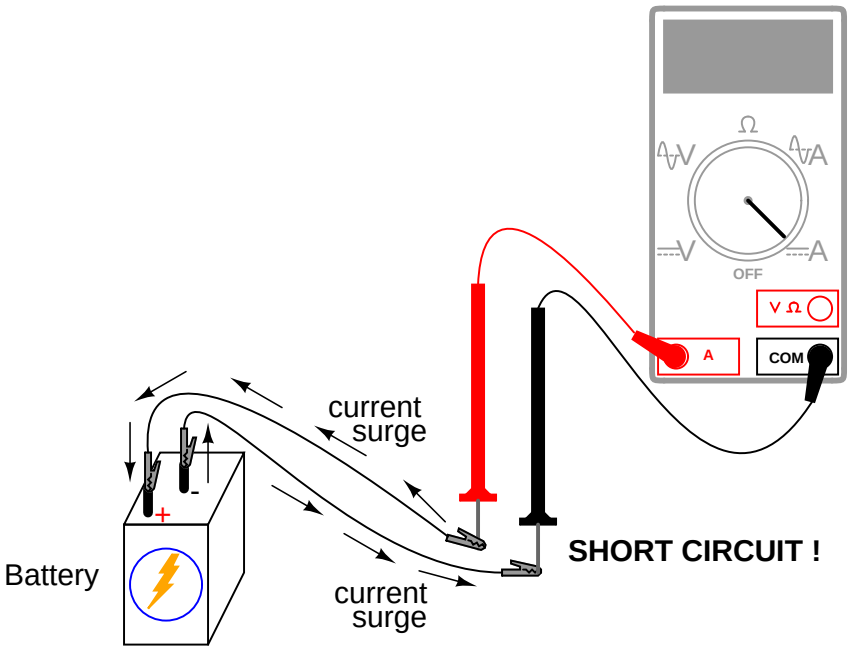
INSTRUCTIONS

Current is the measure of the rate of electron "flow" in a circuit. It is measured in the unit of the Ampere, simply called "Amp," (A).

The most common way to measure current in a circuit is to break the circuit open and insert an "ammeter" in *series* (in-line) with the circuit so that all electrons flowing through the circuit also have to go through the meter. Because measuring current in this manner requires the meter be made part of the circuit, it is a more difficult type of measurement to make than either voltage or resistance.

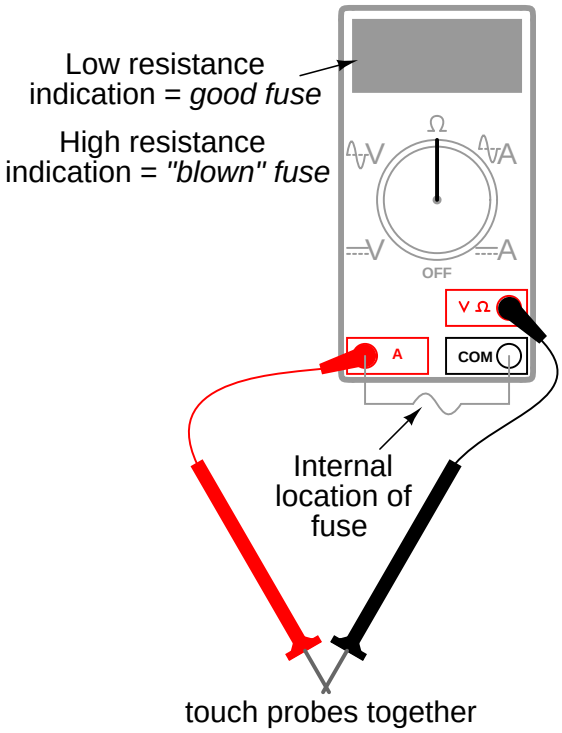
Some digital meters, like the unit shown in the illustration, have a separate jack to insert the red test lead plug when measuring current. Other meters, like most inexpensive analog meters, use the same jacks for measuring voltage, resistance, and current. Consult your owner's manual on the particular model of meter you own for details on measuring current.

When an ammeter is placed in series with a circuit, it ideally drops no voltage as current goes through it. In other words, it acts very much like a piece of wire, with very little resistance from one test probe to the other. Consequently, an ammeter will act as a short circuit if placed in parallel (across the terminals of) a substantial source of voltage. If this is done, a surge in current will result, potentially damaging the meter:



Ammeters are generally protected from excessive current by means of a small *fuse* located inside the meter housing. If the ammeter is accidently connected across a substantial voltage source, the resultant surge in current will ”blow” the fuse and render the meter incapable of measuring current until the fuse is replaced. **Be very careful to avoid this scenario!**

You may test the condition of a multimeter’s fuse by switching it to the resistance mode and measuring continuity through the test leads (and through the fuse). On a meter where the same test lead jacks are used for both resistance and current measurement, simply leave the test lead plugs where they are and touch the two probes together. On a meter where different jacks are used, this is how you insert the test lead plugs to check the fuse:

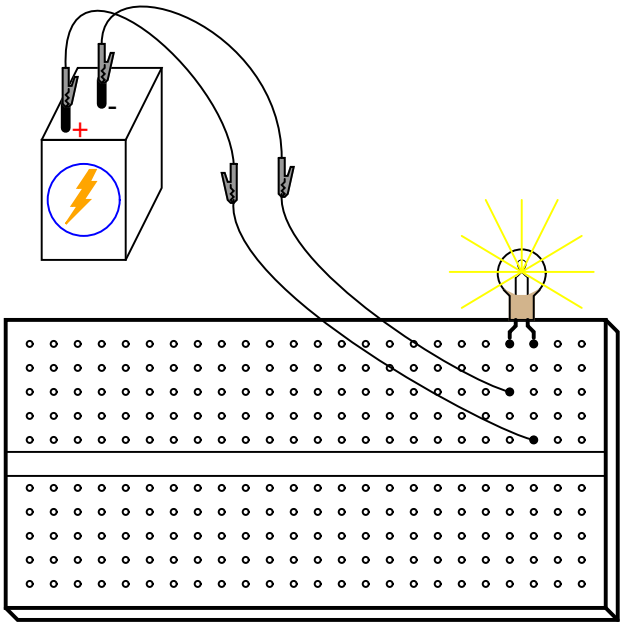


Build the one-battery, one-lamp circuit using jumper wires to connect the battery to the lamp, and verify that the lamp lights up before connecting the meter in series with it. Then, break the circuit open at any point and connect the meter's test probes to the two points of the break to measure current. As usual, if your meter is manually-ranged, begin by selecting the highest range for current, then move the selector switch to lower range positions until the strongest indication is obtained on the meter display without over-ranging it. If the meter indication is "backwards," (left motion on analog needle, or negative reading on a digital display), then reverse the test probe connections and try again. When the ammeter indicates a normal reading (not "backwards"), electrons are entering the black test lead and exiting the red. This is how you determine direction of current using a meter.

For a 6-volt battery and a small lamp, the circuit current will be in the range of *thousandths* of an amp, or *milliamps*. Digital meters often show a small letter "m" in the right-hand side of the display to indicate this metric prefix.

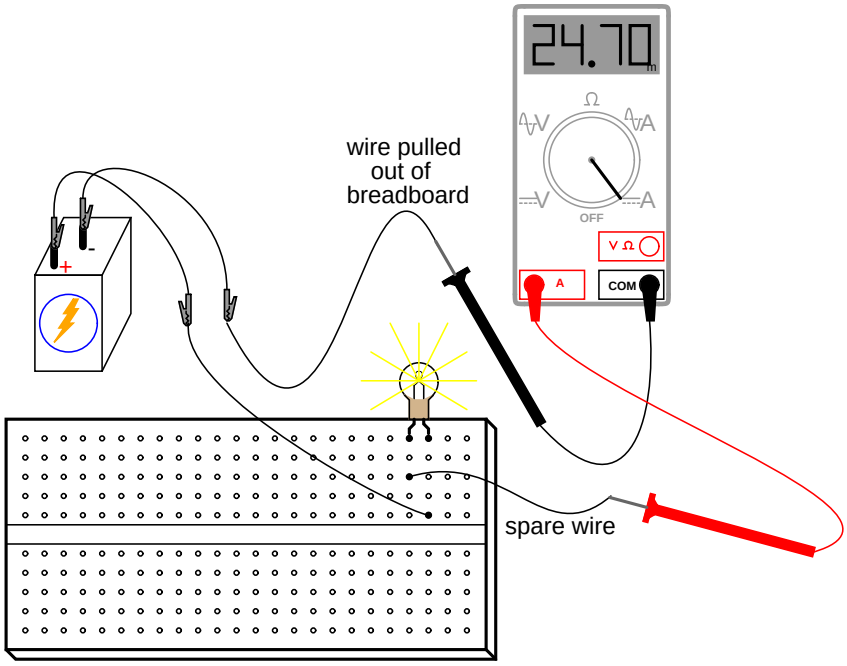
Try breaking the circuit at some other point and inserting the meter there instead. What do you notice about the amount of current measured? Why do you think this is?

Re-construct the circuit on a breadboard like this:



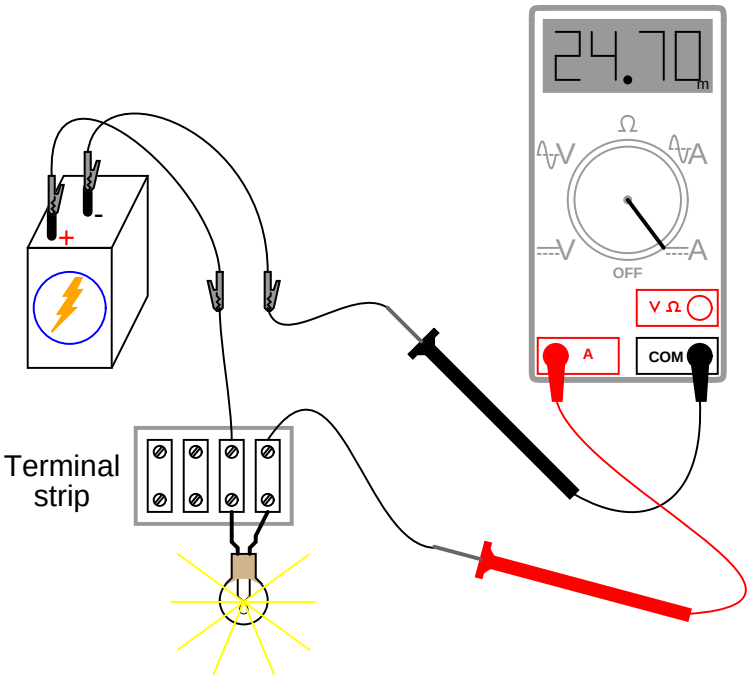
Students often get confused when connecting an ammeter to a breadboard circuit. How can the meter be connected so as to intercept all the circuit's current and not create a short circuit? One easy method that guarantees success is this:

- Identify what wire or component terminal you wish to measure current through.
- Pull that wire or terminal out of the breadboard hole. Leave it hanging in mid-air.
- Insert a spare piece of wire into the hole you just pulled the other wire or terminal out of. Leave the other end of this wire hanging in mid-air.
- Connect the ammeter between the two unconnected wire ends (the two that were hanging in mid-air). You are now *assured* of measuring current through the wire or terminal initially identified.



Again, measure current through different wires in this circuit, following the same connection procedure outlined above. What do you notice about these current measurements? The results in the breadboard circuit should be the same as the results in the free-form (no breadboard) circuit.

Building the same circuit on a terminal strip should also yield similar results:



The current figure of 24.70 milliamps (24.70 mA) shown in the illustrations is an arbitrary quantity, reasonable for a small incandescent lamp. If the current for your circuit is a different value, that is okay, so long as the lamp is functioning when the meter is connected. If the lamp refuses to light when the meter is connected to the circuit, and the meter registers a much greater reading, you probably have a short-circuit condition through the meter. If your lamp refuses to light when the meter is connected in the circuit, and the meter registers zero current, you've probably blown the fuse inside the meter. Check the condition of your meter's fuse as described previously in this section and replace the fuse if necessary.

2.5 Ohm's Law

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Calculator (or pencil and paper for doing arithmetic)
- 6-volt battery
- Assortment of resistors between 1 KΩ and 100 kΩ in value

I'm purposely restricting the resistance values between 1 kΩ and 100 kΩ for the sake of obtaining accurate voltage and current readings with your meter. With very low resistance values, the internal resistance of the ammeter has a significant impact on measurement accuracy. Very high resistance values can cause problems for voltage measurement, the internal resistance of the voltmeter substantially changing circuit resistance when it is connected in parallel with a high-value resistor.

At the recommended resistance values, there will still be a small amount of measurement error due to the "impact" of the meter, but not enough to cause serious disagreement with calculated values.

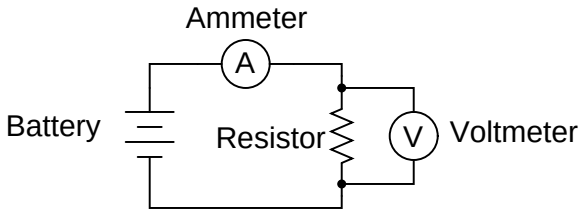
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 2: "Ohm's Law"

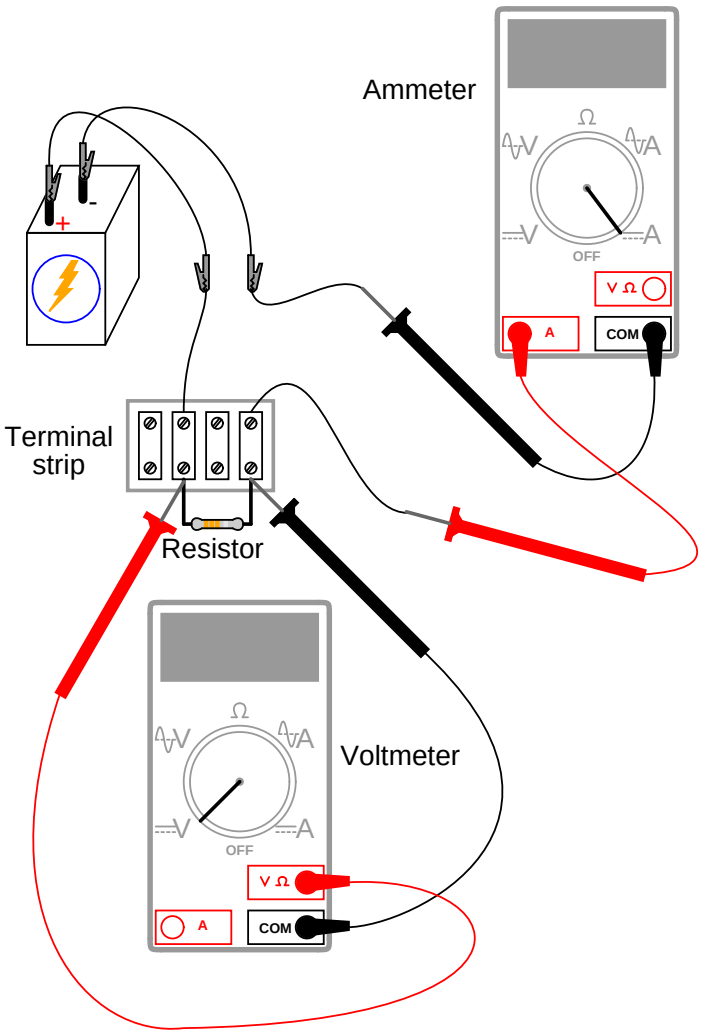
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltmeter use
- Ammeter use
- Ohmmeter use
- Use of Ohm's Law

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Select a resistor from the assortment, and measure its resistance with your multimeter set to the appropriate resistance range. Be sure not to hold the resistor terminals when measuring resistance, or else your hand-to-hand body resistance will influence the measurement! Record this resistance value for future use.

Build a one-battery, one-resistor circuit. A terminal strip is shown in the illustration, but any form of circuit construction is okay. Set your multimeter to the appropriate voltage range and measure voltage across the resistor as it is being powered by the battery. Record this voltage value along with the resistance value previously measured.

Set your multimeter to the highest current range available. Break the circuit and connect the ammeter within that break, so it becomes a part of the circuit, in series with the battery and resistor. Select the best current range: whichever one gives the strongest meter indication

without over-ranging the meter. If your multimeter is autoranging, of course, you need not bother with setting ranges. Record this current value along with the resistance and voltage values previously recorded.

Taking the measured figures for voltage and resistance, use the Ohm's Law equation to calculate circuit current. Compare this calculated figure with the measured figure for circuit current:

Ohm's Law
(solving for current)

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

Where,

E = Voltage in volts

I = Current in amps

R = Resistance in ohms

Taking the measured figures for voltage and current, use the Ohm's Law equation to calculate circuit resistance. Compare this calculated figure with the measured figure for circuit resistance:

Ohm's Law
(solving for resistance)

$$R = \frac{E}{I}$$

Finally, taking the measured figures for resistance and current, use the Ohm's Law equation to calculate circuit voltage. Compare this calculated figure with the measured figure for circuit voltage:

Ohm's Law
(solving for voltage)

$$E = IR$$

There should be close agreement between all measured and all calculated figures. Any differences in respective quantities of voltage, current, or resistance are most likely due to meter inaccuracies. These differences should be rather small, no more than several percent. Some meters, of course, are more accurate than others!

Substitute different resistors in the circuit and re-take all resistance, voltage, and current measurements. Re-calculate these figures and check for agreement with the experimental data (measured quantities). Also note the simple mathematical relationship between changes in resistor value and changes in circuit current. Voltage should remain approximately the same for any resistor size inserted into the circuit, because it is the nature of a battery to maintain voltage at a constant level.

2.6 Nonlinear resistance

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Calculator (or pencil and paper for doing arithmetic)
- 6-volt battery
- Low-voltage incandescent lamp (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1130 or equivalent)

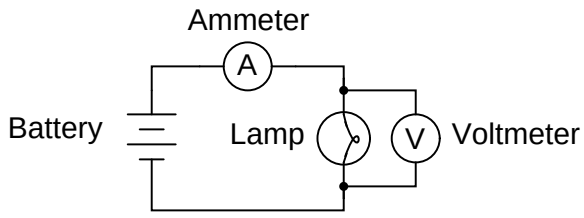
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 2: ”Ohm’s Law”

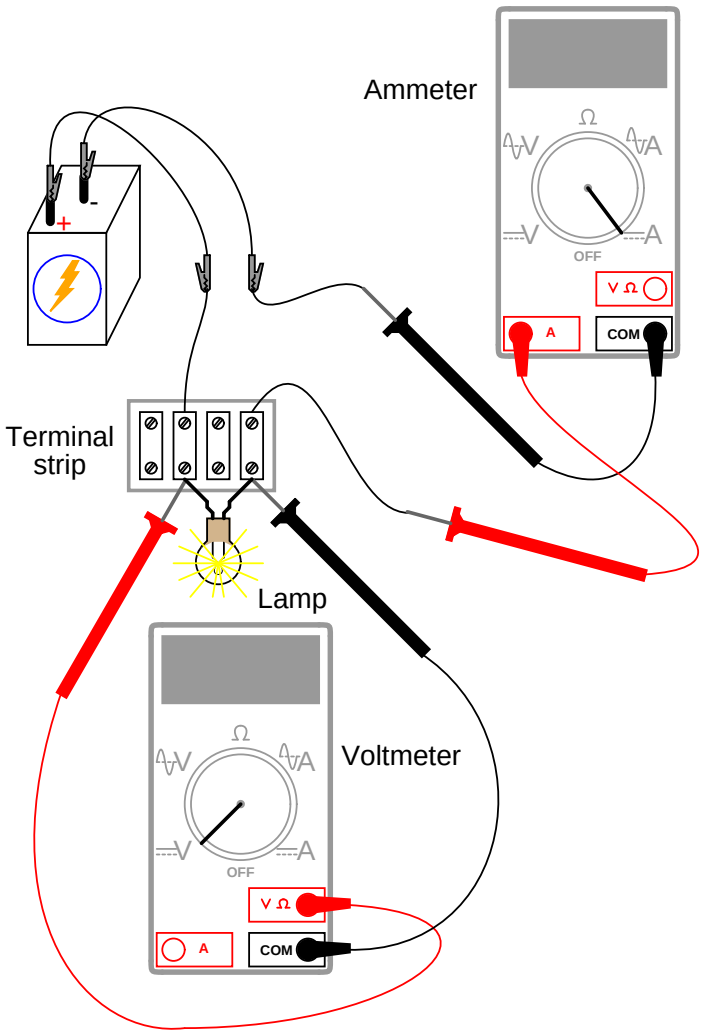
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltmeter use
- Ammeter use
- Ohmmeter use
- Use of Ohm’s Law
- Realization that some resistances are unstable!
- Scientific method

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Measure the resistance of the lamp with your multimeter. This resistance figure is due to the thin metal "filament" inside the lamp. It has substantially more resistance than a jumper wire, but less than any of the resistors from the last experiment. Record this resistance value for future use.

Build a one-battery, one-lamp circuit. Set your multimeter to the appropriate voltage range and measure voltage across the lamp as it is energized (lit). Record this voltage value along with the resistance value previously measured.

Set your multimeter to the highest current range available. Break the circuit and connect the ammeter within that break, so it becomes a part of the circuit, in series with the battery and lamp. Select the best current range: whichever one gives the strongest meter indication without over-ranging the meter. If your multimeter is autoranging, of course, you need not

bother with setting ranges. Record this current value along with the resistance and voltage values previously recorded.

Taking the measured figures for voltage and resistance, use the Ohm's Law equation to calculate circuit current. Compare this calculated figure with the measured figure for circuit current:

Ohm's Law
(solving for current)

$$I = \frac{E}{R}$$

Where,

E = Voltage in volts

I = Current in amps

R = Resistance in ohms

What you should find is a marked difference between measured current and calculated current: the calculated figure is *much* greater. Why is this?

To make things more interesting, try measuring the lamp's resistance again, this time using a different model of meter. You will need to disconnect the lamp from the battery circuit in order to obtain a resistance reading, because voltages outside of the meter interfere with resistance measurement. This is a general rule that should be remembered: measure resistance only on an *unpowered* component!

Using a different ohmmeter, the lamp will probably register as a different value of resistance. Usually, analog meters give higher lamp resistance readings than digital meters.

This behavior is very different from that of the resistors in the last experiment. Why? What factor(s) might influence the resistance of the lamp filament, and how might those factors be different between conditions of lit and unlit, or between resistance measurements taken with different types of meters?

This problem is a good test case for the application of scientific method. Once you've thought of a possible reason for the lamp's resistance changing between lit and unlit conditions, try to duplicate that cause by some other means. For example, if you think the lamp resistance might change as it is exposed to light (its own light, when lit), and that this accounts for the difference between the measured and calculated circuit currents, try exposing the lamp to an external source of light while measuring its resistance. If you measure substantial resistance change as a result of light exposure, then your hypothesis has some evidential support. If not, then your hypothesis has been falsified, and another cause must be responsible for the change in circuit current.

2.7 Power dissipation

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Calculator (or pencil and paper for doing arithmetic)
- 6 volt battery
- Two 1/4 watt resistors: 10 Ω and 330 Ω.
- Small thermometer

The resistor values need not be exact, but within five percent of the figures specified (+/- 0.5 Ω for the 10 Ω resistor; +/- 16.5 Ω for the 330 Ω resistor). Color codes for 5% tolerance 10 Ω and 330 Ω resistors are as follows: Brown, Black, Black, Gold (10, +/- 5%), and Orange, Orange, Brown, Gold (330, +/- 5%).

Do not use any battery size other than 6 volts for this experiment.

The thermometer should be as small as possible, to facilitate rapid detection of heat produced by the resistor. I recommend a medical thermometer, the type used to take body temperature.

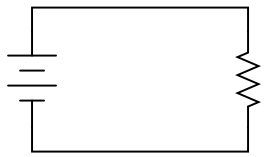
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 2: "Ohm's Law"

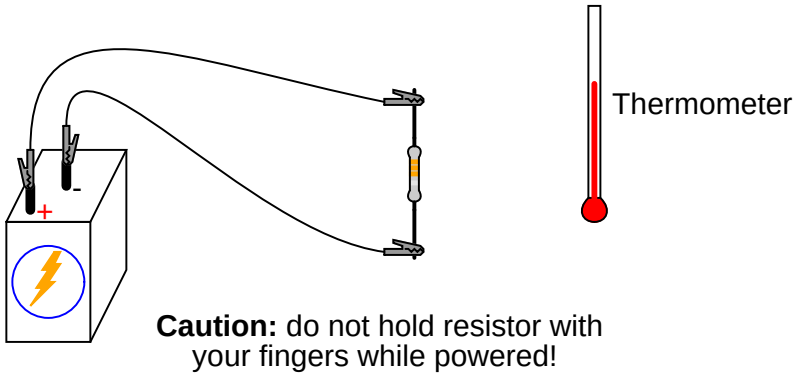
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltmeter use
- Ammeter use
- Ohmmeter use
- Use of Joule's Law
- Importance of component power ratings
- Significance of electrically common points

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



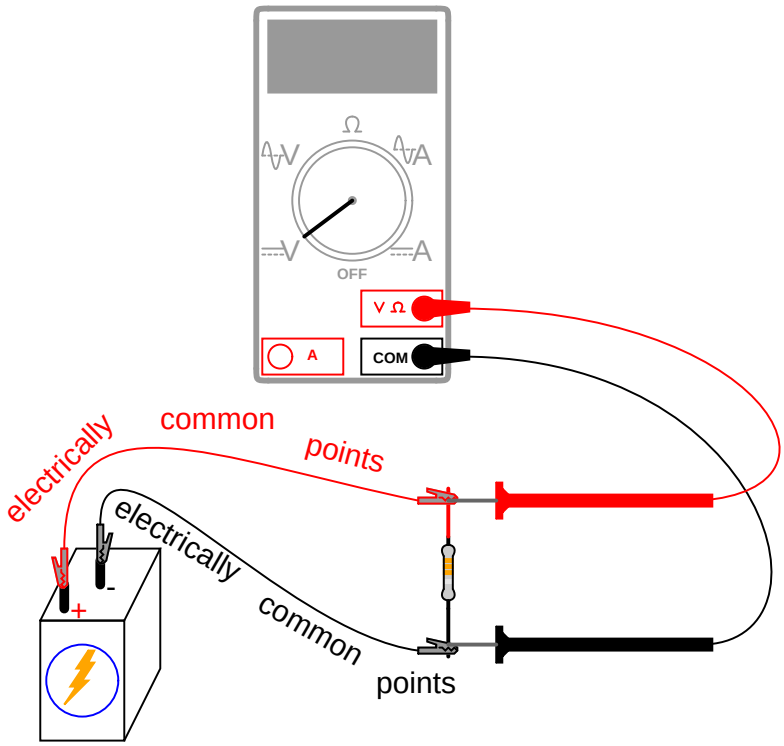
INSTRUCTIONS

Measure each resistor's resistance with your ohmmeter, noting the exact values on a piece of paper for later reference.

Connect the 330 Ω resistor to the 6 volt battery using a pair of jumper wires as shown in the illustration. Connect the jumper wires to the resistor terminals *before* connecting the other ends to the battery. This will ensure your fingers are not touching the resistor when battery power is applied.

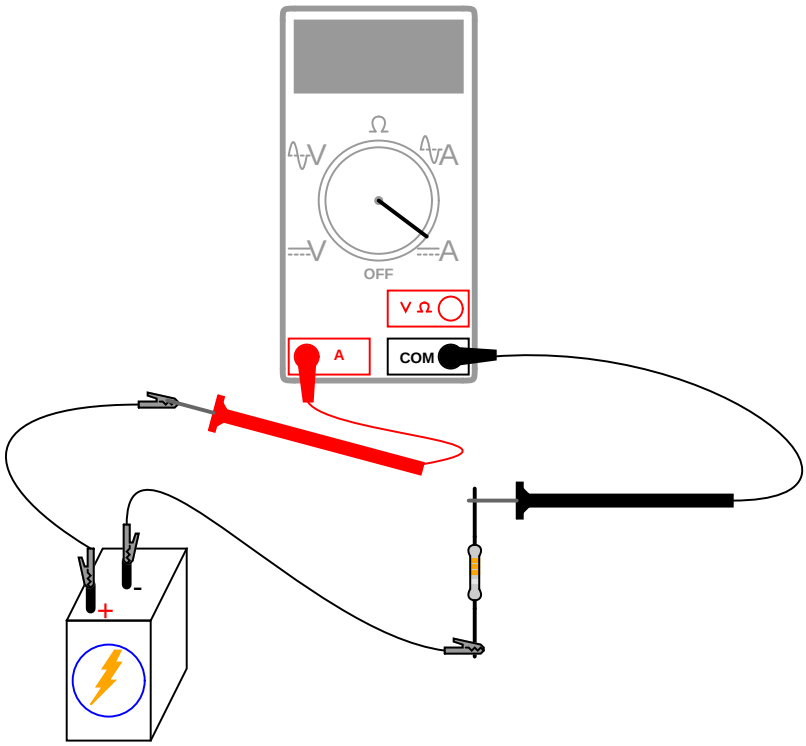
You might be wondering why I advise no bodily contact with the powered resistor. This is because it will become hot when powered by the battery. You will use the thermometer to measure the temperature of each resistor when powered.

With the 330 Ω resistor connected to the battery, measure voltage with a voltmeter. In measuring voltage, there is more than one way to obtain a proper reading. Voltage may be measured directly across the battery, or directly across the resistor. Battery voltage is the same as resistor voltage in this circuit, since those two components share the same set of electrically common points: one side of the resistor is directly connected to one side of the battery, and the other side of the resistor is directly connected to the other side of the battery.



All points of contact along the upper wire in the illustration (colored red) are electrically common to each other. All points of contact along the lower wire (colored black) are likewise electrically common to each other. Voltage measured between any point on the upper wire and any point on the lower wire should be the same. Voltage measured *between any two common points*, however, should be zero.

Using an ammeter, measure current through the circuit. Again, there is no one "correct" way to measure current, so long as the ammeter is placed *within the flow-path* of electrons through the resistor and not across a source of voltage. To do this, make a break in the circuit, and place the ammeter *within* that break: connect the two test probes to the two wire or terminal ends left open from the break. One viable option is shown in the following illustration:



Now that you've measured and recorded resistor resistance, circuit voltage, and circuit current, you are ready to calculate *power* dissipation. Whereas voltage is the measure of electrical "push" motivating electrons to move through a circuit, and current is the measure of electron flow rate, power is the measure of *work-rate*: how fast work is being done in the circuit. It takes a certain amount of work to push electrons through a resistance, and power is a description of how *rapidly* that work is taking place. In mathematical equations, power is symbolized by the letter "P" and measured in the unit of the Watt (W).

Power may be calculated by any one of three equations – collectively referred to as Joule's Law – given any two out of three quantities of voltage, current, and resistance:

Joule's Law
(solving for power)

$$P = IE$$

$$P = I^2R$$

$$P = \frac{E^2}{R}$$

Try calculating power in this circuit, using the three measured values of voltage, current, and resistance. Any way you calculate it, the power dissipation figure should be roughly the same. Assuming a battery with 6.000 volts and a resistor of exactly 330 Ω, the power dissi-

pation will be 0.1090909 watts, or 109.0909 milli-watts (mW), to use a metric prefix. Since the resistor has a power rating of 1/4 watt (0.25 watts, or 250 mW), it is more than capable of sustaining this level of power dissipation. Because the actual power level is almost half the rated power, the resistor should become noticeably warm but it should not *over*heat. Touch the thermometer end to the middle of the resistor and see how warm it gets.

The power rating of any electrical component does not tell us how much power it *will* dissipate, but simply how much power it *may* dissipate without sustaining damage. If the actual amount of dissipated power exceeds a component's power rating, that component will increase temperature to the point of damage.

To illustrate, disconnect the 330 Ω resistor and replace it with the 10 Ω resistor. Again, avoid touching the resistor once the circuit is complete, as it will heat up rapidly. The safest way to do this is to disconnect one jumper wire from a battery terminal, then disconnect the 330 Ω resistor from the two alligator clips, then connect the 10 Ω resistor between the two clips, and finally reconnect the jumper wire back to the battery terminal.

Caution: keep the 10 Ω resistor away from any flammable materials when it is powered by the battery!

You may not have enough time to take voltage and current measurements before the resistor begins to smoke. At the first sign of distress, disconnect one of the jumper wires from a battery terminal to interrupt circuit current, and give the resistor a few moments to cool down. With power still disconnected, measure the resistor's resistance with an ohmmeter and note any substantial deviation from its original value. If the resistor still measures within +/- 5% of its advertised value (between 9.5 and 10.5 Ω), re-connect the jumper wire and let it smoke a bit more.

What trend do you notice with the resistor's value as it is damaged more and more by overpowering? It is typical of resistors to fail with a greater-than-normal resistance when overheated. This is often a self-protective mode of failure, as an increased resistance results in less current and (generally) less power dissipation, cooling it down again. However, the resistor's normal resistance value will not return if sufficiently damaged.

Performing some Joule's Law calculations for resistor power again, we find that a 10 Ω resistor connected to a 6 volt battery dissipates about 3.6 watts of power, about 14.4 *times* its rated power dissipation. Little wonder it smokes so quickly after connection to the battery!

2.8 Circuit with a switch

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6-volt battery
- Low-voltage incandescent lamp (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1130 or equivalent)
- Long lengths of wire, 22-gauge or larger
- Household light switch (these are readily available at any hardware store)

Household light switches are a bargain for students of basic electricity. They are readily available, very inexpensive, and almost impossible to damage with battery power. Do not get ”dimmer” switches, just the simple on-off ”toggle” variety used for ordinary household wall-mounted light controls.

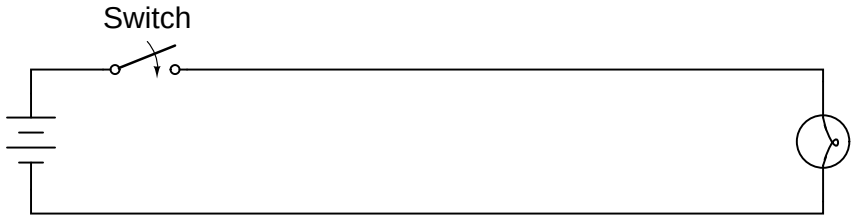
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 1: ”Basic Concepts of Electricity”

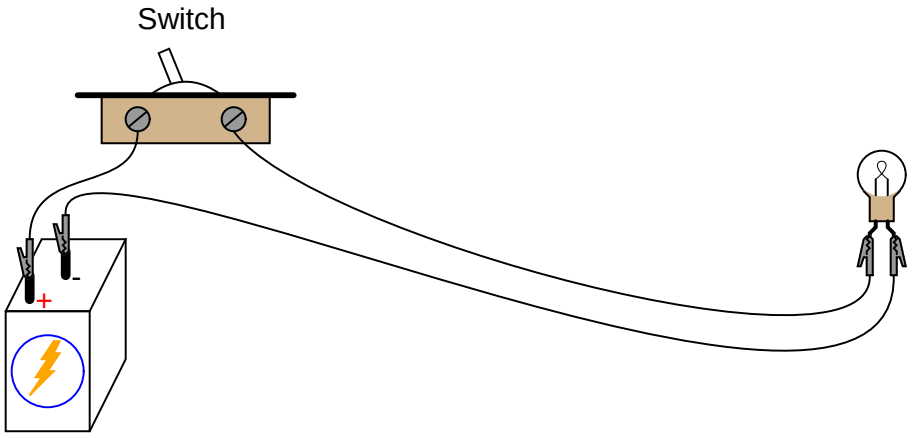
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Switch behavior
- Using an ohmmeter to check switch action

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Build a one-battery, one-switch, one-lamp circuit as shown in the schematic diagram and in the illustration. This circuit is most impressive when the wires are *long*, as it shows how the switch is able to control circuit current no matter how physically large the circuit may be.

Measure voltage across the battery, across the switch (measure from one screw terminal to another with the voltmeter), and across the lamp with the switch in both positions. When the switch is turned off, it is said to be *open*, and the lamp will go out just the same as if a wire were pulled loose from a terminal. As before, any break in the circuit *at any location* causes the lamp to immediately de-energize (darken).

2.9 Electromagnetism

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6-volt battery
- Magnetic compass
- Small permanent magnet
- Spool of 28-gauge magnet wire
- Large bolt, nail, or steel rod
- Electrical tape

Magnet wire is a term for thin-gauge copper wire with enamel insulation instead of rubber or plastic insulation. Its small size and very thin insulation allow for many "turns" to be wound in a compact coil. You will need enough magnet wire to wrap hundreds of turns around the bolt, nail, or other rod-shaped steel form.

Be sure to select a bolt, nail, or rod that is *magnetic*. Stainless steel, for example, is non-magnetic and will not function for the purpose of an electromagnet coil! The ideal material for this experiment is *soft iron*, but any commonly available steel will suffice.

CROSS-REFERENCES

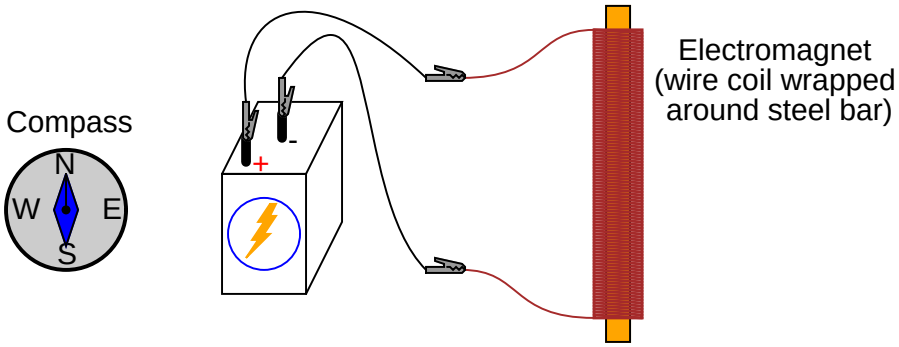
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 14: "Magnetism and Electromagnetism"

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Application of the left-hand rule
- Electromagnet construction

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Wrap a single layer of electrical tape around the steel bar (or bolt, or mail) to protect the wire from abrasion. Proceed to wrap several hundred turns of wire around the steel bar, making the coil as even as possible. It is okay to overlap wire, and it is okay to wrap in the same style that a fishing reel wraps line around the spool. The only rule you *must* follow is that all turns must be wrapped around the bar in the same direction (no reversing from clockwise to counter-clockwise!). I find that a drill press works as a great tool for coil winding: clamp the rod in the drill's chuck as if it were a drill bit, then turn the drill motor on at a slow speed and let it do the wrapping! This allows you to feed wire onto the rod in a very steady, even manner.

After you've wrapped several hundred turns of wire around the rod, wrap a layer or two of electrical tape over the wire coil to secure the wire in place. Scrape the enamel insulation off the ends of the coil wires for connection to jumper leads, then connect the coil to a battery.

When electric current goes through the coil, it will produce a strong magnetic field: one "pole" at each end of the rod. This phenomenon is known as *electromagnetism*. The magnetic compass is used to identify the "North" and "South" poles of the electromagnet.

With the electromagnet energized (connected to the battery), place a permanent magnet near one pole and note whether there is an attractive or repulsive force. Reverse the orientation of the permanent magnet and note the difference in force.

Electromagnetism has many applications, including relays, electric motors, solenoids, doorbells, buzzers, computer printer mechanisms, and magnetic media "write" heads (tape recorders, disk drives).

You might notice a significant spark whenever the battery is disconnected from the electromagnet coil: much greater than the spark produced if the battery is simply short-circuited. This spark is the result of a high-voltage surge created whenever current is suddenly interrupted through the coil. The effect is known as *inductive "kickback"* and is capable of delivering a small but harmless electric shock! To avoid receiving this shock, do not place your body across the break in the circuit when de-energizing! Use one hand at a time when un-powering the coil and you'll be perfectly safe. This phenomenon will be explored in greater detail in the next chapter (DC Circuits).

2.10 Electromagnetic induction

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Electromagnet from previous experiment
- Permanent magnet

See previous experiment for instructions on electromagnet construction.

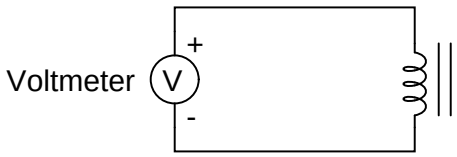
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 14: ”Magnetism and Electromagnetism”

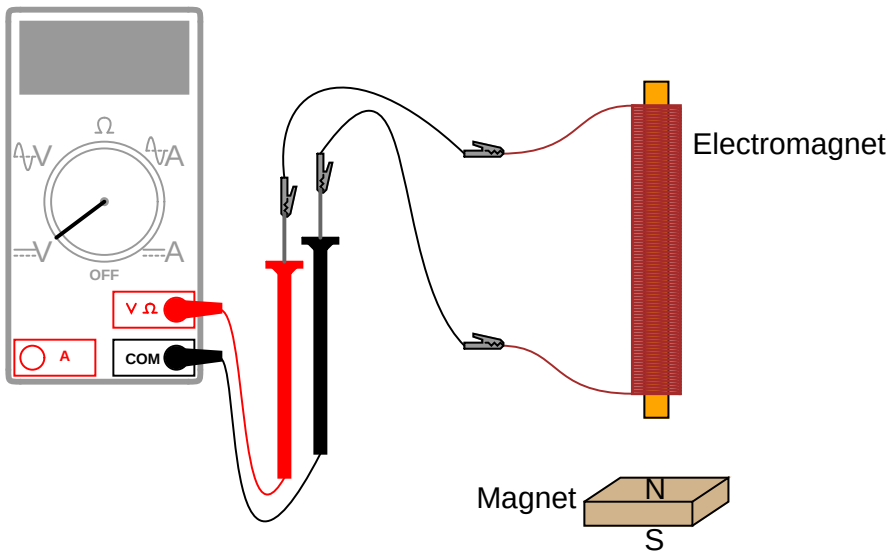
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Relationship between magnetic field strength and induced voltage

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Electromagnetic induction is the complementary phenomenon to electromagnetism. Instead of producing a magnetic field from electricity, we produce electricity from a magnetic field. There is one important difference, though: whereas electromagnetism produces a steady magnetic field from a steady electric current, electromagnetic induction requires *motion* between the magnet and the coil to produce a voltage.

Connect the multimeter to the coil, and set it to the most sensitive DC voltage range available. Move the magnet *slowly* to and from one end of the electromagnet, noting the polarity and magnitude of the induced voltage. Experiment with moving the magnet, and discover for yourself what factor(s) determine the amount of voltage induced. Try the other end of the coil and compare results. Try the other end of the permanent magnet and compare.

If using an analog multimeter, be sure to use long jumper wires and locate the meter far away from the coil, as the magnetic field from the permanent magnet may affect the meter's operation and produce false readings. Digital meters are unaffected by magnetic fields.

Chapter 3

DC CIRCUITS

Contents

3.1 Introduction

”DC” stands for **D**irect **C**urrent, which can refer to either voltage or current in a constant polarity or direction, respectively. These experiments are designed to introduce you to several important concepts of electricity related to DC circuits.

3.2 Series batteries

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6-volt batteries
- One 9-volt battery

Actually, any size batteries will suffice for this experiment, but it is recommended to have at least two different voltages available to make it more interesting.

CROSS-REFERENCES

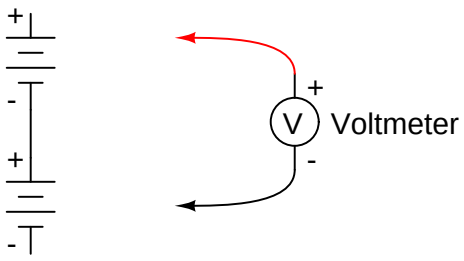
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 5: ”Series and Parallel Circuits”

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 11: ”Batteries and Power Systems”

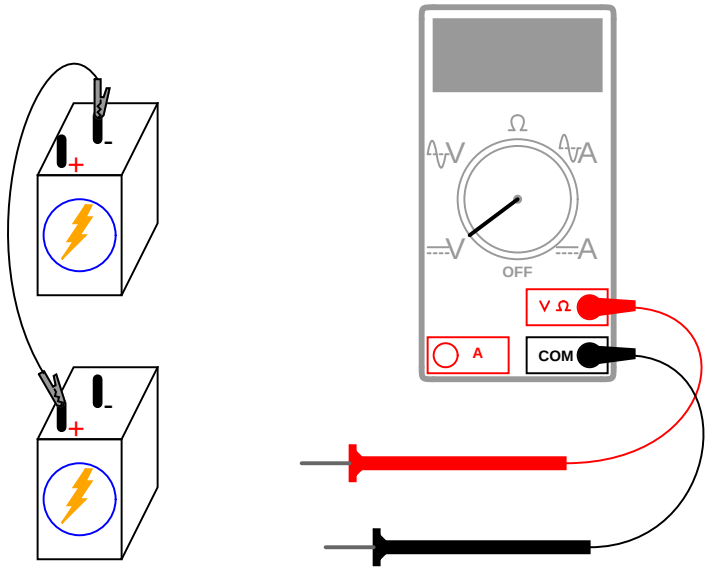
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to connect batteries to obtain different voltage levels

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

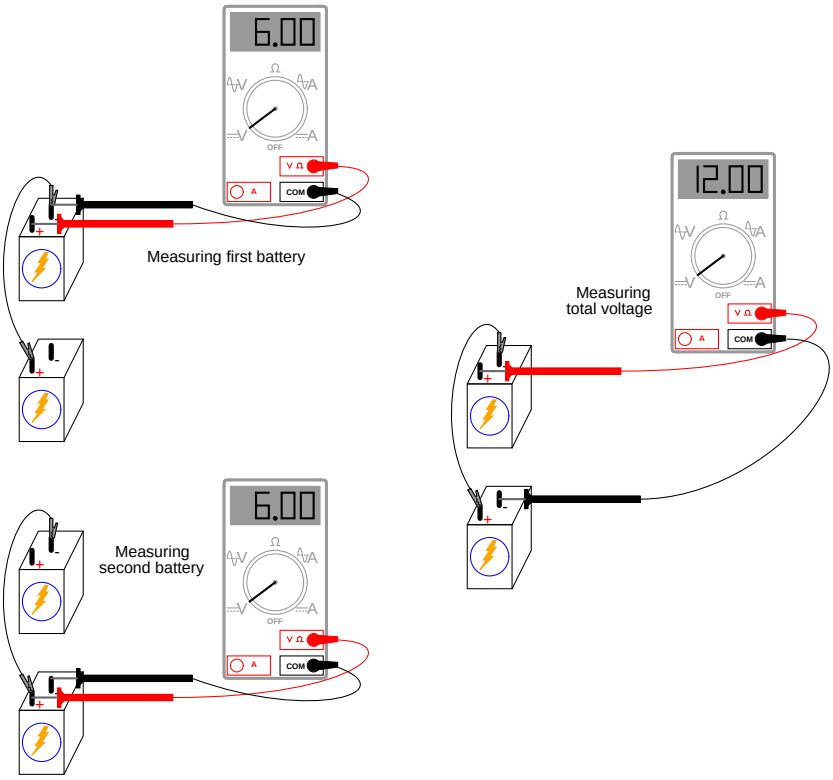


ILLUSTRATION

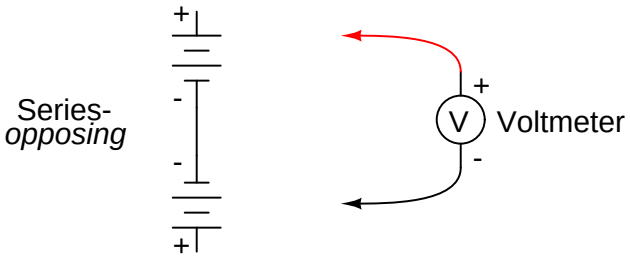


INSTRUCTIONS

Connecting components in *series* means to connect them in-line with each other, so that there is but a single path for electrons to flow through them all. If you connect batteries so that the positive of one connects to the negative of the other, you will find that their respective voltages add. Measure the voltage across each battery individually as they are connected, then measure the total voltage across them both, like this:



Try connecting batteries of different sizes in series with each other, for instance a 6-volt battery with a 9-volt battery. What is the total voltage in this case? Try reversing the terminal connections of just one of these batteries, so that they are opposing each other like this:



How does the total voltage compare in this situation to the previous one with both batteries "aiding?" Note the polarity of the total voltage as indicated by the voltmeter indication and test probe orientation. Remember, if the meter's digital indication is a positive number, the red probe is positive (+) and the black probe negative (-); if the indication is a negative number, the polarity is "backward" (red=negative, black=positive). Analog meters simply will not read properly if reverse-connected, because the needle tries to move the wrong direction (left instead of right). Can you predict what the overall voltage polarity will be, knowing the polarities of the individual batteries and their respective strengths?

3.3 Parallel batteries

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Four 6-volt batteries
- 12-volt light bulb, 25 or 50 watt
- Lamp socket

High-wattage 12-volt lamps may be purchased from recreational vehicle (RV) and boating supply stores. Common sizes are 25 watt and 50 watt. This lamp will be used as a ”heavy” load for your batteries (*heavy* load = one that draws substantial current).

A regular household (120 volt) lamp socket will work just fine for these low-voltage ”RV” lamps.

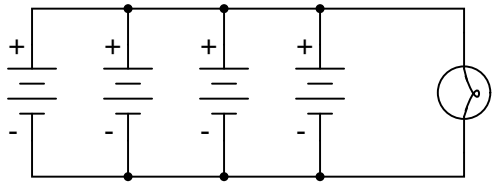
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 5: ”Series and Parallel Circuits”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 11: ”Batteries and Power Systems”

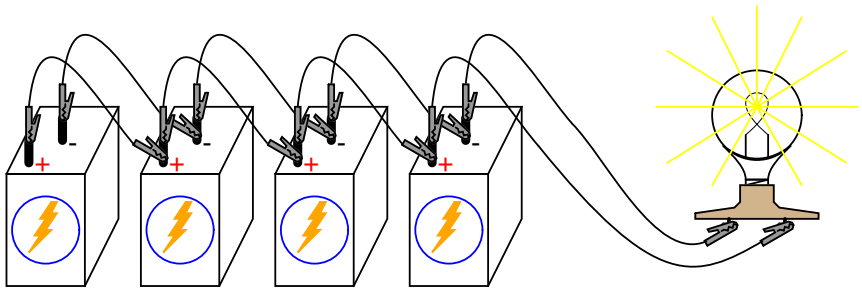
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltage source regulation
- Boosting current capacity through parallel connections

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

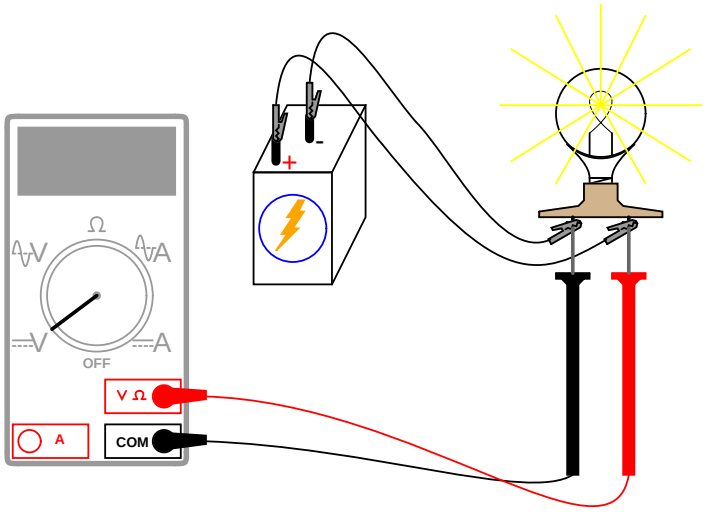


ILLUSTRATION



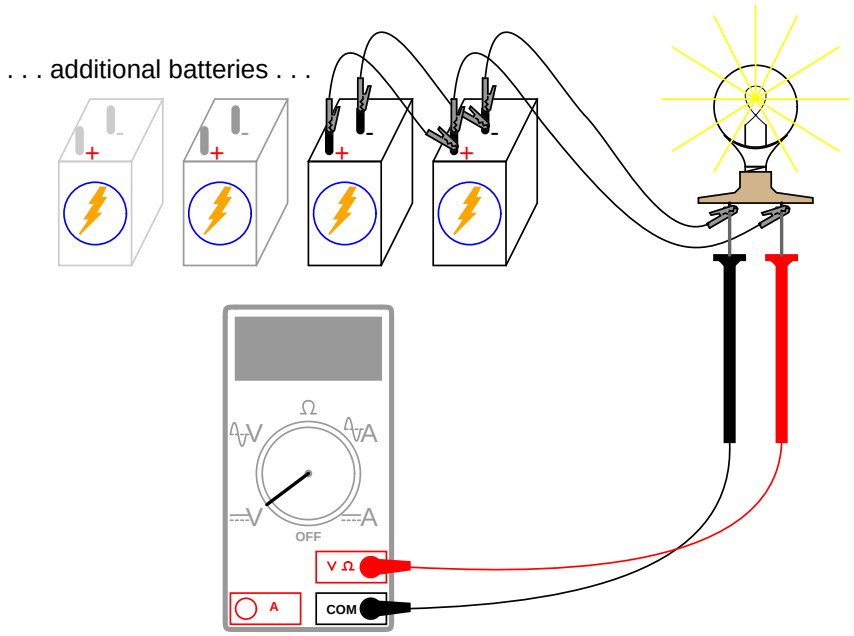
INSTRUCTIONS

Begin this experiment by connecting one 6-volt battery to the lamp. The lamp, designed to operate on 12 volts, should glow dimly when powered by the 6-volt battery. Use your voltmeter to read voltage across the lamp like this:



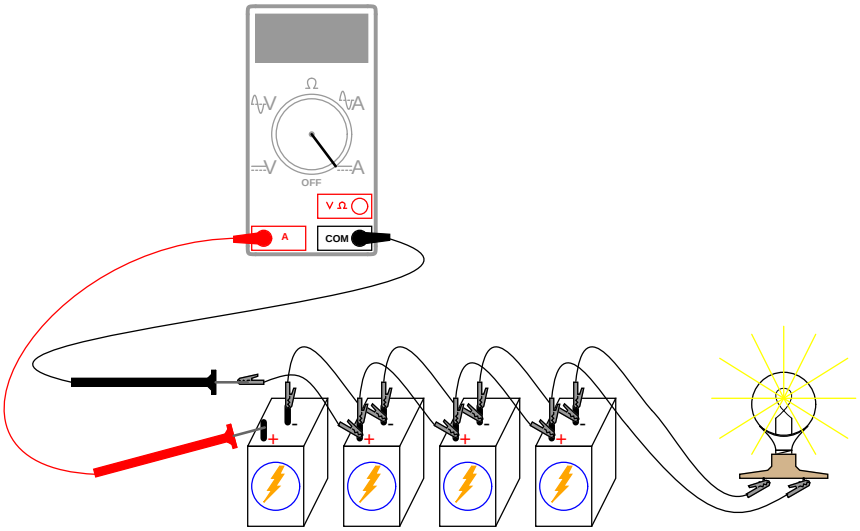
The voltmeter should register a voltage lower than the usual voltage of the battery. If you use your voltmeter to read the voltage directly at the battery terminals, you will measure a low voltage there as well. Why is this? The large current drawn by the high-power lamp causes the voltage at the battery terminals to ”sag” or ”droop,” due to voltage dropped across resistance internal to the battery.

We may overcome this problem by connecting batteries in *parallel* with each other, so that each battery only has to supply a fraction of the total current demanded by the lamp. Parallel connections involve making all the positive (+) battery terminals electrically common to each other by connection through jumper wires, and all negative (-) terminals common to each other as well. Add one battery at a time in parallel, noting the lamp voltage with the addition of each new, parallel-connected battery:

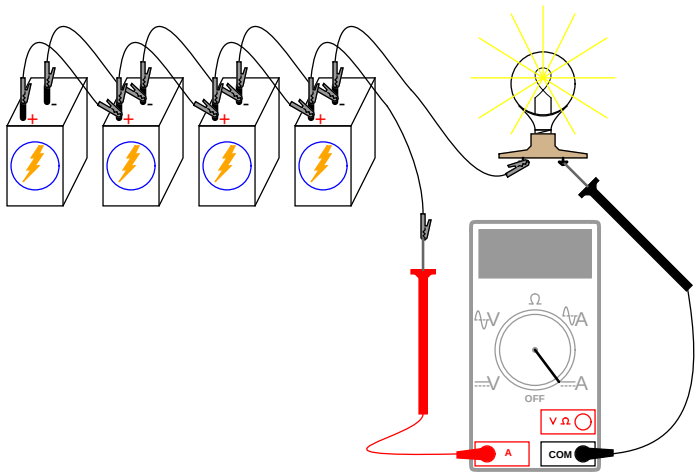


There should also be a noticeable difference in light intensity as the voltage "sag" is improved.

Try measuring the current of one battery and comparing it to the total current (light bulb current). Shown here is the easiest way to measure single-battery current:

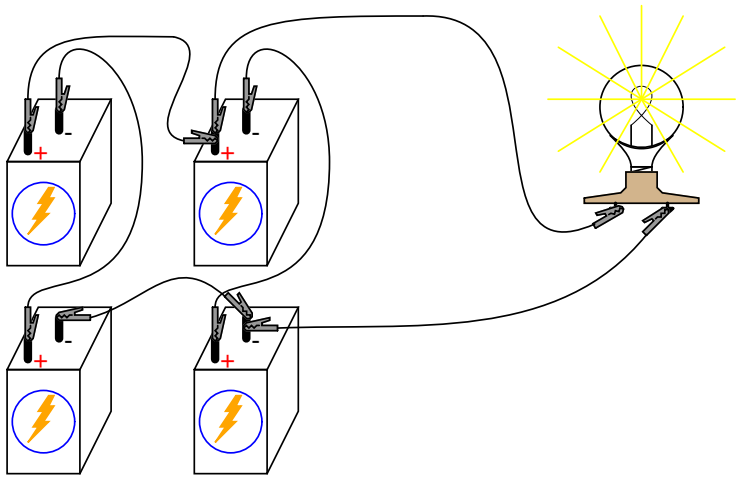


By breaking the circuit for just one battery, and inserting our ammeter within that break, we intercept the current of that one battery and are therefore able to measure it. Measuring total current involves a similar procedure: make a break somewhere in the path that total current must take, then insert the ammeter within than break:



Note the difference in current between the single-battery and total measurements.

To obtain maximum brightness from the light bulb, a *series-parallel* connection is required. Two 6-volt batteries connected series-aiding will provide 12 volts. Connecting two of these series-connected battery pairs in parallel improves their current-sourcing ability for minimum voltage sag:



3.4 Voltage divider

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Calculator (or pencil and paper for doing arithmetic)
- 6-volt battery
- Assortment of resistors between 1 KΩ and 100 kΩ in value

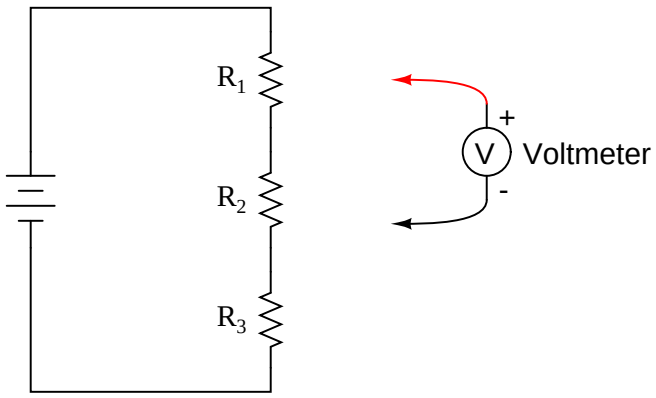
I'm purposely restricting the resistance values between 1 kΩ and 100 kΩ for the sake of obtaining accurate voltage and current readings with your meter. With very low resistance values, the internal resistance of the ammeter has a significant impact on measurement accuracy. Very high resistance values may cause problems for voltage measurement, the internal resistance of the voltmeter substantially changing circuit resistance when it is connected in parallel with a high-value resistor.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 6: "Divider Circuits and Kirchhoff's Laws"

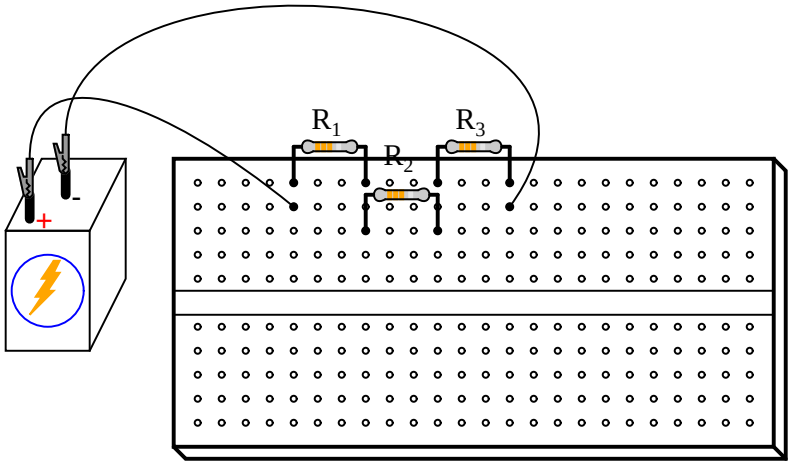
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltmeter use
- Ammeter use
- Ohmmeter use
- Use of Ohm's Law
- Use of Kirchhoff's Voltage Law ("KVL")
- Voltage divider design

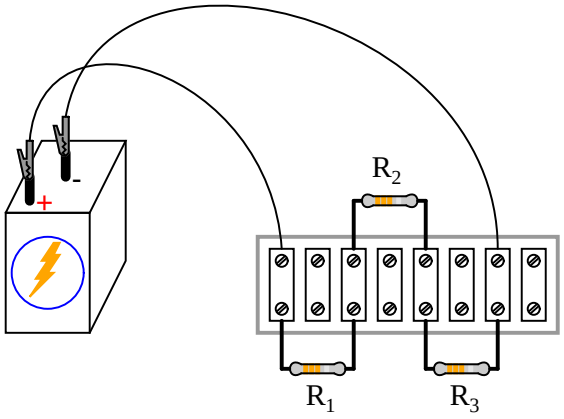
SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



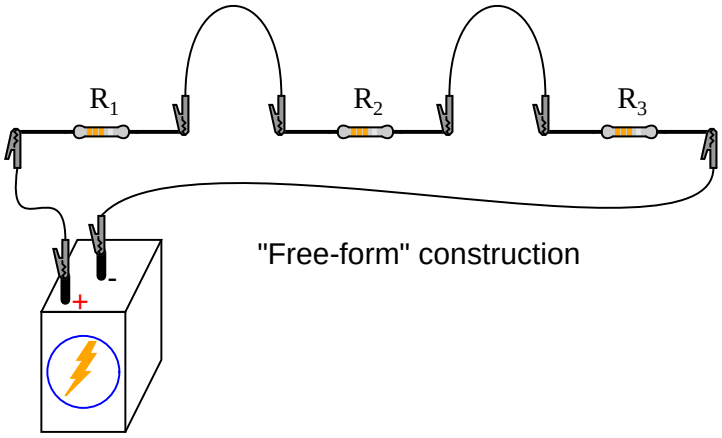
ILLUSTRATION



Breadboard



Terminal strip



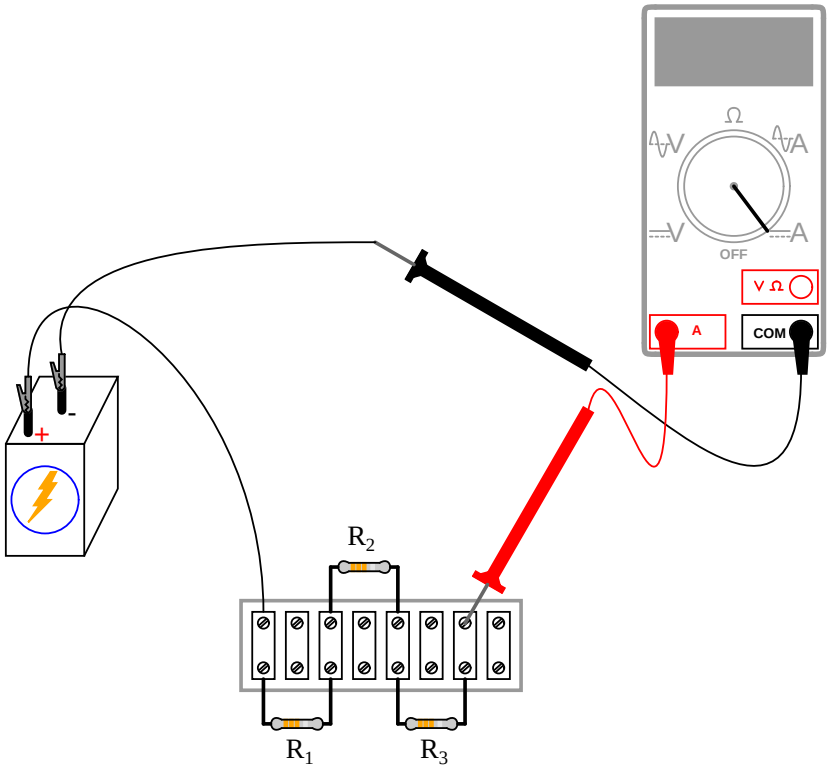
INSTRUCTIONS

Shown here are three different methods of circuit construction: on a breadboard, on a terminal strip, and ”free-form.” Try building the same circuit each way to familiarize yourself with the different construction techniques and their respective merits. The ”free-form” method – where all components are connected together with ”alligator-” style jumper wires – is the least professional, but appropriate for a simple experiment such as this. Breadboard construction is versatile and allows for high component density (many parts in a small space), but is quite temporary. Terminal strips offer a much more permanent form of construction at the cost of low component density.

Select three resistors from your resistor assortment and measure the resistance of each one with an ohmmeter. Note these resistance values with pen and paper, for reference in your circuit calculations.

Connect the three resistors in series, and to the 6-volt battery, as shown in the illustrations. Measure battery voltage with a voltmeter after the resistors have been connected to it, noting this voltage figure on paper as well. It is advisable to measure battery voltage while its powering the resistor circuit because this voltage may differ slightly from a no-load condition. We saw this effect exaggerated in the ”parallel battery” experiment while powering a high-wattage lamp: battery voltage tends to ”sag” or ”droop” under load. Although this three-resistor circuit should not present a heavy enough load (not enough current drawn) to cause significant voltage ”sag,” measuring battery voltage under load is a good scientific practice because it provides more realistic data.

Use Ohm’s Law (I=E/R) to calculate circuit current, then verify this calculated value by measuring current with an ammeter like this (”terminal strip” version of the circuit shown as an arbitrary choice in construction method):



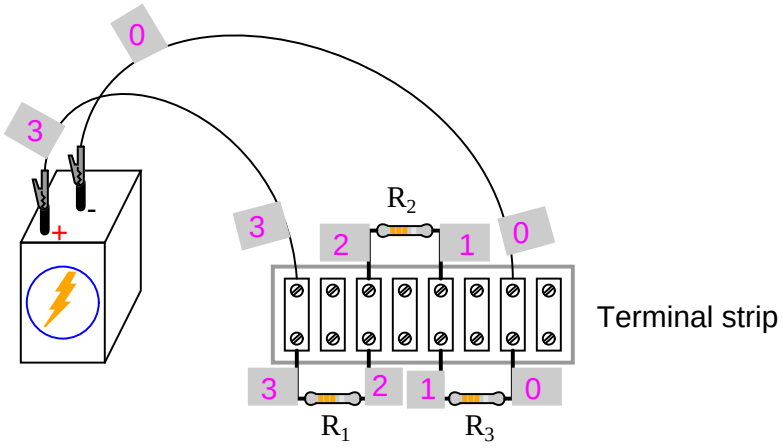
If your resistor values are indeed between 1 kΩ and 100 kΩ, and the battery voltage approximately 6 volts, the current should be a very small value, in the milliamp (mA) or microamp (μA) range. When you measure current with a digital meter, the meter may show the appropriate metric prefix symbol (m or μ) in some corner of the display. These metric prefix telltales are easy to overlook when reading the display of a digital meter, so pay close attention!

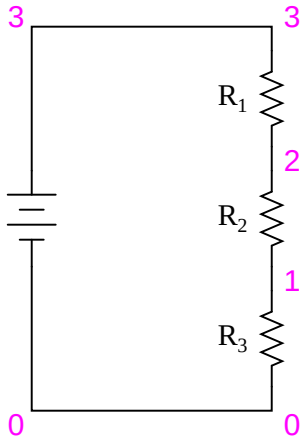
The measured value of current should agree closely with your Ohm's Law calculation. Now, take that calculated value for current and multiply it by the respective resistances of each resistor to predict their voltage drops (E=IR). Switch you multimeter to the "voltage" mode and measure the voltage dropped across each resistor, verifying the accuracy of your predictions. Again, there should be close agreement between the calculated and measured voltage figures.

Each resistor voltage drop will be some fraction or percentage of the total voltage, hence the name *voltage divider* given to this circuit. This fractional value is determined by the resistance of the particular resistor and the total resistance. If a resistor drops 50% of the total battery voltage in a voltage divider circuit, that proportion of 50% will remain the same as long as the resistor values are not altered. So, if the total voltage is 6 volts, the voltage across that resistor will be 50% of 6, or 3 volts. If the total voltage is 20 volts, that resistor will drop 10 volts, or 50% of 20 volts.

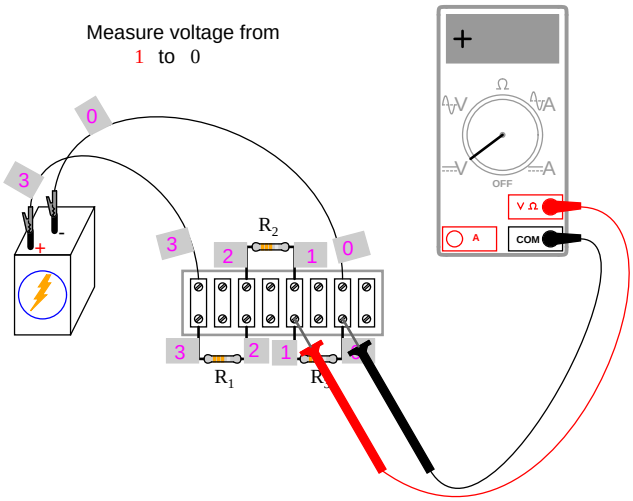
The next part of this experiment is a validation of Kirchhoff's Voltage Law. For this, you need to identify each unique point in the circuit with a number. Points that are electrically common (directly connected to each other with insignificant resistance between) must bear the same number. An example using the numbers 0 through 3 is shown here in both illustrative

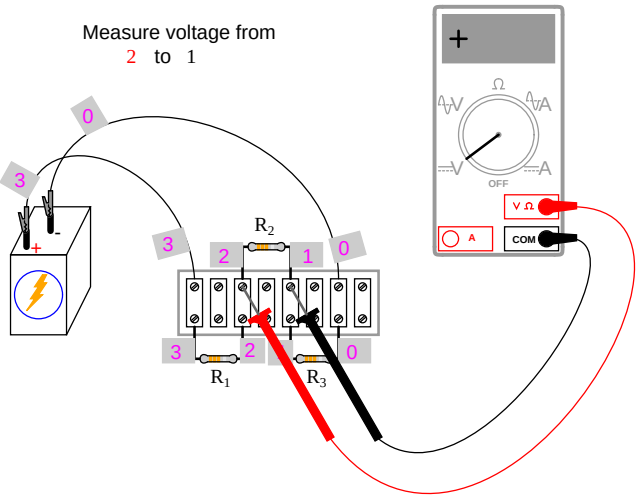
and schematic form. In the illustration, I show how points in the circuit may be labeled with small pieces of tape, numbers written on the tape:

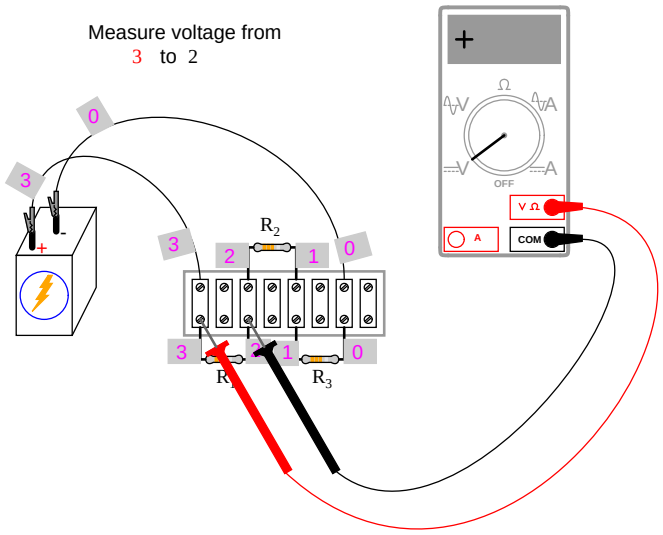


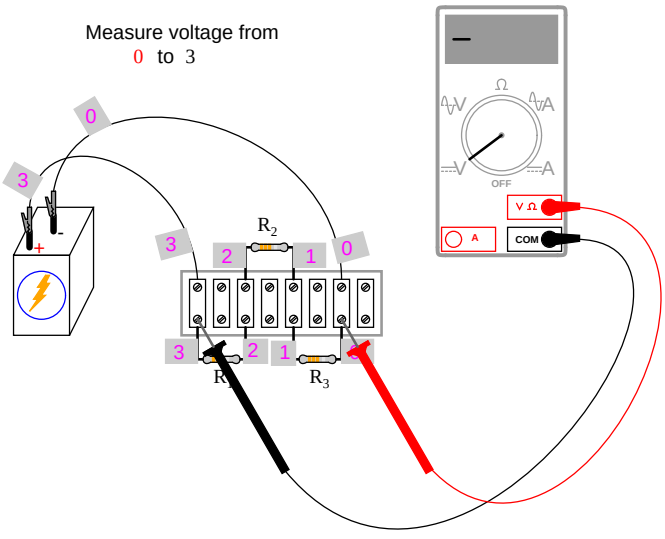


Using a *digital* voltmeter (this is important!), measure voltage drops around the loop formed by the points 0-1-2-3-0. Write on paper each of these voltages, along with its respective sign as indicated by the meter. In other words, if the voltmeter registers a negative voltage such as -1.325 volts, you should write that figure as a negative number. Do *not* reverse the meter probe connections with the circuit to make the number read "correctly." Mathematical sign is very significant in this phase of the experiment! Here is a sequence of illustrations showing how to "step around" the circuit loop, starting and ending at point 0:

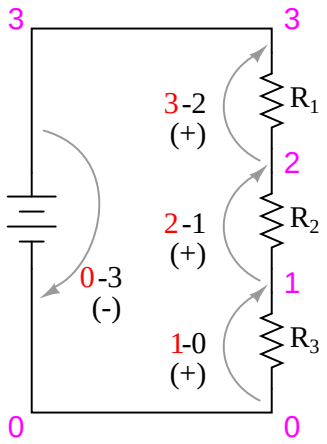

Measure voltage from
1 to 0
0
3
3
2
1
0
R2
3
2
1
R1
R3
OFF
COM


Measure voltage from
2 to 1
0
3
3
2
1
0
R2
3
2
0
R1
R3
OFF
COM



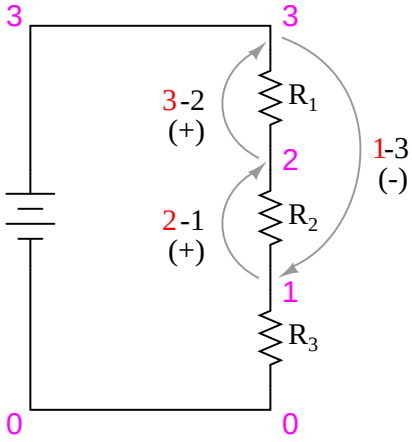


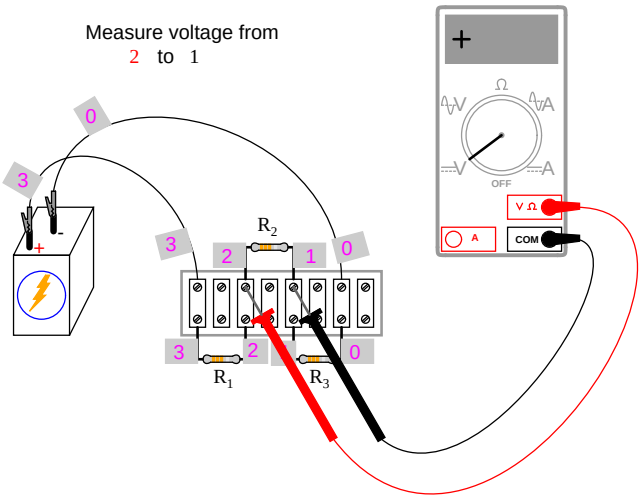
Using the voltmeter to "step" around the circuit in this manner yields three positive voltage figures and one negative:

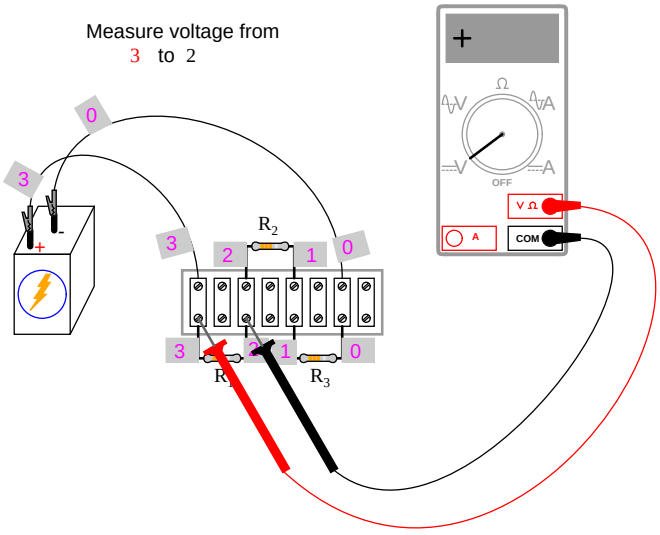


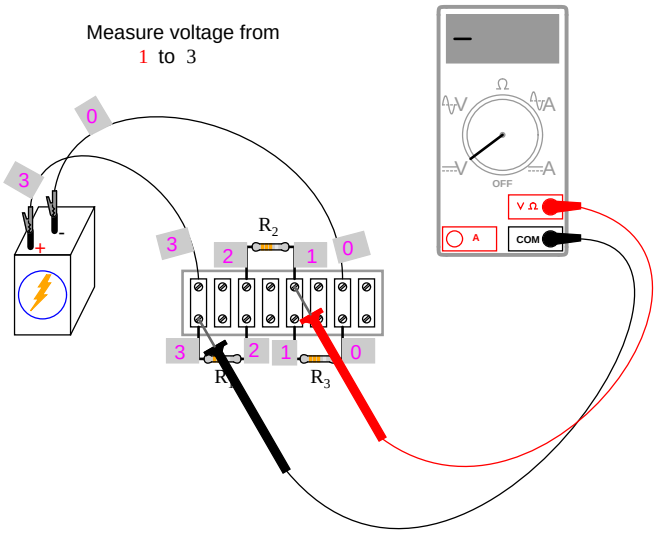
These figures, algebraically added ("algebraically" = respecting the signs of the numbers), should equal zero. This is the fundamental principle of Kirchhoff's Voltage Law: that the algebraic sum of all voltage drops in a "loop" add to zero.

It is important to realize that the "loop" stepped around does not have to be the same path that current takes in the circuit, or even a legitimate current path at all. The loop in which we tally voltage drops can be *any collection of points*, so long as it begins and ends with the same point. For example, we may measure and add the voltages in the loop 1-2-3-1, and they will form a sum of zero as well:




Measure voltage from
2 to 1
0
3
3
2
1
0
3
2
0
R2
R1
R3
+
-
+
Ω
V
A
V
A
OFF
V Ω
A
COM


Measure voltage from
3 to 2
0
3
3
2
1
0
3
1
0
R2
R1
R3
+
-
+
Ω
V
A
V
A
OFF
V Ω
A
COM



Try stepping between any set of points, in any order, around your circuit and see for yourself that the algebraic sum always equals zero. This Law holds true no matter what the configuration of the circuit: series, parallel, series-parallel, or even an irreducible network.

Kirchhoff's Voltage Law is a powerful concept, allowing us to predict the magnitude and polarity of voltages in a circuit by developing mathematical equations for analysis based on the truth of all voltages in a loop adding up to zero. This experiment is intended to give empirical evidence for and a deep understanding of Kirchhoff's Voltage Law as a general principle.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Voltage divider
v1 3 0
r1 3 2 5k
r2 2 1 3k
r3 1 0 2k
.dc v1 6 6 1
* Voltages around 0-1-2-3-0 loop algebraically add to zero:
.print dc v(1,0) v(2,1) v(3,2) v(0,3)
* Voltages around 1-2-3-1 loop algebraically add to zero:
.print dc v(2,1) v(3,2) v(1,3)
.end
```

This computer simulation is based on the point numbers shown in the previous diagrams for illustrating Kirchhoff's Voltage Law (points 0 through 3). Resistor values were chosen to provide 50%, 30%, and 20% proportions of total voltage across R_1, R_2, and R_3, respectively. Feel free to modify the voltage source value (in the "`.dc`" line, shown here as 6 volts), and/or the resistor values.

When run, SPICE will print a line of text containing four voltage figures, then another line of text containing three voltage figures, along with lots of other text lines describing the

analysis process. Add the voltage figures in each line to see that the sum is zero.

3.5 Current divider

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Calculator (or pencil and paper for doing arithmetic)
- 6-volt battery
- Assortment of resistors between 1 KΩ and 100 kΩ in value

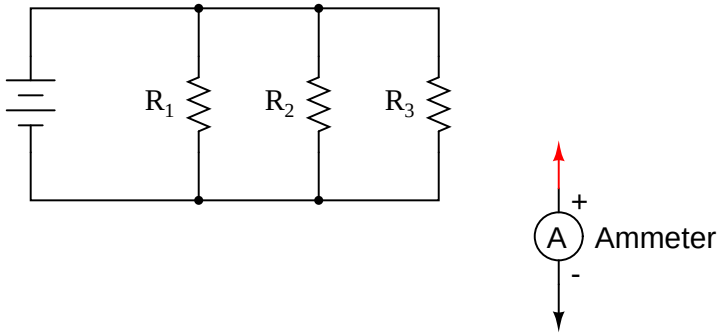
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 6: ”Divider Circuits and Kirchhoff’s Laws”

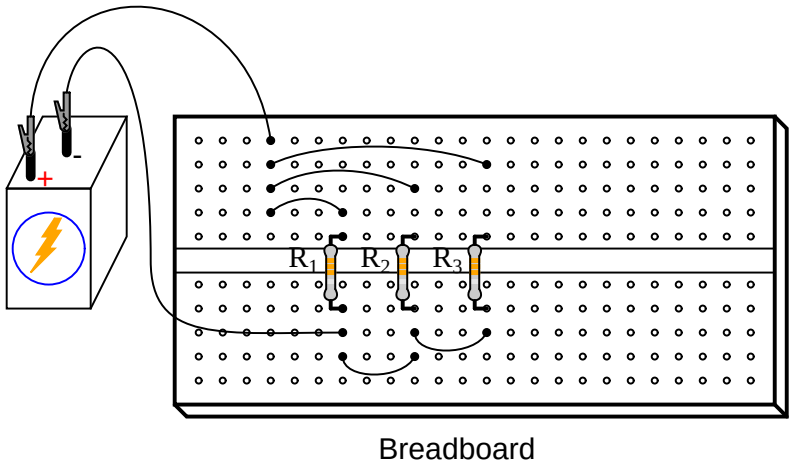
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

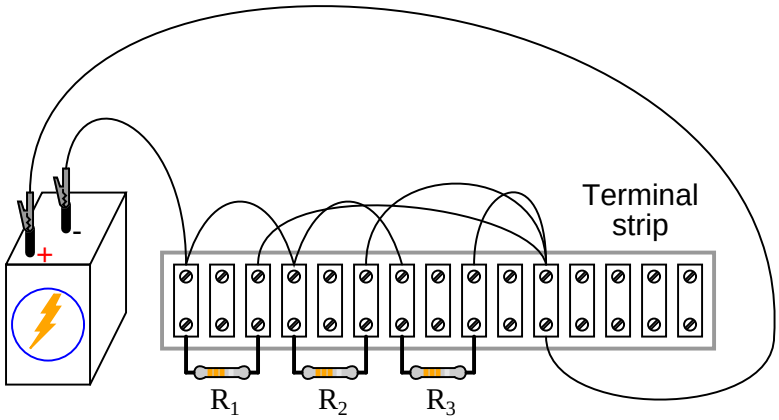
- Voltmeter use
- Ammeter use
- Ohmmeter use
- Use of Ohm’s Law
- Use of Kirchhoff’s Current Law (KCL)
- Current divider design

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

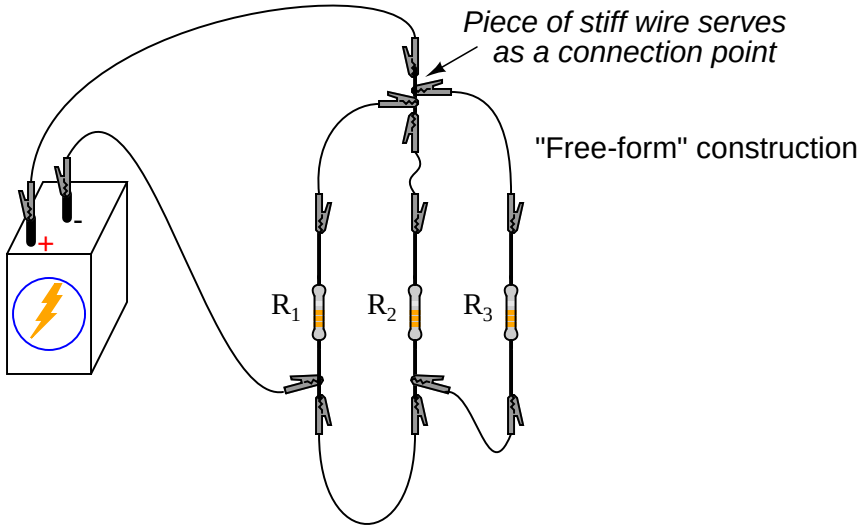


ILLUSTRATION





Normally, it is considered improper to secure more than two wires under a single terminal strip screw. In this illustration, I show three wires joining at the top screw of the rightmost lug used on this strip. This is done for the ease of proving a concept (of current *summing* at a circuit node), and does not represent professional assembly technique.



The non-professional nature of the ”free-form” construction method merits no further comment.

INSTRUCTIONS

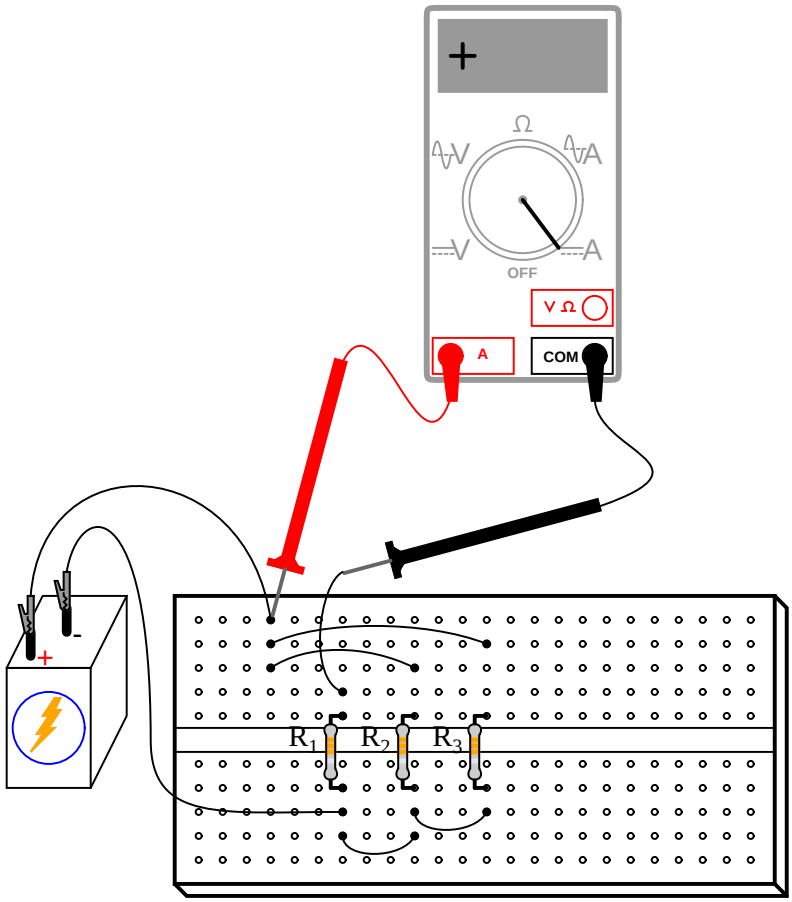
Once again, I show different methods of constructing the same circuit: breadboard, terminal strip, and ”free-form.” Experiment with all these construction formats and become familiar with their respective advantages and disadvantages.

Select three resistors from your resistor assortment and measure the resistance of each one with an ohmmeter. Note these resistance values with pen and paper, for reference in your circuit calculations.

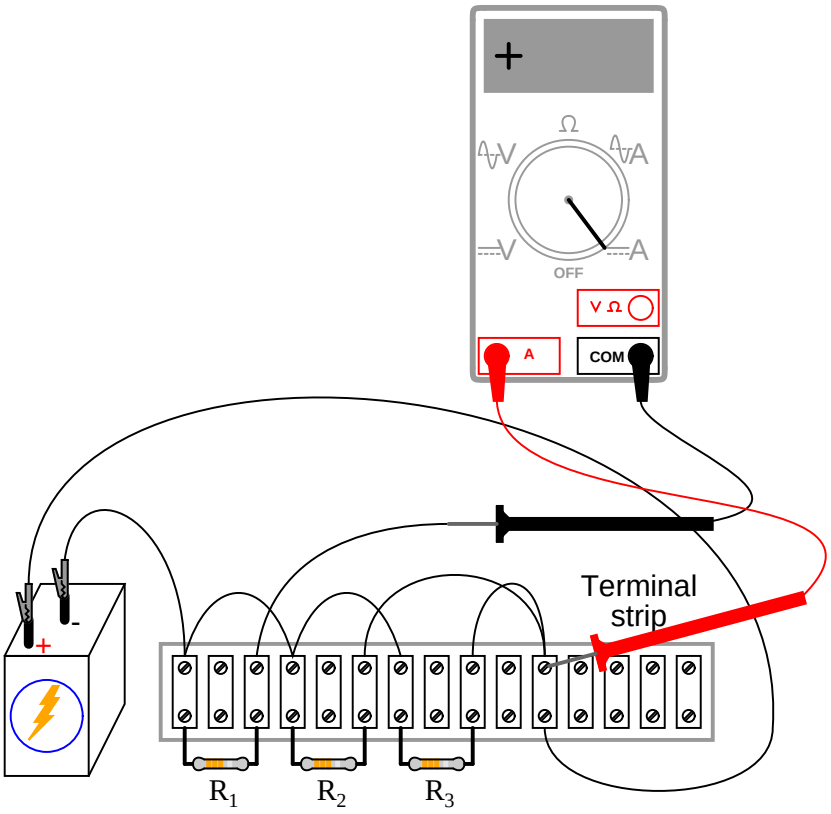
Connect the three resistors in parallel to and each other, and with the 6-volt battery, as shown in the illustrations. Measure battery voltage with a voltmeter after the resistors have been connected to it, noting this voltage figure on paper as well. It is advisable to measure battery voltage while its powering the resistor circuit because this voltage may differ slightly from a no-load condition.

Measure voltage across each of the three resistors. What do you notice? In a series circuit, *current* is equal through all components at any given time. In a parallel circuit, *voltage* is the common variable between all components.

Use Ohm’s Law (I=E/R) to calculate current through each resistor, then verify this calculated value by measuring current with a digital ammeter. Place the red probe of the ammeter at the point where the positive (+) ends of the resistors connect to each other and lift one resistor wire at a time, connecting the meter’s black probe to the lifted wire. In this manner, measure each resistor current, noting both the magnitude of the current and the polarity. In these illustrations, I show an ammeter used to measure the current through R_1:

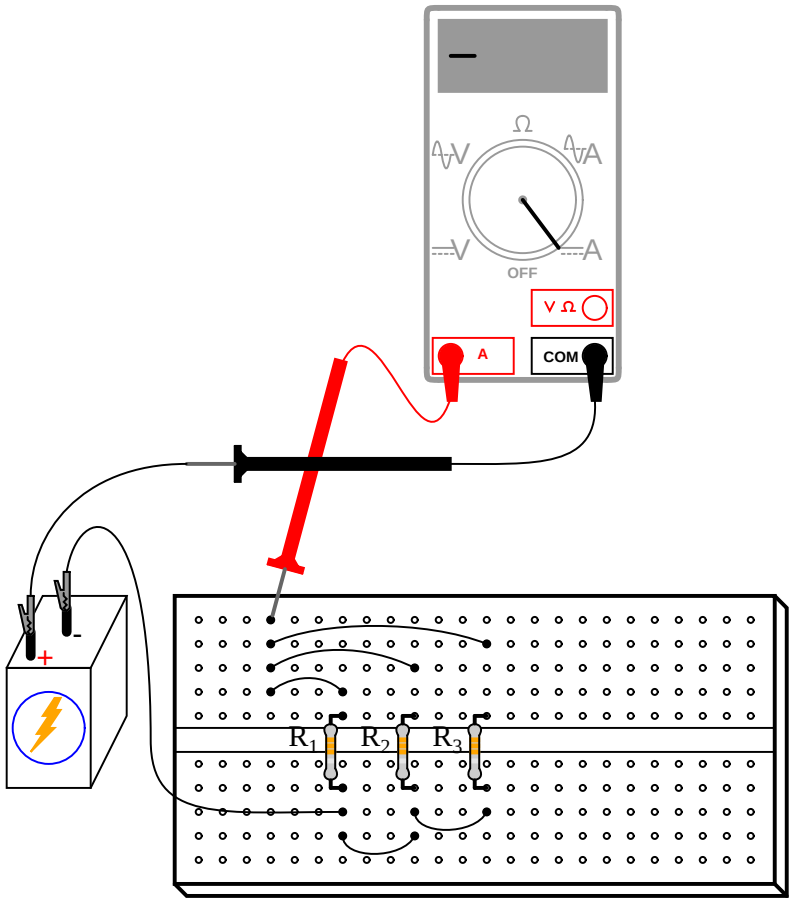


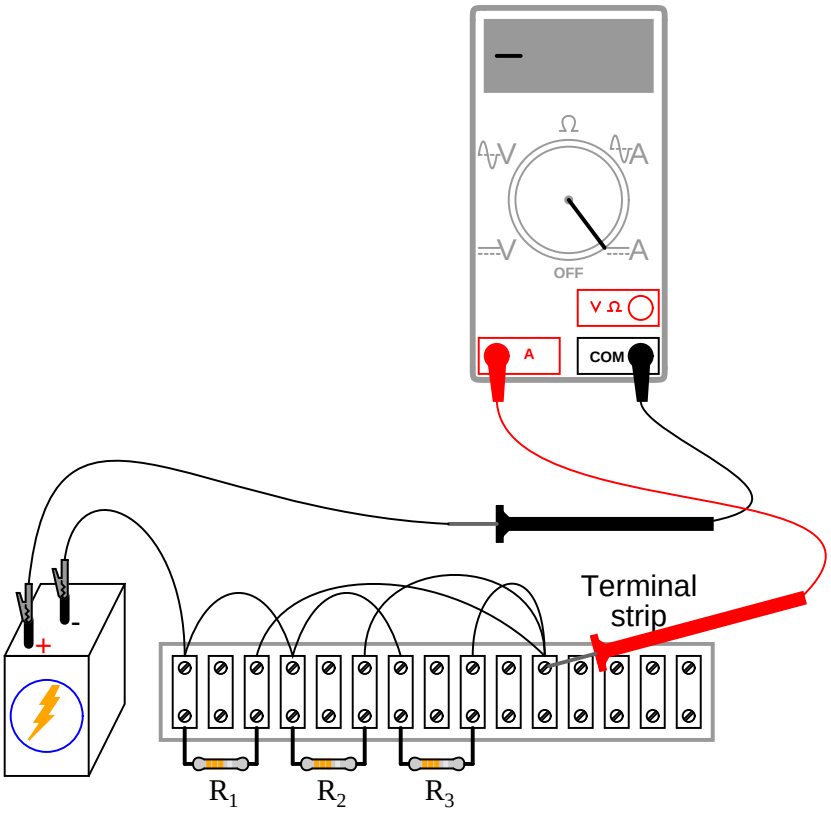
Breadboard



Measure current for each of the three resistors, comparing with the current figures calculated previously. With the digital ammeter connected as shown, all three indications should be positive, not negative.

Now, measure total circuit current, keeping the ammeter's red probe on the same point of the circuit, but disconnecting the wire leading to the positive (+) side of the battery and touching the black probe to it:


Ω
V
A
V
A
OFF
V Ω
A
COM
+
-
R1
R2
R3
Breadboard



Note both the magnitude and the sign of the current as indicated by the ammeter. Add this figure (algebraically) to the three resistor currents. What do you notice about the result that is similar to the Kirchhoff's Voltage Law experiment? Kirchhoff's Current Law is to currents "summing" at a point (node) in a circuit, just as Kirchhoff's Voltage Law is to voltages adding in a series loop: in both cases, the algebraic sum is equal to zero.

This Law is also very useful in the mathematical analysis of circuits. Along with Kirchhoff's Voltage Law, it allows us to generate equations describing several variables in a circuit, which may then be solved using a variety of mathematical techniques.

Now consider the four current measurements as all positive numbers: the first three representing the current through each resistor, and the fourth representing total circuit current as a positive sum of the three "branch" currents. Each resistor (branch) current is a fraction, or percentage, of the total current. This is why a parallel resistor circuit is often called a *current divider*.

Disconnect the battery from the rest of the circuit, and measure resistance across the parallel resistors. You may read total resistance across *any* of the individual resistors' terminals and obtain the same indication: it will be a value less than any of the individual resistor values. This is often surprising to new students of electricity, that you read the exact same (total) resistance figure when connecting an ohmmeter across *any one* of a set of parallel-connected resistors. It makes sense, though, if you consider the points in a parallel circuit in terms of electrical commonality. All parallel components are connected between two sets of electrically

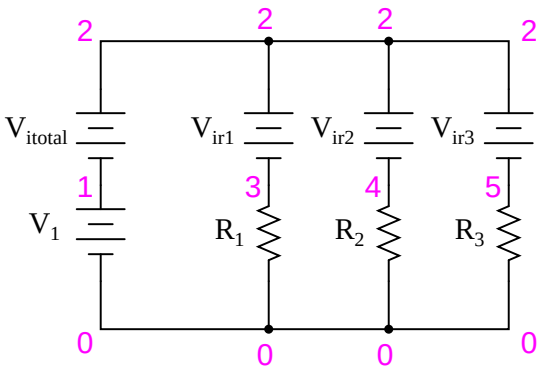
common points. Since the meter cannot distinguish between points common to each other by way of direct connection, to read resistance across one resistor is to read the resistance of them all. The same is true for voltage, which is why battery voltage could be read across any one of the resistors as easily as it could be read across the battery terminals directly.

If you divide the battery voltage (previously measured) by this total resistance figure, you should obtain a figure for total current (I=E/R) closely matching the measured figure.

The ratio of resistor current to total current is the same as the ratio of total resistance to individual resistance. For example, if a 10 kΩ resistor is part of a current divider circuit with a total resistance of 1 kΩ, that resistor will conduct 1/10 of the total current, whatever value that current total happens to be.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Ammeters in SPICE simulations are actually zero-voltage sources inserted in the paths of electron flow. You will notice the voltage sources V_{ir1}, V_{ir2}, and V_{ir3} are set to 0 volts in the netlist. When electrons enter the negative side of one of these "dummy" batteries and out the positive, the battery's current indication will be a positive number. In other words, these 0-volt sources are to be regarded as ammeters with the red probe on the long-line side of the battery symbol and the black probe on the short-line side.

Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Current divider
v1 1 0
r1 3 0 2k
r2 4 0 3k
r3 5 0 5k
vitotal 2 1 dc 0
vir1 2 3 dc 0
vir2 2 4 dc 0
vir3 2 5 dc 0
.dc v1 6 6 1
.print dc i(vitotal) i(vir1) i(vir2) i(vir3)
.end
```

When run, SPICE will print a line of text containing four current figures, the first current representing the total as a negative quantity, and the other three representing currents for resistors R_1, R_2, and R_3. When algebraically added, the one negative figure and the three positive figures will form a sum of zero, as described by Kirchhoff's Current Law.

3.6 Potentiometer as a voltage divider

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6-volt batteries
- Carbon pencil "lead" for a mechanical-style pencil
- Potentiometer, single turn, 5 kΩ to 50 kΩ, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1714 through 271-1716)
- Potentiometer, multi turn, 1 kΩ to 20 kΩ, (Radio Shack catalog # 271-342, 271-343, 900-8583, or 900-8587 through 900-8590)

Potentiometers are variable voltage dividers with a shaft or slide control for setting the division ratio. They are manufactured in panel-mount as well as breadboard (printed-circuit board) mount versions. Any style of potentiometer will suffice for this experiment.

If you salvage a potentiometer from an old radio or other audio device, you will likely be getting what is called an *audio taper* potentiometer. These potentiometers exhibit a logarithmic relationship between division ratio and shaft position. By contrast, a *linear* potentiometer exhibits a direct correlation between shaft position and voltage division ratio. I highly recommend a linear potentiometer for this experiment, and for most experiments in general.

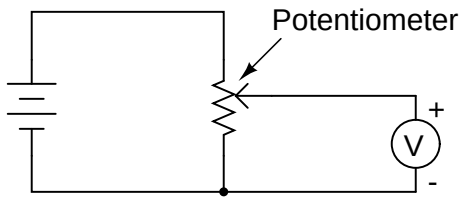
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 6: "Divider Circuits and Kirchhoff's Laws"

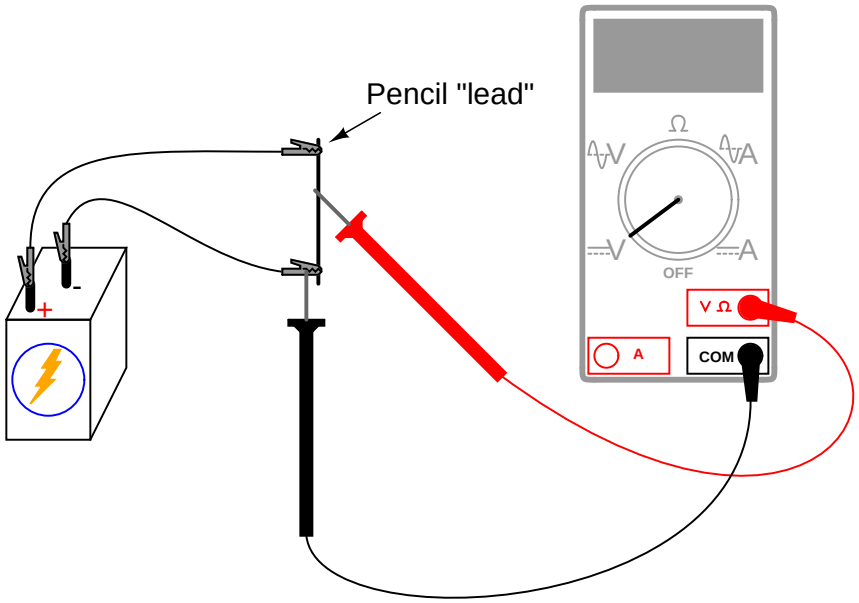
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

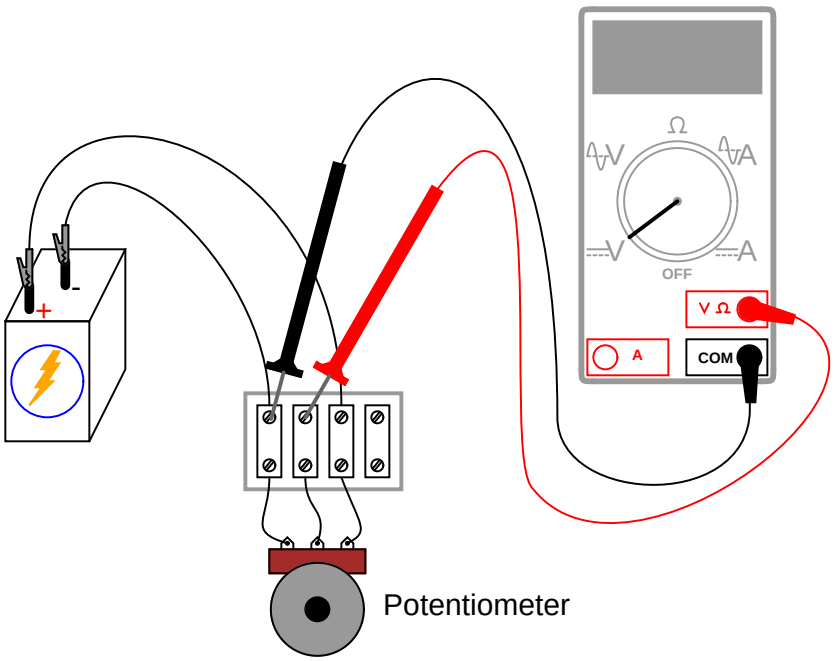
- Voltmeter use
- Ohmmeter use
- Voltage divider design and function
- How voltages add in series

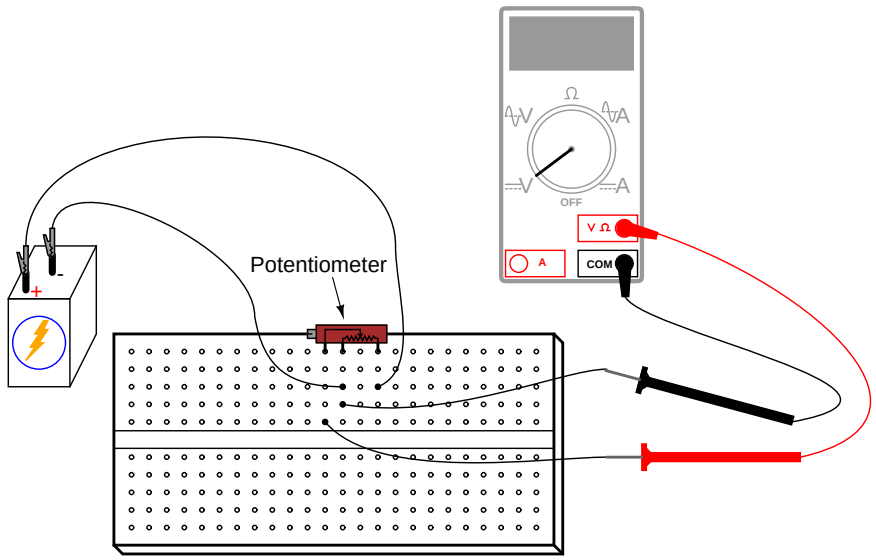
SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION


Pencil "lead"
Ω
V
A
V
A
OFF
V Ω
A
COM

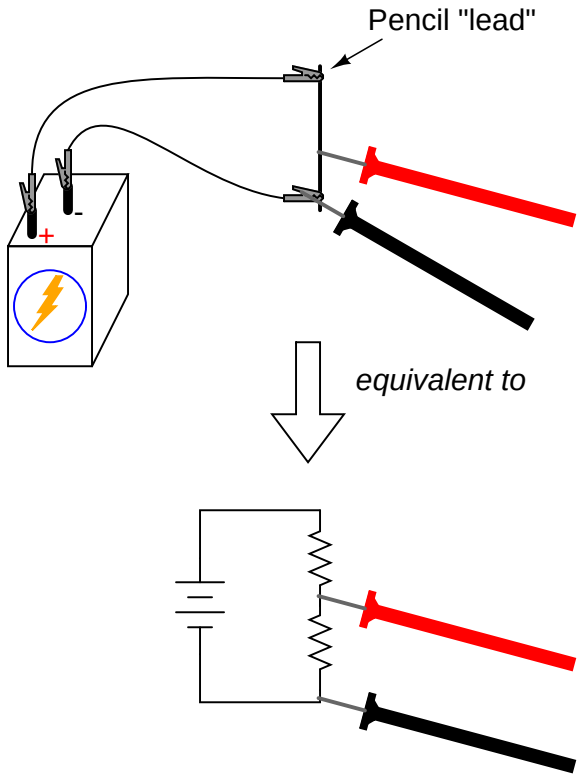

Ω
V
A
V
A
OFF
V Ω
A
COM
Potentiometer



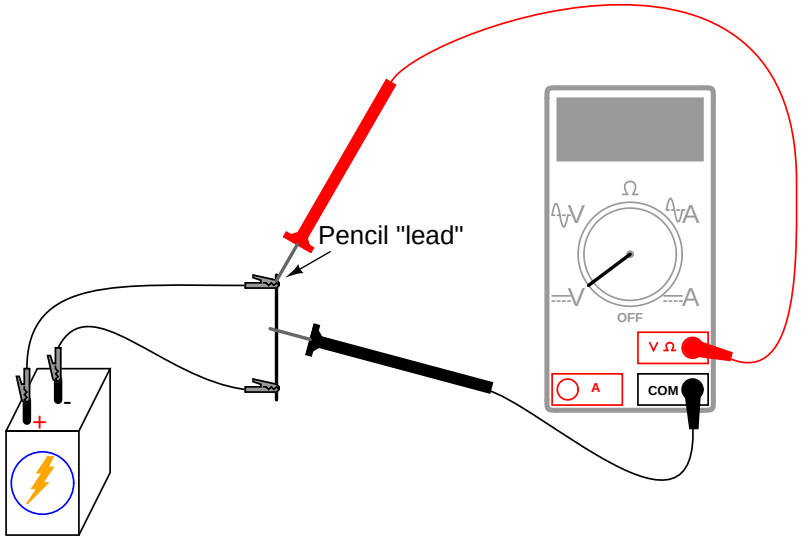
INSTRUCTIONS

Begin this experiment with the pencil "lead" circuit. Pencils use a rod made of a graphite-clay mixture, not lead (the metal), to make black marks on paper. Graphite, being a mediocre electrical conductor, acts as a resistor connected across the battery by the two alligator-clip jumper wires. Connect the voltmeter as shown and touch the red test probe to the graphite rod. Move the red probe along the length of the rod and notice the voltmeter's indication change. What probe position gives the greatest voltage indication?

Essentially, the rod acts as a *pair* of resistors, the ratio between the two resistances established by the position of the red test probe along the rod's length:

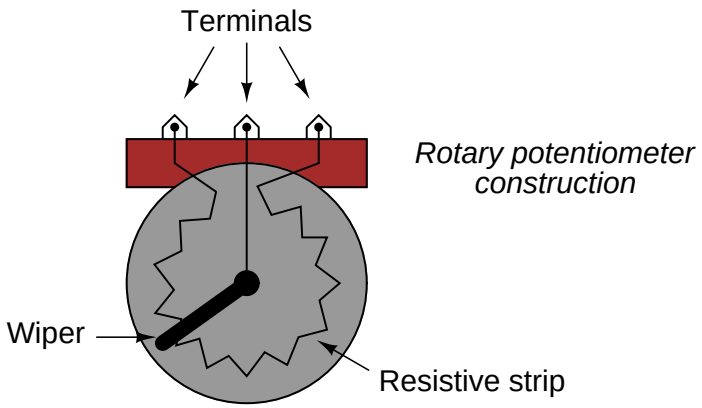


Now, change the voltmeter connection to the circuit so as to measure voltage across the "upper resistor" of the pencil lead, like this:



Move the black test probe position along the length of the rod, noting the voltmeter indication. Which position gives the greatest voltage drop for the meter to measure? Does this differ from the previous arrangement? Why?

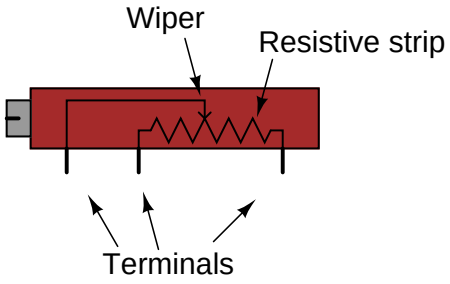
Manufactured potentiometers enclose a resistive strip inside a metal or plastic housing, and provide some kind of mechanism for moving a "wiper" across the length of that resistive strip. Here is an illustration of a rotary potentiometer's construction:



Some rotary potentiometers have a spiral resistive strip, and a wiper that moves axially as it rotates, so as to require multiple turns of the shaft to drive the wiper from one end of the potentiometer's range to the other. Multi-turn potentiometers are used in applications where precise setting is important.

Linear potentiometers also contain a resistive strip, the only difference being the wiper's direction of travel. Some linear potentiometers use a slide mechanism to move the wiper, while others a screw, to facilitate multiple-turn operation:

Linear potentiometer construction



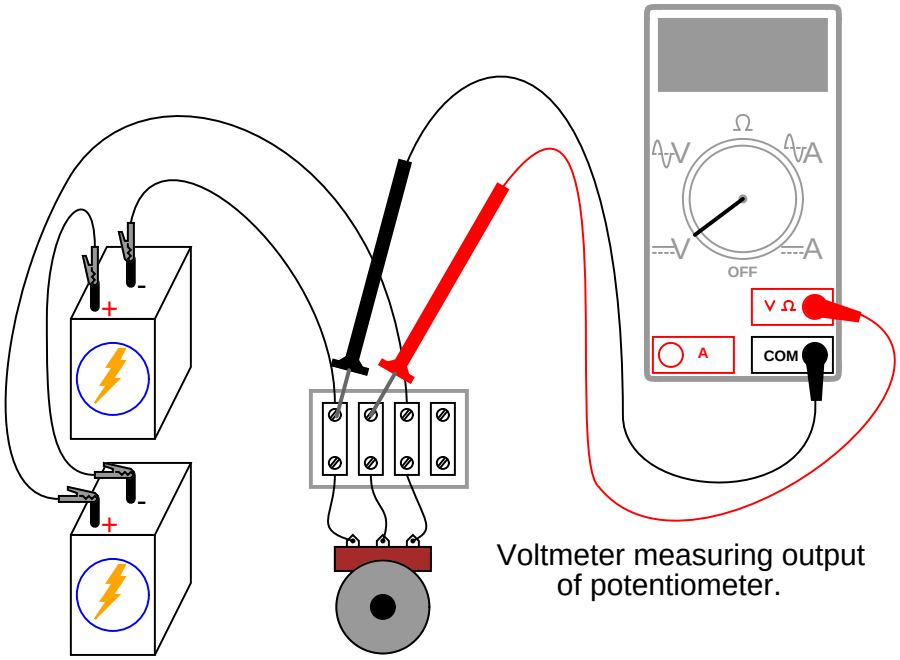
It should be noted that not all linear potentiometers have the same pin assignments. On some, the middle pin is the wiper.

Set up a circuit using a manufactured potentiometer, not the "home-made" one made from a pencil lead. You may use any form of construction that is convenient.

Measure battery voltage while powering the potentiometer, and make note of this voltage figure on paper. Measure voltage between the wiper and the potentiometer end connected to the negative (-) side of the battery. Adjust the potentiometer mechanism until the voltmeter

registers exactly 1/3 of total voltage. For a 6-volt battery, this will be approximately 2 volts.

Now, connect two batteries in a series-aiding configuration, to provide approximately 12 volts across the potentiometer. Measure the total battery voltage, and then measure the voltage between the same two points on the potentiometer (wiper and negative side). Divide the potentiometer's measured output voltage by the measured total voltage. The quotient should be 1/3, the same voltage division ratio as was set previously:



3.7 Potentiometer as a rheostat

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6 volt battery
- Potentiometer, single turn, 5 kΩ, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1714)
- Small ”hobby” motor, permanent-magnet type (Radio Shack catalog # 273-223 or equivalent)

For this experiment, you will need a relatively low-value potentiometer, certainly not more than 5 kΩ.

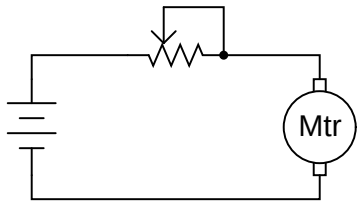
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 2: ”Ohm’s Law”

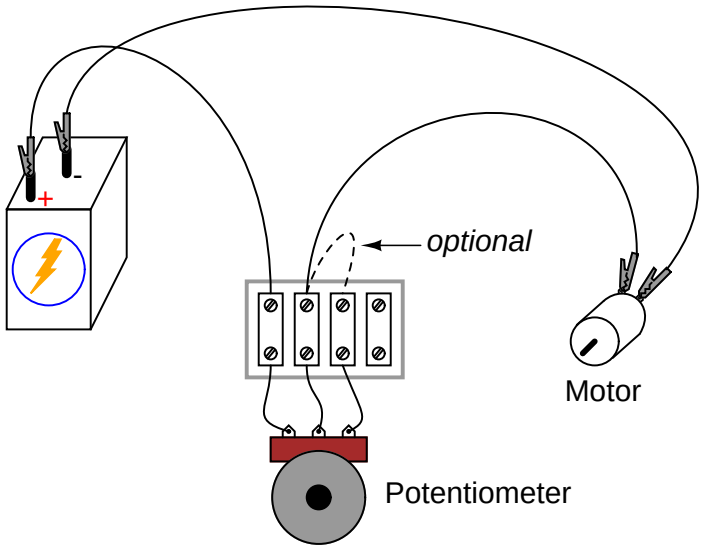
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Rheostat use
- Wiring a potentiometer as a rheostat
- Simple motor speed control
- Use of voltmeter over ammeter to verify a continuous circuit

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



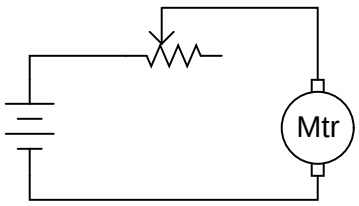
ILLUSTRATION

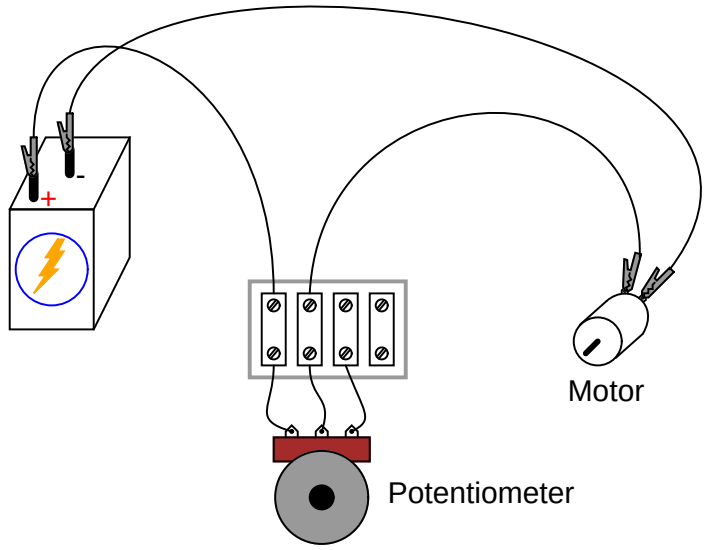


INSTRUCTIONS

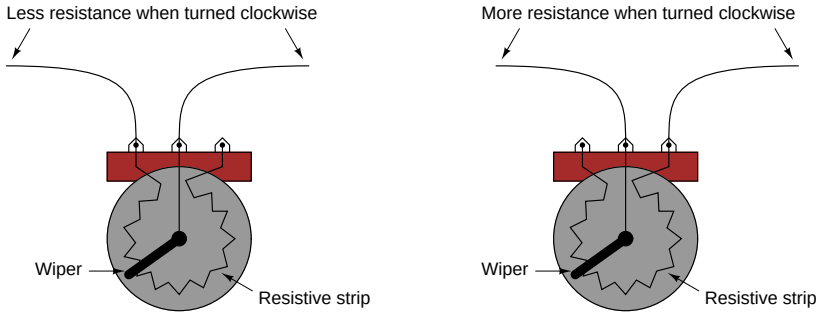
Potentiometers find their most sophisticated application as voltage dividers, where shaft position determines a specific voltage division ratio. However, there are applications where we don't necessarily need a variable voltage divider, but merely a variable resistor: a two-terminal device. Technically, a variable resistor is known as a *rheostat*, but potentiometers can be made to function as rheostats quite easily.

In its simplest configuration, a potentiometer may be used as a rheostat by simply using the wiper terminal and one of the other terminals, the third terminal left unconnected and unused:

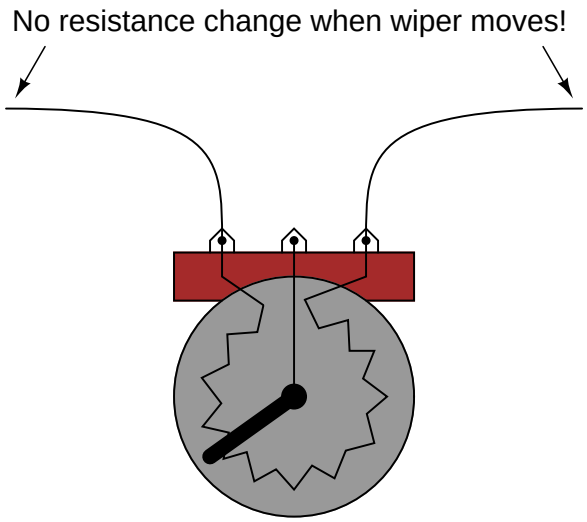




Moving the potentiometer control in the direction that brings the wiper closest to the other used terminal results in a lower resistance. The direction of motion required to increase or decrease resistance may be changed by using a different set of terminals:



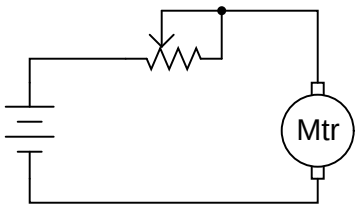
Be careful, though, that you don't use the two outer terminals, as this will result in *no change in resistance* as the potentiometer shaft is turned. In other words, it will no longer function as a *variable* resistance:



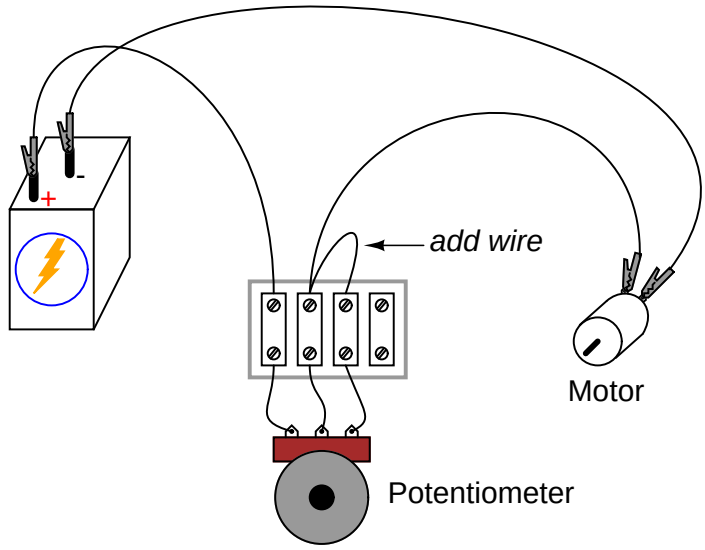
Build the circuit as shown in the schematic and illustration, using just two terminals on the potentiometer, and see how motor speed may be controlled by adjusting shaft position. Experiment with different terminal connections on the potentiometer, noting the changes in motor speed control. If your potentiometer has a high resistance (as measured between the two outer terminals), the motor might not move at all until the wiper is brought very close to the connected outer terminal.

As you can see, motor speed may be made variable using a series-connected rheostat to change total circuit resistance and limit total current. This simple method of motor speed control, however, is inefficient, as it results in substantial amounts of power being dissipated (wasted) by the rheostat. A much more efficient means of motor control relies on fast ”pulsing” of power to the motor, using a high-speed switching device such as a *transistor*. A similar method of power control is used in household light ”dimmer” switches. Unfortunately, these techniques are much too sophisticated to explore at this point in the experiments.

When a potentiometer is used as a rheostat, the ”unused” terminal is often connected to the wiper terminal, like this:

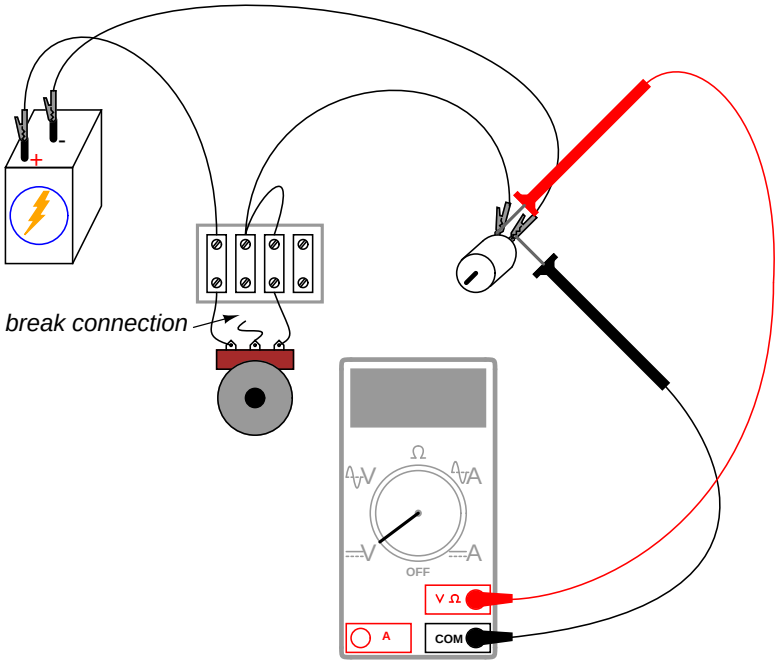


At first, this seems rather pointless, as it has no impact on resistance control. You may verify this fact for yourself by inserting another wire in your circuit and comparing motor behavior before and after the change:



If the potentiometer is in good working order, this additional wire makes no difference whatsoever. However, if the wiper ever loses contact with the resistive strip inside the potentiometer, this connection ensures the circuit does not completely open: that there will still be a resistive path for current through the motor. In some applications, this may be an important. Old potentiometers tend to suffer from intermittent losses of contact between the wiper and the resistive strip, and if a circuit cannot tolerate the complete loss of continuity (infinite resistance) created by this condition, that ”extra” wire provides a measure of protection by maintaining circuit continuity.

You may simulate such a wiper contact ”failure” by disconnecting the potentiometer’s middle terminal from the terminal strip, measuring voltage across the motor to ensure there is still power getting to it, however small:



It would have been valid to measure circuit current instead of motor voltage to verify a completed circuit, but this is a safer method because it does not involve breaking the circuit to insert an ammeter in series. Whenever an ammeter is used, there is risk of causing a short circuit by connecting it across a substantial voltage source, possibly resulting in instrument damage or personal injury. Voltmeters lack this inherent safety risk, and so whenever a voltage measurement may be made instead of a current measurement to verify the same thing, it is the wiser choice.

3.8 Precision potentiometer

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two single-turn, linear-taper potentiometers, 5 kΩ each (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1714)
- One single-turn, linear-taper potentiometer, 50 kΩ (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1716)
- Plastic or metal mounting box
- Three ”banana” jack style binding posts, or other terminal hardware, for connection to potentiometer circuit (Radio Shack catalog # 274-662 or equivalent)

This is a project useful to those who want a precision potentiometer without spending a lot of money. Ordinarily, multi-turn potentiometers are used to obtain precise voltage division ratios, but a cheaper alternative exists using multiple, single-turn (sometimes called ”3/4-turn”) potentiometers connected together in a compound divider network.

Because this is a useful project, I recommend building it in permanent form using some form of project enclosure. Suppliers such as Radio Shack offer nice project boxes, but boxes purchased at a general hardware store are much less expensive, if a bit ugly. The ultimate in low cost for a new box are the plastic boxes sold as light switch and receptacle boxes for household electrical wiring.

”Banana” jacks allow for the temporary connection of test leads and jumper wires equipped with matching ”banana” plug ends. Most multimeter test leads have this style of plug for insertion into the meter jacks. Banana plugs are so named because of their oblong appearance formed by spring steel strips, which maintain firm contact with the jack walls when inserted. Some banana jacks are called *binding posts* because they also allow plain wires to be firmly attached. Binding posts have screw-on sleeves that fit over a metal post. The sleeve is used as a nut to secure a wire wrapped around the post, or inserted through a perpendicular hole drilled through the post. A brief inspection of any binding post will clarify this verbal description.

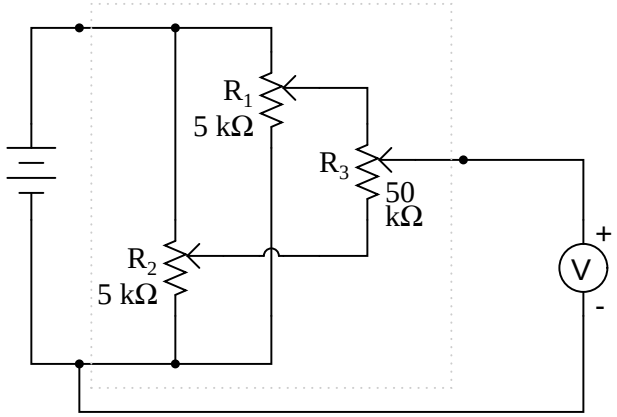
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 6: ”Divider Circuits and Kirchhoff’s Laws”

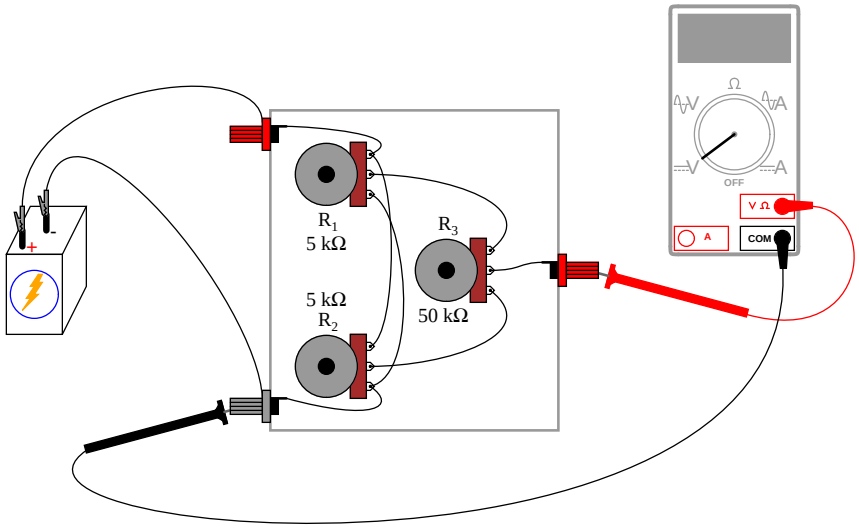
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Soldering practice
- Potentiometer function and operation

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

It is essential that the connecting wires be *soldered* to the potentiometer terminals, not twisted or taped. Since potentiometer action is dependent on resistance, the resistance of all wiring connections must be carefully controlled to a bare minimum. Soldering ensures a condition of low resistance between joined conductors, and also provides very good mechanical strength for the connections.

When the circuit is assembled, connect a 6-volt battery to the outer two binding posts. Connect a voltmeter between the "wiper" post and the battery's negative (-) terminal. This voltmeter will measure the "output" of the circuit.

The circuit works on the principle of compressed range: the voltage output range of this circuit available by adjusting potentiometer R_3 is restricted between the limits set by potentiometers R_1 and R_2. In other words, if R_1 and R_2 were set to output 5 volts and 3 volts,

respectively, from a 6-volt battery, the range of output voltages obtainable by adjusting R_3 would be restricted from 3 to 5 volts for the full rotation of that potentiometer. If only a single potentiometer were used instead of this three-potentiometer circuit, full rotation would produce an output voltage from 0 volts to full battery voltage. The ”range compression” afforded by this circuit allows for more precise voltage adjustment than would be normally obtainable using a single potentiometer.

Operating this potentiometer network is more complex than using a single potentiometer. To begin, turn the R_3 potentiometer fully clockwise, so that its wiper is in the full ”up” position as referenced to the schematic diagram (electrically ”closest” to R_1’s wiper terminal). Adjust potentiometer R_1 until the upper voltage limit is reached, as indicated by the voltmeter.

Turn the R_3 potentiometer fully counter-clockwise, so that its wiper is in the full ”down” position as referenced to the schematic diagram (electrically ”closest” to R_2’s wiper terminal). Adjust potentiometer R_2 until the lower voltage limit is reached, as indicated by the voltmeter.

When either the R_1 or the R_2 potentiometer is adjusted, it interferes with the prior setting of the other. In other words, if R_1 is initially adjusted to provide an upper voltage limit of 5.000 volts from a 6 volt battery, and then R_2 is adjusted to provide some lower limit voltage different from what it was before, R_1 will no longer be set to 5.000 volts.

To obtain precise upper and lower voltage limits, turn R_3 fully clockwise to read and adjust the voltage of R_1, then turn R_3 fully counter-clockwise to read and adjust the voltage of R_2, repeating as necessary.

Technically, this phenomenon of one adjustment affecting the other is known as *interaction*, and it is usually undesirable due to the extra effort required to set and re-set the adjustments. The reason that R_1 and R_2 were specified as 10 times less resistance than R_3 is to minimize this effect. If all three potentiometers were of equal resistance value, the interaction between R_1 and R_2 would be more severe, though manageable with patience. Bear in mind that the upper and lower voltage limits need not be set precisely in order for this circuit to achieve its goal of increased precision. So long as R_3’s adjustment range is compressed to some lesser value than full battery voltage, we will enjoy greater precision than a single potentiometer could provide.

Once the upper and lower voltage limits have been set, potentiometer R_3 may be adjusted to produce an output voltage anywhere between those limits.

3.9 Rheostat range limiting

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Several 10 kΩ resistors
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)

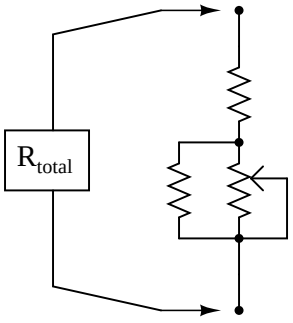
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 5: ”Series and Parallel Circuits”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 7: ”Series-Parallel Combination Circuits”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”

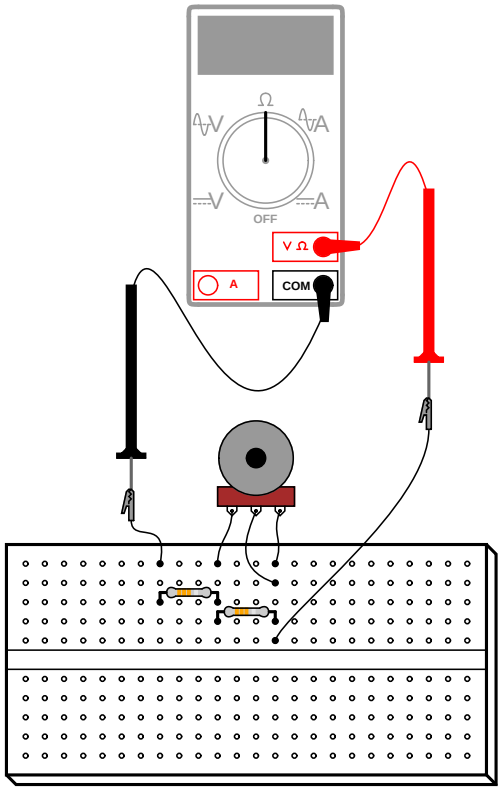
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Series-parallel resistances
- Calibration theory and practice

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

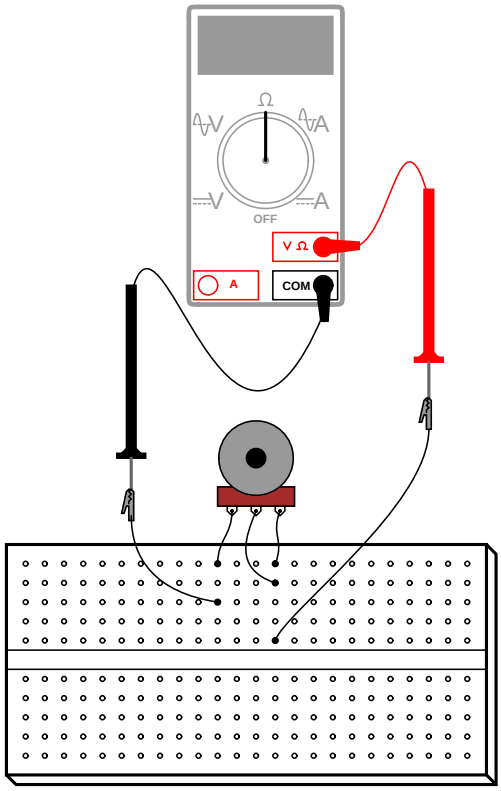


ILLUSTRATION

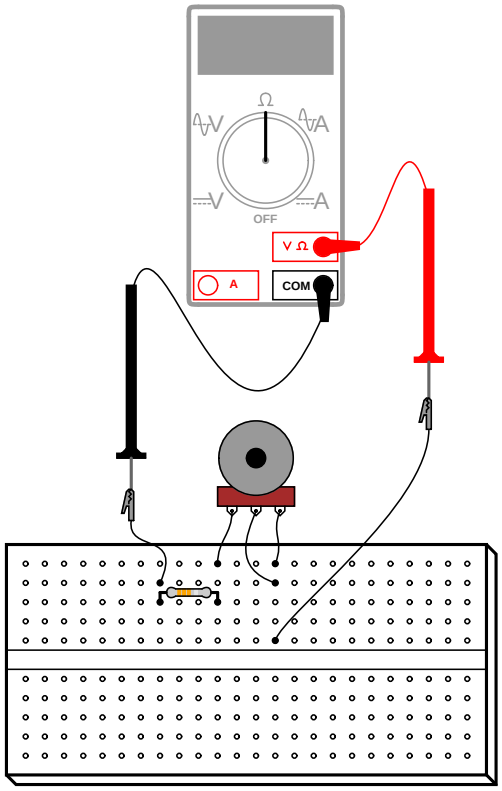


INSTRUCTIONS

This experiment explores the different resistance ranges obtainable from combining fixed-value resistors with a potentiometer connected as a rheostat. To begin, connect a 10 kΩ potentiometer as a rheostat with no other resistors connected. Adjusting the potentiometer through its full range of travel should result in a resistance that varies smoothly from 0 Ω to 10,000 Ω:

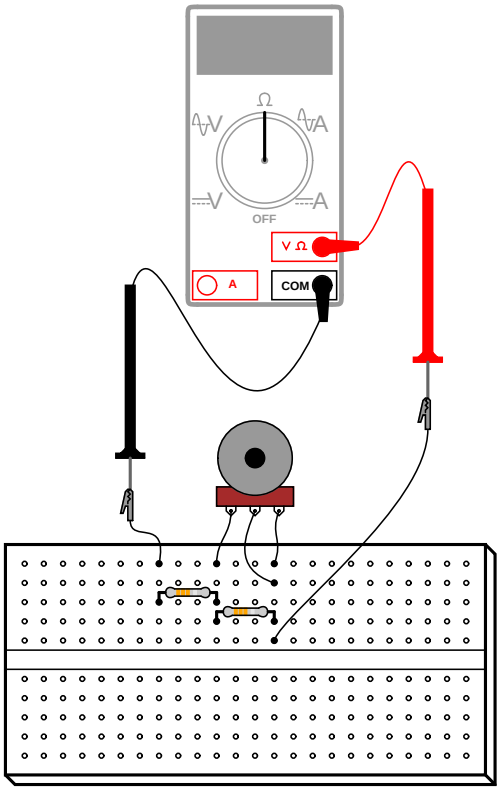


Suppose we wanted to elevate the lower end of this resistance range so that we had an adjustable range from 10 kΩ to 20 kΩ with a full sweep of the potentiometer's adjustment. This could be easily accomplished by adding a 10 kΩ resistor in *series* with the potentiometer. Add one to the circuit as shown and re-measure total resistance while adjusting the potentiometer:



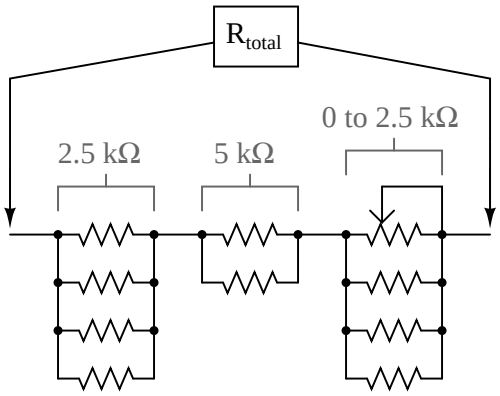
A shift in the low end of an adjustment range is called a *zero calibration*, in metrological terms. With the addition of a series 10 kΩ resistor, the "zero point" was shifted upward by 10,000 Ω. The difference between high and low ends of a range – called the *span* of the circuit – has not changed, though: a range of 10 kΩ to 20 kΩ has the same 10,000 Ω span as a range of 0 Ω to 10 kΩ. If we wish to shift the span of this rheostat circuit as well, we must change the range of the potentiometer itself. We could replace the potentiometer with one of another value, or we could simulate a lower-value potentiometer by placing a resistor in *parallel* with it, diminishing its maximum obtainable resistance. This will decrease the span of the circuit from 10 kΩ to something less.

Add a 10 kΩ resistor in parallel with the potentiometer, to reduce the span to one-half of its former value: from 10 KΩ to 5 kΩ. Now the calibrated resistance range of this circuit will be 10 kΩ to 15 kΩ:

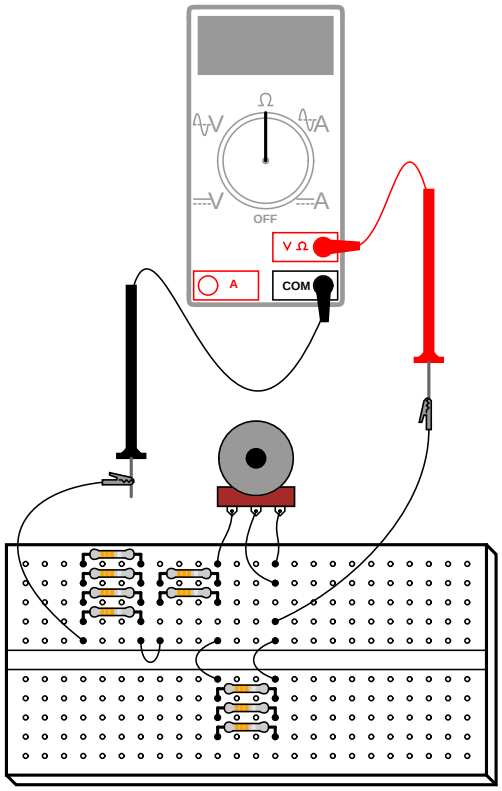


There is nothing we can do to *increase* the span of this rheostat circuit, short of replacing the potentiometer with another of greater total resistance. Adding resistors in parallel can only decrease the span. However, there is no such restriction with calibrating the zero point of this circuit, as it began at 0 Ω and may be made as great as we wish by adding resistance in series.

A multitude of resistance ranges may be obtained using only 10 KΩ fixed-value resistors, if we are creative with series-parallel combinations of them. For instance, we can create a range of 7.5 kΩ to 10 kΩ by building the following circuit:



All resistors = 10 kΩ



Creating a custom resistance range from fixed-value resistors and a potentiometer is a very useful technique for producing precise resistances required for certain circuits, especially meter circuits. In many electrical instruments – multimeters especially – resistance is the determining factor for the instrument's range of measurement. If an instrument's internal resistance values are not precise, neither will its indications be. Finding a fixed-value resistor

of just the right resistance for placement in an instrument circuit design is unlikely, so custom resistance "networks" may need to be built to provide the desired resistance. Having a potentiometer as part of the resistor network provides a means of correction if the network's resistance should "drift" from its original value. Designing the network for minimum span ensures that the potentiometer's effect will be small, so that precise adjustment is possible and so that accidental movement of its mechanism will not result in severe calibration errors.

Experiment with different resistor "networks" and note the effects on total resistance range.

3.10 Thermoelectricity

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Length of bare (uninsulated) copper wire
- Length of bare (uninsulated) iron wire
- Candle
- Ice cubes

Iron wire may be obtained from a hardware store. If some cannot be found, aluminum wire also works.

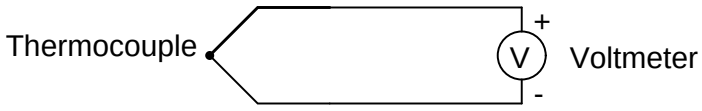
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 9: ”Electrical Instrumentation Signals”

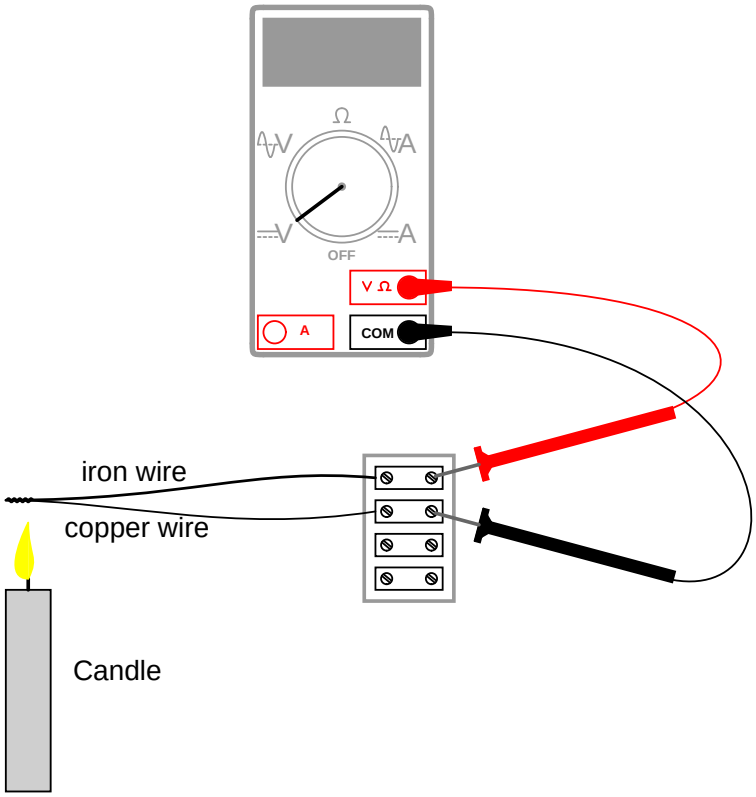
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Thermocouple function and purpose

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Twist one end of the iron wire together with one end of the copper wire. Connect the free ends of these wires to respective terminals on a terminal strip. Set your voltmeter to its most sensitive range and connect it to the terminals where the wires attach. The meter should indicate nearly zero voltage.

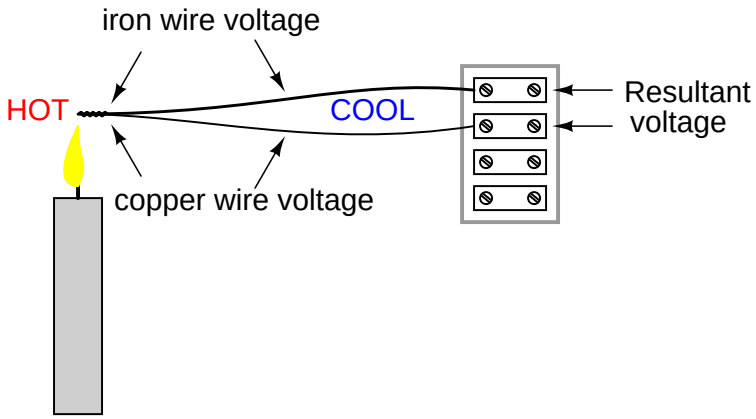
What you have just constructed is a *thermocouple*: a device which generates a small voltage proportional to the temperature difference between the tip and the meter connection points. When the tip is at a temperature equal to the terminal strip, there will be no voltage produced, and thus no indication seen on the voltmeter.

Light a candle and insert the twisted-wire tip into the flame. You should notice an indication on your voltmeter. Remove the thermocouple tip from the flame and let cool until the voltmeter indication is nearly zero again. Now, touch the thermocouple tip to an ice cube and note the voltage indicated by the meter. Is it a greater or lesser magnitude than the indication obtained with the flame? How does the polarity of this voltage compare with that generated by the flame?

After touching the thermocouple tip to the ice cube, warm it by holding it between your fingers. It may take a short while to reach body temperature, so be patient while observing the voltmeter's indication.

A thermocouple is an application of the *Seebeck effect*: the production of a small voltage proportional to a temperature gradient along the length of a wire. This voltage is dependent upon the magnitude of the temperature difference and the type of wire. Directly measuring the Seebeck voltage produced along a length of continuous wire from a temperature gradient is quite difficult, and so will not be attempted in this experiment.

Thermocouples, being made of two dissimilar metals joined at one end, produce a voltage proportional to the temperature of the junction. The temperature gradient along both wires resulting from a constant temperature at the junction produces different Seebeck voltages along those wires' lengths, because the wires are made of different metals. The resultant voltage between the two free wire ends is the *difference* between the two Seebeck voltages:



Thermocouples are widely used as temperature-sensing devices because the mathematical relationship between temperature difference and resultant voltage is both repeatable and fairly linear. By measuring voltage, it is possible to infer temperature. Different ranges of temperature measurement are possible by selecting different metal pairs to be joined together.

3.11 Make your own multimeter

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Sensitive meter movement (Radio Shack catalog # 22-410)
- Selector switch, single-pole, multi-throw, break-before-make (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1386 is a 2-pole, 6-position unit that works well)
- Multi-turn potentiometers, PCB mount (Radio Shack catalog # 271-342 and 271-343 are 15-turn, 1 kΩ and 10 kΩ "trimmer" units, respectively)
- Assorted resistors, preferably high-precision metal film or wire-wound types (Radio Shack catalog # 271-309 is an assortment of metal-film resistors, +/- 1% tolerance)
- Plastic or metal mounting box
- Three "banana" jack style binding posts, or other terminal hardware, for connection to potentiometer circuit (Radio Shack catalog # 274-662 or equivalent)

The most important and expensive component in a meter is the *movement*: the actual needle-and-scale mechanism whose task it is to translate an electrical current into mechanical displacement where it may be visually interpreted. The ideal meter movement is physically large (for ease of viewing) and as sensitive as possible (requires minimal current to produce full-scale deflection of the needle). High-quality meter movements are expensive, but Radio Shack carries some of acceptable quality that are reasonably priced. The model recommended in the parts list is sold as a voltmeter with a 0-15 volt range, but is actually a milliammeter with a range ("multiplier") resistor included separately.

It may be cheaper to purchase an inexpensive analog meter and disassemble it for the meter movement alone. Although the thought of destroying a working multimeter in order to have parts to make your own may sound counter-productive, the goal here is *learning*, not meter function.

I cannot specify resistor values for this experiment, as these depend on the particular meter movement and measurement ranges chosen. Be sure to use high-precision fixed-value resistors rather than carbon-composition resistors. Even if you happen to find carbon-composition resistors of just the right value(s), those values will change or "drift" over time due to aging and temperature fluctuations. Of course, if you don't care about the long-term stability of this meter but are building it just for the learning experience, resistor precision matters little.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: "DC Metering Circuits"

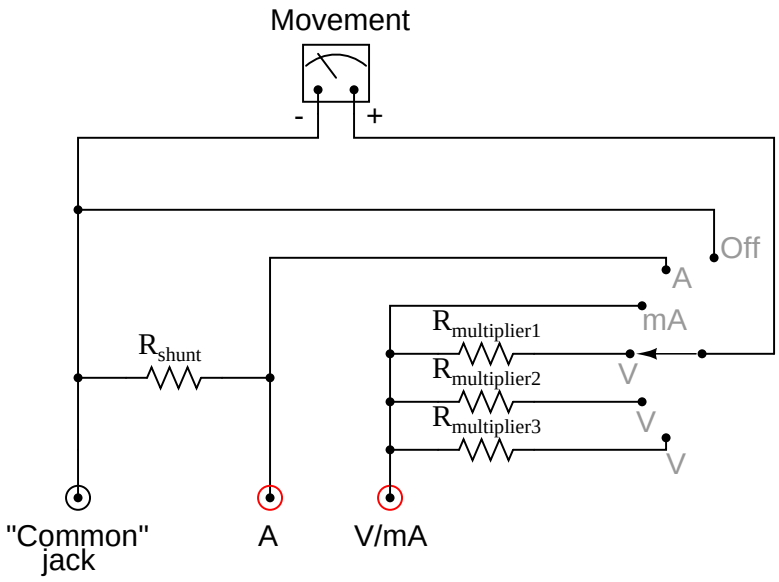
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltmeter design and use
- Ammeter design and use
- Rheostat range limiting

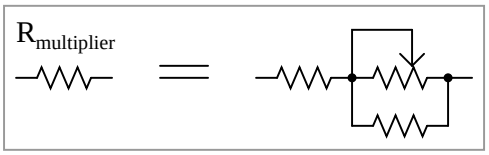
- Calibration theory and practice

- Soldering practice

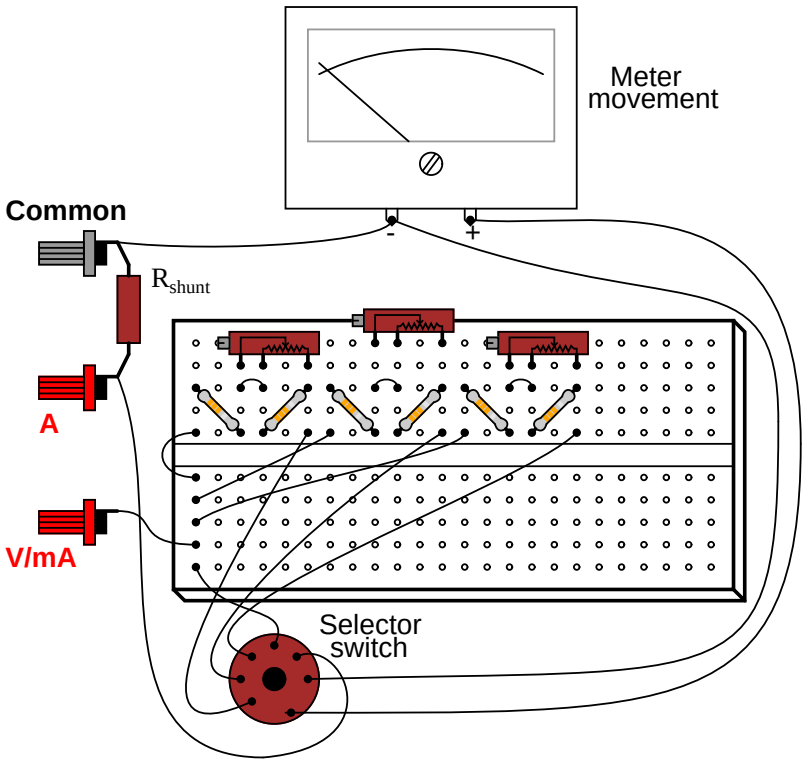
SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



"$R_{multiplier}$" resistors are actually rheostat networks

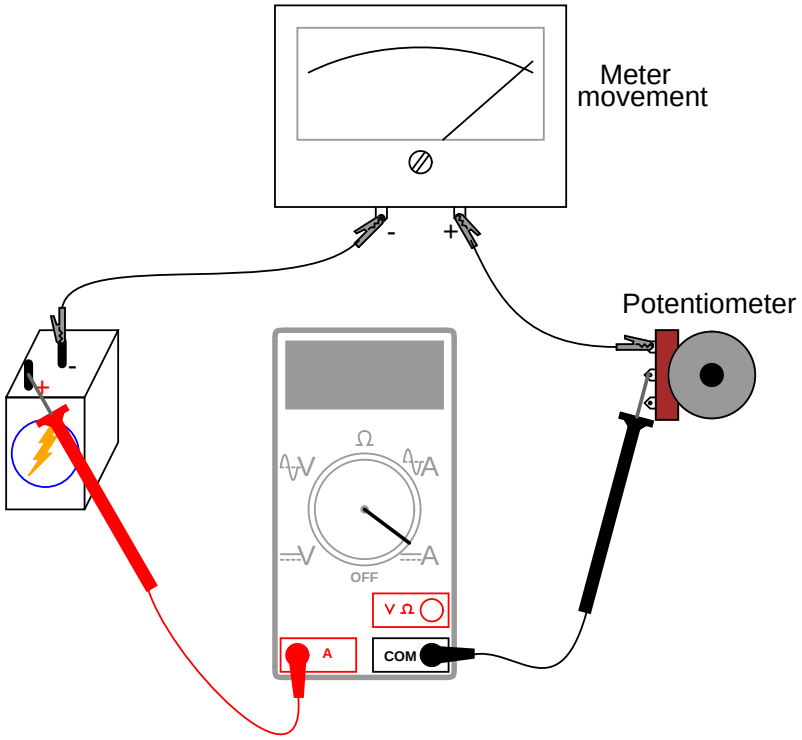


ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

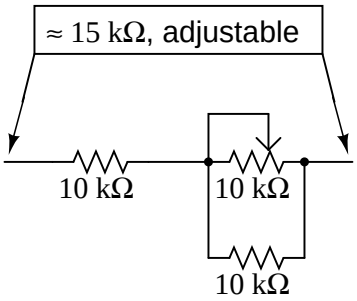
First, you need to determine the characteristics of your meter movement. Most important is to know the *full scale deflection* in milliamps or microamps. To determine this, connect the meter movement, a potentiometer, battery, and digital ammeter in series. Adjust the potentiometer until the meter movement is deflected exactly to full-scale. Read the ammeter's display to find the full-scale current value:



Be very careful not to apply too much current to the meter movement, as movements are very sensitive devices and easily damaged by overcurrent. Most meter movements have full-scale deflection current ratings of 1 mA or less, so choose a potentiometer value high enough to limit current appropriately, and begin testing with the potentiometer turned to maximum resistance. The lower the full-scale current rating of a movement, the more sensitive it is.

After determining the full-scale current rating of your meter movement, you must accurately measure its internal resistance. To do this, disconnect all components from the previous testing circuit and connect your digital ohmmeter across the meter movement terminals. Record this resistance figure along with the full-scale current figure obtained in the last procedure.

Perhaps the most challenging portion of this project is determining the proper range resistance values and implementing those values in the form of rheostat networks. The calculations are outlined in chapter 8 of volume 1 (”Metering Circuits”), but an example is given here. Suppose your meter movement had a full-scale rating of 1 mA and an internal resistance of 400 Ω. If we wanted to determine the necessary range resistance (”$R_{multiplier}$”) to give this movement a range of 0 to 15 volts, we would have to divide 15 volts (total applied voltage) by 1 mA (full-scale current) to obtain the total probe-to-probe resistance of the voltmeter (R=E/I). For this example, that total resistance is 15 kΩ. From this total resistance figure, we subtract the movement’s internal resistance, leaving 14.6 kΩ for the range resistor value. A simple rheostat network to produce 14.6 kΩ (adjustable) would be a 10 kΩ potentiometer in parallel with a 10 kΩ fixed resistor, all in series with another 10 kΩ fixed resistor:



One position of the selector switch directly connects the meter movement between the black **Common** binding post and the red **V/mA** binding post. In this position, the meter is a sensitive ammeter with a range equal to the full-scale current rating of the meter movement. The far clockwise position of the switch disconnects the positive (+) terminal of the movement from either red binding post and shorts it directly to the negative (-) terminal. This protects the meter from electrical damage by isolating it from the red test probe, and it ”dampens” the needle mechanism to further guard against mechanical shock.

The shunt resistor (R_{shunt}) necessary for a high-current ammeter function needs to be a low-resistance unit with a high power dissipation. You will definitely *not* be using any 1/4 watt resistors for this, unless you form a resistance network with several smaller resistors in parallel combination. If you plan on having an ammeter range in excess of 1 amp, I recommend using a thick piece of wire or even a skinny piece of sheet metal as the ”resistor,” suitably filed or notched to provide just the right amount of resistance.

To calibrate a home-made shunt resistor, you will need to connect the your multimeter assembly to a calibrated source of high current, or a high-current source in series with a digital ammeter for reference. Use a small metal file to shave off shunt wire thickness or to notch the sheet metal strip in small, careful amounts. The resistance of your shunt will increase with every stroke of the file, causing the meter movement to deflect more strongly. Remember that you can always approach the exact value in slower and slower steps (file strokes), but you cannot go ”backward” and *decrease* the shunt resistance!

Build the multimeter circuit on a breadboard first while determining proper range resistance values, and perform all calibration adjustments there. For final construction, solder the components on to a printed-circuit board. Radio Shack sells printed circuit boards that have the same layout as a breadboard, for convenience (catalog # 276-170). Feel free to alter the component layout from what is shown.

I strongly recommend that you mount the circuit board and all components in a sturdy box, so that the meter is durably finished. Despite the limitations of this multimeter (no resistance function, inability to measure alternating current, and lower precision than most purchased analog multimeters), it is an excellent project to assist learning fundamental instrument principles and circuit function. A far more accurate and versatile multimeter may be constructed using many of the same parts if an amplifier circuit is added to it, so save the parts and pieces for a later experiment!

3.12 Sensitive voltage detector

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- High-quality ”closed-cup” audio headphones
- Headphone jack: female receptacle for headphone plug (Radio Shack catalog # 274-312)
- Small step-down power transformer (Radio Shack catalog # 273-1365 or equivalent, using the 6-volt secondary winding tap)
- Two 1N4001 rectifying diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- 1 kΩ resistor
- 100 kΩ potentiometer (Radio Shack catalog # 271-092)
- Two ”banana” jack style binding posts, or other terminal hardware, for connection to potentiometer circuit (Radio Shack catalog # 274-662 or equivalent)
- Plastic or metal mounting box

Regarding the headphones, the higher the ”sensitivity” rating in decibels (dB), the better, but listening is believing: if you’re serious about building a detector with maximum sensitivity for small electrical signals, you should try a few different headphone models at a high-quality audio store and ”listen” for which ones produce an audible sound for the *lowest* volume setting on a radio or CD player. Beware, as you could spend hundreds of dollars on a pair of headphones to get the absolute best sensitivity! Take heart, though: I’ve used an *old* pair of Radio Shack ”Realistic” brand headphones with perfectly adequate results, so you don’t need to buy the best.

A *transformer* is a device normally used with alternating current (”AC”) circuits, used to convert high-voltage AC power into low-voltage AC power, and for many other purposes. It is not important that you understand its intended function in this experiment, other than it makes the headphones become more sensitive to low-current electrical signals.

Normally, the transformer used in this type of application (audio speaker impedance matching) is called an ”audio transformer,” with its primary and secondary windings represented by impedance values (1000 Ω : 8 Ω) instead of voltages. An audio transformer will work, but I’ve found small step-down power transformers of 120/6 volt ratio to be perfectly adequate for the task, cheaper (especially when taken from an old thrift-store alarm clock radio), and far more rugged.

The tolerance (precision) rating for the 1 kΩ resistor is irrelevant. The 100 kΩ potentiometer is a recommended option for incorporation into this project, as it gives the user control over the loudness for any given signal. Even though an *audio-taper* potentiometer would be appropriate for this application, it is not necessary. A *linear-taper* potentiometer works quite well.

CROSS-REFERENCES

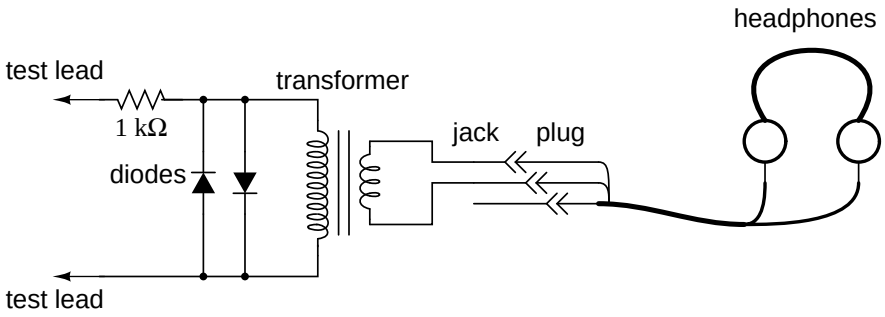
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 10: ”DC Network Analysis” (in regard to the Maximum Power Transfer Theorem)
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 9: ”Transformers”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 12: ”AC Metering Circuits”

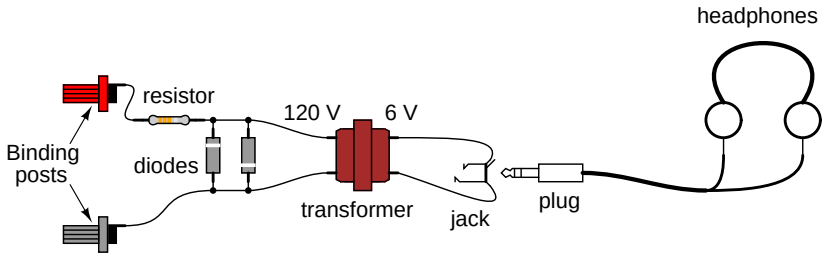
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Soldering practice
- Detection of extremely small electrical signals
- Using a potentiometer as a voltage divider/signal attenuator
- Using diodes to ”clip” voltage at some maximum level

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

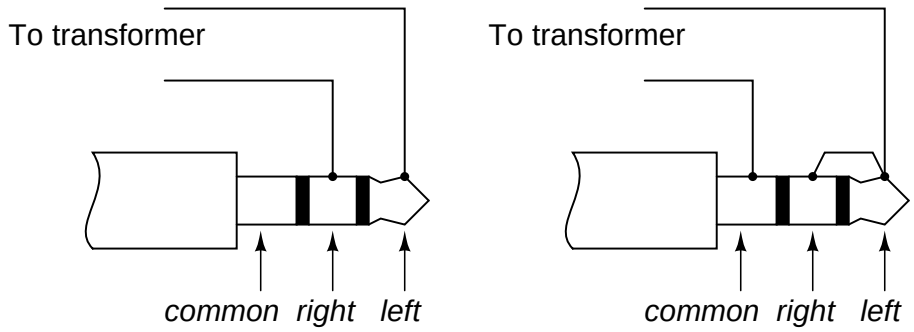


ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The headphones, most likely being stereo units (separate left and right speakers) will have a three-contact plug. You will be connecting to only two of those three contact points. If you only have a ”mono” headphone set with a two-contact plug, just connect to those two contact points. You may either connect the two stereo speakers in series or in parallel. I’ve found the series connection to work best, that is, to produce the most sound from a small signal:



Speakers in series **Speakers in parallel**

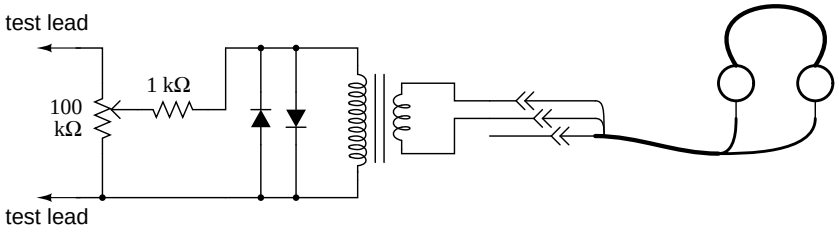
Solder all wire connections well. This detector system is extremely sensitive, and any loose wire connections in the circuit will add unwanted noise to the sounds produced by the measured voltage signal. The two diodes (arrow-like component symbols) connected in parallel with the transformer's primary winding, along with the series-connected 1 kΩ resistor, work together to prevent any more than about 0.7 volts from being dropped across the primary coil of the transformer. This does one thing and one thing only: limit the amount of sound the headphones can produce. The system will work without the diodes and resistor in place, but there will be no limit to sound volume in the circuit, and the resulting sound caused by accidently connecting the test leads across a substantial voltage source (like a battery) can be deafening!

Binding posts provide points of connection for a pair of test probes with banana-style plugs, once the detector components are mounted inside a box. You may use ordinary multimeter probes, or make your own probes with alligator clips at the ends for secure connection to a circuit.

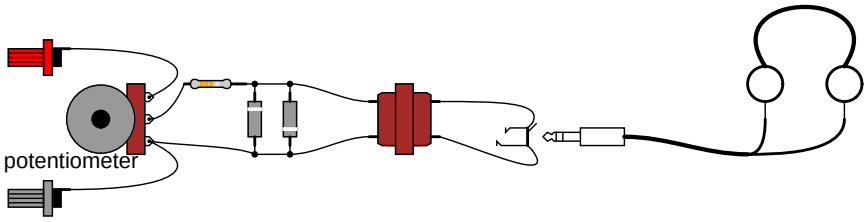
Detectors are intended to be used for balancing bridge measurement circuits, potentiometric (null-balance) voltmeter circuits, and detect extremely low-amplitude AC ("alternating current") signals in the audio frequency range. It is a valuable piece of test equipment, especially for the low-budget experimenter without an oscilloscope. It is also valuable in that it allows you to use a different bodily sense in interpreting the behavior of a circuit.

For connection across any non-trivial source of voltage (1 volt and greater), the detector's extremely high sensitivity should be attenuated. This may be accomplished by connecting a voltage divider to the "front" of the circuit:

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



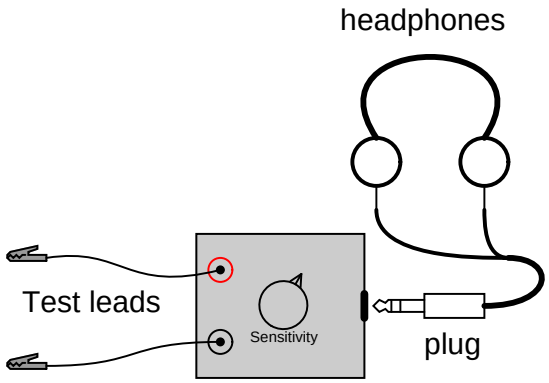
Adjust the 100 kΩ voltage divider potentiometer to about mid-range when initially sensing a voltage signal of unknown magnitude. If the sound is too loud, turn the potentiometer down and try again. If too soft, turn it up and try again. The detector produces a ”click” sound whenever the test leads make or break contact with the voltage source under test. With my cheap headphones, I’ve been able to detect currents of less than 1/10 of a microamp (¡ 0.1 μA).

A good demonstration of the detector’s sensitivity is to touch both test leads to the end of your tongue, with the sensitivity adjustment set to maximum. The voltage produced by metal-to-electrolyte contact (called *galvanic voltage*) is very small, but enough to produce soft ”clicking” sounds every time the leads make and break contact on the wet skin of your tongue.

Try unplugged the headphone plug from the jack (receptacle) and similarly touching it to the end of your tongue. You should still hear soft clicking sounds, but they will be much smaller in amplitude. Headphone speakers are ”low impedance” devices: they require low voltage and ”high” current to deliver substantial sound power. Impedance is a measure of opposition to any and all forms of electric current, including alternating current (AC). Resistance, by comparison, is a strictly measure of opposition to *direct* current (DC). Like resistance, impedance is measured in the unit of the Ohm (Ω), but it is symbolized in equations by the capital letter ”Z” rather than the capital letter ”R”. We use the term ”impedance” to describe the headphone’s opposition to current because it is primarily AC signals that headphones are normally subjected to, not DC.

Most small signal sources have high internal impedances, some much higher than the nominal 8 Ω of the headphone speakers. This is a technical way of saying that they are incapable of supplying substantial amounts of current. As the Maximum Power Transfer Theorem predicts, maximum sound power will be delivered by the headphone speakers when their impedance is ”matched” to the impedance of the voltage source. The transformer does this. The transformer also helps aid the detection of small DC signals by producing inductive ”kickback” every time the test lead circuit is broken, thus ”amplifying” the signal by magnetically storing up electrical energy and suddenly releasing it to the headphone speakers.

I recommend building this detector in a permanent fashion (mounting all components inside of a box, and providing nice test lead wires) so it may be easily used in the future. Constructed as such, it might look something like this:


headphones
Test leads
Sensitivity
plug

3.13 Potentiometric voltmeter

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6 volt batteries
- One potentiometer, single turn, 10 kΩ, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- Two high-value resistors (at least 1 MΩ each)
- Sensitive voltage detector (from previous experiment)
- Analog voltmeter (from previous experiment)

The potentiometer value is not critical: anything from 1 kΩ to 100 kΩ is acceptable. If you have built the ”precision potentiometer” described earlier in this chapter, it is recommended that you use it in this experiment.

Likewise, the actual values of the resistors are not critical. In this particular experiment, the greater the value, the better the results. They need not be precisely equal value, either.

If you have not yet built the sensitive voltage detector, it is recommended that you build one before proceeding with this experiment! It is a very useful, yet simple, piece of test equipment that you should not be without. You can use a digital multimeter set to the ”DC millivolt” (DC mV) range in lieu of a voltage detector, but the headphone-based voltage detector is more appropriate because it demonstrates how you can make precise voltage measurements *without* using expensive or advanced meter equipment. I recommend using your home-made multimeter for the same reason, although any voltmeter will suffice for this experiment.

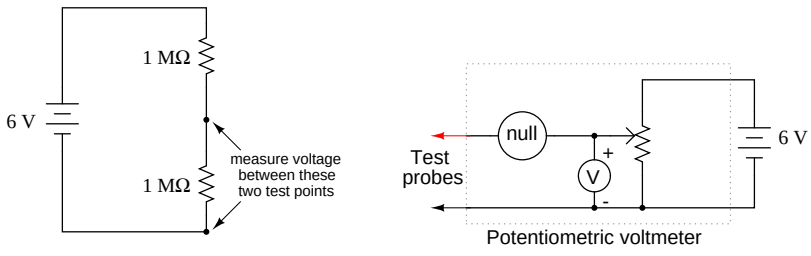
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”

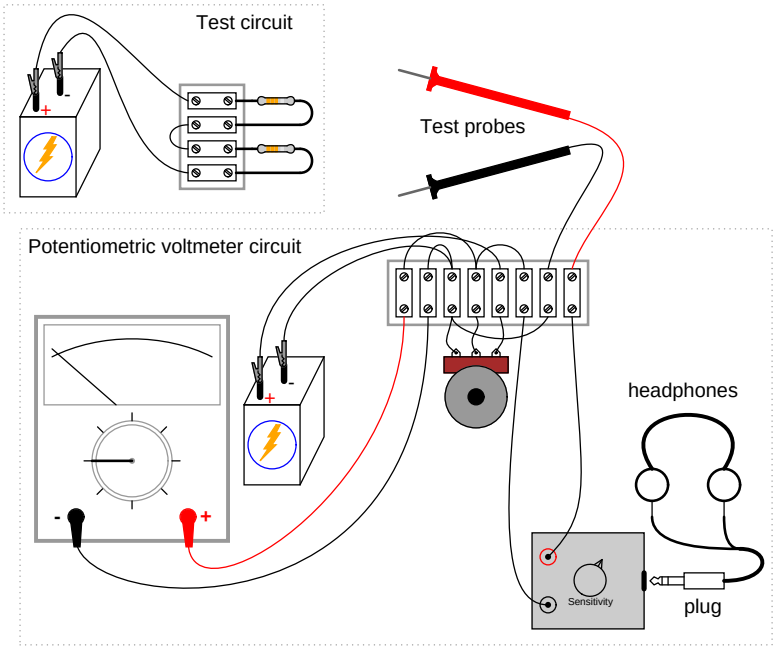
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltmeter loading: its causes and its solution
- Using a potentiometer as a source of variable voltage
- Potentiometric method of voltage measurement

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Build the two-resistor voltage divider circuit shown on the left of the schematic diagram and of the illustration. If the two high-value resistors are of equal value, the battery's voltage should be split in half, with approximately 3 volts dropped across each resistor.

Measure the battery voltage directly with a voltmeter, then measure each resistor's voltage drop. Do you notice anything unusual about the voltmeter's readings? Normally, series voltage drops add to equal the total applied voltage, but in this case you will notice a serious discrepancy. Is Kirchhoff's Voltage Law untrue? Is this an exception to one of the most fundamental laws of electric circuits? No! What is happening is this: when you connect a voltmeter across either resistor, the voltmeter itself *alters* the circuit so that the voltage is not the same as with no meter connected.

I like to use the analogy of an air pressure gauge used to check the pressure of a pneumatic tire. When a gauge is connected to the tire's fill valve, it releases some air out of the tire. This affects the pressure in the tire, and so the gauge reads a slightly lower pressure than what was in the tire before the gauge was connected. In other words, the act of measuring tire pressure *alters* the tire's pressure. Hopefully, though, there is so little air released from the tire during the act of measurement that the reduction in pressure is negligible. Voltmeters similarly impact the voltage they measure, by bypassing some current around the component whose voltage drop is being measured. This affects the voltage drop, but the effect is so slight that you usually don't notice it.

In this circuit, though, the effect is very pronounced. Why is this? Try replacing the two high-value resistors with two of 100 kΩ value each and repeat the experiment. Replace those resistors with two 10 KΩ units and repeat. What do you notice about the voltage readings with

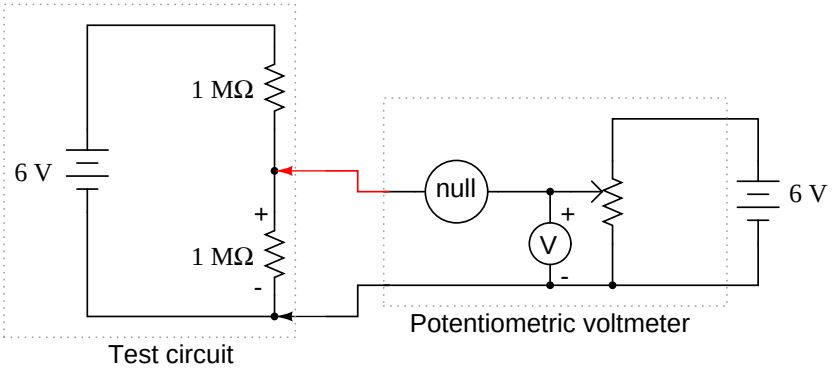
lower-value resistors? What does this tell you about voltmeter "impact" on a circuit in relation to that circuit's resistance? Replace any low-value resistors with the original, high-value (>= 1 MΩ) resistors before proceeding.

Try measuring voltage across the two high-value resistors – one at a time – with a digital voltmeter instead of an analog voltmeter. What do you notice about the digital meter's readings versus the analog meter's? Digital voltmeters typically have greater internal (probe-to-probe) resistance, meaning they draw less current than a comparable analog voltmeter when measuring the same voltage source. An ideal voltmeter would draw zero current from the circuit under test, and thus suffer no voltage "impact" problems.

If you happen to have two voltmeters, try this: connect one voltmeter across one resistor, and the other voltmeter across the other resistor. The voltage readings you get will add up to the total voltage this time, no matter what the resistor values are, even though they're different from the readings obtained from a single meter used twice. Unfortunately, though, it is unlikely that the voltage readings obtained this way are equal to the true voltage drops with no meters connected, and so it is not a practical solution to the problem.

Is there any way to make a "perfect" voltmeter: one that has infinite resistance and draws no current from the circuit under test? Modern laboratory voltmeters approach this goal by using semiconductor "amplifier" circuits, but this method is too technologically advanced for the student or hobbyist to duplicate. A much simpler and much older technique is called the *potentiometric* or *null-balance* method. This involves using an adjustable voltage source to "balance" the measured voltage. When the two voltages are equal, as indicated by a very sensitive *null detector*, the adjustable voltage source is measured with an ordinary voltmeter. Because the two voltage sources are equal to each other, measuring the adjustable source is the same as measuring across the test circuit, except that there is no "impact" error because the adjustable source provides any current needed by the voltmeter. Consequently, the circuit under test remains unaffected, allowing measurement of its true voltage drop.

Examine the following schematic to see how the potentiometric voltmeter method is implemented:



The circle symbol with the word "null" written inside represents the null detector. This can be any arbitrarily sensitive meter movement or voltage indicator. Its sole purpose in this circuit is to indicate when there is *zero* voltage: when the adjustable voltage source (potentiometer) is precisely equal to the voltage drop in the circuit under test. The more sensitive this null detector is, the more precisely the adjustable source may be adjusted to equal the voltage

under test, and the more precisely that test voltage may be measured.

Build this circuit as shown in the illustration and test its operation measuring the voltage drop across one of the high-value resistors in the test circuit. It may be easier to use a regular multimeter as a null detector at first, until you become familiar with the process of adjusting the potentiometer for a ”null” indication, then reading the voltmeter connected across the potentiometer.

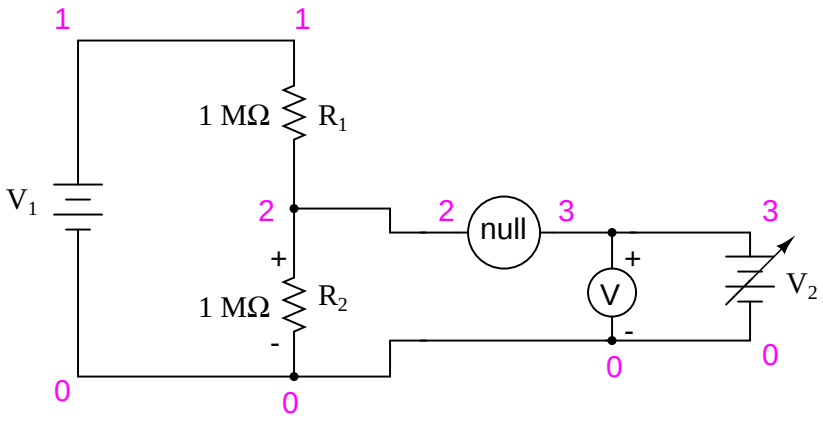
If you are using the headphone-based voltage detector as your null meter, you will need to intermittently make and break contact with the circuit under test and listen for ”clicking” sounds. Do this by firmly securing one of the test probes to the test circuit and momentarily touching the other test probe to the other point in the test circuit again and again, listening for sounds in the headphones indicating a difference of voltage between the test circuit and the potentiometer. Adjust the potentiometer until no clicking sounds can be heard from the headphones. This indicates a ”null” or ”balanced” condition, and you may read the voltmeter indication to see how much voltage is dropped across the test circuit resistor. Unfortunately, the headphone-based null detector provides no indication of whether the potentiometer voltage is *greater than*, or *less than* the test circuit voltage, so you will have to listen for *decreasing* ”click” intensity while turning the potentiometer to determine if you need to adjust the voltage higher or lower.

You may find that a single-turn (”3/4 turn”) potentiometer is too coarse of an adjustment device to accurately ”null” the measurement circuit. A multi-turn potentiometer may be used instead of the single-turn unit for greater adjustment precision, or the ”precision potentiometer” circuit described in an earlier experiment may be used.

Prior to the advent of amplified voltmeter technology, the potentiometric method was the *only* method for making highly accurate voltage measurements. Even now, electrical standards laboratories make use of this technique along with the latest meter technology to minimize meter ”impact” errors and maximize measurement accuracy. Although the potentiometric method requires more skill to use than simply connecting a modern digital voltmeter across a component, and is considered obsolete for all but the most precise measurement applications, it is still a valuable learning process for the new student of electronics, and a useful technique for the hobbyist who may lack expensive instrumentation in their home laboratory.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Potentiometric voltmeter
v1 1 0 dc 6
v2 3 0
r1 1 2 1meg
r2 2 0 1meg
rnull 2 3 10k
rmeter 3 0 50k
.dc v2 0 6 0.5
.print dc v(2,0) v(2,3) v(3,0)
.end
```

This SPICE simulation shows the actual voltage across R_2 of the test circuit, the null detector's voltage, and the voltage across the adjustable voltage source, as that source is adjusted from 0 volts to 6 volts in 0.5 volt steps. In the output of this simulation, you will notice that the voltage across R_2 *is* impacted significantly when the measurement circuit is unbalanced, returning to its true voltage only when there is practically zero voltage across the null detector. At that point, of course, the adjustable voltage source is at a value of 3.000 volts: precisely equal to the (unaffected) test circuit voltage drop.

What is the lesson to be learned from this simulation? That a potentiometric voltmeter avoids impacting the test circuit *only* when it is in a condition of perfect balance ("null") with the test circuit!

3.14 4-wire resistance measurement

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6-volt battery
- Electromagnet made from experiment in previous chapter, or a large spool of wire

It would be ideal in this experiment to have two meters: one voltmeter and one ammeter. For experimenters on a budget, this may not be possible. Whatever ammeter is used should be capable measuring at least a few amps of current. A 6-volt ”lantern” battery essentially short-circuited by a long piece of wire may produce currents of this magnitude, and your ammeter needs to be capable of measuring it without blowing a fuse or sustaining other damage. Make sure the highest current range on the meter is at least 5 amps!

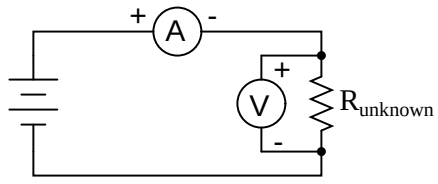
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”

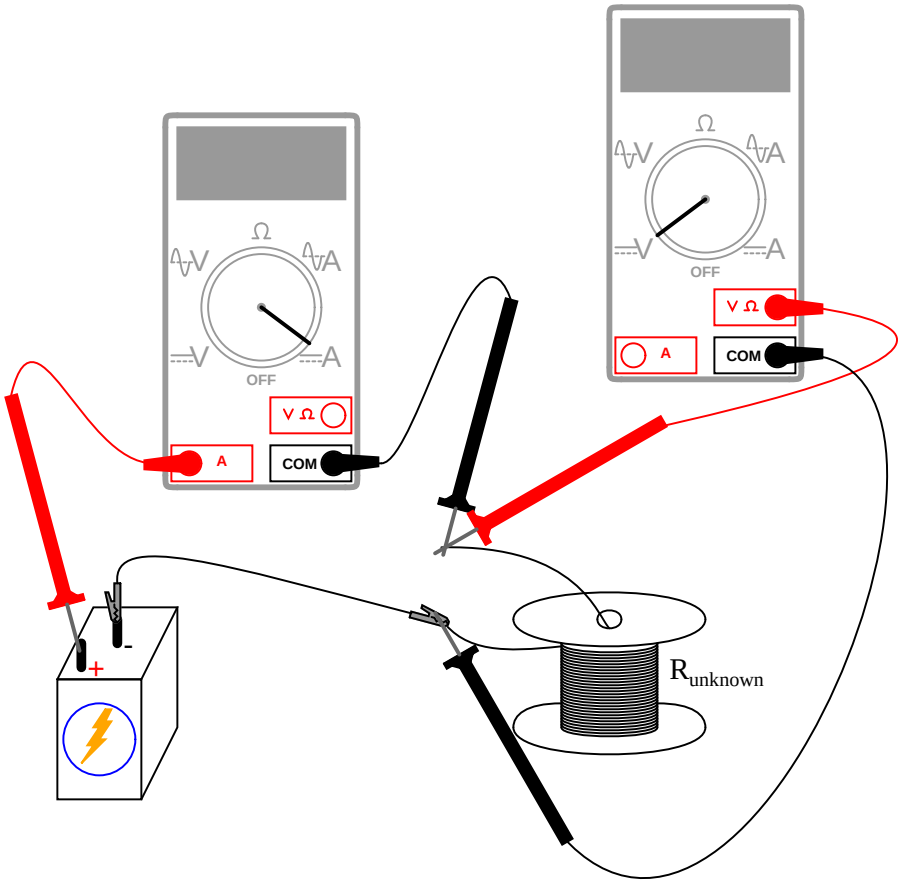
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Operating principle of Kelvin (4-wire) resistance measurement
- How to measure low resistances with common test equipment

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



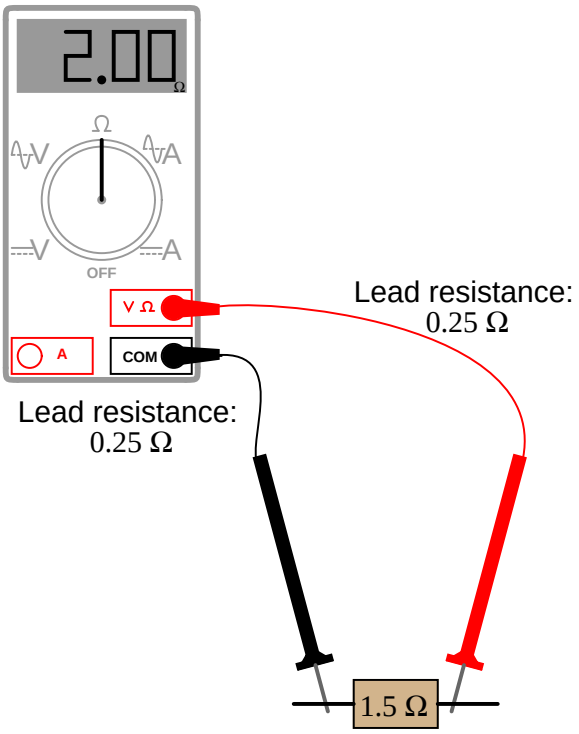
INSTRUCTIONS

Although this experiment is best performed with two meters, and indeed is shown as such in the schematic diagram and illustration, one multimeter is sufficient.

Most ohmmeters operate on the principle of applying a small voltage across an unknown resistance ($R_{unknown}$) and inferring resistance from the amount of current drawn by it. Except in special cases such as the *megger*, both the voltage and current quantities employed by the meter are quite small.

This presents a problem for measurement of low resistances, as a low resistance specimen may be of much smaller resistance value than the meter circuitry itself. Imagine trying to measure the diameter of a cotton thread with a yardstick, or measuring the weight of a coin with a scale built for weighing freight trucks, and you will appreciate the problem at hand.

One of the many sources of error in measuring small resistances with an ordinary ohmmeter is the resistance of the ohmmeter's own test leads. Being part of the measurement circuit, the test leads may contain more resistance than the resistance of the test specimen, incurring significant measurement error by their presence:



One solution is called the *Kelvin*, or *4-wire*, resistance measurement method. It involves the use of an ammeter and voltmeter, determining specimen resistance by Ohm's Law calculation. A current is passed through the unknown resistance and measured. The voltage dropped across the resistance is measured by the voltmeter, and resistance calculated using Ohm's Law (R=E/I). Very small resistances may be measured easily by using large current, providing a more easily measured voltage drop from which to infer resistance than if a small current were used.

Because only the voltage dropped by the unknown resistance is factored into the calculation – not the voltage dropped across the ammeter's test leads or any other connecting wires carrying the main current – errors otherwise caused by these stray resistances are completely eliminated.

First, select a suitably low resistance specimen to use in this experiment. I suggest the electromagnet coil specified in the last chapter, or a spool of wire where both ends may be accessed. Connect a 6-volt battery to this specimen, with an ammeter connected in series. **WARNING:** the ammeter used should be capable of measuring at least 5 amps of current, so that it will not be damaged by the (possibly) high current generated in this near-short circuit condition. If you have a second meter, use it to measure voltage across the specimen's connection points, as shown in the illustration, and record both meters' indications.

If you have only one meter, use it to measure current first, recording its indication as quickly as possible, then immediately opening (breaking) the circuit. Switch the meter to its voltage mode, connect it across the specimen's connection points, and re-connect the battery, quickly noting the voltage indication. You don't want to leave the battery connected to the specimen

for any longer than necessary for obtaining meter measurements, as it will begin to rapidly discharge due to the high circuit current, thus compromising measurement accuracy when the meter is re-configured and the circuit closed once more for the next measurement. When two meters are used, this is not as significant an issue, because the current and voltage indications may be recorded *simultaneously*.

Take the voltage measurement and divide it by the current measurement. The quotient will be equal to the specimen's resistance in ohms.

3.15 A very simple computer

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Three batteries, each one with a different voltage
- Three equal-value resistors, between 10 kΩ and 47 kΩ each

When selecting resistors, measure each one with an ohmmeter and choose three that are the closest in value to each other. Precision is very important for this experiment!

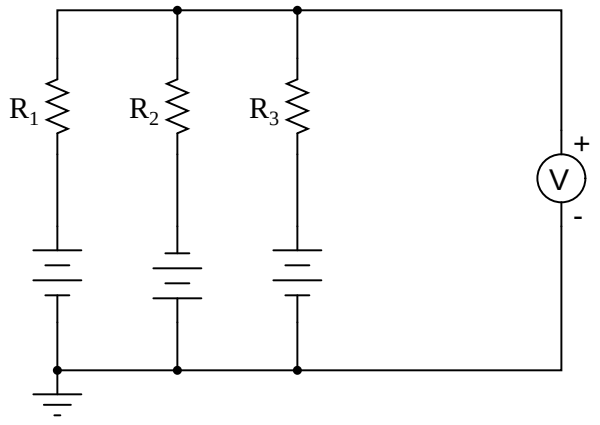
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 10: ”DC Network Analysis”

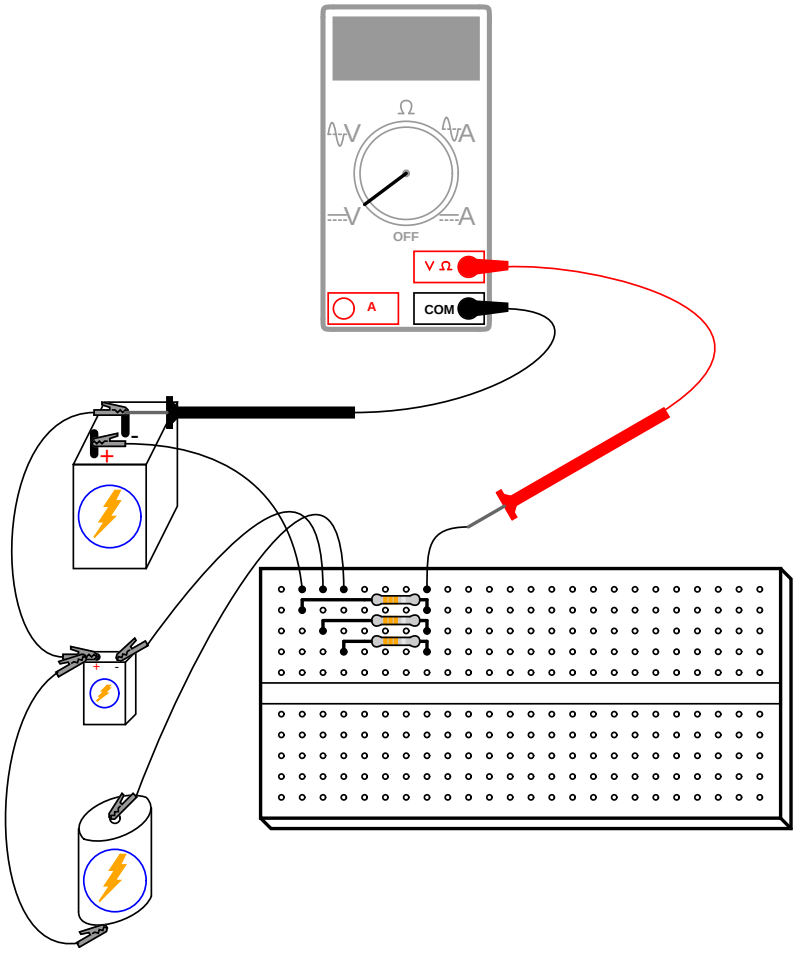
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

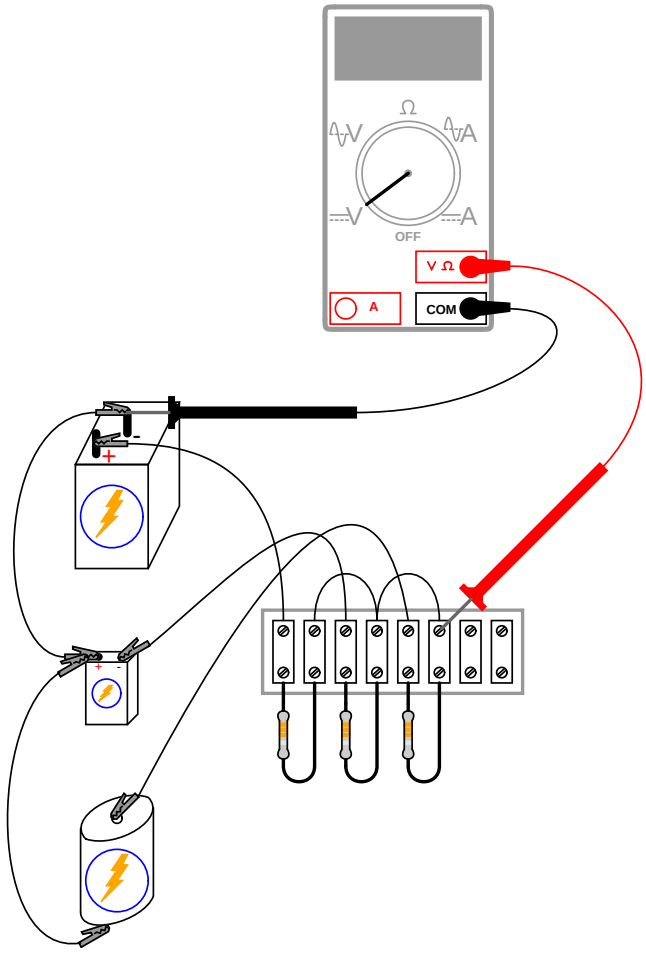
- How a resistor network can function as a voltage signal averager
- Application of Millman’s Theorem

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION


Ω
V
A
V
A
OFF
V Ω
A
COM



INSTRUCTIONS

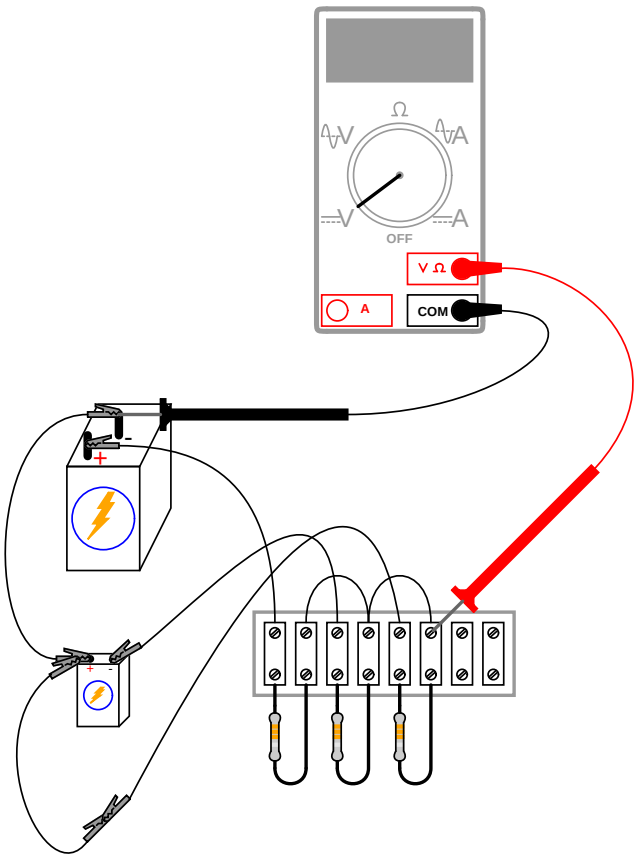
This deceptively crude circuit performs the function of mathematically *averaging* three voltage signals together, and so fulfills a specialized computational role. In other words, it is a computer that can only do one mathematical operation: averaging three quantities together.

Build this circuit as shown and measure all battery voltages with a voltmeter. Write these voltage figures on paper and average them together (E_1 + E_2 + E_3, divided by three). When you measure each battery voltage, keep the black test probe connected to the "ground" point (the side of the battery directly joined to the other batteries by jumper wires), and touch the red probe to the other battery terminal. Polarity is important here! You will notice one battery in the schematic diagram connected "backward" to the other two, negative side "up." This battery's voltage should read as a negative quantity when measured by a properly connected digital meter, the other batteries measuring positive.

When the voltmeter is connected to the circuit at the point shown in the schematic and illustrations, it should register the algebraic average of the three batteries' voltages. If the

resistor values are chosen to match each other very closely, the ”output” voltage of this circuit should match the calculated average very closely as well.

If one battery is disconnected, the output voltage will equal the average voltage of the remaining batteries. If the jumper wires formerly connecting the removed battery to the averager circuit are connected to each other, the circuit will average the two remaining voltages together with 0 volts, producing a smaller output signal:



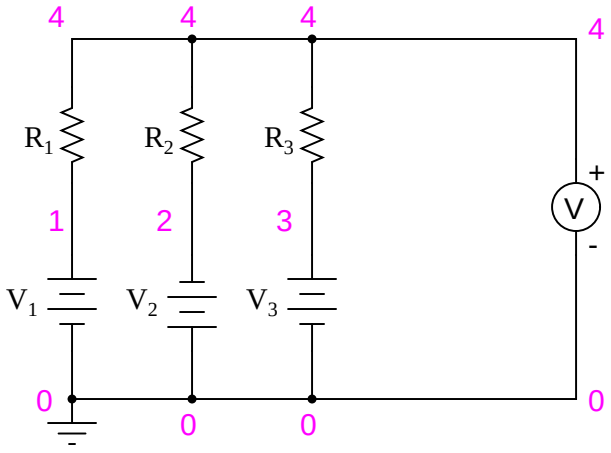
The sheer simplicity of this circuit deters most people from calling it a ”computer,” but it undeniably performs the mathematical function of averaging. Not only does it perform this function, but it performs it much faster than any modern digital computer can! Digital computers, such as personal computers (PCs) and pushbutton calculators, perform mathematical operations in a series of discrete steps. Analog computers perform calculations in continuous fashion, exploiting Ohm’s and Kirchhoff’s Laws for an arithmetic purpose, the ”answer” computed as fast as voltage propagates through the circuit (ideally, at the speed of light!).

With the addition of circuits called *amplifiers*, voltage signals in analog computer networks may be boosted and re-used in other networks to perform a wide variety of mathematical functions. Such analog computers excel at performing the calculus operations of numerical differentiation and integration, and as such may be used to simulate the behavior of complex mechanical, electrical, and even chemical systems. At one time, analog computers were the

ultimate tool for engineering research, but since then have been largely supplanted by digital computer technology. Digital computers enjoy the advantage of performing mathematical operations with much better precision than analog computers, albeit at much slower theoretical speeds.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Voltage averager
v1 1 0
v2 0 2 dc 9
v3 3 0 dc 1.5
r1 1 4 10k
r2 2 4 10k
r3 3 4 10k
.dc v1 6 6 1
.print dc v(4,0)
.end
```

With this SPICE netlist, we can force a digital computer to simulate and analog computer, which averages three numbers together. Obviously, we aren't doing this for the practical task of averaging numbers, but rather to learn more about circuits and more about computer simulation of circuits!

3.16 Potato battery

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- One large potato
- One lemon (optional)
- Strip of zinc, or galvanized metal
- Piece of thick copper wire

The basic experiment is based on the use of a potato, but many fruits and vegetables work as potential batteries!

For the zinc electrode, a large galvanized nail works well. Nails with a thick, rough zinc texture are preferable to galvanized nails that are smooth.

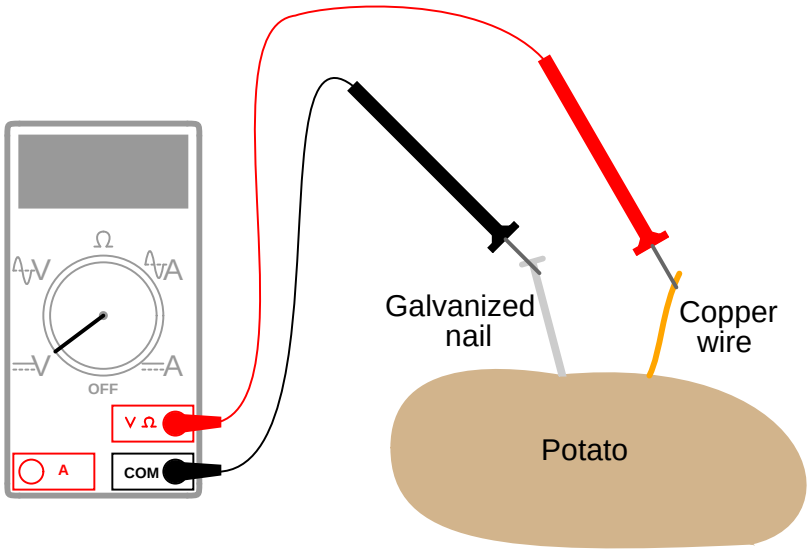
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 11: ”Batteries and Power Systems”

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- The importance of chemical activity in battery operation
- How electrode surface area affects battery operation

ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Push both the nail and the wire deep into the potato. Measure voltage output by the potato battery with a voltmeter. Now, wasn't that easy?

Seriously, though, experiment with different metals, electrode depths, and electrode spacings to obtain the greatest voltage possible from the potato. Try other vegetables or fruits and compare voltage output with the same electrode metals.

It can be difficult to power a load with a single "potato" battery, so don't expect to light up an incandescent lamp or power a hobby motor or do anything like that. Even if the voltage output is adequate, a potato battery has a fairly high internal resistance which causes its voltage to "sag" badly under even a light load. With multiple potato batteries connected in series, parallel, or series-parallel arrangement, though, it is possible to obtain enough voltage and current capacity to power a small load.

3.17 Capacitor charging and discharging

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6 volt battery
- Two large electrolytic capacitors, 1000 μF minimum (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1019, 272-1032, or equivalent)
- Two 1 kΩ resistors
- One toggle switch, SPST ("Single-Pole, Single-Throw")

Large-value capacitors are required for this experiment to produce time constants slow enough to track with a voltmeter and stopwatch. Be warned that most large capacitors are of the "electrolytic" type, and they are *polarity sensitive*! One terminal of each capacitor should be marked with a definite polarity sign. Usually capacitors of the size specified have a negative (-) marking or series of negative markings pointing toward the negative terminal. Very large capacitors are often polarity-labeled by a positive (+) marking next to one terminal. Failure to heed proper polarity will almost surely result in capacitor failure, even with a source voltage as low as 6 volts. When electrolytic capacitors fail, they typically **explode**, spewing caustic chemicals and emitting foul odors. Please, try to avoid this!

I recommend a household light switch for the "SPST toggle switch" specified in the parts list.

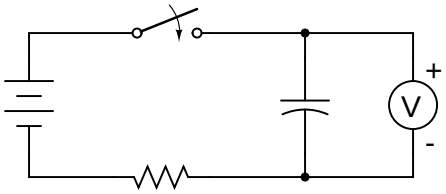
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 13: "Capacitors"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 16: "RC and L/R Time Constants"

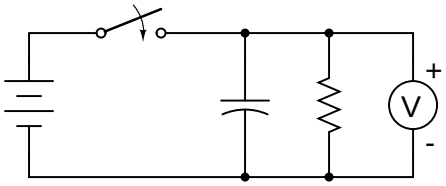
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Capacitor charging action
- Capacitor discharging action
- Time constant calculation
- Series and parallel capacitance

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

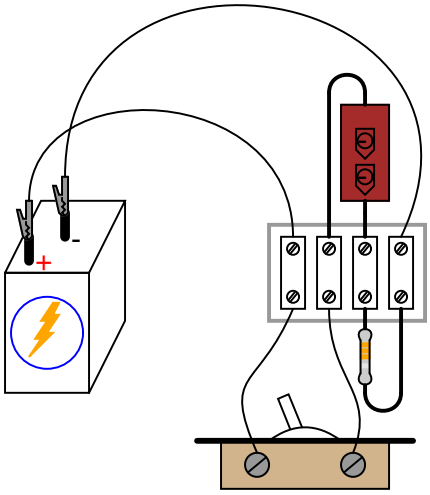


Charging circuit

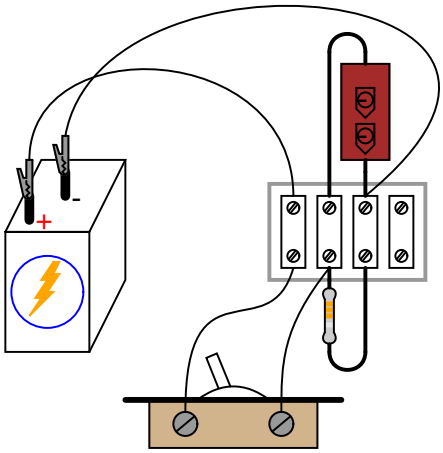


Discharging circuit

ILLUSTRATION



Charging circuit



Discharging circuit

INSTRUCTIONS

Build the ”charging” circuit and measure voltage across the capacitor when the switch is closed. Notice how it increases slowly over time, rather than suddenly as would be the case with a resistor. You can ”reset” the capacitor back to a voltage of zero by shorting across its terminals with a piece of wire.

The ”time constant” (τ) of a resistor capacitor circuit is calculated by taking the circuit resistance and multiplying it by the circuit capacitance. For a 1 kΩ resistor and a 1000 μF capacitor, the time constant should be 1 second. This is the amount of time it takes for the capacitor voltage to increase approximately 63.2% from its present value to its final value: the voltage of the battery.

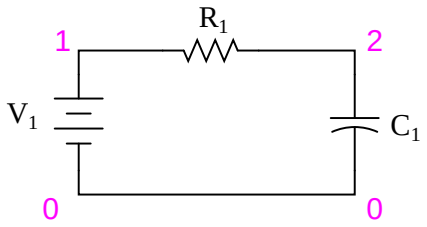
It is educational to plot the voltage of a charging capacitor over time on a sheet of graph paper, to see how the inverse exponential curve develops. In order to plot the action of this circuit, though, we must find a way of slowing it down. A one-second time constant doesn't provide much time to take voltmeter readings!

We can increase this circuit's time constant two different ways: changing the total circuit resistance, and/or changing the total circuit capacitance. Given a pair of identical resistors and a pair of identical capacitors, experiment with various series and parallel combinations to obtain the slowest charging action. You should already know by now how multiple resistors need to be connected to form a greater total resistance, but what about capacitors? This circuit will demonstrate to you how capacitance changes with series and parallel capacitor connections. Just be sure that you insert the capacitor(s) in the proper direction: with the ends labeled negative (-) electrically ”closest” to the battery's negative terminal!

The discharging circuit provides the same kind of changing capacitor voltage, except this time the voltage jumps to full battery voltage when the switch closes and slowly falls when the switch is opened. Experiment once again with different combinations of resistors and capacitors, making sure as always that the capacitor's polarity is correct.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Capacitor charging circuit
v1 1 0 dc 6
r1 1 2 1k
c1 2 0 1000u ic=0
.tran 0.1 5 uic
.plot tran v(2,0)
.end
```

3.18 Rate-of-change indicator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6 volt batteries
- Capacitor, 0.1 μF (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135)
- 1 MΩ resistor
- Potentiometer, single turn, 5 kΩ, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1714)

The potentiometer value is not especially critical, although lower-resistance units will, in theory, work better for this experiment than high-resistance units. I've used a 10 kΩ potentiometer for this circuit with excellent results.

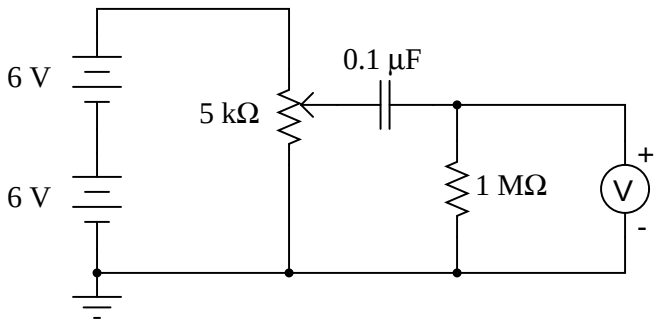
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 13: "Capacitors"

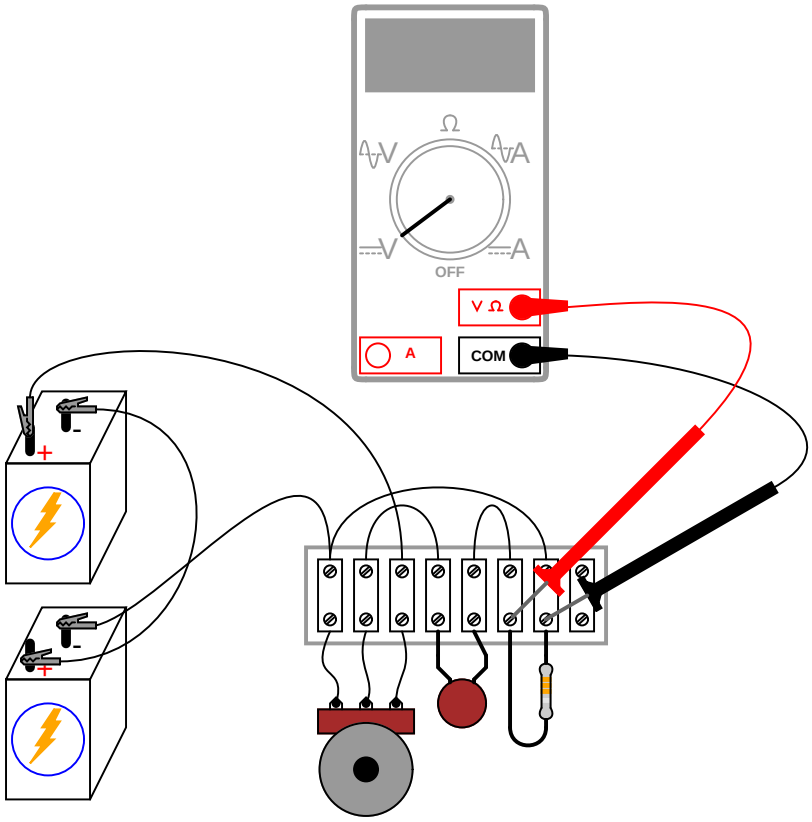
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to build a differentiator circuit
- Obtain an empirical understanding of the *derivative* calculus function

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Measure voltage between the potentiometer's wiper terminal and the "ground" point shown in the schematic diagram (the negative terminal of the lower 6-volt battery). This is the input voltage for the circuit, and you can see how it smoothly varies between zero and 12 volts as the potentiometer control is turned full-range. Since the potentiometer is used here as a voltage divider, this behavior should be unsurprising to you.

Now, measure voltage across the 1 MΩ resistor while moving the potentiometer control. A digital voltmeter is highly recommended, and I advise setting it to a very sensitive (millivolt) range to obtain the strongest indications. What does the voltmeter indicate while the potentiometer is *not* being moved? Turn the potentiometer slowly clockwise and note the voltmeter's indication. Turn the potentiometer slowly counter-clockwise and note the voltmeter's indication. What difference do you see between the two different directions of potentiometer control motion?

Try moving the potentiometer in such a way that the voltmeter gives a steady, small indication. What kind of potentiometer motion provides the *steadiest* voltage across the 1 MΩ resistor?

In calculus, a function representing the rate of change of one variable as compared to another is called the *derivative*. This simple circuit illustrates the concept of the derivative by producing an output voltage proportional to the input voltage's *rate of change over time*. Be-

cause this circuit performs the calculus function of differentiation with respect to time (outputting the time-derivative of an incoming signal), it is called a *differentiator* circuit.

Like the *averager* circuit shown earlier in this chapter, the differentiator circuit is a kind of analog computer. Differentiation is a far more complex mathematical function than averaging, especially when implemented in a digital computer, so this circuit is an excellent demonstration of the elegance of analog circuitry in performing mathematical computations.

More accurate differentiator circuits may be built by combining resistor-capacitor networks with electronic *amplifier* circuits. For more detail on computational circuitry, go to the "Analog Integrated Circuits" chapter in this Experiments volume.

Chapter 4

AC CIRCUITS

Contents

4.1 Introduction

”AC” stands for **A**lternating **C**urrent, which can refer to either voltage or current that alternates in polarity or direction, respectively. These experiments are designed to introduce you to several important concepts specific to AC.

A convenient source of AC voltage is household wall-socket power, which presents significant shock hazard. In order to minimize this hazard while taking advantage of the convenience of this source of AC, a small *power supply* will be the first project, consisting of a *transformer*

that steps the hazardous voltage (110 to 120 volts AC, RMS) down to 12 volts or less. The title of "power supply" is somewhat misleading. This device does not really act as a source or *supply* of power, but rather as a power *converter*, to reduce the hazardous voltage of wall-socket power to a much safer level.

4.2 Transformer – power supply

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Power transformer, 120VAC step-down to 12VAC, with center-tapped secondary winding (Radio Shack catalog # 273-1365, 273-1352, or 273-1511).
- Terminal strip with at least three terminals.
- Household wall-socket power plug and cord.
- Line cord switch.
- Box (optional).
- Fuse and fuse holder (optional).

Power transformers may be obtained from old radios, which can usually be obtained from a thrift store for a few dollars (or less!). The radio would also provide the power cord and plug necessary for this project. Line cord switches may be obtained from a hardware store. If you want to be absolutely sure what kind of transformer you're getting, though, you should purchase one from an electronics supply store.

If you decide to equip your power supply with a fuse, be sure to get a *slow-acting*, or *slow-blow* fuse. Transformers may draw high "surge" currents when initially connected to an AC source, and these transient currents will blow a fast-acting fuse. Determine the proper current rating of the fuse by dividing the transformer's "VA" rating by 120 volts: in other words, calculate the full allowable primary winding current and size the fuse accordingly.

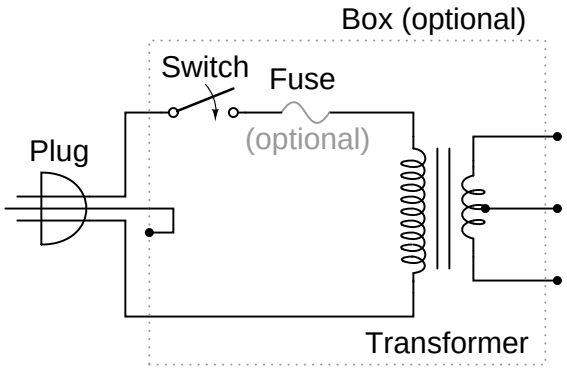
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 1: "Basic AC Theory"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 9: "Transformers"

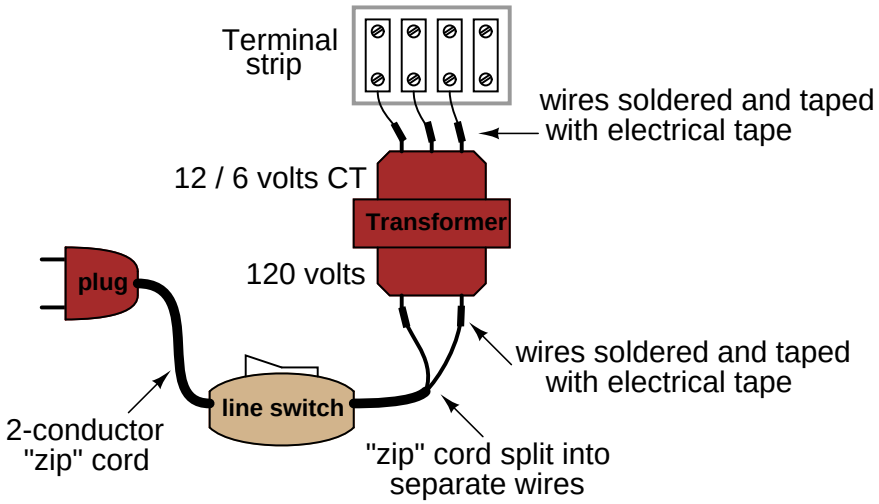
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Transformer voltage step-down behavior.
- Purpose of tapped windings.
- Safe wiring techniques for power cords.

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Warning! *This project involves the use of dangerous voltages.* You must make sure all high-voltage (120 volt household power) conductors are safely insulated from accidental contact. No bare wires should be seen anywhere on the ”primary” side of the transformer circuit. Be sure to *solder* all wire connections so that they’re secure, and use real electrical tape (not duct tape, scotch tape, packing tape, or any other kind!) to insulate your soldered connections.

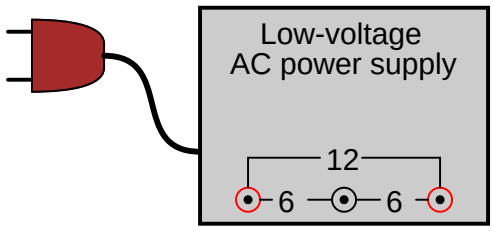
If you wish to enclose the transformer inside of a box, you may use an electrical ”junction” box, obtained from a hardware store or electrical supply house. If the enclosure used is metal rather than plastic, a three-prong plug should be used, with the ”ground” prong (the longest one on the plug) connected directly to the metal case for maximum safety.

Before plugging the plug into a wall socket, do a *safety check* with an ohmmeter. With the line switch in the ”on” position, measure resistance between either plug prong and the transformer case. There should be infinite (maximum) resistance. If the meter registers continuity (some resistance value less than infinity), then you have a ”short” between one of the power conductors and the case, which is dangerous!

Next, check the transformer windings themselves for continuity. With the line switch in the "on" position, there should be a small amount of resistance between the two plug prongs. When the switch is turned "off," the resistance indication should increase to infinity (open circuit – no continuity). Measure resistance between pairs of wires on the secondary side. These secondary windings should register much lower resistances than the primary. Why is this?

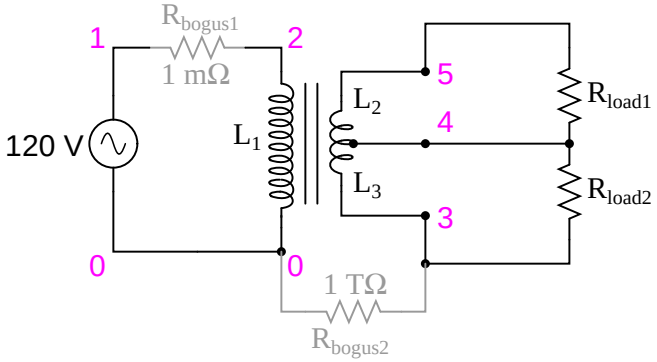
Plug the cord into a wall socket and turn the switch on. You should be able to measure AC voltage at the secondary side of the transformer, between pairs of terminals. Between two of these terminals, you should measure about 12 volts. Between either of these two terminals and the third terminal, you should measure half that. This third wire is the "center-tap" wire of the secondary winding.

It would be advisable to keep this project assembled for use in powering other experiments shown in this book. From here on, I will designate this "low-voltage AC power supply" using this illustration:



COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
transformer with center-tap secondary
v1 1 0 ac 120 sin
rbogus1 1 2 1e-3
l1 2 0 10
l2 5 4 0.025
l3 4 3 0.025
k1 l1 l2 0.999
k2 l2 l3 0.999
```

```
k3 l1 l3 0.999
rbogus2 3 0 1e12
rload1 5 4 1k
rload2 4 3 1k
* Sets up AC analysis at 60 Hz:
.ac lin 1 60 60
* Prints primary voltage between nodes 2 and 0:
.print ac v(2,0)
* Prints (top) secondary voltage between nodes 5 and 4:
.print ac v(5,4)
* Prints (bottom) secondary voltage between nodes 4 and 3:
.print ac v(4,3)
* Prints (total) secondary voltage between nodes 5 and 3:
.print ac v(5,3)
.end
```

4.3 Build a transformer

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Steel flatbar, 4 pieces
- Miscellaneous bolts, nuts, washers
- 28 gauge ”magnet” wire
- Low-voltage AC power supply

”Magnet wire” is small-gauge wire insulated with a thin enamel coating. It is intended to be used to make electromagnets, because many ”turns” of wire may be wrapped in a relatively small-diameter coil. Any gauge of wire will work, but 28 gauge is recommended so as to make a coil with as many turns as possible in a small diameter.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 9: ”Transformers”

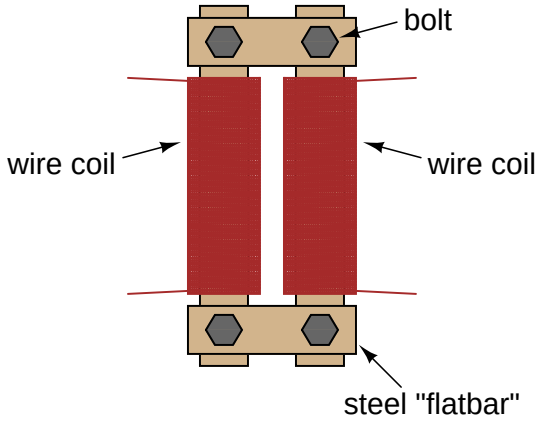
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Effects of electromagnetism.
- Effects of electromagnetic induction.
- Effects of magnetic coupling on voltage regulation.
- Effects of winding turns on ”step” ratio.

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

Transformer

ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Wrap two, equal-length bars of steel with a thin layer of electrically-insulating tape. Wrap several hundred turns of magnet wire around these two bars. You may make these windings with an equal or unequal number of turns, depending on whether or not you want the transformer to be able to ”step” voltage up or down. I recommend equal turns to begin with, then experiment later with coils of unequal turn count.

Join those bars together in a rectangle with two other, shorter, bars of steel. Use bolts to secure the bars together (it is recommended that you drill bolt holes through the bars *before* you wrap wire around them).

Check for shorted windings (ohmmeter reading between wire ends and steel bar) after you’re finished wrapping the windings. There should be no continuity (infinite resistance) between the winding and the steel bar. Check for continuity between winding ends to ensure that the wire isn’t broken open somewhere within the coil. If either resistance measurements indicate a problem, the winding must be re-made.

Power your transformer with the low-voltage output of the ”power supply” described at the beginning of this chapter. **Do not** power your transformer directly from wall-socket voltage (120 volts), as your home-made windings really aren’t rated for any significant voltage!

Measure the output voltage (secondary winding) of your transformer with an AC voltmeter. Connect a load of some kind (light bulbs are good!) to the secondary winding and re-measure voltage. Note the degree of voltage ”sag” at the secondary winding as load current is increased.

Loosen or remove the connecting bolts from one of the short bar pieces, thus increasing the *reluctance* (analogous to *resistance*) of the magnetic ”circuit” coupling the two windings together. Note the effect on output voltage and voltage ”sag” under load.

If you’ve made your transformer with unequal-turn windings. try it in step-up versus step-down mode, powering different AC loads.

4.4 Variable inductor

PARTS AND MATERIALS

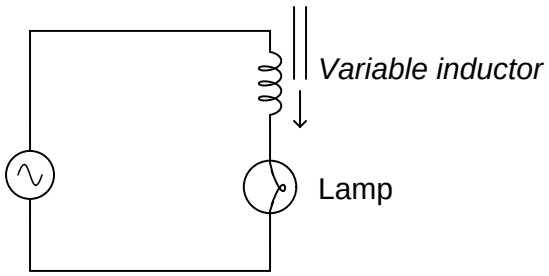
- Paper tube, from a toilet-paper roll
- Bar of iron or steel, large enough to almost fill diameter of paper tube
- 28 gauge ”magnet” wire
- Low-voltage AC power supply
- Incandescent lamp, rated for power supply voltage

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 14: ”Magnetism and Electromagnetism”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 15: ”Inductors”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 3: ”Reactance and Impedance – Inductive”

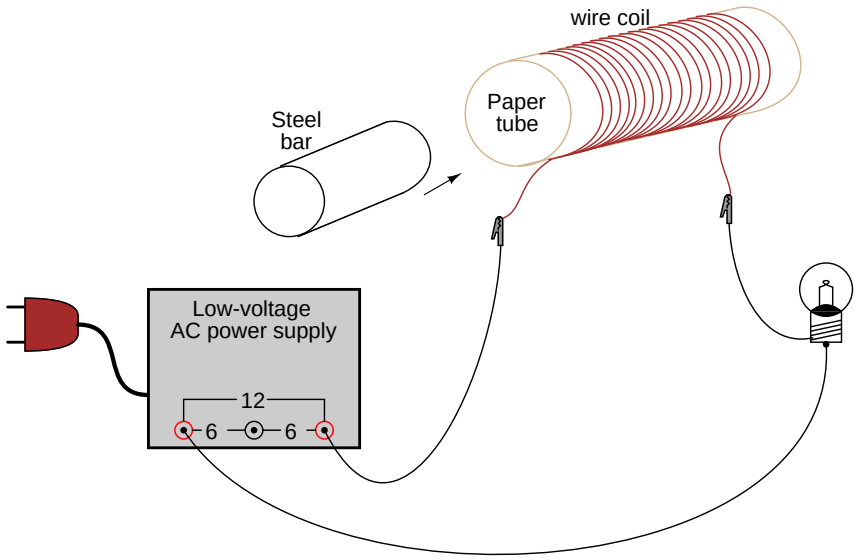
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Effects of magnetic permeability on inductance.
- How inductive reactance can control current in an AC circuit.

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Wrap hundreds of turns of magnet wire around the paper tube. Connect this home-made inductor in series with an AC power supply and lamp to form a circuit. When the tube is empty, the lamp should glow brightly. When the steel bar is inserted in the tube, the lamp dims from increased inductance (L) and consequently increased inductive reactance (X_L).

Try using bars of different materials, such as copper and stainless steel, if available. Not all metals have the same effect, due to differences in magnetic *permeability*.

4.5 Sensitive audio detector

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- High-quality ”closed-cup” audio headphones
- Headphone jack: female receptacle for headphone plug (Radio Shack catalog # 274-312)
- Small step-down power transformer (Radio Shack catalog # 273-1365 or equivalent, using the 6-volt secondary winding tap)
- Two 1N4001 rectifying diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- 1 kΩ resistor
- 100 kΩ potentiometer (Radio Shack catalog # 271-092)
- Two ”banana” jack style binding posts, or other terminal hardware, for connection to potentiometer circuit (Radio Shack catalog # 274-662 or equivalent)
- Plastic or metal mounting box

Regarding the headphones, the higher the ”sensitivity” rating in decibels (dB), the better, but listening is believing: if you’re serious about building a detector with maximum sensitivity for small electrical signals, you should try a few different headphone models at a high-quality audio store and ”listen” for which ones produce an audible sound for the *lowest* volume setting on a radio or CD player. Beware, as you could spend hundreds of dollars on a pair of headphones to get the absolute best sensitivity! Take heart, though: I’ve used an *old* pair of Radio Shack ”Realistic” brand headphones with perfectly adequate results, so you don’t need to buy the best.

Normally, the transformer used in this type of application (audio speaker impedance matching) is called an ”audio transformer,” with its primary and secondary windings represented by impedance values (1000 Ω : 8 Ω) instead of voltages. An audio transformer will work, but I’ve found small step-down power transformers of 120/6 volt ratio to be perfectly adequate for the task, cheaper (especially when taken from an old thrift-store alarm clock radio), and far more rugged.

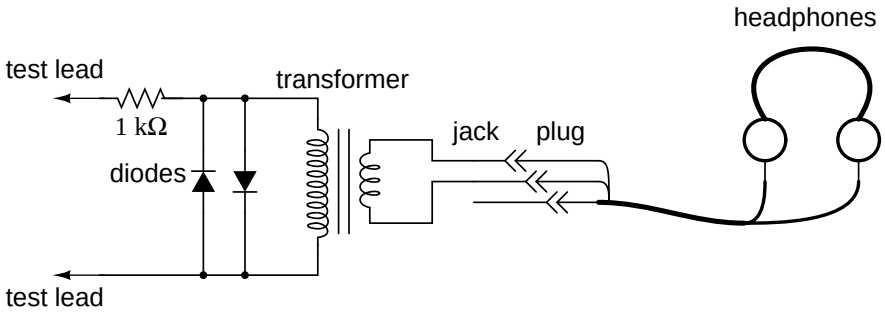
The tolerance (precision) rating for the 1 kΩ resistor is irrelevant. The 100 kΩ potentiometer is a recommended option for incorporation into this project, as it gives the user control over the loudness for any given signal. Even though an *audio-taper* potentiometer would be appropriate for this application, it is not necessary. A *linear-taper* potentiometer works quite well.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 8: ”DC Metering Circuits”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 9: ”Transformers”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 12: ”AC Metering Circuits”

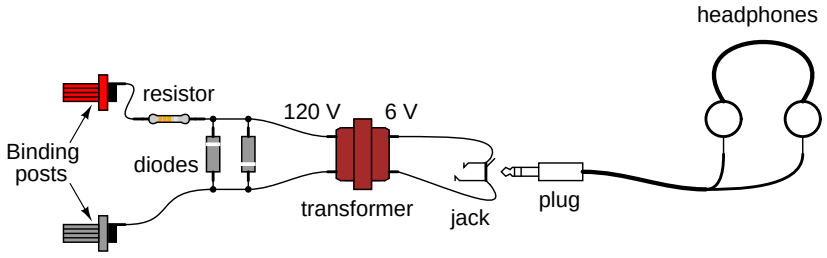
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Soldering practice
- Use of a transformer for impedance matching
- Detection of extremely small electrical signals
- Using diodes to ”clip” voltage at some maximum level

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



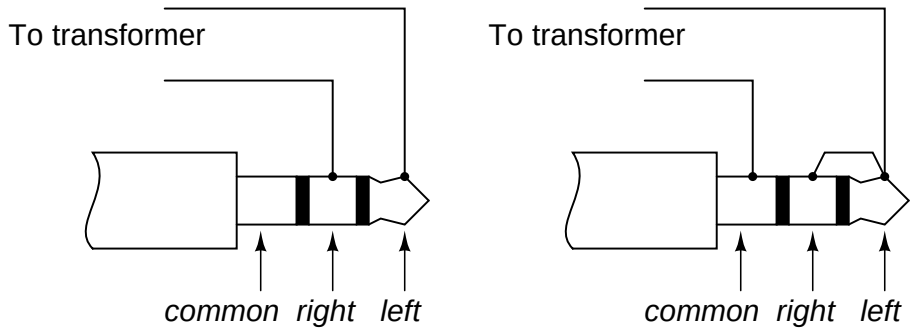
ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This experiment is identical in construction to the ”Sensitive Voltage Detector” described in the DC experiments chapter. If you’ve already built this detector, you may skip this experiment.

The headphones, most likely being stereo units (separate left and right speakers) will have a three-contact plug. You will be connecting to only two of those three contact points. If you only have a ”mono” headphone set with a two-contact plug, just connect to those two contact points. You may either connect the two stereo speakers in series or in parallel. I’ve found the series connection to work best, that is, to produce the most sound from a small signal:



Speakers in series **Speakers in parallel**

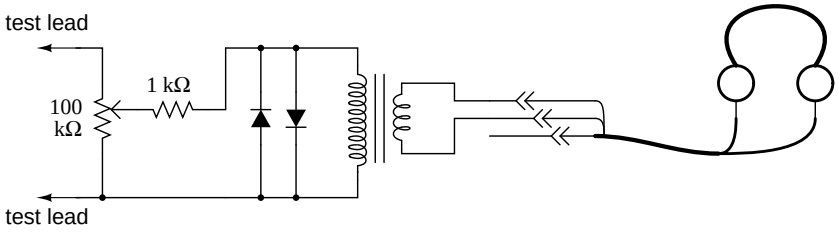
Solder all wire connections well. This detector system is extremely sensitive, and any loose wire connections in the circuit will add unwanted noise to the sounds produced by the measured voltage signal. The two diodes connected in parallel with the transformer's primary winding, along with the series-connected 1 kΩ resistor, work together to "clip" the input voltage to a maximum of about 0.7 volts. This does one thing and one thing only: limit the amount of sound the headphones can produce. The system will work without the diodes and resistor in place, but there will be no limit to sound volume in the circuit, and the resulting sound caused by accidentally connecting the test leads across a substantial voltage source (like a battery) can be deafening!

Binding posts provide points of connection for a pair of test probes with banana-style plugs, once the detector components are mounted inside a box. You may use ordinary multimeter probes, or make your own probes with alligator clips at the ends for secure connection to a circuit.

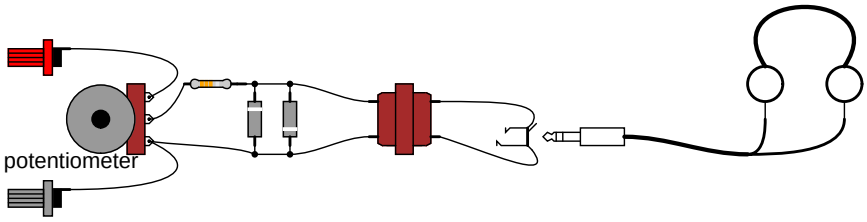
Detectors are intended to be used for balancing bridge measurement circuits, potentiometric (null-balance) voltmeter circuits, and detect extremely low-amplitude AC ("alternating current") signals in the audio frequency range. It is a valuable piece of test equipment, especially for the low-budget experimenter without an oscilloscope. It is also valuable in that it allows you to use a different bodily sense in interpreting the behavior of a circuit.

For connection across any non-trivial source of voltage (1 volt and greater), the detector's extremely high sensitivity should be attenuated. This may be accomplished by connecting a voltage divider to the "front" of the circuit:

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



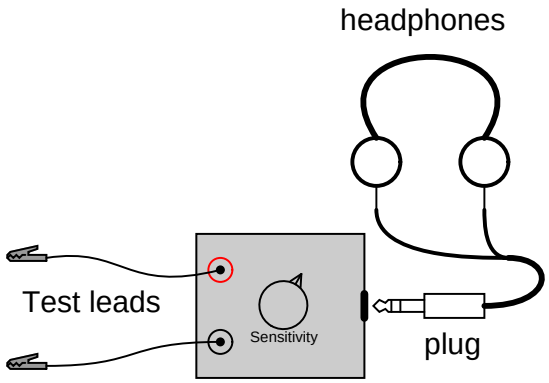
Adjust the 100 kΩ voltage divider potentiometer to about mid-range when initially sensing a voltage signal of unknown magnitude. If the sound is too loud, turn the potentiometer down and try again. If too soft, turn it up and try again. This detector even senses DC and radio-frequency signals (frequencies below and above the audio range, respectively), a ”click” being heard whenever the test leads make or break contact with the source under test. With my cheap headphones, I’ve been able to detect currents of less than 1/10 of a microamp (¡ 0.1 μA) DC, and similarly low-magnitude RF signals up to 2 MHz.

A good demonstration of the detector’s sensitivity is to touch both test leads to the end of your tongue, with the sensitivity adjustment set to maximum. The voltage produced by metal-to-electrolyte contact (called *galvanic voltage*) is very small, but enough to produce soft ”clicking” sounds every time the leads make and break contact on the wet skin of your tongue.

Try unplugged the headphone plug from the jack (receptacle) and similarly touching it to the end of your tongue. You should still hear soft clicking sounds, but they will be much smaller in amplitude. Headphone speakers are ”low impedance” devices: they require low voltage and ”high” current to deliver substantial sound power. Impedance is a measure of opposition to any and all forms of electric current, including alternating current (AC). Resistance, by comparison, is a strictly measure of opposition to *direct* current (DC). Like resistance, impedance is measured in the unit of the Ohm (Ω), but it is symbolized in equations by the capital letter ”Z” rather than the capital letter ”R”. We use the term ”impedance” to describe the headphone’s opposition to current because it is primarily AC signals that headphones are normally subjected to, not DC.

Most small signal sources have high internal impedances, some much higher than the nominal 8 Ω of the headphone speakers. This is a technical way of saying that they are incapable of supplying substantial amounts of current. As the Maximum Power Transfer Theorem predicts, maximum sound power will be delivered by the headphone speakers when their impedance is ”matched” to the impedance of the voltage source. The transformer does this. The transformer also helps aid the detection of small DC signals by producing inductive ”kickback” every time the test lead circuit is broken, thus ”amplifying” the signal by magnetically storing up electrical energy and suddenly releasing it to the headphone speakers.

As with the low-voltage AC power supply experiment, I recommend building this detector in a permanent fashion (mounting all components inside of a box, and providing nice test lead wires) so it can be easily used in the future. Constructed as such, it might look something like this:


headphones
Test leads
Sensitivity
plug

4.6 Sensing AC magnetic fields

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Audio detector with headphones
- Electromagnet coil from relay or solenoid

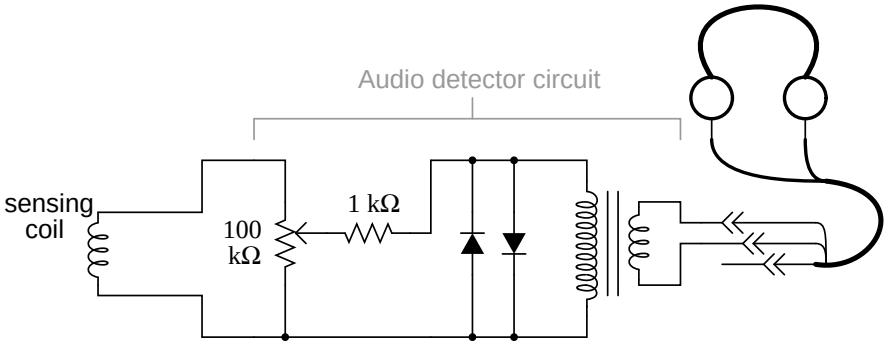
What is needed for an electromagnet coil is a coil with *many* turns of wire, so as to produce the most voltage possible from induction with stray magnetic fields. The coil taken from an old relay or solenoid works well for this purpose.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 7: ”Mixed-Frequency AC Signals”

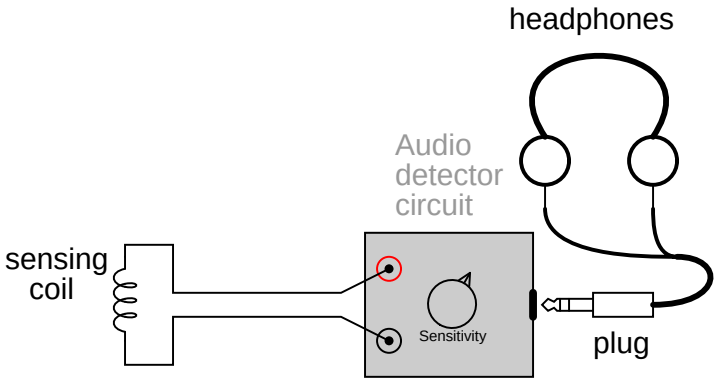
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Effects of electromagnetic induction.
- Electromagnetic shielding techniques.

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Using the audio detector circuit explained earlier to detect AC voltage in the audio frequencies, a coil of wire may serve as sensor of AC magnetic fields. The voltages produced by the coil will be quite small, so it is advisable to adjust the detector's sensitivity control to "maximum."

There are many sources of AC magnetic fields to be found in the average home. Try, for instance, holding the coil close to a television screen or circuit-breaker box. The coil's orientation is every bit as important as its proximity to the source, as you will soon discover on your own! If you want to listen to more interesting tones, try holding the coil close to the motherboard of an operating computer (be careful not to "short" any connections together on the computer's circuit board with any exposed metal parts on the sensing coil!), or to its hard drive while a read/write operation is taking place.

One *very* strong source of AC magnetic fields is the home-made transformer project described earlier. Try experimenting with various degrees of "coupling" between the coils (the steel bars tightly fastened together, versus loosely fastened, versus dismantled). Another source is the variable inductor and lamp circuit described in another section of this chapter.

Note that physical contact with a magnetic field source is unnecessary: magnetic fields extend through space quite easily. You may also want to try "shielding" the coil from a strong source using various materials. Try aluminum foil, paper, sheet steel, plastic, or whatever other materials you can think of. What materials work best? Why? What angles (orientations) of coil position minimize magnetic coupling (result in a minimum of detected signal)? What does this tell us regarding inductor positioning if inter-circuit interference from other inductors is a bad thing?

Whether or not stray magnetic fields like these pose any health hazard to the human body is a hotly debated subject. One thing is clear: in today's modern society, low-level magnetic fields of all frequencies are easy to find!

4.7 Sensing AC electric fields

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Audio detector with headphones

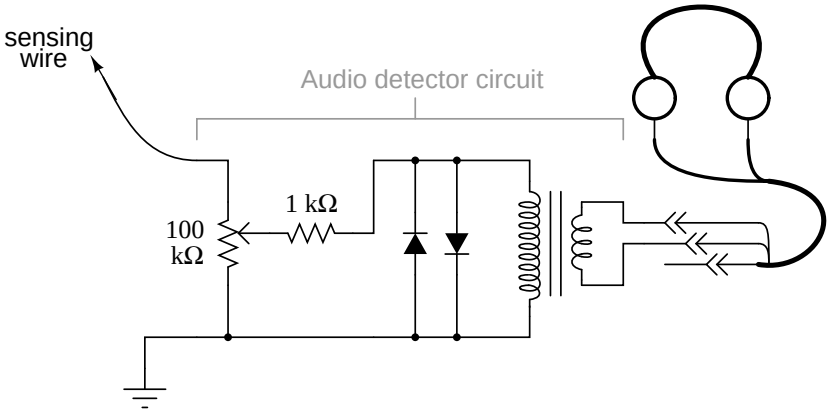
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 7: "Mixed-Frequency AC Signals"

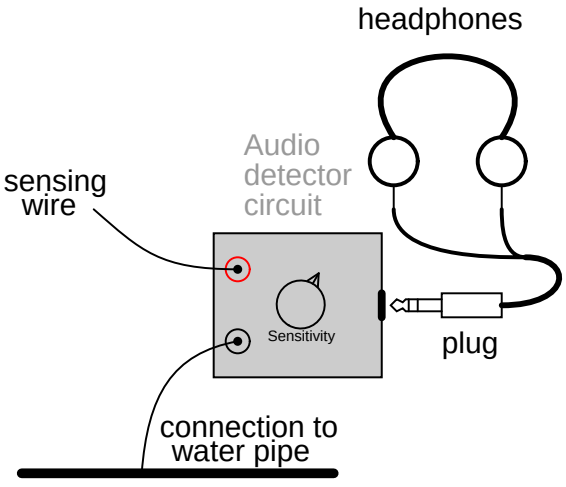
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Effects of electrostatic (capacitive) coupling.
- Electrostatic shielding techniques.

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

"Ground" one lead of the detector to a metal object in contact with the earth (dirt). Most any water pipe or faucet in a house will suffice. Take the other lead and hold it close to an electrical appliance or lamp fixture. **Do not try to make contact with the appliance or with any conductors within!** Any AC electric fields produced by the appliance will be heard in the headphones as a buzzing tone.

Try holding the wire in different positions next to a good, strong source of electric fields. Try using a piece of aluminum foil clipped to the wire's end to maximize capacitance (and therefore its ability to intercept an electric field). Try using different types of material to "shield" the wire from an electric field source. What material(s) work best? How does this compare with the AC *magnetic* field experiment?

As with magnetic fields, there is controversy whether or not stray electric fields like these pose any health hazard to the human body.

4.8 Automotive alternator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Automotive alternator (one required, but two recommended)

Old alternators may be obtained for low prices at automobile wrecking yards. Many yards have alternators already removed from the automobile, for your convenience. I do *not* recommend paying full price for a new alternator, as used units cost far less money and function just as well for the purposes of this experiment.

I highly recommend using a Delco-Remy brand of alternator. This is the type used on General Motors (GMC, Chevrolet, Cadillac, Buick, Oldsmobile) vehicles. One particular model has been produced by Delco-Remy since the early 1960's with little design change. It is a *very* common unit to locate in a wrecking yard, and very easy to work with.

If you obtain two alternators, you may use one as a generator and the other as a motor. The steps needed to prepare an alternator as a three-phase generator and as a three-phase motor are the same.

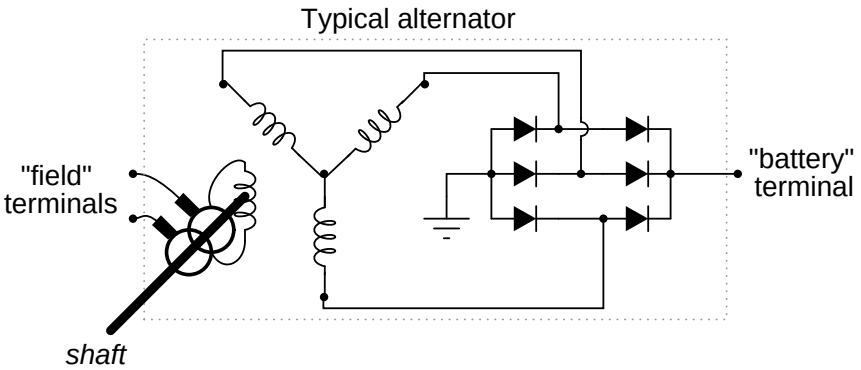
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 14: "Magnetism and Electromagnetism"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 10: "Polyphase AC Circuits"

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Effects of electromagnetism
- Effects of electromagnetic induction
- Construction of real electromagnetic machines
- Construction and application of three-phase windings

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



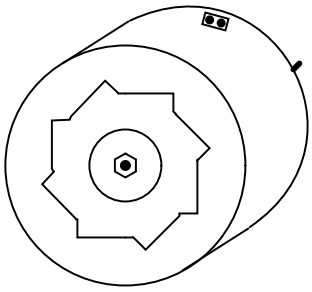
An automotive alternator is a three-phase generator with a built-in rectifier circuit consisting of six diodes. As the sheave (most people call it a "pulley") is rotated by a belt connected

to the automobile engine's crankshaft, a magnet is spun past a stationary set of three-phase windings (called the *stator*), usually connected in a Y configuration. The spinning magnet is actually an electromagnet, not a permanent magnet. Alternators are designed this way so that the magnetic field strength can be controlled, in order that output voltage may be controlled independently of rotor speed. This rotor magnet coil (called the *field coil*, or simply *field*) is energized by battery power, so that it takes a small amount of electrical power input to the alternator to get it to generate a lot of output power.

Electrical power is conducted to the rotating field coil through a pair of copper "slip rings" mounted concentrically on the shaft, contacted by stationary carbon "brushes." The brushes are held in firm contact with the slip rings by spring pressure.

Many modern alternators are equipped with built-in "regulator" circuits that automatically switch battery power on and off to the rotor coil to regulate output voltage. This circuit, if present in the alternator you choose for the experiment, is unnecessary and will only impede your study if left in place. Feel free to "surgically remove" it, just make sure you leave access to the brush terminals so that you can power the field coil with the alternator fully assembled.

ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

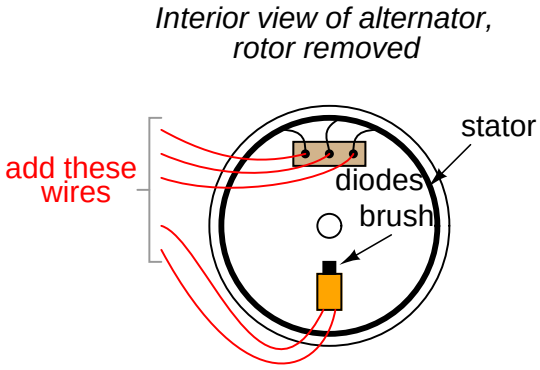
First, consult an automotive repair manual on the specific details of your alternator. The documentation provided in the book you're reading now is as general as possible to accommodate different brands of alternators. You may need more specific information, and a service manual is the best place to obtain it.

For this experiment, you'll be connecting wires to the coils inside the alternator and extending them outside the alternator case, for easy connection to test equipment and circuits. Unfortunately, the connection terminals provided by the manufacturer won't suit our needs here, so you need to make your own connections.

Disassemble the unit and locate terminals for connecting to the two carbon brushes. Solder a pair of wires to these terminals (at least 20 gauge in size) and extend these wires through vent holes in the alternator case, making sure they won't get snagged on the spinning rotor when the alternator is re-assembled and used.

Locate the three-phase line connections coming from the stator windings and connect wires to them as well, extending these wires outside the alternator case through some vent holes. Use the largest gauge wire that is convenient to work with for these wires, as they may be carrying substantial current. As with the field wires, route them in such a way that the rotor will turn freely with the alternator reassembled. The stator winding line terminals are easy

to locate: the three of them connect to three terminals on the diode assembly, usually with "ring-lug" terminals soldered to the ends of the wires.

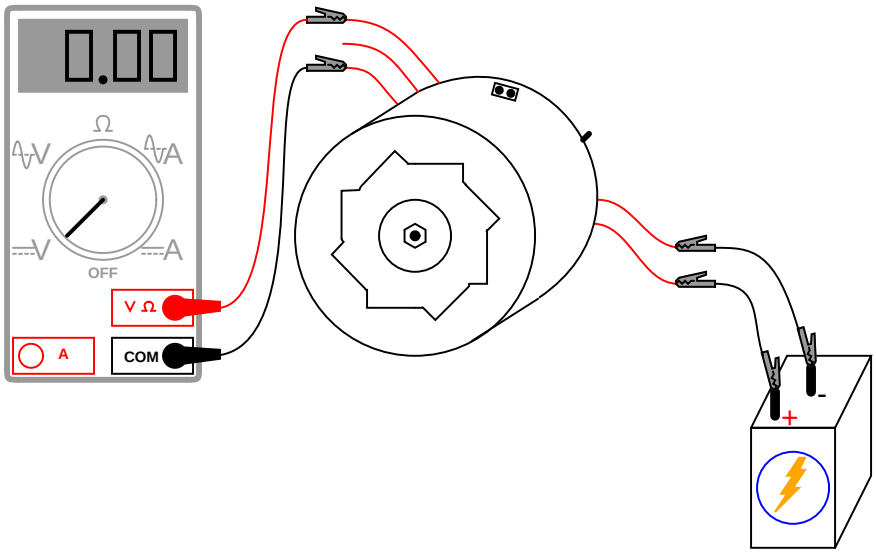


I recommend that you solder ring-lug terminals to your wires, and attach them underneath the terminal nuts along with the stator wire ends, so that each diode block terminal is securing two ring lugs.

Re-assemble the alternator, taking care to secure the carbon brushes in a retracted position so that the rotor doesn't damage them upon re-insertion. On Delco-Remy alternators, a small hole is provided on the back case half, and also at the front of the brush holder assembly, through which a paper clip or thin-gauge wire may be inserted to hold the brushes back against their spring pressure. Consult the service manual for more details on alternator assembly.

When the alternator has been assembled, try spinning the shaft and listen for any sounds indicative of colliding parts or snagged wires. If there is any such trouble, take it apart again and correct whatever is wrong.

If and when it spins freely as it should, connect the two "field" wires to a 6-volt battery. Connect an voltmeter to any two of the three-phase line connections:



With the multimeter set to the ”DC volts” function, *slowly* rotate the alternator shaft. The voltmeter reading should alternate between positive and negative as the shaft it turned: a demonstration of very slow alternating voltage (AC voltage) being generated. If this test is successful, switch the multimeter to the ”AC volts” setting and try again. Try spinning the shaft slow and fast, comparing voltmeter readings between the two conditions.

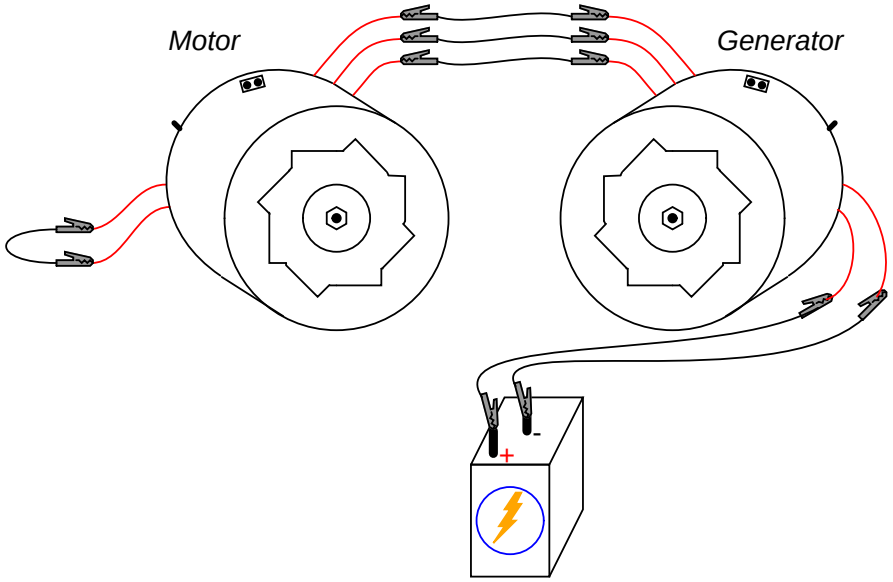
Short-circuit any two of the three-phase line wires and try spinning the alternator. What you should notice is that the alternator shaft becomes more difficult to spin. The heavy electrical load you've created via the short circuit causes a heavy mechanical load on the alternator, as mechanical energy is converted into electrical energy.

Now, try connecting 12 volts DC to the field wires. Repeat the DC voltmeter, AC voltmeter, and short-circuit tests described above. What difference(s) do you notice?

Find some sort of polarity-insensitive 6 or 12 volts loads, such as small incandescent lamps, and connect them to the three-phase line wires. Wrap a thin rope or heavy string around the groove of the sheave (”pulley”) and spin the alternator rapidly, and the loads should function.

If you have a second alternator, modify it as you modified the first one, connecting five of your own wires to the field brushes and stator line terminals, respectively. You can then use it as a three-phase motor, powered by the first alternator.

Connect each of the three-phase line wires of the first alternator to the respective wires of the second alternator. Connect the field wires of one alternator to a 6 volt battery. This alternator will be the generator. Wrap rope around the sheave in preparation to spin it. Take the two field wires of the second alternator and short them together. This alternator will be the motor:



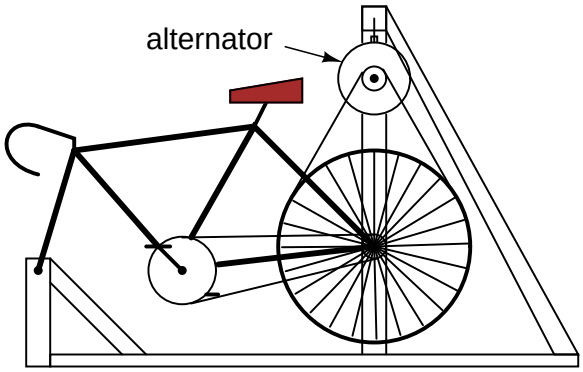
Spin the generator shaft while watching the motor shaft's rotation. Try reversing any *two* of the three-phase line connections between the two units and spin the generator again. What is different this time?

Connect the field wires of the motor unit to the a 6 volt battery (you may parallel-connect this field with the field of the generator unit, across the same battery terminals, if the battery

is strong enough to deliver the several amps of current both coils will draw together). This will magnetize the rotor of the motor. Try spinning the generator again and note any differences in operation.

In the first motor setup, where the field wires were simple shorted together, the motor was functioning as an *induction motor*. In the second setup, where the motor's rotor was magnetized, it functioned as a *synchronous motor*.

If you are feeling particularly ambitious and are skilled in metal fabrication techniques, you may make your own high-power generator platform by connecting the modified alternator to a bicycle. I've built an arrangement that looks like this:



The rear wheel drives the generator sheave with a *long* v-belt. This belt also supports the rear of the bicycle, maintaining a constant tension when a rider is pedaling the bicycle. The generator hangs from a steel support structure (I used welded 2-inch square tubing, but a frame could be made out of lumber). Not only is this machine practical, but it is reliable enough to be used as an exercise machine, and it is inexpensive to make:

You can see a bank of three 12-volt "RV" light bulbs behind the bicycle unit (in the lower-left corner of the photograph), which I use for a load when riding the bicycle as an exercise machine. A set of three switches is mounted at the front of the bicycle, where I can turn loads on and off while riding.

By rectifying the three-phase AC power produced, it is possible to have the alternator power its own field coil with DC voltage, eliminating the need for a battery. However, some indepen-

dent source of DC voltage will still be necessary for start-up, as the field coil must be energized *before* any AC power can be produced.

4.9 Induction motor

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- **AC power source: 120VAC**
- Capacitor, 3.3 μF (or 2.2 μF) 120VAC or 350VDC, non-polarized
- 15 to 25 watt incandescent lamp or 820Ω 25 watt resistors
- #32 AWG magnet wire
- wooden board approx. 5 in. square.
- AC line cord with plug
- 1.75 inch dia. cardboard tubing (toilet paper roll)
- lamp socket
- **AC power source: 220VAC**
- Capacitor, 1.5 μF 240VAC or 680VDC, non-polarized
- 25 to 40 watt incandescent lamp or 820Ω 25 watt resistors
- #32 AWG magnet wire
- wooden board approx. 15 cm. square.
- AC line cord with plug
- 4.5 to 5 cm. dia. cardboard tubing.
- lamp socket

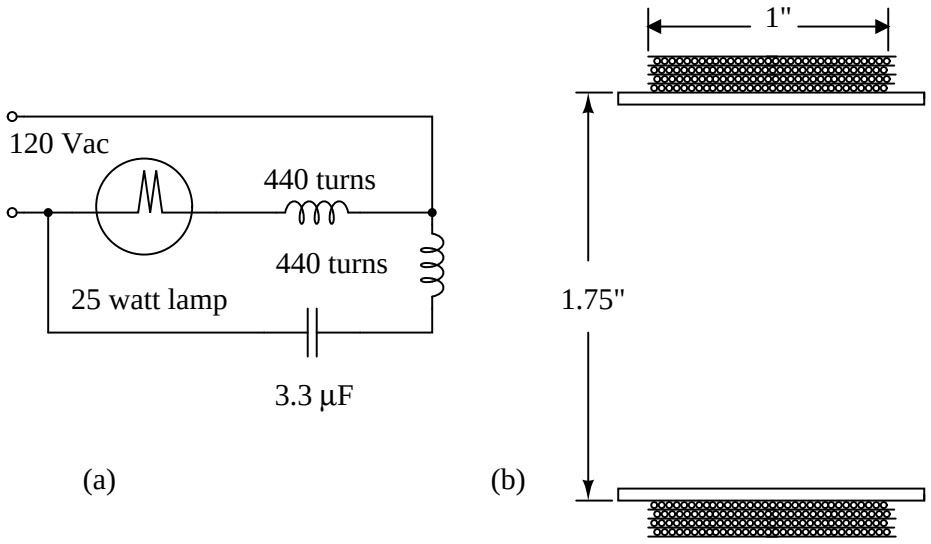
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 13: ”AC motors”, ”Single Phase induction motors”,”Permanent split-capacitor motor”.

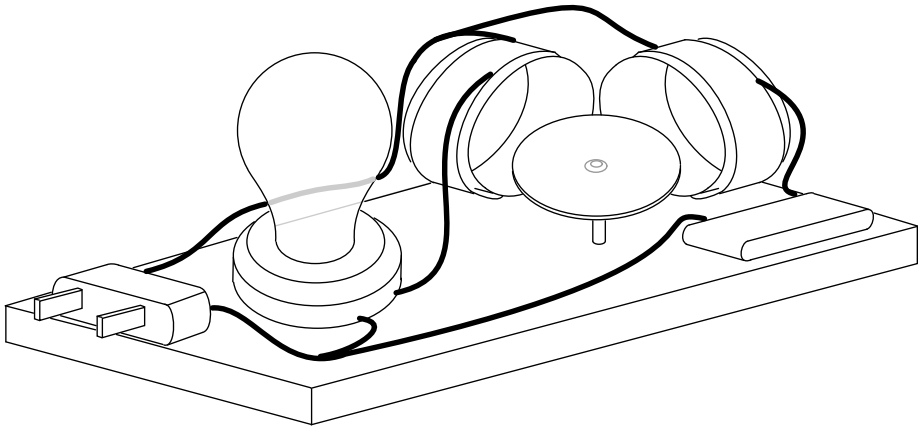
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- To build an AC permanent split-capacitor induction motor.
- To illustrate the simplicity of the AC induction motor.

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

There are two parts lists to choose from depending upon the availability of 120VAC or 220VAC. Choose the one for your location. This set of instructions is for the 120VAC version.

This is a simplified version of a ”permanent capacitor split-phase induction motor”. By simplified, we mean the coils only requires a few hundred turns of wire instead of a few thousand. This is easier to wind. Though, the larger few thousand turns model is impressive. There are two stator coils as shown in the illustration above. Approximately 440 turns of #32 AWG (American wire gauge) enameled magnet wire are wound over a one inch length of a slightly longer section of 1.75 inch diameter toilet paper tube. To avoid counting the turns, close-wind four layers of magnet wire over a one inch width of the tube. See (b) above. Leave a few inches of magnet wire for the leads. Tape the beginning lead near the end of the tube so that the windings will cover and anchor the tape. Do not cut the final width of the cardboard tube until

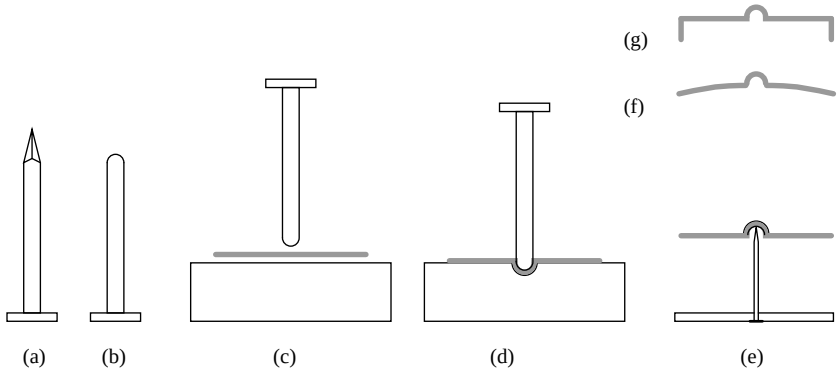
the winding is finished. Close wind a single layer. Tape or cement the first layer to prevent unwinding before proceeding to the second layer. Though it is possible to wind additional layers directly over existing layers, consider applying tape or paper between the layers as shown in schematic (b). After four layers are wound, glue the windings in place.

If close winding four layers of magnet wire it too difficult, scramble wind 440 turns of the magnet wire over the end of the cardboard tube. However, the close-wound style coil mounts more easily to the baseboard. Keep the windings within a one inch length.

Cut the finished winding from the end of the cardboard tube with a razor knife allowing the form to extend a little beyond the winding. Strip the enamel from an inch off the ends of the pair of lead wires with sandpaper. Splice the bare ends to heavier gauge insulated hook-up wire. Solder the splice. Insulate with tape or heat-shrink tubing. Secure the splice to the coil body. Then proceed with a second identical coil.

Refer to both the schematic diagram and the illustration for assembly. Note that the coils are mounted at right angles. They may be cemented to an insulating baseboard like wood. The 25 watt lamp is wired in series with one coil. This limits the current flowing through the coil. The lamp is a substitute for an 820 Ω power resistor. The capacitor is wired in series with the other coil. It also limits the current through the coil. In addition, it provides a leading phase shift of the current with respect to voltage. The schematic and illustration show no power switch or fuse. Add these if desired.

The rotor must be made of a ferromagnetic material like a steel can lid or bottle cap. The illustration below shows how to make the rotor. Select a circular rotor either smaller than the coil forms or a little larger. Use geometry to locate and mark the center. The center needs to be dimpled. Select an eighth inch diameter (a few mm) nail (a) and file or grind the point round as shown at (b). Place the rotor atop a piece of soft wood (c) and hammer the rounded point into the center (d). Practice on a piece of similar scrap metal. Take care not to pierce the rotor. A dished rotor (f) or a lid (g) balance better than the flat rotor (e). The pivot point (e) may be a straight pin driven through a movable wooden pedestal, or through the main board. The tip of a ball-point pen also works. If the rotor does not balance atop the pivot, remove metal from the heavy side.



Double check the wiring. Check that any bare wire has been insulated. The circuit may be powered-up without the rotor. The lamp should light. Both coils will warm within a few minutes. Excessive heating means that a lower wattage (higher resistance) lamp and a lower value capacitor should be substituted in series with the respective coils.

Place the rotor atop the pivot and move it between both coils. It should spin. The closer it is, the faster it should spin. Both coils should be warm, indicating power. Try different size and style rotors. Try a small rotor on the opposite side of the coils compared to the illustration.

For lack of #32 AWG magnet wire try 440 turns of slightly a larger diameter (lesser AWG number) wire. This will require more than 4 layers for the required turns. A night-light fixture might be less expensive than the full-size lamp socket illustrated. Though night-light bulbs are too low a wattage at 3 or 7 watts, 15 watt bulbs fit the socket.

4.10 Phase shift

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Low-voltage AC power supply
- Two capacitors, 0.1 μF each, non-polarized (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135)
- Two 27 kΩ resistors

I recommend ceramic disk capacitors, because they are insensitive to polarity (non-polarized), inexpensive, and durable. Avoid capacitors with any kind of polarity marking, as these will be destroyed when powered by AC!

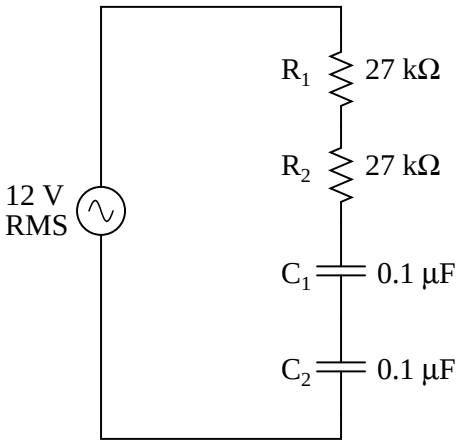
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 1: "Basic AC Theory"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 4: "Reactance and Impedance – Capacitive"

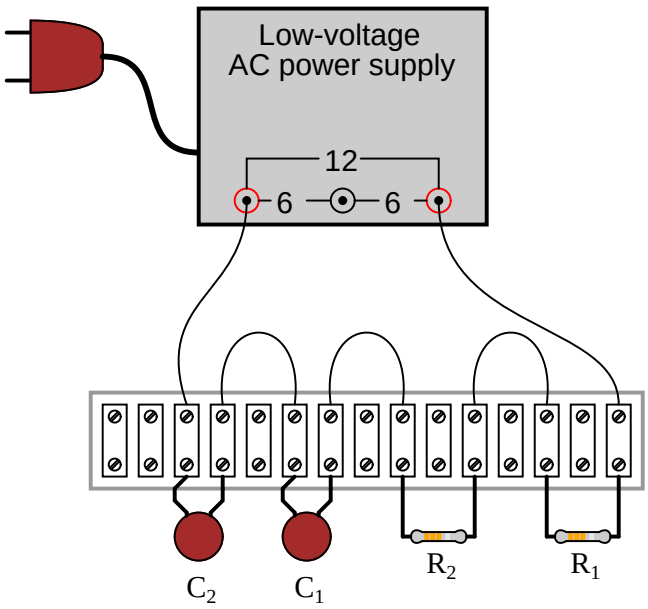
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How out-of-phase AC voltages do not add algebraically, but according to vector (phasor) arithmetic

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Build the circuit and measure voltage drops across each component with an AC voltmeter. Measure total (supply) voltage with the same voltmeter. You will discover that the voltage drops do *not* add up to equal the total voltage. This is due to phase shifts in the circuit: voltage dropped across the capacitors is out-of-phase with voltage dropped across the resistors, and thus the voltage drop figures do not add up as one might expect. Taking phase angle into consideration, they *do* add up to equal the total, but a voltmeter doesn't provide phase angle measurements, only amplitude.

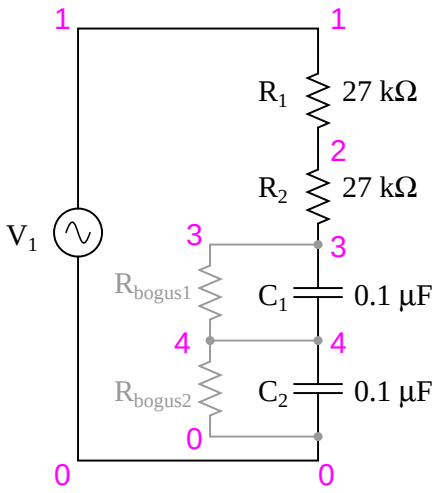
Try measuring voltage dropped across both resistors at once. This voltage drop *will* equal the sum of the voltage drops measured across each resistor separately. This tells you that both the resistors' voltage drop waveforms are in-phase with each other, since they add simply and directly.

Measure voltage dropped across both capacitors at once. This voltage drop, like the drop measured across the two resistors, *will* equal the sum of the voltage drops measured across each capacitor separately. Likewise, this tells you that both the capacitors' voltage drop waveforms are in-phase with each other.

Given that the power supply frequency is 60 Hz (household power frequency in the United States), calculate impedances for all components and determine all voltage drops using Ohm's Law (E=IZ ; I=E/Z ; Z=E/I). The polar magnitudes of the results should closely agree with your voltmeter readings.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



The two large-value resistors R_{bogus1} and R_{bogus1} are connected across the capacitors to provide a DC path to ground in order that SPICE will work. This is a "fix" for one of SPICE's quirks, to avoid it from seeing the capacitors as open circuits in its analysis. These two resistors are entirely unnecessary in the real circuit.

Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
phase shift
v1 1 0 ac 12 sin
r1 1 2 27k
r2 2 3 27k
c1 3 4 0.1u
c2 4 0 0.1u
rbogus1 3 4 1e9
rbogus2 4 0 1e9
.ac lin 1 60 60
* Voltage across each component:
.print ac v(1,2) v(2,3) v(3,4) v(4,0)
* Voltage across pairs of similar components
.print ac v(1,3) v(3,0)
.end
```

4.11 Sound cancellation

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Low-voltage AC power supply
- Two audio speakers
- Two 220 Ω resistors

Large, low-frequency (”woofer”) speakers are most appropriate for this experiment. For optimum results, the speakers should be identical and mounted in enclosures.

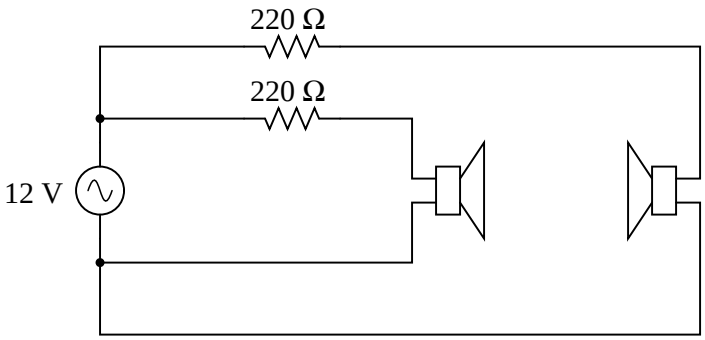
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 1: ”Basic AC Theory”

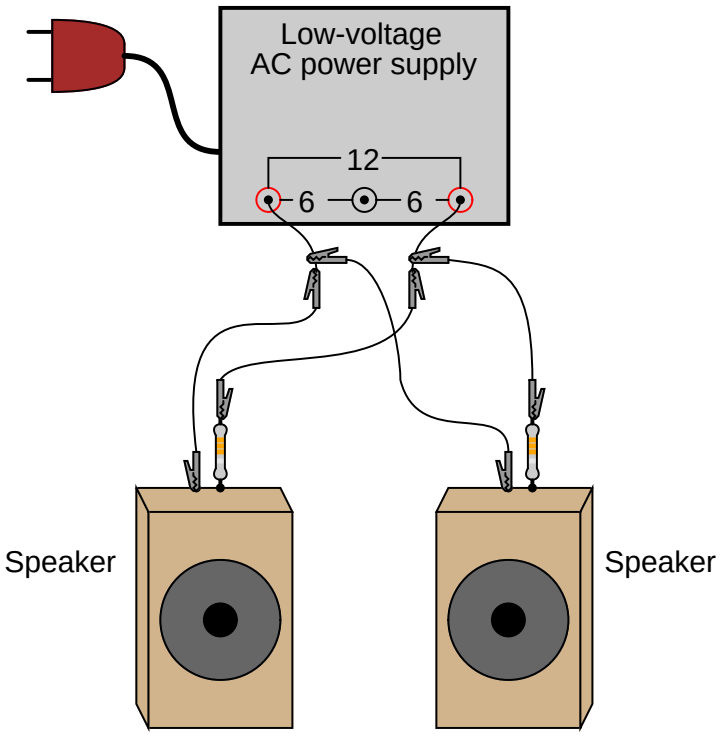
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How phase shift can cause waves to either reinforce or interfere with each other
- The importance of speaker ”phasing” in stereo systems

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Connect each speaker to the low-voltage AC power supply through a 220 Ω resistor. The resistor limits the amount of power delivered to each speaker by the power supply. A low-pitched, 60-Hertz tone should be heard from the speakers. If the tone sounds too loud, use higher-value resistors.

With both speakers connected and producing sound, position them so that they are only a foot or two away, facing toward each other. Listen to the volume of the 60-Hertz tone. Now, reverse the connections (the ”polarity”) of just *one* of the speakers and note the volume again. Try switching the polarity of one speaker back and forth from original to reversed, comparing volume levels each way. What do you notice?

By reversing wire connections to one speaker, you are reversing the *phase* of that speaker's sound wave in reference to the other speaker. In one mode, the sound waves will reinforce one another for a strong volume. In the other mode, the sound waves will destructively interfere, resulting in diminished volume. This phenomenon is common to *all* wave events: sound waves, electrical signals (voltage ”waves”), waves in water, and even light waves!

Multiple speakers in a stereo sound system must be properly ”phased” so that their respective sound waves don't cancel each other, leaving less total sound level for the listener(s) to hear. So, even in an AC system where there really is no such thing as constant ”polarity,” the sequence of wire connections may make a significant difference in system performance.

This principle of volume reduction by destructive interference may be exploited for noise cancellation. Such systems sample the waveform of the ambient noise, then produce an iden-

tical sound signal 180^o out of phase with the noise. When the two sound signals meet, they cancel each other out, ideally eliminating all the noise. As one might guess, this is much easier accomplished with noise sources of steady frequency and amplitude. Cancellation of random, broad-spectrum noise is very difficult, as some sort of signal-processing circuit must sample the noise and generate precisely the right amount of cancellation sound at just the right time in order to be effective.

4.12 Musical keyboard as a signal generator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Electronic ”keyboard” (musical)
- ”Mono” (not stereo) headphone-type plug
- Impedance matching transformer (1k Ω to 8 Ω ratio; Radio Shack catalog # 273-1380)
- 10 kΩ resistor

In this experiment, you'll learn how to use an electronic musical keyboard as a source of variable-frequency AC voltage signals. You need not purchase an expensive keyboard for this – but one with at least a few dozen ”voice” selections (piano, flute, harp, etc.) would be good. The ”mono” plug will be plugged into the headphone jack of the musical keyboard, so get a plug that's the correct size for the keyboard.

The ”impedance matching transformer” is a small-size transformer easily obtained from an electronics supply store. One may be scavenged from a small, junk radio: it connects between the speaker and the circuit board (amplifier), so is easily identifiable by location. The primary winding is rated in ohms of impedance (1000 Ω), and is usually center-tapped. The secondary winding is 8 Ω and not center-tapped. These impedance figures are not the same as DC resistance, so don't expect to read 1000 Ω and 8 Ω with your ohmmeter – however, the 1000 Ω winding will read *more* resistance than the 8 Ω winding, because it has more turns.

If such a transformer cannot be obtained for the experiment, a regular 120V/6V step-down power transformer works fairly well, too.

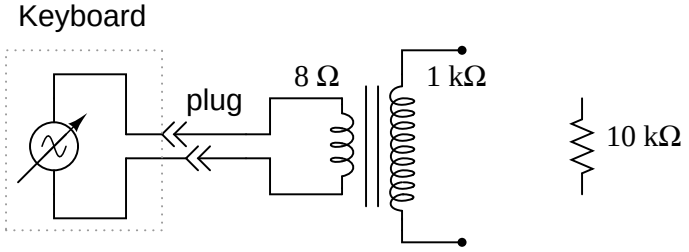
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 1: ”Basic AC Theory”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 7: ”Mixed-Frequency AC Signals”

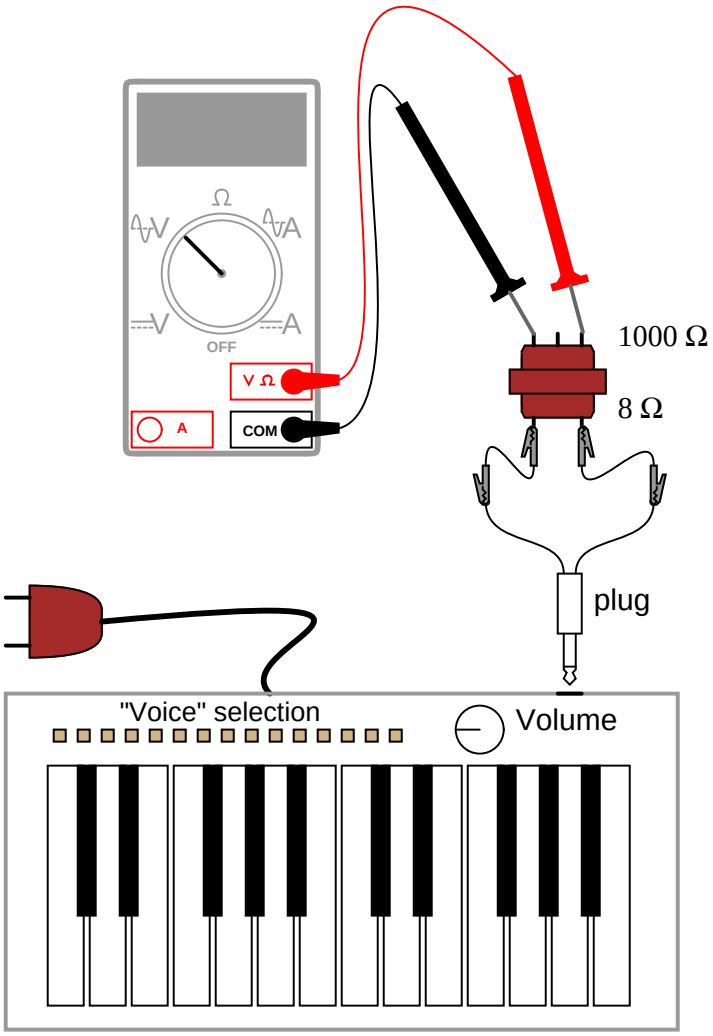
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Difference between amplitude and frequency
- Measuring AC voltage, current with a meter
- Transformer operation, step-up

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Normally, a student of electronics in a school would have access to a device called a *signal generator*, or *function generator*, used to make variable-frequency voltage waveforms to power AC circuits. An inexpensive electronic keyboard is a cheaper alternative to a regular signal generator, and provides features that most signal generators cannot match, such as producing *mixed-frequency* waves.

To ”tap in” to the AC voltage produced by the keyboard, you’ll need to insert a plug into the headphone jack (sometimes just labeled ”phone” on the keyboard) complete with two wires for connection to circuits of your own design. When you insert the plug into the jack, the normal speaker built in to the keyboard will be disconnected (assuming the keyboard is equipped with one), and the signal that used to power that speaker will be available at the plug wires. In

this particular experiment, I recommend using the keyboard to power the 8 Ω side of an audio "output" transformer to step up voltage to a higher level. If using a power transformer instead of an audio output transformer, connect the keyboard to the low-voltage winding so that it operates as a step-up device. Keyboards produce very low voltage signals, so there is no shock hazard in this experiment.

Using an inexpensive Yamaha keyboard, I have found that the "panflute" voice setting produces the truest sine-wave waveform. This waveform, or something close to it (flute, for example), is recommended to start experimenting with since it is relatively free of harmonics (many waveforms mixed together, of integer-multiple frequency). Being composed of just one frequency, it is a less complex waveform for your multimeter to measure. Make sure the keyboard is set to a mode where the note will be sustained as any key is held down – otherwise, the amplitude (voltage) of the waveform will be constantly changing (high when the key is first pressed, then decaying rapidly to zero).

Using an AC voltmeter, read the voltage direct from the headphone plug. Then, read the voltage as stepped up by the transformer, noting the step ratio. If your multimeter has a "frequency" function, use it to measure the frequency of the waveform produced by the keyboard. Try different notes on the keyboard and record their frequencies. Do you notice a pattern in frequency as you activate different notes, especially keys that are similar to each other (notice the 12-key black-and-white pattern repeated on the keyboard from left to right)? If you don't mind making marks on your keyboard, write the frequencies in Hertz in black ink on the white keys, near the tops where fingers are less likely to rub the numbers off.

Ideally, there should be no change in signal amplitude (voltage) as different frequencies (notes on the keyboard) are tried. If you adjust the volume up and down, you should discover that changes in amplitude should have little or no impact on frequency measurement. Amplitude and frequency are two completely independent aspects of an AC signal.

Try connecting the keyboard output to a 10 kΩ load resistance (through the headphone plug), and measure AC current with your multimeter. If your multimeter has a frequency function, you can measure the frequency of this current as well. It should be the same as for the voltage for any given note (keyboard key).

4.13 PC Oscilloscope

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- IBM-compatible personal computer with sound card, running Windows 3.1 or better
- Winscope software, downloaded free from internet
- Electronic ”keyboard” (musical)
- ”Mono” (not stereo) headphone-type plug for keyboard
- ”Mono” (not stereo) headphone-type plug for computer sound card microphone input
- 10 kΩ potentiometer

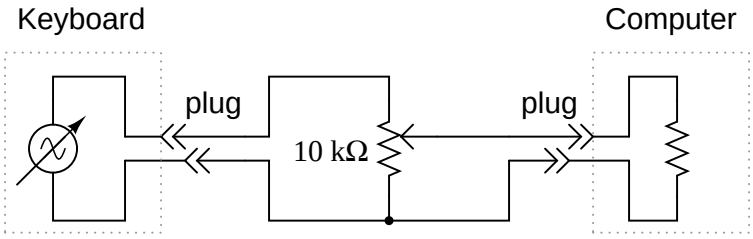
The Winscope program I’ve used was written by Dr. Constantin Zeldovich, for free personal and academic use. It plots waveforms on the computer screen in response to AC voltage signals interpreted by the sound card microphone input. A similar program, called *Oscope*, is made for the Linux operating system. If you don’t have access to either software, you may use the ”sound recorder” utility that comes stock with most versions of Microsoft Windows to display crude waveshapes.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 7: ”Mixed-Frequency AC Signals”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 12: ”AC Metering Circuits”

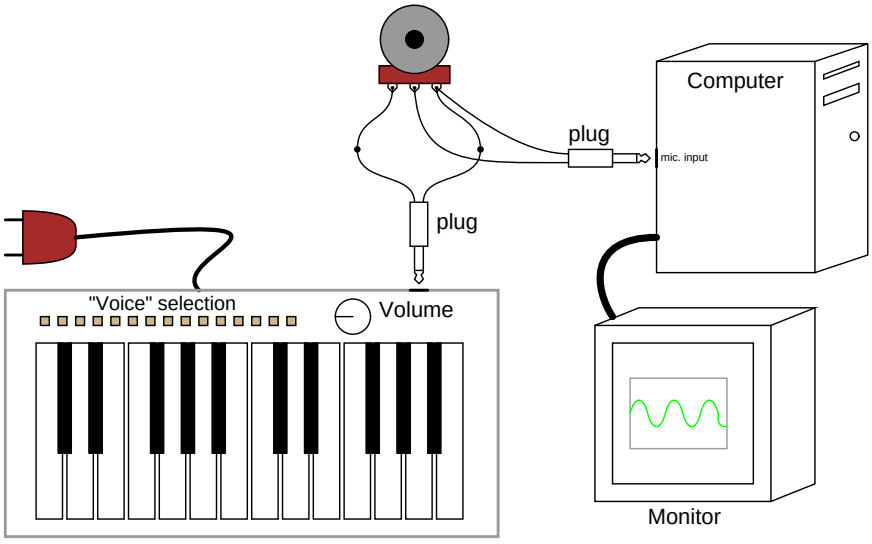
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Computer use
- Basic oscilloscope function

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The oscilloscope is an indispensable test instrument for the electronics student and professional. No serious electronics lab should be without one (or two!). Unfortunately, commercial oscilloscopes tend to be expensive, and it is almost impossible to design and build your own without another oscilloscope to troubleshoot it! However, the sound card of a personal computer is capable of "digitizing" low-voltage AC signals from a range of a few hundred Hertz to several thousand Hertz with respectable resolution, and free software is available for displaying these signals in oscilloscope form on the computer screen. Since most people either have a personal computer or can obtain one for less cost than an oscilloscope, this becomes a viable alternative for the experimenter on a budget.

One word of caution: **you can cause significant hardware damage to your computer if signals of excessive voltage are connected to the sound card's microphone input!** The AC voltages produced by a musical keyboard are too low to cause damage to your computer through the sound card, but other voltage sources might be hazardous to your computer's health. Use this "oscilloscope" at your own risk!

Using the keyboard and plug arrangement described in the previous experiment, connect the keyboard output to the outer terminals of a 10 kΩ potentiometer. Solder two wires to the connection points on the sound card microphone input plug, so that you have a set of "test leads" for the "oscilloscope." Connect these test leads to the potentiometer: between the middle terminal (the wiper) and either of the outer terminals.

Start the Winscope program and click on the "arrow" icon in the upper-left corner (it looks like the "play" arrow seen on tape player and CD player control buttons). If you press a key on the musical keyboard, you should see some kind of waveform displayed on the screen. Choose the "panflute" or some other flute-like voice on the musical keyboard for the best sine-wave shape. If the computer displays a waveform that looks kind of like a square wave, you need to adjust the potentiometer for a lower-amplitude signal. Almost any waveshape will be "clipped" to look like a square wave if it exceeds the amplitude limit of the sound card.

Test different instrument ”voices” on the musical keyboard and note the different waveshapes. Note how complex some of the waveshapes are, compared to the panflute voice. Experiment with the different controls in the Winscope window, noting how they change the appearance of the waveform.

As a test instrument, this ”oscilloscope” is quite poor. It has almost no capability to make precision measurements of voltage, although its frequency precision is surprisingly good. It is *very* limited in the ranges of voltage and frequency it can display, relegating it to the analysis of low- and mid-range audio tones. I have had very little success getting the ”oscilloscope” to display good square waves, presumably because of its limited frequency response. Also, the coupling capacitor found in sound card microphone input circuits prevents it from measuring DC voltage: it is as though the ”AC coupling” feature of a normal oscilloscope were stuck ”on.”

Despite these shortcomings, it is useful as a demonstration tool, and for initial explorations into waveform analysis for the beginning student of electronics. For those who are interested, there are several professional-quality oscilloscope adapter devices manufactured for personal computers whose performance is far beyond that of a sound card, and they are typically sold at less cost than a complete stand-alone oscilloscope (around $400, year 2002). Radio Shack sells one made by Velleman, catalog # 910-3914. Having a computer serve as the display medium brings many advantages, not the least of which is the ability to easily store waveform pictures as digital files.

4.14 Waveform analysis

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- IBM-compatible personal computer with sound card, running Windows 3.1 or better
- Winscope software, downloaded free from internet
- Electronic ”keyboard” (musical)
- ”Mono” (not stereo) headphone-type plug for keyboard
- ”Mono” (not stereo) headphone-type plug for computer sound card microphone input, with wires for connecting to voltage sources
- 10 kΩ potentiometer

Parts and equipment for this experiment are identical to those required for the ”PC oscilloscope” experiment.

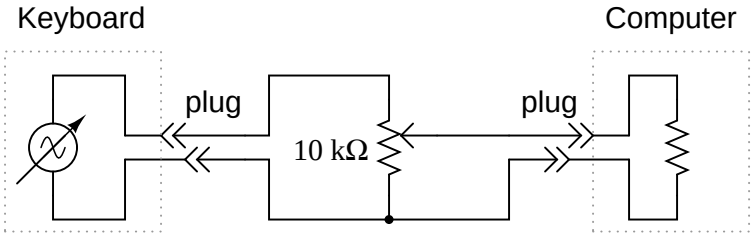
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 7: ”Mixed-Frequency AC Signals”

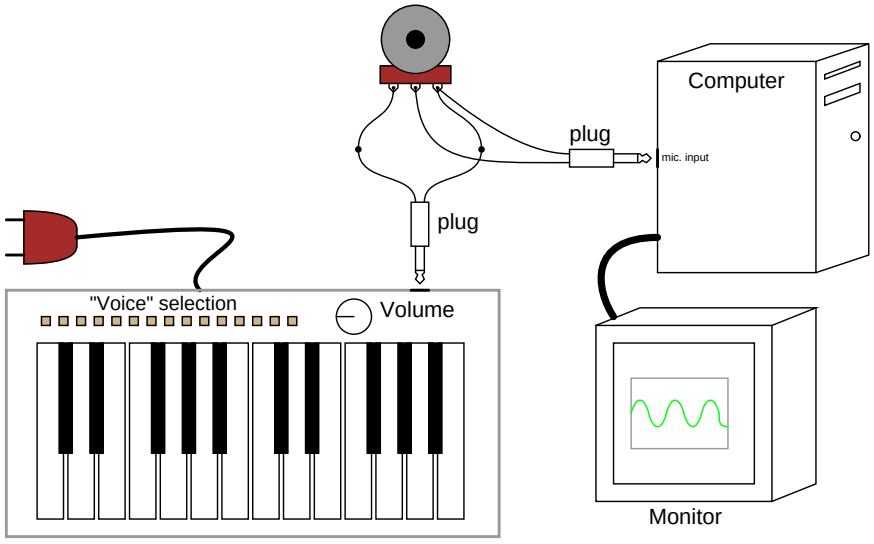
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Understand the difference between time-domain and frequency-domain plots
- Develop a qualitative sense of Fourier analysis

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The Winscope program comes with another feature other than the typical ”time-domain” oscilloscope display: ”frequency-domain” display, which plots amplitude (vertical) over frequency (horizontal). An oscilloscope’s ”time-domain” display plots amplitude (vertical) over time (horizontal), which is fine for displaying waveshape. However, when it is desirable to see the harmonic constituency of a complex wave, a frequency-domain plot is the best tool.

If using Winscope, click on the ”rainbow” icon to switch to frequency-domain mode. Generate a sine-wave signal using the musical keyboard (panflute or flute voice), and you should see a single ”spike” on the display, corresponding to the amplitude of the single-frequency signal. Moving the mouse cursor beneath the peak should result in the frequency being displayed numerically at the bottom of the screen.

If two notes are activated on the musical keyboard, the plot should show two distinct peaks, each one corresponding to a particular note (frequency). Basic chords (three notes) produce three spikes on the frequency-domain plot, and so on. Contrast this with normal oscilloscope (time-domain) plot by clicking once again on the ”rainbow” icon. A musical chord displayed in time-domain format is a very complex waveform, but is quite simple to resolve into constituent notes (frequencies) on a frequency-domain display.

Experiment with different instrument ”voices” on the musical keyboard, correlating the time-domain plot with the frequency-domain plot. Waveforms that are symmetrical above and below their centerlines contain only odd-numbered harmonics (odd-integer multiples of the base, or *fundamental* frequency), while nonsymmetrical waveforms contain even-numbered harmonics as well. Use the cursor to locate the specific frequency of each peak on the plot, and a calculator to determine whether each peak is even- or odd-numbered.

4.15 Inductor-capacitor ”tank” circuit

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Oscilloscope
- Assortment of non-polarized capacitors (0.1 μF to 10 μF)
- Step-down power transformer (120V / 6 V)
- 10 kΩ resistors
- Six-volt battery

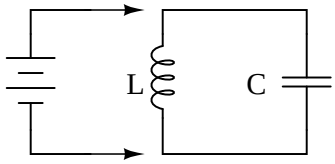
The power transformer is used simply as an inductor, with only one winding connected. The unused winding should be left open. A simple iron core, single-winding inductor (sometimes known as a *choke*) may also be used, but such inductors are more difficult to obtain than power transformers.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 6: ”Resonance”

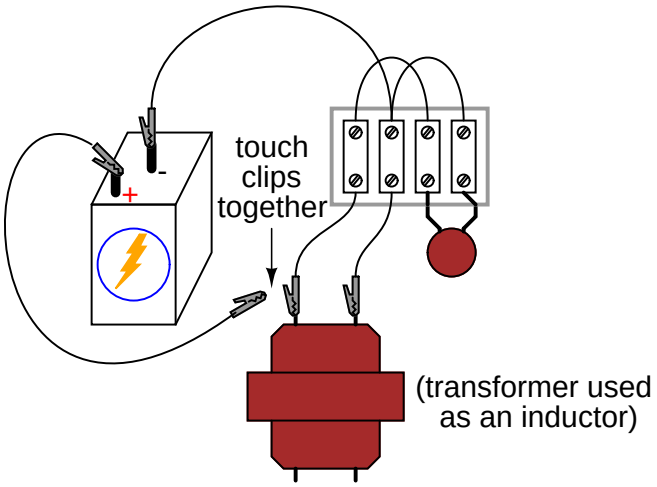
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to build a resonant circuit
- Effects of capacitor size on resonant frequency
- How to produce antiresonance

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

If an inductor and a capacitor are connected in parallel with each other, and then briefly energized by connection to a DC voltage source, oscillations will ensue as energy is exchanged from the capacitor to inductor and vice versa. These oscillations may be viewed with an oscilloscope connected in parallel with the inductor/capacitor circuit. Parallel inductor/capacitor circuits are commonly known as *tank circuits*.

Important note: I recommend *against* using a PC/sound card as an oscilloscope for this experiment, because very high voltages can be generated by the inductor when the battery is disconnected (inductive "kickback"). These high voltages will surely damage the sound card's input, and perhaps other portions of the computer as well.

A tank circuit's natural frequency, called the *resonant frequency*, is determined by the size of the inductor and the size of the capacitor, according to the following equation:

$$f_{resonant} = \frac{1}{2\pi \sqrt{LC}}$$

Many small power transformers have primary (120 volt) winding inductances of approximately 1 H. Use this figure as a rough estimate of inductance for your circuit to calculate expected oscillation frequency.

Ideally, the oscillations produced by a tank circuit continue indefinitely. Realistically, oscillations will decay in amplitude over the course of several cycles due to the resistive and magnetic losses of the inductor. Inductors with a high "Q" rating will, of course, produce longer-lasting oscillations than low-Q inductors.

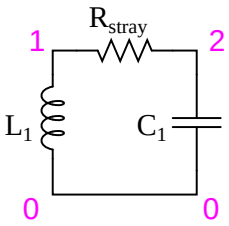
Try changing capacitor values and noting the effect on oscillation frequency. You might notice changes in the duration of oscillations as well, due to capacitor size. Since you know how to calculate resonant frequency from inductance and capacitance, can you figure out a way to calculate inductor inductance from known values of circuit capacitance (as measured by a capacitance meter) and resonant frequency (as measured by an oscilloscope)?

Resistance may be intentionally added to the circuit – either in series or parallel – for the express purpose of dampening oscillations. This effect of resistance dampening tank circuit

oscillation is known as *antiresonance*. It is analogous to the action of a shock absorber in dampening the bouncing of a car after striking a bump in the road.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



R_{stray} is placed in the circuit to dampen oscillations and produce a more realistic simulation. A lower R_{stray} value causes longer-lived oscillations because less energy is dissipated. Eliminating this resistor from the circuit results in endless oscillation.

Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
tank circuit with loss
l1 1 0 1 ic=0
rstray 1 2 1000
c1 2 0 0.1u ic=6
.tran 0.1m 20m uic
.plot tran v(1,0)
.end
```

4.16 Signal coupling

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6 volt battery
- One capacitor, 0.22 μF (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1070 or equivalent)
- One capacitor, 0.047 μF (Radio Shack catalog # 272-134 or equivalent)
- Small ”hobby” motor, permanent-magnet type (Radio Shack catalog # 273-223 or equivalent)
- Audio detector with headphones
- Length of telephone cable, several feet long (Radio Shack catalog # 278-872)

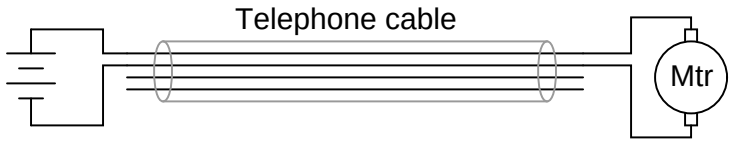
Telephone cable is also available from hardware stores. Any unshielded multiconductor cable will suffice for this experiment. Cables with thin conductors (telephone cable is typically 24-gauge) produce a more pronounced effect.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 7: ”Mixed-Frequency AC Signals”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 8: ”Filters”

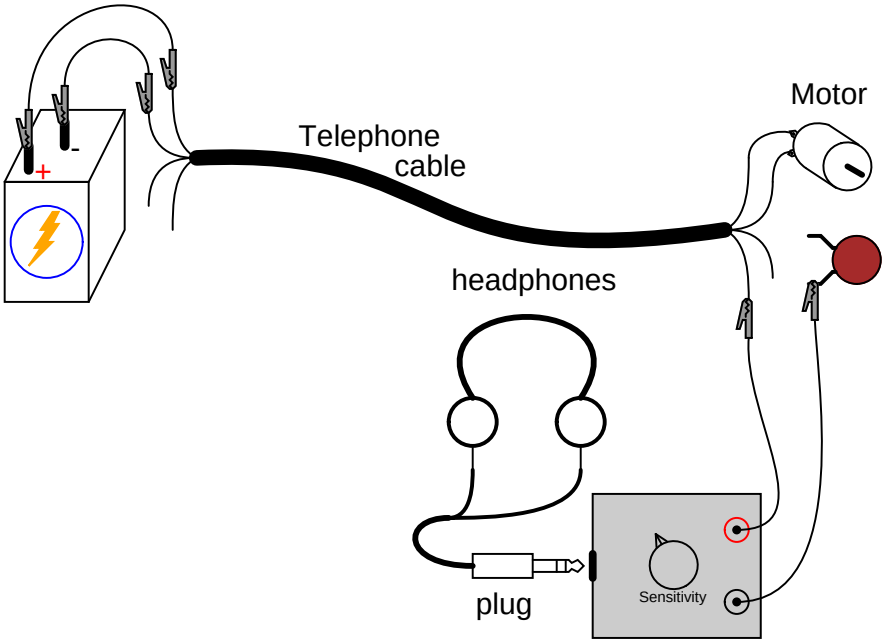
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to ”couple” AC signals and block DC signals to a measuring instrument
- How stray coupling happens in cables
- Techniques to minimize inter-cable coupling

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

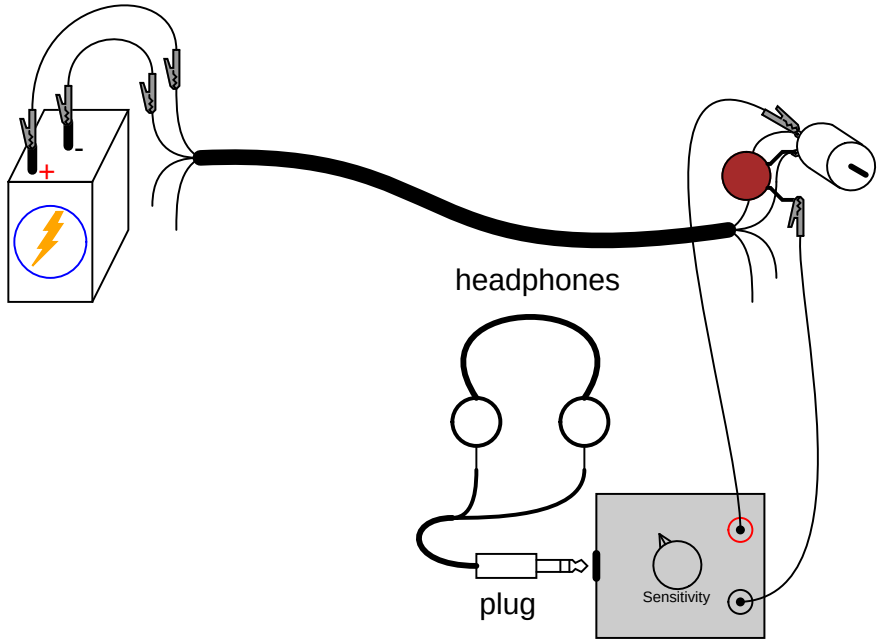


ILLUSTRATION



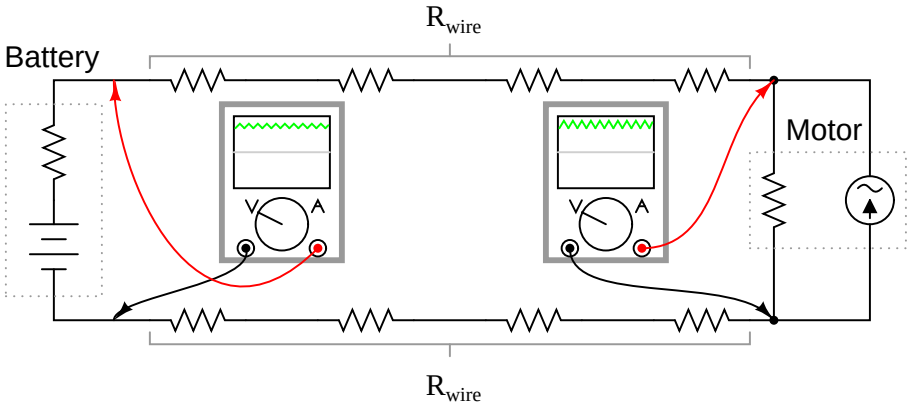
INSTRUCTIONS

Connect the motor to the battery using two of the telephone cable's four conductors. The motor should run, as expected. Now, connect the audio signal detector across the motor terminals, with the 0.047 μF capacitor in series, like this:

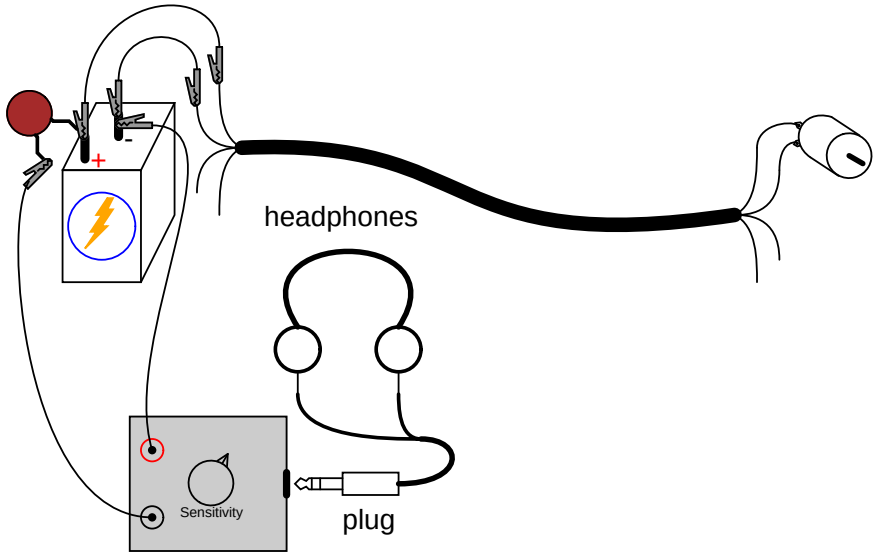


You should be able to hear a ”buzz” or ”whine” in the headphones, representing the AC ”noise” voltage produced by the motor as the brushes make and break contact with the rotating commutator bars. The purpose of the series capacitor is to act as a high-pass filter, so that the detector only receives the AC voltage across the motor’s terminals, not any DC voltage. This is precisely how oscilloscopes provide an ”AC coupling” feature for measuring the AC content of a signal without any DC bias voltage: a capacitor is connected in series with one test probe.

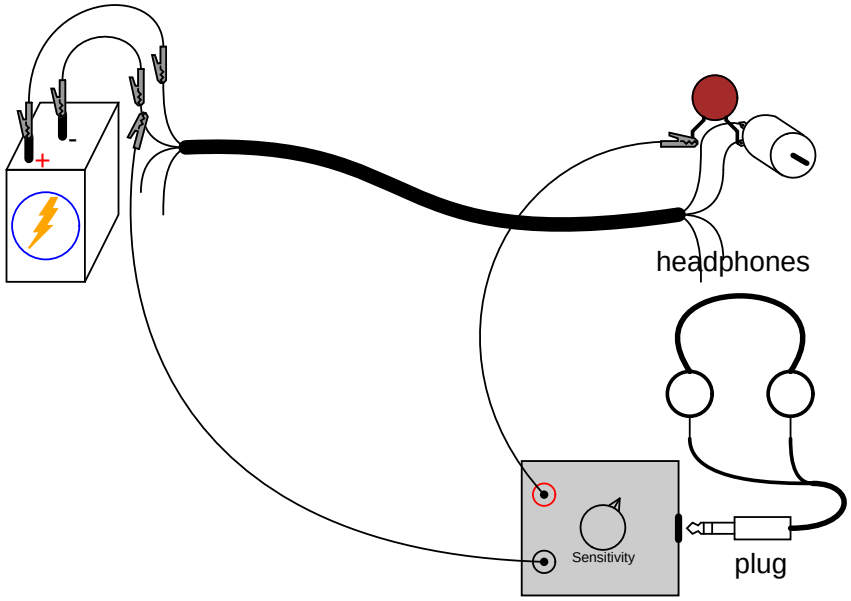
Ideally, one would expect nothing but pure DC voltage at the motor’s terminals, because the motor is connected directly in parallel with the battery. Since the motor’s terminals are electrically common with the respective terminals of the battery, and the battery’s nature is to maintain a constant DC voltage, nothing but DC voltage should appear at the motor terminals, right? Well, because of resistance internal to the battery and along the conductor lengths, current pulses drawn by the motor produce oscillating voltage ”dips” at the motor terminals, causing the AC ”noise” heard by the detector:



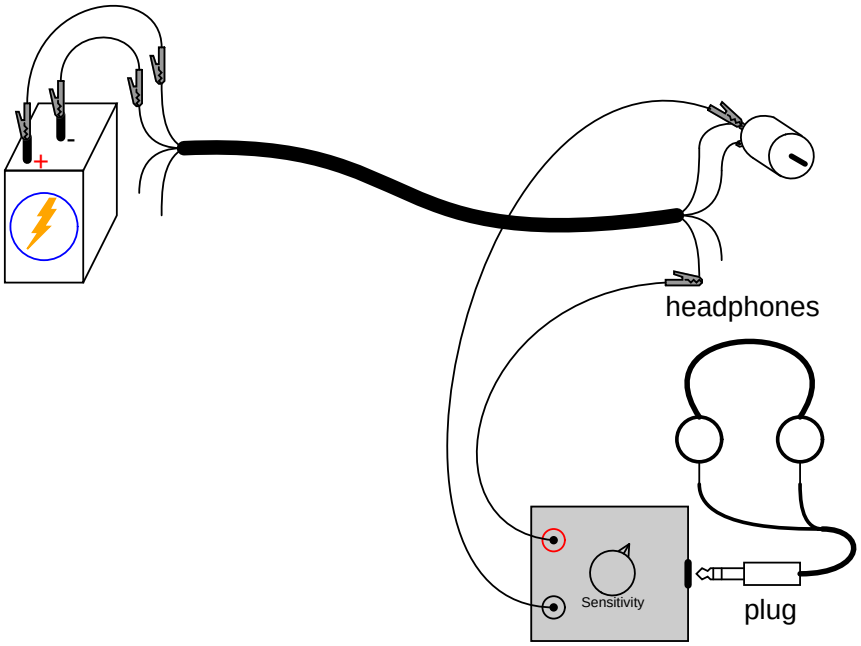
Use the audio detector to measure "noise" voltage directly across the battery. Since the AC noise is produced in this circuit by pulsating voltage drops along stray resistances, the less resistance we measure across, the less noise voltage we should detect:



You may also measure noise voltage dropped along either of the telephone cable conductors supplying power to the motor, by connecting the audio detector between both ends of a single cable conductor. The noise detected here originates from current pulses through the resistance of the wire:



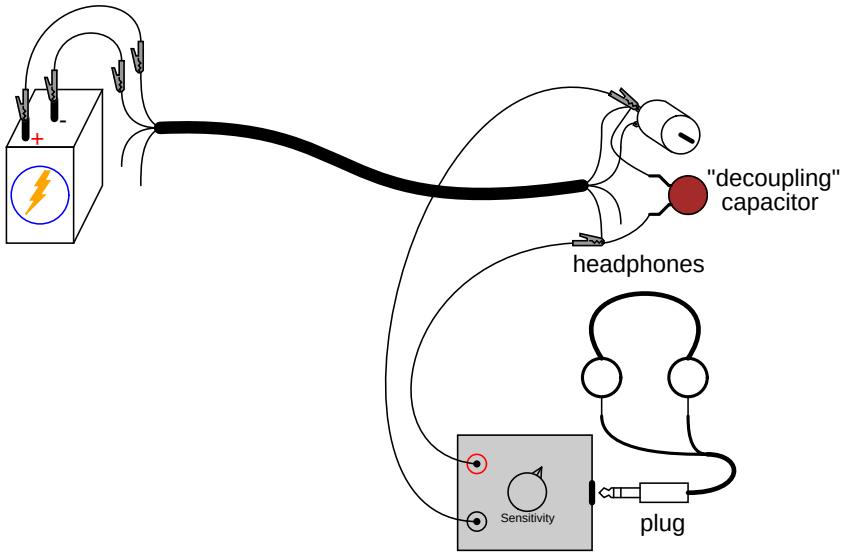
Now that we have established how AC noise is created and distributed in this circuit, let's explore how it is *coupled* to adjacent wires in the cable. Use the audio detector to measure voltage between one of the motor terminals and one of the unused wires in the telephone cable. The 0.047 μF capacitor is not needed in this exercise, because there is no DC voltage between these points for the detector to detect anyway:



The noise voltage detected here is due to stray capacitance between adjacent cable conductors creating an AC current "path" between the wires. Remember that no current actually goes *through* a capacitance, but the alternate charging and discharging action of a capacitance, whether it be intentional or unintentional, provides *alternating* current a pathway of sorts.

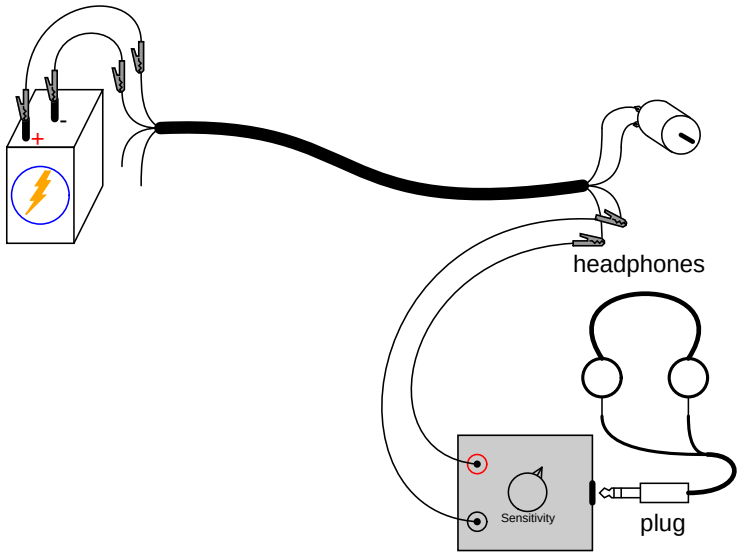
If we were to try and conduct a voltage signal between one of the unused wires and a point common with the motor, that signal would become tainted with noise voltage from the motor. This could be quite detrimental, depending on how much noise was coupled between the two circuits and how sensitive one circuit was to the other's noise. Since the primary coupling phenomenon in this circuit is capacitive in nature, higher-frequency noise voltages are more strongly coupled than lower-frequency noise voltages.

If the additional signal was a DC signal, with no AC expected in it, we could mitigate the problem of coupled noise by "decoupling" the AC noise with a relatively large capacitor connected across the DC signal's conductors. Use the 0.22 μF capacitor for this purpose, as shown:



The *decoupling capacitor* acts as a practical short-circuit to any AC noise voltage, while not affecting DC voltage signals between those two points at all. So long as the decoupling capacitor value is significantly larger than the stray "coupling" capacitance between the cable's conductors, the AC noise voltage will be held to a minimum.

Another way of minimizing coupled noise in a cable is to avoid having two circuits share a common conductor. To illustrate, connect the audio detector between the two unused wires and listen for a noise signal:



There should be far less noise detected between any two of the unused conductors than between one unused conductor and one used in the motor circuit. The reason for this drastic reduction in noise is that stray capacitance between cable conductors tends to couple the *same* noise voltage to *both* of the unused conductors in approximately equal proportions. Thus, when measuring voltage *between* those two conductors, the detector only ”sees” the difference between two approximately identical noise signals.

Chapter 5

DISCRETE SEMICONDUCTOR CIRCUITS

Contents

5.1 Introduction

A *semiconductor* device is one made of silicon or any number of other specially prepared materials designed to exploit the unique properties of electrons in a crystal lattice, where electrons are not as free to move as in a conductor, but are far more mobile than in an insulator. A *discrete* device is one contained in its own package, not built on a common semiconductor substrate with other components, as is the case with ICs, or *integrated circuits*. Thus, "discrete semiconductor circuits" are circuits built out of individual semiconductor components, connected together on some kind of circuit board or terminal strip. These circuits employ all the components and concepts explored in the previous chapters, so a firm comprehension of DC and AC electricity is essential before embarking on these experiments.

Just for fun, one circuit is included in this section using a *vacuum tube* for amplification instead of a semiconductor transistor. Before the advent of transistors, "vacuum tubes" were the workhorses of the electronics industry: used to make rectifiers, amplifiers, oscillators, and many other circuits. Though now considered obsolete for most purposes, there are still some applications for vacuum tubes, and it can be fun building and operating circuits using these devices.

5.2 Commutating diode

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 6 volt battery
- Power transformer, 120VAC step-down to 12VAC (Radio Shack catalog # 273-1365, 273-1352, or 273-1511).
- One 1N4001 rectifying diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- One neon lamp (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1102)
- Two toggle switches, SPST (”Single-Pole, Single-Throw”)

A power transformer is specified, but any iron-core inductor will suffice, even the home-made inductor or transformer from the AC experiments chapter!

The diode need not be an exact model 1N4001. Any of the ”1N400X” series of rectifying diodes are suitable for the task, and they are quite easy to obtain.

I recommend household light switches for their low cost and durability.

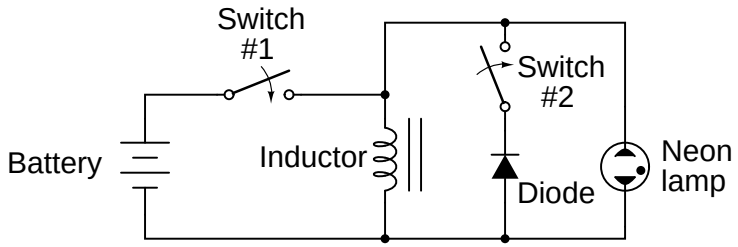
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 16: ”RC and L/R Time Constants”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 3: ”Diodes and Rectifiers”

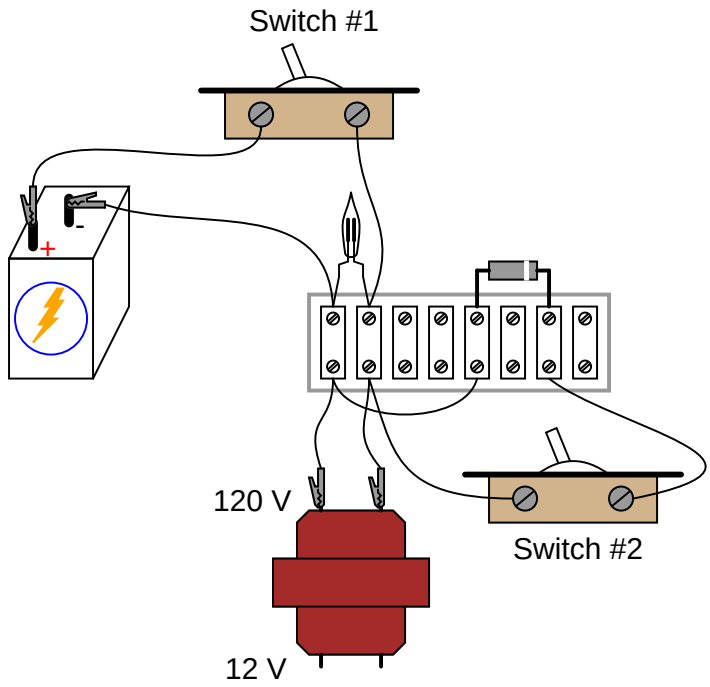
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Review inductive ”kickback”
- Learn how to suppress ”kickback” using a diode

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

When assembling the circuit, be very careful of the diode's orientation. The cathode end of the diode (the end marked with a single band) must face the positive (+) side of the battery. The diode should be reverse-biased and nonconducting with switch #1 in the "on" position. Use the high-voltage (120 V) winding of the transformer for the inductor coil. The primary winding of a step-down transformer has more inductance than the secondary winding, and will give a greater lamp-flashing effect.

Set switch #2 to the "off" position. This disconnects the diode from the circuit so that it has no effect. Quickly close and open (turn "on" and then "off") switch #1. When that switch is opened, the neon bulb will flash from the effect of inductive "kickback." Rapid current decrease caused by the switch's opening causes the inductor to create a large voltage drop as it attempts to keep current at the same magnitude and going in the same direction.

Inductive kickback is detrimental to switch contacts, as it causes excessive arcing whenever they are opened. In this circuit, the neon lamp actually diminishes the effect by providing an alternate current path for the inductor's current when the switch opens, dissipating the inductor's stored energy harmlessly in the form of light and heat. However, there is still a fairly high voltage dropped across the opening contacts of switch #1, causing undue arcing and shortened switch life.

If switch #2 is closed (turned "on"), the diode will now be a part of the circuit. Quickly close and open switch #1 again, noting the difference in circuit behavior. This time, the neon lamp does not flash. Connect a voltmeter across the inductor to verify that the inductor is still receiving full battery voltage with switch #1 closed. If the voltmeter registers only a small voltage with switch #1 "on," the diode is probably connected backward, creating a short-circuit.

5.3 Half-wave rectifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Low-voltage AC power supply (6 volt output)
- 6 volt battery
- One 1N4001 rectifying diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- Small ”hobby” motor, permanent-magnet type (Radio Shack catalog # 273-223 or equivalent)
- Audio detector with headphones
- 0.1 μF capacitor (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135 or equivalent)

The diode need not be an exact model 1N4001. Any of the ”1N400X” series of rectifying diodes are suitable for the task, and they are quite easy to obtain.

See the AC experiments chapter for detailed instructions on building the ”audio detector” listed here. If you haven't built one already, you're missing a simple and valuable tool for experimentation.

A 0.1 μF capacitor is specified for ”coupling” the audio detector to the circuit, so that only AC reaches the detector circuit. This capacitor's value is not critical. I've used capacitors ranging from 0.27 μF to 0.015 μF with success. Lower capacitor values attenuate low-frequency signals to a greater degree, resulting in less sound intensity from the headphones, so use a greater-value capacitor value if you experience difficulty hearing the tone(s).

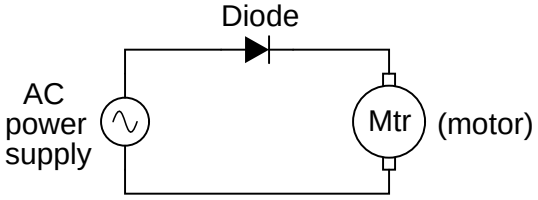
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 3: ”Diodes and Rectifiers”

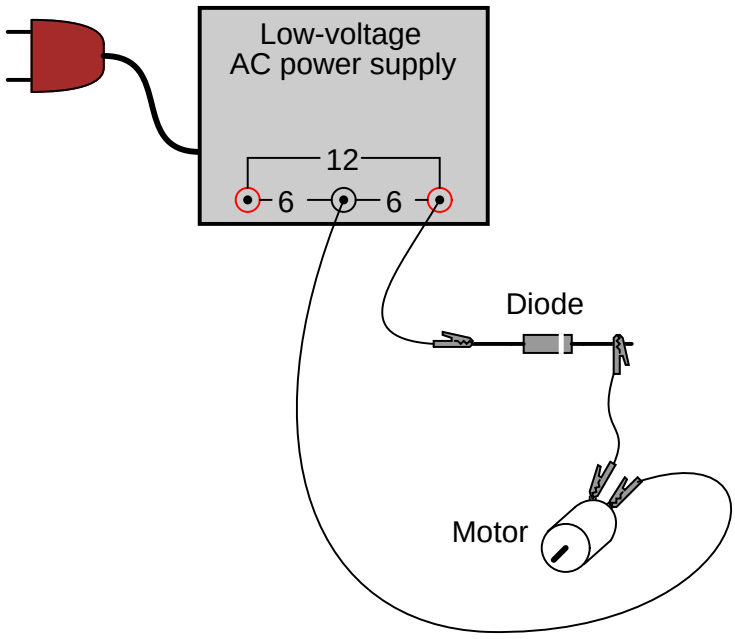
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Function of a diode as a rectifier
- Permanent-magnet motor operation on AC versus DC power
- Measuring ”ripple” voltage with a voltmeter

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



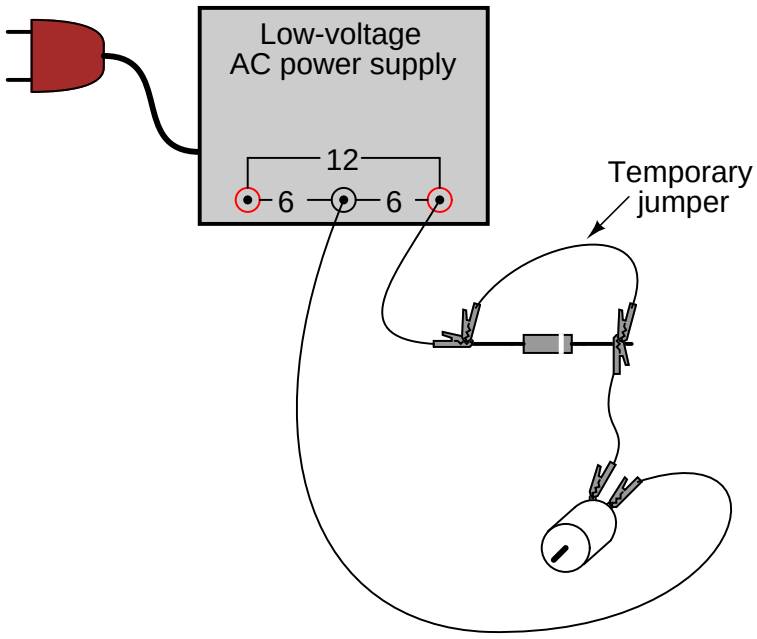
ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

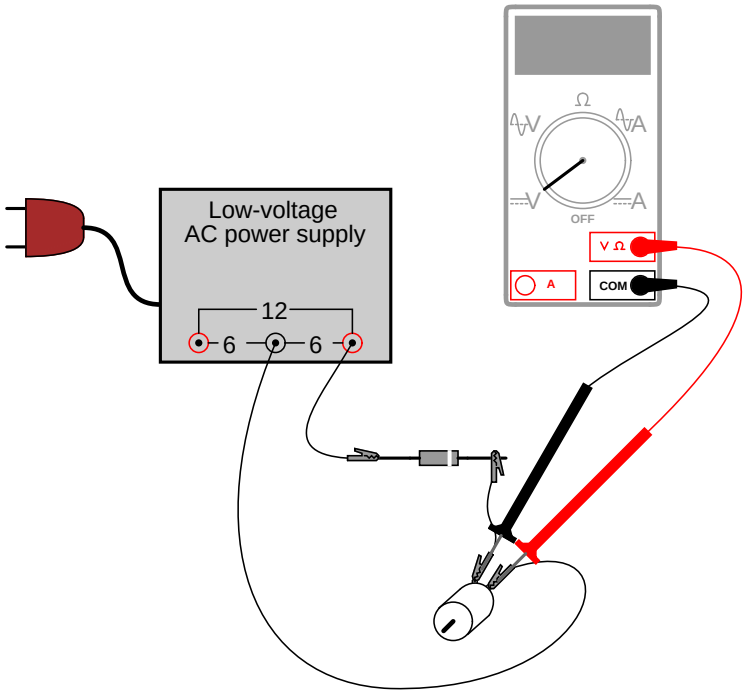
Connect the motor to the low-voltage AC power supply through the rectifying diode as shown. The diode only allows current to pass through during one half-cycle of a full positive-and-negative cycle of power supply voltage, eliminating one half-cycle from ever reaching the motor. As a result, the motor only ”sees” current in one direction, albeit a *pulsating* current, allowing it to spin in one direction.

Take a jumper wire and short past the diode momentarily, noting the effect on the motor’s operation:

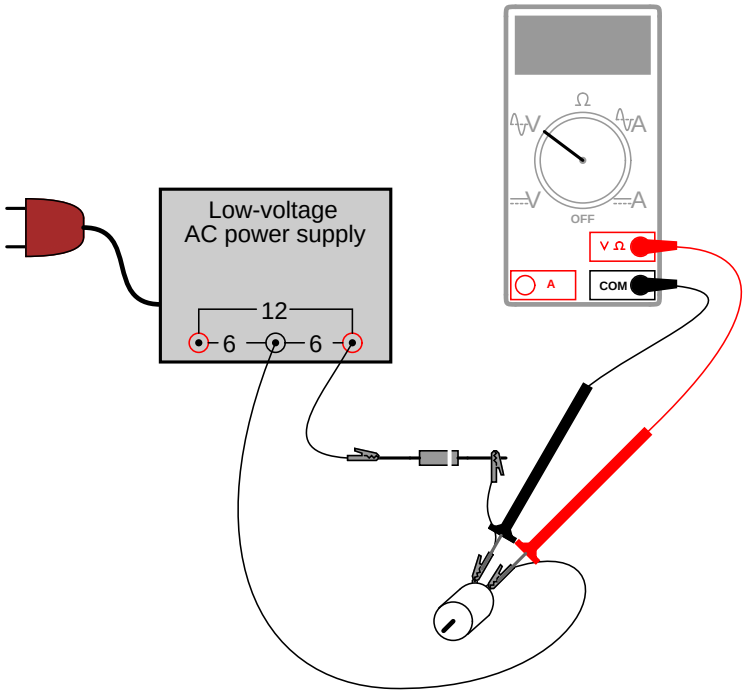


As you can see, permanent-magnet "DC" motors do not function well on alternating current. Remove the temporary jumper wire and reverse the diode's orientation in the circuit. Note the effect on the motor.

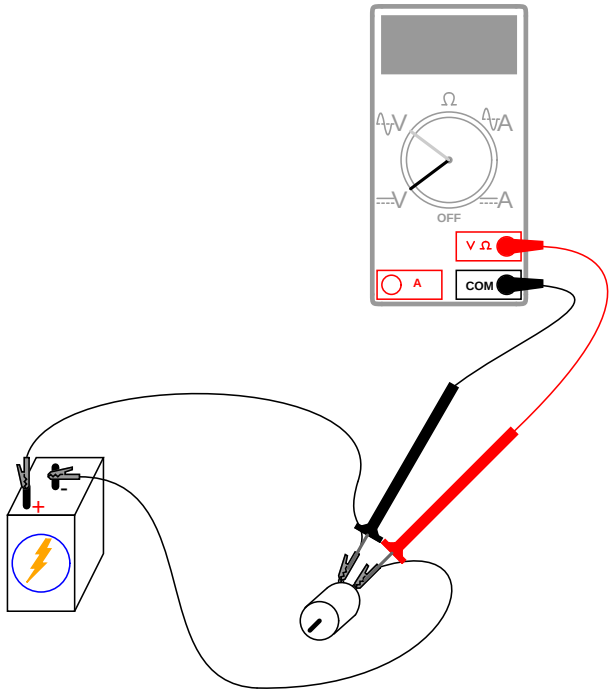
Measure DC voltage across the motor like this:



Then, measure AC voltage across the motor as well:

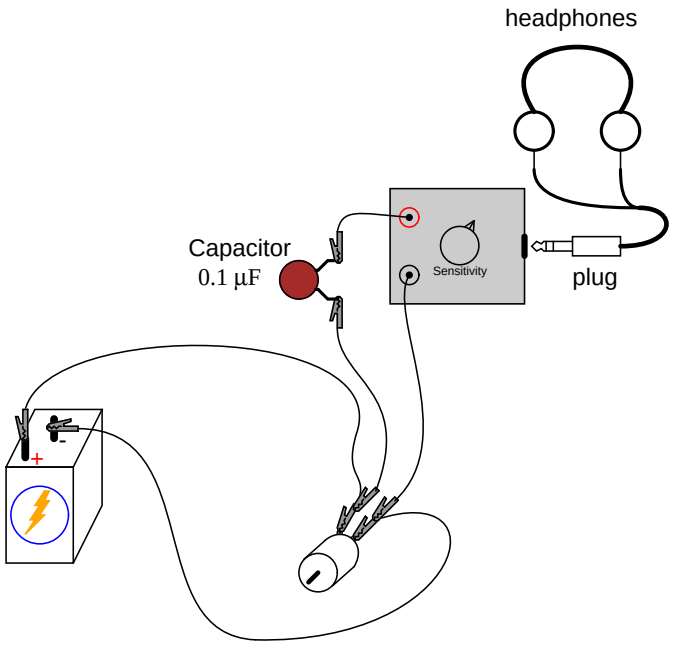


Most digital multimeters do a good job of discriminating AC from DC voltage, and these two measurements show the DC average and AC ”ripple” voltages, respectively of the power ”seen” by the motor. *Ripple voltage* is the varying portion of the voltage, interpreted as an AC quantity by measurement equipment although the voltage waveform never actually reverses polarity. Ripple may be envisioned as an AC signal superimposed on a steady DC ”bias” or ”offset” signal. Compare these measurements of DC and AC with voltage measurements taken across the motor while powered by a battery:

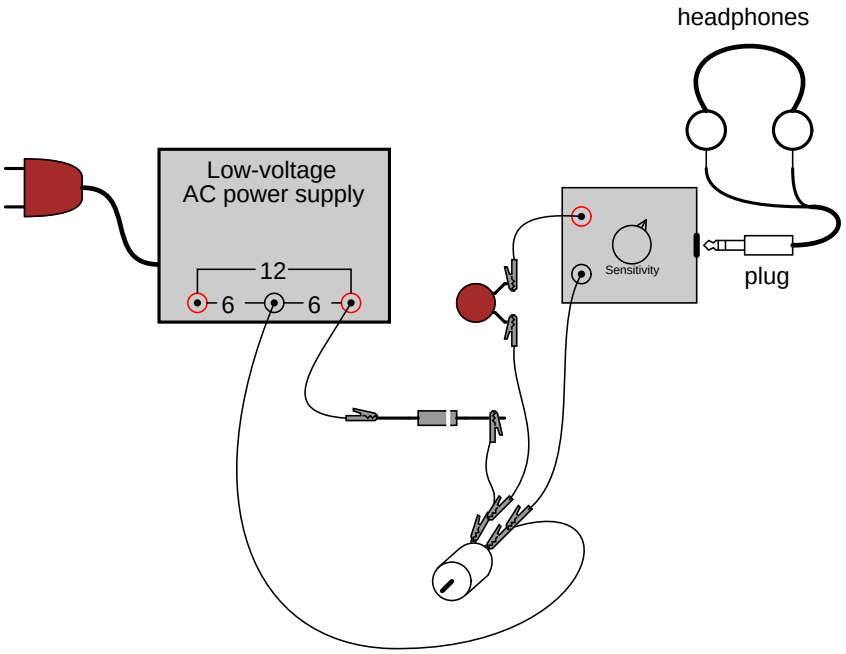


Batteries give very ”pure” DC power, and as a result there should be very little AC voltage measured across the motor in this circuit. Whatever AC voltage *is* measured across the motor is due to the motor’s pulsating current draw as the brushes make and break contact with the rotating commutator bars. This pulsating current causes pulsating voltages to be dropped across any stray resistances in the circuit, resulting in pulsating voltage ”dips” at the motor terminals.

A qualitative assessment of ripple voltage may be obtained by using the sensitive audio detector described in the AC experiments chapter (the same device described as a ”sensitive voltage detector” in the DC experiments chapter). Turn the detector’s sensitivity down for low volume, and connect it across the motor terminals through a small (0.1 μF) capacitor, like this:

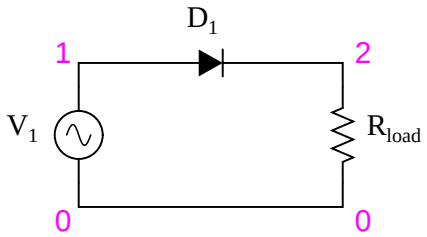


The capacitor acts as a high-pass filter, blocking DC voltage from reaching the detector and allowing easier ”listening” of the remaining AC voltage. This is the exact same technique used in oscilloscope circuitry for ”AC coupling,” where DC signals are blocked from viewing by a series-connected capacitor. With a battery powering the motor, the ripple should sound like a high-pitched ”buzz” or ”whine.” Try replacing the battery with the AC power supply and rectifying diode, ”listening” with the detector to the low-pitched ”buzz” of the half-wave rectified power:



COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Halfwave rectifier
v1 1 0 sin(0 8.485 60 0 0)
rload 2 0 10k
d1 1 2 mod1
.model mod1 d
.tran .5m 25m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(2,0)
.end
```

This simulation plots the input voltage as a sine wave and the output voltage as a series of ”humps” corresponding to the positive half-cycles of the AC source voltage. The dynamics of a DC motor are far too complex to be simulated using SPICE, unfortunately.

AC source voltage is specified as 8.485 instead of 6 volts because SPICE understands AC voltage in terms of *peak* value only. A 6 volt RMS sine-wave voltage is actually 8.485 volts peak. In simulations where the distinction between RMS and peak value isn't relevant, I will not bother with an RMS-to-peak conversion like this. To be truthful, the distinction is not terribly important in this simulation, but I discuss it here for your edification.

5.4 Full-wave center-tap rectifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Low-voltage AC power supply (6 volt output)
- Two 1N4001 rectifying diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- Small ”hobby” motor, permanent-magnet type (Radio Shack catalog # 273-223 or equivalent)
- Audio detector with headphones
- 0.1 μF capacitor
- One toggle switch, SPST (”Single-Pole, Single-Throw”)

It is essential for this experiment that the low-voltage AC power supply be equipped with a center tap. A transformer with a non-tapped secondary winding simply will not work for this circuit.

The diodes need not be exact model 1N4001 units. Any of the ”1N400X” series of rectifying diodes are suitable for the task, and they are quite easy to obtain.

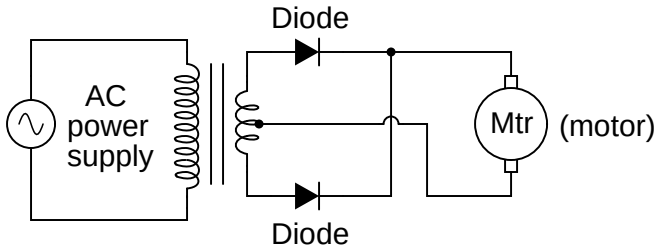
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 3: ”Diodes and Rectifiers”

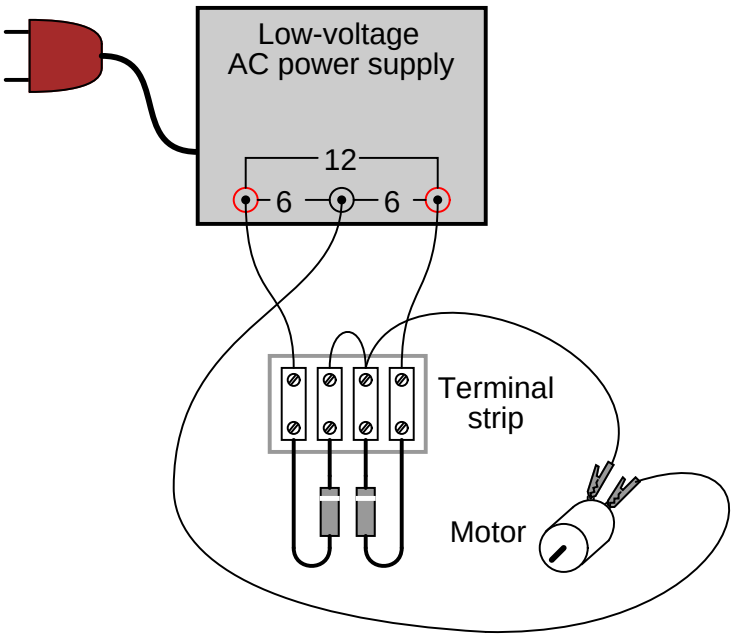
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Design of a center-tap rectifier circuit
- Measuring ”ripple” voltage with a voltmeter

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION

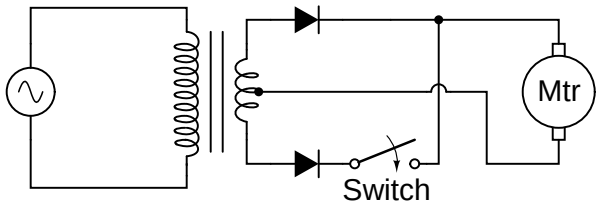


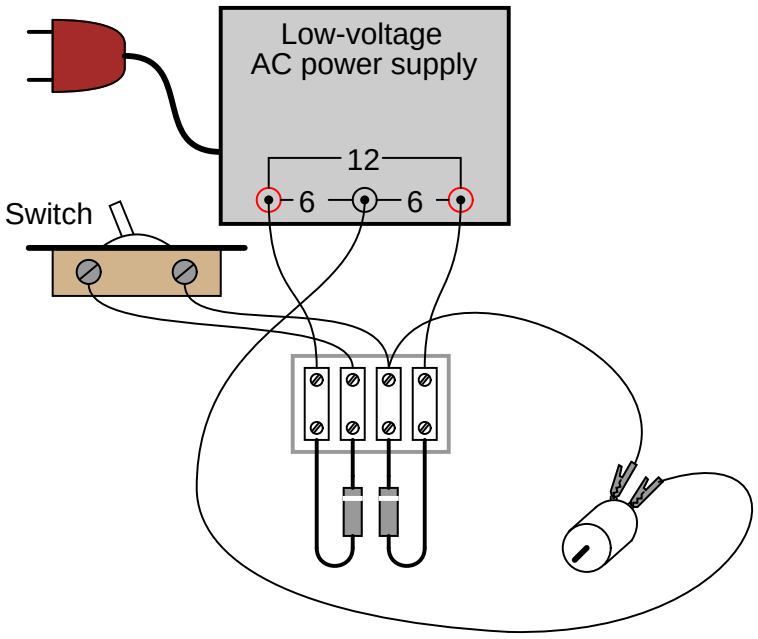
INSTRUCTIONS

This rectifier circuit is called *full-wave* because it makes use of the entire waveform, both positive and negative half-cycles, of the AC source voltage in powering the DC load. As a result, there is less "ripple" voltage seen at the load. The RMS (Root-Mean-Square) value of the rectifier's output is also greater for this circuit than for the half-wave rectifier.

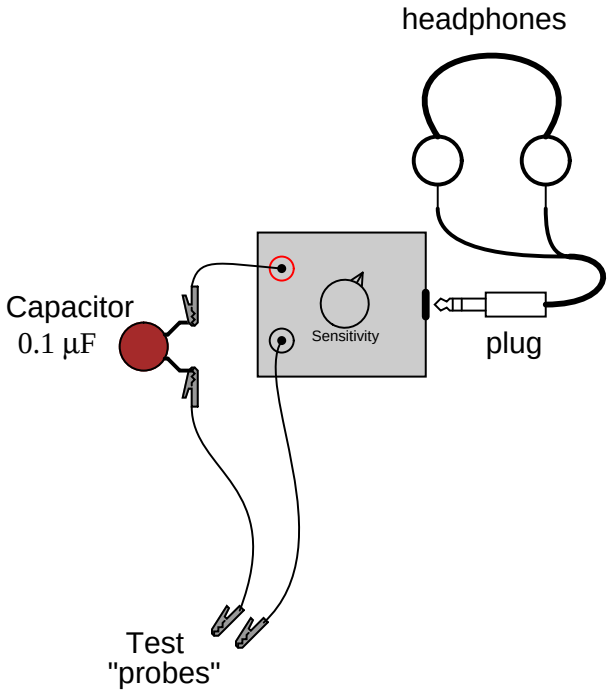
Use a voltmeter to measure both the DC and AC voltage delivered to the motor. You should notice the advantages of the full-wave rectifier immediately by the greater DC and lower AC indications as compared to the last experiment.

An experimental advantage of this circuit is the ease of which it may be "de-converted" to a half-wave rectifier: simply disconnect the short jumper wire connecting the two diodes' cathode ends together on the terminal strip. Better yet, for quick comparison between half and full-wave rectification, you may add a switch in the circuit to open and close this connection at will:



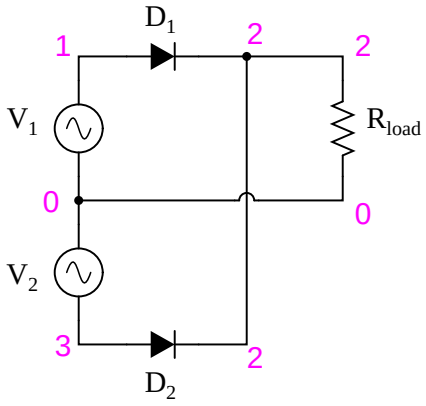


With the ability to quickly switch between half- and full-wave rectification, you may easily perform qualitative comparisons between the two different operating modes. Use the audio signal detector to ”listen” to the ripple voltage present between the motor terminals for half-wave and full-wave rectification modes, noting both the intensity and the quality of the tone. Remember to use a coupling capacitor in series with the detector so that it only receives the AC ”ripple” voltage and not DC voltage:



COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Fullwave center-tap rectifier
v1 1 0 sin(0 8.485 60 0 0)
v2 0 3 sin(0 8.485 60 0 0)
rload 2 0 10k
d1 1 2 mod1
```

```
d2 3 2 mod1
.model mod1 d
.tran .5m 25m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(2,0)
.end
```

5.5 Full-wave bridge rectifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Low-voltage AC power supply (6 volt output)
- Four 1N4001 rectifying diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- Small ”hobby” motor, permanent-magnet type (Radio Shack catalog # 273-223 or equivalent)

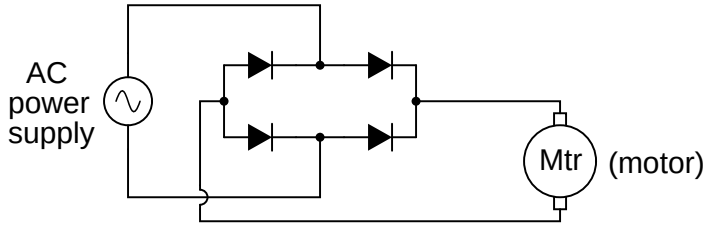
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 3: ”Diodes and Rectifiers”

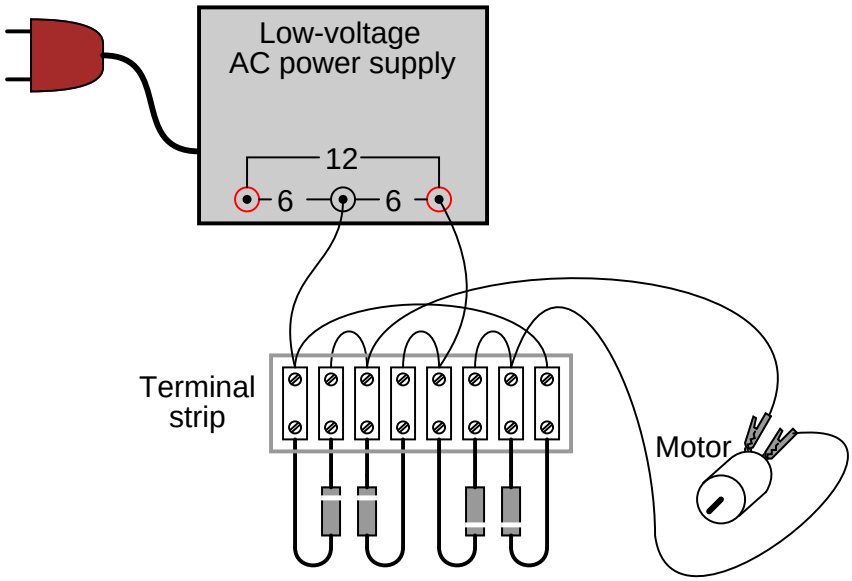
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Design of a bridge rectifier circuit
- Advantages and disadvantages of the bridge rectifier circuit, compared to the center-tap circuit

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



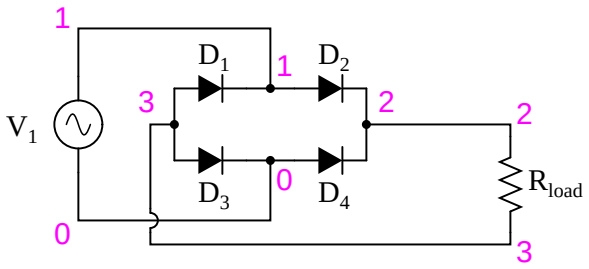
INSTRUCTIONS

This circuit provides full-wave rectification without the necessity of a center-tapped transformer. In applications where a center-tapped, or *split-phase*, source is unavailable, this is the only practical method of full-wave rectification.

In addition to requiring more diodes than the center-tap circuit, the full-wave bridge suffers a slight performance disadvantage as well: the additional voltage drop caused by current having to go through *two* diodes in each half-cycle rather than through only one. With a low-voltage source such as the one you're using (6 volts RMS), this disadvantage is easily measured. Compare the DC voltage reading across the motor terminals with the reading obtained from the last experiment, given the same AC power supply and the same motor.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Fullwave bridge rectifier
v1 1 0 sin(0 8.485 60 0 0)
```

```
rload 2 3 10k
d1 3 1 mod1
d2 1 2 mod1
d3 3 0 mod1
d4 0 2 mod1
.model mod1 d
.tran .5m 25m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(2,3)
.end
```

5.6 Rectifier/filter circuit

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Low-voltage AC power supply
- Bridge rectifier pack (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1185 or equivalent)
- Electrolytic capacitor, 1000 μF, at least 25 WVDC (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1047 or equivalent)
- Four ”banana” jack style binding posts, or other terminal hardware, for connection to potentiometer circuit (Radio Shack catalog # 274-662 or equivalent)
- Metal box
- 12-volt light bulb, 25 watt
- Lamp socket

A bridge rectifier ”pack” is highly recommended over constructing a bridge rectifier circuit from individual diodes, because such ”packs” are made to bolt onto a metal heat sink. A metal box is recommended over a plastic box for its ability to function as a heat sink for the rectifier.

A larger capacitor value is fine to use in this experiment, so long as its working voltage is high enough. To be safe, choose a capacitor with a working voltage rating at least twice the RMS AC voltage output of the low-voltage AC power supply.

High-wattage 12-volt lamps may be purchased from recreational vehicle (RV) and boating supply stores. Common sizes are 25 watt and 50 watt. This lamp will be used as a ”heavy” load for the power supply.

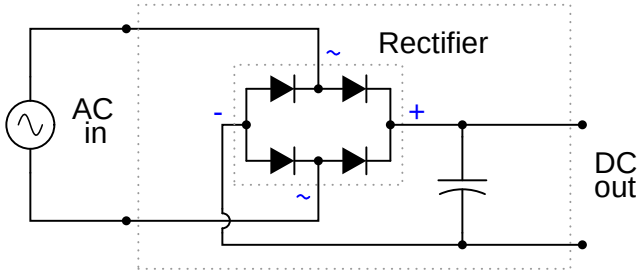
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 8: ”Filters”

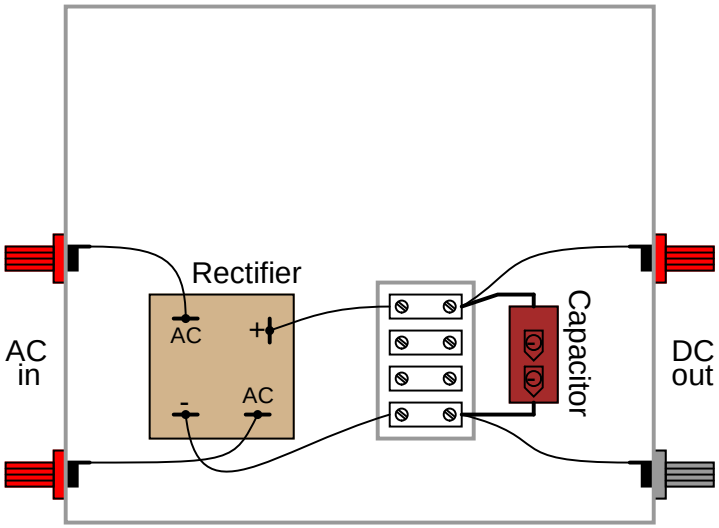
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Capacitive filter function in an AC/DC power supply
- Importance of heat sinks for power semiconductors

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This experiment involves constructing a rectifier and filter circuit for attachment to the low-voltage AC power supply constructed earlier. With this device, you will have a source of low-voltage, DC power suitable as a replacement for a battery in battery-powered experiments. If you would like to make this device its own, self-contained 120VAC/DC power supply, you may add all the componentry of the low-voltage AC supply to the "AC in" side of this circuit: a transformer, power cord, and plug. Even if you don't choose to do this, I recommend using a metal box larger than necessary to provide room for additional voltage regulation circuitry you might choose to add to this project later.

The bridge rectifier unit should be rated for a current at least as high as the transformer's secondary winding is rated for, and for a voltage at least twice as high as the RMS voltage of the transformer's output (this allows for peak voltage, plus an additional safety margin). The Radio Shack rectifier specified in the parts list is rated for 25 amps and 50 volts, more than enough for the output of the low-voltage AC power supply specified in the AC experiments chapter.

Rectifier units of this size are often equipped with "quick-disconnect" terminals. Complementary "quick-disconnect" lugs are sold that crimp onto the bare ends of wire. This is the preferred method of terminal connection. You may solder wires directly to the lugs of the rectifier, but I recommend against direct soldering to any semiconductor component for two reasons: possible heat damage during soldering, and difficulty of replacing the component in the event of failure.

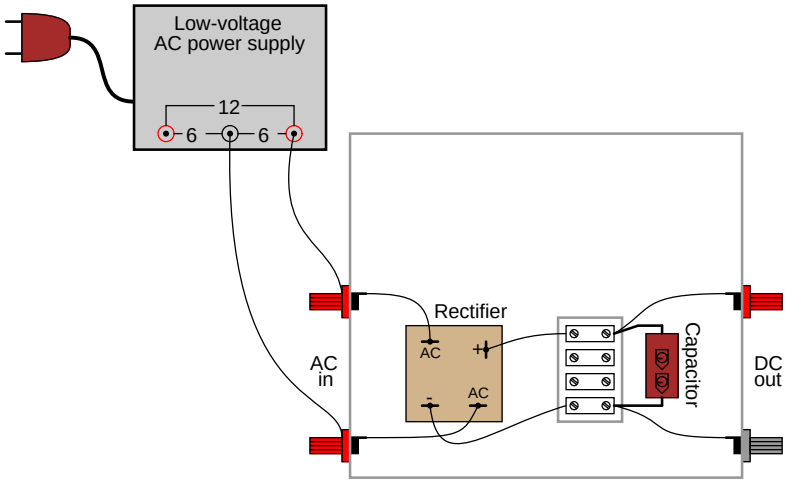
Semiconductor devices are more prone to failure than most of the components covered in these experiments thus far, and so if you have any intent of making a circuit permanent, you should build it to be maintained. "Maintainable construction" involves, among other things, making all delicate components replaceable. It also means making "test points" accessible to meter probes throughout the circuit, so that troubleshooting may be executed with a mini-

mum of inconvenience. Terminal strips inherently provide test points for taking voltage measurements, and they also allow for easy disconnection of wires without sacrificing connection durability.

Bolt the rectifier unit to the inside of the metal box. The box's surface area will act as a radiator, keeping the rectifier unit cool as it passes high currents. Any metal radiator surface designed to lower the operating temperature of an electronic component is called a *heat sink*. Semiconductor devices in general are prone to damage from overheating, so providing a path for heat transfer from the device(s) to the ambient air is very important when the circuit in question may handle large amounts of power.

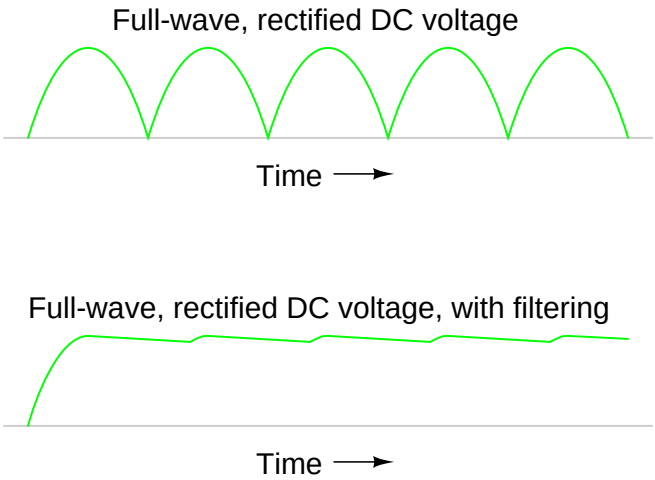
A capacitor is included in the circuit to act as a *filter* to reduce ripple voltage. Make sure that you connect the capacitor properly across the DC output terminals of the rectifier, so that the polarities match. Being an electrolytic capacitor, it is sensitive to damage by polarity reversal. In this circuit especially, where the internal resistance of the transformer and rectifier are low and the short-circuit current consequently is high, the potential for damage is great. **Warning:** a failed capacitor in this circuit will likely explode with alarming force!

After the rectifier/filter circuit is built, connect it to the low-voltage AC power supply like this:



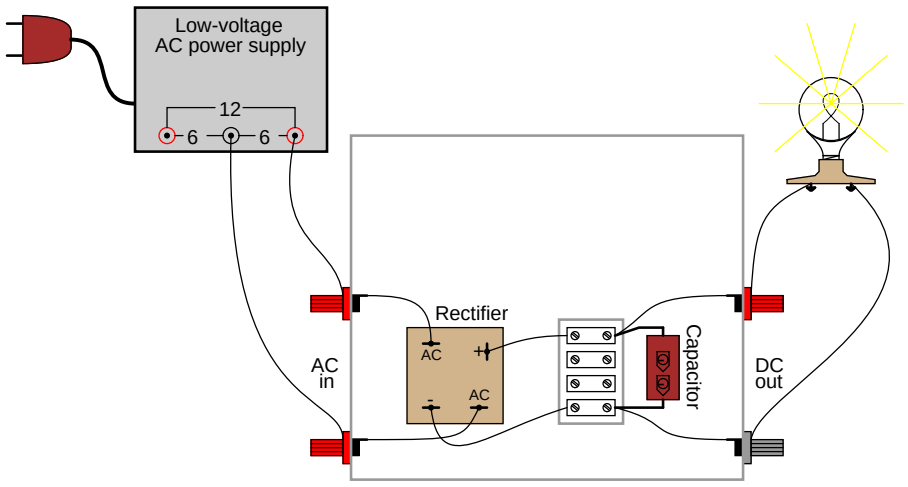
Measure the AC voltage output by the low-voltage power supply. Your meter should indicate approximately 6 volts if the circuit is connected as shown. This voltage measurement is the RMS voltage of the AC power supply.

Now, switch your multimeter to the DC voltage function and measure the DC voltage output by the rectifier/filter circuit. It should read substantially higher than the RMS voltage of the AC input measured before. The filtering action of the capacitor provides a DC output voltage equal to the *peak* AC voltage, hence the greater voltage indication:

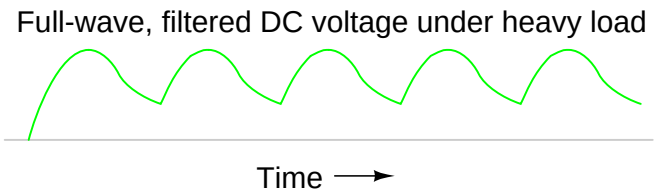


Measure the AC ripple voltage magnitude with a digital voltmeter set to AC volts (or AC millivolts). You should notice a much smaller ripple voltage in this circuit than what was measured in any of the unfiltered rectifier circuits previously built. Feel free to use your audio detector to "listen" to the AC ripple voltage output by the rectifier/filter unit. As usual, connect a small "coupling" capacitor in series with the detector so that it does not respond to the DC voltage, but only the AC ripple. Very little sound should be heard.

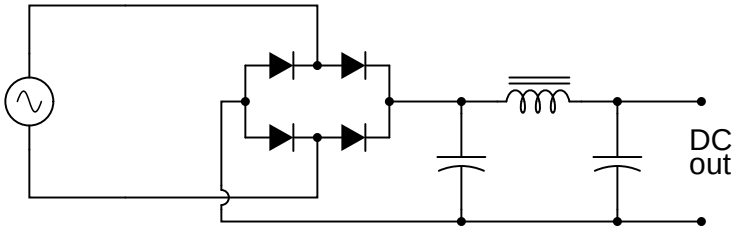
After taking unloaded AC ripple voltage measurements, connect the 25 watt light bulb to the output of the rectifier/filter circuit like this:



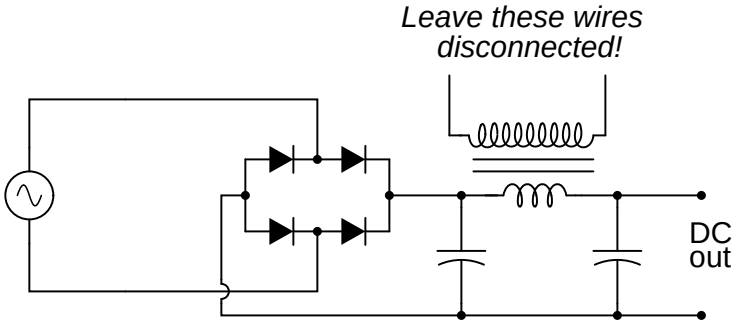
Re-measure the ripple voltage present between the rectifier/filter unit's "DC out" terminals. With a heavy load, the filter capacitor becomes discharged between rectified voltage peaks, resulting in greater ripple than before:



If less ripple is desired under heavy-load conditions, a larger capacitor may be used, or a more complex filter circuit may be built using two capacitors and an inductor:

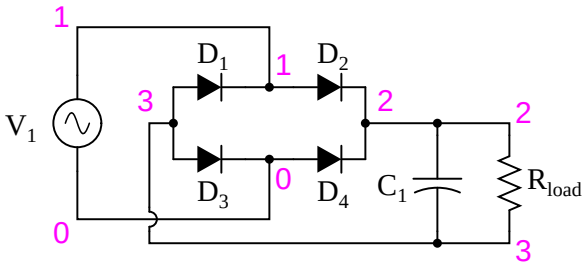


If you choose to build such a filter circuit, be sure to use an iron-core inductor for maximum inductance, and one with thick enough wire to safely handle the full rated current of power supply. Inductors used for the purpose of filtering are sometimes referred to as *chokes*, because they "choke" AC ripple voltage from getting to the load. If a suitable choke cannot be obtained, the secondary winding of a step-down power transformer like the type used to step 120 volts AC down to 12 or 6 volts AC in the low-voltage power supply may be used. Leave the primary (120 volt) winding open:



COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Fullwave bridge rectifier
v1 1 0 sin(0 8.485 60 0 0)
rload 2 3 10k
c1 2 3 1000u ic=0
d1 3 1 mod1
d2 1 2 mod1
d3 3 0 mod1
d4 0 2 mod1
.model mod1 d
.tran .5m 25m
.plot tran v(1,0) v(2,3)
.end
```

You may decrease the value of R_{load} in the simulation from 10 kΩ to some lower value to explore the effects of loading on ripple voltage. As it is with a 10 kΩ load resistor, the ripple is undetectable on the waveform plotted by SPICE.

5.7 Voltage regulator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Four 6 volt batteries
- Zener diode, 12 volt – type 1N4742 (Radio Shack catalog # 276-563 or equivalent)
- One 10 kΩ resistor

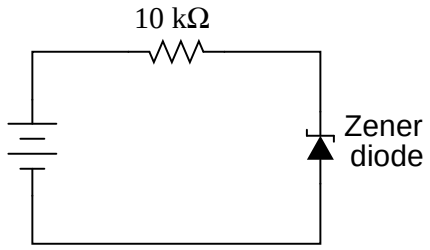
Any low-voltage zener diode is appropriate for this experiment. The 1N4742 model listed here (zener voltage = 12 volts) is but one suggestion. Whatever diode model you choose, I highly recommend one with a zener voltage rating *greater* than the voltage of a single battery, for maximum learning experience. It is important that you see how a zener diode functions when exposed to a voltage *less than* its breakdown rating.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 3: ”Diodes and Rectifiers”

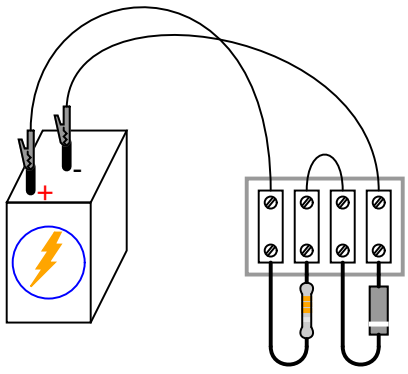
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Zener diode function

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



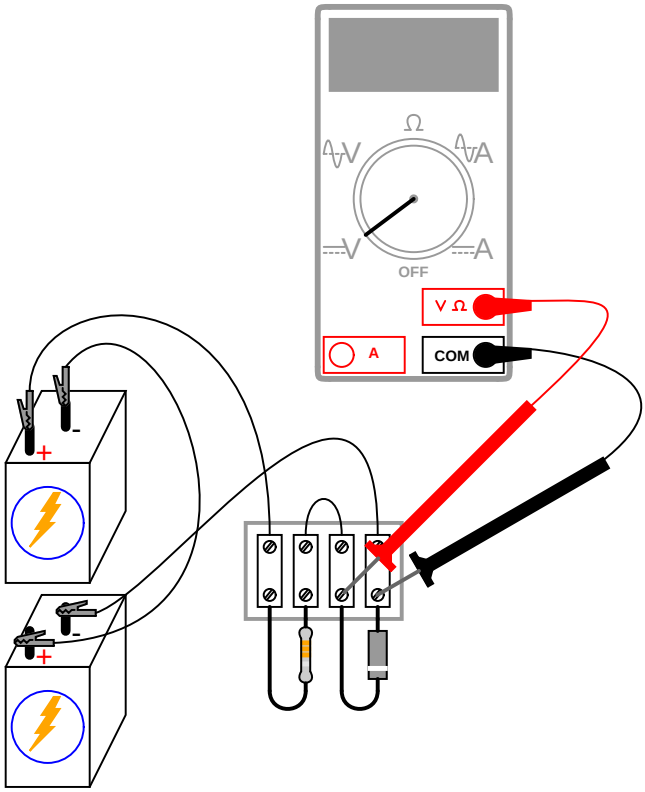
ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Build this simple circuit, being sure to connect the diode in "reverse-bias" fashion (cathode positive and anode negative), and measure the voltage across the diode with one battery as a power source. Record this voltage drop for future reference. Also, measure and record the voltage drop across the 10 kΩ resistor.

Modify the circuit by connecting two 6-volt batteries in series, for 12 volts total power source voltage. Re-measure the diode's voltage drop, as well as the resistor's voltage drop, with a voltmeter:



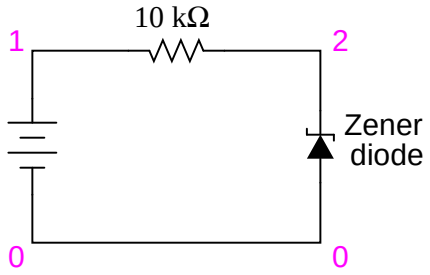
Connect three, then four 6-volt batteries together in series, forming an 18 volt and 24 volt power source, respectively. Measure and record the diode's and resistor's voltage drops for each new power supply voltage. What do you notice about the diode's voltage drop for these four different source voltages? Do you see how the diode voltage never exceeds a level of 12 volts? What do you notice about the resistor's voltage drop for these four different source voltage levels?

Zener diodes are frequently used as voltage *regulating* devices, because they act to clamp the voltage drop across themselves at a predetermined level. Whatever excess voltage is supplied by the power source becomes dropped across the series resistor. However, it is important to note that a zener diode cannot *make up* for a deficiency in source voltage. For instance, this 12-volt zener diode does not drop 12 volts when the power source is only 6 volts strong. It is helpful to think of a zener diode as a voltage *limiter*: establishing a maximum voltage drop,

but not a minimum voltage drop.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Zener diode
v1 1 0
r1 1 2 10k
d1 0 2 mod1
.model mod1 d bv=12
.dc v1 18 18 1
.print dc v(2,0)
.end
```

A zener diode may be simulated in SPICE with a normal diode, the reverse breakdown parameter (`bv=12`) set to the desired zener breakdown voltage.

5.8 Transistor as a switch

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6-volt batteries
- One NPN transistor – models 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- One 100 kΩ resistor
- One 560 Ω resistor
- One light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)

Resistor values are not critical for this experiment. Neither is the particular light emitting diode (LED) selected.

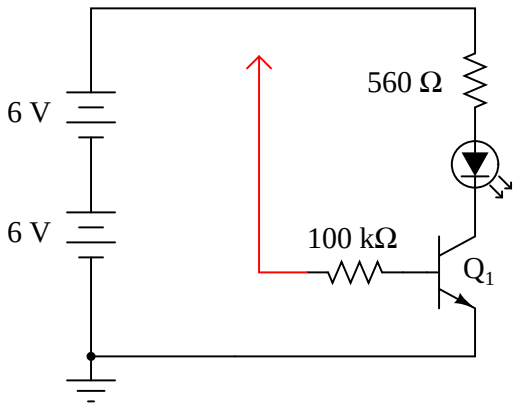
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: ”Bipolar Junction Transistors”

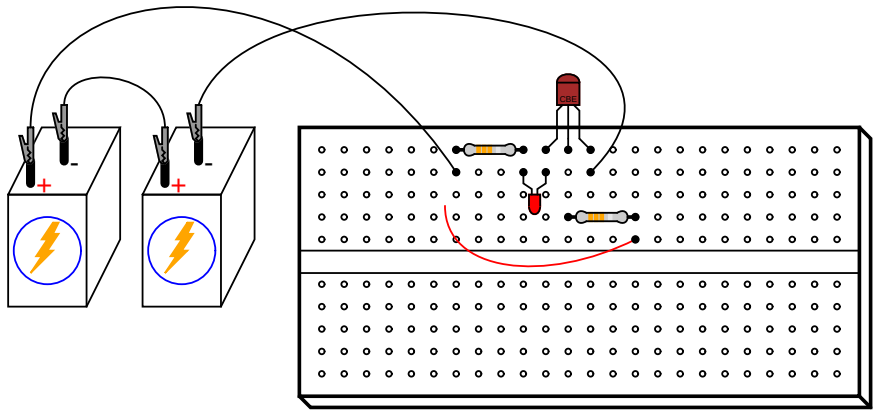
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Current amplification of a bipolar junction transistor

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION

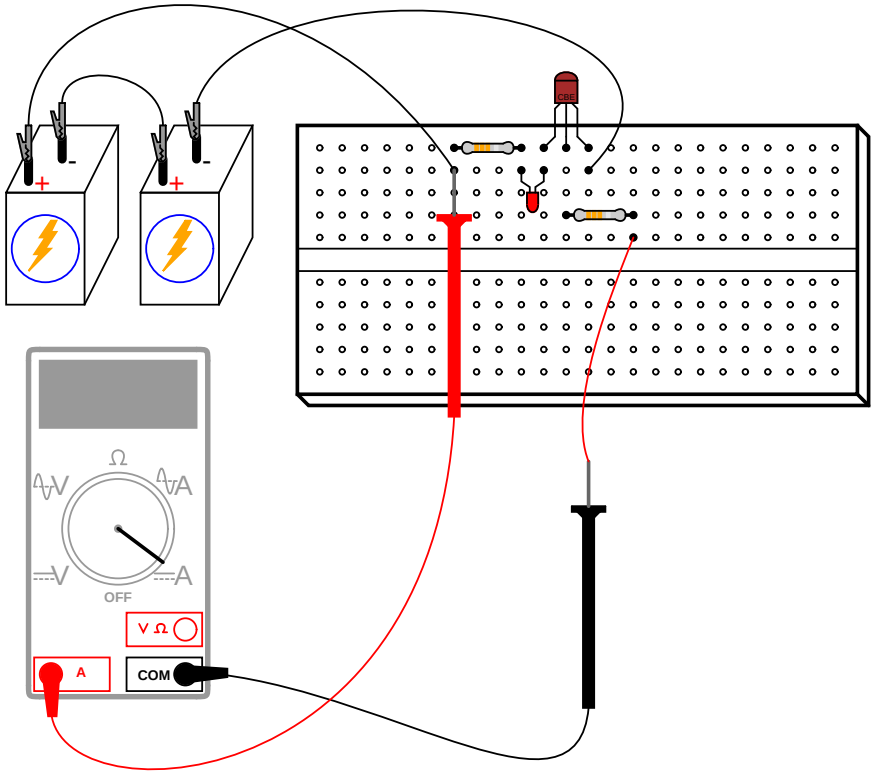


INSTRUCTIONS

The red wire shown in the diagram (the one terminating in an arrowhead, connected to one end of the 100 kΩ resistor) is intended to remain loose, so that you may touch it momentarily to other points in the circuit.

If you touch the end of the loose wire to any point in the circuit more positive than it, such as the positive side of the DC power source, the LED should light up. It takes 20 mA to fully illuminate a standard LED, so this behavior should strike you as interesting, because the 100 kΩ resistor to which the loose wire is attached restricts current through it to a far lesser value than 20 mA. At most, a total voltage of 12 volts across a 100 kΩ resistance yields a current of only 0.12 mA, or 120 μA! The connection made by your touching the wire to a positive point in the circuit conducts far less current than 1 mA, yet through the amplifying action of the transistor, is able to *control* a much greater current through the LED.

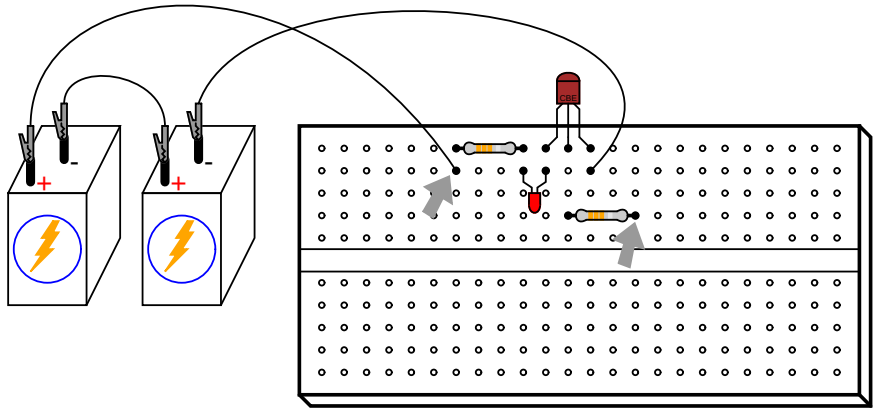
Try using an ammeter to connect the loose wire to the positive side of the power source, like this:



You may have to select the most sensitive current range on the meter to measure this small flow. After measuring this *controlling* current, try measuring the LED's current (the *controlled* current) and compare magnitudes. Don't be surprised if you find a ratio in excess of 200 (the controlled current 200 times as great as the controlling current)!

As you can see, the transistor is acting as a kind of electrically-controlled switch, switching current on and off to the LED at the command of a much smaller current signal conducted through its base terminal.

To further illustrate just how miniscule the controlling current is, remove the loose wire from the circuit and try "bridging" the unconnected end of the 100 kΩ resistor to the power source's positive pole with two fingers of one hand. You may need to wet the ends of those fingers to maximize conductivity:

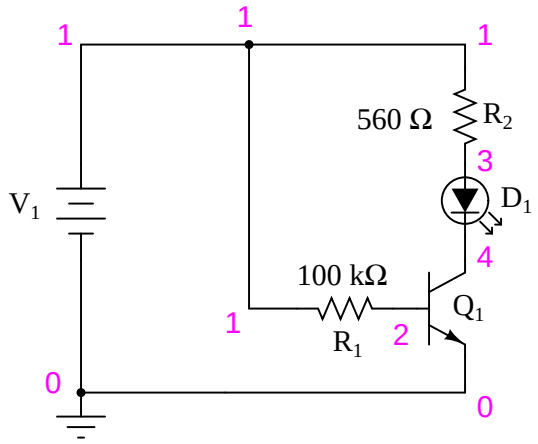


Bridge the two points identified by arrows with two fingers of one hand, to conduct a small current to the transistor's base.

Try varying the contact pressure of your fingers with these two points in the circuit to vary the amount of resistance in the controlling current's path. Can you vary the brightness of the LED by doing so? What does this indicate about the transistor's ability to act as more than just a switch; i.e. as a *variable*

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Transistor as a switch
v1 1 0
r1 1 2 100k
r2 1 3 560
d1 3 4 mod2
```

```
q1 4 2 0 mod1
.model mod1 npn bf=200
.model mod2 d is=1e-28
.dc v1 12 12 1
.print dc v(2,0) v(4,0) v(1,2) v(1,3) v(3,4)
.end
```

In this simulation, the voltage drop across the 560 Ω resistor `v(1,3)` turns out to be 10.26 volts, indicating a LED current of 18.32 mA by Ohm's Law (I=E/R). R_1's voltage drop (voltage between nodes 1 and 2) ends up being 11.15 volts, which across 100 kΩ gives a current of only 111.5 μA. Obviously, a very small current is exerting control over a much larger current in this circuit.

In case you were wondering, the `is=1e-28` parameter in the diode's `.model` line is there to make the diode act more like an LED with a higher forward voltage drop.

5.9 Static electricity sensor

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- One N-channel junction field-effect transistor, models 2N3819 or J309 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2035 is the model 2N3819)
- One 6 volt battery
- One 100 kΩ resistor
- One light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- Plastic comb

The particular junction field-effect transistor, or JFET, model used in this experiment is not critical. P-channel JFETs are also okay to use, but are not as popular as N-channel transistors.

Beware that not all transistors share the same terminal designations, or *pinouts*, even if they share the same physical appearance. This will dictate how you connect the transistors together and to other components, so be sure to check the manufacturer's specifications (component datasheet), easily obtained from the manufacturer's website. Beware that it is possible for the transistor's package and even the manufacturer's datasheet to show incorrect terminal identification diagrams! Double-checking pin identities with your multimeter's "diode check" function is highly recommended. For details on how to identify junction field-effect transistor terminals using a multimeter, consult chapter 5 of the Semiconductor volume (volume III) of this book series.

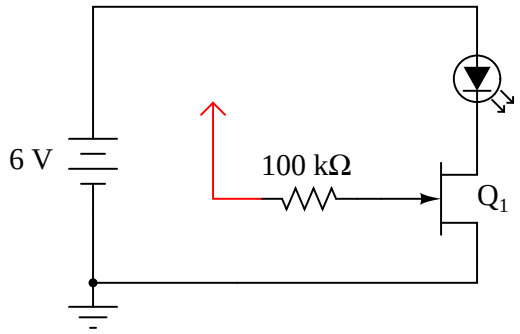
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 5: "Junction Field-Effect Transistors"

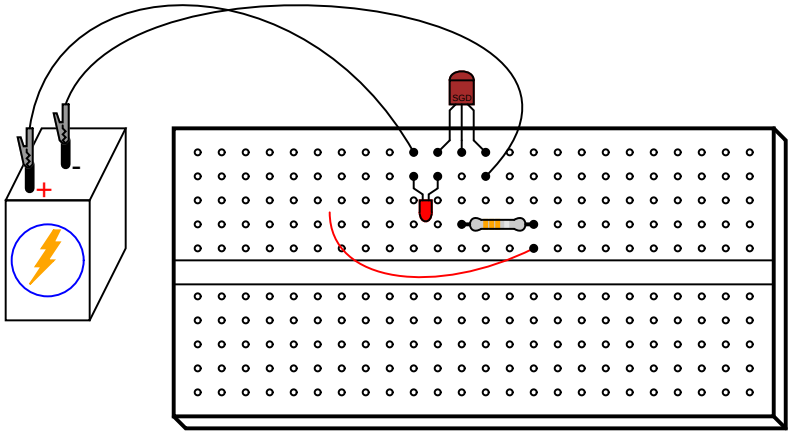
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How the JFET is used as an on/off switch
- How JFET current gain differs from a bipolar transistor

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This experiment is very similar to the previous experiment using a bipolar junction transistor (BJT) as a switching device to control current through an LED. In this experiment, a *junction field-effect transistor* is used instead, giving dramatically improved sensitivity.

Build this circuit and touch the loose wire end (the wire shown in red on the schematic diagram and in the illustration, connected to the 100 kΩ resistor) with your hand. Simply touching this wire will likely have an effect on the LED's status. This circuit makes a fine sensor of static electricity! Try scuffing your feet on a carpet and then touching the wire end if no effect on the light is seen yet.

For a more controlled test, touch the wire with one hand and alternately touch the positive (+) and negative (-) terminals of the battery with one finger of your other hand. Your body acts as a conductor (albeit a poor one), connecting the gate terminal of the JFET to either terminal of the battery as you touch them. Make note which terminal makes the LED turn on and which makes the LED turn off. Try to relate this behavior with what you've read about JFETs in chapter 5 of the Semiconductor volume.

The fact that a JFET is turned on and off so easily (requiring so little control current), as evidenced by full on-and-off control simply by conduction of a control current through your body, demonstrates how great of a current gain it has. With the BJT "switch" experiment, a much more "solid" connection between the transistor's gate terminal and a source of voltage was needed to turn it on. Not so with the JFET. In fact, the mere presence of static electricity can turn it on and off at a distance.

To further experiment with the effects of static electricity on this circuit, brush your hair with the plastic comb and then wave the comb near the transistor, watching the effect on the LED. The action of combing your hair with a plastic object creates a high static voltage between the comb and your body. The strong electric field produced between these two objects should be detectable by this circuit from a significant distance!

In case you're wondering why there is no 560 Ω "dropping" resistor to limit current through the LED, many small-signal JFETs tend to self-limit their controlled current to a level acceptable by LEDs. The model 2N3819, for example, has a typical saturated drain current (I_{DSS}) of

10 mA and a maximum of 20 mA. Since most LEDs are rated at a forward current of 20 mA, there is no need for a dropping resistor to limit circuit current: the JFET does it intrinsically.

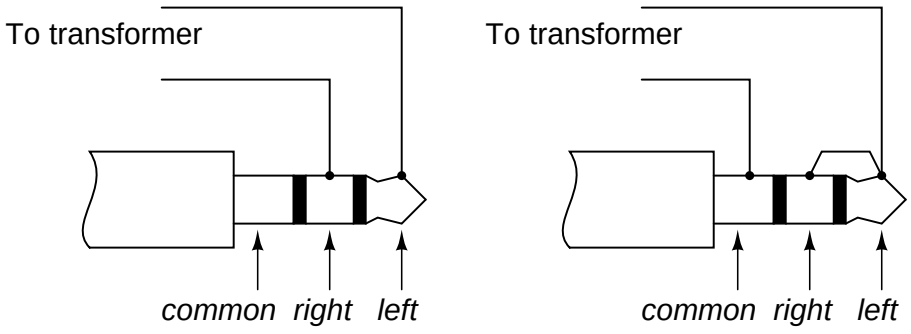
5.10 Pulsed-light sensor

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6-volt batteries
- One NPN transistor – models 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- One light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- Audio detector with headphones

If you don't have an audio detector already constructed, you can use a nice set of audio headphones (closed-cup style, that completely covers your ears) and a 120V/6V step-down transformer to build a sensitive audio detector without volume control or overvoltage protection, just for this experiment.

Connect these portions of the headphone stereo plug to the transformer's secondary (6 volt) winding:



Speakers in series **Speakers in parallel**

Try both the series and the parallel connection schemes for the loudest sound.

If you haven't made an audio detector as outlined in both the DC and AC experiments chapters, you really should – it is a valuable piece of test equipment for your collection.

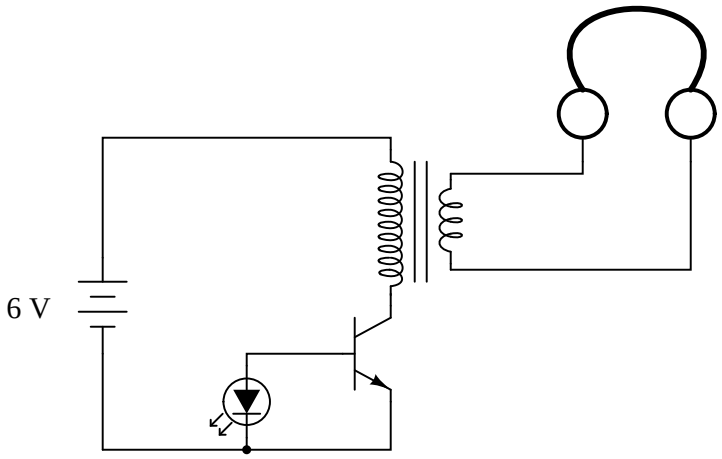
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: "Bipolar Junction Transistors"

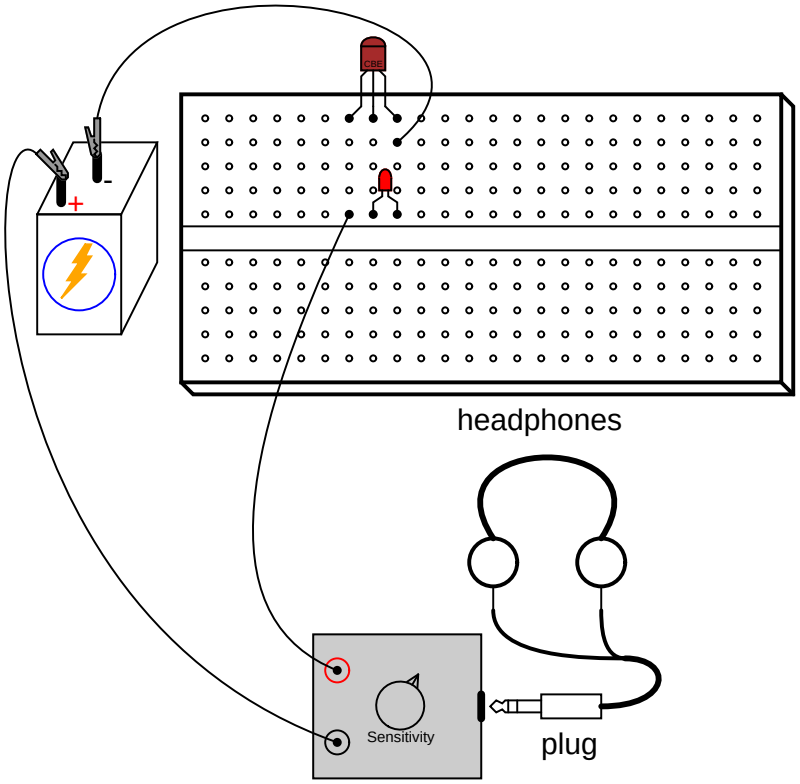
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use a transistor as a crude common-emitter amplifier
- How to use an LED as a light sensor

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This circuit detects pulses of light striking the LED and converts them into relatively strong audio signals to be heard through the headphones. Forrest Mims teaches that LEDs have the

ability to *produce* current when exposed to light, in a manner not unlike a semiconductor solar cell. [1] By itself, the LED does not produce enough electrical power to drive the audio detector circuit, so a transistor is used to amplify the LED's signals. If the LED is exposed to a pulsing source of light, a tone will be heard in the headphones.

Sources of light suitable for this experiment include fluorescent and neon lamps, which blink rapidly with the 60 Hz AC power energizing them. You may also try using bright sunlight for a steady light source, then waving your fingers in front of the LED. The rapidly passing shadows will cause the LED to generate pulses of voltage, creating a brief "buzzing" sound in the headphones.

LEDs serving as photo-detectors are narrow-band devices, responding to a narrow band of wavelengths close, but not identical, to that normally emitted. Infrared remote controls are a good illumination source for near-infrared LEDs employed as photo-sensors, producing a receiver sound. [3]

With a little imagination, it is not difficult to grasp the concept of transmitting audio information – such as music or speech – over a beam of pulsing light. Given a suitable "transmitter" circuit to pulse an LED on and off with the positive and negative crests of an audio waveform from a microphone, the "receiver" circuit shown here would convert those light pulses back into audio signals. [2]

5.11 Voltage follower

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- One NPN transistor – models 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two 6-volt batteries
- Two 1 kΩ resistors
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, single-turn, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)

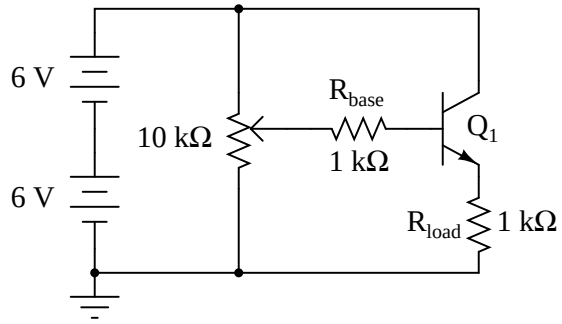
Beware that not all transistors share the same terminal designations, or *pinouts*, even if they share the same physical appearance. This will dictate how you connect the transistors together and to other components, so be sure to check the manufacturer's specifications (component datasheet), easily obtained from the manufacturer's website. Beware that it is possible for the transistor's package and even the manufacturer's datasheet to show incorrect terminal identification diagrams! Double-checking pin identities with your multimeter's "diode check" function is highly recommended. For details on how to identify bipolar transistor terminals using a multimeter, consult chapter 4 of the Semiconductor volume (volume III) of this book series.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: "Bipolar Junction Transistors"

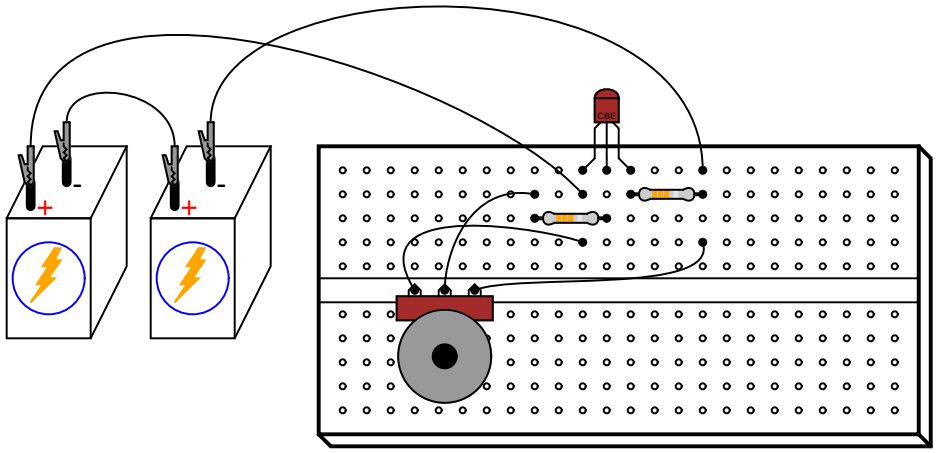
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Purpose of circuit "ground" when there is no actual connection to earth ground
- Using a shunt resistor to measure current with a voltmeter
- Measure amplifier voltage gain
- Measure amplifier current gain
- Amplifier impedance transformation

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION

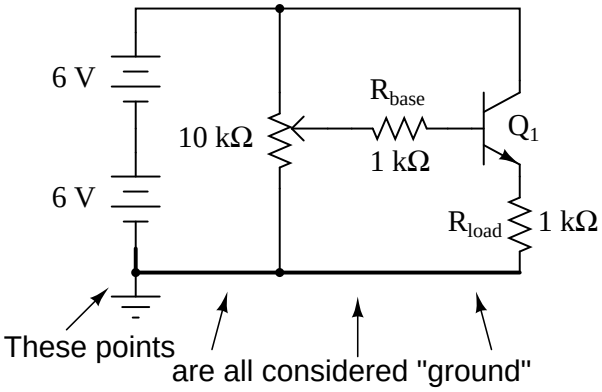


INSTRUCTIONS

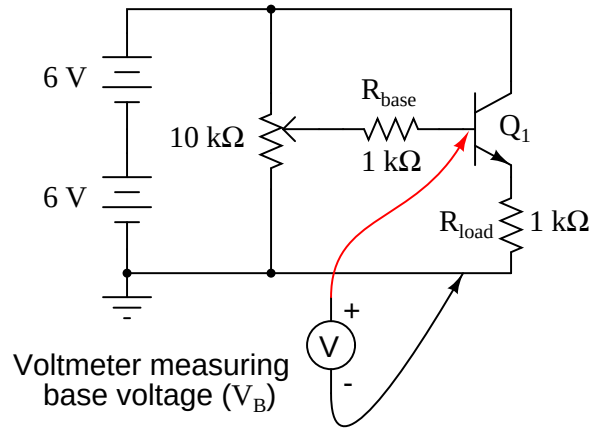
Again, beware that the transistor you select for this experiment may not have the same terminal designations shown here, and so the breadboard layout shown in the illustration may not be correct for you. In my illustrations, I show all TO-92 package transistors with terminals labeled "CBE": Collector, Base, and Emitter, from left to right. This is correct for the model 2N2222 transistor and some others, *but not for all*; not even for all NPN-type transistors! As usual, check with the manufacturer for details on the particular component(s) you choose for a project. With bipolar junction transistors, it is easy enough to verify terminal assignments with a multimeter.

The *voltage follower* is the safest and easiest transistor amplifier circuit to build. Its purpose is to provide approximately the same voltage to a load as what is input to the amplifier, but at a much greater current. In other words, it has no voltage gain, but it does have current gain.

Note that the negative (-) side of the power supply is shown in the schematic diagram to be connected to *ground*, as indicated by the symbol in the lower-left corner of the diagram. This does not necessarily represent a connection to the actual earth. What it means is that this point in the circuit – and all points electrically common to it – constitute the default reference point for all voltage measurements in the circuit. Since voltage is by necessity a quantity relative between two points, a "common" point of reference designated in a circuit gives us the ability to speak meaningfully of voltage at particular, single points in that circuit.



For example, if I were to speak of voltage *at* the base of the transistor (V_B), I would mean the voltage measured between the transistor's base terminal and the negative side of the power supply (ground), with the red probe touching the base terminal and the black probe touching ground. Normally, it is nonsense to speak of voltage *at* a single point, but having an implicit reference point for voltage measurements makes such statements meaningful:



Build this circuit, and measure output voltage versus input voltage for several different potentiometer settings. Input voltage is the voltage at the potentiometer's wiper (voltage between the wiper and circuit ground), while output voltage is the load resistor voltage (voltage across the load resistor, or emitter voltage: between emitter and circuit ground). You should see a close correlation between these two voltages: one is just a little bit greater than the other (about 0.6 volts or so?), but a change in the input voltage gives almost equal change in the output voltage. Because the relationship between input *change* and output *change* is almost 1:1, we say that the AC voltage gain of this amplifier is nearly 1.

Not very impressive, is it? Now measure current through the base of the transistor (input current) versus current through the load resistor (output current). Before you break the circuit and insert your ammeter to take these measurements, consider an alternative method: measure *voltage* across the base and load resistors, whose resistance values are known. Using Ohm's Law, current through each resistor may be easily calculated: divide the measured volt-

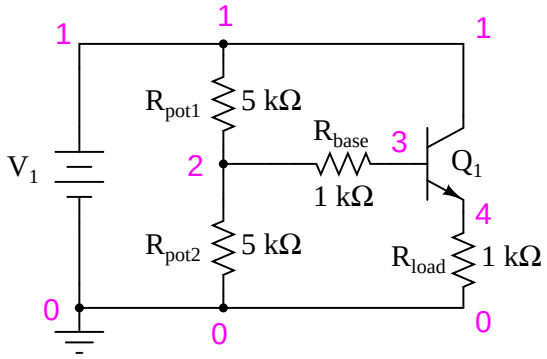
age by the known resistance (I=E/R). This calculation is particularly easy with resistors of 1 kΩ value: there will be 1 milliamp of current for every volt of drop across them. For best precision, you may measure the resistance of each resistor rather than assume an exact value of 1 kΩ, but it really doesn't matter much for the purposes of this experiment. When resistors are used to take current measurements by "translating" a current into a corresponding voltage, they are often referred to as *shunt* resistors.

You should expect to find huge differences between input and output currents for this amplifier circuit. In fact, it is not uncommon to experience current gains well in excess of 200 for a small-signal transistor operating at low current levels. This is the primary purpose of a voltage follower circuit: to boost the current capacity of a "weak" signal without altering its voltage.

Another way of thinking of this circuit's function is in terms of *impedance*. The input side of this amplifier accepts a voltage signal without drawing much current. The output side of this amplifier delivers the same voltage, but at a current limited only by load resistance and the current-handling ability of the transistor. Cast in terms of impedance, we could say that this amplifier has a high input impedance (voltage dropped with very little current drawn) and a low output impedance (voltage dropped with almost unlimited current-sourcing capacity).

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Voltage follower
v1 1 0
rpot1 1 2 5k
rpot2 2 0 5k
rbase 2 3 1k
rload 4 0 1k
q1 1 3 4 mod1
.model mod1 npn bf=200
.dc v1 12 12 1
.print dc v(2,0) v(4,0) v(2,3)
.end
```

When this simulation is run through the SPICE program, it shows an input voltage of 5.937 volts and an output voltage of 5.095 volts, with an input current of 25.35 μA (2.535E-02 volts dropped across the 1 kΩ R_{base} resistor). Output current is, of course, 5.095 mA, inferred from the output voltage of 5.095 volts dropped across a load resistance of exactly 1 kΩ. You may change the "potentiometer" setting in this circuit by adjusting the values of R_{pot1} and R_{pot2}, always keeping their sum at 10 kΩ.

5.12 Common-emitter amplifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

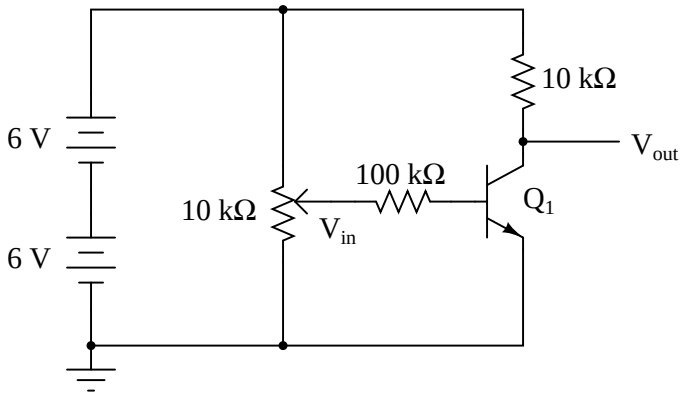
- One NPN transistor – model 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two 6-volt batteries
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, single-turn, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- One 1 MΩ resistor
- One 100 kΩ resistor
- One 10 kΩ resistor
- One 1.5 kΩ resistor

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: ”Bipolar Junction Transistors”

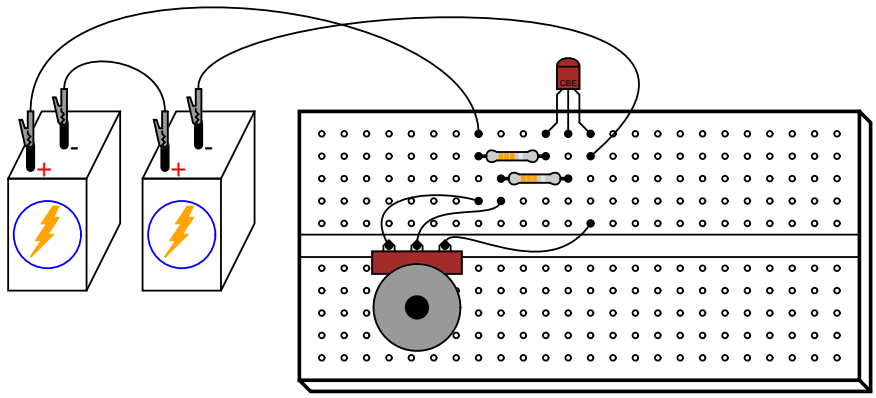
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Design of a simple common-emitter amplifier circuit
- How to measure amplifier voltage gain
- The difference between an inverting and a noninverting amplifier
- Ways to introduce negative feedback in an amplifier circuit

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Build this circuit and measure output voltage (voltage measured between the transistor's collector terminal and ground) and input voltage (voltage measured between the potentiometer's wiper terminal and ground) for several position settings of the potentiometer. I recommend determining the output voltage range as the potentiometer is adjusted through its entire range of motion, then choosing several voltages spanning that output range to take measurements at. For example, if full rotation on the potentiometer drives the amplifier circuit's output voltage from 0.1 volts (low) to 11.7 volts (high), choose several voltage levels between those limits (1 volt, 3 volts, 5 volts, 7 volts, 9 volts, and 11 volts). Measuring the output voltage with a meter, adjust the potentiometer to obtain each of these predetermined voltages at the output, noting the exact figure for later reference. Then, measure the exact input voltage producing that output voltage, and record that voltage figure as well.

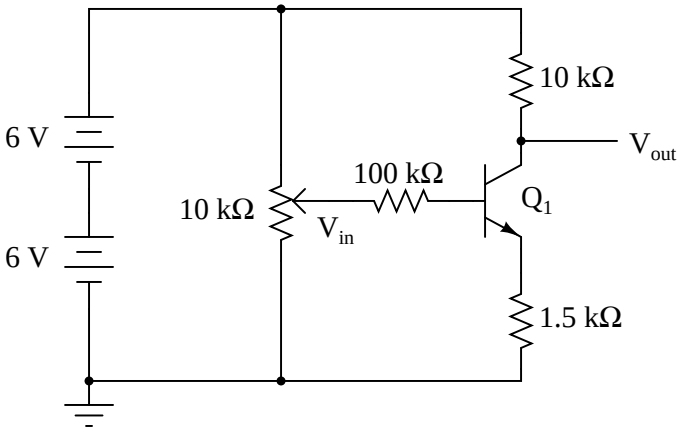
In the end, you should have a table of numbers representing several different output voltages along with their corresponding input voltages. Take any two pairs of voltage figures and calculate voltage gain by dividing the difference in output voltages by the difference in input voltages. For example, if an input voltage of 1.5 volts gives me an output voltage of 7.0 volts and an input voltage of 1.66 volts gives me an output voltage of 1.0 volt, the amplifier's voltage gain is (7.0 - 1.0)/(1.66 - 1.5), or 6 divided by 0.16: a gain ratio of 37.50.

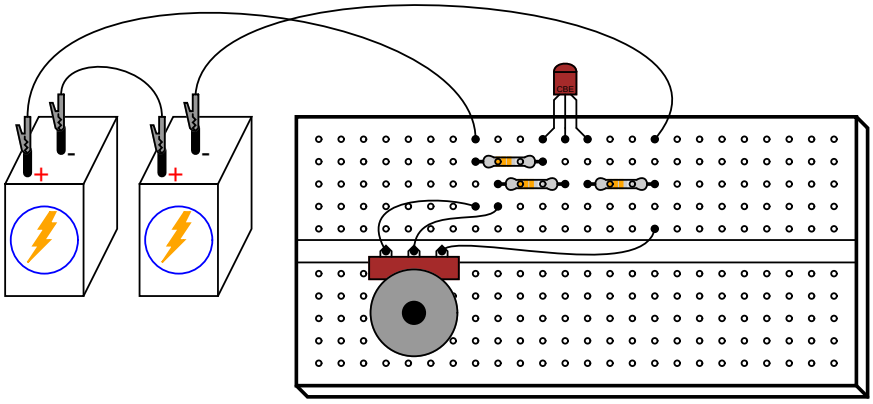
You should immediately notice two characteristics while taking these voltage measurements: first, that the input-to-output effect is "reversed;" that is, an *increasing* input voltage results in a *decreasing* output voltage. This effect is known as signal inversion, and this kind of amplifier as an *inverting* amplifier. Secondly, this amplifier exhibits a very strong voltage gain: a small change in input voltage results in a large change in output voltage. This should stand in stark contrast to the "voltage follower" amplifier circuit discussed earlier, which had a voltage gain of about 1.

Common-emitter amplifiers are widely used due to their high voltage gain, but they are rarely used in as crude a form as this. Although this amplifier circuit works to demonstrate the basic concept, it is very susceptible to changes in temperature. Try leaving the potentiometer in one position and heating the transistor by grasping it firmly with your hand or heating it with some other source of heat such as an electric hair dryer (**WARNING**: be careful not to get it so hot that your plastic breadboard melts!). You may also explore temperature effects by cooling the transistor: touch an ice cube to its surface and note the change in output voltage.

When the transistor's temperature changes, its base-emitter diode characteristics change, resulting in different amounts of base current for the same input voltage. This in turn alters the controlled current through the collector terminal, thus affecting output voltage. Such changes may be minimized through the use of signal *feedback*, whereby a portion of the output voltage is "fed back" to the amplifier's input so as to have a negative, or canceling, effect on voltage gain. Stability is improved at the expense of voltage gain, a compromise solution, but practical nonetheless.

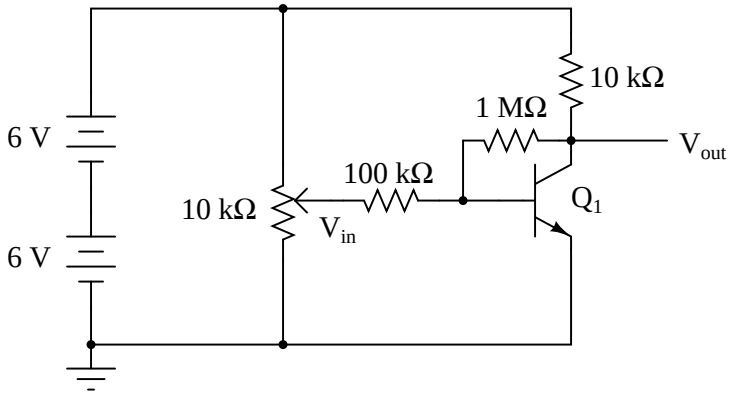
Perhaps the simplest way to add negative feedback to a common-emitter amplifier is to add some resistance between the emitter terminal and ground, so that the input voltage becomes divided between the base-emitter PN junction and the voltage drop across the new resistance:

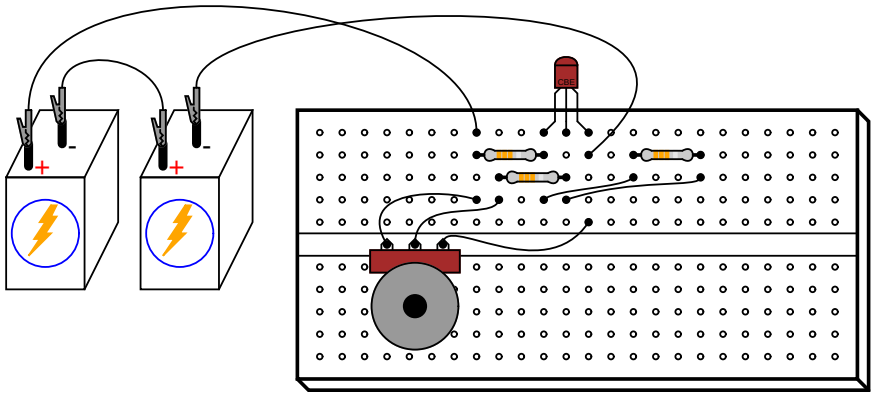




Repeat the same voltage measurement and recording exercise with the 1.5 kΩ resistor installed, calculating the new (reduced) voltage gain. Try altering the transistor's temperature again and noting the output voltage for a steady input voltage. Does it change more or less than without the 1.5 kΩ resistor?

Another method of introducing negative feedback to this amplifier circuit is to "couple" the output to the input through a high-value resistor. Connecting a 1 MΩ resistor between the transistor's collector and base terminals works well:

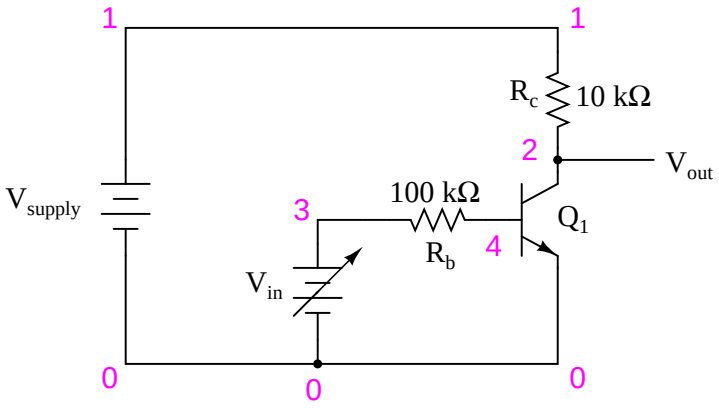




Although this different method of feedback accomplishes the same goal of increased stability by diminishing gain, the two feedback circuits will not behave identically. Note the range of possible output voltages with each feedback scheme (the low and high voltage values obtained with a full sweep of the input voltage potentiometer), and how this differs between the two circuits.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Common-emitter amplifier
vsupply 1 0 dc 12
vin 3 0
rc 1 2 10k
rb 3 4 100k
q1 2 4 0 mod1
.model mod1 npn bf=200
.dc vin 0 2 0.05
.plot dc v(2,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

This SPICE simulation sets up a circuit with a variable DC voltage source (`vin`) as the input signal, and measures the corresponding output voltage between nodes 2 and 0. The input voltage is varied, or "swept," from 0 to 2 volts in 0.05 volt increments. Results are shown on a plot, with the input voltage appearing as a straight line and the output voltage as a "step" figure where the voltage begins and ends level, with a steep change in the middle where the transistor is in its active mode of operation.

5.13 Multi-stage amplifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Three NPN transistors – model 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two 6-volt batteries
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, single-turn, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- One 1 MΩ resistor
- Three 100 kΩ resistors
- Three 10 kΩ resistors

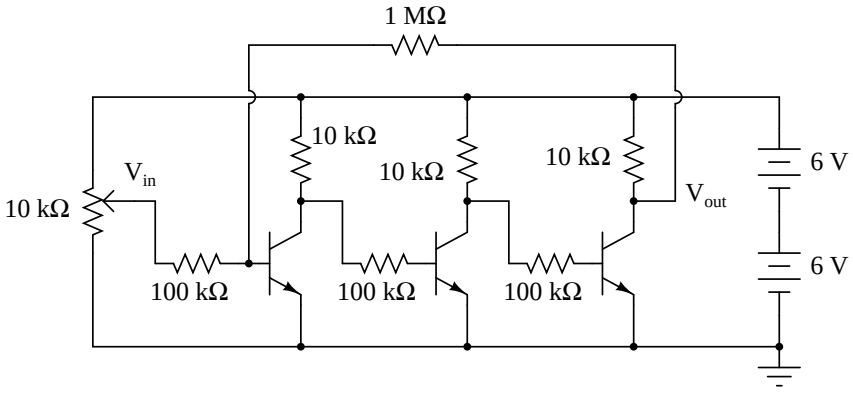
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: "Bipolar Junction Transistors"

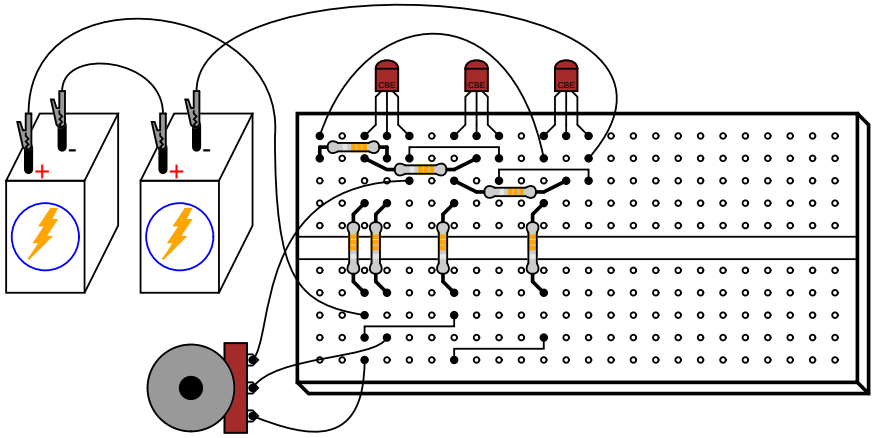
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Design of a multi-stage, direct-coupled common-emitter amplifier circuit
- Effect of negative feedback in an amplifier circuit

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

By connecting three common-emitter amplifier circuit together – the collector terminal of the previous transistor to the base (resistor) of the next transistor – the voltage gains of each stage compound to give a very high overall voltage gain. I recommend building this circuit *without* the 1 MΩ feedback resistor to begin with, to see for yourself just how high the unrestricted voltage gain is. You may find it impossible to adjust the potentiometer for a stable output voltage (that isn't saturated at full supply voltage or zero), the gain being so high.

Even if you can't adjust the input voltage fine enough to stabilize the output voltage in the active range of the last transistor, you should be able to tell that the output-to-input relationship is inverting; that is, the output tends to drive to a high voltage when the input goes low, and vice versa. Since any one of the common-emitter "stages" is inverting in itself, an even number of staged common-emitter amplifiers gives noninverting response, while an odd number of stages gives inverting. You may experience these relationships by measuring the collector-to-ground voltage *at each transistor* while adjusting the input voltage potentiometer, noting whether or not the output voltage increases or decreases with an increase in input voltage.

Connect the 1 MΩ feedback resistor into the circuit, coupling the collector of the last transistor to the base of the first. Since the overall response of this three-stage amplifier is inverting, the feedback signal provided through the 1 MΩ resistor from the output of the last transistor to the input of the first should be *negative* in nature. As such, it will act to stabilize the amplifier's response and minimize the voltage gain. You should notice the reduction in gain immediately by the decreased sensitivity of the output signal on input signal changes (changes in potentiometer position). Simply put, the amplifier isn't nearly as "touchy" as it was without the feedback resistor in place.

As with the simple common-emitter amplifier discussed in an earlier experiment, it is a good idea here to make a table of input versus output voltage figures with which you may calculate voltage gain.

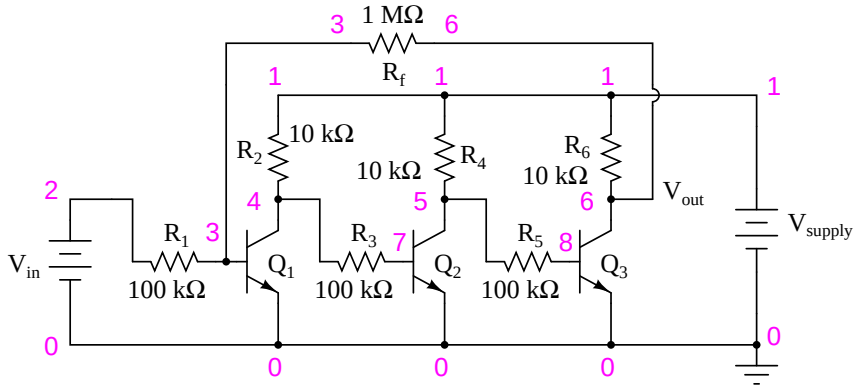
Experiment with different values of feedback resistance. What effect do you think a *decrease* in feedback resistance have on voltage gain? What about an *increase* in feedback resistance? Try it and find out!

An advantage of using negative feedback to "tame" a high-gain amplifier circuit is that the resulting voltage gain becomes more dependent upon the resistor values and less dependent upon the characteristics of the constituent transistors. This is good, because it is far easier to manufacture consistent resistors than consistent transistors. Thus, it is easier to design an amplifier with predictable gain by building a staged network of transistors with an arbitrarily high voltage gain, then mitigate that gain precisely through negative feedback. It is this same principle that is used to make *operational amplifier* circuits behave so predictably.

This amplifier circuit is a bit simplified from what you will normally encounter in practical multi-stage circuits. Rarely is a pure common-emitter configuration (i.e. with no emitter-to-ground resistor) used, and if the amplifier's service is for AC signals, the inter-stage coupling is often capacitive with voltage divider networks connected to each transistor base for proper biasing of each stage. Radio-frequency amplifier circuits are often transformer-coupled, with capacitors connected in parallel with the transformer windings for resonant tuning.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Multi-stage amplifier
vsupply 1 0 dc 12
vin 2 0
r1 2 3 100k
r2 1 4 10k
q1 4 3 0 mod1
r3 4 7 100k
r4 1 5 10k
q2 5 7 0 mod1
r5 5 8 100k
r6 1 6 10k
q3 6 8 0 mod1
rf 3 6 1meg
.model mod1 npn bf=200
.dc vin 0 2.5 0.1
```

```
.plot dc v(6,0) v(2,0)
.end
```

This simulation plots output voltage against input voltage, and allows comparison between those variables in numerical form: a list of voltage figures printed to the left of the plot. You may calculate voltage gain by taking any two analysis points and dividing the difference in output voltages by the difference in input voltages, just like you do for the real circuit.

Experiment with different feedback resistance values (`rf`) and see the impact on overall voltage gain. Do you notice a pattern? Here's a hint: the overall voltage gain may be closely approximated by using the resistance figures of `r1` and `rf`, without reference to any other circuit component!

5.14 Current mirror

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two NPN transistors – models 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two 6-volt batteries
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, single-turn, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- Two 10 kΩ resistors
- Four 1.5 kΩ resistors

Small signal transistors are recommended so as to be able to experience ”thermal runaway” in the latter portion of the experiment. Larger ”power” transistors may not exhibit the same behavior at these low current levels. However, *any* pair of identical NPN transistors may be used to build a current mirror.

Beware that not all transistors share the same terminal designations, or *pinouts*, even if they share the same physical appearance. This will dictate how you connect the transistors together and to other components, so be sure to check the manufacturer’s specifications (component datasheet), easily obtained from the manufacturer’s website. Beware that it is possible for the transistor’s package and even the manufacturer’s datasheet to show incorrect terminal identification diagrams! Double-checking pin identities with your multimeter’s ”diode check” function is highly recommended. For details on how to identify bipolar transistor terminals using a multimeter, consult chapter 4 of the Semiconductor volume (volume III) of this book series.

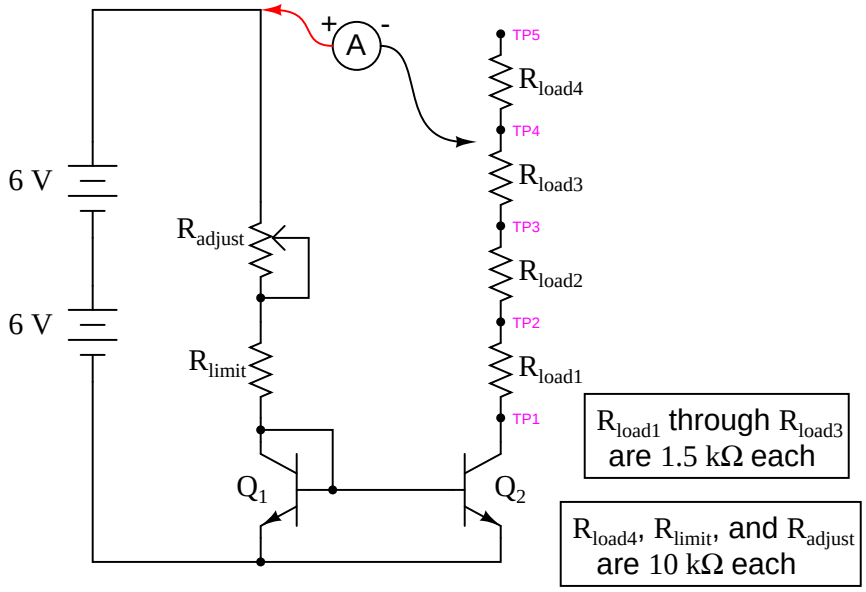
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: ”Bipolar Junction Transistors”

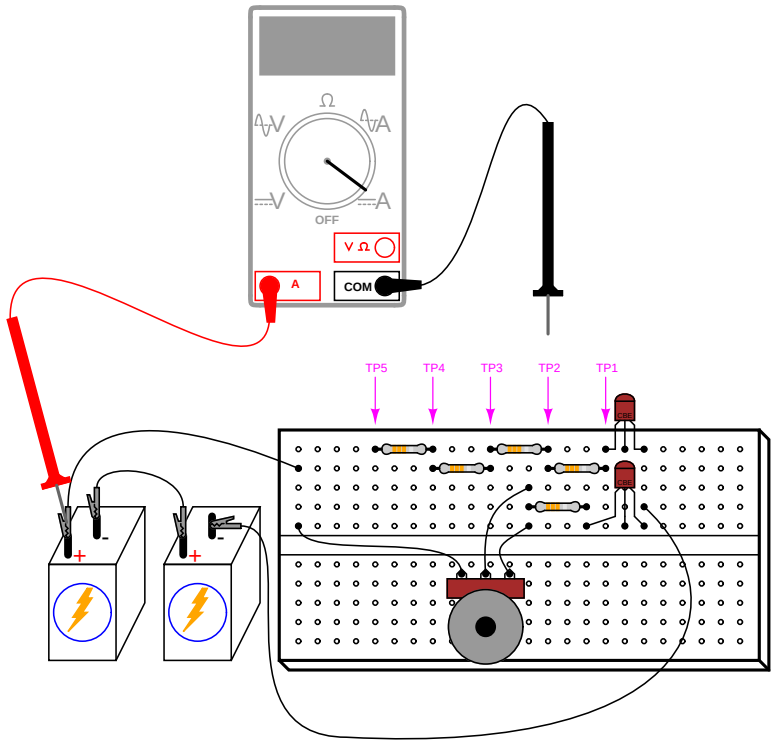
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to build a current mirror circuit
- Current limitations of a current mirror circuit
- Temperature dependence of BJTs
- Experience a controlled ”thermal runaway” situation

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

A current mirror may be thought of as an *adjustable current regulator*, the current limit being easily set by a single resistance. It is a rather crude current regulator circuit, but one that finds wide use due to its simplicity. In this experiment, you will get the opportunity to build one of these circuits, explore its current-regulating properties, and also experience some of its practical limitations firsthand.

Build the circuit as shown in the schematic and illustration. You will have one extra 1.5 kΩ fixed-value resistor from the parts specified in the parts list. You will be using it in the last part of this experiment.

The potentiometer sets the amount of current through transistor Q_1. This transistor is connected to act as a simple diode: just a PN junction. Why use a transistor instead of a regular diode? Because it is important to *match* the junction characteristics of these two transistors when using them in a current mirror circuit. Voltage dropped across the base-emitter junction of Q_1 is impressed across the base-emitter junction of the other transistor, Q_2, causing it to turn "on" and likewise conduct current.

Since voltage across the two transistors' base-emitter junctions is the same – the two junction pairs being connected in parallel with each other – so should the current be through their base terminals, assuming identical junction characteristics and identical junction temperatures. Matched transistors should have the same β ratios, as well, so equal base currents means equal collector currents. The practical result of all this is Q_2's collector current mimicking whatever current magnitude has been established through the collector of Q_1 by the potentiometer. In other words, current through Q_2 *mirrors* the current through Q_1.

Changes in load resistance (resistance connecting the collector of Q_2 to the positive side of the battery) have no effect on Q_1's current, and consequently have no effect upon the base-emitter voltage or base current of Q_2. With a constant base current and a nearly constant β ratio, Q_2 will drop as much or as little collector-emitter voltage as necessary to hold its collector (load) current constant. Thus, the current mirror circuit acts to *regulate* current at a value set by the potentiometer, without regard to load resistance.

Well, that is how it is supposed to work, anyway. Reality isn't quite so simple, as you are about to see. In the circuit diagram shown, the load circuit of Q_2 is completed to the positive side of the battery through an ammeter, for easy current measurement. Rather than solidly connect the ammeter's black probe to a definite point in the circuit, I've marked five *test points*, TP1 through TP5, for you to touch the black test probe to while measuring current. This allows you to quickly and effortlessly change load resistance: touching the probe to TP1 results in practically no load resistance, while touching it to TP5 results in approximately 14.5 kΩ of load resistance.

To begin the experiment, touch the test probe to TP4 and adjust the potentiometer through its range of travel. You should see a small, changing current indicated by your ammeter as you move the potentiometer mechanism: no more than a few milliamps. Leave the potentiometer set to a position giving a round number of milliamps and move the meter's black test probe to TP3. The current indication should be very nearly the same as before. Move the probe to TP2, then TP1. Again, you should see a nearly unchanged amount of current. Try adjusting the potentiometer to another position, giving a different current indication, and touch the meter's black probe to test points TP1 through TP4, noting the stability of the current indications as you change load resistance. This demonstrates the current *regulating* behavior of this circuit.

You should note that the current regulation isn't perfect. Despite regulating the current at *nearly* the value for load resistances between 0 and 4.5 kΩ, there is some variation over this range. The regulation may be much worse if load resistance is allowed to rise too high. Try adjusting the potentiometer so that maximum current is obtained, as indicated with the ammeter test probe connected to TP1. Leaving the potentiometer at that position, move the meter probe to TP2, then TP3, then TP4, and finally TP5, noting the meter's indication at each connection point. The current should be regulated at a nearly constant value until the meter probe is moved to the last test point, TP5. There, the current indication will be substantially lower than at the other test points. Why is this? Because too much load resistance has been inserted into Q_2's circuit. Simply put, Q_2 cannot "turn on" any more than it already has, to maintain the same amount of current with this great a load resistance as with lesser load resistances.

This phenomenon is common to all current-regulator circuits: there is a limited amount of resistance a current regulator can handle before it *saturates*. This stands to reason, as any current regulator circuit capable of supplying a constant amount of current through *any* load resistance imaginable would require an unlimited source of voltage to do it! Ohm's Law (E=IR) dictates the amount of voltage needed to push a given amount of current through a given amount of resistance, and with only 12 volts of power supply voltage at our disposal, a finite limit of load current and load resistance definitely exists for this circuit. For this reason, it may be helpful to think of current regulator circuits as being current *limiter* circuits, for all they can really do is limit current to some maximum value.

An important caveat for current mirror circuits in general is that of equal temperature between the two transistors. The current "mirroring" taking place between the two transistors' collector circuits depends on the base-emitter junctions of those two transistors having the exact same properties. As the "diode equation" describes, the voltage/current relationship for a PN junction strongly depends on junction *temperature*. The hotter a PN junction is, the more current it will pass for a given amount of voltage drop. If one transistor should become hotter than the other, it will pass more collector current than the other, and the circuit will no longer "mirror" current as expected. When building a real current mirror circuit using discrete transistors, the two transistors should be epoxy-glued together (back-to-back) so that they remain at approximately the same temperature.

To illustrate this dependence on equal temperature, try grasping one transistor between your fingers to heat it up. What happens to the current through the load resistors as the transistor's temperature increases? Now, let go of the transistor and blow on it to cool it down to ambient temperature. Grasp the *other* transistor between your fingers to heat it up. What does the load current do now?

In this next phase of the experiment, we will intentionally allow one of the transistors to overheat and note the effects. To avoid damaging a transistor, this procedure should be conducted no longer than is necessary to observe load current begin to "run away." To begin, adjust the potentiometer for minimum current. Next, replace the 10 kΩ R_{limit} resistor with a 1.5 kΩ resistor. This will allow a higher current to pass through Q_1, and consequently through Q_2 as well.

Place the ammeter's black probe on TP1 and observe the current indication. Move the potentiometer in the direction of increasing current until you read about 10 mA through the ammeter. At that point, stop moving the potentiometer and just observe the current. You will notice current begin to increase all on its own, without further potentiometer motion! Break

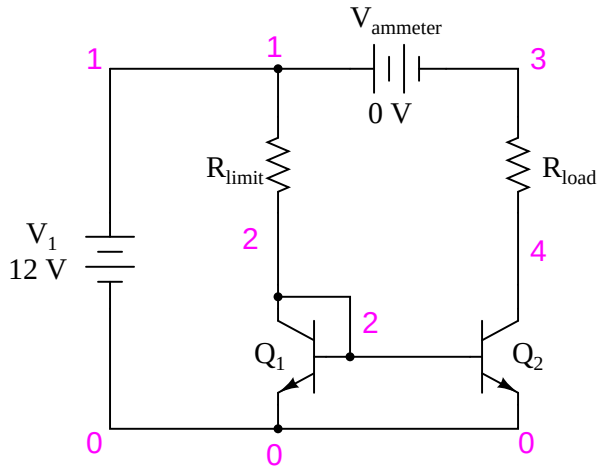
the circuit by removing the meter probe from TP1 when the current exceeds 30 mA, to avoid damaging transistor Q_2.

If you carefully touch both transistors with a finger, you should notice Q_2 is warm, while Q_1 is cool. **Warning:** if Q_2's current has been allowed to "run away" too far or for too long a time, it may become **very hot**! You can receive a bad burn on your fingertip by touching an overheated semiconductor component, so be careful here!

What just happened to make Q_2 overheat and lose current control? By connecting the ammeter to TP1, all load resistance was removed, so Q_2 had to drop full battery voltage between collector and emitter as it regulated current. Transistor Q_1 at least had the 1.5 kΩ resistance of R_{limit} in place to drop most of the battery voltage, so its power dissipation was far less than that of Q_2. This gross imbalance of power dissipation caused Q_2 to heat more than Q_1. As the temperature increased, Q_2 began to pass more current for the same amount of base-emitter voltage drop. This caused it to heat up even faster, as it was passing more collector current while still dropping the full 12 volts between collector and emitter. The effect is known as *thermal runaway*, and it is possible in many bipolar junction transistor circuits, not just current mirrors.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Current mirror
v1 1 0
vammeter 1 3 dc 0
rlimit 1 2 10k
rload 3 4 3k
q1 2 2 0 mod1
q2 4 2 0 mod1
.model mod1 npn bf=100
.dc v1 12 12 1
```

```
.print dc i(vammeter)
.end
```

$V_{ammeter}$ is nothing more than a zero-volt DC battery strategically placed to intercept load current. This is nothing more than a trick to measure current in a SPICE simulation, as no dedicated "ammeter" component exists in the SPICE language.

It is important to remember that SPICE only recognizes the first eight characters of a component's name. The name "vammeter" is okay, but if we were to incorporate more than one current-measuring voltage source in the circuit and name them "vammeter1" and "vammeter2", respectively, SPICE would see them as being two instances of the same component "vammeter" (seeing only the first eight characters) and halt with an error. Something to bear in mind when altering the netlist or programming your own SPICE simulation!

You will have to experiment with different resistance values of R_{load} in this simulation to appreciate the current-regulating nature of the circuit. With R_{limit} set to 10 kΩ and a power supply voltage of 12 volts, the regulated current through R_{load} will be 1.1 mA. SPICE shows the regulation to be perfect (isn't the virtual world of computer simulation so nice?), the load current remaining at 1.1 mA for a *wide* range of load resistances. However, if the load resistance is increased beyond 10 kΩ, even this simulation shows the load current suffering a decrease as in real life.

5.15 JFET current regulator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- One N-channel junction field-effect transistor, models 2N3819 or J309 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2035 is the model 2N3819)
- Two 6-volt batteries
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, single-turn, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- One 1 kΩ resistor
- One 10 kΩ resistor
- Three 1.5 kΩ resistors

For this experiment you will need an N-channel JFET, not a P-channel!

Beware that not all transistors share the same terminal designations, or *pinouts*, even if they share the same physical appearance. This will dictate how you connect the transistors together and to other components, so be sure to check the manufacturer's specifications (component datasheet), easily obtained from the manufacturer's website. Beware that it is possible for the transistor's package and even the manufacturer's datasheet to show incorrect terminal identification diagrams! Double-checking pin identities with your multimeter's "diode check" function is highly recommended. For details on how to identify junction field-effect transistor terminals using a multimeter, consult chapter 5 of the Semiconductor volume (volume III) of this book series.

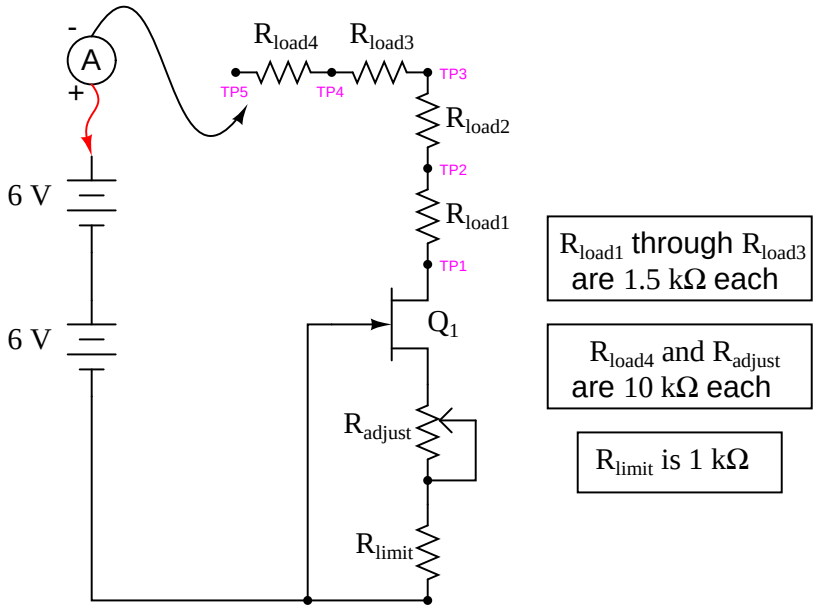
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 5: "Junction Field-Effect Transistors"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 3: "Diodes and Rectifiers"

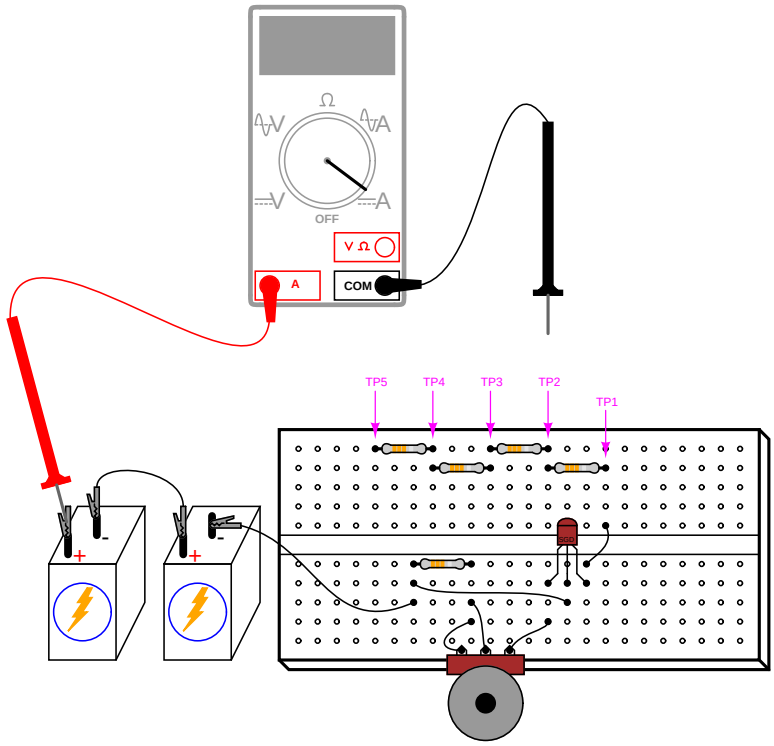
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use a JFET as a current regulator
- How the JFET is relatively immune to changes in temperature

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Previously in this chapter, you saw how a pair of bipolar junction transistors (BJTs) could be used to form a *current mirror*, whereby one transistor would try to maintain the same current through it as through the other, the other's current level being established by a variable resistance. This circuit performs the same task of regulating current, but uses a single junction field-effect transistor (JFET) instead of two BJTs.

The two series resistors R_{adjust} and R_{limit} set the current regulation point, while the load resistors and the test points between them serve only to demonstrate constant current despite changes in load resistance.

To begin the experiment, touch the test probe to TP4 and adjust the potentiometer through its range of travel. You should see a small, changing current indicated by your ammeter as you move the potentiometer mechanism: no more than a few milliamps. Leave the potentiometer set to a position giving a round number of milliamps and move the meter's black test probe to TP3. The current indication should be very nearly the same as before. Move the probe to TP2, then TP1. Again, you should see a nearly unchanged amount of current. Try adjusting the potentiometer to another position, giving a different current indication, and touch the meter's black probe to test points TP1 through TP4, noting the stability of the current indications as you change load resistance. This demonstrates the current *regulating* behavior of this circuit.

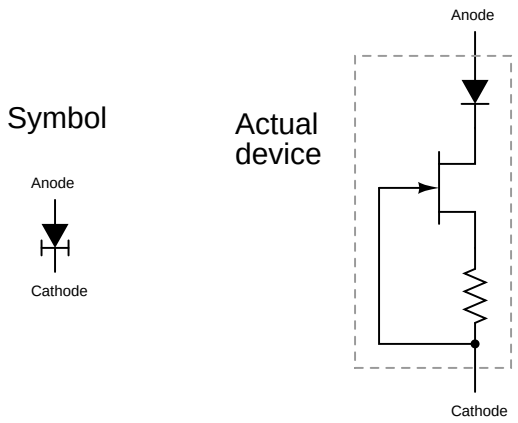
TP5, at the end of a 10 kΩ resistor, is provided for introducing a large change in load resistance. Connecting the black test probe of your ammeter to that test point gives a combined load resistance of 14.5 kΩ, which will be too much resistance for the transistor to maintain maximum regulated current through. To experience what I'm describing here, touch the black test probe to TP1 and adjust the potentiometer for maximum current. Now, move the black test probe to TP2, then TP3, then TP4. For all these test point positions, the current will remain approximately constant. However, when you touch the black probe to TP5, the current will fall dramatically. Why? Because at this level of load resistance, there is insufficient voltage drop across the transistor to maintain regulation. In other words, the transistor will be saturated as it attempts to provide more current than the circuit resistance will allow.

Move the black test probe back to TP1 and adjust the potentiometer for minimum current. Now, touch the black test probe to TP2, then TP3, then TP4, and finally TP5. What do you notice about the current indication at all these points? When the current regulation point is adjusted to a lesser value, the transistor is able to maintain regulation over a much larger range of load resistance.

An important caveat with the BJT current mirror circuit is that both transistors must be at equal temperature for the two currents to be equal. With this circuit, however, transistor temperature is almost irrelevant. Try grasping the transistor between your fingers to heat it up, noting the load current with your ammeter. Try cooling it down afterward by blowing on it. Not only is the requirement of transistor matching eliminated (due to the use of just *one* transistor), but the thermal effects are all but eliminated as well due to the relative thermal immunity of the field-effect transistor. This behavior also makes field-effect transistors immune to thermal runaway; a decided advantage over bipolar junction transistors.

An interesting application of this current-regulator circuit is the so-called *constant-current diode*. Described in the "Diodes and Rectifiers" chapter of volume III, this diode isn't really a PN junction device at all. Instead, it is a JFET with a fixed resistance connected between the gate and source terminals:

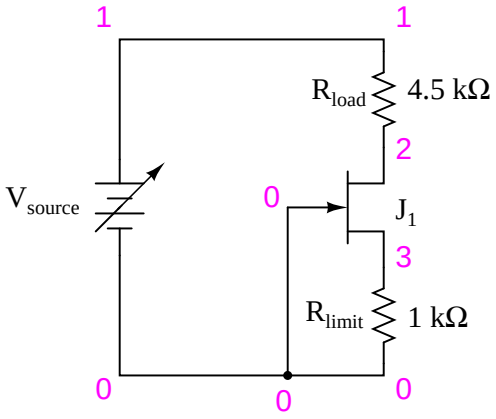
Constant-current diode



A normal PN-junction diode is included in series with the JFET to protect the transistor against damage from reverse-bias voltage, but otherwise the current-regulating facility of this device is entirely provided by the field-effect transistor.

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
JFET current regulator
vsource 1 0
rload 1 2 4.5k
j1 2 0 3 mod1
rlimit 3 0 1k
.model mod1 njf
.dc vsource 6 12 0.1
.plot dc i(vsource)
```

```
.end
```

SPICE does not allow for ”sweeping” resistance values, so to demonstrate the current regulation of this circuit over a wide range of conditions, I’ve elected to sweep the source voltage from 6 to 12 volts in 0.1 volt steps. If you wish, you can set `rload` to different resistance values and verify that the circuit current remains constant. With an `rlimit` value of 1 kΩ, the regulated current will be 291.8 μA. This current figure will most likely *not* be the same as your actual circuit current, due to differences in JFET parameters.

Many manufacturers give SPICE model parameters for their transistors, which may be typed in the `.model` line of the netlist for a more accurate circuit simulation.

5.16 Differential amplifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6-volt batteries
- Two NPN transistors – models 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two 10 kΩ potentiometers, single-turn, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- Two 22 kΩ resistors
- Two 10 kΩ resistors
- One 100 kΩ resistor
- One 1.5 kΩ resistor

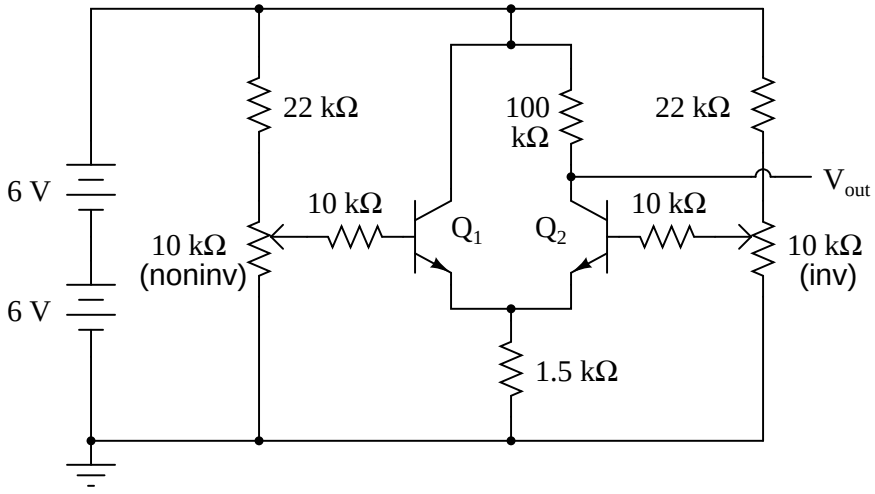
Resistor values are not especially critical in this experiment, but have been chosen to provide high voltage gain for a "comparator-like" differential amplifier behavior.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: "Bipolar Junction Transistors"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: "Operational Amplifiers"

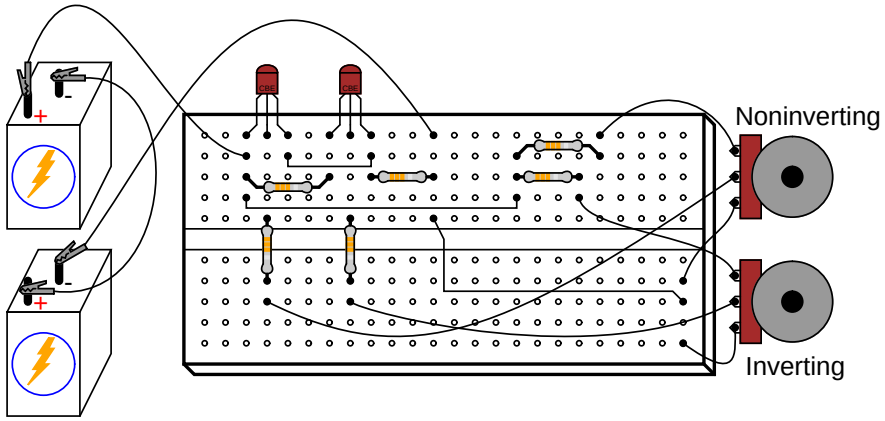
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Basic design of a differential amplifier circuit.
- Working definitions of *differential* and *common-mode* voltages

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This circuit forms the heart of most operational amplifier circuits: the *differential pair*. In the form shown here, it is a rather crude differential amplifier, quite nonlinear and unsymmetrical with regard to output voltage versus input voltage(s). With a high voltage gain created by a large collector/emitter resistor ratio (100 kΩ/1.5 kΩ), though, it acts primarily as a comparator: the output voltage rapidly changing value as the two input voltage signals approach equality.

Measure the output voltage (voltage at the collector of Q_2 with respect to ground) as the input voltages are varied. Note how the two potentiometers have different effects on the output voltage: one input tends to drive the output voltage in the same direction (noninverting), while the other tends to drive the output voltage in the opposite direction (inverting). This is the essential nature of a *differential amplifier*: two complementary inputs, with contrary effects on the output signal. Ideally, the output voltage of such an amplifier is strictly a function of the *difference* between the two input signals. This circuit falls considerably short of the ideal, as even a cursory test will reveal.

An ideal differential amplifier ignores all *common-mode voltage*, which is whatever level of voltage common to both inputs. For example, if the inverting input is at 3 volts and the noninverting input at 2.5 volts, the differential voltage will be 0.5 volts (3 - 2.5) but the common-mode voltage will be 2.5 volts, since that is the lowest input signal level. Ideally, this condition should produce the same output signal voltage as if the inputs were set at 3.5 and 3 volts, respectively (0.5 volts differential, with a 3 volt common-mode voltage). However, this circuit does *not* give the same result for the two different input signal scenarios. In other words, its output voltage depends on both the differential voltage *and* the common-mode voltage.

As imperfect as this differential amplifier is, its behavior could be worse. Note how the input signal potentiometers have been limited by 22 kΩ resistors to an adjustable range of approximately 0 to 4 volts, given a power supply voltage of 12 volts. If you'd like to see how this circuit behaves without any input signal limiting, just bypass the 22 kΩ resistors with jumper wires, allowing full 0 to 12 volt adjustment range from each potentiometer.

Do not worry about building up excessive heat while adjusting potentiometers in this circuit! Unlike the current mirror circuit, this circuit is protected from thermal runaway by the

emitter resistor (1.5 kΩ), which doesn't allow enough transistor current to cause any problem.

5.17 Simple op-amp

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6-volt batteries
- Four NPN transistors – models 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two PNP transistors – models 2N2907 or 2N3906 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1604 is a package of fifteen PNP transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two 10 kΩ potentiometers, single-turn, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- One 270 kΩ resistor
- Three 100 kΩ resistors
- One 10 kΩ resistor

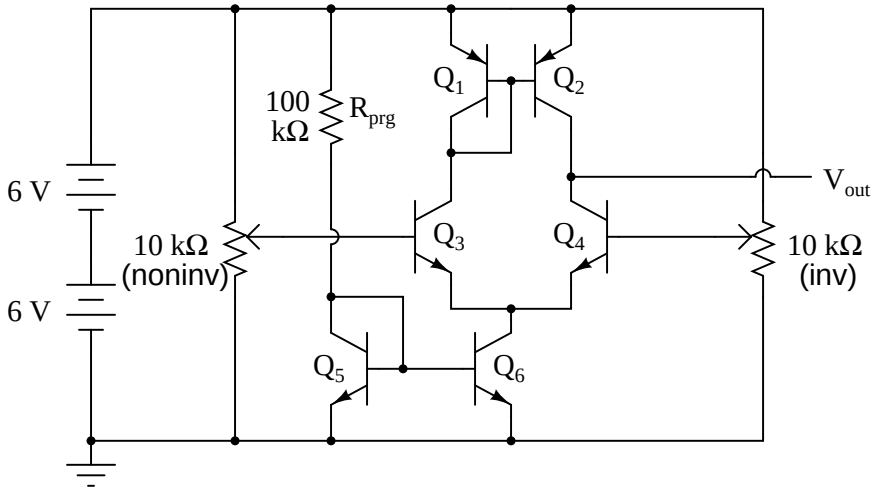
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: ”Bipolar Junction Transistors”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: ”Operational Amplifiers”

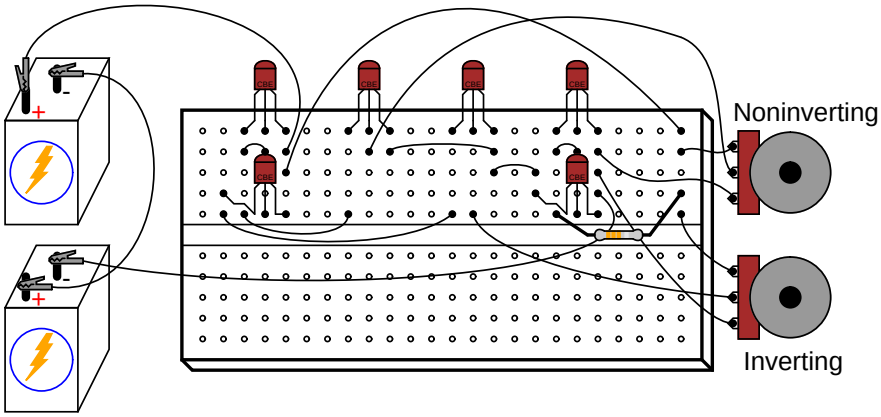
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Design of a differential amplifier circuit using current mirrors.
- Effects of negative feedback on a high-gain differential amplifier.

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



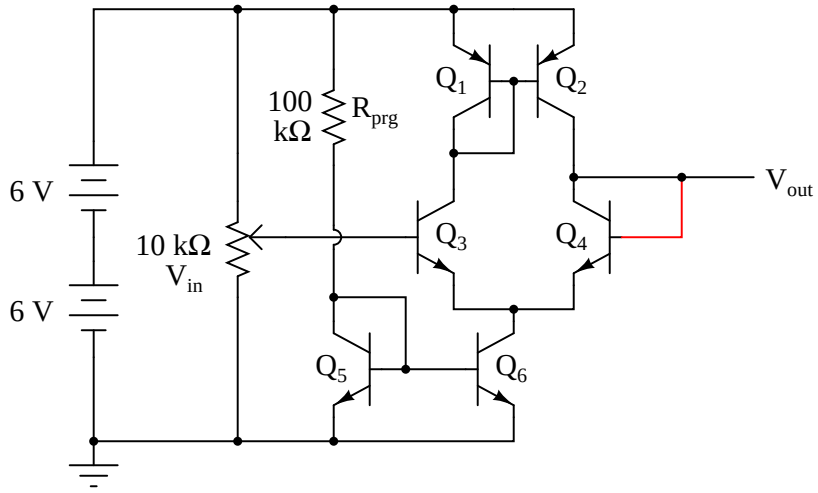
INSTRUCTIONS

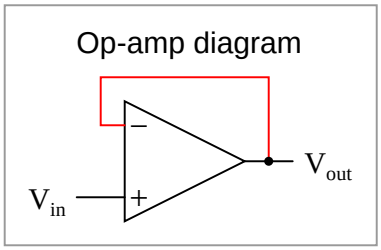
This circuit design improves on the differential amplifier shown previously. Rather than use resistors to drop voltage in the differential pair circuit, a set of current mirrors is used instead, the result being higher voltage gain and more predictable performance. With a higher voltage gain, this circuit is able to function as a working operational amplifier, or *op-amp*. Op-amps form the basis of a great many modern analog semiconductor circuits, so understanding the internal workings of an operational amplifier is important.

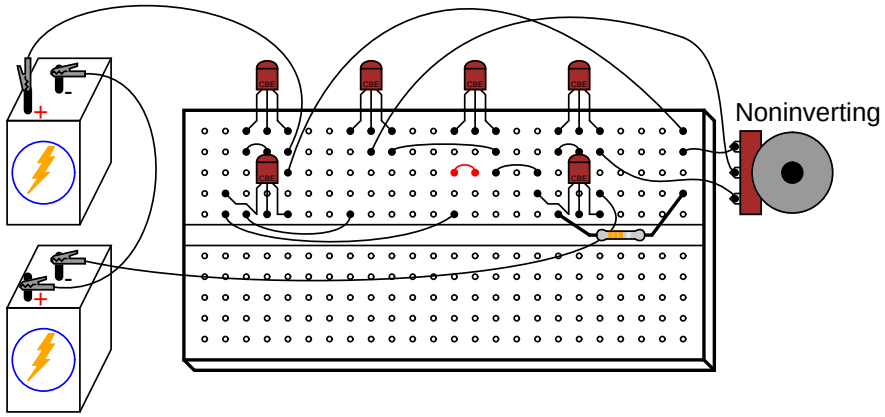
PNP transistors Q_1 and Q_2 form a current mirror which tries to keep current split equally through the two differential pair transistors Q_3 and Q_4. NPN transistors Q_5 and Q_6 form another current mirror, setting the *total* differential pair current at a level predetermined by resistor R_{prg}.

Measure the output voltage (voltage at the collector of Q_4 with respect to ground) as the input voltages are varied. Note how the two potentiometers have different effects on the output voltage: one input tends to drive the output voltage in the same direction (noninverting), while the other tends to drive the output voltage in the opposite direction (inverting). You will notice that the output voltage is most responsive to changes in the input when the two input signals are nearly equal to each other.

Once the circuit's differential response has been proven (the output voltage sharply transitioning from one extreme level to another when one input is adjusted above and below the other input's voltage level), you are ready to use this circuit as a real op-amp. A simple op-amp circuit called a *voltage follower* is a good configuration to try first. To make a voltage follower circuit, directly connect the output of the amplifier to its inverting input. This means connecting the collector and base terminals of Q_4 together, and discarding the "inverting" potentiometer:



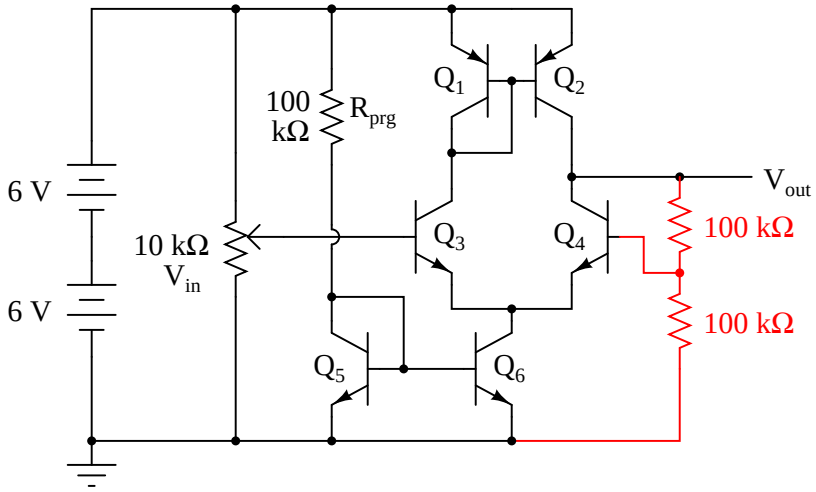


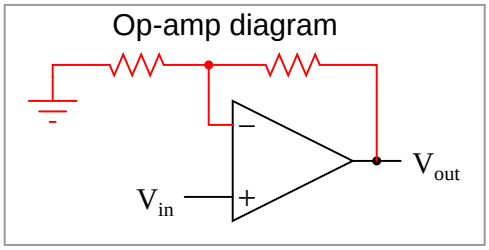


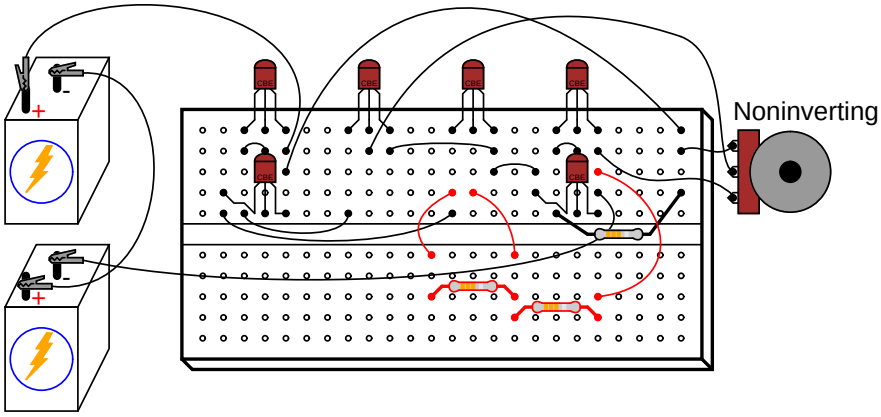
Note the triangular symbol of the op-amp shown in the lower schematic diagram. The inverting and noninverting inputs are designated with (-) and (+) symbols, respectively, with the output terminal at the right apex. The feedback wire connecting output to inverting input is shown in red in the above diagrams.

As a voltage follower, the output voltage should ”follow” the input voltage very closely, deviating no more than a few hundredths of a volt. This is a much more precise follower circuit than that of a single common-collector transistor, described in an earlier experiment!

A more complex op-amp circuit is called the *noninverting amplifier*, and it uses a pair of resistors in the feedback loop to "feed back" a fraction of the output voltage to the inverting input, causing the amplifier to output a voltage equal to some multiple of the voltage at the noninverting input. If we use two equal-value resistors, the feedback voltage will be 1/2 the output voltage, causing the output voltage to become twice the voltage impressed at the noninverting input. Thus, we have a voltage amplifier with a precise gain of 2:







As you test this noninverting amplifier circuit, you may notice slight discrepancies between the output and input voltages. According to the feedback resistor values, the voltage gain should be exactly 2. However, you may notice deviations in the order of several hundredths of a volt between what the output voltage is and what it should be. These deviations are due to imperfections of the differential amplifier circuit, and may be greatly diminished if we add more amplification stages to increase the differential voltage gain. However, one way we can maximize the precision of the existing circuit is to change the resistance of R_{prg}. This resistor sets the lower current mirror's control point, and in so doing influences many performance parameters of the op-amp. Try substituting difference resistance values, ranging from 10 kΩ to 1 MΩ. Do not use a resistance less than 10 kΩ, or else the current mirror transistors may begin to overheat and thermally "run away."

Some operational amplifiers available in prepackaged units provide a way for the user to similarly "program" the differential pair's current mirror, and are called *programmable* op-amps. Most op-amps are not programmable, and have their internal current mirror control points fixed by an internal resistance, trimmed to precise value at the factory.

5.18 Audio oscillator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6-volt batteries
- Three NPN transistors – models 2N2222 or 2N3403 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1617 is a package of fifteen NPN transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two 0.1 μF capacitors (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135 or equivalent)
- One 1 MΩ resistor
- Two 100 kΩ resistors
- One 1 kΩ resistor
- Assortment of resistor pairs, less than 100 kΩ (ex: two 10 kΩ, two 5 kΩ, two 1 kΩ)
- One light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- Audio detector with headphones

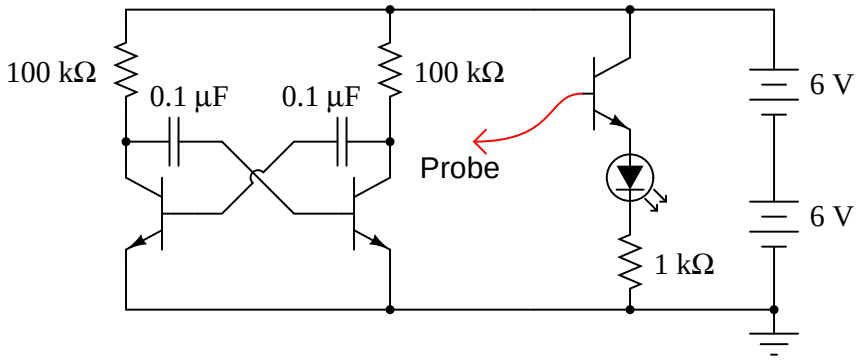
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: "Bipolar Junction Transistors"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 10: "Multivibrators"

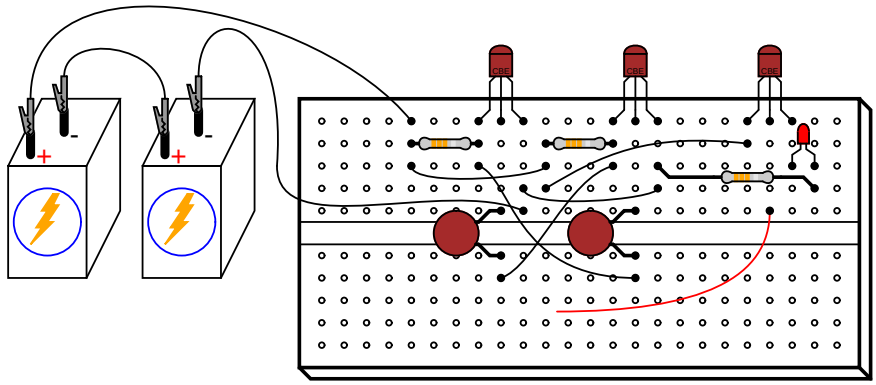
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to build an astable multivibrator circuit using discrete transistors

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



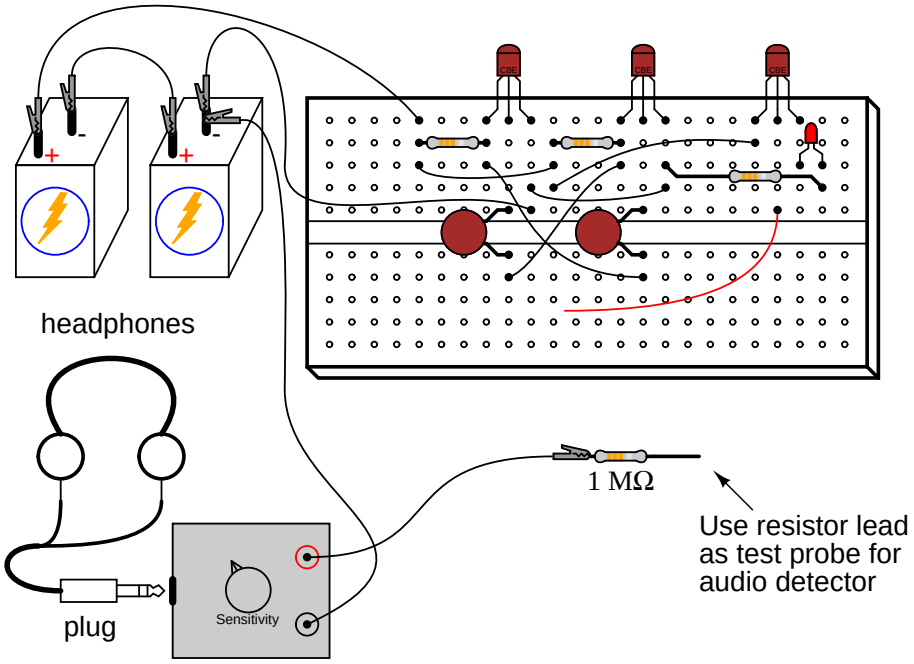
ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The proper name for this circuit is "*astable multivibrator*". It is a simple, free-running oscillator circuit timed by the sizes of the resistors, capacitors, and power supply voltage. Unfortunately, its output waveform is very distorted, neither sine wave nor square. For the simple purpose of making an audio tone, however, distortion doesn't matter much.

With a 12 volt supply, 100 kΩ resistors, and 0.1 μF capacitors, the oscillation frequency will be in the low audio range. You may listen to this signal with the audio detector connected with one test probe to ground and the other to one of the transistor's collector terminals. I recommend placing a 1 MΩ resistor in series with the audio detector to minimize both circuit loading effects and headphone loudness:



The multivibrator itself is just two transistors, two resistors, and two cross-connecting capacitors. The third transistor shown in the schematic and illustration is there for driving the LED, to be used as a visual indicator of oscillator action. Use the probe wire connected to the base of this common-emitter amplifier to detect voltage at different parts of the circuit with respect to ground. Given the low oscillating frequency of this multivibrator circuit, you should be able to see the LED blink rapidly with the probe wire connected to the collector terminal of either multivibrator transistor.

You may notice that the LED fails to blink with its probe wire touching the *base* of either multivibrator transistor, yet the audio detector tells you there is an oscillating voltage there. Why is this? The LED's common-collector transistor amplifier is a voltage follower, meaning that it doesn't amplify voltage. Thus, if the voltage under test is less than the minimum required by the LED to light up, it will not glow. Since the forward-biased base-emitter junction of an active transistor drops only about 0.7 volts, there is insufficient voltage at either transistor base to energize the LED. The audio detector, being extraordinarily sensitive, though, detects this low voltage signal easily.

Feel free to substitute lower-value resistors in place of the two 100 kΩ units shown. What happens to the oscillation frequency when you do so? I recommend using resistors at least 1 kΩ in size to prevent excessive transistor current.

One shortcoming of many oscillator circuits is its dependence on a minimum amount of power supply voltage. Too little voltage and the circuit ceases to oscillate. This circuit is no exception. You might want to experiment with lower supply voltages and determine the minimum voltage necessary for oscillation, as well as experience the effect supply voltage change has on oscillation frequency.

One shortcoming specific to this circuit is the dependence on mismatched components for successful starting. In order for the circuit to begin oscillating, one transistor must turn on before the other one. Usually, there is enough mismatch in the various component values to enable this to happen, but it is possible for the circuit to "freeze" and fail to oscillate at power-up. If this happens, try different components (same values, but different units) in the circuit.

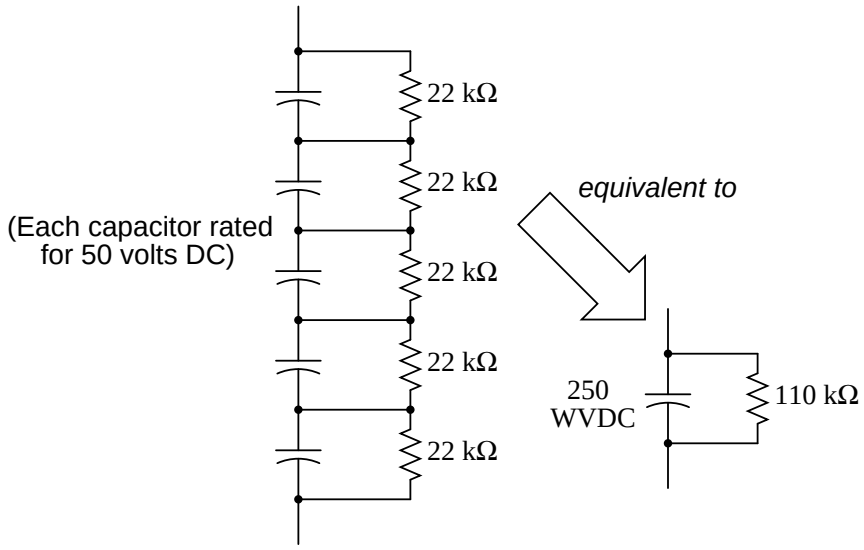
5.19 Vacuum tube audio amplifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- One 12AX7 dual triode vacuum tube
- Two power transformers, 120VAC step-down to 12VAC (Radio Shack catalog # 273-1365, 273-1352, or 273-1511).
- Bridge rectifier module (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1173)
- Electrolytic capacitor, at least 47 μF, with a working voltage of at least 200 volts DC.
- Automotive ignition coil
- Audio speaker, 8 Ω impedance
- Two 100 kΩ resistors
- One 0.1 μF capacitor, 250 WVDC (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1053)
- "Low-voltage AC power supply" as shown in AC Experiments chapter
- One toggle switch, SPST ("Single-Pole, Single-Throw")
- Radio, tape player, musical keyboard, or other source of audio voltage signal

Where can you obtain a 12AX7 tube, you ask? These tubes are very popular for use in the "preamplifier" stages of many professional electric guitar amplifiers. Go to any good music store and you will find them available for a modest price ($12 US or less). A Russian manufacturer named Sovtek makes these tubes new, so you need not rely on "New-Old-Stock" (NOS) components left over from defunct American manufacturers. This model of tube was very popular in its day, and may be found in old "tubed" electronic test equipment (oscilloscopes, oscillators), if you happen to have access to such equipment. However, I strongly suggest buying a tube new rather than taking chances with tubes salvaged from antique equipment.

It is important to select an electrolytic capacitor with sufficient working voltage (WVDC) to withstand the output of this amplifier's power supply circuit (about 170 volts). I strongly recommend choosing a capacitor with a voltage rating well in excess of the expected operating voltage, so as to handle unexpected voltage surges or any other event that may tax the capacitor. I purchased the Radio Shack electrolytic capacitor assortment (catalog # 272-802), and it happened to contain two 47 μF, 250 WVDC capacitors. If you are not as fortunate, you may build this circuit using five capacitors, each rated at 50 WVDC, to substitute for one 250 WVDC unit:



Bear in mind that the total capacitance for this five-capacitor network will be 1/5, or 20%, of each capacitor's value. Also, to ensure even charging of capacitors in the network, be sure all capacitor values (in μF) and all resistor values are identical.

An *automotive ignition coil* is a special-purpose high-voltage transformer used in car engines to produce tens of thousands of volts to "fire" the spark plugs. In this experiment, it is used (very unconventionally, I might add!) as an impedance-matching transformer between the vacuum tube and an 8 Ω audio speaker. The specific choice of "coil" is not critical, so long as it is in good operating condition. Here is a photograph of the coil I used for this experiment:

The audio speaker need not be extravagant. I've used small "bookshelf" speakers, automotive (6"x9") speakers, as well as a large (100 watt) 3-way stereo speaker for this experiment,

and they all work fine. **Do not use a set of headphones** under any circumstances, as the ignition coil does not provide electrical isolation between the 170 volts DC of the ”plate” power supply and the speaker, thus elevating the speaker connections to that voltage with respect to ground. Since obviously placing wires on your head with high voltage to ground would be *very hazardous*, please do not use headphones!

You will need some source of audio-frequency AC as an input signal to this amplifier circuit. I recommend a small battery-powered radio or musical keyboard, with an appropriate cable plugged into the ”headphone” or ”audio out” jack to convey the signal to your amplifier.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 13: ”Electron Tubes”

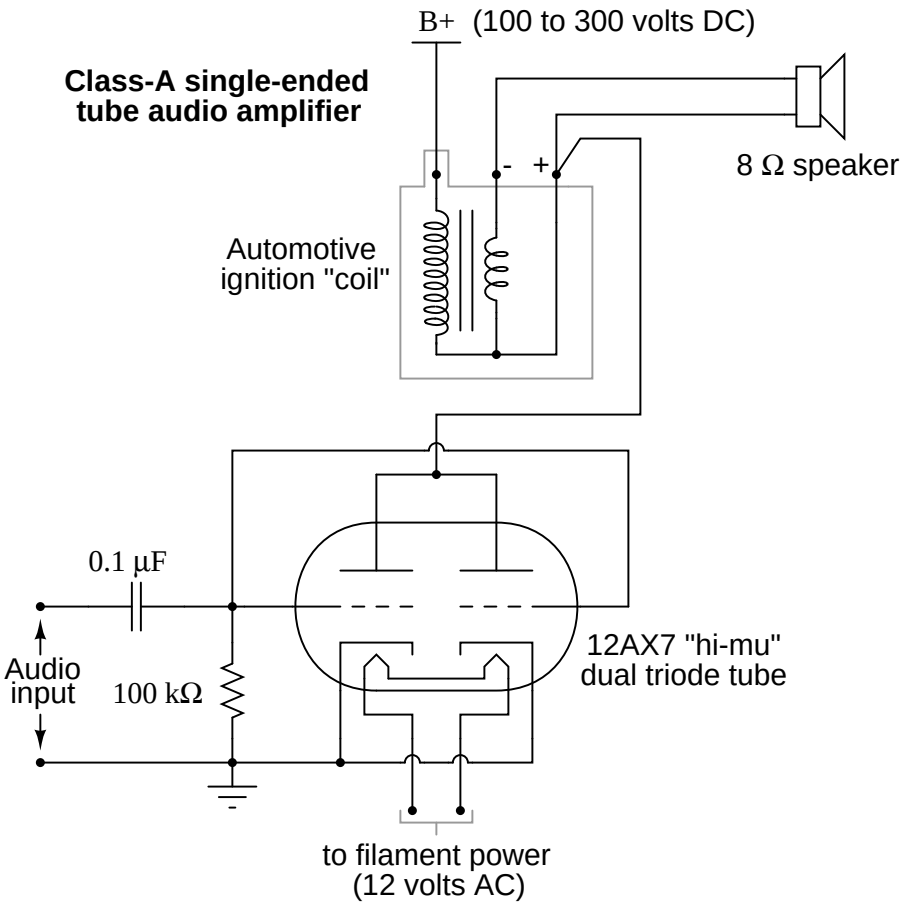
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 3: ”Diodes and Rectifiers”

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 9: ”Transformers”

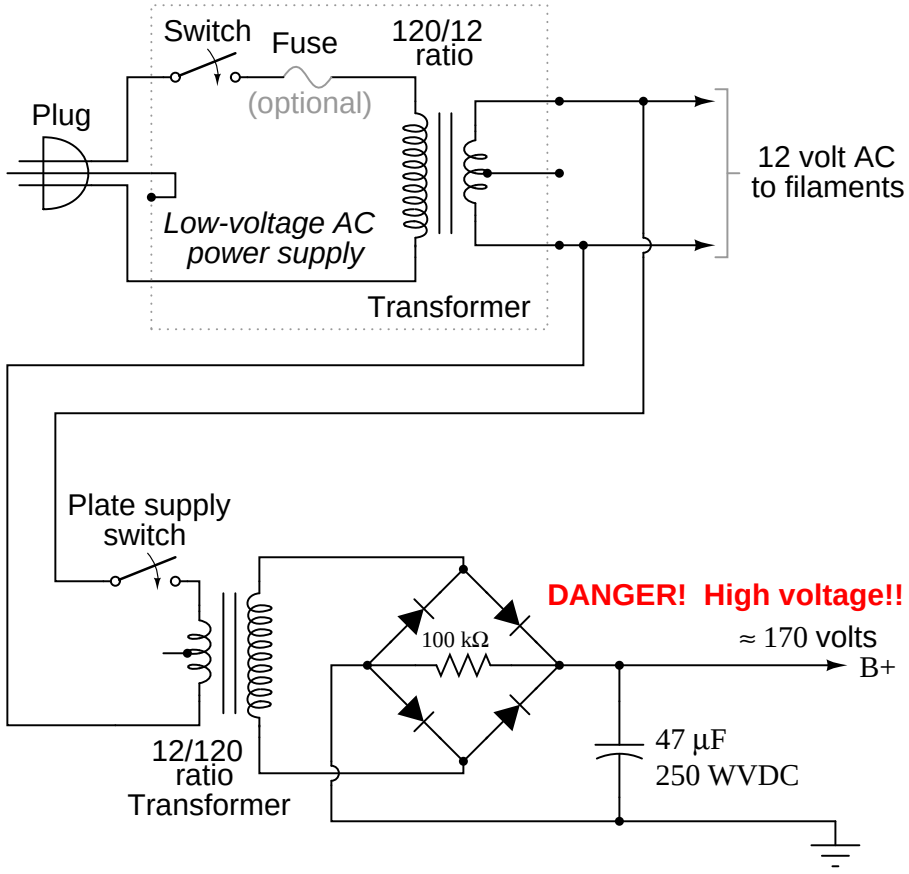
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Using a vacuum tube (triode) as an audio amplifier
- Using transformers in both step-down and step-up operation
- How to build a high-voltage DC power supply
- Using a transformer to match impedances

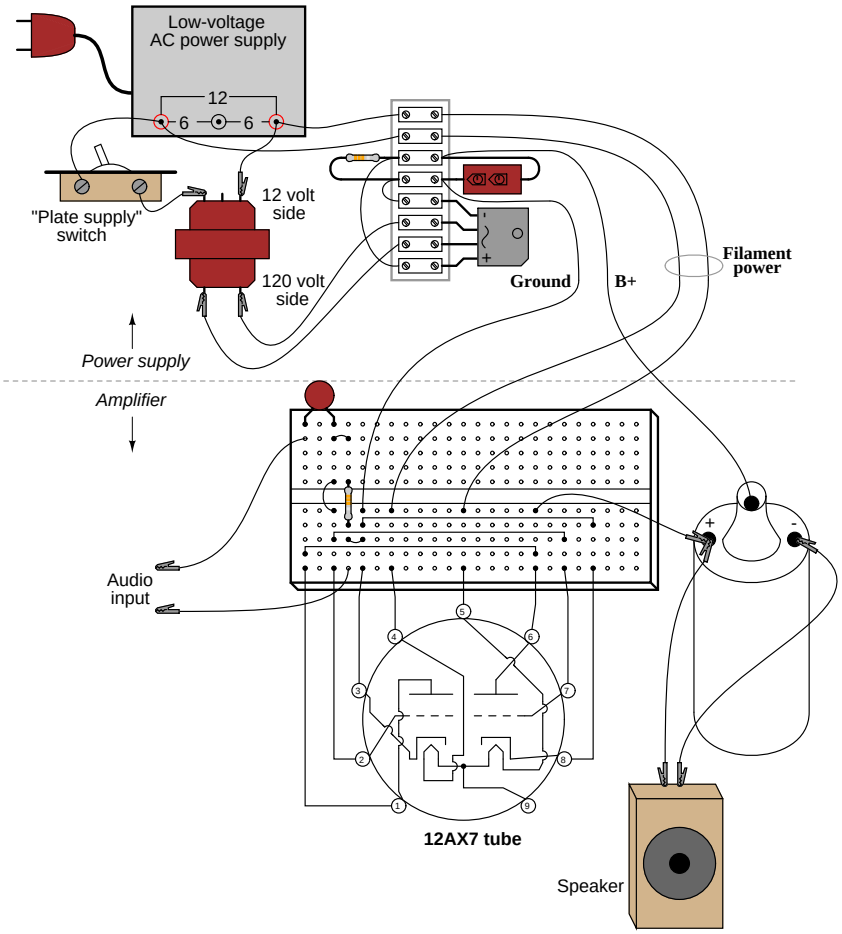
SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM


B+ (100 to 300 volts DC)
Class-A single-ended
tube audio amplifier
8 Ω speaker
- +
Automotive
ignition "coil"
0.1 μF
Audio
input
100 kΩ
12AX7 "hi-mu"
dual triode tube
to filament power
(12 volts AC)

High-voltage "plate" DC power supply



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Welcome to the world of vacuum tube electronics! While not exactly an application of semiconductor technology (power supply rectifier excepted), this circuit is useful as an introduction to vacuum tube technology, and an interesting application for impedance-matching transformers. It should be noted that **building and operating this circuit involves work with lethal voltages!** You must exhibit the utmost care while working with this circuit, as 170 volts DC is capable of electrocuting you!! It is recommended that beginners seek qualified assistance (experienced electricians, electronics technicians, or engineers) if attempting to build this amplifier.

WARNING: do not touch any wires or terminals while the amplifier circuit is energized! If you must make contact with the circuit at any point, turn off the ”plate” power supply switch and wait for the filter capacitor to discharge below 30 volts before touching any part of the circuit. If testing circuit voltages with the power on, use only one hand if possible to avoid the possibility of an arm-to-arm electric shock.

Building the high-voltage power supply

Vacuum tubes require fairly high DC voltage applied between plate and cathode terminals in order to function efficiently. Although it is possible to operate the amplifier circuit described in this experiment on as low as 24 volts DC, the power output will be miniscule and the sound quality poor. The 12AX7 triode is rated at a maximum "plate voltage" (voltage applied between plate and cathode terminals) of 330 volts, so our power supply of 170 volts DC specified here is well within that maximum limit. I've operated this amplifier on as high as 235 volts DC, and discovered that both sound quality and intensity improved *slightly*, but not enough in my estimation to warrant the additional hazard to experimenters.

The power supply actually has two different power outputs: the "B+" DC output for plate power, and the "filament" power, which is only 12 volts AC. Tubes require power applied to a small filament (sometimes called a *heater*) in order to function, as the cathode must be hot enough to thermally emit electrons, and that doesn't happen at room temperature! Using one power transformer to step household 120 volt AC power down to 12 volts AC provides low-voltage for the filaments, and another transformer connected in step-up fashion brings the voltage back up to 120 volts. You might be wondering, "why step the voltage back up to 120 volts with another transformer? Why not just tap off the wall socket plug to obtain 120 volt AC power *directly*, and then rectify that into 170 volts DC?" The answer to this is twofold: first, running power through two transformers inherently limits the amount of current that may be sent into an accidental short-circuit on the plate-side of the amplifier circuit. Second, it electrically isolates the plate circuit from the wiring system of your house. If we were to rectify wall-socket power with a diode bridge, it would make both DC terminals (+ and -) elevated in voltage from the safety ground connection of your house's electrical system, thereby increasing the shock hazard.

Note the toggle switch connected between the 12-volt windings of the two transformers, labeled "Plate supply switch." This switch controls power to the step-up transformer, thereby controlling plate voltage to the amplifier circuit. Why not just use the main power switch connected to the 120 volt plug? Why have a second switch to shut off the DC high voltage, when shutting off one main switch would accomplish the same thing? The answer lies in proper vacuum tube operation: like incandescent light bulbs, vacuum tubes "wear" when their filaments are powered up and down repeatedly, so having this additional switch in the circuit allows you to shut off the DC high voltage (for safety when modifying or adjusting the circuit) without having to shut off the filament. Also, it is a good habit to wait for the tube to reach full operating temperature *before* applying plate voltage, and this second switch allows you to delay the application of plate voltage until the tube has had time to reach operating temperature.

During operation, you should have a voltmeter connected to the "B+" output of the power supply (between the B+ terminal and ground), continuously providing indication of the power supply voltage. This meter will show you when the filter capacitor has discharged below the shock-hazard limit (30 volts) when you turn off the "Plate supply switch" to service the amplifier circuit.

The "ground" terminal shown on the DC output of the power supply circuit need not connect to earth ground. Rather, it is merely a symbol showing a common connection with a corresponding ground terminal symbol in the amplifier circuit. In the circuit you build, there will be a piece of wire connecting these two "ground" points together. As always, the designation of certain common points in a circuit by means of a shared symbol is standard practice in electronic schematics.

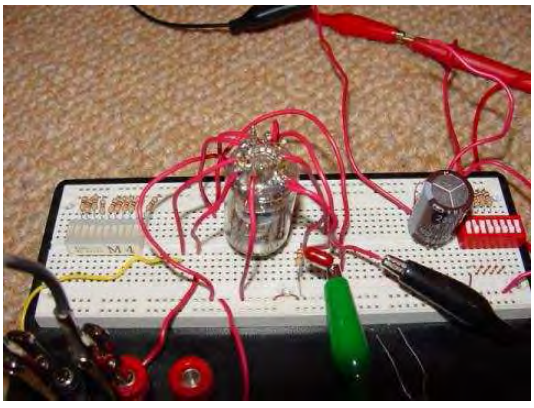
You will note that the schematic diagram shows a 100 kΩ resistor in parallel with the filter capacitor. This resistor is quite necessary, as it provides the capacitor a path for discharge when the AC power is turned off. Without this "bleeder" resistor in the circuit, the capacitor would likely retain a dangerous charge for a long time after "power-down," posing an additional shock hazard to you. In the circuit I built – with a 47 μF capacitor and a 100 kΩ bleeder resistor – the time constant of this RC circuit was a brief 4.7 seconds. If you happen to find a larger filter capacitor value (good for minimizing unwanted power supply "hum" in the speaker), you will need to use a correspondingly smaller value of bleeder resistor, or wait longer for the voltage to bleed off each time you turn the "Plate supply" switch off.

Be sure you have the power supply safely constructed and working reliably before attempting to power the amplifier circuit with it. This is good circuit-building practice in general: build and troubleshoot the power supply first, then build the circuit you intend to power with it. If the power supply does not function as it should, then neither will the powered circuit, no matter how well it may be designed and built.

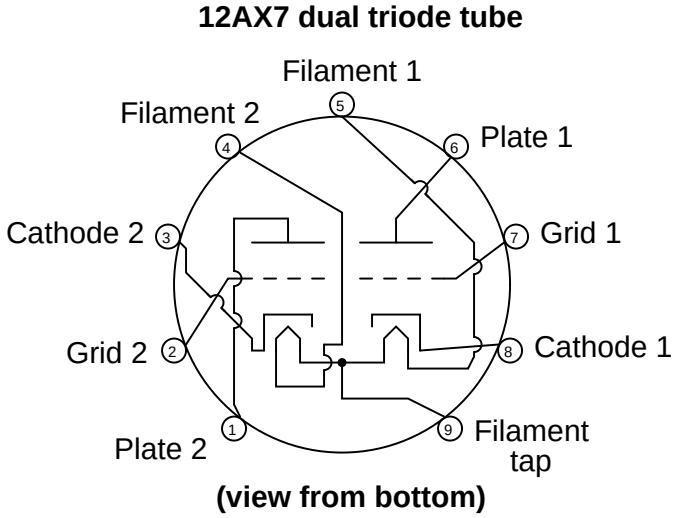
Building the amplifier

One of the problems with building vacuum tube circuits in the 21st century is that *sockets* for these components can be difficult to find. Given the limited lifetime of most "receiver" tubes (a few years), most "tubed" electronic devices used sockets for mounting the tubes, so that they could be easily removed and replaced. Though tubes may still be obtained (from music supply stores) with relative ease, the sockets they plug into are considerably scarcer – your local Radio Shack will not have them in stock! How, then, do we build circuits with tubes, if we might not be able to obtain sockets for them to plug in to?

For small tubes, this problem may be circumvented by directly soldering short lengths of 22-gauge solid copper wire to the pins of the tube, thus enabling you to "plug" the tube into a solderless breadboard. Here is a photograph of my tube amplifier, showing the 12AX7 in an inverted position (pin-side-up). Please disregard the 10-segment LED bargraph to the left and the 8-position DIP switch assembly to the right in the photograph, as these are leftover components from a digital circuit experiment assembled previously on my breadboard.



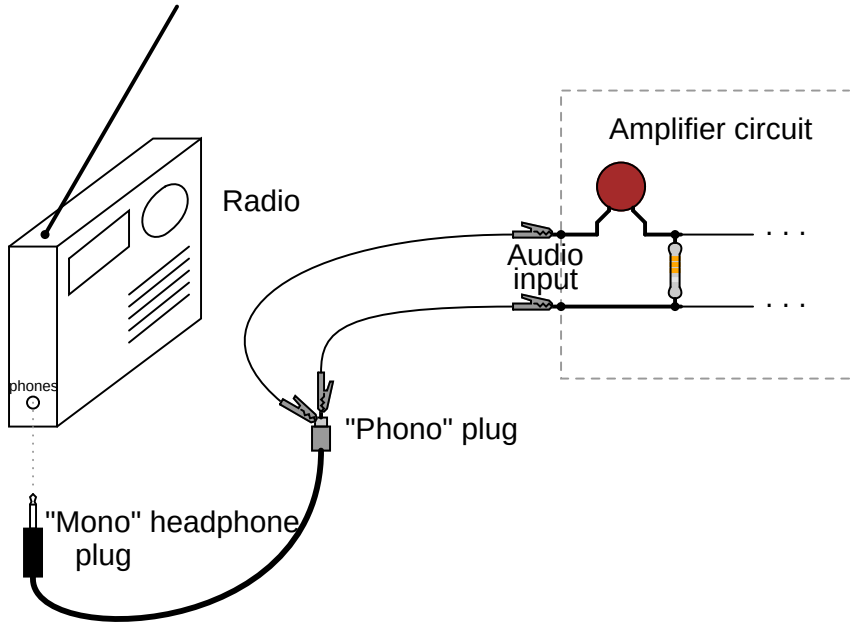
One benefit of mounting the tube in this position is ease of pin identification, since most "pin connection diagrams" for tubes are shown from a bottom view:



You will notice on the amplifier schematic that both triode elements inside the 12AX7's glass envelope are being used, in parallel: plate connected to plate, grid connected to grid, and cathode connected to cathode. This is done to maximize power output from the tube, but it is not necessary for demonstrating basic operation. You may use just one of the triodes, for simplicity, if you wish.

The 0.1 μF capacitor shown on the schematic "couples" the audio signal source (radio, musical keyboard, etc.) to the tube's grid(s), allowing AC to pass but blocking DC. The 100 kΩ resistor ensures that the average DC voltage between grid and cathode is zero, and cannot "float" to some high level. Typically, bias circuits are used to keep the grid slightly negative with respect to ground, but for this purpose a bias circuit would introduce more complexity than its worth.

When I tested my amplifier circuit, I used the output of a radio receiver, and later the output of a compact disk (CD) player, as the audio signal source. Using a "mono"-to-"phono" connector extension cord plugged into the headphone jack of the receiver/CD player, and alligator clip jumper wires connecting the "mono" tip of the cord to the input terminals of the tube amplifier, I was able to easily send the amplifier audio signals of varying amplitude to test its performance over a wide range of conditions:



A transformer is essential at the output of the amplifier circuit for "matching" the impedances of vacuum tube and speaker. Since the vacuum tube is a high-voltage, low-current device, and most speakers are low-voltage, high-current devices, the mismatch between them would result in very audio low power output if they were directly connected. To successfully match the high-voltage, low-current source to the low-voltage, high current load, we must use a step-down transformer.

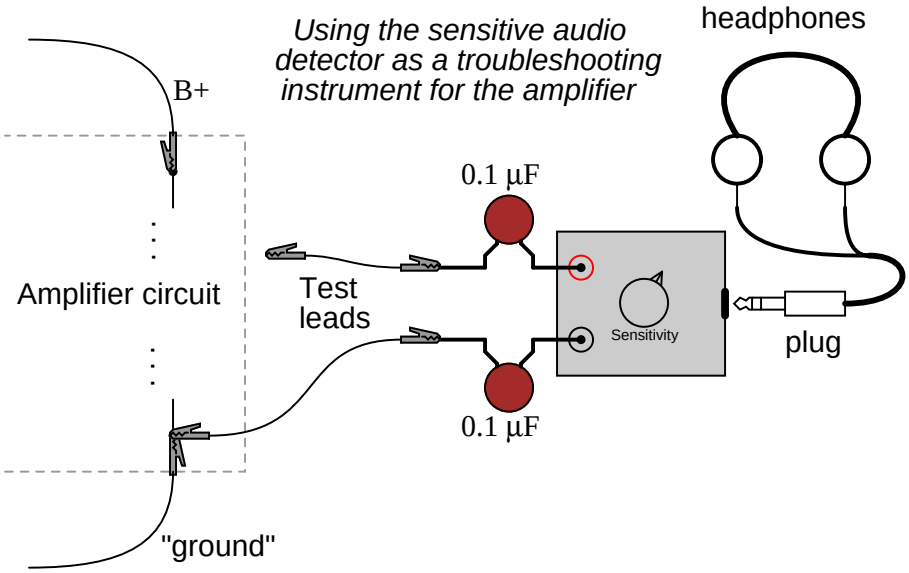
Since the vacuum tube circuit's Thevenin resistance ranges in the tens of thousands of ohms, and the speaker only has about 8 ohms impedance, we will need a transformer with an impedance ratio of about 10,000:1. Since the impedance ratio of a transformer is the *square* of its turns ratio (or voltage ratio), we're looking for a transformer with a turns ratio of about 100:1. A typical automotive ignition coil has approximately this turns ratio, and it is also rated for extremely high voltage on the high-voltage winding, making it well suited for this application.

The only bad aspect of using an ignition coil is that it provides no electrical isolation between primary and secondary windings, since the device is actually an autotransformer, with each winding sharing a common terminal at one end. This means that the speaker wires will be at a high DC voltage with respect to circuit ground. So long as we know this, and avoid touching those wires during operation, there will be no problem. Ideally, though, the transformer would provide complete isolation as well as impedance matching, and the speaker wires would be perfectly safe to touch during use.

Remember, make all connections in the circuit *with the power turned off!* After checking connections visually and with an ohmmeter to ensure that the circuit is built as per the schematic diagram, apply power to the filaments of the tube and wait about 30 seconds for it to reach operating temperature. The both filaments should emit a soft, orange glow, visible from both the top and bottom views of the tube.

Turn the volume control of your radio/CD player/musical keyboard signal source to minimum, then turn on the plate supply switch. The voltmeter you have connected between the power supply's B+ output terminal and "ground" should register full voltage (about 170 volts). Now, increase the volume control on the signal source and listen to the speaker. If all is well, you should hear the correct sounds clearly through the speaker.

Troubleshooting this circuit is best done with the sensitive audio detector described in the DC and AC chapters of this Experiments volume. Connect a 0.1 μF capacitor in series with each test lead to block DC from the detector, then connect one of the test leads to ground, while using the other test lead to check for audio signal at various points in the circuit. Use capacitors with a high voltage rating, like the one used on the input of the amplifier circuit:



Using two coupling capacitors instead of just one adds an additional degree of safety, in helping to isolate the unit from any (high) DC voltage. Even without the extra capacitor, though, the detector's internal transformer should provide sufficient electrical isolation for your safety in using it to test for signals in a high-voltage circuit like this, especially if you built your detector using a 120 volt power transformer (rather than an "audio output" transformer) as suggested. Use it to test for a good signal at the input, then at the grid pin(s) of the tube, then at the plate of the tube, etc. until the problem is found. Being capacitively coupled, the detector is also able to test for excessive power supply "hum:" touch the free test lead to the supply's B+ terminal and listen for a loud 60 Hz humming noise. The noise should be very soft, not loud. If it is loud, the power supply is not filtered adequately enough, and may need additional filter capacitance.

After testing a point in the amplifier circuit with large DC voltage to ground, the coupling capacitors on the detector may build up substantial voltage. To discharge this voltage, briefly touch the free test lead to the grounded test lead. A "pop" sound should be heard in the headphones as the coupling capacitors discharge.

If you would rather use a voltmeter to test for the presence of audio signal, you may do so, setting it to a sensitive AC voltage range. The indication you get from a voltmeter, though,

doesn't tell you anything about the *quality* of the signal, just its mere presence. Bear in mind that most AC voltmeters will register a transient voltage when initially connected across a source of DC voltage, so don't be surprised to see a "spike" (a strong, momentary voltage indication) at the very moment contact is made with the meter's probes to the circuit, rapidly decreasing to the true AC signal value.

You may be pleasantly surprised at the quality and depth of tone from this little amplifier circuit, especially given its low power output: less than 1 watt of audio power. Of course, the circuit is quite crude and sacrifices quality for simplicity and parts availability, but it serves to demonstrate the basic principle of vacuum tube amplification. Advanced hobbyists and students may wish to experiment with biasing networks, negative feedback, different output transformers, different power supply voltages, and even different tubes, to obtain more power and/or better sound quality.

Here is a photo of a very similar amplifier circuit, built by the husband-and-wife team of Terry and Cheryl Goetz, illustrating what can be done when care and craftsmanship are applied to a project like this.

Bibliography

[1] Forrest M. Mims III, "Sun Photometer with Light-Emitting Diodes as Spectrally Selective Detectors", Applied Optics, 31, 33, 6965-6967, 1992.

[2] Forrest M. Mims III,"Light Emitting Diodes" Howard W. Sams & Co., 1973, pp. 118-119.

[3] Forrest M. Mims III, Private communications, February 29, 2008.

Chapter 6

ANALOG INTEGRATED CIRCUITS

Contents

6.1 Introduction

Analog circuits are circuits dealing with signals free to vary from zero to full power supply voltage. This stands in contrast to *digital* circuits, which almost exclusively employ ”all or nothing” signals: voltages restricted to values of zero and full supply voltage, with no valid state in between those extreme limits. Analog circuits are often referred to as *linear* circuits to emphasize the valid continuity of signal range forbidden in digital circuits, but this label is unfortunately misleading. Just because a voltage or current signal is allowed to vary smoothly between the extremes of zero and full power supply limits does not necessarily mean that all mathematical relationships between these signals are linear in the ”straight-line” or ”proportional” sense of the word. As you will see in this chapter, many so-called ”linear” circuits are quite *non*linear in their behavior, either by necessity of physics or by design.

The circuits in this chapter make use of *IC*, or *integrated circuit*, components. Such components are actually networks of interconnected components manufactured on a single wafer of semiconducting material. Integrated circuits providing a multitude of pre-engineered functions are available at very low cost, benefitting students, hobbyists and professional circuit designers alike. Most integrated circuits provide the same functionality as "discrete" semiconductor circuits at higher levels of reliability and at a fraction of the cost. Usually, discrete-component circuit construction is favored only when power dissipation levels are too high for integrated circuits to handle.

Perhaps the most versatile and important analog integrated circuit for the student to master is the *operational amplifier*, or *op-amp*. Essentially nothing more than a differential amplifier with very high voltage gain, op-amps are the workhorse of the analog design world. By cleverly applying feedback from the output of an op-amp to one or more of its inputs, a wide variety of behaviors may be obtained from this single device. Many different models of op-amp are available at low cost, but circuits described in this chapter will incorporate only commonly available op-amp models.

6.2 Voltage comparator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Operational amplifier, model 1458 or 353 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-038 and 900-6298, respectively)
- Three 6 volt batteries
- Two 10 kΩ potentiometers, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- One light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- One 330 Ω resistor
- One 470 Ω resistor

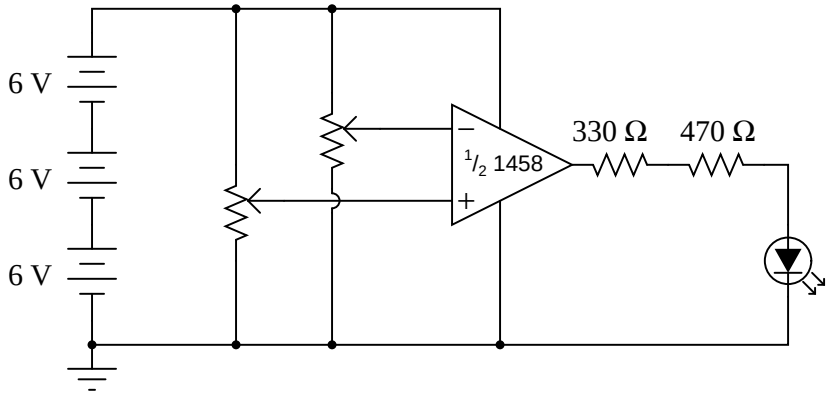
This experiment only requires a single operational amplifier. The model 1458 and 353 are both ”dual” op-amp units, with two complete amplifier circuits housed in the same 8-pin DIP package. I recommend that you purchase and use ”dual” op-amps over ”single” op-amps even if a project only requires one, because they are more versatile (the same op-amp unit can function in projects requiring only one amplifier as well as in projects requiring two). In the interest of purchasing and stocking the least number of components for your home laboratory, this makes sense.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: ”Operational Amplifiers”

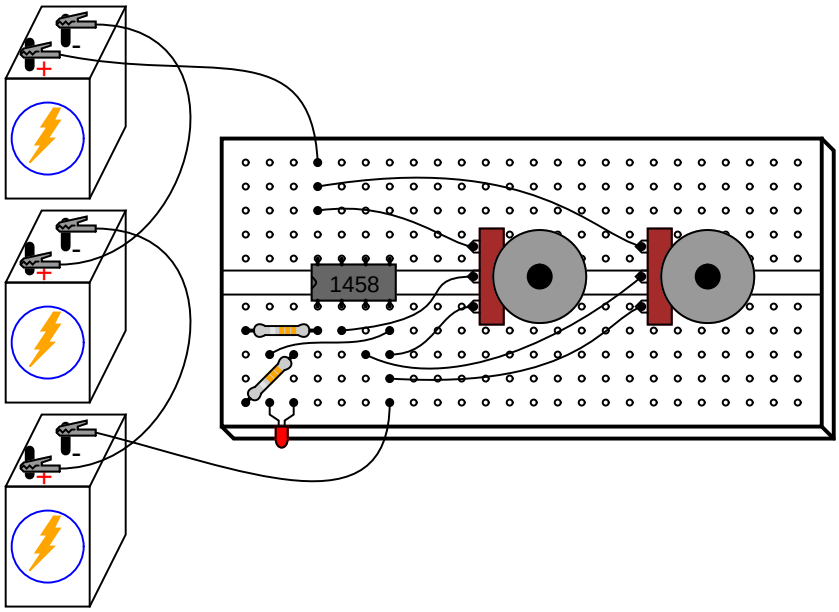
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use an op-amp as a comparator

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION

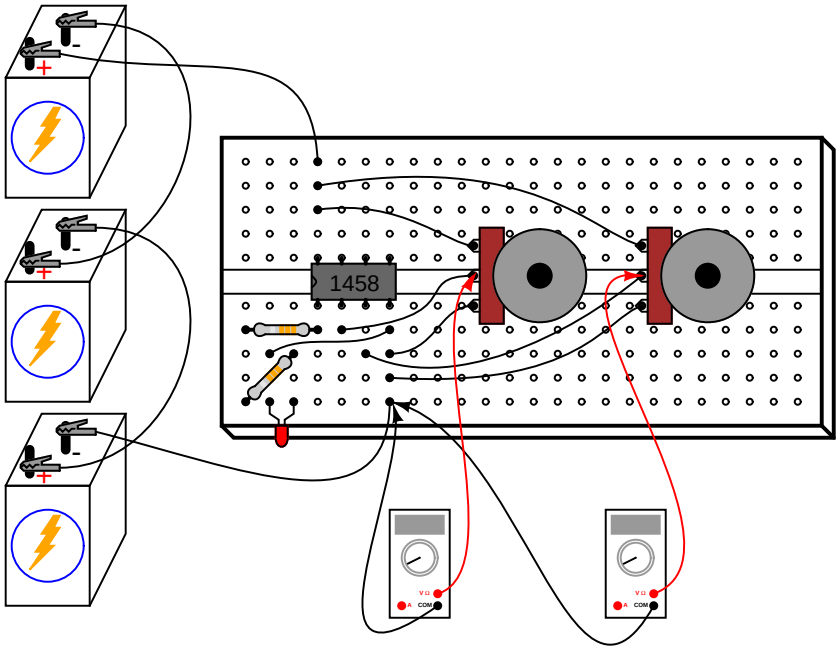


INSTRUCTIONS

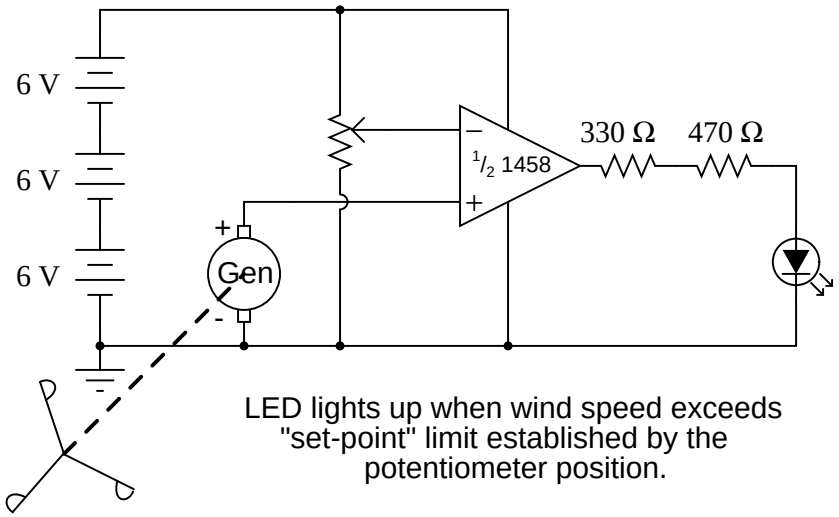
A *comparator* circuit compares two voltage signals and determines which one is greater. The result of this comparison is indicated by the output voltage: if the op-amp's output is saturated in the positive direction, the noninverting input (+) is a greater, or more positive, voltage than the inverting input (-), all voltages measured with respect to ground. If the op-amp's voltage is near the negative supply voltage (in this case, 0 volts, or ground potential), it means the inverting input (-) has a greater voltage applied to it than the noninverting input (+).

This behavior is much easier understood by experimenting with a comparator circuit than it is by reading someone's verbal description of it. In this experiment, two potentiometers supply variable voltages to be compared by the op-amp. The output status of the op-amp is indicated visually by the LED. By adjusting the two potentiometers and observing the LED, one can easily comprehend the function of a comparator circuit.

For greater insight into this circuit's operation, you might want to connect a pair of voltmeters to the op-amp input terminals (both voltmeters referenced to ground) so that both input voltages may be numerically compared with each other, these meter indications compared to the LED status:



Comparator circuits are widely used to compare physical measurements, provided those physical variables can be translated into voltage signals. For instance, if a small generator were attached to an anemometer wheel to produce a voltage proportional to wind speed, that wind speed signal could be compared with a "set-point" voltage and compared by an op-amp to drive a high wind speed alarm:



6.3 Precision voltage follower

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Operational amplifier, model 1458 or 353 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-038 and 900-6298, respectively)
- Three 6 volt batteries
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)

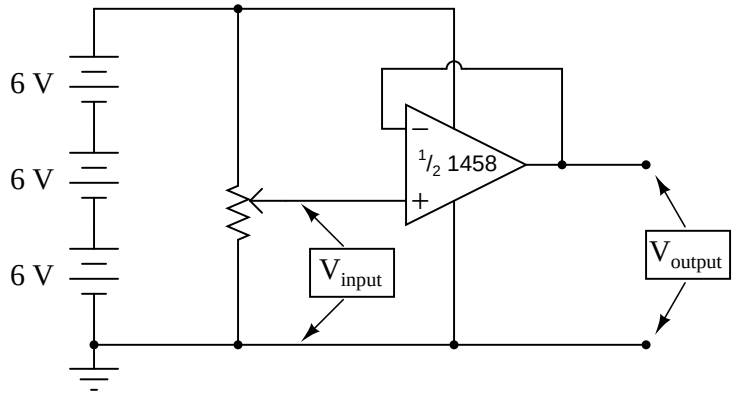
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: "Operational Amplifiers"

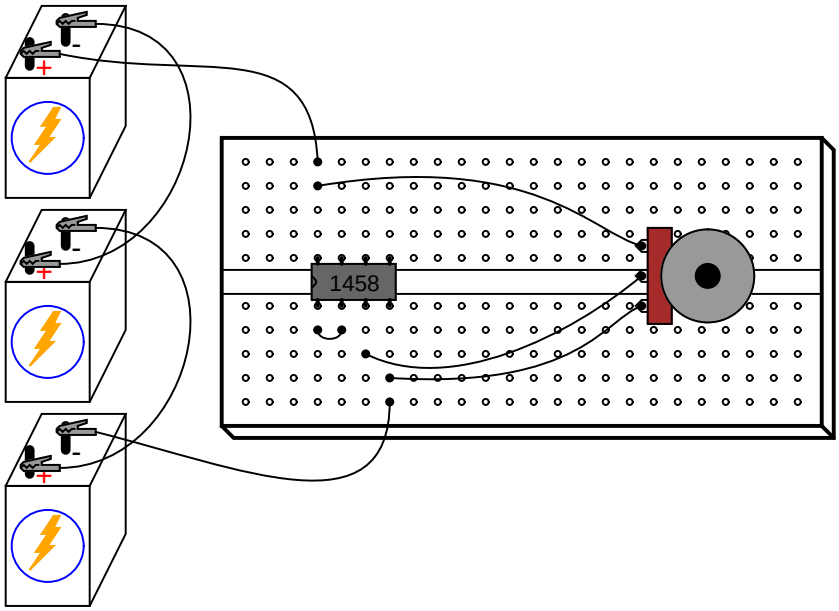
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use an op-amp as a voltage follower
- Purpose of negative feedback
- Troubleshooting strategy

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

In the previous op-amp experiment, the amplifier was used in ”open-loop” mode; that is, without any *feedback* from output to input. As such, the full voltage gain of the operational amplifier was available, resulting in the output voltage saturating for virtually any amount of differential voltage applied between the two input terminals. This is good if we desire comparator operation, but if we want the op-amp to behave as a true *amplifier*, we need it to exhibit a manageable voltage gain.

Since we do not have the luxury of disassembling the integrated circuitry of the op-amp and changing resistor values to give a lesser voltage gain, we are limited to external connections and componentry. Actually, this is not a disadvantage as one might think, because the combination of extremely high open-loop voltage gain coupled with feedback allows us to use the op-amp for a much wider variety of purposes, much easier than if we were to exercise the option of modifying its internal circuitry.

If we connect the output of an op-amp to its inverting (-) input, the output voltage will seek whatever level is necessary to balance the inverting input’s voltage with that applied to the noninverting (+) input. If this feedback connection is direct, as in a straight piece of wire, the output voltage will precisely ”follow” the noninverting input’s voltage. Unlike the *voltage follower* circuit made from a single transistor (see chapter 5: Discrete Semiconductor Circuits), which approximated the input voltage to within several tenths of a volt, this voltage follower circuit will output a voltage accurate to within mere *microvolts* of the input voltage!

Measure the input voltage of this circuit with a voltmeter connected between the op-amp’s noninverting (+) input terminal and circuit ground (the negative side of the power supply), and the output voltage between the op-amp’s output terminal and circuit ground. Watch the op-amp’s output voltage follow the input voltage as you adjust the potentiometer through its range.

You may directly measure the difference, or *error*, between output and input voltages by connecting the voltmeter between the op-amp's two input terminals. Throughout most of the potentiometer's range, this error voltage should be almost zero.

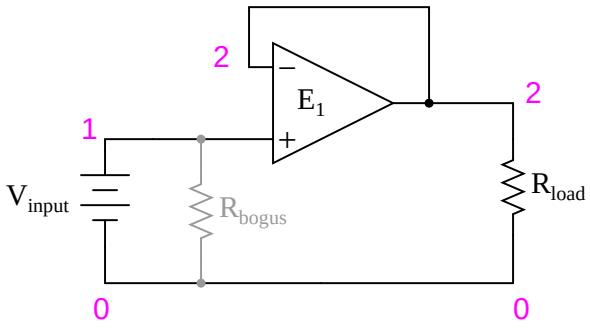
Try moving the potentiometer to one of its extreme positions, far clockwise or far counter-clockwise. Measure error voltage, or compare output voltage against input voltage. Do you notice anything unusual? If you are using the model 1458 or model 353 op-amp for this experiment, you should measure a substantial error voltage, or difference between output and input. Many op-amps, the specified models included, cannot "swing" their output voltage exactly to full power supply ("rail") voltage levels. In this case, the "rail" voltages are +18 volts and 0 volts, respectively. Due to limitations in the 1458's internal circuitry, its output voltage is unable to exactly reach these high and low limits. You may find that it can only go within a volt or two of the power supply "rails." This is a very important limitation to understand when designing circuits using operational amplifiers. If full "rail-to-rail" output voltage swing is required in a circuit design, other op-amp models may be selected which offer this capability. The model 3130 is one such op-amp.

Precision voltage follower circuits are useful if the voltage signal to be amplified cannot tolerate "loading;" that is, if it has a high source impedance. Since a voltage follower by definition has a voltage gain of 1, its purpose has nothing to do with amplifying voltage, but rather with amplifying a signal's capacity to deliver *current* to a load.

Voltage follower circuits have another important use for circuit builders: they allow for simple linear testing of an op-amp. One of the troubleshooting techniques I recommend is to *simplify and rebuild*. Suppose that you are building a circuit using one or more op-amps to perform some advanced function. If one of those op-amps seems to be causing a problem and you suspect it may be faulty, try re-connecting it as a simple voltage follower and see if it functions in that capacity. An op-amp that fails to work as a voltage follower certainly won't work as anything more complex!

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Voltage follower
vinput 1 0
rbogus 1 0 1meg
e1 2 0 1 2 999meg
```

```
rload 2 0 10k
.dc vinput 5 5 1
.print dc v(1,0) v(2,0) v(1,2)
.end
```

An ideal operational amplifier may be simulated in SPICE using a *dependent voltage source* (`e1` in the netlist). The output nodes are specified first (`2 0`), then the two input nodes, non-inverting input first (`1 2`). Open-loop gain is specified last (`999meg`) in the dependent voltage source line.

Because SPICE views the input impedance of a dependent source as infinite, some finite amount of resistance must be included to avoid an analysis error. This is the purpose of R_{bogus}: to provide DC path to ground for the V_{input} voltage source. Such "bogus" resistances should be arbitrarily large. In this simulation I chose 1 MΩ for an R_{bogus} value.

A load resistor is included in the circuit for much the same reason: to provide a DC path for current at the output of the dependent voltage source. As you can see, SPICE doesn't like open circuits!

6.4 Noninverting amplifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Operational amplifier, model 1458 or 353 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-038 and 900-6298, respectively)
- Three 6 volt batteries
- Two 10 kΩ potentiometers, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)

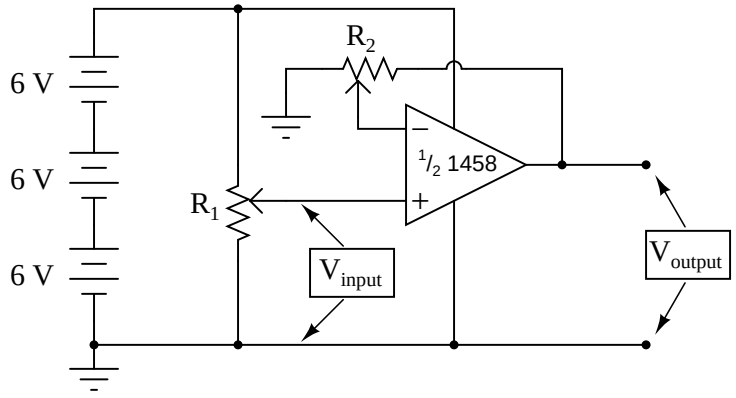
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: "Operational Amplifiers"

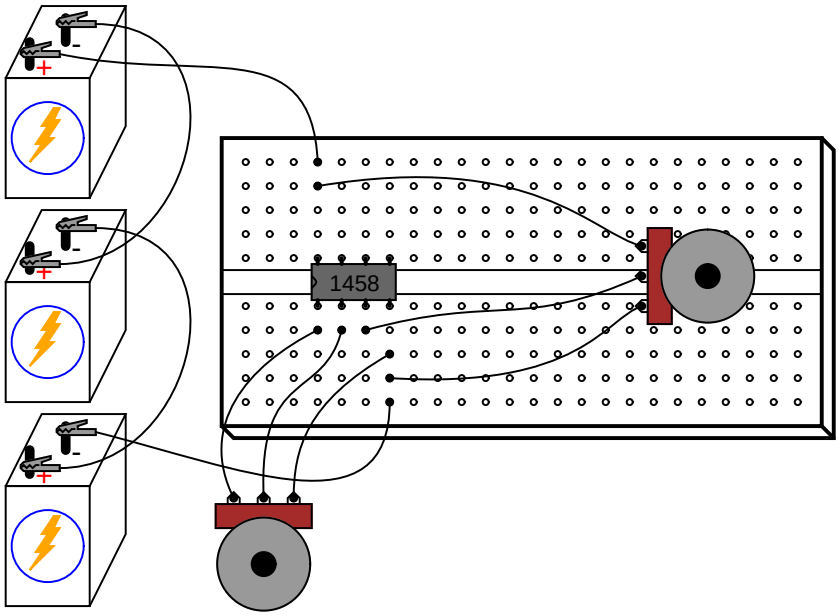
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use an op-amp as a single-ended amplifier
- Using divided, negative feedback

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This circuit differs from the voltage follower in only one respect: output voltage is "fed back" to the inverting (-) input through a voltage-dividing potentiometer rather than being directly connected. With only a *fraction* of the output voltage fed back to the inverting input, the op-amp will output a corresponding *multiple* of the voltage sensed at the noninverting (+) input in keeping the input differential voltage near zero. In other words, the op-amp will now function as an amplifier with a controllable voltage gain, that gain being established by the position of the feedback potentiometer (R_2).

Set R_2 to approximately mid-position. This should give a voltage gain of about 2. Measure both input and output voltage for several positions of the input potentiometer R_1. Move R_2 to a different position and re-take voltage measurements for several positions of R_1. For any given R_2 position, the ratio between output and input voltage should be the same.

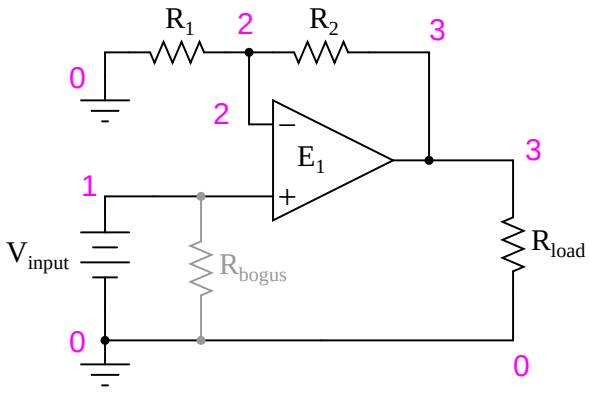
You will also notice that the input and output voltages are always positive with respect to ground. Because the output voltage increases in a positive direction for a positive increase of the input voltage, this amplifier is referred to as *noninverting*. If the output and input voltages were related to one another in an inverse fashion (i.e. positive increasing input voltage results in positive decreasing or negative increasing output), then the amplifier would be known as an *inverting* type.

The ability to leverage an op-amp in this fashion to create an amplifier with controllable voltage gain makes this circuit an extremely useful one. It would take quite a bit more design and troubleshooting effort to produce a similar circuit using discrete transistors.

Try adjusting R_2 for maximum and minimum voltage gain. What is the *lowest* voltage gain attainable with this amplifier configuration? Why do you think this is?

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
Noninverting amplifier
vinput 1 0
r2 3 2 5k
r1 2 0 5k
rbogus 1 0 1meg
e1 3 0 1 2 999meg
rload 3 0 10k
.dc vinput 5 5 1
.print dc v(1,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

With R_1 and R_2 set equally to 5 kΩ in the simulation, it mimics the feedback potentiometer of the real circuit at mid-position (50%). To simulate the potentiometer at the 75% position, set R_2 to 7.5 kΩ and R_1 to 2.5 kΩ.

6.5 High-impedance voltmeter

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Operational amplifier, model TL082 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1715)
- Operational amplifier, model LM1458 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-038)
- Four 6 volt batteries
- One meter movement, 1 mA full-scale deflection (Radio Shack catalog #22-410)
- 15 kΩ precision resistor
- Four 1 MΩ resistors

The 1 mA meter movement sold by Radio Shack is advertised as a 0-15 VDC meter, but is actually a 1 mA movement sold with a 15 kΩ +/- 1% tolerance multiplier resistor. If you get this Radio Shack meter movement, you can use the included 15 kΩ resistor for the resistor specified in the parts list.

This meter experiment is based on a JFET-input op-amp such as the TL082. The other op-amp (model 1458) is used in this experiment to demonstrate the absence of latch-up: a problem inherent to the TL082.

You don't need 1 MΩ resistors, *exactly*. Any very high resistance resistors will suffice.

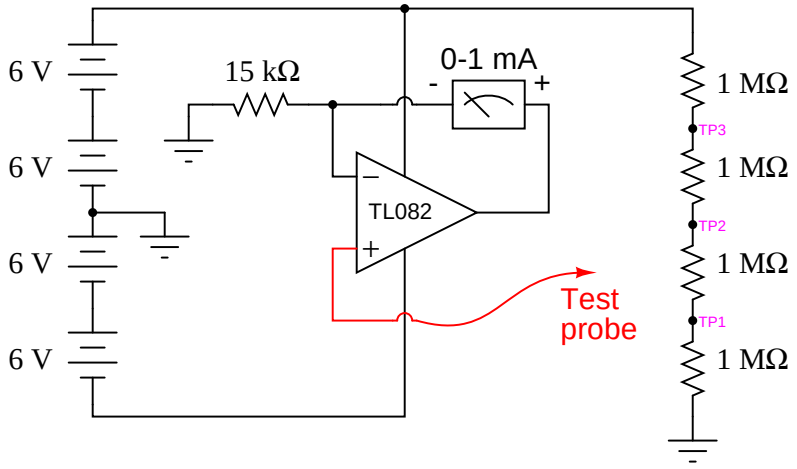
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: "Operational Amplifiers"

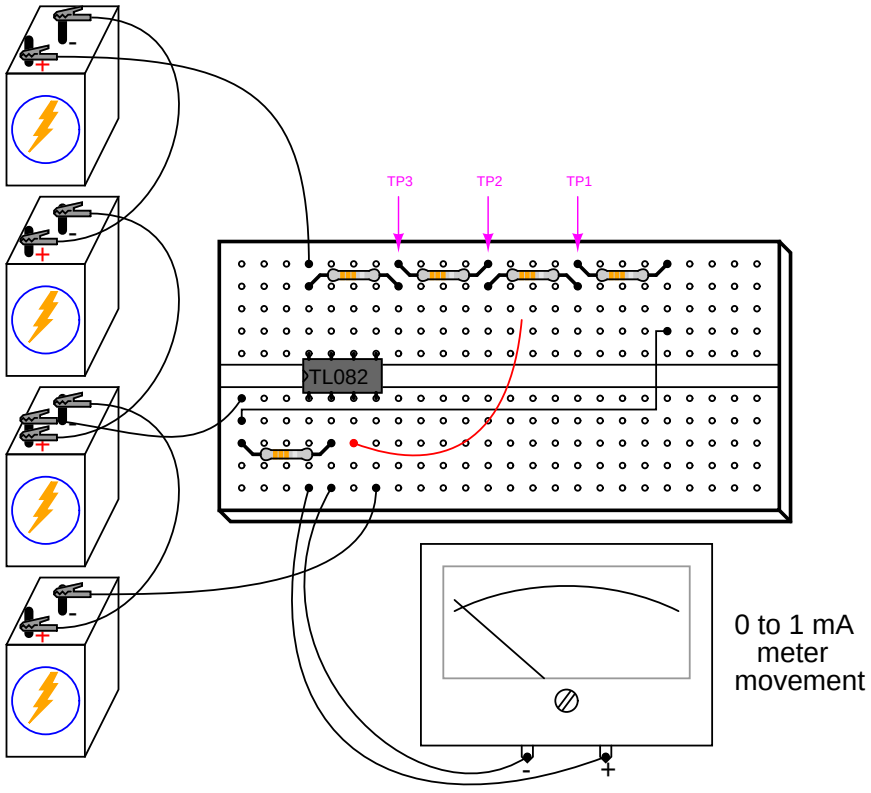
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Voltmeter loading: its causes and its solution
- How to make a high-impedance voltmeter using an op-amp
- What op-amp "latch-up" is and how to avoid it

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION

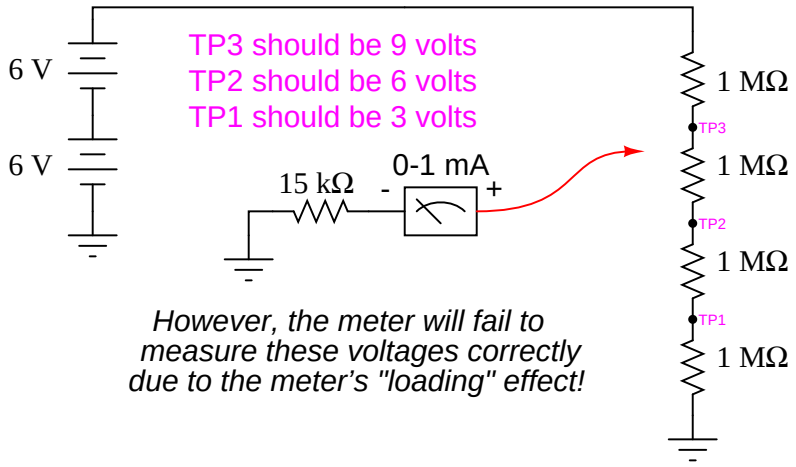


INSTRUCTIONS

An ideal voltmeter has infinite input impedance, meaning that it draws zero current from the circuit under test. This way, there will be no ”impact” on the circuit as the voltage is

being measured. The more current a voltmeter draws from the circuit under test, the more the measured voltage will "sag" under the loading effect of the meter, like a tire-pressure gauge releasing air out of the tire being measured: the more air released from the tire, the more the tire's pressure will be impacted in the act of measurement. This loading is more pronounced on circuits of high resistance, like the voltage divider made of 1 MΩ resistors, shown in the schematic diagram.

If you were to build a simple 0-15 volt range voltmeter by connecting the 1 mA meter movement in series with the 15 kΩ precision resistor, and try to use this voltmeter to measure the voltages at TP1, TP2, or TP3 (with respect to ground), you'd encounter *severe* measurement errors induced by meter "impact:"



Try using the meter movement and 15 kΩ resistor as shown to measure these three voltages. Does the meter read falsely high or falsely low? Why do you think this is?

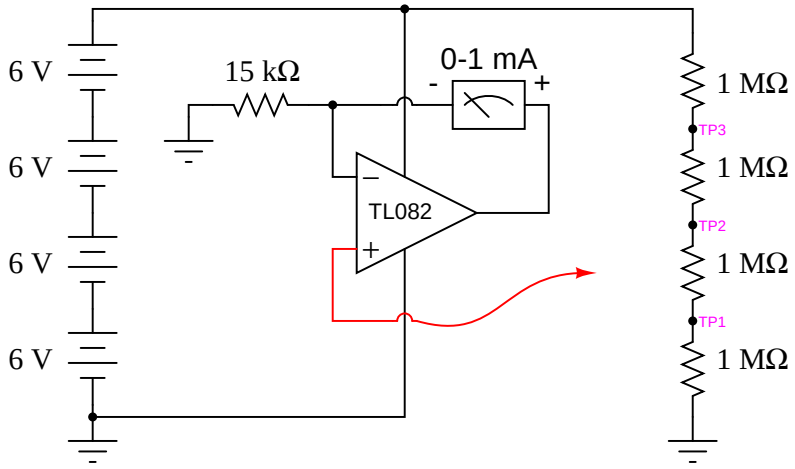
If we were to increase the meter's input impedance, we would diminish its current draw or "load" on the circuit under test and consequently improve its measurement accuracy. An op-amp with high-impedance inputs (using a JFET transistor input stage rather than a BJT input stage) works well for this application.

Note that the meter movement is part of the op-amp's feedback loop from output to inverting input. This circuit drives the meter movement with a current proportional to the voltage impressed at the noninverting (+) input, the requisite current supplied directly from the batteries through the op-amp's power supply pins, not from the circuit under test through the test probe. The meter's range is set by the resistor connecting the inverting (-) input to ground.

Build the op-amp meter circuit as shown and re-take voltage measurements at TP1, TP2, and TP3. You should enjoy far better success this time, with the meter movement accurately measuring these voltages (approximately 3, 6, and 9 volts, respectively).

You may witness the extreme sensitivity of this voltmeter by touching the test probe with one hand and the most positive battery terminal with the other. Notice how you can drive the needle upward on the scale simply by measuring battery voltage through your body resistance: an impossible feat with the original, unamplified voltmeter circuit. If you touch the test probe to ground, the meter should read exactly 0 volts.

After you've proven this circuit to work, modify it by changing the power supply from dual to split. This entails removing the center-tap ground connection between the 2nd and 3rd batteries, and grounding the far negative battery terminal instead:



This alteration in the power supply increases the voltages at TP1, TP2, and TP3 to 6, 12, and 18 volts, respectively. With a 15 kΩ range resistor and a 1 mA meter movement, measuring 18 volts will gently "peg" the meter, but you should be able to measure the 6 and 12 volt test points just fine.

Try touching the meter's test probe to ground. This *should* drive the meter needle to exactly 0 volts as before, but it will not! What is happening here is an op-amp phenomenon called *latch-up*: where the op-amp output drives to a positive voltage when the input common-mode voltage exceeds the allowable limit. In this case, as with many JFET-input op-amps, neither input should be allowed to come close to either power supply rail voltage. With a single supply, the op-amp's negative power rail is at ground potential (0 volts), so grounding the test probe brings the noninverting (+) input exactly to that rail voltage. This is bad for a JFET op-amp, and drives the output strongly positive, even though it doesn't seem like it should, based on how op-amps are supposed to function.

When the op-amp ran on a "dual" supply (+12/-12 volts, rather than a "single" +24 volt supply), the negative power supply rail was 12 volts away from ground (0 volts), so grounding the test probe didn't violate the op-amp's common-mode voltage limit. However, with the "single" +24 volt supply, we have a problem. Note that some op-amps do not "latch-up" the way the model TL082 does. You may replace the TL082 with an LM1458 op-amp, which is pin-for-pin compatible (no breadboard wiring changes needed). The model 1458 will not "latch-up" when the test probe is grounded, although you may still get incorrect meter readings with the measured voltage exactly equal to the negative power supply rail. As a general rule, you should always be sure the op-amp's power supply rail voltages exceed the expected input voltages.

6.6 Integrator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Four 6 volt batteries
- Operational amplifier, model 1458 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-038)
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- Two capacitors, 0.1 μF each, non-polarized (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135)
- Two 100 kΩ resistors
- Three 1 MΩ resistors

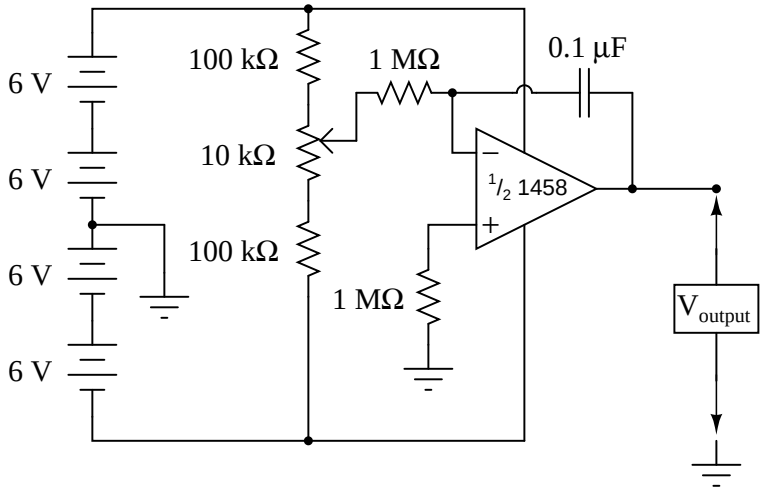
Just about any operational amplifier model will work fine for this integrator experiment, but I'm specifying the model 1458 over the 353 because the 1458 has much higher input bias currents. Normally, high input bias current is a bad characteristic for an op-amp to have in a precision DC amplifier circuit (and especially an integrator circuit!). However, I want the bias current to be high in order that its bad effects may be exaggerated, and so that you will learn one method of counteracting its effects.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: "Operational Amplifiers"

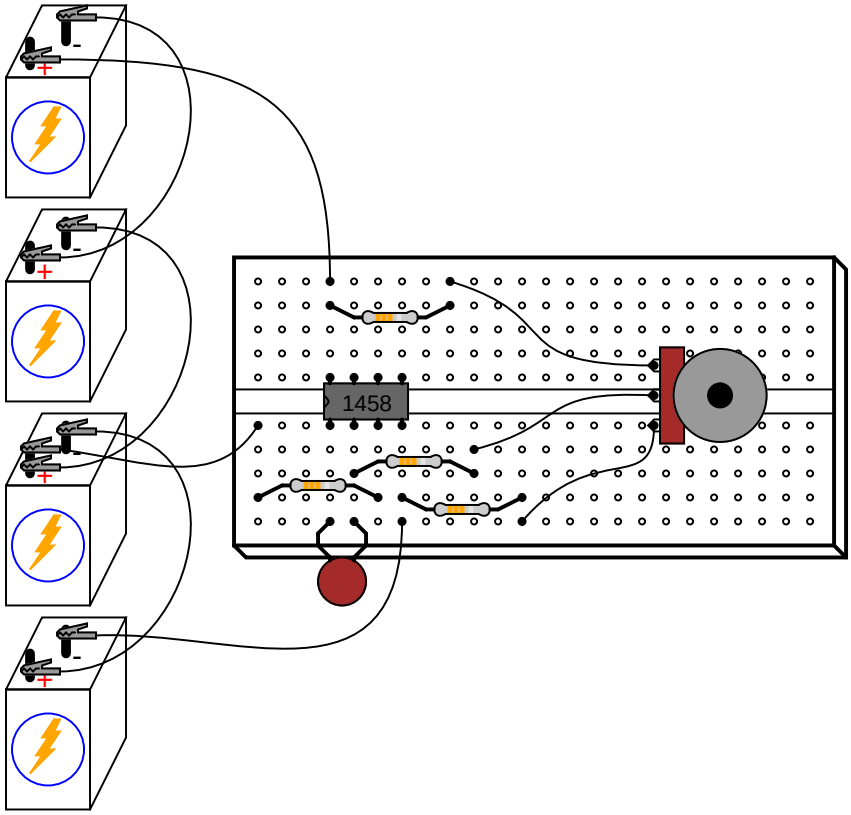
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Method for limiting the span of a potentiometer
- Purpose of an integrator circuit
- How to compensate for op-amp bias current

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

As you can see from the schematic diagram, the potentiometer is connected to the "rails" of the power source through 100 kΩ resistors, one on each end. This is to limit the span of the potentiometer, so that full movement produces a fairly small range of input voltages for the op-amp to operate on. At one extreme of the potentiometer's motion, a voltage of about 0.5 volt (with respect the the ground point in the middle of the series battery string) will be produced at the potentiometer wiper. At the other extreme of motion, a voltage of about -0.5 volt will be produced. When the potentiometer is positioned dead-center, the wiper voltage should measure zero volts.

Connect a voltmeter between the op-amp's output terminal and the circuit ground point. Slowly move the potentiometer control while monitoring the output voltage. The output voltage should be *changing* at a rate established by the potentiometer's deviation from zero (center) position. To use calculus terms, we would say that the output voltage represents the *integral* (with respect to time) of the input voltage function. That is, the input voltage level establishes the output voltage *rate of change over time*. This is precisely the opposite of *differentiation*, where the *derivative* of a signal or function is its instantaneous rate of change.

If you have two voltmeters, you may readily see this relationship between input voltage and output *voltage rate of change* by measuring the wiper voltage (between the potentiometer

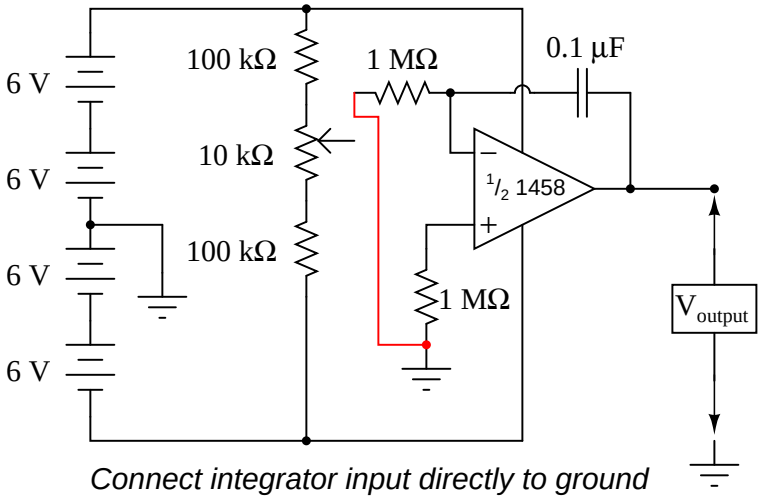
wiper and ground) with one meter and the output voltage (between the op-amp output terminal and ground) with the other. Adjusting the potentiometer to give zero volts should result in the slowest output voltage rate-of-change. Conversely, the more voltage input to this circuit, the faster its output voltage will change, or "ramp."

Try connecting the second 0.1 μF capacitor in parallel with the first. This will double the amount of capacitance in the op-amp's feedback loop. What affect does this have on the circuit's integration rate for any given potentiometer position?

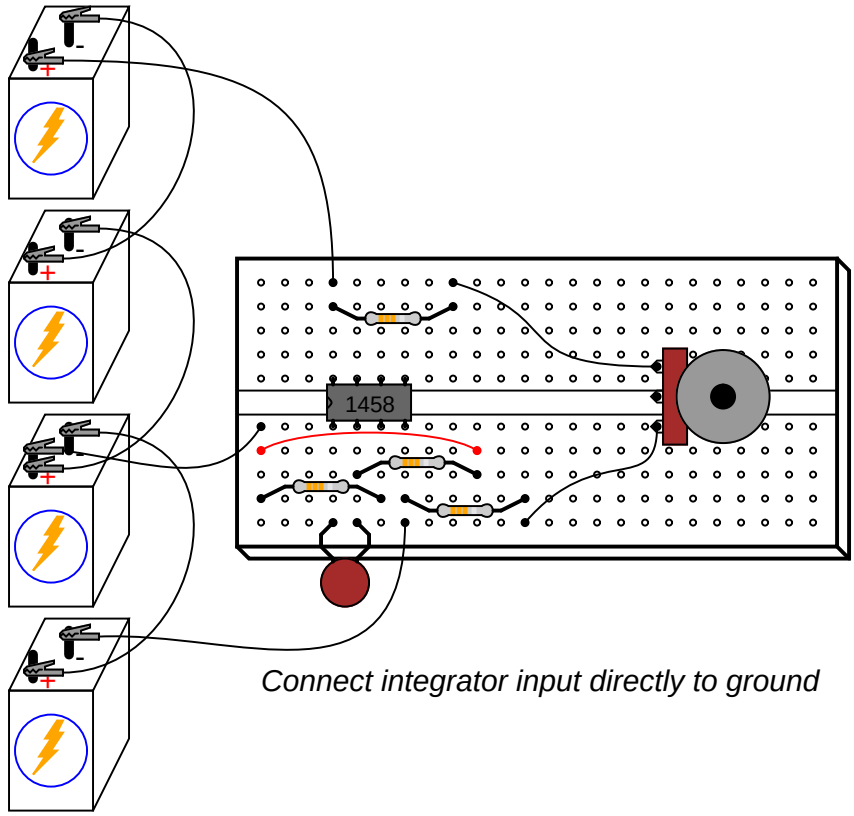
Try connecting another 1 MΩ resistor in parallel with the input resistor (the resistor connecting the potentiometer wiper to the inverting terminal of the op-amp). This will halve the integrator's input resistance. What affect does this have on the circuit's integration rate?

Integrator circuits are one of the fundamental "building-block" functions of an analog computer. By connecting integrator circuits with amplifiers, summers, and potentiometers (dividers), almost any differential equation could be modeled, and solutions obtained by measuring voltages produced at various points in the network of circuits. Because differential equations describe so many physical processes, analog computers are useful as simulators. Before the advent of modern digital computers, engineers used analog computers to simulate such processes as machinery vibration, rocket trajectory, and control system response. Even though analog computers are considered obsolete by modern standards, their constituent components still work well as learning tools for calculus concepts.

Move the potentiometer until the op-amp's output voltage is as close to zero as you can get it, and moving as slowly as you can make it. Disconnect the integrator input from the potentiometer wiper terminal and connect it instead to ground, like this:

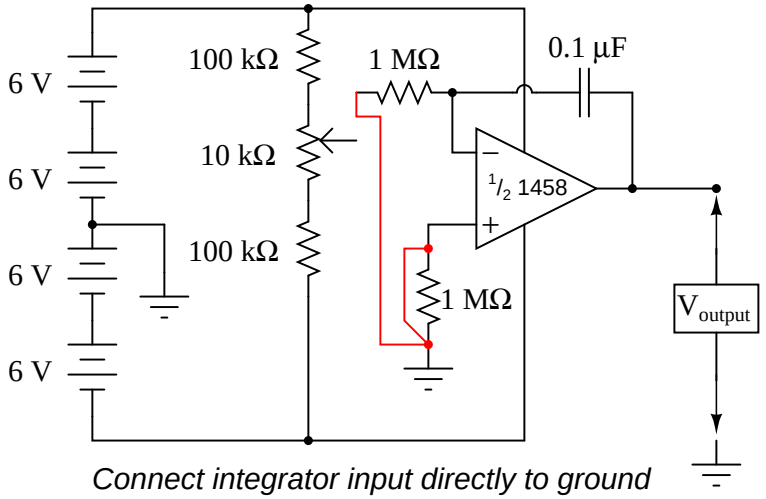


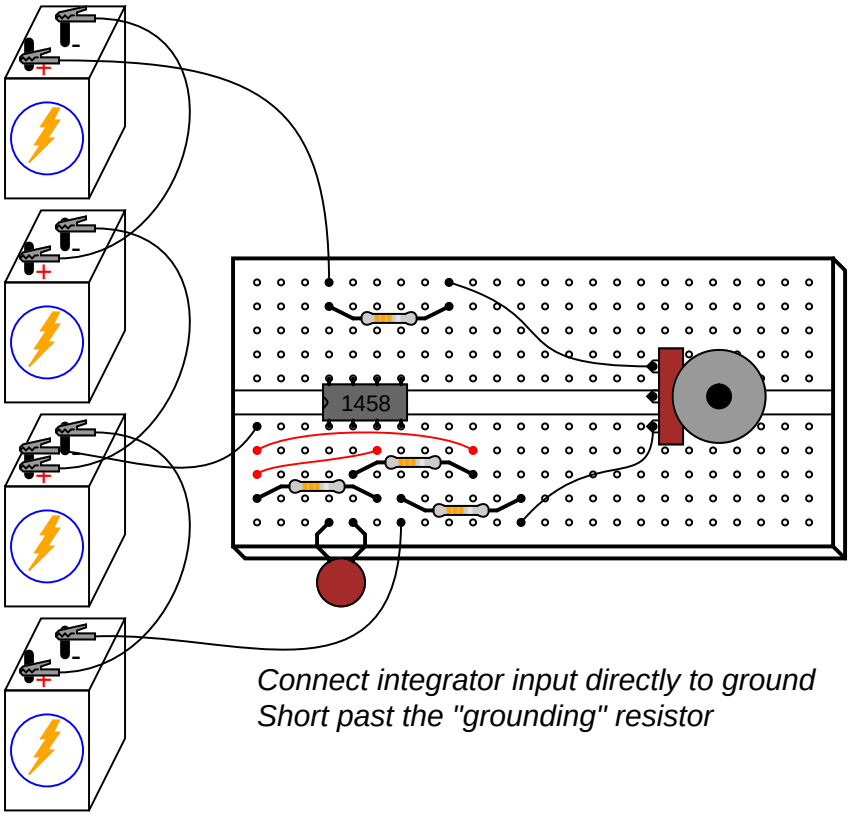
Connect integrator input directly to ground



Applying exactly zero voltage to the input of an integrator circuit should, ideally, cause the output voltage rate-of-change to be zero. When you make this change to the circuit, you should notice the output voltage remaining at a constant level or changing very slowly.

With the integrator input still shorted to ground, short past the 1 MΩ resistor connecting the op-amp's noninverting (+) input to ground. There should be no need for this resistor in an ideal op-amp circuit, so by shorting past it we will see what function it provides in this very *real* op-amp circuit:





As soon as the ”grounding” resistor is shorted with a jumper wire, the op-amp’s output voltage will start to change, or drift. Ideally, this should not happen, because the integrator

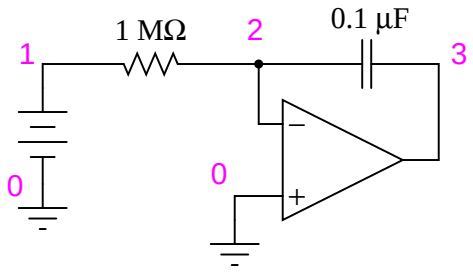
circuit still has an input signal of zero volts. However, real operational amplifiers have a very small amount of current entering each input terminal called the *bias current*. These bias currents will drop voltage across any resistance in their path. Since the 1 MΩ input resistor conducts some amount of bias current regardless of input signal magnitude, it will drop voltage across its terminals due to bias current, thus "offsetting" the amount of signal voltage seen at the inverting terminal of the op-amp. If the other (noninverting) input is connected directly to ground as we have done here, this "offset" voltage incurred by voltage drop generated by bias current will cause the integrator circuit to slowly "integrate" as though it were receiving a very small input signal.

The "grounding" resistor is better known as a *compensating resistor*, because it acts to compensate for voltage errors created by bias current. Since the bias currents through each op-amp input terminal are approximately equal to each other, an equal amount of resistance placed in the path of each bias current will produce approximately the same voltage drop. Equal voltage drops seen at the complementary inputs of an op-amp cancel each other out, thus nulling the error otherwise induced by bias current.

Remove the jumper wire shorting past the compensating resistor and notice how the op-amp output returns to a relatively stable state. It may still drift some, most likely due to *bias voltage* error in the op-amp itself, but that is another subject altogether!

COMPUTER SIMULATION

Schematic with SPICE node numbers:



Netlist (make a text file containing the following text, verbatim):

```
DC integrator
vinput 1 0 dc 0.05
r1 1 2 1meg
c1 2 3 0.1u ic=0
e1 3 0 0 2 999k
.tran 1 30 uic
.plot tran v(1,0) v(3,0)
.end
```

6.7 555 audio oscillator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6 volt batteries
- One capacitor, 0.1 μF, non-polarized (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135)
- One 555 timer IC (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1723)
- Two light-emitting diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- One 1 MΩ resistor
- One 100 kΩ resistor
- Two 510 Ω resistors
- Audio detector with headphones
- Oscilloscope (recommended, but not necessary)

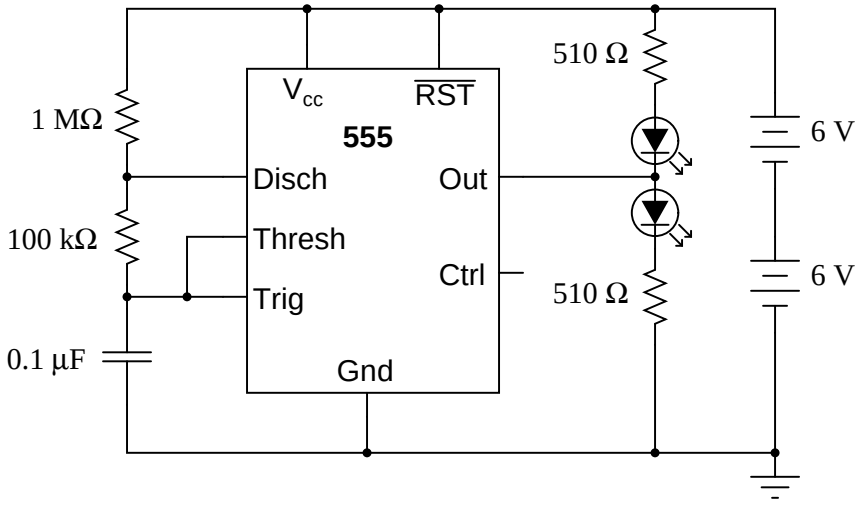
A oscilloscope would be useful in analyzing the waveforms produced by this circuit, but it is not essential. An audio detector is a very useful piece of test equipment for this experiment, especially if you don't have an oscilloscope.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 10: "Multivibrators"

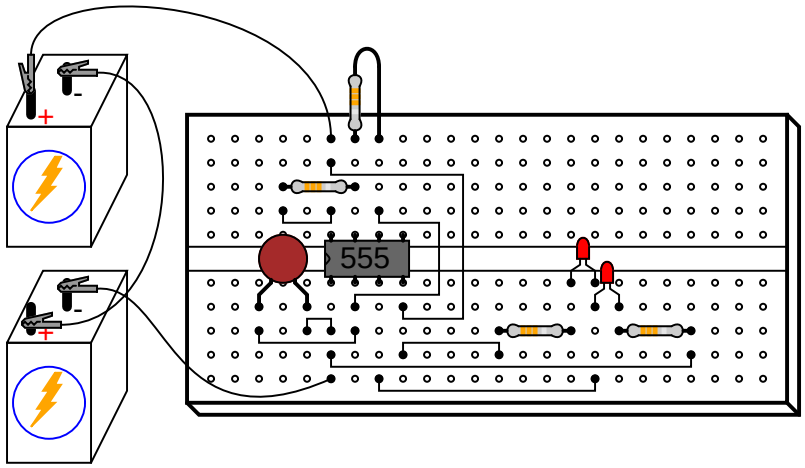
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use the 555 timer as an astable multivibrator
- Working knowledge of duty cycle

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The ”555” integrated circuit is a general-purpose timer useful for a variety of functions. In this experiment, we explore its use as an astable multivibrator, or oscillator. Connected to a capacitor and two resistors as shown, it will oscillate freely, driving the LEDs on and off with a square-wave output voltage.

This circuit works on the principle of alternately charging and discharging a capacitor. The 555 begins to discharge the capacitor by grounding the `Disch` terminal when the voltage detected by the `Thresh` terminal exceeds 2/3 the power supply voltage (V_{cc}). It stops discharging the capacitor when the voltage detected by the `Trig` terminal falls below 1/3 the power supply voltage. Thus, when both `Thresh` and `Trig` terminals are connected to the capacitor’s positive terminal, the capacitor voltage will cycle between 1/3 and 2/3 power supply voltage in a ”sawtooth” pattern.

During the charging cycle, the capacitor receives charging current through the series combination of the 1 MΩ and 100 kΩ resistors. As soon as the `Disch` terminal on the 555 timer goes to ground potential (a transistor inside the 555 connected between that terminal and ground turns on), the capacitor’s discharging current only has to go through the 100 kΩ resistor. The result is an RC time constant that is much longer for charging than for discharging, resulting in a charging time greatly exceeding the discharging time.

The 555’s `Out` terminal produces a square-wave voltage signal that is ”high” (nearly V_{cc}) when the capacitor is charging, and ”low” (nearly 0 volts) when the capacitor is discharging. This alternating high/low voltage signal drives the two LEDs in opposite modes: when one is on, the other will be off. Because the capacitor’s charging and discharging times are unequal, the ”high” and ”low” times of the output’s square-wave waveform will be unequal as well. This can be seen in the relative brightness of the two LEDs: one will be much brighter than the other, because it is on for a longer period of time during each cycle.

The equality or inequality between ”high” and ”low” times of a square wave is expressed as that wave’s *duty cycle*. A square wave with a 50% duty cycle is perfectly symmetrical: its ”high” time is precisely equal to its ”low” time. A square wave that is ”high” 10% of the time

and ”low” 90% of the time is said to have a 10% duty cycle. In this circuit, the output waveform has a ”high” time exceeding the ”low” time, resulting in a duty cycle greater than 50%.

Use the audio detector (or an oscilloscope) to investigate the different voltage waveforms produced by this circuit. Try different resistor values and/or capacitor values to see what effects they have on output frequency or charge/discharge times.

6.8 555 ramp generator

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Two 6 volt batteries
- One capacitor, 470 μF electrolytic, 35 WVDC (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1030 or equivalent)
- One capacitor, 0.1 μF, non-polarized (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135)
- One 555 timer IC (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1723)
- Two PNP transistors – models 2N2907 or 2N3906 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1604 is a package of fifteen PNP transistors ideal for this and other experiments)
- Two light-emitting diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- One 100 kΩ resistor
- One 47 kΩ resistor
- Two 510 Ω resistors
- Audio detector with headphones

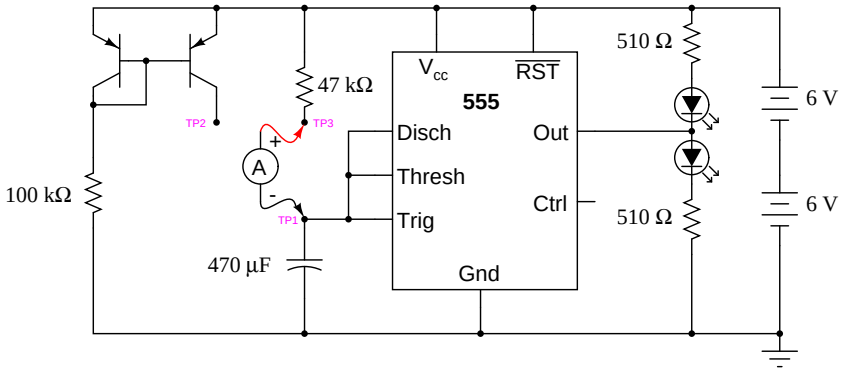
The voltage rating on the 470 μF capacitor is not critical, so long as it generously exceeds the maximum power supply voltage. In this particular circuit, that maximum voltage is 12 volts. Be sure you connect this capacitor in the circuit properly, respecting polarity!

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 1, chapter 13: ”Capacitors”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 10: ”Multivibrators”

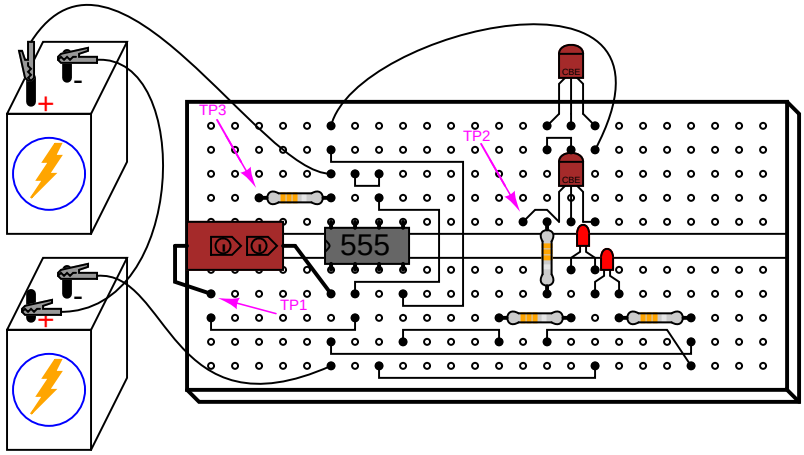
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use the 555 timer as an astable multivibrator
- A practical use for a current mirror circuit
- Understanding the relationship between capacitor current and capacitor voltage rate-of-change

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

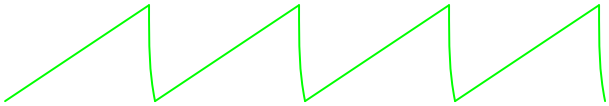
Again, we are using a 555 timer IC as an astable multivibrator, or oscillator. This time, however, we will compare its operation in two different capacitor-charging modes: traditional RC and constant-current.

Connecting test point #1 (TP1) to test point #3 (TP3) using a jumper wire. This allows the capacitor to charge through a 47 kΩ resistor. When the capacitor has reached 2/3 supply voltage, the 555 timer switches to ”discharge” mode and discharges the capacitor to a level of 1/3 supply voltage almost immediately. The charging cycle begins again at this point. Measure voltage directly across the capacitor with a voltmeter (a digital voltmeter is preferred), and note the rate of capacitor charging over time. It should rise quickly at first, then taper off as it builds up to 2/3 supply voltage, just as you would expect from an RC charging circuit.

Remove the jumper wire from TP3, and re-connect it to TP2. This allows the capacitor to be charged through the controlled-current leg of a current mirror circuit formed by the two PNP transistors. Measure voltage directly across the capacitor again, noting the difference in charging rate over time as compared to the last circuit configuration.

By connecting TP1 to TP2, the capacitor receives a nearly constant charging current. Constant capacitor charging current yields a voltage curve that is linear, as described by the equation i = C(de/dt). If the capacitor's current is constant, so will be its rate-of-change of voltage over time. The result is a "ramp" waveform rather than a "sawtooth" waveform:

Sawtooth waveform (RC circuit)



Ramp waveform (constant current)

The capacitor's charging current may be directly measured by substituting an ammeter in place of the jumper wire. The ammeter will need to be set to measure a current in the range of hundreds of microamps (tenths of a milliamp). Connected between TP1 and TP3, you should see a current that starts at a relatively high value at the beginning of the charging cycle, and tapers off toward the end. Connected between TP1 and TP2, however, the current will be much more stable.

It is an interesting experiment at this point to change the temperature of either current mirror transistor by touching it with your finger. As the transistor warms, it will conduct more collector current for the same base-emitter voltage. If the *controlling* transistor (the one connected to the 100 kΩ resistor) is touched, the current decreases. If the *controlled* transistor is touched, the current increases. For the most stable current mirror operation, the two transistors should be cemented together so that their temperatures never differ by any substantial amount.

This circuit works just as well at high frequencies as it does at low frequencies. Replace the 470 μF capacitor with a 0.1 μF capacitor, and use an audio detector to sense the voltage waveform at the 555's output terminal. The detector should produce an audio tone that is easy to hear. The capacitor's voltage will now be changing much too fast to view with a voltmeter in the DC mode, but we can still measure capacitor current with an ammeter.

With the ammeter connected between TP1 and TP3 (RC mode), measure both DC microamps and AC microamps. Record these current figures on paper. Now, connect the ammeter between TP1 and TP2 (constant-current mode). Measure both DC microamps and AC microamps, noting any differences in current readings between this circuit configuration and the last one. Measuring AC current in addition to DC current is an easy way to determine which circuit configuration gives the most stable charging current. If the current mirror circuit were perfect – the capacitor charging current absolutely constant – there would be zero AC current measured by the meter.

6.9 PWM power controller

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Four 6 volt batteries
- One capacitor, 100 μF electrolytic, 35 WVDC (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1028 or equivalent)
- One capacitor, 0.1 μF, non-polarized (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135)
- One 555 timer IC (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1723)
- Dual operational amplifier, model 1458 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-038)
- One NPN power transistor – (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2041 or equivalent)
- Three 1N4001 rectifying diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1101)
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)
- One 33 kΩ resistor
- 12 volt automotive tail-light lamp
- Audio detector with headphones

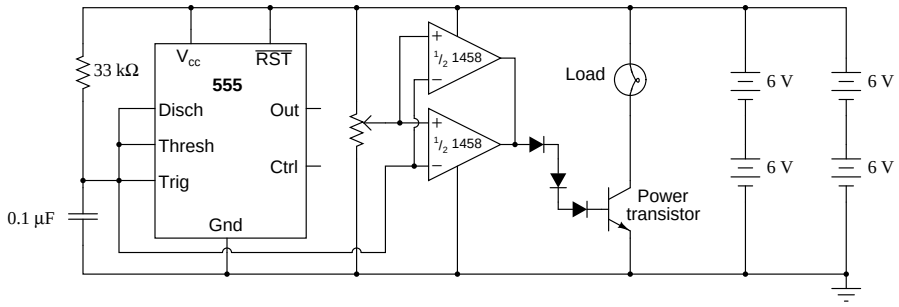
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: ”Operational Amplifiers”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 2, chapter 7: ”Mixed-Frequency AC Signals”

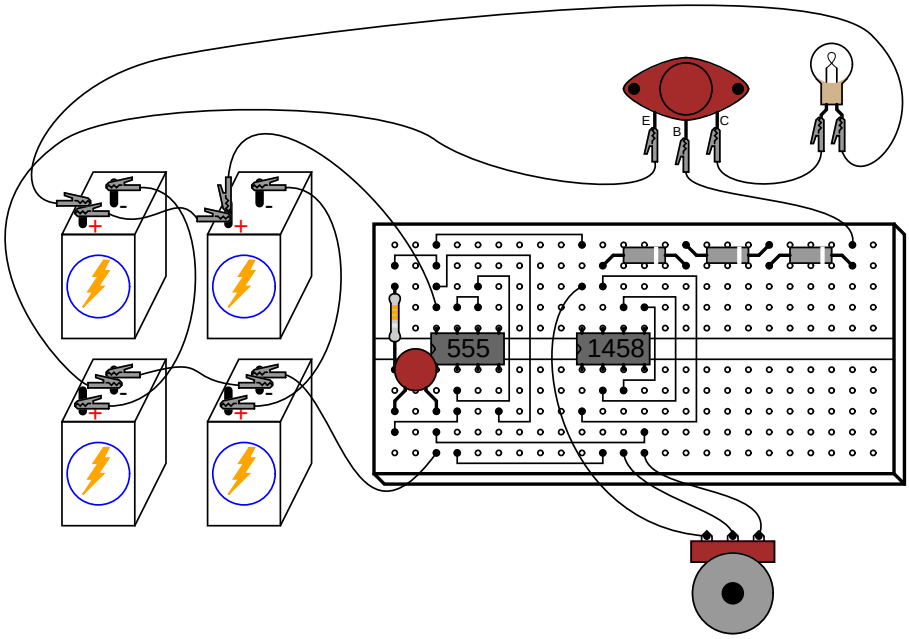
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use the 555 timer as an astable multivibrator
- How to use an op-amp as a comparator
- How to use diodes to drop unwanted DC voltage
- How to control power to a load by pulse-width modulation

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

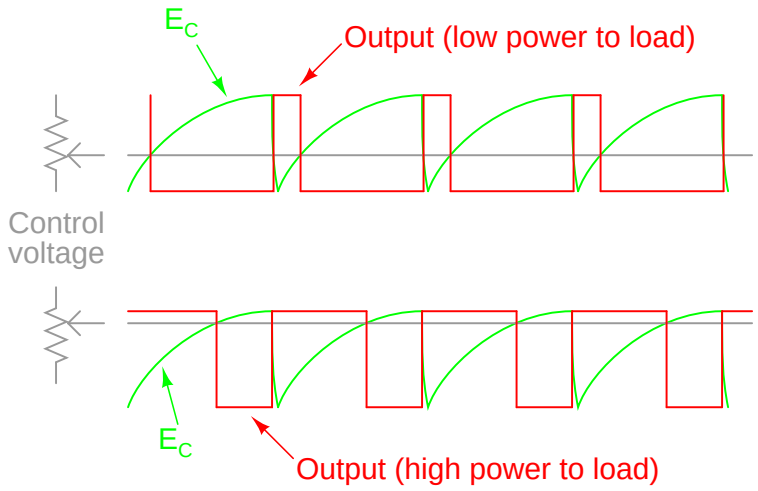


ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This circuit uses a 555 timer to generate a sawtooth voltage waveform across a capacitor, then compares that signal against a steady voltage provided by a potentiometer, using an op-amp as a comparator. The comparison of these two voltage signals produces a square-wave output from the op-amp, varying in duty cycle according to the potentiometer's position. This variable duty cycle signal then drives the base of a power transistor, switching current on and off through the load. The 555's oscillation frequency is much higher than the lamp filament's ability to thermally cycle (heat and cool), so any variation in duty cycle, or *pulse width*, has the effect of controlling the total power dissipated by the load over time.



Controlling electrical power through a load by means of quickly switching it on and off, and varying the ”on” time, is known as *pulse-width modulation*, or *PWM*. It is a very efficient means of controlling electrical power because the controlling element (the power transistor) dissipates comparatively little power in switching on and off, especially if compared to the wasted power dissipated of a rheostat in a similar situation. When the transistor is in cutoff, its power dissipation is zero because there is no current through it. When the transistor is saturated, its dissipation is very low because there is little voltage dropped between collector and emitter while it is conducting current.

PWM is a concept easier understood through experimentation than reading. It would be nice to view the capacitor voltage, potentiometer voltage, and op-amp output waveforms all on one (triple-trace) oscilloscope to see how they relate to one another, and to the load power. However, most of us have no access to a triple-trace oscilloscope, much less any oscilloscope at all, so an alternative method is to slow the 555 oscillator down enough that the three voltages may be compared with a simple DC voltmeter. Replace the 0.1 μF capacitor with one that is 100 μF or larger. This will slow the oscillation frequency down by a factor of at least a thousand, enabling you to measure the capacitor voltage *slowly* rise over time, and the op-amp output transition from ”high” to ”low” when the capacitor voltage becomes greater than the potentiometer voltage. With such a slow oscillation frequency, the load power will not be proportioned as before. Rather, the lamp will turn on and off at regular intervals. Feel free to experiment with other capacitor or resistor values to speed up the oscillations enough so the lamp never fully turns on or off, but is ”throttled” by quick on-and-off pulsing of the transistor.

When you examine the schematic, you will notice *two* operational amplifiers connected in parallel. This is done to provide maximum current output to the base terminal of the power transistor. A single op-amp (one-half of a 1458 IC) may not be able to provide sufficient output current to drive the transistor into saturation, so two op-amps are used in tandem. This should only be done if the op-amps in question are overload-protected, which the 1458 series of op-amps are. Otherwise, it is possible (though unlikely) that one op-amp could turn on before the other, and damage result from the two outputs short-circuiting each other (one driving ”high” and the other driving ”low” simultaneously). The inherent short-circuit protection offered by the 1458 allows for direct driving of the power transistor base without any need for a current-

limiting resistor.

The three diodes in series connecting the op-amps' outputs to the transistor's base are there to drop voltage and ensure the transistor falls into cutoff when the op-amp outputs go "low." Because the 1458 op-amp cannot swing its output voltage all the way down to ground potential, but only to within about 2 volts of ground, a direct connection from the op-amp to the transistor would mean the transistor would never fully turn off. Adding three silicon diodes in series drops approximately 2.1 volts (0.7 volts times 3) to ensure there is minimal voltage at the transistor's base when the op-amp outputs go "low."

It is interesting to listen to the op-amp output signal through an audio detector as the potentiometer is adjusted through its full range of motion. Adjusting the potentiometer has no effect on signal frequency, but it greatly affects duty cycle. Note the difference in tone quality, or *timbre*, as the potentiometer varies the duty cycle from 0% to 50% to 100%. Varying the duty cycle has the effect of changing the harmonic content of the waveform, which makes the tone sound different.

You might notice a particular uniqueness to the sound heard through the detector headphones when the potentiometer is in center position (50% duty cycle – 50% load power), versus a kind of similarity in sound just above or below 50% duty cycle. This is due to the absence or presence of even-numbered harmonics. Any waveform that is symmetrical above and below its centerline, such as a square wave with a 50% duty cycle, contains *no* even-numbered harmonics, only odd-numbered. If the duty cycle is below or above 50%, the waveform will *not* exhibit this symmetry, and there will be even-numbered harmonics. The presence of these even-numbered harmonic frequencies can be detected by the human ear, as some of them correspond to *octaves* of the fundamental frequency and thus "fit" more naturally into the tone scheme.

6.10 Class B audio amplifier

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- Four 6 volt batteries
- Dual operational amplifier, model TL082 recommended (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1715)
- One NPN power transistor in a TO-220 package – (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2020 or equivalent)
- One PNP power transistor in a TO-220 package – (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2027 or equivalent)
- One 1N914 switching diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1620)
- One capacitor, 47 μF electrolytic, 35 WVDC (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1015 or equivalent)
- Two capacitors, 0.22 μF, non-polarized (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1070)
- One 10 kΩ potentiometer, linear taper (Radio Shack catalog # 271-1715)

Be sure to use an op-amp that has a high *slew rate*. Avoid the LM741 or LM1458 for this reason.

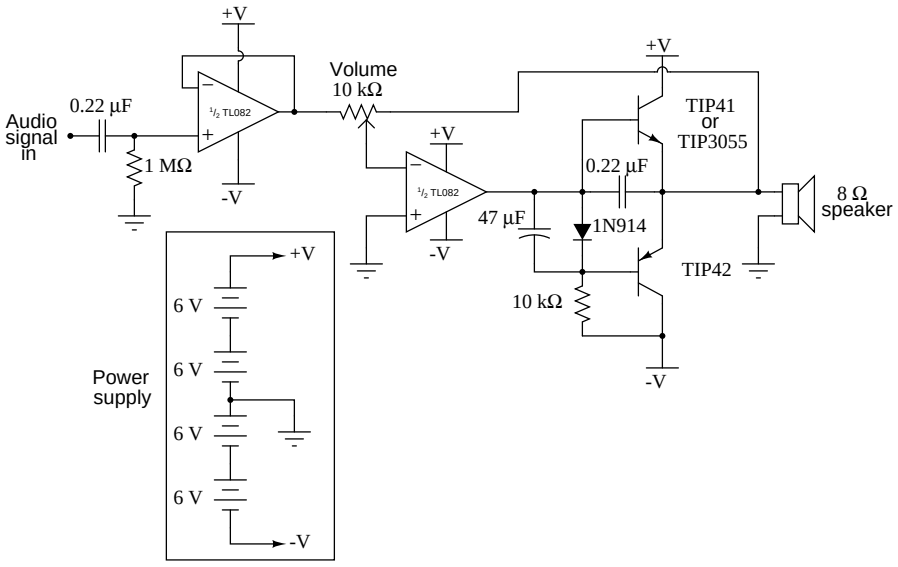
The closer matched the two transistors are, the better. If possible, try to obtain TIP41 and TIP42 transistors, which are closely matched NPN and PNP power transistors with dissipation ratings of 65 watts each. If you cannot get a TIP41 NPN transistor, the TIP3055 (available from Radio Shack) is a good substitute. Do not use very large (i.e. TO-3 case) power transistors, as the op-amp may have trouble driving enough current to their bases for good operation.

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 4: ”Bipolar Junction Transistors”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: ”Operational Amplifiers”

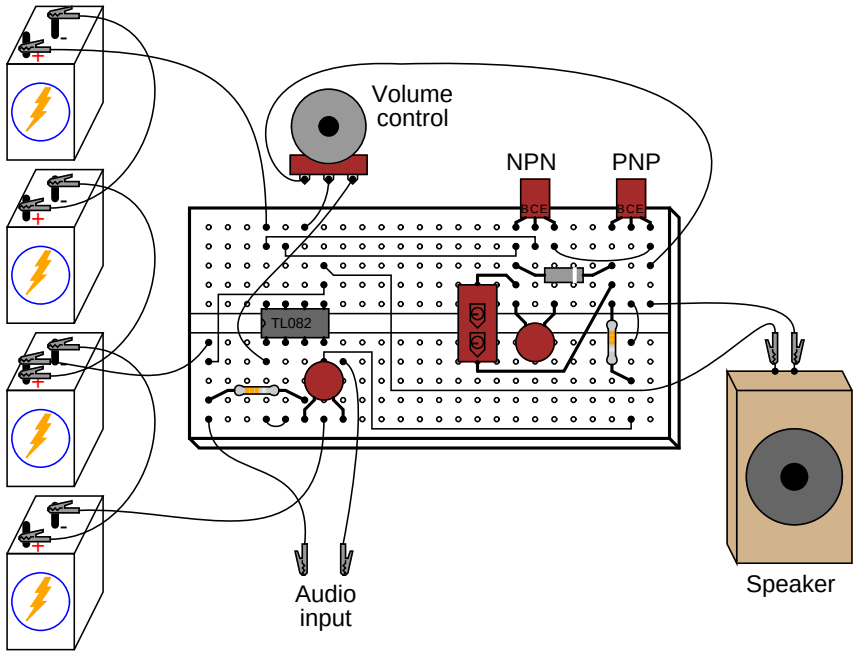
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to build a ”push-pull” class B amplifier using complementary bipolar transistors
- The effects of ”crossover distortion” in a push-pull amplifier circuit
- Using negative feedback via an op-amp to correct circuit nonlinearities

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



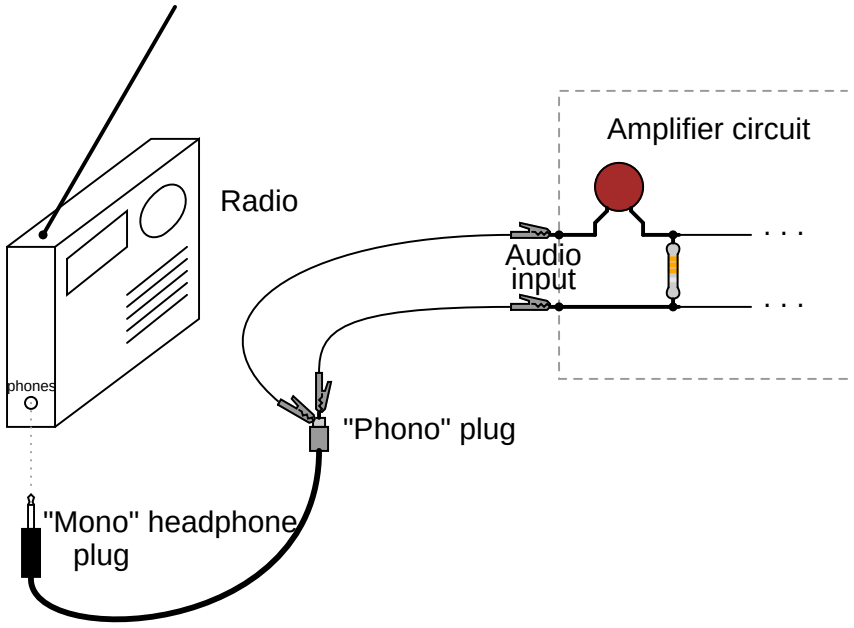
ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This project is an audio amplifier suitable for amplifying the output signal from a small radio, tape player, CD player, or any other source of audio signals. For stereo operation, two

identical amplifiers must be built, one for the left channel and other for the right channel. To obtain an input signal for this amplifier to amplify, just connect it to the output of a radio or other audio device like this:



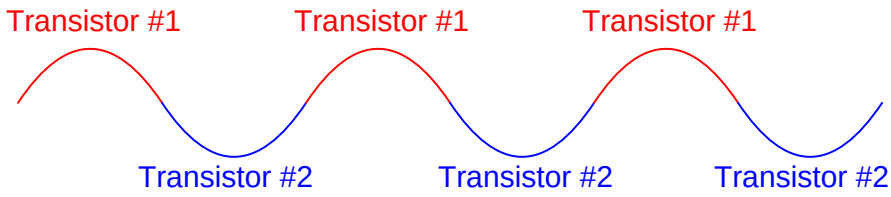
This amplifier circuit also works well in amplifying ”line-level” audio signals from high-quality, modular stereo components. It provides a surprising amount of sound power when played through a large speaker, and may be run without heat sinks on the transistors (though you should experiment with it a bit before deciding to forego heat sinks, as the power dissipation varies according to the type of speaker used).

The goal of any amplifier circuit is to reproduce the input waveshape as accurately as possible. Perfect reproduction is impossible, of course, and any differences between the output and input waveshapes is known as *distortion*. In an audio amplifier, distortion may cause unpleasant tones to be superimposed on the true sound. There are many different configurations of audio amplifier circuitry, each with its own advantages and disadvantages. This particular circuit is called a ”class B,” *push-pull* circuit.

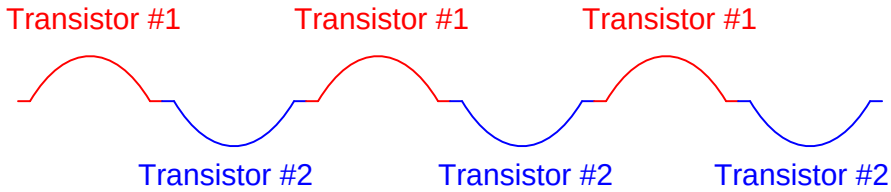
Most audio ”power” amplifiers use a class B configuration, where one transistor provides power to the load during one-half of the waveform cycle (it *pushes*) and a second transistor provides power to the load for the other half of the cycle (it *pulls*). In this scheme, neither transistor remains ”on” for the entire cycle, giving each one a time to ”rest” and cool during the waveform cycle. This makes for a power-efficient amplifier circuit, but leads to a distinct type of nonlinearity known as ”crossover distortion.”

Shown here is a sine-wave shape, equivalent to a constant audio tone of constant volume:

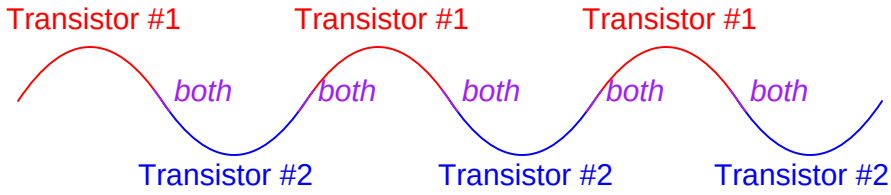
In a push-pull amplifier circuit, the two transistors take turns amplifying the alternate half-cycles of the waveform like this:



If the "hand-off" between the two transistors is not precisely synchronized, though, the amplifier's output waveform may look something like this instead of a pure sine wave:



Here, distortion results from the fact that there is a delay between the time one transistor turns off and the other transistor turns on. This type of distortion, where the waveform "flattens" at the crossover point between positive and negative half-cycles, is called *crossover distortion*. One common method of mitigating crossover distortion is to bias the transistors so that their turn-on/turn-off points actually overlap, so that *both* transistors are in a state of conduction for a brief moment during the crossover period:

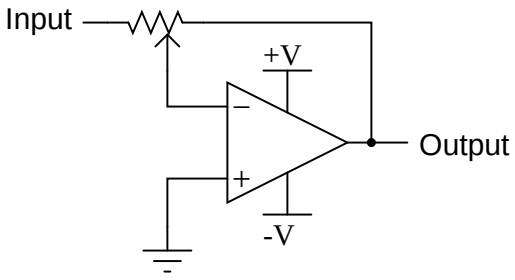


This form of amplification is technically known as class *AB* rather than class B, because each transistor is "on" for more than 50% of the time during a complete waveform cycle. The disadvantage to doing this, though, is increased power consumption of the amplifier circuit, because during the moments of time where both transistors are conducting, there is current conducted through the transistors that is *not* going through the load, but is merely being "shorted" from one power supply rail to the other (from -V to +V). Not only is this a waste of energy, but it dissipates more heat energy in the transistors. When transistors increase in temperature, their characteristics change (V_{be} forward voltage drop, β, junction resistances, etc.), making proper biasing difficult.

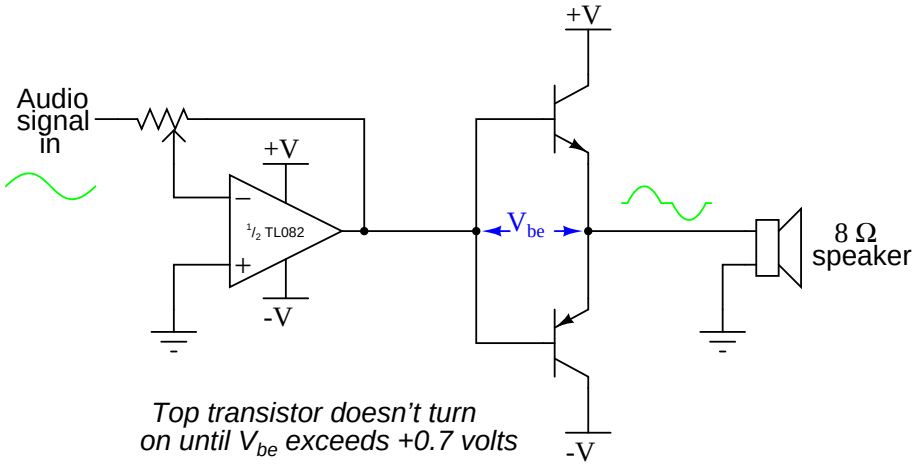
In this experiment, the transistors operate in pure class B mode. That is, they are never conducting at the same time. This saves energy and decreases heat dissipation, but lends itself to crossover distortion. The solution taken in this circuit is to use an op-amp with negative feedback to quickly drive the transistors through the "dead" zone producing crossover distortion and reduce the amount of "flattening" of the waveform during crossover.

The first (leftmost) op-amp shown in the schematic diagram is nothing more than a buffer. A buffer helps to reduce the loading of the input capacitor/resistor network, which has been placed in the circuit to filter out any DC bias voltage out of the input signal, preventing any DC voltage from becoming amplified by the circuit and sent to the speaker where it might cause damage. Without the buffer op-amp, the capacitor/resistor filtering circuit reduces the low-frequency (”bass”) response of the amplifier, and accentuates the high-frequency (”treble”).

The second op-amp functions as an inverting amplifier whose gain is controlled by the 10 kΩ potentiometer. This does nothing more than provide a volume control for the amplifier. Usually, inverting op-amp circuits have their feedback resistor(s) connected directly from the op-amp output terminal to the inverting input terminal like this:



If we were to use the resulting output signal to drive the base terminals of the push-pull transistor pair, though, we would experience significant crossover distortion, because there would be a ”dead” zone in the transistors’ operation as the base voltage went from + 0.7 volts to - 0.7 volts:

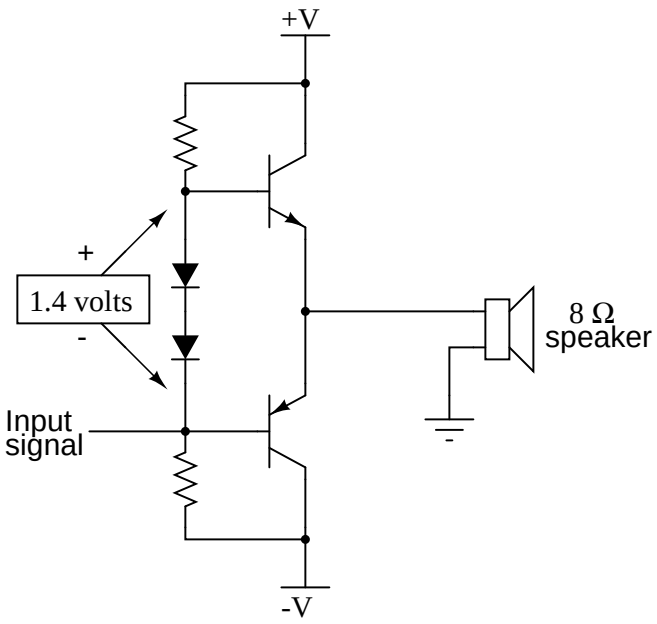


Top transistor doesn’t turn on until V_{be} exceeds +0.7 volts

Bottom transistor doesn’t turn on until V_{be} drops below -0.7 volts

If you have already constructed the amplifier circuit in its final form, you may simplify it to this form and listen to the difference in sound quality. If you have not yet begun construction of the circuit, the schematic diagram shown above would be a good starting point. It will amplify an audio signal, but it will sound horrible!

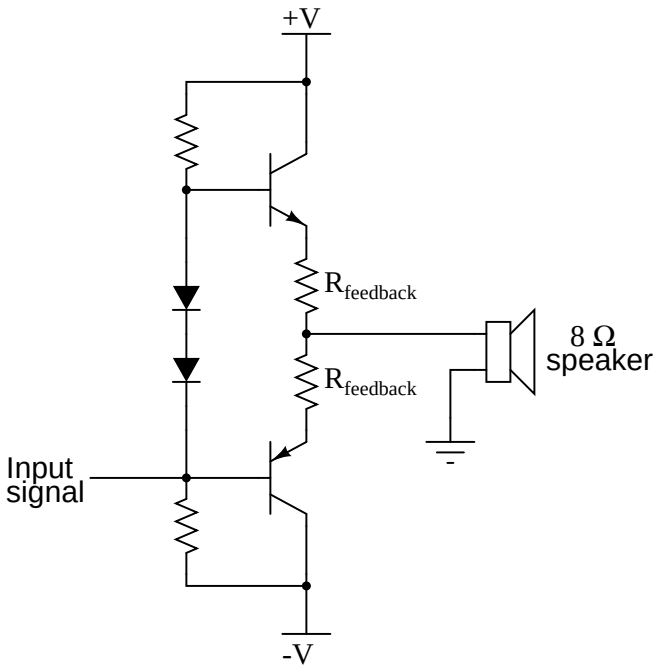
The reason for the crossover distortion is that when the op-amp output signal is between + 0.7 volts and - 0.7 volts, neither transistor will be conducting, and the output voltage to the speaker will be 0 volts for the entire 1.4 volts span of base voltage swing. Thus, there is a "zone" in the input signal range where no change in speaker output voltage will occur. Here is where intricate biasing techniques are usually introduced to the circuit to reduce this 1.4 volt "gap" in transistor input signal response. Usually, something like this is done:



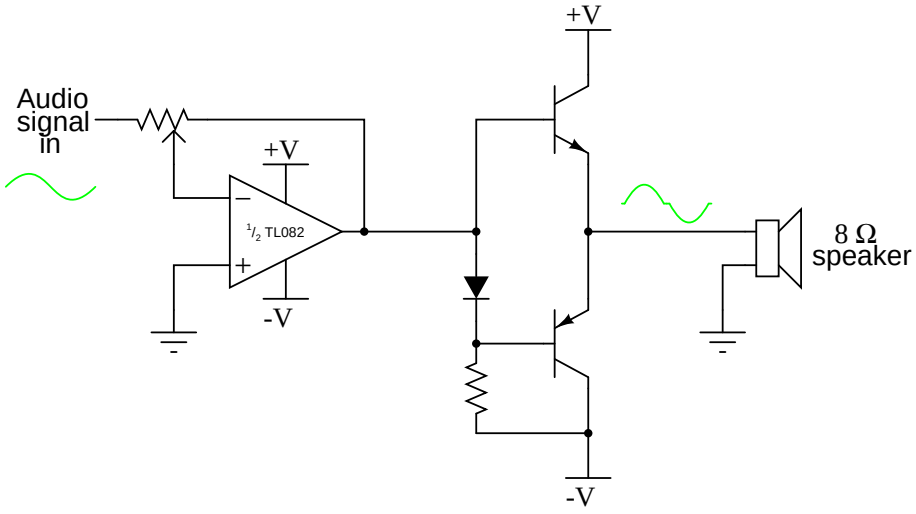
The two series-connected diodes will drop approximately 1.4 volts, equivalent to the combined V_{be} forward voltage drops of the two transistors, resulting in a scenario where each transistor is just on the verge of turning on when the input signal is zero volts, eliminating the 1.4 volt "dead" signal zone that existed before.

Unfortunately, though, this solution is not perfect: as the transistors heat up from conducting power to the load, their V_{be} forward voltage drops will decrease from 0.7 volts to something less, such as 0.6 volts or 0.5 volts. The diodes, which are not subject to the same heating effect because they do not conduct any substantial current, will not experience the same change in forward voltage drop. Thus, the diodes will continue to provide the same 1.4 volt bias voltage even though the transistors require less bias voltage due to heating. The result will be that the circuit drifts into class AB operation, where *both* transistors will be in a state of conduction part of the time. This, of course, will result in more heat dissipation through the transistors, exacerbating the problem of forward voltage drop change.

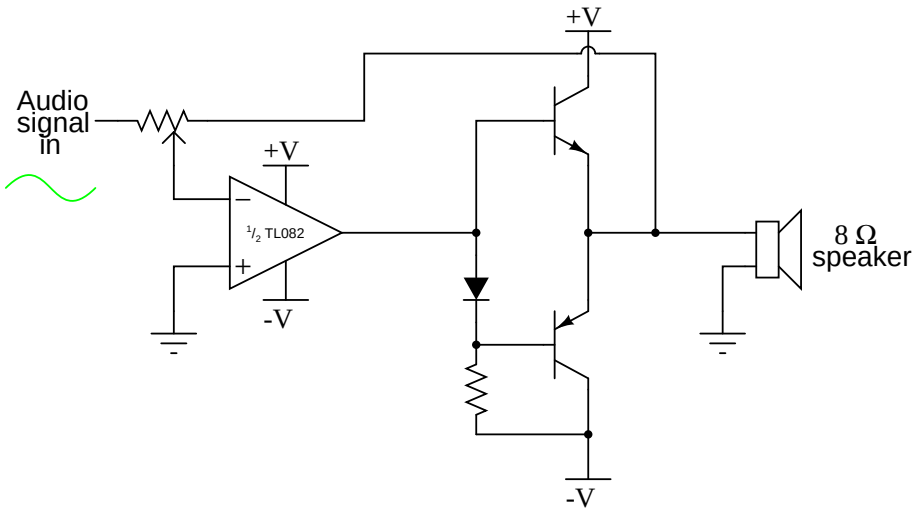
A common solution to this problem is the insertion of temperature-compensation "feedback" resistors in the emitter legs of the push-pull transistor circuit:



This solution doesn't prevent simultaneous turn-on of the two transistors, but merely reduces the severity of the problem and prevents thermal runaway. It also has the unfortunate effect of inserting resistance in the load current path, limiting the output current of the amplifier. The solution I opted for in this experiment is one that capitalizes on the principle of op-amp negative feedback to overcome the inherent limitations of the push-pull transistor output circuit. I use one diode to provide a 0.7 volt bias voltage for the push-pull pair. This is not enough to eliminate the "dead" signal zone, but it reduces it by at least 50%:

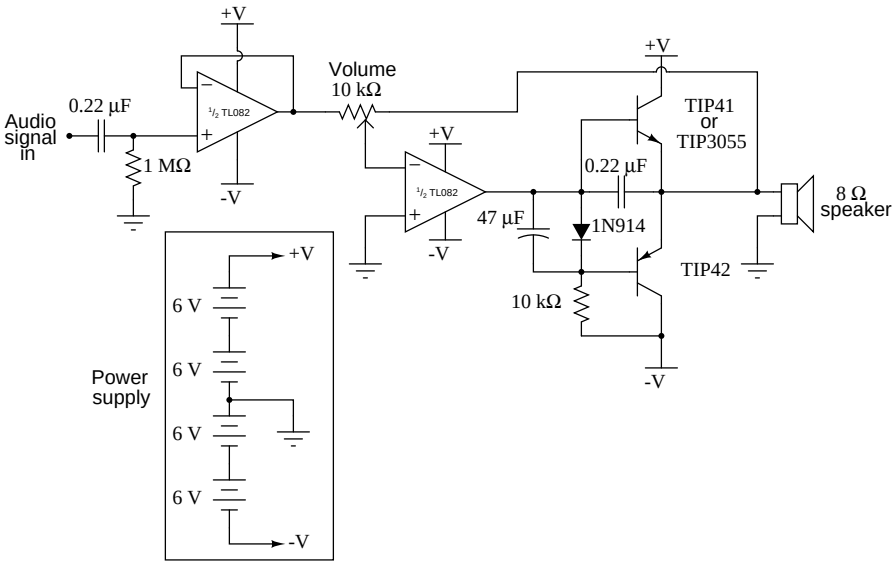


Since the voltage drop of a single diode will always be less than the combined voltage drops of the two transistors' base-emitter junctions, the transistors can never turn on simultaneously, thereby preventing class AB operation. Next, to help get rid of the remaining crossover distortion, the feedback signal of the op-amp is taken from the output terminal of the amplifier (the transistors' emitter terminals) like this:



The op-amp's function is to output whatever voltage signal it has to in order to keep its two input terminals at the same voltage (0 volts differential). By connecting the feedback wire to the emitter terminals of the push-pull transistors, the op-amp has the ability to sense any "dead" zone where neither transistor is conducting, and output an appropriate voltage signal to the bases of the transistors to quickly drive them into conduction again to "keep up" with the input signal waveform. This requires an op-amp with a high *slew rate* (the ability to produce a fast-rising or fast-falling output voltage), which is why the TL082 op-amp was specified for this circuit. Slower op-amps such as the LM741 or LM1458 may not be able to keep up with the high dv/dt (voltage rate-of-change over time, also known as de/dt) necessary for low-distortion operation.

Only a couple of capacitors are added to this circuit to bring it into its final form: a 47 μF capacitor connected in parallel with the diode helps to keep the 0.7 volt bias voltage constant despite large voltage swings in the op-amp's output, while a 0.22 μF capacitor connected between the base and emitter of the NPN transistor helps reduce crossover distortion at low volume settings:


+V
Volume
10 kΩ
+V
TIP41
or
TIP3055
Audio
signal
in
0.22 µF
1 MΩ
½ TL082
-V
+V
½ TL082
-V
0.22 µF
47 µF
1N914
8 Ω
speaker
TIP42
10 kΩ
-V
+V
6 V
6 V
6 V
6 V
-V
Power
supply

Chapter 7

DIGITAL INTEGRATED CIRCUITS

Contents

7.1 Introduction

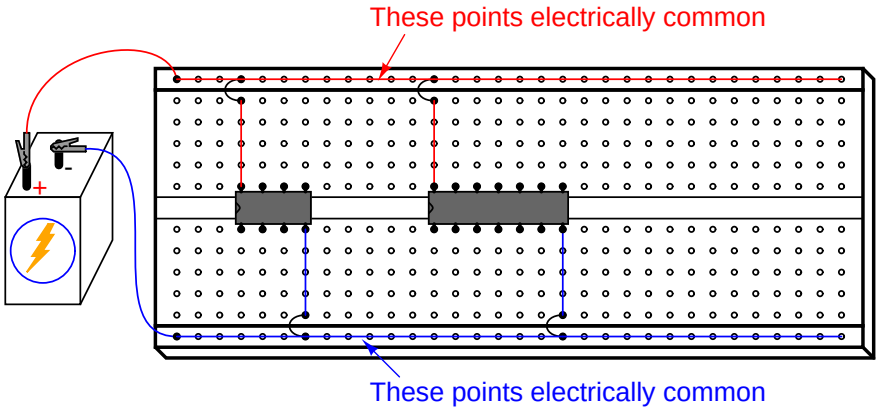
Digital circuits are circuits dealing with signals restricted to the extreme limits of zero and some full amount. This stands in contrast to *analog* circuits, in which signals are free to vary continuously between the limits imposed by power supply voltage and circuit resistances. These circuits find use in ”true/false” logical operations and digital computation.

The circuits in this chapter make use of *IC*, or *integrated circuit*, components. Such components are actually networks of interconnected components manufactured on a single wafer of semiconducting material. Integrated circuits providing a multitude of pre-engineered functions are available at very low cost, benefitting students, hobbyists and professional circuit designers alike. Most integrated circuits provide the same functionality as ”discrete” semiconductor circuits at higher levels of reliability and at a fraction of the cost.

Circuits in this chapter will primarily use *CMOS* technology, as this form of IC design allows for a broad range of power supply voltage while maintaining generally low power consumption levels. Though CMOS circuitry is susceptible to damage from static electricity (high voltages will puncture the insulating barriers in the MOSFET transistors), modern CMOS ICs are far more tolerant of electrostatic discharge than the CMOS ICs of the past, reducing the risk of chip failure by mishandling. Proper handling of CMOS involves the use of anti-static foam for storage and transport of IC's, and measures to prevent static charge from building up on your body (use of a grounding wrist strap, or frequently touching a grounded object).

Circuits using *TTL* technology require a regulated power supply voltage of 5 volts, and will not tolerate any substantial deviation from this voltage level. Any TTL circuits in this chapter will be adequately labeled as such, and it will be expected that you realize its unique power supply requirements.

When building digital circuits using integrated circuit "chips," it is highly recommended that you use a breadboard with power supply "rail" connections along the length. These are sets of holes in the breadboard that are electrically common along the entire length of the board. Connect one to the positive terminal of a battery, and the other to the negative terminal, and DC power will be available to any area of the breadboard via connection through short jumper wires:



With so many of these integrated circuits having "reset," "enable," and "disable" terminals needing to be maintained in a "high" or "low" state, not to mention the V_{DD} (or V_{CC}) and ground power terminals which require connection to the power supply, having both terminals of the power supply readily available for connection at any point along the board's length is very useful.

Most breadboards that I have seen have these power supply "rail" holes, but some do not. Up until this point, I've been illustrating circuits using a breadboard lacking this feature, just to show how it isn't absolutely necessary. However, digital circuits seem to require more connections to the power supply than other types of breadboard circuits, making this feature more than just a convenience.

7.2 Basic gate function

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 4011 quad NAND gate (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2411)
- Eight-position DIP switch (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1301)
- Ten-segment bargraph LED (Radio Shack catalog # 276-081)
- One 6 volt battery
- Two 10 kΩ resistors
- Three 470 Ω resistors

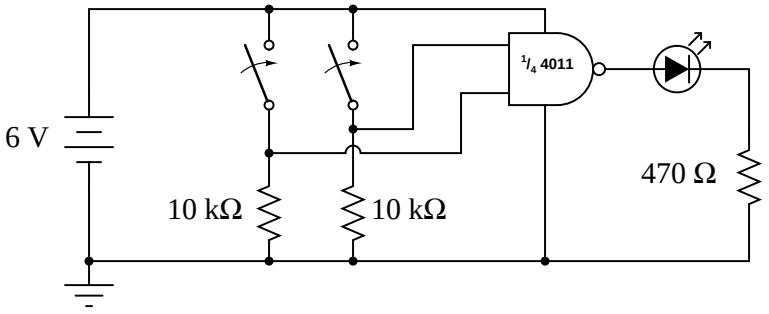
Caution! The 4011 IC is CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 3: ”Logic Gates”

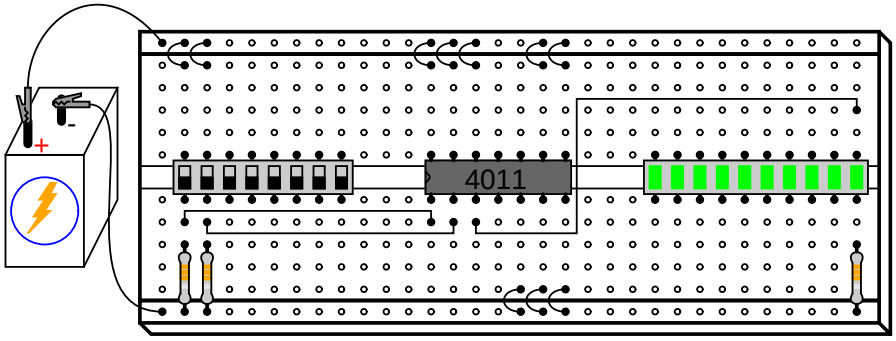
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Purpose of a ”pulldown” resistor
- How to experimentally determine the truth table of a gate
- How to connect logic gates together
- How to create different logical functions by using NAND gates

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION

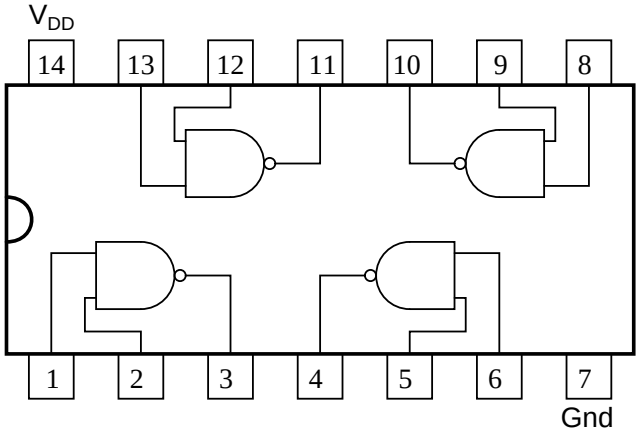


INSTRUCTIONS

To begin, connect a single NAND gate to two input switches and one LED, as shown. At first, the use of an 8-position switch and a 10-segment LED bargraph may seem excessive, since only two switches and one LED are needed to show the operation of a single NAND gate. However, the presence of those extra switches and LEDs make it very convenient to expand the circuit, and help make the circuit layout both clean and compact.

It is highly recommended that you have a datasheet for the 4011 chip available when you build your circuit. Don't just follow the illustration shown above! It is important that you develop the skill of reading datasheets, especially "pinout" diagrams, when connecting IC terminals to other circuit elements. The datasheet's connection diagram is an essential piece of information to have. Shown here is my own rendition of what any 4011 datasheet shows:

"Pinout," or "connection" diagram for the 4011 quad NAND gate



In the breadboard illustration, I've shown the circuit built using the lower-left NAND gate: pin #'s 1 and 2 are the inputs, and pin #3 is the output. Pin #'s 14 and 7 conduct DC power to all four gate circuits inside the IC chip, "V_{DD}" representing the positive side of the power supply (+V), and "Gnd" representing the negative side of the power supply (-V), or ground. Sometimes the negative power supply terminal will be labeled "V_{SS}" instead of "Gnd" on a datasheet, but it means the same thing.

Digital logic circuitry does not make use of split power supplies as op-amps do. Like op-amp circuits, though, ground is still the implicit point of reference for all voltage measurements. If I were to speak of a "high" signal being present on a certain pin of the chip, I would mean that there was full voltage between that pin and the negative side of the power supply (ground).

Note how all inputs of the unused gates inside the 4011 chip are connected either to V_{DD} or ground. This is not a mistake, but an act of intentional design. Since the 4011 is a CMOS integrated circuit, and CMOS circuit inputs left unconnected (*floating*) can assume any voltage level merely from intercepting a static electric charge from a nearby object, leaving inputs floating means that those unused gates may receive any random combinations of "high" and "low" signals.

Why is this undesirable, if we aren't using those gates? Who cares what signals they receive, if we are not doing anything with their outputs? The problem is, if static voltage signals appear at the gate inputs that are not fully "high" or fully "low," the gates' internal transistors may begin to turn on in such a way as to draw excessive current. At worst, this could lead to damage of the chip. At best it means excessive power consumption. It matters little if we choose to connect these unused gate inputs "high" (V_{DD}) or "low" (ground), so long as we connect them to one of those two places. In the breadboard illustration, I show all the top inputs connected to V_{DD}, and all the bottom inputs (of the unused gates) connected to ground. This was done merely because those power supply rail holes were closer and did not require long jumper wires!

Please note that none of the unused gate *outputs* have been connected to V_{DD} or ground, and for good reason! If I were to do that, I may be forcing a gate to assume the opposite output state that its trying to achieve, which is a complicated way of saying that I would have created a short-circuit. Imagine a gate that is supposed to output a "high" logic level (for a NAND gate, this would be true if any of its inputs were "low"). If such a gate were to have its output terminal directly connected to ground, it could never reach a "high" state (being made electrically common to ground through the jumper wire connection). Instead, its upper (P-channel) output transistor would be turned on in vain, sourcing maximum current to a nonexistent load. This would very likely damage the gate! Gate output terminals, by their very nature, generate their own logic levels and never "float" in the same way that CMOS gate inputs do.

The two 10 kΩ resistors are placed in the circuit to avoid floating input conditions on the used gate. With a switch closed, the respective input will be directly connected to V_{DD} and therefore be "high." With a switch open, the 10 kΩ "*pulldown*" resistor provides a resistive connection to ground, ensuring a secure "low" state at the gate's input terminal. This way, the input will not be susceptible to stray static voltages.

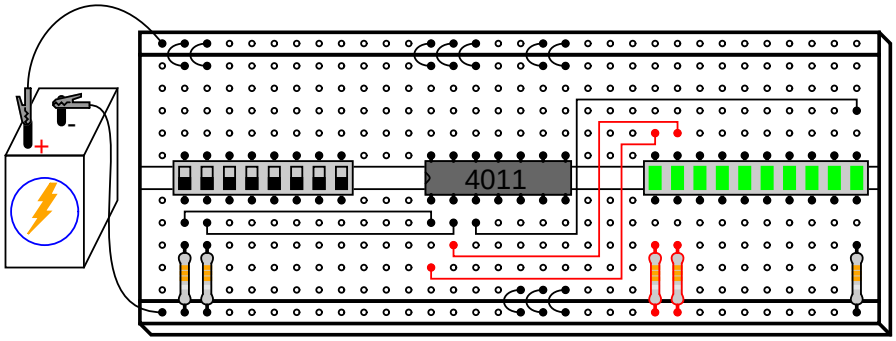
With the NAND gate connected to the two switches and one LED as shown, you are ready to develop a "truth table" for the NAND gate. Even if you already know what a NAND gate truth table looks like, this is a good exercise in experimentation: discovering a circuit's behavioral principles by induction. Draw a truth table on a piece of paper like this:

A	B	Output
0	0	
0	1	
1	0	
1	1	

The "A" and "B" columns represent the two input switches, respectively. When the switch is on, its state is "high" or 1. When the switch is off, its state is "low," or 0, as ensured by its pulldown resistor. The gate's output, of course, is represented by the LED: whether it is lit (1) or unlit (0). After placing the switches in every possible combination of states and recording the LED's status, compare the resulting truth table with what a NAND gate's truth table should be.

As you can imagine, this breadboard circuit is not limited to testing NAND gates. Any gate type may be tested with two switches, two pulldown resistors, and an LED to indicate output status. Just be sure to double-check the chip's "pinout" diagram before substituting it pin-for-pin in place of the 4011. Not all "quad" gate chips have the same pin assignments!

An improvement you might want to make to this circuit is to assign a couple of LEDs to indicate input status, in addition to the one LED assigned to indicate the output. This makes operation a little more interesting to observe, and has the further benefit of indicating if a switch fails to close (or open) by showing the *true* input signal to the gate, rather than forcing you to infer input status from switch position:



7.3 NOR gate S-R latch

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 4001 quad NOR gate (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2401)
- Eight-position DIP switch (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1301)
- Ten-segment bargraph LED (Radio Shack catalog # 276-081)
- One 6 volt battery
- Two 10 kΩ resistors
- Two 470 Ω resistors
- Two 100 Ω resistors

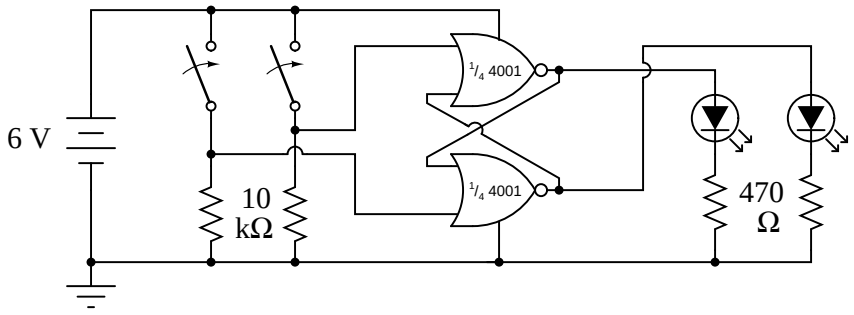
Caution! The 4001 IC is CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 3: ”Logic Gates”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 10: ”Multivibrators”

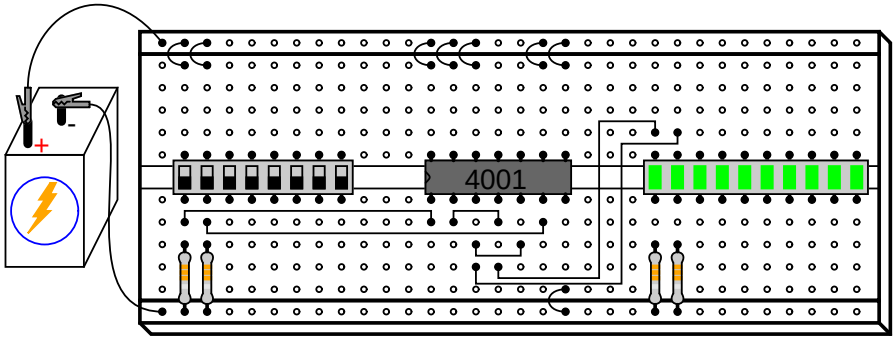
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- The effects of positive feedback in a digital circuit
- What is meant by the ”invalid” state of a latch circuit
- What a *race condition* is in a digital circuit
- The importance of valid ”high” CMOS signal voltage levels

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



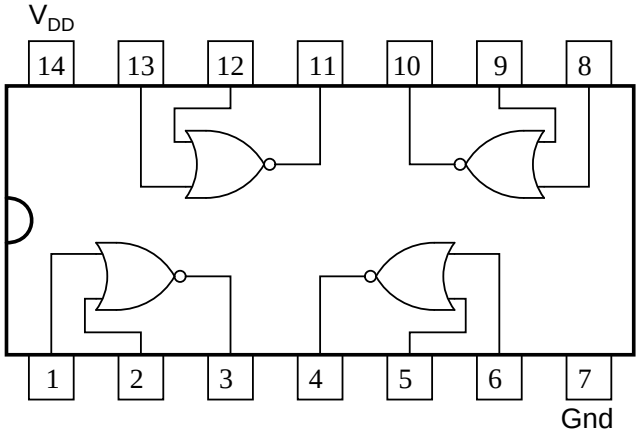
ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The 4001 integrated circuit is a CMOS quad NOR gate, identical in input, output, and power supply pin assignments to the 4011 quad NAND gate. Its ”pinout,” or ”connection,” diagram is as such:

"Pinout," or "connection" diagram for the 4001 quad NOR gate

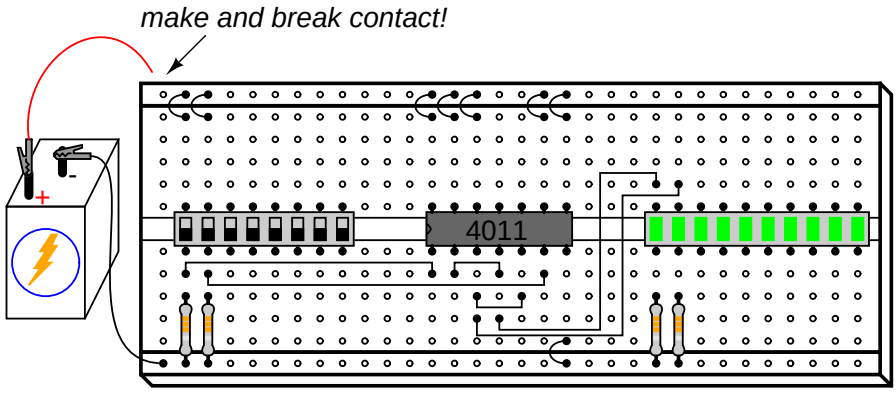


When two NOR gates are cross-connected as shown in the schematic diagram, there will be positive feedback from output to input. That is, the output signal tends to maintain the gate in its last output state. Just as in op-amp circuits, positive feedback creates *hysteresis*. This tendency for the circuit to remain in its last output state gives it a sort of ”memory.” In fact, there are solid-state computer memory technologies based on circuitry like this!

If we designate the left switch as the ”Set” input and the right switch as the ”Reset,” the left LED will be the ”Q” output and the right LED the ”Q-not” output. With the Set input ”high” (switch on) and the Reset input ”low,” Q will go ”high” and Q-not will go ”low.” This is known as the *set* state of the circuit. Making the Reset input ”high” and the Set input ”low” reverses the latch circuit’s output state: Q ”low” and Q-not ”high.” This is known as the *reset* state of the circuit. If both inputs are placed into the ”low” state, the circuit’s Q and Q-not outputs will remain in their last states, ”remembering” their prior settings. This is known as the *latched* state of the circuit.

Because the outputs have been designated "Q" and "Q-not," it is implied that their states will always be complementary (opposite). Thus, if something were to happen that forced both outputs to the *same* state, we would be inclined to call that mode of the circuit "invalid." This is exactly what will happen if we make both Set and Reset inputs "high:" both Q and Q-not outputs will be forced to the same "low" logic state. This is known as the *invalid* or *illegal* state of the circuit, not because something has gone wrong, but because the outputs have failed to meet the expectations established by their labels.

Since the "latched" state is a hysteretic condition whereby the last output states are "remembered," one might wonder what will happen if the circuit powers up this way, with *no previous state to hold*. To experiment, place both switches in their off positions, making both Set and Reset inputs low, then disconnect one of the battery wires from the breadboard. Then, quickly make and break contact between that battery wire and its proper connection point on the breadboard, noting the status of the two LEDs as the circuit is powered up again and again:



When a latch circuit such as this is powered up into its "latched" state, the gates race against each other for control. Given the "low" inputs, both gates try to output "high" signals. If one of the gates reaches its "high" output state before the other, that "high" state will be fed back to the other gate's input to force its output "low," and the race is won by the faster gate.

Invariably, one gate wins the race, due to internal variations between gates in the chip, and/or external resistances and capacitances that act to delay one gate more than the other. What this usually means is that the circuit tends to power up in the same mode, over and over again. However, if you are persistent in your powering/unpowering cycles, you should see at least a few times where the latch circuit powers up latched in the *opposite* state from normal.

Race conditions are generally undesirable in any kind of system, as they lead to unpredictable operation. They can be particularly troublesome to locate, as this experiment shows, because of the unpredictability they create. Imagine a scenario, for instance, where one of the two NOR gates was exceptionally slow-acting, due to a defect in the chip. This handicap would cause the other gate to win the power-up race every time. In other words, the circuit will be very predictable on power-up with both inputs "low." However, suppose that the unusual chip were to be replaced by one with more evenly matched gates, or by a chip where the *other* NOR gate were consistently slower. Normal circuit behavior is not supposed to change when a component is replaced, but if race conditions are present, a change of components may very well do just that.

Due to the inherent race tendency of an S-R latch, one should not design a circuit with the expectation of a consistent power-up state, but rather use external means to "force" the race so that the desired gate always "wins."

An interesting modification to try in this circuit is to replace one of the 470 Ω LED "dropping" resistors with a lower-value unit, such as 100 Ω. The obvious effect of this alteration will be increased LED brightness, as more current is allowed through. A not-so-obvious effect will also result, and it is this effect which holds great learning value. Try replacing one of the 470 Ω resistors with a 100 Ω resistor, and operate the input signal switches through all four possible setting combinations, noting the behavior of the circuit.

You should note that the circuit refuses to latch in one of its states (either Set or Reset), but only in the other state, when the input switches are both set "low" (the "latch" mode). Why is this? Take a voltmeter and measure the output voltage of the gate whose output is "high" when both inputs are "low." Note this voltage indication, then set the input switches in such a way that the *other* state (either Reset or Set) is forced, and measure the output voltage of the other gate when its output is "high." Note the difference between the two gate output voltage levels, one gate loaded by an LED with a 470 Ω resistor, and the other loaded by an LED with a 100 Ω resistor. The one loaded down by the "heavier" load (100 Ω resistor) will be much less: so much less that this voltage will not be interpreted by the other NOR gate's input as a "high" signal at all as it is fed back! All logic gates have permissible "high" and "low" input signal voltage ranges, and if the voltage of a digital signal falls outside this permissible range, it might not be properly interpreted by the receiving gate. In a latch circuit such as this, which depends on a solid "high" signal fed back from the output of one gate to the input of the other, a "weak" signal will not be able to maintain the positive feedback necessary to keep the circuit latched in one of its states.

This is one reason I favor the use of a voltmeter as a logic "probe" for determining digital signal levels, rather than an actual logic probe with "high" and "low" lights. A logic probe may not indicate the presence of a "weak" signal, whereas a voltmeter definitely will by means of its quantitative indication. This type of problem, common in circuits where different "families" of integrated circuits are mixed (TTL and CMOS, for example), can only be found with test equipment providing quantitative measurements of signal level.

7.4 NAND gate S-R enabled latch

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 4011 quad NAND gate (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2411)
- Eight-position DIP switch (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1301)
- Ten-segment bargraph LED (Radio Shack catalog # 276-081)
- One 6 volt battery
- Three 10 kΩ resistors
- Two 470 Ω resistors

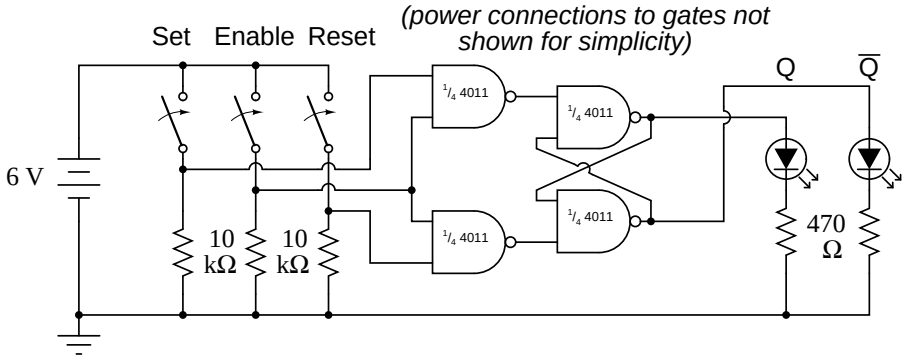
Caution! The 4011 IC is CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 3: ”Logic Gates”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 10: ”Multivibrators”

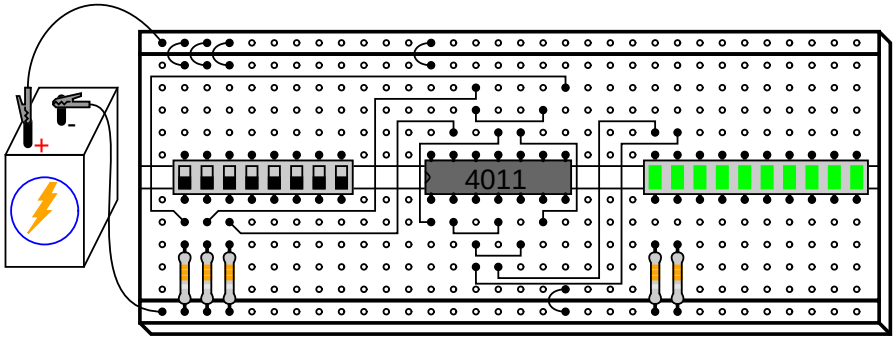
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Principle and function of an enabled latch circuit

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



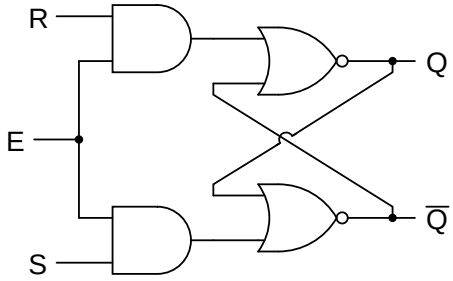
ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

Although this circuit uses NAND gates instead of NOR gates, its behavior is identical to that of the NOR gate S-R latch (a "high" Set input drives Q "high," and a "high" Reset input drives Q-not "high"), except for the presence of a third input: the Enable. The purpose of the Enable input is to enable or disable the Set and Reset inputs from having effect over the circuit's output status. When the Enable input is "high," the circuit acts just like the NOR gate S-R latch. When the Enable input is "low," the Set and Reset inputs are disabled and have no effect whatsoever on the outputs, leaving the circuit in its latched state.

This kind of latch circuit (also called a *gated S-R latch*), may be constructed from two NOR gates and two AND gates, but the NAND gate design is easier to build since it makes use of all four gates in a single integrated circuit.



E	S	R	Q	$\overline{Q}$
0	0	0	latch	latch
0	0	1	latch	latch
0	1	0	latch	latch
0	1	1	latch	latch
1	0	0	latch	latch
1	0	1	0	1
1	1	0	1	0
1	1	1	0	0

7.5 NAND gate S-R flip-flop

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 4011 quad NAND gate (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2411)
- 4001 quad NOR gate (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2401)
- Eight-position DIP switch (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1301)
- Ten-segment bargraph LED (Radio Shack catalog # 276-081)
- One 6 volt battery
- Three 10 kΩ resistors
- Two 470 Ω resistors

Caution! The 4011 IC is CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

Although the parts list calls for a ten-segment LED unit, the illustration shows two individual LEDs being used instead. This is due to lack of room on my breadboard to mount the switch assembly, two integrated circuits, and the bargraph. If you have room on your breadboard, feel free to use the bargraph as called for in the parts list, and as shown in prior latch circuits.

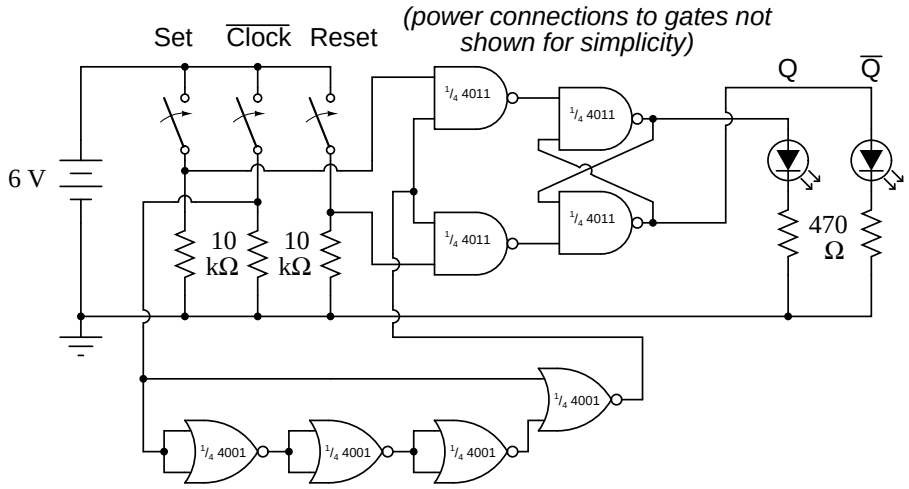
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 3: ”Logic Gates”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 10: ”Multivibrators”

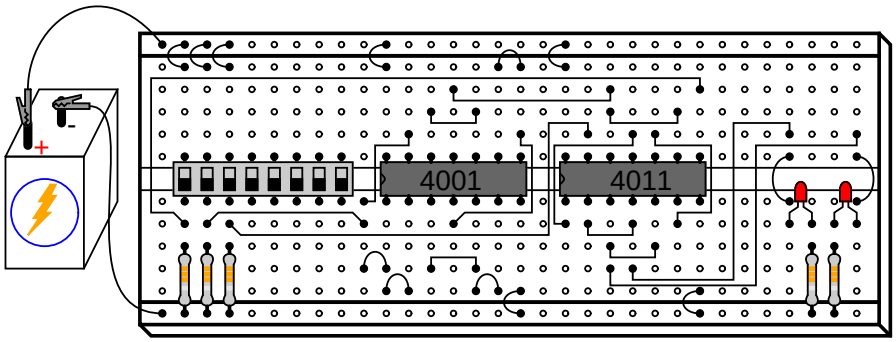
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- The difference between a gated latch and a flip-flop
- How to build a ”pulse detector” circuit
- Learn the effects of switch contact ”bounce” on digital circuits

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM

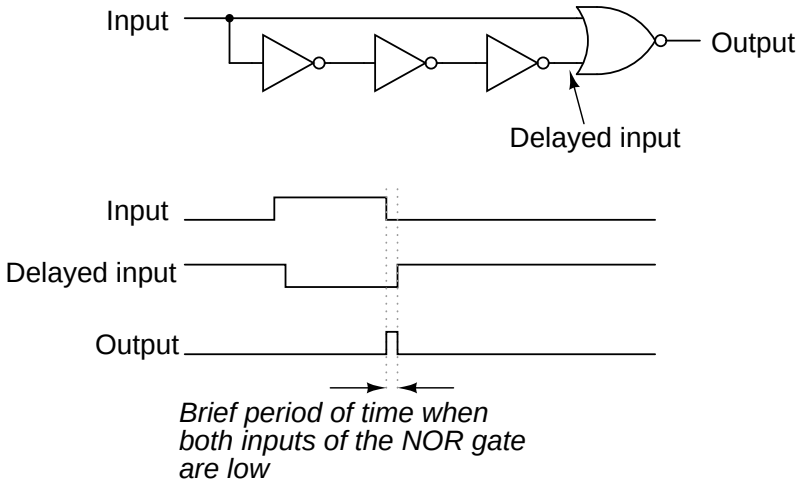


ILLUSTRATION



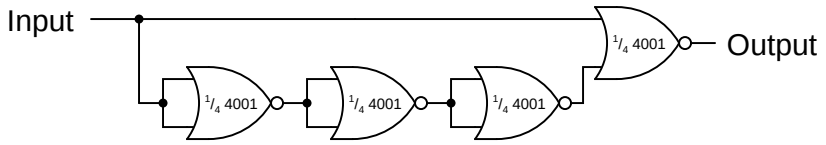
INSTRUCTIONS

The only difference between a *gated* (or *enabled*) latch and a flip-flop is that a flip-flop is enabled only on the rising or falling *edge* of a "clock" signal, rather than for the entire duration of a "high" enable signal. Converting an enabled latch into a flip-flop simply requires that a "pulse detector" circuit be added to the Enable input, so that the edge of a clock pulse generates a brief "high" Enable pulse:



The single NOR gate and three inverter gates create this effect by exploiting the propagation delay time of multiple, cascaded gates. In this experiment, I use three NOR gates with paralleled inputs to create three inverters, thus using all four NOR gates of a 4001 integrated circuit:

Pulse detector circuit



Normally, when using a NOR gate as an inverter, one input would be grounded while the other acts as the inverter input, to minimize input capacitance and increase speed. Here, however, slow response is *desired*, and so I parallel the NOR inputs to make inverters rather than use the more conventional method.

Please note that this particular pulse detector circuit produces a ”high” output pulse at every *falling edge* of the clock (input) signal. This means that the flip-flop circuit should be responsive to the Set and Reset input states only when the middle switch is moved from ”on” to ”off,” not from ”off” to ”on.”

When you build this circuit, though, you may discover that the outputs respond to Set and Reset input signals during *both* transitions of the Clock input, not just when it is switched from a ”high” state to a ”low” state. The reason for this is contact *bounce*: the effect of a mechanical switch rapidly making-and-breaking when its contacts are first closed, due to the elastic collision of the metal contact pads. Instead of the Clock switch producing a single, clean low-to-high signal transition when closed, there will most likely be several low-high-low ”cycles” as the contact pads ”bounce” upon off-to-on actuation. The first high-to-low transition caused by bouncing will trigger the pulse detector circuit, enabling the S-R latch for that moment in time, making it responsive to the Set and Reset inputs.

Ideally, of course, switches are perfect and bounce-free. In the real world, though, contact bounce is a very common problem for digital gate circuits operated by switch inputs, and must

be understood well if it is to be overcome.

7.6 555 Schmitt Trigger

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- One 9V Battery
- Battery Clip (Radio Shack catalog # 270-325)
- Mini Hook Clips (soldered to Battery Clip, Radio Shack catalog # 270-372)
- One Potentiometer, 10 KΩ, 15-Turn (Radio Shack catalog # 271-343)
- One 555 timer IC (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1723)
- One red light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-041 or equivalent)
- One green light-emitting diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-022 or equivalent)
- Two 1 KΩ Resistors
- One DVM (Digital Volt Meter) or VOM (Volt Ohm Meter)

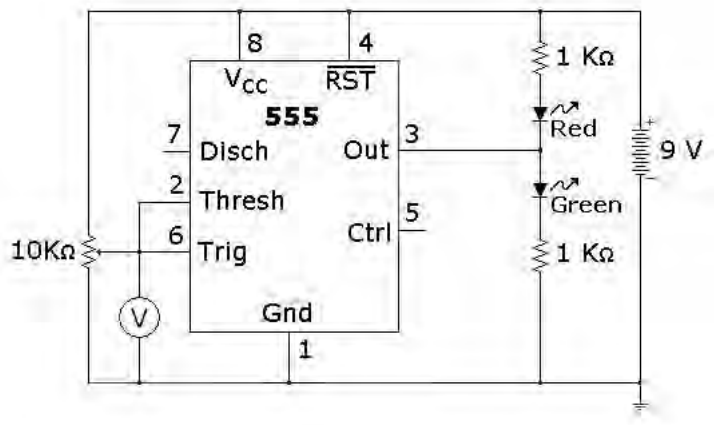
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 3, chapter 8: Positive Feedback
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 3: Logic Signal Voltage Levels

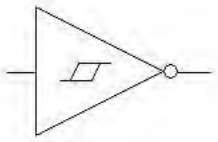
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Learn how a Schmitt Trigger works
- How to use the 555 timer as an Schmitt Trigger

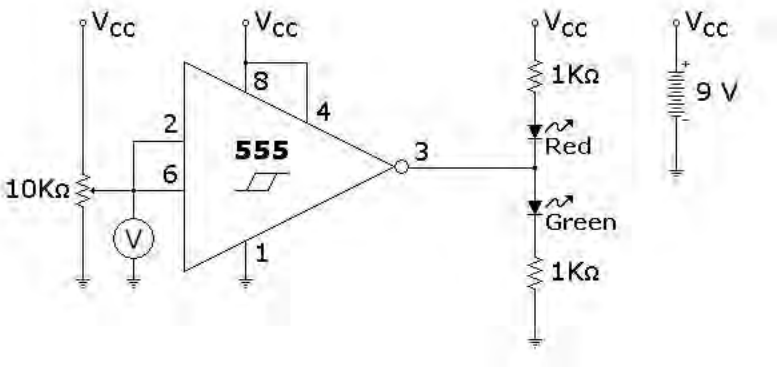
SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



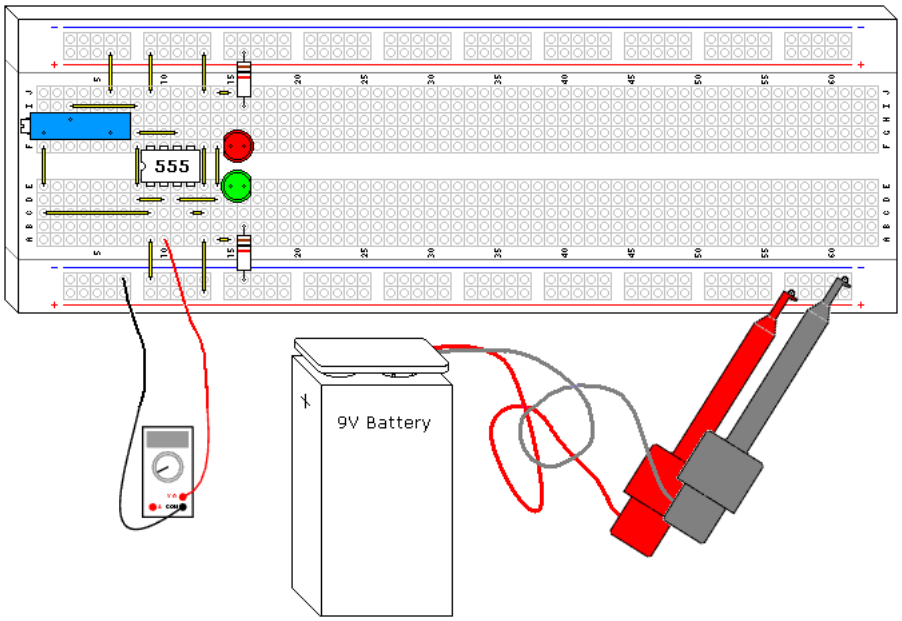
Schmitt Triggers have a convention to show a gate that is also a Schmitt Trigger, shown below.



The same schematic redrawn to reflect this convention looks something like this:



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The 555 timer is probably one of the more versatile ”black box” chips. Its 3 resistor voltage divider, 2 comparators, and built in set reset flip flop are wired to form a Schmitt Trigger in this design. Its interesting to note that the configuration isnt even close to the op amp configuration shown elsewhere, but the end result is identical.

Try adjusting the potentiometer until the lights flip states, then measure the voltage. Compare this voltage to the power supply voltage. Adjust the potentiometer the other way until the LEDs flip states again, and measure the voltage. How close to the 1/3 and 2/3 marks did you get?

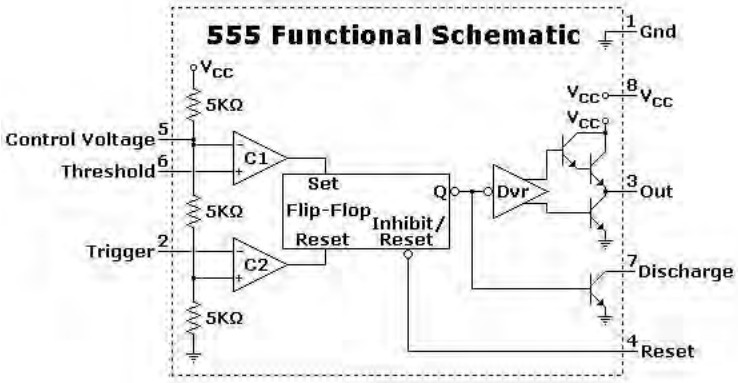
Try substituting the 9V battery with a 6 volt battery, or two 6 volt batteries, and see how close the thresholds are to the 1/3 and 2/3 marks.

Schmitt Triggers are a fundamental circuit with several uses. One is signal processing, they can pull digital data out of some extremely noisy environments. Other big uses will be shown in following projects, such as an extremely simple RC oscillator.

THEORY OF OPERATION

The defining characteristic of any Schmitt Trigger is its hysteresis. In this case it is 1/3 and 2/3 of the power supply voltage, defined by the built in resistor voltage divider on the 555. The built in comparators C1 and C2 compare the input voltage to the references provided by the voltage divider and use the comparison to trip the built in flip flop, which drives the output driver, another nice feature of the 555. The 555 can drive up to 200ma off either side of the power supply rail, the output driver creates a very low conduction path to either side of the power supply connections. The circuit ”shorts” each side of the LED circuit, leaving the other side to light up.

The 5KΩ resistors are not very accurate. It is interesting to note that IC fabrication doesn't generally allow precision resistors, but the resistors compared to each other are extremely close in value, which is critical to the circuits operation.



7.7 LED sequencer

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 4017 decade counter/divider (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2417)
- 555 timer IC (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1723)
- Ten-segment bargraph LED (Radio Shack catalog # 276-081)
- One SPST switch
- One 6 volt battery
- 10 kΩ resistor
- 1 MΩ resistor
- 0.1 μF capacitor (Radio Shack catalog # 272-135 or equivalent)
- Coupling capacitor, 0.047 to 0.001 μF
- Ten 470 Ω resistors
- Audio detector with headphones

Caution! The 4017 IC is CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

Any single-pole, single-throw switch is adequate. A household light switch will work fine, and is readily available at any hardware store.

The audio detector will be used to assess signal frequency. If you have access to an oscilloscope, the audio detector is unnecessary.

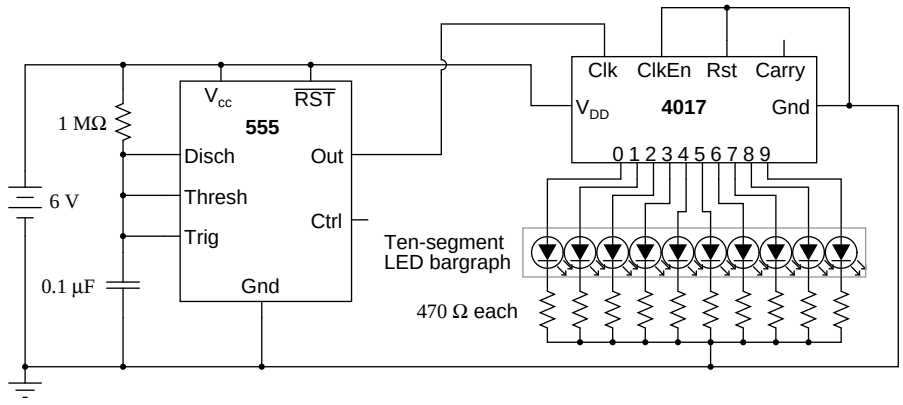
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 3: "Logic Gates"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 4: "Switches"
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 11: "Counters"

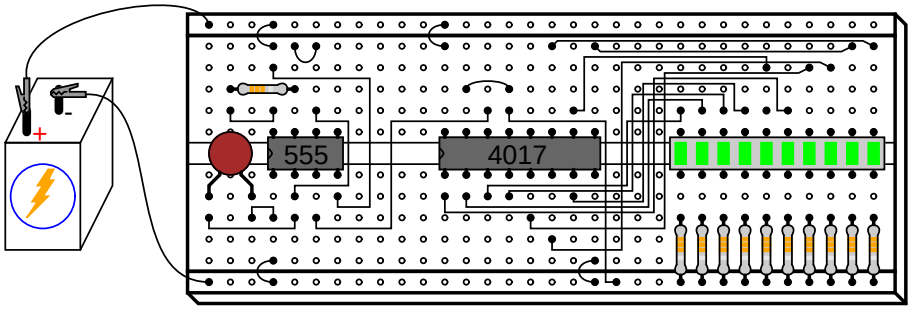
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Use of a 555 timer circuit to produce "clock" pulses (*astable* multivibrator)
- Use of a 4017 decade counter/divider circuit to produce a sequence of pulses
- Use of a 4017 decade counter/divider circuit for frequency division
- Using a frequency divider and timepiece (watch) to measure frequency
- Purpose of a "pulldown" resistor
- Learn the effects of switch contact "bounce" on digital circuits
- Use of a 555 timer circuit to "debounce" a mechanical switch (*monostable* multivibrator)

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

The model 4017 integrated circuit is a CMOS counter with ten output terminals. One of these ten terminals will be in a ”high” state at any given time, with all others being ”low,” giving a ”one-of-ten” output sequence. If low-to-high voltage pulses are applied to the ”clock” (Clk) terminal of the 4017, it will increment its count, forcing the next output into a ”high” state.

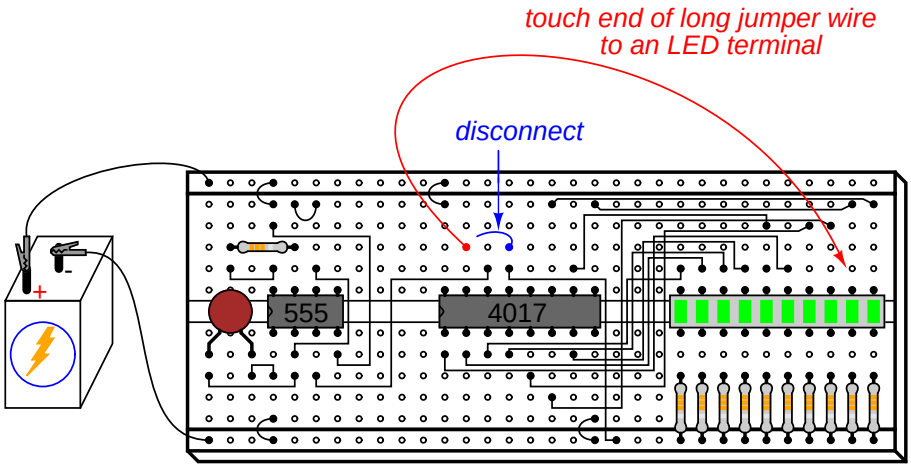
With a 555 timer connected as an astable multivibrator (oscillator) of low frequency, the 4017 will cycle through its ten-count sequence, lighting up each LED, one at a time, and ”recycling” back to the first LED. The result is a visually pleasing sequence of flashing lights. Feel free to experiment with resistor and capacitor values on the 555 timer to create different flash rates.

Try disconnecting the jumper wire leading from the 4017’s ”Clock” terminal (pin #14) to the 555’s ”Output” terminal (pin #3) where it connects to the 555 timer chip, and hold its end in your hand. If there is sufficient 60 Hz power-line ”noise” around you, the 4017 will detect it as a fast clock signal, causing the LEDs to blink very rapidly.

Two terminals on the 4017 chip, ”Reset” and ”Clock Enable,” are maintained in a ”low” state by means of a connection to the negative side of the battery (ground). This is necessary if the chip is to count freely. If the ”Reset” terminal is made ”high,” the 4017’s output will be reset

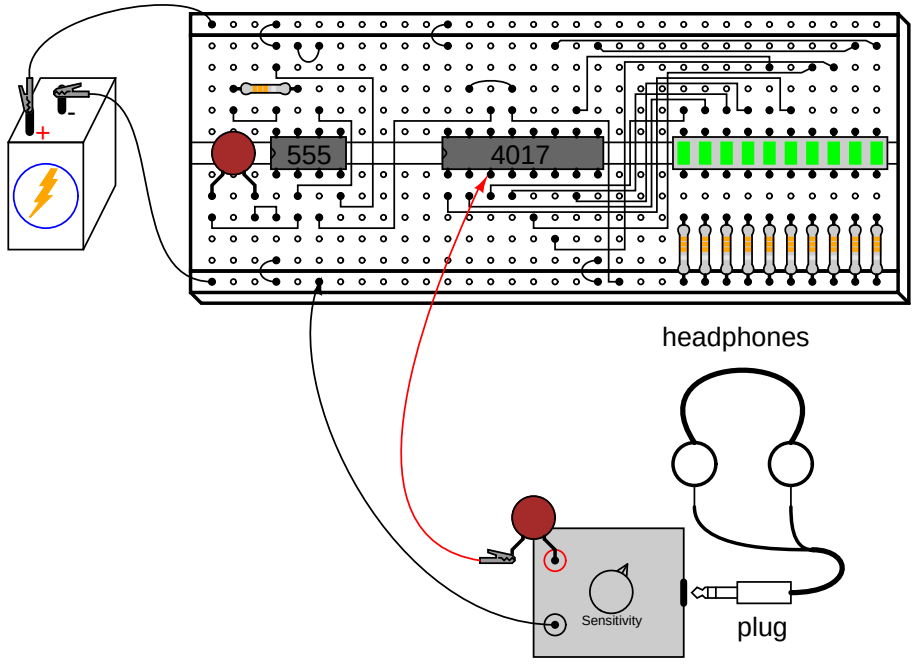
back to 0 (pin #3 "high," all other output pins "low"). If the "Clock Enable" is made "high," the chip will stop responding to the clock signal and pause in its counting sequence.

If the 4017's "Reset" terminal is connected to one of its ten output terminals, its counting sequence will be cut short, or *truncated*. You may experiment with this by disconnecting the "Reset" terminal from ground, then connecting a long jumper wire to the "Reset" terminal for easy connection to the outputs at the ten-segment LED bargraph. Notice how many (or how few) LEDs light up with the "Reset" connected to any one of the outputs:



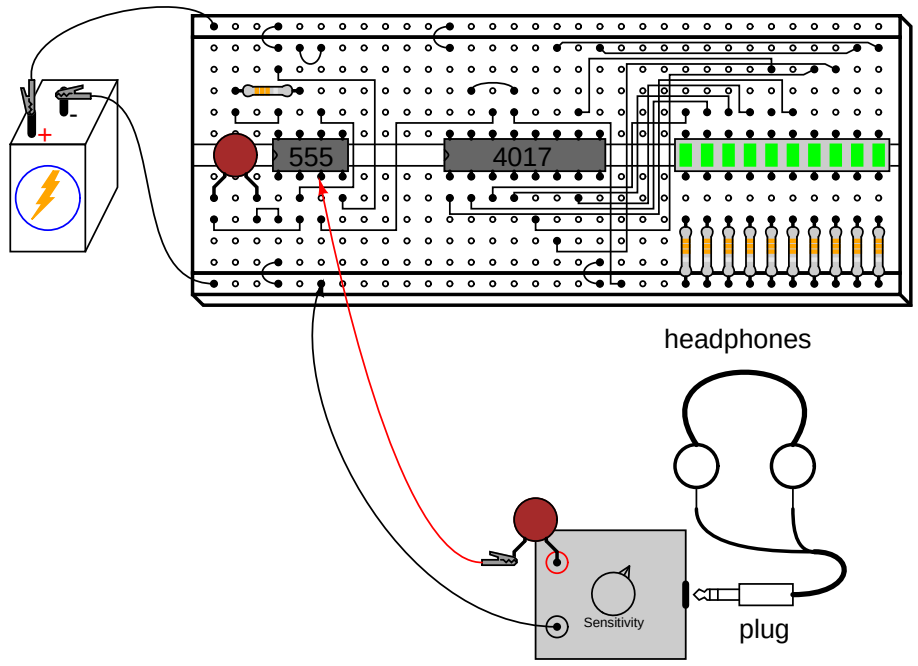
Counters such as the 4017 may be used as digital frequency dividers, to take a clock signal and produce a pulse occurring at some integer factor of the clock frequency. For example, if the clock signal from the 555 timer is 200 Hz, and the 4017 is configured for a full-count sequence (the "Reset" terminal connected to ground, giving a full, ten-step count), a signal with a period ten times as long (20 Hz) will be present at any of the 4017's output terminals. In other words, each output terminal will cycle *once* for every *ten* cycles of the clock signal: a frequency ten times as slow.

To experiment with this principle, connect your audio detector between output 0 (pin #3) of the 4017 and ground, through a very small capacitor (0.047 μF to 0.001 μF). The capacitor is used for "coupling" AC signals only, to that you may audibly detect pulses without placing a DC (resistive) load on the counter chip output. With the 4017 "Reset" terminal grounded, you will have a full-count sequence, and you will hear a "click" in the headphones every time the "0" LED lights up, corresponding to 1/10 of the 555's actual output frequency:

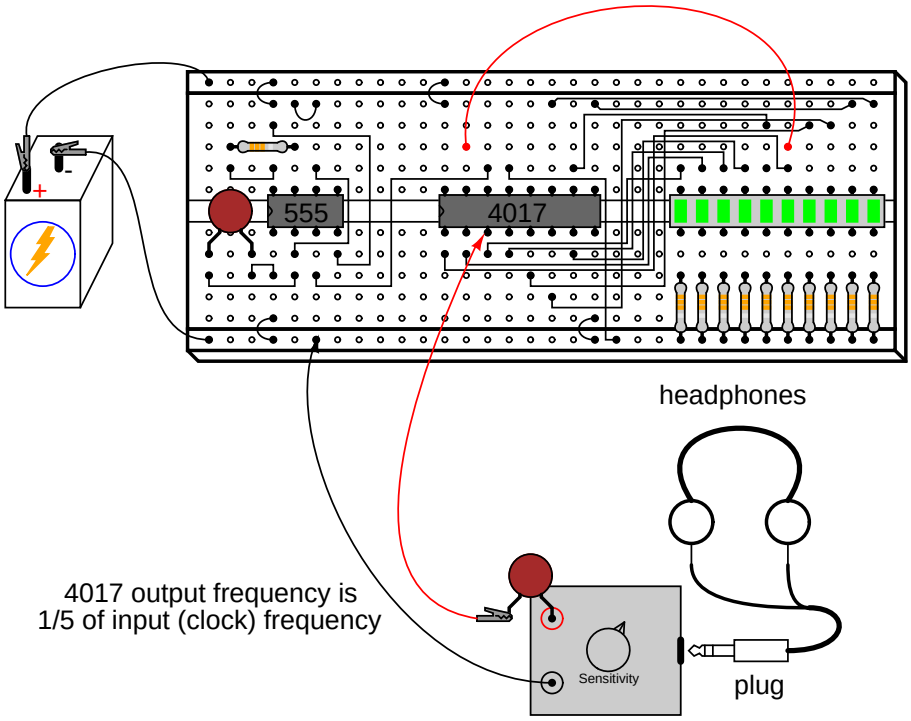


In fact, knowing this mathematical relationship between clicks heard in the headphone and the clock frequency allows us to measure the clock frequency to a fair degree of precision. Using a stopwatch or other timepiece, count the number of clicks heard in one full minute while connected to the 4017's "0" output. Using a 1 MΩ resistor and 0.1 μF capacitor in the 555 timing circuit, and a power supply voltage of 13 volts (instead of 6), I counted 79 clicks in one minute from my circuit. Your circuit may produce slightly different results. Multiply the number of pulses counted at the "0" output by 10 to obtain the number of cycles produced by the 555 timer during that same time (my circuit: 79 x 10 = 790 cycles). Divide this number by 60 to obtain the number of timer cycles elapsed in each second (my circuit: 790/60 = 13.17). This final figure is the clock frequency in Hz.

Now, leaving one test probe of the audio detector connected to ground, take the other test probe (the one with the coupling capacitor connected in series) and connect it to pin #3 of the 555 timer. The buzzing you hear is the undivided clock frequency:



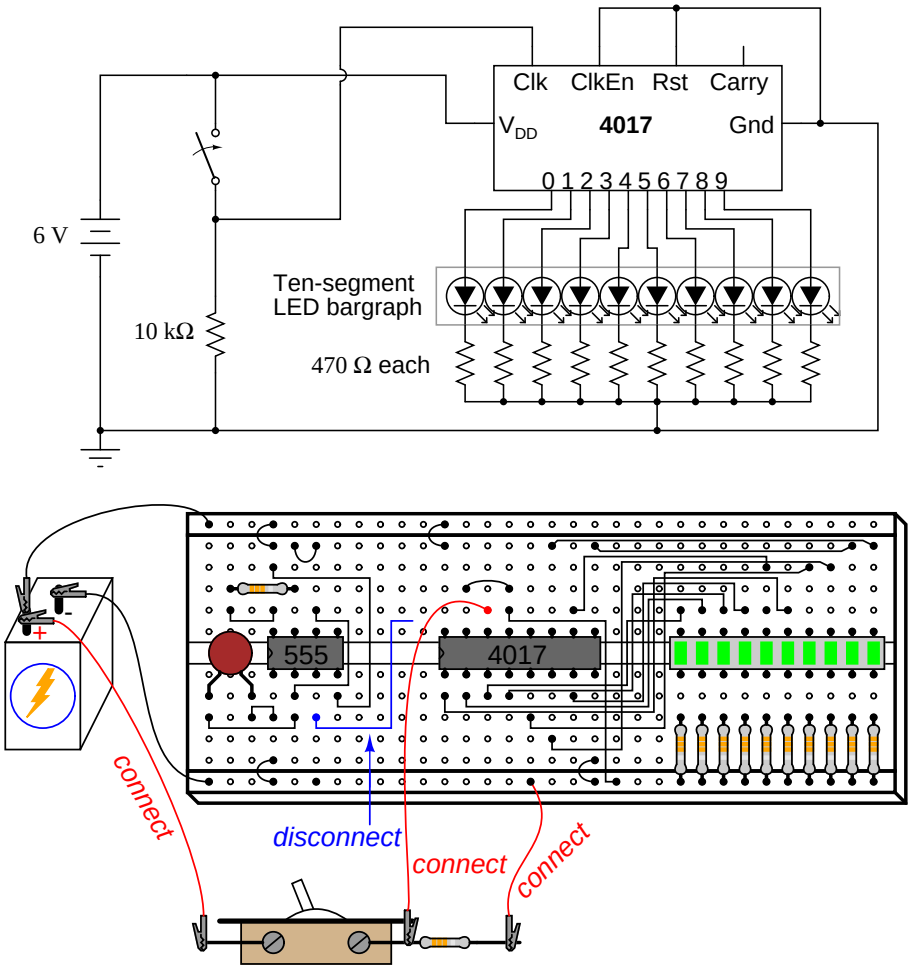
By connecting the 4017's "Reset" terminal to one of the output terminals, a truncated sequence will result. If we are using the 4017 as a frequency divider, this means the output frequency will be a different factor of the clock frequency: 1/9, 1/8, 1/7, 1/6, 1/5, 1/4, 1/3, or 1/2, depending on which output terminal we connect the "Reset" jumper wire to. Re-connect the audio detector test probe to output "0" of the 4017 (pin #3), and connect the "Reset" terminal jumper to the sixth LED from the left on the bargraph. This should produce a 1/5 frequency division ratio:



Counting the number of clicks heard in one minute again, you should obtain a number approximately twice as large as what was counted with the 4017 configured for a 1/10 ratio, because 1/5 is twice as large a ratio as 1/10. If you do not obtain a count that is exactly twice what you obtained before, it is because of error inherent to the method of counting cycles: coordinating your sense of hearing with the display of a stopwatch or other time-keeping device.

Try replacing the 1 MΩ timing resistor in the 555 circuit with one of greatly lesser value, such as 10 kΩ. This will increase the clock frequency driving the 4017 chip. Use the audio detector to listen to the divided frequency at pin #3 of the 4017, noting the different tones produced as you move the "Reset" jumper wire to different outputs, creating different frequency division ratios. See if you can produce octaves by dividing the original frequency by 2, then by 4, and then by 8 (each descending octave represents one-half the previous frequency). Octaves are readily distinguished from other divided frequencies by their similar pitches to the original tone.

A final lesson that may be learned from this circuit is that of switch contact "bounce." For this, you will need a switch to provide clock signals to the 4017 chip, instead of the 555 timer. Re-connect the "Reset" jumper wire to ground to enable a full ten-step count sequence, and disconnect the 555's output from the 4017's "Clock" input terminal. Connect a switch in series with a 10 kΩ *pulldown* resistor, and connect this assembly to the 4017 "Clock" input as shown:



The purpose of a "pulldown" resistor is to provide a definite "low" logic state when the switch contact opens. Without this resistor in place, the 4017's "Clock" input wire would be *floating* whenever the switch contact was opened, leaving it susceptible to interference from stray static voltages or electrical "noise," either one capable of making the 4017 count randomly. With the pulldown resistor in place, the 4017's "Clock" input will have a definite, albeit resistive, connection to ground, providing a stable "low" logic state that precludes any interference from static electricity or "noise" coupled from nearby AC circuit wiring.

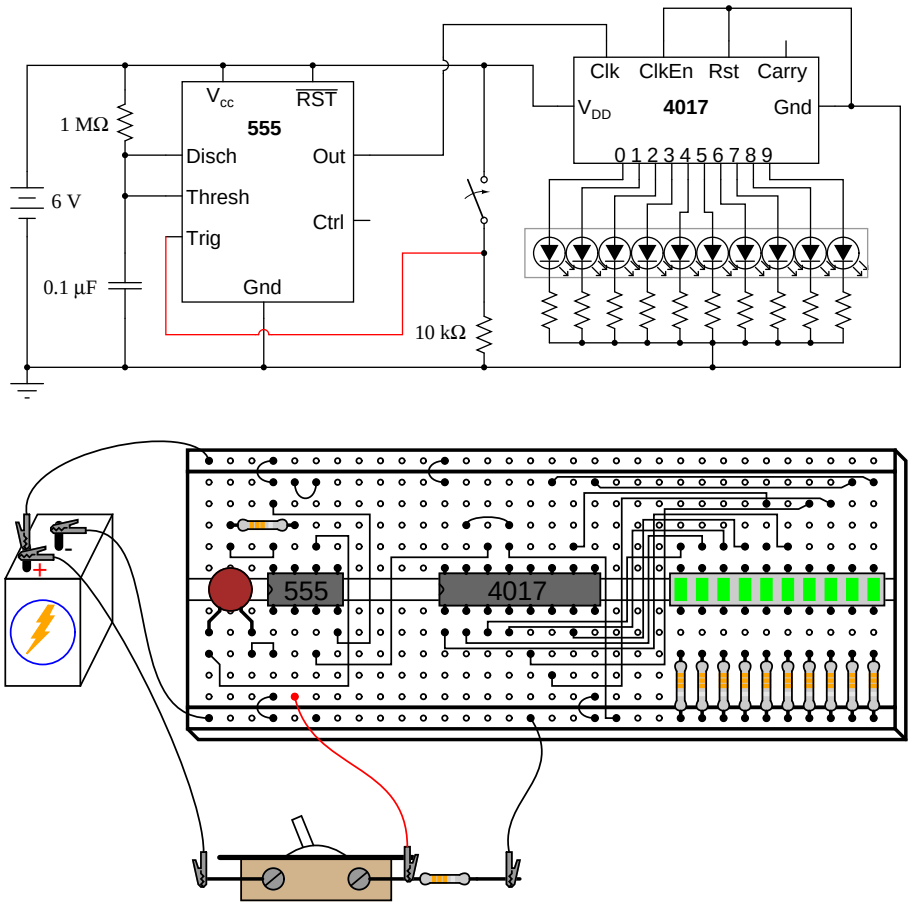
Actuate the switch on and off, noting the action of the LEDs. With each off-to-on switch transition, the 4017 should increment once in its count. However, you may notice some strange behavior: sometimes, the LED sequence will "skip" one or even several steps with a single switch closure. Why is this? It is due to very rapid, mechanical "bouncing" of the switch contacts. When two metallic contacts are brought together rapidly as does happen inside most switches, there will be an elastic collision. This collision results in the contacts making and breaking very rapidly as they "bounce" off one another. Normally, this "bouncing" is much to rapid for you to see its effects, but in a digital circuit such as this where the counter chip is able

to respond to very quick clock pulses, these ”bounces” are interpreted as distinct clock signals, and the count incremented accordingly.

One way to combat this problem is to use a timing circuit to produce a single pulse for any number of input pulse signals received within a short amount of time. The circuit is called a *monostable multivibrator*, and any technique eliminating the false pulses caused by switch contact ”bounce” is called *debouncing*.

The 555 timer circuit is capable of functioning as a debouncer, if the ”Trigger” input is connected to the switch as such:

Using the 555 timer to "debounce" the switch



Please note that since we are using the 555 once again to provide a clock signal to the 4017, we must re-connect pin #3 of the 555 chip to pin #14 of the 4017 chip! Also, if you have altered the values of the resistor or capacitor in the 555 timer circuit, you should return to the original 1 MΩ and 0.1 μF components.

Actuate the switch again and note the counting behavior of the 4017. There should be no more ”skipped” counts as there were before, because the 555 timer outputs a single, crisp pulse for every *on-to-off* actuation (notice the inversion of operation here!) of the switch. It is

important that the timing of the 555 circuit be appropriate: the time to charge the capacitor should be longer than the ”settling” period of the switch (the time required for the contacts to stop bouncing), but not so long that the timer would ”miss” a rapid sequence of switch actuations, if they were to occur.

7.8 Simple combination lock

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 4001 quad NOR gate (Radio Shack catalog # 276-2401)
- 4070 quad XOR gate (Radio Shack catalog # 900-6906)
- Two, eight-position DIP switches (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1301)
- Two light-emitting diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-026 or equivalent)
- Four 1N914 ”switching” diodes (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1122)
- Ten 10 kΩ resistors
- Two 470 Ω resistors
- Pushbutton switch, normally open (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1556)
- Two 6 volt batteries

Caution! Both the 4001 and 4070 ICs are CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

This experiment may be built using only one 8-position DIP switch, but the concept is easier to understand if two switch assemblies are used. The idea is, one switch acts to hold the correct code for unlocking the lock, while the other switch serves as a data entry point for the person trying to open the lock. In real life, of course, the switch assembly with the ”key” code set on it must be hidden from the sight of the person opening the lock, which means it must be physically located *elsewhere* from where the data entry switch assembly is. This requires two switch assemblies. However, if you understand this concept clearly, you may build a working circuit with only one 8-position switch, using the left four switches for data entry and the right four switches to hold the ”key” code.

For extra effect, choose different colors of LED: green for ”Go” and red for ”No go.”

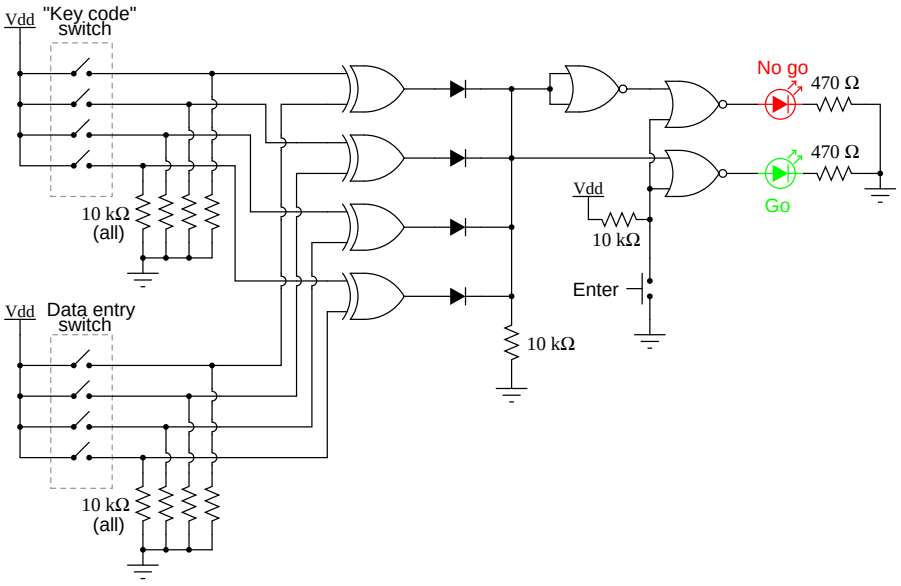
CROSS-REFERENCES

Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 3: ”Logic Gates”

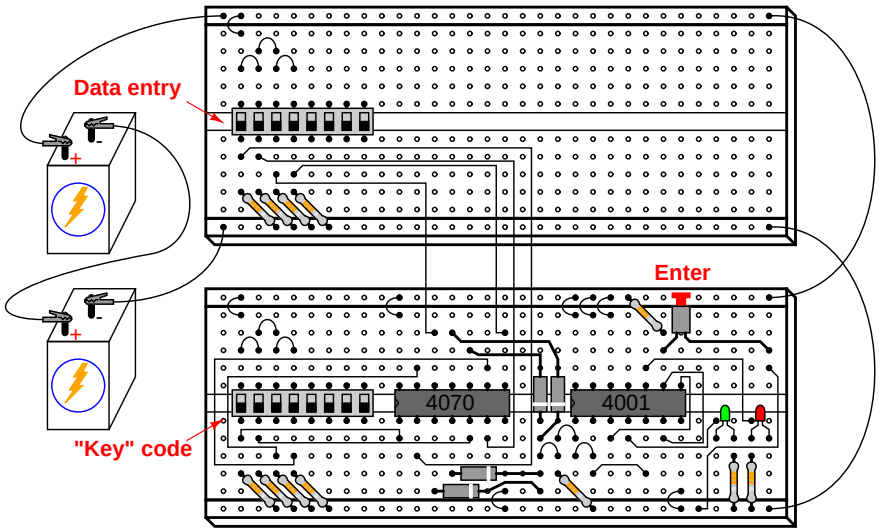
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Using XOR gates as bit comparators
- How to build simple gate functions with diodes and a pullup/down resistor
- Using NOR gates as controlled inverters

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This circuit illustrates the use of XOR (Exclusive-OR) gates as bit comparators. Four of these XOR gates compare the respective bits of two 4-bit binary numbers, each number ”entered” into the circuit via a set of switches. If the two numbers match, bit for bit, the green ”Go” LED will light up when the ”Enter” pushbutton switch is pressed. If the two numbers do not exactly match, the red ”No go” LED will light up when the ”Enter” pushbutton is pressed.

Because four bits provides a mere sixteen possible combinations, this lock circuit is not very sophisticated. If it were used in a real application such as a home security system, the ”No go” output would have to be connected to some kind of siren or other alarming device, so that the entry of an incorrect code would deter an unauthorized person from attempting another code entry. Otherwise, it would not take much time to try all combinations (0000 through 1111) until the correct one was found! In this experiment, I do not describe how to work this circuit into a real security system or lock mechanism, but only how to make it recognize a pre-entered code.

The ”key” code that must be matched at the data entry switch array should be hidden from view, of course. If this were part of a real security system, the data entry switch assembly would be located *outside* the door, and the key code switch assembly *behind* the door with the rest of the circuitry. In this experiment, you will likely locate the two switch assemblies on two different breadboards, but it is entirely possible to build the circuit using just a single (8-position) DIP switch assembly. Again, the purpose of the experiment is not to make a real security system, but merely to introduce you to the principle of XOR gate code comparison.

It is the nature of an XOR gate to output a ”high” (1) signal if the input signals are *not* the same logic state. The four XOR gates’ output terminals are connected through a diode network which functions as a four-input OR gate: if *any* of the four XOR gates outputs a ”high” signal – indicating that the entered code and the key code are not identical – then a ”high” signal will be passed on to the NOR gate logic. If the two 4-bit codes are identical, then none of the XOR gate outputs will be ”high,” and the pull-down resistor connected to the common sides of the diodes will provide a ”low” signal state to the NOR logic.

The NOR gate logic performs a simple task: prevent either of the LEDs from turning on if the ”Enter” pushbutton is not pressed. Only when this pushbutton is pressed can either of the LEDs energize. If the Enter switch is pressed and the XOR outputs are all ”low,” the ”Go” LED will light up, indicating that the correct code has been entered. If the Enter switch is pressed and any of the XOR outputs are ”high,” the ”No go” LED will light up, indicating that an incorrect code has been entered. Again, if this were a real security system, it would be wise to have the ”No go” output do something that deters an unauthorized person from discovering the correct code by trial-and-error. In other words, there should be some sort of *penalty* for entering an incorrect code. Let your imagination guide your design of this detail!

7.9 3-bit binary counter

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 555 timer IC (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1723)
- One 1N914 ”switching” diode (Radio Shack catalog # 276-1122)
- Two 10 kΩ resistors
- One 100 μF capacitor (Radio Shack catalog # 272-1028)
- 4027 dual J-K flip-flop (Radio Shack catalog # 900-4394)
- Ten-segment bargraph LED (Radio Shack catalog # 276-081)
- Three 470 Ω resistors
- One 6 volt battery

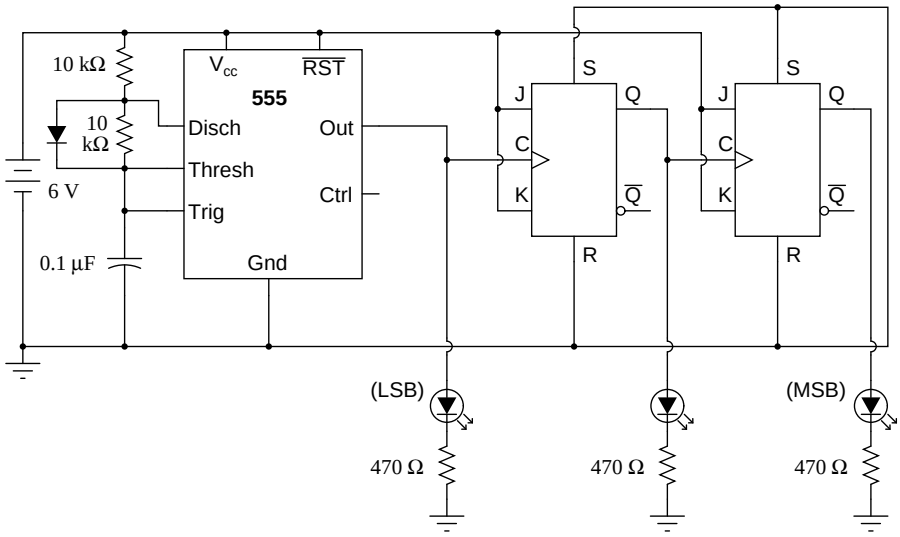
Caution! The 4027 IC is CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 10: ”Multivibrators”
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 11: ”Counters”

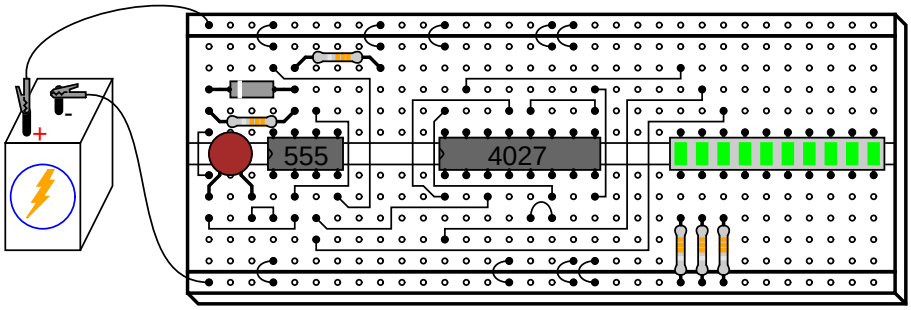
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Using the 555 timer as a square-wave oscillator
- How to make an asynchronous counter using J-K flip-flops

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

In a sense, this circuit ”cheats” by using only two J-K flip-flops to make a three-bit binary counter. Ordinarily, three flip-flops would be used – one for each binary bit – but in this case we can use the clock pulse (555 timer output) as a bit of its own. When you build this circuit, you will find that it is a ”down” counter. That is, its count sequence goes from 111 to 110 to 101 to 100 to 011 to 010 to 001 to 000 and then back to 111. While it is possible to construct an ”up” counter using J-K flip-flops, this would require additional components and introduce more complexity into the circuit.

The 555 timer operates as a slow, square-wave oscillator with a duty cycle of approximately 50 percent. This duty cycle is made possible by the use of a diode to ”bypass” the lower resistor during the capacitor’s charging cycle, so that the charging time constant is only RC and not 2RC as it would be without the diode in place.

It is highly recommended, in this experiment as in all experiments, to build the circuit in stages: identify portions of the circuit with specific functions, and build those portions one at a time, testing each one and verifying its performance before building the next. A very common mistake of new electronics students is to build an entire circuit at once without testing sections of it during the construction process, and then be faced with the possibility of several problems simultaneously when it comes time to finally apply power to it. Remember that a small amount of extra attention paid to detail near the beginning of a project is worth an enormous amount of troubleshooting work near the end! Students who make the mistake of not testing circuit portions before attempting to operate the entire circuit often (falsely) think that the time it would take to test those sections is not worth it, and then spend *days* trying to figure out what the problem(s) might be with their experiment.

Following this philosophy, build the 555 timer circuit first, before even plugging the 4027 IC into the breadboard. Connect the 555’s output (pin #3) to the ”Least Significant Bit” (LSB) LED, so that you have visual indication of its status. Make sure that the output oscillates in a slow, square-wave pattern (LED is ”lit” for about as long as it is ”off” in a cycle), and that it is a reliable signal (no erratic behavior, no unexplained pauses). If the 555 timer is not working properly, neither will the rest of the counter circuit! Once the timer circuit has been proven good, proceed to plug the 4027 IC into the breadboard and complete the rest of the necessary connections between it, the 555 timer circuit, and the LED assembly.

7.10 7-segment display

PARTS AND MATERIALS

- 4511 BCD-to-7seg latch/decoder/driver (Radio Shack catalog # 900-4437)
- Common-cathode 7-segment LED display (Radio Shack catalog # 276-075)
- Eight-position DIP switch (Radio Shack catalog # 275-1301)
- Four 10 kΩ resistors
- Seven 470 Ω resistors
- One 6 volt battery

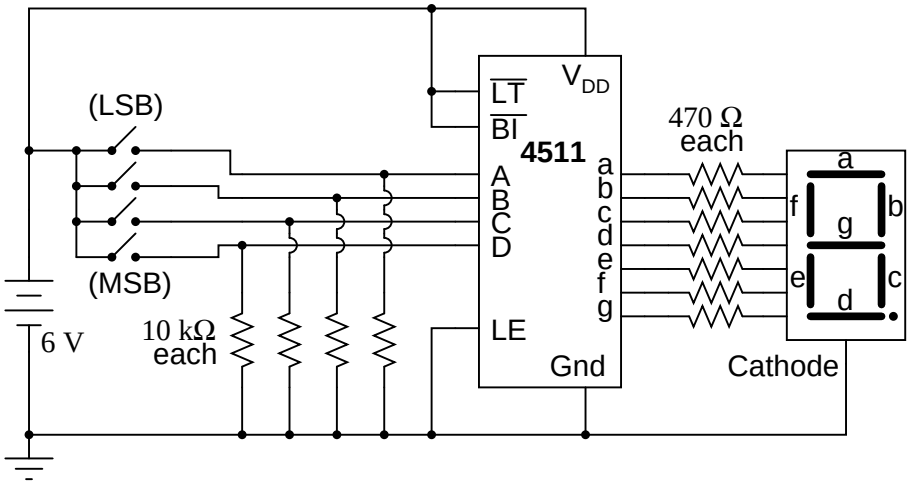
Caution! The 4511 IC is CMOS, and therefore sensitive to static electricity!

CROSS-REFERENCES
Lessons In Electric Circuits, Volume 4, chapter 9: ”Combinational Logic Functions”

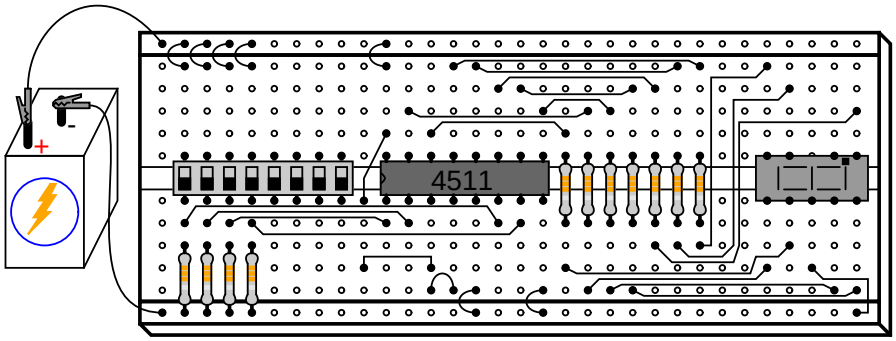
LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- How to use the 4511 7-segment decoder/display driver IC
- Gain familiarity with the BCD code
- How to use 7-segment LED assemblies to create decimal digit displays
- How to identify and use both ”active-low” and ”active-high” logic inputs

SCHEMATIC DIAGRAM



ILLUSTRATION



INSTRUCTIONS

This experiment is more of an introduction to the 4511 decoder/display driver IC than it is a lesson in how to "build up" a digital function from lower-level components. Since 7-segment displays are *very* common components of digital devices, it is good to be familiar with the "driving" circuits behind them, and the 4511 is a good example of a typical driver IC.

Its operating principle is to input a four-bit BCD (Binary-Coded Decimal) value, and energize the proper output lines to form the corresponding decimal digit on the 7-segment LED display. The BCD inputs are designated A, B, C, and D in order from least-significant to most-significant. Outputs are labeled a, b, c, d, e, f, and g, each letter corresponding to a standardized segment designation for 7-segment displays. Of course, since each LED segment requires its own dropping resistor, we must use seven 470 Ω resistors placed in series between the 4511's output terminals and the corresponding terminals of the display unit.

Most 7-segment displays also provide for a decimal point (sometimes two!), a separate LED and terminal designated for its operation. All LEDs inside the display unit are made common to each other on one side, either cathode or anode. The 4511 display driver IC requires a common-cathode 7-segment display unit, and so that is what is used here.

After building the circuit and applying power, operate the four switches in a binary counting sequence (0000 to 1111), noting the 7-segment display. A 0000 input should result in a decimal "0" display, a 0001 input should result in a decimal "1" display, and so on through 1001 (decimal "9"). What happens for the binary numbers 1010 (10) through 1111 (15)? Read the datasheet on the 4511 IC and see what the manufacturer specifies for operation above an input value of 9. In the BCD code, there is no real meaning for 1010, 1011, 1100, 1101, 1110, or 1111. These are binary values beyond the range of a single decimal digit, and so have no function in a BCD system. The 4511 IC is built to recognize this, and output (or not output!) accordingly.

Three inputs on the 4511 chip have been permanently connected to either V_{dd} or ground: the "Lamp Test," "Blanking Input," and "Latch Enable." To learn what these inputs do, remove the short jumpers connecting them to either power supply rail (one at a time!), and replace the short jumper with a longer one that can reach the *other* power supply rail. For example, remove the short jumper connecting the "Latch Enable" input (pin #5) to ground, and replace it with a long jumper wire that can reach all the way to the V_{dd} power supply rail. Experiment with making this input "high" and "low," observing the results on the 7-segment display as you alter the BCD code with the four input switches. After you've learned what the input's function

is, connect it to the power supply rail enabling normal operation, and proceed to experiment with the next input (either ”Lamp Test” or ”Blanking Input”).

Once again, the manufacturer’s datasheet will be informative as to the purpose of each of these three inputs. Note that the ”Lamp Test” (LT) and ”Blanking Input” (BI) input labels are written with boolean complementation bars over the abbreviations. Bar symbols designate these inputs as *active-low*, meaning that you must make each one ”low” in order to invoke its particular function. Making an active-low input ”high” places that particular input into a ”passive” state where its function will not be invoked. Conversely, the ”Latch Enable” (LE) input has no complementation bar written over its abbreviation, and correspondingly it is shown connected to ground (”low”) in the schematic so as to not invoke that function. The ”Latch Enable” input is an *active-high* input, which means it must be made ”high” (connected to V_{dd}) in order to invoke its function.

Contributors

Contributors to this chapter are listed in chronological order of their contributions, from most recent to first. See Appendix 2 (Contributor List) for dates and contact information.

Bill Marsden (August 2008) Author of “555 Schmitt Trigger” section.

Appendix A-1

ABOUT THIS BOOK

A-1.1 Purpose

They say that necessity is the mother of invention. At least in the case of this book, that adage is true. As an industrial electronics instructor, I was forced to use a sub-standard textbook during my first year of teaching. My students were daily frustrated with the many typographical errors and obscure explanations in this book, having spent much time at home struggling to comprehend the material within. Worse yet were the many incorrect answers in the back of the book to selected problems. Adding insult to injury was the $100+ price.

Contacting the publisher proved to be an exercise in futility. Even though the particular text I was using had been in print and in popular use for a couple of years, they claimed my complaint was the first they'd ever heard. My request to review the draft for the next edition of their book was met with disinterest on their part, and I resolved to find an alternative text.

Finding a suitable alternative was more difficult than I had imagined. Sure, there were plenty of texts in print, but the really good books seemed a bit too heavy on the math and the less intimidating books omitted a lot of information I felt was important. Some of the best books were out of print, and those that were still being printed were quite expensive.

It was out of frustration that I compiled *Lessons in Electric Circuits* from notes and ideas I had been collecting for years. My primary goal was to put readable, high-quality information into the hands of my students, but a secondary goal was to make the book as affordable as possible. Over the years, I had experienced the benefit of receiving free instruction and encouragement in my pursuit of learning electronics from many people, including several teachers of mine in elementary and high school. Their selfless assistance played a key role in my own studies, paving the way for a rewarding career and fascinating hobby. If only I could extend the gift of their help by giving to other people what they gave to me . . .

So, I decided to make the book freely available. More than that, I decided to make it "open," following the same development model used in the making of free software (most notably the various UNIX utilities released by the Free Software Foundation, and the Linux operating

system, whose fame is growing even as I write). The goal was to copyright the text – so as to protect my authorship – but expressly allow anyone to distribute and/or modify the text to suit their own needs with a minimum of legal encumbrance. This willful and formal revoking of standard distribution limitations under copyright is whimsically termed *copyleft*. Anyone can "copyleft" their creative work simply by appending a notice to that effect on their work, but several Licenses already exist, covering the fine legal points in great detail.

The first such License I applied to my work was the GPL – General Public License – of the Free Software Foundation (GNU). The GPL, however, is intended to copyleft works of computer software, and although its introductory language is broad enough to cover works of text, its wording is not as clear as it could be for that application. When other, less specific copyleft Licenses began appearing within the free software community, I chose one of them (the Design Science License, or DSL) as the official notice for my project.

In "copylefting" this text, I guaranteed that no instructor would be limited by a text insufficient for their needs, as I had been with error-ridden textbooks from major publishers. I'm sure this book in its initial form will not satisfy everyone, but anyone has the freedom to change it, leveraging my efforts to suit variant and individual requirements. For the beginning student of electronics, learn what you can from this book, editing it as you feel necessary if you come across a useful piece of information. Then, if you pass it on to someone else, you will be giving them something better than what you received. For the instructor or electronics professional, feel free to use this as a reference manual, adding or editing to your heart's content. The only "catch" is this: if you plan to distribute your modified version of this text, you must give credit where credit is due (to me, the original author, and anyone else whose modifications are contained in your version), and you must ensure that whoever you give the text to is aware of their freedom to similarly share and edit the text. The next chapter covers this process in more detail.

It must be mentioned that although I strive to maintain technical accuracy in all of this book's content, the subject matter is broad and harbors many potential dangers. Electricity maims and kills without provocation, and deserves the utmost respect. I strongly encourage experimentation on the part of the reader, but only with circuits powered by small batteries where there is no risk of electric shock, fire, explosion, etc. High-power electric circuits should be left to the care of trained professionals! The Design Science License clearly states that neither I nor any contributors to this book bear any liability for what is done with its contents.

A-1.2 The use of SPICE

One of the best ways to learn how things work is to follow the inductive approach: to observe specific instances of things working and derive general conclusions from those observations. In science education, labwork is the traditionally accepted venue for this type of learning, although in many cases labs are designed by educators to reinforce principles previously learned through lecture or textbook reading, rather than to allow the student to learn on their own through a truly exploratory process.

Having taught myself most of the electronics that I know, I appreciate the sense of frustration students may have in teaching themselves from books. Although electronic components are typically inexpensive, not everyone has the means or opportunity to set up a laboratory in their own homes, and when things go wrong there's no one to ask for help. Most textbooks

seem to approach the task of education from a deductive perspective: tell the student how things are supposed to work, then apply those principles to specific instances that the student may or may not be able to explore by themselves. The inductive approach, as useful as it is, is hard to find in the pages of a book.

However, textbooks don't have to be this way. I discovered this when I started to learn a computer program called SPICE. It is a text-based piece of software intended to model circuits and provide analyses of voltage, current, frequency, etc. Although nothing is quite as good as building real circuits to gain knowledge in electronics, computer simulation is an excellent alternative. In learning how to use this powerful tool, I made a discovery: SPICE could be used within a textbook to present circuit simulations to allow students to "observe" the phenomena for themselves. This way, the readers could learn the concepts inductively (by interpreting SPICE's output) as well as deductively (by interpreting my explanations). Furthermore, in seeing SPICE used over and over again, they should be able to understand how to use it themselves, providing a perfectly safe means of experimentation on their own computers with circuit simulations of their own design.

Another advantage to including computer analyses in a textbook is the empirical verification it adds to the concepts presented. Without demonstrations, the reader is left to take the author's statements on faith, trusting that what has been written is indeed accurate. The problem with faith, of course, is that it is only as good as the authority in which it is placed and the accuracy of interpretation through which it is understood. Authors, like all human beings, are liable to err and/or communicate poorly. With demonstrations, however, the reader can immediately see for themselves that what the author describes is indeed true. Demonstrations also serve to clarify the meaning of the text with concrete examples.

SPICE is introduced early in volume I (DC) of this book series, and hopefully in a gentle enough way that it doesn't create confusion. For those wishing to learn more, a chapter in this volume (volume V) contains an overview of SPICE with many example circuits. There may be more flashy (graphic) circuit simulation programs in existence, but SPICE is free, a virtue complementing the charitable philosophy of this book very nicely.

A-1.3 Acknowledgements

First, I wish to thank my wife, whose patience during those many and long evenings (and weekends!) of typing has been extraordinary.

I also wish to thank those whose open-source software development efforts have made this endeavor all the more affordable and pleasurable. The following is a list of various free computer software used to make this book, and the respective programmers:

- *GNU/Linux* Operating System – Linus Torvalds, Richard Stallman, and a host of others too numerous to mention.
- *Vim* text editor – Bram Moolenaar and others.
- *Xcircuit* drafting program – Tim Edwards.
- *SPICE* circuit simulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- TEX text processing system – Donald Knuth and others.

- *Texinfo* document formatting system – Free Software Foundation.
- LaTeX document formatting system – Leslie Lamport and others.
- *Gimp* image manipulation program – too many contributors to mention.
- *Winscope* signal analysis software – Dr. Constantin Zeldovich. (Free for personal and academic use.)

Appreciation is also extended to Robert L. Boylestad, whose first edition of *Introductory Circuit Analysis* taught me more about electric circuits than any other book. Other important texts in my electronics studies include the 1939 edition of *The "Radio" Handbook*, Bernard Grob's second edition of *Introduction to Electronics I*, and Forrest Mims' original *Engineer's Notebook*.

Thanks to the staff of the Bellingham Antique Radio Museum, who were generous enough to let me terrorize their establishment with my camera and flash unit.

I wish to specifically thank Jeffrey Elkner and all those at Yorktown High School for being willing to host my book as part of their Open Book Project, and to make the first effort in contributing to its form and content. Thanks also to David Sweet (website: `(http://www.andamooka.org)`) and Ben Crowell (website: `(http://www.lightandmatter.com)`) for providing encouragement, constructive criticism, and a wider audience for the online version of this book.

Thanks to Michael Stutz for drafting his Design Science License, and to Richard Stallman for pioneering the concept of copyleft.

Last but certainly not least, many thanks to my parents and those teachers of mine who saw in me a desire to learn about electricity, and who kindled that flame into a passion for discovery and intellectual adventure. I honor you by helping others as you have helped me.

Tony Kuphaldt, July 2001

"A candle loses nothing of its light when lighting another"
Kahlil Gibran

Appendix A-2

CONTRIBUTOR LIST

A-2.1 How to contribute to this book

As a copylefted work, this book is open to revision and expansion by any interested parties. The only ”catch” is that credit must be given where credit is due. This *is* a copyrighted work: it is *not* in the public domain!

If you wish to cite portions of this book in a work of your own, you must follow the same guidelines as for any other copyrighted work. Here is a sample from the Design Science License:

```
The Work is copyright the Author.  All rights to the Work are reserved
by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License
describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you
to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as
dictated by "fair use") quote from it, just as you would any
copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or
execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk,
because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY -- see Section 7 ("NO
WARRANTY") below.
```

If you wish to modify this book in any way, you must document the nature of those modifications in the ”Credits” section along with your name, and ideally, information concerning how you may be contacted. Again, the Design Science License:

```
Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work,
```

```
producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work
under the terms described in the section for distribution above,
provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this
License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or
title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of
the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences
between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is
attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from
the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate
notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature
and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.
```

Given the complexities and security issues surrounding the maintenance of files comprising this book, it is recommended that you submit any revisions or expansions to the original author (Tony R. Kuphaldt). You are, of course, welcome to modify this book directly by editing your own personal copy, but we would all stand to benefit from your contributions if your ideas were incorporated into the online "master copy" where all the world can see it.

A-2.2 Credits

All entries arranged in alphabetical order of surname. Major contributions are listed by individual name with some detail on the nature of the contribution(s), date, contact info, etc. Minor contributions (typo corrections, etc.) are listed by name only for reasons of brevity. Please understand that when I classify a contribution as "minor," it is in no way inferior to the effort or value of a "major" contribution, just smaller in the sense of less text changed. Any and all contributions are gratefully accepted. I am indebted to all those who have given freely of their own knowledge, time, and resources to make this a better book!

A-2.2.1 Dennis Crunkilton

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** January 2006 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Mini table of contents, all chapters except appedicies; html, latex, ps, pdf; See Devel/tutorial.html; 01/2006.
- **Nature of contribution:** CH 4, section: AC induction motor, 09/2007.
- **Contact at:** `dcrunkilton(at)att(dot)net`

A-2.2.2 Tony R. Kuphaldt

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** 1996 to present
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author.
- **Contact at:** liec0@lycos.com

A-2.2.3 Bill Marsden

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** August 2008
- **Nature of contribution:** Original author: "555 Schmidt trigger" Section, Chapter 7.
- **Contact at:** bill_marsden2(at)hotmail(dot)com

A-2.2.4 Forrest M. Mims III

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):**February 2008
- **Nature of contribution:**Ch 5; Clarification concerning LEDs as photosensors.
- **Contact at:** FMims(at)aol.com

A-2.2.5 Your name here

- **Date(s) of contribution(s):** Month and year of contribution
- **Nature of contribution:** Insert text here, describing how you contributed to the book.
- **Contact at:** my_email@provider.net

A-2.2.6 Typo corrections and other "minor" contributions

- **line-allaboutcircuits.com** (June 2005) Typographical error correction in Volumes 1,2,3,5, various chapters ,(:s/visa-versa/vice versa/).
- *The students of Bellingham Technical College's Instrumentation program*.
- **Colin Creitz** (May 2007) Chapters: several, s/it's/its.
- **Jeff DeFreitas** (March 2006)Improve appearance: replace "/" and "/" Chapters: A1, A2.
- **Don Stalkowski** (June 2002) Technical help with PostScript-to-PDF file format conversion.
- **Joseph Teichman** (June 2002) Suggestion and technical help regarding use of PNG images instead of JPEG.
- **Michael Warner** (April 2002) Suggestions for a section describing home laboratory setup.

- **jut@allaboutcircuits.com** (August 2007) Ch 1, s/starting/started .
- **Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (August 2007) Ch 6, s/and and off/on and off/ .
- **Timothy Unregistered@allaboutcircuits.com** (Feb 2008) Changed default roman font to newcent.
- **Imranullah Syed** (Feb 2008) Suggested centering of uncaptioned schematics.
- **Sylverce@allaboutcircuits.com, Caveman@allaboutcircuits.com** (May 2008) Changed image 05320.png to agree with inage 05321.png¡/item ¿

Appendix A-3

DESIGN SCIENCE LICENSE

A-3.1 0. Preamble

Copyright law gives certain exclusive rights to the author of a work, including the rights to copy, modify and distribute the work (the ”reproductive,” ”adaptative,” and ”distribution” rights).

The idea of ”copyleft” is to willfully revoke the exclusivity of those rights under certain terms and conditions, so that anyone can copy and distribute the work or properly attributed derivative works, while all copies remain under the same terms and conditions as the original.

The intent of this license is to be a general ”copyleft” that can be applied to any kind of work that has protection under copyright. This license states those certain conditions under which a work published under its terms may be copied, distributed, and modified.

Whereas ”design science” is a strategy for the development of artifacts as a way to reform the environment (not people) and subsequently improve the universal standard of living, this Design Science License was written and deployed as a strategy for promoting the progress of science and art through reform of the environment.

A-3.2 1. Definitions

”License” shall mean this Design Science License. The License applies to any work which contains a notice placed by the work’s copyright holder stating that it is published under the terms of this Design Science License.

”Work” shall mean such an aforementioned work. The License also applies to the output of the Work, only if said output constitutes a ”derivative work” of the licensed Work as defined by copyright law.

”Object Form” shall mean an executable or performable form of the Work, being an embodiment of the Work in some tangible medium.

”Source Data” shall mean the origin of the Object Form, being the entire, machine-readable, preferred form of the Work for copying and for human modification (usually the language, encoding or format in which composed or recorded by the Author); plus any accompanying files, scripts or other data necessary for installation, configuration or compilation of the Work.

(Examples of ”Source Data” include, but are not limited to, the following: if the Work is an image file composed and edited in ’PNG’ format, then the original PNG source file is the Source Data; if the Work is an MPEG 1.0 layer 3 digital audio recording made from a ’WAV’ format audio file recording of an analog source, then the original WAV file is the Source Data; if the Work was composed as an unformatted plaintext file, then that file is the the Source Data; if the Work was composed in LaTeX, the LaTeX file(s) and any image files and/or custom macros necessary for compilation constitute the Source Data.)

”Author” shall mean the copyright holder(s) of the Work.

The individual licensees are referred to as ”you.”

A-3.3 2. Rights and copyright

The Work is copyright the Author. All rights to the Work are reserved by the Author, except as specifically described below. This License describes the terms and conditions under which the Author permits you to copy, distribute and modify copies of the Work.

In addition, you may refer to the Work, talk about it, and (as dictated by ”fair use”) quote from it, just as you would any copyrighted material under copyright law.

Your right to operate, perform, read or otherwise interpret and/or execute the Work is unrestricted; however, you do so at your own risk, because the Work comes WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY – see Section 7 (”NO WARRANTY”) below.

A-3.4 3. Copying and distribution

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present verbatim copies of the entire Source Data of the Work, in any medium, provided that full copyright notice and disclaimer of warranty, where applicable, is conspicuously published on all copies, and a copy of this License is distributed along with the Work.

Permission is granted to distribute, publish or otherwise present copies of the Object Form of the Work, in any medium, under the terms for distribution of Source Data above and also provided that one of the following additional conditions are met:

(a) The Source Data is included in the same distribution, distributed under the terms of this License; or

(b) A written offer is included with the distribution, valid for at least three years or for as long as the distribution is in print (whichever is longer), with a publicly-accessible address (such as a URL on the Internet) where, for a charge not greater than transportation and media costs, anyone may receive a copy of the Source Data of the Work distributed according to the section above; or

(c) A third party's written offer for obtaining the Source Data at no cost, as described in paragraph (b) above, is included with the distribution. This option is valid only if you are a non-commercial party, and only if you received the Object Form of the Work along with such an offer.

You may copy and distribute the Work either gratis or for a fee, and if desired, you may offer warranty protection for the Work.

The aggregation of the Work with other works which are not based on the Work – such as but not limited to inclusion in a publication, broadcast, compilation, or other media – does not bring the other works in the scope of the License; nor does such aggregation void the terms of the License for the Work.

A-3.5 4. Modification

Permission is granted to modify or sample from a copy of the Work, producing a derivative work, and to distribute the derivative work under the terms described in the section for distribution above, provided that the following terms are met:

(a) The new, derivative work is published under the terms of this License.

(b) The derivative work is given a new name, so that its name or title can not be confused with the Work, or with a version of the Work, in any way.

(c) Appropriate authorship credit is given: for the differences between the Work and the new derivative work, authorship is attributed to you, while the material sampled or used from the Work remains attributed to the original Author; appropriate notice must be included with the new work indicating the nature and the dates of any modifications of the Work made by you.

A-3.6 5. No restrictions

You may not impose any further restrictions on the Work or any of its derivative works beyond those restrictions described in this License.

A-3.7 6. Acceptance

Copying, distributing or modifying the Work (including but not limited to sampling from the Work in a new work) indicates acceptance of these terms. If you do not follow the terms of this License, any rights granted to you by the License are null and void. The copying, distribution or modification of the Work outside of the terms described in this License is expressly prohibited by law.

If for any reason, conditions are imposed on you that forbid you to fulfill the conditions of this License, you may not copy, distribute or modify the Work at all.

If any part of this License is found to be in conflict with the law, that part shall be interpreted in its broadest meaning consistent with the law, and no other parts of the License shall be affected.

A-3.8 7. No warranty

THE WORK IS PROVIDED ”AS IS,” AND COMES WITH ABSOLUTELY NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

A-3.9 8. Disclaimer of liability

IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS WORK, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

END OF TERMS AND CONDITIONS

```
[$Id:  dsl.txt,v 1.25 2000/03/14 13:14:14 m Exp m $]
```

Index

.